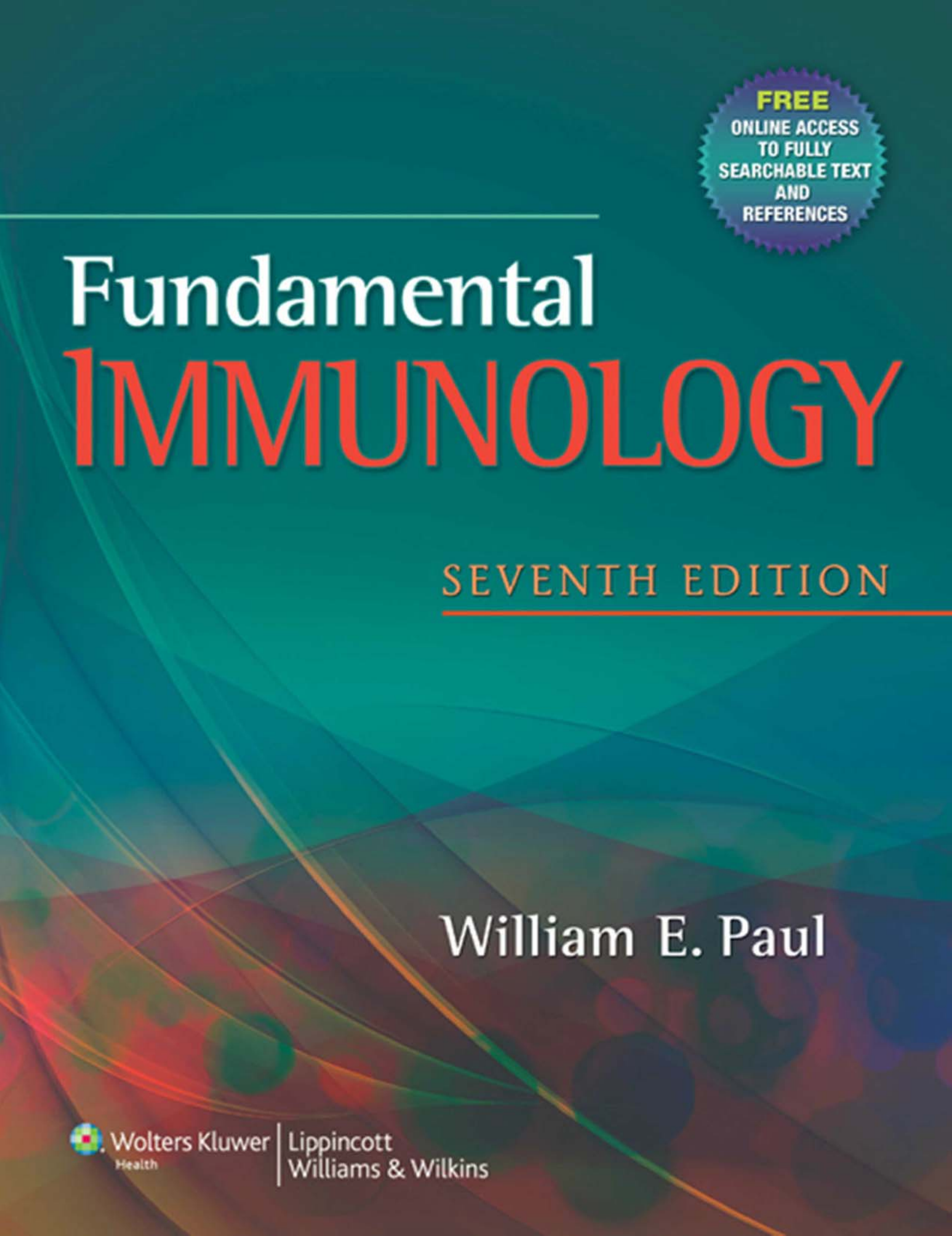

FREE
ONLINE ACCESS TO FULLY SEARCHABLE TEXT AND REFERENCES
Fundamental
IMMUNOLOGY
SEVENTH EDITION
William E. Paul
Wolters Kluwer Health
Lippincott Williams & Wilkins

Fundamental Immunology

SEVENTH EDITION

Fundamental Immunology

SEVENTH EDITION

EDITOR

William E. Paul, MD

Wolters Kluwer Health | Lippincott Williams & Wilkins

Philadelphia • Baltimore • New York • London
Buenos Aires • Hong Kong • Sydney • Tokyo

Acquisitions Editor: Julie Goolsby
Product Manager: Leanne Vandetty
Senior Manufacturing Manager: Benjamin Rivera
Marketing Manager: Kimberly Schonberger
Design Coordinator: Teresa Mallon
Production Service: Absolute Service, Inc.

© 2013 by LIPPINCOTT WILLIAMS & WILKINS, a WOLTERS KLUWER business

Two Commerce Square
2001 Market Street
Philadelphia, PA 19103 USA
LWW.com

6th Edition, © 2008 by LIPPINCOTT WILLIAMS & WILKINS, a WOLTERS KLUWER business
5th Edition, © 2003 by Lippincott Williams & Wilkins
4th Edition, © 1999 by Lippincott-Raven Publishers

All rights reserved. This book is protected by copyright. No part of this book may be reproduced in any form by any means, including photocopying, or utilized by any information storage and retrieval system without written permission from the copyright owner, except for brief quotations embodied in critical articles and reviews. Materials appearing in this book prepared by individuals as part of their official duties as U.S. government employees are not covered by the above-mentioned copyright.

Printed in China

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

Fundamental immunology / editor, William E. Paul. — 7th ed.
p. ; cm.
Includes bibliographical references and index.
ISBN 978-1-4511-1783-7 (alk. paper) — ISBN 1-4511-1783-3 (alk. paper)
I. Paul, William E.
[DNLM: 1. Immune System Phenomena. QW 540]

616.07'9—dc23

2012035820

Care has been taken to confirm the accuracy of the information presented and to describe generally accepted practices. However, the authors, editors, and publisher are not responsible for errors or omissions or for any consequences from application of the information in this book and make no warranty, expressed or implied, with respect to the currency, completeness, or accuracy of the contents of the publication. Application of the information in a particular situation remains the professional responsibility of the practitioner.

The authors, editors, and publisher have exerted every effort to ensure that drug selection and dosage set forth in this text are in accordance with current recommendations and practice at the time of publication. However, in view of ongoing research, changes in government regulations, and the constant flow of information relating to drug therapy and drug reactions, the reader is urged to check the package insert for each drug for any change in indications and dosage and for added warnings and precautions. This is particularly important when the recommended agent is a new or infrequently employed drug.

Some drugs and medical devices presented in the publication have Food and Drug Administration (FDA) clearance for limited use in restricted research settings. It is the responsibility of the health care provider to ascertain the FDA status of each drug or device planned for use in their clinical practice.

To purchase additional copies of this book, call our customer service department at (800) 638-3030 or fax orders to (301) 223-2320. International customers should call (301) 223-2300.

Visit Lippincott Williams & Wilkins on the Internet: at LWW.com. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins customer service representatives are available from 8:30 am to 6 pm, EST.

10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

For Charlotte, Gloria, Lucy, Jenna, Silvie, and Jake—and for Julien

CONTRIBUTING AUTHORS

Eitan M. Akirav, PhD
Assistant Professor of Research
Department of Medicine
Stony Brook Medical School
Stony Brook, New York
Research Scientist
Biomedical Research Core
Winthrop University Hospital
Mineola, New York

Noelia Alonso Gonzalez, PhD
Postdoctoral Fellow
Department of Epidemiology and Public Health
Yale University
New Haven, Connecticut

Yasmine Belkaid, PhD
Chief, Mucosal Immunology Section
Laboratory of Parasitic Diseases
National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases
National Institutes of Health
Bethesda, Maryland

Albert S. Bendelac, MD, PhD
Professor
Department of Pathology
Howard Hughes Medical Institute
University of Chicago
Chicago, Illinois

Ira Berkower, MD, PhD
Lab Chief, Lab of Immunoregulation
Division of Viral Products, Office of Vaccines
Center for Biologics Evaluation and Research
US Food and Drug Administration
Bethesda, Maryland

Sylvie Bertholet, PhD
Unit Head
Immunology Function
Novartis Vaccines and Diagnostics
Siena, Italy

Jay A. Berzofsky, MD, PhD
Branch Chief
Vaccine Branch, Center for Cancer Research
National Cancer Institute, National Institutes of Health
Bethesda, Maryland

Jean-Laurent Casanova, MD, PhD
Professor and Head of Laboratory
St. Giles Laboratory of Human Genetics of Infectious Diseases
The Rockefeller University
Senior Attending Physician
The Rockefeller University Hospital
New York, New York

Marco A. Cassatella, MD
Professor
Pathology and Diagnostics
Verona University Medical School
Vice Director
General Pathology
Medical School
Verona, Italy

Ameya S. Champhekar, PhD
Postdoctoral Scholar
Division of Biology
California Institute of Technology
Pasadena, California

Akanksha Chaturvedi, PhD
Postdoctoral Fellow
Laboratory of Immunogenetics
NIH, NIAID
Rockville, Maryland

Sangeeta S. Chavan, PhD
Associate Investigator
Center for Biomedical Science
The Feinstein Institute for Medical Research
Manhasset, New York

Yueh-hsiu Chien, PhD
Professor
Department of Microbiology and Immunology
Stanford University
Stanford, California

Mary Ellen Conley, MD
Professor
Department of Pediatrics
University of Tennessee
Le Bonheur Children's Hospital
Memphis, Tennessee

Ken T. Coppieters
La Jolla Institute for Allergy and Immunology
La Jolla, California

Shane Crotty, PhD
Associate Professor
Division of Vaccine Discovery
La Jolla Institute for Allergy and Immunology
La Jolla, California

Angel Davey, PhD
Postdoctoral Fellow
Laboratory of Immunogenetics
NIH, NIAID
Rockville, Maryland

Mark M. Davis, PhD
Investigator, HHMI
Department of Microbiology and Immunology
Stanford University
Stanford, California

Ennio De Gregorio, PhD
Head
Department of Immunology
Novartis Vaccines and Diagnostics
Siena, Italy

Charles A. Dinarello, MD
Professor of Medicine and Immunology
University of Colorado Denver
Aurora, Colorado
Professor of Experimental Medicine
Department of Medicine
Radboud University
Nijmegen, The Netherlands

Anca Dorhoi
Department of Immunology
Max Planck Institute for Infection Biology
Berlin, Germany

Ugo D'Oro, MD, PhD
Unit Head
Department of Immunology Function
Novartis Vaccines and Diagnostics
Siena, Italy

Louis Du Pasquier, PhD
Professor
Department of Zoology and Evolutionary Biology
University of Basel
Basel, Switzerland

Hildegund C.J. Ertl, MD
Caspar Wistar Professor in Vaccine Research
Professor and Program Leader, Immunology Program
Director, The Wistar Institute Vaccine Center
The Wistar Institute
Philadelphia, Pennsylvania

Martin F. Flajnik, PhD
Professor
Department of Microbiology and Immunology
University of Maryland Baltimore
Baltimore, Maryland

Sebastian Fugmann, PhD
Investigator
Laboratory of Molecular Biology and Immunology
National Institute on Aging/NIH
Baltimore, Maryland

Christopher C. Goodnow, BVSc, BScVet, PhD
Professor & NHMRC Australia Fellow
Department of Immunology
John Curtin School of Medical Research
The Australian National University
Canberra, Australian Capital Territory

Siamon Gordon, FRS, MB, ChB, PhD
Emeritus Professor
Sir William Dunn School of Pathology
University of Oxford
Oxford, United Kingdom

Steven Greenberg, MD
Senior Principal Scientist
Respiratory and Immunology Department
Merck Research Laboratories
Kenilworth, New Jersey
Adjunct Associate Professor
Department of Medicine
Columbia University College of Physicians and Surgeons
New York, New York

Neil S. Greenspan, MD, PhD
Professor
Department of Pathology
Case Western Reserve University
Director, Histocompatibility and Immunogenetics
Laboratory
University Hospitals Case Medical Center
Cleveland, Ohio

Ted H. Hansen, PhD
Professor
Department of Pathology
Washington University School of Medicine
St. Louis, Missouri

Richard R. Hardy, PhD
Professor
Fox Chase Cancer Center
Philadelphia, Pennsylvania

Dirk Homann
Department of Anesthesiology
Barbara Davis Center for Childhood Diabetes
Aurora, Colorado
University of Colorado, Denver

Marc K. Jenkins, PhD
Distinguished McKnight Professor
Department of Microbiology and Center for Immunology
University of Minnesota
Minneapolis, Minnesota

Susan M. Kaech, PhD
Associate Professor and HHMI Early Career Scientist
Department of Immunobiology
Yale University
New Haven, Connecticut

Jannet Katz, DDS, PhD
Professor
Department of Pediatric Dentistry
University of Alabama at Birmingham
Birmingham, Alabama

Stefan H.E. Kaufmann, PhD
Director
Department of Immunology
Max Planck Institute for Infection Biology
Professor
Charite University Hospital
Berlin, Germany

Douglas S. Kwon, MD, PhD
Instructor in Medicine
Department of Infectious Disease
Harvard Medical School
Associate Physician
Ragon Institute of MGH, MIT and Harvard
Massachusetts General Hospital
Boston, Massachusetts

Michael J. Lenardo, MD
Senior Investigator
Laboratory of Immunology
National Institutes of Health
Bethesda, Maryland

Warren J. Leonard, MD
Chief, Lab of Molecular Immunology
Director, Immunology Center
National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute
National Institutes of Health
Bethesda, Maryland

Ian Paul Lewkowich, PhD
Assistant Professor
Department of Cellular and Molecular Immunology
Cincinnati Children's Hospital
Cincinnati, Ohio

Judy Lieberman, MD, PhD
Senior Investigator
Immune Disease Institute
Professor
Department of Pediatrics
Harvard Medical School
Boston, Massachusetts

Kang Liu, PhD
Assistant Professor
Department of Microbiology and Immunology
Columbia University Medical Center
New York, New York

Wanli Liu, PhD
Postdoctoral Fellow
Laboratory of Immunogenetics
NIH, NIAID
Rockville, Maryland

David H. Margulies, MD, PhD
Chief, Molecular Biology Section
Laboratory of Immunology
National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases
National Institutes of Health
Bethesda, Maryland

Edward E. Max, MD, PhD
Associate Director for Research
Office of Biotechnology Products
Center for Drugs Evaluation and Research
Food and Drug Administration
Bethesda, Maryland

James McCluskey, MD, FRACP, FRCPA, FAA
Professor
Department of Microbiology and Immunology
University of Melbourne
Melbourne, Victoria, Australia

Michael G. McHeyzer-Williams, PhD
Professor
Department of Immunology & Microbial Science
The Scripps Research Institute
La Jolla, California

B. Paul Morgan, MB, PhD, MRCP, FRCPath
Dean and Head of School
School of Medicine
Cardiff University
Honorary Consultant in Medical Biochemistry
Department of Medical Biochemistry & Immunology
University Hospital of Wales
Cardiff, United Kingdom

Philip M. Murphy, MD
Chief
Laboratory of Molecular Immunology
National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases
National Institutes of Health
Bethesda, Maryland

Moon H. Nahm, MD
Professor
Departments of Pathology and Microbiology
University of Alabama at Birmingham
Birmingham, Alabama

Kannan Natarajan, PhD
Staff Scientist
Molecular Biology Section, Laboratory of Immunology
National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases
National Institutes of Health
Bethesda, Maryland

Mihai G. Netea, MD
Professor
Department of Medicine
Radboud University Nijmegen Medical Center
Nijmegen, The Netherlands

Falk Nimmerjahn, PhD
Professor for Immunology & Genetics
Chair of Institute of Genetics
Department of Biology
University of Erlangen-Nuernberg
Erlangen, Germany

Luigi D. Notarangelo, MD
Professor
Departments of Pediatrics and Pathology
Harvard Medical School
Jeffrey Modell Chair of Pediatric Immunology Research
Division of Immunology
Children's Hospital Boston
Boston, Massachusetts

Michel C. Nussenzweig, MD, PhD
Sherman Fairchild Investigator and HHMI Investigator
The Rockefeller University
New York, New York

Pamela S. Ohashi, PhD
Professor
Department of Medical Biophysics and Immunology
University of Toronto
Senior Scientist
Immunotherapy Program
Ontario Cancer Institute
Toronto, Ontario, Canada

Luke A.J. O'Neill, PhD
Professor of Biochemistry
School of Biochemistry and Immunology
Trinity Biomedical Sciences Institute
Trinity College
Dublin, Ireland

John J. O'Shea, MD
Chief, Molecular Immunology and Inflammation Branch
Scientific Director, National Institute of Arthritis and
Musculoskeletal and Skin Diseases
National Institutes of Health
Bethesda, Maryland

William E. Paul, MD

Susan K. Pierce, PhD
Chief
Laboratory of Immunogenetics
NIH NIAID
Rockville, Maryland

Carlo Pucillo
Department of Biomedical Science and Technology
Lab of Immunology
University of Udine
Udine, Italy

Rino Rappuoli, PhD
Global Head, Vaccines Research
Novartis Vaccines and Diagnostics
Siena, Italy

Jeffrey V. Ravetch, MD, PhD
Theresa & Eugene Lang Professor
Laboratory of Molecular Genetics & Immunology
The Rockefeller University
New York, New York

Stephen T. Reece
Department of Immunology
Max Planck Institute for Infection Biology
Berlin, Germany

Eleanor M. Riley, PhD
Professor of Immunology
Department of Immunology and Infection
London School of Hygiene and Tropical Medicine
London, United Kingdom

Paul A. Roche, PhD
National Institutes of Health
National Cancer Institute
Experimental Immunology Branch
Bethesda, Maryland

Jamie Rossjohn, PhD
Professor
Department of Biochemistry and Molecular Biology
Monash University
Melbourne, Australia

Ellen V. Rothenberg, PhD
Albert Billings Ruddock Professor of Biology
Division of Biology
California Institute of Technology
Pasadena, California

Nancy H. Ruddle, PhD
Professor Emerita and Senior Research Scientist
Department of Epidemiology and Public Health
Yale University School of Medicine
New Haven, Connecticut

David H. Sachs, MD
Paul S. Russell/Warner-Lambert Professor of Surgery
Harvard Medical School
Director, Transplantation Biology Research Center
Department of Surgery
Massachusetts General Hospital
Boston, Massachusetts

David L. Sacks, PhD
Laboratory of Parasitic Diseases
National Institutes of Allergy and Infectious Disease
National Institutes of Health
Bethesda, Maryland

Takashi Saito, PhD
Deputy Director
Laboratory for Cell Signaling
RIKEN Research Center for Allergy and Immunology
Yokohama, Kanagawa, Japan

Patrizia Scapini
Department of Pathology and Diagnostics
Section of General Pathology
Verona, Italy

Stephen P. Schoenberger, PhD
Associate Professor
Division of Developmental Immunology
La Jolla Institute for Allergy and Immunology
La Jolla, California

Hans Schreiber, MD, PhD
Professor
Department of Pathology
University of Chicago
Chicago, Illinois

Harry W. Schroeder, Jr., MD, PhD
Professor of Medicine, Microbiology and Genetics
Division of Clinical Immunology and Rheumatology
University of Alabama at Birmingham
Birmingham, Alabama

Alan Sher, PhD
Laboratory of Parasitic Diseases
National Institutes of Allergy and Infectious Disease
National Institutes of Health
Bethesda, Maryland

Ethan M. Shevach, MD
Chief, Cellular Immunology Section
Laboratory of Immunology
National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases
National Institutes of Health
Bethesda, Maryland

Andrew L. Snow, PhD
Assistant Professor
Department of Pharmacology
Uniformed Services University of the Health Sciences
Bethesda, Maryland

Hae Won Sohn, PhD
Staff Scientist
Laboratory of Immunogenetics
NIH, NIAID
Rockville, Maryland

Megan Sykes, MD
Michael J. Friedlander Professor of Medicine
Professor of Microbiology & Immunology and Surgical Sciences (in Surgery)
Columbia University
Director, Columbia Center for Translational Immunology
Columbia University College of Physicians and Surgeons
New York, New York

Nicola Tamassia
Department of Pathology and Diagnostics
Section of General Pathology
Verona, Italy

Kevin J. Tracey, MD
Investigator
President
Head, Center for Biomedical Science
Feinstein Institute for Medical Research
Manhasset, New York

Lucy A. Truman
Postdoctoral Fellow
Yale University
New Haven, Connecticut

Matthias G. von Herrath, MD
Directory, Type 1 Diabetes Center
Department of Diabetes/Immunology
La Jolla Institute for Allergy & Immunology (LIAI)
La Jolla, California

David Wald, MD, PhD
Assistant Professor
Department of Pathology
Case Western Reserve University
University Hospitals Case Medical Center
Cleveland, Ohio

Bruce D. Walker, MD
Professor
Department of Infectious Disease
Harvard Medical School
Director
Ragon Institute of MGH, MIT, and Harvard
Massachusetts General Hospital
Boston, Massachusetts

Carl F. Ware, PhD
Director and Professor
Department of Infectious & Inflammatory Diseases
Sanford-Burnham Medical Research Institute
La Jolla, California

Marsha Wills-Karp, PhD
Rieveschl Professor
Department of Pediatrics
University of Cincinnati
Director
Division of Immunobiology
Cincinnati Children's Hospital Medical Center
Cincinnati, Ohio

Kathryn J. Wood, DPhil
Professor of Immunology
Nuffield Department of Surgical Sciences
University of Oxford
Oxford, United Kingdom

Thomas A. Wynn, PhD
Laboratory of Parasitic Diseases
National Institutes of Allergy and Infectious Disease
National Institutes of Health
Bethesda, Maryland

Wayne M. Yokoyama, MD
Investigator
Howard Hughes Medical Institute
Sam J. and Audrey Loew Professor of Medicine
Rheumatology Division
Washington University School of Medicine in St. Louis
St. Louis, Missouri

PREFACE

Immunology is the quintessential medical science. Indeed, no branch of the medical sciences has improved the health of people more than the application of immunologic principles to prevention of disease. Smallpox has been eliminated from the planet as a natural infection, as has poliomyelitis from the western hemisphere. Hepatitis B vaccine has prevented more cancers than any intervention other than smoking cessation. The human papilloma virus vaccine promises to cut strikingly the toll of cervical cancer.

The continued need for progress in immunology is clear. The epidemic of human immunodeficiency virus roars on. Glimmers of hope from vaccine trials have led to a redoubling of effort, and the struggle to design effective vaccines for the great infectious scourges goes on, with encouraging results but no breakthroughs yet. Highly effective therapeutic vaccines for cancers still elude us, but some immunologic therapies for cancer have met with encouraging results. We hope for much more as we marshal the tools coming from the study of the innate immune system, regulatory T cells, and lymphocyte differentiation and effector function.

Understanding the basis of inflammation and the cytokine world has given us effective drugs to treat rheumatoid arthritis and a growing number of other autoinflammatory/autoimmune diseases. The value of the interventions based on this knowledge, such as the use of tumor necrosis factor, interleukin-6, and interleukin -1 blockers, is now established. The application of anti–CD20 in the treatment of autoimmune disorders shows great promise. Even more promising strategies are on the horizon.

Fundamental Immunology has the goal of aiding in the education of a new generation of immunologists who can both probe more deeply into the organizing principles of the immune system and can translate this new information into effective treatments and preventatives that will extend and enlarge on the record of immunologic science in bettering the lot of human kind.

Were I beginning the task of preparing a comprehensive text of immunology today, I might have titled it *Immunology, Endless Fascination.* Certainly that describes my own view of this science over the 30 years that I have been working on the seven editions of *Fundamental Immunology.* I had believed that scientific progress was marked by periods of intense creativity, during which new concepts were established, followed by longer periods of consolidation, when work that made important but anticipated advances would dominate. Perhaps that will prove to be true of modern immunology as well when it is looked at by a disinterested observer, but for one in the midst, the pace of discovery seems to speed up with each passing year. *Endless fascination* certainly describes my experience of immunology.

I hope that this seventh edition will convey the dynamism and creativity of modern immunology and provide the reader with a solid introduction to our field and a picture of much of the very latest that has been achieved. As with each of the previous editions, most of the chapters are entirely new and not simple reworkings of the chapter in the previous edition. In order to contain the seventh edition within one volume, a decision was made to cite references in the printed text but only to provide the detailed citations in the online version. However, the references will be linked to PubMed so cited information can be easily obtained. The electronic version can be accessed at www.fundamentalimmunology.com.

As before, this edition begins with an introductory section consisting of the chapters "The Immune System" and "History of Immunology." These give an overview of modern immunology and of its origins, and provide those new to the field with the basis to go on to the subsequent chapters. This is followed by an "expanded introduction" provided by the sections "Organization and Evolution of the Immune System," "Immunoglobulins and B-Lymphocytes," and "T-Lymphocytes." These are followed by the two core "basic" immunology sections: "The Intersection of Innate and Adaptive Immunity" and "Induction, Regulation, and Effector Functions of the Immune Response." The book concludes with sections devoted to the immune system's role in protection against pathogenic microorganisms, "Immunity to Infectious Agents," and to how the immune system is involved in a variety of human disorders, "Immunologic Mechanisms in Disease."

I repeat a word of caution that has been in the Preface to each edition. Immunology is moving very fast. Each of the chapters is written by an expert in the field, but in some areas there may be differences of opinion expressed by equally accomplished authors. I ask the reader to take note of the differences and to follow developments in the field.

William E. Paul
Washington, DC

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

The preparation of the seventh edition required the efforts of many individuals. I particularly wish to thank each of the authors. Their contributions, prepared in the midst of extremely busy schedules, are responsible for the value of this book. Leanne Vandetty of Lippincott Williams & Wilkins saw that the process of receiving, editing, and assembling the chapters went as smoothly as possible. Without her efforts, the completion of this edition would have been immeasurably more difficult. Frances DeStefano's counsel was of utmost importance in planning this edition and when she had to leave the project, Julie Goolsby took over and played a key role in making important publication decisions. I wish to gratefully acknowledge the efforts of each of the members of the editorial and production staffs of Lippincott Williams & Wilkins who participated in the preparation of this edition.

CONTENTS

Contributing Authors vii
Preface xiii
Acknowledgments xv

Section I. Introduction to Immunology

1 The Immune System 1
William E. Paul

2 History of Immunology 22
Steven Greenberg

Section II. Organization and Evolution of the Immune System

3 Lymphoid Tissues and Organs 47
Eitan M. Akirav, Noelia Alonso-Gonzalez, Lucy A. Truman, Nancy H. Ruddle

4 Evolution of the Immune System 67
Martin F. Flajnik, Louis Du Pasquier

Section III. Immunoglobulins and B-Lymphocytes

5 Immunoglobulins: Structure and Function 129
Harry W. Schroeder Jr, David Wald, Neil S. Greenspan

6 Immunoglobulins: Molecular Genetics 150
Edward E. Max, Sebastian Fugmann

7 Antigen-Antibody Interactions and Monoclonal Antibodies 183
Jay A. Berzofsky, Ira J. Berkower

8 B-Lymphocyte Development and Biology 215
Richard R. Hardy

9 B-Lymphocyte Receptors, Signaling Mechanisms, and Activation 246
Akanksha Chaturvedi, Angel Davey, Wanli Liu, Hae Won Sohn, Susan K. Pierce

10 B-Lymphocyte Responses 261
Michael McHeyzer-Williams

Section IV. T-Lymphocytes

11 T-Cell Antigen Receptors 279
Mark M. Davis, Yueh-Hsiu Chien

12 Mechanisms of T-Lymphocyte Signaling and Activation 306
Takashi Saito

13 T-Lymphocyte Developmental Biology 325
Ellen V. Rothenberg, Ameya Champhekar

14 Peripheral T-Lymphocyte Responses and Function 355
Marc K. Jenkins

Section V. The Intersection of Innate and Adaptive Immunity

15 The Innate Immune System 367
Luke A. J. O'Neill

16 Dendritic Cells 381
Kang Liu, Michel C. Nussenzweig

17 Natural Killer Cells 395
Wayne M. Yokoyama

18 CD1d–Restricted Natural Killer T Cells 432
Albert Bendelac

19 Macrophages and Phagocytosis 448
Siamon Gordon

20 Granulocytes and Mast Cells 468
Patrizia Scapini, Nicola Tamassia, Carlo Pucillo, Marco A. Cassatella

21 The Major Histocompatibility Complex and Its Proteins 487
David H. Margulies, Kannan Natarajan, Jamie Rossjohn, James McCluskey

22 Antigen Processing and Presentation 524
Ted H. Hansen, Paul A. Roche

Section VI. Induction, Regulation, and Effector Functions of the Immune Response

23 Immunogenicity and Antigen Structure 539
Jay A. Berzofsky, Ira J. Berkower

24 Fc Receptors and Their Role in Immune Regulation and Inflammation 583
Jeffrey V. Ravetch, Falk Nimmerjahn

25 Type I Cytokines and Interferons, and Their Receptors 601
Warren J. Leonard

26 The Interleukin-1 Family 639
Charles A. Dinarello, Mihai G. Netea

27 Tumor Necrosis Factor–Related Cytokines in Immunity 659
Carl F. Ware

28 Chemokines 681
Philip M. Murphy

29 Helper T-Cell Differentiation and Plasticity 708
John J. O'Shea

30 Programmed Cell Death 718
Andrew L. Snow, Michael J. Lenardo

31 Immunologic Memory 741
Shane Crotty, Susan M. Kaech, Stephen P. Schoenberger

32 Immunologic Tolerance 765
Christopher C. Goodnow, Pamela S. Ohashi

33 Regulatory/Suppressor T Cells 795
Ethan M. Shevach

34 The Mucosal Immune System 833
Yasmine Belkaid

35 Neurophysiologic Reflex Mechanisms in Immunology 850
Sangeeta S. Chavan, Kevin J. Tracey

36 Complement 863
B. Paul Morgan

37 Cell-Mediated Cytotoxicity 891
Judy Lieberman

Section VII. Immunity to Infectious Agents

38 The Immune Response to Parasites 910
Thomas A. Wynn, David L. Sacks, Alan Sher, Eleanor M. Riley

39 Immunity to Viruses 937
Hildegund C.J. Ertl

40 Immunity to Intracellular Bacteria 973
Anca Dorhoi, Stephen T. Reece, Stefan H. E. Kaufmann

41 Immunity to Extracellular Bacteria 1001
Moon H. Nahm, Jannet Katz

42 Immunology of Human Immunodeficiency Virus Infection 1016
Douglas S. Kwon, Bruce D. Walker

43 Vaccines 1032
Ennio De Gregorio, Ugo D'Oro, Sylvie Bertholet, Rino Rappuoli

Section VIII. Immunologic Mechanisms in Disease

44 Autoimmunity and Autoimmune Diseases 1069
Ken T. Coppieters, Matthias G. von Herrath, Dirk Homann

45 Immunologic Mechanisms of Allergic Disorders 1113
Marsha Wills-Karp, Ian Lewkowich

46 Transplantation Immunology 1154
Megan Sykes, Kathryn Wood, David H. Sachs

47 Cancer Immunology 1200
Hans Schreiber

48 Inborn Errors of Immunity 1235
Jean-Laurent Casanova, Mary Ellen Conley, Luigi D. Notarangelo

Index 1267

Nothing is as powerful as an idea whose time has come.

Paraphrased from Victor Hugo

Everything should be made as simple as possible, but not simpler.

Albert Einstein

From my teachers I have learned much, from my colleagues still more, but from my students most of all.

The Talmud

Discovery consists of seeing what everybody has seen and thinking what nobody has thought.

Albert Szent-Gyorgyi

. . . the clonal selection hypothesis . . . assumes that . . . there exist clones of mesenchymal cells, each carrying immunologically reactive sites . . . complementary . . . to one (or possibly a small number) of potential antigenic determinants.

Frank Macfarlane Burnet

In the fields of observation, chance favors the prepared mind.

Louis Pasteur

In all things of nature there is something of the marvelous.

Aristotle

SECTION I

Introduction to Immunology

CHAPTER 1

The Immune System

William E. Paul

The immune system is a remarkable defense mechanism. It makes rapid, specific, and protective responses against the myriad potentially pathogenic microorganisms that inhabit the world in which we live. The tragic examples of acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS) and the inherited severe combined immunodeficiencies graphically illustrate the consequences of a nonfunctional adaptive immune system. Patients with AIDS and children with severe combined immunodeficiency often fall victim to infections that are of little or no consequence to those with normally functioning immune systems. The immune system also has a role in the rejection of tumors and, when dysregulated, may give rise to a series of autoimmune diseases, including insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus, multiple sclerosis, rheumatoid arthritis, systemic lupus erythematosus, inflammatory bowel disease, among others.

Fundamental Immunology has as its goal the authoritative presentation of the basic elements of the immune system, of the means through which the mechanisms of immunity act in a wide range of clinical conditions, including recovery from infectious diseases, rejection of tumors, transplantation of tissue and organs, autoimmunity and other immunopathologic conditions, and allergy, and how the mechanisms of immunity can be marshaled by vaccination to provide protection against microbial pathogens.

The purpose of the opening chapter is to provide readers with a general introduction to our current understanding of the immune system. It should be of particular importance for those with a limited background in immunology, providing them with the preparation needed for subsequent chapters of the book. Rather than providing extensive references in this chapter, each of the subject headings will indicate the chapters that deal in detail with the topic under discussion. Those chapters will not only provide an extended treatment of the topic but will also furnish the reader with a comprehensive reference list that can be found in the online version of *Fundamental Immunology.*

KEY CHARACTERISTICS OF THE IMMUNE SYSTEM

Innate Immunity (Chapters 15, 17, 19, and 20)

Powerful nonspecific defenses prevent or limit infections by most potentially pathogenic microorganisms. The epithelium provides both a physical barrier to the entry of microbes and produces a variety of antimicrobial factors. Agents that penetrate the epithelium are met with macrophages and related cells possessing "microbial sensors" that recognize key molecules characteristic of many microbial agents. These "pattern recognition receptors" include several families of molecules, of which the most intensively studied are the toll-like receptors (TLRs) and the nucleotide oligomerization domain–like receptors. Each TLR recognizes a distinct substance (or set of substances) associated with microbial agents; for example, TLR4 recognizes lipopolysaccharides, TLR3, double-stranded ribonucleic acid, and TLR9, unmethylated CpG-containing DNA. Because the recognized substances are generally indispensable to the infectious agent, microbial sensors provide a highly efficient means to recognize potential pathogens.

The interaction of a TLR with its ligand induces a series of intracellular signaling events, of which activation of the NF-κB system is particularly important. Macrophage activation with enhancement of the cell's phagocytic activity and the induction of antimicrobial systems aid in the destruction of the pathogen. The induction of an inflammatory response as a result of the activation of the innate immune system recruits other cell types, including neutrophils, to the site. The innate system can provide an effective means to control or eliminate pathogens. Indeed, life forms other than vertebrates rely on the innate immune system to allow them to deal with microbial infection.

In vertebrates, the innate immune system also acts to recruit antigen-specific immune responses, not only by attracting cells of the immune system to the site of infection, but also through the uptake of antigen by dendritic cells (DCs) and its transport by these cells to lymphoid tissues where primary immune responses are initiated. Activated DCs express cell surface costimulatory molecules and produce cytokines that can regulate the quality of the immune response so that it is most appropriate to combating the particular infectious agent, be it a virus, bacterium, or parasite.

Primary Responses (Chapters 10 and 14)

Primary immune responses are initiated when a foreign antigenic substance interacts with antigen-specific lymphocytes under appropriate circumstances. The response generally consists of the production of antibody molecules specific for the antigenic determinants of the immunogen and of the expansion and differentiation of antigen-specific helper and effector T-lymphocytes. The latter include cytokine-producing cells and killer T cells, capable of lysing infected cells. Generally, the combination of the innate immune response and the primary adaptive response are sufficient to eradicate or to control the microbe. Indeed, the most effective function of the immune system is to mount a response that eliminates the infectious agent from the body, so-called sterilizing immunity.

Secondary Responses and Immunologic Memory (Chapters 10, 14, 29, and 31)

As a consequence of initial encounter with antigen, the immunized individual develops a state of immunologic memory. If the same (or a closely related) microorganism is encountered again, a secondary response is made. This generally consists of an antibody response that is more rapid, greater in magnitude, and composed of antibodies that bind to the antigen with greater affinity and are more effective in clearing the microbe from the body. A more rapid and more effective T-cell response also ensues. Thus, an initial infection with a microorganism often initiates a state of immunity in which the individual is protected against a second infection. In the majority of situations, protection is provided by high-affinity antibody molecules that rapidly clear the re-introduced microbe. This is the basis of most licensed vaccines; the great power of vaccines is illustrated by the elimination of smallpox from the world and by the complete control of polio in the western hemisphere.

The Immune Response is Highly Specific and the Antigenic Universe is Vast

The immune response is highly specific. Primary immunization with a given microorganism evokes antibodies and T cells that are specific for the antigenic determinants found on that microorganism but that generally fail to recognize (or recognize only poorly) antigenic determinants expressed by unrelated microbes. Indeed, the range of antigenic specificities that can be discriminated by the immune system is enormous.

The Immune System is Tolerant of Self-Antigens (Chapters 32 and 33)

One of the most important features of the immune system is its ability to discriminate between antigenic determinants expressed on foreign substances, such as pathogenic microbes, and potential antigenic determinants expressed by the tissues of the host. The failure of the system to make full-blown immune responses to self-antigens is referred to as *immunologic tolerance*. Tolerance is a complex process that actually involves several distinct processes. One element, perhaps the most important, is an active process involving the elimination or inactivation of cells that can recognize self-antigens. In addition, there are mechanisms through which cells that encounter antigens (such as self-antigens) in the absence of cues from the innate immune system may fail to make a response, may make a minimal response, or may be inactivated through a process referred to as *anergy*. Finally, a specialized set of T cells exist designated regulatory cells that actively *suppress* responses against self-antigens. Indeed, individuals who have mutations in the key transcription factor *Foxp3* expressed by the regulatory cells develop severe multiorgan autoimmunity (Immunodysregulation polyendocrinopathy, enteropathy X-linked syndrome). The critical necessity to control self-reactivity is clearly shown by this multilayered system that involves elimination, inactivation, and suppression.

Immune Responses Against Self-Antigens can Result in Autoimmune Diseases (Chapter 44)

Failure in establishing immunologic tolerance or unusual presentations of self-antigens can give rise to tissue-damaging immune responses directed against antigenic determinants on host molecules. These can result in autoimmune diseases. As has already been mentioned, a group of extremely important diseases are caused by autoimmune responses or have major autoimmune components, including systemic lupus erythematosus, rheumatoid arthritis, insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus, multiple sclerosis, myasthenia gravis, and inflammatory bowel disease. Efforts to treat these diseases by modulating the autoimmune response are a major theme of contemporary medicine.

Acquired Immunodeficiency Syndrome is an Example of a Disease Caused by a Virus That the Immune System Generally Fails to Eliminate (Chapter 42)

Immune responses against infectious agents do not always lead to elimination of the pathogen. In some instances, a chronic infection ensues in which the immune system adopts a variety of strategies to limit damage caused by the organism or by the immune response. Indeed, herpes viruses, such as human cytomegalovirus, frequently are not eliminated by immune responses and establish a chronic infection in which the virus is controlled by immune responses. One of the most notable infectious diseases in which the immune response generally fails to eliminate the organism is AIDS, caused by the human immunodeficiency virus (HIV). In this instance, the principal infected cells are those of the immune system

itself, leading to an eventual state in which the individual can no longer mount protective immune responses against other microbial pathogens. Indeed, under the assault of HIV, control of viruses such as cytomegalovirus is lost and they may cause major tissue damage.

Major Principles of Immunity

The major principles of the immune response are:

- Elimination of many microbial agents through the nonspecific protective mechanisms of the innate immune system
- Cues from the innate immune system inform the cells of the adaptive immune system as to whether it is appropriate to make a response and what type of response to make
- Cells of the adaptive immune system display exquisitely specific recognition of foreign antigens and mobilize potent mechanisms for elimination of microbes bearing such antigens
- The immune system displays memory of its previous responses
- Tolerance of self-antigens.

The remainder of this introductory chapter will describe briefly the molecular and cellular basis of the system and how these central characteristics of the immune response may be explained.

CELLS OF THE IMMUNE SYSTEM AND THEIR SPECIFIC RECEPTORS AND PRODUCTS

The immune system consists of several distinct cell types, each with important roles. The lymphocytes occupy central stage because they are the cells that determine the specificity of immunity. It is their response that orchestrates the effector limbs of the immune system. Cells that interact with lymphocytes play critical parts both in the presentation of antigen and in the mediation of immunologic functions. These cells include DCs and the closely related Langerhans cells, monocyte/macrophages, natural killer (NK) cells, neutrophils, mast cells, basophils, and eosinophils. In addition, a series of specialized epithelial and stromal cells provide the anatomic environment in which immunity occurs, often by secreting critical factors that regulate migration, growth and homeostasis, and gene activation in cells of the immune system. Such cells also play direct roles in the induction and effector phases of the response.

The cells of the immune system are found in peripheral organized tissues, such as the spleen, lymph nodes, Peyer's patches of the intestine, and tonsils, where primary immune responses generally occur (see Chapter 3). Many of the lymphocytes comprise a recirculating pool of cells found in the blood and lymph, as well as in the lymph nodes and spleen, providing the means to deliver immunocompetent cells to sites where they are needed and to allow immunity that is initiated locally to become generalized. Activated lymphocytes acquire the capacity to enter nonlymphoid tissues where they can express effector functions and eradicate local infections. Some memory lymphocytes are "on patrol" in the tissues, scanning for reintroduction of their specific antigens. Lymphocytes are also found in the central lymphoid organs, the thymus, and bone marrow, where they undergo the developmental steps that equip them to mediate the responses of the mature immune system.

Individual lymphocytes are specialized in that they are committed to respond to a limited set of structurally related antigens. This commitment exists before the first contact of the immune system with a given antigen. It is expressed by the presence on the lymphocyte's surface of receptors specific for determinants (epitopes) of the antigen. Each lymphocyte possesses a population of receptors, all of which have identical combining sites (this is a slight oversimplification as occasionally T cells and less frequently B cells may express two populations of receptors). One set, or clone, of lymphocytes differs from another clone in the structure of the combining region of its receptors and thus in the epitopes that it can recognize. The ability of an organism to respond to virtually any non–self-antigen is achieved by the existence of a very large number of different lymphocytes, each bearing receptors specific for a distinct epitope. As a consequence, lymphocytes are an enormously heterogeneous group of cells. Based on reasonable assumptions as to the range of diversity that can be created in the genes encoding antigen-specific receptors, it is virtually certain that the number of distinct combining sites on lymphocyte receptors of an adult human can be measured in the millions.

Lymphocytes differ from each other not only in the specificity of their receptors but also in their functions. There are two broad classes of lymphocytes: the B-lymphocytes, which are precursors of antibody-secreting cells, and the T (thymus-derived)-lymphocytes. T-lymphocytes express important helper functions, such as the ability to aid in the development of specific types of immune responses, including the production of antibody by B cells, the increase in the microbicidal activity of macrophages, and the recruitment of granulocytes to sites of infection. Other T-lymphocytes are involved in direct effector functions, such as the lysis of virus-infected cells or certain neoplastic cells. Regulatory T-lymphocytes have the capacity to suppress immune responses.

B-LYMPHOCYTES AND ANTIBODY

B-Lymphocyte Development (Chapter 8)

B-lymphocytes derive from lymphoid progenitor cells, which in turn are derived from hematopoietic stem cells (Fig. 1.1). A detailed picture has been obtained of the molecular mechanisms through which committed early members of the B lineage develop into mature B-lymphocytes. These events occur in the fetal liver and, in adult life, in the bone marrow. Interaction with specialized stromal cells and their products, including cytokines such as interleukin (IL)-7 and BAFF, are critical to the normal regulation of this process.

The key events in B-cell development involve commitment to the B lineage and repression of the capacity to differentiate to cells of other lineages. In pro-B cells and pre-B cells, the genetic elements that encode the antigen-specific receptors are assembled. These receptors are im-

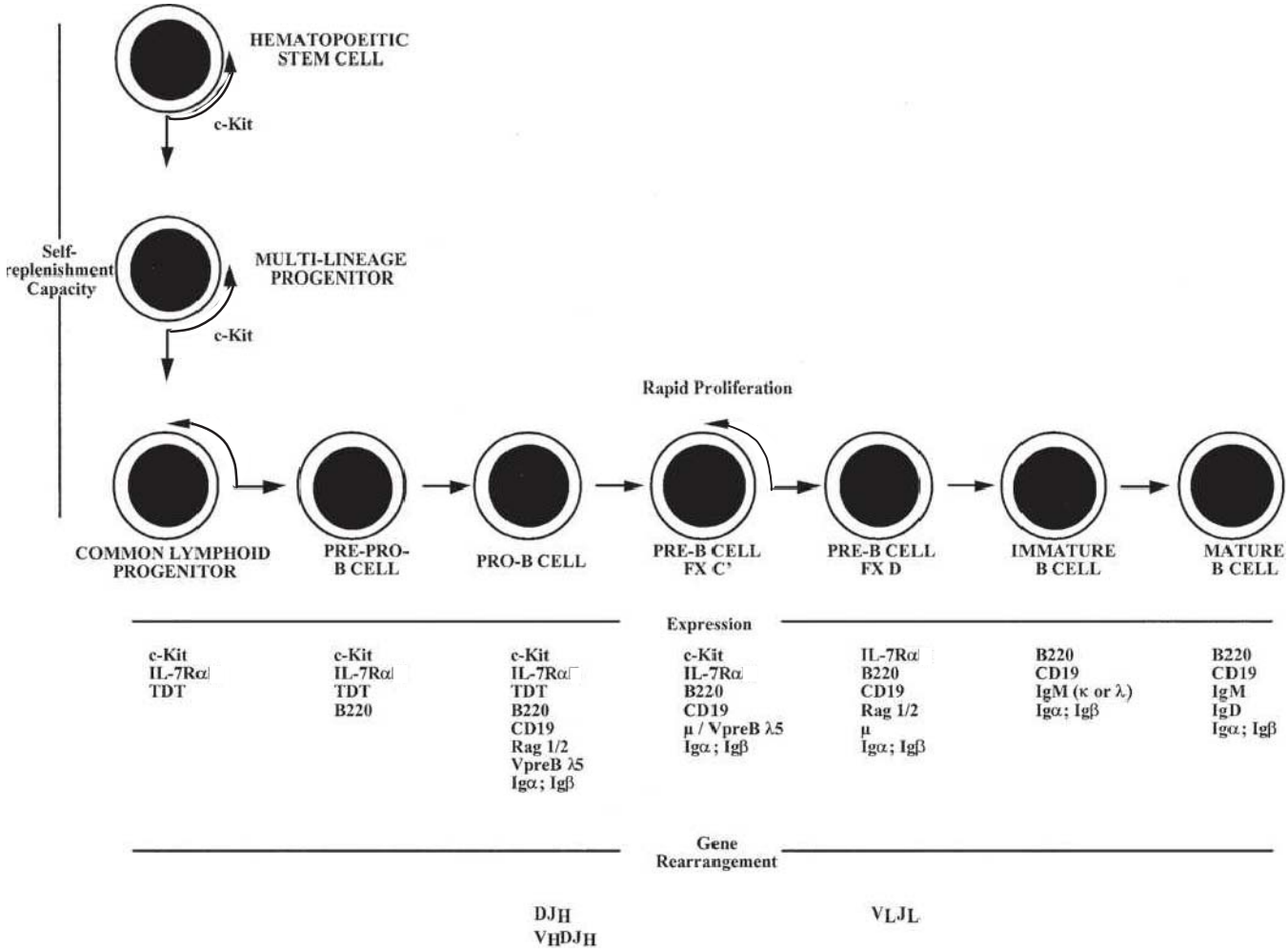


FIG. 1.1. The patterns of gene expression, timing of gene rearrangement events, and capacity for self-replenishment and for rapid proliferation of developing B lymphocytes are indicated. (Adapted from Hardy RR, Hayakawa K. B cell development pathways. *Ann Rev Immunol.* 2001;19:595–621.)

munoglobulin (Ig) molecules specialized for expression on the cell surface. Igs are heterodimeric molecules consisting of heavy (H) and light (L) chains, both of which have variable (V) regions, which are responsible for the binding of antigen and that differ in sequence from one Ig molecule to another (see Chapters 5, 6, and 7) (Fig. 1.2) and constant (C) regions.

The genetic elements encoding the variable portions of Ig H and L chains are not contiguous in germline DNA or in the DNA of nonlymphoid cells (see Chapter 6) (Fig. 1.3). In pro- and pre-B cells, these genetic elements are translocated to construct an expressible V-region gene. This process involves a choice among a large set of potentially usable V, diversity (D), and joining (J) elements in a combinatorial manner and depends upon the recombinating activating gene (RAG) proteins, RAG1 and RAG2. Such combinatorial translocation, together with the addition of diversity in the course of the joining process, results in the generation of a very large number of distinct H and L chains. The pairing of H and L chains in a quasirandom manner further expands the number of distinct Ig molecules that can be formed.

The H-chain V region is initially expressed in association with the product of the μ C-region gene. Together, these elements encode the μ IgH chain, which is used in Igs of the IgM class.

The successful completion of the process of Ig gene rearrangement and the expression of the resultant IgM on the cell surface marks the transition between the pre-B– and B–cell states (see Fig. 1.1). The newly differentiated B cell initially expresses surface Ig solely of the IgM class. The cell completes its maturation process by expressing on its surface a second class of Ig composed of the same L chain and the same H chain V (VDJ) region but of a different H chain C region; this second Ig H chain is designated δ, and the Ig to which it contributes is designated IgD, so that the mature naïve B cells express both IgM and IgD surface molecules that share the same V region.

The differentiation process is controlled at several steps by a system of checks that determines whether prior steps have been successfully completed. These checks depend on the expression on the surface of the cell of appropriately constructed Ig or Ig-like molecules. For, example,

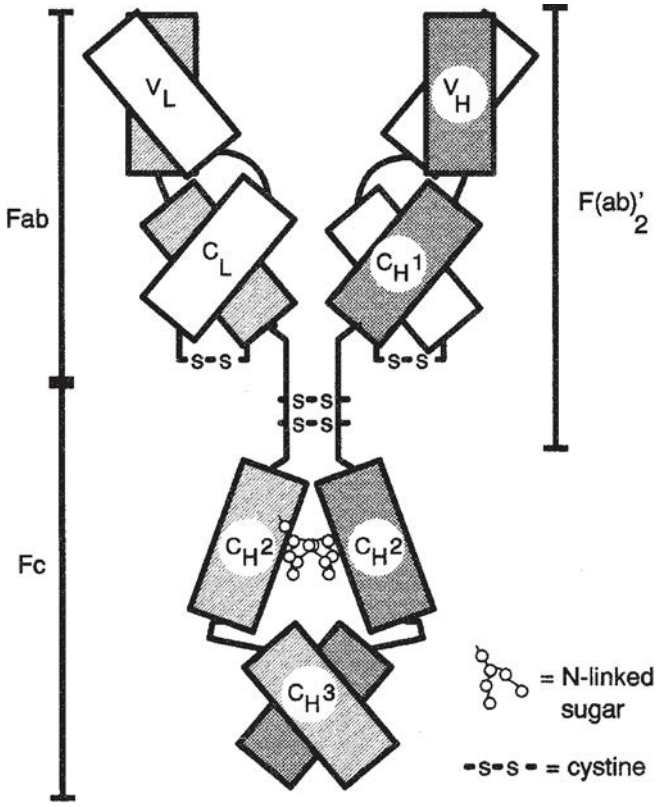


FIG. 1.2. A schematic representation of an immunoglobulin molecule indicating the means through the variable regions and the CH1 and CL regions of heavy and light chains pair with one another and how the CH2 and CH3 regions of the heavy chains pair.

in the period after a μ chain has been successfully assembled but before an L chain has been assembled, the μ chain is expressed on the cell surface in association with a surrogate L chain, consisting of VpreB and λ5. Pre-B cells that fail to express this μ/VpreB λ5 complex do not move forward to future differentiation states or do so very inefficiently.

B-Lymphocyte Activation (Chapter 9)

A mature B cell can be activated by an encounter with antigen-expressing epitopes that are recognized by its cell surface Ig (Fig. 1.4). The activation process may be a direct one, dependent on cross-linkage of membrane Ig molecules by the antigen (*cross-linkage–dependent B-cell activation*), or an indirect one, occurring most efficiently in the context of an intimate interaction with a helper T cell, in a process often referred to as *cognate help*.

Because each B cell bears membrane Ig molecules with identical variable regions, cross-linkage of the cell surface receptors requires that the antigen express more than one copy of an epitope complementary to the binding site of the receptor. This requirement is fulfilled by antigens with repetitive epitopes. Among these antigens are the capsular polysaccharides of many medically important microorganisms such as pneumococci, streptococci, and meningococci. Similar expression of multiple identical epitopes on a single immunogenic particle is a property of many viruses because they express multiple copies of envelope proteins on their surface. Cross-linkage–dependent B-cell activation is a major protective immune response mounted against these microbes. The binding of complement components (see Chapter 36) to antigen or antigen/antibody complexes can increase the magnitude of the cross-linkage–dependent B-cell activation due to the action of a receptor for complement, which, together with other molecules, increases the magnitude of a B-cell response to limiting amounts of antigen.

Cognate help allows B cells to mount responses against antigens that cannot cross-link receptors and, at the same time, provides costimulatory signals that rescue B cells from inactivation when they are stimulated by weak cross-linkage events. Cognate help is dependent on the binding of antigen by the B cell's membrane Ig, the endocytosis of the antigen, and its fragmentation into peptides within the endosomal/lysosomal compartment of the cell. Some of the resultant peptides are loaded into a groove in a specialized set of cell surface proteins, the class II major histocompatibility complex (MHC) molecules (Fig. 1.5). The resultant class II/

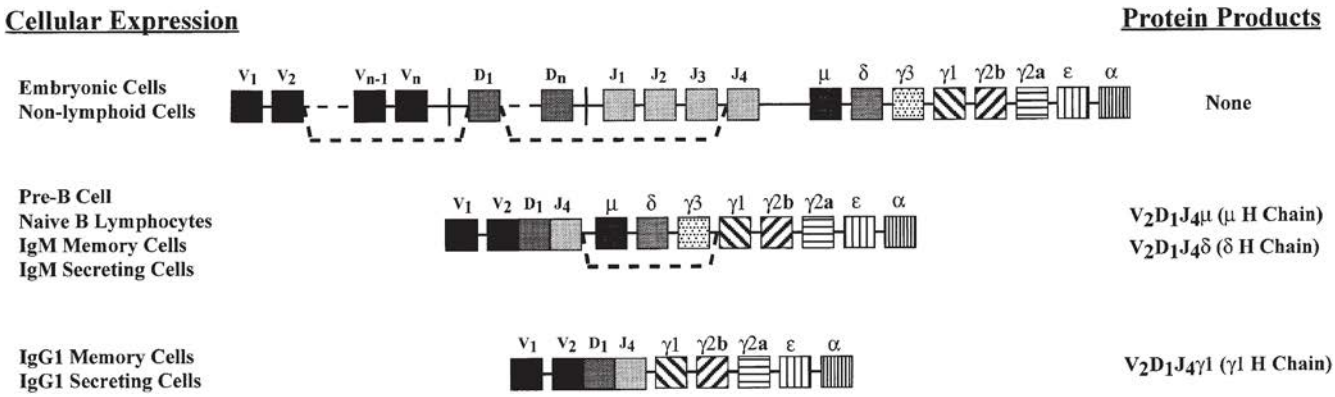


FIG. 1.3. Organization and translocation of mouse immunoglobulin (Ig)H genes. IgH chains are encoded by four distinct genetic elements: Igh-V (V), Igh-D (D), Igh-J (J) and Igh-C. The variable (V), diversity (D), and joining (J) genetic elements together specify the variable region of the heavy chain. The Igh-C element specifies the constant (C) region. The same V region can be expressed in association with each of the C regions (μ, δ, γ3,γ1,γ2b, γ2a, ε, and α). In the germline, the V, D, and J genes are far apart and there are multiple forms of each of these genes. In the course of lymphocyte development, a VDJ gene complex is formed by translocation of individual V and D genes so that they lie next to one of the J genes, with excision of the intervening genes. This VDJ complex is initially expressed with μ and δ C genes but may be subsequently translocated so that it lies near one of the other C genes (e.g., γ1) and in that case leads to the expression of a VDJ γ1 chain.

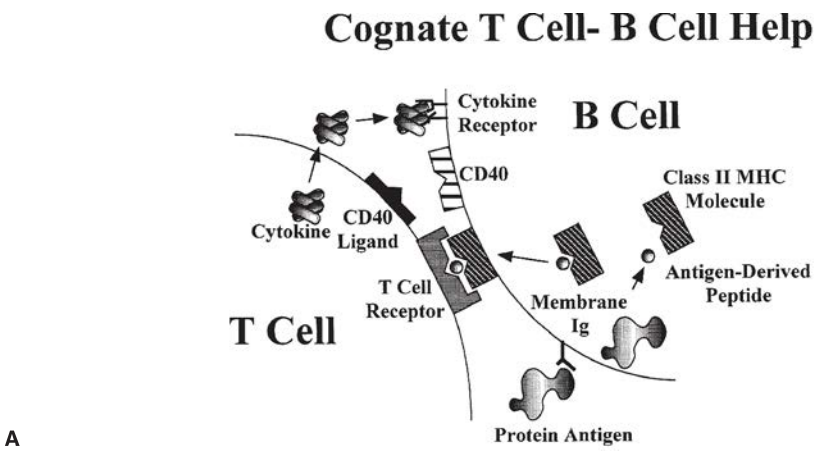


FIG. 1.4. Two Forms of B-Cell Activation. A: Cognate T cell/B cell help. Resting B cells can bind antigens that bear epitopes complementary to their cell surface Ig. Even if the antigen cannot cross-link the receptor, it will be endocytosed and enter late endosomes and lysosomes where it will be degraded to peptides. Some of these peptides will be loaded into class II major histocompatibility complex molecules and brought to the cell surface, where they can be recognized by CD4-positive T cells that bear receptors specific for that peptide/class II complex. This interaction allows an activation ligand on the T cells (CD40 ligand) to bind to its receptor on B cells (CD40) and to signal B-cell activation. In addition, the T cells secrete several cytokines that regulate the growth and differentiation of the stimulated B cell. **B:** Cross-linkage–dependent B cell activation. When B cells encounter antigens that bear multiple copies of an epitope that can bind to their surface immunoglobulin, the resultant cross-linkage stimulates biochemical signals within the cell leading to B-cell activation, growth, and differentiation. In many instances, B-cell activation events may result from both pathways of stimulation.

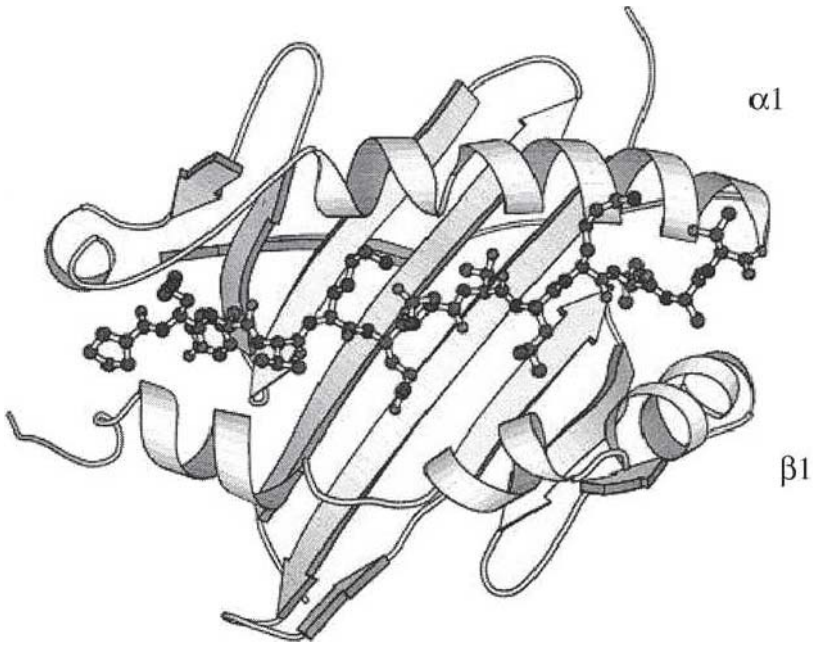


FIG. 1.5. Illustration of the structure of the peptide binding domain (α1 and β1) of a class II major histocompatibility complex molecule bound to an antigenic peptide from influenza hemagglutinin (adapted by D.H. Margulies from Stern LJ, Brown JH, Jardetzky TS, et al. Crystal structure of the human class II MHC protein HLA-DR1 complexed with an influenza virus peptide. *Nature*. 1994;68[6468]:215–221.)

peptide complexes are expressed on the cell surface. As will be discussed subsequently, these complexes are the ligands for the antigen-specific receptors of a set of T cells designated CD4 T cells. CD4 T cells that have receptors specific for the class II/peptide complex expressed on the B-cell surface recognize and interact with that B cell. That interaction results in the activation of the B cell through the agency of cell surface molecules expressed by the T cells (e.g., the CD40 ligand [CD154]) and cytokines produced by the T cell (see Fig. 1.4). The role of the B-cell receptor for antigen is to create the T-cell ligand on the surface of antigen-specific B cells; activation of the B cell derives largely from the action of the T cell. However, in many physiologic situations, receptor cross-linkage stimuli and cognate help synergize to yield more vigorous B-cell responses. Recently, it has been shown that the association of ligands for TLRs with antigen will strikingly enhance B cell responses.

B-Lymphocyte Differentiation (Chapters 9 and 10)

Activation of B cells prepares them to divide and to differentiate either into antibody-secreting cells or into memory cells, so that there are more cells specific for the antigen used for immunization. Those cells that differentiate into antibody-secreting cells account for primary antibody responses. Some of these antibody-secreting cells migrate to the bone marrow where they may continue to produce antibody for an extended period of time and may have lifetimes very long.

Memory B cells give rise to antibody-secreting cells upon rechallenge of the individual. The hallmark of the antibody response to rechallenge (a secondary response) is that it is of greater magnitude, occurs more promptly, is composed of antibodies with higher affinity for the antigen, and is dominated by Igs expressing γ, α, or ε C regions (IgG, IgA, or IgE) rather than by IgM, which is the dominant Ig of the primary response.

Division and differentiation of cells into antibody-secreting cells is largely controlled by the interaction of the activated B cells with T cells expressing CD154 and by their stimulation by T-cell–derived cytokines.

The differentiation of activated B cells into memory cells occurs in a specialized microenvironmental structure in the spleen and lymph nodes: the germinal center. The increase in antibody affinity also takes place within the germinal center. This process, designated *affinity maturation*, is dependent on somatic hypermutation. The survival of B cells within the germinal center depends on their capacity to bind antigen so that as the amount of antigen diminishes, B cells that have higher affinity receptors, either naturally or as a result of the hypermutation process, have a selective survival and growth advantage. Thus, such cells come to dominate the population.

The process through which a single H-chain V region can become expressed with genes encoding C regions other than μ or δ is referred to as Ig class switching. It is dependent on a gene translocation event through which the C-region genes between the genetic elements encoding the V region and the newly expressed C gene are excised, resulting in the switched C gene being located in the position that the Cμ gene formerly occupied (see Fig. 1.3). This process also occurs mainly in germinal centers. Both somatic hypermutation and immunoglobulin class switching depend upon the action of activation-induced cytidine deaminase (AID) that plays an important role in the breakage and repair of DNA, which is essential for recombination events.

B1 and Marginal Zone B-Lymphocytes (Chapters 8 and 10)

B lymphocytes consist of at least three distinct populations: conventional B cells, B1 B cells, and marginal zone B cells. B1 B cells were initially recognized because some express a cell-surface protein, CD5, not generally found on other B cells. In the adult mouse, B1 B cells are found in relatively high frequency in the peritoneal cavity but are present at low frequency in the spleen and lymph nodes. B1 B cells are quite numerous in fetal and perinatal life and appear to be self-renewing, in contrast to conventional B cells, in which division and memory are antigen driven.

Marginal zone B cells are localized in a distinct anatomical region of the spleen (the marginal zone) that represents the major antigen filtering and scavenging area. Like B1 B cells, marginal zone B cells express a repertoire biased toward bacterial cell wall constituents and senescent self-components. Marginal zone and B1 B cells respond very rapidly to antigenic challenge, likely independently of T cells. Uniquely, among all populations of B cells, marginal zone B cells are dependent on Notch-2 signaling for their development.

B1 B cells and marginal zone B cells are responsible for the secretion of the serum IgM that exists in nonimmunized mice, often referred to as natural IgM. Among the antibodies found in such natural IgM are molecules that can combine with phosphatidylcholine (a component of pneumococcal cell walls) and with lipopolysaccharide and influenza virus. B1 B cells also produce autoantibodies, although they are generally of low affinity and in most cases not pathogenic. There is evidence that B1 B cells are important in resistance to several pathogens and may have a significant role in mucosal immunity.

B-Lymphocyte Tolerance (Chapter 32)

One of the central problems facing the immune system is that of being able to mount highly effective immune responses to the antigens of foreign, potentially pathogenic agents while ignoring antigens associated with the host's own tissues. The mechanisms ensuring this failure to respond to self-antigens are complex and involve a series of strategies. Chief among them is elimination of cells capable of self-reactivity or the inactivation of such cells. The encounter of immature, naïve B cells with antigens with repetitive epitopes capable of cross-linking membrane Ig can lead to elimination of the B cells, particularly if no T-cell help is provided at the time of the encounter. This elimination of potentially self-reactive cells is often referred to as clonal elimination. Many self-reactive cells, rather than dying upon encounter with self-antigens, undergo a further round of Ig gene rearrangement. This *receptor editing* process allows a self-reactive cell to substitute a new receptor and therefore to avoid elimination.

There are many self-antigens that are not encountered by the developing B-cell population or that do not have the capacity to cross-link B-cell receptors to a sufficient degree to elicit the receptor editing /clonal elimination process. Such cells, even when mature, may nonetheless be inactivated through a process that involves cross-linkage of receptors without the receipt of critical costimulatory signals. These inactivated cells may be retained in the body but are unresponsive to antigen and are referred to as anergic. When removed from the presence of the anergy-inducing stimulus, anergic cells may regain responsiveness.

Immunoglobulins

Structure (Chapter 5)

Igs are the antigen-specific membrane receptors and secreted products of B cells. They are members of a large family of proteins designated the Ig supergene family. Members of the Ig supergene family have sequence homology, a common gene organization, and similarities in three-dimensional structure. The latter is characterized by a structural element referred to as the Ig fold, generally consisting of a set of seven β-pleated sheets organized into two opposing layers (Fig. 1.6). Many of the cell surface proteins that participate in immunologic recognition processes, including the T-cell receptor (TCR), the CD3 complex, and signaling molecules associated with the B-cell receptor (Igα and Igβ), are members of the Ig supergene family.

The Igs themselves are constructed of a unit that consists of two H chains and two L chains (see Fig. 1.2). The H and L chains are composed of a series of domains, each consisting of approximately 110 amino acids.

The L chains, of which there are two types (κ and λ), consist of two domains. The carboxy-terminal domain is essentially identical among L chains of a given type and is referred to as the C region. As already discussed, the amino terminal domain varies from L chain to L chain and contributes to the binding site of antibody. Because of its variability, it is referred to as the V region. The variability of this region is largely concentrated in three segments, designated the hypervariable or complementarity-determining regions (CDRs). The CDRs contain the amino acids that are the L chain's contribution to the lining of the antibody's combining site. The three CDRs are interspersed among four regions of much lower degree of variability, designated framework regions.

The H chains of Ig molecules are of several classes determined by their constant regions (μ, δ, γ [of which there are several subclasses], α and ε). An assembled Ig molecule, consisting of one or more units of two identical H and L chains, derives its name from the constant region of the H chain that it possesses. Thus, there are IgM, IgD, IgG, IgA, and IgE antibodies. The H chains each consist of a single amino terminal V region and three or four C regions. In many H chains, a hinge region separates the first and second C regions and conveys flexibility to the molecule, allowing the two combining sites of a single unit to move in relation to one another so as to promote the binding of a single antibody molecule to an antigen that has more than one copy of the same epitope. Such divalent binding to a single antigenic structure results in a great gain in energy of interaction (see Chapter 7). The H-chain V region, like that of the L chain, contains three CDRs lining the combining site of the antibody and four framework regions.

The C region of each H-chain class conveys unique functional attributes to the antibodies that possess it. Among the distinct biologic functions of each class of antibody are the following:

- IgM antibodies are potent activators of the complement system (see Chapter 36).
- IgA antibodies are secreted into a variety of bodily fluids and are principally responsible for immunity at mucosal surfaces (see Chapter 34).
- IgE antibodies are bound by specific receptors (FcεRI) on basophils and mast cells. When cross-linked by antigen, these IgE/FcεRI complexes cause the cells to release a set of mediators responsible for allergic inflammatory responses (see Chapter 45).
- IgD antibodies act virtually exclusively as membrane receptors for antigen.

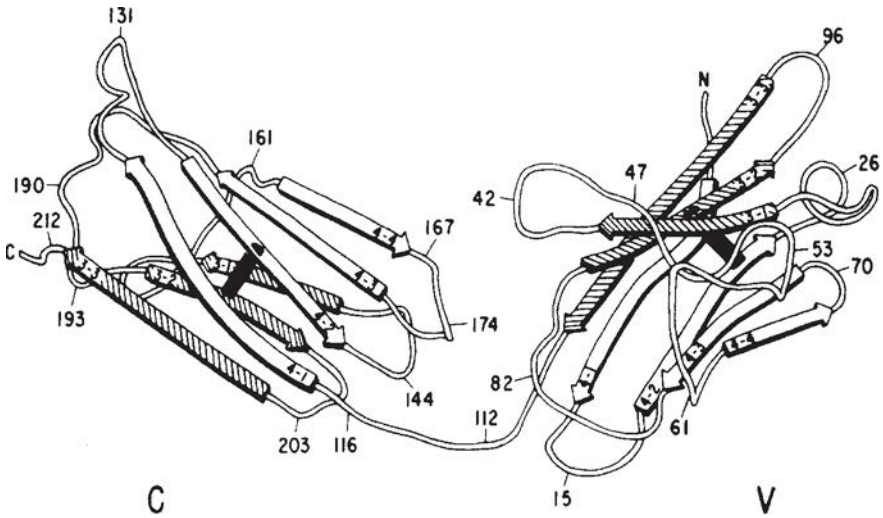


FIG. 1.6. Schematic Drawing of the Variable and Constant Domains of an Immunoglobulin Light Chain Illustrating the "Immunoglobulin Fold." The β strands participating in the antiparallel β-pleated sheets of each domain are represented as *arrows*. The β strands of the three-stranded sheets are *shaded*, whereas those in the four-stranded sheets are *white*. The intradomain disulfide bonds are represented as *black bars*. Selected amino acids are numbered with position 1 as the N terminus. (Reprinted with permission from Edmundson AB, Ely KR, Abola EE, Schiffer M, Panagiotopoulous N. Rotational allomerism and divergent evolution of domains in immunoglobulin light chains. *Biochemistry*. 1975;14:3953–3961).

- IgG antibodies, made up of four subclasses in both humans and mice, mediate a wide range of functions including transplacental passage and opsonization of antigens through binding of antigen/antibody complexes to specialized Fc receptors on macrophages and other cell types (see Chapters 19, 20, and 24).

IgD, IgG, and IgE antibodies consist of a single unit of two H and L chains. IgM antibodies are constructed of five or six such units, although they consist of a single unit when they act as membrane receptors. IgA antibodies may consist of one or more units. The antibodies that are made up of more than a single unit generally contain an additional polypeptide chain, the J chain, that appears to play a role in the polymerization process. In addition, secreted IgA expresses a chain, a secretory piece, that is derived from the receptor for polymeric IgA, which plays a role in the transport of IgA through the cells lining the lumen of the gut.

Each of the distinct Igs can exist as secreted antibodies and as membrane molecules. Antibodies and cell surface receptors of the same class made by a specific cell have identical structures except for differences in their carboxy-terminal regions. Membrane Igs possess a hydrophobic region, spanning the membrane, and a short intracytoplasmic tail, both of which are lacking in the secretory form.

Immunoglobulin Genetics (Chapter 6)

The components of the Ig H-chain gene have already been alluded to. To reiterate, the IgH chain gene of a mature lymphocyte is derived from a set of genetic elements that are separated from one another in the germline. The V region is composed of three types of genetic elements: V_H, D, and J_H. More than 100 V_H elements exist; there are more than 10 D elements and a small number of J_H elements (4 in the mouse). An H-chain V_HDJ_H gene is created by the translocation of one of the D elements on a given chromosome to one of the J_H elements on that chromosome, generally with the excision of the intervening DNA. This is followed by a second translocation event in which one of the V_H elements is brought into apposition with the assembled DJ_H element to create the V_HDJ_H (V region) gene (see Fig. 1.3). Although it is likely that the choice of the V_H, D, and J_H elements that are assembled is not entirely random, the combinatorial process allows the creation of a very large number of distinct H-chain V-region genes. Additional diversity is created by the imprecision of the joining events and by the deletion of nucleotides and addition of new, untemplated nucleotides between D and J_H and between V_H and D, forming N regions in these areas. This further increases the diversity of distinct IgH chains that can be generated from the relatively modest amount of genetic information present in the germline.

The assembly of L-chain genes follows generally similar rules. However, L chains are assembled from V_L and J_L elements only. Although there is junctional diversity, no N regions exist for L chains. Additional diversity is provided by the existence of two classes of L chains, κ and λ.

An Ig molecule is assembled by the pairing of an IgH-chain polypeptide with an IgL-chain polypeptide. Although this process is almost certainly not completely random, it allows the formation of an exceedingly large number of distinct Ig molecules, the majority of which will have individual specificities.

The rearrangement events that result in the assembly of expressible IgH and IgL chains occur in the course of B-cell development in pro-B cells and pre-B cells, respectively (see Fig. 1.1). This process is regulated by the Ig products of the rearrangement events. The formation of a μ chain signals the termination of rearrangement of H-chain gene elements and the onset of rearrangement of L-chain gene elements, with κ rearrangements generally preceding λ rearrangements. One important consequence of this is that only a single expressible μ chain will be produced in a given cell, as the first expressible μ chain shuts off the possibility of producing an expressible μ chain on the alternative chromosome. Comparable mechanisms exist to ensure that only one L-chain gene is produced, leading to the phenomenon known as allelic exclusion. Thus, the product of only one of the two alternative allelic regions at both the H- and L-chain loci are expressed. The closely related phenomenon of L-chain isotype exclusion ensures the production of either κ or λ chains in an individual cell, but not both. An obvious but critical consequence of allelic exclusion is that in most cases an individual B cell makes antibodies, all of which have identical H- and L-chain V regions, a central prediction of the clonal selection theory of the immune response. During receptor editing, secondary rearrangements occur. Receptor editing is induced when the initial membrane Ig is capable of self-reactivity. As a consequence of the resultant secondary rearrangement, Ig of a different specificity is expressed, usually no longer self-reactive.

Class Switching (Chapter 6)

An individual B cell continues to express the same IgH-chain V region as it matures but it can switch the IgH-chain C region it uses (see Fig. 1.3). Thus, a cell that expresses receptors of the IgM and IgD classes may differentiate into a cell that expresses IgG, IgA, or IgE receptors and then into a cell secreting antibody of the same class as it expressed on the cell surface. This process allows the production of antibodies capable of mediating distinct biologic functions but that retain the same antigen-combining specificity. When linked with the process of affinity maturation of antibodies, Ig class switching provides antibodies of extremely high efficacy in preventing re-infection with microbial pathogens or in rapidly eliminating such pathogens. The associated phenomena of class switching and affinity maturation account for the high degree of effectiveness of antibodies produced in secondary immune responses.

The process of class switching is known to involve a genetic recombination event between specialized switch (S) regions, containing repetitive sequences, that are located upstream of each C region genetic element (with the exception of the δ C region). Thus, the S region upstream of the μ C_H region gene (Sμ) recombines with an S region upstream of a more 3′ isotype, such as Sγ1, to create a chimeric Sμ/Sγ1

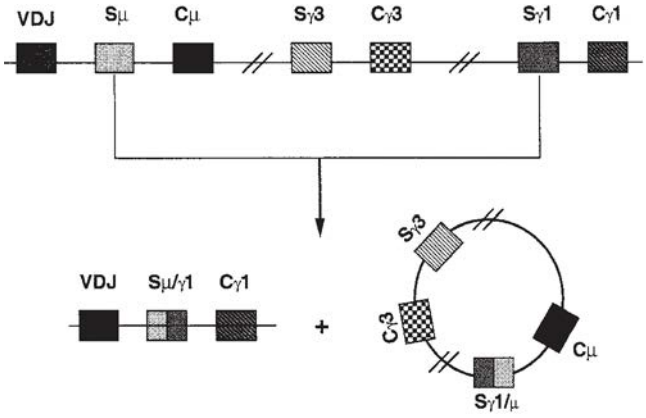


FIG. 1.7. Immunoglobulin Class Switching. The process through which a given VDJ gene in a stimulated B cell may switch the constant region gene with which it is associated from μ to another, such as γ1, is illustrated. A recombination event occurs in which DNA between a cleavage point in Sμ and one in Sγ1 forms a circular episome. This results in Cγ1 being located immediately downstream of the chimeric Sμ/γ1 region, in a position such that transcription initiating upstream of VDJ results in the formation of VDJCγ1 mRNA and γ1 H-chain protein.

region and in the deletion of the intervening DNA (Fig. 1.7). The genes encoding the C regions of the various γ chains (in the human γ1, γ2, γ3, and γ4; in the mouse γ1, γ2a, γ2b, and γ3), of the α chain, and of the ε chain are located 3′ of the Cμ and Cδ genes.

The induction of the switching process is dependent on the action of a specialized set of B-cell stimulants. Of these, the most widely studied are CD154, expressed on the surface of activated T cells, and the TLR ligands such as bacterial lipopolysaccharide. The targeting of the C region that will be expressed as a result of switching is largely determined by cytokines. Thus, IL-4 determines that switch events in the human and mouse will be to the ε C region and to the γ4 (human) or γ1 (mouse) C regions. In the mouse, interferon-gamma (IFN-γ) determines switching to γ2a and transforming growth factor-beta (TGF-β) determines switching to α. A major goal is to understand the physiologic determination of the specificity of the switching process. Because cytokines are often the key controllers of which Ig classes will represent the switched isotype, this logically translates into asking what regulates the relative amounts of particular cytokines that are produced by different modes of immunization.

As already noted, both the switching process and somatic hypermutation depend upon the AID. Mice and humans that lack AID fail to undergo both immunoglobulin class switching and somatic hypermutation.

Affinity Maturation and Somatic Hypermutation (Chapters 6 and 10)

The process of generation of diversity embodied in the construction of the H- and L-chain V-region genes and of the pairing of H and L chains creates a large number of distinct antibody molecules, each expressed in an individual B cell. This primary repertoire is sufficiently large so that most epitopes on foreign antigens will encounter B cells with complementary receptors. Thus, if adequate T-cell help can be generated, antibody responses can be made to a wide array of foreign substances. Nonetheless, the antibody that is initially produced usually has a relatively low affinity for the antigen. This is partially compensated for by the fact that IgM, the antibody initially made, is a pentamer. Through multivalent binding, high avidities can be achieved even if individual combining sites have only modest affinity (see Chapter 7). In the course of T-cell–dependent B-cell stimulation, particularly within the germinal center, a process of somatic hypermutation is initiated that leads to a large number of mutational events, largely confined to the H-chain and L-chain V-region genes and their immediately surrounding introns.

During the process of somatic hypermutation, mutational rates of 1 per 1,000 base pairs per generation may be achieved. This implies that with each cell division close to one mutation will occur in either the H- or L-chain V region of an individual cell. Such a high rate of mutation creates an enormous increase in antibody diversity. Although most of these mutations will either not affect the affinity with which the antibody binds its ligand or will lower that affinity, some will increase it. Thus, some B cells emerge that can bind antigen more avidly than the initial population of responding cells. Because there is an active process of apoptosis in the germinal center from which B cells can be rescued by the binding of antigen to their membrane receptors, cells with the most avid receptors should have an advantage over other antigen-specific B cells and should come to dominate the population of responding cells. Thus, upon rechallenge, the affinity of antibody produced will be greater than that in the initial response. As time after immunization elapses, the affinity of antibody produced will increase. This process leads to the presence in immunized individuals of high-affinity antibodies that are much more effective, on a weight basis, in protecting against microbial agents and other antigen-bearing pathogens than was the antibody initially produced. Together with antibody class switching, affinity maturation results in the increased effectiveness of antibody in preventing reinfection with agents with which the individual has had a prior encounter.

T-LYMPHOCYTES

T-lymphocytes constitute the second major class of lymphocytes. They derive from precursors in hematopoietic tissue, undergo differentiation in the thymus (hence the name thymus-derived [T]-lymphocytes), and are then seeded to the peripheral lymphoid tissue and to the recirculating pool of lymphocytes (see Chapters 13 and 14). T cells are subdivided into two distinct classes based on the cell surface receptors they express. The majority of T cells express TCRs consisting of α and β chains. A second group of T cells express receptors made up of γ and δ chains. Among the α/β T cells are two important sublineages: those that express the coreceptor molecule CD4 (CD4 T cells) and those that express CD8 (CD8 T cells). These cells differ in how they recognize

antigen and mediate different types of regulatory and effector functions.

CD4 T cells are the major *helper* cells of the immune system (see Chapter 29). Their helper function depends both on cell surface molecules, such as CD154, induced upon these cells when they are activated and on the wide array of cytokines they secrete upon stimulation. CD4 T cells tend to differentiate, as a consequence of priming, into cells that principally secrete the cytokines IL-4, IL-13, IL-5 and IL-6 (T_{H2} cells) into cells that mainly produce IFN-γ and lymphotoxin (T_{H1} cells), or into cells that produce IL-17 and related cytokines (T_{H17} cells). T_{H2} cells are very effective in immunity to helminthic parasites, T_{H1} cells are effective inducers of cellular immune responses, involving enhancement in the microbicidal activity of monocytes and macrophages and consequent increased efficiency in lysing microorganisms in intracellular vesicular compartments, while T_{H17} cells are efficient recruiters of granulocytes and other cells of the inflammatory system and play a major role in responses to extracellular bacterial pathogens. CD4 T cells can also acquire the capacity to enter B-cell follicles and help B cells develop into antibody-producing cells and undergo immunoglobulin class switching and affinity maturation; the cells are referred to as T follicular helper (T_{fh}) cells. Another possible fate of naïve CD4 T cells is to differentiate into induced regulatory T cells (iT_{regs}). However, most T_{regs} develop as a independent lineage of CD4 T cells. T_{regs} express the transcription factor Foxp3 and many express large amounts of the α chain of the IL-2 receptor (CD25).

T cells mediate important effector functions. Some of these are determined by the patterns of cytokines they secrete. These powerful molecules can be directly toxic to target cells and can mobilize potent inflammatory mechanisms. In addition, T cells, particularly CD8 T cells, can develop into cytotoxic T-lymphocytes (CTLs) capable of efficiently lysing target cells that express antigens recognized by the CTLs.

T-Lymphocyte Antigen Recognition (Chapters 11, 21, and 22)

T cells differ from B cells in their mechanism of antigen recognition. Ig, the B-cell's receptor, binds to individual antigenic epitopes on the surface of native molecules, be they on cell surfaces or in solution. Antibody and B-cell receptors evolved to bind to and to protect against microorganisms in extracellular fluids.

By contrast, T cells invariably recognize cell-associated molecules and mediate their functions by interacting with and altering the behavior of such *antigen-presenting cells* (APCs). Indeed, the TCR does not recognize antigenic determinants on intact, undenatured molecules. Rather, it recognizes a complex consisting of a peptide, derived by intracellular proteolysis of the antigen, bound into a specialized groove of a class II or class I MHC protein. Indeed, what differentiates a CD4 T cell from a CD8 T cell is that the CD4 T cells recognize peptide/class II complexes whereas the CD8 T cells recognize peptide/class I complexes.

The TCR's ligand (i.e., the peptide/MHC protein complex) is created within the APC. In general, class II MHC molecules bind peptides derived from proteins that have been taken up by the APC through an endocytic process (Fig. 1.8). These endocytosed proteins are fragmented by proteolytic enzymes within the endosomal/lysosomal compartment. The resulting peptides are loaded into class II MHC that traffic through this compartment. Peptide-loaded class II molecules are then expressed on the surface of the APC where they are available to be bound by CD4 T cells that have TCRs capable of recog-

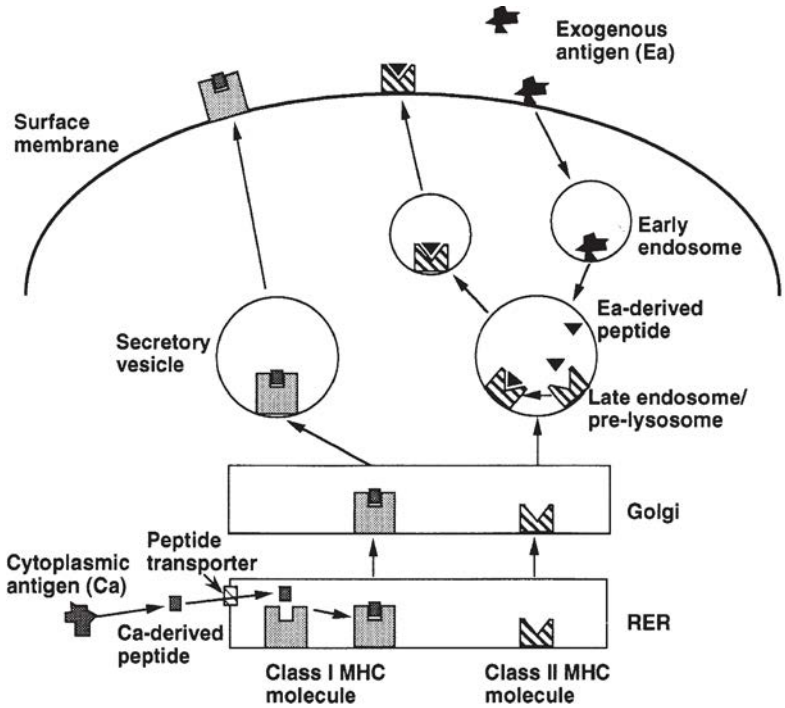


FIG. 1.8. Pathways of Antigen Processing. Exogenous antigen (Ea) enters the cell via endocytosis and is transported from early endosomes into late endosomes or prelysosomes, where it is fragmented and where resulting peptides (Ea-derived peptides) may be loaded into class II major histocompatibility complex (MHC) molecules. The latter have been transported from the rough endoplasmic reticulum (RER) through the Golgi apparatus to the peptide-containing vesicles. Class II MHC molecules/Ea-derived peptide complexes are then transported to the cell surface, where they may be recognized by T-cell receptor expressed on CD4+ T cells. Cytoplasmic antigens (Ca) are degraded in the cytoplasm and then enter the RER through a peptide transporter. In the RER, Ca-derived peptides are loaded into class I MHC molecules that move through the Golgi apparatus into secretory vesicles and are then expressed on the cell surface where they may be recognized by CD8+ T cells (Reprinted with permission from Paul WE. In: Gallin JI, Goldstein, I, Snyderman, R, ed. *Inflammation.* New York: Raven,;1992:776.)

nizing the expressed cell surface peptide/MHC protein complex. Thus, CD4 T cells are specialized to largely react with antigens derived from extracellular sources.

In contrast, class I MHC molecules are mainly loaded with peptides derived from internally synthesized proteins, such as viral gene products. These peptides are produced from cytosolic proteins by proteolysis within the proteasome and are translocated into the rough endoplasmic reticulum. Such peptides, generally nine amino acids in length, are bound by class I MHC molecules. The complex is brought to the cell surface, where it can be recognized by CD8 T cells expressing appropriate receptors. This property gives the T-cell system, particularly CD8 T cells, the ability to detect cells expressing proteins that are different from, or produced in much larger amounts than, those of cells of the remainder of the organism (e.g., viral antigens [whether internal, envelope, or cell surface] or mutant antigens [such as active oncogene products]), even if these proteins, in their intact form, are neither expressed on the cell surface nor secreted.

Although this division of class I–binding peptides being derived from internally synthesized proteins and class II–binding peptides from imported proteins is generally correct, there are important exceptions to this rule that are central for the function of the immune system. The most effective priming of naive CD8 T cells occurs in response to peptide/MHC-I complexes expressed by DCs and yet many viruses do not infect these cells but rather target other cell types. Viral antigens produced by infected cells can be taken up by specialized DCs and loaded into class I molecules in a process referred to as cross-presentation.

T-Lymphocyte Receptors (Chapter 11)

The TCR is a disulfide-linked heterodimer (Fig. 1.9). Its constituent chains (α and β, or γ and δ) are Ig supergene

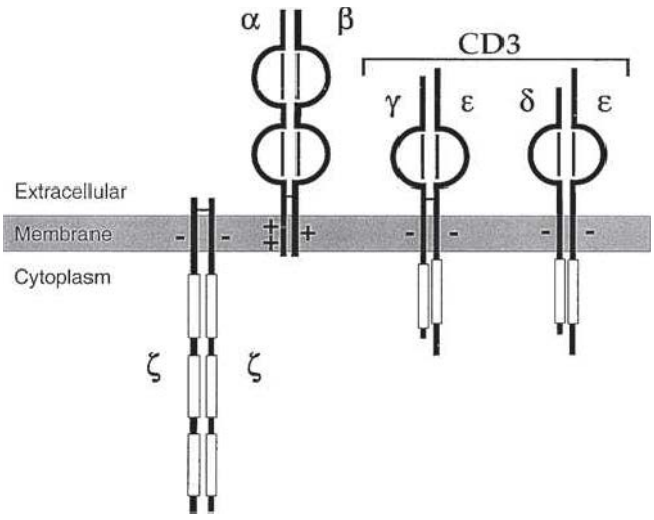


FIG. 1.9. The T-Cell Antigen Receptor. Illustrated schematically is the antigen binding subunit comprised of an αβ heterodimer and the associated invariant CD3 and ζ chains. Acidic (–) and basic (+) residues located within the plasma membrane are indicated. The *open rectangular boxes* indicate motifs within the cytoplasmic domains that interact with protein tyrosine kinases.

family members. The TCR is associated with a set of transmembrane proteins, collectively designated the CD3 complex, that play a critical role in signal transduction. The CD3 complex consists of γ, δ (note that the CD3 γ and δ chains and the TCR γ and δ chains are distinct polypeptides that, unfortunately, have similar designations) and ε chains and is associated with a homodimer of two ζ chains or a heterodimer of ζ and η chains. CD3 γ, δ, and ε consist of extracellular domains that are Ig supergene family members. The cytosolic domains of CD3 γ, δ, and ε and of ζ and η contain one or more copies of the immunoreceptor tyrosine–based activation motif (ITAM) (D/ExxYxxLxxxxxxxYxxL/I) that is found in a variety of chains associated with immune recognition receptors. This motif appears to be important in the signal transduction process and provides a site through which protein tyrosine kinases can interact with these chains to propagate signaling events.

The TCR chains are organized much like Ig chains. Their N-terminal portions are variable and their C-terminal portions are constant. Furthermore, similar recombinational mechanisms are used to assemble the V-region genes of the TCR chains. Thus, the V region of the TCR β chain is encoded by a gene constructed from three distinct genetic elements (V_β, D, and J_β) that are separated in the germline. Although the relative numbers of V_β, D, and J_β genes differ from that for the comparable Ig H variable region elements, the strategies for creation of a very large number of distinct genes by combinatorial assembly are the same. Both junctional diversity and N-region addition further diversify the genes and their encoded products. TCR β has fewer *V* genes than IgH but much more diversity centered on the *D/J* region, which encodes the equivalent of the third CDR of Igs. The α chain follows similar principles, except that it does not use a *D* gene.

The genes for TCR γ and δ chains are assembled in a similar manner except that they have many fewer V genes from which to choose. Indeed, γ/δ T cells in certain environments, such as the skin and specific mucosal surfaces, are exceptionally homogeneous. It has been suggested that the TCRs encoded by these essentially invariant γ and δ chains may be specific for some antigen that signals microbial invasion and that activation of γ/δ T cells through this mechanism constitutes an initial response that aids the development of the more sophisticated response of α/β T cells.

T-Lymphocyte Activation (Chapter 12)

T-cell activation is dependent on the interaction of the TCR/CD3 complex with its cognate ligand, a peptide bound in the groove of a class I or class II MHC molecule, on the surface of a competent APC. Through the use of chimeric cell surface molecules that possess cytosolic domains largely limited to the ITAM signaling motif alluded to previously, it is clear that cross-linkage of molecules containing such domains can generate some of the signals that result from TCR engagement. Nonetheless, the molecular events set in motion by receptor engagement are complex ones. Among the earliest steps is the activation of tyrosine kinases leading to the tyrosine phosphorylation of a set of substrates that control

several signaling pathways. Current evidence indicates that early events in this process involve the src family tyrosine kinases $p56^{lck}$, associated with the cytosolic domains of the CD4 and CD8 coreceptors, and $p59^{fyn}$, and ZAP-70, a Syk family tyrosine kinase, that binds to the phosphorylated ITAMs of the ζ chain. The protein tyrosine phosphatase CD45, found on the surface of all T cells, also plays a critical role in T-cell activation.

A series of important substrates are tyrosine phosphorylated as a result of the action of the kinases associated with the TCR complex. These include a 1) set of adapter proteins that link the TCR to the Ras pathway; 2) phospholipase Cγ1, the tyrosine phosphorylation of which increases its catalytic activity and engages the inositol phospholipid metabolic pathway, leading to elevation of intracellular free calcium concentration and activation protein kinase C; and 3) a series of other important enzymes that control cellular growth and differentiation. Particularly important is the phosphorylation of LAT, a molecule that acts as an organizing scaffold to which a series of signaling intermediates bind and upon which they become activated and control downstream signaling.

The recognition and early activation events result in the reorganization of cell surface and cytosolic molecules on the T cell, and correspondingly, on the APC to produce a structure, the *immunological synapse*. The apposition of key interacting molecules involving a small segment of the membranes of the two cells concentrates these interacting molecules in a manner that both strengthens the interaction between the cells and intensifies the signaling events. It also creates a limited space into which cytokines may be secreted to influence the behavior of the interacting cells. The formation of the immunological synapse is one mechanism through which the recognition of relatively small numbers of ligands by TCRs on a specific T cell can be converted into a vigorous stimulatory process.

In general, normal T cells and cloned T-cell lines that are stimulated only by TCR cross-linkage fail to give complete responses. TCR engagement by itself may often lead to a response in which the key T-cell–derived growth factor, IL-2, is not produced and in which the cells enter a state of anergy such that they are unresponsive or poorly responsive to a subsequent competent stimulus (see Chapter 32). Full responsiveness of a T cell requires, in addition to receptor engagement, an accessory cell–delivered costimulatory signal. The engagement of CD28 on the T cell by CD80 and/or CD86 on the APC (or the engagement of comparable ligand/receptor pairs on the two cells) provides potent costimulatory activity. Inhibitors of this interaction markedly diminish antigen-specific T-cell activation in vivo and in vitro, indicating that the CD80/86–CD28 interaction is physiologically important in T-cell activation (see Chapters 12 and 14).

The interaction of CD80/86 with CD28 increases cytokine production by the responding T cells. For the production of IL-2, this increase appears to be mediated both by enhancing the transcription of the IL-2 gene and by stabilizing IL-2 mRNA. These dual consequences of the CD80/86–CD28 interaction cause a striking increase in the production of IL-2 by antigen-stimulated T cells.

CD80/86 has a second receptor on the T cell, CTLA-4, that is expressed later in the course of T-cell activation. The bulk of evidence indicates that the engagement of CTLA-4 by CD80/86 leads to a set of biochemical signals that terminate the T-cell response. Mice that are deficient in CTLA-4 expression develop fulminant autoimmune responses and anti–CTLA-4 antibodies are used as drugs to enhance antitumor immune responses.

T Lymphocyte Development (Chapter 13)

Upon entry into the thymus, T-cell precursors do not express TCR chains, the CD3 complex, or the CD4 or CD8 molecules (Fig. 1.10). Because these cells lack both CD4 and CD8, they are often referred to as double-negative cells. Thymocytes develop from this double-negative pool into cells that are both CD4+ and CD8+ (double-positive cells) and express low levels of TCR and CD3 on their surface. In turn, double-positive cells further differentiate into relatively mature thymocytes that express either CD4 or CD8 (single-positive cells) and high levels of the TCR/CD3 complex.

The expression of the TCR depends on complex rearrangement processes that generate TCR α and β (or γ and

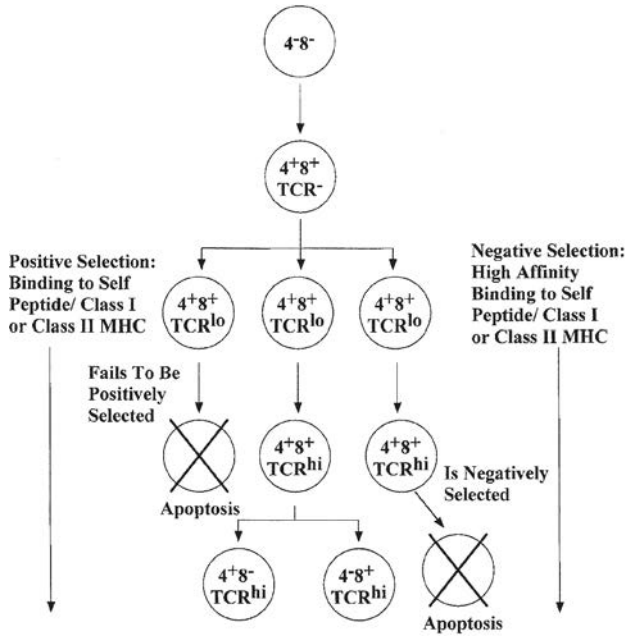


FIG. 1.10. Development of α/β T Cells in the Thymus. Double-negative T cells (4^-8^-) acquire CD4 and CD8 (4^+8^+) and then express α/β TCRs, initially at low levels. Thereafter, the degree of expression of T-cell receptiors increases and the cells differentiate into CD4 or CD8 cells and are then exported to the periphery. Once the T cells have expressed receptors, their survival depends upon the recognition of peptide/major histocompatibility complex (MHC) class I or class II molecules with an affinity above some given threshold. Cells that fail to do so undergo apoptosis. These cells have failed to be *positively selected*. Positive selection is associated with the differentiation of 4^+8^+ cells into CD4 or CD8 cells. Positive selection involving peptide/class I MHC molecules leads to the development of CD8 cells whereas positive selection involving peptide/class II MHC molecules leads to the development of CD4 cells. If a T cell recognizes a peptide/MHC complex with high affinity, it is also eliminated via apoptosis (it is *negatively selected*).

δ) chains. Once TCR chains are expressed, these cells undergo two important selection processes within the thymus. One, termed *negative selection*, is the deletion of cells that express receptors that bind with high affinity to complexes of self-peptides with self-MHC molecules. This is a major mechanism through which the T-cell compartment develops immunologic unresponsiveness to self antigens (see Chapters 13 and 32). In addition, a second major selection process is *positive selection*, in which T cells with receptors with "intermediate affinity" for self-peptides bound to self-MHC molecules are selected, thus forming the basis of the T-cell repertoire for foreign peptides associated with self-MHC molecules. T cells that are not positively selected are eliminated in the thymic cortex by apoptosis. Similarly, T cells that are negatively selected as a result of high-affinity binding to self-peptide/self-MHC complexes are also deleted through apoptotic death. These two selection processes result in the development of a population of T cells that are biased toward the recognition of peptides in association with self-MHC molecules from which those cells that are potentially autoreactive (capable of high-affinity binding of self-peptide/self-MHC complexes) have been purged.

One important event in the development of T cells is their differentiation from double-positive cells into CD4+ or CD8+ single-positive cells. This process involves the interaction of double-positive thymocytes with peptide bound to class II or class I MHC molecules on accessory cells. Indeed, CD4 binds to monomorphic sites on class II molecules, whereas CD8 binds to comparable sites on class I molecules. The capacity of the TCR and CD4 (or of the TCR and CD8) to bind to a class II MHC (or a class I MHC) molecule on an accessory cell leads either to the differentiation of double-positive thymocytes into CD4+ (or CD8+) single-positive T cells or to the selection of cells that have "stochastically" differentiated down the CD4 (or CD8) pathway.

Less is understood about the differentiation of thymocytes that express TCRs composed of γ/δ chains. These cells fail to express either CD4 or CD8. However, γ/δ cells are relatively numerous early in fetal life; this, together with their limited degree of heterogeneity, suggests that they may comprise a relatively primitive T-cell compartment.

T-Lymphocyte Functions (Chapters 14, 29, and 33)

T cells mediate a wide range of immunologic functions. These include the capacity to help B cells develop into antibody-producing cells, the capacity to increase the microbicidal action of monocytes/macrophages, the inhibition of certain types of immune responses, direct killing of target cells, and mobilization of the inflammatory response. In general, these effects depend on their expression of specific cell-surface molecules and the secretion of cytokines.

T Cells that Help Antibody Responses (Chapter 13)

Helper T cells, T_{FH} cells, can stimulate B cells to make antibody responses to proteins and other T-cell–dependent antigens. T-cell–dependent antigens are immunogens in which individual epitopes appear only once or only a limited number of times so that they are unable to cross-link the membrane Ig of B cells or do so inefficiently. B cells bind the antigen through their membrane Ig, and the complex undergoes endocytosis. Within the endosomal and lysosomal compartments, the antigen is fragmented into peptides by proteolytic enzymes and one or more of the generated peptides are loaded into class II MHC molecules, which traffic through this vesicular compartment. The resulting complex of class II MHC molecule and bound peptide is exported to the B-cell surface membrane. T cells with receptors specific for the peptide/class II molecular complex recognize that complex on the B cell.

B-cell activation depends not only on the binding of peptide/class II MHC complexes on the B cell surface by the TCR but also on the interaction of T-cell CD154 with CD40 on the B cell. T cells do not constitutively express CD154; rather, it is induced as a result of an interaction with an activated APC that expresses a cognate antigen recognized by the TCR of the T cell. Furthermore, CD80/86 are generally expressed by activated but not resting B cells so that interactions involving resting B cells and naïve T cells generally do not lead to efficient antibody production. By contrast, a T cell already activated and expressing CD154 can interact with a resting B cell, leading to its upregulation of CD80/86 and to a more productive T-cell/B-cell interaction with the delivery of cognate help and the development of the B cell into an antibody-producing cell. Similarly, activated B cells expressing large amounts of class II molecules and CD80/86 can act as effective APCs and can participate with T cells in efficient cognate help interactions. Cross-linkage of membrane Ig on the B cell, even if inefficient, may synergize with the CD154/CD40 interaction to yield vigorous B-cell activation.

The subsequent events in the B-cell response program, including proliferation, Ig secretion, and class switching, either depend on or are enhanced by the actions of T-cell–derived cytokines. Thus, B-cell proliferation and Ig secretion are enhanced by the actions of several type I cytokines including IL-2 and IL-4. Ig class switching is dependent both on the initiation of competence for switching, which can be induced by the CD154/CD40 interaction, and on the targeting of particular C regions for switching, which is determined, in many instances, by cytokines. The best studied example of this is the role of IL-4 in determining switching to IgG1 and IgE in the mouse and to IgG4 and IgE in the human. Indeed, the central role of IL-4 in the production of IgE is demonstrated by the fact that mice that lack the IL-4 gene or the gene for the IL-4 receptor α chain, as a result of gene knockouts, have a marked defect in IgE production. Similarly, IFN-γ determines switching to IgG_{2a} in the mouse. The relationship between T_{FH} cells that produce IL-4 and T_{H2} cells and those that produce IFN-γ and T_{H1} cells is still uncertain.

Induction of Cellular Immunity (Chapters 14 and 19)

T cells also may act to enhance the capacity of monocytes and macrophages to destroy intracellular microorganisms. In particular, IFN-γ enhances several mechanisms through which mononuclear phagocytes destroy intracellular bacteria and parasites, including the generation of nitric oxide and induction of TNF. T_{H1} cells are particularly effective in

enhancing microbicidal action because they produce IFN-γ. By contrast, three of the major cytokines produced by T_{H2} cells, IL-4, IL-13, and IL-10, block these activities; IL-4 and IL-13 induce an alternative gene activation program in macrophages resulting in *alternatively activated macrophages*, characterized (in the mouse) by the expression of arginase 1 and chitinase. Thus, T_{H2} cells often oppose the action of T_{H1} cells in inducing cellular immunity and in certain infections with microorganisms that are intracellular pathogens of macrophages; a T_{H2}-dominated response may be associated with failure to control the infection.

Regulatory T Cells (Chapter 33)

There has been a longstanding interest in the capacity of T cells to diminish as well as to help immune responses. Cells that mediate such effects are referred to as T_{regs}. T_{regs} may be identified by their expression of Foxp3 and of CD25, the IL-2 receptor alpha chain. These cells inhibit the capacity of both CD4 and CD8 T cells to respond to their cognate antigens. The mechanisms through which their suppressor function is mediated are still somewhat controversial. In some instances, it appears that cell/cell contact is essential for suppression, whereas in other circumstances production of cytokines by T_{regs} has been implicated in their ability to inhibit responses. Evidence has been presented for both IL-10 and TGF-β as mediators of inhibition.

T_{regs} have been particularly studied in the context of various autoimmune conditions. In the absence of T_{regs}, conventional T cells cause several types of autoimmune responses, including autoimmune gastritis and inflammatory bowel disease. T_{regs} express cell surface receptors allowing them to recognize autoantigens; their responses to such recognition results in the suppression of responses by conventional T cells. Whether the receptor repertoire of T_{regs} and the conventional T cells are the same has not been fully determined, although there is increasing evidence that T_{regs} derive from a thymic CD4 T-cell population with relatively high affinity for self-antigen. As noted previously, iT_{regs} can be derived in the periphery from naive CD4 T-cell populations. This is seen when naive cells are stimulated by their cognate ligands in the presence of TGF-β and IL-2.

Cytotoxic T Cells (Chapter 37)

One of the most striking actions of T cells is the lysis of cells expressing specific antigens. Most cells with such cytotoxic activity are CD8 T cells that recognize peptides derived from proteins produced within the target cell and bound to class I MHC molecules expressed on the surface of the target cell. However, CD4 T cells can express CTL activity, although in such cases the antigen recognized is a peptide associated with a class II MHC molecule; often, such peptides derive from exogenous antigens.

There are two major mechanisms of cytotoxicity. One involves the production by the CTL of perforin, a molecule that can insert into the membrane of target cells and promote the lysis of that cell. Perforin-mediated lysis is mediated a series of enzymes produced by activated CTLs, referred to as granzymes. Many active CTLs also express large amounts of fas ligand on their surface. The interaction of fas ligand on the surface of the CTL with fas on the surface of the target cell initiates apoptosis in the target cell.

CTL-mediated lysis is a major mechanism for the destruction of virus-infected cells. If activated during the period in which the virus is in its eclipse phase, CTLs may be capable of eliminating virus and curing the host with relatively limited cell destruction. On the other hand, vigorous CTL activity after a virus has been widely disseminated may lead to substantial tissue injury because of the large number of cells that are killed by the action of the CTLs. Thus, in many infections, the disease is caused by the destruction of tissue by CTLs rather than by the virus itself. One example is hepatitis B, in which much of the liver damage represents the attack of hepatitis B virus–specific CTLs on infected liver cells.

It is usually observed that CTLs that have been induced as a result of a viral infection or intentional immunization must be reactivated in vitro through the recognition of antigen on the target cell. This is particularly true if some interval has elapsed between the time of infection or immunization and the time of test. This has led to some question being raised as to the importance of CTL immunity in protection against re-infection and how important CTL generation is in the long-term immunity induced by protective vaccines. On the other hand, in active infections, such as seen in individuals with HIV, CTL that can kill their target cells immediately are often seen. There is much evidence to suggest that these cells play an active role in controlling the number of HIV-positive T cells.

CYTOKINES (CHAPTERS 25 TO 28)

Many of the functions of cells of the immune system are mediated through the production of a set of small proteins referred to as cytokines. These proteins can now be divided into several families. They include the type I cytokines or hematopoeitins that encompass many of the interleukins (i.e., IL-2, IL-3, IL-4, IL-5, IL-6, IL-7, IL-9, IL-11, IL-12, IL-13, IL-15, IL-21, IL-23, and IL-27), as well as several hematopoietic growth factors; the type II cytokines, including the interferons and IL-10; the TNF-related molecules, including TNF, lymphotoxin, and Fas ligand; Ig superfamily members, including IL-1, IL-18, IL-33, IL-36, and IL-37; and the chemokines, a large family of molecules playing critical roles in a wide variety of immune and inflammatory functions. IL-17 and its congeners, including IL-25, constitute a structurally unique set of cytokines.

Many of the cytokines are T-cell products; their production represents one of the means through which the wide variety of functions of T cells are mediated. Most cytokines are not constitutive products of the T cell. Rather, they are produced in response to T-cell activation, usually resulting from presentation of antigen to T cells by APCs in concert with the action of a costimulatory molecule, such as the interaction of CD80/86 with CD28. Although cytokines are produced in small quantities, they are potent, binding to their receptors with equilibrium constants of approximately 10^{10} M^{-1}. In some instances, cytokines are directionally secreted into the immunological synapse formed between a T cell and an APC. In such cases, the cytokine acts in a paracrine manner. Indeed, many cytokines

have limited action at a distance from the cell that produced them. This appears to be particularly true of many of the type I cytokines. However, other cytokines act by diffusion through extracellular fluids and blood to target cells that are distant from the producers. Among these are cytokines that have proinflammatory effects, such as IL-1, IL-6, and TNF, and the chemokines, that play important roles in regulating the migration of lymphocytes and other cell types.

Chemokines (Chapter 28)

A large family of small proteins that are *chemotactic cytokines* (chemokines) have been described. While members of this family have a variety of functions, perhaps the most dramatic is their capacity to regulate leukocyte migration and thus to act as critical dynamic organizers of cell distribution in the immune and inflammatory responses. The receptors for chemokines are seven transmembrane-spanning, G-protein coupled receptors.

The chemokines are subdivided based on the number and positioning of their highly conserved cysteines. Among chemokines with four conserved cysteines, the cysteines are adjacent in one large group (the CC chemokines), whereas in a second large group they are separated by one amino acid (CXC chemokines). There are also rare chemokines in which the cysteines are separated by three amino acids (CX3C) or in which there are only two conserved cysteines (C chemokines).

Individual chemokines may signal through more than one chemokine receptor, and individual receptors may interact with more than one chemokine, producing a complex set of chemokine/chemokine receptor pairs and providing opportunities for exceedingly fine regulation of cellular functions.

THE MAJOR HISTOCOMPATIBILITY COMPLEX AND ANTIGEN PRESENTATION (CHAPTERS 21 AND 22)

The MHC has already been introduced in this chapter in the discussion of T-cell recognition of antigen-derived peptides bound to specialized grooves in class I and class II MHC proteins. Indeed, the class I and class II MHC molecules are essential to the process of T-cell recognition and response. Nonetheless, they were first recognized not for this reason but because of the dominant role that MHC class I and class II proteins play in transplantation immunity (see Chapter 46).

When the genetic basis of transplantation rejection between mice of distinct inbred strains was sought, it was recognized that although multiple genetic regions contributed to the rejection process, one region played a dominant role. Differences at this region alone would cause prompt graft rejection, whereas any other individual difference usually resulted in a slow rejection of foreign tissue. For this reason, the genetic region responsible for prompt graft rejection was termed the *major* histocompatibility complex.

In all higher vertebrates that have been thoroughly studied, a comparable MHC exists. The defining features of the MHC are the transplantation antigens that it encodes. These are the class I and class II MHC molecules. The genes encoding these molecules show an unprecedented degree of polymorphism. This, together with their critical role in antigen presentation, explains their central role as the target of the immune responses leading to the rejection of organ and tissue allografts.

The MHC also includes other genes, particularly genes for certain complement components. In addition, genes for the cytokines TNF-α and lymphotoxin (also designated TNF-β) are found in the MHC.

Class I MHC Molecules (Chapter 21)

Class I MHC molecules are membrane glycoproteins expressed on most cells. They consist of an α chain of approximately 45,000 daltons noncovalently associated with α2-microglobulin, a 12,000-dalton molecule (Fig. 1.11). The gene for the α chain is encoded in the MHC, whereas that for β2-microglobulin is not. Both the α chain and β2-microglobulin are Ig supergene family members. The α chain is highly polymorphic, with the polymorphisms found mainly in the regions that constitute the binding sites for antigen-derived peptides and that are contact sites for the TCR.

The class I α chain consists of three extracellular regions or domains, each of similar length, designated α1, α2, and α3. In addition, α chains have a membrane-spanning domain and a short carboxy-terminal cytoplasmic tail. The

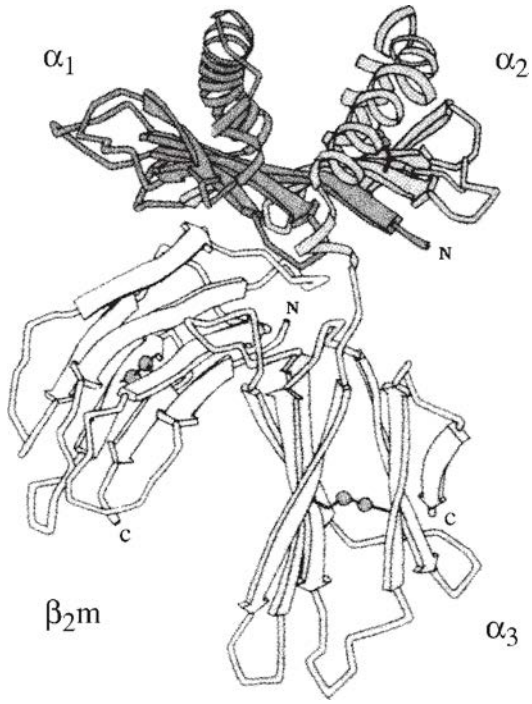


FIG. 1.11. Model of the Class I HLA-A2 Molecule. A schematic representation of the structure of the HLA-A2 class I major histocompatibility complex (MHC) molecule. The polymorphic α1 and α2 domains are at the top. They form a groove into which antigen-derived peptides fit to form the peptide/MHC class I complex that is recognized by T-cell receptors of CD8 T cells. (Reprinted from Bjorkman PJ, Saper MA, Samraoui B, Bennett WS, Strominger JL, Wiley DC. Structure of the human class II histocompatibility antigen, HLA-A2. *Nature*. 1987;329:506–512).

crystal structure of class I molecules indicates that the α1 and α2 domains form a site for the binding of peptides derived from antigens. This site is defined by a floor consisting of β sheets and bounded by α-helical walls. The polymorphisms of the class I molecule are mainly in these areas.

In the human, three loci encoding classical class I molecules have been defined; these are designated human leukocyte antigen (HLA)-A, HLA-B, and HLA-C. All display high degrees of polymorphism. A similar situation exists in the mouse. In addition, there are a series of genes that encode class I–like molecules (class Ib molecules). Some of these have been shown to have antigen-presenting activity for formylated peptides, suggesting that they may be specialized to present certain prokaryotic antigens. The class Ib molecule CD1 has been shown to have antigen-presenting function for mycobacterial lipids, providing a mechanism through which T cells specific for such molecules can be generated. CD1d, presenting certain endogenous or exogenous phospholipids, is recognized by a novel class of T cells (NK T cells) that produce large amounts of cytokines upon immediate stimulation.

Class II MHC Molecules (Chapter 21)

Class II MHC molecules are heterodimeric membrane glycoproteins. Their constituent chains are designated α and β; both chains are immunoglobulin supergene family members, and both are encoded within the MHC. Each chain consists of two extracellular domains (α1 and α2; β1 and β2, respectively), a hydrophobic domain, and a short cytoplasmic segment. The overall conformation of class II MHC molecules appears to be quite similar to that of class I molecules. The peptide-binding site of the class II molecules is contributed to by the α1 and β1 domains (see Fig. 1.5); it is within these domains that the majority of the polymorphic residues of class II molecules are found.

A comparison of the three-dimensional structures of class I and class II molecules indicates certain distinctive features that explain differences in the length of peptides that the two types of MHC molecules can bind. Class I molecules generally bind peptides with a mean length of nine amino acids, whereas class II molecules can bind substantially larger peptides.

In the mouse, class II MHC molecules are encoded by genes within the I region of the MHC. These molecules are often referred to as I region–associated (Ia) antigens. Two sets of class II molecules exist, designated I-A and I-E, respectively. The α and β chains of the I-A molecules (Aα and Aβ) pair with one another, as do the α and β chains of I-E (Eα and Eβ).

In the human, there are three major sets of class II molecules, encoded in the DR, DQ, and DP regions of the HLA complex.

Class II molecules have a more restricted tissue distribution than class I molecules. Class II molecules are found on B cells, DCs, epidermal Langerhans cells, macrophages, thymic epithelial cells, and, in the human, activated T cells. Levels of class II molecule expression are regulated in many cell types by interferons and in B cells by IL-4. Indeed, interferons can cause expression of class II molecules on many cell types that normally lack these cell surface molecules. Interferons also can cause striking upregulation in the expression of class I MHC molecules. Thus, immunologically mediated inflammation may result in aberrant expression of class II MHC molecules and heightened expression of class I molecules. Such altered expression of MHC molecules can allow cells that do not normally function as APCs for CD4 T cells to do so and enhances the sensitivity of such cells to CD8 T cells. This has important consequences for immunopathologic responses and for autoimmunity.

Antigen Presentation (Chapter 22)

As already discussed, the function of class I and class II MHC molecules is to bind and present antigen-derived peptides to T cells whose receptors can recognize the peptide/MHC complex that is generated. There are two major types of antigen-processing pathways, specialized to deal with distinct classes of pathogens that the T cell system must confront (see Fig. 1.8).

Extracellular bacteria and extracellular proteins may enter APCs by endocytosis or phagocytosis. Their antigens and the antigens of bacteria that live within endosomes or lysosomes are fragmented in these organelles, and peptides derived from the antigen are loaded into class II MHC molecules as these proteins traverse the vesicular compartments in which the peptides are found. The loading of peptide is important in stabilizing the structure of the class II MHC molecule. The acidic pH of the compartments in which loading occurs facilitates the loading process. Once the peptide-loaded class II molecules reaches neutral pH, such as at the cell surface, the peptide/MHC complex is stable. Peptide dissociation from such class II molecules is very slow, with a half-time measured in hours. The peptide/class II complex is recognized by those CD4 T cells that have complementary receptors. As already pointed out, the specialization of CD4 T cells to recognize peptide/class II complexes is partly due to the affinity of the CD4 molecule for monomorphic determinants on class II molecules. Obviously, this form of antigen processing can only apply to cells that express class II MHC molecules. Indeed, APCs for CD4 T cells principally include cells that normally express class II MHC molecules, namely DCs, B cells, and macrophages.

T cells also can recognize proteins that are produced within the cell that presents the antigen. The major pathogens recognized by this means are viruses and other obligate intracellular (nonendosomal/nonlysosomal) microbes that have infected cells. In addition, proteins that are unique to tumors, such as mutant oncogenes, or are overexpressed in tumors also can be recognized by T cells. Endogenously produced proteins are fragmented in the cytosol by proteases in the proteasome. The resultant peptides are transported into the rough endoplasmic reticulum through the action of a specialized transport system. These peptides are then available for loading into class I molecules. In contrast to the loading of class II molecules, which is facilitated by the acid pH of the loading environment, the loading of class I molecules is controlled by interaction of the class I α chain

with β2-microglobulin. Thus, the bond between peptide and class I molecule is generally weak in the absence of β2-microglobulin, and the binding of β2-microglobulin strikingly stabilizes the complex. (Similarly, the binding of β2-microglobulin to the α chain is markedly enhanced by the presence of peptide in the α chain groove.) The peptide-loaded class I molecule is then brought to the cell surface. In contrast to peptide-loaded class II molecules that are recognized by CD4 T cells, peptide-loaded class I molecules are recognized by CD8 T cells. This form of antigen processing and presentation can be performed by virtually all cells because, with a few exceptions, class I MHC molecules are universally expressed.

Although the specialization of class I molecules to bind and present endogenously produced peptides and of class II molecules to bind and present peptides derived from exogenous antigens is generally correct, there are exceptions, many of which have physiologic importance. Particularly important is the capacity of some DCs to load peptides from exogenous antigens into class I MHC molecules, allowing sensitization of CD8 T cells to the antigens of pathogens that infect cells other than DCs.

T-Lymphocyte Recognition of Peptide/MHC Complexes Results in MHC-Restricted Recognition (Chapter 11)

Before the biochemical nature of the interaction between antigen-derived peptides and MHC molecules was recognized, it was observed that T-cell responses displayed *MHC-restricted antigen recognition*. Thus, if individual animals were primed to a given antigen, their T cells would be able to recognize and respond to that antigen only if the APCs that presented the antigen shared MHC molecules with the animal that had been immunized. The antigen would not be recognized when presented by APCs of an allogeneic MHC type. This can now be explained by the fact that the TCR recognizes peptide bound to an MHC molecule. MHC molecules display high degrees of polymorphism, and this polymorphism is concentrated in the regions of the class I and class II molecules that interact with the peptide and that can bind to the TCR. Differences in structure of the MHC molecules derived from different individuals (or different inbred strains of mice) profoundly affect the recognition process. Two obvious explanations exist to account for this. First, the structure of the grooves in different class I or class II MHC molecules may determine that a different range of peptides are bound or, even if the same peptide is bound, may change the conformation of the surface of the peptide presented to the TCR. Second, polymorphic sites on the walls of the α-helices that are exposed to the TCR can either enhance or diminish binding of the whole complex, depending on their structure. Thus, priming an individual with a given antigen on APCs that are syngeneic to the individual will elicit a response by T cells whose TCRs are specific for a complex consisting of a peptide derived from the antigen and the exposed polymorphic residues of the MHC molecule. When the same antigen is used with APCs of different MHC type, it is unlikely that the same peptide/MHC surface can be formed, and thus the primed T cells are not likely to bind and respond to such stimulation.

Indeed, this process also occurs within the thymus in the generation of the T-cell repertoire, as already discussed. T cells developing within the thymus undergo a positive selection event in which those T cells capable of recognizing MHC molecules displayed within the thymus are selected (and the remainder undergo programmed cell death). This leads to the skewing of the population of T cells that emerges from the thymus so that the cells are specialized to respond to peptides on self-MHC molecules. One of the unsolved enigmas of positive selection within the thymus is how the vast array of T cells with receptors capable of reacting with a very large set of foreign peptides associated with self-MHC molecules are chosen by self-MHC molecules that can only display self-peptides. It is believed that a high degree of cross-reactivity may exist so that T cells selected to bind a given class I (or class II) molecule plus a particular self-peptide can also bind a set of other (foreign) peptides bound to the same MHC molecule.

Furthermore, the affinity of an interaction required for positive selection in the thymus appears to be considerably lower that that required for full activation of peripheral T cells. Thus, thymocytes selected by a given self-peptide/self-MHC complex will generally not mount a full response when they encounter the same peptide/MHC complex in the periphery, although they will respond to a set of foreign peptide/MHC complexes to which they bind with higher affinity. Recognition of the self-peptide/self-MHC complex in the periphery nonetheless is important in sustaining the viability of resting T-lymphocytes.

Our modern understanding of T-cell recognition also aids in explaining the phenomenon of immune response gene control of specific responses. In many situations, the capacity to recognize simple antigens can be found in only some members of a species. In most such cases, the genes that determine the capacity to make these responses have been mapped to the MHC. Such immune response gene control of immune responses is based on the capacity of different class II MHC molecules (or class I MHC molecules) to bind different sets of peptides. Thus, for simple molecules, it is likely that peptides can be generated that are only capable of binding to some of the polymorphic MHC molecules of the species. Only individuals that possess those allelic forms of the MHC will be able to respond to those antigens. Based on this, some individuals are nonresponders because of the failure to generate a peptide/MHC molecule complex that can be recognized by the T-cell system.

This mechanism also may explain the linkage of MHC type with susceptibility to various diseases. Many diseases show a greater incidence in individuals of a given MHC type. These include reactive arthritides, gluten-sensitive enteropathy, insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus, and rheumatoid arthritis (see Chapter 44). One explanation is that the MHC type that is associated with increased incidence may convey altered responsiveness to antigens of agents that cause or exacerbate the disease. Indeed, it appears that many of these diseases are due to enhanced or inappropriate immune responses.

Antigen-Presenting Cells (Chapter 16)

T cells recognize peptide/MHC complexes on the surface of other cells. Such cells are often referred to as APCs. Although

effector cells can mediate their functions by recognizing such complexes on virtually any cell type, naïve cells are most efficiently activated by a set of specialized APC, the DCs. DCs are a multimember family with distinctive locations and functions. Among them are the plasmacytoid DCs that are the principal source of type I interferons in viral infections.

In general, in their immature form, DCs are resident in the tissues where they are efficient at capturing and endocytosing antigen. Their antigen capture activity is dependent upon expression of several surface receptors including Fc receptors, receptors for heat shock proteins, and C-type lectins. If they receive signals, such as various inflammatory stimuli, often mediated by TLRs, they downregulate the expression of these molecules but increase their expression of surface MHC molecules and various costimualtory molecules such as CD80/86. In addition, such stimulation induces expression of chemokine receptors such as CCR2 and CCR7. The latter allow stimulated DCs to follow signals from the chemokines SLC and ELC, and to migrate into the T-cell zone of lymph nodes. As part of the maturation process, they may also acquire the capacity to produce cytokines and express surface molecules that can aid in determining the polarization of T-cell priming. This includes the production of IL-12, IL-23, IL-6, and IL-10, and the expression of inducible costimulator ligand and of Notch ligands. Interaction of naïve T cells with immature DCs may induce a state of peripheral tolerance.

EFFECTOR MECHANISMS OF IMMUNITY

The ultimate purpose of the immune system is to mount responses that protect the individual against infections with pathogenic microorganisms by eliminating these microbes or, where it is not possible to eliminate infection, to control their spread and virulence. In addition, the immune system may play an important role in the control of the development and spread of some malignant tumors. The responses that actually cause the destruction of the agents that initiate these pathogenic states (e.g., bacteria, viruses, parasites, tumor cells) are collectively the effector mechanisms of the immune system. Several have already been alluded to. Among them are the cytotoxic action of CTLs, which leads to the destruction of cells harboring viruses and, in some circumstances, expressing tumor antigens. In some cases, antibody can be directly protective by neutralizing determinants essential to a critical step through which the pathogen establishes or spreads an infectious process. However, in most cases, the immune system mobilizes powerful nonspecific mechanisms to mediate its effector function.

Effector Cells of the Immune Response

Among the cells that mediate important functions in the immune system are cells of the monocyte/macrophage lineage, NK cells, mast cells, basophils, eosinophils, and neutrophils. It is beyond the scope of this introductory chapter to present an extended discussion of each of these important cell types. However, a brief mention of some of their actions will help in understanding their critical functions in the immune response.

Monocytes and Macrophages (Chapter 19)

Cells of the monocyte/macrophage lineage play a central role in immunity. One of the key goals of cellular immunity is to aid the macrophages in eliminating organisms that have established intracellular infections. In general, non-activated macrophages are inefficient in destroying intracellular microbes. However, the production of IFN-γ and other mediators by T cells can enhance the capacity of macrophages to eliminate such microorganisms. Several mechanisms exist for this purpose, including the development of reactive forms of oxygen, the development of nitric oxide, and the induction of a series of proteolytic enzymes, as well as the induction of cytokine production. Macrophages can act as APCs and thus can enlist the "help" of activated, cytokine-producing CD4+ T cells in regulating their function.

Although macrophages function as APCs for attracting activated T cells, they do not appear to be particularly effective in the activation of naïve CD4 T cells. In instances in which they are the site of infection or have phagocytosed infectious agents or their proteins, antigens from these agents may be transferred to DCs. In such cases, the DCs would be the principal APCs that activate naïve or possibly resting memory CD4 T cells. Such activated T cells would then be available to help infected macrophages.

Natural Killer Cells (Chapter 17)

NK cells play an important role in the immune system. Indeed, in mice that lack mature T and B cells due to the *scid* mutation, the NK system appears to be highly active and to provide these animals a substantial measure of protection against infection. NK cells are closely related to T cells. They lack conventional TCR (or Ig) but express two classes of receptors. They have a set of activating receptors that allow them to recognize features associated with virally infected cells or tumor cells. They also express receptors for MHC molecules that shut off their lytic activity. Thus, virally infected cells or tumor cells that escape the surveillance of cytotoxic T cells by downregulating or shutting off expression of MHC molecules then become targets for efficient killing by NK cells because the cytotoxic activity of the latter cells is no longer shut off by the recognition of particular alleles of MHC class I molecules.

In addition, NK cells express a receptor for the Fc portion of IgG (FcγRIII). Antibody-coated cells can be recognized by NK cells, and such cells can then be lysed. This process is referred to as antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity.

NK cells are efficient producers of IFN-γ. A variety of stimuli, including recognition of virally infected cells and tumor cells, cross-linkage of FcγRIII, and stimulation by the cytokines IL-12 and IL-18, cause striking induction of IFN-γ production by NK cells.

Mast Cells and Basophils (Chapters 20 and 45)

Mast cells and basophils play important roles in the induction of allergic inflammatory responses. They express cell surface receptors for the Fc portions of IgE (FcεRI) and for certain classes of IgG (FcγR). This enables them to bind antibody to

their surfaces, and when antigens capable of reacting with that antibody are introduced, the resultant cross-linkage of FcεRI and/or FcγR results in the prompt release of a series of potent mediators such as histamine, serotonin, and a variety of enzymes that play critical roles in initiating allergic and anaphylactic-type responses. In addition, such stimulation also causes these cells to produce a set of cytokines, including IL-3, IL-4, IL-13, IL-5, IL-6, granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor, and TNFα, that have important late consequences in allergic inflammatory responses.

Granulocytes (Chapter 20)

Granulocytes have critical roles to play in a wide range of inflammatory situations. Rather than attempting an extended discussion of these potent cells, it may be sufficient to say that in their absence it is exceedingly difficult to clear infections with extracellular bacteria and that the immune response plays an important role in orchestrating the growth, differentiation, and mobilization of these crucial cells. Recent work indicates that T_{H17} cells are particularly important because of their role in recruiting granulocytes to sites of immune responses.

Eosinophils (Chapters 20 and 45)

Eosinophils are bone marrow–derived myeloid cells that complete their late differentiation under the influence of IL-5. They migrate to tissue sites in response to the chemokine eotaxin and as a result of their adhesion receptors. Because T_{H2} cells can produce IL-5 and stimulate the production of eotaxin, eosinophil accumulation is often associated with T_{H2}-mediated inflammation. Eosinophils store a series of proteins in their secondary granules including major basic protein, eosinophil cationic protein, and eosionphil peroxidase. When released, these proteins are responsible for much of the damage that eosinophils mediate both to helminthic parasites and to the epithelium. Eosinophils have been implicated as important in protective responses to helminths and in the tissue damage seen in allergic inflammation in conditions such as asthma.

The Complement System (Chapter 36)

The complement system is a complex system of proteolytic enzymes, regulatory and inflammatory proteins and peptides, cell surface receptors, and proteins capable of causing the lysis of cells. The system can be thought of as consisting of three arrays of proteins. Two of these sets of proteins, when engaged, lead to the activation of the third component of complement (C3) (Fig. 1.12). The activation of C3 releases proteins that are critical for opsonization (preparation for phagocytosis) of bacteria and other particles, and engages the third set of proteins that insert into biologic membranes and produce cell death through osmotic lysis. In addition, fragments generated from some of the complement components (e.g., C3a and C5a) have potent inflammatory activities.

The Classical Pathway of Complement Activation

The two activation systems for C3 are referred to as the classical pathway and the alternative pathway. The classical pathway is initiated by the formation of complexes of antigen with IgM or IgG antibody. This leads to the binding of the first component of complement, C1, and its activation, creating the C1 esterase that can cleave the next two components of the complement system, C4 and C2.

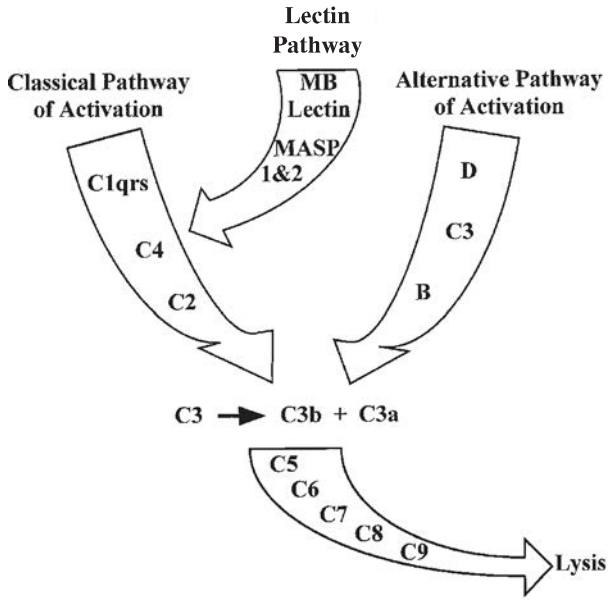


FIG. 1.12. The Complement System. The classical pathway of complement activation, usually initiated by the aggregation of C1 by binding to antigen/antibody complexes, resulting in the formation of an enzyme, a C3 convertase, that cleaves C3 into two fragments, C3b and C3a. The classical pathway can also be initiated by the aggregation of mannan-binding lectin as a result of binding sugars expressed in the capsules of many pathogenic microbes. The components of the lectin pathway appear to mimic the function of C1qrs. The alternative pathway of complement activation provides a potent means of activating complement without requiring antibody recognition of antigen. It results in the formation of a distinct C3 convertase. The fragments formed by cleaving C3 have important biologic activities. In addition, C3b, together with elements of the classical pathway (C4b, C2a) or the alternative pathway (Bb, properdin), form enzymes (C5 convertases) that cleave C5, the initial member of the terminal family of proteins. Cleavage of C5 leads to the formation of the membrane attack complex that can result in the osmotic lysis of cells.

C4 is a trimeric molecule, consisting of α, β, and γ chains. C1 esterase cleaves the α chain, releasing C4b, which binds to surfaces in the immediate vicinity of the antigen/antibody/C1 esterase complex. A single C1 esterase molecule will cause the deposition of multiple C4b molecules.

C2 is a single polypeptide chain that binds to C4b and is then proteolytically cleaved by C1 esterase, releasing C2b. The resulting complex of the residual portion of C2 (C2a) with C4b (C4b2a) is a serine protease whose substrate is C3. Cleavage of C3 by C4b2a (also referred to as the classical pathway C3 convertase) results in the release of C3a and C3b. A single antigen/antibody complex and its associated C1 esterase can lead to the production of a large number of C3 convertases (i.e., C4b2a complexes) and thus to cleavage of a large number of C3 molecules.

The components of the classical pathway can be activated by a distinct, non–antibody-dependent mechanism, termed the lectin pathway. The mannose-binding lectin (MBL) is

activated by binding to (and being cross-linked by) repetitive sugar residues such as N-acetylglucosamine or mannose. The activation of MBL recruits the MBL-associated serine proteases MASP-1 and MASP-2, which cleave C4 and C2 and lead to the formation of the classical pathway C3 convertase. Because the capsules of several pathogenic microbes can be bound by MBL, the lectin pathway provides an antibody-independent mechanism through which the complement system can be activated by foreign microorganisms.

The Alternative Pathway of Complement Activation

Although discovered more recently, the alternative pathway is the evolutionarily more ancient system of complement activation. Indeed, it, and the MBL activation of the classical pathway, can be regarded as important components of the innate immune system. The alternative pathway can be activated by a variety of agents such as insoluble yeast cell wall preparations and bacterial lipopolysaccharide. Antigen/antibody complexes also can activate the alternative pathway. The C3 convertase of the alternative pathway consists of a complex of C3b (itself a product of cleavage of C3) bound to the b fragment of the molecule factor B. C3bBb is produced by the action of the hydrolytic enzyme, factor D, that cleaves factor B; this cleavage only occurs when factor B has been bound by C3b.

Apart from the importance of the alternative pathway in activating the complement system in response to nonspecific stimulants, it also can act to amplify the activity of the classical pathway because the C3 convertase of the classical system (C4b2a) provides a source of C3b that can strikingly enhance formation of the alternative pathway convertase (C3bBb) in the presence of factor D.

The Terminal Components of the Complement System

C3b, formed from C3 by the action of the C3 convertases, possesses an internal thioester bond that can be cleaved to form a free sulfhydryl group. The latter can form a covalent bond with a variety of surface structures. C3b is recognized by receptors on various types of cells, including macrophages and B cells. The binding of C3b to antibody-coated bacteria is often an essential step for the phagocytosis of these microbes by macrophages.

C3b is also essential to the engagement of the terminal components of the complement system (C5 through C9) to form the membrane attack complex that causes cellular lysis. This process is initiated by the cleavage of C5, a 200,000-dalton two-chain molecule. The C5 convertases that catalyze this reaction are C4b2a3b (the classical pathway C5 convertase) or a complex of C3bBb with a protein designated properdin (the alternative pathway C5 convertase). Cleaved C5, C5b, forms a complex with C6 and then with C7, C8, and C9. This C5b/C9 complex behaves as an integral membrane protein that is responsible for the formation of complement-induced lesions in cell membranes. Such lesions have a donut-like appearance, with C9 molecules forming the ring of the donut.

In addition to the role of the complement system in opsonization and in cell lysis, several of the fragments of complement components formed during activation are potent mediators of inflammation. C3a, the 9,000-dalton fragment released by the action of the C3 convertases, binds to receptors on mast cells and basophils, resulting in the release of histamine and other mediators of anaphylaxis. C3a is thus termed an anaphylotoxin, as is C5a, the 11,000-dalton fragment released as a result of the action of the C5 convertases. C5a is also a chemoattractant for neutrophils and monocytes.

Finally, it is important to note that the process of activation of the complement cascade is highly regulated. Several regulatory proteins (e.g., C1 esterase inhibitor, decay accelerator factor, membrane cofactor protein) exist that function to prevent uncontrolled complement activation. Abnormalities in these regulatory proteins are often associated with clinical disorders such as hereditary angioedema and paroxysmal nocturnal hemoglobinuria.

CONCLUSION

This introductory chapter should provide the reader with an appreciation of the overall organization of the immune system and of the properties of its key cellular and molecular components. It should be obvious that the immune system is highly complex, that it is capable of a wide range of effector functions, and that its activities are subject to potent, but only partially understood, regulatory processes. As the most versatile and powerful defense of higher organisms, the immune system may provide the key to the development of effective means to treat and prevent a broad range of diseases. Indeed, the last two sections of this book deal with immunity to infectious agents and immunologic mechanisms in disease. The introductory material provided here should be of aid to the uninitiated reader in understanding the immunologic mechanisms brought into play in a wide range of clinical conditions in which immune processes play a major role either in pathogenesis or in recovery.

CHAPTER 2

History of Immunology

Steven Greenberg

INTRODUCTION

There comes a time during every argument at which the two opposing parties reach a critical juncture: either resolution or impasse. Variations on this essentially Socratic theme have played out in all spheres of human intellectual activity. The dialectic of science ranges from incremental and relatively harmonious shifts in key, to a few abruptly dissonant ones, taking the form of what Thomas Kuhn would refer to as "paradigm shifts."[1] Such is the case with immunology, a field distinguished by more than its fair share of paradigm shifts. Arguably, its first dialectic, between the "cellularists" and the "humoralists," did not result in an early synthesis, but was characterized by partisan and often entrenched positions. Ultimately, the two parallel paths of cellular and chemical immunology converged, but it was not until the latter half of the 20th century that the two paths became one. How the paths were forged in the first place was an amalgam of the cultural institutions of the time, the creative output of the scientists themselves, and the imperatives of devising effective strategies to combat infection and contagion.

ANTECEDENTS TO THE GERM THEORY OF DISEASE

Ancient Theories of Disease Causation

Religious beliefs in ancient Greece drew contrasts between the sacred or the pure (*katharos*) and the polluted (*miaros*).[2] Pollution, or *miasma*, was blamed for many ancient transgressions, from the petty and personal, to the gravest, most famously embodied in the Oedipus myth. To remove the stain of *miasma*, the transgressor must undergo rites of purification (*catharsis*). To the ancient Greeks in the age of Homer, these were deeply ingrained beliefs that were essentially religious in nature. Because *miasma* was viewed as a source of suffering, it is not surprising that *miasma* was implicated in disease, as described by Hippocrates in his treatise "On Air, Water, and Places" in which *miasma* was associated with "unhealthy vapors."[3,4] Hippocrates is credited with being the first to recognize the potential of disease to arise from the environment and not as a result of religious superstition. *Mal aria*, which is Old Italian for "bad air," was one of many diseases thought to be caused by *miasma*. The concept that *miasma* was the source of disease persisted through the millennia and was a leading theory of how contagious diseases were transmitted up until the time of Pasteur.

Much of what we know about the medicine of ancient Greece is codified in *The Hippocratic Corpus*, a collection of more than 60 volumes of text. Its authorship is disputed, but it is generally recognized as a compilation of works by Hippocrates himself as well as his students and intellectual heirs. One of his students, as well as son-in-law, Polybus, was credited as the author of *De Natura Hominis* (*On the Nature of Man*), the earliest known text describing the ancient Greek conceptual basis for disease pathogenesis, as embodied in the four humors: black bile, yellow bile, phlegm, and blood.[5]

> The body of man has in itself blood, phlegm, yellow bile and black bile; these make up the nature of his body, although these he feels pain or enjoys health. Now he enjoys the most perfect health when these elements are duly proportioned to one another in respect of compounding, power and bulk, and when they are perfectly mingled. Pain is felt when one of these elements is in defect or excess, or is isolated in the body without being compounded with all the others.

The Greek view that disease arose from an imbalance of the four humors did not supersede the *miasma* theory of disease, but was rather a more general view of disease causation, compared with the subset of apparently communicable diseases best explained by *miasma*.

The Romans developed and refined Greek concepts of disease. Marcus Terentius Varro (116 to 27 BCE), referred to as "the most learned of all Romans" by the Roman rhetorician Quintilian,[6] was a prolific Roman scholar, estimated to have written more than 600 volumes. During the civil war of the first century, he served as Pompey's legate in Spain and fought at Pharsalus against Caesar but ultimately reconciled with Caesar, who appointed him director of the public library in 47 BCE. Varro is perhaps best known for his only complete extant work, *Rerum Rusticarum Libri Tres* (*On Agricultural Topics*), in which he so presciently anticipated the existence of disease-causing microbes that seemed to Varro to be the immediate cause of diseases[7]:

> Precautions must also be taken in the neighbourhood of swamps, both for the reasons given, and because there are bred certain minute creatures which cannot be seen by the eyes, which float in the air and enter the body through the mouth and nose and there cause serious diseases.

Thus, Varro provided a mechanistic basis for disease that was consistent with the prevailing belief of *miasma* as the source of illness.

The Greek medical tradition was carried on for generations and was ultimately passed on to Claudius Galinus

(Galen), the Greek expatriate who was its greatest explicator. Galen was born in Pergamum in Asia Minor in 130 CE. After beginning his medical training in Pergamum at the behest of his father, he traveled widely in pursuit of "postgraduate" medical training in Smyrna, Corinth, and Alexandria. He returned to Pergamum and practiced surgery on gladiators, which provided a unique opportunity to deepen his knowledge of human anatomy and perfect his surgical technique.[8] Following an outbreak of plague among the Roman troops in Aquileia in 168 CE, he was summoned by the Emperor Marcus Aurelius and was appointed personal physician to his son, Commodus.[8] Galen's view of medicine was based on Hippocrates' *Corpus*. His output was prodigious more than any other ancient author of medical texts. He distinguished symptoms from diseases and offered explanations of the former that were consistent with his interpretations of disease pathogenesis; thus, tertian fever was the result of an "imbalance of yellow bile," quartan was caused by "too much black bile," and quotidian by "an excess of phlegm." Vomiting was viewed as the body's attempt to expel poisons, and the prescription of bleeding was to rid the body of "corrupt humors."[9] Galen's view of medicine remained the dominant one until the 17th century.

Early Concepts of Immunity

The term "immunity" itself is derived from the Latin practice of "exemption" from taxes or public service that normal citizens had to discharge, a favor bestowed by the emperor to meritorious individuals or entire communities.[10] However, the concept of immunity dates back at least as far as Thucydides, who described the plague of Athens of 430 BCE that was responsible for the death of more than a quarter of the Athenian population[11]:

> Yet it was with those who had recovered from the disease that the sick and the dying found most compassion. These knew what I had from experience and had now no fear for themselves; the same man was never attacked twice-never at least fatally.

The traditional, religious view of the plague was that it is the work of Apollo who was held responsible for earlier plagues (eg, the plague on the Greek army in Troy because the Greek general Agamemnon abducted the daughter of Apollo's priest, Chryses). The religiously inclined could take some refuge in appealing to Apollo's son, Asklepios, who was revered as the god of healing, as were his daughters Hygeia (Hygiene), Iaso (Remedy), Akæso (Healing), Aglæa (Healthy glow), and Panakeia (Cure-all). In contrast, Thucydides characteristically did not offer facile religious explanations for sickness or recovery. In fact, he described the futility of the Athenians' plight in stark terms[11]:

> Neither the fear of the gods nor laws of men awed any man, not the former because they concluded it was alike to worship or not worship from seeing that alike they all perished, nor the latter because no man expected that lives would last till he received punishment of his crimes by judgment.

It seemed inevitable that in seeking an explanation for why some developed disease and others did not, many others would rely on a moralistic or religious view. In a remarkable passage from Galen's *On the Different Types of Fever*, not only does he set forth an explanation of how disease is transmitted through the air, and using the same term as Fracastoro would, "seeds," some 1300 years later, but he also blames a licentious lifestyle for susceptibility to the plague:

> Suppose, for example, that the circumambient air carries certain seeds of plague, and that of the bodies which share [breathe] it, some are full of various residues which are soon to become putrefied in themselves, while others are clean and free of such residues. Assume also that in the former there is a general blockage of their pores, a so-called plethora, and a life of ease devoted to gluttony, drink and sex, with all their necessarily concomitant digestive disorders. The others, which are clean and lack these residues, as well as being fine in themselves, have all a wholesome transpiration through pores that are neither blocked nor constricted; they take appropriate exercise and lead a temperate life. Assuming all this, which of these bodies is most likely to be affected by the rotting air they inspire?

This passage has been analyzed extensively by Nutton, who questioned the extent to which "seed" is used metaphorically[12]; if so, it is particularly apt.

Religious explanations for disease and immunity persisted throughout history. Particularly during the growth of Christianity during the Middle Ages, disease and sin were linked, though not inextricably; the great theologian Thomas Aquinas provided this distinction between sin and other causes of diseases[13]:

> . . . we need to consider that sin consists of a disorder of the soul, just as physical disease consists of a disorder of the body. And so sin is a disease of the soul, as it were, and pardon is for sin what healing is for disease.

Yet for many, a disease as dire as the plague would continue to be viewed as divine retribution for sin; for others, it was the result of astrological phenomena, while for still others, it was the result of a "conspiracy plotted by Jews to poison wells."[14] With the exception of the latter, which at least offered a proximate physical cause of disease, regardless of the lack of evidence, there was an abstract quality to these explanations that were shrouded in belief and superstition but lacking in substance. Further theories of disease pathogenesis would have to await the 16th century.

Fracastoro's Seeds

Girolamo Fracastoro (1478 to 1553) was an Italian who would have met most definitions of a Renaissance scholar: an accomplished physician, poet, mathematician, botanist, and astronomer. Educated by his father in Verona, and later at the University of Padua, he became an instructor in logic at the University of Padua in 1501 and in anatomy in 1502. He left Padua in 1508 and returned to Verona, where he

dedicated himself to his studies and his medical practice. In 1546, he proposed that disease was caused by *seminaria* ("seeds") that could be transmitted by three ways: direct contact from one person to another; through "fomites," or articles of clothing or dirty linen; and through the air. Although Nutton[12] has pointed out that Galen and Lucretius also used the term "seeds" to describe the transmission of illness through the air (see previous discussion), Fracastoro was the first to make them the focal point for disease transmission and to describe their predilection for certain organs. Like the 10th century Arab physician Rhazes, who believed smallpox to have an affinity for blood, and specifically for the traces of menstrual blood that were believed to taint everyone in utero, as later suggested by Avicenna, Fracastoro offered the following explanation for immunity to smallpox: Following infection by smallpox seminaria, the menstrual blood would putrefy, rise to the surface, and force its way out via the smallpox pustules.[15] "Hence when this process has taken place, the malady usually does not recur because the infection has already been secreted in the previous attack."

Fracastoro's *seminaria* theory remained influential for nearly three centuries, in many ways serving as an early template for the germ theory of disease.

THE GERM THEORY OF DISEASE AND DEVELOPMENT OF VACCINES

Until the mid-19th century, the Galenic view of disease origins was the dominant one. Not only was the etiology of diseases misunderstood but also was the origin of life itself. The theory of spontaneous generation, which arose from Aristotle, held that life originated spontaneously from inanimate matter. The first experimental evidence against spontaneous generation came from Franceso Redi, the head physician in the Medici court, who in 1668 provided early evidence against the theory.[16*] Nevertheless, no overarching theory was proposed to replace it. Neither the mindset nor the necessary technology were available until the latter part of the 17th century, when an apprentice in a dry goods store, Anton van Leeuwenhoek, began a lifelong obsession with grinding the perfect lens. Leeuwenhoek's lenses were tiny but were ground with high degree of curvature, enabling him to visualize the hitherto undiscovered word of microbes. On September 17, 1683, Leeuwenhoek wrote a letter to the Royal Society, which was the first description of living, motile bacteria obtained from the plaque of his own teeth.[17] Leeuwenhoek was not the first to build a microscope (which was used by, among others, Redi), but his was far superior to existing multilensed or compound microscopes. Other scientists of the time, notably Robert Hooke, also observed microorganisms, and it was Hooke who was the first to publish the first image of a microorganism (the fungus *Mucor*) in 1665.[18] Some 150 years later, Dutrochet and then later Schwann, Schleiden, and Virchow, taking advantage of the microscopes of the their time, advanced the concept that "all living things are composed of cells and cell products."[19] Virchow took this one step further by declaring *omnis cellula e cellula* or "all cells develop only from existing cells." Whether Virchow rejected the germ theory or not is a matter of debate, but it is more likely that Virchow's underlying emphasis was not on external causes, but disease mechanisms, as he wrote in 1885: "First the discovery of the parasite, then the investigation of its etiology, then the question: how does it give rise to the disease."[20] Although it is hard to escape the possibility that a certain degree of professional jealousy may have played a role in Virchow's refusal to embrace the germ theory of disease, his viewpoint is one of but many examples of apparently strict dichotomies in science that would ultimately undergo revision and later synthesis. This is a theme that was to be recapitulated many times in the history of immunology.

The Conceptual Basis for the Germ Theory of Disease

Between Leeuwenhoek's technical breakthroughs in lens design in the late 17th century and the work of Pasteur and Koch in the late 19th century, several individuals endorsed Fracastoro's "seed" theory, which gained new relevance when bacteria were first visualized. Among these was Jacob Henle, a German pathologist who was later to become Koch's teacher. Henle wrote a treatise that not only laid out the germ theory of disease in great detail but also arguably articulated an early version of what would later be known as "Koch's postulates"[21]: "Before microscopic forms can be regarded as the cause of contagion in man, they must be constantly found in contagious material. They must be isolated from it and their strength tested." However, Henle's essay was a theoretical one and Henle himself never provided any experimental evidence in support of it. In the same year, decades before Pasteur and Koch would even begin to describe the germ theory of disease, Henry Holland, a Scottish-trained physician to Queen Caroline, who traveled extensively and was acquainted with the scientific luminaries of the time, including Davie, Gay Lussac, Berthollet, and Laplace, wrote a treatise in which he stated,[22]

> The question is, what weight we may attach to the opinion that certain diseases, and especially some of epidemic and contagious kind, are derived from minute forms of animal life, existing in the atmosphere under particular circumstances; and capable, by application to the lining membranes or other parts, of acting as a virus on the human body.

In a footnote, he cited others, including Kircher, and particularly Johannes Nyander, who wrote nearly a century earlier[23]:

> . . . it may be an easy matter for very minute insects to be the causes of diverse contagious diseases," of which he included plague, measles, smallpox, and syphilis.

Nyander himself credits Lynceus Leuwenhoekius ("lynx-eyed" or "keen-eyed" Leuwenhoek) as the first to have seen such

*Much later, Spallanzani and Pasteur provided key experimental evidence against spontaneous generation, a belief that some scholars still held in the late 19th century, when Pasteur, for example, showed that broth in swan-neck-bent, but not unbent or broken flasks, failed to support microbial growth.

"animalcules." Thus, it is fair to say that the germ theory of disease itself had been "germinating" for some time prior to its scientific proof by Pasteur and Koch.

Experimental Evidence for the Germ Theory of Disease

The honor of the first experimental demonstration for the germ theory of disease may belong to two students of Francesco Redi. In 1687, soon after Redi had offered proof against spontaneous generation, two of his students, Bonomo and Cestoni, went on to observe the causative agent of scabies using the newly developed microscope and were able to transfer disease from person to person.[24] Perhaps the first demonstration of the bacterial pathogenesis of diseases in animals and humans was by Casimir Davaine, a French scientist who provided essentially the same evidence that Pasteur and Koch would years later that anthrax was caused by *bacteridies*. In 1865, Davaine was awarded the Prix Bréant by the Académie des Science for his work.[25]

Davaine's compatriot, Louis Pasteur, was the consummate experimentalist. A chemist by training, his interest in infectious disease began with his study of fermentation. He made important contributions to the science of fermentation and his work led to many practical benefits to the beer and wine industry of France. His interest in microbes began with his speculation that the same type of microbe required for fermentation was likely responsible for transmitting disease. In 1865, he was asked to investigate a disease called pébrine that affected the silk worm industry. Within a year, Pasteur had established that pébrine was caused by a microbe, which provided further proof for the germ theory of disease. Some 14 years later, his expertise was again sought out of economic interests, in this case by farmers whose poultry stocks were diminished by chicken cholera. In a famous example of scientific serendipity, his assistant, Charles Chamberland, failed to inoculate chickens with cultures of chicken cholera bacilli, as instructed by Pasteur, but instead went on vacation. Upon returning several weeks later, he inoculated chickens with the old bacterial cultures, but the chickens didn't die as expected. Rather than disregard the experiment as a failure, "chance had favored the prepared mind" of Pasteur, who had his assistants inject fresh cholera into the same hens that had previously been injected; now none of the hens became ill. Pasteur had surmised that the bacterial cultures had become weakened by extended culture.[26] Thus began the use of attenuated strains of microbes to immunize against disease,[27] and the birth of the science of vaccination. The term "vaccine," derived from the Latin *vaccus* for cow, was, coined by Pasteur in honor of Jenner. Attenuation as a strategy of developing vaccines would prove to be enormously valuable, leading to development of the first rabies vaccine by Pasteur himself, a vaccine against the viral causative agent of yellow fever by Theiler,[28] and the Bacillus Calmette-Guérin vaccine at Pasteur's institute.[29]

Although Robert Koch is credited as the originator of "Koch's Postulates," it may come as a surprise that the essence of the postulates were first formulated by Koch's teacher, Jacob Henle (see previous discussion) and his contemporary, Edwin Klebs.[30] However, neither Henle nor Klebs applied their theories to any practical benefit, which is why Koch received credit for the postulates. Koch was the first to articulate then systematically apply them to prove that *Bacillus anthracis* was the causative agent of anthrax. Koch was a country physician living in Prussia, whose scientific career began unceremoniously with a gift of a microscope from his wife.[31] His first series of investigations began with observing the blood of a dead cow that succumbed to anthrax. Confirming the observation of Davaine and others before him, he observed filamentous bacteria in the blood. Not content merely with the observation, he began a series of technically challenging experiments, necessitating the development of many novel techniques used in microbiology laboratories even today, such as the use of solid medium to grow individual clones or colonies of bacteria. He proved that the filamentous bacteria were present only in infected animals and were capable of reproducing the disease when injected into healthy animals. This was the first systematic application of the eponymous postulates, which has since become the *sine qua non* of disease causation by infectious agents. His work was published in 1876,[32] the first of many groundbreaking publications. Koch's most profoundly important contribution to medicine was the discovery of the causative agent of tuberculosis. The lecture at which he announced his findings, on March 24, 1882, described later by Ehrlich as "the most important experience of his scientific life," is considered by many to be the single most important lecture in medical history. Koch described the invention of novel staining methods to detect the tubercle bacillus and presented tissue dissections from guinea pigs that were infected with tuberculous material from the lungs of infected apes and humans who had died from the disease.[33] For "his investigations and discoveries in regard to tuberculosis," Koch was awarded the Nobel Prize in 1905.

The Unhealthy Rivalry Between Pasteur and Koch, and its Lasting Effects

The Franco-Prusssian war of 1870, the culmination of years of tension between France and Prussia, resulted in a Prussian victory and unity among the German states under King Wilhelm of Prussia. The Treaty of Frankfurt left a unified Germany the city of Strasbourg as well as possession of Alsace and the northern part of Lorraine, which was thought to contribute to further resentment of the Germans by the French and public support for World War I. It is against this backdrop that the relationship between Pasteur and Koch must be viewed. Koch had served in the Prussian army, and Pasteur's son was a conscript fighting for the French. Furthermore, there was intense professional rivalry between the two, especially over their work on anthrax pathogenesis. According to a letter from Charles Ruel, former *privat docent* at the University of Geneva, Koch was in the audience when Pasteur spoke on attenuation and vaccination at the fourth International Congress of Hygiene and Demography held in Geneva in September 1882. Pasteur spoke repeatedly about

German collected works (*recueil Allemand*). According to the letter[34]:

> Koch and his friend Prof. Lichtheim, were sitting side by side; they knew French only imperfectly and both mistook the word pride (orgueil) for collection (recueil). They felt their self-respect profoundly wounded and interpreted the words German pride as a grave insult.

This is but one ironic example of the level of rancor and misunderstanding between the two great men. It is said that Pasteur and Koch underwent some form of reconciliation later in their lives. Regardless, the aftermath of their rivalry, in many ways personifying the bitter relations between France and Germany, had a lasting effect on the evolution of the nascent field of immunology. In the years to come, the intellectual heirs of Pasteur and Koch would reenact the lifelong competitive tensions that characterized their relationship.

The Germ Theory of Disease: A Summation

In many ways, the "germ theory of disease" really did not begin with Pasteur and Koch, but rather by their predecessors, Henle, Klebs, and Davaine, who in turn owed credit to Fracastoro, and ultimately to Galen and Varro, some 1,600 years earlier. What enabled Pasteur and Koch to firmly establish the germ theory of disease began as a thought process that over time became distilled to something tangible: First, the idea that invisible "seeds" might propagate disease; second, the advent of an optically superior microscope, by Leuwenhoek, which enabled scientists their first glimpses at the "minute creatures" postulated by Varro; third, the growing evidence against spontaneous generation that began with Redi, thus opening the door for a new theory of disease; and finally, the inductive genius and careful experimental techniques of Pasteur and Koch.

The Long History of Vaccination: Success and the Unprepared Mind

Vaccination did not originate with Pasteur; its practice had been carried out for centuries without any fundamental understanding of its basis. Probably the earliest recorded example of intentionally inducing immunity to an infectious disease was in the 10th century in China, where smallpox was endemic.[35] The process of "variolation" involved exposing healthy people to material from the lesions caused by the disease, either by putting it under the skin, or, more often, inserting powdered scabs from smallpox pustules into the nose. Variolation was known and practiced frequently in the Ottoman Empire, where it had been introduced by Circassian traders in the 17th century.[35] Unfortunately, because there was no standardization of the inoculum, variolation occasionally resulted in death or disfigurement from smallpox, thus limiting its acceptance. Variolation later became popular in England, mainly due to the efforts of Lady Mary Wortley Montague. Lady Montague was the wife of the British ambassador to the Ottoman court who herself had contracted a severe case of smallpox. While in Istanbul, Lady Montague observed the practice of variolation. Determined not to have her family suffer as she had, she directed the surgeon of the embassy to learn the technique and, in March 1718, to variolate her 5-year-old son. After her return to England, she promoted the technique and had her surgeon variolate her 4-year-old daughter in the presence of the king's physician. The surgeon, Charles Maitland, was given leave to perform what came to be known as the "Royal Experiment," in which he variolated six condemned prisoners who later survived. By these and other experiments, the safety of the procedure was established, and two of the king's grandchildren were variolated on April 17, 1722. After this, the practice of variolation spread rapidly throughout England in the 1740s and then to the American colonies.[35,36]

It is difficult to say what influence the English country physician Edward Jenner (1749 to 1823) had on Pasteur's later discovery of attenuation of bacterial cultures and its application to vaccination. Regardless, it is fair to say that Jenner had a major influence on public health, as he was the first to publish the development and use of a safe alternative to variolation.[37] Although Jenner is rightly celebrated for his development of cowpox as a safe vaccine for smallpox, he was not the first to make use of a relatively nonpathogenic virus to induce immunity. Twenty years earlier, Benjamin Jesty, an English farmer, inoculated his wife and two sons with material taken from the cowpox lesion of the udder of a cow in his neighbor's herd.[36] In 1796, Jenner inoculated James Phipps, an 8-year-old boy, with material obtained from a cowpox lesion that appeared on the hand of a dairymaid (Fig. 2.1). Six weeks later, he inoculated the experimental subject with smallpox without producing disease. Further studies by Jenner established the efficacy of his vaccination procedure. For this feat, Jenner received a cash prize of £30,000 and election to nearly all of the learned societies throughout Europe.[38]

EMERGENCE OF IMMUNOLOGY AS A DISCIPLINE

The Cellularists versus the Humoralists

The international renown of Pasteur and Koch led to the establishment of research institutes that bore their names. Many talented young scientists were drawn to these institutes whose research missions should have been complementary, but were not, and the partisan battle that began with Pasteur and Koch would soon be reenacted on a larger scale.

Metchnikoff and the Birth of Cellular Immunology

Elie Metchnikoff (1845 to 1916), an ambitious student at the University of Kharkoff ("I have zeal and ability, I am naturally talented—I am ambitious to become a distinguished investigator"),[31] borrowed a professor's microscope and began a lifelong quest to understand the cellular basis for immunity. A comparative zoologist by training, his early academic focus was on understanding the development of metazoans. Heavily influenced by Darwin's publication of *The Origin of Species* in 1859,[39] he viewed early embryologic development as a competition among specialized cell

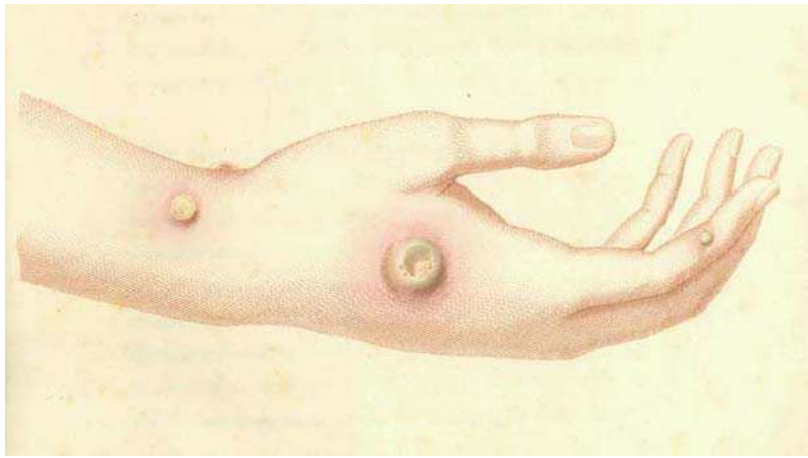


FIG. 2.1. Cowpox Pustule on the Arm of Sarah Nelmes. Reprinted with permission from Jenner[37]; courtesy of Dr Jenner's House: Birthplace of Vaccination, Gloucestershire, UK.

types.[40] Ontogeny was seen as a set of "interactions of cell lineages with each other to limit self-replication by any one component in favour of the interests of the organism as a whole."[40] He focused his interest on an amoeboid marker cell of the mesoderm, which was dubbed "phagocyte" (devouring cell) by a contemporary of Metchnikoff's, the Viennese zoologist, Carl Claus. In a justly famous passage from Olga Metchnikoff's biography of her husband, she describes the observation that became the defining moment of his scientific career[41]:

> One day when the whole family had gone to a circus to see some extraordinary performing apes, I remained alone with my microscope, observing the life in the mobile cells of a transparent star-fish larva, when a new thought suddenly flashed across my brain. It struck me that similar cells might serve in the defense of the organism against intruders. Feeling that there was in this something of surpassing interest, I felt so excited that I began striding up and down the room and even went to the seashore in order to collect my thoughts. I said to myself that, if my supposition was true, a splinter introduced into the body of a star-fish larva, devoid of blood-vessels or of a nervous system, should soon be surrounded by mobile cells as is to be observed in a man who runs a splinter into his finger. This was no sooner said than done. There was a small garden to our dwelling, in which we had a few days previously organised a "Christmas tree" for the children on a little tangerine tree; I fetched from it a few rose thorns and introduced them at once under the skin of some beautiful star-fish larvae as transparent as water. I was too excited to sleep that night in the expectation of the result of my experiment, and very early the next morning I ascertained that it had fully succeeded. That experiment formed the basis of the phagocyte theory, to the development of which I devoted the next twenty-five years of my life.

Contrary to popular belief, Metchnikoff was not the first to visualize and describe phagocytosis, nor was he the first to suggest that it played a role in host defense. In a historical recount of the history of phagocytosis,[42] Stossel argues that a Lutheran pastor, Johann August Ephraim Goeze, was the first to describe phagocytosis by microscopic observations of cells derived from hay infusoria in 1777. Much later, German pathologists of the mid-19th century, including Lieberkühn, Henle, and Vogel, drew connections between "pus corpuscles" of wounds and blood corpuscles.[42] Others at the time, particularly the English physicians William Addison and Augustus Waller, observed leukocyte migration through capillaries in response to local injury, and Ernst Haeckel, a German marine biologist who was later to oppose Metchnikoff in an early theory of gastrulation, described molluscan leukocytes ingesting India ink particles in 1862.[43]

A handful of scientists of the time made the conceptual link between phagocytosis and host defense, and Metchnikoff himself cites a few: "When (the phagocytosis theory) is once firmly established, it will be time enough to determine each part taken in its foundation by workers such as Panum, Gaule, Roser, etc. . ."[44] However, it seems that none of these workers seized upon this concept and appreciated its importance to the degree that Metchnikoff had; certainly, none had further developed and tested what in retrospect was the correct interpretation of the defensive function of phagocytosis.

Following the key experiment in 1882, described previously, Metchnikoff performed many others to test the "phagocytosis theory," such as the observation of infection in water fleas, which he viewed as a Darwinian struggle between pathogen and host[45]:

> Once they have insinuated themselves into the organism's inmost part, the spores cause an accumulation of the mobile cells round them, which correspond to the white corpuscles in human blood. A battle takes place between the two elements.

Drawing the analogy with host defense in higher organisms, Metchnikoff described the killing of the spores by "mobile cells," thus ensuring immunity for the organism. His view of phagocytosis expanded to encompass not only host defense but also organismal development, which he viewed in a teleologic context; he cited the dissolution of the tadpole's tail by the "pervasion of phagocytes."[46] By the time he moved to Paris to become *Chef de Service* at the Pasteur Institute in

1888, Metchnikoff had already formulated and tested what had become, according to his view, a cornerstone of the science of immune system. Perhaps what he had not appreciated at the time was that his move to Paris would come to signify to the Germans a complicit alliance with the French. He thus had unwittingly entered a battle that not only had been fought in the political arena but in the laboratory as well.

The Ascendance of Humoral Immunity

Several related developments in the new field of immunology occurred at the end of the 19th century that would seal the fate of cellular immunology for at least 50 years: The discovery by Roux and Yersin[47] that toxins alone derived from diphtheria bacilli could reproduce the symptoms of diphtheria; the discovery by von Behring and Kitasato in 1890[48] of humoral immunity to diphtheria and tetanus and the passive transfer of immunity to diphtheria in animals by von Behring and Wernicke in 1892[49]; and the discovery of alexins (Greek for "without a name") by Hans Buchner in 1899[50] and Jules Bordet at about the same time.[51] Alexin was renamed "complement" by Ehrlich, as it "complemented" the activity of antibodies. Indeed, the ability of humoral components alone to lyse bacteria (the Pfeiffer phenomenon) or erythrocytes in the absence of phagocytosis[51] provided strong independent evidence supporting the humoralists' claims. The discovery of complement also had practical uses, as complement fixation became the basis of a widely used serologic test for the diagnosis of syphilis, the so-called Wasserman test.[52] The collective discoveries of the "humoralists" would lead to the successful treatment of a number of previously intractable diseases, such as diphtheria. Indeed, the first Nobel Prize in physiology of medicine was awarded to von Behring in 1901, "For his work on serum therapy, especially its application against diphtheria, by which he has opened a new road in the domain of medical science and thereby placed in the hands of the physician a victorious weapon against illness and death." Bordet himself would later be awarded the Nobel Prize "for his studies in regard to immunity." Among Bordet's contributions was the development of the complement fixation test together with his brother-in-law, Octave Gengou. This formed the basis of what Bordet termed "serodiagnosis."

Although the lines in the sand had already been drawn by the mostly Prussian humoralists led by Ehrlich on the one hand and the cellularists led by Metchnikoff on the other, it was Metchnikoff who wrote a letter to von Behring, proposing a scientific "truce"[53]:

> I now believe . . . we can calmly work side by side. We can mutually support one another, just like the phagocytes and antitoxins, since . . . the phagocytes receive considerable assistance from the antitoxic property, just as the phagocytes . . . render great assistance to the organism or respectively its antitoxic powers, since they capture and destroy . . . bacteria.

In fact, von Behring did not seem rigidly against the cellular school, and Metchnikoff viewed him as supporting the view that "active immunity requires some type of cellular basis."[53,54] It is difficult to know what to make of this passage; it sounds vague and seems to state the obvious, yet it does suggest a degree of flexibility that more intransigent proponents of the humoralist camp seemed to lack at the time. Regardless, scientific reconciliation would not be forthcoming until many years later, although phagocytosis theory was granted a temporary reprieve by the British physician Almoth Wright, who demonstrated the phenomenon of opsonization of bacteria. Wright was the first to describe a mechanism by which humoral and cellular components of immunity cooperate to kill bacteria.[55] Wright is possibly best known in his incarnation as Sir Colenso Ridgeon in Shaw's "The Doctor's Dilemma." Ridgeon defined "opsonin" as "...what you butter the disease germs with to make your white blood corpuscles eat them."[56] In what was viewed as a well-deserved but partly symbolic gesture, nevertheless, Metchnikoff and Ehrlich, two exemplars of the opposing schools of immunity, were awarded the Nobel Prize in 1908 "in recognition for their work on immunity." It would not be until 40 years later that another cell type of the immune system would be first identified as being the source of antibody[57] and 70 years later when dendritic cells (DCs) would be first identified as being the key phagocytic leukocyte responsible for initiating the immune response.[58]

Paul Ehrlich: The Cellularist's Humoralist

Paul Ehrlich embodies a pivotal figure in the history of immunology. Although he would make many practical discoveries in his long research career, his greatest contribution to immunology, like Jerne's over a half century later, was a conceptual breakthrough that served to stimulate the field of immunology for years to come. Although I am tempted to consider his "side chain theory" of antibody formation a paradigm shift, that would presume that there was a preexisting paradigm to shift from, when in fact there was no paradigm of antibody specificity to begin with.

Ehrlich began his research career as a medical student. One of his professors was the pathologist Wilhelm von Waldeyer, who introduced the young Ehrlich, who already showed a strong interest in chemistry, to histologic methods for staining cells and tissues. Following further training in several medical schools, he was influenced by the chemist von Bayer and the pathologists Cohnheim, Haidenhain, and Weigert (his cousin). He presented his thesis on histologic staining in Leipzig at the age of 24, in which he was the first to describe mast cells. As noted by Silverstein, the opening sentence of the thesis gave an inkling of his approach to science[59]:

> While in the modern histological literature, directions on tintorial method are already so numerous, and still increase from day to day, yet their theoretical basis has had only a very negligible consideration.

The same year, he was appointed senior physician in the Department of Internal Medicine at the Charité-Hospital in Berlin. The head of the clinic, Friedrich Frerichs, encouraged Ehrlich to continue his histochemical investigations, which led to the identification of neutrophils, eosinophils,

and basophils as well as the diagnosis of his own case of pulmonary tuberculosis.[60]

It is notable that the term "side-chain" (*seitenketten* in German) was a chemical term in use at Ehrlich's time meaning much the same as it does today. It is inescapable to conclude that Ehrlich's focus and interest in chemistry would be the driving force behind his thinking about how antibody is formed, and "selected for," by antigen. The essence of Ehrlich's side chain theory, first proposed in 1897 (Fig. 2.2) is well articulated in Ehrlich's Nobel lecture and is paraphrased here[61]:

1. "The relationship between toxin and antitoxin are *strictly specific*—tetanus antitoxin neutralizes exclusively tetanus toxin, diphtheria serum only diphtheria toxin . . ."
2. "For this reason it must be assumed that the (toxin and antitoxin) enter into a *chemical bond* . . . fitting each other 'like lock and key.'"
3. "The group in the protoplasm, the *cell receptor*, must be identical with the *antitoxin* which is contained in solution in the serum of immunized animals."
4. "As these receptors, which may be regarded as *lateral chains* ("seitenketten") of the protoplasm...become occupied by the toxin, the relevant normal function of this group is eliminated...the deficiency is not merely *exactly compensated*, but *made up to excess* (hyperregeneration)."

What Ehrlich proposed purely on theoretical grounds is a brilliant argument based on a combination of inductive and deductive reasoning. Characteristic of Ehrlich, it is lucid, logical, and profound. Beginning with a consideration of a simple chemical bond, Ehrlich somehow ends up with an antibody-producing cell; hence, "the cellularist's humoralist."

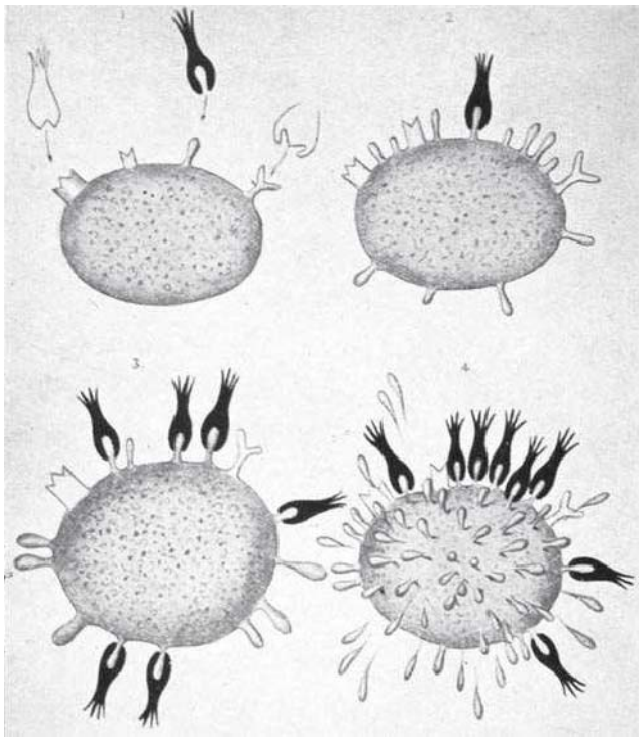


FIG. 2.2. Ehrlich's "Seitenkette" (Side Chains). From Ehrlich.[171]

Not every biologist was enamored of Ehrlich's model, and soon after he proposed it, it came under attack, most notably by Jules Bordet. Bordet objected to Ehrlich's insistence that the specificity of the antigen–antibody reaction required an irreversible bond, whereas Bordet, whose views seemed to be more deductively grounded in his immediate line of investigation (eg, precipitin reactions and complement fixation) thought that adsorptive interactions between antigen and antibody were sufficient to account for specificity.[15,60] Although Ehrlich's side-chain theory provided a logically consistent mechanism to account for antibody specificity, it would later be criticized for failing to account for antibody diversity. That problem would not be conquered for another 60 years in yet another "paradigm shift" when Talmage, Burnet, and Lederberg proposed the clonal selection theory. However, the concept of clonality was not yet conceived of in 1897, and in any case, it is hard to envision how a clonal selection theory could have been developed without the prior description by Ehrlich of antibody selection itself.

IMMUNOLOGY BRANCHES OUT: BENEFICIARIES OF THE EARLY FOCUS ON HUMORAL IMMUNITY

"Man built most nobly when limitations were at their greatest."
–Frank Lloyd Wright

Immunology during the early part of the 20th century was heavily influenced by the early victories of the humoralists. Aside from the spectacular practical implications of the work of von Behring, Bordet, and Ehrlich, among others, the immunologist's toolkit of the early 20th century immunologist was very limited. Advanced microscopic techniques were not yet available, and cell fractionation techniques had not yet been invented. Given these limitations, it is hard to envision how the gap between antibody and cell could have been bridged any closer than Ehrlich had managed, at least on a theoretical level. However, the focus on humoral immunity did allow for the rapid development of several fields, most notably immunochemistry as well as hematology and allergy. It would be some time before cellular immunology would catch up.

Karl Landsteiner and the Birth of Transfusion Medicine and Autoimmunity

As described by Silverstein, "No single individual contributed as importantly to so many different areas of immunology as did Karl Landsteiner."[15] Landsteiner was born in Baden in 1868 and attended Vienna Medical School. He began his training in internal medicine and studied chemistry with Emil Fischer, who would receive the Nobel Prize in chemistry in 1902. He transferred to the Department of Pathological Anatomy, home to Erdheim, Billroth, Escherich, and other accomplished scientists, where he remained until

1907.[62] Landsteiner's first major accomplishment was the discovery of the human ABO blood group antigens at the turn of the century.[63,64] His motivation was succinctly described in his Nobel lecture speech[65]:

> . . . proteins in individual animal and plant species differ and are characteristic of each species . . . The problem raised by the discovery of biochemical specificity peculiar to a species . . . was to establish whether the differentiation extends beyond the species and whether the individuals within a species show similar though smaller differences.

His experiment was a simple one, in which he applied the sera of six heathy men, including himself, to red blood cells of each, and noted that the sera of the men reacted differently with each other—no serum reacted with that same individual's red blood cells. At the end of the paper, Landsteiner noted that the results could account for the variable clinical consequences of human blood transfusion—and thus was borne the discovery of the ABO red blood cell antigens that would later become useful in blood typing prior to transfusions. Many years later, Landsteiner would discover the M, N, P isoantigens in 1927[66] and the Rh system in 1940[67]).

Landsteiner's next major contribution was the codiscovery with Donath of the first autoimmune disease, paroxysmal cold hemoglobinurea,[68] which challenged Ehrlich's dictum that such a situation could not occur.[69]

> The organism possesses certain contrivances by means of which the immunity reaction . . . is prevented from acting against the organism's own elements and so giving rise to autotoxins . . . so that one might be justified in speaking of a "horror autotoxicus" of the organism.

The nature of the contrivances was thought to be of "the greatest importance" by Ehrlich, who later stated[70]: "According to our present investigations either the disappearance of receptors or the presence of autoantitoxin is foremost among these contrivances." Depending on how this statement is interpreted, it could be viewed as Ehrlich's formulation of either clonal deletion or anti-idiotypes. Two years after the discovery of paroxysmal cold hemoglobinurea, an Italian ophthalmologist, who observed sympathetic ophthalmia, a disease in which damage to one eye leads to inflammation of the opposite eye, speculated that this disease was due to "autocytotoxins."[71] Autoimmunity research was taken up by a few others, but perhaps owing to either a misinterpretation of Ehrlich, or possibly due to deference to his authority in the field, progress was slow. It would not be years later, until the discovery of the role of sensitization of the newly discovered Rh antigen as an etiology of erythroblastosis fetalis,[72,73] that autoimmunity became an active area of research for immunologists. The first time that autoimmunity was first associated specifically with arthritis was 1957, when Kunkel and colleagues discovered what came to be called "rheumatoid factor," large complexes of immunoglobulin (Ig)M directed against IgG in the sera of some patients with rheumatoid arthritis.[74] This observation fundamentally changed the field of rheumatology.[75]

Landsteiner received the Nobel Prize in 1930 "for his discovery of the human blood groups." Ironically, upon receiving the prize, it is said that he felt the prize should have been awarded for his work on haptens, which would play a great role in the development of the growing field of immunochemistry.

Discovery of Hypersensitivity: The "Other Work"

In 1901 to 1902, Paul Portier and Charles Richet were attempting to raise tolerance in laboratory animals to actinotoxin, an uncharacterized toxin derived from tentacles of sea anemones. Their experiments appeared to be unsuccessful, and, in some cases, it appeared that the animals actually became sensitized to the antigen. They repeated their studies using dogs and obtained completely unanticipated results: All eight dogs collapsed and died within minutes after receiving a relatively small dose. First thinking the results were due to experimental error, they later realized that the sensitized animals had all been exposed to antigen 14 to 23 days previously.[76] They proposed the name "aphylaxis" (against protection), a term later changed to "anaphylaxis."[77] Richet continued his investigations on anaphylaxis and was awarded the Nobel Prize in 1913 for his work. Soon after Portier and Richet made their seminal discovery, Maurice Arthus was able to induce a localized form of anaphylaxis (swelling and ultimately gangrene) by repeated subcutaneous injections of horse serum, considered fairly nontoxic.[76] Yet, a third type of hypersensitivity was described by the pediatricians von Pirquet and Schick,[78] who noted that vaccinated children occasionally developed fever, joint pains, rash, diarrhea, and hypotension. They concluded that the clinical features of what is now called "serum sickness" were not a direct result of the injection of antiserum, but the outcome of "when antigen and antibody meet." As von Pirquet later explained,[79]

> We are able to observe the effects of the toxic body formed when antigen and antibody meet, that is, the serum disease. We see that at the time when the antibody arises, and therefore the antigen disappears, symptoms of general disease occur. The supposed connection is that these symptoms are due to toxic bodies formed by this digestion of the allergen through the antibody.

Although von Pirquet does not precisely define what he meant by "toxic body," some have interpreted this to mean antigen–antibody complexes. It is possible that he was reluctant to be more specific as he did not actually have a way of observing or quantifying the complexes; it is also possible that he did not have a ready explanation for how such a complex, if formed, could lead to the symptoms and signs of serum sickness. It would not be until many years later that Frank Dixon and colleagues would precisely delineate the nature of the immune complexes.[80] Nevertheless, it is clear that von Pirquet and Schick viewed this phenomenon as

lying along a continuum with the normal immune response, or rather being a necessary component of it. As they later stated,[81]

> The conception that the antibodies, which should protect against disease, are also responsible for the disease, sounds at first absurd. . . One forgets too easily that the disease represents only a stage in the development of immunity, and that the organism often attains the advantage of immunity only by means of disease.

It is von Pirquet and Schick who coined the term "allergy" (from the Greek *allos*, other, and *ergon*, work).[79] By highlighting the role of tissue injury in promoting immunity, they closed the loop that Metchnikoff had begun at the end of the 19th century. This theme would be revisited and expanded upon in the latter part of the 20th century when it was discovered that the inflammation that accompanied the innate immune response was a necessary prequel to the acquired immune response.

THE LONG JOURNEY FROM THE DAWN OF IMMUNOCHEMISTRY TO THE STRUCTURE OF IMMUNOGLOBULINS

Challenges to Ehrlich: The Problem with the "Keys"

One of the difficulties that Ehrlich faced was bridging the gap between the conceptual basis of antibody specificity and the actual basis of antibody specificity. If his side-chain theory was correct, then every cell involved in antibody production would be capable of reacting against every possible antigen it might encounter. Even without considering the cellular origins of antibodies, Ehrlich's critics, such as the Viennese Max von Gruber, raised the question of how the astonishingly large number of different specificities of the antibody molecules themselves could be generated.[15] The size of the repertoire seemed impossibly large if every "lock" had a unique "key." Landsteiner became von Gruber's assistant at the University of Vienna in 1896, and he inherited von Gruber's critical view of Ehrlich's theory. Landsteiner's early approach to this problem was to adopt Bordet's "colloid" explanation of the antigen–antibody interaction,[15] which rejected covalent interactions in favor of multiple weaker interactions, a theme that was later taken up by Pauling, with some interesting consequences. Later, stimulated by the work by Obermeyer and Pick, who described chemical modifications of proteins,[82] Landsteiner used structurally related reactive chemicals to derivatize proteins. He showed that antisera raised against one of the chemically modified proteins would react to varying degrees with proteins modified by structurally similar, but not identical, reactive molecules. These results were interpreted as being incompatible with Ehrlich's "lock and key" specificity but called for a more nuanced view of antigen–antibody specificity. It became immediately apparent that the size of the repertoire could be greatly enhanced if one allowed for such graded degrees of binding affinities.

Immunoglobulin Structure: The "Keys" to the Problem

It was clear that further progress on defining the physicochemical nature of the antigen–antibody reaction required the development of specific tools that were unavailable at the turn of the century. Antibodies, whose chemical structures were unknown at the time, were considered "colloids" (from Greek *kolla*, glue), a suspension of particles suspended in a continuous phase of another component. In 1924, the Swedish chemist Svedberg designed a centrifuge based on a modified milk separator. The centrifuge could develop a centrifugal field of up to 5000 g and enabled Svedberg to measure the molecular mass of hemoglobin[83]; he was the first to determine the molecular mass of macroglobulins, derived from a patient with Waldenström macroglobulinemia, which we now know as IgM. A student in Svendberg's laboratory, Arne Tiselius, developed gel electrophoresis,[84] which allowed for the separation of molecules based on charge and size. These tools enabled Michael Heidelberger to establish the field of "immunochemistry." Heidelberger devoted nearly his entire research career pursuing the implications of a simple but profound discovery he made with Oswald Avery in 1923 that type-specific antigens of pneumococcus bacteria are complex polysaccharides. Over the next three decades, this discovery enabled him to determine, for the first time, the exact weight and chemical composition of antibodies, antigens, and complement. He showed that antibodies are multivalent proteins and used these insights to devise a simple vaccine against pneumonia whose effectiveness was first proven in soldiers who fought in World War II.[85]

The Chemical Nature of Immunoglobulin Molecules

By 1950, it was appreciated that antibodies were proteins of 150,000 molecular mass containing bivalent antigen-combining sites. Based on Porter's observation that Igs could be split into smaller products by enzymes such as papain, yielding Fab fragments that bind antigen and Fc (crystallizable) portions that do not, Edelman and Poulik further defined Ig structure by hypothesizing that Bence-Jones proteins, derived from myeloma cells, were free light chains of Ig molecules.[86] As this hypothesis appeared to be correct, this provided a means of obtaining a ready supply of homogeneous Ig subunits. Reduction of disulfide bonds led to still different products, enabling them to propose that the Ig molecule consists of two light chains and two heavy chains, and that the antigen-binding site consisted of contributions from both heavy and light chains.[86] Further refinement of techniques in protein chemistry allowed Edelman and Porter to work out the primary structure of Ig molecules, for which they received the Nobel Prize in 1972.

CONFRONTING THE SIZE OF THE REPERTOIRE

The value of a large repertoire from which to select is appreciated by any performing musician. Yet in the 1950s, the repertoire problem was unsolved, leading to competing theories of how a large repertoire of diverse antibodies are generated. There were two mutually exclusive leading schools of thought: "instruction" theories and "selection" theories.

Instruction Theories of Antibody Diversity

As noted by Silverstein,[15] the first description of antigen as template was by Bail and Tsuda, who proposed in 1909 that antigen persists after its encounter with antibody, and that by so doing, it leaves an impression on the antibody.[87] This concept was further refined by Breinl and Haurowitz, who suggested that antigen is carried to the site of protein formation, where it would serve as a template to instruct antibody formation.[88] Finally, in 1940, Linus Pauling provided a chemical explanation for antigen-directed instruction: that "antibodies differ from normal serum globulin only the way the ends of the polypeptide chain is coiled" as a result of their amino acid sequence, and that "they have accessible a very great many configurations with nearly the same stability." Under the "influence" of antigen, they "assume configurations complementary to surface regions of the antigen," forming two active ends, and that after "freeing one end and the liberation of the central part of the chain, it folds up to form the central part of the antibody molecule, with two oppositely directed ends able to attach themselves to two antigen molecules." This interaction would be further stabilized by weak interactions between antigen and antibody.[89] Assuming a degree of degeneracy in the initial antigen–antibody interaction, these theories were consistent with the findings of Landsteiner, who showed that antigen–antibody interactions were not absolutely specific, as envisioned by Ehrlich (Fig. 2.3). In retrospect, these theories had great chemical appeal; however, a central weakness is that if the initial interactions between antigen and antibody are degenerate, that implies that the interactions cannot be of high affinity (otherwise they would not be degenerate). Yet, if the initial interactions are weak, how would they occur in the first place? At some level, there has to be a certain degree of preexisting antibody specificity, which implies a preexisting repertoire. Although the instruction theories of antibody selectivity helped explain some of the specificity of the antigen–antibody interactions, they could not account for all of them. It is notable that the underlying basic principles have been since invoked for other encounters in the immune system. For example, a "bar code model" of interactions between the T-cell receptor (TcR) and peptide-major histocompatibility complex (MHC) (pMHC) has recently been proposed, in which the initial encounter between TcR and pMHC is governed by strong interactions, followed by "scanning" the epitope and modest changes in conformation of the TcR, leading to strengthening of the TcR–pMHC association.[90]

Jerne's Natural Selection Theory of Antibody Formation

Instruction theories of antibody specificity persisted through the 1950s, when they were modified to include participation of enzymes to act as intermediaries between antigen and antibody as well as the newly discovered structure of deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA). In 1955, Niels Jerne published a highly influential paper in which he proposed a new theory of antibody formation that he described as the "natural selection theory of antibody formation."[91]

> The antigen is solely a selective carrier of spontaneously circulating antibody to a system of cells which can reproduce this antibody. Globulin molecules are continuously being synthesized in an enormous variety of different configurations...among which... will be fractions possessing affinity toward any antigen to which the animal can respond.

Jerne referred to these preexisting antibodies "natural antibodies," and went on to state that antigens selectively attach to those globulin molecules that happen to have a complementary configuration. According to Jerne, once the interaction occurs, the antigen–antibody complexes may be engulfed by a "phagocytic cell," at which point the antigen is eliminated. The antibody within the phagocytic cell can remain or be transferred to another cell, which is the signal for reproduction of the same specific antibodies. More antibody is released into the circulation, resulting in a larger percentage of specific circulating antibody. Jerne states that "the reproduction need not be highly faithful; copying mistakes will be harmless and may occasionally produce an improved fit."[91] These are remarkable concepts, as Jerne appeared to have invoked Metchnikoff, a Darwinian interpretation of antibody selectivity at the organismic level, as well

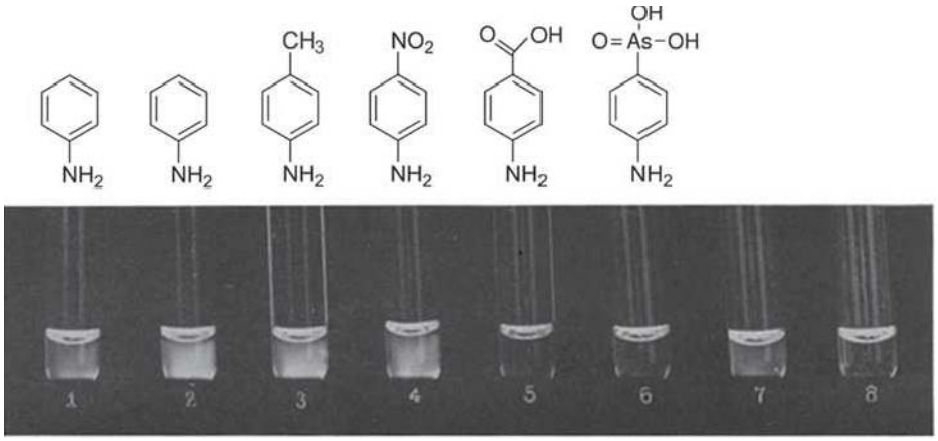


FIG. 2.3. Demonstration of Serologic Specificity by Landsteiner and Scheer. Reactions from immune serum for aniline with various azoproteins and with unchanged horse serum reading after 15 minutes. *(1)* azoprotein from chicken serum and aniline, *(2)* azoprotein from horse serum and aniline, *(3)* azoprotein from horse serum and para-toluidine, *(4)* azoprotein from horse serum and para-nitroaniline, *(5)* azoprotein from horse serum and para-aminobenzoic acid, *(6)* azoprotein from horse serum and para-arsanilic acid, *(7)* unchanged horse serum, *(8)* saline control. Modified from Landsteiner and van der Scheer.[486]

as to have anticipated affinity maturation. It is easy to see why Jerne's ideas were so influential. However, the central problem, the lack of an explanation for the huge existing repertoire, which hampered the instruction theories of antibody diversity, as well as Ehrlich's side-chain theory was still unanswered. Jerne admitted this weakness and speculated that the "spontaneous production of globulin molecules of a great variety of random specificities" may reside in a ". . . specialized lymphoid tissue, such as that of the thymus."[91] Perhaps a more existential problem was that the flow of information was from the existing preformed antibody to more antibody without any genetic intermediary. What was lacking was a specific mechanism to transfer information between a specific antibody and the specific synthesis of that same antibody. Jerne admitted to this problem and nominated ribonucleic acid (RNA) as a key template; he then stated " . . . a protein molecule may determine the order of the nucleotides in the synthesis of RNA," citing a paper that does not actually make this assertion.[91]

What accounted for this conceptual block that had persisted for more than half a century? On one level, it was ignorance of the "fundamental dogma of molecular biology," which had not yet been articulated.[92] But on another level, it perhaps can be traced back to the decisive victory of the humoralists over the cellularists. So long as the focus was on the antigen–antibody interaction, there was no way to invoke a biologically plausible mechanism of generating a preexisting Ig repertoire and of selectively expanding a specific portion of that repertoire.

Development of the Clonal Selection Theory

In 1957, the American immunologist David Talmage published a review whose focus was allergy; however, in the review, Talmage drew an analogy between natural selection, in which there is "selective multiplication of a few species out of a diverse population" and antibody production. In a very succinct but remarkably insightful passage, he lays out the essence of the clonal selection theory[93]:

> As a working hypothesis it is tempting to consider that one of the multiplying units in the antibody response is the cell itself. According to this hypothesis, only those cells are selected for multiplication whose synthesized product has affinity for the antigen injected.

At about the same time, Burnet published his own paper outlining the key aspects of the clonal selection theory[94] (Fig. 2.4). In a later interview, Talmage discussed how he provided a preprint of his review to Burnet before he published his landmark paper on the clonal selection theory, but both he and Nossal stated that Burnet developed the theory independently. Talmage thought that the two papers were similar in substance, but that "Burnet had the good fortune to make an analogy of the idea to the clones that grow in bacteria and he gave it a very catchy name, 'clonal selection.'"[95] Among the ideas that led both immunologists to propose the clonal selection theory was the known logarithmic rise in antibody titer during the primary immune response "as if it is a product of some multiplying substance."[95] Other experiments demonstrated that lymphoid cells obtained from previously immunized rabbits that were then transferred to x-radiated recipients were sufficient to induce a recall response in the recipients.[96]

Although we now know that the clonal selection theory is correct, it took more than 10 years for clonal selection to be widely accepted, according to Talmage.[95] Among the key pieces of evidence to prove the theory was the demonstration of antibody production from single cells, by Nossal and Lederberg,[97] and the later finding that cognate antigen was capable of aggregating all surface Ig on individual cells,[98]

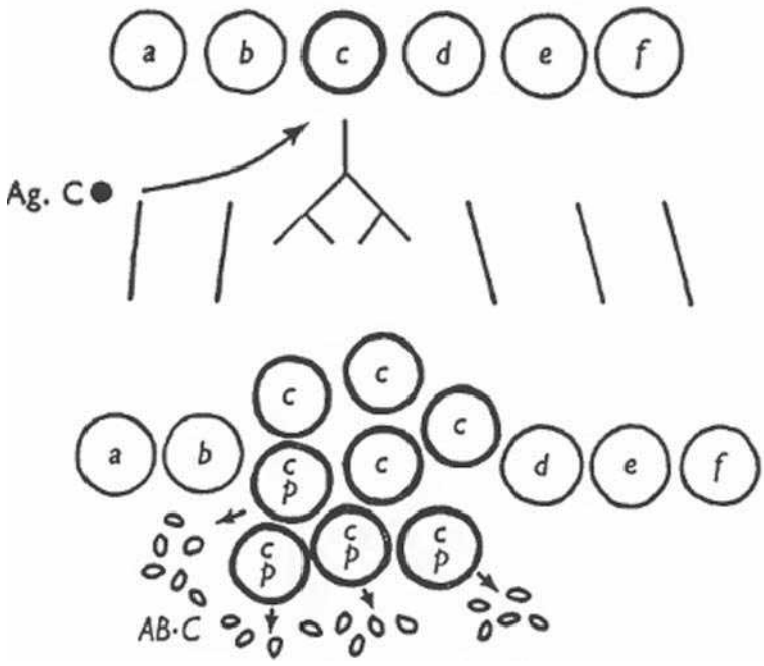


FIG. 2.4. In this diagram, antigen C (Ag.C) is recognized by clone "c," triggering this clone, but not others, to proliferate. Antibody against Ag.C (AB.C) is indicated at the bottom. From Burnet.[246] Copyright ©1959 Sir MacFarlane Burnet. Reprinted with the permission of Cambridge University Press.

which corroborated Nossal and Lederberg's results. Finally, in 1975, Köhler and Milstein demonstrated the production of monoclonal antibodies from single clones of immortalized plasma cells.[99] Along with Jerne, they shared the Nobel Prize in 1984.

The Structural Basis of Antibody Diversity: The Dialectic Revisited

By the mid-1970s, the puzzle of antibody diversity was far from solved—many of the pieces were still missing. The conceptual basis for the clonal selection theory was laid in 1957 by redirecting the focus of investigation from immunochemistry to cell biology. However, what was needed to actually prove the theory was a delineation of the molecular basis for the enormous size of the repertoire. Two lines of investigation converged to provide this evidence: the sequencing of Ig proteins followed by the sequencing of Ig genes. In 1965, Hischmann and Craig sequenced two Bence-Jones proteins and found that there was conservation of the amino acid sequence at the C-termini but considerable diversity at the N-termini.[100] In the ensuing years, sequence data on a number of myeloma proteins became available, and in 1970, Kabat and Wu applied statistical criteria to analyze sequencing data from 77 Ig chains. They identified three regions within the 107 residues comprising the light chain variable region that demonstrated a still further degree of variability (ie, hypervariability). They hypothesized that these regions of extreme diversity represented the complementarity-determining residues and suggested by analogy with prokaryotes that they arose through episomal incorporation into the light chain locus by a recombination event.[101] If this, indeed, was the underlying explanation for antibody diversity, then there would have to be a very large number of episomal elements to account for a diverse repertoire. This was a different view than the one taken by Dreyer and Bennet 5 years earlier, who proposed that variable region genes that had undergone duplication and spontaneous mutation throughout evolution underwent a "genetic scrambling" event, resulting in their juxtaposition to the constant regions of the Ig genes. They even suggested the involvement of enzymes involved in DNA repair as contributing to such an event.[102] Thus, two opposing viewpoints began to emerge to account for the generation of diversity (or GOD, as playfully described by Richard Gershon): somatic mutation of a few genes, as suggested originally by Burnet,[94] and supported by Weigert and Cohn's sequencing data of the mouse λ light chain locus,[103] or somatic recombination among many duplicated genes within the germline, as proposed by Dreyer and Bennet[102] and later refined by Edelman and Gally[104] and Hood and Talmage.[105] In the years that followed, various teleologic arguments were proposed to support one theory over the other. In 1976, at least a partial resolution was provided by Hozumi and Tonegawa, who provided evidence that the V_κ and C_κ loci from embryonic DNA rearrange to form a contiguous polypeptide in mature lymphocytes.[106] The advent of molecular cloning led to direct proof that the variable and constant regions of the light chain gene had undergone rearrangement at the DNA level.[107,108] This was followed by the demonstration by Weigert et al.[109] that the Ig V_κ region in the mouse is encoded by multiple V, J, and C regions joined at the DNA level during differentiation of individual lymphocytes. Finally, in 1980, Early et al.[110] demonstrated how V, D, and J regions of the Ig locus could recombine to generate a virtually unlimited combination of antibody specificities.

In the ensuing years, the molecular mechanisms governing VDJ recombination were uncovered. These involved recognition of conserved sequences flanking germline V, D, and J segments, introduction of double-strand breaks, potential loss or gain of nucleotides at the coding junctions, and polymerization and ligation to complete the joining process. Many talented scientists contributed to these discoveries, including Alt, Yancopoulos, Blackwell, and Gellert.[111] This culminated in the isolation of the recombinase activating genes (RAG) by Baltimore's group.[112, 113] The dominant view that emerged from these studies largely favored the "germline-ists," reinforced by Tonegawa's receiving the Nobel Prize in 1984. However, in yet another example of a synthesis of two apparently contradictory approximations of the truth, evidence for somatic hypermutation began to emerge.[114,115] Its importance was established when it was causally linked to the generation of B cells with very high affinity antibodies,[116] a phenomenon termed "affinity maturation."[117]

SPECIALIZATION WITHIN THE IMMUNE SYSTEM

Division of Labor: Discovery of T and B Cells

The first person to demonstrate delayed type hypersensitivity may have been Robert Koch in 1882. On his quixotic pursuit of developing a vaccination against tuberculosis, he injected himself with spent medium from cultures of human tubercle bacilli and noted a particularly severe reaction, including systemic effects.[118] Although he was not successful in developing a vaccine against tuberculosis, he recognized the diagnostic potential of this procedure. It was not until 1942, and then later in 1945, that Landsteiner and Chase demonstrated that cells from guinea pigs previously immunized with *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* or hapten would transfer reactivity to a naïve recipient when challenged with the immunogen.[119,120] This was the first demonstration that cells, rather than antibody, transmitted specific immunity, a finding that in some ways vindicated Metchnikoff's cellular focus.

The identity of the cells mediating the transferred hypersensitivity was unknown. Based on experiments performed decades earlier, as Silverstein has noted,[121] James Murphy at the Rockefeller Institute argued that lymphocytes were important in the host resistance to tuberculous infection. Murphy used mice exposed to x-rays or splenectomized to manipulate lymphocyte numbers and showed that conditions that would have been predicted to deplete lymphocytes resulted in early death of the mice due to disseminated tuberculosis.[122] In earlier papers, Murphy also showed more directly that lymphocytes were important in graft rejection in transplanted chick embryos. Why were these seemingly important observations ignored? Was it because the

experiments relied to a certain extent on inference, rather than direct proof that lymphocytes were key mediators of tuberculous immunity? Most likely, it was a combination of events: The lingering vestiges of the confrontation between the cellularists and the humoralists and the fact that there was little conceptual basis for understanding how a small innocuous-appearing cell type could participate in immunity.

In a completely independent line of investigation, it was known for some time that certain strains of mice had a high spontaneous rate of developing lymphocytic leukemia. In attempting to explain the finding that thymectomy of 2-month-old mice failed to develop leukemia, Jacques Miller found that neonatally thymectomized mice appeared ill and revealed a marked deficiency of lymphocytes in blood and lymphoid tissues. Furthermore, these mice failed to reject allografts or xenografts.[123] However, not all areas within lymphoid organs were depleted of lymphocytes, consistent with "thymic-dependent" (paracortical areas of the lymph nodes and periarteriolar sheaths of the spleen) and "thymic-independent" regions (follicles and medullary cords). Miller concluded that the thymus was important for the development of a subset of lymphocytes important in allograft rejection.

The involvement of lymphoid cells in antibody production was considered likely in the 1940s, mainly due to "guilt by association." For example, Erich and Harris injected antigens, such as typhoid vaccine and sheep erythrocytes, into the feet of rabbits, and then compared the formation of antibody to histologic changes in the draining lymph nodes.[124] Similar experiments were performed using intravenous injection of antigen, and the appearance of antibody and plasma cells in the spleen appeared to be correlated.[125] However, actual proof for the involvement of B cells in antibody production was quite accidental.[126] In 1952, Bruce Glick, a young doctorate student at Ohio State University, was investigating the function of an obscure avian organ, the "bursa of Fabricius." He removed the organ, which did not result in a discernable phenotype. A fellow graduate student asked to use one of Glick's birds to develop an antibody against *Salmonella* and found that the bursectomized chicken failed to make antibodies. This led to the publication that eventually appeared in *Poultry Science* describing the role of the organ in the generation of bursa-derived or "B" cells.[127] As there was no anatomic equivalent of the bursa in mammals, an exhaustive search finally revealed the bone marrow origin of these cells. It was also found that thymus-derived cells, later named "T cells," were needed to "help" B cells produce antibody.[128–130] These distinctions were further clarified when Cooper et al.[131,132] showed that T cells were required for delayed-type hypersensitivity and graft versus host reaction. Thus was borne one of many central dichotomies that Mazumdar[133] has argued drives the field of immunology.

In 1957, Gowans[134] cannulated the thoracic duct of rats and measured the rate of flow of the lymph. He suggested that "the continuous entry of living lymphocytes into the blood may be essential for maintaining the output of lymphocytes from the thoracic duct." He later showed that intravenous transfusion of radiolabeled lymphocytes resulted in appearance of the radiolabeled cells into the thoracic duct, thus defining the continuous recirculation of lymphocytes from the lymphatics to the blood.[135] In retrospect, these experiments were critically important in understanding how lymphocytes are constantly patrolling the lymphatics, vigilantly on the lookout for antigen.

TRANSPLANTATION BIOLOGY AND THE PURSUIT OF IMMUNOLOGIC TOLERANCE

The history of transplantation began many hundreds of years ago and was vigorously pursued by surgeons and tumor researchers during the early part of the 20th century. These events are well summarized in several texts, notably Brent's *A History of Transplantation Immunology* and Silverstein's *A History of Immunology*. The influence of these early workers, particularly Carrel's, on the surgical aspects of transplantation is clear, but their impact on the field of transplantation immunology was limited because the conceptual framework of immunology was still rudimentary. Analogous to the role that smallpox had in catalyzing early vaccine development, large-scale bombing campaigns in World War II resulted in many civilian and military burn victims who required skin grafting, compelling surgeons to develop better techniques to avoid homograft rejection. The British zoologist Peter Medawar was assigned to the War Wounds Committee of the Medical Research Council. In 1943, Medawar and Gibson[136] published "The fate of skin homografts in man" based on a single burn victim who received multiple "pinch grafts" of skin. The authors concluded that autografts succeed, whereas allografts fail after an initial take, and that the destruction of the foreign epidermis is brought about by a mechanism of active immunization. Medawar returned to Oxford University to study homograft rejection in laboratory animals and proved that this was an immunologic phenomenon. Medawar[137] concluded that the mechanism by which foreign skin is eliminated belongs to the category of "actively acquired immune reactions." Shortly after this publication, Ray Owen[138] published the provocative finding that dizygotic twin calves, who share a common circulatory system in utero, exhibit chimaerism with respect to their twin's erythrocytes and fail to produce antibodies against each other's erythrocytes. This led Burnet and Fenner[139] to predict that introduction of a foreign antigen early enough in life would fail to elicit an immune response. Medawar reasoned that the successful exchange of skin grafts between dizygotic calves would verify this hypothesis. Together with his postdoctoral fellow Rupert Billingham, he performed a series of grafting experiments that provided direct support for this model.[140]

> Mammals and birds never develop, or develop to only a limited degree, the power to react immunologically against foreign homologous tissue cells to which they have been exposed sufficiently early in fœtal life . . . this phenomenon is the exact inverse of "actively acquired immunity", and we therefore propose to describe it as "actively acquired tolerance."

At the same time, Milan Hašek[141] in Prague demonstrated successful parabiosis of chick embryos derived from two

different strains. Hašek's stated motivation to perform the experiment was to determine whether exchange of blood in the different chick strains induced a "mutual metabolic assimilation between parabionts," rather than to induce a state of immune tolerance. It has been suggested that Hašek's real motivation for the experiment was to advance the Lysenkoist genetic doctrine to appease the local communist regime in Czechoslovakia.[142] Regardless, the result has been reinterpreted as an example of the induction of immunologic tolerance. In 1960, Medawar shared the Nobel Prize with Burnet "for the discovery of acquired immunologic tolerance."

Mechanism versus Metaphor: "Self/Nonself" Discrimination

Medawar's experiments and Burnet's formulation of the clonal selection theory occurred at a critical juncture in the history of the evolving field of immunology. Had their development been dyssynchronous, it is doubtful that much progress would have been made on either front. Indeed, transplantation experiments had been performed earlier in the century with little insight as to why allografts failed. The viewpoint that Burnet espoused, that the function of the immune system is to distinguish "self" from "nonself," has proved to have enormous heuristic value ever since its formulation more than 60 years ago. Is this distinction mostly metaphorical, as suggested by Tauber,[143] or does it reflect a more concrete generative reality? To begin to address this question, it is necessary to briefly review a parallel development in immunology, the discovery of the components of the immune system that define molecular self-hood.

Looking Under the Hood: The Discovery of the Major Histocompatibility Complex

The clonal selection theory represented a conceptual breakthrough in the history of immunology, but it did not explain how lymphocytes actually recognize antigen. These insights would eventually come from three sources over the span of 20 years: studies of the genetics of graft rejection in inbred strains of mice by George Snell in the 1940s, studies of the agglutination of white blood cells by sera from transfused patients by Jean Dausset in the 1950s, and studies of the immune response to simple antigens in guinea pigs by Baruj Benacerraf in the 1960s. Snell was interested in identifying genes that controlled the ability of mice to resist tumor transplants. He pioneered the use of congenic mice, which are genetically identical except for a single region or locus. Snell observed that tumor grafts were accepted between inbred mice but not between mice of different strains. The same was true for normal tissues. Snell termed the underlying genes "histocompatibility" genes. In collaboration with Peter Gorer, who had prepared antisera that reacted with cells from one mouse strain but not another, Snell established that the major histocompatibility locus corresponded to a reactivity that Gorer had designated antigen II, renamed locus histocompatibility 2 or H-2.[144] Two loci within this region, designated K and D, carried genes specifying antigens involved in triggering graft rejection. In the 1950s, Dausset observed that patients who had received many blood transfusions produced antibodies that could agglutinate white blood cells from donors but not the patient's own cells. Several of the patients produced antibodies against the same antigen.[145] Subsequent family studies indicated that a genetically determined system, named "human leukocyte antigen" (HLA) system, was found to be the ortholog of H-2 in the mouse. Dissection of the human system would take many years, during which time transplantation surgeons made use of the emerging findings to assist in tissue typing. In the 1960s, Baruj Benacerraf, an immunologist working at New York University, noticed that some outbred guinea pigs responded to simple antigens by developing delayed hypersensitivity reactions upon challenge while others did not, and that this was under genetic control. He termed these genes "immune response genes." McDevitt and Sela observed similar genes in mice, and McDevitt showed that they are encoded in the MHC.[146] In 1980, Benacerraf, Snell, and Dausset shared the Nobel Prize "for their work on genetically determined structures of the cell surface that regulated immunologic reactions."

Of course, the identification of the HLA region and the subsequent cloning of the genes encoded in this region proved to be landmarks in the history of immunology. Besides providing a molecular identity to the key orchestrators of antigen presentation to T cells, the identification of specific MHC alleles with autoimmune diseases has led to important insights into their pathogenesis. Ironically, the first recognized HLA association with human disease, HLA-B27, which was associated with the disease ankylosing spondylitis,[144,147] has generated perhaps more heat than light, as there is no definitive mechanism that explains how HLA-B27 is linked to disease pathogenesis, underscoring that the HLA locus, which took so many years to uncover at the genetic level, still has much to teach us.

The Discovery of Major Histocompatibility Complex Restriction as the Molecular Basis for "Self/Nonself" Discrimination

It was known for several years that cooperation between T and B cells occurred in syngeneic or H-2–compatible animals.[148–150] In 1972, Kindred and Shreffler[151] showed that even in nude mice, cooperation between T and B cells required H-2 compatibility; however, the exact role of that H-2 molecules played in this process and the nature of the T- and B-cell interactions remained a mystery. A valuable clue was provided by experiments by Rosenthal and Shevach,[152] who demonstrated that efficient presentation of antigen by antigen-pulsed macrophages to T cells also required histocompatibility matching. In 1974, Doherty and Zinkernagel sought to understand the role of T cells in the immune response to viral meningitis. They theorized that it was the strength of the immune response that caused the fatal destruction of brain cells infected with this virus. To test this theory, they mixed virus-infected mouse cells with T lymphocytes from other infected mice. The T lymphocytes did destroy the virus-infected cells, but only if the infected cells and the lymphocytes came from a genetically identical strain of mice. T lymphocytes would

ignore virus-infected cells that had been taken from another strain of mice.[153] Further experiments strongly suggested that the same TcR that recognizes viral antigen also recognizes the MHC molecule.[154] The implications of the Zinkernagel-Doherty experiment were profound. First, it established the principle of MHC restriction: T cells recognize antigen only in the context of MHC molecules. Second, the experiment established that cytotoxic TcR-bearing cells must recognize two separate signals on an infected cell before they can destroy it. One signal is a fragment of the invading virus that the cell displays on its surface and the other is a self-identifying tag from the cell's MHC molecules; it was felt likely that the same TcR probably recognizes both. Thus, the experiment pointed to the identity of the molecular structure that constituted immunologic "self"—it is the MHC molecule—and therefore a virus-infected cell bearing MHC molecules was likely to constitute "altered" or "nonself." Finally, the fact that MHC is highly polymorphic implies that any given allelic product will be capable of forming a different altered self from other MHC allelic products; thus, the specific identity of the MHC molecule itself determines the strength of the immune response.

Although the Zinkernagel-Doherty experiment answered many questions, the steps between encounter of antigen by an antigen-presenting cell (APC) and presentation of that antigen to a T cell was somewhat of a "black box." It had long been thought that intact antigen was presented to T cells, but it was not until 1981 that Ziegler and Unanue[155] showed that an antigen processing event was necessary for I-region (MHC class II)-restricted antigen presentation to T cells. This appeared to require antigen processing in a lysosomal-like compartment.[156] Peptide loading is a complicated affair, involving prior binding of MHC class II by an "invariant chain" to prevent premature loading of incompletely folded proteins in the endoplasmic reticulum.[157,158] Peptide loading requires proteolysis of the invariant chain.[159,160] Mellman and colleagues would go on to show that the actual compartment in which antigen loading occurred is uniquely specialized for antigen presentation in B cells[161] and DCs.[162] In a landmark paper, Unanue and colleagues purified MHC class II molecules from 10^{11} B cells and showed a 1:1 binding with peptide and MHC class II I-A^d, but not I-A^k,[163] thus demonstrating MHC restriction at the biochemical level.

The processing events required for MHC class I restriction seemed more elusive, as some of the molecular components required for this were not known at the time. It was suspected that an intracellular proteolytic event was needed to process antigen, but that was not proven until 1994 when Rock et al.[164] showed that proteasomal inhibitors blocked degradation of most cell proteins and subsequent generation of peptides presented on MHC class I molecules. The actual mechanism by which peptides generated in the cytosol gained entry into the secretory compartment was provided in 1990, when four groups announced the identification of a member of a family of ABC transporters, called "TAP," which provided this function.[165–168] Finally, in 1987, Bjorkman et al.[169,170] demonstrated that the antigen in question was a peptide actually bound to the groove of the MHC class I molecule.

SPECIALIZATION WITHIN THE IMMUNE SYSTEM II.

Discovery of B- and T-Cell Antigen Receptors

The discovery of the B-cell receptor (BcR) for antigen began with Ehrlich,[171] when he proposed that cells that produced "amboceptors" expressed them at their surfaces; in fact, Ehrlich's drawings of amboceptor-producing cells emphasized this point (see Fig. 2.2). Evidence for the existence of surface Ig was provided by indirect immunofluorescence and autoradiography, in which immunoreactivity against a single class, IgM, was observed in 1970.[172–175] The function of the BcR was uncovered by Rock and Lanzavecchia, who showed that MHC class II–restricted antigen presentation by hapten-specific B cells was enhanced 10^3- to 10^4-fold by specific binding, endocytosis, and loading of peptide antigen onto MHC class II molecules.[176,177] In 1952, Colonel Ogden Bruton at the Walter Reed Army Hospital was caring for the 8-year-old son of a general. The boy had had recurrent pneumococcal infections, including bacteremia, but he recovered with antibiotics. Bruton noted that the boy did not mount an antibody response to pneumococcal vaccination and upon testing his serum using Tiselius apparatus, the electrophoretic pattern revealed a complete absence of γ-globulins.[178] Other cases appeared, and it was soon clear that the defect was X-linked. This is often cited as the first description of a primary immunodeficiency. It was not until 1993 that the molecular defect of agammaglobulinemia was uncovered. It was due to deficient expression of a tyrosine kinase, named *Bruton tyrosine kinase*.[179,180] This discovery highlights another function of the BcR, which is to help provide signals for B-cell maturation. Without its expression, B-cell development is blocked beyond the pre-B-cell to immature B-cell stage.[181]

The discovery of the TcR for antigen was likened to the hunt of the apocryphal Snark,[182] according to Mak,[183] except the TcR was finally captured after a hunt that lasted over 20 years or more, depending on one's perspective. The hunt was characterized by extended periods of uncertainty, when it was not clear whether the same receptor bound to antigen and MHC simultaneously, whether two separate TcR proteins bound MHC and antigen separately (the "intimacy model"), or whether one TcR molecule bound MHC molecules altered by antigen. It was also not known what form the antigen would actually take, and many considered it likely that the binding was strictly analogous to the binding of antibody and antigen, amounting to an "IgT-antigen" interaction.[184] The existence of the TcR was deemed within reach when a clone-specific monoclonal antibody (mAb) against a murine lymphoma was isolated.[185] Finally, in 1984, using differential hybridization approaches, Davis and Mak independently announced the cloning of the β-subunit of the mouse and human TcR, respectively.[186,187] This was soon followed by the cloning of the α-subunits of the mouse and human TcRs,[188–191] and the identification of other subunits of a different type of TcR, the γδ TcR.[192] Eventually, the crystal structures of pMHC combinations demonstrated that contact between TcR and pMHC was dominated by direct TcR-MHC contacts, rather than TcR-peptide interactions.[193–195] Beyond the initial recognition stage, signaling through the

TcR, as in the BcR, is a highly regulated process tuned to recognize cues from pMHC that govern positive and negative selection.[196] There is little doubt that had Medawar survived, he would have appreciated how the clonal selection theory has remained a driving force underlying the molecular details of antigen receptor signaling.

Discovery of Distinct Immunoglobulin Classes

Ehrlich's terminology for antibodies changed depending on the context; he sometimes referred to "amboceptors," or immune bodies, and at other times he used the more familiar term "antikörper." Regardless, he did not know the chemical makeup of antibodies, though he recognized that they must contain separate binding sites for antigen and complement. Elucidation of the actual structure of antibodies would have to await the seminal work of Porter and Edelman in the 1960s; however, the actual discovery of specific antibody classes, or isotypes, took place over many years. The first class of antibodies to be discovered was IgG. In 1939, Tiselius and Kabat immunized rabbits with ovalbumin, then absorbed a portion of the resulting antiserum with ovalbumin. When they applied samples of the unabsorbed and antigen-absorbed antisera to electrophoresis, they observed a marked decrease in the amount of protein that migrated in the γ region of electrophoretic mobility, farthest away from the fast-migrating albumin peak. They called the antibody that corresponded to this fraction "γ-globulin."[197]

The next antibody class to be discovered was a result of an observation by the Swedish oncologist Jan Waldenström. He described two patients with oronasal bleeding, lymphadenopathy, low serum fibrinogen, and increased lymphoid cells in the bone marrow.[198] With the help of a colleague in Svedberg's laboratory, he noted that serum from these patients contained an abnormally large amount of homogeneous globulin with sedimentation coefficients corresponding to a molecular weight of more than one million. Waldenström thought this corresponded to a preformed large molecule, which became known as macroglobulin. Proof that a macroglobulin possessed antibody activity was finally provided in 1967,[199] which ultimately led to its current name, IgM.

IgA was discovered by Gugler et al.[200] who isolated IgA from human milk, and Heremans et al.[201] who isolated IgA from human serum. It was later found in high concentrations in all exocrine secretions[202] and further characterized by Tomasi and Zigelbaum,[203] who suggested that IgA plays an essential role in mucosal immunity. It was not until 1984 that the mechanism of secretion of IgA and IgM across epithelial barriers was uncovered; it was shown to depend on interactions of an Ig-associated polypeptide, the J chain, with a glycoprotein on the surface of epithelial cells, referred to as the "polymeric IgA receptor."[204] This receptor mediated transcytosis of secretory IgA and IgM.

The discovery of IgE had a particularly long gestation period and is well summarized in a review.[205] It began with a report by Prausnitz, in 1921, who injected his forearm with serum from a coworker allergic to fish (and coauthor on the ensuing paper); this was followed by a wheal and flare upon further injection of fish extract.[206] This property was expected for a class of antibodies termed "reagins" (from German *reagieren*, to react). IgE was identified as a specific immunoglobulin class by Teruka and Kimishige Ishizaka in 1966[207,208] and was shown to be increased in sera from asthmatics.[209] In 1993, Kinet and colleagues demonstrated that its high affinity receptor, FcεRI, was required for anaphylaxis.[210]

IgD is the most recent Ig subclass to be recognized. It was discovered from a patient with multiple myeloma.[211] Surface IgD is coexpressed with IgM on mature B cells. The function of IgD is not well understood, although the abundance of IgM- IgD+ B cells in the human upper respiratory mucosa suggests that it is likely involved in mucosal immunity.[212]

Because IgA and IgE were isolated based on their predominant location (IgA) or function (IgE), their role in the immune response was relatively easy to decode, but the relationships between the different Ig classes was unknown. It was discovered in 1963 that the early immune response was initiated by the rapidly sedimenting (19S) antibody, later shown to be IgM, followed by the production of a more slowly sedimenting (7S) antibody, now known to be IgG.[213,214] Although production of the different Ig classes was initially interpreted as being due to the participation of different cells, it was later shown that single clones of B cells were capable of producing multiple isotypes[215–217] in a process called class switch recombination (CSR). The enzymology of CSR was worked out much later by Alt, Nussenzweig, Honjo, and others, who showed that it required DNA repair enzymes[218,219] and activation-induced cytidine deaminase (AID). AID is mutated in an autosomal recessive form of the primary immunodeficiency, hyper-IgM type 2, in which afflicted patients are deficient in CSR and somatic hypermutation, consistent with an important role for AID in both processes.[220–222]

Discovery of Antibody Effector Functions: Fc Receptors

Almoth Wright was the first to recognize the importance of antibody-mediated effector functions other than neutralization or complement-mediated lysis. His studies were ignored for a long time, and it would take many years to appreciate the importance of the "other end" of the antibody molecule. Since the 1970s, studies on the effector functions of the Fc portion of IgG made extensive use of several in vitro model systems, often involving phagocytosis.[223–232] The eventual cloning of receptors for the Fc portion of IgG (FcγRs) by Ravetch and et al.[233] revealed many similarities and some differences, but these early studies did not reveal how the receptors transduced signaling events, such as phagocytosis. It was not until 1989 that Michael Reth[234] noted a short tyrosine-containing sequence in common with several antigen receptors, including subunits of the TcR, the BcR,[235] and Fcγ and Fcε receptors[236] that the signaling function of FcγRs was understood in a larger context. Following receptor engagement, tyrosine residues within this consensus sequence, subsequently named "immunoreceptor tyrosine-based activation motif" (ITAM), become phosphorylated

by Src family tyrosine kinases and serve as docking sites for Syk tyrosine kinase,[237] or ZAP-70, in the case of the TcR. The membrane-associated tyrosine kinases become activated and phosphorylate substrates that further convey downstream signals. Absence of ZAP-70 leads to a severe combined immunodeficiency disease (SCID).[238] These studies uncovered the central role of nonreceptor tyrosine kinases in the immune system, which appeared to explain in large part how antigen and Fc receptors evoke calcium signaling,[239] degranulation,[240] phagocytosis,[229,241,242] and antibody-mediated cellular cytotoxicity.[243] Furthermore, the ITAM-containing γ-chain[244] that is associated with FcγRs is required for immune complex-mediated glomerulonephritis in mice.[245] Thus, it is likely that the hypersensitivity phenomena originally observed by von Pirquet at the beginning of the 20th century, and later attributed to immune complexes by Dixon et al.,[80] has a similar pathophysiology, at least in part.

THE HERMENEUTICS OF LYMPHOCYTE ACTIVATION

Evolution of Early Lymphocyte Activation Models

By the late 1950s, it became clear that lymphocytes were highly adept at interpreting or translating environmental cues and responding by maintaining a state of activation or tolerance. The focus of immunology had shifted from identifying the relevant cell types involved in the immune response to discovering what can be viewed as the "hermeneutics" (a term derived from the Greek ἑρμηνεύω, "translate" or "interpret") of lymphocyte activation. Based on the clonal selection theory, Burnet[246] proposed that activation or tolerance was the result of an antigen stimulating a single cell, depending on the age of the organism. This was in keeping with experiments in which tolerance was induced by exposing antigen during fetal life or shortly thereafter.[138,140,141] In 1959, Lederberg[247] modified this model to describe activation or tolerance as occuring depending on the age of the cell rather than the organism.

> If an antigen is introduced prior to the maturation of any antibody-forming cell, the hypersensitivity of such cells, while still immature, to an antigen-antibody reaction will eliminate specific cell types as the arise by mutation, thereby inducing apparent tolerance to that antigen.

However, the model could not account for several observations, among which were that the dosage and specific form of the immunogen, such as a hapten, could also influence the outcome of the encounter. This led Talmage and Pearlman[248] to propose an alternative model in which antigen alone would induce tolerance, but aggregated antigen, perhaps associated with complement, could induce an additional nonspecific stimulus to trigger clonal expansion. The suggestion of the need for a second "nonspecific" stimulus, and particularly complement, was remarkably prescient in light of the finding that complement can provide exactly such a stimulus to amplify immunogenicity by 10^3- to 10^4-fold.[249] In 1968, and later revised in 1970, Bretscher and Cohn[250,251] provided a variation on this model, in which a thymus-derived antigen-sensitive cell-bound antigen containing at two separate sites, one for a receptor on the "antiantigen-sensitive" cell and another bound to a "carrier" antibody. If the second site on the antigen was occupied by antibody, then that would deliver a signal to the "antiantigen-sensitive" cell to induce immunity. In contrast, if the site remained unbound, the antigen would induce tolerance. In this model, two cells were involved, but they were separated in time and space. Among the problems with the model was its circularity: What would provide the stimulus for the production of the carrier antibody in the first place? Other theories were proposed to explain the phenomenon of alloreactivity. The most intriguing of these was provided by Lafferty and Cunningham,[252] who proposed the existence of an "antigen bridge," which was now provided by another cell to provide "Signal 2." When MHC restriction was described in 1977, this model was modified somewhat to include the provision that the second signal was triggered by MHC on the stimulator cell[253] (Table 2.1).

Discovery of Costimulation: T Cells as Beneficiaries

By 1975, models for lymphocyte activation had matured, but many details remained sketchy, particularly the identity of the elusive Signal 2. In 1987, Jenkins and Schwartz utilized a system designed to "convert" Ag-specific T-cell clones into suppressor cells. They used a model system in which T-cell clones against a pigeon cytochrome peptide were incubated with ethylene carbodiimide-fixed Ag-pulsed splenocytes as APCs. They obtained the surprising result that the T-cell clones became unresponsive to subsequent restimulation with untreated APCs plus peptide, although they remained viable and proliferated in response to interleukin (IL)-2.[254] This showed that Ag-specific unresponsiveness could be induced in the absence of suppressor cells and that stimulation with cognate antigen alone was insufficient to induce proliferation; the missing Signal 2 was defined as "costimulation" and ultimately identified as cluster of differentiation (CD)28-mediated signaling by Allison and colleagues.[255] Since this seminal discovery, an entire family of CD28-like molecules in T cells and their cognate ligands on APCs has been identified,[256,257] which includes an inhibitory member of the family, cytotoxic T-lymphocyte antigen-4.[258] This has led to the clinical development of cytotoxic T-lymphocyte antigen-4–Ig, an inhibitor of CD28,[259] which was approved for the treatment of rheumatoid arthritis by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration in 2006 and by the European Medicines Agency in 2007.

Discovery of the Mechanism of B-Cell Help

It was known since the 1960s that T cells were needed to "help" B cells produce antibody, but the molecular nature of that help was unknown.[129,260] Experiments had suggested that T-cell help required cell-to-cell contact, implying the existence of the involvement of cell surface receptor–ligand interactions. Agonistic antibodies against CD40 drove B cells into cell cycle, raising the possibility that a cognate ligand on T helper cells participates in the mechanism of

TABLE 2.1 Different Models of Lymphocyte Activation

Basis of Immune Recognition	Signals	Components	Conditions for Tolerance	Authors
Self versus nonself	1	B cell/Ag	Immature organism	Burnet, 1959[230]
	1	B cell/Ag	Immature Ab-forming cell	Lederberg, 1959[231]
	2	B cell/Ag–Ab + complement	Absence of bound Ab/complement	Talmage and Pearlman, 1963[232]
	2	Humoral Ag-sensitive responder cell/bivalent Ag/carrier antigen-sensitive thymus-dependent cell	Absence of carrier Ab or lack of	Bretscher and Cohn, 1968,[234] 1970[235]
	2	Signal 1: Ab-bound responder cells + Ag Signal 2: Stimulator cell + Ag	Absence of Signal 2	Lafferty and Cunningham, 1975[236]
Noninfectious self versus infected nonself	2	Signal 1: Lymphocyte + MHC/Ag Signal 2: PAMP+ APC	Absence of Signal 2	Janeway, 1989[390]
Danger	3+	"Signal 0": Alarm Signal 1: (Th cell-APC–Ag; Tc-infected cells; B cell/Ag; Signal 2: Help (Th to B) or costimulation (APC to T)	Absence of "Signal 0"	Matzinger, 1994[451]

Abbreviations: Ag, antigen; Ab, antibody; APC, antigen-presenting cells; MHC, major histocompatibility complex; PAMP, pathogen-associated molecular pattern; Th, T helper.

T-cell help. Using a CD40–Ig fusion protein, murine CD40L was cloned.[261,262] Use of a mAb against the human CD40L confirmed that expression was restricted to mantle and centrocytic zones of lymphoid follicles and the spleen periarteriolar lymphoid sheath in association with CD40+ B cells,[263] which is the distribution that might be expected for a highly localized signal to provide T-cell help to B cells. Indeed, in 2000, the specific type of T cell that provided CD40L-mediated help to B cells, now called a T follicular helper cell, was identified by its unique anatomic location and expression of a homing receptor, CXCR5.[264,265] In 1993, four groups independently announced that defects in the CD40 ligand gene are responsible for X-linked hyper-IgM syndrome in which affected adults express elevated levels of IgM and defects in class switching.[266–269]

T-Cell Subsets and T-Cell Signaling Paradigms

The widespread use of mAbs since their discovery by Köhler and Milstein resulted in the production of many antibodies directed against T cells that had nonoverlapping patterns of expression. Much of this early work was done by Schlossman, Reinherz, and colleagues.[270–275] In most cases, the antibodies themselves identified T cells with specific functions; and in 1987 and 1988, two groups found that the molecules recognized by two of these mAbs, denoted by their cluster designations, CD8 and CD4, mediated adhesion to MHC class I and II, respectively.[276,277] CD4 and CD8 were shown to bind to nonpolymorphic regions of MHC molecules,[277] suggesting that they might stabilize otherwise weak interactions between TcR and pMHC. Later experiments demonstrated that the cytosolic domains of these coreceptors were able to bind, and recruit, the nonreceptor Src family tyrosine kinase Lck.[278,279] It was not known at the time what the relevant substrates of Lck might be, but in 1989, at about the same time that the ITAM consensus sequence was identified, two groups showed that Lck was capable of phosphorylating subunits of the CD3 complex and the ζ subunits of the TcR.[280,281] Following the discovery of another key tyrosine kinase associated with the ζ subunit of the TcR, ZAP-70, by Chan and Weiss,[238] a complicated cell signaling paradigm began to emerge in which "Signal 1," delivered by pMHC expressed on either APCs or virus-infected cells, is conveyed by a series of phosphorylation events, leading to phosphorylation of phospholipase C-γ, triggering increases in cytosolic calcium and dephosphorylation of a key transcription factor, NFAT. The elusive machinery of "store-operated calcium channels" required for calcium-based signaling[282] was finally elucidated in 2006.[283–286] Defects in this pathway in lymphocytes lead to a form of SCID.[286] Dephosphorylated NFAT, alone or in conjunction with AP-1, translocates to the nucleus where it binds to sites on the promoters of key genes such as IL-2, culminating in T-cell proliferation.[287] The initial interaction between TcR-bearing T cells and pMHC-bearing APCs induces a cooperative series of protein–protein interactions in a spatially delimited fashion (the "immunologic synapse") that facilitates signaling events.[288] We now know that signal transduction by the TcR shares common elements, and in some cases identical kinases and substrates, with signaling by other ITAM-containing receptors, such as the BcR, and Fc receptors or IgG and IgE.[289–291] Recent data suggest that similar mechanisms governing "immunologic synapses" in T cells may also be characteristic of "phagocytic synapses,"[292] underscoring a further degree of conservation of ITAM-based pathways. It is ironic that lymphocytes, which had appeared morphologically uninteresting to so many biologists until the latter part of the 20th century, would share so many characteristics in common with their visually more intriguing cousins.

Cell to Cell Communication: Mice Have a Tale to Tell

The first cytokine to be characterized is credited to Isaacs and Lindenmann,[293] who studied an influenza virus-induced factor from chick chorioallantoic membranes that blocked a second viral infection; this factor was called "interferon" (IFN). It was not purified to homogeneity until 20 years later.[294,295] Type I IFNs, which include IFNα and IFN-β, and type II IFN, IFNγ, bind to distinct receptors. A major advance in our understanding of cytokine signaling occurred in 1992, when Schindler et al.[296] demonstrated the tyrosine phosphorylation and nuclear translocation of a complex of four proteins, named IFNα stimulated gene factor 3. IFNα stimulated gene factor proteins were isolated from nuclear extracts derived from over 10^{10} cells, followed by sequencing and cloning of their genes; two of these proteins are members of what are now known as STAT proteins, which were shown to be substrates for members of the Janus-associated kinase family.[297–303] The most common severe immunodeficiency attributable to defective cytokine signaling is X-linked SCID, which is due to mutation in the common γ_c gene that is shared by receptors for IL-2, IL-4, IL-7, IL-9, IL-15, and IL-21.[304] Mutations in Janus-associated kinase 3 were found in two patients with a severe form of SCID indistinguishable from X-linked SCID.[305,306] Dominant-negative mutations in STAT3, which is important in the signal transduction of IL-6 and IL-10, were found to be responsible for hyper-IgE syndrome, a disease associated with highly elevated serum IgE, recurrent staphylococcal skin infections and pneumonia, and skeletal abnormalities.[307,308]

Much of our knowledge of this pathway, as well as many other components of the immune system, is due to the use of gene targeting in mice. In 1985, Smithies et al.[309] introduced a short DNA sequence from the human beta-globin locus into an erythroleukemia cell line and were able to detect a specific exchange of the beta-globin gene with the homologous sequence in about 1 in 10^3, demonstrating the feasibility of gene targeting. At the same time, Capecchi introduced DNA directly into the nucleus of a cell using a microelectrode. Capecchi noted that multiple copies of the introduced gene were integrated into the host cell's chromosome through homologous recombination. These studies established the potential for homologous recombination in somatic cells. The next major step was based on the ability of using blastocyst-derived embryonic stem cells to introduce genes into the germline of the mouse.[310,311] By injecting blastocysts with cultured embryonic stem cells that were infected with a retrovirus, Evans and colleagues generated chimeric mice in which retroviral DNA was detectable in both somatic and germ-line cells.[311] Eventually, Evans, Smithies, and Capecchi refined these techniques, which led to the first knockout mouse, in which the gene encoding hypoxanthine guanine phosphoribosyl transferase was deleted. The resultant phenotypic resembled that of the Lesch-Nyhan syndrome, which is characterized by mental retardation and self-mutilation.[312,313] Today, gene targeting techniques are used worldwide to study the effects of deletion or overexpression of genes important in immunity and any disease that can be reproduced in the mouse and in other species in which the technique has been used. In 2007, Smithies, Capecchi, and Evans shared the Nobel Prize "for their discoveries of principles for introducing specific gene modifications in mice by the use of embryonic stem cells."

Chemokines

If cytokines determine what cells do, then chemokines determine where cells go. The first chemokines purified were derived from platelets, although neither protein (platelet factor 4 [CXCL4][314,315] and β-thromboglobulin [CXCL7][316]) was recognized to be chemotactic when first identified. IL-8 (CXCL8) was the first chemokine to be purified and sequenced based on its chemotactic function for neutrophils,[317] and its receptors were cloned in 1991.[318,319] The word "chemotaxis" was coined by Pfeffer in 1884, who observed spermatids migrating toward a pipette containing maleic acid salts.[320] It is not clear who first explicitly observed chemotaxis of leukocytes, although several scientists, notably Schultze, Lieberkühn, Davaine, and Wharton Jones described amoeboid movement in leukocytes in the middle of the 19th century.[321] Since then, chemotaxis has been studied in vitro using various techniques, including specialized chambers that facilitate this process.[322]

The effects of chemokines on cells are complex, but a major function is to orchestrate the process of diapedesis, the process of transendothelial migration first described by Dutrochet in 1824.[323] In 1979, Hayward et al.[324] described six infants from two families whose umbilical cords were still attached at 3 weeks of age. Five of these developed severe local and disseminated infections from which four died. The molecular defect was identified by Springer et al.[325] in 1984, who showed that leukocytes from patients with the disease lacked all known β_2 integrin adhesion receptors. This was eventually traced to absent or abnormal β_2 subunits (CD18). Marlin and Springer[326] later described the requirement of the β_2 integrin, LFA-1, to bind its counter-receptor, ICAM-1, on endothelial surfaces for diapedesis to occur normally. The function of chemokines is to provide chemotactic gradients as well as activate the integrins for tight adhesion prior to the active participation in endothelial cells in diapedesis.[327,328] Interestingly, LFA-1 was shown to be required as an accessory molecule during interaction of T cells with their cognate targets.[329]

Chemokines are critical for initiating the primary immune response as APCs, such as DCs. DCs and naïve T cells both share a common chemokine receptor, CCR7. T cells migrate through high endothelial venules, which secrete the chemokine SLC (CCL21). SLC is needed for integrin-mediated adhesion of the T cells.[330] Mice lacking expression of SLC have defects in lymphocyte and DC localization to the T-cell zone of secondary lymphoid organs.[331] The chemokine-directed "patrolling" of naïve T cells in the lymph nodes is probably the major mechanism by which the very few lymphocytes with the relevant TcR specificity remain there to interact with the antigen-loaded APCs during an immune response. Thus, chemokines are essential components of the "clonal selection" of lymphocytes.

T-Cell Polarization: The Power of Dichotomy

In 1986, Coffman and Mosmann at DNAX Research Institute were interested in determining factors that differentiated different types of T helper cell lines. One such line was capable of inducing a 100-fold increase in IgE secretion from mouse splenocytes, which was potently blocked by IFNγ.[332] When the team characterized other cloned T-cell lines, it became clear that there were very specific patterns of secretion: Some clones, which they called T_H1 cells, produced IL-2 and IFNγ, while other clones, which they called T_H2 cells, produced factors that stimulated B cells (B-cell–stimulating factor-1), mast cells, other T cells, and IgE and IgG1 secretion. All clones produced IL-3.[333] Further work, in collaboration with Paul, who first identified B-cell–stimulating factor-1,[334–336] clarified that B-cell–stimulating factor-1 was the same factor that stimulated mast cells and T cells, later renamed IL-4. Coffman and Mosmann[337] defined the now well-established paradigm of polarized T helper cell secretion; they demonstrated that IL-4 and IFNγ reciprocally inhibit the outgrowth of T_H1 and T_H2 cells, respectively. The later identification of transcription factors that are selectively expressed in these cells (GATA-3 and T-bet, respectively) and can even reprogram the cells to transdifferentiate toward the "opposite" phenotype further substantiated this dichotomy.[338,339] These findings had profound implications for immunologists, who began to classify diseases according to their predominant T_H cytokine profiles. Thus, tuberculosis and most bacterial and fungal infections produced a T_H1 pattern of cytokines, whereas asthma and other allergic diseases produced a T_H2 pattern of cytokines. While this reductionist view of cytokine production is no doubt an oversimplification, this simple dichotomy has proved quite robust and has helped guide the development of novel therapeutics for various diseases.

There is, however, a danger to oversimplification[340]—sometimes it is necessary to be a "fox" rather than a "hedgehog."[341] Some diseases, such as Crohn disease, an inflammatory bowel disease that was thought to be driven by the T_H1-polarizing cytokine, IL-12, is more likely driven by a related cytokine, IL-23, with which IL-12 shares a common subunit; indeed, a genome-wide association study in 2006 revealed a highly significant association of the gene encoding a subunit of the IL-23 receptor and early-onset Crohn disease.[342] Ustekinumab, a mAb against the IL-12/IL-23 p40 common subunit was approved by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration for the treatment of moderate-to-severe Crohn disease in 2006 and for moderate-to-severe plaque psoriasis in 2009.

The Language of Immunoregulation: Explaining the "Contrivances"

The concept of immunoregulation is implicit in the term "immunity" (exempt), and the history of how different immunologists have viewed immunoregulation, depending on their perspectives, is worthy of a chapter in itself. Jerne[343] hypothesized that antibodies can act as antigens and elicit an immune response against their idiotypes, which would then serve to regulate the immune response. While appealing, efforts to prove the importance of this concept have achieved limited success. In 1970, Gershon and Kondo[344] found that thymus-derived cells could specifically induce tolerance, and they and others spent many years trying to isolate antigen-specific T suppressor cells but were unable to do so. In the 1990s, the field shifted away from clonotypic suppressor cells toward T cells secreting specific tolerogenic factors, such as IL-10–secreting "Tr1 cells" and transforming growth factor-β–secreting "Th3 cells."[340,345] This was followed by the identification of cell surface markers of a subset of CD4+ cells that were required to suppress autoimmunity in mice. These turned out to be CD25 and CD5 in a CD4+ population of cells in the mouse, cells which were later called regulatory T cells. In 2001, the *FoxP3* gene was identified as the gene that was mutated in Scurfy mice, which develop severe autoimmunity as a result of a single gene mutation.[346] Similarly, mutations in the human homolog of *FoxP3* were found to be associated with the disease called IPEX (*i*mmune dysregulation, *p*olyendocrinophathy *e*nteropathy, *X*-linked syndrome).[347–349] Analogous to the capacity for T-bet and GATA3 to drive T_H1 and T_H2 differentiation, respectively, expression of FoxP3 was sufficient to drive the differentiation of T helper cells to a CD4+ CD25+ regulatory T phenotype.[350,351]

Central tolerance, sometimes referred to as "negative selection," is a means of shaping the repertoire that was thought likely to exist following the discovery of the thymus as an immune organ by Miller in 1961; however, proof for this was lacking. How could one prove the existence of a phenomenon that predicted the absence of a cell, rather than its presence? It was not until 1987 that Kappler et al.[352] used a mAb against a specific TcR Vβ segment to show that the mAb recognized immature thymocytes but not mature thymocytes or T cells, thus proving that negative selection occurs. Von Boehmer demonstrated a similar phenomenon using a TcR transgenic mouse model.[353] Negative selection of immature B cells was also demonstrated in the classic experiments of Nossal and Pike,[354] Sidman and Unanue,[355] and Raff et al.[356]

Clearly, the field of immunoregulation is still evolving. Novel mechanisms of immunoregulation will surely be discovered, and novel regulatory interactions will be uncovered. The role of tolerogenic DCs,[357,358] CD8+ T cells,[359,360] and myeloid-derived suppressor cells[361–363] are likely to play important roles and some of these will likely find their way to the clinic. Perhaps, however, we have made some progress in support of Ehrlich's contention[364]:

> The organism possesses certain contrivances by means of which the immunity reaction, so easily produced by all kinds of cells, is prevented from working against the organism's own elements.

Immune Subversion: The Case of Tumors

The idea that the immune system is capable of responding to tumors dates back to Ehrlich,[365] who predicted that cancer would occur at a high frequency in the absence of

an immune response. This theme was recapitulated by others, notably Burnet,[366] who argued that T cells would be prominent in what he termed "immune surveillance." The field enjoyed a resurgence in 1994 when Schreiber and colleagues demonstrated that tumors expressing dominant-negative IFNγ receptors demonstrated enhanced tumorigenicity in syngeneic mice.[367] This was supported by studies using IFNγ receptor-deficient or STAT1-deficient mice.[368] Additional evidence for an active immune response against tumors is the spontaneous development of autoimmunity in some individuals with tumors; for example, paraneoplastic cerebellar degeneration occurs in individuals with a cytotoxic T-cell response to a shared antigen on tumor cells and neuronal cells.[369] The immune response to tumors is complex, with participation from cytotoxic T cells, natural killer (NK) cells, DCs, and myeloid cells.[370] The "counter-response" by the tumors, which has been termed "escape" or "evasion," is equally complex.[370] While it is beyond the scope of this chapter to discuss any of these in detail, several relevant points of historical interest should be noted. In 1976, a postdoctoral fellow named Mike Bevan was studying alloreactive cytotoxic T-cell responses and was able to demonstrate that spleen cells from an H-2^b/H-2^d–restricted mouse primed with H-2^b cells that differed in minor histocompatibility loci contained increased numbers of both H-2^b– and H-2^d–restricted cytotoxic CD8 T cells.[371,372] Bevan interpreted this as evidence of "cross-priming," in which ingestion of cell-associated antigens by phagocytosis led to cytosolic entry of antigens and loading onto MHC class I molecules and then presentation to cytotoxic T cells. It was completely novel and counterintuitive, but subsequent studies validated this interpretation.[373] Recent progress has been made in our understanding mechanisms by which antigens gain entry into the cytosol from phagosomes.[374] These studies were based on key findings by Desjardins and colleagues who first demonstrated recruitment of endoplasmic reticulum membrane to nascent phagosomes.[375,376] Mice that lack CD8α+ DCs, a cell type that is adept at cross-priming, were unable to demonstrate cross-priming and were incapable of generating a cytotoxic response against West Nile virus and a highly immunogenic fibrosarcoma tumor.[377] Thus, cross-priming is important in tumor immunity.

Tumor cells are capable of circumventing the host immune response in various ways, including downregulation of MHC class I molecules, although this would potentially render them susceptible to NK-mediated killing, according to the "missing self" hypothesis.[378] Tumors elaborate a host of cytokines and growth factors that directly inhibit various components of the immune system.[370] An additional means of tumor evasion specifically bears on the meaning of "immunologic self." Most cells in the body express a cell surface protein, CD47, which is a ligand for a receptor present on macrophages and DCs, SIRPα.[379] SIRPα interacts with tyrosine phosphatases via its cytosolic domain[380]; therefore, corecruitment of SIRPα to tyrosine kinase-coupled signaling scaffolds is predicted to inhibit kinase-mediated signaling events. Lindberg and colleagues showed in 2000 that CD47 on erythrocytes in mice prevented their phagocytosis until levels fell below a certain level, thus CD47 served as an aging "clock" that signified a "don't eat me" signal.[381] In 2010, in a remarkable study, expression levels of CD47 on non-Hodgkin lymphoma (NHL) cells were negatively correlated with survival. Blocking anti-CD47 antibodies preferentially enabled phagocytosis of NHL cells and synergized with rituximab. Treatment of human NHL-engrafted mice with an anti-CD47 antibody reduced lymphoma burden and improved survival, while combination treatment with rituximab (anti-CD20) led to elimination of lymphoma and cure.[382] In these settings, CD47, rather than MHC proteins, serve as a marker of "self." It is somewhat counterintuitive that, at least in the case of NHL, tumor masquerading as self is one mechanism by which tumors evade the immune system. Ironically, downregulation of MHC class I molecules, the classic marker of self, is yet another mechanism of how tumor evasion of immunity.[370]

Immune Hijacking: The Discovery of Human Immunodeficiency Virus

The first description of what would come to be known as the "acquired immunodeficiency syndrome" appeared in 1981.[383] Initially described in five homosexual men, the disease soon was apparent in Haitians, transfusion recipients, infants, Africans, and female sexual contacts of infected men.[384] In just 2 years, Montagnier's team published the first paper demonstrating the presence of retroviral particles from diseased patients,[385] and a year later, Gallo's group published five papers in *Science* providing convincing evidence that this retrovirus was the cause of acquired immunodeficiency syndrome.[386–390] Barré-Sinoussi and Montagnier won the Nobel Prize for their discovery of human immunodeficiency virus (HIV), along with zur Hausen, for demonstrating that human papillomavirus can cause cervical cancer. Many felt that Gallo should have been awarded the prize as well.

Pneumonia due to *Pneumocystis carinii* (later re-named *P. jerovici*) was common in initial cases of acquired immunodeficiency syndrome, but patients soon presented with an array of opportunistic infectious diseases, malignancies (eg, Kaposi sarcoma and lymphoma), and even autoimmune diseases. In 1986, Maddon et al.[391] demonstrated that CD4 is an essential receptor that mediates HIV-1 entry into lymphocytes; this was followed in 1996 by the demonstration of CXCR4 and CCR5 as coreceptors for HIV-1 entry.[392] Since then, many laboratories worldwide have dedicated their efforts to uncovering HIV pathogenesis.[393,394] One of the major challenges to the immune system as well as the development of an HIV-1 vaccine is the enormous plasticity of the viral sequence due to the high error rate of reverse transcription.[393]

Intensive efforts in academia and the pharmaceutical industry have resulted in highly active antiretroviral therapy based on targeting multiple steps of viral replication, mostly focusing on reverse transcriptase and protease. A disease that was once virtually 100% fatal is now manageable, resulting in an 80% to 90% decrease in mortality rates in the United States and Europe.[393] Among the major

challenges facing immunologists and virologists is eliminating the latent reservoir of virus in resting memory CD4+ lymphocytes, developing an effective HIV-1 vaccine, and providing treatment for the 90% of infected individuals worldwide who reside in developing countries and have poor access to antiretroviral therapy.

METCHNIKOFF'S LEGACY

The Rediscovery of Innate Immunity

Arguably, the most important advance in immunology in the last 15 years has been the "rediscovery" of innate immunity. The closest term to "innate immunity" that was used at the turn of the century was "natural immunity." When the cellularists and the humoralists were debating the relative importance of cells and soluble antikörper at the turn of the century, much of the phenomena that Metchnikoff observed under the microscope represented different aspects of innate immunity. However, Metchnikoff distinguished enhanced immunity due to vaccination as a result of what we would call today an acquired immune response: "an agglutinative substance...in the...fluids of the body becomes much more developed in those of immunised animals."[395] He thought that infections could lead to an acquired immune response, but the nature of that response was to foster an enhanced response in phagocytic cells.[395]

> In certain infective diseases terminating fatally a very marked phagocytosis is observed even in susceptible animals . . . The acquisition of immunity against microorganisms is, therefore, due not only to the change from negative to positive chemiotaxis, but also to the perfecting of the phagocytic and digestive powers of the leucocytes.

In 1932, Fleming[396] recounted the discovery of lysozyme, which he made in 1921, "because its importance in connection with natural immunity does not seem to be generally appreciated." Although the discovery has been cited to represent another example of scientific serendipity, resulting from accidental dripping of nasal secretions from Fleming himself onto a culture plate,[397] Fleming wrote that "cultures of nasal mucus were made from a person suffering an acute cold" when the bacterolytic phenomenon due to lysozyme was observed.[396] Fleming would go on to discover penicillin, which was a bona fide example of scientific serendipity, and receive the Nobel Prize for his discovery.

Of course, lysozyme is but one of many innate immune molecules important in the early phase of host defense. Other cationic proteins include defensins, which are secreted by leukocytes and epithelial cells, and chemokines, whose tertiary but not primary structures are related to defensins. Some members of both classes have the dual role of recruiting inflammatory cells to sites of infection and killing bacteria.[398–401] Other examples of components of innate immunity include "innate immune lymphocytes," such as NK cells, NK T cells, and γδ T cells. Although it is beyond the scope of this chapter to describe these cell types except in passing, the discovery of NK cells in 1975[402–404] provided a cellular mechanism to account for the observation that some host immune cells recognize and kill virus-infected or neoplastic cells lacking expression of MHC class I molecules. NK cells also provide an early, immediate source of cytokines, allowing them to rapidly respond to injury prior to maturation of the primary immune response.[405]

The "modern era" of the study of innate immunity began in 1989. In a characteristic example of his remarkable insight, Janeway[406] published an article in which he described a new model for immune recognition. Janeway argued that rather than distinguish "self" from "nonself," the immune system had evolved to distinguish "noninfectious self from infected nonself" (see Table 2.1). Janeway compared the innate and acquired immune systems. He emphasized that the former evolved to respond rapidly to "pathogen associated molecular patterns" by as yet unidentified receptors in a nonclonal fashion. Janeway was acutely aware of the significance of Freund's discovery of adjuvant[407] and the implications this had for the primary immune response. What was remarkable about Janeway's hypothesis is its intuitive appeal and its Darwinian flavor, in some ways analogous to Metchnikoff's view of phagocytosis. In addition, it had great predictive power. In a completely independent line of investigation, Jules Hoffmann became interested in exploring inflammatory pathways in *Drosophila*. Hoffman was aware of Baltimore's discovery of nuclear factor κ-light-chain-enhancer of activated B cells (NF-κB), a transcription factor, originally identified as a lipopolysaccharide (LPS)-inducible transcription factor in B cells in 1986.[408] Mice rendered deficient in NF-κB demonstrated multifocal defects in immune responses, including those to LPS.[409,410] Based on his observation of similarities between the cytokine-induced activation cascade of NF-κB in mammals and the activation of the morphogen dorsal in *Drosophila* embryos, Hoffmann demonstrated that the dorsoventral signaling pathway and an extracellular toll ligand control expression of antifungal peptide gene expression. Mutations in the toll signaling pathway dramatically reduced survival after fungal infection.[411] Until that time, there was only a limited understanding of pathogen recognition in eukaryotes; the only receptor that was known to participate in the recognition of LPS was CD14, a molecule that is expressed predominantly on macrophages.[412] Shortly after publication of Hoffmann's landmark study, Janeway and Medzhitov published an article in *Nature* that described the cloning of a human homolog of *Drosophila* toll. A constitutively active mutant of human toll transfected into human cell lines induced the activation of NF-κB and the expression of the inflammatory cytokines IL-1, IL-6, and IL-8 as well as the expression of the costimulatory molecule B7.1 "which is required for the activation of naïve T cells."[413] The choice of these proteins was not accidental, and it was clear that Medzhitov and Janeway had Janeway's hypothesis of 1989 in mind. Meanwhile, Beutler et al.[414] were zeroing in on the genetic identification of a mutation in a mouse strain that was incapable of responding to LPS, a component of the cell walls of all gram-negative bacteria. Beutler and Cerami were the first to show that immunization against tumor necrosis factor, the prototypic cytokine

that is produced following administration of LPS, protected mice from lethal shock.[414] Beutler demonstrated that the codominant Lpsd allele of C3H/HeJ mice corresponded to a missense mutation in the toll-like receptor-4 gene.[415] Since these publications, a family of innate immune receptors has been defined, each responding to different ligands encountered by hosts during infection.[416] Initial interactions of innate immune receptors on APCs with their ligands encounters are necessary for the upregulation of costimulatory molecules, without which tolerance would occur.[417] Janeway's prediction in 1989 was borne out, providing strong empirical evidence in support of his model for immune recognition (see Table. 2.1). In 2012, Beutler and Hoffman, together with Steinman, received the Nobel Prize.

The field of innate immunity has exploded since the key observations of Hoffman, Beutler, Janeway, and Medzhitov. Many other receptors and components of the innate immune system have been discovered. These include components of the complement system,[418] cell surface lectins,[419] collectins such as lung surfactant proteins[420] and mannose-binding proteins,[421] scavenger receptors,[422,423] and pentraxins.[424] Most of these participate in recognition of pathogens, including fungi,[425] bacteria,[426] and viruses such as HIV.[427] In some instances, the phagocytic cells themselves serve as the source of opsonins, such as complement.[428] A variety of innate immune receptors also recognize apoptotic and necrotic cells.[429,430] Secretion of opsonins, such as milk fat globule-EGF factor 8, can enhance uptake of targets such as apoptotic cells,[431] and the absence of this protein has been linked to autoimmunity in mice.[432] Similar results were found in other mouse strains engineered to be deficient in clearance of apoptotic cells.[433,434] The conceptual basis of these experiments was built on earlier work of Savill, Henson, and others who showed that the immunologically "silent" disposal of apoptotic debris is an active process serving to divert self-antigens toward a nonphlogistic mode of phagocytosis.[435–437] In the context of resolution of acute infections, a similar function is provided by the production of omega-3 polyunsaturated fatty-acid-derived "anti-inflammatory" lipids ("resolvins"), first identified by Serhan et al. in 2000.[438,439]

Cytosolic Components of Innate Immunity: Discovery of the Nicotinamide Adenine Dinucleotide Phosphate-Oxidase

In 1957, Good and colleagues described an X-linked disease in which children succumbed to chronic suppurative and granulomatous infiltrations and chronic infections.[440] Neutrophils isolated from these children showed decreased bactericidal activity, although they demonstrated normal phagocytosis.[441] However, they showed decreased hydrogen peroxide production and hexose monophosphate shunt activity.[442] In 1974, Curnutte et al.[443] identified defective superoxide anion production in children with this syndrome who also failed to reduce the dye, nitroblue tetrazolium.[444] This simple test has been widely used to diagnose what came to be called "chronic granulomatous disease." In 1978, Segal et al.[445,446] identified the molecular defect in X-linked chronic granulomatous disease as the absence of cytochrome b. Since then, all the components of this multiprotein enzyme complex have been identified.[447–452] Of note is that the oxidase responsible for X-linked chronic granulomatous disease, now referred to as NOX2, is but one of a family of oxidases that are widely expressed and have been implicated in various disease.[453] We now know that there are multiple reactive oxygen species, many of which combine with other reactive molecules, such as nitric oxide, to generate reactive nitrogen species. Nathan and colleagues demonstrated that mice deficient in inducible nitric oxide synthase proved highly susceptible *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*, resembling wild-type littermates immunosuppressed by high-dose glucocorticoids.[454]

In addition to its role in microbial killing, NOX2 is recruited to early phagosomes in DCs and mediates the sustained production of low levels of reactive oxygen species, causing active and maintained alkalinization of the phagosomal lumen. DCs lacking NOX2 show enhanced phagosomal acidification and increased antigen degradation, resulting in impaired cross-priming.[455]

Cytosolic Components of Innate Immunity Signal Danger

There are many additional cytosolic proteins important in innate immunity. Of particular interest is the discovery of a family of pattern recognition receptors, most commonly referred to as nucleotide oligomerization domain–like receptors.[456] In 2000 and 2001, a number of genetic studies linked defects in *NLR* genes to inflammatory diseases, including Crohn disease,[457] Blau syndrome,[458] Muckle-Wells syndrome,[459] and familial Mediterranean fever.[460] In 2002, Tschopp and colleagues described a multiprotein complex that they called the "inflammasome," which included members of the nucleotide oligomerization domain–like receptors family and caspase-1.[461] They showed that activation of the inflammasome leads to generation of IL-1β, a cytokine that was first cloned by Dinarello and colleagues in 1984,[462] representing one of the key "endogenous pyrogens" first detected in 1953.[463,464] In 2006, Tschopp showed that the NLRP3 inflammasome was activated by monosodium urate crystals, implicating this pathway in gout.[465] From a historical perspective, gout is among the earliest diseases to be described. It was identified by the Egyptians in 2640 BCE and was later recognized by Hippocrates in the fifth century BC, who referred to it as "the unwalkable disease." Leeuwenhoek was the first to observe urate crystals from a tophus.[466] Recently, an advisory panel of the U.S. Food and Drug Administration recommended against approval of canakinumab, a humanized mAb against IL-1, for the treatment of gout; although it was effective, it was not deemed safe due to increased risk of serious infections.

In 1994, Matzinger[467] proposed a new model of immune recognition. She proposed that APCs are activated by danger/alarm signals from injured cells (see Table 2.1). Although this was a purely theoretical model, since then, there have been numerous instances in which injured or

damaged components of the host have been recognized to trigger inflammation. As Matzinger explains,[468]

> Although this may seem to be just one more step down the pathway of slowly increasingly complex cellular interaction, this small step drops us off a cliff . . . in which the "foreignness" of a pathogen is not the important feature that triggers a response, and "selfness" is no guarantee of tolerance.

Thus, release of uric acid crystals can be viewed as an example of a "danger signal." Similarly, release of intracellular stores of adenosine triphosphate from dying cells as a trigger for signaling cellular injury, predicted in 1988,[469] was shown to be capable of activating the NLRP3 inflammasome.[470] Although Matzinger's model shares features in common with Janeway's, the emphasis on endogenous danger signals rather than direct engagement of pattern recognition receptors by pathogens is novel. The fact that pathogens and "endogenous danger signals" share common receptors and signaling pathways is consistent with the idea that either exogenous or endogenous triggers of innate immune receptors accomplish the same thing: to facilitate the primary immune response.

Cytosolic Components Maintain Safety: The Role of Autophagy

There are numerous examples of microbes that are ingested by phagocytosis but either remain viable within acidic organelles or escape into the host cytoplasm. Macroautophagy is an evolutionarily conserved process in which cytoplasmic components are sequestered by a double membrane sac, eventually acquiring endosomal and lysosomal characteristics.[471] In 2004, Deretic and colleagues showed that IFNγ induced autophagy in macrophages, which contributed to suppression of intracellular survival of mycobacteria.[472] In the same year, Nakagawa et al.[473] demonstrated that autophagy was necessary for killing of group A *Streptococcus*, which had escaped into the host cytoplasm. Since then, many publications have confirmed the importance of autophagy in both innate and acquired immunity.[471]

The Renaissance of Cellular Immunology: Discovery of Dendritic Cells

Although we tend to take for granted the concept that APCs are necessary to process antigen, this was not firmly established until 1967. Mosier used a method pioneered by Mishell and Dutton for measuring in vitro antibody production with sheep erythrocytes as antigen.[474] Mosier separated mouse spleen cells into an adherent fraction and a nonadherent fraction. The adherent cells, which were phagocytic, were deemed "macrophage rich," and the nonadherent cells were deemed "lymphocyte rich." Both populations together, but neither alone, were needed for an antibody response, and Mosier[475] concluded that antibody production required "antigen phagocytosis by macrophages and macrophage lymphocyte interactions," although he did not know the nature of the interactions. Further experiments established that exceedingly few adherent cells were needed for antibody production, perhaps as few as 1 in 10^4 adherent cells.[476] In the mid-1970s, Zanvil Cohn and a postdoctorate in his laboratory at Rockefeller University, Ralph Steinman, were characterizing a novel adherent population of cells from spleen.[477–479] The cells had an unusual "tree-like" morphology, prompting the name "dendritic cell."[477] These cells proved difficult to purify, necessitating Steinman and Cohn to develop a rather laborious density gradient technique for cell purification.[480] In 1978, they used this technique to show that DCs could stimulate a primary mixed leukocyte reaction—an index of lymphocyte proliferation—and showed that DCs are at least 100 times more effective than B cells and macrophages for this function.[58] This landmark paper was the first demonstration of the unique capability of DCs to efficiently present antigen. Since then, many DC subsets have been described with critical functions in shaping the immune response. For example, Banchereau and colleagues showed that one subtype of DC, a "plasmacytoid" DC, is the principal IFNα-secreting cell in systemic lupus erythematosus with the capacity to induce plasma cell differentiation.[481,482] Other DC subsets can respond to cues from epithelial cells, which secrete the cytokine TSLP, and shape T-cell polarization toward a T_H2 phenotype.[483,484] This may be a critical pathway in promoting allergic inflammation in asthma.[485] Since the initial discovery of DCs in 1973, Steinman and his many colleagues and collaborators have uncovered novel functions of DCs in triggering and shaping immunity as well as inducing tolerance. Many laboratories worldwide are using DCs in both capacities, and Steinman himself was the recipient of a DC-based vaccine against his own pancreatic cancer. Steinman was awarded the Nobel Prize, posthumously, in 2012—tragically, just days after he succumbed to cancer. The Nobel was a fitting tribute to a consummate cellular immunologist whose scientific curiosity and pedigree could be traced to Metchnikoff.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

I would like to acknowledge my appreciation of my former mentor and good friend, Sam Silverstein, my former teachers, Ben Pernis and Len Chess, and to my colleagues who helped make teaching a great source of joy to me: Ned Braunstein, Vinnie Butler, Mitch Cairo, Kathryn Calame, Steve Canfield, Raph Clynes, Kathy Nickerson, Paul Rothman, Ale Pernis, Chris Schindler, and Bob Winchester. I am also indebted to Arthur Silverstein, whom I have come to know only from his scholarship, but in whom I feel a kindred spirit.

REFERENCES

1. Kuhn TS. *The Structure of Scientific Revolutions*. 3rd ed. Chicago: University of Chicago Press; 1996.
2. Burkert W. *Ancient Mystery Cults*. Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press; 1987.
3. Hippocrates. *The Genuine Works of Hippocrates*. London, United Kingdom: Sydenham Society; 1849.
4. Bloom BL. The "medical model," miasma theory, and community mental health. *Commun Ment Health*.1965;1:333–338.
5. Hippocrates. *On the Nature of Man*. Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press; 1959.
6. Quintilian. *Institutio Oratoria*. Loeb Classical Library; 1920.
7. Cato V. *On Agriculture*. Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press; 1993.
8. Galen. *Three Treatises on the Nature of Science*. India: Hackett Publishing; 1985.
9. Galen. *On Diseases and Symptoms*. Cambridge, MA: Cambridge University Press; 2006.
10. Smith W. Immunitas. In: Murray J, ed. *A Dictionary of Greek and Roman Antiquities*. London, United Kingdom; 1875:628.
11. Thucydides. *History of the Peloponnesian War*. Tufts University.
12. Nutton V. The seeds of disease: an explanation of contagion and infection from the Greeks to the Renaissance. *Med Hist*.1983;27:1–34. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6339840
13. Aquinas T. *De Malo*. New York, NY: Oxford; 2001.
14. Cantor NF. *In the Wake of the Plague: The Black Death and The World it Made*. New York, NY: Simon and Schuster; 2002.
15. Silverstein AM. *A History of Immunology*. Amsterdam: Elsevier; 2009.
16. Redi F. *Experiments on the Generation of Insects, 1688.* Chicago, IL: Open Court; 1909.
17. Gest H. The discovery of microorganisms by Robert Hooke and Antoni Van Leeuwenhoek, fellows of the Royal Society. *Notes Rec R Soc Lond*. 2004;58:187–201. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15209075
18. Hooke R. *Micrographia: Or Some Physiological Descriptions of Minute Bodies made by Magnifying Glasses with Observations and Inquiries thereupon*. London, United Kingdom: Jo. Martyn and Ja. Allestry; 1665.
19. Schwann T. *Microscopic Investigations on the Accordance in the Structure and Growth of Plants and Animals*. Sydenham Society; 1839.
20. Otis L. *Membranes: Metaphors of Investion in Nineteenth Century Literature, Science and Politics*. Baltimore, MD: Johns Hopkins; 1999.
21. Henle J. *On Miasmata and Contagia*. Johns Hopkins; 1938.
22. Holland H. *Medical Notes and Reflections*. Philadelphia, PA: Haswell, Barrington, and Haswell; 1839.
23. DeLacy ME. A Linnaean thesis concerning Contagium Vivum: The "Exanthemata Viva" of John Nyander and its placer in contemporary thought. With a new translation by AJ Cain. *Med Hist*. 1995;39:159–185. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7739296
24. Redi F. *Osservazioni intorno a pellicelli del corpo umano fatte dal Dottor Gio: Cosimo Bonomo e da lui com altre osservazioni scritte in una lettera all'illustriss*. Florence, Italy: Piero Matini; 1687.
25. Théodoridès J. Casimir Davaine (1812–1882): a precursor of Pasteur. *Med Hist*.1966;10:155–165. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/5325873
26. Pasteur L. De l'attenuation du virus du choléra des poules. *Comptesrendus de l'Academie des sciences*.1880;91:673–680.
27. Bourhy H, Perrot A, Cavaillon JM. Rabies. In: Artenstein AW, ed. *Vaccines: A Biography*. New York, NY: Springer; 2010:73.
28. Theiler M, Smith HH. The effect of prolonged cultivation in vitro upon the pathogenicity of yellow fever virus. *J Exp Med*.1937;65:767–786. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19870633
29. Oettinger T, Jørgensen M, Ladefoged A, et al. Development of the Mycobacterium bovis BCG vaccine: review of the historical and biochemical evidence for a genealogical tree. *Tuber Lung Dis*.1999;79: 243–250.
30. Carter KC. Koch's postulates in relation to the work of Jacob Henle and Edwin Klebs. *Med Hist*.1985;29:353–374. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3903383
31. de Kruif P. *Microbe Hunters*. San Diego, CA: Harcourt; 1926.
32. Koch R. Untersuchungen über Bakterien: V. Die Ätiologie der Milzbrand-Krankheit, begründet auf die Entwicklungsgeschichte des Bacillus anthracis. *Beitrage zur Biologie der Pflanzen*.1876;2:277–310.
33. Koch R. Tuberculosis. Nobelprize.org. www.nobelprize.org/educational/medicine/tuberculosis/readmore.html. Accessed February 25, 2012.
34. Mollaret HH. Contribution to the knowledge of relations between Koch and Pasteur. *NTM-Schriftenr Gesch Naturwiss, Technik, Med, Leipzig*; 1983:S57–65. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11634395
35. Artenstein AW. Smallpox. In: Arenstein AW, ed. *Vaccines: A Biography*. New York: Springer; 2010:9–30.
36. Behbehani AM. The smallpox story: life and death of an old disease. *Microbiol Rev*.1983;47:455–509. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6319980
37. Jenner E. *An Inquiry Into the Causes and Effects of the Variolæ Vaccinæ, a Disease Discovered in Some of the Western Counties of England, Partiularly Gloucestershire, and Known by the Name of Cow-Pox*. London, United Kingdom: D.N. Shury; 1798.
38. Morgan AJ, Parker S. Translatonal mini-review series on vaccines: The Edward Jenner Museum and the history of vaccination. *Clin Exp Immunol*.2007;147:389–394. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17302886
39. Darwin C. *On the Origin of Species (by Means of Natural Selection)*. London: John Murray; 1859.
40. Tauber AI. Metchnikoff and the phagocytosis theory. *Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol*.2003;4:897–901. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14625539
41. Metchnikoff O. *Life of Metchnikoff, 1845–1916*. Boston: Houghton and Mifflin; 1921.
42. Stossel TP. The early history of phagocytosis. In: Gordon S, ed. *Phagocytosis: The Host*. Stamford: JAI Press; 1999.
43. Haeckel E. *Die Radiolarien*. Berlin, Germany: George Reimer; 1862.
44. Metchnikoff E. *Lectures on the Comparative Pathology of Inflammation*. London: Kegan Paul, Trench, Truber; 1893. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17784439
45. Mechnikov I. Ilya Mechnikov-Nobel Lecture. Nobelprize.org. www.nobelprize.org/nobel_prizes/medicine/laureates/1908/mechnikov-lecture.html. Accessed February 26, 2012.
46. Metchnikoff E. *The Evolutionary Biology Papers of Elie Metchnikoff*. Dordrecht, The Netherlands: Kluwer Academic Publishers; 2000.
47. Roux P, Yersin A. Contribution al'etude de la diphtherie. *Ann InstPasteur*.1888;2:629–661.
48. Behring E, Kitasato S. Ueber das Zustandekekommen de Diphtherie—Immunität und der Tetanus—Immunität bei Tieren. *Deutsche Med Wochenschr*.1890;16:1113–1114.
49. Behring E, Wernicke E. Ueber immunisirung und Heilung von versuchsthieren bei der Diphtherie. *Hyg u Infektionskr*.1892;12:10–44.
50. Buchner H. Über die nahere Natur der bakterientötenden Substanz in Blutserum. *Zentralbl Bakteriol*.1889;6:561–572.
51. Bordet J. Mechanisme de l'agglutination. *Ann Inst Pasteur*. 1899;13: 225–250.
52. Wassermann A, Neisser A, Bruck C. Eine serodiagnostische Reaktion bei Syphilis. *Deutsche medicinische Wochenschrift*.1906;32:745–746.
53. Linton DS. *Emil von Behring: Infectious Disease, Immunology, Serum Therapy*. Philadelphia: American Philosophical Society; 2005.
54. Metchnikoff E. L'État actuel de la question de l'immunité (Rapport au Congrès International de Budapest). *Annales de l'Institut Pasteur*. 1894;8:706–721.
55. Wright AE, Douglas SR. An experimental investigation of the role of the blood fluids in connection with phagocytosis. *Proc Royal Soc London*. 1902;72:357–370.
56. Shaw GB. *The Doctor's Dilemma*. Sioux Falls, SD: NuVision; 2008.
57. Fagraeus A. Antibody production in relation to the development of plasma cells. *Acta Medica (Scand) Supplementum*.1948;204.
58. Steinman RM, Witmer MD. Lymphoid dendritic cells are potent stimulators of the primary mixed leukocyte reaction in mice. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*.1978;75:5132–5136. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/154105
59. Silverstein AM. Paul Ehrlich's passion: the origins of his receptor immunology. *Cell Immunol*.1999;194:213–221. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10383824
60. Silverstein AM. *Paul Ehrlich's Receptor Immunology: The Magnificent Obsession*. San Diego: Academic Press; 2002.
61. www.nobelprize.org/nobel_prizes/medicine/laureates/1908/ehrlich-lecture.html. Accessed December 14, 2011.

62. Schwarz HP, Dorner F. Karl Landsteiner and his major contributions to haematology. *Br J Haematol*.2003;121:556–565. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12752096
63. Landsteiner K. Zur Kenntnis der antifermentativen, lytischen und agglutinierenden wirkungen des blutserums und der lymphe. *Zentbl Bakt Orig*.1900;27:357–362.
64. Landsteiner K. Ueber agglutinationserscheinungen normalen menschlichen blutes. *Wien Klin Wochenschr*.1901;14:1132–1134.
65. www.nobelprize.org/nobel_prizes/medicine/laureates/1930/landsteinerlecture.html. Accessed December 14, 2011.
66. Landsteiner K, Levine P. A new agglutinable factor differentiating individual human bloods. *Proc Soc Exp Biol Med*.1927;24:600–602.
67. Landsteiner K, Wiener AS. An agglutinable factor in human blood recognized by immune sera for Rhesus blood. *Proc Soc Exp Biol Med*. 1940;48:223–224.
68. Donath J, Landsteiner K. Ueber paroxysmale Hämoglobinurie. *Muench med Wochenschr*.1904;51:1590–1593.
69. Ehrlich P, Morgenroth J. Ueber Haemolysine. *Berlin klin Wchnschr*. 1901;38:599–604.
70. Ehrlich P. *Studies in Immunity*. 2nd ed. London, United Kingdom: John Wiley; 1910.
71. Santucci S. Citotossine. *Rev Ital Ottal Roma*.1906;2:213.
72. Levine P, Katzin EM, Burnham L. Isoimmunization in pregnancy: its possible bearing on the etiology of erythroblastosis foetalis. *JAMA*. 1941;116:825–827.
73. Coombs RR, Mourant AE, Race RR. A new test for the detection of weak and incomplete Rh agglutinins. *Br J Exp Pathol*.1945;26:255–266. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21006651
74. Franklin EC, Holman HR, Muller-Eberhard HJ, et al. An unusual protein component of high molecular weight in the serum of certain patients with rheumatoid arthritis. *J Exp Med*.1957;105:425–438. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17237367
75. Winchester R. A golden anniversary: recognition that rheumatoid arthritis sera contain autoantibodies specific for determinants on native IgG molecules. *J Immunol*.2007;178:1227–1228. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17237366
76. Cohen SG, Zelaya-Quesada M. Portier, Richet, and the discovery of anaphylaxis: a centennial. *J Allergy Clin Immunol*.2002;110:331–336. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12170279
77. Portier P, Richet C. De l'action anaphylactique de certains venins. *C R Seances Soc Biol*.1902;54:170.
78. von Pirquet C, Schick B. *Die Serumkrankheit*. Leipzig und Wien: Franz Deuticke; 1905.
79. von Pirquet C. Allergy. *Arch Int Med*.1911;7:383–440.
80. Dixon FJ, Vazquez JJ, Weigle WO, et al. Pathogenesis of serum sickness. *AMA Arch Pathol*.1958;65:18–28. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/13487025
81. Jackson M. "A private line to medicine": the clinical and laboratory contours of allergy in the early twentieth century. In: Kroker K, Keelan J, Mazumdar PMH, eds. *Crafting Immunity—Working Histories of Clinical Immunology*. Burlington: Ashgate; 2008:60.
82. Obermeyer F, Pick EP. Über die chemischen grundlagen der arteigenschartn der eiweisskörper. Bildung von immiunpracipitinen durch che-mische veranderte eiweisskoörper. *Wiener klin Wschr*.1906;19: 327–333.
83. Svedberg T, Rinde H. The untra-centrifuge, a new instrucmnt for the determination of size and distribution of size of partice in amicroscopic colloids. *J Am Chem Soc*.1924;46:2677–2693.
84. Tiselius A. A new apparatus for teh electrophoretic analysis of colloidal mixtures. *Trans Faraday Soc*.1937;33:524–531.
85. Van Epps HL. Michael Heidelberger and the demystification of antibodies. *J Exp Med*.2006;203:5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16523537
86. Edelman GM, Poulik MD. Studies on structural units of the gammaglobulins. *J Exp Med*.1961;113:861–884. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/13725659
87. Bail O, Tsuda K. Versuche über bakteriolytische immunokörper mit besonderer berücksichtigung des normalen rinderserums. *Zeitschrift Immunitäts-forschung*.1909;1:546–612.
88. Breinl L, Haurowitz F. Untersuchung des präzipitates aus hämoglobin und anti-hämoglobin serum und bemerkungen über die natur der antikörper. *Z Physiol Chem*.1930;192:45–57.
89. Pauling L. A theory of the structure and process of formation of antibodies. *J Am Chem Soc*.1940;62:2643–2657.
90. Eisen HN, Chakraborty AK. Evolving concepts of specificity in immune reactions. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*.2010;107:22373–22380. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21173256
91. Jerne NK. The natural-selection theory of antibody formation. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*.1955;41:849–857. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16589759
92. Crick FH. On protein synthesis. *Symp Soc Exp Biol*.1958;12:138–163. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/13580867
93. Talmage DW. Allergy and Immunology. *Annu Rev Med*. 1957;8: 239–256. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/13425332
94. Burnet FMA. A modification of Jerne's theory of antibody production using the concept of clonal selection. *Aust J Med Sci*.1957;20:67–69.
95. Cruse JM, Lewis RE Jr, David W. Talmage and the advent of the cell selection theory of antibody synthesis. *J Immunol*.1994;153:919–929. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8027564
96. Roberts JC Jr, Dixon FJ. The transfer of lymph node cells in the study of the immune response to foreign proteins. *J Exp Med*.1955;102:379–392. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/13263480
97. Nossal GJ, Lederberg J. Antibody production by single cells. *Nature*. 1958;181:1419–1420. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/13552693
98. Raff MC, Feldmann M, De Petris S. Monospecificity of bone marrow-derived lymphocytes. *J Exp Med*.1973;137:1024–1030. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4571326
99. Köhler G, Milstein C. Continuous cultures of fused cells secreting antibody of predefined specificity. *Nature*.1975;256:495–497. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1172191
100. Hilschmann N, Craig LC. Amino acid sequence studies with Bence-Jones proteins. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*.1965;53:1403–1409. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/5324619
101. Wu TT, Kabat EA. An analysis of the sequences of the variable regions of Bence Jones proteins and myeloma light chains and their implications for antibody complementarity. *J Exp Med*.1970;132:211–250. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18490705
102. Dreyer WJ, Bennett JC. The molecular basis of antibody formation: a paradox. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*.1965;54:864–869. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4160200
103. Weigert MG, Cesari IM, Yonkovich SJ, et al. Variability in the lambda light chain sequences of mouse antibody. *Nature*. 1970;228:1045–1047. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/5483159
104. Edelman GM, Gally JA. Somatic recombination of duplicated genes: an hypothesis on the origin of antibody diversity. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*.1967;57:353–358. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16591477
105. Hood L, Talmage DW. Mechanism of antibody diversity: germ line basis for variability. *Science*. 1970;168:325–334. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4190985
106. Hozumi N, Tonegawa S. Evidence for somatic rearrangement of immunoglobulin genes coding for variable and constant regions. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*.1976;73:3628–3632. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/824647
107. Seidman JG, Leder A, Edgell MH, et al. Multiple related immunoglobulin variable-region genes identified by cloning and sequence analysis. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1978;75:3881–3885. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/279004
108. Brack C, Hirama M, Lenhard-Schuller R, et al. A complete immunoglobulin gene is created by somatic recombination. *Cell*. 1978;15:1–14. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/100225
109. Weigert M, Gatmaitan L, Loh E, et al. Rearrangement of genetic information may produce immunoglobulin diversity. *Nature*.1978;276:785–790. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/103003
110. Early P, Huang H, Davis M, et al. An immunoglobulin heavy chain variable region gene is generated from three segments of DNA: VH, D and JH. *Cell*.1980;19:981–992. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6769593
111. Alt FW, Oltz EM, Young F, et al. VDJ recombination. *Immunol Today*. 1992;13:306–314. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1510813
112. Schatz DG, Oettinger MA, Baltimore D. The V(D)J recombination activating gene, RAG-1. *Cell*.1989;59:1035–1048. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2598259

113. Oettinger MA, Schatz DG, Gorka C, et al. RAG-1 and RAG-2, adjacent genes that synergistically activate V(D)J recombination. *Science.* 1990; 248:1517–1523.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2360047
114. Bernard O, Hozumi N, Tonegawa S. Sequences of mouse immu-noglobulin light chain genes before and after somatic changes. *Cell.* 1978;15:1133–1144.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/103630
115. McKean D, Huppi K, Bell M, et al. Generation of antibody diversity in the immune response of BALB/c mice to influenza virus hemagglutinin. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A.*1984;81:3180–3184.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6203114
116. Griffiths GM, Berek C, Kaartinen M, et al. Somatic mutation and the maturation of immune response to 2-phenyl oxazolone. *Nature.* 1984;312:271–275.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6504141
117. Siskind GW, Benacerraf B. Cell selection by antigen in the immune response. *Adv Immunol.* 1969;10:1–50.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4900673
118. Kaufmann SHE. Robert Koch's highs and lows in the search for a remedy for tuberculosis. *Nature Medicine Special Web Focus: Tuberculosis.*2000. www.nature.com/nm/focus/tb/historical_perspective.html. Accessed January 18, 2012.
119. Landsteiner K, Chase MW. Experiments on transfer of cutaneous sensitivity to simple compounds. *Proc Soc Exp Biol Med.*1942;49:688–690.
120. Landsteiner K, Chase MW. The cellular transfer of cutaneous hypersensitivity to tuberculin. *Proc Soc Exp Biol Med.*1945;59:134–135.
121. Silverstein AM. The lymphocyte in immunology: from James B. Murphy to James L. Gowans. *Nat Immunol.*2001;2:569–71.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11429534
122. Murphy JB, Ellis AW. Experiments on the role of lymphoid tissue in the resistance to experimental tuberculosis in mice. *J Exp Med.*1914;20: 397–403.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19867829
123. Miller JF. Role of the thymus in murine leukaemia. *Nature.*1959;183:1069.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/13644292
124. Ehrich WE, Harris TN. The formation of antibodies in the popliteal lymph node in rabbits. *J Exp Med.*1942;76:335–348.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19871241
125. Fagraeus A. The plasma cellular reaction and its relation to the formation of antibodies in vitro. *J Immunol.*1948;58:1–13.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18897986
126. Glick B. This week's citation classic. *Current Contents.*1979:241.
127. Glick B, Chang TS, Jaap RG. The bursa of Fabricius and antibody production. *Poultry Sci.*1955;35:224–225.
128. Mitchell GF, Miller JF. Cell to cell interaction in the immune response. II. The source of hemolysin-forming cells in irradiated mice given bone marrow and thymus or thoracic duct lymphocytes. *J Exp Med.* 1968;128:821–837.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/5691986
129. Miller JF, Mitchell GF. Cell to cell interaction in the immune response. I. Hemolysin-forming cells in neonatally thymectomized mice reconstituted with thymus or thoracic duct lymphocytes. *J Exp Med.*1968; 128:801–820.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/5691985
130. Mitchell GF, Miller JF. Immunological activity of thymus and thoracic-duct lymphocytes. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A.*1968;59:296–303.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4873344
131. Cooper MD, Raymond DA, Peterson RD, et al. The functions of the thymus system and the bursa system in the chicken. *J Exp Med.*1966;123: 75–102.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/5323079
132. Cooper MD, Peterson RD, Good RA. Delineation of the thymic and bursal lymphoid systems in the chicken. *Nature.*1965;205:143–146.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14276257
133. MazumdarPMH. *Species and Specificity. An Interpretation of the History of Immunology*. New York: Cambridge; 1995.
134. Gowans JL. The effect of the continuous reinfusion of lymph and lymphocytes on the output of lymphocytes from the thoracic duct of unanaesthetized rats. *Br J Exp Pathol.*1957;38:67–78.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/13413083
135. Gowans JL. The recirculation of lymphocytes from blood to lymph in the rat. *J Physiol.*1959;146:54–69.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/13655215
136. Gibson T, Medawar PB. The fate of skin homografts in man. *J Anat.* 1943;77:299–310.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17104936
137. Medawar PB. The behaviour and fate of skin autografts and skin homografts in rabbits: a report to the War Wounds Committee of the Medical Research Council. *J Anat.*1944;78:176–199.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17104960
138. Owen RD. Immunogenetic consequences of vascular anastomoses between bovine twins. *Science.*1945;102:400–401.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17755278
139. Burnet FM, Fenner F. *The Production of Antibodies*. Melbourne: MacMillan; 1949.
140. Billingham RE, Brent L, Medawar PB. "Actively acquired tolerance" of foreign cells. *Nature.*1953;172:603–606.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/13099277
141. Hašek M. Parabiosis of birds during embryonic development. *Cesk Biol.*1953;2:265–277.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/13161053
142. Ivanyi J. Milan Hasek and the discovery of immunological tolerance. *Nat Rev Immunol.*2003;3:591–597.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12876561
143. Tauber AI. The immune self: theory or metaphor? *Immunol Today.* 1994;15:134–136.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8172646
144. Brewerton DA, Hart FD, Nicholls A, et al. Ankylosing spondylitis and HL-A 27. *Lancet.*1973;1:904–907.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4123836
145. Dausset J. [Iso-leuko-antibodies]. *Acta Haematol.*1958;20:156–166.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/13582558
146. Benacerraf B, McDevitt HO. Histocompatibility-linked immune response genes. *Science.*1972;175:273–279.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4109878
147. Schlosstein L, Terasaki PI, Bluestone R, et al. High association of an HL-A antigen, W27, with ankylosing spondylitis. *N Engl J Med.* 1973;288:704–706.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4688372
148. Aisenberg AC. Allogeneic thymus grafts and the restoration of immune function in irradiated thymectomized mice. *J Exp Med.* 1970;131:275–286.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4392947
149. Stutman O, Yunis EJ, Good RA. Effect of parental strain thymus grafts in neonatally thymectomized F1 hybrids. *Transplantation.*1969;7:420–423.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4890908
150. Leuchars E, Cross AM, Dukor P. The restoration of immunological function by thymus grafting in thymectomized irradiated mice. *Transplantation.*1965;3:28–38.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14251683
151. KindredB,Shreffler DC. H-2 dependence of co-operation between T and B cells in vivo. *J Immunol.*1972;109:940–943.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4538719
152. Rosenthal AS, Shevach EM. Function of macrophages in antigen recognition by guinea pig T lymphocytes. I. Requirement for histocompatible macrophages and lymphocytes. *J Exp Med.*1973;138:1194–1212.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4542806
153. Zinkernagel RM, Doherty PC. Restriction of in vitro T cell-mediated cytotoxicity in lymphocytic choriomeningitis within a syngeneic or semiallogeneic system. *Nature.*1974;248:701–702.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4133807
154. Zinkernagel RM, Doherty PC. Immunological surveillance against altered self components by sensitised T lymphocytes in lymphocytic choriomeningitis. *Nature.*1974;251:547–548.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4547543
155. Ziegler K, Unanue ER. Identification of a macrophage antigen-processing event required for I-region-restricted antigen presentation to T lymphocytes. *J Immunol.*1981;127:1869–1875.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6795263
156. Ziegler HK, Unanue ER. Decrease in macrophage antigen catabolism caused by ammonia and chloroquine is associated with inhibition of antigen presentation to T cells. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A.* 1982;79:175–178.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6798568

157. Roche PA, Cresswell P. Invariant chain association with HLA-DR molecules inhibits immunogenic peptide binding. *Nature*. 1990;345:615–618. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2190094
158. Germain RN. MHC-dependent antigen processing and peptide presentation: providing ligands for T lymphocyte activation. *Cell*.1994;76: 287–299. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8293464
159. Roche PA, Cresswell P. Proteolysis of the class II-associated invariant chain generates a peptide binding site in intracellular HLA-DR molecules. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*.1991;88:3150–3154. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2014234
160. Nakagawa T, Roth W, Wong P, et al. Cathepsin L: critical role in Ii degradation and CD4 T cell selection in the thymus. *Science*.1998;280: 450–453. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9545226
161. Amigorena S, Drake JR, Webster P, et al. Transient accumulation of new class II MHC molecules in a novel endocytic compartment in B lymphocytes. *Nature*.1994;369:113–120. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8177316
162. Turley SJ, Inaba K, Garrett WS, et al. Transport of peptide-MHC class II complexes in developing dendritic cells. *Science*.2000;288:522–527. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10775112
163. Babbitt BP, Allen PM, Matsueda G, et al. Binding of immunogenic peptides to Ia histocompatibility molecules. *Nature*.1985;317:359–361. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3876513
164. Rock KL, Gramm C, Rothstein L, et al. Inhibitors of the proteasome block the degradation of most cell proteins and the generation of peptides presented on MHC class I molecules. *Cell*.1994;78:761–771. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8087844
165. Spies T, Bresnahan M, Bahram S, et al. A gene in the human major histocompatibility complex class II region controlling the class I antigen presentation pathway. *Nature*.1990;348:744–747. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2259384
166. Trowsdale J, Hanson I, Mockridge I, et al. Sequences encoded in the class II region of the MHC related to the "ABC" superfamily of transporters. Nature. 1990;348:741–744. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2259383
167. Deverson EV, Gow IR, Coadwell WJ, et al. MHC class II region encoding proteins related to the multidrug resistance family of transmembrane transporters. *Nature*.1990;348:738–741. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1979660
168. Monaco JJ, Cho S, Attaya M. Transport protein genes in the murine MHC: possible implications for antigen processing. *Science*.1990;250:1723–1726. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2270487
169. Bjorkman PJ, Saper MA, Samraoui B, et al. Structure of the human class I histocompatibility antigen, HLA-A2. *Nature*.1987;329:506–512. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3309677
170. Bjorkman PJ, Saper MA, Samraoui B, et al. The foreign antigen binding site and T cell recognition regions of class I histocompatibility antigens. *Nature*.1987;329:512–518. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2443855
171. Ehrlich P. Croonian lecture: on immunity with special reference to cell life. *Proc R Soc Lon B*.1900;66:424–448.
172. Raff MC, Sternberg M, Taylor RB. Immunoglobulin determinants on the surface of mouse lymphoid cells. *Nature*.1970;225:553–554. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4189355
173. Coombs RR, Gurner BW, Janeway CA Jr, et al. Immunoglobulin determinants on the lymphocytes of normal rabbits. I. Demonstration by the mixed antiglobulin reaction of determinants recognized by anti-gamma, anti-mu, anti-Fab and anti-allotype sera, anti-As4 and anti-As6. *Immunology*.1970;18:417–429. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4192262
174. Pernis B, Forni L, Amante L. Immunoglobulin spots on the surface of rabbit lymphocytes. *J Exp Med*.1970;132:1001–1018. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4919141
175. Marcuson EC, Roitt IM. Immunoglobulin allotypic determinants on rabbit lymphocytes. *Nature*.1970;227:1051–1053. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4194773
176. Lanzavecchia A. Antigen-specific interaction between T and B cells. *Nature*.1985;314:537–539. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3157869
177. Rock KL, Benacerraf B, Abbas AK. Antigen presentation by hapten-specific B lymphocytes. I. Role of surface immunoglobulin receptors. *J Exp Med*.1984;160:1102–1113. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6207262
178. Bruton OC. Agammaglobulinemia. *Pediatrics*.1952;9:722–728. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14929630
179. Tsukada S, Saffran DC, Rawlings DJ, et al. Deficient expression of a B cell cytoplasmic tyrosine kinase in human X-linked agammaglobulinemia. *Cell*.1993;72:279–290. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8425221
180. Vetrie D, Vorechovsky I, Sideras P, et al. The gene involved in X-linked agammaglobulinaemia is a member of the src family of protein-tyrosine kinases. *Nature*.1993;361:226–233. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8380905
181. Hendriks RW, de Bruijn MF, Maas A, et al. Inactivation of Btk by insertion of lacZ reveals defects in B cell development only past the pre-B cell stage. *EMBO J*.1996;15:4862–4872. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8890160
182. CarrollL. *The Hunting of the Snark. An Agony, in EIght Fits*. London: Macmillan; 1876.
183. Mak TW. The T cell antigen receptor: "The Hunting of the Snark." *Eur J Immunol*. 2007;37(Suppl 1):S83–S93. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17972349
184. Jensenius JC, Williams AF. The T lymphocyte antigen receptor—paradigm lost. *Nature*.1982;300:583–588. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6755269
185. Allison JP, McIntyre BW, Bloch D. Tumor-specific antigen of murine T-lymphoma defined with monoclonal antibody. *J Immunol*.1982;129: 2293–2300. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6181166
186. Yanagi Y, Yoshikai Y, Leggett K, et al. A human T cell-specific cDNA clone encodes a protein having extensive homology to immunoglobulin chains. *Nature*.1984;308:145–149. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6336315
187. Hedrick SM, Cohen DI, Nielsen EA, et al. Isolation of cDNA clones encoding T cell-specific membrane-associated proteins. *Nature*.1984;308:149–153. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6199676
188. Chien Y, Becker DM, Lindsten T, et al. A third type of murine T-cell receptor gene. *Nature*.1984;312:31–35. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6548551
189. Saito H, Kranz DM, Takagaki Y, et al. A third rearranged and expressed gene in a clone of cytotoxic T lymphocytes. *Nature*.1984;312:36–40. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6208487
190. Sim GK, Yague J, Nelson J, et al. Primary structure of human T-cell receptor alpha-chain. *Nature*.1984;312:771–775. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6440030
191. Yanagi Y, Chan A, Chin B, et al. Analysis of cDNA clones specific for human T cells and the alpha and beta chains of the T-cell receptor heterodimer from a human T-cell line. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1985;82:3430–3434.
192. Brenner MB, McLean J, Dialynas DP, et al. Identification of a putative second T-cell receptor. *Nature*.1986;322:145–149. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3755221
193. Fremont DH, Matsumura M, Stura EA, et al. Crystal structures of two viral peptides in complex with murine MHC class I H-2Kb. *Science*. 1992;257:919–927. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1323877
194. Zhang W, Young AC, Imarai M, et al. Crystal structure of the major histocompatibility complex class I H-2Kb molecule containing a single viral peptide: implications for peptide binding and T-cell receptor recognition. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*.1992;89:8403–8407. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1325657
195. Stern LJ, Wiley DC. The human class II MHC protein HLA-DR1 assembles as empty alpha beta heterodimers in the absence of antigenic peptide. *Cell*.1992;68:465–477. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1371238
196. Gascoigne NR, Palmer E. Signaling in thymic selection. *Curr Opin Immunol*.2011;23:207–212. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21242076
197. Tiselius A, Kabat EA. An electrophoretic study of immune sera and purified antibody preparations. *J Exp Med*.1939;69:119–131. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19870831
198. Waldenström J. Incipient myelomatosis or "essential" hyperglobu-linemia with fibrinogenopenia—a new syndrome? *Acta Med Scand*. 1944;117:216–247.

199. Metzger H. Characterization of a human macroglobulin. V. A Waldenstrom macroglobulin with antibody activity. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*.1967;57:1490–1497.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4166769
200. Gugler E, Bokelmann G, Datwyler A, Von Moralt G. Uber immunoelektrophoretische Untersuchungen an Frauenmilchproteinen. *Schweiz Med Wochenschr*.1958;88.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/13624654
201. Heremans JF, Heremans MT, Schultze HE. Isolation and description of a few properties of the beta 2A-globulin of human serum. *Clin Chim Acta*.1959;4:96–102.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/13629856
202. Chodirker WB, Tomasi TB Jr. Gamma-globulins: quantitative relationships in human serum and nonvascular fluids. *Science*.1963;142: 1080–1081.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14068229
203. Tomasi TB Jr, Zigelbaum S. The selective occurence of gamma-1a globulins in certain body fluids. *J Clin Invest*.1963;42:1552–1560.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14074350
204. Brandtzaeg P, Prydz H. Direct evidence for an integrated function of J chain and secretory component in epithelial transport of immunoglobulins. *Nature*.1984;311:71–73.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6433206
205. Hamilton RG. Science behind the discovery of IgE. *J Allergy Clin Immunol*.2005;115:648–652.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15753924
206. Prausnitz C, Küstner H. Studien über die Ueberempfindlichkeit. *Zentralbl Bakteriol*.1921;86:160–169.
207. Ishizaka K, Ishizaka T, Hornbrook MM. Physico-chemical properties of human reaginic antibody. IV. Presence of a unique immunoglobulin as a carrier of reaginic activity. *J Immunol*. 1966;97:75–85.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4162440
208. Ishizaka K, Ishizaka T, Hornbrook MM. Physicochemical properties of reaginic antibody. V. Correlation of reaginic activity wth gamma-E-globulin antibody. *J Immunol*. 1966;97:840–853.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4163008
209. Johansson SG. Raised levels of a new immunoglobulin class (IgND) in asthma. *Lancet*.1967;2:951–953.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4167514
210. Dombrowicz D, Flamand V, Brigman KK, et al. Abolition of anaphylaxis by targeted disruption of the high affinity immunoglobulin E receptor α chain gene. *Cell*.1993;75:969–976.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8252632
211. Rowe DS, Fahey JL. A new class of human immunoglobulins. I. A unique myeloma protein. *J Exp Med*.1965;121:171–184.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14253482
212. Chen K, Cerutti A. The function and regulation of immunoglobulin D. *Curr Opin Immunol*.2011;23:345–352.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21353515
213. Uhr JW, Finkelstein MS. Antibody formation. IV. Formation of rapidly and slowly sedimenting antibodies and immunological memory to bacteriophage phi-X 174. *J Exp Med*.1963;117:457–477.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/13995245
214. Bauer DC, Mathies MJ, Stavitsky AB. Sequences of synthesis of gamma-1 macroglobulin and gamma-2 globulin antibodies during primary and secondary responses to proteins, salmonella antigens, and phage. *J Exp Med*.1963;117:889–907.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/13966910
215. Pernis B, Forni L, Luzzati AL. Synthesis of multiple immunoglobulin classes by single lymphocytes. *Cold Spring Harb Symp Quant Biol*. 1977;41(pt 1):175–183.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/408086
216. Kearney JF, Lawton AR. B lymphocyte differentiation induced by lipopolysaccharide. I. Generation of cells synthesizing four major immunoglobulin classes. *J Immunol*.1975;115:671–676.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1097525
217. Wabl MR, Forni L, Loor F. Switch in immunoglobulin class production observed in single clones of committed lymphocytes. *Science*. 1978;199:1078–1080.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/305113
218. Manis JP, Gu Y, Lansford R, et al. Ku70 is required for late B cell development and immunoglobulin heavy chain class switching. *J Exp Med*. 1998;187:2081–2089.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9625768
219. Casellas R, Nussenzweig A, Wuerffel R, et al. Ku80 is required for immunoglobulin isotype switching. *EMBO J*.1998;17:2404–2411.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9545251
220. Muramatsu M, Sankaranand VS, Anant S, et al. Specific expression of activation-induced cytidine deaminase (AID), a novel member of the RNA-editing deaminase family in germinal center B cells. J Biol Chem 1999;274:18470–18476
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10373455
221. Muramatsu M, Kinoshita K, Fagarasan S, et al. Class switch recombination and hypermutation require activation-induced cytidine deaminase (AID), a potential RNA editing enzyme. *Cell*.2000;102:553–563.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11007474
222. Revy P, Muto T, Levy Y, et al. Activation-induced cytidine deaminase (AID) deficiency causes the autosomal recessive form of the Hyper-IgM syndrome (HIGM2). *Cell*.2000;102:565–575.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11007475
223. Griffin FM Jr, Silverstein SC. Segmental response of the macrophage plasma membrane to a phagocytic stimulus. *J Exp Med*. 1974;139:323–336.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4149357
224. Indik Z, Kelly C, Chien P, et al. Human Fc gamma RII, in the absence of other Fc gamma receptors, mediates a phagocytic signal. *J Clin Invest*.1991;88:1766–1771.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1834702
225. Gresham HD, McGarr JA, Shackelford PG, et al. Studies on the molecular mechanisms of human Fc receptor-mediated phagocytosis. Amplification of ingestion is dependent on the generation of reactive oxygen metabolites and is deficient in polymorphonuclear leuko-cytes from patients with chronic granulomatous disease. *J Clin Invest*. 1988;82:1192–1201.
226. Brumell JH, Grinstein S. Role of lipid-mediated signal transduction in bacterial internalization. *Cellular microbiology*. 2003;5:287–297.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12713488
227. Swanson JA, Hoppe AD. The coordination of signaling during Fc receptor-mediated phagocytosis. *J Leukoc Biol*. 2004;76:1093–1103.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15466916
228. Aderem A, Underhill DM. Mechanisms of phagocytosis in macrophages. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 1999;17:593–623.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10358769
229. Crowley MT, Costello PS, Fitzer-Attas CJ, et al. A critical role for Syk in signal transduction and phagocytosis mediated by Fcγ receptors on macrophages. *J Exp Med*.1997;186:1027–1039.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9314552
230. Caron E, Hall A. Identification of two distinct mechanisms of phagocytosis controlled by different Rho GTPases. *Science*. 1998;282:1717–1721.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9831565
231. Van den Herik-Oudijk IE, Capel PJ, van der Bruggen T, et al. Identification of signaling motifs within human Fcg RIIa and Fcg RIIb isoforms. *Blood*. 1995;85:2202–2211.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7718892
232. Cox D, Greenberg S. Phagocytic signaling strategies: Fcg receptor-mediated phagocytosis as a model system. *Semin Immunol*. 2001;13: 339–345.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11708889
233. Ravetch JV, Luster AD, Weinshank R, et al. Structural heterogeneity and functional domains of murine immunoglobulin G Fc receptors. *Science*.1986;234:718–725.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2946078
234. Reth M. Antigen receptor tail clue. *Nature*.1989;338:383–384.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2927501
235. Hombach J, Tsubata T, Leclercq L, et al. Molecular components of the B-cell antigen receptor complex of the IgM class. *Nature*. 1990;343: 760–762.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2304550
236. Ra C, Jouvin MH, Blank U, et al. A macrophage Fc g receptor and the mast cell receptor for IgE share an identical subunit. *Nature*.1989;341: 752–754.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2529442
237. Taniguchi T, Kobayashi T, Kondo J, et al. Molecular cloning of a porcine gene syk that encodes a 72-kDa protein-tyrosine kinase showing high susceptibility to proteolysis. *J Biol Chem*.1991;266:15790–15796.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1874735
238. Chan AC, Kadlecek TA, Elder ME, et al. ZAP-70 deficiency in an autosomal recessive form of severe combined immunodeficiency. *Science*. 1994;264:1599–1601.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8202713

239. Takata M, Sabe H, Hata A, et al. Tyrosine kinases Lyn and Syk regulate B cell receptor-coupled Ca2 + mobilization through distinct pathways. *EMBO J*.1994;13:1341–1349. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8137818
240. Costello PS, Turner M, Walters AE, et al. Critical role for the tyrosine kinase Syk in signalling through the high affinity IgE receptor of mast cells. *Oncogene*.1996;13:2595–2605. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9000133
241. Cox D, Chang P, Kurosaki T, et al. Syk tyrosine kinase is required for immunoreceptor tyrosine activation motif-dependent actin assembly. *J Biol Chem*.1996;271:16597–16602. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8663235
242. Kiefer F, Brumell J, Al-Alawi N, et al. The Syk protein tyrosine kinase is essential for Fc g receptor signaling in macrophages and neutrophils. *Mol Cell Biol*.1998;18:4209–4220. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9632805
243. Brumbaugh KM, Binstadt BA, Billadeau DD, et al. Functional role for Syk tyrosine kinase in natural killer cell-mediated natural cytotoxicity. *J Exp Med*.1997;186:1965–1974. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9396765
244. Ra C, Jouvin MH, Blank U, et al. A macrophage Fc gamma receptor and the mast cell receptor for IgE share an identical subunit. *Nature*. 1989;341:752–754. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2529442
245. Clynes R, Dumitru C, Ravetch JV. Uncoupling of immune complex formation and kidney damage in autoimmune glomerulonephritis. *Science*.1998;279:1052–1054. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9461440
246. Burnet FM. *The Clonal Selection Theory of Acquired Immunity*. Nashville, TN: Vanderbilt University Press; 1959.
247. Lederberg J. Genes and antibodies. *Science*.1959;129:1649–1653. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/13668512
248. Talmage DW, Pearlman DS. The antibody response: a model based on antagonistic actions of antigen. *J Theor Biol*.1963;5:321–339. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/5875395
249. Dempsey PW, Allison ME, Akkaraju S, et al. C3d of complement as a molecular adjuvant: bridging innate and acquired immunity. *Science*. 1996;271:348–350. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8553069
250. Bretscher PA, Cohn M. Minimal model for the mechanism of antibody induction and paralysis by antigen. *Nature*.1968;220:444–448. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/5686155
251. Bretscher P, Cohn M. A theory of self-nonself discrimination. *Science*. 1970;169:1042–1049. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4194660
252. Lafferty KJ, Cunningham AJ. A new analysis of allogeneic interactions. *Aust J Exp Biol Med Sci*.1975;53:27–42. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/238498
253. Cunningham AJ, Lafferty KJ. A simple, conservative explanation of the H-2 restriction of interactions between lymphocytes. *Scand J Immunol*. 1977;6:1–6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/66737
254. Jenkins MK, Schwartz RH. Antigen presentation by chemically modified splenocytes induces antigen-specific T cell unresponsiveness in vitro and in vivo. *J Exp Med*.1987;165:302–3190 http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3029267
255. Harding FA, McArthur JG, Gross JA, et al. CD28-mediated signalling co-stimulates murine T cells and prevents induction of anergy in T-cell clones. *Nature*.1992;356:607–609. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1313950
256. Sharpe AH, Freeman GJ. The B7-CD28 superfamily. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2002;2:116–126. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11910893
257. Fife BT, Bluestone JA. Control of peripheral T-cell tolerance and autoimmunity via the CTLA-4 and PD-1 pathways. *Immunol Rev*. 2008;224: 166–182. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18759926
258. Walunas TL, Lenschow DJ, Bakker CY, et al. CTLA-4 can function as a negative regulator of T cell activation. *Immunity*.1994;1:405–413. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7882171
259. Jani M, Hyrich KL. Abatacept in the long-term treatment of rheumatoid arthritis. *Expert Rev Clin Immunol*.2012;8:231–234. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22390487
260. Claman HN, Chaperon EA, Triplett RF. Thymus-marrow cell combinations. Synergism in antibody production. *Proc Soc Exp Biol Med*. 1966;122:1167–1171. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/5918139
261. Noelle RJ, Roy M, Shepherd DM, et al. A 39-kDa protein on activated helper T cells binds CD40 and transduces the signal for cognate activation of B cells. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*.1992;89:6550–6554. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1378631
262. Armitage RJ, Fanslow WC, Strockbine L, et al. Molecular and biological characterization of a murine ligand for CD40. *Nature*.1992;357:80–82. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1374165
263. Lederman S, Yellin MJ, Inghirami G, et al. Molecular interactions mediating T-B lymphocyte collaboration in human lymphoid follicles. Roles of T cell-B-cell-activating molecule (5c8 antigen) and CD40 in contact-dependent help. *J Immunol*.1992;149:3817–3826. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1281189
264. Schaerli P, Willimann K, Lang AB, et al. CXC chemokine receptor 5 expression defines follicular homing T cells with B cell helper function. *J Exp Med*.2000;192:1553–1562. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11104798
265. Breitfeld D, Ohl L, Kremmer E, et al. Follicular B helper T cells express CXC chemokine receptor 5, localize to B cell follicles, and support immunoglobulin production. *J Exp Med*.2000;192:1545–1552. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11104797
266. Aruffo A, Farrington M, Hollenbaugh D, et al. The CD40 ligand, gp39, is defective in activated T cells from patients with X-linked hyper-IgM syndrome. *Cell*.1993;72:291–300. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7678782
267. Korthauer U, Graf D, Mages HW, et al. Defective expression of T-cell CD40 ligand causes X-linked immunodeficiency with hyper-IgM. *Nature*.1993;361:539–541. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7679206
268. DiSanto JP, Bonnefoy JY, Gauchat JF, et al. CD40 ligand mutations in x-linked immunodeficiency with hyper-IgM. *Nature*. 1993;361: 541–543. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8094231
269. Allen RC, Armitage RJ, Conley ME, et al. CD40 ligand gene defects responsible for X-linked hyper-IgM syndrome. *Science*.1993;259:990–993. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7679801
270. Kung P, Goldstein G, Reinherz EL, et al. Monoclonal antibodies defining distinctive human T cell surface antigens. *Science*.1979;206:347–349. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/314668
271. Reinherz EL, Kung PC, Goldstein G, et al. Separation of functional subsets of human T cells by a monoclonal antibody. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*.1979;76:4061–4065. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/315070
272. Reinherz EL, Hussey RE, Fitzgerald K, et al. Antibody directed at a surface structure inhibits cytolytic but not suppressor function of human T lymphocytes. *Nature*.1981;294:168–170. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6457990
273. Reinherz EL, Meuer S, Fitzgerald KA, et al. Antigen recognition by human T lymphocytes is linked to surface expression of the T3 molecular complex. *Cell*.1982;30:735–743. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6982759
274. Meuer SC, Acuto O, Hussey RE, et al. Evidence for the T3-associated 90K heterodimer as the T-cell antigen receptor. *Nature*.1983;303:808–810. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6191218
275. Meuer SC, Cooper DA, Hodgdon JC, et al. Identification of the receptor for antigen and major histocompatibility complex on human inducer T lymphocytes. *Science*.1983;222:1239–1242. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6606228
276. Norment AM, Salter RD, Parham P, et al. Cell-cell adhesion mediated by CD8 and MHC class I molecules. *Nature*.1988;336:79–81. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3263576
277. Doyle C, Strominger JL. Interaction between CD4 and class II MHC molecules mediates cell adhesion. *Nature*.1987;330:256–259. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2823150
278. Veillette A, Bookman MA, Horak EM, et al. The CD4 and CD8 T cell surface antigens are associated with the internal membrane tyrosine-protein kinase p56lck. *Cell*.1988;55:301–308. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3262426

279. Rudd CE, Trevillyan JM, Dasgupta JD, et al. The CD4 receptor is complexed in detergent lysates to a protein-tyrosine kinase (pp58) from human T lymphocytes. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*.1988;85:5190–5194. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2455897
280. Nakayama T, Singer A, Hsi ED, et al. Intrathymic signalling in immature CD4 +CD8+ thymocytes results in tyrosine phosphorylation of the T-cell receptor zeta chain. *Nature*.1989;341:651–654. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2477711
281. Barber EK, Dasgupta JD, Schlossman SF, et al. The CD4 and CD8 antigens are coupled to a protein-tyrosine kinase (p56lck) that phosphorylates the CD3 complex. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*.1989;86:3277–3281. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2470098
282. Hoth M, Penner R. Depletion of intracellular calcium stores activates a calcium current in mast cells. *Nature*.1992;355:353–356. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1309940
283. Vig M, Peinelt C, Beck A, et al. CRACM1 is a plasma membrane protein essential for store-operated Ca2 + entry. *Science*. 2006;312:1220–1223. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16645049
284. Prakriya M, Feske S, Gwack Y, et al. Orai1 is an essential pore subunit of the CRAC channel. *Nature*.2006;443:230–233. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16921383
285. Peinelt C, Vig M, Koomoa DL, et al. Amplification of CRAC current by STIM1 and CRACM1 (Orai1). *Nat Cell Biol*.2006;8:771–773. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16733527
286. Feske S, Gwack Y, Prakriya M, et al. A mutation in Orai1 causes immune deficiency by abrogating CRAC channel function. *Nature*. 2006;441: 179–185. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16582901
287. Muller MR, Rao A. NFAT, immunity and cancer: a transcription factor comes of age. *Nat Rev Immunol*.2010;10:645–656. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20725108
288. Grakoui A, Bromley SK, Sumen C, et al. The immunological synapse: a molecular machine controlling T cell activation. *Science*. 1999;285: 221–227. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10398592
289. Love PE, Hayes SM. ITAM-mediated signaling by the T-cell antigen receptor. *Cold Spring Harb Perspect Biol*.2010;2:a002485. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20516133
290. Underhill DM, Goodridge HS. The many faces of ITAMs. *Trends Immunol*.2007;28:66–73. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17197236
291. Abram CL, Lowell CA. The expanding role for ITAM-based signaling pathways in immune cells. *Sci STKE*.2007;2007:re2. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17356173
292. Goodridge HS, Reyes CN, Becker CA, et al. Activation of the innate immune receptor Dectin-1 upon formation of a "phagocytic synapse." *Nature*.2011;472:471–475. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21525931
293. Isaacs A, Lindenmann J. Virus interference. I. The interferon. *Proc R Soc Lond B Biol Sci*.1957;147:258–267. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/13465720
294. Rubinstein M, Rubinstein S, Familletti PC, et al. Human leukocyte interferonpurified to homogeneity. *Science*.1978;202:1289–1290. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/725605
295. Rubinstein M, Rubinstein S, Familletti PC, et al. Human leukocyte interferon: production, purification to homogeneity, and initial characterization. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*.1979;76:640–644. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/284389
296. Schindler C, Shuai K, Prezioso VR, et al. Interferon-dependent tyrosine phosphorylation of a latent cytoplasmic transcription factor. *Science*. 1992;257:809–813. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1496401
297. Velazquez L, Fellous M, Stark GR, et al. A protein tyrosine kinase in the interferon alpha/beta signaling pathway. *Cell*.1992;70:313–322. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1386289
298. Muller M, Briscoe J, Laxton C, et al. The protein tyrosine kinase JAK1 complements defects in interferon-alpha/beta and -gamma signal transduction. *Nature*.1993;366:129–135. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8232552
299. Watling D, Guschin D, Muller M, et al. Complementation by the protein tyrosine kinase JAK2 of a mutant cell line defective in the inter-feron-gamma signal transduction pathway. *Nature*.1993;366:166–170. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7901766
300. Silvennoinen O, Ihle JN, Schlessinger J, et al. Interferon-induced nuclear signalling by Jak protein tyrosine kinases. *Nature*.1993;366:583–585. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7504785
301. Argetsinger LS, Campbell GS, Yang X, et al. Identification of JAK2 as a growth hormone receptor-associated tyrosine kinase. *Cell*.1993;74: 237–244. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8343952
302. Shuai K, Ziemiecki A, Wilks AF, et al. Polypeptide signalling to the nucleus through tyrosine phosphorylation of Jak and Stat proteins. *Nature*.1993;366:580–583. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7504784
303. Witthuhn BA, Quelle FW, Silvennoinen O, et al. JAK2 associates with the erythropoietin receptor and is tyrosine phosphorylated and activated following stimulation with erythropoietin. *Cell*. 1993;74: 227–236. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8343951
304. Noguchi M, Nakamura Y, Russell SM, et al. Interleukin-2 receptor gamma chain: a functional component of the interleukin-7 receptor. *Science*.1993;262:1877–1880. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8266077
305. Macchi P, Villa A, Giliani S, et al. Mutations of Jak-3 gene in patients with autosomal severe combined immune deficiency (SCID). *Nature*. 1995;377:65–68. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7659163
306. Russell SM, Tayebi N, Nakajima H, et al. Mutation of Jak3 in a patient with SCID: essential role of Jak3 in lymphoid development. *Science*. 1995;270:797–800. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7481768
307. Holland SM, DeLeo FR, Elloumi HZ, et al. STAT3 mutations in the hyper-IgE syndrome. *N Engl J Med*.2007;357:1608–1619. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17881745
308. Minegishi Y, Saito M, Tsuchiya S, et al. Dominant-negative mutations in the DNA-binding domain of STAT3 cause hyper-IgE syndrome. *Nature*.2007;448:1058–1062. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17676033
309. Smithies O, Gregg RG, Boggs SS, et al. Insertion of DNA sequences into the human chromosomal beta-globin locus by homologous recombination. *Nature*.1985;317:230–234. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2995814
310. Gossler A, Doetschman T, Korn R, et al. Transgenesis by means of blastocyst-derived embryonic stem cell lines. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1986;83:9065–9069. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3024164
311. Robertson E, Bradley A, Kuehn M, et al. Germ-line transmission of genes introduced into cultured pluripotential cells by retroviral vector. *Nature*.1986;323:445–448. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3762693
312. Kuehn MR, Bradley A, Robertson EJ, et al. A potential animal model for Lesch-Nyhan syndrome through introduction of HPRT mutations into mice. *Nature*.1987;326:295–298. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3029599
313. Hooper M, Hardy K, Handyside A, et al. HPRT-deficient (Lesch-Nyhan) mouse embryos derived from germline colonization by cultured cells. *Nature*.1987;326:292–295. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3821905
314. Deuel TF, Keim PS, Farmer M, et al. Amino acid sequence of human platelet factor 4. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*.1977;74:2256–2258. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/267922
315. Walz DA, Wu VY, de Lamo R, et al. Primary structure of human platelet factor 4. *Thromb Res*.1977;11:893–898. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/601757
316. Begg GS, Pepper DS, Chesterman CN, et al. Complete covalent structure of human beta-thromboglobulin. *Biochemistry (Mosc)*. 1978;17: 1739–1744. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/77677
317. Yoshimura T, Matsushima K, Tanaka S, et al. Purification of a human monocyte-derived neutrophil chemotactic factor that has peptide sequence similarity to other host defense cytokines. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*.1987;84:9233–9237. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3480540
318. Murphy PM, Tiffany HL. Cloning of complementary DNA encoding a functional human interleukin-8 receptor. *Science*.1991;253:1280–1283. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1891716
319. Holmes WE, Lee J, Kuang WJ, et al. Structure and functional expression of a human interleukin-8 receptor. *Science*.1991;253:1278–1280. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1840701

320. Pfeffer W. Lokomotorische richtungsbewegungen durch chemischereize. *Untersuch aus d Botan Inst Tübingen*.1884:363–482.
321. Henderson M. A review of the motility of the leucocytes of the blood, with a few additional observations. *Anatom Rec*.1928;38:71–95.
322. Zigmond SH, Hirsch JG. Leukocyte locomotion and chemotaxis. New methods for evaluation, and demonstration of a cell-derived chemotactic factor. *J Exp Med*.1973;137:387–410. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4568301
323. DutrochetJH. *Recherches anatomiques et physiologiques sur la structure intime des animaux et des végétaux, et sur leur motilité*. Paris,France: J.B. Bailliere; 1824.
324. Hayward AR, Harvey BA, Leonard J, et al. Delayed separation of the umbilical cord, widespread infections, and defective neutrophil mobility. *Lancet*.1979;1:1099–1101. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/86829
325. Springer TA, Thompson WS, Miller LJ, et al. Inherited deficiency of the Mac-1, LFA-1, p150,95 glycoprotein family and its molecular basis. *J Exp Med*.1984;160:1901–1918. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6096477
326. Marlin SD, Springer TA. Purified intercellular adhesion molecule-1 (ICAM-1) is a ligand for lymphocyte function-associated antigen 1 (LFA-1). *Cell*.1987;51:813–819. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3315233
327. Muller WA, Randolph GJ. Migration of leukocytes across endothelium and beyond: molecules involved in the transmigration and fate of monocytes. *J Leukoc Biol*.1999;66:698–704. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10577496
328. Muller WA. Mechanisms of leukocyte transendothelial migration. *Annu Rev Pathol*.2011;6:323–344. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21073340
329. Shaw S, Luce GE, Quinones R, et al. Two antigen-independent adhesion pathways used by human cytotoxic T-cell clones. *Nature*.1986;323: 262–264. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3093887
330. Gunn MD, Tangemann K, Tam C, et al. A chemokine expressed in lymphoid high endothelial venules promotes the adhesion and chemotaxis of naive T lymphocytes. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1998;95: 258–263. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9419363
331. Gunn MD, Kyuwa S, Tam C, et al. Mice lacking expression of secondary lymphoid organ chemokine have defects in lymphocyte homing and dendritic cell localization. *J Exp Med*.1999;189:451–460. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9927507
332. Coffman RL, Carty J. A T cell activity that enhances polyclonal IgE production and its inhibition by interferon-gamma. *J Immunol*.1986;136: 949–954. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2934482
333. Mosmann TR, Cherwinski H, Bond MW, et al. Two types of murine helper T cell clone. I. Definition according to profiles of lymphokine activities and secreted proteins. *J Immunol*.1986;136:2348–2357. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2419430
334. Howard M, Farrar J, Hilfiker M, et al. Identification of a T cell-derived b cell growth factor distinct from interleukin 2. *J Exp Med*.1982;155: 914–923. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6977612
335. Rabin EM, Ohara J, Paul WE. B-cell stimulatory factor 1 activates resting B cells. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*.1985;82:2935–2939. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3873071
336. Oliver K, Noelle RJ, Uhr JW, et al. B-cell growth factor (B-cell growth factor I or B-cell-stimulating factor, provisional 1) is a differentiation factor for resting B cells and may not induce cell growth. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*.1985;82:2465–2467. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3873068
337. Mosmann TR, Coffman RL. TH1 and TH2 cells: different patterns of lymphokine secretion lead to different functional properties. *Annu Rev Immunol*.1989;7:145–173. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2523712
338. Szabo SJ, Kim ST, Costa GL, et al. A novel transcription factor, T-bet, directs Th1 lineage commitment. *Cell*.2000;100:655–669. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10761931
339. Zheng W, Flavell RA. The transcription factor GATA-3 is necessary and sufficient for Th2 cytokine gene expression in CD4 T cells. *Cell*. 1997;89:587–596. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9160750
340. Chen Y, Kuchroo VK, Inobe J, et al. Regulatory T cell clones induced by oral tolerance: suppression of autoimmune encephalomyelitis. *Science*. 1994;265:1237–1240. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7520605
341. Berlin I. *The Hedgehog and the Fox: An Essay on Tolstoy's View of History*. London, United Kingdom: Weidenfeld and Nicholson; 1953.
342. Duerr RH, Taylor KD, Brant SR, et al. A genome-wide association study identifies IL23R as an inflammatory bowel disease gene. *Science*. 2006;314:1461–1463. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17068223
343. Jerne NK. Towards a network theory of the immune system. *Ann Immunol (Paris)*.1974;125C:373–389. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4142565
344. Gershon RK, Kondo K. Cell interactions in the induction of tolerance: the role of thymic lymphocytes. *Immunology*.1970;18:723–737. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4911896
345. Groux H, O'Garra A, Bigler M, et al. A CD4 + T-cell subset inhibits antigen-specific T-cell responses and prevents colitis. *Nature*.1997;389: 737–742. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9338786
346. Brunkow ME, Jeffery EW, Hjerrild KA, et al. Disruption of a new forkhead/winged-helix protein, scurfin, results in the fatal lymphoproliferative disorder of the scurfy mouse. *Nat Genet*.2001;27: 68–73. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11138001
347. Chatila TA, Blaeser F, Ho N, et al. JM2, encoding a fork head-related protein, is mutated in X-linked autoimmunity-allergic disregulation syndrome. *J Clin Invest*.2000;106:R75–81. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11120765
348. Wildin RS, Ramsdell F, Peake J, et al. X-linked neonatal diabetes mellitus, enteropathy and endocrinopathy syndrome is the human equivalent of mouse scurfy. *Nat Genet*.2001;27:18–20. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11137992
349. Bennett CL, Christie J, Ramsdell F, et al. The immune dysregulation, polyendocrinopathy, enteropathy, X-linked syndrome (IPEX) is caused by mutations of FOXP3. *Nat Genet*.2001;27:20–21. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11137993
350. Hori S, Nomura T, Sakaguchi S. Control of regulatory T cell development by the transcription factor Foxp3. *Science*.2003;299:1057–1061. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12522256
351. Fontenot JD, Gavin MA, Rudensky AY. Foxp3 programs the development and function of CD4 +CD25+ regulatory T cells. *Nat Immunol*. 2003;4:330–336. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12612578
352. Kappler JW, Roehm N, Marrack P. T cell tolerance by clonal elimination in the thymus. *Cell*.1987;49:273–280. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3494522
353. Kisielow P, Bluthmann H, Staerz UD, et al. Tolerance in T-cell-receptor transgenic mice involves deletion of nonmature CD4 +8+ thymocytes. *Nature*.1988;333:742–746. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3260350
354. Nossal GJ, Pike BL. Evidence for the clonal abortion theory of B-lymphocyte tolerance. *J Exp Med*.1975;141:904–917. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/47889
355. Sidman CL, Unanue ER. Receptor-mediated inactivation of early B lymphocytes. *Nature*.1975;257:149–151. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1080547
356. Raff MC, Owen JJ, Cooper MD, et al. Differences in susceptibility of mature and immature mouse B lymphocytes to anti-immunoglobulin-induced immunoglobulin suppression in vitro. Possible implications for B-cell tolerance to self. *J Exp Med*.1975;142:1052–1064. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/811748
357. Manicassamy S, Pulendran B. Retinoic acid-dependent regulation of immune responses by dendritic cells and macrophages. *Semin Immunol*.2009;21:22–27. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18778953
358. Heitger A. Regulation of expression and function of IDO in human dendritic cells. *Curr Med Chem*.2011;18:2222–2233. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21517757
359. Kim HJ, Verbinnen B, Tang X, et al. Inhibition of follicular T-helper cells by CD8(+) regulatory T cells is essential for self tolerance. *Nature*. 2010;467:328–332. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20844537

360. Jiang H, Canfield SM, Gallagher MP, et al. HLA-E-restricted regulatory CD8(+) T cells are involved in development and control of human autoimmune type 1 diabetes. *J Clin Invest*.2010;120:3641–3650. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20877010
361. Greten TF, Manns MP, Korangy F. Myeloid derived suppressor cells in human diseases. *Int Immunopharmacol*.2011;11:802–807. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21477210
362. Tadmor T, Attias D, Polliack A. Myeloid-derived suppressor cells—their role in haemato-oncological malignancies and other cancers and possible implications for therapy. *Br J Haematol*.2011;153:557–567. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21477210
363. Lees JR, Azimzadeh AM, Bromberg JS. Myeloid derived suppressor cells in transplantation. *Curr Opin Immunol*.2011;23:692–697. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21802931
364. Ehrlich P, Morgenroth J. *On Haemolysins. Fifth Communication*. London: Pergamon; 1957.
365. Ehrlich P. Über den jetzigen stand der karzinomforschung. *Ned Tijdschr Geneeskd*.1909;5:273–290.
366. Burnet M. Cancer: a biological approach. III. Viruses associated with neoplastic conditions. IV. Practical applications. *Br Med J*. 1957;1: 841–847. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/13413231
367. Dighe AS, Richards E, Old LJ, et al. Enhanced in vivo growth and resistance to rejection of tumor cells expressing dominant negative IFN g receptors. *Immunity*.1994;1:447–456. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7895156
368. Kaplan DH, Shankaran V, Dighe AS, et al. Demonstration of an interferon g -dependent tumor surveillance system in immunocompetent mice. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*.1998;95:7556–7561. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9636188
369. Albert ML, Darnell JC, Bender A, et al. Tumor-specific killer cells in paraneoplastic cerebellar degeneration. *Nat Med*.1998;4:1321–1324. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9809559
370. Schreiber RD, Old LJ, Smyth MJ. Cancer immunoediting: integrating immunity's roles in cancer suppression and promotion. *Science*. 2011;331:1565–1570. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21436444
371. Bevan MJ. Minor H antigens introduced on H-2 different stimulating cells cross-react at the cytotoxic T cell level during in vivo priming. *J Immunol*.1976;117:2233–2238. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/825578
372. Bevan MJ. Cross-priming for a secondary cytotoxic response to minor H antigens with H-2 congenic cells which do not cross-react in the cytotoxic assay. *J Exp Med*.1976;143:1283–1288. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1083422
373. Albert ML, Sauter B, Bhardwaj N. Dendritic cells acquire antigen from apoptotic cells and induce class I-restricted CTLs. *Nature*. 1998;392: 86–89. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9510252
374. Amigorena S, Savina A. Intracellular mechanisms of antigen cross presentation in dendritic cells. *Curr Opin Immunol*.2010;22:109–117. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20171863
375. Garin J, Diez R, Kieffer S, et al. The phagosome proteome: insight into phagosome functions. *J Cell Biol*.2001;152:165–180. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11149929
376. Gagnon E, Duclos S, Rondeau C, et al. Endoplasmic reticulum-mediated phagocytosis is a mechanism of entry into macrophages. *Cell*. 2002;110:119–131. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12151002
377. Hildner K, Edelson BT, Purtha WE, et al. *Batf3* deficiency reveals a critical role for CD8 a+ dendritic cells in cytotoxic T cell immunity. *Science*.2008;322:1097–1100. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19008445
378. Karre K, Ljunggren HG, Piontek G, et al. Selective rejection of H-2-deficient lymphoma variants suggests alternative immune defence strategy. *Nature*.1986;319:675–678. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3951539
379. Seiffert M, Cant C, Chen Z, et al. Human signal-regulatory protein is expressed on normal, but not on subsets of leukemic myeloid cells and mediates cellular adhesion involving its counterreceptor CD47. *Blood*. 1999;94:3633–3643. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10572074
380. Fujioka Y, Matozaki T, Noguchi T, et al. A novel membrane glycoprotein, SHPS-1, that binds the SH2-domain-containing protein tyrosine phosphatase SHP-2 in response to mitogens and cell adhesion. *Mol Cell Biol*.1996;16:6887–6899. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8943344
381. Oldenborg PA, Zheleznyak A, Fang YF, et al. Role of CD47 as a marker of self on red blood cells. *Science*.2000;288:2051–2054. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10856220
382. Chao MP, Alizadeh AA, Tang C, et al. Anti-CD47 antibody synergizes with rituximab to promote phagocytosis and eradicate non-Hodgkin lymphoma. *Cell*.2010;142:699–713. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20813259
383. Pnuemocystis pneumonia—Los Angeles. *MMWR*.1981;30:250–252. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6265753
384. Sepkowitz KA. AIDS—the first 20 years. *N Engl J Med*. 2001;344: 1764–1772. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11396444
385. Barré-Sinoussi F, Chermann JC, Rey F, et al. Isolation of a T-lymphotropic retrovirus from a patient at risk for acquired immune deficiency syndrome (AIDS). *Science*.1983;220:868–871. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6189183
386. Gallo RC, Sarin PS, Gelmann EP, et al. Isolation of human T-cell leukemia virus in acquired immune deficiency syndrome (AIDS). *Science*. 1983;220:865–867. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6601823
387. Josephs SF, Dalla-Favera R, Gelmann EP, et al. 5 ¢ viral and human cellular sequences corresponding to the transforming gene of simian sarcoma virus. *Science*.1983;219:503–505. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6297002
388. Gelmann EP, Popovic M, Blayney D, et al. Proviral DNA of a retrovirus, human T-cell leukemia virus, in two patients with AIDS. *Science*. 1983;220:862–865. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6601822
389. Popovic M, Sarin PS, Robert-Gurroff M, et al. Isolation and transmission of human retrovirus (human t-cell leukemia virus). *Science*. 1983;219:856–859. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6600519
390. Dalla-Favera R, Martinotti S, Gallo RC, et al. Translocation and rearrangements of the c-myc oncogene locus in human undifferentiated B-cell lymphomas. *Science*.1983;219:963–967. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6401867
391. Maddon PJ, Dalgleish AG, McDougal JS, et al. The T4 gene encodes the AIDS virus receptor and is expressed in the immune system and the brain. *Cell*.1986;47:333–348. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3094962
392. Alkhatib G, Combadiere C, Broder CC, et al. CC CKR5: a RANTES, MIP-1 a,MIP-1b receptor as a fusion cofactor for macrophage-tropic HIV-1. *Science*.1996;272:1955–1958. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8658171
393. Ho DD, Bieniasz PD. HIV-1 at 25. *Cell*.2008;133:561–565. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18485860
394. Fauci AS. 25 years of HIV. *Nature*.2008;453:289–290. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18480799
395. Metchnikoff E. *Immunity in Infective Diseases*. London, United Kingdom: Cambridge University Press; 1905.
396. Fleming A. Lysozyme: president's address. *Proc R Soc Med*.1932;26:71–84. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19989057
397. Allison VD. Personal recollections of Sir Almroth Wright and Sir Alexander Fleming. *Ulster Med J*.1974;43:89–98. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4612919
398. Territo MC, Ganz T, Selsted ME, et al. Monocyte-chemotactic activity of defensins from human neutrophils. *J Clin Invest*.1989;84:2017–2020. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2592571
399. Chertov O, Michiel DF, Xu L, et al. Identification of defensin-1, defensin-2, and CAP37/azurocidin as T-cell chemoattractant proteins released from interleukin-8-stimulated neutrophils. *J Biol Chem*.1996;271:2935–2940. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8621683
400. Yang D, Chertov O, Bykovskaia SN, et al. b-defensins: linking innate and adaptive immunity through dendritic and T cell CCR6. *Science*. 1999;286:525–528. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10521347
401. Cole AM, Ganz T, Liese AM, et al. Cutting edge: IFN-inducible ELR-CXC chemokines display defensin-like antimicrobial activity. *J Immunol*.2001;167:623–627. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11441062

402. Kiessling R, Klein E, Wigzell H. "Natural" killer cells in the mouse. I. Cytotoxic cells with specificity for mouse Moloney leukemia cells. Specificity and distribution according to genotype. *Eur J Immunol.* 1975;5:112–117.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1234049
403. Kiessling R, Klein E, Pross H, et al. "Natural" killer cells in the mouse. II. Cytotoxic cells with specificity for mouse Moloney leukemia cells. Characteristics of the killer cell. *Eur J Immunol.*1975;5:117–121.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1086218
404. Herberman RB, Nunn ME, Lavrin DH. Natural cytotoxic reactivity of mouse lymphoid cells against syngeneic acid allogeneic tumors. I. Distribution of reactivity and specificity. *Int J Cancer.*1975;16:216–229.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/50294
405. Vivier E, Raulet DH, Moretta A, et al. Innate or adaptive immunity? The example of natural killer cells. *Science.*2011;331:44–49.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21212348
406. Janeway CA Jr. Approaching the asymptote? Evolution and revolution in immunology. *Cold Spring Harb Symp Quant Biol.*1989;54:1–13.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2700931
407. Freund J, McDermott K. Sensitization to horse serum by means of adjuvants. *Proc Soc Exp Biol Med.*1942;49:548–553.
408. Sen R, Baltimore D. Inducibility of κ immunoglobulin enhancer-binding protein Nf-κB by a posttranslational mechanism. *Cell.*1986;47:921–928.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3096580
409. Weih F, Carrasco D, Durham SK, et al. Multiorgan inflammation and hematopoietic abnormalities in mice with a targeted disruption of RelB, a member of the NF-κB/Rel family. *Cell.*1995;80:331–340.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7834753
410. Sha WC, Liou HC, Tuomanen EI, et al. Targeted disruption of the p50 subunit of NF-κB leads to multifocal defects in immune responses. *Cell.*1995;80:321–330.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7834752
411. Lemaitre B, Nicolas E, Michaut L, et al. The dorsoventral regulatory gene cassette spatzle/Toll/cactus controls the potent antifungal response in Drosophila adults. *Cell.*1996;86:973–983.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8808632
412. Wright SD, Ramos RA, Tobias PS, et al. CD14, a receptor for complexes of lipopolysaccharide (LPS) and LPS binding protein. *Science.* 1990;249:1431–1433.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1698311
413. Medzhitov R, Preston-Hurlburt P, Janeway CA Jr. A human homologue of the Drosophila Toll protein signals activation of adaptive immunity. *Nature.*1997;388:394–397.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9237759
414. Beutler B, Milsark IW, Cerami AC. Passive immunization against cachectin/tumor necrosis factor protects mice from lethal effect of endotoxin. *Science.*1985;229:869–871.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18566363
415. Poltorak A, He X, Smirnova I, et al. Defective LPS signaling in C3H/HeJ and C57BL/10ScCr mice: mutations in Tlr4 gene. *Science.* 1998;282:2085–2088.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9851930
416. Kawai T, Akira S. Toll-like receptors and their crosstalk with other innate receptors in infection and immunity. *Immunity.* 2011;34:637–650.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21616434
417. Iwasaki A, Medzhitov R. Regulation of adaptive immunity by the innate immune system. *Science.*2010;327:291–295.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20075244
418. Roozendaal R, Carroll MC. Emerging patterns in complement-mediated pathogen recognition. *Cell.*2006;125:29–32.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16615887
419. Taylor PR, Tsoni SV, Willment JA, et al. Dectin-1 is required for ь-glucan recognition and control of fungal infection. *Nat Immunol.* 2007;8:31–38.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17159984
420. Gardai SJ, Xiao YQ, Dickinson M, et al. By binding SIRPa or calreticulin/CD91, lung collectins act as dual function surveillance molecules to suppress or enhance inflammation. *Cell.*2003;115:13–23.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14531999
421. Kuhlman M, Joiner K, Ezekowitz RA. The human mannose-binding protein functions as an opsonin. *J Exp Med.*1989;169:1733–1745.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2469767
422. Philips JA, Rubin EJ, Perrimon N. Drosophila RNAi screen reveals CD36 family member required for mycobacterial infection. *Science.* 2005;309:1251–1253.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16020694
423. Peiser L, Mukhopadhyay S, Gordon S. Scavenger receptors in innate immunity. *Curr Opin Immunol.*2002;14:123–128.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11790542
424. Bottazzi B, Garlanda C, Salvatori G, et al. Pentraxins as a key component of innate immunity. *Curr Opin Immunol.*2006;18:10–15.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16343883
425. Garlanda C, Hirsch E, Bozza S, et al. Non-redundant role of the long pentraxin PTX3 in anti-fungal innate immune response. *Nature.*2002;420:182–186.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12432394
426. Tino MJ, Wright JR. Surfactant protein A stimulates phagocytosis of specific pulmonary pathogens by alveolar macrophages. *Am J Physiol.* 1996;270:L677–688.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8928829
427. Geijtenbeek TB, Kwon DS, Torensma R, et al. DC-SIGN, a dendritic cell-specific HIV-1-binding protein that enhances trans-infection of T cells. *Cell.*2000;100:587–597.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10721995
428. Ezekowitz RA, Sim RB, Hill M, et al. Local opsonization by secreted macrophage complement components. Role of receptors for complement in uptake of zymosan. *J Exp Med.*1984;159:244–260.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6319531
429. Sancho D, Joffre OP, Keller AM, et al. Identification of a dendritic cell receptor that couples sensing of necrosis to immunity. *Nature.*2009;458:899–903.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19219027
430. Devitt A, Moffatt OD, Raykundalia C, et al. Human CD14 mediates recognition and phagocytosis of apoptotic cells. *Nature.* 1998;392:505–509.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9548256
431. Hanayama R, Tanaka M, Miwa K, et al. Identification of a factor that links apoptotic cells to phagocytes. *Nature.*2002;417:182–187.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12000961
432. Hanayama R, Tanaka M, Miyasaka K, et al. Autoimmune disease and impaired uptake of apoptotic cells in MFG-E8-deficient mice. *Science.* 2004;304:1147–1150.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15155946
433. Scott RS, McMahon EJ, Pop SM, et al. Phagocytosis and clearance of apoptotic cells is mediated by MER. *Nature.*2001;411:207–211.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11346799
434. Rodriguez-Manzanet R, Sanjuan MA, Wu HY, et al. T and B cell hyperactivity and autoimmunity associated with niche-specific defects in apoptotic body clearance in TIM-4-deficient mice. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A.*2010;107:8706–8711.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20368430
435. Godson C, Mitchell S, Harvey K, et al. Cutting edge: lipoxins rapidly stimulate nonphlogistic phagocytosis of apoptotic neutrophils by monocyte-derived macrophages. *J Immunol.*2000;164:1663–1667.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10657608
436. Ren Y, Stuart L, Lindberg FP, et al. Nonphlogistic clearance of late apoptotic neutrophils by macrophages: efficient phagocytosis independent of beta 2 integrins. *J Immunol.*2001;166:4743–4750.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11254736
437. Huynh ML, Fadok VA, Henson PM. Phosphatidylserine-dependent ingestion of apoptotic cells promotes TGF-b 1 secretion and the resolution of inflammation. *J Clin Invest.*2002;109:41–50.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11781349
438. Schwab JM, Chiang N, Arita M, et al. Resolvin E1 and protectin D1 activate inflammation-resolution programmes. *Nature.* 2007;447:869–874.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17568749
439. Serhan CN, Clish CB, Brannon J, et al. Novel functional sets of lipid-derived mediators with antiinflammatory actions generated from omega-3 fatty acids via cyclooxygenase 2-nonsteroidal antiinflam-matory drugs and transcellular processing. *J Exp Med.* 2000;192: 1197–1204.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11034610
440. Bridges RA, Berendes H, Good RA. A fatal granulomatous disease of childhood; the clinical, pathological, and laboratory features of a new syndrome. *AMA J Dis Child.*1959;97:387–408.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/13636694

441. Quie PG, White JG, Holmes B, et al. In vitro bactericidal capacity of human polymorphonuclear leukocytes: diminished activity in chronic granulomatous disease of childhood. *J Clin Invest*.1967;46: 668–679. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6021213
442. Holmes B, Page AR, Good RA. Studies of the metabolic activity of leukocytes from patients with a genetic abnormality of phagocytic function. *J Clin Invest*.1967;46:1422–1432. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6036538
443. Curnutte JT, Whitten DM, Babior BM. Defective superoxide production by granulocytes from patients with chronic granulomatous disease. *N Engl J Med*.1974;290:593–597. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4359964
444. Baehner RL, Nathan DG. Quantitative nitroblue tetrazolium test in chronic granulomatous disease. *N Engl J Med*.1968;278:971–976. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4384563
445. Segal AW, Jones OT. Novel cytochrome b system in phagocytic vacuoles of human granulocytes. *Nature*.1978;276:515–517. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/723935
446. Segal AW, Jones OT, Webster D, et al. Absence of a newly described cytochrome b from neutrophils of patients with chronic granuloma-tous disease. *Lancet*.1978;2:446–449. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/79807
447. Dinauer MC, Orkin SH, Brown R, et al. The glycoprotein encoded by the X-linked chronic granulomatous disease locus is a component of the neutrophil cytochrome b complex. *Nature*.1987;327:717–720. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3600768
448. Volpp BD, Nauseef WM, Clark RA. Two cytosolic neutrophil oxidase components absent in autosomal chronic granulomatous disease. *Science*.1988;242:1295–1297. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2848318
449. Leto TL, Lomax KJ, Volpp BD, et al. Cloning of a 67-kD neutrophil oxidase factor with similarity to a noncatalytic region of p60c-src. *Science*. 1990;248:727–730. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1692159
450. Abo A, Pick E, Hall A, et al. Activation of the NADPH oxidase involves the small GTP-binding protein p21rac1. *Nature*.1991;353:668–670. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1922386
451. Bokoch GM, Quilliam LA, Bohl BP, et al. Inhibition of Rap1A binding to cytochrome b558 of NADPH oxidase by phosphorylation of Rap1A. *Science*.1991;254:1794–1796. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1763330
452. Diekmann D, Abo A, Johnston C, et al. Interaction of Rac with p67phox and regulation of phagocytic NADPH oxidase activity. *Science*.1994;265:531–533. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8036496
453. Bedard K, Krause KH. The NOX family of ROS-generating NADPH oxidases: physiology and pathophysiology. *Physiol Rev*.2007;87: 245–313. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17237347
454. MacMicking JD, North RJ, LaCourse R, et al. Identification of nitric oxide synthase as a protective locus against tuberculosis. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*.1997;94:5243–5248. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9144222
455. Savina A, Jancic C, Hugues S, et al. NOX2 controls phagosomal pH to regulate antigen processing during crosspresentation by dendritic cells. *Cell*.2006;126:205–218. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16839887
456. Dagenais M, Skeldon A, Saleh M. The inflammasome: in memory of Dr. Jurg Tschopp. *Cell Death Differ*.2012;19:5–12.
457. Ogura Y, Bonen DK, Inohara N, et al. A frameshift mutation in NOD2 associated with susceptibility to Crohn's disease. *Nature*.2001;411:603–606. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11385577
458. Miceli-Richard C, Lesage S, Rybojad M, et al. CARD15 mutations in Blau syndrome. *Nat Genet*.2001;29:19–20. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11528384
459. Hoffman HM, Mueller JL, Broide DH, et al. Mutation of a new gene encoding a putative pyrin-like protein causes familial cold autoinflammatory syndrome and Muckle-Wells syndrome. *Nat Genet*. 2001;29: 301–305. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11687797
460. Centola M, Wood G, Frucht DM, et al. The gene for familial Mediterranean fever, MEFV, is expressed in early leukocyte development and is regulated in response to inflammatory mediators. *Blood*. 2000;95:3223–3231. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10807793
461. Martinon F, Burns K, Tschopp J. The inflammasome: a molecular platform triggering activation of inflammatory caspases and processing of proIL-beta. *Mol Cell*.2002;10:417–426. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12191486
462. Auron PE, Webb AC, Rosenwasser LJ, et al. Nucleotide sequence of human monocyte interleukin 1 precursor cDNA. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*.1984;81:7907–7911. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6083565
463. Bennett IL Jr, Beeson PB. Studies on the pathogenesis of fever. I. The effect of injection of extracts and suspensions of uninfected rabbit tissues upon the body temperature of normal rabbits. *J Exp Med*. 1953;98:477–492. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/13109104
464. Bennett IL Jr, Beeson PB. Studies on the pathogenesis of fever. II. Characterization of fever-producing substances from polymorpho-nuclear leukocytes and from the fluid of sterile exudates. *J Exp Med*. 1953;98:493–508. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/13109105
465. Martinon F, Petrilli V, Mayor A, et al. Gout-associated uric acid crystals activate the NALP3 inflammasome. *Nature*.2006;440:237–241. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16407889
466. Nuki G, Simkin PA. A concise history of gout and hyperuricemia and their treatment. *Arthritis Res Ther*. 2006;8(suppl 1):S1. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16820040
467. Matzinger P. Tolerance, danger, and the extended family. *Annu Rev Immunol*.1994;12:991–1045. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8011301
468. Matzinger P. The danger model: a renewed sense of self. *Science*.2002; 296:301–305. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11951032
469. Greenberg S, Di Virgilio F, Steinberg TH, et al. Extracellular nucleotides mediate Ca2 + fluxes in J774 macrophages by two distinct mechanisms. *J Biol Chem*.1988;263:10337–10343. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3392016
470. McDonald B, Pittman K, Menezes GB, et al. Intravascular danger signals guide neutrophils to sites of sterile inflammation. *Science*.2010;330: 362–366. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20947763
471. Levine B, Mizushima N, Virgin HW. Autophagy in immunity and inflammation. *Nature*.2011;469:323–335. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21248839
472. Gutierrez MG, Master SS, Singh SB, et al. Autophagy is a defense mechanism inhibiting BCG and *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* survival in infected macrophages. *Cell*.2004;119:753–766. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15607973
473. Nakagawa I, Amano A, Mizushima N, et al. Autophagy defends cells against invading group A *Streptococcus*. *Science*.2004;306:1037–1040. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15528445
474. Mishell RI, Dutton RW. Immunization of dissociated spleen cell cultures from normal mice. *J Exp Med*.1967;126:423–442. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6034749
475. Mosier DE. A requirement for two cell types for antibody formation in vitro. *Science*.1967;158:1573–1575. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6060362
476. Mosier DE, Coppleson LW. A three-cell interaction required for the induction of the primary immune response in vitro. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*.1968;61:542–547. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16591704
477. Steinman RM, Cohn ZA. Identification of a novel cell type in peripheral lymphoid organs of mice. I. Morphology, quantitation, tissue distribution. *J Exp Med*.1973;137:1142–1162. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4573839
478. Steinman RM, Cohn ZA. Identification of a novel cell type in peripheral lymphoid organs of mice. II. Functional properties in vitro. *J Exp Med*.1974;139:380–397. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4589990
479. Steinman RM, Lustig DS, Cohn ZA. Identification of a novel cell type in peripheral lymphoid organs of mice. 3. Functional properties in vivo. *J Exp Med*.1974;139:1431–1445. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4598015

480. Steinman RM, Kaplan G, Witmer MD, et al. Identification of a novel cell type in peripheral lymphoid organs of mice. V. Purification of spleen dendritic cells, new surface markers, and maintenance in vitro. *J Exp Med*.1979;149:1–16.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/762493
481. Blanco P, Palucka AK, Gill M, et al. Induction of dendritic cell differentiation by IFN-a in systemic lupus erythematosus. *Science*.2001;294:1540–1543.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11711679
482. Jego G, Palucka AK, Blanck JP, et al. Plasmacytoid dendritic cells induce plasma cell differentiation through type I interferon and inter-leukin 6. *Immunity*.2003;19:225–234.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12932356
483. Soumelis V, Reche PA, Kanzler H, et al. Human epithelial cells trigger dendritic cell mediated allergic inflammation by producing TSLP. *Nat Immunol*.2002;3:673–680.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12055625
484. Ito T, Wang YH, Duramad O, et al. TSLP-activated dendritic cells induce an inflammatory T helper type 2 cell response through OX40 ligand. *J Exp Med*.2005;202:1213–1223.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16275760
485. Al-Shami A, Spolski R, Kelly J, et al. A role for TSLP in the development of inflammation in an asthma model. *J Exp Med*.2005;202:829–839.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16172260
486. Landsteiner K, van der Scheer J. Experiments on the production of Wassermann reagins by means of trypanosomes. *J Exp Med*.1927;45:465–482.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19869266

SECTION II

Organization and Evolution of the Immune System

CHAPTER 3

Lymphoid Tissues and Organs

Eitan M. Akirav • Noelia Alonso-Gonzalez • Lucy A. Truman • Nancy H. Ruddle

INTRODUCTION

The mammalian immune system defends against invading pathogens, by both the innate and adaptive mechanisms. Although cells that can respond to pathogens are scattered in tissues throughout the body, the optimal structures for the response to antigens are organized, compartmentalized cellular aggregates that facilitate antigen concentration and presentation to a large repertoire of antigen-specific lymphocytes. The primary lymphoid organs, the fetal liver, thymus, and bone marrow, are the sites where diverse populations of naïve lymphocytes mature to disperse throughout the body to await foreign invaders. This remarkable differentiation process occurs in a foreign antigen-independent fashion. The secondary lymphoid organs, including the lymph nodes, spleen, Peyer's patches, and other mucosal-associated lymphoid tissues (MALTs), are discrete sites in which naïve, antigen-specific T- and B-lymphocytes encounter invaders to generate an adaptive response. The lymph nodes and spleen have been considered to be somewhat static structures, while, in fact, they are responsive to environmental influences and undergo remarkable changes in the course of antigenic challenge. Precise programs control the development of the spleen, lymph nodes, Peyer's patches, tonsils and adenoids, and (in the mouse and rat) the nasal-associated lymphoid tissue (NALT). Somewhat less anatomically restricted tissues that are even more sensitive to the environment facilitate and include accumulations of lymphoid cells are organized, but less discretely defined: the bronchus-associated lymphoid tissues (BALTs) and inducible lymphoid follicles (ILFs). Tertiary lymphoid organs, or more accurately, tertiary lymphoid tissues, are accumulations of lymphoid cells that arise ectopically in sites that are not anatomically restricted and are not regulated by developmental programs. Tertiary lymphoid tissues respond to environmental stimuli and arise during chronic inflammation subsequent to microbial infection, graft rejection, autoimmunity, or cancer by the process of lymphoid neogenesis.[1,2]

In this chapter, the structure, function, trafficking patterns, and developmental signals that regulate the hierarchy of lymphoid organs will be described.

PRIMARY LYMPHOID ORGANS

The primary lymphoid organs are the sites where pre-B- and pre-T-lymphocytes mature into naïve B and T cells in the absence of foreign antigen. Each T cell or B cell expresses a unique receptor that can recognize and respond to exogenous antigen and, in most cases, discriminate between self- and foreign antigens. Naïve cells leave the primary lymphoid organs having received and responded to developmental cues that result in the rearrangement of their genetic material to generate a repertoire capable of recognizing and responding to a wide variety of foreign antigens. In the course of maturation in the primary lymphoid organs, the naïve lymphocytes express various chemokine receptors and adhesion molecules that direct them to secondary lymphoid organs.

Fetal Liver

The earliest lymphoid cell precursors derive from self-renewing hematopoietic precursors called hematopoietic stem cells (HSCs). During ontogeny, these cells occupy several niches. In the fetal mouse, the first wave of hematopoiesis occurs in the yolk sac and aorta-gonad-mesonephros region at E10.5.[3] The placenta also contains HSC activity.[4–6] Cells leave these tissues and migrate to the fetal liver, and then the bone marrow and thymus and spleen under the influence of chemokines and adhesion molecules (Fig. 3.1). The cells in the fetal liver respond to CXCL12 (stromal cell derived factor) and, in contrast to those in the bone marrow, also respond to Steel factor[7] (Table 3.1). The fetal liver is also the source of CD4+CD3− lymphoid tissue inducer cells that express lymphotoxin (LT)α (also called tumor necrosis factor [TNF] β) and LTβ. The requirement of inducer cells for the

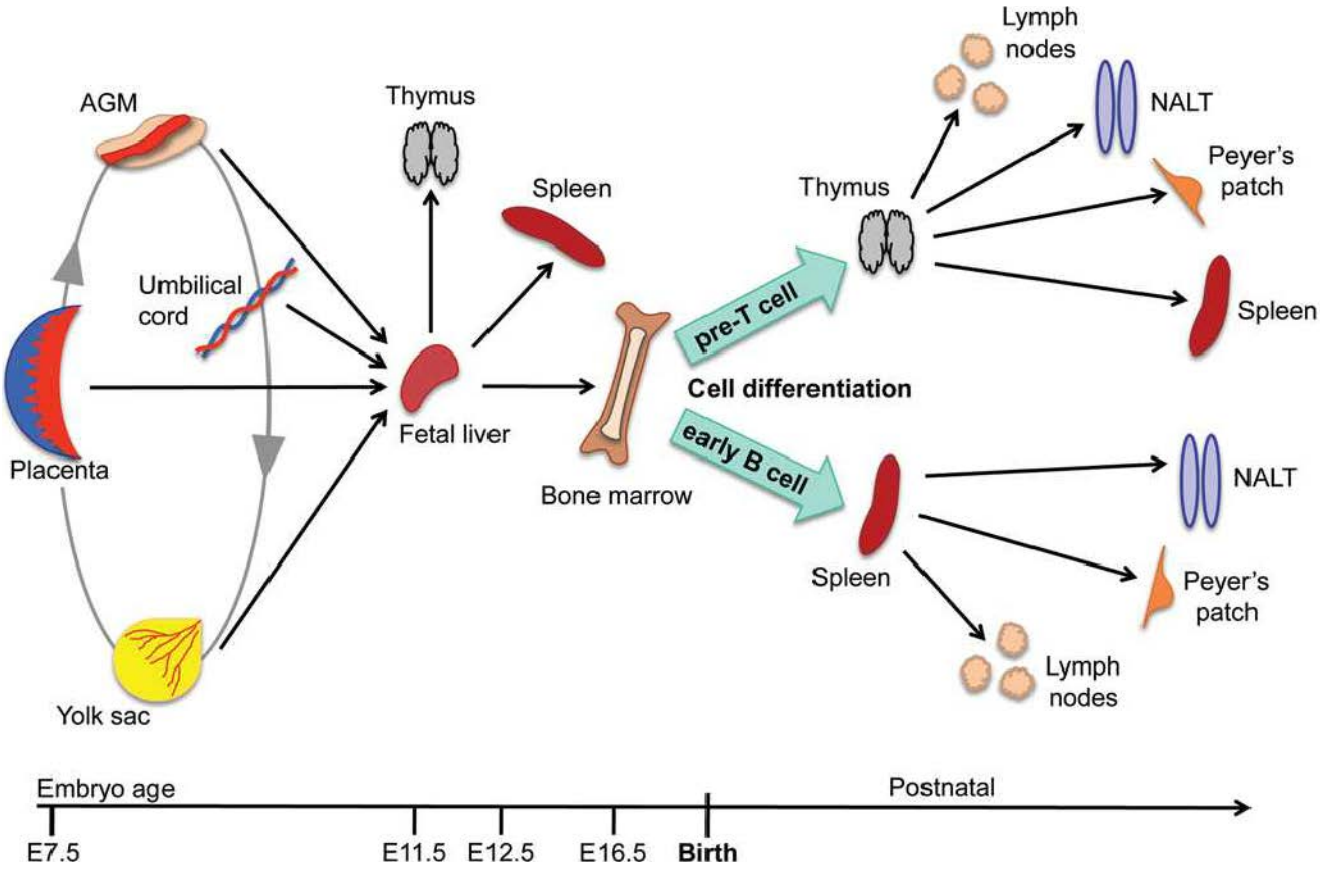


FIG. 3.1. Embryonic and Postnatal Development of T and B Cells in Mouse Primary and Secondary Lymphoid Organs. Embryonic diagram based on information summarized in Medvinsky et al.[6]

development of secondary lymphoid organs is described in the following. Differentiation of HSCs to B cells occurs in the fetal liver, but does not require interleukin (IL)-7. B-cell development is described in detail elsewhere in this volume. Of the several different subsets of B cells, those generated by the fetal liver HSCs are somewhat limited and are of the B-1 subset.[8] They do not give rise to cluster of differentiation (CD)5 B cells, predominately B1-B cells, and do not express terminal deoxynucleotidyl transferase and myosin-like light chain.[8,9] It is not known whether these differences are intrinsic to the cells or are due to differences in the cytokine environment of fetal liver and bone marrow. The ligands for P-selectin, E-selectin, and vascular cell adhesion molecule (VCAM)-1 are required for the cells to leave the fetal liver and home to the bone marrow.[10,11]

TABLE 3.1 Chemokines Implicated in Lymphoid Organ Development and Maintenance

Standard Name	Common Names	Receptor
CXCL12	SDF-1	CXCR4
CXCL13	BCA-1, BLC	CXCR5
CCL17	TARC	CCR4
CCL19	ELC, MIP-3β	CCR7
CCL20	MIP-3α	CCR6
CCL21	SLC, 6Ckine	CCR7
CCL25	TECK	CCR9
CCL28	MEC	CCR10

BCA, B-cell chemoattractant; BLC, B lymphocyte chemoattractant; ELC, EBI-1 ligand chemokine; MEC, mucosae as-associated epithelial chemokine; MIP, macrophage inflammatory protein; SDF-1, stromal cell derived factor; SLC, secondary lymphoid tissue chemokine; TARC, thymus and activation regulatory chemokine; TECK, thymus-expressed chemokine.

Bone Marrow

Functions

The bone marrow is the source of self-renewing populations of stem cells. These cells include hematopoietic precurscor cells, HSCs, and endothelial progenitor cells, which may derive from a single precursor.[12] The adult bone marrow contains stem cells that can differentiate into adipocytes, chondrocytes, osteocytes, and myoblasts.[13] Collectively, these cells are called hematopoietic/stem progenitor cells. In the adult, cells leave the leave the bone marrow and seed the thymus where they undergo differentiation to naïve T cells. Additional factors enable the differentiation of immature B cells from HSCs.

In addition to serving as a primary lymphoid organ where B-cell differentiation and development occur, the bone marrow is also a home for antibody secreting cells.[14] After B cells

have interacted with antigen in the secondary lymphoid organs, such as the lymph nodes, spleen, and Peyer's patches, they enter the bloodstream and travel to the marrow. Thus, this organ not only serves as a primary lymphoid organ, but also as a reservoir for fully differentiated plasma cells.

Architecture: Cellular and Functional Niches

The microenvironment of the bone marrow, contained in the central cavity of bone, is a complex three-dimensional structure, with cellular niches that influence B cells during their development and later, as plasma cells, as they return to the bone marrow. The bone marrow has a rich blood supply with a nutrient artery that branches into ascending and descending arteries further dividing into cortical capillaries, periosteal capillaries, and endosteal capillaries, finally merging into a sinus.[15] Previously, the prevailing understanding of B-cell differentiation in the bone marrow was that primitive HSCs were located in close contact with the endosteum near osteoblasts (the "endosteal niche"). During the course of differentiation into mature B cells, they moved into the central region of the bone marrow cavity (the "vascular niche").[16] The former niche was identified as the location of HSC; the latter, as the site of B-cell differentiation.[17] This anatomic concept has been challenged, as it has been reported that HSCs are found throughout the bone marrow. More recently, a reticular niche has been described that includes CXCL12 abundant reticular cells.[18] Growth factors and cytokines produced by different stromal cells influence cells at different stages in their differentiation. Thus, it is more appropriate to consider functional or cellular, rather than anatomical, niches.[15,19] Once the HSCs differentiate into immature B cells expressing cell surface immunoglobulin (Ig) M, they undergo processes of negative selection and receptor editing, leave the bone marrow, and travel through the blood stream to the secondary lymphoid organs where they complete their differentiation.

Several cytokines and chemokines influence B-cell differentiation in the bone marrow. Flt-3 ligand (also called Flk-2L) signals B-cell differentiation and growth and synergizes with several other hematopoietic growth factors.[20] Its receptor, Flt-3 (also known as Flk-2), expressed by primitive HSCs, is a member of the class II tyrosine kinase family. In contrast to fetal liver, HSCs from adult bone marrow do not respond to Steel factor. Chemokines contribute to B-cell differentiation in the bone marrow and define the functional niches. For excellent reviews of this topic, see Nagasawa,[15] Heissig et al.,[18] and Mazo et al.[21] Many of these factors affect other lymphoid cells, such as dendritic cells (DCs) and T cells. Several of these factors, whose functions have been identified in gene deletion studies in mice, in morphologic analysis, and in cell culture studies, play roles in multiple aspects of lymphoid organ development; their activities, though important in the bone marrow, are not limited to that organ. CXCL12, also known as stromal cell derived factor, is a chemokine that is crucial for recruitment of HSCs to the bone marrow. It is widely expressed by osteoblasts, reticular cells,[19] and endothelial cells.[22] In fact, the interaction of HSCs expressing CXCR4, the receptor for CXCL12, with that chemokine on the endothelial surface is the first step in the HSC's exit from the circulation into the marrow.[23] CXCL12 is also essential for the earliest stage of B-cell development (pre-pro-B cells). Its receptor, CXCR4, is expressed on early B cells and is downregulated in pre-B cells. CXCR4 remains at low levels in immature B cells and mature B cells in secondary lymphoid organs, but is upregulated after B cells interact with antigen and differentiate into plasma cells.[14] This explains the propensity of antibody-secreting cells to return to the bone marrow. Once a pre-pro-B cell has interacted with CXCL12, it moves on to a different cell expressing IL-7. In B-cell development, IL-7 acts later than CXCL12 in a narrow window between pro-B cells and immature B cells in the scheme proposed by Nagasawa.[15]

Traffic In and Out: Chemokines and Adhesion Molecules

The extensive vascularization of the bone marrow allows entrance of hematopoietic precursors and plasma cells and egress of mature cells. Hematopoietic progenitor recruitment to the bone marrow in the mouse is dependent on the interaction of a variety of chemokines, integrins, and selectins, and their receptors, counter receptors, and vascular cell adhesion molecules. These include α_4 integrin (VLA4 or $\alpha_4\beta_1$), VCAM-1,[24] P-selectin glycoprotein ligand-1, E-selectin,[25] $\alpha_4\beta_7$, and mucosal addressin cell adhesion molecule (MAdCAM-1).[26] A small subpopulation of newly formed B cells in the bone marrow that expresses L-selectin has been described,[27] suggesting a mechanism for entrance into lymph nodes (see subsequent discussion).

In addition to the acquisition of Ig expression that occurs in the bone marrow under the control of stromal cells, B cells express various chemokine receptors and adhesion molecules in the process of differentiation. In a study of human bone marrow B cells, it was determined that pro-B and pre-B cells migrate toward CXCL12, but not toward a wide range of other chemokines, including CCL19 and CCL21, though they do express low levels of CCR7, the receptor for those ligands. However, mature bone marrow B cells do respond to CCL 19 and CCL 21,[28] CXCL13 (indicating a functional CXCR5), and CCL20 (MIP3α). On the other hand, CCR6 expression and responsiveness to CCL20 are only seen in mouse B cells after they have migrated into the periphery during the process of maturation and are in the circulating B cell pool.[29]

Thymus

Functions

The thymus is defined as a primary lymphoid organ due to its inimitable role in T-cell development. Indeed, a mutant known as the "nude" (*nu/nu*) mouse, which lacks a normal thymus, is completely devoid of mature T cells.[30] Although some studies suggest that T cells can develop extrathymically in organs such as the "cervical thymus"[31] and the gut epithelium,[32] the thymus remains the main site for T-cell maturation, education, and selection. T-cell precursors represent more than 95% of total cells in the thymus and give rise to mature T cells. These cells are crucial components of the adaptive immune system in that they are highly specific in their ability to recognize a nearly infinite number of antigens owing to their diverse repertoire.[30,33]

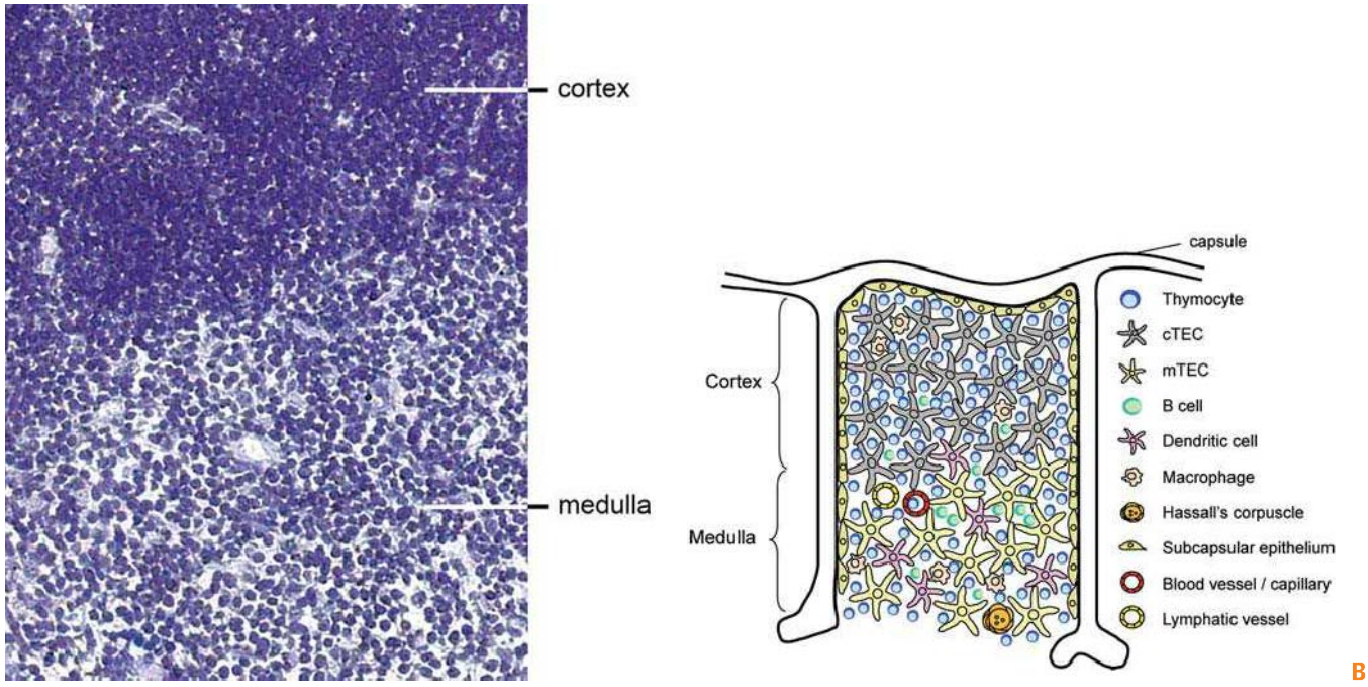


FIG. 3.2. A: Thymic structure. Low power magnification of a hematoxylin-stained frozen section of a mouse thymus. The cortex is well populated with lymphocytes; the medulla is less tightly packed and thus stains less intensely. **B:** Diagram of mouse thymic cellular populations. Precursor T cells enter through blood vessels at the corticomedullary junction. They progress to the medulla where they undergo differentiation from double negative to double positive (DP) cells expressing T-cell receptors. Thymic stromal cells provide growth factors. DP cells undergo positive selection, under the influence of cortical thymic epithelial cells. Single positive (SP) cluster of differentiation (CD)4 or CD8 cells migrate into the medulla where they undergo negative selection, mainly through autoimmune regulator expressing medullary thymic epithelial cells and dendritic cells. SP cells, having undergone differentiation, exit through blood vessels (not shown) to the periphery.

The T-cell repertoire is shaped during development in the thymus by the processes of positive and negative selection. Negative and positive selection are so stringent that nearly 95% of all T-cell precursors are deleted in the thymus.[34] Negative selection ensures that T cells, which are capable of recognizing the organism's self-antigens presented on major histocompatibility complex (MHC) class I or II molecules with high affinity, are eliminated prior to their export to the periphery. In contrast, positive selection, which requires a higher degree of T-cell receptor (TCR) avidity than negative selection,[35] allows for T cells recognizing self-antigen with low to medium affinity to leave the thymus and eventually protect the organism against invading pathogens.

While negative selection is highly efficient in eliminating the majority of self-reactive T cells, some of these cells do escape the thymus and exit to the periphery. These autoreactive cells impose a threat to various organs as their activation may result in the development of autoimmune diseases. The immune system has evolved several ways to prevent the activation of autoreactive T cells in the periphery. One mechanism that protects against autoimmunity is the generation of a T-cell population capable of suppressing activation of self-reactive T cells. These thymus-derived protective T cells, known as regulatory cells (T_{reg}), recognize self-antigens with relatively high affinity.

Architecture

The thymus in the mouse consists of two symmetric lobes located above the heart, while in humans the thymus is multilobed. Each lobe can be divided into three distinct regions: capsule, cortex, and medulla. The latter two regions harbor thymocytes at various maturation stages. Although maturing T cells constitute the majority of cells in the thymus, other cell types such as macrophages, DCs, B cells, and epithelial cells are also present.[36] Histologic analysis of the thymus reveals a clear distinction between the thymic cortex and medulla, which are separated by a corticomedullary border. The thymic cortex appears darker and more densely populated with T-cell precursors, whereas, the medulla appears considerably lighter and contains smaller numbers of T cells relative to other cell types (Fig. 3.2A). Blood vessels and small blood capillaries are found throughout the thymus. The fact that T-cell progenitors are found in the more highly vascularized corticomedullary border suggests that blood vessels in this region facilitate the entry of T-cell progenitors into the thymic parenchyma.[37] In the thymic medulla, the close association between medullary thymic epithelial cells and thymic blood vessels[38] suggests that these vessels may act as organizers of the medullary thymic compartment. Lymphatic vessel distribution coincides with that of blood vessels and capillaries.[39] The majority of lymphatic vessels are located in the thymic medulla, though some can also be found in the cortex. The role of lymphatic vessels in thymic function is unclear, although it has been proposed that these vessels deliver extrathymic antigens into the thymus or export mature T cells from the thymus into the circulation.

Cellular Composition and Functions

T-cell precursors at various stages of differentiation represent the majority of cells in the thymus. Antigen-presenting cells (APCs) of either hematopoietic or stromal origin mediate the education and selection of T cells in the thymus. The different stages in T-cell selection and maturation that take place in distinct regions of the thymus (Fig. 3.2B) are discussed at length elsewhere in this volume. Briefly, lymphoid progenitors enter the thymus at the corticomedullary border.[37] Following their entry, these cells, identified as double negative (DN) T cells due to a lack of expression of the cell surface molecules CD4 and CD8, undergo four maturation steps termed DN1 to DN4, which are distinguished by the expression of two additional cell surface molecules: CD25 and CD44.[40,41] DN3 cells migrate to the subcapsular zone while rearranging their TCRβ chain and expressing it in combination with a surrogate α chain. Those cells that have successfully rearranged the genes for α and β chains of the TCR become double positive (DP) cells, and express both CD4 and CD8 surface markers. In the cortex, DP cells undergo negative and positive selection.[42,43] Positively selected DP cells further differentiate into single positive (SP) cells expressing either CD4 or CD8. Following their differentiation, SP cells relocate to the medulla where they mature and undergo further rounds of deletion. SP cells that do survive are then exported out of the thymus.[44] DN precursors can give rise to an additional T-cell population expressing the γδTCR. These T cells are distinct from TCRαβ T cells in their tissue distribution and recognition of antigens. TCRαβ DP cells control the development of TCRγδ cells via the production of LTβ.[45] T_{reg} development in the human thymus occurs at the DP stage allowing for the production of CD4 and CD8 positive T_{reg}s.[46]

The thymic parenchyma consists of a complex three-dimensional structure supported by thymic epithelial cells (TECs). TECs in the thymic cortex and thymic medulla are phenotypically and functionally distinct and support different stages of T-cell maturation. Several cell surface markers are used to distinguish medullary TECs (mTECs) from cortical TECs (cTECs) in the mouse. Among these markers are the cytokeratins K5 and K8, the adhesion molecule Ep-CAM, and the glycoprotein Ly-51. K8 and Ly-51 are expressed by cTECs, while K5 and Ep-CAM are expressed by mTECs.[47,48] TECs are unique in that they express MHC II constitutively, similarly to professional APCs. The role of TECs in T-cell selection was recently elucidated by their expression of the transcription factor, autoimmune regulator (AIRE). This transcription factor plays an important role in T-cell selection and prevention of autoimmunity, as illustrated by the fact that humans with a mutated form of the *AIRE* gene exhibit polyendocrine autoimmunity due to inadequate T-cell selection.[49,50] It has become clear that AIRE controls the expression of certain tissue-restricted antigens in the thymus, such as insulin, a protein that is unique to the β cells of the islets of Langerhans in the pancreas.[48,51] The expression of tissue-restricted antigens in the thymus facilitates the negative selection of maturing T cells, which would otherwise be allowed to leave the thymus. The thymic medulla includes distinct structures also known as Hassall corpuscles. Originally described by Arthur Hill Hassall in 1849, this structure consists of concentric stratified keratinizing epithelium. Hassall corpuscles are implicated in several processes of the thymus,[52] including the expression of tissue-restricted antigens, such as insulin (a key antigen in type 1 diabetes),[53] Igs, and filaggrin (key antigens in rheumatoid arthritis),[54,55] and serving as a prominent site for T-cell apoptosis.[56]

DCs are professional APCs that are found in the thymus. Thymic DCs can be divided into two distinct populations. The first population originates from a thymocyte precursor,[57,58] whereas the second population is derived from partially mature peripheral DCs that continuously enter the thymus from the circulation.[59] DCs do not appear to be involved in positive selection, but do contribute to negative selection.[60–63] They have also been implicated in the selection of T_{reg}s in humans,[64] and recent reports in the mouse suggest that peripheral DCs can migrate to the thymus and serve as efficient inducers of T_{reg}s.[65] Activation of thymic DCs can be mediated in part by the IL-7–like cytokine, thymic stromal lymphopoietin. In the human thymus, Hassall corpuscles produce thymic stromal lymphopoietin, and thymic stromal lymphopoietin–activated DCs can alter the fate of self-reactive T cells from deletion to positive selection of T_{reg}s.[66] More specifically, thymic stromal lymphopoietin expression in a subset of DCs, plasmacytoid DCs, can induce the generation of particularly potent T_{reg}s from CD4+CD8−CD25− thymocytes.[67] These findings highlight the heterogeneity of DCs and emphasize their ability to fulfill different roles during T-cell development in the thymus.

Macrophages and B cells are additional hematopoietic-derived professional APCs in the thymus. In contrast to DCs, thymic macrophages are located throughout the thymus and do not play a significant role in T-cell selection.[68] B cells are detected in human and mouse thymus at relatively low numbers[69,70] and are characterized by the expression of the cell surface molecule CD5. They are capable of producing antibodies of several different isotypes.[71] It has been suggested that thymic B cells induce negative selection in developing thymocytes,[69] although B cell–deficient mice show a limited T-cell repertoire when compared with normal mice, also suggesting a role in positive selection.[72] Recent data consistent with a role for B cells in thymic negative selection have emerged. Mice whose B cells were experimentally manipulated to express a myelin oligodendrocyte glycoprotein peptide show deletion of myelin oligodendrocyte glycoprotein–specific T effector cells.[73] One mechanism for the effect of B cells on T-cell selection is suggested by the observation that B cells play a role in the control of tissue-restricted antigens. Studies done in mice deficient in B cells showed fewer thymic epithelial cells with reduced expression of insulin and myelin oligodendrocyte glycoprotein, native antigens of the pancreas and brain, respectively.[74]

Traffic In and Out: Adhesion Molecules and Chemokines

Adhesion molecules mediate the extravasation of leukocytes from blood and lymphatic vessels into the thymus. These molecules also play an important role in facilitating lymphocyte homing into various regions of the thymus. Indeed,

thymic blood vessels express the adhesion molecules intercellular adhesion molecule (ICAM)-1, VCAM-1, CD34, peripheral node addressin (PNAd) and vascular adhesion protein-1.[75] The expression of high levels of ICAM-1, VCAM-1, and vascular adhesion protein-1 on venules near the corticomedullary border suggests that these molecules may play a role in the recruitment of thymocyte progenitors. More specifically, vascular adhesion protein-1, which is restricted to the venules surrounding the sites of progenitor homing, can mediate the extravasation of leukocytes. The regional distribution of these adhesion molecules further illustrates the importance of a distinct anatomical separation between cortex and medulla and represents their individual functions.

Chemokine-mediated T-cell migration and traffic to and within the thymus is crucial for normal T-cell selection. The compartmentalization of the thymus is orchestrated by a milieu of chemokines. The thymic cortex is involved in the maturation of DN cells to DP cells and by positively selecting DP T cells capable of recognizing MHC:peptide complexes and eliminating the cells that are not. The thymic medulla acts as a site of negative selection of SP T cells based on TCR recognition avidity to self-antigens and possibly positive selection of T_{reg}. Various chemokines that are produced by the thymic cortex and medulla allow T cells expressing different chemokine receptors to home to specific regions of the thymus. This differential expression of chemokines is complemented by the fact that T cells at different maturation states express different chemokine receptors. During development, the entry of lymphoid progenitors into the thymus is highly dependent on CCL21 and CCL25, which bind the chemokine receptors CCR7 and CCR9, respectively. Mice lacking CCR7 or CCL21[76,77] show a transient delay in thymus colonization by lymphocytes (day 14.5), and this delay is further extended (day 17.5) in mice lacking CCR9.[78] Lymphoid progenitors enter the thymus at the corticomedullary border and commence their migration outwards toward the subcapsular region of the cortex as DN3 cells. The expression of the chemokine receptors CXCR4 and CCR7 by DN cells is important in directing cell migration.[79,80] In the subcapsular region, DN thymocytes that have successfully rearranged their TCRαβ chains progress to the DP cell stage. Positively selected DP cells move inwards toward the thymic medulla for further differentiation into SP cells. The ligands for CCR7 are crucial in mediating the migration of positively selected DP cells into the medulla as illustrated by the fact that a deficiency in CCR7 or its ligands, CCL19 or CCL21, prevents DP cell relocation from the cortex to the medulla resulting in abnormal central tolerance.[81,82] This abnormal tolerance is associated with a reduction in thymic B-cell numbers and reduced expression of tissue-restricted antigens.[74] Interestingly, antigen itself can control T-cell migration speed from the cortex to the medulla. In the presence of a negative selection ligand, T cells slow down considerably and are limited to a confined zone 30 μ in diameter allowing for a more prolonged selection and induction of developmental arrest.[83]

The export of positively selected SP T cells out of the thymus is also dependent on chemokines. Chemokines involved in T-cell emigration are CXCL12 and its receptor CXCR4, which repel SP cells out of thymus,[84] and CCL19, which promotes T-cell emigration from the thymus of newborn mice.[85] The chemoattractant, sphingosine 1-phosphate (S1P), is an additional mediator of T-cell emigration. SP T cell express a S1P receptor ($S1P_1$) and are attracted to the high levels of S1P present in the serum promoting their egress.[86,87]

While the role of different thymic compartments and chemokines in the maturation of naïve SP T cells has been extensively studied, the thymic regions and chemokines that control the selection of regulatory T cells remain largely unknown. It may be that chemokines produced by both cTECs and thymic DCs play a role in regulatory T-cell selection, albeit during different stages of maturation.

Development

The initial development of the thymus at midgestation in the mouse is independent of vascularization or bone marrow–derived cells. In the mouse, the thymus rudiment is first evident on day 11 of gestation as it evolves from the endoderm of the third pharyngeal pouch.[88] This gives rise to the thymic lobes as well as to the parathyroid gland. On day 12.5 of gestation, a separation of the primordium is observed and by day 13.5 a distinct thymus is apparent. Evidence has suggested that not only the pharyngeal pouch endoderm but also the ectoderm may also be involved in thymic development.[89,90] More specifically, it was suggested that the pharyngeal pouch ectoderm contributes to the development of cTECs whereas the endoderm contributes solely to the development of mTECs. This "dual origin" model was mainly supported by histological data as well as data collected from thymi of *nu/nu* mice.[91–93] More recently, it was shown that both thymic cortex and medulla are derived solely from the pharyngeal pouch endoderm[94]; although the endoderm and ectoderm are found in close proximity between gestational day 10.5 and 11, only the endoderm actively contributes to thymic development.[95] These findings support the so-called single origin model of thymus development.

The contribution of lymphocytes to the normal development of thymic cortex and medulla is well recognized. In models of T-cell deficiency, cTEC and mTEC development is halted at different stages depending on the stage of T-cell arrest. If T-cell development is arrested at the DN stage, as in the recombination activating gene–deficient mouse, the thymic medulla is greatly reduced while the thymic cortex remains unaffected.[96,97] A more severe phenotype is observed in transgenic mice that overexpress the human CD3 signaling molecule. In these mice, T-cell arrest occurs earlier than in recombination activating gene knockout mice, leading to a loss of both cortex and medulla and to a shift from a three-dimensional to a two-dimensional structure of the thymic epithelia.[97]

Recently, LTα and LTβ have been identified as master regulators of mTEC development and expression of tissue-restricted antigens. LTα and LTβ are members of the TNF superfamily and mediate the processes of secondary lymphoid organ development and inflammation.[1,98] In the absence of LT, tissue-restricted antigen and AIRE expression are reduced and certain mTEC subpopulations fail to develop.[99,100] T cells, owing to their vast numbers, appear

to be the main source for LT production in the thymus[45]; however, additional resident cells also serve as a source of LT. Recently, resident thymic B cells were identified as the highest source of LTα and LTβ on a per cell basis,[74] revealing yet another aspect of thymic B cells in thymus development and function.

The development of the thymus in humans closely follows the model of thymic development in the mouse and bird. Similar to the mouse, human thymic colonization by hematopoietic stem cells occurs relatively early, at week 8.2 of gestation. During this stage, the thymic medulla and cortex are organized, suggesting that thymocytes are required for normal thymic development. Between gestation week 9.5 and 10, the first signs of thymocyte negative selection are evident, and by gestation week 10 to 12.75 the gradual onset of positive selection is detected.[101]

SECONDARY LYMPHOID ORGANS

Naïve cells express their receptors for specific antigen, leave primary lymphoid organs, circulate through the bloodstream, migrate into the tissues, and lodge in secondary lymphoid organs. The frequency of naïve cells specific for an individual antigen is quite low (estimates range from 1 in 10^5 to 1 in 10^6). Thus, the chance that an individual T or B cell will encounter its specific antigen in the circulation is rather low. Secondary lymphoid organs are strategically located in anatomically distinct sites where foreign antigen and APCs efficiently concentrate and activate rare antigen-specific lymphocytes, thus leading to the initiation of adaptive immune responses and generation of long-lived protective immunity. These organs include highly organized, compartmentalized, and mostly encapsulated tissues such as lymph nodes, spleen, appendix, tonsils, murine NALTs, and Peyer's patches. Naïve cells are also primed in less discrete tissues throughout the body, including the BALTs, cryptopatches, and ILF.

Lymph Nodes

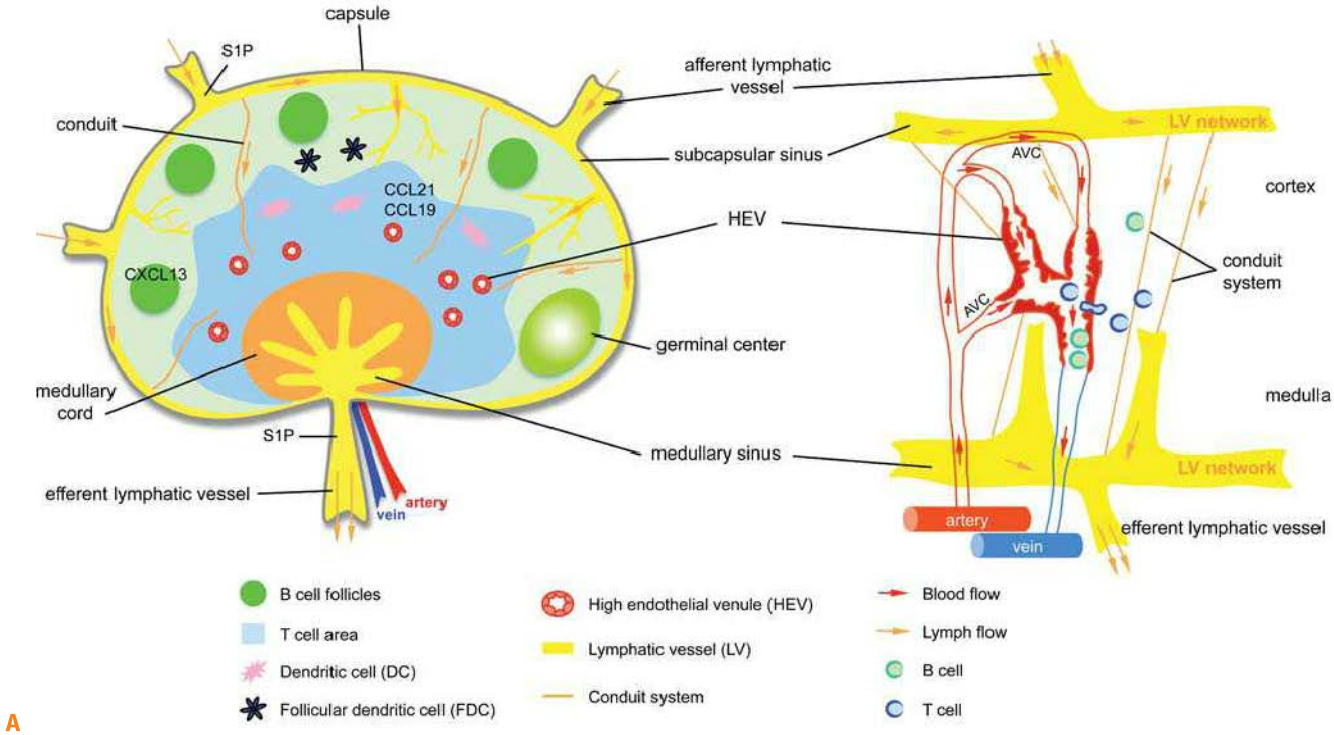
Lymph nodes are bean-shaped structures dispersed along lymphatic vessels. The lymphatic vessel system plays important roles in tissue fluid balance, fat transport, and the immune response. In contradistinction to blood vessels, which form a closed recirculating system, lymphatic vessels comprise a blind-end, unidirectional transportation system. The absorbing lymphatic vessels, or lymphatic capillaries, remove interstitial fluid and macromolecules from extracellular spaces and transport the collected lymph through the primary collector. The collected lymph and its cellular contents are transported into the thoracic duct and returned back to blood circulation. In humans, lymph collected from the entire lower body region, the left head, and left arm region accumulates in the thoracic duct and returns to blood circulation via the left subclavian vein; lymph collected from right head and right arm region returns to blood via the right subclavian vein.

Lymph nodes, usually embedded in fat, are located at vascular junctions, and are served by lymphatic vessels that bring in antigen, and connect them to other lymph nodes. Though most lymph nodes are classified as peripheral lymph nodes, a few (cervical, mesenteric, and sacral), termed mucosal nodes, express a slightly different complement of endothelial adhesion molecules, cooperate with the mucosal system, and are regulated somewhat differently in development (see following discussion). Although all lymph nodes are vascularized, and thus can receive antigens from the bloodstream, they are also served by a rich lymphatic vessel system and are thus particularly effective in mounting responses to antigens that are present in tissues. These antigens may be derived from foreign invaders that are transported by APCs or can be derived from self-antigens. Thus, lymph nodes extend the role of the primary lymphoid organs and discriminate between dangerous foreign antigens and benign self-antigens. This capacity relies on the APCs and their state of activation in the lymph node, and the recognition capacity of the naïve T and B cells.

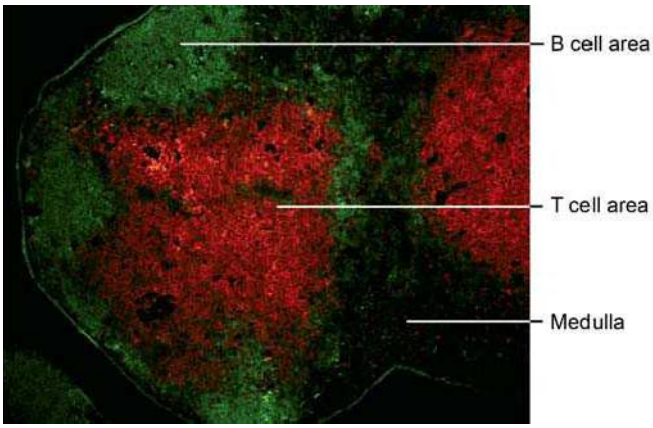
Lymph nodes can also function as niches for generating peripheral tolerance, an additional mechanism to minimize the effects of those self-reactive T-cells that escape central tolerance in the thymus.[102] DCs constitutively sample self-antigens and migrate to draining lymph nodes even in the steady state.[103–105] Because most self-antigen–bearing DCs in lymph nodes are immature[106] and have low levels of costimulatory molecules, they are not effective at activating naïve cells. They regulate self-reactive T cells by inducing anergy, clonal deletion, and/or expanding T_{regs}.[105–109] Several groups have recently described populations of cells in secondary lymphoid organs that can present tissue-restricted antigens to CD8 cells.[110–114] These include two different populations of AIRE-expressing stromal cells, DCs, and AIRE-negative lymphatic endothelial cells. These cells may play a role in self-tolerance, or perhaps they can prime for autoimmunity in inflammatory conditions.

Structure and Organization

A collagen capsule surrounds the highly compartmentalized lymph node (Fig. 3.3). The cortical region includes discrete clusters called primary follicles consisting of densely packed naïve B cells and follicular DCs (FDCs). After B cells encounter their cognate antigen, they are activated. They then proliferate secondary follicles and germinal centers develop. T cells and DCs distribute in the paracortex. Macrophages reside in the subcapsular zone and in the medullary area, and those in the subcapsular zone appear to be particularly adept at presenting antigen-antibody complexes to B cells.[115] Follicular DCs, a population of mesenchymal origin, support B-cell follicles or germinal centers under stimulation.[1] Plasma cells are also concentrated in the medulla as they prepare to leave the lymph node and circulate to the bone marrow. A network composed of reticular fibers, fibrous extracellular matrix bundles, and another mesenchymal cell population, the fibroblastic reticular cells, supports the entire lymph node.[116] Compartmentalization of cells in the lymph node is orchestrated by lymphoid chemokines CCL19, CCL21, and CXCL13. Stromal cells in the paracortical region produce CCL19 and the protein is transported to the surface of high endothelial venules (HEVs).[117] CCL21 is encoded by several genes[118]; CCL21-leu is expressed by lymphatic vessels



A



B

FIG. 3.3. A: Lymph node structure and functional regions. The lymph node is divided into an outer cortex and inner medulla surrounded by a capsule and lymphatic sinus. The cortex includes B cells and follicular dendritic cells. The paracortical region includes T cells and dendritic cells. Macrophages are found in the subcapsular sinus and medullary cord. Lymphocytes enter into the lymph node through an artery at the hilus region, and into the parenchyma through high endothelial venules (HEVs) expressing peripheral node addressin and CCL19 and CCL21. Stromal cells also produce these chemokines. T cells and dendritic cells (DCs) are directed to the paracortical region by CCL19 and CCL21. B cells are directed to the cortex by CXCL13. After interaction with antigen and T cells, germinal centers develop. Antigen and DCs drain into the lymph node from the tissues through afferent lymphatic vessels. Antigen continues to percolate through the node via a conduit system. Activated cells leave through efferent lymphatic vessels. Diagram of the blood network of a rat lymph node (*right*) is adapted from Anderson and Anderson.[125] Note the arteriovenous communications, the venous sphincters, and cells leaving the HEVs into the parenchyma. **B:** Lymph node compartmentalization. Immunofluorescent staining of B cells (anti-B220, *green*) in follicles in the cortex and T cells (anti-cluster of differentiation 3, *red*) in the paracortical area. The medulla is unstained.

outside the lymph node[119]; CCL21-ser is made by stromal cells and HEVs in the lymph node. CCL19 and CCL21 recruit CCR7-expressing cells across the HEVs to the paracortical region. CXCL13, produced by stromal cells in the B-cell follicles, attracts CXCR5 expressing B cells.[120] After naïve T and B cells encounter antigen, they undergo extensive changes in expression of chemokine receptors and adhesion molecules that result in their movement to different areas of the lymph node or leaving it all together.[121,122] $S1P_1$ facilitates lymphocyte egress from lymph nodes as they move toward the ligand S1P in the lymph,[123,124] as discussed in more detail subsequently.

Lymph Node Vasculature: Blood Vessels and Lymphatic Vessels

Soluble antigen and APCs enter into lymph nodes via afferent lymphatic vessels. After surveying antigens in the lymph

nodes, lymphocytes leave those organs via efferent lymphatic vessels that can connect to the next lymph node in the chain and finally return to blood circulation.[125–127] In this manner, HEVs and lymphatic vessels maintain lymphocyte homeostasis during the steady state.

Blood endothelial cells play a crucial role in lymphocyte trafficking in the lymph node. One or two arteries enter the lymph node at the hilus. These arteries branch and pass through the medulla area, enter the cortex, and sometimes continue in the subcapsular area. Beneath the subcapsular sinus, the branching capillaries form loops and some of them become arteriovenous communications. Arteriovenous communications become HEVs in the cortex area and occasionally extend from the subcapsular sinus to the medulla. HEVs constitute a specialized postcapillary network in the lymph node, playing a critical role in lymphocyte recirculation. Each main HEV trunk receives three to five branches lined with high endothelial cells and two or three branches lined with flat endothelial cells. The luminal diameters of HEVs progressively increase from cortex to medulla. Finally, HEVs merge into segmental veins in the medulla area and join larger veins in the hilus[125] (see Fig. 3.3A). Intravital microscopy has revealed that the entire venular tree consists of five branching orders with the higher orders in the paracortex and the lower orders located in the medulla and hilus areas. Only the higher order venules, located in the T-cell area, are specialized into HEVs and are recognized by the monoclonal antibody MECA-79.[126,127] Recirculating naive lymphocytes leave the bloodstream via HEVs, specialized vessels with a high cuboidal endothelium, and migrate into the lymph node parenchyma. PNAd, defined by the MECA-79 antigen, is an L-selectin ligand, and is a characteristic HEV adhesion molecule. PNAd is composed of a variety of core glycoproteins, including GlyCAM-1, CD34, Sgp200, and podocalyxin; these proteins must be sialylated, sulfated, and fucosylated to become functional L-selectin ligands. The several enzymes that mediate these posttranslational modification events include FucT-IV, FucT-VII, and GlcNAc6ST2 (also called HEC-6ST, LSST, GST-3, HEC-GlcNAc6ST, gene name *Chst4*),[128–132] which with the exception of a population of cells in the intestine[133,134] is uniquely expressed in high endothelial cells. Together with another sulfotransferase, GlcNAC6ST1, that is expressed at sites in addition to HEVs, it sulfates glycoproteins in the Golgi apparatus[135] to generate the MECA-79 epitope. PNAd, expressed on the endothelial surface, slows down (tethers) naïve L-selectin^{hi} lymphocytes in their progress through the blood vessels. After this initial interaction, CCL19 and CCL21 on the HEVs are instrumental in activating the lymphocyte integrin lymphocyte function–associated antigen (LFA)-1. This results in tight binding of LFA-1 to ICAM-1 on the HEV, facilitating diapedesis of lymphocytes that migrate between or through the endothelial cells toward the chemokines located in the paracortical region (T cells, DCs) or cortex (B cells). Data suggest that the HEV-lymphocyte interaction is not random in different lymphoid tissues in the mouse.[136,137] T-lymphocytes adhere preferentially to peripheral lymph node HEVs, B cells prefer to adhere to HEVs in Peyer's patches, and T and B cells exhibit an intermediate pattern of adhesion to mesenteric lymph node HEVs.[34,136,138] The selective adhesion of naïve lymphocytes to HEVs is at least partially controlled by the differentially expressed adhesion molecules in different lymphoid organs. PNAd rapidly replaces MAdCAM-1 after birth in mouse peripheral lymph nodes,[139] but is expressed in mucosal lymph nodes together with MAdCAM-1, the ligand for the integrin $\alpha_4\beta_7$.

Lymphatic vessels also play critical roles in the immune response. The collected lymph and cell contents enter the lymph node via several afferent lymphatic vessels and filter through the node where they again are concentrated in the medullary sinus. Lymphatic vessels are concentrated in the subcapsular sinus and medullary area.[125] Factors from afferent lymph can be either transported deep into the lymph node cortex or move via the subcapsular sinus and leave the lymph node through efferent lymphatic vessels.[116] In this manner, soluble antigen and APCs from peripheral tissues are efficiently concentrated in the draining lymph node and initiate an adaptive immune response. Lymphocytes can also enter lymph nodes through afferent lymphatic vessels and leave via efferent vessels and move to the next lymph node in the chain. This is accomplished in part through a gradient of S1P, which is at a high concentration in the lymph and low concentration in the lymph node. Lymphocytes in the lymph node downregulate this receptor ($S1P_1$) and then upregulate it as they prepare to leave and migrate toward the higher concentration in the efferent lymph.[123,124] Human and murine lymphatic vessels express several characteristic markers: lymphatic vessel endothelial hyaluronan receptor-1 (LYVE-1), Prox-1, podoplanin, CCL21, the vascular endothelial growth factor receptor-3 (VEGFR-3), and neuropilin-2.[140]

Conduit System

A conduit system in the lymph nodes physically connects the lymphatic sinus with the walls of blood vessels and enables the incoming factor(s) from lymph to move rapidly deep into the paracortical area.[116,125] The conduit system consists of four layers: 1) a core of type I and type III collagen bundles; 2) a microfibrillar zone composed largely of fibrillins; 3) a basement membrane abundant with laminins 8 and 10, perlecan, and type IV collagen that provides a supportive structure; and 4) fibroblastic reticular cells that embrace the entire conduit system.[141,142] This conduit system enables incoming lymph to penetrate deep into the T-cell area. A special subset of immature DCs, called conduit-associated DCs, can take up and process antigens moving along the conduit.[142] In this manner, the conduit system probably provides a physical support for rapid initiation of adaptive immune responses after immunization.

The Intimate Relationship Between Lymph and High Endothelial Venules

Incoming lymph is necessary for the maintenance of HEV phenotype and function. After afferent lymphatic vessels are severed, dramatic changes occur in HEVs. These include flattening of the endothelium, a decrease in the uptake of ^{35}S-sulphate[143,144] (a functional marker of GlcNAC6ST-2), a reduction of lymphocyte adherence to the vessels,[145–147]

and decreased expression of PNAd and the HEV genes, *Glycam-1* and *Fuc-TVII*.[146–148] An increase in MAdCAM-1 expression[146] suggests that these events are not simply due to a general downregulation of blood vessel gene expression and indicates that continual accumulation of afferent lymph factor(s) in lymph nodes is necessary for HEV maintenance. The nature of such lymph factor(s) is unknown.

Topographic relations between HEVs and the lymphatic sinus have been described in the rat mesenteric lymph nodes. Some HEVs are located in the medulla area and positioned closely in relation to the lymphatic sinus.[125] Occasionally, HEVs are separated from an adjacent lymphatic sinus by only a thin layer of collagen bundles. The closely apposed HEV and lymphatic sinus in the medulla provide the physical support for the intimate relationship between lymph and HEV. However, most HEVs are located in the paracortical area and are separated from the lymphatic sinus by lymphocytes. The conduit system physically connects the subcapsular sinus and HEVs and allows incoming lymph factor(s) to migrate rapidly to the wall of HEVs.[125,149,150] Low-molecular-weight fluorescent tracers (below 70 kD) move rapidly via the conduit system and lead directly to the wall of HEVs. In this manner, low-molecular-weight tracers can migrate with lymph within minutes to HEVs and enter the HEV lumen.[116] Lymph-borne chemokines likely adopt this route to regulate HEV function. IL-8 administration via afferent lymph increases lymphocyte HEV transmigration within minutes.[125,151] In addition, lymph-borne chemokines, such as MIP-1α, also enter the conduit system and move rapidly to HEVs.[116] These data suggest that lymph factor(s) can quickly access and regulate HEVs.

Development

Despite their distinctions in the adult with regard to morphology and expressed genes, a close association of blood vessels and lymphatic vessels is seen during embryogenesis. The generation of embryonic lymphatic vessels from preexisting veins in pig embryos was first described in the early 1900s by Sabin and has recently been molecularly defined.[140] A variety of transcription factors have been identified that contribute to the lymphatic specification and maintenance of the lymphatic vessels phenotype.[152] As early as mouse E9, expression of Sox18 and CoupTFII is apparent in the cardinal vein. These induce Prox1 in the dorsolateral side of the vein resulting in polarization and lymphatic-biased endothelial cells. Prox1 generates a feedback signal for the further maintenance of budding and migration of endothelial cells. Targets of Prox1 include Prox1 itself, podoplanin, VEGFR3, integrin-α, and Nrp-2. Prox1 expression in blood endothelial cells also represses expression of markers of those cells. NfatC1, Foxc2, and Tbx1 are additional transcription factors that are expressed later in lymphatic vessel development and contribute to patterning, pericyte covering of lymphatic vessels, lymphatic vessel valves, and lymphatic vessel maturation. At E11.5-12.0, CCL21 is expressed in these lymphatic-biased endothelial cells, as is VEGFR-3, which is reduced in blood endothelial cells. The endothelial cells expressing LYVE-1, Prox1, VEGFR-3, and CCL21 become irreversibly committed toward a lymphatic pathway.[153,154] The separation of lymphatic endothelial cells from venous endothelium requires a Syk/SLP-76 signal[155] that is provided by platelets.[156,157] Thus, during early lymphangiogenesis, some endothelial cells express both blood vessel and lymphatic vessel markers, indicating the close association of these two vascular systems. Mesenchymal lymphangioblasts may also contribute to early lymphangiogenesis.[158] The lymphatic venous junction remains in adults in only limited regions but plays an essential role in connecting the function of the two vascular systems.

Studies in the mouse have taken advantage of transgenic, knockout, and imaging studies to provide a mechanistic understanding of the process of lymph node development. Although lymph sacs per se do not appear to be essential for the initiation of lymph nodes, a lymphatic vessel system is necessary for the later development and cellular population of lymph nodes.[159] Furthermore, an interaction between mesenchymal cells and primitive endothelial cells is apparent in the early lymph node anlage.[160]

Cytokines, Chemokines, and Transcription Factors in Lymphoid Organogenesis

The TNF-/LT-receptor family members play key roles in secondary lymphoid organ development. $LT_{\alpha 3}$, signaling through TNFRI and TNFRII, and membrane bound $LT_{\alpha 1\beta 2}$, signaling through the LTβ receptor (LTβR) have been implicated. Mice deficient in LTα lack all lymph nodes and Peyer's patches, and exhibit a disorganized spleen and severely disorganized NALT (see subsequent discussion).[161–163] Mice deficient in LTβ lack peripheral lymph nodes but retain mesenteric, sacral, and cervical lymph nodes.[164–166] *Ltβr−/−* mice have a phenotype similar to that of *Ltα−/−* mice.[167] LTβR is also recognized by LTβ-related ligand, LIGHT, which also binds to the herpes virus entry mediator. LIGHT-LTβR signaling does not appear to play an essential role during lymphoid organogenesis, as no significant defect is observed in *Light−/−* mice[168]; however, mice doubly deficient in LIGHT and LTβ have fewer mesenteric lymph nodes than mice deficient in LTβ alone, indicating a cooperative effect of the two LTβR ligands. Treatment of pregnant females with an inhibitory soluble protein of LTβR (LTβR and human IgG Fc fusion protein, LTβR-Ig) inhibits most lymph nodes in the developing embryos, depending on the time of administration. Mesenteric lymph nodes are not inhibited by this treatment. These studies indicate that individual lymph nodes differ in the nature and time of cytokine signaling during development.[169] Several additional cytokine and chemokine-receptor pairs are crucial for lymphoid organogenesis. Mice deficient in IL-7 or IL-7R,[170,171] or TRANCE or TRANCER, also called RANKL and RANK,[172,173] exhibit defects in lymph node development. CXCR5- or CXCL13-deficient mice[174,175] lack some lymph nodes and almost all Peyer's patches.[98] The relative importance of the different cytokines in the development of individual lymphoid organs has been recently summarized.[176]

The NF-κB signaling pathways, downstream of the TNF family receptors, play important roles in lymphoid organ development.[177] The alternative pathway, characterized by NF-κB–inducing kinase (NIK) and IKKα is particularly

important. *aly/aly* mice, which have a point mutation in *Nik*, lack all lymph nodes and Peyer's patches.[178,179] In these mice, LTβR, but not TNFR, mediated signaling between NIK and members of the TRAF family appears to be disrupted.[179–181] LTβR signaling induces gene expression via both the classical and alternative NF-κB pathways in mouse embryo fibroblasts. The classical pathway mediated by p50:p65 heterodimers induces expression of proinflammatory genes (*Vcam-1*, *Mip1b*, *Mip2*). Intraperitoneal injection of an agonistic LTβR antibody induces splenic chemokines (CCL19, CCL21, and CXCL13) and requires NIK activity and subsequent p100 processing.[182] IKKα is a critical component in alternative NF-κB pathway. Mice with a mutated form of the *Ikka* gene have reduced HEV expression of HEC-6ST (GlcNAc6ST2) and GlyCAM-1, further confirming that the LTβR signal regulates HEVs through the alternative NFκB pathway.[183] Several other signaling pathways that contribute to lymphoid organogenesis include the helix-loop-helix transcription factor inhibitor (Id2) and retinoid acid-related orphan receptors (RORs) RORγ and RORγt.[184–186]

Studies of lymph node anlage formation reveal the mechanisms by which cytokines trigger and coordinate lymphoid organogenesis. There is likely an initiating factor, though this has not been definitively identified. In the case of Peyer's patches, a cell producing the receptor tyrosine kinase has been implicated.[187,188] Recent data indicate that the earliest stages of lymph node development appear to be dependent on retinoic acid that may be produced by nerves in the vicinity of the developing node.[189] Circulating CD4+CD3−CD45+ RORγt+ hematopoietic progenitor cells called lymphoid tissue–inducer cells, derived from fetal liver progenitors,[98,185,190–192] provide crucial signals in lymph node organogenesis. These lymphoid tissue–inducer cells accumulate in the developing lymph node, forming clusters with resident stromal organizer cells, to initiate a cascade of intracellular and intercellular events that lead to the maturation of the primordial lymph node.[1,98] During this early step, a positive feedback loop involves several signaling pathways, including LTαβ/LTβR, IL-7R/IL-7, CXCR5/CXCL13, and RANK/RANKL, are expressed on the lymphoid tissue–inducer cells and the stromal organizer cells. The prolonged interaction between lymphoid tissue–inducer cells and stromal organizer cells promotes the development of HEVs, which support the entry of naïve lymphocytes.[193] It is unclear how HEVs differentiate from the flat blood vessels during early lymphoid organogenesis. At birth, HEVs of all lymph nodes express MAdCAM-1, which is replaced in the first few days in peripheral lymph nodes by PNAd.[194] Both MAdCAM-1 and PNAd are expressed in mucosal lymph nodes. LTα alone can induce MAdCAM-1, but PNAd requires LTαβ.[2,195,196] In the remaining mesenteric lymph nodes of *Ltβ*−/− mice, PNAd expression is impaired,[196] indicating that optimal lymph node HEV PNAd expression requires $LT\alpha_1\beta_2$ signaling through the LTβR and the alternative NF-κB pathway.[183] Because the maturation of HEVs is coincident with further development of the lymph node,[139,197] the homing of LT-expressing lymphocytes most likely contributes to HEV maturation. Continual signaling through the LTβR is necessary for maintenance of HEV gene expression.[198,199] Recent data suggest that the actual physical presence of lymphocytes in the close vicinity of HEVs contributes in important ways to the physical cobblestone appearance of these vessels.[200]

Changes in Lymph Nodes after Immunization

Lymph nodes undergo dramatic changes and remodeling after immunization. Early after a variety of immunogenic exposures, such as skin painting with oxazolone, injection of ovalbumin or sheep red blood cells in adjuvant, or bacterial or viral infection, remodeling occurs. This remodeling is apparent as a complex kinetics of changes in lymph flow, lymph cell content, blood flow, HEV gene expression, and lymphatic vessels.[199] Afferent lymph flow and lymph cell content increase soon after initial inflammation, and eventually return to preimmunization levels.[201–205] Lymph node lymphangiogenesis occurs, which eventually resolves.[199,206] Blood flow and lymphocyte migration into lymph nodes peak at 72 to 96 hours,[166,204,207,208] accompanied by an increase in HEV number and dilation,[209,210] accounting for the significant lymph node enlargement apparent at 72 to 96 hours.[207] Efferent lymph flow also increases soon after immunization, but lymph cell content in the efferent lymph drops during the first several hours, indicating the first wave of accumulation of lymphocytes in the draining lymph node. The cell content of the efferent lymph later increases and peaks at 72 to 96 hours.[211] These events, taken together, contribute to the significant enlargement of the draining lymph node at day 4 after immunization. During the early times after immunization, despite the increase in the number of HEVs, the expression of genes that contribute to L-selectin ligand, including *Fuct-vii*, *Glycam-1*, *Sgp200*, and *Chst4*, is initially downregulated followed by a recovery.[148,199,212] However, despite the downregulation of chemokines CCL21 and CXCL12, some genes such as those encoding CXCL9, CCL3, and E-selectin are upregulated,[213] as is MAdCAM-1,[199] suggesting a reversion to an immature phenotype before the eventual recovery of the mature phenotype.

In rodents, HEV maturation is coincident with the continuing development of the lymph node and population of lymphocytes after birth, indicating that the mature HEV phenotype relies on the lymph node microenvironment.[139,197] Plasticity of the mature lymph node is also seen after injection of LTβR-Ig. LTβR-Ig treatment reduces lymph node cellularity, reverts the HEV phenotype to the immature state, inhibits FDC function, and disrupts immune responses to foreign antigens.[198,199,214]

Spleen

Function

The spleen is a large reddish organ located beneath the diaphragm close to the stomach and the pancreas. It is the main filter of the blood and integrates the innate and adaptive responses. Its structure in well-defined different compartments, red pulp and white pulp, determines a variety of functions. The red pulp is a source of hematopoiesis in the embryo that can continue in adult life under stress. Clearance of blood-borne damaged platelets, aged

erythrocytes, and dead cells also occurs in that region. An important function, consequent to its destruction of effete erythrocytes, is its role in iron recycling. In some species, such as horses or dogs, the spleen stores erythrocytes that can be released after stress. The white pulp and marginal zone constitute the highly organized lymphoid compartment of the spleen. Due to this organized lymphoid structure and the special vasculature and circulation, the spleen is a crucial site for blood-borne antigen clearance and presentation to T and B cells. The spleen is crucial in defense against blood-borne pathogens and contributes most significantly to defense against bacterial and fungi infections.[215]

Architecture and Cellular Composition

A fibrous capsule and trabeculae of fibrous connective tissue maintain the structure of the spleen. The general principles of splenic organization are similar across species, though specifics may differ.[216–220] Classically, the spleen can be divided into two areas: red pulp and white pulp. A transit area, the marginal zone (MZ), surrounds the white pulp (Fig. 3.4). These compartments are anatomically and functionally distinct. The red pulp, in its activities as a hematogenous organ, removes damaged cells and acts as a site for iron storage and turnover. The white pulp is an organized lymphoid structure. The complex structure of the spleen is directly related to the complexity of the vasculature of this organ. The afferent splenic artery branches into central arterioles, surrounded by white pulp areas, and end in cords in the red pulp. Blood then collects in venous sinuses that determine the engulfment of erythrocytes by red pulp macrophages. Finally, the sinuses empty into the efferent splenic vein. Some small arterial branches end in the MZ, which demarcates the red and white pulp. The MZ structure differs somewhat between humans and rodents. A perifollicular zone surrounds the human MZ, which consists of inner and outer marginal zones, whereas the rodent MZ is

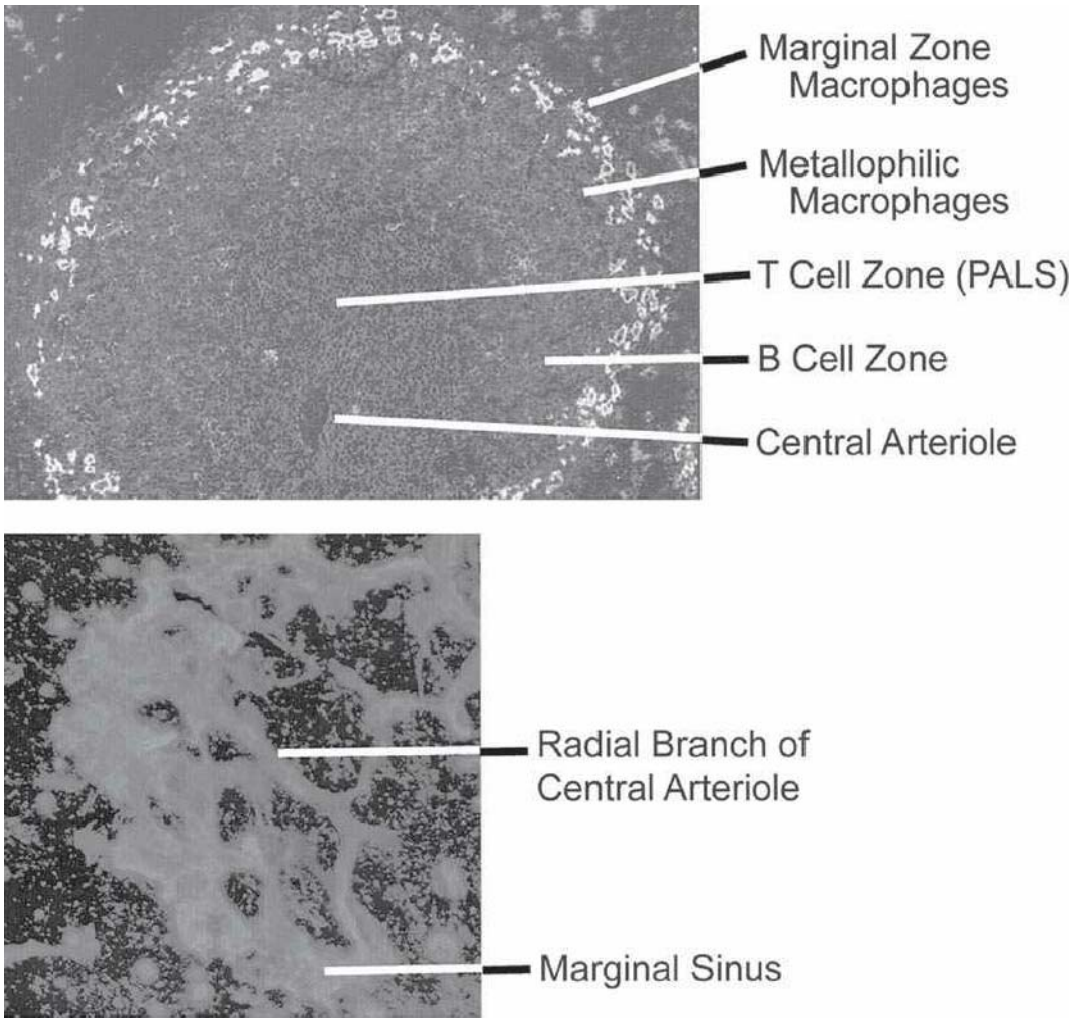


FIG. 3.4. Organization of the Spleen White Pulp. Immunofluorescence staining of a white pulp unit in the mouse spleen. T cells (anti- cluster of differentiation [CD]4+anti-CD8+, *red*) are localized around the central arteriole. B cells (anti-immunoglobulin M, *green*) are localized in follicles around the T-cell area, surrounded by a layer of metalophilic macrophages (labeled with monoclonal antibody-1) and a more peripheral layer of marginal zone macrophages (labeled with monoclonal antibody ERTR9, *orange*). The marginal zone is located between the metalophilic macrophage and the marginal zone macrophage layers (not shown).[357] From Chaplin[358] with permission.

a single structure and has no perifollicular zone. The MZ is the transition between the innate and acquired immune systems and is an important transit area for cells reaching the white pulp. It also contains a large number of resident cells. There are two specialized macrophage populations: the MZ macrophages and MZ metallophilic macrophages. MZ macrophages have a high phagocytic activity and are phenotypically different from other macrophage populations in the spleen as exemplified by the expression of SIGNR1 and macrophage-associated receptor (MARCO) with collagenous structure, molecules implicated in the recognition of pathogens. SIGNR1, a C-type lectin in the mouse that is a homologue of human DC–specific intercellular adhesion molecule,[221] is also found in medullary and subcapsular macrophages in the lymph node. MZ macrophages are crucial Marco for the capture of a wide variety of pathogens, including yeast, bacteria, and viruses.[222,223] MARCO, expressed constitutively on MZ macrophages,[224] is a class A scavenger pattern recognition receptor. In addition to the recognition of blood-borne pathogens, MARCO interplays with MZ B cells, modulating their migration to the white pulp.[225] MZ metallophilic macrophages are located at the inner border of the MZ, in contact with marginal sinus lining cells, stromal cells that express MadCAM-1.[226] MZ metallophilic macrophages differ from the MZ macrophages and red pulp macrophages in that they express the sialic acid-binding Ig-like lectin sialoadhesin (Siglec-1), which binds to oligosaccharide ligands present on many cells.[227] Little is known about the specific roles of this population of macrophages during the immune response; however, the phenotype of mice deficient in sialoadhesin implies a role of MZ metallophilic macrophages in T-cell activation.[228,229] Recent studies confirm that MZ metallophilic macrophages are essential for cross-presentation of blood-borne adenovirus antigens to splenic CD8 DCs, activating cytotoxic T-lymphocytes.[230] The MZ also contains a specialized subset of B cells that differ phenotypically and functionally from follicular B cells; they can be considered as a bridge between the innate and adaptive immune systems. They express higher levels of IgM low levels of IgD and the molecule CD1d. These B cells bind antigen in the MZ directly and/or through interactions with MZ macrophages[231] and migrate to the white pulp, where they present blood-borne antigens.[232] The organization of the remainder of the white pulp of the spleen is similar to that of the other secondary lymphoid organs with compartmentalized B- and T-cell areas. The white pulp consists of a central arteriole that is surrounded by T cells, also known as the periarteriolar lymphoid sheath, which is surrounded by B-cell follicles (see Fig. 3.4). T cells interact with DCs and B cells. B cells migrate to the follicles where they interact with FDCs. At the T:B-cell border, T cells, especially T follicular helper cells,[233] interact with B cells. Germinal centers are the site of somatic hypermutation and Ig class switching. Plasma cells are found mainly in the red pulp.

The spleen does not have an afferent lymphatic system, and initial antigen transport must occur through the blood vasculature. A conduit system has been described that allows antigens and chemokines to be transported through the white pulp in a manner similar to that described for the lymph node.[234] This conduit differs from that in the lymph node with regard to the identity of the transported molecules by the fact that it contacts the blood rather than the lymphatic system.

Traffic In and Out: Chemokines and Adhesion Molecules

Cell trafficking in the spleen is similar to that which occurs in the lymph node in some respects, and differs in others. The MZ is the main transit area for blood cells that enter the white pulp. This process seems to be controlled by marginal sinus lining cells[235] and chemokines, involving signaling through G-couple protein receptors.[236] Stromal cell–produced lymphoid chemokines CXCL13, CCL19, and CCL21 control the migration of lymphocytes and their organization in the various compartments in the white pulp. CXCL13 is essential to positioning of B cells in the follicles, whereas T cells respond to CCL19 and CCL21. After the immune response, germinal center B cells differentiate into plasma cells in the white pulp, then migrate to the red pulp or return the bloodstream to migrate to peripheral tissues. In the migration to the red pulp, plasma cells upregulate CXCR4, a receptor that binds the chemokine CXCL12, which is expressed in the red pulp.

The role of adhesion molecules with regard to lymphocyte traffic in the spleen is not fully well understood. Lymphocytes enter into the white pulp through the marginal sinus and cells lining that structure express MAdCAM-1 and ICAM-1.[226,237] MadCAM-1 expression in these cells seems to be involved in splenic structure development and therefore migration of B and T cells.[235] However, treatment with anti-MAdCAM-1 or anti-$\alpha 1\beta 7$ antibodies does not totally inhibit homing to the spleen, suggesting that this ligand-receptor pair is not the only receptor required for lymphocyte entrance into the white pulp. Early studies indicating that treatment with an antibody that blocks the αL-integrin chain of LFA-1 inhibits its homing by only 20%, and that lymphocytes deficient in LFA-1 enter the white pulp,[237] suggested that LFA-1 is not absolutely essential for entry of all cells into the white pulp. However, both $\alpha_4\beta_1$ and LFA-1 integrins are necessary for B-cell retention in the MZ,[238] indicating a role for VCAM-1 and ICAM-1 in cell trafficking in spleen. Once lymphocytes have encountered antigen, they most likely undergo changes in chemokine receptor and adhesion molecule expression similar to those noted in the lymph nodes, leave the white pulp and enter the red pulp (plasma cells) or the circulation. The mechanisms by which lymphocytes leave the white pulp are unclear. The observation of channels that bridge into the MZ[239] suggests one route of egress of lymphocytes. In the lymph nodes, the process of egress of activated lymphocytes through the efferent lymphatic vessels is mediated by upregulation the expression of $S1P_1$. In the spleen, $S1P_1$ is required for B-cell localization in the MZ, and the interplay with CXCR5 regulates the constant trafficking of these cells between the MZ and the white pulp,[232,240] as MZ B cells from $S1P_1$-deficient mice are not found in the MZ but are found in the follicles.

Although it is still unclear which molecules are involved in the egress of lymphocytes from the spleen, and splenic egress cannot be compared to egress in the lymph nodes,

recent studies attribute an important role to the transcription factor Nkx2.3 in the regulation of spleen vasculature and homing of lymphocytes.[241,242]

Development

Because the spleen has characteristics of both a hematopoietic organ and a secondary lymphoid organ, the genes that regulate its development include, in addition to LT, others that are concerned with patterning and hematopoiesis. Several genes that contribute to the development of the spleen are also crucial for normal development of other nonlymphoid organs. The first sign of splenic development in the mouse occurs at E10.5-11. Segregation of red and white pulp starts to be regulated during embryogenesis and continues after birth. Some structures, such as the MZ, develop during the 3 first weeks after birth. At E10.5-11, progenitor cells begin to condense within the dorsal mesogastrium, adjacent to the stomach and dorsal pancreas. The spleen and pancreas are so intimately associated that it is difficult to distinguish between them at these early stages. In fact, many genes that affect splenic development also contribute to pancreatic development. Several of these are homeobox genes and transcription factors that are expressed in the splenopancreatic mesenchyme at E10.5.[215] The effects of just one of these genes, *Hox11* (now called *Tlx1*[215]), are on the spleen. The others affect multiple organs. *Tlx1* was originally described as an oncogene in T-cell childhood acute leukemias involving the (10;14) translocation breakpoint.[243] *Tlx1*-deficient mice are asplenic,[244] and the product of this gene is a cell survival factor.[245] Several additional genes that are important for development of lymph nodes, NALT, and Peyer's patches also contribute to splenic development. Mice deficient in members of the LT/TNF ligand receptor family and their downstream signaling molecules in the classical and alternative pathways exhibit defects in splenic development. However, none of these molecules is necessary for the early splenic anlagen, as mice deficient in any of the chemokines or cytokines retain a spleen. Recent studies address a role for Glce, an enzyme that modifies heparan sulfate, in early lymphoid tissue morphogenesis, as fetal spleen in Glce deficient mice exhibit a reduced size.[246] The changes in lymphoid tissue organization in mice deficient in LT/TNF ligand receptor family members are due in part to a reduction or near absence of lymphoid chemokines (CXCL13, CCL19, CCL21).[247] Lymphoid chemokine messenger ribonucleic acid (mRNA) expression is reduced in the spleens of mice deficient in TNFR1, TNF, LTα, or LTβ, though CXCL12 mRNA levels are normal. However, treatment with an agonistic LTβR antibody induces expression of the lymphoid chemokines and CXCL12, suggesting that signaling through both the classical and alternative NF-κB pathways are responsible for organization and maintenance of splenic white pulp architecture. Mice deficient in LTα exhibit a disorganized white pulp with loss of T- and B-cell compartmentalization, MZ macrophages, metallophilic macrophages, MZ B cells, MAdCAM-1 sinus lining cells, and germinal centers. *Lt*β−/− mice exhibit similar characteristics except that the disorganization is somewhat less pronounced. However, these lymphoid cytokines seem to be dispensable during fetal spleen development, when segregation between white and red pulp begins, but essential for maintenance of this structure during postnatal development of the white pulp.[248] *Tnf*−/− and *Tnfr1*−/− mice show defects similar to lymphotoxin deficient mice, with the exception of MZ B cells. T cells, B cells, and CD4+CD3− cells produce the cytokines necessary for maintenance of splenic architecture.[249,250]

Plasticity after Virus Infection

Though much is known regarding changes in the lymph node after immunization, the spleen has not been studied as extensively in this regard. However, after infection with cytomegalovirus, white pulp T:B compartmentalization is disrupted.[251] The spleens of *Lt*α−/− deficient mice exhibit a marked reduction in expression of CCL21-ser. This is even further reduced in cytomegalovirus infection, indicating that, in the adult, LT-independent pathways can contribute to maintenance of expression of lymphoid chemokines.

Mucosal-Associated Lymphoid Tissues

General Features

The MALT covers all mucosal surfaces not only in the gut, but also the oropharyngeal and lacrimal mucosae, the nasal and bronchial airways, and the genitourinary tracts. MALT protects a huge surface area and contains approximately half of the lymphocytes of the entire immune system.[252] MALT is considered to be the body's gatekeeper because it is in intimate contact with the commensal flora at the mucosal surfaces.

Although the location of some mucosal lymphoid tissues like the palatine tonsils and appendix are fixed, all MALT are somewhat plastic because of their constant exposure to environmental antigens that induces them to change and remodel. Tonsils, adenoids, and their equivalent in rodents, the NALT, have a fixed location, whereas the location, number, and size of Peyer's patches in the small intestine vary according to antigen exposure. The BALT in the lung and ILFs in the colon are the most plastic MALTs, and their number and location are subject to change by environmental influences.

The mucosal epithelium that surrounds MALT is populated by a dense network of DCs, plasma cells, and intraepithelial lymphocytes that helps to maintain the epithelial barrier. These intraepithelial leukocytes provide retinoic acid and cytokines like IL-10 and TGF-β that condition the gut to become tolerant of antigens produced by the harmless commensal bacteria.[253,254] They are also responsible for inducing and maintaining tolerance to food antigens and commensal bacteria.[255]

The large MALT structures like the tonsils, NALT, and Peyer's patches share many features with lymph nodes. Like lymph nodes, MALT contains HEVs for the entry of naïve lymphocytes, and stromal cells that secrete chemokines that direct lymphocyte traffic in the MALT (CCL19, CCL21 and its receptor CCR7[256]; CCL25 and CCL28 and their receptors CCR9 and CCR10[257]; and CXCL13 and its receptor CXCR5[258,259]). MALT also contains separate T- and B-cell compartments with B-cell follicles, FDCs, germinal centers, and interfollicular T cells and DCs.[260]

MALT differs importantly from other secondary lymphoid organs with regard to its capsules and afferent lymphatic vessels. Unlike the spleen and lymph nodes, which are surrounded by a dense fibrous capsule, MALT often has no capsule, with the exception of the tonsil that has a partial capsule that separates it from the pharyngeal constrictor muscles. Because MALT can sample antigens directly at the epithelial surface, it has no afferent lymphatics. MALT epithelium, especially that of the Peyer's patch, is replaced by specialized lymphoepithelial cells called microfold (M) cells, which because of their high transcytotic capacity, transport antigens to the underlying lymphoid tissue. Tonsils and adenoids are covered by a squamous epithelium and have few M cells. They can sample surface antigens using epithelial DCs that push dendrites through the epithelial surface.[261,262] M cells have not been characterized in human BALT.[263]

The proximity of MALT to the epithelium is an important point, because it helps differentiate MALT from tertiary lymphoid organs (see following discussion). MALT can be defined as organized lymphoid structures in the mucosa that are in direct contact with the epithelium. Using these criteria, a lymphoid aggregate in the submucosa that is not directly in contact with the epithelium (ie, below the lamina propria) is more correctly defined as a tertiary lymphoid organ.[264]

The Mucosal-Associated Lymphoid Tissue Immune Response: Inductive and Effector Sites

MALT can simultaneously be a site for the induction of an immune response and an effector organ. The MALT surface containing M cells and DCs efficiently samples and transports antigens across the epithelium. Immediately below this single-cell epithelium is a dense network of DCs that can extend dendrites through the epithelium to grasp antigen to present to lymphocytes. Two distinct types of DC have been identified in MALT: CD103+ DC and CX3CR1+ DC.[265] Both types of DC produce tolerogenic responses to commensal bacteria by enhancing the differentiation of Foxp3+ T_{reg}s and inhibiting that of inflammatory Th17 cells. CD103+ DCs express αE integrin, make retinoic acid, induce T_{reg}s, and increase T-cell expression of the two gut homing receptors CCR9 and $\alpha_4\beta_7$. CD103+ DCs exit MALT via the lymphatics and present antigen in the draining lymph nodes. CX3CR1+ DCs that express the chemokine receptor for fractalkine do not migrate to the lymph node. CX3CR1+ DCs are longer-lived mucosal resident DCs that produce less retinoic acid than CD103+ DCs.[265]

MALT has three effector roles: local antibody secretion, systemic antibody secretion, and effector lymphocyte dispersal. MALT plays an important role in defense against pathogens by generating cells that migrate to other sites. MALT can dispatch lymphocytes to lymph nodes, the spleen, and plasma cells to the bone marrow. MALT also sends lymphocytes to other MALT effector sites including the salivary and lacrimal glands, the lactating breast,[266] and the vagina. There are some differences between the effector cells made at different MALT sites. NALT-derived B cells express CCR7 and do not home back to the gut. Instead, cells induced in the NALT home to the salivary glands and the vaginal mucosa lymph nodes,[267] whereas lymphocytes leaving the Peyer's patch express $\alpha_4\beta_7$ and migrate to the gut mucosa. These "preferred pathways" for effector cells coming out of the different MALT has led to the suggestions that MALT is compartmentalized and cells circling in the BALT are in a separate compartment from the GALT. It is more likely that the nature of antigen influences the homing of effector cells. There needs to be flexibility, and there is much overlap and redundancy in the system. For example, after the removal of the tonsils and adenoids in humans, or the NALT in the mouse, the cervical lymph node can act as an inductive site.[268] Likewise, the mouse BALT can mount an immune response in the absence of secondary lymphoid organs.[269,270]

Tonsils and Adenoids

Waldeyer's ring is a group of lymphoid tissues encircling the wall of the throat that are the first defense against pathogens entering through the mouth or nose.[271] Humans have several tonsils with indistinct borders: one pharyngeal tonsil (adenoid), two tubal, two palatine, and one lingual. In addition to T cells, the tonsils contain a large complement of B cells, many of which are positive for IgA.[271] The tonsil epithelium makes the polymeric IgA receptor, or secretory component,[272] crucial for transport of IgA dimers across the epithelium. Secreted IgA provides an early form of defense against pathogens and toxins. Overall, the adenoids produce more secreted IgA than the tonsils.

The common cold virus uses ICAM-1 as receptor to invade the nasal mucosa. ICAM-1 is also an expressed HEV in tonsils.[271] As noted previously, HEVs are specialized vessels that express adhesion molecules that allow naïve lymphocytes enter the tonsil. Naïve L-selectin^{hi} lymphocytes adhere to PNAd on HEVs.[258,259] L-selectin^{hi} cells also bind to MAdCAM-1 predominantly found in the gut HEVs. Considering the "mucosal name" MAdCAM-1, it may be surprising to discover that tonsil HEVs express MAdCAM-1 only weakly or not at all.[273] In mice, the HEVs also manufacture the chemokine CCL21 that can recruit naïve T cells and mature DCs that express CCR7. Human tonsil HEVs do not manufacture CCL21 but are able to display chemokines that have been made and secreted by fibroblasts.[274] During tonsillitis, inflammatory chemokines, cytokines, and adhesion molecules such as CCL19,[256] VCAM-1, and E- and P-selectin are upregulated.[165]

Nasal-Associated Lymphoid Tissue

The NALTs are a pair of lymphoid organs above the soft palate in mice and rats that are considered analogous to Waldeyer's ring.[275] Despite being anatomically separate from the genitourinary tract, NALT has an important "effector" role concerning the generation of immune responses in the genitourinary tract.[276] After nasal immunization with human papillomavirus 16 or ovalbumin, human papillomavirus 16–specific or ovalbumin-specific IgA is detected in vaginal washes,[163,277,278] and cytotoxic T cells are found in vaginal draining lymph nodes.[267] However, the NALT itself is clearly an inductive site for both humoral and cellular immune responses,[279] and supports class switching to IgA.[280]

The stromal cells in murine NALT produce both CCL19 and CXCL13, whereas, in contrast to lymph nodes, only HEVs transcribe CCL21 mRNA.[163] NALT HEVs express high levels of luminal and abluminal PNAd and HEC-6ST.[163] Similar to the tonsils, the major homing receptor-ligand pair in NALT is L-selectin and PNAd, rather than MAdCAM-1 as might have been expected of this mucosal-associated tissue.[281]

Development

Human NALT and tonsils appear early in fetal development, are cellular, and have primary follicles. After birth, secondary follicles and germinal centers appear in response to bacterial antigens.[266] By contrast, the NALT in the mouse and the rat is hypocellular at birth and undergoes dramatic changes after weaning, strongly suggesting that bacterial colonization is important for NALT development in these species. Id2 is required for initiation of the rodent NALT,[282] although RORγT, LTα, or LTβ are not required for this step.[162] The expansion of rodent NALT at weaning includes changes in the expression of LTα and LTβ and lymphoid chemokines, leading to T- and B-cell compartmentalization and HEV maturation.[162,163] The alternative NF-κB pathway is required for the expression of chemokines and the HEV genes *glycam-1* and *chst4* in NALT.[183] LTα, LTβ, IL7R, and the NIK signaling pathways are required for NALT organization and function, and mice that are deficient in these cytokines have a hypocellular NALT.[163,183,283,284]

Bronchus-Associated Lymphoid Tissue

BALT is less organized but more responsive to environmental antigens than the NALT. The number of lymphoid aggregates varies depending on the level of microbial exposure and germ-free pigs have no BALT.[252,285] BALT is found commonly in rabbits and rats, is less frequent in guinea pigs and pigs, and is absent in cats.[264] BALT is not a prominent structure in the laboratory mouse, and its presence varies by strain and age.[286]

An inducible form of the BALT (iBALT) has been described in *Lt*α*−/−* mice after infection with influenza.[287] The term iBALT is misleading because these aggregates have no contact with the bronchial lumen and cannot sample inspired antigens. Therefore, iBALT should be considered as a tertiary lymphoid organ.[288] Splenectomized, lethally irradiated LTα−/− mice reconstituted with normal bone marrow have no lymphoid organs. However, these mice can generate immunological memory in the iBALT.[269,270]

BALT is rare in normal adult human lungs, but tertiary lymphoid organs are common in chronic pulmonary diseases.[283] BALT is frequent in children and is found in fetuses after infections in utero.[289,290] Like NALT, the HEVs in human BALT express PNAd and not MAdCAM-1.[291]

Gut-Associated Lymphoid Tissue

Gut-associated lymphoid tissue is the largest immune system in the body. The gut-associated lymphoid tissue in the small intestine includes the Peyer's patches, smaller isolated lymphoid follicles, and cryptopatches. In the large intestine, there is the appendix, caecal patches, and lymphoglandular complexes.[292]

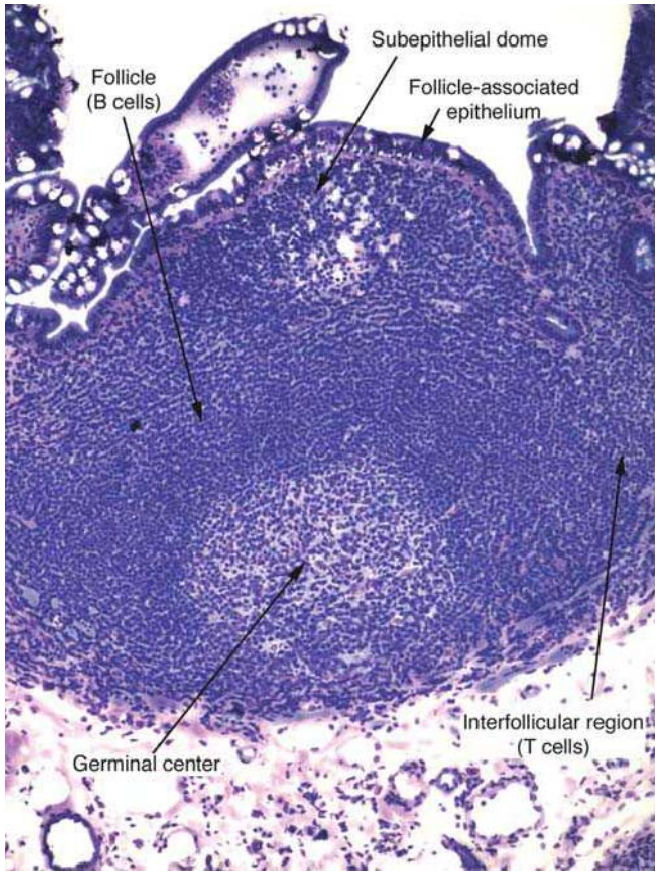
Peyer's Patches

Peyer's patches are lymphoid aggregates aligned on the antimesenteric border of the small intestine (Fig. 3.5A). They are present in most species, though their number and location vary. They are dome shaped and are covered by a specialized epithelium that lacks surface microvilli and goblet cells; they have numerous M cells. Because Peyer's patches lack afferent lymphatic vessels, these M cells are critical transporters of antigen. Pathogens, including human immunodeficiency virus and salmonella take advantage of the M cells to facilitate their own invasion.[293,294] Below the epithelium is a diffuse area, the subepithelial dome, divided into three to six parts. Peyer's patch organization is similar to that of the lymph node (see Fig. 3.5). Peyer's patches contain 6 to 12 basally located germinal centers, but the B-cell areas are larger with a T:B cell ratio of 0.2; CD4+ cells predominate over CD8+ cells.[295] Although M cells transport antigen across the epithelial barrier, they are not believed to have a crucial role in processing or presenting antigen. Peyer's patches are populated by several subsets of DCs that can carry out these functions.[296,297]

Trafficking In and Out

Cells enter Peyer's patches through HEVs. In contrast to peripheral lymph nodes and the NALT, the HEVs of Peyer's patches express MAdCAM-1,[298] and homing depends on the interaction of MAdCAM-1 with the integrin $\alpha_4\beta_7$ on lymphocytes. Luminal PNAd is rarely found in Peyer's patch HEVs; only occasional abluminal expression is detected. This pattern is identical to that seen in lymph node HEVs in *chst4−/−* mice.[128] However, lymphocytes from mice that lack both L-selectin ligand and $\alpha_4\beta_7$ home less efficiently to Peyer's patches than do lymphocytes from mice that lack only one or the other of the ligands,[299,300] suggesting that an L-selectin ligand does contribute to homing to Peyer's patches. Even though P-selectin is expressed only weakly on HEVs in Peyer's patches, cells from mice deficient in P-selectin show reduced rolling and adhesion in vivo. This suggests that P-selectin, as well as MAdCAM-1, is important for homing to Peyer's patches.[299]

Lymphoid chemokines CCL19, CCL21, and CXCL13 are found in the T- and B-cell areas[301] (see Fig. 3.5B). Stromal cells make CXCL12 mRNA, but the protein is also found on HEVs, presumably transported in a manner similar to CCL19.[117] The CXCL16/CXCR6 chemokine/receptor pair is important in Peyer's patches but not in lymph nodes. Even under germ-free conditions, CXCL16 is constitutively produced by the dome epithelium.[295] CD4+ and CD8+ cells that express CXCR6 are found in Peyer's patches and require CXCL16 to home to the subepithelial dome. CCL20 and its receptor CCR6 are also important in Peyer's patches. CCL20 is made by the intestinal epithelium and plays a crucial role in dendritic cell trafficking to Peyer's patches.[302] Peyer's patch HEVs express CCL25, the ligand for CCR9, which has been defined as a mucosal homing chemokine receptor for intraepithelial lymphocytes and plasma cells.[78]



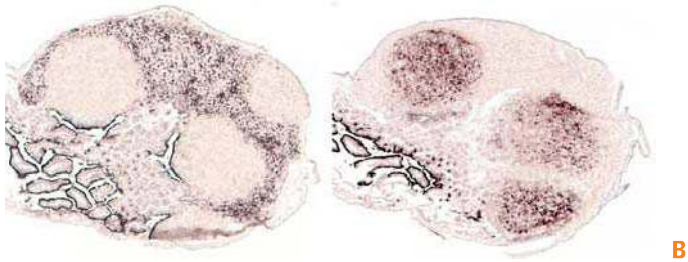


FIG. 3.5. Organization of Peyer's Patches. **A:** Photomicrograph of Peyer's patch. Peyer's patches are located in the intestine near intestinal villi. The follicle associated epithelium (FAE) is in contact with the gut lumen. M cells (not shown) in the FAE transport antigen into the subepithelial dome, populated by dendritic cells and T cells. The interfollicular T-cell–rich region surrounds the B-cell follicle and germinal center. Courtesy of A. Iwasaki (Yale University School of Medicine, New Haven, CT). **B:** In situ hybridization of chemokine messenger ribonucleic acids (mRNAs). On the *left*, CCL21 mRNA defines the T-cell zone and high endothelial venules; on the *right*, CXCL13 defines the B-cell zone.

Development

Several cytokines and chemokines have been shown to be crucial for Peyer's patch development. *Lt*α−/− and *Lt*β−/− mice completely lack Peyer's patches,[161,303] as do *Cxcr5*−/− mice.[174,175,301] Because mice deficient in the LTβR also lack Peyer's patches,[304] these effects are mediated in large part through $LT\alpha_1\beta_2$. However, some *Tnfr1*−/− mice lack organized Peyer's patches, suggesting that either LTα3 or TNFα also influences generation or later stages in maintenance of Peyer's patches.[305] Mice deficient in IL-7, RORγt, Id2, NIK, and factors in the classical and alternative NFκB pathways[170,177,304] lack Peyer's patches, although RANKL is not required.[172]

A model for the embryonic development of Peyer's patches[306–308] provided the framework for studies in that organ. The first sign of Peyer's patch development at E15.5 in the mouse is the appearance of regions on the small intestine that stain positively with antibodies to ICAM-1, VCAM-1, and LTβR. The cells in these aggregates are called the lymphoid tissue organizer cells and express CXCL13, CCL19, CCL21, and IL-7. At E17.5, clusters of IL-7R+CD4+CD3+ inducer cells are found. These express LTα and LTβ, CXCR5 and CCR7, Id2, and RORγ. They also express $\alpha_4\beta1$ integrin activated by CXCR5[309] that allows interaction with the VCAM-1+ organizer cells. At E 18.5, mature T and B cells enter through HEVs, CCL20 is produced by the FAE, and DCs expressing CCR7 and CCR6 are found. By day 4, the typical microarchitecture is apparent, with M cells and T- and B-cell compartmentalization.[310]

Lymphocytes influence the maintenance of Peyer's patches. Mice that lack mature T and B cells have either undetectable or small Peyer's patches that lack follicles and germinal centers.[311,312] B cell–deficient mice retain some M cells, suggesting that T cells may regulate M-cell maintenance. When B cell–deficient mice are reconstituted by a membrane IgM transgene, M cells are found at levels comparable to those of normal mice,[311] indicating that cells in addition to CD4+CD3+ lymphoid tissue–inducer cells are crucial for the maintenance of mature, functioning Peyer's patches.

Cryptopatches and Isolated Lymphoid Follicles

The small intestine of a mouse contains 100 to 200 isolated lymphoid follicles and more numerous cryptopatches. The cryptopatches in the lamina propria containing lymphoid tissue–inducer cells and DCs can be precursors of ILFs. The cryptopatches are composed of lin−c-kit+ cells, DCs, and VCAM-1+ stromal cells with few or no mature T and B cells. The cryptopatch cells express RORγt, IL-7R, and CCR6,[313] and their development is dependent on IL-7, CCR6, and its receptor CCL20. Cryptopatches are quite plastic, and although the LT family is necessary for their development, they can be restored by administration of wild-type bone marrow to adult *Lt*α−/− mice.

After mice are exposed to microbes or during some forms of autoimmunity, cryptopatches give rise to ILFs,[314,315] which resemble small Peyer's patches and usually only have a single

dome. ILFs require B cells that express LT, but not T cells, for their formation.[316]. In contrast to lymph nodes, they also require the TNFR1.[317] The location of ILFs is antigen driven, and they resolve completely after mice are treated with antibiotics or cytokine inhibitors.[121,185,314,316,317]

Appendix

Both rabbits and humans have an appendix,[318] a vestigial organ distal to the ileocecal junction that divides the small intestine from the colon. The appendix has epithelial M cells and dense lymphoid accumulations and germinal centers that are similar to Peyer's patches. Similar to the tonsils and adenoids, the appendix involutes and regresses after puberty.

Colon Lymphoglandular Complexes

The colon has the highest bacterial load of any of the MALTs, and the distribution of the MALT is more random than in the small intestine. Lymphoglandular complexes are smaller than Peyer's patches. As their name suggests, the lymphoid cells of the lymphoglandular complexes surround the mucus glands.[292]

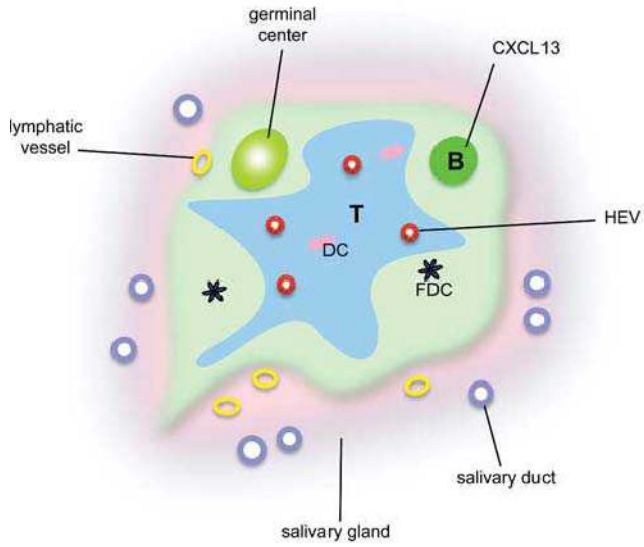


FIG. 3.6. Tertiary Lymphoid Tissue. Schematic diagram of Sjögren syndrome salivary gland. Note similarities with the organization of a lymph node.

TERTIARY LYMPHOID TISSUES

Similarities to Secondary Lymphoid Organs

Tertiary lymphoid tissues, also termed tertiary lymphoid organs, are ectopic accumulations of lymphoid cells that arise in nonlymphoid organs during chronic inflammation through a process termed "lymphoid neogenesis" (also "lymphoid neo-organogenesis").[2] The iBALT could be considered as either a secondary or tertiary lymphoid tissue. This semantic issue epitomizes the plasticity of all lymphoid organs and the fact that lymphoid organ regulation represents a continuum from ontogeny through chronic inflammation. A notable difference between secondary lymphoid organs and tertiary lymphoid tissues is the fact that the latter can arise in almost any organ in the adult. Nonetheless, tertiary lymphoid tissues exhibit remarkable morphologic, cellular, chemokine, and vasculature similarities to secondary lymphoid organs. They exhibit T- and B-cell compartmentalization; naïve T and B cells; DCs; FDCs; germinal centers; plasma cells; lymphoid chemokines CCL19, CCL21, and CXCL13[1]; HEVs[135,196,319]; and conduits.[320] Lymphatic vessels have also been noted in tertiary lymphoid tissues in chronic graft rejection[321,322] and mouse models of Sjögren syndrome[134] (Fig. 3.6) and Type 1 diabetes.[323] Although it is not completely clear whether they function as afferent and/or efferent vessels, the fact that the tertiary lymphoid tissues respond to S1P inhibitors suggest that their lymphatic vessels function similarly to those in lymph nodes.[323]

Lymphoid neogenesis has been noted in humans in autoimmunity, microbial infection, and chronic allograft rejection. A few examples are shown in Table 3.2 and are described in more detail in Drayton et al.[1] These accumulations also occur in atherosclerotic plaques with FDCs, organized B-cell follicles, HEVs (HECA-452), and CCL19 and CCL21 in addition to those chemokines more often associated with acute inflammation.[324] Tertiary lymphoid tissues have also been noted in non–small-cell lung cancer[325] and many other solid tumors.[326] The tendency for tertiary lymphoid tissues to develop into lymphomas has also been noted in many studies.[327]

Ectopic lymphoid tissues are also apparent in several animal models. The pancreatic infiltrates in early stages of diabetes in the nonobese diabetic mouse express lymphoid chemokines[328] and HEVs expressing MAdCAM-1,[329,330] PNAd, and HEC-6ST.[135] The brain in experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis, a model of multiple sclerosis, has HEVs, CCL19, CCL21, CXCL13, and FDCs.[331–333] The thyroid in the BioBreeding (BB) rat has T- and B-cell compartmentalization and DCs,[334] and the gut in autoimmune gastritis in the mouse has HEVs and CXCL13.[335] Atherosclerotic plaques of apoprotein-E–deficient mice exhibit a marked increase in T and B cells, expression of CCL19 and CCL21, and PNAd+ HEVs.[336–338] Lymphoid neogenesis also occurs in chronic mouse heart allograft rejection.[339,340] Tertiary lymphoid tissues have been induced in several transgenic mouse models with the use of tissue-specific promoters driving the expression of inflammatory cytokines or lymphoid chemokines.[1] These mouse models, in addition to serving as examples of human disease, have provided valuable insight into the regulation of secondary lymphoid organ development.

From Chronic Inflammation to Organized Lymphoid Microenvironments

Data generated from analyzing the cellular and molecular requirements for secondary lymphoid organ development have provided a paradigm for understanding the development of tertiary lymphoid tissues in chronic inflammation. This paradigm proposes that the processes and molecules governing secondary lymphoid organs are also the basis of tertiary lymphoid tissue development,[2] and informs understanding of both secondary and tertiary lymphoid tissues. The physiologic event(s) that precipitate lymphoid neogenesis remain unclear. Data obtained from experiments in knockout and transgenic

TABLE 3.2 Lymphoid Neogenesis in Human Autoimmunity, Infectious Diseases, and Graft Rejection

Disease	Affected Tissue	Characteristics
Autoimmunity		
Rheumatoid arthritis	Synovial membrane	T cells and B cells, plasma cells, GCs, FDCs, CXCL13, CCL21, HEVs (PNAd, HEC-6ST)
Sjögren syndrome	Salivary glands	T cells and B cells, plasma cells, GCs, FDCs, CCL21, CXCL12, CXCL13 HEVs (PNAd)
Myasthenia gravis	Thymus	T cells and B cells, GCs, FDCs
Hashimoto thyroiditis	Thyroid	T cells and B cells, GCs, FDCs CCL21, CXCL13, CXCL12, plasma cells, HEVs (PNAd)
Grave disease	Thymus	T cells and B cells, GCs, FDCs, CCL21 CXCL13, CXCL12, HEVs (PNAd)
Multiple sclerosis	Brain	Lymphatic capillaries, B-cell follicles and centroblasts, GCs, CCL19, CCL21, CXCL12, CXCL13
Ulcerative colitis	Colon	CXCL13
Inflammatory bowel disease (Crohn disease)	Bowel	T cell-B compartments, LVs, HECA-452+ HEV
Psoriatic arthritis	Joint	T cells and B cells, CXCL13, CCL19, CCL21, HEVs (PNAd)
Infectious Diseases		
Borrelia burgdorferi/Lyme disease	Joints	T and B cells, FDCs, HEVs
Borrelia burgdorferi/ neuroborreliosis	Central nervous system/ cerebrospinal fluid	CXCL13
Hepatitis C virus	Liver	T-cell and B-cell compartments, MAdCAM-1
Bartonella henselae/cat scratch disease	Granuloma	CXCL13
Graft Rejection		
Organ		
Heart		GCs
Kidney		GCs, LVs

FDC, follicular dendritic cell; GC, germinal center; HEV, high endothelial venule; LV, lymphatic vessel; MAdCAM-1, mucosal addressin cell adhesion molecule; PNAd, peripheral node addressin. Original references are in Drayton et al.[1]

mice and clinical observations indicate that cooperative activities of TNF/LT family members and the lymphoid chemokines play central roles in this process.

Inflammation is a localized response to tissue injury, irritation, or infection often marked by tissue damage. Acute inflammation is an early innate immune response that is generally short-lived and self-limiting. However, in some situations, acute inflammation transitions to a chronic inflammatory response that is long-lived and self-perpetuating. Tertiary lymphoid tissues arise under conditions of constitutive cytokine and/or chemokine expression, but the precise signal(s) that initiates their development is unknown. By integrating studies of lymphoid neogenesis in human pathologies and in animal models, it is becoming clear that at least three critical events promote tertiary lymphoid tissue formation: inflammatory (eg, TNF/LT) cytokine expression, lymphoid chemokine production by stromal cells, and HEV development. It is not known if lymphoid tissue–inducer cells are necessary for lymphoid neogenesis, though such cells have been noted in the mouse models of lymphoid neogenesis,[341] and lymphoid tissue–inducer-like cells have been described in several instances.

Functions of Tertiary Lymphoid Tissues

Ectopic accumulation of lymphoid cells has been considered the hallmark of destructive inflammation. Indeed, some tertiary lymphoid tissues are accompanied by tissue damage. However, it is likely that tertiary lymphoid tissues in chronic inflammation have roles in addition to tissue destruction. In the case of microbial infection, it is likely that lymphoid neogenesis occurs as a way to sequester pathogens and to prevent their access to the other parts of the body. This may represent a primitive form of immunity. Local antigen presentation within the tertiary lymphoid tissue itself likely prevents bacteremia or viremia. Enhanced long-term survival has been noted for those individuals whose lung or breast tumors included tertiary lymphoid tissues.[325,326] The propensity for tertiary lymphoid tissues to develop into lymphomas, as noted previously, the ability of lymphatic vessels to serve as conduits for tumor metastasis, and the ability of tertiary lymphoid tissues to serve as sites of prion accumulation are obvious manifestations of detrimental functions.[342] Furthermore, the development of tertiary lymphoid tissues in autoimmunity may perpetuate clinical disease through epitope spreading.

Data from human and mouse studies provide compelling evidence that tertiary lymphoid tissues are permissive microenvironments for the induction of antigen-specific immune responses. Extensive immunohistochemical analyses of tertiary lymphoid tissues in autoimmunity and other chronic inflammatory states have established the presence

of germinal centers and FDC networks in these tissues; several groups have demonstrated that tertiary lymphoid tissue germinal centers can support B-cell differentiation. Microdissection of discrete lymphocytic foci and subsequent deoxyribonucleic acid sequence analysis of germinal center B cells from the inflamed synovial tissue of patients with rheumatoid arthritis revealed a restricted number of Vκ gene rearrangements, a result consistent with oligoclonal B-cell expansion in the synovial tissue.[343] Somatic hypermutation is apparent in synovial germinal center B cells.[344] Furthermore, synovial B cells exhibit a limited number of heavy and light chain gene rearrangements consistent with local clonal expansion of these cells. The molecular analysis of tertiary lymphoid tissue germinal centers from the salivary glands of patients with primary Sjögren syndrome or the thymus of patients with myasthenia gravis demonstrates oligoclonal B-cell proliferation in these tissues in addition to somatic hypermutation of Ig variable genes.[345–347] Together, these studies indicate that tertiary lymphoid tissue germinal centers in several autoimmune pathologies can support antigen-driven clonal expansion and extensive diversification.

Another important hallmark of antigen-driven B-cell responses is the terminal differentiation of activated B cells into Ig-secreting plasma cells. Plasma cells have been detected in tertiary lymphoid tissues associated with germinal centers in rheumatoid arthritis[348] and in Sjögren syndrome. Mice expressing LTα under the control of the rat insulin promoter (RIPLTα) exhibit tertiary lymphoid tissue at the sites of transgene expression (pancreas, kidney, and skin). After immunization with sheep red blood cells, evidence of isotype switching is apparent in these cellular infiltrates.[2] Although the presence of plasma cells in tertiary lymphoid tissues is consistent with local antigen presentation, it is occasionally unclear whether these cells develop in the tertiary lymphoid tissues themselves or migrate from canonical secondary lymphoid tissues. Nonetheless, taken together, these studies indicate that tertiary lymphoid tissues in several human pathologies and animal models support antigen-driven B-cell differentiation marked by somatic hypermutation of Ig variable genes, affinity maturation, isotype switching, and terminal differentiation into antibody-secreting plasma cells.

T-cell priming occurs in tertiary lymphoid tissues as suggested by the presence of isotype switched plasma cells in the RIPLTα tertiary lymphoid tissues,[2] accelerated graft rejection,[349] and T-cell epitope spreading in the central nervous system during experimental allergic encephalomyelitis.[350] The restricted TCR repertoire in a melanoma-associated tertiary lymphoid tissue[351] further supports the concept that tertiary lymphoid tissues can act as priming sites. The demonstration of naïve T-cell proliferation in the islets of nonobese diabetic mice after surgical removal of pancreatic lymph nodes[352] suggests, together with evidence noted previously, that tertiary lymphoid tissues present antigen to naïve cells at the local site and generate an immune response. Determinant or epitope spreading, a phenomenon that arises in several autoimmune diseases, occurs when epitopes other than the inducing antigen become major targets of an ongoing immune response. It is considered to occur subsequent to the tissue damage induced by the initiating autoreactive T cells and therefore is the result of the presentation of new antigens.[353] Data generated in murine models of central nervous system inflammation support the possibility that intermolecular and intramolecular epitope spreading occur in tertiary lymphoid tissues in the central nervous system.[350] More recently, it has become apparent that T_{reg}s can populate tertiary lymphoid tissues,[338] again suggesting that manipulating the immune response at the local site is an avenue of control.

Plasticity and Adaptability of Tertiary Lymphoid Tissues

Tertiary lymphoid tissues are the most plastic and adaptable of the lymphoid tissues. First, lymphoid neogenesis can be induced by a variety of stimuli. Their nimbleness in this regard suggests that they might represent the most primitive tissues in the immune system. Tertiary lymphoid tissues can be "turned off" (ie, resolve) upon removal of the initial stimulus or after therapeutic intervention. The destruction of the islets of Langerhans β cells in type I diabetes mellitus is an example of a situation in which removal of the antigen stimulus is accompanied by tertiary lymphoid tissue resolution. Antibiotic treatment results in the resolution of tertiary lymphoid tissues and even MALT lymphomas.[354] Treatment has been shown to resolve some established tertiary lymphoid tissues, reversing insulitis and protecting against diabetes in nonobese diabetic mice.[355] Such treatment can also "turn off" established tertiary lymphoid tissues in a mouse model of collagen-induced arthritis.[356] These studies are similar to those described previously regarding the plasticity of lymph nodes after mice are immunized or treated with LTβR-Ig,[198,199] again emphasizing the commonality of these tissues.

CONCLUSION

The immune system depends on a remarkable organization of tissues and cells. The organs have defined functions that include generation of an immune repertoire (primary lymphoid organs) and responding to antigen (secondary lymphoid organs and tertiary lymphoid tissues). Development of primary and secondary lymphoid organs depends on precisely regulated expression of cytokines, chemokines, and adhesion molecules. Similar signals regulate the transition from inflammation to tertiary lymphoid tissues. Chemokines and adhesion molecules regulate trafficking in and out of lymphoid organs. Secondary lymphoid organs are remarkably plastic in their response to antigenic assault and adapt with changes in expression of chemokines and adhesion molecules to maximize encounter of antigen with antigen-specific cells. Tertiary lymphoid tissues, characteristic of many pathologic states, may actually represent the most primitive form of lymphoid tissues in their even greater plasticity and ability to develop directly at the site of antigen exposure.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

The authors thank Myriam Hill for assistance in figure preparation. This work was supported National Institutes of Health grants CA16885, DK57731, and HL098711 (NHR), a fellowship from Leukemia and Lymphoma (LAT) and a Richard A. Gershon Fellowship (NAG).

REFERENCES

1. Drayton DL, Liao S, Mounzer RH, et al. Lymphoid organ development: from ontogeny to neogenesis. *Nat Immunol*. 2006;7:344–353. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16550197
2. Kratz A, Campos-Neto A, Hanson MS, et al. Chronic inflammation caused by lymphotoxin is lymphoid neogenesis. *J Exp Med*. 1996;183: 1461–1472. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8666904
3. Medvinsky AL, Samoylina NL, Muller AM, et al. An early pre-liver intraembryonic source of CFU-S in the developing mouse. *Nature*. 1993;364:64–67. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8316298
4. Gekas C, Dieterlen-Lievre F, Orkin SH, et al. The placenta is a niche for hematopoietic stem cells. *Dev Cell*. 2005;8:365–375. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15737932
5. Ottersbach K, Dzierzak E. The murine placenta contains hematopoietic stem cells within the vascular labyrinth region. *Dev Cell*. 2005;8: 377–387. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15737933
6. Medvinsky A, Rybtsov S, Taoudi S. Embryonic origin of the adult hematopoietic system: advances and questions. *Development*. 2011;138: 1017–1031. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21343360
7. Christensen JL, Wright DE, Wagers AJ, et al. Circulation and chemotaxis of fetal hematopoietic stem cells. *PLoS Biol*. 2004;2:E75. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15024423
8. Hardy RR, Hayakawa K. B cell development pathways. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 2001;19:595–621. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11244048
9. Li YS, Hayakawa K, Hardy RR. The regulated expression of B lineage associated genes during B cell differentiation in bone marrow and fetal liver. *J Exp Med*. 1993;178:951–960. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8350062
10. Frenette PS, Subbarao S, Mazo IB, et al. Endothelial selectins and vascular cell adhesion molecule-1 promote hematopoietic progenitor homing to bone marrow. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1998;95:14423–14428. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9826716
11. Vermeulen M, Le Pesteur F, Gagnerault MC, et al. Role of adhesion molecules in the homing and mobilization of murine hematopoietic stem and progenitor cells. *Blood*. 1998;92:894–900. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9680357
12. Orkin SH, Zon LI. Hematopoiesis and stem cells: plasticity versus developmental heterogeneity. *Nat Immunol*. 2002;3:323–328. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11919568
13. Pittenger MF, Mackay AM, Beck SC, et al. Multilineage potential of adult human mesenchymal stem cells. *Science*. 1999;284:143–147. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10102814
14. Cyster JG. Homing of antibody secreting cells. *Immunol Rev*. 2003;194: 48–60. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12846807
15. Nagasawa T. Microenvironmental niches in the bone marrow required for B-cell development. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2006;6:107–116. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16491135
16. Jacobsen K, Osmond DG. Microenvironmental organization and s tromal cell associations of B lymphocyte precursor cells in mouse bone marrow. *Eur J Immunol*. 1990;20:2395–2404.
17. Heissig B, Hattori K, Dias S, et al. Recruitment of stem and progenitor cells from the bone marrow niche requires MMP-9 mediated release of kit-ligand. *Cell*. 2002;109:625–637. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12062105
18. Nagasawa T, Omatsu Y, Sugiyama T. Control of hematopoietic stem cells by the bone marrow stromal niche: the role of reticular cells. *Trends Immunol*. 2011;32:315–320. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21531624
19. Tokoyoda K, Egawa T, Sugiyama T, et al. Cellular niches controlling B lymphocyte behavior within bone marrow during development. *Immunity*. 2004;20:707–718. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15189736
20. Banu N, Deng B, Lyman SD, et al. Modulation of haematopoietic progenitor development by FLT-3 ligand. *Cytokine*. 1999;11:679–688. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10479404
21. Mazo IB, Massberg S, von Andrian UH. Hematopoietic stem and progenitor cell trafficking. *Trends Immunol*. 2011;32:493–503. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21802990
22. Heissig B, Ohki Y, Sato Y, et al. A role for niches in hematopoietic cell development. *Hematol*. 2005;10:247–253. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16019473
23. Lataillade JJ, Domenech J, Le Bousse-Kerdiles MC. Stromal cell-derived factor-1 (SDF-1)\CXCR4 couple plays multiple roles on haematopoietic progenitors at the border between the old cytokine and new chemokine worlds: survival, cell cycling and trafficking. *Eur Cytokine Netw*. 2004;15:177–188.
24. Papayannopoulou T, Craddock C, Nakamoto B, et al. The VLA4/VCAM-1 adhesion pathway defines contrasting mechanisms of lodgement of transplanted murine hemopoietic progenitors between bone marrow and spleen. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1995;92:9647–9651. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7568190
25. Katayama Y, Hidalgo A, Furie BC, et al. PSGL-1 participates in E-selectin-mediated progenitor homing to bone marrow: evidence for cooperation between E-selectin ligands and alpha4 integrin. *Blood*. 2003;102:2060–2067. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12763924
26. Katayama Y, Hidalgo A, Peired A, et al. Integrin alpha4beta7 and its counterreceptor MAdCAM-1 contribute to hematopoietic progenitor recruitment into bone marrow following transplantation. *Blood*. 2004;104:2020–2026. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15161666
27. Lindsley RC, Thomas M, Srivastava B, et al. Generation of peripheral B cells occurs via two spatially and temporally distinct pathways. *Blood*. 2006;109:2521–2528.
28. Honczarenko M, Glodek AM, Swierkowski M, et al. Developmental stage-specific shift in responsiveness to chemokines during human B-cell development. *Exp Hematol*. 2006;34:1093–1100. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16863916
29. Bowman EP, Campbell JJ, Soler D, et al. Developmental switches in chemokine response profiles during B cell differentiation and maturation.*J Exp Med*. 2000;191:1303–1318. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10770798
30. Pantelouris EM. Absence of thymus in a mouse mutant. *Nature*. 1968;217:370–371. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/5639157
31. Terszowski G, Muller SM, Bleul CC, et al. Evidence for a functional second thymus in mice. *Science*. 2006;312:284–287. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16513945
32. Bubanovic IV. Crossroads of extrathymic lymphocytes maturation pathways. *Med Hypotheses*. 2003;61:235–239. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12888311
33. Cunliffe VT, Furley AJ, Keenan D. Complete rescue of the nude mutant phenotype by a wild-type Foxn1 transgene. *Mamm Genome*. 2002;13: 245–252. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12016512
34. Scollay RG, Butcher EC, Weissman IL. Thymus cell migration. Quantitative aspects of cellular traffic from the thymus to the periphery in mice. *Eur J Immunol*. 1980;10:210–218. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7379836
35. Juang J, Ebert PJ, Feng D, et al. Peptide-MHC heterodimers show that thymic positive selection requires a more restricted set of self-peptides than negative selection. *J Exp Med*. 2010;207:1223–1234. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20457759
36. Blackburn CC, Manley NR. Developing a new paradigm for thymus organogenesis. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2004;4:278–289. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15057786
37. Lind EF, Prockop SE, Porritt HE, et al. Mapping precursor movement through the postnatal thymus reveals specific microenvironments supportingdefined stages of early lymphoid development. *J Exp Med*. 2001;194:127–134. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11457887
38. Anderson M, Anderson SK, Farr AG. Thymic vasculature: organizer of the medullary epithelial compartment? *Int Immunol*. 2000;12:1105–1110. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10882422
39. Odaka C, Morisada T, Oike Y, et al. Distribution of lymphatic vessels in mouse thymus: immunofluorescence analysis. *Cell Tissue Res*. 2006;325:13–22. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16541287

40. Pearse M, Wu L, Egerton M, et al. A murine early thymocyte developmental sequence is marked by transient expression of the interleukin 2 receptor. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1989;86:1614–1618. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2493646
41. Shinkai Y, Rathbun G, Lam KP, et al. RAG-2-deficient mice lack mature lymphocytes owing to inability to initiate V(D)J rearrangement. *Cell*. 1992;68:855–867. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1547487
42. Jameson SC, Hogquist KA, Bevan MJ. Positive selection of thymocytes. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 1995;13:93–126. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7612239
43. Kisielow P, Teh HS, Bluthmann H, et al. Positive selection of antigen-specific T cells in thymus by restricting MHC molecules. *Nature*. 1988;335:730–733. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3262831
44. Egerton M, Scollay R, Shortman K. Kinetics of mature T-cell development in the thymus. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1990;87:2579–2582. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2138780
45. Silva-Santos B, Pennington DJ, Hayday AC. Lymphotoxin-mediated regulation of gammadelta cell differentiation by alphabeta T cell progenitors. *Science*. 2005;307:925–928. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15591166
46. Nunes-Cabaco H, Caramalho I, Sepulveda N, et al. Differentiation of human thymic regulatory T-cells at the double positive stage. *Eur J Immunol*. 2011;41(12):3604–3614. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21932449
47. Klug DB, Carter C, Crouch E, et al. Interdependence of cortical thymic epithelial cell differentiation and T-lineage commitment. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1998;95:11822–11827. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9751749
48. Derbinski J, Gabler J, Brors B, et al. Promiscuous gene expression in thymic epithelial cells is regulated at multiple levels. *J Exp Med*. 2005;202:33–45. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15983066
49. Aaltonen J, Bjorses P, Sandkuijl L, et al. An autosomal locus causing autoimmune disease: autoimmune polyglandular disease type I assigned to chromosome 21. *Nat Genet*. 1994;8:83–87. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7987397
50. Akirav EM, Ruddle NH, Herold KC. The role of AIRE in human autoimmune disease. *Nat Rev Endocrinol*. 2011;7:25–33. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21102544
51. Anderson MS, Venanzi ES, Klein L, et al. Projection of an immunological self shadow within the thymus by the aire protein. *Science*. 2002;298:1395–1401. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12376594
52. Patel DD, Whichard LP, Radcliff G, et al. Characterization of human thymic epithelial cell surface antigens: phenotypic similarity of thymic epithelial cells to epidermal keratinocytes. *J Clin Immunol*. 1995;15:80–92. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7559912
53. ChentoufiAA, Palumbo M, Polychronakos C. Proinsulin expression by Hassall's corpuscles in the mouse thymus. *Diabetes*. 2004;53:354–359. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14747285
54. Girbal-Neuhauser E, Durieux JJ, Arnaud M, et al. The epitopes targeted by the rheumatoid arthritis-associated antifilaggrin autoanti-bodies are posttranslationally generated on various sites of (pro) filaggrin by deimination of arginine residues. *J Immunol*. 1999;162:585–594. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9886436
55. Favre A. Identification of filaggrin in Hassall's corpuscle by histo-chemical and immunohistochemical methods. *Acta Anat (Basel)*. 1989;135:71–76. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2750463
56. Douek DC, Altmann DM. T-cell apoptosis and differential human leucocyte antigen class II expression in human thymus. *Immunology*. 2000;99:249–256. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10692044
57. Ardavin C, Wu L, Li CL, et al. Thymic dendritic cells and T cells develop simultaneously in the thymus from a common precursor population. *Nature*. 1993;362:761–763. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8469288
58. Foss DL, Donskoy E, Goldschneider I. The importation of hematogenous precursors by the thymus is a gated phenomenon in normal adult mice. *J Exp Med*. 2001;193:365–374. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11157056
59. Donskoy E, Goldschneider I. Two developmentally distinct populations of dendritic cells inhabit the adult mouse thymus: demonstration by differential importation of hematogenous precursors under steady state conditions. *J Immunol*. 2003;170:3514–3521. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12646612
60. Anderson G, Owen JJ, Moore NC, et al. Thymic epithelial cells provide unique signals for positive selection of CD4+CD8+ thymocytes in vitro. *J Exp Med*. 1994;179:2027–2031. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7910843
61. Anderson G, Partington KM, Jenkinson EJ. Differential effects of peptide diversity and stromal cell type in positive and negative selection in the thymus. *J Immunol*. 1998;161:6599–6603. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9862687
62. Brocker T, Riedinger M, Karjalainen K. Targeted expression of major histocompatibility complex (MHC) class II molecules demonstrates that dendritic cells can induce negative but not positive selection of thymocytes in vivo. *J Exp Med*. 1997;185:541–550. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9053454
63. Heino M, Peterson P, Sillanpaa N, et al. RNA and protein expression of the murine autoimmune regulator gene (Aire) in normal, RelB-deficient and in NOD mouse. *Eur J Immunol*. 2000;30:1884–1893. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10940877
64. Watanabe N, Wang YH, Lee HK, et al. Hassall's corpuscles instruct dendritic cells to induce CD4+CD25+ regulatory T cells in human thymus. *Nature*. 2005;436:1181–1185. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16121185
65. Proietto AI, van Dommelen S, Zhou P, et al. Dendritic cells in the thymus contribute to T-regulatory cell induction. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2008;105:19869–19874. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19073916
66. Liu YJ, Soumelis V, Watanabe N, et al. TSLP: an epithelial cell cytokine that regulates T cell differentiation by conditioning dendritic cell maturation. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 2006;25:193–219.
67. Hanabuchi S, Ito T, Park WR, et al. Thymic stromal lymphopoietin-activated plasmacytoid dendritic cells induce the generation of FOXP3+ regulatory T cells in human thymus. *J Immunol*. 2010;184:2999–3007. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20173030
68. Miyazaki T, Suzuki G, Yamamura K. The role of macrophages in antigen presentation and T cell tolerance. *Int Immunol*. 1993;5:1023–1033. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8241051
69. Ferrero I, Anjuere F, Martin P, et al. Functional and phenotypic analysis of thymic B cells: role in the induction of T cell negative selection. *Eur J Immunol*. 1999;29:1598–1609. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10359114
70. Flores KG, Li J, Hale LP. B cells in epithelial and perivascular compartments of human adult thymus. *Hum Pathol*. 2001;32:926–934. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11567221
71. Fukuba Y, Inaba M, Taketani S, et al. Functional analysis of thymic B cells. *Immunobiology*. 1994;190:150–163. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8082883
72. Joao C, Ogle BM, Gay-Rabinstein C, et al. B cell-dependent TCR diversification. *J Immunol*. 2004;172:4709–4716. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15067046
73. Frommer F, Waisman A. B cells participate in thymic negative selection of murine auto-reactive CD4+ T cells. *PLoS One*. 2010;5:e15372. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20976010
74. Akirav EM, Xu Y, Ruddle NH. Resident B cells regulate thymic expression of myelin oligodendrocyte glycoprotein. *J Neuroimmunol*. 2011;235:33–39. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21550671
75. Lepique AP, Palencia S, Irjala H, et al. Characterization of vascular adhesion molecules that may facilitate progenitor homing in the post-natal mouse thymus. *Clin Dev Immunol*. 2003;10:27–33. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14575155
76. Bleul CC, Boehm T. Chemokines define distinct microenvironments in the developing thymus. *Eur J Immunol*. 2000;30:3371–3379. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11093154
77. Liu C, Ueno T, Kuse S, et al. The role of CCL21 in recruitment of T-precursor cells to fetal thymi. *Blood*. 2005;105:31–39. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15358618
78. Wurbel MA, Malissen M, Guy-Grand D, et al. Mice lacking the CCR9 CC-chemokine receptor show a mild impairment of early T- and B-cell

development and a reduction in T-cell receptor gammadelta(+) gut intraepithelial lymphocytes. *Blood*. 2001;98:2626–2632.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11675330
79. Misslitz A, Pabst O, Hintzen G, et al. Thymic T cell development and progenitor localization depend on CCR7. *J Exp Med*. 2004;200:481–491.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15302903
80. Plotkin J, Prockop SE, Lepique A, et al. Critical role for CXCR4 signaling in progenitor localization and T cell differentiation in the postnatal thymus. *J Immunol*. 2003;171:4521–4527.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14568925
81. Kurobe H, Liu C, Ueno T, et al. CCR7-dependent cortex-to-medulla migration of positively selected thymocytes is essential for establishing central tolerance. *Immunity*. 2006;24:165–177.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16473829
82. Ueno T, Saito F, Gray DH, et al. CCR7 signals are essential for cortex-medulla migration of developing thymocytes. *J Exp Med*. 2004;200:493–505.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15302902
83. Le Borgne M, Ladi E, Dzhagalov I, et al. The impact of negative selection on thymocyte migration in the medulla. *Nat Immunol*. 2009;10:823–830.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19543275
84. Poznansky MC, Olszak IT, Evans RH, et al. Thymocyte emigration is mediated by active movement away from stroma-derived factors. *J Clin Invest*. 2002;109:1101–1110.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11956248
85. Ueno T, Hara K, Willis MS, et al. Role for CCR7 ligands in the emigration of newly generated T lymphocytes from the neonatal thymus. *Immunity*. 2002;16:205–218.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11869682
86. Edsall LC, Spiegel S. Enzymatic measurement of sphingosine 1-phosphate. *Anal Biochem*. 1999;272:80–86.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10405296
87. Slifka MK, Matloubian M, Ahmed R. Bone marrow is a major site of long-term antibody production after acute viral infection. *J Virol*. 1995;69:1895–1902.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7853531
88. Manley NR. Thymus organogenesis and molecular mechanisms of thymic epithelial cell differentiation. *Semin Immunol*. 2000;12:421–428.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11085174
89. Gordon J, Bennett AR, Blackburn CC, et al. Gcm2 and Foxn1 mark early parathyroid- and thymus-specific domains in the developing third pharyngeal pouch. *Mech Dev*. 2001;103:141–143.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11335122
90. Manley NR, Blackburn CC. A developmental look at thymus organogenesis: where do the non-hematopoietic cells in the thymus come from? *Curr Opin Immunol*. 2003;15:225–232.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12633674
91. Kingston R, Jenkinson EJ, Owen JJ. Characterization of stromal cell populations in the developing thymus of normal and nude mice. *Eur J Immunol*. 1984;14:1052–1056.
92. Owen JJ, Jenkinson EJ. Early events in T lymphocyte genesis in the fetal thymus. *Am J Anat*. 1984;170:301–310.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6332519
93. Van Vliet E, Jenkinson EJ, Kingston R, et al. Stromal cell types in the developing thymus of the normal and nude mouse embryo. *Eur J Immunol*. 1985;15:675–681.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4007044
94. Le Douarin NM, Jotereau FV. Tracing of cells of the avian thymus through embryonic life in interspecific chimeras. *J Exp Med*. 1975;142:17–40.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/239088
95. Gordon J, Wilson VA, Blair NF, et al. Functional evidence for a single endodermal origin for the thymic epithelium. *Nat Immunol*. 2004;5:546–553.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15098031
96. Klug DB, Carter C, Gimenez-Conti IB, et al. Cutting edge: thymocyte-independent and thymocyte-dependent phases of epithelial patterning in the fetal thymus. *J Immunol*. 2002;169:2842–2845.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12218095
97. van Ewijk W, Hollander G, Terhorst C, et al. Stepwise development of thymic microenvironments in vivo is regulated by thymocyte subsets. *Development*. 2000;127:1583–1591.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10725235
98. Mebius RE. Organogenesis of lymphoid tissues. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2003;3:292–303.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12669020
99. Boehm T, Scheu S, Pfeffer K, et al. Thymic medullary epithelial cell differentiation, thymocyte emigration, and the control of autoimmunity require lympho-epithelial cross talk via LTbetaR. *J Exp Med*. 2003;198:757–769.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12953095
100. Chin RK, Lo JC, Kim O, et al. Lymphotoxin pathway directs thymic Aire expression. *Nat Immunol*. 2003;4:1121–1127.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14517552
101. Haynes BF, Heinly CS. Early human T cell development: analysis of the human thymus at the time of initial entry of hematopoietic stem cells into the fetal thymic microenvironment. *J Exp Med*. 1995;181:1445–1458.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7699329
102. Bouneaud C, Kourilsky P, Bousso P. Impact of negative selection on the T cell repertoire reactive to a self-peptide: a large fraction of T cell clones escapes clonal deletion. *Immunity*. 2000;13:829–840.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11163198
103. Steinman RM. The dendritic cell system and its role in immunogenicity. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 1991;9:271–296.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1910679
104. von Andrian UH, Mempel TR. Homing and cellular traffic in lymph nodes. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2003;3:867–878.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14668803
105. Wilson NS, El-Sukkari D, Belz GT, et al. Most lymphoid organ dendritic cell types are phenotypically and functionally immature. *Blood*. 2003;102:2187–2194.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12791652
106. Wilson NS, El-Sukkari D, Villadangos JA. Dendritic cells constitutively present self antigens in their immature state in vivo and regulate antigen presentation by controlling the rates of MHC class II synthesis and endocytosis. *Blood*. 2004;103:2187–2195.
107. Cavanagh LL, Von Andrian UH. Travellers in many guises: the origins and destinations of dendritic cells. *Immunol Cell Biol*. 2002;80:448–462.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12225381
108. Steinman RM, Hawiger D, Liu K, et al. Dendritic cell function in vivo during the steady state: a role in peripheral tolerance. *Ann N Y Acad Sci*. 2003;987:15–25.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12727620
109. Stoitzner P, Tripp CH, Douillard P, et al. Migratory Langerhans cells in mouse lymph nodes in steady state and inflammation. *J Invest Dermatol*. 2005;125:116–125.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15982311
110. Cohen JN, Guidi CJ, Tewalt EF, et al. Lymph node-resident lymphatic endothelial cells mediate peripheral tolerance via Aire-independent direct antigen presentation. *J Exp Med*. 2010;207:681–688.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20308365
111. Fletcher AL, Lukacs-Kornek V, Reynoso ED, et al. Lymph node fibroblastic reticular cells directly present peripheral tissue antigen under steady-state and inflammatory conditions. *J Exp Med*. 2010;207:689–697.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20308362
112. Gardner JM, Devoss JJ, Friedman RS, et al. Deletional tolerance mediated by extrathymic Aire-expressing cells. *Science*. 2008;321:843–847.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18687966
113. Lee JW, Epardaud M, Sun J, et al. Peripheral antigen display by lymph node stroma promotes T cell tolerance to intestinal self. *Nat Immunol*. 2007;8:181–190.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17195844
114. Poliani PL, Kisand K, Marrella V, et al. Human peripheral lymphoid tissues contain autoimmune regulator-expressing dendritic cells. *Am J Pathol*. 2010;176:1104–1112.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20093495
115. Phan TG, Green JA, Gray EE, et al. Immune complex relay by subcapsular sinus macrophages and noncognate B cells drives antibody affinity maturation. *Nat Immunol*. 2009;10:786–793.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19503106
116. Gretz JE, Norbury CC, Anderson AO, et al. Lymph-borne chemokines and other low molecular weight molecules reach high endothelial venules via specialized conduits while a functional barrier limits access to the lymphocyte microenvironments in lymph node cortex. *J Exp Med*. 2000;192:1425–1440.

117. Baekkevold ES, Yamanaka T, Palframan RT, et al. The CCR7 ligand elc (CCL19) is transcytosed in high endothelial venules and mediates T cell recruitment. *J Exp Med*. 2001;193:1105–1112. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11342595
118. Nakano H, Gunn MD. Gene duplications at the chemokine locus on mouse chromosome 4: multiple strain-specific haplotypes and the deletion of secondary lymphoid-organ chemokine and EBI-1 ligand chemokine genes in the plt mutation. *J Immunol*. 2001;166:361–369. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11123313
119. Vassileva G, Soto H, Zlotnik A, et al. The reduced expression of 6Ckine in the plt mouse results from the deletion of one of two 6Ckine genes. *J Exp Med*. 1999;190:1183–1188. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10523616
120. Cyster JG. Chemokines and cell migration in secondary lymphoid organs. *Science*. 1999;286:2098–2102. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10617422
121. Ebert LM, Schaerli P, Moser B. Chemokine-mediated control of T cell traffic in lymphoid and peripheral tissues. *Mol Immunol*. 2005;42: 799–809. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15829268
122. Rodrigo Mora J, Von Andrian UH. Specificity and plasticity of memory lymphocyte migration. *Curr Top Microbiol Immunol*. 2006;308:83–116. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16922087
123. Cyster JG. Chemokines, sphingosine-1-phosphate, and cell migration in secondary lymphoid organs. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 2005;23:127–159. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15771568
124. Lo CG, Xu Y, Proia RL, et al. Cyclical modulation of sphingosine-1-phosphate receptor 1 surface expression during lymphocyte recirculation and relationship to lymphoid organ transit. *J Exp Med*. 2005;201: 291–301. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15657295
125. Anderson AO, Anderson ND. Studies on the structure and permeability of the microvasculature in normal rat lymph nodes. *Am J Pathol*. 1975; 80:387–418. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1163637
126. M'Rini C, Cheng G, Schweitzer C, et al. A novel endothelial L-selectin ligand activity in lymph node medulla that is regulated by alpha(1,3)-fucosyltransferase-IV. *J Exp Med*. 2003;198:1301–1312. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14597733
127. von Andrian UH, M'Rini C. In situ analysis of lymphocyte migration to lymph nodes. *Cell Adhes Commun*. 1998;6:85–96. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9823458
128. Hemmerich S, Bistrup A, Singer MS, et al. Sulfation of L-selectin ligands by an HEV-restricted sulfotransferase regulates lymphocyte homing to lymph nodes. *Immunity*. 2001;15:237–247. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11520459
129. Hemmerich S, Butcher EC, Rosen SD. Sulfation-dependent recognition of HEV-ligands by L-selectin and MECA-79, an adhesion-blocking mAb. *J Exp Med*. 1994;180:2219–2226. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7525849
130. Hiraoka N, Kawashima H, Petryniak B, et al. Core 2 branching beta1,6-N-acetylglucosaminyltransferase and high endothelial venule-restricted sulfotransferase collaboratively control lymphocyte homing. *J Biol Chem*. 2004;279:3058–3067. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14593101
131. Hiraoka N, Petryniak B, Nakayama J, et al. A novel, high endothelial venule-specific sulfotransferase expresses 6-sulfo sialyl Lewis(x), an L-selectin ligand displayed by CD34. *Immunity*. 1999;11:79–89. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10435581
132. Homeister JW, Thall AD, Petryniak B, et al. The alpha(1,3)fucosyl-transferases FucT-IV and FucT-VII exert collaborative control over selectin-dependent leukocyte recruitment and lymphocyte homing. *Immunity*. 2001;15:115–126. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11485743
133. Kawashima H, Hirakawa J, Tobisawa Y, et al. Conditional gene targeting in mouse high endothelial venules. *J Immunol*. 2009;182:5461–5468. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19380794
134. Liao S, Bentley K, Lebrun M, et al. Transgenic LacZ under control of Hec-6st regulatory sequences recapitulates endogenous gene expression on high endothelial venules. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2007;104: 4577–4582. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17360566
135. Bistrup A, Tsay D, Shenoy P, et al. Detection of a sulfotransferase (HEC-GlcNAc6ST) in high endothelial venules of lymph nodes and in high endothelial venule-like vessels within ectopic lymphoid aggregates: relationship to the MECA-79 epitope. *Am J Pathol*. 2004;164:1635–1644. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15111310
136. Kraal G, Mebius RE. High endothelial venules: lymphocyte traffic control and controlled traffic. *Adv Immunol*. 1997;65:347–395. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9238513
137. Miyasaka M, Tanaka T. Lymphocyte trafficking across high endothelial venules: dogmas and enigmas. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2004;4:360–370. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15122201
138. Butcher EC, Scollay RG, Weissman IL. Lymphocyte adherence to high endothelial venules: characterization of a modified in vitro assay, and examination of the binding of syngeneic and allogeneic lymphocyte populations. *J Immunol*. 1979;123:1996–2003. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/314954
139. Mebius RE, Streeter PR, Michie S, et al. A developmental switch in lymphocyte homing receptor and endothelial vascular addressin expression regulates lymphocyte homing and permits CD4+ CD3- cells to colonize lymph nodes. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1996;93:11019–11024. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8855301
140. Oliver G. Lymphatic vasculature development. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2004;4:35–45. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14704766
141. Anderson AO, Shaw S. Conduit for privileged communications in the lymph node. *Immunity*. 2005;22:3–5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15664153
142. Sixt M, Kanazawa N, Selg M, et al. The conduit system transports soluble antigens from the afferent lymph to resident dendritic cells in the T cell area of the lymph node. *Immunity*. 2005;22:19–29. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15664156
143. Drayson MT, Ford WL. Afferent lymph and lymph borne cells: their influence on lymph node function. *Immunobiology*. 1984;168:362–379. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6530238
144. Hendriks HR, Eestermans IL. Disappearance and reappearance of high endothelial venules and immigrating lymphocytes in lymph nodes deprived of afferent lymphatic vessels: a possible regulatory role of macrophages in lymphocyte migration. *Eur J Immunol*. 1983;13: 663–669. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6884423
145. Hendriks HR, Duijvestijn AM, Kraal G. Rapid decrease in lymphocyte adherence to high endothelial venules in lymph nodes deprived of afferent lymphatic vessels. *Eur J Immunol*. 1987;17:1691–1695. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3500859
146. Mebius RE, Bauer J, Twisk AJ, et al. The functional activity of high endothelial venules: a role for the subcapsular sinus macrophages in the lymph node. *Immunobiology*. 1991;182:277–291. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1833312
147. Mebius RE, Breve J, Kraal G, et al. Developmental regulation of vascular addressin expression: a possible role for site-associated environments. *Int Immunol*. 1993;5:443–449. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8318450
148. Swarte VV, Joziasse DH, Van den Eijnden DH, et al. Regulation of fucosyltransferase-VII expression in peripheral lymph node high endothelial venules. *Eur J Immunol*. 1998;28:3040–3047. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9808172
149. Gretz JE, Anderson AO, Shaw S. Cords, channels, corridors and conduits: critical architectural elements facilitating cell interactions in the lymph node cortex. *Immunol Rev*. 1997;156:11–24. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9176696
150. Gretz JE, Kaldjian EP, Anderson AO, et al. Sophisticated strategies for information encounter in the lymph node: the reticular network as a conduit of soluble information and a highway for cell traffic. *J Immunol*. 1996;157:495–499. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8752893
151. Larsen CG, Anderson AO, Appella E, et al. The neutrophil-activating protein (NAP-1) is also chemotactic for T lymphocytes. *Science*. 1989;243:1464–1466. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2648569
152. Francois M, Harvey NL, Hogan BM. The transcriptional control of lymphatic vascular development. *Physiology (Bethesda)*. 2011;26:146–155. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21670161
153. Wigle JT, Harvey N, Detmar M, et al. An essential role for Prox1 in the induction of the lymphatic endothelial cell phenotype. *EMBO J*. 2002;21:1505–1513. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11927535

154. Wigle JT, Oliver G. Prox1 function is required for the development of the murine lymphatic system. *Cell*. 1999;98:769–778. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10499794
155. Abtahian F, Guerriero A, Sebzda E, et al. Regulation of blood and lymphatic vascular separation by signaling proteins SLP-76 and Syk. *Science*. 2003;299:247–251. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12522250
156. Bertozzi CC, Schmaier AA, Mericko P, et al. Platelets regulate lymphatic vascular development through CLEC-2-SLP-76 signaling. *Blood*. 2010;116:661–670. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20363774
157. Uhrin P, Zaujec J, Breuss JM, et al. Novel function for blood platelets and podoplanin in developmental separation of blood and lymphatic circulation. *Blood*. 2010;115:3997–4005. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20110424
158. Scavelli C, Weber E, Agliano M, et al. Lymphatics at the crossroads of angiogenesis and lymphangiogenesis. *J Anat*. 2004;204:433–449. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15198686
159. Vondenhoff MF, van de Pavert SA, Dillard ME, et al. Lymph sacs are not required for the initiation of lymph node formation. *Development*. 2009;136:29–34. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19060331
160. Benezech C, White A, Mader E, et al. Ontogeny of stromal organizer cells during lymph node development. *J Immunol*. 2010;184:4521–4530. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20237296
161. De Togni P, Goellner J, Ruddle NH, et al. Abnormal development of peripheral lymphoid organs in mice deficient in lymphotoxin. *Science*. 1994;264:703–707. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8171322
162. Harmsen A, Kusser K, Hartson L, et al. Cutting edge: organogenesis of nasal-associated lymphoid tissue (NALT) occurs independently of lymphotoxin-alpha (LT alpha) and retinoic acid receptor-related orphan receptor-gamma, but the organization of NALT is LT alpha dependent. *J Immunol*. 2002;168:986–990. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11801629
163. Ying X, Chan K, Shenoy P, et al. Lymphotoxin plays a crucial role in the development and function of nasal-associated lymphoid tissue through regulation of chemokines and peripheral node addressin. *Am J Pathol*. 2005;166:135–146. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15632007
164. Alimzhanov MB, Kuprash DV, Kosco-Vilbois MH, et al. Abnormal development of secondary lymphoid tissues in lymphotoxin beta-deficient mice. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1997;94:9302–9307. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9256477
165. Andoh N, Ohtani H, Kusakari C, et al. Expression of E- and P-selectins by vascular endothelial cells in human tonsils. *Acta Otolaryngol Suppl*. 1996;523:52–54. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9082809
166. Soderberg KA, Linehan MM, Ruddle NH, et al. MAdCAM-1 expressing sacral lymph node in the lymphotoxin beta-deficient mouse provides a site for immune generation following vaginal herpes simplex virus-2 infection. *J Immunol*. 2004;173:1908–1913. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15265924
167. Futterer A, Mink K, Luz A, et al. The lymphotoxin beta receptor controls organogenesis and affinity maturation in peripheral lymphoid tissues. *Immunity*. 1998;9:59–70. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9697836
168. Scheu S, Alferink J, Potzel T, et al. Targeted disruption of LIGHT causes defects in costimulatory T cell activation and reveals cooperation with lymphotoxin beta in mesenteric lymph node genesis. *J Exp Med*. 2002;195:1613–1624. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12070288
169. Rennert PD, James D, Mackay F, et al. Lymph node genesis is induced by signaling through the lymphotoxin beta receptor. *Immunity*. 1998;9:71–79. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9697837
170. Adachi S, Yoshida H, Honda K, et al. Essential role of IL-7 receptor alpha in the formation of Peyer's patch anlage. *Int Immunol*. 1998;10:1–6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9488150
171. Cao X, Shores EW, Hu-Li J, et al. Defective lymphoid development in mice lacking expression of the common cytokine receptor gamma chain. *Immunity*. 1995;2:223–238. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7697543
172. Dougall WC, Glaccum M, Charrier K, et al. RANK is essential for os-teoclast and lymph node development. *Genes Dev*. 1999;13:2412–2424. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10500098
173. Kim D, Mebius RE, MacMicking JD, et al. Regulation of peripheral lymph node genesis by the tumor necrosis factor family member TRANCE. *J Exp Med*. 2000;192:1467–1478. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11085748
174. Ansel KM, Ngo VN, Hyman PL, et al. A chemokine-driven positive feedback loop organizes lymphoid follicles. *Nature*. 2000;406:309–314. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10917533
175. Forster R, Mattis AE, Kremmer E, et al. A putative chemokine receptor, BLR1, directs B cell migration to defined lymphoid organs and specific anatomic compartments of the spleen. *Cell*. 1996;87:1037–1047. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8978608
176. Ruddle NH, Akirav EM. Secondary lymphoid organs: responding to genetic and environmental cues in ontogeny and the immune response. *J Immunol*. 2009;183:2205–2212. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19661265
177. Weih F, Caamano J. Regulation of secondary lymphoid organ development by the nuclear factor-kappaB signal transduction pathway. *Immunol Rev*. 2003;195:91–105. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12969313
178. Miyawaki S, Nakamura Y, Suzuka H, et al. A new mutation, aly, that induces a generalized lack of lymph nodes accompanied by immunodeficiency in mice. *Eur J Immunol*. 1994;24:429–434. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8299692
179. Shinkura R, Kitada K, Matsuda F, et al. Alymphoplasia is caused by a point mutation in the mouse gene encoding Nf-kappa b-inducing kinase. *Nat Genet*. 1999;22:74–77. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10319865
180. Senftleben U, Cao Y, Xiao G, et al. Activation by IKKalpha of a second, evolutionary conserved, NF-kappa B signaling pathway. *Science*. 2001;293:1495–1499. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11520989
181. Yilmaz ZB, Weih DS, Sivakumar V, et al. RelB is required for Peyer's patch development: differential regulation of p52-RelB by lymphotoxin and TNF. *EMBO J*. 2003;22:121–130. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12505990
182. Dejardin E, Droin NM, Delhase M, et al. The lymphotoxin-beta receptor induces different patterns of gene expression via two NF-kappaBpathways. *Immunity*. 2002;17:525–535. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12387745
183. Drayton DL, Bonizzi G, Ying X, et al. I kappa B kinase complex alpha kinase activity controls chemokine and high endothelial venule gene expression in lymph nodes and nasal-associated lymphoid tissue. *J Immunol*. 2004;173:6161–6168. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15528353
184. Eberl G, Littman DR. The role of the nuclear hormone receptor RORgamma T in the development of lymph nodes and Peyer's patches. *Immunol Rev*. 2003;195:81–90. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12969312
185. Eberl G, Marmon S, Sunshine MJ, et al. An essential function for the nuclear receptor RORgamma(t) in the generation of fetal lymphoid tissue inducer cells. *Nat Immunol*. 2004;5:64–73. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14691482
186. Yokota Y, Mansouri A, Mori S, et al. Development of peripheral lymphoid organs and natural killer cells depends on the helix-loop-helix inhibitor Id2. *Nature*. 1999;397:702–706. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10067894
187. Fukuyama S, Kiyono H. Neuroregulator RET initiates Peyer's-patch tissue genesis. *Immunity*. 2007;26:393–395. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17459808
188. Veiga-Fernandes H, Coles MC, Foster KE, et al. Tyrosine kinase receptor RET is a key regulator of Peyer's patch organogenesis. *Nature*. 2007;446:547–551. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17322904
189. van de Pavert SA, Olivier BJ, Goverse G, et al. Chemokine CXCL13 is essential for lymph node initiation and is induced by retinoic acid and neuronal stimulation. *Nat Immunol*. 2009;10:1193–1199. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19783990
190. Mebius RE, Rennert P, Weissman IL. Developing lymph nodes collect CD4+CD3-LTbeta+ cells that can differentiate to APC, NK cells, and follicular cells but not T or B cells. *Immunity*. 1997;7:493–504. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9354470

191. Yoshida H, Honda K, Shinkura R, et al. IL-7 receptor alpha+ CD3(-) cells in the embryonic intestine induces the organizing center of Peyer's patches. *Int Immunol*. 1999;11:643–655. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10330270
192. Yoshida H, Kawamoto H, Santee SM, et al. Expression of alpha(4) beta(7) integrin defines a distinct pathway of lymphoid progenitors committed to T cells, fetal intestinal lymphotoxin producer, NK, and dendritic cells. *J Immunol*. 2001;167:2511–2521. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11509590
193. Girard JP, Springer TA. High endothelial venules (HEVs): specialized endothelium for lymphocyte migration. *Immunol Today*. 1995;16:449–457. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7546210
194. Mebius RE, Schadee-Eestermans IL, Weissman IL. MAdCAM-1 dependent colonization of developing lymph nodes involves a unique sub- set of CD4+ CD3- hematolymphoid cells. *Cell Adhes Commun*. 1998;6:97–103. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9823459
195. Cuff CA, Schwartz J, Bergman CM, et al. Lymphotoxin alpha3 induces chemokines and adhesion molecules: insight into the role of LT alpha in inflammation and lymphoid organ development. *J Immunol*. 1998;161: 6853–6860. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9862717
196. Drayton DL, Ying X, Lee J, et al. Ectopic LT alpha beta directs lym-phoid organ neogenesis with concomitant expression of peripheral node addressin and a HEV-restricted sulfotransferase. *J Exp Med*. 2003;197: 1153–1163. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12732657
197. Eikelenboom P, Nassy JJ, Post J, et al. The histogenesis of lymph nodes in rat and rabbit. *Anat Rec*. 1978;190:201–215. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/629402
198. Browning JL, Allaire N, Ngam-Ek A, et al. Lymphotoxin-beta receptor signaling is required for the homeostatic control of HEV differentiation and function. *Immunity*. 2005;23:539–550. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16286021
199. Liao S, Ruddle NH. Synchrony of high endothelial venules and lymphatic vessels revealed by immunization. *J Immunol*. 2006;177:3369–3379. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16920978
200. Mionnet C, Sanos SL, Mondor I, et al. High endothelial venules as traffic control points maintaining lymphocyte population homeostasis in lymph nodes. *Blood*. 2011;118(23):6115–6122. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21937697
201. Hall JG, Hopkins J, Reynolds J. Studies of efferent lymph cells from nodes stimulated with oxazolone. *Immunology*. 1980;39:141–149. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7380464
202. Hall JG, Smith ME. Studies on the afferent and efferent lymph of lymph nodes draining the site of application of fluorodinitrobenzene (FDNB). *Immunology*. 1971;21:69–79. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/5105048
203. Hay JB, Cahill RN, Trnka Z. The kinetics of antigen-reactive cells during lymphocyte recruitment. *Cell Immunol*. 1974;10:145–153. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4281716
204. He C, Young AJ, West CA, et al. Stimulation of regional lymphatic and blood flow by epicutaneous oxazolone. *J Appl Physiol*. 2002;93:966–973. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12183492
205. West CA, He C, Su M, et al. Stochastic regulation of cell migration from the efferent lymph to oxazolone-stimulated skin. *J Immunol*. 2001;166: 1517–1523. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11160191
206. Angeli V, Ginhoux F, Llodra J, et al. B cell-driven lymphangiogenesis in inflamed lymph nodes enhances dendritic cell mobilization. *Immunity*. 2006;24:203–215. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16473832
207. Hay JB, Johnston MG, Vadas P, et al. Relationships between changes in blood flow and lymphocyte migration induced by antigen. *Monogr Allergy*. 1980;16:112–125. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6985687
208. Ottaway CA, Parrott DM. Regional blood flow and its relationship to lymphocyte and lymphoblast traffic during a primary immune reaction.*J Exp Med*. 1979;150:218–230. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/458374
209. Mebius RE, Breve J, Duijvestijn AM, et al. The function of high endothelial venules in mouse lymph nodes stimulated by oxazolone. *Immunology*. 1990;71:423–427. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2269478
210. Myking AO. Morphological changes in paracortical high endothelial venules to single and repeated application of oxazolone to mouse skin. *Virchows Arch B Cell Pathol Incl Mol Pathol*. 1980;35:63–71.
211. Cahill RN, Frost H, Trnka Z. The effects of antigen on the migration of recirculating lymphocytes through single lymph nodes. *J Exp Med*. 1976;143:870–888. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1255114
212. Hoke D, Mebius RE, Dybdal N, et al. Selective modulation of the expression of L-selectin ligands by an immune response. *Curr Biol*. 1995;5: 670–678. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7552178
213. Yoneyama H, Matsuno K, Zhang Y, et al. Evidence for recruitment of plasmacytoid dendritic cell precursors to inflamed lymph nodes through high endothelial venules. *Int Immunol*. 2004;16:915–928. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15159375
214. Mackay F, Browning JL. Turning off follicular dendritic cells. *Nature*. 1998;395:26–27. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9738494
215. Brendolan A, Rosado MM, Carsetti R, et al. Development and function of the mammalian spleen. *Bioessays*. 2007;29:166–177. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17226804
216. Blue J, Weiss L. Electron microscopy of the red pulp of the dog spleen including vascular arrangements, periarterial macrophage sheaths (ellipsoids), and the contractile, innervated reticular meshwork. *Am J Anat*. 1981;161:189–218.
217. Blue J, Weiss L. Periarterial macrophage sheaths (ellipsoids) in cat spleen—an electron microscope study. *Am J Anat*. 1981;161:115–134. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7196147
218. Snook T. A comparative study of the vascular arrangements in mammalian spleens. *Am J Anat*. 1950;87:31–77. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14771007
219. Waksman BH. *Atlas of Experimental Immunobiology and Immunopathology*. New Haven, CT: Yale University Press; 1970.
220. Mebius RE, Kraal G. Structure and function of the spleen. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2005;5:606–616. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16056254
221. Geijtenbeek TB, Groot PC, Nolte MA, et al. Marginal zone macrophages express a murine homologue of DC-SIGN that captures blood-borne antigens in vivo. *Blood*. 2002;100:2908–2916. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12351402
222. Koppel EA, Wieland CW, van den Berg VC, et al. Specific ICAM-3 grabbing nonintegrin-related 1 (SIGNR1) expressed by marginal zone macrophages is essential for defense against pulmonary Streptococcus pneumoniae infection. *Eur J Immunol*. 2005;35:2962–2969. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16134084
223. Kraal G, Mebius R. New insights into the cell biology of the marginal zone of the spleen. *Int Rev Cytol*. 2006;250:175–215. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16861066
224. Ito S, Naito M, Kobayashi Y, et al. Roles of a macrophage receptor with collagenous structure (MARCO) in host defense and heterogeneity of splenic marginal zone macrophages. *Arch Histol Cytol*. 1999;62:83–95. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10223745
225. Karlsson MC, Guinamard R, Bolland S, et al. Macrophages control the retention and trafficking of B lymphocytes in the splenic marginal zone. *J Exp Med*. 2003;198:333–340. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12874264
226. Kraal G, Schornagel K, Streeter PR, et al. Expression of the mucosal vascular addressin, MAdCAM-1, on sinus-lining cells in the spleen. *Am J Pathol*. 1995;147:763–771. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7677187
227. Crocker PR, Gordon S. Mouse macrophage hemagglutinin (sheep erythrocyte receptor) with specificity for sialylated glycoconjugates characterized by a monoclonal antibody. *J Exp Med*. 1989;169:1333–1346. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2926328
228. Jiang HR, Hwenda L, Makinen K, et al. Sialoadhesin promotes the inflammatory response in experimental autoimmune uveoretinitis. *J Immunol*. 2006;177:2258–2264. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16887986
229. Oetke C, Vinson MC, Jones C, et al. Sialoadhesin-deficient mice exhibit subtle changes in B- and T-cell populations and reduced immuno-globulin M levels. *Mol Cell Biol*. 2006;26:1549–1557. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16449664
230. Backer R, Schwandt T, Greuter M, et al. Effective collaboration between marginal metallophilic macrophages and CD8+ dendritic cells in the

generation of cytotoxic T cells. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2010;107:216–221.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20018690
231. You Y, Myers RC, Freeberg L, et al. Marginal zone B cells regulate antigen capture by marginal zone macrophages. *J Immunol*. 2011;186:2172–2181.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21257969
232. Cinamon G, Zachariah MA, Lam OM, et al. Follicular shuttling of marginal zone B cells facilitates antigen transport. *Nat Immunol*. 2008;9:54–62.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18037889
233. Poholek AC, Craft J. Competing for help: new insights into the function of follicular helper T cells. *Immunol Cell Biol*. 2009;87:438–439.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19381158
234. Nolte MA, Belien JA, Schadee-Eestermans I, et al. A conduit system distributes chemokines and small blood-borne molecules through the splenic white pulp. *J Exp Med*. 2003;198:505–512.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12900524
235. Pabst O, Forster R, Lipp M, et al. NKX2.3 is required for MAdCAM-1 expression and homing of lymphocytes in spleen and mucosa-associated lymphoid tissue. *EMBO J*. 2000;19:2015–2023.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10790368
236. Cyster JG, Goodnow CC. Pertussis toxin inhibits migration of B and T lymphocytes into splenic white pulp cords. *J Exp Med*. 1995;182:581–586.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7629515
237. Nolte MA, Hamann A, Kraal G, et al. The strict regulation of lymphocyte migration to splenic white pulp does not involve common homing receptors. *Immunology*. 2002;106:299–307.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12100717
238. Lu TT, Cyster JG. Integrin-mediated long-term B cell retention in the splenic marginal zone. *Science*. 2002;297:409–412.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12130787
239. Mitchell J. Lymphocyte circulation in the spleen. Marginal zone bridging channels and their possible role in cell traffic. *Immunology*. 1973;24:93–107.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4539831
240. Cinamon G, Matloubian M, Lesneski MJ, et al. Sphingosine 1-phosphate receptor 1 promotes B cell localization in the splenic marginal zone. *Nat Immunol*. 2004;5:713–720.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15184895
241. Czompoly T, Labadi A, Kellermayer Z, et al. Transcription factor Nkx2-3 controls the vascular identity and lymphocyte homing in the spleen. *J Immunol*. 2011;186:6981–6989.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21593383
242. Kellermayer Z, Labadi A, Czompoly T, et al. Absence of Nkx2-3 homeodomain transcription factor induces the formation of LYVE-1-positive endothelial cysts without lymphatic commitment in the 2011;59:690–700.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21705651
243. spleen. *J Histochem Cytochem*. Hatano M, Roberts CW, Minden M, et al. Deregulation of a homeobox gene, HOX11, by the t(10;14) in T cell leukemia. *Science*. 1991;253:79–82.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1676542
244. Roberts CW, Shutter JR, Korsmeyer SJ. Hox11 controls the genesis of the spleen. *Nature*. 1994;368:747–749.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7908720
245. Dear TN, Colledge WH, Carlton MB, et al. The Hox11 gene is essential for cell survival during spleen development. *Development*. 1995;121:2909–2915.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7555717
246. Reijmers RM, Vondenhoff MF, Roozendaal R, et al. Impaired lymphoid organ development in mice lacking the heparan sulfate modifying enzyme glucuronyl C5-epimerase. *J Immunol*. 2010;184:3656–3664.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20208005
247. Ngo VN, Korner H, Gunn MD, et al. Lymphotoxin alpha/beta and tumor necrosis factor are required for stromal cell expression of homing chemokines in B and T cell areas of the spleen. *J Exp Med*. 1999;189:403–412.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9892622
248. Vondenhoff MF, Desanti GE, Cupedo T, et al. Separation of splenic red and white pulp occurs before birth in a LTalphabeta-independent manner. *J Leukocyte Biol*. 2008;84:152–161.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18403646
249. Ngo VN, Cornall RJ, Cyster JG. Splenic T zone development is B cell dependent. *J Exp Med*. 2001;194:1649–1660.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11733579
250. Kim MY, McConnell FM, Gaspal FM, et al. Function of CD4+CD3- cells in relation to B and T zone stroma in spleen. *Blood*. 2006;109(4):1602–1610.
251. Benedict CA, De Trez C, Schneider K, et al. Specific remodeling of splenic architecture by cytomegalovirus. *PLoS Pathog*. 2006;2:e16.
252. Croitoru K, Bienenstock J. Characteristics and functions of mucosa-associated lymphoid tissue. In: Ogra PL, Mestecky J, Lamm ME, Strober W, McGheee JR, Bienenstock J, eds. *Handbook of Mucosal Immunology*. San Diego, CA: Academic Press;1994:141–151.
253. Iwata M, Yokota A. Retinoic acid production by intestinal dendritic cells. *Vitam Horm*. 2011;86:127–152.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21419270
254. Weiner HL, da Cunha AP, Quintana F, et al. Oral tolerance. *Immunol Rev*. 2011;241:241–259.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21488901
255. Mowat AM. Anatomical basis of tolerance and immunity to intestinal antigens. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2003;3:331–341.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12669023
256. Dieu MC, Vanbervliet B, Vicari A, et al. Selective recruitment of immature and mature dendritic cells by distinct chemokines expressed in different anatomic sites. *J Exp Med*. 1998;188:373–386.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9670049
257. Meurens F, Whale J, Brownlie R, et al. Expression of mucosal chemokines TECK/CCL25 and MEC/CCL28 during fetal development of the ovine mucosal immune system. *Immunology*. 2007;120(4):544–555.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17250588
258. Puri KD, Finger EB, Gaudernack G, et al. Sialomucin CD34 is the major L-selectin ligand in human tonsil high endothelial venules. *J Cell Biol*. 1995;131:261–270.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7559783
259. Berg EL, Mullowney AT, Andrew DP, et al. Complexity and differential expression of carbohydrate epitopes associated with L-selectin recognition of high endothelial venules. *Am J Pathol*. 1998;152:469–477.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9466573
260. van Kempen MJ, Rijkers GT, Van Cauwenberge PB. The immune response in adenoids and tonsils. *Int Arch Allergy Immunol*. 2000;122:8–19.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10859465
261. Karchev T, Kabakchiev P. Electron-microscope observations on the tonsillar epithelium in children with recurrent tonsillitis. *Int J Pediatric Otorhinolaryngol*. 1982;4:149–156.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7129784
262. Winther B, Innes DJ. The human adenoid. A morphologic study. *Arch Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg*. 1994;120:144–149.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8297570
263. Gebert A, Pabst R. M cells at locations outside the gut. *Sem Immunol*. 1999;11:165–170.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10381862
264. Pabst R, Gehrke I. Is the bronchus-associated lymphoid tissue (BALT) an integral structure of the lung in normal mammals, including humans? *Am J Resp Cell Mol Biol*. 1990;3:131–135.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2378747
265. Schulz O, Jaensson E, Persson EK, et al. Intestinal CD103+, but not CX3CR1+, antigen sampling cells migrate in lymph and serve classical dendritic cell functions. *J Exp Med*. 2009;206:3101–3114.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20008524
266. Brandtzaeg P. Potential of nasopharynx-associated lymphoid tissue for vaccine responses in the airways. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2011;183:1595–1604.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21471092
267. Dupuy C, Buzoni-Gatel D, Touze A, et al. Nasal immunization of mice with human papillomavirus type 16 (HPV-16) virus-like particles or with the HPV-16 L1 gene elicits specific cytotoxic T lymphocytes in vaginal draining lymph nodes. *J Virol*. 1999;73:9063–9071.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10516012
268. Wiley JA, Tighe MP, Harmsen AG. Upper respiratory tract resistance to influenza infection is not prevented by the absence of either nasal-associated lymphoid tissue or cervical lymph nodes. *J Immunol*. 2005;175:3186–3196.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16116209

269. Moyron-Quiroz JE, Rangel-Moreno J, Hartson L, et al. Persistence and responsiveness of immunologic memory in the absence of secondary lymphoid organs. *Immunity*. 2006;25:643–654. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17045819
270. Constant SL, Brogdon JL, Piggott DA, et al. Resident lung antigen-presenting cells have the capacity to promote Th2 T cell differentiation in situ. *J Clin Invest*. 2002;110:1441–1448. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12438442
271. Perry M, Whyte A. Immunology of the tonsils. *Immunol Today*. 1998;19:414–421. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9745205
272. Brandtzaeg P. Regionalized immune function of tonsils and adenoids. *Immunol Today*. 1999;20:383–384. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10431159
273. Rebelatto MC, Mead C, HogenEsch H. Lymphocyte populations and adhesion molecule expression in bovine tonsils. *Vet Immunol Immunopathol*. 2000;73:15–29. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10678395
274. Carlsen HS, Haraldsen G, Brandtzaeg P, et al. Disparate lymphoid chemokine expression in mice and men: no evidence of CCL21 synthesis by human high endothelial venules. *Blood*. 2005;106:444–446. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15863780
275. Goeringer GC, Vidic B. The embryogenesis and anatomy of Waldeyer's ring. *Otolaryngol Clin North Am*. 1987;20:207–217. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3601384
276. Wu HY, Russell MW. Induction of mucosal immunity by intranasal application of a streptococcal surface protein antigen with the cholera toxin B subunit. *Infect Immun*. 1993;61:314–322. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8418053
277. Balmelli C, Roden R, Potts A, et al. Nasal immunization of mice with human papillomavirus type 16 virus-like particles elicits neutralizing antibodies in mucosal secretions. *J Virol*. 1998;72:8220–8229. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9733865
278. Liu XS, Abdul-Jabbar I, Qi YM, et al. Mucosal immunisation with papillomavirus virus-like particles elicits systemic and mucosal immunity in mice. *Virology*. 1998;252:39–45. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9875315
279. Zuercher AW, Coffin SE, Thurnheer MC, et al. Nasal-associated lymphoid tissue is a mucosal inductive site for virus-specific humoral and cellular immune responses. *J Immunol*. 2002;168:1796–1803. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11823512
280. Shikina T, Hiroi T, Iwatani K, et al. IgA class switch occurs in the organized nasopharynx- and gut-associated lymphoid tissue, but not in the diffuse lamina propria of airways and gut. *J Immunol*. 2004;172:6259–6264. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15128814
281. Csencsits KL, Jutila MA, Pascual DW. Mucosal addressin expression and binding-interactions with naive lymphocytes vary among the cranial, oral, and nasal-associated lymphoid tissues. *Eur J Immunol*. 2002;32:3029–3039. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12385022
282. Fukuyama S, Nagatake T, Kim DY, et al. Cutting edge: uniqueness of lymphoid chemokine requirement for the initiation and maturation of nasopharynx-associated lymphoid tissue organogenesis. *J Immunol*. 2006;177:4276–4280. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16982861
283. Rangel-Moreno J, Hartson L, Navarro C, et al. Inducible bronchus-associated lymphoid tissue (iBALT) in patients with pulmonary complications of rheumatoid arthritis. *J Clin Invest*. 2006;116:3183–3194. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17143328
284. Fukuyama S, Hiroi T, Yokota Y, et al. Initiation of NALT organogenesis is independent of the IL-7R, LTbetaR, and NIK signaling pathways but requires the Id2 gene and CD3(-)CD4(+)CD45(+) cells. *Immunity*. 2002;17:31–40. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12150889
285. Delventhal S, Hensel A, Petzoldt K, et al. Effects of microbial stimulation on the number, size and activity of bronchus-associated lymphoid tissue (BALT) structures in the pig. *Int J Exp Pathol*. 1992;73:351–357. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1622845
286. Kolopp-Sarda MN, Bene MC, Massin N, et al. Immunohistological analysis of macrophages, B-cells, and T-cells in the mouse lung. *Anat Rec*. 1994;239:150–157. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8059977
287. Moyron-Quiroz JE, Rangel-Moreno J, Kusser K, et al. Role of inducible bronchus associated lymphoid tissue (iBALT) in respiratory immunity. *Nat Med*. 2004;10:927–934. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15311275
288. Pabst R, Tschernig T. Bronchus-associated lymphoid tissue: an entry site for antigens for successful mucosal vaccinations? *Am J Respir Cell Mol Biol*. 2010;43:137–141. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20508066
289. Ersch J, Tschernig T, Stallmach T. Frequency and potential cause of bronchus-associated lymphoid tissue in fetal lungs. *Pediatr Allergy Immunol*. 2005;16:295–298. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15943591
290. Tschernig T, Pabst R. Bronchus-associated lymphoid tissue (BALT) is not present in the normal adult lung but in different diseases. *Pathobiol*. 2000;68:1–8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10859525
291. Csencsits KL, Jutila MA, Pascual DW. Nasal-associated lymphoid tissue: phenotypic and functional evidence for the primary role of peripheral node addressin in naive lymphocyte adhesion to high endothelial venules in a mucosal site. *J Immunol*. 1999;163:1382–1389. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10415038
292. Cesta MF. Normal structure, function, and histology of mucosaassociated lymphoid tissue. *Toxicol Pathol*. 2006;34:599–608.
293. Fotopoulos G, Harari A, Michetti P, et al. Transepithelial transport of HIV-1 by M cells is receptor-mediated. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2002;99:9410–9414. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12093918
294. Jones BD, Ghori N, Falkow S. Salmonella typhimurium initiates murine infection by penetrating and destroying the specialized epithelial M cells of the Peyer's patches. *J Exp Med*. 1994;180:15–23. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8006579
295. Hase K, Murakami T, Takatsu H, et al. The membrane-bound chemokine CXCL16 expressed on follicle-associated epithelium and M cells mediates lympho-epithelial interaction in GALT. *J Immunol*. 2006;176:43–51. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16365394
296. Iwasaki A, Kelsall BL. Localization of distinct Peyer's patch dendritic cell subsets and their recruitment by chemokines macrophage inflammatory protein (MIP)-3alpha, MIP-3beta, and secondary lymphoid organ chemokine. *J Exp Med*. 2000;191:1381–1394. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10770804
297. Iwasaki A, Kelsall BL. Unique functions of CD11b+, CD8 alpha+,and double-negative Peyer's patch dendritic cells. *J Immunol*. 2001;166:4884–4890. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11290765
298. Williams MB, Butcher EC. Homing of naive and memory T lymphocyte subsets to Peyer's patches, lymph nodes, and spleen. *J Immunol*. 1997;159:1746–1752. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9257836
299. Kunkel EJ, Ramos CL, Steeber DA, et al. The roles of L-selectin, beta 7 integrins, and P-selectin in leukocyte rolling and adhesion in high endothelial venules of Peyer's patches. *J Immunol*. 1998;161:2449–2456. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9725243
300. Steeber DA, Tang ML, Zhang XQ, et al. Efficient lymphocyte migration across high endothelial venules of mouse Peyer's patches requires overlapping expression of L-selectin and beta7 integrin. *J Immunol*. 1998;161:6638–6647. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9862692
301. Okada T, Ngo VN, Ekland EH, et al. Chemokine requirements for B cell entry to lymph nodes and Peyer's patches. *J Exp Med*. 2002;196:65–75. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12093871
302. Cook DN, Prosser DM, Forster R, et al. CCR6 mediates dendritic cell localization, lymphocyte homeostasis, and immune responses in mucosal tissue. *Immunity*. 2000;12:495–503. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10843382
303. Koni PA, Sacca R, Lawton P, et al. Distinct roles in lymphoid organogenesis for lymphotoxins alpha and beta in lymphotoxi-beta deficient mice. *Immunity*. 1997;6:491–500. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9133428
304. Kiyono H, Fukuyama S. NALT-versus Peyer's-patch-mediated mucosal immunity. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2004;4:699–710. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15343369

305. Neumann B, Luz A, Pfeffer K, et al. Defective Peyer's patch organogenesis in mice lacking the 55-kD receptor for tumor necrosis factor. *J Exp Med*. 1996;184:259–264. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8691140
306. Nishikawa S, Nishikawa S, Honda K, et al. Peyer's patch organogenesis as a programmed inflammation: a hypothetical model. *Cytokine Growth Factor Rev*. 1998;9:213–220. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9918121
307. Nishikawa SI, Hashi H, Honda K, et al. Inflammation, a prototype for organogenesis of the lymphopoietic/hematopoietic system. *Curr Opin Immunol*. 2000;12:342–345. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10781400
308. Nishikawa S, Honda K, Vieira P, et al. Organogenesis of peripheral lymphoid organs. *Immunol Rev*. 2003;195:72–80. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12969311
309. Finke D, Acha-Orbea H, Mattis A, et al. CD4+ CD3- cells induce Peyer's patch development: role of alpha4beta1 integrin activation by CXCR5. *Immunity*. 2002;17:363–373. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12354388
310. Finke D, Kraehenbuhl JP. Formation of Peyer's patches. *Curr Opin Genet Dev*. 2001;11:561–567. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11532399
311. Golovkina TV, Shlomchik M, Hannum L, et al. Organogenic role of B lymphocytes in mucosal immunity. *Science*. 1999;286:1965–1968. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10583962
312. Debard N, Sierro F, Browning J, et al. Effect of mature lymphocytes and lymphotoxin on the development of the follicle-ssociated epithelium and M cells in mouse Peyer's patches. *Gastroenterology*. 2001;120:1173–1182. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11266381
313. Lugering A, Kucharzik T, Soler D, et al. Lymphoid precursors in intestinal cryptopatches express CCR6 and undergo dysregulated development in the absence of CCR6. *J Immunol*. 2003;171:2208–2215. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12928364
314. Lorenz RG, Newberry RD. Isolated lymphoid follicles can function as sites for induction of mucosal immune responses. *Ann N Y Acad Sci*. 2004;1029:44–57. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15681742
315. Eberl G. Inducible lymphoid tissues in the adult gut: recapitulation of a fetal developmental pathway? *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2005;5:413–420. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15841100
316. Newberry RD, Lorenz RG. Organizing a mucosal defense. *Immunol Rev*. 2005;206:6–21. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16048539
317. Lorenz RG, Chaplin DD, McDonald KG, et al. Isolated lymphoid follicle formation is inducible and dependent upon lymphotoxin-sufficient B lymphocytes, lymphotoxin beta receptor, and TNF receptor I function. *J Immunol*. 2003;170:5475–5482. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12759424
318. Haley PJ. Species differences in the structure and function of the immune system. *Toxicology*. 2003;188:49–71. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12748041
319. Pablos JL, Santiago B, Tsay D, et al. A HEV-restricted sulfotransferase is expressed in rheumatoid arthritis synovium and is induced by lymphotoxin-alpha/beta and TNF-alpha in cultured endothelial cells. *BMC Immunol*. 2005;6:6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15752429
320. Link A, Hardie DL, Favre S, et al. Association of T-zone reticular networks and conduits with ectopic lymphoid tissues in mice and humans. *Am J Pathol*. 2011;178:1662–1675. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21435450
321. Kerjaschki D. Lymphatic neoangiogenesis in human neoplasia and transplantation as experiments of nature. *Kidney Int*. 2005;68:1967–1968.
322. Kerjaschki D, Regele HM, Moosberger I, et al. Lymphatic neoangiogenesis in human kidney transplants is associated with immunologically active lymphocytic infiltrates. *J Am Soc Nephrol*. 2004;15:603–612. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14978162
323. Penaranda C, Tang Q, Ruddle NH, et al. Prevention of diabetes by FTY720-mediated stabilization of peri-islet tertiary lymphoid organs. *Diabetes*. 2010;59:1461–1468. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20299465
324. Reape TJ, Rayner K, Manning CD, et al. Expression and cellular localization of the CC chemokines PARC and ELC in human atherosclerotic plaques. *Am J Pathol*. 1999;154:365–374. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10027395
325. Dieu-Nosjean MC, Antoine M, Danel C, et al. Long-term survival for patients with non-small-cell lung cancer with intratumoral lymphoid structures. *J Clin Oncol*. 2008;26:4410–4417. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18802153
326. Martinet L, Garrido I, Filleron T, et al. Human solid tumors contain high endothelial venules: association with T- and B-lymphocyte infiltration and favorable prognosis in breast cancer. *Cancer Res*. 2011;71:5678–5687. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21846823
327. Hjelmstrom P. Lymphoid neogenesis: de novo formation of lymphoid tissue in chronic inflammation through expression of homing chemokines. *J Leukoc Biol*. 2001;69:331–339. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11261778
328. Hjelmstrom P, Fjell J, Nakagawa T, et al. Lymphoid tissue homing chemokines are expressed in chronic inflammation. *Am J Pathol*. 2000;156:1133–1138. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10751336
329. Hanninen A, Jaakkola I, Jalkanen S. Mucosal addressin is required for the development of diabetes in nonobese diabetic mice. *J Immunol*. 1998;160:6018–6025. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9637517
330. Yang XD, Sytwu HK, McDevitt HO, et al. Involvement of beta 7 integrin and mucosal addressin cell adhesion molecule-1 (MAdCAM-1) in the development of diabetes in obese diabetic mice. *Diabetes*. 1997;46:1542–1547. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9313747
331. Cannella B, Cross AH, Raine CS. Upregulation and coexpression of adhesion molecules correlate with relapsing autoimmune demyelination in the central nervous system. *J Exp Med*. 1990;172:1521–1524. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2172438
332. Columba-CabezasS,Serafini B, Ambrosini E, et al. Lymphoid chemokines CCL19 and CCL21 are expressed in the central nervous system during experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis: implications for the maintenance of chronic neuroinflammation. *Brain Pathol*. 2003;13:38–51.
333. Magliozzi R, Columba-Cabezas S, Serafini B, et al. Intracerebral expression of CXCL13 and BAFF is accompanied by formation of lymphoid follicle-like structures in the meninges of mice with relapsing experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis. *J Neuroimmunol*. 2004;148:11–23. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14975582
334. Mooij P, de Wit HJ, Drexhage HA. An excess of dietary iodine accelerates the development of a thyroid-associated lymphoid tissue in autoimmune prone BB rats. *Clin Immunol Immunopathol*. 1993;69:189–198. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8403556
335. Katakai T, Hara T, Sugai M, et al. Th1-biased tertiary lymphoid tissue supported by CXC chemokine ligand 13-producing stromal network in chronic lesions of autoimmune gastritis. *J Immunol*. 2003;171:4359–4368. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14530361
336. Galkina E, Kadl A, Sanders J, et al. Lymphocyte recruitment into the aortic wall before and during development of atherosclerosis is partially L-selectin dependent. *J Exp Med*. 2006;203:1273–1282. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16682495
337. Damas JK, Smith C, Oie E, et al. Enhanced expression of the homeostatic chemokines CCL19 and CCL21 in clinical and experimental atherosclerosis. Possible pathogenic role in plaque destabilization. *Arterioscler Thromb Vasc Biol*. 2006;27(3):614–620.
338. Grabner R, Lotzer K, Dopping S, et al. Lymphotoxin beta receptor signaling promotes tertiary lymphoid organogenesis in the aorta adventitia of aged ApoE-/- mice. *J Exp Med*. 2009;206:233–248. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19139167
339. Baddoura FK, Nasr IW, Wrobel B, et al. Lymphoid neogenesis in murine cardiac allografts undergoing chronic rejection. *Am J Transplant*. 2005;5:510–516. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15707405
340. Motallebzadeh R, Rehakova S, Conlon TM, et al. Blocking lymphotoxin signaling abrogates the development of ectopic lymphoid tissue within cardiac allografts and inhibits effector antibody responses. *FASEB J*. 2011;26(1):51–62.

341. Luther SA, Ansel KM, Cyster JG. Overlapping roles of CXCL13, interleukin 7 receptor alpha, and CCR7 ligands in lymph node development. *J Exp Med*. 2003;197:1191–1198. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12732660
342. Heikenwalder M, Zeller N, Seeger H, et al. Chronic lymphocytic inflammation specifies the organ tropism of prions. *Science*. 2005;307:1107–1110. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15661974
343. Gause A, Gundlach K, Zdichavsky M, et al. The B lymphocyte in rheumatoid arthritis: analysis of rearranged V kappa genes from B cells infiltrating the synovial membrane. *Eur J Immunol*. 1995;25:2775–2782. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7589071
344. Schroder AE, Greiner A, Seyfert C, et al. Differentiation of B cells in the nonlymphoid tissue of the synovial membrane of patients with rheumatoid arthritis. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1996;93:221–225. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8552609
345. Dorner T, Hansen A, Jacobi A, et al. Immunglobulin repertoire analysis provides new insights into the immunopathogenesis of Sjogren's syndrome. *Autoimmun Rev*. 2002;1:119–124. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12849004
346. Sims GP, Shiono H, Willcox N, et al. Somatic hypermutation and selection of B cells in thymic germinal centers responding to acetylcholine receptor in myasthenia gravis. *J Immunol*. 2001;167:1935–1944. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11489973
347. Stott DI, Hiepe F, Hummel M, et al. Antigen-driven clonal proliferation of B cells within the target tissue of an autoimmune disease. The salivary glands of patients with Sjogren's syndrome. *J Clin Invest*. 1998;102:938–946. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9727062
348. Kim HJ, Krenn V, Steinhauser G, et al. Plasma cell development in synovial germinal centers in patients with rheumatoid and reactive arthritis.*J Immunol*. 1999;162:3053–3062. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10072558
349. Nasr IW, Reel M, Oberbarnscheidt MH, et al. Tertiary lymphoid tissues generate effector and memory T cells that lead to allograft rejection. *Am J Transplant*. 2007;7:1071–1079. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17359505
350. McMahon EJ, Bailey SL, Castenada CV, et al. Epitope spreading initiates in the CNS in two mouse models of multiple sclerosis. *Nat Med*. 2005;11:335–339. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15735651
351. Schrama D, thor Straten P, Fischer WH, et al. Targeting of lymphotoxin-alpha to the tumor elicits an efficient immune response associated with induction of peripheral lymphoid-like tissue. *Immunity*. 2001;14:111–121. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11239444
352. Lee Y, Chin RK, Christiansen P, et al. Recruitment and activation of naive T cells in the islets by lymphotoxin beta receptor-dependent tertiary lymphoid structure. *Immunity*. 2006;25:499–509. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16934497
353. Kaufman DL, Clare-Salzler M, Tian J, et al. Spontaneous loss of T-cell tolerance to glutamic acid decarboxylase in murine insulin-dependent diabetes. *Nature*. 1993;366:69–72. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7694152
354. Wotherspoon AC, Doglioni C, Diss TC, et al. Regression of primary low-grade B-cell gastric lymphoma of mucosa-associated lymphoid tissue type after eradication of Helicobacter pylori. *Lancet*. 1993;342:575–577. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8102719
355. Wu Q, Salomon B, Chen M, et al. Reversal of spontaneous autoimmune insulitis in nonobese diabetic mice by soluble lymphotoxin receptor. *J Exp Med*. 2001;193:1327–1332. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11390440
356. Fava RA, Notidis E, Hunt J, et al. A role for the lymphotoxin/LIGHT axis in the pathogenesis of murine collagen-induced arthritis. *J Immunol*. 2003;171:115–126. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12816989
357. Martin F, Kearney JF. B-cell subsets and the mature preimmune repertoire. Marginal zone and B1 B cells as part of a "natural immune memory." *Immunol Rev*. 2000;175:70–79. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10933592
358. Chaplin DD. Lymphoid tissues and organs. In: Paul WE, ed. *Fundamental Immunology*. 5th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Lippincott Williams and Wilkins;2003:419–453.

CHAPTER 4

Evolution of the Immune System

Martin F. Flajnik • Louis Du Pasquier

INTRODUCTION

Defense mechanisms are found in all living things, even bacteria, where they are surprisingly elaborate. Although new adaptive or adaptive-like (somatically generated) immune systems have been discovered in invertebrates and the jawless fish, adaptive immunity based upon immunoglobulin (Ig), T-cell receptors (TCRs), and the major histocompatibility complex (MHC) is only present in jawed vertebrates (gnathostomes); because of clonal selection of lymphocytes, positive and negative selection in the thymus, MHC-regulated initiation of all adaptive responses, etc., the major elements of the adaptive immune system in gnathostomes are locked in a coevolving unit that arose in concert over a short period of evolutionary time.[1–3] In addition, a large cast of supporting players, including a large array of cytokines and chemokines, adhesion molecules, costimulatory molecules, and well-defined primary and secondary lymphoid tissues, evolved in the jawed vertebrates as well. This scheme was superimposed onto an innate system inherited from invertebrates, from which many innate molecules and mechanisms were coopted for the initial phase of the adaptive response and others for effector mechanisms at the completion of adaptive responses. Over the last 10 years, we have learned that various components of the innate immune system are also incredibly complex and locked as well in a coevolving unit.[4,5]

In each group of organisms, one can detect a basic set of immune functions, and these are employed in different ways in representative species. For example, we detect that in the jawed vertebrates fine tuning, or adaptations, or even degeneration of molecules/mechanisms in each group (Taxon) are observed, and not a steady progression from fish to mammals as is documented for most other physiologic systems.[6] Given that all the canonical adaptive immune system features are present in cartilaginous fish and apparently none were lost (except in particular groups of organisms that will be discussed), differential utilization of defense molecules rather than sequential installation of new elements is observed. In this chapter, there are only isolated cases of increasing complexity in immune systems, but many examples of contractions/expansions of existing gene families; thus, "more or less of the same" rather than "more and more new features" is the rule. We observe a bush growing from a short stem rather than a tall tree with well-defined branches, and thus deducing the primitive, ancestral traits is not clear cut.

GENERAL PRINCIPLES OF IMMUNE SYSTEM EVOLUTION

The Common Ancestor Hypothesis

Figure 4.1 displays the extant animal phyla ranging from the single-celled protozoa to the metazoan protostome and deuterostome lineages. It is often suggested or assumed by those unfamiliar with thinking in evolutionary terms that molecules or mechanisms found in living protostomes, like the well-studied arthropod *Drosophila*, are ancestral to similar molecules/mechanisms in mouse and human. While this is true in some cases, one must realize that *Drosophila* and humans have taken just as long (over 900 million years) to evolve from a common ancestral triploblastic coelomate (an animal with three germ layers and a mesoderm-lined body cavity, features shared by protostomes and deuterostomes) that looked nothing like a fly or a human, and thus *Drosophila* is not our ancestor (ie, the manner by which flies and humans utilize certain families of defense molecules may be quite different and both may be disparate from the common ancestor). Thus, understanding of how model invertebrates and vertebrates perform certain immune tasks is an important first step in our understanding of a particular mechanism, but we only deduce what is primordial or derived when we have examined similar immune mechanisms/molecules in species from a wide range of phyla. We will touch upon each of the defense molecule families and will emphasize those which have been conserved evolutionarily and those that have evolved rapidly.

Rapid Evolution of Defense Mechanisms

Immune systems are often compared to the Red Queen in *Alice in Wonderland*, (Red Queen's Hypothesis[7,8]) who must continually keep moving just to avoid falling behind. Because of the perpetual conflict with pathogens, the immune system is in constant flux. This is exemplified by great differences in the immune systems of animals that are even within the same phylogenetic group (eg, mosquito [*Anopheles*] and fruitfly [*Drosophila*], both arthropods, or human and mouse, both mammals). In fact, in contrast to what was believed previously, defense mechanisms are extremely diverse throughout the invertebrate phyla, and Kepler et al. have aptly and succinctly described the situation in the title of a recent review: "not homogeneous, not simple, not well understood."[9] In the jawed vertebrate (or *gnathostomes*), the most rapidly evolving system is an innate system, natural killer (NK) cell recognition, governed by different classes (superfamilies) of receptors in mice and humans, and also extremely plastic even

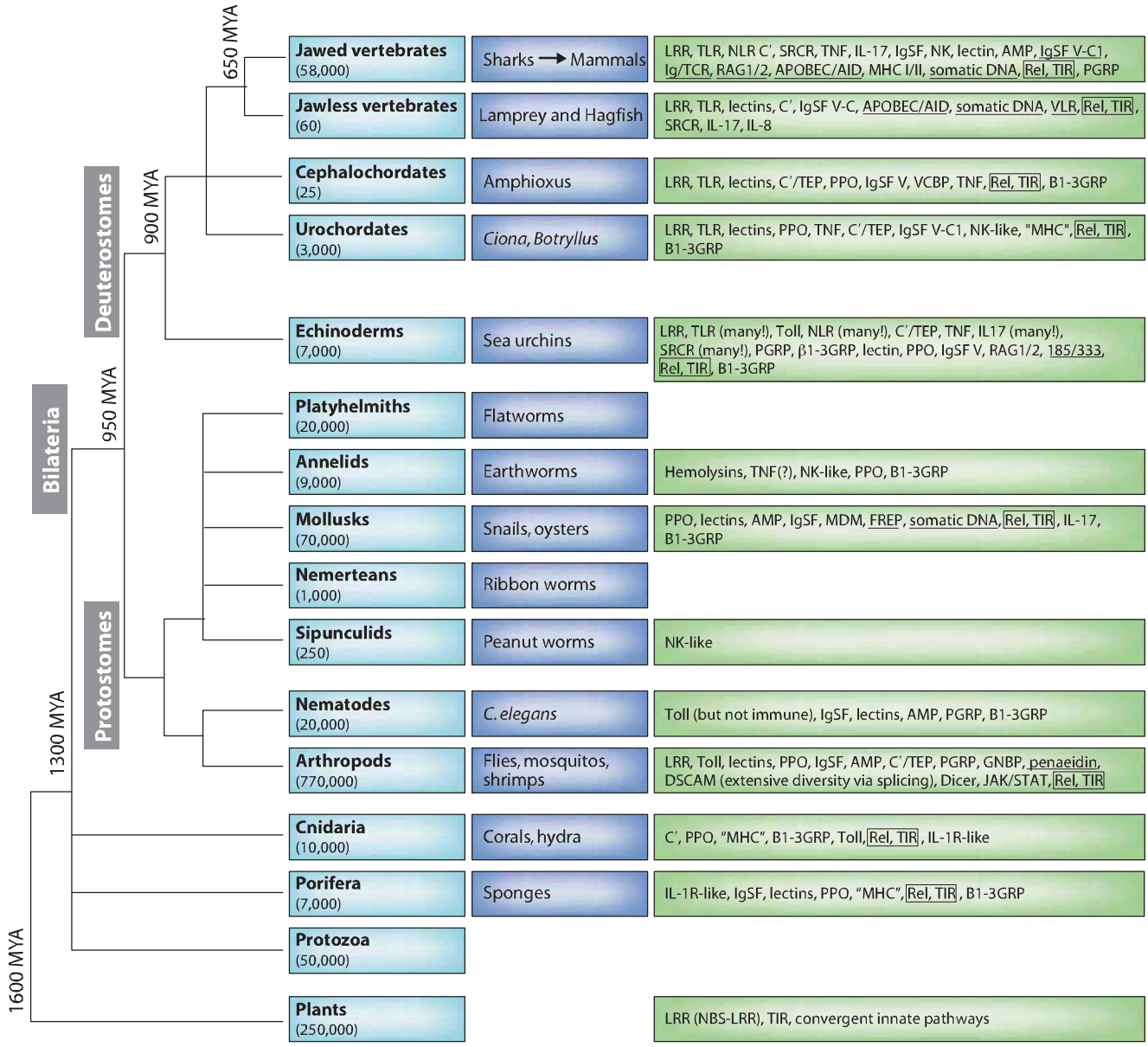


FIG. 4.1. Major Animal Groups and Immune Mechanisms/Molecules Described to Date in Each Group. The first box on the left in each row describes the animal taxon and the approximate number of species in that group. The next box shows specific examples of species or subgroups. The third box lists molecules/mechanisms found in each group: *underlined terms* indicate somatic changes to antigen receptors or secreted molecules. Figure modified from Hibino et al.[48] and Flajnik and Du Pasquier.[61] See Table 4.1 for definition of the acronyms.

within the same species, exemplified by the large number of killer immunoglobulin superfamily (KIR) haplotypes found in humans.[10] Studies of Ig superfamily (SF) genes expressed in the nervous system and immune system showed definitively that the immune system molecules evolve at a faster rate.[11] Finally, rapid evolution of immune system molecules and mechanisms is the general rule, but molecules functioning at different levels of immune defense (recognition, signaling, or effector) can evolve at widely varying rates.

Conservation of Defense Mechanisms

While the immune system is the most rapidly evolving physiologic system, nevertheless there is also deep conservation of defense families and mechanisms. Klein[11a] has compared this dichotomy to the two-headed god Janus, the major idea being that certain basic mechanisms/functions are obligatory for immune systems to function, but they still must evolve rapidly to avoid pathogen subterfuge. For example, MHC class I molecules have similar structure/function/features in all gnathostomes, but even within groups of primates class I genes are not orthologous (ie, they can be derived from totally different ancestral class I genes[10]). So, the idea is to preserve vital immune functions but rapidly modify the gene or pathway to outwit the pathogen. Additionally, certain features are conserved (eg, development and function of conventional αβ T cells), but a second, similar system, can be exploited in very different ways in closely related

species (eg, the function[s] of γδ T cells). The "Janus paradigm," therefore, can be quite useful when examining any pathway in the immune system.

Convergent Evolution

Early on in the comparative study of immunity, it was assumed that the same features appearing in different taxa proved that they were present in the common ancestor as well (ie, they were submitted to divergent evolution). While this dictum still holds true and establishes one of the dogmas of comparative immunology, later we discovered, because of the aforementioned rapid evolution of immune systems, *convergence* of similar functions has occurred in evolution (ie, the same function or even molecular conformation has arisen independently in different organisms, sometimes in species that are relatively closely related). While we will discuss several cases of convergent evolution throughout the chapter, for frame of reference, the NK cells, which use different receptor families in primates and rodents to achieve precisely the same ends of recognizing polymorphic MHC class I molecules, is a striking example of convergence.[12] Additionally, the emergence of a lymphocyte-based somatic generation of two entirely different receptor families for the same function in jawless and jawed vertebrates is another remarkable illustration of convergent evolution.[13] Finally, in innate immunity, the cytosolic nucleotide-binding domain leucine-rich repeat (NLR) proteins, despite their striking similarity in deuterostomes and plants, arose (at least) twice in evolution.[14]

Multigene Families

Genes involved in immunity are often found in clusters, with extensive contraction and expansion via so-called birth and death processes.[15] It is well known that such gene clusters can change rapidly over evolutionary time due to unequal recombination crossovers and gene conversion (and not only in the immune system, but in any *cis*-duplicating gene family). Often, families of related immune genes—especially those involved in recognition events—are found near the telomeres of chromosomes, presumably because this further promotes gene-shuffling events. Nonclassical MHC class I loci, NK receptors, and NLRs are conspicuous examples of this phenomenon, again believed to be a consequence of the race against pathogens. We will discuss many examples of how such multigene families have been exploited in different species throughout the chapter.

Gene duplication, either in the clusters mentioned above or as a consequence of en bloc duplications, certainly has been a major feature of immune system diversity and plasticity. The two types of duplications are not equivalent, the former being more taxon-specific and the latter (en bloc) having a lasting impact on the entire system. It is now universally accepted that two genome-wide duplications (the so-called 2R hypothesis[2,16]; see Fig. 4.13) occurred early in vertebrate history, tracking very well with the emergence of the Ig/TCR/MHC-based adaptive immune system.[2,17] This theory forms the basis for much that will be discussed concerning the evolution of the vertebrate adaptive immune response as one can track the emergence of new immune mechanisms, as well as fine tuning of old ones, by examining the paralogous syntenic groups of genes. Our view is that these genomewide duplications were as crucial as the "RAG transposon"[18–20] in the development of the Ig/TCR/MHC-based adaptive immunity. In addition, the common ancestor of bony fish (teleosts) underwent a third round of genomewide duplication, which many believe to have played the major role in these fishes' unique outlier status regarding immune system genetics and physiology.[2,21]

Polymorphism

In addition to gene duplications, polymorphism also augments the diversity of immune recognition within a population. It can be generated any time during the history of a gene family of either receptor or effector molecules: MHC, toll-like receptors (TLRs), Ig, TCRs, NK receptors (NKRs) and related molecules, and antimicrobial peptides (AMPs) are just a few examples. Polymorphism, either within the gene itself or in its regulatory elements, provides populations with flexibility in function of the changing pathogenic environment. This subject, central to the studies on MHC, leukocyte receptor complex (LRC), and NK cell complex (NKC), is becoming well documented for immunity-related genes in insects as well. In *Drosophila*, polymorphism in regulatory networks is indeed expected as parasites often target their elements.[22] In humans, there are two major NK cell haplotypes found in all subpopulations, which are under "balancing selection." In such a case, the polymorphisms presumably adopt a division of labor required for the maintenance of the species: one haplotype is believed to be involved in protection from virus and the other perhaps for promoting reproduction.[23]

Somatic Generation of Diversity

Somatic modifications can take place at multiple levels to generate immune system diversity. Long believed to be the sole domain of jawed vertebrates, modifications at the deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) level via somatic hypermutation, gene conversion, and rearrangement (primary and secondary [eg, receptor editing]) irreversibly modify genes within an individual. The well known V(D)J joining, class switch recombination (CSR), and somatic hypermutation (SHM) are examples of this processes in the IgSF receptors of jawed vertebrates, but modifications to genomic DNA can also occur in the jawless fish and some invertebrates.[7,13] The list of organisms undergoing such diversity of germline immune genes will only grow as more organisms are examined and more genome and expressed sequence tags (EST) sequencing projects are undertaken (see Fig. 4.1).

Alternative splicing can be a source of tremendous diversity in some gene families encoding receptors involved in immunity in insects and crustaceans. The Down syndrome cell adhesion molecule (DSCAM) gene in several arthropods (described in detail in the following) was shown to generate enormous diversity via ribonucleic acid (RNA) processing.[7,24] In the vertebrates, this mechanism is important in

determining the function of different molecules, best known for the Igs (transmembrane [TM] versus secreted forms, as well as inflammatory versus neutralizing forms in non-mammalian vertebrates). Further diversity can be obtained by the assembly of multichain receptors in which different components are combined. The classical example in the jawed vertebrate adaptive immune system is that of Ig light (L) and heavy (H) chains of antibodies but similar combination can occur with insect peptidoglycan-recognizing proteins (PGRP), vertebrate TLRs, and many others.

The study of the evolution of immunity has resulted in a fundamental appreciation of the heart of immunity, both innate and adaptive. Especially now, with studies in many plants and in both invertebrate and vertebrate animals, we can see what features have been conserved and when they arose. "Simple" genetic models such as *Drosophila* and *Candida elegans* provide a glimpse into these elemental mechanisms and also allow us to remove the clouds that surround studies of mouse and human, with so many interconnected pathways. As mentioned, examination of the well-studied mammalian models in combination with studies of invertebrates allows us to deduce the condition of the common ancestor. Interestingly, major pathways of defense known to all immunologists, such as the ones involving TLR, JAK-signal transducer and activator of transcription (STAT), NOTCH, and tumor necrosis factor (TNF) pathways, clearly arose in an early animal ancestor and have been perpetuated in derived fashions in all major taxa. We shall see how these pathways are manipulated in different animals, always drawing upon the best-known mammalian model as a foundation (whenever possible).

MAJOR GENE FAMILIES INVOLVED IN IMMUNITY

Defense molecules can be composed of a very large number of protein folds, some of which are clearly some used to a large extent.[25–27] Some of the most common families (Fig. 4.2) are IgSF, leucine-rich repeats (LRRs), C-type lectins, and the TNF family, and certain other domains in immune recognition (eg, scavenger receptor cysteine-rich [SRCR]). All of the domains discussed in this chapter are found in Table 4.1 and a few are displayed in Figure 4.2. As a means of introduction, two of these families, which constitute the "top two" quantitatively, will be described in the following.

Leucine-Rich Repeats

LRRs consist of 2 to 45 motifs of 20 to 30 amino acids in length (XLXXLXLXXNXHXXHXXXXFXXLX) that fold into an arc shape (see Fig. 4.2).[28] Both the concave and convex parts of the domain have been shown to interact with ligands. Molecular modeling suggests that the conserved pattern LxxLxL is sufficient to impart the characteristic horseshoe curvature to proteins with 20- to 30-residue repeats. LRRs are often flanked by cysteine-rich domains. LRRs occur in proteins ranging from viruses to eukaryotes and are found most famously in the toll/TLRs, as well as tyrosine kinase receptors, cell-adhesion molecules, resistance (R) factors in plants found at the cell surface, and in the cytosol, extracellular matrix (ECM)-binding glycoproteins (eg, peroxidasin), and are involved in a variety of protein-protein interactions: signal transduction, cell adhesion, DNA repair, recombination, transcription, RNA processing, disease resistance, apoptosis, and the immune response. LRR-containing proteins can be associated with a variety of other domains, whether they are extracellular (LRR associated with IgSF or fibronectin [FN] type III) or intracellular (caterpillar family LRR associated with a variety of effector domains; see subsequent discussion). In these chimeric molecules, the LRR moiety is involved in recognition, most likely due to its extraordinarily malleable structure. There are at least six families of LRR proteins, characterized by different lengths and consensus sequences of the repeats.[29] Repeats from different LRR subfamilies never occur simultaneously and have most probably evolved independently in different organisms.

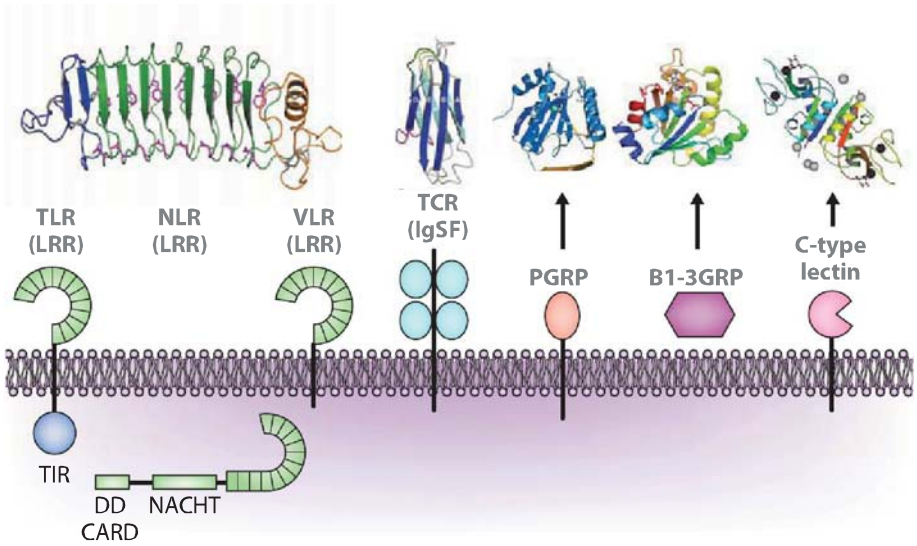


FIG. 4.2. Major Molecular Families Described in the Text and Representatives of Each Family: Leucine-Rich Repeats (LRRs), Immunoglobulin Superfamily (IgSF), Peptidoglycan-Recognition Protein (PGRP), β1-3 Glucan Recognition Protein (β1-3GRP), and C-Type Lectins. Representative structures are shown above for LRR (toll-like receptor, nucleotide-binding domain leucine-rich repeat [NLR], variable lymphocyte receptor), IgSF, PGRP, β1-3GRP, and C-type lectin. Other acronyms are defined in Table 4.1. For the NLR model, the echinoderms have N-terminal death domains, whereas all other animals have caspase-recruitment domains. Figure modified from Hibino et al.[48]

TABLE 4.1 Molecules and Abbreviations Found Throughout the Text

Acronym/Defense Molecule	Full Name	Function
AID	Activation-induced cytidine deaminase	SHM/gene conversion/CSR
APOBEC	Apolipoprotein B mRNA editing enzyme catalytic polypeptide	Innate immunity (antiviral)
AGM	Aorta/gonad/mesonephros	Intraembryonic origin of hematopoietic cells
AMP	Antimicrobial peptide	Innate immunity (eg, defensins)
APAR	Agnathan paired antigen receptor	Similarities to Ig/TCR and NKRs
AVR	Avirulence protein	Pathogen effector recognized by plant NLR
Bf	Factor B	Enzyme of C′ cascade
B1-3GNP	Beta 1-3 glucan-recognizing protein	Binds to gram-negative bacteria
C′	Complement	Innate/adaptive immunity
CARD	Caspase-recruitment domain	Domain in intracellular defense molecules
CATERPILLER or CLR	CARD, transcription enhancer, R(purine)-binding, pyrin, lots of leucine repeats	Apoptosis/immunity/inflammation
CDR	Complementarity-determining region	Portion of Ig/TCR that binds to antigen
CSR	Class switch recombination	Adaptive humoral immunity modification
DD	Death domain	Cytosolic interacting domain
DSCAM	Down syndrome cell adhesion molecule	Insect immune (adaptive?) defense and neuron specification
ECM	Extracellular matrix	
ETI	Effector-triggered immunity	Immunity in plants triggered by NLR
FBA	F box–associated domain	Intracellular domain
FcRN	Fc receptor neonatal	MHC-like FcR
FN3	Fibronectin type III repeat	Domain found in many innate molecules
FREP	Fibrinogen-related protein	Mollusk (adaptive?) defense
FuHC	Fusion histocompatibility	Histocompatibility locus in tunicates
GALT	Gut-associated lymphoid tissue	
GPI	Glycophosphatidylinositol	Lipid linkage to cell membrane (eg, VLR)
Hemolysin		Cell lysis
ICE	Interleukin-converting enzyme	IL-1β processing
Ig	Immunoglobulin	Adaptive immunity
IgSF	Immunoglobulin superfamily	Innate/adaptive immunity
IFN	Interferon	Innate (type I)/adaptive (type II) immunity
IMD	Immune deficiency	Insect innate defense
IRF	Interferon regulatory factor	Innate (transcription factor)
IRG	Immunity-related GTPases	Innate immunity
ITAM	Immunoreceptor tyrosine-based activation motif	Signaling motif for NK and antigen receptors
ITIM	Immunoreceptor tyrosine-based inhibitory motif	Signaling motif for NK and antigen receptors
JAK	Janus kinase	Signaling molecule associated with cytokine receptors
KIR	Killer IgSF receptor	NK cell receptor
lectins	For example, galectin, C-type, S-type	Many (eg, NKRs, selectins)
LITR	Leukocyte immune-type receptors	Fish NK-like receptors of the IgSF
LMP	Low-molecular-weight protein	Proteasome subunit
LRC	Leukocyte receptor complex	Gene complex containing KIR and many IgSF molecules
LRR	Leucine-rich repeat	Innate/adaptive immunity module
MAC	Membrane-attack complex	C′, pore-forming
MACPF	MAC-perforin domain	Potential pore former
MASP	MBP-associated serine protease	Lectin C′ pathway
MBP (or MBL)	Mannose-binding protein (lectin)	Lectin C′ pathway
MDM	Mollusk defense molecule	IgSF defense molecule
MHC	Major histocompatibility complex	T-cell recognition; innate immunity
MIF	Macrophage inhibitory factor	Innate immunity; inflammation
MyD88 (also dMyD88)	(*Drosophila*) Myeloid differentiation primary response gene 88	TLR adaptor
NITR	Novel immune-type receptors	Teleost fish NK-like receptors of the IgSF
NK cell	Natural killer cell	Vertebrate innate cellular immunity
NKC	Natural killer cell complex	Gene complex with many C-type lectin genes (especially NK cells)
NKR	Natural killer cell receptor	Receptor on NK cells

(continued)

TABLE 4.1 Molecules and Abbreviations Found Throughout the Text *(Cont.)*

Acronym/Defense Molecule	Full Name	Function
NALP	NACHT leucine-rich repeat and PYD-containing protein	Intracellular PRR
NBD-LRR	Nucleotide-binding domain LRR	Motif of intracellular defense molecules
NFκB	Nuclear factor-κB (Rel homology domain)	Evolutionarily conserved transcription factor
NLR	NACHT leucine-rich repeat protein	Intracellular PRR
NOD	Nucleotide oligomerization domain protein	Intracellular PRR
NOS	Nitric oxide synthase	Intracellular killing innate defense molecule
PAMP	Pathogen-associated molecular pattern	Conserved target epitopes on pathogens
PCD	Programmed cell death	Many pathways
Penaedins		Defense molecule in shrimp
PGRP	Peptidoglycan-recognition protein	Gram-positive bacteria defense family; receptor and effector
PPO	Propolyphenol oxidase	Plant/invertebrate defense (melanization)
PRR	Pattern-recognition receptor	Recognize PAMP, innate/adaptive immunity
PMSB	Proteasome subunit beta subunit	Proteolytic member of 20S proteasome
Polμ	DNA polymerase μ	Error-prone polymerase (related to TdT)
PPO	Prophenoloxidase	Invertebrate defense molecule
PYD	Pyrin domain	Domain in intracellular defense molecules
RAG	Recombination-activating gene	Ig/TCR rearrangement
RFP-Y	Restriction fragment polymorphism-Y	Chicken nonclassical MHC gene cluster
RFX	Regulatory factor X	Transcription factor, class I regulation
RIG	Retinoic acid-inducible gene	Intracellular double-stranded RNA recognition
RSS	Recombination signal sequence	DNA element next to Ig/TCR gene segments necessary for RAG-mediated rearrangement
RXR	Retinoid X receptor	Transcription factor encoded in MHC
SHM	Somatic hypermutation	Adaptive humoral immunity
SPE	Spaezle-processing enzyme	Insect defense molecule in toll cascade
SRCR	Scavenger receptor cysteine-rich	Innate immunity recognition molecule
TAK	TGF-β activated kinase	ubiquitin-dependent kinase of innate pathways
TAP (and TAP-L)	Transporter associated with antigen processing	Rransports peptides from cytosol to ER lumen
TAPBP	TAP-binding protein	Tethers TAP to class I
TCR	T-cell receptor	Adaptive defense
TdT	Terminal deoxynucleotidyl transferase	Involved in Ig/TCR rearrangement
TEP	Thioester-containing protein	Opsonization (like C3)
TGF	Transforming growth factor	Immunosuppressive cytokine
TNF	Tumor necrosis factor	
UPD	Unpaired	Protostome cytokine induced by viral infection
TLR	Toll-like receptor	Innate receptor on the cell surface or in endosomes
TM	Transmembrane	
TNF	Tumor necrosis factor	Proinflammatory cytokine (and family)
TRIM	Tripartite motif-containing proteins	Large family of cytosolic innate defense molecules
V-, C1-, C2-, I-	Variable, constant 1 and 2, intermediate IgSF domain	IgSF domain types
VAV	Guanine exchange factor, the "onc F" proto-oncogene	Encoded in MHC, involved in adaptive signaling pathways
VCBP	Variable domain chitin binding	Amphioxus defense molecule
VLR	Variable lymphocyte receptor	Agnathan adaptive defense molecule
WKRY		Plant transcription factor used to upregulate defense genes (analog of NF-κB)
XMIV	*Xenopus* MHC-linked IgSF V region	*Xenopus* MHC-linked NKR-like genes
XNC	*Xenopus* nonclassical	*Xenopus* class Ib cluster
185/333	Sea urchin defense molecule	(Adaptive?) Defense

DNA, deoxyribonucleic acid; ER, endoplasmic reticulim; IL, interleukin; mRNA, messenger ribonucleic acid; RNA, ribonucleic acid.

LRR-containing proteins are involved in immunity from plants to animals. The functions in the immune systems range from control of motility of hemocytes and lymphocytes[30] to specific recognition of antigens via a novel system of gene rearrangement (the variable lymphocyte receptors [VLR] described in the following; see Fig. 4.9). LRRs can occur in soluble forms, the ECM, in the cytosol, or as TM forms, either integral membrane proteins or glycophosphatidylinositol (GPI)-anchored. The bottom line is that because of its basic structure and malleability, the LRR module was locked in early in evolution as an ideal motif for recognition of essentially any ligand.

Immunoglobulin Superfamily

IgSF domains are encountered in a very large number of molecules in the animal kingdom (see Fig. 4.2).[31] They are found intracellularly (eg, connectin) or as cell adhesion molecules, many of which are in the nervous system (eg, the neural cell adhesion molecule, NCAM), coreceptors and costimulatory molecules of the immune system (eg, cluster of differentiation [CD]79, CD80), molecules involved in antigen presentation to lymphocytes (eg, class I molecules), certain classes cytokine receptors (eg, interleukin [IL]-1R), and of course Ig (and TCR), where they were first characterized and were bestowed with their name (Ig). They can be associated with other domains such as FN (eg, titin and FREP) and LRRs,[32] or they can be the sole constitutive elements of the polypeptide chain often associated to a transmembrane segment and a cytoplasmic tail (or GPI-linked). The β barrel IgSF structure was adopted independently in other families such as cadherins, calycins, lipocalin, etc., and the super (or über) family has hundreds of members and has been selected for several different functions. These functions are somehow related, almost all involved in protein-ligand interactions. The vertebrate lymphocyte surface can express 30 different IgSF members simultaneously.

IgSF domains are commonly classified according to different domain constitution in their β strands and loops.[31,33] All conform to the stable shape of a β barrel consisting of two interfacing β sheets, usually linked by a disulfide bridge. There are three types of domains: variable (V), and two types of constant (C1 and C2); the so-called I set domain is intermediate between the C1 and C2. The V domain is most complex with more strands (C′ and C″), which make up complementarity determining region (CDR) 2 in conventional Igs and TCRs. C1 domains lack these strands entirely, and C2/I domains have varying sizes in the C′/C″ region. V domains, either alone (eg, the new antigen receptor [NAR]) or in association with another V domain (eg, Ig H/L), recognize the antigenic epitope and are therefore the most important elements for recognition. Domains with the typical V fold, whether belonging to the true V-set or the I-set, have been found from sponges to insects (eg, amalgam, lachesinm and fascicilin) and even in bacteria. The mollusk fibrinogen-related proteins (FREPs, described in the following) have one or two V-like domains at their distal end, associated with a fibrinogen-like domain. For V domains, the interface between dimers is the beta strand bearing the C, C′, C″, F, and G strands, so that in Igs the CDR3 are in the center of the binding site; for C domains, the other beta strand bearing the A, B, D, and E strands forms the interface.

The binding capacities of V domains in molecules besides Ig/TCR can reside in different areas of the molecule (interstrand loops, A-A′ strand, F strand), while in Ig/TCR, CD8, and certain NKR, these regions are the targets for variation in shape and charge. The binding capacities can be modulated whether one domain acts as a single receptor unit (eg, IgNAR) or whether it is associated with a contiguous domain (eg, KIR, variable domain chitin-binding protein [VCBP]) or with another polypeptide chain (eg, TCR, Ig). In the case of a dimer, the binding capacity can again be modulated by the presence or the absence in the G strand of a diglycine bulge, which can modify the space between the faces of the Ig domain. In several cases, the sites responsible for binding are known (KIR, Ig, TCR); in many other cases, they are not known but inferred from crystal structures and/or variability plots (leukocyte immune-type receptor [LITR], chicken Ig-like receptor [CHIR], triggering receptor expressed on myeloid cells [TREMs], DSCAM, hemolin).

HEMATOPOIEIS AND CELL TYPES IN THE INVERTEBRATES

Invertebrate Cell Types

Examples of conservation of fundamental mechanisms of genetic control of developmental pathway between protostomes and deuterostomes, even in the absence of homology of the cells or organ considered, are accumulating: the organization and expression of the homeotic gene clusters and eye formation through the function of a complex of proteins including Pax-6.[34] The cell types involved, besides direct interaction with the external layer of cells on the skin, or external teguments, have been specialized cells of mesodermal origin devoted to defense. This is true for all coelomates where effector cells have been identified, but recent data have shown that cnidarian diploblastic organisms that lack mesoderm also have many of the same genetic systems as the coelomates[35] (see Fig. 4.1). The cells can be circulating or sessile, and often are found associated with the gut. Several morphologically distinct hemocyte types in insects cooperate in immune responses: they attach to invading organisms and isolate them, trapping larger organisms in nodules or forming large multicellular capsules around them. Indirect evidence for the role of hemocytes in immune responses can be derived by contrasting properties of such cells in healthy and parasitized animals (ie, modifications in adherence and opsonic activity).

All animals show heterogeneity of the free circulating cells, generically called hemocytes (arthropods), coelomocytes, amebocytes (annelids, mollusks, and echinoderms), or leukocytes (sipunculids). However, the repertoire of insect "blood cells" is clearly less heterogeneous than that of vertebrates. Basically, three or four types of cell lineages can be identified in *Drosophila* (Fig. 4.3[36]): plasmatacyte, crystal cells, and lamellocytes, and an equivalent number in *Lepidoptera* (butterflies). The functional roles they play consist of immune defense, disposing of apoptotic and other debris, contributing to the ECM, and modeling of the

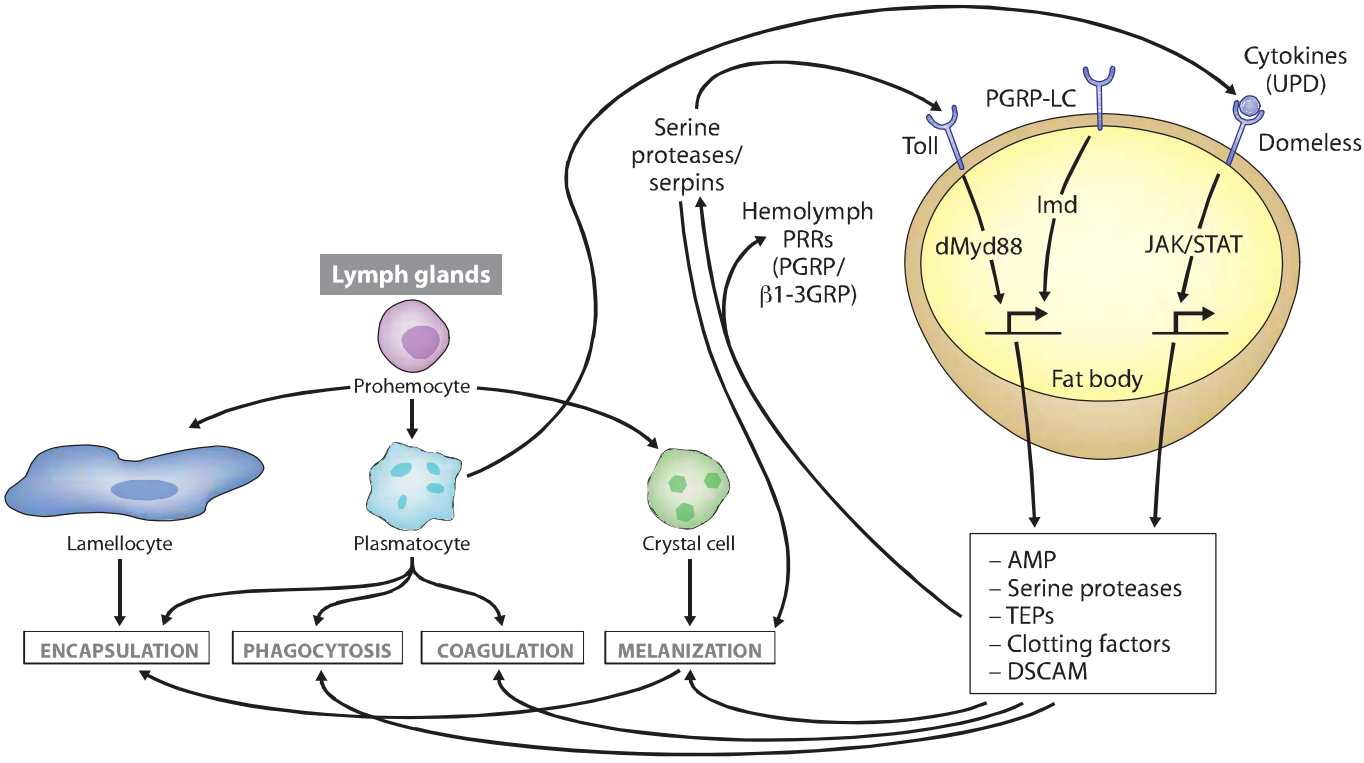


FIG. 4.3. Types of Immune Responses and Cells in Insects, with *Drosophila* as the Prototype. Secreted defense molecules are made by fat body cells in response to pathogens, which either act as direct effector molecules or feed back on hemocytes to stimulate their defense functions. Unpaired (UPD) is produced after virus infection, stimulating defense molecule upregulation via the JAK/signal transducer and activator of transcription pathway. Not shown is the RNAi pathway, also induced upon virus infection. Details on stimulation of the toll and immune deficiency pathways are found in Figure 4.4. This figure was modified from Lemaitre and Hoffmann.[36]

nervous system. The immunity role encompasses phagocytosis, encapsulation, and sometimes production of effector molecules (see Fig. 4.3[36]). These roles all require recognition of pathogen-associated molecular patterns (PAMPs) or self-derived defense molecules (ie, opsonization) at the cell surface.[37–40]

Only in a few organisms has the characterization of hemocyte lineages gone beyond morphologic or basic physiologic functions. Among these free circulating cells are always one or more types that can undergo phagocytosis. Different cells participate in encapsulation, pinocytosis, and nodule formation, and can upon stimulation produce a great variety (within an individual and among species) of soluble effector molecules that may eliminate the pathogen. In an attempt to integrate all of the data available in invertebrates, Hartenstein has proposed a unified nomenclature of four basic types: prohemocytes, hyaline hemocytes (plasmatocytes or monocytes), granular hemocytes (granulocytes), and eleocytes (chloragocytes).[37] These designations will be found in the following description of the blood cell types.

Earthworm (annelid) coelom-tropic coelomocytes are called eleocytes. They contain glycogen and lipid and are considered of the same lineage as the chloragocytes involved in the production of immune effector molecules such as fetidin or lysenin. The phagocytic cells of annelids are apparently granular "leukocytes" derived from the somatopleura and involved in wound healing, whereas the ones derived from the splanchnopleura participate in immunity. Heterogeneity of annelid coelomocytes is not encountered in primitive oligochaetes or in hirudinae (leeches). Phagocytic coelomocytes show an acid phosphatase activity and a beta glucoronidase activity.[41] The large coelomocytes and free chloragocytes (eleocytes) in the typhlosole of *Eisenia foetida* appear to produce the bacteriolytic and cytolytic factor lysenin.[42] From electron microscopy studies, macrophage-like cells seem to be involved in graft rejection. In the closely related sipunculid phylum, two main cell types can be identified in the blood: erythrocytes (a rare occurrence in invertebrates) and granular leukocytes. The latter are capable of cytotoxicity and even have dense granules reminiscent of vertebrate "NK cells."[43]

Two developmental series have been described in mollusks, the hyaline and granular cells, but cephalopods seem to have only one lineage. They participate in encapsulation, with hemocytes adhering around the foreign body like *Drosophila* lamellocytes. Phagocytosis is carried out by the wandering granular cells, which resemble vertebrate monocytes/macrophages. In oysters, electron microscopy revealed different types of circulating hemocytes, including granular hemocytes resembling the granulocytes of sipunculus mentioned previously.[44,45] In crustaceans, the situation is similar to that in mollusks, with three main populations identified based again on the presence of granules in the cytoplasm.

The hyaline cells are involved in the clotting process and the granular cells in phagocytosis, encapsulation, and the prophenoloxidase (PPO) pathway. The hematopoietic organ is located on the dorsal and dorsolateral regions of the stomach.[39] Crustacean hemocytes can now be cultured and their response to virus can be examined,[46] and markers of the three hematopoietic lineages are available.[47]

In insects, the so-called prohemocytes are believed to be stem cells. They are only found in the embryonic head mesoderm and the larval lymph glands but not in the hemolymph. However, prohemocytes are frequent in both the hemolymph and hematopoietic organs of the lepidopteran *Bombyx* (silkmoth). Plasmatocytes of *Drosophila* have a phagocytic function. This type of hemocyte is equivalent to the granulocytes of *Bombyx*, which play a key role in phagocytosis in larvae. Lamellocytes seem to be unique to *Drosophila*, but they are probably the equivalent of the lepidopteran plasmacytoid cells. Their precursors reside in the larval lymph gland, where they differentiate in response to macroscopic pathogens, following a brief phase of mitosis linked to the presence of the pathogens and under hormonal control via ecdysone. The transcription factors (GATA, Friend-of-GATA, and Runx family proteins) and signal transduction pathways (toll/NF-κB, Serrate/Notch, and JAK/STAT) that are required for specification and proliferation of blood cells during normal hematopoiesis, as well as during hematopoietic proliferation that accompanies immune challenge, have been conserved throughout evolution. The specific differentiation of lamellocytes requires the transcription factor Collier. The mammalian early B-cell factor, an ortholog of Collier, is involved in B-cell differentiation in mice. The *Drosophila* crystal cells are responsible for melanization through the PPO system (see subsequent discussion). In silkworm oenocytoids, crystal-like inclusions are also found, but they disappear later after bleeding.[36,37,40]

Echinoderm coelomocytes express a diversity of effector functions, but no studies of lineages have been performed. In echinoderms, the number of different coelomocytes may vary according to the particular family. The sea urchin is endowed with at least four cell types, only one of which only is phagocytic and corresponds to the bladder or filiform forms. Another type is described as the round vibrating cell involved in clotting. Pigment cells (red spherule cells) have been detected ingesting bacteria; the morphology of phagocytic cells can vary enormously, precluding any easy classification.[48]

In tunicates, amoeboid cells circulate in the blood and are involved in a large number of processes, such as clotting, excretion, nutrition budding, and immunity. Large numbers of blood cells are present (average of 10^7 per mL) in the blood of ascidians such as *Ciona*. Hemoblasts are considered to be undifferentiated cells, perhaps the equivalent of the prohemocytes of arthropods or the neoblasts of annelids. Blood cells in ascidians proliferate in the connective tissue next to the atrium. The pharyngeal hematopoietic nodule of this animal contains a large number of hyaline and granular cells called "leukocytes" with supposed intermediary forms of differentiation between blast and granular mature types. The granular form is likely to be involved in postphagocytic activity, like in earthworms.[49] Adoptive transfer of alloimmunity in the solitary tunicate *Styela* can be achieved via lymphocyte-like cells.

In *Amphioxus*, cells with phagocytic capacity have been identified in the coelom with a morphology resembling more the phagocytic echinoderm cells than urochordate blood cells, a fact that is consistent with the new systematic positions of amphioxus and echinoderms.[50] Both free cells and the lining of the perivisceral coelom are able to phagocytose bacteria. Cells with the morphologic appearance of lymphocytes and expression of lymphocyte-specific genes were detected in this species, the earliest identification of such cells in phylogeny.[51]

Hematopoiesis in the Invertebrates

The history of the hemocytes is associated with that of the mesoderm among triploblastic organisms. The bilaterian ancestor was most likely a small acoelomate or pseudocoelomate worm similar to extant platyhelminths (flatworms) (see Fig. 4.1). A specialized vascular system or respiratory system was probably lacking, although cells specialized for transport and excretions were likely present because they exist in most extant bilaterian phyla. One can further assume that groups of mesoderm cells in the bilaterian ancestor could have formed epithelial structures lining internal tubules or cavities (splanchnopleura). In coelomates, the mesoderm transforms into an epithelial sac, the walls of which attach to the ectoderm (somatopleura) and the inner organs (splanchnopleura). Blood vessels are formed by tubular clefts bounded by the splanchnopleura. Excretory nephrocytes are integrated into those vascular walls, which also gives rise to blood cells circulating within the blood vessels (the pronephros of anurans and head kidney of teleost fish are important hematopoietic organs in vertebrates). Thus, further evolutionary changes separated the three systems, but there was a close original connection between them.

The origin of hemocytes has been investigated mainly in arthropods. When examining principles that govern hematopoietic pathways, similarities have been observed with vertebrates, raising interesting evolutionary issues.[37,40] In jawed vertebrates, the yolk sac or its equivalent gives rise to blood precursors that are primarily erythroid in nature (but see the following: recent data suggest that B1 cells and macrophages are also derived from this embryonic tissue). In succession, definitive hematopoiesis occurs in the aorta/gonad/mesonephros (AGM) region of the embryo, encompassing all of the different cell types and multipotent progenitors (although this is controversial). Like in the vertebrates, hematopoiesis in insects is biphasic. One phase occurs in the embryo and the other during larval development. Additionally, these waves occur in distinct locations of the embryonic head mesoderm and the larval lymph gland. In the early embryo expression of the GATA factor, serpent (*Srp*) can be detected in the head mesoderm. This GATA family of zinc-finger transcription factors is conserved from yeast to vertebrates where they are involved in various aspects of hematopoiesis. Blood cell formation in the head

follows *Srp* expression, whereas in the lymph gland there is a long delay between *Srp* expression and the appearance of the lymph gland–derived hemocytes.[38] Hematopoiesis in the head mesoderm and yolk sac may be related evolutionarily. A further similarity occurs at the AGM/lymph gland level in *Drosophila*. The lymph gland develops from a part of lateral mesoderm that also gives rise to vascular and excretory cells, much like the vertebrate AGM. The conserved relationship between blood precursors and vascular and excretory systems is intriguing.

Hematopoiesis and Transcription Factors in the Vertebrates

As mentioned previously, transcription factors of the family PAX 2/5/8; GATA 1, 2, 3; ets/erg; and runt domain–containing factors have been cloned in several invertebrates. One plausible model to explain the genesis of true lymphocytes in vertebrates is that closely related members of transcription factor families are the result of a relatively late divergence in lineage pathways followed by specialization of duplicated genes.[52] These duplications could be those that apparently occurred during the history of chordates (see MHC and "Origins" section[2]). Within deuterostomes, the generation of true GATA 2 and 3 probably occurred after echinoderms diverged from the chordate branch and the GATA, ets, early B-cell factor, and Pax5-dependent pathways of T-/B-cell differentiation are thus specific to vertebrates. It is already known that lampreys express a member of the purine box 1/spleen focus–forming virus integration-B gene family that is critically and specifically involved in jawed vertebrate lymphocyte differentiation. Expression has been detected in the gut, which may be related to the fundamental nature of "gut-associated lymphoid tissue (GALT)" as a lymphoid cell–producing organ.

In vertebrates, the generation of T-, B-, and NK lymphocyte lineages from pluripotent hematopoietic stem cells depends on the early and tissue-specific expression of *Ikaros* (and related loci), which by means of alternative splicing produces a variety of zinc-finger DNA-binding transcription factors. The orthologs of *Ikaros*, *Aiolos*, *Helios*, and *Eos* have been identified in the skate *Raja eglanteria*, where two of the four *Ikaros* family members are expressed in their specialized hematopoietic tissues (epigonal and Leydig's organs; see subsequent discussion) like in mammals.[52] In lower deuterostomes, single genes that seem to be related to the ancestor of the Ikaros and Ets family of transcription factors exist, further suggesting that the division of labor between the family members in the jawed vertebrates was a result of en bloc duplications.[52,53] The conservation of *Ikaros* structure and expression reinforces its role as a master switch of hematopoiesis. We discuss this topic further in the lymphoid tissues section.

Responses of Hemocytes

In this section, we simply touch on classical and specific responses in the invertebrates, responses that are more universal are found in the innate immunity section. Proliferation of hemocytes upon stimulation is an unresolved issue in the invertebrates; clearly, clonal selection resulting in extensive proliferation is not the rule. The turnover of cell populations has been the object of numerous, often unconvincing experiments. Still, new data have emerged, and it is clear that in several invertebrates, proliferation occurs in certain cell types following encounters with pathogens. Very little cell proliferation occurs in the circulation of crayfish, but cells in the hematopoietic tissue divide after an injection of the PAMP β1-3-glucan. New cells in the circulation developed into functional synthetic germinal centers (GCs) and GCs expressing the proPO transcript. RUNT protein expression was upregulated prior to release of hemocytes. In contrast, proPO was expressed in these cells only after their release into the circulation.[54]

By contrast to the study of transcription factors that regulate hematopoiesis, relatively little is known about cytokines that drive hematopoiesis among invertebrates. It was reported that differentiation and growth of hematopoietic stem cells in vitro from crayfish required the factor astakine, which contains a prokineticin domain[55]; prokineticins are involved in vertebrate hematopoiesis, another case of conservation during the evolution of growth factors and blood cell development.

Parasitization of *Drosophila* by the wasp *Leptopilina boulardi* leads to an increase in the number of both lamellocytes and crystal cells in the *Drosophila* larval lymph gland. This is partially due to a limited burst of mitosis, suggesting that both cell division and differentiation of lymph gland hemocytes are required for encapsulation. In genetic backgrounds where ecdysone levels are low (*ecdysoneless*), the encapsulation response is compromised and mitotic amplification is absent. This ecdysone-dependent regulation of hematopoiesis is similar to the role of mammalian steroid hormones such as glucocorticoids that regulate transcription and influence proliferation and differentiation of hematopoietic cells.[56]

Phagocytosis

To obtain phagocytosis at the site of microorganism invasion implies recruitment of cells via chemoattraction. In vertebrates, this can be done by several categories of molecules such as proinflammatory chemokines/cytokines or the complement fragments C3a and C5a (as mentioned in the following section, C3a fragments as we know from mammals may be found in tunicates but not other nonvertebrates; yet, C3 may be cleaved in different ways in the invertebrates). C3b, mannose-binding lectin (MBL), and many other lectins can function as opsonins, and recent studies of the PGRPs, thioester-containing proteins (TEPs), DSCAMs, and eater have added to this repertoire.[36] Ingestion follows phagocytosis, and then killing occurs by an oxidative mechanism with the production of reactive oxygen radicals and nitric oxide. These mechanisms are conserved in phylogeny, and other basic mechanisms are being examined in more detail now in protozoan models.[57] Signaling pathways in common between vertebrates and the protozoon *Dictyostelium* include involvement of cyclic AMPs, integrins, and perhaps mitogen-activated protein (MAP) kinase cascades. Unique to all jawed vertebrates studied to date, the activation of

phagocytes also leads to upregulation of the antigen processing machinery, costimulatory molecules, and proinflammatory cytokines that can enhance adaptive immunity.

INNATE IMMUNE RESPONSES

Immune responses are often subdivided into recognition, signaling, and effector phases, which are subjected to different pressures, defined by whether orthology is maintained and the relative divergence rates of the genes responsible for the various phases. Recognition molecules are from evolutionarily conserved families, but as described previously, their genes are subjected to rapid duplication/deletion so that orthology is rarely preserved. By contrast, signaling pathways can be conserved (see Fig. 4.5), despite the fact that the genes are often divergent in sequence. Effector molecules can either be extremely conserved (eg, reactive oxygen intermediates) or extremely divergent to the point of being species-specific (eg, AMP). Here, we break the immune response down into these three phases, beginning with the recognition phase.

Initiation of an immune reaction can theoretically involve either the recognition of nonself, altered self, or the absence of self. Nonself-recognition can take place with receptors (pattern recognition receptors [PRRs]) that detect PAMPs, which were originally defined by Janeway and colleagues as evolutionarily conserved epitopes displayed by pathogens but not host cells.[58,59] The second mode, altered self, is typified by molecules that are induced in self-cells during infections and recognized by conserved defense molecules, similar to the SOS systems mentioned in the MHC section, or by peptide presentation on MHC molecules. A third mechanism, "am I still myself," depends upon recognition of self-tags and their changes in expression[60] (eg, NK recognition of self-MHC molecules through KIR and C-type lectins). These latter two mechanisms have not been described in the invertebrates for immune defense against pathogens, but it would not be surprising if they were revealed in the future, considering the new features of invertebrate immune systems that have been discovered recently and the usage of this mode of recognition in many invertebrate histocompatibility systems.

Whether the invader is related to its host (cells from individuals of the same species or cells from a parasitoid) or are very distant from the host (fungi and bacteria in metazoa), there are different principles of recognition. Yet PAMP determinants have been identified on very different organisms—sugars such as β1-3 glucan of fungi, lipopolysaccharide (LPS) and peptidoglycans of bacteria, phosphoglycan of some parasites, and especially nucleic acids of bacteria and viruses—and they can trigger similar cascades of events. The foreign ligand can be bound by a molecule in solution that initiates an effector proteolytic cascade (eg, clotting or the complement cascade). On the other hand, a proteolytic cascade can be initiated and result in the production of a self-ligand that interacts with a cell surface or endosomic or cytosolic receptor. In this way, there need not be a great diversity of cell surface receptors, especially in the absence of clonal selection.

Of the over 1 million described species of animals (see Fig. 4.1), approximately 95% are invertebrates representing 33 phyla, some with one species (*Placozoa*, *Cycliophora*) and others with over 1 million (*Arthropoda*). Because they have major differences in body plans, development, size, habitat, etc., wildly different types of immune systems in diverse species should be expected. Early studies of invertebrate immunology reached no consensus of how immunity should be examined, but because vertebrate cellular adaptive immunity was often defined (indeed, was discovered for T cells) through transplantation reactions, attempts to reveal specific memory by allograft rejection were often used. After many unsuccessful attempts to demonstrate memory of such responses (see the following) and after extensive molecular studies, a consensus was reached that an invertebrate adaptive immune system involving somatic generation of antigen receptors and their clonal expression was highly unlikely. However, the term "innate" is rigid and masks the possibility of other somatic alterations of invertebrate immune system molecules, as will be discussed.[61,62] We will categorize the molecules based on their location within the cell.

Intracellular Recognition

Nucleotide-Binding Domain Leucine-Rich Repeat (NLR)

One major group of intracellular sensors in animals and plants is the NLR family (see Figs. 4.2 and 4.4).[14,63] Each of the family members has a central NB/NACHT (nucleotide-binding domain) and C-terminal LRR used for recognition, and a unique N-terminal domain. The subfamilies are defined by their N-terminal domains, coiled-coil and toll-IL-1 receptor (TIR) in plants, and baculoviral inhibitory repeat, caspase-recruitment domain (CARD), pyrin domain (PYD), and activation domain in animals (see Fig. 4.4). Thus far, the NLRs have been found in deuterostomes but not protostomes (see Fig. 4.1), which is surprising considering that plants have intracellular defense proteins with a similar structure, and seem to have been derived via convergent evolution.[14]

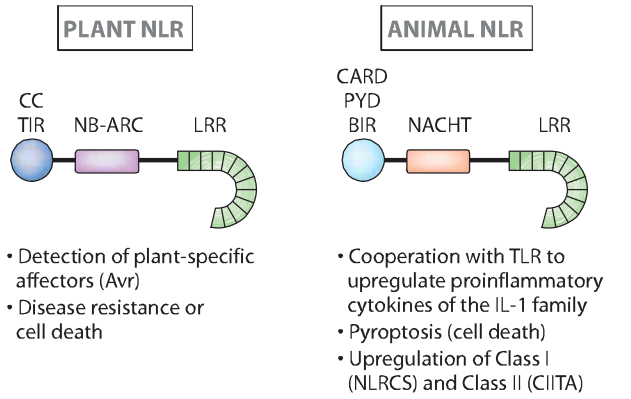


FIG. 4.4. Structure and Major Functions of Nucleotide-Binding Domain Leucine-Rich Repeats in Plants and Animals.[14] Although the structures are quite similar, and recognition can be analogous, these families seem to have arisen via convergent evolution (see text for more details).

The specificity of plant NLR depends principally on the LRRs, and these are targets for diversifying selection, as described previously for multigene families. Plant NLR can recognize pathogen effectors (pathogen-derived avirulence factors), or viral and fungal PAMPs directly via the LRR domains, or via modifications of a host target that interacts with the N-terminal domains, altered self if you will (see Fig. 4.4). This type of activation in plants is termed effector-triggered immunity, which is specific of the NLRs (see Fig. 4.4). A host of downstream effectors are generated, some involved in defense but others activating cell death pathways.[14,64]

Best described in mammals, the nucleotide oligomerization domain (NOD)/NLR recognizes PAMPs such as peptidoglycan and induces an autophagy-mediated destruction of intracellular pathogens as well as production of proinflammatory cytokines; however, it remains controversial whether there is direct or indirect recognition of the PAMPs (similar to some responses in plants). Polymorphisms in the NOD proteins are associated with inflammatory bowel diseases. The NLRP and NAIP NLRs are activated by in ways that are not well understood by various PAMPs or danger-associated molecular patterns and form inflammasomes, best known for the activation of caspase 1 and the processing of pro–IL-1beta (or mature IL-18) for release from cells.[14,65] The founding member of the family, CIITA, has long been known to upregulate class II genes (and associated genes, such as cathepsins and invariant chain), and its function is somewhat outside the norm. Another member, NLRC5, has been shown to upregulate MHC class I expression, but the mechanism is unknown.[66] While the shuttling of the vertebrate NLRs CIITA and NLRC5 to the nucleus seems to be a derived characteristic, movement of plant NLRs into the nucleus to activate transcription occurs, either directly or after recruitment of transcription factors like WRKY described in the following.

NLRs are expressed by echinoderm coelomocytes, again representing a highly diversified family[48] (> 200 members, similar to the TLRs and SRCRs). As mentioned, it is surprising that these genes do not seem to be represented in protostomes, and thus the emergence of the family in plants and deuterostomes occurred through convergent evolution.[67] On the contrary, in the vertebrates a search of the *Danio rerio* (and other teleosts) database have yielded a large number of NLR sequences, more similar to the situation in plants.[63] In humans, most NLR genes are encoded in clusters on chromosomes 11p15, 16p12, and 19q13, where six sequences are found in a single telomeric region.

Rig-I-Like Receptors (RLR)

The retinoic acid-inducible gene (RIG)-I is an intracellular defense molecule that is unrelated to the NOD proteins, with N-terminal CARD and C-terminal helicase domains.[68] With the helicase domain, RIG-1 binds to an uncapped 5′ phosphate group, which is diagnostic of viral RNAs. RIG-I also recognizes short double-stranded RNAs, while a second member of this family MDA5 recognizes long double-stranded RNAs. These molecules contain two CARD domains at the N-terminus, a DEXDc domain, a helicase domain, and a regulatory domain. Ligands bind to the regulatory domain, inducing a conformational change leading to interaction with the adaptor protein MAVS (or IPS-1) and ultimately to the induction of type I interferons (IFNs). A third member of the RLR family is LPG2, which lacks the CARD domain; this molecule was originally believed to be a negative regulator of RIG-I/MDA5-induced signaling, but that has been called into question.

This family is found in all of the vertebrates and in lower deuterostomes, such as amphioxus and echinoderms.[63] Somewhat surprisingly, the RLR family is only mildly expanded in sea urchins (12 members). While there is no report of bonafide RLR family members in protostomes but RLR activity is present,[69] the cnidarian sea anemone has been reported to have a RLR homologue,[70] again showing the importance of studying this taxon for the emergence of immune-related molecules.

Cytosolic Deoxyribonucelic Acid (DNA) Sensors

There are four mechanisms of cytosolic DNA sensing, three of them, the DNA-dependent activator of IFN-regulatory factor, IFI16, and RNA polymerase III (which converts viral DNA into RNA recognized by RIG-I), induce type I IFN production through the intermediate STING, a protein associated with the endoplasmic reticulum (ER).[71] In addition to being an intermediate in IFN upregulation (through IFN regulatory factor-3), STING is also a PRR in its own right, responding to the PAMP cyclic dinucleotides produced by intracellular bacteria like *Listeria*; this suggests that STING was originally a PRR, and then was co-opted by several other PRR sensors to induce effector functions.[72] IFI16 is part of the AIM2-like receptor family; the founding member, AIM2, like the inflammasome, activates caspase-1 to process pro–IL-1beta.

These new molecules/mechanisms have so far only been studied in mammals, but it would be surprising if they were not operative (at least) in other vertebrates as a way to combat DNA viruses. To date, they have not been found in the sea urchin or jawless fish databases.

Tripartite Motifs

Tripartite motif (TRIM) proteins belong to a family induced by type I and II IFNs, with 68 members in the human genome. TRIMs are involved in resistance against pathogens in mammals, especially lentivirus (eg, human Trim 5α is a retroviral restriction factor with activity against human immunodeficiency virus).[73,74] The activity of proteasomes, responsible for cytosolic protein degradation, has been implicated in the TRIM5α-dependent attenuation of retroviral reverse transcription. TRIMs contain an N-terminal moiety composed of three modules: RING (with an E3 ubiquitinase activity)-Bbox-coiled xoil motif followed by different C-terminal domains. TRIMs fit into two major categories by the function of their C-terminal domain: Category 1 with a PHD, MATH, ARF, FNIII, exoII, or NHL domains, and Category 2 with a B 30-2 domain shared with butyrophilins and other proteins and essential for ligand binding.[75] The tertiary structure of TRIM21 revealed two binding pockets in the B30.2 domain formed by six variable loops.[76]

Despite reports to the contrary, the TRIM family is ancient.[77] The family has been greatly diversified in vertebrates and in a taxon-specific manner, as observed for many multigenic immune families.[77] The zebrafish genome harbors a striking diversity of a subset of Category 2 TRIMs not encountered in mammals, called finTRIM, with 84 genes distributed in clusters on different chromosomes. This subset, specific of teleosts, is overexpressed after virus infection in the trout. In the B30.2 domain, residues under positive selection are concentrated within a viral recognition motif first recognized in mammalian Trim 5α.[78]

Finally, *trim* genes encoding Category 2 proteins are preferentially located in the vicinity of MHC or MHC gene paralogs both in fish and human, suggesting that they may have been part of the ancestral MHC.[79] The B30.2 domains most closely related to finTRIM are found among NLRs, indicating that the evolution of TRIMs and NLRs was intertwined by exon shuffling.[80] Exon shuffling was likely responsible for the presence of the B30.2 domain in butyrophilin and TRIM genes where it was perhaps favored by the proximity of gene in the MHC. It has been argued that during evolution the combination of SPRY and PRY motifs that build up the B30.2 domain were selected and maintained for immune defense.[81]

P47 GTPases

Among IFN-inducible immunity-related genes with an interesting evolutionary history, immunity-related GTPases (IRG/p47 in mouse) function as cell-autonomous resistance factors by disrupting the vacuolar membrane surrounding parasites (eg, toxoplasma).[82] The IRG system studied primarily in mice (absent in humans[83]) is present throughout mammals but the number, type, and diversity of genes differ greatly even between closely related species, one of the common themes in immunity described previously.

Concerning the evolutionary origin of the IRGs, the homologs of zebrafish and pufferfish seem to form two teleost-specific groups, another common theme in this chapter. Their putative promoter regions suggest an expression regulated by an IFN. Homology searches failed to find any convincing ancestral form to the vertebrate IRG proteins in the genomes of invertebrates, but in phylogenetic trees vertebrate IRGs clusters with some families of bacterial GTPases. Thus, IRGs may be derived from a prokaryotic GTPase acquired by a horizontal transfer subsequent to the appearance of eukaryotes.[82]

Integral Membrane (and Sometimes Secreted) Proteins

C-Type Lectins

Lectins were originally defined by their ability to bind carbohydrates in a calcium-dependent manner (how C-type lectins got their name[84]) and some have been described previously (and throughout the chapter). They are found in many phyla in both the deuterostome and protostome lineages in both membrane and/or secreted forms (eg, MBL described in the following). A large number of C-type lectins have been uncovered in the mosquito genome, and some are involved in bacterial defense through direct binding and others through the melanization reaction.[85] Some C-type lectins are encoded in the NKC, including the Ly49 and NKG2 families, as well as CD94 and several other members of the family are central to NK-cell function in mammals. A molecule resembling CD94 but unlikely to be an ortholog (see the following) has been detected on a subset of hemocytes in *Botryllus* and *Ciona*, the functions of which are unknown.[86] Another large gene family that is implicated in the response of the sea urchin to immune challenge includes 100 small C-type lectins,[48] consistent with the enormous expansion of several immune defense families in this animal. We describe other functions of C-type lectins in the NK cell sections.

Scavenger Receptors

The SRCR superfamily is an ancient (from sponges to chordates) and highly conserved group of cell surface and/or secreted proteins, some of which are involved in the development of the immune system as well as the regulation of both innate and adaptive immune responses; they are especially well known for their function in macrophages.[87] Group B SRCR domains usually contain eight regularly spaced cysteines that allow the formation of a well-defined intradomain disulfide-bond pattern. Scavenger receptors are best known for their housekeeping function of taking up lipids modified by oxidation or acetylation, but they have many other functions as well, such as uptake of apoptotic bodies (eg, croquemort in *Drosophila* of the CD36 subfamily[88]).

SRCRs have been studied mainly in the coelomocytes of echinoderms. Within a few hours after bacterial injection, sea urchin coelomocytes upregulate a variety of genes including an extremely diverse family of SRCRs.[48,89] A very large number of SRCR domains are present (approximately 1,200), but each individual may express different groups of SRCR genes at different levels (and even with differential splicing). To assume that they are all involved in defense is premature, as SRCR genes can be both up- and downregulated after infection with bacteria. As mentioned, this high level of gene duplication is a general rule in the echinoderms.

In mammals, the SRCR family as a whole is also poorly defined but is involved in endocytosis, phagocytosis, and adhesion, and some members acts as PRRs that bind to LPS or other bacterial components. SRCRs are widespread in the human genome and participate as domains in the structure of numerous receptors (eg, S4D-SRCRB, CD6, CD5-L, CD163), but without showing the high level of duplication seen in the echinoderm families.[87]

Down Syndrome Cell Adhesion Molecule

DSCAM in *Drosophila* and other arthropods was described originally by neurobiologists as an axon-guidance protein, dependent upon a large number of isoforms (> 30,000) generated by alternative splicing for the IgSF domains and the transmembrane segment. DSCAM is also involved in insect immunity, expressed in cells of the hematopoietic lineage, and clearly capable of binding to bacteria; like in the nervous system, a large number of splice variants are generated,

clearly different from the ones expressed in neurons.[24] In *Drosophila*, the DSCAM gene is composed of 115 exons, 95 of which encode alternative possibilities for splicing of exons 4, 6, and 9. The molecule consists of 10 IgSF domains and 6 FN domains, and present as either a membrane or soluble form, presumably generated by proteolysis of the membrane form. Each cell expresses only a fraction of the isoform repertoire.

Knock out (RNAi) and anti-DSCAM treatment significantly suppresses phagocytosis, at least in *Drosophila*. Soluble DSCAM constructs with different exon combinations were found to have differential pathogen-binding properties.[90] In addition, suppression of DSCAM in mosquitoes results in an impaired immunity to *Plasmodium*; exposure of hemocytes to different pathogens in culture gives rise to specific modifications and selection of alternative splicing patterns. A similar finding was made in crustaceans, in which particular DSCAM isoforms were induced in response to different pathogens in one species[91] and epitope II was under selection in a study in *Daphnia*.[92] The diversification of DSCAM seems to be specific of arthropods as neither flatworm nor sea urchin nor vertebrate DSCAM are diversified. The vertebrate DSCAM has only two forms, using two alternate TM exons. The cytoplasmic tail can also be modified by alternative splicing that could change its signaling properties by modulation of tyrosine-based motifs.[93] Human DSCAM is duplicated on chromosomes 21 and 11, but does not appear to be involved in immunity.

Peptodoglycan-Recognizing Protein and β1-3 Glucan Receptors

PGRPs are found in a wide range of organisms but have been best studied in insects, where they are classified into short (S) and long (L) forms. S forms are soluble and found in the hemolymph, cuticle, and fat-body cells.[94] L forms are mainly expressed in hemocytes as integral membrane proteins where their final structure depends on combinatorial association of different isoforms, modulated by alternative splicing. We provide a short description here, but delve more deeply in the discussion of the insect toll and immune deficiency (IMD) pathways subsequently (Fig. 4.5).[36] The expression of insect PGRPs is often upregulated by exposure to bacteria. PGRPs can activate the toll or IMD signal transduction pathways (see the following) or induce proteolytic cascades that generate AMPs, melanization, or induce phagocytosis. PGRPs directly kill bacteria by inducing a suicide mechanism, first demonstrated to be activated by a type of unfolded protein (stress) response in prokaryotes.[95] Besides their defense functions, insect PGRPs expressed in the gut are believed to promote homeostasis with commensal bacteria (also discussed briefly in the following). Both soluble and transmembrane forms are present in sea urchins, some with potential catalytic function.[48]

In vertebrates, PGRPs are all secreted and have direct microbicidal activity. Best studied in zebrafish, PGRPs are

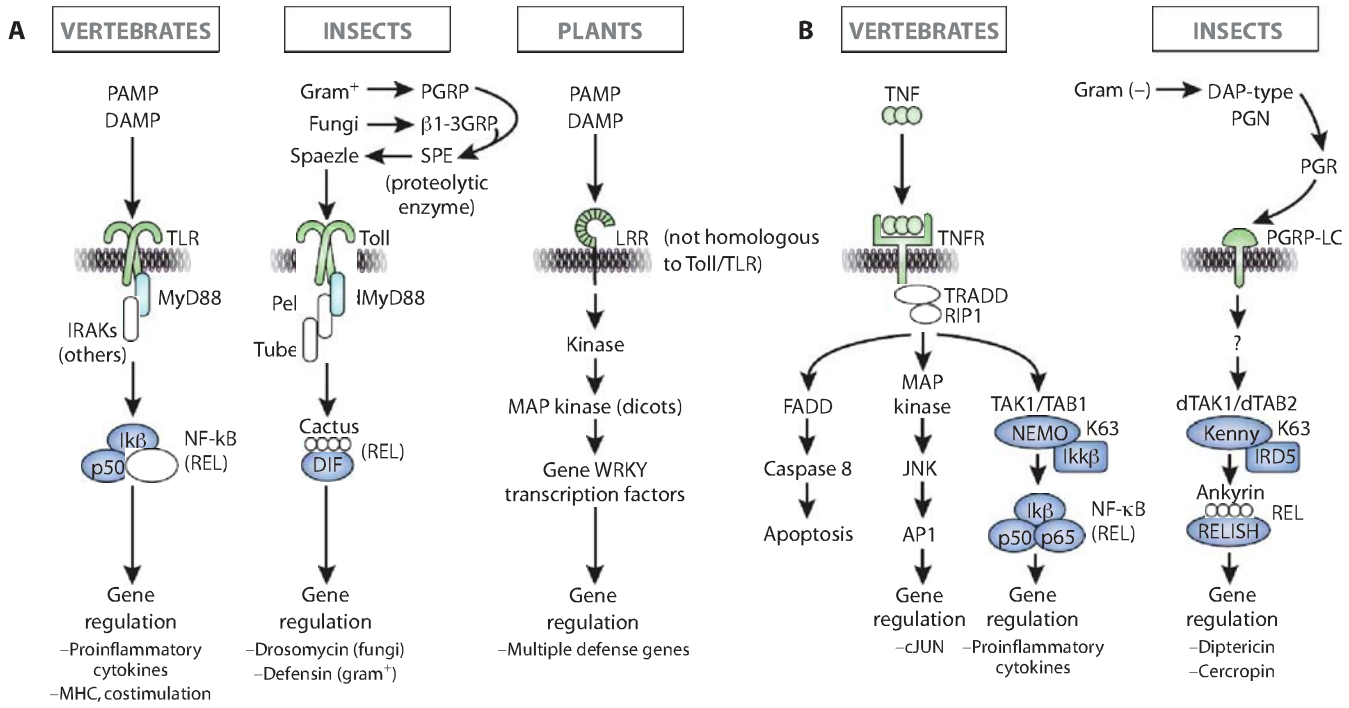


FIG. 4.5. Comparison of Immune Response Induction, Intracellular Pathways, and Immune Outcome in Insect (eg, *Drosophila*), Vertebrates (eg, human), and Plants (a Composite of Pathways in Monocots and Dicots). Note that the initiation of the response and the outcome(s) in insects and vertebrates are quite different for both the toll/toll-like receptor pathway (*left*, **A**) and the immune deficiency/tumor necrosis factor pathways (*right*, **B**), but the intracellular signaling pathways are well conserved evolutionarily in insect and vertebrate (details in the text). Note as well that plants use similar molecules for recognition (leucine-rich repeat–containing molecules) and have similar intracellular pathways with kinase cascades, but *all* of the molecules of recognition, signaling, and effector are derived by convergent evolution as compared to animals. This figure was modified from Beutler et al.[152]

expressed in many tissues such as gills, skin, and intestine, providing immune defense. They are expressed before the development of adaptive immunity and likely provide an important protective role.[96] The human PGRP genes are found on the MHC chromosomal paralogs 1q21 and 19q13/p13. All detected splice-variant isoforms bind to bacteria and peptidoglycan. Like the fish molecules, mammalian PGRPs are also positioned at epithelial surfaces and promote intestinal homeostasis by discriminating somewhat between commensal (eg, lactobacilli) and pathogenic bacteria. Knockout mice have increased pathogenic bacteria on mucosal surfaces that induce colitis after injury in the dextran sulphate sodium autoimmune assay.[97]

β1-3 glucan receptor proteins (β1-3GRPs, formerly known as gram-negative binding proteins (GNBPs) are related to bacterial β1-3 glucanases.[98] They are found in insects and other arthropods where they bind bacteria, fungal β-1, 3-glucans, LPS, and/or bacterial lipoteichoic acid (without necessarily showing glucanase activity) . An ortholog is present in the sea urchins, but not in vertebrates to date. *Drosophila* GNBP1 together with PGRP-SA are required to activate the toll pathway in response to infection.[36]

Toll and Toll-like Receptors

The toll receptors were originally described in *Drosophila* as genes involved in early development, specifically in dorsoventral patterning. Later, they were also shown to be essential sensors of infection, initiating antimicrobial responses.[36,99] This family was then revealed to be a major force in innate immunity in the vertebrates as well.[100,101] As mentioned previously, across the metazoa structurally closely related members of the toll family range from not being involved in immunity (in *C. elegans* and apparently in the horseshoe crab), to being the equivalent of a cytokine receptor (in *Drosophila*), to being PRR in the vertebrates and invertebrates.[102] Six spaetzle-like and eight toll-like molecules have been identified in *Drosophila*, but only one or two of them are clearly immunity-related.[36,102] In jawed vertebrates, they belong to a multigene family of PRR specific for diverse PAMPs and exhibiting different tissue distributions and subcellular locations.[27] In humans, many are on chromosome 4p and q (TLR 2, 1, 6, 10) but the others are distributed on chromosomes 9, 1, 3, and X.

Ectodomains of TLRs comprise 19 to 25 tandem repeats of LRR motifs made of 20 to 29 aa capped by characteristic N- and C-terminal sequences. All of the toll receptors are homologous and appear similar in domain constitution among all animals. They also share the TIR domain, which is the intracellular segment shared with the IL-1/-18/-33 receptors of vertebrates, as well as other molecules in plants. TIR domains associate with Myd88 to initiate signaling cascades culminating in the activation of NFκB/Rel (see the following) (see Fig. 4.5).

In *Drosophila*, the toll dimer is triggered by an interaction with the unique ligand spaetzle, which is the product of a series of proteolytic cascades, with the most critical enzyme identified (spaetzle-processing enzyme). Activation of the cascades triggers the production of antimicrobial peptides (see Fig. 4.5). The specificity of recognition is not achieved at this receptor level but rather in solution via other intermediates (see the following). *C. elegans* has only one toll receptor, and rather than being antimicrobial responses, it promotes avoidance of a flatworm pathogen upon engagement; the signaling mechanism for the *C. elegans* TOL (toll) is not evolutionarily conserved (it clearly does not induce the NF-κB pathway) and is under investigation.[67] A toll/TLR gene is present in the sea anemone, a cnidarian, but not in other cnidarians such as hydra or coral, which nevertheless have TIR domains associated with other molecules.[35] A TIR domain of the toll-receptor types was detected in sponges, but, like IL-1R in vertebrates, it is associated with a receptor with three IgSF domains.[103] Plants do not have toll/TLR per se, but do have LRR-containing transmembrane sensors that function in a similar fashion[102] (see Fig. 4.5). In summary, toll/TIR arose before the split of protostomes and deuterostomes, but has been lost in some invertebrate groups and has been recruited to perform multiple functions.

The arsenal of TLRs in vertebrates is endowed with specific and diverse capacities. Each vertebrate TLR has its range of specificities and, in addition, combinations of different TLR can create different binding specificities (eg, the association of TLR2 with TLR6 or TLR1 and 2[104] or even TLR2 homodimers in regulatory T cells[105]). This divergence in recognition function is well illustrated by the phylogenetic analysis of the toll and toll-related receptors in different phyla such as arthropods and vertebrates. Toll and related proteins from insects and mammals cluster separately in the analysis, indicating independent generation of the major families in protostomes and vertebrates.[102] Consistent with the expansion of SRCR and NLR genes in sea urchins, hundreds of TLRs also were found in this species.[48] TLRs of the protostome type are in small numbers (3 members) while the vertebrate type has been enormously amplified, all within a single family (222 members) and most without introns. Vertebrate TLRs do not diverge rapidly and evolve at about the same rate, and while there have been some duplications in amphibians and fish, they are not greatly expanded like in the echinoderms (no more than approximately 20 genes in any species).

Signaling Through Innate Surface Recognition Molecules

Four pathways of innate immunity triggering have conserved elements in eukaryotes: the toll/TLRs, the TNF-α/IMD receptors, the intracellular NOD, and the JAK/STAT. Although toll receptors have been found in almost all triploblastic coelomates, most of the work and the elucidation of pathways have been accomplished in *Drosophila* and *Anopheles*.[36] The diversity of AMPs that can be produced via the toll/IMD pathways is substantial, and as described previously is classified in several categories depending upon the type of pathogen recognized (eg, gram (+), drosocin, gram (−), diptericin; fungal, drosomycin) with different effector functions (see Fig. 4.5). Insect antimicrobial molecules were originally discovered by the late Hans G. Boman and colleagues in 1981, a seminal finding that

heralded the molecular analyses of innate immunity in the invertebrates.[106]

Toll and Immune Deficiency Pathways

As described, invertebrate toll receptors are homologous to the vertebrate TLR, in the sense that they are integral membrane LRR-containing proteins (see Fig. 4.5). *Drosophila* toll is activated after it binds spaetzle, the product of a proteolytic cascade activated in solution after the interaction of molecules produced by fungi or gram-positive bacteria with GNBP and PGRP.[107] The TIR cytoplasmic domain of the toll receptor then interacts with MyD88 (itself having a TIR domain) followed by Tube and Pelle, leading to activation of the homologous NF-κB system (Cactus or Diff) that then induces transcription of various defense peptides.[36,99,108] This is remarkably similar to the cascade of events following activation of mammalian TLRs where after their interaction with PAMPs at the cell surface, a cascade is induced through TLR including MyD88, IRAK, TRAF, TAK1, to NF-κB via the IKK signalosome. Thus, infection-induced toll activation in *Drosophila* and TLR-dependent activation in mammals reveal a common ancestry in primitive coelomates (or previous), in which defense genes under the control of a common signaling pathway lead to activation of Rel family transactivators.

The *Drosophila* IMD pathway is employed in responses to gram-negative bacteria[109] (see Fig. 4.5). After interaction with the cell surface receptor PGRP-LC mentioned previously, in a cascade similar to the mammalian TNF-αR signaling pathway, *Drosophila* tak1, an IKK signalosome, and a Relish-mediated (instead of Diff) NF-κB step, results in transcription of antibacterial peptides like diptericin. The *Drosophila* intracellular pathway is similar to the mammalian TNF-α receptor cascade, which also progresses via a death domain Mekk3, the signalosome, and NF-κB resulting in cytokine production. In both cases, a link to pathways leading to programmed cell death is possible; overexpression of *Drosophila* IMD leads to apoptosis. When the activation of either the fly toll or IMD pathway is considered, they are analogous to a mammalian cytokine/cytokine receptor system (eg, TNF-α) in which a soluble self-molecule activates cells via a surface receptor. Fitting with the paradigm put forward on recognition, signaling, and effector phases of the immune response, the diversity of external recognition systems is not matched by an equivalent diversity of intracellular signaling pathways.[22] There are conserved signaling cascades coupled to the receptors, giving the impression of conservation of the innate immunity pathways; yet, these pathways are also used in development, so which is primordial remains an open question.

Plants do not have toll/TLR, but do have transmembrane LRR-containing microbial sensors, of which FLS2 that binds to flagellin, is best characterized[27] (see Fig. 4.5). These molecules do not have an intracellular TIR domain (note that TIR domains exist in plants, but not associated with the TM sensors), but do recruit a kinase of a similar nature to the toll/TLR kinases (the so-called non-RD kinases) to activate downstream mitogen-activated protein kinase cascades. However, as mentioned previously, the NFκB transcriptional system arose early in the animal kingdom[110]; plants employ a different system of transcriptional activators, the WRKY molecules, which are activated directly by the mitogen-activated protein kinase cascades, similar to transcription factor found in animals, AP1.

Extracellular Soluble Receptor with Effector Cascade

Proteolytic cascades are initiated immediately following interaction of foreign material bound by preformed proteins in solution, and this principle is conserved throughout evolution. Indeed, the proteolytic cascade upstream of production of the toll ligand spaetzle resembles the complement or clotting cascades. The PPO cascade of arthropods leading to melanization and the genesis of antibacterial products described in the following is another example in which peptidoglycans on microbial surfaces initiate the cascade resulting in the degranulation of hemocytes.

The Complement System

The best-studied immune proteolytic cascade that is surprisingly well conserved in the animal kingdom is complement[111,112] (Fig. 4.6). In contrast to the other defense molecules that we have discussed, orthologous complement genes can be detected in all of the deuterostomes without a great deal of expansion/contractions of the gene family. The three major functions of complement in jawed vertebrates are 1) coating of pathogens to promote uptake by phagocytes (opsonization); 2) initiation of inflammatory responses by stimulating smooth muscle contraction, vasodilatation, and chemoattraction of leukocytes; and 3) lysis of pathogens via membrane disruption. Additionally, in the vertebrates, C′ is vital for the removal of immune complexes as well as elicitation of adaptive humoral immunity. The focal point of complement is C3, which lies at the intersection of the alternative, classical, and lectin pathways of complement activation. It is the only known immune recognition molecule (besides its homologue C4) that makes a covalent bond with biologic surfaces via a thioester linkage. C3 has a nonspecific recognition function, and it interacts with many other proteins, including proteases, opsonic receptors, complement activators, and inhibitors. In the alternative pathway, C3 exposes its thioester bond in solution, and in the presence of cell surfaces lacking regulatory proteins that block C3 activation (by cleaving it into iC3b), it associates with the protease factor B (B or Bf). After binding to C3, B becomes susceptible to cleavage by the spontaneously active factor D, resulting in formation of the active protease Bb that in combination with the covalently attached C3 cleaves many molecules of C3 in an amplification step. Another nonadaptive recognition system, the lectin pathway, starts with the MBL (or the lectin ficolin), which is a PRR of the collectin family that binds mannose residues on the surface of pathogens and can act as an opsonin. MBL is analogous to C1q with its high-avidity binding to surfaces by multiple interaction sites through globular C-terminal domains, but apparently it is not homologous to C1q. Like C1q, which associates with the serine proteases C1r and C1s, the MBL-associated serine proteases (MASPs) physically interact with MBL and not only activate

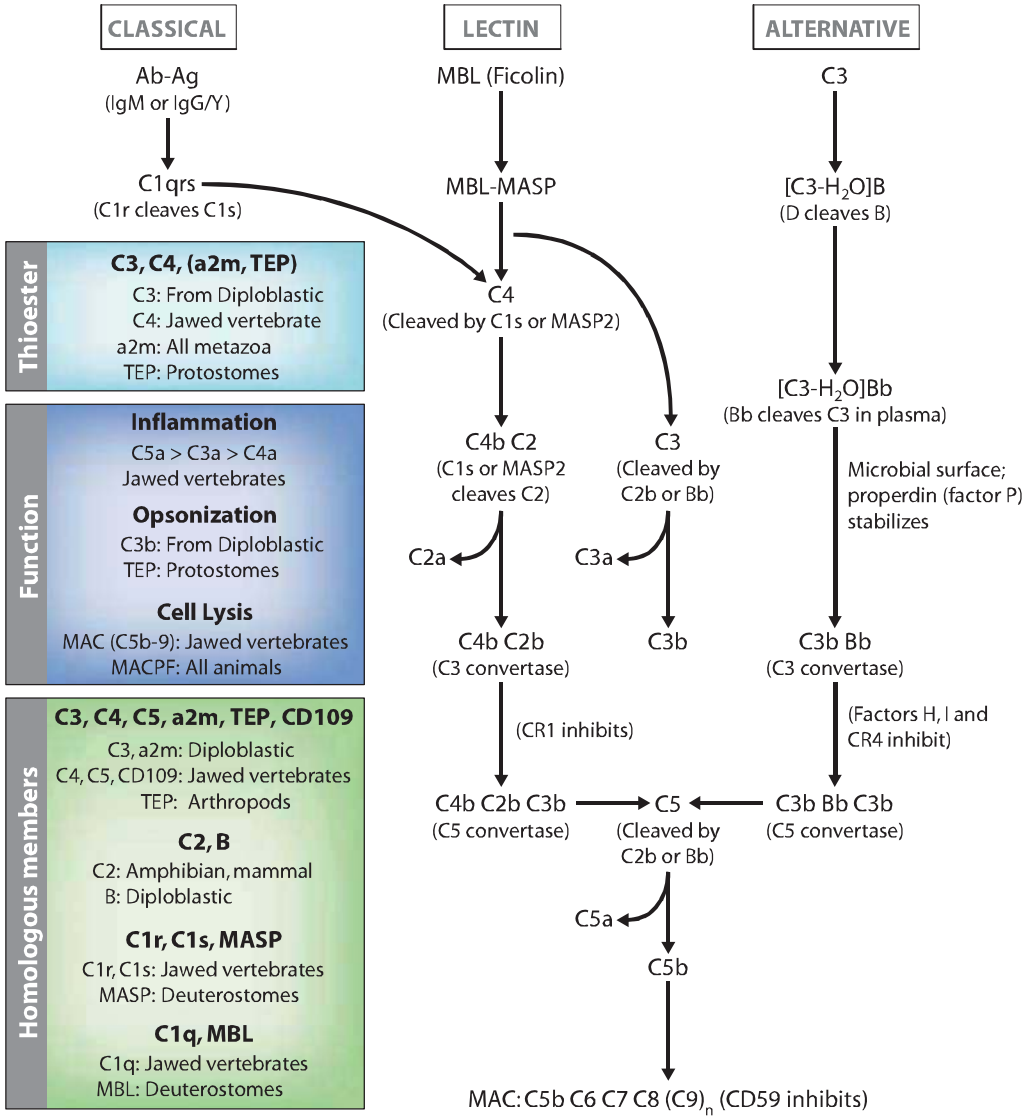


FIG. 4.6. Evolution of the Complement System. The general pathways and appearance of the various components in the phylogenetic tree are emphasized.

the classical pathway of complement by splitting of C4 and C2 (the same function as C1s; MASP2 appears to be the active protease), but also can activate the alternative pathway in ways that are not understood and thus completely bypass the classical pathway. Indeed, MASP-1 and -2 are homologs of C1r and C1s (see Fig. 4.6). Both C1q and MBL can promote the uptake of apoptotic bodies by phagocytes, via collectin receptors. Another lectin, ficolin, can also initiate the MASP pathway,[113] and it would not be surprising if other activators were discovered in the future (eg, the ancient molecule C-reactive protein is also capable of activating C′). Finally, the classical pathway, which is dependent upon antibody molecules bound to a surface, results in the same potential effector outcomes described previously for the alternative pathway. Novel molecules initiating this pathway are C1q, C1r, C1s, C4, and C2, as well as specific negative regulatory proteins such as C4-binding protein.

C3 and MBL (and ficolin) are vital players in the immediate innate immune response in vertebrates, and both have been described in nonvertebrate deuterostomes.[48,112] Thus far, the best-studied invertebrate systems for investigation of C3 evolution are the sea urchin and the ascidians *Halocynthia* and *Ciona*, in which C3 and B molecules and genes have been analyzed in some detail. In contrast to the very high levels of C3 found in the plasma of jawed vertebrates, sea urchin C3 is not expressed at high levels but is induced in response to infection in coelomocytes.[114] The C3 opsonic function clearly has been identified, but so far initiation of inflammatory or lytic responses (if they exist) has not been obvious. Receptors involved in the opsonization in echinoderms have not been identified, but in the ascidian gene fragments related to the C3 integrin receptor CR3 were identified, and antisera raised to one of the receptors inhibited C3-dependent opsonization.[115]

Hagfish and lamprey C3-like genes were thought to be ancestral C3/C4 genes because the sequence predicts two processing sites (leading to a three-chain molecule), like C4, but a C3-like properdin-binding site is clearly present.[116] However, like C3 in other animals the hagfish protein is composed of only two chains of 115 and 72 kDa, and sea urchin and ascidian C3 sequences predict only two chains (one proteolytic processing site). The lamprey, but not sea urchin C3, has a recognizable C3a fragment known from gnathostomes to be involved in inflammation, so the role of complement in inflammation may be a vertebrate invention (but see the following).

TEPs have been isolated from *Drosophila* and the mosquito *Anopheles*, as well as several other arthropods.[117,118] While the insect molecules function in a C3-like fashion (opsonization), phylogenetic analysis shows them to be more related to α2-macroglobulin (note that a few insects actually have molecules more related to C3). TEPs in insects function as opsonins, binding to parasites and promoting their phagocytosis or encapsulation. The evolution multimember TEP families in *Drosophila* and mosquito followed independent evolutionary paths, perhaps as a result of specific adaptation to distinct ecological environments as described in the introduction. The *Drosophila* genome encodes six TEPs (whereas there are 15 genes in *Anopheles*, again consistent with the major expansion of many immune gene families in the mosquito), three of which are upregulated after an immune challenge. Mosquito TEPs are involved in killing of parasites, and the reaction is regulated by LRR-containing molecules to avoid destruction of self-tissues; thus, full-blown complement-like systems complete with inhibitors have arisen independently in protostomes and deuterostomes.[119,120]

C3-like genes are present in cnidarians[121,122] and in the horseshoe crab *Limulus*.[123] Good phylogenetic support was obtained for their relationship to C3, as compared to other members of the thioester-containing family like the TEPs. Thus the emergence of C3 as a defense molecule predates the split between protostomes and deuterostomes. A gene resembling the proteolytic enzyme Bf was discovered in these protostomes as well (and in sea anemones), suggesting that the fundamental system was in place a billion years ago (see Fig. 4.1). The lack of C3 in many other protostomes suggests that the ancestral gene was lost and replaced by the TEPs.[117,118]

In jawed vertebrates and some lower deuterostomes, certain species express more than one C3 gene, suggesting that the innate system might compensate in animals that do not optimally make use of their adaptive immune system.[124] Changes in the amino acid composition of the C3-binding site are found that may somehow regulate the types of surfaces bound by the different isotypes.[125] Likewise, in lower chordates such as *Ciona*, C3 and other complement components can be duplicated.[115] Diversification of the carbohydrate recognition domains has been observed also in the *Ciona* MBP family (nine members).

Like Ig/TCR/MHC, the classical pathway and the terminal pathway membrane-attack complex (MAC) appears first in cartilaginous fish.[112] However, as MBL can activate the classical pathway in mammals, it is possible that some portion of this pathway exists in prejawed vertebrates. Nevertheless, C4 and C2 genes have not been detected to date in jawless fish or invertebrates. A bonafide C2 homologue has only been identified to the level of amphibians, although duplicate B genes were isolated from cartilaginous fish and teleost fish that may function both in the classical and alternative pathways. The lytic or MAC pathway, which is initiated by the cleavage of C5 into C5a and C5b, also has not been described in taxa older than cartilaginous fish. Thus, opsonization and perhaps the induction of inflammatory responses were the primordial functions of the lectin/complement pathways. However, a complementary DNA clone for CD59, a molecule that inhibits MAC formation in self-cells, was identified from a hagfish library, and some of the terminal components of the pathway have been detected in lower deuterostomes with no described functions.[116] Interestingly, proteins with the MAC/perforin domain have been detected throughout the animal kingdom,[48] and some are even involved in cytotoxic reactions; however, it seems that only vertebrates have bonafide terminal C′ components that are highly evolved for targeted destruction of cell membranes. The perforin gene itself also seems to have arisen in gnathostomes, from an ancient MAC/perforin domain-containing gene, macrophage-expressed gene 1 protein, which dates back to sponges; thus, cellular cytotoxic reactions in the invertebrates described in the following must use novel cytotoxic effector molecules.[126]

C3, C4, C5, and α2m (and TEP) are members of the same small family. A cell-surface–expressed (GPI-linked) member of this family, CD109, has been shown to associate with the transforming growth factor (TGF)-β receptor and modulate its expression.[127] The protease inhibitor, α2m, clearly present in invertebrates (protostomes and deuterostomes) and vertebrates, is thought to be the oldest, but obviously this must be viewed with caution considering the data in cnidarians. Along with its ability to bind to and inactivate proteases of all known specificities through a "bait region," it also has been shown to be opsonic in some situations. α2m, C3, C4, and CD109 (as well as the TEPs) have internal thioester sites, so this feature is primordial; C5 subsequently lost the site. The first divergence probably occurred between α2m and C3, with C5 and then C4 emerging later in the jawed vertebrates.[128] Consistent with Ohno's vertebrate polyploidization scheme is the fact that C3, C4, and C5 genes are located on three of the four previously described paralogous clusters in mammals, and this is also fits with the absence of classical (no antibody) and lytic (no MAC) pathways in phyla older than cartilaginous fish.[2] α2m is encoded at the border of the NKC in mice and human, and there are similarities between these regions and the other MHC paralogs (see Fig. 4.13). The C3a and C5a receptors that promote the inflammatory responses upon complement activation have been identified in several vertebrates and (perhaps) some lower deuterostomes; like the chemokine receptors they are G-protein coupled receptors whose genes may also be found on the ohnologs (C3aR, chr 12p13; C5aR, chr 19q13). If indeed such receptors are found in the prejawed vertebrates

as suggested by recent pioneering experiments in *Ciona* and *Styela*, it will be interesting to determine whether they are involved in some type of inflammation, thought to be the domain of the vertebrates.[129]

Melanization (Prophenoloxidase Cascade)

A major defense system in invertebrates is the melanization of pathogens and damaged tissues,[130] popularized by poor Gregor in Kafka's *Metamorphosis*, when the cockroach Gregor undergoes a melanization reaction from an apple thrown into his thorax by his father. The process is controlled by the circulating enzymes PPO and phenol oxidase. The system is activated by β1-3GRP, PGRP, LPS-binding proteins, and other proteins that can bind to various PAMPs (see Fig. 4.3). The complexes launch a cascade of serine protease activities resulting in cleavage of the pro-form of a prophenoloxidase-activating enzyme into the active form that in turn activates the PPO into phenol oxidase. This leads to the production of quinones and finally melanin. Melanization can completely inhibit parasite growth, whereas concomitant with PPO activation, many other immune reactions are initiated, such as the generation of factors with antimicrobial-, cytotoxic-, opsonic-, or encapsulation-promoting activities. The presence of specific proteinase inhibitors (of the serpin family) prevents unnecessary activation of the cascade and overproduction of toxic products. Phenoloxidase is the key enzyme responsible for the catalysis of melanization. It is a marker of the PPO activating system, and it can be an immune effector by itself as demonstrated in ascidians. It is therefore interesting to assess its conservation within all metazoa. A survey of the different organisms revealed the presence of phenoloxidase in many deuterostome and protostome phyla, and related molecules are also present in sponges. In arthropods, several PPO genes are present in the genome (nine in *Drosophila* and *Aedes*). Some may have different "immune" functions such as injury repair. Several components that would maintain the role of melanization in immunity may be lacking in different phyla even if many elements are conserved, and so far the best examples of melanization associated with immunity are still found almost exclusively among arthropods and to a lesser extent in annelids. Despite the presence of molecules involved the pathway, the PPO cascade per se does not exist in vertebrates.

Effector Molecules

Peroxidasin

Among molecules containing LRR motifs, peroxidasin occupies a special place because of its involvement in hemocyte biology in insects and because of its homology to the LRR motifs in the agnathan VLR and Ig domains similar to Ig itself. *Drosophila* peroxidasin is an assembly of a cysteine-rich motif, six LRR, and four IgSF domains.[131] The molecule is conserved in vertebrates, although a role in immunity has not been reported. Another molecule called peroxinectin, with similarity at the level of the peroxidase region, has been described in crustaceans and shown to be associated with immunity via the PPO cascade.[132] Its involvement in immunity is unlike any other effector so far described but illustrates the utility of LRR in many different types of molecules and processes. Pathogens bound by AMPs can be phagocytosed or walled off by a barrier of flattened hemocytes and ECM. The ECM forms a basement membrane that becomes stabilized partly through peroxidases that generate tyrosine-tyrosine bonds. The combination of LRR and Ig structures suggests that peroxidasin may precisely mediate adhesion of cells to the ECM.

As mentioned, a large number of LRR-Ig–containing proteins has been discovered, most of them playing roles in embryologic development.[32] Many LRR-Ig proteins are encoded in paralogous regions in the vicinity of immune genes, showing an ancient direct connection between the families (see the following).

Fibrinogen-Related Proteins

FREPs are proteins that were first discovered in the hemolymph of snails with an IgSF moiety (one or two V-like domains) and a fibrinogen domain. The fibrinogen domain is found in a large number of defense molecules throughout the animal kingdom (eg, the ficolins). FREP gene expression is upregulated following exposure to the mulluscan parasites such as schistosomes[133]; a snail strain resistant to schistosomes shows an upregulation of the FREP 2 and 4 genes of up to 50-fold. The original discovery of FREPs followed the recovery of snail proteins that bound to worm antigens, and thus this is one case in which the correlation between an invertebrate receptor and its ligand is clear. However, it is not known whether the IgSF or fibrinogen domain (or both) bind to the antigen or which effector functions are induced after FREP binding.

FREP diversity is remarkable in that there are many polymorphic genes as well as alternate messenger RNA splicing to generate the diversity. In addition, based on the number of genes and alleles in individual snails, there appears to be a somatic diversification mechanism that modifies FREP genes, either via mutation or gene conversion in the region that encodes the IgSF domains.[134] Over 300 unique sequences were found in 22 snails, consistent with a somatic diversification mechanism. Currently, there is no mechanism to account for the mutations, but data accumulate for somatic modifications and the use of FREPs in critical defense against pathogens.[135]

FREPs are also present in arthropods where they lack the Ig domains,[136] once again with an expansion of genes in the mosquito *Anopheles gambiae* as compared to *Drosophila*. RNAi studies have shown that subsets of FREP genes are vital for defense against malarial parasites, and different FREPs bind to bacteria with different affinities.[137] Homo- and heterodimers can form between different FREPs, and multimers can be fashioned that likely increase the avidity of binding. In summary, this ancient family of defense molecules has all of the attributes described in the introduction: rapidly evolving multigene family, conservation in divergent protostomic invertebrate phyla, somatic diversification via alternative splicing, and perhaps an unknown mutational/gene conversion mechanism, as well as heterodimeric (and multimeric) association.

185/333

There are a number of additional expanded gene families in the sea urchin genome that encode proteins with immune-related functions. The *185/333* genes were first noted because they are highly upregulated in coelomocytes after exposure to LPS, constituting up to 7% of the messenger RNAs in such cells.[138] Subsequently, transcripts were shown to be upregulated by many different types of PAMPs. The encoded proteins have no detectable similarity to any other gene family, but they are highly diversified and are produced (at least) by a subset of coelomocytes.

There are estimated to be at least 50 185/333 genes in the sea urchin genome.[139] The gene is composed of two exons, one encoding the leader and the other encoding the mature protein. The second exon is made up of so-called elements and repetitive sequences that are quite different from gene to gene, which can to a large extent explain the diversity of expressed loci. However, there are hints of RNA editing, a unique form of alternative splicing, somatic mutation (perhaps targeting cytosine residues), and other (perhaps) novel mechanisms of diversity to explain the incredible number of different isoforms; additionally, like many other defense molecules, there is evidence of protein multimerization. Whatever the mechanism of diversity generation, it would be surprising if this family were not vital for defense in echinoids. Furthermore, the presence of this unique multigene family in sea urchins is consistent with the great expansion of other immune gene families in this group, including TLRs, SRCRs, and NLRs.[7]

Variable Domain Chitin-Binding Proteins

VCBP, first discovered in *Amphioxus* but present in *Ciona* as well, consist of two Ig domains of the V type but with a different folding motif when compared to Ig or TCR V domains[140] followed by a chitin-binding domain. The chitin-binding domain resembles chitinases found throughout the animal kingdom, and like dedicated chitinases VCBP is usually expressed in the gut. Apparently, there are no cell-surface–expressed forms and thus all VCBPs are likely to be secreted, effector molecules. In *Amphioxus*, their diversity is enormous, apparently entirely because of polymorphism and polygeny, and not somatic alterations. Each individual can carry up to five genes per haplotype, and in limited studies (11 individuals), no identical haplotype has been encountered.[141,142] The general structure of the V domain is like that of the vertebrate rearranging antigen receptors, but with some unusual properties, including packing in a "head-to-tail" dimeric fashion, totally unlike Ig and TCR. VCBP diversity does not reside in the Ig/TCR CDR resides, but rather in the A, A′, and B strands, like in DSCAM.

By contrast to the *Amphioxus* VCBP, there are only a few nonpolymorphic *Ciona* VCBP genes, which are expressed by gut epithelium and amebocytes. Soluble VCBPs bind to bacteria and induce opsonization in amebocytes. It is hypothesized that these molecules may perform a function similar to mucosal IgA in vertebrates, which provides a "firewall" protecting from invasion of intestinal bacteria and promoting homeostasis.[143] If true, this would provide a link to the regulation of commensals in early deuterostomes. It should be noted here, however, that recent data suggest that "tolerance" of commensals occurs in the protostomic invertebrates as well.

Antimicrobial Peptides (Defensins)

Each metazoan taxon produces a variety of molecules with intrinsic antimicrobial activity,[144,145] the majority of which fall into three major categories: defensins, cateli-cidins, and histatins. Even in species with very small genomes (such as the tunicate *Oikopleura* [60 Mb genome]), selection pressures have been strong enough to lead to expansion of the Phospholipase a2 family, with 128 members.[146] Some families are evolutionarily conserved but generally they diverge rapidly and orthologous relationships are not apparent. The best studied group of AMPs is the *defensins*, which are amphipathic cationic proteins; their positively charged surface allows them to associate with negatively charged membranes (more common in pathogens), and a hydrophobic surface that allows them to disrupt the membranes, either by disordering lipids or actually forming pores. Most of the molecules are proteins, but an antimicrobial lipid called squalamine, which also is modeled to have hydrophobic and positively charged surfaces, is found at very high levels in dogfish and lamprey body fluids.[147] Defensins can either be constitutively expressed (eg, in respiratory epithelia in mammals) or inducible (eg, see the following for *Drosophila* and see Fig. 4.5). Certain responses that seem systemic, like the production of *Drosophila* defensins, can also take place locally in the damaged tissues themselves; otherwise, a systemic response is initiated in organs distant from the site of infection such as the fat body in *Drosophila* where induction of bactericidal peptide expression occurs.[36] Defensins are the focus of great attention in commercially bred species such as oysters, mussels, and crustaceans. Besides their direct defense functions, in mammals defensins play other roles, such as chemotaxis and immune regulation.

Penaedins. One set of diverse AMPs is the penaedins, present in crustaceans (shrimp). Penaedins are small antimicrobial peptides (5 to 7 kda) that bind to bacteria and fungi, and consist of a conserved leader peptide followed by an N-terminal proline-rich domain and a C-terminal cysteine-rich domain.[7,148] Most of the diversity is found in the proline-rich domain,[149] suggesting that it is most important for recognition, but both domains are required for recognition of bacteria and fungi. Four classes of penaedins, PEN2 to 5, are expressed by shrimp hemocytes. A great diversity of isoforms is generated, with substitutions and deletions within the proline-rich domain, suggesting that this domain recognizes ligand; nevertheless, both domains seem to be required for function. Like the VCBPs, each penaeidin class seems to be encoded by a unique gene and isoform diversity is generated by polymorphism. Multiple copies of penaedin genes are present in different species, and there is rapid expansion and contraction even within closely related organisms.

Responses to Viruses in the Invertebrates

Compared to immunity to extracellular pathogens in the invertebrates, the study of responses to intracellular pathogens like viruses is in its infancy.[150] First discovered in plants and in *C. elegans*, the RNAi pathway of defense against viruses is also operative in *Drosophila* and *Anopheles*.[151] Double-stranded RNAs (viral or otherwise) are recognized by the enzyme Dicer 2, generating small interfering RNAs that can associate with complementary RNAs and induce their degradation.

Viruses also induce an "IFN-like response" through a cytokine receptor (domeless) that is homologous to the IL-6 receptor and signals through the JAK/STAT pathway.[152] After viral infection, unknown signals (RNA, perhaps) induce the production of cytokines of the unpaired family that bind to domeless on neighboring cells and upregulate a large number of genes involved in defense (see Fig. 4.3). Nothing is known about the effector pathways of these responses, but mutants of one of the induced genes results in increased viral load. It should be noted that this pathway is not cell autonomous, inconsistent with the IFN pathway in vertebrates.

In a paradigm-changing paper, foreign antigen was shown to directly interact with *Drosophila* toll7, resulting in the induction of antiviral autophagy and inhibition of viral replication.[153] Toll-7 interacted with the glycoprotein from vesicular stomatitis virus at the cell surface to initiate the response. Thus, the dual paradigm of indirect and direct recognition by toll and TLR, respectively, must now be modified. There are several other tolls without functions in insects that might be involved in immunity, perhaps via such mechanisms.

In summary, arthropods (and presumably other invertebrates) use an RNAi pathway as well as a signaling pathway to combat viruses.[150,152] As opposed to the systemic plant RNAi response, the same pathway in protostomes is rather cell autonomous. This response was lost in the vertebrates, presumably because 1) viruses have been able to effectively counter this response and render it ineffective; 2) there have been remarkable evolutionary innovations in the vertebrate innate and adaptive immune systems to combat viruses; and 3) vertebrates use a Dicer pathway extensively to regulate expression of their own genes. The discovery of a viral immune response quite like a type I IFN response in vertebrates demonstrates that the three major signaling pathways of defense in *Drosophila*, toll, IMD, and JAK/STAT, are similar to the vertebrate TLR/IL-1R, TNF, and IL-6/IFN pathways, respectively (the first two homologous). Finally, other insect tolls may interact directly with PAMPs to promote antiviral defense such as autophagy or apoptosis. This is a field in which rapid progress will be made in the near future.

Natural Killing Activity Across Metazoa

The word "cytotoxicity" encompasses vastly different protocols of cell killing by of different cell types. It can be an effector function of cells of the adaptive (cytotoxic T-lymphocyte [CTL] or NKT cells) or of the innate arm (bonafide NK, see the following) of the jawed vertebrate immune system. Similarly the term "NK cells" covers different cell types and different functions. NK cells of vertebrates can "recognize" missing self-MHC class I, but also ligands induced on stressed cells following virus infection, transformation or stress. They can also have an immunoregulatory role by interactions with antigen-presenting cells (APCs). Many of these features obviously profit from a comparative approach.

In natural killing, the common denominator is a spontaneous reaction (ie, it does not require any [known] antigenic priming but only cell contact). Some form of natural killing can be observed from the earliest metazoans onwards. Some marine sponge and corals avoid fusion with one another by mechanism of cytotoxic cells or induce apoptosis at the level of the teguments.[154] Phenomena more similar to vertebrate NK killing are observed in sipunculid worms where allorecognition among populations was shown to result in killing of allogeneic erythrocytes by lymphocyte-like cells.[155] Similar cases can be also encountered in annelids and mollusks,[156] The role of IgSF and lectin receptors known to be involved as NK cell receptors in vertebrates has not been examined in these invertebrates, even though some candidate homologs have been identified. Note that the mechanism(s) cannot be perforin-mediated, based on the recent bioinformatics analysis on MAC/perforin domains described previously in the complement section.[126]

When comparative morphology or function is not informative, searching for conservation of transcription factors or cell surface markers may be useful. Survey of IgSF genes across databases have not yielded any promising candidates to date. Despite the presence of polymorphic IgSF members of the receptor tyrosine kinase family in sponges, their role in allorecognition or killing has not been demonstrated.[157] As mentioned, similarities were found among the lectin families, especially in prochordates where cytotoxicity has been reported and associated with a discrete population of hemocytes the granular amoebocytes. The urochordate genome (*Botryllus*, *Halocynthia*, *Ciona*) encodes many lectins with or without typical carbohydrate recognition signatures, among them a putative CD94 homolog has been cloned and its expression followed in *Botryllus*[158]; its predicted sequence does not match well to vertebrate CD94. This gene is differentially regulated during allorecognition in *Botryllus*, and a subpopulation of blood cells has the receptor on their surface in both *Botryllus* and *Ciona*. Phagocytosis is inhibited by an antiserum recognizing the *Ciona* homologue.[159]

Other C-type lection homologs of CD209 and CD69 are linked to the CD94/L gene on *Ciona* chromosome 1 (L.D.P., personal observation). Could they be part of a "pre-NK complex"? Interestingly, all the human homologs of those lectin genes are present either in the NK complex on 12 p13 (CD94, CD69) or on an MHC paralog 19p13 (CD209). Taken together with studies of the chicken MHC which encodes some C-type lectins (see the following), the data suggest that a conserved MHC-linked region containing several lectin genes was present before the emergence of MHC class I and II genes.[2]

In addition, a number of genes encoding membrane proteins with extracellular C-type lectin or immunoreceptor tyrosine-based inhibitory motifs (ITIMs) and immunoreceptor tyrosine-based activation motif s (ITAMs) (plus their associated signal transduction molecules) were identified in *Ciona*, which suggests that activating and inhibitory receptors have an MHC class I– and II–independent function and an early evolutionary origin.[160] The ligands of these *Ciona* molecules are of great interest to uncover.

Natural Killer and Natural Killer–Like Cells

NK cells express both activating and inhibitory cell surface receptors; in fact, the paradigm for positive and negative signaling via such receptors began with these cells[60,161]; however, activating and inhibitory receptors (often paired) are conserved throughout vertebrates and invertebrate deuterostomes, and are expressed in hematopoietic cells of all types. In NK cells, stimulation of the activating receptors, which associate with proteins having an intracellular ITAM (CD3ζ, DAP12, or DAP10 conserved at least to the level of bony fish[162]), results in killing of target cells. Inhibitory signaling receptors all possess cytoplasmic ITIMs, which recruit phosphatases and generally are dominant over the activating receptors. These receptors fall in two categories IgSF and C-type lectin group V(II). In general, NKRs recognize MHC class I molecules of either the classical or nonclassical type, the latter sometimes encoded by viruses.[163]

General Evolution of Natural Killer Receptor Families. As mentioned, NK cells in mammals can use different types of receptors, even encoded by different gene families, IgSF (KIR) in primates and C-type lectins (Ly49) in rodents. A few receptors are conserved but most others are highly variable. Very few families show conservation of domains throughout the jawed vertebrates.[163] When dealing with the origin of these genes in invertebrates, one has to imagine under what pressures they evolved. The question remains as to whether NK cells, or NK-like cells, preceded the emergence of T- and B-lymphocytes.

As described in the introduction, NKRs are the most rapidly evolving molecular component of the gnathostome immune system. Most ligands for these diverse NKRs are MHC class I molecules, or molecules of host or pathogen origin related to MHC class I. The KIR families are divergent, as very few genes are conserved even between chimpanzees and humans, and there are different numbers of genes in KIR haplotypes within a species. Humans have two KIR haplotypes A and B, one encoding a large number of activating receptors and the other very few.[23] It is speculated that the haplotypes are under balancing selection within the population both for defense against virus and for maternal/fetal interactions. By contrast, CD94 and NKG2 receptors are conserved throughout mammals. So whereas receptors for polymorphic class I molecules are divergent, those for nonpolymorphic or stress-induced class I molecules are relatively conserved (despite the fact that their ligands Qa1 and HLA-E are not orthologous). NK cells play other important roles in other innate immune responses, for example in antiviral immunity. NK cell recognition of virus-infected cells engages the activating KIR and Ly49 receptors and NKG2D in this process. Thus, viruses are hypothesized to supply the evolutionary pressure on diversification of NKRs. In fact, it has been shown in mice that inhibitory receptors can rapidly mutate into activating receptors when viral "decoy" class I molecules evolve to engage inhibitory receptors.[164] Generally speaking, inhibitory receptors are older and more conserved, whereas activating receptors evolve more rapidly and can be derived from inhibitory receptors via mutations that result in loss of the ITIM.[165]

Comparative Studies of Natural Killer Function. NK cells were detected in *Xenopus* by in vitro ^{51}Cr-release assays. Splenocyte effectors from early thymectomized frogs spontaneously lyse allogeneic thymus tumor cell lines that lack MHC antigen expression.[166] This activity is increased after the injection of tumor cells or after treating the splenocytes in vitro with mitogens, suggesting lymphokine activation of the killers. Splenocytes isolated with an anti-NK monoclonal antibody (mAb) revealed large lymphoid cells with distinct pseudopodia. Immunohistology indicated that each anti-NK mAb routinely labeled cells within the gut epithelium but NK cells were difficult to visualize in spleen sections.[167]

In amphibians, NK cell studies are especially interesting because of natural experiments done by nature (ie, the absence or low levels of MHC classical class I during larval life of some species like *Xenopus*).[168] They are bonafide NK cells, distinct from T cells, as they fail to express TCR Vβ transcripts. NK emerge in late larval life, 7 weeks postfertilization, which is about 2 weeks after the time when cell surface class I can be detected. The proportion of splenic NK cells remains very low until 3 to 4 months of age, but by 1 year there is a sizeable population. Therefore, NK cells fail to develop prior to MHC class I protein normal expression (at least NK cells of the type that can be measured with these assays and with NK cell–specific mAbs) and do not contribute to the larval immune system, whereas they do provide an important backup for T cells in the adult frog by contributing to antitumor immunity.

NK cells have also been described in a number of teleost fish with the most in-depth studies in catfish, in which there are clonal likes of cytotoxic cells,[167] some that clearly lack TCR expression.[169] A subset of the fish NK cell bears a high-affinity FcR that can be utilized for antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity.[170] Other subsets of NK cells spontaneously kill allogeneic targets. Further study of these cloned lines may provide much needed information on NK function in phylogeny.

Phylogeny of Natural Killer Lectins

Besides the well-described Ly49 family of receptors in rodents (and horse) and the CD94 and NKG2 families in all mammals, other mammalian NKRs are of interest. Studies in mammals have shown that some NKC-encoded lectin-like receptors in the Nkrp-l family can recognize other lectin-like molecules, termed Clr, also encoded in the NKC.[171] Having linked loci encoding receptor-ligand pairs suggests a genetic

strategy to preserve this interaction; perhaps the CD94 homologs of invertebrates are genetically linked to genes encoding their ligands. In addition, as described in the following, the close genetic linkage of receptor and ligand genes is a common theme in "histocompatibility reactions" throughout the animal and plant kingdoms described below.

In chickens, a single gene similar to CD94/NKG2 is encoded in a region syntenic with the mammalian NKC.[172] It is linked to CD69, another C-type lectin also encoded in the NKC of mouse/human. Chickens and quail MHC encode two C-type lectin NKR B-lec and B-NK, the latter being most similar to NKPR1.[173] Other C-type lectins are found in the RFP-y locus, one that is also most similar to NKRP1.[174] These linkages give credence to the idea that the NKC and MHC were syntenic in early jawed vertebrates (see the following). While C-type lectin genes with some similarity to mammalian NKR have been detected in ectothermic vertebrates, no convincing orthology or synteny to the NKC has been found to date. In mammals including marsupials, NKG2D is conserved, and CD94/NKG2 is found in mammals and birds (as well as NKPR1).[163] If such C-type lectin NKR are found in the future in cold-blooded vertebrates, they will have to be studied in functional assays.

Given the apparent lack of MHC class I and class II in agnathans and their convergently acquired adaptive immune system (see the following), it is difficult to envisage how NK cells with receptors of any type might function in these animals. It should be mentioned, however, that sequence similarity might be difficult to detect for an MHC peptide-binding region (PBR), given the rapid rate of evolution of this gene family. Furthermore, it would not be shocking if there were NK cells with ligands encoded by other gene families—in mammals, ligands for some activating NKRs have not been identified. It would be of interest to study the non-VLR–expressing lymphocytes in agnathans (if such cells exist) for their killing potential or gene expression.

Phylogeny of Immunoglobulin Superfamily Natural Killer Receptors

IgSF-activating receptors have been recognized from cartilaginous fish onwards with a convincing activating NKp44 homolog first found in carp (called NILT), but with no functional data.[175] Subsequently, this family was found in other bony and cartilaginous fish and definitive orthology to mammalian NKp44 was shown. The activating receptor NKp30 is also conserved, with orthologs found to the level of cartilaginous fish[176]; in addition, as described in the MHC section, there are V(J) genes within the frog MHC called XMIV that are ancient homologues of NKp30 and may be NKRs of both activating and inhibitory types.[177] The ligand for NKp30 has recently been uncovered, the stress-induced molecule B7H6.[178] Interestingly, there is a perfect correlation between the presence or absence of NKp30 and B7H6 in the vertebrate line, with both genes lacking in birds and bony fish but present in all other gnathostome classes.[176] Furthermore, phylogenetic trees suggest a close relationship between NKp30 and NKp44, consistent with their ancient origins within the vertebrate line.

There are other bony fish–specific IgSF NKR families. One family, the novel immune-type receptors (NITRs),[179] have one or two Ig domains with a charged residue in the TM and could therefore be associated (by analogy) to an ITAM DAP12 equivalent, and indeed was shown to interact with mammalian DAP12.[162] Like NKp30, the NITR N-terminal V domain is also of the VJ type. NITRs were originally believed to be part of the LRC, but this was shown to be unlikely upon further analyses. NITRs can be expressed by cells of the hematopoietic lineage, presumably lymphocytes. NITRs have been found in all bony fish, with rapid contraction and expansion of the gene family, with the majority of proteins predicted to have inhibitory ITIMs in their cytoplasmic tails. In zebrafish, there are many NITR genes that group into 12 distinct families.[180] An extreme level of allelic polymorphism is apparent, along with haplotype variation and family-specific isoform complexity. By contrast, only 11 related genes encoding distinct structural forms have been identified in the channel catfish, and the relatively small number of genes allowed functional studies to be performed. Additionally, taking advantage of the ability to grow clonal lines of catfish hematopoietic cells, one granular cell line lacking all markers of B/T cells was shown to express several NITRs. Expressed NITRs were fused to an ITAM-containing motif and transfected into a T-cell hybridomas line with a nuclear factor of activated T cells (NFAT) promoter, and the specificity for particular catfish MHC alleles was maintained.[181] Subsequent crystal structure analysis showed the NITR V domains to form dimers, much the same as Ig/TCR heterodimeric V regions. Thus, the sequence analysis (ITAM/ITIM), signaling properties, involvement in cytotoxicity, and recognition of MHC molecules identify the NITRs as excellent candidates for NKRs in bony fish. Furthermore, the work serves as a paradigm for study of potential NKRs when homology and/or conserved synteny are lacking or ambiguous.

IgSF inhibitory receptors usually form larger families of molecules in comparison to activating receptors. This function can be devoted to two distinct families of receptors, giving another example of the extremely rapid evolution of these molecules. There are many ITIM-carrying IgSF integral membrane receptors across the classes of vertebrates, and they seem to have had independent histories as it is difficult to convincingly detect orthologous genes between species. This is especially true of multigene families in fish, with members equipped with possible ITIMs, including the teleost NITR and LITR, and bird CHIR and CD300L.[163] Several members of these families can be expressed on NK cells, but expression studies are in their infancy in fish. It is sometimes difficult to distinguish FcR families from NK KIR-like domains, and both FcR and KIR seem to stem from a same lineage. Given the role of the FcR binding to bonafide antibodies and conferring specificities to cells of the innate arms of the immune system, it is likely that these molecules will be restricted to jawed vertebrates. The KIR activity that can incorporate pathogen and virus recognition may be more primitive, but the ancestry of KIR is not well understood, and the bonafide KIR family seems to be restricted to primates.[163]

Genes encoding the classical FcRs on the long arm of human chromosome 1 (1q21–23) are linked to other FcR-like genes. A large multigene family, which includes genes encoding the FcγR and the NK cell Ig-like receptors, is located in the LRC (human chromosome 19q13). This region could in fact be paralogous to 1q23 and may even have been originally associated with the MHC (see the following). These families belong to a larger class of activating or inhibitory receptors. Their phylogenetic conservation in birds, amphibians, and bony fish suggests a biologic importance even though the size of the families, their expression pattern, and the specific nature of the receptors vary greatly among species.[182] In several cases, a commitment to a task in the immune system may not be conserved among homologous members, and the evolutionary fate of the family will be probably affected. Comparison of key residues in the domains may suggest a possible common involvement in MHC recognition for the two families recently discovered in birds (CHIR)[183] and the teleosts (LITR).[184] Other families were generated within a single class or even within a single order of vertebrates (eg, the KIR described previously). The relationships of KIR with many other multigene families such as IpLITR or NITR remain to be explored. What was the scenario that led to the present mammalian situation? If the fish observation on potential MHC binding holds true, the IgSF type of receptor seems to be the most primitive NKR.[163]

Other Immunoglobulin Superfamily Families to Explore Further

In more primitive vertebrates, the physical or genetic linkage of relatively large IgSF families is well documented in the teleost NITR but not yet elucidated in the case of other interesting families in prochordates like the VCBP. In the sea urchin genome, many IgSF await a complete analysis and will certainly contribute to a better understanding of the evolution and origin of Ig/TCR.[48] Large families of LRR-IgSF in amphioxus[185] could perhaps represent interesting intermediaries in the genesis of either VLR in agnathans or Ig/TCR in gnathostomes (see Fig. 4.10). In hagfish, the discovery of leukocyte expressed receptors agnathan-paired receptors (APARs) revealed what might have been a precursor of Ig or TCR.[186] APARs resemble Ag receptors and are expressed in leukocytes and predicted to encode a group of membrane glycoproteins with organizations characteristic of paired Ig-like receptors. Based on their transmembrane regions, APAR-A molecules are likely to associate with an adaptor molecule with an ITAM and function as activating receptors. In contrast, APAR-B molecules with an ITIM are likely to function as inhibitory receptors Thus, the *APAR* gene family has features characteristic of paired Ig-like receptors. APAR V domains have a J region and are more closely related to those of TCR/B-cell receptor (BCR) than any other V-type domain identified to date outside of jawed vertebrates. Thus, the extracellular domain of APAR may be descended from a VJ-type domain postulated to have acquired recombination signal sequences (RSS) in a jawed vertebrate lineage (see Fig. 4.10).

In jawed vertebrates, three such receptor families with VJ-type domains have been identified: a small family of mammalian proteins known as signal-regulatory proteins, a large family of the previously described teleost NITR, and the MHC-linked XMIV in *Xenopus*. These molecules are examined in more detail in the conclusion. Many IgSF proteins expressed in the immune systems are also expressed in nervous systems where the signaling cacscades may be conserved. This selection of IgSF domains, in two different systems in which homologies are found in molecules with quite different functions, may reveal adaptation capacities and constraints exerted on surface receptors.[187]

VERTEBRATE ADAPTIVE IMMUNITY

Not long ago, it was believed that only jawed vertebrates had a true adaptive immune system. From the previous discussion of invertebrate immune responses, clearly mechanisms exist to generate high levels of immune diversity—even at the somatic level—one of the hallmarks of an adaptive response.[7] As described in the introduction, many in the field agree that the boundary between innate and adaptive immunity is artificial, and it may not be a useful dichotomy when studying immune responses in diverse organisms.[61,62] Despite this reluctance to exclusively classify systems as innate or adaptive, some features clearly fall into the latter category, such as clonal expansion of uncommitted lymphocytes and specific memory. These conditions are not fulfilled for the DSCAM, FREP, 185/333, or any other invertebrate systems described previously, but of course we must be open to new mechanisms besides the conventional outlook of adaptive immunity. Additionally, such adaptive immunity arose in concert with the emergence of lymphocytes in the lower chordates, as these cells clearly are the major players; we will discuss this in the conclusion.

Immunoglobulins

A typical Ig molecule is composed of four polypeptide chains (two heavy [H] and two light [L]) joined into a macromolecular complex via several disulfide bonds (Fig. 4.7). Each chain is composed of a linear combination of IgSF domains, and almost all molecules studied to date can be expressed in secreted or transmembrane forms.

Immunoglobulin Heavy Chain Isotypes

Like all other building blocks of the adaptive immune system, Ig is present in all jawed vertebrates (see Fig. 4.7). Consistent with studies of most molecules of the immune system, the sequences of IgH chain C region genes are not well conserved in evolution and insertions and deletions in loop segments occur more often in C than in V domains. As a consequence, relationships among non-μ isotypes (and even μ isotypes among divergent taxa) are difficult to establish.[188] Despite these obstacles, the field has developed a working evolutionary tree among all of the isotypes.

Immunoglobulin M

IgM is present in all jawed vertebrates and has been assumed to be the primordial Ig isotype. It is also the isotype expressed earliest in development in all tetrapods; until recently, it was believed to be the case in fish as well, but

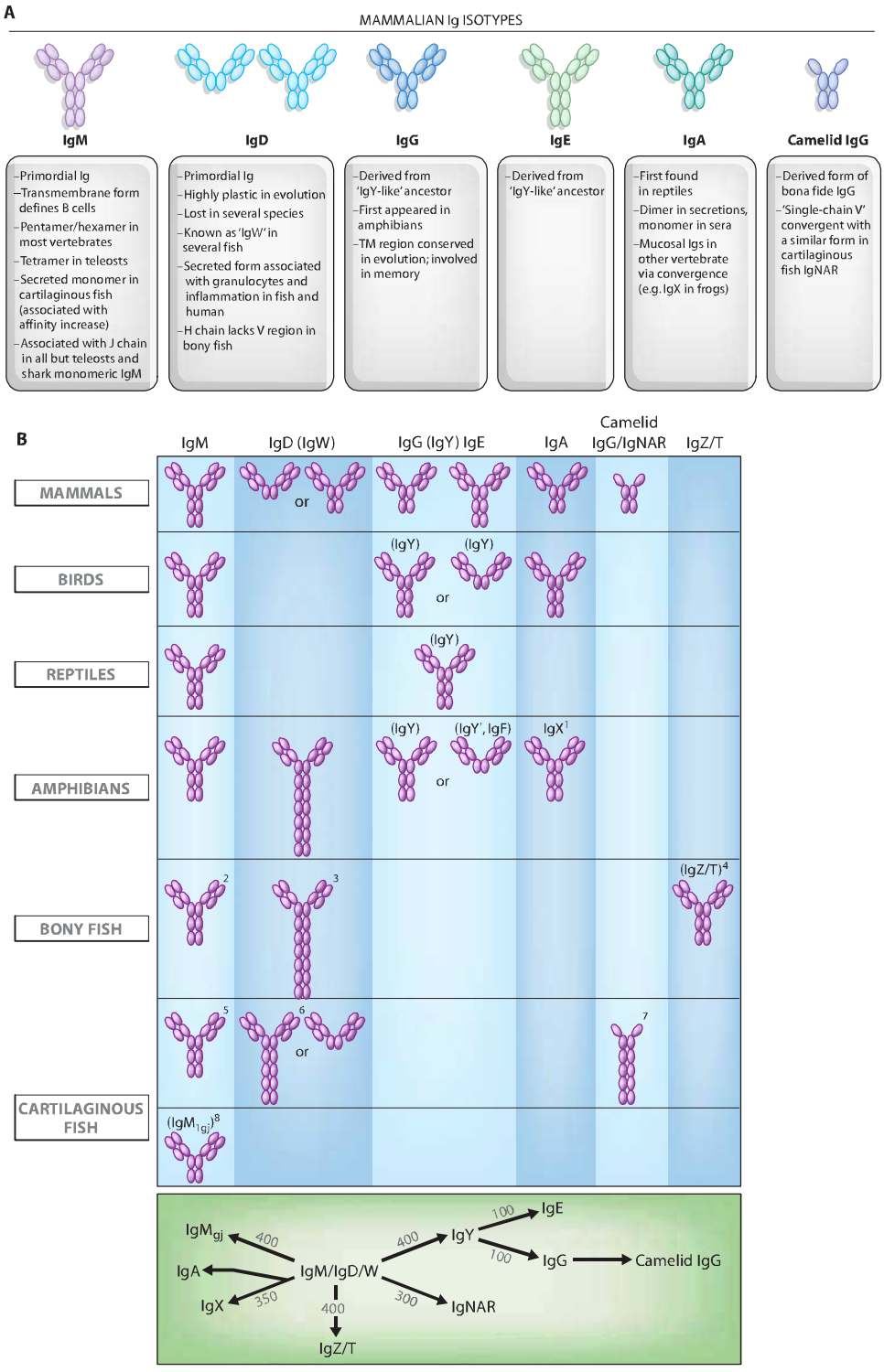


FIG. 4.7. Immunoglobulin (Ig) Isotypes in the Jawed Certebrates. A: Mammalian isotypes and their relationships to Igs in vertebrates from other classes. Each oval represents an Ig superfamily C1 domain. IgD is shown in two forms, mouse (*left*) and human (*right*).[2] **B**: Major Ig isotypes in all vertebrates. The *bottom panel* displays the approximate divergence times of all isotypes. IgM/D/W was found at the inception of adaptive immunity. 1, IgX is in the IgA column because it is preferentially expressed in the intestine, and IgA seems to have been derived from an IgX ancestor; IgX seems to have been derived from both IgM and IgY ancestors; 2, secreted IgM in teleost fish is a tetramer, and the transmembrane (TM) form only has three C domains; 3, the teleost fish IgD H chains incorporate the μC1 domain via alternative splicing in the TM form, and the secretory form does not have a V region and does not associate with L chains; 4, the new bony fish isotype, IgZ/T, may not be found in all fish species; 5, the secreted form of shark/skate IgM is present as a pentamer and monomer at approximately equal levels; 6, the TM form of IgW has four C domains; 7, a major TM form of IgNAR has three C domains, and IgNAR is related to camelid IgG by convergent evolution; 8, no TM form has been found (to date) for IgM_{1gj}. The *bottom panel* displays the approximate divergence times of all isotypes. IgM/D/W was found at the inception of adaptive immunity.

this view has changed (see the following). The secretory μ H chain is found in all vertebrates, usually consists of one V and four C1 domains, and is heavily glycosylated. H chains associate with each other and with L chains through disulfide bridges in most species, and IgM subunits form pentamers or hexamers in all vertebrate classes except teleost fish, which form tetramers.[189] The μ C_H4 domain is most evolutionarily conserved, especially in its C-terminal region, whereas the CH2 domain evolves at the fastest rate.[188] There are several μ-specific residues in each of the four C_H domains among vertebrates suggesting a continuous line of evolution, which is supported by phylogenetic analyses. Like TCR TM regions, μ TM regions are also well conserved among sharks, mammals, and amphibians, but the process by which the Ig TM messenger RNA is assembled varies in different species. In all vertebrate classes except teleosts, the μ TM region is encoded by separate exons that are spliced to a site on μ messenger RNA located approximately 30 basepairs from the end of the C_H4-encoding exon. By contrast, splicing of teleost fish μ messenger RNA takes place at the end of C_H3 exon.[190] In holostean fish (gar and sturgeon), cryptic splice donor sites are found in the C_H4 sequence that could lead to conventional splicing, but in the bowfin there is another cryptic splice donor site in C_H3.[191] The TM region itself is interesting as it is the only one that does not contain a residue capable of making an ionic bond with the ITAM-containing molecule (in this case, Ig-α and Ig-β.) As mentioned, some modifications apparently related to the particular environment were noticed in the Antarctic fish *Trematomus bernacchii*. There are two remarkable insertions, one at the V_H-C_H1 boundary and another at the C_H2-C_H3 boundary; the latter insertion results in a very long CH2-CH3 hinge region. Rates of nonsynonymous substitutions were high in the modified regions, suggesting strong selection for these modifications. These unusual features (also unique glycosylation sites) may permit flexibility of this IgM at very low temperatures.[192]

It has been known for a long time that in all elasmobranchs, IgM is present at very high amounts in the plasma of cartilaginous fish and that it is found in two forms: multimeric (19S) and monomeric (7S).[193] It is unlikely that the two forms are encoded by different gene clusters because 1) peptide maps are identical; 2) early work by Clem found the sequences of the cysteine-containing tail of 19S and 7S H chains to be identical; and 3) all identified germline VH families are represented for the 19S form.[194] Although most studies (but not all) reported that 19S and 7S are not differentially regulated during an immune response, in a recent study, the 19S response wanes over time and a stable 7S titer is maintained for periods of up to 2 years after immunization.[195] In addition, antigen-specific 7S antibodies observed late in the response have a higher binding strength than those found early, suggesting a maturation of the response, also generally at odds with the previous literature. Finally, when specific antibody titers were allowed to drop, a memory response was observed that was exclusively of the 7S class. This work has shown that a "switch" indeed occurs in the course of an immune response; whether the "switch" is due to an induction of the 19S-producing cells to become 7S producers or whether there are lineages of 19S- and 7S-producing B cells is an open question. One working hypothesis is that J chain expression is important for regulating whether a B cell makes 19S or 7S Ig, but of course that could be at the lineage level or the switch level (see the following).

Immunoglobulin M_{1gj}

Nurse shark *Ginglymostoma cirratum* expresses an IgM subclass in neonates.[196] The V_H gene underwent V-D-J rearrangement in germ cells ("germline-joined" or "gj," see the following). Expression of H_{1gj} is detected in primary and secondary lymphoid tissues early in life, but in adults only in the primary lymphoid tissue, the epigonal organ (see the following). H_{1gj} associates covalently with L chains and is most similar in sequence to IgM H chains, but like mammalian IgG it has three rather than the typical four IgM constant domains; deletion of the ancestral IgM second domain thus defines both IgG and IgM_{1gj}. Because sharks are in the oldest vertebrate class known to possess antibodies, unique or specialized antibodies expressed early in ontogeny in sharks and other vertebrates were likely present at the inception of the adaptive immune system. It is suggested that this isotype interacts either with a common determinant on pathogens or a self–waste product.

Immunoglobulin New Antigen Receptor and New Antigen Receptor-T-Cell Receptor

A dimer found in the serum of nurse sharks and so far restricted to elasmobranchs, IgNAR is composed of two H chains each containing a V domain generated by rearrangement and five constant C1 domains.[197] IgNAR was originally found in sera, but TM forms exist as ccomplementary DNA and cell-surface staining is detected with specific mAbs. The single V resembles a fraction of camel/llama (camelid) IgG that binds to antigen in a monovalent fashion with a single V region, but it clearly was derived by convergent evolution. In phylogenetic trees, NAR V domains cluster with TCR and L chain V domains rather with that V_H. A molecule with similar characteristics has also been reported in ratfish, although it was independently derived from an ancestral Ig like the camelid molecule emerged from bonafide IgG.[198] IgNAR V region genes accumulate a high frequency of somatic mutations (see the following).

The crystal structure of a Type I IgNAR V regions showed that, in contrast to typical V regions, they lacked CDR2 and had a connection between the two IgSF sheets much like an IgSF C domain.[199] The domain wraps around its antigen (hen egg lysozyme [HEL]), with the CDR3 penetrating into the active site of the enzyme. The structure of a Type II V region has a disulfide bond between CDR1 and CDR3 that forces the most diverse regions of the molecule to form raised loop, similar to what has been described for camelid V domains. In total, the differential placement of disulfide bonds forces major changes in the orientations of CDR1 and CDR3, and provides two major conformations for antigen binding.[200] The structure of a Type II NAR bound to HEL showed that it also interacted with the active site of the enzyme.

While analyzing the TCRVδ repertoire in nurse sharks, an entirely new form of this chain, which encodes three domains, V-V-C, was detected.[201] The C is encoded by the single-copy Cδ gene, and the membrane-proximal V is encoded by a Vδ gene that rearranges to the DJδ elements. The membrane distal V domain is encoded by a gene in the NAR family, found in a rearranging VDJ cluster typical of all cartilaginous fish Ig clusters. The NAR-TCR V genes, unlike IgNAR V genes which have three D segments, only have a single D region in each cluster. The particular Vδ loci linked to each NAR-TCR gene—called NAR-TCR–supporting Vδ—encode a cysteine in CDR1 that likely makes a disulfide bridge with the NAR-TCR V domain. The J segment of the rearranged NAR-TCR V gene splices at the RNA level directly to the supporting Vδ segment, which has lost its leader exon (Fig. 4.8). This organization likely arose from an IgNAR V cluster that translocated to the TCRδ locus upstream of a Vδ gene segment. After modifications of the supporting Vδ genes, this entire V-V gene set duplicated and diverged several times in different species of sharks. About 25% of the expressed nurse shark TCR δ repertoire is composed of this TCR (encoded by 15 to 20 V-V genes in this species), and have proposed that the typical γ/δ TCR acts as a scaffold upon which sits the single chain NAR V.

Our interpretation is that, true to the proposal that γ/δ TCRs interact with free antigen, the NAR V is providing a binding site that can interact with antigen in a different way than conventional heterodimeric Vs. Thus, this is the first case in which a particular V region family has been shown to be associated with a BCR and TCR; in the case of the BCR, the function likely resides within the Fc portion of IgNAR and for the TCR the function (cytokine secretion, killing) lies within the T cell itself. Interestingly, a second TCRδ chain locus has also been described in marsupials and monotremes with properties similar to NAR-TCR.[202] In this case, there are also two V domains, but in marsupials one (proximal to the membrane) is germline-joined, and only the membrane-distal domain undergoes rearrangement. In monotremes, both of the V regions undergo rearrangement, like for the NAR-TCR. This new TCRδ locus is preferentially expressed early in development. This type of TCR is described in more detail in the TCR section.

Immunoglobulin R/Immunoglobulin New Antigen Receptor/Immunoglobulin W/Immunoglobulin X/Immunoglobulin D

All elasmobranchs studied to date have another isotype called IgW. It was probably discovered long ago in skates as a non-IgM secreted isotype called IgR, but no protein sequence of this molecule has been obtained for confirmation.[203] Subsequently, an Ig gene was discovered in skates encoding a three-domain molecule with an unusual secretory tail that was named IgX (not to be confused with another isotype with that name in amphibians).[204,205] A high molecular weight (MW) species detected by northern blotting with an IgW probe suggested that there might be a longer form of this isotype, subsequently shown to be true in the sandbar shark (IgW), nurse shark (IgNARC—it was so-named because the C domains had highest similarity to IgNAR C domains), and skate.[206,207] It was originally believed that sharks only expressed the long (seven-domain) IgW form, but they were later shown to have both secretory forms; the reason for the discrepancy was shark-to-shark variation in expression of the short form, for unknown reasons. The major IgW TM form, like IgM, is composed of five domains, but variants with three domains—like the secretory forms—were also detected.[208] Very little is known about the function of this isotype, as IgW-specific mAbs have not been generated as they have for IgM and IgNAR.

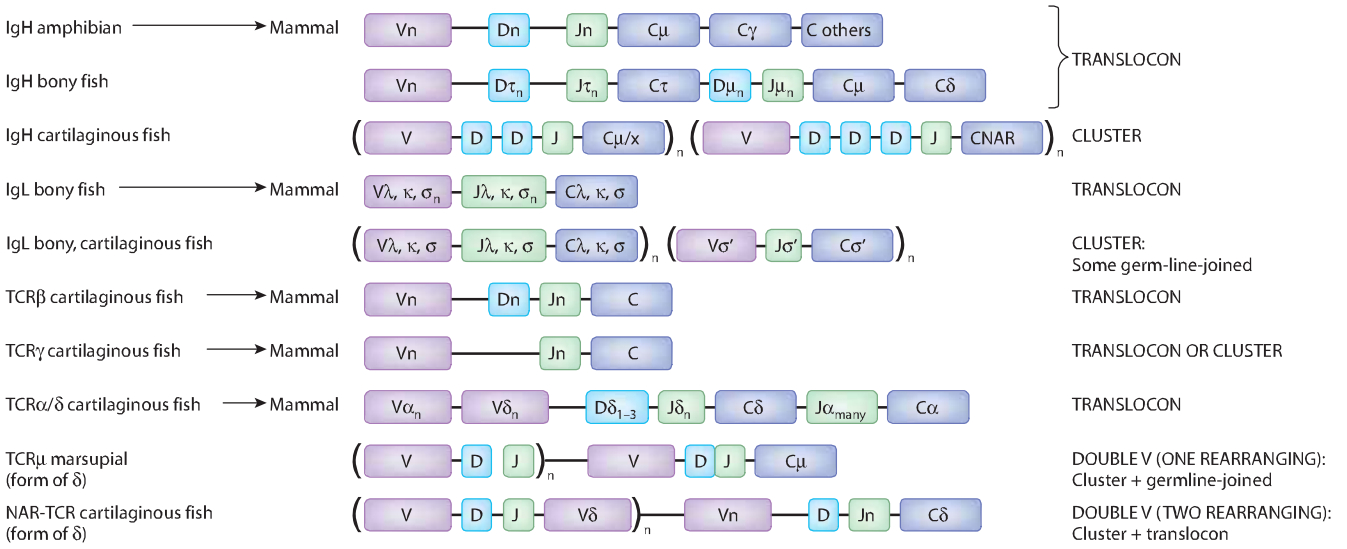


FIG. 4.8. Organization of Immunoglobulin (Ig) Heavy and Light (L) Chain and T-Cell Receptor (TCR) Genes in All Jawed Vertebrates. All cold-blooded gnathostomes except bony fish have three L chain isotypes, κ, λ, and σ; mammals have κ and λ; and birds have only λ. RSS are found at the 3′ end of V segments, 5′ end of J segments, and on both sides of D segments. Marsupial μ TCR is related to Ig in its V regions and TCRδ in its C region (and is not related to the μ of IgM).

IgW was thought to be a dead-end isotype in the cartilaginous fish, but a homologue was found in the lungfish.[209] It also is present in two secreted forms, one with eight domains and the other, like in the elasmobranchs, with three domains (unfortunately the secretory tail was not sequenced, and the TM form was not studied.) An Ig isotype was found in *Xenopus tropicalis* most related to the lungfish IgW.[210,211] Computer searches of databases for the *X. tropicalis* genome project uncovered a new isotype flanked by the IgM and IgX genes at the IgH locus. The deduced amino acid sequence obtained from the exons on the genomic scaffold suggests a nine-domain molecule. The N-terminal C domains and the TM regions are most similar to mouse and human IgD regions, and its genomic location also suggest that it is an IgD equivalent. Thus, these new data reveal that like IgM, IgW/D is an isotype that was present at the emergence of all extant vertebrate taxa.

Catfish IgD was the first member of this Ig class found outside of mammals,[212] but this was not well accepted until the isotype was found in all vertebrate classes. It is found attached to FcR on a subset of myeloid cells, and the secreted form does not contain a V region as the leader is spliced to the CH2 domain in plasma cell RNA.[213] This strongly suggests that the IgD is acting as a PRR, perhaps interacting with a conserved region of a pathogen leading to innate immunity. The work on catfish prompted a reappraisal on the role of secreted IgD in humans.[214] Like the fish IgD, the human IgD is bound to a subset of myeloid cells, which are activated upon IgD cross-linking. The receptor on human cells has not been identified, but this new work argues for strong evolutionary conservation of the function of secreted IgD.

An interesting feature of the IgD/W locus is its high plasticity in evolution, both in terms of the number of domains in different fish species and the plethora of splice variants found, at least in cartilaginous fish.[194,215] In sharks, two of the C domains were derived approximately 250 million years ago by a tandem duplication event, and there was a *Xenopus*-specific, two-domain tandem duplication event as well. Within teleost fish, the number of C exons for this isotype is different in various species and the secreted and TM forms are encoded by different loci in the catfish. In addition to the splice variants previously described in the cartilaginous fish and lungfish, in teleosts the IgM C1 domain exon is spliced into the IgD transmembrane transcript.[212] Even in mammals, there are different numbers of C domains in different species, and even exons that have emerged quite recently in evolution (see Fig. 4.7). It is our impression that this is the Ig locus that evolution "plays with," perhaps using it for different functions in vertebrate taxa. The beginning of understanding the function of the secreted form of IgD is a triumph for comparative immunology; likely the evolutionary approach will reveal the function of the TM form as well.

Immunoglobulin Z/T

A third, novel bony fish isotype was uncovered in screens of the EST and genomic databases called IgZ in zebrafish[216] and IgT in trout.[217] Its genomic organization parallels the TCR α/δ locus in that the IgZ/T D, J, and C elements are found between the VH and Cζ/Cμ exons (see Fig. 4.8). IgZ/T is a five-domain H chain that associates with L chains (see Fig. 4.7). The authors of the zebrafish paper proposed that lymphocytes bearing IgZ may be B1-cell equivalents, but a preliminary VH repertoire analysis did not suggest that unique sets of V regions are expressed on IgZ compared to IgM. IgT is not preferentially expressed over IgM early in trout development.

Recent work has shown that IgT is the mucosal Ig of trout, with preferential expression in the intestine and skin.[218] Mucosal immunization with the parasite *Toxoplasma gondii* showed a preferential induction of specific IgT. While all teleosts have lost the J chain in evolution,[219] biochemical analysis of IgT showed that it contained a secretory piece derived from the poly-Ig receptor (pIgR). Furthermore, like mammalian dimeric IgA, IgT coats trout commensal bacteria, presumably acting as a "firewall" preventing commensals from breeching the blood–brain barrier. In sum, IgT, while displaying unique evolutionary features, has attained almost all of the characteristics of IgA via convergent evolution.

Other Isotypes Related to Immunoglobulin G, Immunoglobulin E, Immunoglobulin A, and the Class Switch

Other isotypes consist of four C domains in nonmammalian vertebrates including *Xenopus* IgY and IgX, non-μ isotypes of *Rana*, IgY of axolotl, and IgA and IgY of birds.[194,220] In *Xenopus*, IgY is thymus-dependent; IgM and IgX are not, although thymectomy impacts specific IgM antibody production (ie, antigen-specific IgM can be produced, but there is neither an increase in affinity after immunization nor elicitation of plaque-forming cells). IgM and IgX plasma cells are abundant in the gut,[221] whereas IgY is expressed primarily in spleen. Axolotl IgM is present in the serum early during development and represents the bulk of specific antibody synthesis after antigenic challenge.[222] In contrast to *Xenopus* IgY, the axolotl ortholog appears late in development and is relatively insensitive to immunization. From 1 to 7 months posthatching, axolotl IgY is present in the gut epithelium associated with a secretory component.[223] IgY progressively disappears from the gut and is undetectable in the serum of 9-month-old animals. Thus, axolotl IgY, like *Xenopus* IgX and trout IgT, may be analogous to mammalian IgA. *Xenopus* IgX seemed to be most similar to IgM, but as more sequences have become available it does seem to be orthologous to IgA, obviously consistent with its assumed function (Criscitiello, personal communication). In addition, IgX was formerly believed to be derived from IgM, but recent data suggest that the N-terminal C-domains were derived from an IgY ancestor and the C-terminal domains from IgM.[224]

The TM and cytoplasmic domains of *Xenopus* TM IgY share residues with avian IgY and mammalian IgG and IgE, suggesting that mammalian/avian isotypes share a common ancestry with amphibian IgY.[225] This homology is especially interesting because studies in mice suggested that the IgG cytoplasmic tail is the central molecular element promoting rapid memory responses of plasmablasts.[226,227] The motif in

the IgY/G tail is also found in other receptors and seems to recruit PI3kinase, which amplifies the signal derived from Ig-α and -β. Finally, another *Xenopus* isotype was discovered from the databases, called IgF or IgY′ (because it is closely related to IgY, probably duplicating within the *Xenopus* lineage). Like other isotypes described in this section, it only has two C domains, but rather than alternative splicing, the gene is organized in such a manner.[211] There has been no biochemical identification of IgF.

CSR results from fusing switch regions upstream of the μ gene and another 3′ isotype gene, accompanied by the deletion of the intervening sequences. Among vertebrates, mammalian and bird class switch regions are GC-rich and contain tandem repeats in which certain motifs, such as TGGGG, GGGGT, AGCT, and GGCT, are abundant. Because of the GC richness of these regions, transcription generates stable R loops, which provide single-stranded substrates for activation-induced deaminase (AID) activity. The first comparative studies on switch were done in the amphibian *Xenopus* where the switch regions are not GC-rich but adenine-thymine (AT)-rich and cannot form R loops.[228] Replacement in mouse of the switch region with a *Xenopus* switch region showed that it mediated efficient CSR and that the junctions were associated with the short palindromic AGCT motifs, already recognized as the main component in *Xenopus* switch.[229] As predicted from the absence of R loops, the *Xenopus* switch region supported recombination in both orientations. The breakpoints were located in the AGCT palindrome-rich region of the switch box. Other motifs have been identified in the other switch regions, such as in IgX and chicken isotypes; all of these correspond to the DGYW hotspot consensus. AID-mediated deamination in the context of these motifs may be the conserved major event in the initiation of CSR. As described in the following, until recently it was believed that CSR first appeared in amphibians, but recent data have uncovered a precursor to switch in cartilaginous fish (but not teleosts). Thus, we should add another conserved feature of adaptive immunity that appears to have arisen in the early gnathostomes.[230]

As mentioned, a single gene can encode different Ig forms, like for duck IgY, cartilaginous fish IgW, and camelid IgG loci. It has been suggested that the two avian IgY short and long forms could be the functional equivalents of both IgE and IgG, respectively; the same may be true of the cartilaginous fish IgW short and long forms with two and six domains, respectively. Also as mentioned, IgF or IgY′ also falls into this category but not through alternative splicing.[194,211]

Immunoglobulin Light Chains

L chains can be classified phylogenetically not only by their sequence similarity, but also by the orientation of their V and J RSS, which differ for mammalian λ and κ. There has been much debate regarding the affiliations of L chains in various vertebrates, but as sequences have accumulated, we have a grasp on their phylogenetic emergence. Contrary to what was believed, κ and λ L chains emerged early in vertebrate evolution, in the cartilaginous fish or placoderms. In addition, a third L chain, σ, originally described in *Xenopus* as a dead-end isotype, is in the ancestral clade and is present in all cold-blooded vertebrates.[231]

Elasmobranchs have four L chain isotypes (Type I, II, III, and IV), and the combined data suggest that they are present in all chodricthyans.[231] Type IV is the ortholog of the unusual *Xenopus* σ L chain, and Type I is a dead-end variant of this isotype called σ′ or σ-cart (for cartilaginous fish). Type II L chains are of the λ isotype and have been cloned from all groups of cartilaginous fish; all genes of this isotype are "germline-joined." The type III is clearly κ-like, at least in the V region and RSS orientation (κ is the only antigen receptor gene in which the V is associated with a 12mer RSS). These relationships are more noticeable in the V sequences, which have defining characteristics such as CDR length; although, the C sequences also fall into the same clusters, they do so with much less phylogenetic support. Different elasmobranch species express the L chain isotypes preferentially (eg, κ in nurse sharks, σ in horned sharks, and λ in sandbar sharks); this pattern of expression may be due to expansions/contractions of the different isotype genes in various elasmobranch lineages.

Almost all of the L chains in bony fish can be categorized as either κ or σ, despite the large number of gene expansions and contractions in this group.[232] As expected, recent data have shown that λ exists in some species, consistent with the work in sharks.[233] Genes in different species can be found either in the cluster type organization, translocon, or some intermediate type, and this organization is especially well suited to allow for receptor editing, either to generate the repertoire or as a consequence of binding to self-ligand.[234,235]

mAb studies suggested the existence of three *Xenopus* L chain isotypes of 25, 27, and 29 kD with heterogeneous two-dimensional gel patterns and preferential association of some L chain isotypes with IgY H chains.[236] Indeed, three *Xenopus* L chains genes have been isolated: ρ (now κ), σ, and λ. Only one C gene is present in the ρ locus, and it encodes the most abundant L chain. The V and J RSS are of the κ-type and the five identified J segments are nearly identical. The locus is deleted, like mammalian κ, when the other isotype genes are rearranged. Southern hybridizations with genomic DNA from different animals showed V_L sequences to be both diverse and polymorphic. The λ *Xenopus laevis* L chain isotype predicted from the biochemical studies consists of six distinct V_L families. In the σ locus, the J segment has an unusual replacement of the diglycine bulge by two serines. The *Rana* major L chain type has an unusual intrachain disulfide bridge that is seemingly precludes covalent association of its H and L chains.[237]

Two L chain types were identified in reptiles. Chickens and turkeys only express one L chain (λ) with a single functional V and J gene, and the manner by which diversity is generated is likely responsible for this unusual evolutionarily derived arrangement (see the following). Nonproductive rearrangements are not detected on the unexpressed L chain allele, and thus there is a strong pressure to generate functional joints (see the following). Such a system probably rendered a second (or third) L chain locus

superfluous.[236] Within mammals (marsupial *Monodelphis domestica*), the Vλ repertoire is comprised of at least three diverse families related to distinct placental families, suggesting the divergence of these genes before the separation of metatherians and eutherians more than 100 million years ago. Opossum λJC sequences are phylogenetically clustered, as if these gene duplications were recent and the complexity of the λ locus seems greater than that found at the H chain locus.[238]

In summary, all vertebrate groups except the birds have two to four L chain isotypes, all of which can be categorized as κ, λ, or σ (and in cartilaginous fish σ-cart).[231] However, we are still at a loss to understand the significance of possessing multiple isotypes as there is scant evidence that L chains have any effector functions. It has been suggested that different isotypes may provide distinct CDR conformations in association with H chains, or there may be L chain/H chain preferences that provide some advantage that is not obvious.[239,240] At least the differential CDR sizes for σ as compared to κ/λ suggest that the former rationale is plausible. The preferential association of certain L chains with particular IgH isotypes is suggestive of different functions as well, but there is no evidence for such functions to date.

V_H Evolution

Diversity of the immune repertoire depends on the variety of V segments inherited in the germline and upon the further diversification by rearrangement (CDR3 only) and SHM (all CDR). Early in life, the repertoire depends chiefly on the inheritable genes as one finds little N-region diversity and somatic mutation (with exceptions; see the following). A central question is how antibody germline V genes diversify CDR during evolution while they are subject to homogenizing forces operating in most multigene families. Perhaps environmental antigens have played a major role in shaping the germline repertoire and have selected some V_H/V_L germline sequences used by neonates. V_H families arose in a bony fish lineage and have been conserved for hundreds of millions of years.[241] Conserved regions defining families are found on solvent-exposed faces of the V_H, at some distance from the antibody-combining site. Phylogenetic analyses show clustering of V_H into groups A, B, C, D, and E. All cartilaginous fish V_H belong to the monophyletic group E; bony fish V_H genes to cluster into all Groups (one group [D] unique only to them). By contrast, group C includes bony fish sequences as well as V_H from all other classes except cartilaginous fish. Another phylogenetic analysis classifies mammalian V_H genes in three "clans" (I, II, and III), which have coexisted in the genome for > 400 million years. Only in cartilaginous fish does it appear that V_H gene families have been subjected to concerted evolution that homogenized member genes (except for the IgM_{lgj} V region described previously). It has been debated whether Ig V genes could be under direct positive selection or not because these genes hypermutate somatically. However, several features (eg, codon bias) and discovery of high replacement/silent ratios in germline gene CDR codons indeed argue for positive selection during evolution.[242,243]

In summary, much of the V_H germline repertoire has been conserved over extremely long periods of vertebrate evolution. The birds and some mammalian species that rely on GALT to generate Ig diversity (see the following) are exceptions with a reduced germline repertoire (at least expressed repertoire), but as will be seen in the following, gene conversion and SHM compensate for this situation in formation of the primary repertoire. Even in the cartilaginous fish where there is a single V_H family, there is nevertheless great heterogeneity in CDR1 and CDR2 sequences (as well as hypermutation) that must boost diversity in the expressed repertoire.

The J Chain

The joining (J) chain is a small polypeptide, expressed by plasma cells, that regulates polymer formation of IgA and IgM.[244] J-chain incorporation into dimeric IgA and pentameric IgM endows these antibodies with the ability to be transported across epithelial cell barriers. J chain facilitates creation of the binding site for pIgR (secretory component in the Ig polymers), not only by regulating the polymeric structure but apparently also by interacting directly with the receptor. Therefore, both the J chain and the pIgR/secretory component are key proteins in secretory immunity. J chain complementary DNAs have been reported in all jawed vertebrates except the teleost fish, which have lost it.[245] The existence of *Xenopus* J chain suggests that, unlike mouse IgM, *Xenopus* IgM forms hexamers with J chain; alternatively, the previous electron microscopy studies identified IgX as the hexameric isotype (the ξ chain has a stop codon before the Cys of C_{H4} domain and thus cannot make a covalent attachment to J chain). The highest level of J chain expression was detected in frog and bird intestine, correlating well with a role for J chain in mucosal immunity (although obviously not for IgX secretion). Elasmobranch J chain shows high similarity to the N-terminal half of J chains from other vertebrates, but is divergent or even absent in the other regions. This result suggests that the function of J chain may be solely for IgM polymerization in elasmobranchs, and the transporting function arose later in evolution; consistent with this idea, *Xenopus*, but not shark, J chain is capable if interacting with human IgA and pIgR.[245] As mentioned previously, the loss of J chain in bony fish does not preclude the interaction of IgT with pIgR and transport across epithelia, implying a strong pressure to maintain a mucosal-specific Ig.[218] There was a claim for the presence of J chain in many protostomes because a homologue was cloned in earthworms, but no J chain sequences have appeared in the numerous protostomes or deuterostome invertebrate databases.[246]

T-Cell Receptors

Ig, TCRs, and MHC class I and class II are all composed of IgSF domains. The membrane-proximal domains of each Ig/TCR/MHC chain are IgSF C1-set domains, while the N-terminal domains of Ig and TCR proteins are V-set domains encoded by genes generated via rearrangement of two or three gene segments during ontogeny (the membrane-distal domains of

MHC are a special case; see the following). In all vertebrates studied to date, TCRs are membrane-bound and never secreted, while almost all Ig proteins have transmembrane and secreted forms.[247]

α/β Constant Domains

Genes encoding the two types of TCR, α/β (which accounts for all known MHC-restricted regulatory and effector functions) and γ/δ (which to the best of our knowledge recognizes antigens in an Ig-like manner and may play immunoregulatory or homeostatic roles during certain infections), existed in the earliest jawed vertebrates. The α/β TCR is considered rather "boring" evolutionarily, as all gnathostomes from the basal cartilaginous fish appear to have this MHC restricted form.[248] As mentioned, although many IgSF members exist in the invertebrates, thus far no bonafide Ig/TCR sequences (ie, IgSF genes generated by somatic rearrangements) have been isolated from jawless vertebrates or invertebrates, although a renewed search in jawless vertebrates may be fruitful (see the following).

While TCR genes have been cloned from representatives of most vertebrate classes, few biochemical data are available, except in birds where α/β and γ/δ TCR have been identified with mAbs.[249] In amphibians, the *Xenopus* α/β TCR was coimmunoprecipitated with cross-reactive antibodies raised against human CD3ε chains[250] (note that this same antibody indentifies CD3 epsilon from many divergent species, which is quite unusual,[251] in turtles). α chains from diverse vertebrates are poorly conserved and the structure of the Cα IgSF domain itself is unusual: only strands A, B, C, E, and F can be identified, although strands E and F are shorter than those of mammals and strand D is absent; this modification has an important role in TCR dimerization and subsequent signaling.[252] The lack of conservation in this extracellular domain as well as deletions found in bird and teleost fish TCR (especially in the connecting peptide) suggest that the coreceptor may be structurally distinct from mammalian CD3 complex components.

Pre-Tα, which associates with TCR β chains during thymocyte development, has been identified only in warm-blooded vertebrates.[253] The pre-Tα protein has no V domain, and its interaction with the TCRβ chain is unique, based on recent structural studies.[254] Unlike all of the other TCR chains, pre-Tα has a long cytoplasmic tail, which seems to be important for T-cell differentiation. Interestingly, the pre-Tα gene is linked to the MHC in mammals, and more phylogenetic studies should be performed to determine whether this linkage group is ancient (see the following).

The TM region and cytoplasmic tail of Cα are the most conserved parts of the molecule. Cα and Cβ TM segments in all species have the so-called conserved antigen receptor transmembrane motif (CART) motif, in which conserved amino acids form an interacting surface with the CD3 complex.[255] Besides CART, the opposite TM face with conserved residues Ile-Lys-Leu interacts with other CD3 components. The cytoplasmic region is remarkably conserved among all vertebrates. TCR β genes have been sequenced from several species of cartilaginous and bony fish and two species of amphibians (axolotl and *Xenopus*). In addition to the typical IgSF domain features, there are several conserved regions among vertebrate TCRβ chains, especially at positions 81 to 86, probably involved in TCR dimerization. There are also remarkable differences: the solvent-exposed segment 98 to 120 in mammals is absent in all nonmammalian vertebrates. This loop has been shown in mouse TCR to be important for negative selection events in the thymus; perhaps the absence of this region in nonmammalian vertebrates results in subtle differences in tolerance induction as compared to mouse/human.[256] The number of Cβ genes varies in different species.

Like Cα, Cβ sequences are not well conserved in evolution (eg, the *X. laevis* Cβ gene does not cross-hybridize with *X. tropicalis* genomic DNA, and catfish Cβ has only 41% to 42% identity with other teleost Cβ and 26% identity with horned shark Cβ). Two different catfish Cβ complementary DNA sequences were identified, suggesting the existence of either two loci or allotypes, as is found in mammals.[257] Indeed, the damselfish Cβ was shown to be encoded by two polymorphic genes, and this feature seems to extend to other teleosts. As the polymorphic sites are believed to interact with the associated CD3-signaling molecules, the authors suggested that signals might be transduced to T cells in different ways depending on the particular expressed Cβ allele. The damselfish Cα gene seems to be encoded by polymorphic alleles as well.[258]

α/β T-Cell Receptor Variable Domains

Because T-cell recognition is MHC-restricted, TCR V regions have been evolutionarily selected for different properties as compared to Ig; indeed, TCR V regions are much less similar to each other than are Ig V regions from other antigen receptor loci.[257] Furthermore, TCR Vs, unlike IgV_H, have conserved CDR3 lengths, suggesting that there is a restricted size for recognition of MHC-peptide complexes.[259] α loci in all vertebrates examined have many J segments, and consistent with the mammalian paradigm, the absence of D and the large numbers of J segments favors the potential for receptor editing during thymic positive selection.[260] A number of Vβ gene families are another evolutionarily conserved feature. There are 12 families in nurse sharks and 19 in *Xenopus*. In axolotls Vβs are classified into nine categories each with 75% or more nucleotide identity; as only 35 genes were cloned, there are probably more families, and several are related to mammalian Vβ genes (human Vβ13 and Vβ20[257]).

There is evidence that the TCR has coevolved with MHC, displayed by the canonical types of interactions seen in crystal structures.[261] Vβ sequences from many different vertebrates share residues in CDR2 that interact with class II and CD1 MHC molecules (Y-46 and Y-48, especially).[262] It will be of interest to search for other conserved interaction sites as crystal structures become available.

Studies of several teleost α/δ loci suggests an organization similar to mouse/human, but with more rearrangement by inversion and more gene segments than are found in mammals.[263] Pulsed field gel analysis suggested that the horned shark α and δ TCR loci are closely linked.[264] There

has been a recent, major modification in our thinking of the α/δ locus that will be described in the following.

The γ/δ TCR

Complementary DNA sequences from the skate have significant identity with prototypic mammalian γ and δ TCR genes with extensive V region diversity, putative D segments in δ, and varying degrees of junctional diversity.[248] In the nurse shark, there is a great diversity of the δ V regions, the highest among the TCR chains; consistent with this diversity is the presence of the NAR-TCRδ, which is found in approximately 25% of the δ Vs.[257] The NAR-TCR has been found in all cartilaginous fish to date, including holocephalins, whereas NAR and IgW have only been detected in elasmobranchs. Thus, it is possible that NAR (especially the V region) arose as a TCR and was transferred to an Ig cluster sometime in evolution.

In axolotls, Vδ diversity was diminished in thymectomized animals and TCR δ chains are expressed by cells in lymphoid organs, skin, and intestine.[265] Chicken γ/δ T cells were identified long ago. Expression is found in thymus, spleen, and a γ/δ T-cell line, but not in B cells or α/β T-cell lines. Three V subfamilies, three J gene segments, and one C gene were identified at the TCR γ locus. All Vγ subfamilies participate in rearrangement during the first wave of thymocyte development, and the γ repertoire diversifies from embryonic day 10 onwards with random V-J recombination, nuclease activity, and P- and N-nucleotide addition.[249]

In ruminants and chickens (so-called GALT species; see the following), the γ/δ repertoires are quite diverse, and there seems to be ligand-mediated selection of γ/δ cells during ontogeny. In sheep, where γ/δ TCR diversity is thymus-dependent and follows a developmentally regulated progression, no invariant γ/δ TCRs are found.[266] The degree of γ/δ expression is correlated with the evolution of the TCR V families in warm-blooded vertebrates. Indeed, mammals can be classified into "γ/δ low" (humans and mice, in which γ/δ T cells constitute limited portion of the T-cell population) and "γ/δ high" (chicken, sheep, cattle, and rabbits, in which such γ/δ cells comprise up to 60% of T cells). TCR V genes form subgroups in phylogenetic analyses, and humans and mice have representative loci in most subgroups whereas the other species appear to have lost some.[267] Thus, γ/δ-low species have a high degree of TCR-V gene diversity, while γ/δ-high species have limited diversity. Interestingly, this pattern is similar to that found for IgV_H genes.

Recent work in *Xenopus* has shown that the presence of prototypic V_H at the TCRδ locus, in addition to typical α and δ V domains.[268] Furthermore, consistent with the presence of VH, the αδ locus is closely linked to IgH and IgL λ in the frog genome. These data suggest that these heterodimeric loci arose via a *cis* duplication early in vertebrate history.[263] The TCRμ locus in monotremes and marsupials[202,269] can now be extended to the chicken as well,[270] although like *Xenopus* there are chicken V_H with a three-domain molecule as is found in monotremes, marsupials, and sharks. In total, all of the nonplacental mammals except bony fish show some sort of chimeric Ig/TCR locus, with TCR δ V domains that are more Ig-like than TCR-like. Generally speaking, comparative studies have revealed that the γ/δ TCR can either be used for innate recognition (eg, the cells in the skin of mice or the blood of humans) or adaptively with an enormous repertoire in ways we do not understand—this will be discussed in more detail in the conclusion. Consistent with the potential of γδ TCR to interact with nominal antigen, SHM has been detected in the γ genes of the sandbar shark, although it is not known whether the mutations generate the repertoire or appear in mature T cells after immunization.[271,272]

Immunoglobulin Gene Organization

V_H Regions

A rearranged V_H gene consists of a leader segment, encoded by a canonical split exon, followed by four framework regions and three CDRs (see Fig. 4.8). Canonical V_H CDR1 nucleotide sequences are conserved in all jawed vertebrates and serve as targets for SHM.[242,243] A major germline difference is the lack of conserved octamers and TATA box in the 5′ region of shark Vs. In all species, functional V genes are assembled by rearrangement and joining of germline V, D, and J elements. Cartilaginous fish H chains are encoded by large numbers of clusters (> 100 in horned shark and dogfish; approximately 15 in the nurse shark). For IgNAR, there are only four V genes/haploid genome and only a few IgW V genes are detected in nurse sharks, but a large number in skates and dogfish.[273] There are widely varying numbers of V genes in different species; importantly, the V_H complexity does not seem to limit diversity of the antibody repertoire in any ectothermic vertebrate studied to date. There are actually fewer functional human V_H (44 functional, 79 pseudogenes that fall into seven families) than in many ectotherms. Dynamic reorganization of the H chain V regions seems to have occurred at least eight times between 133 and 10 million years ago.[241] Perhaps species that utilize somatic mutation/selection "optimally" rely less on germline diversity and therefore fewer functional genes are required. Only approximately 10% of *Xenopus* V_H are pseudogenes in the three families ($V_{H1–3}$) that have been exhaustively studied; thus, *Xenopus* with fewer lymphocytes has a greater number of functional V_H genes than humans.

Chondrichthyan Germline-Joined Genes

In all vertebrate species, functional Ig genes are assembled by rearranging DNA segments scattered on the chromosome. However, in cartilaginous fish some V genes are the products of V(D)J rearrangement in eggs/sperm.[196,274,275] Type I L chain (σ) genes are all germline-joined in skates but split in horned sharks, and the piecemeal germline joins (eg, VD, VDD, VDDJ) found in many horned shark H chain gene clusters and in nurse shark L chain Type I (σ) clusters strongly suggest that the germline-joining is a derived feature. Definitive proof came from a study of a germline-joined nurse shark Type III (κ) L chain gene, shown by phylogenetic analysis to have been joined within the last 10 million years[236]; this was followed by the identification of the nurse shark germline-joined IgM_{1gj} described previously.[196] When there is a *mixture* of joined and conventional genes, the split genes are expressed in adults, while the joined genes are

expressed at significant levels only early in ontogeny. When *all* of the genes in a particular family are joined (eg, skate Type I L chain genes and Type II [λ] L chains in all elasmobranchs), they continue to be expressed into adult life at high levels. In mammals, what may appear like germline-rearranged V genes are in most cases processed pseudogenes (eg, pseudo Vκ on chromosome 22 in human or in mouse). However, it is possible that the surrogate L chain gene VpreB is the product of a germline-joining event in the line leading to mammals.[276] Additionally, as described previously, there is a marsupial germline-joined V that serves as the membrane-proximal domain of TCRμ.[202]

Organization of Rearranging Genes

As mentioned, shark IgH-chain genes are structured into tens to hundreds of clusters, each consisting of V, D, J, and C elements[277]; all evidence from studies in horned shark, nurse shark, skate, and sandbar shark (and holocephalin ratfish) suggest that V, D, and J genes rearrange only within one cluster (but, as detailed in the following, switch may occur between clusters, most likely as a consequence of antigen stimulation). While there is extensive N-region diversity and sometimes usage of two D segments (three Ds in IgNAR), and there are V_H subfamilies having substantial CDR1/2 heterogeneity, diversity of the primary repertoire is lower than in other vertebrates as there is no (or infrequent) rearrangement between clusters. The special constitution of the shark H and L chain loci suggests an exclusion mechanism similar to that of mouse TCR γ loci, also found in clusters. It appears that only one V_H transcript is expressed in each lymphocyte, consistent with isotypic exclusion, despite the many clusters (see the following).[278,279] Bony fish (teleosts and chondrosteans like the sturgeon), frogs, reptiles, and mammals have very similar architectures of their H chain locus—the so-called translocon configuration. As described previously, multiple families of V_H genes, each consisting of many apparently functional elements (1 to 30 per family), are separated from a smaller number of genomic D and J elements. The possibility of combinatorial rearrangement enables more diversification than is possible with the cartilaginous fish clusters for a given number of segments. In birds, the organization is similar but all V genes except those most 3′ to the D elements are pseudogenes (see the following). One exception is the coelacanth (*Latimeria*), in which V genes are immediately followed by D segments, and then multiple J segments as are found in all tetrapods.[280]

L chain gene organization is variable. In elasmobranchs, the organization is the same (ie, in clusters) as the H-chain locus without the D segments. The prototypic horned shark Type I (σ) L chain has a cluster organization in which V, J, and C segments are closely linked. As mentioned previously, bony fish L-chain genes have the shark cluster-type organization, but some species have multiple V genes in some clusters, demonstrating that there is rapid evolution of not only sequence but gene organization as well in this taxon.[232] In *Xenopus*, there are multiple Vκ(ρ) presumably derived from one family: five J and a single C gene segment. In cartilaginous fish and birds there has been coevolution of Ig gene architecture for H and L loci, but the teleosts have shown that this is not a rule. As mentioned previously, two groups have suggested that the teleost gene organization seems to promote receptor editing.[234,281]

D Segments

D segments are always present in one of the two loci encoding an Ig/TCR heterodimer (IgH and TCR β,δ), and the pressure maintaining this asymmetry is unknown. Cartilaginous fish usually have two D genes/H chain cluster, and there are only minor variations among the clusters; one RSS follows the 12-12 paradigm seen in tetrapods and the other is like the TCR 12-23. In teleosts, amphibians, and reptiles where the organization of the H chain locus is similar to humans, the number of Ds deduced from complementary DNAs ranges from 10 to 16. Two germline D segments have been identified in *Xenopus*, and their RSS follow the rules defined in mammals. In birds, there are 15 very similar D_H.

There are several reasons why D segments may have been preserved throughout evolution. Incorporation of D segments augments CDR3 diversity and size, obviously directly influencing the combining site.[259] Three different Ds contribute to IgNAR CDR3, and besides generating great diversity, CDR3 length and amino acid composition fulfills special tertiary structure requirements: D-encoded cysteine residues bond with cysteine(s) in the body of the V domain, thereby stabilizing a loop involved in the antigen-binding of this unusual monomeric receptor.[197,200] A similar situation has been reached by convergence in the monomeric variant of camel IgG.[198] Finally, rearrangement of one locus "locks it in" and allows the second locus to undergo receptor editing, as is the case for negative selection of the B-cell repertoire and positive selection of the T-cell repertoire. Finally, in mice, one of the TCRδ D segments encodes a section that interacts with the ligand, the nonclassical class I molecule T lymphocyte antigen (TLA).[282]

Agnathan Variable Lymphocyte Receptor Structure and Function

In the 1960s, jawless vertebrates (hagfish and lampreys; see Fig. 4.1) were reported to mount humoral responses to foreign antigens. However, for anti–group A streptococcal antigens, the hagfish "antibodies" (at least a proportion of them) were actually the complement component C3[283]! Lamprey and hagfish were long known, however, to possess cells resembling lymphocytes and plasma cells,[284] with expression of lymphocyte- or at least leukocyte-specific genes,[285] but the quest for RAG or bonafide Ig/TCR/MHC genes was a complete failure. Reports of specific memory in allograft rejection and other specific humoral responses were difficult to reconcile with absence of the RAG-based rearranging machinery and the possibility of generating specific lymphocyte clones.

Our view of the jawless fish immune system was radically transformed when Pancer et al. prepared complementary DNA libraries of naïve lymphocyte RNA subtracted from lymphocyte RNA derived from lamprey larvae (ammocoetes) that had been immunized to a bacterial/PAMP mixture, and found a highly diverse set of LRR sequences enriched in the

immunized animals.[286] The clones were not only diverse in sequence, but also in the number of LRR "cassettes" found between invariant 5′ (LRR NT) and 3′ (LRR CT) cassettes. Unlike what has been discussed previously for immune genes many species (especially sea urchins), there were not a great number of the germline NT and CT cassettes, suggesting that a somatic recombination process, convergent with Ig/TCR rearrangement, occurred in the developing lamprey lymphocytes (Figs. 4.9 and 4.10). The genomic organization of germline VLR (the original gene discovered was VLRB) have 5′ and 3′ LRR cassettes separated by an intron. Upstream and downstream of the invariant exons are a large number of LRRs, which become inserted between the 5′ and 3′ cassettes during lymphocyte differentiation. Individual lymphocytes apparently express a uniquely rearranged VLR gene in monoallelic fashion. The potential VLR repertoire can be as great as 10^{14}, vastly outnumbering the lymphocytes within an individual.[287,288]

Fragments of homology between the LRR cassettes allow for joining and then priming of synthesis of a copy of the particular transferred cassette.[289] Because these small regions of homology are found throughout the cassettes, "hybrid" LRR can also be formed, further enhancing the diversity over a simple insertion of cassettes. The insertion of LRRs can occur at either end of the somatic recombinant, but it is always 5′-to-3′ on the growing strand. This type of genomic modification resembles the initial stage of gene conversion, but because there is not a complete transfer of genetic material between two homologous gene segments, but actually an addition of sequence, the assembly of the mature VLR is more similar to a recombinatiorial mechanism described in yeast called "copy choice." The enzymology of "copy choice" has not been examined; because a gene conversion-like process occurs, it is likely that an APOBEC family member is involved. Indeed, APOBEC family members were detected in the lamprey genome project and are expressed in a lymphocyte-specific fashion[288]; in fact, the two members that have been discovered, CDA1 and CDA2, are differentially expressed in agnathan lymphocyte subsets (see the following). Because APOBEC family members are involved in repertoire building in jawless and jawed vertebrates, mutation/gene conversion may have predated RAG-mediated repertoire building of the repertoire (see the following).

VLR homologs were found in two additional lamprey species and in hagfish, the only other order of living jawless vertebrates reviewed in Boehm et al.[13] As in the sea lamprey, the incomplete hagfish germline VLR generate somatically highly diverse repertoires. Interestingly, the *Amphioxus* genome harbors a large number of intronless VLR-like sequences that could represent an alternative germline VLR diversity akin to the echinoderm gene families (TLR, SRCR) described previously; one could even speculate that they are related to the ancestral VLR before invasion of its analogous "RAG transposon" (see the following).

There are three VLR types: A, B, and C. VLR-B cell-surface receptors and secreted molecules are analogous to the jawed vertebrate membrane and secreted BCR, and it was proposed that cell activation was similar to T-independent pathways in jawed vertebrates (ie, either direct stimulation through the surface VLR or surface VLR stimulation in combination with a PRR/PAMP interaction). It was suggested that the jawless vertebrate adaptive system might be dedicated exclusively to humoral immunity, with the PAMPs providing the second signal to activate lymphocytes.[290] Thus, it was proposed that the lamprey system was "B cell-centric" and therefore focused on humoral immunity.

This model has been disproved as subsequent work demonstrated that the VLRA and VLRB were differentially expressed (see Fig. 4.10). The former receptor could not be found in plasma and was expressed exclusively as

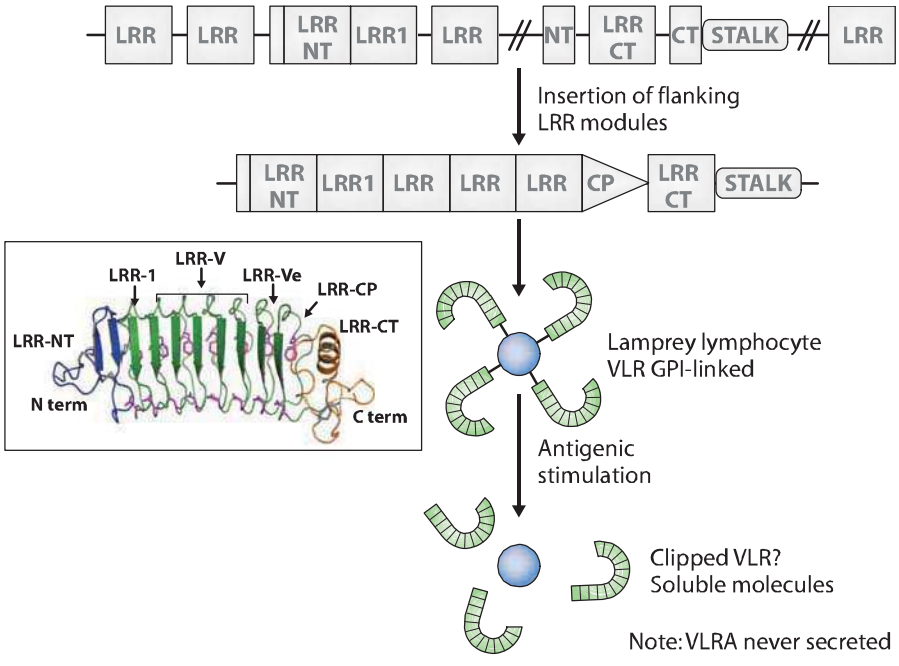


FIG. 4.9 Genetics, Generation of Diversity, and Speculative Cell Biology of the Hagfish Variable Lymphocyte Receptor (VLR) System.[13] The *top line* shows an incomplete VLR gene (NT and CT, N-terminal and C-terminal cassettes, respectively). During lymphocyte ontogeny, upstream and downstream LRR cassettes are inserted between the NT and CT gene segments, resulting in an intronless, mature VLR gene (*second line*). VLR proteins are attached to the lymphocyte surface via a glycophosphatidylinositol linkage, and may be released into the blood upon antigenic stimulation (also see Fig. 4.10). *Boxed* is a hagfish VLR protein, the first structure to be elucidated by Kasahara and colleagues.[499] Note the loop at the C-terminal leucine-rich repeat, which is mentioned in the text as a prominent region inserting into antigens, like single-domain antibodies.[293,294]

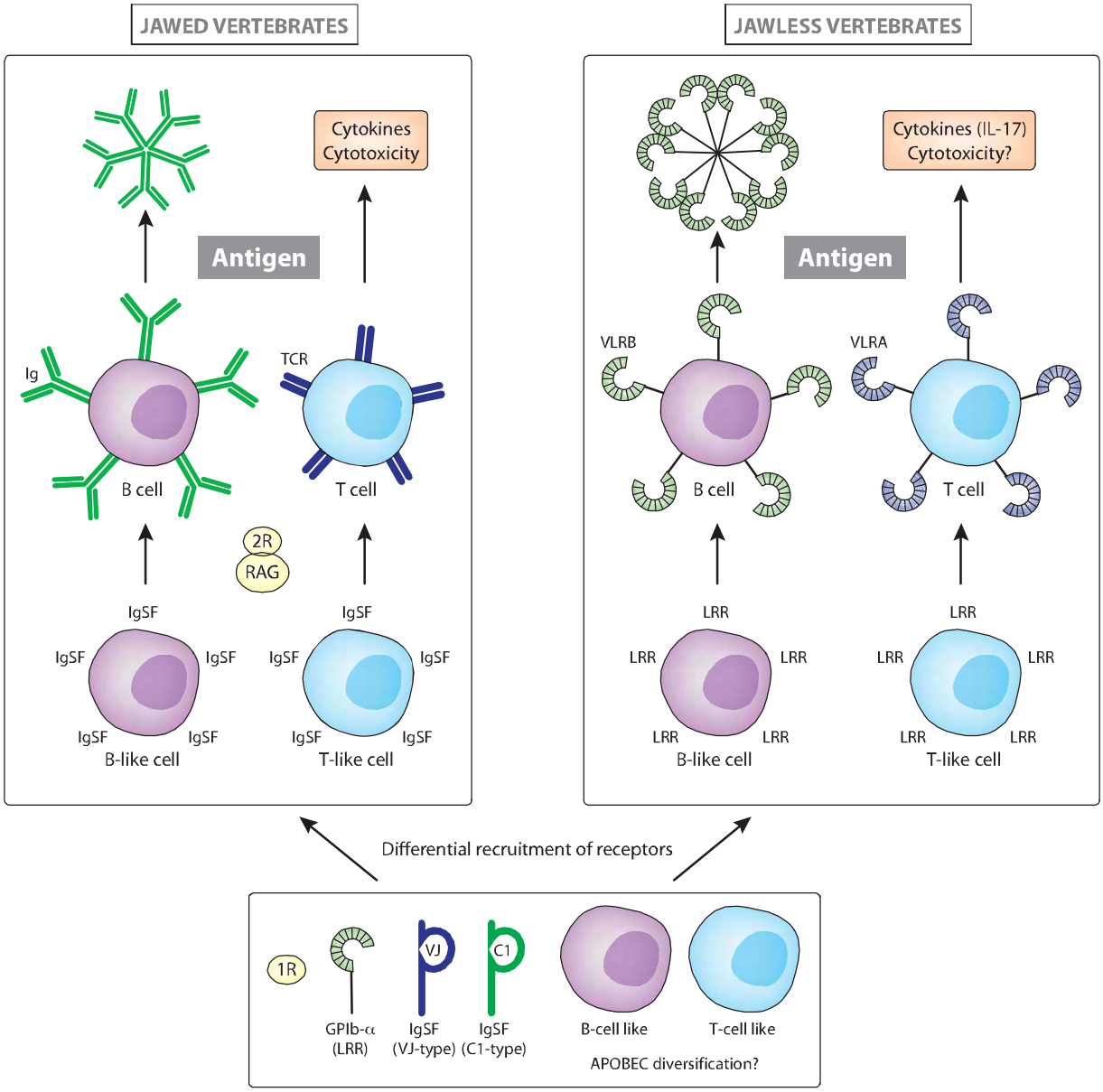


FIG. 4.10. Emergence of Variable Lymphocyte Receptor (VLR) and Immunoglobulin (Ig) Early in Vertebrate Evolution. T and B cells likely preceded the divergence of the leucine-rich repeat and Ig superfamily antigen receptors. The VLR is most similar to a molecule called GPIb-α[288] present in *Amphioxus,* and Ig superfamily antigen receptors are derived from molecules with so-called VJ and C1 domains, probably in the proto–major histocompatibility complex (see text for candidates). Both precursor genes were present in basal chordates. The RAG transposon and 2R likely ignited the appearance of the Ig superfamily receptors (Ig/T-cell receptor) (see text for full explanation). This figure also shows B and T cells today in jawless and jawed vertebrates, with secretion of IgM from gnathostome B cells and a VLR tetramer of dimers from VLRB-secreting lamprey B cells. Figure modified from Flajnik and Kasahara.[2]

a cell-surface receptor, while, as described, the latter was present as both a lymphocyte receptor and a secreted molecule.[291] When microarray expression analysis was performed on VLRA- and VLRB-positive cells, the patterns were consistent with expression profiles in gnathostome T cells and B cells, respectively. The lamprey adaptive scheme, therefore, parallels the situation in jawed vertebrates where Ig is found both as a cell-surface receptor on B cells and as a secreted effector molecule in the serum, whereas the TCR is present only as a cell-surface receptor on T cells; effector functions in T cells, such as cytokine secretion or production of cytotoxic mediators, are properties of the T cells themselves. It is not clear how VLRC fits into this scheme at the moment.

As expected for members of this family, the framework, or backbone, of the LRR is very similar between the cassettes. Diversity between cassettes is concentrated in the concave surface, presumably the region coming in contact with antigen. The crystal structures of two VLR-B molecules have been determined, one specific for HEL[292] and the other for H-trisaccharide.[293] In both cases, the concave surface makes contacts as well as a loop in the LRR-CT, which in the case of HEL inserts into the active site, similar to

what has been found for single-domain camelid and shark Vs.[198] One VLR-A crystal structure was determined, also specific for HEL.[294] This VLRA was derived from a HEL-hyperimmunized adult lamprey, which apparently underwent affinity maturation with induced molecules having affinities in the picomolar range. The antigen is bound in the region of the molecule that is most diverse among all VLRAs; surprisingly, the LLRNT among all VLRA are not diverse, suggesting that this region might bind to a self–"restricting element" and the rest of the binding site to the true antigen.

These are early days, but the comparisons to date suggest that VLRA and VLRB recognize antigen in different ways. Like gnathostome BCR, VLRB is expressed at the cell surface and is secreted as a pentamer of dimers, much like IgM (see Fig. 4.10). The affinities detected to date from immunized animals are in the micromolar range, again similar to low-affinity pentameric IgM in gnathostomes. By contrast, VLRA has never been detected in the sera or secreted in culture, fitting with its similarity to TCR. The affinity of VLRA for soluble antigen was high (in the nanomolar range) for the HEL-immunized animal, which appeared to undergo affinity maturation.[294] Combining the information with the conserved and diverse regions of the VLRA bidding site, perhaps VLRA recognizes antigen (budding virus?) associated with a self-protein (MHC analogue?) at the cell surface. It remains to be seen whether VLRA clones will be found from other immunized animals, and the HEL experiment was an artifact of the immunization schedule and not physiologic.

The independent development of two different strategies for receptor somatic diversification at the dawn of vertebrate evolution approximately 500 million years ago reveals the magnitude of the selective pressure applied on to the immune system and the emergence of individualized adaptive responses (see Fig. 4.10). Are VLR responsible for the graft rejection results seen in the old experiments? If so, this is most likely a "convergent MHC" coopted for the VLR system. Skin grafting experiments (or other tests of alloreactivity) should be repeated to study potential VLR involvement. The VLR system is discussed below as well in the lymphoid tissues section and the conclusion.

Adaptive Immune Responses in Gnathostomes

The quality of T-cell and B-cell responses depends on the heterogeneity and the diversity of the antigen receptor repertoires, and the ability to select cells in secondary lymphoid tissues. Because of the indefinite number of potential Ig/TCR V region sequences in most taxa, potential diversity exceeds the number of available lymphocytes; furthermore, all jawed vertebrates are capable of AID-dependent SHM or gene conversion after antigen stimulation. Yet, while potential repertoires are diverse in all vertebrate classes, and polymorphic MHC class I and II and TCR genes have been isolated from all classes, antibody diversity in nonmammalian vertebrates is relatively low.[295–297] The expressed repertoire has been studied via structural studies, affinity measurements during the maturation of the immune response, enumeration of antigen-binding Igs by isoelectrofocusing (IEF), and idiotypic analysis. Sequences of Ig and TCR genes expressed over the course of a response help to estimate diversity at another level, allowing studies of V genes diversified by gene conversion and/or somatic mutation during a response in a precise way. In the following survey, we describe studies of specific antibody synthesis, T-cell responsiveness (T-B collaboration, MHC restriction).

Cartilaginous Fish

Natural antibodies binding many antigens have been detected at surprisingly high levels in chondrichthyans and in some teleosts. In older experiments, after immunization the horned shark mounted a low-affinity 19S (pentameric) IgM antibody response, which varied little among individuals and did not increase in affinity after prolonged immunization.[298]

The relative homogeneity and large number of V genes hindered SHM studies until a single unique reference horned shark IgM V_H gene was found. Mutations in this gene were slightly more frequent than those in *Xenopus* (see the following). This first study proved that SHM preceded diversity obtained by combinatorial association of gene segments in evolution.[299] In contrast to mutations in the horned shark IgM V_H genes, unusual patterns of somatic mutation were detected in nurse shark IgNAR (see the following) and Type II (lambda) germline-joined L chains. Half of the mutations (338/631) occur in tandem without the GC bias seen in *Xenopus* or horned shark H chain V genes. Tandem mutations and point mutations that take place simultaneously were not generated by gene conversion as there are no repeated patterns or potential donor genes.[300,301] The germline-joined L chain genes can only diversify through SHM, perhaps like the hypothetical prototypic V region gene prior to RAG-mediated rearrangement (ie, SHM may have preceded gene rearrangement as the primordial somatic diversification mechanism)[300] (see the following). Lastly, a reappraisal of mutation at H chain and other L chain loci in the nurse shark showed that the mutations were not so different from the L chains; the differences from the previous work were the different shark species and the analysis of all H chain loci in the species rather than only one unusual locus.[302]

As mentioned, the small number of IgNAR genes also made it possible to analyze SHM, and in the first experiments, random complementary DNAs were examined.[197,296] The mutation frequency was about 10 times that of *Xenopus* and horned shark IgM, and even higher than in most studies in mammals. lt was difficult to establish a pattern for the mutations due to their high frequency and because they are often contiguous, like in the L chain gene study described previously. Mutations even in randomly isolated clones appeared to be under positive selection in IgNAR secretory but not TM clones, strongly suggesting that mutations do not generate the primary repertoire like in sheep but arise only after antigenic stimulation.[303,304] In total, the shark mutations seem quite mammalian-like but with unusual features. Analysis of the mutations in noncoding DNA suggests

an AID-dependent process coupled with an error-prone polymerase.[305]

Affinity maturation and memory generation can be detected in sharks.[195] Soon after immunization with HEL, an IgM response can be detected, primarily of the pentameric class. Over time, 7S IgM and IgNAR responses develop, and the 7S antibodies have a higher binding strength than those of the 19S class. When titers were permitted to drop to baseline (or close to baseline), a memory response was induced by immunization of antigen without adjuvant. However, unlike responses in higher vertebrates, the titers do not increase over those in the primary response, suggesting a unique type of regulation of antigen-specific IgM and IgNAR. Nevertheless, these data strongly suggest that the hallmarks of an adaptive response occur in sharks. This type of response is reminiscent of IgA responses of intestinal lymphocytes in mice.[306] In another study, a family of HEL-specific IgNAR clones was followed over time after immunization, and a 10-fold increase in the affinity of an already high-affinity germline clone (10^{-9} M) was observed.[307] These results suggest that affinity maturation, memory, and "switch" to the monomeric IgM isotype occurs, but it takes much longer to attain these adaptive hallmarks compared to mammals, perhaps a paradigm for ectotherms (see the following).

Recent work showed that isotype switch can occur in sharks, despite many reports to the contrary.[230] Previously, studies of nurse and horned sharks complementary DNAs showed that the V and C regions were derived from the same gene clusters. By contrast, in the new work, immunized animals showed switching between IgM clusters and even between IgM and IgW clusters. It is not known whether there is any functional significance to the switch, but one might predict the switch could dictate a change from 19S to 7S antibodies (see the following), or a modification of effector class in IgM and IgW. None of the classic hotspots (RGYW) upstream of constant region genes in tetrapods vital to switch appear to be targeted to initiate the switch in sharks, but other repetitive elements were detected that might play a role.

The role of T cells in shark immune responses has not been studied in detail. No thymectomy experiments have been performed, and T cells have not been monitored during an immune response. Shark mixed lymphocyte responses (MLR) and graft rejection have been attempted, MLR with little success (probably for technical reasons) and grafts with the demonstration of a chronic type of rejection for which the genetics has not been analyzed. However, from the MHC and TCR studies, it is clear that all of the molecular components are available for proper antigen presentation in sharks and skates, and studies of splenic architecture suggestive class II+ dendritic cells in the white pulps argue for a prominent T-cell regulatory role in adaptive immunity.[308] Furthermore, an increase in binding strength and memory response, as well as mutation and now switch, also strongly suggests a T-cell involvement in humoral immunity. Finally, recent studies of the thymus have shown that the architecture and expression of well-known markers are wholly consistent with a typical T-cell regulation of adaptive immunity.[257] In summary, it appears that all of the components of adaptive immunity in mammals occur in the cartilaginous fish.

Bony Fish

There are high levels of low-affinity natural antibody (up to 11% of total Ig) to nitrophenylacetate in some bony fish. Natural antibodies in catfish have been correlated with resistance to virus infection or furonculosis. As a rule, and similar to cartilaginous fish, little affinity maturation has been detected in fish, although some changes in fine specificities were noticed in the trout with a sensitive enzyme-linked immunosorbant assay–based test.[309] The mild increase in trout antibody affinity (similar to that found in *Xenopus* and shark IgNAR) is attributed to selection of either minor preexisting B-cell populations or somatic mutants. In partially-inbred self-fertilized or gynogenetic trout, variability of specific responses is even more restricted. Affinity measured by equilibrium dialysis was of the order of 2.0×10^{-6} M for trinitrophenol (TNP)-specific antibodies. A large literature deals with vaccination attempts in teleost fish, due to their economic importance. The availability of catfish B-cell, macrophage, and T-cell lines have been instrumental in analyses of antibody production.[310] There are puzzling differences in responses from different teleost groups, much like differences between urodeles and anurans (amphibians). Cod, for example, do not respond well to specific antigen and have very high levels of "natural antibodies"; recent studies showing that cod have lost class II genes provides an explanation for the poor humoral responses (see the following).

Like the sharks, isolation of TCR genes and the existence of a polymorphic class I and class II molecules suggest that antigen presentation is operative teleosts, but unlike sharks, functional experiments examining mammalian-like T-APC interactions have been performed. TCR messenger RNAs are selectively expressed, and specific TCR rearrangements have been detected in catfish clonal cell lines, which produce factor(s) with leukocyte growth–promoting activity reviewed in Miller et al.[310] Modifications of the trout T-cell repertoire during an acute viral infection (rhabdovirus) have also been followed.[311,312] In nonintentionally immunized trout, adaptation of the spectratyping technique for TCRβ CDR3 length revealed a polyclonal naïve T-cell repertoire. After an acute infection with viral hemorrhagic septicemia virus, CDR3 size profiles were skewed for several Vβ/Jβ combinations, corresponding to T-cell clonal expansions. Both "public" and "private" T-cell expansions were detected in the infected genetically identical individuals. The "public" response resulted in expansion of Vβ4/Jβ1-positive T cells that appeared first in the primary response and were boosted during the secondary response. Further work examined fine specificity of the viral T-cell response, which is a model for studies in cold-blooded animals.

Recent results suggest that, despite the fact that IgM is the major Ig expressed in an immune response, high- and low-affinity IgM appears to be a function of the degree of polymerization of the tetramer.[309] It is suggested that high-affinity interactions of TM IgM on B cells modifies the enzymes

involved in disulfide-bond formation, resulting in modifications of secreted IgM.[313] In addition, expression of transcription factors in different subpopulations of trout B cells suggests that the typical populations of naïve, memory, and long- and short-lived plasma cells exist in bony fish; these populations have been followed in blood, spleen, and head kidney by measuring proliferation and B cell–specific transcription factors.[314–316] Such studies should prove very useful for vaccination of large populations of teleosts.

Studies of SHM in teleost fish have been hampered by the lack of good reference genes, but it has been clear that AID-targeting motifs are found in Ig V genes.[317,318] Furthermore, AID is expressed in the spleen during immune responses, again consistent with its role in SHM.[319] A recent study examined mutations in a reference zebrafish L chain gene and detected the typical mutational pattern described previously (without the tandems seen in sharks).[320] AID from several bony fish species is capable of inducing CSR in mammalian B cells, despite the fact that teleosts do not undergo CSR[318]; perhaps the new results that demonstrate switching in sharks may shed light on this conundrum.[230]

As mentioned, species living in extreme cold develop adaptive structural differences in their Igs.[192] At the level of global immune response, temperature exerts a great influence in ectothermic vertebrates in general, low temperature generally being immunosuppressive. Lowering the water temperature from 23° to 11°C over a 24-hour period suppresses both B- and T-cell functions of catfish for 3 to 5 weeks as assessed by in vitro responses.[321] Virgin T cells are most sensitive to this cold-induced suppression, a property shared with mammals when tested appropriately. Fish have developed ways to adapt to the lack of fluidity of their B-cell membranes by altering the composition of fatty acid by using more oleic acid at low temperatures. After appropriate in vivo acclimation, catfish T cells are better able to cap cell surface molecules at low assay temperatures than are B cells, suggesting that capping is not the low temperature-sensitive step involved in T-cell immunosuppression in catfish.

In the NK section, we briefly discussed fish cytotoxic cells.[169] In vitro studies have now shown that leukocytes from immunized fish specifically kill a variety of target cells (allogeneic erythrocytes and lymphocytes, hapten-coupled autologous cells); fish CTL of the αβ (and perhaps γδ) lineages as well as NK cells were found (see previous discussion). Naïve catfish leukocytes spontaneously kill allogeneic cells and virally infected autologous cells without sensitization, and allogeneic cytotoxic responses were greatly enhanced *by in vitro* alloantigen stimulation.[322] Cloned cytotoxic cells contain granules and likely induce apoptosis in sensitive targets via a putative perforin/granzyme or Fas/FasL-like interactions. All catfish cytotoxic cell lines express a signal-transduction molecule with homology to the Fcγ chain of mammals; this chain with an ITAM is an accessory molecule for several activating receptors on mammalian NK cells.[161] Importantly, these cytotoxic cells do not express a marker for catfish nonspecific cytotoxic cells. As described previously, nonspecific cytotoxic cells have been found in other fish species, including trout, carp, damselfish, and tilapia, and they spontaneously kill a variety of xenogeneic targets, including certain fish parasites and traditional mammalian NK cell targets.

Amphibians

Differences in immune system features between urodele (axolotl) and anuran (*Xenopus*) amphibians, already discussed for MHC and Ig complexity, are also seen in immune responses. Rarely is such divergence seen within one vertebrate class (although the two groups diverged over 250 million years ago!). Urodeles express a very restricted antibody repertoire in response to specific antigen that peaks at 40 days postimmunization, and is entirely of the IgM class, even though the serum also contains IgY.[323] They do not respond well to thymus-dependent antigens, which may be due to lack of T-cell help, yet their expressed TCR diversity looks normal. A population of axolotl B cells proliferates specifically in response to LPS and also secretes both IgM and IgY. Moreover, a distinct lymphocyte subpopulation proliferates significantly in response to the T cell mitogens Con A. T cells from young axolotls (before 10 months) do not have this functional ability. Axolotl T cells also can be stimulated with to SEA/SEB, known from mammalian studies to be superantigens.[324]

Anuran larvae can respond specifically (with only 10^6 lymphocytes) to many antigens, with a modest affinity maturation of the IgM anti-dinitrophenol (DNP) response.[325] In adults, the number of different anti-DNP antibodies does not exceed 40, versus 500 in mammals. In secondary responses, the peak of the response is about 10-fold higher and is reached in 2 weeks; there are no major changes in affinity over this initial rise. Isogeneic *Xenopus* produce homogenous antibodies to DNP, xenogeneic red blood cells, or phosphorylcholine with identical or similar IEF spectrotypes and idiotypes, while outbred individuals differ.[326] Both IEF spectrotypes and idiotypes are inheritable, suggesting that diversity is a reflection of the germline repertoire without a major contribution from somatic mutations. Thus, somatic mutations were followed during the course of an antigen-specific immune response at the peak of the modest affinity maturation.[327] The V_H genes, like their mammalian homologues, contain the sequence motifs that target hypermutation, as described previously. Of the 32 members of the V_H1 family involved in the anti-DNP response, expression of only 5 was detected, indicating that immunization was being monitored. Few mutations were detected (average: 1.6 mutations per gene; range: 1 to 5), and there was not a strong preference for mutations in CDR1 and 2 and virtually none in CDR3. Like in the horn shark IgM study noted previously (but not IgNAR or Type II L chains), the mutations were targeted to GC bases, and such a pattern has been suggested to be the first phase of the SHM phase in mouse/human; perhaps *Xenopus* has lost the second phase of the process that results in an evening of mutation frequency for all bases. While the mutation frequency was lower than in mammalian B cells, the rates were only four- to sevenfold less in *Xenopus*. Thus, there is no shortage of variants, and the reasons for the low heterogeneity and poor affinity mat-

uration may be due to less than optimal selection of the mutants. Indeed, because of a relatively low ratio of replacement to silent mutations in the CDRs, it was argued that there is no effective mechanism for selecting mutants, which in turn might be related to the absence of GC in *Xenopus*. In summary, the data from hypermutation, complementary DNA heterogeneity, and spectratype dominance suggests that in the absence of refined modes of selection in late-developing clones, B cells producing somatic mutants may be outcompeted by antibodies generated earlier in the response.

Essential T-cell functions in anurans have been demonstrated with in vitro assays for T-B collaboration and MHC restriction, demonstrating the similarity of the role of MHC in *Xenopus* and mammals.[328] Regulatory T cells have been shown indirectly in hematopoeitic/thymic chimaeras for control of CTL generation and in antibody responses. Ig synthesis can be enhanced following late thymectomy in axolotl or *Xenopus*, again implying a role for thymic-dependent regulatory cells. Thymectomy early in life totally prevents CSR from IgM to IgY, but not IgX synthesis; thus, T cells are absolutely required for the switch to the "IgG-like isotype" and for high-affinity IgM responses, but switch to the mucosal Ig can be T-independent. Switching can also be induced in tadpoles, although one must hyperimmunize animals for this response, due to a paucity of T cells in larvae. The switch is also temperature-dependent, and as described previously for channel catfish, ectotherm T cells are quite temperature-sensitive. AID is expressed in lymphocytes in the spleen as well as in secretory cells.[329] However, consistent with many previous studies, there is no evidence for a typical GC response to date in amphibians or any other ectothermic species. The continued expression of AID in plasma cells (and, presumably, early in embryogenesis) is of interest and deserves further study.

Similar to studies in mammals, the chaperone gp96 has been shown to shuttle peptides into cells making them targets for MHC-restricted CTL lysis.[330] Immunization of frogs with gp96 from a thymic tumor results in the elicitation of CTL that display antitumor activity. Elegant experiments with gp96 vaccination have also shown that CTL activity against minor histocompatibility antigens is MHC-restricted. As mentioned previously, NK cells have been characterized in *Xenopus* with mAbs that recognize non-B/T cells. Those cells kill MHC class I–negative target tumor cells but not class I–positive lymphocytes, and after thymectomy these cells are enriched in the spleen.[331] CD8+ cells expressing TCR were isolated with the same mAb, suggesting the existence of amphibian NKT cells; expression of the mAb epitope on cells is induced by phorbol 12-myristate 13-acetate (PMA)/ionomycin, and is also detected in CTL when MHC-dependent cytotoxicity is reduced.[332] Robert and colleagues have developed one of the best-defined model of innate and adaptive immunity to viral infection in cold-blooded vertebrates, the ranavirus FV3 in *Xenopus*.[70,333] Involvement of CD8 cytotoxic cells and humoral responses have been studied over the course of primary and secondary infections with this virus.[334,335] The system is now primed for the study of other cell type involvement, ontogeny, repertoire, etc.

Reptiles

Lack of an increase in affinity and homogeneity of IEF spectrotypes suggest low-antibody heterogeneity in reptiles. In the turtle *Pseudemys scripta*, a number of genomic VH sequences, representing possibly four families, were isolated, as was a genomic Cμ, all shown to be encoded at a single locus. In northern hybridizations, the Cμ4 probe detected two transcripts; of the four VH groups, only one was expressed, and multiple bands indicated the presence of at least two non-μ transcripts. Among 32 unique VDJ rearrangements from one animal, there were 22 sequence variants in FR4, suggesting either a large number of J segments or somatic modification.[336] The latter interpretation is supported by point mutations found in FR3 and CDR3. For T cells, there are no data on T effector function, but there are studies on the behavior of T-cell population changes due to seasonal and hormonal variations. Thymocytes from the turtle *Mauremys caspica* proliferate in response to phytohemagglutinin (PHA) and ConA, and can kill tumor target cells by both antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity–mediated and NK-mediated cytotoxicity. Proliferative responses to PHA and Con A were higher for both sexes in spring and for females in winter than in the other seasons.[337]

Birds and Mammals

The poor increase in affinity of chicken anti-DNP and anti-fluorescein antibodies again indicates lower heterogeneity in chickens. Few changes occur after immunization, even if one waits 1 year after several injections. Perhaps similar to the trout study described previously, a restricted population of high-affinity antibodies was found only after immunization in complete Freund's adjuvant (CFA).[338] Hyperconversion and somatic mutation in Ig genes have been found in splenic GC B cells after immunization.[339] The relatively poor affinity maturation of the chicken response may be due to a balance between gene conversion and somatic mutation. Indeed, modification of V genes with segments of DNA is not an optimal strategy for fine-tuning antibody responses.[340] In the rabbit, there is also conversion/mutation by B cells in GCs after immunization. Within mammals, large variations are found from marsupials with no obvious secondary response, to mouse with 1,000-fold increases in affinity, but the basis for the relatively poor responses has not been established.

In conclusion, although all vertebrates have a very large potential for generating diverse antibodies after immunization, only some mammals studied to date make the most of this potential. Perhaps pressures on the immune system of cold-blooded vertebrates have been less intense due to a stronger innate immunity, and architecture of their lymphoid system is not optimal for selecting somatic mutants, or the great rises in affinity detected in antihapten responses are not physiologically relevant.[297] An immune system using somatic diversification at its "best" is well adapted to species where the value of single individuals is important (ie, species with small progenies); has that been the condition for the creation and selection of somatic rearrangement and of the optimal usage of somatic mutations? If this explanation provides a rationale for the utilization of somatic mechanisms

in generating a repertoire and improving it, it does not tell us why it works so well in certain species and not in others. Perhaps one key is the organization of secondary lymphoid organs. Likely a combination of factors (eg, quantitative and qualitative effects such as endothermy, secondary lymphoid tissues, mutation versus conversion, the hypermutation mechanism itself, rates of proliferation thogen and lymphocyte], etc.) are at work in the regulation of antibody responses.[296,297] Finally, significant differences have been detected in the mutational mechanism and targeting in ectotherms (eg, GC-richness in amphibians, tandem mutations in sharks, TCR loci mutation in sharks, etc.) that may enrich our understanding of the general mutational mechanism, including the enzymes involved and the targeting to V genes.[318]

Lymphoid Tissues

In addition to the molecules and functions characteristic of adaptive immunity, primary (lymphocyte-generating) and secondary (immune response–generating) lymphoid tissues also define the specific immune system[341] (Fig. 4.11). The thymus is present in all jawed vertebrates, and recent evidence suggests its origin at the dawn of vertebrate emergence.[342] *All* animals have hematopoietic cell–generating tissues, and outside of the so-called GALT species, B cells develop in such bone marrow equivalents in all jawed vertebrates. With the advent of clonal selection, the accumulation and segregation of T and B cells in specialized organs for antigen presentation became necessary and indeed the spleen as such an organ is found in all jawed vertebrates, but not in agnathans or invertebrates.

All jawed vertebrate species rearrange their antigen receptor genes somatically (except the case mentioned previously for some shark germline-joined genes[276]). Besides rearrangement, with combinatorial joining of gene segments and imprecision of the joins, there are two other sources of diversity to generate the repertoires: the terminal deoxynucleotidyl transferase (TdT) enzyme that modifies boundaries of rearranging gene segments, and somatic mutations, found exclusively in B cells usually introduced during immune responses. However, progression of rearrangement during B- and T-cell development and diversification follow different rules in different vertebrates.[220] It is conceivable that species hatching early with just a few lymphocytes are under pressures to develop a rapid response and may not use the same mechanisms as species protected by the mother's uterine environment. It is also possible that immune systems of species with few offspring are under stronger pressures than species that have many offspring, and this could be reflected in the manner diversity is generated. Studies of B- and T-cell differentiation have been performed in many vertebrates. RAG and TdT genes have been cloned in representatives of all vertebrate classes, probes that allow the monitoring of lymphocyte development (see the following). Reagents have become available permitting a monitoring of T-cell appearance in the lymphoid organs of ectotherms (crossreactive anti-CD3 sera mentioned previously or TCR probes), as well as mAbs and gene probes specific for Ig H/L chains that allow examination of B cells. As a rule, the thymus is the first organ to become lymphoid during development. Another emerging rule is that development of the thymus-dependent MHC-restricted T-cell repertoire is similar in all species, and this is reflected in the evolution of TCR gene organization described previously as well as a core set of molecules that are required for thymocyte migration and differentiation[343]; in contrast, B-cell repertoire generation differs dramatically among different species, at times even within the same class of vertebrates.[220]

Cartilaginous Fish

Like all other major adaptive immune system components, cartilaginous fish are the first in evolution to possess a prototypic thymus originating from pharyngeal pouches. As

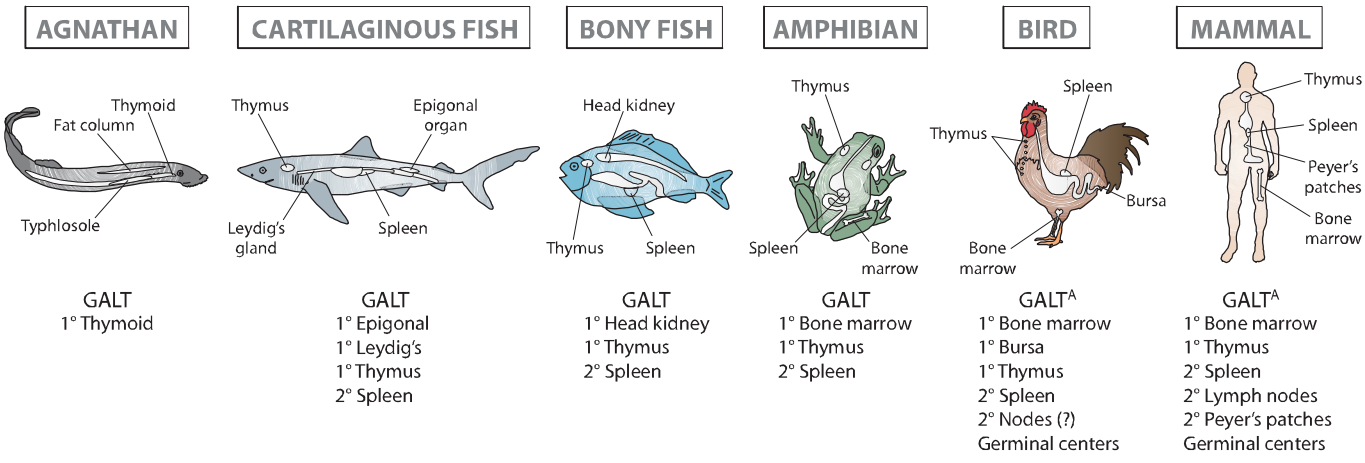


FIG. 4.11. Evolution of Lymphoid Tissues in the Vertebrates. All jawed vertebrates have a thymus and a spleen with demarcated T- and B-cell zones. Fish have different bone marrow equivalents (epigonal, Leydig's gland, head kidney), and amphibians are the oldest group with lymphopoietic bone marrow (also the first to have a typical immunoglobulin [Ig]H chain class switch, although sharks seem to have switch as well, despite the IgH cluster organization). Germinal centers are found only in warm-blooded vertebrates. A thymus equivalent (thymoid) has recently been discovered in agnathans.[375]

in mammals, it has a distinct cortex/medulla structure, and TdT expression was detected in thymocytes with cross-reactive antisera and more recently by northern blotting and in situ hybridization, where it is found throughout the cortex.[257] Interestingly, unlike most other vertebrates, age is not an indicator as to the size of the cartilaginous fish thymus; it can be small or large at any stage of development. GALT is also found in elasmobranchs, but lymphoid tissue in the spiral valve (intestine) clearly does not have typical secondary lymphoid tissue structure; the spleen is the only tissue with compartmentalization of cells into discrete T-cell and B-cell zones.[308] The Leydig's and epigonal organs (associated with the gonads) are lymphopoietic and erythropoietic, producing mainly granulocytes and lymphocytes, and there is high RAG expression in these tissues (see the following). Lymphocytes form nodules in the epigonal organ, probably indicative of differentiative events. In addition, many plasma cells are found peppered throughout the epigonal, fitting with the bone marrow connection.

At hatching, when dogfish embryos are exposed to waterborne antigens, structural development of the lymphomyeloid tissues is well advanced.[344] In the nurse shark, neonatal spleen white pulp consists entirely of class II–negative B cells; by 5 months after birth, T-cell zones appear adjacent to the B-cell zones. Both the B-cell and T-cell zones are vascularized, and no detectable marginal zone separates red pulp from white pulp. Class II–positive dendritic-like cells are found throughout the white pulp.[345]

In the skate *Raja eglanteria*, Ig and TCR expression is sharply upregulated relatively late in development (8 weeks) by quantitative polymerase chain reaction. IgM expression is first detected in the spleen of young skates but IgW is expressed first in gonad, liver, Leydig's organ, and thymus.[346] In adults, Leydig's organ and spleen are sites of the highest IgM and IgW expression. In nurse sharks, IgM1gj and 19S IgM appears in the serum before 7S IgM and IgNAR, and this profile is reflected in the lack of IgNAR+ cells in the spleen until 2 months after birth. RAG and TdT expression in the thymus and epigonal organ of the nurse shark suggests that lymphopoiesis is ongoing in adult life. In contrast to most other vertebrates, N-region diversity is detected (albeit reduced by approximately 50%) in skate and nurse shark IgM and IgNAR CDR3 from the earliest stages analyzed, suggesting that a diverse repertoire is important for young elasmobranchs.[308] As mentioned previously, a subset of Ig genes is prerearranged in the germline of chondrichthyans, and many of those germline-joined genes are transcribed in the embryo and hatchling, but not in the adult. This pattern fits with the expression of the nurse shark IgM_{1gj} with its germline-joined V region, and suggests that some germline-joined genes "take advantage" of their early transcriptional edge and thus some clusters can be selected for specialized tasks in early development. With many gene clusters, it is not known how "clusteric exclusion" is achieved at the molecular level (and why the germline-joined gene expression is extinguished in adult life), but as mentioned previously, studies in two cartilaginous fish species suggest that only one H chain cluster is expressed in each lymphocyte.[278,347]

It was suggested, based on the paucity of rearranged gene segments at the nonexpressed IgH loci, that there are limiting factors regulating accessibility to RAG proteins and a short time window for rearrangement of accessible loci in B cells.[347]

The architecture of cartilaginous fish Ig loci allows greatest diversity only in CDR3 because the CDR2 and CDR1 are always encoded in the germline and V segments do not combine with (D)J segments from other clusters. Yet the number of possible CDR3 is essentially limitless, and the number of germline clusters is also high (at least 15 genes in each species and as many as 100 genes; and usually three rearrangement events take place because two D segments are in each cluster). Thus, the potential diversity is greater than the number of lymphocytes, the general rule for generation of diversity in the vertebrates.

Bony Fish

In all teleosts examined, the thymus is the primary organ for T-lymphocyte generation and head kidney the primary organ for B-cell development. The teleost thymus gland originates from the pharyngeal pouches and can be uni-, bi-, or trilobed, depending on the species,[348] and it is the first organ to become lymphoid. The cortex/medulla architecture is not as precise in other vertebrate species, but the duality of the compartment is apparent and varies from species to species.[349] The spleen contains the basic elements seen in other vertebrates—blood vessels, red pulp, and white pulp—but the distinction between red and white pulp is less obvious (the white pulp being poorly developed). In spleen, the ellipsoids, which are actually terminal capillaries, have a thin endothelial layer surrounded by fibrous reticulum and an accumulation of cells, mainly macrophages. Lymphocyte accumulations are often seen in their vicinity, especially during immune responses, which have been suggested to be primitive GCs, but they are not homologous; as mentioned, AID expression is found in cells[319] during immune responses. Red pulp is rich in melanomacrophage centers, groups of pigment-containing cells at bifurcations of large blood vessels, which may regulate immune responses. The other main lymphoid organ is head kidney, believed to function as mammalian bone marrow. The transparent zebrafish is being developed as a new model to study T-cell differentiation.[343]

In the sea bass *Dicentrarchus labrax*, a mAb detects differentiating T cells (perhaps pre-T cells) as well as mature T cells as evidenced by the presence of TCR messenger RNA in the sorted populations. Cells seem to migrate from surrounding mesenchyme and subsequently mature in the thymus like in all vertebrates studied so far. T cells appear earlier in ontogeny (between 5 to 12 days after hatching) than cytoplasmic Ig+ pre-B cells, which are detected only at 52 days posthatching. Adult levels of T and B cells are reached between 137 to 145 days after hatching, which is quite a long time compared to young amphibians.[350,351]

Teleost RAG1 differs from mammalian RAG1 genes by the presence of an intron of 666 base pairs (an intron is also found in the sea urchin RAG1 gene in a similar position[352]).

Compared with other RAG1 sequences, trout RAG1 has a minimum of 78% similarity for the complete sequence and 89% similarity in the conserved region (amino acid 417-1042). RAG1 transcripts are detected starting at day 20 after fertilization. Trout TdT is highly expressed within the thymus and to a lesser extent in the pronephros beginning at 20 days postfertilization, which correlates with the appearance of lymphocytes in these two tissues.[353] Because the H chain cluster is in the translocon configuration and there are many V_H families, it is assumed that diversity is generated in the mouse/human mode.

As described previously, studies of mature B-cell activation and homing have been done in trout. Immunization of animals results in the production of short-term Ig-secreting cells in the blood and spleen and long-lived plasma cells in the head kidney. Further analysis with B cell–specific transcription factors like PAX5 and BLIMP1 reinforced the functional studies and showed that the blood contains primarily "resting" B cells and the head kidney both plasma cells and B-cell precursors.[314,354] These last findings appear to be true of the cartilaginous fish as well, with the epigonal organ as the head kidney primary lymphoid tissue equivalent. Interestingly, recent studies have shown trout B cells to be quite efficient at phagocytosis, raising questions about myeloid/lymphoid lineage commitment in the vertebrates.[355] It is predicted that B cells from all ectothermic vertebrates are capable of phagocytosis (shown for *Xenopus*), and the work was recently extended to B1 cells in mice.[356] It certainly will be of interest to study these innate characteristics of B-cell subsets in the future, considering the early appearance of B1 cells and macrophages differentiating from the yolk sac of mouse embryos.[328,357]

Amphibians

In anurans, the thymus develops from the dorsal epithelium of the visceral pouches (the number of pouches varies with species) and is the first tissue to become lymphopoietic. It is colonized from days 6/7 onward by precursors derived from lateral plate and ventral mesoderm through the head mesenchyme. Precursors proliferate in situ as the epithelium begins to express MHC class II molecules but not classical class I molecules. By day 8, thymic cortex/medulla architecture resembles that of other vertebrates.[328] Amphibians possess a spleen with red and white pulp, GALT with no organized secondary lymphoid tissue, and many nodules (but no lymph nodes), with lymphopoietic activity in the kidney, liver, mesentery, and gills. The general morphology of lymphoid organs varies greatly according to species and changes with the season. In *Xenopus*, splenic white pulp is delineated by a boundary layer, and the central arteriole of the white pulp follicle terminates in the red pulp perifollicular area, a T-dependent zone. Anurans, like all ectothermic vertebrates, lack GCs. In *Bufo calamita*, colloidal carbon particles injected via the lymph sac are trapped by red-pulp macrophages, which then move through the marginal zone to the white pulp.[358] Giant, ramified, nonphagocytic cells found in both white and red pulp have been proposed to be dendritic cells. *Xenopus* bone marrow does not appear to be a major lymphoid organ from histologic observation, but high RAG expression in this tissue suggests lymphopoietic activity.[359] The maintenance of RAG expression throughout adult life suggests that lymphocytes are continually produced.

Thymectomy decreases or abolishes allograft rejection capacity, MLR and PHA responsiveness, IgY antibody synthesis, and all antibody responses that increase in affinity to classic thymus-dependent antigens.[331,360] MLR reactivity matures before the ability to mount IgY responses in primary responses. Thymectomy at 7 days of age delays allograft rejection and abrogates specific IgY responses, whereas later in life it only abrogates antibody responses. Thymectomy performed later greatly affects the pool of peripheral T cells, as monitored with mAbs specific for molecules such as CD8. Early thymectomy results in the complete absence of T cells, but lymphocytes with T-cell markers, perhaps corresponding to NKT cells, can still be detected. In *Xenopus*, thymocytes induce weak graft-versus-host reactions, whereas splenic T cells are good helpers and strong graft-versus-host inducers. The thymus contains some IgM-producing B cells and memory cells poised to switch to IgY synthesis, and in vitro responses are downregulated by naïve thymus cells. *Xenopus* B cells respond in vitro to low doses of LPS not by proliferation, but rather by Ig synthesis, and also respond to PMA. Old reports of B-cell proliferation can be attributed to contaminants in LPS preparations.[328]

Urodele embryos initially produce five pairs of thymic buds, the first two of which disappear.[284] This results in a three-lobe thymus in *Ambystoma*, but in *Pleurodeles* and *Triturus* it forms one lobe. No cortex-medulla boundary is present, and the thymus generally resembles a canonical cortex. There are at least three types of stromal epithelial cells. There is no lymphopoietic activity in axolotl bone marrow, and hematopoiesis takes place in the spleen and in the peripheral layer of the liver. The spleen is not clearly divided into white and red pulp.

About 40% of TCR-β VDJ junctions in 2.5-month-old *Ambystoma* larvae have N-additions, compared to about 73% in 10- to 25-month-old animals.[247] These VDJ junctions had approximately 30% defective rearrangements at all stages of development, which could be due to the slow rate of cell division in the axolotl lymphoid organs and the large genome in this urodele. As mentioned previously, many axolotl CDRβ3 sequences, deduced from in-frame VDJ rearrangements, are the same in animals of different origins. In contrast, in *Xenopus*, rearrangement starts on day 5 after fertilization for the V_H locus, and within 9 days all V_H families are used. V_H1 rearranges first followed by V_H3, and by day 9/10 V_H 2, 6, 9, and 10 begin being rearranged and then V_H 5, 7, 8, 11 on day 13. For VL, the κ locus is the first to rearrange on day 7 (2 days after V_H), a situation similar to that found in mammals. During this early phase, B cells are present in the liver, where their number increases to approximately 500 cells.[325] Later in larval life, rearrangement resumes at metamorphosis, as suggested by the low incidence of pre-B cells and by the reexpression of RAG during the second histogenesis of the lymphoid system. T cells show a similar type of RAG expression/cell renewal during

ontogeny as the B cells, and the larval and adult Vβ T-cell repertoires differ significantly. Even early in development, tadpoles express a highly variable TCR-β repertoire despite the small number of lymphocytes (8,000 to 10,000 splenic T cells); little redundancy in TCR complementary DNA recovered from young larvae implies that clone sizes must be extremely small, unlike in axolotls.

In *Xenopus*, no lymphoid organ apart from the thymus is detectable until day 12 when the spleen appears and with it the ability to respond to antigen. For B cells, until this time no selection occurs as suggested by the random ratio of productive/non-productive VDJ rearrangements (2:1). After day 12, this ratio becomes 1:1 (ie, the rearrangements have been selected). Complementary DNA sequences on days 10 to 12 (when the number of B cells increases from 80 to 500) are not redundant as if each sequence was represented by one cell.[325] RAG expression together with the detection of DNA rearrangement circles in the bone marrow suggests that rearrangement is ongoing throughout life and is not restricted to an early period, like in birds and rabbits. Tadpole rearrangements are characterized by a lack of N-region diversity, like in mammals but not axolotls or shark/skate (see previous discussion), and thus very short CDR3.[361] During ontogeny, TdT appears in significant amounts in thymus of tadpoles at metamorphic climax, but little expression is detected at earlier stages, which correlates well with the paucity of N-region addition in larval IgH chain sequences.[362] Studies of the ontogeny of the *Xenopus* immune system have revealed a less efficient tadpole immune response (skin graft rejection and Ig heterogeneity and affinity); the absence of TdT expression during tadpole life fits well with the findings of lower larval Ig (and perhaps TCR) diversity.

Reptiles

In all reptiles studied, the thymic cortex and medulla are clearly separated. The spleen has well-defined white and red pulp regions, but T- and B-cell zones have not been delineated with precision.[348] In *Chrysemys scripta*, white pulp is composed of two lymphoid compartments: lymphoid tissue surrounds both central arterioles and thick layers of reticular tissue called ellipsoids. Even after paratyphoid vaccine injection, splenic GCs are not formed, as in fish and amphibians. Splenic red pulp is composed of a system of venous sinuses and cords. In *Python reticulatus*, dendritic cells involved in immune complex trapping have been identified and may be related to mammalian follicular dendritic cells. GALT develops later than spleen during development, and it appears to be a secondary lymphoid organ (but does not seem to contain the equivalent of the bursa of Fabricius). Lymph node–like structures, especially in snakes (*Elaphe*) and lizards (*Gehyra*), have been reported.

Reptiles, the evolutionary precursors of both birds and mammals, are a pivotal group, but unfortunately the functional heterogeneity of reptile lymphocytes is poorly documented. There seems to be T-/B-cell heterogeneity because an antithymocyte antiserum altered some T cell–dependent functions in the viviparous lizard *Chalcides ocellatus*. Embryonic thymocytes responded in MLR at all stages, but ConA responsiveness increased gradually during successive stages and declined at birth. In the alligator (*Alligator mississippiensis*), like in mammals after glass-wool filtration, nonadherent peripheral blood leukocytes (PBL) responded to PHA and not to LPS, whereas adherent cells were stimulated by LPS.

Birds

The thymus, which develops in chickens from the third and fourth pharyngeal pouches, consists of two sets of seven lobes each with definitive cortex/medulla. The thymus becomes lymphoid around day 11 of incubation. Splenic architecture is less differentiated than in mammals. It is not lymphopoietic during embryogenesis as RAG-positive cells are found mainly in yolk sac and blood. Birds are the first vertebrate group where follicular GCs and T-dependent areas comprising the periarteriolar lymphatic sheath are encountered. Plasma cells are located in the red pulp. γ/δ TCR+ T-lymphocytes are chiefly concentrated in sinusoids, whereas α/β T cells fill the periarteriolar lymphatic sheath.[249] Lymph nodes seem to be present in water and shore birds but not in chickens and related fowl.

The bursa of Fabricius is a primary lymphoid organ unique to birds in which B cells are produced.[363] It arises at day 5 of development and involutes 4 weeks later. T-B heterogeneity is obviously well defined in birds (indeed, the "B" in B cell stands for bursa.) The effects of thymectomy—T- and B-cell collaboration and generation of MHC-restricted helper and killer cells—are very similar to mammals, the other class of warm-blooded vertebrates.

During the embryonic period, chicken stem cells found in yolk sac and blood rearrange their IgH and L V genes simultaneously over a very restricted period of time, and very few cells colonize each bursal follicle (about 10^4 follicles).[364] Three weeks after hatching, these cells have differentiated in the bursa and then seed the secondary lymphoid tissues, after which time B cells are no longer be generated from multipotent stem cells; thus, only approximately 2×10^4 productive Ig rearrangements occur in the life of the chicken. When an antiserum to chicken IgM was administered in ovo to block this early bursal immigration, there were no stem cells arising later in development that can colonize the bursa, and these chickens lacked B cells for their entire lives.[365] Although the general Ig locus architecture is similar to that of frogs and mammals, only one rearrangement is possible as there is only one functional V_L or V_H on each allele.[366,367] Diversity is created during bursal ontogeny by a hyperconversion mechanism in which a pool of pseudogenes (25 ψL and approximately 80 ψH) act as donors and the unique rearranged gene acts as an acceptor during a proliferative phase in bursal follicles. For H chains, the situation is more complex as there are multiple D elements. During ontogeny, selection of productive rearrangements parallels the selection of a single D reading frame, suggesting that the many D segments favor D-D joins to provide junctions that are diversified by gene conversion; the hyperconversion mechanism can also modify Ds because most donor pseudogenes are fused VD segments. The gene conversion process requires AID, which is also required for SHM and CSR.[368]

Because diversification by gene conversion occurs after Ig rearrangement and cellular entry into bursal follicles, and there is only a single germline V_H and V_L expressed on all developing B cells, it was tempting to implicate a bursal ligand binding to cell surface IgM to initiate and sustain cellular proliferation and gene conversion. However, surface expression of IgM devoid of V regions permitted the typical B-cell developmental progression, demonstrating that such receptor/ligand interactions are not required.[369] Thus, currently we know little of how cells enter the bursa, which signals induce them to proliferate/convert, and how cells arrest their development and seed the periphery.[364]

Generation of Diversity in Mammals

Mechanisms leading to the generation of repertoire diversity vary among mammalian species.[220] Categories can be made depending upon the mode of B-cell development: rabbits, cattle, swine, and chickens, unlike fish, amphibians, reptiles, and primates/rodents, use a single V_H family, of which only a few members (sometimes only one) are functional. To diversify their antibody repertoire, this group uses gene conversion or hypermutation in hindgut follicles of GALT early in life (rather than bone marrow throughout life) and is therefore known as the "GALT group." At the rabbit H locus, as in the chicken, a single V_H is expressed in most peripheral B cells. During development, B cells that have rearranged this particular V in the bone marrow (and other sites) migrate to the appendix where this rearranged gene is diversified by gene conversion using upstream donor V segments.[370,371] This development of B cells in rabbits is dependent on the intestinal microflora, and efforts are being made to define the potential bacterial superantigens involved, as well as binding sites on IgM necessary for the differentiation.[372] In ruminants, the ileal Peyer patches are the bursa-like primary B cell–generating tissues.[373] Although bursa, appendix, and sheep ileal Peyer patches show morphologic similarities, the mechanisms generating diversity are different: conversion in the chicken and hypermutation in sheep, and both in the rabbit. As described previously, most of the "GALT group" also appears to lack IgD; thus, IgD might serve some purpose in repertoire development in some groups of mammals and not others.

In summary, the organization of the lymphoid tissues is perhaps the only element of the immune system that shows increasing complexity that can be superimposed on the vertebrate phylogenetic tree. The absence of primary and secondary lymphoid tissues (thymus and spleen) is correlated with the absence of a rearranging and/or hypermutating receptor family in other animals, with the exception of the agnathan VLR in which the relevant lymphoid tissues are being defined (see the following). While all jawed vertebrates have a true secondary lymphoid tissue (spleen), ectotherms lack lymph nodes and organized GALT. In addition, while ectotherms clearly have B-cell zones resembling follicles, and despite the clear ability for ectothermic B cells to undergo SMH and at least some degree of affinity maturation, GCs with follicular dendritic cells are not formed after immunization; clearly, this was a major advance in the evolution of the vertebrate immune system.

The potential repertoire of Ig and TCR as well as VLR-combining sites is enormous in all vertebrates. The potential antigen receptor repertoire in all species for both T and B cells is far greater than could ever be expressed in an animal because of cell number limitations. Not all species or all gene families use combinatorial joining for repertoire building, but all species assemble V, (D), and J gene segments to generate their functional Ig genes during B-cell ontogeny, and the imprecision of this assembly creates great somatic diversity. Thus, from this survey in various species, one could not predict that there would be major differences in immune responses in representatives of different vertebrate classes, and yet as mentioned previously the mouse/human antibody responses are superior to those in many taxa.

More on Evolution of the Thymus

The discovery of a second (cervical) functional thymus in mice has raised ontogenetic and immunologic questions.[342,374] Is this second thymus the result of an atavism, or does it correspond to what is seen in human when a cervical thymus can form under certain pathogenic conditions during the migration of the thymus to its final mediastinal location? There are examples of cervical thymi in primitive mammals such as marsupials but also in some prosimians. An "extra" thymus also is reminiscent of the multiple thymi encountered quite frequently in cold-blooded vertebrates.

As described, the thymus is promiscuous with regard to its precise developmental origin.[284] The thymus arises from pouches two to six in cartilaginous fish, from the second pouch in frogs, the second and third in reptiles, and from the third and/or fourth in bony fish, birds, and mammals. The final number of thymi can also be variable. It ranges from five pairs of organs in sharks, to four in caecilian amphibians, to three in urodeles, and finally to one in many teleost fish species, anurans, and many mammals. The thymus of reptiles varies in term of location and number of lobes, reflecting variation in embryonic origin. The adult thymus may be found anywhere from the base of the heart to the neck. For example, in lizards and snakes, there are two lobes on each side of the neck with no subdivision in lobules. The crocodilian thymus is an elongated chain-like structure, not unlike that of birds. In turtles, the thymus is a pair of lobes divided in lobules at the bifurcation of the common carotid associated with the parathyroids. The multilobed thymus in birds is not the equivalent of the multiple thymi found in sharks because the subdivision is secondary to primary organogenesis. Regardless of the underlying ontogenetic mechanism leading to the development the cervical thymus in mice, the result is suggestive of the secondary "thymus spreading" in birds, but it differs with regard to an uneven final size distribution. All marsupials, except koalas and some species of wombats that only have a cervical thymus, have a thoracic thymus similar to that of placentals. Some marsupials (kangaroos and possums) also have a cervical thymus; their thoracic thymus derives from the third and fourth pharyngeal pouches, whereas the cervical thymus arises mainly from the ectoderm of the cervical sinus with some participation from the second and third pouch (like in reptiles).

The second mouse thymus seems to show primitive characteristics such as the existence of a single lobe as is found in amphibians, a superficial location, and a position compatible with an origin involving another pharyngeal pouch (presumably the second) that would be a marsupial and therefore perhaps a reptilian character. Embryology helps in determining the possible scenarios: During mouse ontogeny, the canonical thymus anlage can be recognized, beginning on day 11.5 in development, as a group of Foxn1-expressing cells located ventrally in the third pharyngeal pouch. If the cervical thymus were derived from an independent anlage, one would rather expect to detect Foxn1+ cells in the endoderm outside the third pouch. This argues for a common origin of thoracic and cervical thymi and against a second thymus anlage outside the third pouch, and, hence, against the above hypothesis that the cervical thymus represents an atavistic organ.

A Thymus in Jawless Fish?. Until recently, it was believed that the thymus appeared in evolution with the emergence of adaptive immunity in the extinct placoderm lineage approximately 500 million years ago. There has never been any controversy concerning the presence of a thymus in all living jawed vertebrates, and as described, its requirement for T-cell differentiation is universal. The lack of a thymus in the jawless fish was consistent with the non-Ig/TCR adaptive immunity in these animals, but this has changed in a new study.[375]

The finding that lampreys have two types of lymphocytes heralded a renewed search for a thymus equivalent in these animals.[291] Indeed, there was an extensive literature on this topic over the past century identifying accumulations of cells in various cranial regions, suggesting that lymphocytes could be differentiating in these areas. However, it has always been clear that there is no specialized tissue with a defined cortex and medulla in lampreys or hagfish, as is seen in all gnathostomes. This conclusion was not well supported because there were no molecular markers for either lymphocytes or thymic epithelium in jawless fish. Indeed, consistent with almost all other accumulated data, a recent study concluded that there was "no evidence for a thymus in lampreys."[343(p189)] In that study, the major transcription factor involved in the development of T cells described previously, *foxn1*, was expressed by the pharyngeal epithelium, but the lack of expression of any known lymphocyte markers made it unlikely that this region was truly the thymus equivalent; a similar transcription profile was seen in the gill epithelium of the model basal chordate *Amphioxus*, which truly seems to lack an adaptive immune system.

The discovery of "T cells" in lampreys opened a new panorama with the expression of T cell–specific genes besides the antigen receptors. As mentioned, Pancer and colleagues discovered that lamprey lymphocytes express two APOBEC family member genes, CDA1 and CDA2, and suggested that they were involved in the rearrangement (and perhaps mutational) events in the VLR genes.[288] In the T/B split paper described previously, these APOBEC family members seemed to be expressed specifically in either VLRA (CDA1) or VLRB (CDA2) cells. In the new study, CDA1 was shown to be expressed by lymphocytes in close proximity to the *foxn1*-positive pharyngeal epithelial cells.[375] Furthermore, only in these "developing" lymphocytes, but not in mature VLRA-positive cells, could a high percentage (approximately 25%) of out-of-frame VLRA genes be detected, implying that cells were differentiating in this region. In summary, this tissue in lampreys, which was christened the "thymoid," 1) is derived from the pharyngeal epithelium, 2) expresses classical thymic epithelial markers such as *foxn1* and notch ligands, and 3) is associated with developing VLRA cells, based on expression of the APOBEC family member CDA1, out-of-frame VLRA gene sequences, and failure to respond to activation signals (such as the T cell mitogen PHA) that stimulate mature lymphocytes. In addition, consistent with the high percentage of cells with a nonfunctional receptor, many lymphocytes undergo apoptosis in the thymoid, which is also comparable to the situation in jawed vertebrates. Much more work is necessary to understand this system, but the basic finding is extraordinary.

Because the thymoid is expressed at the tips of all of the gill filaments,[375] thymectomy will not be possible in jawless fish. Perhaps procedures will be developed to block the interactions between the VLRA cells and the pharyngeal epithelium, or the development of the thymoid itself can be disrupted. Assuming that this tissue indeed is the thymic equivalent in lampreys, what is the significance of having the VLRA cells develop in a unique organ? In gnathostomes, T cells recognize antigen in the form of peptides in association with MHC class I or class II molecules. Because of the high levels of MHC polymorphism, as mentioned previously, T cells are positively selected in the thymus for cells that recognize antigen in association with the thymic MHC. Despite major effort, neither MHC molecules nor the specialized proteins associated with antigen processing have been detected in the jawless fish, and thus if there is positive selection it must be orchestrated by a convergent system of antigen processing/presentation. In the same vein, perhaps there is an AIRE equivalent expressed by the thymoid that ensures deletion of self-reactive clones[376]; if so, it would also imply that a convergent antigen presentation system will be discovered in lampreys. It will be of interest to reexamine differentiation of lymphocytes in the pharyngeal epithelium of basal chordates; perhaps this will lead us to an understanding of the origins of adaptive immunity in the vertebrates. Finally, what is the significance of T cells developing in association with the pharyngeal epithelium? Is it because this area in the gill region is evolutionarily plastic or is there some relevance to exposure of the thymoid to the external environment?

Discovery of a New Proteasome Element Expressed in Thymus. Recently, a new form of the proteasome only expressed in the thymus was discovered in mammals, called β5t. The β5t gene was generated via a cis duplication from LMPX (β5), and in its absence cytotoxic T cells are impaired.[377] Like many other components of adaptive immunity we have discussed, β5t is found in all gnathostomes, beginning with the cartilaginous fish. As we will see in the following, the LMPX equivalent of the immunoproteasome, β5i or LMP7, is polymorphic in amphibians and bony fish,

suggesting that it is a lynchpin in formation of the immunoproteasome.[378] It is interesting as well that both β5t and β5i (and all of the immunoproteasome elements) have been lost in birds (see the following).

The Major Histocompatibility Complex

T cells distinguish self from nonself through the presentation of small peptides bound to MHC class I and class II molecules (ie, MHC restriction). The genetic restriction of T cell–APC collaboration, processing of antigen by professional APCs, and T-cell education in the thymus described in mice hold true (or is assumed) for most jawed vertebrate classes. For technical reasons, no MHC-regulated T-cell responses have been documented in cartilaginous fish, but the identification of polymorphic class I and II and rearranging TCRα/β genes and segregated T- and B-cell zones in spleens (see previous discussion) strongly suggest that functional analyses will reveal MHC restriction of adaptive responses.[257] By contrast, urodele amphibians and teleost cod are notorious for their poor immune responses (see the following), but biochemical and molecular evidence suggests that class II polymorphism is low in the axolotl and cod have lost the entire class II–based immune system. Recent results in agnathans and other vertebrates have opened our eyes to new functions in MHC.

Class I/II Structure Through Evolution

The three-dimensional organizations of class I and class II are remarkably similar: the two membrane-distal domains of both molecules form a PBR composed of two antiparallel α helices resting on a floor of eight β strands, and the two membrane-proximal domains are IgSF C1. Although sequence identity among class I and class II genes in vertebrates is low (like most other immune genes), the four extracellular domain organization and other conserved features are likely to be found in the ancestral class I/II gene.[379] An intrachain disulfide bridge exists within the class I PBR α2 and class IIβ1 domains, but not the class I/II PBR α1 domains, and phylogenetic trees show that these respective domains are most similar. Bony fish class II α1 domains, like class II DMα molecules, do have a disulfide bridge. The exon/intron structure of class I and class II extracellular domains is also well conserved, but some teleosts have acquired an intron in the exon encoding the IgSF β2 domain. Other conserved features of class I genes include a glycosylation site on the loop between the α1 and α2 domains important in biosynthesis (shared with class II β chains), a Tyr and one to three Ser in the cytoplasmic regions that can be phosphorylated in mammals, as well as several stabilizing ionic bonds. Class II with its two TM regions differs from class I with only one; conserved residues in the class II α and β TM/cytoplasmic regions facilitate dimerization. In summary, because sequence similarity is very low among MHC genes in different taxa, these conserved features are important for function, biosynthesis, and maintenance of structure.

β2m was the second IgSF molecule (C1 type) ever to be identified, originally found at high levels in the urine of patients with kidney disease. It associates with most class I molecules (see the following). Besides mammals, β2m genes have been cloned from representatives of all jawed vertebrate classes. The β2m gene is outside the MHC in all tetrapods and bony fish tested, and is a single copy gene in all species except cod and trout, in which it has undergone multiple duplications. Based on the levels of similarity between the various domains of class I and class II, it was predicted that β2m was originally encoded in the MHC; indeed, recent work has shown that it is linked to the MHC in the nurse shark, adjacent to the ring3 gene.[380] Like TCR/Ig/class I/II, β2m has not been found in jawless vertebrates, so its origin remains mysterious.

Classical and Neoclassical Class I and Class II

Class Ia (classical) and class Ib (nonclassical) genes are found in all of the major groups of jawed vertebrates. Class Ia genes are defined by their ubiquitous expression, their presence in the MHC proper, and by high polymorphism (in most species). In addition, class Ia proteins almost always have eight conserved residues at both ends of the PBR that interact with "mainchain" atoms of bound peptides and constrain their size to eight or nine residues; this feature often distinguishes class Ia from class Ib (see the following). Thus, tight binding of peptides, a likely source of conformational changes in class I allowing transport through the endoplasmic reticulum and cell surface expression, is an evolutionarily conserved trait.[381] In nonmammalian vertebrates, one of these residues at the C-terminus is lysine rather than tyrosine, the functional significance of which is unclear.[379]

The class Ia/Ib distinction holds in most taxa: one to three polymorphic class Ia genes are expressed ubiquitously in most species, whereas other minimally polymorphic or monomorphic class Ib genes are expressed in a tissue-specific fashion. The class Ib genes can be split into two major groups: one set that is most related to the class Ia genes within a taxon and thus recently derived, and one group that is ancient and emerged early in evolution.[381] In mouse and human, the set most closely related to class Ia genes are closely linked within the MHC. In nonmammalian vertebrates, however, this first set is found in gene clusters on the same chromosome as the MHC proper but far enough away to segregate independently from MHC (eg, chicken [*Rfpy*] and *Xenopus* [*XNC*]). One *Xenopus* class Ib gene is expressed specifically in the lung and thus likely has a specialized function, and another gene (XNC10) is expressed by T cells and may serve as a ligand for unconventional subsets of T cells.[382,383] Chicken Rfpy is associated with resistance to pathogens, and the recent structure of one of these class Ib genes has shown an unusual hydrophobic structure in the groove.[384] Class Ib genes related to but unlinked to the classical class I have also been found in bony and cartilaginous fish, and a lineage of class II–linked class I genes was discovered in bony fish.[385] Thus, class Ib genes that arise in each taxon seem to have true class I–like functions, but perhaps have become specialized (sometimes the distinction between class Ia and class Ib is blurry; see the following). The second set of older class Ib genes that predates divergence of taxa can have very different functions.[381] For example, the neonatal Fc receptor is involved in binding

and transport of IgG molecules across epithelia as well as protecting them from degradation (the Brambell receptor). Furthermore, molecules only described so far in mammals are composed only of a PBR without IgSF domains; these unusual class I molecules do not bind peptides but rather are important for the regulation of NK- and T-cell function during infection. The paradigm for these SOS responses is the MHC class I-related protein (MIC) and UL16-binding protein (ULBP) class Ib molecules, which clearly do not bind peptides. Some teleost class Ib genes that fall outside the major cluster of fish class I genes may fit into this category.[385,386] Finally, molecules like CD1 bind nonpeptidic antigens for presentation to innate-like NKT cells. The phylogenetic analysis predicts that CD1 and FcRN are old class I genes (see the following on CD1); the age revealed by the phylogenetic tree also correlates well with the hypothesis that ancient duplication events predating the emergence of jawed vertebrates resulted in the appearance of CD1, FcRN, and MHC-linked class I genes (see the following). Was the original function of class I linked to antigen presentation (peptidic or otherwise), induction of an SOS response, or to housekeeping functions? We do not have the answer because class Ia and class Ib molecules are present in the oldest living gnathostomes. The discovery of class I–like genes in animals derived from ancestors predating adaptive immunity or in the jawless fish would help resolve this question, but to date no recognizable MHC molecules or their kin have been detected in prejawed vertebrates; this topic is especially of interest since the dichotomy of lymphocytes as well as a thymus candidate in jawless fish were discovered.[291,375]

Class II molecules also have nearly invariant and evolutionarily conserved residues that bind to main-chain atoms of peptides, but these are in the center of the groove.[379] Thus, tight binding to main-chain peptide atoms occurs in the center of the class II PBR, and peptides are free to protrude from both ends. The only nonclassical class II molecules so far identified are the previously mentioned DM molecules that lack these residues and DO proteins. DM molecules so far have been cloned only from tetrapods[177] and have not been detected in any fish species despite the large genomic and EST databases for the bony fish. Thus, they either had not emerged at the time fish arose or were lost in the bony fish lineage; phylogenetic trees suggest the latter, and would be consistent with the rapid rate of genome evolution in the teleosts. DO class II molecules, believed to modulate DM function, have only been detected in placental mammals.[387] The invariant chain is another protein found only in gnathostomes[388]; its recent role in class I cross-presentation suggests that it may have been important for biosynthesis of both class I and class II.[389]

Class I/II Expression

In *Xenopus* species, immunocompetent larvae express high levels of class II on APCs such as B cells, but express only very low levels of class Ia molecules on all hematopoietic cells until metamorphosis.[328] Expression of the immunoproteasome element *lmp7* and all identified class Ib isotypes is also very low.[390] Larval skin and gut, organs with epithelia in contact with the environment, appear to coexpress class I (transcripts) and class II. Such expression may provide immune protection during larval life; perhaps expression of class Ia is limited to organs that undergo massive destruction and remodeling at metamorphosis. Class II molecules also change their distribution after metamorphosis and are highly expressed by unstimulated T cells.[391] Axolotl class II molecules are also regulated differentially during ontogeny, expressed in young animals on B cells, and then expanded to all hematopoietic cells, including erythrocytes, later in life.[392] Changes in MHC expression are not correlated with cryptic metamorphosis in axolotls, but class II expression by erythrocytes is correlated to the switch from larval to adult globins. Unlike *Xenopus*, class I transcripts isolated so far are expressed early in ontogeny, from hatching onwards.

Carp class I and class II transcripts are detected in embryos 1 day after fertilization and reach a plateau at day 14. However, the suspected class Ia protein does not appear until week 13, whereas β2m can be detected several weeks earlier.[393] It was suggested that another class I molecule is expressed during early development of the carp hematopoietic system, perhaps one of the unusual nonclassical molecules that groups outside the teleost cluster. Interestingly, class I is expressed in the brain of young, but not adult fish, suggesting that class I molecules may play a role in neurogenesis.[394]

As mentioned previously, the cod was recently shown to have lost class II genes, as well as the invariant chain and CD4 genes.[395] The apparent lack of the entire class II system of antigen recognition correlates well with the inability of cod to make antigen-specific antibody responses.[396] The authors speculate that the large numbers of class I molecules in cod may somehow compensate for the loss of a class II system. Axolotls, which have very low class II polymorphism,[397] also have a highly expanded class I system.[398] It is possible that in both cases there has been a "use it or lose it" scenario, in which a major arm of the immune system was lost due to a low pathogen load.

Major Histocompatibility Complex Gene Organization

As class I and class II proteins are structurally similar, it is no surprise that their genes are linked, a primordial trait subsequently lost only in bony fish (Fig. 4.12).[2] But why are structurally unrelated class I processing genes, including the immune proteasome components *lmp2* and *lmp7* and the *TAP* and *TAPASIN* genes, also found in the MHC? There are two possible scenarios: primordial linkage of ancestral processing and presenting genes in the MHC, or later recruitment of either the processing/presenting genes into a primordial MHC. Based on the presence of similar clusters of MHC genes on paralogous chromosomal regions in humans and mice, Kasahara et al.[17,399] proposed that ancestors of class I, class II, proteasome, transporter, and class III genes were already linked before the emergence of the adaptive immune system. Genomewide duplications around the time of the origin of vertebrates (the so-called 2-Round or 2R hypothesis), as proposed by Ohno et al.,[16] may have provided the raw material from which the immune system genes was assembled (see the following; Fig. 4.13). As for all other adaptive immune genes described so far, neither class I/II nor immunoproteasome/transporter associated with antigen processing (TAP) have been isolated from hagfish nor

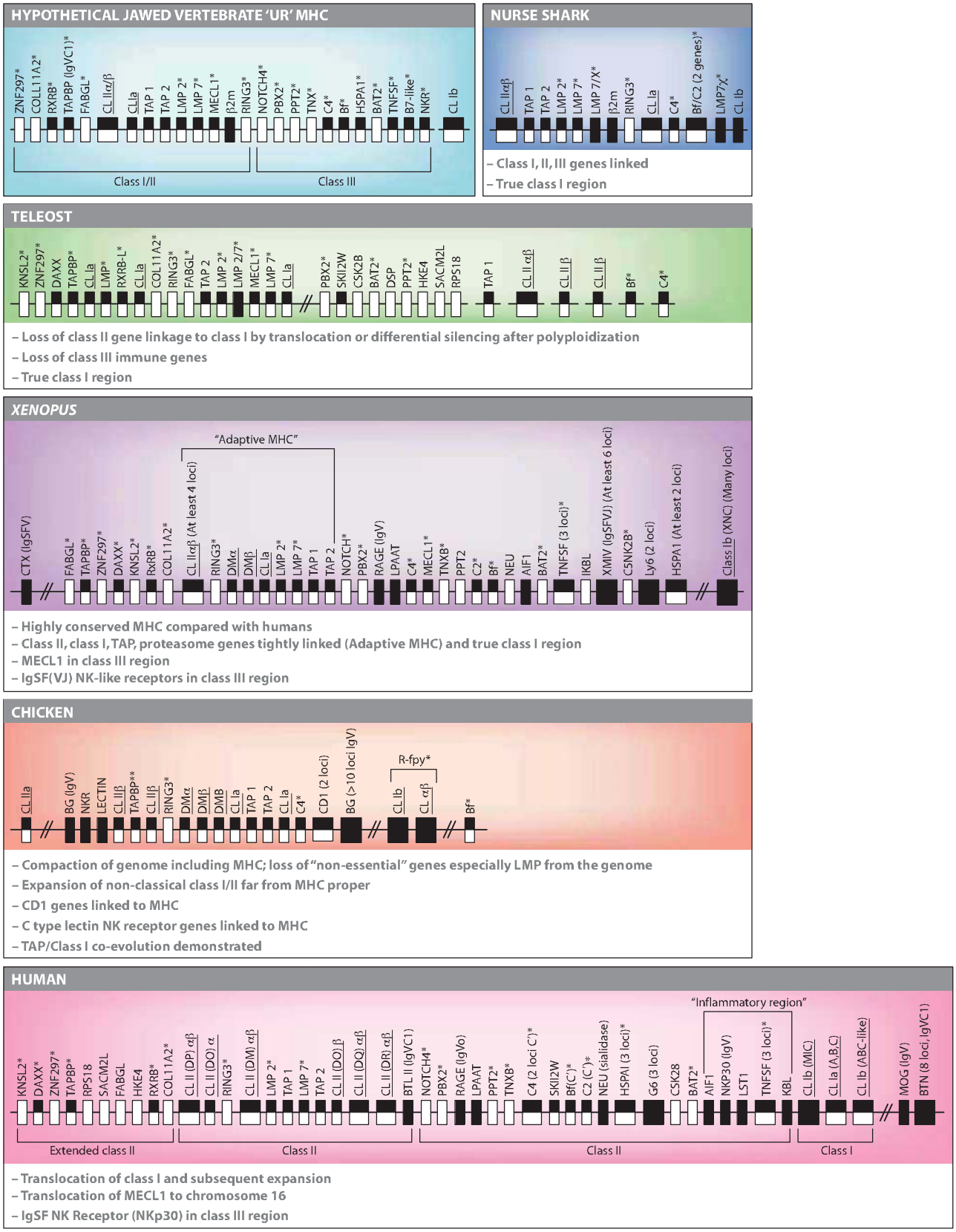


FIG. 4.12. Major Histocompatibility Complex (MHC) Evolution. *White* indicates that the gene is found in at least one other species besides human; *black* designates a gene with known or inferred immune function; *asterisk* indicates an ancestral gene found on at least two paralogous MHC regions in mammals; *large box* indicates at least two genes in the particular region; *double slash* indicates linkage far away on the same chromosome; *space between lines* indicates that the genes are on different linkage groups. The teleost MHC is a composite of the zebrafish, trout, *Fugu*, and medakafish maps. Extensively modified from Flajnik and Kasahara.[498]

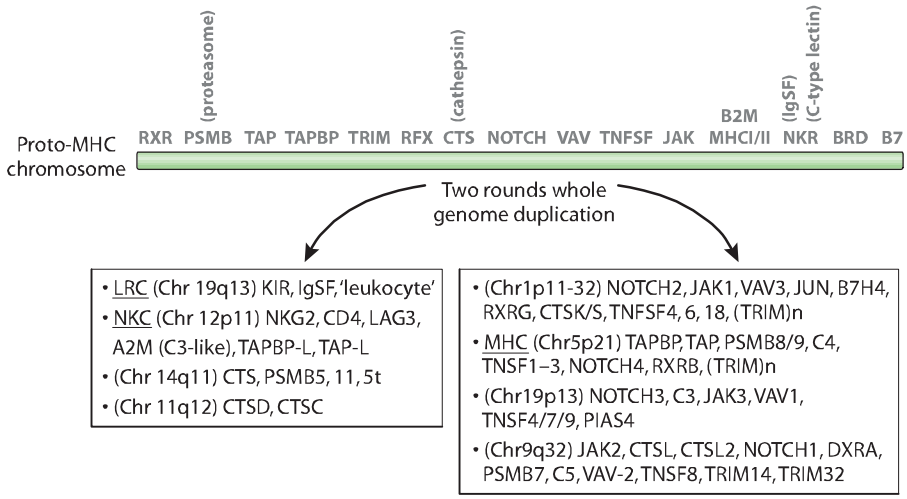


FIG. 4.13. Genomewide Duplication (2R) Model of Major Histocompatibility Complex (MHC) Evolution. Displayed are the MHC paralogous regions and their human chromosomal designations, first identified by Kasahara and modified over the years.[2,17] Note that such paralogous regions have also been studied for chemokine receptors,[477] tumor necrosis factor and tumor necrosis factor receptors,[459] immunoglobulin superfamily molecules involved in cell-cell interactions,[442] and others. Note that the natural killer cell complex and leukocyte receptor complex, respectively, are likely to have been in the Ur MHC based upon linkages seen today in various taxa. The *box on the right* indicates the original MHC paralogous regions identified by Kasahara on chromosomes 1, 6, 9, and 19.[17] The *box on the left* shows paralogous regions uncovered in further analyses.[500] Modified from Flajnik and Kasahara.[2]

lampreys, and all of these genes as well as other genes involved in immunity could have emerged as a consequence of the duplications. Because class I genes are found on two or three of the clusters, class I–like molecules may have predated class II in evolution. Indeed, NK-like recognition of a class I or class I–like molecule encoded in an ancestral linkage group may have been at the origin of the adaptive immune system (see the following).

TAP is an interesting case in that the MHC-linked TAP 1/2 genes were clearly not part of the Ur MHC, but rather they were "recruited" to the MHC early in evolution. TAPs are members of the very large ABC transporter family, and are most closely related to bacterial ABC transporters; this suggests that TAP1/2 were derived from a bacterial, or more likely a mitochondrial gene, via horizontal transfer.[400] Furthermore, a close homologue of TAP1/2, TAP-L (TAP-like), unlike all of the other Ig/TCR/MHC genes we have discussed, is present in jawless fish.[401] The function of TAP-L is not known, but it may be involved in cross-presentation[402] or "typical" presentation in jawless fish. In summary, the TAP genes are not following any of the "rules" that seem to hold true for the other genes involved in adaptive immunity, and this story will be exciting to monitor, especially in the context of the agnathan VLR system.

In all nonmammalian vertebrates, and even in marsupials, the immunoproteasome and TAP genes are closely linked to class I genes, not to class II, in a true "class I region."[2] This result is most striking in bony fish (*Fugu*, zebrafish, medaka, trout) because class I/lmp/TAP/TAPBP and class II are found on different chromosomes.[403,404] The class III region, historically defined by the innate immune genes such as Bf/C2, and C4 are also present in the *Xenopus* and elasmobranch MHC, showing that the class III association of class I/II with such genes is ancient.[177] If Kasahara's interpretation is correct (ie, MHC syntenic groups found on different mammalian chromosomes resulted from ancient block duplications), it is expected that the physical association of ancestral class I, II, and III genes predated the emergence of jawed vertebrates, and such syntenies in ectothermic vertebrates are not surprising. Indeed, linkage studies in nonvertebrates *Amphioxus* and *Ciona* do support an ancient linkage of class I, II, and III genes.[405] Taken together, the data reveal that lack of synteny of class I, class II, and class III genes in teleosts is a derived character. Independent assortment of class I and class II may allow these genes to evolve at different rates: in some teleosts, class Ia alleles form ancient, slowly evolving lineages, whereas class II genes evolve at similar rates as mammalian MHC alleles.[406,407]

The chicken MHC, the B complex, is on a microchromosome, and intron sizes and intergenic distances are both quite small so that the entire complex is only a few hundred kb as compared to over 4,000 kb in humans and *Xenopus*.[408] Class Ia (BF), class IIβ (BL and DM), and TAP genes are in the MHC, but there is no evidence for immunoproteasome genes, and almost all class III genes have been deleted except for C4. The quail MHC is similar, although is somewhat expanded, especially in genes related to the C-type lectin NK receptors.[409] Although most class III genes are found on other chromosomes, *lmp2/7* and *MECL1* genes are actually absent from the genome; indeed, peptides bound to chicken class I molecules sometimes have C-terminal glutamic acid or aspartic acid, which are rare after proteolysis by mammalian proteasomes containing lmp2 and lmp7. Indeed, the recent crystal structure of a chicken class I molecule shows that the alleles can interact with a broader array of peptides as compared to mammalian class I alleles; the PBR is "broader" and one of the conserved peptide-binding residues is noncanonical.[410] To explain the correlation of

diseases with particular haplotypes, Kaufman proposed that the chicken has a minimal essential MHC composed of only those genes absolutely required to remain in the complex. This concept has been reinforced recently by an analysis of resistance to viral infection (Rous sarcoma virus) governed by classical class I molecules.[411,412] Additionally, the presence of polymorphic TAP alleles closely linked to particular class I alleles has demonstrated coevolution of the transporters and peptide-binding molecules.[413]

Surprisingly, CD1 genes are closely linked to the chicken MHC.[414,415] As mentioned previously, CD1 genes in mammals seem to be on one of the MHC paralogous regions and it was suggested that it arose as a consequence of the en bloc duplication. While this is still possible (ie, there was differential silencing of CD1 and other class I genes on the two paralogous chromosomes), the more likely scenario is that CD1 arose by gene duplication within the MHC itself in an ancestor of warm-blooded vertebrates; no bonafide CD1 genes have been detected to date in any fish or amphibians, so the entire NKT system may be specific of warm-blooded vertebrates.

In summary, in all animals except placental mammals, classical class I genes map closely to the *TAP*, *lmp*, and tapasin genes, suggesting that the processing, transport, and presenting genes were in an original "class I region."[416] The tight linkage of the functionally, but not structurally, related genes strongly suggests that such genes coevolve within particular MHC haplotypes. Indeed, in *Xenopus* there are biallelic lineages of class Ia, LMP7, and TAP, which are always found as a set in wild-caught animals.[417] Although teleosts underwent an explosive adaptive radiation 100 million years ago and primordial syntenies have been lost in many cases, there are deep lineages of class Ia genes in many species, also found for *Xenopus* and cartilaginous fish class Ia genes. A study in medaka suggests that divergent noncoding regions between the class I–processing and –presenting genes do not permit recombination between lineages, hence preserving the linkage disequilibrium.[418] Nonaka et al. proposed that these deep proteasome/class I lineages emerged at the dawn of vertebrate immunity and may even have been maintained perhaps by convergent evolution in certain groups.[419] In (most) eutherian mammals, the class I region is not closely linked to lmp/TAP and is very unstable, with rapid duplications/deletions expected in a multigene complex (see Fig. 4.12); the same class I instability extends to the non–MHC-linked class Ib genes in *Xenopus* species.[420]

EVOLUTION OF ALLORECOGNITION

Histocompatibility Reactions in Invertebrates

Scrutinizing graft rejection within a species (allograft) across the animal kingdom demonstrated that allorecognition was almost universal among metazoa. Scrutinizing specific memory in the same systems was *the* major tool to establish the universality or not of adaptive immunity. Moreover, it fueled speculations the origins of vertebrate MHC. Most of these studies led to inconclusive results because of the poor immunogenetic aspects of the reactions. However, the genetic regions and mechanisms responsible and molecular underpinnings of such alloreactions are now becoming known, and no (or little) resemblance to the vertebrate MHC has been found even though regions homologous of the extended vertebrate MHC have been identified in some organisms but without functional correlation.[405,421]

Colonies of *Porifera*, *Cnidaria*, *Bryozoa*, and *Tunicata* (see Fig. 4.1) often compete for space and may develop histocompatibility reactions in the zone of contact. In addition, cell-lineage parasitism, in which the somatic and/or germ cell lineage of one partner replaces that of the other, may ensue if colonies fuse into a chimera. Thus, effector functions following allorecognition also protect the genetic integrity of the individual. In some species, fusion is apparently restricted to tissues of the same individual (complete matching), in other species such as bryozoans, fusion also occurs between genetically distinct individuals if they share kinship (partial matching). Two divergent invertebrate phyla have been studied in detail: *Cnidaria* and *Tunicata*.

Porifera

Sponges (*Porifera*) and placoza are the phylogenetically oldest extant metazoan phyla. Sponges, whether marine or freshwater species, possess a sophisticated histocompatibility system.[422] Elements of the sponge immune system involved in these reactions have been analyzed at the molecular level. Sponge cells associate in a species-specific process through multivalent calcium-dependent interactions of carbohydrate structures on a 200 kd extracellular membrane-bound proteoglycan called "aggregation factor," well studied in *Microciona* and *Geodia*.[422] The glycan moiety is involved in cell adhesion and exhibits differences in size and epitope content among individuals, suggesting the existence of allelic variants. Therefore, strong carbohydrate-based cell adhesion evolved at the very start of Metazoan history. Other genes involved in these reactions include one that is similar to the vertebrate MHC-linked allograft inflammatory factor and another to the T-cell transcription factor. AIF-1 and T-cell transcription factor genes are upregulated in vivo after tissue transplantation, and in vitro in mixed sponge cell reaction.[423] Polymorphic IgSF molecules are found on the surface of sponge cells, but their relationship to allorecognition events (if one exists) is not clear.[424]

Allogeneic recognition in vitro led to apoptotic cell death in one partner and survival in the other.[425] The process is controlled by a differential expression of the proapoptotic and prosurvival proteins that are characteristic for the initiation of apoptosis (caspase, MA3, ALG-2 protein) and the prevention of programmed cell death (2 Bcl-2 homology proteins, FAIM-related polypeptide, and DAD-1–related protein). In an apoptotic mixed cell combination, characteristic apoptotic genes were expressed, while in the nonapoptotic aggregates the cell-survival genes are upregulated.[423] In another species, *Microciona*, allogeneic interactions also

induce cellular reactions involving gray cells (sponge immunocytes) and finally apoptosis. Analogous (but most likely not homologous) to T-cell responses, the response is inhibited by cyclosporin A.[426]

From observation of 50 pairs of larval grafts within one F1 progeny of the marine sponge *Crambe*, 75% could fuse, a proportion suggesting that the genetic control depends on one locus and sharing of one haplotype results in fusion; a 100% fusion between mother and offspring is consistent with this interpretation. Unfortunately, the issue is complicated as individuals from a given mother may not have the same father. Still, the few data available are consistent with a single or at least major histocompatibility locus (or region), the "rule" in other invertebrate phyla described in the following.

Cnidaria

The existence of highly polymorphic histocompatibility loci was demonstrated long ago in various corals where apoptosis induction was responsible for the death of partners in incompatible combinations,[154] whereas in sea anemone nematocyte discharge was induced between incompatible individuals.[427] The colonial cnidarian *Hydractinia* was the only species to provide a model to analyze genetic control of such reactions. In 1950, Hauenschild noticed that allorecognition seemed to be under the control of a single genetic region with multiple alleles.[428] Colonies of *Hydractinia* encrust the shells of hermit crabs, where they grow by elongation and branching of stolons. Embryos and larvae fuse indiscriminately. However, when two or more larvae are recruited to the same substratum, colonial forms may come into contact through their stolons. If the two colonies are histocompatible, stolon tips adhere and fuse, establishing gastrovascular connections and a permanent genetic chimera. If tips of incompatible colonies fail to adhere, they swell (hyperplastic stolons) with the migration of nematocysts, which discharge and damage the tissues. In addition, transitory fusions can also occur in a few cases. Similar to the genetics of the sponge alloreactions previously mentioned (and in other invertebrates and plants), colonies fuse if they share one or two haplotypes, reject if they share no haplotypes, and display transitory fusion if they share only one allele at one haplotype and no alleles at the other. Examination of the polymorphic locus governing this reaction (*alr*) revealed the involvement of two closely-linked polymorphic loci 1.7 cm apart (likely encoding receptor and ligand), *alr1* and *alr2*.[429] *Alr1* encodes a three IgSF domain surface molecule, not unlike other metazoan nectin-like molecules, with a cytoplasmic tail equipped with multiple signaling motifs (including a ITAM-like motif). In the first domain, the molecule shows a high level of variability at particular residues, suggesting positive selection. Alr1 is embedded in a genetic region consisting of multiple IgSF members. Alr2 encodes another highly polymorphic gene with three IgSF domain IgSF with the distal V-like domain being the most variable, and an ITIM-like motif in the cytoplasmic tail adjacent to various phosphorylation motifs. Like the corals studied by Theodor,[430] a high level of allele diversity was found at the alr2 level as nearly all sampled alleles encoded unique gene products.[431]

Urochordates

Compared to *Cnidaria*, tunicates shared a recent common ancestor with the vertebrates (see Fig. 4.1), and thus might be expected to have a histocompatibility system more related to MHC. Allorecognition has been studied in both colonial and solitary ascidians. In *Botryllus*, a colonial ascidian, extra attention was afforded this system because the locus controlling histocompatibility was linked to (or was the same locus as) the locus controlling fertilization by preventing self-fertilization. For fusion, at least one histocompatibility locus must be shared between the colonies and for fertilization the sperm must be mismatched from the egg.[432]

Metamorphosis in *Botryllus* is followed by budding that eventually gives rise to a large colony of asexually derived genetically identical individuals (zooids), united through a vascular network. At the periphery of the colony, the vasculature ends in ampullae, which are the sites of interaction when two colonies meet during their expansion. The interaction results in either fusion of the two ampullae to form a single chimeric colony sharing a common blood supply or a rejection reaction during which the interacting ampullae are destroyed, thus preventing vascular fusion. Hemocytes (morula cells) are involved in the reaction.[433] Fusion or rejection is governed by a single highly polymorphic (tens to hundreds of alleles) locus called the FuHC (for fusion/histocompatibility; 10 wild-type individuals collected from around the Monterey Bay area yielded 18 cFuHC alleles). As mentioned, when two colonies share one or both FuHC alleles, they will fuse; rejection occurs if no alleles are in common. However, like in *Hydractinia*, intermediary pathways have been reported in the past and have not been entirely elucidated.

The C-terminal region of the FuHC molecule consists of a nectin-like segment with three Ig domains, showing most similarity to chicken Igsf4 and related members conserved in all vertebrates as well as to one of the *Ciona* nectins.[434] Those members are found in a tetrad of paralogs in vertebrates but not linked to the tetrad of MHC paralogs (see the following). The N-terminal region contains an epidermal growth factor (EGF) domain and some other unrecognizable regions not conserved among ascidians. Any two FuHC alleles differ by an average of 4% at the nucleotide level. Unlike MHC class I and class II, polymorphic residues in FuHC alleles are not concentrated in particular regions, and alternative splicing can generate a fragment devoid of the IgSF moiety.

Some 200 kb away from FuHC is a second polymorphic (and polygenic) locus, *fester*, which is inherited in distinct haplotypes.[435] Diversified through extensive alternative splicing, with each individual expressing a unique repertoire of splice forms (each individual expressing up to three splice variants in addition to the regular full-length product), it potentially exists as both membrane-bound and secreted forms, all expressed in tissues intimately associated with histocompatibility. After *fester* knockdown, the histocompatibility reaction is blocked at the stage of initiation as

if the colonies ignored each other. By contrast, when Fester was blocked with specific mAbs, fusion reactions were unaffected, but rejection reactions were turned into fusions in an allele-dependent manner. These data combined with its genetic location suggest that Fester encodes the FuHC ligand. Fester contains a short consensus repeat (or sushi domain) often found in vertebrate complement receptors. Beside these two polymorphic products, another *Botryllus* cell surface–expressed nonpolymorphic molecule related to fester, uncle fester, is required for incompatibility reactions, while fester seems to be required for allele discrimination and inhibition of killing.[436] So, several independent pathways seem to control the final outcome of the interaction between individuals.[437] It should be mentioned that a recent study, based essentially on the incongruence between histocompatibiity profiles and FuHC polymorphism, questions the validity of these reports.[438]

Solitary Ascidians

In *Halocynthia roretzi*, a "polymorphism of color" has been observed and histocompatibility reset by a mixed hemocyte technique in vitro resulting in a melanization reaction likely to involve the PPO cascade.[439] Depending on the strains, the percentage of positive reaction varied from approximately 55% to 70%, indicative of polymorphism. Grafting experiments had already shown the existence of allorecognition in solitary ascidians, and investigation at the cellular level had demonstrated the occurrence of cytotoxic cells in such organisms.[440] In order to shed light on allorecognition in urochordates and on the molecules involved in preventing self-fertilization, gonadal complementary DNAs of three genetically unrelated *Ciona intestinalis* individuals were compared by suppression subtractive hybridization. This led to the discovery of the highly polymorphic variable complement receptor–like 1 gene coding for a transmembrane protein with several short consensus repeat domains (short consensus repeat/complement control protein [CCP]), a motif shared with the variable fester receptor of *Botryllus* described previously.[441] Genes encoding variable complement receptor–like are in the same linkage group as a set of IgSF domains with homology to nectin (CD155/poliovirus receptor [PVR], cortical thymocyte protein [CTX]/junctional-adhesion molecule [JAM] family members, etc.) and other adhesion molecules of which related members can be found also on one genetic region in vertebrate, the 19q 34 human chromosome segment with the extended LRC (see the following).[442]

The Meaning of Histocompatibility Reactions in the Invertebrates

The association between allorecognition in *Botryllus* and fertilization led to the proposal that histocompatibility systems were selected during evolution to avoid inbreeding. The hypothesis made sense in the case of sessile colonial invertebrates that might have difficulty dispersing their gametes and therefore are susceptible to inbreeding depression. Indeed, the partial matching mentioned previously is a general characteristic of fusion compatibility in colonial invertebrates, perhaps driven by "selection operating on an error-prone genetic system for self-recognition that is perhaps constrained by derivation from a gametic function selected to reduce inbreeding.[443] Furthermore, even in mammals there is a large literature suggesting a selection both at the mate-choice and pregnancy levels for preserving heterozygocity at the MHC.[443a] However, the possibility of a common genetic system, or linked systems, governing fusion and gametic compatibility awaits confirmation. Because animals that are neither sessile nor unable to disperse their gametes can possess alloimmune responses is inconsistent with the general hypothesis. Moreover, inbreeding avoidance can only explain the selection of histocompatibility alleles if the histocompatibility loci are genetically linked to a large fraction of its genome. This is inconsistent with the tight linkage of histocompatibility genes to a single major locus, especially in invertebrates. So inbreeding avoidance is unlikely to contribute significantly to the selection of histocompatibility alleles, although in jawed vertebrates, selection for heterozygocity at the MHC itself has obvious advantages.

Another hypothesis is that alloimmunity was selected because it avoided intraspecific parasitism and/or competition for attachment sites.[444] Indeed, after fusion of compatible colonies, bloodborne germline or totipotent stem cells are transferred between colonies, and can expand and differentiate in the newly arising, asexually derived individuals of the vascular partner.[445] This can result in a situation where only one genotype is represented in the gametic output of the fused individuals. The FuHC polymorphism in *Botryllus* could function to restrict to compatible individuals the vascular fusion and the germline parasitism. The high allelic polymorphism characteristic of all invertebrate recognition systems may have evolved in response to selection for fusion with self rather than kin. Fusion with self will allow the development of a colony that benefits from fusion while eliminating the possible cost of somatic cell parasitism, and thus would be the raison d'etre of the allorecognition mechanisms.[446]

However, most animals are not sessile and thus are neither prone to intraspecific competition nor to compete for limited substrate attachment sites. Tunicates besides *Botryllus* have evolved differently (eg, in *Diplosoma*, large numbers of chimaeras are encountered in nature). In addition, the intraspecific competition hypothesis demands that individuals maintain expression of histocompatibility alleles, even when the expression of these alleles enables their own destruction during intraspecific competition. These considerations suggest that intraspecific competition might affect histocompatibility allele frequencies in some organisms under certain conditions.

Both previous hypotheses are essentially based on observation made in colonial tunicates, but colonial living has evolved several times independently. Urochordates are most related to the vertebrates, but the data argue against any of the genes involved in their histocompatibility reactions being ancestral to MHC class I and class II. It is clear in all of these studies that a strong pressure for polymorphism is the rule, but the evidence from all of these fascinating

reactions suggests that such "pressures" select for similar systems via convergence, at least at the level of the receptor. The selecting molecular environment can perhaps show more conservation (see the folllowing). On the other hand, as described previously, genetic regions with homology to the vertebrate MHC have been detected in the invertebrates, yet are (most likely) unrelated to the reactions detailed here (see conclusion).

As described, in all of these allorecognition systems, convergent mechanisms have been encountered to reach an analogous end, and thus it is unlikely that a unique "cause" arose for selecting them in diverse organisms. However, in an attempt to find an ultimate and general explanation to the selection during evolution of highly polymorphic allorecognition systems, it has been suggested that pathogen and retroviruses are the force behind the selection of allopolymorphism.[447] This does not imply intimate phylogenetic relationships between the systems observed but rather emphasizes analogous solutions when facing similar pressures. We discuss "connections" between vertebrate immunity and these histocompatibility reactions in the conclusion.

CYTOKINES AND CHEMOKINES

Many cytokines/chemokines and their receptors, like most molecules of the immune system, evolve rapidly. However, consistent with the "Big Bang" theory, it is an emerging picture that the majority of cytokines and chemokines found in mouse and human are also found in the genome and EST projects of nonmammalian jawed vertebrates, best studied in chickens and certain bony fish, but now extending to the cartilaginous fish as well. This suggests that whatever the initiating pressures in the evolution of the Ig/TCR adaptive immune system, the network of cytokines and chemokines emerged (practically) full blown early in evolution. A picture starts to emerge, but the gestalt is far from clear; this is, in part, because the situation in mouse human is clouded by the plasticity of T helper cell lineages, as well as an entirely new subset of immune cells, the innate lymphoid cells (ILCs), that produce cytokines previously thought to be within the domain of adaptive lymphocytes.

The Proinflammatory Cytokines, Interleukin-1 Family Members, Interleukin-6, Interleukin-8, and Tumor Necrosis Factor α

IL-1 and related family members IL-18 and IL-33, IL-6, TNF-α, and IL-8 (CXCL8) are the prototypic cytokines associated with inflammatory responses, which are defined by induction of vasodilatation and vascular permeability, and upregulation of innate immune system–specific molecules that have direct functions or that costimulate/attract T and B cells. Classically, many of these activities can be assayed in supernatants from PAMP (eg, LPS)-stimulated phagocytes by determining whether thymocytes are induced to proliferate when one also adds suboptimal concentrations of T-cell mitogens. It was reasonable to hypothesize that such cytokines, which act both at a distance as well as in a cognate fashion, might be found in the invertebrates. Indeed, IL*-1–like *activities* have been described for echinoderm coelomocytes (either IL-1–like production by such cells, or the ability of the cells to respond to mammalian IL-1), but unfortunately no molecular data revealing the structures of the active invertebrate cytokine/cytokine receptor have been reported. In fact, no ortholog has been detected in the genome projects from protostomic invertebrates (see Fig. 4.1), and only IL-17 and TNF homologues have been detected in nonvertebrate deuterostomes and protostomes,[48,448,449] and IL-8 in agnathans; thus, we may consider these as primordial cytokines related to the vertebrate versions. A molecule from earthworms capable of activating the prophenoloxidase defense pathway cross-reacted with a mAb directed to mammalian TNF-α.[450] However, this molecule had no homology to TNF-α upon sequencing.

IL-1 activity as measured by costimulation assays or as a consequence of PAMP stimulation has been detected in all nonmammalian vertebrates. IL-1β upregulation has been detected after treatment of macrophages with LPS, consistent with its inflammatory function in mammals. In addition, injection of gram-negative bacteria into trout induced IL-1β expression in many tissues.[451] Identity with the mammalian IL-1β gene in all other species ranges from 28% to 40% (identity between mammalian IL-1α and IL-1β is about 25%). In nonmammalian species, IL-1β lacks the so-called ICE cleavage site, important for function in mouse/human.[452] IL-18 is an IL-1–related cytokine, and in contrast to IL-1 seems more focused in its function of potentiating TH1 responses. IL-18 has been detected in birds and fish, but the tissue distribution in fish seems to be expanded as compared to mammals. Additionally, IL-18 in nonmammalian vertebrates contains the ICE cleavage site, unlike its cousin IL-1β. Other IL-1–related cytokines, including IL-33 and the IL-1F series, have also been found in several jawed vertebrates, but with little study of functional activity. This will be of great interest to uncover, considering the IL-1 family members' roles in regulating Th1, Th2, and Th17 (and others?) differentiation.[453]

Both chicken IL-1β and the IL-1R were identified and have been expressed as recombinant proteins.[454] The IL-1R homology to mammalian orthologs is quite high (61% identity), but the highest similarity is found in the cytoplasmic domains. In addition, there are four blocks of high similarity to the cytoplasmic tail of toll/TLR proteins, and IL-1R and TLR use similar signal transduction cascades (see previous discussion).

As mentioned, IL-8 (actually, the CXC chemokine CXCL8) has been identified in the jawless lamprey and seems to be expressed specifically in B cells, whereas the IL-8 receptor is found in T cells; this has been one of the mechanisms proposed to permit the cells to interact in a cognate fashion.[13,291] IL-8 has also been found in various gnathostomes such as trout, flounder, and perhaps chicken; a chicken CXC chemokine called K60 clusters with IL-8 in phylogenetic trees and is upregulated in macrophages stimulated with LPS, IL-1β, and IFN. Interestingly, Marek disease virus expresses an IL-8 homologue (v-IL-8), which may be

involved in inducing immune deviation.[455] A molecule related to the IL-R was detected in the sea urchin genome, but the ligand has not been found[48]; becuase there are so many members of the IL-1 family, the search should continue.

The TNF family in mammals includes the canonical TNF-α, lymphotoxin (LT)α, and LTβ, all encoded at the distal end of the MHC class III region,[403] as well as a large number of other members with diverse immune functions. TNF-α is the best studied of these cytokines, and it is one of the key regulators of innate and adaptive immunity. The other two cytokines have a more limited tissue distribution and function, and are noted in their roles in lymphoid tissue development, especially in the formation of splenic white pulp and segregation of T and B cells in lymph nodes. In contrast to IL-1, TNF homologues have been detected in cnidarians, protostomes (see previous discussion), sea urchin,[48] *Ciona*,[448] and *Amphioxus*,[456] consistent with the idea that such a multifunctional cytokine would predate the jawed vertebrate adaptive immune system. Homologues have also been cloned from several teleost species, and TNF-α expression in leukocytes is upregulated within 4 hours after treatment with LPS, IL-1β, and PMA. While there is good phylogenetic support for orthology of fish TNF-α to that of mammals, the other TNF genes seem to be teleost-specific duplicates rather than the LT genes.[457] Conversely, in *Xenopus*, the three TNF family members described previously in mammals are closely linked in the class III region of the MHC.[177] This is a bit of a surprising result as all of these family members seem to be lacking in chickens, consistent (according to the authors) with a lack of lymph nodes in these animals; however, the unusual nature of the MHC in birds (eg, the immunoproteasome genes are missing) rather is consistent with a loss of TNF genes in these animals, which is indeed surprising, especially for TNF-α.[458]

An excellent review detailing the evolution of all TNF and TNF receptor family members demonstrated that all of the genes are found in paralogs on four chromosomes, consistent with the 2R hypothesis. This work demonstrated that the earliest member was linked to the proto MHC, and thus it is not surprising that TNF is an ancient gene family.[459]

IL-6 and its related members IL-11 and IL-31 are also found in most gnathostomes examined, with few functional data.

Interleukin-2 and the γC Family of Cytokines

The family of cytokines that signals through the γC receptor includes IL-2, IL-4, IL-7, IL-9, IL-15, and IL-21. Similar to what was described for most molecules involved in adaptive immunity, all of these cytokines (except perhaps IL-9) are present in all gnathostomes studied.[460] Costimulation assays of thymocytes, as described previously for IL-1, and perpetuation of T-cell lines with stimulated T-cell supernatants are performed to detect IL-2 or "T-cell growth factor" activities. Unlike IL-1, IL-2–like factors generally stimulate cells only from the same species, and it is a "cognate" cytokine, meant for release only between closely opposed cells, or as an autocrine factor. From teleost fish to mammals, stimulated T-cell supernatants costimulate thymocyte proliferation or can maintain the growth of T-cell blasts, and the ortholog has been detected in bony fish and birds. The chicken IL-2 protein is only 24% identical to human IL-2 and only 70% identical to a near cousin, the turkey.[454] IL-15, a relative of IL-2, has also been cloned in the chicken. A candidate IL-2R in chicken was identified by a mAb recognizing a 50-kDa molecule only on stimulated T-cells (thus an IL-2Rα homologue). This mAb blocks costimulation by IL-2–like molecules in chicken T-cell supernatants and also reduces the capacity of T-cell blasts to absorb IL-2–like activity from supernatants. IL-2 has been studied in the bony fish *Fugu*. In both chicken and the deduced *Fugu* IL-2 protein, there is a second set of cysteine residues, which are found in IL-15 and thus is a primordial feature.[461]

As mentioned, γC is the signaling subunit of the IL-2, IL-4, IL-7, IL-9, IL-15, and IL-21 receptors; absence of this chain in mammals leads to major defects in lymphocyte development ("boy in the bubble"). In fish, a γC homologue was cloned in rainbow trout with unusually high identity (44% to 46%) to mouse/human genes.[462] IL-1β, but not LPS, upregulated the trout gene in macrophage cultures and a fibroblast cell line. Since then, many other orthologs have been uncovered in fish, often duplicated in various species.[460]

IL-21, which is encoded adjacent to IL-2 in mammals, has been found in ectothermic vertebrates.[460] Because one of its major functions is the differentiation of T-follicular cells and the GC response, it will be of interest to study it role in those animals.

IL-7 is involved in lymphocyte differentiation as well as homeostasis of mature lymphocytes. Recently, mutations in Il-7R and downstream signaling molecules in the zebrafish have shown a block in T-cell development.[463] These mutants will permit future study of lymphocyte production in this crucial developmental model.

TH2 Cytokines: Interleukin-4, Interleukin-5, Interleukin-9, and Interleukin-13

Reponses to extracellular pathogens, especially filarial worms, are largely regulated by TH2 cytokines in mammals. IL-4 is the most pleiotropic cytokine in this regard, stimulating the production of neutralizing antibodies, stimulation of eosinophils and mast cells, and an antagonism of TH1 responses. IL-4, IL-5, and IL-13 (and granulocyte macrophage colony-stimulating factor) are encoded in the so-called TH2 cytokine complex in mammals, and all of the genes are coordinately upregulated after stimulation of a nearby locus-control region. This same "TH2 complex" is found in chickens but with a psuedogene for IL-5, but in *Xenopus* only the IL-4 gene has been identified to date. Fish have genes in which the ancestor of IL-4 and IL-13 seems to be in a preduplicated state, syntenic with genes in the TH2 complex.[464] Again, duplicates of IL-4/-13 and their receptor have been found in various fish.[460,465]

At this stage of study, it may be that lower vertebrates do not have "full-blown" TH2 responses, consistent with the lack of canonical allergic responses in ectothermic vertebrates. On the other hand, we must be careful because cytokine genes evolve rapidly and relying on synteny is not always

dependable, especially in the teleost fish. It will be of interest to see whether IL-4 in nonmammalian vertebrates will promote switching to isotypes that are incapable of promoting inflammatory responses. In addition, further studies of this family and its receptors in teleost and cartilaginous fish will reveal whether this facet of the adaptive immune response is indeed a relative newcomer.

Interferons

IFNs, classically known for their antiviral properties, are divided into three groups: type I, type II, and type III. Perhaps surprisingly, this entire group has only been uncovered in jawed vertebrates to date. However, as described previously, viral immunity in insects is partially regulated via a JAK/STAT response.[152] Types I (α and β) and III (λ) IFN are widely expressed in cells of many types and induces inhibition of viral replication in neighboring cells, as well as molecules of the innate immune system such as inducible nitric oxide synthase (iNOS) and IFN regulatory factor-1.[466] In contrast, type II IFN (IFNγ or immune IFN) is synthesized by activated T cells, activates macrophages, and upregulates class I, class II, immune proteasome subunits, and TAP, and a large number of other genes.

Antiviral activity is detected in supernatants from virally infected fish fibroblasts, epithelial cell lines, and leukocytes. All of the biochemical properties of mammalian type I IFN (eg, acid-stable, temperature-resistant) are present in these fish supernatants, and the putative IFN reduces viral cytopathic effects in homologous cell lines infected with virus.[466] In vivo, passive transfer of serum from virally infected fish protects naïve fish from acute viral pathogenesis. There appears to be two lineages of type I IFNs in fish that are specific to this group. In chickens there are up to 10 closely related, intronless type I IFN genes.[455] Sequence identity to human type I IFN ranges from 25% to 80%, with the apparent functional gene having highest similarity. Interestingly, bats have greatly expanded their type I and III IFN genes and receptors (as well as many other genes associated with viral immunity).[467] These animals are highly infected with (and susceptible to) virus, and some IFN forms are constitutively expressed at low levels.

While type I/III IFNs can be highly duplicated in some vertebrates, this is not true of IFN receptors, and in some cases many cytokines will used two to four receptors within a species. How can such a system work and result in different readouts? It appears that even single amino acid changes in the cytokine can induce differential conformational changes in the receptor that can modify downstream signaling.[468] This paradigm will be exciting to follow in a phylogenetic context.

Type II or IFNγ has been cloned in most jawed vertebrates. The chicken gene is 35% identical to human type II IFN and only 15% identical to chicken type I IFN.[454,469] Recombinant chicken IFN stimulates nitric oxide production and class II expression by macrophages. The gene has been cloned in many fish, and has been studied mostly in the trout where it has been shown to upregulate CXCL10 and activate protein kinase C. Thus, at least in chickens and teleost fish, type II IFN seems to have the same function as in mammals, suggesting that the TH1-type responses emerged early in vertebrate evolution.[466]

Heterodimeric Cytokines

The IL-12 family are composed of heterodimers that share chains (p19, p40, p35, and EB13) and include IL-12, IL-23, IL-27, and IL-35. IL-12 is generally considered to be a proinflammatory cytokine produced by APCs that promotes a TH1 response after exposure to intracellular pathogens. Consistent with the ancient derivation of TH1 responses, the two subunits of IL-12 p70 (p35 and p40) have been found in chickens and several teleost species.[454,470] The p40 subunit of IL-12 can also associate with p19 to form the cytokine IL23, which is involved in the perpetuation of TH17 cells. IL-27 generally inhibits all TH subsets but expands regulatory T cells and is composed of p28 and EB13; IL-35 is a relatively new regulatory T–produced cytokine composed of p35 and EB13. All of these chains have been detected in gnathostomes and several studies have been done to examine their expression at the RNA level; however, to date no reagents have been prepared to the heterodimers for functional analysis.

Transforming Growth Factor-β and Interleukin-10

TGF forms a large family with pleiotropic effects in many developmental systems. For the immune system, TGF-β isoforms are best known for their capacity to suppress adaptive immune responses (even across species barriers), although they can also stimulate lymphocytes under certain conditions, especially in mucosal surfaces. TGF-β inhibits macrophage activation in trout and growth of T-cell lines in *Xenopus* species. Recombinant *Xenopus* TGF-β, like the mammalian form, also can inhibit IL-2–like dependent growth of splenic lymphoblasts.[471] Four TGF-β isoforms were isolated from chickens, as opposed to three major forms in mammals.[455] The three major forms of the cytokine have been isolated in several teleost species.[470]

IL-10 is often considered along with TGF-β because it is mostly an immunosuppressive cytokine with multiple effects; both cytokines are expressed in subsets of "regulatory T" cells in mammals. This cytokine was originally discovered by its ability to suppress TH1 responses, but now is known to have a much expanded role in immunity. IL-10 has been found in chickens and a large number of teleosts.[455,470] As usual, functional experiments have lagged behind the molecular work, but recombinant chicken IL-10 can block IFNγ production by splenocytes. IL-10 is a class II cytokine, related to IFNγ, IL-19, IL-20, IL-24, and IL-26. IL-22, a cytokine released by TH17 cells and ILCs in mammals, is upregulated in fish vaccinated with pathogens and is correlated with immune protection.[472]

Note that there have been very few "regulatory T" experiments reported in the comparative literature, but many older experiments that suggest that such cells exist. Over 25 years ago, experiments in *Xenopus* showed that graft rejection could be delayed when lymphocytes from metamorphosing animals were adoptively transferred into adult frogs.[473] This

result suggested that a "wave" of suppressor cells emerged near the time of metamorphosis that evolved to protect animals from autoimmunity when adult-specific molecules were expressed. It is time to reexamine such experiments with modern tools. In a recent experiment in zebrafish, immunization of animals with central nervous system (CNS) antigens induced an autoimmune reaction. Overproduction of foxp3 inhibited the production of IL-17 and IFNγ in these animals, ameliorating the disease.[474]

Interleukin-17

TH17 cells in mammals are important for inflammatory responses to extracellular bacteria via indirect stimulation of neutrophils. Despite its late appearance in the immunologic literature, IL-17 appears to be one of the most ancient cytokines, with homologues in protostomes and lower deuterostomes, and extensively amplified in sea urchins. Even the different isoforms seem to be conserved among the jawed vertebrates, which should initiate many new avenues of study.[470] The family is composed of IL-17A/F, with the A and F forms being the best studied to date. IL-17A/F genes have been found in all mammals studied, as well as IL-17C/E. The most ancient IL-17 form is IL-17D, present in both oysters and agnathans.[291,449] This form is expressed in lamprey T cells but not B cells, and has been proposed as a helper factor for cognate interactions.[13] Finally, like many other immune genes, as many as 20 IL-17 genes have been found in sea urchins, again suggesting expanded innate immunity in this species.[475]

Cytokine Summary

The isolation of nonmammalian cytokines and cytokine receptor genes has lagged behind molecular characterization of antigen receptors and MHC. However, with the advent of the genome and EST projects, we are rapidly acquiring a comparative view of this field, at least at the genetic and molecular level. Teleost fish and chickens have paved the way in this field, but cartilaginous fish and agnathan databases will soon be complete and provide the big picture. Already, it seems that cytokines like TNF and IL-17 seem to be most primordial, with homologues in *Ciona*, *Amphioxus*, and sea urchins, as well as deeper homologues in certain protostomes. Conversely, *none* of the other so-called adaptive cytokines (or even type I/III IFNs) seem to be present in the lower deuterostomes, consistent with the Big Bang theory of adaptive immunity.[1,2] If it is true that the jawless fish lack these genes as well, despite their convergent adaptive immune system, one can point to the evolution of lymphoid organs and the segregation of lymphocyte subsets into discrete areas to help to explain the explosion and recruitment of these genes. We discuss this concept in more detail in the conclusion section, especially regarding the relationship of adaptive lymphocytes with ILCs.

Despite our "big picture" knowledge of the emergence of cytokines, obviously functional experiments have lagged behind. Furthermore, is it true that TH2 responses are evolutionary latecomers, or are our early attempts at finding the genes in ectotherms because of some "missing pieces" in the databases (or our ability to find some of the genes)? Some genes may have been lost, as described previously for the chicken—again, further studies of amphibians and cartilaginous fish should help in our understanding. In mammals, the LT TNF family members are important in the development of lymph nodes and splenic white pulp, and yet the three genes are present in lymph node–less *Xenopus*—what are their functions in ectotherms? If we can uncover these other roles in nonmammalian vertebrates, it could be quite informative to reinvestigate such functions in mammals. Finally, chickens and fish have evolved their own paralogs of some of the well-known cytokine genes; their study should reveal selection pressures on particular species that could also be quite informative in our understanding of the gestalt of the cytokine network.

General Evolution of Chemokines and Their Receptors

Chemokines and chemokine receptors are essential for many aspects of the immune system, including inflammation, the differentiation of lymphoid tissues, trafficking of hematopoietic cells during ontogeny and immune responses, and even stimulation of cells under various conditions.[476] With the advent of the genome and EST projects, a seminal paper showed that, consistent with the Big Bang theory of adaptive immune system evolution, all of the major classes of chemokines and their receptors were present in the bony fish lineage, and probably will be found in cartilaginous fish as well when the genomes are completed.[477] Recently, the analysis was updated to include all of the vertebrates in the databases.[476] Similar to most of the immune-related genes discussed throughout the chapter, bony fish have more chemokines/receptors than any other vertebrate, including amphibians and mammals.

Interestingly, no CC (so-called homeostatic) or CXC (so-called inflammatory) chemokines/receptors were detected in lower deuterostomes like *Ciona* and sea urchin. The chemokine receptors are member so the G protein–coupled receptor family, and of course such molecules are found in all animals. However, no members of the specialized family (G protein–coupled receptor γ) to which chemokine receptors belong were found in lower deuterostomes. The chemokine receptor genes are found on four chromosomes in mammals, four of which contain the HOX genes, one of the gene families that provided evidence for the 2R hypothesis early in the reawakening of this theory. The distribution of chemokine receptor genes on these chromosomes correlates very well with 2R, and helps to account for the large-scale gene expansion of this family in the jawed vertebrates. Thus far, very few chemokines/receptors (eg, IL-8 [CXCL8] and CXCR4) have been detected in agnathans, but as mentioned previously, agnathan T cells express IL-8R and B cells IL-8, believed to be a factor in promoting the cognate interactions between the cells.[291] CXCL12, a chemokine vital for thymic differentiation, is also present in lamprey, consistent with new work on the agnathan thymus discussed previously.[375] In summary, it appears that a few chemokines/receptors arose at the dawn of vertebrate adaptive immunity, and they

were greatly expanded by both en bloc and *cis* duplications and became "full-blown" shortly after the 2R Big Bang.[476] Currently, this is our most complete story of the evolution of a family of immune genes in deuterostomes.

ORIGINS OF ADAPTIVE IMMUNITY

The immune system of vertebrates is unique because the antigen-specific receptor expressed by lymphocytes, which initiates cascades leading to activation of the adaptive immune system, is not the product of a complete germline-inherited gene. Rather, receptors are generated somatically during lymphocyte ontogeny from gene segments scattered at a particular locus. As described previously, the receptors in gnathostomes are IgSF members composed of V and C domains, with the C domains being of the rare "C1" type, which is shared by MHC class II and class I molecules. There are many specific questions: 1) Did MHC class I or class II come first?; 2) What is the origin of the MHC PBR?; 3) Was the MHC involved with innate immunity before the emergence of adaptive immunity?; 4) Did somatic rearrangement or somatic mutation come first to diversify antigen receptors?; 5) Which of the extant antigen receptors in gnathostomes, α/β TCR, γ/δ TCR, or IgH/L (if any) resembles the primordial receptor?; and 6) How did two different antigen receptor gene families emerge in evolution, *after* the appearance of separate lymphocyte populations? The answers to these questions are speculative, but deductions can be made based upon the wealth of molecular and emerging functional data. We base many of our arguments on the large-scale duplications that were revealed for MHC by Kasahara[17] in 1996. The remarkable syntenies of paucicopy genes on the paralogous regions, and the recent finding that an animal that predated the duplications (*Amphioxus* and *Ciona*) has only single copy genes in the same syntenic group orthologous to the four mammalian copies, make it clear the en bloc duplications were involved.[405,421] Further analysis of this region in model lower deuterostomes, as described in the histocompatibility section, will continue to be vital in our understanding of early immunity. Genetic analyses in protostome lineages have not been very informative, but we must reevaluate once we piece together data from more deuterostome species.

Major Histocompatibility Complex Origins

Class I and class II molecules have been found only on the jawed vertebrates—so far, painstaking screenings of the lower deuterostome or lamprey/hagfish databases have yielded no indication of these proteins. Based upon phylogenetic analyses and thermodynamic arguments, most investigators believe that class II preceded class I in evolution.[478] However, as stated previously, class I is much more plastic than class II as there are many different types of class I molecules, some that do not even bind to peptides. Because class I genes may be on two or three MHC paralogs, and they can have functions outside the immune system; this is evidence that the primordial "PBR" may not have even bound to anything. If this is true, and because class I and class II do bind peptides, it would suggest class I arose first. Again, genome scans of jawless fish and lower deuterostomes should be informative on this point, but to date no luck! As described previously, we should be diligent because with the discovery of T cells and a thymus-like structure in lamprey, one expects some sort of "MHC" in the agnathans[291,375]; to date, the only homologue we have uncovered to date is TAP-L, which may hold the key to antigen presentation in this group.[401]

From the paralog data, genes encoding the complement components C3 and Bf, TNF superfamily members, the signaling molecule Vav, B7 family members, and proteasome subunits among other genes (such as tripartite motif-containing) should have been present in the proto-MHC, before emergence of the adaptive immune system (see Fig. 4.13). Some of these genes were found in the *Amphioxus* and *Ciona* "MHC" linkage groups, and C3 and Bf genes are linked in the sea urchin. A fifth paralogous region on human chr 12p13 contains the α2-macroglobulin gene (recall the C3/4/5 homologue), a tapasin homologue, the C3a-receptor, and this "complex" is linked to the NKC. Taken together, the data suggest that the proto-MHC included vital nonhomologous genes of the innate immune system, which perhaps were linked to allow coordinate regulation of expression. After the en bloc duplications, Pontarotti et al. has suggested that "functional restraints upon the complex were relaxed" and hence the duplicated members could evolve new functions, including features indispensable to the adaptive system.[405] If indeed innate immunity genes were already linked to allow upregulation at times of infection, it is no surprise that the adaptive immune system piggybacked on such a gene complex. A final point: why did the duplicate genes survive rather well over hundreds of millions of years; *cis* duplicates have been shown to degenerate rapidly over evolutionary time. Evidence suggests that duplicates arising from polyploidy (and by inference large en bloc duplications) survive better than *cis* duplicates, most likely because they cannot be inactivated by unequal crossovers; the ability of the genes to survive over very long periods, perhaps combined with strong selection pressures, would allow for subspecialization.[479]

Origins of Rearranging Receptors

The Rearranging Machinery

Most models propose that the generation of somatically rearranging receptors occurred abruptly in evolution via the generation of the RAG machinery made of two lymphocyte-specific proteins, RAG1 and RAG2. *RAG* genes have so far been isolated in all classes of jawed vertebrates and have been quite conserved. In every case examined, *RAG1* and *RAG2* genes are closely linked and in opposite transcriptional orientation. Some regions of RAG1 and RAG2 are similar to bacterial recombinases or to molecules involved in DNA repair (eg, RAD16) or the regulation of gene expression (such as rpt-1r). Similarities to prokaryotic proteins and the gene structure suggest that vertebrates acquired the RAG machinery by horizontal transfer and transposition from bacteria.[19,480] Indeed, *RAG* genetic organization has

some transposon characteristics: the RSS are reminiscent of sequences involved in targeting excision of transposons. A class of transposons detected in several protostome and deuterostome invertebrate species that shows similarity to the catalytic domain of RAG1.[481] It is believed that RSS were derived from the terminal inverted repeats of this transposon, called *transib*. In invertebrate genomes there are many of such "RAG1 core regions," but only one has an open reading frame throughout the core and shows similarity to vertebrate RAG1 in other regions as well. Furthermore, a *RAG2* homologue is adjacent to the urchin *RAG1* gene, in a similar orientation as is found in gnathostomes.[352] This finding was a big surprise and suggests that both *RAG* genes were in place approximaltey 100 million years before the origin of the Ig/TCR system. Their tissue distribution and expression during ontogeny are not known; nor have any candidate genes been recognized to date with RSS that might be recognized by the echinoderm homologues. It must be admitted that it is unclear how this new result fits into the puzzle of the origins of adaptive immunity. Because transib is so often found in the animal kingdom, it is certainly part of the transposon. By contrast, RAG2 is now believed to have been present in the genome, and recent data have shown it to interact with active chromatin.[482,483] Thus, the new idea is that RAG2 recruits RAG1 to open chromatin, and rag1 is the active enzyme in the major rearrangement events, which is wholly consistent with the transposon hypothesis with RAG1 (ie, transib) being the genome "invader."

Another source of somatic antigen receptor diversity shared by all gnathostomes characterized to date is a unique DNA polymerase, TdT, which diversifies CDR3 during Ig and TCR gene rearrangement through the addition of nucleotides in a template-independent fashion.[484] Furthermore, as detailed previously, its expression serves as an unambiguous developmental marker for the sites of lymphopoiesis. TdT has been highly conserved in both sequence (> 70% amino acid similarity, > 50 amino acid identity) and overall structure during vertebrate evolution. An amino acid alignment of all known TdT sequences reveals that some, but not all, structural motifs believed to be critical for TdT activity are particularly well conserved in all vertebrates studied. TdT protein alignments, and the crystal structure for rat β-polymerase, support the hypothesis that both evolved from a common ancestral DNA repair gene. In addition, four protein kinase C phosphorylation sites are conserved, and hence may be involved in TdT regulation. Homologues related to the ancestor of polymerase β and TdT have been found in sea urchin and other lower deuterostomes. Thus, unlike RAG, TdT has evolved by gradual evolution from a polymerase family and was recruited for immune system function.

Rearrangement or Somatic Hypermutation First?

Because all antigen receptor genes use somatic rearrangement of V genes to generate diversity in CDR3 regions as well as to promote combinatorial diversity, there is no doubt that this mechanism is at the heart of adaptive immunity. Indeed, as described, most investigators believe that the introduction of the tranposable element into a V gene was *the* driving force in the abrupt appearance of vertebrate adaptive immunity; the finding of the RAG genes in sea urchins challenges this notion at some level. However, it cannot be overemphasized that SHM is also at the origins of the immune system; furthermore, all evidence to date suggests a gradual evolution of the SHM machinery (the AID/APOBEC family and associated polymerases/mismatch repair proteins) rather than the "hopeful monster" generated by the famous RAG transposon. Thus, diversity generated via SHM or gene conversion may have existed in an adaptive immune system prior to rearrangement, and V gene rearrangement was superimposed onto this already existing system.[296,300] Indeed, the presence of APOBEC family members in the jawless fish (CDA1 and CDA2, as described previously) suggest that diversity generated via mutation/conversion preceded rearrangement. The RAG-induced rearrangement break and subsequent repair provided something new and novel in gnathostomes, not only diversity in sequence but heterogeneity in size[300]; this was a remarkable innovation and likely indeed heralded the sophistication of jawed vertebrate adaptive immunity.

Which Antigen Receptor First? Phylogenetic analyses have suggested that among IgSF receptors γ/δ TCR-like ancestor may have predated α/β TCR and Ig H/L.[485] This would suggest that direct antigen recognition, perhaps by a cell surface receptor, arose first in evolution followed by a secreted molecule and an MHC-restricted one. Hood and colleagues argue that phylogenetic analyses over such large evolutionary distances obscure true relationships among the antigen receptor genes (eg, the relationships of the molecules in the phylogenetic trees has to impose multiple loss/gain of D segments in the different antigen receptor families) and suggest a model based upon genomic organization, not so different from the Kasahara model.[263] They propose an alternative phylogeny in which an ancestral chromosomal region with linked genes encoding both chains of an ancestral antigen receptor heterodimer, one having D segments the other not (eg, IgH/IgL). The α and δ TCR loci are still closely linked in all vertebrates analyzed (human chromosome 14), and a pericentric inversion is suggested to have separated the TCR β and γ loci (linked on human chromosome 7). This model predicts that D segments only emerged once, and also explains the existence of inverted V elements in both the TCR β and δ loci. This model does not predict which antigen receptor is oldest, but does provide a "simple view" of receptor evolution, consistent with the Kasahara/Ohno model. Recent data have added to this scenario. First, as mentioned previously, VH elements have been found at the TCR-δ locus in many vertebrates, including sharks, amphibians, birds, and marsupial mammals.[269] In part, this is due to the close proximity of the IgH/L (lambda) and TCR alpha/delta loci in many living vertebrates (especially *Xenopus*[268]), consistent with the Hood hypothesis of ancient en bloc duplications of antigen receptor loci.[268] Additionally, the idea that most TCR-δ receptors do not recognize MHC-restricted antigen suggests that they can continue to "borrow" elements from Ig loci over evolutionary time.

Thus, an alternative scenario is that MHC-restricted antigen recognition arose first, perhaps derived from a NKR with a "VJ" IgSF domain that recognized SOS proteins, like the ULBPs or MIC today. The rearrangement break induced by

RAG occurs in CDR3, which is in the center of the antigen receptor–combining site, in perfect position to interact with peptide bound to MHC, which could have been another innovation to detect foreign antigens within cells.[486] Thus, such cells would be most like extant αβ T cells with an MHC-restricted antigen receptor encoded by linked genes. Once rearrangement was introduced, the combining site may have been "relaxed" so that it was no longer forced to be MHC-restricted (see the section on TCR above). The genomewide duplication then would provide two types of TCR, one MHC-restricted and the other not, like γδ TCR today. One locus, according to the Hood model, then underwent an en bloc cis duplication to give rise to the IgH/L loci. Ig, then, developed a new differentiation pathway with an alternative splicing mechanism for the transmembrane and secreted forms of BCRs.

For the origin of the rearranging receptors, IgSF lineages have to be traced back through phylogeny as such receptors generated by somatic rearrangement do not exist outside the jawed vertebrates. In a quest for molecules related to elusive ancestors, without focusing on genes expressed in the immune systems of various phyla (ie, structure is more important than function in this case), the most homologous sequences and gene architectures in the various metazoan phyla must be scrutinized.

V(J) and C1 Domains

C1 domains are found in the antigen receptors, MHC class I and class II, and very few other molecules (see Fig. 4.10). This IgSF domain is so far most prevalent in gnathostomes, as if C1 domains arose concurrently with the adaptive immune system and coevolved with it. What was the value of the C1 domain, and why is it found almost exclusively in adaptive immune system–related molecules? All of these molecules interact with coreceptors such as CD3 (TCR), Igα and β chains (Ig on B cells), CD4, and CD8 (with MHC on opposing cells), and it is conceivable that in sections of IgSF domain in which C1 differs from the C2 there is a specific region favoring interaction with other molecules.

The G strand of Ig/TCR V domains is encoded by the J gene segment, separated from the V region-encoded A-F strands, and rearrangement is necessary in order to assemble a complete V gene. The primary structure of each Ig/TCR chain bears hallmarks of the dimeric nature of the receptor in which they participate. A diglycine bulge (Gly-X-Gly), present in all V domains, is thought either to be a beneficial adaptation, or to promote dimer formation by inducing a twist in the G strand that results in V domain pairing that appropriately orients the CDR. Monitoring this feature, therefore, might reveal genes that had the ability to form dimers similar to that of modern antigen-specific receptors. In V genes that do not somatically rearrange, the G stand is an integral part of the V exon. In other remotely related IgSF genes, introns have invaded the V domain exon creating a variety of V gene families. Many examples of such events can be found in the history of the Ig superfamily, for example in the genes encoding CD8 and CTX.[33,487]

As described, no Ig/TCR genes have been isolated from hagfish or lampreys, although there are some tantalizing molecules potentially related to their ancestors (eg, APAR, see previous discussion). Were Ig and TCR "invented" in a class of vertebrates now extinct (eg, the placoderms, which are more primitive than cartilaginous fish but more advanced than agnathans)? The discovery of the three tapasin paralogs all with C1 domains suggests an origin prior to the full establishment of the vertebrate genome.[33]

V domains, either alone (eg, IgNAR) or in association with another V domain (eg, Ig H/L), recognize the antigenic epitope and are therefore the most important elements for recognition. For this reason, they will be the first to be traced back in metazoan evolution by asking whether V domains exist in invertebrates. Domains with the typical V fold, whether belonging to the true V-set or the I-set, have been found from sponges to insects (although not necessarily involved in immune reactions; the first ones were discovered by nonimmunologists among molecules involved in nervous system differentiation in invertebrates [eg, amalgam, lachesin, and fascicilin]). Invertebrates also use IgSF members in immunity, but so far they are not V domains, but more I- or C2-set (eg, mollusk defense molecule, hemolin, DSCAM). However, the mollusk FREPs have a V domain at their distal end, associated with a fibrinogen-like domain. As described, they are involved in antiparasitic reactions and form a multigenic family with polymorphism.[135] Similarly, as mentioned previously, prochordate VCBP has a VJ domain, but it mediates innate immunity.[143]

Besides searching for VC1-encoding genes in nonvertebrates, surveying the human genome for such genes has been fruitful. Indeed, nonrearranging V-containing molecules, either VJ alone, VC1, or C1 alone, have been found in the human genome. Interestingly, many of them are present in the MHC class III region (human chromosome 6p21) or its paralogs (see Fig. 4.12 and 4.13). Two MHC-linked gene segments stand out: a single VJ, NKP30, and a gene containing a VJC1 core, tapasin (TAP-binding protein), involved in antigen processing. NKP30, made of a single Ig domain of the VJ type, is an NK cell–activating receptor, and it may offer a link to cell types in invertebrates. It could be a relative of an ancient receptor whose history is linked to the emergence of MHC class II and class I; unlike most NKRs, NKp30 is evolutionarily conserved, present from sharks to mammals.[176] In order to resemble an ancestor, the NKP30 V domain need only be associated with a C1 domain. In fact, a C1 single-domain gene, pre–TCR-α, is also encoded in the MHC.[253] Besides Ig and TCR, tapasin is one of the rare cases, if not the only other case, of a gene segment with a VJC1 structure existing on several paralogous linkage groups (6, 9q33, 19q13). In other words, while this gene is related to the rearranging receptor structure, it is undoubtedly very old, and probably predated the ancient block (genomewide) duplications. It could have acted as a donor of C1 to a V domain–containing gene in the MHC class III region (like the XMIV), which then could have been the first substrate of the rearrangement. Another set of molecules with distal VJC1 segments, the signal-regulatory proteins (VJ C1 C1), and the poliovirus receptor (VJ C1 C2) could represent another group linked to the history of the Ig and TCR (see the following).

TREM1 and TREM2, receptors on monocytes/neutrophils involved in inflammatory responses, are composed of single VJ domains whose genes are MHC-linked. Myelin oligodendrocyte protein (MOG) and P0, two single V domains

involved in the synthesis of myelin sheath, are encoded in the MHC paralogous region on chromosome 1. Chicken BG, which is related to MOG but probably has a different function, is encoded in the chicken MHC. Butyrophilin, CD83, and tapasin all have VJ domains, and butyrophilin also has a C1-type domain. More distant relatives with VJC2-based architectures are also found in MHC (receptor for advanced glycosylation end products, CTX, lectin-related genes; see Fig. 4.12), and some of these genes related to the rearranging receptor ancestors are found on several paralogs (whether the MHC paralogs or other), suggesting that the V-C1 core was generated early in vertebrate evolution subsequent to the emergence of the chordate superphylum (see Fig. 4.13). Among all these molecules, butyrophilin is perhaps not on the direct track to antigen-specific receptors. Its C domain, although proven to be C1 through its crystal structure, is more like a C2 at the primary sequence level, and belongs to the CD80/86 family, rather than the TCR. Finally, tracing the VJ NITR gene family previously described in evolution may lead us to an understanding of the original NKC/LRC/MHC, as well as identifying more candidate genes related to the ancestral gene invaded by the RAG transposon.

Many invertebrate molecules not involved in immune responses are present as a distal V domain associated with one or more C2-type domains. In the vertebrates many molecules have retained this feature such as CD2 and CTX. Some members resemble "primitive" antigen receptors and several of them map, for instance in humans, to at least two tetrads of paralogous genes, the MHC on chromosomes 1, 6. 9 (12), 19 and the LRC on chromosomes 1, 3, 11, 19 (21) (see Fig. 4.13).[160,442] Many form dimers and are expressed in lymphocytes, where they form a family of adhesion molecules. The crystal structure analysis of a CTX-related molecule (JAM) revealed a unique form of dimerization, suggesting that the diversity of ligand binding and domain-interactions used by different IgSF domain is extensive. Two JAM molecules form a U-shaped dimer with highly complementary interactions between the N-terminal domains. Two salt bridges are formed in a complementary manner by a novel dimerization motif, R (V, I, L) E. The receptor for advanced glycosylation end products gene has a rather "generic" receptor function as it recognizes aged cells exposing particular carbohydrate motifs. CD47, another conserved IgSF member with a CTX-like V domain, suggests an ancient function.[488] Perhaps such nonrearranging VJC1 genes that regulated cytotoxicity/phagocytosis were predecessors of the antigen receptors. Some molecules with VJ/C1 cores involved in cell-cell interactions often serve as ports of entry for viruses. In a move from "property to function," an arms race consequence could result in a virus receptor developing into an immune receptor. The best examples of such molecules are in the CTX JAM family, in which receptor interactions with viruses may trigger an apoptosis, a primitive form of antiviral immunity.[33,489]

Emergence of T and B Cells

As described previously, agnathans have now been shown to have cells in the T and B lineages, similar to what is found in gnathostomes.[291] Because the jawless and jawed vertebrates have antigen receptors derived from different gene families, at first glance it seemed that the T-B split occurred twice in evolution. However, the gene expression profiles for the lamprey T and B cells are too similar to the patterns in gnathostome lymphocyte populations to be derived by convergent evolution; furthermore, the development of lamprey T cells in a thymus-like structure also suggests evolution from a common ancestor. Thus, it seems most likely that both the LRR and IgSF receptor families were present in the common ancestor,[2,13] with the VLR system predominating early in vertebrate evolution (see Fig. 4.10). Such a scenario exists today with NKRs in mammals, with different gene families (C-type lectin or IgSF) predominating in different species.[12]

Because APOBEC family members are most likely involved in VLR assembly and perhaps in mutation, there may have been a primordial IgSF receptor that was also modified somatically by an AID-like molecule, which functioned side-by-side with VLRs. The rearrangement break caused by the RAG transposon in a primordial IgSF gene offered a great advantage, as was detailed previously, and the IgSF receptors then could have supplanted VLRs in gnathostomes, while maintaining the AID-dependent machinery to diversify it further. It is difficult to imagine how a rearrangement break in an antigen receptor gene generated by LRR insertion could be advantageous; conversely, as mentioned previously, a break in the CDR3 loop in the center of the binding site is in perfect position to interact with peptide bound to MHC. While lampreys have a thymoid for development of their "T cells," as described previously, there was a great leap in complexity of thymus structure in the gnathostomes, consistent with a new TCR/MHC system in which positive and negative selection became a requirement for a functioning adaptive immune system. In addition, the general transcriptional and cytokine/chemokine networks for T-cell (and B-cell) development would have also been in place in the jawless vertebrates; in gnathostomes, this network became more complex in the Big Bang (eg, see the chemokine section in which the leap in sophistication can be examined with precision).

In summary, a working hypothesis proposes that the divergence of lymphocytes into T and B cells occurred early in vertebrate evolution (see Fig. 4.10). LRR- and IgSF-based antigen receptors existed simultaneously as well at this time (in the same organism or organisms in the same epoch), with VLR perhaps predominating in early vertebrates. The RAG transposon insertion into an IgSF receptor (perhaps one already diversifying by mutation or conversion), along with a genomewide duplication, resulted in the Ig/TCR/MHC-based system of gnathostomes, with all of its accompanying sophistication in all aspects of adaptive immunity, including development of the thymus and spleen, complexity of cytokine and chemokine networks, and intimate interactions of cells with primary and secondary lymphoid tissues.

CONCLUSION

Since the last edition of *Fundamental Immunology* was published 5 years ago, there have been several astonishing findings, as well as other interesting discoveries and integrations, regarding the evolution of the structure and function of the

immune system. Furthermore, there have been many genome and EST projects that have allowed us to determine whether or not particular genes or gene families are present in different taxa. Here, we briefly describe these findings and discuss their broad relevance and relationship to future studies.

A new system of defense in bacteria and archaebacteria against bacteriophage, CRISPR, has been elucidated.[490] Short phage DNA sequences have been acquired by prokaryotic genomes to direct sequence-specific protection against phages. These elements are transcribed into small RNAs that recruit endonucleases to cleave the phage nucleic acid. This system is widespread and its study is in its infancy. The discovery of this system fits well with studies of plants and animals over the last decade uncovering the plethora of mechanisms used to detect foreign nucleic acids (eg, TLR, NLR, RIG, APOBEC, etc.), as described previously. It should be clear to all immunologists by now that *all* living things must distinguish self from nonself, and have developed intricate mechanisms to achieve this end.

Cytokines such as IFNγ, IL-2, and IL-4, and other adaptive cytokines (and type I/III IFNs) and their receptors are not present outside of jawed vertebrates, nor is the vast array of chemokines seen in gnathostomes. However, at the moment it appears that (almost) all of the cytokines/chemokines discovered in mammals are also present in basal jawed vertebrates: Big Bang indeed! IL-17, a cytokine garnering great attention in basic immunology, and TNF, a central cytokine in both innate and adaptive immunity, seem to be the first cytokines to have emerged in evolution based on studies of lower deuterostomes. If, as suggested from studies in mammals, IL-17 is important for responses to extracellular bacteria, nonvertebrate deuterostomes may hold the key to understanding the physiology of the entire system (ie, in the absence of the competing TH1, TH2, and regulatory T cells), and one may be able to study the dynamics of IL-17 development and function in lower deuterostomes and even protostomes.

Additionally, over the past few years a new type of cell, the ILC, has come to prominence.[491] These cells are predominantly found in epithelia and mucosa and are involved in homeostasis and a first line of defense. As they do not bear antigen receptors, ILCs respond via cytokine receptors or PRRs. ILCs express cytokines consistent with T-cell subsets, and it is tempting to propose that they preceded adaptive T cells in evolution, and the cytokine-production profiles were coopted by the antigen receptor–bearing cells. However, as mentioned, it appears that "adaptive" cytokines arose late in evolution, coincident with adaptive immunity. Thus, it seems more like that ILCs arose simultaneously with the adaptive cells in the immunologic Big Bang, and there has been adaptation over time. However, as IL-17 and TGF-β are old cytokines, it has been proposed that their opposing functions arose before adaptive immunity.[492] TGF-β belongs to an ancient family of cytokines, and at least one of its functions in mammals is to antagonize proinflammatory responses (regulatory T differentiation, regulation of IgA synthesis, etc.). One model suggests that sophisticated innate immunity arose in mucosal tissues, regulated by the pro- and anti-inflammatory properties of IL-17 and TGF-β, respectively, by their expression in gut epithelia or by infiltrating hematopoietic cells; later, this was superimposed onto adaptive lymphocytes in the vertebrate lineage. Consistent with this idea, sea urchins have an expanded family of IL-17 genes,[48] suggestive of a very important function for this cytokine. So, such a system may have been the forerunner of both the ILCs and adaptive lymphocytes, perhaps found in tissues directly exposed to the environment.

Additionally, we are poised for more seminal studies of mucosal immunity. Mammals have dedicated secondary lymphoid tissues in their mucosa, and thus it is often difficult to tease apart the innate from adaptive responses in these tissues, except in contrived knockout or transgenic models. By contrast, ectothermic vertebrates have no Peyer patches or mesenteric lymph nodes, and thus are excellent models to examine responses in the lamina propria, which are predominantly T-independent.[493]

Lastly, studies of how the microbiota interact with the immune system have filled journals to the gills over the past 5 years. McFall-Ngai suggested that the driving force for adaptive immunity was not so much to fight off invaders, but rather to tolerate commensals,[494] perhaps not so different from Weaver's proposal.[492] This framework of interactions between leukocytes, and between leukocytes and commensals/pathogens, may be the key to understanding the genesis of adaptive immunity.

A new defense system in *Drosophila*, important for viral defense, has been uncovered. Previously, the recognition of pathogens by TLRs in the invertebrates was believed to be indirect, interacting with self-molecules similar to a cytokine interaction. However, *Drosophila* Tol7 has now been shown to interact directly with viruses, similar to TLRs in vertebrates,[153] but, as expected, the effector phase is different from the canonical (historical) toll pathway. There are several other tolls in the protostomes without a described function that can be studied in a new light.

One of the great triumphs in the field of comparative immunology was the discovery that similar mechanisms are used to recognize extracellular pathogens and initiate immune responses. It has been approximately 15 years since the *Drosophila* toll/IMD systems and their relationship to vertebrate TLRs and TNF receptors has been uncovered. Over the past few years, the intracellular defense mechanism such as NOD/NLR, RIG, helicase, etc., have been elucidated in vertebrates, and we are beginning to piece together their evolutionary histories. The amazing similarities between the deuterostome and plant NOD/NLR systems will challenge us to understand their recognition events for years to come.[14]

The VLR system continues to amaze us.[13] Most comparative immunologists never expected a unique antigen receptor system to be uncovered in jawless fish. To then realize that the divergence of lymphocytes into two lineages occurred in the ancestor of jawed and jawless fish was astonishing. Now to have uncovered a primitive type of thymus candidate in jawless fish is a total shock. All of these discoveries force us to acknowledge that we should not be surprised by future discoveries in the evolution of immunity, such as a "convergent MHC," or an antigen presentation system not based on peptide presentation, or even a primordial type of adaptive immune system in lower deuterostomes or protostomes.

Furthermore, from comparative studies, Boehm and colleagues have proposed a simple model for the most fundamental elements required for thymocyte differentiation, which has been superimposed onto the lamprey thymus-like structures.[375,495] Further study of this minimal network of transcription factors, chemokines, and cytokines could uncover the origins of thymus differentiation in lower deuterostomes that clearly have no T/B cells.

Certain groups of organisms are interesting to study for different reasons. The genome projects in cnidarians demonstrated that certain gene families were more ancient than previously believed (from studies of the classical models *Drosophila* and *C. elegans*).[35] Thus, this taxonomic group has become the new rock stars of comparative immunology, not only for their immune complexity in the absence of a mesodermal germ layer, but also for elucidation of a histocompatibility reaction that has fascinated us for decades.[496]

Teleost fish have been shown again and again to have rapidly evolving immune systems, often expanding gene families in unprecedented ways (eg, NLR, tripartite motif-containing), generating specific paralogs and losing others (eg, cytokines, chemokines, etc.), losing canonical syntenies found in all other vertebrates (eg, MHC class I and class II), and having unique forms of ancient molecules (eg, tetrameric IgM with no J chain). The third genomewide duplication (3R) is believed to have been a major force in this instability and rapid evolution.[20] This group provides an opportunity to study the plasticity of immune systems in related organisms over a short period of evolutionary time. With the cod story, they even offer a natural class II knockout system[395]!

Amphibians with metamorphosis offer models to study two modalities of self-tolerance, metamorphosis, and polyploidy. The larval immune system must somehow be suppressed with the appearance of adult self-determinants during metamorphosis and the refurbishing of the immune system. The amphibian *Xenopus* speciates by polyploidy, allowing an experimental system to examine the effects of whole-genome duplications on immune system loci (silencing, deletion, gene conversion, conservation), a key issue given the importance attributed to the genomewide duplications in the evolution of immune systems in vertebrates.[328,399]

Birds offer another case of rapid evolution, probably because of attack by viruses. For the MHC, birds have lost immunoproteasomes and the thymic-specific proteasome, and have modified their class I groove to be more promiscuous in peptide binding. Chickens (but not ducks) have lost the RIG-1 gene, apparently making them susceptible to influenza.[497] Clearly, birds have something fundamental and unique to teach us about how pathogens (most likely viruses in this case) can force a remodeling of innate and adaptive immunity.

The genomewide duplications early in the evolution of the vertebrates (the 2R hypothesis) have been confirmed in a variety of studies, and they were indeed important in the Big Bang emergence of the adaptive immune system. The 2R paradigm is useful for studying *any* gene family found on multiple chromosomes in the vertebrates; good examples of how it has aided in our understanding of immunity were the study of IgSF members involved in cell-cell interaction/costimulation, and the evolution/emergence of chemokines and TNF family members. An emerging paradigm is the possibility that genes encoding NKC, LRC, MHC, as well as the antigen receptors and costimulatory molecules (and other immune genes) were all linked at an early point in evolution.[2,498] In addition, while the agnathan adaptive system is similar to the Ig/TCR/MHC system of gnathostomes, the great sophistication that we see in the latter is not present in lampreys and hagfish. Our best guess at the moment is that the RAG transposon, in combination with the genomewide duplications, both superimposed onto an already existing adaptive framework, resulted in the Big Bang of adaptive immunity (see Fig. 4.10).

With the genome projects and advances in molecular biology, we have made strides in understanding old problems in vertebrate adaptive immunity, such as 1) when the L chains emerged and what the significance of more than one isotype is; 2) which antigen receptor (if any of the extant ones) came first, and all of them came to evolve to their present state; 3) when IgD emerged and what its function is in different vertebrate phyla, especially the transmembrane form; and 4) how γ/δ T cells recognize antigen. We propose that are two arms of the γ/δ T-cell lineage, one innate and the other adaptive, similar to B cells and α/β T cells.

The long-awaited molecular mechanisms of histocompatibility in nonvertebrates have been at least partially uncovered in plants, *Botryllus*, and *Hydractinia*. The common themes thus far are that the genes encoding the polymorphic receptors/ligands are closely linked and that the genes all appear to be unrelated to the vertebrate MHC. However, there are tantalizing links to immune gene clusters found throughout the animal kingdom that suggest there may be an underlying fundamental similarity in recognition, perhaps related to 1) the paucity of surface receptors available because of multiple constraints resulting in sharing of receptor/ligands, and 2) the signaling cascades.

Despite the great variation in mechanisms of allorecognition across phyla, are there commonalities? Whether in cnidarians or in tunicates, the polymorphic genetic regions involved contains from one to many IgSF members resembling members of the nectin PVR/CD155 family. In *Ciona*, these genes are not only closely linked in a single region but also are homologs found in the LRC. Could this region be the conserved and link aspects of immunity between vertebrates and invertebrates? The frequent presence of ITIM and ITAM indeed suggest the conservation of receptors interacting among these molecules.[160] It is clearly of ancient origin. With paralogs on four different chromosome regions in gnathostomes as well as an ancient connection to MHC and NKC, this region was present before 2R. It is not surprising now to detect very different molecular families involved in immune recognition events: LRR, lectins, IgSF. The comparison of allorecogniton in invertebrates has perhaps helped to focus our attention on genetic regions that may have provided the "context" for leukocyte interactions.

REFERENCES

1. Bernstein RM, Schluter SF, Bernstein H, Marchalonis JJ. Primordial emergence of the recombination activating gene 1 (RAG1): sequence of the complete shark gene indicates homology to microbial integrases. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1996;93(18):9454–9459. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8790351
2. Flajnik MF, Kasahara M. Origin and evolution of the adaptive immune system: genetic events and selective pressures. *Nat Rev Genet*. 2010;11(1):47–59. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19997068
3. Dzik JM. The ancestry and cumulative evolution of immune reactions. *Acta Biochim Pol*. 2010;57(4):443–466. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21046016
4. Elinav E, Strowig T, Henao-Mejia J, Flavell RA. Regulation of the antimicrobial response by NLR proteins. *Immunity*. 2011;34(5):665–679. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21616436
5. Fontana MF, Vance RE. Two signal models in innate immunity. *Immunol Rev*. 2011;243(1):26–39. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21884165
6. Smith LC, Davidson EH. The echinoid immune system and the phylogenetic occurrence of immune mechanisms in deuterostomes. *Immunol Today*. 1992;13(9):356–362. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1466753
7. Ghosh J, Lun CM, Majeske AJ, Sacchi S, Schrankel CS, Smith LC. Invertebrate immune diversity. *Dev Comp Immunol*. 2011;35(9):959–974. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21182860
8. Danilova N. The evolution of immune mechanisms. *J Exp Zoolog B Mol Dev Evol*. 2006;306(6):496–520. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16619242
9. Loker ES, Adema CM, Zhang SM, Kepler TB. Invertebrate immune systems—not homogeneous, not simple, not well understood. *Immunol Rev*. 2004;198:10–24. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15199951
10. Trowsdale J, Parham P. Mini-review: defense strategies and immunity-related genes. *Eur J Immunol*. 2004;34(1):7–17. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14971025
11. Hughes AL. Rapid evolution of immunoglobulin superfamily C2 domains expressed in immune system cells. *Mol Biol Evol*. 1997;14(1):1–5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9000748

11a. Klein J, Ono H, Klein D, et al. *The Accordion Model of Mhc Evolution, 1992, Progress in Immunology*, Vol. VIII, 137–143. Springer-Verlag.

12. Howard JC, Jack RS. Evolution of immunity and pathogens. *Eur J Immunol*. 2007;37(7):1721–1723. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17587195
13. Boehm T, McCurley N, Sutoh Y, Schorpp M, Kasahara M, Cooper MD. VLR-based adaptive immunity. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 2012;30:203–220. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22224775
14. Maekawa T, Kufer TA, Schulze-Lefert P. NLR functions in plant and animal immune systems: so far and yet so close. *Nat Immunol*. 2011;12(9):817–826. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21852785
15. Nei M, Gu X, Sitnikova T. Evolution by the birth-and-death process in multigene families of the vertebrate immune system. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1997;94(15):7799–7806. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9223266
16. Ohno S, Wolf U, Atkin NB. Evolution from fish to mammals by gene duplication. *Hereditas*. 1968;59(1):169–187. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/5662632
17. Kasahara M, Hayashi M, Tanaka K, et al. Chromosomal localization of the proteasome Z subunit gene reveals an ancient chromosomal duplication involving the major histocompatibility complex. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1996;93(17):9096–9101. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8799160
18. Sakano H, Huppi K, Heinrich G, Tonegawa S. Sequences at the somatic recombination sites of immunoglobulin light-chain genes. *Nature*. 1979;280(5720):288–294. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/111144
19. Agrawal A, Eastman QM, Schatz DG. Transposition mediated by RAG1 and RAG2 and its implications for the evolution of the immune system. *Nature*. 1998;394(6695):744–751. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9723614
20. Postlethwait JH. The zebrafish genome in context: ohnologs gone missing. *J Exp Zool B Mol Dev Evol*. 2007;308(5):563–577. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17068775
21. Catchen JM, Braasch I, Postlethwait JH. Conserved synteny and the zebrafish genome. *Methods Cell Biol*. 2011;104:259–285. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21924168
22. Waterhouse RM, Kriventseva EV, Meister S, et al. Evolutionary dynamics of immune-related genes and pathways in disease-vector mosquitoes. *Science*. 2007;316(5832):1738–1743. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17588928
23. Parham P. The genetic and evolutionary balances in human NK cell receptor diversity. *Semin Immunol*. 2008;20(6):311–316. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19036608
24. Watson FL, Puttmann-Holgado R, Thomas F, et al. Extensive diversity of Ig-superfamily proteins in the immune system of insects. *Science*. 2005;309(5742):1874–1878. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16109846
25. Ortutay C, Siermala M, Vihinen M. Molecular characterization of the immune system: emergence of proteins, processes, and domains. *Immunogenetics*. 2007;59(5):333–348. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17294181
26. Zhang Q, Zmasek CM, Godzik A. Domain architecture evolution of pattern-recognition receptors. *Immunogenetics*. 2010;62(5):263–272. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20195594
27. Ronald PC, Beutler B. Plant and animal sensors of conserved microbial signatures. *Science*. 2010;330(6007):1061–1064. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21097929
28. Enkhbayar P, Kamiya M, Osaki M, Matsumoto T, Matsushima N. Structural principles of leucine-rich repeat (LRR) proteins. *Proteins*. 2004;54(3):394–403. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14747988
29. Kajava AV, Kobe B. Assessment of the ability to model proteins with leucine-rich repeats in light of the latest structural information. *Protein Sci*. 2002;11(5):1082–1090. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11967365
30. Wong K, Park HT, Wu JY, Rao Y. Slit proteins: molecular guidancecues for cells ranging from neurons to leukocytes. *Curr Opin Genet Dev*. 2002;12(5):583–591. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12200164
31. Barclay AN. Membrane proteins with immunoglobulin-like domains—a master superfamily of interaction molecules. *Semin Immunol*. 2003;15(4):215–23. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14690046
32. Homma S, Shimada T, Hikake T, Yaginuma H. Expression pattern of LRR and Ig domain-containing protein (LRRIG protein) in the early mouse embryo. *Gene Expr Patterns*. 2009;9(1):1–26. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18848646
33. Du Pasquier L, Zucchetti I, De Santis R. Immunoglobulin super-family receptors in protochordates: before RAG time. *Immunol Rev*. 2004;198:233–248. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15199966
34. Gehring WJ. New perspectives on eye development and the evolution of eyes and photoreceptors. *J Hered*. 2005;96(3):171–184. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15653558
35. Miller DJ, Hemmrich G, Ball EE, et al. The innate immune repertoire in cnidaria—ancestral complexity and stochastic gene loss. *Genome Biol*. 2007;8(4):R59. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17437634
36. Lemaitre B, Hoffmann J. The host defense of Drosophila melanogaster. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 2007;25:697–743. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17201680
37. Hartenstein V. Blood cells and blood cell development in the animal kingdom. *Annu Rev Cell Dev Biol*. 2006;22:677–712. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16824014
38. Evans CJ, Hartenstein V, Banerjee U. Thicker than blood: conserved mechanisms in Drosophila and vertebrate hematopoiesis. *Dev Cell*. 2003;5(5):673–690. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14602069
39. Jiravanichpaisal P, Lee BL, Soderhall K. Cell-mediated immunity in arthropods: hematopoiesis, coagulation, melanization and opsonization. *Immunobiology*. 2006;211(4):213–236. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16697916

40. Crozatier M, Meister M. Drosophila haematopoiesis. *Cell Microbiol*. 2007;9(5):1117–1126. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17394559
41. Engelmann P, Molnar L, Palinkas L, Cooper EL, Nemeth P. Earthworm leukocyte populations specifically harbor lysosomal enzymes that may respond to bacterial challenge. *Cell Tissue Res*. 2004;316(3):391–401. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15138884
42. Prochazkova P, Silerova M, Felsberg J, et al. Relationship between hemolytic molecules in Eisenia fetida earthworms. *Dev Comp Immunol*. 2006;30(4):381–392. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16051356
43. Valembois P. Aims and methods in comparative immunology. *Dev Comp Immunol*. 1982;6(2):195–198. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7047247
44. Kuchel RP, Raftos DA, Birch D, Vella N. Haemocyte morphology and function in the Akoya pearl oyster, Pinctada imbricata. *J Invertebr Pathol*. 2010;105(1):36–48. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20457162
45. Bachere E, Gueguen Y, Gonzalez M, Garnier J, Romestand B. Insights into the anti-microbial defense of marine invertebrates: the penaeid shrimps and the oyster Crassostrea gigas. *Immunol Rev*. 2004;198:149–168. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15199961
46. Li C, Shields JD. Primary culture of hemocytes from the Caribbean spiny lobster, Panulirus argus, and their susceptibility to Panulirus argus Virus 1 (PaV1). *J Invertebr Pathol*. 2007;94(1):48–55. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17034814
47. Wu C, Soderhall I, Kim YA, Liu H, Soderhall K. Hemocyte-lineage marker proteins in a crustacean, the freshwater crayfish, Pacifastacus leniusculus. *Proteomics*. 2008;8(20):4226–4235. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18814328
48. Hibino T, Loza-Coll M, Messier C, et al. The immune gene repertoire encoded in the purple sea urchin genome. *Dev Biol*. 2006;300(1):349–365. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17027739
49. Wright RK. Protochordate immunity. I. Primary immune response of the tunicate Ciona intestinalis to vertebrate erythrocytes. *J Invertebr Pathol*. 1974;24(1):29–36. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4853928
50. Delsuc F, Brinkmann H, Chourrout D, Philippe H. Tunicates and not cephalochordates are the closest living relatives of vertebrates. *Nature*. 2006;439(7079):965–968. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16495997
51. Huang G, Xie X, Han Y, et al. The identification of lymphocyte-like cells and lymphoid-related genes in amphioxus indicates the twilight for the emergency of adaptive immune system. *PLoS One*. 2007;2(2):e206. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17299586
52. Anderson MK, Pant R, Miracle AL, et al. Evolutionary origins of lymphocytes: ensembles of T cell and B cell transcriptional regulators in a cartilaginous fish. *J Immunol*. 2004;172(10):5851–5860. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15128764
53. Schorpp M, Bialecki M, Diekhoff D, et al. Conserved functions of Ikaros in vertebrate lymphocyte development: genetic evidence for distinct larval and adult phases of T cell development and two lineages of B cells in zebrafish. *J Immunol*. 2006;177(4):2463–2476. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16888008
54. Soderhall I, Bangyeekhun E, Mayo S, Soderhall K. Hemocyte production and maturation in an invertebrate animal; proliferation and gene expression in hematopoietic stem cells of Pacifastacus leniusculus. *Dev Comp Immunol*. 2003;27(8):661–672. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12798363
55. Soderhall I, Kim YA, Jiravanichpaisal P, Lee SY, Soderhall K. An ancient role for a prokineticin domain in invertebrate hematopoiesis. *J Immunol*. 2005;174(10):6153–6160. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15879111
56. Sorrentino RP, Carton Y, Govind S. Cellular immune response to parasite infection in the Drosophila lymph gland is developmentally regulated. *Dev Biol*. 2002;243(1):65–80. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11846478
57. Bozzaro S, Bucci C, Steinert M. Phagocytosis and host-pathogen interactions in Dictyostelium with a look at macrophages. *Int Rev Cell Mol Biol*. 2008;271:253–300. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19081545
58. Hoffmann JA, Kafatos FC, Janeway CA, Ezekowitz RA. Phylogenetic perspectives in innate immunity. *Science*. 1999;284(5418):1313–1318. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10334979
59. Medzhitov R, Janeway CA Jr. Innate immunity: the virtues of a nonclonal system of recognition. *Cell*. 1997;91(3):295–298. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9363937
60. Karre K. NK cells, MHC class I molecules and the missing self. *Scand J Immunol*. 2002;55(3):221–228. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11940227
61. Flajnik MF, Du Pasquier L. Evolution of innate and adaptive immunity: can we draw a line? *Trends Immunol*. 2004;25(12):640–644. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15530832
62. Vivier E, Raulet DH, Moretta A, et al. Innate or adaptive immunity? The example of natural killer cells. *Science*. 2011;331(6013):44–49. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21212348
63. Hansen JD, Vojtech LN, Laing KJ. Sensing disease and danger: a survey of vertebrate PRRs and their origins. *Dev Comp Immunol*. 2011;35(9):886–897. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21241729
64. Bonardi V, Cherkis K, Nishimura MT, Dangl JL. A new eye on NLR proteins: focused on clarity or diffused by complexity? *Curr Opin Immunol*. 2012;24(1):41–50. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22305607
65. Franchi L, Munoz-Planillo R, Nunez G. Sensing and reacting to microbes through the inflammasomes. *Nat Immunol*. 2012;13(4):325–332. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22430785
66. Robbins GR, Truax AD, Davis BK, Zhang L, Brickey WJ, Ting JP. Regulation of class I major histocompatibility complex (MHC). by nucleotide-binding domain, leucine-rich repeat-containing (NLR) proteins. *J Biol Chem*. 2012;287:24294–24303. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22645137
67. Irazoqui JE, Urbach JM, Ausubel FM. Evolution of host innate defence: insights from Caenorhabditis elegans and primitive invertebrates. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2010;10(1):47–58. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20029447
68. Rehwinkel J, Reis e Sousa C. RIGorous detection: exposing virus through RNA sensing. *Science*. 2010;327(5963):284–286. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20075242
69. Takeuchi O, Akira S. RIG-I-like antiviral protein in flies. *Nat Immunol*. 2008;9(12):1327–1328. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19008930
70. Augustin R, Fraune S, Bosch TC. How Hydra senses and destroys microbes. *Semin Immunol*. 2010;22(1):54–58. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20005124
71. Sharma S, Fitzgerald KA. Innate immune sensing of DNA. *PLoS Pathog*. 2011;7(4):e1001310.
72. Burdette DL, Monroe KM, Sotelo-Troha K, et al. STING is a direct innate immune sensor of cyclic di-GMP. *Nature*. 2011;478(7370):515–518. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21947006
73. Ozato K, Shin DM, Chang TH, Morse HC III. TRIM family proteins and their emerging roles in innate immunity. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2008;8(11):849–860. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18836477
74. McNab FW, Rajsbaum R, Stoye JP, O'Garra A. Tripartite-motif proteins and innate immune regulation. *Curr Opin Immunol*. 2011;23(1):46–56. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21131187
75. Henry J, Mather IH, McDermott MF, Pontarotti P. B30.2-like domain proteins: update and new insights into a rapidly expanding family of proteins. *Mol Biol Evol*. 1998;15(12):1696–1705. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9866204
76. James LC, Keeble AH, Khan Z, Rhodes DA, Trowsdale J. Structural basis for PRYSPRY-mediated tripartite motif (TRIM) protein function. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2007;104(15):6200–6205. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17400754
77. Du Pasquier L. Fish 'n' TRIMs. *J Biol*. 2009;8(5):50. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19519941
78. van der Aa LM, Levraud JP, Yahmi M, et al. A large new subset of TRIM genes highly diversified by duplication and positive selection in teleost fish. *BMC Biol*. 2009;7:7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19196451

79. Boudinot P, van der Aa LM, Jouneau L, et al. Origin and evolution of TRIM proteins: new insights from the complete TRIM repertoire of zebrafish and pufferfish. *PLoS One*. 2011;6(7):e22022. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21789205
80. Laing KJ, Purcell MK, Winton JR, Hansen JD. A genomic view of the NOD-like receptor family in teleost fish: identification of a novel NLR subfamily in zebrafish. *BMC Evol Biol*. 2008;8:42. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18254971
81. Rhodes DA, de BB, Trowsdale J. Relationship between SPRY and B30.2 protein domains. Evolution of a component of immune defence? *Immunology*. 2005;116(4):411–417. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16313355
82. Martens S, Howard J. The interferon-inducible GTPases. *Annu Rev Cell Dev Biol*. 2006;22:559–589. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16824009
83. Bekpen C, Hunn JP, Rohde C, et al. The interferon-inducible p47 (IRG) GTPases in vertebrates: loss of the cell autonomous resistance mechanism in the human lineage. *Genome Biol*. 2005;6(11):R92. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16277747
84. Osorio F, Reis e Sousa C. Myeloid C-type lectin receptors in pathogen recognition and host defense. *Immunity*. 2011;34(5):651–664. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21616435
85. Cirimotich CM, Dong Y, Garver LS, Sim S, Dimopoulos G. Mosquito immune defenses against Plasmodium infection. *Dev Comp Immunol*. 2010;34(4):387–395. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20026176
86. Zucchetti I, Marino R, Pinto MR, Lambris JD, Du Pasquier L, De Santis R. ciCD94-1, an ascidian multipurpose C-type lectin-like receptor expressed in Ciona intestinalis hemocytes and larval neural structures. *Differentiation*. 2008;76(3):267–282. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17924966
87. Taylor PR, Martinez-Pomares L, Stacey M, Lin HH, Brown GD, Gordon S. Macrophage receptors and immune recognition. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 2005;23:901–944. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15771589
88. Franc NC, Dimarcq JL, Lagueux M, Hoffmann J, Ezekowitz RA. Croquemort, a novel Drosophila hemocyte/macrophage receptor that recognizes apoptotic cells. *Immunity*. 1996;4(5):431–443. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8630729
89. Pancer Z. Dynamic expression of multiple scavenger receptor cysteine-rich genes in coelomocytes of the purple sea urchin. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2000;97(24):13156–13161. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11069281
90. Dong Y, Taylor HE, Dimopoulos G. AgDscam, a hypervariable immunoglobulin domain-containing receptor of the Anopheles gambiae innate immune system. *PLoS Biol*. 2006;4(7):e229. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16774454
91. Watthanasurorot A, Jiravanichpaisal P, Liu H, Soderhall I, Soderhall K. Bacteria-induced Dscam isoforms of the crustacean, Pacifastacus leniusculus. *PLoS Pathog*. 2011;7(6):e1002062. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21695245
92. Brites D, Encinas-Viso F, Ebert D, Du Pasquier L, Haag CR. Population genetics of duplicated alternatively spliced exons of the Dscam gene in Daphnia and Drosophila. *PLoS One*. 2011;6(12):e27947. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22174757
93. Brites D, McTaggart S, Morris K, et al. The Dscam homologue of the crustacean Daphnia is diversified by alternative splicing like in insects. *Mol Biol Evol*. 2008;25(7):1429–1439. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18403399
94. Royet J, Gupta D, Dziarski R. Peptidoglycan recognition proteins: modulators of the microbiome and inflammation. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2011;11(12):837–851. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22076558
95. Dziarski R, Kashyap DR, Gupta D. Mammalian peptidoglycan recognition proteins kill bacteria by activating two-component systems and modulate microbiome and inflammation. *Microb Drug Resist*. 2012;18(3):280–285. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22432705
96. Li X, Wang S, Qi J, et al. Zebrafish peptidoglycan recognition proteins are bactericidal amidases essential for defense against bacterial infections. *Immunity*. 2007;27(3):518–529. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17892854
97. Saha S, Jing X, Park SY, et al. Peptidoglycan recognition proteins protect mice from experimental colitis by promoting normal gut flora and preventing induction of interferon-gamma. *Cell Host Microbe*. 2010;8(2):147–162. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20709292
98. Hughes AL. Evolution of the betaGRP/GNBP/beta-1,3-glucanase family of insects. *Immunogenetics*. 2012;64(7):549–558. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22410636
99. Lemaitre B, Nicolas E, Michaut L, Reichhart JM, Hoffmann JA. The dorsoventral regulatory gene cassette spatzle/Toll/cactus controls the potent antifungal response in Drosophila adults. *Cell*. 1996;86(6):973–983. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8808632
100. Poltorak A, He X, Smirnova I, et al. Defective LPS signaling in C3H/HeJ and C57BL/10ScCr mice: mutations in Tlr4 gene. *Science*. 1998;282(5396):2085–2088. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9851930
101. Medzhitov R, Preston-Hurlburt P, Janeway CA Jr. A human homologue of the Drosophila Toll protein signals activation of adaptive immunity. *Nature*. 1997;388(6640):394–397. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9237759
102. Leulier F, Lemaitre B. Toll-like receptors—taking an evolutionary approach. *Nat Rev Genet*. 2008;9(3):165–178. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18227810
103. Gauthier ME, Du Pasquier L, Degnan BM. The genome of the sponge Amphimedon queenslandica provides new perspectives into the origin of Toll-like and interleukin 1 receptor pathways. *Evol Dev*. 2010;12(5):519–533. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20883219
104. Triantafilou M, Gamper FG, Haston RM, et al. Membrane sorting of toll-like receptor (TLR)-2/6 and TLR2/1 heterodimers at the cell surface determines heterotypic associations with CD36 and intracellular targeting. *J Biol Chem*. 2006;281(41):31002–31011. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16880211
105. Round JL, Lee SM, Li J, et al. The Toll-like receptor 2 pathway establishes colonization by a commensal of the human microbiota. *Science*. 2011;332(6032):974–977. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21512004
106. Steiner H, Hultmark D, Engstrom A, Bennich H, Boman HG. Sequence and specificity of two antibacterial proteins involved in insect immunity. *Nature*. 1981;292(5820):246–248. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7019715
107. Jang IH, Chosa N, Kim SH, et al. A Spatzle-processing enzyme required for toll signaling activation in Drosophila innate immunity. *Dev Cell*. 2006;10(1):45–55. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16399077
108. Sun SC, Faye I. Cecropia immunoresponsive factor, an insect immunoresponsive factor with DNA-binding properties similar to nuclear-factor kappa B. *Eur J Biochem*. 1992;204(2):885–892. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1541299
109. Lemaitre B, Kromer-Metzger E, Michaut L, et al. A recessive mutation, immune deficiency (imd), defines two distinct control pathways in the Drosophila host defense. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1995;92(21):9465–9469. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7568155
110. Gilmore TD, Wolenski FS. NF-kappaB: where did it come from and why? *Immunol Rev*. 2012;246(1):14–35. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22435545
111. Ricklin D, Hajishengallis G, Yang K, Lambris JD. Complement: a key system for immune surveillance and homeostasis. *Nat Immunol*. 2010;11(9):785–797. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20720586
112. Nonaka M, Kimura A. Genomic view of the evolution of the complement system. *Immunogenetics*. 2006;58(9):701–713. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16896831
113. Endo Y, Matsushita M, Fujita T. Role of ficolin in innate immunity and its molecular basis. *Immunobiology*. 2007;212(4–5):371–379. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17544822
114. Smith LC, Clow LA, Terwilliger DP. The ancestral complement system in sea urchins. *Immunol Rev*. 2001;180:16–34. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11414357
115. Nonaka M, Satake H. Urochordate immunity. *Adv Exp Med Biol*. 2010;708:302–310. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21528704

116. Kimura A, Ikeo K, Nonaka M. Evolutionary origin of the vertebrate blood complement and coagulation systems inferred from liver EST analysis of lamprey. *Dev Comp Immunol*. 2009;33(1):77–87. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18760304
117. Blandin S, Levashina EA. Thioester-containing proteins and insect immunity. *Mol Immunol*. 2004;40(12):903–908. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14698229
118. Sekiguchi R, Fujito NT, Nonaka M. Evolution of the thioester-containing proteins (TEPs) of the arthropoda, revealed by molecular cloning of TEP genes from a spider, Hasarius adansoni. *Dev Comp Immunol*. 2012;36(2):483–489. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21663759
119. Fraiture M, Baxter RH, Steinert S, et al. Two mosquito LRR proteins function as complement control factors in the TEP1-mediated killing of Plasmodium. *Cell Host Microbe*. 2009;5(3):273–284. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19286136
120. Volohonsky G, Steinert S, Levashina EA. Focusing on complement in the antiparasitic defense of mosquitoes. *Trends Parasitol*. 2010;26(1):1–3. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19853513
121. Dishaw LJ, Smith SL, Bigger CH. Characterization of a C3-like cDNA in a coral: phylogenetic implications. *Immunogenetics*. 2005;57(7):535–548. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16041540
122. Kimura A, Sakaguchi E, Nonaka M. Multi-component complement system of Cnidaria: C3, Bf, and MASP genes expressed in the endodermal tissues of a sea anemone, Nematostella vectensis. *Immunobiology*. 2009;214(3):165–178. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19195737
123. Zhu Y, Thangamani S, Ho B, Ding JL. The ancient origin of the complement system. *EMBO J*. 2005;24(2):382–394. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15616573
124. Nakao M, Tsujikura M, Ichiki S, Vo TK, Somamoto T. The complement system in teleost fish: progress of post-homolog-hunting researches. *Dev Comp Immunol*. 2011;35(12):1296–1308. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21414344
125. Ichiki S, Kato-Unoki Y, Somamoto T, Nakao M. The binding spectra of carp C3 isotypes against natural targets independent of the binding specificity of their thioester. *Dev Comp Immunol*. 2012. Epub ahead of print. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22561425
126. D'Angelo ME, Dunstone MA, Whisstock JC, Trapani JA, Bird PI. Perforin evolved from a gene duplication of MPEG1, followed by a complex pattern of gene gain and loss within Euteleostomi. *BMC Evol Biol*. 2012;12(1):59. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22551122
127. Solomon KR, Sharma P, Chan M, Morrison PT, Finberg RW. CD109 represents a novel branch of the alpha2-macroglobulin/complement gene family. *Gene*. 2004;327(2):171–183. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14980714
128. Hughes AL. Phylogeny of the C3/C4/C5 complement-component gene family indicates that C5 diverged first. *Mol Biol Evol*. 1994;11(3):417–425. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8015436
129. Yano K, Gale D, Massberg S, et al. Phenotypic heterogeneity is an evolutionarily conserved feature of the endothelium. *Blood*. 2007;109(2):613–615. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16990601
130. Cerenius L, Soderhall K. The prophenoloxidase-activating system in invertebrates. *Immunol Rev*. 2004;198:116–126. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15199959
131. Nelson RE, Fessler LI, Takagi Y, et al. Peroxidasin: a novel enzyme-matrix protein of Drosophila development. *EMBO J*. 1994;13(15):3438–3447. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8062820
132. Johansson MW, Lind MI, Holmblad T, Thornqvist PO, Soderhall K. Peroxinectin, a novel cell adhesion protein from crayfish blood. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun*. 1995;216(3):1079–1087. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7488183
133. Adema CM, Hertel LA, Miller RD, Loker ES. A family of fibrinogen-related proteins that precipitates parasite-derived molecules is produced by an invertebrate after infection. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1997;94(16):8691–8696. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9238039
134. Zhang SM, Adema CM, Kepler TB, Loker ES. Diversification of Ig superfamily genes in an invertebrate. *Science*. 2004;305(5681):251–254. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15247481
135. Hanington PC, Forys MA, Dragoo JW, Zhang SM, Adema CM, Loker ES. Role for a somatically diversified lectin in resistance of an invertebrate to parasite infection. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2010;107(49):21087–21092. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21084634
136. Middha S, Wang X. Evolution and potential function of fibrinogen-like domains across twelve Drosophila species. *BMC Genomics*. 2008;9:260. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18513432
137. Dong Y, Dimopoulos G. Anopheles fibrinogen-related proteins provide expanded pattern recognition capacity against bacteria and malaria parasites. *J Biol Chem*. 2009;284(15):9835–9844. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19193639
138. Buckley KM, Smith LC. Extraordinary diversity among members of the large gene family, 185/333, from the purple sea urchin, Strongylocentrotus purpuratus. *BMC Mol Biol*. 2007;8:68. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17697382
139. Ghosh J, Buckley KM, Nair SV, et al. Sp185/333: a novel family of genes and proteins involved in the purple sea urchin immune response. *Dev Comp Immunol*. 2010;34(3):235–245. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19887082
140. Hernandez Prada JA, Haire RN, Allaire M, et al. Ancient evolutionary origin of diversified variable regions demonstrated by crystal structures of an immune-type receptor in amphioxus. *Nat Immunol*. 2006;7(8):875–882. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16799561
141. Cannon JP, Haire RN, Litman GW. Identification of diversified genes that contain immunoglobulin-like variable regions in a protochordate. *Nat Immunol*. 2002;3(12):1200–1207. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12415263
142. Dishaw LJ, Ota T, Mueller MG, et al. The basis for haplotype complexity in VCBPs, an immune-type receptor in amphioxus. *Immunogenetics*. 2010;62(9):623–631. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20652563
143. Dishaw LJ, Giacomelli S, Melillo D, et al. A role for variable region-containing chitin-binding proteins (VCBPs) in host gut-bacteria interactions. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2011;108(40):16747–16752. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21930927
144. Selsted ME, Ouellette AJ. Mammalian defensins in the antimicrobial immune response. *Nat Immunol*. 2005;6(6):551–557. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15908936
145. Bulet P, Stocklin R, Menin L. Anti-microbial peptides: from invertebrates to vertebrates. *Immunol Rev*. 2004;198:169–184. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15199962
146. Denoeud F, Henriet S, Mungpakdee S, et al. Plasticity of animal genome architecture unmasked by rapid evolution of a pelagic tunicate. *Science*. 2010;330(6009):1381–1385. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21097902
147. Zasloff M, Adams AP, Beckerman B, et al. Squalamine as a broad-spectrum systemic antiviral agent with therapeutic potential. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2011;108(38):15978–15983. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21930925
148. Cuthbertson BJ, Deterding LJ, Williams JG, et al. Diversity in penaeidin antimicrobial peptide form and function. *Dev Comp Immunol*. 2008;32(3):167–181. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17716729
149. Cuthbertson BJ, Deterding LJ, Williams JG, et al. Diversity in penaeidin antimicrobial peptide form and function. *Dev Comp Immunol*. 2008;32(3):167–181. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17716729
150. Sabin LR, Hanna SL, Cherry S. Innate antiviral immunity in Drosophila. *Curr Opin Immunol*. 2010;22(1):4–9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20137906
151. Montgomery MK, Xu S, Fire A. RNA as a target of double-stranded RNA-mediated genetic interference in Caenorhabditis elegans. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1998;95(26):15502–15507. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9860998
152. Beutler B, Eidenschenk C, Crozat K, et al. Genetic analysis of resistance to viral infection. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2007;7(10):753–766. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17893693
153. Nakamoto M, Moy RH, Xu J, et al. Virus recognition by Toll-7 activates antiviral autophagy in Drosophila. *Immunity*. 2012;36(4):658–667. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22464169
154. Theodor JL, Senelar R. Cytotoxic interaction between gorgonian explants: mode of action. *Cell Immunol*. 1975;19(2):194–200. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/147

155. Boiledieu D, Valembois P. [In vitro study of the cytotoxic activity of sipunculid leukocytes towards allogeneic and xenogenic erythrocytes]. *C R Acad Sci Hebd Seances Acad Sci D*. 1976;283(3):247–249. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/825267
156. Nappi AJ, Ottaviani E. Cytotoxicity and cytotoxic molecules in invertebrates. *Bioessays*. 2000;22(5):469–480. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10797487
157. Pancer Z, Skorokhod A, Blumbach B, Muller WE. Multiple Ig-like featuring genes divergent within and among individuals of the marine sponge Geodia cydonium. *Gene*. 1998;207(2):227–233. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9511765
158. Khalturin K, Becker M, Rinkevich B, Bosch TC. Urochordates and the origin of natural killer cells: identification of a CD94/NKR-P1-related receptor in blood cells of Botryllus. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2003;100 (2): 622–627. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12518047
159. Zucchetti I, Marino R, Pinto MR, Lambris JD, Du Pasquier L, De Santis R. ciCD94-1, an ascidian multipurpose C-type lectin-like receptor expressed in Ciona intestinalis hemocytes and larval neural structures. *Differentiation*. 2008;76(3):267–282. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17924966
160. Daeron M, Jaeger S, Du Pasquier L, Vivier E. Immunoreceptor tyrosine-based inhibition motifs: a quest in the past and future. *Immunol Rev*. 2008;224:11–43. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18759918
161. Lanier LL. Up on the tightrope: natural killer cell activation and inhibition. *Nat Immunol*. 2008;9(5):495–502. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18425106
162. Wei S, Zhou JM, Chen X, et al. The zebrafish activating immune receptor Nitr9 signals via Dap12. *Immunogenetics*. 2007;59(10): 813–821. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17891481
163. Yoder JA, Litman GW. The phylogenetic origins of natural killer receptors and recognition: relationships, possibilities, and realities. *Immunogenetics*. 2011;63(3):123–141. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21191578
164. Voigt V, Forbes CA, Tonkin JN, et al. Murine cytomegalovirus m157 mutation and variation leads to immune evasion of natural killer cells. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2003;100(23):13483–13488. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14597723
165. Abi-Rached L, Parham P. Natural selection drives recurrent formation of activating killer cell immunoglobulin-like receptor and Ly49 from inhibitory homologues. *J Exp Med*. 2005;201(8):1319–1332. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15837816
166. Horton TL, Ritchie P, Watson MD, Horton JD. NK-like activity against allogeneic tumour cells demonstrated in the spleen of control and thymectomized Xenopus. *Immunol Cell Biol*. 1996;74(4):365–373. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8872188
167. Horton JD, Horton TL, Dzialo R, et al. T-cell and natural killer cell development in thymectomized Xenopus. *Immunol Rev*. 1998;166: 245–258. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9914917
168. Horton TL, Stewart R, Cohen N, et al. Ontogeny of Xenopus NK cells in the absence of MHC class I antigens. *Dev Comp Immunol*. 2003;27(8): 715–726. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12798367
169. Shen L, Stuge TB, Zhou H, et al. Channel catfish cytotoxic cells: a mini-review. *Dev Comp Immunol*. 2002;26(2):141–149. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11696379
170. Shen L, Stuge TB, Evenhuis JP, et al. Channel catfish NK-like cells are armed with IgM via a putative FcmicroR. *Dev Comp Immunol*. 2003;27(8):699–714. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12798366
171. Plougastel BF, Yokoyama WM. Extending missing-self? Functional interactions between lectin-like NKrp1 receptors on NK cells with lectin-like ligands. *Curr Top Microbiol Immunol*. 2006;298:77–89. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16323412
172. Rogers SL, Gobel TW, Viertlboeck BC, Milne S, Beck S, Kaufman J. Characterization of the chicken C-type lectin-like receptors B-NK and B-lec suggests that the NK complex and the MHC share a common ancestral region. *J Immunol*. 2005;174(6):3475–3483. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15749883
173. Shiina T, Briles WE, Goto RM, et al. Extended gene map reveals tripartite motif, C-type lectin, and Ig superfamily type genes within a subregion of the chicken MHC-B affecting infectious disease. *J Immunol*. 2007;178(11):7162–7172. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17513765
174. Delany ME, Robinson CM, Goto RM, Miller MM. Architecture and organization of chicken microchromosome 16: order of the NOR, MHC-Y, and MHC-B subregions. *J Hered*. 2009;100(5):507–514. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19617522
175. Stet RJ, Hermsen T, Westphal AH, et al. Novel immunoglobulin-like transcripts in teleost fish encode polymorphic receptors with cytoplasmic ITAM or ITIM and a new structural Ig domain similar to the natural cytotoxicity receptor NKp44. *Immunogenetics*. 2005;57(1–2):77–89. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15702329
176. Flajnik MF, Tlapakova T, Criscitiello MF, Krylov V, Ohta Y. Evolution of the B7 family: co-evolution of B7H6 and NKp30, identification of a new B7 family member, B7H7, and of B7's historical relationship with the MHC. *Immunogenetics* 2012;64(8):571–590. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22488247
177. Ohta Y, Goetz W, Hossain MZ, Nonaka M, Flajnik MF. Ancestral organization of the MHC revealed in the amphibian Xenopus. *J Immunol*. 2006;176(6):3674–3685. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16517736
178. Brandt CS, Baratin M, Yi EC, et al. The B7 family member B7-H6 is a tumor cell ligand for the activating natural killer cell receptor NKp30 in humans. *J Exp Med*. 2009;206(7):1495–1503. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19528259
179. Litman GW, Hawke NA, Yoder JA. Novel immune-type receptor genes. *Immunol Rev*. 2001;181:250–259. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11513146
180. Yoder JA, Litman GW. The zebrafish fth1, slc3a2, men1, pc, fgf3 and cycd1 genes define two regions of conserved synteny between linkage group 7 and human chromosome 11q13. *Gene*. 2000;261(2):235–242. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11167010
181. Cannon JP, Haire RN, Magis AT, et al. A bony fish immunological receptor of the NITR multigene family mediates allogeneic recognition. *Immunity*. 2008;29(2):228–237. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18674935
182. Davis RS, Ehrhardt GR, Leu CM, Hirano M, Cooper MD. An extended family of Fc receptor relatives. *Eur J Immunol*. 2005;35(3):674–680. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15688344
183. Viertlboeck BC, Habermann FA, Schmitt R, Groenen MA, Du Pasquier L, Gobel TW. The chicken leukocyte receptor complex: a highly diverse multigene family encoding at least six structurally distinct receptor types. *J Immunol*. 2005;175(1):385–393. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15972672
184. Stafford JL, Bengten E, Du Pasquier L, et al. A novel family of diversified immunoregulatory receptors in teleosts is homologous to both mammalian Fc receptors and molecules encoded within the leukocyte receptor complex. *Immunogenetics*. 2006;58(9):758–773. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16845542
185. Pancer Z, Cooper MD. The evolution of adaptive immunity. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 2006;24:497–518. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16551257
186. Suzuki T, Shin I, Fujiyama A, Kohara Y, Kasahara M. Hagfish leukocytes express a paired receptor family with a variable domain resembling those of antigen receptors. *J Immunol*. 2005;174(5):2885–2891. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15728499
187. Boulanger LM. Immune proteins in brain development and synaptic plasticity. *Neuron*. 2009;64(1):93–109. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19840552
188. Hsu E. The variation in immunoglobulin heavy chain constant regions in evolution. *Semin Immunol*. 1994;6(6):383–391. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7654995
189. Kaattari S, Evans D, Klemer J. Varied redox forms of teleost IgM: an alternative to isotypic diversity? *Immunol Rev*. 1998;166:133–142. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9914908
190. Wilson MR, Marcuz A, van GF, et al. The immunoglobulin M heavy chain constant region gene of the channel catfish, Ictalurus punctatus: an unusual mRNA splice pattern produces the membrane form of the molecule. *Nucleic Acids Res*. 1990;18(17):5227–5233. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2119496
191. Lundqvist M, Stromberg S, Bouchenot C, Pilstrom L, Boudinot P. Diverse splicing pathways of the membrane IgHM pre-mRNA in a

Chondrostean, the Siberian sturgeon. *Dev Comp Immunol*. 2009;33(4):507–515.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19027787
192. Coscia MR, Varriale S, Giacomelli S, Oreste U. Antarctic teleost immunoglobulins: more extreme, more interesting. *Fish Shellfish Immunol*. 2011;31(5):688–696.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21044686
193. Marchalonis J, Edelman GM. Polypeptide chains of immunoglobulins from the smooth dogfish (Mustelus canis). *Science*. 1966;154(756):1567–1568.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4162672
194. Hsu E, Pulham N, Rumfelt LL, Flajnik MF. The plasticity of immunoglobulin gene systems in evolution. *Immunol Rev*. 2006;210:8–26.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16623761
195. Dooley H, Flajnik MF. Shark immunity bites back: affinity maturation and memory response in the nurse shark, Ginglymostoma cirratum. *Eur J Immunol*. 2005;35(3):936–945.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15688348
196. Rumfelt LL, Avila D, Diaz M, Bartl S, McKinney EC, Flajnik MF. A shark antibody heavy chain encoded by a nonsomatically rearranged VDJ is preferentially expressed in early development and is convergent with mammalian IgG. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2001;98(4):1775–1780.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11172027
197. Greenberg AS, Avila D, Hughes M, Hughes A, McKinney EC, Flajnik MF. A new antigen receptor gene family that undergoes rearrangement and extensive somatic diversification in sharks. *Nature*. 1995;374(6518):168–173.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7877689
198. Flajnik MF, Deschacht N, Muyldermans S. A case of convergence: why did a simple alternative to canonical antibodies arise in sharks and camels? *PLoS Biol*. 2011;9(8):e1001120.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21829328
199. Stanfield RL, Dooley H, Flajnik MF, Wilson IA. Crystal structure of a shark single-domain antibody V region in complex with lysozyme. *Science*. 2004;305(5691):1770–1773.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15319492
200. Stanfield RL, Dooley H, Verdino P, Flajnik MF, Wilson IA. Maturation of shark single-domain (IgNAR) antibodies: evidence for induced-fit binding. *J Mol Biol*. 2007;367(2):358–372.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17258766
201. Criscitiello MF, Saltis M, Flajnik MF. An evolutionarily mobile antigen receptor variable region gene: doubly rearranging NAR-TcR genes in sharks. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2006;103(13):5036–5041.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16549799
202. Parra ZE, Baker ML, Schwarz RS, Deakin JE, Lindblad-Toh K, Miller RD. A unique T cell receptor discovered in marsupials. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2007;104(23):9776–9781.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17535902
203. Kobayashi K, Tomonaga S. The second immunoglobulin class is commonly present in cartilaginous fish belonging to the order Rajiformes. *Mol Immunol*. 1988;25(2):115–120.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2453789
204. Hsu E, Flajnik MF, Du Pasquier L. A third immunoglobulin class in amphibians. *J Immunol*. 1985;135(3):1998–2004.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3926893
205. Harding FA, Amemiya CT, Litman RT, Cohen N, Litman GW. Two distinct immunoglobulin heavy chain isotypes in a primitive, cartilaginous fish, Raja erinacea. *Nucleic Acids Res*. 1990;18(21):6369–6376.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2123029
206. Greenberg AS, Hughes AL, Guo J, Avila D, McKinney EC, Flajnik MF. A novel "chimeric" antibody class in cartilaginous fish: IgM may not be the primordial immunoglobulin. *Eur J Immunol*. 1996;26(5):1123–1129.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8647177
207. Berstein RM, Schluter SF, Shen S, Marchalonis JJ. A new high molecular weight immunoglobulin class from the carcharhine shark: implications for the properties of the primordial immunoglobulin. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1996;93(8):3289–3293.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8622930
208. Rumfelt LL, Diaz M, Lohr RL, Mochon E, Flajnik MF. Unprecedented multiplicity of Ig transmembrane and secretory mRNA forms in the cartilaginous fish. *J Immunol*. 2004;173(2):1129–1139.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15240702
209. Ota T, Rast JP, Litman GW, Amemiya CT. Lineage-restricted retention of a primitive immunoglobulin heavy chain isotype within the Dipnoi reveals an evolutionary paradox. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2003;100(5):2501–2506.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12606718
210. Ohta Y, Flajnik M. IgD, like IgM, is a primordial immunoglobulin class perpetuated in most jawed vertebrates. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2006;103(28):10723–10728.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16818885
211. Zhao Y, Pan-Hammarstrom Q, Yu S, et al. Identification of IgF, a hinge-region-containing Ig class, and IgD in Xenopus tropicalis. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2006;103(32):12087–12092.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16877547
212. Wilson M, Bengten E, Miller NW, Clem LW, Du Pasquier L, Warr GW. A novel chimeric Ig heavy chain from a teleost fish shares similarities to IgD. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1997;94(9):4593–4597.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9114035
213. Edholm ES, Bengten E, Stafford JL, et al. Identification of two IgD + B cell populations in channel catfish, Ictalurus punctatus. *J Immunol*. 2010;185(7):4082–4094.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20817869
214. Chen K, Xu W, Wilson M, et al. Immunoglobulin D enhances immune surveillance by activating antimicrobial, proinflammatory and B cell-stimulating programs in basophils. *Nat Immunol*. 2009;10(8):889–898.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19561614
215. Edholm ES, Bengten E, Wilson M. Insights into the function of IgD. *Dev Comp Immunol*. 2011;35(12):1309–1316.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21414345
216. Danilova N, Bussmann J, Jekosch K, Steiner LA. The immunoglobulin heavy-chain locus in zebrafish: identification and expression of a previously unknown isotype, immunoglobulin Z. *Nat Immunol*. 2005;6(3):295–302.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15685175
217. Hansen JD, Landis ED, Phillips RB. Discovery of a unique Ig heavy-chain isotype (IgT) in rainbow trout: implications for a distinctive B cell developmental pathway in teleost fish. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2005;102(19):6919–6924.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15863615
218. Zhang YA, Salinas I, Li J, et al. IgT, a primitive immunoglobulin class specialized in mucosal immunity. *Nat Immunol*. 2010;11(9):827–835.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20676094
219. Hohman VS, Stewart SE, Rumfelt LL, et al. J chain in the nurse shark: implications for function in a lower vertebrate. *J Immunol*. 2003;170(12):6016–6023.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12794129
220. Flajnik MF. Comparative analyses of immunoglobulin genes: surprises and portents. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2002;2(9):688–698.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12209137
221. Mussmann R, Du Pasquier L, Hsu E. Is Xenopus IgX an analog of IgA? *Eur J Immunol*. 1996;26(12):2823–2830.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8977274
222. Fellah JS, Vaulot D, Tournefier A, Charlemagne J. Ontogeny of immunoglobulin expression in the Mexican axolotl. *Development*. 1989;107(2): 253–263.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2698798
223. Fellah JS, Iscaki S, Vaerman JP, Charlemagne J. Transient developmental expression of IgY and secretory component like protein in the gut of the axolotl (Ambystoma mexicanum). *Dev Immunol*. 1992;2(3):181–190.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1627950
224. Wei Z, Wu Q, Ren L, et al. Expression of IgM, IgD, and IgY in a reptile, Anolis carolinensis. *J Immunol*. 2009;183(6):3858–3864.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19717516
225. Mussmann R, Wilson M, Marcuz A, Courtet M, Du Pasquier L. Membrane exon sequences of the three Xenopus Ig classes explain the evolutionary origin of mammalian isotypes. *Eur J Immunol*. 1996;26(2):409–414.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8617311
226. Martin SW, Goodnow CC. Burst-enhancing role of the IgG membrane tail as a molecular determinant of memory. *Nat Immunol*. 2002;3(2):182–188.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11812996
227. Liu W, Meckel T, Tolar P, Sohn HW, Pierce SK. Intrinsic properties of immunoglobulin IgG1 isotype-switched B cell receptors promote

microclustering and the initiation of signaling. *Immunity*. 2010;32(6): 778–789.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20620943
228. Stavnezer J, Amemiya CT. Evolution of isotype switching. *Semin Immunol*. 2004;16(4):257–275.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15522624
229. Zarrin AA, Alt FW, Chaudhuri J, et al. An evolutionarily conserved target motif for immunoglobulin class-switch recombination. *Nat Immunol*. 2004;5(12):1275–1281.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15531884
230. Zhu C, Lee V, Finn A, et al. Origin of immunoglobulin isotype switching. *Curr Biol*. 2012;22(10):872–880.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22542103
231. Criscitiello MF, Flajnik MF. Four primordial immunoglobulin light chain isotypes, including lambda and kappa, identified in the most primitive living jawed vertebrates. *Eur J Immunol*. 2007;37(10): 2683–2694.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17899545
232. Edholm ES, Wilson M, Bengten E. Immunoglobulin light (IgL) chains in ectothermic vertebrates. *Dev Comp Immunol*. 2011;35(9):906–915.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21256861
233. Edholm ES, Wilson M, Sahoo M, et al. Identification of Igsigma and Iglambda in channel catfish, Ictalurus punctatus, and Iglambda in Atlantic cod, Gadus morhua. *Immunogenetics*. 2009;61(5):353–370.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19333591
234. Zimmerman AM, Yeo G, Howe K, Maddox BJ, Steiner LA. Immunoglobulin light chain (IgL) genes in zebrafish: Genomic configurations and inversional rearrangements between (V(L)-J(L)-C(L)) gene clusters. *Dev Comp Immunol*. 2008;32(4):421–434.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18022691
235. Hsu E, Criscitiello MF. Diverse immunoglobulin light chain organizations in fish retain potential to revise B cell receptor specificities. *J Immunol*. 2006;177(4):2452–2462.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16888007
236. Lee SS, Greenberg A, Hsu E. Evolution and somatic diversification of immunoglobulin light chains. *Curr Top Microbiol Immunol*. 2000;248:285–300.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10793483
237. Mikoryak CA, Steiner LA. Noncovalent association of heavy and light chains in Rana catesbeiana immunoglobulins. *J Immunol*. 1984;133(1): 376–383.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6427343
238. Miller RD, Belov K. Immunoglobulin genetics of marsupials. *Dev Comp Immunol*. 2000;24(5):485–490.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10785273
239. Rast JP, Anderson MK, Ota T, et al. Immunoglobulin light chain class multiplicity and alternative organizational forms in early vertebrate phylogeny. *Immunogenetics*. 1994;40(2):83–99.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8026868
240. Greenberg AS, Steiner L, Kasahara M, Flajnik MF. Isolation of a shark immunoglobulin light chain cDNA clone encoding a protein resembling mammalian kappa light chains: implications for the evolution of light chains. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1993;90(22):10603–10607.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8248152
241. Ota T, Sitnikova T, Nei M. Evolution of vertebrate immunoglobulin variable gene segments. *Curr Top Microbiol Immunol*. 2000;248: 221–245.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10793480
242. Chang B, Casali P. The CDR1 sequences of a major proportion of human germline Ig VH genes are inherently susceptible to amino acid replacement. *Immunol Today*. 1994;15(8):367–373.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7916950
243. Hsu E. Canonical VH CDR1 nucleotide sequences are conserved in all jawed vertebrates. *Int Immunol*. 1996;8(6):847–854.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8671674
244. Braathen R, Hohman VS, Brandtzaeg P, Johansen FE. Secretory antibody formation: conserved binding interactions between J chain and polymeric Ig receptor from humans and amphibians. *J Immunol*. 2007;178(3):1589–1597.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17237408
245. Hohman VS, Stewart SE, Rumfelt LL, et al. J chain in the nurse shark: implications for function in a lower vertebrate. *J Immunol*. 2003;170(12):6016–6023.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12794129
246. Takahashi T, Iwase T, Takenouchi N, et al. The joining (J) chain is present in invertebrates that do not express immunoglobulins. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1996;93(5):1886–1891.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8700853
247. Charlemagne J, Fellah JS, De Guerra A, Kerfourn F, Partula S. T-cell receptors in ectothermic vertebrates. *Immunol Rev*. 1998;166:87–102.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9914905
248. Rast JP, Anderson MK, Strong SJ, Luer C, Litman RT, Litman GW. Alpha, beta, gamma, and delta T cell antigen receptor genes arose early in vertebrate phylogeny. *Immunity*. 1997;6(1):1–11.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9052832
249. Chen CL, Bucy RP, Cooper MD. T cell differentiation in birds. *Semin Immunol*. 1990;2(1):79–86.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2129903
250. Gobel TW, Meier EL, Du Pasquier L. Biochemical analysis of the Xenopus laevis TCR/CD3 complex supports the "stepwise evolution" model. *Eur J Immunol*. 2000;30(10):2775–2781.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11069057
251. Munoz FA, Estrada-Parra S, Romero-Rojas A, Work TM, Gonzalez-Ballesteros E, Estrada-Garcia I. Identification of CD3 + T lymphocytes in the green turtle Chelonia mydas. *Vet Immunol Immunopathol*. 2009;131(3–4):211–217.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19477530
252. Kuhns MS, Girvin AT, Klein LO, et al. Evidence for a functional sidedness to the alphabetaTCR. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2010;107(11):5094–5099.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20202921
253. Smelty P, Marchal C, Renard R, et al. Identification of the pre-T-cell receptor alpha chain in nonmammalian vertebrates challenges the structure-function of the molecule. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2010;107(46): 19991–19996.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21045129
254. Pang SS, Berry R, Chen Z, et al. The structural basis for autonomous dimerization of the pre-T-cell antigen receptor. *Nature*. 2010;467(7317): 844–848.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20944746
255. Campbell KS, Backstrom BT, Tiefenthaler G, Palmer E. CART: a conserved antigen receptor transmembrane motif. *Semin Immunol*. 1994;6(6):393–410.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7654996
256. Sasada T, Touma M, Chang HC, Clayton LK, Wang JH, Reinherz EL. Involvement of the TCR Cbeta FG loop in thymic selection and T cell function. *J Exp Med*. 2002;195(11):1419–1431.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12045240
257. Criscitiello MF, Ohta Y, Saltis M, McKinney EC, Flajnik MF. Evolutionarily conserved TCR binding sites, identification of T cells in primary lymphoid tissues, and surprising trans-rearrangements in nurse shark. *J Immunol*. 2010;184(12):6950–6960.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20488795
258. Criscitiello MF, Wermenstam NE, Pilstrom L, McKinney EC. Allelic polymorphism of T-cell receptor constant domains is widespread in fishes. *Immunogenetics*. 2004;55(12):818–824.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14985877
259. Rock EP, Sibbald PR, Davis MM, Chien YH. CDR3 length in antigen-specific immune receptors. *J Exp Med*. 1994;179(1):323–328.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8270877
260. Petrie HT, Livak F, Schatz DG, Strasser A, Crispe IN, Shortman K. Multiple rearrangements in T cell receptor alpha chain genes maximize the production of useful thymocytes. *J Exp Med*. 1993;178(2):615–622.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8393478
261. Garcia KC, Adams JJ, Feng D, Ely LK. The molecular basis of TCR germline bias for MHC is surprisingly simple. *Nat Immunol*. 2009;10(2):143–147.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19148199
262. Scott-Browne JP, White J, Kappler JW, Gapin L, Marrack P. Germline-encoded amino acids in the alphabeta T-cell receptor control thymic selection. *Nature*. 2009;458(7241):1043–1046.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19262510
263. Glusman G, Rowen L, Lee I, et al. Comparative genomics of the human and mouse T cell receptor loci. *Immunity*. 2001;15(3):337–349.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11567625

264. Rast JP, Haire RN, Litman RT, Pross S, Litman GW. Identification and characterization of T-cell antigen receptor-related genes in phylogenetically diverse vertebrate species. *Immunogenetics*. 1995;42(3):204–212. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7642232
265. Andre S, Kerfourn F, Affaticati P, Guerci A, Ravassard P, Fellah JS. Highly restricted diversity of TCR delta chains of the amphibian Mexican axolotl (Ambystoma mexicanum) in peripheral tissues. *Eur J Immunol*. 2007;37(6):1621–1633. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17523213
266. Cahill RN, Kimpton WG, Washington EA, Walker ID. Origin and development of the gamma delta T-cell system in sheep: a critical role for the thymus in the generation of TcR diversity and tissue tropism. *Semin Immunol*. 1996;8(6):351–360. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8961386
267. Su C, Jakobsen I, Gu X, Nei M. Diversity and evolution of T-cell receptor variable region genes in mammals and birds. *Immunogenetics*. 1999;50 (5–6):301–308. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10630294
268. Parra ZE, Ohta Y, Criscitiello MF, Flajnik MF, Miller RD. The dynamic TCRdelta: TCRdelta chains in the amphibian Xenopus tropicalis utilize antibody-like V genes. *Eur J Immunol*. 2010;40(8):2319–2329. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20486124
269. Wang X, Parra ZE, Miller RD. Platypus TCRmu provides insight into the origins and evolution of a uniquely mammalian TCR locus. *J Immunol*. 2011;187(10):5246–5254. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21976776
270. Parra ZE, Mitchell K, Dalloul RA, Miller RD. A second TCRdelta locus in Galliformes uses antibody-like V domains: insight into the evolution of TCRdelta and TCRmu genes in tetrapods. *J Immunol*. 2012;188(8):3912–3919. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22407916
271. Chen H, Kshirsagar S, Jensen I, et al. Characterization of arrangement and expression of the T cell receptor gamma locus in the sandbar shark. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2009;106(21):8591–8596. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19439654
272. Chen H, Bernstein H, Ranganathan P, Schluter SF. Somatic hypermutation of TCR gamma V genes in the sandbar shark. *Dev Comp Immunol*. 2012;37(1):176–183. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21925537
273. Smith LE, Crouch K, Cao W, et al. Characterization of the immunoglobulin repertoire of the spiny dogfish (Squalus acanthias). *Dev Comp Immunol*. 2012;36(4):665–679. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22040740
274. Kokubu F, Litman R, Shamblott MJ, Hinds K, Litman GW. Diverse organization of immunoglobulin VH gene loci in a primitive vertebrate. *EMBO J*. 1988;7(11):3413–3422. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3145194
275. Lee SS, Fitch D, Flajnik MF, Hsu E. Rearrangement of immunoglobulin genes in shark germ cells. *J Exp Med*. 2000;191(10):1637–1648. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10811858
276. Lewis SM, Wu GE. The old and the restless. *J Exp Med*. 2000;191(10): 1631–1636. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10811857
277. Hinds KR, Litman GW. Major reorganization of immunoglobulin VH segmental elements during vertebrate evolution. *Nature*. 1986;320 (6062):546–549. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3083268
278. Eason DD, Litman RT, Luer CA, Kerr W, Litman GW. Expression of individual immunoglobulin genes occurs in an unusual system consisting of multiple independent loci. *Eur J Immunol*. 2004;34(9): 2551–2558. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15307187
279. Malecek K, Lee V, Feng W, et al. Immunoglobulin heavy chain exclusion in the shark. *PLoS Biol*. 2008;6(6):e157. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18578572
280. Amemiya CT, Ohta Y, Litman RT, Rast JP, Haire RN, Litman GW. VH gene organization in a relict species, the coelacanth Latimeria chalumnae: evolutionary implications. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1993;90(14):6661–6665. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8341683
281. Hsu E, Criscitiello MF. Diverse immunoglobulin light chain organizations in fish retain potential to revise B cell receptor specificities. *J Immunol*. 2006;177(4):2452–2462. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16888007
282. Adams EJ, Strop P, Shin S, Chien YH, Garcia KC. An autonomous CDR3delta is sufficient for recognition of the nonclassical MHC class I molecules T10 and T22 by gammadelta T cells. *Nat Immunol*. 2008;9(7):777–784. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18516039
283. Hanley PJ, Hook JW, Raftos DA, Gooley AA, Trent R, Raison RL. Hagfish humoral defense protein exhibits structural and functional homology with mammalian complement components. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1992;89(17):7910–7914. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1518812
284. Zapata A, Amemiya CT. Phylogeny of lower vertebrates and their immunological structures. *Curr Top Microbiol Immunol*. 2000;248: 67–107. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10793475
285. Uinuk-Ool T, Mayer WE, Sato A, Dongak R, Cooper MD, Klein J. Lamprey lymphocyte-like cells express homologs of genes involved in immunologically relevant activities of mammalian lymphocytes. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2002;99(22):14356–14361. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12391333
286. Pancer Z, Amemiya CT, Ehrhardt GR, Ceitlin J, Gartland GL, Cooper MD. Somatic diversification of variable lymphocyte receptors in the agnathan sea lamprey. *Nature*. 2004;430(6996):174–180. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15241406
287. Alder MN, Rogozin IB, Iyer LM, Glazko GV, Cooper MD, Pancer Z. Diversity and function of adaptive immune receptors in a jawless vertebrate. *Science*. 2005;310(5756):1970–1973. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16373579
288. Rogozin IB, Iyer LM, Liang L, et al. Evolution and diversification of lamprey antigen receptors: evidence for involvement of an AID-APOBEC family cytosine deaminase. *Nat Immunol*. 2007;8(6):647–656. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17468760
289. Nagawa F, Kishishita N, Shimizu K, et al. Antigen-receptor genes of the agnathan lamprey are assembled by a process involving copy choice. *Nat Immunol*. 2007;8(2):206–213. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17187071
290. Alder MN, Herrin BR, Sadlonova A, et al. Antibody responses of variable lymphocyte receptors in the lamprey. *Nat Immunol*. 2008;9(3): 319–327. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18246071
291. Guo P, Hirano M, Herrin BR, et al. Dual nature of the adaptive immune system in lampreys. *Nature*. 2009;459(7248):796–801. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19474790
292. Velikovsky CA, Deng L, Tasumi S, et al. Structure of a lamprey variable lymphocyte receptor in complex with a protein antigen. *Nat Struct Mol Biol*. 2009;16(7):725–730. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19543291
293. Han BW, Herrin BR, Cooper MD, Wilson IA. Antigen recognition by variable lymphocyte receptors. *Science*. 2008;321(5897):1834–1837. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18818359
294. Deng L, Velikovsky CA, Xu G, et al. A structural basis for antigen recognition by the T cell-like lymphocytes of sea lamprey. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2010;107(30):13408–13413. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20616002
295. Diaz M, Flajnik MF. Evolution of somatic hypermutation and gene conversion in adaptive immunity. *Immunol Rev*. 1998;162:13–24. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9602348
296. Du Pasquier L, Wilson M, Greenberg AS, Flajnik MF. Somatic mutation in ectothermic vertebrates: musings on selection and origins. *Curr Top Microbiol Immunol*. 1998;229:199–216. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9479856
297. Hsu E. Mutation, selection, and memory in B lymphocytes of exothermic vertebrates. *Immunol Rev*. 1998;162:25–36. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9602349
298. Makela O, Litman GW. Lack of heterogeneity in antihapten antibodies of a phylogenetically primitive shark. *Nature*. 1980;287(5783):639–640. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6159540
299. Hinds-Frey KR, Nishikata H, Litman RT, Litman GW. Somatic variation precedes extensive diversification of germline sequences and

combinatorial joining in the evolution of immunoglobulin heavy chain diversity. *J Exp Med*. 1993;178(3):815–824.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8350055
300. Lee SS, Tranchina D, Ohta Y, Flajnik MF, Hsu E. Hypermutation in shark immunoglobulin light chain genes results in contiguous substitutions. *Immunity*. 2002;16(4):571–582.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11970880
301. Diaz M, Velez J, Singh M, Cerny J, Flajnik MF. Mutational pattern of the nurse shark antigen receptor gene (NAR) is similar to that of mammalian Ig genes and to spontaneous mutations in evolution: the translesion synthesis model of somatic hypermutation. *Int Immunol*. 1999;11(5):825–833.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10330287
302. Malecek K, Brandman J, Brodsky JE, Ohta Y, Flajnik MF, Hsu E. Somatic hypermutation and junctional diversification at Ig heavy chain loci in the nurse shark. *J Immunol*. 2005;175(12):8105–8115.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16339548
303. Diaz M, Greenberg AS, Flajnik MF. Somatic hypermutation of the new antigen receptor gene (NAR) in the nurse shark does not generate the repertoire: possible role in antigen-driven reactions in the absence of germinal centers. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1998;95(24):14343–14348.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9826702
304. Zhu C, Hsu E. Error-prone DNA repair activity during somatic hypermutation in shark B lymphocytes. *J Immunol*. 2010;185(9):5336–5347.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20921520
305. Zhu C, Feng W, Weedon J, et al. The multiple shark Ig H chain genes rearrange and hypermutate autonomously. *J Immunol*. 2011;187(5):2492–2501.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21804022
306. Lindner C, Wahl B, Fohse L, et al. Age, microbiota, and T cells shape diverse individual IgA repertoires in the intestine. *J Exp Med*. 2012;209(2):365–377.
307. Dooley H, Stanfield RL, Brady RA, Flajnik MF. First molecular and biochemical analysis of in vivo affinity maturation in an ectothermic vertebrate. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2006;103(6):1846–1851.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16446445
308. Rumfelt LL, McKinney EC, Taylor E, Flajnik MF. The development of primary and secondary lymphoid tissues in the nurse shark Ginglymostoma cirratum: B-cell zones precede dendritic cell immigration and T-cell zone formation during ontogeny of the spleen. *Scand J Immunol*. 2002;56(2):130–148.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12121433
309. Ye J, Bromage ES, Kaattari SL. The strength of B cell interaction with antigen determines the degree of IgM polymerization. *J Immunol*. 2010;184(2):844–850.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20018610
310. Miller N, Wilson M, Bengten E, Stuge T, Warr G, Clem W. Functional and molecular characterization of teleost leukocytes. *Immunol Rev*. 1998;166:187–197.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9914913
311. Boudinot P, Boubekeur S, Benmansour A. Rhabdovirus infection induces public and private T cell responses in teleost fish. *J Immunol*. 2001;167(11):6202–6209.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11714781
312. Castro R, Bernard D, Lefranc MP, Six A, Benmansour A, Boudinot P. T cell diversity and TcR repertoires in teleost fish. *Fish Shellfish Immunol*. 2011;31(5):644–654.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20804845
313. Ye J, Bromage E, Kaattari I, Kaattari S. Transduction of binding affinity by B lymphocytes: a new dimension in immunological regulation. *Dev Comp Immunol*. 2011;35(9):982–990.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21300090
314. Bromage ES, Kaattari IM, Zwollo P, Kaattari SL. Plasmablast and plasma cell production and distribution in trout immune tissues. *J Immunol*. 2004;173(12):7317–7323.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15585855
315. Zwollo P, Mott K, Barr M. Comparative analyses of B cell populations in trout kidney and mouse bone marrow: establishing "B cell signatures." *Dev Comp Immunol*. 2010;34(12):1291–1299.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20705088
316. Zwollo P. Dissecting teleost B cell differentiation using transcription factors. *Dev Comp Immunol*. 2011;35(9):898–905.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21251922
317. Yang F, Waldbieser GC, Lobb CJ. The nucleotide targets of somatic mutation and the role of selection in immunoglobulin heavy chains of a teleost fish. *J Immunol*. 2006;176(3):1655–1667.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16424195
318. Barreto VM, Magor BG. Activation-induced cytidine deaminase structure and functions: a species comparative view. *Dev Comp Immunol*. 2011;35(9):991–1007.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21349283
319. Saunders HL, Oko AL, Scott AN, Fan CW, Magor BG. The cellular context of AID expressing cells in fish lymphoid tissues. *Dev Comp Immunol*. 2010;34(6):669–676.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20105439
320. Marianes AE, Zimmerman AM. Targets of somatic hypermutation within immunoglobulin light chain genes in zebrafish. *Immunology*. 2011;132(2):240–255.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21070232
321. Bly JE, Quiniou SM, Clem LW. Environmental effects on fish immune mechanisms. *Dev Biol Stand*. 1997;90:33–43.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9270832
322. Zhou H, Stuge TB, Miller NW, et al. Heterogeneity of channel catfish CTL with respect to target recognition and cytotoxic mechanisms employed. *J Immunol*. 2001;167(3):1325–1332.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11466349
323. Charlemagne J. Antibody diversity in amphibians. Noninbred axolotls used the same unique heavy chain and a limited number of light chains for their anti-2,4-dinitrophenyl antibody responses. *Eur J Immunol*. 1987;17(3):421–424.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3106061
324. SalvadoriF,Tournefier A. Activation by mitogens and superantigens of axolotl lymphocytes: functional characterization and ontogenic study. *Immunology*. 1996;88(4):586–592.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8881761
325. Du Pasquier L, Robert J, Courtet M, Mussmann R. B-cell development in the amphibian Xenopus. *Immunol Rev*. 2000;175:201–213.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10933604
326. Wabl MR, Du Pasquier L. Antibody patterns in genetically identical frogs. *Nature*. 1976;264(5587):642–644.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1004605
327. Wilson M, Hsu E, Marcuz A, Courtet M, Du Pasquier L, Steinberg C. What limits affinity maturation of antibodies in Xenopus—the rate of somatic mutation or the ability to select mutants? *EMBO J*. 1992;11(12):4337–4347.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1425571
328. Du Pasquier L, Schwager J, Flajnik MF. The immune system of Xenopus. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 1989;7:251–275.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2653371
329. Marr S, Morales H, Bottaro A, Cooper M, Flajnik M, Robert J. Localization and differential expression of activation-induced cytidine deaminase in the amphibian Xenopus upon antigen stimulation and during early development. *J Immunol*. 2007;179(10):6783–6789.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17982068
330. Robert J, Goyos A, Nedelkovska H. Xenopus, a unique comparative model to explore the role of certain heat shock proteins and non-classical MHC class Ib gene products in immune surveillance. *Immunol Res*. 2009. Epub ahead of print.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19189057
331. Horton JD, Horton TL, Dzialo R, et al. T-cell and natural killer cell development in thymectomized Xenopus. *Immunol Rev*. 1998;166:245–258.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9914917
332. Rau L, Gantress J, Bell A, et al. Identification and characterization of Xenopus CD8 + T cells expressing an NK cell-associated molecule. *Eur J Immunol*. 2002;32(6):1574–1583.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12115640
333. Chen G, Robert J. Antiviral immunity in amphibians. *Viruses*. 2011;3(11):2065–2086.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22163335
334. Morales HD, Robert J. Characterization of primary and memory CD8 T-cell responses against ranavirus (FV3) in Xenopus laevis. *J Virol*. 2007;81(5):2240–2248.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17182687

335. Morales H, Robert J. In vivo and in vitro techniques for comparative study of antiviral T-cell responses in the amphibian Xenopus. *Biol Proced Online*. 2008;10:1–8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18385804
336. Turchin A, Hsu E. The generation of antibody diversity in the turtle. *J Immunol*. 1996;156(10):3797–3805. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8621916
337. Munoz FJ, De la Fuente M. The immune response of thymic cells from the turtle Mauremys caspica. *J Comp Physiol B*. 2001;171(3): 195–200. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11352102
338. Hoffmeister MJ, Voss EW Jr. Hapten-binding capacity and population heterogeneity of chicken anti-Dnp IgG antibody. *Immunochemistry*. 1975;12(9):745–749. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1193679
339. Arakawa H, Furusawa S, Ekino S, Yamagishi H. Immunoglobulin gene hyperconversion ongoing in chicken splenic germinal centers. *EMBO J*. 1996;15(10):2540–2546. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8665861
340. Schiaffella E, Sehgal D, Anderson AO, Mage RG. Gene conversion and hypermutation during diversification of VH sequences in developing splenic germinal centers of immunized rabbits. *J Immunol*. 1999;162(7): 3984–3995. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10201919
341. Boehm T, Bleul CC. The evolutionary history of lymphoid organs. *Nat Immunol*. 2007;8(2):131–135. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17242686
342. Ge Q, Zhao Y. Evolution of thymus organogenesis. *Dev Comp Immunol*. 2012. Epub ahead of print.
343. Bajoghli B, Aghaallaei N, Hess I, et al. Evolution of genetic networks underlying the emergence of thymopoiesis in vertebrates. *Cell*. 2009;138(1):186–197. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19559469
344. Hart S, Wrathmell AB, Harris JE. Ontogeny of gut-associated lymphoid tissue (GALT) in the dogfish Scyliorhinus canicula L. *Vet Immunol Immunopathol*. 1986;12(1–4):107–116. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3765334
345. Rumfelt LL, McKinney EC, Taylor E, Flajnik MF. The development of primary and secondary lymphoid tissues in the nurse shark Ginglymostoma cirratum: B-cell zones precede dendritic cell immigration and T-cell zone formation during ontogeny of the spleen. *Scand J Immunol*. 2002;56(2):130–148. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12121433
346. Miracle AL, Anderson MK, Litman RT, et al. Complex expression patterns of lymphocyte-specific genes during the development of cartilaginous fish implicate unique lymphoid tissues in generating an immune repertoire. *Int Immunol*. 2001;13(4):567–580. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11282996
347. Malecek K, Lee V, Feng W, et al. Immunoglobulin heavy chain exclusion in the shark. *PLoS Biol*. 2008;6(6):e157. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18578572
348. Zapata A, Amemiya CT. Phylogeny of lower vertebrates and their immunological structures. *Curr Top Microbiol Immunol*. 2000;248:67–107. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10793475
349. Koppang EO, Fischer U, Moore L, et al. Salmonid T cells assemble in the thymus, spleen and in novel interbranchial lymphoid tissue. *J Anat*. 2010;217(6):728–739. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20880086
350. dos Santos NM, Romano N, de SM, Ellis AE, Rombout JH. Ontogeny of B and T cells in sea bass (Dicentrarchus labrax, L.). *Fish Shellfish Immunol*. 2000;10(7):583–596. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11081436
351. Zapata A, Diez B, Cejalvo T, Gutierrez-de FC, Cortes A. Ontogeny of the immune system of fish. *Fish Shellfish Immunol*. 2006;20(2):126–136. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15939627
352. Fugmann SD, Messier C, Novack LA, Cameron RA, Rast JP. An ancient evolutionary origin of the Rag1/2 gene locus. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2006;103(10):3728–3733. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16505374
353. Hansen JD. Characterization of rainbow trout terminal deoxynucleotidyl transferase structure and expression. TdT and RAG1 co-expression define the trout primary lymphoid tissues. *Immunogenetics*. 1997;46(5): 367–375. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9271626
354. Barr M, Mott K, Zwollo P. Defining terminally differentiating B cell populations in rainbow trout immune tissues using the transcription factor XbpI. *Fish Shellfish Immunol*. 2011;31(6):727–735. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21784159
355. Li J, Barreda DR, Zhang YA, et al. B lymphocytes from early vertebrates have potent phagocytic and microbicidal abilities. *Nat Immunol*. 2006;7(10):1116–1124. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16980980
356. Parra D, Rieger AM, Li J, et al. Pivotal advance: peritoneal cavity B-1 B cells have phagocytic and microbicidal capacities and present phagocytosed antigen to CD4 + T cells. *J Leukoc Biol*. 2012;91(4):525–536. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22058420
357. Montecino-Rodriguez E, Dorshkind K. B-1 B cell development in the fetus and adult. *Immunity*. 2012;36(1):13–21. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22284417
358. Garcia Barrutia MS, Villena A, Gomariz RP, Razquin B, Zapata A. Ultrastructural changes in the spleen of the natterjack, Bufo calamita, after antigenic stimulation. *Cell Tissue Res*. 1985;239(2):435–441. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3978698
359. Greenhalgh P, Olesen CE, Steiner LA. Characterization and expression of recombination activating genes (RAG-1 and RAG-2) in Xenopus laevis. *J Immunol*. 1993;151(6):3100–3110. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8376769
360. Horton JD, Manning MJ. Response to skin allografts in Xenopus laevis following thymectomy at early stages of lymphoid organ maturation. *Transplantation*. 1972;14(2):141–154. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4114967
361. Schwager J, Burckert N, Courtet M, Du Pasquier L. The ontogeny of diversification at the immunoglobulin heavy chain locus in Xenopus. *EMBO J*. 1991;10(9):2461–2470. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1907911
362. Lee A, Hsu E. Isolation and characterization of the Xenopus terminal deoxynucleotidyl transferase. *J Immunol*. 1994;152(9):4500–4507. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8157965
363. Cooper MD, Raymond DA, Peterson RD, South MA, Good RA. The functions of the thymus system and the bursa system in the chicken. *J Exp Med*. 1966;123(1):75–102. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/5323079
364. Ratcliffe MJ. Antibodies, immunoglobulin genes and the bursa of Fabricius in chicken B cell development. *Dev Comp Immunol*. 2006;30 (1–2):101–118. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16139886
365. Ratcliffe MJ, Ivanyi J. Allotype suppression in the chicken. IV. Deletion of B cells and lack of suppressor cells during chronic suppression. *Eur J Immunol*. 1981;11(4):306–310. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6454581
366. Reynaud CA, Anquez V, Grimal H, Weill JC. A hyperconversion mechanism generates the chicken light chain preimmune repertoire. *Cell*. 1987;48(3):379–388. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3100050
367. Reynaud CA, Bertocci B, Dahan A, Weill JC. Formation of the chicken B-cell repertoire: ontogenesis, regulation of Ig gene rearrangement, and diversification by gene conversion. *Adv Immunol*. 1994;57:353–378. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7872160
368. Arakawa H, Hauschild J, Buerstedde JM. Requirement of the activation-induced deaminase (AID) gene for immunoglobulin gene conversion. *Science*. 2002;295(5558):1301–1306. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11847344
369. Sayegh CE, Drury G, Ratcliffe MJ. Efficient antibody diversification by gene conversion in vivo in the absence of selection for V(D)J-encoded determinants. *EMBO J*. 1999;18(22):6319–6328. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10562544
370. Knight KL, Becker RS. Molecular basis of the allelic inheritance of rabbit immunoglobulin VH allotypes: implications for the generation of antibody diversity. *Cell*. 1990;60(6):963–970. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2317867
371. Knight KL, Crane MA. Generating the antibody repertoire in rabbit. *Adv Immunol*. 1994;56:179–218. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8073947

372. Rhee KJ, Jasper PJ, Sethupathi P, Shanmugam M, Lanning D, Knight KL. Positive selection of the peripheral B cell repertoire in gut-associated lymphoid tissues. *J Exp Med*. 2005;201(1):55–62. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15623575
373. Reynaud CA, Mackay CR, Muller RG, Weill JC. Somatic generation of diversity in a mammalian primary lymphoid organ: the sheep ileal Peyer's patches. *Cell*. 1991;64(5):995–1005. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1900459
374. Terszowski G, Muller SM, Bleul CC, et al. Evidence for a functional second thymus in mice. *Science*. 2006;312(5771):284–287. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16513945
375. Bajoghli B, Guo P, Aghaallaei N, et al. A thymus candidate in lampreys. *Nature*. 2011;470(7332):90–94. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21293377
376. Saltis M, Criscitiello MF, Ohta Y, et al. Evolutionarily conserved and divergent regions of the autoimmune regulator (Aire) gene: a comparative analysis. *Immunogenetics*. 2008;60(2):105–114. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18214467
377. Murata S, Sasaki K, Kishimoto T, et al. Regulation of CD8 + T cell development by thymus-specific proteasomes. *Science*. 2007;316(5829): 1349–1353. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17540904
378. Sutoh Y, Kondo M, Ohta Y, et al. Comparative genomic analysis of the proteasome beta5t subunit gene: implications for the origin and evolution of thymoproteasomes. *Immunogenetics*. 2012;64(1):49–58. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21748441
379. Kaufman J, Salomonsen J, Flajnik M. Evolutionary conservation of MHC class I and class II molecules—different yet the same. *Semin Immunol*. 1994;6(6):411–424. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7654997
380. Ohta Y, Shiina T, Lohr RL, et al. Primordial linkage of beta2-microglobulin to the MHC. *J Immunol*. 2011;186(6):3563–3571. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21321107
381. Hansen TH, Huang S, Arnold PL, Fremont DH. Patterns of nonclassical MHC antigen presentation. *Nat Immunol*. 2007;8(6):563–568. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17514210
382. Goyos A, Guselnikov S, Chida AS, et al. Involvement of nonclassical MHC class Ib molecules in heat shock protein-mediated anti-tumor responses. *Eur J Immunol*. 2007;37(6):1494–1501. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17492621
383. Goyos A, Sowa J, Ohta Y, Robert J. Remarkable conservation of distinct nonclassical MHC class I lineages in divergent amphibian species. *J Immunol*. 2011;186(1):372–381. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21115732
384. Hee CS, Gao S, Loll B, et al. Structure of a classical MHC class I molecule that binds "non-classical" ligands. *PLoS Biol*. 2010;8(12):e1000557.
385. Dijkstra JM, Katagiri T, Hosomichi K, et al. A third broad lineage of major histocompatibility complex (MHC) class I in teleost fish; MHC class II linkage and processed genes. *Immunogenetics*. 2007;59(4): 305–321. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17318646
386. Phillips RB, Zimmerman A, Noakes MA, et al. Physical and genetic mapping of the rainbow trout major histocompatibility regions: evidence for duplication of the class I region. *Immunogenetics*. 2003;55(8): 561–569. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14566436
387. Liljedahl M, Kuwana T, Fung-Leung WP, Jackson MR, Peterson PA, Karlsson L. HLA-DO is a lysosomal resident which requires association with HLA-DM for efficient intracellular transport. *EMBO J*. 1996;15(18): 4817–4824. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8890155
388. Criscitiello MF, Ohta Y, Graham MD, Eubanks JO, Chen PL, Flajnik MF. Shark class II invariant chain reveals ancient conserved relationships with cathepsins and MHC class II. *Dev Comp Immunol*. 2012; 36(3): 521–533. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21996610
389. Basha G, Omilusik K, Chavez-Steenbock A, et al. A CD74-dependent MHC class I endolysosomal cross-presentation pathway. *Nat Immunol*. 2012;13(3):237–245. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22306692
390. Salter-Cid L, Nonaka M, Flajnik MF. Expression of MHC class Ia and class Ib during ontogeny: high expression in epithelia and coregulation of class Ia and lmp7 genes. *J Immunol*. 1998;160(6):2853–2861. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9510188
391. Du Pasquier L, Flajnik MF. Expression of MHC class II antigens during Xenopus development. *Dev Immunol*. 1990;1(2):85–95. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2136209
392. Volk H, Charlemagne J, Tournefier A, et al. Wide tissue distribution of axolotl class II molecules occurs independently of thyroxin. *Immunogenetics*. 1998;47(5):339–349. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9510551
393. Rodrigues PN, Hermsen TT, van MA, et al. Expression of MhcCyca class I and class II molecules in the early life history of the common carp (Cyprinus carpio L.). *Dev Comp Immunol*. 1998;22(5–6): 493–506. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9877432
394. Fischer U, Dijkstra JM, Kollner B, et al. The ontogeny of MHC class I expression in rainbow trout (Oncorhynchus mykiss). *Fish Shellfish Immunol*. 2005;18(1):49–60. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15450968
395. Star B, Nederbragt AJ, Jentoft S, et al. The genome sequence of Atlantic cod reveals a unique immune system. *Nature*. 2011;477(7363):207–210. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21832995
396. Magnadottir B, Jonsdottir H, Helgason S, Bjornsson B, Solem ST, Pilstrom L. Immune parameters of immunised cod (Gadus morhua L.). *Fish Shellfish Immunol*. 2001;11(1):75–89. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11271604
397. Kaufman J, Volk H, Wallny HJ. A "minimal essential Mhc" and an "unrecognized Mhc": two extremes in selection for polymorphism. *Immunol Rev*. 1995;143:63–88. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7558083
398. Sammut B, Du Pasquier L, Ducoroy P, Laurens V, Marcuz A, Tournefier A. Axolotl MHC architecture and polymorphism. *Eur J Immunol*. 1999;29(9):2897–2907. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10508264
399. Kasahara M. The 2R hypothesis: an update. *Curr Opin Immunol*. 2007;19(5):547–552. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17707623
400. Hughes AL. Evolution of the ATP-binding-cassette transmembrane transporters of vertebrates. *Mol Biol Evol*. 1994;11(6):899–910. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7529351
401. Uinuk-ool TS, Mayer WE, Sato A, et al. Identification and characterization of a TAP-family gene in the lamprey. *Immunogenetics*. 2003;55(1): 38–48. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12679854
402. Zhao C, Tampe R, Abele R. TAP and TAP-like—brothers in arms? *Naunyn Schmiedebergs Arch Pharmacol*. 2006;372(6):444–450. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16525794
403. Kelley J, Walter L, Trowsdale J. Comparative genomics of major histocompatibility complexes. *Immunogenetics*. 2005;56(10):683–695. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15605248
404. Sambrook JG, Figueroa F, Beck S. A genome-wide survey of major histocompatibility complex (MHC) genes and their paralogues in zebrafish. *BMC Genomics*. 2005;6:152. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16271140
405. Vienne A, Shiina T, Abi-Rached L, et al. Evolution of the proto-MHC ancestral region: more evidence for the plesiomorphic organisation of human chromosome 9q34 region. *Immunogenetics*. 2003;55(7): 429–436. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14530884
406. Shum BP, Guethlein L, Flodin LR, et al. Modes of salmonid MHC class I and II evolution differ from the primate paradigm. *J Immunol*. 2001;166(5):3297–3308. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11207285
407. Consuegra S, Megens HJ, Leon K, Stet RJ, Jordan WC. Patterns of variability at the major histocompatibility class II alpha locus in Atlantic salmon contrast with those at the class I locus. *Immunogenetics*. 2005;57(1–2):16–24. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15726347
408. Kaufman J, Milne S, Gobel TW, et al. The chicken B locus is a minimal essential major histocompatibility complex. *Nature*. 1999;401(6756): 923–925. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10553909
409. Shiina T, Shimizu S, Hosomichi K, et al. Comparative genomic analysis of two avian (quail and chicken) MHC regions. *J Immunol*. 2004;172(11):6751–6763. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15153492

410. Koch M, Camp S, Collen T, et al. Structures of an MHC class I molecule from B21 chickens illustrate promiscuous peptide binding. *Immunity*. 2007;27(6):885–899. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18083574
411. Wallny HJ, Avila D, Hunt LG, et al. Peptide motifs of the single dominantly expressed class I molecule explain the striking MHC-determined response to Rous sarcoma virus in chickens. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2006;103(5):1434–1439. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16432226
412. Suzuki K, Matsumoto T, Kobayashi E, et al. Genotypes of chicken major histocompatibility complex B locus associated with regression of Rous sarcoma virus J-strain tumors. *Poult Sci*. 2010;89(4):651–657. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20308396
413. Walker BA, Hunt LG, Sowa AK, et al. The dominantly expressed class I molecule of the chicken MHC is explained by coevolution with the poly-morphic peptide transporter (TAP) genes. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2011;108(20):8396–8401. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21536896
414. Salomonsen J, Sorensen MR, Marston DA, et al. Two CD1 genes map to the chicken MHC, indicating that CD1 genes are ancient and likely to have been present in the primordial MHC. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2005;102(24):8668–8673. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15939887
415. Miller MM, Wang C, Parisini E, et al. Characterization of two avian MHC-like genes reveals an ancient origin of the CD1 family. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2005;102(24):8674–8679. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15939884
416. Nonaka M, Namikawa C, Kato Y, Sasaki M, Salter-Cid L, Flajnik MF. Major histocompatibility complex gene mapping in the amphibian Xenopus implies a primordial organization. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1997;94(11):5789–5791. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9159152
417. Ohta Y, Powis SJ, Lohr RL, Nonaka M, Du Pasquier L, Flajnik MF. Two highly divergent ancient allelic lineages of the transporter associated with antigen processing (TAP) gene in Xenopus: further evidence for co-evolution among MHC class I region genes. *Eur J Immunol*. 2003;33 (11):3017–3027. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14579270
418. Tsukamoto K, Hayashi S, Matsuo MY, et al. Unprecedented intraspecific diversity of the MHC class I region of a teleost medaka, Oryzias latipes. *Immunogenetics*. 2005;57(6):420–431. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16003465
419. Tsukamoto K, Miura F, Fujito NT, Yoshizaki G, Nonaka M. Long-lived dichotomous lineages of the proteasome subunit beta type 8 (PSMB8) gene surviving more than 500 million years as alleles or paralogs. *Mol Biol Evol*. 2012. Epub ahead of print. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22491037
420. Flajnik MF, Kasahara M, Shum BP, Salter-Cid L, Taylor E, Du Pasquier L. A novel type of class I gene organization in vertebrates: a large family of non-MHC-linked class I genes is expressed at the RNA level in the amphibian Xenopus. *EMBO J*. 1993;12(11):4385–4396. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8223448
421. Danchin E, Vitiello V, Vienne A, et al. The major histocompatibility complex origin. *Immunol Rev*. 2004;198:216–232. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15199965
422. Fernandez-Busquets X, Burger MM. Cell adhesion and histocompatibility in sponges. *Microsc Res Tech*. 1999;44(4):204–218. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10098923
423. Wiens M, Perovic-Ottstadt S, Muller IM, Muller WE. Allograft rejection in the mixed cell reaction system of the demosponge Suberites domuncula is controlled by differential expression of apoptotic genes. *Immunogenetics*. 2004;56(8):597–610. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15517243
424. Muller WE, Krasko A, Skorokhod A, et al. Histocompatibility reaction in tissue and cells of the marine sponge Suberites domuncula in vitro and in vivo: central role of the allograft inflammatory factor 1. *Immunogenetics*. 2002;54(1):48–58. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11976791
425. Tepsuporn S, Kaltenbach JC, Kuhns WJ, Burger MM, Fernandez-Busquets X. Apoptosis in Microciona prolifera allografts. *Biol Bull*. 2003;205(2):199–201. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14583528
426. Sabella C, Faszewski E, Himic L, et al. Cyclosporin A suspends transplantation reactions in the marine sponge Microciona prolifera. *J Immunol*. 2007;179(9):5927–5935. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17947666
427. Lubbock R. Clone-specific cellular recognition in a sea anemone. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1980;77(11):6667–6669. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6109283
428. Hauenschild C. Wilhelm Roux's Archives. 1954;147:1–114.
429. Rosa SF, Powell AE, Rosengarten RD, et al. Hydractinia allodeterminant alr1 resides in an immunoglobulin superfamily-like gene complex. *Curr Biol*. 2010;20(12):1122–1127. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20537535
430. Theodor JL. Distinction between "self" and "not-self" in lower invertebrates. *Nature*. 1970;227(5259):690–692. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4393478
431. Rosengarten RD, Moreno MA, Lakkis FG, Buss LW, Dellaporta SL. Genetic diversity of the allodeterminant alr2 in Hydractinia symbiolongicarpus. *Mol Biol Evol*. 2011;28(2):933–947. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20966116
432. Oka H, Watanabe H. Colony specificity in compound ascidians as tested by fusion experiments (a preliminary report). *Proc Japan Acad Sci*. 1957;33:657–658.
433. Cima F, Sabbadin A, Ballarin L. Cellular aspects of allorecognition in the compound ascidian Botryllus schlosseri. *Dev Comp Immunol*. 2004;28(9):881–889. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15183029
434. De Tomaso AW, Nyholm SV, Palmeri KJ, et al. Isolation and characterization of a protochordate histocompatibility locus. *Nature*. 2005;438 (7067):454–459. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16306984
435. Nyholm SV, Passegue E, Ludington WB, et al. fester, A candidate allorecognition receptor from a primitive chordate. *Immunity*. 2006; 25(1):163–173. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16860765
436. McKitrick TR, Muscat CC, Pierce JD, Bhattacharya D, De Tomaso AW. Allorecognition in a basal chordate consists of independent activating and inhibitory pathways. *Immunity*. 2011;34(4):616–626. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21497115
437. McKitrick TR, De Tomaso AW. Molecular mechanisms of allorecognition in a basal chordate. *Semin Immunol*. 2010;22(1):34–38. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20044272
438. Rinkevich B, Douek J, Rabinowitz C, Paz G. The candidate Fu/HC genein Botryllusschlosseri (Urochordata) and ascidians' historecognition—an oxymoron? *Dev Comp Immunol*. 2012;36(4):718–727. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22085780
439. Ishii T, Sawada T, Sasaki K, Ohtake S. Study of color variation in the solitary ascidian Halocynthia roretzi, collected in the Inland Sea of Japan. *Zoolog Sci*. 2004;21(8):891–898. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15334002
440. Raftos DA, Briscoe DA, Tait NN. The mode of recognition of allogeneic tissue in the solitary urochordate Styela plicata. *Transplantation*. 1988;45(6):1123–1126. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3381249
441. Kurn U, Sommer F, Hemmrich G, Bosch TC, Khalturin K. Allorecognition in urochordates: identification of a highly variable complement receptor-like protein expressed in follicle cells of Ciona. *Dev CompImmunol*. 2007;31(4):360–371. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17074389
442. Zucchetti I, De SR, Grusea S, Pontarotti P, Du Pasquier L. Origin and evolution of the vertebrate leukocyte receptors: the lesson from tunicates. *Immunogenetics*. 2009;61(6):463–481. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19404636
443. Burnet FM. "Self-recognition" in colonial marine forms and flowering plants in relation to the evolution of immunity. *Nature*. 1971;232(5308):230–235. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4937075

443a. Flajnik MF, Du Pasquier L. Evolution of the immune system. In: Paul W, ed. *Fundamental Immunology*, 6th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2008:56–124.

444. Buss LW. Somatic cell parasitism and the evolution of somatic tissue compatibility. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1982;79(17):5337–5341. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6957867

445. Laird DJ, De Tomaso AW, Weissman IL. Stem cells are units of natural selection in a colonial ascidian. *Cell*. 2005;123(7):1351–1360. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16377573
446. Hughes RN, Manriquez PH, Morley S, Craig SF, Bishop JD. Kin or self-recognition? Colonial fusibility of the bryozoan Celleporella hyalina. *Evol Dev*. 2004;6(6):431–437. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15509225
447. Gould SJ, Hildreth JE, Booth AM. The evolution of alloimmunity and the genesis of adaptive immunity. *Q Rev Biol*. 2004;79(4):359–382. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15669770
448. Azumi K, De SR, De TA, et al. Genomic analysis of immunity in a Urochordate and the emergence of the vertebrate immune system: "waiting for Godot." *Immunogenetics*. 2003;55(8):570–5781. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14530883
449. Roberts S, Gueguen Y, de LJ, Goetz F. Rapid accumulation of an interleukin 17 homolog transcript in Crassostrea gigas hemocytes following bacterial exposure. *Dev Comp Immunol*. 2008;32(9):1099–1104. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18395796
450. Bilej M, Joskova R, Van den BR, et al. An invertebrate TNF functional analogue activates macrophages via lectin-saccharide interaction with ion channels. *Int Immunol*. 2006;18(12):1663–1670. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17035350
451. Hong S, Peddie S, Campos-Perez JJ, Zou J, Secombes CJ. The effect of intraperitoneally administered recombinant IL-1beta on immune parameters and resistance to Aeromonas salmonicida in the rainbow trout (Oncorhynchus mykiss). *Dev Comp Immunol*. 2003;27(9):801–812. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12818637
452. Hong S, Zou J, Collet B, Bols NC, Secombes CJ. Analysis and characterisation of IL-1beta processing in rainbow trout, Oncorhynchus mykiss. *Fish Shellfish Immunol*. 2004;16(3):453–459. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15123312
453. Paul WE, Zhu J. How are T(H)2-type immune responses initiated and amplified? *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2010;10(4):225–235. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20336151
454. Kaiser P, Poh TY, Rothwell L, et al. A genomic analysis of chicken cytokines and chemokines. *J Interferon Cytokine Res*. 2005;25(8):467–484. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16108730
455. Kaiser P, Poh TY, Rothwell L, et al. A genomic analysis of chicken cytokines and chemokines. *J Interferon Cytokine Res*. 2005;25(8):467–484. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16108730
456. Jin P, Hu J, Qian J, Chen L, Xu X, Ma F. Identification and characterization of a putative lipopolysaccharide-induced TNF-alpha factor (LITAF) gene from Amphioxus (Branchiostoma belcheri): an insight into the innate immunity of Amphioxus and the evolution of LITAF. *Fish Shellfish Immunol*. 2012;32(6):1223–1228. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22484607
457. Wiens GD, Glenney GW. Origin and evolution of TNF and TNF receptor superfamilies. *Dev Comp Immunol*. 2011;35(12):1324–1335. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21527275
458. Awasthi G, Singh S, Dash AP, Das A. Genetic characterization and evolutionary inference of TNF-alpha through computational analysis. *Braz J Infect Dis*. 2008;12(5):374–379. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19219275
459. Collette Y, Gilles A, Pontarotti P, Olive D. A co-evolution perspective of the TNFSF and TNFRSF families in the immune system. *Trends Immunol*. 2003;24(7):387–394. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12860530
460. Wang T, Huang W, Costa MM, Secombes CJ. The gamma-chain cytokine/receptor system in fish: more ligands and receptors. *Fish Shellfish Immunol*. 2011;31(5):673–687. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21664274
461. Bird S, Zou J, Kono T, Sakai M, Dijkstra JM, Secombes C. Characterisation and expression analysis of interleukin 2 (IL-2) and IL-21 homologues in the Japanese pufferfish, Fugu rubripes, following their discovery by synteny. *Immunogenetics*. 2005;56(12):909–923. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15592926
462. Wang T, Secombes CJ. Cloning and expression of a putative common cytokine receptor gamma chain (gammaC) gene in rainbow trout (Oncorhynchus mykiss). *Fish Shellfish Immunol*. 2001;11(3):233–244. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11394690
463. Iwanami N, Mateos F, Hess I, et al. Genetic evidence for an evolutionarily conserved role of IL-7 signaling in T cell development of zebrafish. *J Immunol*. 2011;186(12):7060–7066. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21562163
464. Li JH, Shao JZ, Xiang LX, Wen Y. Cloning, characterization and expression analysis of pufferfish interleukin-4 cDNA: the first evidence of Th2-type cytokine in fish. *Mol Immunol*. 2007;44(8):2078–2086. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17084456
465. Wang T, Huang W, Costa MM, Martin SA, Secombes CJ. Two copies of the genes encoding the subunits of putative interleukin (IL)-4/IL-13 receptors, IL-4Ralpha, IL-13Ralpha1 and IL-13Ralpha2, have been identified in rainbow trout (Oncorhynchus mykiss) and have complex patterns of expression and modulation. *Immunogenetics*. 2011;63(4):235–253. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21210100
466. Zou J, Secombes CJ. Teleost fish interferons and their role in immunity. *Dev Comp Immunol*. 2011;35(12):1376–1387. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21781984
467. Papenfuss AT, Baker ML, Feng ZP, et al. The immune gene repertoire of an important viral reservoir, the Australian black flying fox. *BMC Genomics*. 2012;13(1):261. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22716473
468. Thomas C, Moraga I, Levin D, et al. Structural linkage between ligand discrimination and receptor activation by type I interferons. *Cell*. 2011;146(4):621–632. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21854986
469. Kaiser P, Sonnemans D, Smith LM. Avian IFN-gamma genes: sequence analysis suggests probable cross-species reactivity among galliforms. *J Interferon Cytokine Res*. 1998;18(9):711–719. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9781810
470. Secombes CJ, Wang T, Bird S. The interleukins of fish. *Dev Comp Immunol. 2011;35(12):1336–1345.* http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21605591
471. Haynes L, Cohen N. Transforming growth factor beta (TGF beta) is produced by and influences the proliferative response of Xenopus lae-vis lymphocytes. *Dev Immunol*. 1993;3(3):223–230. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8281035
472. Corripio-Miyar Y, Zou J, Richmond H, Secombes CJ. Identification of interleukin-22 in gadoids and examination of its expression level in vaccinated fish. *Mol Immunol*. 2009;46(10):2098–2106. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19403174
473. Du Pasquier L, Bernard CC. Active suppression of the allogeneic histocompatibility reactions during the metamorphosis of the clawed toad Xenopus. *Differentiation*. 1980;16(1):1–7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7429064
474. Quintana FJ, Iglesias AH, Farez MF, et al. Adaptive autoimmunity and Foxp3-based immunoregulation in zebrafish. *PLoS One*. 2010;5(3):e9478.
475. Hibino T, Loza-Coll M, Messier C, et al. The immune gene repertoire encoded in the purple sea urchin genome. *Dev Biol*. 2006;300(1):349–365. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17027739
476. Nomiyama H, Osada N, Yoshie O. A family tree of vertebrate chemokine receptors for a unified nomenclature. *Dev Comp Immunol*. 2011;35(7):705–715. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21295066
477. DeVries ME, Kelvin AA, Xu L, Ran L, Robinson J, Kelvin DJ. Defining the origins and evolution of the chemokine/chemokine receptor system. *J Immunol*. 2006;176(1):401–415. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16365434
478. Klein J, O'Huigin C. Composite origin of major histocompatibility complex genes. *Curr Opin Genet Dev*. 1993;3(6):923–930. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8118219
479. Lynch M, O'Hely M, Walsh B, Force A. The probability of preservation of a newly arisen gene duplicate. *Genetics*. 2001;159(4):1789–1804. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11779815
480. Sakano H, Huppi K, Heinrich G, Tonegawa S. Sequences at the somatic recombination sites of immunoglobulin light-chain genes. *Nature*. 1979;280(5720):288–294. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/111144
481. Kapitonov VV, Jurka J. RAG1 core and V(D)J recombination signal sequences were derived from Transib transposons. *PLoS Biol*. 2005;3(6):e181. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15898832

482. Ramon-Maiques S, Kuo AJ, Carney D, et al. The plant homeodomain finger of RAG2 recognizes histone H3 methylated at both lysine-4 and arginine-2. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2007;104(48):18993–18998. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18025461
483. Liu Y, Subrahmanyam R, Chakraborty T, Sen R, Desiderio S. A plant homeodomain in RAG-2 that binds Hypermethylated lysine 4 of histone H3 is necessary for efficient antigen-receptor-gene rearrangement. *Immunity*. 2007;27(4):561–571. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17936034
484. Bartl S, Miracle AL, Rumfelt LL, et al. Terminal deoxynucleotidyl transferases from elasmobranchs reveal structural conservation within vertebrates. *Immunogenetics*. 2003;55(9):594–604. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14579105
485. Richards MH, Nelson JL. The evolution of vertebrate antigen receptors: a phylogenetic approach. *Mol Biol Evol*. 2000;17(1):146–155. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10666714
486. Davis MM, Bjorkman PJ. T-cell antigen receptor genes and T-cell recognition. *Nature*. 1988;334(6181):395–402. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3043226
487. Chrétien I, Robert J, Marcuz A, Garcia-Sanz JA, Courtet M, Du Pasquier L. CTX, a novel molecule specifically expressed on the surface of cortical thymocytes in Xenopus. *Eur J Immunol*. 1996;26(4):780–791. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8625968
488. Compte E, Pontarotti P, Collette Y, Lopez M, Olive D. Frontline: characterization of BT3 molecules belonging to the B7 family expressed on immune cells. *Eur J Immunol*. 2004;34(8):2089–2099. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15259006
489. Barton ES, Forrest JC, Connolly JL, et al. Junction adhesion molecule is a receptor for reovirus. *Cell*. 2001;104(3):441–451. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11239401
490. Bikard D, Marraffini LA. Innate and adaptive immunity in bacteria: mechanisms of programmed genetic variation to fight bacteriophages. *Curr Opin Immunol*. 2012;24(1):15–20. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22079134
491. Spits H, Cupedo T. Innate lymphoid cells: emerging insights in development, lineage relationships, and function. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 2012;30:647–675. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22224763
492. Weaver CT, Hatton RD. Interplay between the TH17 and TReg cell lineages: a (co-)evolutionary perspective. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2009;9(12):883–889. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19935807
493. Flajnik MF. All GOD's creatures got dedicated mucosal immunity. *Nat Immunol*. 2010;11(9):777–779. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20720582
494. McFall-Ngai M. Adaptive immunity: care for the community. *Nature*. 2007;445(7124):153. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17215830
495. Calderon L, Boehm T. Synergistic, context-dependent, and hierarchical functions of epithelial components in thymic microenvironments. *Cell*. 2012;149(1):159–172. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22464328
496. Lakkis FG, Dellaporta SL, Buss LW. Allorecognition and chimerism in an invertebrate model organism. *Organogenesis*. 2008;4(4): 236–240.
497. Barber MR, Aldridge JR Jr, Webster RG, Magor KE. Association of RIG-I with innate immunity of ducks to influenza. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2010;107(13):5913–5918. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20308570
498. Flajnik MF, Kasahara M. Comparative genomics of the MHC: glimpses into the evolution of the adaptive immune system. *Immunity*. 2001;15(3):351–362. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11567626
499. Kim HM, Oh SC, Lim KJ, et al. Structural diversity of the hagfish variable lymphocyte receptors. *J Biol Chem*. 2007;282(9):6726–6732. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17192264
500. Hallbook F, Wilson K, Thorndyke M, Olinski RP. Formation and evolution of the chordate neurotrophin and Trk receptor genes. *Brain Behav Evol*. 2006;68(3):133–144. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16912467

SECTION III

Immunoglobulins and B Lymphocytes

CHAPTER 5

Immunoglobulins: Structure and Function

Harry W. Schroeder Jr • David Wald • Neil S. Greenspan

INTRODUCTION

Immunoglobulins (Igs) are marked by a duality of structure and function.[1] In common with other members of the Ig superfamily,[2] they provide the immune system with a conserved set of effector molecules. These effectors can activate and fix complement and they can bind to Fc receptors on the surfaces of granulocytes, monocytes, platelets, and other components of the immune response. Both activation of complement and binding to Fc receptors can contribute to the induction or maintenance of inflammation. They also provide the immune system with a polyclonal set of diverse ligand binding sites, which allow Igs, as a population, to recognize an almost unlimited array of self- and non–self-antigens, which may range from compounds as fundamental to life as deoxyribonucleic acid to manmade molecules that could not have played a role in the evolution of the immune system.

Differential splicing allows individual Ig molecules to serve as either membrane-bound receptors for the B cell that allow antigen-specific activation or as soluble effectors, which act at a distance. In vivo, proper effector function requires more than just antigen-specific binding; it requires successful neutralization of the offending antigen while avoiding potentially pathogenic self-reactivity.

The receptor and effector functions of each individual Ig can be localized to a separate region or domain of the molecule. Each variable (V) or constant (C) domain consists of approximately 110 to 130 amino acids, averaging 12,000 to 13,000 kD. A typical light (L) chain will thus mass approximately 25 kD, and a three C domain Cγ H chain with its hinge will mass approximately 55 kD.

Immunoglobulins are Heterodimers

Igs are heterodimeric proteins, consisting of two H and two L chains (Figs. 5.1 and 5.2). The eponymous Ig domain serves as the basic building block for both chains. Each of the chains contains a single amino-terminal V Ig domain and one, three, or four carboxy-terminal C Ig domains. H chains contain three or four C domains, whereas L chains contain only one. H chains with three C domains tend to include a spacer hinge region between the first (C_H1) and second (C_H2).[3]

At the primary sequence level, Igs are marked by the interspersion of regions of impressive sequence variability with regions of equally impressive sequence conservation. The V domains demonstrate the greatest molecular heterogeneity, with some regions including non-germline–encoded variability and others exhibiting extensive germline conservation across 500 million years of evolution.[4] The molecular heterogeneity of the V domains permits the creation of binding sites, or *paratopes*, which can discriminate between antigens that may differ by as little as one atom. Thus it is the V domains that encode the receptor function and define the monovalent specificity of the antibody. The H chain C_H1 domain, which is immediately adjacent to the V, associates with the single L chain C domain. Together, the C_H1 and C_L domains provide a stable platform for the paired set of V_H and V_L domains, which create the antigen binding site. The distal C_H2 and C_H3 domains, for those antibodies with a hinge, or the C_H3 and C_H4 domains, for those with an extra (C_H2) domain, typically encode the effector functions of soluble antibody. Each of these Ig C_H domains is encoded by a separate exon. Although the sequences of the individual C_H domains are constant within the individual (and nearly constant within a species), they can vary greatly across species boundaries. The carboxy-terminal C_H domain encodes a secretory tail, which permits the antibody to exit the cell.

Also encoded within the germline sequence of each C_H gene are two membrane/cytoplasmic tail domain exons, termed M1 and M2. Alternative splicing removes the secretory sequence typically encoded by the terminal C_H3 or C_H4 domain and replaces it with the peptides encoded by the M1 and M2 exons, converting a secretory antibody to a

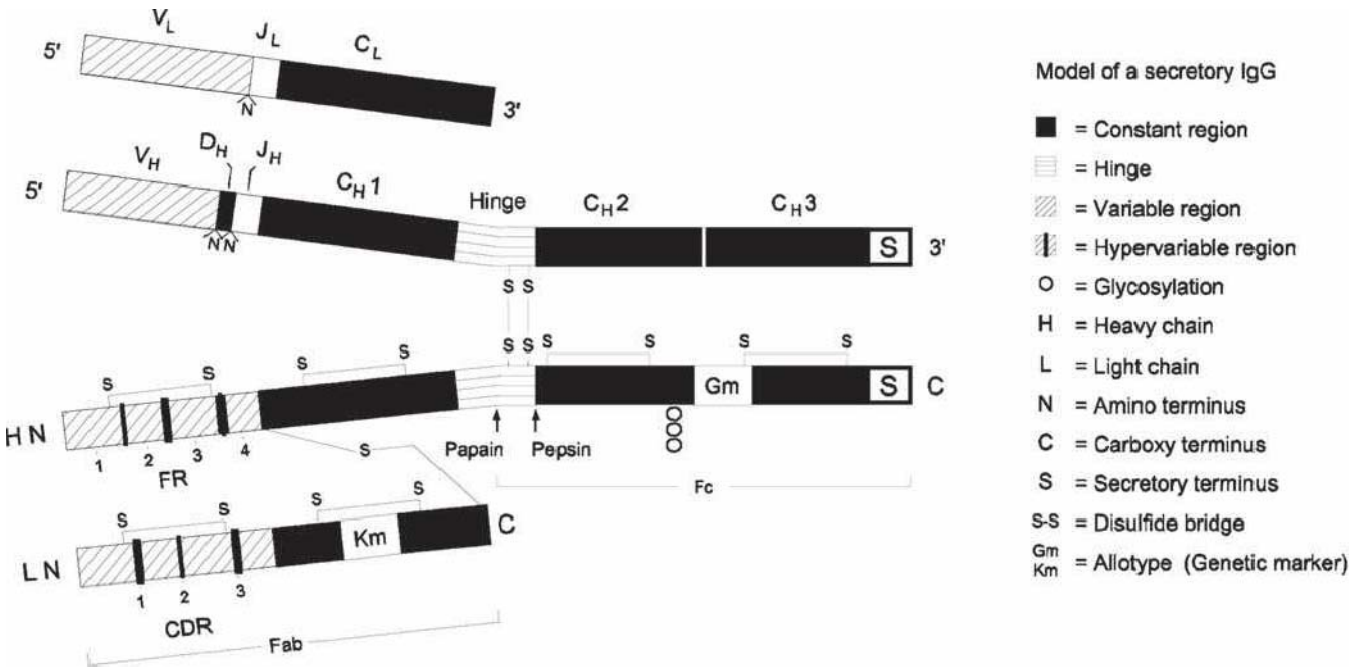


FIG. 5.1. Model of a Secreted Immunoglobulin (Ig)G. The germline exonic derivation of the sequence is shown at the *top*, and the protein structure is shown at the *bottom*. The location of the various cysteine residues that help hold both the individual domains and the various Ig subunits together are illustrated. Papain digests IgG molecules above the cysteine residues in the hinge that holds the two H chains together yielding two Fab molecules and an Fc, whereas pepsin digests below releasing an $(Fab)'_2$ fragment and two individual Fcs (which are typically degraded to smaller peptide fragments). The location of some allotypic variants is illustrated. C_H2 domains can be variably glycosylated, which can also affect Ig structure and effector function.

membrane-embedded receptor.[5] Between species, the membrane/cytoplasmic tail region is the most highly conserved portion of the C_H domains, which befits its role as a link to the intracellular signal transduction pathways that ultimately regulate B-cell function.

Paratopes and Epitopes

The immunoglobulin-antigen interaction takes place between the paratope, the site on the Ig at which the antigen binds, and the *epitope*, which is the site on the antigen that is bound. It is important to appreciate that antibodies do not recognize antigens; they recognize epitopes borne on antigens.[6] This makes it possible for Igs to discriminate between two closely related antigens, each of which can be viewed as a collection of epitopes. It also is one scenario that permits the same antibody to bind divergent antigens that share equivalent epitopes, a phenomenon referred to as *cross-reactivity*.

It has been estimated that triggering of effector functions in solution typically requires aggregation of three or more effector domains, and thus tends to involve the binding of three or more epitopes.[6] For antigens encoding repeating epitope structures, such as polysaccharides or antigen aggregates, binding of a single polymeric Ig molecule carrying multiple effector domains, such as pentameric IgM, can be sufficient to induce effector function. For antigens encoding diverse epitopes, which is more typical of monodisperse single-domain molecules in solution, triggering of inflammatory effector functions may require the binding of a diverse set of Ig molecules, all binding the same antigen, but at different epitopes.[7]

Membrane and Secretory Immunoglobulin

Alternative splicing allows Igs to serve either as soluble antibodies or as membrane-bound antigen receptors. In their role as antibodies, Igs are released into the circulation from where they may traffic into the tissues and across mucosal surfaces. In their role as the B-cell antigen receptor, they are anchored to the membrane by means of their M1:M2 transmembrane domain. Soluble antibodies can also be pressed into service as heterologous cell surface antigen receptors by means of their attachment to membrane-bound Fc receptors.[8] This permits the power of antibody recognition to be extended to nonlymphoid cells, such as Fc-expressing granulocytes, macrophages, and mast cells. The major difference between these two forms of cell surface receptors is that Igs as B-cell antigen receptors provide a monoclonal receptor for each B cell, whereas antibodies bound to Fc receptors endow the cell with a polyclonal set of antigen recognition molecules. This gives greater flexibility and increases the power of the effector cells to recognize antigens with multiple non-self–epitopes.

Isotypes and Idiotypes

Igs can also serve as antigens for other Igs. Immunization of heterologous species with monoclonal antibodies (or a restricted set of Igs) has shown that Igs contain both common

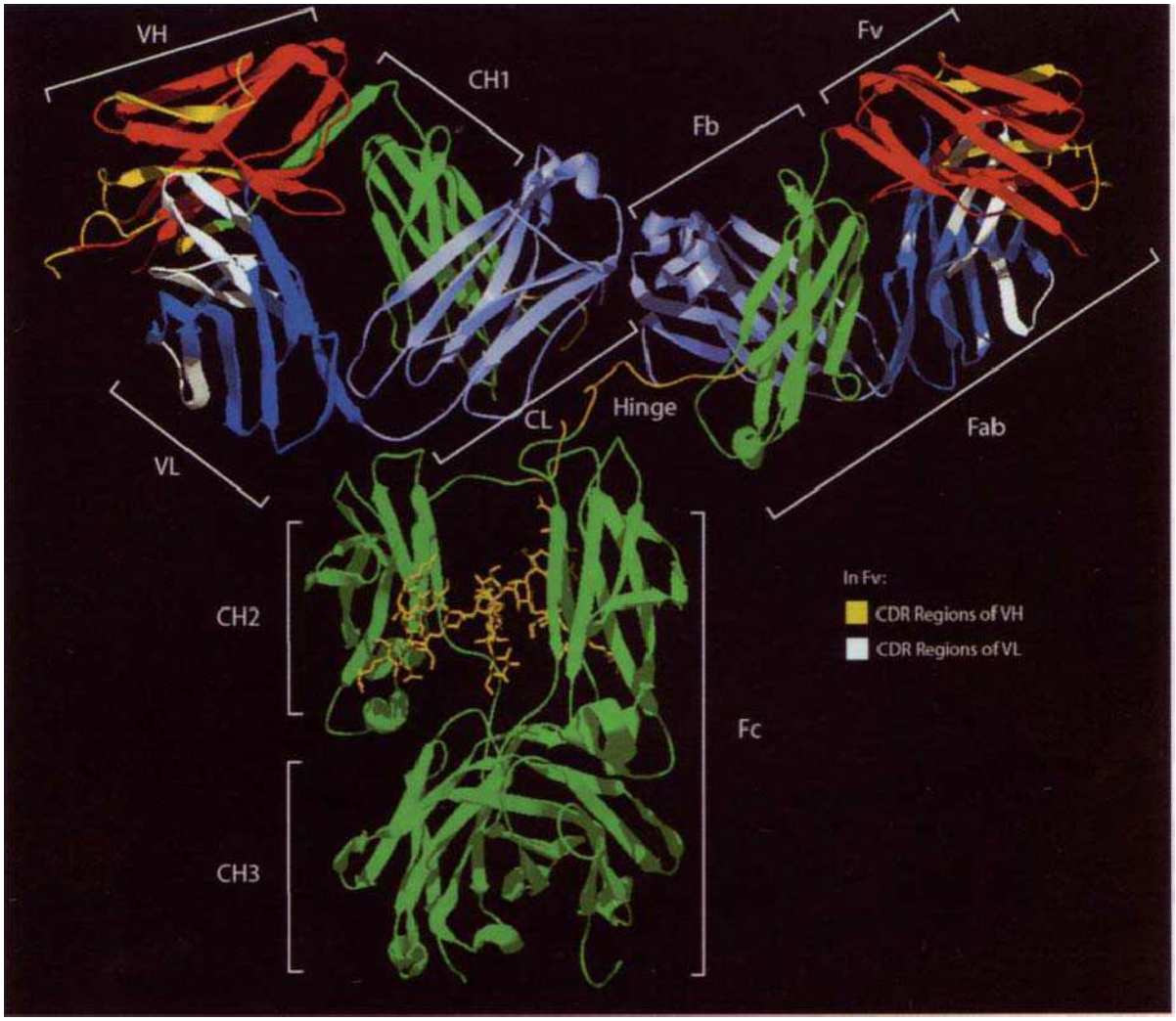


FIG. 5.2. Ribbon Diagram of a Complete Immunoglobulin (Ig)G1 Crystal (1 hzh in the protein data bank [PDB] from Data of Harris et al.[202]). The major regions of the Ig are illustrated. The heavy-chain constant regions (*green*) also include the hinge (*yellow*) between the first two domains. Cγ2 is glycosylated (also seen in *yellow*). The heavy- and light-chain variable regions (*red* and *dark blue*, respectively) are N terminal to the heavy- (*green*) and light-chain (*light blue*) constant regions. Complementarity determining region loops in the heavy- and light-chain variable regions (*yellow* and *white*) are illustrated as well.

and individual antigenic determinants. Epitopes recognized within the V portion of the antibodies used for immunization that identify individual determinants are termed *idiotypes* (Fig. 5.3), whereas epitopes specific for the constant portion are termed *isotypes*. Recognition of these isotypes first allowed grouping of Igs into recognized classes. Each class of Ig defines an individual set of C domains that corresponds to a single H chain constant region gene. For example, IgM utilizes μ H chain C domains and IgE utilizes ε C domains.

Some V domain epitopes derive from the germline sequence of V gene exons. These shared epitopes, commonly referred to as *public idiotopes* or *cross-reactive idiotypes* (see Fig. 5.3), are, from a genetic perspective, isotypic because they can be found on many Igs of different antigen-binding specificities that derive from the same germline V region. Examples include the cross-reactive idiotypes found on monoclonal IgM rheumatoid factors derived from individuals with mixed cryoglobulinemia, each of which can be linked to the use of individual V gene segments.[9]

Classes and Allotypes

Each of the various classes and subclasses of Igs has its own unique role to play in the immunologic defense of the individual. For example, IgA is the major class of Ig present in all external secretions. It is primarily responsible for protecting mucosal surfaces. IgG subclasses bind Fc receptors differently, and thus vary in effector function.[10] Determinants common to subsets of individuals within a species, yet differing between other members of that species, are termed *allotypes* and define inherited polymorphisms that result from allelic forms of immunoglobulin C (less commonly, V) genes.[11]

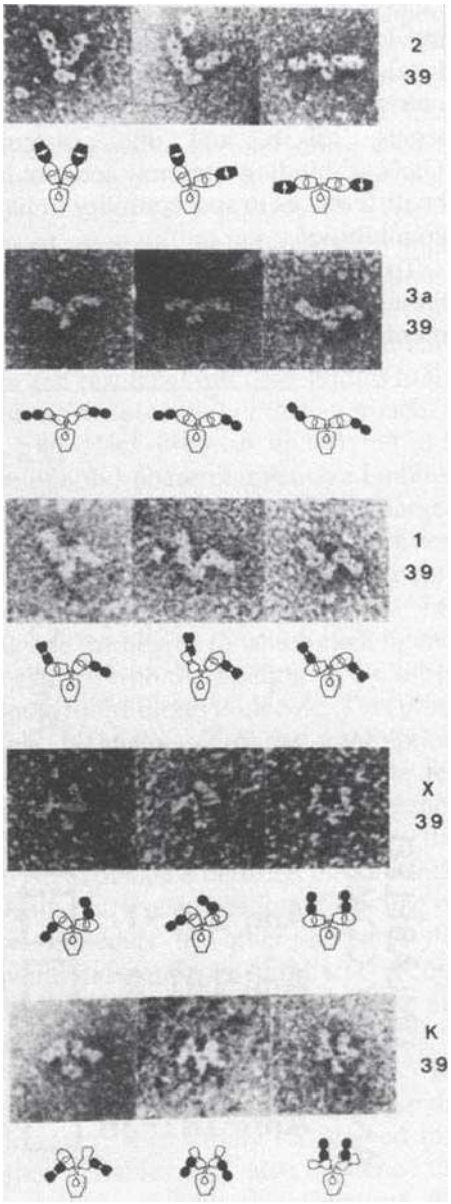


FIG. 5.3. Electron micrographs (*top*; ×350,000) and interpretive diagrams (*below*) of murine mAb hybridoma group A carbohydrate (HGAC) 39 (specific for the cell wall polysaccharide of *Streptococcus pyogenes*) in complex with anti-idiotypic mAb Fab fragments. HGAC 39 is represented in the diagrams as an open figure, and the Fab anti-Id probes are represented as solid figures. The Fab arms of the antibody targets and probes are drawn to indicate their rotational orientation as planar (oval with open center), intermediate (bone shape with or without central opening), or perpendicular ("dumbbell shaped"). Different complexes illustrate the range of Fab-Fab angles made possible by segmental flexibility. 1, anti-Idl-1 Fab; 2, anti-Idl-2 Fab; 39, HGAC 39; 3a, anti-Idl-3a Fab; K, anti-Cκ Fab; X, anti-IdX Fab. Idl designates an individual idiotope, and IdX, a crossreactive idiotope. Antibody complexes were stained with 2% uranyl formate as described by Roux et al.[108] Reproduced from Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences (from Roux et al.[108] with permission).

Glycosylation

N-linked carbohydrates can be found in all constant domains as well as in some variable domains.[12] The structure of the attached N-linked carbohydrate can vary greatly, depending on the degree of processing. These carbohydrates can play a major role in Ig function.[13] For example, human IgG molecules contain a conserved glycosylation site at Asn 297, which is buried between the C_H2 domains.[14] This oligosaccharide structure is almost as large as the C_H2 domain itself. O-linked sugars are also present in some Igs.[12] Human IgA1, but not IgA2, possesses a 13 amino acid hinge region that contains three to five O-linked carbohydrate moieties.[15] A deficiency in proper processing of these O-glycans can contribute to IgA nephropathy, which is a disease that is characterized by the presence of IgA1-containing immune complexes in the glomerular mesangium.[16]

A HISTORICAL PERSPECTIVE

The identification of Ig as a key component of the immune response began in the 19th century. This section describes the history of the identification of Ig and introduces fundamental terminology.

Antibodies and Antigens

Aristotle and his contemporaries attributed disease to an imbalance of the four vital humors: the blood, the phlegm, and the yellow and black biles.[17] In 1890, Behring (later, von Behring) and Kitasato reported the existence of an activity in the blood that could neutralize diphtheria toxin.[18] They showed that sera containing this humoral antitoxin activity would protect other animals exposed to the same toxin. Ehrlich, who was the first to describe how diphtheria toxin and antitoxin interact,[19] made glancing reference to "Antikörper" in a 1891 paper describing discrimination between two immune bodies, or substances.[20] The term antigen was first introduced by Deutsch in 1899. He later explained that antigen is a contraction of "Antisomatogen+-Immunkörperbildner," or that which induces the production of immune bodies (antibodies). Thus, the operational definition of antibody and antigen is a classic tautology.

Gamma Globulins

In 1939, Tiselius and Kabat immunized rabbits with ovalbumin and fractionated the immune serum by electrophoresis into albumin, alpha-goblulin, beta-globulin, and gamma-globulin fractions.[21] Absorption of the serum against ovalbumin depleted the gamma-globulin fraction, hence the terms immunoglobulin and IgG. "Sizing" columns were used to separate Igs into those that were "heavy" (IgM), "regular" (IgA, IgE, IgD, IgG), and "light" (light chain dimers). Immunoelectrophoresis subsequently permitted identification of the various Ig classes and subclasses.

Fab and Fc

In 1949, Porter first used papain to digest IgG molecules into two types of fragments, termed Fab and Fc (Table 5.1).[22]

TABLE 5.1 Definitions of Key Immunoglobulin Structure Nomenclature

Fc	A constant region dimer lacking C_H1
Fab	A light chain dimerized to V_H-C_H1 resulting from papain cleavage; this is monomeric because papain cuts above the hinge disulfide bond(s)
$F(ab)'_2$	A dimer of Fab' resulting from pepsin cleavage below the hinge disulfides; this is bivalent and can precipitate antigen
Fab'	A monomer resulting from mild reduction of $F(ab)'_2$: an Fab with part of the hinge
Fd	The heavy chain portion of Fab (V_H-C_H1) obtained following reductive denaturation of Fab
Fv	The variable part of Fab: a V_H-V_L dimer
Fb	The constant part of Fab: a C_H1-C_L dimer
pFc'	A C_H3 dimer

From Carayannopoulos and Capra[208] with permission.

Papain digested IgG into two Fab fragments, each of which could bind antigen, and a single Fc fragment. Nisonoff developed the use of pepsin to split IgG into an Fc fragment and a single dimeric $F(ab)_2$ that could cross-link antigens.[23] Edelman broke disulfide bonds in IgG and was the first to show that IgG consisted of two H and two L chains.[24]

Two Genes, One Polypeptide

The portion of the constant domain encoded by the Fc fragment was the first to be sequenced and then analyzed at the structural level. It could be readily crystallized when chilled. The heterogeneity of the V domain precluded sequence and crystallographic analysis of an intact Ig chain until Bence-Jones myeloma proteins were identified as clonal, isolated Ig light chains. These intact chains could be purified and obtained in large quantities, which finally permitted rational analysis of antibody structure and function.[25] Recognition of the unique nature of a molecule consisting of one extremely variable V domain and one highly conserved C domain led to the then-heretical Dreyer-Bennett proposal of "two genes, one polypeptide,"[26] which was subsequently and spectacularly confirmed by Tonegawa.[27]

THE IMMUNOGLOBULIN DOMAIN

The Ig domain is the core unit that defines members of the Ig superfamily (reviewed in Williams and Barclay[2] and Harpaz and Chothia[28]). This section describes the Ig domain in detail.

The Immunoglobulin Superfamily

Each Ig domain consists of two sandwiched β-pleated sheets "pinned" together by a disulfide bridge between two conserved cysteine residues (Fig. 5.4). The structure of the β-pleated sheets in an Ig domain varies depending on the number and conformation of strands in each sheet. Two such structures, V and C, are typically found in Igs. C-type domains, which are the most compact, have seven antiparallel strands distributed as three strands in the first sheet and four strands in the second. Each of these strands has been given an alphabetical designation ranging from amino terminal A to carboxy-terminal G. Side chains positioned to lie sandwiched between the two strands tend to be nonpolar in nature. This hydrophobic core helps maintain the stability of the structure to the point that V domains engineered to replace the conserved cysteines with serine residues retain their ability to bind antigen. The residues that populate the external surface of the Ig domain and the residues that form the loops that link strands can vary greatly in sequence. These solvent exposed residues offer multiple targets for docking with other molecules.

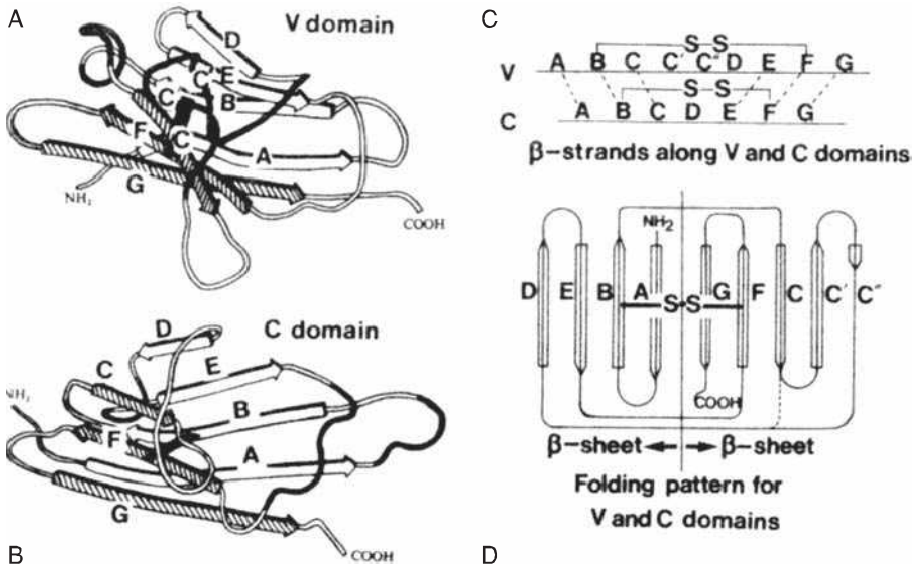


FIG. 5.4. The Immunoglobulin Domain. A: A typical variable domain structure. Note the projection of the C-C′ strands and loop away from the core. **B:** A typical compact constant domain structure. **C:** The cysteines used to pin the two b-sheets together are found in the B and F strands. **D:** The folding pattern for variable and constant domains.[2]

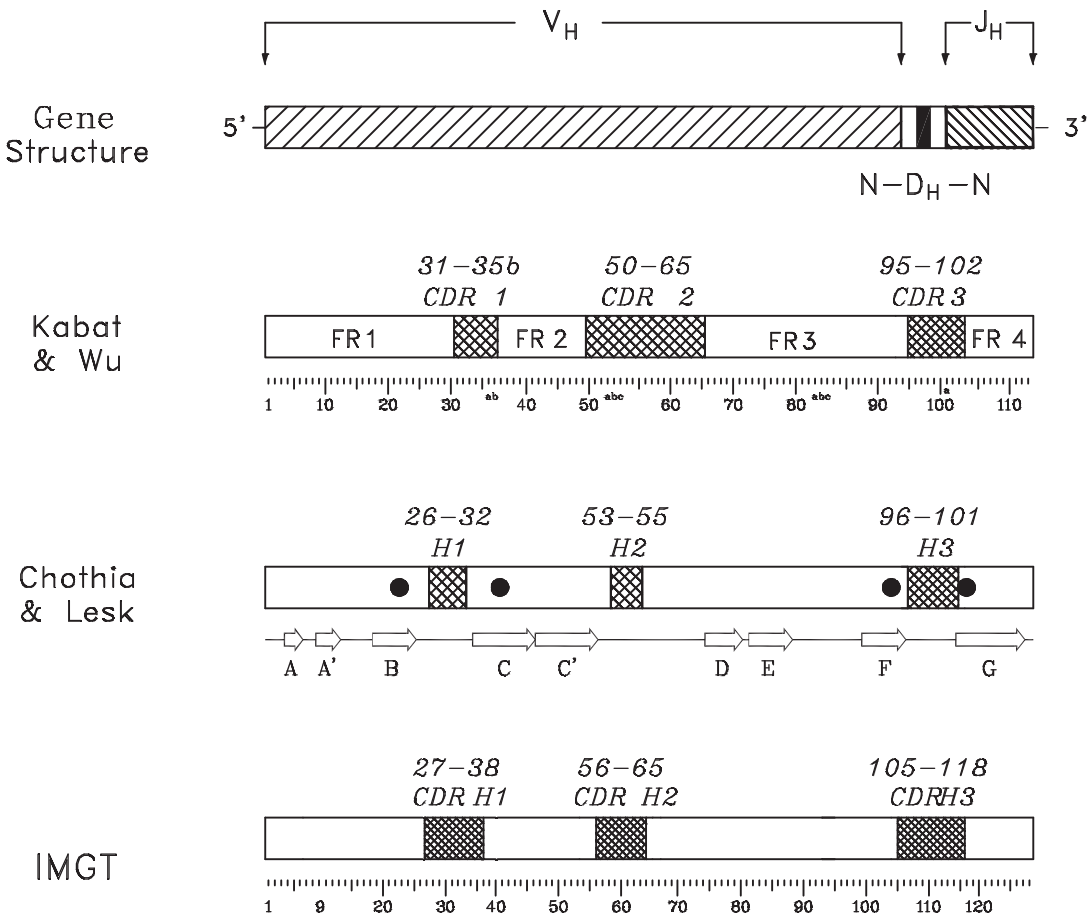


FIG. 5.5. Sequence Conservation and Hypervariability within a Heavy Chain Variable (V) Domain. The primary sequence the V domain can be divided into four regions of sequence conservation, termed framework regions (FRs), and three regions of hypervariability, termed complementarity determining regions (CDRs). A schematic of the genomic origin of the variable domain is shown at the top of the figure. The classic separation of the sequence into FR and CDR by Kabat et al.[31] is shown below the gene structure. The letter designation for individual β strands is given beneath the Chothia and Lesk nomenclature,[32] which focused more on structure. The positions of each of the four invariant residues of the V_H chain (FR1 Cys22, FR2 Trp36, FR3 Cys92, and FR4 Trp103) are shown as *darkened circles* on the Chothia and Lesk model. The ImMunoGeneTics information system® designation has attempted to rationalize sequence variability with structure and is the current nomenclature of choice.[33]

The V Domain

V-type domains add two additional antiparallel strands to the first sheet, creating a five strand–four strand distribution. Domain stability results from the tight packing of alternately inward-pointing residue side chains enriched for the presence of hydrophobic moieties to create a hydrophobic domain core. The H and L variable domains are held together primarily through noncovalent interaction between the inner faces of the β sheets.[29,30]

Early comparisons of the primary sequences of the V domains of different antibodies identified four intervals of relative sequence stability, termed framework regions (FRs), which were separated by three hypervariable intervals, termed complementarity determining regions (CDRs) (Figs. 5.5 and 5.6).[31] The exact location of these intervals has been adjusted over the years, first by a focus on the primary sequence,[31] then by a focus on the three-dimensional structure,[32] and, more recently, by a consensus integration of the two approaches by the international ImMunoGeneTics information system® (IMGT)[33] (see Fig. 5.5). (For students of the Ig repertoire, IMGT maintains an extremely useful website, http://www.imgt.org, which contains a large database of sequences as well as a multiplicity of software tools.)

The C and C' strands that define a V domain form FR2. These strands project away from the core of the molecule (see Figs. 5.4 and 5.6) where they take on a conserved structure that is parallel and opposite to the FR2 of the companion V and adjacent to the FR4 of the complementary chain. Approximately 50% of the interdomain contacts in the hydrophobic core of the V domain are formed by contacts between the FR2 of one chain and the FR4 of the complementary chain.[30] Another 30% to 45% is contributed by contacts between the CDR3 and the FR2 or CDR3 of the complementary domain. The overall interdomain contact includes between 12 and 21 residues from the L chain V domain and 16 to 22 residues from H chain V domain, most of which are contributed by the FR2, CDR3, and FR4 regions.

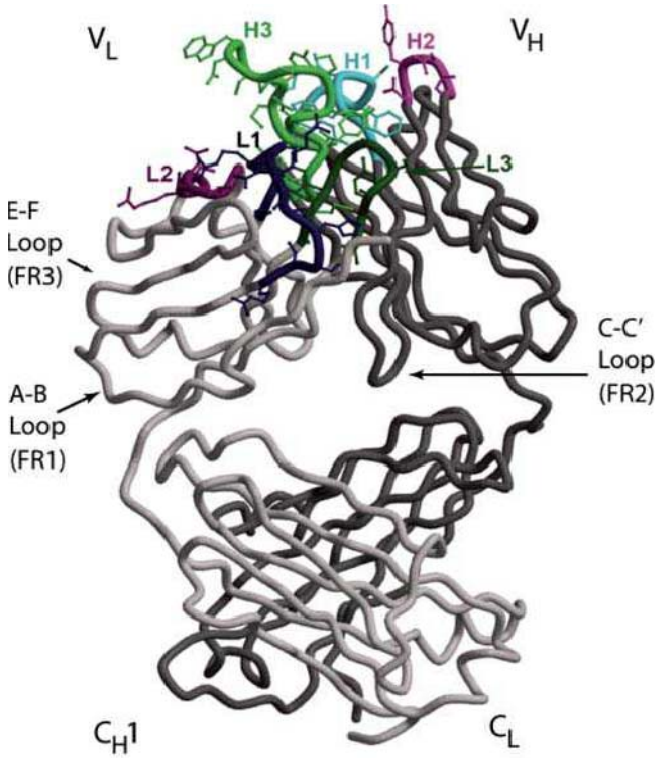


FIG. 5.6. The Structure of an Fab. The antigen-binding site is formed by the heavy (H) and light (L) chain B-C, C′-C″, and F-G loops. Each loop encodes a separate complementarity determining region (CDR). The location of CDRs H1, H2, H3, L1, L2, and L3 are shown. The opposing H and L chain C-C′ strands and loop help stabilize the interaction between VH and VL. This C-C′ structure is encoded by the second V framework region, FR2. The inclusion of this structure permits the variable (V) domains to interact in a head-to-head fashion. The E-F strands and loop are encoded by the FR3 region and lie directly below the antigen-binding site. The A-B strands and loop encode FR1 and lie between the CH1 and CL domains and the rest of the Vs. The beta sheet strands of the CH1 and CL domains rest crosswise to each other. The illustration is modified.[203]

There are approximately 40 crucial sequence sites that influence variable domain inter- and intradomain interactions.[32,34] Four of these sites are relatively invariant: the two cysteines that form the disulphide bridge between the beta sheets and two tryptophan (phenylalanine in Jκ) residues, one near the beginning of the C strand and the second near the beginning of the G strand, that pack against the bridge to add stability. Beyond these and other common core residues, Ig domains can vary widely in their primary amino acid sequences. However, a common secondary and tertiary structure characteristic of the core Ig V domain tends to be preserved.

FAB STRUCTURE AND FUNCTION

Introduction

It is the Fab domain that allows Ig to discriminate between antigens. The Fab is individually manufactured to precise specifications by individual developing B cells. It shows an amazing array of binding capabilities while maintaining a highly homologous scaffold. This section describes the characteristics of the Fab domain, its component V domains, and the *paratope*, which is the part of the Fab that actually binds antigen.

Fab, Fv, and Fb

The antigen-binding fragment (Fab) is a heterodimer that contains an L chain in its entirety and the V and C_H1 portions of the H chain (see Figs. 5.1 and 5.6). The Fab in turn can be divided into a variable fragment (Fv) composed of the V_H and V_L domains, and a constant fragment (Fb) composed of the C_L and C_H1 domains (see Table 5.1). Single Fv fragments can be produced in the laboratory through genetic engineering techniques.[35] They recapitulate the monovalent antigen binding characteristics of the original, parent antibody. Other than minor allotypic differences, the sequences of the constant domains do not vary for a given H chain or L chain isotype. The eponymous V domain, however, is quite variable.

Generation of Immunoglobulin Variable Domains by Recombination

Ig V domain genes are assembled in an ordered fashion by a series of recombination events.[27,36–39] The elegant mechanisms used for the assembly of these genes and the Fvs they create are fully discussed in Chapter 6. However, in order to understand the relationship between antibody structure and function, a brief review is in order.

In BALB/c mice, Ig V assembly begins with the joining of one of 13 diversity (D_H) gene segments to one of four joining (J_H) gene segments. This is followed by the joining of one of 110 functional variable (V_H) gene segments.[40–42] Each D_H gene segment has the potential to rearrange in any one of six reading frames (RFs), three by deletion and three by inversion. Thus, these 127 gene segments can come together in 3.4×10^4 combinations. The numbers of gene segments can vary quite widely between different mouse strains, but the process of assembly and the multiplicative effect of combinatorial diversity is the same.

In the final assembled V domain, the V_H gene segment encodes FRs H1 to H3 and CDRs H1 and H2 in their entirety (see Figs. 5.1 and 5.5), and the J_H encodes FR-H4. CDR-H3 is created de novo in developing B cells by the joining process. CDR-H3 contains the D_H gene segment in its entirety, as well as portions of the V_H and J_H gene segments.

After a functional H chain has been created, L chain assembly begins. Mice contain two L chain loci, κ and λ. In C57BL/6 mice, the κ locus includes five Jκ gene segments and 140 Vκ gene segments, of which 4 and 73 have been shown to be functional, respectively.[43–45] This provides 292 combinations. There is only one Cκ.[46] The BALB/c λ locus contains three Vλ, three functional Jλ, and two or three functional Cλ chains.[47,48] The λ constant domains are functionally indistinguishable from each other. Due to gene organization, the λ repertoire provides at most seven combinations. Each V_L encodes FRs L1 to L3, CDR L1 and L2, and two thirds of CDR-L3 (see Fig. 5.1). Each J_L encodes one-third of CDR-L3 and FR4 in its entirety. Any one

H chain can combine with any one L chain, thus 211 V, D, and J gene segments can provide approximately 1×10^7 different H:L combinations.

At the V→D and D→J junctions, the potential for CDR-H3 diversity is amplified by imprecision in the site of joining, allowing exonucleolytic loss as well as palindromic (P junction) gain of terminal V_H, D_H, or J_H germline sequence. B cells that develop after birth express the enzyme terminal deoxynucleotidyl transferase (TdT) during the H chain rearrangement process.[27,36] TdT catalyzes the relatively random incorporation of non-germline–encoded nucleotides between V_H and D_H, and between D_H and J_H. Each three nucleotides of N addition increase the potential diversity of CDR-H3 20-fold. Thus sequences with nine nucleotides of N addition each between the V→D and D→J junctions would enhance the potential for diversity by $(20)^6$, or by 6×10^7; six-fold greater than the potential diversity provided by VDJ gene segment combinations. These genomic gymnastics permit the length of CDR-H3 to vary from 5 to 20 amino acids among developing B cells in BALB/c bone marrow.[49] Together, imprecision in the site of VDJ joining and N addition provides the opportunity to create nearly random CDR-H3 sequence, potentially freeing the CDR-H3 repertoire from germline sequence constraints. Although a limited amount of N addition is observed between V_L and J_L in human,[50,51] N addition in murine L chains is distinctly uncommon. Moreover, the length of CDR-L3 appears to be under relatively strict control, greatly limiting the potential for somatic L chain junctional diversity.[48,50] Thus, CDR-H3 represents the greatest focus for the initial somatic diversification of the antibody repertoire.

Segmental Conservation and Diversity within the V Domain

Although the large numbers of V gene segments might give the impression of a smooth incremental range of available diversity, multigene families are thought to evolve in concert through mechanisms of gene conversion, and V gene segments are no exception. Sequence relationships allow grouping them into families and clans of sequences that share nucleotide homology,[52] as well as structural features. Close inspection of the V_H gene repertoire has shown that these family relationships reflect segmental gene conversion coupled with selection for function.[4,53,54]

Due to the need to maintain a common secondary and tertiary core Ig V domain structure capable of associating randomly with a complementary V chain to form a stable Fv, the core sequence of FR2, which is encoded by the V_H gene segment, and the core sequence of FR4, which is encoded by the J_H gene segment, are highly conserved among all Ig V domains. Conversely, the need to generate a diverse repertoire of antigen-binding sites has led to extensive diversity in the CDR-1 and CDR-2 intervals. One might presume that the FR1 and FR3 intervals, which form the external surface of the antibody, would not be under any particular constraints, but sequence comparisons suggest otherwise.

Given the need to diversify the CDRs and the need to preserve FR2, it is not surprising that family identity, which might reflect ancestral relationships, can be assigned by the extent of FR1 and FR3 similarity.[55] Of these, FR1 appears to be under the greatest constraints, with V_H gene segments belonging to different families both within and across species barriers exhibiting extensive similarities in FR1 sequence (Fig. 5.7). Sequence similarities in FR1 and, to a lesser extent, FR3 allow grouping of human and murine V_H families into three clans of related sequences, presumably reflecting an early divergence in sequence from a primordial V_H gene sequence (Fig. 5.8).

Constraints on the Sequence and Structure of Variable-Encoded Complemenatarity Determining Regions

The antigen-binding site of an Ig is formed by the juxtaposition of the six hypervariable H and L chain V domain

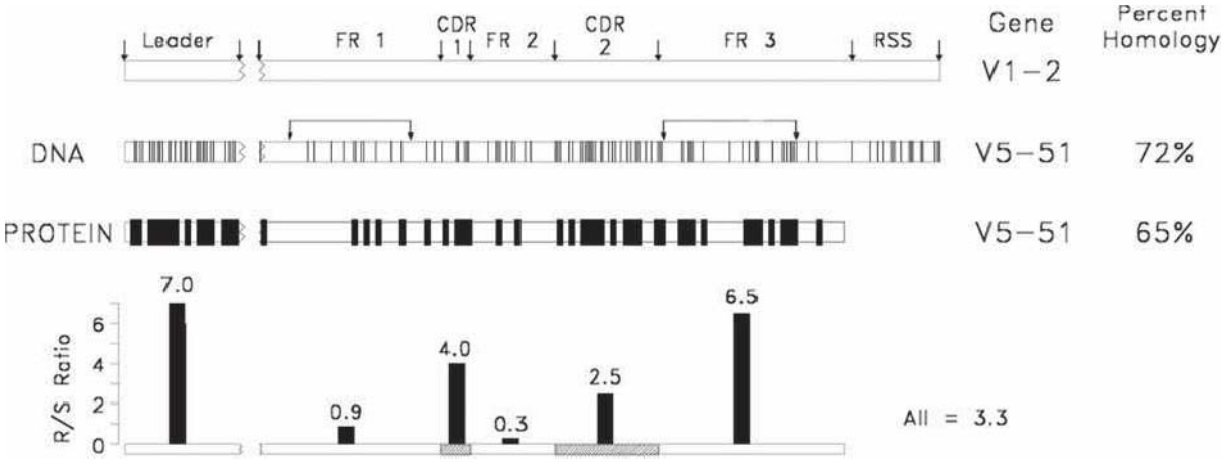


FIG. 5.7. A comparison of two human Clan I V_H sequences that belong to different V_H families (modified[4]). Shown is a comparison of the deoxyribonucleic acid and amino acid sequences of the V5-51 and V1-2 gene segments. Each line depicts a divergence in a nucleotide or amino acid at that position. Shown at the bottom is a replacement/silent site substitution analysis by interval. Random mutation tends to exhibit an R/S ratio of 2.9. The smaller the ratio, the greater the preservation of sequence. The intervals identified by the arrows predict the family and clan of origin.

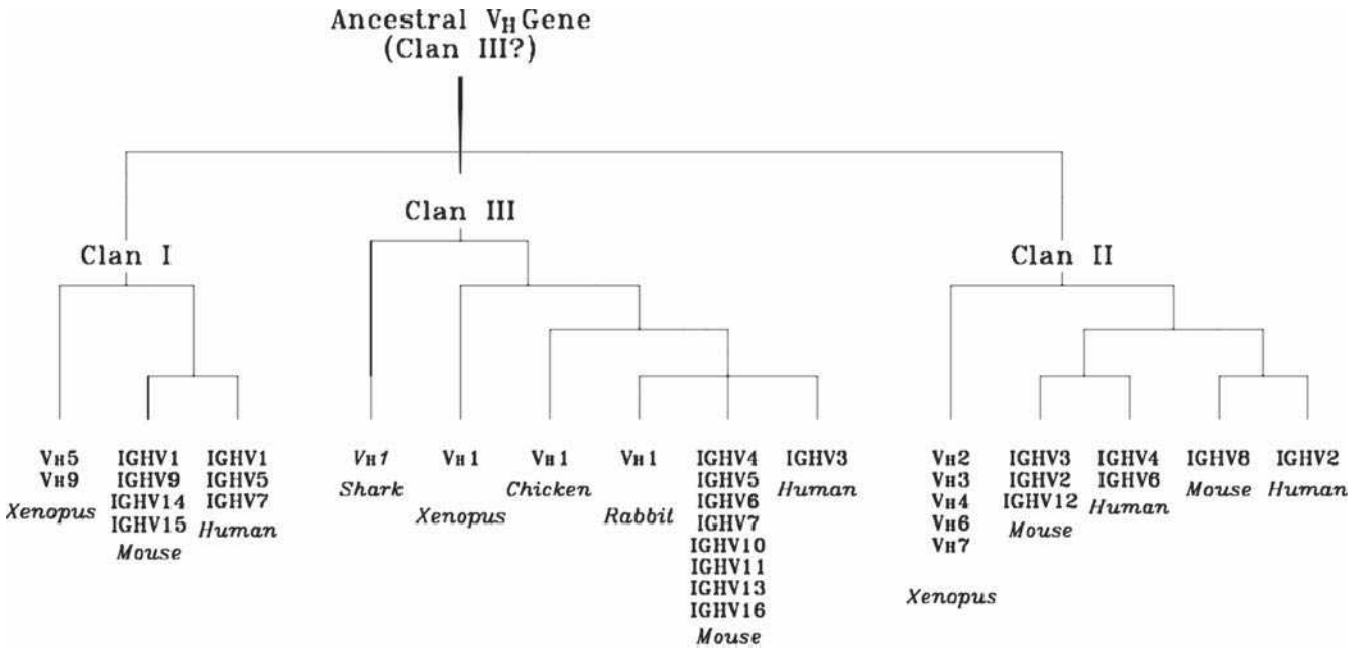


FIG. 5.8. Evolutionary Relationships among Vertebrate V_H Families. The sizes or relative placements of the evolutionary connecting lines are not to scale. V_H sequences from all mammalian species analyzed to date can be placed into one of these three clans (modified[4]).

intervals: CDRs-H1, -H2, and -H3; and CDRs-L1, -L2, and -L3.[31] The CDR sequences of V gene segments tend to be enriched for codons where mutations maximize replacement substitutions.[56] This includes the RGYW motif that facilitates somatic hypermutation.[57,58] While evolution appears to favor CDR1 and CDR2 sequences that facilitate codon diversity, it also appears to preserve specific loop structures.

Although there is great variation in the sequence and size of these CDRs, it has been shown that five of them, CDR-H3 being the notable exception, possess one of a small set of main-chain conformations termed canonical structures.[32,34,59–62] Each canonical structure is determined by the loop size and by the presence of certain residues at key positions in both the loop and framework regions. It can be calculated that the total number of possible combinations of canonical structures, or structure classes, is 300.[63] However, only 10 of these combinations, or classes, are sufficient to describe the majority of human and mouse Fab sequences. Among specific classes, the lengths of CDR-H3 and -L1 appear to correlate with the type of recognized antigen. Antibodies with short loops in -H2 and -L1 appear to be preferentially specific for large antigens (proteins), whereas antibodies with long loops in -H2 and -L1 appear to be preferentially specific for small molecules (haptens).[63]

Given that the sequence and structure of the framework regions, which define families, influences the canonical structure of V_H-encoded CDRs, it is not surprising that the structure repertoire of canonical structures is strongly associated with family and clan identity.[64] This implies restrictions to the random diversification of the hypervariable loop structures (canonical structures) and their combinations within the same V_H gene segment (canonical structure classes). It further suggests evolutionarily and structurally imposed restrictions operating to counteract the random diversification of these CDRs.

Diversity and Constraints on the Sequence and Structure of CDR-H3

The combination of VDJ assortment, variation in the site of gene segment rearrangement, and N nucleotide addition makes CDR-H3 the most variable of the six hypervariable regions. In some cases, the sequence of CDR-H3 appears designed to provide optimal flexibility.[65] Correspondingly, it has been more difficult to assign canonical structures to the CDR-H3 loops similar to those observed for the V-encoded CDRs. However, insight into a gradient of possible structures has been gained.

CDR-H3 can be separated into a base, which is adjacent to the frameworks, and a loop. The base tends to be stabilized by two common residues, an arginine at Kabat position 94 (IMGT 106) and an aspartic acid at Kabat 101 (IMGT 116).[32,33] These form a salt bridge which, together with the adjacent residues, tends to create one of three backbone conformations, termed kinked, extrakinked, and extended.[66] In some sequences with kinked or extrakinked bases, it is possible to predict whether an intact hydrogen-bond ladder may be formed within the loop of the CDR-H3 region, or whether the hydrogen-bond ladder is likely to be broken.[67,68] However, for many CDR-H3 sequences, especially those that are longer, current tools provide less than optimal predictions for the structures of individual CDR-H3s.

Despite the potential for totally random sequence provided by the introduction of N nucleotides, close inspection has shown that the distribution of amino acids in the

CDR-H3 loop is enriched for tyrosine and glycine,[31,69] and relatively depleted of highly polar (charged) or nonpolar (hydrophobic) amino acids, although the precise pattern depends on the species of origin.[70] This pattern of amino acid utilization is established early in B-cell development, prior to the expression of Ig on the surface of the cell (Fig. 5.9)[49,71–73] and reflects evolutionary conservation of J_H and D_H gene segment sequences. In particular, although the absolute sequence of the D_H is not the same, the pattern of amino acid usage by RF is highly conserved. Of the six potential RFs, RF1 by deletion is enriched for tyrosine and glycine. RF2 and RF3 by deletion are enriched for hydrophobic amino acids, as they are by inversion. RF1 by inversion tends to encode highly polar, often positively charged, amino acids.[69] Various species use different mechanisms to bias for use of RF1 by deletion, to limit use of hydrophobic RFs, and to restrict or prevent use of RFs enriched for charged amino acids. Forced rearrangement into RFs with charged amino acids yields an altered repertoire enriched for charge and depleted of tyrosine and glycine.[71]

The distribution of CDR-H3 lengths can also be regulated both as a function of differentiation and as a function of ontogeny.[49,74] In association with long V-encoded CDRs, short CDR-H3s create an antigen-binding cavity at the center of the antigen-binding site, and CDRs of intermediate length can create an antigen-binding groove. Each species appears to prefer a specific range of CDR-H3 lengths.[75] Long CDR-H3s, which can create "knobs" at the center of the antigen-binding site, are unevenly distributed between species and reflect both divergence in germline sequence and somatic selection.

The Antigen-Binding Site is the Product of a Nested Gradient of Regulated Diversity

The tension between the need to conserve essential structure and the need to emphasize diversity in an environment subject to unpredictable antigen challenge appears to create a gradient of regulated diversity in the Fv. The most highly conserved components of the Fv are FR2 and FR4, which form the hydrophobic core of the V_H:V_L dimer (see Figs. 5.4 and 5.5). FR1, which in the H chain presents with three conserved structures, helps form the ball and socket joint between the V_H and C_H1. FR3, which in the H chain defines the family and provides 7 different structures in human versus 16 different structures in mouse, frames the antigen-binding site (Fig. 5.10). The V-encoded CDRs, -H1, -H2, -L1, -L2, and most of -L3, are programmed for diversity. However, conserved residues within these CDRs, which interact with V family–associated FR3 residues, constrain diversity within a

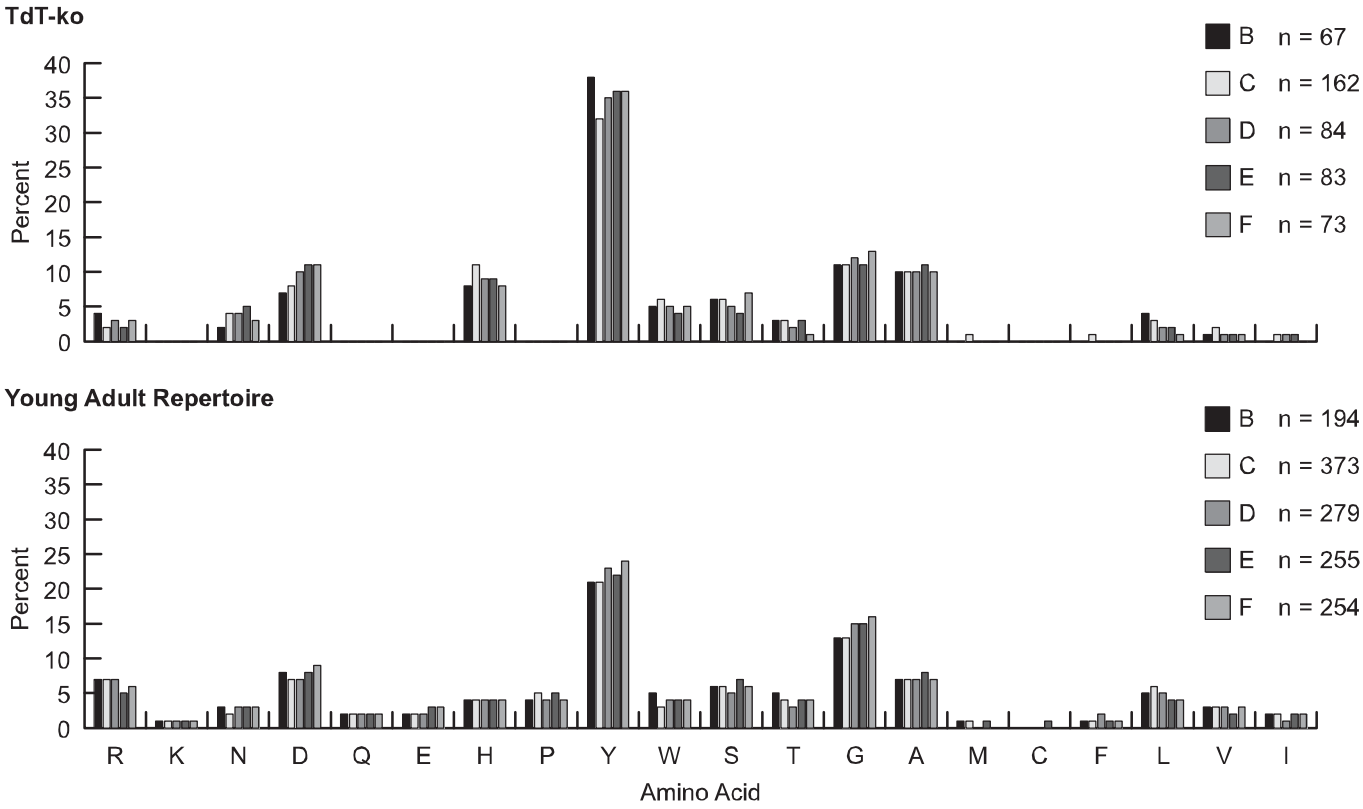


FIG. 5.9. Both in the absence or presence of N-addition, the preference for tyrosine and glycine in complementarity determining region-H3 begins early and intensifies with B-cell development. V_H7183DJCμ transcripts were cloned and isolated from fractions B (pro-B cells) through F (mature B cells) from the bone marrow of 8- to 10-week-old terminal deoxynucleotidyl transferase-sufficient and terminal deoxynucleotidyl transferase-knockout BALB/c mice.[73] The amino acids are arranged by relative hydrophobicity, as assessed by a normalized Kyte-Doolittle scale.[204,205] Use is reported as the percent of the sequenced population. The number of unique sequences per fraction is shown.

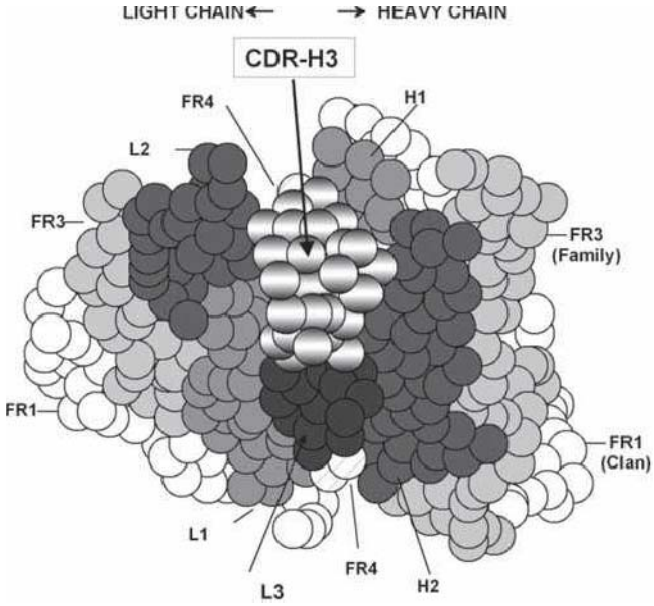


FIG. 5.10. Location and Generation of Complementarity Determining Region-H3. A: A cartoon of the classic antigen-binding site (modified[4]). Due to its central location, most antigens bound to the antibody will interact with complementarity determining region-H3.

preferred range of canonical structures. CDR-H3, the focus of junctional diversity, lies at the center of the antigen-binding site. The conformation of its base tends to fit within three basic structures. The loop varies greatly in sequence, yet still maintains a bias for the use of tyrosine and glycine. Thus, diversity increases with proximity to the tip of the antigen-binding site but appears to be held within regulated limits.

The extent and pattern of diversity in CDR-H3 can have a critical effect in the biologic function of Ig as a soluble effector molecule. Absence of N addition, with its enhancement of tyrosine and glycine usage (see Fig. 5.9) facilitates B-cell development, whereas enrichment for charged amino acids impairs it.[71,76,77] However, both the absence of N addition and enrichment for charged amino acids impair immune responses and protection in vivo.[71,76,78]

Somatic Hypermutation and Affinity Maturation

Following exposure to antigen and T-cell help, the V domain genes of germinal center lymphocytes can undergo mutation at a rate of up to 10^{-3} changes per base pair per cell cycle,[79] a process termed *somatic hypermutation*. Somatic hypermutation allows *affinity maturation* of the antibody repertoire in response to repeated immunization or exposure to antigen. Although affinity maturation often preserves the canonical structure of the CDR loops, the distribution of diversity appears to differ between the primary and antigen-selected repertoire.[80] In the primary repertoire, diversity is focused at the center of the binding site in CDR-H3. With hypermutation, somatic diversity appears to spread to the V-encoded CDRs in the next ring of the binding site (see Fig. 5.10), enabling a more custom-tailored fit.

Binding of "Superantigens" to Nonclassic Variable Domain Antigen-Binding Sites

Not all antigens bind to the paratope created by the classic antigen-binding site. Antigens that can bind to public idiotopes on V domain frameworks[81] and recognize large portions of the available repertoire are termed superantigens. There are indications that B cell superantigens influence the pathogenesis of some common infections, such as those caused by *Staphylococcus aureus*.

ANTIGEN-ANTIBODY INTERACTIONS

Technological advances in biomolecular structure determination, analysis of molecular dynamics, protein expression and mutagenesis, and biophysical investigation of receptor-ligand complex formation have facilitated significant advances in the understanding of antigen-antibody interactions. Particularly valuable has been the integration of high-resolution structural data with thermodynamic and kinetic analyses on a number of antigen-monoclonal antibody complexes. In this section, some of the key insights arising from these studies will be reviewed.

Molecular Flexibility

Like many other protein domains, V domains exhibit varying degrees and modes of molecular flexibility. Evidence suggests that some V modules (ie, V_L-V_H pairs) can adopt two or more conformations with meaningful frequencies in the unbound state. Because these different conformational states can exhibit distinguishable binding proclivities, molecular flexibility provides monoclonal antibodies with a mechanism for polyspecificity.[82] Molecular flexibility can also play a role in binding a single ligand, which, in such instances, may be better understood as a process of binding rather than as a simple event.[83,84] The extent of conformational adjustment by antibody or antigen required for complex formation can influence both the thermodynamics and kinetics of that process.

Role of Water

A significant role for water molecules has become clear from the study of high-resolution structures and thermodynamic analyses of antigen-antibody complexes. Water molecules exhibit a broad range of association times with protein surfaces. Thus some of the more tightly protein-associated of these solvent molecules effectively behave as parts of the protein.[85] Water molecules found in the antigen-antibody interface, whether constitutively bound or newly recruited, can make important contributions to both the intrinsic (ie, monovalent) affinity of the complex and to the differential affinities for different ligands (ie, specificity).[86] Amino acid residues of antigen and antibody can interact, indirectly, through hydrogen bonds to one or more water molecules.[86]

Thermodynamics and Antigen-Antibody Interactions

Specific residues in the antibody V domains or the antigen can contribute to complex formation in different ways, and some residues can contribute in multiple ways.[87] In addition

to making van der Waals contact, residues can be important due to contributions to the free energy of complex formation or to the differential free energy of complex formation for two or more different ligands. Some residues may contribute primarily to modulation of the association rate, the "relaxation" of the forming complex, or the dissociation rate.[83,88] Other contact residues contribute minimally to the energetics of complex formation, and yet other noncontact residues can be significant thermodynamic contributors.[89,90]

Structural and thermodynamic/kinetic comparisons of antibodies with germline V domain sequences and with somatically mutated V domain sequences have provided new insights into the structural and energetic bases for affinity maturation.[89,90] Mutations in both contact and noncontact residues can have major consequences, positive or negative, for the affinity with which an antibody binds an antigen. They can also favor tighter binding by enhancing V domain rigidity, thereby reducing the entropic penalty associated with complex formation.[90] Antibodies derived from secondary or later responses that have incorporated somatic mutations have been shown to exhibit less than absolute specificity. Even these "mature" antibodies can bind multiple ligands when screened on libraries of peptides or proteins,[91,92] a lesson likely to be relevant to most biomolecules.

It has been routine to distinguish between interactions in which antibodies bind to protein antigens versus those in which antibodies bind to carbohydrate antigens. Recent studies of antibodies that bind to human immunodeficiency virus-1 gp120 with high affinity and that exhibit potent and broad neutralizing activity suggest that antibodies can bind to epitopes composed of both peptide and glycan elements.[93,94]

IMMUNOGLOBULIN "ELBOW JOINTS" AND "HINGES"

The structure of the constant domains can affect antibody-antigen interactions by influencing the range of molecular flexibility permitted between the two Fabs. In this section, the role of the Ig hinge will be discussed.

Elbow Joints

Individual Ig V and C domains tend to create rather rigid dimers. However, the antibody molecule as a whole, which consists of four or more such dimeric modules linked like beads on a string, can be viewed as a paradigm of molecular flexibility.[95] Flexibility begins between the Fv and the Fb of the Fab at what is termed the elbow bend or elbow angle.[96] This reflects both a ball and socket interaction between the FR1 of the H chain and the C_H1 domain,[97] and the identity of the L chain.[96] Five residues (three in V_H and two in C_H1) that are highly conserved in both antibodies and T-cell receptors make the key contacts that constitute this "joint." Elbow angles, assessed from crystal structures of homogeneous Fab fragments, range from 130 degrees to 180 degrees. λ light chains appear to permit an Fv to adopt a wider range of elbow angles than their κ chain counterparts.

Hinges

Some Ig isotypes contain a structural element that does not strictly correspond to the canonical structural motifs of Ig superfamily V and C domains, which is termed the hinge. Where it occurs, it is located between the C-terminus of the C_H1 and the N-terminus of the C_H2 domains. In isotypes such as IgG and IgA, the hinge is encoded by one (or more) separate exon(s). In isotypes with four C_H domains (ie, IgM and IgE), the C_H2 domain serves in place of a classical hinge.

The hinge, or the C_H2 domain in Igs that lack a hinge, permits an Fab arm to engage in an angular motion relative both to the other Fab arm and to its Fc stem (Figs. 5.3 and 5.11). This permits the two Fab arms to cover a range from maximal extension to an almost parallel alignment. The range of motion of the Fab arms reflects the nature of the hinge region, which in some C genes is rigid and in others, such as human IgA1, functions more as a tether for each individual Fab than as a support. This flexibility has major implications for antibody function, because it enables a bivalent antibody molecule to bind epitopes in a variety of relative spatial arrangements.

Among human IgG subclasses, the most unusual hinge region is that of IgG3. Unlike other human IgG hinge regions, the IgG3 hinge is encoded by a quadruplicated hinge exon, making it the longest hinge (62 amino acids) by far (Table 5.2). The primary structure of this hinge has been divided into upper, core (or middle), and lower hinge regions with somewhat different functional associations. The upper hinge in particular has been associated with the magnitude of segmental flexibility as assessed by fluorescence emission anisotropy kinetics[98]

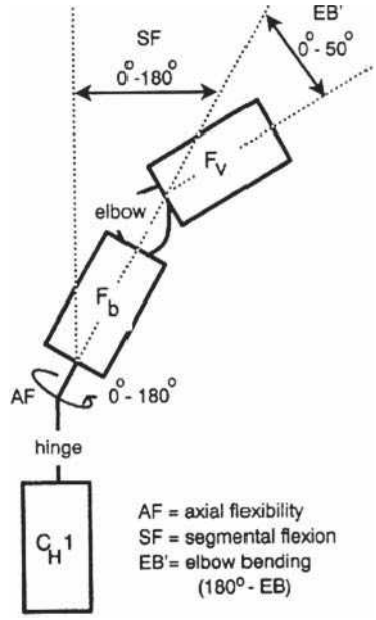


FIG. 5.11. Illustration of the Motions and Flexibility of the Immunoglobulin. Axial and segmental flexibility are determined by the hinge. The switch peptide (elbow) also contributes flexibility to the Fab. The measure of the elbow angle is defined with respect to the Fv and Fb axes of two-fold symmetry. From Carayannopoulos and Capra[206] with permission.

TABLE 5.2 Properties of Hinges in Immunoglobulin G, A, and D

Ig Type	Upper Hinge Length	Middle Hinge Length	Lower Hinge Length	Genetic Hinge Configuration (Amino Acids/Exon)	Susceptibility to Proteolysis	Special Features
IgG1	4	10	6	15		
IgG2	3	8	6	12		
IgG3	12	49	6	17-15-15-15		
IgG4	7	4	6	12		
IgA1	1	23	2	19	High	Heavy O-linked glycosylation
IgD				34-24	High	Extensive charged amino acids; heavy O-linked glycosylation at N terminus

and with the magnitude of Fab-Fab flexibility by immunoelectron microscopy.[99] The core or middle hinge appears to serve, at least in part, a spacer function. The lower hinge functions primarily to facilitate C_H2-C_H2 interactions.

Segmental flexibility of the Ig molecule, conferred mainly by the hinge, permits or facilitates simultaneous binding through two or more Fab arms. Such monogamous bivalency or multivalency, which enhances overall binding,[100,101] is a crucial factor permitting biosynthetically feasible antibody concentrations to offer adequate immunity against replicating pathogens. While it is more speculative why the Fab-Fc geometry needs to vary, it may have to do with optimizing effector function activation when antigen is bound, such as maintaining antigen binding when Fc receptors are simultaneously engaged.

The attribution of flexibility control to the hinge is supported by protein engineering studies in which V domain–identical IgGs of different subclasses were analyzed.[98,102] This basic conclusion is also supported by studies in which hinge regions have been selectively mutated or swapped among human or mouse IgG subclasses.[103–105] One of these studies indicated that structural variation among subclasses in the C_H1 domain also influenced segmental flexibility as assessed by nanosecond fluorescence polarization measurements.[103] Early suggestions that IgG subclass–related differences in activating the classical pathway of complement were explained by differences in segmental flexibility[98] were not confirmed by the studies in which mutant hinge regions were created.[103–105]

There are several types of molecular motion attributable to the hinge region that contribute to overall segmental flexibility (see Fig. 5.11). These include flexing between Fab arms (motion toward or away from one another in the same plane), Fab arms moving in and out of the same plane, Fab arms rotating along their long axes, and Fab arms moving in or out of the same plane as the Fc region.[106,107] The inter-Fab angles observed by electron microscopy range from 0 degrees to 180 degrees.[108,109] Similarly, Fab arm long-axis rotations can extend up to 180 degrees.[110]

Another key role of the hinge is the maintenance of the C_H2-C_H2 interaction (ie, effectively constraining molecular mobility within the Fc region itself). The lower hinge stabilizes C_H2-C_H2 contacts by providing the key cysteine residues involved in inter-H chain disulfide bonds. Experiments in which IgG molecules were modified to eliminate the hinge region demonstrate that covalent linkage between the hinge regions just "upstream" of the two C_H2 domains is critical for the preservation of IgG effector function.[111]

HEAVY CHAIN STRUCTURE AND FUNCTION

What might be termed the **fundamental strategy of humoral immunity** is a two-step process that begins with the identification by antibodies (of appropriate binding specificity) of the molecules or molecular complexes that should be eliminated. Following such identification (ie, noncovalent complex formation), antibodies can then trigger other molecular systems (eg, complement) or cells (eg, phagocytes) to destroy or remove the antigenic material—guilt by association at the molecular level. Thus, antigen specificity, determined primarily by the V domains in the Fab arms, is physically and functionally linked to effector function, the activation of which is primarily attributable to the C domains of the Fc region. The effector functions associated with the humoral immune response primarily involve either complement or Fc receptor–bearing cells, such as neutrophils, macrophages, and mast cells. As might be expected, therefore, the Fc contains sites for noncovalently interacting with complement components, such as C1q, and with Fc receptors. This section focuses on the structure and function of the Fc regions of the various Ig classes and subclasses.

Structure and Function of the Fc

The necessity for interacting effectively with relatively conserved molecules such as C1q and Fc receptors provides a selective basis for maintaining the primary structures of the Fc region, at least where changes would undermine such intermolecular contacts. The degeneracy possible in noncovalent molecular recognition events permits selected primary sequence variations without catastrophic alterations in function. However, there are allotypic differences in the H chain constant domains among both human and mouse Igs. In some cases, these allotypic differences are associated with variation in function, at least in vitro. For example, two recombinant V domain–identical IgG3 antibodies, of

different allotypes, exhibited differential abilities to bind C1q or initiate antibody-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity.[112] Nevertheless, the H chains of the human IgG subclasses are particularly well conserved, with > 90% identity of amino acid sequences. In other mammalian species that have two or more IgG subclasses, they tend to exhibit less amino acid sequence identity than the human IgG subclasses.

By convention, the H chain constant domains are numbered from N-terminal to C-terminal, with C_H1 residing in the Fab arm and the remaining two (IgG, IgA, IgD) or three (IgM, IgE) C domains (C_H2, C_H3, and, if relevant, C_H4) residing in the Fc. In IgM and IgE, the C_H2 domain largely plays the role of the hinge region. The C domains of different isotypes and from different species share several key structural features. In distinction from V domains, which consist of four- and five-stranded β-pleated sheets linked through an intrachain disulfide bond, C domains consist of three- and four-stranded β-pleated sheets linked through an intrachain disulfide bond (see Fig. 5.4). Across isotypes, amino acid sequence identity for C_H domains is approximately 30%, while for subclasses (within an isotype) the amino acid sequence identity for C_H domains is in the range of 60% to 90%. Important physical and biological properties of the human Ig isotypes are summarized in Table 5.3.

As noted previously, the traditional and accepted functional anatomy of Igs attributes antigen binding (both specificity and affinity) to the V modules in the Fab arms and effector function activation to the Fc region. While this scheme is both well supported and appealing, there is considerable (perhaps not widely appreciated) evidence that in some cases structural variations in H chain domains (ie, C_H domains and hinge) can influence both the affinity of the antibody for antigen and the discrimination among antigens.[113–118] Although these instances of C domain influence on ligand binding (through the V domains) primarily involve multivalent antigens, there are also reports that suggest C domain influence in instances of monovalent recognition.[119–121] Mechanisms for these effects in the context of binding multivalent antigens include isotype-related differences in segmental flexibility as well as the tendency for self-association. Results from a study comparing resistance to pneumococcal infection for IgG3-deficient and IgG3-producing mice are consistent with the notion that the cooperative binding permitted by murine IgG3 antibodies contributes to the effectiveness of humoral immunity.[122]

Fc Glycosylation

All Igs contain N-linked oligosaccharides, and it is becoming increasingly clear that this glycosylation plays significant roles in Ig structure and function. Though the type and extent of glycosylation varies among isotypes, an N-linked oligosaccharide on Asn 297 in the C_H2 domain is conserved on all mammalian IgGs and homologous portions of IgM, IgD, and IgE. As the average serum IgG contains 2.8 oligosaccharides, there is often glycosylation present in the V domain as well.[123] The consensus sequence for the V domain N-linked oligosaccharides is not present in the germline, but it can be created during somatic hypermutation.[124] Glycosylation in the Fc region has been shown to be important for antibody half-life and effector functions.[125–127] Glycosylation of the Fc domain influences complement activation as Ig hypoglycosylation influences affinity for C1q as well as Ig binding to the FcR, possibly due to its effects on Ig structure.[128] Differential sialylation of the core Fc polysaccharide has recently been shown to have dramatic effects on the proinflammatory versus anti-inflammatory activity of IgG.[129,130] Furthermore, IgD N-linked glycans are necessary for IgD to bind to the IgD receptor on T cells.[131]

V domain glycosylation potentially affects the affinity for antigen, antibody half-life, antibody secretion, and organ targeting. Interestingly, glycosylation has been shown to be capable of both positively and negatively affecting antigen binding.[132–135] The biologic significance of Ig glycosylation can be seen from studies demonstrating that IgG from patients with rheumatoid arthritis is galactosylated to a lesser extent (termed IgG G0) than IgG from normal controls. In some cases, hypogalactosylation correlates with disease activity.[136] Hypogalactosylation of IgG has also been found to occur in other chronic inflammatory diseases such as Crohn's disease and systemic lupus erythematosus.[137]

Immunoglobulin M

IgM is an isotype of firsts. It is ontogenetically primary, being expressed first on developing B lineage cells. IgM is also the isotype that initially dominates the primary humoral immune response. It is probably, along with IgD, a phylogenetically primitive isotype in jawed vertebrates (an almost first) and may be the most phylogenetically stable isotype.[138]

IgM serves important immunological functions both on the surfaces of B-lymphocytes and in the fluid phase in the blood and in the mucosal secretions. On the cell surface, IgM consists of two identical μ H chains and two identical L chains (μ_2L_2). It is initially expressed on B lineage cells in noncovalent association with surrogate L chains, and subsequently, following successful L chain gene rearrangement, with κ or λ light chains. On the mature B-cell surface, IgM is noncovalently associated with two other polypeptide chains, Ig-α (CD79a) and Ig-β (CD79b).[139–141] These integral membrane proteins serve to transduce signals when surface IgM binds to and is cross-linked by cognate antigen.

In the secreted form, IgM can consist of either pentamers $(\mu_2L_2)_5$ or, less often, hexamers $(\mu_2L_2)_6$.[142] The μ_2L_2 monomers of the pentameric form are linked one to another by disulfide bonds in the C_H4 domains. Two of these monomers are, on one side, disulfide bonded not to another μ chain but to a 15,000 Da-polypeptide, called J chain. J chain is also found in polymeric IgA. There may be multiple patterns of such disulfide bonding, such that different cysteines participate in different monomeric units.[143]

Application of electron microscopy to polymeric IgM molecules has suggested that IgM can adopt two different quaternary arrangements: star and staple.[144,145] All of the antigen-binding sites are arrayed in radial fashion, in the same plane as one another and the Fc regions, in the star

TABLE 5.3 Properties of Immunoglobulin Isotypes

Class or subclass properties	IgM	IgD	IgG1	IgG2	IgG3	IgG4	IgA1	IgA2	IgE
Molecular weight of secreted form (kDa)[a]	950(p)	175	150	150	160	150	160(m), 300(d)	160(m), 350(d)	190
Sedimentation coefficient	19S	7S		6.6S			7S	11S	8S
Functional valency	5 or 10	2	2	2	2	2	2 or 4	2 or 4	2
Interheavy disulphide bonds per monomer	1	1	2	4	11	2	2	2	1
Membrane Ig cytoplasmic region	3	3	28	28	28	28	14	14	28
Secreted Ig tailpiece	20	9	2	2	2	2	20	20	2
Other chain	J chain (16 kDa)	9	—	—	—	—	J chain (16 kDa) secretory component (70 kDa)		—
N-glycosylation sites	5	3	1	1	2	1	2	4	7
O-glycosylation sites	0	7	0	0	0	0	8	0	0
Carbohydrate average (%)	10–12	9–14	2–3	2–3	2–3	2–3	7–11	7–11	12–13
Adult level range (age 16–60) in serum (mg/ml)[b]	0.25–3.1	0.03–0.4	5–12	2–6	0.5–1	0.2–1	1.4–4.2	0.2–0.5	0.0001–0.0002
Approximate % total Ig in adult serum	10	0.2	45–53	11–15	3–6	1–4	11–14	1–4	0.004
Synthetic rate (mg/kg weight/day)	3.3	0.2	33	33	33	33	19–29	3.3–5.3	0.002
Biological half-life (days)	5–10	2–8	21–24	21–24	7–8	21–24	5–7	4–6	1–5
Transplacental transfer	0	0	++	+	++	++	0	0	0
Complement activation classical pathway (Clq)	++++	0	+++	+	++++	0	0	0	0
Complement activation alternative pathway	0	0	0	0	0	0	+	0	0
Reactivity with protein A via Fc	0	0	++	++	+/–	++	0	0	0
Allotypes	—	—	G1m	G2m	G3m	—	—	A2m	Em
Biological properties	Primary antibody response, some binding to pIgR, some binding to phagocytes	Mature B-cell marker	Placental transfer, secondary antibody for most responses to pathogen, binds macrophages and other phagocytic cells by FcγR				Secretory Ig, binds pIgR		Allergy and parasite reactivity, binds FcεR

Ig, immunoglobulin; d, dimer; m, monomer; p, pentamer.
[a] Light chain molecular weight is 25 kDa.
[b] Total = 9.5-21.7 mg/ml.
Compiled from Carayannopoulos and Capra,[208] Lefranc and Lefranc,[209] Kuby,[210] and Janeway et al.[211]

arrangement. In the staple form, the Fab arms bend out of the plane of the Fc regions. It has been conjectured that the staple form is utilized in binding simultaneously to two or more epitopes on multivalent antigens, such as bacterial or viral surfaces.

A major pathway through which soluble IgM mediates immunity or immunopathology is the activation of the classical pathway of complement. On a per molecule basis, relative to other isotypes, IgM is highly active in activating the classical pathway and can thereby effectively opsonize bacterial pathogens. In select cases (eg, *Neisseria meningitidis*), binding of IgM to bacterial surfaces, followed by complement activation, can cause direct lysis of the bacteria through the insertion of the membrane attack complex into the bacterial membrane.[146] IgM, like polymeric IgA, can reduce the effective number of colony- or plaque-forming units for, respectively, bacteria and viruses, through agglutination. Significant physical and biological properties of IgM and the other Ig isotypes are shown in Table 5.3.

Immunoglobulin D

IgD is primarily of interest in its membrane form, as the soluble form of IgD is found in relatively modest concentrations in the blood and other body fluids. The cell surface form of IgD is found along with IgM on all mature, naïve B cells, where it appears capable of transducing activating and tolerizing signals.[147] As is true for IgM, the membrane form of IgD associates noncovalently with Ig-α (CD79a) and Ig-β (CD79b). Simultaneous cell surface expression of two H chain isotypes expressing the same V_H domains and the same L chains occurs via differential ribonucleic acid splicing.[148]

IgD exhibits greater sensitivity to proteolytic cleavage than IgM, which is consistent with a relatively short serum half-life of only 2.8 days. The relatively long hinge region is a primary target for proteolysis. Relatively modest efforts have historically been devoted to investigating of the functional roles of IgD antibodies, especially in the secreted form, in comparison to the other isotypes. However, new information suggests that IgD antibodies are produced in the upper respiratory mucosa by an unanticipated mechanism of class switch recombination and that these antibodies participate in host defense against pathogens relevant to this anatomical environment. In addition, secreted IgD antibodies can bind to basophils, through a receptor that is yet to be identified, and when these antibodies are cross-linked by cognate antigen, the basophils release potent mediators that influence immune reactivity, inflammation, and pathogen viability.[149]

Immunoglobulin G

IgG is the predominant isotype (approximately 70% to 75% of the total Ig) in the blood and extravascular compartments. The four human IgG subclasses (IgG1, IgG2, IgG3, and IgG4) are named in order of their relative serum concentrations, with IgG1 the most prevalent and IgG4 the least. There are differences in effector functions (eg, complement activation and Fc receptor binding) and other biological properties (such as serum half-life) among these subclasses. However, there are also crucial functional commonalities, such as placental passage (see Table 5.3).

IgG antibodies are the hallmark of immunological memory in the humoral immune response. In addition to the isotype switch from IgM to IgG in a secondary antibody response, somatic hypermutation can lead to affinity maturation, a process by which the average affinity of antibody for the antigen eliciting the immune response can increase.

IgG antibodies contribute to immunity directly and through the activation of complement or FcR-bearing cells. Important examples of immunity mediated directly through antibody binding include neutralization of toxins (eg, diphtheria toxin) and viruses (eg, poliovirus). Medically important examples of IgG-induced complement activation include immunity to encapsulated bacterial pathogens leading either to opsonization and destruction within phagocytes (eg., *Streptococcus pneumoniae*) or to direct complement-mediated lysis (eg, *Neisseria meningitidis*). Activation of FcR-bearing cells by IgG antibodies has also been implicated in immunity to pathogens (eg, *Cryptococcus neoformans*).[150] The consensus view is that human IgG1 and IgG3 isotypes are effective activators of the classical complement pathway. While some older sources state that IgG2 and IgG4 are weak or nonactivators of the classical complement pathway, more recent evidence suggests that when epitope density is high, IgG2 is effective in activating complement.[151,152] One possible source for the isotype-related variation in complement-activating ability is variation in affinity for C1q (IgG3 > IgG1 > IgG2 > IgG4), the portion of the first component in the classical pathway that physically contacts the C_H2 domains of antibodies. However, isotype-associated differences in complement activation have also been found to occur at steps of the cascade subsequent to the binding of C1q to antibody.[112,153] For example, in one study of chimeric monoclonal antibodies engineered to express identical V domains and representing all four human IgG subclasses, the IgG3 antibody fixed C1q better than the IgG1 antibody, but the IgG1 molecule was more effective in mediating complement-dependent cell lysis than the IgG3 molecule.[153] Thus, it is probably not possible to rank the relative abilities of the IgG subclasses to activate complement in a single absolute hierarchy.

The affinities of IgG subclasses for Fc receptors vary from about 5×10^5 M^{-1} to about 10^8 M^{-1}. Recent studies in the mouse suggest that the relative contributions of IgG subclasses to various immunopathological processes depend on their relative affinities for the activating versus inhibiting isoforms of FcR.[154]

A remarkable attribute of IgG (for three of the four subclasses) is its serum half-life of about 23 days. This property, attributable to the Fc region and its interaction with the neonatal Fc receptor (FcγRn), has been exploited for therapeutics through the genetic fusion of solubilized receptors, (eg, cytotoxic T-lymphocyte antigen 4) to IgG Fc regions.[155]

A recently derived insight into the function of IgG4 antibodies relates to their apparently unique ability to spontaneously dissociate into half-molecules and to form antibodies composed of different half-molecules with distinct antigen

specificities (ie, bispecific antibodies that cannot cross-link antigen and thus have anti-inflammatory activity).[156] This phenomenon may be of particular relevance to specific immunotherapy in the setting of allergy.[157]

Immunoglobulin A

While IgG is the clearly predominant isotype in the blood, IgA is the dominant Ig isotype in the mucosal secretions as well as in breast milk and colostrum.[158]

In the blood, 10% to 15% of the Ig is IgA (vs. 65% to 75% IgG). Moreover, IgA has a shorter half-life than IgG in serum. The predominant form of IgA in human serum or plasma is monomeric (ie, α_2L_2), but there are small quantities of dimers $[(\alpha_2L_2)_2]$ and fewer still trimers and tetramers. Secretory IgA consists of dimers and lesser amounts of trimers and tetramers associated with one joining (J) chain (distinct from the J region in the heavy chain V domain) and one SC chain (see following discussion). The latter is the extracellular portion of the polymeric Ig receptor (pIgR), which is expressed by mucosal epithelial cells and transfers polymeric IgA or IgM from basolateral to apical surfaces, thereby providing most of the Ig content of the mucosal secretions. The J chain is disulfide bonded to the tail pieces, short C-terminal extensions of the C_H3 domains, of the two IgA monomers of a dimer, while SC forms a disulfide bond to a cysteine in one C_H2 domain of one monomer.

The two α H chain C region genes correspond to two IgA subclasses, IgA1 and IgA2. IgA1 is the predominant (> 80%) IgA subclass in the serum. While IgA2 is the major form in some human mucosal secretions, such as those in the large intestine and the female genital tract, there is variation in the relative proportion of IgA1 and IgA2 in different secretions. The shorter hinge region of IgA2 confers increased resistance to bacterial proteases that might be encountered in the mucosal environment. The extended hinge region of IgA1 is believed to permit molecules of this isotype to accommodate variable epitope spacings on multivalent antigens. While the long hinge region of IgA1 molecules might be expected to confer relatively high susceptibility to proteolysis, relative protection against the activity of bacterial proteases is provided by heavy O-linked glycosylation in the hinge (Fig. 5.12). Nevertheless, the IgA1 hinge is uniquely susceptible to IgA proteases produced by certain pathogenic bacteria.[159]

Secretory IgA (S-IgA) has been shown to participate in immunity against a range of viral, bacterial, and parasitic pathogens at mucosal surfaces. The relative absence of functional complement and phagocytes in mucosal secretions is consistent with a different mix of mechanisms for mediating immune effects associated with S-IgA versus, for example, serum IgG. Mechanisms associated with IgA are less dependent on inflammation-producing molecules or cells, such as inhibition of microbial adherence through V module-mediated specific binding to microbial adhesins, agglutination of microbes, blocking of microbial receptors for cell surface carbohydrates with IgA-associated glycans, and mucus trapping (in which binding of S-IgA to bacteria makes them more adherent to host-generated mucus). There is also evidence that polymeric IgA can neutralize viruses

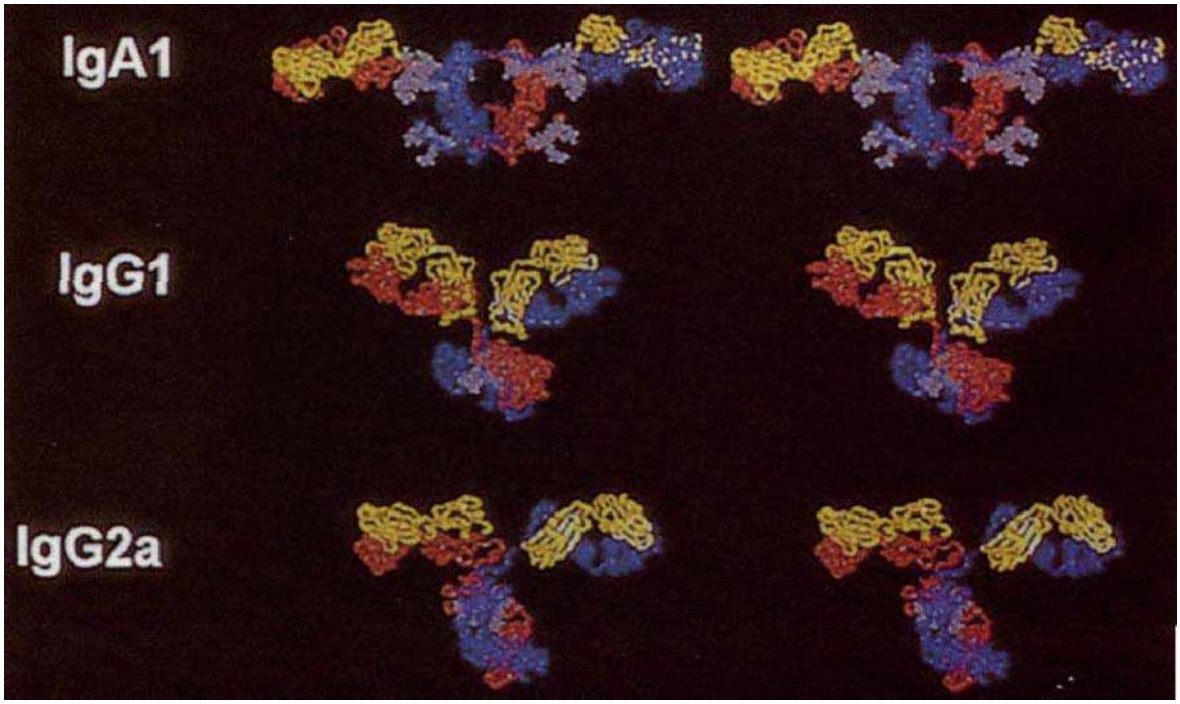


FIG. 5.12. A comparison of an x-ray and neutron-solution–scattering theoretical model (human immunoglobulin (Ig)A1) and x-ray crystal (murine IgG1 and IgG2a) structures. Light chains (*yellow*), heavy chains (*red* and *dark blue*), and glycosylation (*light blue*) are illustrated. The extended length of IgA1 over that of IgG can be seen along with extensive glycosylation that characterizes this isotype. From Boehm et al.[207] with permission.

in some circumstances by interfering with steps postattachment, such as internalization. In some cases, posttranslational modifications of viral surface molecules, related to proteolytic events associated with epithelial cell transit, lead to IgA antibodies expressing protection-related antigen specificities that have no parallel in the IgG pool.[160,161] Some of the contributions of IgA to immunity are mediated through binding to FcαRI (CD89) on human neutrophils, monocytes/macrophages, and eosinophils. For example, cells bearing FcαRI on their plasma membranes can phagocytose IgA-antigen complexes. FcαRI binds to the IgA Fc region between the Cα2 and the Cα3 domains.[162] Amino acid residues in the IgA Fc region critically involved in the interaction with CD89 are indicated in Figure 5.13.

The ability of IgA to activate complement is controversial. At present, the preponderance of evidence suggests that IgA does not activate the classical complement pathway and only weakly, and under some pathophysiological circumstances, activates the alternative complement pathway. However, there is evidence suggesting that, in vitro at least, polymeric, but not monomeric, IgA can activate the complement pathway dependent on mannose-binding lectin.[163]

Additional properties of the polymeric forms of IgM and IgA are considered in the following section.

Immunoglobulin E

IgE is best known for its association with hypersensitivity reactions and allergy, but this isotype is also of interest in the context of immunity to parasites. In the blood, IgE is present at the lowest concentration of any of the Ig isotypes (with roughly five orders of magnitude less IgE than IgG) and has the shortest half-life. The unimpressive quantitative representation of IgE in the blood is related to the high affinity of IgE antibodies for FcεRI, often referred to as the high-affinity Fc receptor for IgE. FcεRI is expressed on mast cells, basophils, Langerhans cells, and eosinophils. Due to the high affinity of FcεRI for its IgE ligand, mast cells and basophils are covered with relatively long-lived FcεRI-IgE complexes.

The interaction between IgE and FcεRI has an affinity of ~10^{10} L/M. It primarily involves contacts between FcεRI and amino acids in the C_H3 domains, with some contributions from amino acids in the C_H2 domains. Although each IgE potentially has two sites for interacting with the FcεRI, the stoichiometry has been shown to be 1:1. Furthermore, it has been suggested that IgE binds to FcεRI in a kinked conformation.[164]

Upon ligation with bivalent or multivalent antigens specifically recognized by the bound IgE molecules, the FcεRI molecules transduce signals that activate the mast cells or basophils to secrete potent mediators of inflammation, such as histamine. These mediators are responsible for the symptoms associated with asthma, allergic rhinitis, and anaphylaxis.

There is a second receptor for IgE. FcεRII (CD23), a type II membrane protein, is expressed on monocytes/macrophages, B-lymphocytes, natural killer cells, follicular dendritic cells, Langerhans cells, eosinophils, activated epithelial cells, and platelets. It binds monomeric IgE with an affinity of ~10^7 L/M, roughly three orders of magnitude lower than the affinity of FcεRI for IgE. Functional consequences of FcεRII-IgE interaction on macrophages include secretion of mediators of immediate hypersensitivity as well as cytokines and chemokines. There is also evidence suggesting that the FcεRII-IgE interaction can contribute to antigen capture and presentation to both B and T cells.

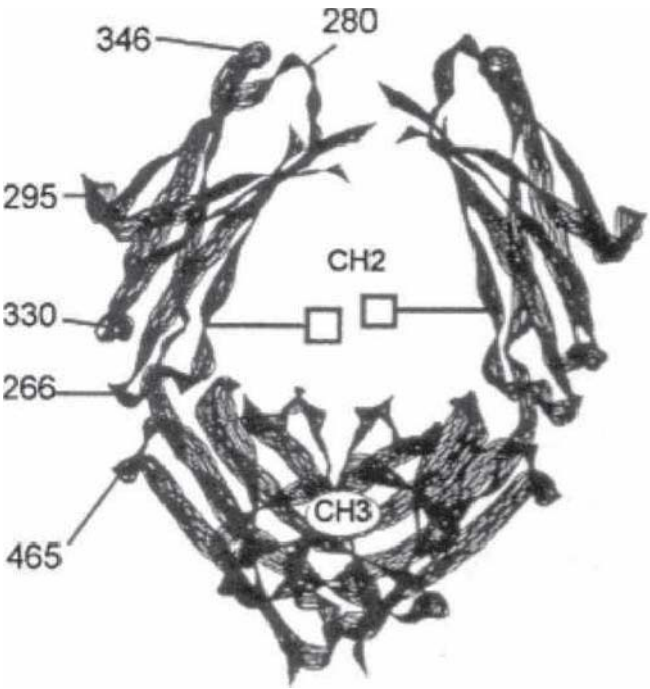


FIG. 5.13. Illustration of the Residues Essential for the Binding of immunoglobulin (Ig)A to FcαR (CD89). Residues represent mutations made in IgA C_H regions as mapped on an Fcγ fragment. Of the residues mutated, L465 and L266 were found to be important for binding to CD89. From Carayannopoulos et al.[162] with permission.

Fc Receptor Immunoglobulin Interactions

There are four receptors that bind the Fc regions of IgG molecules in humans and five such receptors in mice. Three of the human receptors are expressed primarily on hematopoietic cells directly involved in immune responses: FcγRI, FcγRII, and FcγRIII. Among the FcγR involved in antibody effector functions, there is important variation in affinity for IgG molecules. FcγRI binds IgG with relatively high affinity, permitting the binding of monomeric IgG. In contrast, FcγRII and FcγRIII bind to IgG with relatively low affinity. Consequently, these latter two receptors do not bind significant quantities of monomeric IgG but preferentially interact with IgG that has been effectively aggregated through interaction with bivalent or multivalent antigens (ie, immune complexes). Key amino acid residues involved in the binding FcγRs and FcεR1 with their corresponding Ig can be seen in Figure 5.14. Allotypic variations in FcγRIIA can also influence affinity for IgG ligands and subsequent effector function.[165]

There are different isoforms of FcγRII and FcγRIII. Of particular functional relevance, FcγRIIA is activating,

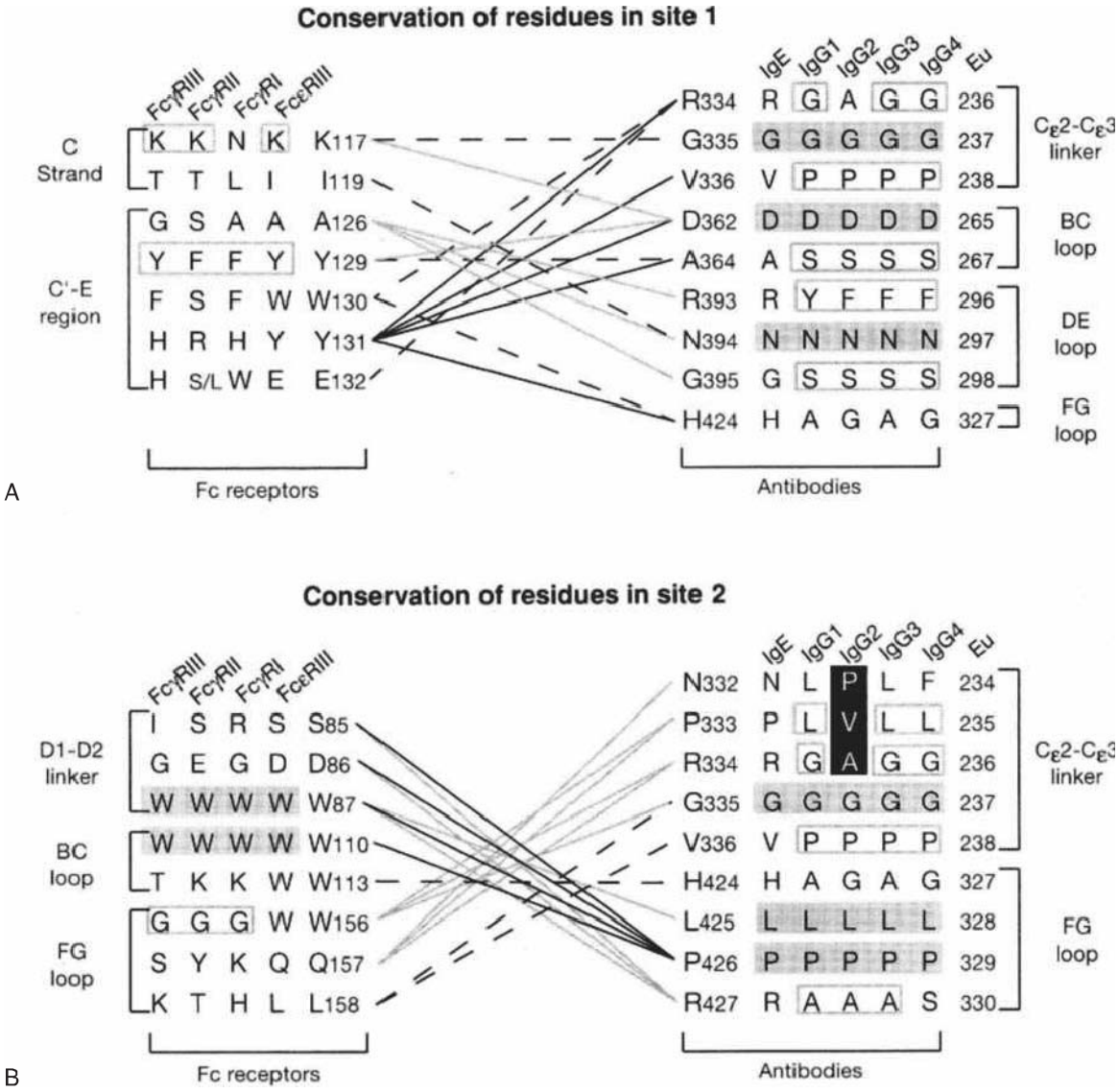


FIG. 5.14. Certain residues are conserved between Fcγ Rs and FcεRI as well as between immunoglobulin (Ig)G and IgE that facilitate binding. Two sites participate: site 1 in **(A)** and site 2 in **(B)**. *Heavy lines* indicate the highest number of contacts and *dashed lines* indicate the least. Of considerable note are residues W87 and W110 in site 2 of the receptors and P426 in the Ig that form a core "praline sandwich" in the interaction between Ig and receptor. From Garman et al.[208] with permission.

whereas FcγRIIB is inhibiting. In mouse models, deficiency of FcγRIIB can be associated with an autoimmune syndrome similar to human lupus.[166] Studies in mice have also suggested that the effectiveness of antibodies of the various murine IgG subclasses in mediating FcγR-dependent effector functions are correlated with the ratio of affinities of antibodies of those subclasses for activating versus inhibiting FcγR.[154]

FcγRIIIA is expressed on natural killer cells, whereas FcγRIIIB is expressed on neutrophils. The former receptor is attached to the membrane by a standard transmembrane polypeptide, whereas the latter is attached via a glycophospholipid tail.

The fourth human receptor, the neonatal FcγR, or FcγRn (sometimes referred to as the Brambell receptor), transports IgG across the placenta. It also plays a crucial role in protecting IgG from proteolytic degradation, thereby prolonging serum half-life. While FcγRI, FcγRII, and FcγRIII are members of the immunoglobulin superfamily, FcγRn is structurally similar to major histocompatibility complex class I molecules, including noncovalent association with β_2-microglobulin. The interaction between FcγRn and IgG involves amino acid residues in the C_H2-C_H3 interface[167] and is pH-sensitive. This latter property is consistent with the ability of FcγRn to bind IgG in acidic vesicular compartments and then release it into the neutral-pH environment of the blood. A crystallographic structure of the rat FcγRn in a 1:1 complex with a heterodimeric Fc (containing only one FcγRn-binding site) reveals that there are conformational changes in the Fc on binding to FcγRn.[168] The investigators also identified three titratable

salt bridges that confer pH-dependent binding of the IgG Fc to the FcγRn.

There are other FcR that interact with the non-IgG isotypes: IgM, IgD, IgA, and IgE. The FcR for IgA and IgE are covered in the respective sections devoted to the corresponding isotypes. In mice, an additional Fcα/μR binds both IgA and IgM, whereas in human these receptors are distinct.[169,170] Functional attributes of these receptors and the FcδR are continuing to be studied.

There are functional as well as structural parallels among FcR for IgG and non-IgG isotypes. Some of the features of Fc-FcR interaction that are conserved across isotypes are illustrated in Figure 5.14.

Transmembrane and Cytoplasmic Domains

Igs are expressed in both membrane and secreted forms. In contrast to the secreted form, the membrane Ig contains a transmembrane and a cytoplasmic domain. The transmembrane domain is a typical single-pass polypeptide segment consisting of 26 hydrophobic residues, extending from the C-terminus end of the C-terminal C_H domain and which forms an alpha-helix followed by a variable number of basic amino acids. The cytoplasmic portion of the Ig H chain ranges in length from 3 amino acids for IgG to 30 amino acids for IgE.

Both membrane expression of Ig and the integrity of the cytoplasmic domain are important in antibody function. As the cytoplasmic domain is rather short, membrane-bound IgM is not thought to "signal" directly, but through the associated Igα and Igβ molecules.[171] However, disruption of either membrane expression of IgG1 in mice or the cytoplasmic tail results in the failure to generate an effective IgG1 response and IgG1 memory.[172] Mice lacking IgE membrane expression exhibit significant impairment in IgE responses and have extremely low levels of secreted IgE.[173] For those Igs with longer membrane:cytoplasmic tails, membrane Ig affects signaling beyond its association with Igα and Igβ. Specific residues in the transmembrane domain have been identified that are crucial for signal transduction while having no effect on the association with Igα and Igβ.[174]

HIGHER ORDER STRUCTURE

Many of the biological functions of IgA and IgM are dependent on their ability to form multimeric structures. This section will discuss the role of multimeric Ig in immune function.

Dimers, Pentamers, and Hexamers

The majority of multimeric IgA exists as dimers and, less commonly, trimers and tetramers, while IgM forms pentamers and occasionally hexamers. The polymeric structures of these antibodies enhances their functional affinity (avidity) for antigen, is essential for their active transport (both IgA and IgM) across epithelial cells to mucosal secretions, and in the case of IgM, enhances the activation of the classical pathway of complement. Once multimerized, IgA or IgM in a complex with J chain can bind to pIgR and cross mucosal epithelial cells.[175,176] Though IgM can undergo transcytosis to the mucosal secretions, its principal action is in the serum.

The ability of IgA and IgM to multimerize is due to a tailpiece, an additional C-terminal segment of 18 amino acids in the secreted forms of the μ and α heavy chains. Tailpieces of both IgM and IgA contain a penultimate cysteine (residue 575 in IgM and 495 in IgA) that forms two different disulfide bonds important for multimer formation. In an Ig monomeric unit containing two identical H chains, one cysteine residue forms intermonomeric subunit bonds, whereas the remaining cysteine residue on the other heavy chain bonds to a cysteine on the J chain.[177–180]

Another cysteine residue, Cys414, also forms intermonomeric subunit disulfide bonds in IgM, and this bond is important in hexamer formation.[181] Besides disulfide bonds, the highly conserved glycan linked to Asn563 in IgM (and the homologous region in IgA) is also important for multimerization.[182]

Domain-swapping experiments demonstrate that the tailpiece regulates multimerization in the context of the specific H chain. While addition of the α tailpiece to IgM has little effect on IgM polymerization, the introduction of the μ tailpiece to IgA leads to higher-order IgA polymers.[183] Based on this finding, it has been proposed that IgM polymerization is more efficient than IgA polymerization.

The J Chain

The J chain, an evolutionarily conserved 137 amino acid polypeptide produced by B-lymphocytes, functions to regulate multimer formation and to promote linkage of multimeric Ig to pIgR on epithelial cells. The J chain consists of a single domain in a beta barrel conformation and does not show sequence similarity to Ig domains.[184] It contains eight cysteine residues that participate in disulfide bonds with two tailpiece cysteines, as described previously, as well as function to stabilize its own structure through intramolecular bonds.[183,185] The J chain influences the polymerization of the multimers, as in the absence of J chain, IgA forms fewer dimers and IgM forms fewer pentamers.[186]

The J chain exists in all polymeric forms of IgA and is important in IgA polymerization and secretion across the mucosa. J chain is not required for IgM polymers but is required for external secretion. While IgM pentamers contain J chain, hexamers almost always lack it. The makeup of IgM is biologically significant because IgM hexamers have about 20-fold greater complement-activating activity than IgM pentamers. The presence of increased levels of hexameric IgM has been postulated to play a role in the pathogenesis of Waldenström macroglobulinemia and cold agglutinin disease.[187]

Immunoglobulin Transport

Transport of dimeric IgA and pentameric IgM to the mucosal secretions occurs after binding to pIgR that is present on the basolateral surface of the lining epithelial cells. The J chain is essential for the secretion of IgA and IgM and,

as described previously, influences the polymeric structure of the Ig.[175] pIgR is a transmembrane receptor synthesized by mucosal epithelial cells that contains seven domains including five extracellular V-like domains, a transmembrane domain, and a cytoplasmic domain.[188] Once bound to pIgR, polymeric Ig is endocytosed and transported to the apical surface of the cell. pIgR is then proteolytically cleaved between the fifth and sixth domains to release a complex (termed secretory Ig) containing the H, L, and J chains, and the SC, which represents the cleaved extracellular portion of pIgR.[189,190] As pIgR undergoes constitutive transcytosis in the absence of polymeric Ig, free SC is also released into the mucosal secretions. SC has several biological functions, including protecting the Ig from degradation by proteases and binding bacterial antigens such as the *Clostridium difficile* toxin A.[191,192] SC also functions to localize sIgA to the mucus layer to help protect against invasion by pathogens.[193] Results from pIgR-null mice demonstrate that alternate pathways exist to transport polymeric Ig to the mucosal secretions as some secretory Ig still crosses the epithelial cells in the absence of pIgR.[194] Results from pIgR-null mice also demonstrate the importance of high levels of secretory antibodies as these mice are more susceptible to mucosal infections with pathogens such as *Salmonella typhimurium and Streptococcus pneumoniae*.[195,196]

The epithelial transcytosis of polymeric Ig has several biological implications. First by delivering the Ig to the mucosal surface, it enables antibodies to bind to pathogenic agents and prevent them from penetrating the mucosa, a process termed immune exclusion. Second, transcytosing antibody can neutralize viruses intracellularly.[197,198] Finally, polymeric Ig can bind to antigens in the mucosal lamina propria and excrete them to the mucosal lumen (where they can be removed from the body) by the same pIgR-mediated transcytosis process.[199,200] Some pathogens can exploit the pIgR-mediated transcytosis process in reverse to penetrate the mucosa. For example, the pneumococcal adhesin, CbpA, can bind pIgR at the epithelial apical surface, leading to bacterial penetration of the mucosa.[201]

CONCLUSION

Igs are extremely versatile molecules that can carry out many biological activities at the same time. The need to be able to recognize unique antigen structures prior to any previous exposure coupled with the need to maintain host cell receptor or complement recognition properties presents a truly unique challenge for the system. As has been described, the system incorporates diversity within specific constraints. The precise biological niches may differ, but the overall design for these molecules is the same.

The flexibility and biologic properties of Igs have made them a major focus of molecular engineering. Igs are being used as therapeutic agents, as well as for biotechnology applications. These opportunities have led to a resurgence of interest in the structure–function aspects of antibodies as we approach "designer antibodies." Both the variable and constant portions of these molecules are current substrates for engineering purposes, offering the potential for altering both receptor and effector function. The study of antibodies began with the need to understand how sera could neutralize toxins. It is likely that antibodies will continue to be a major focus for those who seek to take fundamental principles of protein chemistry to the bedside.

REFERENCES

1. Schroeder HW Jr, Wald D, Greenspan NS. Immunoglobulins: structure and function. In: Paul W, ed. *Fundamental Immunology*. Philadelphia, PA: Lippincott Wiliams & Wilkins; 2008:125–151.
2. Williams AF, Barclay AN. The immunoglobulin superfamily—domains for cell surface recognition. *Ann Rev Immunol*. 1988;6:381–405. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3289571
3. Sakano H, Rogers JH, Huppi K, et al. Domains and the hinge region of an immunoglobulin heavy chain are encoded in separate DNA segments. *Nature*. 1979;277(5698):627–633. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/106304
4. Kirkham PM, Schroeder HW Jr. Antibody structure and the evolution of immunoglobulin V gene segments. *Sem Immunol*. 1994;6(6):347–360. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7654992
5. Rogers J, Early P, Carter C, et al. Two mRNAs with different 3′ ends encode membrane-bound and secreted forms of immunoglobulin mu chain. *Cell*. 1980;20:303–312. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6771019
6. Cohn M. The immune system: a weapon of mass destruction invented by evolution to even the odds during the war of the DNAs. *Immunol Rev*. 2002;185:24–38. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12190919
7. Cohn M. What are the commonalities governing the behavior of humoral immune recognitive repertoires? *Dev Comp Immunol*. 2006;30:19–42. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16139887
8. Ravetch JV. Fc receptors. *Curr Opin Immunol*. 1997;9(1):121–125. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9039776
9. Crowley JJ, Goldfien RD, Schrohenloher RE, et al. Incidence of three cross-reactive idiotypes on human rheumatoid factor paraproteins. *J Immunol*. 1988;140:3411–3418. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3129494
10. Nimmerjahn F, Ravetch JV. Divergent immunoglobulin g subclass activity through selective Fc receptor binding. *Science*. 2005;310(5753) 1510–1512. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16322460
11. Sanchez-Mazas A, Fernandez-Vina M, Middleton D, et al. Immunogenetics as a tool in anthropological studies. *Immunology*. 2011; 133(2):143–164. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21480890
12. Wright A, Morrison SL. Effect of glycosylation on antibody function: implications for genetic engineering. *Trends Biotechnol*. 1997;15(1):26–32. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9032990
13. Lux A, Nimmerjahn F. Impact of differential glycosylation on IgG activity. *Adv Exp Med Biol*. 2011;780:113–124. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21842369
14. Jefferis R, Lund J, Goodall M. Recognition sites on human IgG for Fc gamma receptors: the role of glycosylation. *Immunol Lett*. 1995;44(2–3):111–117. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7797239
15. Yoo EM, Morrison SL. IgA: an immune glycoprotein. *Clin Immunol*. 2005;116(1):3–10. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15925826
16. Suzuki H, Kiryluk K, Novak J, et al. The pathophysiology of IgA nephropathy. *JASN*. 2011;22(10):1795–1803. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21949093
17. Silverstein AM. *A History of Immunology*. San Diego, CA: Academic Press; 1989.
18. Behring E, Kitasato S. Ueber das Zustandekommen der Diphtherie-Immunitat und der Tetanus-Immunitat bei thieren. *Deutsche medizinsche Wochenschrift*. 1890;16:1145–1148.
19. Ehrlich P. Die Wertbemessung des Diphtherieheilserums. *Klinisches Jahrbuch*. 2006;6:299–326.
20. Lindenmann J. Origin of the terms "antibody" and "antigen." *Scand J Immunol*. 1984;19:281–285. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6374880
21. Tiselius A, Kabat EA. An electrophoretic study of immune sera and purified antibody preparations. *J Exp Med*. 1939;69:119–131. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19870831
22. Porter RR. Separation and isolation of fractions of rabbit gamma-globulin containing the antibody and antigenic combining sites. *Nature*. 1958;182(4636):670–671. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/13590068
23. Nisonoff A, Wissler FC, Lipman LN. Properties of the major component of a peptic digest of rabbit antibody. *Science*. 1960;132:1770–1771. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/13729245
24. Edelman GM, Poulik MD. Studies on the structural units of the gamma globulins. *J Exp Med*. 1961;113:861–884. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/13725659
25. Putnam FW. Immunoglobulin structure: variability and homology. *Science*. 1969;163:633–644. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4178710
26. Dreyer WJ, Bennett JC. The molecular basis of antibody formation: a paradox. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1965;54:864–869. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4160200
27. Hozumi N, Tonegawa S. Evidence for somatic rearrangement of immunoglobulin genes coding for variable and constant regions. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1976;73(10):3628–3632. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/824647
28. Harpaz Y, Chothia C. Many of the immunoglobulin superfamily domains in cell adhesion molecules and surface receptors belong to a new structural set which is close to that containing variable domains. *J Mol Biol*. 1994;238(4):528–539. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8176743
29. Chothia C, Novotny J, Bruccoleri R, Karplus M. Domain association in immunoglobulin molecules. The packing of variable domains. *J Mol Biol*. 1985;186:651–663. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4093982
30. Padlan EA. Anatomy of the antibody molecule. *Mol Immunol*. 1994; 31(3):169–217. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8114766
31. Kabat EA, Wu TT, Perry HM, Gottesman KS, Foeller C. *Sequences of Proteins of Immunological Interest*. Bethesda, MD: U.S. Department of Health and Human Services; 1991.
32. Chothia C, Lesk AM. Canonical structures for the hypervariable regions of immunoglobulins. *J Mol Biol*. 1987;196:901–917. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3681981
33. Ehrenmann F, Kaas Q, Lefranc MP. IMGT/3Dstructure-DB and IMGT/DomainGapAlign: a database and a tool for immunoglobulins or antibodies, T cell receptors, MHC, IgSF and MhcSF. *Nucleic Acids Res*. 2010;38:D301–D307. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19900967
34. Chothia C, Lesk AM, Tramontano A, et al. Conformations of immunoglobulin hypervariable regions. *Nature*. 1989;342:877–883. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2687698
35. Huston JS, McCartney J, Tai MS, et al. Medical applications of single-chain antibodies. *Int Rev Immunol*. 1993;10(2–3):195–217. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8360586
36. Alt FW, Baltimore D. Joining of immunoglobulin heavy chain gene segments: Implications from a chromosome with evidence of three D-J heavy fusions. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1982;79:4118–4122. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6287467
37. Rajewsky K. Clonal selection and learning in the antibody system. *Nature*. 1996;381(6585):751–758. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8657279
38. Hood L, Galas D. The digital code of DNA. *Nature*. 2003;421:444–448. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12540920
39. Nossal GJV. The double helix and immunology. *Nature*. 2003;421: 440–444. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12540919
40. Ichihara Y, Hayashida H, Miyazawa S, Kurosawa Y. Only DFL16, DSP2, and DQ52 gene families exist in mouse immunoglobulin heavy chain diversity gene loci, of which DFL16 and DSP2 originate from the same primordial DH gene. *Eur J Immunol*. 1989;19:1849–1854. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2583225
41. Feeney AJ, Riblet R. DST4: a new, and probably the last, functional DH gene in the BALB/c mouse. *Immunogenetics*. 1993;37(3):217–221. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8420829
42. Johnston CM, Wood AL, Bolland DJ, Corcoran AE. Complete sequence assembly and characterization of the C57BL/6 mouse Ig heavy chain V region. *J Immunol*. 2006;176(7):4221–4234. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16547259
43. Max EE, Seidman JG, Leder P. Sequences of five potential recombination sites encoded close to an immunoglobulin kappa constant region gene. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1979;76(7):3450–3454. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/115000

44. Sakano H, Huppi K, Heinrich G, Tonegawa S. Sequences at the somatic recombination sites of immunoglobulin light-chain genes. *Nature*. 1979;280(5720):288–294. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/111144
45. Thiebe R, Schable KF, Bensch A, et al. The variable genes and gene families of the mouse immunoglobulin kappa locus. *Eur J Immunol*. 1999;29(7):2072–2081. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10427969
46. Seidman JG, Max EE, Leder P. A kappa-immunoglobulin gene is formed by site-specific recombination without further somatic mutation. *Nature*. 1979;280(5721):370–375. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/111146
47. Selsing E, Miller J, Wilson R, Storb U. Evolution of mouse immunoglobulin lambda genes. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1982;79(15): 4681–4685. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6812053
48. Sanchez P, Marche PN, Rueff-Juy D, Cazenave PA. Mouse V lambda X gene sequence generates no junctional diversity and is conserved in mammalian species. *J Immunol*. 1990;144:2816–2820. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2108215
49. Ivanov II, Schelonka RL, Zhuang Y, Gartland GL, Zemlin M, Schroeder HW Jr. Development of the expressed immunoglobulin CDR-H3 repertoire is marked by focusing of constraints in length, amino acid utilization, and charge that are first established in early B cell progenitors. *J Immunol*. 2005;174:7773–7780. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15944280
50. Lee SK, Bridges SL Jr, Koopman WJ, Schroeder HW Jr. The immunoglobulin kappa light chain repertoire expressed in the synovium of a patient with rheumatoid arthritis. *Arthritis Rheum*. 1992;35:905–913. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1642656
51. Victor KD, Capra JD. An apparently common mechanism of generating antibody diversity: length variation of the VL-JL junction. *Mol Immunol*. 1994;31(1):39–46. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7508079
52. Brodeur PH, Riblet RJ. The immunoglobulin heavy chain variable region (IgH-V) locus in the mouse. I. One hundred Igh-V genes comprise seven families of homologous genes. *Eur J Immunol*. 1984;14:922–930. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6092095
53. Tutter A, Brodeur PH, Shlomchik MJ, Riblet RJ. Structure, map position, and evolution of two newly diverged mouse Ig VH gene families. *J Immunol*. 1991;147:3215–3223. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1680926
54. Perlmutter RM, Berson B, Griffin JA, Hood LE. Diversity in the germline antibody repertoire: molecular evolution of the T15 VH gene family. *J Exp Med*. 1985;162:1998–2016. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2999288
55. Kirkham PM, Mortari F, Newton JA, Schroeder HW Jr. Immuno-globulin VH clan and family identity predicts variable domain structure and may influence antigen binding. *EMBO J*. 1992;11:603–609. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1537339
56. Chang B, Casali P. The CDR1 sequences of a major proportion of human germline Ig V H genes are inherently susceptible to amino acid replacement. *Immunol Today*. 1994;15:367–373. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7916950
57. Rogozin IB, Kolchanov NA. Somatic hypermutagenesis in immunoglobulin genes. II. Influence of neighbouring base sequences on mutagenesis. *Biochim Biophys Acta*. 1992;1171(1):11–18. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1420357
58. Dorner T, Brezinschek HP, Brezinschek RI, Foster SJ, Domiati-Saad R, Lipsky PE. Analysis of the frequency and pattern of somatic mutations within nonproductively rearranged human variable heavy chain genes. *J Immunol*. 1997;158(6):2779–2789. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9058813
59. Tramontano A, Chothia C, Lesk AM. Framework residue 71 is a major determinant of the position and conformation of the second hypervariable region in the VH domains of immunoglobulins. *J Mol Biol*. 1990;215:175–182. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2118959
60. Al Lazikani B, Lesk AM, Chothia C. Canonical structures for the hypervariable regions of T cell alphabeta receptors. *J Mol Biol*. 2000;295(4): 979–995. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10656805
61. Kuroda D, Shirai H, Kobori M, Nakamura H. Systematic classification of CDR-L3 in antibodies: implications of the light chain subtypes and the VL-VH interface. *Proteins*. 2009;75(1):139–146. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18798566
62. North B, Lehmann A, Dunbrack RL Jr. A new clustering of antibody CDR loop conformations. *J Mol Biol*. 2011;406(2):228–256. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21035459
63. Vargas-Madrazo E, Lara-Ochoa F, Almagro JC. Canonical structure repertoire of the antigen-binding site of immunoglobulins suggests strong geometrical restrictions associated to the mechanism of immune recognition. *J Mol Biol*. 1995;254(3):497–504. Eratta: *J Mol Biol*. 1996; 258(5):893. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7490765
64. Almagro JC, Hernandez I, del Carmen RM, Vargas-Madrazo E. The differences between the structural repertoires of VH germ-line gene segments of mice and humans: implication for the molecular mechanism of the immune response. *Mol Immunol*. 1997;34(16–17):1199–1214.
65. Babor M, Kortemme T. Multi-constraint computational design suggests that native sequences of germline antibody H3 loops are nearly optimal for conformational flexibility. *Proteins*. 2009;75(4):846–858. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19194863
66. Shirai H, Kidera A, Nakamura H. Structural classification of CDR-H3 in antibodies. *FEBS Lett*. 1996;399(1–2):1–8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8980108
67. Shirai H, Kidera A, Nakamura H. H3-rules: identification of CDR-H3 structures in antibodies. *FEBS Lett*. 1999;455(1–2):188–197. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10428499
68. Kuroda D, Shirai H, Kobori M, Nakamura H. Structural classification of CDR-H3 revisited: a lesson in antibody modeling. *Proteins*. 2008;73(3): 608–620. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18473362
69. Ivanov II, Link JM, Ippolito GC, Schroeder HW Jr. Constraints on hydropathicity and sequence composition of HCDR3 are conserved across evolution. In: Zanetti M, Capra JD, eds. *The Antibodies*. London, United Kingdom: Taylor and Francis Group; 2002:43–67.
70. Zemlin M, Klinger M, Link J, et al. Expressed murine and human CDR-H3 intervals of equal length exhibit distinct repertoires that differ in their amino acid composition and predicted range of structures. *J Mol Biol*. 2003;334(4):733–749. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14636599
71. Ippolito GC, Schelonka RL, Zemlin M, et al. Forced usage of positively charged amino acids in immunoglobulin CDR-H3 impairs B cell development and antibody production. *J Exp Med*. 2006;203(6):1567–1578. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16754718
72. Schelonka RL, Ivanov II, Jung D, et al. A single DH gene segment is sufficient for B cell development and immune function. *J Immunol*. 2005;175:6624–6632. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16272317
73. Schelonka RL, Ivanov, II, Vale AM, et al. The CDR-H3 repertoire from TdT-deficient adult bone marrow is a close, but not exact, homologue of the CDR-H3 repertoire from perinatal liver. *J Immunol*. 2010;185(10): 6075–6084. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20956348
74. Schroeder HW Jr, Zhang L, Philips JB III. Slow, programmed maturation of the immunoglobulin HCDR3 repertoire during the third trimester of fetal life. *Blood*. 2001;98(9):2745–2751. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11675347
75. Link JM, Larson JE, Schroeder HW Jr. Despite extensive similarity in germline DH and JH sequence, the adult Rhesus macaque CDR-H3 repertoire differs from human. *Mol Immunol*. 2005;42:943–955. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15829286
76. Schelonka RL, Ivanov, II, Vale AM, Dimmitt RA, Khaled M, Schroeder HW Jr. Absence of N addition facilitates B cell development, but impairs immune responses. *Immunogenetics*. 2011;69(9):599–609.
77. Carey JB, Moffatt-Blue CS, Watson LC, Gavin AL, Feeney AJ. Repertoire-based selection into the marginal zone compartment during B cell development. *J Exp Med*. 2008;205(9):2043–2052. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18710933
78. Nguyen HH, Zemlin M, Vu HL, et al. Heterosubtypic immunity to influenza A virus infection requires a properly diversified antibody repertoire. *J Virol*. 2007;81:9331–9338. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17567700

79. Shlomchik MJ, Marshak-Rothstein A, Wolfowicz CB, Rothstein TL, Weigert MG. The role of clonal selection and somatic mutation in autoimmunity. *Nature*. 1987;328:805–811. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3498121
80. Tomlinson IM, Walter G, Jones PT, Dear PH, Sonnhammer EL, Winter G. The imprint of somatic hypermutation on the repertoire of human germline V genes. *J Mol Biol*. 1996;256(5):813–817. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8601832
81. Goodyear CS, Silverman GJ. B cell superantigens: a microbe's answer to innate-like B cells and natural antibodies. *Springer Semin Immunopathol*. 2005;26(4):463–484. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15633015
82. James LC, Roversi P, Tawfik DS. Antibody multispecificity mediated by conformational diversity. *Science*. 2003;299(5611):1362–1367. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12610298
83. Li Y, Lipschultz CA, Mohan S, Smith-Gill SJ. Mutations of an epitope hot-spot residue alter rate limiting steps of antigen-antibody protein-protein associations. *Biochemistry*. 2001;40(7):2011–2022. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11329268
84. Lipschultz CA, Yee A, Mohan S, Li Y, Smith-Gill SJ. Temperature differentially affects encounter and docking thermodynamics of antibody—antigen association. *J Mol Recognit*. 2002;15(1):44–52. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11870921
85. Bhat TN, Bentley GA, Boulot G, et al. Bound water molecules and conformational stabilization help mediate an antigen-antibody association. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1994;91(3):1089–1093. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8302837
86. Levitt M, Park BH. Water: now you see it, now you don't. *Structure*. 1993;1(4):223–226. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8081736
87. Greenspan NS, Di Cera E. Defining epitopes: it's not as easy as it seems. *Nature Biotechnol*. 1999;17(10):936–937. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10504677
88. Li Y, Urrutia M, Smith-Gill SJ, Mariuzza RA. Dissection of binding interactions in the complex between the anti-lysozyme antibody HyHEL- 63 and its antigen. *Biochemistry*. 2003;42(1):11–22. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12515535
89. Hawkins RE, Russell SJ, Baier M, Winter G. The contribution of contact and non-contact residues of antibody in the affinity of binding to antigen. The interaction of mutant D1.3 antibodies with lysozyme. *J Mol Biol*. 1993;234(4):958–964. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8263942
90. Patten PA, Gray NS, Yang PL, et al. The immunological evolution of catalysis. *Science*. 1996;271(5252):1086–1091. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8599084
91. Kramer A, Keitel T, Winkler K, Stocklein W, Hohne W, Schneider-Mergener J. Molecular basis for the binding promiscuity of an anti-p24 (HIV-1) monoclonal antibody. *Cell*. 1997;91(6):799–809. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9413989
92. Michaud GA, Salcius M, Zhou F, et al. Analyzing antibody specificity with whole proteome microarrays. *Nature Biotechnol*. 2003;21(12):1509–1512. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14608365
93. Pejchal R, Doores KJ, Walker LM, et al. A potent and broad neutralizing antibody recognizes and penetrates the HIV glycan shield. *Science*. 2011;334(6059):1097–1103. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21998254
94. McLellan JS, Pancera M, Carrico C, et al. Structure of HIV-1 gp120 V1/V2 domain with broadly neutralizing antibody PG9. *Nature*. 2011;480(7377):336–343. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22113616
95. Huber R, Bennett WS. Antibody-antigen flexibility. *Nature*. 1987;326(6111):334–335. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3561477
96. Stanfield RL, Zemla A, Wilson IA, Rupp B. Antibody elbow angles are influenced by their light chain class. *J Mol Biol*. 2006;357(5):1566–1574. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16497332
97. Lesk AM, Chothia C. Elbow motion in immunoglobulins involves a molecular ball-and-socket joint. *Nature*. 1988;335:188–190. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3412476
98. Dangl JL, Wensel TG, Morrison SL, Stryer L, Herzenberg LA, Oi VT. Segmental flexibility and complement fixation of genetically engineered chimeric human, rabbit and mouse antibodies. *EMBO J*. 1988;7:1989–1994. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3138110
99. Roux KH, Greenberg AS, Greene L, et al. Structural analysis of the nurse shark (new) antigen receptor (NAR): molecular convergence of NAR and unusual mammalian immunoglobulins. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1998;95(20):11804–11809. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9751746
100. Gopalakrishnan PV, Karush F. Antibody affinity. VI. Synthesis of bivalent lactosyl haptens and their interaction with anti-lactosyl antibodies. *Immunochemistry*. 1974;11(6):279–283. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4212947
101. Hornick CL, Karush F. Antibody affinity. 3. The role of multivalance. *Immunochemistry*. 1972;9(3):325–340. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4556115
102. Phillips ML, Oi VT, Schumaker VN. Electron microscopic study of ring-shaped, bivalent hapten, bivalent antidansyl monoclonal antibody complexes with identical variable domains but IgG1, IgG2a and IgG2b constant domains. *Mol Immunol*. 1990;27(2):181–190. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2320011
103. Schneider WP, Wensel TG, Stryer L, Oi VT. Genetically engineered immunoglobulins reveal structural features controlling segmental flex ibility. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1988;85(8):2509–2513. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3128789
104. Tan LK, Shopes RJ, Oi VT, Morrison SL. Influence of the hinge region on complement activation, C1q binding, and segmental flexibility in chimeric human immunoglobulins. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1990;87(1):162–166. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2296577
105. Shopes B. A genetically engineered human IgG with limited flexibility fully initiates cytolysis via complement. *Mol Immunol*. 1993;30(6):603–609. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8487779
106. Nezlin R. Internal movements in immunoglobulin molecules. *Adv Immunol*. 1990;48:1–40. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2190448
107. Schumaker VN, Phillips ML, Hanson DC. Dynamic aspects of antibody structure. *Mol Immunol*. 1991;28(12):1347–1360. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1749384
108. Roux KH, Monafo WJ, Davie JM, Greenspan NS. Construction of an extended three-dimensional idiotope map by electron microscopic analysis of idiotope-anti-idiotope complexes. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1987;84(14):4984–4988. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3496600
109. Valentine RC, Green NM. Electron microscopy of an antibody-hapten complex. *J Mol Biol*. 1967;27(3):615–617. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4167449
110. Wade RH, Taveau JC, Lamy JN. Concerning the axial rotational flexibility of the Fab regions of immunoglobulin G. *J Mol Biol*. 1989;206(2):349–356. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2716050
111. Brekke OH, Michaelsen TE, Sandin R, Sandlie I. Activation of complement by an IgG molecule without a genetic hinge. *Nature*. 1993;363(6430):628–630. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8510754
112. Bruggemann M, Williams GT, Bindon CI, et al. Comparison of the effector functions of human immunoglobulins using a matched set of chimeric antibodies. *J Exp Med*. 1987;166(5):1351–1361. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3500259
113. Greenspan NS, Monafo WJ, Davie JM. Interaction of IgG3 anti-streptococcal group A carbohydrate (GAC) antibody with streptococcal group A vaccine: enhancing and inhibiting effects of anti-GAC, anti-isotypic, and anti-idiotypic antibodies. *J Immunol*. 1987;138(1):285–292. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2431057
114. Cooper LJ, Robertson D, Granzow R, Greenspan NS. Variable domain-identical antibodies exhibit IgG subclass-related differences in affinity and kinetic constants as determined by surface plasmon resonance. *Mol Immunol*. 1994;31(8):577–584. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7515151
115. Cooper LJ, Shikhman AR, Glass DD, Kangisser D, Cunningham MW, Greenspan NS. Role of heavy chain constant domains in antibody-antigen interaction. Apparent specificity differences among strepto

coccal IgG antibodies expressing identical variable domains. *J Immunol*. 1993;150(6):2231–2242.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7680687
116. Morelock MM, Rothlein R, Bright SM, et al. Isotype choice for chimeric antibodies affects binding properties. *J Biol Chem*. 1994;269(17):13048–13055.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7909805
117. Fulpius T, Spertini F, Reininger L, Izui S. Immunoglobulin heavy chain constant region determines the pathogenicity and the antigen-binding activity of rheumatoid factor. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1993;90(6):2345–2349.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8460145
118. Casadevall A, Scharff MD. The mouse antibody response to infection with Cryptococcus neoformans: VH and VL usage in polysaccharide binding antibodies. *J Exp Med*. 1991;174(1):151–160.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1676047
119. Pritsch O, Hudry-Clergeon G, Buckle M, et al. Can immunoglobulin C(H)1 constant region domain modulate antigen binding affinity of antibodies? *J Clin Invest*. 1996;98(10):2235–2243.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8941639
120. Pritsch O, Magnac C, Dumas G, Bouvet JP, Alzari P, Dighiero G. Can isotype switch modulate antigen-binding affinity and influence clonal selection? *Eur J Immunol*. 2000;30(12):3387–3395.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11093156
121. Torres M, May R, Scharff MD, Casadevall A. Variable-region-identical antibodies differing in isotype demonstrate differences in fine specificity and idiotype. *J Immunol*. 2005;174(4):2132–2142.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15699144
122. McLay J, Leonard E, Petersen S, Shapiro D, Greenspan NS, Schreiber JR. Gamma 3 gene-disrupted mice selectively deficient in the dominant IgG subclass made to bacterial polysaccharides. II. Increased susceptibility to fatal pneumococcal sepsis due to absence of anti-polysaccharide IgG3 is corrected by induction of anti-polysaccharide IgG1. *J Immunol*. 2002;168(7):3437–3443.
123. Kinoshita N, Ohno M, Nishiura T, et al. Glycosylation at the Fab portion of myeloma immunoglobulin G and increased fucosylated bian-tennary sugar chains: structural analysis by high-performance liquid chromatography and antibody-lectin enzyme immunoassay using Lens culinaris agglutinin. *Cancer Res*. 1991;51(21):5888–5892.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1933856
124. Dunn-Walters D, Boursier L, Spencer J. Effect of somatic hypermutation on potential N-glycosylation sites in human immunoglobulin heavy chain variable regions. *Mol Immunol*. 2000;37(3–4):107–113.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10865109
125. Tao MH, Morrison SL. Studies of aglycosylated chimeric mouse-human IgG. Role of carbohydrate in the structure and effector functions mediated by the human IgG constant region. *J Immunol*. 1989;143(8):2595–25601.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2507634
126. Wawrzynczak EJ, Cumber AJ, Parnell GD, Jones PT, Winter G. Blood clearance in the rat of a recombinant mouse monoclonal antibody lacking the N-linked oligosaccharide side chains of the CH2 domains. *Mol Immunol*. 1992;29(2):213–220.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1542298
127. Tsuchiya N, Endo T, Matsuta K, et al. Effects of galactose depletion from oligosaccharide chains on immunological activities of human IgG. *J Rheumatol*. 1989;16(3):285–290.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2498512
128. Krapp S, Mimura Y, Jefferis R, Huber R, Sondermann P. Structural analysis of human IgG-Fc glycoforms reveals a correlation between glycosylation and structural integrity. *J Mol Biol*. 2003;325(5):979–989.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12527303
129. Kaneko Y, Nimmerjahn F, Ravetch JV. Anti-inflammatory activity of immunoglobulin G resulting from Fc sialylation. *Science*. 2006;313(5787):670–673.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16888140
130. Anthony RM, Kobayashi T, Wermeling F, Ravetch JV. Intravenous gammaglobulin suppresses inflammation through a novel T(H)2 pathway. *Nature*. 2011;475(7354):110–113.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21685887
131. Amin AR, Tamma SM, Oppenheim JD, et al. Specificity of the murine IgD receptor on T cells is for N-linked glycans on IgD molecules. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1991;88(20):9238–9242.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1924387
132. Leibiger H, Wustner D, Stigler RD, Marx U. Variable domain-linked oligosaccharides of a human monoclonal IgG: structure and influence on antigen binding. *Biochem J*. 1999;338(2):529–538.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10024532
133. Wright A, Tao MH, Kabat EA, Morrison SL. Antibody variable region glycosylation: position effects on antigen binding and carbohydrate structure. *EMBO J*. 1991;10:2717–2723.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1717254
134. Coloma MJ, Trinh RK, Martinez AR, Morrison SL. Position effects of variable region carbohydrate on the affinity and in vivo behavior of an anti-(1–>6) dextran antibody. *J Immunol*. 1999;162(4):2162–2170.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9973491
135. Gala FA, Morrison SL. V region carbohydrate and antibody expression. *J Immunol*. 2004;172(9):5489–5494.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15100290
136. Parekh RB, Roitt IM, Isenberg DA, Dwek RA, Ansell BM, Rademacher TW. Galactosylation of IgG associated oligosaccharides: reduction in patients with adult and juvenile onset rheumatoid arthritis and relation to disease activity. *Lancet*. 1988;1(8592):966–969.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2896829
137. Tomana M, Schrohenloher RE, Koopman WJ, Alarcon GS, Paul WA. Abnormal glycosylation of serum IgG from patients with chronic inflammatory diseases. *Arthritis Rheumat*. 1988;31:333–338.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3358797
138. Ohta Y, Flajnik M. IgD, like IgM, is a primordial immunoglobulin class perpetuated in most jawed vertebrates. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2006;103(28):10723–10728.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16818885
139. Hombach J, Tsubata T, Leclercq L, Stappert H, Reth MG. Molecular components of the B-cell antigen receptor complex of the IgM class. *Nature*. 1990;343:760–762.
140. Venkitaraman AR, Williams GT, Dariavach P, Neuberger MS. The B-cell antigen receptor of the five immunoglobulin classes. *Nature*. 1991;352(6338):777–781.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1881434
141. Campbell MA, Sefton BM. Protein tyrosine phosphorylation is induced in murine B lymphocytes in response to stimulation with anti-immunoglobulin. *EMBO J*. 1990;9(7):2519–2526.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2357961
142. Davis AC, Roux KH, Shulman MJ. On the structure of polymeric IgM. *Eur J Immunol*. 1988;18(7):1001–1008.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3136022
143. Davis AC, Roux KH, Pursey J, Shulman MJ. Intermolecular disulfide bonding in IgM: effects of replacing cysteine residues in the mu heavy chain. *EMBO J*. 1989;8(9):2125–2131.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2511005
144. Feinstein A, Munn EA. Conformation of the free and antigen-bound IgM antibody molecules. *Nature*. 1969;224(226):1307–1309.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/5359295
145. Svehag SE, Bloth B, Seligmann M. Ultrastructure of papain and pepsin digestion fragments of human IgM globulins. *J Exp Med*. 1969;130(4):691–705.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4898837
146. Griffiss JM, Jarvis GA, O'Brien JP, Eads MM, Schneider H. Lysis of Neisseria gonorrhoeae initiated by binding of normal human IgM to a hexosamine-containing lipooligosaccharide epitope(s) is augmented by strain-specific, properdin-binding-dependent alternative complement pathway activation. *J Immunol*. 1991;147(1):298–305.
147. Lutz C, Ledermann B, Kosco-Vilbois MH, et al. IgD can largely substitute for loss of IgM function in B cells. *Nature*. 1998;393(6687):797–801.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9655395
148. Cheng HL, Blattner FR, Fitzmaurice L, Mushinski JF, Tucker PW. Structure of genes for membrane and secreted murine IgD heavy chains. *Nature*. 1982;296(5856):410–415.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6801528
149. Chen K, Xu W, Wilson M, et al. Immunoglobulin D enhances immune surveillance by activating antimicrobial, proinflammatory and B cell-stimulating programs in basophils. *Nat Immunol*. 2009;10(8):889–898.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19561614
150. Yuan R, Clynes R, Oh J, Ravetch JV, Scharff MD. Antibody-mediated modulation of Cryptococcus neoformans infection is dependent on distinct Fc receptor functions and IgG subclasses. *J Exp Med*. 1998;187(4):641–648.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9463414

151. Garred P, Michaelsen TE, Aase A. The IgG subclass pattern of complement activation depends on epitope density and antibody and complement concentration. *Scand J Immunol*. 1989;30(3):379–382. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2476845
152. Michaelsen TE, Garred P, Aase A. Human IgG subclass pattern of inducing complement-mediated cytolysis depends on antigen concentration and to a lesser extent on epitope patchiness, antibody affinity and complement concentration. *Eur J Immunol*. 1991;21(1):11–16. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1703960
153. Bindon CI, Hale G, Bruggemann M, Waldmann H. Human monoclonal IgG isotypes differ in complement activating function at the level of C4 as well as C1q. *J Exp Med*. 1988;168(1):127–142. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3260935
154. Nimmerjahn F, Ravetch JV. Fcgamma receptors: old friends and new family members. *Immunity*. 2006;24(1):19–28. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16413920
155. Gribben JG, Guinan EC, Boussiotis VA, et al. Complete blockade of B7 family-mediated costimulation is necessary to induce human alloantigen-specific anergy: a method to ameliorate graft-versus-host disease and extend the donor pool. *Blood*. 1996;87(11):4887–4893. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8639863
156. van der Neut Kolfschoten M, Schuurman J, Losen M, et al. Anti-inflammatory activity of human IgG4 antibodies by dynamic Fab arm exchange. *Science*. 2007;317(5844):1554–1557. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17872445
157. Aalberse R. The role of IgG antibodies in allergy and immunotherapy. *Allergy*. 2011;66(Suppl 95):28–30. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21668848
158. Mestecky J, Moro I, Kerr MA, Woof JM. Mucosal immunoglobulins. In: Mestecky J, Lamm ME, Strober W, eds. *Mucosal Immunology*. Amsterdam, The Netherlands: Elsevier Academic Press; 2005:153–181.
159. Plaut AG, Wistar R Jr, Capra JD. Differential susceptibility of human IgA immunoglobulins to streptococcal IgA protease. *J Clin Invest*. 1974;54(6):1295–1300. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4436434
160. Sharpe AH, Fields BN. Pathogenesis of viral infections. Basic concepts derived from the reovirus model. *New Eng J Med*. 1985;312(8):486–497. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2982096
161. Zhaori G, Sun M, Faden HS, Ogra PL. Nasopharyngeal secretory antibody response to poliovirus type 3 virion proteins exhibit different specificities after immunization with live or inactivated poliovirus vaccines. *J Infect Dis*. 1989;159(6):1018–1024. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2470831
162. Carayannopoulos L, Hexham JM, Capra JD. Localization of the binding site for the monocyte immunoglobulin (Ig) A-Fc receptor (CD89) to the domain boundary between Calpha2 and Calpha3 in human IgA1. *J Exp Med*. 1996;183(4):1579–1586. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8666916
163. Roos A, Bouwman LH, van Gijlswijk-Janssen DJ, Faber-Krol MC, Stahl GL, Daha MR. Human IgA activates the complement system via the mannan-binding lectin pathway. *J Immunol*. 2001;167(5):2861–2868. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11509633
164. Zheng Y, Shopes B, Holowka D, Baird B. Conformations of IgE bound to its receptor Fc epsilon RI and in solution. *Biochemistry*. 1991;30(38):9125–9132. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1832555
165. Sanders LA, van de Winkel JG, Rijkers GT, et al. Fc gamma receptor IIa (CD32) heterogeneity in patients with recurrent bacterial respiratory tract infections. *J Infect Dis*. 1994;170(4):854–861. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7930727
166. Bolland S, Ravetch JV. Spontaneous autoimmune disease in Fc(gamma)RIIB-deficient mice results from strain-specific epistasis. *Immunity*. 2000;13(2):277–285. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10981970
167. West AP Jr, Bjorkman PJ. Crystal structure and immunoglobulin G binding properties of the human major histocompatibility complex-related Fc receptor(,). *Biochemistry*. 2000;39(32):9698–9708. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10933786
168. Martin WL, West AP Jr, Gan L, Bjorkman PJ. Crystal structure at 2.8 A of an FcRn/heterodimeric Fc complex: mechanism of pH-dependent binding. *Mol Cell*. 2001;7(4):867–877. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11336709
169. Kubagawa H, Oka S, Kubagawa Y, et al. Identity of the elusive IgM Fc receptor (FcmuR) in humans. *J Exp Med*. 2009;206(12):2779–2793. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19858324
170. Maliszewski CR, March CJ, Schoenborn MA, Gimpel S, Shen L. Expression cloning of a human Fc receptor for IgA. *J Exp Med*. 1990;172(6):1665–1672. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2258698
171. Blum JH, Stevens TL, DeFranco AL. Role of the mu immunoglobulin heavy chain transmembrane and cytoplasmic domains in B cell antigen receptor expression and signal transduction. *J Biol Chem*. 1993;268(36):27236–27245. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8262964
172. Kaisho T, Schwenk F, Rajewsky K. The roles of gamma1 heavy chain membrane expression and cytoplasmic tail in IgG1 responses. *Science*. 1997;276(5311):412–415. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9103199
173. Achatz G, Nitschke L, Lamers MC. Effect of transmembrane and cytoplasmic domains of IgE on the IgE response. *Science*. 1997;276(5311):409–411. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9103198
174. PleimanCM,Chien NC, Cambier JC. Point mutations define a mIgM transmembrane region motif that determines intersubunit signal transduction in the antigen receptor. *J Immunol*. 1994;152(6):2837–2844. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8144885
175. Brandtzaeg P, Prydz H. Direct evidence for an integrated function of J chain and secretory component in epithelial transport of immunoglobulins. *Nature*. 1984;311(5981):71–73. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6433206
176. Rojas R, Apodaca G. Immunoglobulin transport across polarized epithelial cells. *Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol*. 2002;3(12):944–955. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12461560
177. Mestecky J, Schrohenloher RE. Site of attachment of J chain to human immunoglobulin M. *Nature*. 1974;249(458):650–652. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4209267
178. Mestecky J, Schrohenloher RE, Kulhavy R, Wright GP, Tomana M. Site of J chain attachment to human polymeric IgA. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1974;71(2):544–548. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4131279
179. Bastian A, Kratzin H, Fallgren-Gebauer E, Eckart K, Hilschmann N. Intra- and inter-chain disulfide bridges of J chain in human S-IgA. *Adv Exp Med Biol*. 1995;371A:581–583. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8525994
180. Frutiger S, Hughes GJ, Paquet N, Luthy R, Jaton JC. Disulfide bond assignment in human J chain and its covalent pairing with immunoglobulin M. *Biochemistry*. 1992;31(50):12643–12647. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1472500
181. Sorensen V, Sundvold V, Michaelsen TE, Sandlie I. Polymerization of IgA and IgM: roles of Cys309/Cys414 and the secretory tailpiece. *J Immunol*. 1999;162(6):3448–3455. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10092800
182. de Lalla C, Fagioli C, Cessi FS, Smilovich D, Sitia R. Biogenesis and function of IgM: the role of the conserved mu-chain tailpiece glycans. *Mol Immunol*. 1998;35(13):837–845. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9839552
183. Sorensen V, Rasmussen IB, Sundvold V, Michaelsen TE, Sandlie I. Structural requirements for incorporation of J chain into human IgM and IgA. *Int Immunol*. 2000;12(1):19–27. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10607746
184. Zikan J, Novotny J, Trapane TL, et al. Secondary structure of the immunoglobulin J chain. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1985;82(17):5905–5909. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3929246
185. Mole JE, Bhown AS, Bennett JC. Primary structure of human J chain: alignment of peptides from chemical and enzymatic hydrolyses. *Biochemistry*. 1977;16(16):3507–3513. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/407930
186. Randall TD, Brewer JW, Corley RB. Direct evidence that J chain regulates the polymeric structure of IgM in antibody-secreting B cells. *J Biol Chem*. 1992;267(25):18002–18007. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1517233
187. Hughey CT, Brewer JW, Colosia AD, Rosse WF, Corley RB. Production of IgM hexamers by normal and autoimmune B cells: implications for the physiologic role of hexameric IgM. *J Immunol*. 1998;161(8):4091–4097. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9780180

188. Mostov KE, Friedlander M, Blobel G. The receptor for transepithelial transport of IgA and IgM contains multiple immunoglobulin-like domains. *Nature*. 1984;308:37–43. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6322002
189. Mostov KE, Blobel G. A transmembrane precursor of secretory component. The receptor for transcellular transport of polymeric immunoglobulins. *J Biol Chem*. 1982;257(19):11816–11821. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7118912
190. Kaetzel CS. The polymeric immunoglobulin receptor: bridging innate and adaptive immune responses at mucosal surfaces. *Immunol Rev*. 2005;206:83–99. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16048543
191. Perrier C, Sprenger N, Corthesy B. Glycans on secretory component participate in innate protection against mucosal pathogens. *J Biol Chem*. 2006;281(20):14280–14287. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16543244
192. Dallas SD, Rolfe RD. Binding of Clostridium difficile toxin A to human milk secretory component. *J Med Microbiol*. 1998;47(10):879–888. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9788811
193. Phalipon A, Cardona A, Kraehenbuhl JP, Edelman L, Sansonetti PJ, Corthesy B. Secretory component: a new role in secretory IgA-mediated immune exclusion in vivo. *Immunity*. 2002;17(1):107–115. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12150896
194. Shimada S, Kawaguchi-Miyashita M, Kushiro A, et al. Generation of polymeric immunoglobulin receptor-deficient mouse with marked reduction of secretory IgA. *J Immunol*. 1999;163(10):5367–5373. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10553061
195. Wijburg OL, Uren TK, Simpfendorfer K, Johansen FE, Brandtzaeg P, Strugnell RA. Innate secretory antibodies protect against natural Salmonella typhimurium infection. *J Exp Med*. 2006;203(1):21–26. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16390940
196. Sun K, Johansen FE, Eckmann L, Metzger DW. An important role for polymeric Ig receptor-mediated transport of IgA in protection against Streptococcus pneumoniae nasopharyngeal carriage. *J Immunol*. 2004; 173(7):4576–4581. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15383591
197. Huang YT, Wright A, Gao X, Kulick L, Yan H, Lamm ME. Intraepithelial cell neutralization of HIV-1 replication by IgA. *J Immunol*. 2005;174(8):4828–4835. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15814709
198. Mazanec MB, Kaetzel CS, Lamm ME, Fletcher D, Nedrud JG. Intracellular neutralization of virus by immunoglobulin A antibodies. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1992;89(15):6901–6905. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1323121
199. Kaetzel CS, Robinson JK, Chintalacharuvu KR, Vaerman JP, Lamm ME. The polymeric immunoglobulin receptor (secretory component) mediates transport of immune complexes across epithelial cells: a local defense function for IgA. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1991;88(19):8796–8800. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1924341
200. Banks WA, Freed EO, Wolf KM, Robinson SM, Franko M, Kumar VB. Transport of human immunodeficiency virus type 1 pseudoviruses across the blood-brain barrier: role of envelope proteins and adsorptive endocytosis. *J Virol*. 2001;75(10):4681–4691. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11312339
201. Zhang JR, Mostov KE, Lamm ME, et al. The polymeric immunoglobulin receptor translocates pneumococci across human nasopharyngeal epithelial cells. *Cell*. 2000;102(6):827–837. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11030626
202. Harris LJ, Skaletsky E, McPherson A. Crystallographic structure of an intact IgG1 monoclonal antibody. *J Mol Biol*. 1998;275(5):861–872. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9480774
203. Manivel V, Sahoo NC, Salunke DM, Rao KV. Maturation of an antibody response is governed by modulations in flexibility of the antigen-combining site. *Immunity*. 2000;13(5):611–620. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11114374
204. Kyte J, Doolittle RF. A simple method for displaying the hydropathic character of a protein. *J Mol Biol*. 1982;157:105–132. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7108955
205. Eisenberg D. Three-dimensional structure of membrane and surface proteins. *Ann Rev Biochem*. 1984;53:595–623. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6383201
206. Carayannopoulos L, Capra JD. Immunoglobulins: structure and function. In: Paul WE, ed. *Fundamental Immunology*. New York, NY: Raven Press; 1993:283–314.
207. Boehm MK, Woof JM, Kerr MA, Perkins SJ. The Fab and Fc fragments of IgA1 exhibit a different arrangement from that in IgG: a study by X-ray and neutron solution scattering and homology modelling. *J Mol Biol*. 1999;286(5):1421–1447. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10064707
208. Garman SC, Wurzburg BA, Tarchevskaya SS, Kinet JP, Jardetzky TS. Structure of the Fc fragment of human IgE bound to its high-affinity receptor Fc epsilonRI alpha. *Nature*. 2000;406(6793):259–266. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10917520
209. Lefranc MP, Lefranc G. *The Immunoglobulin FactsBook*. San Diego, CA: Academic Press; 2001.
210. Kuby J. *Immunology*. New York, NY: W.H. Freeman and Company; 1997.
211. Janeway CA Jr, Travers P, Walport M, Shlomchik M. *Immunobiology*. New York, NY: Garland Publishing; 1999.

CHAPTER 6

Immunoglobulins: Molecular Genetics

Edward E. Max • Sebastian Fugmann

INTRODUCTION

To respond to a foreign molecule (antigen) on an invading pathogen, the "humoral" immune system generates antibodies, or immunoglobulins (Igs), that can bind specifically to the offending antigen. Each antibody molecule is composed of two identical light (L) chains and two identical heavy (H) chains, all linked by disulfide bonds to form a symmetric Y-shaped tetramer. The ability of the immune system to generate an antigen-specific antibody depends on the fact that, before exposure to antigen, millions of naïve resting B cells circulate in the individual, each cell displaying on its membrane several thousand identical copies of a single unique species of antibody; these serve as B-cell receptors (BCRs) for that lymphocyte. Only a tiny fraction of the B cells express a BCR capable of binding to any particular antigen. When these B cells bind their antigen, they become activated to proliferate and mature into antibody-secreting plasma cells, which manufacture large amounts of antibody specific for the activating antigen. To be able to generate antibodies against a universe of diverse pathogens, this "clonal selection" mechanism for specific antibody secretion requires an enormous diversity of Ig species expressed on naïve B cells prior to antigen exposure. Indeed, in the 1960s the number of different antibody sequences in the repertoire of typical mouse was estimated in the millions. To encode this many sequences seemed to require an unreasonably high percentage of the mammalian genome (now estimated to contain only about 30,000 genes). Understanding the genetic source of Ig diversity—Ig gene assembly—was the first major challenge and achievement of the molecular biologic investigations of antibody genes, and this will be discussed first in this chapter.

A week or so after antigen administration, the B-cell response changes in two ways that generally improve the protective functions of antibodies. B cells initially express antibodies of the IgM isotype, but cells that migrate into germinal centers receive T-cell-derived stimuli that can induce them to switch to production of IgG, IgA, or IgE without changing their antigen specificity; this switch results from a deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) recombination event known as class switch recombination (CSR). In addition, over the course of an immune response, the affinity of antibody for antigen gradually improves as a result of somatic hypermutation (SHM) of antibody genes, coupled to selection for B cells expressing high-affinity antibodies. CSR and SHM are discussed later in this chapter.

In this chapter, well-established facts about Ig genes are summarized concisely, while areas currently under investigation are considered in more detail, with particular attention to topics expected to interest immunologists.

OVERVIEW OF IMMUNOGLOBULIN GENE ASSEMBLY

In the 1960s, investigators determined the amino acid sequences of Igs secreted by several mouse myelomas (clonal tumors of B-lymphocytes that secrete a single pure species of Ig). The N-terminal domains of the L and H chains—each roughly 100 amino acids—were highly diverse between different myeloma proteins and were designated variable (V) regions. In contrast, sequences of the remaining domains of the proteins were essentially identical for every myeloma Ig of a given class (and so they were designated constant [C] region domains). The advent of recombinant DNA technology allowed comparisons of V region genes expressed in different myelomas with the corresponding sequences in nonlymphoid DNA (commonly referred to as "germline" DNA). It was found that each myeloma V gene is composed of several segments that are separated in germline DNA; these germline segments must undergo one or more DNA recombination events to assemble a complete V region.[1] For example, each complete Vκ gene from a myeloma or B-lymphocyte encodes roughly 108 amino acids and is assembled by linking one of about 40 germline Vκ segments (encoding amino acids 1 through 95) to one (of five) "joining" or Jκ segments encoding residues 96 to 108. Similarly, a complete Vλ gene is assembled from one germline Vλ segment and one Jλ segment. H chains are assembled from three segments; a diversity (D) segment is interposed between V_H and J_H. In developing B cells, the germline gene segments are assembled into functional V exons by a process named V(D)J recombination (Fig. 6.1).

V(D)J recombination is a "cut and paste" process in which the DNA between two recombining V, D, or J gene segments is excised from the chromosome, and the two remaining DNA segments are joined together to reseal the DNA break. The two principal proteins executing the "cut" phase of this process are encoded by the recombination activating genes (RAG)1 and 2. These proteins recognize unique sequences, known as recombination signal sequences (RSSs), that flank and mark each eligible V, D, and J gene segment (RSSs are described further in the following). After the RAG proteins cut the DNA, the subsequent "joining" of the gene segments relies largely on ubiquitous DNA repair factors.

How Recombination Contributes to Diversity

V(D)J recombination contributes in several distinct ways to the diversity of antigen-binding specificities. First, there is

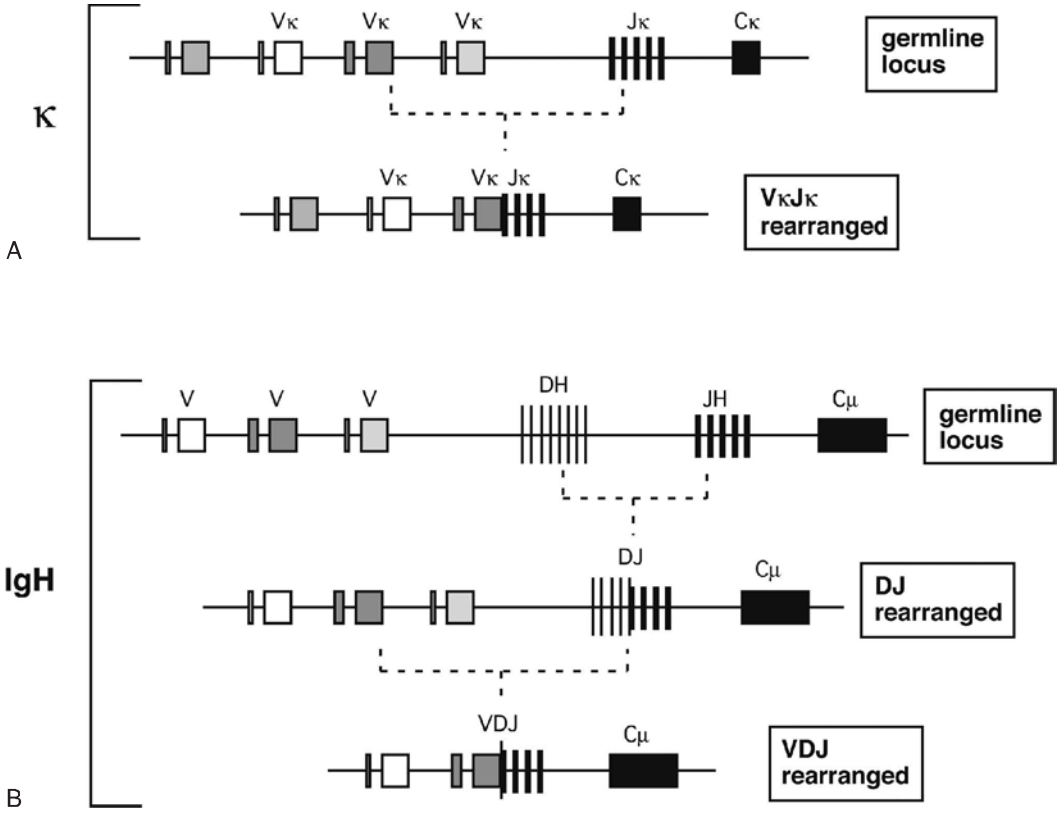


FIG. 6.1. Variable Assembly Recombination. **A:** In the κ locus, a single recombination event joins a germline Vκ region with one of the Jκ segments. **B:** In the immunoglobulin H locus, an initial recombination joins a diversity segment to a J_H segment. A second recombination completes the variable assembly by joining a V_H to DJ_H.

combinatorial diversity, as each Ig locus contains multiple V, D (in case of the IgH locus), and J segments that can be combined in many ways. The total number of theoretically possible combinations of V_H, D_H, J_H, V_L, and J_L, is the multiplication product of the numbers of possible H chains—about 40 (V_H) × 27 (D_H) × 6 (J_H) or 6480 combinations in humans—times the number of possible L chain combinations (about 290), or almost 2 million. This repertoire is vastly larger than could be achieved by devoting the same total lengths of DNA sequence to preassembled variable region exons. Second, there is junctional diversity generated by flexibility in the position of joining between gene segments. This was initially recognized by comparisons of nucleotide sequences of various myeloma Vκ genes to their germline Vκ and Jκ precursors. As shown in Figure 6.2A, these comparisons revealed that the crossover point between sequence derived from a germline Vκ region and a Jκ region could vary in different myelomas, increasing the diversity of amino acids around codons 95 and 96. H chain VDJ exons exhibit this flexibility at both V-D and D-J junctions, yielding striking variation in the lengths D region–derived segments, from zero to about 14 amino acids. And additional junctional diversity is produced by the addition of nucleotides not present in any germline elements: "N" and "P" nucleotides, discussed below. Importantly, the three-dimensional structures of Igs established by X-ray crystallography reveal that the V_L-J_L junction and the V_H-D_H-J_H junction each encode one of the three "complementarity determining region" loops of L or H chain that can contact antigen; thus, this junctional diversity is directly functionally relevant for diversifying antigen binding.

The imprecision of V(D)J recombination increases Ig diversity, but at a cost. Because the precise boundaries between V, D, and J result from independent stochastic events, only about one-third of all recombination events maintain the correct reading frame through the J segments. Gene rearrangements leading to functional Ig genes are often referred to as "productive," while out-of-frame rearrangements are labeled "nonproductive."

Function of Recombination Signal Sequences

Analysis of DNA sequences flanking the germline V, D, and J gene segments revealed highly similar sequence motifs that have subsequently been shown to define targets for V(D)J recombination: the RSSs, which serve as the recognition sequences for the V(D)J recombinase proteins RAG1 and RAG2, as mentioned previously. Notably, RSSs lie adjacent to L- and H-chain Ig gene segments and to T-cell–receptor (TCR) gene elements throughout phylogeny. RSSs consist of a conserved seven base pairs (bps) long "heptamer" (consensus: CACAGTG) and a nine bp long "nonamer" sequences

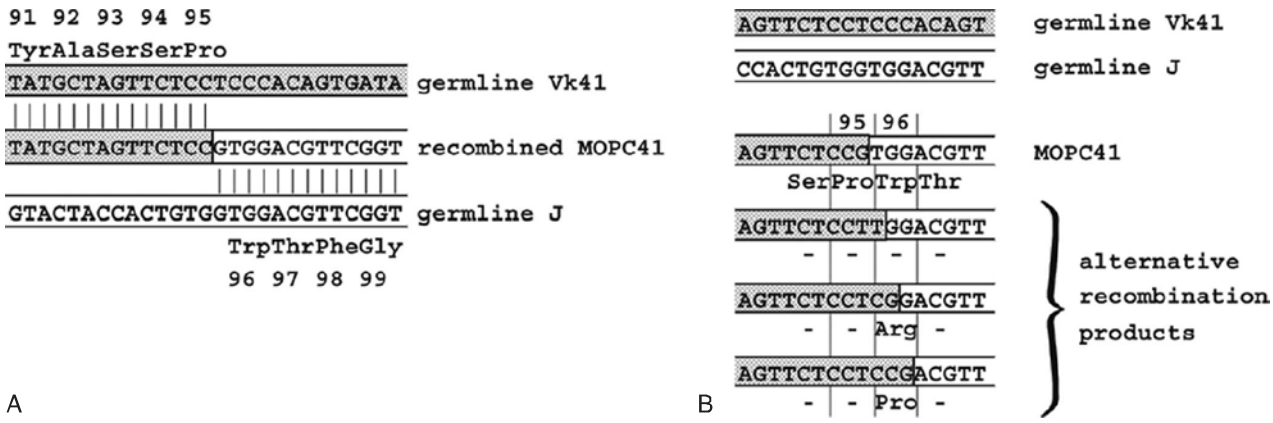


FIG. 6.2. Vκ-Jκ Recombination at Single Base Resolution. A: The sequence of the recombined MOPC41 κ gene around the VJ junction is shown (*center*) with the sequences of the two germline precursors (Vκ41 and Jκ1) shown above and below. The germline origins of the recombined gene are indicated by the vertical lines and the shading of the V-derived sequence. **B:** The consequences of joining the same germline sequences (from part *A*) at four different positions are shown. Of the four alternative recombination products illustrated, the top one is that actually found in MOPC41. The second example has a single nucleotide difference but no change in encoded amino acid sequence. The third and fourth alternatives yield Arg or Pro at position 96; both of these amino acids have been found at this position in sequenced mouse κ chains.

(consensus: ACAAAAACC) that are separated by less well-conserved spacers of either approximately 12 or 23 bp in length (Fig. 6.3). Based on the spacer lengths, the two classes of RSSs are referred to as 12-RSSs and 23-RSSs, respectively. (Note that some laboratories use the term recombination signal instead of RSS in their publications.)

Recombination occurs almost exclusively between coding sequences associated with RSSs of different spacer lengths, a requirement referred to as the "12/23-rule" (i.e., the recombination between two 12-RSSs [or two 23-RSSs] is "forbidden" and does not occur *in vivo*). Within each gene locus, all gene segments of one class (e.g., all Vs in the Igκ locus) carry RSSs with the same spacer length. Thus the 12/23 rule drives appropriate recombination events leading to functional VJ and VDJ products, and prevents futile recombination events, such as between two V or two J gene segments. While the heptamer and nonamer are the major determinants of RSS function necessary for V(D)J recombination, increasing evidence suggests that spacer sequences can modulate recombination efficiencies of compatible gene segments (e.g., they affect the non-random usage of human Vκ elements[2]).

THE THREE IMMUNOGLOBULIN GENE LOCI

To understand the contribution of the germline V, D, J element repertoire to Ig diversity, several laboratories undertook cloning and sequence analysis of individual V region genes from the IgH, Igκ, and Igλ loci of human and mouse. More recently, the complete sequences of all human and mouse Ig loci have been determined as part of the genome sequencing projects for these two species (available online at www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov, though annotation that describes

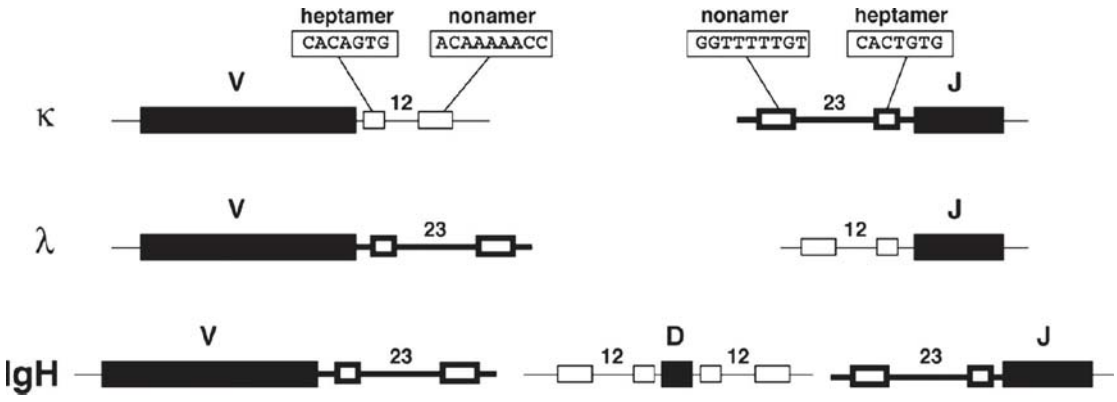


FIG. 6.3. Conserved Elements Flank Germline Variable (V), Diversity (D), and Joining (J) Region Genes. Conserved heptamer and nonamer recombination signal sequences (RSSs) lie adjacent to V, D, and J coding sequences and are important for targeting V(D)J recombination. The heptamer and nonamer elements are separated by spacer regions of about 12 basepairs (bp) (*thin lines*) or 23 bp (*thick lines*). Depending on the locus, V regions may be flanked by 12 bp or 23 bp RSS; and similarly for J regions. But one of each type of element must be present for recombination to occur, a requirement that prevents futile recombination events (e.g., J to J).

TABLE 6.1 Overview of the Number of Variable, Diversity, and Joining Segments in Each of the Three Immunoglobulin Loci in Humans and Mice

Locus	Species	V		D		J	
		Functional	*Pseudogenes*	*Functional*	*Pseudogenes*	*Functional*	*Pseudogenes*
IgH	Mouse	110	85	10		4	
	Human	40	83	24	3	6	3
Igκ	Mouse	95	45			4	1
	Human	46	87			5	
Igλ	Mouse	3				3	1
	Human	36	56			4–5	2–3

D, diversity; Ig, immunoglobulin; J, joining; V, variability.
Pseudogenes are recognized based on sequence defects that would preclude function (premature stop codons, defective recombination signal sequences, defective splice sites). The numbers in this table are approximate, owing to variation between mouse strains and between individual humans.

function and refers to earlier literature is incomplete). It is important to point out that Ig gene loci are not identical between individuals (humans) or between individual strains of inbred mice. Several Internet resources are devoted to providing convenient updated access to Ig germline gene sequences. The international ImMunoGeneTics database (http://imgt.org) includes a database for Ig and TCR genes from a variety of species, and includes maps, sequences, lists of chromosomal translocations, and multiple helpful links. IgBLAST (www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/igblast/) is a service of the National Center for Biotechnology Information and allows a submitted sequence to be searched against known annotated germline V, D, and J sequences.

The Murine Immunoglobulin H Germline Variable, Diversity, and Joining Gene Segments

V_H Segments

The murine V_H region extends over about 2.5 megabases on chromosome 12 and includes roughly 100 functional segments (depending on mouse strain) plus additional V_H pseudogene segments (Table 6.1). All V_H elements are in the same transcriptional orientation as the D, J_H, and C_H regions.[3] The V_H segments are classified into 16 distinct families based on sequence similarity; V_H elements within a family show more than 80% nucleotide sequence identity. Elements of individual V_H families are largely clustered together, though some interdigitation occurs (Fig. 6.4). The V_H families can be grouped into three "clans" based on sequence conservation primarily of their framework regions (framework region 1, codons 6 to 24, and framework region 3, codons 67 to 85, respectively), which form the more conserved structural backbone of the Ig variable region. Importantly, these clans are conserved between man, mouse, and frog, suggesting that their emergence in the repertoire preceded the amphibian-reptile divergence.[4]

Diversity and J_H

About 50 kb downstream of the most 3′ V_H element resides the murine D cluster spanning about 80 kb, depending on

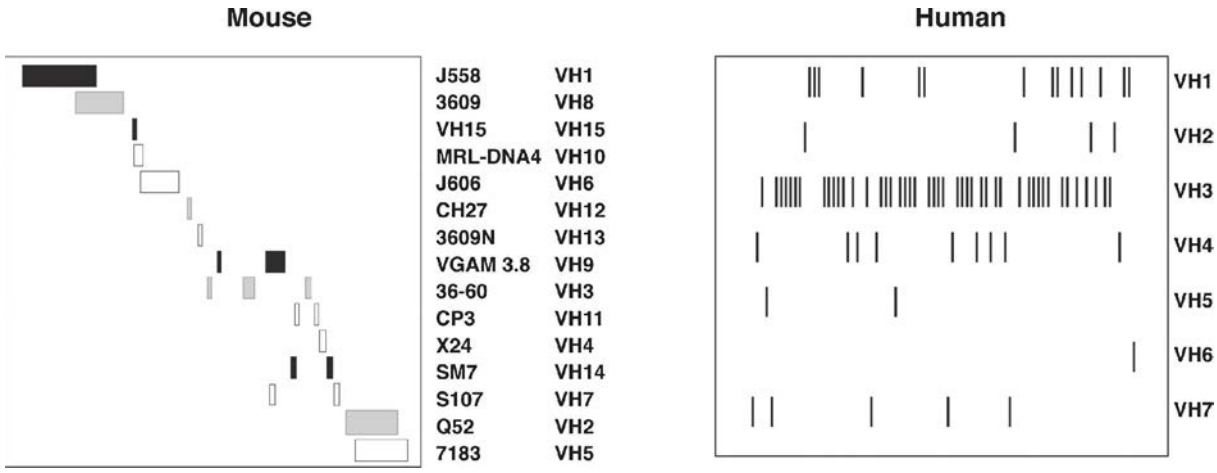


FIG. 6.4. Maps of the Murine and Human V_H Loci. The 15 known murine V_H gene families are shown in their approximate map positions. Each *rectangle* represents a cluster of V_H genes of the indicated family; the clan identification of the V_H families is indicated by the color of the rectangle: *black* for clan I, *gray* for clan II, and *white* for clan III. Although some interdigitation is shown by overlapping families (e.g., the Q52 and 7183 families), the murine V_H families are largely clustered. In contrast, all human V_H genes (*vertical lines*) of a prototypic haplotype are shown in the right panel; extensive interdigitation of families is apparent.

the mouse strain (see Table 6.1). Each D segment is flanked by 12 RSSs on both sides, so that the 12/23 rule ensures that all assembled V genes carry a D element between their V and J segments (which are both flanked by 23 RSSs that prevent direct V to J rearrangements).

The murine D elements are classified into four families: DSP2, DFL16, DST4, and DQ52. Although D regions could theoretically contribute to Ig diversity by being read in all three frames, the mouse has evolved mechanisms that strongly favor one of them.[5] Four functional germline J_H sequences reside about 0.7 kb downstream of the most 3′ D region, DQ52.

The Human Immunoglobulin H Germline Variable, Diversity, and Joining Gene Segments

V_H Segments

The human V_H locus spans 1.1 Mb at the telomeric end of chromosome 14 (14q32.33) (see Table 6.1). The human germline V_H segments—numbering roughly 40 to 45—fall into seven families that, in contrast to the family clusters characteristic of the murine locus, are extensively interdigitated (see Fig. 6.4). Some human V_H sequences are polymorphic owing to V_H insertions or deletions in different allelic chromosomes. Twenty-four additional germline V_H sequences have been mapped to chromosome 15 and 16 and represent nonfunctional "orphans" that were apparently duplicated from the IgH locus on chromosome 14.[6]

Diversity and J_H Regions

Twenty-six human D elements are located in an ~40 kb region about 20 kb downstream of VH6, the most 3′ of the V_H genes.[7] This D cluster is comprised of four tandem duplications of a 9.5 kb segment containing a representative of each of six D families. The twenty-seventh D element—DHQ52—is the only one showing sequence similarity to a mouse segment (DQ52) and shares a homologous location just 5′ to J_H1. In contrast to mice, humans use all reading frames of D elements.[7] One reading frame encodes primarily hydrophilic residues, one encodes hydrophobic residues, and one includes frequent stop codons. Some D elements contain stop codons that can be removed by nuclease trimming during VDJ assembly. As in mice, the human J_H cluster is immediately downstream of DHQ52.

Heavy Chain Constant Regions

Murine and human genomic clones containing C region H-chain (C_H) genes include separate exons encoding the ~100 to 110 amino acid Ig domains. These domains were independently identified by internal homologies of amino acid sequences and by three-dimensional structural analysis (X-ray crystallography). The exons are separated from each other by introns of roughly 0.1 to 0.3 kb. Thus, for example, the mouse γ2b protein has three major domains (CH1, CH2, and CH3) with a small hinge domain between CH1 and CH2. The gene structure may be summarized as follows:

CH1	intron	**hinge**	intron	**CH2**	intron	**CH3**
(292)	(314)	(64)	(106)	(328)	(119)	(322)

where the numbers in parentheses represent the number of nucleotides in each segment. As an interesting contrast, the hinge region of the α gene is encoded contiguously with the CH2 domain with no intervening intron, while the unusually long human γ3 hinge is encoded by three or four hinge exons.

Genomic Organization of the C_H Region

Each B-lymphocyte initially produces IgM by expressing an assembled variable region linked to Cμ, but may use CSR (discussed later in this chapter) to replace Cμ with one of the several C_H regions lying downstream, thereby allowing expression of IgG, IgA, or IgE (Fig. 6.5A). Eight murine C_H genes span about 200 kb of DNA on chromosome 12; these genes were linked by contiguous clones in 1982.[8] Several γ pseudogenes lie within the clustered γ functional genes[9] (Fig. 6.5B). The coding sequences of all C_H genes are oriented in the same direction.

The human C_H genes were similarly cloned, and then eventually completely linked by the Human Genome Project. The human IgH locus contains a large duplication, with two copies of a γ–γ–ε–α unit separated by a γ pseudogene (see Fig. 6.5B). One of the duplicated ε sequences is also a pseudogene, and a third closely homologous ε-related sequence—a "processed" pseudogene—is present on chromosome 9.

The IgH locus has also been examined in several other species besides mouse and human, and several notable differences have been observed. Rabbits, for example, have 13 Cα sequences and only a single Cγ gene[10]; this unusual expansion of genes contributing to mucosal immunity may be related to the peculiar habit of coprophagy in these animals. In contrast to the multiplicity of rabbit Cα genes, pigs have only one Cα gene and eight Cγ genes. Camels are unusual in having H chains that function in the absence of L chains.[11]

Membrane versus Secreted Immunoglobulin

Igs are found either as secreted molecules in the serum or as membrane-bound receptors. The membrane-bound μ chains contain a C-terminal hydrophobic transmembrane domain consisting of 26 uncharged hydrophobic amino acids encoded by additional membrane exons, and these residues anchor the protein in the cell membrane lipid bilayer. The membrane (μ_m) and secreted (μ_s) forms are derived from the same gene by alternative splicing (Fig. 6.6). The same general gene structure has been found for other C_H genes, suggesting that differential splicing accounts for the two forms of all Ig isotypes.

Early B cells make roughly similar quantities of both μ_m and μ_s, whereas maturation to the plasma cell stage is associated with strong predominance of μ_s production, facilitating high-level secretion of circulating Ig. The balance between the two ribonucleic acid (RNA) splice forms of μ has been interpreted as a competition between splicing of the CH4 and M1 exons versus the cleavage/polyadenylation at the upstream μ_s poly(A) site. These processes are mutually exclusive because CH4-M1 splice removes the μ_s poly(A) site, while cleavage at the μ_s poly(A) site removes the membrane exons.

Cis-regulatory elements (and corresponding transacting RNA binding proteins) control the balance between these

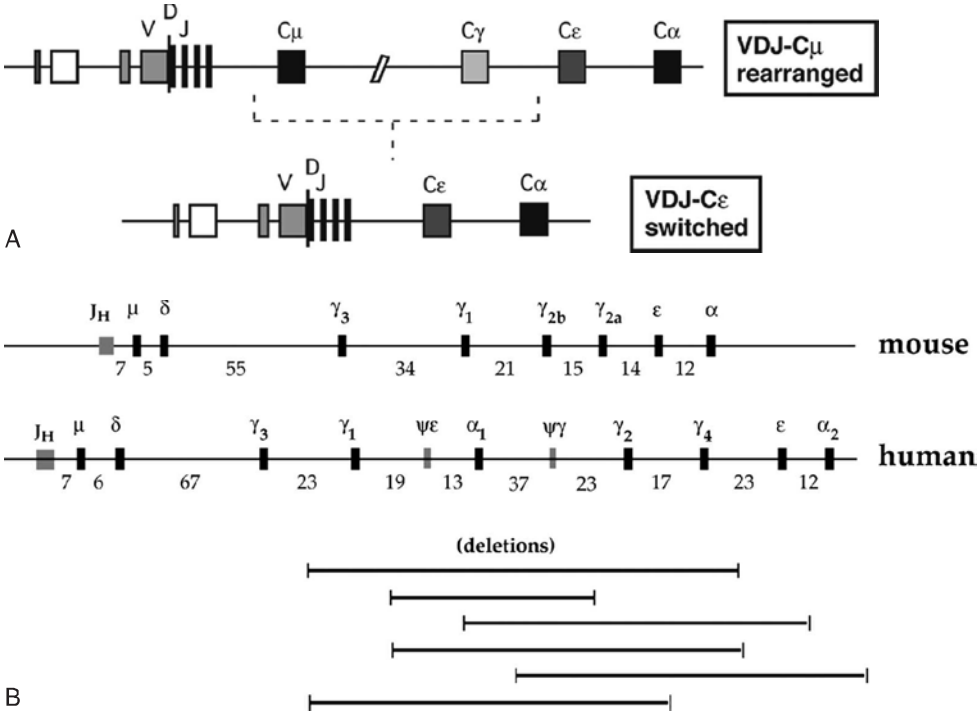


FIG. 6.5. Deletional Isotype Switch Recombination. A: The expression of "downstream" heavy chain genes is accomplished by a recombination event that replaces the Cμ gene with the appropriate heavy chain constant gene (Cε is shown as an example), deleting the deoxyribonucleic acid between the recombination breakpoints. **B:** The murine and human heavy chain constant region genes are diagrammed with the approximate intergene distance indicated below (in kb); various literature values for these distances differ somewhat, possibly due to allelic polymorphisms. The human locus shows a large duplication of γγεα sequences.

processes. They include a GU-rich element downstream of the μs poly(A) site,[12] the polyadenylation factor cleavage stimulator factor 64,[13] and the U1A protein.[14] These factors likely function downstream of B-lymphocyte–induced maturation protein-1 (BLIMP-1) whose expression in Ig-secreting plasma cells was also found to be critical for μ_s poly(A) site utilization.[15] *Cis*-acting sequences affecting the ratio of alternative splice forms have been described for other isotypes besides Cμ, particularly Cα.[16]

Membrane Ig serves as the antigen-recognition component of the BCR that is critical for initiating the signal for lymphocyte activation following contact with antigen. Transduction is mediated by an associated protein dimer composed of the BCR components Igα and Igβ (CD79a and CD79b) whose cytoplasmic domains contain immunoreceptor tyrosine-based activation motifs similar to those found in the CD3 chains mediating TCR signaling. Additional signaling is mediated by conserved tyrosines in the cytoplasmic tails of the IgG and IgE H chains, which serve as a phosphorylation-dependent docking sites for the signaling adapter Grb2.[17] Binding of Grb2 enhances BCR signaling and subsequent B-cell proliferation.

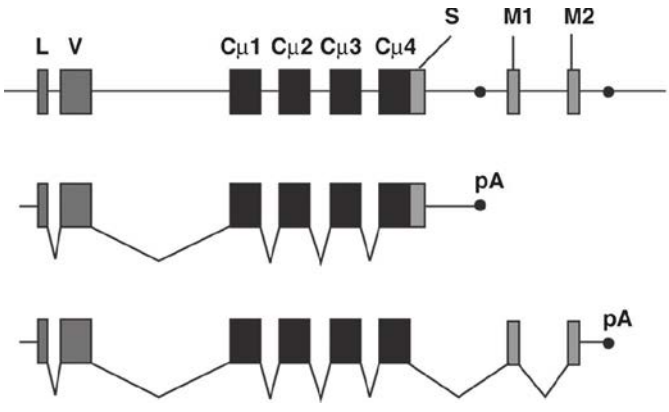


FIG. 6.6. Two Ribonucleic Acids (RNAs) Generated from the μ Gene by Alternative Processing. The *top line* illustrates the exons of the μ gene (*black rectangles*) in an expressed, rearranged μ gene. A primary transcript including all the exons present in the deoxyribonucleic acid can be processed as shown to yield either μ_s RNA (containing a C-terminal "secreted" sequence) or μ_m RNA (containing the two membrane exons).

Kappa Light Chain Genes

Murine Germline Vκ Locus

The murine Vκ locus spans about 3.2 mb on chromosome 6[18] and contains 20 Vκ families, some of which are shared by human and mouse (see Table 6.1). Vκ sequences within a single family are largely clustered together. Some Vκ elements lie in the opposite orientation to that of the Jκ and Cκ elements, and these Vκ segments undergo VJ recombination by an inversion rather than deletion (Fig. 6.7). A few Vκ sequences have been localized to chromosome 16 and 19 and are considered orphan genes.

Human Germline Vκ Locus

The human Vκ locus (see Table 6.1) lies on the short arm of chromosome 2 (2p11-2) spanning ~2 mb of DNA.[19] The locus includes a large inverted duplication, so that most Vκ sequences exist in pairs with one copy lying in the cluster proximal to Jκ (and in the same orientation) and a second copy (inverted) in the distal cluster. The average sequence similarity between duplicates is 98.9%, suggesting the duplication occurred less than 5 million years ago. This is consistent with the absence of such duplication in chimpanzees, which diverged from the human lineage approximately 6 million years ago. Interestingly, about 5% of human alleles also lack the distal duplication.

Outside the Igκ locus, at least 25 orphan Vκ segments have been identified in clusters on chromosome 1, 2, and 22. The orphan cluster located in the long arm of chromosome 2 was probably separated from the major locus—on the short arm of this chromosome—by a pericentric inversion (which must have occurred rather recently in evolution as it is absent from chimpanzee and gorilla).

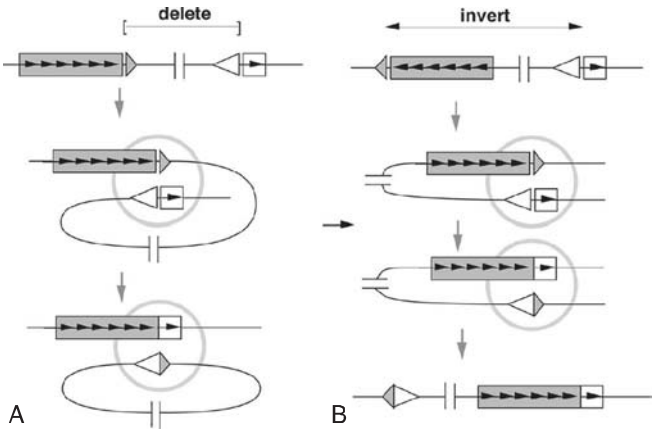


FIG. 6.7. The Same "Micro" Mechanism of Recombination can Join Vκ and Jκ by Deletion or Inversion, Depending on the Relative Orientation of the Two Precursors in Germline DNA. **A:** When V coding sequence (*shaded rectangle*) and J coding sequence (*white rectangle*) are oriented in the same 5′ → 3′ direction in germline DNA (as indicated by the *internal arrowheads*), the recombination yields a VJ coding joint plus a DNA circle containing the signal joint (*apposed triangles*). **B:** If V is oriented in the opposite direction in germline DNA, an identical recombination reaction at the "micro" level (*inside shaded circle*) leaves the signal joint linked to the recombined VJ coding joint.

Jκ and Cκ Elements

In comparison to the H chain genes, the organization of the C region segments in the κ locus is relatively simple (see Table 6.1). A single Cκ gene with a single exon and with no reported alternative splice products is found in both mouse and human. While all five Jκ elements are functional in humans, the third J element in mice has not been observed in functional κ L chains.

Apart from the typical Vκ-Jκ rearrangements, an additional recombination event occurs uniquely in the κ locus. The event is mediated by V(D)J recombination utilizing a 23-RSS element—designated Recombining Sequence in the mouse[20] and Kappa Deleting Element in the human[21]—that is positioned in an intergenic region downstream of Cκ; the recombination results in the deletion of the Cκ exon. Hence, Cκ fragments are undetectable on Southern blots of DNA from λ-expressing human lymphoid cells,[22] as in most B cells the Cκ genes are apparently deleted from both chromosomes before Igλ gene rearrangement begins.

Lambda Light Chain Genes

Murine λ Locus

In laboratory mouse strains, only about 5% of the B-lymphocytes utilize Igλ L chain, and the diversity of these L chains is meager due to the very small number of V region genes (Fig. 6.8). Complete sequence analysis[23] of the murine locus revealed two V-J-C clusters (Vλ2-Vλx-Jλ2Cλ2-Jλ4Cλ4 and Vλ1-Jλ3Cλ3-Jλ1Cλ1) separated by about 110 kb. Each Jλ is linked to its own Cλ region gene, but Jλ4 is nonfunctional. Recombination occurs largely within each cluster, although Vλ2Cλ1 products are occasionally observed. The ancestry of the Vλx element is uncertain, as it is rather dissimilar to the other Vλ segments; indeed, it resembles Vκ as much as Vλ. In contrast to the Igκ locus, the Vλ segments are flanked by 23-RSS and the Jλ gene segments by 12-RSS (see Fig 6.3).

Human λ Locus

The human Vλ region was characterized by intensive cloning, sequencing, and mapping of Vλ elements and ultimately by the complete sequence analysis of 1 Mb covering the entire locus[24] (see Table 6.1). Within the Vλ cluster lies the human VpreB gene (discussed below), as well as several genes and pseudogenes unrelated to the Igλ system.

λ L chains are much more abundant in man than in mouse (about 40% of human L chains are λ versus about 5% in mouse). Four forms of human λ chains have been classified serologically, with differences residing in a small number of amino acids in the C region. The serologic classification of Kern+ corresponds to a glycine at position 152 versus a serine in Kern–. The Oz+ designation corresponds to a lysine at position 190 versus an arginine in the Oz– variant. Similarly, Mcg+ λ chains (versus Mcg–) contain asparagine 112 (versus alanine), threonine 114 (versus serine) and lysine 163 (versus threonine).

Four functional human Jλ-Cλ segments and three pseudogenes are clustered within an approximately 33 kb region of DNA (see Fig. 6.8) and the four major expressed human λ isotypes correspond to the functional JCλ1, JCλ2, JCλ3, and

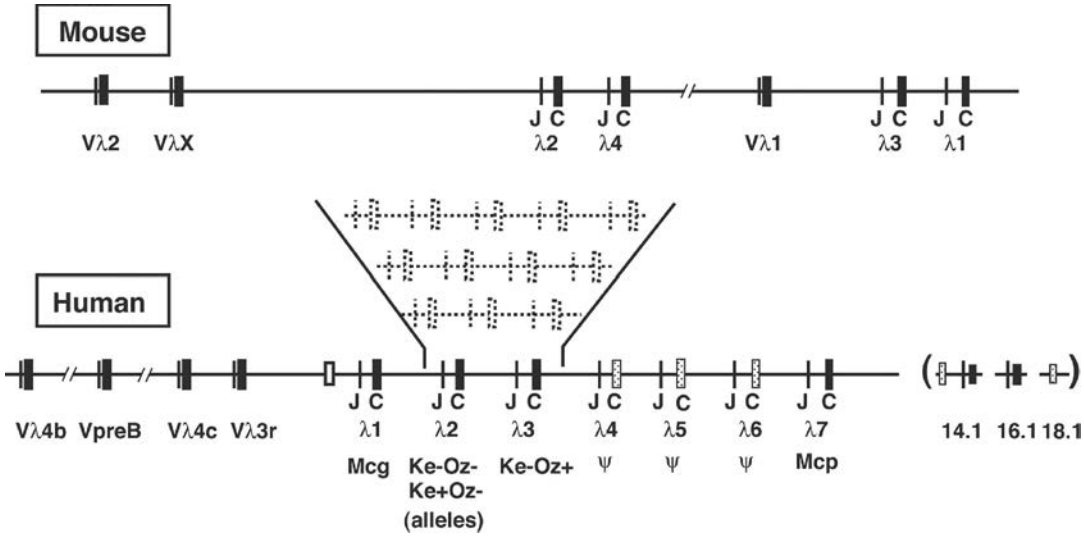


FIG. 6.8. Germline λ Genes. The maps in this figure are schematic (i.e., not to scale). **A:** The murine λ gene system includes four JC complexes and three V genes, as shown. **B:** The human λ locus includes multiple V genes, of which only three are shown. The human VpreB "surrogate" light chain gene is located within the Vλ cluster. The Cλ locus includes a segment of seven JC complexes plus three additional unlinked sequences. The hatched JC complexes diagrammed above the seven linked λ sequences represent polymorphic variants with additional duplications of the JC unit. The 14.1 sequence—the human λ5 "surrogate" light chain homolog—lies downstream of the JC cluster. Exon 1 of the 14.1 gene is homologous to an exon upstream of Jλ1 (as indicated by the *unlabeled white rectangle*).

JCλ7, with the latter encoding an isotype provisionally designated Mcp.[25] JCλ6 may be functional in some individuals, and the common allele—which has a 4 bp insertion leading to a deletion of the C-terminal third of the Cλ region—can nevertheless undergo Vλ-Jλ recombination, encoding a truncated protein that can associate with H chains. A variety of polymorphic variants of the human λ locus have been detected, apparently the result of gene duplication, as shown in Figure 6.8.[26] Lastly, three Cλ-related sequences have been discovered near the major Jλ-Cλ cluster. One of these, designated λ14.1, represents the human homolog of the murine "surrogate" L chain λ5 (see following discussion).

λ-Related "Surrogate" Light Chains

Ig H chains cannot reach the cell surface without pairing with Ig L chains. However, Ig μ H chains can be detected on the surface of pre–B cells whose Igκ and Igλ loci are still in their germline configuration and thus do not produce L chains. In these cells, a "surrogate L chain" (SLC) composed of two smaller proteins, VpreB and λ5, facilitates the surface expression of the μ H chain protein. The first component (λ5) was identified as the product of a gene expressed exclusively in pre–B cells that showed high sequence similarity to the J and C regions of the λ locus,[27] As four murine Cλ genes were already known, it was designated λ5. The second component of the SLC was identified as a gene residing about 4.7 kb upstream of λ5 in the mouse genome. Based on its similarities to both Vλ and Vκ (and its expression in pre–B cells), it was called VpreB1. A second, nearly identical sequence in the mouse genome is named VpreB2 and appears to be functional,[28] and a less similar VpreB3 has also been described. Neither λ5 nor VpreB genes show evidence of gene rearrangement in B or pre–B cells, and homologs have been found in every mammalian species examined.

The two SLC proteins form a L chain–like heterodimer that is able to fulfill some functions of a true L chain, including association with μ H chains to permit surface μ expression prior to the availability of κ or λ L chains. Thus, when a μ H chain gene was transfected into an Ig-negative myeloma line, no surface μ expression was observed unless λ5 and VpreB genes were also transfected.[29] Surface μ chains are covalently linked to the λ5 protein, while the VpreB1 protein is noncovalently associated. The expression of μ-SLC on the surface of pre–B cells triggers the onset of Vκ-Jκ rearrangement, as discussed below.

In humans, three λ5-like sequences are located downstream of the human Cλ cluster on chromosome 22 (see Fig. 6.8), but only one—designated 14.1—appears to be functional. The human VpreB homolog lies within the Vλ cluster[30] in contrast to murine VpreB, which lies close upstream of λ5.

V(D)J RECOMBINATION

The mechanism by which germline variable region segments (V_L and J_L, or V_H, D, and J_H) are assembled in the DNA to form a complete active V region has been pursued ever since Ig gene recombination was first discovered. In this section we will address 1) the molecular mechanism of the reaction, 2) the topology of the recombination events, 3) the components of the recombinase machinery, and 4) the regulation of that machinery during B-cell development.

Molecular Mechanism of V(D)J Recombination

Recombination Model Overview

A model for the detailed mechanism of the V(D)J recombination event must account for the observed features of the recombination *products* and of their germline *precursors*. In the germline *precursors*, the RSSs with their heptamer, nonamer, and appropriate 12 or 23 bp spacers are necessary and sufficient to create efficient recombination targets; model substrates in which RSSs flank DNA sequences completely unrelated to Ig genes are competent to undergo recombination. The model shown in Figure 6.9 will serve as a framework for discussion of the recombination mechanism. The recombination is thought to begin with binding of the RAG1-RAG2 complex to the RSSs that flank the two gene segments to be recombined. Simultaneous DNA cleavage occurs precisely between the RSSs and the gene segments. The two ends of the RSSs (frequently named "signal ends") are joined directly, forming "signal joints." In contrast, the ends of the gene segments (also referred to as "coding ends") are processed prior to joining and are ultimately ligated together, giving rise to "coding joints" and completing the recombination event.

Recombination Products: Coding Joints and Signal Joints

In the recombination *products*, signal joints are typically direct ligation products of the signal ends: the RSSs are joined directly at the heptamers ("back-to-back"), and nucleotide additions or deletions at these junctions are quite rare. The properties of the coding joints, however, are more complex, as the joining reaction at these DNA ends is "imprecise." The following features are frequently present:

1. Deletions: variable number of bases are deleted from the ends of the coding regions (in comparison to the "complete" sequence in the germline precursor)
2. Nongermline ("N") nucleotides: random nucleotides (with a bias toward G and C) are added by a template-independent DNA polymerase (discussed below). The sequence of these N nucleotides has no relationship to the germline V, D, or J sequences.
3. Palindromic ("P") nucleotides: the ends of the coding gene segments are sealed by a DNA hairpin structure (see Fig. 6.9, and discussed in the following). "Opening" of these hairpins frequently occurs by nicking at some distance away from the hairpin tip leading to single-stranded overhangs. Filling in of such overhangs by DNA polymerases generates DNA palindromes that mirror the nucleotides at the end of the V, D, or J segment.[31] P nucleotides are generally only one or two bps, but they can be longer, especially in mice with the severe combined immunodeficiency defect (SCID) disorder in which the opening of the hairpins occurs in an aberrant manner.

Recombination Intermediates: Blunt Signal Ends and Hairpin Coding Ends

To study broken DNA ends as intermediates in V(D)J recombination, several laboratories employed ligation-mediated–polymerase chain reaction (LM-PCR) to detect signal ends. This technique involves ligating blunt double-stranded oligonucleotide linkers to blunt genomic DNA breaks, and then amplifying the ligation junctions between a primer in the ligated oligonucleotide and a primer based on known sequence from the ligated genomic DNA; amplification products can

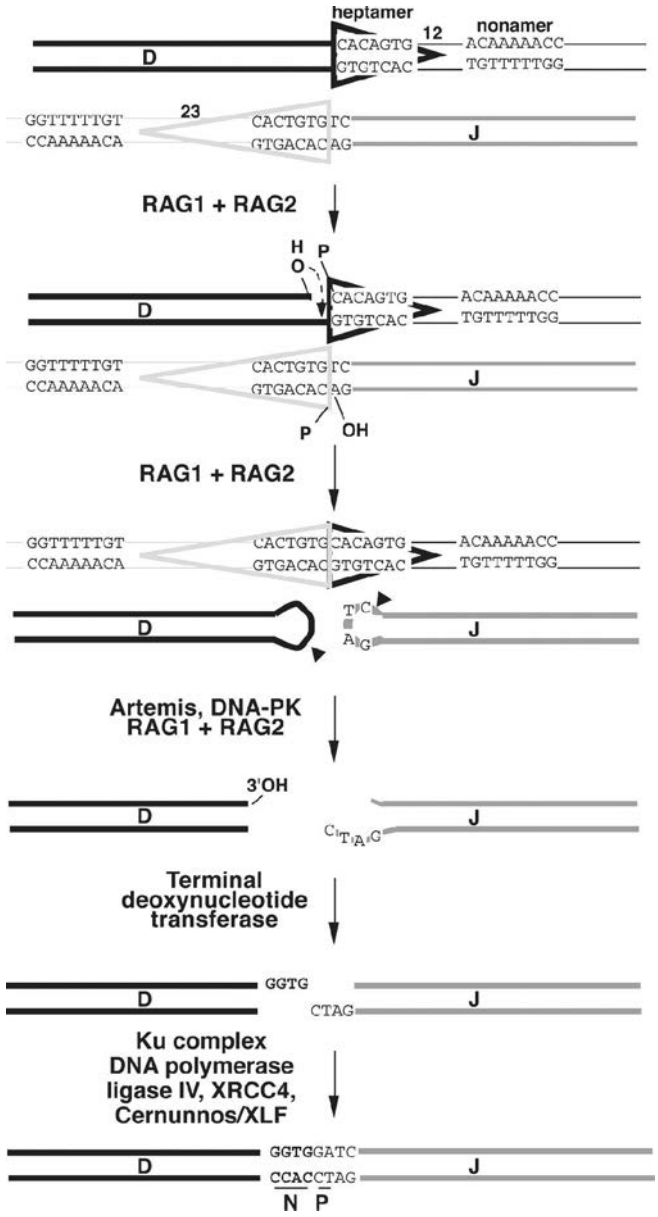


FIG. 6.9. Model for V Assembly Recombinations. All V assembly recombination reactions (in immunoglobulin and T-cell receptor genes) may proceed by a common mechanism, illustrated here by D-J recombination. The recombination signal sequences (RSSs) are included in *triangles*, which is the conventionally used RSS graphic. Hairpin loops are created on coding ends dependent on the action of the two Recombination Activating Genes: RAG1 and RAG2. After the opening of the hairpin loops, the pictured diversity coding sequence shows the effects of "nibbling" by exonuclease, but the joining coding sequence is spared and shows P nucleotide generation; N region addition is pictured in this example as occurring only on the diversity region end. In reality, exonuclease digestion and N nucleotide addition can occur on either (or both) ends. The steps in the proposed mechanism are discussed in the text.

then be cloned and sequenced. LM-PCR analyses of both TCR and Ig genes undergoing V(D)J recombination showed the signal ends to be blunt double strand breaks (dsbs), usually exactly at the heptamer border.[32] Similar LM-PCR experiments failed to detect the coding ends unless they were pretreated with mung bean nuclease, a single-strand-specific endonuclease that recognizes the distortion of DNA at a hairpin structure. Sequences of these LM-PCR products from coding ends suggested that the hairpins are precisely at the end of the coding elements, usually without loss or gain of a single nucleotide.[33] By Southern blot analyses, coding ends were found to have two properties suggestive of a hairpin-like structure: 1) resistance to exonuclease treatment, and 2) doubling of the apparent length of restriction fragments under denaturing electrophoresis conditions.[34]

Hairpin ends represent V(D)J recombination intermediates that, in wild-type cells, are opened at the hairpin tip (or a few nucleotides away from it) by the Artemis nuclease (discussed below). P nucleotides result from opening the loop at an asymmetric position (see Fig. 6.9); this model would explain why P nucleotides are never observed at coding ends that have been "nibbled" after opening of the hairpin. P nucleotide segments in the rare coding joints observed in SCID mice are unusually long and likely result from resolution of hairpins by nicking enzymes that, unlike Artemis, do not focus on the area near the tip of hairpin loops but instead nick in variable positions in the double-stranded hairpin "stem."[34]

Topology of V(D)J Recombination

Deletion versus Inversion

If a V segment and a J segment are both oriented in the same direction, they can recombine by excising the DNA between the coding sequences and ligating the two coding ends. Ligation of the two signal ends produces a DNA circle that generally lacks replication origins and therefore fails to replicate as cells divide after V(D)J recombination. Such excision circles are therefore generally absent in mature B-lymphocytes that have already undergone several rounds of proliferation after completing the Ig gene assembly. By isolating circular DNA from cells actively undergoing Vκ-Jκ rearrangement, it is possible to isolate and characterize the circular molecules bearing signal joints.[35]

As mentioned previously, some germline Vκ genes are oriented in the opposite direction from the Jκ-Cκ region. In these cases, VJ recombination occurs by an inversion of the DNA between the recombining V and J segments, leaving both the VκJκ coding joint and the signal joint (formed by ligating the RSSs) retained in the chromosome (see Fig. 6.7). This demonstrates that the enzymatic machinery "sees" only the DNA in the immediate vicinity of the recombination site and is insensitive to the topology of the DNA strands far from this site.

Nonstandard Joints

In addition to the canonical coding and signal joints, several "nonstandard" recombination joints have been documented, that, though not contributing to physiologic Ig gene assembly, represent tell-tale signs of a recombination event.[36]

In the first phase of V(D)J recombination, the DNA is cut at both gene segment–RSS boundaries that participate in the reaction, thereby generating four DNA ends. In principle, there are three possible topologies in which these DNA ends can be rejoined:

1. "Signal and coding joints": the standard reaction product in which the two coding ends get joined generating the assembled VJ gene and the 12-RSS/23-RSS signal joint.
2. "Open and shut joints": the RSSs get ligated back to the gene segments from which they were released. These joints are topologically identical to the starting DNAs, but can be distinguished from them if nucleotides have been added or deleted at the junctions.
3. "Hybrid joints": joints in which the RSSs have traded places so that the 23-RSS that was flanking the Vκ segment is now linked to the Jκ segment, and vice versa.

"Hybrid" and "open and shut" joints have been observed in transfected plasmids bearing artificial recombination substrates[36] as well as in endogenous Ig loci *in vivo*.[37]

Secondary V(D)J Recombination

As discussed previously, imprecise joining of gene segments causes about two-thirds of all recombination products to be out-of-frame. Thus, a B-lymphocyte could end up with nonproductively rearranged Igκ genes on both alleles. However, germline Vκ segments lying upstream of an initial Vκ-Jκ recombination junction can recombine with Jκ segments lying downstream of the junction, producing a "secondary" recombination event, as shown in Figure 6.10A.

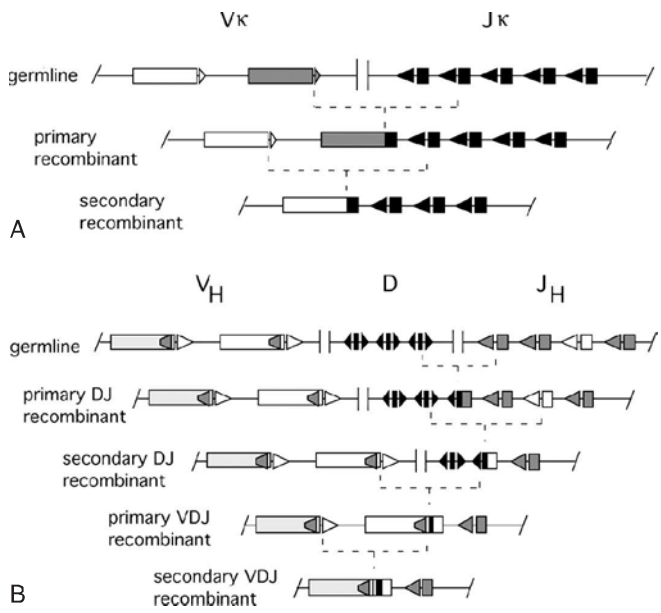


FIG. 6.10. Secondary Recombinations. A: In the κ light chain system, a primary recombination can be followed by recombination between an upstream V and a downstream J. **B:** Analogous secondary recombinations can occur in the heavy chain system between upstream D and downstream J segments. After V(D)J recombination eliminates all 12-RSS signal elements from the chromosome, secondary recombination can still occur between V_H (23-RSS) and an internal heptamer within the V_H coding sequence of the VDJ unit.

Such secondary recombination also occurs in cells that have assembled a productive Vκ-Jκ joint if the encoded antigen binding domain recognizes an autoantigen. This type of secondary recombination, known as "receptor editing," is considered in more detail later in this chapter.

In the IgH locus, secondary D-J rearrangements sometimes occur, but only until V_H-DJ_H recombination removes all unused upstream D_H segments (Fig. 6.10B). VDJ rearrangement eliminates all the 12-RSSs from the IgH locus that could pair with the 23-RSSs flanking the upstream V_H elements. Sometimes, these V_H segments do, however, recombine with an established VDJ unit, displacing most of the originally assembled V_H element,[38] a process sometimes called V_H replacement. Such events are mediated by cryptic RSSs (mainly a heptamer sequence) that is present near the 3′ end of about 70% of all V_H genes (see Fig. 6.10B). Such internal cryptic RSSs are not generally found in L chain genes. As discussed previously for the L chain, secondary recombination represents a rescue mechanism for cells with nonproductive rearrangements on both H chain chromosomes, and for cells whose encoded antibody recognizes an autoantigen.

The V(D)J Machinery

Since the discovery of V(D)J recombination as the process that assembles the germline antigen receptor gene segments into functional genes, one major question was the identity of the enzymatic machinery catalyzing this complex set of reactions. Genetic and biochemical work by a large number of laboratories led to identification of a total of 13 different proteins that have been shown to be directly involved in V(D)J recombination: RAG1, RAG2, HMG1, Ku70, Ku80, DNA-PKcs, Artemis, pol μ, pol λ, TdT, XRCC4, Cernunnos/XRCC4-like factor (XLF), and DNA ligase IV. The only lymphoid-specific factors are RAG1, RAG2, and TdT; all others are ubiquitously expressed in all cell types, and this feature allows investigators to study aspects of V(D)J recombination by ectopically expressing the RAG proteins in nonlymphoid cells. A recent biochemical tour de force study showed that coding joint formation could be recapitulated *in vitro* using artificial recombination substrates and highly purified preparations of all 13 proteins.[39] The respective coding joints showed all of the features typically observed *in vivo* (nucleotide deletion, N nucleotide, and P nucleotide addition), suggesting that most, if not all, of the factors involved in the coding end processing steps of V(D)J recombination have been identified. In contrast, signal joint formation was not observed. This step seems to require the removal of the RAG proteins after the cleavage reaction and is likely to require additional factors as yet unidentified.

Recombination Activating Gene Proteins: Mediators of Early Steps in V(D)J Recombination

A major advance in the investigation of V(D)J recombination was the identification of two genes whose products are critical for this process in the B and T cell lineages. In the pioneering experiments, Schatz and Baltimore[40] stably transfected fibroblasts with a construct containing a selectable marker whose expression was dependent on V(D)J recombination; as expected, no measurable recombination occurred in this nonlymphoid cell. However, when either human or murine genomic DNA was transfected into these fibroblasts, a small fraction of recipient cells stably expressed recombinase activity, activating the selectable marker. This suggested that a single transfected genomic DNA fragment was able confer recombinase activity in a fibroblast. (Presumably the fibroblast contained endogenous copies of the same genes, but their expression was repressed by mechanisms that could not repress the transfected genes.) This active fragment was cloned and turned out to contain two closely linked genes, designated RAG1 and RAG2, respectively. Both RAG1 and RAG2 are essential for recombination; therefore, these genes would not have been discovered by this transfection technique if they had not been closely linked in the genome. The genes are notable for having no introns splitting up their open reading frame in most species, and for their opposite transcriptional orientation in all species examined.

A crucial role for the RAG genes in V(D)J recombination was supported by the conservation of these genes in all jawed vertebrate species analyzed thus far, from shark through man. RAG1 and RAG2 are expressed together in developing B and T cells, specifically at the stages at which V(D)J recombinase activity is required for the assembly of Ig and TCR genes. Moreover, mouse strains in which either gene has been eliminated by homologous recombination (gene "knockouts") have no mature B or T cells, as the result of their inability to initiate V(D)J recombination.[41,42] Similarly, a subset of human patients with SCID syndrome characterized by the complete absence of T- or B-lymphocytes have been found to have null mutations in RAG genes.[43] Patients with hypomorphic alleles often have a complex set of features (oligoclonal T cells, hepatosplenomegaly, eosinophilia, decreased serum Ig but elevated IgE) known as the Omenn syndrome, which can also be caused by defects in other genes involved in V(D)J recombination. Interestingly, the same RAG mutation in different patients can cause either Omenn syndrome or SCID, depending on unknown factors.[44]

RAG1 shows intrinsic binding affinity for the RSS nonamer sequence via its nonamer binding domain even in the absence of RAG2. Exhaustive mutational analysis has revealed that RAG1 contains the catalytic center of the RAG complex, composed of three amino acids critical for all enzymatic activity: D600, D708, and E962.[45,46] RAG2, on the other hand, serves as a regulatory cofactor; it has no intrinsic binding affinity for RSSs, but once bound to RAG1 improves the strength and specificity of RAG1 RSS contacts.[47,48] It is also enhances RAG activity on chromosomal substrates and it restricts V(D)J recombination to the G0/G1 stage of the cell cycle (both features are discussed below).

Attempts to determine the molecular role of the RAG proteins in cell-free recombination assays were initially hampered by poor solubility of the proteins, but functional analyses of truncated RAG genes (using RAG expression vectors cotransfected into fibroblasts along with recombination substrate plasmids) revealed that surprisingly large segments of both proteins could be deleted without eliminating recombinase activity, and some of the remaining core regions were

soluble and could be handled relatively easily in experiments. This work allowed the demonstration that in a cell-free *in vitro* system, core regions of the two RAG proteins together are capable of carrying out cleavage of substrate DNAs as well as hairpin formation on the coding end.[49]

The RAG-mediated cleavage occurs in two steps: first a nick is introduced on the top strand between a gene segment and the adjacent heptamer (see Fig. 6.9), then the 3′-hydroxyl group participates as the nucleophile in a direct transesterification reaction to attack the phosphodiester bond adjacent to the heptamer on the bottom strand (see Fig. 6.9), yielding a DNA hairpin structure on the coding end and a new 3′-hydroxyl group on the 3′ end of the bottom heptamer strand.[50] After DNA cleavage, the RAG proteins remain in a complex with the DNA ends and facilitate aspects of the joining phase. Mutant forms of RAG1 or RAG2 have been reported that are competent for cleavage but show impairment in coding or signal joint formation.[51]

While nicking can occur asynchronously at the 12-RSS and 23-RSS, hairpin formation is "coupled" and occurs synchronously at both RSSs. *In vitro*, coupled cleavage requires only the RAG proteins, HMG1/2 (discussed below) and Mg^{2+} as the divalent metal ion in the reaction buffer. *In vivo*, DNA dsb formation at an individual RSS is dangerous as it could give rise to translocations, and it is thought that Mg^{2+} promotes an optimal molecular "architecture" for controlled V(D)J recombination. *In vivo* experiments indeed suggest that RAG proteins may bind to and introduce a nick at a single 12-RSS, but do not complete DNA cleavage until a matching 23-RSS is captured into the RAG-RSS complex.[52]

In addition to the "classical" activities of RAG proteins on DNA segments containing RSSs, these proteins can also catalyze DNA strand cleavage on "nonstandard" substrates.

1. Transposition. *In vitro*, purified recombinant core RAG proteins can catalyze the excision and insertion of a DNA fragment with signal ends into foreign DNA, acting as a transposase.[53,54] This property provides additional support for the early speculation that the V(D)J recombination system may have originated by insertion of transposon-like DNA fragment encoding RAG genes (and bearing RSSs at its ends) into a primordial antigen receptor gene, thereby generating a pair of separated V and J gene segments. This model of the origin of V(D)J recombination is consistent with the many mechanistic similarities at the molecular level between Ig gene rearrangements and transposition,[55] and the recent identification of the Transib transposase family that shows striking sequence similarity to RAG1 and is widespread in insect, echinoderm, helminth, coelenterate, and fungal genomes.[56] The recent finding of an apparent homolog of the entire RAG1 and RAG2 gene locus in a sea urchin genome suggests that the two RAG genes may have entered the genome of a common ancestor of all deuterostomes far earlier than the Ig-/TCR-based adaptive immune system developed.[57] It remains unclear whether the primordial RAG transposon encoded solely RAG1 (which would then have integrated next to the primordial RAG2 gene) or both RAG1 and RAG2. The transposase activity of RAGs, however, seems to be almost completely suppressed *in vivo*, and the C-terminus of RAG2 may have evolved to control this potentially deleterious activity.[51,58–60]
2. V_H replacement. As mentioned previously, recombination events can occur between a V_H 23-RSS and cryptic RSS within rearranged V_H coding sequences. An *in vitro* model suggests that in V_H replacement, the RAG proteins nick both DNA strands without forming a hairpin coding end.[61] Whether this is indeed a completely different activity is unclear.
3. Translocations at non-RSS sequences. The RAG complex also generates two nicks to cleave within the major breakpoint region of the *Bcl2* gene. This 150-bp segment is the target of a common RAG-catalyzed translocation between the IgH locus and the *Bcl2* gene occurring in most follicular lymphomas. In this segment, there are no RSSs, and the RAG proteins recognize an unusual sequence-dependent DNA conformation different from the normal B-form double helix.[62]

Although the "core" RAG proteins have been useful for elucidating the molecular mechanism of the cleavage step of V(D)J recombination in biochemical studies, it is clear that the "noncore" portions of each protein confer important functions, as expected from their sequence conservation across species. Broadly speaking, the "noncore" regions ensure regulated and efficient recombination on the physiological substrates (i.e., imperfect RSSs deviating from the perfect consensus heptamer and nonamer) in the context of chromatin. The functions of the "noncore" regions have largely been inferred by comparing V(D)J recombination products from cells expressing core RAG proteins versus full-length versions, and more recently by *in vitro* studies using full-length RAG proteins that are now available for such analyses.

The C-terminal region of RAG2 has multiple functions and is important for achieving normal numbers of B- and T-lymphocytes *in vivo*,[63] for the formation of precise signal joints during IgH recombination,[64] and for protecting against RAG-mediated DNA transposition.[51,65] These functions are thought to be conferred at least in part, by a plant homeo domain (PHD) zinc finger fold that is formed by amino acids 414 to 487 in murine RAG2. This PHD domain binds specifically to the tails of histone H3 that are trimethylated at lysine 4 (H3K4Me3),[66–68] a histone modification that is associated with "open" chromatin and that is uniquely present on "accessible" RSSs in Ig loci (discussed below). *In vitro* studies suggest that the binding of the RAG2 PHD domain to histone tails causes a conformational change that increases the catalytic activity of the RAG complex.[69]

Furthermore, the RAG2 C terminus regulates RAG2 protein levels—and hence V(D)J recombinase activity—across the cell cycle to prevent dsbs during DNA synthesis or mitosis, when such breaks could lead to chromosomal deletions.[32] RAG1 protein and messenger RNA (mRNA) transcript levels of both RAG genes vary little across the cell cycle, but phosphorylation of RAG2 at Thr490 by the cyclin-dependent

kinase cdk2 mediates its destruction via ubiquitination and proteasomal degradation during S phase.[70] Mice expressing RAG2 with a T490A mutation (which cannot be phosphorylated) showed RAG2 protein and dsbs throughout the cell cycle, demonstrating the importance of the RAG2 degradation signal in cell-cycle control of V(D)J recombination.[71,72]

The N-terminal noncore region of RAG1 is required *in vivo* for optimal RAG1 activity and for the formation of precise signal joints in D-J recombination.[64] This region of RAG1 contains a RING finger domain that seems to be required for ubiquitination of several proteins, including histone H3.[73]

Apart from the obvious importance of the RAG proteins in understanding the initial steps of V(D)J recombination, knowledge of these proteins and their genes has allowed two major technical advances that have opened the way to many additional experiments. First, various nonlymphoid cell lines with known defects in various DNA repair genes have been transfected with the RAG genes to identify genes involved V(D)J recombination (these factors are described below). Second, availability of the RAG1 and RAG2 knockout mice has been instrumental in a large number of immunology studies. These mice completely lack functional B cells or T cells, and are not "leaky" like SCID mice, which develop some functional B and T cells, especially as the animals age. Thus the RAG-deficient mice can be used to study the importance of the "innate" immune system (i.e., responses that occur in the absence of antigen-specific lymphocytes) in particular immune responses. They can also be used as recipients for various lymphocyte populations to explore the roles of different cell types. They can also be used as recipients for various lymphocyte populations to explore the roles of different cell types. They can be transfected with transgenes encoding specific Ig genes to study the roles of specific antibodies in B cell development and in immune responses. Finally, they can be used in "RAG complementation" experiments designed to assess the phenotype—in lymphocytes—of various other gene knockouts.[74] In RAG complementation, embryonic stem cells in which the gene of interest has been knocked out by homologous recombination are injected into homozygous RAG2 knockout (RAG2−/−) blastocysts. This procedure yields chimeric mice in which all B and T cells derive from the embryonic stem cells deleted for the gene of interest, as these are the only source of intact RAG genes to support lymphocyte development. Such animals can be made more easily than a knockout mouse line, and can be used to study the effect of gene deletion in lymphocytes independent of effects the deletion may have in other cells. In particular, for cases where the gene knockout causes embryonic lethality due to effects on nonlymphoid cells, RAG complementation allows the selective knockout in lymphocytes to be studied in the background normal gene expression in nonlymphoid cells.

High Mobility Group Proteins

The search for RAG cofactors that stimulate cleavage activity in biochemical assays led to the identification of HMG1.[75] HMG1 (and the closely related HMG2) are abundant and ubiquitous proteins that bind DNA in a non–sequence-specific manner and to cause a local bend in DNA. The two RAG proteins can form a stable signal complex with a 12-RSS, but efficient complex formation with a 23-RSS requires the addition of either HMG1 or HMG2.[76] HMG1/2 apparently stabilizes the bending of the 23-RSS that is induced by the RAG proteins themselves.[77]

Nonhomologous End Joining Components

The RAG proteins are the essential lymphocyte-specific factors in the DNA cleavage phase of V(D)J recombination, but DNA repair factors that are part of a DNA repair pathway known as nonhomologous end joining (NHEJ) are essential for the joining phase. NHEJ is the major pathway for repair of dsbs (such as those induced by ionizing radiation or reactive oxygen species) during the G0-G1 phases of the cell cycle. (In the S and G2 phases, the additional chromatid genome copy enables breaks to be repaired by homologous recombination.) The six classical core components of NHEJ are Ku70, Ku80, DNA-PKcs, XRCC4, DNA Ligase IV, Artemis, and Cernnunos/XLF, but additional proteins play a role in some models of NHEJ.

The DNA-PK Complex. The first gene for an NHEJ component to be recognized as participating in V(D)J recombination was the SCID gene. This gene was originally identified as being mutated in the *scid* mouse strain that is immunodeficient due to a marked impairment in V(D)J recombination of both Ig and TCR genes. Lymphocytes from *scid* mice are able to perform the RAG-mediated cleavage reaction, and can also form signal joints, but are markedly defective in coding joint formation. Subsequently, it was found that the *scid* mutation also impairs NHEJ, causing radiosensitivity.

The gene mutated in the *scid* mouse strain encodes DNA-PKcs, a large protein (460 kD) with a kinase domain near its C terminus that is related to phosophoinositide-3-kinase (PI3K). This kinase is DNA-dependent and represents the catalytic subunit (hence "cs") of a heterotrimer known as the DNA-PK complex. The other components are Ku70 and Ku80 (also referred to as Ku86), which were originally identified as the autoantigens recognized by a patient antiserum (Ku was the coded name of the patient, and the numbers refer to the approximate size of the proteins, 70 kD and 80 to 86 kD, respectively). Together, these two very abundant proteins form a heterodimer that binds to the ends of double-stranded DNA independent of the nucleotide sequence of the DNA. The DNA-Ku complex can then recruit DNA-PKcs and activate autophosphorylation of this protein.[78] *In vitro* activation of DNA-PKcs was found to be efficient when DNA ends either were at high concentration or, if at low concentration, were on DNA fragments long enough to circularize readily. In contrast, when the DNA-PKcs was located on the ends of DNA fragments too short to circularize (and too dilute for efficient intermolecular interactions with other DNA ends), the DNA-PKcs activation was much reduced. These observations suggest that kinase activation can occur only after two DNA ends are brought together by DNA-PKcs in "synapsis."[79,80] Further phosphorylation of

DNA-PKcs inactivates the protein and may prepare it for removal once DNA ends have been sealed.

Ku genes are highly conserved through evolution, and homologs are even found encoded in the genome of some bacteria, consistent with a function in general NHEJ not restricted to V(D)J recombination. While mice with a targeted deletion of DNA-PKcs resemble the original *scid* mutation (i.e., defective coding but functional signal joint formation[81,82]), Ku70 and Ku80 mutant cell lines are defective in both signal and coding joint formation, and Ku70- and Ku80-deficient mice exhibit a complete block in B- and T-cell development due to their inability to undergo V(D)J recombination.[83–85]

DNA Ligase IV and XRCC4. An important role of activated Ku-DNA-PKcs complex is to recruit the additional components of NHEJ. One such component is DNA ligase IV, which is recruited to the Ku complex and activated by the protein XRCC4.[86,87] The evidence suggests that DNA ligase IV is the essential ligase that joins DNA ends in V(D)J recombination and NHEJ. Human patients with ligase IV deficiency (characterized by hypomorphic alleles) have a severe phenotype including chromosomal instability, developmental and growth retardation, radiosensitivity, and immunodeficiency with a T–B–NK+ phenotype.[88] The rare D_H-J_H junctions detected show extensive nucleotide deletion consistent with delayed ligation and prolonged exonuclease digestion.[89] In mice, disruption of either the XRCC4 or the DNA ligase IV gene causes embryonic lethality associated with neuronal apoptosis. Crossing these mice with p53 mutants does not improve V(D)J recombination, but rescues the mice from embryonic lethality, suggesting that neuronal cells may be unusually susceptible to p53-triggered apoptosis induced by normal low-level DNA damage during brain development; a similar mechanism may explain the severe human phenotype.[90] DNA ligase IV is the only NHEJ component absolutely required to join compatible sticky DNA ends *in vitro*, though XRCC4 can stimulate this activity significantly.[87]

Cernunnos/XRCC4-like Factor. The next NHEJ component was independently discovered by two laboratories. One group used yeast two-hybrid screening to search for proteins interacting with XRCC4.[91] The other group searched for the gene causing a syndrome of T+ B lymphocytopenia, increased radiosensitivity, and microcephaly in a Turkish family; these investigators used functional cDNA rescue of a patient's cell line from a radiomimetic drug to identify the gene.[92] The protein identified by both groups is a 299 amino acid nuclear protein, which was named Cernunnos or XLF. The protein has a predicted secondary structure similar to that of XRCC4, to which it binds in cells[93] as expected from its isolation via two-hybrid screen. When Cernunnos/XLF-deficient fibroblasts were transfected with RAG genes and a recombination substrate, imprecise signal joining was observed, similar to the defect in patients with hypomorphic DNA ligase IV mutations. These experiments all suggest a role for Cernunnos/XLF linked to the function of XRCC4 and ligase IV.

Artemis. The coding ends generated by RAG cleavage cannot be directly ligated because of their hairpin structure, and therefore V(D)J recombination requires a single-strand endonuclease activity to cleave the hairpins. This activity is conferred by the protein named Artemis, which was discovered through positional cloning of the genetic defect in a group of human SCID patients with defects in V(D)J recombination and increased radiation sensitivity.[94] Patients with homozygous null mutations of Artemis survive (no embryonic lethality) and show sensitivity to γ irradiation as well as defects in coding joints, while signal joint formation is normal. Hypomorphic Artemis mutations can cause features of the Omenn syndrome similar to those observed with hypomorphic RAG gene mutations.[95] Purified recombinant Artemis protein has an intrinsic exonuclease activity *in vitro*; however, when complexed with DNA-PKcs in the presence of DNA ends, it gains a single-strand endonuclease activity and, in an ATP-dependent step, becomes phosphorylated at multiple sites in the C-terminal region of the protein.[96,97] The Artemis endonuclease can cleave synthetic and RAG-generated hairpin ends as well as other single-stranded DNA near a transition to double-strand DNA.[98]

DNA Polymerase X Family Members. If a hairpin opening leaves blunt ends or complementary sticky ends (like the ends generated by many restriction enzymes), *in vitro* joining experiments suggest that these ends can be joined by ligase IV without any additional processing.[99] However, as Artemis probably opens most hairpins noncomplementary DNA overhangs, further processing of DNA ends generally occurs before ligation completes the recombination. This processing may include further nuclease digestion (by Artemis or exonucleases) and apparently also involves variable DNA extension by three DNA polymerases—polymerase λ, polymerase μ, and terminal deoxynucleotidyl transferase (TdT)—all of which are members of the polymerase X family. Interestingly, all three proteins contain a Brca1-C-terminus domain, which is thought to confer binding to Ku.[100]

Terminal Deoxynucleotidyl Transferase and N Regions. TdT, the primary source of untemplated "N region" additions in VDJ junctions, is an enzyme uniquely expressed in the thymus and bone marrow; in the B lineage, it is expressed almost exclusively in pro-B cells. It catalyzes the nontemplated addition of nucleotides to the 3′ end of DNA strands. Though no template determines the nucleotides added, the enzyme adds dG residues preferentially, consistent with N region sequences observed in VDJ joints. Both TdT expression and N nucleotide addition are characteristically absent from fetal lymphocytes.[101] N region addition is common in H chain genes (recombined in pro-B cells) but rare in murine L chain genes (recombined in pre-B cells), though perhaps somewhat less rare in human.[102] This is consistent with the observation that in mice the expression of a μ H chain may downregulate TdT expression,[103] contributing to the reduced level during the stage of L chain recombination.

Lymphocytes with engineered defects in their TdT genes produced rearranged Ig V regions with almost no N additions. Conversely, when TdT expression was engineered in cells undergoing κ or λ L chain rearrangement, the level of

N nucleotide addition to these coding joints was dramatically increased. Furthermore, mice engineered to undergo premature Vκ-Jκ joining in pro-B cells show an increased frequency of N region nucleotides in their recombined Vκ genes.[104] These results suggest that the low frequency of N region sequences in normal κ or λ recombinations is caused by the reduced levels of TdT at this stage of B-cell development (see following discussion).

The absence of N region addition in TdT mutant mice, as well as in normal fetal lymphocytes, is associated with an increase in the frequency of recombination junctions with microhomologies. These are short stretches of nucleotides that are present close to the end of both germline gene segments involved in the recombination event. These junctions suggest a joining intermediate in which the complementary single-stranded regions from the two coding ends hybridize to each other, much as "sticky ends" generated by restriction endonucleases can facilitate ligation of DNA fragments. This alternative joining pathway may restrict the diversity of neonatal antibodies; the resulting antibodies are possibly enriched in specificities for commonly encountered pathogens, or have broadened specificity, as has been reported for TCRs lacking N regions.[105] Decreased N region nucleotides and a high incidence of homology-mediated recombination have also been found in the rare coding joints formed in Ku80−/− mice, consistent with a role for Ku in recruiting TdT or supporting its action.[106]

Polymerase μ and Polymerase λ. Polymerase μ and polymerase λ are ubiquitously expressed polymerases. Both readily fill in single-strand gaps in DNA and apparently participate in V(D)J recombination by filling in single-strand 3′ overhangs generated by asymmetric hairpin opening. Without this filling in, such overhangs might be resected by nucleases. Indeed, when *in vitro* NHEJ reconstitution experiments are performed using purified proteins and DNA fragments with overhanging ends, the omission of polymerase μ or polymerase λ increases the deletional trimming at junctions.[100] Similar excessive deletions at VDJ junctions are observed in mice lacking polymerase μ or polymerase λ. Remarkably, however, polymerase μ knockout mice show abnormalities only in their L chains,[107] whereas the deletions in polymerase λ knockouts are restricted to their H chains.[108] This selectivity may be explained by corresponding changes in the relative mRNA levels for these two polymerases at different stages of B-cell development.

Other Participants in V(D)J Recombination

DNA Damage Response Factors. In eukaryotic cells, DNA breaks initiate signals that halt cell division, induce DNA repair, and in some cases trigger apoptosis. Several proteins apart from NHEJ components can be detected at DNA breaks induced by V(D)J recombination or irradiation, including γ-H2AX, a phosphorylated form of the histone H2AX; ATM, the product of the gene mutated in the disease ataxia telangiectasia; Nbs1 (or nibrin), the product of the gene mutated in Nijmegen breakage syndrome; and 53BP1, p53 binding protein 1. The importance of these proteins in V(D)J recombination is not clear because defects in all three are compatible with near normal V(D)J recombination. Possibly, they participate in backup mechanisms to prevent aberrant V(D)J recombination and thus translocations.

Pax5/B-Cell–Specific Activator Protein. Pax5 (also known as B-cell–specific activator protein; BSAP) is a transcription factor required for normal B-cell development. Pax5-deficient mice are able to complete DJ_H recombination, but V_H to DJ_H recombination is impaired except for certain V_H genes located proximal to the D regions. Interestingly, 94% of human and mouse V_H coding genes were found to have potential Pax5 binding sites. Surprisingly, Pax5 was found to coimmunoprecipitate with RAG proteins, to potentiate *in vitro* cleavage of a V_H gene RSS, and to enhance V_H to DJ_H recombination in RAG-transfected fibroblasts; the latter enhancement required intact Pax5 binding sites in the V_H sequence.[109]

REGULATION OF V(D)J RECOMBINATION IN B-CELL DEVELOPMENT

The expression of only one antigen binding specificity by each B-lymphocyte is a crucial requirement of the clonal selection model of the humoral immune response. Thus, the recombination events that occur between Ig gene segments are carefully regulated so that most B cells express only one L chain isotype, either Igκ or Igλ (isotype exclusion), and use only one of the two alleles of H and L chain genes (allelic exclusion). These constraints ensure that each B cell expresses a single H_2L_2 combination. Current evidence suggests that V(D)J recombination is controlled largely at two levels: regulation of the RAG protein activity and regulation of accessibility of the germline V, D, and J elements to the recombinase machinery. Both of these are controlled by the stage of B-cell development; conversely, the expression of Ig provides a signal critical for regulating maturation of B cells. A brief scheme of B-cell development is presented in the following as background.

B- and T-lymphocytes differentiate from pluripotent hematopoietic stem cells in the fetal liver and bone marrow (Fig. 6.11). The primordial lymphoid progenitor has the potential to differentiate into B- or T-lymphocytes or natural killer cells. Among the earliest markers that indicate B-lineage specificity are the non-Ig components of the pre-BCR: Igα, Igβ, and λ5. CD19, which functions as a coreceptor in signal transduction, first appears in large proliferating "pro-B" cells, which also express several other distinguishing surface markers including c-kit, B220, TdT, and CD43. RAG gene expression in pro-B cells initiates D to J rearrangements on both alleles. Subsequently, recombination with germline V_H elements occurs; if the recombination is "productive" (i.e., yielding an "in-frame" VDJ junction), a μ H chain protein can be produced. This protein appears on the B-cell surface along with SLC in a pre-BCR (also named μ-SLC) complex that also includes Igα and Igβ. As the resulting large pre-B cells proliferate, RAG gene expression declines. After several rounds of division, the cells become smaller, stop dividing, turn up RAG gene expression once more, undergo L chain recombination, and express surface

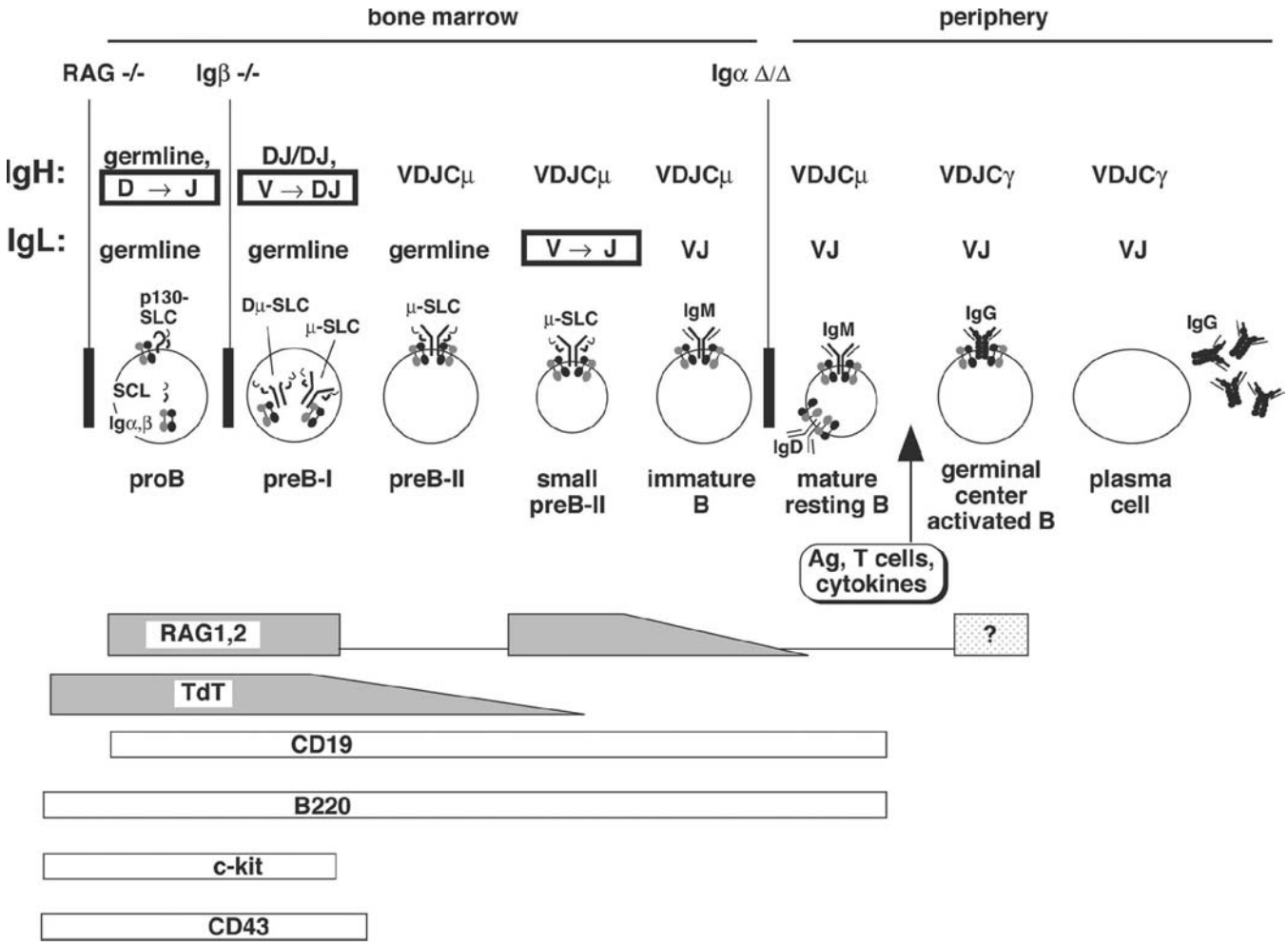


FIG. 6.11. Immunoglobulin (Ig) Gene Recombination in B-Cell Development. A simplified scheme of B-cell development is presented as a background for discussion of Ig gene recombination. The stages occurring in the bone marrow versus in the periphery (e.g., lymph nodes, spleen) are shown, along with the status of IgH and IgL genes at each stage. A graphic depicting the Ig-related proteins displayed on the surface at each stage is presented; at the bottom, the stage-dependent expression of recombination activating genes and terminal deoxynucleotidyl transferase—both important in V(D)J recombination—is schematically depicted.

IgM. These "immature B cells" again turn down RAG expression. In these IgM+IgD– immature B cells, contact with autoantigens may upregulate RAG expression again to facilitate receptor editing (discussed in more detail below). When immature B cells eventually also express surface IgD, they become "mature B cells" and migrate into the periphery, ready to be triggered by antigen exposure.

Allelic Exclusion and Regulated V(D)J Recombination

The previous description of B-cell development serves as a background to understand an explanation of allelic exclusion that was first proposed by Alt and colleagues[110] and has been supported by subsequent experiments. According to this model the functional rearrangement of an L (or H) chain gene in a particular B cell would inhibit further L (or H) chain gene rearrangement in the same cell. If the inhibition occurred promptly after the first functional rearrangement, then two functional Igs could never be produced in the same cell. An initial nonproductive rearrangement would have no inhibitory effect, so recombination could continue until a functional product resulted or until the cell used up all its germline precursors.

In pro-B cells, the first Ig gene rearrangements join D to J_H segments (commonly on both chromosomes), and this is followed by V_H to DJ_H recombination. If the first V_H to DJ_H recombination in a pro-B cell produces a functional VDJ gene, a functional μ H chain will be expressed on the cell surface paired with the SLCs. The expression of this pre-BCR complex has been shown to have two consequences. First, it blocks further H chain recombination by decreasing RAG gene expression[111] and by reducing target accessibility, as reflected in decreased V_H gene transcription.[112] The latter is important for rendering the IgH locus inaccessible during subsequent rearrangement of the Igκ and Igλ loci. If the initial V_H to DJ_H rearrangement is nonfunctional (e.g., out of frame), subsequent V_H to DJ_H recombination occurs on the other allele. If the VDJ recombination product on the

second chromosome is also nonproductive, then the cell has reached a dead end and is eliminated by apoptosis.[113]

The second consequence of pre-BCR expression is the initiation of Ig L chain recombination. This effect was originally deduced from the rarity of κ-expressing cells without H chain gene rearrangement, suggesting that H chain expression is required for κ recombination. As additional evidence, a functional μ gene introduced into early B-lineage cells can cause RAG gene expression and turn on transcription of unrearranged Vκ genes. These are designated "sterile" transcripts because they cannot encode a κ protein, but they are required for Vκ-Jκ recombination. When this recombination ensues, the possibilities for functional and nonproductive Vκ-Jκ rearrangements resemble those discussed previously for the H chain. Expression of a functional κ chain that can associate with μ to form a surface-expressed IgM molecule results in the downregulation of RAG gene expression and suppression of further κ rearrangements. By this mechanism, functional rearranged VκJ-Cκ transgenes can suppress rearrangement of endogenous κ genes.[114]

Most B cells show isotypic exclusion (i.e., they express either κ or λ but not both). Furthermore, κ rearrangement seems to occur before λ. Thus in normal and malignant human B-lymphoid cells, κ-expressing cells generally have their λ genes in germline configuration, while in λ-expressing cells, κ genes are either rearranged (rarely) or deleted (most commonly) by recombination signal recombination events discussed previously in this chapter.[22] The mechanisms that dictate the order of L chain recombination remain unknown. Plausible models include either the selective suppression of λ recombination until all options on the Igκ locus are exhausted or differences in the timing of the developmental programs controlling κ and λ accessibility.

Regulation of RAG Expression

A complete explanation of RAG gene expression would explain its lymphoid specificity, the two waves of RAG expression (during IgH and IgL rearrangements) and the autoantigen-induced upregulation associated with receptor editing. Although our current knowledge is still incomplete, several *cis*-regulatory elements that regulate RAG expression have been characterized. Surprisingly, the elements and mechanism for regulating expression during B- and T-cell development are distinct. RAG1 and RAG2 are transcribed toward each other in opposite directions, driven by promoters near the respective transcription start sites. Three B-cell–specific enhancers—designated Erag, D3, and Ep—have been reported, lying about 23 kb, 8 kb, and 1.6 kb, respectively, upstream of RAG2.[115–117] The B-cell–specific function of these regulatory regions is likely explained by the intersecting specificities of transcription factors that interact with them, including Pax5, E2A, FoxP1, FoxO1, NFATc1, and Ikaros. NFκB, which binds at several locations in the RAG enhancers, and FoxO1 (binding to Erag) were found to be important mediators of the upregulation of RAG expression in cells undergoing receptor editing.[118,119] Regulation of RAG2 protein across the cell cycle has been discussed previously in this chapter.

Parameters Affecting Recombinational Accessibility and Transcription

V(D)J recombination is triggered by RAG expression in the development of both B and T cells, yet Ig gene recombination is largely confined to B cells (exception: early T cells typically show D-J_H recombination); TCR gene recombination is exclusive to T cells. A widely accepted explanation for this locus specificity is provided by the "accessibility" model.[120] This model proposes that only those gene segments programmed for recombination at a given stage of B- and T-cell development are "accessible" to the RAG recombinase. One clue suggesting this model was that susceptibility to recombination and transcription of germline gene elements seem to be tightly correlated.[120] For example, many germline V_H genes are transcribed at the pre-B cell stage, just at the time when these genes are targets for recombination; these transcripts—designated "sterile" like the Vκ transcripts mentioned previously—are not seen in more mature B cells in which H chain recombination has been terminated. In support of the accessibility model, recombinant RAG proteins incubated with nuclei purified from pro-B cells (which generate sterile transcripts in the IgH locus) were found to cleave DNA at Ig J_H RSSs, but not at TCRδ RSSs; conversely, in pro-T nuclei the TCRδ RSS was cleaved, but not an Ig gene RSS.[121]

One molecular correlate of accessibility is the epigenetic state of DNA in the nuclear chromatin. The minimal repeat unit of chromatin is the nucleosome, which consists of eight core histones (two copies each of H2A, H2B, H3, and H4) with 146 bp DNA wrapped around it. *In vitro*, RAG proteins are unable to bind to and cut DNA wrapped around nucleosomes,[122,123] and hence nucleosomes have to be shifted or removed (a process called chromatin remodeling) to allow access. An alternative but not mutually exclusive approach to gain access is post-translational modification of the histone tails, which regulates the tightness of DNA-nucleosome contacts. The following section provides an overview of how accessibility of the Ig gene loci for RAG activity is regulated by several distinct but interconnected epigenetic mechanisms. We discuss a few important examples for each mechanism and refer to comprehensive review articles for an in-depth discussion.

Subnuclear Localization

In general, inactive genes tend to be located in the periphery of nuclei, while active genes are recruited to a more central nuclear location.[124] It is unclear whether the location per se dictates the chromatin state of a locus or whether the movement is a consequence of a locus being "opened." Fluorescence in situ hybridization (FISH) with large (~100 kb) probes specific for Ig loci is routinely used to reveal the position of Ig gene loci and control genes in the nucleus. The IgH and Igκ loci are located at the nuclear periphery in hematopoietic progenitors and pro-T cells, but move to central areas of the nucleus in pro-B cells.[125] As only the IgH locus gets rearranged at this stage, the correlation of position with accessibility is not perfect.

Transcription

Transcription typically occurs in "open" chromatin, and an emerging theme suggests that while some locus "opening" has

to precede transcription, transcription per se also positively reinforces this chromatin state. As mentioned previously, transcription of individual elements within Ig gene loci correlates well with their availability for V(D)J recombination at that stage. In early pro-B cells when D to J_H recombination takes places a "μo" transcript starts upstream of DQ52 and proceeds all the way through the J_H elements[126,127]; and only after DJ_H rearrangement do V_H sterile transcripts appear.[120] It is currently unclear whether transcription per se is directly linked to recombination or whether the correlation is largely mediated by similar requirements for gaining access to chromatinized DNA.

Histone Modifications

Posttranslational modifications of histone tails are important epigenetic marks of the chromatin state (also referred to as the "histone code"). Distinct marks correlate well with actively transcribed and inactive (or repressed) gene loci. As these patterns hold true for Ig loci as well, active marks (e.g., histone acetylation) and inactive marks (e.g., the methylation of lysine 9 on histone H3, H3K9Me2) correlate well with both transcription and recombination accessibility.[128] Importantly, one particular mark for open chromatin, H3K4Me3, is directly linked to the RAG recombinase. As discussed previously, histone tails with this modification are recognized by the PHD domain of RAG2; strikingly, the distribution of RAG2 in Ig loci matches exactly the pattern of H3K4Me3 (which mark accessible gene segments).[129] Beyond facilitating the recruitment of the recombinase, this histone modification also increases cleavage activity *in vitro*.[69]

Methylation

Most cytosine residues within CpG dinucleotides are methylated in mammalian DNA, but genes that are actively expressed in a particular cell are generally relatively hypomethylated in that cell type, implying that DNA methylation inhibits transcription. DNA methylation also seems to inhibit V(D)J recombination. The developmental maturation from pro-B to pre-B cells is associated with progression from a κ locus that is largely methylated, nontranscribed, and nonrearranging to one that is hypomethylated, transcribed, and rearranging.[130,131] Furthermore, methylation of artificial recombination substrates blocked V(D)J recombination when transfected into a recombination competent B-cell line[132]; V(D)J recombination of a transgenic construct occurred only when it was unmethylated.[133] Methylation and histone acetylation are interrelated; for example, the methyl-CpG-binding protein MeCP2 recruits histone deacetylases, which reduce acetylation of histones.

Gene Localization in the Nucleus

While accessibility allows the RAG proteins to selectively bind to appropriate sets of RSSs at each developmental stage, V(D)J recombination also requires that a pair of compatible gene segments (and their RSSs) are in close physical proximity. This becomes a particularly daunting requirement for gene segments > 1 mb apart in linear DNA sequence. Such distant segments are apparently brought close together in the nucleus, a process of "locus compaction" that loops out large regions of intervening DNA. Evidence for this model derives from FISH experiments showing greater compaction of the IgH locus in pro-B cells poised to undergo V(D)J recombination than in their earlier hematopoietic progenitors.[125] B cells deficient in Pax5 are impaired in recombination of the most distal V_H regions and show less movement of these regions towards the J_H-C locus than normal cells.[134] Data from a recently developed high-resolution FISH method provide a detailed model of the three-dimensional structure of the IgH locus, revealing rosette-like structures with central hubs from which several loops extend.[135]

cis Mediators of Accessibility and Looping

All previously described properties are dependent on *cis*-regulatory elements within the Ig loci, including classic promoters and enhancers. Individual promoters are present upstream of all V elements in all Ig loci, while the downstream D and J elements share a smaller number of promoters. Enhancers are present in each Ig locus, and they are thought to confer the transcriptional activation of each locus at the appropriate stage of B-cell development. Murine κ and IgH loci have intronic enhancers in the intron between J and C (iEκ and Eμ, respectively), and all three loci have enhancers downstream of C coding regions. (For example, downstream of the murine IgH locus is a complex of four enhancers, collectively known as the 3′regulatory region.) Promoters and enhancers were originally defined based on their role in regulating transcription, but these and other recently reported elements appear to play additional roles in Ig gene recombination. Transcriptional activation and the correlated locus "opening" is mediated by the recruitment of transcription factors that in turn recruit histone modifying and chromatin-remodeling enzymes. In addition, promoters and enhancers regulate transcription through the formation of DNA loops, some of which are critical determinants of the three-dimensional structure of Ig loci, thereby affecting V(D)J recombination as well as CSR (as discussed below).

An enhancer may activate transcription of several genes within a given gene locus, but its effects may be deleterious if it can activate other nearby genes requiring different patterns of expression. To prevent enhancer function beyond appropriate domains, boundary elements known as insulators establish borders between gene loci that are differentially regulated. The protein CCCTC binding factor (CTCF) is commonly found at insulators and also functions by creating DNA loops. One such insulator apparently lies downstream of a complex of enhancers at the 3′ end of the IgH locus, the 3′-regulatory region, where it may protect genes further downstream from being regulated by the Ig enhancer elements.[136] A recently discovered regulatory element with insulator properties is the intergenic control region-1 (IGCR1), which participates in CTCF–dependent looping between the Eμ and 3′ regulatory region enhancers.[137–139] Based on results of deletion of this region, the IGCR1 element suppresses recombination of V_H to D segments not already joined to J_H, prevents V_H to DJ_H recombination in T cells, and mediates the BCR-induced signal that terminates sterile V_H transcription and recombinational accessibility of V_H segments after a productive VDJ recombination leads to expression of a μ protein.

Late RAG Expression: Receptor Editing and Receptor Revision

Although the RAG genes are generally downregulated by a signal mediated by the appearance of membrane IgM at the end of the pre–B-cell stage, RAG gene expression and V(D)J recombination can recur later during "receptor editing" of autoreactive B cells in the bone marrow. One estimate suggests that about 25% of Igs are products of receptor editing.[140] After production of an initial Igκ. protein, receptor editing by L chain rearrangement can occur three ways: an initial VκJκ junction could be deleted by recombination between an upstream V and downstream J on the same chromosome ("secondary recombination," as discussed previously), VκJκ recombination could occur on the other (allelic) copy of the κ locus, or Vλ-Jλ recombination could be activated.

Most replacement of productively rearranged L or H chain genes likely serves to extinguish an antibody that was autoreactive, thus complementing two other mechanisms to silence autoantibodies: anergization and cell deletion by apoptosis. Early studies with transgenic autoantibodies suggested that anergy or deletion were the main fates of self-reactive B cells, but these conclusions may have depended on the nonphysiologic inability of the cells to silence the transgenic autoantibody by receptor editing. More recent studies involving autoantibody "knockin" genes—i.e., productive V[D]J recombined genes swapped into the physiologic positions within the IgH or Igκ gene loci using homologous recombination —have shown that receptor editing is the major mechanism for B cell tolerance.[141,142] This conclusion was also supported by a study of mice expressing a transgenic antibody against the murine Cκ constant region, a model of a self-superantigen; these mice provided evidence of receptor editing leading to virtually 100% λ L chain expression.[143]

IMMUNOGLOBULIN GENE ALTERATIONS IN GERMINAL CENTERS

Several days after exposure to an antigen, B cells accumulate in local lymph nodes, gut-associated lymphoid tissue, and spleen, and begin additional maturation steps in germinal centers (GCs). During the GC response, antigen-driven B cells undergo cycles of proliferation and their Ig genes undergo two unique alterations. 1) Lymphocytes switch from making IgM to making a new H chain isotype by the process of CSR. This process introduces dsbs upstream of Cμ in a specific repetitive noncoding DNA segment—the "switch region"—and in a similar switch region upstream of the new target Cx region; the DNA between the breaks is then deleted, and the ends of the remaining chromosomal DNA are rejoined so that the assembled VDJ region now lies upstream of the new Cx gene (Fig. 6.12). 2) In the other GC-associated gene alteration, the affinity of the antibody for its antigen increases by a process that introduces random mutations in V_H and V_L—somatic hypermutation (SHM)—and then selects for B cells producing higher-affinity antibodies. For many years, CSR and SHM were considered to be unrelated processes, but several lines of evidence provided hints that they might share some mechanistic features. First, while dsbs are expected intermediates for the DNA recombination underlying class switching, DNA breaks in V regions were also detected accompanying SHM. Second (and conversely), in addition to the mutations occurring in V regions associated with SHM, mutations were also observed surrounding the recombination junctions of CSR. Third, RNA transcription was found to be required for both processes.

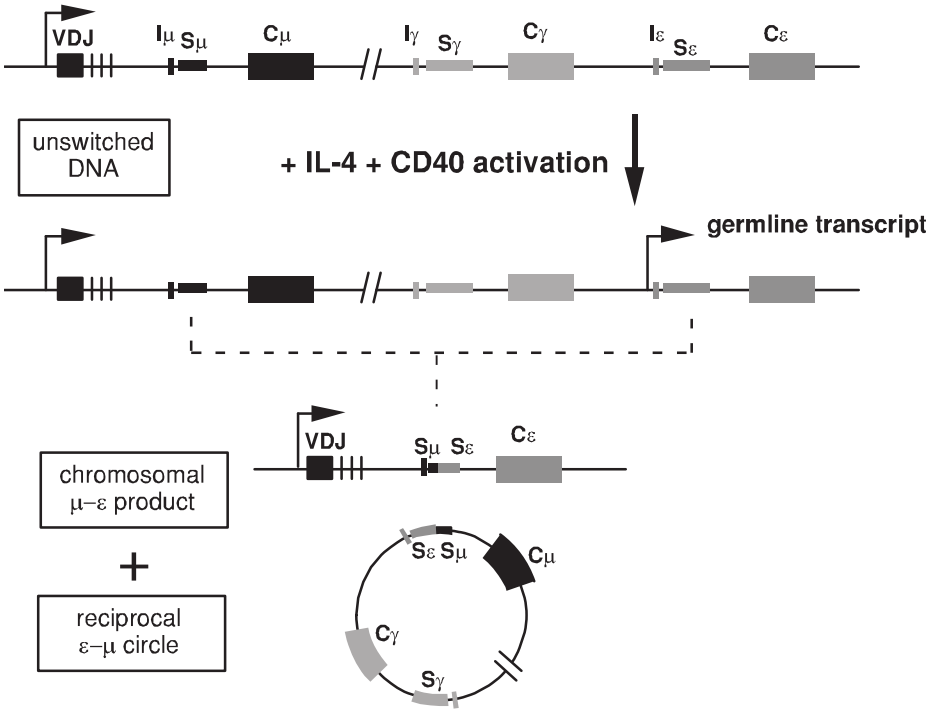


FIG. 6.12. Switch Regions and Composite Switch Junctions. The recombination breakpoints in isotype switch recombination fall within repetitive "switch" (S) regions. Stimuli that activate switch recombination (IL-4 and CD40 activation in the example shown) generally promote transcription across the target S region, initiating just upstream at the "I" exon. Recombination between Sμ and Sε produces two composite switch junctions: an Sμ-Sε junction retained in chromosomal DNA, and a reciprocal Sε-Sμ junction found in fractions of circular DNA. Polymerase chain reaction amplification across either composite junction can be used to study switch recombination.

Activation-Induced Deaminase

A fourth and dramatic link between CSR and SHM was the discovery that both processes require the protein known as activation-induced deaminase (AID). The gene encoding AID (known as *Aicda*, for *a*ctivation *i*nduced *c*ytosine *dea*minase) was discovered[144] by a subtractive strategy designed to screen for transcripts that were expressed in a murine B-cell line when induced to undergo CSR, but that were not expressed in uninduced cells. AID is expressed almost exclusively in GC B cells and in B cells activated *in vitro*, though exceptions to this generalization will be discussed later. Mice engineered with a targeted defect in the *Aicda* gene are completely deficient in CSR and SHM. The same defects are seen in patients with a homozygous defect in the human *Aicda* gene, a condition known as the hyper-IgM syndrome-2.[145] These patients have elevated serum levels of IgM because their B cells cannot undergo efficient CSR. AID is not only necessary for CSR and SHM, but apparently sufficient (in a mammalian cell at least), as overexpression of AID in fibroblasts can confer transcription-dependent CSR of an artificial switch construct[146] and transcription-dependent SHM of a transfected model mutation target DNA.[147] These experiments suggest that AID is the only B-cell–specific protein required for SHM and CSR. AID is also required for somatic Ig gene conversion in those species (e.g., rabbit and chicken) that use that process to somatically diversify Ig genes.

As translated from the cDNA, AID is a ~24 kD 198 amino acid protein that forms homodimers. AID shows 34% amino acid identity with the RNA editing enzyme APOBEC1, which catalyzes the deamination of a cytosine residue to uracil in a specific position in the mRNA encoding apolipoprotein B. The human *Apobec1* and *Aicda* genes are genetically linked, both lying at chromosome 12p13. Three other APOBEC1-related genes on other chromosomes have also been identified, but are not thought to participate in SHM or CSR.

Like APOBEC1, recombinant AID protein has a cytidine deaminase activity *in vitro*; it was initially proposed that, by analogy with APOBEC1, AID functions by deaminating cytidines in specific RNAs to produce novel edited transcripts encoding one or more proteins required for CSR and SHM. However, no evidence of AID-dependent edited RNAs has been reported, nor does AID deaminate RNA cytidines *in vitro*. Instead, current evidence indicates that AID acts on DNA, deaminating cytidines to uracil—in V regions for SHM, and in switch regions for CSR. The resulting uracils would be then recognized as both Watson-Crick mismatches and abnormal DNA bases by the cell's genetic surveillance machinery, triggering error-prone repair of V regions to produce SHM, or DNA cleavage to mediate CSR.

This DNA-deamination model for AID is consistent with various properties reported for this protein *in vitro* or in cells.

1. In transfected *Escherichia coli* cells, AID mutates cytidine to uracil in DNA, a result that would be unexpected by the RNA-deamination model, as bacteria presumably lack the specific mammalian RNA targets predicted by that model.[148,149]
2. Defective SHM and CSR are observed with inhibition or genetic inactivation of uracil-N-glycosylase (UNG), an enzyme that removes uracil residues from DNA,[150,151] consistent with the idea that CSR and SHM involve a step in which AID-produced uracil in DNA is removed by UNG. Moreover, B cells from *Ung*–/– mice accumulate uracils in V and in switch regions in an AID-dependent manner.[152]
3. AID isolated from B-lymphocytes can deaminate cytidine to uracil in single-strand DNA *in vitro*[153–155] or in double-strand DNA that is being transcribed *in vitro*, presumably because transcription causes localized regions of single-strandedness.[155–157]
4. AID is found to be associated with IgH genes *in vivo* in B cells undergoing CSR,[158–160] as assessed by Chromatin ImmunoPrecipitation (ChIP) using an anti-AID antibody.
5. A DNA sequence motif WRC—where W is A or T (*w*eak Watson-Crick pairs) and R (pu*r*ine) is A or G—that has been recognized as a hotspot target of SHM is also a preferred target for AID deamination *in vitro*,[154,157] and the hotspot preference can be altered by engineering amino acid changes in the segment of the AID protein thought to recognize the hotspot target in DNA.[161–163]

In light of these and other observations, the DNA deamination model for AID action is now almost universally accepted. The AID protein is highly conserved from fish to human, with all species having approximately 200 amino acids and sharing sequence similarities throughout the protein. In all species, AID contains a motif common to the active site of all cytidine deaminases: H[A/V]E – $X_{(24–36)}$ – PCXXC. This motif is also found in other members of the AID-APOBEC gene family, including APOBEC2, APOBEC3 (with several distinct paralogs in human), and APOBEC4.[164] AID is encoded in the five exons of the *Aicda* gene.

Structure-function relationships of AID have been probed by examining cross-species sequence comparisons and the effects of natural and engineered mutations in the protein. Remarkably, mutations in the N-terminus of AID impaired SHM but not CSR, whereas mutations or deletion in the C-terminus selectively impaired CSR,[165–167] suggesting the possibility that the N- and C-terminal regions of the protein contact specific cofactors required (respectively) for SHM and CSR function. Other functional features of the protein include a dimerization domain, several phosphorylatable residues, segments affecting nuclear localization, and target sequences for association with other proteins.

Although AID was initially recognized for its participation in SHM and CSR in GC cells, more recent reports have reported several other roles for this protein, both beneficial and deleterious.

1. *Epigenetic methylation.* Selective DNA methylation of cytidines is an epigenetic mechanism that participates in the regulation of transcription, and the methylation pattern of DNA is normally replicated when DNA is replicated prior to cell division. In primordial germ cells of

early embryogenesis, a global erasure of methylation occurs as part of the reprogramming to pluripotency, and AID apparently participates in this process.[168,169]

2. *Germline mutation.* AID can deaminate methylcytosine to thymine, which unlike uracil is a natural DNA base. This reaction in germ cells may contribute to the most frequent germline point mutation observed in mammals: the transition from CpG to TpG.[170]
3. *Genomic protection.* AID and other APOBEC family members protect cells against retroviral infections and against the spread of endogenous retroviruses.[171–173]
4. *Tolerance, apoptosis.* AID appears to be important for the establishment of B-cell tolerance in humans and mice, in that the low levels of AID expression observed in immature and transitional B cells appear to be necessary for suppressing the appearance of autoantibodies.[174–176] This effect may be related to the apparent requirement of AID for normal levels of apoptosis, which contribute to the elimination of B cells expressing autoantibodies.
5. *Oncogenic mutations and translocations.* Soon after AID was discovered, it was observed that overexpression of the protein caused tumors in transgenic mice,[177] and even normal expression of AID in B cells contributes to tumorigenic translocations and oncogenic mutations.[178] A notable example of AID-stimulated translocation is the recurrent *c-myc/Ig* translocation seen in Burkitt lymphoma and murine myelomas. Other cancers where AID plays a role through mutation include intestinal and lung cancer.

Based on studies of AID+/− heterozygous mice expressing roughly 50% of normal AID, the level of AID activity seems to be the limiting factor for both SHM and CSR, but is also limiting for oncogenic translocations and mutations.[179,180] Therefore, AID activity must be regulated robustly to balance between its multiple beneficial and deleterious actions. The regulation of AID activity is extremely complex, involving multiple levels of control, and is still incompletely understood.

Transcriptional and Posttranscriptional Regulation of AID Expression

Early studies showed that AID expression in B cells is upregulated by IL-4 and CD40 engagement. In more recent investigations, four DNA regions that regulate *Aicda* gene expression have been identified. They include an upstream enhancer responsive to T-cell signals, a promoter, a regulatory region just downstream of exon 1, and an additional enhancer downstream of the *Aicda* gene.[181–186]

The microRNA miR-155 has been shown to suppress AID expression.[187,188] MicroRNAs are short (21 to 23 nt) RNAs that hybridize to complementary sites in numerous target RNAs, triggering their degradation or inhibiting their translation. A target for miR-155 lies in the 3′ untranslated region of the AID transcript. AID expression was increased in miR-155–deficient mice and in mice whose *Aicda* gene was mutated to disrupt the 3′UTR target sequence. In both cases, consequences of the increase in AID expression included increased off-target mutations and increased *c-myc-IgH* translocations. Perhaps to protect against such effects, miR-155 is itself upregulated by the same signals that induce *Aicda* transcription in B cells.

Posttranslational Regulation

The level of AID activity in the nucleus is affected by its distribution between cytoplasm and nucleus, by the protein half-life, and by phosphorylation at various positions in the protein.

AID was found to shuttle between nucleus and cytoplasm.[189] Most of the protein is cytoplasmic and only a small fraction is in the nucleus, where it can act on DNA to cause CSR and SHM as well as "off-target" deleterious effects. Movement between cytoplasm and nucleus is controlled by at least three independent mechanisms: active nuclear import mediated by an N-terminal nuclear localization signal,[190] active nuclear export mediated by a C-terminal nuclear export signal,[189,191] and a cytoplasmic retention mechanism apparent when active import and export mechanisms are both blocked. Two proteins that may facilitate AID import independently of the nuclear localization signal are GANP[192] and CTNNBL1.[193] Nuclear-cytoplasmic distribution affects AID stability, because in the nucleus AID is targeted for ubiquitination and proteasomal degradation, shortening its half-life.[194] Conversely, in the cytoplasm, the chaperone protein Hsp90 protects AID from proteasomal degradation.[195]

In addition to ubiquitination, AID is also subject to posttranslational phosphorylation at several distinct residues in the protein, including Ser3, Thr27, Ser38, Thr140, and Tyr184. Of these, the functional relevance of the Ser38 site is best understood. Phosphorylation of AID Ser38 is essential to recruit replication protein A (RPA), a trimeric single-strand DNA binding protein[159,196] that may be required to stabilize a single-strand DNA target for AID. Preparations of AID purified from transfected *E. coli* or from nonlymphoid eukaryotic cells lack Ser38 phosphorylation; they can deaminate single-strand DNA *in vitro*, but are inactive in an assay for deamination of double-strand DNA transcribed *in vitro* by T7 polymerase. Activity in the latter assay requires AID that is phosphorylated at Ser38 and associated with RPA. In the AID protein, Ser38 lies within a conserved phosphorylation site [RRXX(T/S)] for the cyclic-AMP dependent protein kinase A (PKA), and multiple experiments have confirmed that PKA phosphorylates AID at Ser38 *in vitro* and physiologically *in vivo*.[196,197] The physiologic importance of Ser38 phosphorylation is strongly supported by observations of the effect of mutating this serine to alanine. The AID^{S38A} protein has essentially normal activity in deaminating single-stranded DNA *in vitro*, but severely reduced activity in deaminating transcribed double-strand DNA *in vitro*.

Less is known about the other sites of AID phosphorylation. At Thr140, alanine replacement causes more modest inhibition of AID activity than Ser38Ala, preferentially affecting SHM *in vivo*, but without significant effect on *in vitro* catalytic activity.[198] In contrast to Ser38 and Thr140, phosphorylation of Ser3 apparently suppresses *in vivo* AID activity; alanine replacement at this position increases SHM,

CSR, and oncogenic translocation, also without affecting *in vitro* catalytic activity.[199]

Clearly, multiple mechanisms regulate the level of activity of AID in B-cell nuclei, but these mechanisms cannot explain how—within nuclei—AID acts on Ig V genes and switch regions at a much higher frequency than on the rest of the genome. Targeting mechanisms differ somewhat between SHM and CSR, and will be discussed in the context of those processes.

Somatic Hypermutation

The hypothesis that antibody genes inherited in the germline might be subject to somatic mutation in lymphocytes during the life of an individual was suggested as an explanation for the diversity of antibodies several years before recombinant DNA technology became available to clarify the role of V(D)J recombination. Persuasive evidence for somatic mutation was reported in the 1970s: analyses of Vλ1 amino acid sequences of murine myeloma antibodies showed many instances of a particular prototype sequence, plus several variants containing unique single amino acid substitutions that could be explained by single nucleotide changes. The prototype was interpreted as reflecting the germline sequence, with the variants arising by somatic mutation.[200] Subsequent investigations at the DNA level revealed myeloma V region sequences that deviated from their germline counterparts, verifying the principle of somatic mutation.

Somatic mutations are much rarer in IgM than in antibodies with "switched" isotypes (IgG, IgA, and IgE) made by B cells that have been exposed to AID in GCs, but they do occur; antibodies with "switched" isotypes without mutations are also found. These observations suggest that though both SHM and CSR normally occur in GC B cells, the two processes are unlinked.

Role of Hypermutation in Immune Responses

To understand the role of SHM in the antibody response, several groups have studied the extent of Ig gene mutation at different times after the immunization of mice. Studies of the responses to p-azophenylarsonate (Ars), phosphorylcholine, influenza hemagglutinin, oxazalone, and several other antigens have all indicated that the initial response after primary immunization is established by antibodies showing no somatic mutation. About 1 week after immunization, mutated sequences begin to be observed, increasing during the next week or so. Booster immunizations yield sequences showing additional mutations.

Many hybridomas made late in the immune response produce mutated antibodies with a higher antigen affinity than the unmutated (sometimes loosely called "germline") antibodies made early after immunization. The shift to higher affinity is a phenomenon long recognized at the level of (polyclonal) antisera and has been termed "affinity maturation." This phenomenon can now be explained as the result of an "evolutionary" mechanism selecting antibodies of progressively higher affinity from the pool of randomly mutated V sequences.

According to this model, at the time of initial antigen exposure an animal has a set of naïve B-lymphocytes expressing IgM with germline (unmutated) versions of Ig variable regions resulting from gene rearrangements that occurred prior to immunization. Because of the diversity of available V_H, D, J_H, V_L, and J_L sequences as well as the impressive recombinational potential described previously, some B cells will express Ig molecules capable of binding the antigen with modest affinity. Antigen binding stimulates these B cells to proliferate and to move to lymphoid follicles, where they form GCs. In the GC environment, AID is expressed and SHM machinery is activated, generating random mutations in the Ig genes of stimulated GC B cells. Many of these mutations reduce the affinity of the encoded antibody for antigen,[201] and some may induce autoantibody specificities (i.e., the ability to bind to self-molecules[202]). As clearance of the antigen lowers the antigen concentrations, only the cells displaying high affinity for antigen will be stimulated effectively; cells displaying lower-affinity antibodies or antibodies with affinity for self-antigens are subjected to programmed cell death ("apoptosis").[203,204] The preferential proliferation of the high-affinity cells and their maturation to secreting plasma cells causes an increase in the average affinity of the antibodies in the serum. Some high-affinity cells become memory cells, persisting long after the initial antigen exposure, ready to respond to a subsequent antigen exposure with rapid production of high-affinity antibody. In this model, the driving force for affinity maturation—analogous to natural selection in the evolution of species—is selection for high-antibody affinity in the face of falling antigen concentration. The importance of this selective force is suggested by the observation that affinity maturation can be inhibited by repeated injection of antigen (which removes the selective pressure for high affinity)[205] or by overexpression of the antiapoptotic protein Bcl-XL (which allows survival of B cells expressing low affinity antibody).[206]

Cellular Context of Somatic Mutation

Each GC appears to be populated by a small number of antigen-specific founder B cells[207] and an unusual Thy-1 negative T-cell population, also antigen-specific,[208] The GC environment promotes contact between the B cell and follicular dendritic cells— which store, process, and present antigen—and T-lymphocytes, which activate somatic mutation in part via CD40-CD40Ligand interaction.[209] In a widely accepted model of GC function, SHM occurs in a subpopulation of B cells known as centroblasts. These cells proliferate in the "dark zone" of the GC and bear characteristic surface markers including IgD, CD38, and the receptor for peanut agglutinin. Proliferating GC centroblasts give rise to nondividing centrocytes in the "light zone" of the GC; there centrocytes are programmed for apoptosis unless they are rescued by follicular dendritic cell–presented antigen and T-cell activation via CD40 engagement. Selection for high-affinity antibodies occurs because cells expressing high-affinity antibodies are most efficiently rescued from apoptosis. Surviving centrocytes may return to the dark zone to undergo several successive cycles of mutation and proliferation followed by selection. This model is supported by direct observation (by two-photon microscopy) of B cells moving between light zone and dark zone.[210] Migration of

B cells to follicles or GC zones is thought to be controlled by a complex system of chemotactic receptor /ligand pairs including CXCR5/CXCL13, CXCR4/SDF1, CCR7/CCL9 (or CCL21), S1P1/sphingosine-1-phosphate, and EBI2/its lipid ligand.[211] Although certain features of this classical model have been challenged, the broad outlines have received strong support from studies in which cells in the dark zone or light zone of individual GCs can be marked by a photoactivatable green fluorescent protein (GFP) and then followed for several hours using two-photon imaging as the cells migrate through a mounted lymph node.[212]

The notion that GC B cells compete to avoid apoptosis on the basis of antigen affinity of their BCR has been has been supported by a study that directly compared caspase activation (an apoptosis marker) in B cells expressing transgenic antibodies with higher versus lower affinity for the same antigen; the lower-affinity cells were found to undergo a significantly higher rate of apoptosis.[213] The mechanism by which high-affinity antigen binding selects for survival is not fully understood. One possibility is that a higher-affinity BCR directly delivers a stronger activation signal to the B cell, inhibiting apoptosis. However, a second possibility is that a higher-affinity BCR could capture antigen more efficiently, enabling stronger antigen presentation to GC T cells, which could then deliver stronger survival signals to the B cell via secreted or surface protein interactions. Consistent with the second model, experiments using two-photon microscopy have documented that that B cells from mice immunized with a fluorescent antigen can capture that antigen from follicular dendritic cells in the GC.[214] To test whether B-cell antigen capture might confer survival independently of the BCR, investigators engineered B cells in ovalbumin-primed mice to deliver ovalbumin via a surface lectin instead of via the BCR; they observed that the internalized ovalbumin antigen was capable of conferring a B-cell survival advantage in the GC in the absence of BCR engagement.[212] However, effective BCR signaling can enhance antigen processing and presentation,[215] so internalization/presentation and BCR signaling may work together to promote GC B-cell survival and mediate selection for high affinity.

Most experiments on SHM have focused on GC cells, as does the discussion in this chapter. However, T-cell–independent SHM may also occur in a population of less mature cells, which may populate the splenic marginal zone and which may increase the repertoire of circulating lymphocytes prior to antigen exposure, especially in young individuals,[216,217] or perhaps function in tolerance induction, as discussed previously. Also, mice lacking histologically detectable GCs as a result of lymphotoxin-α deficiency are capable of SHM and affinity maturation.[218] T-cell–independent antigens can induce a low level of SHM in B cells.[219]

Molecular Mechanism of Hypermutation

AID deaminates cytidine to uracil, an analog of thymine. Thus, if replicated before repair, an original C:G base pair would, in the daughter cell receiving the uracil-bearing DNA strand, mutate to a T:A. But it was initially not clear how cytidine deamination could affect A:T base pairs, which are targeted in 50% to 60% of mutations observed in SHM. By analyzing abnormalities in SHM that are observed in various mutant B cells, Di Noia and Neuberger[150] formulated a model for SHM that has explained this question and has gained wide acceptance (Fig. 6.13). The model proposes that after AID-catalyzed deamination creates a uracil residue in the target DNA, the possible outcomes depend on how the resulting mismatch is resolved. 1) The U:G mismatch may be replicated as described above, resulting in what are known as phase 1A mutations. 2) The uracil base may, before replication, be excised by UNG, creating an abasic site. Normally, the creation of such abasic sites is the first step of the base excision repair pathway, in which subsequent steps remove the sugar-phosphate backbone, leaving a single nucleotide gap that is then restored to a C:G bp by DNA polymerase β and DNA ligase. If the DNA replicates before the abasic site is repaired, the strand with the abasic site may directly engage translesional polymerases (which are error-prone, as discussed below) to insert an unpaired nucleotide (i.e., any nucleotide) opposite the abasic lesion, leading to phase 1B mutations (see Fig. 6.13). 3) The original U:G mismatch—or possibly the abasic site created by UNG action—may be recognized by the mismatch repair (MMR) system of the cell. MMR triggers excision of the DNA strand for several nucleotides surrounding the mismatch, and this strand is then resynthesized by polymerase β, in the case of faithful repair, or by error-prone polymerases, in the case of SHM. Error-prone repair inserts mispaired bases, which may become fixed on one strand by replication, creating mutations (designated phase 2) from both A:T and G:C bps at some distance from the position of the original U:G mismatch. If a mispaired base is recognized by MMR before replication, a new cycle of MMR may be initiated, extending mutation even farther from the initial deamination event.

Role of Uracil-N-Glycosylase in Somatic Hypermutation. The UNG gene encodes two proteins that differ in their N termini as a result of alternative promoters that generate different initial coding exons. UNG1 is expressed in mitochondria, whereas UNG2 is nuclear. Hydrolytic deamination of cytosines to uracil occurs at a significant rate in all eukaryotic and prokaryotic cells, and misincorporation of dUTP during replication further contributes to the load of uracil in DNA. UNG2 plays a major role in mitigating this load by initiating faithful base excision repair.

In SHM, the faithful repair of uracil is somehow subverted to introduce mutations. *Ung*–/– mice and human patients with a rare form of HyperIgM immunodeficiency due to *UNG* mutations have similar immunologic phenotypes. First, as discussed in the following, *Ung*–/– individuals are profoundly defective in CSR, as expected if this process requires AID-catalyzed deamination of cytidine followed by *UNG*-catalyzed removal of uracil. Although the frequency of mutation is roughly normal in *UNG*-deficient individuals, mutations at C are almost exclusively transitions of C to T (phase IA). As suggested by Figure 6.13, *Ung*–/– individuals would not create the abasic sites that lead to C → G and C → A mutations by replication, though some mutations of these kinds could be produced by MMR. Indeed, the frequencies of mutations

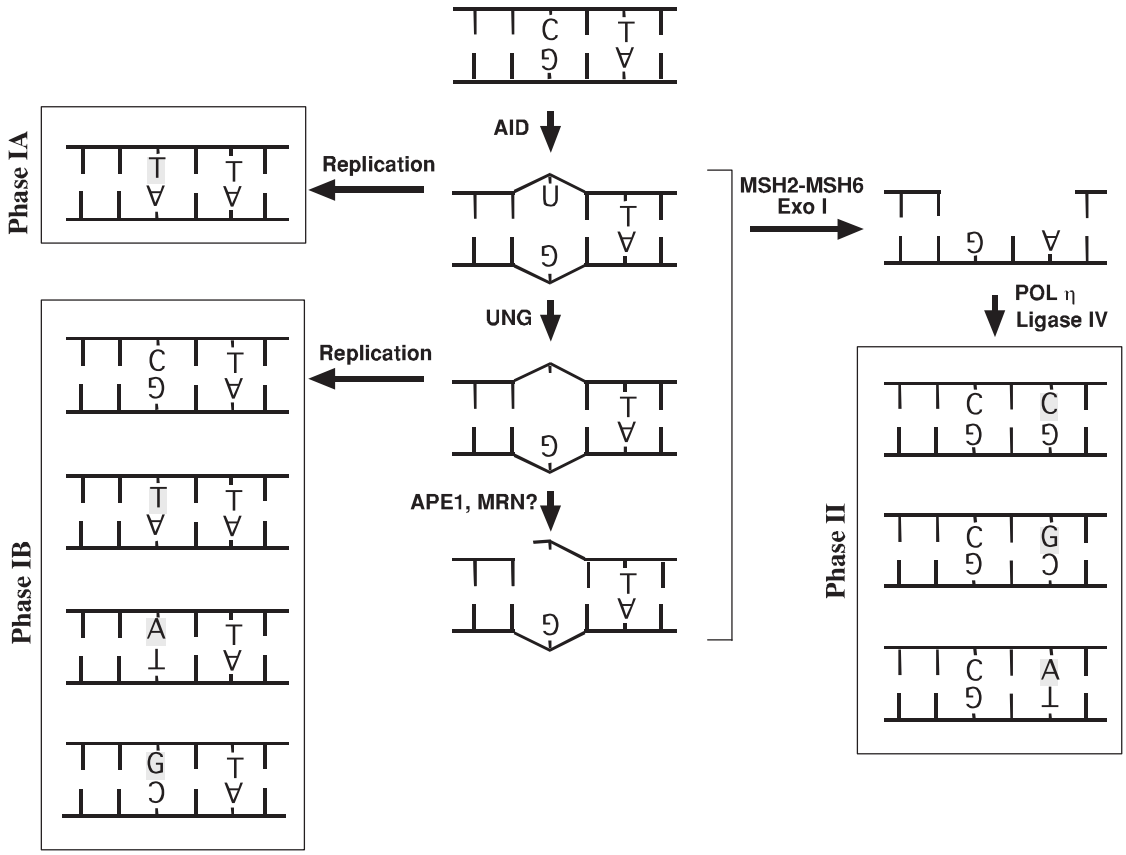


FIG. 6.13. Mechanistic Model of Reactions Triggered by Activation-Induced Deaminase (AID) in Somatic Hypermutation and Class Switch Recombination (CSR). The graphic at the top depicts a small region in a VH gene showing a targeted C:G basepair and a nearby T:A pair. After AID-catalyzed deamination of a C residue, the DNA may be subjected to various modifications as shown, leading to mutations indicated by nucleotides in gray rectangles. The model is described in the text. The Phase II mutations occur when mismatched bases incorporated by an error-prone polymerase are replicated before they can be corrected by MMR. The same mechanism explains two switch-region–associated events occurring during CSR: DNA strand breaks (see center panel at bottom) and mutations..

from A, T, and G in *Ung*−/− individuals are normal, apparently resulting from MMR activated by the U:G mismatch in many cells.

Mismatch Repair in Somatic Hypermutation. MMR is a highly conserved mechanism that detects abnormalities in DNA, including mispaired nucleotides and abnormal bases, and repairs them. The eukaryotic MMR system has two main components. MutS binds tightly and specifically to DNA defects and recruits MutL. The Mut complex then activates a latent nuclease activity to remove a segment of the DNA strand including the mismatched base; this gapped strand is then resynthesized by a DNA polymerase. Mammals have several MutS homologs, including three reported in somatic cells—MSH2, MSH3, and MSH6—which exist in the cell as heterodimers. MSH2-MSH6 (also known as MutSα) is the most abundant form and is specialized for recognizing single base gaps or mismatches, while MSH2-MSH3 (MutSβ) recognizes larger gaps and insertion/deletion loops. The mammalian MutL proteins are heterodimers consisting of MLH1 paired with PMS1, PMS2, or MLH3. Apart from their effects on SHM and CSR, mutations in MMR genes, especially MSH2 and MLH1, underly hereditary nonpolyposis colorectal cancer. Recent efforts in several laboratories have led to *in vitro* reconstitution of mammalian MMR with purified components, enabling powerful analysis of this complex mechanism.[220] In addition to the MutS and MutL proteins, the system requires the following components: Exo1 to excise the gap; replication protein A, which binds to the single strand DNA in the gapped region (and is known to bind to phosphorylated AID, as discussed previously); proliferating cell nuclear antigen (PCNA), which promotes processivity by encircling DNA in a sliding ring clamp and by recruiting other components; DNA polymerase δ; DNA ligase I; and several other proteins.

Knockouts of MSH2, MSH6, and Exo1 have been studied by several laboratories and show consistent decrease in B-cell SHM from A:T bps (with a corresponding increase in the percentage of mutations from G:C bps).[221,222] These results, in the context of the model of Figure 6.13, suggest that MMR triggered by the MSH2-MSH6 heterodimer primarily introduces mutation at A:T bps. The predilection for

mutating A:T bps matches the activity of polymerase η, as discussed in the next section, implying that this polymerase may be the one most frequently engaged by the MMR machinery in repairing AID-generated lesions. Indeed, MSH2-MSH6 is capable of binding to a U:G mismatch, MSH2 can bind to polymerase η in cell extracts, and MSH2-MSH6 can stimulate the activity of polymerase η *in vitro*.[223]

Error-Prone Polymerases. Although avoidance of error is a high priority for most DNA replication, error-prone DNA synthesis served an important function long before SHM evolved to mutate Ig genes; indeed, error-prone polymerases have been most thoroughly studied in *E. coli* and yeast. These polymerases are useful in all cells for replication of DNA containing focal lesions that would block replication by stringent high-fidelity polymerases. However, the tolerance of these error-prone polymerases to abnormalities in DNA structure is accompanied by tolerance of non–Watson-Crick basepairing in the replication of normal DNA and by absence of DNA proofreading activity. More than a dozen of these polymerases have evolved in eukaryotes, each specializing in different aspects of "translesion DNA synthesis" (TLS) and showing differing spectra of infidelity in replication of normal DNA. Clear evidence for participation of several TLS polymerases in SHM has come from comparing the known *in vitro* activities of a particular polymerase with the SHM abnormalities seen in mice or humans with mutations in the corresponding polymerase gene.

Polymerase η characteristically inserts mismatched bases opposite T nucleotides, and individuals lacking this polymerase show the predicted abnormality: decreased mutations at A:T base pairs. This was first demonstrated in patients with xeroderma pigmentosum variant disease, whose defects in polymerase η subject them to sunlight-induced skin cancers in addition to their abnormal SHM; a similar defect in mutations from A:T bps was subsequently shown for polymerase η knockout mice.[224,225] Polymerase η binds to MSH2-MSH6, as mentioned previously, and is upregulated in cells undergoing SHM.

In addition to polymerase η, the TLS polymerase REV1 has been shown to participate in SHM. REV1 is known to preferentially insert cytosine residues opposite uracil or abasic sites, and *Rev1* knockout B cells were found to be impaired in C to G mutations, especially in the nontranscribed (coding) strand.[226] Polymerase ζ,[227,228] polymerase κ,[229] and polymerase θ[230–232] knockouts have also been reported to show altered SHM patterns, but these effects are smaller or not seen in all circumstances.

Error-prone repair apparently operates in competition with faithful repair carried out by DNA polymerase β. The human B-cell line BL2 is known to undergo SHM, but in subclones of this line with higher SHM proficiency, polymerase β levels were very low; overexpression of polymerase β in a proficient subclone suppressed SHM activity.[233] Compared to wild-type B cells, polymerase β–deficient B cells (developing in a wild-type recipient) showed increased switch region mutation after induction of CSR *in vitro*.[234]

A fundamental question about the action of error-prone polymerases is how they are specifically engaged for SHM of Ig genes, given that most spontaneous cytosine deamination in nonlymphoid cells is accurately repaired. One apparent clue is that some TLS polymerases are upregulated in B cells undergoing SHM. In addition, when the sliding clamp protein PCNA is monoubiquitinated at lysine residue K164, it is known to bind and activate TLS polymerases including polymerase η. When this ubiquitination is prevented, either by knockout of the specific E3 ubiquitin ligase of PCNA or by a K164R mutation at the ubiquitination site in PCNA, SHM is abnormal. $PCNA^{K164P}$ mice were found to have a dramatically decreased ability to mutate A:T sites during SHM, similar to the phenotype of the polymerase η knockout, as though polymerase η requires monoubiquinated PCNA in order to participate in SHM.[235] However, these clues do not fully explain why Ig genes in GC B cells are less faithfully repaired than other genes in the same cells. This question is part of the larger issue of mutational targeting, as discussed below.

Targeting and Distribution of Mutations

The mutation rate of Ig genes in GC B cells undergoing SHM may reach as high as 10^{-3} mutations/bp/generation, or about 10^6 times higher than the normal genomic mutation rate;[236] this elevated rate could be lethal to B cells if mutations were not carefully targeted specifically to Ig genes. Several other genes highly expressed in GC B cells were also found to be mutated at lower levels (e.g., *Bcl6* and *Cd95*[237]), though several other genes expressed in GC B cells at comparable levels are not mutated. Apparently, some of the features that target SHM to Ig genes may be shared by other genes.

Recently, a genome-wide analysis has made it clear that AID binds much more widely to the genome than was previously appreciated. When chromatin from mouse B cells incubated with lipopolysaccharide (LPS) and IL-4 was analyzed by ChIP with an anti-AID antibody, 5910 genes were found by deep sequencing of the immunoprecipitated DNA (ChIP-seq),[160] including many previously described AID targets. Although this is a large number, it is still a small minority of the genome. As judged by the number of sequence tags recovered, AID binding to the IgH locus was substantially higher than binding to any other region. A sample of genes identified as AID-binding by ChIP-seq showed significant mutation frequency, whereas control genes did not. The AID-binding genes were associated with high levels of mRNA transcription (by RNA-seq), by a chromatin mark commonly associated with transcription—histone H3 trimethylated on Lys4 (H3K4me3)—and by density of Pol II binding. However, only the IgH locus, with its uniquely high levels of AID occupancy and mutations, bound to RPA; this binding was AID-dependent and was diminished in the S38A and T140A mutants of AID described previously.

The difference between AID-targeting and SHM frequency has been reinforced by analysis of SHM in panels of non-Ig genes isolated from murine Peyer patch B cells.[238] All the non-Ig genes were mutated at levels much lower than the 2.2×10^{-2} mutations per bp detected near J_H4, but substantial numbers of mutations were found at *Bcl6*, *Pim1*, *CD79B*, and several other previously reported targets of SHM. The mutations were almost completely AID-dependent, as in cells from *Aicda*–/– mice, all genes showed very low mu-

tation frequencies that were barely above the sequencing error rate. However, different genes varied widely in the way their mutation rates were affected by the double knockout *Ung–/– Msh2–/–*, in which only phase 1A mutations should be possible. At one extreme, *c-myc*, which is known to mutate at a very low rate in GC B cells, showed a mutation rate in the *Ung–/– Msh2–/–* cells almost 17-fold higher than in the wild-type, as though almost all AID-induced deamination in the wild-type B cells had been faithfully repaired by UNG- and Msh2-dependent mechanisms. In contrast, *Bcl6* mutations were only 1.3-fold higher in the double knockout, suggesting that faithful repair of this gene was dramatically less active.

Thus SHM susceptibility depends not only on differential AID targeting across the genome but also on differential ratios of error-prone versus faithful repair. The distinction between these two variables (deamination and repair) has only recently been recognized, so it was not taken into account in many earlier studies described in the following.

RNA Transcription. A relationship between SHM and RNA transcription is suggested by the observation that unrearranged V_H and Vκ genes are generally neither transcribed nor mutated, but become susceptible to both processes when V(D)J recombination moves them close to their (respective) intronic enhancers, Eμ and iEκ. In contrast, the λ locus lacks an enhancer between J and C; unrearranged Vλ regions are transcribed in B cells[239] and can be mutated.[240] The Ig coding sequences are apparently not specifically required to target SHM, as transgenic V coding sequence can be replaced by a human β-globin gene or prokaryotic *neo* or *gpt* gene without affecting the hypermutation rate downstream of the promoter.

Mutations around a given V region are distributed in a domain that begins roughly 100 to 200 bps downstream of the promoter, extends for ~1.5 to 2 kb downstream, and then tapers off long before the RNA transcriptional termination. This distribution led to the hypothesis that after transcriptional initiation, a "mutator factor" attaches to the transcriptional machinery, attacks DNA as the transcription complex moves downstream, and eventually falls off, so that further transcription proceeds without mutations.[241] Consistent with this model, a VκJκ-Cκ transgene bearing a second Vκ promoter engineered upstream of the Cκ region was found to incur mutations over a second domain extending into the Cκ region, in addition to the usual V region mutations.[242] Conversely, the insertion of an irrelevant 2 kb DNA fragment between a Vκ promoter and the leader (signal peptide) exon prevented mutation within the Vκ transgene, which now apparently lay downstream of the mutational domain.[243] (Mutations also occur in domains surrounding repetitive switch regions upstream of C_H genes. The frequency of these mutations is similar to that in V regions, but the domains are larger, correlating to some extent with the length of the switch region, as discussed in the following.) The key mutator factor is apparently AID, which can deaminate double-strand DNA *in vitro* only when the DNA is transcribed. One hypothesis suggests that DNA near the advancing RNA polymerase complex becomes negatively supercoiled or partially single-stranded, which might facilitate access of the DNA to AID.[244] Another explanation, involving R loops, is described below. Evidence for patches of single-stranded DNA in transcribed V regions undergoing SHM has been obtained using a bisulfite technique.[245]

In vivo dependence of SHM frequency on transcriptional activity has been confirmed by several findings. In one study, SHM was studied in knockin mice with a prerecombined V_HDJ_H region driven by either of two V region promoters; SHM rates in these knockin strains were highly correlated with transcription driven by the different promoters.[246] In another study, a tetracycline-inducible GFP reporter gene engineered with a stop codon was stably transfected into a B-cell line. The rate of reversion of the stop codon by SHM (allowing GFP expression) was found to be directly related to the transcription rate, as regulated by a tetracycline analog.[247] Other studies examining SHM in models where transcription was altered by mutating enhancers have supported the relationship between SHM and enhancer-induced transcription. Some non-Ig enhancers could support SHM in a stably transfected cell line,[248] but others could not, leading to the suggestion that specific elements in enhancers might confer susceptibility to SHM. One candidate element is the sequence CAGGTG, which is a target for E-box transcription factors and which is found in several Ig enhancers. When a murine κ enhancer containing CAGGTG was linked to a GFP gene inactivated by a premature stop codon, stable transfectants of chicken B-cell line DT40 were found to produce mutants that expressed GFP, but a single mutation in the CAGGTG motif prevented SHM without changing transcription.[249] Inactivation of the E-box transcription factor E2A in DT40 cells was found to reduce SHM of endogenous Ig genes without significant effects on Ig gene (or AID) transcription.[250]

However, some conflicting conclusions have been drawn about enhancer-dependence of SHM depending on whether experiments investigated transgenes versus constructs created in the endogenous context using homologous recombination (i.e., knockouts or knockins). For example, the downstream IgH enhancers HS3b and HS4 were found important for SHM in transgenes[251] but dispensable in the context of endogenous genes.[252]

In one case, transcriptional enhancer activity has been clearly separated from an associated SHM stimulating activity. Just downstream of the chicken Ig λ 3′ enhancer lies a DNA segment whose deletion in the DT40 B-cell line severely impaired SHM without dramatically affecting transcription; this segment could confer SHM when inserted into a non-Ig locus.[253,254]

To summarize, it appears that transcription is necessary but not sufficient for targeting hypermutation, but the additional elements required for SHM have not been defined as of this writing (though E2A function may be among them).

Chromatin Marks. A parameter related to transcription of Ig genes (i.e., their context in chromatin) has also been studied in relation to SHM targeting. Culture of a B-cell line under conditions that upregulate SHM (in the presence of T cells and anti-IgM) led to increased acetylation of histone H3 and H4 at V region but not C region DNA, as assessed by ChIP analysis[255] paralleling the distribution of mutations. The increased histone acetylation was not a consequence of AID action as it occurred when AID expression (and SHM) was inhibited by antisense treatment; moreover, when cells were treated with the deacetylase inhibitor trichostatin A, the C region was both acetylated and subjected to SHM. Other histone modifications that may be correlated with SHM are phosphorylation or monoubiquitination of histone H2B.[256,257]

Hotspot Focusing. Mutations occurring within V region genes expressed *in vivo* in B cells may be highly selected for antigen-binding function of the expressed antibody. To analyze the spectrum of mutations produced by SHM unbiased by selection, investigators have studied nonproductively rearranged VDJ alleles or "passenger" transgenes engineered with stop codons to prevent expression as a protein. In these genes, mutational "hot spots" as well as "cold spots" have been recognized, apparently due to local sequence features that may promote or suppress somatic mutation. The consensus sequence WRC (i.e., [A/T][G/A][C]) is the most consistent hotspot for mutation, presumably reflecting the predilection of AID for *in vitro* deamination of this sequence. It is possible that evolution has concentrated mutational hot spot frequencies in CDR regions to enhance the potential for diversity generation in the parts of the protein critical for antigen contact.[258]

The previous discussion has identified several factors influencing the targeting of SHM, a process in which a unique triggering event—AID-dependent deamination of DNA—is followed by a cascade of other events that depend on mechanisms common to most cells. All of these steps, including the AID-dependent trigger, can be affected by biologic parameters common to all cells, such as transcription, enhancers, epigenetic state, DNA repair mechanisms, etc. Many of these same mechanisms affect CSR as well as SHM. Recently, three additional biologic parameters have been found to influence AID-triggered events in CSR: RNA polymerase stalling, the RNA splicing in spliceosomes, and RNA degradation by exosomes. It is possible that these three processes impinge on both SHM and CSR, but because they were discovered in the context of CSR, they are discussed in the following section.

Heavy Chain Switch

Switch Regions and Switch Junctions

As briefly mentioned previously in this chapter, isotype switching involves removal of Cμ from downstream of the rearranged H chain VDJ gene and its replacement by a new downstream C_H region. This occurs by a deletional recombination—CSR—in which the recombinational breakpoints generally occur within G-rich repetitive DNA sequences known as switch (or S) regions lying 5′ of each C_H region (except Cδ). While most switch breakpoints fall in the S regions, some are in nearby nonrepetitive DNA. The S region of the mouse μ gene, Sμ, is located about 1 to 2 kb 5′ to the Cμ coding sequence and is composed of numerous tandem repeats of sequences of the form (GAGCT)n(GGGGT), where n is usually 2 to 5 but can range as high as 17. All of the S regions of downstream isotypes include pentamers similar to GAGCT and GGGGT embedded in larger repeat units rather than precisely tandemly repeated as in Sμ. In support of the critical role of S regions for CSR, knockout of Sγ1 by homologous recombination essentially abolished expression of IgG1 from that allele,[259] and mice with a deletion of Sμ were also dramatically impaired in CSR.[260,261]

A switch recombination between, for example, μ and ε genes produces a composite Sμ-Sε sequence (see Fig. 6.12). From a comparison between the sequence of an Sμ-Sε composite switch region and the sequences of the germline Sμ and Sε, one can localize the exact recombination sites between Sμ and Sε that occurred in each allele. Such comparisons have indicated that there is no specific site, either in Sμ or in any other S region, where the recombination always occurs, although clusters of recombination sites have been reported at two specific regions within the tandem repeats of murine Sγ3 region.[262] Thus, unlike the enzymatic machinery of V-J recombination, the switch machinery can break and join sequences in a broad target region, and as the recombination targets are in intronic DNA, there are no reading frame complications. Often both IgH alleles in a single cell undergo switching to the same downstream isotype. Some alleles undergo sequential switching events; for example, a common pathway to IgE expression is an initial μ → γ1 switch, followed by a CSR between the composite Sμ-Sγ1 switch region and the Sε region.[263] Sγ1- Sε switching may even occur independently of Sμ.[264] Although most CSR occurs as a deletion within a single IgH allele, switching between two allelic chromosomes was detected at a frequency of roughly 7% to 10% in mouse and rabbit.[265,266]

DNA fragments excised by switch recombination have been cloned from fractions of circular DNA isolated from cells actively undergoing isotype switch recombination. Thus, at least some of the excised DNA segments ligate their ends to form "switch circles"; these contain composite switch junctions that are in theory reciprocal to the composite switch junction retained on chromosomal DNA (see Fig. 6.12). Because switch circles are not linked to centromeres and do not apparently contain origins of replication, they are not efficiently replicated. Therefore, they are not found in cells that have divided many times after switching (e.g., in myelomas or hybridomas).

Many composite switch junction sequences show mutations near the recombination breakpoint when compared to the corresponding germline switch sequences. Indeed, many features of CSR are shared by SHM (as indicated previously in this chapter), including the requirements for transcription, AID, UNG2, and MMR components for normal CSR and SHM. However, CSR is more complex in that it involves simultaneous targeting to two DNA regions (i.e., switch

regions of Cμ and the target Cx), it requires dsbs, and it consequently requires mechanisms to repair the breaks. AID can theoretically trigger single-strand breaks on both DNA strands by the mechanisms discussed for SHM, including cleavage by APE-1. If these breaks are close enough together, they can effectively form a dsb with staggered ends, and if dsbs occur in two switch regions, the DNA repair mechanisms common to all cells may rejoin the broken ends to complete a CSR event. Indeed, B cells in which Sμ and Sγ1 were deleted and replaced by recognition sites for the yeast homing endonuclease I-SceI were capable of mediating some μ → γ1 CSR in the absence of AID if I-SceI was expressed,[267] highlighting the participation of ubiquitous AID-independent repair mechanisms for CSR. These mechanisms depend on the NHEJ components described previously in this chapter plus backup participation by alternative end-joining mechanisms discussed below.

Regulation of Isotype Switching: Proliferation and AID Expression

Isotype switching occurs physiologically in animals about 1 week after immunization with T-dependent antigens, at about the same time that somatic mutation of Ig genes begins. Both processes normally occur in GCs of lymphoid organs, a location that facilitates interactions between B cells, T cells, and follicular dendritic cells presenting antigen. As demonstrated by *in vitro* switching experiments, T cells promote switching by secretion of cytokines (especially IL-4 and transforming growth factor β) as well as by cell-to-cell contact.

A major component of the cell contact signal is mediated by an interaction between the B-cell surface marker CD40 and its ligand—designated CD40L, CD154, or gp39—which is expressed on activated T cells (primarily CD4+). CD40 is a member of the TNF–receptor family, while CD40L belongs to the TNF–ligand family. The dependence of switching on the CD40-CD40L interaction is highlighted by the genetic disease known as the X-linked hyper-IgM syndrome-1, which was found to be caused by a defect in the human gene encoding the CD40L/gp39.[268] Like AID-deficient patients with hyper-IgM syndrome-2 described previously, patients with X-linked hyper-IgM syndrome-1 have elevated concentrations of IgM in their serum and almost no Igs of other isotypes. In addition, their antibodies fail to show affinity maturation or evidence of B-cell memory responses. Similar defects are seen in humans with mutations in their CD40 gene, an autosomal recessive disease designated hyper-IgM 3.[269] CSR impairment may also be caused by abnormal function of CD40 signaling pathway components including IKKγ (also known as NEMO), NFκB proteins, and C-Jun N-terminal kinase. Mouse strains with engineered defects in CD40 are defective in SHM and T-dependent CSR, but respond with normal isotype switching to T-independent antigens. The T-independent switching pathway may be especially important for gut-associated switching to IgA.[270] One role of the CD40 engagement is to induce B-cell proliferation. Indeed, other proliferative stimuli (e.g., LPS or IgM or IgD crosslinking) can support cytokine-induced isotype switching *in vitro* in the absence of T cells and CD40 activation. The relationship of CSR to cell division is supported by evidence that switching is linked to the cell cycle[271] and to the number of cell divisions after stimulation,[272] a phenomenon which may reflect cell division-related regulation of AID expression.[273] However, apart from activating proliferation, CD40 has additional effects that may facilitate switching, including upregulation of IL-4 responsiveness and IL-4 receptor number,[274] upregulation of sterile "switch transcripts" (discussed below), and upregulation of AID expression. Activated B cells also express CD40L, which can not only trigger CD40 signaling but also transduce a "reverse" signal affecting B-cell function.[275] Independent of CD40, B-cell activation can independently be stimulated by TLR ligands and cytokines such as APRIL, another member of the TNF family.[276]

Regulation of Class Switch Recombination to Specific Isotypes: Promoters, Enhancers, and Chromatin

Different isotypes are known to predominate in different immune responses depending on the antigen, route of antigen administration, and several other parameters. These different parameters act in part by influencing the cytokine milieu of the B cells. IL-4, for example, promotes the expression of IgE and IgG1, whereas TNF-β promotes switching to IgA. These lymphokines have been proposed to act by making the target isotype "accessible" to switch recombinase machinery that may be largely non–isotype-specific. The accessibility is associated with expression of a "sterile" or "germline" RNA transcript that initiates upstream of a target S region (see Fig. 6.12) and extends through the target C region. The germline transcript is spliced so that a noncoding upstream exon known as an I ("intron") region is joined to the first coding exon of the C region. (This contrasts with the "productive" transcript containing VDJ spliced to the C region.) The same experimental conditions—particularly the same cytokines—that favor the accumulation of germline transcripts from a particular isotype generally also stimulate switch recombination to the same isotype. In many cases, the signals transduced by the cytokine receptor have been elucidated. For example, IL-4 stimulates germline transcription by activating the transcription factor STAT6, which binds to one of several IL-4 response motifs in the promoter region upstream of Iε and Iγ1. CD40 engagement also acts in part through NFκB-mediated binding to I region promoters.[277]

Gene targeting experiments have shown that mouse strains lacking the I region (and its promoter) of a particular isotype do not switch to that isotype, reinforcing the idea that sterile transcription is necessary for CSR.[278] The low extent of sequence conservation of the I exons and the lack of consistent open reading frames suggest that these transcripts do not encode a functional protein. Indeed, the exact sequence of the I region may be irrelevant as an I region can be replaced by an unrelated sequence and still support CSR.[279] However, the transcribed exon upstream of the S region apparently needs a splice donor site allowing splicing to the downstream C region, as a targeted construct lacking such a splice donor site was reportedly unable to support CSR even though transcription through the S region occurred.[280]

Apart from I region promoters, germline transcription and isotype switching are also regulated by IgH enhancers. A combined deletion of the murine 3′-regulatory region enhancers HS3b and HS4 was found to cause a significant impairment in switching to most isotypes, although switching to IgG1 was unaffected (and IgA only moderately decreased).[281] The diminished switching was associated with diminished germline transcription of the same isotypes, suggesting that an important function of the enhancers in CSR is to increase germline transcription. The relative independence of γ1 from regulation by enhancers may be related to the putative locus control region associated with that gene.[282]

Enhancers are believed to function via physical interactions between enhancer-bound proteins and promoter-bound proteins, creating a DNA loop that brings enhancers into close proximity to promoters. Such looping may have special significance in promoting DNA recombination between segments of DNA lying great linear distances apart in the chromosome, as has been discussed in the context of V(D)J recombination. Chromosome conformation capture experiments have shown that Eμ and 3′-regulatory region enhancers are in close proximity in mature resting B cells, and that when B cells are stimulated to switch to γ1 by LPS + IL4 (or to γ3 by LPS alone), the corresponding I region promoter moves close to the two enhancers.[283,284] This looping would bring Sμ, which lies just downstream of Eμ, close to the Iγ1 (or Iγ3) promoter, presumably facilitating recombination between Sμ and the Sγ region.

Another parameter correlated with regional transcriptional regulation is the chromatin context of the genes, including specific modifications of histone proteins, as discussed previously in this chapter. For example, acetylation of histone H3 (H3Ac) is associated with DNA regions of increased "accessibility" to transcription (as well as to experimental digestion by restriction enzymes), while transcriptional promoters tend to be marked with trimethylation of H3 at lysine4 (H3K4me3). In B cells stimulated to switch to γ1 by LPS + IL4 (or to γ3 by LPS alone), the corresponding I region and switch regions show increased H3Ac and H3K4me3 marks.[285,286] The importance of the H3K4me3 mark for transcription and CSR is highlighted by evidence that preventing this mark—by B cell–specific knockout of PTIP, a component of the machinery that catalyzes this modification—leads to impaired germline γ transcription and defective CSR to γ isotypes.[287] PTIP knockout B cells show decreased DNA looping between the 3′ enhancer region and Iγ region promoters, suggesting that PTIP contributes to this looping.[288] Knockdown of other factors that are necessary to maintain H3K4me3 also reduce CSR efficiency, including the components of the complex known as FACT (*fac*ilitates *c*hromatin *t*ranscription).[289]

Surprisingly, a histone modification generally associated with gene silencing—trimethylation of H3 lysine 9 (H3K9me3)—has also been reported to mark switch regions targeted for CSR in both mouse and human B cells.[290,291] Recently, a screen for nuclear proteins associating with AID *in vitro* identified KAP1 (KRAB domain–associated protein 1),[292] a transcriptional repressor that associates with heterochromatin protein 1, as binding to H3K9me-modified chromatin. By coimmunoprecipitation, KAP1 was confirmed to bind to AID *in vivo*, and B-cell–specific conditional knockout of KAP1 was found to diminish AID binding to Sμ and to impair CSR efficiency by about 50%.

Switch Region Targeting of AID in Class Switch Recombination: R Loops, Paused Polymerase II, and AGCT

A model in which AID loads onto an RNA polymerase complex and acts on DNA as the transcription complex travels downstream was discussed previously in the context of AID function in SHM, and a similar model apparently applies in the context of CSR. The domain of AID susceptibility in switch regions can be deduced from the distribution of C:G → T:A mutations in B cells that are defective for both UNG and MMR, because (as shown in Fig 6.13) in these cells the only AID-dependent mutations would be U:G mismatches resolved by replication to T:A. A study of the distribution of such mutations in clones from *Ung–/–*, *Msh2–/–* B cells found that a domain of mutations began about 150 bp 3′ of the Iμ transcription start site and extended 4 to 5 kb downstream, with diminishing mutation frequency near Cμ.[293] The location of AID binding in B-cell DNA can also be directly determined by ChIP-seq analysis, as discussed previously. AID was found to bind to many loci that are transcribed in B cells; indeed, the patterns of AID and RNA polymerase II binding detected by ChIP are very similar.[160] RPA, however, was efficiently bound only at IgH switch regions, and this binding was inhibited by the Ser38Ala mutation that blocks the critical Ser38 phosphorylation discussed previously.

One likely consequence of germline transcription in facilitating CSR involves the formation of a stable RNA:DNA complex known as an R-loop. In this structure, RNA transcribed from the template strand of a DNA molecule binds tightly to that strand with Watson-Crick basepairing, displacing the other DNA strand, which forms a single-stranded loop. In support of the R-loop model, cell-free transcription across G-rich switch regions was found to generate a stable association of the transcript RNA with the template DNA[294]; significantly, no substantial association occurred when the switch region was transcribed in reverse orientation, leading to a C-rich transcript, or when the transcribed template was a DNA fragment other than a switch region. The displaced DNA strand in S region R loops was susceptible to deamination by AID.[155] Evidence that such R-loops form *in vivo* over S regions has been obtained from bisulfite analysis of single-strand DNA regions in B cells.[295,296]

The tightly bound RNA-DNA complex on the template strand of an R-loop may explain both the high level of polymerase II accumulation and the AID-induced mutations in the vicinity of switch region DNA.[297] Progression of the polymerase II complex transcribing through the switch region might be impeded by the RNA bound to the template strand, leading to an accumulation of "stalled" polymerase II molecules; the "stalling" of AID molecules associated with the transcription complex might prolong exposure of the DNA to deamination by AID. Some support for this scheme was reported from an *in vitro* model in which AID-triggered mutations in a transcribed DNA substrate were

increased when transcription was slowed by reducing the nucleotide triphosphate concentration.[298] The importance of stalled polymerase II for CSR was reinforced by the results of a screen for factors whose knockdown by specific shRNAs would inhibit CSR[299]: one protein recovered in this screen was the murine homolog of suppressor of Ty 5 (Spt5), a transcription elongation factor known to be associated with stalled polymerase II. Spt5 knockdown decreased both CSR and switch region hypermutation, as well as AID occupancy of the Sμ region, without affecting cellular levels of AID protein or germline transcripts. By coimmunoprecipitation experiments, AID and Spt5 were found to associate. And genes with high Spt5 occupancy by ChIP analysis were found to be most susceptible to mutations induced by AID overexpression. Polymerase II stalling has been extensively studied in yeast and drosophila, and is found in many genes that require more rapid changes in expression than can be achieved by modulating transcriptional initiation.[300] Apparently, the complex of proteins mediating polymerase II stalling has been adapted in B cells for the special function of regulating CSR of IgH genes.

The R-loop model explains how the "upper" nontranscribed DNA strand would become single-stranded and accessible to AID, but it raises the question of how AID might gain access to the "lower" template DNA strand, held in a tight RNA-DNA hybrid. This strand is known to be accessible to AID because it undergoes C → T mutations in *Ung*−/− *Msh2*−/− double knockout B cells.[293] A likely answer to this question has come from an analysis of proteins bound to AID when mixed with a B cell extract plus *in vitro*–transcribed switch region DNA.[301] The complex of AID and transcribed DNA was found to bind to components of the multisubunit RNA exosome. The exosome is an evolutionarily conserved structure containing nine core proteins that can associate with RNA nucleases, leading to degradation of RNA from template DNA; the exosome could thus potentially expose the template DNA strand to AID. Indeed, shRNA knockdown of one exosome component in the murine B cell line CH12F3 inhibited CSR. Moreover, exosome components were found to associate with AID *in vivo* by immunoprecipitation experiments and were detected (by ChIP) bound to switch region DNA in cells activated for CSR. Finally, in a deamination assay of a model switch region DNA transcribed *in vitro* by T7 polymerase, the addition of AID + RPA + PKA led to deamination of only the nontemplate strand, but the further addition of exosome components led to deamination on the template strand as well. These experiments highlight the exosome as a likely candidate for explaining AID action on the template strand of R-loops, though an unhybridized "lower strand" may also be produced as a result of transcription-dependent supercoiling or antisense transcription.

However, the propensity for R-loop formation is not the only property of switch regions that facilitates CSR. When the Sγ1 region was inverted, it retained about 25% of the wild-type CSR activity.[302] As this inverted, and now C-rich, DNA segment could not form an R-loop, this result suggests that while the R-loop contributes to CSR, other features of the S region that are preserved in the inverted sequence also play a role. Replacement of a natural murine Sμ sequence with the AT-rich frog Sμ sequence, which cannot form an R-loop, supported somewhat reduced but still substantial frequencies of CSR, and it functioned equally well in either orientation. Significantly, in either orientation, the recombination junctions were clustered in a portion of the S region that is rich in repeats of the sequence AGCT, which is a special case of the WRC consensus sequence for AID targeting, being present on both strands as a self-complementary palindrome. Indeed, the AGCT-rich region was a good substrate for *in vitro* deamination by AID when transcribed in association with RPA. The AGCT motif is enriched in all mammalian S regions and may be particularly effective as a target for CSR because its presence in clusters on both strands promotes closely spaced nicks on opposite strands, or even a dsb with a single base overhang if the cytosines in both strands of the same AGCT motif are targeted.[303] The density of AGCT in S regions correlates with the location of switch junctions better than the density of WRC or the boundaries of G-richness or R-loops.[296] These results all suggest that clusters of AGCT may represent a target for CSR that evolved in amphibians, with R-loop formation evolving later in mammals to further enhance AID accessibility to S region DNA.

DNA Breaks as Intermediates in Class Switch Recombination

The recombination event that underlies isotype switching includes DNA breaks and rejoining events that must involve both strands of DNA. Although the RAG-induced DNA breaks that initiate V(D)J recombination occur at the corresponding position on the two strands (yielding a blunt end and a hairpin), the nature of the ends in the initial CSR cleavage is not so clear. An early compilation of switch junctions[304] found only infrequent instances of microhomology at the junction (i.e., short sequence segments that are identical in the unrearranged S sequences near the recombination breakpoint). As these microhomology examples would be consistent with invasion of one DNA strand from Sμ targeting a short homologous region in a downstream S region (or vice versa), the rarity of such junctions has been interpreted as an indication that CSR only rarely occurs by strand invasion and instead usually proceeds by ligation of blunt DNA ends. However, dsbs with staggered ends would generally be the result of the widely accepted mechanism shown in Figure 6.14 (bottom left): a DNA break on one strand might result from AID-catalyzed cytosine deamination, removal of the resulting uracil by UNG, and single-strand cleavage 5′ to the abasic site by an endonuclease, probably apurinic-apyridinic endonuclease 1 (APE1). The initial staggered ends could be converted to blunt ends through exonuclease trimming of a 5′ or 3′ single strand overhang, through filling in of a shorter 3′ end by a DNA polymerase, or through a combination of both processes. Filling in by error-prone polymerases could explain the mutations commonly observed around the switch junction, as mentioned previously.

Evidence supporting initially staggered DNA breaks in CSR was reported from occasional switch junctions observed in a model CSR substrate designed with two oppositely

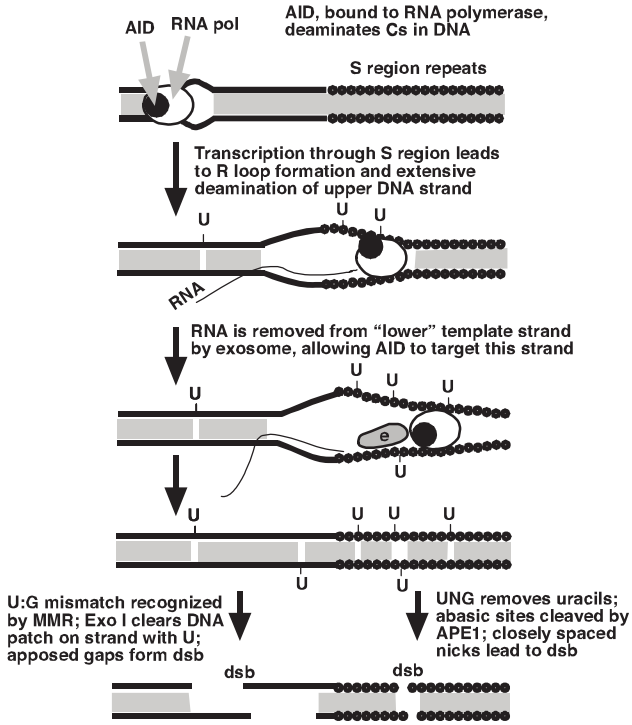


FIG 6.14. Mechanistic Model of Class Switch Recombination. This figure incorporates features of the most widely accepted models, but some aspects are uncertain at present. Two strands of deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) near the 5′ boundary of a switch region are shown in *black*, with the S region repeats indicated by *dots*. DNA with normal Watson-Crick basepairing is indicated by the *gray shading* between the DNA strands. Ribonucleic acid (RNA) polymerase moves to the right, transcribing the sequence into an RNA strand; multiple other proteins accompany the RNA polymerase, but only activation-induced deaminase (AID) (*black circle*) is shown. AID can deaminate C residues to U in single-stranded R-looped DNA displaced by the RNA-DNA complex. The exosome complex (*e* in the drawing) degrades RNA in the RNA-DNA hybrid, leaving an unpaired lower strand where AID can deaminate C residues. DNA cleavage triggered by processing of uracils can lead to double-strand breaks in pathways dependent or independent of mismatch repair components as shown.

oriented S regions such that CSR would occur by inversion, preserving both recombination junctions on the same chromosome. Several duplications at the ends of inverted DNA after CSR suggested that complementary overhangs at dsbs had been filled in before joining.[305] Additional evidence for staggered breaks has come from several investigators using ligation-mediated–polymerase chain reaction (LM-PCR) to detect double-strand DNA ends at switch regions in cells undergoing CSR.[306–308] LM-PCR protocols involving ligation of a blunt linker directly to blunt ends from genomic DNA were successful in amplifying blunt ends from DNA of B cells activated for CSR, but when the DNA was pretreated with T4 polymerase, which would convert staggered end cuts to blunt, the yield of amplified LM-PCR products was significantly increased, suggesting that most of the ends in the isolated genomic DNA (before T4 polymerase treatment) were staggered.

When the CSR-associated dsbs in Sμ were examined by LM-PCR in B cells from normal and AID−/− individuals, the dsbs were significantly fewer in AID−/− B cells, though not completely absent. Furthermore, microscopic foci of the modified histone γH2AX (which rapidly accumulates at dsbs) were found at IgH genes (localized by FISH) in B cells undergoing CSR; these foci were strikingly diminished in AID−/− B cells, consistent with AID-dependence of dsbs in CSR.[309] These foci, as well as switch region dsbs, occur predominantly in the G1 phase of the cell cycle.[310] Like the off-target deamination by AID discussed previously in the context of SHM, off-target DNA breaks are another potential consequence of AID. B cells from mice overexpressing AID showed a high incidence of chromosomal translocations and DNA breaks compared with *Aicda*−/− mice; in the context of homozygous p53 deficiency (which allows cell growth despite DNA damage), many of the mice developed B-cell lymphomas.[311] In a study designed to systematically examine the locations of dsbs in mouse B cells stimulated to undergo CSR, ChIP was used to identify DNA associated with Nbs1, a protein that rapidly binds to dsbs *in vivo*, as discussed below.[312] This analysis detected hundreds of reproducible AID-dependent DNA break locations, some of which were syntenic with DNA rearrangements found in human B-cell lymphomas. Many of the AID-dependent dsbs occurred in nontranscribed regions, unlike the CSR-related dsbs in IgH switch regions. Evidence indicates that AID-dependent off-target dsbs are normally repaired largely by homologous recombination: B cells defective for the homologous recombination component XRCC2 were found to harbor many more γ-H2AX foci than were found in *Xrcc2*+/+ cells or in *Aicda*−/− *Xrcc2*−/− cells.[313] B cells apparently protect against these breaks by upregulating *Xrcc2* transcription when activated for CSR.

Ubiquitously Expressed Components of Class Switch Recombination Machinery

UNG and Mismatch Repair. The model of Figure 6.13 suggests that after AID-catalyzed deamination of a cytidine residue, the resulting uracil is removed by *UNG*, creating an abasic site that is converted by APE1 to a single-strand DNA break (nick), which can become double-stranded if there is a nearby nick on the opposite strand. This model predicts that both CSR and the creation of dsbs would be severely impaired in the absence of *UNG*. Indeed, B cells from *Ung*−/− mice showed almost complete inability to switch *in vitro* to IgG1 or IgG3 secretion, and significant impairment in IgA secretion.[151] dsbs in *Ung*−/− B cells, as detected by LM-PCR, were also significantly reduced, but not abolished.[308] Human patients with homozygous *UNG* deficiency due to mutations in both *UNG* alleles showed a hyper-IgM phenotype, with a more profound defect than in *Ung*−/− mice: the patients showed essentially no IgG, IgE, or IgA secretion by stimulated B cells, and no dsbs (by LM-PCR) in Sμ.[314]

A role for APE1 or APE2 in CSR is supported by the observation that in mice with engineered deficiencies these genes, B cells induced for CSR show decreased switching and decreased induction of dsbs.[315]

The complementary pathways of UNG and MMR action in SHM were discussed previously (see Fig. 6.13); current evidence suggests a similar participation of MMR in CSR. Although

CSR was dramatically impaired in *Ung*–/– B cells (e.g., *in vitro* switching to IgG1 was reduced to about 6% of wild-type), the double knockout *Ung*–/– *Msh2*–/– caused significant further impairment (to 1.5% of wild-type IgG1 switching).[316] Evidence suggests that the C-terminal 10 amino acids of AID that are required for CSR but not SHM may function by stabilizing the interaction of UNG2 and the MSH2-MSH6 dimer to DNA.[317]

If a single-strand break created on one strand by UNG and APE1 is too far away from the the closest single-strand break on the opposite strand to create a dsb, then Exo1 engaged by MMR can chew from a nick on one strand toward a nick on the opposite strand, creating a dsb.[310,318] Consistent with this idea, mice engineered with a knockout of the MMR component Exo1 show a significantly decreased efficiency of CSR, to roughly 15% to 30% of normal.[319]

Thus, many of the same AID-triggered mechanisms that induce mutations in V_H regions operate in switch regions to induce dsbs. Once created, these dsbs are resolved by mechanisms distinct from the mechanisms resolving mismatches in SHM; however, as discussed in the following, some of the components that resolve dsbs generated in V(D)J recombination play a similar role in CSR.

End Joining Proteins in Class Switch Recombination. If AID triggers DNA cleavage at switch regions, ubiquitous DNA repair and ligation enzymes could participate in the subsequent DNA repair steps of CSR, as in V(D)J recombination. This possibility has been tested by engineered gene knockouts. However, as NHEJ knockouts would impair V(D)J recombination, thus blocking B-cell development prior to the stage of CSR, investigators have studied NHEJ in CSR using mouse strains with knockins of productive recombined H and L chain genes, which can undergo CSR. IgH/IgL knockin mice with intact Ku genes were able to switch to downstream isotypes, but the corresponding Ku-70– or Ku-80–deficient mice were reported to be dramatically impaired in CSR, although decreased cell proliferation could have contributed to this effect as more recent studies using different conditions report 30% to 50% residual CSR activity.[320]

The other "core" factors of NHEJ—XLF/Cernunnos, Ligase4, and XRCC4—catalyze the DNA ligation in NHEJ and have also been investigated for participation in CSR.[320–324] B cells deficient in any one of these genes show variably decreased CSR efficiency, with increased junctional microhomologies compared with normal B cells. This observation suggests that one or more fairly robust backup pathways—commonly called alternative NHEJ—can repair dsbs using microhomology-based ligation when "classic" NHEJ is inoperative. This conclusion is consistent with studies of alternative NHEJ repair of dsbs unrelated to CSR.[78] The proteins CtIP,[325] PARP1,[326,327] and XRCC1[328] apparently contribute to alternative NHEJ during CSR, as experimentally reduced expression of each protein decreases microhomology at CSR junctions.

Apart from these core NHEJ components, Artemis and DNA-PKcs are required for joining ends that require processing, like the hairpin coding ends produced in V(D)J recombination discussed previously in this chapter. Artemis-deficient murine B cells have no obvious impairment in CSR efficiency[329] but show several-fold increases (compared to wild-type) in the number of chromosome aberrations in the IgH locus detected by FISH assays[330]; these aberrations are AID-dependent and only observed after activation of B cells for CSR. In humans, Artemis deficiency results in a SCID syndrome with severe defects in B- and T-cell development, but rare Sμ-Sα recombination junctions amplified from patient B cells were found to show a high index of microhomologies,[331] suggesting that Artemis is required for normal classic-NHEJ resolution of dsbs in human CSR.

Studies on the role of DNA-PKcs in CSR have yielded somewhat conflicting conclusions on whether this protein is required for maximally efficient CSR, with the results of individual studies perhaps depending on the knocked-in Ig genes used, the specific mutations of DNA-PKcs, or the genetic background of mice studied.[332,333] However, *DNA-PKcs*–/– B cells showed evidence of AID-dependent chromosome aberrations in the IgH locus, similar to those seen in *Artemis*–/– cells but more numerous.[330] Thus it appears that both Artemis and DNA-PKcs are required for efficient repair of at least a subset of the dsbs associated with CSR.

DNA Damage Response Proteins in Class Switch Recombination. NHEJ is one component of a larger mechanism for detecting and repairing dsbs, collectively known as the DNA damage response (DDR). Because DNA dsbs are potentially damaging to the cell, and occur in all cells through accidents of DNA metabolism, toxic chemicals, and radiation, DDR appeared early in evolution, and many components are conserved from yeast to mammals. Defects in DDR can cause developmental abnormalities, cancer predisposition, and sensitivity to radiation, as well as immunodeficiency resulting from impaired V(D)J recombination or CSR. DDR factors participate in a baroque cascade of interactions to cluster at dsbs and initiate repair. The complexities of the DDR are beyond the scope of this chapter, but are described in several recent reviews.[78,334]

Several DDR components have been documented to participate in CSR and are listed below; mutations in some of these cause specific genetic syndromes in humans, often associated with immunodeficiency.

1. Nbs1, product of the gene that is defective in the human disease Nijmegen breakage syndrome.[309,335,336] Nbs1 functions as part of a complex that also includes Mre11 and Rad50 (MRN complex). Mre11 has a nuclease activity, and may contribute to DNA cleavage in CSR; mice and humans with defective Mre11 also show impaired CSR.[337,338]
2. ATM, product of the gene *m*utated in the human disease *a*taxia *t*elengectasia and a member of the phosphatidylinositol-3′-kinase family.[339,340]
3. γ-H2AX—the phosphorylated form of histone H2AX—which rapidly accumulates in foci at dsbs, and helps to assemble other proteins at dsbs to prevent the breaks from progressing to chromosome translocations.[341]
4. The E3 ubiquitin ligase RNF8 (Ring Finger 8), which is known to monoubiquitinate histones at dsbs.[342]
5. The E3 ubiquitin ligase RNF168, found to be mutated in the RIDDLE (*r*adiosensitivity, *i*mmuno*d*eficiency, *dy*smorphic features, *le*arning difficulties) syndrome.[343]

6. 53BP1 (p53 binding protein 1) originally discovered as a protein binding to the tumor suppressor p53, but subsequently found to function in checkpoint control and to localize rapidly to DNA breaks *in vivo*. *53BP1*−/− murine B cells show dramatic impairment in CSR (to 55 to 25% of wild-type), but increases in the frequency of AID-triggered deletions within Sμ,[344] suggesting that formation of dsbs and repair of closely-spaced breaks does not require 53BP1, but joining of more distant dsbs depends on this protein.

Although the we currently lack a detailed model explaining the functions of all the DDR factors in dsb repair and specifically in CSR, the emerging evidence suggests that these proteins have mutual interactions and distinct but related roles, so that the elimination of any one protein reduces CSR efficiency but permits residual CSR to occur by pathways that remain intact.

Other Proteins that may Target AID for Class Switch Recombination. As discussed in the context of SHM, accurate targeting of AID is important since off-target activities of this protein can be deleterious, and off-target dsbs triggered by AID could be particularly dangerous. Several searches for proteins that might contribute to targeting of AID to switch regions have uncovered candidates for this function. In one study,[345] biotinylated AID was used as bait to fish for *in vitro* binding proteins, which were identified by mass spectrometry. One protein identified by this screen was PTBP2 (polypyrimidine tract-binding protein 2) which is considered to be a regulator of RNA splicing. Knockdown of PTBP2 by shRNA in CH12 B cells caused a substantial decrease in binding of AID to Sμ (determined by ChIP) and significant impairment of CSR. The possible role of a splicing regulator in CSR could be related to the puzzling observation that germline transcripts must be spliced in order for efficient CSR,[280] as mentioned previously.

A screen for proteins that could bind selectively *in vitro* to AGCT sequences—which are found clustered in many switch regions—identified another protein that might target AID in CSR: the 14-3-3 proteins, a family of seven members widely expressed and known to bind to many signaling proteins.[346] ChIP assays on B cells stimulated for CSR showed that 14-3-3 proteins bind to switch regions in an isotype-specific way (depending on stimulus conditions) in both normal and *Aicda*−/− cells, and reduction of 14-3-3 activity by either a peptide inhibitor or by genetic engineering decreased both CSR efficiency and AID binding to switch region DNA. Finally, a bimolecular fluorescence complementation assay revealed that in B-cell nuclei AID and 14-3-3 molecules form a complex that is dependent on the AID C-terminal amino acids required for CSR. These experiments suggest that 14-3-3 proteins are additional candidates for AID targeting molecules.

PKA, the cAMP-regulated protein kinase responsible for phosphorylation of AID Ser38 discussed previously, has also been suggested as a candidate that targets AID-dependent DNA cleavage to switch regions.[347] PKA was found by ChIP to bind to switch regions of stimulated B cells from normal and *Aicda*−/−mice, whereas the binding of RPA depended on Ser38-phosphorylated AID. Cellular concentrations of cAMP were found to rise rapidly after stimulation to CSR, and a genetic inactivation of PKA activity that prevented its activation by cAMP reduced both RPA binding and CSR. These data suggest a model in which CSR stimuli recruit both PKA and nonphosphorylated AID to switch regions, and AID gains the ability to recruit RPA and trigger dsbs efficiently only when cAMP-activated PKA phosphorylates Ser38.

Additional components of CSR may be discovered by analysis of patients with a hyper-IgM phenotype unexplained by defects in known components.[314]

CONCLUSION

Recombinant DNA technology has revolutionized the study of the antibody response. Initial investigations used powerful cloning and sequencing methods to define the structure of the Ig genes as they exist in the germline and in actively secreting B-lymphocytes. Subsequent experiments have begun to shed light on the mechanisms of the processes unique to these genes: V(D)J recombination, CSR, and SHM.

The knowledge of Ig genes gained so far has answered some of the most puzzling mysteries about antibody diversity, as discussed previously, and has also led to many practical ramifications involving these genes that are beyond the scope of this chapter. As one example, cloned Ig genes have allowed the production of recombinant monoclonal antibodies and the bioengineering of Ig-fusion proteins that exploit the exquisite specificity of antibody V region binding (e.g., antibody-toxin fusions) or the ability of Ig C region domains to extend serum half-life or engage Fc receptors. Other engineered derivatives utilizing Ig genes include single-chain antibodies, bispecific antibodies, and "intrabodies" designed not to be secreted from a cell but rather to bind to intracellular targets.[348–350] Ig V gene fragments cloned into bacteriophage so as to express single-chain V regions on the phage surface (phage display libraries) can be used to obtain specific monoclonal antibodies without immunization or use of mammalian cells, and *in vitro* mutation and selection protocols can mimic affinity maturation to yield high-affinity antibodies.[351] Even Ig gene regulatory regions have been exploited to achieve B-cell–specific expression of oncogenes[352] and of intracellular toxins that could be used to target B lymphomas.[353] Apart from these biotechnology applications, Ig gene probes have led to the identification of numerous proto-oncogenes that become activated by translocation into Ig gene loci.[354] For instance, Bcl2 was initially discovered as the target of Ig H chain translocation in follicular lymphoma, and provided an entry into an entire family of apoptosis-related genes. A final example of medical benefit from Ig gene technology has been the use of patient-specific Ig gene rearrangements of leukemias or lymphomas to monitor disease status by PCR.[355,356]

Further practical applications of Ig genes can be anticipated in the future, as well as a deeper scientific understanding of their molecular biology and their contribution to the immune system.

REFERENCES

1. Tonegawa S. Somatic generation of antibody diversity. *Nature*. 1983;302:575–581. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6300689
2. Nadel B, Tang A, Escuro G, Lugo G, Feeney AJ. Sequence of the spacer in the recombination signal sequence affects V(D)J rearrangement frequency and correlates with nonrandom Vkappa usage in vivo. *J Exp Med*. 1998;187:1495–1503. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9565641
3. Johnston CM, Wood AL, Bolland DJ, Corcoran AE. Complete sequence assembly and characterization of the C57BL/6 mouse Ig heavy chain V region. *J Immunol*. 2006;176:4221–4234. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16547259
4. Nei M, Gu X, Sitnikova T. Evolution by the birth-and-death process in multigene families of the vertebrate immune system. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1997;94:7799–7806. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9223266
5. Gu H, Kitamura D, Rajewsky K. B cell development regulated by gene rearrangement: arrest of maturation by membrane-bound D mu protein and selection of DH element reading frames. *Cell*. 1991;65:47–54. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2013094
6. Tomlinson IM, Cook GP, Carter NP, et al. Human immunoglobulin VH and D segments on chromosomes 15q11.2 and 16p11.2. *Hum Mol Gen*. 1994;3:853–860. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7951227
7. Corbett S, Tomlinson I, Sonnhammer E, Buck D, Winter G. Sequence of the human immunoglobulin diversity (D) segment locus: a systematic analysis provides no evidence for the use of DIR segments, inverted D segments, "minor" D segments or D-D recombination. *J Molec Biol*. 1997;271:587–597. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9245589
8. Shimizu A, Takahashi N, Yaoita Y, Honjo T. Organization of the constant-region gene family of the mouse immunoglobulin heavy chain. *Cell*. 1982;28:499–506. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6804095
9. Akahori Y, Kurosawa Y. Nucleotide sequences of all the gamma gene loci of murine immunoglobulin heavy chains. *Genomics*. 1997;41:100–104. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9126488
10. Burnett RC, Hanly WC, Zhai SK, Knight KL. The IgA heavy-chain gene family in rabbit: cloning and sequence analysis of 13 C alpha genes. *EMBO J*. 1989;8:4041–4047. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2512120
11. Hamers-Casterman C, Atarhouch T, Muyldermans S, et al. Naturally occurring antibodies devoid of light chains. *Nature*. 1993;363:446–448. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8502296
12. Phillips C, Kyriakopoulou CB, Virtanen A. Identification of a stem-loop structure important for polyadenylation at the murine IgM secretory poly(A) site. *Nucleic Acids Res*. 1999;27:429–438. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9862962
13. Takagaki Y, Seipelt RL, Peterson ML, Manley JL. The polyadenylation factor CstF-64 regulates alternative processing of IgM heavy chain pre-mRNA during B cell differentiation. *Cell*. 1996;87:941–952. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8945520
14. Phillips C, Pachikara N, Gunderson SI. U1A inhibits cleavage at the immu noglobulin M heavy-chain secretory poly(A) site by binding between the two downstream GU-rich regions. *Mol Cell Biol*. 2004;24:6162–6171. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15226420
15. Shapiro-Shelef M, Lin KI, McHeyzer-Williams LJ, Liao J, McHeyzer-Williams MG, Calame K. Blimp-1 is required for the formation of immu noglobulin secreting plasma cells and pre-plasma memory B cells. *Immunity*. 2003;19:607–620. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14563324
16. Coyle JH, Lebman DA. Correct immunoglobulin alpha mRNA processing depends on specific sequence in the C alpha 3-alpha M intron. *J Immunol*. 2000;164:3659–3665. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10725723
17. Engels N, Konig LM, Heemann C, et al. Recruitment of the cytoplasmic adaptor Grb2 to surface IgG and IgE provides antigen receptor-intrinsic costimulation to class-switched B cells. *Nat Immunol*. 2009;10:1018–1025. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19668218
18. Brekke KM, Garrard WT. Assembly and analysis of the mouse immunoglobulin kappa gene sequence. *Immunogenetics*. 2004;56:490–505. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15378297
19. Kawasaki K, Minoshima S, Nakato E, et al. Evolutionary dynamics of the human immunoglobulin kappa locus and the germline repertoire of the Vkappa genes. *Eur J Immunol*. 2001;31:1017–1028. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11298326
20. Durdik J, Moore MW, Selsing E. Novel kappa light-chain gene rearrangements in mouse lambda light chain-producing B lymphocytes. *Nature*. 1984;307:749–752. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6422305
21. Siminovitch KA, Bakhshi A, Goldman P, Korsmeyer SJ. A uniform deleting element mediates the loss of kappa genes in human B cells. *Nature*. 1985;316:260–262. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3927169
22. Hieter PA, Korsmeyer SJ, Waldmann TA, Leder P. Human immunoglobulin kappa light-chain genes are deleted or rearranged in lambda-producing B cells. *Nature*. 1981;290:368–372. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6783958
23. Gerdes T, Wabl M. Physical map of the mouse lambda light chain and related loci. *Immunogenetics*. 2002;54:62–65. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11976793
24. Kawasaki K, Minoshima S, Nakato E, et al. One-megabase sequence analysis of the human immunoglobulin lambda gene locus. *Genome Res*. 1997;7:250–261. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9074928
25. Niewold TA, Murphy CL, Weiss DT, Solomon A. Characterization of a light chain product of the human JC lambda 7 gene complex. *J Immunol*. 1996;157:4474–4477. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8906824
26. van der Burg M, Barendregt BH, van Gastel-Mol EJ, Tumkaya T, Langerak AW, van Dongen JJ. Unraveling of the polymorphic C lambda 2-C lambda 3 amplification and the Ke+ Oz- polymorphism in the human Ig lambda locus. *J Immunol*. 2002;169:271–276. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12077254
27. Kudo A, Sakaguchi N, Melchers F. Organization of the murine Ig-related lambda 5 gene transcribed selectively in pre-B lymphocytes. *EMBO J*. 1987;6:103–107. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3107979
28. Dul JL, Argon Y, Winkler T, Ten BE, Melchers F, Martensson IL. The murine VpreB1 and VpreB2 genes both encode a protein of the surrogate light chain and are co-expressed during B cell development. *Eur J Immunol*. 1996;26:906–913. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8625987
29. Tsubata T, Reth M. The products of pre-B cell-specific genes (lambda 5 and VpreB) and the immunoglobulin mu chain form a complex that is transported onto the cell. *J Exp Med*. 1990;172:973–976. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2117639
30. Frippiat JP, Williams SC, Tomlinson IM, et al. Organization of the human immunoglobulin lambda light-chain locus on chromosome 22q11.2. *Hum Mol Genet*. 1995;4:983–991. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7655473
31. McCormack WT, Tjoelker LW, Carlson LM, et al. Chicken IgL gene rearrangement involves deletion of a circular episome and addition of single nonrandom nucleotides to both coding segments. *Cell*. 1989;56:785–791. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2493991
32. Schlissel M, Constantinescu A, Morrow T, Baxter M, Peng A. Double-strand signal sequence breaks in V(D)J recombination are blunt, 5′-phosphorylated, RAG-dependent, and cell cycle regulated. *Genes Dev*. 1993;7:2520–2532. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8276236
33. Zhu C, Roth DB. Characterization of coding ends in thymocytes of scid mice: implications for the mechanism of V(D)J recombination. *Immunity*. 1995;2:101–112. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7600297
34. Roth DB, Menetski JP, Nakajima PB, Bosma MJ, Gellert M. V(D)J re-combination: broken DNA molecules with covalently sealed (hairpin) coding ends in scid mouse thymocytes. *Cell*. 1992;70:983–991. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1356077
35. Shimizu T, Iwasato T, Yamagishi H. Deletions of immunoglobulin C kappa region characterized by the circular excision products in mouse splenocytes. *J Exp Med*. 1991;173:1065–1072. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1902500

36. Lewis SM, Hesse JE, Mizuuchi K, Gellert M. Novel strand exchanges in V(D)J recombination. *Cell*. 1988;55:1099–1107. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3144437
37. Lew S, Franco D, Chang Y. Activation of V(D)J recombination induces the formation of interlocus joints and hybrid joints in scid pre-B-cell lines. *Mol Cell Biol*. 2000;20:7170–7177. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10982833
38. Reth M, Gehrmann P, Petrac E, Wiese P. A novel VH to VHDJH joining mechanism in heavy-chain-negative (null) pre-B cells results in heavy-chain production. *Nature*. 1986;322:840–842. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3092105
39. Lu H, Shimazaki N, Raval P, et al. A biochemically defined system for coding joint formation in V(D)J recombination. *Mol Cell*. 2008;31:485–497. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18722175
40. Schatz DG, Baltimore D. Stable expression of immunoglobulin gene V(D)J recombinase activity by gene transfer into 3T3 fibroblasts. *Cell*. 1988;53:107–115. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3349523
41. Shinkai Y, Rathbun G, Lam KP, et al. RAG-2-deficient mice lack mature lymphocytes owing to inability to initiate V(D)J rearrangement. *Cell*. 1992;68:855–867. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1547487
42. Mombaerts P, Iacomini J, Johnson RS, et al. RAG-1-deficient mice have no mature B and T lymphocytes. *Cell*. 1992;68:869–877. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1547488
43. Schwarz K, Gauss GH, Ludwig L, et al. RAG mutations in human B cell-negative SCID. *Science*. 1996;274:97–99. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8810255
44. Corneo B, Moshous D, Gungor T, et al. Identical mutations in RAG1 or RAG2 genes leading to defective V(D)J recombinase activity can cause either T-B-severe combined immune deficiency or Omenn syndrome. *Blood*. 2001;97:2772–2776. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11313270
45. Landree MA, Wibbenmeyer JA, Roth DB. Mutational analysis of RAG1 and RAG2 identifies three catalytic amino acids in RAG1 critical for both cleavage steps of V(D)J recombination. *Genes Dev*. 1999;13:3059–3069. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10601032
46. Kim DR, Dai Y, Mundy CL, Yang W, Oettinger MA. Mutations of acidic residues in RAG1 define the active site of the V(D)J recombinase. *Genes Dev*. 1999;13:3070–3080. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10601033
47. Akamatsu Y, Oettinger MA. Distinct roles of RAG1 and RAG2 in binding the V(D)J recombination signal sequences. *Mol Cell Biol*. 1998;18:4670–4678. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9671477
48. Swanson PC, Desiderio S. V(D)J recombination signal recognition: distinct, overlapping DNA- protein contacts in complexes containing RAG1 with and without RAG2. *Immunity*. 1998;9:115–125. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9697841
49. McBlane JF, van GD, Ramsden DA, et al. Cleavage at a V(D)J recombination signal requires only RAG1 and RAG2 proteins and occurs in two steps. *Cell*. 1995;83:387–395. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8521468
50. van Gent DC, Mizuuchi K, Gellert M. Similarities between initiation of V(D)J recombination and retroviral integration. *Science*. 1996;271:1592–1594. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8599117
51. Tsai CL, Drejer AH, Schatz DG. Evidence of a critical architectural function for the RAG proteins in end processing, protection, and joining in V(D)J recombination. *Genes Dev*. 2002;16:1934–1949. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12154124
52. Curry JD, Geier JK, Schlissel MS. Single-strand recombination signal sequence nicks in vivo: evidence for a capture model of synapsis. *Nat Immunol*. 2005;6:1272–1279. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16286921
53. Agrawal A, Eastman QM, Schatz DG. Transposition mediated by RAG1 and RAG2 and its implications for the evolution of the immune system. *Nature*. 1998;394:744–751. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9723614
54. Hiom K, Melek M, Gellert M. DNA transposition by the RAG1 and RAG2 proteins: a possible source of oncogenic translocations. *Cell*. 1998;94:463–470. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9727489
55. Zhou L, Mitra R, Atkinson PW, Hickman AB, Dyda F, Craig NL. Transposition of hAT elements links transposable elements and V(D)J recombination. *Nature*. 2004;432:995–1001. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15616554
56. Kapitonov VV, Jurka J. RAG1 core and V(D)J recombination signal sequences were derived from Transib transposons. *PLoS Biol*. 2005;3:e181. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15898832
57. Fugmann SD, Messier C, Novack LA, Cameron RA, Rast JP. An ancient evolutionary origin of the Rag1/2 gene locus. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2006;103:3728–3733. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16505374
58. Messier TL, O'Neill JP, Hou SM, Nicklas JA, Finette BA. In vivo transposition mediated by V(D)J recombinase in human T lymphocytes. *EMBO J*. 2003;22:1381–1388. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12628930
59. Chatterji M, Tsai CL, Schatz DG. Mobilization of RAG-generated signal ends by transposition and insertion in vivo. *Mol Cell Biol*. 2006;26:1558–1568. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16449665
60. Reddy YV, Perkins EJ, Ramsden DA. Genomic instability due to V(D)J recombination-associated transposition. *Genes Dev*. 2006;20:1575–1582. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16778076
61. Rahman NS, Godderz LJ, Stray SJ, Capra JD, Rodgers KK. DNA cleavage of a cryptic recombination signal sequence by RAG1 and RAG2. Implications for partial V(H) gene replacement. *J Biol Chem*. 2006;281:12370–12380. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16531612
62. Raghavan SC, Swanson PC, Ma Y, Lieber MR. Double-strand break formation by the RAG complex at the bcl-2 major breakpoint region and at other non-B DNA structures in vitro. *Mol Cell Biol*. 2005;25:5904–5919. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15988007
63. Akamatsu Y, Monroe R, Dudley DD, et al. Deletion of the RAG2 C terminus leads to impaired lymphoid development in mice. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2003;100:1209–1214. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12531919
64. Talukder SR, Dudley DD, Alt FW, Takahama Y, Akamatsu Y. Increased frequency of aberrant V(D)J recombination products in core RAG-expressing mice. *Nucleic Acids Res*. 2004;32:4539–4549. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15328366
65. Elkin SK, Matthews AG, Oettinger MA. The C-terminal portion of RAG2 protects against transposition in vitro. *EMBO J*. 2003;22:1931–1938. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12682025
66. Matthews AG, Kuo AJ, Ramon-Maiques S, et al. RAG2 PHD finger couples histone H3 lysine 4 trimethylation with V(D)J recombination. *Nature*. 2007;450:1106–1110. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18033247
67. Ramon-Maiques S, Kuo AJ, Carney D, et al. The plant homeodomain finger of RAG2 recognizes histone H3 methylated at both lysine-4 and arginine-2. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2007;104:18993–18998. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18025461
68. Liu Y, Subrahmanyam R, Chakraborty T, Sen R, Desiderio S. A plant homeodomain in RAG-2 that binds Hypermethylated lysine 4 of histone H3 is necessary for efficient antigen-receptor-gene rearrangement. *Immunity*. 2007;27:561–571. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17936034
69. Shimazaki N, Tsai AG, Lieber MR. H3K4me3 stimulates the V(D)J RAG complex for both nicking and hairpinning in trans in addition to tethering in cis: implications for translocations. *Mol Cell*. 2009;34:535–544. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19524534
70. Jiang H, Chang FC, Ross AE, et al. Ubiquitylation of RAG-2 by Skp2-SCF links destruction of the V(D)J recombinase to the cell cycle. *Mol Cell*. 2005;18:699–709. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15949444
71. Li Z, Dordai DI, Lee J, Desiderio S. A conserved degradation signal regulates RAG-2 accumulation during cell division and links V(D)J recombination to the cell cycle. *Immunity*. 1996;5:575–589. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8986717
72. Zhang L, Reynolds TL, Shan X, Desiderio S. Coupling of V(D)J recombination to the cell cycle suppresses genomic instability and lymphoid tumorigenesis. *Immunity*. 2011;34:163–174. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21349429

73. Grazini U, Zanardi F, Citterio E, Casola S, Goding CR, McBlane F. The RING domain of RAG1 ubiquitylates histone H3: a novel activity in chromatin-mediated regulation of V(D)J joining. *Mol Cell*. 2010;37:282–293. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20122409
74. Chen J, Lansford R, Stewart V, Young F, Alt FW. RAG-2-deficient blastocyst complementation: an assay of gene function in lymphocyte development. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1993;90:4528–4532. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8506294
75. van Gent DC, Hiom K, Paull TT, Gellert M. Stimulation of V(D)J cleavage by high mobility group proteins. *EMBO J*. 1997;16:2665–2670. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9184213
76. Hiom K, Gellert M. Assembly of a 12/23 paired signal complex: a critical control point in V(D)J recombination. *Mol Cell*. 1998;1:1011–1019. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9651584
77. Aidinis V, Bonaldi T, Beltrame M, Santagata S, Bianchi ME, Spanopoulou E. The RAG1 homeodomain recruits HMG1 and HMG2 to facilitate recombination signal sequence binding and to enhance the intrinsic DNA-bending activity of RAG1-RAG2. *Mol Cell Biol*. 1999;19:6532–6542. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10490593
78. Lieber MR. The mechanism of double-strand DNA break repair by the nonhomologous DNA end-joining pathway. *Annu Rev Biochem*. 2010;79:181–211. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20192759
79. DeFazio LG, Stansel RM, Griffith JD, Chu G. Synapsis of DNA ends by DNA-dependent protein kinase. *EMBO J*. 2002;21:3192–200. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12065431
80. Weterings E, Verkaik NS, Bruggenwirth HT, Hoeijmakers JH, van Gent DC. The role of DNA dependent protein kinase in synapsis of DNA ends. *Nucleic Acids Res*. 2003;31:7238–7246. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14654699
81. Gao Y, Chaudhuri J, Zhu C, Davidson L, Weaver DT, Alt FW. A targeted DNA-PKcs-null mutation reveals DNA-PK-independent functions for KU in V(D)J recombination. *Immunity*. 1998;9:367–376. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9768756
82. Taccioli GE, Amatucci AG, Beamish HJ, et al. Targeted disruption of the catalytic subunit of the DNA-PK gene in mice confers severe combined immunodeficiency and radiosensitivity. *Immunity*. 1998;9:355–366. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9768755
83. Zhu C, Bogue MA, Lim DS, Hasty P, Roth DB. Ku86-deficient mice exhibit severe combined immunodeficiency and defective processing of V(D)J recombination intermediates. *Cell*. 1996;86:379–389. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8756720
84. Gu Y, Jin S, Gao Y, Weaver DT, Alt FW. Ku70-deficient embryonic stem cells have increased ionizing radiosensitivity, defective DNA end-binding activity, and inability to support V(D)J recombination. *Proc Nat Acad Sci U S A*. 1997;94:8076–8081. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9223317
85. Nussenzweig A, Chen C, da Costa Soares V, et al. Requirement for Ku80 in growth and immunoglobulin V(D)J recombination. *Nature*. 1996;382:551–555. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8700231
86. Critchlow SE, Bowater RP, Jackson SP. Mammalian DNA double-strand break repair protein XRCC4 interacts with DNA ligase IV. *Curr Biol*. 1997;7:588–598. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9259561
87. Grawunder U, Wilm M, Wu XK, et al. Activity of DNA ligase IV stimulate by complex formation with XRCC4 in mammalian cells. *Nature*. 1997;388:492. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9242410
88. O'Driscoll M, Cerosaletti KM, Girard PM, et al. DNA ligase IV mutations identified in patients exhibiting developmental delay and immunodeficiency. *Mol Cell*. 2001;8:1175–1185. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11779494
89. van der Burg M, van Veelen LR, Verkaik NS, et al. A new type of radiosensitive T-B-NK+ severe combined immunodeficiency caused by a LIG4 mutation. *J Clin Invest*. 2006;116:137–145. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16357942
90. Gao Y, Ferguson DO, Xie W, et al. Interplay of p53 and DNA-repair protein XRCC4 in tumorigenesis, genomic stability and development. *Nature*. 2000;404:897-900. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10786799
91. Ahnesorg P, Smith P, Jackson SP. XLF interacts with the XRCC4-DNA ligase IV complex to promote DNA nonhomologous end-joining. *Cell*. 2006;124:301–313. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16439205
92. Buck D, Malivert L, de Chasseval R, et al. Cernunnos, a novel nonhomologous end-joining factor, is mutated in human immunodeficiency with microcephaly. *Cell*. 2006;124:287–299. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16439204
93. Callebaut I, Malivert L, Fischer A, Mornon JP, Revy P, de Villartay JP. Cernunnos interacts with the XRCC4 x DNA-ligase IV complex and is homologous to the yeast nonhomologous end-joining factor Nej1. *J Biol Chem*. 2006;281:13857–13860. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16571728
94. Moshous D, Callebaut I, de Chasseval R, et al. Artemis, a novel DNA double-strand break repair/V(D)J recombination protein, is mutated in human severe combined immune deficiency. *Cell*. 2001;105:177–186. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11336668
95. Ege M, Ma Y, Manfras B, et al. Omenn syndrome due to ARTEMIS mutations. *Blood*. 2005;105:4179–4186. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15731174
96. Drouet J, Frit P, Delteil C, de Villartay JP, Salles B, Calsou P. Interplay between Ku, Artemis, and the DNA-dependent protein kinase catalytic subunit at DNA ends. *J Biol Chem*. 2006;281:27784–27793. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16857680
97. Ma Y, Pannicke U, Lu H, Niewolik D, Schwarz K, Lieber MR. The DNA-dependent protein kinase catalytic subunit phosphorylation sites in human Artemis. *J Biol Chem*. 2005;280:33839–33846. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16093244
98. Ma Y, Schwarz K, Lieber MR. The Artemis:DNA-PKcs endonuclease cleaves DNA loops, flaps, and gaps. *DNA Repair (Amst)*. 2005;4:845–851. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15936993
99. Budman J, Chu G. Processing of DNA for nonhomologous end-joining by cell-free extract. *EMBO J*. 2005;24:849–860. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15692565
100. Ma Y, Lu H, Tippin B, et al. A biochemically defined system for mammalian nonhomologous DNA end joining. *Mol Cell*. 2004;16:701–713. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15574326
101. Feeney AJ. Lack of N regions in fetal and neonatal mouse immunoglobulin V-D-J junctional sequences. *J Exp Med*. 1990;172:1377–1390. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1700054
102. Victor KD, Capra JD. An apparently common mechanism of generating antibody diversity: length variation of the VL-JL junction. *Mol Immunol*. 1994;31:39–46. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7508079
103. Wasserman R, Li YS, Hardy RR. Down-regulation of terminal deoxynucleotidyl transferase by Ig heavy chain in B lineage cells. *J Immunol*. 1997;158:1133–1138. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9013952
104. Hiramatsu R, Akagi K, Matsuoka M, et al. The 3′ enhancer region determines the B/T specificity and pro-B/pre-B specificity of immuno-globulin V kappa-J kappa joining. *Cell*. 1995;83:1113–1123. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8548799
105. Gavin MA, Bevan MJ. Increased peptide promiscuity provides a rationale for the lack of N regions in the neonatal T cell repertoire. *Immunity*. 1995;3:793–800. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8777724
106. Bogue MA, Wang C, Zhu C, Roth DB. V(D)J recombination in Ku86-deficient mice: distinct effects on coding, signal, and hybrid joint formation. *Immunity*. 1997;7:37–47. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9252118
107. Bertocci B, De Smet A, Berek C, Weill JC, Reynaud CA. Immunoglobulin kappa light chain gene rearrangement is impaired in mice deficient for DNA polymerase mu. *Immunity*. 2003;19:203–211. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12932354
108. Bertocci B, De Smet A, Weill JC, Reynaud CA. Nonoverlapping functions of DNA polymerases mu, lambda, and terminal deoxynu-cleotidyltransferase during immunoglobulin V(D)J recombination in vivo. *Immunity*. 2006;25:31–41. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16860755
109. Zhang Z, Espinoza CR, Yu Z, et al. Transcription factor Pax5 (BSAP) transactivates the RAG-mediated V(H)-to-DJ(H) rearrangement of immunoglobulin genes. *Nat Immunol*. 2006;7:616–624. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16680144

110. Alt FW, Enea V, Bothwell AL, Baltimore D. Activity of multiple light chain genes in murine myeloma cells producing a single, functional light chain. *Cell*. 1980;21:1–12. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6773666
111. Grawunder U, Leu TM, Schatz DG, et al. Down-regulation of RAG1 and RAG2 gene expression in preB cells after functional immunoglobulin heavy chain rearrangement. *Immunity*. 1995;3:601–608. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7584150
112. Schlissel MS, Morrow T. Ig heavy chain protein controls B cell development by regulating germ-line transcription and retargeting V(D)J recombination. *J Immunol*. 1994;153:1645–1657. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8046237
113. Fang W, Mueller DL, Pennell CA, et al. Frequent aberrant immunoglobulin gene rearrangements in pro-B cells revealed by a bcl-xL transgene. *Immunity*. 1996;4:291–299. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8624819
114. Ma A, Fisher P, Dildrop R, et al. Surface IgM mediated regulation of RAG gene expression in E mu-N-myc B cell lines. *EMBO J*. 1992;11:2727–2734. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1628630
115. Hsu LY, Lauring J, Liang HE, et al. A conserved transcriptional enhancer regulates RAG gene expression in developing B cells. *Immunity*. 2003;19:105–117. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12871643
116. Wei XC, Kishi H, Jin ZX, et al. Characterization of chromatin structure and enhancer elements for murine recombination activating gene-2. *J Immunol*. 2002;169:873–881. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12097391
117. Kuo TC, Schlissel MS. Mechanisms controlling expression of the RAG locus during lymphocyte development. *Curr Opin Immunol*. 2009;21:173–178. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19359154
118. Verkoczy L, Ait-Azzouzene D, Skog P, et al. A role for nuclear factor kappa B/rel transcription factors in the regulation of the recombinase activator genes. *Immunity*. 2005;22:519–531. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15845455
119. Amin RH, Schlissel MS. Foxo1 directly regulates the transcription of recombination-activating genes during B cell development. *Nat Immunol*. 2008;9:613–622. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18469817
120. Yancopoulos GD, Alt FW. Developmentally controlled and tissue-specific expression of unrearranged VH gene segments. *Cell*. 1985;40:271–281. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22187482
121. Stanhope-Baker P, Hudson KM, Shaffer AL, Constantinescu A, Schlissel MS. Cell type-specific chromatin structure determines the targeting of V(D)J recombinase activity in vitro. *Cell*. 1996;85:887–897. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8681383
122. Golding A, Chandler S, Ballestar E, Wolffe AP, Schlissel MS. Nucleosome structure completely inhibits in vitro cleavage by the V(D) J recombinase. *EMBO J*. 1999;18:3712–3723. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10393186
123. McBlane F, Boyes J. Stimulation of V(D)J recombination by histone acetylation. *Curr Biol*. 2000;10:483–486. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10801420
124. Osborne CS, Chakalova L, Brown KE, et al. Active genes dynamically colocalize to shared sites of ongoing transcription. *Nat Genet*. 2004;36:1065–1071. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15361872
125. Kosak ST, Skok JA, Medina KL, et al. Subnuclear compartmentalization of immunoglobulin loci during lymphocyte development. *Science*. 2002;296:158–162. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11935030
126. Alessandrini A, Desiderio SV. Coordination of immunoglobulin DJH transcription and D-to-JH rearrangement by promoter-enhancer approximation. *Mol Cell Biol*. 1991;11:2096–2107. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1900920
127. Schlissel MS, Corcoran LM, Baltimore D. Virus-transformed pre-B cells show ordered activation but not inactivation of immunoglobulin gene rearrangement and transcription. *J Exp Med*. 1991;173:711–720. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1900081
128. Chakraborty T, Chowdhury D, Keyes A, et al. Repeat organization and epigenetic regulation of the DH-Cmu domain of the immunoglobulin heavy-chain gene locus. *Mol Cell*. 2007;27:842–850. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17803947
129. Ji Y, Resch W, Corbett E, Yamane A, Casellas R, Schatz DG. The in vivo pattern of binding of RAG1 and RAG2 to antigen receptor loci. *Cell*. 2010;141:419–431. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20398922
130. Storb U, Arp B. Methylation patterns of immunoglobulin genes in lymphoid cells: correlation of expression and differentiation with undermethylation. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1983;80:6642–6646. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6314334
131. Goodhardt M, Cavelier P, Doyen N, Kallenbach S, Babinet C, Rougeon F. Methylation status of immunoglobulin kappa gene segments correlates with their recombination potential. *Eur J Immunol*. 1993;23:1789–1795. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8344341
132. Hsieh CL, Lieber MR. CpG methylated minichromosomes become inaccessible for V(D)J recombination after undergoing replication. *EMBO J*. 1992;11:315–325. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1371250
133. Engler P, Haasch D, Pinkert CA, et al. A strain-specific modifier on mouse chromosome 4 controls the methylation of independent transgene loci. *Cell*. 1991;65:939–947. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2044153
134. Fuxa M, Skok J, Souabni A, Salvagiotto G, Roldan E, Busslinger M. Pax5 induces V-to-DJ rearrangements and locus contraction of the immunoglobulin heavy-chain gene. *Genes Dev*. 2004;18:411–422. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15004008
135. Jhunjhunwala S, van Zelm MC, Peak MM, et al. The 3D structure of the immunoglobulin heavy-chain locus: implications for long-range genomic interactions. *Cell*. 2008;133:265–279. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18423198
136. Garrett FE, Emelyanov AV, Sepulveda MA, et al. Chromatin architecture near a potential 3′ end of the igh locus involves modular regulation of histone modifications during B-Cell development and in vivo occupancy at CTCF sites. *Mol Cell Biol*. 2005;25:1511–1525. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15684400
137. Degner SC, Verma-Gaur J, Wong TP, et al. CCCTC-binding factor (CTCF) and cohesin influence the genomic architecture of the Igh locus and antisense transcription in pro-B cells. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2011;108:9566–9571. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21606361
138. Featherstone K, Wood AL, Bowen AJ, Corcoran AE. The mouse immunoglobulin heavy chain V-D intergenic sequence contains insulators that may regulate ordered V(D)J recombination. *J Biol Chem*. 2010;285:9327–9338. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20100833
139. Guo C, Yoon HS, Franklin A, et al. CTCF-binding elements mediate control of V(D)J recombination. *Nature*. 2011;477:424–430. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21909113
140. Casellas R, Shih TA, Kleinewietfeld M, et al. Contribution of receptor editing to the antibody repertoire. *Science*. 2001;291:1541–1544. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11222858
141. Hippen KL, Schram BR, Tze LE, Pape KA, Jenkins MK, Behrens TW. In vivo assessment of the relative contributions of deletion, anergy, and editing to B cell self-tolerance. *J Immunol*. 2005;175:909–916. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16002689
142. Halverson R, Torres RM, Pelanda R. Receptor editing is the main mechanism of B cell tolerance toward membrane antigens. *Nat Immunol*. 2004;5:645–650. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15156139
143. Ait-Azzouzene D, Verkoczy L, Peters J, et al. An immunoglobulin C kappa-reactive single chain antibody fusion protein induces tolerance through receptor editing in a normal polyclonal immune system. *J Exp Med*. 2005;201:817–828. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15738053
144. Muramatsu M, Sankaranand VS, Anant S, et al. Specific expression of activation-induced cytidine deaminase (AID), a novel member of the RNA-editing deaminase family in germinal center B cells. *J Biol Chem*. 1999;274:18470–18476. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10373455
145. Revy P, Muto T, Levy Y, et al. Activation-induced cytidine deaminase (AID) deficiency causes the autosomal recessive form of the Hyper-IgM syndrome (HIGM2). *Cell*. 2000;102:565–575. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11007475
146. Okazaki IM, Kinoshita K, Muramatsu M, Yoshikawa K, Honjo T. The AID enzyme induces class switch recombination in fibroblasts. *Nature*. 2002;416:340–345. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11875397

147. Yoshikawa K, Okazaki I, Eto T, et al. AID enzyme-Induced hyper-mutation in an actively transcribed gene in fibroblasts. *Science*. 2002;296: 2033–2036.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12065838
148. Petersen-Mahrt SK, Harris RS, Neuberger MS. AID mutates E. coli suggesting a DNA deamination mechanism for antibody diversification. *Nature*. 2002;418:99–103.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12097915
149. Sohail A, Klapacz J, Samaranayake M, Ullah A, Bhagwat AS. Human activation-induced cytidine deaminase causes transcription-dependent, strand-biased C to U deaminations. *Nucleic Acids Res*. 2003;31: 2990–2994.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12799424
150. Di Noia J, Neuberger MS. Altering the pathway of immunoglobulin hypermutation by inhibiting uracil-DNA glycosylase. *Nature*. 2002;419: 43–48.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12214226
151. Rada C, Williams GT, Nilsen H, Barnes DE, Lindahl T, Neuberger MS. Immunoglobulin isotype switching is inhibited and somatic hypermutation perturbed in UNG-deficient mice. *Curr Biol*. 2002;12:1748–1755.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12401169
152. Maul RW, Saribasak H, Martomo SA, et al. Uracil residues dependent on the deaminase AID in immunoglobulin gene variable and switch regions. *Nat Immunol*. 2011;12:70–76.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21151102
153. Bransteitter R, Pham P, Scharff MD, Goodman MF. Activation-induced cytidine deaminase deaminates deoxycytidine on single-stranded DNA but requires the action of RNase. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2003; 100:4102–4107.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12651944
154. Yu K, Huang FT, Lieber MR. DNA substrate length and surrounding sequence affect the activation-induced deaminase activity at cytidine. *J Biol Chem*. 2004;279:6496–6500.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14645244
155. Chaudhuri J, Tian M, Khuong C, Chua K, Pinaud E, Alt FW. Transcription-targeted DNA deamination by the AID antibody diver-sification enzyme. *Nature*. 2003;422:726–730.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12692563
156. Ramiro AR, Stavropoulos P, Jankovic M, Nussenzweig MC. Transcription enhances AID-mediated cytidine deamination by exposing single-stranded DNA on the nontemplate strand. *Nat Immunol*. 2003;4: 452–456.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12692548
157. Pham P, Bransteitter R, Petruska J, Goodman MF. Processive AID-catalysed cytosine deamination on single-stranded DNA simulates somatic hypermutation. *Nature*. 2003;424:103–107.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12819663
158. Nambu Y, Sugai M, Gonda H, et al. Transcription-coupled events associating with immunoglobulin switch region chromatin. *Science*. 2003;302:2137–2140.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14684824
159. Chaudhuri J, Khuong C, Alt FW. Replication protein A interacts with AID to promote deamination of somatic hypermutation targets. *Nature*. 2004;430:992–998.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15273694
160. Yamane A, Resch W, Kuo N, et al. Deep-sequencing identification of the genomic targets of the cytidine deaminase AID and its cofactor RPA in B lymphocytes. *Nat Immunol*. 2011;12:62–69.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21113164
161. Wang M, Rada C, Neuberger MS. Altering the spectrum of immunoglobulin V gene somatic hypermutation by modifying the active site of AID. *J Exp Med*. 2010;207:141–153.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20048284
162. Kohli RM, Maul RW, Guminski AF, et al. Local sequence targeting in the AID/APOBEC family differentially impacts retroviral restriction and antibody diversification. *J Biol Chem*. 2010;285:40956–40964.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20929867
163. Carpenter MA, Rajagurubandara E, Wijesinghe P, Bhagwat AS. Determinants of sequence-specificity within human AID and APOBEC3G. *DNA Repair*. 2010;9:579–587.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20338830
164. Conticello SG. The AID/APOBEC family of nucleic acid mutators. *Genome Biol*. 2008;9:229.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18598372
165. Ta VT, Nagaoka H, Catalan N, et al. AID mutant analyses indicate requirement for class-switch-specific cofactors. *Nat Immunol*. 2003;4: 843–848.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12910268
166. Barreto V, Reina-San-Martin B, Ramiro AR, McBride KM, Nussenzweig MC. C-terminal deletion of AID uncouples class switch recombination from somatic hypermutation and gene conversion. *Mol Cell*. 2003;12:501–508.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14536088
167. Shinkura R, Ito S, Begum NA, et al. Separate domains of AID are required for somatic hypermutation and class-switch recombination. *Nat Immunol*. 2004;5:707–712.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15195091
168. Popp C, Dean W, Feng S, et al. Genome-wide erasure of DNA methylation in mouse primordial germ cells is affected by AID deficiency. *Nature*. 2010;463:1101–1105.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20098412
169. Bhutani N, Brady JJ, Damian M, Sacco A, Corbel SY, Blau HM. Reprogramming towards pluripotency requires AID-dependent DNA demethylation. *Nature*. 2010;463:1042–1047.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20027182
170. Morgan HD, Dean W, Coker HA, Reik W, Petersen-Mahrt SK. Activation-induced cytidine deaminase deaminates 5-methylcytosine in DNA and is expressed in pluripotent tissues: implications for epi-genetic reprogramming. *J Biol Chem*. 2004;279:52353–52360.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15448152
171. Esnault C, Millet J, Schwartz O, Heidmann T. Dual inhibitory effects of APOBEC family proteins on retrotransposition of mammalian endogenous retroviruses. *Nucleic Acids Res*. 2006;34:1522–1531.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16537839
172. Gourzi P, Leonova T, Papavasiliou FN. A role for activation-induced cytidine deaminase in the host response against a transforming retrovirus. *Immunity*. 2006;24:779–786.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16782033
173. MacDuff DA, Demorest ZL, Harris RS. AID can restrict L1 retrotransposition suggesting a dual role in innate and adaptive immunity. *Nucleic Acids Res*. 2009;37:1854–1867.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19188259
174. Meyers G, Ng YS, Bannock JM, et al. Activation-induced cytidine deaminase (AID) is required for B-cell tolerance in humans. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2011;108:11554–11559.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21700883
175. Kuraoka M, Holl TM, Liao D, et al. Activation-induced cytidine deaminase mediates central tolerance in B cells. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2011;108:11560–11565.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21700885
176. Zaheen A, Boulianne B, Parsa JY, Ramachandran S, Gommerman JL, Martin A. AID constrains germinal center size by rendering B cells susceptible to apoptosis. *Blood*. 2009;114:547–554.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19478044
177. Okazaki IM, Hiai H, Kakazu N, et al. Constitutive expression of AID leads to tumorigenesis. *J Exp Med*. 2003;197:1173–1181.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12732658
178. Ramiro AR, Jankovic M, Eisenreich T, et al. AID is required for c-myc/IgH chromosome translocations in vivo. *Cell*. 2004;118:431–438.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15315756
179. Sernandez IV, de Yebenes VG, Dorsett Y, Ramiro AR. Haploinsufficiency of activation-induced deaminase for antibody diversification and chromosome translocations both in vitro and in vivo. *PLoS One*. 2008; 3:e3927.\
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19079594
180. Takizawa M, Tolarova H, Li Z, et al. AID expression levels determine the extent of cMyc oncogenic translocations and the incidence of B cell tumor development. *J Exp Med*. 2008;205:1949–1957.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18678733
181. Yadav A, Olaru A, Saltis M, Setren A, Cerny J, Livak F. Identification of a ubiquitously active promoter of the murine activation-induced cytidine deaminase (AICDA) gene. *Mol Immunol*. 2006;43:529–541.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16005067
182. Tran TH, Nakata M, Suzuki K, et al. B cell-specific and stimulation-responsive enhancers derepress Aicda by overcoming the effects of silencers. *Nat Immunol*. 2010;11:148–154.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19966806

183. Park SR, Zan H, Pal Z, et al. HoxC4 binds to the promoter of the cytidine deaminase AID gene to induce AID expression, class-switch DNA recombination and somatic hypermutation. *Nat Immunol*. 2009;10:540–550.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19363484
184. Crouch EE, Li Z, Takizawa M, et al. Regulation of AID expression in the immune response. *J Exp Med*. 2007;204:1145–1156.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17452520
185. Pauklin S, Sernandez IV, Bachmann G, Ramiro AR, Petersen-Mahrt SK. Estrogen directly activates AID transcription and function. *J Exp Med*. 2009;206:99–111.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19139166
186. Mai T, Zan H, Zhang J, Hawkins JS, Xu Z, Casali P. Estrogen receptors bind to and activate the HOXC4/HoxC4 promoter to potentiate HoxC4-mediated activation-induced cytosine deaminase induction, immunoglobulin class switch DNA recombination, and somatic hypermutation. *J Biol Chem*. 2010;285:37797–37810.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20855884
187. Teng G, Hakimpour P, Landgraf P, et al. MicroRNA-155 is a negative regulator of activation-induced cytidine deaminase. *Immunity*. 2008;28:621–629.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18450484
188. Dorsett Y, McBride KM, Jankovic M, et al. MicroRNA-155 suppresses activation-induced cytidine deaminase-mediated Myc-Igh translocation. *Immunity*. 2008;28:630–638.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18455451
189. Ito S, Nagaoka H, Shinkura R, et al. Activation-induced cytidine deaminase shuttles between nucleus and cytoplasm like apolipoprotein B mRNA editing catalytic polypeptide 1. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2004;101:1975–1980.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14769937
190. Patenaude AM, Orthwein A, Hu Y, et al. Active nuclear import and cytoplasmic retention of activation-induced deaminase. *Nat Struct Mol Biol*. 2009;16:517–527.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19412186
191. McBride KM, Barreto V, Ramiro AR, Stavropoulos P, Nussenzweig MC. Somatic hypermutation is limited by CRM1-dependent nuclear export of activation-induced deaminase. *J Exp Med*. 2004;199:1235–1244.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15117971
192. Maeda K, Singh SK, Eda K, et al. GANP-mediated recruitment of activation-induced cytidine deaminase to cell nuclei and to immunoglobulin variable region DNA. *J Biol Chem*. 2010;285:23945–23953.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20507984
193. Han L, Masani S, Yu K. Cutting edge: CTNNBL1 is dispensable for Ig class switch recombination. *J Immunol*. 2010;185:1379–1381.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20585033
194. Aoufouchi S, Faili A, Zober C, et al. Proteasomal degradation restricts the nuclear lifespan of AID. *J Exp Med*. 2008;205:1357–1368.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18474627
195. Orthwein A, Patenaude AM, Affar el B, Lamarre A, Young JC, Di Noia JM. Regulation of activation-induced deaminase stability and antibody gene diversification by Hsp90. *J Exp Med*. 2010;207:2751–2765.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21041454
196. Basu U, Chaudhuri J, Alpert C, et al. The AID antibody diversification enzyme is regulated by protein kinase A phosphorylation. *Nature*. 2005;438:508–511.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16251902
197. Pasqualucci L, Kitaura Y, Gu H, Dalla-Favera R. PKA-mediated phosphorylation regulates the function of activation-induced deaminase (AID) in B cells. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2006;103:395–400.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16387847
198. McBride KM, Gazumyan A, Woo EM, Schwickert TA, Chait BT, Nussenzweig MC. Regulation of class switch recombination and somatic mutation by AID phosphorylation. *J Exp Med*. 2008;205:2585–2594.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18838546
199. Gazumyan A, Timachova K, Yuen G, et al. Amino-terminal phosphorylation of activation-induced cytidine deaminase suppresses c-myc/IgH translocation. *Mol Cell Biol*. 2011;31:442–449.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21135131
200. Weigert M, Riblet R. Genetic control of antibody variable regions. *Cold Spring Harb Symp Quant Biol*. 1977;41(pt 2):837–846.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/408080
201. Wiens GD, Brown M, Rittenberg MB. Repertoire shift in the humoral response to phosphocholine-keyhole limpet hemocyanin: VH somatic mutation in germinal center B cells impairs T15 Ig function. *J Immunol*. 2003;170:5095–5102.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12734355
202. Ray SK, Putterman C, Diamond B. Pathogenic autoantibodies are routinely generated during the response to foreign antigen: a para-digm for autoimmune disease. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1996;93:2019–2024.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8700878
203. Choe J, Kim HS, Zhang X, Armitage RJ, Choi YS. Cellular and molecular factors that regulate the differentiation and apoptosis of germinal center B cells. Anti-Ig down-regulates Fas expression of CD40 ligand-stimulated germinal center B cells and inhibits Fas-mediated apoptosis. *J Immunol*. 1996;157:1006–1016.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8757604
204. Hennino A, Berard M, Krammer PH, Defrance T. FLICE-inhibitory protein is a key regulator of germinal center B cell apoptosis. *J Exp Med*. 2001;193:447–458.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11181697
205. Eisen HN, Siskind GW. Variations in affinities of antibodies during the immune response. *Biochemistry*. 1964;3:996–1008.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14214095
206. Takahashi Y, Cerasoli DM, Dal Porto JM, et al. Relaxed negative selection in germinal centers and impaired affinity maturation in bcl-xL transgenic mice. *J Exp Med*. 1999;190:399–410.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10430628
207. Jacob J, Kelsoe G. In situ studies of the primary immune response to (4-hydroxy-3-nitrophenyl)acetyl. II. A common clonal origin for periarteriolar lymphoid sheath-associated foci and germinal centers. *J Exp Med*. 1992;176:679–87.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1512536
208. Zheng B, Han S, Kelsoe G. T helper cells in murine germinal centers are antigen-specific emigrants that downregulate Thy-1. *J Exp Med*. 1996;184:1083–1091.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9064325
209. Razanajaona D, van Kooten C, Lebecque S, et al. Somatic mutations in human Ig variable genes correlate with a partially functional CD40-ligand in the X-linked hyper-IgM syndrome. *J Immunol*. 1996;157:1492–1498.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8759730
210. Allen CD, Okada T, Tang HL, Cyster JG. Imaging of germinal center selection events during affinity maturation. *Science*. 2007;315:528–31.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17185562
211. Allen CD, Ansel KM, Low C, et al. Germinal center dark and light zone organization is mediated by CXCR4 and CXCR5. *Nat Immunol*. 2004;5:943–952.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15300245
212. Victora GD, Schwickert TA, Fooksman DR, et al. Germinal center dyna mics revealed by multiphoton microscopy with a photoactivatable fluorescent reporter. *Cell*. 2010;143:592–605.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21074050
213. Anderson SM, Khalil A, Uduman M, et al. Taking advantage: high-affinity B cells in the germinal center have lower death rates, but similar rates of division, compared to low-affinity cells. *J Immunol*. 2009;183:7314–7325.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19917681
214. Suzuki K, Grigorova I, Phan TG, Kelly LM, Cyster JG. Visualizing B cell capture of cognate antigen from follicular dendritic cells. *J Exp Med*. 2009;206:1485–1493.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19506051
215. Sharma S, Orlowski G, Song W. Btk regulates B cell receptor-mediated antigen processing and presentation by controlling actin cytoskeleton dynamics in B cells. *J Immunol*. 2009;182:329–339.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19109164
216. Mao C, Jiang L, Melo-Jorge M, et al. T cell-independent somatic hypermutation in murine B cells with an immature phenotype. *Immunity*. 2004;20:133–144.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14975236
217. Weller S, Braun MC, Tan BK, et al. Human blood IgM "memory" B cells are circulating splenic marginal zone B cells harboring a predi-versified immunoglobulin repertoire. *Blood*. 2004;104:3647–3654.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15191950
218. Matsumoto M, Lo SF, Carruthers CJ, et al. Affinity maturation with-out germinal centres in lymphotoxin-alpha-deficient mice. *Nature*. 1996;382:462–466.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8684487

219. Toellner KM, Jenkinson WE, Taylor DR, et al. Low-level hypermutation in T cell-independent germinal centers compared with high mutation rates associated with T cell-dependent germinal centers. *J Exp Med*. 2002;195:383–389. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11828014
220. Jiricny J. The multifaceted mismatch-repair system. *Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol*. 2006;7:335–346. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16612326
221. Wiesendanger M, Kneitz B, Edelmann W, Scharff MD. Somatic hypermutation in MutS homologue (MSH)3-, MSH6-, and MSH3/MSH6-deficient mice reveals a role for the MSH2-MSH6 heterodimer in modulating the base substitution pattern. *J Exp Med*. 2000;191:579–584. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10662804
222. Martomo SA, Yang WW, Gearhart PJ. A role for Msh6 but not Msh3 in somatic hypermutation and class switch recombination. *J Exp Med*. 2004;200:61–68.
223. Wilson TM, Vaisman A, Martomo SA, et al. MSH2-MSH6 stimulates DNA polymerase eta, suggesting a role for A:T mutations in antibody genes. *J Exp Med*. 2005;201:637–645. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15710654
224. Martomo SA, Yang WW, Wersto RP, et al. Different mutation signatures in DNA polymerase eta- and MSH6-deficient mice suggest separate roles in antibody diversification. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2005;102:8656–8661. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15939880
225. Delbos F, De Smet A, Faili A, Aoufouchi S, Weill JC, Reynaud CA. Contribution of DNA polymerase eta to immunoglobulin gene hypermutation in the mouse. *J Exp Med*. 2005;201:1191–1196. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15824086
226. Jansen JG, Langerak P, Tsaalbi-Shtylik A, van den Berk P, Jacobs H, de Wind N. Strand-biased defect in C/G transversions in hypermutating immunoglobulin genes in Rev1-deficient mice. *J Exp Med*. 2006;203:319–323. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16476771
227. Zan H, Komori A, Li Z, et al. The translesion DNA polymerase zeta plays a major role in Ig and bcl-6 somatic hypermutation. *Immunity*. 2001;14:643–653. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11371365
228. Diaz M, Verkoczy LK, Flajnik MF, Klinman NR. Decreased frequency of somatic hypermutation and impaired affinity maturation but intact germinal center formation in mice expressing antisense RNA to DNA polymerase zeta. *J Immunol*. 2001;167:327–335. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11418667
229. Faili A, Stary A, Delbos F, et al. A backup role of DNA polymerase kappa in Ig gene hypermutation only takes place in the complete absence of DNA polymerase eta. *J Immunol*. 2009;182:6353–6359. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19414788
230. Masuda K, Ouchida R, Hikida M, et al. Absence of DNA polymerase theta results in decreased somatic hypermutation frequency and altered mutation patterns in Ig genes. *DNA Repair (Amst)*. 2006;5:1384–1391. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16890500
231. Zan H, Shima N, Xu Z, et al. The translesion DNA polymerase theta plays a dominant role in immunoglobulin gene somatic hypermutation. *EMBO J*. 2005;24:3757–3769. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16222339
232. Masuda K, Ouchida R, Hikida M, et al. DNA polymerases eta and theta function in the same genetic pathway to generate mutations at A/T during somatic hypermutation of Ig genes. *J Biol Chem*. 2007;282:17387–17394. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17449470
233. Poltoratsky V, Prasad R, Horton JK, Wilson SH. Down-regulation of DNA polymerase beta accompanies somatic hypermutation in human BL2 cell lines. *DNA Repair*. 2007;6:244–253. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17127106
234. Wu X, Stavnezer J. DNA polymerase beta is able to repair breaks in switch regions and plays an inhibitory role during immunoglobulin class switch recombination. *J Exp Med*. 2007;204:1677–1689. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17591858
235. Bachl J, Ertongur I, Jungnickel B. Involvement of Rad18 in somatic hypermutation. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2006;103:12081–1206. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16873544
236. Kleinstein SH, Louzoun Y, Shlomchik MJ. Estimating hypermutation rates from clonal tree data. *J Immunol*. 2003;171:4639–4649. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14568938
237. Shen HM, Michael N, Kim N, Storb U. The TATA binding protein, c-Myc and survivin genes are not somatically hypermutated, while Ig and BCL6 genes are hypermutated in human memory B cells. *Int Immunol*. 2000;12:1085–1093. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10882420
238. Liu M, Duke JL, Richter DJ, et al. Two levels of protection for the B cell genome during somatic hypermutation. *Nature*. 2008;451:841–845. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18273020
239. Picard D, Schaffner W. Unrearranged immunoglobulin lambda variable region is transcribed in kappa-producing myelomas. *EMBO J*. 1984;3:3031–3035. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6098463
240. Weiss S, Wu GE. Somatic point mutations in unrearranged immunoglobulin gene segments encoding the variable region of lambda light chains. *EMBO J*. 1987;6:927–932. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3109891
241. Peters A, Storb U. Somatic hypermutation of immunoglobulin genes is linked to transcription initiation. *Immunity*. 1996;4:57–65. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8574852
242. Longerich S, Tanaka A, Bozek G, Nicolae D, Storb U. The very 5′ end and the constant region of Ig genes are spared from somatic mutation because AID does not access these regions. *J Exp Med*. 2005;202:1443–1454. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16301749
243. Winter DB, Sattar N, Mai JJ, Gearhart PJ. Insertion of 2 kb of bacteriophage DNA between an immunoglobulin promoter and leader exon stops somatic hypermutation in a kappa transgene. *Mol Immunol*. 1997;34:359–366. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9293769
244. Shen HM, Storb U. Activation-induced cytidine deaminase (AID) can target both DNA strands when the DNA is supercoiled. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2004;101:12997–13002. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15328407
245. Ronai D, Iglesias-Ussel MD, Fan M, Li Z, Martin A, Scharff MD. Detection of chromatin-associated single-stranded DNA in regions targeted for somatic hypermutation. *J Exp Med*. 2007;204:181–190. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17227912
246. Fukita Y, Jacobs H, Rajewsky K. Somatic hypermutation in the heavy chain locus correlates with transcription. *Immunity*. 1998;9:105–114. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9697840
247. Bachl J, Carlson C, Gray-Schopfer V, Dessing M, Olsson C. Increased transcription levels induce higher mutation rates in a hypermutating cell line. *J Immunol*. 2001;166:5051–5057. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11290786
248. Tumas-Brundage K, Vora KA, Giusti AM, Manser T. Characterization of the cis-acting elements required for somatic hypermutation of murine antibody V genes using conventional transgenic and transgene homologous recombination approaches. *Semin Immunol*. 1996;8:141–150. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8738913
249. Tanaka A, Shen HM, Ratnam S, Kodgire P, Storb U. Attracting AID to targets of somatic hypermutation. *J Exp Med*. 2010;207:405–415. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20100870
250. Schoetz U, Cervelli M, Wang YD, Fiedler P, Buerstedde JM. E2A expression stimulates Ig hypermutation. *J Immunol*. 2006;177:395–400. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16785535
251. Terauchi A, Hayashi K, Kitamura D, Kozono Y, Motoyama N, Azuma T. A pivotal role for DNase I-sensitive regions 3b and/or 4 in the induction of somatic hypermutation of IgH genes. *J Immunol*. 2001;167:811–820. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11441087
252. Morvan CL, Pinaud E, Decourt C, Cuvillier A, Cogne M. The immunoglobulin heavy-chain locus hs3b and hs4 3′ enhancers are dispensable for VDJ assembly and somatic hypermutation. *Blood*. 2003;102:1421–1427. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12714490
253. Kothapalli N, Norton DD, Fugmann SD. Cutting edge: a cis-acting DNA element targets AID-mediated sequence diversification to the chicken Ig light chain gene locus. *J Immunol*. 2008;180:2019–2023. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18250404
254. Blagodatski A, Batrak V, Schmidl S, et al. A cis-acting diversification activator both necessary and sufficient for AID-mediated hypermutation. *PLoS Genet*. 2009;5:e1000332. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19132090
255. Woo CJ, Martin A, Scharff MD. Induction of somatic hypermutation is associated with modifications in immunoglobulin variable region chromatin. *Immunity*. 2003;19:479–489. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14563313

256. Odegard VH, Kim ST, Anderson SM, Shlomchik MJ, Schatz DG. Histone modifications associated with somatic hypermutation. *Immunity*. 2005;23:101–110. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16039583
257. Borchert GM, Holton NW, Edwards KA, Vogel LA, Larson ED. Histone H2A and H2B are monoubiquitinated at AID-targeted loci. *PLoS One*. 2010;5:e11641. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20661291
258. Shapiro GS, Aviszus K, Murphy J, Wysocki LJ. Evolution of Ig DNA sequence to target specific base positions within codons for somatic hypermutation. *J Immunol*. 2002;168:2302–2306. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11859119
259. Zarrin AA, Tian M, Wang J, Borjeson T, Alt FW. Influence of switch region length on immunoglobulin class switch recombination. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2005;102:2466–2470. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15684074
260. Luby TM, Schrader CE, Stavnezer J, Selsing E. The mu switch region tandem repeats are important, but not required, for antibody class switch recombination. *J Exp Med*. 2001;193:159–168. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11148220
261. Khamlichi AA, Glaudet F, Oruc Z, Denis V, Le Bert M, Cogne M. Immunoglobulin class-switch recombination in mice devoid of any S mu tandem repeat. *Blood*. 2004;103:3828–3836. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14962903
262. Du J, Zhu Y, Shanmugam A, Kenter AL. Analysis of immunoglobulin Sgamma3 recombination breakpoints by PCR: implications for the mechanism of isotype switching. *Nucleic Acids Res*. 1997;25:3066–3073. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9224606
263. Yoshida K, Matsuoka M, Usuda S, Mori A, Ishizaka K, Sakano H. Immunoglobulin switch circular DNA in the mouse infected with Nippostrongylus brasiliensis: evidence for successive class switching from mu to epsilon via gamma 1. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1990;87:7829–7833. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2122447
264. Zhang T, Franklin A, Boboila C, et al. Downstream class switching leads to IgE antibody production by B lymphocytes lacking IgM switch regions. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2010;107:3040–3045. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20133637
265. Reynaud S, Delpy L, Fleury L, Dougier HL, Sirac C, Cogne M. Interallelic class switch recombination contributes significantly to class switching in mouse B cells. *J Immunol*. 2005;174:6176–6183. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15879114
266. Kingzette M, Spieker-Polet H, Yam PC, Zhai SK, Knight KL. Transchromosomal recombination within the Ig heavy chain switch region in B lymphocytes. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1998;95:11840–11845. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9751752
267. Zarrin AA, Del Vecchio C, Tseng E, et al. Antibody class switching mediated by yeast endonuclease-generated DNA breaks. *Science*. 2007;315:377–381. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17170253
268. Allen RC, Armitage RJ, Conley ME, et al. CD40 ligand gene defects responsible for X-linked hyper-IgM syndrome. *Science*. 1993;259:990–993. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7679801
269. Ferrari S, Giliani S, Insalaco A, et al. Mutations of CD40 gene cause an autosomal recessive form of immunodeficiency with hyper IgM. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2001;98:12614–12619. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11675497
270. Bergqvist P, Stensson A, Lycke NY, Bemark M. T cell-independent IgA class switch recombination is restricted to the GALT and occurs prior to manifest germinal center formation. *J Immunol*. 2010;184:3545–3553. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20207993
271. Hodgkin PD, Lee JH, Lyons AB. B cell differentiation and isotype switching is related to division cycle number. *J Exp Med*. 1996;184:277–281. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8691143
272. McCall MN, Hodgkin PD. Switch recombination and germ-line transcription are division-regulated events in B lymphocytes. *Biochim Biophys Acta*. 1999;1447:43–50. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10500242
273. Rush JS, Liu M, Odegard VH, Unniraman S, Schatz DG. Expression of activation-induced cytidine deaminase is regulated by cell division, providing a mechanistic basis for division-linked class switch recombination. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2005;102:13242–13247. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16141332
274. Siepmann K, Wohlleben G, Gray D. CD40-mediated regulation of interleukin-4 signaling pathways in B lymphocytes. *Eur J Immunol*. 1996;26:1544–1552. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8766559
275. Grammer AC, McFarland RD, Heaney J, Darnell BF, Lipsky PE. Expression, regulation, and function of B cell-expressed CD154 in germinal centers. *J Immunol*. 1999;163:4150–4159. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10510350
276. Ozcan E, Rauter I, Garibyan L, Dillon SR, Geha RS. Toll-like receptor 9, transmembrane activator and calcium-modulating cyclophilin ligand interactor, and CD40 synergize in causing B-cell activation. *J Allergy Clin Immunol*. 2011;128:601–609. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21741080
277. Mao CS, Stavnezer J. Differential regulation of mouse germline Ig gamma 1 and epsilon promoters by IL-4 and CD40. *J Immunol*. 2001;167:1522–1534. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11466373
278. Stavnezer J. Antibody class switching. *Adv Immunol*. 1996;61:79–146. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8834495
279. Qiu G, Harriman GR, Stavnezer J. Ialpha exon-replacement mice synthesize a spliced HPRT-C(alpha) transcript which may explain their ability to switch to IgA. Inhibition of switching to IgG in these mice. *Int Immunol*. 1999;11:37–46. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10050672
280. Hein K, Lorenz MG, Siebenkotten G, Petry K, Christine R, Radbruch A. Processing of switch transcripts is required for targeting of antibody class switch recombination. *J Exp Med*. 1998;188:2369–2374. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9858523
281. Pinaud E, Khamlichi AA, Le Morvan C, et al. Localization of the 3¢ IgH locus elements that effect long-distance regulation of class switch recombination. *Immunity*. 2001;15:187–199. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11520455
282. Adams K, Ackerly H, Cunningham K, Dunnick W. A DNase I hypersensitive site near the murine gamma1 switch region contributes to insertion site independence of transgenes and modulates the amount of transcripts induced by CD40 ligation. *Int Immunol*. 2000;12:1705–1713. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11099310
283. Wuerffel R, Wang L, Grigera F, et al. S-S synapsis during class switch recombination is promoted by distantly located transcriptional elements and activation-induced deaminase. *Immunity*. 2007;27:711–722. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17980632
284. Chatterjee S, Ju Z, Hassan R, Volpi SA, Emelyanov AV, Birshtein BK. Dynamic changes in binding of immunoglobulin heavy chain 3′ regulatory region to protein factors during class switching. *J Biol Chem*. 2011;286:29303–29312. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21685395
285. Li Z, Luo Z, Scharff MD. Differential regulation of histone acetylation and generation of mutations in switch regions is associated with Ig class switching. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2004;101:15428–15433. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15486086
286. Wang L, Wuerffel R, Feldman S, Khamlichi AA, Kenter AL. S region sequence, RNA polymerase II, and histone modifications create chromatin accessibility during class switch recombination. *J Exp Med*. 2009;206:1817–1830. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19596805
287. Daniel JA, Santos MA, Wang Z, et al. PTIP promotes chromatin changes critical for immunoglobulin class switch recombination. *Science*. 2010;329:917–923. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20671152
288. Schwab KR, Patel SR, Dressler GR. Role of PTIP in class switch recombination and long-range chromatin interactions at the immunoglobulin heavy chain locus. *Mol Cell Biol*. 2011;31:1503–1511. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21282469
289. Stanlie A, Aida M, Muramatsu M, Honjo T, Begum NA. Histone3 lysine4 trimethylation regulated by the facilitates chromatin transcription complex is critical for DNA cleavage in class switch recombination. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2010;107:22190–22195. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21139053
290. Kuang FL, Luo Z, Scharff MD. H3 trimethyl K9 and H3 acetyl K9 chromatin modifications are associated with class switch recombination. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2009;106:5288–5293. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19276123
291. Chowdhury M, Forouhi O, Dayal S, et al. Analysis of intergenic transcription and histone modification across the human immunoglob-

ulin heavy-chain locus. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2008;105:15872–15877.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18836073
292. Jeevan-Raj BP, Robert I, Heyer V, et al. Epigenetic tethering of AID to the donor switch region during immunoglobulin class switch recombination. *J Exp Med*. 2011;208:1649–1660.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21746811
293. Xue K, Rada C, Neuberger MS. The in vivo pattern of AID targeting to immunoglobulin switch regions deduced from mutation spectra in msh2-/- ung-/- mice. *J Exp Med*. 2006;203:2085–2094.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16894013
294. Daniels GA, Lieber MR. RNA:DNA complex formation upon transcription of immunoglobulin switch regions: implications for the mechanism and regulation of class switch recombination. *Nucleic Acids Res*. 1995;23:5006–5011.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8559658
295. Yu K, Chedin F, Hsieh CL, Wilson TE, Lieber MR. R-loops at immunoglobulin class switch regions in the chromosomes of stimulated B cells. *Nat Immunol*. 2003;4:442–451.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12679812
296. Huang FT, Yu K, Hsieh CL, Lieber MR. Downstream boundary of chromosomal R-loops at murine switch regions: implications for the mechanism of class switch recombination. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2006;103:5030–5035.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16547142
297. Rajagopal D, Maul RW, Ghosh A, et al. Immunoglobulin switch mu sequence causes RNA polymerase II accumulation and reduces dA hypermutation. *J Exp Med*. 2009;206:1237–1244.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19433618
298. Canugovi C, Samaranayake M, Bhagwat AS. Transcriptional pausing and stalling causes multiple clustered mutations by human activation-induced deaminase. *FASEB J*. 2009;23:34–44.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18772346
299. Pavri R, Gazumyan A, Jankovic M, et al. Activation-induced cytidine deaminase targets DNA at sites of RNA polymerase II stalling by interaction with Spt5. *Cell*. 2010;143:122–133.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20887897
300. Margaritis T, Holstege FC. Poised RNA polymerase II gives pause for thought. *Cell*. 2008;133:581–584.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18485867
301. Basu U, Meng FL, Keim C, et al. The RNA exosome targets the AID cytidine deaminase to both strands of transcribed duplex DNA substrates. *Cell*. 2011;144:353–363.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21255825
302. Shinkura R, Tian M, Smith M, Chua K, Fujiwara Y, Alt FW. The influence of transcriptional orientation on endogenous switch region function. *Nat Immunol*. 2003;4:435–441.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12679811
303. Han L, Masani S, Yu K. Overlapping activation-induced cytidine deaminase hotspot motifs in Ig class-switch recombination. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2011;108:11584–11589.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21709240
304. Dunnick W, Hertz GZ, Scappino L, Gritzmacher C. DNA sequences at immunoglobulin switch region recombination sites. *Nucleic Acids Res*. 1993;21:365–372. Errata *Nucleic Acids Res*. 1993;21(9):2285.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8441648
305. Chen X, Kinoshita K, Honjo T. Variable deletion and duplication at recombination junction ends: implication for staggered double-strand cleavage in class-switch recombination. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2001;98:13860–13865.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11717442
306. Rush JS, Fugmann SD, Schatz DG. Staggered AID-dependent DNA double strand breaks are the predominant DNA lesions targeted to S mu in Ig class switch recombination. *Int Immunol*. 2004;16:549–557.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15039385
307. Catalan N, Selz F, Imai K, Revy P, Fischer A, Durandy A. The block in immunoglobulin class switch recombination caused by activation-induced cytidine deaminase deficiency occurs prior to the generation of DNA double strand breaks in switch mu region. *J Immunol*. 2003;171:2504–2509.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12928399
308. Schrader CE, Linehan EK, Mochegova SN, Woodland RT, Stavnezer J. Inducible DNA breaks in Ig S regions are dependent on AID and UNG. *J Exp Med*. 2005;202:561–568.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16103411
309. Petersen S, Casellas R, Reina-San-Martin B, et al. AID is required to initiate Nbs1/gamma-H2AX focus formation and mutations at sites of class switching. *Nature*. 2001;414:660–665.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11740565
310. Schrader CE, Guikema JE, Linehan EK, Selsing E, Stavnezer J. Activation-induced cytidine deaminase-dependent DNA breaks in class switch recombination occur during G1 phase of the cell cycle and depend upon mismatch repair. *J Immunol*. 2007;179:6064–6071.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17947680
311. Robbiani DF, Bunting S, Feldhahn N, et al. AID produces DNA double-strand breaks in non-Ig genes and mature B cell lympho-mas with reciprocal chromosome translocations. *Mol Cell*. 2009;36:631–641.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19941823
312. Staszewski O, Baker RE, Ucher AJ, Martier R, Stavnezer J, Guikema JE. Activation-induced cytidine deaminase induces reproducible DNA breaks at many non-Ig Loci in activated B cells. *Mol Cell*. 2011;41:232–242.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21255732
313. Hasham MG, Donghia NM, Coffey E, et al. Widespread genomic breaks generated by activation-induced cytidine deaminase are prevented by homologous recombination. *Nat Immunol*. 2010;11:820–826.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20657597
314. Imai K, Slupphaug G, Lee WI, et al. Human uracil-DNA glycosylase deficiency associated with profoundly impaired immunoglobulin class-switch recombination. *Nat Immunol*. 2003;4:1023–1028.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12958596
315. Schrader CE, Guikema JE, Wu X, Stavnezer J. The roles of APE1, APE2, DNA polymerase beta and mismatch repair in creating S region DNA breaks during antibody class switch. *Philos Trans R Soc Lon B Biol Sci*. 2009;364:645–652.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19010771
316. Rada C, Di Noia JM, Neuberger MS. Mismatch recognition and uracil excision provide complementary paths to both Ig switching and the A/T-focused phase of somatic mutation. *Mol Cell*. 2004;16:163–171.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15494304
317. Ranjit S, Khair L, Linehan EK, et al. AID binds cooperatively with UNG and Msh2-Msh6 to Ig switch regions dependent upon the AID C terminus. *J Immunol*. 2011;187:2464–2475.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21804017
318. Stavnezer J, Schrader CE. Mismatch repair converts AID-instigated nicks to double-strand breaks for antibody class-switch recombination. *Trends Genet*. 2006;22:23–28.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16309779
319. Bardwell PD, Woo CJ, Wei K, et al. Altered somatic hypermutation and reduced class-switch recombination in exonuclease 1-mutant mice. *Nat Immunol*. 2004;5:224–229.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14716311
320. Boboila C, Yan C, Wesemann DR, et al. Alternative end-joining catalyzes class switch recombination in the absence of both Ku70 and DNA ligase 4. *J Exp Med*. 2010;207:417–427.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20142431
321. Li G, Alt FW, Cheng HL, et al. Lymphocyte-specific compensation for XLF/cernunnos end-joining functions in V(D)J recombination. *Mol Cell*. 2008;31:631–640.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18775323
322. Yan CT, Boboila C, Souza EK, et al. IgH class switching and trans-locations use a robust non-classical end-joining pathway. *Nature*. 2007;449:478–482.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17713479
323. Soulas-Sprauel P, Le Guyader G, Rivera-Munoz P, et al. Role for DNA repair factor XRCC4 in immunoglobulin class switch recombination. *J Exp Med*. 2007;204:1717–1727.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17606631
324. Boboila C, Jankovic M, Yan CT, et al. Alternative end-joining catalyzes robust IgH locus deletions and translocations in the combined absence of ligase 4 and Ku70. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2010;107:3034–3039.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20133803
325. Lee-Theilen M, Matthews AJ, Kelly D, Zheng S, Chaudhuri J. CtIP promotes microhomology-mediated alternative end joining during class-switch recombination. *Nat Struct Mol Biol*. 2011;18:75–79.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21131982
326. Wang M, Wu W, Rosidi B, Zhang L, Wang H, Iliakis G. PARP-1 and Ku compete for repair of DNA double strand breaks by distinct NHEJ pathways. *Nucleic Acids Res*. 2006;34:6170–6182.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17088286

327. Robert I, Dantzer F, Reina-San-Martin B. Parp1 facilitates alternative NHEJ, whereas Parp2 suppresses IgH/c-myc translocations during immunoglobulin class switch recombination. *J Exp Med*. 2009;206: 1047–1056.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19364882
328. Saribasak H, Maul RW, Cao Z, et al. XRCC1 suppresses somatic hypermutation and promotes alternative nonhomologous end joining in Igh genes. *J Exp Med*. 2011;208:2209–2216.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21967769
329. Rooney S, Alt FW, Sekiguchi J, Manis JP. Artemis-independent functions of DNA-dependent protein kinase in Ig heavy chain class switch recombination and development. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2005;102: 2471–2475.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15699324
330. Franco S, Murphy MM, Li G, Borjeson T, Boboila C, Alt FW. DNA-PKcs and Artemis function in the end-joining phase of immuno-globulin heavy chain class switch recombination. *J Exp Med*. 2008;205:557–564.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18316419
331. Du L, van der Burg M, Popov SW, et al. Involvement of Artemis in nonhomologous end-joining during immunoglobulin class switch recombination. *J Exp Med*. 2008;205:3031–3040.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19075292
332. Manis JP, Dudley D, Kaylor L, Alt FW. IgH class switch recombination to IgG1 in DNA-PKcs-deficient B cells. *Immunity*. 2002;16:607–617.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11970883
333. Kiefer K, Oshinsky J, Kim J, Nakajima PB, Bosma GC, Bosma MJ. The catalytic subunit of DNA-protein kinase (DNA-PKcs) is not required for Ig class-switch recombination. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2007;104: 2843–2848.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17296939
334. Polo SE, Jackson SP. Dynamics of DNA damage response proteins at DNA breaks: a focus on protein modifications. *Genes Dev*. 2011;25: 409–433.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21363960
335. Reina-San-Martin B, Nussenzweig MC, Nussenzweig A, Difilippantonio S. Genomic instability, endoreduplication, and diminished Ig class-switch recombination in B cells lacking Nbs1. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2005;102:1590–1595.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15668392
336. Kracker S, Bergmann Y, Demuth I, et al. Nibrin functions in Ig class-switch recombination. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2005;102:1584–1589.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15668383
337. Dinkelmann M, Spehalski E, Stoneham T, et al. Multiple functions of MRN in end-joining pathways during isotype class switching. *Nat Struct Mol Biol*. 2009;16:808–813.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19633670
338. Lahdesmaki A, Taylor AM, Chrzanowska KH, Pan-Hammarstrom Q. Delineation of the role of the Mre11 complex in class switch recombination. *J Biol Chem*. 2004;279:16479–16487.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14747472
339. Lumsden JM, McCarty T, Petiniot LK, et al. Immunoglobulin class switch recombination is impaired in Atm-deficient mice. *J Exp Med*. 2004;200:1111–1121.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15504820
340. Reina-San-Martin B, Chen HT, Nussenzweig A, Nussenzweig MC. ATM is required for efficient recombination between immunoglobulin switch regions. *J Exp Med*. 2004;200:1103–1110.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15520243
341. Reina-San-Martin B, Difilippantonio S, Hanitsch L, Masilamani RF, Nussenzweig A, Nussenzweig MC. H2AX is required for recombination between immunoglobulin switch regions but not for intra-switch region recombination or somatic hypermutation. *J Exp Med*. 2003;197: 1767–1778.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12810694
342. Ramachandran S, Chahwan R, Nepal RM, et al. The RNF8/RNF168 ubiquitin ligase cascade facilitates class switch recombination. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2010;107:809–814.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20080757
343. Stewart GS, Panier S, Townsend K, et al. The RIDDLE syndrome protein mediates a ubiquitin-dependent signaling cascade at sites of DNA damage. *Cell*. 2009;136:420–434.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19203578
344. Reina-San-Martin B, Chen J, Nussenzweig A, Nussenzweig MC. Enhanced intra-switch region recombination during immunoglobulin class switch recombination in 53BP1−/− B cells. *Eur J Immunol*. 2007; 37:235–239.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17183606
345. Nowak U, Matthews AJ, Zheng S, Chaudhuri J. The splicing regulator PTBP2 interacts with the cytidine deaminase AID and promotes binding of AID to switch-region DNA. *Nat Immunol*. 2011;12:160–166.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21186367
346. Xu Z, Fulop Z, Wu G, Pone et al. 14-3-3 adaptor proteins recruit AID to 5′-AGCT-3′-rich switch regions for class switch recombination. *Nat Struct Mol Biol*. 2010;17:1124–1135.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20729863
347. Vuong BQ, Lee M, Kabir S, et al. Specific recruitment of protein kinase A to the immunoglobulin locus regulates class-switch recombination. *Nat Immunol*. 2009;10:420–426.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19234474
348. Holliger P, Hudson PJ. Engineered antibody fragments and the rise of single domains. *Nat Biotechnol*. 2005;23:1126–1136.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16151406
349. Chames P, Van Regenmortel M, Weiss E, Baty D. Therapeutic antibodies: successes, limitations and hopes for the future. *Br J Pharmacol*. 2009;157:220–233.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19459844
350. Nieri P, Donadio E, Rossi S, AdinolfiB, Podesta A. Antibodies for therapeutic uses and the evolution of biotechniques. *Curr Med Chem*. 2009;16:753–779.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19199935
351. Pande J, Szewczyk MM, Grover AK. Phage display: concept, innovations, applications and future. *Biotechnol Adv*. 2010;28:849–858.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20659548
352. Schmidt EV, Pattengale PK, Weir L, Leder P. Transgenic mice bearing the human c-myc gene activated by a4n immunoglobulin enhancer: a pre-B-cell lymphoma model. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1988;85:6047–6051.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3261863
353. Sarris A, Ford R. Recent advances in the molecular pathogenesis of lymphomas. *Curr Opin Oncol*. 1999;11:351–363.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10505771
354. Bende RJ, Smit LA, van Noesel CJ. Molecular pathways in follicular lymphoma. *Leukemia*. 2007;21:18–29.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17039231
355. Garcia-Castillo H, Barros-Nunez P. Detection of clonal immunoglobulin and T-cell receptor gene recombination in hematological malignancies: monitoring minimal residual disease. *Cardiovasc Hematol Disord Drug Targets*. 2009;9:124–135.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19519371
356. Chesi M, Kuehl WM, Bergsagel PL. Recurrent immunoglobulin gene translocations identify distinct molecular subtypes of myeloma. *Ann Oncol*. 2000;11(suppl 1):131–135.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10707795

CHAPTER 7

Antigen–Antibody Interactions and Monoclonal Antibodies

Jay A. Berzofsky • Ira J. Berkower

INTRODUCTION

The basic principles of antigen–antibody interaction are those of any bimolecular reaction. Moreover, the binding of antigen by antibody can, in general, be described by the same theories and studied by the same experimental approaches as the binding of a hormone by its receptor, of a substrate by enzyme, or of oxygen by hemoglobin. There are several major differences, however, between antigen–antibody interactions and these other situations. First, unlike most enzymes and many hormone-binding systems, antibodies do not irreversibly alter the antigen they bind. Thus, the reactions are, at least in principle, always reversible. Second, antibodies can be raised, by design of the investigator, with specificity for almost any substance known. In each case, one can find antibodies with affinities as high as and specificities as great as those of enzymes for their substrates and receptors for their hormones. The interaction of antibody with antigen can thus be taken as a prototype for interactions of macromolecules with ligands in general. In addition, these same features of reversibility and availability of a wide variety of specificities have made antibodies invaluable reagents for identifying, quantitating, and purifying a growing number of substances of biologic and medical importance.

One other feature of antibodies that in the past proved to be a difficulty in studying and using them, compared to, say, enzymes, is their enormous heterogeneity. Even "purified" antibodies from an immune antiserum, all specific for the same substance and sharing the same overall immunoglobulin (Ig) structure, will be a heterogeneous mixture of molecules of different subclass, different affinity, and different fine specificity and ability to discriminate among cross-reacting antigens. The advent of hybridoma monoclonal antibodies[1–3] has made available a source of homogeneous antibodies to almost anything to which antisera can be raised. Nevertheless, heterogeneous antisera are still in widespread use and even have advantages for certain purposes, such as precipitation reactions. Therefore, it is critical to keep in mind throughout this chapter, and indeed much of the volume, that the principles derived for the interaction of one antibody with one antigen must be modified and extended to cover the case of heterogeneous components in the reaction.

In this chapter, we examine the theoretical principles necessary for analyzing, in a quantitative manner, the interaction of antibody with antigen and the experimental techniques that have been developed to study these interactions as well as to make use of antibodies as quantitative reagents. Furthermore, we discuss the derivation, use, and properties of monoclonal antibodies.

THERMODYNAMICS AND KINETICS

The Thermodynamics of Affinity

The basic thermodynamic principles of antigen–antibody interactions, as we indicated previously, are the same as those for any reversible bimolecular binding reaction. We review these as they apply to this particular immunologic reaction.

Chemical Equilibrium in Solution

For this purpose, let S = antibody binding sites, L = ligand (antigen) sites, and SL = the complex of the two. Then for the reaction

$$S + L \rightleftharpoons SL \tag{1}$$

the mass action law states

$$K_A = \frac{[SL]}{[S][L]} \tag{2}$$

where K_A = association constant (or affinity) and square brackets = molar concentration of the reactants enclosed. The import of this equation is that for any given set of conditions such as temperature, pH, and salt concentration, the ratio of the concentration of the complex to the product of the concentrations of the reactants at equilibrium is always constant. Thus, changing the concentration of either antibody or ligand will invariably change the concentration of the complex, provided neither reactant is limiting, that is, neither has already been saturated, and provided sufficient time is allowed to reach a new state of equilibrium. Moreover, because the concentrations of antibody and ligand appear in this equation in a completely symmetrical fashion, doubling either the antibody concentration or the antigen concentration results in a doubling of the concentration of the antigen–antibody complex, provided the other reactant is in sufficient excess. This proviso, an echo of the one just discussed, is inherent in the fact that [S] and [L] refer to the concentrations of free S and free L, respectively, in solution, not the total concentration, which would include that of the complex. Thus, if L is not in great excess, doubling [S] results in a decrease in [L] as some of it is consumed in the complex, so the net result is less than a doubling of [SL]. Similarly, halving the volume results in a doubling of the total concentration of both antibody and

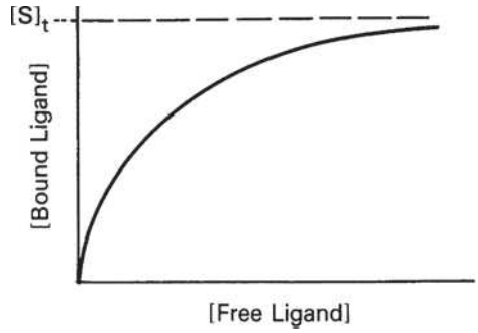


FIG. 7.1. Schematic Plot of Bound Ligand Concentration as a Function of Free Ligand Concentration at a Constant Total Concentration of Antibody-Combining Sites, $[S]_t$. The curve asymptotically approaches a plateau at which [bound ligand] = $[S]_t$.

ligand. If the fraction of both reactants tied up in the complex is negligibly small (as might be the case for low-affinity binding), the concentration of the complex quadruples. However, in most practical cases, the concentration of complex is a significant fraction of the total concentration of antigen or antibody or both, so the net result is an increase in the concentration of complex but by a factor of <4. The other important, perhaps obvious, but often forgotten, principle to be gleaned from this example is that because it is concentration, not amount, of each reactant that enters into the mass action law (Equation 2), putting the same amount of antigen and antibody in a smaller volume will increase the amount of complex formed, and diluting them in a larger volume will greatly decrease the amount of complex formed. Moreover, these changes go approximately as the square of the volume, so volumes are critical in the design of an experiment.

The effect of increasing free ligand concentration [L], at constant total antibody concentration, on the concentration of complex, [SL], is illustrated in Figure 7.1. The mass action law (Equation 2) can be rewritten as

$$[SL] = K_A[S][L] = K_A([S]_t - [SL])[L] \qquad (3)$$

or

$$[SL] = \frac{K_A[S]_t[L]}{(1 + K_A[L])} \qquad (3')$$

where $[S]_t$ = total antibody site concentration; that is, [S] + [SL]. Initially, when the complex [SL] is a negligible fraction of the total antibody $[S]_t$, the concentration of complex increases nearly linearly with increasing ligand. However, as a larger fraction of antibody is consumed, the slope tapers off and the concentration of complex, [SL], asymptotically approaches a plateau value of $[S]_t$ as all the antibody becomes saturated. Thus, the concentration of antibody-binding sites can be determined from such a saturation binding curve (see Fig. 7.1), taking the concentration of (radioactively or otherwise labeled) ligand bound at saturation as a measure of the concentration of antibody sites.* This measurement is sometimes referred to as antigen-binding capacity.

*This point is strictly true only for univalent ligands, but most multivalent ligands behave as effectively univalent at large antigen excess, where this plateau is measured.

The total concentration of ligand at which the antibody begins to saturate is a function not only of the antibody concentration but also of the association constant, K_A, also called the affinity. This constant has units of molar (M^{-1}) or L/mol, if all the concentrations in Equation 2 are molar. Thus the product $K_A[L]$ is unitless. It is the value of this product relative to 1 that determines how saturated the antibody is, as can be seen from Equation 3′. For example, an antibody with an affinity of 10^7 M^{-1} will not be saturated if the ligand concentration is 10^{-8} M (product $K_A[L] = 0.1$) even if the total amount of ligand is in great excess over the total amount of antibody. From Equation 3′ the fraction of antibody occupied would be only 0.1/1.1, or about 9%, in this example. These aspects of affinity and the methods for measuring affinity are analyzed in greater detail in the next section.

Free Energy

Regarding thermodynamics, the affinity, K_A, is also the central quantity because it is directly related to the free energy, ΔF, of the reaction by the equations

$$\Delta F° = -RT \ln K_A \qquad (4)$$

$$K_A = e^{-\Delta F°/RT} \qquad (4')$$

where R = so-called gas constant (1.98717 cal/°K·mol), T = absolute temperature (in degrees Kelvin), ln = natural logarithm, and e = base of the natural logarithms. The minus sign is introduced because of the convention that a negative change in free energy corresponds to positive binding. The ΔF° is the standard free-energy change defined as the ΔF for 1 mol antigen + 1 mol antibody sites combining to form 1 mol of complex at unit concentration.

It is also instructive to note an apparent discrepancy in Equations 4 and 4′. As defined in Equation 2, K_A has dimensions of M^{-1} (ie, L/mol), whereas in Equation 4′, it is dimensionless. The reason is that for Equation 4′ to hold strictly, K_A must be expressed in terms of mole fractions rather than concentrations. The mole fraction of a solute is the ratio of moles of that solute to the total number of moles of all components in the solution. Because water (55 M) is by far the predominant component of most aqueous solutions, for practical purposes, one can convert K_A into a unitless ratio of mole fractions by dividing all concentrations in Equation 2 by 55 M. This transformation makes Equation 4′ strictly correct, but it introduces an additional term, −RT ln 55 (corresponding to the entropy of dilution), into Equation 4. This constant term cancels out when one is subtracting ΔF values but not when one discusses ratios of ΔF values.

An important rule of thumb can be extracted from these equations. Because ln 10 = 2.303, a 10-fold increase in affinity of binding corresponds to a free-energy change ΔF of only 1.42 kcal/mol at 37°C (310.15°K). (The corresponding values for 25 and 4°C are 1.36 and 1.27 kcal/mol, respectively.) This is less than one-third the energy of a single hydrogen bond (about 4.5 kcal/mol). Looked at another way, a very high affinity of 10^{10} M^{-1} corresponds to a ΔF of only 14.2 kcal/mol, approximately the bonding energy of three hydrogen bonds. (Of course, because hydrogen bonds with water are broken during the formation of hydrogen bonds between

antigen and antibody, the net energy per hydrogen bond is closer to 1 kcal/mol.) It is apparent from this example that of the many interactions (hydrophobic and ionic as well as hydrogen bonding) that occur between the contact residues in an antibody-combining site and the contacting residues of an antigen (such as a protein), almost as many are repulsive as attractive. It is this small difference of a few kilocalories between much larger numbers corresponding to the total of attractive and the total of repulsive interactions that leads to net "high-affinity" binding. If ΔF were any larger, binding reactions would be of such high affinity as to be essentially irreversible. Viewed in this way, it is not surprising that a small modification of the antigen can result in an enormous change in affinity. A single hydrogen bond can change the affinity manyfold, and similar arguments apply to hydrophobic interactions and other forms of bonding. This concept is important when we discuss specificity and antigen structure later.

Effects of Temperature, pH, Salt Concentration, and Conformational Flexibility

It was mentioned previously that K_A is constant for any given set of conditions such as temperature, pH, and salt concentration. However, it varies with each of these conditions. We have already seen that the conversion of free energy to affinity depends on temperature. However, the free energy itself is also a function of temperature

$$\Delta F^\circ = \Delta H^\circ - T\,\Delta S^\circ \qquad (5)$$

where ΔH = change in enthalpy (the heat of the reaction),[†] ΔS = entropy (a term related to the change in disorder produced by the reaction),[2] and T = absolute temperature (in degrees Kelvin).

It can be shown that the association constant K_A will thus vary with temperature as follows:

$$\frac{d \ln K_A}{dT} = \frac{\Delta H^\circ}{RT^2} \qquad (6)$$

or equivalently,

$$\frac{d \ln K_A}{d(1/T)} = \frac{-\Delta H^\circ}{R} \qquad (6')$$

The derivation of these equations is beyond the scope of this book.[4] However, the practical implications are as follows. First, one can determine the standard ΔH° of the reaction from the slope of a plot of ln K_A versus 1/T. Second, for an interaction that is primarily exothermic (ie, driven by a large negative ΔH, such as the formation of hydrogen bonds and polar bonds), the affinity decreases with increasing temperature. Thus many antigen–antibody interactions have a higher affinity at 4°C than at 25°C or 37°C, so maximum binding for a given set of concentrations can be achieved in the cold. In contrast, apolar or hydrophobic interactions are driven largely by the entropy term T ΔS, and ΔH° is near zero. In this case, there is little effect of temperature on the affinity.

As for the effects of pH and salt concentration (or ionic strength) on the affinity, these vary depending on the nature of the interacting groups. Most antigen–antibody reactions are studied near neutral pH and at physiologic salt concentrations (0.15 M NaCl). If the interaction is dominated by ionic interactions, high salt concentration lowers the affinity.

Conformational flexibility of an antigen can also affect the affinity by affecting the entropy term in Equation 5. An outstanding example comes from the thermodynamics of binding of a series of broadly neutralizing monoclonal antibodies to the human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) envelope protein gp120. The energetics of binding between HIV gp120 and its cellular receptor cluster of differentiation (CD)4[5] or to a panel of monoclonal antibodies[6] has been studied in detail. The results provide insight into the ways protein flexibility can help the virus to evade antibody immunity. They may also explain part of the difficulty in eliciting antibodies of this type when immunizing with the native protein.

GP120 is a glycoprotein that exhibits at least two conformational states: one exists on the virus, and it changes to the other when it binds the CD4 receptor on the cell surface. Monoclonal antibodies F105 and b12 bind residues within the CD4 binding site on gp120 while monoclonal 2G12 binds the opposite surface. The CD4 binding site defines a neutralizing surface that is conserved among a broad range of HIV isolates.

As shown in Table 7.1, CD4 and each antibody demonstrated a strongly negative ΔF, corresponding to high affinity binding. However, as shown by microcalorimetry, they arrived at the affinity in different ways. The CD4 and F105 have a strong negative ΔH of binding, but they also have a large negative entropy due to the conformational change required, as shown by strongly positive values for –TΔS. This entropy effect greatly reduces the overall ΔF of binding, so they depend on a very large negative ΔH to bind. In contrast, monoclonal b12 has moderate levels of both ΔH and –TΔS, resulting in a nearly identical ΔF. Monoclonal 2G12 binds gp120 with a less favorable ΔH but no entropy cost.

The two discrete conformations of gp120 may be called the open and closed forms. The excursion between these two conformations affects the entropy of binding. CD4 and F105 only bind the open form, which reduces randomness and creates an entropy barrier. Monoclonal b12 is less dependent on one conformation, so it binds with less entropy cost, and 2G12 is indifferent to the two forms, so it has no entropy effect at all.

The strong entropy effect observed for these monoclonals may illustrate one way for the virus to evade antibody binding, through a mechanism called conformational masking.

TABLE 7.1 Energetics of Antibody Binding to gp120 Core Structure

Ligand	ΔF	ΔH	–TΔS
CD4	–10.4	–48.4	38.2
F105	–11.4	–30.0	18.6
b12	–12.3	–18.0	5.7
2G12	–7.8	–6.2	–1.6

CD, cluster of differentiation. From Kwong, et al.[8]

[†]For a more complete description of these concepts, see a physical chemistry text such as Moore.[4]

The randomness of gp120, as found on the virus, means that it is rarely in the open conformation, making it difficult for most antibodies such as F105 to bind. Only the rare antibody that is b12-like can bind multiple forms and eventually pull gp120 into its most favorable conformation.

The same effect may explain the difficulty in eliciting antibodies to this site using native gp120. If it is rarely in the open form, it will be unable to trigger B cells to make antibodies that require this form, and it will deliver only a weak antigenic stimulus to those that bind partially to different conformations, such as b12. These considerations suggest that a more favorable vaccine antigen could be made if gp120 could be anchored in the open conformation, so it could stimulate B cells to make antibodies that require this form. The hallmark of this structure would be its ability to bind F105 and b12 with a good ΔH and reduced values of $-T\Delta S$.

Kinetics of Antigen–Antibody Reactions

A fundamental connection between the thermodynamics and kinetics of antigen–antibody binding is expressed by the relationship

$$K_A = \frac{k_1}{k_{-1}} \tag{7}$$

where k_1 and k_{-1} are the rate constants for the forward (association) and backward (dissociation) reactions.

The forward reaction is determined largely by diffusion rates (theoretical upper limit 10^9 L/mol/sec) and by the probability that a collision will result in binding, that is, largely the probability that both the antigen and the antibody will be oriented in the right way to produce a good fit as well as the activation energy for binding. The diffusive rate constant can be shown[7] to be approximated by the Smoluchowski equation

$$k_{dl} = 4\pi a D(6 \times 10^{20}) \tag{7a}$$

where a = sum of the radii in centimeters of the two reactants, D = sum of the diffusion constants in cm^2/sec for the individual reactants, and the constant 6×10^{20} is necessary to convert the units to $M^{-1} \cdot sec^{-1}$. For example, if $a = 10^{-6}$ cm and $D = 10^{-7}$ cm^2/sec, then $k_{dl} \approx 7.5 \times 10^8$ $M^{-1} \cdot sec^{-1}$. Association rates will generally be slower for large protein antigens than for small haptens. This observation may be due to the smaller value of D, to the orientational effects in the collision, and to other nondiffusional aspects of protein–protein interactions. Therefore, association rates for protein antigens are more frequently on the order of 10^5 to 10^6 $M^{-1} \cdot sec^{-1}$ (see following discussion). However, this observation can also be partly understood from diffusion-limited rates alone. If the radii of hypothetically spherical reactants are r_1 and r_2, then in Equation 7a, $a = r_1 + r_2$, whereas D is proportional to $1/r_1 + 1/r_2$. The diffusive rate constant is therefore proportional to

$$(r_1 + r_2)\left(\frac{1}{r_1} + \frac{1}{r_2}\right) = \frac{(r_1 + r_2)^2}{r_1 r_2} \tag{7b}$$

From this result, it can be seen that if $r_1 = r_2 = r$, then r cancels out and the whole term in Equation 7b is simply equal to 4. Thus, for the interaction between two molecules of equal size, the diffusive rate constant is the same regardless of whether those molecules are large or small.[8] However, if one molecule is large and the other small, the rate is greater than if both molecules are large. This difference occurs because reducing the radius r_1 while keeping r_2 constant (and larger than r_1) has a greater effect on increasing the diffusion constant term D, proportional to $(1/r_1 + 1/r_2)$, in which the smaller radius produces the larger term than it has on the term a, which is still dominated by the larger radius r_2. For example, if $r_2 = r$ as shown, but $r_1 = 0.1r$, then the numerator in Equation 7b is only reduced from $4r^2$ to $1.21r^2$, whereas the denominator is reduced from $1r^2$ to $0.1r^2$. Thus, the ratio is increased from 4 to 12.1. Viewed another way, the greater diffusive mobility of the small hapten outweighs its diminished target area relative to a large protein antigen because the larger target area of the antibody is available to both.

The dissociation rate (or "off rate") k_{-1} is determined by the strength of the bonds (as it affects the activation energy barriers for dissociation) and the thermal energy kT (where k is Boltzmann constant), which provides the energy to surmount this barrier. The activation energy for dissociation is the difference in energy between the starting state and the transition state of highest energy to which the system must be raised before dissociation can occur.

As pointed out by Eisen,[9] if one compares a series of related antigens, of similar size and other physical properties, for binding to an antibody, the association rates are all very similar. The differences in affinity largely correspond to the differences in dissociation rates.

A good example is that of antibodies to the protein antigen staphylococcal nuclease.[10] Antibodies to native nuclease were fractionated on affinity columns of peptide fragments to isolate a fraction specific for residues 99 through 126. The antibodies had an affinity of 8.3×10^8 M^{-1} for the native antigen and an association rate constant, k_{on}, of 4.1×10^5 $M^{-1} \cdot sec^{-1}$. This k_{on} was several orders of magnitude lower than had been observed for small haptens,[11] as discussed previously. A value of k_{off} of 4.9×10^{-4} sec^{-1} was calculated using these results in Equation 7. This is a first-order rate constant from which one can calculate a halftime for dissociation (based on $t_{1/2} = \ln 2/k_{off}$) of 23 minutes. These rates are probably typical for high-affinity ($K_A \approx 10^9$ M^{-1}) antibodies to small protein antigens such as nuclease (molecular weight [MW] ≈ 17,000). The dissociation rate is important to know in designing experiments to measure binding because if the act of measurement perturbs the equilibrium, the time one has to make the measurement (eg, to separate bound and free) is determined by this halftime for dissociation. For instance, a 2-minute procedure that involves dilution of the antigen–antibody mixture can be completed before significant dissociation has occurred if the dissociation halftime is 23 minute. However, if the on rate is the same, but the affinity 10-fold lower, still a respectable 8×10^7 M^{-1}, then the complex could be 50% dissociated in the time required to complete the procedure. This caution is relevant when we discuss methods of measuring binding and affinity in the following.

Because knowledge of the dissociation rate can be so important in the design of experiments, a word should be said about techniques to measure it. Perhaps the most widely applicable one is the use of radiolabeled antigen. After equilibrium is reached and the equilibrium concentration of bound radioactivity determined, a large excess of unlabeled antigen is added. Because any radioactive antigen molecule that dissociates is quickly replaced by an unlabeled one, the probability of a radioactive molecule associating again is very small. Therefore, one can measure the decrease in radioactivity bound to antibody with time to determine the dissociation rate.‡

AFFINITY

It is apparent from the previous discussion that a lot of information about an antigen–antibody reaction is packed into a single value, its affinity. In this section, we examine affinity more closely, including methods for measuring affinity and the heterogeneity thereof, the effects of multivalency of antibody and/or of antigen, and the special effects seen when the antigen–antibody interaction occurs on a solid surface (two-phase systems).

Interaction in Solution with Monovalent Ligand

The simplest case is that of the interaction of antibody with monovalent ligand. We may include in this category both antihapten antibodies reacting with truly monovalent haptens and antimacromolecule antibodies, which have been fractionated to obtain a population that reacts only with a single, nonrepeating site on the antigen.** In the latter case, the antigen behaves as if monovalent in its interaction with the particular antibody population under study. The proviso that the site recognized (antigenic determinant) be nonrepeating, that is, occur only once per antigen molecule, of course, is critical.

If the combining sites on the antibody are independent (ie, display no positive or negative cooperativity for antigen binding), then for many purposes one can treat these combining sites, reacting with monovalent ligands, as if they were separate molecules. Thus, many, but not all, of the properties we discuss can be analyzed in terms of the concentration of antibody-combining sites, independent of the number of such sites per antibody molecule (2 for IgG and IgA, 10 for IgM).

To determine the affinity of an antibody, one generally determines the equilibrium concentrations of bound and free ligand, at increasing total ligand concentrations, but at constant antibody concentration. Alternatively, one can vary the antibody concentration, but then, the analysis is slightly more complicated. Perhaps the theoretically most elegant experimental method to determine these quantities is equilibrium dialysis,[12,13] depicted and explained in Figure 7.2, in which ligand (antigen) is allowed to equilibrate between two chambers, only one of which contains antibody, separated by a semipermeable membrane impermeable to antibody. The important feature of this method, as opposed to most others, is that the concentrations of ligand in each chamber can be determined without perturbing the equilibrium. The disadvantage of this method is that it is applicable only to antigens small enough to permeate freely a membrane that will exclude antibody. Another technical disadvantage is that bound antigen, determined as the difference between bound plus free antigen in one chamber and free antigen in the other, is not measured independently of free antigen.

Another category of method uses radiolabeled ligand in equilibrium with antibody and then physically separates free antigen bound to antibody and quantitates each separately. The methods used to separate bound and free antigen are discussed in the section on radioimmunoassay (RIA). These methods generally allow independent measurement of bound and free antigen but may perturb the equilibrium.

Scatchard Analysis

Once data are obtained, there are a number of methods of computing the affinity, of which we shall discuss two.

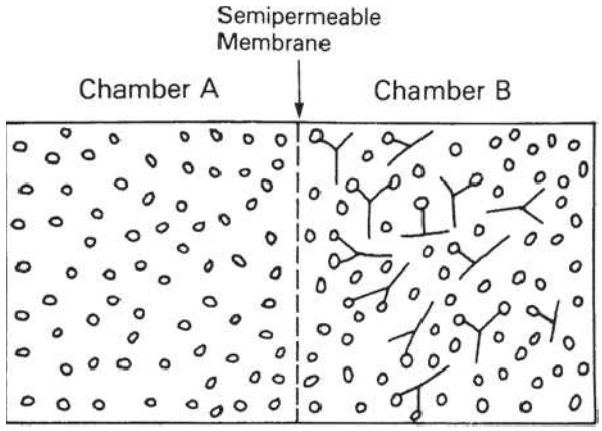


FIG. 7.2. Equilibrium Dialysis. Two chambers are separated by a semipermeable membrane that is freely permeable to ligand but not at all to antibody. Antibody is placed in one chamber (B) and ligand in one or both chambers. Regardless of how the ligand is distributed initially, after sufficient time to reach equilibrium, it will be distributed as follows. The concentration of free ligand will be identical in both chambers, but chamber B will have additional ligand bound to antibody. The concentration of bound ligand is thus the difference between the ligand concentration in the two chambers, whereas the free concentration is the concentration in chamber A. Because these concentrations must obey the mass action law, Equation 2, they can be used to determine the affinity K_A, from Equation 3 or 3′, by any of several graphical procedures, such as Scatchard analysis (described in the text).

‡This method assumes that all binding sites are independent, as is generally true for antibodies and monovalent ligands. If there were either negative or positive cooperativity in binding, then the change in receptor occupancy that occurs when a large excess of unlabeled antigen is added would probably perturb the dissociation rate of radiolabeled antigen molecules already bound to other sites.

**Such fractionated antibodies may contain mixtures of antibodies to overlapping sites within a domain on the antigen, but as long as no two antibody molecules (or combining sites) can bind to the same antigen molecule simultaneously, the antigen still behaves as effectively monovalent.

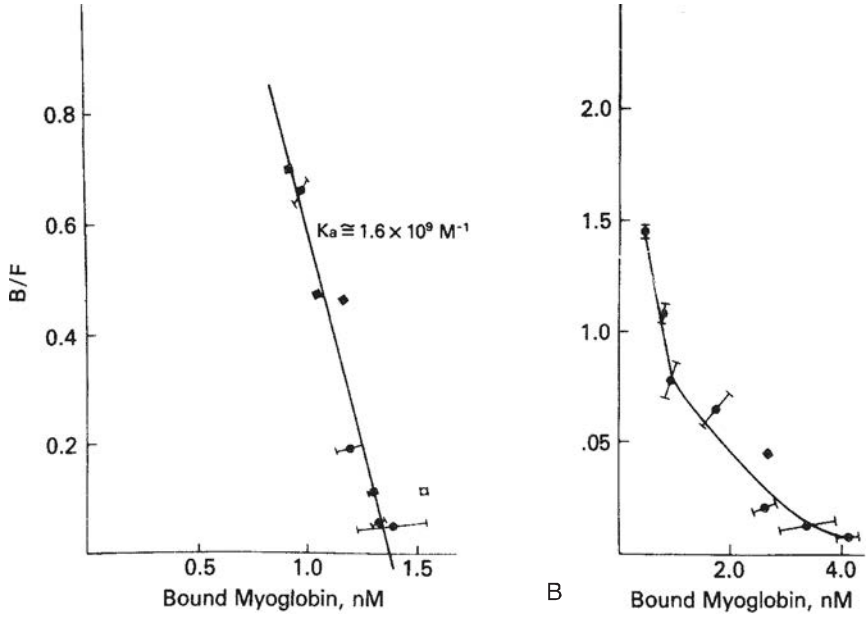


FIG. 7.3. Scatchard analysis of the binding of [^{3}H]-sperm whale myoglobin by a monoclonal antibody to myoglobin (A) and by the serum antibodies from the same mouse whose spleen cells were fused to prepare the hybridoma (B). The monoclonal antibody (clone HAL 43-201E11, clone 5) produces a linear Scatchard plot, whose slope, -1.6×10^9 M^{-1}, equals $-K_A$, and whose intercept on the abscissa gives the concentration of antibody-binding sites. In contrast, the serum antibodies produce a curved (concave up) Scatchard plot, indicative of heterogeneity of affinity. From Berzofsky et al.,[15] with permission.

Perhaps the most widely used is that described by Scatchard[14] (Fig. 7.3[15]). The mass action equilibrium law is plotted in the form of Equation 3

$$[SL] = K_A([S]_t - [SL])[L] \quad (3)$$

and B is substituted for [SL] and F for [L], referring to bound and free ligand, respectively. Then the Scatchard equation is

$$\frac{B}{F} = K_A([S]_t - B) \quad (8)$$

Note that a very critical implicit assumption was made in this seemingly very simple conversion. The [SL] within the parentheses in Equation 3 was intended to be the concentration of bound antibody sites so that ($[S]_t - [SL]$) = free [S]. However, in Equation 8, we have substituted B, the concentration of bound ligand. If the ligand behaves as monovalent, then this substitution is legitimate, as every bound ligand molecule corresponds to an occupied antibody site. However, if the ligand is multivalent and can bind more than one antibody site, then Equation 8 is valid only in ligand excess where the frequency of ligands with more than one antibody bound is very low. In this section, we are discussing only monovalent ligands, but this proviso must be kept in mind when the Scatchard analysis is applied in other circumstances.

From Equation 8, we see that a plot of B/F versus B should yield a straight line (for a single affinity), with a slope of $-K_A$ and an intercept on the abscissa corresponding to antibody-binding site concentration (see Fig. 7.3). This is the so-called Scatchard plot. An alternative version that is normalized for antibody concentration is especially useful if the data were obtained at different values of total antibody concentration, $[A]_t$, instead of constant $[A]_t$. However, for this version, one requires an independent measure of total antibody concentration, other than the intercept of the plot. Then one divides Equation 8 by the total concentration of antibody molecules (making no assumptions about the number of sites per molecule) to obtain

$$\frac{R}{c} = K_A(n - r) \quad (9)$$

where r = the number of occupied sites per antibody molecule, n = the total number of sites per antibody molecule, and c = free ligand concentration, that is, c = F. Thus,

$$r = \frac{B}{[\text{total antibody}]} = \frac{B}{[A]_t}$$
$$n = \frac{[\text{total sites}]}{[\text{total antibody}]} = \frac{[S]_t}{[A]_t}$$

where $[A]_t$ = total molar antibody concentration. In this form of the Scatchard plot, r/c versus r, the slope is still $-K_A$ and the intercept on the r axis is n. Thus one can determine the number of sites per molecule. Of course, if one determines $[S]_t$ from the intercept of Equation 8, one can also calculate the number of sites per molecule by dividing $[S]_t$ by any independent measure of antibody concentration. Thus, the only advantage of normalizing all the data points first to plot the r/c form arises when the data were obtained at varying antibody concentrations. If the antibody concentration is unknown but held constant, then the B/F form is more convenient and actually provides one measure of antibody (site) concentration. Because today we know the value of n for each class of antibody (2 for IgG and serum IgA, 10 for IgM), the concentration of sites and that of antibody are easily converted in many cases.

Heterogeneity of Affinity

The next level of complexity arises when one is dealing with a mixture of antibodies of varying affinity for the ligand. This is the rule, rather than the exception, when one deals with antibodies from immune serum, even if they are fractionated to be monospecific, that is, all specific for the same site

on the antigen. Contrast, for example, the linear Scatchard plot for a homogeneous monoclonal antibody to myoglobin (see Fig. 7.3A), with the curved Scatchard plot for the serum antibodies from the same mouse used to prepare the hybridoma monoclonal antibody (see Fig. 7.3B). This concave up Scatchard plot is typical for heterogeneous antibodies. In a system such as hormone receptor–hormone interaction, in which negative cooperativity can occur between receptor sites (ie, occupation of one site lowers the affinity of its neighbor), a concave up Scatchard plot can be produced by negative cooperativity in the absence of any intrinsic heterogeneity in affinity. However, in the case of antibodies, where no such allosteric effect has been demonstrated, a concave up Scatchard plot indicates heterogeneity of affinity.

Ideally, one would like to imagine that the tangents all along the curve correspond (in slope) to the affinities of the many subpopulations of antibodies. Mathematically, this is not strictly correct, but it is true that the steeper part of the curve corresponds to the higher affinity antibodies and the shallower part of the curve to the lower affinity antibodies. Graphical methods have been developed to analyze more quantitatively the components of such curves,[16,17] and a very general and versatile computer program (LIGAND) has been developed by Munson and Rodbard[18] that can fit such curves using any number of subpopulations of different affinity. For purposes of this chapter, we discuss only the case of two affinities and then examine the types of average affinities that have been proposed when one is dealing with much greater heterogeneity. We also examine mathematical estimates of the degree of heterogeneity (analogous to a variance).

When an antibody population consists of only two subpopulations of different affinities, K_1 and K_2, then we can add the component Equations 3′ to obtain

$$r = r_1 + r_2 = \frac{n_1 K_1 c}{(1 + K_1 c)} + \frac{n_2 K_2 c}{(1 + K_2 c)} \qquad (10)$$

so that

$$\frac{r}{c} = \frac{n_1 K_1}{(1 + K_1 c)} + \frac{n_2 K_2}{(1 + K_2 c)} \qquad (10')$$

where the subscripts correspond to the two populations. Then the graph of r/c versus r can be shown to be a hyperbola whose asymptotes are, in fact, the linear Scatchard plots of the two components (Fig. 7.4). This situation has been analyzed graphically by Bright.[19] Taking the limits as $c \to 0$ and as $c \to \infty$, it can easily be shown that the intercept on the abscissa is just $n_1 + n_2$ (or, in the form B/F versus B, the intercept is the total concentration of binding sites $[S]_t$), and the intercept on the ordinate is $n_1K_1 + n_2K_2$. Thus, one can still obtain the total value of n or $[S]_t$ from the intercept on the abscissa. The problem is in obtaining the two affinities, K_1 and K_2, and the concentrations of the individual antibody subpopulations (corresonding to n_1 and n_2). If K_1 is greater than K_2, one can approximate the affinities from the slopes of the tangents at the two intercepts (see Fig. 7.4), but these will not, in general, be exactly parallel to the two asymptotes, which give the true affinities, so some error is always introduced, depending on the relative values of n_1 and n_2 and K_1 and K_2. A graphical method for solving for these exactly has been worked out by Bright[19] and computer methods by Munson and Rodbard.[18]

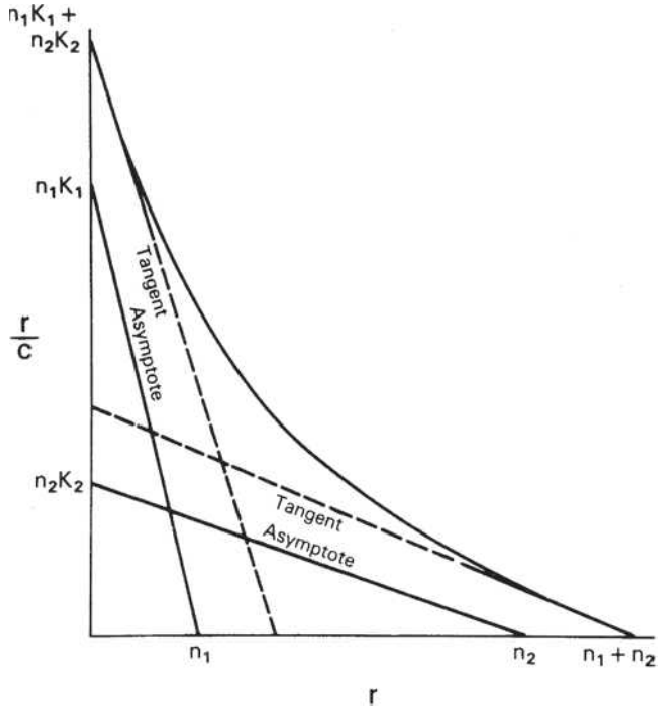


FIG. 7.4. Analysis of a Curved Scatchard Plot Produced by a Mixture of Two Antibodies with Different Affinities. The antibodies have affinities K_1 and K_2 and have n_1 and n_2 binding sites per molecule, respectively. The r is the concentration of bound antigen divided by the total antibody concentration (ie, bound sites per molecule), and c is the free antigen concentration. The curve is a hyperbola that can be decomposed into its two asymptotes, which correspond to the linear Scatchard plots of the two components in the antibody mixture. The tangents to the curve at its intercepts only approximate these asymptotes so that the slopes of the tangents estimate but do not accurately correspond to the affinities of the two antibodies. However, the intercept on the r axis corresponds to $n_1 + n_2$. Note that in this case n_1 and n_2 must be defined in terms of the total antibody concentration, not that of each component.

Average Affinities

In practice, of course, one rarely knows that one is dealing with exactly two subpopulations, and most antisera are significantly more heterogeneous than that. Therefore, the previously mentioned case is more illustrative of principles than of practical value. When faced with a curved Scatchard plot, one usually asks what the average affinity is, and perhaps some measure of the variance of the affinities, without being able to define exactly how many different affinity populations exist.

Suppose one has m populations each with site concentration $[S_i]$ and affinity K_i, so that at free ligand concentration [L], the fraction of each antibody that has ligand bound will be given by an equation of the form of Equation 3′:

$$B_i = \frac{K_i [S_i]_t [L]}{(1 + K_i [L])} \qquad (11)$$

Then the bound concentrations sum to give

$$B = \sum_{i=1}^{m} B_i = \sum_{i=1}^{m} \frac{K_i [S_i]_t [L]}{(1 + K_i [L])} \qquad (11')$$

Substituting F for [L] and dividing through by this quantity, one obtains

$$\frac{B}{F} = \sum_{i=1}^{m} \frac{K_i[S_i]_t}{(1 + K_iF)} \tag{12}$$

or equivalently,

$$\frac{r}{c} = \sum_{i=1}^{m} \frac{K_i n_i}{(1 + K_ic)} \tag{12'}$$

These can be seen to be generalizations of Equations 10 and 10′. Taking the limits as $F \rightarrow 0$ and $F \rightarrow \infty$, one again sees that the

$$\text{intercept on ordinate} = \sum_{i=1}^{m} K_i[S_i]_t \tag{13}$$

and the

$$\text{intercept on abscissa} = \sum_{i=1}^{m} [S_i]_t = [S]_t \tag{14}$$

Therefore, one can still obtain the total antibody site concentration from the intercept on the abscissa (Fig. 7.5).[20]

Two types of average affinity can be obtained graphically from the Scatchard plot.[20] Perhaps the more widely used K_0 is actually more accurately a median affinity rather than a mean affinity. It is defined as the slope of the tangent at the point on the curve where half the sites are bound, that is, where $B = [S]_t/2$ (see Fig. 7.5). A second type of average affinity, which we call K_{av}, is a weighted mean of the affinities, each affinity weighted by its proportional representation in the antibody population. Thus, we take the ratio

$$K_{av} = \sum_{i=1}^{m} \frac{K_i[S_i]_t}{[S]_t} \tag{15}$$

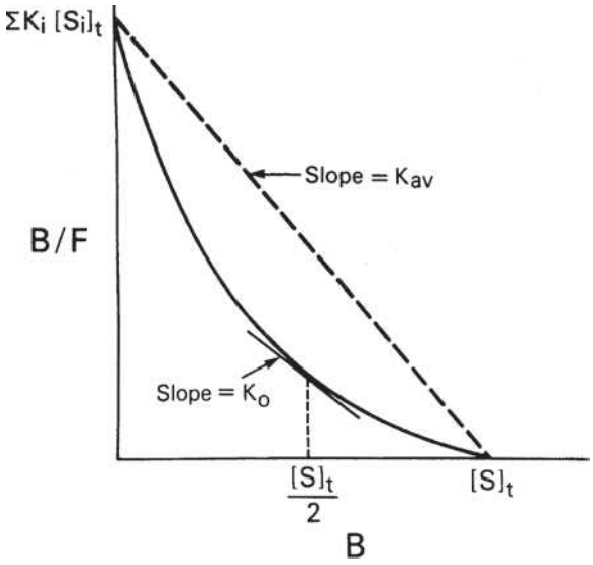


FIG. 7.5. Types of Average Affinities for a Heterogeneous Population of Antibodies, as Defined on a Scatchard Plot. K_0 is the slope of the tangent to the curve at a point where $B = [S]_t/2$, that is, where half the antibody sites are bound. Thus, K_0 corresponds to a median affinity. The K_{av} is the slope of the chord between the intercepts and corresponds to a weighted average of the affinities weighted by the concentrations of the antibodies with each affinity. Adapted from Berzofsky.[20]

From Equations 13 and 14, it is apparent that K_{av} is simply the ratio of the two intercepts on the B/F and B axes, that is, the slope of the chord (see Fig. 7.5). This type of weighted mean affinity, K_{av}, is therefore actually easier to obtain graphically in some cases than K_0, and we shall see that it is useful in other types of plots as well.

Indices of Heterogeneity: The Sips Plot

For a heterogeneous antiserum, one would also like to have some idea of the extent of heterogeneity of affinity. For instance, if the affinities were distributed according to a normal (Gaussian) distribution, one would like to know the variance.[21,22] More complex analyses have been developed that do not require as many assumptions about the shape of the distribution,[23–25] but the first and most widely used index of heterogeneity arbitrarily assumes that the affinities fit a distribution, first described by Sips,[26] which is similar in shape to a normal distribution. This was applied to the case of antibody heterogeneity by Nisonoff and Pressman,[27] and is summarized by Karush and Karush.[28] One fits the data to the assumed binding function

$$r = \frac{n(K_0c)^a}{(1 + (K_0c)^a)} \tag{16}$$

which is analogous to Equations 3′ and 11 (the Langmuir adsorption isotherm) except for the exponent a, which is the index of heterogeneity. This index, a, is allowed to range from 0 to 1. For $a = 1$, Equation 16 is equivalent to Equation 3, and there is no heterogeneity. As a decreases toward 0, the heterogeneity increases. To obtain a value for a graphically, one plots the algebraic rearrangement of Equation 16:

$$\log\left(\frac{r}{n - r}\right) = a \log c + a \log K_0 \tag{17}$$

so that the slope of $\log [r/(n - r)]$ versus $\log c$ is the heterogeneity index a.

C. DeLisi (personal communication) has derived the variance (second moment) of the Sips distribution in terms of the free energy RT ln K_0, about the mean of free energy. The result (normalized to RT) gives the dispersion or width of the distribution as a function of a:

$$\frac{\sigma^2_{Sips}}{R^2T^2} = \frac{\pi^2(1 - a^2)}{3a^2} \tag{18}$$

This is useful for determining a quantity, σ_{Sips}, which can be thought of as analogous to a standard deviation, if one keeps in mind that this is not a true Gaussian distribution. In addition, as noted previously, the use of the Sips distribution requires the assumption that the affinities (really the free energies) are continuously distributed symmetrically about a mean, approximating a Gaussian distribution. This assumption frequently is not valid.

The Plot of B/F versus F or T

Another graphical method that is useful for estimating affinities is the plot of bound/free versus free or total ligand concentration, denoted F and T, respectively[20] (Fig. 7.6). To simplify the discussion, let us define the bound/free ratio, B/F, as R, and define R_0 as the intercept, or limit, as free

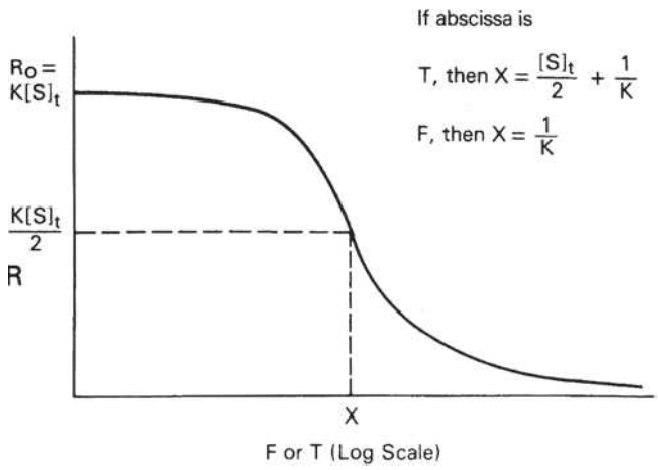


FIG. 7.6. Schematic Plot of R, the Bound/Free Ratio, as a Function of Free (F) or Total (T) Antigen Concentration. The curves have a similar sigmoidal shape, but the midpoint (where $R = R_0/2$) of the plot of R versus T has a term dependent on antibody site concentration ($[S]_t$), whereas the midpoint of the plot of R versus F is exactly 1/K, independent of antibody concentration. Adapted from Berzofsky.[20]

ligand $F \rightarrow 0$. First, for the case of a homogeneous antibody, from Equation 3′,

$$R = \frac{B}{F} = \frac{K[S]_t}{(1 + KF)} \tag{19}$$

and

$$R_0 = \lim_{F \to 0} \frac{B}{F} = K[S]_t \tag{20}$$

Let us define the midpoint of the plot (see Fig. 7.6) as the point at which R decreases to half its initial value, R_0, that is, at which $R = K[S]_t/2$. For the case of homogeneous antibody (ie, a single affinity), simple algebraic manipulation,[20] substituting $K[S]_t/2$ (ie, $R_0/2$) for B/F in Equation 8, will show that at this midpoint††

$$F = \frac{1}{K} \tag{21}$$

and

$$B = \frac{[S]_t}{2} \tag{22}$$

so that the total concentration, T, is

$$T = B + F = \frac{[S]_t}{2} + \frac{1}{K} \tag{23}$$

Thus, if one plots B/F versus F, the midpoint directly yields 1/K. However, it is frequently more convenient experimentally to plot B/F versus T. In this case, the midpoint is no longer simply the reciprocal of the affinity. As seen from Equation 23, the assumption that the midpoint is 1/K will result in an error equal to half the antibody-binding site concentration. Thus, in plots of B/F versus T, the midpoint will be a good estimate of the affinity only if $[S]_t/2 \ll 1/K$, that is, if the antibody concentration is low compared to the dissociation constant. In fact, if the affinity is so high that $1/K \ll [S]_t/2$, then one will merely be measuring the antibody concentration, not the affinity at all[20] (see Fig. 7.6).

In the case of a heterogeneous antiserum, we have already seen that

$$R_0 = \sum_i K_i[S_i]_t \tag{13}$$

Therefore, at the midpoint, when $B/F = R_0/2$, it is easy to see that

$$K_{av} = \left(\frac{B}{F}\right)\left(\frac{2}{[S]_t}\right) = \frac{R_0}{[S]_t} \tag{24}$$

Thus, one can still obtain the average affinity, as defined previously.[20]

Regardless of average affinities, the effect of affinity heterogeneity is to broaden the curve or to make the slope shallower. This can be seen by visualizing the curve of B/F versus F as a step function. Each antibody subpopulation of a given affinity, K_i, will be titrated to 50% of its microscopic B/F at a free ligand concentration $F = 1/K_i$. The high-affinity antibodies will be titrated at low F, but the low-affinity antibodies will require much higher F to be titrated. The resulting step function is analogous to the successive transitions corresponding to different pK values in a pH titration.

Intrinsic Affinity

The affinity, K_A, that we have been discussing so far is what has been termed the intrinsic affinity, that is, the affinity of each antibody-combining site treated in isolation. We have been able to do this, regardless of the valence of the antibodies, by using the concentration of combining sites, [S], in our equations rather than the concentration of antibody molecules, [A], which may have more than one site. Even without any cooperativity between combining sites, there is a statistical effect that makes the actual affinity different from the intrinsic affinity if the antibody is multivalent and one uses whole antibody concentration rather than site concentration. The way this difference arises can best be seen by examining the case of a bivalent antibody, such as IgG. We assume that the two sites are equivalent and neither is affected by events at the other. The ligand, as in this whole section, is monovalent. Then there are two binding steps

$$A + L \overset{K_1}{\rightleftharpoons} AL, \qquad AL + L \overset{K_2}{\rightleftharpoons} AL_2 \tag{25}$$

and the corresponding actual affinities are

$$K_1 = \frac{[AL]}{[A][L]}, \qquad K_2 = \frac{[AL_2]}{[AL][L]} \tag{26}$$

If the intrinsic affinity of both equivalent sites is K, then K_1 will actually be twice K because the concentration of available sites [S] will be twice the antibody concentration when the first ligand is about to bind in step 1. However,

††It is important to note that R_0 must be the limit of B/F as F truly approaches zero. In an RIA in which the concentration of tracer is significant compared to 1/K, reducing the unlabeled ligand concentration all the way to zero will still not yield the true limit R_0. The tracer concentration must also be negligible. If not, R_0 will be estimated falsely low, and the affinity will also be underestimated.

once one site is bound, the reverse (dissociation) reaction of step 1 can occur from only one site, namely, that which is occupied. Conversely, for the second step, the forward reaction has only one remaining available site; however, in the reverse reaction, $AL_2 \rightarrow AL + L$, either site can dissociate to go back to the AL state. The second site bound need not be the first to dissociate, and because the sites are identical, one cannot tell the difference. Thus, for step 2, the apparent concentration of sites for the reverse reaction is twice that available for the forward reaction, so the affinity K_2 for the second step will be only half the intrinsic affinity, K.

It is easy to see how this statistical effect can be extrapolated to an antibody with n sites[29]:

$$K_1 = nK \quad \text{and} \quad K_n = \left(\frac{1}{n}\right) K \tag{27}$$

For the steps in between, two derivations are available,[9,29] which yield

$$K_i = \frac{(n - i + 1)}{i} K \tag{28}$$

The actual affinity, rather than the intrinsic affinity, becomes important with monovalent ligands when one is interested in the effective affinity (based on a molar antibody concentration) under conditions where [L] is so low that only one site can bind antigen. Then for IgG or IgM (with 2 or 10 sites per molecule, respectively), the apparent affinity will be theoretically 2 or 10 times the intrinsic affinity. For most purposes, it is easier to use site concentrations and intrinsic affinities. The analyses given previously, such as B/F versus F or the Scatchard plot, whether B/F versus B or r/c versus r, will all yield intrinsic affinities. It is the intrinsic affinity that tells us something about the nature of the antibody–ligand interaction.

Once one enters the realm of multivalent ligands, the actual affinity or effective affinity involving multipoint binding between multivalent antibody molecule and multivalent ligand molecule can be much greater than the intrinsic affinity for binding at each site. This case is the subject of the next section.

Interaction with Multivalent Ligands

So far, we have discussed only situations in which the ligand is monovalent or effectively monovalent with respect to the particular antibody under study. However, in many situations, the ligand molecule has multiple repeating identical determinants, each of which can bind independently to the several identical combining sites on a divalent or multivalent antibody.[‡‡] Although the intrinsic affinity for the interaction of any single antibody–combining site with any single antigenic determinant may be the same as that discussed in the preceding section, the apparent or effective affinity may be much higher due to the ability of a single antibody molecule to bind more than one identical determinant of a multivalent antigen molecule. Karush[30] has termed this phenomenon "monogamous bivalency." Such monogamous binding can occur between two molecules in solution, or between a molecule in solution and one on a solid surface, such as a cell membrane or microtiter plate. We first discuss the situation in solution and then discuss the additional considerations that apply when one of the reactants is bound to a solid surface.

Monogamous Bivalency

Suppose a divalent antibody molecule reacts with antigen that has two identical determinants. This situation has been treated in detail by Crothers and Metzger,[31] and by Karush.[30] Let us call the two antibody sites S and S′, and the antigenic determinants D and D′, with the understanding that, in actuality, we cannot distinguish S from S′ or D from D′. The interaction can be broken up into two steps, a bimolecular reaction

$$\begin{array}{ccc} S & D & \\ | & + & | \\ S' & & D' \end{array} \overset{K_1}{\rightleftharpoons} \begin{array}{cc} S & D \\ | & | \\ S' & D' \end{array} \tag{29}$$

followed by an intramolecular reaction

$$\begin{array}{cc} S & D \\ | & | \\ S' & D' \end{array} \overset{K_2}{\rightleftharpoons} \begin{array}{cc} S & D \\ | & | \\ S' & D' \end{array} \tag{30}$$

The association constant for the first step, K_1, is related to the intrinsic affinity, K, simply by a statistical factor of 4 due to the degeneracy (equivalence) between S and S′ and between D and D′. This is a typical second-order reaction between antigen and antibody. However, the second step (Equation 30) is a first-order reaction because it is effectively an interconversion between two states of a single molecular complex, the reactants S′ and D′ being linked chemically (albeit noncovalently) through the S–D bond formed in the first step. Thus, the first-order equilibrium constant, K_2, is not a function of the concentrations of S–S and D–D in solution, as K_1 would be. Rather, the forward reaction depends on the geometry of the complex and the flexibility of the arms; in other words, the probability that S′ and D′ will encounter each other and be in the right orientation to react if they do come in contact depends on the distances and freedom of motion along the chain S′–S–D–D′ rather than on the density of molecules in solution (ie, concentration).

The reverse reaction for step 2, on the other hand, will have a rate constant similar to that for the simple monovalent S–D → S + D reaction, as the dissociation reaction depends on the strength of the S′–D′ (or S–D) bond and is not influenced by the other S–D interaction unless there is strain introduced by the angles required for simultaneous bonds between S and D and S′ and D′. Note that K_2 will inherently have a statistical factor of 1/2 compared to the intrinsic K'_2 for the analogous reaction if the S′–S–D–D′ link were all covalent because in the forward reaction of Equation 30 only one pair can react, whereas in the reverse reaction either S′–D′ or S–D could dissociate to produce the equivalent result.

[‡‡] If only the antigen is multivalent, and the antibody monovalent, such as an Fab fragment, the situation can be analyzed using the same statistical considerations discussed previously.

We would like to know the apparent or observed affinity for the overall reaction

$$\begin{array}{cc} S & D \\ | & | \\ S & D \end{array} + \begin{array}{cc} | & | \\ S & D \end{array} \overset{K_{obs}}{\rightleftharpoons} \begin{array}{cc} S & D \\ | & | \\ S & D \end{array} \qquad (31)$$

Because the free energies, ΔF_1 and ΔF_2, for the two steps are additive, the observed affinity will be the product of K_1 and K_2

$$K_{obs} = K_1 K_2 \qquad (32)$$

where we have defined K_1 and K_2 to include the statistical degeneracy factors.*** The equilibrium constants K_1 and K_2 are each the ratios of forward and reverse rate constants, as in Equation 7. Of these four rate constants, all are directly related to the corresponding terms for the intrinsic affinity between S and D except for the intramolecular forward reaction of step 2, as noted previously. Thus, the difficulty in predicting K_{obs} is largely a problem of analyzing the geometric (steric) aspects of K_2, assuming one already knows the intrinsic affinity, Crothers and Metzger[31] have analyzed this problem for particular situations. Qualitatively, we can say that whether K_2 will be larger or smaller than K will depend on factors such as the enforced proximity of S′ and D′ in step 2 and the distance between D and D′ compared to the possible distances accessible between S and S′, which in turn depends on the length of the antibody arms and the flexibility of the hinge between them. Thus, because K_1 can be approximated by K, except for statistical factors, the apparent affinity for this "monogamous bivalent" binding interaction, K_{obs}, may range from significantly less than to significantly greater than K^2. If K_2 is of the same order of magnitude as K, then K_{obs} will be of the order of K^2, which can be huge (eg, if $K \approx 10^9\ M^{-1}$, K_{obs} could be $\approx 10^{18}\ M^{-1}$). The halftime for dissociation would be thousands of years. It is easy to see how such monogamous bivalent interactions can appear to be irreversible, even though in practice the observed affinity is rarely more than a few orders of magnitude larger than the K for a single site, possibly due to structural constraints.[32]

If apparent affinities this high can be reached by monogamous bivalency, even greater ones should be possible for the multipoint binding of an IgM molecule to a multivalent ligand. Although IgM is decavalent for small monovalent ligands, steric restrictions often make it behave as if pentavalent for binding to large multivalent ligands. However, even five-point binding can lead to enormously tight interactions. Therefore, even though the intrinsic affinity of IgM molecules tends to be lower than that of IgG molecules for the same antigen,[30] the apparent affinity of IgM can be quite high.

Two-Phase Systems

The same enhanced affinity seen for multipoint binding applies to two-phase systems. Examples include the reaction of multivalent antibodies with antigen attached to a cell surface or an artificial surface (such as Sepharose or the plastic walls of a microtiter plate), the reaction of a multivalent ligand with antibodies on the surface of a B cell, a Sepharose bead, or a plastic plate, and the reaction of either component with an antigen–antibody precipitate. For the reasons outlined previously, "monogamous" binding can make the apparent affinity of a multivalent antibody or antigen for multiple sites on a solid surface be quite large to the point of effective irreversibility.

However, another effect also increases the effective affinity in a two-phase system. This effect applies even for monovalent antibodies (Fab fragments) or monovalent ligands. The effect arises from the enormously high effective local concentration of binding sites at the surface, compared to the concentration if the same number of sites were distributed in bulk solution.[33] Looked at another way, the effect is due to the violation, at the liquid–solid interface, of the basic assumption in the association constants, K_A, discussed previously, that the reactants are all distributed randomly in the solution. (To some extent, the latter is involved in the enhanced affinity of multivalency as well.) This situation has been analyzed by DeLisi[34] and DeLisi and Wiegel,[35] who break the reaction down into two steps: the diffusive process necessary to bring the antigen and antibody into the right proximity and orientation to react, and the reactive process itself. The complex between antigen and antibody, when positioned but not yet reacted, is called the encounter complex. The reaction can then be written

$$S + D \underset{k_-}{\overset{k_+}{\rightleftharpoons}} S \cdots D \underset{k_{-1}}{\overset{k_1}{\rightleftharpoons}} SD \qquad (33)$$

where S = antibody site, D = antigenic determinant, k+ and k_- = forward and reverse diffusive rate constants, and k_1 and k_{-1} = forward and reverse reactive rate constants once the encounter complex is formed. If the encounter complex is in a steady state, the overall rate constants will be given by

$$k_f = \frac{k_1 k_+}{(k_1 + k_-)} \qquad (34)$$

$$k_r = \frac{k_{-1} k_-}{(k_1 + k_-)} \qquad (35)$$

where subscripts f and r = forward and reverse.[34] The association constant, according to Equation 7, is the ratio of these two, or

$$K_A = \frac{k_1 k_+}{k_{-1} k_-} \qquad (36)$$

The relative magnitudes of k_1 and k_- determine the probable fate of the encounter complex. Is it more likely to react to form SD or to break up as the reactants diffuse apart?

Now suppose that k is slow compared to k_1. Then the SD bound complex and the encounter complex, S ··· D, may interconvert many times before the encounter complex breaks up and one of the reactants diffuses off into bulk solution. If the surface has multiple antigenic sites, D, then even a monovalent antibody (Fab) may be much

***In some treatments where these statistical factors are not included in K_1 and K_2, the equivalent equation may be given as $K_{obs} = 2K_1K_2$.

more likely, when SD dissociates to S ··· D, to rereact with the same or nearby sites than to diffuse away into bulk solution, again depending on the relative magnitudes of these rate constants. This greater probability to rereact with the surface rather than diffuse away is the essence of the effect we are describing. A more extensive mathematical treatment of reactions with cells is given in DeLisi[34] and DeLisi and Wiegel.[35]

A somewhat different, and very useful, analysis of the same or a very similar effect was given by Silhavy et al.[36] These authors studied the case of a ligand diffusing out of a dialysis bag containing a protein for which the ligand had a significant affinity. Once the ligand concentration became low enough that there was an excess of free protein sites, then the rate of exit of ligand from the dialysis bag was no longer simply its diffusion rate nor was it simply the rate of dissociation of protein–ligand complex. These authors showed that under these conditions the exit of ligand followed quasi–first-order kinetics, but with a half-life longer than the half-life in the absence of protein by a factor of $(1 + [P]K_A)$

$$t_+ = t_-(1 + [P]K_A) \quad (37)$$

where [P] = protein site concentration, K_A = affinity, and t_+ and t_- = half-lives in the presence and absence of protein in the bag.

In this case, the protein was in solution, so the authors could use the actual protein concentration and the actual intrinsic affinity, K_A. In the case of protein on a two-dimensional surface, it is harder to know what to use as the effective concentration. However, the high local concentration of protein compartmentalized in the dialysis bag can be seen to be analogous to the high local concentration attached to the solid surface. The underlying mechanism of the two effects is essentially the same and so are the implications. For instance, in the case of dialysis, a modest 10 μM concentration of antibody sites with an affinity of 10^8 M^{-1} can reduce the rate of exit of a ligand 1000-fold. A dialysis that would otherwise take 3 hours would take 4 months. It is easy to see how this "retention effect" can make even modest affinities appear infinite (ie, the reactions appear irreversible). This retention effect applies not only to immunologic systems but also to other interactions at a cell surface or between cell compartments where the local concentration of a protein may be high. In particular, these principles of two-phase systems should also govern the interaction between antigen specific receptors on the surface of T cells and antigen–major histocompatibility complex (MHC) molecule complexes on the surface of antigen-presenting cells, B cells, or target cells.

One final point is useful to note. Because these retention effects depend on a localized abundance of unoccupied sites, addition of a large excess of unlabeled ligand to saturate these sites will diminish or abolish the retention effect and greatly accelerate the dissociation or exit of labeled ligand. This effect of unlabeled ligand can be used as a test for the retention effect, although one must be aware that in certain cases the same result can be an indication of negative cooperativity among receptor sites.

RADIOIMMUNOASSAY AND RELATED METHODS

Since it was first suggested in 1960 by Yalow and Berson,[37] RIA has rapidly become one of the most widespread, widely applicable, and most sensitive techniques for assessing the concentration of a whole host of biologic molecules. Most of the basic principles necessary to understand and apply RIA have been covered previously in this chapter. In this section, we examine the concepts and methodologic approaches used in RIA. For a detailed methods book, we refer the reader to Chard,[38] Rodbard,[39] and Yalow.[40]

The central concept of RIA is that the binding of an infinitesimal concentration of highly radioactive tracer antigen to low concentrations of a high-affinity–specific antibody is very sensitive to competition by unlabeled antigen and is also very specific for that antigen. Thus, concentrations of antigen in unknown samples can be determined by their ability to compete with tracer for binding to antibody. The method can be used to measure very low concentrations of a molecule, even in the presence of the many impurities in biologic fluids. Accomplishment of this requires an appropriate high-affinity antibody and radiolabeled antigen, a method to distinguish bound from free-labeled antigen, optimization of concentrations of antibody and tracer-labeled antigen to maximize sensitivity, and generation of a standard curve, using known concentrations of competing unlabeled antigen, from which to read off the concentrations in unknown samples as well as the best method for representing the data. We review all these steps and pitfalls in this procedure except the preparation of antibodies and labeled antigens.

Separation of Bound and Free Antigen

Whatever parameter one uses to assess the amount of competition by the unlabeled antigen in the unknown sample to be tested, it will always be a function of bound versus free, radiolabeled antigen. Therefore, one of the most critical technical requirements is the ability to distinguish clearly between antibody-bound radioactive tracer and free radioactive tracer. This distinction usually requires physical separation of bound and free ligand. If the bound fraction is contaminated by free ligand, or vice versa, enormous errors can result, depending on the part of the binding curve on which the data fall.

Solution Methods

Solution RIA methods have the advantage that binding can be related to the intrinsic affinity of the antibody. However, bound and free antigen must be separated by a method that does not perturb the equilibrium. Three basic types of approaches have been used: precipitate the antibody with bound antigen, leaving free antigen in solution; precipitate the free antigen, leaving antibody and bound antigen in solution; or separate free from antibody-bound antigen molecules in solution on the basis of size by gel filtration. This last method is too cumbersome to use for large numbers of samples and is too slow, in general, to be sure the equilibrium is not perturbed in the process. Therefore, gel filtration columns are not widely used for RIA.

Methods that precipitate antibody are perhaps the most widely used. If the antigen is sufficiently smaller (<30,000 MW) than the antibody that it will remain in solution at

concentrations of either ammonium sulfate[41] or polyethylene glycol, 6000 MW (10% W:W),[42] which will precipitate essentially all the antibody, then these two reagents are frequently the most useful. Precipitation with polyethylene glycol and centrifugation can be accomplished before any significant dissociation has occurred due to dilutional effects.[43] However, if the antigen is much larger than about 30,000 to 40,000 MW, these methods will produce unacceptably high background control values in the absence of specific antibody. If the antibody is primarily of a subclass of IgG that binds to staphylococcal protein A or G, one can take advantage of the high affinity of protein A or G for IgG by using either protein A (or G)-Sepharose or formalin-killed staphylococcal organisms (Cowan I strain) to precipitate the antibody.[44] Finally, one can precipitate the antibody using a specific second antibody, an anti-Ig raised in another species. Maximal precipitation occurs not at antibody excess but at the "point of equivalence" in the middle of the titration curve where antigen (in this case, the first antibody) and the (second) antibody are approximately equal in concentration. Thus, one must add carrier Ig to keep the Ig concentration constant and determine the point of equivalence by titrating with the second antibody. Even worse, the precipitin reaction is much slower than the antigen–antibody reaction itself, allowing reequilibration of the antigen–antibody interaction after dilution by the second antibody. Some of these problems can be reduced by enhancing precipitation with low concentrations of polyethylene glycol.

The other type of separation method is adsorption of free antigen to an agent, such as activated charcoal or talc, which leaves antigen bound to antibody in solution. Binding of antigen by these agents depends on size and hydrophobicity. Although these methods are inexpensive and rapid, they require careful adjustment and monitoring of pH, ionic strength, and temperature to obtain reproducible results and to avoid adsorption of the antigen–antibody complex. Furthermore, because these agents have a high affinity for antigen, they can compete with a low-affinity antibody and alter the equilibrium. Also, as charcoal quenches beta scintillation counting, it can be used only with gamma-emitting isotopes such as ^{125}I.

Solid-Phase Methods

Solid-phase RIA methods have the advantages of high throughput and increased apparent affinity due to the effects at the solid–liquid interface noted previously. However, they have the concomitant disadvantage that one is not measuring the true intrinsic affinity because of these same effects. The method itself is fairly simple. One binds the antibody in advance to a solid surface such as a Sepharose bead or the walls of a microtiter plate well. To avoid competition from other serum proteins for the solid phase, one must use purified antibody in this coating step. Once the wells (or Sepharose beads) are coated, one can incubate them with labeled tracer antigen with or without unlabeled competitor, wash and count directly the radioactivity bound to the plastic wells or to the Sepharose. The microtiter plate method is particularly useful for processing large numbers of samples. However, because the concentration, or even the amount, of antibody coating the surface is unknown and because the affinity is not the intrinsic affinity, one cannot use these methods for studying the chemistry of the antigen–antibody reaction itself. A detailed analysis of the optimum parameters in this method is given by Zollinger et al.[43]

A variation that does allow determination of affinity, based on the enzyme-linked immunosorbant assay (ELISA) described in the following, but equally applicable to RIA, was described by Friguet et al.[45] This uses antigen-coated microtiter wells and free antibody but measures competition by free antigen to prevent the antibody in solution from binding to the antibody on the plate (see Fig. 7.9B). Thus, the antibody bound to the plastic is antibody that was free in the solution equilibrium. The affinity measured is that between the antibody and antigen in solution, not that on the plastic, so it is not directly influenced by the multivalency of the surface. However, as pointed out by Stevens,[46] the determination of affinity is strictly accurate only for monovalent Fab fragments because a bivalent antibody with only one arm bound to the plastic and one bound by antigen in solution will still be counted as free. Therefore, there will be an underestimate of the ligand occupancy of the antibody combining sites and thus an underestimate of affinity. Stevens also points out a method to correct for this error based on binomial analysis. Subsequently, Seligman[47] showed that the nature and density of the antigen on the solid surface can also influence the estimate of affinity.

Optimization of Antibody and Tracer Concentrations for Sensitivity

The primary limitations on the sensitivity of the assay are the antibody affinity and concentration, the tracer concentration, and the precision (reproducibility) of the data. In general, the higher the affinity of the antibody, the more sensitive the assay can be made. Once one prepares the highest affinity antibody available, this parameter limits the extent to which the other parameters can be manipulated. For instance, because the unlabeled antigen in the unknown sample is going to compete against labeled tracer antigen, the lower the tracer concentration, the lower the concentration of the unknown sample, which can be measured up to a point. That point is determined by the affinity, K_A, as can be seen from the theoretical considerations discussed previously.[38] The steepest part of the titration curve will occur in the range of concentrations around $1/K_A$. Concentrations of ligand much below $1/K_A$ will leave most of the antibody sites unoccupied so that competition will be less effective. Thus, there is no value in reducing the tracer concentration more than a few-fold lower than $1/K_A$. Therefore, although it is generally useful to increase the specific radioactivity of the tracer and reduce its concentration, it is important to be aware of this limit of $1/K_A$. Increasing the specific activity more than necessary can result in denaturation of antigen.

Similarly, lowering the antibody concentration will also increase sensitivity, up to a point. This limit also depends on $1/K_A$ and on the background "nonspecific binding." Decreasing the antibody concentration to the point that binding of tracer is too close to background will result in

loss of sensitivity due to loss of precision. In general, the fraction of tracer bound in the absence of competitor should be kept greater than 0.2, and in general closer to 0.5.[48]

A convenient procedure to follow to optimize tracer and antibody concentrations is first to choose the lowest tracer concentration that results in convenient counting times and counting precision for bound values of only one-half to one-tenth the total tracer. Then, keeping this tracer concentration constant, one dilutes out the antibody until the bound/free antigen ratio is close to 1.0 (bound/total = 0.5) in the absence of competitor. This antibody concentration in conjunction with this tracer concentration will generally give near-optimal sensitivities, within the limits noted previously. It is important to be aware that changing the tracer concentration will require readjusting the antibody concentration to optimize sensitivity.

Analysis of Data: Graphic and Numerical Representation

We have already examined the Scatchard plot (bound/free versus bound) and the plot of bound/free versus free or total antigen concentration as methods of determining affinity. The latter lends itself particularly to the type of competition curves that constitute an RIA. In fact, the independent variable must always be antigen concentration, as that is the known quantity one varies to generate the standard curve. Let us use B, F, and T to represent the concentrations of bound, free, and total antigen, respectively. We have seen that the plot of B/F versus F is more useful for determining the affinity, K_A, than the plot of B/F versus T. However, in RIA, the quantity one wants to determine is T, and correspondingly, the known independent variable in generating the standard curve is T. Another difference between the situation in RIA and that discussed previously is that, in RIA, one has both labeled and unlabeled antigen. The dependent variable, such as B/F, is the ratio of bound tracer over free tracer, as only radioactive antigen is counted. The B/F for the unlabeled antigen will be the same at equilibrium, assuming that labeled and unlabeled antigen bind the antibody equivalently, that is, with the same K_A. This assumption is not always valid and requires experimental testing.

The sigmoidal shape of B/F versus F or T, when F or T (the "dose") is plotted on a log scale, has been seen in Figure 7.6. The shape for B/T versus F or T would be similar. Note that because B + F = T,

$$\frac{B}{F} = \frac{B}{(T-B)} = \frac{B/T}{(1-B/T)} \tag{38}$$

and

$$\frac{B}{T} = \frac{B/F}{(1+B/F)} \tag{39}$$

These transformations can be useful. If one plots B/F or B/T versus F or T on a linear scale, then the shape is approximately hyperbolic, as in Figure 7.7. The plot of B/F versus T (log scale) was one of the first methods used to plot RIA data and is still among the most useful. The most sensitive part of the curve is the part with the steepest slope.

It has been shown by probability analysis that if the antigen has multiple determinants, each capable of binding

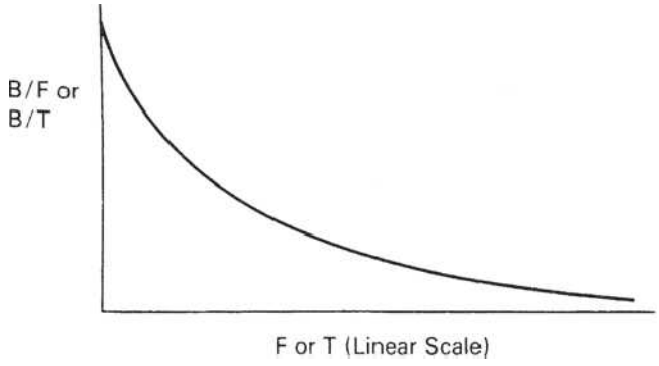


FIG. 7.7. Schematic Plot of B/F or B/T (the Bound Over Free or Total Antigen Concentration) as a Function of Free (F) or Total (T) Antigen Concentration, when Plotted on a Linear Scale. Contrast with similar plot on a log scale in Figure 7.6.

antibody molecules simultaneously and independently of one another, then the more such determinants capable of being recognized by the antibodies in use, the steeper will be the slope.[49] This effect of multideterminant binding on steepness arises because, in RIA, an antigen molecule is scored as bound whether it has one antibody molecule attached or several. It is scored as free only if no antibody molecules are attached. Thus, the probability that an antigen molecule is scored as free is the product of the probabilities that each of its determinants is free. The effect can lead to quite steep slopes and has been confirmed experimentally.[49]

A transform that allows linearization of the data in most cases is the logit transform.[50,51] To use this, one first expresses the data as B/B_0, where B_0 is the concentration of bound tracer in the absence of competitor. One then takes the logit transform of this ratio, defined as

$$\text{logit}\,(Y) = \ln\left[\frac{Y}{(1-Y)}\right] \tag{40}$$

where ln = the natural log (log to the base e). The plot of logit (B/B_0) versus ln T is usually a straight line (Fig. 7.8).

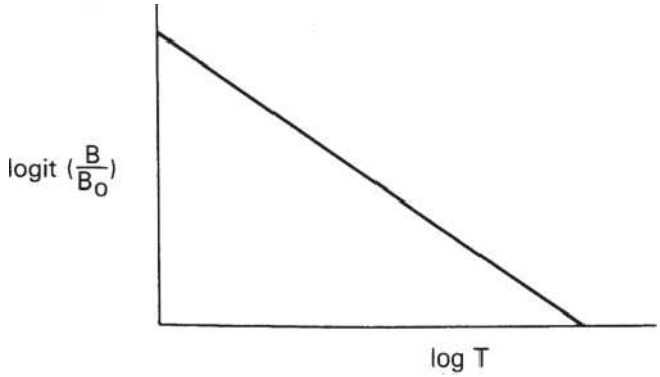


FIG. 7.8. Schematic Logit. Log plot used to linearize radioimmunoassay data. B and T are bound tracer and total antigen concentration, respectively, and B_0 is the value of B when no unlabeled antigen is added to tracer. The logit function is defined by Equation 40, logit (Y) = ln [Y/(1 – Y)].

The slope is usually −1 for the simplest case of a monoclonal antibody binding a monovalent antigen. The linearity of this plot obviously makes it very useful for graphical interpolation, which one would like to do to read antigen concentration off a standard curve. One additional advantage is that linearity facilitates tests of parallelism. If the unknown understudy is identical to the antigen used to generate the standard curve, then a dilution curve of the unknown should be parallel to the standard curve in this logit–log coordinate system. If not, the assay is not valid.

These and other methods of analyzing the data are discussed further by Feldman and Rodbard[52] and Rodbard,[39] including statistical treatment of data. Although a number of computer programs have become available for rapid analysis of RIA data without using manual plots of standard curves, they are all based on these and similar methods, and their accurate interpretation depends on an understanding of these concepts.

Corrections for B, F, and T

Before we leave this section on analysis of RIA data, we must point out a few controls and corrections to the data without which the results may be fallacious.

First, in any method that precipitates antibody and bound antigen (or uses a solid-phase antibody), there may always be a fraction of antigen that precipitates or binds nonspecifically in the absence of specific antibody. Thus, one must always run controls with normal serum or Ig to determine this background. The nonspecific binding usually increases linearly with antigen dose, that is, it does not saturate. This control value should be subtracted from B but does not affect F when measured independently, only F determined as T minus B. The total antigen that is meaningful is the sum of that which is specifically bound and that which is free. Nonspecifically bound antigen should be deleted from any term in which it appears.

A second correction is that for immunologically inactive radiolabel, that is, either free radioisotope, or isotope coupled to an impurity or to denatured antigen. The fraction of radioactive material that is immunologically reactive with the antibodies in the assay can be determined by using a constant, low concentration of labeled antigen and adding increasing concentrations of antibody. If there is no contamination with inactive material, all the radioactivity should be able to be bound by sufficient antibody. If the fraction of tracer bound reaches a plateau at <100% bound, then only this fraction is active in the assay. The importance of this correction can be seen from the example in which the tracer is only 80% active. Then, when the true B/F is 3 (B/T = 0.75), applying only to the active 80% of the tracer, the remaining 20%, which can never be bound, will mistakenly be included in the free tracer, doubling the amount that is measured as free. Thus, the measured B/F will be only 1.5 (ie, 0.6/0.4) instead of the true value of 3 (ie, 0.6/0.2). This factor of 2 will make a serious difference in the calculation of affinity, for instance, from a Scatchard plot. Also, it will result in a plateau in the Scatchard plot at high values of B/F, as with 20% of the tracer obligatorily free, B/F can never exceed 4 (ie, 0.8/0.2). To correct for this potentially serious problem, the inactive fraction must always be determined and subtracted from both F and T.

Nonequilibrium Radioimmunoassay

So far, we have assumed that tracer and unlabeled competitor are added simultaneously, and sufficient incubation time is allowed to achieve equilibrium. To measure the affinity, of course, equilibrium must be assured. However, suppose one's sole purpose is to measure the concentration of competitor by RIA. Then one can actually increase the sensitivity of the assay by adding the competitor first, allowing it to react with the antibody, and then intentionally adding the tracer for too short a time to reach a new equilibrium. One is essentially giving the competitor a competitive advantage. It can be shown that the slope of the dose-response curve, B/T versus total antigen added, is increased in the low-dose range—a mathematical measure of increased sensitivity. A detailed mathematical analysis of this procedure may be found in Rodbard et al.[53] Note, however, that use of such nonequilibrium conditions requires very careful control of time and temperature.

Enzyme-Linked Immunosorbent Assay

An alternative solid-phase readout system for the detection of antigen–antibody reactions is the ELISA.[54] In principle, the only difference from RIAs is that antibodies or antigen are covalently coupled to an enzyme instead of a radioisotope so that bound enzyme activity is measured instead of bound cpm. In practice, the safety and convenience of nonradioactive materials and the commercial availability of plate readers that can measure the absorbance of 96 wells in a few seconds account for ELISA's widespread use. Because both ELISA and RIA are governed by the same thermodynamic constraints, and the enzyme can be detected in the same concentration range as commonly used radioisotopes, the sensitivity and specificity are comparable. We consider three basic strategies for using ELISA assays to detect specific antibody or antigen.

As shown in Figure 7.9A, the indirect antibody method is the simplest way to detect and measure specific antibody in an unknown antiserum. Antigen is noncovalently attached to each well of a plastic microtiter dish. For this purpose, it is fortunate that most proteins bind nonspecifically to plastic. Excess free antigen is washed off, and the wells are incubated with an albumin solution to block the remaining nonspecific protein binding sites. The test antiserum is then added, and any specific antibody binds to the solid-phase antigen. Washing removes unbound antibodies. Enzyme-labeled anti-Ig is added. This binds to specific antibody already bound to antigen on the solid phase, bringing along covalently attached enzyme. Unbound antiglobulin-enzyme conjugate is washed off; substrate is then added. The action of bound enzyme on substrate produces a colored product, which is detected as increased absorbance in a spectrophotometer.

Although this method is quick and very sensitive, it is often difficult to quantitate. Within a defined range, the increase in optical density is proportional to the amount of specific antibody added in the first step. However, the amount of antibody bound is not measured directly. Instead, the antibody concentration of the sample is estimated by comparing it with a standard curve for a known amount of antibody. It is also difficult to determine affinity by this method because the solid-phase antigen tends to

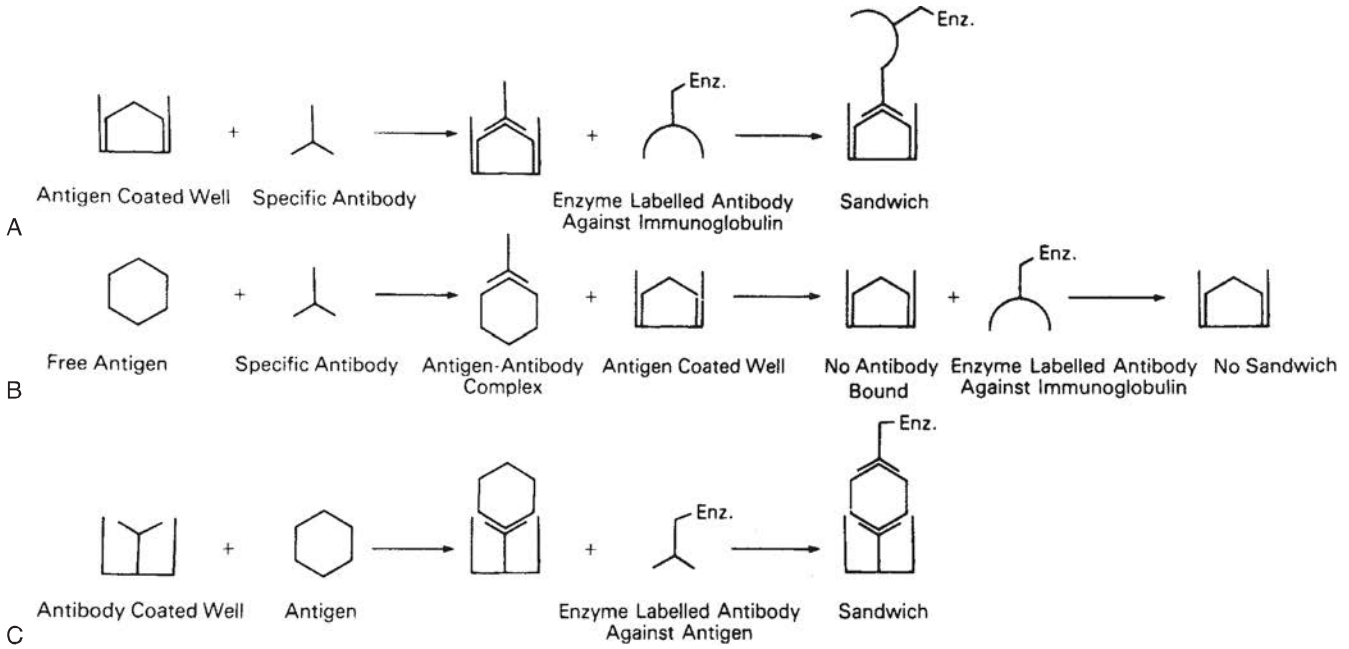


FIG. 7.9. Three Strategies for the Detection of Specific Antibody–Antigen Reactions Using the Enzyme-Linked Immunosorbant Assay Technique. A: Direct binding. B: Hapten inhibition. C: Antigen sandwich.

increase the apparent affinity. The sensitivity of this assay for detecting minute amounts of antibody is quite good, especially when affinity-purified antiglobulins are used as the enzyme-linked reagent. A single preparation of enzyme-linked antiglobulin can be used to detect antibodies to many different antigens. Alternatively, class-specific antiglobulins can be used to detect how much of a specific antibody response is due to each Ig class. Obviously, reproducibility of the assay depends on uniform antigen coating of each well, and the specificity depends on using purified antigen to coat the wells.

Figure 7.9B shows the competition technique for detecting antigen. Soluble antigen is mixed with limiting amounts of specific antibody in the first step. Then the mixture is added to antigen-coated wells and treated as described in Figure 7.9A. Any antigen–antibody complexes formed in the first step will reduce the amount of antibody bound to the plate, and hence will reduce the absorbance measured in the final step. This method permits the estimate of affinity for free antigen, which is related to the half-inhibitory concentration of antigen. Mathematical analysis of affinity by this approach was described by Friguet et al.[45] with modification by Stevens,[46] as discussed under RIA solid-phase methods. In addition, some estimate of cross-reactivity between the antigen in solution and that on the plate can be obtained.

Figure 7.9C shows the sandwich technique for detecting antigen. Microtiter plates are coated with specific antibody. Antigen is then captured by the solid-phase antibody. A second antibody specific for the antigen, and coupled to enzyme, is added. This binds to the solid-phase antigen–antibody complex, carrying enzyme along with it. Excess second antibody is washed off, and substrate is added. The absorbance produced is a function of the antigen concentration of the test solution, which can be determined from a standard curve. Specificity of the assay depends on the specificity of the antibodies used to coat the plate and detect antigen. Sensitivity depends on the affinity as well as amount of the first antibody coating the well, which can be increased by using affinity-purified antibodies or monoclonal antibodies in this step. The sandwich method depends on divalency of the antigen or else the two antibodies must be specific for different antigenic determinants on the same antigen molecule. When comparing two monoclonal antibodies to the same antigen, this technique can be used to ascertain whether they can bind simultaneously to the same molecule or whether they compete for the same site or sites close enough to cause steric hindrance.[55]

When antibodies are serially diluted across a plate, the last colored well indicates the titer. Specificity of binding can be demonstrated by coating wells with albumin and measuring antibody binding in parallel with the antigen-coated wells. Because it can be used to test many samples in a short time, ELISA is often used to screen culture supernatants in the production of hybridoma antibodies. The sensitivity of the method allows detection of clones producing specific antibodies at an early stage in cell growth.

An important caution when using native protein antigens to coat solid-phase surfaces (see Fig. 7.9A) is that binding to a surface can alter the conformation of the protein. For instance, using conformation specific monoclonal antibodies to myoglobin, Darst et al.[56] found that binding of myoglobin to a surface altered the apparent affinity of some antibodies more than others. This problem may be avoided by using the solution phase methods of Figure 7.9B or 7.9C.

ELIspot Assay

The normal ELISA assay can be modified to measure antibody production at the single cell level. In this method, tissue culture plates are coated with antigen, and various cell populations are cultured on the plate for 4 hours. During that time, B cells settle to the bottom and secrete antibodies, which bind antigen nearby and produce a footprint of the antibody-secreting cell. The cells are then washed off, and a second antibody, such as enzyme-labeled goat antihuman IgG, is added. Finally, unbound antibody is washed off, and enzyme substrate is added in soft agar. Over the next 10 minutes, each footprint of enzyme activity converts the substrate to a dark spot of insoluble dye, corresponding to the localized zone where the B cell originally secreted its antibody.

Using this method, it is possible to detect as few as 10 to 20 antibody-producing B cells in the presence of 10^6 spleen cells, and typical results for immunized mice range from 200 to 500 spot-forming cells per 10^6 spleen cells.[57,58] Clearly, to work at all, this assay must be capable of detecting the amount of antibody secreted by a single immune B cell and specific enough to exclude nonspecific antibodies produced by most nonimmune B cells. Sensitivity depends on the affinity and amount of antibodies secreted and may be optimized by titering the amount of antigen on the plate.

This type of assay is useful in analyzing the cellular requirements for antibody production in vitro, as the number of responding B cells is measured directly. It can also be used to detect antibodies made in the presence of excess antigen. For example, during acute infections[59] and in autoimmunity,[60] when antigen may be in excess over antibody, this assay makes it possible to measure antibody-producing B cells, even though free antibody may not be detectable in circulation. It can also be used to measure local production of self-reactive antibodies in a specific tissue, such as synovium. By using two detecting antibodies, each specific for a different Ig class and coupled to a different enzyme, and two substrates producing different colored dyes, cells secreting IgA and IgG simultaneously can be detected.[61] Recently, ELIspot was used to show that bacterial deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA)-containing CpG sequences is a polyclonal B-cell mitogen.[62]

ELIspot can also detect secreted cytokines, as opposed to antibodies, by coating the plate with a capture antibody and detecting antigen with an enzyme-coupled second antibody (as in a sandwich ELISA; see Fig. 7.9C). For example, using plates coated with monoclonal antibody to interleukin (IL)-4, T cells secreting IL-4 could be detected,[63] providing one measure of T helper 2 cells.

SPECIFICITY AND CROSS-REACTIVITY

The specificity of an antibody or antiserum is defined by its ability to discriminate between the antigen against which it was made (called the homologous antigen or immunogen) and any other antigen one might test. In practice, one cannot test the whole universe of antigens but only selected antigens. In this sense, specificity can only be defined experimentally within that set of antigens one chooses to compare. Karush[30] has defined a related term, selectivity, as the ability of an antibody to discriminate, in an all-or-none fashion, between two related ligands. Thus, selectivity depends not only on the relative affinity of the antibody for the two ligands but also on the experimental lower limit for detection of reactivity. For instance, an anticarbohydrate antibody with an affinity of 10^5 M^{-1} for the immunogen may appear to be highly selective, as reaction with a related carbohydrate with a 100-fold lower affinity, 10^3 M^{-1}, may be undetectable. On the other hand, an antibody with an affinity of 10^9 M^{-1} for the homologous ligand may appear to be less selective because any reaction with a related ligand with a 100-fold lower affinity would still be quite easily detectable.

Conversely, cross-reactivity is defined as the ability to react with related ligands other than the immunogen. More usually, this is examined from the point of view of the ligand. Thus, one might say that antigen Y cross-reacts with antigen X because it binds to anti-X antibodies. Note that in this sense, it is the two antigens that are cross-reactive, not the antibody. However, the cross-reactivity of two antigens, X and Y, can be defined only with respect to a particular antibody or antiserum. For instance, a different group of anti-X antibodies may not react at all with Y so that with respect to these antibodies, Y would not be cross-reactive with X. One can also use the term in a different sense, saying that some anti-X antibodies cross-react with antigen Y.

In most cases, cross-reactive ligands have lower affinity than the immunogen for a particular antibody. However, exceptions can occur in which a cross-reactive antigen binds with a higher affinity than the homologous antigen itself. This phenomenon is called heterocliticity, and the antigen that has a higher affinity for the antibody than does the immunogen is said to be heteroclitic. Antibodies that manifest this behavior are also described as heteroclitic antibodies. A good example is the case of antibodies raised in C57BL/10 mice against the hapten nitrophenyl acetyl. These antibodies have been shown by Mäkelä and Karjalainen[64] to bind with higher affinity to the cross-reactive hapten, nitroiodophenyl acetyl, than to the immunogen itself. Another example is the case of retro-inverso or retro-D peptides.[65–69] By reversing the chirality from L to D amino acids, and simultaneously reversing the sequence of amino acids, one can produce a peptide that is resistant to proteolysis and has its side chains approximately in the same position as the original L amino acid peptide, with the exception of some amino acids with secondary chiral centers such as Thr and Ile. However, the backbone NH_2 and COOH moieties are reversed. Antibodies that interact with only the side chains might not distinguish these peptides, whereas antibodies that interact with the main chain as well as side chains might distinguish them and have potentially higher or lower affinity. In a study of monoclonal antibodies to a hexapeptide from histone H3, some bound the retro-D form with higher affinity than the native sequence and some did not.[67,68] The former are examples of heterocliticity. In addition to greater binding affinity, the retro-D peptides may have even greater activity in vivo because of their resistance to proteolysis.[65–69] This stability makes them more useful as drugs as well.[65,66,70]

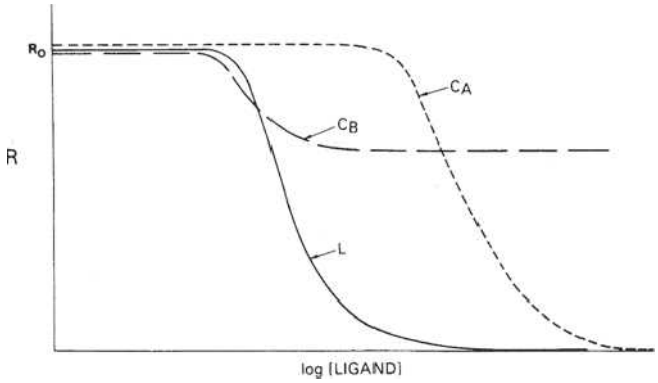


FIG. 7.10. Schematic Radioimmunoassay Binding Curves for Homologous Ligand L and Cross-Reacting Ligands. Cross-reacting ligand C_A manifests type 1 or true cross-reactivity demonstrated by complete inhibition of tracer ligand binding and a lower affinity. Ligand C_B displays type 2 cross-reactivity or determinant sharing, as recognized from the plateau at less than 100% inhibition, but not necessarily a lower affinity. The ordinate *R* is the ratio of bound/free radiolabeled tracer ligand, and R_0 is the limit of R as the concentration of all ligands, including tracer, approaches zero. From Berzofsky and Schechter,[71] with permission.

Cross-reactivity has often been detected by methods such as the Ouchterlony test, or hemagglutination (see the following for descriptions of both of these) or similar methods, which have in common the fact that they do not distinguish well between differences in affinity and differences in concentration. This practical aspect, coupled with the heterogeneity of immune antisera, has led to ambiguities in the usage of the terms "cross-reactivity" and "specificity." With the advent of RIA and ELISA techniques, this ambiguity in the terminology, as well as in the interpretation of data, has become apparent.

For these reasons, Berzofsky and Schechter[71] have defined two forms of cross-reactivity and, correspondingly, two forms of specificity. These two forms of cross-reactivity are illustrated by the two prototype competition RIA curves in Figure 7.10. In reality, most antisera display both phenomena simultaneously.

Type 1 cross-reactivity, or true cross-reactivity, is defined as the ability of two ligands to react with the same site on the same antibody molecule, possibly with different affinities. For example, the related haptens dinitrophenyl and trinitrophenyl may react with different affinity for antibodies raised to dinitrophenyl hapten. In protein antigens, such differences could occur with small changes in primary sequence (eg, the conservative substitution of threonine for serine), or with changes in conformation, such as the cleavage of the protein into fragments (Fig. 7.11).[71–75] If a peptide fragment contained all the contact residues in an antigenic determinant (ie, those that contact the antibody-combining site), it might cross-react with the native determinant for antibodies against the native form but with lower affinity because the peptide would not retain the native conformation. This type of affinity difference is illustrated by competitor C_A in Figure 7.10, in which complete displacement of tracer can be achieved at high enough concentrations of

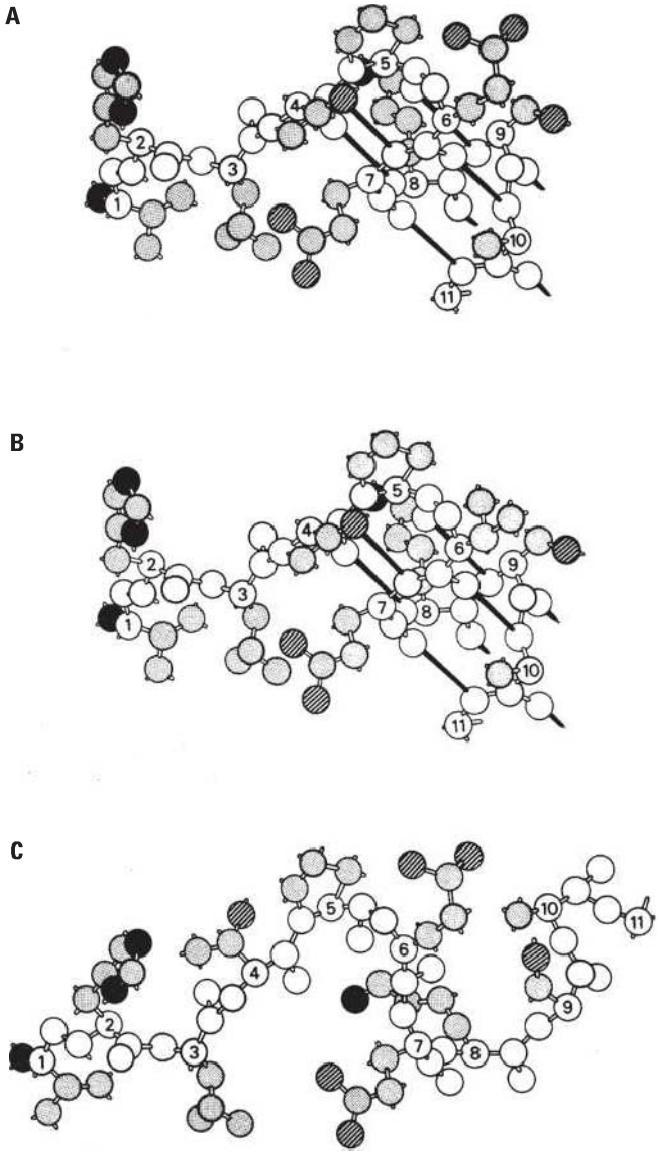


FIG. 7.11. An Artist's Drawing of the Amino Terminal Region of the β Chain of Hemoglobin. **A:** The first 11 residues of the β^A chain. **B:** The comparable regions of the β^S chain. The substitution of valine for the normal glutamic acid at position 6 makes a distinct antigenic determinant to which a subpopulation of antibodies may be isolated.[72,73] **C:** A schematic diagram of the sequence in (**A**) unfolded as occurs when the protein is denatured. This region may be cleaved from the protein, or the peptide synthesized,[74] resulting in changed antigenic reactivity. An antiserum prepared to hemoglobin (or the β chain thereof) might exhibit cross-reactivity with the structures shown in (**B**) and (**C**), but the molecular mechanisms would be different. Polypeptide backbone atoms are in *white* in the side chains, oxygen atoms are *hatched*, nitrogen atoms are *black*, and carbon atoms are *lightly stippled*. Adapted from Berxofsky and Schechter[71] and Dean and Schecter.[75]

C_A, but higher concentrations of C_A than of the homologous ligand, L, are required to produce any given degree of inhibition.

A separate issue from affinity differences is the issue of whether the cross-reactive ligand reacts with all or only a subpopulation of the antibodies in a heterogeneous serum.

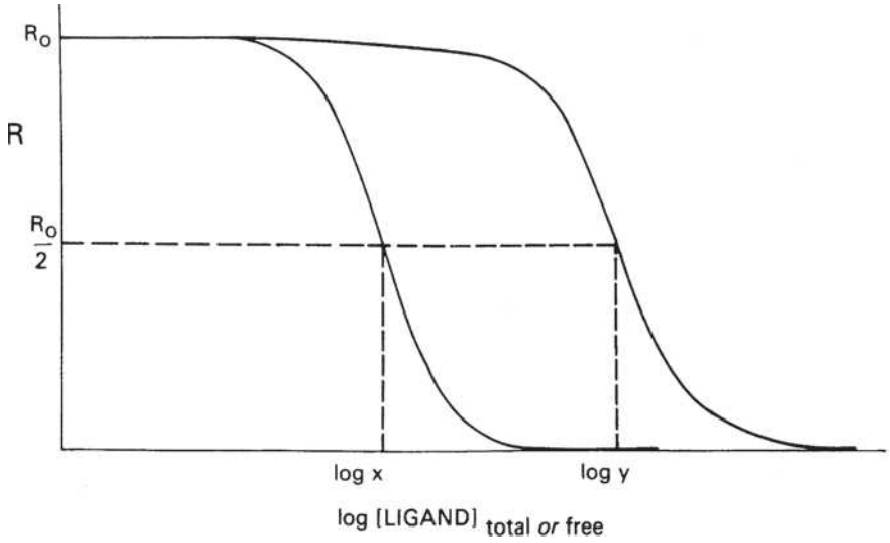


FIG. 7.12. Schematic Radioimmunoassay Binding Curves Showing the Effect of Affinity on the Midpoint and the Slope at the Midpoint and the Value of Using Free (Ligand) Rather than Total (Ligand). Ordinate R is the ratio of bound/free radiolabeled tracer ligand, and R_0 the limit of R as all ligand concentrations approach zero. If x and y are the concentrations of ligands X and Y that reduce R to exactly $R_0/2$, then if the abscissa is total ligand concentration, $x = 1/K_X + [S]_t/2$ and $y = 1/K_Y + [S]_t/2$, where $[S]_t$ is the concentration of antibody binding sites and K_X and K_Y the affinities of the antibody for the respective ligands. However, if the abscissa is free ligand concentration, $x = 1/K_X$ and $y = 1/K_Y$ so that the ratio x/y (or the difference log x – log y on a log plot) corresponds to the ratio of affinities K_Y/K_X. Note that the slopes at the midpoints are the same on a log scale, but that for Y would be only K_Y/K_X that for X on a linear scale. From Berxofsky and Schechter,[71] with permission.

This second type of cross-reactivity, which we call type 2 cross-reactivity or shared reactivity, therefore can occur only when the antibody population is heterogeneous, as in most conventional antisera. In this case, the affinity of the cross-reactive ligand may be greater than, less than, or equal to that of the homologous ligand for those antibodies with which it interacts. Therefore, the competition curve is not necessarily displaced to the right, but the inhibition will reach a plateau at less than complete inhibition, as illustrated by competitor C_B in Figure 7.10. As an example, let us consider the case of a protein with determinants X and Y, and an antiserum against this protein containing both anti-X and anti-Y antibodies. Then a mutant protein in which determinant Y was so altered as to be unrecognizable by anti-Y, but determinant X was intact, would manifest type 2 cross-reactivity. It would compete with the wild-type protein only for anti-X antibodies (possibly even with equal affinity), but not for anti-Y antibodies.

Of course, both types of cross-reactivity could occur simultaneously. A classic example would be the peptide fragment previously discussed in the case of type I cross-reactivity. Suppose the fragment contained the residues of determinant X, albeit not in the native conformation, but did not contain the residues of a second determinant, Y, which was also expressed on the native protein. If the antiserum to the native protein consisted of anti-X and anti-Y, the peptide would compete only for anti-X antibodies (type 2 cross-reactivity) but would have a lower affinity than the native protein even for these antibodies. Thus, the competition curve would be shifted to the right and would plateau before reaching complete inhibition.[†††]

In the case of a homogeneous (eg, monoclonal) antibody in which only type 1 or true cross-reactivity can occur, one can quantitate the differences in affinity for different cross-reactive ligands by a method analogous to the B/F versus F method described previously. Suppose that ligands X and Y cross-react with homologous ligand L for a monoclonal antibody. If one plots the bound/free (B/F = R) ratio for radiolabeled tracer ligand L as a function of the log of the concentration of competitors X and Y, one obtains two parallel competition curves (Fig. 7.12),[71] under the appropriate conditions (see subsequent discussion). The first condition is that the concentration of free tracer be less than $1/K_L$, the affinity for tracer. In this case, it can be shown[71] that

$$K_X \approx \frac{1}{[X]_{free}} \tag{41}$$

at the midpoint where $R = R_0/2$, where K_X = affinity for X. This is analogous to Equation 21 for the case in which unlabeled homologous ligand is the competitor. Also, in

[†††]An ambiguous case could occur experimentally in which the distinction between the two types of cross-reactivity would be blurred. For example, in the case of antibodies that all react with determinant X but have a very wide range of affinities for X, some such antibodies may have such a low affinity for cross-reactive determinant X′ that they would appear not to bind X′ at all. Then a competition curve using X′ might appear to reach a plateau at incomplete inhibition, even though all the antibodies were specific for X, and the only difference between X and X′ was affinity.

analogy with Equation 23, it can be shown that if the total concentration of competitor, $[X]_t$, is used instead of the free concentration, $[X]_{free}$, an error term will arise, giving

$$[X]_t \text{ (at } R = R_0/2) = \frac{1}{K_X} + \frac{[S]_t}{2} \quad (42)$$

Thus, with competitor on a linear scale, the difference in midpoint for competitors X and Y will correspond to the difference $1/K_X - 1/K_Y$ regardless of whether free or total competitor is plotted, but the ratio of midpoint concentrations will equal K_X/K_Y only if the free concentrations are used. This last point is important if one plots the log of competitor concentration, as is usually done, as the horizontal displacement between the two curves on a log scale corresponds to the ratio $[X]/[Y]$, not the difference.[71]

If a second condition also holds, namely, that the concentration of bound tracer is small compared to the antibody site concentration $[S]_t$, then the slopes (on a linear scale) of the curves at their respective midpoints (where $R = R_0/2$) will be proportional to the affinity for that competitor, K_X or K_Y (71). (Both conditions can be met by keeping tracer L small relative to both K_L and $[S]_t$.) When $[X]_{free}$ and $[Y]_{free}$ are plotted on a log scale, the slopes will appear to be equal (ie, the curves will appear parallel) because a parallel line shifted m-fold to the right on a log scale will actually be 1/m as steep, at any point, in terms of the antilog as abscissa.

When the antibodies are heterogeneous in affinity, the curves will be broadened and in general will not be parallel. When heterogeneity of specificity is present, and type 2 cross-reactivity occurs, it should be pointed out that the fractional inhibition achieved at the plateau in a B/F versus free competitor plot will not be proportional to the fraction of antibodies reacting with that competitor but will be proportional to a weighted fraction, where the antibody concentrations are weighted by their affinity for the tracer.[71]

These two types of cross-reactivity lead naturally to two definitions of specificity.[71] The overall specificity of a heterogeneous antiserum is a composite of both of these facets of specificity. Type 1 specificity is based on the relative affinities of the antibody for the homologous ligand and any cross-reactive ligands. If the affinity is much higher for the homologous ligand than for any cross-reactive ligand tested, then the antibody is said to be highly specific for the homologous ligand (ie, it discriminates very well between this ligand and the others). If the affinity for cross-reactive ligands is below the threshold for detection in an experimental situation, then type 1 specificity gives rise to selectivity as was discussed previously.[30] The specificity can even be quantitated in terms of the ratio of affinities for the homologous ligand and a cross-reactive ligand.[76] It is this type 1 specificity that most immunochemists would call true specificity, just as we have called type 1 cross-reactivity true cross-reactivity.

The common use of the term "cross-reactivity" to include type 2 or partial reactivity leads to a second definition of specificity, which applies only to heterogeneous populations of antibodies such as antisera. We call this type 2 specificity. If all the antibodies in the mixture react with the immunogen, but only a small proportion react with any single cross-reactive antigen, then the antiserum would be said to be relatively specific for the immunogen. Note that it does not matter whether the affinity of a subpopulation that reacts with a cross-reactive antigen is high or low (type 1 cross-reactivity). As long as that subpopulation is a small fraction of the antibodies, the mixture is specific. Thus, type 2 specificity depends on the relative concentrations of antibodies in the heterogeneous antiserum, not just on their affinities. Also note that one can use these relative concentrations of antibody subpopulations to compare the specificity of a single antiserum for two cross-reactive ligands. However, it would not be meaningful to compare the specificity of two different antisera for the same ligand by comparing the fraction of antibodies in each serum which reacted with that ligand. Although type 2 specificity may appear to some a less classic concept of specificity than type 1, it is type 2 specificity that one primarily measures in such assays as the Ouchterlony double immunodiffusion test, and it carries equal weight with type 1 specificity in such assays as hemagglutination, discussed in the following section. Type 2 specificity also leads naturally to the concept of "multispecificity," described in the following section.

Multispecificity

The theory of multispecificity, introduced and analyzed by Talmadge[77] and Inman,[78,79] and discussed on a structural level by Richards et al.,[80] suggests a mechanism by which the diversity and specificity of antisera can be expanded and also understood. The idea is that each antibody may actually bind, with high affinity, a variety of diverse antigens. When one immunizes with immunogen A, one selects for many distinct antibodies, which have in common only that they all react with A. In fact, each antibody may react with other compounds, but if fewer than 1% of the antibodies bind B, and fewer than 1% bind C, and so on, then by type 2 specificity, the whole antiserum will appear to be highly specific for A. Note that the subpopulation that binds B may react with an affinity for B as high as or higher than that for A so that the population would not be type 1 specific for A. This same population would presumably be selected if one immunized with B. The net result would be that the diversity of highly (type 2) specific antisera an organism could generate would be even greater than the diversity of B-cell clones (or antibody structures). This principle can explain how polyclonal antisera can sometimes appear paradoxically more specific than a monoclonal antibody.

OTHER METHODS

We mention only a few of the other methods for measuring antigen–antibody interactions. Other useful techniques include quenching of the tryptophan fluorescence of the antibody by certain antigens on binding[81] (a sensitive method useful for such experiments as fast kinetic studies), antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity, immunofluorescence including flow cytometry, immunohistochemistry, and inhibition by antibody of plaque formation by antigen-conjugated bacteriophage[82] (a method as sensitive as RIA as inhibition of even a few phage virions can be detected).

Quantitative Precipitin

Among the earliest known properties of antibodies were their ability to neutralize pathogenic bacteria and their ability to form precipitates with bacterial culture supernatants. Both activities of each antiserum were highly specific for the bacterial strain against which the antiserum was made. The precipitates contained antibody protein and bacterial products. The supernatants contained decreased amounts of antibody protein and, under the right conditions, had lost the ability to neutralize bacteria. However, quantitation of the antibody precipitated was difficult because the precipitate contained antigen protein as well as antibody protein. Heidelberger and Kendall[83,84] solved this problem when they found that purified pneumococcal cell wall polysaccharide could precipitate with antipneumococcal antibodies. In this case, the amount of protein nitrogen measured in the precipitate was entirely due to antibody protein, and the amount of reducing sugar was mostly due to the antigen. Plotting the amount of antibody protein precipitated from a constant volume of antiserum by increasing amounts of carbohydrate antigen gives the curve shown in Figure 7.13.

As shown in Figure 7.13A, the amount of antibody precipitated rises initially, reaches a plateau, and then declines. The point of maximum precipitation was found to coincide with the point of complete depletion of neutralizing antibodies and is called the equivalence point. The amount of antibody protein in the precipitate at equivalence is considered to equal the total amount of specific antibody in that volume of antiserum. The rising part of the curve is called the antibody excess zone (antigen limiting), and the part of the curve beyond the equivalence point is called the antigen excess zone.

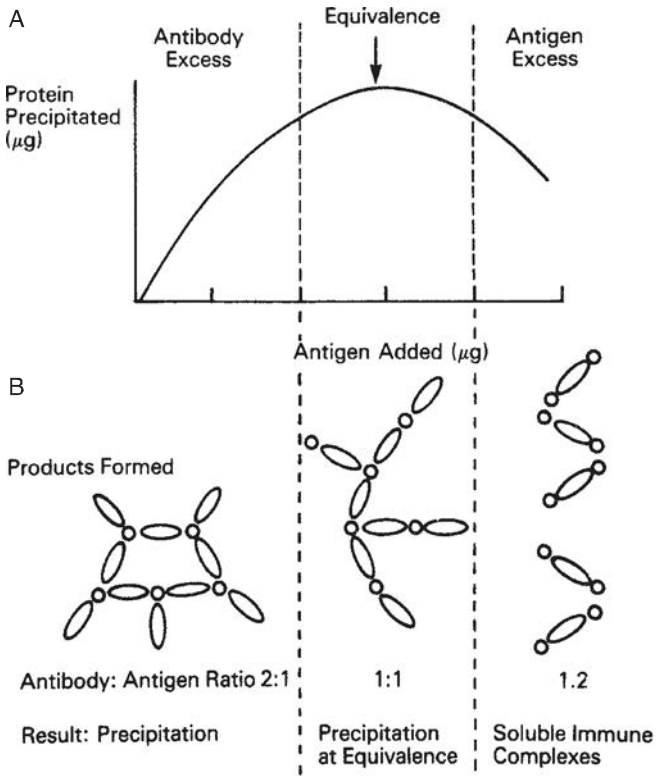


FIG. 7.13. Quantitative Immunoprecipitation. To a fixed amount of specific antibody are added increasing amounts of nonprotein antigen. The figure shows the amount of antibody protein **(A)** and the ratio of antibody to antigen **(B)** found in the precipitate. At antigen excess, soluble immune complexes are found in the supernatant, and the precipitate is decreased.

Supernatants and precipitates were carefully analyzed for each zone of antibody or antigen excess, as shown in Figure 7.13B. When antigen was limiting, the precipitate contained high ratios of antibody to antigen. The supernatant in this zone contained free antibody with no detectable antigen. As more antigen was added, the amount of antibody in the precipitate rose, but the ratio of antibody to antigen fell. At equivalence, no free antibody or antigen could be detected in the supernatant. As more antigen was added, the precipitate contained less antibody, but the ratio of antibody to antigen remained constant. The supernatant now contained antigen–antibody complexes because the complexes at antigen excess were small enough to remain in solution. No unbound antibody was detected.

The lattice theory[83,84] is a model of the precipitation reaction that explains these observations. It assumes that antibodies are multivalent and antigens are bivalent or polyvalent. Thus, long chains can form consisting of alternating antibody linked to antigen linked to antibody, and so on. The larger the size of the aggregate, the less soluble the product. In the antibody excess zone, branch points can form whenever three antibodies bind to a single antigen, resulting in a three-dimensional lattice structure, which precipitates. In the equivalence zone, when equimolar amounts of antibody and antigen are mixed, the likelihood of more than two antibodies binding the same antigen molecule decreases. With fewer branch points, the product is more likely to consist of long chains of alternating antibody and antigen molecules in the molar ratio of 1:1. At even higher antigen ratios, each antigen molecule will have 0 or 1 antibody bound, so shorter chain lengths are found, until the product is small enough to remain in solution. Such soluble antigen–antibody "immune complexes" are detectable in the antigen excess zone, where no free antibody is found.

Besides explaining the observed precipitation phenomena on a statistical basis, the lattice theory made the important prediction that antibodies are bivalent or multivalent. The subsequent structural characterization of antibodies revealed their molecular weight and valency. Antibodies are indeed bivalent, except for IgM, which is functionally pentavalent and forms precipitates even more efficiently.

Antigens can be polyvalent either by having multiple copies of the same determinant or by having many different determinants, each of which reacts with different antibodies in a polyclonal antiserum. The predominant antigenic determinants of polysaccharides are often the nonreducing end of the chain. Branched chain polysaccharides have more than one end and are polyvalent. Nonbranched chains such as dextran (polymer of glucose) are monovalent for end specific antidextran antibodies and do not precipitate them.[85] However, a second group of antidextran antibodies is specific for internal glucose moieties. Because each dextran polymer consists of many internal units, it is polyvalent for

internal α(1 → 6)-linked glucose-specific antibodies. Thus, unbranched dextran polymer can be used to distinguish between end-specific and internal-specific antibodies, as it will precipitate with the latter antibodies but not the former.[85,86] Monomeric protein antigens, such as myoglobin or lysozyme, behave as if they were polyvalent for heterogeneous antisera but monovalent for monoclonal antibodies. This results from the fact that each antigen molecule has multiple antigenic determinants but only one copy of each determinant. Thus, a polyspecific antiserum can bind more than one antibody to different determinants on the same molecule and form a lattice. However, using antibodies directed against a single determinant (such as a monoclonal antibody), no precipitate will form. In this case, antigen–antibody reactions must be measured by some other binding assay, such as RIA or ELISA.

Immunodiffusion and the Ouchterlony Method

One of the most useful applications of immunoprecipitation is in combination with a diffusion system.[87] Diffusion could be observed by gently adding a drop of protein solution to a dish of water without disturbing the liquid. The rate of migration of protein into the liquid is proportional to the concentration gradient times the diffusion coefficient of the protein according to Fick's law,

$$\frac{dQ}{dt} = -DA\frac{dc}{dx} \tag{43}$$

where Q = amount of substance that diffuses across an area A per unit time t; D = diffusion coefficient, which depends on the size of the molecule; and dc/dx = concentration gradient. Because antibody molecules are so large, their diffusion coefficients are quite low, and diffusion often takes 1 day or more to cover the 5 to 20 mm required in most systems. In order to stabilize the liquid phase for such long periods of time, a gel matrix is added to provide support without hindering protein migration. In practice, 0.3% to 1.5% agar or agarose will permit migration of proteins up to the size of antibodies while preventing mechanical and thermal currents. By carefully adjusting the concentration of antibody and antigen, these systems can provide a simple analysis of the number of antigenic components and the concentration of a given component. By adjusting the geometry of the reactants entering the gel, immunodiffusion can provide useful information concerning antigenic identity or difference, or partial cross-reaction, as well as the purity of antigens and the specificity of antibodies.

In single diffusion methods,[88–91] antibody is incorporated in the gel, and antigen is allowed to diffuse from one end of a tube gel in one dimension or from a hole in a gel in a petri dish in two dimensions. Over time, the antigen concentration reaches equivalence with the antibody in the gel, and a precipitin band forms. As more antigen diffuses, antigen excess is achieved at this position, so the precipitate dissolves and the boundary of equivalence moves farther. By integrating Fick's law, we find that the distance moved is proportional to the square root of time. If two species of antigen a and b are diffusing, and the antiserum contains antibodies to both, two independent bands will form. These will move at independent rates, depending on antigen concentration in the sample, diffusion coefficient (size), and antibody concentration in the agar. Similarly, in the two-dimensional method, at a given radius of diffusion, antigen concentration will be equivalent to the antibody in the gel, and a precipitin ring will form. The higher the initial antigen concentration, the farther the antigen will diffuse before precipitating and the wider the area of the ring will be. The area of the ring is directly proportional to the initial antigen concentration. This method provides a convenient quantitative assay that can be used to measure Ig classes by placing test serum in the well and antiserum to each class of human Ig in the agar. Sensitivity can be increased by lowering the concentration of antiserum in the gel, giving wider rings, as the antigen must reach a lower concentration to be at equivalence. However, the antiserum cannot be diluted too far, or no precipitate will form.

The double diffusion methods use the same principles, except that instead of having one reactant incorporated in the gel at a constant concentration, both antigen and antibody are loaded some distance apart in a gel of pure agarose alone and are allowed to diffuse toward each other. At some point in the gel, antigen diffusion and antibody diffusion will provide sufficient concentrations of both reactants for immunoprecipitation to occur. The line of precipitation becomes a barrier for the further diffusion of the reactants, so the precipitin band is stable. If the antigen preparation is heterogeneous, and the antiserum is a heterogeneous mixture of antibodies, different bands will form for each pair of antigen and antibody reacting at positions dependent on concentration and molecular weight of each. The number of lines indicates the number of antigen–antibody systems reacting in the gel. The ability of immunodiffusion to separate different antigen–antibody systems gives a convenient estimate of antigen purity or antibody specificity.

In the most widely used Ouchterlony method of double diffusion in two dimensions,[87] three or more wells are cut in an agarose gel in a dish in the pattern shown in Figure 7.14. Antigen a or b is placed in the upper wells, whereas antiserum containing anti-a or anti-b is placed in the lower well. Each antigen–antibody reaction system will form its own precipitin line between the wells. As shown in Figure 7.14A, this should extend an equal distance to the left and right of the wells. When different antigens are present in different wells (see Fig. 7.14C), the precipitating systems do not interact immunochemically, so the precipitin lines cross. However, when the same antigen is present in both wells (see Fig. 7.14B), each line of precipitation becomes a barrier preventing the other antigen and antibody from diffusing past the precipitin line. This shortens the precipitin line on that side of the well. In addition, antigen diffusion from the neighboring wells shifts the zone of antigen excess, causing the equivalence line to deviate downward and meet between the two wells. Complete fusion of precipitin lines with no spurs is called a line of identity, indicating that the antigen in each well reacts with all the antibody capable of reacting with antigen in the other well.

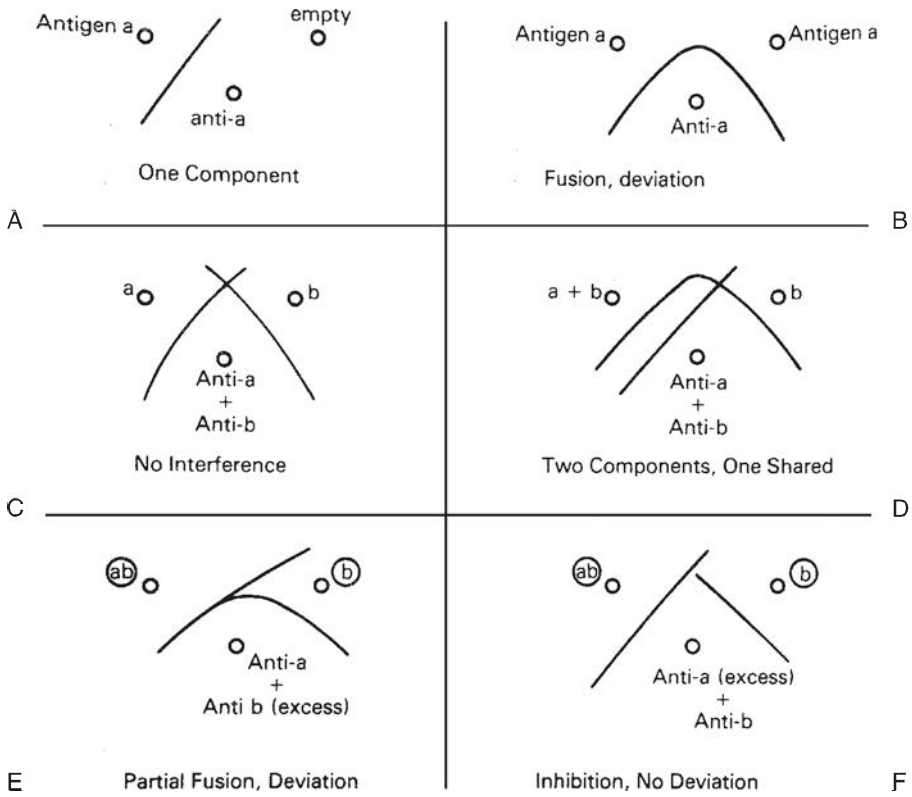


FIG. 7.14. Immunodiffusion of Two Components in Two Dimensions. Cross-reactions produce inhibition *(shortened bands)* or deviation *(curved bands)*. Lines of identity are shown in (B) and (D).[87]

The analytical power of this method is shown in Figure 7.14D. When a mixed antigen sample is placed in one well and pure antigen b is placed in the other well, antiserum to a plus b gives the pattern shown. Two precipitin lines form with the left well and one precipitin line with the right well. The line of complete fusion allows us to identify the second band as antigen b; the first band is antigen a. From their relative distance of migration, we can conclude that antigen a is in excess over antigen b, assuming their diffusion coefficients are comparable and both antibodies are present in equal amounts. Finally, because the precipitin line of antigen a-anti-a is not shortened at all, there is no contamination of the right sample with antigen a, and the two antigens do not cross-react.

The type of cross-reactivity detected by this Ouchterlony double immunodiffusion in agar is what we have defined previously as type 2 cross-reactivity. The method is not suitable for measuring affinity differences required for quantitating type 1 cross-reactivity. Sensitivity can be increased by use of radioactive antigen and detection of the precipitate by autoradiography.

Immunoelectrophoresis

Some antigen–antibody systems are too complex for double immunodiffusion analysis, either because there are too many bands or they are too close together. Immunoelectrophoresis combines electrophoresis in one dimension (Fig. 7.15) with immunodiffusion in the perpendicular direction. In the first step, electrophoresis separates the test antigens according to charge and size, in effect, separating the origin of diffusion of different antigens. This is equivalent to having each antigen start in a different well, as shown in the right-hand panel. A horizontal trough is then cut into the agar and filled with antiserum to all the components. Immunodiffusion occurs between the separated antigens and the linear source of antibody. The results for a mixture of three antigens approximate those shown for three antigens in separate wells.[87] Fusion, deviation, and inhibition between precipitin lines can be analyzed as described previously. The resolution of each band is somewhat decreased due to widening of the origin of diffusion during electrophoresis. However, the immunodiffusion of unseparated human serum proteins, for example, is greatly facilitated by prior electrophoresis. Starting from a single well, only the heavier bands would be visible. However, prior electrophoresis makes it possible for each electrophoretic species to make its own precipitin line. Monospecific antiserum can be placed in a parallel horizontal trough so that each band of precipitation can be identified. Immunoelectrophoresis is commonly used to diagnose myeloma proteins in human serum. The unknown serum is electrophoresed, followed by immunodiffusion against antibodies to human Ig heavy or light chains. A widening arc of IgG suggests the presence of an abnormal Ig species. At this same electrophoretic mobility, a precipitin line with anti-κ, but not anti-λ, reactivity strongly suggests the diagnosis of myeloma or monoclonal gammopathy, as these proteins arise from a single clone that synthesizes only one light chain. All normal electrophoretic species of human Igs contain both light chain isotypes, although κ exceeds λ by the ratio of 2:1 in humans. As shown in Figure 7.15C, the abnormal arc with γ mobility reacts

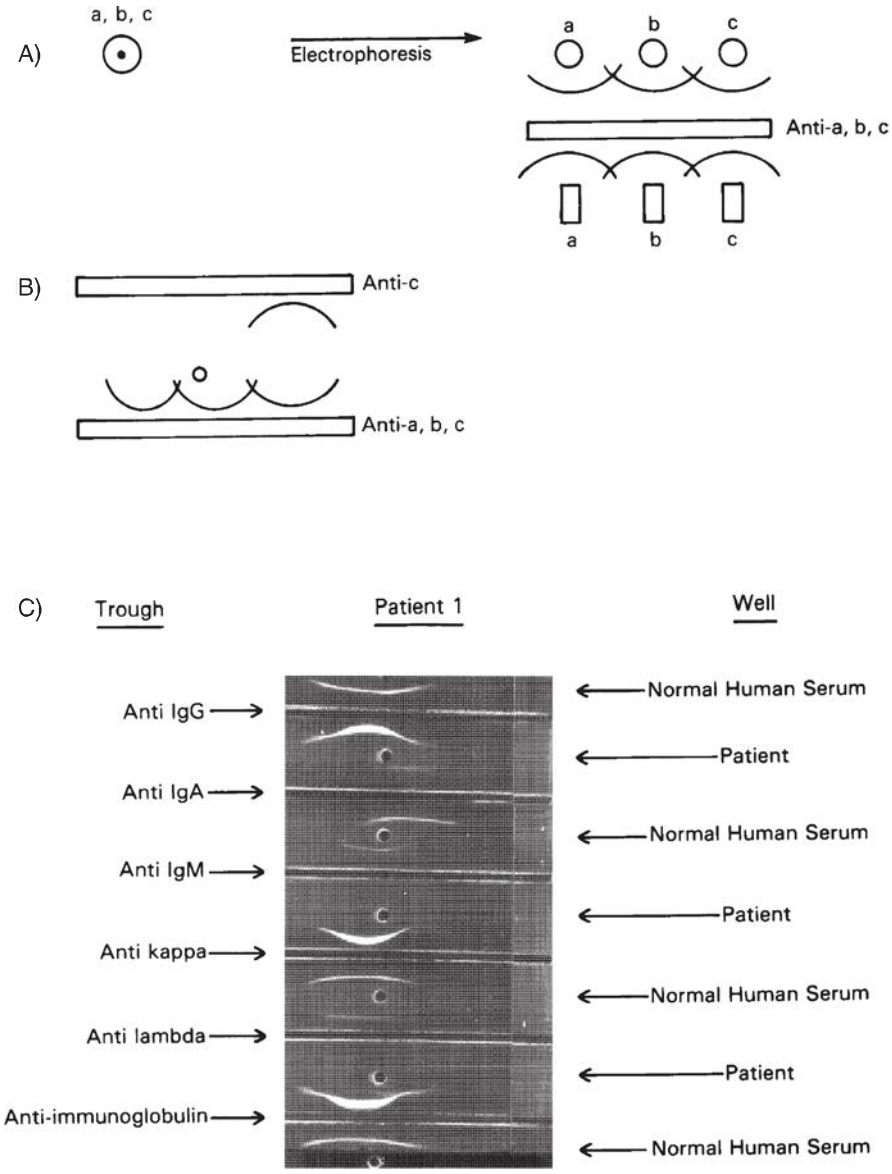


FIG. 7.15. Immunoelectrophoresis. A sample containing multiple components is electrophoresed in an agarose gel, separating the antigens in the horizontal dimension. Then a horizontal trough is cut into the gel and antiserum is added. Immunodiffusion between the separated antigens and the trough is equivalent to having separate wells, each with a different antigen.[87] This technique is used to identify a myeloma protein in human serum. Sera from the patient or normal individual were placed in the circular wells and electrophoresed. Antisera were then placed in the rectangular troughs and immunodiffusion proceeded perpendicular to the direction of electrophoresis. The abnormally strong reaction with anti-immunoglobulin (Ig) G and anti-κ, but no reaction with anti-λ antibodies, indicate a monoclonal protein (IgG,κ), as polyclonal Ig should react with both anti–light-chain antisera. Failure to form a band with anti-IgM and a reduced band with anti-IgA show typical reduction of normal Igs in this disease. (Photographs courtesy of Theresa Wilson, NIH Clinical Chemistry Section.)

with anti-IgG and anti-κ but not anti-λ antiserum. Thus, it is identified as an IgG-κ monoclonal protein.

Hemagglutination and Hemagglutination Inhibition

Hemagglutination

A highly sensitive technique yielding semiquantitative values for the interaction of antibody with antigen involves the agglutination by antibodies of red blood cells coated with the antigen.[92] For exogenous antigens that are adsorbed to the red blood cell surface, the reaction is called passive hemagglutination. Untreated red blood cells are negatively charged, and electrostatic forces keep them apart. Following treatment with tannic acid (0.02 mg/mL for 10 minutes at 37°C), however, they clump readily.

Untreated red blood cells are easily coated with polysaccharide antigens, which they adsorb readily. After tanning, the uptake of some protein antigens is good, giving a sensitive reagent, whereas for others it tends to be quite variable; coating red blood cells has been the limiting factor in the usefulness of this method for certain antigens. Apparently, slightly aggregated or partially denatured protein antigens are adsorbed preferentially.[92]

The test for specific antibodies is done by serially diluting the antiserum in the U-shaped wells of a microtiter plate and adding antigen-coated red cells. When cross-linked by specific antibodies, agglutinated cells settle into an even carpet spread over the round bottom of the well. Unagglutinated red cells slide down the sides and form a much smaller button at the very bottom of the well. The titer of a sample is the highest dilution at which definite agglutination occurs. With hyperimmune antisera, inhibition of agglutination is often observed at high doses of antibody, termed a *prozone effect*. Two interpretations have been offered: One is that, at great antibody excess, each cell is coated with antibody, so cross-linking by the same antibody molecule becomes improbable. The second interpretation is the existence of some species of inefficient or "blocking" antibodies that occupy

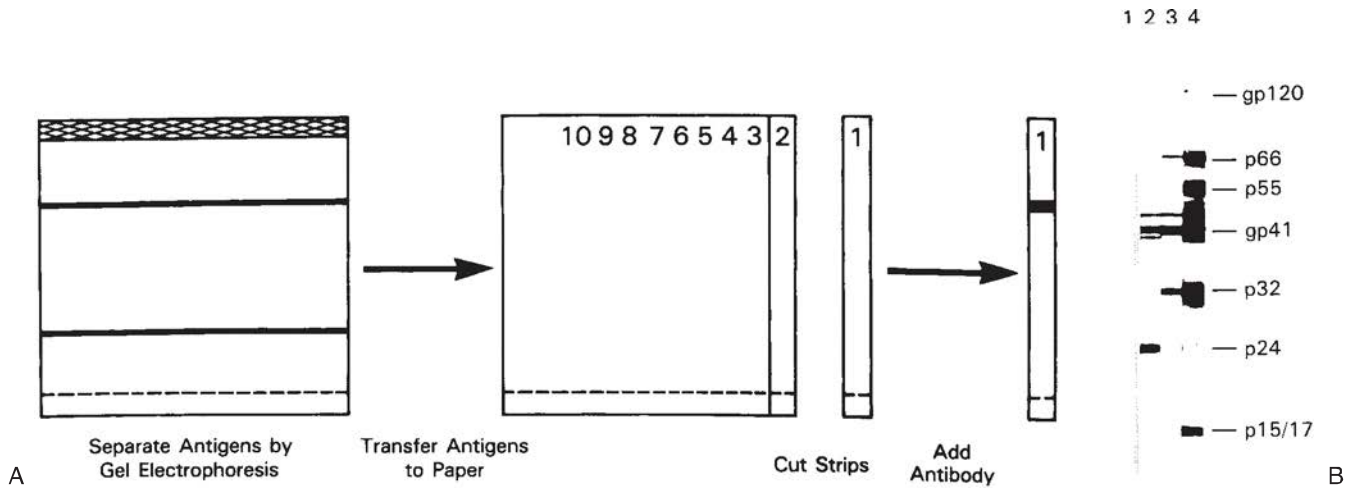


FIG. 7.16. A: Western blot technique. The antigen preparation is run through a polyacrylamide gel, which separates its components into different bands. These bands are then transferred to paper by electrophoresis in the horizontal dimension. The paper is cut into strips. Each strip is incubated with test antibodies, followed by further incubation with enzyme-labeled second antibodies. If the test antibodies bind to the component antigens, they will produce discrete dark bands at the corresponding positions on the strip. **B:** Clinical specimens from patients with acquired immunodeficiency syndrome tested on strips bearing human immunodeficiency virus-1 viral antigens, showing antibodies to viral gag (p15/17, p24, and p55 precursor), pol (p66 and possibly p32), and env (gp41 and gp120) proteins. Lane 1 is the negative control, and lanes 2 to 4 are sera from three different patients.

antigen sites without causing aggregation of cells.[9] To assure antigen specificity, the antiserum should be absorbed against uncoated red cells prior to the assay, and an uncoated red cell control should be included with each assay. IgM is up to 750 times more efficient than IgG at causing agglutination, which may affect interpretation of data based on titration. The titer may vary by a factor of 2 simply due to subjective estimates of the endpoint.

Once the hemagglutination titer of an antiserum is determined, its interaction with antigen-coated red blood cells can be used as a sensitive assay for antigen. To constant amounts of antibody (diluted to a concentration twofold higher than the limiting concentration producing agglutination) are added varying amounts of free antigen. Agglutination will be inhibited when half or more of the antibody sites are occupied by free antigen. In a similar fashion, the assay can be used for the detection and quantitation of anti-idiotype antibodies that react with the variable region of antibodies and sterically block antigen binding.

Immunoblot (Western Blot)

A most useful technique in the analysis of proteins is polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis, in which charged proteins migrate through a gel in response to an electric field. When ionic detergents such as sodium dodecyl sulfate are used, the distance traveled is inversely proportional to the logarithm of molecular weight. The protein components of complex structures, such as viruses, appear as distinct bands, each at its characteristic molecular weight. Because antibodies may be unable to diffuse into the gel, it is necessary to transfer the protein bands onto a nitrocellulose membrane support first, where they are exposed for antibody binding.[93]

The immunoblot is often used to detect viral proteins with specific antibodies that bind these proteins on the nitrocellulose blot. Then a second antibody, which is either enzyme conjugated or radiolabeled, is used to detect the antigen–antibody band. Crude viral antigen preparations can be used, as only those bands that correspond to viral antigens will be detected.

Typical results are shown in Figure 7.16. HIV-1 was cultured in susceptible H9 cells. The viral proteins were separated by polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis and detected by immunoblot, using the serum of infected patients. Each antigen band recognized by the antiserum has been identified as a viral component or precursor protein. The gp160 precursor is processed to mature gp120 and gp41 envelope proteins, whereas a p66 precursor is processed to the p51 mature form of reverse transcriptase, and a p55 precursor becomes the p24 and p17 gag and matrix proteins of the virus.[94] The practical uses of the HIV western blot include diagnosing infection, screening blood units to prevent HIV transmission, and testing new vaccines.

Surface Plasmon Resonance

Surface plasmon resonance (SPR) uses the electromagnetic properties of light to measure the binding affinity of a variety of biologic molecules, including antigen–antibody pairs. In this method, polarized light passes through a glass plate coated on the back surface with a thin metal film, usually gold. Biologic materials binding to the metal film behind the plate can alter its refractive index in ways that affect the angle and intensity of reflected light.

At angles close to perpendicular, light will pass through the glass, although it will bend at the interface due to

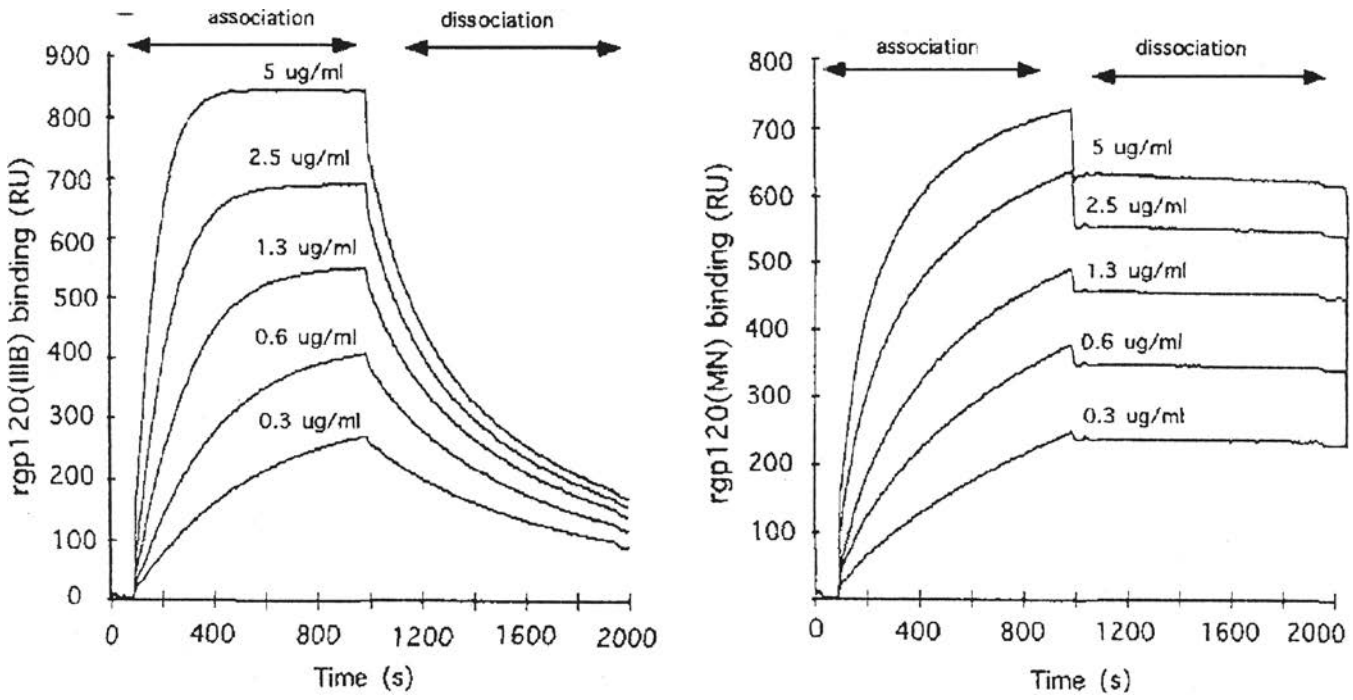


FIG. 7.17. Monoclonal Antibody to gp120 was Introduced into the Flow Cell at Time 0, and Antibody Binding was Followed Over Time as a Change in the Critical Angle, Measured in Response Units. After 1000 seconds, free antibody was washed out, and the release of bound antibody was measured as a decrease in refractive index. Lower affinity binding to gp120 from the IIIB strain *(left)* was shown as a faster "off rate," as compared to the very slow rate of antibody release from the MN strain *(right)*. These results, obtained under nonequilibrium conditions, provide direct measurement of the forward and reverse rate constants for antibody binding, and the ratio of these two gives the affinity constant. Modified from VanCott et al.,[97] with permission.

differences in the refractive index of glass and what is behind it. Above a certain angle, called the critical angle, bending will be so great that total internal reflection will occur. Small changes in refractive index behind the glass can be detected as significant changes in the critical angle, where light reflection occurs, and in the intensity of reflected light at this angle. By reading the reflected light intensity in a diode array detector, the critical angle and intensity can be determined simultaneously. Due to the wave nature of light, the effect of refractive index in the gold film extends about one wavelength beyond the glass or about 300 to 700 nm.[95] Within this layer, if an antigen is covalently attached to the gold, then antibody binding can be detected as a change in refractive index, resulting in a different critical angle and intensity of the reflected light.

SPR systems have three essential features[96]: an optical system that allows determination of the critical angle and light intensity at the same time, a coupling chemistry that links antigen or antibody to the gold surface, and a flow system that rapidly delivers the binding molecule in the mobile phase, so SPR can measure the rate of binding, rather than the rate of diffusion. Because binding causes a physical change in the gold film, there is no need for radioactive labels or enzyme conjugates. Molecular binding interactions can be followed in real time.

A typical SPR experiment is shown in Figure 7.17. HIV gp120 of type IIIB (*left panel*) or MN (*right panel*) were fixed to the gold layer, and various concentrations of monoclonal antibody to gp120 were added to the flow cell.[97] Over the first 1000 seconds, antibody binding was measured as a change in reflected light (in response units), allowing a calculation of the rate constant for the forward reaction of antibody binding. Once the signal reached a plateau, antibody was washed out of the flow cell, and the decrease in SPR signal over time indicated the rate at which antibody came off the antigen. The "on rate" for antibody binding to IIIB gp120 (*left*) was about twice as fast as for MN (*right*) at each antibody concentration. However, the "off rate" was about 50-fold less for MN than for IIIB. Combining these kinetic results indicates much greater binding affinity for gp120 of MN type, which may explain the observation that MN type virus was 10-fold more sensitive to neutralization by this antibody than was the IIIB strain.

MONOCLONAL ANTIBODIES

Homogeneous Igs have long played important roles in immunologic research. Starting in the 1950s, Slater et al.[98] studied sera from human patients with multiple myeloma and recognized the relationship between abnormal myeloma proteins and normal serum globulins. Potter[99] characterized numerous mouse myeloma tumors and identified the antigenic specificities of some of them. Human and mouse myeloma proteins were studied as representative Igs

and recognized for the advantages they had with proteins as diverse as antibodies for studies of Ig structure, function, and genetics. It was not yet possible, however, to induce monoclonal Igs of desired specificity.

This goal was achieved by the introduction of hybridoma technology by Köhler and Milstein[1,100] and by Margulies et al.[101] in the 1970s. Since that time, monoclonal antibodies have come to play an enormous role in biologic research and applications. They offer as advantages the relative ease of the production and purification of large quantities of antibody, the uniformity of antibody batches, and the ready availability of Ig messenger ribonucleic acid and DNA from the hybrid cell lines.

Derivation of Hybridomas

Hybridomas producing monoclonal antibodies are generated by the somatic cell fusion of two cell types: antibody-producing cells from an immunized animal, which by themselves die in tissue culture in a relatively short time, and myeloma cells, which contribute their immortality in tissue culture to the hybrid cell. The myeloma cells are variants carrying drug selection markers so that only those myeloma cells that have fused with spleen cells providing the missing enzyme will survive under selective conditions. Initial work used myeloma cells that secreted their own Ig products, but later such fusion partners were replaced by myeloma variants that fail to express Ig[102,103] so that the fused cell secretes exclusively antibody of the desired specificity. Successful hybridoma production is influenced by the characteristics of the cell populations (immune lymphocytes and myeloma fusion partner), the fusion conditions, and the subsequent selection and screening of the hybrids. A diagrammatic version of the overall process of hybridoma derivation is presented in Figure 7.18.

This section will not attempt to provide a detailed, step-by-step protocol for laboratory use. For that purpose, the reader is referred to monographs and reviews on the subject, including a detailed laboratory protocol with many hints and mention of problems to avoid.[104]

Hybridomas Derived from Species Other than Mice

Laboratory mice are the most common species immunized for hybridoma production, but for a variety of reasons, other animal species often have advantages. If an antigen of interest is nonpolymorphic in the mouse, the mouse component might be immunogenic in other species while mice would be tolerant to it. In the case of hybridomas for clinical use, mouse antibodies have the drawback of inducing antimouse Ig immune responses with possible deleterious effects.

Several approaches have been taken to the derivation of hybridomas in species other than mouse. First, interspecies hybridization can be performed using mouse myeloma fusion partners. The resulting hybrids are often unstable and throw off chromosomes, but clones can sometimes be selected that produce antibody in a stable fashion. Examples of this would be rat–mouse fusion to produce antibody to the mouse Fc receptor[105] and hamster–mouse fusion to produce

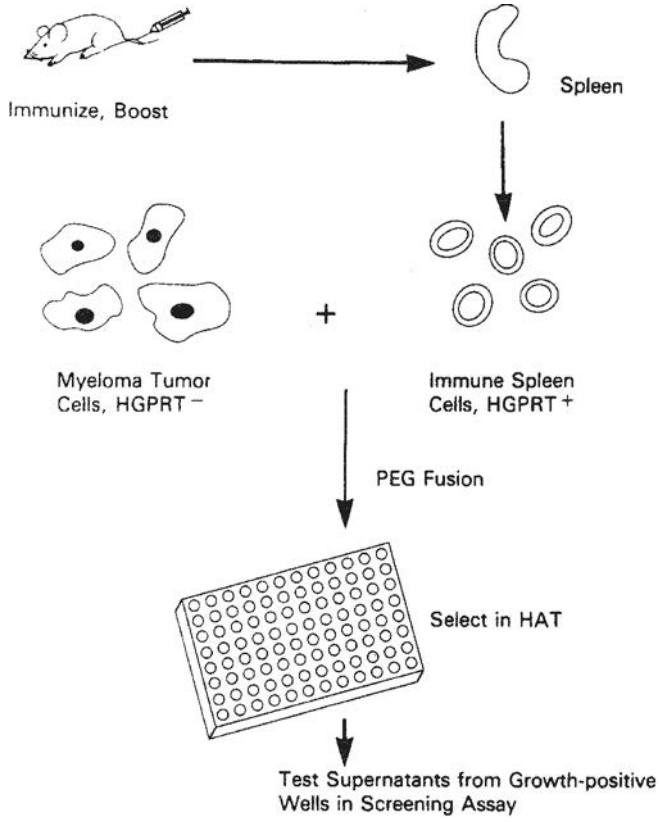


FIG. 7.18. Production of Hybridomas. Steps in the derivation of hybridomas can be outlined as shown. Spleen cells from immunized donors are fused with myeloma cells bearing a selection marker. The fused cells are then cultured in selective medium until visible colonies grow, and their supernatants are then screened for antibody production. HAT, hypoxanthine, aminopterin, thymidine; HGPRT, Hypoxanthine-guanine phosphoribosyltransferase; PEG, polyethylene glycol.

antibody to the mouse CD3 equivalent.[106] Rabbit–mouse hybridomas have also been described.[107]

A second approach is the use of fusion partner cells from the desired species. Myeloma variants carrying drug selection markers are available in a number of species. A rat myeloma line adapted for this purpose, IR983F, was described by Bazin.[108] Production of human hybridomas is of special importance because their use in therapies would avoid the problem of human immune responses to Ig derived from other animal species, as discussed in detail in the later section on applications.

Use of Gene Libraries to Derive Monoclonal Antibodies

Monoclonal antibodies produced by hybridoma technology are derived from B cells of immunized animals. A recent alternative technology uses gene libraries and expression systems instead. This approach has the advantages of avoiding labor-intensive immunizations of animals and the screening of antibody-containing supernatants. Another advantage of the approach is circumventing tolerance. One can derive monoclonal antibodies to antigens expressed in the animal species

that donated the gene library, including highly conserved antigens for which there may be no available responder that does not express the antigen.

The first version of such an approach involved preparation of V_H and Vκ libraries and expression of the libraries in bacteria. Further development of the system led to use of VH and VL libraries (see Chapters 5 & 6) made separately, and then preparation of a combinatorial library by cleaving, mixing, and religating the libraries at a restriction site.[109,110] A linker can be used so that V_H and V_L can both be expressed on one covalent polypeptide; the flexibility of the linker allows association of the V_H and V_L in a normal three-dimensional configuration and thus formation of an antigen-binding site.[110]

Another innovation involves expression of V_H and Vκ genes on the surface of bacteriophage as fusion proteins with a phage protein to permit rapid screening of large numbers of sequences.[110–112] Adsorption of antibody-bearing phage on antigen-coated surfaces allows positive selection of phage containing DNA encoding the desired variable region fragment (Fv) from combinatorial variable region gene libraries.[111,112]

Human antibody gene sequences can be recovered by polymerase chain reaction (PCR) from peripheral blood cells,[113] bone marrow,[114] or human cells reimmunized in severe combine immunodeficiency–hu mice.[115] The phage display technique can then be used to select antigen-binding clones and derive human reagents of desired specificity, such as antibody to hepatitis surface antigen[113] or HIV envelope.[114]

One limitation in the phage library technique initially was low affinity of the monoclonal antibodies derived because they were generated by a random process and not subject to further somatic mutation. Several approaches have now been used to improve affinities. Hypermutation and selection has now been achieved in vitro by a strategy using a bacterial mutator strain.[116] The process involves multiple rounds of mutation followed by growth in nonmutator bacteria and then selection for high-affinity binding led to an overall 100-fold increase in affinity.[116] Improved affinity has also been achieved by use of site-directed mutagenesis to alter residues in hypervariable regions affecting dissociation rates.[117]

Recombinant Monoclonal Antibodies Derived from Single B Cells After Cell Sorting

A new and very productive approach to making monoclonal antibodies is based on amplification of both the V_H and V_L chains of single B cells by reverse transcription–PCR.[118,119] In the first step, B cells are sorted by fluorescence-activated cell sorting, based on antigen specificity or other characteristics, and then distributed in 96 well plates at a dilution of one B cell per well. The cells are lysed, followed by reverse transcription of the messenger ribonucleic acid of a single cell and amplification of the V_H and V_L chains by nested PCR of each chain separately. The two chains are cloned into expression vectors in frame with the appropriate constant regions. Both chains are coexpressed to reconstitute the antibody. The resulting monoclonal antibodies are then analyzed for sequence, antigen specificity, affinity, and biologic activity. The efficiency of antibody production has been as high as 30% to 60% per well in different experiments.

Advantages include the ability to focus on a particular B-cell compartment, such as memory B cells, during the sorting step, the large numbers of monoclonals produced in a single experiment (typically more than 100), and the absence of antigen boosting prior to cloning. Due to the high efficiency of cloning, these monoclonals are thought to represent the expressed B-cell repertoire at a given time, location, and stage of differentiation. For example, human monoclonals had the same ratio of kappa to lambda light chains (60% to 40%) as found in circulating B cells, and they showed allelic exclusion in 95% of wells. Key features of the method include the choice of fluorescent antigen for B-cell sorting, called the "bait," and the choice of primers for nested PCR. The bait should capture as many antigen specific B cells as possible; different bait will capture different monoclonals from similar populations of B cells (compare Pietzsch et al.[120] and Scheid et al.[121]). A complex bait with multiple epitopes, such as HIV gp140, will capture antibodies to different parts of the antigen.[119,122,123] In order to amplify highly variable antibodies, the forward (and reverse) PCR primers should be chosen upstream (or downstream) of the V_H region so they will capture sequence variation near both ends of the coding sequence.

In one study, 1.5×10^5 memory B cells from a chronically HIV-infected subject were sorted based on binding to a stabilized form of gp120.[121] Individual antigen-specific B cells were distributed in microtiter wells, and they produced 576 monoclonal antibodies that bound gp120 by ELISA. Sequencing the V_H and V_L chains showed that each monoclonal was often clonally related to several others, which differed only by somatic mutation. Overall, these monoclonals represented 200 distinct B-cell clones. The monoclonals could be divided into groups, based on binding four distinct epitopes on gp120. Within the same clonally related group, some monoclonals had potent HIV-neutralizing activity while other closely related monoclonals were inactive. The B-cell donor was a long-term nonprogressor. The analysis of a significant sampling of the antibody repertoire may provide insight into how these patients control their circulating virus, and these findings may lead to improved vaccine antigens.

Applications of Monoclonal Antibodies

Because monoclonal antibodies can be made easily and reproducibly in large quantities, they allow many experiments that were not possible or practical previously. Affinity chromatography based on monoclonal antibodies can be used as a step in purification of molecular species that are difficult to purify chemically. Homogeneous antibody can be crystallized and can also be crystallized together with antigen to permit the study of the structure of antibody and of antigen–antibody complexes by x-ray diffraction. Homogeneous antibodies are also valuable in the study of antibody diversity. Such analyses have revealed much about the roles of somatic mutation, changes in affinity, and changes in clonal dominance in antibody responses.

Catalytic Antibodies

One area of recent interest is the use of antibody molecules to catalyze chemical reactions.[124] In this role, antibodies serve as an alternative to enzymes, an alternative that can be customized and manipulated more easily in some cases.

The concept of antibodies as catalysts had been proposed a long time ago by Woolley.[124] Use of homogeneous antibodies permitted identification of some with significant catalytic effects; MOPC167 accelerates the hydrolysis of nitrophenyl phosphorylcholine by 770-fold.[125] Polyclonal antibodies have also been reported to possess detectable enzymatic activity.[126] With the advent of hybridoma technology, purposeful selection of antibodies with potent enzymatic function became possible. Antibodies have been characterized that catalyze numerous chemical reactions, with rates nearing 10^8-fold above the spontaneous rate.[124] One common strategy for elicitation of such antibodies is immunization with transition state analogs,[127] although there are other strategies.[128] Antibodies function as catalysts in a stereospecific manner,[129] a valuable property.

Molecular mechanisms of antibody-mediated catalysis vary, as do enzymatic reactions.[128,130] To accelerate a reaction, an antibody has to lower the activation energy barrier to the reaction, which means lowering the energy of the transition state by stabilizing it. For this reason, an antibody that recognizes the transition state is favorable, and immunizations with analogs of the transition state have advantages.

Antibodies can serve as what has been termed an *entropy trap*[124]; binding to the antibody "freezes out" the rotational and translational degrees of freedom of the substrate and thus makes a chemical reaction far more favorable energetically. Interactions with chemical groups on the antibody can neutralize charges or bury hydrophobic groups, thereby stabilizing a constrained transition state.

Discovery of such catalytic antibodies opens practical opportunities: Antibodies can be customized for an application by appropriate selection and can be produced relatively cheaply and purified easily. Catalytic antibodies can be developed to perform chemical reactions for which no enzyme is available. They can shield intermediates from solvent, for example, allowing reactions that do not occur in aqueous solution.[131] They can form peptide bonds,[132] suggesting a new approach to polypeptide synthesis. Thus, catalytic antibodies will likely have many practical applications.

Bispecific and Bifunctional Antibodies

Antibodies produced naturally by a single B cell have only one binding site specificity, and their effector functions are determined by the structure of the Fc domain. The availability of monoclonal antibodies made possible the generation in quantity of artificial antibodies as cross-linking reagents by linking binding sites of two specificities to form bispecific antibodies. A variety of techniques have been used to prepare such hybrid or bispecific antibodies, and they have been put to a variety of uses. In addition, antibody-binding sites can be linked to other functional domains such as toxins, enzymes, or cytokines to create "bifunctional antibodies."[133]

One of the most powerful uses of hybrid antibodies is in redirecting cytolytic cells to targets of a defined specificity. In one early demonstration of this use,[134] a monoclonal antibody specific for the Fcγ receptor and one specific for the hapten dinitrophenyl were chemically cross-linked. In the presence of this hybrid antibody, FcγR-bearing cells were able to lyse haptenated target cells specifically. The FcγR played a critical role; antibody to MHC class I antigens on the cell could not be substituted. Antibody to the T-cell receptor complex has also been used extensively to redirect T-cell lysis to desired targets. For example, anti-CD3 was cross-linked to antitumor antibodies and mixed with effector cells. These "targeted T cells" were able to inhibit the growth of human tumor cells in vivo in nude mice.[135] Bispecific antibodies have also been used recently to alter the tropism of a viral gene therapy vector to target specific cells.[136]

Cumbersome cross-linking chemistry can now be replaced by genetic engineering for creation of designer antibodies.[133] Bifunctional and bispecific antibodies can be engineered as single chain variable fragment constructs or by specialized strategies using two chains. A wide variety of configurations are possible and can be used to make multivalent reagents as well as reagents with one site of each specificity. Tags can be built in by fusion of additional sequence such as streptavidin, or, as mentioned previously, antibody domains can be combined with other functional domains such as toxins, enzymes, or cytokines.

Clinical Applications

The possible clinical uses of monoclonal antibodies are many. In vitro, they are widely used in RIA and ELISA measurements of substances in biologic fluids, from hormones to toxins. They are also extremely valuable in flow cytometric assays of cell populations using antibodies specific for differentiation antigens expressed on cell surfaces. Monoclonal antibodies plus complement or toxin-conjugated monoclonal antibodies have also been used to remove T cells from bone marrow prior to transplantation.[137]

In vivo, although it took more than two decades for the original promise of hybridoma technology to be translated into widespread clinical applications, a number of monoclonal antibodies are now in use or in trials for a variety of purposes.[138–140] Monoclonal antibody OKT3 directed to a marker on human T lymphocytes is used as a treatment for rejection reactions in patients undergoing kidney transplant.[141] Other monoclonal antibodies, for example, ^{111}In-labeled CYT-103 referred to as Oncoscint (Cytogen Corp, Princeton, NJ),[142] are used as diagnostic tumor imaging reagents. Monoclonal antibodies have now been approved for various therapeutic uses.[140,143] Cancer therapies use either unconjugated monoclonal antibody[138,144–148] or toxin-coupled[149,150] or radiolabeled monoclonal antibody.[144,148,151] Molecules targeted in cancer therapies include CD25 (IL-2 receptor alpha chain) in adult T-cell leukemia,[138,140,148,152–154] CD20 in non-Hodgkin lymphoma using either unlabeled[147,155] or more recently radionuclide-labeled anti-CD20,[156,157] the HER-2/neu oncoprotein in breast and

ovarian cancer,[145,146,158,159] CD22 in hairy cell leukemia,[150] vascular endothelial growth factor to limit angiogenesis in diverse tumors (especially colorectal, renal, and non–small-cell lung cancer),[160–165] antiepidermal growth factor receptor in colorectal carcinoma and others,[166] anti-CD52 in chronic lymphocytic leukemia,[167] and anti-CD33 in acute myelogenous leukemia.[168] Other therapies studied include antilipopolysaccharide for treatment of sepsis, anti–IL-6 receptor for treatment of multiple myeloma and for rheumatoid arthritis, anti-IgE for treatment of allergy,[139] anti–tumor necrosis factor for treatment of arthritis,[169,170] anti–respiratory syncytial virus for prevention of respiratory syncytial virus morbidity and mortality in infants,[171,172] and anti–IL-2 receptor (CD25) for prevention of graft rejection[148,173] as well as for treatment of autoimmune diseases such as uveitis[174] and multiple sclerosis.[175] Other monoclonal antibodies have been developed to modulate immune responses. On the one hand, antibodies to block checkpoint inhibitors in the immune response, especially against cancer, have been developed, such as the first licensed one, ipilimumab, against cytotoxic T-lymphocyte antigen-4 (CD152), an inhibitory receptor expressed on activated T cells,[176–181] and anti-PD-1, another inhibitory receptor on activated T cells that is currently in trials.[182–186] An antibody to transforming growth factor–beta, a soluble inhibitor of immune responses, is also in clinical trials in both cancer and fibrosis.[187–190] On the other hand, monoclonal antibodies are being developed to amplify immune responses and synergize with vaccines, such as agonist anti-CD40 antibodies.[191–193]

In the specialized case of B-cell lymphoma, monoclonal anti-idiotypes against the idiotype expressed by the patient's tumor have been tested as a "magic bullet" therapy.[194] Active immunization of the patient with idiotype[195–199] has the advantage that escape mutants[200] are less likely to emerge because multiple idiotopes are recognized. Another approach under study is immunization using not idiotype as protein but plasmid DNA-encoding patient idiotype.[201] This approach would have additional advantages, such as ease of preparing customized reagents for each patient.

Production of Human or Humanized Monoclonal Antibodies

Many of the side effects of monoclonal antibodies in clinical use are due to the foreign Ig constant regions. Recognition of foreign Ig epitopes can lead to sensitization and so preclude subsequent use in the same individual of different monoclonal antibodies. Thus, monoclonal antibodies with some or all structure derived from human Ig have advantages. Several approaches have been taken employing fusion of human cells with animal myelomas or with human tumor cells of various kinds[202,203] and use of Epstein-Barr virus to immortalize antibody-producing cells.[204] Production of populations of sensitized human cells to be fused presents another special problem, as the donors cannot be immunized at will. In one example, in vitro stimulation of lymphocytes with antigen followed by fusion with mouse myeloma cells has been used to generate a series of antibodies to varicella zoster.[205]

Another approach to production of monoclonal antibodies with human characteristics involves application of genetic engineering. The part of the antibody structure recognized as foreign by humans can be minimized by combining human constant regions with mouse variable regions[206,207] or even just mouse hypervariable segments[208] by molecular genetic techniques. Antigen-binding specificity is retained in some cases, and the "humanized" chimeric molecules have many of the advantages of human hybridomas.

Production of fully human monoclonal antibodies in transgenic mice has now been achieved by multiple laboratories. The strategy has involved insertion into the mouse germ line of constructs containing clusters of human Ig V, D, J, and C genes (see Chapter 6) to generate one transgenic line and targeted disruption of the mouse heavy chain and κ chain loci to generate another transgenic line. From these two lines, mice are then bred that express only human antibodies.

To show feasibility of this approach, cosmids carrying parts of the human heavy chain locus were used to make transgenic mice.[209] The next step was to produce mice carrying human genes for both heavy and light chains to generate a functional human repertoire. Several groups using different technologies constructed heavy chain miniloci containing functional V segments representing several major V region families, D and J segments, constant and switch regions, and enhancers. The κ chain constructs were made that contained multiple functional Vκ segments, the J segments, Cκ, and enhancers.[210,211] Mice were bred that were homozygous both for the transgene loci and for disruption of the mouse heavy chain and κ light chain loci; note that the mouse λ locus was left intact. The human Ig genes could rearrange in the mouse genome, and expression of human Ig resulted. If these mice were immunized with a fragment of tetanus toxin, resulting antibodies included some that were fully human.[211] In one of the studies,[210] serum contained human μ, γ1, and κ as well as mouse λ and γ. Immunization of such mice with various antigens led to class switching, somatic mutation, and production of human antibodies of affinities of almost 10^8.

Ig expression in these mice demonstrates cross-species compatibility of the components involved in antibody gene rearrangement and diversification. The mice also provide a responder able to provide fully human antibodies to clinically important antigens, and they have the advantage that they are not tolerant to human antigens, such as the human IgE and human CD4 used by Lonberg et al.[210]

Nucleotide Aptamers: An Alternative to Monoclonal Antibodies

Antibodies are not the only biologic macromolecules that have evolved to permit an enormous range of specific structures. Oligonucleotides selected for ability to bind a ligand with high affinity and specificity are termed "aptamers" and can be used in many of the ways antibodies have been used. Selection, properties, and uses of aptamers have been reviewed.[212] Aptamers have the advantage that their

production does not require animals or cell culture. These well-defined reagents may be used increasingly in diagnostic testing and are also being tested in clinical trials for use as imaging agents or therapeutics.

Specificity and Cross-Reactivity

Specificity of Monoclonal Antibodies

Because all the molecules in a sample of monoclonal antibody have the same variable region structure, barring variants arising after cloning, they all have the same specificity. This uniformity has the advantage that batches of monoclonal antibody do not vary in specificity as polyclonal sera often do. The most obvious fact about cross-reactions of monoclonal antibodies is that they are characteristic of all molecules and cannot be removed by absorption without removing all activity. An exception would be an apparent cross-reaction due to a subset of denatured antibody molecules, which could be removed on the basis of that binding. The homogeneity of monoclonal antibodies allows refinement of specificity analysis that was not possible with polyclonal sera. A few examples follow.

First, one can use monoclonal antibodies to distinguish closely related ligands in cases where most antibodies in a polyclonal serum would cross-react, and so absorption of a serum would not leave sufficient activity to define additional specificities. This ability is useful in designing clinical assays for related hormones, for example. Such fine discrimination also allows the definition of new specificities on complex antigens. When large numbers of monoclonal antibodies specific for class I and class II MHC antigens were analyzed, some defined specificities that could not be defined with existing polyclonal antisera.[213–215]

On the other hand, monoclonal antibodies are also a powerful tool for demonstrating similarities rather than distinctions between two antigens. In some cases, only a minor portion of an antibody response detects a cross-reaction, and so it is not detected by polyclonal reagents. For example, determinants shared by the I-A and I-E class II MHC antigens in the mouse were demonstrated using monoclonal antibodies[215] while they had been suspected but were difficult to demonstrate using polyclonal sera.

Another type of fine specificity analysis possible only with monoclonal antibodies is the discrimination of spatial sites (epitope clusters) by competitive binding. In some cases, such epitope clusters correspond to specificities that are readily distinguished by other means. However, in other cases, the epitope clusters may not be distinguishable by any serologic or genetic means. An example is the splitting of the classical specificity Ia.7 into three epitope clusters by competitive binding with monoclonal antibodies.[215] The epitopes cannot be distinguished genetically, as all three are expressed on cells of all Ia.7-positive mouse strains. Thus, polyclonal sera cannot be absorbed to reveal the different specificities. Only with the use of monoclonal antibodies were the epitopes resolved from each other.

The importance of this type of analysis is shown by another example, the definition of epitope clusters on CD4, a surface molecule on a subset of human T cells that also functions as the receptor for HIV. Monoclonal antibodies to CD4 can be divided into several groups based on competitive inhibition.[216] The cluster containing the site recognized by OKT4A is closely related to virus infection, as antibodies to this site block syncytium formation. The cluster recognized by OKT4, however, is not related to infection because antibodies to it do not block syncytium formation,[216] and cells expressing variant forms of the CD4 molecule lacking the OKT4 epitope can still be infected by HIV.[217] This information about the sites on the molecule is important in understanding the molecular interactions of virus with its receptor and may be useful in designing vaccine candidates.

While most antibodies are not MHC-restricted in their recognition of antigens, distinguishing them from T-cell receptors, antibodies can be selected that recognize peptide–MHC complexes[218–220] (MHC-restricted antipeptide antibodies or peptide-dependent anti-MHC class I antibodies). Several monoclonal antibodies have been selected that require both a certain MHC class I antigen and a particular peptide for reactivity. Such monoclonal antibodies are useful reagents capable of detecting cells presenting the appropriate peptide-MHC complexes on their surfaces.[218] Such monoclonal antibodies may also be useful in dissection of T-cell responses. In one study, the monoclonal antibodies could inhibit IL-2 secretion by a T-cell hybridoma of corresponding specificity and could also block induction of cytotoxic T lymphocyte recognizing that epitope when given in vivo during priming.[220] Such monoclonal antibodies have been used to address structural questions about antigen recognition by T and B cells.[219] Such antibodies also appeared to skew the repertoire of T cells for this particular HIV peptide MHC complex to specific T-cell receptor Vβ types and T-cell avidities.[221] However, only very rare monoclonal antibodies have this type of specificity and they were purposely selected in the fusions, so they do not provide a general comparison of T-cell receptor and Ab characteristics.

Cross-Reactions of Monoclonal Antibodies

Monoclonal antibodies display many type 1 cross-reactions, emphasizing that antibody cross-reactions represent real similarities among the antigens, not just an effect of heterogeneity of serum antibodies. Even antigens that differ for most of their structure can share one determinant, and a monoclonal antibody recognizing this site would then give a 100% cross-reaction. An example is the reactivity of autoantibodies in lupus with both DNA and cardiolipin.[222]

It should be emphasized that sharing a "determinant" does not mean that the antigens contain identical chemical structures, but rather that they bear a chemical resemblance that may not be well understood, for example, a distribution of surface charges. Antibodies to the whole range of antigens can react with Igs in idiotype anti-idiotype reactions, showing a cross-reactivity of the same antibodies with proteins (the anti-idiotypes) and with the carbohydrates, nucleic acids, lipids, or haptens against which they were raised.

Polyclonal versus Monoclonal Antibodies

When monoclonal antibodies first became available, some people expected that they would be exquisitely specific and would be superior to polyclonal sera for essentially all purposes. Further thought about the issues discussed previously, however, suggests that this is not always the case and depends on the intended use of the antibodies. Not only do monoclonal antibodies cross-react, but when they do, the cross-reaction is not minor and cannot be removed by absorption. A large panel of monoclonal antibodies may be needed before one is identified with the precise range of reactivity desired for a study.

In polyclonal sera, on the other hand, each different antibody has a distinct range of reactivity, and the only common feature would be detectable reactivity with the antigen used for immunization or testing. Thus, the serum as a whole may show only a low-titered cross-reaction with any particular other antigen, and that cross-reaction can be removed by absorption, leaving substantial activity against the immunizing antigen. For the purposes of an experiment, a polyclonal serum may be "more specific" than any one of its clonal parts and may be more useful. This concept is the basis of the theory of "multispecificity" (see previous discussion).

Polyclonal sera also have advantages in certain technical situations such as immunoprecipitation in which multivalency is important. Many antigens are univalent with respect to monoclonal antibody binding but display multiple distinct sites that can be recognized by different components of polyclonal sera. Thus, a greater degree of cross-linking can be achieved.

The ultimate serologic reagent in many cases may well be a mixture of monoclonal antibodies that have been chosen according to their cross-reactions. The mixture would be better defined and more reproducible than a polyclonal antiserum and would have the same advantage of overlapping specificities.

CONCLUSION

In conclusion, antibodies, whether monoclonal or polyclonal, provide a unique type of reagent that can be made with high specificity for almost any desired organic or biochemical structure, often with extremely high affinity. These can be naturally divalent, for example in the case of IgG or multivalent, for example in the case of IgM or can be made as monovalent molecules such as Fab or recombinant Fv fragments. They serve not only as a major arm of host defense playing a major role in the protective efficacy of most existing antiviral and all antibacterial vaccines but also as very versatile tools for research and clinical use. RIAs and ELISAs have revolutionized the detection of minute quantities of biologic molecules, such as hormones and cytokines, and thus have become indispensable for clinical diagnosis and monitoring of patients as well as for basic and applied research. Current solid-phase versions of these take advantage not only of the intrinsic affinity and specificity of the antibodies but also of the implicit multivalency and local high concentration on a solid surface. Cross-reactivity of antibodies often provides the first clue to relationships between molecules that might not otherwise have been compared. Conversely, methods that use antigens to detect the presence of antibodies in serum have become widespread in testing for exposure to a variety of pathogens, such as HIV. Antibodies also provide specific reagents invaluable in the rapid purification of many other molecules by affinity chromatography. They have also become indispensable reagents for other branches of biology, for example, in histocompatibility typing and phenotyping of cells using a myriad of cell–surface markers that were themselves discovered with monoclonal antibodies and for separating these cells by fluorescence-activated cell sorting, panning, or chromatographic techniques. Monoclonal antibodies have also finally emerged as clinically important therapeutics in cancer, arthritis, organ graft rejection, and infectious diseases. Thus, antibodies are among the most versatile and widely used types of reagents today, and their use is constantly growing. Understanding the fundamental concepts in antigen–antibody interactions thus has become essential not only to an understanding of immunology but also to the effective use of these valuable molecules in many other fields.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

We thank Drs. Charles DeLisi, Elvin A. Kabat, Henry Metzger, and Fred Karush for helpful suggestions and discussion, and Dr. Suzanne L. Epstein for her valuable contribution to the monoclonal antibody section.

REFERENCES

1. Köhler G, Milstein C. Derivation of specific antibody-producing tissue culture and tumor lines by cell fusion. *Eur J Immunol.* 1976;6:511–519. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/825377
2. Melchers F, Potter M, Warner NC. *Lymphocyte Hybridomas.* Berlin, Germany: Springer-Verlag; 1978.
3. Kennett RH, McKearn TJ, Bechtol KB. *Monoclonal Antibodies. Hybridomas: A New Dimension in Biological Analyses*. New York, NY: Plenum Press; 1980.
4. Moore WJ. *Physical Chemistry*. 3rd ed. Englewood Cliffs, NJ: Prentice-Hall; 1962.
5. Myszka DG, Sweet RW, Hensley P, et al. Energetics of the HIV gp120-CD4 binding reaction. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2000;97:9026–9031. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10922058
6. Kwong PD, Doyle ML, Casper DJ, et al. HIV-1 evades antibody-mediated neutralization through conformational masking of receptor-binding sites. *Nature*. 2002;420:678–682. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12478295
7. DeLisi C. The biophysics of ligand-receptor interactions. *Q Rev Biophys*. 1980;13:201–230. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7015404
8. Fersht A. *Enzyme Structure and Mechanisms*. New York, NY: Freeman; 1977.
9. Eisen HN. *Immunology*. 2nd ed. Baltimore, MD: Harper & Row; 1980.
10. Sachs DH, Schecter AN, Eastlake A, Anfinsen CB. Inactivation of staphylococcal nuclease by the binding of antibodies to a distinct antigenic determinant. *Biochem*. 1972;11:4268–4273. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4116930
11. Hammes GG. Relaxation spectrometry of biological systems. *Adv Protein Chem*. 1968;23:1–57. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4302772
12. Eisen HN, Karush F. The interaction of purified antibody with homologous hapten. Antibody valence and binding constant. *J Am Chem Soc*. 1949;71:363–364. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18108974
13. Pinckard RN. Equilibrium dialysis and preparation of hapten conjugates. 1978;1:1–17.
14. Scatchard G. The attractions of proteins for small molecules and ions. *Ann N Y Acad Sci*. 1949;51:660–672.
15. Berzofsky JA, Hicks G, Fedorko J, Minna J. Properties of monoclonal antibodies specific for determinants of a protein antigen, myoglobin. *J Biol Chem*. 1980;255:11188–11191. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6160146
16. Rodbard D, Munson PJ, Thakur AK. Quantitative characterization of hormone receptors. *Cancer*. 1980;46:2907–2918. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7448735
17. Thakur AK, Jaffe ML, Rodbard D. Graphical analysis of ligand-binding systems: evaluation by Monte Carlo studies. *Anal Biochem*. 1980;107:279–295. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7001949
18. Munson PJ, Rodbard D. Ligand: a versatile computerized approach for characterization of ligand-binding systems. *Anal Biochem*. 1980;107:220–239. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6254391
19. Bright DS. *On Interpreting Spectrophotometric Measurements of Two Quinoline-DNA Complexes (Doctoral Dissertation)*. Fort Collins, CO: Colorado State University; 1974.
20. Berzofsky JA. The assessment of antibody affinity from radioimmunoassay. *Clin Chem*. 1978;24:419–421. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/630702
21. Pauling L, Pressman D, Grossberg AL. Serological properties of simple substances. VII. A quantitative theory of the inhibition by haptens of the precipitation of heterogeneous antisera with antigens, and comparison with experimental results for polyhaptenic simple substances and for azoproteins. *J Am Chem Soc*. 1944;66:784–792.
22. Karush F. The interaction of purified antibody with optically isomeric haptens. *J Am Chem Soc*. 1956;78:5519–5526.
23. Thakur AK, DeLisi C. Theory of ligand binding to heterogeneous receptor populations: characterization of the free-energy distribution function. *Biopolymers*. 1978;17:1075–1089.
24. DeLisi C. Characterization of receptor affinity heterogeneity by Scatchard plots. *Biopolymers*. 1978;17:1385–1386.
25. Thakur AK, Munson PJ, Hunston DL, Rodbard D. Characterization of ligand-binding systems by continuous affinity distributions of arbitrary shape. *Anal Biochem*. 1980;103:240–254. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7386859
26. Sips R. On the structure of a catalyst surface. *J Chem Phys*. 1948;16:490–495.
27. Nisonoff A, Pressman D. Heterogeneity and average combining site constants of antibodies from individual rabbits. *J Immunol*. 1958;80:417–428. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/13549727
28. Karush F, Karush SS. Equilibrium dialysis. 3. Calculations. In: Williams CA, Chase MW, eds. *Methods in Immunology and Immunochemistry*. New York, NY: Academic Press; 1971:389–393.
29. Klotz IM. Protein interactions. In: Neurath H, Bailey K, eds. *The Proteins*. New York, NY: Academic Press; 1953:727–806.
30. Karush F. The affinity of antibody: range, variability, and the role of multivalence. 1978:85–116.
31. Crothers DM, Metzger H. The influence of polyvalency on the binding properties of antibodies. *Immunochemistry*. 1972;9:341–357. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4113719
32. Hornick CL, Karush F. Antibody affinity - III. The role of multivalence. *Immunochemistry*. 1972;9:325–340. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4556115
33. DeLisi C, Metzger H. Some physical chemical aspects of receptor-ligand interactions. *Immunol Commun*. 1976;5:417–436. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/786865
34. DeLisi C. The effect of cell size and receptor density on ligand-receptor reaction rate constants. *Mol Immunol*. 1981;18:507–511. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7311981
35. DeLisi C, Wiegel FW. Effect of nonspecific forces and finite receptor number on rate constants of ligand-cell bound-receptor interactions. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1981;78:5569–5572. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6946494
36. Silhavy TJ, Szmelcman S, Boos W, Schwartz M. On the significance of the retention of ligand by protein. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1975;72:2120–2124. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1094454
37. Yalow RS, Berson SA. Immunoassay of endogenous plasma insulin in man. *J Clin Invest*. 1960;39:1157–1175. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/13846364
38. Chard T. *An Introduction to Radioimmunoassay and Related Techniques*. Amsterdam, The Netherlands: North Holland; 1978.
39. Rodbard D. Mathematics and statistics of ligand assays: an illustrated guide. In: Langan J, Clapp JJ, eds. *Ligand Assay: Analysis of International Developments on Isotopic and Nonisotopic Immunoassay*. New York: Masson; 1981:45–101.
40. Yalow R. Radioimmunoassay. *Rev Biophys Bioeng*. 1980;9:327–345. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6994591
41. Farr RS. A quantitative immunochemical measure of the primary interaction between I*BSA and antibody. *J Infect Dis*. 1958;103:239–262. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/13611294
42. Desbuquois B, Aurbach GD. Use of polyethylene glycol to separate free and antibody-bound peptide hormones in radioimmunoassays. *J Clin Endocrinol Metab*. 1971;33:732–738. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/5166455
43. Zollinger WD, Dalrymple JM, Artenstein MS. Analysis of parameters affecting the solid phase radioimmunoassay quantitation of antibody to meningococcal antigens. *J Immunol*. 1976;117:1788–1798. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/825573
44. Kessler SW. Rapid isolation of antigens from cells with a staphylococcal protein-A-antibody adsorbent: parameters of the interaction of antibody-antigen complexes with protein A. *J Immunol*. 1975;115:1617–1624. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1102604
45. Friguet B, Chaffotte AF, Djavadi-Ohaniance L, Goldberg ME. Measure ments of the true affinity constant in solution of antigen-antibody complexes by enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay. *J Immunol Methods*. 1985;77:305–319. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3981007
46. Stevens FJ. Modification of an elisa-based procedure for affinity determination: correction necessary for use with bivalent antibody. *Mol Immunol*. 1987;24:1055–1060. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3683403

47. Seligman SJ. Influence of solid-phase antigen in competition enzyme-linked immunosorbent assays (ELISAs) on calculated antigen-antibody dissociation constants. *J Immunol Methods*. 1994;168:101–110. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8288886
48. Ekins RP. Basic principles and theory. *Br Med Bull*. 1974;30:3–11. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4468050
49. Berzofsky JA, Curd JG, Schechter AN. Probability analysis of the interaction of antibodies with multideterminant antigens in radio-immunoassay: application to the amino terminus of the beta chain of hemoglobin S. *Biochemistry*. 1976;15:2113–2121. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/58666
50. von Krogh M. Colloidal chemistry and immunology. *J Infect Dis*. 1916; 19:452–477.
51. Rodbard D, Lewald JE. Computer analysis of radioligand assay and radioimmunoassay data. *Acta Endocrinol*. 1970;64:79–103.
52. Feldman H, Rodbard D. Mathematical theory of radioimmunoassay. In: Odell WD, Daughaday WH, eds. *Principles of Competitive Protein-Binding Assays*. Philadelphia, PA: Lippincott; 1971:158–203.
53. Rodbard D, Ruder JH, Vaitukaitis J, Jacobs HS. Mathematical analysis of kinetics of radioligand assays: improved sensitivity obtained by delayed addition of labeled ligand. *J Clin Endocrinol Metab*. 1971;33:343–355. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/5565609
54. Voller A, Bidwell D, Bartlett A. Enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay. In: Rose NR, Friedman H, eds. *Manual of Clinical Immunology*. Washington: American Society of Microbiology; 1980:359–371.
55. Kohno Y, Berkower I, Minna J, Berzofsky JA. Idiotypes of anti-myoglobin antibodies: shared idiotypes among monoclonal antibodies to distinct determinants of sperm whale myoglobin. *J Immunol*. 1982; 128:1742–1748. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6174613
56. Darst SA, Robertson CR, Berzofsky JA. Adsorption of the protein antigen myoglobin affects the binding of conformation-specific monoclo-nal antibodies. *Biophysical J*. 1988;53:533–539. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3382711
57. Sedgwick J. A solid phase immunoenzymatic technique for the enumeration of specific antibody-secreting cells. *J Imm Methods*. 1983;57:301–309. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6338123
58. Czerkinsky CC, Nilsson L, Nygren H, Ouchterlony O, Tarkowski A. A solid-phase enzyme-linked immunospot (ELISPOT) assay for enumeration of specific antibody-secreting cells. *J Immunol Methods*. 1983;65:109–121. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6361139
59. Bocher WO, Herzog-Hauff S, Herr W, et al. Regulation of the neutralizing anti-hepatitis B surface (HBs) antibody response in vitro in HBs vaccine recipients and patients with acute or chronic hepatitis virus (HBV) infection. *Clin Exp Immunol*. 1996;105:52–58. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8697635
60. Ronnelid J, Huang YH, Norrlander T, et al. Short-term kinetics of the humoral anti-C1q response in SLE using the ELISPOT method: fast decline in production in resonse to steroids. *Scand J Immunol*. 1994;40:243–250. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8047848
61. Czerkinsky C, Moldoveanu Z, Mestecky J, Nilsson L, Ouchterlony O. A novel two colour ELISPOT assay I. Simultaneous detection of distinct types of antibody-secreting cells. *J Immunol Methods*. 1988;115:31–37. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3057075
62. Krieg AM, Yi A, Matson S, et al. CpG motifs in bacterial DNA trigger direct B-cell activation. *Nature*. 1995;374:546–549. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7700380
63. Ronnelid J, Klareskog L. A comparison between ELISPOT methods for the detection of cytokine producing cells: greater sensitivity and specificity using ELISA plates as compared to nitrocellulose membranes. *J Immunol Methods*. 1997;200:17–26. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9005940
64. Mäkelä O, Karjalainen K. Inherited immunoglobulin idiotypes of the mouse. *Immunol Rev*. 1977;34:119–138. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/66781
65. Jameson BA, McDonnell JM, Marini JC, Korngold R. A rationally designed CD4 analogue inhibits experimental allergic encephalomyelitis. *Nature*. 1994;368:744–746. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8152486
66. Brady L, Dodson G. Reflections on a peptide. *Nature*. 1994;368:692–693. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8152480
67. Guichard G, Benkirane N, Zeder-Lutz G, Van Regenmortel MHV, Briand J, Muller S. Antigenic mimicry of natural L-peptides with retro-inverso- peptidomimetics. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1994;91:9765–9769.
68. Benkirance N, Guichard G, Van Regenmortel MHV, Briand J, Muller S. Cross-reactivity of antibodies to retro-inverso peptidomimetics with the parent protein histone H3 and chromatin core particle. *J Biol Chem*. 1995;270:11921–11926. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7744843
69. Briand J, Guichard G, Dumortier H, Muller S. Retro-inverso pepti-domimetics as new immunological probes. *J Biol Chem*. 1995;270:20686–20691. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7657648
70. Häyry P, Myllärniemi M, Aavik E, et al. Stabile D-peptide analog of insulin-like growth factor-1 inhibits smooth muscle cell proliferation after carotid ballooning injury in the rat. *FASEB J*. 1995;9:1336–1344. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7557024
71. Berzofsky JA, Schechter AN. The concepts of cross-reactivity and specificity in immunology. *Mol Immunol*. 1981;18:751–763. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6171727
72. Young NS, Curd JG, Eastlake A, Furie B, Schechter AN. Isolation of antibodies specific to sickle hemoglobin by affinity chromatography using a synthetic peptide. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1975;72:4759–4763. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/813215
73. Young NS, Eastlake A, Schecter AN. The amino terminal region of the sickle hemoglobin beta chain. II. Characterization of monospecific antibodies. *J Biol Chem*. 1976;251:6431–6435. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/977582
74. Curd JG, Young N, Schecter AN. Antibodies to an amino terminal fragment of beta globin. II. Specificity and isolation of antibodies for the sickle mutation. *J Biol Chem*. 1976;251:1290–1295. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/815254
75. Dean J, Schecter AN. Sickle-cell anemia: molecular and cellular bases of therapeutic approaches. *N Engl J Med*. 1978;299:752–763.
76. Johnston MFM, Eisen HN. Cross-reactions between 2,4-dinitrophenyl and nemadione (vitamin K3) and the general problem of antibody specificity. *J Immunol*. 1976;117:1189–1196. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/789769
77. Talmadge D. Immunological specificity. *Science*. 1959;129:1643–1648. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/13668511
78. Inman JK. Multispecificity of the antibody combining region and antibody diversity. In: Sercarz EE, Williamson AR, Fox CF, eds. *The Immune System: Genes, Receptors, Signals*. New York, NY: Academic Press; 1974:37–52.
79. Inman JK. The antibody combining region: speculations on the hypothesis of general multispecificity. In: Bell GI, Perelson AS, Pimbley GH Jr, eds. *Theoretical Immunology*. New York, NY: Marcel Dekker; 1978: 243–278.
80. Richards FF, Konigsberg WH, Rosenstein RW, Varga JM. On the specificity of antibodies. *Science*. 1975;187:130–137. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/46122
81. Parker CW. Spectrofluorometric methods. In: Weir DM, ed. *Handbook of Experimental Immunology*. Oxford, United Kingdom: Blackwell; 1978:18.1–18.25.
82. Haimovich J, Hurwitz E, Novik N, Sela M. Preparation of protein-bacteriophage conjugates and their use in detection of antiprotein antibodies. *Biochim Biophys Acta*. 1970;207:115–124.
83. Heidelberger M, Kendall FE. The precipitin reaction between type III pneumococcus polysaccharide and homologous antibody. *J Exp Med*. 1935;61:563–591.
84. Heidelberger M, Kendall FE. A quantitative theory of the precipitin reaction. II. A study of an azoprotein-antibody system. *J Exp Med*. 1935;62:467–483. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19870428
85. Kabat EA. *Structural Concepts in Immunology and Immunochemistry*. 2nd ed. New York, NY: Hold, Rinehart, and Winston; 1976.
86. Cisar J, Kabat EA, Dorner MM, Liao J. Binding properties of immunoglobulin containing sites specific for terminal or nonterminal antigenic determinants in dextran. *J Exp Med*. 1975;142:435–459. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/49389
87. Ouchterlony O, Nilsson LA. Immunodiffusion and immunoelectrophoresis. In: Weir DM, ed. *Handbook of Experimental Immunology*. Oxford, United Kingdom: Blackwell; 1978:19.1–19.44.
88. Feinberg JG. Identification, discrimination and quantification in Ouchterlony gel plates. *Int Arch Allergy*. 1957;11:129–152. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/13513185

89. Tomasi TB Jr, Zigelbaum S. The selective occurrence of gamma1A globulins in certain body fluids. *J Clin Invest*. 1963;42:1552–1560. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14074350
90. Fahey JL, McKelvey EM. Quantitative determination of serum immunoglobulins in antibody-agar plates. *J Immunol*. 1965;94:84–90. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14253527
91. Mancini G, Carbonara AO, Heremans JF. Immunochemical quantitation of antigens by single radial immunodiffusion. *Immunochem*. 1965; 2:235–254. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4956917
92. Herbert WJ. Passive haemagglutination with special reference to the tanned cell technique. In: Weir DM, ed. *Handbook of Experimental Immunology*. Oxford, United Kingdom: Blackwell; 1978:20.1–20.20.
93. Towbin H, Staehelin T, Gordon J. Electrophoretic transfer of proteins from polyacrylamide gels to nitrocellulose sheets: procedure and some applications. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1979;76:4350–4354. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/388439
94. Schupbach J, Popovic M, Gilden RV, Gonda MA, Sarngadharan MG, Gallo RC. Serological analysis of a subgroup of human T-lymphotropic retroviruses (HTLV-III) associated with AIDS. *Science*. 1984;224:503–505. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6200937
95. Feynman RP, Leighton RB, Sands M. *The Feynman Lectures on Physics*. Vol II. Reading, MA: Addison-Wesley Publishing Co; 1964.
96. Mullett WM, Lai EP, Yeung JM. Surface plasmon resonance-based immunoassays. *Methods*. 2000;22:77–91. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11020321
97. VanCott TC, Bethke FR, Polonis VR, et al. Dissociation rate of antibody-gp120 binding interactions is predictive of V3-mediated neutralization of HIV-1. *J Immunol*. 1994;153:449–459. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7515931
98. Slater RJ, Ward SM, Kunkel HG. Immunological relationships among the myeloma proteins. *J Exp Med*. 1955;101:85–108. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/13211928
99. Potter M. Immunoglobulin-producing tumors and myeloma proteins of mice. *Physiol Rev*. 1972;52:631–719. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4555516
100. Köhler G, Milstein C. Continuous cultures of fused cells secreting antibody of predefined specificity. *Nature*. 1975;256:495–497. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1172191
101. Margulies DH, Kuehl WM, Scharff MD. Somatic cell hybridization of mouse myeloma cells. *Cell*. 1976;8:405–415. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/821618
102. Shulman M, Wilde CD, Kohler G. A better cell line for making hybridomas secreting specific antibodies. *Nature*. 1978;276:269–270. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/714156
103. Kearney JF, Radbruch A, Liesegang B, Rajewsky K. A new mouse myeloma cell line that has lost immunoglobulin expression but permits the construction of antibody-secreting hybrid cell lines. *J Immunol*. 1979;123:1548–1550. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/113458
104. Yokoyama WM. Production of monoclonal antibodies. In: Coligan JE, Kruisbeek AM, Margulies DH, Shevach EM, Strober W, eds. *Current Protocols in Immunology*. Vol I. New York, NY: John Wiley & Sons, Inc; 2001:2.5.1.
105. Unkeless JC. Characterization of monoclonal antibody directed against mouse macrophage and lymphocyte Fc receptors. *J Exp Med*. 1979;150: 580–596. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/90108
106. Leo O, Foo M, Sachs DH, Samelson LE, Bluestone JA. Identification of a monoclonal antibody specific for a murine T3 polypeptide. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1987;84:1374–1378. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2950524
107. Yarmush ML, Gates FT, Weisfogel DR, Kindt TJ. Identification and characterization of rabbit-mouse hybridomas secreting rabbit immunoglobulin chains. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1980;77:2899–2903. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6771762
108. Bazin H. Production of rat monoclonal antibodies with the Lou rat non-secreting IR983F myeloma cell line. *Prot Biol Fluids*. 1981;29: 615–618.
109. Huse WD, Sastry L, Iverson SA, et al. Generation of a large combinatorial library of the immunoglobulin repertoire in phage lambda. *Science*. 1989;246:1275–1281. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2531466
110. Clackson T, Hoogenboom HR, Griffiths AD, Winter G. Making antibody fragments using phage display libraries. *Nature*. 1991;352:624–628. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1907718
111. McCaffertyJ,Griffiths AD, Winter G, Chiswell DJ. Phage antibodies: filamentous phage displaying antibody variable domains. *Nature*. 1990;348:552–554. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2247164
112. Kang AS, Barbas CF, Janda KD, Benkovic SJ, Lerner RA. Linkage of recognition and replication functions by assembling combinatorial antibody Fab libraries along phage surfaces. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1991;88:4363–4366. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1903540
113. Zebedee SL, Barbas CF, III, Hom Y, et al. Human combinatorial antibody libraries to hepatitis B surface antigen. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1992;89:3175–3179. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1373487
114. Burton DR, Barbas CF III, Persson MAA, Koenig S, Chanock RM, Lerner RA. A large array of human monoclonal antibodies to type 1 human immunodeficiency virus from combinatorial libraries of asymptomatic seropositive individuals. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1991;88:10134–10137. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1719545
115. Duchosal MA, Eming SA, Fischer P, et al. Immunization of hu-PBL-SCID mice and the rescue of human monoclonal Fab fragments through combinatorial libraries. *Nature*. 1992;355:258–262. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1731222
116. Low NM, Holliger P, Winter G. Mimicking somatic hypermutation: Affinity maturation of antibodies displayed on bacteriophage using a bacterial mutator strain. *J Mol Biol*. 1996;260:359–368. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8757799
117. Thompson J, Pope T, Tung J, et al. Affinity maturation of a high-affinity human monoclonal antibody against the third hypervariable loop of human immunodeficiency virus: use of phage display to improve affinity and broaden strain reactivity. *J Mol Biol*. 1996;256:77–88. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8609615
118. Tiller T, Meffre E, Yurasov S, Tsuiji M, Nussenzweig MC, Wardemann H. Efficient generation of monoclonal antibodies from single human B cells by single cell RT-PCR and expression vector cloning. *J Immunol Methods*. 2008;329:112–24. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17996249
119. Scheid JF, Mouquet H, Feldhahn N, et al. Broad diversity of neutralizing antibodies isolated from memory B cells in HIV-infected individuals. *Nature*. 2009;458:636–640. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19287373
120. Pietzsch J, Scheid JF, Mouquet H, et al. Human anti-HIV-neutralizing antibodies frequently target a conserved epitope essential for viral fitness. *J Exp Med*. 2010;207:1995–2002. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20679402
121. Scheid JF, Mouquet H, Ueberheide B, et al. Sequence and structural convergence of broad and potent HIV antibodies that mimic CD4 binding. *Science*. 2011;333:1633–1637. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21764753
122. Pietzsch J, Scheid JF, Mouquet H, Seaman MS, Broder CC, Nussenzweig MC. Anti-gp41 antibodies cloned from HIV-infected patients with broadly neutralizing serologic activity. *J Virol*. 2010;84:5032–5042. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20219932
123. Mouquet H, Klein F, Scheid JF, et al. Memory B cell antibodies to HIV-1 gp140 cloned from individuals infected with clade A and B viruses. *PLoS One*. 2011;6:e24078. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21931643
124. Lerner RA, Benkovic SJ, Schultz PG. At the crossroads of chemistry and immunology: catalytic antibodies. *Science*. 1991;252:659–667. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2024118
125. Pollack SJ, Jacobs JW, Schultz PG. Selective chemical catalysis by an antibody. *Science*. 1986;234:1570–1573. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3787262
126. Shuster AM, Gololobov GV, Kvashuk OA, Bogomolova AE, Smirnov IV, Gabibov AG. DNA hydrolyzing autoantibodies. *Science*. 1992;256:665–667. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1585181
127. Tramontano A, Janda KD, Lerner RA. Catalytic antibodies. *Science*. 1986;234:1566–1570. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3787261
128. Shokat KM, Leumann CJ, Sugasawara R, Schultz PG. A new strategy for the generation of catalytic antibodies. *Nature*. 1989;338:269–271. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2922053

129. Pollack SJ, Hsiun P, Schultz PG. Stereospecific hydrolysis of alkyl esters by antibodies. *J Am Chem Soc*. 1989;111:5961–5962.
130. Wirsching P, Ashley JA, Benkovic SJ, Janda KD, Lerner RA. An unexpectedlyefficient catalytic antibody operating by ping-pong and induced fit mechanisms. *Science*. 1991;252:680–685. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2024120
131. Shabat D, Itzhaky H, Reymond J, Keinan E. Antibody catalysis of a reaction otherwise strongly disfavoured in water. *Nature*. 1995;374:143–146. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7877686
132. Hirschmann R, Smith AB, Taylor CM, et al. Peptide synthesis catalyzed by an antibody containing a binding site for variable amino acids. *Science*. 1994;265:234–237. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8023141
133. Kriangkum J, Xu BW, Nagata LP, Fulton RE, Suresh MR. Bispecific and bifunctional single chain recombinant antibodies. *Biomol Eng*. 2001;18:31–40. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11535414
134. Karpovsky B, Titus JA, Stephany DA, Segal DM. Production of target-specific effector cells using hetero-cross-linked aggregates containing anti-target cell and anti-Fcg receptor antibodies. *J Exp Med*. 1984;160: 1686–1701. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6239899
135. Titus JA, Garrido MA, Hecht TT, Winkler DF, Wunderlich JR, Segal DM. Human T cells targeted with anti-T3 cross-linked to antitumor antibody prevent tumor growth in nude mice. *J Immunol*. 1987;138:4018–4022. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3108382
136. Wickham TJ, Segal DM, Roelvink PW, et al. Targeted adenovirus gene transfer to endothelial and smooth muscle cells by using bispecific antibodies. *J Virol*. 1996;70:6831–6838. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8794324
137. Vallera DA, Ash RC, Zanjani ED, et al. Anti-T-cell reagents for human bone marrow transplantation: Ricin linked to three monoclonal antibodies. *Science*. 1983;222:512–515. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6353579
138. Waldmann TA. Monoclonal antibodies in diagnosis and therapy. *Science*. 1991;252:1657–1662. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2047874
139. Berkower I. The promise and pitfalls of monoclonal antibody therapeutics. *Curr Opinion Biotech*. 1996;7:622–628. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8939645
140. Waldmann TA. Immunotherapy: past, present and future. *Nat Med*. 2003;9:269–277. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12612576
141. Ortho Multicenter Transplant Study Group. A randomized clinical trial of OKT3 monoclonal antibody for acute rejection of cadaveric renal transplants. *N Eng J Med*. 1988;313:337–342.
142. Collier BD, Abdel-Nabi H, Doerr RJ, et al. Immunoscintigraphy performed with In-111-labeled CYT-103 in the management of colorectal cancer: comparison with CT. *Radiology*. 1992;185:179–186. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1523304
143. Ezzell C. Magic bullets fly again. *Scientific American*. 2001;285:34–41. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11570040
144. Sears HF, Herlyn D, Steplewski Z, Koprowski H. Effects of monoclonal antibody immunotherapy on patients with gastrointestinal adenocarcinoma. *J Biol Resp Mod*. 1984;3:138–150. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6374043
145. Baselga J, Tripathy D, Mendelsohn J, et al. Phase II study of weekly intravenous recombinant humanized anti-p185HER2 monoclonal antibody in patients with HER2/neu-overexpressing metastatic breast cancer. *J Clin Oncol*. 1996;14:737–744. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8622019
146. Baselga J, Norton L, Albanell J, Kim YM, Mendelsohn J. Recombinant humanized anti-HER2 antibody (Herceptin) enhances the antitumor activity of paclitaxel and doxorubicin against HER2/neu over-expressing human breast cancer xenografts. *Cancer Res*. 1998;58:2825–2831. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9661897
147. Maloney DG, Grillo-Lopez AJ, Bodkin DJ, et al. IDEC-C2B8: results of a phase I multiple-dose trial in patients with relapsed non-Hodgkin's lymphoma. *J Clin Oncol*. 1997;15:3266–3274. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9336364
148. Morris JC, Waldmann TA. Advances in interleukin 2 receptor targeted treatment. *Ann Rheum Dis*. 2000;59(suppl 1):i109–i114. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11053100
149. Frankel AE, Houston LL, Issell BF. Prospects for immunotoxin therapy in cancer. *Ann Rev Med*. 1986;37:125–142. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3518602
150. Kreitman RJ, Wilson WH, Bergeron K, et al. Efficacy of the anti-CD22 recombinant immunotoxin BL22 in chemotherapy-resistant hairy-cell leukemia. *N Engl J Med*. 2001;345:241–247. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11474661
151. Carrasquillo JA, Krohn JA, Beaumier P, et al. Diagnosis and therapy for solid tumors with radiolabeled antibodies and immune fragments. *Cancer Treat Rep*. 1984;68:317–328. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6607111
152. Waldmann TA, Goldman CK, Bongiovanni KF, et al. Therapy of patients with human T-cell lymphotrophic virus I-induced adult T-cell leukemia with anti-Tac, a monoclonal antibody to the receptor for interleukin-2. *Blood*. 1988;72:1805–1816. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2846094
153. Waldmann TA. Multichain interleukin-2 receptor: a target for immunotherapy in lymphoma. *J Natl Cancer Inst*. 1989;81:914–923. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2659803
154. Zhang M, Zhang Z, Garmestani K, et al. Activating Fc receptors are required for antitumor efficacy of the antibodies directed toward CD25 in a murine model of adult t-cell leukemia. *Cancer Res*. 2004;64:5825–5829. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15313926
155. van Oers MH, Klasa R, Marcus RE, et al. Rituximab maintenance improves clinical outcome of relapsed/resistant follicular non-Hodgkin's lymphoma, both in patients with and without rituximab during induction: results of a prospective randomized phase III intergroup trial. *Blood*. 2006;108(10):3295–3301. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16873669
156. Witzig TE, Gordon LI, Cabanillas F, et al. Randomized controlled trial of yttrium-90-labeled ibritumomab tiuxetan radioimmunotherapy versus rituximab immunotherapy for patients with relapsed or refractory low-grade, follicular, or transformed B-cell non-Hodgkin's lymphoma. *J Clin Oncol*. 2002;20:2453–2463. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12011122
157. Gibson AD. Updated results of a Phase III trial comparing ibritumomab tiuxetan with rituximab in previously treated patients with non-Hodgkin's lymphoma. *Clin Lymphoma*. 2002;3:87–89. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12435281
158. Robert N, Leyland-Jones B, Asmar L, et al. Randomized phase III study of trastuzumab, paclitaxel, and carboplatin compared with trastuzumab and paclitaxel in women with HER-2-overexpressing metastatic breast cancer. *J Clin Oncol*. 2006;24:2786–2792. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16782917
159. Coudert BP, Arnould L, Moreau L, et al. Pre-operative systemic (neoadjuvant) therapy with trastuzumab and docetaxel for HER2-overexpressing stage II or III breast cancer: results of a multicenter phase II trial. *Ann Oncol*. 2006;17:409–414. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16332965
160. Yang JC, Haworth L, Sherry RM, et al. A randomized trial of bevacizumab, an anti-vascular endothelial growth factor antibody, for metastatic renal cancer. *N Engl J Med*. 2003;349:427–434. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12890841
161. Hurwitz H, Fehrenbacher L, Novotny W, et al. Bevacizumab plus irinotecan, fluorouracil, and leucovorin for metastatic colorectal cancer. *N Engl J Med*. 2004;350:2335–2342. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15175435
162. Rini BI, Halabi S, Taylor J, Small EJ, Schilsky RL. Cancer and Leukemia Group B 90206: a randomized phase III trial of interferon-alpha or interferon-alpha plus anti-vascular endothelial growth factor antibody (bevacizumab) in metastatic renal cell carcinoma. *Clin Cancer Res*. 2004;10:2584–2586. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15102658
163. Johnson DH, Fehrenbacher L, Novotny WF, et al. Randomized phase II trial comparing bevacizumab plus carboplatin and paclitaxel with carboplatin and paclitaxel alone in previously untreated locally advanced or metastatic non-small-cell lung cancer. *J Clin Oncol*. 2004;22:2184–2191. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15169807
164. Starling N, Cunningham D. Monoclonal antibodies against vascular endothelial growth factor and epidermal growth factor receptor in advanced colorectal cancers: present and future directions. *Curr Opin Oncol*. 2004;16:385–390. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15187895

165. Ferrara N, Hillan KJ, Gerber HP, Novotny W. Discovery and development of bevacizumab, an anti-VEGF antibody for treating cancer. *Nat Rev Drug Discov*. 2004;3:391–400.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15136787
166. Gibson TB, Ranganathan A, Grothey A. Randomized phase III trial results of panitumumab, a fully human anti-epidermal growth factor receptor monoclonal antibody, in metastatic colorectal cancer. *Clin Colorectal Cancer*. 2006;6:29–31.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16796788
167. Wendtner CM, Ritgen M, Schweighofer CD, et al. Consolidation with alemtuzumab in patients with chronic lymphocytic leukemia (CLL) in first remission—experience on safety and efficacy within a randomized multicenter phase III trial of the German CLL Study Group (GCLLSG). *Leukemia*. 2004;18:1093–1101.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15071604
168. Tsimberidou AM, Giles FJ, Estey E, O'Brien S, Keating MJ, Kantarjian HM. The role of gemtuzumab ozogamicin in acute leukaemia therapy. *Br J Haematol*. 2006;132:398–409.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16412015
169. Lipsky PE, van der Heijde DM, St Clair EW, et al. Infliximab and methotrexate in the treatment of rheumatoid arthritis. Anti-Tumor Necrosis Factor Trial in Rheumatoid Arthritis with Concomitant Therapy Study Group. *N Engl J Med*. 2000;343:1594–1602.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11096166
170. Pisetsky DS. Tumor necrosis factor blockers in rheumatoid arthritis. *N Engl J Med*. 2000;342:810–811.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10717018
171. Johnson S, Oliver C, Prince GA, et al. Development of a humanized monoclonal antibody (MEDI-493) with potent in vitro and in vivo activity against respiratory syncytial virus. *J Infect Dis*. 1997;176:1215–1224.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9359721
172. Palivizumab, a humanized respiratory syncytial virus monoclonal antibody, reduces hospitalization from respiratory syncytial virus infection in high-risk infants. The IMpact-RSV Study Group. *Pediatrics*. 1998;102:531–537.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9738173
173. Bumgardner GL, Hardie I, Johnson RW, et al. Results of 3-year phase III clinical trials with daclizumab prophylaxis for prevention of acute rejection after renal transplantation. *Transplantation*. 2001;72:839–845.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11571447
174. Nussenblatt RB, Fortin E, Schiffman R, et al. Treatment of noninfectious intermediate and posterior uveitis with the humanized anti-Tac mAb: a phase I/II clinical trial. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1999;96:7462–7466.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10377437
175. Bielekova B, Richert N, Howard T, et al. Humanized anti-CD25 (daclizumab) inhibits disease activity in multiple sclerosis patients failing to respond to interferon beta. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2004;101:8705–8708.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15161974
176. Krummel MF, Allison JP. CD28 and CTLA-4 have opposing effects on the response of T cells to stimulation. *J Exp Med*. 1995;182:459–465.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7543139
177. Leach DR, Krummel MF, Allison JP. Enhancement of anitumor immunity by CTLA-4 blockade. *Science*. 1996;271:1734–1736.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8596936
178. Phan GQ, Yang JC, Sherry RM, et al. Cancer regression and autoimmunity induced by cytotoxic T lymphocyte-associated antigen 4 blockade in patients with metastatic melanoma. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2003;100:8372–8377.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12826605
179. Wolchok JD, Neyns B, Linette G, et al. Ipilimumab monotherapy in patients with pretreated advanced melanoma: a randomised, double-blind, multicentre, phase 2, dose-ranging study. *Lancet Oncol*. 2010;11:155–164.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20004617
180. Weber J, Thompson JA, Hamid O, et al. A randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled, phase II study comparing the tolerability and efficacy of ipilimumab administered with or without prophylactic budesonide in patients with unresectable stage III or IV melanoma. *Clin Canc Res*. 2009;15:5591–5598.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19671877
181. Yuan JD, Gnjatic S, Li H, et al. CTLA-4 blockade enhances polyfunctional NY-ESO-1 specific T cell responses in metastatic melanoma patients with clinical benefit. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2008;105:20410–20415.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19074257
182. Barber DL, Wherry EJ, Masopust D, et al. Restoring function in exhausted CD8 T cells during chronic viral infection. *Nature*. 2006;439:682–687.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16382236
183. Freeman GJ, Wherry EJ, Ahmed R, Sharpe AH. Reinvigorating exhausted HIV-specific T cells via PD-1-PD-1 ligand blockade. *J Exp Med*. 2006;203:2223–2227.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17000870
184. Velu V, Titanji K, Zhu B, et al. Enhancing SIV-specific immunity in vivo by PD-1 blockade. *Nature*. 2008;458(7235):206–210.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19078956
185. Hasan A, Ghebeh H, Lehe C, Ahmad R, Dermime S. Therapeutic targeting of B7-H1 in breast cancer. *Expert Opin Ther Targets*. 2011;15:1211–1225.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21870995
186. Rosenblatt J, Glotzbecker B, Mills H, et al. PD-1 blockade by CT-011, anti-PD-1 antibody, enhances ex vivo T-cell responses to autologous dendritic cell/myeloma fusion vaccine. *J Immunother*. 2011;34:409–418.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21577144
187. Morris JC, Shapiro GI, Tan AR, et al. Phase I/II Study of GC1008: A human anti-transforming growth factor-beta (TGFb) monoclonal antibody (MAb) in patients with advanced malignant melanoma (MM) or renal cell carcinoma (RCC). *J Clin Oncol*. 2008;26.
188. Terabe M, Matsui S, Park J-M, et al. Transforming growth factor-b production and myeloid cells are an effector mechanism through which CD1d-restricted T cells block cytotoxic T lymphocyte-mediated tumor immunosurveillance: abrogation prevents tumor recurrence. *J Exp Med*. 2003;198:1741–1752.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14657224
189. Terabe M, Ambrosino E, Takaku S, et al. Synergistic enhancement of CD8+ T cell-mediated tumor vaccine efficacy by an anti-transforming growth factor-beta monoclonal antibody. *Clin Cancer Res*. 2009;15:6560–6569.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19861451
190. Takaku S, Terabe M, Ambrosino E, et al. Blockade of TGF-beta enhances tumor vaccine efficacy mediated by CD8(+) T cells. *Int J Cancer*. 2010;126:1666–1674.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19830696
191. Weiss JM, Back TC, Scarzello AJ, et al. Successful immunotherapy with IL-2/anti-CD40 induces the chemokine-mediated mitigation of an immunosuppressive tumor microenvironment. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2009;106:19455–19460.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19892741
192. Weiss JM, Ridnour LA, Back T, et al. Macrophage-dependent nitric oxide expression regulates tumor cell detachment and metastasis after IL-2/anti-CD40 immunotherapy. *J Exp Med*. 2010;207:2455–2467.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20921282
193. Fransen MF, Sluijter M, Morreau H, Arens R, Melief CJM. Local activation of CD8 T cells and systemic tumor eradication without toxicity via slow release and local delivery of agonistic CD40 antibody. *Clin Canc Res*. 2011;17:2270–2280.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21389097
194. Miller RA, Maloney DG, Warnke R, Levy R. Treatment of B-cell lymphoma with monoclonal anti-idiotype antibody. *N Eng J Med*. 1982;306:517–522.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6173751
195. Kwak LW, Young HA, Pennington RW, Weeks SD. Vaccination with syngeneic, lymphoma-derived immunoglobulin idiotype combined with granulocyte/macrophage colony-stimulating factor primes mice for a protective T-cell response. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1996;93:10972–10977.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8855293
196. Hsu FJ, Caspar CB, Czerwinski D, et al. Tumor -specific idiotype vaccines in the treatment of patients with B-cell lymphoma—long-term results of a clinical trial. *Blood*. 1997;89:3129–3135.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9129015
197. Timmerman JM, Czerwinski DK, Davis TA, et al. Idiotype-pulsed dendritic cell vaccination for B-cell lymphoma: clinical and immune responses in 35 patients. *Blood*. 2002;99:1517–1526.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11861263

198. Davis TA, Hsu FJ, Caspar CB, et al. Idiotype vaccination following ABMT can stimulate specific anti-idiotype immune responses in patients with B-cell lymphoma. *Biol Blood Marrow Transplant*. 2001;7:517–522. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11669219
199. Neelapu SS, Kwak LW, Kobrin CB, et al. Vaccine-induced tumor-specific immunity despite severe B-cell depletion in mantle cell lymphoma. *Nat Med*. 2005;11:986–991. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16116429
200. Meeker T, Lowder J, Cleary ML, et al. Emergence of idiotype variants during treatment of B-cell lymphoma with anti-idiotype antibodies. *N Eng J Med*. 1985;312:1658–1665. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3923352
201. Hakim I, Levy S, Levy R. A nine-amino acid peptide from IL-1á augments antitumor immune responses induced by protein and DNA vaccines. *J Immunol*. 1996;157:5503–5511. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8955200
202. Cole RJ, Morrisey DM, Houghton AN, Beattie JEJ, Oettgen HF, Old LJ. Generation of human monoclonal antibodies reactive with cellular antigens. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1983;80:2026–2030.
203. Olsson L, Kaplan HS. Human-human monoclonal antibody-producing hybridomas: technical aspects. *Meth Enzymol*. 1983;92:3–16. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6343768
204. Seigneurin JM, Desgranges C, Seigneurin D, et al. Herpes simplex virus glycoprotein D: human monoclonal antibody produced by bone marrow cell line. *Science*. 1983;221:173–175. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6304881
205. Sugano T, Matsumoto Y, Miyamoto C, Masuho Y. Hybridomas producing human monoclonal antibodies against varicella-zoster virus. *Eur J Immunol*. 1987;17:359–364. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3032647
206. Morrison SL. Transfectomas provide novel chimeric antibodies. *Science*. 1985;229:1202–1207. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3929380
207. Morrison SL, Johnson MJ, Herzenberg LA, Oi VT. Chimeric human antibody molecules: mouse antigen-binding domains with human constant region domains. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1984;81:6851–6855. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6436822
208. Jones PT, Dear PH, Foote J, Neuberger MS, Winter G. Replacing the complementarity-determining regions in a human antibody with those from a mouse. *Nature*. 1986;321:522–525. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3713831
209. Brüggemann M, Spicer C, Buluwela L, et al. Human antibody production in transgenic mice: expression from 100 kb of the human IgH locus. *Eur J Immunol*. 1991;21:1323–1326. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1903709
210. Lonberg N, Taylor LD, Harding FA, et al. Antigen-specific human antibodies from mice comprising four distinct genetic modifications. *Nature*. 1994;368:856–859. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8159246
211. Green LL, Hardy MC, Maynard-Currie CE, et al. Antigen-specific human monoclonal antibodies from mice engineered with human Ig heavy and light chain YACs. *Nature Genet*. 1994;7:13–21. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8075633
212. Jayasena SD. Aptamers: an emerging class of molecules that rival antibodies in diagnostics. *Clin Chem*. 1999;45:1628–1650. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10471678
213. Klein J, Huang HS, Lemke H, Hämmerling GJ, Hämmerling U. Serological analysis of H-2 and Ia molecules with monoclonal anti-bodies. *Immunogenetics*. 1979;8:419–432.
214. Ozato K, Mayer N, Sachs DH. Hybridoma cell lines secreting monoclonal antibodies to mouse H-2 and Ia antigens. *J Immunol*. 1980;124:533–540. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7188699
215. Pierres M, Devaux C, Dosseto M, Marchetto S. Clonal analysis of B-and T-cell responses to Ia antigens. I. Topology of epitope regions on I-Ak and I-Ek molecules analyzed with 35 monoclonal alloantibodies. *Immunogenetics*. 1981;14:481–495. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6976317
216. Sattentau QJ, Dalgleish AG, Weiss RA, Beverley PCL. Epitopes of the CD4 antigen and HIV infection. *Science*. 1986;234:1120–1123. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2430333
217. Hoxie JA, Flaherty LE, Haggarty BS, Rackowski JL. Infection of T4 lymphocytes by HTLV-III does not require expression of the OKT4 epitope. *J Immunol*. 1986;136:361–363. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2416802
218. Porgador A, Yewdell JW, Deng YP, Bennink JR, Germain RN. Localization, quantitation, and in situ detection of specific peptide MHC class I complexes using a monoclonal antibody. *Immunity*. 1997;6:715–726. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9208844
219. Messaoudi I, LeMaoult J, Nikolic-Zugic J. The mode of ligand recognition by two peptide : MHC class I-specific monoclonal antibodies. *J Immunol*. 1999;163:3286–3294. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10477598
220. Polakova K, Plaksin D, Chung DH, Belyakov IM, Berzofsky JA, Margulies DH. Antibodies directed against the MHC-I molecule H-2Dd complexed with an antigenic peptide: similarities to a T cell receptor with the same specificity. *J Immunol*. 2000;165:5703–5712. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11067928
221. Chung DH, Belyakov IM, Derby MA, et al. Competitive inhibition in vivo and skewing of the T cell repertoire of antigen-specific CTL priming by an anti-peptide-MHC mAb. *J Immunol*. 2001;167:699–707. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11441073
222. Koike T, Tomioka H, Kumagai A. Antibodies cross-reactive with DNA and cardiolipin in patients with systemic lupus erythematosus. *Clin Exp Immunol*. 1982;50:298–302. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7151328

CHAPTER 8

B-Lymphocyte Development and Biology

Richard R. Hardy

INTRODUCTION

B lymphocytes constitute one of the major arms of the immune system, being responsible for humoral immunity. B cells in humans and mice are produced throughout life, primarily in the fetal liver before birth and in the bone marrow after birth. Their development from hematopoietic stem cells (HSCs) has been extensively characterized in mice, and the generation of numerous gene-targeted and transgenic lines in many cases has provided crucial information on the role of transcription factors, cellular receptors, and interactions that are critical in their generation. Recently, the role of microribonucleic acids (miRNAs) in regulating hematopoietic development has also emerged. The complexity of this process is now apparent, and B-cell progenitor differentiation into multiple peripheral subsets with distinctive functions is also widely appreciated. This chapter will focus on B-cell development and function in the mouse, touching more briefly on aspects of human B cells that are similar or distinctive, with a focus on immunodeficiency and B-cell neoplasias. It will conclude with a brief description of novel aspects of B-lymphocyte development in other species, highlighting differences from development in mouse and human.

B-CELL DEVELOPMENT IN MICE

In mice, B cells are produced from HSCs through a complex process of differentiation that has been uncovered over the past 30 years or so. One of the goals of classical hematology has been the delineation of differentiation pathways for different lineages of blood cells. There has been considerable progress in utilizing the ordered expression of a diverse set of cell surface and internal proteins, some with known functions, others whose roles are only suspected, to construct a description of the intermediate stages that cells transit as they develop into B lymphocytes. A simplified example of such a description is presented in Figure 8.1. Thus, HSCs with the capacity to generate all the cell types in blood generate progeny with a more restricted capacity, recognizable in this example by expression of the receptor for interleukin (IL)-7. These in turn produce yet more restricted progenitor cells identified by expression of cluster of differentiation (CD)45R/B220 (and, importantly, by absence of CD19).

This kind of pathway can be constructed by isolation and short-term culture of intermediate stages, allowing progression to occur, which helps to define the order. This framework for development serves as a starting point for analysis of the effects of transcription factors, microenvironmental interactions, cytokines, and natural or engineered mutations. It can also be extended by analysis of gene or protein expression at distinct intermediate stages. Critical processes, such as D-J rearrangement and immunoglobulin (Ig) heavy chain expression, can also be mapped onto this framework. Progress in this work facilitates experiments that address additional issues, such as identification of key regulatory interactions, developmental checkpoints, and the mechanism of B-lineage commitment.

The following sections will cover the sites of B-lineage development at different stages of ontogeny, then focus on what is known about their development in the bone marrow of adult mice, highlighting the function of the pre–B-cell receptor and the crucial role of Ig heavy and light chains in guiding development. Later sections will consider their differentiation into various specialized peripheral populations and emphasize insights into B-cell selection gained from various transgenic models of tolerance.

Early Development

Sites of B Lymphopoiesis during Ontogeny

In the mouse, hematopoiesis occurs predominantly in the fetal liver prior to birth, in the spleen just prior to and shortly after birth, and in the bone marrow thereafter. Prior to liver hematopoiesis, the blood islands of the yolk sac (YS) contain the first identifiable hematopoietic cells, nucleated erythrocytes with embryonic forms of hemoglobin.[1] However, these early YS precursors appear incapable of generating other blood cell lineages, and generation of all blood cell types, including lymphocytes,[2,3] initiates at around 9 to 10 dpc in an embryonic region referred to as the splanchnopleura/AGM (or simply Sp/AGM). Cells from this site are capable of long-term repopulation of lethally irradiated adult recipients with all blood lineages.[4,5] These cells colonize the fetal liver at about 11 dpc, initiating hematopoiesis there. Thus, there are two sites of very early hematopoietic precursors, with one in the YS largely limited to erythropoiesis and the other in the Sp/AGM capable of complete (referred to as "definitive") hematopoiesis. However, it may be that precursors in the YS have a broader lineage potential in the fetal microenvironment, as when they are injected directly into the newborn liver.[6]

HSCs capable of developing into all the blood cell types are produced in the Sp/AGM and migrate to the fetal liver at about d10. Thereafter, B-lineage cells develop largely in a wave, with earlier stages present at earlier times and later stage predominating at later times, close to (and shortly after) birth.[7,8] This progression with gestation day is easily visualized by staining with antibodies that delineate B-cell

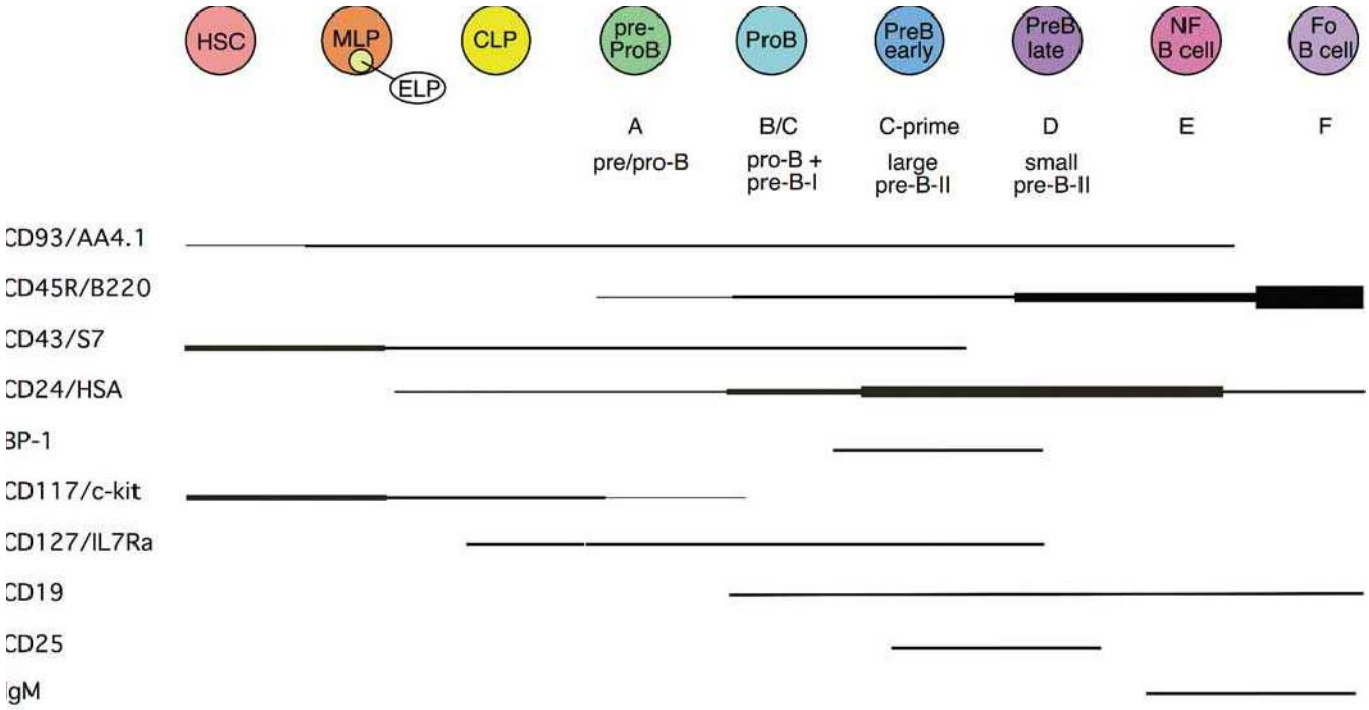


FIG. 8.1. Differentiation Diagram for Development of B Cells from Hematopoietic Stem Cells. Expression of the each surface protein is indicated by a *line*. Changes in level of expression is indicated by line thickness. CLP, common lymphoid progenitor; ELP, early lymphoid progenitor; Fo B, follicular B cell; HSC, hematopoietic stem cell; MLP, multilineage progenitor; NF B, newly formed B cell.

development, as shown in Figure 8.2. Early precursors can also be found in the fetal omentum.[9] In contrast with the bone marrow, cells at most differentiation stages in the fetal liver appear to be rapidly proliferating so that larger and larger numbers of B-lineage cells are detected at progressive days of gestation. Another distinction of fetal liver from bone marrow development in the adult is the absence of terminal deoxynucleotidyl transferase (TdT),[10,11] an enzyme that mediates nontemplated addition of nucleotides at the D-J and V-D junctions of Ig heavy chain.[12–14] Therefore, heavy chains produced during fetal development have little or no N-region addition, and CDR3 diversity is constrained even further by favoring of short stretches of homology at the V-D and D-J junctions.[15,16] Rearrangement of certain V or D elements may also differ between fetal and adult development, as for example, the reported high utilization of the DFL16.1 segment in fetal liver.[17] Differential expression of genes other than TdT also distinguish B-cell development during fetal life from that in the adult including precursor lymphocyte regulated myosin light chain like PLRLC transcripts[11,18] and major histocompatibility complex (MHC) class II.[19,20] Interestingly, although absence of the cytokine IL-7 completely eliminates bone marrow B-lineage development,[21] it nevertheless spares some fetal development,[22] suggesting a difference in growth requirements. The B-cell progeny of this early fetal wave may largely consist of B cells quite distinct from adult-derived cells, populating the B-1 subset.[23]

At birth, B-cell development can also be detected in spleen, but development at this site gradually decreases to very low levels by 2 to 4 weeks of age. Over this same period, B-cell development shifts to the bone marrow and thereafter it continues for the life of the animal. B lymphopoiesis decreases in aged mice. This may be due to diminished responsiveness of precursors to IL-7.[24,25]

Stem Cells, Commitment, and Early B-Cell Progenitors in Bone Marrow

B cells are continually generated from HSCs in the bone marrow of adult mice. Considerable effort has focused on evaluating the functional capacity of fractions of bone marrow cells to repopulate different lineages of blood cells; this work has progressed to the stage of defining a phenotype for such cells, with expression of c-KIT constituting an important marker in the so-called lineage negative subset.[26,27] This is the small fraction of bone marrow cells (<5%) that lacks expression of a panel of "differentiation markers," cell surface molecules that are expressed on later stages of various hematopoietic cell lineages. Careful analysis of this HSC fraction using additional markers has shown that it represent perhaps 1/30,000 of nucleated bone marrow cells with as few as 10 mediating multilineage repopulation in cell transfer assays.[28–30] An important capacity of "true" or "long-term repopulating" HSCs is their ability to give rise to cells in a recipient mouse that can also repopulate all the blood cell lineages upon retransfer into a second host, indicating a capacity for extensive self-renewal without differentiation into more restricted progenitors.

A major focus in research on hematopoiesis has been defining and characterizing lineage-restricted progenitors, such as the common myeloid and common lymphoid

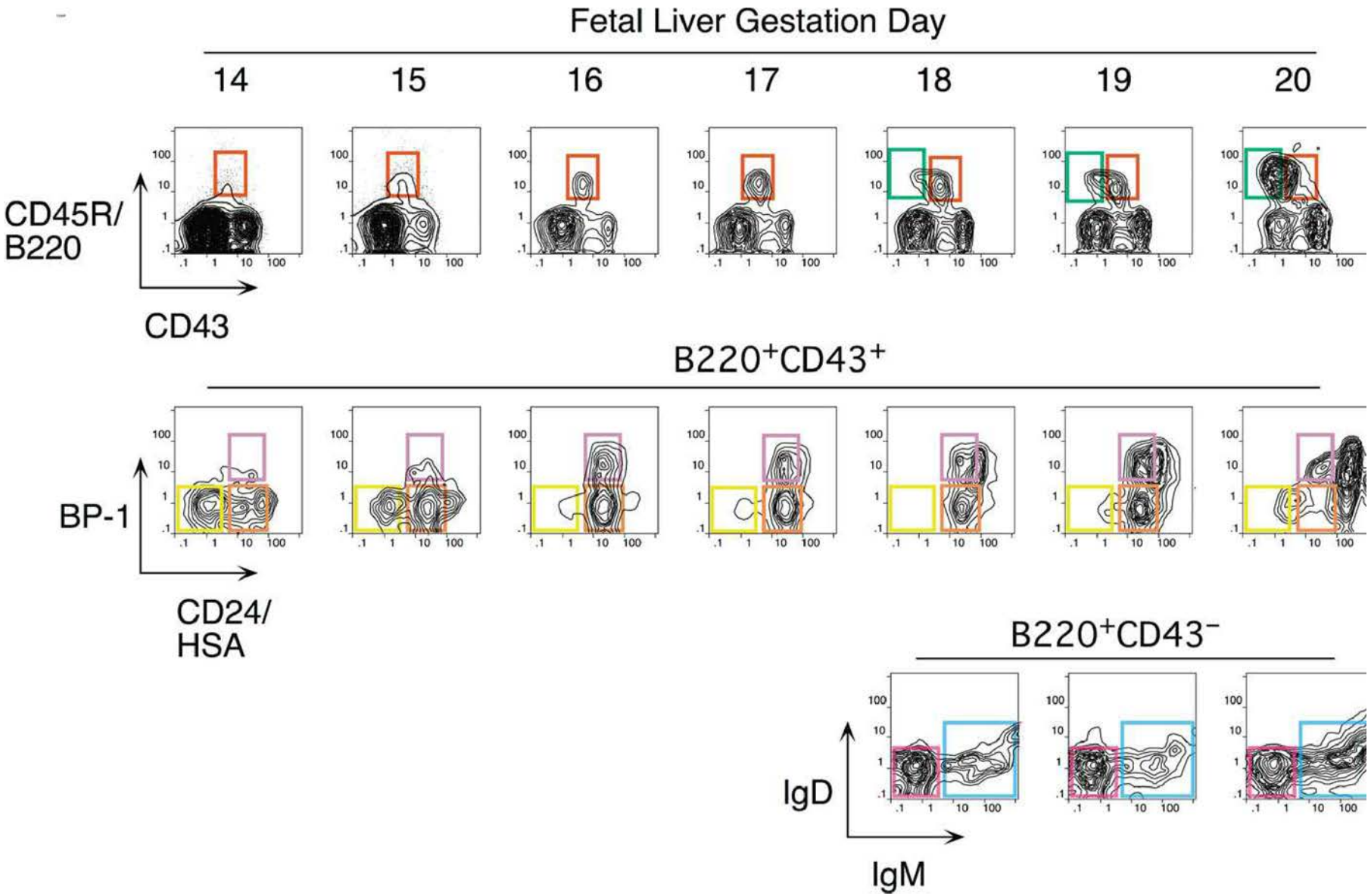


FIG. 8.2. Phenotypic Progression of Developing B-Lineage Cells in Mouse Fetal Liver Analyzed at Different Days of Gestation. Note that B220+cluster of differentiation (CD)43+ cells precede B220+CD43– cells and that within the B220+CD43+ fraction, heat stable antigen (HSA)– cells precede HSA+ cells, and BP-1– cells precede BP-1+ cells. Within the B220+CD43– fraction, the immunoglobulin M+ percentage increases until birth (at about day 20).

progenitors (CLPs).[31–33] The CLP cell fraction was identified by lack of a panel of "lineage markers," expression of the IL-7Rα chain, and distinctive, intermediate levels of c-KIT, compared to higher levels on HSCs. Initial characterization of these cells in various functional assays suggested that these cells could generate B, T, natural killer (NK), and a subset of dendritic cells but no other blood cell lineages. The reason for this restriction has been intensively studied, and downregulation of the receptor for granulocyte–myeloid colony stimulating factor has been suggested to be a key event in this process.[34] Cells with the phenotype of CLP constitute about 1/3000 of bone marrow cells. Prior to the CLP stage, multipotent progenitors exhibit low-level expression of genes characteristic of diverse cell lineages, leading to the idea that such promiscuous expression indicates chromatin accessibility that facilitates flexibility in cell fate decisions.[35]

CLP cells can give rise in short-term cultures to cells of the B lineage, naturally raising the issue of when cells become restricted to the B lineage. Most cells growing in stromal cultures give rise only to B cells upon transfer into mice, and the phenotype of these cells has been well characterized.[36] Most have at least some heavy chain rearrangement and bear the B-lineage marker CD19.[37,38] There is less certainty concerning the cells isolated directly from primary lymphoid tissues, as such cells are quite rare similar to CLPs and HSCs. Most of the CD45R/B220+ cells in bone marrow are also CD19+; such cells are committed to the production of B cells.[39] However, a subset of B220+ cells lacks detectable CD19 expression; cells within this fraction can generate CD19+ cells in short-term stromal culture with IL-7. Such cells are included in the CD43+CD24^{low} fraction (Fr. A, 1% of bone marrow) of B220+ cells in bone marrow, but this fraction also contains other cell types including NK-lineage precursors.[38,40] Thus, it is necessary to exclude cells lacking AA4.1 (about half[38]) and expressing Ly6c.[41] Many of these Ly6c+ cells also express CD4; recent work suggests that these are plasmacytoid dendritic cells.[42,43] A phenotypic approach for enriching and fractionating very early B-lineage subsets is shown in Figure 8.3A.

Careful analysis of the LIN− (including CD19) IL7Rα+cKIT+ CD45/B220− (CLP) and CD45/B220+ (Fr. A), as delineated in Figure 8.3, modified our understanding of the earliest stages of B-cell development in bone marrow.[44] First, while CLP stage cells fail to efficiently generate myeloid cells upon transfer into irradiated hosts, they nevertheless retain significant capacity to produce such cells in short-term cultures, likely due to continued (albeit reduced) expression of receptors for myeloid growth factors. In contrast, this myeloid capacity is greatly reduced as cells begin to express CD45R/B220 (ie, become "Fr. A"), concomitant with reduced expression of receptors for myeloid growth factor receptors. Yet these Fr. A cells, while poorly reconstituting T cells in cell transfer assays, nevertheless retain the capacity to generate T-lineage cells in culture, mediated by engagement of Notch by its ligand DL1.[45] Thus, the potential for alternate hematopoietic lineages appears to be lost somewhat later in progression down the B-lineage pathway in mouse bone marrow than previously thought. On the other hand, it appears that initiation of Ig rearrangement is initiated earlier than some studies have indicated. Determination of the extent of germline deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) segments lost upon D-J rearrangement, and the formation of such D-J segments in individual cells isolated by electronic cell sorting showed that 30% to 50% of cells in CLPs and more than 80% of cells in Fr. A contained a D-J rearrangement on at least one chromosome.[44] This is consistent with high-level expression of genes important in Ig rearrangement, including TdT, Rag-1, and Rag-2, in CLP[46] and Fr. A stage cells.

An emerging view of CLPs (and possibly even the earlier multilineage progenitor [MLP]) stage cells considers them to be early B-lineage precursors rather than branch points in the production of other hematopoietic cell lineages. Thus, analysis of CD4/CD8/CD3 "triple-negative" cells in thymus failed to identify cells with a surface phenotype comparable to CLPs, and mutant mice lacking CLPs in bone marrow nevertheless have relatively intact thymic development, leading these authors to suggest a distinct "early T progenitor" different from CLPs.[47] Furthermore, cells with T/myeloid potential, but lacking B-lineage capacity, have been described.[48] It seems reasonable to hypothesize that MLP, CLP, and Fr. A stage cells occupy a distinctive microenvironmental niche in bone marrow where they receive signals that guide them along the early stages of B-lineage development culminating in CD19+ pro-B cells that are irreversibly committed to becoming B cells due to expression of PAX5[39] (see following section). Interestingly, cells considered to be progressing down a lymphoid/B-lineage path can be redirected to become dendritic cells by signals through toll-like receptors (TLRs), suggesting that infection can profoundly alter early stages in hematopoietic development.[49]

Additional issues remain regarding the lineage restriction of cells at these early stages in B-cell development. For example, there is evidence that cells restricted to generating B and myeloid/macrophage (but not T) lineage may exist in the fetal liver[50] and even in bone marrow.[51] There is also apparently a different dependence of fetal liver B lymphopoiesis on expression of the transcription factor BSAP compared to bone marrow, as determined by analysis of PAX5 null mice.[52] Further comparison of B-cell development in fetal liver with that in bone marrow is needed to clarify this point. Finally, the precise delineation and characterization of B-cell precursors earlier than CLPs, prior to IL-7 expression, remains imprecise. It seems likely that at least some of the MLP stage cells mentioned previously are initiating a B-lineage program based on their expression of E2A, Rag-1, Rag-2, and TdT.[44] However, potential heterogeneity in this fraction needs to be assessed. Determination of Rag-1 transcriptional activity at the single cell level by a green fluorescent protein reporter, used for identification of the early lymphoid progenitor fraction,[53] may provide a key approach for such studies.

Transcription Factors Regulating B-Lineage Development

The GATA-2 and Runx1/AML1 transcription factors are required for the development of HSCs that are the precursors of all the blood cell lineages, including B cells[54–58] (Fig. 8.4). Experiments with the core-binding factor–associated leukemia fusion protein CBFbeta-SMMHC, whose expression

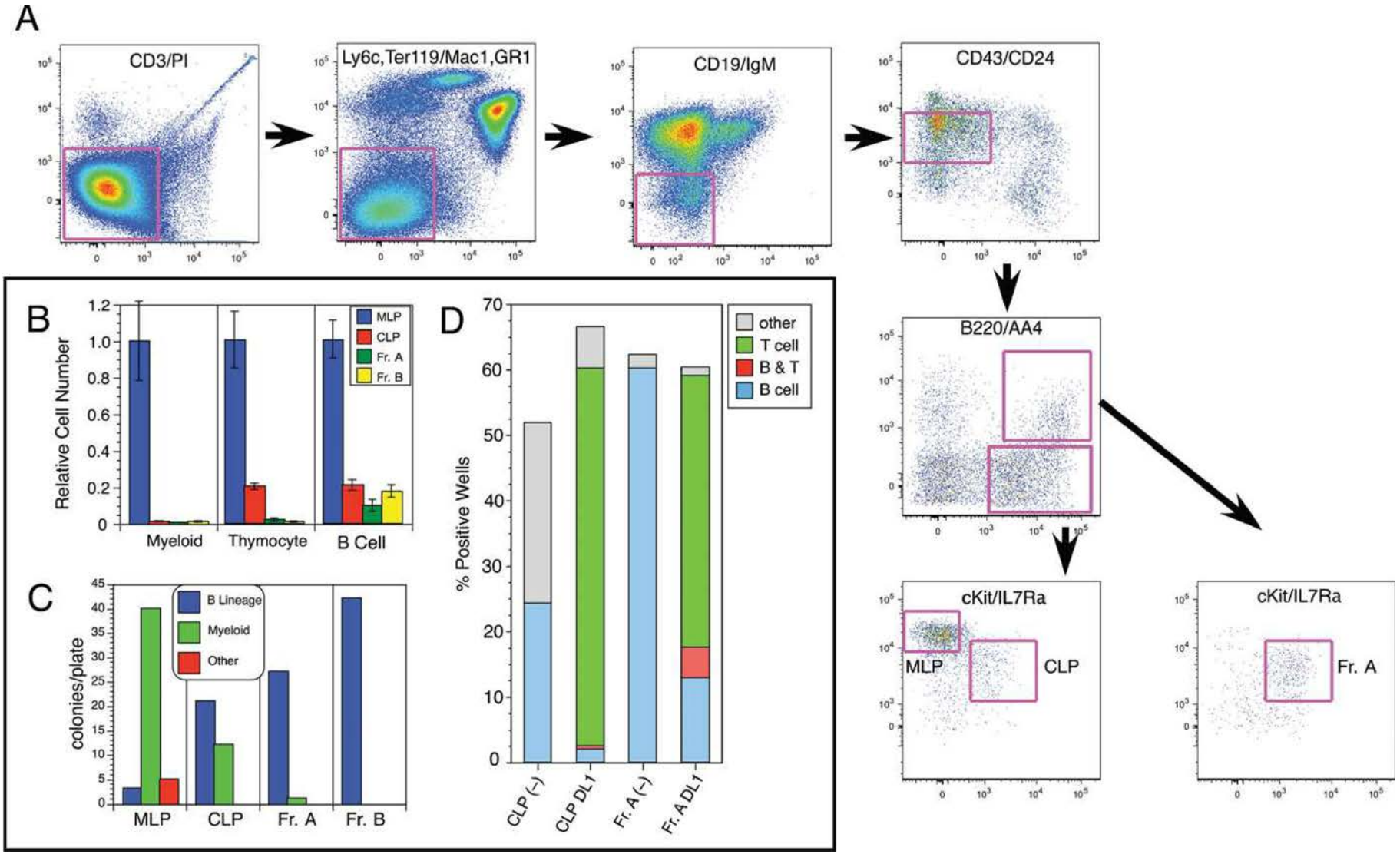


FIG. 8.3. A: An approach for purifying the earliest stage of B-lineage cells in mouse bone marrow. Bone marrow cells expressing cell surface proteins characteristic of differentiated stages of T, myeloid, erythroid, and B lineages are depleted sequentially by electronic gating in the first three panels. Cells with low-level expression of cluster of differentiation (CD)24/heat stable antigen (HSA) and intermediate levels of CD43(S7) are selected in the fourth and the distribution of CD45R/B220 versus CD93/AA4 is shown in the fifth. AA4+B220– cells contain multilineage progenitors (MLPs) and common lymphoid progenitors (CLPs), resolved by analysis for c-Kit versus interleukin (IL)-7Rα in panel six. AA4+B220+ cells, shown in the final panel, are enriched for c-Kit+IL-7Rα+ cells, termed Fr. A. CLP stage cells resemble Fr. A, but lack detectable expression of CD45R/B220. In contrast with CLP and Fr. A, MLP stage cells have higher levels of c-Kit and lack IL-7Rα expression. **B:** Functional analysis of early B-lineage cells by in vivo competition assay, showing absence of myeloid or T-lineage generation, but production of B-lineage cells from Fr. A. In contrast, CLP stage cells generate B and T cells, whereas MLPs repopulate B, T, and myeloid lineage cells. MLP, CLP, and Fr. A as identified in **A**. Fr. B stage cells are DJ/DJ rearranged pro-B cells, identified as CD19+CD43+CD24(HSA)+. **C:** Functional analysis of early B-lineage cells by in vitro S17 stromal cell assay, showing predominant B-lineage colony formation from Fr. A, but some myeloid generation from CLP stage cells. **D:** Functional analysis of early B-lineage cells by in vitro DL1-OP9 stromal cell culture, revealing significant T-lineage potential in Fr. A stage cells.

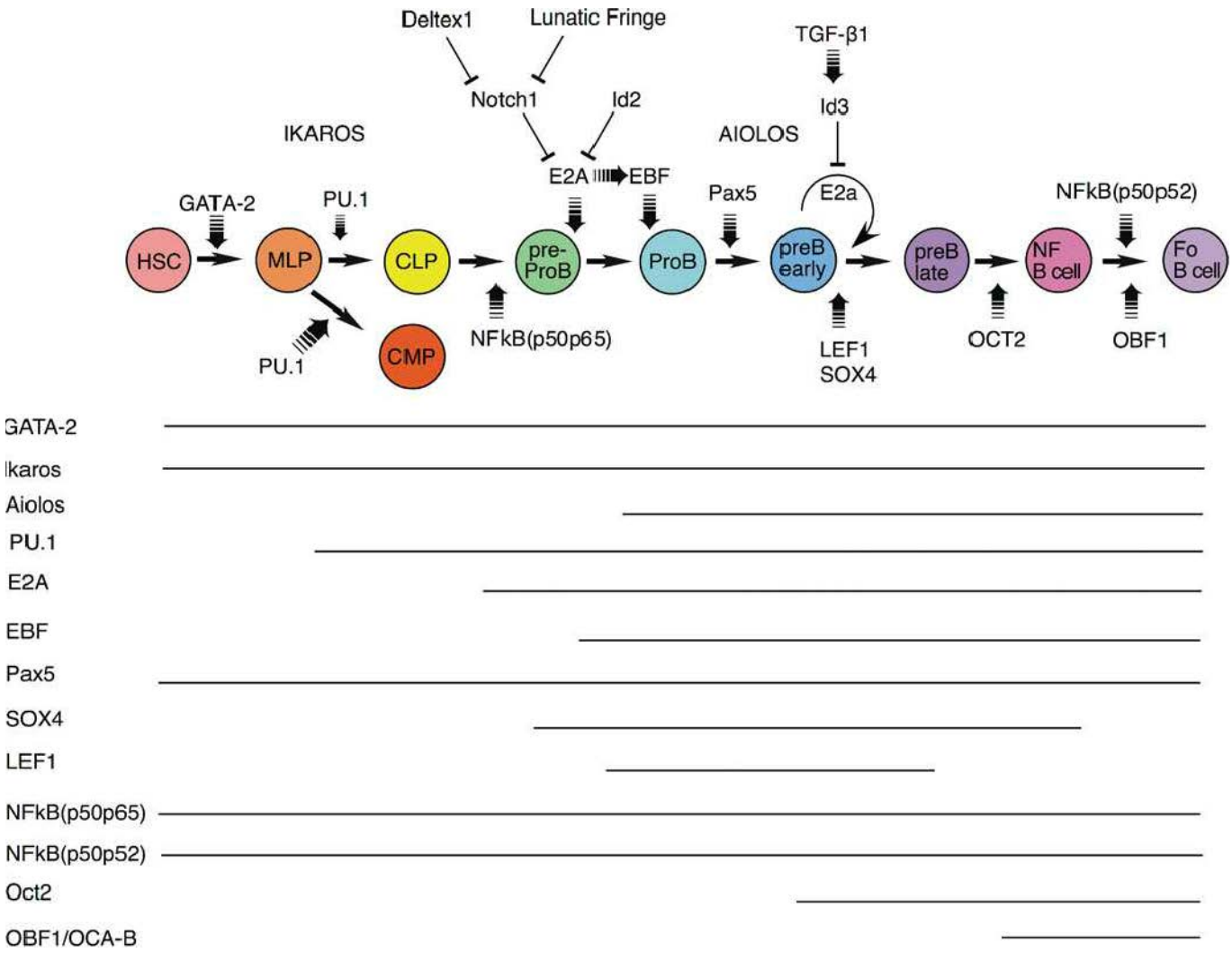


FIG. 8.4. Transcription Factors Important at Different Stages in B-Cell Development in Mouse Bone Marrow. Some regulatory networks are also shown. Positive/activating activity is indicated by *arrows*, whereas negative or blocking activity is indicated by *bars*. The rapidly cycling stage, early pre-B cell, is also indicated. Predominant stages of expression are indicated below the diagram.

inhibits RUNX function, have revealed that its expression negatively impacts pre–pro–B-cell through pre–B-cell populations in bone marrow.[59] Although the frequency of CLP stage cells was unaffected, the expression of B-lineage associated genes (such as CD79a and λ5) was decreased, demonstrating the key importance of early RUNX activity.

Somewhat later acting, but still very early in development, is the Ikaros transcription factor.[60–62] Ikaros and the related transcription factor Aiolos[63] play important roles in lymphocyte development. Ikaros is expressed early in hematopoietic precursors. Ikaros null mice lack B-lineage cells[62]; a different Ikaros mutant that acts as a dominant negative completely blocks lymphoid development.[60] Ikaros activates numerous early B-lineage genes, including TdT, Rag-1, λ5, and VpreB. Expression of EBF1 in Ikaros−/− hematopoietic progenitor cells restored generation of CD19+ cells, but these cells were not committed to the B-cell fate and failed to rearrange IgH genes.[64] Thus, Ikaros acts in a transcription factor pathway, inducing EBF1 expression, and acting in concert with PAX5 to maintain B-lineage commitment, but also altering chromatin compaction around the IgH locus, which together with Rag expression results in heavy chain rearrangement. Aiolos is detected somewhat later in development at about the stage of B-lineage commitment, and its expression increases further at later stages. It is induced by pre–B-cell receptor (BCR) signaling (see section on the role of Ig heavy chain and the pre-BCR), and it acts to downregulate transcription of λ5 (initially induced by action of Ikaros), a part of the pre-BCR complex. In this way, Ikaros family members play key roles both initiating and terminating pre-BCR signaling, a critical checkpoint in B-cell development.

The PU.1, an Ets family transcription factor, is critical for progression to the earliest stage of lymphoid development, as demonstrated by the inability of PU.1 null precursors to generate lymphocytes.[65,66] An important target of PU.1 for B-lineage development is the gene for Igβ, known as MB-1. The level of PU.1 appears to be critical for development

along the B lineage, as, while low-level expression induced in PU.1 null mice allowed B-lineage development, high-level expression blocked this and fostered myeloid lineage development,[67] likely due to differential induction of the IL-7Rα and macrophage colony-stimulating factor receptor chains.[68] In fact, retroviral mediated expression of the IL-7Rα chain complements defective B lymphopoiesis in PU.1 null bone marrow HPCs.[69] Surprisingly, recent work from several groups indicates that some B-cell development can occur in the absence of PU.1 expression.[70] Furthermore, analysis of conditional PU.1 knockout mice showed that expression of this transcription factor was not required after the pre–B-cell stage.[71]

E2A codes for two proteins, E12 and E47, members of the basic helix-loop-helix family of transcription factors; its induction is crucial from the earliest stages of B-lineage development, as all stages after CD19 expression are absent from E2A null mice.[72,73] These mice lack detectable D-J rearrangements, and, interestingly, such rearrangements can be induced in nonlymphoid cells by introduction of the Rag genes and ectopic expression of E2A,[74] implicating this transcription factor in the process of chromatin remodeling of the Ig heavy chain locus that permits accessibility by the recombinase machinery.[75] The regulation of E2A is crucial for B-lineage development, as negative regulators such as Notch1 and ID2 have been show to block this lineage and induce alternate cell fates, the T and NK lineages.[76–79] Consistent with this picture, ectopic expression of genes that negatively regulate Notch1, lunatic fringe, and Deltex-1 induce the B-cell fate.[80–82]

Expression of the early B-cell factor, EBF1, a member of the O/E protein transcription factor family, is requisite for progression of early B-lineage progenitors to the D-J rearranged pro-B stage (Fr. B), as shown in EBF1 null mice.[83] The expression of EBF1 is induced by action of the epigenetic histone H2A deubiquitinse MYSM1, as revealed by targeting this gene.[84] EBF1 and E2A act at a similar stage in early in B-lineage development; these two transcription factors can act together to upregulate a family of early B-lineage–specific genes, including Ig-α/β, VpreB/λ5, and Rag-1/2.[85,86] There is evidence that E2A upregulates expression of EBF1, found by transfection of E2A in a macrophage cell line,[87] suggesting an ordering of these two in development. Furthermore, recent studies showed that there are two distinct promoters for EBF1 that are regulated differently.[88] A distal promoter is activated by IL-7 signaling, E2A and EBF1, whereas a proximal promoter is regulated by PAX5, Ets1, and PU.1. Such complex regulation indicates that B-cell development occurs through the action of several feedback loops in a regulatory network that is becoming understood.[89,90]

BSAP, the product of the PAX5 gene, is expressed throughout B-cell development until the plasma cell stage.[91] PAX5/BSAP transcriptional targets include CD19 and BLNK; expression of this transcription factor acts to upregulate V to D-J heavy chain rearrangement.[52] Analysis of chromatin structure around the Ig heavy chain locus revealed that PAX5 induces V to D-J locus contraction, thereby promoting rearrangement.[92] PAX5 null mutant mice show an arrest in bone marrow development at the pro-B stage, likely due to the lack of complete heavy chain rearrangements and also due to the absence of the critical B-cell adaptor protein BLNK that serves to link the pre-BCR to the intracellular signaling pathway via the tyrosine kinase Syk.[93] BSAP/PAX5 also acts to repress alternate cell fates, as pro-B phenotype cells isolated from PAX5 null bone marrow can generate diverse hematopoietic cell lineages, in contrast with such cells from wild-type mice that are B-lineage restricted.[39,94] This occurs by repression of the myeloid growth factor receptor gene c-fms[95] and by repression of the Notch1 signaling pathway[96] critical for T-cell fate specification.[45,97] Conditional targeting of PAX5 in more mature B-cell stages shows that its continued expression is necessary for maintenance and function of mature B cells.[98] Finally, as mentioned previously, in contrast with bone marrow, the absence of BSAP/PAX5 arrests B-cell development prior to the B220+ stage in fetal liver, suggesting a crucial difference in the early dependence on this transcription factor.[52]

The Forkhead family transcription factor FoxO1 plays important roles at several stages of B-cell development.[99] Early in development, it acts to induce expression of the receptor for IL-7 at the CLP stage. It also functions to regulate Rag-1 and Rag-2 expression during heavy and light chain rearranging stages of development.[100] Finally, in mature B cells, it is needed for normal expression of L-selectin, a homing receptor important for normal recirculation of peripheral B cells through the lymphatics. GA binding protein, a ubiquitously expressed Ets family transcription factor, is another player regulating expression of the IL-7R.[101] Importantly, through interaction with PAX5, it acts in concert to induce expression of critical PAX5 target genes such as CD79a. There is recent evidence that FoxO1 regulates Ikaros activity by altering splicing of its messenger ribonucleic acid (mRNA), rather than altering Ikaros transcription.[102] FoxO1 activation of Ikaros was sufficient for induction of rearrangement of proximal VH genes, but expression of PAX5 was required for rearrangement of distal VH genes. Thus, FoxO1, Ikaros, and PAX5 appear to function in a network to coordinate the ordered rearrangement of Ig genes during B-cell development.

Lymphoid enhancer binding factor (LEF-1) shows a pattern of expression restricted to the pro-B and pre-B stages of B-cell development.[103] Targeted inactivation of the LEF-1 gene allows B-cell development but with reduced numbers.[104] This is because LEF-1 regulates transcription of the Wnt/β-catenin signaling pathway whose activation increases proliferation and decreases apoptosis of early B-lineage cells. In fact, exposure of normal pro-B cells to Wnt protein induces their proliferation.[104] Interestingly, there is a counterproliferative signal that can act at the pre-B proliferative stage, mediated by transforming growth factor-β1.[105] It appears that this occurs due to induction of the ID3 inhibitor that negatively regulates the activity of E2A.[106] Another transcription factor whose expression is similar to LEF-1 is SOX-4; its inactivation also results in the inability of normal early B-lineage cell expansion and a block at the pro-B stage.[107]

Several forms of NF-κb subunits are expressed throughout B-cell development; this transcription factor can regulate kappa light chain expression and also growth factor signaling.[108] Mice lacking the p65 subunit die before birth, so development must be analyzed by transfer of fetal liver precursors into wild-type recipients. Such experiments showed diminished B-lineage cell numbers, but the major defect was in mature B-cell mitogenic responses.[109] Mice lacking the p50 subunit showed relatively normal B-cell development but again poor response to mitogen by mature B cells.[109] However, mice lacking both the p50 and p65 subunits failed to generate any B220+ B-lineage cells. Curiously, when mixed with wild-type fetal liver cells, normal numbers of mature B cells could be generated from the double-defective precursors, suggesting that the defect could be overcome by secreted or membrane-bound signals provided by the wild-type precursors. Another double mutant, p50p52, showed a late stage defect in B-cell development, with a failure to generate mature B cells in spleen.[110]

Inactivation of the Oct-2 transcription factor results in neonatal lethality, but transfers of fetal precursors can reconstitute lymphoid cells in wild-type recipients, allowing assessment of effects on the B lineage. Such studies have shown that fewer mature follicular B cells are generated in these mice and B-1 (CD5+) B cells are completely eliminated.[111–113] Similarly, the Oct binding factor, OBF-1, also known as OCA-B and BOB-1, appears to function in the maturation of newly formed B cells in the bone marrow to become follicular B cells in the periphery, as inactivation of this gene resulted in a significant deficit in mature B cells.[114–116] Both of these transcription factors have been shown to regulate the follicular B-cell chemokine receptor CXCR5, which may explain at least part of the defect.[117] Curiously, unlike Oct-2 null mice, there was reportedly no deficit in B-1 B cells in OBF-1 null mice. Interestingly, when the OBF-1 mutant mouse is crossed with btk-deficient mice, there is a complete lack of peripheral B-cell generation,[118] suggesting that this transcription factor may function in the BCR-mediated selection of mature B cells.

Impact of Microribonucleic Acids on B-Cell Development

The miRNAs are small noncoding ribonucleic acids that facilitate the degradation of mRNAs and thereby act at a posttranscriptional level to regulate gene expression. The generation of mature functional miRNAs requires action of Dicer, a protein that cleaves pre-miRNAs, so the targeting of Dicer allows assessment of the global effect of miRNA on B-cell development. Ablation of Dicer in early B-lineage progenitors results in a block at the pro- to pre-B cell stage, likely due to upregulation of the proapoptotic molecule Bim.[119] Counteraction of Bim function by a Bcl-2 transgene reveal further dysregulation of normal development, including nontemplated nucleotide addition (N-regions) at the Ig light chain V-J junction, due to aberrant expression of the terminal deoxynucleotidyl transferase gene that is normally extinguished at the pre–B-cell stage.

Another approach for assessing the importance of specific miRNAs is direct overexpression or knockdown of expression; such a study with miR-150 reveal its role in regulating c-Myb, a transcription factor that regulates pro-B to pre-B progression and also the survival of mature B cells.[120] Transgenic overexpression of miR-17-92, a miRNA often found to be amplified in lymphoma, resulted in a lymphoproliferative syndrome and autoimmune disease, resulting in premature death.[121] One target of miR-17-92 is Bim; its decrease in the transgenic animals may have resulted in excessive cell survival and a loss of normal tolerance to self-antigens. The potential relevance to normal growth regulation is quite interesting, considering the amplification of this miRNA in some lymphomas. Another miRNA with a cancer association, miR-21, has been studied as a transgene in mice, where it results in tumors with a pre-B malignant lymphoid-like phenotype.[122] The miRNAs that are amplified in cancers and likely contribute to the neoplastic process are now termed "oncomirs."

miRNAs can also influence lineage choice or act at key checkpoints during hematopoietic development. Retroviral provision of miR-34a in bone marrow hematopoietic progenitors blocked B-cell development at the pro-B to pre-B checkpoint, resulting in reduced numbers of mature B cells in mice repopulated with such precursors. A possible explanation for the developmental block is action of miR-34a on Foxp1, a transcription factor that appears to be important at this stage, as cotransfection of FoxO1 lacking its normal 3′ UTR target of miR-34a restored B-cell development. A novel regulator of lineage choice appears to be Let-7, a family of miRNAs regulated by the highly conserved ribonucleic acid–binding protein Lin28.[123] While Lin28 has been studied for its role in pluripotency, developmental timing, and oncogenesis, a recent study indicates that it may regulate a developmental switch in both B and T cells, such that its expression in adult hematopoietic progenitors results in reprograming development toward a more "innate-like" pattern, normally only seen during fetal/neonatal timing.[124]

Bone Marrow Developmental Stages

Functional Definition

Distinct stages of developing B-lineage cells can be delineated based on their capacity for growth under different culture conditions. That is, the earliest precursors require cell contact with the stromal microenvironment in addition to specific cytokines, notably IL-7.[105,125] This stromal cell/precursor adhesive interaction is mediated, at least in part, by binding of VLA-4 to intercellular adhesion molecule-1.[126,127] Later stage cells do not require cell contact but maintain a need for cytokines.[128,129] Both cell types can undergo considerable cell proliferation in culture. Interestingly, the difference between cell contact requirement and independence is linked to the expression of heavy chain protein.[128,130] A population of cytoplasmic heavy chain–expressing B-lineage cells later than either of these, the so-called late or small pre-B cells, does not proliferate in culture. These cells likely require different culture conditions for survival, as they usually do not persist for extended periods, but rather die with a half-life of less than 24 hours unless protected from apoptosis by a Bcl-2 transgene.[131]

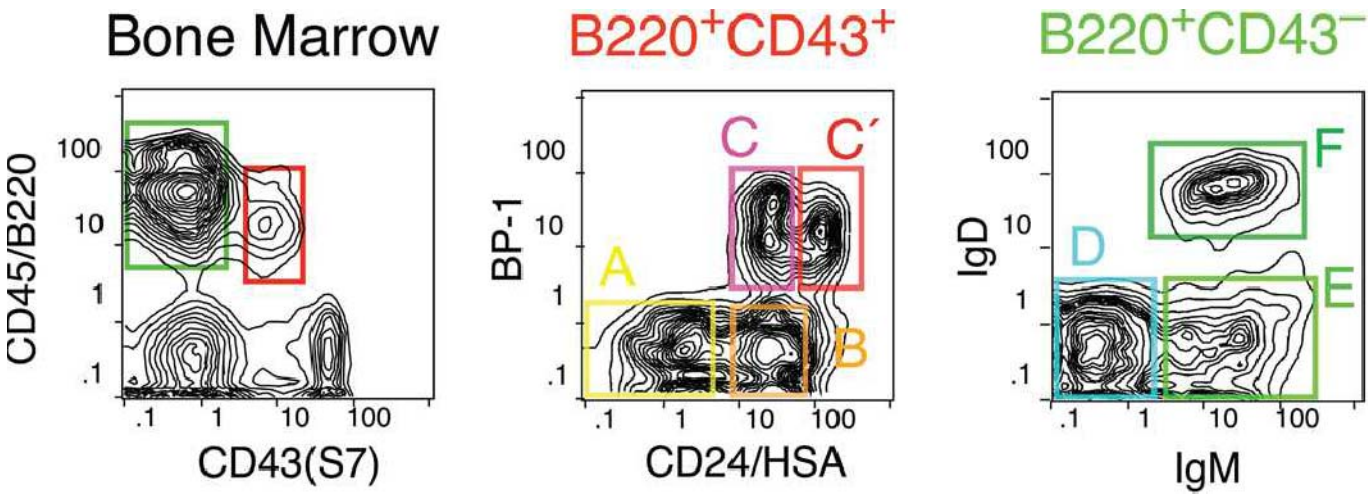


FIG. 8.5. Flow Cytometry Approach for Analyzing Different Stages of Cluster of Differentiation (CD)19+ B-Cell Development in Mouse Bone Marrow. Note that the antibody used for CD24/heat stable antigen (HSA) staining, 30F1, is important, as other monoclonal antibodies that recognize HSA do not resolve high from low-level expression as well. The cells expressing low levels of CD24/HSA, labeled "A", are CD19– and is enriched for very early B-lineage precursors but also is contaminated by other cell types that can be detected by staining for AA4, NK1.1, DX5, and Ly6c; early B-lineage precursors are AA4+NK1.1–DX5–Ly6c–.

Phenotypic Definition

Further clarification of the heterogeneity in bone marrow can be achieved by analysis using fluorescent staining reagents and either microscopic or flow cytometric analysis. For example, the earliest determination that there were both heavy chain surface-positive B cell and cytoplasmic-positive pre-B cells was through microscopic examination using anti-Ig staining.[132,133] Later studies in mouse showed that there were specific surface proteins or "markers" that could be useful in identifying these populations, notably a restricted isoform (CD45Ra) of the common leukocyte antigen, CD45.[134] This largely B-lineage–restricted 200 kDa molecular mass isoform is often referred to as "B220." Some highly B-lineage–restricted monoclonal antibodies, such as RA3-6B2, recognize a specific glycosylation of the CD45Ra isoform.[135] However, as described previously, even highly specific antibodies such as 6B2 may also recognize other cell types, such as particular differentiation stages or subsets of NK or dendritic cells.

The application of multiparameter/multicolor flow cytometry and additional monoclonal antibodies specific for other cell surface proteins differentially expressed during B-lineage development has facilitated delineation of multiple additional intermediate stages in this pathway.[129] For example, the B220+ population in bone marrow can be further fractionated into an earlier subset expressing CD43 (about 3% to 5% of marrow cells) and a later fraction with much lower CD43 expression (20% to 30% of marrow). The precursor/progeny relationship of cells in these two fractions can be readily demonstrated by short-term culture, with CD43+ cells giving rise to CD43– cells. These two populations can be further subfractionated based on additional developmentally regulated surface proteins, such as CD24/heat stable antigen (HSA), BP-1 (a zinc-dependent cell surface metallopeptidase also known as aminopeptidase A[136]), and the surface Ig molecules IgM and IgD.[129] This is shown in Figure 8.5. Again, these cell populations can be isolated and short-term culture used to determine their order in the pathway. Alternative approaches based on other developmental markers can be correlated with this framework of cell stages, notably the system developed by Melchers' group[137] using expression of CD45R/B220, CD19, c-KIT, and the IL-2Rα chain. A diagram summarizing this type of phenotypic subdivision and relating different nomenclatures is shown in Figure 8.6.

Culture Systems and Critical Microenvironmental Interactions

The combination of phenotypic characterization coupled with analysis of growth and differentiation in culture has provided a powerful approach for the further understanding of B-cell development, as employed by many different investigators. Bone marrow cultures developed by Whitlock and Witte,[138–140] and fetal liver cultures developed by Melchers' group[141,142] have allowed determination of the critical cytokines and some of the cell adhesion molecules important in the in vivo development of these cells. Many of these are summarized in Table 8.1. A typical B-lineage colony proliferating on S17 stromal cells in the presence of IL-7 is shown in Figure 8.7.

Survival and growth of the earliest stages of developing B-lineage cells require cell contact with nonlymphoid adherent cells that can be isolated from bone marrow, cells referred to generically as "stromal cells." A number of lines have been derived from primary cultures of bone marrow adherent cells and characterized in terms of their capacity to support B lymphopoiesis in vitro.[143] This work has led to the discovery of adhesion molecules that play important roles in mediating the organization of clusters of developing B-lineage cells on stromal layers, including CD44 interacting with hyaluronate and VLA-4 interacting with vascular cell adhesion molecule 1.[126,127,144,145] Both of these interactions could be disrupted by addition of blocking antibodies

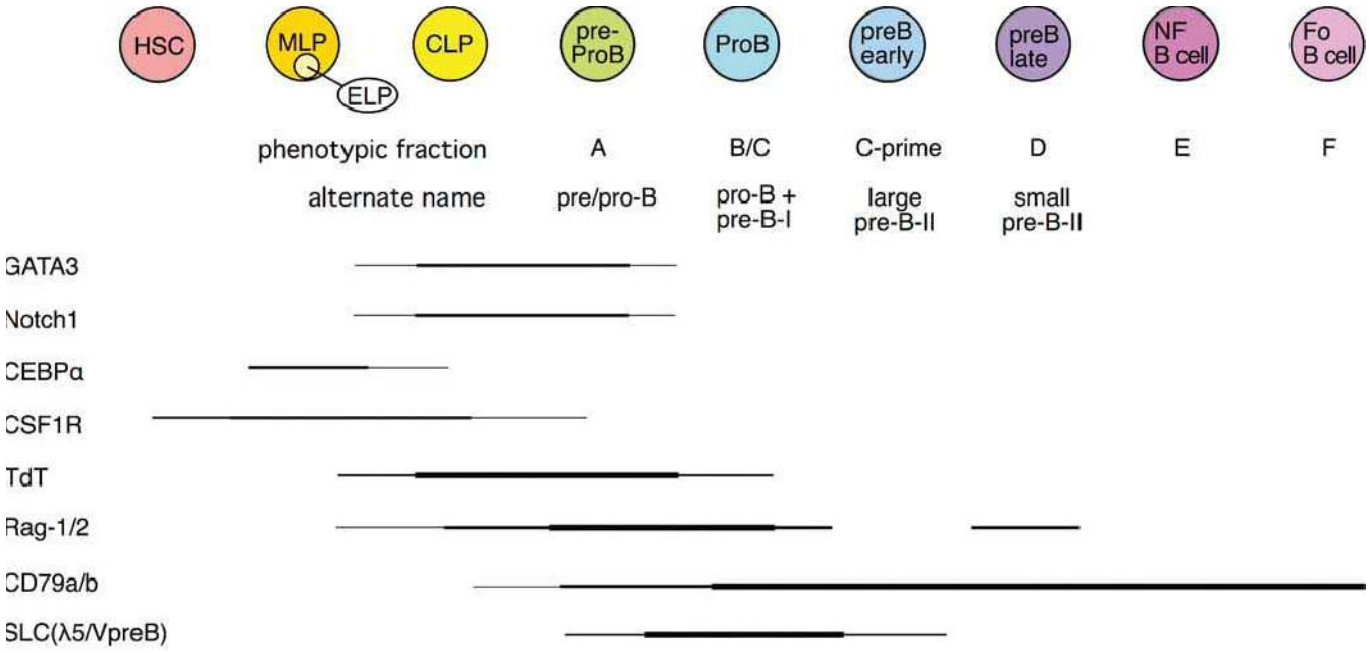


FIG. 8.6. Diagram of Distinct Phenotypic Stages and Characterization of Terminal Deoxynucleotidyl Transferase, Biphasic Rag Expression, Immunoglobulin-α/β, and Surrogate Light Chain Expression. Genes characteristic of myeloid and T-cell lineage are also shown. The cell type descriptions are cross-referenced to the alphabetic phenotypic fraction nomenclature and also to the Basel nomenclature. The early lymphoid progenitor population is identified by activation of the Rag-1 locus in a green fluorescent protein reporter mouse.

to CD44 and VLA-4 on B-cell precursors, resulting in a disruption of normal pre-B proliferation in vitro.[146] Such adhesion interactions may serve to transmit signals directly to the stromal cells or B precursors, or both. There is some evidence that stromal cells are induced to elaborate specific growth mediators after interaction with B-cell precursors or soluble regulators.[147]

Another function of the stromal cells is to produce growth factors critical to B-lineage survival, proliferation, and differentiation; the most important of these for mouse B-cell development is IL-7.[105,125,148,149] IL-7 promotes the survival and proliferation of pro-B and pre-B stage cells, both in vivo and in vitro.[150,151] Neutralizing antibody to IL-7 can block B-cell development in vitro,[129] and IL-7 expressed as a transgene can deregulate normal B-cell development, leading to B-cell lymphadenopathy.[152] The IL-7 receptor consists of a unique IL-7Rα chain[153] paired with the common gamma chain (γc) that is also found in the receptors for

TABLE 8.1 Regulators of Growth of Early B-Lineage Cells

Mediator	Effect	Reference
L-7	Stimulates CLP and B-precursor proliferation	105,148,149,590
TSLP	Alternate IL-7–like cytokine	156,157
IGF-1	Stimulates accumulation of Cμ+ cells in culture	185
FLT-3/FLK2-L	Critical for earliest stages of B-lineage development	168,172,591,592
c-KIT-L	Synergizes in IL-7–induced proliferation	26,166
IL-3	Substitute for IL-7 in proliferation of pre-B clones	176
CXCL12/CXCR4	Crucial chemokine interaction for early B-lineage precursors	194,196,198,199
Hemokinin	Novel regulator of B lymphopoiesis	187
VLA-4/VCAM-1	Adhesive interaction; antibodies to either block B lymphopoiesis	126,127,593
CD44/hyaluronate	Adhesive interaction; mediates association of B-lineage/stromal cells	144,146
TGF-β	Inhibits proliferation stimulated by IL-7	105
Sex steroids	Decrease B-lineage precursors in bone marrow	594,595
Growth hormones	Required for normal B lymphopoiesis	188,189,596
TLRs	Innate immune system regulation	190

CD, cluster of differentiation; CLP, common lymphoid progenitor; IL, interleukin; TGF, transforming growth factor; TLR, toll-like receptor; TSLP, thymic stromal lymphopoietin; VCAM, vascular cell adhesion molecule.

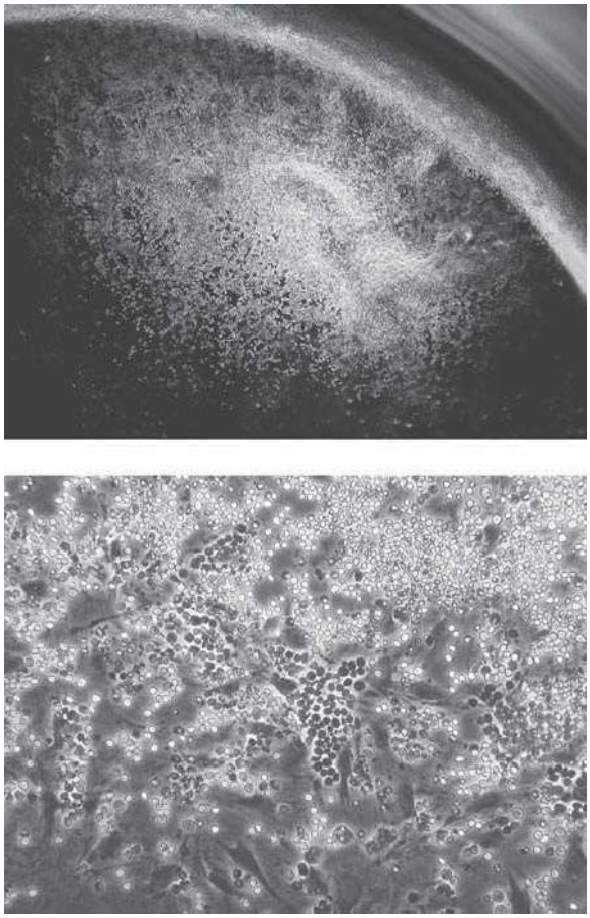


FIG. 8.7. Photomicrographs of B-Lineage Colony Proliferating on S17 Stromal Layer (in the Well of a 96-Well Microplate) in the Presence of Interleukin-7. Day 10 colony derived from a single Fr. A phenotype (see Fig. 8.5) cell. Low power and high power views. All of these cells now express CD19 and many have progressed to BP-1+.

IL-2, IL-4, IL-9, IL-15, and IL-21.[154] IL-7Rα null mice have a severe deficit of both B and T cells in the periphery and lack most B-lineage cells in bone marrow.[155] Mice with targeted inactivation of the γc or IL-7 do have some B-lineage development, suggesting an alternate cytokine; this appears to be thymic stromal lymphopoietin (TSLP). This protein was first identified as a pre–B-cell growth factor produced by a thymic stromal line[156] and shows some of the same effects in culture as IL-7, although possibly inducing less proliferation and more differentiation.[157] Its receptor has been cloned; it consists of two chains, the TSLP receptor and IL-7Rα.[158] The TSLP receptor shares both sequence homology and genomic exon organization with the common gamma chain.[159] Signaling through the IL-7 receptor requires JAK3 and activates the transcription factor STAT5, whereas signaling through TSLP is JAK3 independent but also activates STAT5.[157,160] Unexpectedly, the growth response to TSLP requires synergy with the pre-BCR in bone marrow but not in fetal liver,[161] leading some to propose that this might be a marker for distinctive B1 B-cell development in bone marrow.[162] When TSLP is overexpressed from an inducible transgene, B1 B cells expand, apparently at the expense of marginal zone (MZ) B cells.[163]

The earliest precursors in the B-lineage pathway, probably including cells that are not B-lineage committed but that can efficiently give rise to B cells in a short time in vitro, have receptors for SCF/c-KIT-ligand[26,27,164–167] and FLK2/FLT3-ligand.[168–172] Thus, the most permissive cultures for expanding precursors of B-lineage cells will include these cytokines, in addition to IL-7 and a stromal adherent cell layer, such as S17.[173–175] IL-3 has also occasionally been suggested as playing a support role for pre-B cells in vitro,[176] although its role in vivo may be at a much earlier stage. While culture conditions have been reported that can support B-lineage development in the absence of stromal cells,[177,178] the clear-cut alteration of contact-dependence prior and post heavy chain expression[128–130,179,180] argues that the most physiologic model for early B-lineage growth will include stromal cells. Besides providing important cell–cell contacts that may signal survival, proliferation, and differentiation, it is also likely that stromal cells bind at least some cytokines to their surface, providing higher local concentrations to the clusters of B-lineage precursors that adhere.[181,182]

B-lineage development may be modified by exposure to hormones; considerable interest has focused on sex steroids released during pregnancy that serve to depress B lymphopoiesis, particularly the pre–B-cell pool.[183] This may be important to avoid autoimmune responses by the mother but could have negative consequences due to possible transient immunodeficiency. Interestingly, fetal B lymphopoiesis is not similarly depressed due to the absence of hormone receptors on fetal B-lineage cells.[184] Insulin-like growth factor has been reported to potentiate progression in vitro to the Cμ+ stage,[185,186] and, more recently, there is a report of a bioactive peptide, a type of tachykinin, that synergizes with IL-7 to enhance the growth of IL-7–dependent cultures.[187] Besides insulin-like growth factor, other pituitary hormones, thyroxine, and growth hormone have effects on B lymphopoiesis.[188] For example, thyroxine treatment can restore normal B-cell development in dwarf Pit-1 mutant mice with deficient pituitary function.[189] Recent work has highlighted the effect that activation of TLRs during infection may have on altering development.[190] Thus, it is likely that more detail remains to be filled in to complete our picture of the growth requirements and modulating influences of B-lineage cells in mouse bone marrow.

Another function of cell–cell interaction is cell fate determination during the lineage commitment stage, very early in development of B-lineage cells. The Notch signaling pathway is implicated in cell fate determination in invertebrates and more recently has been shown to function in lymphoid lineage specification.[45,76,191] Notch family transmembrane receptors regulate transcription by being cleaved upon ligand binding to release an intracellular cytoplasmic domain that translocates to the nucleus where it interacts with the transcriptional repressor CSL.[192] Recent studies have shown that Notch1 can play a pivotal role in commitment of common lymphoid progenitors to the T-cell

lineage.[76] That is, expression of Notch1 by retroviral transduction has been shown to redirect B-lineage differentiation in bone marrow along the T lineage. Furthermore, a reciprocal result was found in conditional Notch1 null mice, blocking T-cell development in the thymus to be replaced by B-cell development.[97] Finally, altering the Notch1 modifier lunatic fringe by overexpressing this molecule under regulation of an lck promoter resulted in B-cell development in the thymus.[80] Differentiation of lymphoid precursors to NK or dendritic cell lineages was unaffected in Notch1 null CLP cells, so Notch apparently affects only the B/T-lineage decision.

Role of Chemokines in Migration of B-Cell Precursors

One of the most distinctive features of B-cell development in bone marrow is the migration of developing precursors from early stages nearest the bone endosteum layer to latter stages progressively closer to the central arteriole, where they will eventually exit.[193] This migration is likely due to differential expression of specific adhesion molecules and also to expression of chemokine receptors. Analysis of B-cell migration has identified a critical chemokine that is important in this process, SDF-1, now known as CXCL12,[194,195] and its receptor CXCR4.[196] CXCL12 is expressed by fetal liver and bone marrow stromal cells, whereas CXCR4 is found on hematopoietic precursors and B-cell progenitors.[197] Deletion of either the receptor or ligand results in severely impaired B lymphopoiesis.[198–200] Interestingly, the critical defect appears to be failure to retain precursors in the primary lymphoid organ, as progenitors and precursors can be found in the blood of mutant mice.[201]

Gene Expression and Immunoglobulin Rearrangement

In addition to delineation of developmental stages based on changes in protein surface expression, B-lineage cells can also be characterized for expression of internal proteins related to critical processes in their progression along this pathway, specifically those related to rearrangement and expression of the B-cell antigen receptor (Fig. 8.8). Thus, expression of μ heavy chain constant region, prior to Ig rearrangement, from a cryptic promoter generates a "sterile transcript" that reflects an open chromatin structure important for the onset of rearrangement,[202–204] and so analysis of sterile μ expression can be used to investigate very early stages of B-cell development. Classical northern analysis can be done with transformed lines, but much work analyzing RNA levels in B-lineage cell fractions, whether directly isolated or cultured, has depended on polymerase chain reaction amplification of complementary DNA.[38] For example, using this approach, sterile μ can be detected in a very early fraction of B220+CD43+CD19− (Fr. A) cells. Expression of the recombinase activating genes Rag-1 and Rag-2, which together make the double-strand breaks in DNA required for Ig rearrangement,[205–207] also occurs in Fr. A stage cells, which also have high levels of TdT, the enzyme responsible for adding nontemplated nucleotides at the D-J and V-D junctions of the heavy chain.[12,13] Rag-1 binds in a highly specific fashion to discrete sites within the IgH locus, recombination signal sequences, defining "recombination centers."[208]

The extent of heavy chain or light chain rearrangement can be quantitated either in bulk isolated populations[129] or in individual cells.[137,209,210] At the heavy chain locus, D-J rearrangement occurs prior to V-DJ rearrangement, and cells with extensive D-J but little V-DJ rearrangement can be detected at the B220+CD43+CD19− (Fr. A) stage, where Rag-1/2 and TdT are strongly expressed.[44] V-DJ rearrangements are readily detected in the abundant B220+CD43− (Fr. D) stage small pre-B cells, although productive rearrangement has already completed by the large pre-B (Fr. C-prime) stage (see following discussion). Single-cell sequence analysis of rearrangements in Fr. C stage cells shows a large proportion with nonproductive rearrangements on both chromosomes, suggesting that this may represent a dead-end fraction.[209] Some light chain rearrangement is detectable in early stage B220+CD43+ (Fr. B) cells, and this is consistent with the observation that low-level kappa light chain rearrangement is detectable in bone marrow of mice where μ heavy chain has been crippled by deletion of the membrane exon.[211] However, much higher levels of kappa rearrangement can be detected in B220+CD43− (Fr. D) stage cells consistent with the finding of sterile kappa mRNA increase just prior to this stage likely induced by pre-BCR signaling (see following discussion).

Role of Immunoglobulin Heavy Chain and the Pre–B-Cell Receptor

Many years ago, the analysis of severe combined immunodeficiency (SCID) mouse[212] bone marrow revealed the presence of a population of B220+ cells, all with a very early CD43+ phenotype, suggesting a block in B-cell development at this stage.[213] SCID mice have a defect in the catalytic subunit of the DNA-dependent protein kinase DNA-PKcs,[214,215] and, as a result, B-lineage cells in these mice are very ineffective at completing productive Ig heavy chain rearrangements. This block could be overcome by introduction of an Ig heavy chain transgene, indicating a critical role for μ protein in progressing past an early developmental checkpoint.[216] Furthermore, a gene targeting experiment that eliminated the membrane exon of μ heavy chain (μ-mt) also generated a block at this stage.[217,218]

The μ heavy chain is associated with a set of B-cell–specific peptides at the early pre–B-cell stage,[219] and this complex is referred to as the pre-BCR. It seems clear that pre-BCR mediates a type of signaling function analogous to the BCR in mature B cells. Prior to light chain expression, two peptides known as λ5 and VpreB, originally isolated as B-lineage–specific complementary DNAs,[220,221] associate with heavy chain. The λ5 shows homology to a lambda constant region and VpreB is so-called because it has homology to a variable region domain. Together, these peptides constitute a pseudo- or surrogate light chain (SLC). The critical role of λ5 was demonstrated unambiguously in gene-targeted mice, where B-cell development was blocked at the B220+CD43+ stage.[222] The production of some mature cells that accumulate in this mutant is likely due to early kappa rearrangement, with light chain substituting for SLC, as demonstrated in light chain transgenic experiments.[223]

The μ heavy chain has a very short cytoplasmic region consisting of only three amino acids; signal transduction

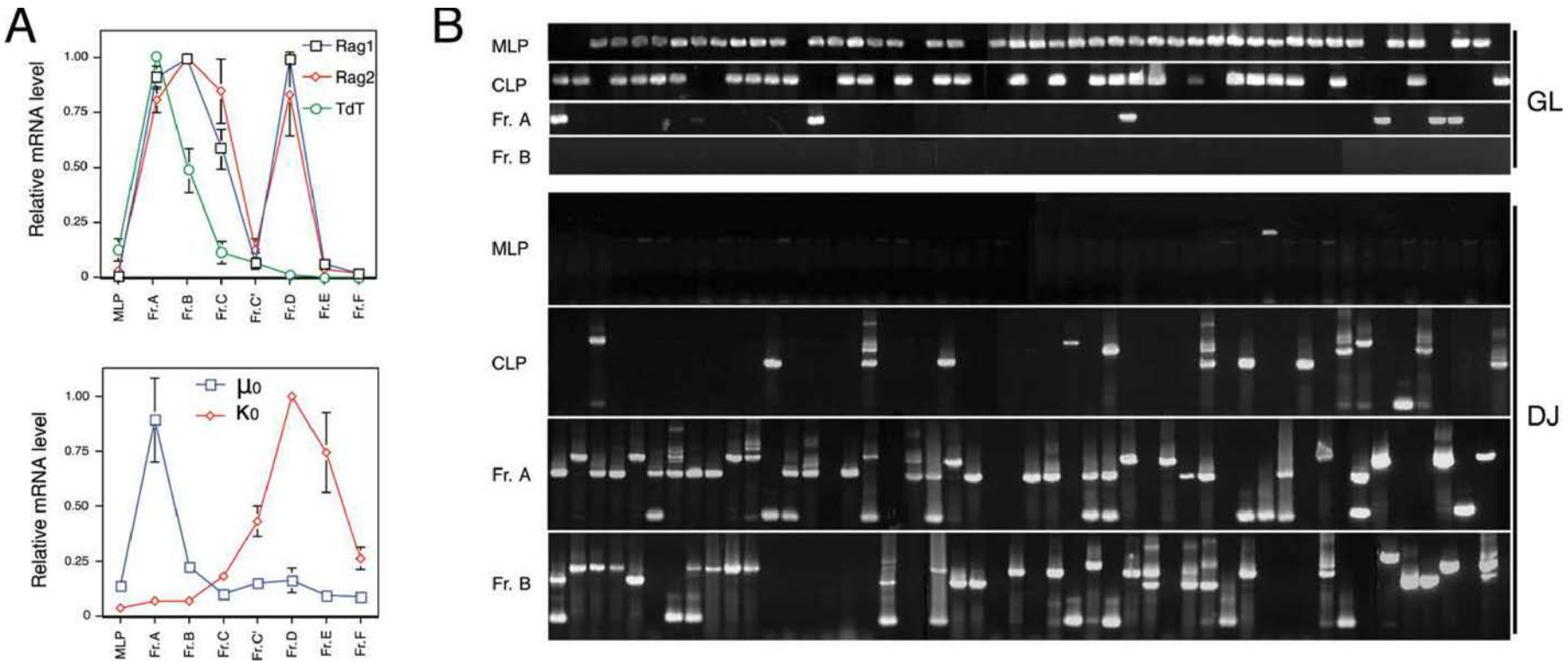


FIG. 8.8. A: Profiles of immunoglobulin (Ig) rearrangement–related gene expression. Cells isolated using fractionation scheme in Figure 8.3 for multilineage progenitors and Fr. A; in Figure 8.5 for Fr. B through Fr. F. Relative messenger ribonucleic acid levels assessed by performing semiquantitative reverse transcription-polymerase chain reaction using limited numbers of cycles, blotting, then probing, and quantitating the probe signal. Note the biphasic expression of Rag genes and the early expression of sterile μ (labeled μ_0) during the first wave, where heavy chain rearranges, and the upregulation of sterile kappa transcripts (κ_0) during the second Rag wave, when most light chain rearrangement takes place. **B:** Single-cell polymerase chain reaction analysis of Ig heavy chain rearrangement in four early stages of developing B-lineage cells. Deoxyribonucleic acid prepared from individual cells isolated following the scheme shown in Figure 8.3 was divided into two aliquots and analyzed for retention of a deoxyribonucleic acid segment lost upon any D-J rearrangement (labeled *GL*, germline) and also for D-J rearrangement. Note that D-J rearrangement initiates at the common lymphoid progenitor stage, where 30% to 50% of cells show a rearrangement.

through the BCR is mediated by accessory peptides, similar to the CD3 components of the T-cell receptor, known as Ig-α and Ig-β.[224–227] Inactivation of Ig-β[228] results in a block at the B220+CD43+ stage in mouse bone marrow, similar to that seen in μ-mt and λ5 null mice. Finally, the Syc tyrosine kinase plays a critical role in transducing BCR cross-linking signals in mature B cells and inactivation of this gene results in a "leaky" block at this same stage.[229,230] Thus, any mutation that affects this pre-BCR complex (see following section; see Fig. 8.10A) precludes efficient progression past the earliest stages of B-cell development.

Careful examination of B-cell development in normal mice shows that heavy chain is first expressed at a late fraction of the B220+CD43+ stage, termed Fr. C-prime (Fig. 8.9A). This fraction is also interesting because it shows a much higher proportion of cells in cycle (revealed by a high frequency of cells with greater than 2N DNA content; Fig. 8.9B), compared with any other B220+ stage in bone marrow.[129] Mice unable to assemble a pre-BCR, due to inability to rearrange heavy chain (Rag-1 null), show a block in development at the CD43+ stage that can be complemented by introduction of a functionally rearranged μ heavy chain as a transgene[180] (Fig. 8.9C). Analysis of several types of pre-BCR defective mutant mice shows a complete absence of Fr. C-prime stage cells, suggesting that pre-BCR signaling results in the upregulation of CD24/HSA and also entry into rapid cell proliferation. Thus, a model of pre-BCR function is that it signals the clonal expansion phase of pre–B-cell development, amplifying cells with in-frame VDJ rearrangements capable of making heavy chain protein.

The precise nature of pre-BCR signaling remains to be completely understood. An early model suggested that cross-linking of heavy chain was mediated through interaction of SLC with a bone marrow expressed ligand. However, subsequent experiments showed that normal light chain could substitute for SLC, and that even a V_H truncated μ heavy chain could mediate progression past this stage. Furthermore, intensive searches for the putative ligand over a 10-year period have been fruitless, leading to the model

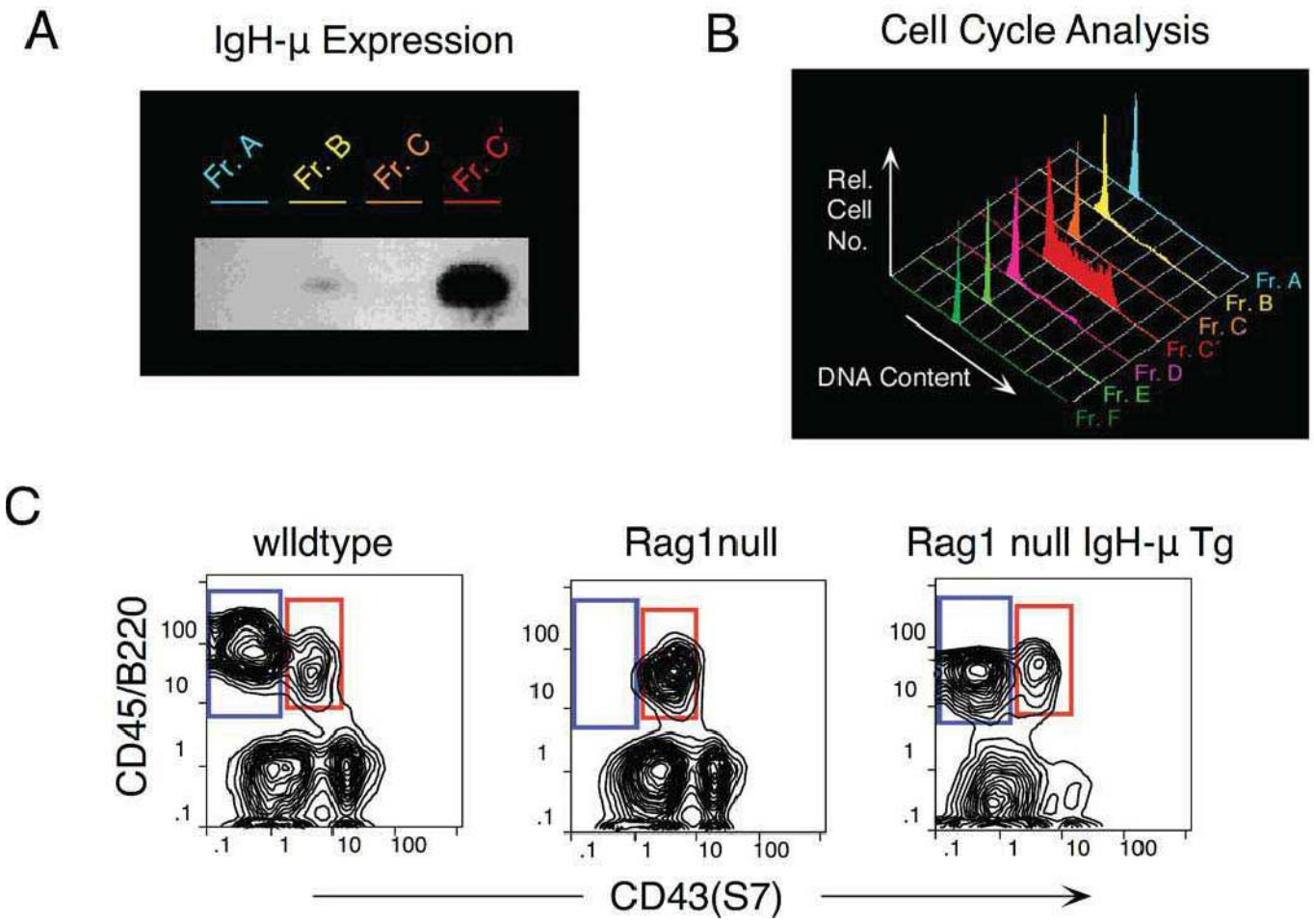


FIG 8.9. A: Western blot of immunoglobulin μ heavy chain expression showing high-level expression in Fr. C-prime. **B:** Cell cycle analysis of individual fractions shows most cells in Fr. C-prime are cycling. Propidium iodide staining of permeabilized sorted cells allows determination of deoxyribonucleic acid content per cell using flow cytometry. **C:** Block in B-cell development in Rag-1–deficient mice can be overcome by introduction of an immunoglobulin μ heavy chain transgene.

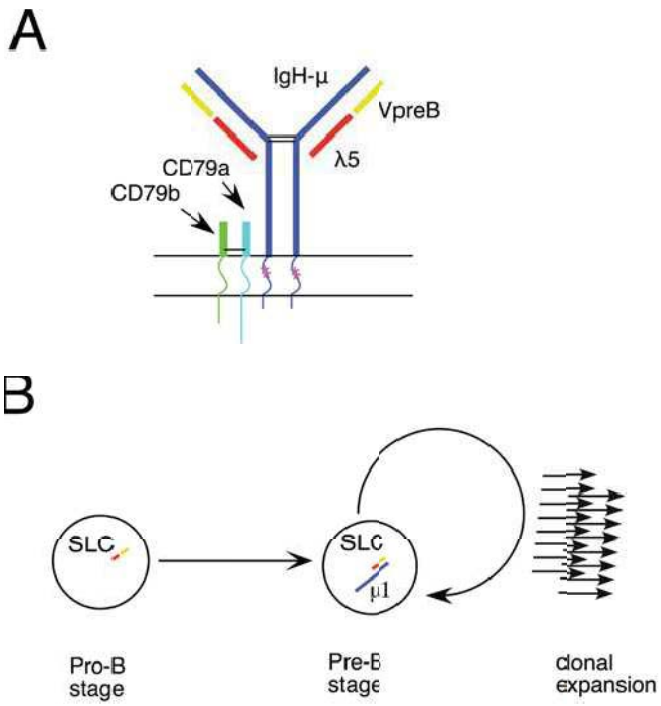


FIG 8.10. A: Diagram of the pre–B-cell receptor (BCR) μ heavy chain with surrogate light chain (λ5 and VpreB) in place of conventional light chain. As in the BCR, immunoglobulin (Ig)-α and Ig-β serve to couple signals between the receptor and cytoplasmic components, such as BLNK and Syk. Starred m transmembrane residues are important in mediating interaction with Ig-α/Ig-β, as mutation of these diminishes BCR function. **B:** Clonal expansion mediated by pre-BCR assembly. Association of newly generated μ heavy chain with preexisting surrogate light chain leads to a burst of proliferation at the pre-B stage.

that pre-BCR signaling is more akin to "tonic" signaling in mature B cells.[231–233] That is, simple assembly of the complex (or possibly some degree of multimerization fostered by the self-aggregating nature of SLC[234]) probably is sufficient for the cell to pass this developmental checkpoint (Fig. 8.10B). One clear-cut finding is that pre-BCR signaling in a transformed pro–B-cell model system can occur in the absence of any additional cell type, suggesting that if a ligand exists, it must be expressed on B-lineage cells rather than stromal cells.[235] Possibly, pre-BCR homodimerization is mediated through glycosylation at a conserved asparagine residue in the first μ constant region domain.[236] Studies of the T-cell analog of the pre-BCR, pre-Tα, provide strong evidence that it signals through spontaneous dimerization, without requirement for an external ligand.[237–239]

Mutations in other molecules in the pre-BCR signaling pathway have been shown to affect B-cell development and pre–B-cell clonal expansion. Although the Btk mutation is less severe in mouse than in human, there nevertheless is an alteration in pre–B-cell expansion in Btk-deficient mice.[240] Also, X-linked immunodeficiency (xid) B cells (deficient in Btk) have been reported to proliferate more in stromal cell cultures, possibly due to decreased differentiation to later nonproliferative stages.[241,242] The role of Btk is thought to modulate BCR signaling strength,[243] and this is probably also the case for pre-BCR signaling, allowing only strongly signaling pre-BCRs to progress in the mutant mice. BLNK/SLP65 serves to link the pre-BCR to the Syk kinase critical in BCR signaling.[244,245] Mutant mice lacking BLNK show a partial block in B-cell development at the pro-B to pre-B transition.[246] Curiously, whereas pre-BCR signaling is thought to mediate allelic exclusion (expression of a single heavy chain allele), this remains intact in BLNK-deficient mice.[247] Animals deficient in both BLNK and Btk develop an extensive pre-B expansion that progresses to lymphoma, leading to study of such mice as a model for human pre-B acute lymphoblastic leukemia (ALL).[248,249]

Syk-deficient mice show a more severe block at the pro-B to pre-B transition and a lack of allelic exclusion.[229,230,247] There is also evidence that pre-BCR signals through Erk to induce proliferation.[250]

Outcomes of pre-BCR signaling, in addition to pre-B proliferation, are downregulation of the Rag genes,[251] downregulation of TdT,[235] and transcriptional activation of the kappa locus, detected as upregulation of sterile kappa transcripts.[252] A control element for regulating Rag expression has been identified.[253,254] Extinction of recombinase activity is probably important for chromosomal stability during the clonal burst period of B-cell development[255–257] and is also at least a part of the mechanism that assures allelic exclusion, the expression of a single heavy chain by any given B cell.[258] There is evidence that pre-BCR selection requires low levels of IL-7[259] and probably occurs naturally as the developing precursors migrate through different stromal cell microenvironments in bone marrow.

The function of the pre-BCR may be more complex than simply to sense whether an in-frame VDJ rearrangement has occurred. This possibility is suggested by the observation that heavy chains with different VDJ segments vary in their capacity to assembly with SLC components.[260–263] V regions are classified into families based on sequence homology, and many members of two of these families, the 7183 and Q52, appear to frequently generate heavy chains that assemble poorly with SLC.[262] A consequence of this will likely be poor pre-BCR signaling and little clonal expansion; such cells will become underrepresented at later stages of B-cell development relative to cells containing heavy chains that signal effectively. One explanation for this SLC assembly-mediated clonal expansion is that it serves a quality control function to test heavy chain V regions for their potential to fold with real Ig light chain, a critical requirement if the cell is to express a complete BCR. An alternative (not necessarily mutually exclusive) explanation is that making pre–B-cell proliferation dependent on pre-BCR expression provides a simple mechanism for regulating the extent of clonal expansion, as an immediate consequence of pre-BCR signaling is to terminate SLC expression. Thereafter, SLC protein levels decay and are diluted by cell division so that after several rounds of proliferation, pre-BCR levels will decrease to below the threshold required to provide the signal to maintain the cell in cycle. Figure 8.11 illustrates a model for bone marrow B-cell development, showing the pre-BCR checkpoint.

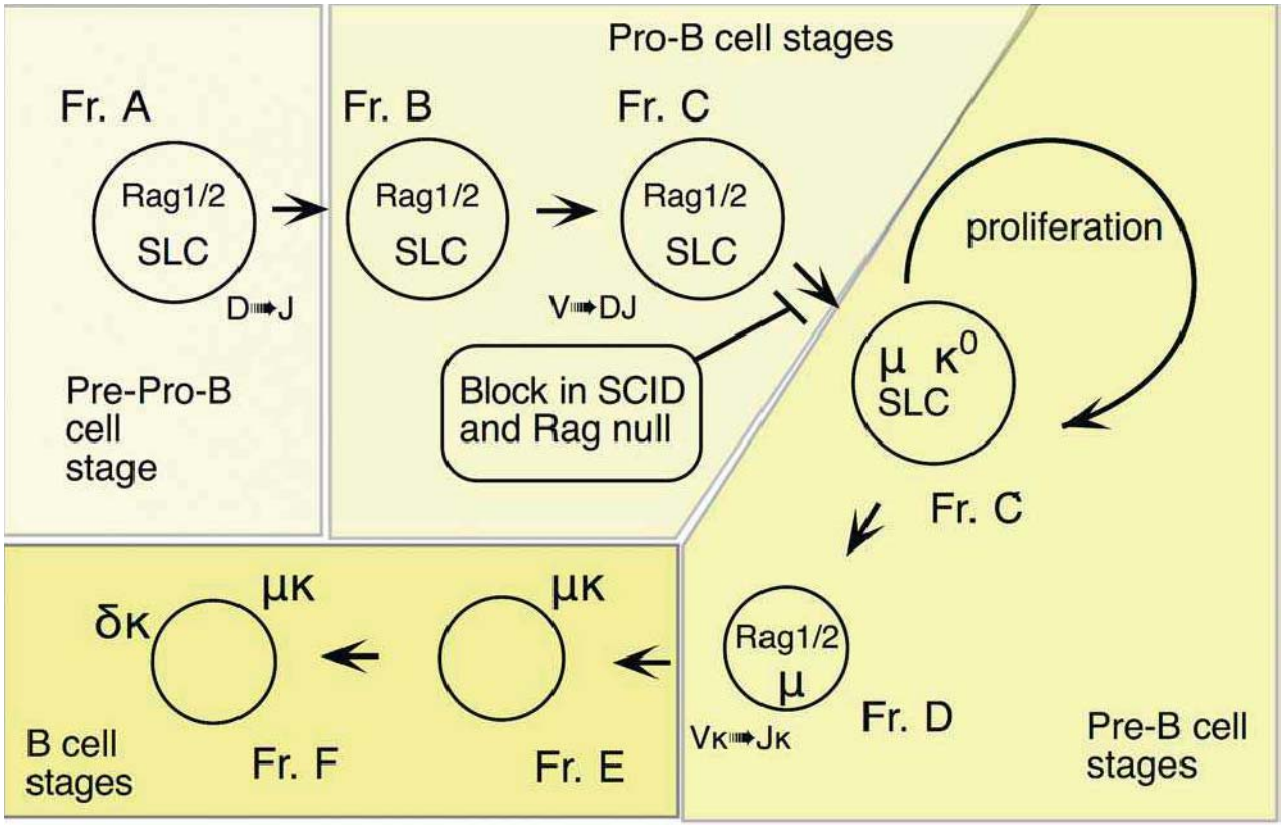


FIG. 8.11. Model of Mouse Bone Marrow B-Cell Development Showing Relationship of Immunoglobulin Rearrangement with Progression and Proliferation.

One of the most striking examples of pre-BCR selection is seen with the D-proximal V_H gene, V_H81X, where early precursors show biased overutilization due to preferential rearrangement of this V_H gene.[11,264,265] In fact, regulatory sequences interspersed throughout the distal VH region, termed PAX5-activated intergenic repeat elements, appear to enhance utilization of distal J558 family VH genes.[266] Furthermore, a recombination regulatory region, the intergenic control region 1, which lies between the VH and D clusters, has been shown to inhibit proximal and promote distal VH gene utilization.[267]

Curiously, although it is abundant in early B-cell precursors, V_H81X is rarely seen in the mature B-cell compartment. The demonstration of the decrease in representation of cells with V_H81X rearrangements at the pre-B clonal expansion phase in bone marrow,[268,269] together with the finding that heavy chains utilizing VH81X frequently fail to assemble functional pre-BCRs,[260,261,270] explained this paradox. Models of pre-BCR three-dimensional structures based on x-ray crystallography may help to explain variation in the ability of different heavy chains to assemble with SLC.[271]

However, it is still puzzling that the most frequently rearranged V_H gene is so strongly selected *against* at the clonal expansion stage. A possible explanation may lie in comparisons of V_H utilization during fetal development. That is, in contrast with bone marrow precursor cultures, the ratio of productive/nonproductive V_H81X does not decrease during cultures of fetal precursors.[272,273] Furthermore, the proliferative burst that pre-BCR assembly provides to bone marrow pre-B cells may instead result in exit from cell cycle in fetal precursors,[263] leading to selection of very different BCR repertoires during fetal and adult B lymphopoiesis. The possible significance of this is discussed subsequently in the section on B1 B cells. Leaving aside such developmental difference, the role of the pre-BCR in B-cell selection remains subject to debate, with evidence suggesting it functions to eliminate[274] or enrich[275] self-reactivity.

Light Chain Rearrangement and Generation of Immature B Cells

Besides termination of TdT and SLC gene expression, pre-BCR signaling also results in the downregulation of Rag-1 and Rag-2 expression, mediated by activity of Gfi1b on Erag, the B cell-specific Rag regulatory element,[254] and the repression of FoxO1.[276] It appears that induction of Bcl-6 by pre-BCR signaling functions in this progression by repressing Myc and Ccnd2, thereby promoting exit from cell cycle.[277,278] As mentioned previously, there is evidence that the pre-BCR signals through ERK and this Ras–MEK–ERK signaling acts to silence transcription of Ccd3, encoding the cell cycle protein cyclin D3, thus promoting cell quiescence.[279] Opposing cell cycle exit, IL-7R signaling activates STAT5, maintaining Ccd3 expression. Eventually, the pre-B cell escapes from

IL-7 signaling, exits the cell cycle, and the Rag genes are reexpressed at high levels. Sterile kappa transcripts become detectable during the cycling stage, likely reflecting chromatin remodeling to make the kappa light chain locus accessible,[252] so induction of the recombinase machinery can initiate kappa light chain V to J rearrangement.

An interesting feature of the Vκ locus is that the approximately 100 genes are in both transcriptional orientations, and so these genes can rearrange either by deletion (generating an extrachromosomal excision circle) or by inversion.[280] The absence of intervening D segments also means that it is possible for upstream V kappa genes to rearrange to downstream J kappa segments, "leapfrogging" the initial rearrangement, assuming it was to any Jκ other than Jκ5. The successive association of different kappa chains with the same heavy chain in a B cell is referred to as BCR "editing" and was originally observed in the context of autoreactivity, which maintains Rag expression even at the B-cell stage[281,282] (see following section on B-cell tolerance). Because assembly and expression of a complete BCR (that is not self-reactive) terminates Rag expression, an additional reason for light chain editing in the bone marrow may be to replace an initial light chain that fails to assemble effectively with the particular heavy chain present in that pre-B cell. This is probably the explanation for multiple light chain rearrangements detected in single early B-lineage cells.[283] Complete failure of kappa rearrangement, possibly after receptor editing to avoid self-reactivity, leads the pre-B cell to a second phase of light chain rearrangement, dependent on IKK-mediated NF-κB signaling, where the λ light chain locus rearranges.[284]

Newly formed B cells can be distinguished from mature B cells on the basis of their inability to proliferate in response to BCR cross-linking (ie, they are functionally immature). This is also the stage where negative selection is reported in transgenic models of autoreactivity.[285,286] Cells at this stage have a short half-life of only a few days, compared to mature follicular B cells with a half-life measured in months. They can be distinguished by surface phenotype from other B cells based on expression of certain combinations of markers, such as IgM+IgD−, absence of CD23, and high-level expression of CD24/HSA.[287] Recently, there have been reports of single markers that are useful in distinguishing newly formed cells from any mature subset, such as the molecules recognized by monoclonal antibodies 493[288] and AA4.1.[289] The AA4.1 target molecule has been cloned and identified as the mouse ortholog of a component of the human C1q receptor.[290]

Cells similar to newly formed B cells can be generated to varying extent during stromal cell culture of B-cell precursors, although the more primitive cycling pre-B or pro-B cells are usually more abundant and tend to increase in frequency with prolonged culture. It is possible to induce differentiation of B cells in these cultures by withdrawing IL-7, which induces a wave of small pre-B and then newly formed B-cell generation. Such cells do not persist for more than a day, unless the cultures are established from Bcl-2 transgenic mice,[131] suggesting that the short half-life of newly formed cells in these cultures, and possibly also in vivo, is due to their low level of antiapoptotic mediators. Both Bcl-2 and Bcl-X_L mRNA are present at only very low levels in these cells, in contrast with other B-lineage stages where either one or the other predominates. Overexpression of Bcl-X_L from a transgene results in accumulation of a population of pro-B phenotype cells with nonfunctional rearrangements,[291] implicating this protein in the process of pre-BCR selection of cells with functional rearrangements.

Peripheral Maturation Stages and Functional Subsets

Transitional B Cells

Newly formed immature B cells migrate to the spleen where they either die or undergo further maturation to a mature B cell. These maturing B cells can be subdivided based on differential expression of several surface proteins, including CD21, CD23, CD24/HSA, and AA4.1. These subdivisions have been referred to as "transitional B cells."[292] One recent subdivision based on CD21, CD23, AA4.1, and IgM levels has shown progression from an AA4.1+CD21−CD23− T1 stage to an AA4.1+CD21−CD23+ T2 stage, followed by downregulation of IgM as a T3 stage, and finally loss of AA4.1 with upregulation of CD21 to yield the mature follicular phenotype.[289] As shown in Figure 8.12, this approach also resolves two AA4.1− subsets that lack CD23, the B-1 subset with low CD21 and the MZ subset with very high CD21 (see following). The transitional stage cells are all short-lived as shown by bromodeoxyuridine incorporation.[289,293] They are also not functionally competent, as shown by inability to proliferate after BCR cross-linking.[287,294] Another well-characterized functional distinction is that B-cell tolerance, rather than an immune response, is induced by BCR cross-linking of immature B cells.[295–297] More recent studies with transgenic models of self-reactivity have shown that these B cells can be deleted, undergo receptor editing, or rendered functionally unresponsive (anergic) by BCR signaling at the immature stage.[281,285,298–302] One group has suggested that the "T3" stage is not an intermediate in production of follicular B cells, but rather a population of autoreactive anergic cells,[303] so additional work needs to be done to establish the identities of all the B-cell subpopulations present in spleen. For example, careful comparison of T1 and T2 B-cell populations shows that a fraction of T2 cells do respond to certain microenvironmental stimuli and include a portion of cycling cells that appear to constitute a branchpoint in generation of MZ B cells.[304]

It is not simply the inability to receive T-cell help due to differences in microenvironment or receptor expression that makes immature B cells incapable of responding as mature B cells. Different from the result with mature B cells, cross-linking the BCR on immature B cells has been shown to induce apoptosis, suggesting distinctions in the signaling pathways between these two stages.[305,306] Studies with transgenic mice suggest that this apoptosis is not mediated through the Fas/Fas-ligand pathway, as central deletion is intact in Fas-mutant mice.[307,308] Prior to induction of apoptosis, immature B cells have been shown to complete

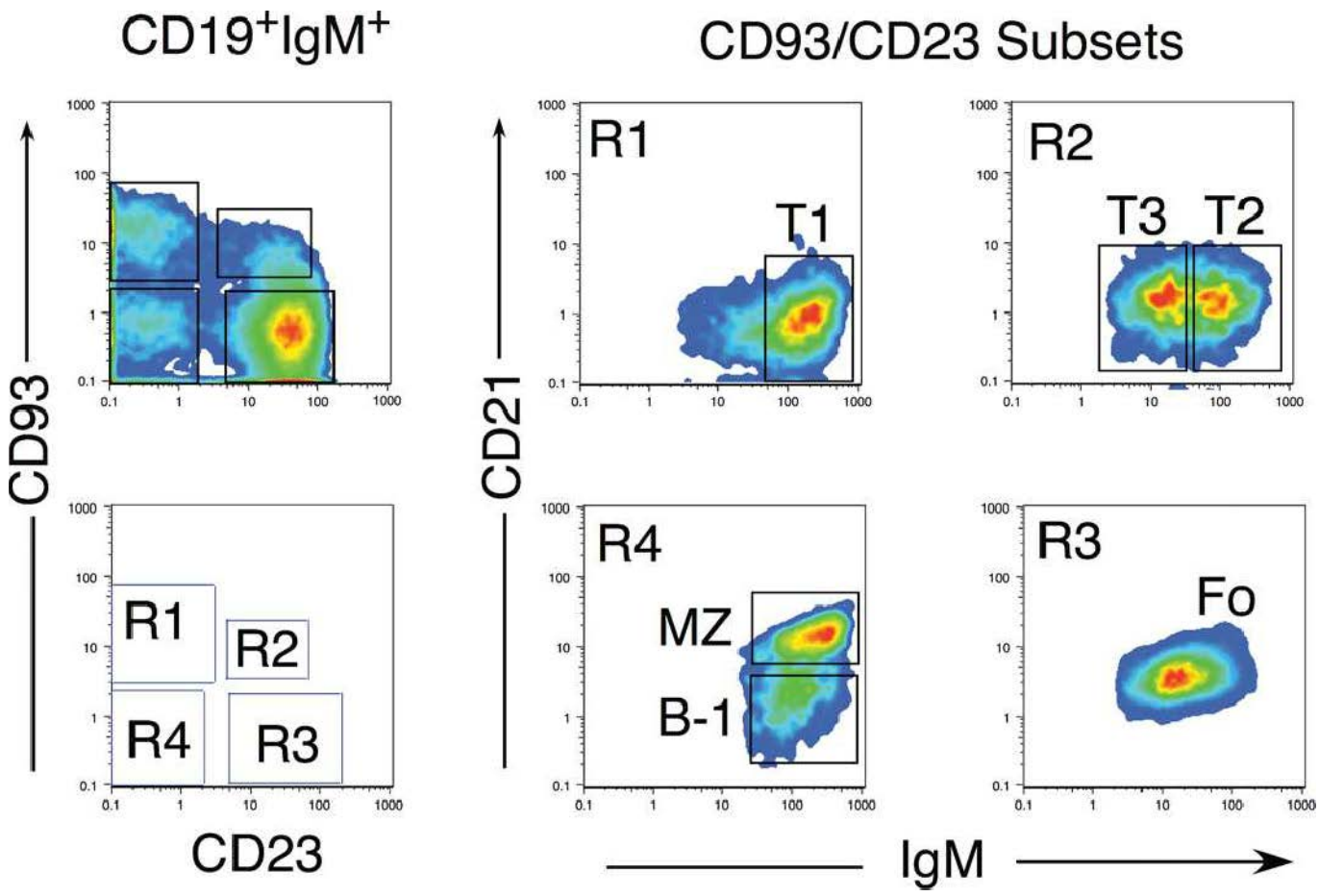


FIG 8.12. Flow Cytometry Approach for Resolution of Transitional (T1–T3) and Mature (Follicular, B1, Marginal Zone) Populations of B Cells in Mouse Spleen. Left panels show the distribution of AA4.1 and cluster of differentiation (CD)23 on B cells (defined as CD19+immunoglobulin [Ig] M+). Cells in the boxed regions are then analyzed for correlated expression of CD21 and IgM, facilitating resolution of three AA4.1+ fractions (T1–T3), the follicular subset (AA4.1–CD23+CD21+), the marginal zone subset (AA4.1–CD23–CD21++), and the B-1 subset (AA4.1–CD23–$CD21^{low}$).

some of the early events associated with entry into cell cycle while failing to complete this program.[309] Distinct stages in maturation appear more or less capable of responding to BCR cross-linking by reinduction (or maintenance) of Rags to facilitate receptor editing.[286] Furthermore, it appears that immature B cells are more sensitive to smaller changes in intracellular free calcium, compared to mature B cells.[310] It is possible that the capacity to upregulate antiapoptotic molecules, such as A1, may play a critical role in the inability of immature B cells to survive and complete a normal response.[311,312] The characterization of signaling pathways in different immature stages of developing B cells is ongoing and should eventually provide insights into the detailed mechanism for immature B-cell tolerance.

Analyses of various normally occurring or engineered mutant mice have provided approaches for investigation of the process of progressing from a newly formed B cell to a mature follicular B cell. B-cell populations and B-cell function has been studied for many years in CBA/N mice bearing the xid mutation. This mouse has a mutation in the Btk gene that produces a milder phenotype than the complete absence of peripheral B cells seen in humans. The Btk gene likely plays a role at several stages of B-cell development and activation, which complicates the analysis, but it appears clear that one major consequence is altered BCR signaling that has a profound effect on progression through the various transitional stages in spleen. A likely consequence of diminished strength of BCR signaling is a compensatory requirement for higher surface BCR expression that eventually produces at decreased frequency a type of "mature" B cell that is still functionally handicapped.[313,314] Several groups have produced xid mice on a nu/nu T-cell less background that results in a more profound absence of mature B cells, suggesting a requirement for T cells or T cell–produced factors in the maturation of xid B cells.[315,316] A more recent variation of this type of investigation is the production of xid/CD40-deficient mice that show a similar deficit in mature B cells, suggesting a role for the CD40/CD40L interaction in the generation of mature B cells from transitional B cells, particularly when the BCR is handicapped by defective Btk.[317]

Lyn is a Src family protein kinase that is associated with the BCR and functions in signaling in mature B cells.[318] Lyn-deficient mice exhibit defects in maturation of immature cells,

suggesting a positive role for BCR/Lyn signaling at this stage, but these mice also develop a severe autoimmune condition, suggesting an additional negative regulatory role for Lyn in maintaining tolerance in mature B cells.[319,320] Cross-linking of the BCR on T2 and mature B cells results in c-Rel activation that upregulates antiapoptotic genes and the prosurvival BAFF receptor.[321] Furthermore, migration of early bone marrow emigrants to areas where T1 and T2 cell mature has been shown to depend on chemokine signaling that is disrupted in Rac1/Rac2 double-deficient mice.[322] Finally, progression of transitional cells to the mature B-cell stage is dependent on "tonic" BCR signaling, as mice engineered to express low-surface BCR levels, and, thereby lower tonic BCR signaling showed decreased generation of mature B cells.[323] Analysis of these mice suggested that maturation was dependent on activation of ERK via a signaling pathway requiring Ras.

CD72 is a predominantly B-lineage restricted C-type lectin, and ligating this molecule was recognized for many years (when it was known as Lyb2) as having functional consequences.[324] Recent analyses of a CD72 null mouse has clarified its function in B-cell development and activation.[325] CD72 has been shown to recruit SHP-1 to the BCR, supporting a negative regulatory role in BCR activation.[326] Consistent with this model for CD72 function, null gene-targeted mice have been shown to produce B cells that are hyperresponsive.[325] Interestingly, late stages of B-cell development are affected, with fewer mature B cells and relatively normal numbers of immature B cells in spleen.[325] Thus, too intense signaling may also delay maturation of immature B cells.

A number of studies have demonstrated the important role that the phosphoinositide 3-kinase (PI3K) signaling pathway plays in the maturation of transitional cells and generation of mature B cells. Under conditions of normal tonic signaling, PI3K signaling inhibitors block the normal downregulation of Rags in immature B cells and also decrease progression past this stage.[327] This BCR signal is dependent on CD19 and BCAP, a BCR complex adapter molecule,[328] and acts through AKT to activate PI3K. The survival of B cells at the mature stage has been shown to depend on an intact BCR. More recent work revealed that the survival of BCR-deficient B cells can be rescued by activation of the PI3K signaling pathway alone.[329]

Follicular B Cells

The major population of mature recirculating B cells in the spleen is located in the B-cell follicle region, hence the term follicular B cells. Entry into this anatomic site appears to constitute a final stage in maturation for developing bone marrow B cells, as competition for this site is compromised in several transgenic models of B-cell tolerance.[330–333] Cells in this compartment do not proliferate but persist in the resting state for several months. A conditional knockout study, eliminating expression of the BCR (by deleting the V region), revealed that expression of the BCR is required for cell survival.[232,233] It is not yet established whether this is due to "tonic signaling" (simple assembly of the BCR signaling complex) or instead reflects signaling by low-affinity binding to cross-reactive self-determinants, a kind of "positive selection." It is interesting to note that ablation of heavy chain from immature B cell, thereby eliminating any possibility of pre-BCR or BCR tonic signaling, results in a "reversion" of cell phenotype to an earlier developmental stage.[334] Finally, the maintenance of follicular B cells has been found to depend on the function of the c-Myb transcription factor due to its role in BAFF signaling[335] (see following section).

The repertoire of the follicular B-cell pool appears to differ from the earlier immature splenic B-cell population, as assessed by sequence analysis of the light chain repertoire in heavy chain transgenic mice.[336] The approach of fixing the heavy chain and then examining the light chain repertoire simplifies the analysis, and the results of this study were interpreted to indicate that BCR-mediated antigen selection is indeed operating. However, the resolution of the analysis probably could not have rigorously excluded populations known to show V gene biases, such as B-1 or MZ B cells (see following sections), so further work will be required to provide convincing evidence of antigenic selection in the follicular B-cell pool.

B-Cell Migration and Maintenance

Newly formed B cells migrate from the bone marrow to the spleen, undergo further maturation in the red pulp, and eventually enter the follicle where they constitute the mature B-cell pool that recirculates. Their migration is dependent on chemokines/receptor interactions, notably the SLC(CCL21)/CCR7 interaction, as demonstrated by the inability of mature B cells to be retained normally in spleens of CCR7 null mice.[337] The role of the CXCR5 receptor on B cells in homing to the lymphoid follicle due a gradient of the B-lymphocyte chemoattractant CXCL13 is also well known, and CXCL13 can directly induce Ltα1β2 on the recruited cells.[338] Finally, it is also possible that the SDF1 (CXCL12)/CXCR4 interaction, critical for normal B lymphopoiesis, may also be important at this later stage, although investigation of this issue is complicated by the early defect. This is an ongoing area of investigation and may eventually be clarified by developmentally regulated gene targeting studies.

Recently, considerable interest has focused on the role of a tumor necrosis factor family member cytokine known variously as BAFF, BLyS, TALL-1, zTNF4, or THANK in the process of peripheral B-cell maturation.[339] BAFF is a tumor necrosis factor family member found to enhance survival of B cells or even produce autoimmunity in transgenic mice constitutively expressing it.[340,341] Initially, two receptors defined for BAFF, BCMA and TACI, provided a complex picture, as targeted inactivation of BCMA yielded no B-cell defect and deletion of TACI had increased B cell numbers (suggesting that TACI might be a negative regulator). This puzzle was resolved by identification of a third receptor, BAFF-R/BR3,[342,343] which was mutated in a strain of mice known to lack most mature B cells, A/WySnJ.[344] A second ligand, APRIL, can bind to BCMA and TACI, but not to BAFF/BR3, and this binding is proliferative rather than survival promoting.[345] Thus, the critical interaction for maintenance of follicular B cells is BAFF/BLyS with its receptor. B-1 cells are not deficient in A/WySnJ,[344] suggesting that their maintenance does not depend on this pathway

but instead is more BCR dependent. Interestingly, excessive levels of BAFF promote survival of highly autoreactive BCR transgenic mouse B cells, consistent with the finding of elevated levels in patients with autoimmune diseases such as systemic lupus erythematosus and Sjögren syndrome.[346]

Mechanism of B-Cell Receptor Signaling

Considering that the structure of the Ig molecule was elucidated more than 40 years ago, it is surprising that the details of initiation of B-cell activation following antigen binding are still not firmly established. Recent work using single-molecule imaging demonstrated that antigen binding altered the mobility of BCRs within microclusters on the B cell, resulting in rigid oligomeric structures that generated a signal.[347] Interestingly, this oligomerization required the membrane proximal domain of IgH-μ (Cμ), and such domains in isolation spontaneously formed aggregates in the membrane, leading to the hypothesis that antigen ligation induces a conformational change in Cμ4 that then promotes assembly of signaling clusters. Other work visualizing simple Ig molecules has demonstrated the importance of the membrane cytoskeleton in limiting diffusion of the BCR and revealed the importance of Igb/CD79b in mediating such restriction, showing that alterations in BCR distribution rapidly result in strong intracellular signaling.[348] Finally, an alternative model has been proposed, based on analysis using quantitative bifluorescence complementation, suggesting that preexisting BCR aggregates are less active in signaling, and that the disruption of such complexes upon antigen binding is responsible for generating a signal.[349] Additional work using such advanced imaging techniques will undoubtedly resolve this apparent contradiction and lead to a more complete understanding of BCR signaling.

B-Cell Turnover

It is estimated that 10 to 20 million B cells are produced in bone marrow of the mouse each day,[350] yet it appears that only about 10% of this number reach the periphery.[293] Thus, there is considerable loss at this bone marrow emigration stage/spleen entry stage, possibly due to elimination of autoreactive cells (B-cell tolerance) or to homeostatic regulation. The latter possibility is supported by the observation that depletion of the mature B-cell population results in a relatively rapid recovery of this pool, suggesting that most of the immature B-cell population can enter the mature follicular subset in this situation.[351]

Once functionally mature B cells are generated, it has been difficult to unambiguously determine their half-life, although accumulating data from several laboratories using bromodeoxyuridine labeling has led to the idea that follicular B cells have a relatively long half-life on the order of months.[293,352] A recent elegant study provided definitive confirmation of this by conditional elimination of Rag-2 expression, allowing termination of B-cell development in adult mice.[353] This study showed that follicular B cells have a half-life of about 4.5 months. This same analysis showed that two other subsets of B cells, B-1 and MZ B cells, did not diminish over time, consistent with their well-known capacity for self-renewal and lifelong persistence.

Germinal Center B Cells

T cell–dependent immune responses usually give rise to anatomically distinctive structures in spleen and lymph nodes that are referred to as germinal centers (GCs) and contain large numbers of rapidly cycling B cells.[354,355] These cells can be recognized in stained sections of spleen by binding of high levels of peanut agglutinin and by the absence of IgD.[356,357] Many of the B cells with this phenotype have downregulated-Bcl-2/upregulated-Fas expression and, in the absence of strong BCR signaling, will likely die by apoptosis.[358–361] The termination of IgD expression means that surface BCR expression decreases at least 10-fold, and so limiting amounts of antigen will favor the cells with increased affinity for antigen, generated by a process termed *somatic hypermutation*. Recently, a miRNA, miR-155, has been found to be critical for the generation of GCs by regulating cytokine production.[362]

A major advance in understating the GC response has been the discovery that activation-induced cytidine deaminase (AID), an RNA-editing enzyme that can induce class switch recombination in fibroblasts,[363–365] is also a key player in the process of hypermutation.[366,367] In fact, a third means for Ig gene diversification used in nonmammalian species, V gene conversion, is also dependent on AID.[368,369] AID is now thought to be responsible for genetic mutations outside the Ig loci in lymphomas that arise from GC B cells.[370]

The precise mechanism of selection for higher affinity B cells generated by hypermutation of the BCR V regions remains to be fully understood, but the regulation of proapoptotic and antiapoptotic genes likely plays a major role. B cells able to bind antigen with high affinity can present antigen to specialized CD4+ T cells (follicular helper T cells) that then signal the B cell through a CD40/CD40L interaction, resulting in the upregulation of Bcl-X_L.[358–360] Most GC B cells have sharply downregulated levels of Bcl-2 and upregulated levels of Fas,[360,361] and so in the absence of rescue by expression of the alternative antiapoptotic mediator Bcl-X_L, cell death by apoptosis will be the fate of most B cells in the GC. Careful regulation of selection is critical to affinity maturation, and elimination of self-reactive cells that potentially could be generated during this process must also occur efficiently to avoid the potential of autoimmune disease.

Recently, the role of the immunoinhibitory receptor PD-1, present at high levels on follicular helper T cells, in GC B-cell selection has been described.[371] Furthermore, high-resolution imaging of fluorescent reporters is revealing details of cell dynamics within the GC, indicating that competition for T-cell help is a key limiting factor in the selection of higher affinity B cells.[372]

Memory B Cells

Memory B cells were initially defined functionally as cells that could respond rapidly by production of high-affinity antibody when challenged in a host reconstituted with B cells and T cells from a primed animal.[373–378] Subsequently, such cells have been purified based on their antigen-binding properties[379] and shown to consist primarily of isotype-switched (IgG+) B cells that continue to express CD45R/B220 and have distinctively

lower levels of cell surface BCR.[380] They arise during the T cell–dependent immune response, probably only from follicular B cells, in the GC. They are very long-lived or self-regenerating, as cell transfer assays have shown that memory responses can be detected for long periods after the primary immunization.[380,381] More recent work has focused on examining the heterogeneity of secondary B-cell subsets, examining cell surface proteins that may aid in distinguishing them.[382] In terms of genes that distinguish memory B cells, it appears that phospholipase C gamma 2 is important both for the generation and maintenance of memory B cells.[383]

It is not clear whether all B cells are capable of giving rise to memory B cells. Memory or "secondary" B cells were originally described as expressing distinctively low levels of CD24/HSA, recognized by the monoclonal antibody J11d.[384] Some years later, fractionation of naïve spleen B-cell precursors into J11d^{low} and J11d^{high} subsets in a spleen focus assay system showed that while rapid antibody secretion derived from J11d^{high} cells, memory came largely from the J11d^{low} subset.[385] Subsequent experiments demonstrated that GCs (the site where most memory B cells are generated) were only produced in cell transfers of J11d^{low} B cells and not with J11d^{high} or CD5+ B cells.[386] Considering the rapid Ig secretory response of B1 B cells and MZ B cells, both contained in the CD24/HSA^{high} fraction, and the fact that most other CD24/HSA^{high} cells are immature (transitional) B cells, likely to be highly susceptible to apoptosis, it seems quite reasonable that memory B cells would not be a major product of this fraction. Rather, the most likely candidate for the memory B-cell precursor is the follicular B-cell subset (Fo), which has variable but lower expression of CD24/HSA. Whether there is heterogeneity for GC formation or memory B-cell generation within the Fo population remains to be determined.

Whether the maintenance of memory requires periodic restimulation by antigen has been a longstanding controversial issue. On the one hand, transfer of B cells and T cells into irradiated recipients usually required simultaneous challenge with antigen in order to elicit the full response and maintain B-cell memory in recipients.[387] Antigenic fragments can persist for very extended periods on follicular dendritic cells, which are very potent antigen-presenting cells, and, so in this model, the memory B cells are periodically triggered to self-renew by interaction with antigen on follicular dendritic cells. However, on the other hand, memory B cells can be maintained in the apparent absence of T cells or follicular dendritic cells.[388,389] Furthermore, analysis by bromodeoxyuridine labeling of memory B-cell populations showed that they were nondividing.[381] This issue has been addressed in elegant experiments using inducible Cre recombinase to switch the BCR on memory cells away from the immunizing antigen.[390] Such antigen-negative memory cells still persisted for extended periods, clearly demonstrating that this was a physiologic property of the cell type, independent of the presence of antigen.

B1 B Cells

B1 B cells, initially described as Ly-1/CD5+ B cells, are distinguished from follicular B cells by phenotype, anatomic distribution, and function.[23,391] The B1 B-cell phenotype encompasses both CD5+ and CD5– B cells that are IgM^{high}, IgD$^{low/-}$, CD23–, and CD43+. They constitute a large proportion of the B cells found in the peritoneal and pleural cavities (30% to 50% of B cells, around 10^6 cells), but are also found in spleen where they are present at numerically similar levels, but constitute a much lower proportion of the total B-cell pool (2% of B cells, around 10^6 cells). The B1 B cells in the peritoneal cavity are also CD11b/Mac-1+ unlike those in spleen. They appear early in ontogeny, representing 30% or more of the B cells in spleen of 1-week-old animals. They also have a distinctively higher frequency of λ light chain usage compared to follicular B cells (20% vs 5%). Also unlike follicular B cells, they maintain their population in adult animals largely by self-renewal (possibly dependent on periodic stimulation by self-antigen; see following discussion), rather than by input from precursor cells, as shown in cell transfer studies.[392] There is also a recently described population of IgM-secreting cells in bone marrow with a B1 cell surface phenotype.[393]

Perhaps the most distinctive feature of CD5+/B1 B cells is their enrichment of certain self-reactive specificities, notably for branched carbohydrates, glycolipids, and glycoproteins, including phosphorylcholine, phosphatidylcholine (PtC), the Thy-1 glycoprotein, and bacterial cell wall constituents.[394–397] These antibodies, although autoantibodies, are not pathogenic, but rather referred to as "natural autoantibodies" whose existence has been recognized in serum for several decades.[398–400] Their function is still under active investigation, but at least some natural autoantibodies are thought to function in clearance of senescent cells or proteins and to provide an initial immunity to common bacterial or viral pathogens, serving as a kind of "hardwired" memory B-cell population.[401–404]

Under physiologic conditions in normal mice, most of the CD5+ B cells in the B1 population (so called "B1a B cells") arise from precursors in fetal liver, as cell transfer studies showed many years ago that B cells with this phenotype were inefficiently generated from bone marrow precursors in adult mice, compared to fetal or neonatal precursors.[405] This is shown by repopulation of SCID mice by pro-B stage cells isolated from fetal liver and adult bone marrow (Fig. 8.13). Part of the reason for this difference may be that novel BCRs are enriched by distinctive mechanisms of fetal B lymphopoiesis, including recombination in the absence of TdT (thereby favoring rearrangement of certain D-J and V-D junctions possessing short regions of homology[16]) and distinctive pre-BCR selection.[263,273,406] Forced expression of transgenic BCRs cloned from CD5+ B cells can give rise to CD5+ B cells from bone marrow of adult animals, but the physiologic relevance of this remains to be carefully assessed. B1 B cells that lack CD5, termed B1b B cells, can be generated from bone marrow and a distinctive phenotype for a precursor capable of producing such cells has been described,[162] although the developmental relationships between conventional ("B2") B-cell precursors and these cells are complex.[407] Embryonic day 9 YS hematopoietic progenitors have been sown to give rise to B1 and MZ B cells but not conventional follicular B cells.

The development of B1/CD5+ B cells is thought to be more dependent on antigenic selection compared to follicular B cells. This idea was first suggested by the finding of particular specificities enriched in this population and

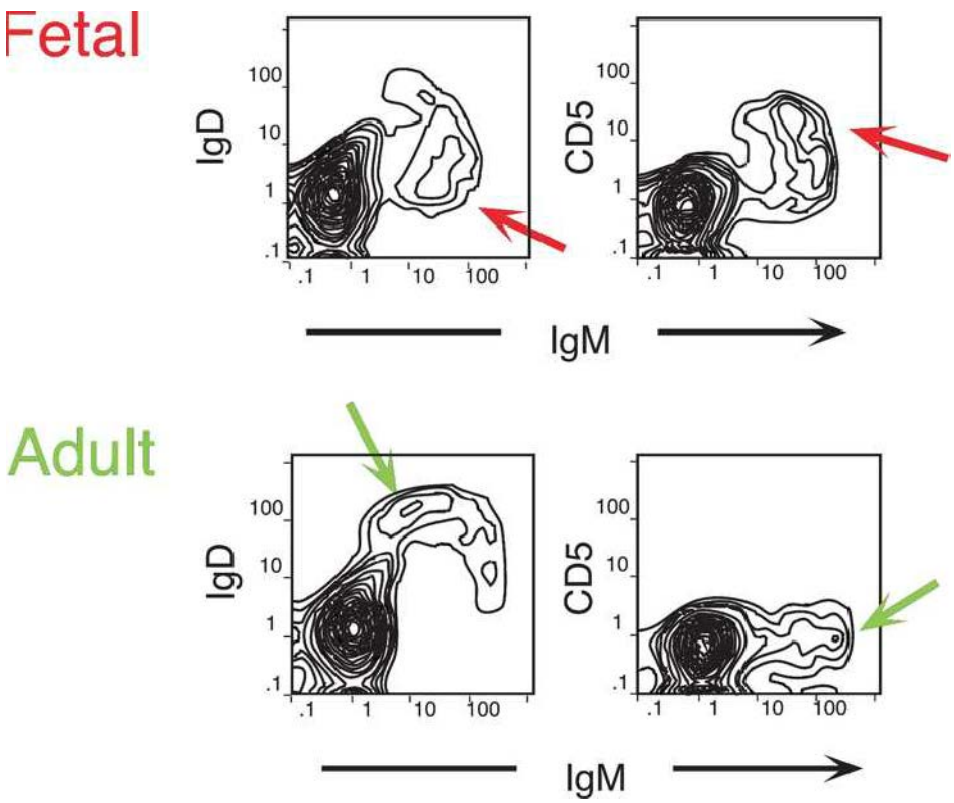


FIG 8.13. Generation of B Cells in Severe Combined Immunodeficiency (SCID) Mice Shows the Distinctive Phenotypes Produced from Fetal and Adult Pro-B Cells. Similar numbers of pro-B cells, isolated as in Figure 8.5, Fr. B/C, were injected intravenously into sublethally irradiated adult SCID mice. Recipients were analyzed 3 weeks later for spleen cell lymphocytes by staining as shown in the figure.

strengthened by the observation of repeated occurrences of particular V_H/V_L pairs.[408] Thus, for example, the anti-PtC specificity is predominantly encoded by $V_H11V_\kappa9$ and $V_H12V_\kappa4$ utilizing two V_H genes rarely found in conventional T-dependent immune responses.[395,409] These cells appear to participate in T-independent responses, but in normal physiology may in fact provide an initial low-affinity "first wave" response to many pathogens that eventually will also elicit a T-dependent response.[404,410]

The observation of their self-reactive bias, their capacity for self-renewal, and their restricted repertoire of distinctive BCRs all are consistent with an important role for BCR–antigen interaction in generation and maintenance of this population. This has been formally confirmed recently by studying mice bearing a BCR transgene specific for a glycosylation present only on the Thy-1 membrane protein.[411] In these mice, transgene-encoded serum anti–Thy-1 autoantibody[396] was readily detected, and there was a corresponding accumulation of a population of CD5+ transgene BCR+ B cells in the peritoneal cavity. Importantly, in Thy-1 null mice generated by gene targeting, neither serum autoantibody nor the B-cell population was found, demonstrating the critical role for antigen in selection of this B-cell population.[412]

Consistent with the importance of antigen selection in the generation and/or maintenance of these cells, this population is often severely affected in mice bearing mutations that alter BCR signaling intensity. The loss of negative mediators such as PTP1C/SHP-1 in "moth-eaten" mice,[413] of CD72 that recruits this phosphatase,[413] and of the CD22 coreceptor[414,415] all result in an increased frequency of B1/CD5+ B cells relative to follicular B cells. On the other hand, the loss of critical BCR signaling components or positive mediators in this pathway such as an Ig-α tail mutant,[416] Btk deficiency (in xid or Btk null mice),[417,418] CD19 null mice,[419,420] CD21 null mice,[421] CD45 null mice,[410] and vav null mice[422] all negatively impact this B-cell population. A further indication of a signal-dependent selection model is the accumulation of B1-type B cells with high-level expression of a BCR surrogate, LMP2A, but only B2 B cells and MZ B cells with low-level expression.[423]

The functional role of B1 B cells is still incompletely understood. Whereas it is clear that they produce natural autoantibody, there also is evidence for their participation in immune responses. B1 B cells have also been shown to accumulate in draining lymph nodes of the respiratory tract during influenza infection of mice.[393] Treatment of mice with *Francisella tularensis*–derived lipopolysaccharide protects them from subsequent exposure to the live bacteria (the etiologic agent of tularemia) by activating a small fractions of B1 B cells with this antigen specificity.[424]

IL-10 is a cytokine with anti-inflammatory properties that also enhances B-cell survival and antibody production. Thus, it can function to damping down cellular immune responses and promote humoral immunity. Many years ago, B1 B cells were identified as the B-cell source of this cytokine that is also secreted by monocytes, mast cells, and regulatory T cells.[425] Recently, based on observations of alterations in the level of inflammation in mice lacking or overexpressing CD19, a CD1d(high) subset of B-1 cells expressing IL-10 has been identified.[426] Considering the anti-inflammatory regulatory effects of IL-10, this subset has been referred to as "B Regs" or "B10" B cells. Investigation of this subset in the experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis mouse

model of multiple sclerosis showed that initiation and progression of disease was influenced reciprocally by depletion of B cells. Because experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis is considered a T cell–mediated disease, this provides strong evidence for the capacity of B1 cells in modulating T cells during the initiation of disease. Curiously, depleting B cells after experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis was already established actually diminished symptoms, indicting that B cells were required for persistence of autoreactive T cells. This suggests that simple depletion of all B cells in certain autoreactive pathologies may have different consequences, depending on the progression of the disease. Finally, examination of B10 function in the autoimmune lupus-prone NZB/W mouse F1 indicated that these cells were responsible for inducing regulatory T cells that could ameliorate the course of disease in these animals.[427]

Marginal Zone B Cells

Another B-cell subset distinct from follicular B cells is the MZ B-cell population. MZ B cells are localized in a distinct anatomic region of the spleen that represents the major antigen filtering and scavenging area (by specialized macrophages resident there). It appears that they are preselected to express a BCR repertoire similar to B1 B cells biased toward bacterial cell wall constituents[428] and senescent self-components (such as oxidized low-density lipoprotein [LDL]).[429,430] Similar to B1 B cells, they respond very rapidly to antigenic challenge, likely independently of T cells, but participating in the early phase of T-dependent responses.[431–433] Uniquely, among all populations of B cells, MZ B cells are dependent on Notch2 signaling for their development.[434,435]

There are similarities and differences in the cell surface phenotype of MZ and B-1 B cells. Thus, they both are IgM+++IgD−/+, CD23−, and CD9+.[436] However while B1/CD5+ B cells express CD5 and CD43, MZ B cells do not, and MZ B cells express distinctively high levels of CD21, while B1 cells have distinctively low levels (see Fig. 8.12). Also, MZ B cells have high levels of CD1d, while most B1 B cells do not,[437] the exception being the "B10" subset mentioned previously. Certain mutant mice show similar effects on MZ and B1 B cells, distinct from follicular B cells. For example, most of the mutations described for B1 B cells that alter BCR signaling have similar consequences for MZ B cells,[438] although cells that resemble MZ B cells are present in xid/Btk-deficient mice, leading to some controversy in their origins.[439] Both are decreased by a mutation in the Ig-α tail that weakens overall BCR signaling.[440] They are also both decreased in the Aiolos transcription factor null mouse.[63] Interestingly, deletion of the Pyk-2 tyrosine kinase results in elimination of MZ B cells while B1 cells are still found.[441]

MZ B-cell development can be studied in a heavy chain transgenic mouse model system where large numbers of such cells are produced.[428,442] In this V_H81X heavy chain mouse, B cells with a specific light chain accumulate with an MZ phenotype. This MZ population is eliminated by deletion of CD19, Btk, or CD45, all genetic changes that weaken BCR signaling.[438] MZ B cells are generated in mice even when B-cell development is blocked shortly after birth by conditional deletion of Rag-2,[353] showing that like B1 B cells, a significant portion of MZ B cells are produced during fetal development. Consistent with this fetal origin, many MZ B cells have Ig heavy chains with little or no TdT-mediated N-regions at their V-D and D-J junctions.[443] Interestingly, irradiated mice repopulated with bone marrow precursors still accumulate significant numbers of MZ B cells with low levels on N-addition, indicating that the strong BCR-mediated selection guiding entry into this subset can select such cells from adult bone marrow–generated B cells.

In recent years, there has been considerable progress in understating some of the non–BCR-related pathways that regulate the generation of MZ B cells. For example, the cannabinoid receptor 2 appears important in localization of MZ B-cell precursors to the anatomic region where Notch signals are available.[444] Notch ligand expression for generation of MZ B cells is regulated by the E3 ubiquitin ligase Mind bomb 1, which also is critical for T-cell development.[445] Furthermore, Notch2 activation in MZ B cells is potentiated by expression of the fringe glycosyltransferases lunatic fringe and manic fringe.[446] Notch activation requires its proteolysis, and this is now known to occur through activity of a disintegrin and metalloproteinase 10 (ADAM10).[447]

B-Cell Tolerance and Receptor Editing

A number of transgenic mouse models have been developed for the study of B-cell tolerance (Table 8.2). In two of these systems, high-affinity BCRs are expressed as IgM–IgD transgenes, one specific for the antigen hen egg white lysozyme (HEL), the other for a specific polymorphic determinant on MHC class I.[281,298–300,448–450] The advantage of these systems is that they utilize antigens that can be regulated: Transgenic B cells can develop in either the presence or absence of antigen, and cell transfer experiments can be employed to alter the B cell's antigenic milieu. These have been used initially to confirm ideas on B-cell tolerance that originated in work with nontransgenic B cells, namely that exposure to antigen is generally deleterious to developing B cells, resulting in their elimination or failure to mature (instead entering an "anergic" state). However, the resolution of these systems, coupled with advances in gene targeting and other molecular technologies, have uncovered important new details regarding the way that self-reactive B cells develop (or fail to develop). For example, studies in the anti–H-2 model uncovered an alternative to deletion in response to immature B-cell encounter with antigen, BCR editing to escape autoreactivity.[281]

In the HEL system, differences have been discovered in immature B-cell responses to soluble versus membrane-bound antigen, suggesting that the extent of BCR cross-linking can influence cell fate.[299] Furthermore, studies with this system on different mutant backgrounds that shift BCR signaling thresholds up or down has shown that such alterations can result in striking alterations in selection outcomes.[451,452] Work in this system has shown that one consequence of B-cell tolerance may be arrest of B-cell migration so that follicular entry is inefficient.[330,331] Presumably, failure to reach such follicular niches contributes to handicapping the autoreactive B cells, resulting in their relatively speedy elimination.

TABLE 8.2 Transgenic Models of B-Cell Tolerance

Ig Transgene	Antigen	Background	Effect	Reference
3-83 μk	MHC class I H-2Kk,b	H-2Kk	Deletion, receptor editing	281,300,450
		H2-Kd	Normal development	
3-83 μk	MHC class I H-2Kk,b	H-2Kk lpr autoimmune-prone	Deletion unaffected	308
anti-HEL μδ	HEL	sHEL-Tg	Anergy	298,448,449
		Wild-type	Normal development	
anti-HEL μδ	HEL	mHEL-TG	Deletion	299
anti-HEL μδ	HEL	HEL-Tg lpr autoimmune prone	Deletion unaffected	307
anti-HEL μδ	HEL	sHEL-Tg CD45 null	Self-antigen promoted development	452
anti-HEL μδ	HEL	sHEL-Tg motheaten	Deletion by lower valency autoantigen	451
3H9 μ-only	ssDNA with many light chains	BALB/c	No anti-DNA autoantibodies	301
3H9 μ-only	ssDNA with many light chains	lpr Autoimmune-prone	Anti-DNA autoantibodies	597
3H9 μκ	dsDNA	BALB/c	Deletion, editing	302
3H9 μκ	dsDNA	J_H^-/J_κ^-	Deletion	285
3H9 μλ	dsDNA	Wild-type and lpr Autoimmune prone	Anergy	332,333
3H9-R/Vκ4-R 3H9-R/Vκ8-R	dsDNA ssDNA	BALB/c	Deletion, editing anergy	598
3H9-R/Vκ4-R 3H9-R/Vκ8-R	dsDNA, ssDNA	Rag-2$^-$	Deletion, activation	599
3H9/56R 3H9/56R76R	dsDNA, ssDNA	BALB/c	Deletion, editing	600
Antierythrocyte	Red blood cell	Wild-type	Tg^+ cells only in peritoneal cavity	457–459
$V_H11\mu$, $V_H12\mu$	PtC, BrMRBC	Wild-type	Increased number of B1 B cells	601,602
6C10μ	ATA determinant (glycosylation of Thy-1)	Wild-type	ATA B cells ATA serum	412
		Thy-1 null	Normal development; no ATA	
ATA μκ (6C10μVκ21c)	ATA determinant	Wild-type	Receptor editing or development block in bone marrow; ATA in serum	464,465
		Thy-1 null	Normal development	

ATA, antithymocyte autoantibody; DNA, deoxyribonucleic acid; HEL, hen egg white lysozyme; Ig, immunoglobulin; MHC, major histocompatibility complex.

Another major line of investigation has focused on a more "physiologic" example of pathogenic autoreactivity, the anti-DNA antibodies produced in lpr (Fas-deficient) mice that are generally considered to model the human disease of systemic lupus erythematosus. Analysis of transgenic mice bearing a heavy chain transgene known to be capable of generating anti-dsDNA reactivity with numerous light chains showed that only light chains with ssDNA activity were tolerated in the periphery, and even these did not contribute to the serum antibody pool.[301] Follow-up work uncovered receptor editing in this model[302,453–455] and also showed that when such editing was blocked, the B cells were eliminated in the bone marrow at an immature stage.[285]

Receptor editing, due to failure of Rag downregulation, in replacement of the original light chain by a different one, resulted in decrease or elimination of autoreactivity. Although discovered in several BCR transgenic models, it also occurs at some level in the newly formed B-cell stage in bone marrow, as random pairing of heavy and light chains will result in autoreactivity by some of these cells. Studies with a NF-κB–dependent IκB alpha gene reporter mouse revealed that autoreactive BCRs resulted in activation of the reporter and that reporter+ cells have elevated levels of IRF4, indicating that BCR cross-linking by self-antigen signals through a NF-κB pathway and acts through IRF4 to regulate receptor editing.[456]

Later work analyzing transgenic B cells expressing λ light chain (or in kappa null mice) where B cells have dsDNA binding has shown the failure of follicular entry previously described in the HEL system.[332,333] Interestingly, similar analyses on an "autoreactive" (Fas-deficient) background have shown that this follicular exclusion is lost and production of pathogenic autoantibodies ensues, providing a powerful model for the further characterization of the development of autoimmunity due to breakdown of B-cell tolerance.

A different model of a pathogenic antierythrocyte autoantibody has shown another possible mechanism whereby

self-reactive B cells may avoid deletion or receptor editing by sequestration from self-antigen.[457,458] In this system, the transgenic B cells are largely absent from spleen but instead survive in the peritoneal cavity where exposure to the distinctive microenvironment may also contribute to the persistence of these cells. Eventual activation of the B cells by mitogen or antigen can lead to an autoimmune condition in these mice.[459]

B cells may express BCR coreceptors or modulators of signaling pathways that change the response to self-antigen cross-linking. For example, it appears that enzymatic acetylation and deacetylation of a cell surface carbohydrate by sialate: O-acetylesterase alters B-cell responsiveness, by regulating the function of CD22, a sialic acid binding Ig-like lectin (siglec) that inhibits BCR signaling.[460] As mentioned previously, the level of CD19 also modulates BCR signaling and selection, such that altering CD19 expression can alter the frequency of B1 B cells. Recent work has revealed that mutation of the Wiskott–Aldrich syndrome protein selectively in B cells results in severe autoimmunity due to BCR and TLR hyperresponsiveness.[461]

A common thread in all of the studies described here is the negative impact that the B cell experiences upon interaction with self-antigen, an expected result for systems that model the regulation of pathogenic autoantibodies. However, a class of autoantibodies is produced in healthy individuals, and these "natural autoantibodies" may play a role in early responses to certain classes of pathogens.[401,402,404,462] Such a natural autoantibody has been used to construct a transgenic model system where the self-antigen can be regulated. Most natural self-antigens are common glycosylations or cell constituents such as PtC that cannot be eliminated, but a class of natural autoantibodies binds to thymocytes (antithymocyte autoantibody [ATA]) and many of these recognize a glycosylation that is only present on the abundant thymocyte cell surface glycoprotein CD90/Thy-1.[412] Thy-1–null mice have already been generated,[463] so production of ATA–BCR μ-only transgenic mice enabled the study of the role of antigen in the generation of this natural autoantibody. Interestingly, both production of serum ATA and accumulation of B cells with the appropriate light chain (by rearrangement of endogenous Ig light chain locus) for the ATA–BCR required the presence of Thy-1 self-antigen.[412] Thus, at least some B cells are selected for binding to self-antigen, although these may belong exclusively to specialized B-cell compartments, such as the B1 B-cell subset.

This ATA–BCR/Thy-1 tolerance model has been extended by the production of ATA μκ transgenic mice, where most developing B cells express the natural autoreactive specificity.[464] In such mice, most of B cells developing from bone marrow become arrested in spleen and either cease maturation or else "edit" their BCR by replacing the transgene-encoded light chain by a different light chain as a consequence of rearranging the endogenous light chain locus. This resembles typical "negative selection," as seen with other transgenic models.[281,298–300,448,450] Nevertheless, some B1 B cells are detected, and high levels of serum autoantibody are produced, suggesting that some B cells with this BCR are capable of maturing, perhaps in specialized microenvironments or at distinctive (fetal/neonatal) times.

The role of BCR signaling intensity in directing B cells to various specialized subpopulations has been studied using the ATA μκ BCR transgenic model, by altering the levels of Thy-1 self-antigen and then examining B-cell development.[465] This analysis observed follicular B-cell development in the absence of antigen, but MZ B-cell production in the presence of very low levels of autoantigen. As shown previously, normal physiologic levels of the Thy-1 autoantigen results in a block in bone marrow development, but allowed B1 production, with concomitant generation of ATA detected in serum. This work led the authors to propose a model of B-cell development where strong BCR signaling produces B1 B cells (particularly during fetal development), intermediate BCR signaling yields MZ B cells, and weak (or negligible) BCR signaling results in follicular B-cell generation.

Role of Complement, Serum Antibody, and Cluster of Differentiation 5 in B-Cell Tolerance and Response

The importance of complement in the immune system has long been recognized based on classic experiments showing that cobra toxin decreased responses.[466–468] Over the past 10 years, the importance of complement in immune responses, explaining the function of adjuvants, has become clearer.[469] In the context of B-cell development, components of the complement system also play a role in modulating BCR responses and negative selection of B cells. At least in the HEL–Ig/sHEL system, altering the strength of the BCR signal, by CD45R or PTP1C/SHP1 inactivation, could either reduce or enhance B-cell deletion.[452] Similar results could be obtained by altering the BCR-associated chain CD19.[470] Considering the role of complement as a coreceptor for modulating BCR signaling thresholds, the finding that HEL double transgenic mice that also are Cr2 (CD21/CD35) null develop peripheral B cells that are apparently not fully anergized, as they could still respond to antigen challenge.[471] This could be due to an inefficient retention of antigen (sHEL) on stromal/dendritic cells and, therefore, weaker signaling by a monomeric soluble antigen to developing/transitional B cells in the bone marrow or spleen. Potentially, a major role for complement would be to localize self-antigens on bone marrow stromal and dendritic cells facilitating tolerance at the newly formed B-cell stage. An implication of these findings is that complement deficiency could result in accumulation of functional autoreactive cells, possibly leading to autoimmunity.

Natural autoantibody, a major component of the serum, may have a role (together with complement) in maintaining tolerance to highly conserved self-antigens.[469] Some such IgM antibodies, highly conserved phylogenetically, have been shown to recognize conserved carbohydrates beta-glucan and chitin structures present on fungi and so serve to enhance host defense.[472] It also appears that it plays a role in amplifying immune responses, as suggested by studies with a mutant mouse lacking the μ heavy chain secretory exon.[473] The deficit due to a lack of serum IgM was particularly severe in an acute peritonitis model, where some restoration of responsiveness could be obtained by injection of a monoclonal IgM antibody derived from CD5+ B cells.[473] Finally, in infection with influenza virus, it appears that early presence

of natural autoantibody was equally as important as antibody induced during the course of infection in mediating viral clearance and survival.[404] This work has led to the proposal of a two-phase description of immune responses, with an early T cell–independent phase dominated by natural autoantibody, likely critically dependent on innate immune recognition and activation of complement, leading to a later T cell–dependent phase culminating in the GC reaction, producing high-affinity antibody and memory B cells.[474]

The presence of CD5 on many of the B1 B cells has led to the question of whether it plays a direct role in maintaining such self-reactive B cells, particularly in light of its role in altering T-cell selection thresholds as demonstrated in the CD5-null mouse.[475] Analysis of B-cell responses to BCR cross-linking in CD5-null mice suggested that the presence of CD5 makes the normal population less likely to respond by secreting IgM,[476] effectively "raising the threshold" for their response, possibly by promoting interaction of the BCR with SHP-1.[477] Analysis of the effect of CD5 expression on tolerance in the HEL-Ig/sHEL system also suggested a modulating role, with absence of CD5 leading to a loss of B-cell tolerance and production of serum anti-HEL autoantibody.[478]

B-CELL DEVELOPMENT IN HUMANS: SIMILARITIES AND DIFFERENCES FROM MOUSE

Fetal Development

As described for mouse, human B-cell development can be broadly divided into that taking place prior to birth and that operating after birth and throughout life. The liver and spleen are major sits of fetal B lymphopoiesis in humans and, as in mouse, the bone marrow is the predominant site in adults, with production continuing over most of an individual's lifespan, with some decrease in the aged. The fetal omentum has also been described as a site for B-cell development similar to mouse.[9,479] There is some indication that VH gene usage is more restrictive in fetal development.[480] TdT, absent from mouse fetal development, is similarly missing very early in human fetal development but is expressed by the eighth or ninth week of gestation based on detection of N-region addition.[480] In general, there is more N-addition (and consequently longer CDR3 regions) in human antibodies compared to mouse at all stages of development, including the adult, although the significance of this is not known. Analysis of human T-cell development indicates that fetal and adult T cells arise from distinct developmental pathways, with fetal cells allowing more self-reactivity to persist[481] similar to mouse.[482] Finally, as recently described in mouse, B cells with the capacity to rapidly secrete IL-10 have also been identified in humans, and such cells appear to be increased in patients with autoimmune disease, such as rheumatoid arthritis.[483]

Bone Marrow Development

B-cell development can be detected in human bone marrow from 20 weeks of gestation and continues throughout life.[484,485] Phenotypic subdivisions similar to those in the mouse have been described for developing bone marrow cells[486] (Fig. 8.14). Thus, CD19 identifies B-lineage cells at all stages, with the earliest stages also expressing CD34, a molecule found on MLPs.[487] These CD19+CD34+ cells have been shown to express TdT, Rag-1 and Rag-2, the SLC orthologs,

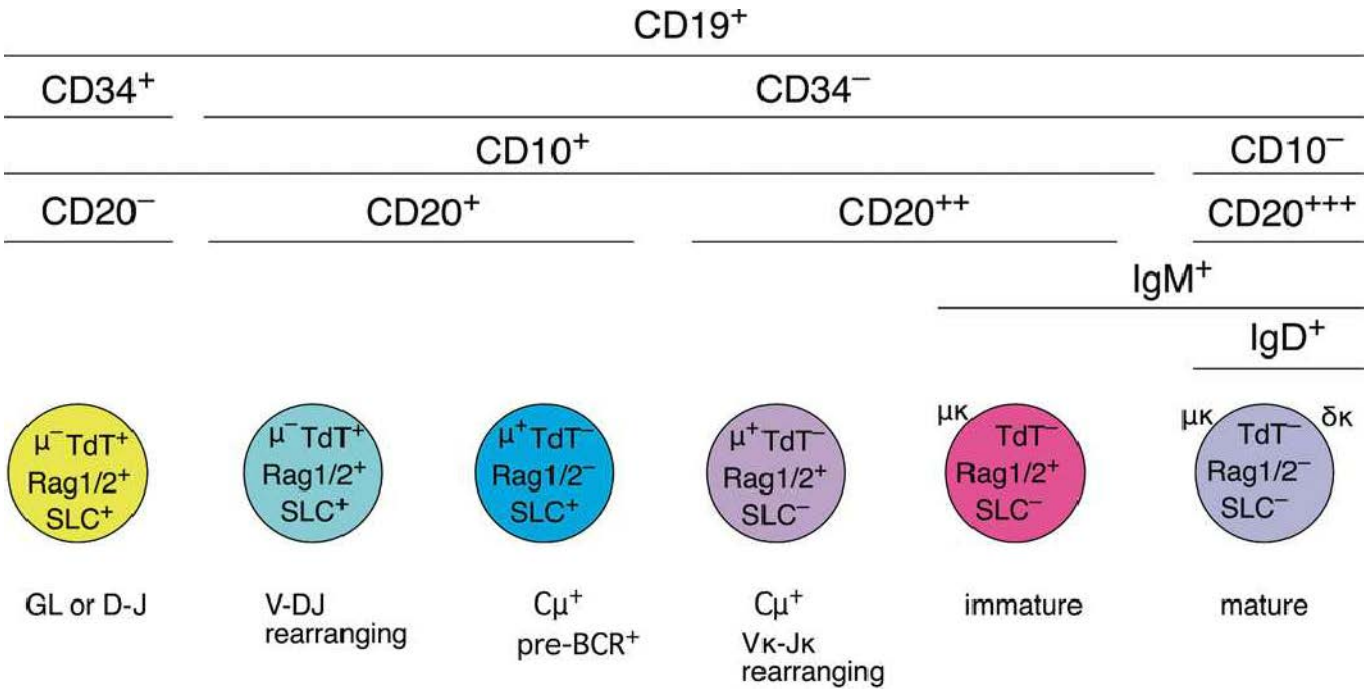


FIG. 8.14. Stages of Developing B-Lineage Cells in Human Bone Marrow can be Delineated, Based on Expression of Combinations of Cell Surface Proteins, Similar to Mouse.

and Ig-α/Ig-β.[486] They contain D-J, but not productive VDJ rearrangements. The next stage can be defined by loss of CD34, with a fraction that is still IgM– (pre-B cells) and another subset that is IgM+. The pre-B cells express heavy chain in their cytoplasm and have downregulated expression of TdT.[486] All of the IgM+ cells express a marker lost upon final maturation, CD10, so they are immature B cells. A recent study examined the B-lineage potential of cells expressing different levels of CD10 and found that increasing levels of this molecule were found on more differentiated B-lineage cells, suggesting its potential for identifying distinctive stages in B-cell development in humans.[488]

Human early B-lineage cells have proven much more difficult to grow in culture than mouse cells, although conditions have now been defined that allow their expansion in vitro. One of the most surprising differences between mouse and human B precursor growth has been much less dependence on IL-7, suggesting that a different cytokine may substitute in humans.[489–491] The finding that lack of the cytokine common gamma chain (γc) in mouse blocks B-cell development but spares T-cell development, whereas the reverse is the case in humans,[154,492] demonstrates clear differences in cytokine dependence between mouse and human lymphopoiesis.

Human B precursors also express orthologs of λ5 and VpreB, although their organization and number differ from the mouse.[493–495] Their expression occurs at a corresponding stage and analysis of the human EBF gene has shown that its targets are similar to those of mouse EBF, including Ig-α, Ig-β, and 14.1 (the human ortholog of λ5).[496] Importantly, mutations in components of the pre-BCR lead to immunodeficiency diseases in humans, pointing out the similar and crucial role that pre-BCR signaling plays in human B-cell development.[497–499]

Germinal Center Differentiation

As in mouse, GCs are anatomic structures in secondary lymphoid organs where T-dependent immune responses occur, selecting high-affinity clones during the process of somatic hypermutation and eventually generating memory B cells. The GC consists of B cells at a variety of differentiation states, from early activated B cells through the plasmablast stage. Therefore, study of this process has benefited significantly from resolution of intermediate stages using multiparameter flow cytometry and carefully chosen cell surface markers. In one study, this allowed definition of two IgD+ stages, two GC stages, and a memory stage in tonsillar B cells.[500] This work focused on the levels of somatic mutations accumulating as cells passed through this pathway, finding that it was first detected in the initial GC stage (centroblast). Subsequent work has shown that IgD+ somatically mutated cells can be detected in peripheral blood, based on expression of CD27, suggesting that they are IgM+IgD+ memory B cells.[500]

Recent work has found an interesting link between somatic hypermutation and certain Bcls. Bcl-6 is a transcriptional repressor that is linked to both GC B cells and to B lymphomas that likely derive from GC B cells.[501,502] Bcl-6 expression is high in GC B cells and is required for formation of the GC.[503] Strikingly, its 5′ regulatory region is mutated as a consequence of hypermutation in GC B cells, the first example of hypermutation targeted outside the Ig regions,[501,502,504] and links this process to deregulated cell growth and lymphomagenesis. These findings have focused interest on Bcl-6, and recent work has shown that it binds to the promoter of the antiapoptotic proto-oncogene Bcl-2 by interacting with the transcriptional activator Miz1, also suppressing Miz1 activation of Bcl-2.[505] In lymphomas, Bcl-6–mediated suppression of Bcl-2 is lost, either by chromosomal translocations to Bcl-2, mutation of Bcl-2, or Miz1 deregulation.

Abnormalities of Development

A key discovery in the past decade has been the finding that a well-known immunodeficiency, xid, characterized by inability to respond to bacterial infections and a severe deficit in peripheral B cells,[506] is due to mutations in Btk.[507] Shortly after this finding, the mouse ortholog of Btk was shown to be the cause of murine xid, an extensively studied mutation originally identified in CBA/N mice.[508] Btk deficiency in humans is more severe than xid, with little B-cell development past the early B-cell stage, in contrast with an absence of normal peripheral B-cell development in mouse and inability to respond to certain types of T-independent antigens.[509] This difference is not simply due to specific difference in the mutations, as a complete null mutation in mouse is indistinguishable from xid.[418] Thus, human B-cell development, likely at the pre-BCR signaling stage, is much more dependent on Btk.

While xid is by far the most common B-cell deficiency, amounting to more than 80% of those identified, non–X-linked mutations have also been observed. These correspond to mutations in the pre-BCR signaling complex, and, in most cases, similar effects had been observed in the mouse. For example, deletions or mutations in the μ constant regions accounted for another 5%.[499] Examples have been found of mutations in the 14.1 gene, the human ortholog of the mouse surrogate light chain λ5 protein,[497] and also in Ig-α.[498] In both of these cases, early B-lineage cells, identified as CD19+CD34+ were present in normal numbers in bone marrow, but CD19+CD34– Cμ+ cells (pre-B cells) and all later stages were absent. Finally, a patient with a mutation in BLNK, an adaptor protein that links pre-BCR signaling from syk to the rest of the signaling cascade, showed a similar phenotype.[510]

Very few peripheral B cells are detected in any of these disorders, which suggests that pre-BCR signaling is more critical in human than in the mouse, where mutations in λ5 and BLNK allow the generation of variable numbers of peripheral B cells. The reason for this difference is not yet understood. Interestingly, common variable immunodeficiency has been shown to result from mutations in the common gamma chain[154] or in the JAK3 gene[511] consistent with IL-7 playing a much less critical role in human pre–B-cell growth than in mouse, as had already been determined from culture studies.[489,490] B-cell development is relatively

intact, whereas T cells are ablated. The reverse is true for mouse.[512,513]

Analysis of B cells with mutations in genes required for normal TLR signaling has revealed the importance of such signaling for maintenance of B-cell tolerance.[514] This study examined the binding specificity of BCRs isolated from B cells of patients with defects in IL-1 receptor-associated kinase 4, myeloid differentiation factor 88, and UNC-93B. As all TLRs but TLR3 depend on IL-1 receptor-associated kinase 4 and because TLR3 depends on UNC-93B, this work assessed the contribution of all TLR signaling. Autoreactive BCRs were found at high frequency in the newly formed and mature B-cell pools in all patients, establishing a critical role for TLR signaling in establishing and maintaining B-cell tolerance. Interestingly, none of these patients had serum autoantibody or autoimmune disease, suggesting that some further signal, possibly TLR mediated, is needed for disease progression.

Insights into B-Cell Malignancies

One of the principle reasons for studying the regulation of B-cell development is that defects in this process may result in lymphoma. Human B-lineage neoplasias can be viewed as transformed counterparts of normal B-cell developmental stages, such as pro-B, pre-B, immature B, mature B, or plasma cell, based on rearrangement status and surface phenotype.[493] In some cases, transformed cells may even retain growth characteristics of the normal counterpart. This type of classification scheme, correlating features of lymphomas and leukemias with their normal counterparts, has been useful in diagnosis and prognosis of B-lineage neoplasias. For example, B-precursor ALL, the most common type of ALL in children (ALL accounts for 25% of childhood cancer), is a clonal expansion of a cell defined by surface phenotype and Ig rearrangement status as representing the pro-B stage.[515–517] Recent analyses of B-precursor ALL suggests that they can be subdivided into a pro-B type, predominant in pediatric patients, and a pre-B type, more frequent in adults.[518] A subtype of adult pre-B ALL is Philadelphia chromosome-positive, being defined by the oncogenic BCR–ABL1 kinase and showing deletion of the Ikaros gene in most cases. Pre-BCR signaling mediated cell cycle arrest has been shown to depend on normal Ikaros function,[519] providing an explanation for the high incidence of Ikaros deletion in this disease.

Whereas traditional chemotherapeutic agents typically target proliferating cells without specificity for malignant cells, the identification of molecular abnormalities that result in the abnormal survival and proliferation of leukemic cells may lead to the design of novel therapies that specifically target these cells. For example, the successful treatment of mice carrying human B-precursor leukemias with antisense strategies and tyrosine kinase inhibitors holds promise for efficacy in humans.[520,521] The identification of novel translocations in B-precursor ALL also may identify mechanism(s) responsible for this disease at the molecular level.[522–525]

Another example is diffuse large B-cell lymphoma (DLBCL) that appears to arise from GC B cells[526] that are undergoing somatic hypermutation of their IgV genes mediated through activity of AID.[366,367] As mentioned previously, aberrant somatic hypermutation in DLBCL has been shown to induce mutations in the Bcl-6 gene.[501,502,504] As mentioned previously, Bcl-6 is often found to be overexpressed in DLBCL by either hypermutation of its promoter or chromosomal translocation, but investigation of DLBCLs lacking these genetic alterations has revealed that Bcl-6 is targeted for ubiquitylation and proteasomal degradation by a SKP1-CUL1-F-box protein ubiquitin ligase complex that contains the orphan F-box protein FBXO11.[527] FBXO11 was found to be mutated or deleted in DLBCL cell lines and also in primary leukemias, thus revealing another mechanism for Bcl-6 dysregulation, leading to lymphoma.

AID in DLBCL likely is responsible for widespread genome instability,[528] and using a mouse model system, AID was clearly identified as responsible for c-myc to Ig V-J(H) translocations.[529] Examination of known non-Ig targets of AID also identified a high rate of mutation of PAX5 in both classic and nodular lymphocyte-predominant Hodgkin lymphoma.[530] Microarray gene profiling showed that the NF-κB signaling pathway is constitutively activated in DLBCL and as normal NF-κB activation by BCR cross-linking requires CARD11, a cytoplasmic scaffolding protein, this gene was examined for mutations. Ten percent of DLBCL tested had missense mutations, providing a rationale for development of new therapeutic agents targeting this pathway.[531] Other work has identified a negative regulator of NF-κB signaling, A20, as a frequent target in B-cell lymphomas, by using genome-wide analysis of genetic lesions.[532] Thus, early "whole genome" analyses of leukemias and lymphomas by microarray gene profiling has been followed up by high-resolution determination of gene copy and targeted sequence analysis. Now, the availability of whole exome or even whole genome high-throughput sequence determination will undoubtedly identify as yet unsuspected key driver mutations in these diseases, potentially leading to new and more personalized therapies.

Another therapeutic approach makes use of knowledge of the surface phenotype of the transformed cell, as in the recent development of anti-CD20 therapy for several types of B lymphomas.[533] CD20 is a 33 kDa phosphoprotein expressed highly on the surface of mature B cells.[534–536] Antibodies to CD20, originally called B1, were initially characterized by their stimulatory and inhibitory effects on human B cells, indicating the importance of CD20 in regulating B-cell proliferation and differentiation.[537–539] Therapeutic anti-CD20, called rituximab, is a chimeric antibody derived by fusing the V regions of a mouse antibody to the human IgG1 constant segment.[540] The precise mechanism of depletion is not yet fully understood but likely include contributions from antibody-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity, complement-mediated cytotoxicity, and direct antibody binding effects, including sensitization to apoptosis.[533]

As most of the cells in many indolent B-cell neoplasms, such as non-Hodgkin lymphoma or chronic lymphocytic leukemia (CLL), are not predominantly in cycle, the problem may be more a failure to die appropriately, rather than a failure to regulate proliferation. A greater understanding of the

growth and sensitivity to apoptosis of different types of lymphomas and leukemias may allow more specific targeting using this approach.[541] For example, while CLL cells express relatively low levels of CD20, likely requiring higher doses of anti-CD20 for a response, a combination with another antibody recognizing a molecule that is highly expressed on CLL, CD52 has shown promise.[542] Alternatively, treatment with anti-CD20 may render the cells generally more sensitive to apoptosis so that use in combination with more conventional chemotherapeutic agents will be efficacious. These combination therapies are already in clinical trials. Finally, new insights into distinctive growth properties of transformed B cells, such as the role of Wnt signaling in CLL,[543] may suggest new approaches to treat such disorders.

ALTERNATIVE STRATEGIES FOR B-CELL DEVELOPMENT

The broad outlines and even many of the details of B-cell development are quite similar in mouse and man, but there are striking differences in other species. There is a notable common alternative approach that involves generation of Ig+ cells during fetal/neonatal development with a relatively restricted repertoire that is then diversified by novel approaches (gene conversion or somatic hypermutation) in specialized lymphoid organs that are associated with the gut. In these species, most development from Ig− precursors appears to cease by birth, and the B-cell population is maintained by self-renewal of mature B cells. Here, we consider the development and diversification of B cells in chicken and rabbit.

Chicken

B-cell development in the avian occurs in the bursa of Fabricius.[544,545] In fact, the term "B" cell refers to "bursa derived," reflecting the historic origins of research in lymphocyte development. That is, removal of the bursa just after hatching eliminated the ability to mount an antibody response, demonstrating the importance of this organ in generating cells capable of antibody formation.[544] In contrast with the bone marrow, the bursa, being associated with the gut,[546] facilitates exposure of developing cells to external antigens and bacterial flora. B-cell development in chicken is usually divided into three stages: prebursal, bursal, and postbursal.[547]

During prebursal development, at day E5, early precursors can be identified in the para-aortic foci,[548] likely corresponding with similar precursor stages localized in this anatomic site in mammals.[2] B-lineage commitment, as indicated by D-J rearrangements, is detected in the YS at day E5/6, and V gene rearrangement is found 3 days later.[549] Unlike mammalian ordered development, light chain rearrangement is detected at about the same time as heavy chain, and light chain can precede heavy chain.[550] This means that there is no pre-B stage, per se, and also probably no requirement for SLC. Rearranging B-lineage precursors migrate into the bursal mesenchyme at about day E12, and, thereafter, these cells begin to proliferate in bursal epithelial buds. This proliferation selectively expands cells that have BCRs. These receptors have limited diversity, as the heavy chain is formed by rearrangement of a single VH, several Ds, and a single JH pairing with a light chain generated by rearrangement of a single VL with a single JL.[551,552] As in mouse fetal development, there is no TdT-mediated N-region addition at the junctions.[552]

This "prebursal" receptor is diversified by gene conversion by a set of V pseudogenes during this proliferative phase. At about hatching, these cells become exposed to the contents of the bursal lumen that is connected to the gut lumen via the bursal duct similar to the appendix. Thus, these proliferating B cells are exposed to the contents of the digestive tract, and there is also reverse peristalsis at the end of the gut that transports external antigens into the bursal duct.[546] At about this time, the level of apoptosis increases dramatically, and it is possible that only 5% of the cells generated in the bursa eventually emerge.[553] This death may be due to generation of nonfunctional receptors during the course of gene conversion or it may reflect antigenic selection.

At hatching, emigration of B cells from the bursa increases, but most of these cells constitute a population with a relatively short half-life measured in days.[554] The long-lived pool colonizes the peripheral lymphoid organs over several weeks as the bursa atrophies. By 3 weeks after hatching, bursectomy no longer results in agammaglobulinemia, indicating that the postbursal phase has become established.

Rabbit

B-cell development in rabbit is similar to chicken, in that B cells initially are produced with a limited BCR diversity[555–557] during fetal life, with little new production after birth.[558,559] This repertoire is then expanded through gene conversion[555,560] and somatic hypermutation[560,561] in a specialized gut-associated organ, the appendix.[562] However, unlike chicken, this diversification process is dependent on antigen availability.[563–565]

Pre-B cells can be found in rabbit before birth in the liver, bone marrow, and omentum,[558,566–568] but B lymphopoiesis decreases at birth and is negligible in adult animals.[559] Ig rearrangement during fetal and neonatal times is dominated by usage of the most D-proximal V_H gene paired with multiple V_L genes in the light chain.[556,557,569–572] In contrast with chicken and mouse, there is significant N-addition.[557,571] From 4 to 8 weeks after birth, there is a striking increase in the diversity of this primary repertoire that occurs during proliferation of B cells in the gut-associated lymphoid tissues (GALTs).[559,560] V genes are diversified by both gene conversion[555] and also by somatic hypermutation.[560,561] Importantly, surgical removal of GALT organs, appendix, sacculus rotundus, and the Peyer patch, from neonatal rabbits led to unresponsiveness to many antigens, suggesting that this diversification was crucial for normal immune function.[573] This finding has been confirmed by sequence analysis, demonstrating that removal of the GALT blocks diversification.[562]

Considering the relatively late diversification in rabbit compared to the chicken, these gut areas will provide a milieu

of microbial antigens, and this appears to be a critical aspect of the diversification process.[574] For example, surgery to prevent access of intestinal flora to the appendix blocked diversification in this organ[575,576] that could be restored by reversing the ligation.[575] Furthermore, analysis of rabbits reared in germfree conditions revealed abnormal cellular development in the GALT[564] and a lack of responsiveness to certain antigens.[563] The dependence of V gene diversification on antigen has been directly demonstrated in animals where the sacculus rotundus and Peyer patches were removed at birth and the appendix ligated. Testing the peripheral blood B cell V gene repertoire showed an absence of diversification in contrast to controls.[565] Although the mechanism for this stimulation remains to be established, possibilities include B-cell activation by a BCR superantigen[577–579] or through a B-cell TLR.[580]

Two B-Cell Developmental Pathways

The similarities of chicken and rabbit B-cell development with that in other species such as sheep, swine, and cow suggests that the initial production of a limited BCR repertoire during fetal/neonatal life, diversification at a later time, and maintenance of the B-cell pool in adult life by self-renewal (rather than de novo generation from unrearranged precursors) is a major pattern in the design of the immune system (Fig. 8.15). This pattern contrasts with that described for mouse and man, where ordered heavy and light chain rearrangement, pre-BCR selection, and replacement of senescent B cells by newly generated B cells are major aspects of development. This raises the interesting question of whether there is an analogous B-cell development pathway in humans or mouse, perhaps as a vestige.

The idea of two pathways in bone marrow development was suggested previously based on the observation that heavy and light chain ordering is not absolute: Light chain rearrangements are detected in mice incapable of making heavy chain rearrangements and can be detected in cells early in B-cell development.[581] In one pathway, heavy chains rearrange first and the pre-BCR is assembled and signals downregulation of Rag-1/2 expression (ending heavy chain rearrangement), clonal expansion, and accessibility of the kappa locus. Cessation of proliferation is coincident

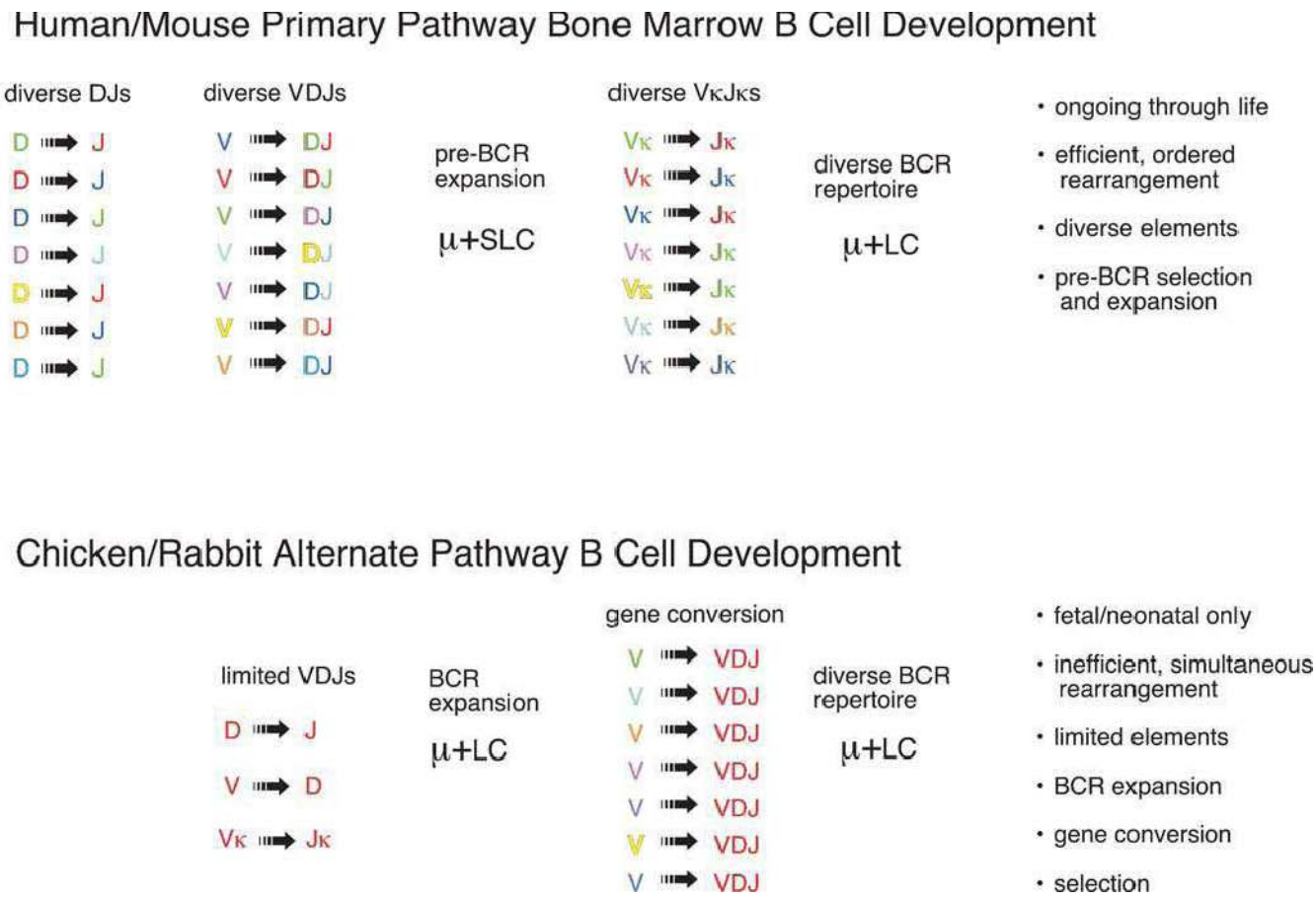


FIG. 8.15. Alternative Strategies of Repertoire Diversification and B-Cell Development. In both mouse and human bone marrow B-cell development, ordered rearrangement predominates, with a pre–B-cell receptor (BCR_ selection phase dividing heavy and light chain rearrangement. The eventual outcome is a population of newly formed B cells with a diverse set of BCRs produced throughout life. In chicken and rabbit, immunoglobulin rearrangement appears less efficient (usually the other allele is germline) and much less diverse, with a single BCR for chicken. However, these cells proliferate and undergo gene conversion during fetal/neonatal life, followed by selection, eventually generating a set of B cells with a more diverse repertoire that persist for the life of the animal.

with reinduction of Rag-1/2 and light chain rearrangement. Expression of a complete BCR signals a final termination of Rag expression. In this model, pre-BCR and BCR mediates allelic exclusion by a feedback mechanism regulating Rag expression. Thus, most B cells have D-J or even VDJ rearrangements on both alleles. In the alternative pathway, heavy and light chains rearrange stochastically, and allelic exclusion is mediated by relative inaccessibility of the loci (and thereby low frequency of rearrangement). If this is the major pathway in chicken and rabbit, it is consistent with the observation that most chicken B cells have only one allele rearranged.[552,582,583] Furthermore, the careful ordering of TdT expression, being downregulated at the light chain rearranging stage, is apparently not the case for rabbit, where a large percentage of light chains have N-regions.[572]

Most rabbit B cells express CD5.[584] In mouse, much of the CD5+ B-cell population is generated during fetal/neonatal development and persists in the adult through self-renewal.[392] Furthermore, these cells express a relatively restricted BCR repertoire that is dependent on antigen selection.[23] Finally, the pre-BCR selection phase of several heavy chains abundant in CD5 B cells appears to follow different rules than classical pre–BCR-mediated expansion.[263] In fact, the process of development in mouse fetal liver may predominantly follow this alternative pathway.[406] Thus, in mouse, fetal development, culminating in production of B1 B cells, may represent a type of alternative or "primitive" B-cell development, as has been proposed previously.[585] It is less clear whether a similar distinction exists in human B-cell development, as data are lacking. Nevertheless, one can envision a primordial pathway, randomly combining heavy and light chains and simply selecting cells that express BCRs with weak reactivity to self or environmental antigens as an alternative to ordered rearrangement, pre-BCR selection, and BCR selection—an elaborate process fine tuned to generate more variation.

CONCLUSION

There has been considerable progress over the past decade in understanding the mechanisms that regulate B-cell development, with important insights coming from application of the novel genetic approaches of transgenesis and gene targeting. In a sense, this has allowed progression from research with simple model systems using cell lines to analysis of "normal B cells" in whole animals. The use of such mutant mouse "reagents," together with much higher resolution of normal development made possible by multiparameter flow cytometry, has proven a powerful combination for unraveling much of the complexity of this process. It is daunting to attempt to predict where new advances in the field will come, but undoubtedly, the completion of the genome sequence for both mouse and human will provide impetus to large-scale gene profiles of B-cell development, as have already begun.[586,587] A complementary approach to gene targeting based on such profiling will involve characterizing new mutant mice generated by chemical mutagenesis.[588,589] Considering the recent unanticipated discoveries of AID in isotype switching and BAFF in peripheral B-cell development, it seems likely that the coming decade will provide many surprises. A goal will be to eventually understand how the interplay of the innate and adaptive immune systems generates protective responses while avoiding autoimmune pathologies at the organism level.

REFERENCES

1. Moore MA, Metcalf D. Ontogeny of the haemopoietic system: yolk sac origin of in vivo and in vitro colony forming cells in the developing mouse embryo. *Br J Haematol*. 1970;18:279–296. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/5491581
2. Godin IE, Garcia-Porrero JA, Coutinho A, et al. Para-aortic splanchnopleura from early mouse embryos contains B1a cell progenitors. *Nature*. 1993;364:67–70. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8316299
3. Medvinsky AL, Samoylina NL, Muller AM, et al. An early pre-liver intraembryonic source of CFU-S in the developing mouse. *Nature*. 1993;364:64–67. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8316298
4. Muller AM, Medvinsky A, Strouboulis J, et al. Development of hematopoietic stem cell activity in the mouse embryo. *Immunity*. 1994;1:291–301. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7889417
5. Medvinsky A, Dzierzak E. Definitive hematopoiesis is autonomously initiated by the AGM region. *Cell*. 1996;86:897–906. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8808625
6. Yoder MC, Hiatt K, Dutt P, et al. Characterization of definitive lymphohematopoietic stem cells in the day 9 murine yolk sac. *Immunity*. 1997;7:335–344. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9324354
7. Owen JJ, Cooper MD, Raff MC. In vitro generation of B lymphocytes in mouse foetal liver, a mammalian "bursa equivalent." *Nature*. 1974;249:361–363. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4546257
8. Strasser A, Rolink A, Melchers F. One synchronous wave of B cell development in mouse fetal liver changes at day 16 of gestation from dependence to independence of a stromal cell environment. *J Exp Med*. 1989;170:1973–1986. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2584932
9. Solvason N, Lehuen A, Kearney JF. An embryonic source of Ly1 but not conventional B cells. *Int Immunol*. 1991;3:543–550. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1679664
10. Gregoire KE, Goldschneider I, Barton RW, et al. Ontogeny of terminal deoxynucleotidyl transferase-positive cells in lymphohemopoietic tissues of rat and mouse. *J Immunol*. 1979;123:1347–1352. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/313953
11. Li YS, Hayakawa K, Hardy RR. The regulated expression of B lineage associated genes during B cell differentiation in bone marrow and fetal liver. *J Exp Med*. 1993;178:951–960. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8350062
12. Landau NR, Schatz DG, Rosa M, et al. Increased frequency of N-region insertion in a murine pre-B-cell line infected with a terminal deoxynucleotidyl transferase retroviral expression vector. *Mol Cell Biol*. 1987;7:3237–3243. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3118194
13. Desiderio SV, Yancopoulos GD, Paskind M, et al. Insertion of N regions into heavy-chain genes is correlated with expression of terminal deoxytransferase in B cells. *Nature*. 1984;311:752–755. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6092963
14. Gilfillan S, Dierich A, Lemeur M, et al. Mice lacking TdT: mature animals with an immature lymphocyte repertoire. *Science*. 1993;261:1175–1178. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8356452
15. Feeney AJ. Lack of N regions in fetal and neonatal mouse immunoglobulin V-D-J junctional sequences. *J Exp Med*. 1990;172:1377–1390. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1700054
16. Feeney AJ. Comparison of junctional diversity in the neonatal and adult immunoglobulin repertoires. *Int Rev Immunol*. 1992;8:113–122. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1602207
17. Chang Y, Paige CJ, Wu GE. Enumeration and characterization of DJH structures in mouse fetal liver. *EMBO J*. 1992;11:1891–1899. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1582417
18. Oltz EM, Yancopoulos GD, Morrow MA, et al. A novel regulatory myosin light chain gene distinguishes pre-B cell subsets and is IL-7 inducible. *EMBO J*. 1992;11:2759–2767. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1628631
19. Hayakawa K, Tarlinton D, Hardy RR. Absence of MHC class II expression distinguishes fetal from adult B lymphopoiesis in mice. *J Immunol*. 1994;152:4801–4807. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8176204
20. Lam KP, Stall AM. Major histocompatibility complex class II expression distinguishes two distinct B cell developmental pathways during ontogeny. *J Exp Med*. 1994;180:507–516. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7913950
21. Miller JP, Izon D, DeMuth W, et al. The earliest step in B lineage differentiation from common lymphoid progenitors is critically dependent upon interleukin 7. *J Exp Med*. 2002;196:705–711. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12208884
22. Carvalho TL, Mota-Santos T, Cumano A, et al. Arrested B lymphopoiesis and persistence of activated B cells in adult interleukin 7(-/)- mice. *J Exp Med*. 2001;194:1141–1150. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11602642
23. Hardy RR, Hayakawa K. B cell development pathways. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 2001;19:595–621. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11244048
24. Stephan RP, Lill-Elghanian DA, Witte PL. Development of B cells in aged mice: decline in the ability of pro-B cells to respond to IL-7 but not to other growth factors. *J Immunol*. 1997;158:1598–1609. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9029095
25. Stephan RP, Sanders VM, Witte PL. Stage-specific alterations in murine B lymphopoiesis with age. *Int Immunol*. 1996;8:509–518. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8671637
26. Ogawa M, Matsuzaki Y, Nishikawa S, et al. Expression and function of c-kit in hemopoietic progenitor cells. *J Exp Med*. 1991;174:63–71. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1711568
27. Ikuta K, Weissman IL. Evidence that hematopoietic stem cells express mouse c-kit but do not depend on steel factor for their generation. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1992;89:1502–1506. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1371359
28. Spangrude GJ, Heimfeld S, Weissman IL. Purification and characterization of mouse hematopoietic stem cells. *Science*. 1988;241:58–62. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2898810
29. Morrison SJ, Weissman IL. The long-term repopulating subset of hematopoietic stem cells is deterministic and isolatable by phenotype. *Immunity*. 1994;1:661–673. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7541305
30. Morrison SJ, Hemmati HD, Wandycz AM, et al. The purification and characterization of fetal liver hematopoietic stem cells. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1995;92:10302–10306. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7479772
31. Kondo M, Weissman IL, Akashi K. Identification of clonogenic common lymphoid progenitors in mouse bone marrow. *Cell*. 1997;91:661–672. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9393859
32. Akashi K, Traver D, Miyamoto T, et al. A clonogenic common myeloid progenitor that gives rise to all myeloid lineages. *Nature*. 2000;404:193–197. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10724173
33. Traver D, Miyamoto T, Christensen J, et al. Fetal liver myelopoiesis occurs through distinct, prospectively isolatable progenitor subsets. *Blood*. 2001;98:627–635. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11468160
34. Kondo M, Scherer DC, Miyamoto T, et al. Cell-fate conversion of lymphoid-committed progenitors by instructive actions of cytokines. *Nature*. 2000;407:383–386. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11014194
35. Miyamoto T, Iwasaki H, Reizis B, et al. Myeloid or lymphoid promiscuity as a critical step in hematopoietic lineage commitment. *Dev Cell*. 2002;3:137–147. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12110174
36. Rolink A, Kudo A, Karasuyama H, et al. Long-term proliferating early pre B cell lines and clones with the potential to develop to surface Ig-positive, mitogen reactive B cells in vitro and in vivo. *EMBO J*. 1991;10:327–336. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1991449
37. Krop I, de Fougerolles AR, Hardy RR, et al. Self-renewal of B-1 lymphocytes is dependent on CD19. *Eur J Immunol*. 1996;26:238–242. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8566073
38. Li YS, Wasserman R, Hayakawa K, et al. Identification of the earliest B lineage stage in mouse bone marrow. *Immunity*. 1996;5:527–535. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8986713
39. Nutt SL, Heavey B, Rolink AG, et al. Commitment to the B-lymphoid lineage depends on the transcription factor Pax5. *Nature*. 1999;401:556–562. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10524622

40. Rolink A, ten Boekel E, Melchers F, et al. A subpopulation of B220+ cells in murine bone marrow does not express CD19 and contains natural killer cell progenitors. *J Exp Med*. 1996;183:187–194. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8551222
41. Tudor KS, Payne KJ, Yamashita Y, et al. Functional assessment of precursors from murine bone marrow suggests a sequence of early B lineage differentiation events. *Immunity*. 2000;12:335–345. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10755620
42. Nakano H, Yanagita M, Gunn MD. CD11c(+)B220(+)Gr-1(+) cells in mouse lymph nodes and spleen display characteristics of plasmacytoid dendritic cells. *J Exp Med*. 2001;194:1171–1178. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11602645
43. Nikolic T, Dingjan GM, Leenen PJ, et al. A subfraction of B220(+)cells in murine bone marrow and spleen does not belong to the B cell lineage but has dendritic cell characteristics. *Eur J Immunol*. 2002;32:686–692. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11857343
44. Rumfelt LL, Zhou Y, Rowley BM, et al. Lineage specification and plasticity in CD19- early B cell precursors. *J Exp Med*. 2006;203:675–687. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16505143
45. Allman D, Aster JC, Pear WS. Notch signaling in hematopoiesis and early lymphocyte development. *Immunol Rev*. 2002;187:75–86. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12366684
46. Borghesi L, Hsu LY, Miller JP, et al. B lineage-specific regulation of V(D)J recombinase activity is established in common lymphoid progenitors. *J Exp Med*. 2004;199:491–502. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14769852
47. Allman D, Sambandam A, Kim S, et al. Thymopoiesis independent of common lymphoid progenitors. *Nat Immunol*. 2003;4:168–174. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12514733
48. Wada H, Masuda K, Satoh R, et al. Adult T-cell progenitors retain myeloid potential. *Nature*. 2008;452:768–772. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18401412
49. Welner RS, Pelayo R, Nagai Y, et al. Lymphoid precursors are directed to produce dendritic cells as a result of TLR9 ligation during herpes infection. *Blood*. 2008;112:3753–3761. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18552210
50. Cumano A, Paige CJ, Iscove NN, et al. Bipotential precursors of B cells and macrophages in murine fetal liver. *Nature*. 1992;356:612–615. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1348572
51. Montecino-Rodriguez E, Dorshkind K. Identification of B/macrophage progenitors in adult bone marrow. *Semin Immunol*. 2002;14:371–376. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12457609
52. Nutt SL, Urbanek P, Rolink A, et al. Essential functions of Pax5 (BSAP) in pro-B cell development: difference between fetal and adult B lymphopoiesis and reduced V-to-DJ recombination at the IgH locus. *Genes Dev*. 1997;11:476–491. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9042861
53. Igarashi H, Gregory SC, Yokota T, et al. Transcription from the RAG1 locus marks the earliest lymphocyte progenitors in bone marrow. *Immunity*. 2002;17:117–130. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12196284
54. Tsai FY, Keller G, Kuo FC, et al. An early haematopoietic defect in mice lacking the transcription factor GATA-2. *Nature*. 1994;371:221–226. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8078582
55. Okuda T, van Deursen J, Hiebert SW, et al. AML1, the target of multiple chromosomal translocations in human leukemia, is essential for normal fetal liver hematopoiesis. *Cell*. 1996;84:321–330. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8565077
56. Niki M, Okada H, Takano H, et al. Hematopoiesis in the fetal liver is impaired by targeted mutagenesis of a gene encoding a non-DNA binding subunit of the transcription factor, polyomavirus enhancer binding protein 2/core binding factor. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1997;94:5697–5702. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9159135
57. Wang Q, Stacy T, Binder M, et al. Disruption of the Cbfa2 gene causes necrosis and hemorrhaging in the central nervous system and blocks definitive hematopoiesis. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1996;93:3444–3449. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8622955
58. Cai Z, de Bruijn M, Ma X, et al. Haploinsufficiency of AML1 affects the temporal and spatial generation of hematopoietic stem cells in the mouse embryo. *Immunity*. 2000;13:423–431. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11070161
59. Kuo YH, Gerstein RM, Castilla LH. Cbfbeta-SMMHC impairs differentiation of common lymphoid progenitors and reveals an essential role for RUNX in early B-cell development. *Blood*. 2008;111:1543–1551. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17940206
60. Georgopoulos K, Bigby M, Wang JH, et al. The Ikaros gene is required for the development of all lymphoid lineages. *Cell*. 1994;79:143–156. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7923373
61. Molnar A, Georgopoulos K. The Ikaros gene encodes a family of functionally diverse zinc finger DNA-binding proteins. *Mol Cell Biol*. 1994;14:8292–8303. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7969165
62. Wang JH, Nichogiannopoulou A, Wu L, et al. Selective defects in the development of the fetal and adult lymphoid system in mice with an Ikaros null mutation. *Immunity* 5:537–549. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8986714
63. Wang JH, Avitahl N, Cariappa A, et al. Aiolos regulates B cell activation and maturation to effector state. *Immunity*. 1998;9:543–553. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9806640
64. Reynaud D, Demarco IA, Reddy KL, et al. Regulation of B cell fate commitment and immunoglobulin heavy-chain gene rearrangements by Ikaros. *Nat Immunol*. 2008;9:927–936. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18568028
65. Scott EW, Simon MC, Anastasi J, et al. Requirement of transcription factor PU.1 in the development of multiple hematopoietic lineages. *Science*. 1994;265:1573–1577. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8079170
66. McKercher SR, Torbett BE, Anderson KL, et al. Targeted disruption of the PU.1 gene results in multiple hematopoietic abnormalities. *EMBO J*. 1996;15:5647–5658. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8896458
67. DeKoter RP, Singh H. Regulation of B lymphocyte and macrophage development by graded expression of PU.1. *Science*. 2000;288:1439–1441. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10827957
68. Colucci F, Samson SI, DeKoter RP, et al. Differential requirement for the transcription factor PU.1 in the generation of natural killer cells versus B and T cells. *Blood*. 2001;97:2625–2632. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11313251
69. DeKoter RP, Lee HJ, Singh H. PU.1 regulates expression of the interleukin-7 receptor in lymphoid progenitors. *Immunity*. 2002;16:297–309. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11869689
70. Ye M, Ermakova O, Graf T. PU.1 is not strictly required for B cell development and its absence induces a B-2 to B-1 cell switch. *J Exp Med*. 2005;202:1411–1422. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16301746
71. Polli M, Dakic A, Light A, et al. The development of functional B lymphocytes in conditional PU.1 knock-out mice. *Blood*. 2005;106:2083–2090. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15933053
72. Bain G, Maandag EC, Izon DJ, et al. E2A proteins are required for proper B cell development and initiation of immunoglobulin gene rearrangements. *Cell*. 1994;79:885–892. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8001125
73. Bain G, Robanus Maandag EC, te Riele HP, et al. Both E12 and E47 allow commitment to the B cell lineage. *Immunity*. 1997;6:145–154. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9047236
74. Romanow WJ, Langerak AW, Goebel P, et al. E2A and EBF act in synergy with the V(D)J recombinase to generate a diverse immunoglobulin repertoire in nonlymphoid cells. *Mol Cell*. 2000;5:343–353. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10882075
75. Espinoza CR, Feeney AJ. The extent of histone acetylation correlates with the differential rearrangement frequency of individual VH genes in pro-B cells. *J Immunol*. 2005;175:6668–6675. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16272322
76. Pui JC, Allman D, Xu L, et al. Notch1 expression in early lymphopoiesis influences B versus T lineage determination. *Immunity*. 1999;11:299–308. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10514008
77. Ikawa T, Fujimoto S, Kawamoto H, et al. Commitment to natural killer cells requires the helix-loop-helix inhibitor Id2. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2001;98:5164–5169. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11296270
78. Spits H, Couwenberg F, Bakker AQ, et al. Id2 and Id3 inhibit development of CD34(+) stem cells into predendritic cell (pre-DC)2 but not

into pre-DC1. Evidence for a lymphoid origin of pre-DC2. *J Exp Med*. 2000;192:1775–1784.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11120774
79. Yokota Y, Mansouri A, Mori S, et al. Development of peripheral lymphoid organs and natural killer cells depends on the helix-loop-helix inhibitor Id2. *Nature*. 1999;397:702–706.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10067894
80. Koch U, Lacombe TA, Holland D, et al. Subversion of the T/B lineage decision in the thymus by lunatic fringe-mediated inhibition of Notch-1. *Immunity*. 2001;15:225–236.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11520458
81. Izon DJ, Aster JC, He Y, et al. Deltex1 redirects lymphoid progenitors to the B cell lineage by antagonizing Notch1. *Immunity*. 2002;16:231–243.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11869684
82. Maillard I, Weng AP, Carpenter AC, et al. Mastermind critically regulates Notch-mediated lymphoid cell fate decisions. *Blood*. 2004;104:1696–1702.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15187027
83. Lin H, Grosschedl R. Failure of B-cell differentiation in mice lacking the transcription factor EBF. *Nature*. 1995;376:263–267.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7542362
84. Jiang XX, Nguyen Q, Chou Y, et al. Control of B cell development by the histone H2A deubiquitinase MYSM1. *Immunity*. 2011;35:883–896.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22169041
85. O'Riordan M, Grosschedl R. Coordinate regulation of B cell differentiation by the transcription factors EBF and E2A. *Immunity*. 1999;11:21–31.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10435576
86. Sigvardsson M, O'Riordan M, Grosschedl R. EBF and E47 collaborate to induce expression of the endogenous immunoglobulin surrogate light chain genes. *Immunity*. 1997;7:25–36.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9252117
87. Kee BL, Murre C. Induction of early B cell factor (EBF) and multiple B lineage genes by the basic helix-loop-helix transcription factor E12. *J Exp Med*. 1998;188:699–713.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9705952
88. Roessler S, Gyory I, Imhof S, et al. Distinct promoters mediate the regulation of Ebf1 gene expression by interleukin-7 and Pax5. *Mol Cell Biol*. 2007;27:579–594.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17101802
89. Medina KL, Pongubala JM, Reddy KL, et al. Assembling a gene regulatory network for specification of the B cell fate. *Dev Cell*. 2004;7:607–617.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15469848
90. Singh H, Medina KL, Pongubala JM. Contingent gene regulatory networks and B cell fate specification. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2005;102:4949–4953.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15788530
91. Morrison AM, Nutt SL, Thevenin C, et al. Loss- and gain-of-function mutations reveal an important role of BSAP (Pax-5) at the start and end of B cell differentiation. *Semin Immunol*. 1998;10:133–142.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9618759
92. Fuxa M, Skok J, Souabni A, et al. Pax5 induces V-to-DJ rearrangements and locus contraction of the immunoglobulin heavy-chain gene. *Genes Dev*. 2004;18:411–422.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15004008
93. Urbanek P, Wang ZQ, Fetka I, et al. Complete block of early B cell differentiation and altered patterning of the posterior midbrain in mice lacking Pax5/BSAP. *Cell*. 1994;79:901–912.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8001127
94. Rolink AG, Nutt SL, Melchers F, et al. Long-term in vivo reconstitution of T-cell development by Pax5- deficient B-cell progenitors. *Nature*. 1999;401:603–606.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10524629
95. Tagoh H, Ingram R, Wilson N, et al. The mechanism of repression of the myeloid-specific c-fms gene by Pax5 during B lineage restriction. *EMBO J*. 2006;25:1070–1080.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16482219
96. Souabni A, Cobaleda C, Schebesta M, et al. Pax5 promotes B lymphopoiesis and blocks T cell development by repressing Notch1. *Immunity*. 2002;17:781–793.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12479824
97. Wilson A, MacDonald HR, Radtke F. Notch 1-deficient common lymphoid precursors adopt a B cell fate in the thymus. *J Exp Med*. 2001;194:1003–1012.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11581321
98. Cobaleda C, Schebesta A, Delogu A, et al. Pax5: the guardian of B cell identity and function. *Nat Immunol*. 2007;8:463–470.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17440452
99. Dengler HS, Baracho GV, Omori SA, et al. Distinct functions for the transcription factor Foxo1 at various stages of B cell differentiation. *Nat Immunol*. 2008;9:1388–1398.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18978794
100. Amin RH, Schlissel MS. Foxo1 directly regulates the transcription of recombination-activating genes during B cell development. *Nat Immunol*. 2008;9:613–622.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18469817
101. Xue HH, Bollenbacher-Reilley J, Wu Z, et al. The transcription factor GABP is a critical regulator of B lymphocyte development. *Immunity*. 2007;26:421–431.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17442597
102. Alkhatib A, Werner M, Hug E, et al. FoxO1 induces Ikaros splicing to promote immunoglobulin gene recombination. *J Exp Med*. 2012;209:395–406.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22291095
103. Eastman Q, Grosschedl R. Regulation of LEF-1/TCF transcription factors by Wnt and other signals. *Curr Opin Cell Biol*. 1999;11:233–240.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10209158
104. Reya T, O'Riordan M, Okamura R, et al. Wnt signaling regulates B lymphocyte proliferation through a LEF-1 dependent mechanism. *Immunity*. 2000;13:15–24.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10933391
105. Lee G, Namen AE, Gillis S, et al. Normal B cell precursors responsive to recombinant murine IL-7 and inhibition of IL-7 activity by transforming growth factor-beta. *J Immunol*. 1989;142:3875–3883.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2785567
106. Kee BL, Rivera RR, Murre C. Id3 inhibits B lymphocyte progenitor growth and survival in response to TGF-beta. *Nat Immunol*. 2001;2:242–247.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11224524
107. Schilham MW, Oosterwegel MA, Moerer P, et al. Defects in cardiac outflow tract formation and pro-B-lymphocyte expansion in mice lacking Sox-4. *Nature*. 1996;380:711–714.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8614465
108. Lenardo MJ, Baltimore D. NF-kappa B: a pleiotropic mediator of inducible and tissue-specific gene control. *Cell*. 1989;58:227–229.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2665943
109. Horwitz BH, Scott ML, Cherry SR, et al. Failure of lymphopoiesis after adoptive transfer of NF-kappaB-deficient fetal liver cells. *Immunity*. 1997;6:765–772.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9208848
110. Franzoso G, Carlson L, Xing L, et al. Requirement for NF-kappaB in osteoclast and B-cell development. *Genes Dev*. 1997;11:3482–3496.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9407039
111. Corcoran LM, Karvelas M, Nossal GJ, et al. Oct-2, although not required for early B-cell development, is critical for later B-cell maturation and for postnatal survival. *Genes Dev*. 1993;7:570–582.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8096198
112. Corcoran LM, Karvelas M. Oct-2 is required early in T cell-independent B cell activation for G1 progression and for proliferation. *Immunity*. 1994;1:635–645.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7600291
113. Humbert PO, Corcoran LM. oct-2 gene disruption eliminates the peritoneal B-1 lymphocyte lineage and attenuates B-2 cell maturation and function. *J Immunol*. 1997;159:5273–5284.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9548466
114. Kim U, Qin XF, Gong S, et al. The B-cell-specific transcription coactivator OCA-B/OBF-1/Bob-1 is essential for normal production of immunoglobulin isotypes. *Nature*. 1996;383:542–547.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8849728
115. Schubart DB, Rolink A, Kosco-Vilbois MH, et al. B-cell-specific coactivator OBF-1/OCA-B/Bob1 required for immune response and germinal centre formation. *Nature*. 1996;383:538–542.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8849727
116. Nielsen PJ, Georgiev O, Lorenz B, et al. B lymphocytes are impaired in mice lacking the transcriptional co-activator Bob1/OCA-B/OBF1. *Eur J Immunol*. 1996;26:3214–3218.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8977324

117. Wolf I, Pevzner V, Kaiser E, et al. Downstream activation of a TATA-less promoter by Oct-2, Bob1, and NF-kappaB directs expression of the homing receptor BLR1 to mature B cells. *J Biol Chem*. 1998;273:28831–28836.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9786883
118. Schubart DB, Rolink A, Schubart K, et al. Cutting edge: lack of peripheral B cells and severe agammaglobulinemia in mice simultaneously lacking Bruton's tyrosine kinase and the B cell-specific transcriptional coactivator OBF-1. *J Immunol*. 2000;164:18–22.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10604987
119. Koralov SB, Muljo SA, Galler GR, et al. Dicer ablation affects antibody diversity and cell survival in the B lymphocyte lineage. *Cell*. 2008;132:860–874.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18329371
120. Xiao C, Calado DP, Galler G, et al. MiR-150 controls B cell differentiation by targeting the transcription factor c-Myb. *Cell*. 2007;131:146–159.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17923094
121. Xiao C, Srinivasan L, Calado DP, et al. Lymphoproliferative disease and autoimmunity in mice with increased miR-17-92 expression in lymphocytes. *Nat Immunol*. 2008;9:405–414.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18327259
122. Medina PP, Nolde M, Slack FJ. OncomiR addiction in an in vivo model of microRNA-21-induced pre-B-cell lymphoma. *Nature*. 2010;467:86–90.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20693987
123. Viswanathan SR, Daley GQ. Lin28: a microRNA regulator with a macro role. *Cell*. 2010;140:445–449.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20178735
124. Yuan J, Nguyen CK, Liu X, et al. Lin28b reprograms adult bone marrow hematopoietic progenitors to mediate fetal-like lymphopoiesis. *Science*. 2012;335:1195–1200.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22345399
125. Hayashi S, Kunisada T, Ogawa M, et al. Stepwise progression of B lineage differentiation supported by interleukin 7 and other stromal cell molecules. *J Exp Med*. 1990;171:1683–1695.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2332734
126. Miyake K, Medina K, Ishihara K, et al. A VCAM-like adhesion molecule on murine bone marrow stromal cells mediates binding of lymphocyte precursors in culture. *J Cell Biol*. 1991;114:557–565.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1713592
127. Miyake K, Weissman IL, Greenberger JS, et al. Evidence for a role of the integrin VLA-4 in lympho-hemopoiesis. *J Exp Med*. 1991;173:599–607.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1997648
128. Era T, Ogawa M, Nishikawa S, et al. Differentiation of growth signal requirement of B lymphocyte precursor is directed by expression of immunoglobulin. *EMBO J*. 1991;10:337–342.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1899373
129. Hardy RR, Carmack CE, Shinton SA, et al. Resolution and characterization of pro-B and pre-pro-B cell stages in normal mouse bone marrow. *J Exp Med*. 1991;173:1213–1225.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1827140
130. Reichman-Fried M, Bosma MJ, Hardy RR. B-lineage cells in mu-transgenic scid mice proliferate in response to IL-7 but fail to show evidence of immunoglobulin light chain gene rearrangement. *Int Immunol*. 1993;5:303–310.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8466867
131. Rolink A, Grawunder U, Haasner D, et al. Immature surface Ig+ B cells can continue to rearrange kappa and lambda L chain gene loci. *J Exp Med*. 1993;178:1263–1270.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8376934
132. Owen JJ, Raff MC, Cooper MD. Studies on the generation of B lymphocytes in the mouse embryo. *Eur J Immunol*. 1976;5:468–473.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/824138
133. Owen JJ, Wright DE, Habu S, et al. Studies on the generation of B lymphocytes in fetal liver and bone marrow. *J Immunol*. 1977;118:2067–2072.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/301154
134. Johnson P, Greenbaum L, Bottomly K, et al. Identification of the alternatively spliced exons of murine CD45 (T200) required for reactivity with B220 and other T200-restricted antibodies. *J Exp Med*. 1989;169:1179–1184.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2466938
135. Johnson P, Maiti A, Ng DHW. CD45: a family of leukocyte-specific cell surface glycoproteins. In: Herzenberg LA, Weir DW, Herzenberg LA, Blackwell C, eds. *Weirs Handbook of Experimental Immunology*. Cambridge, MA: Blackwell Science; 1997:62.61–62.16.
136. Wang J, Walker H, Lin Q, et al. The mouse BP-1 gene: structure, chromosomal localization, and regulation of expression by type I interferons and interleukin-7. *Genomics*. 1996;33:167–176.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8660964
137. ten Boekel E, Melchers F, Rolink A. The status of Ig loci rearrangements in single cells from different stages of B cell development. *Int Immunol*. 1995;7:1013–1019.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7577795
138. Whitlock CA, Witte ON. Long-term culture of B lymphocytes and their precursors from murine bone marrow. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1982;79:3608–3612.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6980414
139. Whitlock CA, Robertson D, Witte ON. Murine B cell lymphopoiesis in long term culture. *J Immunol Methods*. 1984;67:353–369.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6608556
140. Whitlock C, Denis K, Robertson D, et al. In vitro analysis of murine B-cell development. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 1985;3:213–235.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3904770
141. Grawunder U, Melchers F, Rolink A. Interferon-gamma arrests proliferation and causes apoptosis in stromal cell/interleukin-7-dependent normal murine pre-B cell lines and clones in vitro, but does not induce differentiation to surface immunoglobulin-positive B cells. *Eur J Immunol*. 1993;23:544–551.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8436185
142. Reininger L, Radaszkiewicz T, Kosco M, et al. Development of autoimmune disease in SCID mice populated with long-term "in vitro" proliferating (NZB × NZW)F1 pre-B cells. *J Exp Med*. 1992;176:1343–1353.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1402680
143. Pietrangeli CE, Hayashi S, Kincade PW. Stromal cell lines which support lymphocyte growth: characterization, sensitivity to radiation and responsiveness to growth factors. *Eur J Immunol*. 1988;18:863–872.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3260182
144. Miyake K, Underhill CB, Lesley J, et al. Hyaluronate can function as a cell adhesion molecule and CD44 participates in hyaluronate recognition. *J Exp Med*. 1990;172:69–75.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2193100
145. Lesley J, He Q, Miyake K, et al. Requirements for hyaluronic acid binding by CD44: a role for the cytoplasmic domain and activation by antibody. *J Exp Med*. 1992;175:257–266.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1730918
146. Miyake K, Medina KL, Hayashi S, et al. Monoclonal antibodies to Pgp-1/CD44 block lymphohemopoiesis in long-term bone marrow cultures. *J Exp Med*. 1990;171:477–488.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2406365
147. Dorshkind K. IL-1 inhibits B cell differentiation in long term bone marrow cultures. *J Immunol*. 1988;141:531–538.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3260256
148. Namen AE, Lupton S, Hjerrild K, et al. Stimulation of B-cell progenitors by cloned murine interleukin-7. *Nature*. 1988;333:571–573.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3259677
149. Namen AE, Schmierer AE, March CJ, et al. B cell precursor growth-promoting activity. Purification and characterization of a growth factor active on lymphocyte precursors. *J Exp Med*. 1988;167:988–1002.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3258354
150. Morrissey PJ, Conlon P, Charrier K, et al. Administration of IL-7 to normal mice stimulates B-lymphopoiesis and peripheral lymphadenopathy. *J Immunol*. 1991;147:561–568.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1712810
151. Hirayama F, Shih JP, Awgulewitsch A, et al. Clonal proliferation of murine lymphohemopoietic progenitors in culture. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1992;89:5907–5911.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1631072
152. Valenzona HO, Pointer R, Ceredig R, et al. Prelymphomatous B cell hyperplasia in the bone marrow of interleukin-7 transgenic mice: precursor B cell dynamics, microenvironmental organization and osteolysis. *Exp Hematol*. 1996;24:1521–1529.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8950236
153. Park LS, Friend DJ, Schmierer AE, et al. Murine interleukin 7 (IL-7) receptor. Characterization on an IL-7-dependent cell line. *J Exp Med*. 1990;171:1073–1089.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2324686

154. Noguchi M, Yi H, Rosenblatt HM, et al. Interleukin-2 receptor gamma chain mutation results in X-linked severe combined immunodeficiency in humans. *Cell*. 1993;73:147–157. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8462096
155. Peschon JJ, Morrissey PJ, Grabstein KH, et al. Early lymphocyte expansion is severely impaired in interleukin 7 receptor-deficient mice. *J Exp Med*. 1994;180:1955–1960. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7964471
156. Ray RJ, Furlonger C, Williams DE, et al. Characterization of thymic stromal-derived lymphopoietin (TSLP) in murine B cell development in vitro. *Eur J Immunol*. 1996;26:10–16. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8566050
157. Levin SD, Koelling RM, Friend SL, et al. Thymic stromal lymphopoietin: a cytokine that promotes the development of IgM+ B cells in vitro and signals via a novel mechanism. *J Immunol*. 1999;162:677–683. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9916685
158. Park LS, Martin U, Garka K, et al. Cloning of the murine thymic stromal lymphopoietin (TSLP) receptor: formation of a functional heteromeric complex requires interleukin 7 receptor. *J Exp Med*. 2000;192:659–670. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10974032
159. Blagoev B, Nielsen MM, Angrist M, et al. Cloning of rat thymic stromal lymphopoietin receptor (TSLPR) and characterization of genomic structure of murine Tslpr gene. *Gene*. 2002;284:161–168. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11891057
160. Isaksen DE, Baumann H, Trobridge PA, et al. Requirement for stat5 in thymic stromal lymphopoietin-mediated signal transduction. *J Immunol*. 1999;163:5971–5977. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10570284
161. Vosshenrich CA, Cumano A, Muller W, et al. Thymic stromal-derived lymphopoietin distinguishes fetal from adult B cell development. *Nat Immunol*. 2003;4:773–779. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12872121
162. Montecino-Rodriguez E, Leathers H, Dorshkind K. Identification of a B-1 B cell-specified progenitor. *Nat Immunol*. 2006;7:293–301. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16429139
163. Astrakhan A, Omori M, Nguyen T, et al. Local increase in thymic stromal lymphopoietin induces systemic alterations in B cell development. *Nat Immunol*. 2007;8:522–531. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17401368
164. Migliaccio G, Migliaccio AR, Valinsky J, et al. Stem cell factor induces proliferation and differentiation of highly enriched murine hematopoietic cells. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1991;88:7420–7424. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1714603
165. Metcalf D. Lineage commitment of hemopoietic progenitor cells in developing blast cell colonies: influence of colony-stimulating factors. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1991;88:11310–11314. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1722326
166. Tsuji K, Lyman SD, Sudo T, et al. Enhancement of murine hematopoiesis by synergistic interactions between steel factor (ligand for c-kit), interleukin-11, and other early acting factors in culture. *Blood*. 1992;79:2855–2860. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1375116
167. Yasunaga M, Wang F, Kunisada T, et al. Cell cycle control of c-kit+IL-7R+ B precursor cells by two distinct signals derived from IL-7 receptor and c-kit in a fully defined medium. *J Exp Med*. 1995;182:315–323. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7543134
168. Mackarehtschian K, Hardin JD, Moore KA, et al. Targeted disruption of the flk2/flt3 gene leads to deficiencies in primitive hematopoietic progenitors. *Immunity*. 1995;3:147–161. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7621074
169. Jacobsen SE, Veiby OP, Myklebust J, et al. Ability of flt3 ligand to stimulate the in vitro growth of primitive murine hematopoietic progenitors is potently and directly inhibited by transforming growth factor-beta and tumor necrosis factor-alpha. *Blood*. 1996;87:5016–5026. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8652814
170. Ray RJ, Paige CJ, Furlonger C, et al. Flt3 ligand supports the differentiation of early B cell progenitors in the presence of interleukin-11 and interleukin-7. *Eur J Immunol*. 1996;26:1504–1510. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8766553
171. Veiby OP, Jacobsen FW, Cui L, et al. The flt3 ligand promotes the survival of primitive hemopoietic progenitor cells with myeloid as well as B lymphoid potential. Suppression of apoptosis and counteraction by TNF-alpha and TGF-beta. *J Immunol*. 1996;157:2953–2960. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8816402
172. Veiby OP, Lyman SD, Jacobsen SE. Combined signaling through interleukin-7 receptors and flt3 but not c-kit potently and selectively promotes B-cell commitment and differentiation from uncommitted murine bone marrow progenitor cells. *Blood*. 1996;88:1256–1265. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8695843
173. Billips LG, Petitte D, Dorshkind K, et al. Differential roles of stromal cells, interleukin-7, and kit-ligand in the regulation of B lymphopoiesis. *Blood*. 1992;79:1185–1192. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1371414
174. Collins LS, Dorshkind K. A stromal cell line from myeloid long-term bone marrow cultures can support myelopoiesis and B lymphopoiesis. *J Immunol*. 1987;138:1082–1087. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3492541
175. Cumano A, Dorshkind K, Gillis S, et al. The influence of S17 stromal cells and interleukin 7 on B cell development. *Eur J Immunol*. 1990;20:2183–2189. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2242755
176. Winkler TH, Melchers F, Rolink AG. Interleukin-3 and interleukin-7 are alternative growth factors for the same B-cell precursors in the mouse. *Blood*. 1995;85:2045–2051. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7536488
177. Kee BL, Cumano A, Iscove NN, et al. Stromal cell independent growth of bipotent B cell—macrophage precursors from murine fetal liver. *Int Immunol*. 1994;6:401–407. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7514441
178. Rolink AG, Winkler T, Melchers F, et al. Precursor B cell receptor-dependent B cell proliferation and differentiation does not require the bone marrow or fetal liver environment. *J Exp Med*. 2000;191:23–32. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10620602
179. Faust EA, Saffran DC, Toksoz D, et al. Distinctive growth requirements and gene expression patterns distinguish progenitor B cells from pre-B cells. *J Exp Med*. 1993;177:915–923. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7681470
180. Spanopoulou E, Roman CA, Corcoran LM, et al. Functional immunoglobulin transgenes guide ordered B-cell differentiation in Rag-1-deficient mice. *Genes Dev*. 1994;8:1030–1042. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7926785
181. Gordon MY, Riley GP, Watt SM, et al. Compartmentalization of a haematopoietic growth factor (GM-CSF) by glycosaminoglycans in the bone marrow microenvironment. *Nature*. 1987;326:403–405. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3494201
182. Borghesi LA, Yamashita Y, Kincade PW. Heparan sulfate proteo-glycans mediate interleukin-7-dependent B lymphopoiesis. *Blood*. 1999;93:140–148. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9864155
183. Kincade PW, Medina KL, Payne KJ, et al. Early B-lymphocyte precursors and their regulation by sex steroids. *Immunol Rev*. 2000;175:128–137. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10933598
184. Igarashi H, Kouro T, Yokota T, et al. Age and stage dependency of estrogen receptor expression by lymphocyte precursors. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2001;98:15131–15136. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11752459
185. Landreth KS, Narayanan R, Dorshkind K. Insulin-like growth factor-I regulates pro-B cell differentiation. *Blood*. 1992;80:1207–1212. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1515639
186. Jardieu P, Clark R, Mortensen D, et al. In vivo administration of insulin-like growth factor-I stimulates primary B lymphopoiesis and enhances lymphocyte recovery after bone marrow transplantation. *J Immunol*. 1994;152:4320–4327. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8157955
187. Zhang Y, Lu L, Furlonger C, et al. Hemokinin is a hematopoietic-specific tachykinin that regulates B lymphopoiesis. *Nat Immunol*. 2000;1:392–397. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11062498
188. Montecino-Rodriguez E, Clark RG, Powell-Braxton L, et al. Primary B cell development is impaired in mice with defects of the pituitary/thyroid axis. *J Immunol*. 1997;159:2712–2719. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9300691
189. Montecino-Rodriguez E, Clark R, Johnson A, et al. Defective B cell development in Snell dwarf (dw/dw) mice can be corrected by thyroxine treatment. *J Immunol*. 1996;157:3334–3340. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8871629

190. Nagai Y, Garrett KP, Ohta S, et al. Toll-like receptors on hematopoietic progenitor cells stimulate innate immune system replenishment. *Immunity*. 2006;24:801–812. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16782035
191. Allman D, Karnell FG, Punt JA, et al. Separation of Notch1 promoted lineage commitment and expansion/transformation in developing T cells. *J Exp Med*. 2001;194:99–106. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11435476
192. Izon DJ, Punt JA, Pear WS. Deciphering the role of Notch signaling in lymphopoiesis. *Curr Opin Immunol*. 2002;14:192–199. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11869892
193. Jacobsen K, Osmond DG. Microenvironmental organization and stromal cell associations of B lymphocyte precursor cells in mouse bone marrow. *Eur J Immunol*. 1990;20:2395–2404. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2253679
194. Bleul CC, Fuhlbrigge RC, Casasnovas JM, et al. A highly efficacious lymphocyte chemoattractant, stromal cell-derived factor 1 (SDF-1). *J Exp Med*. 1996;184:1101–1109. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9064327
195. Nagasawa T, Kikutani H, Kishimoto T. Molecular cloning and structure of a pre-B-cell growth-stimulating factor. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1994;91:2305–2309. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8134392
196. D'Apuzzo M, Rolink A, Loetscher M, et al. The chemokine SDF-1, stromal cell-derived factor 1, attracts early stage B cell precursors via the chemokine receptor CXCR4. *Eur J Immunol*. 1997;27:1788–1793. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9247593
197. Nagasawa T, Tachibana K, Kishimoto T. A novel CXC chemokine PBSF/SDF-1 and its receptor CXCR4: their functions in development, hematopoiesis and HIV infection. *Semin Immunol*. 1998;10:179–185. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9653044
198. Nagasawa T, Hirota S, Tachibana K, et al. Defects of B-cell lymphopoiesis and bone-marrow myelopoiesis in mice lacking the CXC chemokine PBSF/SDF-1. *Nature*. 1996;382:635–638. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8757135
199. Ma Q, Jones D, Borghesani PR, et al. Impaired B-lymphopoiesis, myelopoiesis, and derailed cerebellar neuron migration in CXCR4- and SDF-1-deficient mice. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1998;95:9448–9453. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9689100
200. Zou YR, Kottmann AH, Kuroda M, et al. Function of the chemokine receptor CXCR4 in haematopoiesis and in cerebellar development. *Nature*. 1998;393:595–599. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9634238
201. Ma Q, Jones D, Springer TA. The chemokine receptor CXCR4 is required for the retention of B lineage and granulocytic precursors within the bone marrow microenvironment. *Immunity*. 1999;10:463–471. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10229189
202. Lennon GG, Perry RP. The temporal order of appearance of transcripts from unrearranged and rearranged Ig genes in murine fetal liver. *J Immunol*. 1990;144:1983–1987. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2106560
203. Lennon GG, Perry RP. C mu-containing transcripts initiate heterogeneously within the IgH enhancer region and contain a novel 5′ -nontranslatable exon. *Nature*. 1985;318:475–478. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3934561
204. Nelson KJ, Haimovich J, Perry RP. Characterization of productive and sterile transcripts from the immunoglobulin heavy-chain locus: processing of micron and muS mRNA. *Mol Cell Biol*. 1983;3:1317–1332. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6412070
205. Oettinger MA, Schatz DG, Gorka C, et al. RAG-1 and RAG-2, adjacent genes that synergistically activate V(D)J recombination. *Science*. 1990;248:1517–1523. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2360047
206. Schatz DG, Oettinger MA, Baltimore D. The V(D)J recombination activating gene, RAG-1. *Cell*. 1989;59:1035–1048. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2598259
207. McBlane JF, van Gent DC, Ramsden DA, et al. Cleavage at a V(D)J recombination signal requires only RAG1 and RAG2 proteins and occurs in two steps. *Cell*. 1995;83:387–395. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8521468
208. Ji Y, Resch W, Corbett E, et al. The in vivo pattern of binding of RAG1 and RAG2 to antigen receptor loci. *Cell*. 2010;141:419–431. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20398922
209. Ehlich A, Martin V, Muller W, et al. Analysis of the B-cell progenitor compartment at the level of single cells. *Curr Biol*. 1994;4:573–583. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7953531
210. Allman D, Li J, Hardy RR. Commitment to the B lymphoid lineage occurs before DH-JH recombination. *J Exp Med*. 1999;189:735–740. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9989989
211. Kitamura D, Rajewsky K. Targeted disruption of mu chain membrane exon causes loss of heavy-chain allelic exclusion. *Nature*. 1992;356:154–156. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1545868
212. Bosma GC, Custer RP, Bosma MJ. A severe combined immunodeficiency mutation in the mouse. *Nature*. 1983;301:527–530. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6823332
213. Hardy RR, Kemp JD, Hayakawa K. Analysis of lymphoid population in scid mice; detection of a potential B lymphocyte progenitor population present at normal levels in scid mice by three color flow cytometry with B220 and S7. *Curr Top Microbiol Immunol*. 1989;152:19–25. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2478339
214. Blunt T, Finnie NJ, Taccioli GE, et al. Defective DNA-dependent protein kinase activity is linked to V(D)J recombination and DNA repair defects associated with the murine scid mutation. *Cell*. 1995;80:813–823. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7889575
215. Peterson SR, Kurimasa A, Oshimura M, et al. Loss of the catalytic subunit of the DNA-dependent protein kinase in DNA double-strand-break-repair mutant mammalian cells. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1995;92:3171–3174. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7724535
216. Reichman-Fried M, Hardy RR, Bosma MJ. Development of B-lineage cells in the bone marrow of scid/scid mice following the introduction of functionally rearranged immunoglobulin transgenes. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1990;87:2730–2734. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2320586
217. Kitamura D, Roes J, Kuhn R, et al. A B cell-deficient mouse by targeted disruption of the membrane exon of the immunoglobulin mu chain gene. *Nature*. 1991;350:423–426. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1901381
218. Loffert D, Schaal S, Ehlich A, et al. Early B-cell development in the mouse: insights from mutations introduced by gene targeting. *Immunol Rev*. 1994;137:135–153. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8034332
219. Karasuyama H, Kudo A, Melchers F. The proteins encoded by the VpreB and lambda 5 pre-B cell-specific genes can associate with each other and with mu heavy chain. *J Exp Med*. 1990;172:969–972. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2117638
220. Sakaguchi N, Melchers F. Lambda 5, a new light-chain-related locus selectively expressed in pre-B lymphocytes. *Nature*. 1986;324:579–582. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3024017
221. Kudo A, Melchers F. A second gene, VpreB in the lambda 5 locus of the mouse, which appears to be selectively expressed in pre-B lymphocytes. *EMBO J*. 1987;6:2267–2272. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3117530
222. Kitamura D, Kudo A, Schaal S, et al. A critical role of lambda 5 protein in B cell development. *Cell*. 1992;69:823–831. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1591779
223. Papavasiliou F, Jankovic M, Nussenzweig MC. Surrogate or conventional light chains are required for membrane immunoglobulin mu to activate the precursor B cell transition. *J Exp Med*. 1996;184:2025–2030. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8920890
224. Sakaguchi N, Kashiwamura S, Kimoto M, et al. B lymphocyte lineage-restricted expression of mb-1, a gene with CD3- like structural properties. *EMBO J*. 1988;7:3457–3464. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2463161
225. Hermanson GG, Eisenberg D, Kincade PW, et al. B29: a member of the immunoglobulin gene superfamily exclusively expressed on beta-lineage cells. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1988;85:6890–6894. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3137575
226. Hombach J, Lottspeich F, Reth M. Identification of the genes encoding the IgM-alpha and Ig-beta components of the IgM antigen receptor complex by amino-terminal sequencing. *Eur J Immunol*. 1990;20:2795–2799. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2269334

227. Campbell KS, Hager EJ, Friedrich RJ, et al. IgM antigen receptor complex contains phosphoprotein products of B29 and mb-1 genes. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1991;88:3982–3986. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2023945
228. Gong S, Nussenzweig MC. Regulation of an early developmental checkpoint in the B cell pathway by Ig beta. *Science*. 1996;272:411–414. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8602530
229. Cheng AM, Rowley B, Pao W, et al. Syk tyrosine kinase required for mouse viability and B-cell development. *Nature*. 1995;378:303–306. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7477353
230. Turner M, Mee PJ, Costello PS, et al. Perinatal lethality and blocked B-cell development in mice lacking the tyrosine kinase Syk. *Nature*. 1995;378:298–302. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7477352
231. Wienands J, Larbolette O, Reth M. Evidence for a preformed transducer complex organized by the B cell antigen receptor. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1996;93:7865–7870. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8755568
232. Lam KP, Kuhn R, Rajewsky K. In vivo ablation of surface immunoglobulin on mature B cells by inducible gene targeting results in rapid cell death. *Cell*. 1997;90:1073–1083. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9323135
233. Kraus M, Alimzhanov MB, Rajewsky N, et al. Survival of resting mature B lymphocytes depends on BCR signaling via the Igalpha/beta heterodimer. *Cell*. 2004;117:787–800. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15186779
234. Hirabayashi Y, Lecerf JM, Dong Z, et al. Kinetic analysis of the interactions of recombinant human VpreB and Ig V domains. *J Immunol*. 1995;155:1218–1228. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7636190
235. Wasserman R, Li YS, Hardy RR. Down-regulation of terminal deoxynucleotidyl transferase by Ig heavy chain in B lineage cells. *J Immunol*. 1997;158:1133–1138. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9013952
236. Ubelhart R, Bach MP, Eschbach C, et al. N-linked glycosylation selectively regulates autonomous precursor BCR function. *Nat Immunol*. 2010;11:759–765. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20622883
237. Aifantis I, Borowski C, Gounari F, et al. A critical role for the cytoplasmic tail of pTalpha in T lymphocyte development. *Nat Immunol*. 2002;3:483–488. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11927911
238. Yamasaki S, Ishikawa E, Sakuma M, et al. Mechanistic basis of pre-T cell receptor-mediated autonomous signaling critical for thymocyte development. *Nat Immunol*. 2006;7:67–75. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16327787
239. Pang SS, Berry R, Chen Z, et al. The structural basis for autonomous dimerization of the pre-T-cell antigen receptor. *Nature*. 2010;467:844–848. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20944746
240. Middendorp S, Dingjan GM, Hendriks RW. Impaired precursor B cell differentiation in Bruton's tyrosine kinase-deficient mice. *J Immunol*. 2002;168:2695–2703. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11884435
241. Hayashi S, Witte PL, Kincade PW. The xid mutation affects hemopoiesis in long term cultures of murine bone marrow. *J Immunol*. 1989;142:444–451. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2911009
242. Narendran A, Ramsden D, Cumano A, et al. B cell developmental defects in X-linked immunodeficiency. *Int Immunol*. 1993;5:139–144. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7680896
243. Nisitani S, Satterthwaite AB, Akashi K, et al. Posttranscriptional regulation of Bruton's tyrosine kinase expression in antigen receptor-stimulated splenic B cells. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2000;97:2737–2742. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10688914
244. Kurosaki T, Johnson SA, Pao L, et al. Role of the Syk autophosphorylation site and SH2 domains in B cell antigen receptor signaling. *J Exp Med*. 1995;182:1815–1823. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7500027
245. Kurosaki T. Genetic analysis of B cell antigen receptor signaling. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 1999;17:555–592. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10358768
246. Xu S, Tan JE, Wong EP, et al. B cell development and activation defects resulting in xid-like immunodeficiency in BLNK/SLP-65-deficient mice. *Int Immunol*. 2000;12:397–404. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10700474
247. Xu S, Wong SC, Lam KP. Cutting edge: B cell linker protein is dispensable for the allelic exclusion of immunoglobulin heavy chain locus but required for the persistence of CD5+ B cells. *J Immunol*. 2000;165:4153–4157. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11035046
248. Kersseboom R, Middendorp S, Dingjan GM, et al. Bruton's tyrosine kinase cooperates with the B cell linker protein SLP-65 as a tumor suppressor in Pre-B cells. *J Exp Med*. 2003;198:91–98. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12835482
249. Ta VB, de Bruijn MJ, ter Brugge PJ, et al. Malignant transformation of Slp65-deficient pre-B cells involves disruption of the Arf-Mdm2-p53 tumor suppressor pathway. *Blood*. 2010;115:1385–1393. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20008789
250. Yasuda T, Sanjo H, Pages G, et al. Erk kinases link pre-B cell receptor signaling to transcriptional events required for early B cell expansion. *Immunity*. 2008;28:499–508. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18356083
251. Grawunder U, Leu TM, Schatz DG, et al. Down-regulation of RAG1 and RAG2 gene expression in preB cells after functional immunoglobulin heavy chain rearrangement. *Immunity*. 1995;3:601–608. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7584150
252. Schlissel MS, Baltimore D. Activation of immunoglobulin kappa gene rearrangement correlates with induction of germline kappa gene transcription. *Cell*. 1989;58:1001–1007. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2505932
253. Liang HE, Hsu LY, Cado D, et al. The "dispensable" portion of RAG2 is necessary for efficient V-to-DJ rearrangement during B and T cell development. *Immunity*. 2002;17:639–651. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12433370
254. Hsu LY, Lauring J, Liang HE, et al. A conserved transcriptional enhancer regulates RAG gene expression in developing B cells. *Immunity*. 2003;19:105–117. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12871643
255. Lin WC, Desiderio S. Regulation of V(D)J recombination activator protein RAG-2 by phosphorylation. *Science*. 1993;260:953–959. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8493533
256. Li Z, Dordai DI, Lee J, et al. A conserved degradation signal regulates RAG-2 accumulation during cell division and links V(D)J recombination to the cell cycle. *Immunity*. 1996;5:575–589. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8986717
257. Lee J, Desiderio S. Cyclin A/CDK2 regulates V(D)J recombination by coordinating RAG-2 accumulation and DNA repair. *Immunity*. 1999;11:771–781. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10626899
258. Karasuyama H, Nakamura T, Nagata K, et al. The roles of preB cell receptor in early B cell development and its signal transduction. *Immunol Cell Biol*. 1997;75:209–216. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9107579
259. Marshall AJ, Fleming HE, Wu GE, et al. Modulation of the IL-7 dose-response threshold during pro-B cell differentiation is dependent on pre-B cell receptor expression. *J Immunol*. 1998;161:6038–6045. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9834086
260. Keyna U, Beck-Engeser GB, Jongstra J, et al. Surrogate light chain-dependent selection of Ig heavy chain V regions. *J Immunol*. 1995;155:5536–5542. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7499835
261. Kline GH, Hartwell L, Beck-Engeser GB, et al. Pre-B cell receptor-mediated selection of pre-B cells synthesizing functional mu heavy chains. *J Immunol*. 1998;161:1608–1618. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9712022
262. ten Boekel E, Melchers F, Rolink AG. Changes in the V(H) gene repertoire of developing precursor B lymphocytes in mouse bone marrow mediated by the pre-B cell receptor. *Immunity*. 1997;7:357–368. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9324356
263. Wasserman R, Li YS, Shinton SA, et al. A novel mechanism for B cell repertoire maturation based on response by B cell precursors to pre-B receptor assembly. *J Exp Med*. 1998;187:259–264. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9432984

264. Wu GE, Paige CJ. VH gene family utilization in colonies derived from B and pre-B cells detected by the RNA colony blot assay. *EMBO J*. 1986;5:3475–3481.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2435544
265. Decker DJ, Boyle NE, Koziol JA, et al. The expression of the Ig H chain repertoire in developing bone marrow B lineage cells. *J Immunol*. 1991;146:350–361.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1898607
266. Ebert A, McManus S, Tagoh H, et al. The distal V(H) gene cluster of the Igh locus contains distinct regulatory elements with Pax5 transcription factor-dependent activity in pro-B cells. *Immunity*. 2011;34:175–187.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21349430
267. Guo C, Yoon HS, Franklin A, et al. CTCF-binding elements mediate control of V(D)J recombination. *Nature*. 2011;477:424–430.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21909113
268. Decker DJ, Boyle NE, Klinman NR. Predominance of nonproductive rearrangements of VH81X gene segments evidences a dependence of B cell clonal maturation on the structure of nascent H chains. *J Immunol*. 1991;147:1406–1411.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1907997
269. Decker DJ, Kline GH, Hayden TA, et al. Heavy chain V gene-specific elimination of B cells during the pre-B cell to B cell transition. *J Immunol*. 1995;154:4924–4935.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7730605
270. Keyna U, Applequist SE, Jongstra J, et al. Ig mu heavy chains with VH81X variable regions do not associate with lambda 5. *Ann N Y Acad Sci*. 1995;764:39–42.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7486553
271. Bankovich AJ, Raunser S, Juo ZS, et al. Structural insight into pre-B cell receptor function. *Science*. 2007;316:291–294.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17431183
272. Marshall AJ, Wu GE, Paige GJ. Frequency of VH81x usage during B cell development: initial decline in usage is independent of Ig heavy chain cell surface expression. *J Immunol*. 1996;156:2077–2084.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8690895
273. Marshall AJ, Paige CJ, Wu GE. V(H) repertoire maturation during B cell development in vitro: differential selection of Ig heavy chains by fetal and adult B cell progenitors. *J Immunol*. 1997;158:4282–4291.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9126990
274. Keenan RA, De Riva A, Corleis B, et al. Censoring of autoreactive B cell development by the pre-B cell receptor. *Science*. 2008;321:696–699.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18566249
275. Kohler F, Hug E, Eschbach C, et al. Autoreactive B cell receptors mimic autonomous pre-B cell receptor signaling and induce proliferation of early B cells. *Immunity*. 2008;29:912–921.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19084434
276. Schulz D, Vassen L, Chow KT, et al. Gfi1b negatively regulates Rag expression directly and via the repression of FoxO1. *J Exp Med*. 2012;209:187–199.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22201127
277. Duy C, Yu JJ, Nahar R, et al. BCL6 is critical for the development of a diverse primary B cell repertoire. *J Exp Med*. 2010;207:1209–1221.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20498019
278. Nahar R, Ramezani-Rad P, Mossner M, et al. Pre-B cell receptor-mediated activation of BCL6 induces pre-B cell quiescence through transcriptional repression of MYC. *Blood*. 2011;118:4174–4178.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21856866
279. Mandal M, Powers SE, Ochiai K, et al. Ras orchestrates exit from the cell cycle and light-chain recombination during early B cell development. *Nat Immunol*. 2009;10:1110–1117.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19734904
280. Shapiro MA, Weigert M. How immunoglobulin V kappa genes rearrange. *J Immunol*. 1987;139:3834–3839.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3119721
281. Tiegs SL, Russell DM, Nemazee D. Receptor editing in self-reactive bone marrow B cells. *J Exp Med*. 1993;177:1009–1020.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8459201
282. Lang J, Jackson M, Teyton L, et al. B cells are exquisitely sensitive to central tolerance and receptor editing induced by ultralow affinity, membrane-bound antigen. *J Exp Med*. 1996;184:1685–1697.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8920858
283. Yamagami T, ten Boekel E, Andersson J, et al. Frequencies of multiple IgL chain gene rearrangements in single normal or kappaL chain-deficient B lineage cells. *Immunity*. 1999;11:317–327.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10514010
284. Derudder E, Cadera EJ, Vahl JC, et al. Development of immuno-globulin lambda-chain-positive B cells, but not editing of immuno-globulin kappa-chain, depends on NF-kappaB signals. *Nat Immunol*. 2009;10:647–654.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19412180
285. Chen C, Nagy Z, Radic MZ, et al. The site and stage of anti-DNA B-cell deletion. *Nature*. 1995;373:252–255.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7816141
286. Melamed D, Benschop RJ, Cambier JC, et al. Developmental regulation of B lymphocyte immune tolerance compartmentalizes clonal selection from receptor selection. *Cell*. 1998;92:173–182.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9458042
287. Allman DM, Ferguson SE, Cancro MP. Peripheral B cell maturation. I. Immature peripheral B cells in adults are heat-stable antigenhi and exhibit unique signaling characteristics. *J Immunol*. 1992;149:2533–2540.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1383316
288. Rolink AG, Andersson J, Melchers F. Characterization of immature B cells by a novel monoclonal antibody, by turnover and by mitogen reactivity. *Eur J Immunol*. 1998;28:3738–3748.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9842916
289. Allman D, Lindsley RC, DeMuth W, et al. Resolution of three non-proliferative immature splenic B cell subsets reveals multiple selection points during peripheral B cell maturation. *J Immunol*. 2001;167:6834–6840.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11739500
290. Petrenko O, Beavis A, Klaine M, et al. The molecular characterization of the fetal stem cell marker AA4. *Immunity*. 1999;10:691–700.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10403644
291. Fang W, Mueller DL, Pennell CA, et al. Frequent aberrant immunoglobulin gene rearrangements in pro-B cells revealed by a bcl-xL transgene. *Immunity*. 1996;4:291–299.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8624819
292. Carsetti R, Kohler G, Lamers MC. Transitional B cells are the target of negative selection in the B cell compartment. *J Exp Med*. 1995;181:2129–2140.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7760002
293. Allman DM, Ferguson SE, Lentz VM, et al. Peripheral B cell maturation. II. Heat-stable antigen(hi) splenic B cells are an immature developmental intermediate in the production of long-lived marrow-derived B cells. *J Immunol*. 1993;151:4431–4444.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8409411
294. Weiner HL, Moorhead JW, Claman HN. Anti-immunoglobulin stimulation of murine lymphocytes. I. Age dependency of the proliferative response. *J Immunol*. 1976;116:1656–1661.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/58043
295. Nossal GJ, Pike BL, Battye FL. Mechanisms of clonal abortion tolerogenesis. II. Clonal behaviour of immature B cells following exposure to anti-mu chain antibody. *Immunology*. 1979;37:203–215.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/112040
296. Metcalf ES, Klinman NR. In vitro tolerance induction of neonatal murine B cells. *J Exp Med*. 1976;143:1327–1340.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/58052
297. Metcalf ES, Klinman NR. In vitro tolerance induction of bone marrow cells: a marker for B cell maturation. *J Immunol*. 1977;118:2111–2116.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/405423
298. Goodnow CC, Crosbie J, Adelstein S, et al. Altered immunoglobulin expression and functional silencing of self-reactive B lymphocytes in transgenic mice. *Nature*. 1988;334:676–682.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3261841
299. Hartley SB, Crosbie J, Brink R, et al. Elimination from peripheral lymphoid tissues of self-reactive B lymphocytes recognizing membrane-bound antigens. *Nature*. 1991;353:765–769.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1944535
300. Nemazee DA, Burki K. Clonal deletion of B lymphocytes in a transgenic mouse bearing anti-MHC class I antibody genes. *Nature*. 1989;337:562–566.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2783762

301. Erikson J, Radic MZ, Camper SA, et al. Expression of anti-DNA immunoglobulin transgenes in non-autoimmune mice. *Nature*. 1991;349:331–334. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1898987
302. Gay D, Saunders T, Camper S, et al. Receptor editing: an approach by autoreactive B cells to escape tolerance. *J Exp Med*. 1993;177:999–1008. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8459227
303. Merrell KT, Benschop RJ, Gauld SB, et al. Identification of anergic B cells within a wild-type repertoire. *Immunity*. 2006;25:953–962. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17174121
304. Meyer-Bahlburg A, Andrews SF, Yu KO, et al. Characterization of a late transitional B cell population highly sensitive to BAFF-mediated homeostatic proliferation. *J Exp Med*. 2008;205:155–168. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18180309
305. Norvell A, Mandik L, Monroe JG. Engagement of the antigen-receptor on immature murine B lymphocytes results in death by apoptosis. *J Immunol*. 1995;154:4404–4413. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7722297
306. Norvell A, Monroe JG. Acquisition of surface IgD fails to protect from tolerance-induction. Both surface IgM- and surface IgD-mediated signals induce apoptosis of immature murine B lymphocytes. *J Immunol*. 1996;156:1328–1332. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8568230
307. Rathmell JC, Goodnow CC. Effects of the lpr mutation on elimination and inactivation of self-reactive B cells. *J Immunol*. 1994;153:2831–2842. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8077685
308. Rubio CF, Kench J, Russell DM, et al. Analysis of central B cell tolerance in autoimmune-prone MRL/lpr mice bearing autoantibody transgenes. *J Immunol*. 1996;157:65–71. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8683157
309. Carman JA, Wechsler-Reya RJ, Monroe JG. Immature stage B cells enter but do not progress beyond the early G1 phase of the cell cycle in response to antigen receptor signaling. *J Immunol*. 1996;156:4562–4569. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8648097
310. Benschop RJ, Melamed D, Nemazee D, et al. Distinct signal thresholds for the unique antigen receptor-linked gene expression programs in mature and immature B cells. *J Exp Med*. 1999;190:749–756. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10499913
311. Tomayko MM, Cancro MP. Long-lived B cells are distinguished by elevated expression of A1. *J Immunol*. 1998;160:107–111. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9551962
312. Grumont RJ, Rourke IJ, Gerondakis S. Rel-dependent induction of A1 transcription is required to protect B cells from antigen receptor ligation-induced apoptosis. *Genes Dev*. 1999;13:400–411. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10049356
313. Khan WN. Regulation of B lymphocyte development and activation by Bruton's tyrosine kinase. *Immunol Res*. 2001;23:147–156. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11444380
314. Maas A, Hendriks RW. Role of Bruton's tyrosine kinase in B cell development. *Dev Immunol*. 2001;8:171–181. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11785667
315. Mond JJ, Scher I, Cossman J, et al. Role of the thymus in directing the development of a subset of B lymphocytes. *J Exp Med*. 1982;155:924–936. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6801183
316. Wortis HH, Burkly L, Hughes D, et al. Lack of mature B cells in nude mice with X-linked immune deficiency. *J Exp Med*. 1982;155:903–913. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6801182
317. Oka Y, Rolink AG, Andersson J, et al. Profound reduction of mature B cell numbers, reactivities and serum Ig levels in mice which simultaneously carry the XID and CD40 deficiency genes. *Int Immunol*. 1996;8:1675–1685. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8943562
318. Clark MR, Campbell KS, Kazlauskas A, et al. The B cell antigen receptor complex: association of Ig-alpha and Ig-beta with distinct cytoplasmic effectors. *Science*. 1992;258:123–126. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1439759
319. Hibbs ML, Tarlinton DM, Armes J, et al. Multiple defects in the immune system of Lyn-deficient mice, culminating in autoimmune disease. *Cell*. 1995;83:301–311. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7585947
320. Chan VW, Meng F, Soriano P, et al. Characterization of the B lymphocyte populations in Lyn-deficient mice and the role of Lyn in signal initiation and down-regulation. *Immunity*. 1997;7:69–81. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9252121
321. Castro I, Wright JA, Damdinsuren B, et al. B cell receptor-mediated sustained c-Rel activation facilitates late transitional B cell survival through control of B cell activating factor receptor and NF-kappaB2. *J Immunol*. 2009;182:7729–7737. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19494297
322. Henderson RB, Grys K, Vehlow A, et al. A novel Rac-dependent checkpoint in B cell development controls entry into the splenic white pulp and cell survival. *J Exp Med*. 2010;207:837–853. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20308364
323. Rowland SL, DePersis CL, Torres RM, et al. Ras activation of Erk restores impaired tonic BCR signaling and rescues immature B cell differentiation. *J Exp Med*. 2010;207:607–621. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20176802
324. Subbarao B, Mosier DE. Induction of B lymphocyte proliferation by monoclonal anti-Lyb 2 antibody. *J Immunol*. 1983;130:2033–2037. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6601145
325. Pan C, Baumgarth N, Parnes JR. CD72-deficient mice reveal nonredundant roles of CD72 in B cell development and activation. *Immunity*. 1999;11:495–506. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10549631
326. Adachi T, Flaswinkel H, Yakura H, et al. The B cell surface protein CD72 recruits the tyrosine phosphatase SHP-1 upon tyrosine phosphorylation. *J Immunol*. 1998;160:4662–4665. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9590210
327. Verkoczy L, Duong B, Skog P, et al. Basal B cell receptor-directed phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase signaling turns off RAGs and promotes B cell-positive selection. *J Immunol*. 2007;178:6332–6341. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17475862
328. Aiba Y, Kameyama M, Yamazaki T, et al. Regulation of B-cell development by BCAP and CD19 through their binding to phosphoinositide 3-kinase. *Blood*. 2008;111:1497–1503. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18025150
329. Srinivasan L, Sasaki Y, Calado DP, et al. PI3 kinase signals BCR-dependent mature B cell survival. *Cell*. 2009;139:573–586. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19879843
330. Cyster JG, Hartley SB, Goodnow CC. Competition for follicular niches excludes self-reactive cells from the recirculating B-cell repertoire. *Nature*. 1994;371:389–395. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7522305
331. Cyster JG, Goodnow CC. Antigen-induced exclusion from follicles and anergy are separate and complementary processes that influence peripheral B cell fate. *Immunity*. 1995;3:691–701. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8777715
332. Mandik-Nayak L, Bui A, Noorchashm H, et al. Regulation of anti-double-stranded DNA B cells in nonautoimmune mice: localization to the T-B interface of the splenic follicle. *J Exp Med*. 1997;186:1257–1267. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9334365
333. Mandik-Nayak L, Seo SJ, Sokol C, et al. MRL-lpr/lpr mice exhibit a defect in maintaining developmental arrest and follicular exclusion of anti-double-stranded DNA B cells. *J Exp Med*. 1999;189:1799–1814. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10359584
334. Tze LE, Schram BR, Lam KP, et al. Basal immunoglobulin signaling actively maintains developmental stage in immature B cells. *PLoS Biol*. 2005;3:e82. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15752064
335. Thomas MD, Kremer CS, Ravichandran KS, et al. c-Myb is critical for B cell development and maintenance of follicular B cells. *Immunity*. 2005;23:275–286. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16169500
336. Levine MH, Haberman AM, Sant'Angelo DB, et al. A B-cell receptor-specific selection step governs immature to mature B cell differentiation. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2000;97:2743–2748. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10688906
337. Forster R, Schubel A, Breitfeld D, et al. CCR7 coordinates the primary immune response by establishing functional microenvironments in secondary lymphoid organs. *Cell*. 1999;99:23–33. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10520991

338. Ansel KM, Ngo VN, Hyman PL, et al. A chemokine-driven positive feedback loop organizes lymphoid follicles. *Nature*. 2000;406:309–314. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10917533
339. Waldschmidt TJ, Noelle RJ. Immunology. Long live the mature B cell—a baffling mystery resolved. *Science*. 2001;293:2012–2013. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11557866
340. Khare SD, Sarosi I, Xia XZ, et al. Severe B cell hyperplasia and autoimmune disease in TALL-1 transgenic mice. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2000;97:3370–3375. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10716715
341. Khare SD, Hsu H. The role of TALL-1 and APRIL in immune regulation. *Trends Immunol*. 2001;22:61–63. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11286694
342. Thompson JS, Bixler SA, Qian F, et al. BAFF-R, a newly identified TNF receptor that specifically interacts with BAFF. *Science*. 2001;293:2108–2111. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11509692
343. Yan M, Brady JR, Chan B, et al. Identification of a novel receptor for B lymphocyte stimulator that is mutated in a mouse strain with severe B cell deficiency. *Curr Biol*. 2001;11:1547–1552. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11591325
344. Lentz VM, Cancro MP, Nashold FE, et al. Bcmd governs recruitment of new B cells into the stable peripheral B cell pool in the A/WySnJ mouse. *J Immunol*. 1996;157:598–606. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8752907
345. Yu G, Boone T, Delaney J, et al. APRIL and TALL-I and receptors BCMA and TACI: system for regulating humoral immunity. *Nat Immunol*. 2000;1:252–256. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10973284
346. Ota M, Duong BH, Torkamani A, et al. Regulation of the B cell receptor repertoire and self-reactivity by BAFF. *J Immunol*. 2010;185:4128–4136. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20817867
347. Tolar P, Hanna J, Krueger PD, et al. The constant region of the membrane immunoglobulin mediates B cell-receptor clustering and signaling in response to membrane antigens. *Immunity*. 2009;30:44–55. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19135393
348. Treanor B, Depoil D, Gonzalez-Granja A, et al. The membrane skeleton controls diffusion dynamics and signaling through the B cell receptor. *Immunity*. 2010;32:187–199. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20171124
349. Yang J, Reth M. Oligomeric organization of the B-cell antigen receptor on resting cells. *Nature*. 2010;467:465–469. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20818374
350. Opstelten D, Osmond DG. Pre-B cells in mouse bone marrow: immunofluorescence stathmokinetic studies of the proliferation of cyto-plasmic mu-chain-bearing cells in normal mice. *J Immunol*. 1983;131:2635–2640. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6417229
351. Bazin H, Platteau B, Maclennan IC, et al. B-cell production and differentiation in adult rats. *Immunology*. 1985;54:79–88. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3871730
352. Forster I, Rajewsky K. The bulk of the peripheral B-cell pool in mice is stable and not rapidly renewed from the bone marrow. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1990;87:4781–4784. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2352948
353. Hao Z, Rajewsky K. Homeostasis of peripheral B cells in the absence of B cell influx from the bone marrow. *J Exp Med*. 2001;194:1151–1164. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11602643
354. MacLennan IC. Germinal centers. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 1994;12:117–139. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8011279
355. Przylepa J, Himes C, Kelsoe G. Lymphocyte development and selection in germinal centers. *Curr Top Microbiol Immunol*. 1998;229:85–104. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9479850
356. Butcher EC, Rouse RV, Coffman RL, et al. Surface phenotype of Peyer's patch germinal center cells: implications for the role of germinal centers in B cell differentiation. *J Immunol*. 1982;129:2698–2707. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6982940
357. Kraal G, Hardy RR, Gallatin WM, et al. Antigen-induced changes in B cell subsets in lymph nodes: analysis by dual fluorescence flow cytofluorometry. *Eur J Immunol*. 1986;16:829–834. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2873041
358. Wang Z, Karras JG, Howard RG, et al. Induction of bcl-x by CD40 engagement rescues sIg-induced apoptosis in murine B cells. *J Immunol*. 1995;155:3722–3725. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7561075
359. Tuscano JM, Druey KM, Riva A, et al. Bcl-x rather than Bcl-2 mediates CD40-dependent centrocyte survival in the germinal center. *Blood*. 1996;88:1359–1364. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8695854
360. Zhang X, Li L, Choe J, et al. Up-regulation of Bcl-xL expression protects CD40-activated human B cells from Fas-mediated apoptosis. *Cell Immunol*. 1996;173:149–154. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8871610
361. Takahashi Y, Ohta H, Takemori T. Fas is required for clonal selection in germinal centers and the subsequent establishment of the memory B cell repertoire. *Immunity*. 2001;14:181–192. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11239450
362. Thai TH, Calado DP, Casola S, et al. Regulation of the germinal center response by microRNA-155. *Science*. 2007;316:604–608. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17463289
363. Muramatsu M, Kinoshita K, Fagarasan S, et al. Class switch recombination and hypermutation require activation-induced cytidine deaminase (AID), a potential RNA editing enzyme. *Cell*. 2000;102:553–563. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11007474
364. Fagarasan S, Kinoshita K, Muramatsu M, et al. In situ class switching and differentiation to IgA-producing cells in the gut lamina propria. *Nature*. 2001;413:639–643. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11675788
365. Okazaki IM, Kinoshita K, Muramatsu M, et al. The AID enzyme induces class switch recombination in fibroblasts. *Nature*. 2002;416:340–345. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11875397
366. Martin A, Bardwell PD, Woo CJ, et al. Activation-induced cytidine deaminase turns on somatic hypermutation in hybridomas. *Nature*. 2002;415:802–806. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11823785
367. Nagaoka H, Muramatsu M, Yamamura N, et al. Activation-induced deaminase (AID)-directed hypermutation in the immunoglobulin Smu region: implication of AID involvement in a common step of class switch recombination and somatic hypermutation. *J Exp Med*. 2002;195:529–534. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11854365
368. Arakawa H, Hauschild J, Buerstedde JM. Requirement of the activation-induced deaminase (AID) gene for immunoglobulin gene conversion. *Science*. 2002;295:1301–1306. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11847344
369. Harris RS, Sale JE, Petersen-Mahrt SK, et al. AID is essential for immunoglobulin V gene conversion in a cultured B cell line. *Curr Biol*. 2002;12:435–438. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11882297
370. Staszewski O, Baker RE, Ucher AJ, et al. Activation-induced cytidine deaminase induces reproducible DNA breaks at many non-Ig Loci in activated B cells. *Mol Cell*. 2011;41:232–242. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21255732
371. Good-Jacobson KL, Szumilas CG, Chen L, et al. PD-1 regulates germinal center B cell survival and the formation and affinity of long-lived plasma cells. *Nat Immunol*. 2010;11:535–542. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20453843
372. Victora GD, Schwickert TA, Fooksman DR, et al. Germinal center dynamics revealed by multiphoton microscopy with a photoactivatable fluorescent reporter. *Cell*. 2010;143:592–605. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21074050
373. Herzenberg LA, Okumura K, Metzler CM. Regulation of immunoglobulin and antibody production by allotype suppressor T cells in mice. *Transplant Rev*. 1975;27:57–83. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1103386
374. Jacobson EB, L'Age-Stehr J, Herzenberg LA. Immunological memory in mice. II. Cell interactions in the secondary immune response studies by means of immunoglobulin allotype markers. *J Exp Med*. 1970;131:1109–1120. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4192568
375. L'Age-Stehr J, Herzenberg LA. Immunological memory in mice. I. Physical separation and partial characterization of memory cells for different immunoglobulin classes from each other and from antibody-producing cells. *J Exp Med*. 1970;131:1093–1108. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4192567
376. Romano TJ, Mond JJ, Thorbecke GJ. Immunological memory function of the T and B cell types: distribution over mouse spleen and lymph nodes. *Eur J Immunol*. 1975;5:211–215. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1086225

377. Okumura K, Metzler CM, Tsu TT, et al. Two stages of B-cell memory development with different T-cell requirements. *J Exp Med*. 1976;144:345–357.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1085325
378. Herzenberg LA, Black SJ, Tokuhisa T. Memory B cells at successive stages of differentiation. Affinity maturation and the role of IgD receptors. *J Exp Med*. 1980;151:1071–1087.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6966317
379. Yefenof E, Sanders VM, Snow EC, et al. Preparation and analysis of antigen-specific memory B cells. *J Immunol*. 1985;135:3777–3784.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2415585
380. Hayakawa K, Ishii R, Yamasaki K, et al. Isolation of high-affinity memory B cells: phycoerythrin as a probe for antigen-binding cells. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1987;84:1379–1383.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3493491
381. Schittek B, Rajewsky K. Maintenance of B-cell memory by long-lived cells generated from proliferating precursors. *Nature*. 1990;346:749–751.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2388695
382. Anderson SM, Tomayko MM, Ahuja A, et al. New markers for murine memory B cells that define mutated and unmutated subsets. *J Exp Med*. 2007;204:2103–2114.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17698588
383. Hikida M, Casola S, Takahashi N, et al. PLC-gamma2 is essential for formation and maintenance of memory B cells. *J Exp Med*. 2009;206:681–689.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19273623
384. Bruce J, Symington FW, McKearn TJ, et al. A monoclonal antibody discriminating between subsets of T and B cells. *J Immunol*. 1981;127:2496–2501.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6975326
385. Linton PL, Decker DJ, Klinman NR. Primary antibody-forming cells and secondary B cells are generated from separate precursor cell subpopulations. *Cell*. 1989;59:1049–1059.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2598260
386. Linton PJ, Lo D, Lai L, et al. Among naive precursor cell subpopulations only progenitors of memory B cells originate germinal centers. *Eur J Immunol*. 1992;22:1293–1297.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1374340
387. Gray D, Skarvall H. B-cell memory is short-lived in the absence of antigen. *Nature*. 1988;336:70–73.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3263573
388. Vieira P, Rajewsky K. Persistence of memory B cells in mice deprived of T cell help. *Int Immunol*. 1990;2:487–494.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2150759
389. Karrer U, Lopez-Macias C, Oxenius A, et al. Antiviral B cell memory in the absence of mature follicular dendritic cell networks and classical germinal centers in TNFR1-/- mice. *J Immunol*. 2000;164:768–778.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10623822
390. Maruyama M, Lam KP, Rajewsky K. Memory B-cell persistence is independent of persisting immunizing antigen. *Nature*. 2000;407:636–642.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11034213
391. Hardy RR. B-1 B cell development. *J Immunol*. 2006;177:2749–2754.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16920907
392. Hayakawa K, Hardy RR, Stall AM, et al. Immunoglobulin-bearing B cells reconstitute and maintain the murine Ly- 1 B cell lineage. *Eur J Immunol*. 1986;16:1313–1316.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3095127
393. Choi YS, Dieter JA, Rothaeusler K, et al. B-1 cells in the bone marrow are a significant source of natural IgM. *Eur J Immunol*. 2012;42:120–129.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22009734
394. Hayakawa K, Hardy RR, Honda M, et al. Ly-1 B cells: functionally distinct lymphocytes that secrete IgM autoantibodies. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1984;81:2494–2498.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6609363
395. Hardy RR, Carmack CE, Shinton SA, et al. A single VH gene is utilized predominantly in anti-BrMRBC hybridomas derived from purified Ly-1 B cells. Definition of the VH11 family. *J Immunol*. 1989;142:3643–3651.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2497178
396. Hayakawa K, Carmack CE, Hyman R, et al. Natural autoantibodies to thymocytes: origin, VH genes, fine specificities, and the role of Thy-1 glycoprotein. *J Exp Med*. 1990;172:869–878.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1974916
397. Masmoudi H, Mota-Santos T, Huetz F, et al. All T15 Id-positive antibodies (but not the majority of VHT15+ antibodies) are produced by peritoneal CD5+ B lymphocytes. *Int Immunol*. 1990;2:515–520.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1707658
398. Boyden S. Autoimmunity and inflammation. *Nature*. 1964;201:200–201.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14118288
399. Schlesinger M. Spontaneous occurrence of autoantibodies cytotoxic to thymus cells in the sera of mice of the 129 strain. *Nature*. 1965;207:429–430.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/5885866
400. Steele EJ, Cunningham AJ. High proportion of Ig-producing cells making autoantibody in normal mice. *Nature*. 1978;274:483–484.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/566858
401. Ochsenbein AF, Fehr T, Lutz C, et al. Control of early viral and bacterial distribution and disease by natural antibodies. *Science*. 1999;286:2156–2159.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10591647
402. Macpherson AJ, Gatto D, Sainsbury E, et al. A primitive T cell-independent mechanism of intestinal mucosal IgA responses to commensal bacteria. *Science*. 2000;288:2222–2226.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10864873
403. Baumgarth N, Herman OC, Jager GC, et al. Innate and acquired humoral immunities to influenza virus are mediated by distinct arms of the immune system. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1999;96:2250–2255.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10051627
404. Baumgarth N, Herman OC, Jager GC, et al. B-1 and B-2 cell- derived immunoglobulin M antibodies are nonredundant components of the protective response to influenza virus infection. *J Exp Med*. 2000;192:271–280.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10899913
405. Hardy RR, Hayakawa K. A developmental switch in B lymphopoiesis. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1991;88:11550–11554.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1722338
406. Hardy RR, Wasserman R, Li YS, et al. Response by B cell precursors to pre-B receptor assembly: differences between fetal liver and bone marrow. *Curr Top Microbiol Immunol*. 2000;252:25–30.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11125482
407. Esplin BL, Welner RS, Zhang Q, et al. A differentiation pathway for B1 cells in adult bone marrow. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2009;106:5773–5778.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19307589
408. Forster I, Rajewsky K. Expansion and functional activity of Ly-1+ B cells upon transfer of peritoneal cells into allotype-congenic, new-born mice. *Eur J Immunol*. 1987;17:521–528.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2436924
409. Pennell CA, Sheehan KM, Brodeur PH, et al. Organization and expression of VH gene families preferentially expressed by Ly-1+ (CD5) B cells. *Eur J Immunol*. 1989;19:2115–2121.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2480903
410. Martin F, Kearney JF. B-cell subsets and the mature preimmune repertoire. Marginal zone and B1 B cells as part of a "natural immune memory." *Immunol Rev*. 2000;175:70–79.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10933592
411. Gui M, Wiest DL, Li J, et al. Peripheral CD4+ T cell maturation recognized by increased expression of Thy-1/CD90 bearing the 6C10 carbohydrate epitope. *J Immunol*. 1999;163:4796–4804.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10528179
412. Hayakawa K, Asano M, Shinton SA, et al. Positive selection of natural autoreactive B cells. *Science*. 1999;285:113–116.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10390361
413. Sidman CL, Shultz LD, Hardy RR, et al. Production of immunoglobulin isotypes by Ly-1+ B cells in viable motheaten and normal mice. *Science*. 1986;232:1423–1425.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3487115
414. O'Keefe TL, Williams GT, Davies SL, et al. Hyperresponsive B cells in CD22-deficient mice. *Science*. 1996;274:798–801.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8864124
415. Sato S, Miller AS, Inaoki M, et al. CD22 is both a positive and negative regulator of B lymphocyte antigen receptor signal transduction: altered signaling in CD22-deficient mice. *Immunity*. 1996;5:551–562.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8986715
416. Torres RM, Flaswinkel H, Reth M, et al. Aberrant B cell development and immune response in mice with a compromised BCR complex. *Science*. 1996;272:1804–1808.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8650582

417. Hayakawa K, Hardy RR, Parks DR, et al. The "Ly-1 B" cell subpopulation in normal immunodefective, and autoimmune mice. *J Exp Med*. 1983;157:202–218. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6600267
418. Khan WN, Alt FW, Gerstein RM, et al. Defective B cell development and function in Btk-deficient mice. *Immunity*. 1995;3:283–299. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7552994
419. Engel P, Zhou LJ, Ord DC, et al. Abnormal B lymphocyte development, activation, and differentiation in mice that lack or overexpress the CD19 signal transduction molecule. *Immunity*. 1995;3:39–50. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7542548
420. Rickert RC, Rajewsky K, Roes J. Impairment of T-cell-dependent B-cell responses and B-1 cell development in CD19-deficient mice. *Nature*. 1995;376:352–355. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7543183
421. Ahearn JM, Fischer MB, Croix D, et al. Disruption of the Cr2 locus results in a reduction in B-1a cells and in an impaired B cell response to T-dependent antigen. *Immunity*. 1996;4:251–262. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8624815
422. Tarakhovsky A, Turner M, Schaal S, et al. Defective antigen receptor-mediated proliferation of B and T cells in the absence of Vav. *Nature*. 1995;374:467–470. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7700358
423. Casola S, Otipoby KL, Alimzhanov M, et al. B cell receptor signal strength determines B cell fate. *Nat Immunol*. 2004;5:317–327. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14758357
424. Cole LE, Yang Y, Elkins KL, et al. Antigen-specific B-1a antibodies induced by Francisella tularensis LPS provide long-term protection against F. tularensis LVS challenge. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2009;106:4343–4348. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19251656
425. O'Garra A, Chang R, Go N, et al. Ly-1 B (B-1) cells are the main source of B cell-derived interleukin 10. *Eur J Immunol*. 1992;22:711–717. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1547817
426. Yanaba K, Bouaziz JD, Haas KM, et al. A regulatory B cell subset with a unique CD1dhiCD5+ phenotype controls T cell-dependent inflammatory responses. *Immunity*. 2008;28:639–650. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18482568
427. Watanabe R, Ishiura N, Nakashima H, et al. Regulatory B cells (B10 cells) have a suppressive role in murine lupus: CD19 and B10 cell deficiency exacerbates systemic autoimmunity. *J Immunol*. 2010;184:4801–4809. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20368271
428. Chen X, Martin F, Forbush KA, et al. Evidence for selection of a population of multi-reactive B cells into the splenic marginal zone. *Int Immunol*. 1997;9:27–41. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9043945
429. Shaw PX, Horkko S, Chang MK, et al. Natural antibodies with the T15 idiotype may act in atherosclerosis, apoptotic clearance, and protective immunity. *J Clin Invest*. 2000;105:1731–1740. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10862788
430. Silverman GJ, Shaw PX, Luo L, et al. Neo-self antigens and the expansion of B-1 cells: lessons from atherosclerosis-prone mice. *Curr Top Microbiol Immunol*. 2000;252:189–200. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11125476
431. Oliver AM, Martin F, Kearney JF. IgMhighCD21high lymphocytes enriched in the splenic marginal zone generate effector cells more rapidly than the bulk of follicular B cells. *J Immunol*. 1999;162:7198–7207. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10358166
432. Martin F, Oliver AM, Kearney JF. Marginal zone and B1 B cells unite in the early response against T-independent blood-borne particulate antigens. *Immunity*. 2001;14:617–629. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11371363
433. Balazs M, Martin F, Zhou T, et al. Blood dendritic cells interact with splenic marginal zone B cells to initiate T-independent immune responses. *Immunity*. 2002;17:341–352. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12354386
434. Saito T, Chiba S, Ichikawa M, et al. Notch2 is preferentially expressed in mature B cells and indispensable for marginal zone B lineage development. *Immunity*. 2003;18:675–685. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12753744
435. Kuroda K, Han H, Tani S, et al. Regulation of marginal zone B cell development by MINT, a suppressor of Notch/RBP-J signaling pathway. *Immunity*. 2003;18:301–312. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12594956
436. Martin F, Kearney JF. B1 cells: similarities and differences with other B cell subsets. *Curr Opin Immunol*. 2001;13:195–201. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11228413
437. Amano M, Baumgarth N, Dick MD, et al. CD1 expression defines subsets of follicular and marginal zone B cells in the spleen: beta 2-microglobulin-dependent and independent forms. *J Immunol*. 1998;161:1710–1717. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9712035
438. Martin F, Kearney JF. Positive selection from newly formed to marginal zone B cells depends on the rate of clonal production, CD19, and btk. *Immunity*. 2000;12:39–49. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10661404
439. Cariappa A, Tang M, Parng C, et al. The follicular versus marginal zone B lymphocyte cell fate decision is regulated by Aiolos, Btk, and CD21. *Immunity*. 2001;14:603–615. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11371362
440. Kraus M, Pao LI, Reichlin A, et al. Interference with immunoglobulin (Ig)alpha immunoreceptor tyrosine-based activation motif (ITAM) phosphorylation modulates or blocks B cell development, depending on the availability of an Igbeta cytoplasmic tail. *J Exp Med*. 2001;194:455–469. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11514602
441. Guinamard R, Okigaki M, Schlessinger J, et al. Absence of marginal zone B cells in Pyk-2-deficient mice defines their role in the humoral response. *Nat Immunol*. 2000;1:31–36. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10881171
442. Martin F, Chen X, Kearney JF. Development of VH81X transgene-bearing B cells in fetus and adult: sites for expansion and deletion in conventional and CD5/B1 cells. *Int Immunol*. 1997;9:493–505. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9138009
443. Carey JB, Moffatt-Blue CS, Watson LC, et al. Repertoire-based selection into the marginal zone compartment during B cell development. *J Exp Med*. 2008;205:2043–2052. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18710933
444. Muppidi JR, Arnon TI, Bronevetsky Y, et al. Cannabinoid receptor 2 positions and retains marginal zone B cells within the splenic marginal zone. *J Exp Med*. 2011;208:1941–1948. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21875957
445. Song R, Kim YW, Koo BK, et al. Mind bomb 1 in the lymphopoietic niches is essential for T and marginal zone B cell development. *J Exp Med*. 2008;205:2525–2536. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18824586
446. Tan JB, Xu K, Cretegny K, et al. Lunatic and manic fringe cooperatively enhance marginal zone B cell precursor competition for delta-like 1 in splenic endothelial niches. *Immunity*. 2009;30:254–263. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19217325
447. Gibb DR, El Shikh M, Kang DJ, et al. ADAM10 is essential for Notch2-dependent marginal zone B cell development and CD23 cleavage in vivo. *J Exp Med*. 2010;207:623–635. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20156974
448. Goodnow CC, Crosbie J, Jorgensen H, et al. Induction of self-tolerance in mature peripheral B lymphocytes. *Nature*. 1989;342:385–391. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/258660
449. Goodnow CC, Adelstein S, Basten A. The need for central and peripheral tolerance in the B cell repertoire. *Science*. 1990;248:1373–1379. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2356469
450. Russell DM, Dembic Z, Morahan G, et al. Peripheral deletion of self-reactive B cells. *Nature*. 1991;354:308–311. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1956380
451. Cyster JG, Goodnow CC. PTP1C negatively regulates antigen receptor signaling in B lymphocytes and determines thresholds for negative selection. *Immunity*. 1995;2:13–24. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7600299
452. Cyster JG, Healy JI, Kishihara K, et al. Regulation of B-lymphocyte negative and positive selection by tyrosine phosphatase CD45. *Nature*. 1996;381:325–328. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8692271
453. Radic MZ, Erikson J, Litwin S, et al. B lymphocytes may escape tolerance by revising their antigen receptors. *J Exp Med*. 1993;177:1165–1173. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8459210
454. Chen C, Radic MZ, Erikson J, et al. Deletion and editing of B cells that express antibodies to DNA. *J Immunol*. 1994;152:1970–1982. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8120401

455. Prak EL, Trounstine M, Huszar D, et al. Light chain editing in kappa-deficient animals: a potential mechanism of B cell tolerance. *J Exp Med*. 1994;180:1805–1815. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7964462
456. Cadera EJ, Wan F, Amin RH, et al. NF-kappaB activity marks cells engaged in receptor editing. *J Exp Med*. 2009;206:1803–1816. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19581408
457. Murakami M, Tsubata T, Okamoto M, et al. Antigen-induced apoptotic death of Ly-1 B cells responsible for autoimmune disease in transgenic mice. *Nature*. 1992;357:77–80. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1574128
458. Okamoto M, Murakami M, Shimizu A, et al. A transgenic model of autoimmune hemolytic anemia. *J Exp Med*. 1992;175:71–79. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1730928
459. Murakami M, Tsubata T, Shinkura R, et al. Oral administration of lipopolysaccharides activates B-1 cells in the peritoneal cavity and lamina propria of the gut and induces autoimmune symptoms in an autoantibody transgenic mouse. *J Exp Med*. 1994;180:111–121. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8006578
460. Cariappa A, Takematsu H, Liu H, et al. B cell antigen receptor signal strength and peripheral B cell development are regulated by a 9-O-acetyl sialic acid esterase. *J Exp Med*. 2009;206:125–138. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19103880
461. Becker-Herman S, Meyer-Bahlburg A, Schwartz MA, et al. WASp-deficient B cells play a critical, cell-intrinsic role in triggering autoimmunity. *J Exp Med*. 2011;208:2033–2042. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21875954
462. Fehr T, Rickert RC, Odermatt B, et al. Antiviral protection and germinal center formation, but impaired B cell memory in the absence of CD19. *J Exp Med*. 1998;188:145–155. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9653091
463. Nosten-Bertrand M, Errington ML, Murphy KP, et al. Normal spatial learning despite regional inhibition of LTP in mice lacking Thy-1. *Nature*. 1996;379:826–829. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8587606
464. Hayakawa K, Asano M, Shinton SA, et al. Positive selection of anti-thy-1 autoreactive B-1 cells and natural serum autoantibody production independent from bone marrow B cell development. *J Exp Med*. 2003;197:87–99. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12515816
465. Wen L, Brill-Dashoff J, Shinton SA, et al. Evidence of marginal-zone B cell-positive selection in spleen. *Immunity*. 2005;23:297–308. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16169502
466. Lay WH, Nussenzweig V. Receptors for complement of leukocytes. *J Exp Med*. 1968;128:991–1009. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4176227
467. Pepys MB. Role of complement in induction of the allergic response. *Nat New Biol*. 1972;237:157–159. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4556375
468. Pepys MB. Role of complement in the induction of immunological responses. *Transplant Rev*. 1976;32:93–120. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/790690
469. Carroll MC. The role of complement in B cell activation and tolerance. *Adv Immunol*. 2000;74:61–88. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10605604
470. Inaoki M, Sato S, Weintraub BC, et al. CD19-regulated signaling thresholds control peripheral tolerance and autoantibody production in B lymphocytes. *J Exp Med*. 1997;186:1923–1931. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9382890
471. Prodeus AP, Goerg S, Shen LM, et al. A critical role for complement in maintenance of self-tolerance. *Immunity*. 1998;9:721–731. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9846493
472. Rapaka RR, Ricks DM, Alcorn JF, et al. Conserved natural IgM antibodies mediate innate and adaptive immunity against the opportunistic fungus Pneumocystis murina. *J Exp Med*. 2010;207:2907–2919. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21149550
473. Boes M, Prodeus AP, Schmidt T, et al. A critical role of natural immunoglobulin M in immediate defense against systemic bacterial infection. *J Exp Med*. 1998;188:2381–2386. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9858525
474. Baumgarth N. A two-phase model of B-cell activation. *Immunol Rev*. 2000;176:171–180. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11043776
475. Tarakhovsky A, Kanner SB, Hombach J, et al. A role for CD5 in TCR-mediated signal transduction and thymocyte selection. *Science*. 1995;269:535–537. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7542801
476. Bikah G, Carey J, Ciallella JR, et al. CD5-mediated negative regulation of antigen receptor-induced growth signals in B-1 B cells. *Science*. 1996;274:1906–1909. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8943203
477. Bondada S, Bikah G, Robertson DA, et al. Role of CD5 in growth regulation of B-1 cells. *Curr Top Microbiol Immunol*. 2000;252:141–149. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11125471
478. Hippen KL, Tze LE, Behrens TW. CD5 maintains tolerance in anergic B cells. *J Exp Med*. 2000;191:883–890. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10704468
479. Solvason N, Kearney JF. The human fetal omentum: a site of B cell generation. *J Exp Med*. 1992;175:397–404. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1370683
480. Pascual V, Verkruyse L, Casey ML, et al. Analysis of Ig H chain gene segment utilization in human fetal liver. Revisiting the "proximal utilization hypothesis." *J Immunol*. 1993;151:4164–4172. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8409393
481. Mold JE, Venkatasubrahmanyam S, Burt TD, et al. Fetal and adult hematopoietic stem cells give rise to distinct T cell lineages in humans. *Science*. 2010;330:1695–1699. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21164017
482. Ikuta K, Kina T, MacNeil I, et al. A developmental switch in thymic lymphocyte maturation potential occurs at the level of hematopoietic stem cells. *Cell*. 1990;62:863–874. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1975515
483. Iwata Y, Matsushita T, Horikawa M, et al. Characterization of a rare IL-10-competent B-cell subset in humans that parallels mouse regulatory B10 cells. *Blood*. 2011;117:530–541. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20962324
484. LeBien TW, Wormann B, Villablanca JG, et al. Multiparameter flow cytometric analysis of human fetal bone marrow B cells. *Leukemia*. 1990;4:354–358. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1697009
485. Nunez C, Nishimoto N, Gartland GL, et al. B cells are generated throughout life in humans. *J Immunol*. 1996;156:866–872. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8543844
486. Ghia P, ten Boekel E, Sanz E, et al. Ordering of human bone marrow B lymphocyte precursors by single-cell polymerase chain reaction analyses of the rearrangement status of the immunoglobulin H and L chain gene loci. *J Exp Med*. 1996;184:2217–2229. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8976177
487. Simmons DL, Satterthwaite AB, Tenen DG, et al. Molecular cloning of a cDNA encoding CD34, a sialomucin of human hematopoietic stem cells. *J Immunol*. 1992;148:267–271. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1370171
488. Ichii M, Oritani K, Yokota T, et al. The density of CD10 corresponds to commitment and progression in the human B lymphoid lineage. *PLoS One*. 2010;5:e12954. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20886092
489. Dittel BN, LeBien TW. The growth response to IL-7 during normal human B cell ontogeny is restricted to B-lineage cells expressing CD34. *J Immunol*. 1995;154:58–67. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7527823
490. Rawlings DJ, Quan SG, Kato RM, et al. Long-term culture system for selective growth of human B-cell progenitors. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1995;92:1570–1574. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7533295
491. LeBien TW. Fates of human B-cell precursors. *Blood*. 2000;96:9–23. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10891425
492. Gougeon ML, Drean G, Le Deist F, et al. Human severe combined immunodeficiency disease: phenotypic and functional characteristics of peripheral B lymphocytes. *J Immunol*. 1990;145:2873–2879. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2212666
493. Bauer SR, Kubagawa H, Maclennan I, et al. VpreB gene expression in hematopoietic malignancies: a lineage- and stage-restricted marker for B-cell precursor leukemias. *Blood*. 1991;78:1581–1588. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1884024

494. Bossy D, Milili M, Zucman J, et al. Organization and expression of the lambda-like genes that contribute to the mu-psi light chain complex in human pre-B cells. *Int Immunol*. 1991;3:1081–1090. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1760403
495. Bauer SR, Kudo A, Melchers F. Structure and pre-B lymphocyte restricted expression of the VpreB in humans and conservation of its structure in other mammalian species. *EMBO J*. 1998;7:111–116. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3258819
496. Gisler R, Jacobsen SE, Sigvardsson M. Cloning of human early B-cell factor and identification of target genes suggest a conserved role in B-cell development in man and mouse. *Blood*. 2000;96:1457–1464. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10942392
497. Minegishi Y, Coustan-Smith E, Wang YH, et al. Mutations in the human lambda5/14.1 gene result in B cell deficiency and agammaglobulinemia. *J Exp Med*. 1998;187:71–77. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9419212
498. Minegishi Y, Coustan-Smith E, Rapalus L, et al. Mutations in Igalpha (CD79a) result in a complete block in B-cell development. *J Clin Invest*. 1999;104:1115–1121. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10525050
499. Yel L, Minegishi Y, Coustan-Smith E, et al. Mutations in the mu heavy-chain gene in patients with agammaglobulinemia. *N Engl J Med*. 1996;335:1486–1493. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8890099
500. Pascual V, Liu YJ, Magalski A, et al. Analysis of somatic mutation in five B cell subsets of human tonsil. *J Exp Med*. 1994;180:329–339. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8006591
501. Pasqualucci L, Migliazza A, Fracchiolla N, et al. BCL-6 mutations in normal germinal center B cells: evidence of somatic hypermutation acting outside Ig loci. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1998;95:11816–11821. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9751748
502. Staudt LM, Dent AL, Shaffer AL, et al. Regulation of lymphocyte cell fate decisions and lymphomagenesis by BCL-6. *Int Rev Immunol*. 1999;18:381–403. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10626250
503. Dalla-Favera R, Ye BH, Lo Coco F, et al. BCL-6 and the molecular pathogenesis of B-cell lymphoma. *Cold Spring Harb Symp Quant Biol*. 1994;59:117–123. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7587061
504. Shen HM, Peters A, Baron B, et al. Mutation of BCL-6 gene in normal B cells by the process of somatic hypermutation of Ig genes. *Science*. 1998;280:1750–1752. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9624052
505. Saito M, Novak U, Piovan E, et al. BCL6 suppression of BCL2 via Miz1 and its disruption in diffuse large B cell lymphoma. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2009;106:11294–11299. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19549844
506. Conley ME, Parolini O, Rohrer J, et al. X-linked agammaglobulinemia: new approaches to old questions based on the identification of the defective gene. *Immunol Rev*. 1994;138:5–21. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8070817
507. Tsukada S, Saffran DC, Rawlings DJ, et al. Deficient expression of a B cell cytoplasmic tyrosine kinase in human X-linked agammaglobulinemia. *Cell*. 1993;72:279–290. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8425221
508. Rawlings DJ, Saffran DC, Tsukada S, et al. Mutation of unique region of Bruton's tyrosine kinase in immunodeficient XID mice. *Science*. 1993;261:358–361. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8332901
509. Campana D, Farrant J, Inamdar N, et al. Phenotypic features and proliferative activity of B cell progenitors in X-linked agammaglobulinemia. *J Immunol*. 1990;145:1675–1680. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2391416
510. Minegishi Y, Rohrer J, Coustan-Smith E, et al. An essential role for BLNK in human B cell development. *Science*. 1999;286:1954–1957. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10583958
511. Macchi P, Villa A, Giliani S, et al. Mutations of Jak-3 gene in patients with autosomal severe combined immune deficiency (SCID). *Nature*. 1995;377:65–68. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7659163
512. DiSanto JP, Muller W, Guy-Grand D, et al. Lymphoid development in mice with a targeted deletion of the interleukin 2 receptor gamma chain. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1995;92:377–381. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7831294
513. Baird AM, Lucas JA, Berg LJ. A profound deficiency in thymic progenitor cells in mice lacking Jak3. *J Immunol*. 2000;165:3680–3688. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11034372
514. Isnardi I, Ng YS, Srdanovic I, et al. IRAK-4- and MyD88-dependent pathways are essential for the removal of developing autoreactive B cells in humans. *Immunity*. 2008;29:746–757. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19006693
515. Margolin JF, Poplack DG. Acute lymphoblastic leukemia. In Pizzo PA, ed. *Principles and Practice of Pediatric Oncology*. Philadelphia, PA: Lippincott, Williams, and Wilkins; 1997:409–462.
516. Cherepakhin V, Baird SM, Meisenholder GW, et al. Common clonal origin of chronic lymphocytic leukemia and high-grade lymphoma of Richter's syndrome. *Blood*. 1993;82:3141–3147. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7693038
517. Felix CA, Poplack DG. Characterization of acute lymphoblastic leukemia of childhood by immunoglobulin and T-cell receptor gene patterns. *Leukemia*. 1991;5:1015–1025. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1837810
518. Lemmers B, Arnoulet C, Fossat C, et al. Fine characterization of childhood and adult acute lymphoblastic leukemia (ALL) by a proB and preB surrogate light chain-specific mAb and a proposal for a new B cell ALL classification. *Leukemia*. 2000;14:2103–2111. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11187899
519. Trageser D, Iacobucci I, Nahar R, et al. Pre-B cell receptor-mediated cell cycle arrest in Philadelphia chromosome-positive acute lymphoblastic leukemia requires IKAROS function. *J Exp Med*. 2009;206:1739–1753. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19620627
520. Uckun FM, Evans WE, Forsyth CJ, et al. Biotherapy of B-cell precursor leukemia by targeting genistein to CD19-associated tyrosine kinases. *Science*. 1995;267:886–891. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7531365
521. Meydan N, Grunberger T, Dadi H, et al. Inhibition of acute lymphoblastic leukaemia by a Jak-2 inhibitor. *Nature*. 1996;379:645–648. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8628398
522. Bertrand FE, Vogtenhuber C, Shah N, et al. Pro-B-cell to pre-B-cell development in B-lineage acute lymphoblastic leukemia expressing the MLL/AF4 fusion protein. *Blood*. 2001;98:3398–3405. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11719380
523. Brumpt C, Delabesse E, Beldjord K, et al. The incidence of clonal T-cell receptor rearrangements in B-cell precursor acute lymphoblastic leukemia varies with age and genotype. *Blood*. 2000;96:2254–2261. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10979974
524. Pui CH. Acute lymphoblastic leukemia in children. *Curr Opin Oncol*. 2000;12:3–12. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10687723
525. Domer PH, Fakharzadeh SS, Chen CS, et al. Acute mixed-lineage leukemia t(4;11)(q21;q23) generates an MLL-AF4 fusion product. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1993;90:7884–7888. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7689231
526. Alizadeh AA, Eisen MB, Davis RE, et al. Distinct types of diffuse large B-cell lymphoma identified by gene expression profiling. *Nature*. 2000;403:503–511. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10676951
527. Duan S, Cermak L, Pagan JK, et al. FBXO11 targets BCL6 for degradation and is inactivated in diffuse large B-cell lymphomas. *Nature*. 2012;481:90–93. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22113614
528. Lenz G, Nagel I, Siebert R, et al. Aberrant immunoglobulin class switch recombination and switch translocations in activated B cell-like diffuse large B cell lymphoma. *J Exp Med*. 2007;204:633–643. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17353367
529. Dorsett Y, Robbiani DF, Jankovic M, et al. A role for AID in chromosome translocations between c-myc and the IgH variable region. *J Exp Med*. 2007;204:2225–2232. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17724134
530. Liso A, Capello D, Marafioti T, et al. Aberrant somatic hypermutation in tumor cells of nodular-lymphocyte-predominant and classic Hodgkin lymphoma. *Blood*. 2006;108:1013–1020. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16614247
531. Lenz G, Davis RE, Ngo VN, et al. Oncogenic CARD11 mutations in human diffuse large B cell lymphoma. *Science*. 2008;319:1676–1679. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18323416

532. Kato M, Sanada M, Kato I, et al. Frequent inactivation of A20 in B-cell lymphomas. *Nature*. 2009;459:712–716. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19412163
533. Maloney DG, Smith B, Rose A. Rituximab: mechanism of action and resistance. *Semin Oncol*. 2002;29:2–9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11842383
534. Bhan AK, Nadler LM, Stashenko P, et al. Stages of B cell differentiation in human lymphoid tissue. *J Exp Med*. 1981;154:737–749. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7024458
535. Nadler LM, Ritz J, Hardy R, et al. A unique cell surface antigen identifying lymphoid malignancies of B cell origin. *J Clin Invest*. 1981;67:134–140. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6969730
536. Tedder TF, Streuli M, Schlossman SF, et al. Isolation and structure of a cDNA encoding the B1 (CD20) cell-surface antigen of human B lymphocytes. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1988;85:208–212. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2448768
537. Golay JT, Clark EA, Beverley PC. The CD20 (Bp35) antigen is involved in activation of B cells from the G0 to the G1 phase of the cell cycle. *J Immunol*. 1985;135:3795–3801. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2415587
538. Clark EA, Shu G, Ledbetter JA. Role of the Bp35 cell surface polypeptide in human B-cell activation. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1985;82:1766–1770. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3872456
539. Ledbetter JA, Clark EA. Surface phenotype and function of tonsillar germinal center and mantle zone B cell subsets. *Hum Immunol*. 1986;15:30–43. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2419284
540. Reff ME, Carner K, Chambers KS, et al. Depletion of B cells in vivo by a chimeric mouse human monoclonal antibody to CD20. *Blood*. 1994;83:435–445. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7506951
541. Reed JC, Kitada S, Kim Y, et al. Modulating apoptosis pathways in low-grade B-cell malignancies using biological response modifiers. *Semin Oncol*. 2002;29:10–24. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11842384
542. Nabhan C, Rosen ST. Conceptual aspects of combining rituximab and Campath-1H in the treatment of chronic lymphocytic leukemia. *Semin Oncol*. 2002;29:75–80. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1184239
543. Lu D, Zhao Y, Tawatao R, et al. Activation of the Wnt signaling pathway in chronic lymphocytic leukemia. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2004;101:3118–3123. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14973184
544. Glick G, Chang TS, Jaap RG. The bursa of Fabricius and antibody production. *Poult Sci*. 1956;35:224–234.
545. Cooper MD, Raymond DA, Peterson RD, et al. The functions of the thymus system and the bursa system in the chicken. *J Exp Med*. 1966;123:75–102. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/5323079
546. Sorvari T, Sorvari R, Ruotsalainen P, et al. Uptake of environmental antigens by the bursa of Fabricius. *Nature*. 1975;253:217–219. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/803301
547. McCormack WT, Tjoelker LW, Thompson CB. Avian B-cell development: generation of an immunoglobulin repertoire by gene conversion. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 1991;9:219–241. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1910677
548. Dieterlen-Lievre F, Martin C. Diffuse intraembryonic hemopoiesis in normal and chimeric avian development. *Dev Biol*. 1981;88:180–191. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7286444
549. Reynaud CA, Imhof BA, Anquez V, et al. Emergence of committed B lymphoid progenitors in the developing chicken embryo. *EMBO J*. 1992;11:4349–4358. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1425572
550. Benatar T, Tkalec L, Ratcliffe MJ. Stochastic rearrangement of immunoglobulin variable-region genes in chicken B-cell development. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1992;89:7615–7619. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1502173
551. Reynaud CA, Anquez V, Dahan A, et al. A single rearrangement event generates most of the chicken immunoglobulin light chain diversity. *Cell*. 1985;40:283–291. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3917859
552. Reynaud CA, Dahan A, Anquez V, et al. Somatic hyperconversion diversifies the single Vh gene of the chicken with a high incidence in the D region. *Cell*. 1989;59:171–183. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2507167
553. Lassila O. Emigration of B cells from chicken bursa of Fabricius. *Eur J Immunol*. 1989;19:955–958. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2500350
554. Paramithiotis E, Ratcliffe MJ. Bursa-dependent subpopulations of peripheral B lymphocytes in chicken blood. *Eur J Immunol*. 1993;23:96–102. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8419193
555. Becker RS, Knight KL. Somatic diversification of immunoglobulin heavy chain VDJ genes: evidence for somatic gene conversion in rabbits. *Cell*. 1990;63:987–997. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2124176
556. Raman C, Spieker-Polet H, Yam PC, et al. Preferential VH gene usage in rabbit Ig-secreting heterohybridomas. *J Immunol*. 1994;152:3935–3945. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8144962
557. Tunyaplin C, Knight KL. Fetal VDJ gene repertoire in rabbit: evidence for preferential rearrangement of VH1. *Eur J Immunol*. 1995;25:2583–2587. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7589130
558. McElroy PJ, Willcox N, Catty D. Early precursors of B lymphocytes. I. Rabbit/mouse species differences in the physical properties and surface phenotype of pre-B cells, and in the maturation sequence of early B cells. *Eur J Immunol*. 1981;11:76–85. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6971226
559. Crane MA, Kingzette M, Knight KL. Evidence for limited B-lymphopoiesis in adult rabbits. *J Exp Med*. 1996;183:2119–2121. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8642322
560. Weinstein PD, Anderson AO, Mage RG. Rabbit IgH sequences in appendix germinal centers: VH diversification by gene conversion-like and hypermutation mechanisms. *Immunity*. 1994;1:647–659. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7600292
561. Short JA, Sethupathi P, Zhai SK, et al. VDJ genes in VHa2 allotype-suppressed rabbits. Limited germline VH gene usage and accumulation of somatic mutations in D regions. *J Immunol*. 1991;147:4014–4018. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1940383
562. Vajdy M, Sethupathi P, Knight KL. Dependence of antibody somatic diversification on gut-associated lymphoid tissue in rabbits. *J Immunol*. 1998;160:2725–2729. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9510172
563. Tlaskalova-Hogenova H, Stepankova R. Development of antibody formation in germ-free and conventionally reared rabbits: the role of intestinal lymphoid tissue in antibody formation to E. coli antigens. *Folia Biol*. 1980;26:81–93. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6991302
564. Stepankova R, Kovaru F, Kruml J. Lymphatic tissue of the intestinal tract of germfree and conventional rabbits. *Folia Microbiol*. 1980;25:491–495. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7439845
565. Lanning D, Sethupathi P, Rhee KJ, et al. Intestinal microflora and diversification of the rabbit antibody repertoire. *J Immunol*. 2000;165:2012–2019. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10925284
566. Hayward AR, Simons MA, Lawton AR, et al. Pre-B and B cells in rabbits. Ontogeny and allelic exclusion of kappa light chain genes. *J Exp Med*. 1978;148:1367–1377. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/102726
567. Gathings WE, Mage RG, Cooper MD, et al. Immunofluorescence studies on the expression of VH a allotypes by pre-B and B cells of homozygous and heterozygous rabbits. *Eur J Immunol*. 1981;11:200–206. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6786898
568. Solvason N, Chen X, Shu F, et al. The fetal omentum in mice and humans. A site enriched for precursors of CD5 B cells early in development. *Ann N Y Acad Sci*. 1992;651:10–20. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1376027
569. Becker RS, Suter M, Knight KL. Restricted utilization of VH and DH genes in leukemic rabbit B cells. *Eur J Immunol*. 1990;20:397–402. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2107085
570. Friedman ML, Tunyaplin C, Zhai SK, et al. Neonatal VH, D, and JH gene usage in rabbit B lineage cells. *J Immunol*. 1994;152:632–641. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8283042

571. Zhu X, Boonthum A, Zhai SK, et al. B lymphocyte selection and age-related changes in VH gene usage in mutant Alicia rabbits. *J Immunol*. 1999;163:3313–3320. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10477601
572. Sehgal D, Johnson G, Wu TT, et al. Generation of the primary antibody repertoire in rabbits: expression of a diverse set of Igk-V genes may compensate for limited combinatorial diversity at the heavy chain locus. *Immunogenetics*. 1999;50:31–42. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10541804
573. Cooper MD, Perey DY, Gabrielsen AE, et al. Production of an antibody deficiency syndrome in rabbits by neonatal removal of organized intestinal lymphoid tissues. *Int Arch Allergy Appl Immunol*. 1968;33:65–88. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4171257
574. Mage RG, Lanning D, Knight KL. B cell and antibody repertoire development in rabbits: the requirement of gut-associated lymphoid tissues. *Dev Comp Immunol*. 2006;30:137–153. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16098588
575. Perey DY, Good RA. Experimental arrest and induction of lymphoid development in intestinal lymphoepithelial tissues of rabbits. *Lab Invest*. 1968;18:15–26. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4966916
576. Stramignoni A, Mollo F, Rua S, et al. Development of the lymphoid tissue in the rabbit appendix isolated from the intestinal tract. *J Pathol*. 1969;99:265–269. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/5401240
577. Berberian L, Goodglick L, Kipps TJ, et al. Immunoglobulin VH3 gene products: natural ligands for HIV gp120. *Science*. 1993;261:1588–1591. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7690497
578. Pospisil R, Mage RG. B-cell superantigens may play a role in B-cell development and selection in the young rabbit appendix. *Cell Immunol*. 1998;185:93–100. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9636687
579. Silverman GJ, Cary SP, Dwyer DC, et al. A B cell superantigen-induced persistent "Hole" in the B-1 repertoire. *J Exp Med*. 2000;192:87–98. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10880529
580. Chan VW, Mecklenbrauker I, Su I, et al. The molecular mechanism of B cell activation by toll-like receptor protein RP-105. *J Exp Med*. 1998;188:93–101. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9653087
581. Ehlich A, Schaal S, Gu H, et al. Immunoglobulin heavy and light chain genes rearrange independently at early stages of B cell development. *Cell*. 1993;72:695–704. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8453664
582. Reynaud CA, Anquez V, Grimal H, et al. A hyperconversion mechanism generates the chicken light chain preimmune repertoire. *Cell*. 1987;48:379–388. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3100050
583. McCormack WT, Tjoelker LW, Barth CF, et al. Selection for B cells with productive IgL gene rearrangements occurs in the bursa of Fabricius during chicken embryonic development. *Genes Dev*. 1989;3:838–847. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2501152
584. Raman C, Knight KL. CD5+ B cells predominate in peripheral tissues of rabbit. *J Immunol*. 1992;149:3858–3864. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1281192
585. Herzenberg LA. Toward a layered immune system. *Cell*. 1989;59:953–954. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2688900
586. Glynne R, Akkaraju S, Healy JI, et al. How self-tolerance and the immunosuppressive drug FK506 prevent B-cell mitogenesis. *Nature*. 2000;403:672–676. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10688206
587. Hoffmann R, Seidl T, Neeb M, et al. Changes in gene expression profiles in developing B cells of murine bone marrow. *Genome Res*. 2002;12:98–111. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11779835
588. Nelms KA, Goodnow CC. Genome-wide ENU mutagenesis to reveal immune regulators. *Immunity*. 2001;15:409–418. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11567631
589. Loy AL, Goodnow CC. Novel approaches for identifying genes regulating lymphocyte development and function. *Curr Opin Immunol*. 2002;14:260–265. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11869902
590. Lee G, Namen AE, Gillis S, et al. Recombinant interleukin-7 supports the growth of normal B lymphocyte precursors. *Curr Top Microbiol Immunol*. 1988;141:16–18. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3265086
591. Hirayama F, Ogawa M. Cytokine regulation of early lymphohematopoietic development. *Stem Cells*. 1996;14:369–375. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8843538
592. Baird AM, Gerstein RM, Berg LJ. The role of cytokine receptor signaling in lymphocyte development. *Curr Opin Immunol*. 1999;11:157–166. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10322150
593. Funk PE, Kincade PW, Witte PL. Native associations of early hematopoietic stem cells and stromal cells isolated in bone marrow cell aggregates. *Blood*. 1994;83:361–369. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7506947
594. Medina KL, Kincade PW. Pregnancy-related steroids are potential negative regulators of B lymphopoiesis. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1994;91:5382–5386. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8202495
595. Smithson G, Couse JF, Lubahn DB, et al. The role of estrogen receptors and androgen receptors in sex steroid regulation of B lymphopoiesis. *J Immunol*. 1998;161:27–34. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9647203
596. Foster MP, Montecino-Rodriguez E, Dorshkind K. Proliferation of bone marrow pro-B cells is dependent on stimulation by the pituitary/thyroid axis. *J Immunol*. 1999;163:5883–5890. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10570273
597. Roark JH, Kuntz CL, Nguyen KA, et al. Breakdown of B cell tolerance in a mouse model of systemic lupus erythematosus. *J Exp Med*. 1995;181:1157–1167. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7532679
598. Chen C, Prak EL, Weigert M. Editing disease-associated autoantibodies. *Immunity*. 1997;6:97–105. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9052841
599. Xu H, Li H, Suri-Payer E, et al. Regulation of anti-DNA B cells in recombination-activating gene-deficient mice. *J Exp Med*. 1998;188:1247–1254. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9763604
600. Li H, Jiang Y, Prak EL, et al. Editors and editing of anti-DNA receptors. *Immunity*. 2001;15:947–957. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11754816
601. Chumley MJ, Dal Porto JM, Kawaguchi S, et al. A VH11V kappa 9 B cell antigen receptor drives generation of CD5+ B cells both in vivo and in vitro. *J Immunol*. 2000;164:4586–4593. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10779761
602. Arnold LW, Pennell CA, McCray SK, et al. Development of B-1 cells: segregation of phosphatidyl choline-specific B cells to the B-1 population occurs after immunoglobulin gene expression. *J Exp Med*. 1994;179:1585–1595. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8163938

CHAPTER 9

B-Lymphocyte Receptors, Signaling Mechanisms, and Activation

Akanksha Chaturvedi • Angel Davey • Wanli Liu • Hae Won Sohn • Susan K. Pierce

INTRODUCTION

The primary function of mature B lymphocytes in response to foreign antigens is to proliferate and differentiate into antibody-producing plasma cells that secrete large quantities of antibodies. Effective antibody responses are highly specific and of high affinity for the inducing antigen and of the appropriate isotype to allow the antibodies to carry out the effector functions, as described in Chapter 5, that best serve to eliminate an antigen-containing pathogen. For B cells to produce the most effective antibodies, they must have mechanisms that allow them to discern their specificity and affinity for antigens and to produce plasma cells that secrete antibodies of the appropriate isotype. In this chapter, we explore what we know and are learning about these mechanisms. Understanding how B cells recognize and respond to antigens will aid in our efforts to develop effective vaccines and to target therapies to block hyper-B-cell responses as in systemic autoimmune diseases and in some B-cell tumors.

B cells are activated by antigen by a process of clonal selection, a fundamental feature of the adaptive immune response. Each B cell expresses a membrane form of a single heavy (H) chain (V_HC_H) and a single light (L) chain (V_LC_L) that are assembled together with a noncovalently bound immunoglobulin (Ig)α–Igβ heterodimer into an antigen receptor, the B-cell receptor (BCR), which is expressed on the B-cell surface (Fig. 9.1). It is conservatively estimated that during a lifetime, an adult human expresses more than 10^{13} unique clonally distributed BCRs. This estimate is based, in part, on the diversity of H and L chain variable (V) regions that can be generated given the germ line encoded V gene segments and the molecular combinational and mutational mechanisms that create the V genes described in Chapter 6. When an antigen enters the immune system, it selects from among this extraordinarily large array those B cells whose receptors fit it best and signal these to proliferate and differentiate into antibody-secreting plasma cells. Even very simple antigens are predicted to find hundreds of B cells that express BCRs with sufficient specificity and affinity to be activated. This process of antigen selecting best fits from among the enormous array of preexisting B cells to proliferate and differentiate into antibody-secreting cells is a complicated process that takes place in highly specialized microenvironments in the secondary lymphoid organs and involves the functions of both T cells and innate immune system cells, as will be described in Chapter 10. Here, we focus on the events that follow antigen binding to the BCR that initiate signaling, an essential, critical first step in B-cell activation.

Antigen binding to the BCR triggers several signaling cascades that lead to the transcriptional activation of a variety of genes associated with B-cell activation (see Fig. 9.1). The BCR is also an internalizing receptor; under the influence of the signaling cascades, the BCR and bound antigen are actively endocytosed into the cell and trafficked to specialized intracellular compartments in which the antigen is processed and presented on major histocompatibility complex (MHC) class II molecules, as described in Chapter 22. The MHC-peptide complexes then move to the B-cell surface where they activate antigen-specific helper T cells to provide T-cell help, a complex process involving both direct interactions between B cells and T cells as well as the release of soluble cytokines by the T cells.

A considerable amount of what we know about the biochemical nature of the signaling pathways triggered by antigen binding to the BCR comes from studies in which multivalent antigens are provided to the B cell in solution (see Fig. 9.1). Although B cells can respond to antigens in solution, a variety of recent studies suggest that antigens are presented to B cells on the surface of antigen-presenting cells (APCs) including macrophages and dendritic cells present in the local microenvironments of the lymph nodes and spleen in which B cells are activated in vivo (see Fig. 9.1). Antigens may be presented on macrophages and dendritic cells as part of complement-fixed complexes bound to the complement receptors or immune complexes bound to FcRs expressed by these cells. We do not yet know if the molecular mechanisms by which antigens in solution and antigens on cell surfaces initiate signaling are identical, even though it appears in both cases that the engagement of antigen by the BCR results in the triggering of similar signaling cascades.

In this chapter, we describe what we are learning about the events that occur following the binding of the BCR to antigen that trigger signaling cascades that lead to B-cell activation. The question that will be addressed is how is the BCR's specificity and affinity for an antigen read by the BCR and transduced across the B cell's membrane to trigger intracellular signaling cascades that induce the B cell's response. The signaling cascades that are set off upon antigen binding have been described in considerable biochemical detail and will be reviewed in this chapter. However, biochemical analyses do not capture the spatial and temporal dynamics of the events that are triggered by antigen binding to the BCR. The recent applications of live cell imaging technologies are providing the first views of B cells as they encounter antigen with the resolution to follow individual BCRs. These images are showing us

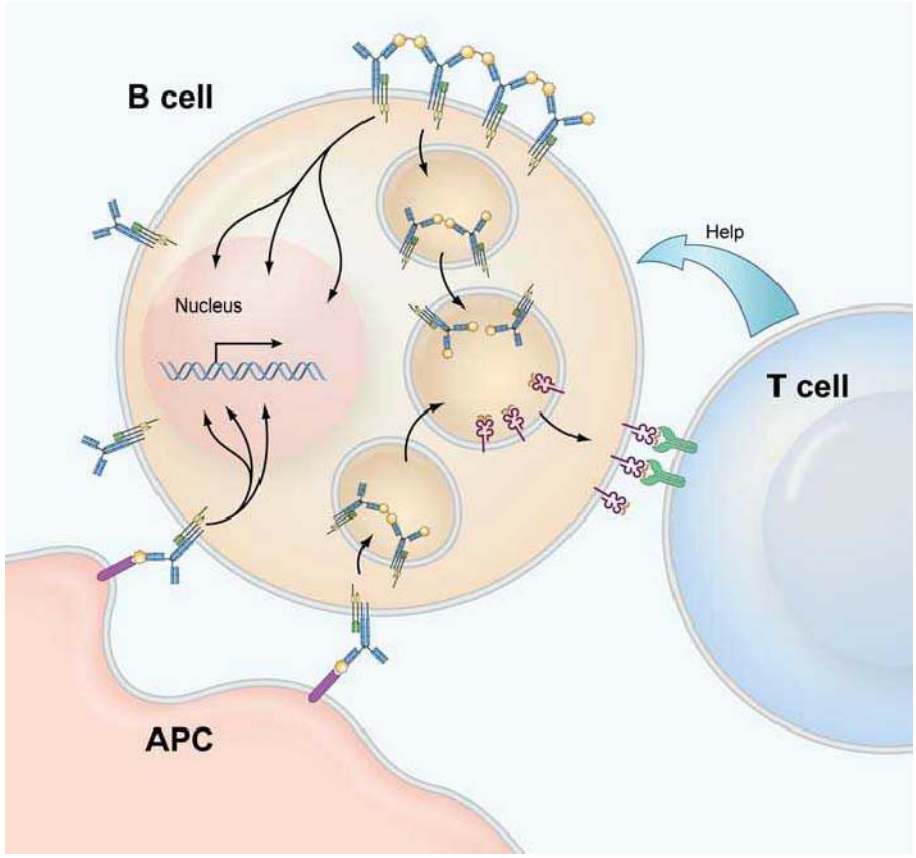


FIG. 9.1. Overview of the Activation of B Cells by Antigen. B-cell activation is initiated by the binding of antigen to the B-cell receptor (BCR). B cells encounter antigen either in solution or on the surface of an antigen-presenting cell (APC), likely as complement coupled antigens or as immune complexes bound to APC complement receptors or FcRs. Antigen binding triggers signaling cascades that lead to the activation of a variety of genes associated with B-cell activation. The BCR is also a trafficking receptor; under the influence of BCR signals, it transports antigens into intracellular compartments where the antigens are processed and presented on major histocompatibility complex class II molecules for recognition by helper T cells.

that the activation of B cells by antigen is far more dynamic than originally thought. It has been possible to infer from the behavior of the B cells and BCRs in these images the mechanisms underlying antigen-driven events that lead to B-cell activation. Such images are changing our view of BCR-mediated B-cell activation and are providing the tools to gain an understanding of the mechanisms underlying diseases that result from inappropriate B-cell activation including systemic autoimmune diseases and certain B-cell tumors.

As we consider the mechanisms by which antigens trigger B cells through BCRs, we need to be aware that B cells encounter antigen in both developmental and environmental contexts, and that these contexts greatly influence the outcome of antigen engagement. Consider, for example, that B cells express BCRs throughout their development from immature B cells to memory B cells. However, engagement of the BCR by antigen at different developmental stages has different outcomes. The binding of self-antigens to the BCRs expressed on immature B cells signals these cells, but the signals do not result in activation. This means that the developmental state of the B cell dictates the outcome of the BCR's engagement of antigen, either driving proliferation and differentiation in mature B cells or triggering mechanisms that lead to elimination or silencing of self-reactive immature B cells, as described in Chapter 8. The basic structure of the BCR does not change from the immature to the mature B-cell stage, but the BCR signals differently in different developmental cellular contexts. The outcome of BCR signaling is also influenced by the environmental context in which the antigen is encountered. Antigens enter the immune system in various contexts as relatively simple vaccines to complex microorganisms including viruses, bacteria, and parasites. Both vaccines and pathogens bring with them materials that can activate B cells through coreceptors other than the BCR as well as activate T cells and cells of the innate immune system to secrete products that bind to B cell coreceptors that influence how the BCR signals in response to the antigen. The molecular form of the antigen itself can influence the outcome of BCR antigen binding, as described in Chapters 10 and 23. Bacteria and some viruses display rigid arrays of antigens on their surface that induce antibody responses in the absence of helper T cells (coined T-independent antigens), as do polysaccharides on bacteria in which the carbohydrate moieties are arrayed as multimers. Thus, in predicting the outcome of BCR-antigen binding, we need to consider not only the antigen's interaction with the BCR but also the developmental state of the B cells, the environment in which the B cell is activated, and the nature of the antigen itself. In other words, BCR signaling always occurs in a context; to predict the outcome of antigen binding to the BCR, we need to be aware of that context.

The BCR also signals during development to provide survival signals to the B cell, often referred to as tonic signaling, and to keep B cells in nonresponsive or tolerant states, termed *anergic signaling*; however, we do not yet know how these signals relate to those that activate mature B cells.

Concerning the impact of the environmental context in which B cells are activated, this chapter will focus on the effect of B-cell coreceptors that directly affect BCR signaling. We will provide a comprehensive list of the coreceptors and what they respond to and describe how two of the best studied coreceptors, the enhancing cluster of differentiation (CD)19/CD21 complex and the inhibitory FcγRIIB receptor, function to influence B-cell responses. We will also comment on the interactions between the innate immune system's toll-like receptors (TLRs) and the BCR that appear to serve to regulate each other's signaling.

We hope that this chapter leaves the reader with a clear view of the early events that follow the engagement of antigen by the BCR and the signaling cascades that are triggered that ultimately activate B cells to proliferate and differentiate into antibody-secreting cells. We also hope that the reader gains an appreciation that B-cell activation occurs in both a developmental and environmental context that dictates the outcome of antigen binding to the BCR. Lastly, we consider the repercussions of uncontrolled BCR signaling that may result in B-cell tumors and in systemic autoimmune diseases.

THE STRUCTURE OF THE B-CELL RECEPTOR

The BCR belongs to the multichain immune recognition receptor (MIRR) family that includes the T-cell receptor for antigen and the high-affinity receptor for IgE. MIRR family members contain ligand-binding chains, which for the BCR is a membrane form of Ig (mIg) (Fig. 9.2). B cells express BCRs composed of Igs of all isotypes that are expressed in a developmentally controlled fashion beginning with IgM-BCRs in immature B cells, IgM- and IgD-BCRs in mature B cells, and then isotype switched BCRs, containing IgGs, IgAs, and IgEs in memory B cells. The mIgs have short cytoplasmic tails of 3 to 28 amino acids that, with the exception of IgG- and IgE-BCRs, do not connect directly with the cell's signaling apparatus.[1–3] Rather, the MIRRs ligand binding chains noncovalently associate with membrane proteins that contain immunoreceptor tyrosine-based activation motifs (ITAMs) in their cytoplasmic tails. For the BCR, the mIg associates with a disulfide linked heterodimer, Igα and Igβ, each chain of which has a single ITAM in its cytoplasmic tail (see Fig. 9.2).[4] The stoichiometry of the BCR complex is 1mIg:1Igα-Igβ determined by biochemical analysis as well as by live cell imaging (see Fig. 9.2).[5,6]

In considering how the BCR's engagement of antigen triggers signaling, it is helpful to consider what we know about the structure of the BCR. From x-ray crystallographic studies, we know that the antibody Fab does not undergo large conformational changes between the free and antigen-bound states that could transduce the information that the BCR has bound antigen to the BCR's cytoplasmic domains to initiate signaling.[7] However, the BCR is a complicated multichain complex and to date, there is no structure of a complete BCR containing mIg, Igα, and Igβ. Thus, a full understanding of the molecular basis of the antigen-induced initiation of BCR signaling will await the determination of the structure of the BCR. Recently, as an effort toward this goal, the structure of the disulphide-linked homodimer of Igβ was solved, which allowed the modeling of an Igα–Igβ heterodimer with the existing structure of the Cα4 domain.[8] These results predicted an unexpectedly extensive contact surface between the ectodomains of mIg and both Igα and Igβ through multiple charged residues that could potentially be sensitive to antigen-induced changes in the BCR's mIg.

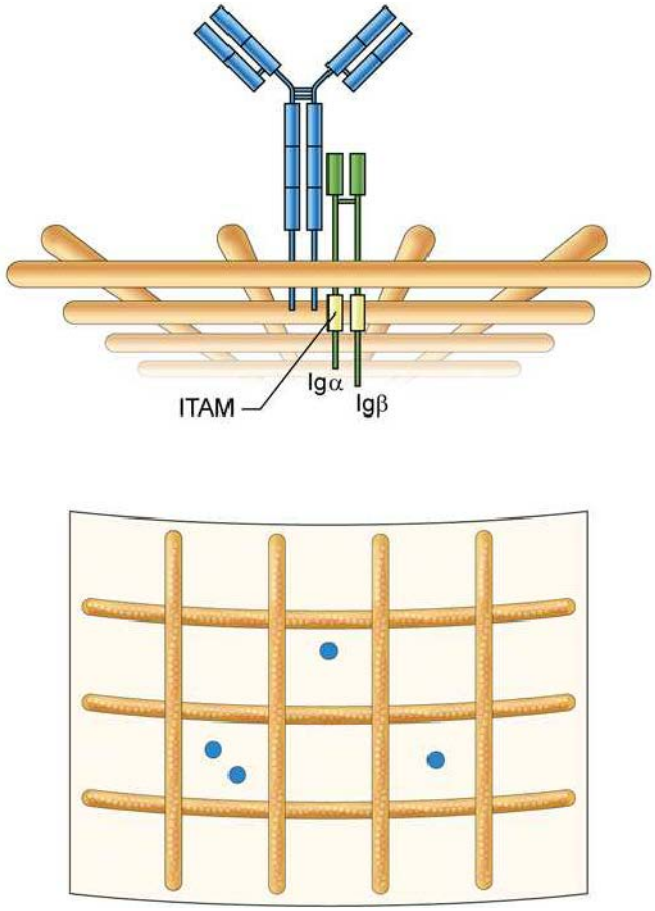


FIG. 9.2. The Structure and Organization of the B-Cell Receptor (BCR). The immunoglobulin (Ig)M BCR is composed of a membrane form of IgM associated with a covalently linked heterodimer of Igα and Igβ that contain in their cytoplasmic domains immunoreceptor tyrosine-based activation motifs. The BCR is depicted compartmentalized on the plasma membrane by actin cytoskeleton "fence"[9] as proposed by Batista et al.[21] Two different views are provided: a side view showing the BCR short cytoplasmic tail and the Igα-Igβ tails in the cytosol and a view from above showing the BCRs compartmentalized by actin "fences."

In considering how the BCR's engagement of antigen triggers signaling, it is also useful to consider the organization of the plasma membrane in which the BCR resides (see Fig. 9.2). Our current understanding of the plasma membrane is that it is not simply a fluid mosaic structure of freely diffusing proteins in a phospholipid bilayer, but rather, the plasma membrane appears to be partitioned into highly dynamic compartments formed by actin cytoskeleton "fences" and actin-anchored protein "pickets."[9,10] These compartments serve to organize the plasma membrane to control the diffusion of membrane proteins and concentrate proteins in one compartment or conversely segregate proteins into separate compartments. The fences and pickets are also

dynamic structures that can disassemble and reassemble during B-cell activation.

THE ANTIGEN-INDUCED CLUSTERING OF THE B-CELL RECEPTOR

Like other MIRRs, the BCR has no intrinsic receptor kinase activity, but upon antigen binding, the ITAM tyrosines in the Igα and Igβ chains are phosphorylated by the membrane-tethered kinase Lyn.[11,12] The phosphorylation of the BCR ITAMs leads to the recruitment of the Src homology 2 (SH2) domain-containing kinase Syk and the initiation of a variety of downstream signaling pathways described later in this chapter. The focus of this section is on the early events following antigen binding that lead to the phosphorylation of the BCR.

Until recently, most of what we learned about the responses of B cells to antigens came from biochemical studies of B cells responding to antigens in solution. Such studies showed that BCR signaling can only be initiated by the binding of multivalent antigens. As an example, only the bivalent $F(ab')_2$ fragments, but not the monovalent Fab fragments, of anti-IgM antibodies trigger BCR signaling.[12] By immunofluorescence imaging, following multivalent antigen binding, BCRs were observed to form microscopic clusters or patches on the cell surface that then move to one pole of the B cell to form a cap. Based on these biochemical studies, a widely accepted concept emerged that the physical aggregation of the BCR by multivalent antigens promoted the patching and capping of BCR that initiated signaling.

However, there is growing evidence both from studies in vitro as well as from intravital imaging in live animals that B cells are activated by membrane-bound antigens and not by antigens in solution. B cells were shown to be efficiently activated by antigens expressed on the surfaces of APCs in vitro resulting in the formation of a polarized bull's eye–like structure in which the BCRs are concentrated in the center, surrounded by the adhesion molecule lymphocyte function–associated antigen, which engages intercellular adhesion molecule on the APC surface.[13] Recent intravital imaging studies showed that B cells interacted with antigens on the surfaces of APCs in lymph nodes in vivo.[14–18] Antigens in lymphatic fluid enter lymph nodes through efferent vessels and gain access to B cells through various mechanisms.[19] Small soluble antigens move through follicular conduit networks and are presented to B cells within the follicles. Particle-like antigens, including viruses and immune complexes, are captured by macrophages lining the subcapsular sinuses and are then transported into the cortex of the lymph node where they are presented to B cells. In addition, B cells are also able to engage antigens on dendritic cell surfaces in the lymph nodes.[20] These findings provided a new view of the initiation of antigen-driven BCR signaling in which BCR signaling is initiated at the contact interface between B cells and APCs. Live cell imaging technologies are providing the tools to observe B cells as they first engage antigen on membrane surfaces. To facilitate these studies and gain high-resolution images, B cells are often activated by antigens incorporated into fluid planar lipid bilayers as surrogate APCs. These studies are revealing the B cells' engagement of membrane-bound antigens to be a remarkably dynamic event[21,22] that contrasts with the view of the patching and capping of BCRs that resulted from the simple physical cross-linking of BCRs by multivalent antigens in solution.

B cells first touch the antigen-containing bilayer through finger-like protrusions of their plasma membrane from which the BCRs engage antigen and form microclusters (Fig. 9.3).

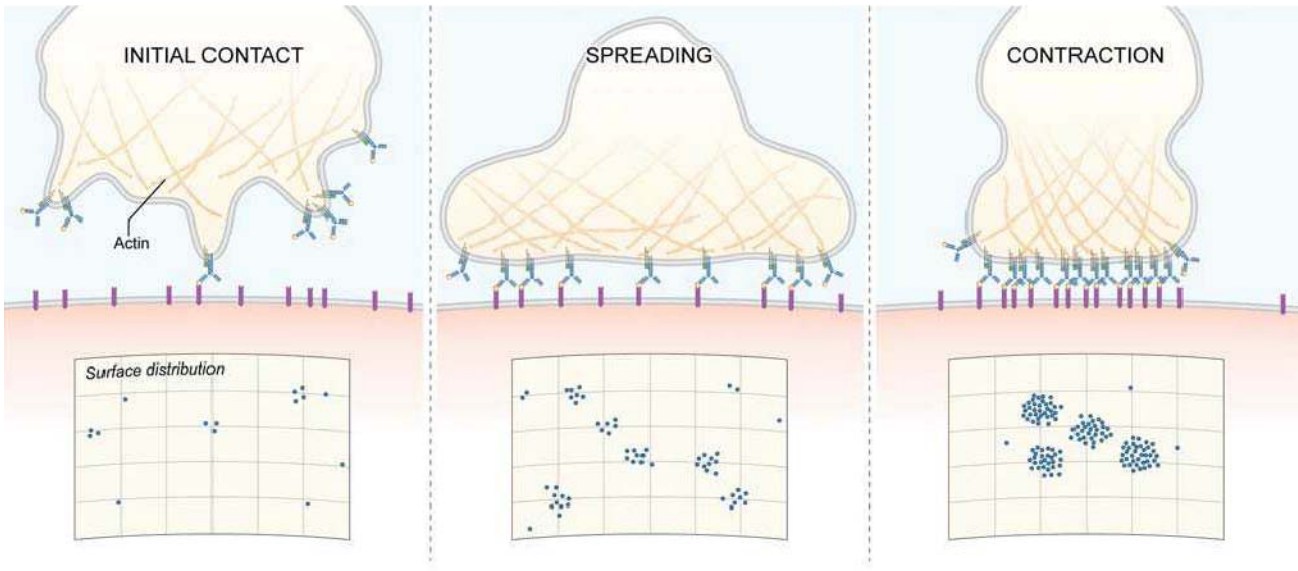


FIG. 9.3. The Activation of B Cells on Antigen-Presenting Cell (APC) Surfaces. The initial contact of the B cell with an antigen-containing APC surface is through finger-like protrusions of the membrane. Antigen binding induces B-cell receptor (BCR) clustering and signaling that triggers the B cell to spread over the APC surface, forming additional BCR clusters as antigens are encountered. After maximal spreading, the B cell contracts, actively moving BCR clusters to the center of the contact area ultimately forming an immune synapse.

These BCR microclusters are enriched in tyrosine phosphorylated proteins and are the site of Lyn and Syk recruitment and thus appear to be the elemental signaling units. B cells subsequently spread over the bilayer allowing the engagement of additional antigens (see Fig. 9.3). Following maximal spreading, the BCR-antigen microclusters are actively moved toward the center of the contact area, and the B cell contracts to form an immunologic synapse. This dynamic process of touching, spreading, and contraction occurs within minutes of the BCR's first contact with the bilayer.[23] These observations bring us back to the fundamental questions: How are BCR microclusters formed, and how do BCR microclusters trigger BCR signaling? Our understanding of these processes is still incomplete. However, based on current data, several models have been proposed that address these questions.

One model, the conformation-induced oligomerization model, is based on evidence from live cell imaging at the level of individual BCRs. Single BCR tracking provided evidence that BCRs are dispersed and freely diffusing in the plasma membrane of resting B cells. Upon binding antigens presented on lipid bilayers, BCRs formed immobile oligomers that grew into microclusters by trapping additional antigen-bound BCRs.[24] Remarkably, contrary to soluble antigens, monovalent antigens presented on fluid lipid bilayers, which could not physically cross-link BCRs, activated B cells equivalently to multivalent antigens. This observation led to the conclusion that the physical cross-linking of BCRs by multivalent antigens was not a requirement for BCR oligomerization or clustering. Early oligomerization and microcluster formation that occurred within 60 seconds of antigen binding were shown to be BCR-intrinsic events that did not require the signaling apparatus of the BCR.[25] Mutagenesis studies showed that the membrane-proximal Cμ4 portion of the ectodomain of mIgM (or the Cγ3 membrane-proximal domain of mIgG) was both necessary and sufficient for BCR oligomerization and signaling.[25] Thus, the membrane proximal domain of the mIg appeared to contain an oligomerization domain that was not exposed in the absence of antigen binding. It was hypothesized that the B cell's binding antigen presented on an APC surface exerted a force on the BCR that revealed the oligomerization domain, allowing oligomerization of antigen-bound BCRs as they randomly bumped on the membrane. This model provides a mechanism by which the universe of foreign, structurally distinct antigens can bring BCRs into a precise signaling-active oligomer by the monovalent binding of BCRs to epitopes on APC-presented antigens. This model also suggests how BCRs are able to so exquisitely discriminate their affinity for antigen by monovalent binding, avoiding the affinity obscuring effects of the avidity contributed by multivalent antigen binding to bivalent BCRs.

Another model for the initiation of BCR signaling based on live cell single molecule imaging focuses on the role of the actin cytoskeleton in signaling.[26–29] In this model, the membrane cytoskeleton fences and pickets restrict BCR mobility and interactions with signaling molecules and coreceptors. BCR signaling results in the disruption of the cytoskeleton barriers and increases the likelihood that the antigen-engaged BCR will encounter activated kinases and coreceptors.[29] The actin cytoskeleton may also segregate BCRs from kinases and phosphatases at steady state. Current evidence suggests that the cytoskeleton fences and pickets confine the BCR and inhibitory phosphatases to the same areas, and that BCR signaling serves to disrupt the cytoskeleton and allow the BCRs and phosphatases to diffuse away, promoting B-cell activation.

A third model, the dissociation activation model, is based on biochemical studies.[6,30] In this model, in resting B cells in the absence of antigen most BCRs exist on the B-cell surface as signaling-inactive, autoinhibited oligomers in equilibrium with a small number of signaling-active BCR monomers.[30] The binding of multivalent antigen disrupts the oligomers shifting the equilibrium toward BCR active monomers, which are then clustered by the multivalent antigen in a manner that prevents the formation of inactive oligomers within the cluster. This model also accounts for the ability of structurally diverse antigens to activate B cells by proposing that antigens keep BCRs apart rather than bringing them together into well-ordered oligomers.

THE ROLE OF B-CELL RECEPTOR AFFINITY AND ISOTYPE IN SIGNALING

Affinity maturation and class switching are two hallmark features of humoral immune responses.[31] In a typical T-cell–dependent antibody response, antigen-specific antibodies become increasingly higher in affinity and predominantly of the IgG isotype through the linked molecular processes of somatic hypermutation and class switching. Because the B-cell immune response functions through clonal selection, it is presumed that affinity maturation and class switching reflect an advantage of B cells expressing high-affinity, class-switched BCRs in the selection process. Indeed, adoptive transfer studies provided clear evidence that high-affinity B-cell outcompete low-affinity B-cell clones for survival in vivo.[32–38] Similarly, when comparing IgM and class-switched BCRs, several seminal studies showed that class-switched B cells outcompete IgM B cells for survival in vivo, and that this survival advantage can be attributed to the 28 amino acid cytoplasmic tail of mIgG,[1,2] missing in mIgM and mIgD. The question is at what point in the antigen-selection process does a high-affinity, class-switched BCR gain an advantage?

Biochemical experiments suggested that the signals that are triggered through high-affinity BCRs are qualitatively different from signals through low-affinity BCRs.[39] At an earlier point in B-cell activation, the affinity of the BCR for antigen was shown to determine the degree to which B cells spread over antigen-containing fluid lipid bilayers, allowing increased accumulation of antigen into the immune synapse and subsequent enhanced responses.[23] The IgG-BCR cytoplasmic tail is responsible for the enhanced B-cell proliferative responses to antigen in vitro and signaling cascades that have been shown to be qualitatively different from those triggered by IgM-BCRs.[3,40–42] Enhanced signaling through IgG-BCRs is dependent on the phosphorylation of a tyrosine in the IgG tail that serves to recruit growth factor-receptor-bound protein 2 (Grb2), resulting in sustained kinase activation and enhanced B-cell proliferation.[3]

Recent studies using high-resolution imaging to follow single BCRs showed that the earliest events that occur following antigen binding to the BCR are also highly sensitive to both the affinity of the BCR for antigen and the isotype of the BCR. Comparing BCRs that differed 50-fold in their affinity for antigen, it was observed that high-affinity BCRs more readily formed BCR microclusters that grow more rapidly, thereby resulting in larger microclusters that recruit more Syk and signal for more robust calcium responses.[24] These imaging experiments also demonstrate that IgG-BCRs are dramatically enhanced in their ability to oligomerize and to grow microclusters, ultimately leading to increased recruitment of Syk and more robust calcium responses as compared to IgM-BCRs of the same affinity.[43] The enhanced function of IgG-BCRs was mapped to a novel membrane proximal 15 amino acid region of the cytoplasmic tail. These studies place the effects of both affinity maturation and class switching at the earliest steps in the initiation of BCR signaling.

HOW B-CELL RECEPTOR CLUSTERING TRIGGERS SIGNALING

Another fundamental yet still open question related to the initiation of BCR signaling is how BCR clustering in response to antigen recruits Lyn to phosphorylate the antigen-bound BCRs and triggers signaling. One simple explanation is that Lyn is constitutively associated with the cytoplasmic domains of some monomeric BCRs, but only phosphorylates BCRs in trans when the BCRs are clustered. However, recent studies suggest that the mechanism for recruitment of Lyn may be more complicated. Lyn is lipidated and tethered to the inner leaflet of the plasma membrane. BCR clustering has been shown to perturb the local lipid environment leading to the transient coalescence of lipid rafts around the BCR oligomers followed by a more stable association of the BCR microcluster with lipid tethered Lyn.[44] Thus, the BCR's perturbation of the membrane may serve to recruit Lyn to the BCR cluster. BCR clustering has also been shown to alter the way the Igα and Igβ chains' cytoplasmic domains associate. In the absence of antigen, the domains are in close proximity in a "closed" conformation and upon antigen binding, the domains "open"; the opening is simultaneous with Lyn's phosphorylation of the ITAMs.[5] Thus, BCR clustering may serve to reveal the ITAMs for phosphorylation by Lyn.

B-CELL RECEPTOR–TRIGGERED SIGNALING CASCADES

BCR signaling is a multistep process that involves the initiation of signaling by the activation of protein tyrosine kinases (PTKs), serine-threonine kinases, and lipid kinases; amplification of signaling by recruiting adaptors; generation of second messengers; and finally activation of the transcription of genes involved in B-cell responses.

Initiation of B-Cell Receptor Signaling—Protein Tyrosine Kinase Activation

Following BCR clustering, three different families of PTKs, Src, Syk, and Tec, are activated sequentially. This sequential activation of the members of the three different PTK families is essential to trigger and regulate downstream signaling. The importance of these PTKs in the B-cell signaling is underscored by the fact that deficiencies in any one of the three families result in aberrant B cell development and function (Table 9.1). The first kinases that are activated following BCR cross-linking are the Src family PTKs, primarily Lyn, but also Blk and Fyn followed by the activation of Syk and the Tec family kinase, Btk[45] (Fig. 9.4). ITAM phosphorylation of Igα-Igβ by Lyn generates phosphotyrosine motifs that allow the binding of the SH2 domains (Box 9.1) of the second kinase, Syk, resulting in rapid Syk activation. Upon binding to phosphorylated ITAMs, Syk undergoes autophosphorylation at multiple tyrosines within its linker regions that not only prolongs Syk's activation but also creates SH2 binding sites on Syk for the recruitment of downstream signaling molecules, including PLC-γ2,[46] leading to a positive feedback of BCR signaling and the concomitant influx of calcium.[12] Btk is the third PTK that is activated upon BCR cross-linking.[47] The importance of Btk in BCR signaling for the development, activation, and differentiation of B cells is underscored by the fact that the loss-of-function mutations of the gene encoding Btk lack circulating B lymphocytes, are unable to generate Igs, and cannot mount humoral immune responses.[48] This primary immunodeficiency is named X-linked agammaglobulinemia.[49,50] Similarly, a spontaneous mutation in the mouse Btk gene leads to X-linked immunodeficiency.[51] Btk consists of multiple protein domains including PH, SH2, SH3, and kinase domains (see Box 9.1), which define its subcellular location and regulate its activity. For Btk activation, plasma membrane localization is important, which is governed by the interactions between the PH domain of Btk with phosphatidylinositol (PI)(3,4,5)P_3, the product of PI3K activity and between the SH2 domain of Btk with phosphorylated BLNK, an adaptor protein. Mutation in the PH domain of Btk (R28C) leads to classical X-linked agammaglobulinemia,[52] substantiating the importance of plasma membrane localization for Btk activation. Following BCR cross-linking, Btk translocates from the cytosol to the plasma membrane where it is activated by phosphorylation at Y551 in its catalytic domain by Lyn[53–55] followed by an autophosphorylation of its SH3 domain.[54,56] Once activated, Btk triggers a cascade of signaling events that culminate in calcium mobilization through phosphorylation of PLC-γ2, cytoskeletal rearrangements, Vav activation, and transcriptional activation involving NF-κB.

Amplification of B-Cell Receptor Signaling—Recruitment of Adaptors

BCR-mediated signaling is a complex process in which each phosphorylation event is linked with another in a regulated manner, thereby generating a large number of protein–protein interaction networks ultimately resulting in the formation of a large, well-ordered structure often referred to as a signalosome. Interactions between signaling networks are regulated by a number of scaffolding or adaptor proteins, which regulate BCR-mediated signaling cascades not only by recruiting multiple signaling intermediates to the proper location but also by controlling interactions between signaling components. Recent studies have identified the roles of

TABLE 9.1 The Phenotype of Mice Deficient in Key B-Cell Signaling Components

Target Protein	Major Phenotype	Reference
Igα cytoplasmic domain	Normal pre-B-cell development; completely impaired mature B-cell development	184
Igβ	Complete block at the pro-B-cell stage	185
Igμ	Deletion of mature B cells; increased Fas expression	186
Lyn	Normal B-cell development in the bone marrow; reduced number of peripheral B cells; increased proportion of immature B cells; enhanced BCR induced ERK activation and hyperproliferative responses	187
Syk	Block in transition of the pro-B- to the pre-B-cell stage; intact Igα-Igβ ITAM phosphorylation in remaining B cells; abolished BCR-induced calcium influx; failure to transmit downstream signals	188,189
Btk	Reduced number of peripheral B cells; increased immature B cells; complete loss of B1 B cells; fail to respond to TI-II antigens	190–193
BLNK	Block in transition of the pro-B- to the pre-B-cell stage; incomplete block in B-cell development; fail to respond to both TD and TI antigens	194–196
PLC-γ2	Decreased mature B cells; block in pro-B-cell differentiation; B1 B–cell deficiency; block in BCR-induced calcium influx and proliferation	197,198
BCAP	Reduced number of B cells; B1 B–cell deficiency; reduced serum IgM and IgG3 levels; abolished TI antibody response; reduced BCR induced calcium influx and proliferation	82
PI3K, p110 subunit	Reduced numbers of B1 and marginal zone B cells; reduced serum Ig levels; defective primary and secondary response to TD antigens; diminished response to TI-II antigens; reduced BCR, CD40, and LPS induced proliferation	199,200
PI3K p85 subunit	Reduced number of peripheral B cells and B1 cell; reduced serum Ig levels; reduced BCR- and CD40-induced proliferative response; abolished TI antibody response	201,202
PKC-β	Failure to activate IKK and degrade IκB; failure to upregulate NF-κB–dependent survival signals; impaired humoral immune responses and reduced cellular responses	203,204
Bam32	Normal B-cell development; impaired TI-II antibody responses; reduced responses to BCR cross-linking	89
Vav1/2	Reduced number of B cells; defects in formation of germinal centers and class switching; defective immune responses against TD and TI antigens; impaired BCR-induced calcium influx and proliferation	205,206
Rac	Reduced number of mature and marginal zone B cells and B1-a cells and IgM secreting plasma cells; increased number of peripheral B cells in blood; reduced serum IgM and IgA concentration	207
CD19	Defective response to TD antigens; failure to form germinal centers and undergo affinity maturation; lack of B-1, marginal zone B cells; reduced BCR- and CD40-induced proliferative responses	191,208,209
CD22	Decreased surface IgM levels; augmented BCR-induced calcium; compromised marginal zone B-cell compartment	210,211
PIRB	Increased number of peritoneal B1 cells; constitutive activation of follicular B cells; increased BCR-induced proliferation	212
Calcineurin	Reduced number of B1 cells; reduced plasma cell differentiation; decreased TD antibody response; BCR-induced proliferation defects	102
IKKα	Reduced mature B-cell population; impaired basal and Ag-specific Ig production; disrupted splenic architecture including germinal center formation; decreased expression of NF-κB target genes	213,214
IKKβ	Disappearance of mature B cells	215
NEMO	Disappearance of mature B cells	215

BCR, B-cell receptor; CD, cluster of differentiation; Ig, immunoglobulin; ITAM, immunoreceptor tyrosine-based activation motif; LPS, lipopolysaccharide; TD, T-dependent; TI, T-independent.

adaptors in B-cell activation, leading to important insights into how they integrate BCR signaling. Although adaptors generally lack any enzymatic activity, they consist of multiple protein–protein or protein–lipid interaction domains, including SH2, SH3, PH and PX homology domains (see Box 9.1). Each of these domains has the potential to interact with a number of proteins that are critical to amplify BCR signaling by facilitating the coupling of multiple downstream signaling pathways. Essentially, the adaptors define where and when macromolecular complexes are assembled, allowing both spatial and temporal regulation of signaling cascades. To illustrate the importance of adaptors, we describe the functions of three: B-cell linker protein (BLNK); B-cell adaptor for PI3K (BCAP), and B-cell adaptor molecule of 32 kDa (Bam32).

BLNK—Integrating Protein Tyrosine Kinases and PLC-γ2

BCR clustering activates Lyn and Syk that regulate a variety of effectors including PLC-γ2, an essential phospholipase for

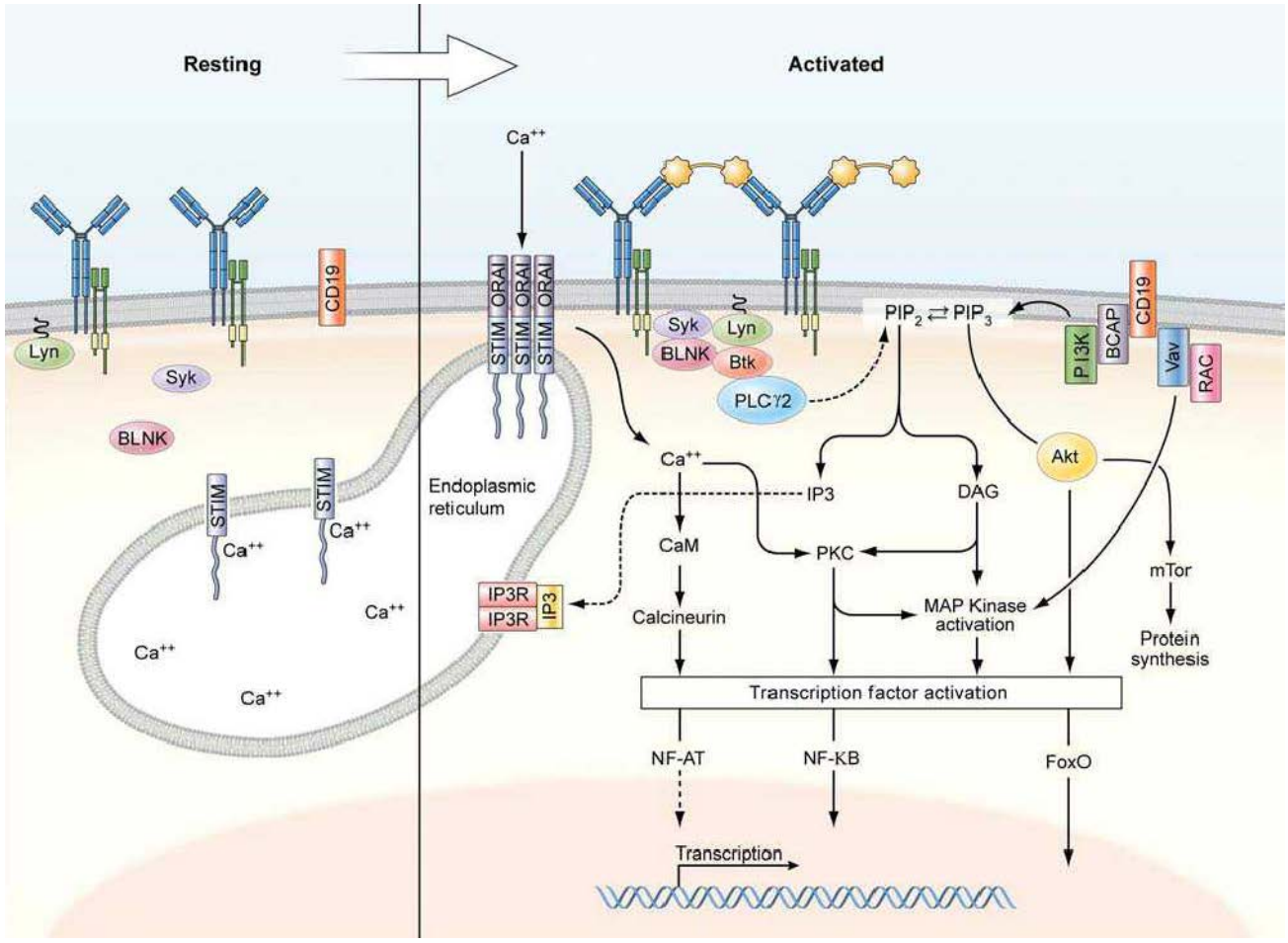


FIG. 9.4. Schematic Depiction of B-Cell Receptor (BCR) Signaling. Presented is a highly simplified version of the signaling pathways triggered by antigen-induced BCR clustering. Antigen binding to the BCR leads to the formation of signalosome consisting of BCR, protein tyrosine kinases, adaptors, and effector molecules. BCR clustering results in PI3K activation, leading to the production of PIP3 from PIP2 and PLC-γ2 activation resulting in the production of IP3 and diacyl glycerol (DAG) from PIP2. Binding of IP3 to the IP3 receptor on the endoplasmic reticulum (ER) opens channels in the ER membrane leading to calcium release and depletion of ER calcium. Calcium depletion is sensed by STIM, a calcium-binding protein, which results in its oligomerization and movement to regions of the ER membrane in close proximity to the plasma membrane where it interacts with Orai opening the calcium release–activated channel, resulting in calcium influx. Calcium, DAG, and PIP3 trigger signaling cascades leading to mitogen-activated protein kinase and transcription factor activation and activation of the Akt pathways promoting cell survival and growth.

calcium responses. Although Syk can directly phosphorylate PLC-γ2 in vitro,[57] expression of a functional BCR, Lyn, and Syk in nonlymphoid cells did not induce PLC-γ2 phosphorylation or calcium mobilization,[58] leading to the discovery of the B-cell–specific adaptor protein, BLNK. BLNK (also known as SLP-65 or BASH) is a cytoplasmic protein consisting of an N-terminal region containing a short leucine zipper motif, a proline-rich region within the middle third of the molecule, and a C-terminal SH2 domain. BLNK contains 13 tyrosine residues, of which 6 are in putative SH2 binding motifs and are phosphorylated upon BCR clustering. BLNK is recruited to the clustered BCR by binding through its SH2 domain to the phosphorylated non-ITAM tyrosine 204 in Igα. Mice with a Igα Y204 mutation exhibit reduced BLNK phosphorylation and calcium fluxes.[59] Once translocated to the plasma membrane, BLNK is phosphorylated by Syk, which creates docking sites for SH2 domains of multiple effector molecules facilitating interactions among them and allowing them to phosphorylate and activate their respective signaling pathways. One of the best studied examples of how BLNK bridges multiple signaling components is provided by the activation of PLC-γ2. PLC-γ2 activation is completely abolished in Syk-deficient B cells.[60] In addition, BCR-induced PLC-γ2 activation is diminished in Btk-deficient B cells, suggesting that both Syk and Btk are required for PLC-γ2 activation.[61] However, the mechanisms underlying how these two families of PTKs regulate PLC-γ2 activation became clear only after the discovery of BLNK. After phosphorylation by Syk, BLNK creates binding sites for the SH2 domains of both Btk and PLC-γ2, bringing them into close proximity with each other, and hence facilitating PLC-γ2 phosphorylation at Tyr753 and Tyr759 by Btk, which is required for PLC-γ2 activation.[62–68] Cells expressing a mutant BLNK lacking either Btk or PLC-γ2 binding sites

BOX 9.1. PROTEIN MODULES INVOLVED IN SIGNAL TRANSDUCTION

Src homology 2 (SH2) domain. The SH2 domain is a structurally conserved protein domain present in the Src oncoprotein from which its name is derived and in many signaling molecules including those involved in B-cell signaling. SH2 domains bind with high affinity to peptide sequences within target proteins that contain phosphorylated tyrosine residues but have no affinity for the unphosphorylated sequence. This allows tyrosine phosphorylation to act as a molecular switch, recruiting SH2 domain–containing proteins to activated receptors and initiating signaling cascades. Important SH2 domain–containing proteins involved in B-cell signaling include Lyn, Syk, Btk, PLC-γ2, BLNK, and Grb2.

Src homology 3 (SH3) domain. SH3 domains are protein modules that recognize proline-rich sequences, in particular those containing a PxxP motif, which do not require phosphorylation. However, recent studies have suggested that the SH3 domains also bind to nonproline-rich sequences accounting for diverse functions they mediate. Some examples in B cells are Lyn, Btk, and Grb2.

Pleckstrin homology (PH) domain. The PH domain is a lipid binding module that recognizes phosphoinositides phosphorylated at the 3 position of the inositol ring, the most important of which is $PI(3,4,5)P_3$, the product of PI3K's phosphorylation of $PI(4,5)P_2$. This property allows PH domain–containing proteins to bind to the inner leaflet of the plasma membrane following PI3K activation where they function. PH domain–containing proteins in B cells include Btk, Vav, Akt, Gab, and Bam32.

Phox homology (PX) domain. The PX domain is another phosphoinositide-binding domain that was originally identified in two cytosolic components of the nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide phosphate (NADPH) oxidase, p40phox and p47phox. In a majority of cases, PX domains contain a proline-rich motif, PxxP, in the middle that serves as SH3 binding motif, suggesting that PX domains might directly interact with SH3 domains as well. PX domains have been shown to play diverse cellular functions including vesicle docking and fusion, cell signaling, and protein sorting. An example in B cells is phospholipase D.

show significant reduction in calcium activation, further suggesting that BLNK acts as a scaffold for bridging Btk to PLC-γ2.[69] A single BLNK molecule can bind three PLC-γ2 molecules, thus BLNK also functions as an amplifier of BCR signaling.[62] Following BCR clustering, both BLNK and Btk are also translocated to the plasma membrane bringing along PLC-γ2 and allowing it to gain access to its substrate $PI(4,5)P_2$ in the inner leaflet of the plasma membrane.[66–68] In addition to phosphorylating PLC-γ2 and recruiting it to the plasma membrane, Btk also recruits PIP5 kinase to the plasma membrane, which catalyzes $PI(4,5)P_2$ synthesis from PIP(4)P to ensure that activated PLC-γ2 does not run out of its substrate.[70] Once activated, PLC-γ2 hydrolyzes $PI(4,5)P_2$ to generate two important second messengers: inositol trisphosphate (IP_3) and diacyl glycerol (DAG). BLNK not only couples Btk and PLC-γ2, but it also binds to the SH2 domains of Vav and Nck, resulting in activating the mitogen-activated protein (MAP) kinase pathway, cytoskeletal rearrangements, and BCR internalization.[71]

BCAP—Integrating Protein Tyrosine Kinases and PI3K

PI3K is a heterodimeric enzyme consisting of a catalytic subunit (p110) and a regulatory subunit (p85) that phosphorylates phosphatidylinositol lipids generating lipid derivatives at the inner leaflet of the plasma membrane that serve as second messengers for downstream signaling.[72,73] Of particular interest is the generation of $PI(3,4,5)P_3$ from $PI(4,5)P_2$, which serves as a ligand for the proteins containing PH domains and tethers these to the membrane. Although multiple isoforms of PI3K are known, p110δ and p85α are the predominant isoforms in B cells. Gene targeting experiments have established the role of these subunits in the development and activation of B cells (Table 9.2). Deletion or inactivation of either of the two subunits of PI3K demolish BCR-induced phosphorylation of Akt, FoxO, and protein kinase D and results in reduced calcium flux, impaired cell cycle progression, and reduced glucose metabolism.[74–80] Despite the critical role of PI3K in BCR signaling, the mechanisms by which the BCR-associated PTKs regulate the PI3K pathway is unclear. It has been proposed that tyrosines in the cytoplasmic tail of CD19, which are phosphorylated upon BCR clustering, provide binding sites for the SH2 domains of the p85 subunit of PI3K, recruiting it to the plasma membrane and increasing the specific activity of the enzyme. However, the observation that defects in p85α KO mice are more severe than those in CD19 KO mice suggested that additional adaptor molecules may participate in bridging BCR-associated PTKs and PI3K, leading to the discovery of another B-cell–specific adaptor molecule, BCAP.[81] BCAP contains multiple tyrosines, which are phosphorylated after BCR stimulation through the concerted actions of Syk and Btk, thereby creating binding sites for SH2 domains of the p85 subunit of PI3K. BCAP was shown to regulate PI3K signaling in CD19-deficient B cells, but in BCAP KO mice, PI3K signaling was largely unaffected in B cells,[81,82] suggesting that in the absence of BCAP, CD19 functions as a major adaptor. Indeed, CD19/BCAP double knockout mice show an almost complete block of BCR-mediated Akt activation and severe defects in the generation of immature and mature B cells.[83] Recently a GTPase, TC21, was also identified as an adaptor for PI3K activation by binding directly to Igα-Igβ.[84]

Bam32—Linking B-Cell Receptors to Mitogen-Activated Protein Kinase Activation and Cytoskeletal Rearrangements

Bam32 bridges clustered BCRs to two important pathways, namely, Rac and cdc42, which trigger cytoskeletal rearrangement leading to cell adhesion, polarization, and motility and to activation of the MAP kinase c-Jun N-terminal kinase (Jnk) and extracellular signal-regulated kinases (ERK)

TABLE 9.2 B-Cell Coreceptors that Influence B-Cell Receptor Signaling

Coreceptor	Activating (+) or Inhibitory (–)	Phosphorylated Motif(s)	Ligand(s)	Signaling Molecules Recruited upon Motif Phosphorylation	Expressed in Humans (H) or Mice (M)	References
CD19	+	Tyr residues	C3-coated antigen	PI3K + Vav + Lyn + PLC-γ2	H + M	126,127,216
FcμR (FAIM3/TOSO)	+	Ser + Tyr residues	IgM	PI3K + PLCγ-1	H + M	131,217
FcRL1 (FcRH1)	+	ITAM	Unknown	Unknown Tyr kinase?	H + M	132,218,219
PIRA	+	ITAM on associated FcRγ	MHC-1	Unknown	M	133,134,220,221
CD45R (B220)	+	PTP domain	CD22?	C-terminal Tyr of SFKs	H + M	135,136,222,223
CD148 (HPTPh)	+	PTP domain	Unknown	C-terminal Tyr of SFKs	H + M	137,138
FcγRIIB (CD32B)	–	ITIM	IgG-IC	SHIP	H + M	139–141,224
CD22 (BL-CAM)	–	ITIM	Sialic acid	SHP-1	H + M	223–227
PIRB	–	ITIM	MHC-1	SHP-1 (+ SHP-2?)	M	133,220,221,224
ILT-2	–	ITIM	HLA-A, -B + -G (MHC-1)	SHP-1	H	224
CD72 (Lyb-2)	–	ITIM	CD100, CD5	SHP-1	H + M	224,227,228
CD5 (Ly1)	–	ITIM	CD72 (+ others?)	SHP-1	H + M	224,229
PD-1	–	ITIM	IgSF protein	SHP-2	H + M	224
CD66a (BGP-1)	–	ITIM	CD66a	SHP-1 + SHP-2	H + M	224
FcRL4	–	ITIM	Unknown	SHP-1 + SHP-2	H	132,219
FcRL2 (FcRH2)	–	ITAM/ITIM	Unknown	SHP-1	H	132,153
FcRL3 (FcRH3)	–	ITAM/ITIM	Unknown	SHIP + SHP-1 + SHP-2	H	132,154
FcRL5 (FcRH5)	–	ITAM/ITIM	Unknown	SHP-1	H + M	132,155
FcRL6 (FcRH6)[a]	–	ITIM	HLA-DR (MHC-2)	SHP-2	M	132,230,231

CD, cluster of differentiation; HLA, human leukocyte antigen; Ig, immunoglobulin; IC, immune-complex; IgSF, immunoglobulin superfamily; ITAM, immunoreceptor tyrosine-based activation motif; ITIM, immunoreceptor tyrosine-based inhibitory motif; MHC, major histocompatibility complex; PTP, protein tyrosine phosphatase; SFK, Src-family kinase; SHIP, SH2-containing inositol 5′-phosphatase; SHP, SH2-domain-containing protein tyrosine phosphatase.
[a] FcRL6 motif, ligand, and signaling molecule information was obtained from studies of human T and natural killer cells.

that play central roles in the activation of transcription factors that regulate the expression of genes involved in B-cell proliferation, differentiation, and survival.[85–88] Following BCR clustering, Bam32 translocates to the plasma membrane in a PI3K-dependent mechanism through its PH domain[88] where it binds to Rac and cdc42 leading to their activation, triggering downstream signaling to Jnk and ERK. Mice deficient in Bam32 show diminished Jnk and ERK phosphorylation.[89] Rac activation is diminished in Bam32-deficient B cells, whereas overexpression of Bam32 results in enhanced Rac activation.[90]

Generation of Second Messengers

As described previously, binding of the PTKs and various signaling intermediates such as PLC-γ2 and PI3K on various adaptors results in the activation of these enzymes resulting in the generation of second messengers including calcium, DAG, and phosphoinositides. These second messengers play a crucial role in regulating BCR signaling by virtue of their ability to affect downstream signaling initiated by the BCR.

Calcium as a Second Messenger

Calcium mobilization is a multistep process that is initiated with the activation of PLC-γ2 that hydrolyzes $PI(4,5)P_2$ present in the inner leaflet of the plasma membrane to generate IP3 and DAG. A receptor for IP3 (IP3R) is present as a tetramer on the ER membrane that forms a calcium channel.[91] The binding of IP3 to the IP3R activates the receptor and opens the channel resulting in the release of calcium from the ER into the cytosol. Depletion of intracellular ER calcium stores results in the oligomerization of the ER calcium sensor, STIM1, an ER membrane protein that contains in its cytoplasmic domain an EF-hand calcium-binding domain.[92,93] STIM1 oligomers rapidly redistribute into clusters and move to junctions of the ER and plasma membrane where STIM1 interacts with Orai, a calcium release–activated channel, and activates Orai to open, triggering the entry of extracellular calcium into the cytosol.[94–96] A single missense mutation (R91W) in human Orai or a truncation mutation in STIM1 causes severe combined immune deficiency supporting the functional roles of STIM1 and Orai in calcium signaling in the immune system.[97,98] The increase in cytosolic calcium is sensed by various calcium-binding proteins, ultimately leading to activation of several downstream pathways including activation of protein kinase C (PKC) and transcription factors nuclear factor of activated T cells (NFAT) and NF-κB. One of the major cytosolic calcium-binding proteins, calmodulin, functions as a calcium sensor by binding to calcium with its two EF hands. Calcium-bound calmodulin activates several molecules including calcineurin, which is a phosphatase that dephosphorylates NFAT resulting in NFAT's translocation into the nucleus where it activates the transcription of target genes. One of the targets of NFAT in B cells is interferon

regulatory factor 4, a critical transcription factor for the differentiation of plasma cells.[99–101] Indeed, calcineurin-deficient B cells show reduced plasma cell differentiation and decreased antigen-specific antibody responses to antigens.[102]

Diacylglycerol as Second Messenger

The second product of $PI(4,5)P_2$ hydrolysis by PLC-γ2 is DAG that together with calcium activates PKC-β that regulates the NF-κB pathway. NF-κB in resting B cells is retained in the cytoplasm by binding to its inhibitor, IκB. BCR clustering induces IκB phosphorylation, through a PKC-β–initiated pathway, ubiquitination, and subsequent degradation, allowing translocation of NF-κB into the nucleus.[103–105] Aberrant activation of NF-κB has been linked to defective B-cell activation leading to multiple immune disorders. Ablation of PKC-β, which leads to the defective activation of the NF-κB pathway, results in defective B-cell activation and maturation.[106] In humans, mutations in components of the NF-κB pathway are associated with the formation of lymphomas.[107–113] In addition to activating PKC-β, DAG also recruits the DAG binding Ras guanine nucleotide releasing protein 3 (RasGRP3) to the plasma membrane, thus initiating the Ras to Raf to MEK to ERK pathway.[114] Deletion of the DAG-binding domain from RasGRP blocks the movement of RasGRP3 to the plasma membrane and the activation of Ras. The Ras–Raf–MEK–ERK signaling pathway plays a critical role in antigen-induced proliferation of mature B cells.[115] Ras is also involved in developing B cells, as transgenic expression of dominant negative forms of Ras blocks developmental progression to the pre–B cell and immature B-cell stages.[116,117] Major targets of ERK in B cells are Ets-family transcription factors, resulting in the expression of early response genes including Egr1 that has been shown to promote expression of adhesion molecules.[118]

Phosphoinositides as Signaling Mediators—A Diverse Group of Molecules Regulating Diverse Pathways

PI is unique among membrane lipids as it can undergo reversible phosphorylation at multiple sites on its inositol head group by lipid kinases and phosphatases to generate a variety of phosphorylated PI lipids called phosphoinositides. Phosphoinositides play crucial roles in cell signaling and membrane trafficking. As described previously, BCR clustering leads to the accumulation of the phosphoinositide, $PI(4,5)P_2$, the substrate for PLC-γ2, which generates two crucial second messengers, IP3 and DAG. Another important phosphoinositide is the PI3K-generated $PI(3,4,5)P_3$ that provides a ligand for recruiting important PH domain–containing proteins to the plasma membrane, including Btk, PLC-γ2, and Akt. Akt is activated at the membrane by phosphorylation and in turn phosphorylates several proteins and transcription factors that regulate protein synthesis, cell survival, and proliferation. Some of the targets of Akt in B cells are mammalian target of rapamycin, glycogen synthase kinase 3, forkhead family transcription factors, Caspase-9, and proapoptotic protein, BAD.[119–121] Given the crucial role of $PI(3,4,5)P_3$ in B-cell activation, its levels are tightly regulated by two different lipid phosphatases that oppose the activity of PI3K, phosphatase and tensin homolog, which removes a phosphate from the D3 position generating $PI(4,5)P_2$, and SH2-domain-containing inositol 5′ phosphatase (SHIP), which generates $PI(3,4)P_2$ by removing a phosphate from the five position and essentially shuts down signaling. One of the pathways that activates SHIP in B cells is the ligation of the inhibitory FcR FcγRIIB,[122] as described in the next section of this chapter.

The Spatial and Temporal Dynamics of B-Cell Receptor Signaling Cascades

Advanced fluorescence-based imaging techniques are just now providing the first view of the spatial and temporal dynamics of the recruitment of individual signaling molecules to BCR microclusters following BCR oligomerization in response to membrane-bound antigens. Each newly formed BCR cluster recruits the earliest PTKs, Lyn and Syk[24,123,124]; as the BCR moves to form an immune synapse, Syk is lost and PI3K is recruited. It has also recently been possible to use imaging to follow signaling as the BCR is internalized into the B cell. Such studies showed that BCR signaling is initiated at the plasma membrane with the recruitment and phosphorylation of Lyn and Syk and continues after the BCR is endocytosed and trafficked through early endosomes then to late endosomes and multivesicular antigen processing compartments with the recruitment and phosphorylation of downstream kinases, initially cRaf and subsequently the MAP kinases, ERK, p38, and Jnk.[125] Internalization of the BCR is necessary for proper signaling as when internalization is blocked, phosphorylation of kinases become dysregulated as does gene transcription. The continued application of imaging technologies to describe B-cell activation should lead to an increasingly detailed spatial and temporal view of BCR signaling.

CORECEPTOR REGULATION OF B-CELL RECEPTOR SIGNALING

The outcome of signaling through the BCR is carefully regulated not only by the developmental stage of the B cells but also by a variety of B-cell coreceptors that both promote and attenuate BCR signaling in response to antigen. Ideally, coreceptors ensure that sufficient amounts of antigen-specific antibodies are produced to control an infection, and that once controlled, antibody production is turned off. We have provided a list of B-cell coreceptors and have indicated whether they function to enhance or inhibit BCR signaling and, when it is known, what they recognize and the molecular basis of their effect on BCR signaling (see Table 9.2). Presumably, all B-cell coreceptors respond to clues from the environment as to the course of the immune response and relate this information to the B cells by enhancing or inhibiting BCR signaling. The best understood examples of the role of coreceptors in B-cell responses are the activating CD19/CD21 complex and the inhibitory FcγRIIB. Both coreceptors become physically cross-linked to the BCR through the recognition of antigen-containing complexes. The CD19/CD21 complex binds complement fixed antigens (C3d-modified antigen, as described in Chapter 36) through CD21, a complement receptor that binds to C3d. Complement modification of antigens can be viewed as a sign that the antigen is dangerous, having the ability to

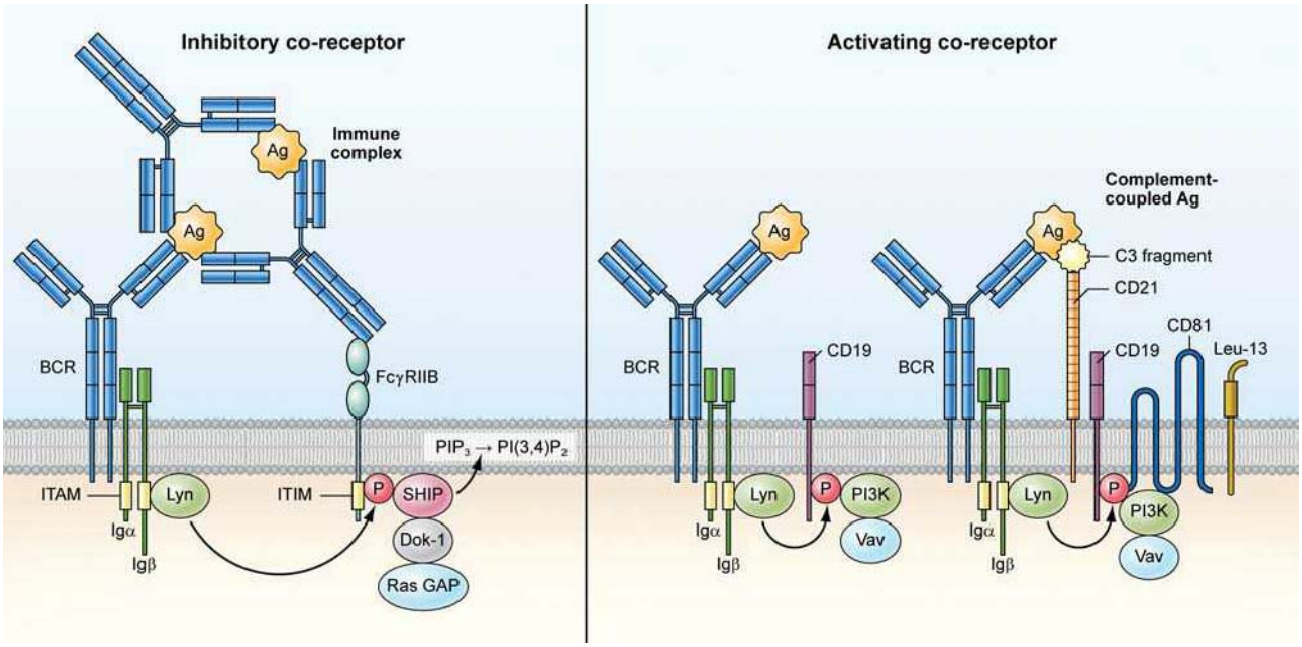


FIG. 9.5. Inhibitory and Activating B-Cell Receptor (BCR) Coreceptors. Antigen-containing immune complexes engage both the BCR and the inhibitory coreceptor FcγRIIB **(Left)**. Lyn associated with clustered BCRs phosphorylates the immunoreceptor tyrosine-based inhibitory motif of FcγRIIB, recruiting SH2-domain-containing inositol 5′ phosphatase that dephosphorylates $PI(3,4,5)P_3$, the product of PI3K activation, to $PI(3,4)P_2$, blocking downstream signaling. Antigen binding to BCRs induces their clustering and signaling that results in the phosphorylation of CD19 by BCR-associated Lyn, recruiting PI3K and Vav **(Right)** and enhancing BCR signaling. Enhancement of BCR signaling is stronger when complement conjugated antigens engage both the BCR and the complement receptor, CD21, recruiting CD19 to the signaling complex where it is phosphorylated by Lyn recruiting PI3K and Vav **(Right)**.

activate the complement pathway, and thus, the CD19/CD21 complex serves to enhance BCR signaling. The FcγRIIB binds to antigen–antibody immune complexes (described in Chapter 24) through the Fc portion of the IgG antibody complexed with the antigen. Immune complexes form when antigen-specific antibodies reach sufficient levels relative to the antigen, an indication that further B-cell activation should be curbed, and thus, the FcγRIIB inhibits BCR signaling.

CD19/CD21, a transmembrane glycoprotein complex expressed on the surface of all B cells, is the best understood activating coreceptor for BCR signaling. On mature B cells, the CD19 component can exist alone or as part of a tetrameric complex with CD21 (complement receptor type 2), the tetraspanin family protein, CD81, and the small interferon-induced transmembrane protein 1, Leu-13[126] (Fig. 9.5). CD21 links this complex to the BCR in response to complement-coupled antigens and boosts BCR signaling and ultimately antibody production. Upon binding of complement-coupled antigen, the BCR and CD19/CD21 complex are coligated, and several tyrosine residues in the cytoplasmic tail of CD19 are phosphorylated by Lyn, providing binding sites for the SH2 domains of the p85 subunit of PI3K, Vav and Lyn, thus enhancing the signaling triggered by BCR antigen binding.[127] It is hypothesized that the association of Lyn with CD19 may counteract the autoinhibition of Lyn, which is maintained by interaction between its SH2 domain and its carboxy-terminal phosphotyrosine, thus stimulating the enzymatic activity and phosphorylation of Lyn during BCR signaling.[128] CD81 may aid in the stable association of the BCR with saturated lipids that coalesce around the antigen-bound BCRs to sustain antigen-induced signaling when the CD19-CD21 complex is coengaged with the BCR.[129] CD81 and Leu-13 may also be involved in mediating cell–cell interactions during the B-cell response to antigen.[130]

In addition to the CD19-CD21 complex, B cells express other activating coreceptors whose ligands and mechanisms by which they affect BCR signaling are less well characterized (see Table 9.2). These activating coreceptors include the recently identified Fc receptor for IgM (FcμR), which contains several conserved tyrosine and serine residues in its cytoplasmic tail that are targets for phosphorylation after receptor ligation with IgM-containing immune complexes.[131] Although the physiologic role of FcμR in B-cell responses is not known, it has been hypothesized that FcμR may become coligated to the BCR and CD19/CD21 complex through the recognition of complement-coupled IgM-antigen immune complexes and drive the B cell response toward isotype-switched antibodies. Other activating coreceptors are Fc receptor-like 1 (FcRL1)[132] and paired Ig-like receptor A (PIRA)[133,134] that respectively contain or associate with cytoplasmic ITAMs. The tyrosine residues within these ITAMs are phosphorylated by one of the Src-family tyrosine kinases of B cells (Lyn, Fyn, or Blk) upon receptor engagement by their ligands, mediating costimulatory signals by creating docking sites

for other proteins involved in the B-cell signaling pathway. Instead of ITAMs, the cytoplasmic domains of the activating coreceptors CD45R and CD148 contain an active protein tyrosine phosphatase domain that dephosphorylates a key regulatory tyrosine at the C-terminal end of Src kinases during BCR signaling.[135–138]

While various coreceptors promote BCR signaling, there are also numerous coreceptors that are poised to counter B-cell activation. FcγRIIB, the best characterized inhibitory coreceptor for BCR signaling, is expressed on the surface of all B cells and is composed of two extracellular Ig-like domains: a transmembrane domain and a cytoplasmic domain that contains a single immunoreceptor tyrosine-based inhibitory motif (ITIM)[139] (see Fig. 9.5). When a B cell binds IgG-antigen immune complexes, FcγRIIB and the BCR are coengaged. Serum contains a relatively high concentration of soluble IgG, but the affinity of the FcγRIIB for soluble IgG is low and such that it is only able to stably engage multimeric IgG-antigen immune complexes. The presence of IgG immune complexes indicates that sufficient antigen-specific antibody has been made to counter any foreign threat, and that antibody production can be attenuated or stopped, depending on the amount of IgG-immune complex present. Coengagement of FcγRIIB and the BCR promotes phosphorylation of the ITIM of FcγRIIB by BCR-associated Lyn, recruiting the lipid phosphatase SH2-containing inositol 5′-phosphatase (SHIP).[140] SHIP dephosphorylates PI(3,4,5)P_3 to PI(3,4)P_2, preventing the recruitment of PH domain–containing kinases (eg, BTK and PLC-γ2) to the cell membrane, thereby downregulating downstream signaling and proliferation.[141] SHIP also recruits RasGAP via the adaptor Dok-1, which inactivates Ras and thus further downregulates proliferation.[142,143]

Besides affecting downstream BCR signaling, it has also been shown that coengagement of FcγRIIB with the BCR greatly destabilizes newly formed BCR oligomers that are essential for the initiation of signaling.[144] This early point of inhibition is not influenced by interactions between the cytoplasmic tails of the two receptors but instead by the perturbation of the local lipid environment by FcγRIIB, which destabilizes BCR association with saturated lipids and Lyn.[144,145] It is of interest that a loss-of-function mutation in the transmembrane domain of FcγRIIB that is associated with the autoimmune disease systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE) prevents the association of ligated FcγRIIB with saturated lipids[146,147] and thus inhibits the ability of FcγRIIB to block BCR oligomerization and signaling. FcγRIIB may also function when engaged by immune complexes independently of the BCR. Cross-linking FcγRIIB by immune complexes that do not contain the antigen for which the BCR is specific leads to apoptosis through a c-Abl–dependent pathway.[148,149] Recent evidence indicates that this pathway may be important in eliminating preexisting FcγRIIB-expressing plasma cells in the bone marrow after infection or immunization, creating space in the limited niches in the bone marrow for newly formed plasma cells.[150]

In addition to FcγRIIB, B cells express a variety of other coreceptors that inhibit BCR signaling via a similar ITIM-mediated mechanism, such as those shown in Table 9.2. In general, the Lyn-phosphorylated ITIMs recruit lipid phosphatases (eg, SHIP) or protein phosphatases (eg, SH2-domain-containing protein tyrosine phosphatase-1 [SHP-1]) that effectively block BCR signaling.[151] SHP-1 likely downmodulates BCR signaling by dephosphorylating early signaling components that include BLNK.[152] Coreceptors such as FcRL2, 3, and 5 have both ITAM-like and ITIM sequences in their cytoplasmic tails, but the inhibitory effects of their ITIMs appear to dominate their regulatory function.[153–155] Negative modulators of BCR signaling other than FcγRIIB do not require coligation to the BCR by immune complexes to attenuate signaling but are instead regulated functionally by binding various ligands on the B-cell surface.

A recurrent theme throughout the discussion of the mechanism by which the CD19/CD21 complex and FcγRIIB function is the requirement for coligation to the BCR by complement-coupled antigens or immune complexes. The requirement for joint binding of the BCR and coreceptors to antigen-containing complexes ensures that only the antigen-specific B-cell response is regulated. However, some coreceptors that function to regulate BCR signaling do not appear to require physical cross-linking with the BCR to affect BCR signaling. In fact, for several such coreceptors their ligands, if they exist, are not known. These coreceptors raise a number of yet unanswered questions concerning how they sense that a BCR is activated and the mechanism by which they regulate BCR signaling. For example, CD19 regulates BCR signaling independently of CD21. In response to antigen presented on fluid lipid bilayers as surrogate APCs, CD19 was shown by live cell imaging to transiently associate with signaling-active BCR microclusters, mediating the recruitment and activation of associated signaling molecules and, therefore, amplifying signaling within the individual microclusters.[28,124] CD19-deficient B cells are unable to form BCR microclusters and undergo a spreading response or flux calcium in response to membrane-bound antigens, suggesting that the BCR-CD19 complex may be a basic signaling unit, essential for BCR activation. Notably, B-cell spreading is not abrogated in the absence of CD21, suggesting that CD19 can function independently of the CD19/CD21 complex. As evidence toward an independently functioning CD19, mice lacking CD19 exhibited a more severe phenotype than those lacking CD21.[156] It is interesting that a CD19 deficiency in mouse B cells does not impair the BCR response to soluble antigens,[127] suggesting that the process by which BCRs cluster in response to membrane-associated antigens provides a mechanism for recruiting CD19 to the BCR, resulting in enhanced signaling. In addition to affecting early BCR signaling, a CD19 deficiency is also implicated in impaired pre–BCR-dependent development and responses to antigen in vivo.[157,158] Another potential example of ligand-independent coreceptor regulation of BCR signaling is FcRL4, a member of the FcR-like family of proteins, which has no known ligand.[132] FcRL4 is expressed on a subpopulation of atypical memory B cells that are expanded in individuals with chronic infections, including

acquired immunodeficiency syndrome and malaria, and are hyporesponsive to BCR triggering. Antigen binding leads to association of FcRL4 with the BCR and a block in BCR signaling at the point of Syk phosphorylation[159] and eliminating FcRL4 expression in atypical memory B cells from individuals infected with human immunodeficiency virus restores BCR signaling.[160] An important unanswered question is in the absence of coligation, by what mechanism do these coreceptors associate with the BCRs? Possible suggested mechanisms are through intracellular adaptor molecules or through membrane perturbations that facilitate BCR-coreceptor interactions. In the absence of a mechanism that triggers the association of these coreceptors with the BCR, it is also not easy to guess what environmental clues these receptors are responding to.

Another family of innate immune system receptors that receive information from the B cell's environment and can affect signaling through the BCR is the TLR family. TLRs are distinctive in that they recognize highly conserved motifs present in microorganisms, including bacteria, viruses, fungi, and protozoans, referred to as pathogen-associated molecular patterns, as described in Chapter 15.[161] As for the BCR, TLR-initiated signaling results in the activation of MAP kinases and NF-κB[162]; thus, TLR and BCR signaling have the potential to synergize. Of particular interest to BCR signaling are TLR7 and TLR9, which reside in intracellular compartments of B cells and respectively recognize pathogen-associated molecular patterns in single-stranded ribonucleic acid (ssRNA) derived from RNA viruses and unmethylated CpG-containing deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) of bacterial and viral origin. The ssRNA-induced TLR7 signaling and CpG-containing DNA–induced TLR9 signaling have been shown to synergize with antigen-induced BCR signaling in NF-κB activation.[162] It was recently shown that synergistic signaling in response to CpG-containing DNA–containing antigens is mediated by a novel mechanism in which, following antigen binding, the BCR signals from the plasma membrane to recruit TLR9 from small endocytic intracellular vesicles to autophagosomal compartments into which the BCR traffics the CpG-containing antigen and from which synergistic signaling occurs.[163] By this mechanism, TLR9 can alert the BCR to the presence of pathogenic DNA in the environment and heighten BCR signaling. Similar mechanisms may be at play for BCR and TLR7 signaling in response to ssRNA-containing antigens.

ABNORMAL B-CELL RECEPTOR SIGNALING IN HUMAN DISEASE

In this chapter, we have provided an overview of our current understanding of the molecular mechanisms underlying the early BCR-intrinsic events that lead to normal BCR oligomerization and subsequent signaling and have emphasized that early events in the initiation of BCR signaling are tightly regulated. It might be predicted that alterations in any step of the initiation of signaling could drive the BCR to hyperactivation. For example, the outcome of antigen engagement could be affected by mutations in the BCR itself, changes in the composition of the membrane lipids that stabilize BCR oligomers, or mutations affecting the activity of coreceptors or the kinases in the BCR signaling pathway. Hyperactivation of the BCR is associated with both B-cell tumors and autoimmune disease. In the future, it may be possible to develop new therapeutic strategies that target spontaneous BCR oligomerization clustering and chronic active signaling to treat B-cell tumors and systemic autoimmune disease.

The BCR is required for the survival of the activated B cell-like (ABC) subtype of diffuse large B-cell lymphomas (DLBCLs).[164] Using live cell imaging, the BCRs on these activated DLBCLs were found to form immobile oligomers within microclusters similar to those observed on normal antigen-stimulated B cells. In contrast, the BCRs on Burkitt's lymphoma, mantle cell lymphoma, and germinal center B cell-like DLBCL tumors, which are not dependent on the BCR for survival, show no clustering. Somatic mutations affecting the cytoplasmic domains of Igα and Igβ are detected frequently in ABC DLBCL biopsy samples but rarely for other DLBCLs and never for Burkitt lymphoma or mucosa-associated lymphoid tissue (MALT) lymphoma, although the contributions of these mutations to chronic BCR clustering is not known.

Interestingly, the spontaneous BCR clustering on ABC DLBCLs is similar to that observed for human H chain disease in which ligand-independent BCR self-aggregation and constitutive activation are a consequence of BCR H chain gene mutations that cause misfolding and disrupt antigen binding.[165] Impaired glycosylation and folding of the μ-H chain are implicated in chronic lymphocytic leukemia, which has symptoms similar to those of μ-H chain disease; however, it has not yet been determined whether this misfolding leads to enhanced BCR ligand-independent, or chronic active, signaling.

In addition to the BCR itself, other BCR signaling molecules that are key regulators of the NF-κB pathway are also known targets of mutations found in B-cell lymphomas. Specifically, MALT1 and Bcl10 are independently associated with chromosomal translocations in MALT lymphoma, whereas CARD11 has activating point mutations in a percentage of ABC DLBCLs that result in constitutive NF-κB activation.[113,165–167] The ABC DLBCLs are also dependent for their survival on MyD88, the adaptor that mediates TLR signaling.[168] Remarkably, nearly 30% of ABC DLBCLs have a single gain-of-function mutation in MyD88 that promotes cell survival by activating the NF-κB pathway. The dual dependence on both the BCR and TLR pathways suggest that these work in concert to drive B-cell tumorigenesis.

B cells from patients with systemic autoimmune disease exhibit B-cell hyperactivation that may be due to alterations in the BCR signaling pathway or alterations in coreceptor function.[169] In SLE, stimulating peripheral blood B cells with BCR ligand leads to increased intracellular calcium flux and increased phosphorylation of various cytosolic proteins as compared to healthy individuals and patients with other rheumatic diseases.[170] In most of patients with SLE analyzed, expression of Lyn is also significantly decreased in resting, and BCR stimulated peripheral blood B cells[171]; the ability of Lyn to associate with saturated membrane lipids is reduced in SLE B cells as compared with healthy donors.[172]

Decreased Lyn expression negatively impacts its ability to inhibit BCR signaling via phosphorylation of FcγRIIB and other inhibitory coreceptors that contain ITIMs. In addition, a loss-of-function mutation in the transmembrane domain of FcγRIIB that is associated with SLE susceptibility prevents BCR-ligated FcγRIIB from associating with saturated membrane lipids[146] and consequently inhibits the ability of FcγRIIB to block BCR oligomerization, clustering, and subsequent signaling. The synergistic engagement of the BCR and TLR7 and TLR9 in response to antigens containing ssRNA or CpG-containing DNA has also been implicated in the activation of autoimmune B cells. Many of the antigens targeted in SLE contain DNA and RNA that are thought to be released from apoptotic cells. Indeed, genetic variations in TLR9 are linked to SLE susceptibility[173]; in a mouse model of SLE, multiple copies of a normal TLR7 gene are sufficient to drive SLE.[174] Overall, it seems that enhanced B-cell signaling as a result of a multiple genetic abnormalities is the defining pathogenic event of SLE and provides a therapeutic target for treating autoimmune disease.

BCR signaling can also be altered in infectious diseases by viruses that commandeer B cells for their own replication. Epstein-Barr virus (EBV) is the causative agent of infectious mononucleosis and is implicated in Burkitt's lymphoma, Hodgkin disease, nasopharyngeal carcinoma, and various lymphoproliferative disorders that arise in immunocompromised individuals.[175] EBV infects B cells of the oral epithelium and establishes a lifelong latent infection in a subset of those cells.[176] Latent membrane protein 2A (LMP2A) messenger RNA is readily detected in the peripheral blood B cells of healthy individuals, and LMP2A is often found in tumors from EBV-associated malignancies.[177] To subvert immune responses and consequently maintain viral latency in B cells, EBV blocks signaling and antigen-trafficking functions of the BCR through the activity of the cytoplasmic tail of LMP2A[178–180] that, when phosphorylated, binds to Lyn (Y112) and Syk (Y74, Y85),[181,182] thus blocking BCR signaling. LMP2A also activates the PI3K/Akt pathway, which normally provides a survival signal in response to BCR signaling.[183] Overall, LMP2A maintains viral latency by preventing normal BCR activation, which initiates viral replication, while sustaining survival pathways in latently infected B cells.

CONCLUSION

B-cell activation is initiated by the binding of antigen to the BCR resulting in the triggering of a number of signaling pathways that ultimately drive B-cell proliferation and differentiation to antibody-secreting cells. At present, we understand the biochemical nature of the signaling pathway in some detail. What remains less well understood is the nature of the events following antigen binding to the BCR that trigger these signaling cascades. New tools of live cell imaging both in vitro and in vivo are anticipated to provide an increasingly detailed spatial and temporal picture of events that initiate signaling in both time and space. Our increased understanding of B-cell activation is likely to lead to new approaches for developing therapies for diseases caused by hyper–B-cell activation.

REFERENCES

1. Kaisho T, Schwenk F, Rajewsky K. The roles of gamma 1 heavy chain membrane expression and cytoplasmic tail in IgG1 responses. *Science*. 1997;276:412–415. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9103199
2. Martin SW, Goodnow CC. Burst-enhancing role of the IgG membrane tail as a molecular determinant of memory. *Nat Immunol*. 2002;3:182–188. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11812996
3. Engels N, Konig LM, Heemann C, et al. Recruitment of the cytoplasmic adaptor Grb2 to surface IgG and IgE provides antigen receptor-intrinsic costimulation to class-switched B cells. *Nat Immunol*. 2009;10:1018–1025. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19668218
4. Reth M. Antigen receptors on B lymphocytes. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 1992;10:97–121. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1591006
5. Tolar P, Sohn HW, Pierce SK. The initiation of antigen-induced B cell antigen receptor signaling viewed in living cells by fluorescence resonance energy transfer. *Nat Immunol*. 2005;6:1168–1176. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16200067
6. Schamel WW, Reth M. Monomeric and oligomeric complexes of the B cell antigen receptor. *Immunity*. 2000;13:5–14. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10933390
7. Metzger H. Effect of antigen binding on the properties of antibody. *Adv Immunol*. 1974;18:169–207. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4133409
8. Radaev S, Zou Z, Tolar P, et al. Structural and functional studies of Igalphabeta and its assembly with the B cell antigen receptor. *Structure*. 2010;18:934–943. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20696394
9. Kusumi A, Nakada C, Ritchie K, et al. Paradigm shift of the plasma membrane concept from the two-dimensional continuum fluid to the partitioned fluid: high-speed single-molecule tracking of membrane molecules. *Annu Rev Biophys Biomol Struct*. 2005;34:351–378. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15869394
10. Kusumi A, Shirai YM, Koyama-Honda I, Suzuki KG, Fujiwara TK. Hierarchical organization of the plasma membrane: investigations by single-molecule tracking vs. fluorescence correlation spectroscopy. *FEBS Lett*. 2010;584:1814–1823. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20178787
11. DeFranco AL. The complexity of signaling pathways activated by the BCR. *Curr Opin Immunol*. 1997;9:296–308. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9203421
12. DalPorto JM, Gauld SB, Merrell KT, Mills D, Pugh-Bernard AE, Cambier J. B cell antigen receptor signaling 101. *Mol Immunol*. 2004;41:599–613. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15219998
13. Batista FD, Iber D, Neuberger MS. B cells acquire antigen from target cells after synapse formation. *Nature*. 2001;411:489–494. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11373683
14. Carrasco YR, Batista FD. B cells acquire particulate antigen in a macrophage-rich area at the boundary between the follicle and the subcapsular sinus of the lymph node. *Immunity*. 2007;27:160–171. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17658276
15. Junt T, Moseman EA, Iannacone M, et al. Subcapsular sinus macrophages in lymph nodes clear lymph-borne viruses and present them to antiviral B cells. *Nature*. 2007;450:110–114. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17934446
16. Phan TG, Grigorova I, Okada T, Cyster JG. Subcapsular encounter and complement-dependent transport of immune complexes by lymph node B cells. *Nat Immunol*. 2007;8:992–1000. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17660822
17. Qi H, Egen JG, Huang AY, Germain RN. Extrafollicular activation of lymph node B cells by antigen-bearing dendritic cells. *Science*. 2006;312:1672–1676. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16778060
18. Schwickert TA, Lindquist RL, Shakhar G, et al. In vivo imaging of germinal centres reveals a dynamic open structure. *Nature*. 2007;446:83–87. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17268470
19. Harwood NE, Batista FD. Antigen presentation to B cells. *F1000 Biol Rep*. 2010;2:87. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21283653
20. Batista FD, Harwood NE. The who, how and where of antigen presentation to B cells. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2009;9:15–27. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19079135
21. Batista FD, Treanor B, Harwood NE. Visualizing a role for the actin cytoskeleton in the regulation of B-cell activation. *Immunol Rev*. 2010;237:191–204. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20727037
22. Pierce SK, Liu W. The tipping points in the initiation of B cell signalling: how small changes make big differences. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2010;10:767–777. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20935671
23. Fleire SJ, Goldman JP, Carrasco YR, Weber M, Bray D, Batista FD. B cell ligand discrimination through a spreading and contraction response. *Science*. 2006;312:738–741. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/167699
24. Liu W, Meckel T, Tolar P, Sohn HW, Pierce SK. Antigen affinity discrimination is an intrinsic function of the B cell receptor. *J Exp Med*. 2010;207:1095–1111. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20404102
25. Tolar P, Hanna J, Krueger PD, Pierce SK. The constant region of the membrane immunoglobulin mediates B cell-receptor clustering and signaling in response to membrane antigens. *Immunity*. 2009;30:44–55. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19135393
26. Arana E, Vehlow A, Harwood NE, et al. Activation of the small GTPase Rac2 via the B cell receptor regulates B cell adhesion and immunological-synapse formation. *Immunity*. 2008;28:88–99. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18191593
27. Lin KB, Freeman SA, Cabetian S, et al. The rap GTPases regulate B cell morphology, immune-synapse formation, and signaling by particulate B cell receptor ligands. *Immunity*. 2008;28:75–87. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18191594
28. Weber M, Treanor B, Depoil D, et al. Phospholipase C-γ2 and Vav co-operate within signaling microclusters to propagate B cell spreading in response to membrane-bound antigen. *J Exp Med*. 2008;205:853–868. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18362175
29. Treanor B, Depoil D, Gonzalez-Granja A, et al. The membrane skeleton controls diffusion dynamics and signaling through the B cell receptor. *Immunity*. 2010;32:187–199. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20171124
30. Yang J, Reth M. Oligomeric organization of the B-cell antigen receptor on resting cells. *Nature*. 2010;467:465–469. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20818374
31. Gray D. Immunological memory. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 1993;11:49–77. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8476570
32. Brink R, Phan TG, Paus D, Chan TD. Visualizing the effects of antigen affinity on T-dependent B-cell differentiation. *Immunol Cell Biol*. 2008;86:31–39. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18026175
33. Dal Porto JM, Haberman AM, Kelsoe G, Shlomchik MJ. Very low affinity B cells form germinal centers, become memory B cells, and participate in secondary immune responses when higher affinity competition is reduced. *J Exp Med*. 2002;195:1215–1221. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11994427
34. Shih TA, Meffre E, Roederer M, Nussenzweig MC. Role of BCR affinity in T cell dependent antibody responses in vivo. *Nat Immunol*. 2002;3:570–575. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12021782
35. Shih TA, Roederer M, Nussenzweig MC. Role of antigen receptor affinity in T cell-independent antibody responses in vivo. *Nat Immunol*. 2002;3:399–406. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11896394
36. Takahashi Y, Dutta PR, Cerasoli DM, Kelsoe G. In situ studies of the primary immune response to (4-hydroxy-3-nitrophenyl)acetyl. V. Affinity maturation develops in two stages of clonal selection. *J Exp Med*. 1998;187:885–895. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9500791
37. Paus D, Phan TG, Chan TD, Gardam S, Basten A, Brink R. Antigen recognition strength regulates the choice between extrafollicular plasma cell and germinal center B cell differentiation. *J Exp Med*. 2006;203:1081–1091. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16606676
38. Phan TG, Paus D, Chan TD, et al. High affinity germinal center B cells are actively selected into the plasma cell compartment. *J Exp Med*. 2006;203:2419–2424. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17030950

39. Kouskoff V, Famiglietti S, Lacaud G, et al. Antigens varying in affinity for the B cell receptor induce differential B lymphocyte responses. *J Exp Med*. 1998;188:1453–1464. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9782122
40. Horikawa K, Martin SW, Poque SL, et al. Enhancement and suppression of signaling by the conserved tail of IgG memory-type B cell antigen receptors. *J Exp Med*. 2007;204:759–769. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17420266
41. Waisman A, Kraus M, Seagal J, et al. IgG1 B cell receptor signaling is inhibited by CD22 and promotes the development of B cells whose survival is less dependent on Ig alpha/beta. *J Exp Med*. 2007;204:747–758. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17420268
42. Wakabayashi C, Adachi T, Wienands J, Tsubata T. A distinct signaling pathway used by the IgG-containing B cell antigen receptor. *Science*. 2002;298:2392–2395. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12493916
43. LiuW, Meckel T, Tolar P, Sohn HW, Pierce SK. Intrinsic properties of immunoglobulin IgG1 isotype-switched B cell receptors promote microclustering and the initiation of signaling. *Immunity*. 2010;32:778–789. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20620943
44. Sohn HW, Tolar P, Pierce SK. Membrane heterogeneities in the formation of B cell receptor-Lyn kinase microclusters and the immune synapse. *J Cell Biol*. 2008;182:367–379. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18644892
45. Saouaf SJ, Mahajan S, Rowley RB, et al. Temporal differences in the activation of three classes of non-transmembrane protein tyrosine kinases following B-cell antigen receptor surface engagement. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1994;91:9524–9528. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7524079
46. Weber M, Treanor B, Depoil D, et al. Phospholipase C-γ2 and Vav co-operate within signaling microclusters to propagate B cell spreading in response to membrane-bound antigen. *J Exp Med*. 2008;205:853–868. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18362175
47. Smith CI, Baskin B, Humire-Greiff P, et al. Expression of Bruton's agammaglobulinemia tyrosine kinase gene, BTK, is selectively down-regulated in T lymphocytes and plasma cells. *J Immunol*. 1994;152:557–565. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8283037
48. Rawlings DJ, Witte ON. Bruton's tyrosine kinase is a key regulator in B-cell development. *Immunol Rev*. 1994;138:105–119. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8070812
49. Tsukada S, Saffran DC, Rawlings DJ, et al. Deficient expression of a B cell cytoplasmic tyrosine kinase in human X-linked agammaglobulinemia. *Cell*. 1993;72:279. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8425221
50. Vetrie D, Vorechovsky I, Sideras P, et al. The gene involved in X-linked agammaglobulinaemia is a member of the src family of protein-tyrosine kinases. *Nature*. 1993;361:226–233. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8380905
51. Rawlings DJ, Saffran DC, Tsukada S, et al. Mutation of unique region of Bruton's tyrosine kinase in immunodeficient XID mice. *Science*. 1993; 261:358. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8332901
52. Valiaho J, Smith CI, Vihinen M. BTKbase: the mutation database for X-linked agammaglobulinemia. *Human Mutation*. 2006;27:1209–1217. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16969761
53. Mahajan S, Fargnoli J, Burkhardt AL, Kut SA, Saouaf SJ, Bolen JB. Src family protein tyrosine kinases induce autoactivation of Bruton's tyrosine kinase. *Mol Cell Biol*. 1995;15:5304–5311. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7565679
54. Rawlings DJ, Scharenberg AM, Park H, et al. Activation of BTK by a phosphorylation mechanism initiated by SRC family kinases. *Science*. 1996;271:822–825. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8629002
55. Scharenberg AM, Kinet JP. PtdIns-3,4,5-P3: a regulatory nexus between tyrosine kinases and sustained calcium signals. *Cell*. 1998;94:5–8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9674420
56. Park H, Wahl MI, Afar DE, et al. Regulation of Btk function by a major autophosphorylation site within the SH3 domain. *Immunity*. 1996; 4:515–525. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8630736
57. Law CL, Chandran KA, Sidorenko SP, Clark EA. Phospholipase C-γ1 interacts with conserved phosphotyrosyl residues in the linker region of Syk and is a substrate for Syk. *Mol Cell Biol*. 1996;16:1305–1315. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8657103
58. Richards JD, Gold MR, Hourihane SL, DeFranco AL, Matsuuchi L. Reconstitution of B cell antigen receptor-induced signaling events in a nonlymphoid cell line by expressing the Syk protein-tyrosine kinase. *J Biol Chem*. 1996;271:6458–6466. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8626447
59. Patterson HC, Kraus M, Kim YM, Ploegh H, Rajewsky K. The B cell receptor promotes B cell activation and proliferation through a non-ITAM tyrosine in the Igalpha cytoplasmic domain. *Immunity*. 2006;25:55–65. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16860757
60. Takata M, Sabe H, Hata A, et al. Tyrosine kinases Lyn and Syk regulate B cell receptor-coupled Ca2+ mobilization through distinct pathways. *EMBO J*. 1994;13:1341–1349. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8137818
61. Takata M, Kurosaki T. A role for Bruton's tyrosine kinase in B cell antigen receptor-mediated activation of phospholipase C-γ2. *J Exp Med*. 1996;184:31–40. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8691147
62. Chiu CW, Dalton M, Ishiai M, Kurosaki T, Chan AC. BLNK: molecular scaffolding through 'cis'-mediated organization of signaling proteins. *EMBO J*. 2002;21:6461–6472. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12456653
63. Fu C, Turck CW, Kurosaki T, Chan AC. BLNK: a central linker protein in B cell activation. *Immunity*. 1998;9:93–103. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9697839
64. Hashimoto S, Iwamatsu A, Ishiai M, et al. Identification of the SH2 domain binding protein of Bruton's tyrosine kinase as BLNK—functional significance of Btk-SH2 domain in B-cell antigen receptor-coupled calcium signaling. *Blood*. 1999;94:2357–2364. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10498607
65. Ishiai M, Sugawara H, Kurosaki M, Kurosaki T. Cutting edge: association of phospholipase C-γ2 Src homology 2 domains with BLNK is critical for B cell antigen receptor signaling. *J Immunol*. 1999;163:1746–1749. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10438904
66. Humphries LA, Dangelmaier C, Sommer K, et al. Tec kinases mediate sustained calcium influx via site-specific tyrosine phosphorylation of the phospholipase C-γ Src homology 2-Src homology 3 linker. *J Biol Chem*. 2004;279:37651–37661. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15184383
67. Kim YJ, Sekiya F, Poulin B, Bae YS, Rhee SG. Mechanism of B-cell receptor-induced phosphorylation and activation of phospholipase C-γ2. *Mol Cell Biol*. 2004;24:9986–9999. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15509800
68. Watanabe D, Hashimoto S, Ishiai M, et al. Four tyrosine residues in phospholipase C-γ2, identified as Btk-dependent phosphorylation sites, are required for B cell antigen receptor-coupled calcium signaling. *J Biol Chem*. 2001;276:38595–38601. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11507089
69. Kurosaki T, Tsukada S. BLNK: connecting Syk and Btk to calcium signals. *Immunity*. 2000;12:1–5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10661400
70. Saito K, Tolias KF, Saci A, et al. BTK regulates PtdIns-4,5-P2 synthesis: importance for calcium signaling and PI3K activity. *Immunity*. 2003;19:669–678. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14614854
71. Johmura S, Oh-hora M, Inabe K, et al. Regulation of Vav localization in membrane rafts by adaptor molecules Grb2 and BLNK. *Immunity*. 2003;18:777–787. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12818159
72. Limon JJ, Fruman DA. B cell receptor signaling: picky about PI3Ks. *Sci Signal*. 2010;3:pe25. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20699473
73. Okkenhaug K, Ali K, Vanhaesebroeck B. Antigen receptor signalling: a distinctive role for the p110delta isoform of PI3K. *Trends Immunol*. 2007;28:80–87. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17208518
74. Bilancio A, Okkenhaug K, Camps M, et al. Key role of the p110delta isoform of PI3K in B-cell antigen and IL-4 receptor signaling: comparative analysis of genetic and pharmacologic interference with p110delta function in B cells. *Blood*. 2006;107:642–650. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16179367
75. Yusuf I, Zhu X, Kharas MG, Chen J, Fruman DA. Optimal B-cell proliferation requires phosphoinositide 3-kinase-dependent inactivation of FOXO transcription factors. *Blood*. 2004;104:784–787. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15069012

76. Glassford J, Vigorito E, Soeiro I, et al. Phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase is required for the transcriptional activation of cyclin D2 in BCR activated primary mouse B lymphocytes. *Eur J Immunol*. 2005;35:2748–2761. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16114097
77. Donahue AC, Fruman DA. Proliferation and survival of activated B cells requires sustained antigen receptor engagement and phosphoinositide 3-kinase activation. *J Immunol*. 2003;170:5851–5860. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12794110
78. Vigorito E, Kovesdi D, Turner M. Synergistic activation of PKD by the B cell antigen receptor and CD19 requires PI3K, Vav1 and PLCgamma. *Cell Signal*. 2006;18:1455–1460. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16380231
79. Doughty CA, Bleiman BF, Wagner DJ, et al. Antigen receptor-mediated changes in glucose metabolism in B lymphocytes: role of phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase signaling in the glycolytic control of growth. *Blood*. 2006;107:4458–4465. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16449529
80. Piatelli MJ, Wardle C, Blois J, et al. Phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase-dependent mitogen-activated protein/extracellular signal-regulated kinase kinase 1/2 and NF-kappa B signaling pathways are required for B cell antigen receptor-mediated cyclin D2 induction in mature B cells. *J Immunol*. 2004;172:2753–2762. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14978074
81. Okada T, Maeda A, Iwamatsu A, Gotoh K, Kurosaki T. BCAP: the tyrosine kinase substrate that connects B cell receptor to phosphoinositide 3-kinase activation. *Immunity*. 2000;13:817–827. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11163197
82. Yamazaki T, Takeda K, Gotoh K, Takeshima H, Akira S, Kurosaki T. Essential immunoregulatory role for BCAP in B cell development and function. *J Exp Med*. 2002;195:535–545. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11877477
83. Aiba Y, Kameyama M, Yamazaki T, Tedder TF, Kurosaki T. Regulation of B-cell development by BCAP and CD19 through their binding to phosphoinositide 3-kinase. *Blood*. 2008;111:1497–1503. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18025150
84. Delgado P, Cubelos B, Calleja E, et al. Essential function for the GTPase TC21 in homeostatic antigen receptor signaling. *Nat Immunol*. 2009;10:880–888. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19561613
85. Dowler S, Currie RA, Downes CP, Alessi DR. DAPP1: a dual adaptor for phosphotyrosine and 3-phosphoinositides. *Biochem J*. 1999;342(pt 1):7–12. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10432293
86. Anderson KE, Lipp P, Bootman M, et al. DAPP1 undergoes a PI 3-kinase-dependent cycle of plasma-membrane recruitment and endocytosis upon cell stimulation. *Curr Biol*. 2000;10:1403–1412. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11102801
87. Rao VR, Corradetti MN, Chen J, et al. Expression cloning of protein targets for 3-phosphorylated phosphoinositides. *J Biol Chem*. 1999;274:37893–37900. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10608855
88. Marshall AJ, Niiro H, Lerner CG, et al. A novel B lymphocyte-associated adaptor protein, Bam32, regulates antigen receptor signaling downstream of phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase. *J Exp Med*. 2000;191:1319–1332. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10770799
89. Han A, Saijo K, Mecklenbrauker I, Tarakhovsky A, Nussenzweig MC. Bam32 links the B cell receptor to ERK and JNK and mediates B cell proliferation but not survival. *Immunity*. 2003;19:621–632. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14563325
90. Allam A, Niiro H, Clark EA, Marshall AJ. The adaptor protein Bam32 regulates Rac1 activation and actin remodeling through a phosphorylation-dependent mechanism. *J Biol Chem*. 2004;279:39775–39782. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15247305
91. Foskett JK, White C, Cheung KH, Mak DO. Inositol trisphosphate receptorCa2+ release channels. *Physiol Rev*. 2007;87:593–658. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17429043
92. Liou J, Kim ML, Heo WD, et al. STIM is a Ca2+ sensor essential for Ca2+-store-depletion-triggered Ca2+ influx. *Curr Biol*. 2005;15:1235–1241. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16005298
93. Roos J, DiGregorio PH, Yeromin AV, et al. STIM1, an essential and conserved component of store-operated Ca2+ channel function. *J Cell Biol*. 2005;169:435–445. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15866891
94. Prakriya M, Feske S, Gwack Y, Srikanth S, Rao A, Hogan PG. Orai1 is an essential pore subunit of the CRAC channel. *Nature*. 2006;443:230–233. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16921383
95. Vig M, Beck A, Billingsley JM, et al. CRACM1 multimers form the ion-selective pore of the CRAC channel. *Curr Biol*. 2006;16:2073–2079. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16978865
96. Baba Y, Hayashi K, Fujii Y, et al. Coupling of STIM1 to store-operated Ca2+ entry through its constitutive and inducible movement in the en-doplasmic reticulum. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2006;103:16704–16709. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17075073
97. Feske S, Gwack Y, Prakriya M, et al. A mutation in Orai1 causes immune deficiency by abrogating CRAC channel function. *Nature*. 2006;441:179–185. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16582901
98. Picard C, McCarl CA, Papolos A, et al. STIM1 mutation associated with a syndrome of immunodeficiency and autoimmunity. *N Engl J Med*. 2009;360:1971–1980. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19420366
99. Klein U, Casola S, Cattoretti G, et al. Transcription factor IRF4 controls plasma cell differentiation and class-switch recombination. *Nat Immunol*. 2006;7:773–782. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16767092
100. Sciammas R, Shaffer AL, Schatz JH, Zhao H, Staudt LM, Singh H. Graded expression of interferon regulatory factor-4 coordinates iso-type switching with plasma cell differentiation. *Immunity*. 2006;25:225–236. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16919487
101. Kurosaki T, Shinohara H, Baba Y. B cell signaling and fate decision. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 2010;28:21–55. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19827951
102. Winslow MM, Gallo EM, Neilson JR, Crabtree GR. The calcineurin phosphatase complex modulates immunogenic B cell responses. *Immunity*. 2006;24:141–152. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16473827
103. Hacker H, Karin M. Regulation and function of IKK and IKK-related kinases. *Sci STKE*. 2006:re13. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17047224
104. Li Q, Verma IM. NF-kappaB regulation in the immune system. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2002;2:725–734. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12360211
105. Hayden MS, Ghosh S. Shared principles in NF-kappaB signaling. *Cell*. 2008;132:344–362. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18267068
106. Saijo K, Mecklenbrauker I, Santana A, Leitger M, Schmedt C, Tarakhovsky A. Protein kinase C beta controls nuclear factor kappaB activation in B cells through selective regulation of the IkappaB kinase alpha. *J Exp Med*. 2002;195:1647–1652. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12070292
107. Dierlamm J, Baens M, Wlodarska I, et al. The apoptosis inhibitor gene API2 and a novel 18q gene, MLT, are recurrently rearranged in the t(11;18)(q21;q21) associated with mucosa-associated lymphoid tissue lymphomas. *Blood*. 1999;93:3601–3609. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10339464
108. Zhang Q, Siebert R, Yan M, et al. Inactivating mutations and overexpression of BCL10, a caspase recruitment domain-containing gene, in MALT lymphoma with t(1;14)(p22;q32). *Nat Genet*. 1999;22:63–68. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10319863
109. Willis TG, Jadayel DM, Du MQ, et al. Bcl10 is involved in t(1;14)(p22;q32) of MALT B cell lymphoma and mutated in multiple tumor types. *Cell*. 1999;96:35–45. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9989495
110. Morgan JA, Yin Y, Borowsky AD, et al. Breakpoints of the t(11;18)(q21;q21) in mucosa-associated lymphoid tissue (MALT) lymphoma lie within or near the previously undescribed gene MALT1 in chromosome 18. *Cancer Res*. 1999;59:6205–6213. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10626814
111. Uren AG, O'Rourke K, Aravind LA, et al. Identification of paracaspases and metacaspases: two ancient families of caspase-like proteins, one of which plays a key role in MALT lymphoma. *Mol Cell*. 2000;6:961–967. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11090634
112. Streubel B, Lamprecht A, Dierlamm J, et al. T(14;18)(q32;q21) involving IGH and MALT1 is a frequent chromosomal aberration in MALT lymphoma. *Blood*. 2003;101:2335–2339. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12406890

113. Lenz G, Davis RE, Ngo VN, et al. Oncogenic CARD11 mutations in human diffuse large B cell lymphoma. *Science*. 2008;319:1676–1679. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18323416
114. Oh-hora M, Johmura S, Hashimoto A, Hikida M, Kurosaki T. Requirement for Ras guanine nucleotide releasing protein 3 in coupling phospholipase C-γ2 to Ras in B cell receptor signaling. *J Exp Med*. 2003;198:1841–1851. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14676298
115. Coughlin JJ, Stang SL, Dower NA, Stone JC. RasGRP1 and RasGRP3 regulate B cell proliferation by facilitating B cell receptor-Ras signaling. *J Immunol*. 2005;175:7179–7184. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16301621
116. Iritani BM, Forbush KA, Farrar MA, Perlmutter RM. Control of B cell development by Ras-mediated activation of Raf. *EMBO J*. 1997;16:7019–7031. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9384581
117. Nagaoka H, Takahashi Y, Hayashi R, et al. Ras mediates effector pathways responsible for pre-B cell survival, which is essential for the developmental progression to the late pre-B cell stage. *J Exp Med*. 2000;192:171–182. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10899904
118. Maltzman JS, Carman JA, Monroe JG. Role of EGR1 in regulation of stimulus-dependent CD44 transcription in B lymphocytes. *Mol Cell Biol*. 1996;16:2283–2294. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8628295
119. Huang H, Tindall DJ. Dynamic FoxO transcription factors. *J Cell Sci*. 2007;120:2479–2487. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17646672
120. Fruman DA. Phosphoinositide 3-kinase and its targets in B-cell and T-cell signaling. *Curr Opin Immunol*. 2004;16:314–320. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15134780
121. Fruman DA, Bismuth G. Fine tuning the immune response with PI3K. *Immunol Rev*. 2009;228:253–272. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19290933
122. Ono M, Bolland S, Tempst P, Ravetch JV. Role of the inositol phosphatase SHIP in negative regulation of the immune system by the receptor Fc(gamma)RIIB. *Nature*. 1996;383:263–266. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8805703
123. Sohn HW, Tolar P, Pierce SK. Membrane heterogeneities in the formation of B cell receptor-Lyn kinase microclusters and the immune synapse. *J Cell Biol*. 2008;182:367–379. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18644892
124. Depoil D, Fleire S, Treanor BL, et al. CD19 is essential for B cell activation by promoting B cell receptor-antigen microcluster formation in response to membrane-bound ligand. *Nat Immunol*. 2008;9:63–72. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18059271
125. Chaturvedi A, Martz R, Dorward D, Waisberg M, Pierce SK. Endocytosed B cell receptors sequentially regulate MAP kinase and Akt signaling pathways from intracellular compartments. *Nat Immunol*. 2011;12(11):1119–1126. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21964606
126. Fearon DT, Carter RH. The CD19/CR2/TAPA-1 complex of B lymphocytes: Linking natural to acquired immunity. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 1995;13:127–149. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7542009
127. Sato S, Miller A, Howard M, Tedder T. Regulation of B lymphocyte development and activation by the CD19/CD21/CD81/Leu 13 complex requires the cytoplasmic domain of CD19. *J Immunol*. 1997;159:3278–3287. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9317126
128. Fujimoto M, Fujimoto Y, Poe JC, et al. CD19 regulates Src family protein tyrosine kinase activation in B lymphocytes through processive amplification. *Immunity*. 2000;13:47–57. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10933394
129. Cherukuri A, Shoham T, Sohn HW, et al. The tetraspanin CD81 is necessary for partitioning of coligated CD19/CD21-B cell antigen receptor complexes into signaling-active lipid rafts. *J Immunol*. 2004;172:370–380. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14688345
130. Levy S, Todd SC, Maecker HT. CD81 (TAPA-1): a molecule involved in signal transduction and cell adhesion in the immune system. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 1998;16:89–109. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9597125
131. Kubagawa H, Oka S, Kubagawa Y, et al. Identity of the elusive IgM Fc receptor (FcmR) in humans. *J Exp Med*. 2009;206:2779–2793. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19858324
132. Davis RS. Fc receptor-like molecules. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 2007;25:525–560. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17201682
133. Kubagawa H, Burrows PD, Cooper MD. A novel pair of immunoglobulin-like receptors expressed by B cells and myeloid cells. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1997;94:5261–5266. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9144225
134. Hayami K, Fukuta D, Nishikawa Y, et al. Molecular cloning of a novel murine cell-surface glycoprotein homologous to killer cell inhibitory receptors. *J Biol Chem*. 1997;272:7320–7327. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9054430
135. Justement LB, Campbell KS, Chien NC, Cambier JC. Regulation of B cell antigen receptor signal transduction and phosphorylation by CD45. *Science*. 1991;252:1839–1842. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1648262
136. Trowbridge IS, Thomas ML. CD45: an emerging role as a protein tyrosine phosphatase required for lymphocyte activation and development. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 1994;12:85–116. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8011300
137. Hermiston ML, Zikherman J, Zhu JW. CD45, CD148, and Lyp/Pep: critical phosphatases regulating Src family kinase signaling networks in immune cells. *Immunol Rev*. 2009;228:288–311. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19290935
138. Zhu JW, Brdicka T, Katsumoto TR, Lin J, Weiss A. Structurally distinct phosphatases CD45 and CD148 both regulate B cell and macrophage immunoreceptor signaling. *Immunity*. 2008;28:183–196. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18249142
139. Nimmerjahn F, Ravetch JV. Fcg receptors as regulators of immune responses. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2008;8:34–47. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18064051
140. Cambier JC, Fong D, Tamir I. The unexpected complexity of Fc gamma RIIB signal transduction. *Curr Top Microbiol Immunol*. 1999;244:43–55. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10453648
141. Ravetch JV, Bolland S. IgG Fc receptors. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 2001;19:275–290. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11244038
142. Yamanashi Y, Tamura T, Kanamori T, et al. Role of the rasGAP-associated docking protein p62(dok) in negative regulation of B cell receptor-mediated signaling. *Genes Dev*. 2000;14:11–16. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10640270
143. Tamir I, Stolpa JC, Helgason CD, et al. The RasGAP-binding protein-p62dok is a mediator of inhibitory FcgammaRIIB signals in B cells. *Immunity*. 2000;12:347–358. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10755621
144. Liu W, Won Sohn H, Tolar P, Meckel T, Pierce SK. Antigen-induced oligomerization of the B cell receptor is an early target of FcgRIIB inhibition. *J Immunol*. 2010;184:1977–1989. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20083655
145. Sohn HW, Pierce SK, Tzeng SJ. Live cell imaging reveals that the inhibitory FcgammaRIIB destabilizes B cell receptor membrane-lipid interactions and blocks immune synapse formation. *J Immunol*. 2008;180:793–799. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18178817
146. Floto RA, Clatworhty MR, Heilbronn KR, et al. Loss of function of a lupus-associated FcgRIIb polymorphism through exclusion from lipid rafts. *Nat Med*. 2005;11:1056–1058. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16170323
147. Kono H, Kyogoky C, Suzuki T, et al. FcgRIIB IIe232Thr trans-membrane polymorphism associated with human systemic lupus erythematosus decreases affinity to lipid rafts and attenuates inhibitory effects on B cell receptor signaling. *Hum Mol Genet*. 2005;14:2881–2892. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16115811
148. Pearse RN, Kawabe T, Bolland S, Guinamard R, Kurosaki T, Ravetch JV. SHIP recruitment attenuates FcgRIIB-induced B cell apoptosis. *Immunity*. 1999;10:753–760. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10403650
149. Tzeng SJ, Bolland S, Inabe K, Kurosaki T, Pierce SK. The B cell inhibitory Fc receptor triggers apoptosis by a novel c-Abl family kinase-dependent pathway. *J Biol Chem*. 2005;280:35247–35254. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16115887

150. Xiang Z, Cutler AJ, Brownlie RJ, et al. FcgRIIb controls bone marrow plasma cell persistence and apoptosis. *Nat Immunol*. 2007;8:419–429. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17322888
151. D'Ambrosio D, Hippen KL, Minskoff SA, et al. Recruitment and activation of PTP1C in negative regulation of antigen receptor signaling by FcgRIIB1. *Science*. 1995;268:293–297. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7716523
152. Mizuno K, Tagawa Y, Mitomo K, et al. Src homology region 2 (SH2) domain-containing phosphatase-1-dephosphorylates B cell linker protein/SH2 domain leukocyte protein of 65 kDa and selectively regulates c-Jun NH2-terminal kinase activation in B cells. *J Immunol*. 2000;165:1344–1351. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10903736
153. Jackson TA, Haga CL, Ehrhardt GR, Davis RS, Cooper MD. FcR-like 2 inhibition of B cell receptor-mediated activation of B cells. *J Immunol*. 2010;185:7405–7412. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21068405
154. Kochi Y, Myouzen K, Yamada R, et al. FCRL3, an autoimmune susceptibility gene, has inhibitory potential on B-cell receptor-mediated signaling. *J Immunol*. 2009;183:5502–5510. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19843936
155. Haga CL, Ehrhardt GR, Boohaker RJ, Davis RS, Cooper MD. Fc receptor-like 5 inhibits B cell activation via SHP-1 tyrosine phosphatase recruitment. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2007;104:9770–9775. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17522256
156. Fearon DT, Carroll MC. Regulation of B lymphocyte responses to foreign and self-antigens by the CD19/CD21 complex. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 2000;18:393–422. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10837064
157. Tedder TF, Inaoki M, Sato S. The CD19-CD21 complex regulates signal transduction thresholds governing humoral immunity and autoimmunity. *Immunity*. 1997;6:107–118. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9047233
158. Otero DC, Rickert RC. CD19 function in early and late B cell development. II. CD19 facilitates the pro-B/pre-B transition. *J Immunol*. 2003;171:5921–5930. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14634103
159. Sohn HW, Krueger PD, Davis RS, Pierce SK. FcRL4 acts as an adaptive to innate molecular switch dampening B cell receptor signaling and enhancing Toll-like receptor signaling. *Blood*. 2011;118(24):6332–6341. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21908428
160. Kardava L, Moir S, Wang W, et al. Attenuation of HIV-associated human B cell exhaustion by siRNA downregulation of inhibitory receptors. *J Clin Invest*. 2011;121:2614. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21633172
161. Janeway CAJ, Medzhitov R. Innate immune recognition. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 2002;20:197–216. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11861602
162. Takeda K, Akira S. TLR signaling pathways. *Semin Immunol*. 2004;16:3–9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14751757
163. Chaturvedi A, Dorward D, Pierce SK. The B cell receptor governs the subcellular location of Toll-like receptor 9 leading to hyperresponses to DNA-containing antigens. *Immunity*. 2008;28:799–809. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18513998
164. Davis RE, Ngo VN, Lenz G, et al. Chronic active B cell receptor signaling in diffuse large B cell lymphoma. *Nature*. 2010;463:88–92. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20054396
165. Corcos D, Osborn MJ, Matheson LS. B-cell receptors and heavy chain diseases: guilty by association? *Blood*. 2011;117:6991–6998. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21508409
166. Lucas PC, Yonezumi M, Inohara N, et al. Bcl10 and MALT1, independent targets of chromosomal translocation in malt lymphoma, cooperate in a novel NF-kappa B signaling pathway. *J Biol Chem*. 2001;276:19012–19019. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11262391
167. Thome M. CARMA1, BCL-10 and MALT1 in lymphocyte development and activation. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2004;4:348–359. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15122200
168. Ngo VN, Young RM, Schmitz R, et al. Oncogenically active MYD88 mutations in human lymphoma. *Nature*. 2011;470:115–119. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21179087
169. Pugh-Bernard AE, Cambier JC. B cell receptor signaling in human systemic lupus erythematosus. *Curr Opin Rheumatol*. 2006;18:451–5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16896281
170. Liossis SN, Kovacs B, Dennis G, Kammer GM, Tsokos GC. B cells from patients with systemic lupus erythematosus display abnormal antigen receptor-mediated early signal transduction events. *J Clin Invest*. 1996;98:2549–2557. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8958217
171. Liossis SN, Solomou EE, Dimopoulos MA, Panayiotidis P, Mavrikakis MM, Sfikakis PP. B-cell kinase lyn deficiency in patients with systemic lupus erythematosus. *J Investig Med*. 2001;49:157–165. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11288756
172. Flores-Borja F, Kabouridis PS, Jury EC, Isenberg DA, Mageed RA. Decreased Lyn expression and translocation to lipid raft signaling domains in B lymphocytes from patients with systemic lupus erythematosus. *Arthritis Rheum*. 2005;52:3955–3965. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16320343
173. Richez C, Blanco P, Rifkin I, Moreau JF, Schaeverbeke T. Role for toll-like receptors in autoimmune disease: the example of systemic lupus erythematosus. *Joint Bone Spine*. 2011;78:124–130. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20961794
174. Deane JA, Pisitkun P, Barrett RS, et al. Control of toll-like receptor 7 expression is essential to restrict autoimmunity and dendritic cell proliferation. *Immunity*. 2007;27:801–810. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17997333
175. Portis T, Longnecker R. Epstein-Barr virus (EBV) LMP2A mediates B lymphocyte survival through constitutive activation of the Ras/PI3K/Akt pathway. *Oncogene*. 2004;23:8619–8628. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15361852
176. Merchant M, Swart R, Katzman RB, et al. The effects of the Epstein-Barr virus latent membrane protein 2A on B cell function. *Int Rev Immunol*. 2001;20:805–835. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11913951
177. Thorley-Lawson DA. Epstein-Barr virus: exploiting the immune system. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2001;1:75–82. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11905817
178. Snyder MD, Pierce SK. A mutation in Epstein-Barr virus LMP2A reveals a role for phospholipase D in B-cell antigen receptor trafficking. *Traffic*. 2006;7:993–1006. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16882041
179. Miller CL, Burkhardt AL, Le JH, et al. Integral membrane protein 2 of Epstein-Barr virus regulates reactivation from latency through dominant negative effects on protein-tyrosine kinases. *Immunity*. 1995;2:155–166. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7895172
180. Dykstra ML, Longnecker R, Pierce SK. Epstein-Barr virus co-opts lipid rafts to block the signaling and antigen transport functions of the BCR. *Immunity*. 2001;14:57–67. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11163230
181. Fruehling S, Longnecker R. The immunoreceptor tyrosine-based activation motif of Epstein-Barr virus LMP2A is essential for blocking BCR-mediated signal transduction. *Virology*. 1997;235:241–251. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9281504
182. Fruehling S, Swart R, Dolwick KM, Kremmer E, Longnecker R. Tyrosine 112 of latent membrane protein 2A is essential for protein tyrosine kinase loading and regulation of Epstein-Barr virus latency. *J Virol*. 1998;72:7796–7806. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9733815
183. Fukuda M, Longnecker R. Latent membrane protein 2A inhibits transforming growth factor-beta 1-induced apoptosis through the phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase/Akt pathway. *J Virol*. 2004;78:1697–1705. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14747535
184. Torres RM, Flaswinkel H, Reth M, Rajewsky K. Aberrant B cell development and immune response in mice with a compromised BCR complex. *Science*. 1996;272:1804–1808. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8650582
185. Gong S, Nussenzweig MC. Regulation of an early developmental checkpoint in the B cell pathway by Ig beta. *Science*. 1996;272:411–414. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8602530
186. Lam KP, Kuhn R, Rajewsky K. In vivo ablation of surface immunoglobulin on mature B cells by inducible gene targeting results in rapid cell death. *Cell*. 1997;90:1073–1083. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9323135

187. Chan VW, Meng F, Soriano P, DeFranco AL, Lowell CA. Characterization of the B lymphocyte populations in Lyn-deficient mice and the role of Lyn in signal initiation and down-regulation. *Immunity*. 1997;7:69–81. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9252121
188. Turner M, Gulbranson-Judge A, Quinn ME, Walters AE, MacLennan IC, Tybulewicz VL. Syk tyrosine kinase is required for the positive selection of immature B cells into the recirculating B cell pool. *J Exp Med*. 1997;186:2013–2021. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9396770
189. Cornall RJ, Cheng AM, Pawson T, Goodnow CC. Role of Syk in B-cell development and antigen-receptor signaling. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2000;97:1713–1718. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10677523
190. Cariappa A, Tang M, Parng C, et al. The follicular versus marginal zone B lymphocyte cell fate decision is regulated by Aiolos, Btk, and CD21. *Immunity*. 2001;14:603–615. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11371362
191. Martin F, Kearney JF. Positive selection from newly formed to marginal zone B cells depends on the rate of clonal production, CD19, and Btk. *Immunity*. 2000;12:39–49. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10661404
192. Rawlings DJ, Saffran DC, Tsukada S, et al. Mutation of unique region of Bruton's tyrosine kinase in immunodeficient XID mice. *Science*. 1993; 261:358–361. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8332901
193. Tsukada S, Baba Y, Watanabe D. Btk and BLNK in B cell development. *Adv Immunol*. 2001;77:123–162. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11293115
194. Pappu R, Cheng AM, Li B, et al. Requirement for B cell linker protein (BLNK) in B cell development. *Science*. 1999;286:1949–1954. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10583957
195. Xu S, Tan JE, Wong EP, Manickam A, Ponniah S, Lam KP. B cell development and activation defects resulting in xid-like immunodeficiency in BLNK/SLP-65-deficient mice. *Int Immunol*. 2000;12:397–404. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10700474
196. Hayashi K, Nittono R, Okamoto N, et al. The B cell-restricted adaptor BASH is required for normal development and antigen receptor-mediated activation of B cells. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2000;97:2755–2760. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10688901
197. Hashimoto A, Takeda A, Inaba M, et al. Cutting edge: essential role of phospholipase C-γ2 in B cell development and function. *J Immunol*. 2000;165:1738–1742. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10925250
198. Wang D, Feng J, Wen R, et al. Phospholipase Cgamma2 is essential in the functions of B cell and several Fc receptors. *Immunity*. 2000;13:25–35. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10933392
199. Okkenhaug K, Bilancio A, Farjot G, et al. Impaired B and T cell antigen receptor signaling in p110delta PI 3-kinase mutant mice. *Science*. 2002;297:1031–1034. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12130661
200. Clayton E, Bardi G, Bell SE, et al. A crucial role for the p110delta subunit of phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase in B cell development and activation. *J Exp Med*. 2002;196:753–763. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12235209
201. Fruman DA, Snapper SB, Yballe CM, et al. Impaired B cell development and proliferation in absence of phosphoinositide 3-kinase p85alpha. *Science*. 1999;283:393–397. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9888855
202. Suzuki H, Terauchi Y, Fujiwara M, et al. Xid-like immunodeficiency in mice with disruption of the p85alpha subunit of phosphoinositide 3-kinase. *Science*. 1999;283:390–392. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9888854
203. Leitges M, Schmedt C, Guinamard R, et al. Immunodeficiency in protein kinase cbeta-deficient mice. *Science*. 1996;273:788–791. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8670417
204. Su TT, Guo B, Kawakami Y, et al. PKC-beta controls I kappa B kinase lipid raft recruitment and activation in response to BCR signaling. *Nat Immunol*. 2002;3:780–786. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12118249
205. Doody GM, Bell SE, Vigorito E, et al. Signal transduction through Vav-2 participates in humoral immune responses and B cell maturation. *Nat Immunol*. 2001;2:542–547. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11376342
206. Tedford K, Nitschke L, Girkontaite I, et al. Compensation between Vav-1 and Vav-2 in B cell development and antigen receptor signaling. *Nat Immunol*. 2001;2:548–555. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11376343
207. Croker BA, Tarlinton DM, Cluse LA, et al. The Rac2 guanosine triphosphatase regulates B lymphocyte antigen receptor responses and chemotaxis and is required for establishment of B-1a and marginal zone B lymphocytes. *J Immunol*. 2002;168:3376–3386. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11907095
208. Engel P, Zhou LJ, Ord DC, Sato S, Koller B, Tedder TF. Abnormal B lymphocyte development, activation, and differentiation in mice that lack or overexpress the CD19 signal transduction molecule. *Immunity*. 1995;3:39–50. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7542548
209. Rickert RC, Rajewsky K, Roes J. Impairment of T-cell-dependent B-cell responses and B-1 cell development in CD19-deficient mice. *Nature*. 1995;376:352–355. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7543183
210. Samardzic T, Marinkovic D, Danzer CP, Gerlach J, Nitschke L, Wirth T. Reduction of marginal zone B cells in CD22-deficient mice. *Eur J Immunol*. 2002;32:561–567. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7543183
211. Sato S, Miller AS, Inaoki M, et al. CD22 is both a positive and negative regulator of B lymphocyte antigen receptor signal transduction: altered signaling in CD22-deficient mice. *Immunity*. 1996;5:551–562. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8986715
212. Ujike A, Takeda K, Nakamura A, Ebihara S, Akiyama K, Takai T. Impaired dendritic cell maturation and increased T(H)2 responses in PIR-B(-/-) mice. *Nat Immunol*. 2002;3:542–548. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12021780
213. Senftleben U, Cao Y, Xiao G, et al. Activation by IKKalpha of a second, evolutionary conserved, NF-kappa B signaling pathway. *Science*. 2001;293:1495–1499. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11520989
214. Kaisho T, Takeda K, Tsujimara T, et al. IkappaB kinase alpha is essential for mature B cell development and function. *J Exp Med*. 2001;193:417–426. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11181694
215. Pasparakis M, Schmidt-Supprian M, Rajewsky K. IkappaB kinase signaling is essential for maintenance of mature B cells. *J Exp Med*. 2002;196:743–752. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12235208
216. Carter RH, Wang Y, Brooks S. Role of CD19 signal transduction in B cell biology. *Immunol Res*. 2002;26:45–54. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12403344
217. Boross P, van de Poel K, Van de Winkel JG, Leusen JH. Fc receptors. In: *Encyclopedia of Life Sciences (ELS)*. Chichester, England: John Wiley & Sons, Ltd; 2008.
218. Leu CM, Davis RS, Gartland LA, Fine WD, Cooper MD. FcRH1: an activation coreceptor on human B cells. *Blood*. 2005;105:1121–1126. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15479727
219. Davis RS, Ehrhardt GRA, Leu C-M, Hirano M, Cooper MD. An extended family of Fc receptor relatives. *Eur J Immunol*. 2005;35:674–680. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15688344
220. Kubagawa H, Cooper MD, Chen CC, et al. Paired immunoglobulin-like receptors of activating and inhibitory types. *Curr Top Microbiol Immunol*. 1999;244:137–149. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10453656
221. Takai T, Ono M. Activating and inhibitory nature of the murine paired immunoglobulin-like receptor family. *Immunol Rev*. 2001;181:215–222. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11513143
222. Chan AC, Desai DM, Weiss A. The role of protein tyrosine kinases and protein tyrosine phosphatases in T cell antigen receptor signal transduction. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 1994;12:555–592. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8011291
223. Leprince C, Draves KE, Geahlen RL, Ledbetter JA, Clark EA. CD22 associates with the human surface IgM-B-cell antigen receptor complex. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1993;90:3236–3240. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8475064
224. Pritchard NR, Smith KGC. B cell inhibitory receptors and autoimmunity. *Immunology*. 2003;108:263–273. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12603592

225. Nitschke L. The role of CD22 and other inhibitory co-receptors in B-cell activation. *Curr Opin Immunol*. 2005;17:290–297. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15886119
226. Nitschke L. CD22 and Siglec-G: B-cell inhibitory receptors with distinct functions. *Immunol Rev*. 2009;230:128–143. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19594633
227. Nitschke L, Tsubata T. Molecular interactions regulate BCR signal inhibition by CD22 and CD72. *Trends Immunol*. 2004;25:543–550. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15364057
228. Parnes JR, Pan C. CD72, a negative regulator of B-cell responsiveness. *Immunol Rev*. 2000;176:75–85. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11043769
229. Ochi H, Watanabe T. Negative regulation of B cell receptor-mediated signaling in B-1 cells through CD5 and Ly49 co-receptors via Lyn kinase activity. *Int Immunol*. 2000;12:1417–1423. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11007759
230. Schreeder DM, Cannon JP, Wu J, Li R, Shakhmatov MA, Davis RS. Cutting edge: FcR-like 6 is an MHC class II receptor. *J Immunol*. 2010;185:23–27. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20519654
231. Wilson TJ, Presti RM, Tassi I, Overton ET, Cella M, Colonna M. FcRL6, a new ITIM-bearing receptor on cytolytic cells, is broadly expressed by lymphocytes following HIV-1 infection. *Blood*. 2007;109:3786–3793. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17213291

CHAPTER 10

B-Lymphocyte Responses

Michael McHeyzer-Williams

INTRODUCTION

B-lymphocyte responses provide the effective and long-lasting immune protection induced by most vaccines in use today. We measure antibody molecules as the circulating agent of immune protection but now understand much more about the underlying B-lymphocyte response that progressively matures in response to foreign antigen exposure. This chapter will focus on the highly-regulated cellular and molecular development of antigen-specific B-lymphocyte responses.

The three cardinal features of effective B-cell immunity are antigen specificity, antibody class, and antigen binding affinity. To be effective, antibodies must bind vulnerable antigens on the targeted pathogen. During infection, this is a struggle between the evasion mechanisms of the pathogen and preexisting diversity within the adaptive immune system. Different classes of antibodies engage distinct mechanisms of antigen clearance. These various classes of antibody provide either more or less protection depending on the pathogen's portal of entry at infection. Finally, the right antigen-specific antibody still requires induction of sufficiently high binding affinity to provide adequate sensitivity for long-term immune protection. Many promising antigens fail to achieve adequate immunogenicity in contemporary vaccine strategies due to poor affinity maturation. Here, we focus on the sequential mechanisms that program these central attributes of effective antigen-specific B-cell memory.

In the past few years, experimental access to immune response biology has dramatically shifted with the advent of multiphoton laser-based intravital imaging techniques. These studies provide direct access to the mechanics and cell dynamics of antigen-specific cognate regulation in vivo. This information serves to integrate existing knowledge in the field using a real-time scaffold for developmental progression in vivo. Importantly, follicular helper T (T_{FH}) cells have recently emerged as a new class of antigen-specific immune regulator that controls multiple stages of high-affinity B-cell immunity. Understanding antigen-specific T_{FH}-cell development and function remains an active research challenge with great potential for the rational design of future vaccines. Current information regarding the role of antigen-specific T_{FH} cells will be integrated into this chapter to provide a regulatory dimension to B-lymphocyte responses.

Following initial exposure to antigen, T_{FH}-cell–regulated B-cell immunity progresses in three separable stages of antigen-specific development. Each stage is characterized by a B-cell antigen-recognition event followed by contact with cognate T_{FH} cells that determines subsequent B-cell fate. Naïve B cells recognize foreign antigen and then present antigenic peptides to specific T_{FH} cells to progress in development across two major pathways (pre–germinal center [GC] development). Extrafollicular development permits antibody class switch and plasma cell differentiation while entry into the GC reaction is the major pathway to high-affinity B-cell memory (GC cycle). GC B cells in this pathway can switch antibody class and affinity mature their expressed B-cell receptor (BCR) following access to antigen and presentation to GC T_{FH} cells. Upon antigen reexposure, memory B cells recognize, uptake, and then present antigen to memory T_{FH} cells to promote rapid memory B-cell responses and boost circulating high-affinity antibody (memory B-cell response). Antigen recall is the least studied facet of B-lymphocyte responses but provides an important developmental juncture for vaccine-based prophylactic or therapeutic intervention.

This chapter mainly focuses on what is known of antigen-specific B-lymphocyte responses in mouse models with reference to work conducted in humans. Further, there is an emphasis on the response to model antigens that provides a greater understanding of how to manipulate adaptive immunity for preventative vaccination rather than a focus on the immune response to infection.

PRE–GERMINAL CENTER DEVELOPMENT

The initial antibody response to many infectious agents is largely based on the rapid T-cell independent (TI) expansion of B cells and their subsequent differentiation into plasma cells. B1 and marginal zone B cells are largely responsible for these rapid TI humoral responses suggesting that some level of "natural memory" function resides in these B-cell subsets and may be predetermined in an evolutionarily conserved manner. TI antigens can be separated into two broad categories based on their ability to polyclonally activate B cells (TI-1) or require BCR recognition of multivalent epitopes to induce B-cell differentiation in the absence of T-cell help (TI-2). TI-2 antigens can activate BCR signaling but require accessory signals to promote the development of antigen-specific plasma cells. In contrast, monovalent protein antigens require antigen-specific helper T-cell regulation to promote high titer antibody responses and the development of B-cell memory. These T_{FH}-cell–dependent antibody responses take longer to emerge and display a spectrum of BCR affinities and antibody isotypes as multiple strategies for antigen-specific clearance in vivo. Immune responses to

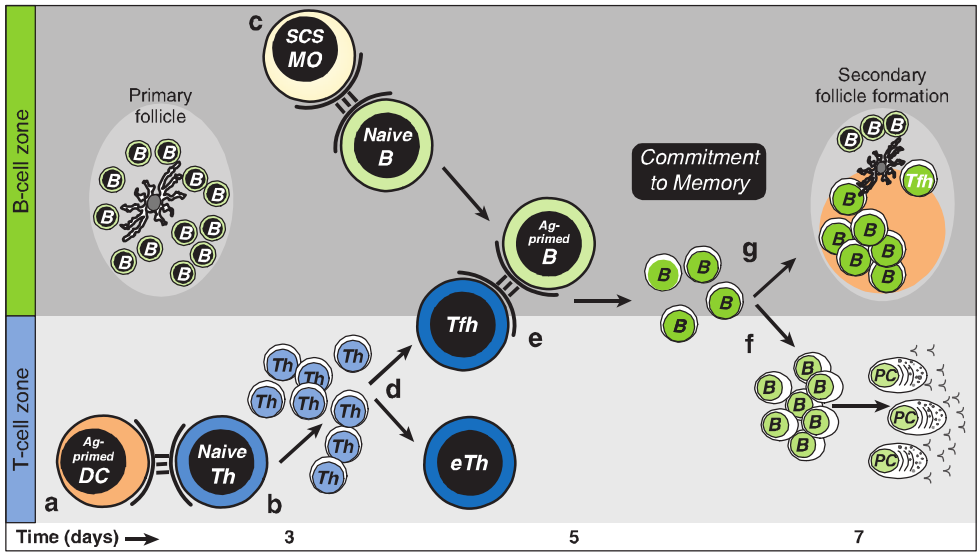


FIG. 10.1. Pre–Germinal Center (GC) Development. **A:** Local protein vaccination induces dendritic cells (DC) maturation and migration to the T-cell zones of draining lymph nodes (LNs). **B:** Peptide major histocompatibility class II expressing DCs will engage naive antigen-specific helper T (T_H) cells to induce proliferation and effector T_H-cell differentiation. **C:** Whole antigen will be trapped by subcapsular sinus macrophage and presented to naive follicular B cells. Antigen-specific B cells will become activated and uptake, process, and present antigenic peptides and migrate toward the T-B borders of the draining LN. **D:** Effector T_H cells emerge in multiple forms with emigrant T_H cells exiting the LN to function at distal tissue sites and T_{FH} cells relocating to T-B borders and interfollicular regions. **E:** Cognate contact between pre-GC T_{FH} cells and antigen-primed B cells is required for multiple programming events in the pathway to B-cell immunity. **F:** Clonal expansion, antibody class switch, and non-GC plasma cell development proceeds within extrafollicular regions of LNs. **G:** Secondary follicle formation and antibody class switch precede formation of the GC reaction as the dominant pathway to memory B-cell formation.

model protein antigens provide experimental access to this complex cascade of cellular and molecular events that underpin long-term protective immunity.

B-cell immunity is initiated on two fronts. Initially, naïve B cells are activated through cell-associated antigen to uptake antigen, process and present peptide major histocompatibility complex [MHC] class II (pMHCII) complexes to enable cognate contact with pMHCII-specific T_{FH} cells. These antigen-primed B cells relocate to T-B–cell borders in lymphoid tissues to increase the likelihood of contact with antigen-primed T_{FH} cells. On the second front, populations of dendritic cells (DCs) also take up antigen, process and present pMHCII, and migrate to draining lymphoid tissues to initiate T_{FH}-cell responses. One outcome of contact with pMHCII-expressing DCs is differentiation of the T_{FH}-cell lineage and the productive contact between pMHCII-specific T_{FH} cells and antigen-primed B cells. This pre-GC cell contact and bidirectional exchange of molecular programming is central to the development of effective B-cell immunity. Antibody class switch, extrafollicular plasma cell differentiation, and initiation of the GC reaction are major B-cell fates associated with this initial phase in B-cell immunity (Fig. 10.1).

Antigen Presentation to B Cells

B cells can acquire soluble antigen by free diffusion into lymphoid follicles[1] or through the lymphoid system of conduits.[2] However, populations of lymph node (LN) subcapsular sinus (SCS) macrophages appear most effective at presenting cell–associated antigen to follicular B cells.[3] B cells take up noncognate antigen presented by SCS macrophages through complement receptors and transfer it into follicular regions and onto follicular DCs (FDCs), which can serve as a source of antigen to prime naïve B cells.[4] In contrast, priming with the cognate antigen at first contact with SCS macrophages results in movement of antigen-specific B cells to the T-B–cell borders and antigen-specific B-cell responses to captured antigens.[4–6] Hence, the SCS macrophages filtering the lymphatic fluid not only protect from systemic infection,[7] but also effectively initiate T helper cell–regulated antigen-specific B-cell immunity.

DCs can also effectively prime B-cell immunity. Injection of DCs pulsed with protein antigen can induce isotype switch and promote efficient B-cell responses. B cells can form synapse-like interactions with antigen-pulsed DCs.[8,9] More recently, two-photon imaging revealed that naïve B cells entering local LNs surveyed protein antigen-pulsed DCs before entering the follicular areas.[10] In this model, engagement of BCR led to calcium flux, migration arrest, and the local accumulation of the antigen-specific B cells. Furthermore, there is a reticular network of collagen fibers that physically connects the subcapsular and paracortical sinuses of LNs to blood vessels and separates these regions from T- and B-cell areas.[11] This organization facilitates the efficient delivery of

soluble antigen toward the lumen of high endothelial venules without entering the LN parenchyma. While resident DCs can access this conduit transport system, follicular B cells may have difficulty accessing soluble antigen.

Nevertheless, in the context of protein antigens, B cells must recognize their cognate antigen and internalize, process, and present peptides from this antigen in the context of MHCII in order to receive pMHCII-specific T-cell help. If the antigen is cell associated, in the presence of adequate costimulation, some aspects of the B-cell response can proceed in a TI manner. B-cell proliferation and plasma cell development can occur in the absence of cluster of differentiation (CD)40-CD40L interactions with some residual isotype switch induced by the action of TACI and BAFF-R.[12] Thus, B cells can respond in a TI manner to protein antigens but do not express the characteristic range of outcomes and the full extent of protective immunity that is found with cognate regulation and T-cell help.

Antigen-Specific B-Cell Activation

Initial activation of naïve B cells through the BCR triggers multiple gene expression programs that enable effective contact with cognate T helper cells. Dynamic contacts with membrane-associated antigens determines the amount of antigen naïve B cells accumulate following antigen exposure.[13] Effective cell contacts require expression of the signaling adaptor dedicator of cytokinesis 8 (DOCK8).[14] Mutations in DOCK8 disrupted integrin ligand accumulation in the immune synapse without altering BCR signaling events. B-cell–specific conditional ablation of the calcineurin regulatory subunit 1 (CNB1),[15] myocyte enhancer factor 2c,[16,17] and stromal interaction molecule 1 and stromal interaction molecule 2[18] have shown that calcium responsiveness is necessary for cell cycle progression in these early pre-GC stages of B-cell responses. Hydrogen voltage-gated proton channels 1, which are internalized with the BCR, have been recently implicated in early B-cell programming events.[19] Single-pulsed BCR signaling[20] that only partially activated NF-κB increased CC chemokine receptor 7 and MHC class II expression, and responsiveness to CD40, indicating some of the early facets of B-cell activation. Severe defects in early B-cell proliferation have also implicated integrin-binding CD98hc[21] and extracellular signal-regulated kinase activation[22] in preparing the antigen-primed B cells to receive cognate T-cell help in vivo. Hence, initial antigen recognition, uptake, processing, and presentation critically impact the early B-cell developmental fate.

High-resolution dynamic imaging has provided substantial insight into the earliest events associated with initial BCR engagement on naïve B cells. The membrane cytoskeleton controls BCR diffusion; disruption of this organization initiates signaling.[23,24] Discrete microclusters form upon antigen binding[25] and recruit multiple components of the intracellular BCR signaling network to initiate signal transduction.[26] One rapid response involves B-cell spreading to increase surface contact with antigen on the presenting cells.[13] Central clustered antigen at the cellular interface is then internalized into antigen-processing lysosomes for presentation with MHCII[8] as the cognate point of T_{FH} contact. Curiously, antigen presentation appears asymmetrically segregated with one daughter retaining larger antigen stores thereby more able to contact pMHCII-specific T_{FH} cells.[27] Whether these developmental outcomes are directed by initial context of antigen presentation or stochastically assorted[28] remains an interesting fundamental issue with an early impact on antigen-specific B-cell development.

Dendritic Cell Maturation

DCs are essential antigen-presenting cells (APCs) for initiating adaptive immunity. Multiple DC subsets exist prior to antigen challenge. Different phenotypic schemes can be used to characterize DC subsets with the origins and developmental relatedness of different DC subsets still subject to debate.[29,30] In the murine system, three main bone marrow–derived DC subsets enter all secondary lymphoid organs via the blood and reside at different levels. These blood-derived DCs all express CD11c and are distinguishable as $CD11b^{hi}CD8a^{neg}$ DCs, $CD8a^{hi}$ DCs, and $6B2^{hi}$ plasmacytoid DCs. In LNs draining the skin, there are at least two further CD11c+ DC subsets, Langerhans cells (LCs) and dermal DCs, that emigrate from the skin, even at homeostasis.[31] Thus, before antigen challenge, multiple subsets of DCs are available to differentially process and present antigen to the adaptive immune compartment.

Protein antigen administration in the absence of inflammation induces immune tolerance. In contrast, coadministration of an immune adjuvant activates facets of innate immunity, induces inflammation, and primes antigen-specific adaptive immunity. Sensing pathogens involves pattern recognition receptors such as the evolutionarily conserved toll-like receptors[32,33] and the more recently described nucleotide oligomerization domain–like receptors.[34] Most forms of antigen and innate stimulators require DC priming at some level for B-cell immunity, whereas particulate antigen in virus-like particles are more reliant on B-cell innate receptor activation.[35] Nevertheless, both families of innate receptors recognize different types of microbial components initiating programs of DC maturation that promote immediate local inflammation and innate effector clearance mechanisms.

Temporal and spatial constraints on DC maturation provides another layer of regulation for the innate system that can impact adaptive immunity. In the steady state, DCs form dense networks at the T-B borders of LNs. Interestingly, motile lipopolysaccharide-activated DC immigrants will rapidly coalesce with this preexisting network in vivo.[36] In separate studies using genetically tagged LCs, the emigrants of LCs and dermal DCs were shown to emerge separately in time and colonize separate regions of the T-B border.[37] A similar temporal regulation was seen using antibodies to specific pMHCII complexes with resident DCs presenting an early wave of pMHCII and dermal DCs emerging later in a second wave.[38] In each of these studies, the immune stimulus was varied and the coordinated response of the innate system also qualitatively and quantitatively different.

Clonal Selection in Helper T Cells

The initial outcome for pMHCII+ DC interactions with naive T_H cells is T-cell receptor (TCR)-driven clonal selection. T_H-cell responses that focus the specific T_H-cell response to a set of dominant TCRs provide access to the mechanisms that underpin T_H clonal selection.[39–41] Earlier studies indicate the importance of TCR-pMHCII affinity in determining T_H cell fate.[39,42–44] In this model, selective expansion of clonotypes expressing higher-affinity TCRs would rely on competition for pMHCII complexes on APCs. Alternatively, in vitro studies using altered peptide ligands suggested that the duration of TCR-pMHCII contact was critical to cell fate and therefore defined "best fit" in vivo.[45–48] In support of this model, T_H cells expressing TCR with fast off rates were lost over time in vivo.[49] Further, there is evidence for different peptides stabilizing the pMHCII to create a hierarchy of dominant peptides.[50] Each and all of these variables would impact what is considered "best fit" and influence the outcome of clonal selection. More recently, we provide evidence for a model of T_H clonal selection that is based on a TCR affinity threshold.[51] Multiple affinity-based thresholds underpin cell fate and T_H clonal expansion[52] with evidence that the highest affinity TCR assort into the T_{FH} compartment.[53] Hence, selection thresholds generate antigen-specific clonal diversity in ways that impact the development of effector T_H cell function in vivo.

Follicular Helper T Cells

There were early reports of effector T_H cells specialized to regulate B-cell responsiveness. CXCR5 expression was first reported on CD4+CD45RO+ cells in the peripheral blood and secondary lymphoid tissue in humans.[54] Gene ablation studies emphasized the role of CXCR5 and CC chemokine receptor 7 in the correct positioning of T and B cells in secondary lymphoid tissue that was also needed to support effective T_H cell–dependent B-cell immunity.[55,56] Blocking CD28 and OX40 interactions in vivo blocked the development of CXCR5+ T_H cells and the GC reaction.[57] Further, CXCR5 expression was induced in an antigen-specific manner on T_H cells in vivo, and these cells relocated to follicular areas and the GC of responding lymphoid tissue.[58] CXCR5+ T_H cells were sorted from human tonsil and shown to support antibody production in vitro.[59,60] The tonsillar CXCR5+ T_H cells expressed high levels of CD40L and ICOS and were found in both the follicular mantle and GC. Adoptive transfers distinguished CXCR5+ B cell helper activity (T_{FH}) from P-selectin ligand^{hi} tissue homing inflammatory mediation (DTH-promoting T_H) that emerged together from the same set of precursors in vivo.[61] The term T_{FH} cells was coined to categorize this functionally and phenotypically distinct effector T_H cell compartment.[59,60]

As the name implies, the cardinal characteristic of all T_{FH} cells is their repositioning into the follicular regions of secondary lymphoid tissues. Early assessments of cytokine production by in vitro restimulated CXCR5+ T_{FH} cells indicated interleukin (IL)-2, interferon (IFN)-γ, and IL-10 from human peripheral blood[60] with evidence for IL-4 and IFN-γ from TCR transgenic mouse T_{FH} cells.[61] Early microarray analyses suggested separable gene expression programs for T_{FH} cells and other known T_H-cell subsets. CXCL13 was highlighted early[62] with evidence for ICOS, IL-21,[63,64] IL-21R,[65] and the differential expression of Bcl-6[63] being used as the most reliable attributes of T_{FH} function in vivo. Thus, acquisition of special pre-GC T_{FH}-cell functions was associated with the programming of a separate T_H-cell lineage.

Molecules important in the development of normal B-cell immunity were implicated in early studies of T_{FH} development. CD28 deficiency or treatment with blocking CD28 antibodies led to profound defects in B-cell immunity.[66] CD28 was required early to initiate naive T_H-cell responsiveness to pMHCII+ CD80- and CD86-expressing DCs. In contrast, CD40-CD40L interactions were central to the delivery of T-cell help to B cells.[67–69] The CD28 family member ICOS[70] was implicated in T_{FH}-cell function in pre-GC interactions with pMHCII-expressing B cells.[71–73] ICOS-deficient humans and mice[74–76] and ICOS-L–deficient mice had marked deficits in all aspects of B-cell immunity. ICOS deficiency was associated with decreased T_{FH}-cell development and considered an important molecule in the delivery of effector T_{FH} function.[77,78] Conversely, overexpression of ICOS in mice with a regulatory defect in ICOS expression[79] resulted in an overproduction of CXCR5+ T_{FH} cells and breakthrough autoimmune disease.[64] Recent studies indicated that ICOS can substitute for CD28 and rescue the T_{FH} defects and B-cell defects in CD28-deficient mice.[80] Furthermore, the abundant CXCR5+ T_{FH} cells in this model act in a T-cell autonomous manner to promote autoantibody production.[81] PD-1, another CD28 family member that has been implicated in the negative regulation of chronically activated T cells, was also found on GC T_{FH} cells in human tonsil and mouse.[82] Positive and negative influences of antigen-specific T_{FH}-cell costimulation are balanced in ways that remain poorly understood in vivo and are an active avenue of current research in this field.

BCL6 is required for development of the T_{FH} program[83–85] and is reinforced within T_{FH} cells upon pre-GC B-cell contact.[86,87] IL-21 also plays a major role in T_{FH} function with substantial loss of B-cell immunity in its absence.[88,89] Recent studies have identified BCL6 in antigen-specific T_{FH} cells and BLIMP1, which has an opposing function, in non-T_{FH} cells.[53] BCL6 and BLIMP1 expression was mutually exclusive across these two T_H-cell subtypes, already evident by the second cell division in vivo.[29] More recently, transcription factors c-Maf and BATF were shown to act with BCL6 to program T_{FH} development.[90,91] Hence, distinct transcriptional programming of unique cellular functions directs the early T_{FH}-cell development that is central to subsequent B-cell immunity (Fig. 10.2).

Pre-Germinal Center Follicular Helper T-B–Cell Contact

First contact between antigen-specific T_{FH} and antigen-primed B cells has also been captured through dynamic imaging.[92] Stable "monogamous" interactions between one antigen-specific T_{FH} cell and one B cell can last for a duration of 10 to 60 minutes in the follicular regions of the LNs. These interactions were accompanied by highly dynamic movements, with the B cells migrating extensively and leading

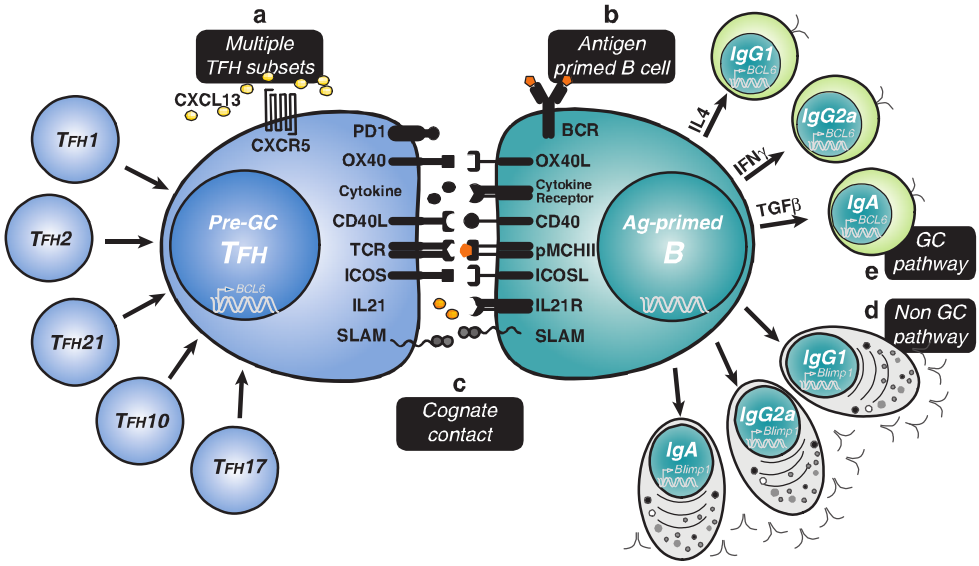


FIG. 10.2. Pre–Germinal Center (GC) Follicular Helper T (TFH)-B-Cell Contact. **A:** Multiple subsets of antigen-specific pre-GC T_{FH} are produced to regulate B-cell immunity. The organization of function within T_{FH} subsets remains speculative. There is evidence for different cytokine-secreting T_{FH} cells that regulate commitment to separate antibody class as well as different types of T_{FH} cells that regulate non-GC plasma cell differentiation. Bcl-6 and CXCR5 expression is thought to be a common feature of all T_{FH} cell subsets. **B:** Antigen-primed B cells must process and present peptide major histocompatibility class II to receive cognate help from pre-GC T_{FH} cells. Upregulation of molecules involved in helper T cell contact is a poorly resolved component of early antigen-driven B-cell maturation. **C:** Cognate contact between antigen-specific T-cell receptor and peptide major histocompatibility class II complexes focus pre-GC T_{FH}-B cell intercellular exchange of molecular information. Modifying interactions at first contact are known to involve costimulatory molecules (eg, cluster of differentiation [CD]40L-CD40, ICOS-ICOSL), accessory interactions (eg, signaling lymphocytic activation molecule family interactions, OX40-OX40L), cytokine and cytokine receptors (eg, IL4-IL4R, interferon [IFN]γ-IFNγ receptor, IL21-IL21R). Distribution of these functional attributes within pre-GC T_{FH} compartments is not yet well resolved in vivo. **D:** The non-GC pathway to plasma cell development permits antibody class switch recombination (CSR) without somatic hypermutation (SHM) depending largely on the cytokine stimulus provide by pre-GC T_{FH} cells. Blimp-1 expression is required for plasma cell commitment across all antibody classes. **E:** The GC pathway to memory B-cell development begins with extensive B-cell proliferation within secondary follicles that will polarize into dark and light zone to initiate the GC reaction. The GC pathway is associated with Bcl-6 upregulation and activation-induced cytidine deaminase expression to supports both antibody CSR and SHM. These GC features emerge across all antibody classes and require productive and long duration pre-GC T_{FH} contact.

the T_{FH} cells.[92] A recent study demonstrated that expression of the adaptor molecule signaling lymphocytic activation molecule–associated protein (SAP) was needed to form long duration contacts with antigen-primed B cells.[93] In these studies, there was no role for SAP in early T_{FH}-DC contacts, and the SAP-deficient T_{FH} cells reached the follicular regions and expressed all the hallmarks of pre-GC T_{FH} cells ($CXCR5^{hi}$, CD40L+, $ICOS^{hi}$, and $OX40^{hi}$).[93] Furthermore, in the absence of SAP, T_{FH} cells were still capable of cytokine production[94] but unable to promote GC formation.[95,96] More recently, dynamic imaging places ongoing critical pre-GC contacts in the interfollicular zones of LNs[97] with a requirement for persistent BCL6 expression in B cells to maintain effective cognate contact.[98] Therefore, early T_{FH}-cell developmental programs establish the capacity for cognate contact needed to promote ongoing antigen-specific B-cell immunity.

It has been unclear how differential BCR affinity can impact the early fate of antigen-primed B cells. Very-low-affinity B cells are capable of forming GCs[99] but fail to do so in the presence of high-affinity competition.[100] In contrast, there is evidence for the highest-affinity B cells preferentially entering the non-GC plasma cell pathway, leaving lower-affinity B cells to mature within the GC cycle.[101] This issue has been addressed more recently using intravital imaging to examine the early pre-GC selection events.[102] In this model, access to antigen was not impacted by BCR affinity, but the differential capacity to present antigen to pre-GC T_{FH} cells assorted with BCR affinity. Increased T-cell help promoted greater access to both the plasma cell pathway and the GC reaction. Thus, BCR affinity thresholds regulate B-cell fate at the earliest pre-GC junctures of antigen-specific T_{FH}-B interactions.

Overall, the precise function of different costimulatory molecules and their combinatorial impact on antigen-specific B cell fate remains an exciting area of current interest. Quantitative differences in cell surface molecules in combination with mixtures of cytokines will likely synergize in

predetermined ways to skew pMHCII-expressing B cells into separate pathways of B-cell immunity. Unraveling these molecular combinations will help to define the rules of molecular control for antigen-specific B-cell immunity.

Controlling Antibody Class

Pre-GC cognate T_{FH}-cell contact controls multiple antigen-specific B-cell differentiation options. Beyond this early pre-GC developmental juncture, antibody class switch appears in both in the extrafollicular pathway to plasma cell differentiation and the GC pathway to memory development.[103] Class switch also requires multiple rounds of cell division in the target cell before expression of non-immunoglobulin (Ig)M antibody.[104] Hence, it is likely that initial commitment to antibody class occurs at the first pre-GC point of cognate contact and is propagated in a lineal manner across each developmental option (see Fig. 10.2).

Class switch recombination (CSR) is an intrachromosonal deletional process between the switch (S) regions that reside 5′ of each constant region gene in B cells (except Cδ).[105] Signaling through CD40 and cytokine receptors induces germline transcription through the targeted S regions providing activation-induced cytidine deaminase (AID; also known as Aicda) access to deaminate cytosines in the single stranded template. AID is required and sufficient for the initiation of the CSR reaction in the activated locus.[106] AID-deficient animals[107] and humans[108] display no CSR or somatic hypermutation (SHM) of the Ig genes. Recent evidence indicates that following antigen stimulation, AID expression is regulated in B cells by paired box gene/protein 5, E-box proteins,[109] homeobox C4,[110] and forkhead box O1.[111] Removal of the resulting uracils and deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) cleavage generates double strand breaks that trigger the recruitment of DNA damage machinery, mismatch repair, and nonhomologous end joining to complete the CSR event.[112] The adapter protein 14.3.3 is recruited with AID to switch regions[113] and polymerase ζ has been implicated in the repair process associated with CSR.[114] Peripheral B cells undergoing CSR in the absence of the x-ray–repair cross-complementing protein 4 component of the double strand break repair machinery are also highly susceptible to translocation events and oncogenic transformation.[115] Antibody class switch is a destabilizing and potentially dangerous cellular event that can proceed without SHM in the extrafollicular pathway.

Induced CD40L on pre-GC T_{FH} cells and the receipt of this signal through CD40 on B cells is required for antibody class switch.[67,116] Animals and humans lacking CD40 display a hyper-IgM syndrome with profound defects in class switch, GC formation, and the development of affinity matured B-cell memory.[116] ICOS expression on activated T_{FH} cells is thought to act upstream of CD40L in this temporally orchestrated set of events.[117] ICOS-deficient animals also have clear defects in antibody class switch, GC formation, and the development of B-cell memory.[74–76] Some residual class switch in the absence of CD40/CD40L interactions may be explained by the action of TACI and BAFF-R.[12] OX40/OX40L interactions also quantitatively impact class switch while CD27-CD70 interactions promote plasma cell (PC) production.[118] Thus, the range of molecules expressed at the pre-GC T_{FH} cell surface influences the developmental impact of TCR-pMHCII contact on antigen-primed B cells.

Considering the range of antibodies that can be produced, there must be multiple subtypes of pre-GC T_{FH} cells that control antibody class. Different classes of pre-GC T_{FH} would vary in production of T_{FH} cell–derived cytokines to control antibody isotype. IL-4 and IFN-γ are reciprocal regulators of IgG1 and IgG2a production.[119] Animals lacking IL-4 or Stat 6 have decreased IgG1 levels and no IgE.[120,121] IL-4 also acts together with IL-21 to control IgG subtypes and IgE levels.[88] In contrast, transforming growth factor (TGF)β is implicated in the induction IgA, while IL-2 and IL-5 augment IgA production.[122] Similarly, IL-6 may selectively support IgG2a and IgG2b expressing B cells in vivo.[123] Each of these factors can exert their effects in vitro or in a bystander manner in vivo. However, it is thought that the directed delivery of these soluble molecules toward points of TCR-pMHCII contact allows soluble signals to focus locally in an antigen-specific cognate manner.

Within antigen-responsive B cells, the molecular machinery that regulates CSR is deployed in an antibody class–specific manner. The global CSR machinery is targeted by transcription factors downstream of the cytokine receptors that control specific antibody classes. For example, IFNγ activates signal transducer and activator of transcription downstream of the IFNγ receptor to induce T-bet and promote IgG2a class switching.[124,125] Similarly, TGFβ signals through TGFβ-receptor to activate SMAD and RUNX transcription factors to promote IgA class switch.[126] Furthermore, the transcriptional regulator BATF required for T_{FH} development is also required in B cells to generate germline switch transcripts and promote AID expression.[91] Finally, Ikaros regulates antibody class decisions by differentially controlling transcriptional accessibility of constant region genes.[127] How the initial commitment to antibody class is maintained and propagated during clonal expansion, BCR diversification, and affinity-based selection within the GC reaction remains an important but unresolved issue. Therefore, it remains plausible that functional reprogramming accompanies CSR creating separable lineages of class-specific memory B cells in vivo.

Extrafollicular Plasma Cell Development

Under the cognate regulation of pre-GC T_{FH} cells, a cohort of antigen-primed B cells clonally expand within the T-cell zones of secondary lymphoid organs and rapidly give rise to PCs. Within the first few days after antigen exposure, small foci of B-cell blasts can be seen within the T-cell zones.[103] This plasmablast stage appears transitional and defines pre-PCs that may secrete antibody but also retain the capacity to proliferate. In contrast, PCs are typically considered terminally differentiated and in a postmitotic state.[128,129] PCs display a marked increase in IgH and IgL messenger ribonucleic acid and prominent amounts of rough endoplasmic reticulum to accommodate translation and secretion of abundant Ig. They have reduced or lost numerous cell surface molecules

including B220, CD19, CD21, and CD22 with an increase in the proteoglycan syndecan-1 (CD138),[130,131] often used as a distinguishing marker for PCs. We recently demonstrated that class-switched plasma cells retained robust antigen-presentation capacity as a negative feedback loop for regulation of T_{FH} cells.[132] These studies further highlight the bidirectional programming between antigen-primed B cells and pMHCII-specific T_{FH} cells during developing immune responses.

In mice deficient for SAP, the extrafollicular pathway to PC development, remains largely intact but the GC pathway is blocked.[95] Recent studies indicate that SAP-deficient T_{FH} cells exhibit heightened CD40L expression but decreased ICOS induction that alone can account for this defect.[94] More recent studies indicate that SAP-deficient T_{FH} cells can only form short duration cognate contact with antigen-primed B cells, which are insufficient for GC entry but adequate for PC formation. It will be important to dissect the separable signals and cellular subsets of pre-GC T_{FH} cells that regulate the rapid but short-lived effector B-cell response in vivo.

Extrafollicular PCs have half-lives of 3 to 5 days[133] and express germline-encoded antigen-specific antibodies.[131,134] Newly formed PCs migrate via the marginal zone bridging channels into the red pulp of the spleen and into the medullary cords of LNs. Migration patterns in vivo appear controlled by increased responsiveness to the CXCR4 ligand CXCL12 and decreased expression of CXCR5 and CC chemokine receptor 7.[135] There is evidence for BCR affinity-based selection even at this early stage in the response.[131] In some studies, B cells expressing low affinity BCR remain non-GC and high-affinity B cells preferentially enter the GC pathway.[100] The converse can also be seen with high-affinity B cells preferentially entering the non-GC short-lived PC pathway.[101] While seemingly contradictory, these different outcomes in vivo may reflect the plasticity of intercellular control at the T_{FH}-B point of contact.

The transcriptional control of PC development also exists in multiple layers controlling a cascade of developmental change. The transcriptional repressor prdm-1 (encoding Blimp-1) plays a central role in the regulation of PC development.[136] B cells lacking Blimp-1 do not differentiate into extrafollicular PC or post-GC PC, with TI and TD antibody responses profoundly diminished in vivo.[137] These Blimp-1–deficient animals also display defective levels of serum antibody, suggesting that spontaneous production of antibody by B-1-B cells also requires Blimp-1 expression. Structure-function analysis indicates the modular action of Blimp-1 integrating a variety of environmental cues that lead to PC development.[138,139] Blimp-1 represses proliferation through c-myc as one direct target among many others involved in cell cycle control. Blimp-1 also induces antibody secretion by repressing the transcription factor Pax-5, thereby derepressing Xbp-1. The transcription factor Xbp-1 controls the unfolded protein response, and many facets of the cellular secretory mechanism that are critical to PC function and survival.[140–142]

The transcriptional coactivator OBF-1 also appears important for B cells to complete the PC program.[143] In the absence of OBF-1, Bcl-6, Pax-5, and AID are not repressed, blocking the induction of Blimp-1 and PC development. In contrast, ablation of the transcription factor MitF leads to the spontaneous development of PC that appears independent of antigen stimuli.[144] Interestingly, reexpression of bcl-6 and its cofactor MTA3 re-activates the B-cell program and increased CD19 and MHC II, and decreased CD138 in plasma cell lines.[145] This remarkable study suggests that PC fate is not as terminal and passive as it has been thought to be, and that the PC fate remains subject to dynamic gene expression programs. Regulation of the unfolded-protein response by X-box-binding protein 1 is not needed for plasma cell development but is necessary for antibody secretion.[146,147] Epstein-Barr virus-induced molecule 2 also appears essential for B-cell movement to extrafollicular sites and the non-GC plasma cell response.[148,149] In addition, Epstein-Barr virus-induced molecule 2 guides recently activated B cells to interfollicular LN regions and then to outer follicular areas as a prelude to GC formation. Furthermore, there appears to be an early pre-GC proliferative phase at the perimeter of follicles that also precedes GC formation and BCR diversification.[150] Interestingly, recent dynamic imaging studies indicate migration of T_{FH} cells to the follicle interior, even before accumulation of GC B cells.[97]

THE GERMINAL CENTER CYCLE

Movement of antigen-primed B cells into the follicular regions of lymphoid organs after effector T_{FH}-cell contact initiates the GC pathway to memory B-cell development. These pre-GC B cells expand rapidly within the follicular region to form areas of B220+IgD^{low} antigen-specific B cells referred to as secondary follicles. Secondary follicles polarize into T-cell proximal dark zones of cycling centroblasts and opposing light zones of largely noncycling centrocytes among the dense processes of FDC and sparse presence of GC T_{FH} cells.[151,152] This broad anatomical distribution of the GC reaction orients the activities of clonal expansion, BCR diversification, and clonal variant selection that underpin the evolution of high-affinity memory B cells and post-GC plasma cells in this pathway (Fig. 10.3).

Under normal physiologic conditions, the GC reaction emerges as the most efficient means to control affinity maturation and memory B-cell development. However, in the disorganized or absent preimmune lymphoid subcompartments of mice lacking LTa, LTb, tumor necrosis factor receptor I, and LTbR, the activities of the GC reaction remain disorganized but largely intact.[153–156] Vestiges of the GC or small cell aggregates manage the expansion, diversification, and selection steps required for affinity maturation and memory B-cell development.

Germinal Center Cellular Dynamics

Dynamic imaging of the GC reaction in situ has provided outstanding clarity to the kinetics of GC B cell[157,158] and GC T_{FH}-cell movements and interactions.[159] There was evidence for interzonal movement of GC B cells indicating bidirectional migration between light and dark zones,[157–160] with one study emphasizing the majority of movement to be

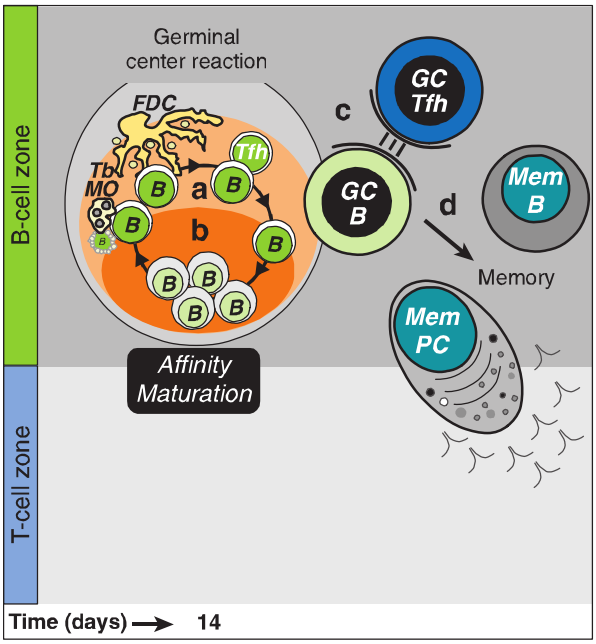


FIG. 10.3. The Germinal Center (GC) Reaction. **A:** Polarization of the secondary follicle anatomically signifies initiation of the GC cycle with the dark zone supporting GC centroblast expansion, class switch recombination and B-cell receptor (BCR) diversification through somatic hypermutation. **B:** Noncycling GC centrocytes move to the light zone and continually scan follicular dendritic cell networks. Centrocytes that lose antigen binding will undergo apoptosis while those that express variant BCR with higher affinity can compete for binding to antigen-specific GC T_{FH} cells. **C:** Cognate contact with GC T_{FH} cells requires peptide major histocompatibility class II expression by GC centrocytes that can promote reentry into the dark zones and the GC cycle or exit from the GC. **D:** Entry into the affinity-matured memory B cell compartments of nonsecreting memory B cells and post-GC plasma cells.

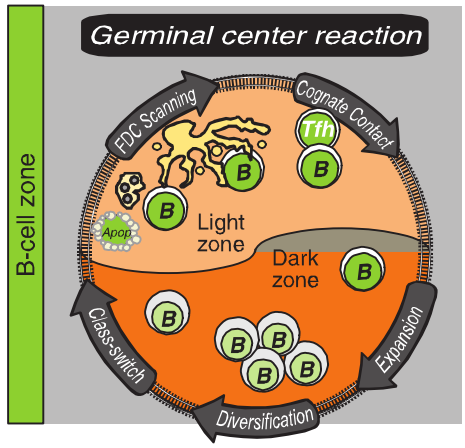


FIG. 10.4. The Germinal Center (GC) Cycle. The GC cycle is initiated through pre-GC contact with cognate follicular helper T (T_{FH}) cells that promotes extensive proliferation of antigen-primed B cells. The GC cycle is thought to begin when immunoglobulin D– secondary follicles polarize into micro-anatomically distinguishable dark zones (DZ) (containing centroblasts) and light zones (LZ) (containing centrocytes, antigen-laden follicular dendritic cell [FDC] networks, and antigen-specific GC T_{FH} cells). Antigen-specific GC B cells' clonal expansion in the DZ is accompanied by B-cell receptor (BCR) diversification through SHM and antibody class switch. Both SHM and CSR are associated with transcriptionally active gene loci, are associated with deoxyribonucleic acid replicative and repair machinery, and occur during cell cycle. Hence, we associated these activities with the DZ phase of the GC cycle. Exit from cell cycle coincides with relocation of noncycling GC B cells to the LZ. Continual scanning of immune complex–coated FDC is observed in the LZ and has been associated with the potential for GC B cells to test variant BCR for antigen binding. Loss of antigen binding can lead to death by apoptosis and clearance of dead cells by tingible body macrophages in the LZ. Positive signals through the BCR during FDC scanning program GC B cells to compete for contact with cognate GC T_{FH} cells. Productive contact with GC T_{FH} cells can induce reentry into the GC cycle through movement back into the DZ and induction of cell cycle and BCR rediversification. Alternatively, affinity-matured GC B cells can exit the GC as either a nonsecreting memory B cell precursors for the memory response, or secreting long-lived "memory" plasma cells that contribute to serologic memory.

intrazonal.[157,160] Surprisingly, cell division appeared in both zones of the GC in contrast to classical models.[157–159] There was also evidence for the ability of naive B cells to traverse the GC environment with evidence that high-affinity B cells could also enter and dominate existing GCs.[158] All studies identified highly motile GC B-cell movements with evidence for continuous uninterrupted movement over FDC processes. This movement contrasted with the capacity of GC B cells to form frequent short-term contacts but infrequent stable contacts with GC T_{FH} cells.[159] The latter group suggested that these infrequent cognate contacts play a dominant role in the selection of high-affinity BCR expressing GC B cells.[161] Hence, a unique model for affinity-based selection emerges with uninterrupted access of GC B cells to antigen-coated FDCs followed by the ability of "reprimed" B cells to express pMHCII complexes to amounts that gain competitive access to pMHCII-specific GC T_{FH} cells.

More recently, labeling of B cells based on GC zonal location with a photo-activatable green fluorescence protein tag provided more conclusive evidence for these activities in vivo.[162] These elegant studies indicated that proliferation was largely restricted to the dark zone followed by a net movement to the light zone. Importantly, movement back into the dark zone and reinitiation of proliferation was controlled by antigen presentation to GC T_{FH} cells.[162] These studies provide experimental evidence for the reiterative cycles of BCR diversification and positive selection as central events during affinity maturation driving clonal evolution in the antigen-specific memory B cell compartment (Fig. 10.4).

Memory B-Cell Evolution

The GC reaction requires T-cell help as it is absent in athymic nude mice, CD40- and CD40L-deficient mice, and is diminished using reagents that block or deplete T_H-cell function such as anti-CD4, anti-CD40, and anti-CD28.[163–165] Mice deficient in ICOS also display profound defects in all aspects of T-cell–dependent B-cell responses.[74–76] Conversely, mice deficient in Roquin, an inhibitor of ICOS expression, produce excessive numbers of T_{FH} cells and GCs and are prone to autoimmunity.[64] However, TI antigens can also promote GC

reactions, but they collapse within the first week after priming with no evidence of BCR diversification.[166] In contrast, marginal zone B cells can be recruited into T-cell–dependent responses and form GCs that diversify and affinity mature.[167] Interestingly, in these studies, the marginal zone B cells responding to antigen challenge expressed a preimmune BCR repertoire distinct from that of the follicular B cells responding in the same animals. Hence, there is some redundancy to the control of GC formation and flexibility to the origins of the B cells recruited into the GC reaction.

The transcriptional repressor Bcl6 is highly expressed in the GC and is necessary for GC formation.[168] However, IgM and IgG1 antigen-specific memory B cells can develop in the absence of Bcl6.[169] These studies were based on direct labeling with antigen and their capacity to respond to soluble low-dose antigen recall. However, there were no GC formed, and the memory B cells expressed no SHM or evidence for affinity maturation. Bcl6 has been shown to repress p53, the tumor suppressor gene that controls DNA-damage–induced apoptosis.[170] Regulation of p53 in this manner may protect GC B cells to allow for the DNA breaks that are necessary intermediates in SHM and CSR. Bcl6 also directly represses Blimp-1[171] and hence must be lost at some point during the GC reaction to allow subsequent development of memory B cells and post-GC PCs in vivo.[137]

The GC cycle of activity regulates clonal evolution within antigen-primed B-cell responders. All pre-GC B cells express some measure of antigen specificity and appear preselected into the memory B-cell pathway based on germline BCR expression. Massive and rapid clonal expansion with doubling times of 6 to 8 hours underpins secondary follicle formation and drives clonal expansion in the GC reaction. It is now clear that GC B cells in the light zone also have the capacity to proliferate.[172] Intravital studies emphasize the more open nature of the GC itself demonstrating the capacity of naive B cells to traverse the follicular region occupied by the antigen-responsive GC.[173] Importantly, antigen-specific B cells could also be recruited into ongoing GCs if they expressed sufficiently high-affinity BCR. While these studies use high frequencies of BCR transgenic B cells pulsed into the ongoing response, it is intriguing to consider the ramifications of such an open network of affinity-based selection and its impact on the composition of the memory B-cell compartment.

Somatic Hypermutation

BCR diversification is dependent on DNA replication and largely restricted to GC B cells in the pathway to memory. Upon expansion in the GC reaction, antigen-specific B cells downregulate their germline BCR and diversify their variable region genes through SHM. Single base substitutions, rare insertions, and deletions are introduced into a region spanning 1.5 to 2.0 kb downstream of the transcription initiation site; however, activity peaks within the V(D)J region and decreases within the J-C intronic region of IgH and IgL variable genes.[174] The mutation rate approaches 10−3 per base pair per generation, which is approximately six orders of magnitude higher than spontaneous mutation frequencies. Thus, approximately one mutation is introduced with each cell division. Analysis of mutation in "passenger" Ig transgenes that are not under selection pressure indicate intrinsic sequence hot spots for the mutator mechanism.[175] Hence, BCR diversification accompanies extensive clonal expansion within the GC reaction generating progeny that express variant antigen-binding BCR (Fig. 10.5).

AID is the central component of the SHM mechanism. Originally discovered through complementary DNA subtraction focused on novel genes in GC B cells,[176] it was then found to be defective in an autosomal-recessive form of hyper-IgM syndrome.[108] Mice deficient in AID were able to form the GC reaction but were unable to undergo CSR or SHM.[107] AID deaminates cytosine to uracil in single-stranded DNA that can be processed by a mutagenic repair pathway.[105,177] The initial changes target sequence-dependent hotspots within rearranged variable region genes of antibodies. Uracil excision by uracil DNA glycosylase is then processed by error-prone DNA replication to introduce point mutations within the actively transcribed Ig locus. Error-prone processing using mismatch repair and base excision repair factors is selectively offset with high-fidelity processing to protect genome stability.[178] The targeting spectrum of AID associated with its active site can be altered to modify variable region gene SHM[179] and rate of antibody diversification.[180] AID stability within the cytoplasm of Ramos B-cell lines can be regulated by heat shock protein 90 with specific inhibition leading to destabilized AID[181] providing a means to modify the rate of antibody diversification. The details of this mutating complex, as well as its action and regulation within the GC reaction, are active areas of research that have been reviewed in detail elsewhere.[182]

Cell Cycle Arrest and Apoptosis

The control of cell cycle in the GC environment is of fundamental importance to the evolution of high-affinity B-cell memory. Variant GC B cells exit the cell cycle and move toward the light zone to undergo selection. Dysregulated cell cycle arrest promotes enlarged GCs in situ. This phenotype is found in multiple genetic knockout models that also influence the composition of the memory B-cell compartment. Large GCs form in the absence of AID and are thought to indicate a negative feedback mechanism that follows SHM and/or CSR.[107] The absence of the CDK inhibitor $p18^{INK4c}$ more directly impacts GC size through blocking cell cycle arrest and also decreases the formation of long-lived PCs.[183] The large GCs in the absence of Blimp-1[137] may also be related to the lack of cell cycle control that may contribute to the post-GC PC defect in these mice. The absence of the main regulatory subunit of calcineurin, CnB1, results in the large GC phenotype, the loss of late stage antibody production, and the diminution of the memory B-cell response to antigen recall.[184] It will be important to assess whether these putative cell cycle defects directly impact high-affinity memory B-cell evolution or indirectly modify GC B-cell fate and the onset of apoptosis.

It is generally believed that the majority of GC B cells expressing variant BCR will die in situ. Extensive local apop-

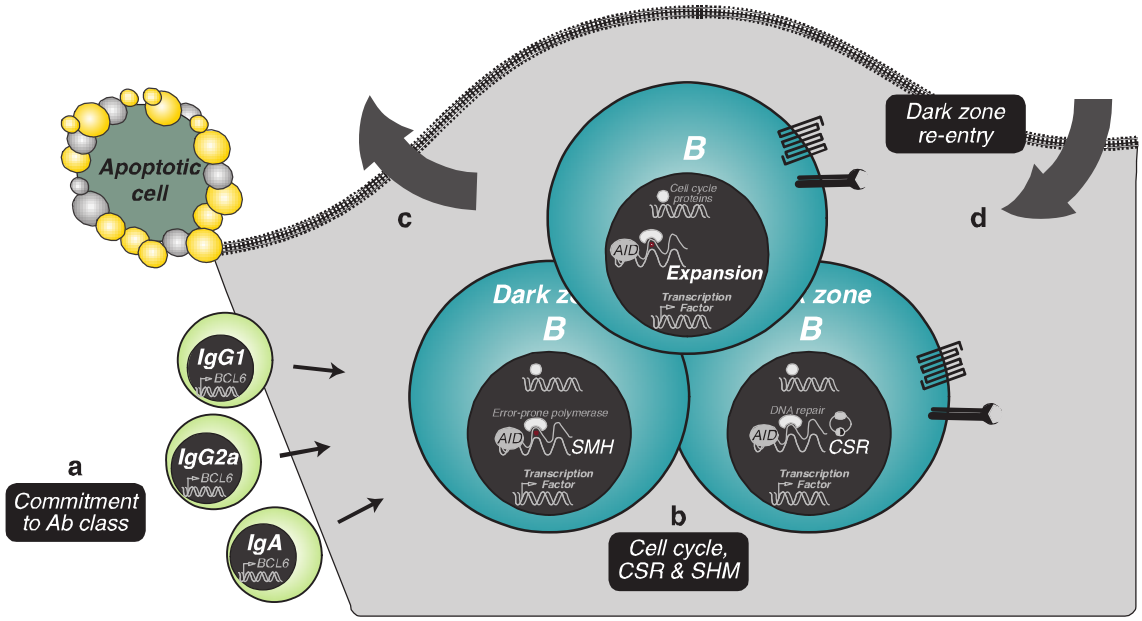


FIG. 10.5. The Germinal Center (GC) Dark Zone (DZ). **A:** Pre-GC cognate follicular helper T cues instruct antigen-primed B cells to initiate the GC reaction. It is likely that commitment to antibody class is preprogrammed at this initial juncture and all classes of B cells can seed the primary GC response. **B:** Molecular control of the cell cycle is an integral component of DZ B-cell dynamics and Bcl6 expression involved in ways that remain poorly resolved. Activation-induced cytidine deaminase (AID) expression, cytosine deaminase activity, and uracil deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) glycosylase initiate the somatic hypermutation (SHM) machinery targeted to single-stranded DNA. Uracil excision is then processed by error-prone DNA replication to introduce point mutations into the rearranged antibody variable genes. Class switch recombination (CSR) can also occur during this DZ phase using AID to target DNA cleavage to antibody switch regions, generate double strand DNA breaks that trigger the DNA damage machinery to complete the CSR event. The interrelatedness of cell cycle control, SHM, and CSR is not clearly resolved in vivo. **C:** DZ GC B cells will reexpress diversified B-cell receptors and enter the light zone (LZ) of the GC reaction to undergo antigen-based selection. **D:** Following antigen-based selection and cognate contact with GC follicular helper T cells, LZ GC B cells can reenter the DZ regions and rediversify the BCR to initiate secondary rounds of affinity maturation.

tosis is characteristic of the GC reaction. Furthermore, overexpression of antiapoptotic molecules such as Bcl-2 or Bcl-xL prolongs survival of GC B cells without improving selection efficiency.[185] In the absence of CD95 (Fas), there is also a dilution of high-affinity clonotypes in the memory B-cell compartment.[186] Cell death is a prevalent outcome of the GC cycle.[187] Fas receptor expression on B cells regulates negative selection in the GC.[188] Moreover, myeloid cell leukemia sequence 1 has emerged as a major antiapoptotic factor controlling GC B-cell formation and survival.[189] Positive selection of variant GC B cells must be a major driving force within the GC and is based on the increased capacity of the mutated BCR to bind antigen. Mutations in the comodifiers of BCR signal also impact GC B-cell dynamics. Unlike the CnB1 mutation, defects in CD45 and CD19 reduce proliferation and survival of GC B cells arguing for a more global impact of these molecules on BCR signal integration.[172,190,191] Initiation of the GC development program may also be altered to differing degrees in these animal models in ways that are difficult to dissect. Driving the expression of Cre recombinase at a stage in development when germline Cγ1 has been transcribed has helped to overcome these problems.[192] This model allows the conditional deletion of alleles at a late stage in antigen-driven B-cell development that occurs after the first T_H-B–cell checkpoint in development.

Affinity Maturation

Affinity maturation requires the positive selection of GC B cells expressing high-affinity variant BCRs. The details of this process are still poorly understood. Receipt and integration of signals through the BCR are clearly involved in positive selection and must be based on the affinity for antigen. Ablation of BCR signals such as calcineurin-dependent signals, mutations in the CD19 signaling pathway, and loss of CD45 interferes with positive selection and memory B-cell development.[172,184,190,191] However, as discussed previously, it is difficult to dissect the GC BCR interactions with antigen from the initial BCR triggers that recruited naive B cells into the primary response. Most models suggest immune complex (IC) trapping on FDCs as the most likely means for variant BCRs to receive a rescuing signal from native antigen. Antigen appears rapidly in this location and can persist for extended periods of time focused to FDC in lymphoid tissue draining the site of antigen administration.[193] In support of this notion, complement receptors CD21/CD35 on FDCs are needed to generate long-term serum antibody responses.[194] However, animals that

do not secrete antibody and therefore cannot form ICs can still support affinity maturation.[195] In the absence of inhibitor of NF-κB kinase 2–dependent activation of the NF-κB pathway, FDCs can still capture ICs but are not stimulated to upregulate vascular cellular adhesion molecule-1 and intercellular adhesion molecule-1.[196] In the absence of these adhesion molecules, GC B cells appear more susceptible to apoptosis with evidence for altered gene expression and decreased affinity maturation.

Evidence connecting BCR signal strength within the GC B-cell compartment and affinity maturation has been lacking. BCR signaling and antigen presentation are required to initiate the GC reaction and hence are difficult to manipulate specifically within the GC. In the absence of DOCK8, which causes compromised early immune synapse formation, early GCs still develop.[14] However, without DOCK8, these GCs do not persist and GC B cells do not undergo affinity maturation. Calcium influx as a consequence of BCR signaling also appears dispensable for affinity maturation under multiple T cell–dependent priming conditions in vivo. Although B cells deficient for stromal interaction molecule 1 and stromal interaction molecule 2 or for CNB1 exhibit profound defects in proliferation in vitro,[15,18] these signaling molecules are dispensable for the maturation of antibody responses in vivo. Downstream of BCR signals, the transcription factor myocyte enhancer factor 2c is necessary for early B-cell proliferation and GC formation,[16,17] but dissecting the pre-GC versus GC function remains unresolved. B cell–specific deletion of nuclear factor of activated T cells, cytoplasmic 1 also compromises B-cell responses in vivo[197] but the level of the defect remains unclear. Nevertheless, as BCR signal strength must drive affinity maturation at some level, it remains important to resolve the B-cell intrinsic mechanisms that also help to shape the affinity of the memory B-cell compartment.

Antigen Scanning on Follicular Dendritic Cell Networks

Polarity in the GC microenvironment is partly controlled by the differential expression of chemokines and their receptors.[198] Higher expression of CXCL12 in the dark zone assorts CXCR4-expressing centroblasts, while higher CXCL13 in the light zone attracts CXCR5-expressing centrocytes. This study used flow cytometry and cell cycle status to identify GC B-cell subsets and demonstrate the aberrant behavior of GC B cells from various genetically modified host animals. Recent two-photon analysis revealed the movement of GC B cells along FDC processes within the GC.[159] This study emphasized the lack of dwell time for GC B cells on FDC processes with little change in GC B-cell velocity upon FDC contact. Therefore, if antigen binding is associated with GC B cell–FDC contact, there appears to be no evidence for interclonal competition between different GC B cells. These studies describe when variant GC B cells are most likely to contact antigen with the opportunity to test the binding properties of their expressed mutated BCR (Fig. 10.6).

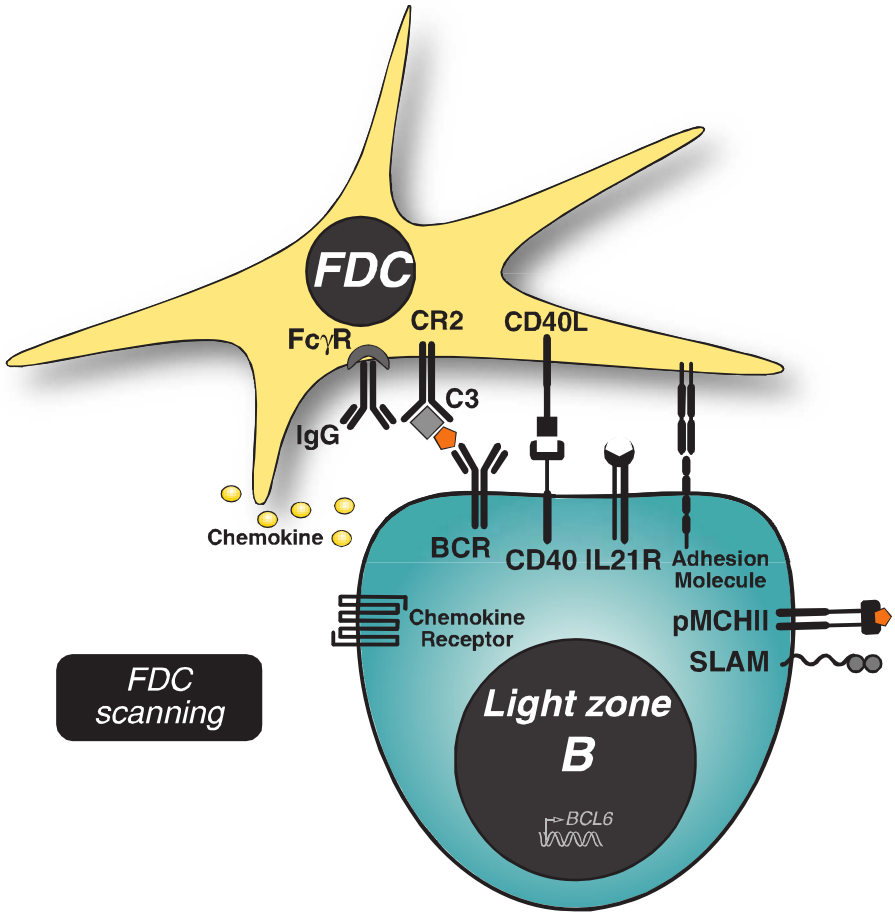


FIG. 10.6. Antigen Scanning on Follicular Dendritic Cell (FDC) Networks. FDC scanning appears as continuous movement of germinal center B cells along mature immune complex-laden FDC processes. These contacts are more similar to stromal cell-associated trafficking behavior than stable immune synapse-like interactions. Differential B-cell receptor (BCR) affinity for antigen may influence antigen-uptake and peptide major histocompatibility class II presentation at this juncture of development. Programs of gene expression for molecules able to modify cognate contact may also be differentially induced due to BCR signal strength through FDC scanning.

As with all in vivo studies, there are substantial influences associated with the choice of models, affinities of BCR, type of antigen, and method of immunization that will impact the observations presented in the studies. The issues of antigen receptor monoclonality are self-evident in BCR transgenic models in the context of repertoire studies, but are less clearly understood in association with the expression of diverse effector functions in vivo. More importantly, in the context of T-cell responses, it is now apparent that elevated precursor frequency deviates the dynamics of clonal expansion[199,200] and can alter the development of T-cell memory in vivo.[201] Changing the balance or affinity of regulator populations will impact cell fate of the target populations in ways that remain difficult to assess. Nevertheless, new insights offered by dynamic imaging continue to buttress our appreciation for the workings of the immune system and serve to challenge existing dogma in powerful and productive ways.

Germinal Center Follicular Helper T Cells

In contrast to pre-GC effector T_{FH} cells discussed previously, CXCR5+ T_H in GC will be referred to as GC T_{FH} cells. Many CXCR5+ T_{FH} cells were found very early in the immune response (day 3), at the T-B borders and within follicular regions of LNs.[58] These early studies also provided evidence for a circulating compartment of CXCR5+ T_H cells. Hence, it is clear that CXCR5 expression is not a reliable marker of GC T_{FH} cells only. Further, the expected function of GC T_{FH} cells would be broadly different from those described for pre-GC effector T_{FH} cells. The presence of GC T_{FH} cells among the dense FDC networks of the GC light zone predict a role in the propagation of high-affinity variant GC B cells into the long-lived memory B-cell compartment[198] (Fig. 10.7).

Subsequent to FDC scanning, some GC B cells were shown to make more stable, immune synapse-like contacts with GC T_{FH} cells, as determined by two-photon imaging.[159] These early images gave rise to the notion that competition for GC T_{FH} cells may be the limiting factor in GC B cell selection of variant high-affinity BCRs.[161] More recently, antigen presentation by GC B cells without engaging the BCR was shown to dominate the selection apparatus within GCs.[162] GC B cells capable of presenting more antigen rapidly exited the GC reaction and produced more post-GC plasma cells. These studies indicated similar mechanisms to the pre-GC selection event[102] and argued strongly that antigen presentation to GC T_{FH} cells was the rate-limiting event during affinity maturation in the GC cycle.

It remains technically difficult to manipulate cellular and molecular activities within the GC cycle without interfering with the developmental programs that initiate the GC reaction in the first place. Many of the molecules associated with pre-GC T_{FH} function may also function within the GC. BCL6 expression itself is reinforced within T_{FH} cells upon contact with pre-GC B cells.[98] ICOS–ICOSL interactions are important throughout this pathway at early DC contact,[202] pre-GC contact,[78] and likely during the GC reaction itself. IL-21 and its receptor appear of continued importance at the pre-GC stage and during the GC reaction.[86,87] Sphingosine-1 phosphate receptor 2 has an important role in confining GC B cells to the GC niche in vivo.[203] Elevated programmed cell death 1 expression also correlates with GC localization of the T_{FH} compartment[82] and the absence of programmed cell death ligand 2 on B cells impacts PC production and affinity maturation.[204] Most interestingly, cytokine production and class-specific GC B cells appear to be associated in the GC well beyond the original CSR event.[205] This surprising functional pairing between GC T_{FH} cells and switched GC B cells (eg, IL-4+ T_{FH} cells with IgG1+ GC B cells; IFNγ T_{FH} cells with IgG2a+ GC B cells) hints at the extended level of heterogeneity that exits within the GC cycle of memory B-cell development. Hence, it is likely that each separable class-specific GC B-cell compartment requires cognate contact with separate class-specific GC T_{FH} cells.

During antiprotein immune responses, the T_{FH} cells within the light zone of the GC express pMHCII-specific TCRs. There appears to be sequential movement of antigen-specific T_{FH} cells from the T-cell zones into the GC microenvironment[40,206] with evidence that suggests GC T_{FH} cells can also move between different GCs.[207] Interestingly, all antigen-specific T_{FH} cells responding to a protein antigen are not represented within the GC reaction, indicating pre-GC functional differentiation for responders T_{FH} cells.[208] Furthermore, non-GC T_H cells can reemerge in a memory response, indicating that the GC is not required for memory T_H-cell development.[40] Downregulation of CD90 (Thy-1) has been used as a marker of GC T_{FH} cells in the mouse, although when this occurs and how well it discriminates only GC T_{FH} cells is not clear.[207] Interfering with CD40L-CD40 interactions disrupts the GC reaction, while blocking B7-2 interaction impairs memory B-cell development.[209] Hence, the cognate control of GC B-cell fate appears to be modified by the cellular and molecular context of pMHCII presentation.

The work on human T_{FH} cells use expression of CD57, as well as CXCR5, to define T_{FH} cells that are contained within the GC of tonsils.[63,210] Microarray analysis highlights the distantly related functional programs of CD57+ GC T_{FH} cells as compared to naive T_H cells, central memory T_H cells, and effector memory T_H cells from the peripheral blood.[210] Differences in adhesion molecules, chemokine receptors, cytokines, and transcription factors appear as distant as different lineages. Interestingly, the CXCR5 ligand, CXCL13, is highly expressed in GC T_{FH} cells. In vitro–derived T_H1 and T_H2 effector T_H cells also appear distant in gene expression program to GC T_{FH} cells.[63] This analysis associates CD84, CD200, IL-21, and BCL6 with CD57+ GC T_{FH} cells. A separate analysis of T_{FH} cells by function and gene expression demonstrates that T_{FH} activity in human tonsil is independent of CD57 expression.[65] These studies highlight $ICOS^{hi}CXCR5^{hi}$ T_{FH} as CXCL13 secretors and the most potent inducers of antibody production in vitro. Therefore, it is clear in situ that all GC T_{FH} cells express CXCR5 and many express CD57; however, these molecules are not exclusively expressed on GC T_{FH} cells nor expressed on all T_{FH} cells in the tonsil. Nevertheless, it remains important to clarify GC T_{FH} phenotype so that the details of their function can be pursued in vivo.

MEMORY B-CELL RESPONSE

It is now clear that centrocytes can undergo proliferation in the light zone,[191] and there is direct evidence for movement

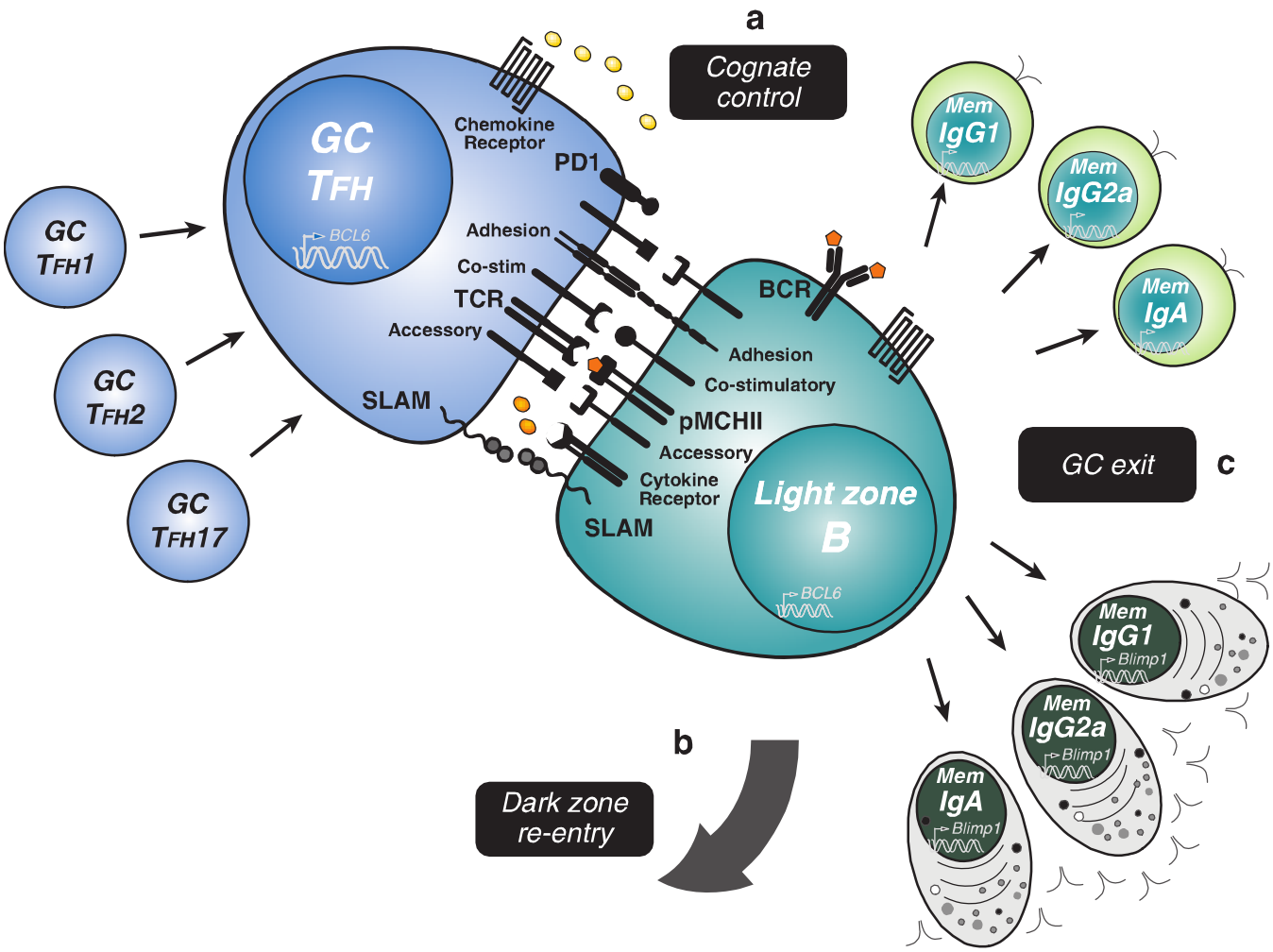


FIG. 10.7. Germinal Center (GC) Follicular Helper T (TFH)-B-Cell Contact. **A:** Longer duration cognate contact with GC T_{FH} cells in the light zone can be visualized directly in vivo. Similar to earlier pre-GC events these contacts must focus around T-cell receptor–peptide major histocompatibility class II interactions and can be modified by a multitude of intercellular exchanges of molecular information. There is still little detailed analysis of these interactions in vivo. We depict the class of molecules that can be associated with this critical programming event but do not appreciate the organization of these interactions or their precise developmental imprint as yet. **B:** Antigen presentation by B cells can influence dark zone reentry and reinitiation of B-cell receptor diversification with cell proliferation, somatic hypermutation, and class switch recombination. **C:** GC cognate contact can also initiate GC exit into separable nonsecreting memory B cell and post-GC long-lived memory plasma cell compartments.

of centrocytes back into the dark zone of GCs.[159,173] Thus, it appears that one outcome of GC B cell-GC T_{FH} interactions is reentry into the GC cycle permitting reiterative rounds of expansion, diversification, and selection. In this model, each subsequent round of clonal expansion and BCR diversification is applied to GC B-cell variants that have been positively selected based on increased BCR affinity. Hence, the introduction of a few mutations in each clonal progeny of selected variants is less likely to destroy BCR specificity and leaves room for further increases in an already high-affinity variant BCR.

The second major developmental outcome of cognate contact in the GC is exit from the GC cycle and entry into the memory B-cell compartment. The GC reaction produces at least two broad categories of affinity-matured memory B cells.[187] The most typical memory B cells are the precursors for a memory response to antigen recall. These memory B cells are easily distinguished functionally from the second cellular compartment of memory, the post-GC PCs.[211] The post-GC PCs are terminally differentiated cells that continually produce high-affinity antibody and will not be drawn into a secondary response. In both categories of memory B cells, the expression of antibody isotype distinguishes separable memory B-cell compartments. By definition, these subsets differ in the antibody they can produce and hence their developmental program and cellular function is distinct. However, these "class-specific" memory B-cell subsets may also differ in migration patterns, survival needs, and the requirements for reactivation at the time of antigen recall. These issues define a level of heterogeneity that has re-

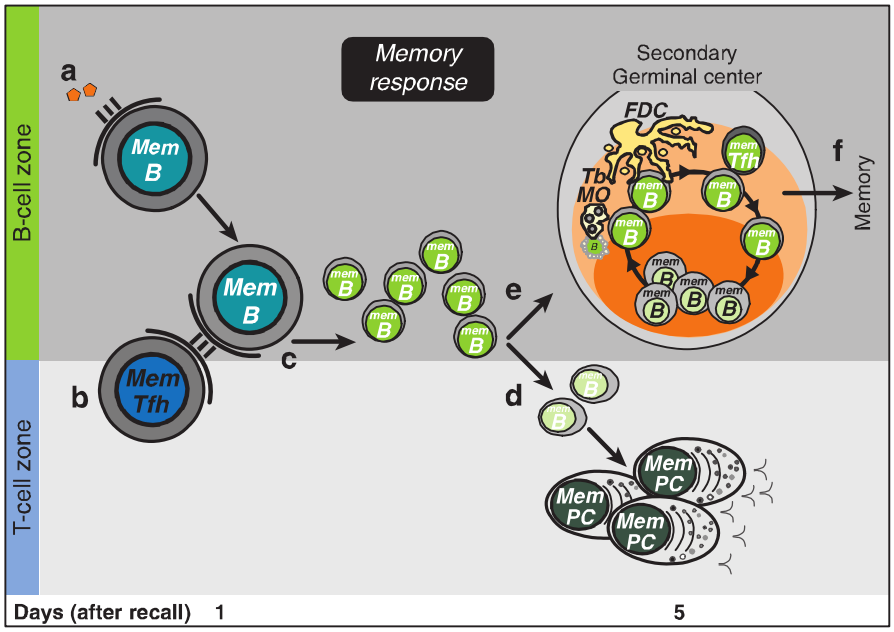


FIG. 10.8. Memory Response to Antigen Recall. A: Memory B-cell responses can emerge in the absence of innate inflammatory stimuli. In this case, the central antigen presenting cells are the affinity-matured memory B cells themselves. B: Memory B-cell response to T-cell–dependent antigens still require helper T (T_H)-cell regulation upon antigen recall. When priming and recall antigens are identical, memory T_H cells are the rapid responders and are thought to emerge preferentially over their low-frequency naïve counterparts. Regarding the regulation of memory B-cell responses, antigen-specific memory T_{FH} cells are the most likely candidate for rapid cognate regulation. C: Cognate contact at this developmental juncture occurs across sets of memory B cells and memory T_{FH} cells with an organization and kinetics that remain poorly resolved in vivo. There is rapid and vigorous local clonal expansion within the first 2 to 3 days in both memory B and memory T_{FH} compartments. D: Expansion of affinity-matured memory B response plasma cells occurs very quickly with evidence that most memory-response plasma cells already appear affinity-matured. E: There is evidence for memory B-cell subsets that express a germinal center (GC) phenotype and create GC-like structures upon antigen recall. Whether these structures are residual from the primary response GC or reemerge with GC activities upon recall has not been resolved. F: Increased numbers of memory B cells and memory-response plasma cells persist after antigen recall. It remains unclear whether these cells are the product of memory GC reactions or extrafollicular non-GC memory response outcomes.

ceived very little attention at the current time and remain important features in the organization of B-cell memory in vivo (Fig. 10.8).

Memory Response Precursors

There are reports of non-GC early memory B-cell development,[86,169] although how well these germline BCR-expressing memory B cells compete with post-GC memory B cells in the response to antigen recall remains to be evaluated. Affinity-matured IgM+ memory B cells can emerge from the GC reaction and persist for long periods in vivo.[212] These nonswitched memory cells appear more active in secondary responses in the absence of circulating antibodies. Genetic labeling of AID-expressing cells with yellow fluorescent protein allowed memory B cells to be monitored over long periods.[213] Surprisingly, primary response GC reactions were persistent for extended periods of time (over 8 months after priming) depending on the form of antigen used to immunize. In these studies, class-switched memory B cells rapidly promoted plasma cell differentiation, whereas their IgM+ counterparts promoted secondary GC reactions. Depending on the form of antigen delivery and the combination of innate stimuli, B-cell responses can be skewed toward memory formation with extended GC reactions, which can last over 1.5 years.[214] Hence, it is possible that persistent GCs can continuously produce nonsecreting memory B cells well after the initial priming event.

Memory response precursors are more typically affinity-matured post-GC B cells that have switched to non-IgM antibody isotypes and can respond, in a T_H-cell–dependent manner, to low-dose soluble antigen recall. The long-term persistence in vivo of antigen-binding B cells, after the decline of the primary response, provides the single best indicator for all memory response precursors. Beyond this particular attribute, antibody isotype and

stage of development within the memory B-cell compartment introduces a level of cellular heterogeneity that is only recently being appreciated.

As soluble antigen is the ligand for the BCR, most experimental approaches use variations of labeled antigen to identify antigen-specific B cells. While panning techniques used gel-associated antigen to detect antigen-specific B cells,[215,216] flow cytometry provided the most reliable access to antigen-specific B cells.[217,218] These earliest studies[217,218] coupled cell sorting technology and direct labeling to enrich antigen-specific B cells for adoptive transfer. These early studies helped to demonstrate that B cells with receptors for antigen were the precursors for antibody-forming cells. This approach has been adopted by many groups,[219–222] with the subsequent evaluation of specificity and purity demonstrated by the frequency for antibody forming cells or the enrichment for production of antigen-specific antibodies in vitro.

Early studies indicated antigen-binding B-cell populations of long-lived cells with slow or no turnover in vivo.[223] These memory B cells can survive independent of their expressed BCR specificity and hence do not require persistent antigen depots in vivo.[224] Loss of surface IgM/IgD and expression of downstream isotype are also indicative of antigen experience but are not required for memory-cell development.[218,220,225] Further, the expression of mutated BCRs with evidence for affinity increasing changes is the most useful molecular marker for the memory B-cell compartment.[131,226–228] However, there are also abundant examples of germline-encoded BCRs expressed by memory response precursors. Location has also been a reliable means for isolating memory B cells from the blood very soon after intentional priming.[226] The combination of location, phenotype, genotype, and time after intentional priming has many elements of a comprehensive definition for memory B cells.

Post–Germinal Center Plasma Cells

High-affinity antibody-producing PCs that emerge from the GC reaction can also be considered an integral part of antigen-specific B-cell memory. High-affinity GC B cells preferentially assort into the PC compartment giving rise to high-affinity circulating antibodies.[229] In LNs, affinity-matured PCs dwell in paracortical areas to mature[230] then migrate toward the medullary regions prior to export.[231] CD93 is expressed at this early stage and is required for PC survival in the bone marrow.[232] Clearly, the circulating antibody that is produced by post-GC PCs contributes to ongoing serologic immune protection.[233]

Post-GC PCs do not self-replenish through turnover, secrete isotype-switched antibody, and display evidence of SHM with affinity increasing mutation patterns.[211,234,235] This post-GC antigen-specific B-cell compartment appears during the second week after initial antigen exposure[131] and preferentially homes to the bone marrow for growth factor support of stromal cells.[236] Based on gene ablation studies, these cells use a variety of redistribution mechanisms such as upregulation of CXCR4, α4β1 integrin binding to its ligand vascular cellular adhesion molecule-1[135] to get to the bone marrow, where they can persist for the life of the animal.[133,237–241] In the bone marrow, long-lived PC need signals through the tumor necrosis factor receptor family member, BCMA, for survival.[242] It has also been proposed that a pre-PC precursor[243] or memory cells themselves[233] produce PCs in a non–antigen-dependent manner as a means of maintaining serum antibody levels for extended periods.

The extended longevity of the post-GC PC can be demonstrated using BrdU incorporation and adoptive transfer.[238–241] The extinguished gene programs associated with PC development[142,244,245] support a terminally differentiated end-stage cell that needs to arrest cell cycle progression[183] and will not be reactivated on antigen recall. Nevertheless, based on the evidence of a GC phase in development, the extended longevity of these PCs and the continued production of high-affinity antibody, it is reasonable to consider that these end-stage B cells belong to the memory B-cell compartment. We have recently demonstrated that post-GC antibody-secreting B cells not only express BCR, but also present antigen and can modulate cognate T_{FH}-cell responses.[132] These surprising studies further demonstrate that PCs negatively regulate BCL6 and IL-21 expression in antigen-specific T_{FH} cells.[132] Thus, PCs are not only the producers of antibody, but can also engage in antigen-specific immune regulation. Signals through the BCR or MHC class II on post-GC PCs may serve to regulate the ongoing production of high-affinity antibodies in the serum. The long-term antigen presenting or regulatory function of post-GC PCs has not yet been elucidated.

Based on variability in memory B-cell formation across different antigen models, it appears likely that different sets of initiating stimuli modify the balance of cells within the different memory B-cell compartments. The memory cell balance may be a quantitative "interpretation" of the quality of the initial immunizing signals. Ultimately, memory B-cell fate is likely to be controlled by interactions in the GC itself. The strength of BCR signal and costimulatory context serve to select variant BCR and initiate changes in memory B-cell development. Cognate interactions with GC T_{FH} cells may consolidate these functional outcomes. Understanding the role of the different memory B-cell subsets in long-term protection and the rules that govern their development in vivo remain important unresolved areas in this field.

Memory Response to Antigen Recall

Persistent high-affinity serum antibody provides the first layer of protection against antigen recall. While binding to antigen is a clearance mechanism, it also serves to increase the efficiency of antigen presentation to memory B cells through rapid IC formation and binding to FcR or complement receptors on cells of the innate system. In this manner, antibody may amplify the sensitivity of the memory B-cell response to antigen recall. However, the boost with antigen rechallenge also seems necessary to establish adequate long-term protection following protein vaccination. The cognate cellular dynamics and molecular regulation of the memory response boost are important factors in the consolidation of B-cell memory that remain poorly understood and inadequately optimized in most vaccine regimes.

Primary response GCs persist for about 3 weeks after initial priming, but this timing may vary substantially depending on the immune stimuli.[151,152] There is evidence for continued selection in the memory B-cell compartment even after the demise of the GC reaction.[235] This selection process represents more typical interclonal competition without further BCR diversification.[246] Where this secondary selection occurs and how it relates to the selection mechanisms in the GC remains to be determined. Nevertheless, secondary selection events appear capable of reshaping the memory compartment toward higher-affinity clonotypes that can substantially influence the quality of the secondary response and consolidation of the memory compartment.[233] Recent evidence indicates that memory B cells can reinstitute a GC reaction upon antigen recall. The form of antigen appears to have a role in primary response GC persistence with particulate antigen more likely to promote GC longevity.[213] Moreover, innate system stimuli differentially impact persistent GC structures with combinations of toll-like receptor-4 and toll-like receptor-7 more effective than single stimuli.[214] Whether the secondary GC is a continuation and reexpansion of a primary GC activity remains unclear. More importantly, whether these secondary or persistent GC-like structures support the rediversification of affinity-matured BCR and the selection of even higher-affinity clonotypes remains to be determined. These issues are central to the future management of prime-boost vaccination protocols with substantial practical impact in this field.

Using priming doses of antigen and adjuvant, antigen-specific memory T_H-cell responses[40,41,247] and memory B-cell response[248] emerge more rapidly than their naive response counterparts. Memory T_H-cell responses reach peak levels more rapidly but to similar levels as the primary response. In contrast, memory B cells display accelerated kinetics and reach substantially higher maximal levels compared to the primary response. Even in the presence of priming doses of antigen and adjuvant, the memory responders dominate the recall response,[40,130] outcompeting naive lymphocytes that may express specific Ag-R.

Antigen recall promotes accelerated clonal expansion and rapid differentiation to high-affinity PCs. Initiation and microclustering of IgG1 BCRs is enhanced at the single cell level due to membrane proximal regions in the cytoplasmic tail of IgG1.[249] The cytoplasmic tails of class-switched memory B cells can contribute substantially to the expanded clonal burst associated with retriggering by antigen.[250] There is evidence for distinct changes in BCR signaling pathways.[251–254] Increased affinity of the BCR on memory cells must also contribute to memory B-cell sensitivity to low-dose soluble antigen that does not induce a primary immune response. In addition to these intrinsic attributes, circulating high-affinity antibody contributes to differential management of antigen in vivo. Rapid presentation of immune complexes to the memory B cells maybe enhanced. Furthermore, memory B cells require antigen-specific T_H-cell regulation to initiate secondary immune responses.[255] These issues have not been well studied but remain central to the capacity of memory B cells to expand, self-replenish, and boost high-affinity PCs and circulating antibody levels that provide long-term immune protection.

Antigen-Specific Memory Follicular Helper T Cells

Memory B-cell response to protein antigens require antigen-specific T-cell help.[187] Under normal physiologic circumstances, this secondary T-cell help must be antigen-specific and is most likely delivered by memory T_H cells that are specific to the immunizing antigen. Under typical low-dose antigen rechallenge regime in the absence of immune adjuvant, antigen-specific B cells are likely to be the predominant APC for the memory response. Hence, the cognate interactions of pMHCII+ memory B cells and antigen-specific memory T_H cells define a major developmental checkpoint in the evolution of long-term immune protection. Alternately, circulating antibody and innate immune activation induce an accelerated memory response due to increased frequencies and heightened responsiveness of memory response precursors. In this scenario, the memory T_H cell–memory B-cell checkpoint may be preceded by an independent series of antigen presentation events prior to cognate memory T_{FH}-memory B-cell contact.

The major cellular outcome of the secondary boost is rapid and exaggerated memory B-cell expansion and the production of large numbers of high-affinity PCs. While high-affinity B cells can be drawn into GC reactions,[158] it is not clear that the GC pathway is operative at the time of the secondary boost. Regardless, there is clear evidence for secondary selection events upon antigen rechallenge that are more likely to be driven by cellular selection without somatic BCR diversification.[187] The nature of the selection mechanism for B cells at this stage of the response is also poorly understood. In contrast, the accelerated local reexpansion of antigen-specific memory T_H cells occurs with little change in the expressed TCR repertoire[256] or cytokine-secreting potential.[247] Hence, the antigen-specific memory T_H-cell compartment appears to conserve and reexpress many of the functions associated with the initial primary immune response.

There is evidence for a division of labor in the memory T-cell compartment that involves the migratory capacity of memory T_H-cell subsets.[257] Recirculating central memory T cells and tissue-homing effector memory T cells further divide on their readiness to reexpress effector function upon reexposure to antigen. It is reasonable to propose that each antigen-specific effector T_H-cell subset will produce a memory T_H-cell counterpart.[247] However, the range of T_H memory effector attributes required to control antigen-specific memory B-cell responses is not well understood. Compartments of tissue-localized memory T_H cells provide rapid "reactive" immune protection that is antigen-specific.[257] For example, the focal placement of effector memory T-cell subsets at sites of original antigen entry preempts the behavior of the pathogen. In this manner, location provides an opportunity to accelerate the recall response enhancing the capacity of the immune system to block overt infection. As the precursors of the memory response to antigen recall,

high-affinity memory B cells belong to a similar "reactive" set of memory cells. However, in contrast to local hypersensitivity responses by T_H cells, antigen reexposure promotes rapid and exaggerated memory B-cell responses in the lymphoid tissue that drains the site of rechallenge. In this context, we can refer to the memory T_H-cell compartment that controls memory B cell responses as memory T_{FH} cells.

We have provided evidence for the local persistence of an antigen-specific memory T_{FH} cell compartment. CXCR5+ T_{FH} cells bind pMHCII tetramers, express lower levels of ICOS, and have lost the capacity to express messenger ribonucleic acid for a series of cytokines.[53] These putative memory T_{FH} cells rapidly upregulated cytokine signals following specific peptide restimulation in vivo. We propose that these locally confined memory T_{FH} cells are the cognate regulators of the memory B-cell response. Many of the antigen-specific memory T_{FH} cells retain expression of CD69, which suggests recent contact with pMHCII complexes and provides a plausible mechanism for local retention. It is likely that memory B cells with high-affinity BCR will rapidly capture minute levels of secondary antigen and present this antigen to the cognate memory T_{FH} cells. Hence, memory B cells may be the primary APC in the memory response, further accelerating the memory B-cell response to recall.

It is not clear whether memory T_{FH} cells would necessarily express CXCR5+ like their primary response T_{FH} compartment. Furthermore, it is not clear whether both effector T_{FH} and GC T_{FH} produce memory T_{FH} counterparts. Nevertheless, it will be important to unravel the programs of cognate control used by antigen-specific memory T_{FH} to regulate the memory B-cell response to antigen rechallenge. It is plausible that manipulating cellular and molecular interactions at this developmental juncture can alter the shape of antigen-specific B-cell memory.

Antigen Persistence In Vivo

Tonic signaling through the BCR and the downstream activation of phosphoinositide 3-kinase, together with B cell-activating factor signaling through the B cell-activating factor receptor are required for survival of naïve B cells in the periphery.[224,258] Similarly, inducible deletion of phospholipase Cγ2 after the formation of antigen-specific B-cell memory substantially depleted the memory B-cell compartment and suggested a BCR signaling requirement in memory.[259] Nevertheless, earlier genetic studies indicated that cognate BCR specificity was not required after formation of B-cell memory to provide the tonic survival signal.[224] Thus, persistent antigen appears not to be required for the survival of antigen-specific memory B cells, although memory B-cell function has not been addressed in this model.

More recently, there has been evidence of persistent pMHCII complexes in the context of antiviral responses in vivo,[260] leading to local activation of naïve T_H cells even after clearance of virus. We recently demonstrated a similar persistence of pMHCII complexes for longer than 100 days following protein antigen vaccination in a non-depot adjuvant.[261] The depots of pMHCII complexes were restricted to the LNs draining initial vaccination site and persistent antigen presentation induced naïve T_H-cell proliferation.[261] We proposed that pMHCII complexes on immunocompetent APCs had a role in confining the antigen-specific memory T_{FH}-cell compartment to LNs draining the site of initial priming.[262] Although it has been known for some time that FDC networks are capable of trapping whole antigen as immune complexes for extended periods of time,[161] the nature of the long-lived local APC remains unresolved.

Unlike CD8 T cells, CD4 T_H cells appear to require continued presence of antigen to reach maximal clonal expansion in vivo. The conditional induction and abrogation of pMHCII molecules demonstrate that as soon as a lower threshold level of antigen is breached, T_H cells cease to divide.[263] Surprisingly, this model induces no form of inflammation and would otherwise be considered a model of tolerance induction. Recent intravital imaging studies also indicate that antigen-responsive T_H cells engage multiple DCs at successive early stages after priming.[264] These multiple DC–T_H-cell contacts also impact the development of effector T_H-cell function in vivo. Most surprisingly, there is evidence for persistent depots of pMHCII complexes up to 3 weeks after viral infection.[265] These pMHCII depots are present at times after viral clearance in vivo. The same persistent depots can be demonstrated for pMHCI with the capacity for local activation of viral-specific naive CD8 cells.[266] While persistent antigen is not required for the maintenance of antigen-specific T-cell memory,[267,268] there may be a role for persistent depots of pMHC complexes as local guidance cues for antigen-specific memory T cells.

CONCLUSION

Understanding the cellular and molecular control of antigen-specific memory B-cell development remains a high priority for basic research with important application to future vaccine design. The largest growing class of pharmaceutical agents today is the antigen-targeting antibodies with an endless spectrum of biologic impact. Producing potent antibodies with high affinity is an important facet of this growing new industry.

There has been substantial progress in our understanding of this complex developmental cascade in vivo with many of the cellular processes being more carefully defined in their most relevant in vivo context. The sophisticated manipulation of mouse genetics provides a powerful set of tools that begin to unravel the regulatory mechanisms operative across each developmental checkpoint controlling cell fate in vivo. Real-time intravital imaging provides a major advance to our appreciation of cell dynamics and intercellular communication as it proceeds in the crowded confines of secondary lymphoid tissue. Most importantly, a surge in research activity has revealed many of the mechanisms controlling T_{FH}-cell development and function in ways that have changed the conceptual landscape surrounding our appreciation of cognate regulation in B-cell memory.

Beyond antigen recognition, antibody class determines immune function and binding affinity controls sensitivity within memory B cells. Antigen contact initiates presentation by B cells and a program of events, which is consolidated following B-cell contact with antigen-specific T_{FH} cells. We have outlined these events as a progressive developmental program across three related but distinct phases of antigen encounter. We remain cautious of manipulating critical adaptive immune functions but quietly optimistic. The molecular regulation of antigen-specific cellular events initiates a complex but finite set of regulatory programs that can be modified both indirectly, following vaccination with innate stimuli, and perhaps directly, during the acquisition of high-affinity B-cell memory. The vaccine boost is the most readily accessible phase of this strategy that can directly target antigen-specific adaptive responses. Unraveling the molecules and programs that control each phase of memory B-cell development provides a plethora of new targets for vaccine-based modification in vivo.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

I would like to acknowledge Louise McHeyzer-Williams in the collaborative unfolding of the ideas that structure this chapter and the images that illustrate the flow of ideas presented here. There has been immeasurable input from the members of our laboratory and collaborators over the years that help to shape and reshape the nature of our understanding of these fascinating processes in vivo.

REFERENCES

1. Pape KA, Catron DM, Itano AA, Jenkins MK. The humoral immune response is initiated in lymph nodes by B cells that acquire soluble antigen directly in the follicles. *Immunity*. 2007;26:491–502. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17379546
2. Roozendaal R, Mempel TR, Pitcher LA, et al. Conduits mediate transport of low-molecular-weight antigen to lymph node follicles. *Immunity*. 2009;30:264–276. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19185517
3. Batista FD, Harwood NE. The who, how and where of antigen presentation to B cells. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2009;9:15–27. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19079135
4. Carrasco YR, Batista FD. B cells acquire particulate antigen in a macrophage-rich area at the boundary between the follicle and the subcapsular sinus of the lymph node. *Immunity*. 2007;27:160–171. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17658276
5. Junt T, Moseman EA, Iannacone M, et al. Subcapsular sinus macrophages in lymph nodes clear lymph-borne viruses and present them to antiviral B cells. *Nature*. 2007;450:110–114. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17934446
6. Phan TG, Green JA, Gray EE, Xu Y, Cyster JG. Immune complex relay by subcapsular sinus macrophages and noncognate B cells drives antibody affinity maturation. *Nat Immunol*. 2009;10:786–793. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19503106
7. Iannacone M, Moseman EA, Tonti E, et al. Subcapsular sinus macrophages prevent CNS invasion on peripheral infection with a neurotropic virus. *Nature*. 2010;465:1079–1083. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20577213
8. Batista FD, Iber D, Neuberger MS. B cells acquire antigen from target cells after synapse formation. *Nature*. 2001;411:489–494. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11373683
9. Batista FD, Neuberger MS. Affinity dependence of the B cell response to antigen: a threshold, a ceiling, and the importance of off-rate. *Immunity*. 1998;8:751–759. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9655489
10. Qi H, Egen JG, Huang AY, Germain RN. Extrafollicular activation of lymph node B cells by antigen-bearing dendritic cells. *Science*. 2006;312:1672–1676. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16778060
11. Sixt M, Kanazawa N, Selg M, et al. The conduit system transports soluble antigens from the afferent lymph to resident dendritic cells in the T cell area of the lymph node. *Immunity*. 2005;22:19–29. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15664156
12. Castigli E, Wilson SA, Scott S, et al. TACI and BAFF-R mediate isotype switching in B cells. *J Exp Med*. 2005201:35–39. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15630136
13. Fleire SJ, Goldman JP, Carrasco YR, Weber M, Bray D, Batista FD. B cell ligand discrimination through a spreading and contraction response. *Science*. 2006;312:738–741. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16675699
14. Randall KL, Lambe T, Goodnow CC, Cornall RJ. The essential role of DOCK8 in humoral immunity. *Dis Markers*. 2010;29:141–150. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21178273
15. Winslow MM, Gallo EM, Neilson JR, Crabtree GR. The calcineurin phosphatase complex modulates immunogenic B cell responses. *Immunity*. 2006;24:141–152. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16473827
16. Khiem D, Cyster JG, Schwarz JJ, Black BL. A p38 MAPK-MEF2C pathway regulates B-cell proliferation. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2008;105:17067–17072. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18955699
17. Wilker PR, Kohyama M, Sandau MM, et al. Transcription factor Mef2c is required for B cell proliferation and survival after antigen receptor stimulation. *Nat Immunol*. 2008;9:603–612. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18438409
18. Matsumoto M, Fujii Y, Baba A, Hikida M, Kurosaki T, Baba Y. The calcium sensors STIM1 and STIM2 control B cell regulatory function through interleukin-10 production. *Immunity*. 2011;34:703–714. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21530328
19. Capasso M, Bhamrah MK, Henley T, et al. HVCN1 modulates BCR signal strength via regulation of BCR-dependent generation of reactive oxygen species. *Nat Immunol*. 2010;11:265–272. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20139987
20. Damdinsuren B, Zhang Y, Khalil A, et al. Single round of antigen receptor signaling programs naive B cells to receive T cell help. *Immunity*. 2010;32:355–366. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20226693
21. Cantor J, Browne CD, Ruppert R, et al. CD98hc facilitates B cell proliferation and adaptive humoral immunity. *Nat Immunol* 2009;10:412–419. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20226693
22. Yasuda T, Kometani K, Takahashi N, Imai Y, Aiba Y, Kurosaki T. ERKs induce expression of the transcriptional repressor Blimp-1 and subsequent plasma cell differentiation. *Sci Signal*. 2011;4:ra25. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21505187
23. Schnyder T, Castello A, Feest C, et al. B cell receptor-mediated antigen gathering requires ubiquitin ligase Cbl and adaptors Grb2 and Dok-3 to recruit dynein to the signaling microcluster. *Immunity*. 2011;34:905–918. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21703542
24. Treanor B, Depoil D, Gonzalez-Granja A, et al. The membrane skeleton controls diffusion dynamics and signaling through the B cell receptor. *Immunity*. 2010;32:187–199. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20171124
25. Depoil D, Fleire S, Treanor BL, et al. CD19 is essential for B cell activation by promoting B cell receptor-antigen microcluster formation in response to membrane-bound ligand. *Nat Immunol*. 2008;9:63–72. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18059271
26. Weber M, Treanor B, Depoil D, et al. Phospholipase C-gamma2 and Vav cooperate within signaling microclusters to propagate B cell spreading in response to membrane-bound antigen. *J Exp Med*. 2008;205:853–868. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18362175
27. Thaunat O, Granja AG, Barral P, et al. Asymmetric segregation of polarized antigen on B cell division shapes presentation capacity. *Science*. 2012;335:475–479. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22282815
28. Duffy KR, Wellard CJ, Markham JF, et al. Activation-induced B cell fates are selected by intracellular stochastic competition. *Science*. 2012;335:338–341. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22223740
29. Banchereau J, Steinman RM. Dendritic cells and the control of immunity. *Nature*. 1998;392:245–252. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9521319
30. Shortman K, Liu YJ. Mouse and human dendritic cell subtypes. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2002;2:151–161. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11913066
31. Itano AA, Jenkins MK. Antigen presentation to naive CD4 T cells in the lymph node. *Nat Immunol*. 2003;4:733–739. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12888794
32. Aderem A, Ulevitch RJ. Toll-like receptors in the induction of the innate immune response. *Nature*. 2000;406:782–787. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10963608
33. Janeway CA Jr, Medzhitov R. Innate immune recognition. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 2002;20:197–216. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11861602
34. Inohara N, Nunez G. NODs: intracellular proteins involved in inflammation and apoptosis. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2003;3:371–382. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12766759
35. Hou B, Saudan P, Ott G, et al. Selective utilization of toll-like receptor and MyD88 signaling in B cells for enhancement of the antiviral germinal center response. *Immunity*. 2011;34:375–384. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21353603
36. Lindquist RL, Shakhar G, Dudziak D, et al. Visualizing dendritic cell networks in vivo. *Nat Immunol*. 2004;5:1243–1250. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15543150
37. Kissenpfennig A, Henri S, Dubois B, et al. Dynamics and function of Langerhans cells in vivo dermal dendritic cells colonize lymph node areas distinct from slower migrating Langerhans cells. *Immunity*. 2005;22:643–654. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15894281
38. Itano AA, McSorley SJ, Reinhardt RL, et al. Distinct dendritic cell populations sequentially present antigen to CD4 T cells and stimulate different aspects of cell-mediated immunity. *Immunity*. 2003;19:47–57. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12871638
39. Malherbe L, Filippi C, Julia V, et al. Selective activation and expansion of high-affinity CD4+ T cells in resistant mice upon infection with Leishmania major. *Immunity*. 2000;13:771–782. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11163193

40. McHeyzer-Williams LJ, Panus JF, Mikszta JA, McHeyzer-Williams MG. Evolution of antigen-specific T cell receptors in vivo: preimmune and antigen-driven selection of preferred complementarity-determining region 3 (CDR3) motifs. *J Exp Med*. 1999;189:1823–1837. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10359586
41. McHeyzer-Williams MG, Davis MM. Antigen-specific development of primary and memory T cells in vivo. *Science*. 1995;268:106–111. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7535476
42. Alam SM, Travers PJ, Wung JL, et al. T-cell-receptor affinity and thymocyte positive selection. *Nature*. 1996;381:616–620. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8637599
43. Busch DH, Pamer EG. T cell affinity maturation by selective expansion during infection. *J Exp Med*. 1999;189:701–710. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9989985
44. Fasso M, Anandasabapathy N, Crawford F, Kappler J, Fathman CG, Ridgway WM. T cell receptor (TCR)-mediated repertoire selection and loss of TCR vbeta diversity during the initiation of a CD4(+) T cell response in vivo. *J Exp Med*. 2000;192:1719–1730. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11120769
45. Kedl RM, Rees WA, Hildeman DA, et al. T cells compete for access to antigen-bearing antigen-presenting cells. *J Exp Med*. 2000;192:1105–1113. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11034600
46. Kedl RM, Schaefer BC, Kappler JW, Marrack P. T cells down-modulate peptide-MHC complexes on APCs in vivo. *Nat Immunol*. 2002;3:27–32. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11731800
47. Lyons DS, Lieberman SA, Hampl J, et al. A TCR binds to antagonist ligands with lower affinities and faster dissociation rates than to agonists. *Immunity*. 1996;5:53–61. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8758894
48. Matsui K, Boniface JJ, Steffner P, Reay PA, Davis MM. Kinetics of T-cell receptor binding to peptide/I-Ek complexes: correlation of the dissociation rate with T-cell responsiveness. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1994;91:12862–12866. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7809136
49. Savage PA, Boniface JJ, Davis MM. A kinetic basis for T cell receptor repertoire selection during an immune response. *Immunity*. 1999;10:485–492. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10229191
50. Lazarski CA, Chaves FA, Jenks SA, et al. The kinetic stability of MHC class II:peptide complexes is a key parameter that dictates immunodominance. *Immunity*. 2005;23:29–40. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16039577
51. Malherbe L, Hausl C, Teyton L, McHeyzer-Williams MG. Clonal selection of helper T cells is determined by an affinity threshold with no further skewing of TCR binding properties. *Immunity*. 2004;21:669–679. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15539153
52. Malherbe L, Mark L, Fazilleau N, McHeyzer-Williams LJ, McHeyzer-Williams MG. Vaccine adjuvants alter TCR-based selection thresholds. *Immunity*. 2008;28:698–709. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18450485
53. Fazilleau N, McHeyzer-Williams LJ, Rosen H, McHeyzer-Williams MG. The function of follicular helper T cells is regulated by the strength of T cell antigen receptor binding. *Nat Immunol*. 2009;10:375–384. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19252493
54. Forster R, Emrich T, Kremmer E, Lipp M. Expression of the G-protein—coupled receptor BLR1 defines mature, recirculating B cells and a subset of T-helper memory cells. *Blood*. 1994;84:830–840. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7913842
55. Forster R, Mattis AE, Kremmer E, Wolf E, Brem G, Lipp M. A putative chemokine receptor, BLR1, directs B cell migration to defined lymphoid organs and specific anatomic compartments of the spleen. *Cell*. 1996;87:1037–1047. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8978608
56. Forster R, Schubel A, Breitfeld D, et al. CCR7 coordinates the primary immune response by establishing functional microenvironments in secondary lymphoid organs. *Cell*. 1999;99:23–33. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10520991
57. Walker LS, Gulbranson-Judge A, Flynn S, et al. Compromised OX40 function in CD28-deficient mice is linked with failure to develop CXC chemokine receptor 5-positive CD4 cells and germinal centers. *J Exp Med*. 1999;190:1115–1122. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10523609
58. Ansel KM, McHeyzer-Williams LJ, Ngo VN, McHeyzer-Williams MG, Cyster JG. In vivo-activated CD4 T cells upregulate CXC chemokine receptor 5 and reprogram their response to lymphoid chemokines. *J Exp Med*. 1999;190:1123–1134. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10523610
59. Breitfeld D, Ohl L, Kremmer E, et al. Follicular B helper T cells express CXC chemokine receptor 5, localize to B cell follicles, and support immunoglobulin production. *J Exp Med*. 2000;192:1545–1552. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11104797
60. Schaerli P, Willimann K, Lang AB, Lipp M, Loetscher P, Moser B. CXC chemokine receptor 5 expression defines follicular homing T cells with B cell helper function. *J Exp Med* 2000;192:1553–1562. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11104798
61. Campbell DJ, Kim CH, Butcher EC. Separable effector T cell populations specialized for B cell help or tissue inflammation. *Nat Immunol*. 2001;2:876–881. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11526405
62. Kim CH, Rott LS, Clark-Lewis I, Campbell DJ, Wu L, Butcher EC. Subspecialization of CXCR5+ T cells: B helper activity is focused in a germinal center-localized subset of CXCR5+ T cells. *J Exp Med*. 2001;193:1373–1381. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11413192
63. Chtanova T, Tangye SG, Newton R, et al. T follicular helper cells express a distinctive transcriptional profile, reflecting their role as non-Th1/Th2 effector cells that provide help for B cells. *J Immunol*. 2004;173:68–78. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15210760
64. Vinuesa CG, Cook MC, Angelucci C, et al. A RING-type ubiquitin ligase family member required to repress follicular helper T cells and autoimmunity. *Nature*. 2005;435:452–458. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15917799
65. Rasheed AU, Rahn HP, Sallusto F, Lipp M, Muller G. Follicular B helper T cell activity is confined to CXCR5(hi)ICOS(hi) CD4 T cells and is independent of CD57 expression. *Eur J Immunol*. 2006;36:1892–1903. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16791882
66. Shahinian A, Pfeffer K, Lee KP, et al. Differential T cell costimulatory requirements in CD28-deficient mice. *Science*. 1993;261:609–612. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7688139
67. Armitage RJ, Fanslow WC, Strockbine L, et al. Molecular and biological characterization of a murine ligand for CD40. *Nature*. 1992;357:80–82. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1374165
68. Lederman S, Yellin MJ, Inghirami G, Lee JJ, Knowles DM, Chess L. Molecular interactions mediating T-B lymphocyte collaboration in human lymphoid follicles. Roles of T cell-B-cell-activating molecule (5c8 antigen) and CD40 in contact-dependent help. *J Immunol*. 1992;149:3817–3826. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1281189
69. Noelle RJ, Roy M, Shepherd DM, Stamenkovic I, Ledbetter JA, Aruffo A. A 39-kDa protein on activated helper T cells binds CD40 and transduces the signal for cognate activation of B cells. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1992;89:6550–6554. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1378631
70. Hutloff A, Dittrich AM, Beier KC, et al. ICOS is an inducible T-cell co-stimulator structurally and functionally related to CD28. *Nature*. 1999;397:263–266. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9930702
71. Fazilleau N, McHeyzer-Williams LJ, McHeyzer-Williams MG. Local development of effector and memory T helper cells. *Curr Opin Immunol*. 2007;19:259–267. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17420119
72. King C, Tangye SG, Mackay CR. T follicular helper (TFH) cells in normal and dysregulated immune responses. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 2008;26:741–766. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18173374
73. Vinuesa CG, Tangye SG, Moser B, Mackay CR. Follicular B helper T cells in antibody responses and autoimmunity. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2005;5:853–865. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16261173
74. Dong C, Juedes AE, Temann UA, et al. ICOS co-stimulatory receptor is essential for T-cell activation and function. *Nature*. 2001;409:97–101. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11343121
75. McAdam AJ, Greenwald RJ, Levin MA, et al. ICOS is critical for CD40-mediated antibody class switching. *Nature*. 2001;409:102–105. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11343122

76. Tafuri A, Shahinian A, Bladt F, et al. ICOS is essential for effective T-helper-cell responses. *Nature*. 2001;409:105–109. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11343123
77. Nurieva RI, Chung Y, Hwang D, et al. Generation of T follicular helper cells is mediated by interleukin-21 but independent of T helper 1, 2, or 17 cell lineages. *Immunity*. 2008;29:138–149. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18599325
78. Vogelzang A, McGuire HM, Yu D, Sprent J, Mackay CR, King C. A fundamental role for interleukin-21 in the generation of T follicular helper cells. *Immunity*. 2008;29:127–137. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18602282
79. Yu D, Tan AH, Hu X, et al. Roquin represses autoimmunity by limiting inducible T-cell co-stimulator messenger RNA. *Nature*. 2007;450: 299–303. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18172933
80. Linterman MA, Rigby RJ, Wong R, et al. Roquin differentiates the specialized functions of duplicated T cell costimulatory receptor genes cd28 and Icos. *Immunity*. 2009;30(2):228–241. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19217324
81. Linterman MA, Rigby RJ, Wong R, et al. Follicular helper T cells are required for systemic autoimmunity. *J Exp Med*. 2009;206(3):561–576. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19221396
82. Haynes NM, Allen CD, Lesley R, Ansel KM, Killeen N, Cyster JG. Role of CXCR5 and CCR7 in follicular Th cell positioning and appearance of a programmed cell death gene-1high germinal center-associated subpopulation. *J Immunol*. 2007;179:5099–5108. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17911595
83. Johnston RJ, Poholek AC, DiToro D, et al. Bcl6 and Blimp-1 are reciprocal and antagonistic regulators of T follicular helper cell differentiation. *Science*. 2009;325:1006–1010. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19608860
84. Nurieva RI, Chung Y, Martinez GJ, et al. Bcl6 mediates the development of T follicular helper cells. *Science*. 2009;325:1001–1005. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19628815
85. YuD, Rao S, Tsai LM, et al. The transcriptional repressor Bcl-6 directs T follicular helper cell lineage commitment. *Immunity*. 2009;31:457–468. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19631565
86. Linterman MA, Beaton L, Yu D, et al. IL-21 acts directly on B cells to regulate Bcl-6 expression and germinal center responses. *J Exp Med*. 2010;207:353–363. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20142429
87. Zotos D, Coquet JM, Zhang Y, et al. IL-21 regulates germinal center B cell differentiation and proliferation through a B cell-intrinsic mechanism. *J Exp Med*. 2010;207:365–378. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20142430
88. Ozaki K, Spolski R, Feng CG, et al. A critical role for IL-21 in regulating immunoglobulin production. *Science*. 2002;298:1630–1634. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12446913
89. Spolski R, Leonard WJ. The yin and yang of interleukin-21 in allergy, autoimmunity and cancer. *Curr Opin Immunol*. 2008;20:295–301. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18554883
90. Betz BC, Jordan-Williams KL, Wang C, et al. Batf coordinates multiple aspects of B and T cell function required for normal antibody responses. *J Exp Med*. 2010;207:933–942. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20421391
91. Ise W, Kohyama M, Schraml BU, et al. The transcription factor BATF controls the global regulators of class-switch recombination in both B cells and T cells. *Nat Immunol*. 2011;12:536–543. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21572431
92. Okada T, Miller MJ, Parker I, et al. Antigen-engaged B cells undergo chemotaxis toward the T zone and form motile conjugates with helper T cells. *PLoS Biol*. 2005;3:e150. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15857154
93. Qi H, Cannons JL, Klauschen F, Schwartzberg PL, Germain RN. SAP-controlled T-B cell interactions underlie germinal center formation. *Nature*. 2008;455:764–769. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18843362
94. Cannons JL, Yu LJ, Jankovic D, et al. SAP regulates T cell-mediated help for humoral immunity by a mechanism distinct from cytokine regulation. *J Exp Med*. 2006;203:1551–1565. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16754717
95. Crotty S, Kersh EN, Cannons J, Schwartzberg PL, Ahmed R. SAP is required for generating long-term humoral immunity. *Nature*. 2003;421:282–287. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12529646
96. Schwartzberg PL, Mueller KL, Qi H, Cannons JL. SLAM receptors and SAP influence lymphocyte interactions, development and function. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2009;9:39–46. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19079134
97. Kerfoot SM, Yaari G, Patel JR, et al. Germinal center B cell and T follicular helper cell development initiates in the interfollicular zone. *Immunity*. 2011;34(6):947–960. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21636295
98. Kitano M, Moriyama S, Ando Y, et al. Bcl6 protein expression shapes pre-germinal center B cell dynamics and follicular helper T cell heterogeneity. *Immunity*. 2011;34(6):961–972. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21636294
99. Dal Porto JM, Haberman AM, Kelsoe G, Shlomchik MJ. Very low affinity B cells form germinal centers, become memory B cells, and participate in secondary immune responses when higher affinity competition is reduced. *J Exp Med*. 2002;195:1215–1221. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11994427
100. Shih TA, Meffre E, Roederer M, Nussenzweig MC. Role of BCR affinity in T cell dependent antibody responses in vivo. *Nat Immunol*. 2002;3: 570–575. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12021782
101. Paus D, Phan TG, Chan TD, Gardam S, Basten A, Brink R. Antigen recognition strength regulates the choice between extrafollicular plasma cell and germinal center B cell differentiation. *J Exp Med*. 2006; 203:1081–1091. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16606676
102. Schwickert TA, Victora GD, Fooksman DR, et al. A dynamic T cell-limited checkpoint regulates affinity-dependent B cell entry into the germinal center. *J Exp Med*. 2011;208:1243–1252. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21576382
103. Jacob J, Kassir R, Kelsoe G. In situ studies of the primary immune response to (4-hydroxy-3-nitrophenyl)acetyl. I. The architecture and dynamics of responding cell populations. *J Exp Med*. 1991;173:1165–1175. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1902502
104. Hasbold J, Corcoran LM, Tarlinton DM, Tangye SG, Hodgkin PD. Evidence from the generation of immunoglobulin G-secreting cells that stochastic mechanisms regulate lymphocyte differentiation. *Nat Immunol*. 2004;5:55–63. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14647274
105. Honjo T, Kinoshita K, Muramatsu M. Molecular mechanism of class switch recombination: linkage with somatic hypermutation. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 2002;20:165–196. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11861601
106. Okazaki IM, Kinoshita K, Muramatsu M, Yoshikawa K, Honjo T. The AID enzyme induces class switch recombination in fibroblasts. *Nature*. 2002;416:340–345. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11875397
107. Muramatsu M, Kinoshita K, Fagarasan S, Yamada S, Shinkai Y, Honjo T. Class switch recombination and hypermutation require activation-induced cytidine deaminase (AID), a potential RNA editing enzyme. *Cell*. 2000;102:553–563. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11007474
108. Revy P, Muto T, Levy Y, et al. Activation-induced cytidine deaminase (AID) deficiency causes the autosomal recessive form of the Hyper-IgM syndrome (HIGM2). *Cell*. 2000;102:565–575. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11007475
109. Tran TH, Nakata M, Suzuki K, et al. B cell-specific and stimulation-responsive enhancers derepress Aicda by overcoming the effects of silencers. *Nat Immunol*. 2010;11:148–154. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19966806
110. Park SR, Zan H, Pal Z, et al. HoxC4 binds to the promoter of the cytidine deaminase AID gene to induce AID expression, class-switch DNA recombination and somatic hypermutation. *Nat Immunol*. 2009;10: 540–550. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19363484
111. Dengler HS, Baracho GV, Omori SA, et al. Distinct functions for the transcription factor Foxo1 at various stages of B cell differentiation. *Nat Immunol*. 2008;9:1388–1398. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18978794
112. Stavnezer J, Guikema JE, Schrader CE. Mechanism and regulation of class switch recombination. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 2008;26:261–292. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18370922

113. Xu Z, Fulop Z, Wu G, et al. 14-3-3 adaptor proteins recruit AID to 5′-AGCT-3′-rich switch regions for class switch recombination. *Nat Struct Mol Biol*. 2010;17:1124–1135. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20729863
114. Schenten D, Kracker S, Esposito G, et al. Pol zeta ablation in B cells impairs the germinal center reaction, class switch recombination, DNA break repair, and genome stability. *J Exp Med*. 2009;206:477–490. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19204108
115. Wang JH, Gostissa M, Yan CT, et al. Mechanisms promoting translocations in editing and switching peripheral B cells. *Nature*. 2009;460:231–236. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19587764
116. Banchereau J, Bazan F, Blanchard D, et al. The CD40 antigen and its ligand. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 1994;12:881–922. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7516669
117. Sharpe AH, Freeman GJ. The B7-CD28 superfamily. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2002;2:116–126. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11910893
118. Bishop GA, Hostager BS. B lymphocyte activation by contact-mediated interactions with T lymphocytes. *Curr Opin Immunol*. 2001;13:278–285. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11406358
119. Snapper CM, Paul WE. Interferon-gamma and B cell stimulatory factor-1 reciprocally regulate Ig isotype production. *Science*. 1987;236:944–947. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3107127
120. Kuhn R, Rajewsky K, Muller W. Generation and analysis of interleukin-4 deficient mice. *Science*. 1991;254:707–710. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1948049
121. Takeda K, Tanaka T, Shi W, et al. Essential role of Stat6 in IL-4 signalling. *Nature*. 1996;380:627–630. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8602263
122. Cazac BB, Roes J. TGF-beta receptor controls B cell responsiveness and induction of IgA in vivo. *Immunity*. 2000;13:443–451. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11070163
123. Kopf M, Herren S, Wiles MV, Pepys MB, Kosco-Vilbois MH. Interleukin 6 influences germinal center development and antibody production via a contribution of C3 complement component. *J Exp Med*. 1998;188:1895–1906. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9815267
124. Mohr E, Cunningham AF, Toellner KM, et al. IFN-γ produced by CD8 T cells induces T-bet-dependent and-independent class switching in B cells in responses to alum-precipitated protein vaccine. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2010;107:17292–17297. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20855629
125. Peng SL, Szabo SJ, Glimcher LH. T-bet regulates IgG class switching and pathogenic autoantibody production. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2002;99:5545–5550. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11960012
126. Watanabe K, Sugai M, Nambu Y, et al. Requirement for Runx proteins in IgA class switching acting downstream of TGF-beta 1 and retinoic acid signaling. *J Immunol*. 2010;184:2785–2792. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20142360
127. Sellars M, Reina-San-Martin B, Kastner P, Chan S. Ikaros controls isotype selection during immunoglobulin class switch recombination. *J Exp Med*. 2009;206:1073–1087. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19414557
128. Chen-Kiang S. Cell-cycle control of plasma cell differentiation and tumorigenesis. *Immunol Rev*. 2003;194:39–47. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12846806
129. Morse L, Chen D, Franklin D, Xiong Y, Chen-Kiang S. Induction of cell cycle arrest and B cell terminal differentiation by CDK inhibitor p18(INK4c) and IL-6. *Immunity*. 1997;6:47–56. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9052836
130. McHeyzer-Williams LJ, Cool M, McHeyzer-Williams MG. Antigen-specific B cell memory: expression and replenishment of a novel B220-memory b cell compartment. *J Exp Med*. 2000;191:1149–1166. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10748233
131. McHeyzer-Williams MG, McLean MJ, Lalor PA, Nossal GJV. Antigen-driven B cell differentiation in vivo. *J Exp Med*. 1993;178:295–307. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8315385
132. Pelletier N, McHeyzer-Williams LJ, Wong KA, et al. Plasma cells negatively regulate the follicular helper T cell program. *Nat Immunol*. 2010;11:1110–1118. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21037578
133. Ho F, Lortan JE, MacLennan ICM, Khan M. Distinct short-lived and long-lived antibody-producing cell populations. *Eur J Immunol*. 1986;16:1297–1301. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3490389
134. Jacob J, Kelsoe G. In situ studies of the primary immune response to (4-hydroxy-3-nitrophenyl)acetyl. II. A common clonal origin for periarteriolar lymphoid sheath-associated foci and germinal centers. *J Exp Med*. 1992;176:679–687. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1512536
135. Hargreaves DC, Hyman PL, Lu TT, et al. A coordinated change in chemokine responsiveness guides plasma cell movements. *J Exp Med*. 2001;194:45–56. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11435471
136. Turner CA Jr, Mack DH, Davis MM. Blimp-1, a novel zinc finger-containing protein that can drive the maturation of B lymphocytes into immunoglobulin-secreting cells. *Cell*. 1994;77:297–306. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8168136
137. Shapiro-Shelef M, Lin KI, McHeyzer-Williams LJ, Liao J, McHeyzer-Williams MG, Calame K. Blimp-1 is required for the formation of immunoglobulin secreting plasma cells and pre-plasma memory B cells. *Immunity*. 2003;19:607–620. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14563324
138. Calame K. Transcription factors that regulate memory in humoral responses. *Immunol Rev*. 2006;211:269–279. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16824134
139. Calame KL, Lin KI, Tunyaplin C. Regulatory mechanisms that determine the development and function of plasma cells. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 2003;21:205–230. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12524387
140. Iwakoshi NN, Lee AH, Vallabhajosyula P, Otipoby KL, Rajewsky K, Glimcher LH. Plasma cell differentiation and the unfolded protein response intersect at the transcription factor XBP-1. *Nat Immunol*. 2003;4:321–329. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12612580
141. Reimold AM, Iwakoshi NN, Manis J, et al. Plasma cell differentiation requires the transcription factor XBP-1. *Nature*. 2001;412:300–307. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11460154
142. Shaffer AL, Shapiro-Shelef M, Iwakoshi NN, et al. XBP1, downstream of Blimp-1, expands the secretory apparatus and other organelles, and increases protein synthesis in plasma cell differentiation. *Immunity*. 2004;21:81–93. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15345222
143. Corcoran LM, Hasbold J, Dietrich W, et al. Differential requirement for OBF-1 during antibody-secreting cell differentiation. *J Exp Med*. 2005;201:1385–1396. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15867091
144. Lin L, Gerth AJ, Peng SL. Active inhibition of plasma cell development in resting B cells by microphthalmia-associated transcription factor. *J Exp Med*. 2004;200:115–122. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15226356
145. Fujita N, Jaye DL, Geigerman C, et al. MTA3 and the Mi-2/NuRD complex regulate cell fate during B lymphocyte differentiation. *Cell*. 2004;119:75–86. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15454082
146. Hu CC, Dougan SK, McGehee AM, Love JC, Ploegh HL. XBP-1 regulates signal transduction, transcription factors and bone marrow colonization in B cells. *EMBO J*. 2009;28:1624–1636. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19407814
147. Todd DJ, McHeyzer-Williams LJ, Kowal C, et al. XBP1 governs late events in plasma cell differentiation and is not required for antigen-specific memory B cell development. *J Exp Med*. 2009;206:2151–2159. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19752183
148. Gatto D, Paus D, Basten A, Mackay CR, Brink R. Guidance of B cells by the orphan G protein-coupled receptor EBI2 shapes humoral immune responses. *Immunity*. 2009;31:259–269. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19615922
149. Pereira JP, Kelly LM, Xu Y, Cyster JG. EBI2 mediates B cell segregation between the outer and centre follicle. *Nature*. 2009;460:1122–1126. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19597478
150. Coffey F, Alabyev B, Manser T. Initial clonal expansion of germinal center B cells takes place at the perimeter of follicles. *Immunity*. 2009;30:599–609. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19303334

151. MacLennan IC. Germinal centers. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 1994;12:117–139. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8011279
152. MacLennan ICM, Gray D. Antigen-driven selection of virgin and memory B cells. *Immunol Rev*. 1986;91:61–85. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3089914
153. Matsumoto M, Mariathasan S, Nahm MH, Baranyay F, Peschon JJ, Chaplin DD. Role of lymphotoxin and the type I TNF receptor in the formation of germinal centers. *Science*. 1996;271:1289–1291. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8638112
154. Matsumoto M, Lo SF, Carruthers CJ, et al. Affinity maturation without germinal centres in lymphotoxin-alpha-deficient mice. *Nature*. 1996; 382:462–466. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8684487
155. Koni PA, Sacca R, Lawton P, Browning JL, Ruddle NH, Flavell RA. Distinct roles in lymphoid organogenesis for lymphotoxins alpha and beta revealed in lymphotoxin beta-deficient mice. *Immunity*. 1997;6: 491–500. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9133428
156. Futterer A, Mink K, Luz A, Kosco-Vilbois MH, Pfeffer K. The lymphotoxin beta receptor controls organogenesis and affinity maturation in peripheral lymphoid tissues. *Immunity*. 1998;9:59–70. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9697836
157. Hauser AE, Junt T, Mempel TR, et al. Definition of germinal-center B cell migration in vivo reveals predominant intrazonal circulation patterns. *Immunity*. 2007;26:655–667. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17509908
158. Schwickert TA, Lindquist RL, Shakar G, et al. In vivo imaging of germinal center reveals a dynamic open structure. *Nature*. 2007;446(7131):83–87. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17268470
159. Allen CD, Okada T, Tang HL, Cyster JG. Imaging of germinal center selection events during affinity maturation. *Science*. 2007;315:528–531. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17185562
160. Hauser AE, Shlomchik MJ, Haberman AM. In vivo imaging studies shed light on germinal-centre development. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2007;7: 499–504. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17589541
161. Allen CD, Okada T, Cyster JG. Germinal-center organization and cellular dynamics. *Immunity*. 2007;27:190–202. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17723214
162. Victora GD, Schwickert TA, Fooksman DR, et al. Germinal center dynamics revealed by multiphoton microscopy with a photoactivatable fluorescent reporter. *Cell*. 2010;143:592–605. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21074050
163. Jacobson EB, Caporale LH, Thorbecke GJ. Effect of thymus cell injections on germinal center formation in lymphoid tissues of nude (thymusless) mice. *Cell Immunol*. 1974;13:416–430. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4217657
164. Kawabe T, Naka T, Yoshida K, et al. The immune responses in CD40-deficient mice: impaired immunoglobulin class switching and germinal center formation. *Immunity*. 1994;1:167–178. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7534202
165. Renshaw BR, Fanslow WC 3rd, Armitage RJ, et al. Humoral immune responses in CD40 ligand-deficient mice. *J Exp Med*. 1994;180:1889–1900. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7964465
166. de Vinuesa CG, Cook MC, Ball J, et al. Germinal centers without T cells. *J Exp Med*. 2000;191:485–494. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10662794
167. Song H, Cerny J. Functional heterogeneity of marginal zone B cells revealed by their ability to generate both early antibody-forming cells and germinal centers with hypermutation and memory in response to a T-dependent antigen. *J Exp Med*. 2003;198:1923–1935. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14662910
168. Dent AL, Shaffer AL, Yu X, Allman D, Staudt LM. Control of inflammation, cytokine expression, and germinal center formation by BCL-6. *Science*. 1997;276:589–592. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9110977
169. Toyama H, Okada S, Hatano M, et al. Memory B cells without somatic hypermutation are generated from Bcl6-deficient B cells. *Immunity*. 2002;17:329–339. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12354385
170. Phan RT, Dalla-Favera R. The BCL6 proto-oncogene suppresses p53 expression in germinal-centre B cells. *Nature*. 2004;432:635–639. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15577913
171. Tunyaplin C, Shaffer AL, Angelin-Duclos CD, Yu X, Staudt LM, Calame KL. Direct repression of prdm1 by Bcl-6 inhibits plasmacytic differentiation. *JImmunol*. 2004;173:1158–1165. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15240705
172. Wang Y, Carter RH. CD19 regulates B cell maturation, proliferation, and positive selection in the FDC zone of murine splenic germinal centers. *Immunity*. 2005;22:749–761. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15963789
173. Schwickert TA, Lindquist RL, Shakar G, et al. In vivo imaging of germinal center reveals a dynamic open structure. *Nature*. 2007;446: 83–87. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17268470
174. Neuberger MS, Milstein C. Somatic hypermutation. *Curr Opin Immunol*. 1995;7:248–254. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7546385
175. Jolly CJ, Wagner SD, Rada C, Klix N, Milstein C, Neuberger MS. The targeting of somatic hypermutation. *Semin Immunol*. 1996;8:159–168. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8738915
176. Muramatsu M, Sankaranand VS, Anant S, et al. Specific expression of activation-induced cytidine deaminase (AID), a novel member of the RNA-editing deaminase family in germinal center B cells. *J Biol Chem*. 1999;274:18470–18476. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10373455
177. Larson ED, Cummings WJ, Bednarski DW, Maizels N. MRE11/RAD50 cleaves DNA in the AID/UNG-dependent pathway of immunoglobulin gene diversification. *Mol Cell*. 2005;20:367–375. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16285919
178. Liu M, Duke JL, Richter DJ, et al. Two levels of protection for the B cell genome during somatic hypermutation. *Nature*. 2008;451:841–845. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18273020
179. Wang M, Rada C, Neuberger MS. Altering the spectrum of immunoglobulin V gene somatic hypermutation by modifying the active site of AID. *J Exp Med*. 2010;207:141–153. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20048284
180. Wang M, Yang Z, Rada C, Neuberger MS. AID upmutants isolated using a high-throughput screen highlight the immunity/ cancer balance limiting DNA deaminase activity. *Nat Struct Mol Biol*. 2009; 16:769–776. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19543289
181. Orthwein A, Patenaude AM, Affar el B, Lamarre A, Young JC, Di Noia JM. Regulation of activation-induced deaminase stability and antibody gene diversification by Hsp90. *J Exp Med*. 2010;207:2751–2765. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21041454
182. Di Noia JM, Neuberger MS. Molecular mechanisms of antibody somatic hypermutation. *Annu Rev Biochem*. 2007;76:1–22. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17328676
183. Tourigny MR, Ursini-Siegel J, Lee H, et al. CDK inhibitor p18(INK4c) is required for the generation of functional plasma cells. *Immunity*. 2002;17:179–189. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12196289
184. Winslow MM, Gallo EM, Neilson JR, Crabtree GR. The calcineurin phosphatase complex modulates immunogenic B cell responses. *Immunity*. 2006;24:141–152. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16473827
185. Smith KG, Light A, O'Reilly LA, Ang SM, Strasser A, Tarlinton D. bcl-2 transgene expression inhibits apoptosis in the germinal center and reveals differences in the selection of memory B cells and bone marrow antibody-forming cells. *J Exp Med*. 2000;191:475–484. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10662793
186. Takahashi Y, Cerasoli DM, Dal Porto JM, et al. Relaxed negative selection in germinal centers and impaired affinity maturation in bcl-xL transgenic mice. *J Exp Med*. 1999;190:399–410. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10430628
187. McHeyzer-Williams LJ, McHeyzer-Williams MG. Antigen-specific memory B cell development. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 2005;23:487–513. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15771579
188. Hao Z, Duncan GS, Seagal J, et al. Fas receptor expression in germinal-center B cells is essential for T and B lymphocyte homeostasis. *Immunity*. 2008;29:615–627. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18835195
189. Vikstrom I, Carotta S, Luthje K, et al. Mcl-1 is essential for germinal center formation and B cell memory. *Science*. 2010;330:1095–1099. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20929728

190. Huntington ND, Xu Y, Puthalakath H, et al. CD45 links the B cell receptor with cell survival and is required for the persistence of germinal centers. *NatImmunol*. 2006;7:190–198. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16378097
191. Wang Y, Brooks SR, Li X, Anzelon AN, Rickert RC, Carter RH. The physiologic role of CD19 cytoplasmic tyrosines. *Immunity*. 2002;17: 501–514. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12387743
192. Casola S, Cattoretti G, Uyttersprot N, et al. Tracking germinal center B cells expressing germ-line immunoglobulin gamma1 transcripts by conditional gene targeting. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2006;103:7396–7401. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16651521
193. Mitchell J, Abbot A. Ultrastructure of the antigen-retaining reticulum of lymph node follicles as shown by high-resolution autoradiography. *Nature*. 1965;208:500–502. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/5893802
194. Fearon DT, Carroll MC. Regulation of B lymphocyte responses to foreign and self-antigens by the CD19/CD21 complex. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 2000;18:393–422. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10837064
195. Hannum LG, Haberman AM, Anderson SM, Shlomchik MJ. Germinal center initiation, variable gene region hypermutation, and mutant B cell selection without detectable immune complexes on follicular dendritic cells. *J Exp Med*. 2000;192:931–942. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11015435
196. Victoratos P, Lagnel J, Tzima S, et al. FDC-specific functions of p55T-NFR and IKK2 in the development of FDC networks and of antibody responses. *Immunity*. 2006;24:65–77. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16413924
197. Bhattacharyya S, Deb J, Patra AK, et al. NFATc1 affects mouse splenic B cell function by controlling the calcineurin—NFAT signaling network. *J Exp Med*. 2011;208:823–839. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21464221
198. Allen CD, Ansel KM, Low C, et al. Germinal center dark and light zone organization is mediated by CXCR4 and CXCR5. *Nat Immunol*. 2004; 5:943–952. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15300245
199. Ford ML, Koehn BH, Wagener ME, et al. Antigen-specific precursor frequency impacts T cell proliferation, differentiation, and requirement for costimulation. *J Exp Med*. 2007;204(2):299–309. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17261633
200. Hataye J, Moon JJ, Khoruts A, Reilly C, Jenkins MK. Naive and memory CD4+ T cell survival controlled by clonal abundance. *Science*. 2006; 312:114–116. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16513943
201. Marzo AL, Klonowski KD, Le Bon A, Borrow P, Tough DF, Lefrancois L. Initial T cell frequency dictates memory CD8+ T cell lineage commitment. *Nat Immunol*. 2005;6:793–799. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16025119
202. Choi YS, Kageyama R, Eto D, et al. ICOS receptor instructs T follicular helper cell versus effector cell differentiation via induction of the transcriptional repressor Bcl6. *Immunity*. 2011;34(6):932–946. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21636296
203. Green JA, Suzuki K, Cho B, et al. The sphingosine 1-phosphate receptor S1P(2) maintains the homeostasis of germinal center B cells and promotes niche confinement. *Nat Immunol*. 2011;12:672–680. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21642988
204. Good-Jacobson KL, Szumilas CG, Chen L, Sharpe AH, Tomayko MM, Shlomchik MJ. PD-1 regulates germinal center B cell survival and the formation and affinity of long-lived plasma cells. *Nat Immunol*. 2010; 11:535–542. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20453843
205. Reinhardt RL, Liang HE, Locksley RM. Cytokine-secreting follicular T cells shape the antibody repertoire. *Nat Immunol*. 2009;10:385–393. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19252490
206. Gulbranson-Judge A, MacLennan I. Sequential antigen-specific growth of T cells in the T zones and follicles in response to pigeon cytochrome c. *Eur J Immunol*. 1996;26:1830–1837. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8765028
207. Zheng B, Han S, Kelsoe G. T helper cells in murine germinal centers are antigen-specific emigrants that downregulate Thy-1. *J Exp Med*. 1996; 184:1083–1091. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9064325
208. Mikszta JA, McHeyzer-Williams LJ, McHeyzer-Williams MG. Antigen-driven selection of TCR In vivo: related TCR alpha-chains pair with diverse TCR beta-chains. *J Immunol*. 1999;163:5978–5988. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10570285
209. Han S, Hathcock K, Zheng B, Kepler TB, Hodes R, Kelsoe G. Cellular interaction in germinal centers. Roles of CD40 ligand and B7-2 in established germinal centers. *J Immunol*. 1995;155:556–567. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7541819
210. Kim CH, Lim HW, Kim JR, Rott L, Hillsamer P, Butcher EC. Unique gene expression program of human germinal center T helper cells. *Blood*. 2004;104:1952–1960. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15213097
211. McHeyzer-Williams MG, Ahmed R. B cell memory and the long-lived plasma cell. *Curr Opin Immunol*. 1999;11:172–179. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10322151
212. Pape KA, Taylor JJ, Maul RW, Gearhart PJ, Jenkins MK. Different B cell populations mediate early and late memory during an endogenous immune response. *Science*. 2011;331:1203–1207. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21310965
213. Dogan I, Bertocci B, Vilmont V, et al. Multiple layers of B cell memory with different effector functions. *Nat Immunol*. 2009;10:1292–1299. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19855380
214. Kasturi SP, Skountzou I, Albrecht RA, et al. Programming the magnitude and persistence of antibody responses with innate immunity. *Nature*. 2011;470:543–547. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21350488
215. Nossal GJ, Pike BL, Battye FL. Sequential use of hapten-gelatin fractionation and fluorescence-activated cell sorting in the enrichment of hapten-specific B lymphocytes. *Eur J Immunol*. 1978;8:151–157. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/350592
216. Noelle RJ, Snow EC, Uhr JW, Vitetta ES. Activation of antigen-specific B cells: role of T cells, cytokines, and antigen in induction of growth and differentiation. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1983;80:6628–6631. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6605533
217. Bonner WA, Hulett HR, Sweet RG, Herzenberg LA. Fluorescence activated cell sorting. *Rev Sci Instrum*. 1972;43:404–409. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/5013444
218. Julius MH, Masuda T, Herzenberg LA. Demonstration that antigen-binding cells are precursors of antibody-producing cells after purification with a fluorescence-activated cell sorter. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1972;69:1934–1938. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4114858
219. Greenstein JL, Leary J, Horan P, Kappler JW, Marrack P. Flow sorting of antigen-binding B cell subsets. *J Immunol*. 1980;124:1472–1481. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6153684
220. Hayakawa K, Ishii R, Yamasaki K, Kishimoto T, Hardy RR. Isolation of high-affinity memory B cells: phycoerythrin as a probe for antigen-binding cells. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1987;84:1379–1383. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3493491
221. Gray D, Skarvall H. B-cell memory is short-lived in the absence of antigen. *Nature*. 1988;336:70–73. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3263573
222. Kodituwakku AP, Jessup C, Zola H, Roberton DM. Isolation of antigen-specific B cells. *Immunol Cell Biol*. 2003;81:163–170. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12752679
223. Schittek B, Rajewsky K. Maintenance of B-cell memory by long-lived cells generated from proliferating precursors. *Nature*. 1990;346:749–751. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2388695
224. Maruyama M, Lam KP, Rajewsky K. Memory B-cell persistence is independent of persisting immunizing antigen. *Nature*. 2000;407:636–642. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11034213
225. McHeyzer-Williams MG, Nossal GJ, Lalor PA. Molecular characterization of single memory B cells. *Nature*. 1991;350:502–505. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2014051
226. Blink EJ, Light A, Kallies A, Nutt SL, Hodgkin PD, Tarlinton DM. Early appearance of germinal center-derived memory B cells and plasma cells in blood after primary immunization. *J Exp Med*. 2005;201:545–554. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15710653
227. Jacob J, Kelsoe G, Rajewsky K, Weiss U. Intraclonal generation of antibody mutants in germinal centres. *Nature*. 1991;354:389–392. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1956400
228. McHeyzer-Williams MG, Nossal GJV, Lalor PA. Molecular characterization of single memory B cells. *Nature*. 1991;350:502–505. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2014051

229. Phan TG, Paus D, Chan TD, et al. High affinity germinal center B cells are actively selected into the plasma cell compartment. *J Exp Med*. 2006;203:2419–2424.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17030950
230. Mohr E, Serre K, Manz RA, et al. Dendritic cells and monocyte/macrophages that create the IL-6/APRIL-rich lymph node microenvironments where plasmablasts mature. *J Immunol*. 2009;182:2113–2123.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19201864
231. Fooksman DR, Schwickert TA, Victora GD, Dustin ML, Nussenzweig MC, Skokos D. Development and migration of plasma cells in the mouse lymph node. *Immunity*. 2010;33:118–127.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20619695
232. Chevrier S, Genton C, Kallies A, et al. CD93 is required for maintenance of antibody secretion and persistence of plasma cells in the bone marrow niche. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2009;106:3895–3900.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19228948
233. Bernasconi NL, Traggiai E, Lanzavecchia A. Maintenance of serological memory by polyclonal activation of human memory B cells. *Science*. 2002;298:2199–2202.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12481138
234. Smith KG, Light A, Nossal GJV, Tarlinton DM. The extent of affinity maturation differs between the memory and antibody-forming cell compartments in the primary immune response. *Embo Journal*. 1997;16:2996–3006.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9214617
235. Takahashi Y, Dutta PR, Cerasoli DM, Kelsoe G. In situ studies of the primary immune response to (4-hydroxy-3-nitrophenyl)acetyl. V. Affinity maturation develops in two stages of clonal selection. *J Exp Med*. 1998;187:885–895.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9500791
236. Minges Wols HA, Underhill GH, Kansas GS, Witte PL. The role of bone marrow-derived stromal cells in the maintenance of plasma cell longevity. *JImmunol*. 2002;169:4213–4221.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12370351
237. Benner R, Hijmans W, Haaijman JJ. The bone marrow: the major source of serum immunoglobulins, but still a neglected site of antibody formation. *Clin Exp Immunol*. 1981;46:1–8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7039877
238. Manz RA, Thiel A, Radbruch A. Lifetime of plasma cells in the bone marrow. *Nature*. 1997;388:133–134.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9217150
239. Manz RA, Lohning M, Cassese G, Thiel A, Radbruch A. Survival of long-lived plasma cells is independent of antigen. *International Immunol*. 1998;11:1703–1711.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9846699
240. Slifka MK, Matloubian M, Ahmed R. Bone marrow is a major site of long-term antibody production after acute viral infection. *J Virol*. 1995;69:1895–1902.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7853531
241. Slifka MK, Antia R, Whitmire JK, Ahmed R. Humoral immunity due to long-lived plasma cells. *Immunity*. 1998;8:363–372.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9529153
242. O'Connor BP, Raman VS, Erickson LD, et al. BCMA is essential for the survival of long-lived bone marrow plasma cells. *J Exp Med*. 2004;199:91–98.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14707116
243. O'Connor BP, Cascalho M, Noelle RJ. Short-lived and long-lived bone marrow plasma cells are derived from a novel precursor population. *J Exp Med*. 2002;195:737–745.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11901199
244. Shaffer AL, Lin KI, Kuo TC, et al. Blimp-1 orchestrates plasma cell differentiation by extinguishing the mature B cell gene expression program. *Immunity*. 2002;17:51–62.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12150891
245. Underhill GH, George D, Bremer EG, Kansas GS. Gene expression profiling reveals a highly specialized genetic program of plasma cells. *Blood*. 2003;101:4013–4021.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12543863
246. Furukawa K, Akasako-Furukawa A, Shirai H, Nakamura H, Azuma T. Junctional amino acids determine the maturation pathway of an antibody. *Immunity*. 1999;11:329–338.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10514011
247. Panus JF, McHeyzer-Williams LJ, McHeyzer-Williams MG. Antigen-specific T helper cell function: differential cytokine expression in primary and memory responses. *J Exp Med*. 2000;192:1301–1316.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11067879
248. McHeyzer-Williams LJ, McHeyzer-Williams MG. Analysis of antigen-specific B-cell memory directly ex vivo. *Methods Mol Biol*. 2004;271:173–188.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15146121
249. Liu W, Meckel T, Tolar P, Sohn HW, Pierce SK. Intrinsic properties of immunoglobulin IgG1 isotype-switched B cell receptors promote microclustering and the initiation of signaling. *Immunity*. 2010;32:778–789.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20620943
250. Martin SW, Goodnow CC. Burst-enhancing role of the IgG membrane tail as a molecular determinant of memory. *Nat Immunol*. 2002;3:182–188.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11812996
251. Engels N, Konig LM, Heemann C, et al. Recruitment of the cytoplasmic adaptor Grb2 to surface IgG and IgE provides antigen receptor-intrinsic costimulation to class-switched B cells. *NatImmunol*. 2009;10:1018–1025.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19668218
252. Horikawa K, Martin SW, Pogue SL, et al. Enhancement and suppression of signaling by the conserved tail of IgG memory-type B cell antigen receptors. *J Exp Med*. 2007;204:759–769.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17420266
253. Waisman A, Kraus M, Seagal J, et al. IgG1 B cell receptor signaling is inhibited by CD22 and promotes the development of B cells whose survival is less dependent on Ig alpha/beta. *J Exp Med*. 2007;204:747–758.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17420268
254. Wakabayashi C, Adachi T, Wienands J, Tsubata T. A distinct signaling pathway used by the IgG-containing B cell antigen receptor. *Science*. 2002;298:2392–2395.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12493916
255. Aiba Y, Kometani K, Hamadate M, et al. Preferential localization of IgG memory B cells adjacent to contracted germinal centers. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2010;107:12192–12197.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20547847
256. McHeyzer-Williams LJ, Panus JF, Mikszta JA, McHeyzer-Williams MG. Evolution of antigen-specific T cell receptors in vivo: preimmune and antigen-driven selection of preferred complementarity-determining region 3 (CDR3) motifs. *J Exp Med*. 1999;189:1823–1838.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10359586
257. Sallusto F, Geginat J, Lanzavecchia A. Central memory and effector memory T cell subsets: function, generation, and maintenance. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 2004;22:745–763.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15032595
258. Srinivasan L, Sasaki Y, Calado DP, et al. PI3 kinase signals BCR-dependent mature B cell survival. *Cell*. 2009;139:573–586.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19879843
259. Hikida M, Casola S, Takahashi N, et al. PLC-gamma2 is essential for formation and maintenance of memory B cells. *J Exp Med*. 2009;206:681–689.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19273623
260. Jelley-Gibbs DM, Dibble JP, Brown DM, Strutt TM, McKinstry KK, Swain SL. Persistent depots of influenza antigen fail to induce a cytotoxic CD8 T cell response. *J Immunol*. 2007;178:7563–7570.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17548591
261. Fazilleau N, Eisenbraun MD, Malherbe L, et al. Lymphoid reservoirs of antigen-specific memory T helper cells. *Nat Immunol*. 2007;8:753–761.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17529982
262. Fazilleau N, Mark L, McHeyzer-Williams LJ, McHeyzer-Williams MG. Follicular helper T cells: lineage and location. *Immunity* 2009;30:324–335.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19303387
263. Obst R, van Santen HM, Mathis D, Benoist C. Antigen persistence is required throughout the expansion phase of a CD4(+) T cell response. *J Exp Med*. 2005;201:1555–1565.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15897273
264. Celli S, Garcia Z, Bousso P. CD4 T cells integrate signals delivered during successive DC encounters in vivo. *J Exp Med*. 2005;202:1271–1278.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16275764

265. Jelley-Gibbs DM, Brown DM, Dibble JP, Haynes L, Eaton SM, Swain SL. Unexpected prolonged presentation of influenza antigens promotes CD4 T cell memory generation. *J Exp Med*. 2005;202:697–706. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16147980
266. Zammit DJ, Turner DL, Klonowski KD, Lefrancois L, Cauley LS. Residual antigen presentation after influenza virus infection affects CD8 T cell activation and migration. *Immunity*. 2006;24:439–449. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16618602
267. Lau LL, Jamieson BD, Somasundaram T, Ahmed R. Cytotoxic T-cell memory without antigen. *Nature*. 1994;369:648–652. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7516038
268. Swain SL, Hu H, Huston G. Class II-independent generation of CD4 memory T cells from effectors. *Science*. 1999;286:1381–1383. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10558997

SECTION IV

T-Lymphocytes

CHAPTER 11

T-Cell Antigen Receptors

Mark M. Davis • Yueh-Hsiu Chien

T-lymphocytes expressing αβ or γδ T-cell antigen receptors (TCRs) are found together with B-lymphocytes in all but the most primitive vertebrate animals. These three cell types are the only ones that use random variable (V), diversity (D) in the case of TCR-β and -δ, joining (J), gene rearrangement to generate diverse antigen receptors. During the last two decades, there has been a great deal of progress in identifying the molecules and genes of TCRs, and there is considerable information on their biochemistry and structure. While TCRs share structural and genetic similarities with B-cell antigen receptors (immunoglobulins [Igs]), they also possess a number of unique features pertinent to their specific functions. The first major difference was suggested by the experiments of Zinkernagel and Doherty, who found that cytotoxic cells specific for a viral antigen could only lyse infected cells that expressed a particular major histocompatibility complex (MHC) molecule.[1,2] This phenomenon of "MHC-restricted recognition" is in marked contrast to the recognition of intact antigens by Igs.[3,4] Later work demonstrated that what was being recognized by these T cells, which were of the αβ TCR type, were fragments of antigens or peptides bound to a characteristic groove in MHC molecules.[5] These αβ TCRs are expressed on classical helper and cytotoxic T cells, which predominate in most lymphoid compartments (90% to 95%) of humans and mice.[6] They are also expressed on natural killer (NK)T cells,[7] regulatory T cells,[8] and T cells in the mucosal sites such as the intestinal epithelial compartment (IEL).[9] In most cases, the αβ TCR ligand is a peptide antigen bound to a class I or class II MHC molecule; but in the case of NKT cells, the antigen is a glycolipid bound to a nonclassical class I MHC molecule, cluster of differentiation (CD)1d.[7]

T cells bearing γδ TCRs are less numerous than the αβ type in most cellular compartments of humans and mice (<5%). However, they make up a substantial fraction of T-lymphocytes in cows, sheep, and chickens.[10] γδ T cells coexist with αβ T cells but seem to be better represented in the mucosal compartments.[10,11] Although αβ T cells perform most of the functions classically attributed to T cells, mice lacking γδ T cells are clearly have a compromised immune defense indicating that γδ and αβ T cells contribute to host immune defense differently.[11,12] γδ TCRs also recognize antigens directly, like antibodies, with no apparent need for antigen processing,[13] at least in the most thoroughly studies cases. During the past few years, there have been considerable advances in our understanding of antigen recognition by γδ T cells. This should lead to a better understanding of how γδ T cells contribute to immune competence.

T-CELL ANTIGEN RECEPTOR POLYPEPTIDES

The search for the molecules responsible for T-cell recognition first focused on deriving antisera or monoclonal antibodies specific for molecules on T-cell surfaces. Ultimately, a number of groups identified "clonotypic" sera[14] or monoclonal antibodies.[15–19] Several of these antibodies were able to block antigen-specific responses by the T cells they were raised against or, when coated on a surface, could activate the T cells they are specific for. They were also able to immunoprecipitate 85,000 to 90,000 molecular weight (MW) disulfide-bonded heterodimers from different T-cell clones or hybridomas consisting of two 40,000 to 50,000 MW glycosylated subunits referred to as α and β. Peptide mapping studies showed that there was a striking degree of polymorphism between heterodimers isolated from T cells of differing specificity, thus suggesting that these antigen recognition molecules might be akin to Igs.[20,21]

Work in parallel to these serologic studies exploited the small differences (approximately 2%) observed between B- and T-cell gene expression,[22] and isolated both a mouse[23,24] and a human[25] T cell–specific gene that had antibody-like V, J, and C region sequences and could rearrange in T-lymphocytes.[24] This molecule was identified as TCR-β by partial sequence analysis of immunoprecipitated materials.[26]

Subsequent subtractive cloning work rapidly identified two other candidate TCR complementary deoxyribonucleic acids (DNAs) identified as TCR-α[27,28] and TCR-γ.[29] It was quickly established that all antigen-specific helper or cytotoxic T cells expressed TCR-αβ heterodimers. Where TCR-γ fit in remained a puzzle until work by Brenner et al.[30] showed that it was expressed on a small (5% to 10%) subset of peripheral T cells together with another polypeptide, TCR-δ. The nature of TCR-δ remained unknown until it was discovered within the TCR-α locus, between the V_α and J_α regions.[31] Formal proof that the TCR-α and -β subunits were sufficient to transfer antigen/MHC recognition from one T cell to another came from gene transfection experiments,[32,33] and equivalent experiments have also been done with γδ TCRs.[34]

As shown in Figure 11.1, all TCR polypeptides have a similar primary structure, with distinct V, D in the case of TCR-β and -δ, J, and constant (C) regions exactly analogous to their Ig counterparts. They also share many of the amino acid residues thought to be important for the characteristic variable and constant domains of Igs.[35] The C_β region is particularly homologous, sharing 40% of its amino acid sequences with C_K and C_λ. The TCR polypeptides all contain a single C region domain (versus up to four for Igs) followed by a connecting peptide. These usually contain the cysteine for the disulfide linkage that joins the two chains of the heterodimer (some human TCR-γδ isoforms lack this cysteine and consequently are not disulfide-linked[36]). *N*-linked glycosylation sites vary from two to four for each polypeptide with no indications of O-linked sugar addition. C-terminal to the connecting peptide sequences are the hydrophobic transmembrane regions. These have no similarity to those of the *IgH* genes but instead have one (TCR-β and -γ) or two (TCR-α and -δ) positively charged residues. As discussed later, these charged residues are critical for the association of the ligand-binding TCR polypeptides with the CD3 signaling polypeptides. This is important because the TCR polypeptides have very short cytoplasmic regions with no known role in signaling.

A more recent member of the TCR polypeptide family is the pre-Tα chain, which serves as a chaperone for TCR-β in early thymocytes, similar to the role of λ5 in pre-B cells.[37] It was first identified and cloned by von Boehmer and colleagues.[38] It has an interesting structure that consists of a single Ig constant region-like domain followed by a cysteine-containing connecting peptide, a transmembrane region

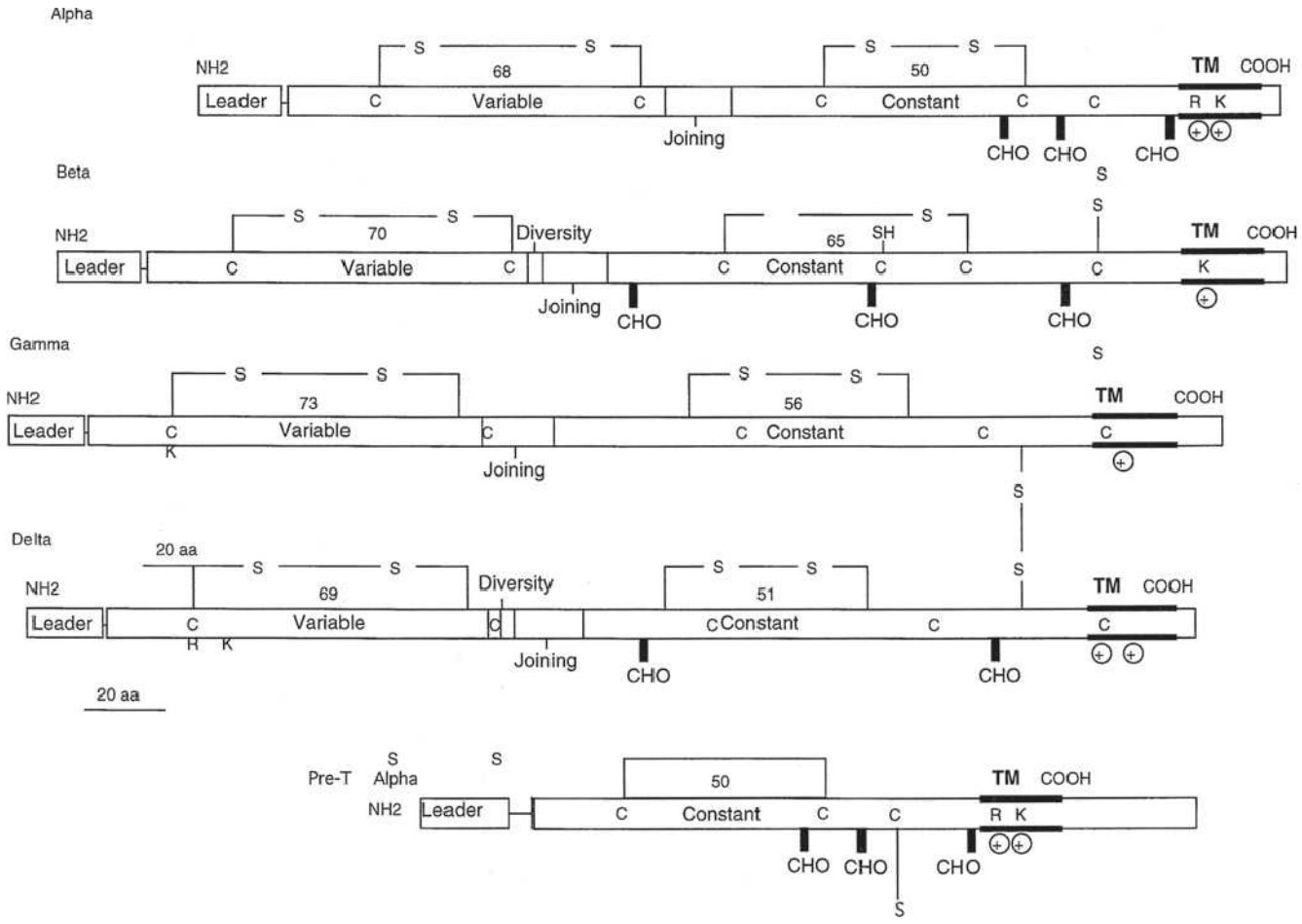


FIG. 11.1. Structural Features of T-Cell Receptors and Pre-T α Polypeptides. Leader (L), variable (V), diversity (D), joining (J), and constant region (C) gene segments are indicated. *Transmembrane* and *bold horizontal lines* delineate the putative transmembrane regions; *CHO* indicates potential carbohydrate addition sites; *C* and *S* refer to cysteine residues that form interchain and intrachain disulfide bonds; *R* and *K* indicate the positively charged amino acids (arginine and lysine, respectively) that are found in the transmembrane regions.

containing two charged residues: an arginine and a lysine spaced identically to the TCR-α transmembrane region. The cysteine in the connecting peptide is presumably what allows heterodimer formation with TCR-β and the similarity to TCR-α in the transmembrane region is most likely to accommodate the CD3 polypeptides. Recently, Rossjohn and colleagues have presented a structure of the pre-Tα chain that is comprised of a single Ig-like domain that is distinct from the C domain of the TCR-α chain; nevertheless, the mode of association between pre-Tα and TCR-β mirrored that mediated by the Cα-Cβ domains of the αβTCR.[39] The pre-TCR has a propensity to dimerize in solution, and the molecular envelope of the pre-TCR dimer correlated well with the observed head-to-tail pre-TCR dimer. This mode of pre-TCR dimerization enables the pre-Tα domain to interact with the Vβ domain through residues that are highly conserved across the Vβ and Jβ gene families, thus mimicking the interactions at the core of the αβ TCR's Vα-Vβ interface. Disruption of this pre-Tα-Vβ dimer interface abrogates pre-TCR dimerization in solution and impaired pre-TCR expression on the cell surface. Their work suggests a mechanism of pre-TCR self-association that allows the pre-Tα chain to simultaneously "sample" the correct folding of both the V and C domains of any TCR β-chain, regardless of its ultimate specificity,[39] which likely represents a critical checkpoint in T-cell development.

In both the mouse and humans, the cytoplasmic tail of pre-Tα is much longer than any of the TCR chains (37 and 120 amino acids, respectively), and the murine sequence contains two likely phosphorylation sites and sequences homologous to an SH3 domain binding region. These are not present in the human sequence, however, and so their functional significance is unclear.[38] Thus, at least in principal, the murine pre-Tα molecule could function as signaling intermediate independent of the CD3 polypeptides, and it has recently been shown that at least one CD3 component (δε, see the following) is not required for it to function normally in early thymocyte differentiation.[40]

CLUSTER OF DIFFERENTIATION 3 POLYPEPTIDES

Immunoprecipitation of the human TCR with anti-idiotypic antibodies after solubilization with the nonionic detergent, noniodet P-40 (NP-40), initially revealed only the α- and β-chain heterodimer. However, the use of other detergents, such as digitonin or Triton-X100, revealed four other proteins.[41–44] These are known as the CD3γ, δ, ε, and ζ. γ and δ form distinct heterodimers with ε within the TCR/CD3 complex (γε and δε), and ζ usually occurs as a disulfide-linked homodimer. In mouse T cells, NP-40 does not dissociate TCR heterodimers from CD3 molecules.[44,45] In some cases, the ζ-chain can be part of a heterodimer in at least two forms. In mouse T cells, the ζ-chain can disulfide bond with a minor variant called the η (eta) chain.[46,47] This latter chain is an alternate splicing variant of the ζ-chain gene.[48] This alternatively spliced species of the ζ-chain is not found in significant quantities in human T cells.[48] The second type of ζ-chain containing heterodimer contains the γ-chain associated with the $F_cεRI$ ($F_cεRI$ γ) and $F_cγRIII$ (CD16) receptors.[49,50] These CD3 subunits, in their various forms, are an integral part of TCR-mediated T-cell recognition because only they possess the immunoreceptor tyrosine-based activation motifs (ITAMs) that are necessary for cellular activation when the TCR engages ligand.

Characterization and Structural Features of the Cluster of Differentiation 3 Polypeptides

Figure 11.2 illustrates the principal structural features of the CD3 γ, δ, ε, and ζ polypeptides as derived from gene cloning and sequencing,[42,51] and more recently by protein crystal structures of the extracellular domains of γ, δ, and ε.[52–55] The extracellular domains of the γ, δ, and ε chains show a significant degree of similarity to one another. These domains retain the cysteines that have been shown to form intrachain disulfide bonds and each consists of a single Ig superfamily domain. The spacing of the cysteines in these domains produces a compact Ig-fold, similar to a constant region domain. The γ and δ subunits form distinct heterodimers with ε via highly conserved residues at the dimerizing interface.[52–55] The connecting peptides of the CD3 γ, δ, and ε chains all contain highly conserved, closely spaced cysteines just before the membrane-spanning regions. These residues are likely candidates for the formation of interchain disulfide bonds and appear to play a role in the assembly of the CD3 and TCR polypeptides.[52,56] The extracellular domain of the ζ chain consists of only nine amino acids and contains the only cysteine, which is responsible for the disulfide linkage of the ζζ homodimer or the ζ $F_cεRIγ$ heterodimer. Each of the γ, δ, ε, and ζ polypeptides contain a conserved, negatively charged amino acids in their transmembrane region complementary to the positive charges seen in the TCR transmembrane regions.[57–60]

The cytoplasmic regions of the γ, δ, ε, and ζ chains are the intracellular signaling "domains" of the TCR heterodimer. Each of these molecules contains one or more amino acid sequence motifs that can mediate cellular activation.[61] The intracellular sequences responsible for this activation are contained within an 18 amino acid conserved ITAM[62] with the sequence $X_2YX_2L/IX_7YX_2L/I$. Both of the tyrosines in this motif are absolutely required to mediate signal transduction as mutation of either completely prevents the mobilization of free calcium or cytolytic activity.[63] This sequence occurs three times in the ζ chain and once in each of the CD3 γ, δ, ε, and $F_cεRI$ γ chains. There are also pairs of tyrosines present in the cytoplasmic domains of the γ, δ, ε, and ζ chains. This sequence motif is also present in the mβ-1 and B29 chains associated with the Ig β-cell receptor and in the $F_cεRI$ β-chain but there are many more[10] in TCR/CD3 than in any other receptors which use ITAMs. The tyrosines in these cytoplasmic sequences are substrates for the tyrosine phosphorylation that is one of earliest steps in T-cell signaling[61] and is thought to occur aberrantly in nonproductive T-cell responses (eg, antagonism; see following). Serine phosphorylation of the CD3γ also occurs upon

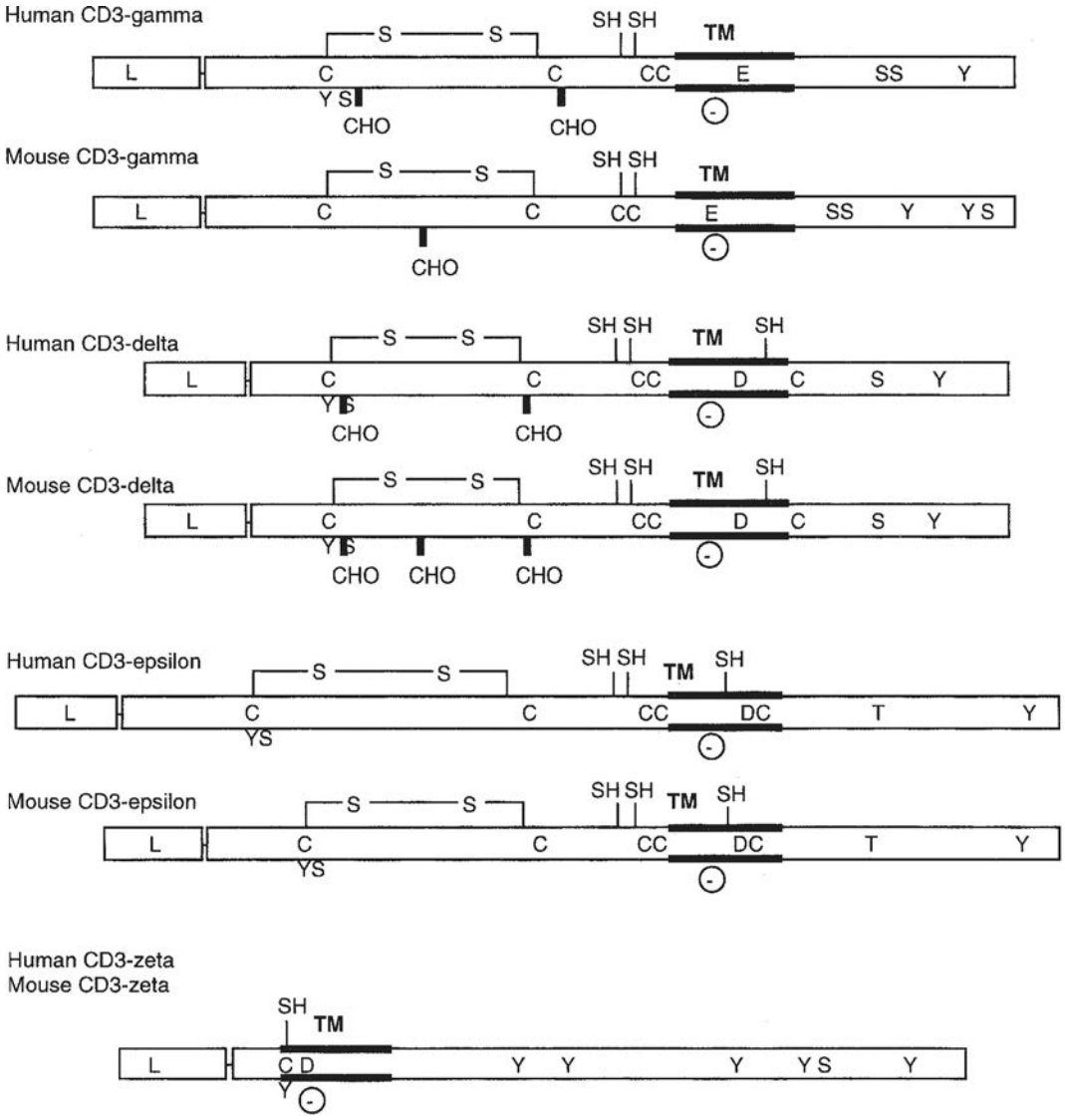


FIG. 11.2. Structural Features of the CD3 Molecules. As in Figure 11.1, transmembrane regions, carbohydrate addition sites, and cysteine residues are indicated. In addition, negatively charged transmembrane residues (*D* for aspartic acid and *E* for glutamic acid) and putative phosphorylation sites are shown.

antigen or mitogenic stimulation of T cells[64] and may play a role in T-cell activation as well.

Recently, live-cell imaging studies have shown a close interaction of the CD3epsilon cytoplasmic domain of the TCR with the plasma membrane, using fluorescence resonance energy transfer (FRET) between a C-terminal fluorescent protein and a membrane fluorophore.[65] Electrostatic interactions between basic CD3epsilon residues and acidic phospholipids enriched in the inner leaflet of the plasma membrane were required for binding. Nuclear magnetic resonance studies of the lipid-bound state of this cytoplasmic domain revealed a deep insertion of the two key tyrosines of the ITAM into the hydrophobic core of the lipid bilayer, likely preventing their phosphorylation.[65] Similar studies of CD3 zeta have confirmed that this is also the case for that component of the TCR/CD3 complex as well.[66] This then likely defines the "off" state of the TCR/CD3 complex and is a novel explanation for how it can prevent tyrosine phosphorylation by lck. What is still mysterious is how ligand binding by the TCR disengages these signaling modules from the plasma membrane and triggers the kinase cascade needed to activate T cells.

Assembly and Organization of the T-Cell Receptor/Cluster of Differentiation 3 Complex

The assembly of newly formed TCR-α and -β chains with the CD3 γ, δ, ε, and ζ chains and their intracellular fate have been studied in detail.[39–41,61,63] Early studies have focused on mutant hybridoma lines, which fail to express TCR on their cell surface, and on transfection studies using complementary DNA for the different chains in the receptor; but recently, Wucherpfennig and colleagues have developed an elegant in vitro translation and assembly system that has clarified a number of important issues.[54,55]

Experiments in a nonlymphoid cell system[67] have shown that TCR-α can assemble with CD3 δ and ε but not CD3 γ

and ζ. In contrast, the TCR-β chain can assemble with any of the CD3 chains except the ζ chain. When the ζ chain was transfected with either α or β chain genes, or any of the three CD3 chains, no pairwise interaction occurred. Only when all six complementary DNAs were cotransfected was it shown that the ζ chain could be coprecipitated with the other chains.[67] Based on these data, a model has been proposed that suggests that TCR-α pairs with CD3 δ and ε chains and that TCR-β pairs with the CD3 γ and ε chains in the completed molecule. The ζ chain is thought to join the TCR and other CD3 polypeptides in that last stage of assembly.

Pulse-chase experiments have shown that all six chains are assembled in the endoplasmic reticulum (ER), transported to the Golgi apparatus, and then transferred to the plasma membrane. It also appears that the amount of ζ chain is rate limiting, as it is synthesized at only 10% the level of the other chains. This results in the vast majority of newly synthesized α, β, or CD3 components being degraded within 4 hours of their synthesis. The remaining nondegraded chains are long lived due to the formation of complete TCR/CD3 complexes with the limiting ζ chain.[68] TCR/CD3 lacking CD3 ζ chains migrate through the ER and Golgi intact but then are transported to and degraded in the lysosomes. The immunologic significance of this pre-Golgi degradation pathway is most evident in CD4+CD8+ thymocytes where, despite high levels of synthesis of both messenger ribonucleic acid and protein for all the TCR, CD3, and ζ chains, surface expression is relatively low. The TCR chains in immature thymocytes seem to be selectively degraded.[68] Thus posttranslation regulation appears to be an important means of controlling the cell surface expression of TCR heterodimers.

The TCR and CD3 γ, δ, and ε chains contain ER retention signals.[68,69] If the γ and δ signals are removed, then the chains are transported through the Golgi and rapidly degraded in the lysosomes. In contrast, removal of the CD3 ε ER retention signal allows this chain, and any associated chains, to be transported to the cell surface. Thus, association of the TCR and other CD3 chains with ε renders their ER retention signals inoperative. However, the ε ER retention signal remains functional. This prevents the surface expression of partial complex intermediaries until CD3 ζ is incorporated into the complex, which then masks the ε ER retention signal and allows the transport of mature complexes to the cell surface.

The overall stoichiometry of the αβ TCR/CD3 complex is controversial. The work of Call and colleagues[57] has shown the relationships between different CD3 dimers (γε, δε, and ζ ζ) and a single TCR αβ heterodimer (as shown in Fig. 11.3). Using mutagenesis, they found very specific interactions based on the positive charges in each TCR transmembrane domain with complementary negative charges in the transmembrane domains of the different CD3 components. The two positively charged residues of TCR-α mediate interactions with the negatively charged residues of the of CD3δε and CD3ζζ dimers, while the single positively charged residue of TCR-β mediates interactions with the negatively charged residues of CD3γε. In addition, their data suggest a highly ordered assembly process as they found that the TCR/CD3δε association facilitates the assembly of CD3γε into the complex and that the association of the TCR and CD3 heterodimers was a prerequisite for incorporation of CD3ζζ into the complex. Importantly, the data show that there is only one TCR heterodimer per nascent TCR/CD3 complex in their in vitro expression system.

In contrast, a number of groups have found evidence that there can be two TCR heterodimers in a given TCR/CD3 cluster on T-cell surfaces. In particular, Terhorst and colleagues[42] showed that in a T-T hybridoma, a monoclonal antibody against one TCR-αβ pair could comodulate a second αβ heterodimer. In addition, sucrose gradient centrifugation of TCR/CD3 showed a predicted molecular weight of 300 kDa, more than 100 kDa larger than expected from a minimal δ subunit complex (α, β, γ, δ, ε_2, ζ_2).[70] Another study suggesting that there are least two TCRs in a given CD3 complex is the Scatchard analysis indicating that the number of CD3ε molecules on a T-cell surface equals the number of αβ TCRs.[71–73] Finally, there is the work of Fernandez-Miguel et al.,[74] who showed that in T cells which have two transgenic TCR-β chains, antibodies to one Vβ can immunoprecipitate the other. It was also found that they are often close enough to allow fluorescence energy transfer, meaning that the two TCR-βs in a cluster are within 50 Angstroms of each other.[74] Interestingly, it appears that the TCR complexes with CD3 either have CD3 γ or CD3 δ, but not both, and these two

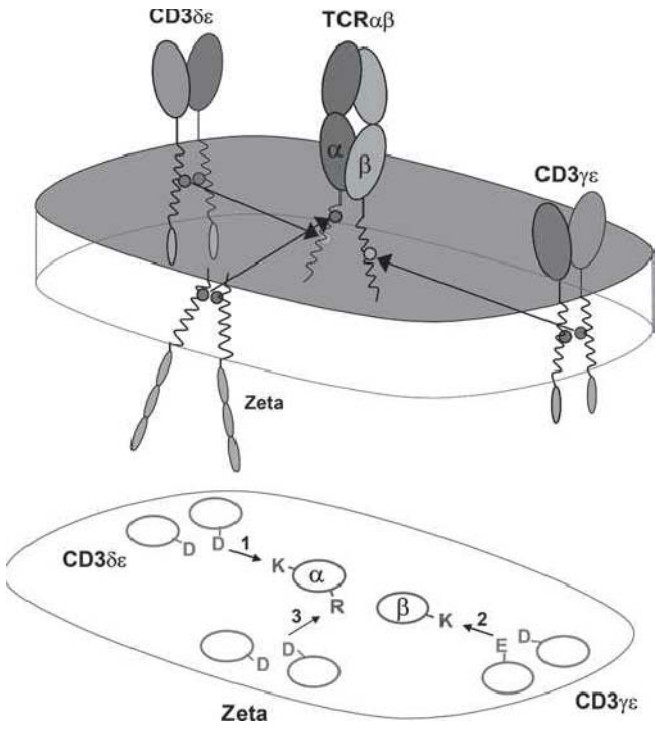


FIG. 11.3. A Model of the *αβ* T-Cell Receptor (TCR)-Cluster of Differentiation (CD)3 Complex. This shows the approximate positions of the *αβ* TCR chains and the CD3*α*, *δ*, *ε*, and *ζ* chains based on the membrane reconstitution and mutagenesis experiments of Call and Wucherpfennig.[55] More recent experiments suggest that the CD3 polypeptides may be somewhat more clustered on the side of the TCR heterodimer.[299]

receptor types are expressed in different ratios in different cells. These data may not be irreconcilable, because while the initial TCR/CD3 assembly may involve only one TCR, these may dimerize or multimerize later on the cell surface.[50,75]

The composition of TCR/CD3 complexes on γδ T cells is distinct from that of αβ T cells and changes with the activation state of the cell. Biochemical analysis showed that most murine γδ TCRs contain only CD3 γε dimers. Interestingly, a differentially glycosylated form of CD3 γ was found to associated with γδ TCRs dependent on the activation state of the cells.[76] In addition, while C3ζζ is incorporated into the complexes of naïve cells, activation results in the expression and incorporation of F_cεRI γ into the γδTCR complex.[76] Using quantitative immunofluorescence, Hayes and Love have derived data and proposed a model of murine γδTCR stoichiometry in which there are two CD3γε dimers, as well as one CD3ζ dimer in each TCR complex.[77] Taken together, these findings strongly suggest that signal transduction through the TCR will occur differently in γδ versus αβ T cells.

T-CELL RECEPTOR GENES

As shown in Figure 11.4, TCR gene segments are organized similarly to those of Igs and the same recombination machinery is responsible for joining separate V and D segments to a particular J and C. This was initially indicated by the fact that the characteristic seven and nine nucleotide conserved sequences adjacent to the V, D, and J regions with the 12 or 23 nucleotide spacing between them, first described for Ig genes, are also present in TCRs.[78] The most conclusive evidence of this common rearrangement mechanism is that both a naturally occurring recombination-deficient mouse strain (severe combined immune deficiency[79]) and mice engineered to lack recombinase activating genes 1[80] or 2[81] are unable to rearrange either *TCR* or Ig gene segments properly. Many of the other molecules involved in Ig gene rearrangement serve the same function in TCRs as well.[82] As with Igs, if the V region and J region gene segments are in the same transcriptional orientation, the intervening DNA is deleted during recombination. DNA circles of such material can be observed in the thymus,[83,84] the principal site of TCR recombination (see the following). In the case of *TCR*-β and *TCR*-δ, there is a single V region 3′ to the C in the opposite transcriptional orientation to J and C. Thus, rearrangement to these gene segments occurs via an inversion. Variable points of joining are seen along the *V*, *D*, and *J* gene segments as well as random nucleotide addition (N regions) in postnatal TCRs. The addition of several nucleotides in an inverted repeat pattern, referred to a P element insertion, at the V-J junction of the TCR-γ chains has also been observed.[85]

Organization of the T-Cell Receptor α/δ Locus

In humans and in mice, there is a single α-chain C-region gene that is composed of four exons encoding: 1) the constant region domain, 2) 16 amino acids including the cysteine that forms the interchain disulfide bond, 3) the transmembrane and intracytoplasmic domains, and 4) the 3′ untranslated region (see Fig. 11.4). The entire α/δ locus spans about 1.1 MB in both mice and humans. There are 50 different J-region gene segments upstream of the C-region in the murine locus. At least eight of these J-regions are nonfunctional because of in-frame stop codons or rearrangement and splicing signals that are likely to be defective. A similar number of α-chain J-regions are present in the human locus. This very large number of J-regions compared to the Ig loci may indicate that

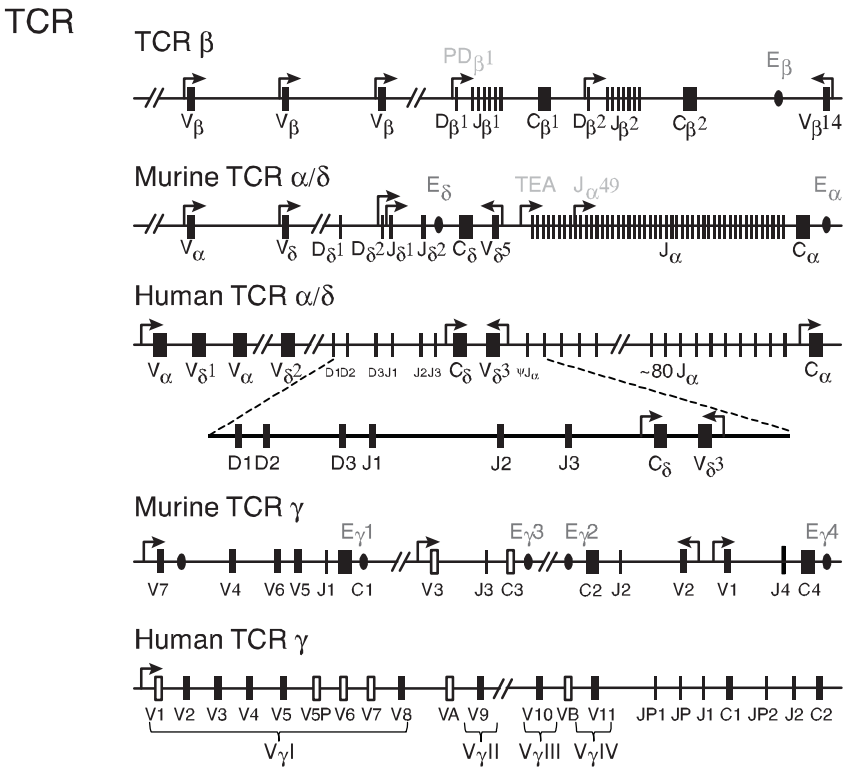


FIG. 11.4. T-Cell Receptor Gene Organization in Mice and Humans. Schematic of V, D, J, and C elements of the T-cell receptor genes. Transcriptional orientation is from *left to right*, except where noted. *E* designates enhancer elements, and *S* are silencer elements.

the functional diversity contributed by the J segment of the TCR (which constitutes a major portion of the complementarity-determining region [CDR]3 loop) makes an important contribution to antigen recognition (see the following).

In both the murine and human loci, the Cδ, Jδ, and two Dδ gene segments are located between the Vα and Jα gene segments. In the murine system, there are two Jδ and two Dδ gene segments on the 5′ side of Cδ and the Cδ exons are approximately 75 kb upstream of the Cα gene and approximately 8 kb upstream of the most 5′ known Jα gene segments. The human organization is similar, with three Dα gene segments and three Jδs. Surprisingly, in both species all of the D elements can be used in one rearranged gene rather than alternating as is the case with TCR-β or IgH. That is, in mice one frequently finds Vδ D_1, D_2, and Jδ rearrangements,[86] and in humans Vδ, D_1, D_2, D_3, and Jδ.[87] This greatly increases the junctional or CDR3 diversity that is available, especially because of the potential for N-region addition in between each gene segment. This property makes TCR-δ the most diverse of any of the antigens receptors known, with approximately 10^{12} to 10^{13} different amino acid sequences in a relatively small (10 to 15 amino acid) region.[86] The implications for this and comparisons with other antigen receptor genes are discussed subsequently.

The location of Dδ, Jδ, and Cδ genes between Vα and Jα gene segments suggests that TCR-δ and -α could share the same pool of V gene segments. While there is some overlap in V gene usage, in the murine system, four of the commonly used Vδ genes (Vδ1, Vδ2, Vδ4, Vδ5) are very different than known Vα sequences and they have not been found to associate with Cα.[88] The other four Vδ gene families overlap with or are identical to Vα subfamilies (Vδ3, Vδ6, Vδ7, and Vδ8, with Vα6, Vα7, Vα4, and Vα11, respectively).

The mechanisms that account for the preferential usage of certain gene segments to produce δ versus α chain are not known. While some Vδ genes are located closer to the Dδ and Jδ fragments than Vα genes (such as Vδ1), other Vδs (such as Vδ6) are rarely deleted by Vα Jα rearrangements and thus seem likely to be located 5′ of many Vα gene segments.

One of the Vδ gene segments, Vδ5, is located approximately 2.5 kb to the 3′ of Cδ in the opposite transcriptional orientation and rearranges by inversion. Despite its close proximity to Dδ Jδ gene segments, Vδ5 is not often found in fetal γδ T cells. Instead, the Vδ5 → Dδ rearrangement predominates in adult γδ T cells.

An implicit characteristic of the α/δ gene locus is that a rearrangement of Vα to Jα deletes the entire D-J-C core of the δ-chain locus. In many αβ T cells, the α-chain locus is rearranged on both chromosomes and thus no TCR δ could be made. In most cases, this is due to Vα → Jα rearrangement, but evidence suggesting an intermediate step in the deletion of TCR-δ has been reported.[89] This involves rearrangements of an element termed T early alpha (TEA) to a pseudo-Jα 3′ of Cδ. The rearrangement of TEA to this psuedo-Jα would eliminate the δ-chain locus in αβ T cells. Gene targeting of the TEA element resulted in normal levels of αβ and γδ T cells, but usage of the most Jαs was severely restricted,[90] suggesting that its function is to govern the accessibility of the most proximal 5′ Jαs for recombination.

Organization of the T-Cell Receptor β Locus

The entire human 685 kb β chain gene locus was originally sequenced by Hood and coworkers[91] (Fig. 11.5). One interesting feature is the tandem nature of J_β-C_β in the *TCR*-β locus. This arrangement is preserved in all higher vertebrate species that have been characterized thus far (mouse, human, chicken, frog). The two C_β coding sequences are identical in the mouse and nearly so in humans and other species. Thus it is unlikely that they represent two functionally distinct forms of C_β. However, the J_β clusters have relatively unique sequences, and thus this may be a mechanism for increasing the number of J_β gene segments. Together with the large number of Jα gene segments, there is far more combinatorial diversity (Jα × Jβ = 50 × 12 = 600) provided by J regions in αβ TCRs than in Igs.

Most of the V-regions are located upstream of the joining and constant regions and in the same transcriptional orientation as the D and J gene element, and rearrange to DβJβ gene via deletion. Similar to the case of Vδ5, a single Vβ gene, Vβ14 is located 3′ to C-regions and in the opposite transcriptional orientation, thus rearrangements involving Vβ14 occur via inversion.

In the NZW strain of mouse, there is a deletion in the β chain locus that spans from Cβ1, up to and including the Jβ 2 cluster.[92] In SJL, C57BR and C57L mice, there is a large deletion[93] in the V-region locus from Vδ5-Vβ9. These mice

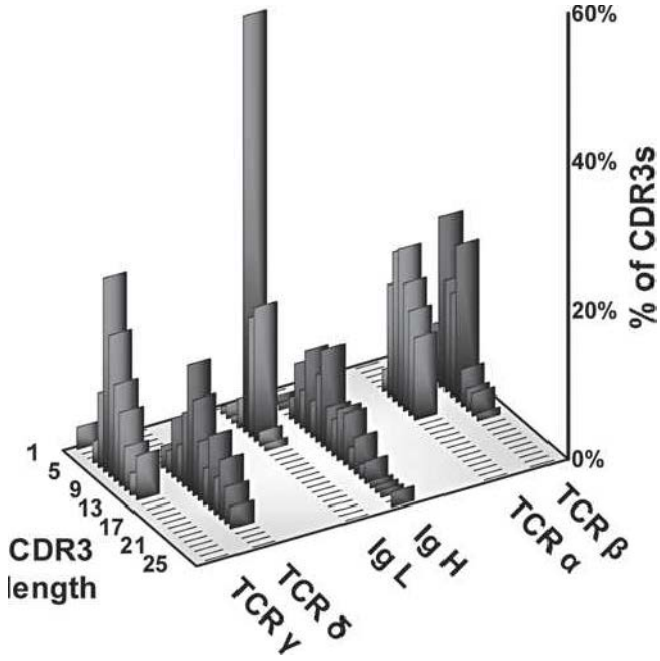


FIG. 11.5. Complementarity-Determining Region (CDR)3 Length Analysis of T-Cell Receptor (TCR) Polypeptides versus Immunoglobulin (Ig) Heavy and Light Chains. These data, modified from Rock et al.,[129] show that whereas TCR-α and -β CDR3 regions are relatively uniform with respect to each other, the other antigen receptor pairs show a marked asymmetry. Specifically, both Ig light chains (κ and λ) show very short CDR3s, as do TCR-γ chains. In contrast, both IgH and TCR S TCRs are quite heterogeneous and tend to be longer. These data suggests that $\gamma\delta$ TCRs have a more antibody-like structure and binding properties. This has been borne out by subsequent analysis (see text).

also express a V gene, Vβ17, that is not expressed in other strains of mice. Deletion of about half of the V genes (in SJL, C57BR and C57L mice) does not seem to have any particular effect on the ability of these mice to mount immune responses whereas mice that have deleted the $J_\beta 2$ cluster show impaired responses.[94]

Organization of the T-Cell Receptor γ Locus

The organization of the mouse and human γ-chain loci are shown in Figure 11.4. The human γ genes span about 150 kb[85] and are organized in a fashion similar to that of the β chain locus with two JγCγ regions. There is more than one nomenclature commonly used to describe the γ chain genes.[85,96–98] Here, we use that of Lefranc and Rabbitts[99] and Tonegawa and colleagues[85] for the human and mouse γ chains, respectively. The organization of the human γ chain genes consists an array of Vγs in which at least six of the V-regions are pseudogenes is located 5′ to these JγCγ clusters, and each of the V genes are potentially capable of rearranging to any of the five J-regions. The sequences of the two human Cγ regions are very similar overall and only differ significantly in the second exon. In Cγ2, this exon is duplicated two or three times and the cysteine that forms in the interchain disulfide bond is absent. Thus, Cγ2-bearing human T cells have an extra large γ-chain (55,000 MW) that is not disulfide bonded to its δ-chain partner.

The organization of the murine γ chain genes is very different than that of the human genes in that there are three separate rearranging loci that span about 205 kb.[100,101] Of four murine Cγ genes, Cγ3 is apparently a pseudogene in BALB/c mice, and the Jγ3 Cγ3 region is deleted in several mouse strains including C57 Bl/10. Cγ1 and Cγ2 are very similar in coding sequences. The major differences between these two genes is in the five amino acid deletion in the Cγ2 gene that is located in the C II exon at the amino acid terminal of the cysteine residue used for the disulfide formation with the δ chain. The Cγ4 gene differs significantly in sequences from the other Cγ genes (in 66% overall amino acid identity). In addition, the Cγ4 sequences contains a 17 amino acid insertion (compared to Cγ1) in the C II exon located at similar position to the five amino acid deletions in the Cγ2 gene.[101a] Each Cγ gene is associated with a single Jγ gene segment. The sequences of Jγ1 and Jγ2 are identical at the amino acid level, whereas Jγ4 differs from Jγ1 and Jγ2 at 9 out of 19 amino acid residues.

The murine Vγ genes usually rearrange to the Jγ Cγ gene that is most proximal and in the same transcriptional orientation. Thus Vγ1 rearranges to Jγ4; Vγ2 to Jγ2; and Vγ4, Vγ5, Vγ6, and Vγ7 to Jγ1. Interestingly, some Vγ genes are rearranged and expressed preferentially during γδ T-cell ontogeny and in different adult tissues as well.[101] In particular, Vγ5+ and Vγ6+ T cells are generated in the fetal thymus with very limited/no junctional diversity. Instead, the adult thymus produces γδ T cells expressing Vγ1, Vγ2, Vγ4, and Vγ7 gene segments with highly diverse junctional sequences. Moreover, γδ T cells that localize to the secondary lymphoid organs tend to express Vγ4, Vγ1, and Vγ2, whereas those that localize to the intestinal epithelium express Vγ7.[88,102–106] There are also reports suggesting that some intestinal epithelial γδ T cells develop extrathymically.[107] Regardless, it has been suggested that the Vγ gene rearrangement is a programmed process.[108,109]

Control of Transcription and Rearrangement

It has become increasingly apparent that transcriptional accessibility and rearrangement of TCR and Ig loci are closely linked, following the early work of Alt and Yancopoulous.[110] Factors governing accessibility and rearrangement include histone methylation,[111–114] DNA methlyation, and the presence of enhancer and specific promoter elements.[115] Even specific variations in the recombination signal sequences have been shown to elicit specific biases in V(D)J joining.[86] With respect to enhancer elements in the TCR loci, these were first identified in the TCR-β locus, 3′ of Cβ2,[116,117] and subsequently for the other TCR loci as well,[115] as indicated in Figure 11.4. These TCR enhancers all share sequence similarities with each other. Some of the transcriptional factors that bind to the TCR genes are also found to regulate Ig gene expressions. It has been shown that TCR-α enhancer (Eα) is not only important for normal rearrangement and expression for the α chain locus but also is required for the normal expression level of mature TCR-δ transcripts.[118] Also interesting is the work of Lauzurica and Krangel,[119,120] who have shown that a human TCR-δ enhancer-containing minilocus in transgenic mice is able to rearrange equally well in αβ T cells as in αδ T cells but that an Eα-containing construct was only active in αβ lineage T cells. Similar to Ig genes, promoter sequences are located 5′ to the V gene segments. Although D → J_β rearrangement and transcription occur fairly often in B cells and in B-cell tumors,[121] V_β rearrangement and/or transcription appears highly specific to T cells. In addition to enhancers, there also appear to be "silencer" sequences 3′ of Cα[122,123] and in the Cγ1 locus.[124] It has been suggested that these "repressor sites" could turn off the expression of either of these genes, influencing T-cell differentiation toward either the αβ or the γδ T-cell lineage.

The murine TCR Cγ1 gene cluster comprises four closely linked Vγ gene segments, in the order Vγ7, 4, 6, and 5, which rearrange to a single common downstream J gene segment, Jγ1 (see Fig. 11.4). In early fetal thymocytes, rearrangements of Vγ5 and Vγ6 genes predominate, and the resulting Vγ3+ and Vg4+ cells migrate to the skin or reproductive tissue, respectively. Later in ontogeny, Vγ4 and Vγ7 rearrangements predominate, and cells expressing these V regions migrate from the adult thymus to the secondary lymphoid organs and the intestinal epithelium.[100,101] At least two *cis*-acting, enhancer/locus control region (LCR) elements are present in the Cγ1 cluster. One is a T cell–specific transcriptional enhancer, 3γEγ, located 3 kb downstream of the Cγ1 gene segment.[125] A second element, "has," was found between the Vγ7 and Vγ4 genes, based on DNAse I hypersensitivity.[126] Similar enhancers have also been found to be associated with the Cγ2 and Cγ3 genes.[95] Experiments suggest that simultaneous deletion of both enhancer elements in Cγ1 cluster severely diminishes TCR-γ transcription, but only modestly reduces TCR-γ gene rearrangement, while deletion of each element

separately has little effect.[127] In contrast to these results in thymocytes, deletion of "has" alone reduces transcription of one Vγ gene specifically in peripheral γδ T cells. Thus, the two elements not only exhibit functional redundancy in thymocytes but also have unique functions in other settings.

Allelic Exclusion

In Igs, normally only one allele of the heavy chain locus and one of the light chain alleles is productively rearranged and expressed, a phenomenon termed "allelic exclusion." With respect to αβ TCR expression, while TCR-β exhibits allelic exclusion,[128] TCR-α seems much less constrained,[129,130] and many mature T cells express two functional TCR-α chains. As the chances of forming an in-frame joint with any antigen receptor is only one in three, the probability that a T cell would have two productively rearranged TCRαs is only ⅓ × ⅓ = ⅑, or 11%. However, even when this happens, the two TCR-α chains may not form heterodimers equally well with the single TCR-β that is expressed; thus, only one heterodimer may be expressed. But this simple calculation is complicated by the likelihood that only thymocytes that make at least one productive TCR rearrangement of each type will have a chance at maturation, which would eliminate almost half of the T cells (four-ninths, which is the product of a two-thirds chance of failure on one chromosome, followed by the same failure rate on the second). Secondly, it has been found that there is a mechanism called receptor editing, which means that a given rearrangement that is not productive, either because of an out-of-frame joint or for reasons of self reactivity, can induce a V region further 5′ or "upstream" of the initial VJ joint to rearrange to one of the remaining Jas.[131] In any event, it has been reported that one-third of human T cells express two TCRs,[132] which is slightly higher than what is expected from the probabilities discussed previously (approximately 20%), perhaps reflecting the effect of receptor editing.

There also appears to be an important role for the pre-TCR heterodimer (eg, pre-Tα:TCR-β) in blocking further TCR-β rearrangement and thus ensuring allelic exclusion at that locus.[133,134] In particular, pre-Tα–deficient mice had a significant increase in the number of cells with two productive TCR=β rearrangements, compared with wild-type mice.[133]

T-Cell Receptor Diversity

Although the basic organization and V(D)J recombination machinery are shared between TCR loci and Igs, there are a number of striking differences. One of these is somatic hypermutation. In antibodies, this form of mutation typically raises the affinities of antigen specific Igs several order of magnitude, typically from the micromolar (10^{-6} M) to the nanomolar (10^{-9} M) range.[135,136] We now know that most cell-surface receptors that bind ligands on other cell surfaces, including TCRs, typically have affinities in the micromolar range (see later section) but that they compensate for this relatively low affinity by engaging multiple receptors simultaneously (eg, increasing the valency) and by functioning in a confined, largely two-dimensional volume (eg, between two cells). Cells employing such receptors require weak, but highly specific, interactions so that they can disengage quickly.[137,138] The rapid off-rates seen with TCRs (see later section) may even amplify the effects of small numbers of ligands.[139,140]

There has also been no enduring evidence for a naturally secreted form of either an αβ or γδ TCR. Here again, it can be argued that such a molecule would have no obvious use as the affinities are too low to be very useful in solution. Thus, for most TCRs, the concentration of protein would have to be extremely high in order to achieve an effect similar to soluble antibodies (in the milligram/milliliter range).

A third mechanism seen in antibodies but not TCRs is C_H switching, which allows different Ig isotypes to maintain a given V region specificity and associate it with different constant regions that have different properties in solution (such as complement fixation, basophil binding, etc.). As there is no secreted form of the TCR, this feature would also lack any obvious utility.

Where TCRs are equal—and in fact generally superior—to Igs is in the sheer number of possible receptors that can be generated through recombination alone. Table 11.1 summarizes the potential V region diversity that TCRs are capable of when the number of V region gene segments is multiplied by D, J, and N region diversity. It can be seen from this table that while the V region number is generally lower in murine TCRs, particularly TCR-δ and TCR-γ, this is more than compensated for by the degree of junctional diversity (where V and J or V, D, and J come together) and chain combinations, such that overall TCRs have orders of magnitude greater potential diversity than Igs. This junctional region corresponds to CDR3 as originally defined by Kabat and Wu for Igs.[141] With respect to αβ TCRs, the concentration of diversity in this region (in both chains) can be explained by the key role that these sequences play in recognizing diverse peptides in MHC molecules (see later section), as supported by mutagenesis and structural studies. For γδ TCRs and Igs, however, the diversity is almost all in just one chain (TCRδ and IgH, respectively), and the implications of this are discussed subsequently. Recent work using high throughput sequencing techniques are in remarkable agreement with these crude early estimates of TCR-β diversity.[142]

The Complementarity-Determining Region 3 Length Distributions of γδ T-Cell Receptors are More Similar to Those of Immunoglobulin than to Those of αβ T-Cell Receptors

Because CDR regions are loops between different β strands of an Ig or TCR V region (see later section), the configurations they adopt are generally very sensitive to their length, such that a difference of even one amino acid may produce a significant change in the overall structure.[3,143] A comparison of CDR3 length distributions between the αβ TCRs, γδ TCRs, and Igs (see Fig. 11.5)[144,145] showed that those of TCR-α and -β have a very constrained distribution of lengths and that these are nearly identical in size. These length constraints may reflect a requirement for both the α

TABLE 11.1 Sequence Diversity in T-Cell Receptor and Immunoglobin Genes

	Immunoglobulin		TCR-α/β		TCR-γ/δ	
	H	κ	α	β	γ	δ
Variable segments	250–1,000	250	100	25	7	10
Diversity segments	10	0	0	2	0	2
Ds read in all frames	Rarely	—	—	Often	—	Often
N-region addition	V-D, V-J	none	V-J	V-D, V-J	V-J	V-D1, D1-D2, D1-J
Joining segments	4	4	50	12	2	2
Variable region combinations	62,500–250,000		2,500		70	
Junctional combinations	$\sim 10^{11}$		$\sim 10^{15}$		$\sim 10^{18}$	

Calculated potential amino acid sequence diversity in TCR and immunoglobulin genes without allowance for somatic mutation. The approximate number of V gene segments are listed for the four TCR polypeptides and contrasted with immunoglobulin heavy and light chains. CDR1 and CDR2 are encoded within the V gene segments. The pairing of random V regions generates the combinatorial diversity listed as "variable region combinations." Because there are fewer TCR V gene segments than immunoglobulin V gene segments, the combinatorial diversity is lower in TCRs than in immunoglobulins. Estimates for the number of unique sequences possible within the junctional region are contrasted for TCRs and immunoglobulins. Amino acids within CDR3 are encoded almost entirely within the D and/or J region gene segments. (The last few amino acids encoded by a TCR V gene segment can contribute to diversity within the TCR CDR3-equivalent region, but the effects of these residues on junctional diversity are not included in these calculations.) The mechanisms for generation of diversity within the junctional region that are used for this calculation include usage of different D and J gene segments. N region addition up to six nucleotides at each junction, variability in the 3′ joining position in V and J gene segments, and translation of D region in different reading frames. Numbers are corrected for out-of-frame joining codon redundancy and N-region mimicry of germ-line sequences. Modified from Elliott et al.[88]

CDR, complementarity-determining region; TCR, T-cell receptor.

and β chains of TCRs to contact both the MHC molecules and bound peptides on the same plane, as borne out by structural studies (see later section). In contrast, the CDR3s of Ig heavy chains are long and variable, whereas those of Ig light chains are short and constrained. This may reflect the fact that Igs recognize both very small molecules (eg, haptens) as well as very large ones (eg, proteins). Surprisingly, γδ TCR CDR3 length distributions are similar to those of Igs in that the CDR3 lengths of TCR-δ chains are long and variable, whereas those of the TCR γ chains are short and constrained. Thus, on the basis of this measure of ligand recognition, one might expect γδ TCRs to be more similar to Igs than to αβ TCRs. This has been validated in subsequent biochemical and structural studies (see later sections).

Chromosomal Translocations and Disease

The chromosomal locations of the different TCR loci have been delineated in both mouse and humans, and the results are summarized in Table 11.2. One significant factor in cancers of hematopoietic cells are chromosomal translocations that result in the activation of genes normally turned off or the inactivation of genes that are normally turned on. Thus, B- or T-lymphocyte neoplasia is frequently associated with inter- or intrachromosomal rearrangements of Ig or TCR loci or in some cases both.[146,147]

These translocations seem to mediated by the V(D)J recombinase machinery, indicating the inherent danger and need for tight regulation of this pathway. Such rearrangements are particularly common in the α/δ locus, perhaps because this locus spans the longest developmental window in terms of gene expression, with *TCR*-δ being the first and *TCR*-α the last gene to rearrange during T-cell ontogeny (as discussed in more detail in the following). In addition, the α/δ locus is in excess of 1 mb in size, and this provides a larger target for rearrangement than either TCR-β or TCR-γ. Interestingly, in humans, *TCR*-α/δ is on the same chromosome as the *IgH* locus and $V_H \rightarrow J_\alpha$ rearrangements (by inversion) have been observed in some human tumor material.[148,149] The functional significance of this is not known.

Particularly frequent is the chromosome 8–14 translocation [t(8;14) (q24;q11)] that joins the α/δ locus to the c-myc gene, analogous to the c-myc → IgH translocation in many mouse myeloma tumors and in Burkitt lymphomas in humans. In one cell line, a rearrangement occurred between the Jα-region coding sequences, and a region 3′ of c-myc.[150] In both B- and T-cell malignancies, the translocation of c-myc into IgH or TCR-α/β appears to increase the expression of c-myc and may be a major factor in the unregulated cell growth that characterizes cancerous cells. Other

TABLE 11.2 Chromosomal Locations of T-Cell Receptor, Immunoglobulin, and Related Loci in Mouse and Human

	Mouse Chromosome	Human Chromosome
TCR-α	14	14(q11–q12)
TCR-δ	14	14(q11–q12)
IgH	12	14(qter)
TCR-β	6	7(q35)
CD4	6	12
CD8	6	2(p11)
Ig*k*	6	62(p12)
TCR-γ	13	7(p14)
CD3-γ	9	11(q23)
CD3-δ	9	11(q23)
CD3-ε	9	11(q23)
CD3-ζ	1	1
Thy-1	9	11(q23)
Ig-λ	16	22(q11.2)
MHC	17	6(p21)
Pre-Tα	17	6

CDR, complementarity-determining region; Ig, immunoglobulin; MHC, major histocompatibility complex; TCR, T-cell receptor.

putative proto-oncogenes that have been found translocated into the TCR-α/β locus are the LIM domain–containing transcription factors Ttg-1[151] and Ttg-2,[152,153] which are involved in neural development; the helix-loop-helix proteins Lyl-1[154] and Scl,[155] which are involved in early hematopoietic development; and the homeobox gene Hox 11,[156] which is normally active in the liver. How these particular translocations contribute to malignancy is unknown, but they presumably causes aberrations in gene expression that contribute to cell growth or escape from normal regulation. In patients with T-cell leukemia infected with the human T-cell lymphotrophic-I virus, there are large numbers of similar translocations; it is thought that human T-cell lymphotrophic-I itself is not directly leukemogenic but acts by causing aberrant rearrangements in the T cell that it infects, some of which become malignant.

Another disorder, which frequently associates with TCR and Ig locus translocation, is ataxia telangiectasia, an autosomal recessive disorder characterized by ataxia, vascular telangiectasis, immunodeficiency, increased incidence of neoplasia, and an increased sensitivity to ionizing radiation. Peripheral blood lymphocytes from patients with ataxia telangiectasia have an especially high frequency of translocations involving chromosomes 7 and 14.[157] These sites correspond to the TCR-γ, -β, and -α loci, and the Ig heavy chain locus. Thus, it appears as though one of the characteristics of patients with ataxia telangiectasia is a relatively error-prone rearrangement process that indiscriminately recombines genes that have the TCR and Ig rearrangement signals.[158]

The Structure of αβ and γδ T-Cell Receptors

As discussed previously, the sequences of TCR polypeptides show many similarities to Igs, and thus it has long been suggested that both αβ and γδ heterodimers would be antibody-like in structure.[24,25,159] The similarities between TCRs and Igs include the number and spacing of specific cysteine residues within domains, which in antibodies form intrachain disulfide bonds. Also conserved are many of the inter- and intradomain contact residues and, in addition, secondary structure predictions are largely consistent with an Ig-like "β barrel" structure. This consists of three to four antiparallel β strands on one side of the "barrel" facing a similar number on the other side, with a disulfide bridge (usually) connecting the two β "sheets" (sets of β strands in the same plane). All Ig variable and constant region domains have this structure, with slight variations in the number of β strands in variable region domains (by convention including V, D, and J sequences) compared with constant domains.

αβ T-Cell Receptor Structure

Efforts to derive x-ray crystal structures of TCR heterodimers and fragments of heterodimers presented many technical hurdles.[160] One difficulty is that structure determination required engineering the molecules into a soluble form. A second problem is that many of the TCRs are heavily glycosylated, and it was necessary to eliminate most or all of the carbohydrates on each chain to achieve high-quality crystals. An alternative is to express soluble TCRs in insect cells, where they have compact N-linked sugars, or in *Escherichia coli*, where they are unglycosylated. The first successes in TCR crystallization come from the laboratory of Mariuzza and collaborators who solved the structure of first a Vβ Cβ polypeptide[161] and then a Vα fragment.[162] In the following year, the first complete αβ TCR structures were solved.[163,164] The structure of the 2C TCR, by Garcia and colleagues, is shown in Figure 11.6.[163] In general, as predicted from sequence homologies, these domains are all Ig-like, with the classical β-barrel structure in evidence in all three domains. At each end of the barrel in each V-region domain there are four loops between the β sheets, three of which form the CDRs of Igs, which are numbered in Figure 11.6. The fourth loop, between the D and E strands, has been implicated in superantigen binding. The six CDR loops from the two variable domains form the antigen-binding surface in both Igs and TCRs. The major anomaly in terms of similarity of TCRs to Igs is the structure of the Cα.[165] Cα consists of one-half of the classical β-barrel, that is, one set (or "sheet") of β strands while the rest of the partially truncated domain exhibits random coils. This type of structure is unprecedented in the Ig gene family. The functional significance of such a variant structure in unknown, but it has been suggested that this incompletely formed Ig-like domain may be responsible for the observed lability of TCR-α, and this may allow greater flexibility in the regulation of its expression. Another possible explanation is that this configuration is designed to accommodate one or more of the CD3 molecules.

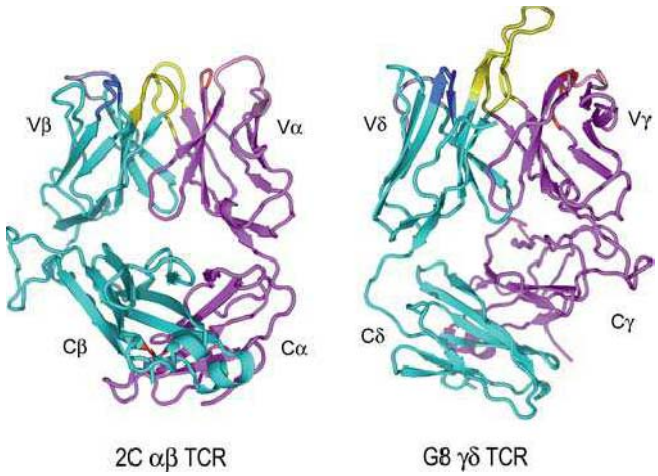


FIG. 11.6. Ribbon Diagrams of the T-Cell Receptor (TCR) Structures. This shows the structures of the 2C*αβ* TCR[150] versus the G8*γδ* TCR.[153] The TCR-*β* and the -*γ* chains are in *cyan*, and the TCR-*α* and -*γ* chains are in *vermillion*. The complementarity-determining regions (CDRs) of both are in *yellow*. The very long TCR-*δ* CDR3 in G8, which binds the T10/T22 ligands, is very apparent here but is shorter in most other *γδ* TCRs. Note the different C-region interactions with these TCRs and the deviations from the classic "*β* barrel" structure in both C*α* and C*δ*. The prominent C*β* loop to the left is also unusual and may mediate interactions with CD3 or other molecules on the T cell surface. (Figure courtesy of Dr. K.C. Garcia)

The now large number of solved αβ TCR structures can be compared to the three γδ heterodimers (discussed in more detail in the following), and while these also resemble the Fab fragment of an antibody, there are several features that are unique to the αβ molecules, which may be significant. These include the following:

1) In one structure,[165] four out of seven N-linked sugars diffracted to high resolution, indicating that they are not free to move very much and thus are likely to play a structural role, particularly in Cα:Cβ interactions. This correlates with mutagenesis data indicating that certain Cα sugars cannot be eliminated without abolishing protein expression[166] and the disordered state of a Cα domain in the structure of a TCR lacking glycosylation.[164]
2) There is significantly more contact between Vβ and Cβ and between Vα and Cα than in the equivalent regions of antibodies.
3) The geometry of the interaction of Vα and Vβ more closely resembles that of the C_H3 domains of antibodies than V_HV_L.
4) Between the CDR3 loops of Vα and Vβ, there is a pocket that can (and does in at least one case[165]) accommodate a large side chain from the peptide bound to an MHC.

γδ T-Cell Receptor Structure

There are now three γδ heterodimer structures: a γδ TCR from a human T-cell clone G115,[167] which can be activated by natural or synthetic pyrophosphomonoesters, a γδ TCR from the murine T cell clone G8 together with its ligand, the nonclassical MHC class I molecule T22,[168] and a human MHC class I chain–related–reactive γδ TCR (δ1A/B-3),[169a] which was determined as a single-chain Fv construct. The G8 structure is shown in Figure 11.6, alongside the 2C αβ TCR. The structure of a single human Vδ domain also has been determined.[169] The Vδ domain of the G115 structure is similar to the isolated Vδ domain and the quaternary structure of G8 is similar to that of G115.[168]

The most distinctive feature of both the G115 and the G8 TCR, when compared with αβ TCRs and Igs, is that the C domains "swing out" from under the V domains. This unusual shape is highlighted by both a small elbow angle of 110 degrees, defined as the angle between the pseudo twofold symmetry axes that relate V to V and C to C, and a small V-C interdomain angle. This contrasts with an average of 149 degrees for αβ TCR structures. The small angle between the Vγ and Cγ domains shifts both Cδ and Cγ to one side. Moreover, the molecular surfaces of the constant domains are different than those of αβ TCRs with no clear similarities either in the shape or the nature of the CαCβ and CγCδ surfaces; there are only a few solvent-exposed residues that are conserved in both Cβ and Cγ domains as well. Thus, it is unclear where or how the extracellular domains of the CD3 subunits interact with the extracellular portions of γδ TCRs compared with αβ TCRs. This may explain why the CD3 components of αβ TCRs are so different from those of γδ TCRs.

In terms of ligand binding surfaces, we note that the Vδ CDR3 of G8 protrudes significantly away from the other CDRs, as shown in Figure 11.6. This has significance in that this is the major region of contact with the T22 ligand (see later section). In the case of G115, both Vδ and Vγ CDR3 loops protrude from the rest of the putative binding surface and create a cleft between them. Portions of the CDR1γ and δ and CDR2γ combine with the clefts between the CDR3 loops to form a pocket, which is surrounded by positively charged amino acid residues contributed by CDR2γ and δ, and CDR3γ. The jagged surface of this TCR resembles the surface of an antibody that binds a small-molecule antigen. Although this would be consistent with the supposition that this TCR binds the negatively charged phosphate compounds,[170] direct binding between the TCR and phosphoantigen including crystal-soaking and cocrystallization experiments have not been successful. Instead, a soluble G115 was found to bind a soluble form of adenotriphosphate (ATP) synthase F1 and apolipoprotein A-1.[171]

While the δ1A/B-3 TCR maintains an overall fold similar to the other γδ TCR structures, it was noted that unlike the G115 and G8 CDR3 regions, which are protruding out, the δ1A/B-3 CDR loops together generate a nearly flat surface on the combining site. This difference is anticipated, as the CDR3 length distribution of the TCRδ chains is quite variable as discussed previously, and like antibodies should have a broad range of binding site shapes.

αβ T-CELL RECEPTOR–LIGAND RECOGNITION

Binding Characteristics

Although it has long been established that this type of T cell generally recognizes a peptide bound to an MHC molecule, a formal biochemical demonstration that this was due to TCR binding to a peptide/MHC complex took many years to establish. Part of the difficulty in obtaining measurements of this type has been the intrinsically membrane-bound nature of MHC and TCR molecules. Another major problem is that the affinities are relatively low, in the micromolar range, which is too unstable to measure by conventional means.

To some extent, the problem of measuring the interactions of membrane-bound molecules can be circumvented by expressing soluble forms of TCR and MHC, which is also essential for structural studies (see previous discussion). For TCRs, many successful strategies have been described, including replacing the transmembrane regions with signal sequences for glycolipid linkage,[172] expressing chains without transmembrane regions in either insect or mammalian cells,[173] or a combination of cysteine mutagenesis and *E. coli* expression.[164] Unfortunately, no one method seems to work for all TCR heterodimers, although the combination of insect cell expression and leucine zippers at the c-terminus to stabilize heterodimer expression has been successful in many cases.[174] The production of soluble forms of MHC molecule has a much longer history, starting with the enzymatic cleavage of detergent solubilized native molecules[175] as well as some of the same methods employed for TCR such as glycophosphatidylinositol (GPI) linkage,[176] *E. coli* expression and refolding,[177,178] and insect cell expression of truncated

(or leucine zippered) molecules.[179] One interesting variant that seems necessary for the stable expression of some class II MHC molecules in insect cells has been the addition of a covalent peptide to the N-terminus of the β chain.[180]

The first measurements of TCR affinities binding to peptide/MHC complexes were performed by Matsui et al.[181] and Weber et al.[182] Matsui and colleagues used a high concentration of soluble peptide/MHC complexes to block the binding of a labeled anti-TCR Fab fragment to T cells specific for those complexes, obtaining an equilibrium binding affinity (K_d) value of approximately 50 μM for several different T cells and two different cytochrome peptide/I-E^k complexes (as shown in Table 11.3). Weber and colleagues used a soluble TCR to inhibit the recognition of a flu peptide/I-E^d complex by a T cell and obtained a K_D value of approximately 10 μM. While these measurements were an important start in TCR biochemistry, they gave no direct information about the kinetics of TCR-ligand interactions. Fortunately, the development of surface plasmon resonance instruments, particularly the BIAcore™ (Pharmacia Biosensor, Uppsala, Sweden) with its remarkable sensitivity to weak macromolecular interactions,[183] has allowed rapid progress in this area. In this technique, one component is covalently cross-linked to a surface and then buffer containing the ligand is passed in solution over it. The binding of even approximately 5% of the surface-bound material is sufficient to cause a detectable change in the resonance state of gold electrons on the surface. This method allows the direct measurement of association and dissociation rates, that is, kinetic parameters, and also has the advantage of requiring neither cells nor radioactive labels. Recently, microcalorimetry has also been used to measure some TCR ligand affinities; and these analyses have confirmed the surface plasmon resonance (SPR) values,[184] but do not allow kinetic measurements. These and other data[138,160] showed definitively that TCR and peptide-loaded MHC molecules alone are able to interact and also that expression in a soluble form has not altered their ability to bind to each other. As shown in Table 11.3, SPR measurements show that while the on-rates of TCRs binding to peptide/MHC molecules vary from very slow (1,000 M sec) to moderately fast (200,000 M sec), their off-rates fall in a relatively narrow range (0.5 to 0.01 sec^{-1}) or a $t_{½}$ of 12 to 30 seconds at 25°C. This is in the general range of other membrane bound receptors that recognize membrane molecules on other cells,[137] but it has been noted that most TCRs have very slow on-rates,[138] which reflects a flexibility in the binding site that might help to foster cross-reactivity (see the following). In the case of a class I MHC–restricted TCR, 2C, this relatively fast off-rate may be stabilized (10-fold) if soluble CD8 is introduced,[165] but this result is controversial.[185] CD8 stabilization of TCR binding has been seen by Luescher et al. in cell-based TCR labeling assay[186]; however, no enhancement of TCR binding has been seen using soluble CD4[187] (see the following for more discussion of CD4 and CD8).

More recently, new methodologies have been utilized to measure TCR binding in its native state, that is, on a T-cell surface and interacting with peptide-MHC ligands on either an artificial bilayer[188] or on the surface of a red blood cell[189] "reporter." These types of measurements are important because studies of TCRs and peptide/MHCs binding in

TABLE 11.3 T-Cell Receptor-Ligand Binding

T Cell	Ligand	K_D (mM)	k_{on} ($M^{-1}s^{-1}$)	K_{off} (s^{-1})	Method	Reference
T_H Cells						
5C.C7	MCC/E^k	50	—	—	Anti-TCR comp.	166
2B4	MCC/E^k	50	—	—	Anti-TCR comp.	166
2B4	MCC/E^k	30	—	—	Anti-P/MHC comp.	166
2B4	MCC/E^k	90	600	0.057	BIA1	166
228.5	MCC 99E/E^k	50	—	—	Anti-TCR comp.	166
14.3d	Flu H1N1/E^d	~10	—	—	Sol. TCR	167
14.3d	SEC 1,2,3	5.4–18.2	>100,000	>0.1	BIA1	251
HA1.7	HA/DR1	>25	—	—	BIA1	300
HA1.7	SEB	0.82	13,000	0.001	BIA1	300
Tc cells						
2C	p2Ca/L^d	0.5	11,000	0.0055	Anti-TCR comp.	176
2C	p2/Ca/L^d	0.1	21,000	0.026	BIA1	301
2C	OL9/L^d	0.065	53,000	0.003	Labeled MHC	176
4G3	pOV/L^d	0.65	22,000	0.02	Labeled MHC	176
42.12	OVA/K^b	6.5	3,135	0.02	BIA4	179
2C	p2Ca/L^d	3.3	8,300	0.027	BIA1	208
HY	M80/D^b	23.4	6,200	0.145	BIA1	208
HY	CD8 α/β + M8/D^b	2.0	5,100	0.01	BIA1	208
2/C	CD8 α/β + p2Ca/L^d	0.32	1,200	0.0038	BIA1	208
T$\gamma\delta$ cells						
G8	T10/T22	0.13	65,000	0.0081	BIA1	274

BIA1, TCR amine coupled; BIA2, TCR cysteine coupled; BIA3, MHC-peptide amine coupled in competition experiment; BIA4, TCR coupled by using H57 antibody and MHC coupled via amine chemistry; MHC, major histocompatibility complex; P, peptide; sol., soluble; TCR, T-cell receptor.

solution only partially reflect what is happening between two membranes. This is because of the very severe constraints on binding that are present in this specialized environment. For one, it is likely that TCRs on T cells and peptide/MHCs on antigen-presenting cells are fixed into a fairly rigid alignment that maximizes their ability to bind to each other, as opposed to the same molecules in solution that are diffusing in all directions and for which only a fraction of collisions will result in a productive binding event. Secondly, binding is happening in a very small space/volume of liquid, making the effective concentration very high. While this environment is not strictly two-dimensional, Dustin and others have used this as a simplifying assumption with relative success. But a direct measurement of TCR affinity and kinetics has been made by Huppa and colleagues,[188] who used a fluorescent probe on an anti-TCR antibody to create a system in which this fluorophore could form a FRET pair with a complementary label on the c-terminus of the peptide that could emit photons of the appropriate wavelength only when the TCR bound its peptide-MHC ligand. This enabled precise measurements of the dissociation rate (koff) and affinity (KD) within an immunologic synapse, and these measurements could also be used to estimate an average association rate (kon). Another advantage of these measurements is that they can be done at 37°C, whereas most of the SPR measurements cited previously were performed at 25°C due to instrument limitations. Dissociation rates at higher temperatures are significantly faster. As expected from the previous discussion, the association rate was greatly accelerated approximately 100× over the solution rate, presumably because of the ideal orientation of the TCR and peptide/MHC with respect to each other. Not expected was an accelerated dissociation rate of 4 to 10 times faster. This turns out to be a function of actin polymerization and depolymerization activity within the T cell, as shown dramatically in the actin dynamics studies of Vale and colleagues.[190] Once this was inhibited, the dissociation rates within the synapse were quite close to the solution values.[191] Still, it is worth noting that TCR binding to peptide/MHC is even more unstable within an active synapse than the solution measurements have suggested, with half lives of less than 1 second in many cases.

A second experimental system that has been applied to the question of TCR binding in the context of cell-cell contact has been that of Chung and colleagues,[189] in which red blood cells coated with peptide-MHC complexes are brought into repeated contact with a T cell of the appropriate specificity. By visualizing the response of the peptide/MHC–coated red blood cell to different frequencies and durations of T-cell contact, one can infer parameters of TCR affinity, at least in the two-dimensional aspect.[192] While this system has worked well in describing integrin binding, it is indirect and it some ways contradicts results obtained with the FRET system of Huppa et al.[188] and even some of the basic properties determined in solution measurements. Nonetheless, it may be telling us important properties of cell-cell contact that are more difficult to discern with more directly molecular methods.

To what extent are we now able to predict a T-cell response based on the binding characteristic of its TCR to a ligand? One of the most intriguing discoveries concerning T-cell reactivity has been the phenomenon of altered peptide ligands. These are single amino acid variants of antigenic peptides that either change the nature or degree of the T-cell response (partial agonists) or prevent a response to a normally stimulating ligand (antagonists).[193,194] Discussions concerning the mechanism of these "altered peptide" responses have centered on whether they are due to some conformational phenomenon involving TCRs and/or CD3 molecules or to affinity or kinetic characteristics. With the data now available, we can now say that most, but not all, T-cell responses correlate well with the binding characteristics of their TCRs. In particular, Sykulev et al.[195] first noted that higher-affinity peptide variants elicited more robust T-cell responses. Subsequently, Matsui et al.[196] found that in a series of three agonist peptides increasing dissociation rates correlated with decreasing agonist activity. Lyons et al.[197] found that this correlation extended to antagonist peptides in the same antigen system (moth cytochrome c/I-E^k). They also showed that while an antagonist peptide might differ only slightly in affinity compared with the weakest agonist, its dissociation rate differed by 10-fold or more. This data in a class II MHC–restricted system is largely supported by the studies of Alam et al. in a class I MHC system,[198] who also saw a drop-off in affinities and an increase in off-rates (with one exception as noted in Table 11.2) with antagonist versus agonist ligands. In the cell-based TCR labeling system of Luescher and colleagues, a survey of related peptide ligands of varying potency also found a general, but not absolute, correlation between receptor occupancy and stimulatory ability.[199] Thus, while there is a general trend toward weaker T-cell responses and faster off-rates and lower affinities, this does not seem to be an absolute rule, and thus other factors may be important in some cases. Alternatively, Holler[200] has suggested that some or all of the discrepancies may derive from differences in peptide stability (in the MHC) between the relatively short (minutes) time scale of BIAcore analysis at 25°C compared with the much longer (days) cellular assays at 37°C. But this explanation probably only applies to a fraction of the anomalous cases in which TCR ligands fail to adhere to the "$t_{½}$ rule." In particular, Krogsgaard et al.[201] performed a very comprehensive survey of both known and newly derived cytochromic peptide antigens and found that almost half of the peptide-MHC ligands analyzed failed to exhibit a linear relationship between $t_{½}$ and T-cell stimulatory ability (Fig. 11.7). Extensive thermodynamic analyses of these ligands showed that one particular parameter, the change in heat capacity ($-\Delta Cp$), which reflects changes in conformation or flexibility upon binding, seems to be synergistic with $t_{½}$ in enhancing a ligand's stimulatory capacity. In fact, as shown in Figure 11.7, when ΔCp values are combined with $t_{½}$, the x axis values for the range of ligands correlate much better with T-cell stimulation. This suggests that ΔCp may be the "missing" variable in correlating ligand binding to stimulation.

How could a negative change in heat capacity synergize with the stability of binding? One possibility is that large conformational changes at the binding surface of a TCR that can occur when it engages peptide/MHC ligands (as

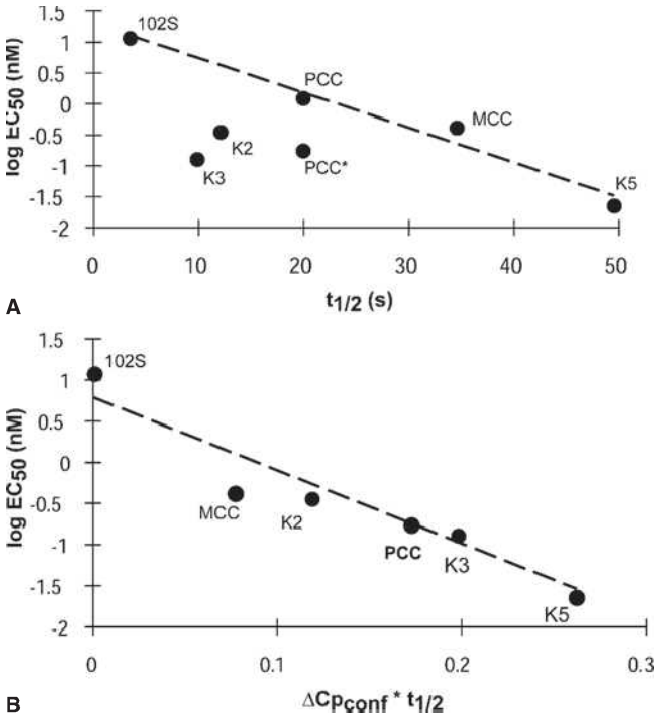


FIG. 11.7. Dissociation Rate and Heat Capacity with Peptide–Major Histocompatibility Complex (MHC) Ligands Both Influence T-Cell Activation. Data from Krogsgaard et al. show that where deviations from the general dependence of T-cell activation on dissociation rate occur, they may be compensated for by another factor, namely the heat capacity (ΔC_P) of the T-cell receptor (TCR)-peptide/MHC interaction. This is a measure of changes in mobility or conformation during the binding interaction and suggests that other binding parameters can influence TCR-mediated activation besides half-life.[184] **A:** The relationship between the half-maximal peptide concentration needed for T-cell activation (EC50) and the half-life ($t_{½}$) of the TCR binding to that particular ligand. In this series, three of the seven peptides tested (K2, K3, and PPC) do not seem as dependent on $t_{½}$ as the others (PCC* represents a correction for a lack of stability when bound to the MHC at 37°C). **B:** When ΔC_P is factored in, all of the peptides can be plotted on a line.

shown by structural studies; see the following) can translocate the TCR deeper into the membrane—as suggested by the "piston"[52,202] and "twist cap"[184] models—and trigger conformational changes in the CD3 signaling domains. Chakraborty and colleagues recently suggested another possibility for how conformational changes at the binding surface might exert their effect.[203] They found that in the context of membrane-membrane interactions, conformational changes in the surfaces of relatively rigid proteins (such as all but the CDR3 regions of TCRs appear to be) would act to increase the effective half-life of TCR-peptide/MHC interactions. Thus $t_{½}$ and ΔCp may be equivalent in the unique environment between two cell surfaces.

How might the relatively small differences in the binding characteristics of the ligands cause such different T-cell signaling outcomes as agonism or antagonism? As McKeithan[204] and Rabinowitz[205] have noted, a multistep system such as T-cell recognition has an inherent ability to amplify small differences in signals that are received on the cell surface to much larger differences at the end of the pathway, in this case gene transcription in the nucleus. Thus antagonism may occur at one threshold and an agonist response at another. Alternatively, an antagonist ligand may traverse the activation pathway just far enough to use up some critical substrate, as proposed by Lyons et al.[197] Yet another possibility that has also been suggested is that some antagonists may act even earlier by blocking TCR clustering at the cell surface.[206] Lastly, Germain and colleagues have found evidence that a feedback loop involving the phosphatase SHP-1 may act as an alternative pathway to inactivate TCR signaling of insufficient strength.[207,208]

Another controversy that relates to TCR binding characteristics is the "serial engagement" model of Valittutti and Lanzavecchia and colleagues,[139,209] which proposed that one way in which a small number of peptide/MHC complexes can initiate T-cell activation is by transiently binding many TCRs in a sequential fashion. While the dissociation rates reviewed here show that TCR binding is likely to be very transient, they do not in fact support the statement that more interactions are better. This is because, in most cases, improvements in TCR-peptide/MHC stability within any one system result in a more robust T-cell response. This has been shown by the work of Kranz and colleagues,[210] who selected a nanomolar affinity TCR from a mutagenized library expressed in yeast. With an approximately 100-fold slower off-rate than the original, this TCR should have been only poorly stimulatory based on the serial engagement model. Instead, T cells bearing it are considerably more sensitive to antigen, which casts considerable doubt on this aspect of the model. Similar work of Allen and colleagues on another TCR-ligand interaction produced similar results.[211] Furthermore, recently Xie et al. cross-linked peptide-MHCs to a cognate TCR and found that when aggregated they can still signal efficiently.[212] But the concept that the rapid dissociation rates of TCRs for peptide-MHC ligands could serve to amplify signaling under limiting conditions is still very likely and has been cited in the context of the "pseudodimer" model,[140,213] as discussed in the following.

Topology and Cross-Reactivity

As discussed previously, TCR sequence diversity resides largely in the region between the V and J region gene segments, which corresponds to the CDR3 regions of antibodies.[214] This has led to models in which the CDR3 loops of Vα and Vβ make the principal contacts with the antigenic peptide bound to the MHC.[214] Support for this model has come from many studies in which it has been shown that the CDR3 sequences of TCRs are important predictors of specificity,[214] as well as elegant mutagenesis studies which showed that a single CDR3 point mutation could alter the specificity of a TCR[215] and also a CDR3 "transplant" could confer the specificity of the donor TCR onto the recipient.[216] In addition, a novel approach to TCR-ligand interactions was developed by Jorgensen et al.,[217] who made single amino acid changes in an antigenic peptide at positions that affect T-cell recognition but not MHC binding. These variant peptides are then used to immunize mice that express either α or β chain of a TCR that recognizes the original

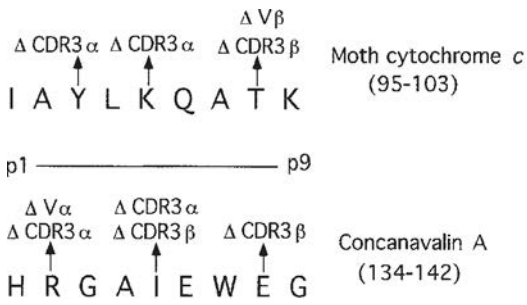


FIG. 11.8. Sensitivity of T-Cell Receptor (TCR) Complementarity-Determining Region 3 (CDR3) Sequences and Vα/Vβ Usage to Changes in the Antigen Peptide. This figure summarizes the data of Jorgensen et al.[196,198] and Sant'Angelo et al.,[197] who immunized single-chain transgenic mice (TCR-α or TCR-β) with antigenic peptides (MCC or CVA) altered at residues that influence T-cell recognition but not major histocompatibility complex binding. These data show that such changes invariably affect the CDR3 sequences of Vα or Vβ or both, and that there appears to be a definite topology in which Vα governs the N-terminal region and Vβ seems more responsible for the C-terminal portion of the peptide.

peptide and the responding T cells are analyzed. Using these "hemitransgenic" mice allows the resulting T cells to keep one-half of the receptor constant, while allowing considerable variation in the chain that pairs with it. The results from this study and work in another system by Sant'Angelo et al.[218] are very similar in that every mutation at a TCR-sensitive residue triggered a change in the CDR3 sequence of Vα, Vβ, or both, and in some cases, changed the Vα or Vβ gene segment as well (as summarized in Fig. 11.8). One of the more striking examples of a CDR3-peptide interaction occurred in the cytochrome c system where a Lys → Glu change in the central TCR determinant on the peptide triggered a Glu → Lys charge reversal in the Vα CDR3 loop, suggesting a direct Lys → Glu contact between the two molecules.[217] This prediction has recently been confirmed in the structural work of Newell et al.[219] and extended to a closely related TCR, 2B4, which contacts the central lysine on the peptide with an oppositely charged residue in CDR3β.

Another interesting finding was the order of Vα → Vβ preference going from the N-terminal to the C-terminal residues of the peptides. This led Jorgensen to a proposed "linear" topology of TCR-peptide/MHC interaction in which the CDR3 loops of Vα and Vβ line up directly over the peptide.[217,220] Sant'Angelo et al.[218] proposed an orientation of the TCR in which the CDR3 loops are perpendicular to the peptide. This was partially based on intriguing data they found suggesting an interaction between the CDR1 of Vα and an N-terminal residue of the peptide.

This controversy regarding orientation has been largely resolved by the numerous crystal structures of TCR-peptide/MHC complexes.[160,221] These studies show that TCRs bind in roughly diagonal to 90-degree configurations, ranging over 30 degrees. In these structures, one of which is shown in Figure 11.9,[165] the CDR3 loops are centrally located over the peptide, but the Vα CDR1 and the Vβ CDR1 are also in a position to contact the N-terminal and C-terminal peptide residues, respectively. The confined nature of TCR recognition constitutes a major departure from antibody-antigen interactions and may reflect a need to accommodate other molecules into a particular configuration that is optimal for signaling, such as CD4, CD8, and/or CD3 components. Particularly relevant to this possibility are the recent observations by Garcia and colleagues[222] suggesting that TCR signaling can be limited by the docking geometry of the TCR to the peptide/MHC complex. They used a yeast library in which millions of different peptides bound to a class I MHC can be interrogated by a single TCR. Structural analysis showed that three of the peptides isolated bound to the TCR with the typical orientation and induced TCR signaling. But a fourth peptide bound the TCR not in the typical diagonal mode but in a parallel fashion, and failed to induce signaling.[222] This suggests that the typical TCR-MHC docking mode is selected for in the thymus and may be critical for signaling.

As αβ TCR heterodimers are first selected in the thymus for reactivity to self-peptides bound to MHC molecules, all foreign-peptide reactive TCRs could be considered to be inherently cross-reactive. Indeed, a number of T cells have reactivity to very different peptide sequences, as shown by Nanda and Sercarz.[223] It has also been argued by Mason[224] that the universe of peptides is so large that each T cell must on average be cross-reactive to approximately 10^6 different peptides (although many of the differences in peptide sequence in this calculation would not be accessible to the TCR, being buried in the MHC binding groove). Several large-scale screens of a random 9-mer peptide library with different T cells did turn up a great many stimulatory

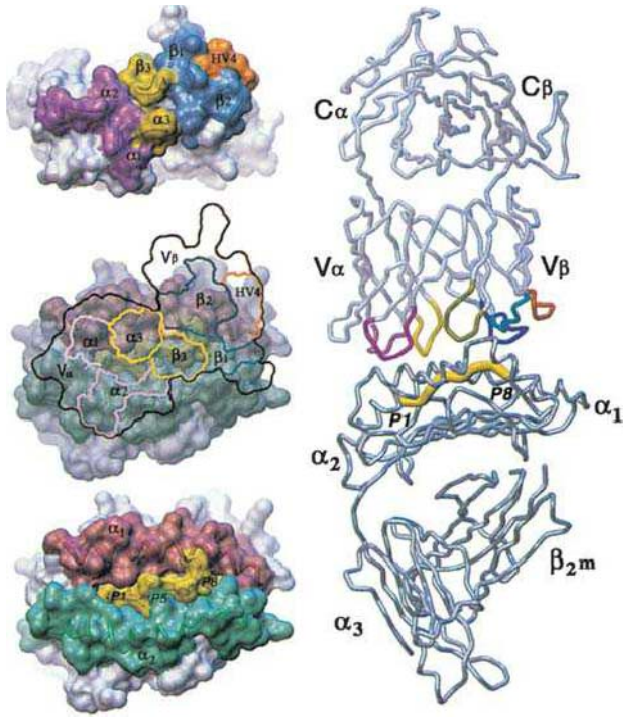


FIG. 11.9. T-Cell Receptor–Peptide/Major Histocompatibility Complex Crystal Structure of a T-Cell Receptor–Peptide/Major Histocompatibility Complex Complex. Peptide and complementary-determining regions are portrayed in different colors.[150]

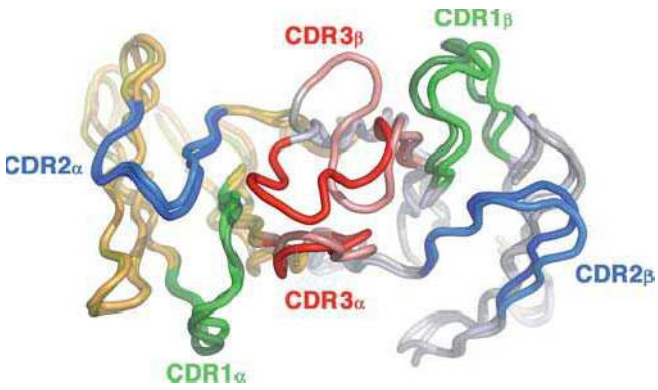


FIG. 11.10. Complementarity-Determining Region (CDR)3 Movement in $\alpha\beta$ T-Cell Receptor (TCR) Binding. In most cases where there is a structure for an $\alpha\beta$ TCR as well as for one (or more) for that TCR in complex with a peptide–major histocompatibility complex, there is a marked movement of one or the other of the Vα or Vβ CDR3s. This example from Mallissen et al.[209] shows a particularly large (14 A) movement of CDR3β with binding. This meshes well with thermodynamic data showing an "induced fit" binding mechanism for most TCRs.[173,211]

peptides, but very few have changes in the two to four key TCR-sensitive residues.[225] This led Garcia and colleagues to conclude that cross-reactivity to different agonist peptides may not be a general feature of T-cell specificity.[226] Instead, the major requirement for cross-reactivity may be in thymic selection[227] and/or in the use of endogenous peptide-MHCs to augment T-cell sensitivity to agonist ligands.[207,213,228]

Direct evidence of TCR plasticity was first obtained by Garcia et al.,[229] who in comparing the x-ray crystal structures of the same TCR bound to two different peptide-MHC ligands found a large conformational change in the CDR3 loop and a smaller one in the CDR1α loop. An even larger conformational change (15 Å) has been found in the CDR3β residue of another TCR as it binds to a peptide/MHC complex,[230] as shown in Figure 11.10. That each TCR may have many different conformations of its CDR3 loops is suggested by the two-dimensional nuclear magnetic resonance studies of Reinherz and colleagues, who found that the CDR3 regions of a TCR in solution were significantly more mobile than the rest of the structure.[231] That this may be a general feature of most TCRs is supported by thermodynamic analyses of various TCRs binding to their peptide/MHC ligands, both class I and class II. Here, the binding is often accompanied by a substantial loss of entropy (Table 11.4) and, in most cases, an "induced fit" mechanism.[184,192,232] This seems to be a situation where an inherently flexible binding site achieves greater order upon binding. This is a mechanism which is also employed by DNA recognition proteins, and Boniface et al.[192] have suggested that it might represent a common mechanism of "scanning" an array of very similar molecular structures (MHCs or DNA) rapidly for those few that "fit" properly. We have seen previously that the association rates are often remarkably slow, with K_as ranging from 1,000 to 10,000 $M^{-1}s^{-1}$ (see Table 11.3). This indicates that either a multistep process is occurring before stable binding can be achieved or that only a fraction of the TCRs in

TABLE 11.4 Thermodynamic and Structural Parameters for T-Cell Receptor Peptide–Major Histocompatibility Complex Interactions

TCR	pMHC	ΔG° (kcal/mol)	ΔH° (kcal/mol)	ΔCp (kcal/mol)	TCR Conformational Change	pMHC Conformational Change	Reference
2C	dEV8-H2-K^b	−6.3	−22.7	−1.1	CDR3α(6 Å)	None[a]	169,208
2C	p2Ca-H2-K^b	−6.1	−29	−1.5	ND	ND	169
2C	SIYR-H2-K^b	−7.2	−8.4	−1.1	CDR3α(3.9 Å)	None	169,208
2C	dEV8-H2-K^{bm3}	−5.8	ND	ND	CDR3α(6 Å)	None	305,308
JM22z	MP(58–66)-HLA-A2	−7.1	−23	ND	—	Q155-A2(2.4Å)	211,307
KB5-C20	PKB1-H2-K^b	ND	ND	ND	CDR3β(15 Å)	None	209
LC13	EBNA3A-HLA-B8	−6.8	ND	ND	CDR3α(2.5 Å); CDR1α(1.9 Å):Cα	(Q155)-HLA-B8	304
A6	Tax-HLA-A2	−8.2	ND	ND	CDR3β(4.4 Å)	A2-α2(1.4Å)	149,209
BM3.3	VSV8-H2-K^b	−5.4	ND	ND	CDR3α(5.3 Å)	None	303
D10	CA-I-A^k	−7.0	ND	ND	CDR3β	None	172,210
F5z	AM9-H2-K^b	−6.7	−19	ND	ND	ND	211
2B4	MCC-I-E^k	−6.9	−13	−0.6	ND	ND	169,173
2B4	K2-I-E^k	−6.9	−9.4	−2.1	ND	ND	169
2B4	K3-I-E^k	−6.1	−30.5	−4.0	ND	ND	169
2B4	K5-I-E^k	−7.5	−8.0	−1.2	ND	ND	169
2B4	102S-I-E^k	−5.6	−13.2	−0.3	ND	ND	169
2B4	PCC-I-E^k	−6.1	13.3	−1.8	ND	ND	169
2B4	PCC-103K-I-E^k	−7.0	−8.4	−1.0	ND	ND	169
172.10	MBP(1–11)-I-A^u	−6.9	−21.2	−0.16	ND	None	305
1934.4	MBP(1–11)-I-A^u	−6.0	−15.7	−1.2	ND	ND	305
D3	SL9-HLA-A2	−7.5	−10.4	−0.4	ND	ND	309

The ΔG values were derived from the equation $\Delta G = -RT \ln(K_A)$ where R = 0.001987 kcal/mol/K. CDR, complementarity-determining region; ND, not determined; p/MHC, peptide/major histocompatibility complex; TCR, T-cell receptor.

[a] No major conformational change observed after ligand recognition.

solution have the correct conformation. Just how such a scanning mechanism might work for TCRs is seen in the analysis of Wu et al.,[233] who found that a cytochrome c/MHC II–specific TCR derived most of its stability of binding from antigenic peptide residues, but very little of its initial activation energy from these residues. In contrast, MHC residues contributed by far the most of the initial binding, but had relatively modest effects on stability. This indicates that "scanning" may be a process (as shown in Figure 11.11) that first involves contact with (and orientation by) the α-helices of the MHC and then a "fitting" process with and stabilization by peptide residues that involves a substantial loss of entropy. This model of TCR binding might help to explain the striking efficiency and sensitivity of T-cell recognition with the MHC helices guiding the TCR into the correct orientation. It might also be the structural basis for cross-reactivity in which structurally very different peptides bind to the same TCR, as the CDR3 regions of TCR could "fold" into the peptide in many possible configurations. While attractive, there remain caveats about this "two-step binding" model; one is the existence of some important human class I MHC antigens that "bulge" out of the binding groove, creating a barrier to "scanning" as a mechanism of binding to those antigens.[234] A second issue is that one would expect a reproducible "footprint" for MHC binding of particular TCR V regions, which until recently has been elusive. But Garcia and colleagues,[235] as well as Kappler and colleagues,[236] have documented such specific footprints that correlate to particular Vβ usage, although it does seem that there are multiple ways way in which a particular V region can contact a particular MHC.

The rules for the conserved reaction of αβ TCRs with MHC proteins plus peptides are addressed by evaluating the contact residues between TCR and MHC in cocrystal structures of TCR/peptide/MHC complexes. Thus it has been suggested that each TCR variable-region gene product engages each type of MHC through a "menu" of structurally coded recognition motifs that have arisen through coevolution.[235,236]

Role of Cluster of Differentiation 4 and Cluster of Differentiation 8

What is the role of CD4 and CD8 with respect to the T-cell response to agonist and antagonist peptides? Clearly, their expression greatly augments activation, and in some cases, determines whether there is a response at all.[237] In addition, the results of Irvine et al.[238] and Purbhoo et al.,[239] using a single-peptide labeling technique, found an appreciable T-cell response to even one agonist peptide in all four T cells analyzed, resulting in a "stop" signal for the T cell and a small, but detectable rise in intracellular calcium. In CD4+ T cells, these effects are attenuated by antibody blockade of CD4, such that many more (25 to 30) peptides

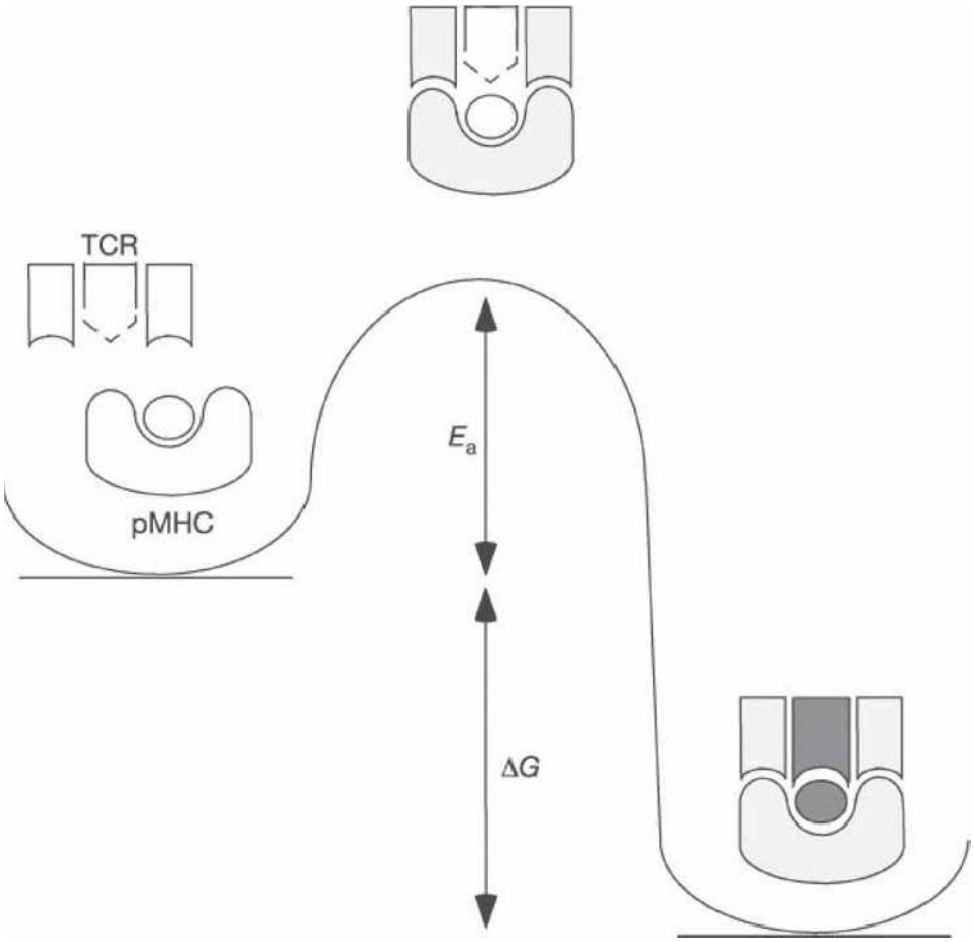


FIG. 11.11. As Shown by Wu etal.,[212] Mutational Analysis of T-Cell Receptor (TCR)-Peptide/Major Histocompatibility Complex (MHC) Binding Indicates that the TCR First Contacts MHC Residues (in the Transition State), and the Peptide has Very Little Influence. Subsequently, however, the peptide residues contribute greatly to the stability of the complex. Thus, we have proposed that the transition state largely involves TCR-MHC contact followed by stabilization of mobile complementarity-determining region 3 residues into a stable state, usually involving significant conformational change and loss of entropy.

are required in order to elicit a stop signal and a calcium flux.[238] Much of this effect likely comes from the recruitment of lck to the TCR/CD3 complexes via the cytoplasmic tails of either molecule. But in addition, there is also a significant positive effect even with CD4 molecules that are unable to bind lck and thus there appears to be an effect on TCR-ligand interaction as well. Nonetheless, while a weak binding of CD4 to class II MHC has been observed,[187] most recently in a complete crystal structure of CD4-TCR-peptide/MHC,[240] there was no apparent stabilizing effect on TCR binding to peptide-MHC in measurements of binding within a synapse by Huppa et al.[188] This is in contrast to the earlier data of Luescher and colleagues,[241] who found that CD8 had a measureable stabilizing effect on TCR binding to ligand on T cells expressing that molecule. This later result is consistent with measurements of CD8 affinity for class I MHCs that are very similar, or even superior, to that of many TCRs for peptide/MHC.[242] So, are CD4 and CD8 playing very different roles with respect to TCR binding to peptide/MHC? Chakraborty and colleagues suggest not in a model they have developed that indicates that the differences in CD4 and CD8 affinity for MHCs contribute at best marginally to activation and that delivering lck to productive TCR-peptide/MHC complexes is their most important property.[243] In this view, the specificity of these molecules for their respective MHC molecules is more of a targeting mechanism than the stabilization function implicit in the ubiquitous illustrations originally proposed by Janeway[116] and featured in many subsequent models.

How could CD4 be facilitating the recognition of small numbers of peptides? Irvine et al.[238] proposed a "psuedodimer" model, which suggests that a CD4 molecule associated with a TCR binding to an agonist peptide-MHC could bind laterally to an endogenous peptide-MHC complex that is also being bound by an adjacent TCR. This takes advantage of the apparent abundance of endogenous peptide/MHCs that can be bound by a given TCR[244] and uses two weak interactions (CD4 → MHC II and TCR → endogenous peptide-MHC) to help create a dimeric "trigger" for activation. This is supported by the work of Krogsgaard et al.,[213] who also showed that disabling CD4 binding to the endogenous peptide/MHC in a heterodimer had a much a greater effect on activation than the same mutation on the agonist peptide/MHC.

What about the timing of CD4 or CD8 binding with respect to TCR-peptide/MHC? The first hints of this came from the work of Hampl et al.,[245] who found that antagonist peptide/MHCs showed no apparent influence of CD4 versus agonists, and because these interactions are much briefer, suggested that CD4 binding was subsequent to TCR engagement with a ligand. That this is likely to be a general effect was shown recently by Jiang et al.,[246] who found that whereas very brief T-cell contacts with peptide/MHC loaded red blood cells involved TCR but not CD8, longer contact periods involved both molecules. Thus it seems that the TCR must first bind to a high quality (eg, agonist) ligand and then CD4 or CD8 comes in to deliver lck and dissociates (based on the lack of stabilization, at least in the case of CD4). But more direct measurements are needed, as well as further definition of the role of endogenous ligands.

Superantigens

One of the most interesting and unexpected areas to emerge from the study of αβ T-cell reactivities is the discovery of "superantigens." Whereas a particular antigenic peptide might only be recognized by 1 in 100,000 or fewer T cells in a naive organism, a given superantigen might stimulate 1% to 20% of the T cells.[247,248] As will be discussed in more detailed in the following, the physical basis for this is that the superantigen binds to a Vβ domain of the TCR on T cells while simultaneously binding to an MHC class II molecule on an antigen-presenting cell (although not in the peptide-binding groove). This allows a single superantigen, such as staphylococcal enterotoxin A (SEA) in Table 11.5, to stimulate virtually every murine T cell bearing Vβ 1, 3, 10, 11, 12, or 17 (about 15% of all αβ T cells), in most cases regardless of what Vα it is paired with or what CDR3 sequence is expressed. Clearly, this is a unique class of T-cell stimulatory molecules.

The first indication of a superantigen effect was the discovery of minor lymphocyte stimulating determinants by Festenstein in the early 1970s.[249] Many years later, Kappler and colleagues characterized a mouse strain–specific deletion of T cells expressing a specific TCR Vβs that were attributable to these loci.[250] It emerged that these effects were due to endogenous retroviruses of the mouse mammary tumor virus family.[251–255] Different family members bind different TCR Vβ domains (as shown in Table 11.5) and stimulate T cells expressing them. Meanwhile, Janeway and colleagues[256] had shown earlier that staphylococcus enterotoxins could polyclonally active naive T cells in a Vβ-specific manner without a requirement for antigen processing. Many of these enterotoxins have been characterized extensively.[247,248,257,258] Unlike the MMTV proteins, which are type II membrane proteins, the enterotoxins are secreted. Subsequently, proteins having similar properties have been isolated from other bacteria (*Yersinia pseudotuberculosis*,[259,260] streptococcus,[261] and from mycoplasma[262,263]). There is also evidence of superantigen-like activities in other mammalian viruses such as rabies,[264] cytomegalovirus,[265] herpes virus,[266] Epstein-Barr virus,[267] and also in *Toxoplasma gondii*.[268] As so many pathogenic or parasitic organisms possess these molecules, apparently by convergent evolution, there must be some selective advantage, but in most cases there is no conclusive evidence as to what this might be. The one exception is the case of the MMTV superantigens, where it has been shown that polyclonal T-cell stimulation allows the virus to more efficiently infect the B-lymphocytes that are activated by the T cells.[269,270] This may be a special case, however, and most authors have suggested that superantigens primarily serve to confuse and occupy the immune system while the pathogen escapes specific targeting and elimination. Large doses of superantigens have also been implicated in various "shock" syndromes, such as food poisoning or "toxic shock,"[247] but this is probably not their everyday purpose, as it would violate the general rule that the host and parasite should coexist.

It has also been suggested by Stauffer et al.[271] that superantigens might be involved in triggering autoimmune diseases. Here the hypothesis is that a large number of some Vβ-bearing T cells are activated by a pathogenic superanti-

TABLE 11.5 Vβ Specificity of Exogenous and Endogenous Superantigens

Bacterial Superantigen	Human Vβ Specificity	Reference	Murine Vβ Specificity	Reference
				(as referenced in 235,314)
SEA	ND		1,3,10,11,12,17	310,311
SEB	3,12,14,15,17,20	315,316	(3), 7,8.1,8.3, (11), (17)	310,311,312
SEC_1	12	316	7,8.2,8.3,11	310
SEC_2	12,13,14,15,17,20	315,316	8.2,10	310
SEC_3	5,12	316	(3), 7,8.2	310
SED	5,12	316	3,7,(8.2),8.3,11,17	310
SEE	5.1,6.1–6.3,8,18	315,316	11,15,17	310
TSST-1	2	316	15,16	310
ExFT	2	315	10,11,15	310
Strep M	2,4,8	239	ND	

Endogenous Proviruses	Vβ Specificity	Mls Type[a]	Chromosome	Reference
				(as referenced in 235,236)
Mtv-1	3	c, 4a	7	
Mtv-2	14	NA	18	
Mtv-3	3,17	c	11	
Mtv-6	3,17	c, 3a	16	
Mtv-7	6,7,8.1,9	a, 1a	1	
Mtv-8	11,12	f, Dvbll.1	6	
Mtv-9	5,11,12	f, Etc-1	12	
Mtv-11	11,12	f, Dvbll.3	14	
Mtv-13	3	c, 2a	4	
Mtv-43	6,7,8.9,9	Mls-like	ND	

Exogenous Viruses	Vβ Specificity	Mls Type	Chromosome	Reference
MMTV-C3H	14,15	NA		231
MMTV-SW	6,7,8.1,9	Mls-like		247
Rabies	ND			242
EBV	ND	HERV-K18		245
CMV	ND			243
Herpesvirus				244

Other Pathogens	Vβ Specificity	Name	Chromosome	Reference
Mycoplasma arthritidis	h17,6,8.1,8.3	MAM		240,241
Toxoplasma gondii	5			246
Yersinia enterocolitica	ND			237
Yersinia pseudotuberculosis	ND			238

Vβ in parentheses are reactive with commercial but not recombinant enterotoxins.
CMV, cytomegalovirus; EBV, Epstein-Barr virus; MMTV, mouse mammary tumor virus; NA, not applicable; ND, not determined.
[a]The nomenclature in use before the discovery that the phenotype resulted from endogenous retroviruses.

gen and that subsequently self-reactive T cells within those activated cells are more easily stimulated by a particular tissue antigen. That this may occur in some cases is supported by their work on a human endogenous retrovirus which specifically stimulates Vβ7 T cells and is implicated in the initiation of type I diabetes.[271] Another report implicates a superantigen in Crohn disease, another autoimmune disorder.[272]

While the biochemistry of superantigen binding to TCR and MHC is similar to that of TCR peptide/MHC interactions,[273] mutagenesis, and particularly x-ray structural data, has shown that the topology is both quite different and variable.[248] In particular, it has been found that Mls-la presentation to T cells is most affected by mutations on the "outside" surface of the Vβ domain, which do not affect peptide/MHC recognition.[162] In contrast, CDR1 and CDR2 of regions of Vβs are involved in bacterial superantigen reactivity.[274]

An example of the structural data is shown in Figure 11.12, which shows how a model TCR-SAg-MHC complex (derived from separate structures) would displace the TCR somewhat (but not entirely) away from the MHC binding groove,[275] thus making the interaction largely insensitive to the TCR/peptide specificity. Other TCR-SAg-MHC complexes have very different geometries.[276,277]

Why do all the many independently derived superantigens interact only with the TCR β-chain? One possibility is that the β-chain offers the only accessible "face" of the TCR, perhaps because the CD4 molecules hinders access to the Vα side, as suggested by the antibody blocking studies of Janeway and colleagues.[278,279]

ANTIGEN RECOGNITION BY γδ T CELLS

γδ T cells together with αβ T cells are present together in all but the most primitive vertebrates. This finding argues that γδ T cells functions are different from those of αβ T cells. Yet, most γδ T cells produce cytokines that are similar to

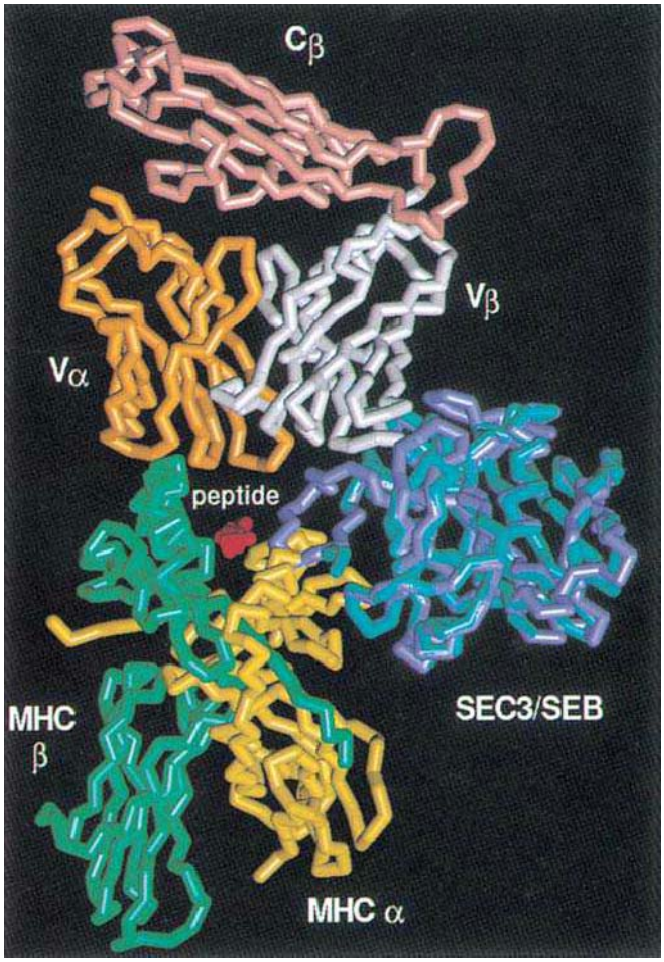


FIG. 11.12. Crystal Structure of a T-Cell Receptor (TCR) *β*/Superantigen (SAg) Complex. Fields et al.[253] crystallized TCR-SAg complexes and from the structure of the same superantigens with a class II major histocompatibility complex (MHC) molecule and were able to deduce the relative spatial arrangement of the three molecules. This model suggests that TCR does not contact the MHC very strongly, which is consistent with the relative peptide insensitivity of SAg activation.

those produced by αβ T cells. γδ T cells also can mount cytotoxic responses upon activation like CD8+ αβ T cells. These results, together with the fact that αβ T cells are almost always found alongside and usually in excess of γδ T cells, suggest that the difference in how γδ T cells and αβ T cells contribute to host immune competence is less likely because of differences in effector functions or in tissue distribution but rather because of differences in how these two types of cells are triggered. Thus, to understand how γδ T cells function, it is essential to know the antigens and the target cells recognized by γδ T cells.

Antigen Recognition Requirements and γδ T-Cell Ligands

Because the study of γδ T cells is relatively recent and does not stem from any knowledge of their biologic function, experiments designed to characterize their specificity and function had drawn heavily on our knowledge of αβ T cells. Because αβ T-cell recognition requires antigen presentation by MHC and related molecules, it was assumed that γδ T-cell recognition would also follow the same rules. Even in cases where classical MHCs are clearly not involved, it has been suggested that nonclassical MHC molecules or some as yet to be identified surface molecules might play a similar role. These possibilities are difficult to test experimentally. Thus, analysis of γδ T cells specific for MHC molecules were carried out to determine the antigen recognition requirement of γδ TCRs. This approach asks the following questions: When γδ T cells recognize MHC molecules, what kind of antigen processing is required, is any of the specificity conferred by bound peptide, and which part of the MHC molecule is recognized? This approach took advantage of the detailed knowledge of the molecular structure of MHC class I[280,281] and MHC class II molecules,[282] thus making T-cell epitope mapping feasible and interpretable. In addition, and more importantly, the biosynthetic pathways and antigen-processing requirements for both MHC class I and MHC class II molecules had been extensively studied. Mutant cell lines defective in either pathway were readily available and could be transfected with various MHC class I and class II genes. Therefore, potential antigen processing and presentation requirements for alloreactive γδ T cells could be studied with precision and compared with those of αβ T cells.

The γδ T cell LBK5[283,284] recognizes I-E^{b,k,s} but not I-E^{d}. An analysis of the fine specificities of LBK5 showed that the peptide bound to the I-E molecules does not confer specificity and that no known antigen-processing pathways were required in the recognition of I-E by LBK5. All variations in the ability of different stimulator cells to activate LBK5 can be attributed solely to their level of surface I-E expression and are independent of their species origin (mouse, hamster, human) and cell type (B cells, T cells, fibroblasts). Modifications of the repertoire of peptides loaded onto MHC molecules also showed no effect because native I-E^{k}, GPI-linked I-E^{k}, I-E^{k} expressed with or without invariant chains, and the presence or absence of functional MHC class I or class II antigen-processing pathways all stimulated LBK5 similarly.[285] Thus, LBK5 recognizes native I-E^{k} molecules with a variety of different bound peptides or in the case of GPI-linked I-E^{k}, which most likely does not complex with a peptide. In addition, LBK5 recognizes *E. coli*–produced I-E^{k} *α* and *β* chains folded with a single peptide.[285]

The functional epitope on I-E for LBK5 recognition maps to the β67 and β70 residues.[285] This explains why LBK5 recognizes I-E^{b,k,s} but not I-E^{d} and why peptide bound to I-E^{k} does not confer the specificity. Surprisingly, I-E^{k} mutants with an altered carbohydrate structure on the α84 position are not recognized by LBK5.[286] Although the binding interface of the LBK5 γδ TCR and I-E has yet to be determined, it is reasonable to assume that it will not deviate much from those reported for antibodies, αβ TCRs and the G8 γδ TCR. From the coordinates of a published crystal structure of I-E^{k},[287] the distance between β67–70 (the LBK5 epitope) and the carbohydrate attachment site at position α82 was estimated to be around 28–33Å. Hence, it is likely that the carbohydrate structure is peripheral to the core of the LBK5/I-E interaction. This type of interaction may be similar to that described for human growth hormone and the extracellular

domain of its receptor[288] where a central hydrophobic region at the contact site, which is dominated by two tryptophan residues, accounts for more than three-quarters of the binding free energy and where peripheral electrostatic contacts contribute substantially to the specificity of binding but not to the net binding energy. This type of protein-protein interaction has been postulated to ensure the specificity of an interaction without requiring a high affinity.[289]

Two independently derived γδ T-cell clones, KN6[290] and G8,[291] are found to recognize T10 and T22, two closely related, nonclassical MHC class I molecules that have 94% amino acid identity. T22 appears to be expressed constitutively on a variety different cell types, whereas the expression of T10 is inducible on cells of the immune system. Among strains of mice tested so far, all express T22. However, mice of the H-2^d or H-2^k MHC haplotypes (eg, BALB/c and C3H, respectively) lack functional T10 molecules.[291,291a] T10 and T22 have also been identified as natural ligands for murine γδ T cells. Approximately 0.2% to 1% of the γδT cells in normal, unimmunized mice are T10/T22-specific (Fig. 11.13).[292]

The primary sequences of T10 and T22 suggest that the necessary structural features that enable classical MHC class I molecules to bind peptides are absent. Indeed, x-ray crystallography has shown that T10 and T22 adopt a severely modified MHC-like fold that lacks a classical peptide-binding groove and exposes part of the β sheet "floor" of the α1/α2 platform.[293,294] Consistent with the structural data, no endogenous peptides can be eluted from chimeric T10/L^d molecules that are expressed by transfected cells.[295,295a] This indicates that these molecules can reach the cell surface devoid of peptide. Importantly, the *E. coli*–produced, in vitro–folded

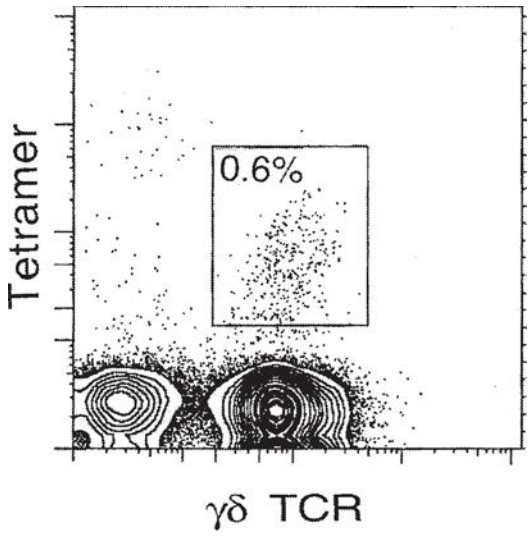


FIG. 11.13. T10/T22-Specific γδ T Cells can be Detected in Normal Mice Through Use of a Tetrameric T22 Staining Reagent. As shown by Crowley et al.,[274] a T22 reagent that was generated by similar methods as tetrameric peptide/major histocompatibility complex reagents stained approximately 0.6% of splenic γδ T cells in normal animals. More than 90% of these cells are cluster of differentiation (CD)4–CD8–; the rest are either CD4 or CD8 single positive (about 3% to 4% each). A similar frequency of tetramer-positive γδ T cells was also found in the intestinal intraepithelial lymphocyte population (data not shown).

T10/β_2m and T22/β_2m molecules can stimulate the G8 γδ T cell,[295,296] which provides unequivocal evidence that these peptide-free molecules retain their immunologic function.

Direct binding between soluble G8 γδ TCRs and T10/β_2m and T22/β_2m complexes has been measured.[297] Surface plasmon resonance showed that the dissociation rates for the interaction between G8 and $T10^b$ and $T22^b$ were similar ($k_d = 8.1 \pm 2.3 \times 10^3 s^{-1}$) and slower than those that had been observed for most interactions between αβ TCRs and peptide/MHC complexes. The association rates ($k_a = 6.53 \pm 1.73 \times 10^4\ M^{-1}s^{-1}$) are among the fastest that had been reported for αβ TCRs and their ligands. Therefore, compared to αβ TCRs, the affinity between G8 γδ TCRs and their ligand is rather high ($K_D = 0.13 \pm 0.05\ \mu M$). A Scatchard analysis of equilibrium binding generated a similar affinity of 0.11 ± 0.07 μM for this interaction.[297]

There are only two other pairs of ligand-TCR interaction have been reported. The binding between the soluble form of G115 and its ligand F1-ATPase and the apolipoprotein A-I complex showed a K_D of 1.5 μM and 0.8 μM, respectively.[171] These affinities are within the range of soluble αβ TCRs and their peptide/MHC ligands. Surprisingly, a K_D of 110 to 900 μM was reported for δ1A/B-3:MICA interactions.[299] This affinity is one to two orders of magnitude weaker than the NKG2D:MICA interaction, more on a par with MHC class I:CD8 interactions (from 11 to ≥ 1,000 μM).

It should be noted that the same human γδ T-cell clones that recognize AS/ApoA-I complexes are activated by a set of nonpeptidic pyrophosphomonoesters that are collectively referred to as phosphoantigens (phosphoAgs).[170] It has been observed for well over a decade that some human peripheral blood Vγ9Vδ2 cells can be stimulated by phosphoAgs such as isopentenyl pyrophosphate and dimethylallyl pyrophosphate. These cells show in vitro responses to tumors, phosphoAgs produced by eukaryotes and prokaryotes, natural and synthetic alkylamines, and aminobisphosphonates. However, repeated attempts to show interactions between phosphoAgs and Vγ9Vδ2 TCRs have failed. The identification of AS/ApoA-I complexes as antigens of some of these T cells further challenges this notion.

As indicated in Table 11.6,[145] other than toward phosphoAgs, the reactivities of Vγ9Vδ2-expressing T cells to other challenges such as tumors and AS/ApoA-I are far from homogeneous. Further, these cells mount a much more robust response to phosphoAgs than to CD3 cross-linking. Thus, it is possible that isopentenyl pyrophosphate and other isoprenoid intermediates enhance antigen-specific responses of Vγ9Vδ2 cells without being TCR antigens themselves. Isopentenyl pyrophosphate and dimethylallyl pyrophosphate are metabolites of the mevalonate pathway that regulates the biosynthesis of cholesterol as well as of isoprenoids that mediate the membrane association of certain GTPases. The addition of isoprenoid intermediates has been shown to augment antigen-specific αβ T-cell responses and to alter their cytokine profiles.[300]

These experimental observations together with the CDR3 length distribution analysis described previously make it clear that the molecular nature of γδ T-cell antigen recognition is fundamentally different than that of αβ T cells. While MHC and MHC-related molecules are recognized by

TABLE 11.6 Partial List of γδ T-Cell Reactivities[a]

Name (referred to as)	Source	Reported Reactivities	Comments	Reference
Murine				
DGT3	Lymph node cells from DBA2 mouse primed with poly ($Glu^{50}Tyr^{50}$)	Qa-1/($Glu^{50}Tyr^{50}$)		317
KN6	Double-negative thymocytes from C57Bl/6	$T10/T22^{b,k\ not\ d}$		318
Tgl4.4	Lymph node of HSV-infected C3H mouse and restimulated with L cells transfected with HSV-gl	HSV-gl	Can be stimulated by gl protein alone	319,320
G8	BALB/c nu/nu immunized with B10.BR APCs	$T10/T22^{b,k\ not\ d}$	Direct binding and cocrystal structure have been shown	153,274,323
LBK5	C57Bl/10 nu/nu immunized with B10.BR splenocytes	$I\text{-}E^{b,k,s\ not\ d}$	Can be stimulated by I-E proteins alone; reactivity is not peptide-specific	322,323
LKD1	B10.BR immunized with B10.D2 splenocytes	$I\text{-}A^{d}$		322
69BAS-122	C57Bl/10, adult splenocyte	HSP-60 peptide, cardiolipin, β2-glycoprotein 1	Transferring TCR transfers reactivity	324,325
BNT-19.8.12	C57Bl/10, newborn thymocyte	Mycobacterium PPD, cardiolipin, β2-glycoprotein 1	Transferring TCR transfers reactivity	325,326
7–17 and other dendritic epidermal T cells	γδT cells from murine epidermis	Keratinocytes	Transferring TCR transfers reactivity	33
Human				
Panels of T cell clones expressing Vγ 9Vδ2	PBMC stimulated with irradiated PBMCs and PHA	Tumor cells (eg, Molt-4), MT, metabolites in the mevalonate pathway	20% of Vγ9Vδ2 clones do not react to MT; only slightly more than 50% of MT- or Molt-4–specific clones recognize the other specificities	327,328
Panels of T-cell clones expressing Vγ9Vδ2 including G42 and G115	γδT cells from PBM cultured with irradiated PBLs and lymphoblastoid cells	phosphoAg, tumor cells (eg, Daudi), AS/ApoA-I(G115TCR)	Close correlation between Daudi and mycobacterial reactivity; direct binding between AS/ApoA-I; heterogenous reactivity to ApoA-I	156,329,330
DG.SF13 (Vγ9Vδ2)	γδT cells isolated from RA synovial fluid stimulated with sonicate of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*	Daudi cells, *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*, MEP	Transferring TCR transfers reactivity	331
Panels of T-cell clones expressing Vγ 9Vδ 2 including CP1.15 and DG.SF68	PBMC γδT cells stimulated with *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* extract	phosphoAg, alkylamines, aminobisphosphonates	Reactivities require cell-cell contact	332,333
Clones 1,2,3,4, 5 (Vδ1)	Lymphocytes extracted from human intestinal epithelial tumors cultured with irradiated CIR-MICA and CIR-MICB cells	MICA, MICB	Transferring TCR transfers reactivity; Vδ1-Jδ1 with diverse CDR3 are used; not all Vδ1-Jδ1 cells are MIC-specific	334,335
JR.2 and XV.1 (Vδ1)	PBL stimulated with autologous $CD1^{+}$ DC and M. tuberculosis extract	CD1c expressing cells	Transferring TCR transfers reactivity; many Vδ1 positive γδ T cells are not CD1c-reactive	335
Vγ1.3Vδ2 expressing BW5147	γδ TCR chains from muscle-infiltrating T cells of a polymyositis patient and transfected into TCR-deficient BW5147	Muscle cell extract and *Escherichia coli* extract		336,337
4–29 and 5–3 (Vδ2 negative)	PBMC from CMV-infected transplant recipients stimulated with irradiated PBMC and PHA	CMV-infected fibroblasts, Hela, HT-29, Caco-2		338

[a]The names of the T cells, the way they are generated, and their reported reactivities.

CMV, cytomegalovirus; HSA, herpes simplex virus; MEP, monoethylphosphate; PBMC, peripheral blood mononuclear cell; PHA, phytohaemagglutinin; PPD, microbacterium purified protein derivative; RA, rheumatoid arthritis.

γδ T cells, γδ T-cell antigens need not be MHC or MHC-related molecules. Moreover, in all cases, the antigens are recognized directly. This suggests that pathogens and damaged tissues can be recognized directly and cellular immune responses can be initiated by γδ T cells without a requirement for antigen degradation and specialized antigen-presenting cells, such as B cells, macrophages, and dendritic cells. This would allow for greater flexibility than is present in classical αβ T-cell responses. T10/T22, I-E, as well as MICA and MICB expression can be induced under certain physiologic/pathologic conditions.[301] ATP synthase F1 is normally localized in the membranes of mitochondria, but it has also been found on the surfaces of tumors, hepatocytes, and endothelial cells.[302–303] Thus, γδ T-cell activation may be regulated through the level of protein expression. In addition, the recognition of I-E by LBK5 is acutely sensitive to changes in the glycosylation of the I-E molecule. This suggests a novel way by which antigen recognition by γδ T cells can be regulated. Changes in the posttranslational modifications of surface glycoproteins often indicate that tissues have become infected, have undergone neoplastic transformations, or have experienced other types of cellular stress. For example, it has been shown that the infection of mice with *Listeria monocytogenes* impairs the addition of sialic acid to host cell glycoproteins that include MHC molecules.[304] Additionally, whereas the surface glycoprotein mucin is heavily glycosylated in normal cells, it is underglycosylated in breast, ovarian, and pancreatic carcinomas such that the peptide backbone is unmasked.[305] Thus, both the quantity and the quality of the ligand could contribute significantly to the specificity of γδ TCR recognition.

Thymic Ligand Recognition and γδ T-Cell Repertoire and Function Development

γδ T cells, like αβ T cells, develop in the thymus before entering the periphery. In the case of αβ T cells, thymic development entails endogenous ligand–driven positive and negative selection, which determine what αβ T cells can recognize and whether these T cells will develop into CD4+ helper or CD8+ cytolytic T cells. However, the role of ligand-mediated selection in γδ T-cell development and function has been less clear. Recently, this issue has been reexamined and the emerging picture is fundamentally different from what we know about αβ T-cell development and differentiation. These work suggest that thymic development does little to constrain γδ T cell antigen specificities, but determines γδ T cell effector fate.[306] In particular, γδ thymocyte development and exit into the periphery is not contingent on encountering cognate antigen in the thymus and TCR dimerization may be sufficient to induce signaling for γδ T cells to develop in the thymus.[306a] Thus, once the antigen specificity repertoire is generated by V(D)J rearrangement, it is only marginally modified by thymic selection. In fact, a large fraction of peripheral γδ T cells have not encountered ligand either in the thymus or in the periphery, and this antigen-naïve population is actively maintained by rapidly turning over, and cells that have encountered self-ligands do not accumulate.[306a]

While ligand expression does little to constrain antigen specificities of the γδ T cell repertoire, it does play a role in endowing γδ T cells with different functional programs, in that TCR signaling strength experienced by γδ thymocytes seem to determines the functional specification of γδ T cells: γδ thymocytes that have not encountered cognate ligands make IL-17, γδ thymocytes that have encountered thymic ligands make IFN-γ,[306a] and those that are strongly self-reactive make IL-4. Importantly, regardless of ligand experience, some γδ T cells in normal mice are able to make cytokines immediately upon TCR engagement. IL-17 is a cytokine, which regulates the expansion and recruitment of neutrophils and monocytes to initiate the inflammatory response.[306b] In acute inflammation, a swift IL-17 response must be elicited without prior antigen exposure. Therefore, γδ T cells may be uniquely suited to produce IL-17 at the onset of the inflammatory response to initiate an acute inflammatory response to pathogens and to host antigens revealed by injury. In addition, by acting early in the inflammatory response, γδ T cells may modulate and shape the subsequent αβ T cell and B cell responses that develop during the inflammatory process and thus may play a much larger role in the adaptive immune response than previously recognized.

Antigen Recognition Determinants of γδ T-Cell Receptors: V Genes Versus Complementarity-Determining Region 3 Regions in γδ T-Cell Receptor Ligand Recognition

In part because γδ T cells from different anatomic sites show preferential V gene expression, γδ T cells are commonly been divided into subsets based on V gene usage.[309,310] Numerous studies have also reported that γδ T-cell functions segregate with Vγ or VγVδ usage.[311–314] These observations have led to suggestions that the bias in V gene usage enables γδ T cells to respond to antigens that are specific to their resident tissues.[11,312,315] If this were the case, then γδ TCRs would function like innate immune receptors even though VDJ recombination of the TCR δ chain leads to orders of magnitude higher potential junctional (CDR3 region) diversity than is found in Ig and αβ TCRs (as discussed previously).

To resolve this issue, it is essential to understand the basis of γδ TCR antigen recognition. Based on the analysis of T22-specific γδ T cells isolated from normal mice, the majority of T22-specific γδ TCRs use Vγ1 and Vγ4 in the spleen and a sizeable number use Vγ7 in the IEL compartment.[316] Thus, at least for T22 specificity, Vγ usage reflects tissue origin and not antigen specificity. Consistent with this, it has been demonstrated that the preferential usage of Vγ7 by γδ T cells that can migrate into the IEL compartment primarily results from interleukin-15–driven control of Vγ7 accessibility during thymic VJ rearrangement.[317]

While different Vγs and Vδs were associated with T22-specific TCR sequences, there is one defining feature that is common among them.[316] This is a prominent CDR3δ motif shown in Figure 11.14 that consists of a Vδ or Dδ1-encoded Trp (W); a Dδ2-encoded sequence of Ser, Glu, Gly, Tyr, and Glu (SEGYE); and a P-nucleotide-encoded Leu (L). Gene transfer experiments established that TCRs with the W-(S)

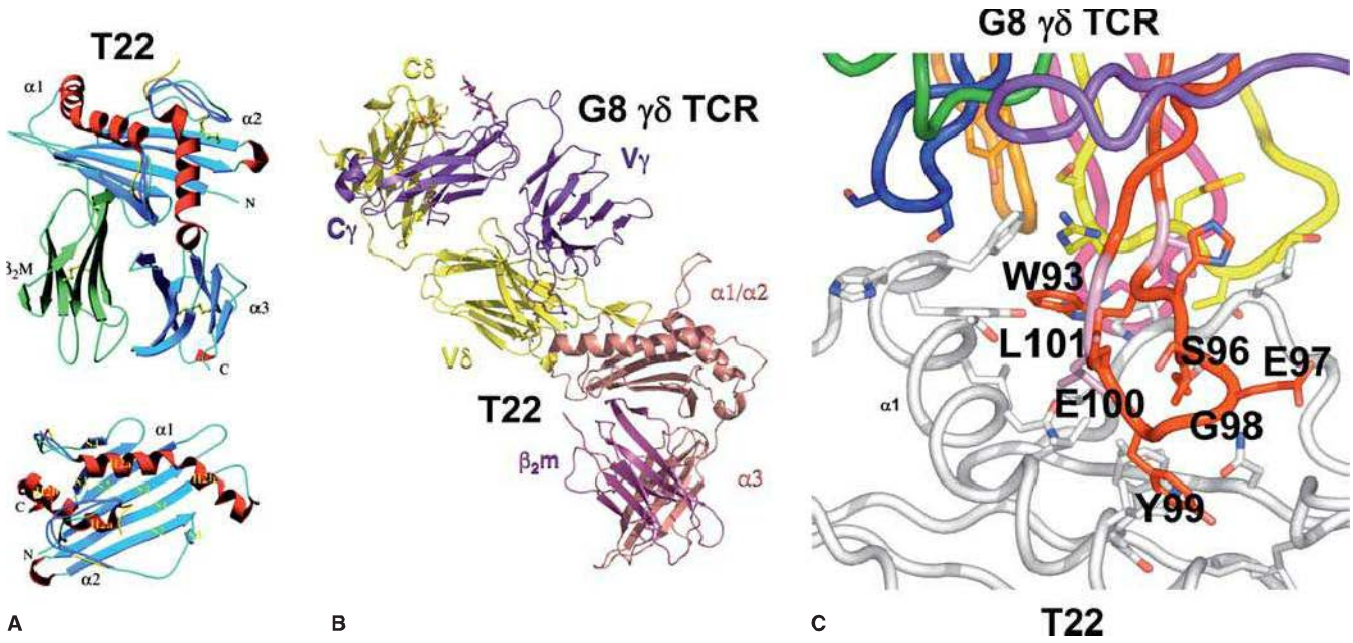


FIG. 11.14. The T22 Structure and the Interaction with the G8 γδ T-Cell Receptor (TCR). A: The structure of a T22 molecule, a nonclassical class I MHC that is missing half of an alpha helix and does not bind peptides.[270] B,C: The intersection with the G8 TCR, where the long TCR δ CDR3 accounts for almost all of the contact residues.[153]

EGYEL motif bound T22 while those lacking the motif did not[316] (see Table 11.6).

Proof that the W- (S)EGYEL motif is the antigen contact site came from the crystal structure of the G8 γδ TCR bound to T22.[168] As discussed in the previous section, T22 has an MHC class I–like fold, but one side of what would normally be a peptide-binding groove is severely truncated and exposes the β-sheet "floor."[296] G8 binds T22 at a tilted angle that contrasts with the essentially parallel alignments of the long axes of the αβ TCR and the peptide/MHC when in complex (Fig. 11.15). The majority of the contact residues are contributed by the β-sheet floor and the α1 helix of T22, and the fully extended CDR3d loop with Trp anchoring at the N-terminal end and residues Gly, Tyr, Glu, and Leu together with a Thr residue encoded in the J region anchoring the loop at its C-terminal end. This is similar to Ig, where antigen specificity in non-somatically mutated antibodies resides predominantly in the CDR3 of the heavy chain.[318] This mode of antigen recognition

	Vδ	P/N	Dδ1 (GTGGCATATCA)	P/N	Dδ2 (ATCGGAGGGATACGAG)	P/N	Jδ1 (CTACCGACAAACTC)
G8	TGT GCT GCT GA C A A D	C AC T	G TGG CAT AT W H I		A TCG GAG GGA TAC GAG S E G Y E	CTC GG L G	T ACC GAC AAA CTC T D K L
KN6	TGT GCC TCG GGG C A S G		TAT Y	TG W	G GAG GGA TAC GAG E G Y E	CTG L	ACC GAC AAA CTC T D K L
Vδ6	TGT GCT CTC TGG GAG CTG C A L W E L	GAG E			TCG GAG GGA TAC GAG S E G Y E	CTC G L A	CC GAC AAA CTC D K L
	TGT GCT CTC TGG GAG CTG C A L W E L	GTT A V M	TG GC A		A TCG GAG GGA TAC GAG S E G Y E	CTA L	ACC GAC AAA CTC T D K L
	TGT GCT CTC TGG GAG CTG C A L W E L		AT I		A TCG GAG GGA TAC GAG S E G Y E	CTA L	ACC GAC AAA CTC T D K L
Vδ4	TGT GCT CTC ATG GAG C A L M E	GGT ATA G I	TGG CAT AT W H I		A TCG GAG GGA TAC GAG S E G Y E	CTT G L A	CT ACC GAC AAA CTC T D K L
	TGT GCT CTC ATG GAG CG C A L M E R	A	AT I		A TCG GAG GGA TAC GAG S E G Y E	CTG GA L D	C GAC AAA CTC D K L
Vδ5	TGT GCC TCG GGG T C A S G S	CC CCC P	CAT AT H I	A TGG CTC GG W L G	A TCG GAG GGA TAC GAG S E G Y E	CTC CTC G L L A	CT ACC GAC AAA CTC T D K L
	TGT GCC TCG GGG TAT C A S G Y	AT M	G TGG W	AGC AT S I	A TCG GAG GGA TAC GAG S E G Y E	CTT G L A	CT ACC GAC AAA CTC T D K L

A

Vγ1	Vδ6	$t_{1/2}$ (min)	K_D (nM)
CAVWI LS GTSWVKIF	CALWEL E SEGYEL A DKL	64 ± 7	12.0 ± 0.5
CAVWI P GTSWVKIF	CALWEL VMA SEGYEL T DKL	86 ± 22	17.2 ± 2.8
CAVWI T GTSWVKIF	CALWEL I SEGYEL T DKL	109 ± 19	13.8 ± 2.8

B

FIG. 11.15. Conserved T-Cell Receptor (TCR) δ Complementarity-Determining Region (CDR)3 Sequences Correlate with T10/T22 Specificity in γδ T Cells. Sequence data from Shin et al.[290] showing that both established cell lines (G8 and KNG) and γδ T cells from clonal cultures that are specific for the T10/T22 share highly conserved TCRδ CDR3 sequences. These are largely derived from the Dδ2 gene segment and from the structural data.[Adams et al., color plate 4, 153] These conserved sequences constitute the main interaction between these γδ TCRs and their ligands.

also fits well with analyses of CDR3 length distributions of all immune receptor chains that first suggested that γδ TCRs bind antigens more similarly to Igs than to αβ TCRs.[144]

There are two G8/T22 complexes in the asymmetric unit.[168] While the contact residues are similar at the interface of the CDR3/T22 β sheet, the two complexes differ by a relative rotation between the G8 TCRs. This shift alters the contacts formed between the CDR1, CDR2, HV4, and CDR3 loops and T22 in each TCR, suggesting that the CDR3 loop acts as a pivot point for G8 binding, with some flexibility in the interaction between the other CDR loops and T22. The hinge-like flexibility around this pivot point stands in stark contrast to interactions seen in antibody/antigen and αβ TCR-peptide/MHC complexes. In those cases, the relatively straight-on docking mode results in multipoint (ie, multi-CDR) attachment of the receptor to the ligand, essentially rigidifying the intermolecular orientations between the two binding partners. In most cases, the αβ TCR CDR1 and CDR2 loops provide a perimeter of contacts with the MHC helices surrounding the CDR3 loops, and so far, no variation has been seen in the docking angle of TCR to MHC in cases where multiple complexes exist in the asymmetric unit. Thus, the CDR3 motif of G8 and other γδ TCRs may be thought of as a somewhat autonomous binding entity that is presented by a variety of germline-encoded variable domain scaffolds without strong preference for particular CDR1 and 2 sequences. It would be interesting to see other examples of γδ TCR/ligand binding. CDR3 regions were found to be important for γδ T-cell recognition of MICA/MICB. In this case, the reactivity correlates only with a junction between Vδ1 and Jδ1. Aside from the W-(S)EGYEL motif, the T22-specific CDR3γδ sequences were diverse and were encoded by various Vδs, N- and P-nucleotides, and Dδ1s of different lengths and reading frames. Importantly, it was shown that sequence variations in the CDR3 regions around this motif modulated the affinity and the kinetics of T22 binding.[313] In fact, the T22-specific repertoire in normal mice covers a range of affinities, as is evident by the large range of T22 tetramer staining intensities.[300,316] This allows for the selection of T cells with the "most optimal" antigen-binding capabilities during an immune response, which is a hallmark of the adaptive immune response.

Nonetheless, such a repertoire that is created mainly by V, D, and J region–derived germline-encoded nucleotides, despite requiring VDJ recombination, would be "innate" in character, because the antigen specificities would be predetermined and the repertoire would be much less variable among individuals of the same species.

Analysis of the formation of T10/T22-reactive repertoire indicates that biases linked to the recombination machinery influence the generation of a γδT-cell repertoire toward certain specificities. A repertoire that is generated by recombination but conferred by a limited set of germline or germline-like residues at the CDR3 region will be created at a much higher frequency than one whose specificity is conferred primarily by N-nucleotide additions, as is the case with that of αβ TCRs. Indeed, the 1 in 100 frequency of T22-specific γδ T cells in normal mice is much higher than the estimated 1 in 10^5 to 10^6 frequency of naïve peptide/MHC-specific αβ T cells.[315–317] This could provide a solution to the apparent paucity of γδ T cells and could allow for a significant response without an initial need for clonal expansion as is required for most αβ T-cell responses. It was shown that rearrangements at the TCR δ locus are biased towards full-length Dδ2 sequences rather than extensive D region nucleotide deletion, as is the case for the TCR-β locus.[313] Thus, different reading frames of Dδ2 may contribute to the recognition of other ligands by γδ TCRs in a manner similar to that of T22-specific γδ TCRs and would lead to a repertoire that is biased toward a relatively small number of ligands, more on the order of hundreds to thousands versus millions as estimated for αβ T cells, but with highly variable antigen-binding affinities. A repertoire of this type would allow more flexible and efficient responses to changes in ligand expression. These are testable hypotheses, especially once more γδ TCR ligands have been identified.

GENERAL FEATURES OF T-CELL RECEPTOR AND IMMUNOGLOBULIN DIVERSITY

A Dominant Role for Diverse Complementarity-Determining Region 3 Regions in Antigen Specificity

One interesting observation that emerges from a detailed analysis of the gene rearrangements that create both TCR and Igs is how the diversity of the CDR3 loop region in one or both of the chains in a given TCR is so much greater than that available to the other CDRs. A schematic of this skewing of diversity is shown in Figure 11.16 for human Igs and for αβ and γδ TCR heterodimers. In the case of αβ TCRs, this concentration of diversity occurs in both Vα and Vβ CDR3 loops, and numerous TCR-peptide/MHC structures[160] have confirmed that these loops sit largely over the center of the antigenic peptide (see previous section). While this concentration of diversity in αβ TCRs in the regions of principal contact with the many possible antigenic peptides seems reasonable, it is much harder to explain for Ig or γδ TCRs. Clearly, there must be some chemical or structural "logic" behind this phenomenon. A clue as to what this might be comes from the elegant work of Shin et al.[313] in the demonstration that for at least one γδ T-cell specificity, the antigen recognition determinants are encoded by germline V or D region residues, with remaining sequence diversity modulating the affinity. While this may be a feature of some or many γδ TCRs, it could not explain the much broader repertoire of Igs. Instead, one possible explanation comes from the studies of Wells and colleagues,[288] who systematically mutated all of the amino acids (to alanine) at the interface of human growth hormone and its receptor as determined by x-ray crystallography. Interestingly, only a quarter of the 30 or so mutations on either side had any effect on the binding affinity, even in cases where the x-ray structural analysis showed that the amino acid side chains of most of the residues were "buried" in the other. This study illustrates an important caveat to the interpretation of protein crystal structures, which is that while they are invaluable for identifying which amino acids could be important in a given interaction, they do not indicate which ones are the most important. This is presumably because the "fit" at that many positions is not "exact" enough to add significant binding energy to the interaction.

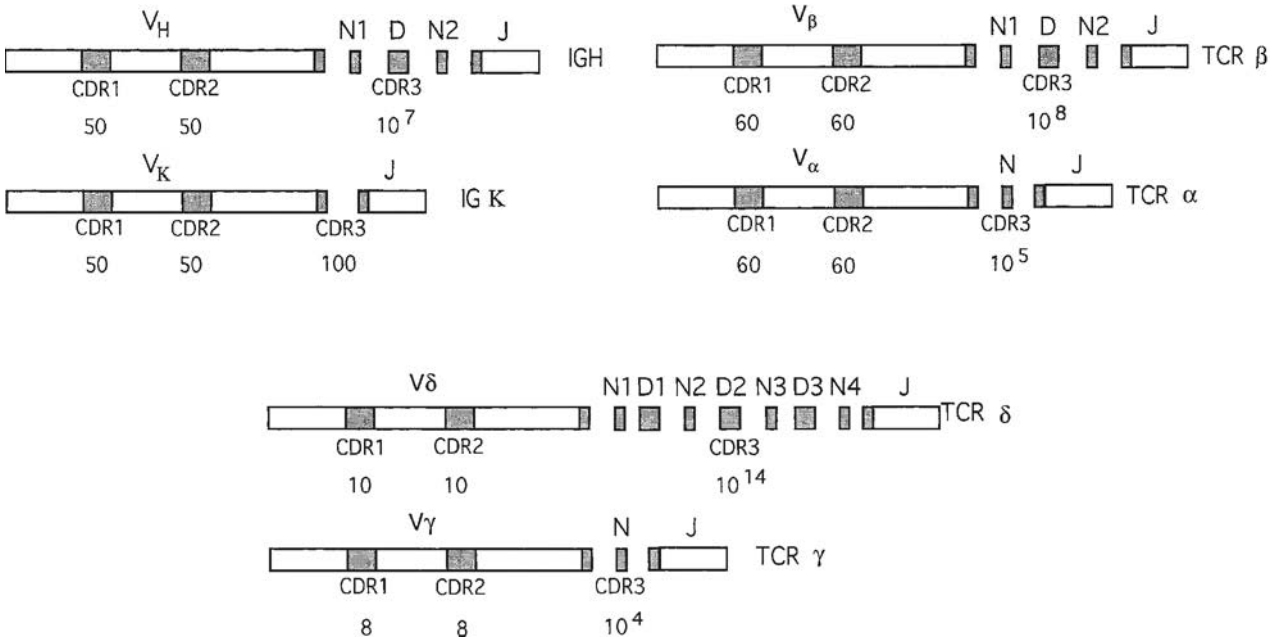


FIG. 11.16. Diversity "Map" of Immunoglobulins and T-Cell Receptors, Calculated Potential for Sequence Diversity in Human Antigen Receptor Molecules.[Adams et al., 153] The N region addition is assumed to contribute zero to six nucleotides to the junction of each gene segment, except for immunoglobulin K chains, in which this form of diversity is seldom used.

In this context, we have proposed a new model[319,320] in which the principle antigen specificity of an Ig or TCR is derived from its most diverse CDR3 loops. In the case of antibodies, we imagine that most of the specific contacts (and hence the free energy) with antigen are made by the V_H CDR3 and that the other CDRs provide "opportunistic" contacts that make generally only minor contributions to the energy of binding and specificity. Once antigen has been encountered and clonal selection activates a particular cell, somatic mutation would then "improve" the binding of the CDR1s and 2s to convert the typically low-affinity antibodies to the higher-affinity models as observed by Berek and Milstein,[135] and also by Patten et al.[136] As a test of this model, Xu et al.[315] analyzed mice that have a severely limited Ig V region repertoire, consisting of one V_H and effectively two V_Ls ($V\lambda_1$ and $V\lambda_2$). These mice are able to respond to a wide variety of protein and haptenic antigens, even with this very limited complement of V regions. In several cases, hybridomas specific for very different antigens (ovalbumin versus 2,4-dinitrophenol [DNP], for example) differ only in the V_H CDR3. A limited V region repertoire also seemed no barrier to deriving high-affinity antibodies with somatic mutation, as repeated immunizations produced IgG monoclonals with very high affinities (10^9 to 10^{-10} M). The major immune deficit in these mice was in their inability to produce antibodies to carbohydrates, which may require a special type of binding site or specific V region. Thus, while these experiments only involved one V_H, the results are highly suggestive about the inherent malleability of V_HV_L in general, at least with respect to protein and haptenic epitopes. With respect to αβ TCRs, we expect that most of the energy of the interaction with a typical ligand will reside in the CDR3-peptide contacts and here again the CDR1 and 2 regions will make less energetically important contacts. For γδ TCRs, it is not yet clear whether the T10/T22 specificity[313] is an isolated case or the general rule. From the hypothesis discussed here, if there are γδ TCRs that use the very large inherent diversity in the Vδ CDR3 directly for antigen recognition, it may be that the lack of somatic mutation forces it to provide more diversity in the initial repertoire (versus Igs).

CONCLUSION

Because TCR genes were first identified in the early 1980s, information about their genetics, biochemistry, structure, and function has accumulated to become almost a field unto itself. Despite this very real progress, many issues still remain unsolved such as: What do γδ T cells normally "see," and what function do they serve? What do superantigens actually do during the course of a normal response and how is this of benefit to the pathogen/parasite? What is the structural/chemical basis of TCR specificity? What sort of rearrangements or conformational charges occur in the TCR/CD3 molecular ensemble upon ligand engagement? These and other questions will require many more years of effort.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

We are grateful to M. Call, K. Wucherpfennig, M. Krangel, M. Krogsgaard, and K.C. Garcia for providing some of the figures and tables used here. We also thank C. Tato, M. Kuhns, M. Krogsgaard, Qi-jing Li, and K.C. Garcia for invaluable help with the manuscript, and R. Cuevas for expert assistance. This work was supported by grants from the National Institutes of Health (to M.M.D. and Y.C.) and from the Howard Hughes Medical Institute (to M.M.D.).

REFERENCES

1. Zinkernagel RM, Doherty PC. Immunological surveillance against altered self components by sensitised T lymphocytes in lymphocytic choriomeningitis. *Nature*. 1974;251(5475):547–548. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4547543
2. Zinkernagel RM, Doherty PC. H-2 compatability requirement for T-cell-mediated lysis of target cells infected with lymphocytic choriomeningitis virus. Different cytotoxic T-cell specificities are associated with structures coded for in H-2K or H-2D. *J Exp Med*. 1975;141(6):1427–1436. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/47901
3. Davies DR, Metzger H. Structural basis of antibody function. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 1983;1:87–117. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6399980
4. Sundberg EJ, Mariuzza RA. Molecular recognition in antibody-antigen complexes. *Adv Protein Chem*. 2002;61:119–160. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12461823
5. Bjorkman PJ, Saper MA, Samraoui B, Bennett WS, Strominger JL, Wiley DC. Structure of the human class I histocompatibility antigen, HLA-A2. *Nature*. 1987;329(6139):506–512. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3309677
6. Davis MM, Reich Z, Lyons D, Hampl J, Arden B, Chien Y. Ligand recognition by ab T cell receptors. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 1998;16:523–544. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9597140
7. Bendelac A, Savage PB, Teyton L. The biology of NKT cells. 2007;25:297–336. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17150027
8. Sakaguchi S, Ono M, Setoguchi R, et al. Foxp3+ CD25+ CD4+ natural regulatory T cells in dominant self-tolerance and autoimmune disease. *Immunol Rev*. 2006;212:8–27. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16903903
9. Cheroutre H. IELs: enforcing law and order in the court of the intestinal epithelium. *Immunol Rev*. 2005;206:114–131. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16048545
10. Haas W, Pereira P, Tonegawa S. Gamma/delta cells. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 1993;11:637–685. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8476575
11. Hayday AC. [gamma][delta] cells: a right time and a right place for a conserved third way of protection. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 2000;18:975–1026. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10837080
12. Havran WL, Jameson JM, Witherden DA. Epithelial cells and their neighbors. III. Interactions between intraepithelial lymphocytes and neighboring epithelial cells. *A m J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol*. 2005;289(4):G627–G630. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16160077
13. Chien YH, Jores R, Crowley MP. Recognition by gamma/delta T cells. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 1996;14:511–532. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8717523
14. Infante AJ, Infante PD, Gillis S, Fathman CG. Definition of T cell idiotypes using anti-idiotypic antisera produced by immunization with T cell clones. *J Exp Med*. 1982;155(4):1100–1107. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6174671
15. Allison JP, McIntyre BW, Bloch D. Tumor-specific antigen of murine T-lymphoma defined with monoclonal antibody. *J Immunol*. 1982;129(5):2293–2300. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6181166
16. Meuer SC, Fitzgerald KA, Hussey RE, Hodgdon JC, Schlossman SF, Reinherz EL. Clonotypic structures involved in antigen-specific human T cell function. Relationship to the T3 molecular complex. *J Exp Med*. 1983;157(2):705–719. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6185617
17. Haskins K, Kubo R, White J, Pigeon M, Kappler J, Marrack P. The major histocompatibility complex-restricted antigen receptor on T cells. I. Isolation with a monoclonal antibody. *J Exp Med*. 1983;157(4):1149–1169. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6601175
18. Kaye J, Porcelli S, Tite J, Jones B, Janeway CA Jr. Both a monoclonal antibody and antisera specific for determinants unique to individual cloned helper T cell lines can substitute for antigen and antigen-presenting cells in the activation of T cells. *J Exp Med*. 1983;158(3):836–856. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6193236
19. Samelson LE, Germain RN, Schwartz RH. Monoclonal antibodies against the antigen receptor on a cloned T-cell hybrid. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1983;80(22):6972–6976. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6316339
20. McIntyre BW, Allison JP. Biosynthesis and processing of murine T-cell antigen receptor. *Cell*. 1984;38(3):659–665. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6488315
21. Kappler J, Kubo R, Haskins K, et al. The major histocompatibility complex-restricted antigen receptor on T cells in mouse and man: identification of constant and variable peptides. *Cell*. 1983;35(1):295–302. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6605199
22. Davis M, Cohen EA, Nielsen AL, DeFranco AL, Paul WE. *The Isolation of B and T Cell-Specific Genes*. New York: Academic Press; 1982.
23. Hedrick SM, Cohen DI, Nielsen EA, Davis MM. Isolation of cDNA clones encoding T cell-specific membrane-associated proteins. *Nature*. 1984;308(5955):149–153. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6199676
24. Hedrick SM, Nielsen EA, Kavaler J, Cohen DI, Davis MM. Sequence relationships between putative T-cell receptor polypeptides and immunoglobulins. *Nature*. 1984;308(5955):153–158. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6546606
25. Yanagi Y, Yoshikai Y, Leggett K, Clark SP, Aleksander I, Mak TW. A human T cell-specific cDNA clone encodes a protein having extensive homology to immunoglobulin chains. *Nature*. 1984;308(5955):145–149. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6336315
26. Acuto O, Fabbi M, Smart J, et al. Purification and NH2-terminal amino acid sequencing of the beta subunit of a human T-cell antigen receptor. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1984;81(12):3851–3855. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6427776
27. Chien Y, Becker DM, Lindsten T, Okamura M, Cohen DI, Davis MM. A third type of murine T-cell receptor gene. *Nature*. 1984;312(5989):31–35. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6548551
28. Saito H, Kranz DM, Takagaki Y, Hayday AC, Eisen HN, Tonegawa S. A third rearranged and expressed gene in a clone of cytotoxic T lymphocytes. *Nature*. 1984;312(5989):36–40. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6208487
29. Saito H, Kranz DM, Takagaki Y, Hayday AC, Eisen HN, Tonegawa S. Complete primary structure of a heterodimeric T-cell receptor deduced from cDNA sequences. *Nature*. 1984;309(5971):757–762. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6330561
30. Brenner MB, McLean J, Dialynas DP, et al. Identification of a putative second T-cell receptor. *Nature*. 1986;322(6075):145–149. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3755221
31. Chien YH, Iwashima M, Kaplan KB, Elliott JF, Davis MM. A new T-cell receptor gene located within the alpha locus and expressed early in T-cell differentiation. *Nature*. 1987;327(6124):677–682. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2439914
32. Dembic Z, Haas W, Weiss S, et al. Transfer of specificity by murine alpha and beta T-cell receptor genes. *Nature*. 1986;320(6059):232–238. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2421164
33. Saito T, Weiss A, Miller J, Norcross MA, Germain RN. Specific antigen-Ia activation of transfected human T cells expressing murine Ti alpha beta-human T3 receptor complexes. *Nature*. 1987;325(7000):125–130. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3027582
34. Havran WL, Chien YH, Allison JP. Recognition of self antigens by skin-derived T cells with invariant gamma delta antigen receptors. *Science*. 1991;252(5011):1430–1432. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1828619
35. Lefranc MP, Lefranc G. *The T Cell Receptor: Facts Book*. London: Academic Press, Ltd. Harcourt Science and Technology Company; 2001.
36. Brenner MB, McLean J, Scheft H, et al. Two forms of the T-cell receptor gamma protein found on peripheral blood cytotoxic T lymphocytes. *Nature*. 1987;325(6106):689–694. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/310296
37. Groettrup M, Ungewiss K, Azogui O, et al. A novel disulfide-linked heterodimer on pre-T cells consists of the T cell receptor beta chain and a 33 kd glycoprotein. *Cell*. 1993;75(2):283–294. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8402912
38. Saint-Ruf C, Ungewiss K, Groettrup M, Bruno L, Fehling HJ, von Boehmer H. Analysis and expression of a cloned pre-T cell receptor gene. *Science*. 1994;266(5188):1208–1212. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7973703

39. Pang SS, Berry R, Chen Z, et al. The structural basis for autonomous dimerization of the pre-T-cell antigen receptor. *Nature*. 2010;467(7317):844–848. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20944746
40. Dave VP, Cao Z, Browne C, et al. CD3 delta deficiency arrests development of the alpha beta but not the gamma delta T cell lineage. *EMBO J*. 1997;16(6):1360–1370. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9135151
41. Call ME, Wucherpfennig KW. The T cell receptor: critical role of the membrane environment in receptor assembly and function. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 2005;23:101–125. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15771567
42. Terhorst C, Spits H, Stall F, Exley M. *T Lymphocyte Signal Transduction*. 2nd ed. Oxford, UK: IRL Press; 1996.
43. Klausner RD, Lippincott-Schwartz J, Bonifacino JS. The T cell antigen receptor: insights into organelle biology. *Annu Rev Cell Biol*. 1990;6:403–431. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2275818
44. Allison JP, Lanier LL. Identification of antigen receptor-associated structures on murine T cells. *Nature*. 1985;314(6006):107–109. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2579338
45. Lew AM, Maloy WL, Koning F, Valas R, Coligan JE. Expression of the human T cell receptor as defined by anti-isotypic antibodies. *J Immunol*. 1987;138(3):807–814. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3100617
46. Orloff DG, Frank SJ, Robey FA, Weissman AM, Klausner RD. Biochemical characterization of the eta chain of the T-cell receptor. A unique subunit related to zeta. *J Biol Chem*. 1989;264(25):14812–14817. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2768241
47. Jin YJ, Clayton LK, Howard FD, et al. Molecular cloning of the CD3 eta subunit identifies a CD3 zeta-related product in thymus-derived cells. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1990;87(9):3319–3323. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2139725
48. Clayton LK, D'Adamio L, Howard FD, et al. CD3 eta and CD3 zeta are alternatively spliced products of a common genetic locus and are transcriptionally and/or post-transcriptionally regulated during T-cell development. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1991;88(12):5202–5206. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1828894
49. Rodewald HR, Arulanandam AR, Koyasu S, Reinherz EL. The high affinity Fc epsilon receptor gamma subunit (Fc epsilon RI gamma) facilitates T cell receptor expression and antigen/major histocompatibility complex-driven signaling in the absence of CD3 zeta and CD3 eta. *J Biol Chem*. 1991;266(24):15974–15978. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1714902
50. Orloff DG, Ra CS, Frank SJ, Klausner RD, Kinet JP. Family of disulphide-linked dimers containing the zeta and eta chains of the T-cell receptor and the gamma chain of Fc receptors. *Nature*. 1990;347(6289):189–191. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2203969
51. Clevers H, Alarcon B, Wileman T, Terhorst C. The T cell receptor/CD3 complex: a dynamic protein ensemble. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 1988;6:629–662. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3289580
52. Sun ZJ, Kim KS, Wagner G, Reinherz ELp. Mechanisms contributing to T cell receptor signaling and assembly revealed by the solution structure of an ectodomain fragment of the CD3 epsilon gamma heterodimer. *Cell*. 2001;105(7):913–923. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11439187
53. Sun ZY, Kim ST, Kim IC, Fahmy A, Reinherz EL, Wagner G. Solution structure of the CD3epsilondelta ectodomain and comparison with CD3epsilongamma as a basis for modeling T cell receptor topology and signaling. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2004;101(48):16867–16872. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15557001
54. Kjer-Nielsen L, Dunstone MA, Kostenko L, et al. Crystal structure of the human T cell receptor CD3 epsilon gamma heterodimer complexed to the therapeutic mAb OKT3. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2004;101(20):7675–7680. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15136729
55. Arnett KL, Harrison SC, Wiley DC. Crystal structure of a human CD3-epsilon/delta dimer in complex with a UCHT1 single-chain antibody fragment. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2004;101(46):16268–16273. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15534202
56. Xu C, Call ME, Wucherpfennig KW. A membrane-proximal tetracysteine motif contributes to assembly of CD3{delta}{epsilon} and CD3{gamma}{epsilon} dimers with the T cell receptor. *J Biol Chem*. 2006;281(48):36977–36984. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17023417
57. Call ME, Pyrdol J, Wiedmann M, Wucherpfennig KW. The organizing principle in the formation of the T cell receptor-CD3 complex. *Cell*. 2002;111(7):967–979. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12507424
58. Cosson P, Lankford SP, Bonifacino JS, Klausner RD. Membrane protein association by potential intramembrane charge pairs. *Nature*. 1991;351(6325):414–416. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1827877
59. Hall C, Berkhout B, Alarcon B, Sancho J, Wileman T, Terhorst C. Requirements for cell surface expression of the human TCR/CD3 complex in non-T cells. *Int Immunol*. 1991;3(4):359–368. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1831654
60. Alarcon B, Ley SC, Sanchez-Madrid F, et al. The CD3-gamma and CD3-delta subunits of the T cell antigen receptor can be expressed within distinct functional TCR/CD3 complexes. *EMBO J*. 1991;10(4):903–912. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1826255
61. Klausner RD, Samelson LE. T cell antigen receptor activation pathways: the tyrosine kinase connection. *Cell*. 1991;64(5):875–878. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1848158
62. Reth M. Antigen receptor tail clue. *Nature*. 1989;338(6214):383–384. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2927501
63. Ashwell JD, Klusner RD. Genetic and mutational analysis of the T-cell antigen receptor. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 1990;8(5):139–167. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2188661
64. Cantrell DA, Davies AA, Crumpton MJ. Activators of protein kinase C down-regulate and phosphorylate the T3/T-cell antigen receptor complex of human T lymphocytes. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1985;82(23):8158–8162. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3934668
65. Xu C, Gagnon E, Call ME, et al. Regulation of T cell receptor activation by dynamic membrane binding of the CD3epsilon cytoplasmic tyrosine-based motif. *Cell*. 2008;135(4):702–713. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19013279
66. Zhang H, Cordoba S-P, Dushek O, van der Merwe PA. Basic residues in the T cell receptor zeta cytoplasmic domain mediate membrane association and signaling. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2011;48:19323–19328. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22084078
67. Kuhns MS, Davis MM, Garcia KC. Deconstructing the form and function of the TCR/CD3 complex. *Immunity*. 2006;24(2):133–139. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16473826
68. Minami Y, Weissman AM, Samelson LE, Klausner RD. Building a multichain receptor: synthesis, degradation, and assembly of the T-cell antigen receptor. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1987;84(9):2688–2692. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3495001
69. Bonifacino JS, Suzuki CK, Klausner RD. A peptide sequence confers retention and rapid degradation in the endoplasmic reticulum. *Science*. 1990;247(4938):79–82. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2294595
70. Delgado P, Alarcon B. An orderly inactivation of intracellular retention signals controls surface expression of the T cell antigen receptor. *J Exp Med*. 2005;201(4):555–566. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15728236
71. Koyasu S, D'Adamio L, Arulanandam AR, Abraham S, Clayton LK, Reinherz EL. T cell receptor complexes containing Fc epsilon RI gamma homodimers in lieu of CD3 zeta and CD3 eta components: a novel isoform expressed on large granular lymphocytes. *J Exp Med*. 1992;175(1):203–209. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1530959
72. Exley M, Wileman T, Mueller B, Terhorst C. Evidence for multivalent structure of T-cell antigen receptor complex. *Mol Immunol*. 1995;32(11):829–839. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7675043
73. Blumberg RS, Ley S, Sancho J, et al. Structure of the T-cell antigen receptor: evidence for two CD3 epsilon subunits in the T-cell receptor-CD3 complex. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1990;87(18):7220–7224. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2144901
74. Fernández-Miguel G, Alarcón B, Iglesias A, et al. Multivalent structure of an alphabetaT cell receptor. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1999;96(4):1547–1552. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9990061

75. Schamel WW, Risueno RM, Minguet S, Ortiz AR, Alarcon B. A conformation- and avidity-based proofreading mechanism for the TCR-CD3 complex. *Trends Immunol*. 2006;27(4):176–182. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16527543
76. Hayes SM, Laky K, El-Khoury D, Kappes DJ, Fowlkes BJ, Love PE. Activation-induced modification in the CD3 complex of the gammadelta T cell receptor. *J Exp Med*. 2002;196(10):1355–1361. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12438426
77. Hayes SM, Love PE. Stoichiometry of the murine {gamma}{delta} T cell receptor. *J Exp Med*. 2006;203(1):47–52. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16418397
78. Chien YH, Gascoigne NR, Kavaler J, Lee NE, Davis MM. Somatic recombination in a murine T-cell receptor gene. *Nature*. 1984;309(5966): 322–326. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6328306
79. Bosma M. B and T cell leakiness in the scid mouse mutant. *Immunodef Rev*. 1992;3:261. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1449786
80. Mombaerts P, Iacomini J, Johnson RS, Herrup K, Tonegawa S, Papaioannou VE. RAG-1-deficient mice have no mature B and T lymphocytes. *Cell*. 1992;68(5):869–877. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1547488
81. Shinkai Y, Rathbun G, Lam KP, et al. RAG-2-deficient mice lack mature lymphocytes owing to inability to initiate V(D)J rearrangement. *Cell*. 1992;68(5):855–867. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1547487
82. Krangel MS. Gene segment selection in V(D)J recombination: accessibility and beyond. *Nat Immunol*. 2003;4(7):624–630. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12830137
83. Fujimoto S, Yamagishi H. Isolation of an excision product of T-cell receptor alpha-chain gene rearrangements. *Nature*. 1987;327(6119): 242–243. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3033520
84. Okazaki K, Davis DD, Sakano H. T cell receptor beta gene sequences in the circular DNA of thymocyte nuclei: direct evidence for intramolecular DNA deletion in V-D-J joining. *Cell*. 1987;49(4):477–485. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3502705
85. Heilig JS, Tonegawa S. Diversity of murine gamma genes and expression in fetal and adult T lymphocytes. *Nature*. 1986;322(6082): 836–840. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2943999
86. Elliott JF, Rock EP, Patten PA, Davis MM, Chien YH. The adult T-cell receptor delta-chain is diverse and distinct from that of fetal thymocytes. *Nature*. 1988;331(6157):627–631. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2963227
87. Hata S, Satyanarayana K, Devlin P, et al. Extensive junctional diversity of rearranged human T cell receptor delta genes. *Science*. 1988; 240(4858):1541–1544. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3259726
88. Xiong N, Raulet DH. Development and selction of gamma/delta T cell receptor. *Immunol Rev*. 2007;215:15–31. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17291276
89. de Villartay JP, Lewis D, Hockett R, Waldmann TA, Korsmeyer SJ, Cohen DI. Deletional rearrangement in the human T-cell receptor alpha-chain locus. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1987;84(23):8608–8612. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3500476
90. Villey I, Caillol D, Selz F, Ferrier P, de Villartay JP. Defect in rearrangement of the most 5' TCR-J alpha following targeted deletion of T early alpha (TEA): implications for TCR alpha locus accessibility. *Immunity*. 1996;5(4):331–342. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8885866
91. Rowen L, Koop BF, Hood L. The complete 685-kilobase DNA sequence of the human beta T cell receptor locus. *Science*. 1996;272(5269): 1755–1762. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8650574
92. Noonan DJ, Kofler R, Singer PA, Cardenas G, Dixon FJ, Theofilopoulos AN. Delineation of a defect in T cell receptor beta genes of NZW mice predisposed to autoimmunity. *J Exp Med*. 1986;163(3):644–6453. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3005467
93. Chou HS, Nelson CA, Godambe SA, Chaplin DD, Loh DY. Germline organization of the murine T cell receptor beta-chain genes. *Science*. 1987;238(4826):545–548. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2821625
94. Woodland DL, Kotzin BL, Palmer E. Functional consequences of a T cell receptor D beta 2 and J beta 2 gene segment deletion. *J Immunol*. 1990;144(1):379–385. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2136887
95. Vernooij BT, Lenstra JA, Wang K, Hood L. Organization of the murine T-cell receptor gamma locus. *Genomics*. 1993;17(3):566–574. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8244371
96. Garman RD, Doherty PJ, Raulet DH. Diversity, rearrangement, and expression of murine T cell gamma genes. *Cell*. 1986;45(5):733–742. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3486721
97. LeFranc MP, Forster A, Baer R, Stinson MA, Rabbitts TH. Diversity and rearrangement of the human T cell rearranging gamma genes: nine germ-line variable genes belonging to two subgroups. *Cell*. 1986; 45(2):237–246. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2938743
98. Concannon P, Robinson MA. Human T-cell receptor gene nomenclature. *Ann N Y Acad Sci*. 1995;756:124–129. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7645818
99. Lefranc MP, Forster A, Rabbitts TH. Genetic polymorphism and exon changes of the constant regions of the human T-cell rearranging gene gamma. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*.1986;83(24):9596–9600. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2879283
100. Raulet DH. The structure, function, and molecular genetics of the gamma/delta T cell receptor. *Annu Rev Immunol*.1989;7(1):175–207. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2653369
101. Havran WL, Allison JP. Developmentally ordered appearance of thymocytes expressing different T-cell antigen receptors. *Nature*. 1988; 335(6189):443–445. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2458531

101a. G. Kershard, S.M. Hedrick, unpublished results

102. Korman A, Marusic-Galesic S, Spencer D, Kruisbeek A, Raulet DH. Predominant variable region gene usage by γ/δ T cell receptor-bearing cells in the adult thymus. *J Exp Med*.1988;168:1021–1040. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2971752
103. Heilig JS, Tonegawa S. Diversity of murine gamma genes and expression in fetal and adult T lymphocytes. *Nature*. 1986;322:836–840. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2943999
104. Asarnow DM, Goodman T, LeFrancois L, Allison JP. Distinct antigen receptor repertoires of two classes of murine epithelium-associated T cells. *Nature*.1989;341:60–62. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2528075
105. Sperling AI, Cron RQ, Decker DC, Stern DA, Bluestone JA. Peripheral T cell receptor gamma delta variable gene repertoire maps to the T cell receptor loci and is influenced by positive selection. *J Immunol*. 1992;149(10):3200–3207. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1431099
106. Pereira P, Gerber D, Huang SY, Tonegawa S. Ontogenic development and tissue distribution of V gamma 1-expressing gamma/delta T lymphocytes in normal mice. *J Exp Med*. 1995 182(6):1921–1930. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7500038
107. Lefrancois L, Puddington L. Extrathymic intestinal T-cell development: virtual reality? *Immunol Today*. 1995;16:16–21. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7880383
108. Raulet D, Spencer DM, Hsiang YH, et al. Control of γδ T cell development. *Immunol Rev*. 1991;120:185–204. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1650759
109. Goldman J, Spencer D, Raulet D. Ordered rearrangement of variable region genes of the T cell receptor gamma locus correlates with transcription of the unrearranged genes. *J Exp Med*. 1993;177:729–739. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8382255
110. Yancopoulos GD, Alt FW. Regulation of the assembly and expression of variable-region genes. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 1986;4:339–368. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3085692
111. Osipovich O, Milley R, Meade A, et al. Targeted inhibition of V(D) J recombination by a histone methyltransferase. *Nat Immunol*. 2004; 5(3):309–316. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14985714
112. Jackson AM, Krangel MS. Allele-specific regulation of TCR beta variable gene segment chromatin structure. *J Immunol*. 2005;175(8):5186–5191. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16210623
113. Hawwari A, Krangel MS. Regulation of TCR delta and alpha repertoires by local and long-distance control of variable gene segment chromatin structure. *J Exp Med*. 2005;202(4):467–472. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16087716

114. Hawwari A, Bock C, Krangel MS. Regulation of T cell receptor alpha gene assembly by a complex hierarchy of germline Jalpha promoters. *Nat Immunol*. 2005;6(5):481–489. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15806105
115. Abarrategui I, Krangel MS. Regulation of T cell receptor-alpha gene recombination by transcription. *Nat Immunol*. 2006;7(10):1109–1115. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16936730
116. McDougall S, Peterson CL, Calame K. A transcriptional enhancer 3′ of C beta 2 in the T cell receptor beta locus. *Science*. 1988;241(4862): 205–208. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2968651
117. Krimpenfort P, de Jong R, Uematsu Y, et al. Transcription of T cell receptor beta-chain genes is controlled by a downstream regulatory element. *EMBO J*. 1988;7(3):745–750. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3396541
118. Sleckman BP, Bardon CG, Ferrini R, Davidson L, Alt FW. Function of the TCR alpha enhancer in alphabeta and gammadelta T cells. *Immunity*. 1997;7(4):505–515. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9354471
119. Lauzurica P, Krangel MS. Temporal and lineage-specific control of T cell receptor alpha/delta gene rearrangement by T cell receptor alpha and delta enhancers. *J Exp Med*. 1994;179(6):1913–1921. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8195717
120. Lauzurica P, Krangel MS. Enhancer-dependent and -independent steps in the rearrangement of a human T cell receptor delta transgene. *J Exp Med*. 1994;179(1):43–55. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8270882
121. Waldmann TA, Davis MM, Bongiovanni KF, Korsmeyer SJ. Rearrangements of genes for the antigen receptor on T cells as markers of lineage and clonality in human lymphoid neoplasms. *N Engl J Med*. 1985; 313(13):776–783. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2993886
122. Winoto A, Baltimore D. Alpha beta lineage-specific expression of the alpha T cell receptor gene by nearby silencers. *Cell*. 1989;59(4): 649–655. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2582491
123. Diaz P, Cado D, Winoto A. A locus control region in the T cell receptor alpha/delta locus. *Immunity*. 1994;1(3):207–217. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7889409
124. Ishida I, Verbeek S, Bonneville M, Itohara S, Berns A, Tonegawa S. T-cell receptor gamma delta and gamma transgenic mice suggest a role of a gamma gene silencer in the generation of alpha beta T cells. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1990;87(8):3067–3071. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2326267
125. Spencer DM, Hsiang YH, Goldman JP, Raulet DH. Identification of a T-cell-specific transcriptional enhancer located 3′ of C gamma 1 in the murine T-cell receptor gamma locus. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1991; 88(3):800–804. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1992471
126. Baker JE, Kang J, Xiong N, Chen T, Cado D, Raulet DH. A novel element upstream of the Vgamma2 gene in the murine T cell receptor gamma locus cooperates with the 3′ enhancer to act as a locus control region. *J Exp Med*. 1999;190(5):669–679. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10477551
127. Xiong N, Kang C, Raulet DH. Redundant and unique roles of two enhancer elements in the TCRgamma locus in gene regulation and gammadelta T cell development. *Immunity*. 2002;16(3):453–463. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11911829
128. Uematsu Y, Ryser S, Dembic Z, et al. In transgenic mice the introduced functional T cell receptor beta gene prevents expression of endogenous beta genes. *Cell*. 1988;52(6):831–841. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3258191
129. Padovan E, Casorati G, Dellabona P, Meyer S, Brockhaus M, Lanzavecchia A. Expression of two T cell receptor alpha chains: dual receptor T cells. *Science*. 1993;262(5132):422–424. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8211163
130. Malissen M, Trucy J, Jouvin-Marche E, Cazenave PA, Scollay R, Malissen B. Regulation of TCR alpha and beta gene allelic exclusion during T-cell development. *Immunol Today*. 1992;13(8):315–322. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1324691
131. Wagner DH Jr. Re-shaping the T cell repertoire: TCR editing and TCR revision for good and for bad. *Clin Immunol*. 2007;123(1):1–6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16990051
132. Padovan E, Casorati G, Dellabona P, Meyer S, Brockhaus M, Lanzavecchia A. Expression of two T cell receptor alpha chains: dual receptor T cells. *Science*. 1993;262(5132):422–424. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8211163
133. Aifantis I, Buer J, von Boehmer H, Azogui O. Essential role of the pre-T cell receptor in allelic exclusion of the T cell receptor beta locus. *Immunity*. 1997;7(5):601–607. Erratum. *Immunity*. 1997;7(6): following 895. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9390684
134. O'Shea CC, Thornell AP, Rosewell IR, Hayes B, Owen MJ. Exit of the pre-TCR from the ER/cis-Golgi is necessary for signaling differentiation, proliferation, and allelic exclusion in immature thymocytes. *Immunity*. 1997;7(5):591–599. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9390683
135. Berek C, Milstein C. The dynamic nature of the antibody repertoire. *Immunol Rev*. 1988;105:5–26. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3058579
136. Patten PA, Gray NS, Yang PL, et al. The immunological evolution of catalysis. *Science*. 1996;271(5252):1086–1091. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8599084
137. van der Merwe PA, Barclay AN. Transient intercellular adhesion: the importance of weak protein-protein interactions. *Trends Biocheml Sci*. 1994;19(9):354–358. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7985226
138. Davis MM, Boniface JJ, Reich Z, et al. Ligand recognition by alpha beta T cell receptors. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 1998;16:523–544. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9597140
139. Valitutti S, Muller S, Cella M, Padovan E, Lanzavecchia A. Serial triggering of many T-cell receptors by a few peptide-MHC complexes. *Nature*. 1995;375(6527):148–151. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7753171
140. Davis MM, Huse M, Lillemeier BF. T cells as a self-referential sensory organ. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 2007;25:681–695. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17291190
141. Wu TT, Kabat EA. An analysis of the sequences of the variable regions of Bence Jones proteins and myeloma light chains and their implications for antibody complementarity. *J Exp Med*. 1970;132(2):211–250. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/5508247
142. Robins HS, Campregher PV, Srivastava SK, et al. Comprehensive assessment of T-cell receptor beta-chain diversity in alphabeta T cells. *Blood*. 2009;114(19):4099–4107. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19706884
143. Chothia C, Lesk AM, Tramontano A, et al. Conformations of immunoglobulin hypervariable regions. *Nature*. 1989;342(6252):877–883. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2687698
144. Rock EP, Sibbald PR, Davis MM, Chien YH. CDR3 length in antigen-specific immune receptors. *J Exp Med*. 1994;179(1):323–328. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8270877
145. Konigshofer Y, Chien YH. Gammadelta T cells-innate immune lymphocytes? *Curr Opin Immunol*. 2006;18(5):527–533. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16879956
146. Korsmeyer SJ. Chromosomal translocations in lymphoid malignancies reveal novel proto-oncogenes. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 1992;10(8):785–807. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1591003
147. Finger LR, Harvey RC, Moore RC, Showe LC, Croce CM. A common mechanism of chromosomal translocation in T- and B-cell neoplasia. *Science*. 1986;234(4779):982–985. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3490692
148. Baer R, Chen KC, Smith SD, Rabbitts TH. Fusion of an immunoglobulin variable gene and a T cell receptor constant gene in the chromosome 14 inversion associated with T cell tumors. *Cell*. 1985;43(3, pt 2):705–713. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3935328
149. Denny CT, Yoshikai Y, Mak TW, Smith SD, Hollis GF, Kirsch IR. A chromosome 14 inversion in a T-cell lymphoma is caused by site-specific recombination between immunoglobulin and T-cell receptor loci. *Nature*. 1986;320(6062):549–551. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3008004
150. Boehm T, Greenberg JM, Buluwela L, Lavenir I, Forster A, Rabbitts TH. An unusual structure of a putative T cell oncogene which allows production of similar proteins from distinct mRNAs. *EMBO J*. 1990;9(3):857–868. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2311586
151. McGuire EA, Hockett RD, Pollock KM, Bartholdi MF, O'Brien SJ, Korsmeyer SJ. The t(11;14)(p15;q11) in a T-cell acute lymphoblastic

leukemia cell line activates multiple transcripts, including Ttg-1, a gene encoding a potential zinc finger protein. *Mol Cell Biol*. 1989;9(5):2124–2132.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2501659

152. Royer-Pokora B, Loos U, Ludwig WD. TTG-2, a new gene encoding a cysteine-rich protein with the LIM motif, is overexpressed in acute T-cell leukaemia with the t(11;14)(p13;q11). *Oncogene*. 1991;6(10):1887–1893.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1923511
153. Boehm T, Foroni L, Kaneko Y, Perutz MF, Rabbitts TH. The rhombotin family of cysteine-rich LIM-domain oncogenes: distinct members are involved in T-cell translocations to human chromosomes 11p15 and 11p13. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1991;88(10):4367–4371.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2034676
154. Visvader J, Begley CG, Adams JM. Differential expression of the LYL, SCL and E2A helix-loop-helix genes within the hemopoietic system. *Oncogene*. 1991;6(2):187–194.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2000219
155. Finger LR, Kagan J, Christopher G, et al. Involvement of the TCL5 geneon human chromosome 1 in T-cell leukemia and melanoma. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1989;86(13):5039–5043.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2740341
156. Hatano M, Roberts CW, Minden M, Crist WM, Korsmeyer SJ. Deregulation of a homeobox gene, HOX11, by the t(10;14) in T cell leukemia. *Science*. 1991;253(5015):79–82.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1676542
157. O'Conner rD, Brown MG, Francke U. *Immunologic and Karyotypic Studies in Ataxia-Telangiectasia: Specificity of Break Points on Chromosomes 7 and 14 in Lymphocytes from Patients and Relatives*. New York, NY: Wiley; 1982.
158. Lipkowitz S, Stern MH, Kirsch IR. Hybrid T cell receptor genes formed by interlocus recombination in normal and ataxia-telangiectasis lymphocytes. *J Exp Med*. 1990;172(2):409–418.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1695665
159. Novotny J, Tonegawa S, Saito H, Kranz DM, Eisen HN. Secondary, tertiary, and quaternary structure of T-cell-specific immunoglobulin-like polypeptide chains. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1986;83(3):742–746.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3484824
160. Rudolph MG, Stanfield RL, Wilson IA. How TCRs bind MHCs, peptides, and coreceptors. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 2006;24:419–466.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16551255
161. Bentley GA, Boulot G, Karjalainen K, Mariuzza RA. Crystal structure of the beta chain of a T cell antigen receptor [see comments]. *Science*. 1995;267(5206):1984–1987.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7701320
162. Fields BA, Ober B, Malchiodi EL, et al. Crystal structure of the V alpha domain of a T cell antigen receptor. *Science*. 1995;270(5243):1821–1824.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8525376
163. Garcia KC, Scott CA, Brunmark A, et al. CD8 enhances formation of stable T-cell receptor/MHC class I molecule complexes. *Nature*. 1996;384(6609):577–581.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8955273
164. Garboczi DN, Ghosh P, Utz U, Fan QR, Biddison WE, Wiley DC. Structure of the complex between human T-cell receptor, viral peptide and HLA-A2. *Nature*. 1996;384(6605):134–141.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8906788
165. Garcia KC, Degano M, Stanfield RL, et al. An alphabeta T cell receptor structure at 2.5 A and its orientation in the TCR-MHC complex [see comments]. *Science*. 1996;274(5285):209–219.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8824178
166. Strong RK, Penny DM, Feldman RM, et al. Engineering and expression of a secreted murine TCR with reduced N-linked glycosylation. *J Immunol*. 1994;153(9):4111–4121.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7930615
167. Allison TJ, Winter CC, Fournie JJ, Bonneville M, Garboczi DN. Structure of a human gammadelta T-cell antigen receptor. *Nature*. 2001;411(6839):820–824.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11459064
168. Adams EJ, Chien YH, Garcia KC. Structure of a gammadelta T cell receptor in complex with the nonclassical MHC T22. *Science*. 2005;308(5719):227–231.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15821084
169. Li H, Lebedeva MI, Llera AS, Fields BA, Brenner MB, Mariuzza RA. Structure of the Vdelta domain of a human gammadelta T-cell antigen receptor. *Nature*. 1998;391(6666):502–506.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9461220
169a. Xu B, Pizarro JC, Holmes MA, et al. Crystal structure of a gammadelta T-cell receptor specific for human MHC class I homolog MICA. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2011;108:2414–2419.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21262824
170. Bonneville M, Fournie JJ. Sensing cell stress and transformation through Vgamma9Vdelta2 T cell-mediated recognition of the isoprenoid pathway metabolites. *Microbes Infect*. 2005;7(3):503–509.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15823511
171. Scotet E, Martinez LO, Grant E, et al. Tumor recognition following Vgamma9Vdelta2 T cell receptor interactions with a surface F1-ATPase-related structure and apolipoprotein A-I. *Immunity*. 2005;22(1):71–80.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15664160
172. Lin AY, Devaux B, Green A, Sagerstrom C, Elliott JF, Davis MM. Expression of T cell antigen receptor heterodimers in a lipid-linked form. *Science*. 1990;249(4969):677–679.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1696397
173. Gregoire C, Lin SY, Mazza G, Rebai N, Luescher IF, Malissen B. Covalent assembly of a soluble T cell receptor-peptide-major histocompatibility class I complex. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1996;93(14):7184–7189.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8692966
174. Teyton L. Assembly and transport of major histocompatibility complex molecules. *Nouv Rev Fr Hematol*. 1994;36(suppl 1):S33–S36.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7909942
175. Parham P, Terhorst C, Herrmann H, Humphreys RE, Waterfield MD, Strominger JL. Immunological and chemical purity of papain-solubilized HL-A antigens. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1975;72(4):1594–1598.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1055430
176. Wettstein DA, Boniface JJ, Reay PA, Schild H, Davis MM. Expression of a class II major histocompatibility complex (MHC) heterodimer in a lipid-linked form with enhanced peptide/soluble MHC complex formation at low pH. *J Exp Med*. 1991;174(1):219–228.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1829108
177. Garboczi DN, Hung DT, Wiley DC. HLA-A2-peptide complexes: refolding and crystallization of molecules expressed in Escherichia coli and complexed with single antigenic peptides. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1992;89(8):3429–3433.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1565634
178. Altman JD, Reay PA, Davis MM. Formation of functional peptide complexes of class II major histocompatibility complex proteins from subunits produced in Escherichia coli. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1993;90(21):10330–10334.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8234294
179. Jackson MR, Song ES, Yang Y, Peterson PA. Empty and peptide-containing conformers of class I major histocompatibility complex molecules expressed in Drosophila melanogaster cells. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1992;89(24):12117–12121.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1465448
180. Kozono H, White J, Clements J, Marrack P, Kappler J. Production of soluble MHC class II proteins with covalently bound single peptides. *Nature*. 1994;369(6476):151–154.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8177320
181. Matsui K, Boniface JJ, Reay PA, Schild H, Fazekas de St. Groth B, Davis MM. Low affinity interaction of peptide-MHC complexes with T cell receptors. *Science*. 1991;254(5039):1788–1791.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1763329
182. Weber S, Traunecker A, Oliveri F, Gerhard W, Karjalainen K. Specific low-affinity recognition of major histocompatibility complex plus peptide by soluble T-cell receptor. *Nature*. 1992;356(6372):793–796.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1315417
183. Malmqvist M. Biospecific interaction analysis using biosensor technology. *Nature*. 1993;361(6408):186–187.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7678451
184. Krogsgaard M, Prado N, Adams EJ, et al. Evidence that structural rearrangements and/or flexibility during TCR binding can contribute to T cell activation. *Mol Cell*. 2003;12(6):1367–1378.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14690592
185. Wyer JR, Willcox BE, Gao GF, et al. T cell receptor and coreceptor CD8 alphaalpha bind peptide-MHC independently and with distinct kinetics. *Immunity*. 1999;10(2):219–225.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10072074

186. Renard V, Romero P, Vivier E, Malissen B, Luescher IF. CD8 beta increases CD8 coreceptor function and participation in TCR-ligand binding. *J Exp Med*. 1996;184(6):2439–2444. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8976201
187. Xiong Y, Kern P, Chang H, Reinherz E. T cell receptor binding to a pMHCII ligand is kinetically distinct from and independent of CD4. *J Biol Chem*. 2001;27(8):5659–5667. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11106664
188. Huppa JB, Axmann M, Mörtelmaier MA, et al. TCR-peptide-MHC interactions in situ show accelerated kinetics and increased affinity. *Nature*. 2010;463(7283):963–967. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20164930
189. Huang J, Zarnitsyna VI, Liu B, et al. The kinetics of two-dimensional TCR and pMHC interactions determine T-cell responsiveness. *Nature*. 2010;464(7290):932–936. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20357766
190. Kaizuka Y, Douglass AD, Varma R, Dustin ML, Vale RD. Mechanisms for segregating T cell receptor and adhesion molecules during immunological synapse formation in Jurkat T cells. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2007;104:20296–20301. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18077330
191. Dustin ML, Ferguson LM, Chan PY, Springer TA, Golan DE. Visualization of CD2 interaction with LFA-3 and determination of the two-dimensional dissociation constant for adhesion receptors in a contact area. *J Cell Biol*. 1996;132(3):465–474. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8636222
192. Boniface JJ, Reich Z, Lyons DS, Davis MM. Thermodynamics of T cell receptor binding to peptide-MHC: evidence for a general mechanism of molecular scanning. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1999;96(20):11446–11451. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10500196
193. Kersh GJ, Allen PM. Essential flexibility in the T-cell recognition of antigen. *Nature*. 1996;380(6574):495–498. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8606766
194. Jameson SC, Bevan MJ. T cell receptor antagonists and partial agonists. *Immunity*. 1995;2(1):1–11. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7600296
195. Sykulev Y, Brunmark A, Jackson M, Cohen RJ, Peterson PA, Eisen HN. Kinetics and affinity of reactions between an antigen-specific T cell receptor and peptide-MHC complexes. *Immunity*. 1994;1(1):15–22. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7889394
196. Matsui K, Boniface JJ, Steffner P, Reay PA, Davis MM. Kinetics of T-cell receptor binding to peptide/I-Ek complexes: correlation of the dissociation rate with T-cell responsiveness. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1994;91(26):12862–12866. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7809136
197. Lyons DS, Lieberman SA, Hampl J, et al. A TCR binds to antagonist ligands with lower affinities and faster dissociation rates than to agonists. *Immunity*. 1996;5(1):53–61. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8758894
198. Alam SM, Travers PJ, Wung JL, et al. T-cell-receptor affinity and thymocyte positive selection. *Nature*. 1996;381(6583):616–620. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8637599
199. Kessler BM, Bassanini P, Cerottini JC, Luescher IF. Effects of epitope modification on T cell receptor-ligand binding and antigen recognition by seven H-2Kd-restricted cytotoxic T lymphocyte clones specific for a photoreactive peptide derivative. *J Exp Med*. 1997;185(4):629–640. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9034142
200. Holler PD. CD8(-) T cell transfectants that express a high affinity T cell receptor exhibit enhanced peptide-dependent activation. *J Exp Med*. 2001;194(8):1043–1052. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11602635
201. Krogsgaard M, Huppa JB, Purbhoo MA, Davis MM. Linking molecular and cellular events in T-cell activation and synapse formation. *Semin Immunol*. 2003;15(6):307–315. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15001169
202. Aivazian D, Stern LJ. Phosphorylation of T cell receptor zeta is regulated by a lipid dependent folding transition. *Nat Struct Biol*. 2000;7(11):1023–1026. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11062556
203. Qi S, Krogsgaard M, Davis MM, Chakraborty AK. Molecular flexibility can influence the stimulatory ability of receptor-ligand interactions at cell-cell junctions. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2006;103(12):4416–4421. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16537380
204. McKeithan TW. Kinetic proofreading in T-cell receptor signal transduction. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1995;92(11):5042–5046. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7761445
205. Rabinowitz JD, Beeson C, Lyons DS, Davis MM, McConnell HM. Kinetic discrimination in T-cell activation. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1996;93(4):1401–1405. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8643643
206. Reich Z, Boniface JJ, Lyons DS, Borochov N, Wachtel EJ, Davis MM. Ligand-specific oligomerization of T-cell receptor molecules. *Nature*. 1997;387(6633):617–620. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9177351
207. Stefanova I, Hemmer B, Vergelli M, Martin R, Biddison WE, Germain RN. TCR ligand discrimination is enforced by competing ERK positive and SHP-1 negative feedback pathways. *Nat Immunol*. 2003;4(3):248–254. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12577055
208. Altan-Bonnet G, Germain RN. Modeling T cell antigen discrimination based on feedback control of digital ERK responses. *PLoS Biol*. 2005;3(11):e356. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16231973
209. Viola A, Lanzavecchia A. T cell activation determined by T cell receptor number and tunable thresholds. *Science*. 1996;273(5271):104–106. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8658175
210. Holler PD, Lim AR, Cho BK, Rund LA, Kranz DM. CD8(-) T cell transfectants that express a high affinity T cell receptor exhibit enhanced peptide-dependent activation. *J Exp Med*. 2001;194(8):1043–1052. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11602635
211. Weber KS, Donermeyer DL, Allen PM, Kranz DM. Class II-restricted T cell receptor engineered in vitro for higher affinity retains peptide specificity and function. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2005;52:19033–19038. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16365315
212. Xie, J, Huppa JB, Newell EW, et al. Photocrosslinkable pMHC monomers stain T cells specifically and cause ligand-bound TCRs to be 'preferentially' transported to the cSMAC. *Nat Immunol*. 2012;7:674–680. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22660579
213. Krogsgaard M, Li QJ, Sumen C, Huppa JB, Huse M, Davis MM. Agonist/endogenous peptide-MHC heterodimers drive T cell activation and sensitivity. *Nature*. 2005;434(7030):238–243. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15724150
214. Davis MM, Bjorkman PJ. T-cell antigen receptor genes and T-cell recognition. *Nature*. 1988;334(6181):395–402. Erratum. *Nature*. 1988;335(6192):744. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3043226
215. Engel I, Hedrick SM. Site-directed mutations in the VDJ junctional region of a T cell receptor beta chain cause changes in antigenic peptide recognition. *Cell*. 1988;54(4):473–484. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2456856
216. Katayama CD, Eidelman FJ, Duncan A, Hooshmand F, Hedrick SM. Predicted complementarity determining regions of the T cell antigen receptor determine antigen specificity. *EMBO J*. 1995;14(5):927–938. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7534228
217. Jorgensen JL, Esser U, Fazekas de St Groth B, Reay PA, Davis MM. Mapping T-cell receptor-peptide contacts by variant peptide immunization of single-chain transgenics. *Nature*. 1992;355(6357):224–230. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1309938
218. Sant'Angelo DB, Waterbury G, Preston-Hurlburt P, et al. The specificity and orientation of a TCR to its peptide-MHC class II ligands. *Immunity*. 1996;4(4):367–376. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8612131
219. Newell EW, Ely LK, Kruse AC, et al. Structural basis of specificity and cross-reactivity in T cell receptors specific for cytochrome c-I-E(k). *J Immunol*. 2011;186(10):5823–5832. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21490152
220. Jorgensen JL, Reay PA, Ehrich EW, Davis MM. Molecular components of T-cell recognition. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 1992;10(6357):835–873. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1591005
221. Hennecke J, Wiley DC. T cell receptor-MHC interactions up close. *Cell*. 2001;104(1):1–4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11163234
222. Adams JJ, Narayanan S, Liu B, et al. T cell receptor signaling is limited by docking geometry to peptide-major histocompatibility complex. *Immunity*. 2011;11:681–693. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22101157

223. Nanda NK, Arzoo KK, Geysen HM, Sette A, Sercarz EE. Recognition of multiple peptide cores by a single T cell receptor. *J Exp Med*. 1995; 182(2):531–539.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7629510
224. Mason D. A very high level of crossreactivity is an essential feature of the T-cell receptor. *Immunol Today*. 1998;19(9):395–404.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9745202
225. Wilson DB, Pinilla C, Wilson DH, et al. Immunogenicity. I. Use of peptide libraries to identify epitopes that activate clonotypic CD4+ T cells and induce T cell responses to native peptide ligands. *J Immunol*. 1999;163(12):6424–6434.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10586032
226. Maynard J, Petersson K, Wilson DH, et al. Structure of an autoim-mune T cell receptor complexed with class II peptide-MHC: insights into MHC bias and antigen specificity. *Immunity*. 2005;22(1):81–92.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15664161
227. Huseby ES, Crawford F, White J, Marrack P, Kappler JW. Interface-disrupting amino acids establish specificity between T cell receptors and complexes of major histocompatibility complex and peptide. *Nat Immunol*. 2006;7(11):1191–1199.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17041605
228. Yachi PP, Ampudia J, Gascoigne NR, Zal T. Nonstimulatory peptides contribute to antigen-induced CD8-T cell receptor interaction at the immunological synapse. *Nat Immunol*. 2005;6(8):785–792.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15980863
229. Garcia KC, Degano M, Pease LR, et al. Structural basis of plasticity in T cell receptor recognition of a self peptide-MHC antigen. *Science*. 1998; 279(5354):1166–1172.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9469799
230. Reiser JB, Gregoire C, Darnault C, et al. A T cell receptor CDR3beta loop undergoes conformational changes of unprecedented magnitude upon binding to a peptide/MHC class I complex. *Immunity*. 2002; 16(3):345–354.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11911820
231. Reinherz EL, Tan K, Tang L, et al. The crystal structure of a T cell receptor in complex with peptide and MHC class II. *Science*. 1999; 286(5446):1913–1921.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10583947
232. Willcox BE, Gao GF, Wyer JR, et al. TCR binding to peptide-MHC stabilizes a flexible recognition interface. *Immunity*. 1999;10(3): 357–365.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10204491
233. Wu LC, Tuot DS, Lyons DS, Garcia KC, Davis MM. Two-step binding mechanism for T-cell receptor recognition of peptide MHC. *Nature*. 2002;418(6897):552–556.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12152083
234. Tynan FE, Burrows SR, Buckle AM, et al. T cell receptor recognition of a "super-bulged" major histocompatibility complex class I-bound peptide. *Nat Immunol*. 2005;6(11):1114–1122.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16186824
235. Feng D, Bond CJ, Ely LK, Maynard J, Garcia KC. Structural evidence for a germline-encoded T cell receptor-major histocompatibility complex interaction "codon." *Nat Immunol*. 2007;8:975–983.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17694060
236. Dai S, Huseby ES, Rubtsova K, et al. Crossreactive T cells spotlight the germline rules for alphabeta T cell-receptor interactions with MHC molecules. *Immunity*. 2008;28:324–334.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18308592
237. Janeway CA Jr. The T cell receptor as a multicomponent signalling machine: CD4/CD8 coreceptors and CD45 in T cell activation. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 1992;10:645–674.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1534242
238. Irvine DJ, Purbhoo MA, Krogsgaard M, Davis MM. Direct observation of ligand recognition by T cells. *Nature*. 2002;419(6909):845–849.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12397360
239. Purbhoo MA, Irvine DJ, Huppa JB, Davis MM. T cell killing does not require the formation of a stable mature immunological synapse. *Nat Immunol*. 2004;5(5):524–530.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15048111
240. Yin Y, Wang XX, Mariuzza RA. Crystal structure of a complete ternary complex of T-cell receptor, peptide-MHC, and CD4. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2012;109(14):5405–5410.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22431638
241. Luescher IF, Vivier E, Layer A, et al. CD8 modulation of T-cell antigen receptor-ligand interactions on living cytotoxic T lymphocytes. *Nature*. 1995;373:353–358.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7830771
242. Wyer JR, Willcox BE, Gao GF, et al. T cell receptor and coreceptor CD8αα bind peptide-MHC independently and with distinct kinetics. *Immunity*. 1999;10(2):219–225.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10072074
243. Artyomov MN, Lis M, Devadas S, Davis MM, Chakraborty AK. CD4 and CD8 binding to MHC molecules primarily acts to enhance Lck delivery. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2010;107(39):16916–16921.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20837541
244. Wulfing C, Sumen C, Sjaastad MD, Wu LC, Dustin ML, Davis MM. Costimulation and endogenous MHC ligands contribute to T cell recognition. *Nat Immunol*. 2002;3(1):42–47.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11731799
245. Hampl J, Chien YH, Davis MM. CD4 augments the response of a T cell to agonist but not to antagonist ligands. *Immunity*. 1997;7(3):379–385.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9324358
246. Jiang N, Huang J, Edwards LJ, et al. Two-stage cooperative T cell receptor-peptide major histocompatibility complex-CD8 trimolecular interactions amplify antigen discrimination. *Immunity*. 2011;34(1):13–23.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21256056
247. Marrack P, Kappler J. The staphylococcal enterotoxins and their relatives. *Science*. 1990;248(4959):1066.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2343314
248. Sundberg EJ, Li Y, Mariuzza RA. So many ways of getting in the way: diversity in the molecular architecture of superantigen-dependent T-cell signaling complexes. *Curr Opin Immunol*. 2002;14(1):36–44.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11790531
249. Festenstein H. Immunogenetic and biological aspects of in vitro lymphocyte allotransformation (MLR) in the mouse. *Transplant Rev*. 1973;15:62–88.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4130133
250. Kappler JW, Staerz U, White J, Marrack PC. Self-tolerance eliminates T cells specific for Mls-modified products of the major histocompatibility complex. *Nature*. 1988;332(6159):35–40.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3126396
251. Woodland DL, Happ MP, Gollob KJ, Palmer E. An endogenous retrovirus mediating deletion of alpha beta T cells? *Nature*. 1991;349(6309): 529–530.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1846949
252. Marrack P, Kushnir E, Kappler J. A maternally inherited superantigen encoded by a mammary tumour virus. *Nature*. 1991;349(6309):524–526.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1846947
253. Choi Y, Kappler JW, Marrack P. A superantigen encoded in the open reading frame of the 3′ long terminal repeat of mouse mammary tumour virus. *Nature*. 1991;350(6315):203–207.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1706480
254. Dyson PJ, Knight AM, Fairchild S, Simpson E, Tomonari K. Genes encoding ligands for deletion of V beta 11 T cells cosegregate with mammary tumour virus genomes. *Nature*. 1991;349(6309):531–532.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1846950
255. Frankel WN, Rudy C, Coffin JM, Huber BT. Linkage of Mls genes to endogenous mammary tumour viruses of inbred mice. *Nature*. 1991;349(6309):526–528.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1846948
256. Janeway CA Jr, Yagi J, Conrad PJ, et al. T-cell responses to Mls and to bacterial proteins that mimic its behavior. *Immunol Rev*. 1989;107: 61–88.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2522086
257. McDonald KR, Acha-Orbea H. Superantigens of mouse mammary tumor virus. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 1995;13:459.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7612231
258. Li H, Llera A, Malchiodi EL, Mariuzza RA. The structural basis of T cell activation by superantigens. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 1999;17:435–466.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10358765
259. Stuart PM, Woodward JG. Yersinia enterocolitica produces superantigenic activity. *J Immunol*. 1992;148(1):225–233.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1345786
260. Abe J, Takeda T, Watanabe Y, et al. Evidence for superantigen production by Yersinia pseudotuberculosis. *J Immunol*. 1993;151(8):4183–4188.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8409395

261. Tomai M, Kotb M, Majumdar G, Beachey EH. Superantigenicity of streptococcal M protein. *J Exp Med*. 1990;172(1):359–362. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2358781
262. Cole BC, Kartchner DR, Wells DJ. Stimulation of mouse lymphocytes by a mitogen derived from Mycoplasma arthritidis. VII. Responsiveness is associated with expression of a product(s) of the V beta 8 gene family present on the T cell receptor alpha/beta for antigen. *J Immunol*. 1989;142(12):4131–4137. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2786024
263. Friedman SM, Crow MK, Tumang JR, et al. Characterization of human T cells reactive with the Mycoplasma arthritidis-derived superantigen (MAM): generation of a monoclonal antibody against V beta 17, the T cell receptor gene product expressed by a large fraction of MAM-reactive human T cells. *J Exp Med*. 1991;174(4):891–8900. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1833503
264. Lafon M, Scott-Algara D, Marche PN, Cazenave PA, Jouvin-Marche E. Neonatal deletion and selective expansion of mouse T cells by exposure to rabies virus nucleocapsid superantigen. *J Exp Med*. 1994;180(4):1207–1215. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7931058
265. Dobrescu D, Ursea B, Pope M, Asch AS, Posnett DN. Enhanced HIV-1 replication in V beta 12 T cells due to human cytomegalovirus in monocytes: evidence for a putative herpesvirus superantigen. *Cell*. 1995; 82(5):753–763. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7671303
266. Yao Z, Maraskovsky E, Spriggs MK, Cohen JI, Armitage RJ, Alderson MR. Herpesvirus saimiri open reading frame 14, a protein encoded by T lymphotropic herpesvirus, binds to MHC class II molecules and stimulates T cell proliferation. *J Immunol*. 1996;156(9):3260–3266. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8617948
267. Sutkowski N CB, Thorley-Lawson DA, Huber BT. Epstein-Barr virus transactivates the human endogenous retrovirus HERV-K18 that encodes a superantigen. *Immunity*. 2001;15:579–589. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11672540
268. Denkers EY, Caspar P, Sher A. Toxoplasma gondii possesses a superantigen activity that selectively expands murine T cell receptor V beta 5-bearing CD8+ lymphocytes. *J Exp Med*. 1994;180(3):985–994. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8064244
269. Held W, Waanders GA, Shakhov AN, Scarpellino L, Acha-Orbea H, MacDonald HR. Superantigen-induced immune stimulation amplifies mouse mammary tumor virus infection and allows virus transmission. *Cell*. 1993;74(3):529–540. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8394220
270. Golovkina TV, Chervonsky A, Dudley JP, Ross SR. Transgenic mouse mammary tumor virus superantigen expression prevents viral infection. *Cell*. 1992;69(4):637–645. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1316806
271. Stauffer Y, Marquerat S, Meylan F, et al. Interferon-induced endogenous superantigen: a model linking environment and autoimmunity. *Immunity*. 2001;15:591–601. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11672541
272. Dalwadi H, Wei B, Kronenberg M, Sutton CL, Braun J. The Crohn's disease-associated bacterial protein I2 is a novel enteric t cell superantigen. *Immunity*. 2001;15(1):149–158. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11485746
273. Malchiodi EL, Eisenstein E, Fields BA, et al. Superantigen binding to a T cell receptor of known three-dimensional structure. *J Exp Med*. 1995;182:1833. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7500029
274. Patten PA RE, Sonoda T, Fazekas de St. Groth B, Davis MM. Transfer of putative CD$ loops of T cell receptor V domains confers toxin reactivity, but not peptide specificity. *J Immunol*. 1993;150:2281–2294. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7680688
275. Fields BA, Malchiodi EL, Li H, et al. Crystal structure of a T-cell receptor beta-chain complexed with a superantigen. *Nature*. 1996; 384(6605):188–192. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8906797
276. Li Y, Li H, Dimasi N, et al. Crystal structure of a superantigen bound to the high-affinity, zinc-dependent site on MHC class II. *Immunity*. 2001; 14(1):93–104. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11163233
277. Peterson K, Håkansson M, Nilsson H, et al. Crystal structure of a superantigen bound to MHC class II displays zinc and peptide dependence. *EMBO J*. 2001;20:3306–3312. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11432818
278. Felds BA, Malchiodi EL, Li HM, et al. Crystal structure of the chain of a T-cell receptor complexed with a superantigen. *Nature*. 1996;384:188. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8906797
279. Rojo JM, Janeway CA Jr. The biologic activity of anti-T cell receptor V region monoclonal antibodies is determined by the epitope recognized. *J Immunol*. 1988;140(4):1081–1088. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2449495
280. Bjorkman PJ, Saper MA, Samraoui B, Bennett WS, Strominger JL, Wiley DC. Structure of the human class I histocompatibility antigen, HLA-A2. *Nature*. 1987;329(6139):506–512. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3309677
281. Madden DR, Gorga JC, Strominger JL, Wiley DC. The structure of HLA-B27 reveals nonamer self-peptides bound in an extended conformation. *Nature*. 1991;353(6342):321–325. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1922337
282. Brown JH, Jardetzky TS, Gorga JC, et al. Three-dimensional structure of the human class II histocompatibility antigen HLA-DR1. *Nature*. 1993;364(6432):33–39. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8316295
283. Bluestone JA, Cron RQ, Cotterman M, Houlden BA, Matis LA. Structure and specificity of T cell receptor gamma/delta on major histocompatibility complex antigen-specific CD3+, CD4-, CD8- T lymphocytes. *J Exp Med*. 1988;168(5):1899–1916. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2846743
284. Matis LA, Fry AM, Cron RQ, Cotterman MM, Dick RF, Bluestone JA. Structure and specificity of a class II MHC alloreactive gamma delta T cell receptor heterodimer. *Science*. 1989;245(4919):746–749. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2528206
285. Schild H, Mavaddat N, Litzenberger C, et al. The nature of major histocompatibility complex recognition by gamma delta T cells. *Cell*. 1994;76(1):29–37. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8287478
286. Hampl J, Schild H, Litzenberger C, Baron M, Crowley MP, Chien YH. The specificity of a weak gamma delta TCR interaction can be modulated by the glycosylation of the ligand. *J Immunol*. 1999;163(1):288–294. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10384127
287. Fremont DH, Dai S, Chiang H, Crawford F, Marrack P, Kappler J. Structural basis of cytochrome c presentation by IE(k). *J Exp Med*. 2002;195(8):1043–1052. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11956295
288. Clackson T, Wells JA. A hot spot of binding energy in a hormone-receptor interface. *Science*. 1995;267(5196):383–386. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7529940
289. Honig B, Nicholls A. Classical electrostatics in biology and chemistry. *Science*. 1995;268(5214):1144–1149. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7761829
290. Ito K, Van Kaer L, Bonneville M, Hsu S, Murphy DB, Tonegawa S. Recognition of the product of a novel MHC TL region gene (27b) by a mouse gamma delta T cell receptor. *Cell*. 1990;62(3):549–561. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2379238
291. Houlden BA, Matis LA, Cron RQ, et al. A TCR gamma delta cell recognizing a novel TL-encoded gene product. *Cold Spring Harb Symp Quant Biol*. 1989;54(pt 1):45–55. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2576978

291a. Crowley MP, thesis

292. Crowley MP, Reich Z, Mavaddat N, Altman JD, Chien Y. The recognition of the nonclassical major histocompatibility complex (MHC) class I molecule, T10, by the gammadelta T cell, G8. *J Exp Med*. 1997; 185(7):1223–1230. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9104809
293. Wingren C, Crowley MP, Degano M, Chien Y, Wilson IA. Crystal structure of a gammadelta T cell receptor ligand T22: a truncated MHC-like fold. *Science*. 2000;287(5451):310–314. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10634787
294. Rudolph MG, Wingren C, Crowley MP, Chien YH, Wilson IA. Combined pseudo-merohedral twinning, non-crystallographic symmetry and pseudo-translation in a monoclinic crystal form of the gammadelta T-cell ligand T10. *Acta Crystallogr D Biol Crystallogr*. 2004; 60(pt 4):656–664. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15039553
295. Kaliyaperumal A, Falchetto R, Cox A, et al. Functional expression and recognition of nonclassical MHC class I T10b is not peptide-dependent. *J Immunol*. 1995;155(5):2379–2386. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7650372

295a Schild H, Chien YH, Rammensee H. unpublished results

296. Weintraub BC, Jackson MR, Hedrick SM. Gamma delta T cells can recognize nonclassical MHC in the absence of conventional antigenic peptides. *J Immunol*. 1994;153(7):3051–3058. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8089486

297. Crowley MP, Fahrer AM, Baumgarth N, et al. A population of murine gammadelta T cells that recognize an inducible MHC class Ib molecule. *Science*. 2000;287(5451):314–316. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10634788

298. Sciammas R, Bluestone JA. HSV-1 glycoprotein I-reactive TCR gamma delta cells directly recognize the peptide backbone in a conformationally dependent manner. *J Immunol*. 1998;161(10):5187–5192. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9820489

299. Wu J, Groh V, Spies T. T cell antigen receptor engagement and specificity in the recognition of stress-inducible MHC class I-related chains by human epithelial gamma delta T cells. *J Immunol*. 2002;169(3):1236–1240. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12133944

300. Groh V, Steinle A, Bauer S, Spies T. Recognition of stress-induced MHC molecules by intestinal epithelial gammadelta T cells. *Science*. 1998;279(5357):1737–1740. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9497295

301. Das B, Mondragon MO, Sadeghian M, Hatcher VB, Norin AJ. A novel ligand in lymphocyte-mediated cytotoxicity: expression of the beta subunit of H+ transporting ATP synthase on the surface of tumor cell lines. *J Exp Med*. 1994;180(1):273–281. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8006588

302. Bie W, Squire JA, Fraser M, Paterson MC, Godbout R. Mitochondrial ATP synthase alpha-subunit gene amplified in a retinoblastoma cell line maps to chromosome 18. *Genes Chromosomes Cancer*. 1995;14(1):63–67. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8527386

303. Moser TL, Stack MS, Asplin I, et al. Angiostatin binds ATP synthase on the surface of human endothelial cells. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1999; 96(6):2811–2816. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10077593

304. Villanueva MS, Beckers CJ, Pamer EG. Infection with Listeria monocytogenes impairs sialic acid addition to host cell glycoproteins. *J Exp Med*. 1994;180(6):2137–2145. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7964488

305. Wittel UA, Goel A, Varshney GC, Batra SK. Mucin antibodies-new tools in diagnosis and therapy of cancer. *Front Biosci*. 2001;6: D1296–D1310. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11578978

306. Meyer C, Zeng X, Chien YH. Ligand recognition during thymic development and gammadelta T cell function specification. *Semin Immunol*. 2010;22(4):207–213. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20430644

306a. Jensen KD, Su X, Shin S, et al. Thymic selection determines gammadelta T cell effector fate: antigen-naive cells make interleukin-17 and antigen-experienced cells make interferon gamma. *Immunity*. 2008;29:90–100. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18585064

306b. Stark MA, Huo Y, Burcin TL, et al. Phagocytosis of apoptotic neutrophils regulates granulopoiesis via IL-23 and IL-17. *Immunity*. 2005; 22:285–294. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15780986

307. Dunn SE, Youssef S, Goldstein MJ, et al. Isoprenoids determine Th1/Th2 fate in pathogenic T cells, providing a mechanism of modulation of autoimmunity by atorvastatin. *J Exp Med*. 2006;203(2):401–412. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16476765

308. Carding SR, Egan PJ. Gammadelta T cells: functional plasticity and heterogeneity. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2002;2(5):336–345. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12033739

309. O'Brien RL, Lahn M, Born WK, Huber SA. T cell receptor and function cosegregate in gamma-delta T cell subsets. *Chem Immunol*. 2001;79: 1–28. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11478152

310. Hahn YS, Taube C, Jin N, et al. Different potentials of gamma delta T cell subsets in regulating airway responsiveness: V gamma 1+ cells, but not V gamma 4+ cells, promote airway hyperreactivity, Th2 cytokines, and airway inflammation. *J Immunol*. 2004;172(5):2894–2902. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14978091

311. Andrew EM, Newton DJ, Dalton JE, et al. Delineation of the function of a major gamma delta T cell subset during infection. *J Immunol*. 2005;175(3):1741–1750. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16034115

312. Janeway CA Jr, Jones B, Hayday A. Specificity and function of T cells bearing gamma delta receptors. *Immunol Today*. 1988;9(3):73–76. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2978457

313. Shin S, El-Diwany R, Schaffert S, et al. Antigen recognition determinants of gammadelta T cell receptors. *Science*. 2005;308(5719): 252–255. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15821090

314. Zhao H, Nguyen H, Kang J. Interleukin 15 controls the generation of the restricted T cell receptor repertoire of gamma delta intestinal in-traepithelial lymphocytes. *Nat Immunol*. 2005;6(12):1263–1271. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16273100

315. Xu JL, Davis MM. Diversity in the CDR3 region of V(H) is sufficient for most antibody specificities. *Immunity*. 2000;13(1):37–45. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10933393

316. Klinman NR, Pickard AR, Sigal NH, Gearhart PJ, Metcalf ES, Pierce SK. Assessing B cell diversification by antigen receptor and precursor cell analysis. *Ann Immunol (Paris)*. 1976;127(3–4):489–502. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/60906

317. McHeyzer-Williams MG, Altman JD, Davis MM. Enumeration and characterization of memory cells in the TH compartment. *Immunol Rev*. 1996;150:5–21. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8782699

318. Arstila TP, Casrouge A, Baron V, Even J, Kanellopoulos J, Kourilsky P. A direct estimate of the human alphabeta T cell receptor diversity. *Science*. 1999;286(5441):958–961. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10542151

319. Davis MM, Lyons DS, Altman JD, et al. T cell receptor biochemistry, repertoire selection and general features of TCR and Ig structure. *Ciba Found Symp*. 1997;204:94–100, discussion 104. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9107414

320. Davis MM. The evolutionary and structural "logic" of antigen receptor diversity. *Semin Immunol*. 2004;16(4):239–243. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15522622

CHAPTER 12

Mechanisms of T-Lymphocyte Signaling and Activation

Takashi Saito

INTRODUCTION

The immune system protects us against attack by pathogens through two separate but interacting systems: innate immunity and acquired (or adaptive) immunity. Whereas innate immunity exhibits rapid and transient responses by recognition of conserved molecular patterns of pathogens, adaptive immunity distinguishes any small difference/heterogeneity of a huge number of pathogens and antigens and mediates a rather slow but long-lasting response. For this purpose, as is discussed elsewhere (see Chapter 6) in this volume, our body prepares a vast variety of receptors on T cells and B cells (immunoglobulins [Igs]) to be able to recognize virtually all potential antigens. Because each lymphocyte possesses single antigen specificity, antigen-specific responses begin with the recognition by and activation of a single cell and consequently the cells proliferate, a process called clonal expansion and selection many years ago by Macfarlane Burnet.[1] To understand the mechanism of antigen-specific activation of lymphocytes, it is necessary to study how a single cell of relevant specificity recognizes the antigen and induces its activation to mediate various functions and protection against pathogens. Recognition of antigen only on the cell surface by the T-cell receptor (TCR) of a T cell is unique and totally different from that of Ig on a B cell. Such differences in T-cell antigen recognition force the establishment of extensive cell-cell interactions/communications in the body to achieve protective immunity and to maintain immune homeostasis. In this chapter, we describe the unique feature of antigen recognition of T cells through their unique antigen receptor complex and the mechanisms that trigger T-cell activation.

T-CELL RECEPTOR COMPLEX

Antigen specific recognition is mediated by the TCR, which is composed of a heterodimer of either αβ or γδ polypeptides. This chapter will focus on signaling mediated through the αβ TCR. As described in Chapter 11, both TCRα and β chains contain variable regions, which together are responsible for binding to the complex of antigen peptide-major histocompatibility complex (MHC). After a decades-long search for the biochemical nature of TCR, the TCR genes were finally cloned and found to be quite similar to those encoding Ig genes.[2–6] TCRα and β chains both possess very short cytoplasmic domains without any particular protein-binding motif, and thus cannot transduce antigen-recognition signals into the cell. It is necessary, therefore, for the TCR to assemble with signal-transducing components, the cluster of differentiation (CD)3 complex, to transduce antigen-recognition signals. The initial finding that CD3 chains are responsible for transducing activation signals into T cells came from the observation that treatment of T cells with a crosslinking anti-CD3ε antibody (OKT3) induces strong T-cell polyclonal activation[7] similar to that induced upon stimulation with mitogens such as concanavalin A. It was also shown that there is a physical but noncovalent association between TCR dimers and the CD3 complex. It is now known that the association of the TCR dimer and the CD3 complex is required first for cell surface expression and then to transduce antigen-recognition signals into T cells.[8,9] The CD3 complex is composed of four different chains. Three of them, γ, δ, and e, are closely related in their protein structure, gene structure, biosynthesis, and chromosome localization. While the γ, δ, and ε are genes are located within a neighboring region of the chromosome (chromosome 11 in human and 9 in mouse), ζ is located on chromosome 1 in both species (Fig. 12.1). The CD3 complex is composed of three distinct dimers, γε, δε, and ζζ, which associate with the TCRαβ dimer. Whereas γε and δε are noncovalently assembled, ζ–ζ is a covalently linked dimmer with a disulfide bond. The ζ chain has an isoform termed η, which is derived from alternative splicing of the ζ transcript and is found only in rodents but not in humans. The cell surface expression of the TCRαβ dimer requires its assembly with the CD3 complex due to a stringent quality control checkpoints in the endoplasmic reticulum (ER) that prevent the release of incompletely assembled TCR-CD3 complexes. Studies of the biosynthesis of these components of the this complex showed that CD3γ, δ, and ε as well as TCRα and β chains are synthesized in great excess and readily degraded in the ER in the absence of assembly with the other chains. The assembly with the partner chain protects the complex from ER degradation. CD3ζ is synthesized at limiting levels, and even the TCRαβ-CD3γδε complex cannot be transferred to the cell surface without assembly with CD3ζζ and is degraded in lysosome.[10] Therefore, the assembly with ζ–ζ defines the fully functional TCR-CD3 complex, and the entire TCRαβ-CD3γδεζζ complex is now allowed to transport to the plasma membrane where it is expressed as the complete and functional TCR-CD3 complex.

THE IMMUNORECEPTOR TYROSINE-BASED ACTIVATION MOTIF AND INITIAL SIGNALING

The cytoplasmic tails of all CD3 chains contain a common signaling motif, immunoreceptor tyrosine-based activation motif (ITAM), which has the consensus sequence YxxL/I x6-8 YxxL; composed of two repeats of YxxL/I motif (Y; tyrosine, L/I; leucine/isoleucine) with a spacer of six to eight

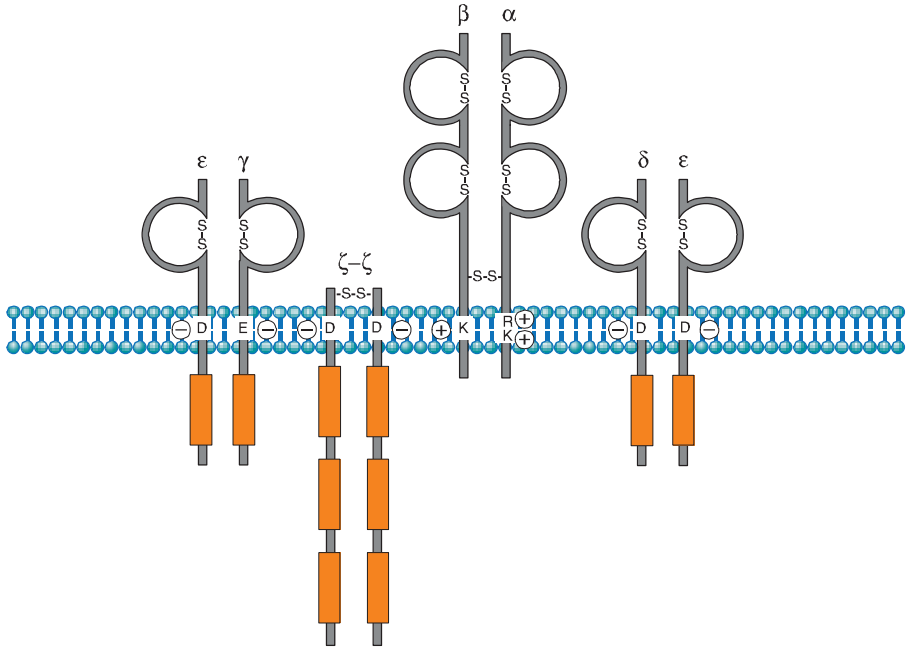


FIG. 12.1. Structure of the T-Cell Receptor (TCR)-Cluster of Differentiation (CD)3 Complex. The TCRαβ dimer is associated with three dimers of CD3 chains: CD3εγ, CD3εδ, and CD3ζζ. Whereas TCRα and β possess positively charged amino acids within the transmembrane region, all CD3 chains contain negatively charged amino acids, which are necessary to be assembled as the complex. CD3 chains possess immunoreceptor tyrosine-based activation motif (ITAM) within their cytoplasmic tails as shown in *red boxes* (γ, δ, and ε have one; ζ has three).

amino acids. CD3δ, γ, and ε have a single and CD3ζ has three tandem ITAMs within the intracellular region. The ITAM was first identified as a signature sequence present in several cell surface receptors on immune cells.[11] ITAM-containing molecules have since been found to be widely distributed among various important immune receptors, not only TCR (CD3s) but also in B-cell antigen receptors (Igα and Igβ), various types of Fc receptors (FcRγ), adaptor proteins associated with MHC-recognizing receptors, or paired receptors on natural killer (NK) cells (DAP12 and DAP10) (Fig. 12.2) and further in various pattern-recognizing receptors of innate cells such as macrophages and dendritic cells (DCs).[12] The ITAM turns out to be specific motif capable of transducing receptor–mediated recognition signals into cellular activation.[13] The function of the ITAM in transducing T-cell activation signals has been shown first by analyzing the capacity of a chimeric protein composed of the extracellular domain of CD8 and the intracellular domain of CD3ζ to

		Amino acid sequence
TCR	CD3γ	EQLYQPLKD–REYDQYSHL
	CD3δ	EQLYQPLRD–REDTQYSRL
	CD3ε	NPDYEPIRK–GQRDLYSGL
	CD3ζa	NQLYNELNL–GRREEYDVL
	CD3ζb	EGVYNALQKDKMAEAYSEI
	CD3ζc	DGLYQGLST–ATKDTYDAL
BCR	Igα	ENLYEGLNL–DDCSMYEDI
	Igβ	DHTYEGLNI–DQTATYEDI
FcR	FcRγ	DAVYTGLNT–RSQETYETL
	FcεRIβ	DRLYEELNH–VYSPIYSEL
NKR	DAP12	ESPYQELQG–QRPEVYSDL
Virus	BLV gp30	DSDYQALLP–SAPEIYSHL
	EBV LMP2A	HSDYQPLGT–QDQSLYLGL
	consensus	Dx x Yx x Lx x –x x x x x Yx x L E I I

FIG. 12.2. Structure and Signaling Function of Immunoreceptor Tyrosine-based Activation Motif (ITAM). Cluster of differentiation 3s (T cells), Ig-α/β (B cells), FcR (myeloid cells; macrophages, dendritic cells, neutrophils, etc.), NK cells, as well as some viruses possess ITAM within the cytoplasmic domain. There are increasing numbers of ITAM-bearing or ITAM$^+$ adaptor–associated receptors in innate systems. The consensus sequence of the ITAM is composed of YxxL/I- (seven or eight spacers)- YxxL/I where x is any amino acid. The tyrosine residues within ITAM are phosphorylated by src family kinase Lck upon TCR engagement, followed by the binding of the tandem two SH2 domains of ZAP-70 to both phosphorylated tyrosines in T cells.

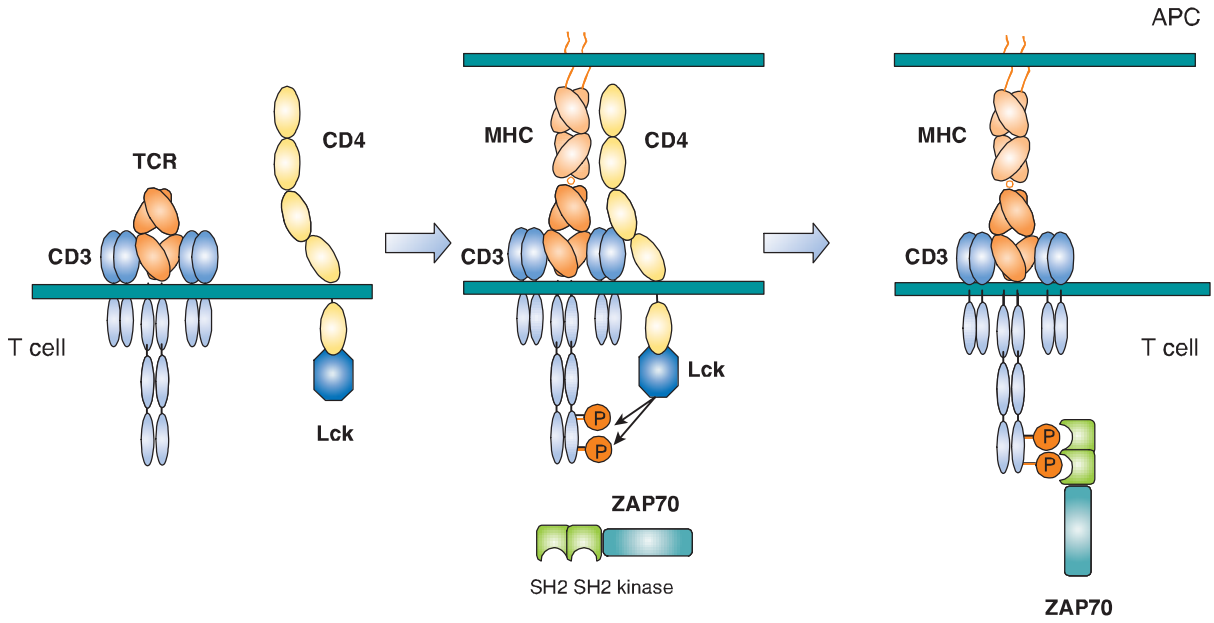


FIG. 12.3. Initial Activation of T Cells by Sequential Two Tyrosine Kinases. Left: The T-cell receptor (TCR)-cluster of differentiation (CD)3 complex and the complex of CD4 and the Src kinase Lck are located separately in resting T cells. **Middle:** Upon antigen peptide-major histocompatibility complex (MHC) recognition by TCR, the TCR complex and the CD4-Lck complex get near through the CD4-MHC binding, which induces Lck close to the CD3 chains. The immunoreceptor tyrosine-based activation motif (ITAMs) of CD3 chains are tyrosine-phosphorylated by Lck. **Right:** The phosphorylated ITAM of the CD3 chains became the binding sites for the tandem two Src-homology 2 domains of the second tyrosine kinase ZAP-70. ZAP-70 is phosphorylated by Lck and by itself and activated, and then transduces activation signals by phosphorylating downstream signaling molecules.

induce T-cell activation.[14] Antibody crosslinking of the CD8 domain showed that the cytoplasmic tail of CD3ζ can induce almost all the events observed during normal T-cell activation, including tyrosine phosphorylation of various proteins, induction of intracellular calcium mobilization and inositol phosphate metabolism, induction of activation markers, cytokine production, and cell proliferation. Mutational analyses of the ITAM sequences within the CD3ζ cytoplasmic region revealed that both tyrosine and leucine (isoleucine) residues are critical for transducing a T-cell activation signal.[15–16]

Biochemical analyses to define the downstream signaling molecules recruited upon TCR stimulation resulted in the discovery of several important proteins that are involved in tyrosine phosphorylation and activation of several adaptor molecules including a Src family tyrosine kinase, Lck, and a Syk family kinase, Zeta-associated protein-70 (ZAP-70).[17] The ITAM is phosphorylated by Src kinase Lck upon TCR engagement by antigen. Once tyrosines are phosphorylated, they become susceptible to binding in general by proteins possessing Src-homology 2 (SH2) domains. The phosphorylated ITAMs recruit the second tyrosine kinase ZAP-70, one of Syk family kinases. ZAP-70 is contains two tandem SH2 domains in its N terminus and a tyrosine kinase region in the C-terminus.[18,19] The tandem SH2 domains with exactly the right spacing can bind the two phosphorylated tyrosines within an ITAM[20] (Fig. 12.3). Because TCR and CD3 chains do not have any intrinsic effector function, unlike tyrosine kinase-containing receptors such as the epidermal growth factor receptor or the insulin receptor, the binding of ZAP-70 to the phosphorylated CD3ζ ITAM changes the TCR-CD3 complex, making it competent for signal transduction. ZAP-70 assembled with the CD3 phospho-ITAMs must then be enzymatically activated by phosphorylation of otherwise inhibitory tyrosines in its juxtamembrane region by Lck as well as by itself. The binding and activation of ZAP-70 may be associated with the structural changes of CD3 chains induced by phosphorylation, a topic that will be described under the section Triggering Mechanism. Activated ZAP-70 induces phosphorylation of tyrosine residues of various downstream target molecules.[21] These include adaptor molecules LAT and SLP-76. These phosphorylation events lead to further activation of several adaptor and effector molecules and subcellular assembly as multimolecular signaling complex.

REGULATION OF PROXIMAL SIGNALING

Regulation of Tyrosine Kinases

Src family tyrosine kinases (Lck, Fyn in T cells) are composed of an N-terminus unique region, SH2, SH3, and a kinase domain at the C-terminus.[22] The N-terminus unique region contains palmitoylation sites by which Lck is localized in lipid rafts on the inner leaflet of the plasma membrane. Because Lck specifically associates with the cytoplasmic regions of CD4 and CD8 coreceptors, Lck accumulates at the site of TCR engagement because CD4 or CD8 are also present within the engaged site through binding to MHC.[23,24] As a result, Lck is recruited to the vicinity of the CD3 chains where it is able to phosphorylate them.

The activity of Lck is regulated allosterically by phosphorylation of a tyrosine in the carboxyl terminus by the

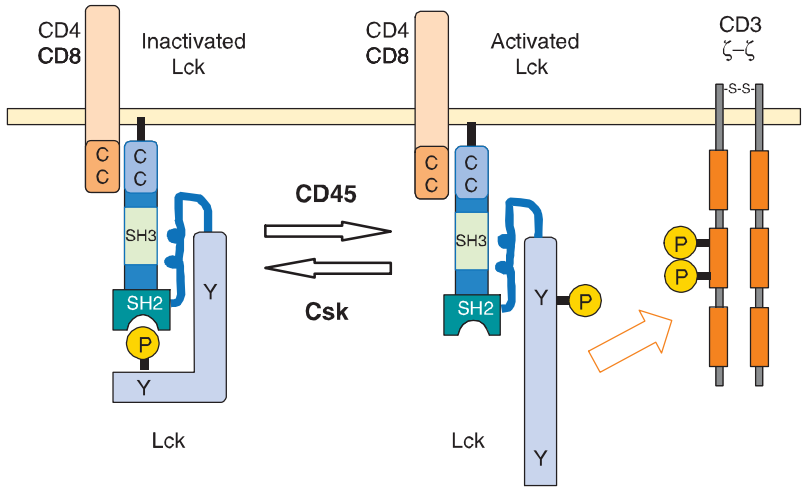


FIG. 12.4. Regulation of the Src Kinase Lck Activation by the Tyrosine Kinase Csk and the Phosphatase Cluster of Differentiation (CD)45. In resting T cells, Lck has a closed configuration through the intra-association between the phosphorylated tyrosine at the C terminus and the Src-homology 2 domain. C-terminus src kinase (Csk) phosphorylates this regulatory tyrosine residue. The association between CD4 and Lck is mediated by the interaction of the cysteine-containing regions of both molecules. CD45 dephosphorylates the C-terminus tyrosine, which alters the configuration from the closed structure as the "inactivated Lck" to an open shape as the "activated Lck" with active kinase function.

C-terminal kinase (Csk).[25] This phosphotyrosine interacts with the SH2 domain of Lck, and this induces a conformational change to maintain Lck in a catalytically inactive status. Csk normally and continuously acts to reduce Lck activity and thereby attenuate TCR signaling. Indeed, in the absence of Csk, peripheral T cells become autonomously activated. Dephosphorylation of the C-terminus tyrosine releases Lck from its inactive status. In addition, in order to fully activate Lck, the tyrosine phosphorylation in the catalytic domain is also required. Because the tyrosine phosphatase CD45 induces the dephosphorylation of both of these regulatory tyrosines, CD45 functions as both a positive and negative regulator of T-cell activation[26] through the C-terminal and kinase-domain tyrosines, respectively. The balance between Csk and CD45 regulates the status of T-cell activation[27] (Fig. 12.4). A considerable fraction of Lck in naïve T cells is catalytically active because of this dynamic balance. Such active Lck may be responsible for constitutive activation signals including phosphorylation of CD3ζ and help in initiating T-cell activation.[28] A related src-family kinase Fyn is also expressed in T cells and is weakly associated with the TCR complex. Fyn appears to have some signaling role because T cells deficient in both Lck and Fyn have a more complete block in T-cell development than Lck-deficient mice.

Adaptor-Mediated Signaling

Among the targets of ZAP-70–mediated phosphorylation, a transmembrane adaptor protein, linker for the activation of T cells (LAT),[29] and an intracellular adaptor protein, SH2 domain–containing leukocyte phophoprotein of 76 kDa (SLP-76),[30] are the most important substrates (Fig. 12.5). The discovery of these two adaptor proteins revealed the connection between the ZAP-70 tyrosine kinase and PLCγ activation. These adaptor proteins create an important signal assembly to induce downstream activation signals. The critical roles of these two adaptors are evidenced by the observation that T cells deficient in either LAT or SLP-76 exhibit complete defects in TCR activation signaling.

LAT is a transmembrane protein with a short extracellular region and resides in lipid rafts, membrane microdomains enriched in cholesterol and sphingolipids, via two palmitoylation sites within the juxtamembrane region. Mutation of these palmitoylation sites results in the failure of LAT to be expressed on the plasma membrane or to transduce T-cell activation, indicating that the association within lipid rafts regulates trafficking to the membrane. Upon TCR stimulation, LAT becomes tyrosine-phosphorylated on multiple tyrosine residues (five tyrosines among nine conserved residues), and these serve as the docking sites for several SH2-containing molecules. Important effector molecules containing SH2 domains that bind to phosphorylated LAT include PLCγ, growth factor receptor binding protein 2 family members, Grb2 and Gads, and a Tec family kinase, inducible T-cell kinase Itk.[31] Because Grb2 constitutively binds to son of sevenless (Sos), which is a guanine exchange factor (GEF) that mediates guanine triphosphate (GTP) binding of Ras, this LAT-Grb2-Sos complex induces Ras activation; however, RasGRP plays a more critical role for Ras activation than the Grb2-Sos pathway in T cells. Gads binds to phosphor-LAT upon T-cell activation, and Gads associates with SLP-76. Although all tyrosine mutations of LAT lost the function for T-cell activation, the LAT136 mutant mouse exhibits a lymphoproliferative disorder and induction of strong Th2-type cytokine production, suggesting the possibility of a LAT-independent pathway to activate T cells.[32,33]

SLP-76 is a cytosolic adaptor with three domains: an amino terminal region containing three major tyrosines that are phosphorylated upon TCR ligation and become binding sites for various SH2-containing proteins, a central proline-rich domain that binds to SH3-containing proteins, and a carboxy-terminal SH2 domain by which SLP-76 can bind to phosphorylated tyrosines of other proteins.[34] SLP-76 constitutively associates with Gads through its SH3 region, and the SLP-76/Gads complex is recruited to the phosphorylated LAT upon TCR engagement (Fig. 12.6). Both LAT and SLP-76/Gads bind to PLCγ1 independently, and formation of this tetramolecular assembly stabilizes the complex. Because LAT also binds to the Itk Tec family kinase,

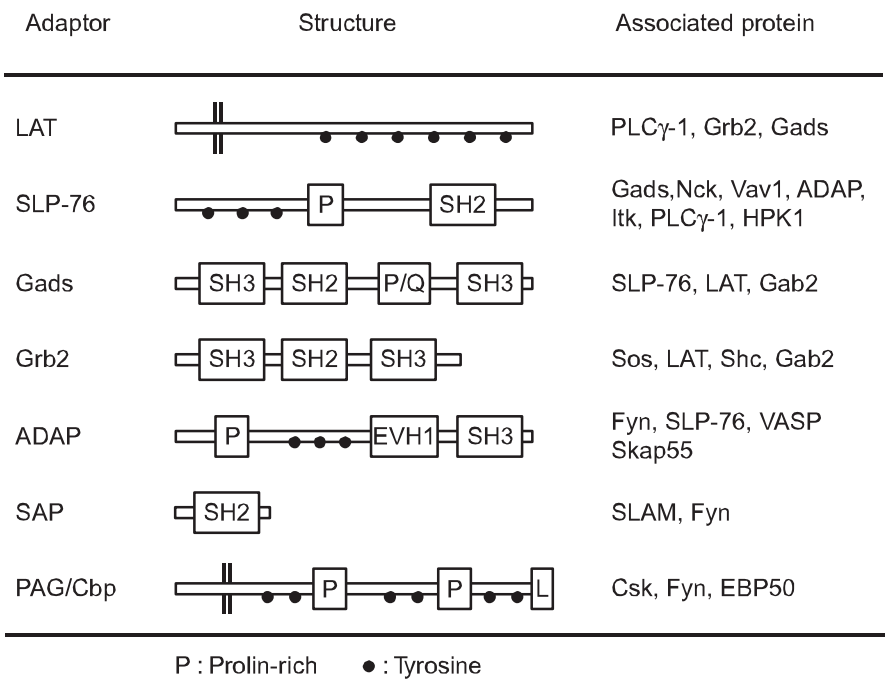


FIG. 12.5. Adapter Molecules Functioning Downstream of T-Cell Receptor Signals. The structure of several adapters described in the text are depicted. These adapter molecules are composed of several modules critical for signal transduction such as Src-homology 2 (SH2) and Src-homology 3 (SH3). Whereas tyrosine residues (*black dot*) functions as the docking sites for SH2 upon phosphorylation, the prolin-rich regions (*P*) interact with SH3. Some of these adaptors with the transmembrane regions are localized on the plasma membrane as "membrane adaptors" such as LAT and PAG/Cbp, whereas others within the cytosol as "intracellular adaptors." ADAP, adhesion- and degranulation-promoting adapter protein; Gads, Grb2-related adapter downstream of Shc; LAT, linker for activated T cells; PAG/Cbp, phosphoprotein associated with glycosphingolipid-enriched domains/csk-binding protein; SAP, signal lymphocyte activation molecule–associated protein; SLP-76, SH2 domain–containing leukocyte-specific phosphoprotein of 76 kDa.

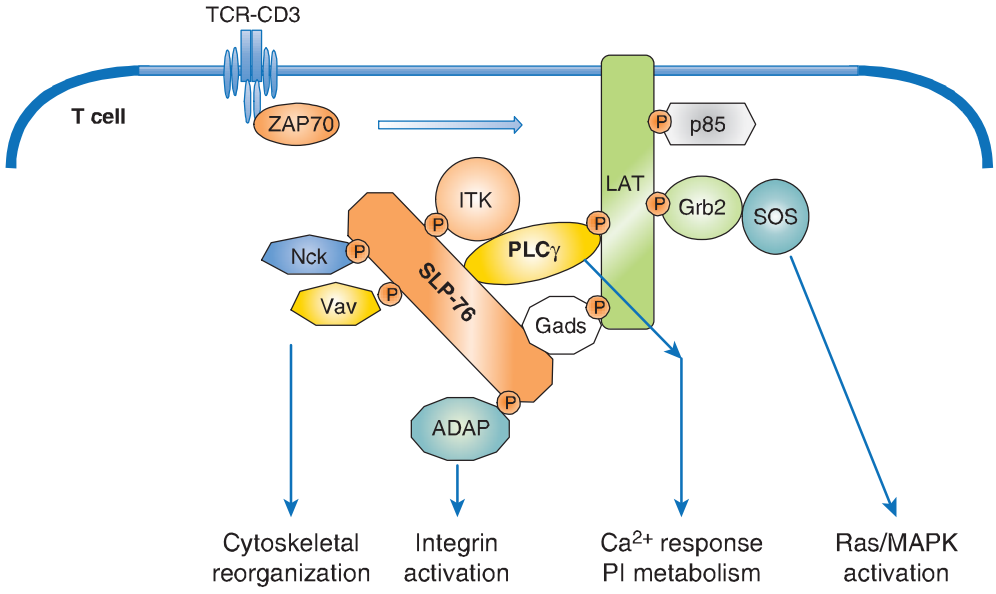


FIG. 12.6. Formation of Multimolecular Signaling Complex Critical for Initial T-Cell Receptor (TCR) Activation Signaling Pathways. Sequential activation of two tyrosine kinases Lck and ZAP-70 upon antigen recognition by TCR induces phosphorylation of two critical adapter proteins LAT and SLP76. Gads constitutively associates with SLP76 and is phosphorylated by TCR activation and recruited to LAT as the Gads-SLP76 complex. Thereafter, several adapter proteins form a physical complex centralized by LAT and SLP-76. Further recruitment of various adapters and effector molecules to the complex leads to the activation of differential signaling pathways. Phospholipase γ1 (PLC-γ1) and Gads link between LAT and SLP76 and a Tec-kinase family ITK, which binds to SLP76, is responsible to phosphorylate/activate PLCγ1. Association of these molecules generates a stable complex of LAT-Gads-SLP76-PLCγ1-ITK critical for further calcium and phosphatidylinositol (PI) responses (as in Fig. 12.7). SLP76 also binds Nck, Vav1, and ADAP, which links to cytoskeletal reorganization (as in Fig. 12.11). LAT binds Grb2/Sos, which induces Ras/MAPK activation (as in Fig. 12.8).

which is responsible for phosphorylating PLCγ1, the stable complex of Itk-LAT-SLP-76-PLCγ1 induces PLCγ1 activation. Besides PLCγ1 activation, SLP-76 induces other functions through its association with several other important molecules. At its N-terminus, SLP-76 binds to Vav, a GEF, and Nck, an adaptor protein, both of which are critical for TCR-mediated cytoskeletal changes, and at its C-terminus it binds adhesion- and degranulation-promoting adapter protein (ADAP),[35,36] an adapter protein coordinating TCR signals with integrin activation (see Fig. 12.12).

DOWNSTREAM SIGNALING PATHWAYS

The next step of the T-cell activation pathway after ZAP-70–induced phosphorylation of the adaptor LAT and SLP-76 upon TCR ligation is the activation of the key signaling enzyme PLCγ1. PLCγ1 is recruited to the plasma membrane through the binding of its PH domain to PIP3, which is generated within the membrane by the phosphorylation of PIP2 by PI3-kinase. PLCγ1 is activated upon phosphorylation by Itk,[37,38] which is composed of PH, SH2, SH3, and kinase domains, and is also recruited to the plasma membrane through its PH domain by interacting with PIP3. Phosphorylated and activated PLCγ1 then cleaves the membrane bound PIP2 to generate two critical products: the membrane-bound lipid diacylglycerol (DAG) and the diffusible inositol 1,4,5-triphosphate (IP3), both of which function as second messengers for further inducing downstream signaling.

Calcium–Nuclear Factor of Activated T Cells

Upon TCR stimulation, the levels of intracellular free calcium are regulated in two phases: there is an initial and transient induction of calcium release from storage in the ER, and this is followed by the induction of a strong influx of high levels of calcium from outside of the cells by opening a calcium channel called the calcium release–activated calcium channel (CRAC) in the plasma membrane. IP3 generated by PLCγ1 catalysis diffuses into the cytoplasm and binds to IP3 receptors on the ER membrane. IP3 receptors are calcium channels and, after IP3 binding, they open and allow the release of the calcium stored within ER into the cytosol. The released low level of calcium induces cluster formation by the calcium-binding transmembrane protein, stromal interaction molecule-1 (STIM1), within the ER.[39] STIM1 is an ER-residential protein that contains an N-terminal sterile motif and paired EF hands that function as a calcium-binding motif and a coiled-coil motif at the C terminus. A critical CRAC called Orai1 has been identified from the analysis of a patient with severe combined immunodeficiency who had a major defect in lymphocyte activation.[40] Clustered STIM1 on the ER membrane is colocalized and assembled with Orai1 on the nearby plasma membrane to open the channel and introduce extracellular calcium into the cytosol (Fig. 12.7). Recent analysis has shown that oligomerization of STIM1 is sufficient to induce CRAC activation independent of ER calcium store depletion, but the mechanism by which STIM1 induces Orai1 oligomerization remains unknown.

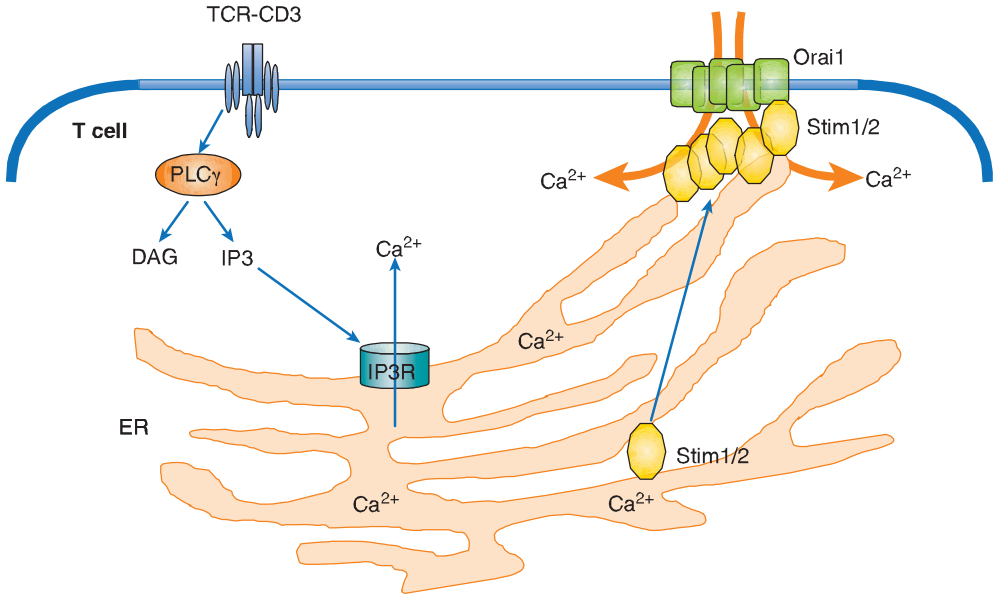


FIG. 12.7. The Mechanism of Calcium Response in T-Cell Activation. T-cell receptor engagement induces activation of PLCγ1 and generates inositol trisphosphate (IP_3), which binds to the IP_3 receptors (IP3R) present on the endoplasmic reticulum (ER) and stimulates the calcium release from intracellular calcium pool within the ER. Increase of intracellular calcium level activates a calcium-binding paired EF hands-bearing protein Stim1/2, which then translocates to the vicinity of the plasma membrane. Stim1 localizes with and induces dimerization of ORAI calcium release–activated calcium modulator 1 (Orai1), resulting in opening functional calcium release–activated calcium channel. The assembly between Orai1 and Stim1/2 induces the activation pathway dependent on intracellular calcium concentration.

Surprisingly, STIM1, STIM2 (another family member), and Orai1 are dispensable for T-cell development as deficiency of these molecules does not affect this process. Because calcium flux is also induced and is important in thymocytes, it is assumed that there must be other functionally redundant and critical calcium channels in thymocytes.[41]

Upon T-cell engagement, intracellular calcium binds to a protein, calmodulin, and induces a conformational change that allows the protein to bind to various target proteins. An increase of cytosolic calcium induces activation of signaling molecules including calcium calmodulin-dependent kinase and a phosphatase calcineurin. Activated calcineurin acts on a critical transcription factor, nuclear factor of activated T cells (NFAT), to dephosphorylate the protein, which induces its translocation into the nucleus.[42] There are five NFAT family members (NFATc1, c2, c3, c4, and NFAT5), and they are expressed in many different tissues.[43] NFAT is present in the cytoplasm in the resting state in T cells. Cytosolic serine/threonine kinases such as glycogen synthase kinase 3 and casein kinase 2 phosphorylate the nuclear localization signal on NFAT to prevent its translocation into nucleus. Upon antigen stimulation, activated calcineurin dephosphorylates this critical phosphorylation site, which allows NFAT to enter into the nucleus, where it triggers various gene expression programs including various cytokine genes by cooperating with other transcription factors. The most well-characterized gene among NFAT targets is the interleukin (IL)-2 gene. NFAT binds to the IL-2 promoter by forming a cooperative complex with activator protein (AP)-1, which is a heterodimer composed of members of the Jun and Fos family, to induce IL-2 transcription. NFAT and AP-1 represent two signaling pathways of calcium and Ras/MAPK, respectively. It has been shown that T-cell activation in the absence of the induction of AP-1 results in anergic or unresponsive T cells.[44]

Ras–Mitogen-Activated Protein Kinase

In parallel with IP3, DAG is generated by PLCγ and remains localized within the plasma membrane where it recruits various signaling molecules that contain a specific DAG-binding motif (called the C1 domain), including members of the protein kinase C (PKC) family[45] and RasGRP,[46] a guanine-nucleotide exchange factor for Ras. DAG binding activates PKC and promotes RasGRP to activate Ras by exchange from the guanosine diphosphate (GDP) to GTP-binding form.[47] Ras is active in the GTP-bound form, and this activation step is mediated by GEFs and suppressed by GTPase-activating proteins (GAPs). RasGRP and Sos are two major GEFs in the TCR activation pathway (Fig. 12.8). In T cells, RasGRP functions dominantly for early activation of Ras. RasGRP is inducibly associated with the plasma membrane through binding of its C1 domain to DAG and is phosphorylated by PKCθ. On the other hand, Sos constitutively associates with an adaptor protein Grb2 and the Grb2 SH2 domain binds to phosphorylated LAT upon T-cell activation; Sos-Grb2 binds to LAT-SLP76, which results in its recruitment to

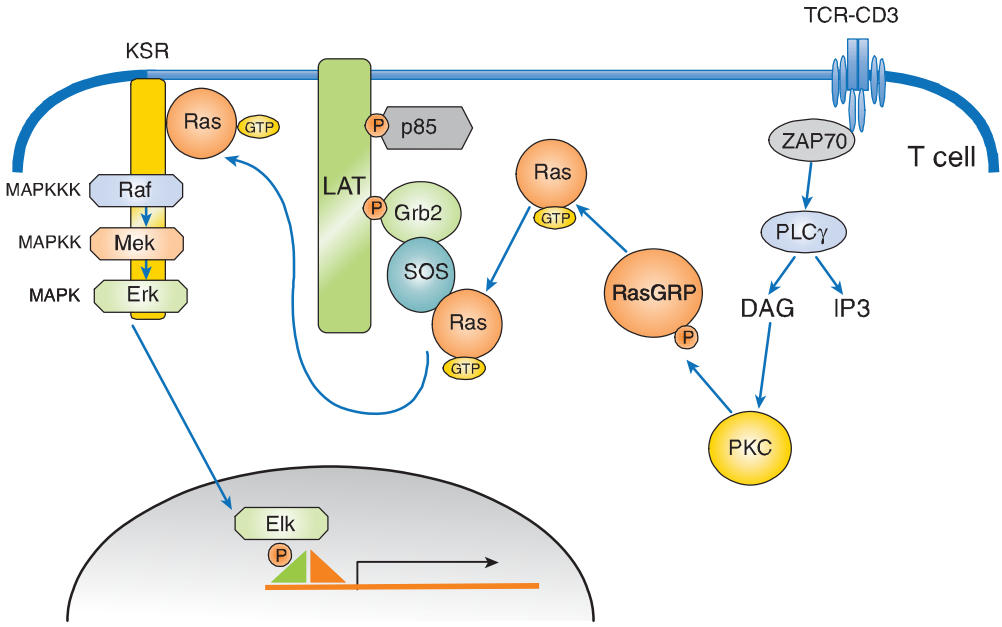


FIG. 12.8. Ras Activation Pathways by T-Cell Receptor (TCR) Stimulation. Activation of Ras in T cells following antigen engagement involves activation of two different guanine triphosphate (GTP) exchanging factors: one is Ras-GRP, and the other is son of sevenless (Sos). TCR activation induces diacylglycerol generation by PLCγ1, which recruits Ras-GRP to the membrane where Ras-GRP is activated by PKCθ. Activated Ras-GRP induces Ras activation by exchanging guanosine diphosphate (GDP) to GTP, which then binds to Sos, because Sos constitutively assembles with Grb2 and the Grb2-SOS complex is recruited to LAT upon TCR activation. Activated Ras then induces the activation cascade of mitogen-activated protein kinase which sequentially contains MAPK kinase kinase (Raf), MAPK kinase (Mek), and MAPK (Erk).

the vicinity of the TCR. The relationship between RasGRP and Sos appears to be cooperative rather than competitive as RasGRP-mediated Ras activation enhances Sos activity as a positive feedback to induce strong Ras activation.[48]

Ras activation triggers a cascade of kinase activation, which finishes by activating a serine/threonine kinase known as a mitogen-activated protein kinase (MAPK). The MAPK cascade is composed of three kinases: MAPK kinase kinase (MAP3K), MAPK kinase (MAP2K), and the MAPK itself. In the case of the TCR signaling pathway, the first MAP3K is Raf, which is a serine/threonine kinase that phosphorylates the next MAP2K, which in T cells is MEK1. MEK1 is called a dual-specificity kinase because it can phosphorylate both a tyrosine and a threonine of the last member of the cascade, the MAPK extracellular signal-regulated kinase 1 (Erk1) and Erk2 in T cells and B cells, respectively. Erk1/2 induces the activation of Elk1, which in turn activates the AP-1 transcription factor complex composed of Fos and Jun.

PKC-CARMA1/Bcl-10/Malt1-Nuclear Factor of KappaB

Historically, it has long been known that phorbol ester (phorbol 12-myristate 13-acetate) plus a calcium ionophore, a molecule that allows calcium ions to cross cell membranes, induce strong activation signals similar to TCR-induced signals.[49] Phorbol ester is known to activate PKC; thus, PKC is a critical component in T-cell activation. T cells predominantly express the PKCθ isoform of protein kinase C. PKCθ has a DAG-binding domain, is recruited to the plasma membrane through binding to DAG, and is activated upon generation of DAG by PLCγ1. One of the main pathways activated by PKCθ is NF-κB. PKCθ plays a critical role in initiating several cascades of the classical pathway of NF-κB activation downstream of the TCR. NF-κB is a family of transcription factors composed of homo- and heterodimers of five members of the Rel family including NF-κB1(p50), NF-κB2 (p52), RelA (p65), RelB, and c-Rel (Rel).[50] In resting T cells, NF-κB is found in the cytosol associated with one of a family of inhibitors of NF-κB (IκB) that prevents NF-κB from translocating into the nucleus. Upon T-cell activation, IκB is phosphorylated by the IκB kinase (IKK) complex, ubiquitinylated and degraded, which allows NF-κB to translocate into nucleus, where it activates various genes involved in survival, homeostasis, and activation of T cells and inflammatory responses.

Whereas this signaling pathway to activate NF-κB is common among many cell types and has been known for quite some time, the specific pathway by which PKCθ induces NF-κB activation has only been elucidated in the past decade. The critical molecule responsible for mediating the activation signal that connects PKCθ and NF-κB is now known as the CBM complex (Fig. 12.9). It consists of three proteins; a scaffold protein, CARMA1 (caspase recruitment domain [CARD] and membrane-associated guanylate kinase–containing scaffold protein), a CARD-containing

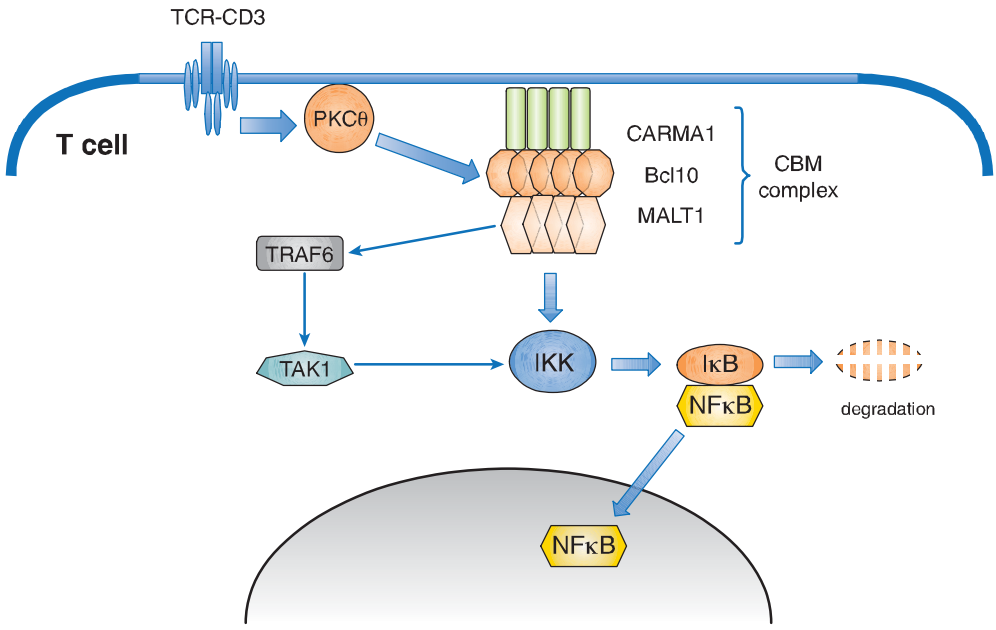


FIG. 12.9. Signaling Pathway for T-Cell Receptor (TCR)-Mediated NF-κB Activation. Upon TCR stimulation, PKCθ is activated and induces phosphorylation and aggregation of caspase-recruitment domain-containing membrane-associated guanylate kinase protein-1 (CARMA1). Aggregated CARMA1 forms a complex (as the CBM [CARMA1-Bcl-10-Malt1] complex) with two other proteins: B cell lymphoma 10 (Bcl-10) and mucosal-associated lymphoid-tissue lymphoma-translocation gene 1 (Malt1). Malt1 induces the degradation of the regulatory component of IκB kinase (IKK) complex (IKKγ) by ubiquitination via activation of tumor necrosis factor receptor–associated factor-6. IKKγ degradation induces phosphorylation and subsequently degradation of the inhibitor of NF-κB (IκB), which results in activation and nuclear translocation of NF-κB.

adaptor protein, B-cell lymphoma 10 (Bcl10), and mucosa-associated lymphoid tissue lymphoma translocation gene 1 (Malt1).[51–53] Upon TCR stimulation, this trimolecular complex is induced by PKCθ-mediated phosphorylation of CARMA1, which is required for CARMA1 oligomerization and association with Bcl10. Malt1 binds to Bcl10 and mediates the degradation of the IKKγ subunit (also called NEMO) by inducing polyubiquitination through activation of an E3 ubiquitin-ligase, tumor necrosis factor receptor–associated factor 6 (TRAF6).[55,56] TAK1 recruited by TRAF6 phosphorylates IKK, which in turn induces IκB phosphorylation. This event, together with degradation of NEMO, induces consequently IκB degradation and release and translocation of NF-κB to the nucleus, and thereby induces gene activation.

Overexpression of the CBM complex induces spontaneous NF-κB activation without T-cell (or B-cell) activation. Recently, it has been shown that a high proportion of diffuse large B-cell lymphomas are induced by specific oncogenic mutations of CARMA1, which induce its spontaneous oligomerization of CARMA1, formation of the CBM complex, and subsequent continuous chronic activation of NF-κB, ultimately resulting in tumor induction.[57] This illustrates the importance of maintaining appropriate control of the CBM complex–mediated NF-κB activation for appropriate immune responses without inducing excess inflammation and diseases.

THE IMMUNOLOGIC SYNAPSE

T-cell activation is induced upon recognition of antigen peptide/MHC on antigen-presenting cells (APCs) such as DCs or B cells by the TCR on T cells upon the antigen-specific interaction between these two cell types. The interaction induces a specific structure with molecular segregation at the interface between the two cells, which is called the immunologic synapse (IS) or supramolecular activation cluster (SMAC).[58–59] In the IS, several surface receptors and intracellular signaling molecules are accumulated and segregated to form the concentric "bulls-eye"–like structure composed of three discrete regions (Fig. 12.10); there is enriched accumulation of molecules such as TCR, CD28, CD2, and PKCθ in the central region (cSMAC), adhesion molecules such as integrin LFA1 in the peripheral region (pSMAC), and large molecules such as CD43 and CD44 in the distal region (d-SMAC). The IS, particularly the cSMAC, was initially thought to be the structure responsible for transducing signals that lead to

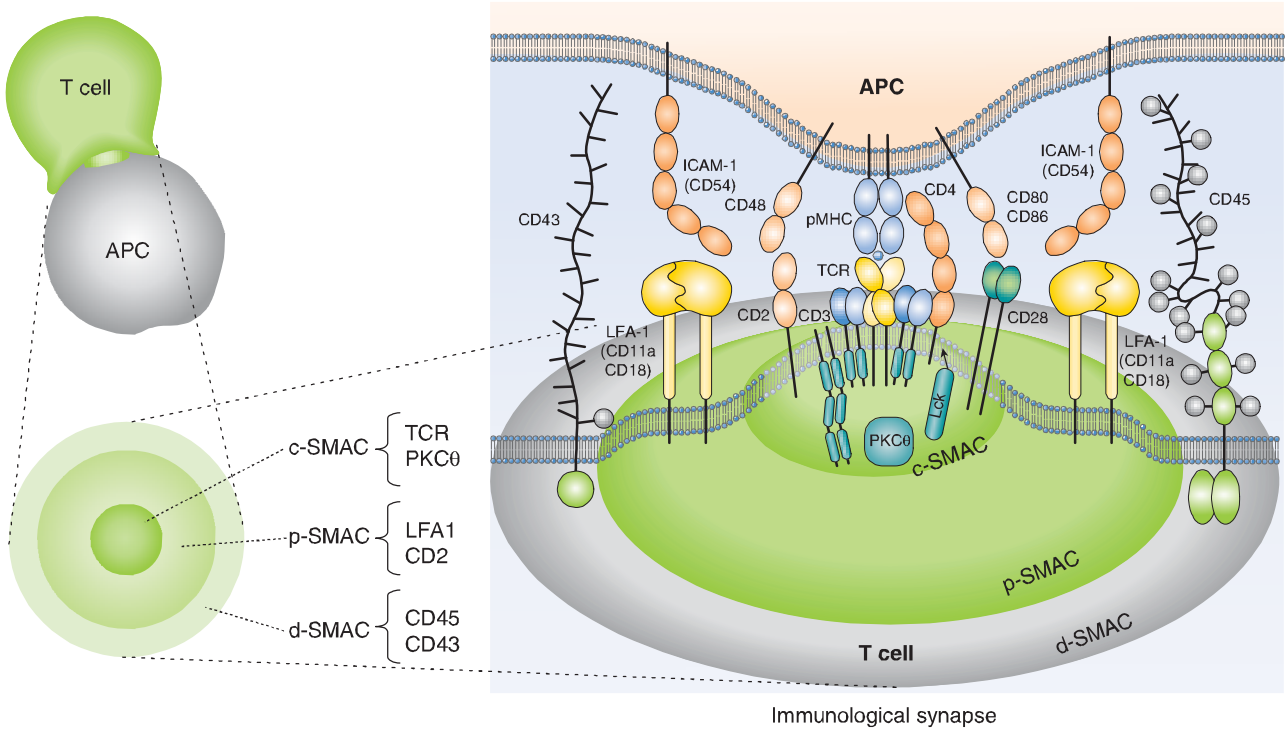


FIG. 12.10. Schematic Structure of the Immunologic Synapse. Antigen recognition and activation of T cells starts by the specific interaction between T cells and antigen-presenting cells (APCs) (**left**). In the interface of two cells, special structure with segregated arrangement of receptors and signaling molecules is induced where T-cell receptros (TCRs) and major histocompatibility complexes (MHCs) are accumulated in the central region termed as the central supramolecular activation cluster (SMAC), the adhesion molecule leukocyte function-associated antigen (LFA)-1–intercellular adhesion molecule 1 is localized at the surrounding area around the TCR-MHC (as the peripheral SMAC), and further large molecules such as cluster of differentiation (CD)45 are located outside peripheral region SMAC as distal SMAC (**right**). This "bulls eye–like" structure is dynamically induced after T cell-APC contact; LFA-1 moves outside and the TCR-CD3 moves into the center within 10 minutes. Activation signals are induced not at the synapse but at TCR microclusters, which are generated at the interface between T cell and APCs prior to central SMAC formation, which is composed of TCR, kinases, and adaptors.

T-cell activation. However, the formation of IS takes as long as 10 minutes after cellular conjugate formation, whereas the initial activation events such as intracellular calcium mobilization and protein phosphorylation occur within 1 minute, indicating that the activation signal is initiated much earlier than the IS is formed.[60] Recent studies revealed that the real signal transducing structure, called the TCR microcluster, is generated immediately after the T cell–APC contact and prior to IS formation.[61–63] TCR microclusters contain the TCR, kinases such as Lck and ZAP70, adaptor proteins such as LAT and SLP76, and several effector molecules such as PLCγ and PI3K. TCR microclusters function as the signalsome to induce T-cell activation because all TCR microclusters induce tyrosine phosphorylation of various proteins including CD3ζ, ZAP-70, and PLCγ, and their generation occurs in parallel to the initiation of the intracellular calcium flux. Therefore, the TCR microcluster is thought to be the minimal functional unit for TCR signaling. TCR microclusters are generated initially in the periphery of the interface between T cells and APCs, and are then translocated into the central region of the interface to make the cSMAC.[64]

Contrary to the initial idea that the cSMAC is the site for signal transduction, it is now thought that the cSMAC is the place where the accumulated TCR complex is internalized and degraded. In contrast to the negative function of the cSMAC for TCR degradation, costimulation receptors such as CD28 and cytotoxic T-lymphocyte antigen (CTLA)-4 accumulate in the cSMAC, suggesting that the cSMAC also serves a signaling function for costimulation.[65] In addition, T-cell activation results in the polarization of the T cells and movement of the microtubule organizing center toward the TCR-MHC/peptide contact sites. The microtubule organizing center movement appears to be driven by localized accumulation of DAG[66] and also involves ADAP, both of which recruit the microtubule motor protein dynein. cSMAC formation is closely regulated by cytoskeletal arrangement and leads to the polarization of T cells for polarized secretion of secretory vesicles including cytokines, chemokines, and lytic factors such as granzyme B. Various cytokine-containing vesicles are accumulated at the TCR engaged site and are released directionally and locally. During the T cell–APC interaction, whereas some of cytokines such as interferon γ, IL-2, and IL-4 are secreted directionally toward the interface, some as tumor necrosis factor (TNF)α are randomly secreted.[67]

TRIGGERING MECHANISM

Signaling mechanisms for T-cell activation have been extensively analyzed and are now well understood, as described previously. It has been known for a long time that the antigen recognition event by the TCRαβ dimer is transmitted to the ITAM phosphorylation of the CD3 chains, which induce signal transduction for T-cell activation. However, the actual mechanism by which antigen recognition by the TCR initiates the initial activation event of the signal transduction cascade is still widely debated and controversial. There are several different models to explain the first events of T-cell triggering, and the proposed models can be divided into two main conceptual categories. One is through the receptor clustering by ligand binding, and the other is through the induction of conformational changes within the TCR-CD3 complex. None of these models or their variations (see the following discussion) can satisfactorily account for the diverse experimental observations regarding TCR triggering.

1. Kinetic proofreading model. This is an early quantitative model that attempted to explain a T-cell response by the half-life of the TCR-MHC/peptide interaction.[68] The length of time between the initial ligand binding and receptor signaling was proposed to induce qualitatively differential signaling. Longer and shorter half-life would induce a stronger and weaker response by either strong or weak agonist, respectively.[69]
2. Serial triggering model. T-cell activation requires a sustained signal that lasts for several hours. However, TCR affinity for MHC/peptide is very low, and activation of TCR induces only a brief spike of intracellular signals. This model attempts to resolve this paradoxical requirement for T-cell activation. The model states that sustained signaling is accomplished by the concerted action of multiple TCRs that are sequentially engaged with and triggered by the MHC/peptide complex.[70] A single complex could serially engage and trigger up to approximately 200 TCRs.
3. Kinetic segregation model. Signal initiation takes place by excluding inhibitory molecules such as the phosphatase CD45 from the tight contact area (cSMAC of the IS) between T cell and the APC, thereby shifting the enzymatic steady state toward an activating status. Such segregation is induced by sizes of the ectodomains of the excluded proteins.[71] This model is supported by the structure and kinetics of IS, as shown by the segregated regions.
4. Permissive geometry model. Binding between TCR dimers and MHC/peptide dimers induces rotational scissor-like conformational changes in the CD3 chains that reveal previously hidden intracellular activation motifs. This model integrates receptor clustering and conformational change models, together with the existence of preformed oligomeric receptors, providing a mechanism to explain TCR signal.[72]
5. Multimerization model. This model proposes that the minimum unit of T-cell activation is a dimer and is based on antibody-induced dimerization of B-cell receptors and MHC structure studies. A single MHC/peptide could induce initial and transient calcium signaling, but monomeric MHC/peptide in solution did not induce stimulation of T cells. Obviously, more multioligomeric ligands induce more intense T-cell activation.[73]
6. Conformational change model. Extensive analyses of the crystal structures of TCR-MHC/peptide have not revealed any significant structural changes upon MHC/peptide binding by the ectodomains of TCRαβ dimers. However, biochemical analyses demonstrated structural changes of TCR complex, particularly in CD3ε. A

proline-rich region of CD3ε is a hidden determinant in the resting state but is exposed and recruits Nck upon stimulation to induce downstream activation signals.[74]

7. Safety model. This model is based on recent findings that the cytoplasmic domains of CD3ε and CD3ζ have affinity for the acidic lipids present on the plasma membrane, which may result in prevention of ITAM phosphorylation. Conversely, these chains in free aqueous solution may be readily phosphorylated by Lck. These results have led to the following model: whereas CD3εζ tails are tightly associated with the lipid-rich inner membrane of plasma membrane in resting T cells, they are released from this membrane-bound configuration and can be phosphorylated upon TCR ligation.[75]
8. Pseudodimer model. Only a few MHCs carry foreign cognate peptides for the specific TCRs, whereas a great majority of MHCs carry endogenous self-peptides. This model proposes that endogenous MHC/peptide amplify signals produced by agonist MHC/peptide by promoting TCR aggregation. Agonist MHC/peptide-TCR recruits a second TCR in a CD4-dependent manner, which binds endogenous MHC/peptide, stably forming a pseudodimer that triggers T-cell activation.[76]

The clustering models have been claimed to be incompatible with the presence of preformed oligomeric receptors on the surface of resting cells. However, the recent finding that TCR microclusters are the functional unit to transduce activation signals shows that aggregation of preformed TCR "nanoclusters" may form microclusters to induce signals.[77–79] On the other hand, models based on CD3 conformational changes that induced as a direct effect of ligand binding are not consistent with the requirement for multivalent ligand to initiate TCR signaling. Structural analyses of the complete molecular complex, including transmembrane regions and cytoplasmic tails, will provide a definite answer to this still confusing issue.

CYTOSKELETAL REGULATION

T-cell stimulation also induces a program for alteration of the cytoskeleton: actin polymerization, a microtubule rearrangement, which induces polarization and activation of T cells, and consequently changes the shape and regulates adhesion and movement of T cells. T cell–APC interaction results in morphologic changes: the cell becomes round and accumulates actin filaments at the stimulatory interface. These changes reflect the increase of fluidity of plasma membrane and a decrease of cellular motility. Accumulation of filamentous actin at the T cell–APC interface is the results of TCR-induced localized activation of multiple actin regulatory and polymerizing pathways. T-cell activation induces SLP76 phosphorylation, which recruits actin cytoskeleton regulatory proteins, Itk, Vav-1, Nck, and Cdc42 as the regulatory proteins. Localized activation of Cdc42 stimulates the actin-related protein 2/3 (Arp2/3)-regulating protein WASp, Wiskott-Aldrich syndrome protein, which interacts with Arp2/3 and activates actin polymerization.[80] WASp is recruited to the TCR activation complex by association with Nck and is activated by assembly with Vav-1, a GEF for the Rho family of GTP binding proteins and Vav-1, a central regulator of cytoskeleton, migration, and adhesion (Fig. 12.11). WASp functions as a regulator of the Arp2/3 complex that is critical for actin polymerization. Itk recruits Vav-1 to the immune synapse. Cdc42 regulated by the Itk-Vav-1 complex directly stimulates WASp actively, and the Nck-WASP complex regulates actin dynamics. Vav-1-mediated activation of a second Rho family, GTPase Rac1, results in the activation of WAVE2.

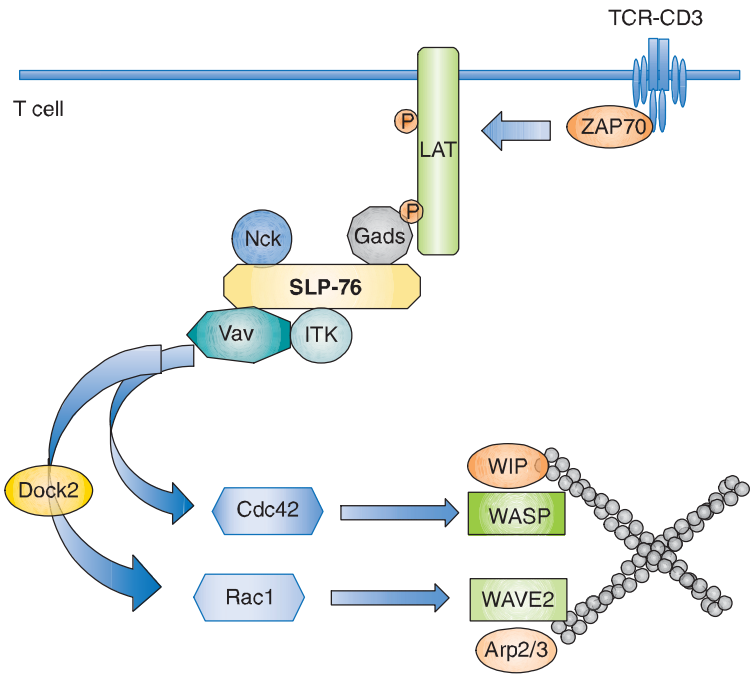


FIG. 12.11. Cytoskeletal Regulation by T-Cell Receptor (TCR) Signaling. TCR stimulation induces actin reorganization, which is required for the alteration of cell shapes, cell movement, and receptor clustering. Actin-related proteins such as Arp2/3, WASp, and WAVE2 regulate accumulation of F-actin. The LAT-SLP-76 signaling cluster induced upon TCR engagement recruits Nck, Vav1, and Itk. Whereas WASp binds to the adapter protein Nck and is activated by the Rho-family GTPase Cdc42, WAVE2 binds to Vav1 and is activated by another Rho-family GTPase Rac1 through Dock2.

CELL ADHESION REGULATION—INSIDE-OUT SIGNALING

Antigen stimulation of T cells induces their strong adhesion to APCs. This adhesion is mediated mainly by activation of integrin on T cells such as leukocyte function-associated antigen (LFA)-1, increasing its affinity and avidity for the ligand on APCs. Integrin activation is induced by a signaling cascade initiated by the TCR engagement and is a process termed inside-out signaling (Fig. 12.12). The inside-out signaling by TCR engagement results in integrin clustering and an increase in affinity and avidity for the ligands, which then induces high-affinity ligand binding.[81] It has been shown that the integrin LFA-1 goes through three conformational changes to achieve high affinity ligand: resting state, transitional state, and active conformation.[82] The integrins predominantly expressed on T cells are LFA-1 and very late antigen-4, which bind to their ligands, intercellular adhesion molecule (ICAM)-1 and 2, and vascular cell adhesion molecule and fibronectin, respectively. The process of inside-out signaling from TCR to integrin activation has been shown to include downstream signaling and actin-cytoskeletal rearrangement. Several critical adaptor molecules, particularly Rap1, ADAP, SKAP55, and RIAM, are necessary to translate TCR engagement to integrin activation.

Ras proximity 1 (Rap1), which belongs to the Ras superfamily of GTPases, plays a critical role in the inside-out signaling for integrin activation. Active Rap1 induces increased cell adhesion through integrin activation without changing their expression levels on T cells.[83] TCR stimulation and chemokines induce Rap1 activation, which then induces clustering of high-affinity LFA-1 on the leading edge of the membrane.

Following TCR ligation, SLP-76 inducibly interacts with ADAP, which then forms a complex with SKAP55. The SLP-76-ADAP-SKAP55 pathway leads to regulation of T-cell adhesion.[84] Both ADAP- and SKAP55-deficient T cells showed defective LFA-1 clustering and adhesion. ADAP-induced T-cell adhesion involves Rap1-GTP-interacting adaptor molecule (RIAM), which is required for Rap1 localization at the membrane.[85] Because RIAM associates with integrin, the complex with ADAP-SKAP55-RIAM makes a complex with LFA-1, resulting in adhesion to ICAM-1 upon TCR ligation. RIAM also binds to a cytoskeletal binding protein, Talin, and the Talin-RIAM-Rap1 complex may induce Talin to bind LFA-1 with high affinity. RIAM is also the ligand of Ena/VASP and profiling, which bind to actin cytoskeleton. In addition, similar to Talin, other cytoskeletal proteins such as Vinculin, WAVE2, and the Arp2/3 complex are also involved in the TCR-induced integrin activation.

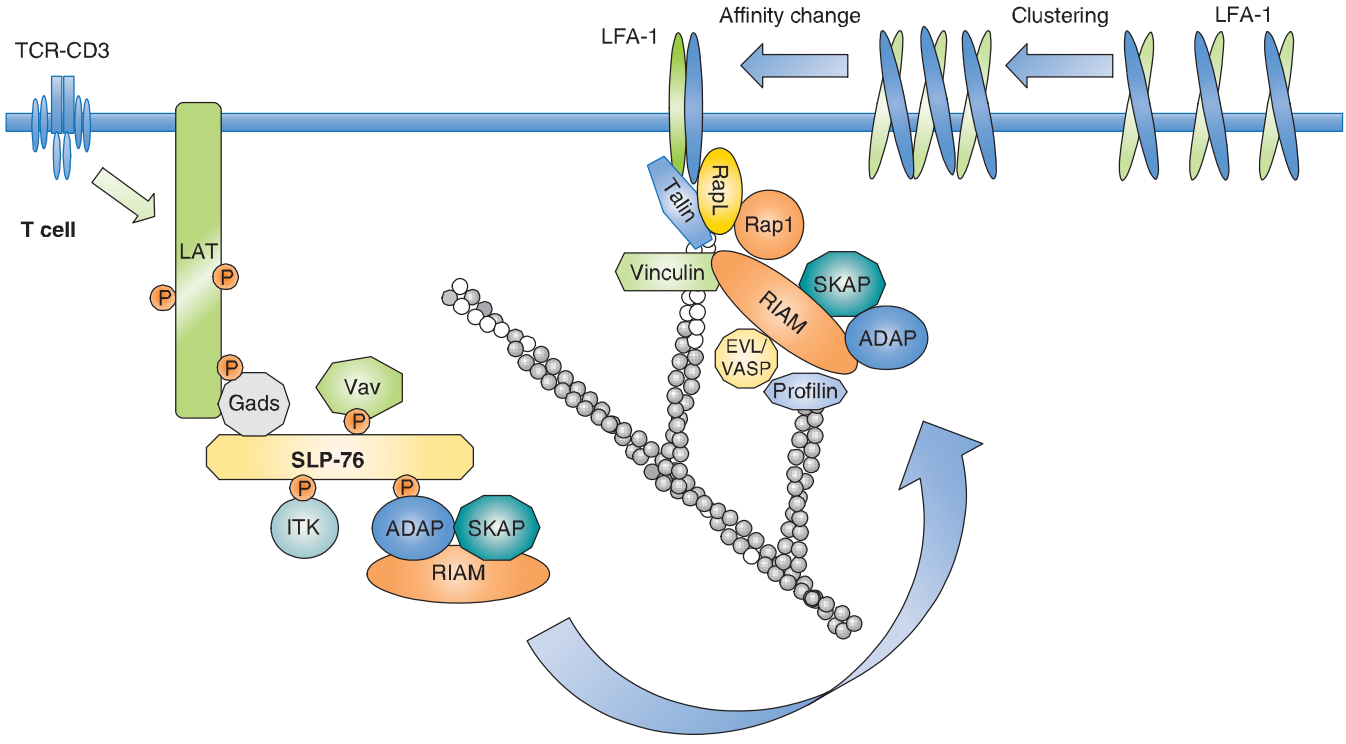


FIG. 12.12. Inside-out Signaling for T-Cell Receptor (TCR)-Mediated Integrin Activation as the Mechanism of TCR-Induced Cell Adhesion. TCR engagement induces signaling complex of linker for the activation of T cells and SLP-76. SLP-76 recruits Vav1 and Itk important for actin reorganization, as in Figure 12.11, and also adhesion- and degranulation-promoting adapter protein (ADAP), which constitutively associates with Src kinase–associated phosphoprotein of 55 kDa (SKAP55) and Rap1-GTP–interacting adapter molecule (RIAM). The complex of ADAP-SKAP55-RIAM associates with and activates Rap1 upon TCR activation and then translocates Rap1 to the membrane. The Rap1-RIAM/SKAP/ADAP complex induces the association of talin with the tail of integrin β. The local accumulation of talin is required for high-affinity binding by integrin. Integrin changes the status by clustering and then affinity maturation through structural changes. Integrin clustering involves Rap1 and Rap1-binding molecule RAPL that also associates with RIAM. RIAM associates with F-actin through the association with EVL/VASP proteins and the actin-binding protein profilin. PKD binds to the β1 integrin tails and recruits and activates Rap1 by Rap1-GEF C3G.

As to the effector mechanism of Rap1 signaling, Rap-1 binds to RAPL, the effector regulator of cell adhesion and polarization enriched in lymphoid tissues.[86] The interaction induces the membrane localization of RAPL and the binding to the αL subunit of LFA-1, which is critical for LFA-1 clustering and increasing its affinity. RAPL associates with a kinase Mst-1 as an effector molecule. Inside-out signaling induced by TCR engagement results in integrin clustering and increased affinity and avidity for the ligand, which then induces high-affinity binding to the ligand. Further analysis of the precise signaling cascade for inside-out signaling downstream of TCR is required.

COSTIMULATION

Cluster of Differentiation 28–Mediated Costimulation

T-cell activation is influenced by signals through several surface receptors including costimulation receptors (see following discussion), cytokine receptors, and adhesion molecules. T cells cannot be fully activated to proliferate and mediate cytokine secretion in the absence of costimulation signals through these costimulation receptors. TCR engagement induces various early activation signals such as an increase in the levels of intracellular calcium, tyrosine phosphorylation, and inositol metabolism, but these are not sufficient to induce full activation including cytokine production, cell proliferation, and effector functions. Instead, in the absence of costimulation, T cells fall into a state of unresponsiveness or anergy where they do not respond to antigen stimulation. Therefore, two signals are required for efficient T-cell activation: "signal 1" is defined as the antigen-specific TCR signal by the binding of peptide/MHC complex, and "signal 2" refers to the additional costimulation signal through a costimulation receptor. This "two signal model" for T-cell activation, which was proposed in the early study of T cells,[87,88] has been proved by various observations, particularly of the peripheral tolerance induction in the absence of "signal 2."[89,90] Although there are a number of receptors that can induce a costimulatory signal, the most physiologic, critical and well characterized is CD28[91] (Fig. 12.13A).

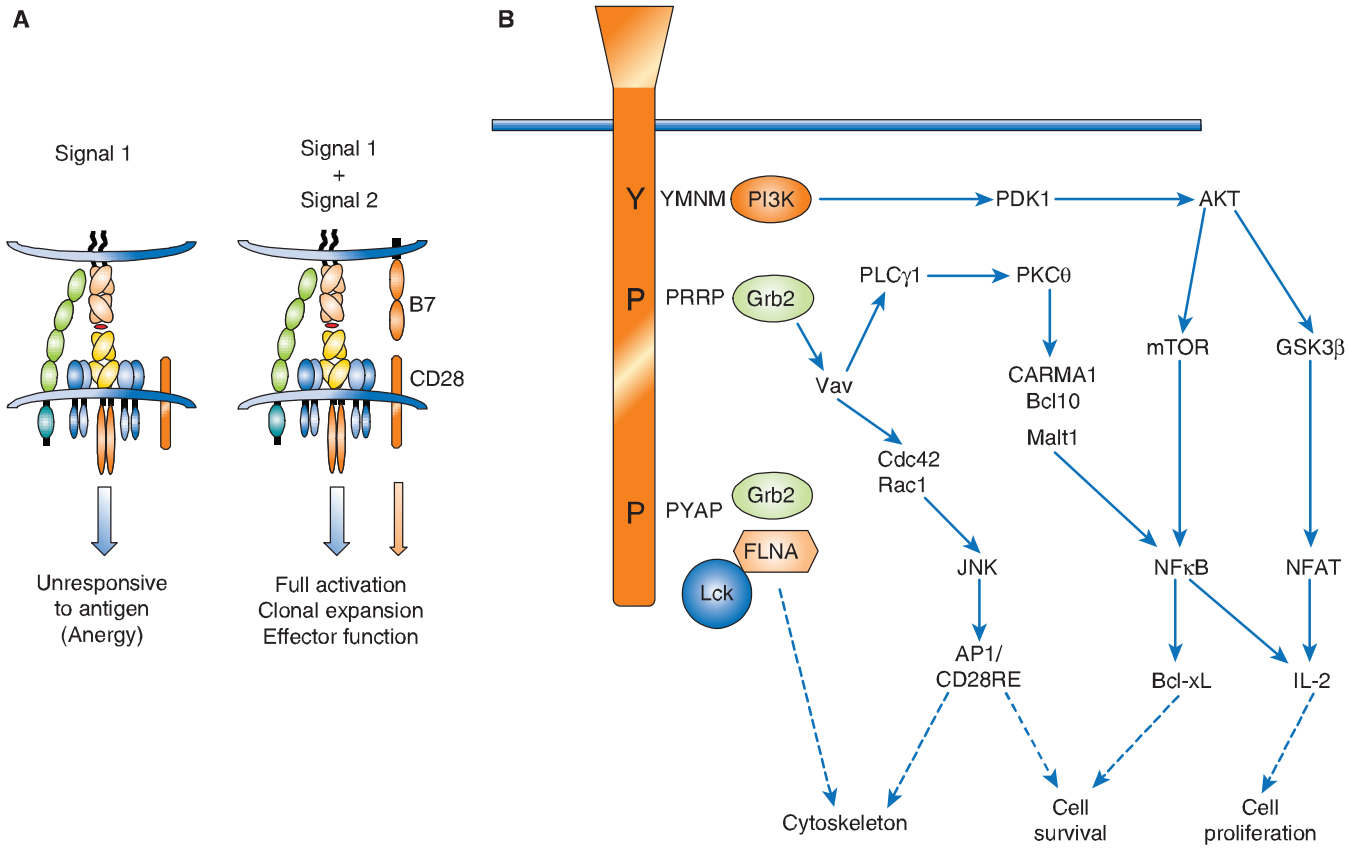


FIG. 12.13. Costimulation and Cluster of Differentiation (CD)28-Mediated Signals in T Cells. **A:** Full T-cell activation such as cell proliferation and cytokine secretion requires two signals: one (signal 1) through the T-cell receptor–CD3 complex as antigen-recognition signal, and the other (signal 2) through costimulation receptors such as CD28 as costimulatory signals. In the absence of costimulation signal, T cells become unresponsive to antigen stimulation (called anergy). **B:** Detailed signal pathway of CD28-mediated costimulation. The cytoplasmic tail of CD28 has major three motifs: N-terminus tyrosine motif YMNM associates with PI3K leading to the activation of Akt, which induces cell survival through mammalian target of rapamycin–mediated NFκB activation and cell proliferation, the upper Prolin-rich motif binds to Grb2 leading to Vav1 activation, which mediates cytoskeletal regulation and NFκB activation, and the last proline region associates with Lck and Filamin and Lck, which leads to actin-cytoskeletal organization.

CD28 is constitutively expressed on the surface of all T cells as a homodimer. The ligands for CD28 are the B7 family molecules, CD80 (or B7-1) and CD86 (B7-2), which are expressed on APCs. While CD80 is constitutively expressed, CD86 is expressed at low level on APCs in the resting state but is highly induced upon activation by innate signals, such as those derived from pathogens, in parallel with the induction of high level expression of MHC class II.[92] The induction of MHC class II and B7 molecules on activated APCs such as mature DCs are critical for T-cell stimulation because they can deliver a strong signal 1 and signal 2, respectively.

CD28 induces a profound increase in IL-2 production by both transcriptional and posttranscriptional regulatory mechanisms, as well as increased proliferation and cell survival, which is partly due to the induction of the antiapoptotic gene Bcl-xL (Fig. 12.13B). Whether CD28 induces costimulation totally independently of TCR engagement has been a controversial question for a long time. CD28-specific signals responsible for the costimulation signal have been extensively analyzed. CD28 has a short cytoplasmic tail (41 amino acids in human, 38 amino acids in mouse) and no intrinsic enzymatic function. It contains several tyrosines including an YxxM motif and two PxxP motifs. The YxxM motif, which is conserved in CD28, CTLA-4, and inducible costimulator (ICOS), is a consensus motif for the binding of the p85 subunit of the lipid kinase phosphatidyl-inositol 3-kinase (PI3K). Functional relevance of the YxxM motif is suggested by the fact that PI3K activation is enhanced by CD28 signaling.[93,94] PI3K activation generates PIP2, which recruits various molecules containing pleckstrin homology domains such as Tec family kinases, a serine/threonine kinase Akt, phospoinositide-dependent kinase 1, Vav, and WASP to the plasma membrane. Akt can be phosphorylated by phospoinositide-dependent kinase 1 and plays an important role in cell survival, which is one of the benefits of CD28-mediated costimulation.[95] The PxxP motif, which ICOS and CTLA-4 do not have, also has binding specificity for Grb2/Gads. Grb2 recruits Sos and Vav, which in turn phosphorylates and activates Rac1 and Cdc42, which then activates the MEKK1 cascade to ultimately activate the Jun kinase JNK.[96] Whereas the TCR signal predominantly activates ERK as an MAPK family member, CD28 engagement induces activation of the other member of the MAPK family, JNK, and the balance between the activity of ERK and JNK as a consequence of CD28-mediated costimulation may regulate cell survival.

Early studies showed that the distal PxxP (PYAP) motif in CD28 may recruit Lck, and it was recently shown that filamin A also binds to this motif to connect to the cytoskeleton. Although in vitro analysis and an overexpression system indicated a critical function for these motifs in costimulation, in vivo analysis with specific knock-in mutations revealed that mice with mutated YMNM motifs that failed to bind PI3K and activate Akt had no overt phenotype. By contrast, mice with the mutant distal motif had evidence of impaired CD28-mediated costimulation, such as reduced proliferation and IL-2 production.[97,98]

Enhancement of IL-2 production by CD28 engagement is regulated at both transcriptional and posttranscriptional levels.[99] A specific region responsible for CD28-mediated transcriptional activation (termed a CD28-response element, CD28RE) was found in the IL-2 promoter.[100] The binding of transcription factors to CD28RE is dependent on CD28 signal.

In addition to enhancement of the transcription of the IL-2 gene, CD28-mediated costimulation augments IL-2 production by increasing the stability of IL-2 mRNA.[101] Many cytokine transcripts including IL-2 contain adenylate-uridylate (AU)-rich elements within the 3′ untranslated region that stabilizes the message. Upon TCR stimulation, an AU-binding protein, TTP, binds to the AU-rich elements within the 3′ untranslated region and induces degradation of the mRNA. By contrast, CD28 costimulation induces other proteins, such as NF90, a transcription factor associated with NFAT, which may compete with TTP for binding at the AU-rich elements and enhance IL-2 mRNA stability.

CD28 signaling activates I-κB and consequently NF-κB. CD28 regulates the IKK activation step, and IKK activation results in I-κB activation/degradation and induces NF-κB activation. Extensive analysis to define the connection between CD28 signaling and IKK activation resulted in the discovery of CARMA1 as caspase recruitment domain–containing membrane-associated guanylate kinase protein-1, followed by identification of its associated proteins, Bcl-10 and Malt-1, which together form the CBM complex.[102,103] CARMA1 is phosphorylated by PKCθ and binds to Bcl10 through a CARD-CARD domain interaction.[104] The CBM complex is responsible for activation of NF-κB, thus T cells defective in any of the CBM components show impaired NF-κB activation and impaired T-cell proliferation. CD28-mediated activation of the CBM complex and NF-κB dramatically enhances IL-2 production.

Given its powerful activity as a second signal for T-cell activation, CD28 agonists and antagonists have been seriously considered for clinical application in humans. CD28 superagonist monoclonal antibodies were shown to polyclonally activate T cells in vivo, but such treatment ultimately led to the expansion of regulatory T cells, and several studies showed therapeutic benefit in autoimmune and inflammatory disease models in mice and rats. After preclinical safety testing in nonhuman primates, six healthy human volunteers were injected with the TGN1412 CD28 superagonist monoclonal antibodies, and the results were disastrous.[105] All six individuals suffered an immediate and life-threatening release of systemic proinflammatory cytokines, a "cytokine storm" that is now termed cytokine release syndrome. Recent studies suggest that the source of these cytokines was the effector memory population of T cells and have clarified why no such adverse effects were seen in rodents and nonhuman primates. Rodents do not accumulate a large population of effector memory population of T cells because the generation of these cells requires repeated exposure to infections; these experimental animals are kept in extremely clean conditions. The CD4 T

cells in macaques, the nonhuman primate used in the preclinical studies, unlike human T cells, lose CD28 expression when they differentiate into effector memory population of T cells.

COSTIMULATION THROUGH RECEPTORS OTHER THAN CLUSTER OF DIFFERENTIATION 28

CD28 is most prominent costimulation receptor and thus CD28-deficient mice have a general impairment in immune responses. However, not all immune response are dampened by CD28 deficiency, which indicates that other costimulation molecules can compensate for some of the remaining functions. These costimulation receptors include CD2, CD5, CD30, the Ig gene superfamily member ICOS, the TNF receptor family members CD137 (4-1BB) and CD134 (OX40), and LFA-1. These receptors are expressed on the T-cell surface to induce costimulation signals upon crosslinking with their ligands (Fig. 12.14).

In contrast to CD28, which is constitutively expressed on T cells, ICOS is expressed at a very low level on resting T cells and is inducibly expressed on activated T cells upon TCR stimulation, which is the major difference in its function from CD28 on resting T cells.[106] As ICOS-deficient mice have impaired immune responses similar to that seen with CD28 deficiency, ICOS must play an important role in immune regulation.[107] ICOS binds to a novel B7 family member, ICOS ligand, which is expressed rather broadly as compared to CD80/86 including nonhematopoietic tissues upon stimulation with inflammatory cytokines. ICOS is expressed on the cell surface as a dimer similar to CD28 and shares some structural features with CD28, including the YMXM motif in the cytoplasmic tail that binds p85 of PI3K. ICOS-mediated PI3K activation is stronger than that mediated by CD28, whereas other signals through CD28 that are not triggered through ICOS include Grb2 binding.[108] Such differences in signaling between ICOS and CD28 lead to differential function. Most notably, unlike CD28, ICOS does not induce IL-2 gene transcription. Instead, ICOS-mediated costimulation is critical for B-cell help for Ig production and germinal center formation. ICOS deficiency causes one of the multiple forms of common variable immunodeficiency, and these patients suffered from impaired B-cell function and germinal center formation and from hypogammaglobulinemia including IgA deficiency.[109]

Among TNF receptor family molecules, the molecules with costimulatory function represent CD27, OX40 (CD134) and 4-1BB (CD137), CD30, herpes virus entry mediator A (HVEM), and glucocorticoid-induced TNF-receptor (GITR). Among them, OX40 and 4-1BB mediate the most prominent functions. These molecules augment T-cell activation upon engagement of their ligands, OX40L and 4-1BBL, respectively. Engagement of OX40 and 4-1BB with their ligand induces activation of signaling pathways similar to CD28: PI3K and Akt, and NF-κB and MAPKs (JNK and p38), but this is through activation of the TNF receptor–associated factor (TRAF) family of adaptor molecules, which is different from CD28.[110]

One of the most important functional differences between CD28 and others such as ICOS, OX40, or 4-1BB is that CD28 is constitutively expressed on naïve T cells and plays a critical role to stimulate naïve T cells for proliferation, effector function, and functional differentiation, whereas all the others are inducibly expressed upon T-cell activation and therefore play roles to induce costimulation on activated

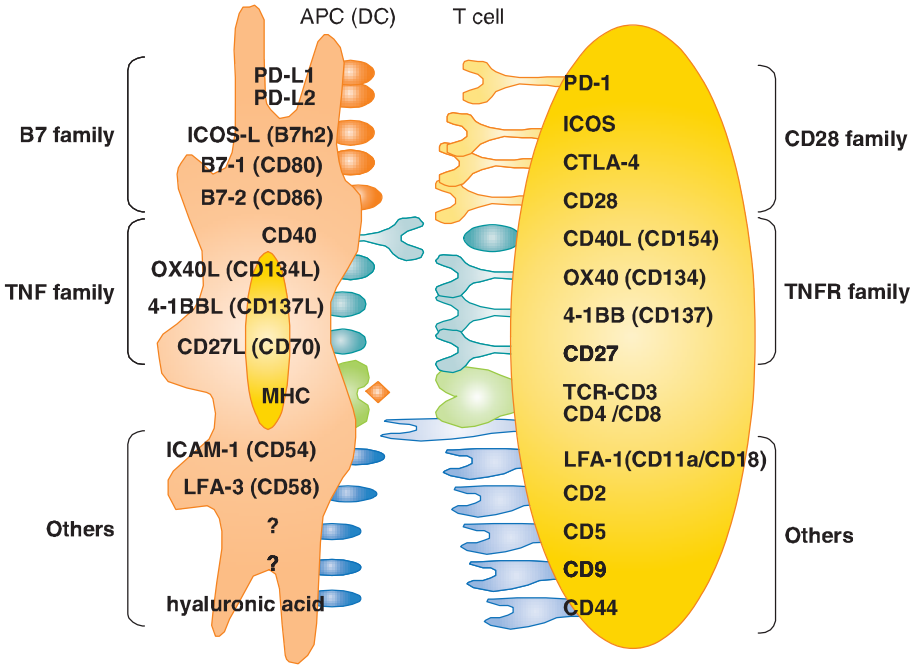
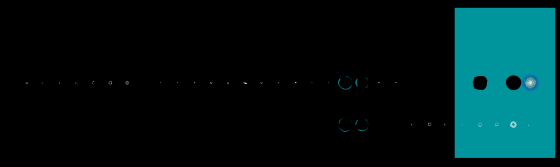
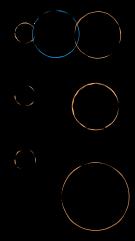


FIG. 12.14. Various Costimulation Receptors and Their Ligands. Various adhesion molecules between T cells and antigen-presenting cells (APCs) function to mediate costimulation signals for T-cell activation. These molecules are divided into three groups: cluster of differentiation (CD)28 family, tumor necrosis factor receptor family, and others including integrin leukocyte function-associated antigen-1. CD28 family molecules consist of two positive (CD28, inducible costimulator) and two negative (cytotoxic T-lymphocyte antigen [CTLA]-4, programmed death-1) receptors and the individually corresponding ligands. Whereas some receptors are constitutively expressed such as CD28, others are expressed upon T-cell stimulation such as CTLA-4 and OX-40. Whereas some of the ligands are expressed exclusively on APCs, others are widely expressed on variety cell types.





The now large number of solved αβ TCR structures can be compared to the three γδ heterodimers (discussed in more detail in the following), and while these also resemble the Fab fragment of an antibody, there are several features that are unique to the αβ molecules, which may be significant. These include the following:

1) In one structure,[165] four out of seven N-linked sugars diffracted to high resolution, indicating that they are not free to move very much and thus are likely to play a structural role, particularly in Cα:Cβ interactions. This correlates with mutagenesis data indicating that certain Cα sugars cannot be eliminated without abolishing protein expression[166] and the disordered state of a Cα domain in the structure of a TCR lacking glycosylation.[164]
2) There is significantly more contact between Vβ and Cβ and between Vα and Cα than in the equivalent regions of antibodies.
3) The geometry of the interaction of Vα and Vβ more closely resembles that of the C_H3 domains of antibodies than V_HV_L.
4) Between the CDR3 loops of Vα and Vβ, there is a pocket that can (and does in at least one case[165]) accommodate a large side chain from the peptide bound to an MHC.

γδ T-Cell Receptor Structure

There are now three γδ heterodimer structures: a γδ TCR from a human T-cell clone G115,[167] which can be activated by natural or synthetic pyrophosphomonoesters, a γδ TCR from the murine T cell clone G8 together with its ligand, the nonclassical MHC class I molecule T22,[168] and a human MHC class I chain–related–reactive γδ TCR (δ1A/B-3),[169a] which was determined as a single-chain Fv construct. The G8 structure is shown in Figure 11.6, alongside the 2C αβ TCR. The structure of a single human Vδ domain also has been determined.[169] The Vδ domain of the G115 structure is similar to the isolated Vδ domain and the quaternary structure of G8 is similar to that of G115.[168]

The most distinctive feature of both the G115 and the G8 TCR, when compared with αβ TCRs and Igs, is that the C domains "swing out" from under the V domains. This unusual shape is highlighted by both a small elbow angle of 110 degrees, defined as the angle between the pseudo twofold symmetry axes that relate V to V and C to C, and a small V-C interdomain angle. This contrasts with an average of 149 degrees for αβ TCR structures. The small angle between the Vγ and Cγ domains shifts both Cδ and Cγ to one side. Moreover, the molecular surfaces of the constant domains are different than those of αβ TCRs with no clear similarities either in the shape or the nature of the CαCβ and CγCδ surfaces; there are only a few solvent-exposed residues that are conserved in both Cβ and Cγ domains as well. Thus, it is unclear where or how the extracellular domains of the CD3 subunits interact with the extracellular portions of γδ TCRs compared with αβ TCRs. This may explain why the CD3 components of αβ TCRs are so different from those of γδ TCRs.

In terms of ligand binding surfaces, we note that the Vδ CDR3 of G8 protrudes significantly away from the other CDRs, as shown in Figure 11.6. This has significance in that this is the major region of contact with the T22 ligand (see later section). In the case of G115, both Vδ and Vγ CDR3 loops protrude from the rest of the putative binding surface and create a cleft between them. Portions of the CDR1γ and δ and CDR2γ combine with the clefts between the CDR3 loops to form a pocket, which is surrounded by positively charged amino acid residues contributed by CDR2γ and δ, and CDR3γ. The jagged surface of this TCR resembles the surface of an antibody that binds a small-molecule antigen. Although this would be consistent with the supposition that this TCR binds the negatively charged phosphate compounds,[170] direct binding between the TCR and phosphoantigen including crystal-soaking and cocrystallization experiments have not been successful. Instead, a soluble G115 was found to bind a soluble form of adenotriphosphate (ATP) synthase F1 and apolipoprotein A-1.[171]

While the δ1A/B-3 TCR maintains an overall fold similar to the other γδ TCR structures, it was noted that unlike the G115 and G8 CDR3 regions, which are protruding out, the δ1A/B-3 CDR loops together generate a nearly flat surface on the combining site. This difference is anticipated, as the CDR3 length distribution of the TCRδ chains is quite variable as discussed previously, and like antibodies should have a broad range of binding site shapes.

αβ T-CELL RECEPTOR–LIGAND RECOGNITION

Binding Characteristics

Although it has long been established that this type of T cell generally recognizes a peptide bound to an MHC molecule, a formal biochemical demonstration that this was due to TCR binding to a peptide/MHC complex took many years to establish. Part of the difficulty in obtaining measurements of this type has been the intrinsically membrane-bound nature of MHC and TCR molecules. Another major problem is that the affinities are relatively low, in the micromolar range, which is too unstable to measure by conventional means.

To some extent, the problem of measuring the interactions of membrane-bound molecules can be circumvented by expressing soluble forms of TCR and MHC, which is also essential for structural studies (see previous discussion). For TCRs, many successful strategies have been described, including replacing the transmembrane regions with signal sequences for glycolipid linkage,[172] expressing chains without transmembrane regions in either insect or mammalian cells,[173] or a combination of cysteine mutagenesis and *E. coli* expression.[164] Unfortunately, no one method seems to work for all TCR heterodimers, although the combination of insect cell expression and leucine zippers at the c-terminus to stabilize heterodimer expression has been successful in many cases.[174] The production of soluble forms of MHC molecule has a much longer history, starting with the enzymatic cleavage of detergent solubilized native molecules[175] as well as some of the same methods employed for TCR such as glycophosphatidylinositol (GPI) linkage,[176] *E. coli* expression and refolding,[177,178] and insect cell expression of truncated

The now large number of solved αβ TCR structures can be compared to the three γδ heterodimers (discussed in more detail in the following), and while these also resemble the Fab fragment of an antibody, there are several features that are unique to the αβ molecules, which may be significant. These include the following:

1) In one structure,[165] four out of seven N-linked sugars diffracted to high resolution, indicating that they are not free to move very much and thus are likely to play a structural role, particularly in Cα:Cβ interactions. This correlates with mutagenesis data indicating that certain Cα sugars cannot be eliminated without abolishing protein expression[166] and the disordered state of a Cα domain in the structure of a TCR lacking glycosylation.[164]
2) There is significantly more contact between Vβ and Cβ and between Vα and Cα than in the equivalent regions of antibodies.
3) The geometry of the interaction of Vα and Vβ more closely resembles that of the C_H3 domains of antibodies than V_HV_L.
4) Between the CDR3 loops of Vα and Vβ, there is a pocket that can (and does in at least one case[165]) accommodate a large side chain from the peptide bound to an MHC.

γδ T-Cell Receptor Structure

There are now three γδ heterodimer structures: a γδ TCR from a human T-cell clone G115,[167] which can be activated by natural or synthetic pyrophosphomonoesters, a γδ TCR from the murine T cell clone G8 together with its ligand, the nonclassical MHC class I molecule T22,[168] and a human MHC class I chain–related–reactive γδ TCR (δ1A/B-3),[169a] which was determined as a single-chain Fv construct. The G8 structure is shown in Figure 11.6, alongside the 2C αβ TCR. The structure of a single human Vδ domain also has been determined.[169] The Vδ domain of the G115 structure is similar to the isolated Vδ domain and the quaternary structure of G8 is similar to that of G115.[168]

The most distinctive feature of both the G115 and the G8 TCR, when compared with αβ TCRs and Igs, is that the C domains "swing out" from under the V domains. This unusual shape is highlighted by both a small elbow angle of 110 degrees, defined as the angle between the pseudo twofold symmetry axes that relate V to V and C to C, and a small V-C interdomain angle. This contrasts with an average of 149 degrees for αβ TCR structures. The small angle between the Vγ and Cγ domains shifts both Cδ and Cγ to one side. Moreover, the molecular surfaces of the constant domains are different than those of αβ TCRs with no clear similarities either in the shape or the nature of the CαCβ and CγCδ surfaces; there are only a few solvent-exposed residues that are conserved in both Cβ and Cγ domains as well. Thus, it is unclear where or how the extracellular domains of the CD3 subunits interact with the extracellular portions of γδ TCRs compared with αβ TCRs. This may explain why the CD3 components of αβ TCRs are so different from those of γδ TCRs.

In terms of ligand binding surfaces, we note that the Vδ CDR3 of G8 protrudes significantly away from the other CDRs, as shown in Figure 11.6. This has significance in that this is the major region of contact with the T22 ligand (see later section). In the case of G115, both Vδ and Vγ CDR3 loops protrude from the rest of the putative binding surface and create a cleft between them. Portions of the CDR1γ and δ and CDR2γ combine with the clefts between the CDR3 loops to form a pocket, which is surrounded by positively charged amino acid residues contributed by CDR2γ and δ, and CDR3γ. The jagged surface of this TCR resembles the surface of an antibody that binds a small-molecule antigen. Although this would be consistent with the supposition that this TCR binds the negatively charged phosphate compounds,[170] direct binding between the TCR and phosphoantigen including crystal-soaking and cocrystallization experiments have not been successful. Instead, a soluble G115 was found to bind a soluble form of adenotriphosphate (ATP) synthase F1 and apolipoprotein A-1.[171]

While the δ1A/B-3 TCR maintains an overall fold similar to the other γδ TCR structures, it was noted that unlike the G115 and G8 CDR3 regions, which are protruding out, the δ1A/B-3 CDR loops together generate a nearly flat surface on the combining site. This difference is anticipated, as the CDR3 length distribution of the TCRδ chains is quite variable as discussed previously, and like antibodies should have a broad range of binding site shapes.

αβ T-CELL RECEPTOR–LIGAND RECOGNITION

Binding Characteristics

Although it has long been established that this type of T cell generally recognizes a peptide bound to an MHC molecule, a formal biochemical demonstration that this was due to TCR binding to a peptide/MHC complex took many years to establish. Part of the difficulty in obtaining measurements of this type has been the intrinsically membrane-bound nature of MHC and TCR molecules. Another major problem is that the affinities are relatively low, in the micromolar range, which is too unstable to measure by conventional means.

To some extent, the problem of measuring the interactions of membrane-bound molecules can be circumvented by expressing soluble forms of TCR and MHC, which is also essential for structural studies (see previous discussion). For TCRs, many successful strategies have been described, including replacing the transmembrane regions with signal sequences for glycolipid linkage,[172] expressing chains without transmembrane regions in either insect or mammalian cells,[173] or a combination of cysteine mutagenesis and *E. coli* expression.[164] Unfortunately, no one method seems to work for all TCR heterodimers, although the combination of insect cell expression and leucine zippers at the c-terminus to stabilize heterodimer expression has been successful in many cases.[174] The production of soluble forms of MHC molecule has a much longer history, starting with the enzymatic cleavage of detergent solubilized native molecules[175] as well as some of the same methods employed for TCR such as glycophosphatidylinositol (GPI) linkage,[176] *E. coli* expression and refolding,[177,178] and insect cell expression of truncated

The now large number of solved αβ TCR structures can be compared to the three γδ heterodimers (discussed in more detail in the following), and while these also resemble the Fab fragment of an antibody, there are several features that are unique to the αβ molecules, which may be significant. These include the following:

1) In one structure,[165] four out of seven N-linked sugars diffracted to high resolution, indicating that they are not free to move very much and thus are likely to play a structural role, particularly in Cα:Cβ interactions. This correlates with mutagenesis data indicating that certain Cα sugars cannot be eliminated without abolishing protein expression[166] and the disordered state of a Cα domain in the structure of a TCR lacking glycosylation.[164]
2) There is significantly more contact between Vβ and Cβ and between Vα and Cα than in the equivalent regions of antibodies.
3) The geometry of the interaction of Vα and Vβ more closely resembles that of the C_H3 domains of antibodies than V_HV_L.
4) Between the CDR3 loops of Vα and Vβ, there is a pocket that can (and does in at least one case[165]) accommodate a large side chain from the peptide bound to an MHC.

γδ T-Cell Receptor Structure

There are now three γδ heterodimer structures: a γδ TCR from a human T-cell clone G115,[167] which can be activated by natural or synthetic pyrophosphomonoesters, a γδ TCR from the murine T cell clone G8 together with its ligand, the nonclassical MHC class I molecule T22,[168] and a human MHC class I chain–related–reactive γδ TCR (δ1A/B-3),[169a] which was determined as a single-chain Fv construct. The G8 structure is shown in Figure 11.6, alongside the 2C αβ TCR. The structure of a single human Vδ domain also has been determined.[169] The Vδ domain of the G115 structure is similar to the isolated Vδ domain and the quaternary structure of G8 is similar to that of G115.[168]

The most distinctive feature of both the G115 and the G8 TCR, when compared with αβ TCRs and Igs, is that the C domains "swing out" from under the V domains. This unusual shape is highlighted by both a small elbow angle of 110 degrees, defined as the angle between the pseudo twofold symmetry axes that relate V to V and C to C, and a small V-C interdomain angle. This contrasts with an average of 149 degrees for αβ TCR structures. The small angle between the Vγ and Cγ domains shifts both Cδ and Cγ to one side. Moreover, the molecular surfaces of the constant domains are different than those of αβ TCRs with no clear similarities either in the shape or the nature of the CαCβ and CγCδ surfaces; there are only a few solvent-exposed residues that are conserved in both Cβ and Cγ domains as well. Thus, it is unclear where or how the extracellular domains of the CD3 subunits interact with the extracellular portions of γδ TCRs compared with αβ TCRs. This may explain why the CD3 components of αβ TCRs are so different from those of γδ TCRs.

In terms of ligand binding surfaces, we note that the Vδ CDR3 of G8 protrudes significantly away from the other CDRs, as shown in Figure 11.6. This has significance in that this is the major region of contact with the T22 ligand (see later section). In the case of G115, both Vδ and Vγ CDR3 loops protrude from the rest of the putative binding surface and create a cleft between them. Portions of the CDR1γ and δ and CDR2γ combine with the clefts between the CDR3 loops to form a pocket, which is surrounded by positively charged amino acid residues contributed by CDR2γ and δ, and CDR3γ. The jagged surface of this TCR resembles the surface of an antibody that binds a small-molecule antigen. Although this would be consistent with the supposition that this TCR binds the negatively charged phosphate compounds,[170] direct binding between the TCR and phosphoantigen including crystal-soaking and cocrystallization experiments have not been successful. Instead, a soluble G115 was found to bind a soluble form of adenotriphosphate (ATP) synthase F1 and apolipoprotein A-1.[171]

While the δ1A/B-3 TCR maintains an overall fold similar to the other γδ TCR structures, it was noted that unlike the G115 and G8 CDR3 regions, which are protruding out, the δ1A/B-3 CDR loops together generate a nearly flat surface on the combining site. This difference is anticipated, as the CDR3 length distribution of the TCRδ chains is quite variable as discussed previously, and like antibodies should have a broad range of binding site shapes.

αβ T-CELL RECEPTOR–LIGAND RECOGNITION

Binding Characteristics

Although it has long been established that this type of T cell generally recognizes a peptide bound to an MHC molecule, a formal biochemical demonstration that this was due to TCR binding to a peptide/MHC complex took many years to establish. Part of the difficulty in obtaining measurements of this type has been the intrinsically membrane-bound nature of MHC and TCR molecules. Another major problem is that the affinities are relatively low, in the micromolar range, which is too unstable to measure by conventional means.

To some extent, the problem of measuring the interactions of membrane-bound molecules can be circumvented by expressing soluble forms of TCR and MHC, which is also essential for structural studies (see previous discussion). For TCRs, many successful strategies have been described, including replacing the transmembrane regions with signal sequences for glycolipid linkage,[172]

or a combination of cysteine mutagenesis and *E. coli* expression.

174

(or leucine zippered) molecules.

[180]

and Weber et al.

d

com-

plexes (as shown in Table 11.3). Weber and colleagues used a soluble TCR to inhibit the recognition of a flu peptide/I-E

D

has allowed rapid progress in this area. In this technique, one component is covalently cross-linked to a surface and then buffer containing the ligand is passed in solution over it. The binding of even approximately 5% of the surface-bound material is sufficient to cause a detectable change in the resonance state of gold electrons on the surface. This method allows the direct measurement of association and dissociation rates, that is, kinetic parameters, and also has the advantage of requiring neither cells nor radioactive labels. Recently, microcalorimetry has also been used to measure some TCR ligand affinities; and these analyses have confirmed the surface plasmon resonance (SPR) values,

[138,160]

) or a t

[137]

which reflects a flexibility in the binding site that might help to foster cross-reactivity (see the following). In the case of a class I MHC–restricted TCR, 2C, this relatively fast off-rate may be stabilized (10-fold) if soluble CD8 is introduced,

[185]

; however, no enhancement of TCR binding has been seen using soluble CD4

[188]

(or leucine zippered) molecules.

180

and Weber et al.

d

com-

plexes (as shown in Table 11.3). Weber and colleagues used a soluble TCR to inhibit the recognition of a flu peptide/I-E

D

has allowed rapid progress in this area. In this technique, one component is covalently cross-linked to a surface and then buffer containing the ligand is passed in solution over it. The binding of even approximately 5% of the surface-bound material is sufficient to cause a detectable change in the resonance state of gold electrons on the surface. This method allows the direct measurement of association and dissociation rates, that is, kinetic parameters, and also has the advantage of requiring neither cells nor radioactive labels. Recently, microcalorimetry has also been used to measure some TCR ligand affinities; and these analyses have confirmed the surface plasmon resonance (SPR) values,

138,160

) or a t

137

which reflects a flexibility in the binding site that might help to foster cross-reactivity (see the following). In the case of a class I MHC–restricted TCR, 2C, this relatively fast off-rate may be stabilized (10-fold) if soluble CD8 is introduced,

185

(or leucine zippered) molecules.

180

and Weber et al.

d

com-

plexes (as shown in Table 11.3). Weber and colleagues used a soluble TCR to inhibit the recognition of a flu peptide/I-E

D

has allowed rapid progress in this area. In this technique, one component is covalently cross-linked to a surface and then buffer containing the ligand is passed in solution over it. The binding of even approximately 5% of the surface-bound material is sufficient to cause a detectable change in the resonance state of gold electrons on the surface. This method allows the direct measurement of association and dissociation rates, that is, kinetic parameters, and also has the advantage of requiring neither cells nor radioactive labels. Recently, microcalorimetry has also been used to measure some TCR ligand affinities; and these analyses have confirmed the surface plasmon resonance (SPR) values,

138,160

) or a t

137

which reflects a flexibility in the binding site that might help to foster cross-reactivity (see the following). In the case of a class I MHC–restricted TCR, 2C, this relatively fast off-rate may be stabilized (10-fold) if soluble CD8 is introduced,

185

The now large number of solved αβ TCR structures can be compared to the three γδ heterodimers (discussed in more detail in the following), and while these also resemble the Fab fragment of an antibody, there are several features that are unique to the αβ molecules, which may be significant. These include the following:

1) In one structure,[165] four out of seven N-linked sugars diffracted to high resolution, indicating that they are not free to move very much and thus are likely to play a structural role, particularly in Cα:Cβ interactions. This correlates with mutagenesis data indicating that certain Cα sugars cannot be eliminated without abolishing protein expression[166] and the disordered state of a Cα domain in the structure of a TCR lacking glycosylation.[164]
2) There is significantly more contact between Vβ and Cβ and between Vα and Cα than in the equivalent regions of antibodies.
3) The geometry of the interaction of Vα and Vβ more closely resembles that of the C_H3 domains of antibodies than V_HV_L.
4) Between the CDR3 loops of Vα and Vβ, there is a pocket that can (and does in at least one case[165]) accommodate a large side chain from the peptide bound to an MHC.

γδ T-Cell Receptor Structure

There are now three γδ heterodimer structures: a γδ TCR from a human T-cell clone G115,[167] which can be activated by natural or synthetic pyrophosphomonoesters, a γδ TCR from the murine T cell clone G8 together with its ligand, the nonclassical MHC class I molecule T22,[168] and a human MHC class I chain–related–reactive γδ TCR (δ1A/B-3),[169a] which was determined as a single-chain Fv construct. The G8 structure is shown in Figure 11.6, alongside the 2C αβ TCR. The structure of a single human Vδ domain also has been determined.[169]

The most distinctive feature of both the G115 and the G8 TCR, when compared with αβ TCRs and Igs, is that the C domains "swing out" from under the V domains. This unusual shape is highlighted by both a small elbow angle of 110 degrees, defined as the angle between the pseudo two-fold symmetry axes that relate V to V and C to C, and a small V-C interdomain angle. This contrasts with an average of 149 degrees for αβ TCR structures. The small angle between the Vγ and Cγ domains shifts both Cδ and Cγ to one side. Moreover, the molecular surfaces of the constant domains are different than those of αβ TCRs with no clear similarities either in the shape or the nature of the CαCβ and CγCδ surfaces; there are only a few solvent-exposed residues that are conserved in both Cβ and Cγ domains as well. Thus, it is unclear where or how the extracellular domains of the CD3 subunits interact with the extracellular portions of γδ TCRs compared with αβ TCRs. This may explain why the CD3 components of αβ TCRs are so different from those of γδ TCRs.

In terms of ligand binding surfaces, we note that the Vδ CDR3 of G8 protrudes significantly away from the other CDRs, as shown in Figure 11.6. This has significance in that this is the major region of contact with the T22 ligand (see later section). In the case of G115, both Vδ and Vγ CDR3 loops protrude from the rest of the putative binding surface and create a cleft between them. Portions of the CDR1γ and δ and CDR2γ combine with the clefts between the CDR3 loops to form a pocket, which is surrounded by positively charged amino acid residues contributed by CDR2γ and δ, and CDR3γ. The jagged surface of this TCR resembles the surface of an antibody that binds a small-molecule antigen. Although this would be consistent with the supposition that this TCR binds the negatively charged phosphate compounds,

171

Although it has long been established that this type of T cell generally recognizes a peptide bound to an MHC molecule, a formal biochemical demonstration that this was due to TCR binding to a peptide/MHC complex took many years to establish. Part of the difficulty in obtaining measurements of this type has been the intrinsically membrane-bound nature of MHC and TCR molecules. Another major problem is that the affinities are relatively low, in the micromolar range, which is too unstable to measure by conventional means.

To some extent, the problem of measuring the interactions of membrane-bound molecules can be circumvented by expressing soluble forms of TCR and MHC, which is also essential for structural studies (see previous discussion). For TCRs, many successful strategies have been described, including replacing the transmembrane regions with signal sequences for glycolipid linkage,

173

Unfortunately, no one method seems to work for all TCR heterodimers, although the combination of insect cell expression and leucine zippers at the c-terminus to stabilize heterodimer expression has been successful in many cases.

175

E. coli expression and refolding,

[165] four out of seven N-linked sugars diffracted to high resolution, indicating that they are not free to move very much and thus are likely to play a structural role, particularly in Cα:Cβ interactions. This correlates with mutagenesis data indicating that certain Cα sugars cannot be eliminated without abolishing protein expression[166] and the disordered state of a Cα domain in the structure of a TCR lacking glycosylation.[164]

2) There is significantly more contact between Vβ and Cβ and between Vα and Cα than in the equivalent regions of antibodies.
3) The geometry of the interaction of Vα and Vβ more closely resembles that of the C_H3 domains of antibodies than V_HV_L.
4) Between the CDR3 loops of Vα and Vβ, there is a pocket that can (and does in at least one case[165]) accommodate a large side chain from the peptide bound to an MHC.

γδ T-Cell Receptor Structure

There are now three γδ heterodimer structures: a γδ TCR from a human T-cell clone G115,[167] which can be activated by natural or synthetic pyrophosphomonoesters, a γδ TCR from the murine T cell clone G8 together with its ligand, the nonclassical MHC class I molecule T22,[168] and a human MHC class I chain–related–reactive γδ TCR (δ1A/B-3),[169a] which was determined as a single-chain Fv construct. The G8 structure is shown in Figure 11.6, alongside the 2C αβ TCR. The structure of a single human Vδ domain also has been determined.[169] The Vδ domain of the G115 structure is similar to the isolated Vδ domain and the quaternary structure of G8 is similar to that of G115.[168]

The most distinctive feature of both the G115 and the G8 TCR, when compared with αβ TCRs and Igs, is that the C domains "swing out" from under the V domains. This unusual shape is highlighted by both a small elbow angle of 110 degrees, defined as the angle between the pseudo twofold symmetry axes that relate V to V and C to C, and a small V-C interdomain angle. This contrasts with an average of 149 degrees for αβ TCR structures. The small angle between the Vγ and Cγ domains shifts both Cδ and Cγ to one side. Moreover, the molecular surfaces of the constant domains are different than those of αβ TCRs with no clear similarities either in the shape or the nature of the CαCβ and CγCδ surfaces; there are only a few solvent-exposed residues that are conserved in both Cβ and Cγ domains as well. Thus, it is unclear where or how the extracellular domains of the CD3 subunits interact with the extracellular portions of γδ TCRs compared with αβ TCRs. This may explain why the CD3 components of αβ TCRs are so different from those of γδ TCRs.

In terms of ligand binding surfaces, we note that the Vδ CDR3 of G8 protrudes significantly away from the other CDRs, as shown in Figure 11.6. This has significance in that this is the major region of contact with the T22 ligand (see later section). In the case of G115, both Vδ and Vγ CDR3 loops protrude from the rest of the putative binding surface and create a cleft between them. Portions of the CDR1γ and δ and CDR2γ combine with the clefts between the CDR3 loops to form a pocket, which is surrounded by positively charged amino acid residues contributed by CDR2γ and δ, and CDR3γ. The jagged surface of this TCR resembles the surface of an antibody that binds a small-molecule antigen. Although this would be consistent with the supposition that this TCR binds the negatively charged phosphate compounds,[170] direct binding between the TCR and phosphoantigen including crystal-soaking and cocrystallization experiments have not been successful. Instead, a soluble G115 was found to bind a soluble form of adenotriphosphate (ATP) synthase F1 and apolipoprotein A-1.[171]

While the δ1A/B-3 TCR maintains an overall fold similar to the other γδ TCR structures, it was noted that unlike the G115 and G8 CDR3 regions, which are protruding out, the δ1A/B-3 CDR loops together generate a nearly flat surface on the combining site. This difference is anticipated, as the CDR3 length distribution of the TCRδ chains is quite variable as discussed previously, and like antibodies should have a broad range of binding site shapes.

αβ T-CELL RECEPTOR–LIGAND RECOGNITION

Binding Characteristics

Although it has long been established that this type of T cell generally recognizes a peptide bound to an MHC molecule, a formal biochemical demonstration that this was due to TCR binding to a peptide/MHC complex took many years to establish. Part of the difficulty in obtaining measurements of this type has been the intrinsically membrane-bound nature of MHC and TCR molecules. Another major problem is that the affinities are relatively low, in the micromolar range, which is too unstable to measure by conventional means.

To some extent, the problem of measuring the interactions of membrane-bound molecules can be circumvented by expressing soluble forms of TCR and MHC, which is also essential for structural studies (see previous discussion). For TCRs, many successful strategies have been described, including replacing the transmembrane regions with signal sequences for glycolipid linkage,[172] expressing chains without transmembrane regions in either insect or mammalian cells,[173] or a combination of cysteine mutagenesis and *E. coli* expression.[164] Unfortunately, no one method seems to work for all TCR heterodimers, although the combination of insect cell expression and leucine zippers at the c-terminus to stabilize heterodimer expression has been successful in many cases.[174] The production of soluble forms of MHC molecule has a much longer history, starting with the enzymatic cleavage of detergent solubilized native molecules[175] as well as some of the same methods employed for TCR such as glycophosphatidylinositol (GPI) linkage,[176] *E. coli* expression and refolding,[177,178] and insect cell expression of truncated

The now large number of solved αβ TCR structures can be compared to the three γδ heterodimers (discussed in more detail in the following), and while these also resemble the Fab fragment of an antibody, there are several features that are unique to the αβ molecules, which may be significant. These include the following:

1) In one structure,[165] four out of seven N-linked sugars diffracted to high resolution, indicating that they are not free to move very much and thus are likely to play a structural role, particularly in Cα:Cβ interactions. This correlates with mutagenesis data indicating that certain Cα sugars cannot be eliminated without abolishing protein expression[166] and the disordered state of a Cα domain in the structure of a TCR lacking glycosylation.[164]
2) There is significantly more contact between Vβ and Cβ and between Vα and Cα than in the equivalent regions of antibodies.
3) The geometry of the interaction of Vα and Vβ more closely resembles that of the C_H3 domains of antibodies than V_HV_L.
4) Between the CDR3 loops of Vα and Vβ, there is a pocket that can (and does in at least one case[165]) accommodate a large side chain from the peptide bound to an MHC.

γδ T-Cell Receptor Structure

There are now three γδ heterodimer structures: a γδ TCR from a human T-cell clone G115,[167] which can be activated by natural or synthetic pyrophosphomonoesters, a γδ TCR from the murine T cell clone G8 together with its ligand, the nonclassical MHC class I molecule T22,[168] and a human MHC class I chain–related–reactive γδ TCR (δ1A/B-3),[169a] which was determined as a single-chain Fv construct. The G8 structure is shown in Figure 11.6, alongside the 2C αβ TCR. The structure of a single human Vδ domain also has been determined.[169] The Vδ domain of the G115 structure is similar to the isolated Vδ domain and the quaternary structure of G8 is similar to that of G115.[168]

The most distinctive feature of both the G115 and the G8 TCR, when compared with αβ TCRs and Igs, is that the C domains "swing out" from under the V domains. This unusual shape is highlighted by both a small elbow angle of 110 degrees, defined as the angle between the pseudo twofold symmetry axes that relate V to V and C to C, and a small V-C interdomain angle. This contrasts with an average of 149 degrees for αβ TCR structures. The small angle between the Vγ and Cγ domains shifts both Cδ and Cγ to one side. Moreover, the molecular surfaces of the constant domains are different than those of αβ TCRs with no clear similarities either in the shape or the nature of the CαCβ and CγCδ surfaces; there are only a few solvent-exposed residues that are conserved in both Cβ and Cγ domains as well. Thus, it is unclear where or how the extracellular domains of the CD3 subunits interact with the extracellular portions of γδ TCRs compared with αβ TCRs. This may explain why the CD3 components of αβ TCRs are so different from those of γδ TCRs.

In terms of ligand binding surfaces, we note that the Vδ CDR3 of G8 protrudes significantly away from the other CDRs, as shown in Figure 11.6. This has significance in that this is the major region of contact with the T22 ligand (see later section). In the case of G115, both Vδ and Vγ CDR3 loops protrude from the rest of the putative binding surface and create a cleft between them. Portions of the CDR1γ and δ and CDR2γ combine with the clefts between the CDR3 loops to form a pocket, which is surrounded by positively charged amino acid residues contributed by CDR2γ and δ, and CDR3γ. The jagged surface of this TCR resembles the surface of an antibody that binds a small-molecule antigen. Although this would be consistent with the supposition that this TCR binds the negatively charged phosphate compounds,[170] direct binding between the TCR and phosphoantigen including crystal-soaking and cocrystallization experiments have not been successful. Instead, a soluble G115 was found to bind a soluble form of adenotriphosphate (ATP) synthase F1 and apolipoprotein A-1.[171]

While the δ1A/B-3 TCR maintains an overall fold similar to the other γδ TCR structures, it was noted that unlike the G115 and G8 CDR3 regions, which are protruding out, the δ1A/B-3 CDR loops together generate a nearly flat surface on the combining site. This difference is anticipated, as the CDR3 length distribution of the TCRδ chains is quite variable as discussed previously, and like antibodies should have a broad range of binding site shapes.

αβ T-CELL RECEPTOR–LIGAND RECOGNITION

Binding Characteristics

Although it has long been established that this type of T cell generally recognizes a peptide bound to an MHC molecule, a formal biochemical demonstration that this was due to TCR binding to a peptide/MHC complex took many years to establish. Part of the difficulty in obtaining measurements of this type has been the intrinsically membrane-bound nature of MHC and TCR molecules. Another major problem is that the affinities are relatively low, in the micromolar range, which is too unstable to measure by conventional means.

To some extent, the problem of measuring the interactions of membrane-bound molecules can be circumvented by expressing soluble forms of TCR and MHC, which is also essential for structural studies (see previous discussion). For TCRs, many successful strategies have been described, including replacing the transmembrane regions with signal sequences for glycolipid linkage,[172] expressing chains without transmembrane regions in either insect or mammalian cells,[173] or a combination of cysteine mutagenesis and *E. coli* expression.[164] Unfortunately, no one method seems to work for all TCR heterodimers, although the combination of insect cell expression and leucine zippers at the c-terminus to stabilize heterodimer expression has been successful in many cases.[174] The production of soluble forms of MHC molecule has a much longer history, starting with the enzymatic cleavage of detergent solubilized native molecules[175] as well as some of the same methods employed for TCR such as glycophosphatidylinositol (GPI) linkage,[176] *E. coli* expression and refolding,[177,178] and insect cell expression of truncated

RORγt to promote Th17 function, Bcl6 for follicular helper T-cell function, and Foxp3 to promote T_{reg} function. Of particular interest is the fact that most of these factors also play pivotal earlier roles in the generation of T cells in general.

The differentiation of particular effector subsets is usually considered to start with antigen-inexperienced (naïve) mature T cells, after they have finished with their intrathymic development. The specialization itself is part of the mature T cell's portfolio of possible responses to antigen, especially among CD4 T cells. Conventionally, one may consider these antigen-driven events to be a completely different type of developmental process from the intrathymic events that mold hematopoietic precursors into T cells. However, we will see in the following that effector programming can also originate in the thymus for subsets like NKT cells, certain classes of TCRγδ cells, and some T_{reg}s: the distinction is not absolute.

Narrative Summary: Major Stages of Intrathymic T-Cell Development

The major known site for T-cell development in all jawed vertebrates is the thymus.[1] The thymus does not harbor its own long-term source of precursors but is continuously populated throughout life by new precursors that are replaced as their descendants complete maturation and selection. These precursors migrate to the thymus from bone marrow or fetal liver when they are still multipotent. The thymus not only enforces their commitment to a T-cell fate and T-lineage differentiation but also provides a proliferation-inducing environment. It is estimated that the numbers entering the thymus per day are quite modest, on the order of < 100 per day for a typical young adult mouse.[2,3] The descendants of that small cohort of input cells expand over a 2-week period to a cohort of cells that have undergone T-lineage commitment, TCR gene rearrangement, and TCR expression, eventually yielding ~50×10^6 new thymocytes a day before their proliferation stops.

Major Subdivisions Based on CD4, CD8, and T-Cell Receptor-αβ Status

The steps of T-cell differentiation in the mouse thymus are summarized in Figure 13.1.[3–6] Important landmarks for the process are provided by the expression patterns of the TCR coreceptors, CD4 and CD8, and the timing of rearrangement of the TCR-coding genes themselves.

Cells in the early stages of development in the thymus are CD4− CD8− ("double negative" [DN]) and cannot yet express TCR. While the DN stages can be subdivided (described subsequently), the cells in all the DN stages are mostly determining their commitment to a T-cell fate, proliferating, and preparing for their first expression of TCR complexes. With successful expression of a TCRβ chain, they turn on CD4, CD8α, and CD8β genes together. The resulting CD4+ CD8αβ+ "double positive" (DP) cells are highly distinctive to the thymus, not found among mature T cells in peripheral lymphoid organs, and are diagnostic of a pivotal stage in T-cell development and survival. The DP cells in steady state constitute by far the major fraction of thymocytes (~80%), and many of them come to express complete TCRαβ receptors as well. However, the overwhelming majority of these cells are fated never to go further in their differentiation. Only a small fraction are allowed to progress further through positive selection, to become either CD4+ CD8− TCRαβ+ cells ("CD4 cells") or CD4− CD8αβ+ TCRαβ+ cells ("CD8 cells"). It is estimated that the cells have only about 3 days within the DP stage in which to achieve this success before their window of opportunity closes. Left in the cortex, the other DP cells of their cohort die "of neglect," to be replaced by progeny of the next cohort of precursors, at turnover rates up to 50×10^6 per day.

T-Cell Receptor-αβ Rearrangement and Selection Checkpoints

The regulated process of TCR rearrangement and selection helps to explain why so many DP cells must be produced. TCR coding genes are assembled through a highly regulated but highly imprecise recombination process mediated by the recombinase complex RAG1/RAG2, the same recombinase that rearranges immunoglobulin VDJ gene segments in B cells. The imprecision is useful to add to the diversity of the eventual T-cell recognition pool, but it also results in many gene rearrangements that are out of reading frame or otherwise defective. To winnow out the useful cells, TCR gene rearrangement occurs in two sequential bursts, each followed by a quality control checkpoint at which all the cells with defective receptors can be eliminated.

The timing of different phases of recombination competence is determined by the specific activation and deactivation of the RAG1 and RAG2 gene products; the genetic loci on which their effects can be focused at any given time are determined by developmentally regulated unmasking via localized chromatin opening. For TCRαβ cells, the most numerous T cells in mice and humans, the TCRβ gene must rearrange first, while the cells are still in the DN stage. The cells carrying out this rearrangement need to pause proliferation in order to allow the RAG complex to work, and most often they are never allowed to divide again unless they succeed in generating a good TCRβ coding sequence through rearrangement at one allele. This strict condition is the "β-selection checkpoint." Only cells passing this checkpoint are allowed to become DP cells, receiving a bonus of multiple rounds of cell division to expand the winners and dilute the stalled, dying losers. Through the process of β-selection, then, the cells also shift the gene loci that are accessible for rearrangement, losing the ability to rearrange their TCRβ genes (and TCRγ and TCRδ genes) any further and acquiring the ability to rearrange their TCRα genes.

Once they become DP cells, TCRα rearrangement gets underway. As a successful in-frame TCRα chain rearrangement occurs, the heterodimer TCR complexes of the new TCRα chains with the previously generated TCRβ chains become the next subject of testing at a second checkpoint. This second checkpoint is more draconian than the first, as the criterion for success here is not simply successful expression of a TCRαβ heterodimeric protein, but also the quantitative details of the recognition specificity of the new

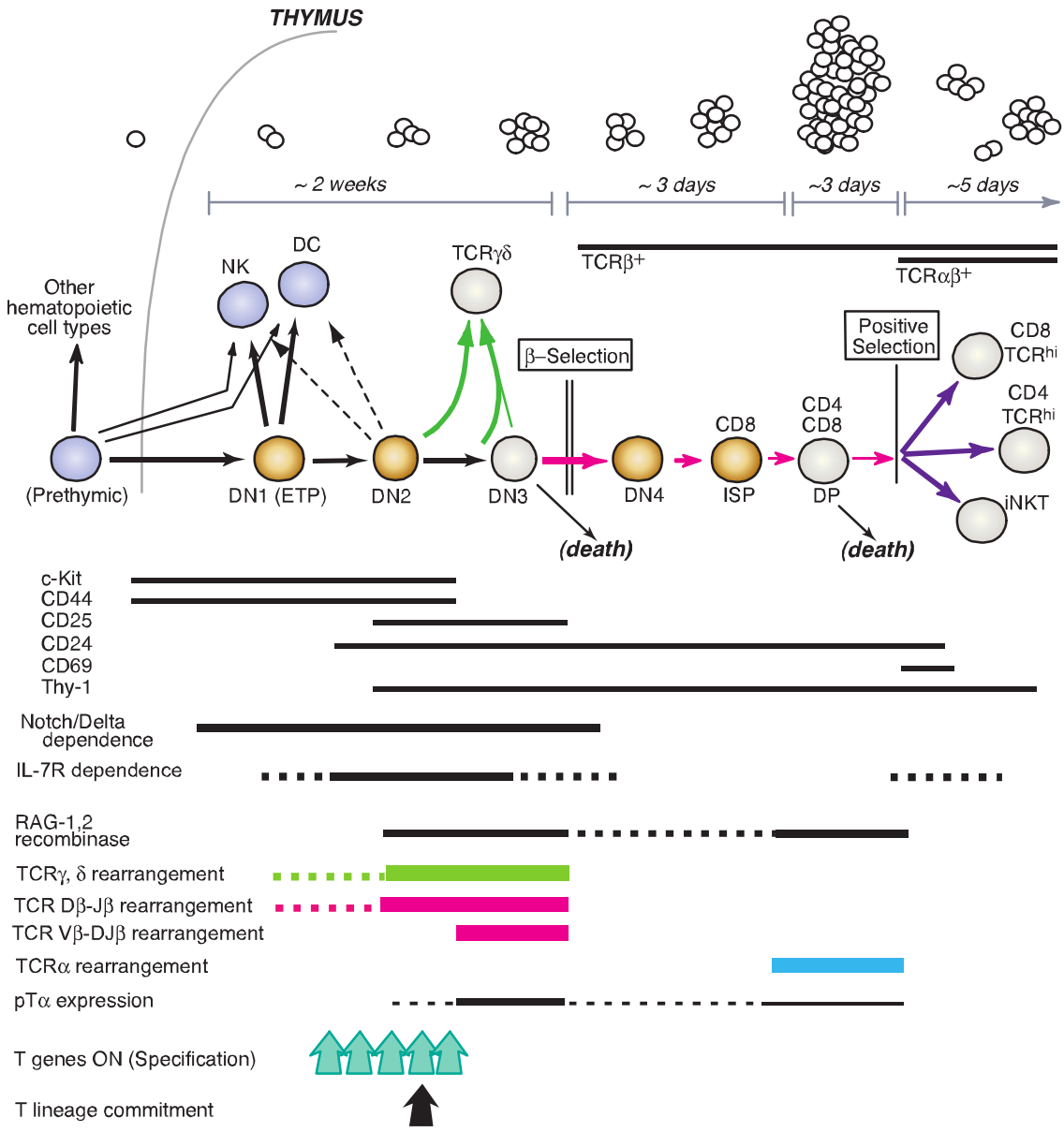


FIG. 13.1. Schematic Summary of T-Cell Developmental Stages. *Top:* Cartoons depict the approximate transit times and population expansion through the different stages. *Middle:* Recognized major stages of mouse T-cell development are shown, indicating CD4, CD8, and T-cell receptor (TCR) phenotype, and phases that are TCRβ-dependent or TCRαβ-dependent. Development through positive selection of CD4, CD8, and natural killer T cells is shown; not shown are pathways to regulatory T cells, CD8αα innate-type cells, alternative γδ pathways, or late-stage negative selection. *White circles:* nondividing or slowly dividing stages. *Yellow circles:* stages of extensive proliferation. *Blue circles:* prethymic cells and non-T developmental alternatives. *Green arrows:* enabled by TCRγδ expression. *Magenta arrows:* enabled by TCRβ expression. *Purple arrows:* enabled by TCRαβ expression and selection. *Lower:* timing of expression of additional markers, phases of TCR gene rearrangement, and specification and commitment events (see text for details).

receptor, as measured by its interaction with ligands in the thymic environment. The newly expressed TCR could fail to recognize anything, making it useless, or it could confer on the cell a dangerous autoreactivity that could lead to autoimmune disease. All of these failures must be eliminated before they appear in the mature T-cell population. The only successful cells are the ones that happen to have heterodimeric receptors with the right combination of functionality and low affinity for self-ligands. These are the ones that are allowed to become CD4 or CD8 cells through a process termed "positive selection," with the CD4 cells generally becoming cytokine-producing "helpers" and the CD8 cells generally becoming "killers." The positively selected cells permanently silence their RAG gene expression and undergo further maturation steps but little if any additional cell division before they are sent out to the periphery.

The effects of the ordered TCR gene rearrangements and quality control checkpoints are seen clearly in the effects of different mutations on the progression of T-cell development. Figure 13.2A,B depicts the CD4/CD8 profiles and DN subsets in a normal young mouse thymus of about 2 to 3 × 10^8 cells. Figure 13.2C,D shows the effects on thymus populations in mutant mice in which TCR gene rearrangement is impossible (eg, via mutation of *Rag1* or *Rag2* or *Prkdc*, the gene that encodes a deoxyribonucleic acid [DNA]-dependent protein kinase needed for rejoining of the gene segments during rearrangement [a very instructive mutant, *Prkdc*^{scid}, causes severe combined immune deficiency]). Because TCRαβ-lineage cells are so predominant in the mouse thymus, the effect of mutations of *Tcrb* alone appears very similar (Fig. 13.2E). In contrast, mutations of the *Tcra* locus alone allow production of a full complement of DP cells, although CD4 and CD8 SP cells are completely missing (Fig. 13.2F).

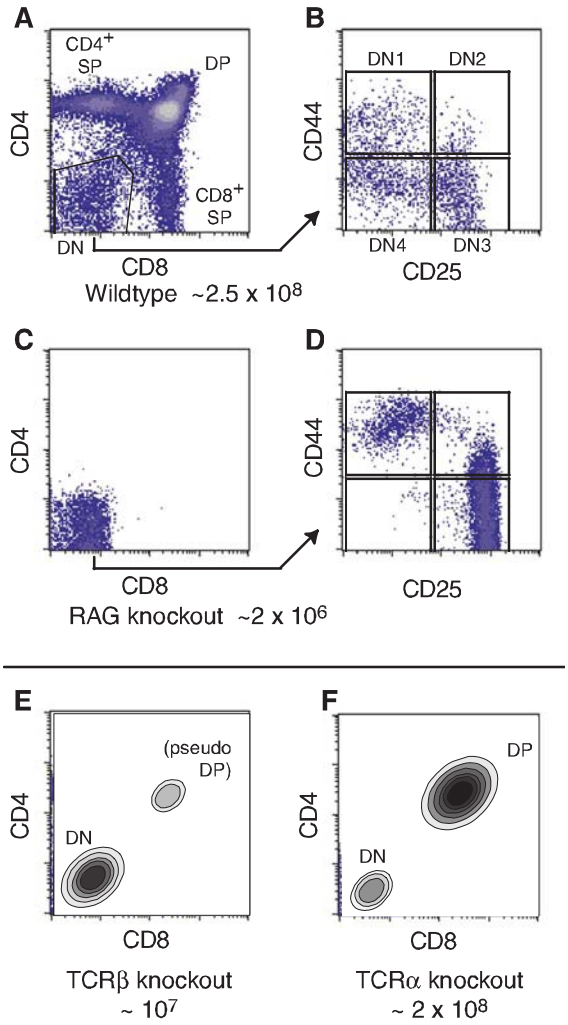


FIG. 13.2. T-Cell Developmental Progression and Thymus Cellularity Controlled by T-Cell Receptor (TCR) Assembly. A,B: Normal wild-type mouse thymocytes: cluster of differentiation (CD)4/CD8 phenotype of all thymocytes **(A)**, CD44/CD25 phenotype of double negative (DN) thymocytes only **(B)**. **C,D:** Recombination-deficient mouse thymocytes: CD4/CD8 phenotype of all thymocytes **(C)**, CD44/CD25 phenotype of the cells, which are all DN **(D)**. Data for *Rag2* knockout cells are shown, but *Rag1* knockout phenotype is the same and similar phenotypes are seen for *Prkdc*^{scid} or *Tcrb*−/− *Tcrd*−/− thymocytes. **E:** Cartoon depicting CD4/CD8 phenotype of TCRβ knockout (γδ still available). A few pseudo–double positive cells are generated through transient use of a γδ TCR, but the great majority of TCR+ cells in these populations are TCRγδ$^+$ DN. **F:** Cartoon depicting CD4/CD8 phenotype of TCRα knockout: development through β-selection is unimpaired, but no single positive populations are formed. Note the effects of each genotype on the cell numbers per thymus.

T-Cell Receptor–based Lineage Diversification for T-Cell Receptor-αβ Cells

The first functional distinctions between TCRαβ cell subsets apparently arise only during emergence from the DP stage. Positive selection itself probably triggers these divergences through distinctive modes of positive selection signaling, as we discuss in detail in a later section. The three main outputs of TCRαβ cell positive selection are CD4 cells, CD8 cells, and NKT cells, so called because they share some functional qualities and surface receptors with natural killer (NK) cells. DP cells first experiencing positive selection signals immediately turn on the activation marker CD69, start increasing the surface density of their newly validated TCRαβ complexes, upregulate CD5, and then begin the process that results in shutting off either CD8αβ or CD4 to generate TCRαβ-high "CD4 single positive" and "CD8 single positive" cells, respectively. As the cells arrive at one of these "single positive" (SP) phenotypes, they still retain expression of another marker of immaturity, the CD24 "heat-stable antigen" that is expressed from the early DN stages onward. However, they turn off both CD69 and CD24 as they reach completion of their functional maturity, in a process that takes 3 to 7 more days.[7] NKT cells undergo a distinctive maturation sequence that is discussed separately in the following, but they too lose CD69 and CD24 as they mature.

The selection of these different subsets is based on TCR and coreceptor interactions with different ligands in the thymic environment. CD4 cells are positively selected by TCR and CD4 joint interaction with MHC class II molecules. CD8 cells are positively selected by TCR and CD8αβ joint interaction with MHC class I molecules. NKT cells are positively selected by nonclassical class I MHC molecules, using non-CD4, non-CD8 accessory molecules (signaling lymphocytic activation molecule [SLAM] family molecules) to assist in signal triggering. Although the primary trigger in each case is TCRαβ-ligand recognition, the effector programs of these different major lineages diverge significantly, through the consequences of using these different types of coreceptors to assist in "interpreting" the TCR signals. How this signal-dependent feature of T-cell maturation works is a major focus of later sections of this chapter.

Negative Selection of Autoreactive T-Cell Receptor-αβ Cells

Many cells with TCR that might be dangerously autoreactive can be eliminated at the DP stage, but another crucial period for this aspect of quality control is after positive

selection. As newly generated single-positive cells display increased surface density of their TCRαβ, raising their avidity for MHC-bound ligands, those that have strongly autoreactive receptors are generally killed off by interaction with specific subsets of thymic stromal cells in a process called "negative selection." This continual purging of the newly made T-cell recognition repertoire is crucial to avoid autoimmune disease, as important mouse mutations and human disease models reveal. An alternative pathway to defeat autoreactivity, at least among CD4+ cells, is to alter the functional subtype of the autoreactive cells, to program them for function as tolerogenic regulatory T cells before they even have a chance to leave the thymus. Generation of such "natural T_{regs}" (nT_{regs}) is but one case where TCR interaction properties direct the cells to a particular T-cell functional class.

Generation of T-Cell Precursors in the Double Negative Compartment

For years, the least well understood set of thymocytes was the DN cells. The DN-stage cells comprise only a small fraction of thymocytes in steady state, generally less than 5%, but in fact represent the generative compartment of the thymus in which the largest number of total cell cycles takes place. Profound developmental transformations also occur during transit through the DN stages.

Understanding the basis of T-cell specification became possible only through the discovery of markers that could subdivide the DN compartment into successive stages (reviewed in refs. 2,3). The earliest stages of precursor differentiation within the thymus are represented by DN (CD4− CD8− TCR− or sometimes $CD4^{low}$) cells that express high levels of the growth factor receptor Kit and the activation/adhesion molecule CD44 but low levels of CD25, termed Kit-high DN1 cells or early T-cell precursors (ETPs). Then, these cells turn on expression of CD25, signaling their definitive entry into the T-cell pathway, and the resulting Kit+ CD44+ CD25+ cells are called "DN2" cells. Both the DN2 and ETP stage cells proliferate, and IL7R is increasingly expressed in the DN2 stage. The DN2 cells then progress into the "DN3" stage ($CD25^{high}$ but now $CD44^{low}$ and Kit^{low}), and here proliferation slows or stalls, RAG protein levels rise, and efficient TCRβ rearrangement can proceed. Development terminates at the DN3 stage unless the cells can pass β-selection or γδ-selection.

Successful TCRβ expression and passage of β-selection enable the cells to restart proliferation, shut off expression of CD25, and pass through a transitional "DN4" or "preDP" stage ($CD25^{low}$, $CD44^{low}$, Kit^{low}). They then proceed to acquire CD8 and CD4 on the cell surface, sometimes CD8 slightly before CD4 ("immature SP"), and finally culminate their differentiation into DP cells by finishing their proliferation (large DP to small DP transition). This extended β-selection-dependent transition from DN3 to small DP cells creates a unique regulatory state in the resulting DP cells that prepares them for selection. Notably, although some of these cells may be positively selected as described previously, only a minority may ever divide again until after they have left the thymus.

Distinctive Paths for T-Cell Receptor-αβ Cells

T cells that will use TCRγδ instead of TCRαβ actually follow a special program or set of program options from the DN2 stage on. Whereas TCRβ rearranges strictly before TCRα and mostly in DN3 stage, the TCRγ and TCRδ genes can rearrange in parallel within the DN2 or DN3 stage. Thus, a RAG1/RAG2+ cell can in some cases acquire successful in-frame rearrangements of both TCRγ and TCRδ genes before it is successful with TCRβ alone. As a result, newly TCRγδ+ cells arising within the DN2 or DN3 population leave the TCRαβ lineage mainstream, undergoing a γδ-selection process that is different from β-selection. The γδ-selected cells generally keep CD4 and CD8 silent, shut off RAG1/RAG2 permanently without promoting TCRα rearrangement, and limit their proliferation to a much smaller number of cell cycles than β-selected cells.

It is not clear yet whether all TCRγδ cells must go through two sequential checkpoints analogous to β-selection and positive selection. Like TCRαβ cells, TCRγδ cells are now understood to emerge in multiple functional subtypes, and we will discuss in a separate section possible ways that these subtypes become differentially programmed.

CONTEXT OF T-CELL DEVELOPMENT

Anatomical Organization of T-Cell Development

Major Thymic Domains

The structure of the thymus plays a substantial role in the ordering and tempo of the steps in T-cell development.[3] The epithelial framework of the thymus is a derivative of the fetal pharyngeal endoderm, emerging from the third branchial pouch in midgestation and only later descending from the neck region to its later position lying just over the heart. At its peak of function, the thymic epithelium looks very different from most endodermal epithelia, as it has become a highly porous, "lacy" three-dimensional lattice with few tight junctions, no obvious apical or basal polarity, and most of the spaces between epithelial cells crammed with developing lymphocytes. The structure is not uniform, as each lobe of the thymus is organized into cortical (outer) and medullary (inner) regions. The epithelial lattice appears quite open in the cortex but more compact in the medulla, where the lymphocyte:epithelial cell ratio is much lower. These different regions contain distinct epithelial cell types and different nonlymphoid hematopoietic cell types in addition to the developing T cells (Fig. 13.3).

Ordered and Checkpoint-Controlled Migration Pathways for Developing T Cells

Multipotent precursors follow a distinctive traffic pattern through the thymus[8] (see Fig. 13.3). They enter through postcapillary venules at the cortical/medullary border, and they spend the bulk of the ETP stage proliferating quite close to this boundary. Then, as they enter the DN2 stage, they begin to migrate centrifugally, toward the outer cortex. They are thought to reach DN3 stage in the outer sector of the cortex and undergo the burst of proliferation triggered by β-selection at the extreme periphery of the cortex, just under the capsule and far away from the initial site of

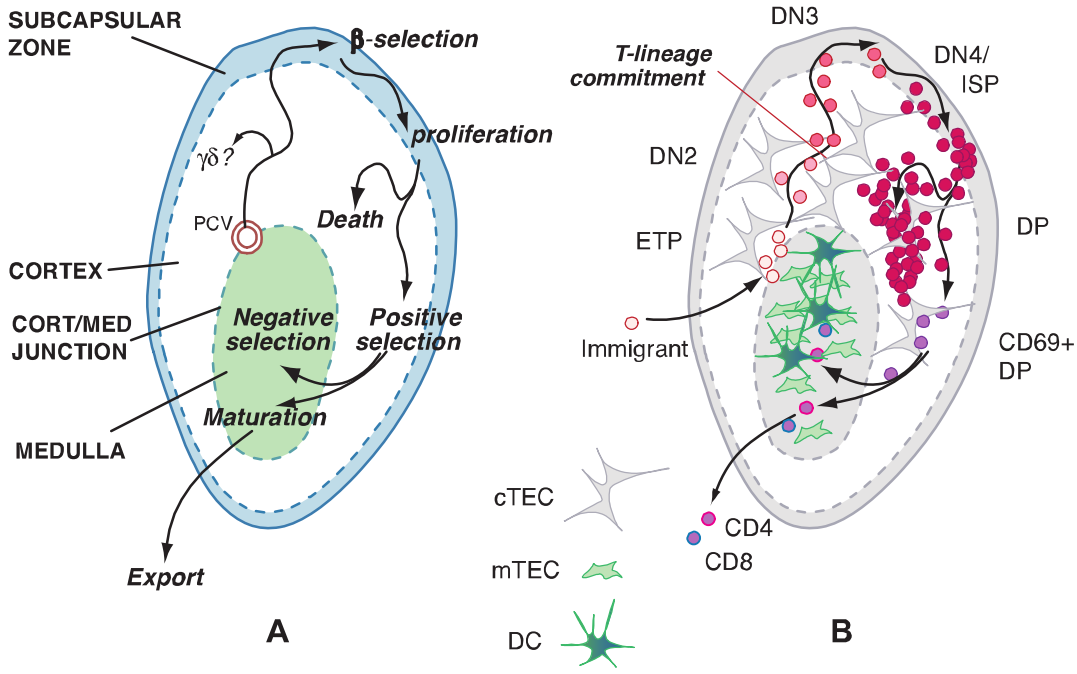


FIG. 13.3. Anatomical Compartments of the Thymus and Migration Pathways of Developing T-Cell Precursors. **A:** Major compartments and migration pathways are depicted with key checkpoints in T-cell development indicated. *Cort/med junction*, cortical-medullary junction; PCV: postcapillary venule (immigration portal). **B:** Phenotypes of T-cell precursors (*pink, red, violet*) and stromal cell types in different compartments. cTEC, cortical thymic epithelial cells; DC, dendritic; mTEC, medullary thymic epithelial cells. For clarity, the "outbound" path from ETP to DN3 is separated from the "inbound" path from DN4 to CD4 or CD8 single positive maturation, but in vivo the "outbound" transit is surrounded with the "inbound" cells.

precursor entry. Then, the DP cells generated during this proliferation start to fall back down through the cortex, covering the same ground as the DN cells that were their precursors, but now traveling in the opposite direction. The sheer number of these DP cells dominates the population in the cortex: in a healthy young adult mouse thymus, for the ~2×10^4 DN2 cells migrating toward the outer cortex, there are over 1.5×10^8 DP cells falling back toward the medulla. Thus, the DN cells must work their way up through the vast excess of DP cells as they acquire T-cell character, and every other cell type in the cortex is embedded in a slow-moving sea of DP cells. As discussed in the next major section, this countercurrent migration may play an important role in helping the earliest precursors to receive inductive signals efficiently from the epithelium without competition.

Despite their huge numbers, the DP cells are normally denied entry into the medulla. Positive selection signals are needed to induce new chemokine receptor expression (CCR7) on the fortunate minority of DP cells, and these are the only ones that can plunge into the medulla to continue their differentiation.[2,9] After further maturation, once all signs of TCR signaling subside, the cells are finally allowed to upregulate emigration receptors that will allow them to leave the thymus entirely. It is also in the medulla, however, that even more stringent testing for TCR autoreactivity and purging of autoreactive cells takes place. Ultimately, less than 5% of the cells from each cohort of DP cells emerge from the thymus alive.

Thymic Anatomy Orders the Presentation of Inductive and Selective Signals

The pathway of T-cell precursors through the thymus helps to order their exposure to key differentiation-inducing stimuli.[2,3,9] The cortical epithelium expresses high levels of integral membrane cell surface ligands for the Notch signaling receptor, mostly Delta-like 4 (DLL4, or DL4). This is important because Notch-Delta interactions play a central role in specification of T-cell progenitors from uncommitted precursor cells, as discussed in detail in the following section. In addition, the epithelium closest to the cortical-medullary junction makes the highest concentrations of the cytokine IL-7, which supports both early and late T-cell development. Epithelial cells expressing Kit ligand appear to be present in multiple domains of the thymus. As the precursors enter the thymus, therefore, they can rapidly engage in Notch-DLL4 signaling interactions in the presence of maximal concentrations of IL-7 and Kit ligand. These are ideal conditions for proliferation in the ETP and early DN2 stages. As the cells move outward, they encounter decreasing IL-7, which enables them to slow proliferation and begin to carry out efficient TCR gene rearrangement.

Thymic epithelium is one of the rare epithelia in the body that can express MHC class II molecules, which are normally limited to hematopoietic APCs, as well as the more broadly expressed MHC class I cell-surface molecules. Because TCR interactions with class II MHC are crucial for positive selection to CD4 fates and TCR interactions with class I MHC

usually direct selection to CD8 fates, this expression pattern makes it possible for the cortical epithelium to support positive selection to both CD4 and CD8 fates. At the cortical/medullary junction, there is a high concentration of thymic macrophages, which can rapidly dispose of the dead cells that are generated in large numbers by TCR-dependent selection every day.

Medullary thymic epithelium is distinctive in an additional way.[9a] Not only does it express class I and class II MHC, but also it is specialized for the detection and elimination of highly autoreactive cells. Medullary epithelial cells mature to an end stage in which they lift the repression of multiple silent loci in their genomes, genes that have no function in the thymus per se and would normally be expressed only in other organs in the body. These diverse tissue-specific self-antigens, presented on class I or class II MHC, are offered as "bait" to any newly positively selected cells whose receptors might recognize them. The presentation of these molecules is further enhanced by special populations of dendritic cells (DCs) in the thymic medulla, and these help to stimulate any autoreactive T cells to commit suicide. As we will see in the following sections, these medullary cell types can also suppress autoreactive T-cell precursors through an alternative mechanism, by directing their differentiation into nT_{regs}.

Variations of T-Cell Development: Ontogeny and Species Differences

T-cell development in the thymus is common to all jawed vertebrates.[10] A thymus, originating embryologically in the neck region and presenting Notch ligands to RAG1/RAG2+ lymphocyte precursors that turn on TCR gene expression, is found from cartilaginous fish to bony fish and amphibia through birds and all mammalian species. There is even an apparent equivalent structure newly discovered in the lamprey, a jawless vertebrate that probably shared its last common ancestor with mammals shortly after the Cambrian explosion (~500 million years ago).[11] Despite important commonalities, there are significant differences between T-cell development in mice and in other vertebrates, and even between mice and other mammals. In addition, even within the mouse, T-cell development undergoes significant changes between the first wave of production that occurs in the fetus and later waves of T-cell development in fetal and postnatal life, described subsequently. Thus aspects of T-cell development can be flexible even though they produce similar T-cell populations as outputs.

Ontogeny: Distinctive Features of the Mouse Embryonic Thymus

When the thymus rudiment is first formed in midgestation in the developing neck region of the embryo, it is not vascularized. Thus, the first wave of hematopoietic precursors that enter the thymus do so by migrating across the mesenchyme and penetrating the thymic rudiment from the outside.

There are two distinctive things about this first wave of thymic lymphopoiesis. First, the precursors of the first wave are intrinsically somewhat different from the cells that will populate the thymus in later waves. Descendants of early intraembryonic hematopoietic precursors, they have a unique capability to give rise to certain specialized types of TCRγδ cells as well as more conventional kinds of TCRγδ cells and TCRαβ cells.[12,13] Second, the thymus epithelium itself is naïve in the sense that it has not yet been affected by signals from lymphocyte gene products, nor dilated into an open mesh by lymphoid proliferation. The medulla is not evident yet as a distinctive domain, and the spatial distribution of cortical epithelial products like IL-7 and Notch ligands is not necessarily ordered as it will later become.[14,15]

One result is that differentiation occurs much faster in the fetal mouse thymus than in the adult. Passage from DN1 to DN3 stage occurs within ≤ 2 days from embryonic gestation days E12.5 to E14.5 instead of 7 to 10 days in adults.[16,17] Passage to DP occurs just 2 days later, requiring about 4 days instead of ~2 weeks overall.[3] The fetal-specific types of TCRγδ cells are in fact produced as the first wave of mature T cells, by E15.5, even before DP cells emerge. Finally, the gene expression requirements for T-cell development in the fetal thymus are subtly different than in the adult (eg, a more stringent requirement for transcription factors Ikaros and E2A, and a reduced requirement for transcription factor TCF-1 and the IL-7R).

It is interesting that there is generally reduced TCR sequence diversity in the fetal T cells as compared to those made after birth. Normally, TCR sequences have two sources of variation: the combinatorial diversity based on the particular V, D, and J segments that are rearranged, and the sloppiness of cleavage and addition of untemplated nucleotides at the recombination breakpoints (ie, junctional diversity). One enzyme, terminal deoxynucleotidyl transferase (encoded by *Dntt*), is responsible for much of the junctional diversity. It is normally turned on in the earliest stages of prethymic precursor development and expressed throughout T-cell development until positive selection. However, the waves of lymphoid precursors developing in the fetus do not express it, and this situation only changes around the time of birth. As a result, some TCR types expressed in fetal thymocytes including the "first wave" TCRγδ receptors are essentially invariant, with highly predictable reading frames, even though the genes that code for them are assembled by RAG-mediated recombination. It seems likely that these TCR specificities have some evolutionary selective advantage for the young mouse.

The production of TCRγδ cells as the initial wave in the fetal thymus is remarkably shared between different classes of vertebrates: one of the initial reports of first-wave TCRγδ cells (then called "TCR1 cells") was in chickens.[18] In the mouse, there is considerable evidence that the first-wave cells are distinctive in more ways than their use of a particular TCRγδ receptor complex, as discussed in the section on γδ cells.

Evolutionary Conservation of Diverse T-Cell Lineages but Flexibility of Roles

Focus on the mouse system may in fact handicap our ability to perceive the roles of TCRγδ cells, because mice and humans are the two known mammalian species with the

most limited systemic use of TCRγδ cells. In fact, an αβ/γδ distinction between T-cell subclasses is an ancient feature of vertebrate lymphopoiesis. Even cartilaginous fish like skates and sharks have well-defined γδ and αβ TCR complexes that are used by T cells in different anatomical domains.[19] This suggests that two TCR-defined branches of T-cell development have been coselected for persistence over > 400 million years of vertebrate evolution. Major divisions within the TCRαβ lineages, between CD4+ helpers and CD8+ killers, are similarly conserved among all bony vertebrates. Thus although the genes for immunological receptors themselves undergo rapid evolutionary change and reorganization, the underlying programs for lymphocyte development appear to be ancient and conserved.

Evolutionary Flexibility at Close Range: Mouse versus Human

Most comparative information is only available for mouse and human T-cell development. The outlines of T-cell development in the thymus are strikingly similar in these closely related mammalian species.[20–22] However, many details of T-cell development have proven to be different between man and mouse. The cell surface markers that define stages of human T-cell development are different from their mouse counterparts, and even some of the same molecules are expressed in different developmental patterns, as shown in Table 13.1. One surprising difference concerns the quantitative influences of different doses of Notch signaling on TCRαβ as compared to TCRγδ cell production.[23] While most of the major features of development are similar, this kind of variation is a caveat against overgeneralizing data from the mouse.

TABLE 13.1 Comparison of Markers in Human and Murine T-Cell Development

Stage	Mouse Phenotype	Human Phenotype
ETP-like: Intrathymic T/DC/NK precursors	CD44+ c-Kit+ CD25–	CD34+ CD38^{lo} CD7– CD1a–
Specification stage (DN2-like)	CD44+ c-Kit+ CD25+	CD34+ CD38+ CD7+ CD1a–
Committed T precursors	CD44$^{+/low}$ c-Kit^{int} CD25+	CD34+ CD38+ CD7+ CD1a+
TCRδ, γ, β rearrangement: αβ/γδ precursors	CD44+/– c-Kit$^{+/-}$ CD25+ (DN2, DN3)	CD34+ CD38+ CD1a+ CD4–/+
β-selection	CD44– c-Kit– CD25+ CD4-CD8– (DN3) to CD25– CD4– CD8–	CD34+ CD38+ CD1a+ CD4+to CD4+ CD8α+ (CD4 ISP, early DP)
TCRα rearrangement	CD25– CD4+ CD8αβ+ (DP)	CD4+ CD8α+ CD8β+ (early DP to DP)
Mature cells	TCR/CD3^{hi} and CD4+ or CD8αβ+	CD1a– TCR/CD3^{hi} and CD4+ or CD8αβ+

CD, cluster of differentiation; DC, dendritic cell; DN, double negative; DP, double positive; ETP, early T-cell precursor; NK, natural killer cell; T, T cell.
Data from reviews by Blom & Spits[283] and Taghon & Rothenberg.[22]

Creating an In Vitro Context for T-Cell Development

The three-dimensional structure of the thymus was for many years a challenge to the full definition of T-cell developmental mechanisms. It was clear after many attempts that dissociated thymic epithelial cells could not reconstitute thymic function if plated in monolayer culture, and thus it seemed that the migration of precursors through organized three-dimensional domains would be a crucial aspect of T lymphopoiesis. Redox conditions also seemed crucial for thymic function. There were two early breakthroughs in experimental dissection of T-cell development. First was the generation of fetal thymic organ cultures, which were found to require a high oxygen concentration to work, either by plating a thymic lobe at an air-medium interface, or by pumping up to 70% oxygen into the incubator in which a submerged fetal thymic lobe was cultured.[24,25] Second was the discovery that in these excellent culture conditions, even dissociated, purified thymic stromal elements could regenerate a competent thymic microenvironment if mixed together in a reaggregate fetal thymic organ culture. The development of reaggregate fetal thymic organ culture has allowed the separate roles of distinct epithelial and hematopoietically derived elements of the cortical and medullary environments in positive and negative selection to be rigorously demonstrated, as discussed in later sections.[26] Both fetal thymic organ culture and reaggregate fetal thymic organ culture systems promote T-cell development from prethymic precursor stages all the way through positive and negative selection to generate functional mature T cells.

The fetal and reaggregate thymic organ cultures both make use of natural thymic stromal elements, which makes them close to physiological conditions, but also a logistical challenge. Furthermore, the organ cultures still re-form into closed structures, making the thymocytes developing within them hard to count, track phenotypically, or experimentally manipulate. Finally, these organ cultures remain very small, hampering use for molecular biology.

Against this background, the development of stromal monolayer coculture systems for T-cell differentiation has revolutionized the field. Two lines of research converged to make this possible. First, Nakano, Kodama, and Honjo developed OP9 bone marrow stromal lines from myeloid colony stimulating factor-deficient mice (*Op*, osteopetrotic mice),[27] which proved to be ideal for supporting lymphoid development. However, only B and NK lymphocytes, not T cells, develop on these original OP9 stromal cell lines. Second, crucial experiments by the groups of Freddy Radtke and Warren Pear showed that environmental activation of Notch signaling is crucial to induce hematopoietic precursors to become T cells.[28,29] Engineering OP9 cells to express a potent Notch ligand, Schmitt and Zuniga-Pflucker developed the OP9-DL1 stromal line to support T-cell development.[30]

This created robust, highly efficient, high-yield conditions for driving and supporting T-lineage development in vitro from a wide range of uncommitted hematopoietic progenitor types, while keeping the cells accessible, easily monitored, and easily transferable throughout.

The OP9-DL1 system and variations of it have made possible enormous advances in understanding of the early, Notch-dependent stages of T-cell development. This system exposes to experimental dissection all the stages from initiation of the T-cell developmental program through commitment and up to the DP stage (ie, all the stages that DN precursors would normally undergo during their "outward bound" migration through the thymic cortex). It has also opened up the ability to track and experimentally perturb early stages of human T-cell development, starting from cord blood precursors, in a direct parallel to early mouse T-cell development.[23] However, the "inward bound" phases of T-cell development after β-selection or γδ-selection appear to depend on special properties of thymic epithelial cells that remain to be duplicated by OP9-DL1 or any stromal coculture.

EARLY LINEAGE CHOICES AND COMMITMENT

Notch and the Specification of T-Cell Identity

Notch signaling is crucial for induction of the T-cell program, for progression from stage to stage of the specification process, and for maintenance of viability of the developing T cells throughout the DN stages, all the way to β-selection. DN thymocytes gain privileged access to Notch ligands in the environment despite the large excess of DP cells. This is because the DP cells "deny themselves" the chance to bind efficiently with Delta-class Notch ligands in the environment by downregulating key Notch modifier genes, *Lfng* and *Mfng*, during β-selection,[31] which are needed to compete for stromal DLL4 binding. Thus, in a healthy normal adult thymus, the masses of DP cells actually insulate individual DN cells from competition with each other, allowing Notch triggering to be renewed repeatedly from ETP to DN3 stage.

Notch-DLL4 signaling activates the regulatory cascade that turns on T-lineage genes from ETP stage to DN2 stage to DN3 stage. T-lineage–specific signaling mediators and invariant TCR components are upregulated starting by the DN2 stage or in the DN2-DN3 transition. The IL-7R (*Il7r* gene) is fully turned on by DN2 stage to support proliferation of the precursors as they are acquiring their T-cell identity. Between DN2 and DN3 stage, RAG1 and RAG2 recombinases and multiple TCR signaling complex components and mediators of TCR signal transduction, including the kinases Zap70 and Itk, are all induced or upregulated. The specialized surrogate T-cell receptor α-like chain, pre-TCRα (pTα, encoded by the *Ptcra* gene), is also turned on to provide a partner for complex formation with any successfully-encoded TCRβ chain. Thus, the cells that reach the DN3 stage are already fully armed with substantial levels of the T-cell specific components that will be needed to transduce signals through the TCR, as soon as they have made a productive TCR gene rearrangement.

Notch signaling accomplishes this large-scale transcriptional mobilization by first activating the expression of several T-lineage transcription factors that can help the cells to open up previously silent genetic loci.[32–34] The most important T-cell–specific members of this group are GATA-3 (encoded by the *Gata3* gene) and TCF-1 (encoded by the *Tcf7* gene). These T-cell factors collaborate with the Notch-activated transcription factor RBPJκ (also called CBF1 – suppressor of hairless – Lag-1 = CSL), and together they interact with a set of transcription factors that is already present and active in multilineage hematopoietic progenitors. These preexisting factors include "E protein" basic helix-loop-helix factors E2A (encoded by *Tcf3* = *Tcfe2a*) and HEB (*Tcf12*), Ikaros family members like Ikaros (*Ikzf1*) and Helios (*Ikzf2*), Runx family factors like Runx1 and Runx3, Ets family factors including PU.1 (*SPI1* in human, *Sfpi1* in mouse) and Ets1, and other key hematopoietic factors like Myb and Gfi1.[35] The knockout of any one of these factors or factor families is sufficient to abort early T-cell development.

This complexity is important to acknowledge because despite the essential role of Notch, no one transcription factor alone turns on the whole T-cell program in a single stroke. In fact, different factors collaborate with each other in a balanced way throughout the DN stages, to coordinate differentiation with the right degree of proliferation before the cells reach the DN3 stage. Furthermore, the E proteins E2A and HEB not only regulate T-cell identity genes, but also serve throughout T-cell development to enforce TCR signaling checkpoints, undergoing cycles of inhibition and reactivation in response to TCR stimulation. We will see others of these factors that also have different, dose-dependent roles later on, working with or against each other to cause one T-cell lineage to diverge from another.

Options, Precursors, and Stages

The cells that populate the thymus are not yet committed to a T-cell fate when they arrive. Elegant single-cell culture experiments using either adapted organ culture systems or stromal coculture systems show that the same individual cells that can give rise to T cells would still be able to generate NK cells, myeloid cells, and DCs under other conditions, when they arrive in the thymus.[36–39] Several lines of research also imply that many of them are initially able to give rise to B cells.[40,41] The commitment process is the process through which the developing T cells decide permanently against these other options.[42]

Given how similarly T and B cells rearrange their immunoreceptor genes and observe developmental checkpoints, it is not surprising that B-cell potential should be present in T-cell precursors. It is notable how early B-cell potential is lost—soon after the thymus-settling precursors enter the thymus; many experiments even imply that access to the B-cell fate can be lost even before thymic entry.[43–45] However, after losing the B-cell option, DN thymocytes maintain a clearly demonstrable ability to shift to a myeloid fate, either macrophage or granulocyte, and this persists into the DN2 stage.[37–39] As long as the cells remain in an intact thymus,

these possibilities remain latent and development progresses overwhelmingly toward a T-cell fate, but all that is needed to reveal these options is to remove the cells from the thymus and offer them cytokines that support myeloid cell survival. Even into the DN2 stage, some T-cell precursors also appear to be able to develop into mast cells, yet another nonlymphoid cell type.[46] The cells that start the T-cell program thus begin with many alternative possibilities.

A great deal of work has been carried out to link the developmental repertoire of newly arrived thymic immigrants with uncommitted cells in the bone marrow that are likely to be their precursors. This lively field of research has shown that thymic immigrants can be derived not only from cells that were mostly committed to some kind of lymphoid fate prethymically (ie, common lymphoid precursors), but also from cells that were broader-spectrum lymphoid-myeloid multilineage precursors (lymphoid-primed multipotent precursors).[43,47–50] Furthermore, even cells that have already begun to be restricted to a nonlymphoid, myeloid pathway (granulocyte-macrophage precursors) can also develop into T cells, if transferred from the bone marrow into a thymic environment or OP9-DL1 coculture.[51] Many T-cell precursors in the thymus in fact show evidence of having earlier activated a myeloid lineage differentiation gene, lysozyme M.[52] Thus, the dominant developmental program imposed by the thymic environment is a kind of boot camp that can force cells of different developmental origins to converge on a common T-cell fate, erasing signs of their previous distinct identities.

Mechanisms of Commitment

The thymus uses different mechanisms to eliminate various fate alternatives for the cells. One of these is the environmental signal through Notch itself. As long as thymic immigrants and even ETP and DN2 cells are being exposed to Notch ligands in the thymic microenvironment, they cannot exhibit any alternative potentials efficiently. As differentiation progresses, however, the cells also give up the ability to access these alternatives under any conditions (Fig. 13.4).

Early B-cell development in particular is intensely inhibited by Notch signaling. Not only are precursors prevented from initiating B-cell development in the presence of Notch-Delta signals, but also exposure to Notch signals rapidly strips them of the capability to enter the B-cell pathway even if Notch-Delta signaling is removed.[40] Perhaps because early B and T cells share many other early developmental requirements—the cytokine IL-7, the role of stroma, prominent use of E proteins among their crucial lymphoid transcription factors—the Notch signal is uniquely important to make these two developmental programs mutually exclusive. The thymus is too good an environment for B-cell development in every other way; in fact it fills up with developing B cells if Notch-DLL4 signaling is defective.[41,53,54]

The choice against other alternatives takes longer and involves more conditionality. The myeloid and DC-enabling transcription factor PU.1 is normally expressed into the DN2 stage and probably explains the access to myeloid potential up to this point. Under normal conditions, however, the thymus is not a good source of myeloid-cell growth factors or differentiation factors, and so myeloid development is a low-efficiency path in the thymus regardless of the programming of the cells. In addition, active Notch signaling appears to add a further conditional obstacle to myeloid development through interference with the action of myeloid transcription factors.[52,55] This mechanism still allows cells to keep myeloid potential as a latent option through several cell divisions, accessible if they are removed from the thymus. But eventually the T-cell developmental program reaches a stage when the myeloid-enabling transcription factors themselves are repressed. This occurs in the later DN2 stage, and it marks the point when the myeloid paths too are permanently cut off.

The most persistent fate alternative is the NK fate, which falls into a somewhat different category. The choice against becoming an NK cell appears to be made about the same time as the choice to forgo the DC fate option,[36,56,57] but in fact one could argue that many CD8+ T cells never fully give up the NK possibility. There are many differences between NK cells and T cells: most obviously, the NK cells do not rearrange their TCR genes and utilize a substantially different antigen recognition system than T cells. Thus, any TCR+ cell would be classified as T rather than NK no matter how NK-like it was in other respects. In an apparent dichotomy, too, developing T cells require a class of transcription factors, the E proteins (E2A, HEB) that NK cells must inhibit: the E protein antagonist Id2 is an NK developmental requirement. However, NK cells mobilize effector programs that are almost completely congruent with those of effector CD8+ killer T cells. On persistent antigen stimulation, CD8 killer T cells turn on expression of NK-cell activation receptors as well as TCR and behave even more like NK cells in terms of promiscuity of killing. A recent gene knockout model suggests that only one transcription factor, Bcl11b, may stand between mature CD8 cells and NK-like behavior normally throughout their lifetimes as mature T cells.[58] The loss, or reduction, of access to the NK program occurs at the specific stage of T-cell development, also in the DN2 stage, when Bcl11b is turned on for the first time.[58–60]

Bcl11b is turned on in a process that requires Notch signaling and TCF-1,[61,62] possibly restrained until DN2 stage by other timing factors. DN2 cells that cannot turn on Bcl11b do not reach a normal DN2b or DN3 stage: instead, they keep prolonged access to myeloid fates and ongoing self-renewal programs as well as the NK program as long as cytokine levels permit.[59,60] They are profoundly defective in generating TCRαβ-lineage thymocytes, DP, and later stages, as well.[63,64] Thus, in addition to its special role in suppressing the NK-cell program, Bcl11b also appears to work in a gatekeeper capacity at the crux of the commitment process.

Commitment, therefore, involves at least three distinct mechanisms: the suppression of B-cell potential, the silencing of myeloid transcription factors, and the induction of Bcl11b. The last two of these happen roughly at the same point, in a transition that is now recognized to split the DN2 stage between uncommitted DN2a cells and committed

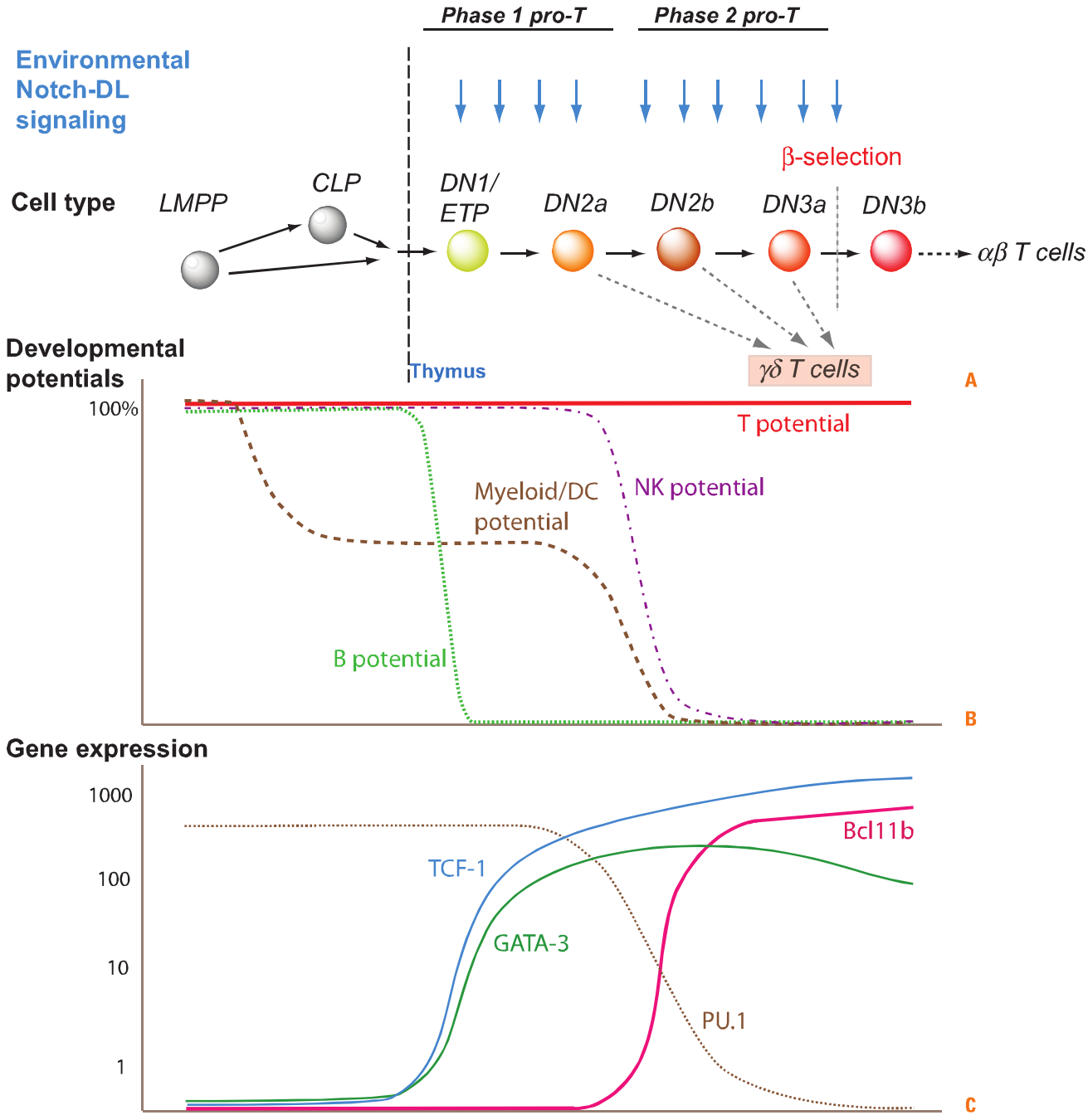


FIG. 13.4. T-Lineage Commitment and Expression Patterns of Contributing Factors. **A:** Prethymic and intrathymic stages involved in T-lineage commitment. The thymus can be seeded by cells that retain myeloid potential (lymphoid-primed multipotent precursor) as well as by cells that have already reduced their access to this option (common lymphoid precursor). As shown in the figure, Notch-Delta signals are delivered to the cells repeatedly from their time of entry into the thymus until β-selection. **B:** Approximate times at which distinct cell-lineage options for T-cell precursors are excluded. Y axis represents remaining ability of T-cell precursor cells to enter alternative pathway at the indicated stages (relative units). **C:** Expression patterns of key regulatory genes noted in the text. Factors used in the T-cell program are depicted with *solid lines*, while PU.1, a factor used in multipotent progenitor, myeloid, and B-cell programs, is shown with a *dotted line*. Adapted from figures in Rothenberg[42] and Rothenberg et al.[279] Evidence for gene expression patterns reviewed in Rothenberg et al.[32]

DN2b cells[56,65] (see Fig. 13.4). DN2a cells have access to other fates and can survive when removed from Notch ligand-rich environments; DN2b cells are committed and become acutely Notch signaling–dependent for viability. From commitment on, DN cells cannot survive deprivation of Notch ligands until they have successfully undergone β-selection or γδ-selection. Transition to the DN2b stage also appears to prepare the way for shutting down precursor expansion and establishing the molecular conditions for enforcing the β-selection checkpoint.

PROTOTYPE OF A T-CELL RECEPTOR–DEPENDENT CHECKPOINT: β-SELECTION

β-Selection: Proliferation, Allelic Exclusion, and Creation of the Double Positive State

All TCRαβ cells, regardless of functional subset, are survivors and products of β-selection. The β-selection checkpoint is the first TCR-dependent control checkpoint that these cells encounter, and the β-selection process is the first TCR-dependent signaling response that they undergo. The outcome shapes the whole population upon which later selection and differentiation mechanisms must operate.

TCRβ rearrangement and TCR-complex signaling are crucial for both the proliferation and differentiation events of β-selection. Thus recombinase-deficient (*Rag1* or *Rag2* knockout), DNA repair-deficient (eg, *Prkdc*^{scid}, "SCID"), TCRβ constant region knockout, or CD3γ or ε knockout mice all leave T-cell development blocked at DN3 stage (see Fig. 13.2). In normal development, successful TCR Vβ joining to Dβ-Jβ joints in a productive reading frame is the limiting event, as CD3 chains begin to be synthesized and expressed on the surface at a low level irrespective of rearrangement. It is the ability to deliver a signal through these complexes that really drives β-selection, as both in vivo and in vitro a response that strongly mimics natural β-selection can be triggered even in RAG-deficient thymocytes if monoclonal antibodies are used to crosslink the CD3 chains on their surfaces to deliver an artificial signal.

Fulfilling the Requirements for β-Selection

By the DN3 stage, developing T cells are already under proliferative restraint, in part to make further development conditional and in part to enable the RAG1/RAG2 complex to work efficiently. Although many ETPs already have limited Dβ-Jβ TCR gene rearrangements due to low-level prethymic RAG expression,[66] these partial rearrangements cannot encode functional receptors. By the DN3 stage, however, efficient recombination of Vβ segments to the joined Dβ-Jβ products begins, and some of these rearrangement products now encode functional TCRβ chains.

The success of TCRβ rearrangement is sensed by the cell when the newly made β-chain is assembled into a complex at the cell surface and transduces back a low-intensity signal through essentially the same kinase and adaptor mechanisms used in mature TCR signaling. Isolated TCRβ chains cannot assemble with CD3 and TCRζ chains on their own, and there is no TCRα available yet, but the invariant pre-TCRα chain provides a surrogate. The *Ptcra* gene does not require rearrangement and is turned on strongly as a direct Notch signal–induced gene by the DN3 stage. The pre-TCRα/TCRβ heterodimer thus forms a "pre-TCR" containing a full complement of CD3 and TCRζ, which is readily transported to the cell surface to trigger signaling.

Unlike all later uses of the TCRβ, this signaling does not depend on any component of ligand recognition from its heterodimer partner, but the pre-TCRα chain can mediate spontaneous clustering that may help to trigger signaling.[67–69] The rate-limiting criterion for successful β-selection is thus simply the structural integrity of the TCRβ chain that allows it to participate in a well-formed signaling complex.

The β-Selection Response

Pre-TCR spontaneous signaling triggers a dramatic cascade of events. In hours, the cells not only begin to proliferate again but also set in motion a profound transformation. The cells become large blasts, almost 10 times the volume of most thymocytes. As they turn on CD4 and CD8αβ expression, and express the coreceptor CD28 for the first time, they shed their DN cell markers and everything that had sustained their viability as DN cells, losing CD25, IL-7R, and the last vestiges of Kit expression and also inactivating the Notch pathway as well.

The proliferation unleashed by β-selection is intense. In their 2 to 3 days of proliferation, the selected DN3 cells generate approximately 10^2-fold more DP cells. During this expansion, there are ample opportunities for clearing the cell surface of obsolete membrane proteins (eg, old CD25 molecules), clearing the nucleus of obsolete transcription factors (eg, the Notch-induced transcription factor Hes-1), and clearing the genome of obsolete states of chromatin modification.

During the proliferation triggered by β-selection, TCR gene rearrangement is temporarily suspended, as the cells downregulate *Rag1* and *Rag2* gene expression and inactivate RAG2 protein by cell cycle-dependent phosphorylation.[70] RAG1 and RAG2 expression is restored by the time proliferation arrests in the DP stage, but by that time the cells have transformed the chromatin landscape in which the RAG1/RAG2 recombinase must find its targets. TCRβ is now closed, establishing rigorous allelic exclusion for this TCR chain. TCRα is now open for rearrangement, pioneered by some germline transcription as early as the late DN3 stage. At the same time, the potential for expressing TCRγδ receptors is eliminated. TCRγ genes become inaccessible, so that both germline transcripts from unrearranged loci and transcripts from any previously rearranged TCRγ genes are silenced.[71–73] TCRδ genes, whether previously rearranged or not, are deleted as the TCRα segments that straddle them rearrange. Thus, by the time proliferation stops, the DP cell is irreversibly confirmed in a TCRαβ lineage.

Creation of the Double Positive State: Setting the Stage for Positive and Negative Selection

With the first productive rearrangement of TCRα, the developing DP cell will acquire the capacity to recognize unpredictable antigenic targets, including self-antigens. Until the new receptor specificity has passed quality control, a DP cell is therefore functionally disabled and "contained," both within the thymic cortex and within a short default lifespan. DP cells not only lack emigration receptor expression but also acquire features that would cause them to be killed quickly if they did escape. As they pass through β-selection,

they downregulate their own MHC class I molecules and their surface glycoprotein sialylation[74] pathways: they can even be purified on the basis of their resulting low MHC class I expression and preferential binding by the lectin peanut agglutinin. These changes make them into potential NK cell targets and ensure that they would be scavenged by macrophages via asialoglycoprotein receptors if they escaped. Also as β-selection begins, the antiapoptotic factor Bcl2 is repressed, replaced with the weaker or more conditional survival factors Bcl-xL and Bcl2A1.[75,76] Even while they are still rapidly dividing, the emerging cells acquire an intense vulnerability to death signals, both glucocorticoid signaling and other strong signals.[77]

Cell surface expression of TCRαβ complexes are kept low on DP cells even when TCRα chains are first expressed, partly due to uniquely high levels of Src-like adaptor protein (*Sla* gene product), which targets TCRζ protein for rapid destruction.[78] Nevertheless, DP thymocytes are, if anything, more sensitive to TCR-ligand interactions than mature cells with the same TCRαβ if an appropriate assay is used. Contributing factors may include their relative lack of sialic acid residues, thus reducing electrostatic repulsion, and their low expression of the negative feedback molecule CD5 that could otherwise damp their response to TCRαβ signals.[79–82] Even though it is sensed, TCR signaling cannot turn on functional response genes like *Il2* in DP cells. In part, this is because these cells have downregulated key activation-transducing transcription factors, c-Jun and c-Rel (for more information, see www.immgen.org/).[83] β-selection also induces expression of the transcription factor, RORγ, from a distinctive promoter (RORγt, also called RORC2), which actively blocks conventional effector responses even while maintaining Bcl-xL expression throughout the DP stage.[84,85] RORγt expression sets DP cells apart from all other major classes of thymocytes; however, it provocatively links them with Th17 cells in the periphery, with lymphoid tissue–inducing cells that organize lymph nodes in fetal life, and certain classes of newly recognized innate effector cells.[86–89] The DP cells that emerge from the complex regulatory events of β-selection thus acquire a highly specialized physiology, and they are poised for selection.

The β-selection response is driven by the same major signaling pathways used in the activation of mature T cells. Lck, Ras pathway, PI3-kinase, and protein kinase C activation all play roles in the process, using virtually all the same adaptor molecules [LAT, Slp76 (Lcp2), GADS (Grap2)] that are used to coordinate signaling in positive selection later and in mature T cells.[90–92] As in later stages of T-cell development, TCR signaling temporarily antagonizes effective activity of E proteins (E2A/HEB). A transient wave of immediate-early Egr factor activation results in transient upregulation of the E protein antagonist Id3, a response that will be echoed in positive selection later.[93–96] As the cells reach the resting DP state, high-level E protein activity is restored.[97] These factors cooperate with some of the same regulatory factors that are used in early T-cell development: initially Notch signaling, then the important T-cell transcription factor TCF-1.[98–101] The fact that the cells emerging from this signaling response are idiosyncratic, functionally disarmed, short-lived DP thymocytes rather than robustly activated effector T cells must be explained as the result of the characteristic transcriptional and epigenetic regulatory state of the cells in this stage—the context within which the signaling pathways are sensed—rather than a unique biochemical pathway for the signals themselves.

A Clear and Present Danger: Creation and Enforcement of the β-Selection Checkpoint

The cell biology of the β-selection response is an obvious hazard for the organism. Intense polyclonal proliferation of this magnitude brings the cells close to a malignant state, and the program must include brakes to stop the proliferation as well as constraints to prevent it from being triggered inappropriately. In fact, most T-cell acute leukemias have precisely the phenotype of cells that cannot stop the β-selection response, continuously generating immature DP cells or DN-DP intermediates. Under normal conditions, a limiting factor for the process is the programmed downregulation of Notch responsiveness, as the extent of population expansion during β-selection is strongly influenced by Notch signaling.[102,103] Indeed, by far the most dominant and consistent feature of T-cell acute lymphoblastic leukemias is the presence of gain of function mutations in the *Notch1* locus, especially mutations that make Notch signaling ligand-independent.[104] The result is particularly grave when the cells can join viability signals from pre-TCR complexes and Notch alike to proliferate without restraint.

Another dangerous combination is if the very rapid proliferation program induced by β-selection is superimposed on any continuing expression of hematopoietic progenitor self-renewal genes, inherited from earlier stages of T-cell specification, including *SCL* (*Tal1*), *Lyl1*, *Lmo1*, *Lmo2*, and *Hhex*.[105,106] These genes are normally turned off during the lineage commitment transition, between DN2a and DN2b, but may easily act as T-cell oncogenes if kept on. Thus, β-selection may not be safe until these genes have been successfully repressed. The implication is that progressing into a normal DN2b-DN3 stage sequence may be important to establish the correct control over future growth.

Nonmalignant αβ T-cell development depends on a robust mechanism that can enforce a clear developmental arrest checkpoint, before the cells have a chance to receive the pre-TCR signal that triggers β-selection. The two most important regulators known for this process are transcription factors: E proteins (E2A and/or HEB) and Ikaros. Both types of factors are expressed fairly stably throughout early T-cell development, but they become indispensable for enforcement of the β-selection checkpoint in addition to their other roles. E proteins promote *Notch1* and *Rag* gene expression as well as expression of a number of T-cell genes, but they also tend to slow or stop proliferation.[107] Ikaros is important for the initial production of T-cell precursors but may also serve as a competitor for Notch/RBPJ at certain common DNA target sites.[108] Losses of function of either class of checkpoint enforcer lead to malignancy with very high efficiency.

THE FIRST T-CELL RECEPTOR–DEPENDENT PROGRAM CHOICE: αβ VERSUS γδ FATES

Making T-Cell Receptor–dependent Developmental Decisions: General Questions, Different Answers

The problem of how TCR recognition specificity becomes linked to irreversible activation of different transcriptional programs is the core issue of T-cell development. For most developing T cells themselves, this problem is first encountered during the decision to become a TCRαβ cell or a TCRγδ cell. As they mature, both TCRαβ cells and TCRγδ cells fan out into a variety of distinct effector cell types or committed lineages. But TCR specificity most commonly emerges as the result of stochastic processes that determine not only which V, D, and J segments will be joined but also exactly which nontemplated sequences will happen to be added at the coding joints, as the latter end up determining antigen-binding specificity as well as whether the rearrangement is in-frame. How can the cells coordinate any coherent transcriptional regulatory programs for development together with such a randomly determined outcome?

Most models that have been considered as possible answers include different balances between "instruction" and "selection." Instructive models propose ways that the randomly determined TCR specificity can result in transduction of distinct signals back to the cell that actually direct specific developmental choices. Selective models postulate that developmental choices are made independently, but that the randomly determined TCR specificity may be more "appropriate" for one choice than another. Then, the signals transduced back from the TCR need make only a simple determination: whether or not the cell should be allowed to live or die. As described in the following sections, there is substantial evidence for roles of both kinds of mechanisms in later TCRαβ cell development.

However, with reference to the TCRαβ versus TCRγδ decision, a third kind of model needs to be considered as well. The selection of TCR gene segments to be rearranged in this case is not random; it is itself under significant developmental and environmental control.[109] Specific aspects of T-cell programming not only influence which TCRγ segments are used, but also may influence whether a cell will choose TCRγ and TCRδ gene segments to rearrange at all, before or in preference to TCRβ gene segments. Thus, developmental programming can directly influence TCR specificity in this case. The effect of preprogramming must be considered together with the effect of TCR specificity to explain the ways that β-selection and γδ-selection, in various versions, can diverge from each other.

Cytokine-dependent and Stage-dependent Access to the T-Cell Receptor-γδ Loci

T-Cell Receptor-γ and T-Cell Receptor-δ Gene Loci

The ability to make a successful TCRγδ complex actually depends on the regulated status of rearrangements at as many as five distinct TCR J-C target loci in the mouse, because of the structure of the TCRγ and TCRδ gene complexes (Fig. 13.5A, B). First, much of the combinatorial diversity of the mouse TCRγδ complex comes from rearrangements of TCRVδ, Dδ, and Jδ segments. However, because all the TCRδ elements are sandwiched into the TCRα genomic locus between the Vα segments and the Jα segments, any TCRα rearrangement on the same chromosome would delete the whole TCRδ complex. Thus γδ cells need both to rearrange δ successfully and to suppress any rearrangement of the TCRα locus, immediately and permanently. Second, a special "enhanced allelic exclusion" mechanism is needed to establish expression of a unique TCRγ in a given T cell, because there are actually three different "subloci" that can serve as rearrangement sites to encode TCRγ in the mouse, albeit closely linked on the same chromosome. Each sublocus has its own Jγ and Cγ that can serve as a rearrangement target for its own dedicated Vγ segment or segments. Two of the subloci, those containing Cγ4 and Cγ2, each "own" only a single V segment and a single J segment, so that the only source of diversity in their rearrangements is junctional. The third sublocus, the one containing Cγ1, also has only one Jγ but can rearrange it to any of four Vγ's. In order to establish a unique TCRγδ, the ordering of rearrangements at each of these distinct subloci must be controlled so that only one yields a productive rearrangement. This split locus organization also makes it noteworthy that TCRγ RNA expression from any of these loci is repressed if the cell should adopt a DP fate instead.[71–73]

Special Role for Interleukin-7R Signaling

One major regulatory unifier for the TCRγ complex is the positive input all its subloci appear to require from IL-7R signaling. In mutant mice defective in IL-7 or IL-7R, one of the first abnormalities noted was their profound defect in TCRγδ cell generation. While IL-7R signaling contributes to survival and expansion of αβ-lineage cells generally, it also has an indispensable role in specification of γδ-lineage cells. At least part of the molecular explanation is that IL-7/IL-7R-activated Stat5 transcription factor is needed to bind to regulatory sites in the TCRγ locus, to open the gene segments for rearrangement.[110–113]

γδ Selection

Like β-selected cells, TCRγδ cells are selected by TCR complex triggering within the DN2-DN3 stages. Some emerge from precursors that had also opened their TCR Vβ loci for rearrangement and might thus have been β-selected instead. Under some conditions, as described subsequently, there even seems to be some overlap, with TCRγδ complexes occasionally being able to trigger a low-level β-selection response, and some "TCRγδ lineage" cells revealing a cryptic productive TCRβ rearrangement as well.[114] Both the eligible cells and the signals that trigger the two kinds of selection responses can therefore be extremely similar. However, the fate of cells undergoing TCRγδ-selection is considerably different from that of cells undergoing β-selection, and this remains only partially explained.

The γδ-Selection Program

The consequences of γδ-selection for rearrangement and expression of different TCR loci are reversed from those of β-selection, with TCRα rearrangement continuing to

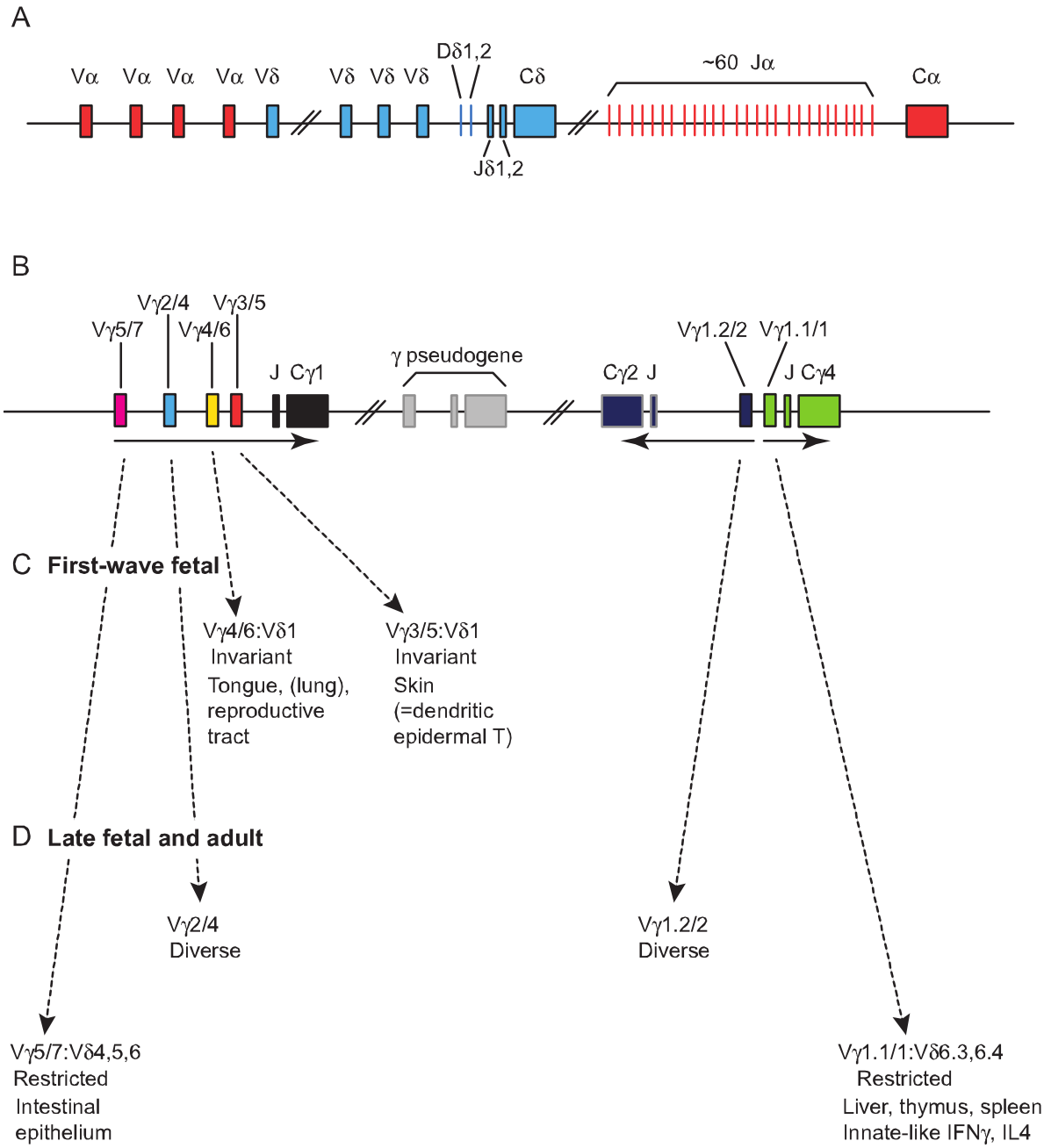


FIG. 13.5. Genetic Loci Involved in T-Cell Receptor (TCR)γδ Cell Generation and Distinct Developmental Assignments. TCRγδ cell generation in the mouse depends on the rearrangement status of the TCRδ/TCRα composite locus and the three functional TCRγ subloci. **A:** TCRδ/TCRα loci in the mouse: only a few of the many Vα, Vδ, and Jα segments are shown. **B:** TCRγ subloci: the V and J segments within the locus are shown in full, though distances are not to scale. Directions of transcripts are shown by *arrows*. Two different nomenclatures are commonly used for the TCRγ gene segments, those of Heilig and Tonegawa[280] and of Garman, Doherty, and Raulet.[281] Here, V segments are identified with both numbers, separated by a slash: (number from Garman et al.[281])/(number from Heilig and Tonegawa[280]). **C:** Fetal-specific timing of rearrangement and specific developmental fates of cells expressing invariant receptors using the indicated Vγ segments from the JCγ1 cluster. These TCRγ chains are paired with invariant TCRδ chains using only the Vδ1 segment for rearrangement. **D:** Specific developmental assignments for cells using other Vγ segments for rearrangement at later fetal and postnatal stages. Although cells using the Vγ5/7 together with Vδ4, 5, or 6 and cells using Vγ1.1/1 together with Vδ6.3 or 6.4 TCRs show some variations in specificity, they are considerably restricted compared to other adult γδ T cells, correlating with their specific functional properties.[109,138]

be blocked and TCRγ transcription being allowed to continue in the γδ-selected cells in contrast to DP cells. Unlike β-selected cells, TCRγδ cells undergo only restricted proliferation, with no induction of RORγt, much rarer induction of CD4 or CD8αβ genes, and maintenance of a much higher ratio of Bcl2 to Bcl-xL. Selection of most γδ cells in mice is also much less dependent on sustained Notch signaling at the DN3 stage than β-selection, and entails much stronger upregulation of immediate-early response transcription factor Egr3 (a zinc finger transcription factor) and the E protein antagonist Id3.[72,102,103,115] The consequence may be greater or more durable viability: in one transgenic model TCRγδ-selection depends on the presence of the presumed target antigen in the environment[116,117]—a situation that would normally induce deletion of nascent β-selected cells.

Strength of Signal

One important model to explain these program divergences focuses on the difference between the TCRγδ complex and the pre-TCR complex in terms of the strength of signals that they transduce when they are assembled in the developing cells.[72,118] In mice, the TCRγδ complex appears to deliver stronger spontaneous signals than the pre-TCR complex, and this seems to have an "instructive" effect on the way the cell responds. There is evidence that experimentally reducing the signaling through the TCRγδ complex now enables the TCRγδ to direct DN3 cells to a β-selection program. Correspondingly, precocious (transgenic) expression of a full TCRαβ heterodimer at the DN3 stage delivers stronger signals than a pre-TCR complex, and this can direct many of the cells into a γδ cell fate, skipping the CD4, CD8, and RORγt expressions that define the DP stage.[119–121] Strength of signal appears to be more important than the identity of the TCR itself. More recent work has elaborated on this to imply that the ratio of TCR signal strength to Notch pathway signal strength may be the true deciding factor.[122]

These observations apply to the divergence between DP cell selection and selection of most γδ cells in the young adult mouse. However, there is more than one way to become a γδ cell, and the γδ fates have great developmental and evolutionary diversity. Furthermore, there is evidence that many of the cells undergoing γδ-selection need not start from the same developmental state as the cells that embark on the β-selection program.

More than T-Cell Receptor Signal Strength: Developmental Factors in T-Cell Receptor-γδ Cell Specification

Stage-dependence of T-Cell Receptor-γδ Specification

If all T cells were undecided until the DN3 stage, when RAG1/RAG2 activity reaches its first peak and most Vβ-DJβ rearrangement occurs, then there should be no difference in the ratio of αβ:γδ progeny from individual T-cell precursors tested from DN2a stage until late DN3 stage. However, Kang, Volkmann, and Raulet pointed out that a subset of DN2-DN3 cells with high IL-7R expression was much more likely than the average to produce TCRγδ progeny as well as TCRαβ progeny; cells with lower IL-7R made TCRαβ progeny only.[123] These highly efficient TCRγδ progenitors are mostly DN2, not DN3. Thus, by the time they reach DN3 stage, even before productive TCRβ rearrangement, many cells have already lost much of their potential efficiency as γδ precursors. In part, this may reflect the declining IL7R signaling intensity that cells appear to experience from DN2 to DN3 stage, as a precondition for TCRαβ lineage development.[100,124,125] Not just signal strength, therefore, but also developmental stage and cytokine signaling context at the time when the first TCR signal is received may distinguish most β-selected cells from most γδ-selected cells. It is interesting that the time at which the "TCRγδ window" closes, together with the relative effects of Notch signaling on the two fates, are evolutionary variables that are different in human and mouse αβ/γδ lineage choice.[21,22,122]

Distinct Genetic Requirements for β-Selection and γδ-Selection

This implies that TCRγδ precursor activity is maximal close to the time of T-lineage commitment itself. Recall that one event that normally divides uncommitted DN2a cells from committed DN2b cells is the induction of Bcl11b. Bcl11b function is indispensable to make cells eligible for β-selection and to sustain their survival into the DP stage.[63,64,126] However, it is not essential for expression of *Rag1* and *Rag2*, nor for the expression of IL-7R. Remarkably, Bcl11b-knockout cells retain the ability to generate a modest number of T-cell progeny, provided that these are TCRγδ cells.[63,127] Thus, there must be some pathway to make at least certain kinds of TCRγδ cells that is open so early that it can bypass the standard commitment machinery, perhaps never using the functions that would be needed to set up a true TCRαβ versus TCRγδ lineage choice.

Indeed, γδ cells can be generated in a number of mutant conditions that are prohibitive for T-cell development.[22] Severe inhibition of E protein activity[128,129] or withdrawal of Notch signaling[102,115,130–133] as already noted can block αβ lineage development much more severely than γδ-cell development in mice. There appear to be broader differences in central features of cell biology and epigenetic regulation between TCRαβ and TCRγδ programs, as well. Deletion of key epigenetic regulators Brg1 and DNA methyltransferase 1 by Lck-Cre (in DN2-DN3 stage) was found to inhibit αβ lineage cells more than γδ lineage cells, though in these cases deletion might have occurred too late to affect all γδ precursors.[134,135] More remarkably, γδ but not αβ lineage cells are generated in mice with germline mutations affecting the Polycomb Group chromatin regulator Bmi1 or the ribosomal protein L22.[136,137] Some of these differences may reflect the special requirements for extensive proliferation at β-selection that do not apply to the milder response of γδ-selection. However, the effect of Bcl11b loss can also hint that the differences could trace back to different times and modes of commitment.

Multiple Lineages of T-Cell Receptor-γδ Cells

TCRγδ fate can be any one of multiple different developmental programs[138] (Fig. 13.5C,D). The first evidence for this related to the "first wave" fetal thymocytes. These are

not a generalized TCRγ population; they comprise two sublineages that share an invariant TCRδ rearrangement and pair it with an invariant TCRγ rearrangement at the Cγ1 sublocus, in one case using Vγ3/5 and in the other case using Vγ4/6 in Figure 13.5 (see figure legend for nomenclature of Vγ segments). These two TCRγδ receptor T-cell classes have distinct assignments in the body, the Vγ3/5 cells emerging from the thymus to patrol the skin epidermis (as "dendritic epidermal T cells") and the Vγ4/6 cells to patrol the tongue and reproductive tract. Both types of TCR rearrangements are limited to fetal life. A third Vγ segment at the Cγ1 sublocus (Vγ5/7) is used in a similar way in cells targeted to the gut epithelium, as a major class of TCRγδ+ intraepithelial lymphocytes. These Vγ5/7 TCRγδ intraepithelial lymphocytes are also distinct in that they can arise not only from intrathymic progenitors but also from progenitors developing in a nonthymic site.[139] Clearly, these early waves of TCRγδ cells have distinct homing specificities as well as notably sublineage-specific, invariant recognition potentials.

The Vγ3/5 cells are preprogrammed to use this Vγ segment for rearrangement because the earliest fetal thymocytes maintain a high level of the E protein antagonist Id2, and this Vγ segment is specifically opened in cells that have low E protein activity.[140] Normally, a high Id2:E protein ratio is a hallmark of NK cells, which these cells are not. Nevertheless, they support their growth with another distinctive NK-like feature, namely the IL-2/IL-15R complex (a dimer of CD122:CD132, also called IL-2/IL-15Rβ:γc).[141] In the Vγ3/5 first-wave cells, signals through this receptor complement and synergize with IL-7R signaling to promote their robust early dominance. As a result, in these cells and in the intestinal-targeted Vγ5/7 cells only, the Stat5 needed for TCRγ rearrangement can be activated by the response to IL-15 via IL-2/IL-15R:γc, in place of IL-7/IL-7R interaction.[142] It is interesting that cells of this type are especially enriched in populations derived from Bcl11b-knockout precursors.[59]

In the past 5 years, distinctive sublineages have also been recognized among adult TCRγδ cells (see Fig. 13.5D). Two other TCR Vγ segments, those used with Cγ4 and Cγ2, can also be associated in a preferential way with particular γδ functional subsets. The Vγ1.1/1-JCγ4 TCRγ chain is associated with an IFNγ-producing, NK1.1+ functional subset, whereas the Vγ1.2/2-JCγ2 TCRγ is often associated with an IL-17–producing, CCR6+ subset.[138] Cells using Vγ1.1/1-JCγ4 chain tend to pair it with a TCRδ chain that uses Vδ6.3 or Vδ6.4 with limited junctional diversity, most likely indicating yet another stereotypical antigen-recognition specificity. Strikingly, the cells that use this receptor have a distinctive set of developmental requirements that split them from all other TCRγδ cells. In contrast to other murine γδ cells that emerge preferentially from conditions of low E protein activity, due to high Id3 (most γδ cells) or Id2 (fetal first-wave γδ cells), these "Vγ1.1/Vδ6.3" cells cannot develop unless there is ample E protein activity. Furthermore, they resemble the NKT cells of the TCRαβ type in other aspects of their developmental requirements. They express both IFNγ and NK1.1 and also have a specific requirement for the transcription factor PLZF (promyelocytic leukemia zinc finger [PLZF], also called Zbtb16).[143–146] As discussed in a later section, this could represent an "innate-like" subset of TCRγδ cells with its own distinctive set of roles.

The demarcation of these different TCRγδ cell subsets is new enough so that how much their different properties are results of maturation from different precursors and how much they are effects of particular TCR-mediated signaling experiences during selection and antigen responses is still unresolved.[138,144,147–149] To the extent that many TCRγδ cells use TCR of very limited diversity, it is likely that they are pretargeted to interact with particular structures of evolutionarily selective importance. However, it is clear that the choice of being a TCRγδ cell rather than a TCRαβ cell opens the door to a rich spectrum of developmental pathways and immunological roles.

POSITIVE VERSUS NEGATIVE SELECTION OF T-CELL RECEPTOR-αβ CELLS: MORE THAN A BINARY SWITCH

The highly diverse TCRαβ repertoires generated in DP cells pose a different challenge to the goal of producing self-tolerant mature T cells that can recognize foreign antigens and produce appropriate effector molecules to orchestrate the immune response. Because TCRαβ specificities are randomly generated, developing T cells must be selected for their ability to respond appropriately to host MHC molecules. This is achieved through positive selection in the cortex, a process in which cortical thymic epithelial cells (cTECs) deliver a survival signal to thymocytes that recognize self-peptide and MHC complexes. Thymocytes that are unable to recognize these complexes fail to receive the survival signal and thus die by a process known as death by neglect. Interestingly, DP cells selected on a particular class of MHC molecules maintain their recognition specificity as they mature and migrate to the periphery.

Positive selection is a test for the basic structural integrity of the TCRαβ complex made as an outcome of productive TCRα rearrangement and for its ability to interact with self-MHC. However, beyond these criteria it is not stringent in its requirement of TCR specificity. A single peptide-MHC complex can select DP cells with several TCR specificities, and several different peptide-MHC complexes can select a single TCR as long as they all have a low-affinity interaction with the selecting complex.[150,151] This is important as all positively selecting cells only see self-antigens in the thymus, and it is possible that they could react strongly and be activated when a foreign peptide is displayed in the same MHC context in the periphery. The MHC exhibits both polymorphism and polygeny, and this is thought to allow the immune system to respond to several different, fast-evolving pathogens. Moreover, the next step of negative selection will weed out any cells that are excessively activated in response to self-antigen presentation in the thymic medulla. In fact, as we will see later, positive selection of some self-reactive cells is imperative for the formation of T_{reg}s. Thus, positive selection ensures that only immunologically useful TCRs (ie, those that recognize the particular combination of MHC molecules expressed in an individual) are selected for further development.

An inevitable outcome of the random generation of TCR diversity and the relatively promiscuous positive selection process is the survival of cells that can be highly reactive to both foreign and self-peptides bound by self-MHC. TCR-positive cells go through an additional checkpoint known as clonal deletion or negative selection in the medulla, which shapes the final TCR repertoire by pruning out self-reactive cells. In the process, they repetitively test their TCRs for self-reactivity through interactions with medullary epithelial cells (mTECs) and DCs expressing a huge range of self-peptide-MHC complexes. Negative selection results in the apoptotic death of cells with high-affinity TCRs for at least one of the self-antigen-MHC complexes. However, not all thymocytes that react with self-peptide-MHC with high affinity die during negative selection. Instead, some self-reactive thymocytes survive and develop into T_{reg}s that are potent dominant suppressors of autoimmune T cells, which also arise in the thymus (see following discussion). Negative selection and T_{reg} development, together known as central tolerance mechanisms, ensure that the final TCR repertoire is self-tolerant.

Timing and Anatomical Sites

DP thymocytes have only a 3-day lifespan on average before they die by neglect, and this creates an effective deadline for positive selection. Throughout this time they actively carry on V-J rearrangement of the TCRα locus. This starts as soon as RAG expression resumes after β-selection and sometimes even before the cells finish proliferating. Expression of an in-frame TCRα chain replaces pre-TCRα in complexes with TCRβ, enabling the cells to be auditioned for positive selection immediately based on the interaction with ligands on the cortical epithelial cells. There is no allelic exclusion of TCRα gene rearrangement; the process is terminated either by positive selection signaling, which finally shuts off RAG expression, or by cell death. Individual cells can rearrange the α-chain genes on both chromosomes, not only once but many times, because the locus offers more than 50 possible Jα segments as well as Vα segments in a permissive topology.[152] Rearrangement tends to begin with Vα and Jα elements centrally located near the TCRδ complex, working outward to rearrange more 5′ Vα and 3′ Jα segments until a product of rearrangement is made that mediates positive or negative selection, or until the cell dies.

Although TCRα gene rearrangement is halted by the first successful TCR engagement, the process of positive selection is more than the initial contact with MHC ligand, and in fact TCR interactions with peptide-MHC must continue for several days in order for the process to be completed. As we will see later, this requirement for ongoing or repeated TCR signaling after the first responses to positive selection signals is a crucial element of the mechanism that determines the CD4/CD8 lineage choice.

The sequence of events triggered by positive selection includes little if any proliferation, in contrast to β-selection. CD69 is upregulated, RAG genes are turned off permanently, CD5 levels increase, and TCR/CD3 complexes are stabilized so that their surface expression increases in parallel. Concomitantly, expression of the chemokine receptor CCR7 is turned on. This enables the cells to migrate from the cortex to the medulla, where they can be screened by negative selection as well as maturing to acquire effector function.[2,9]

While in the medulla, thymocytes undergo several changes that lead to their final maturation. Several peculiar features of DP cells, imposed during β-selection, are reversed. Glycoprotein processing is altered back to a more "normal" pattern, so that new glycoproteins are once again fully sialylated. The cells regain the Bcl-2 and class I MHC expression that they had lost at β selection, and they begin to recover the functional responsiveness that had disappeared at that time. As this proceeds, the cells eventually become resistant to negative selection, and they downregulate CD24 (heat-stable antigen) as TCR/CD3 levels rise even higher and CD69 expression finally subsides. Importantly, activation of PI 3-kinase and Akt diminishes, allowing the quiescence factor FoxO1 to localize to the nucleus, where it can activate an emigration program.[2] FoxO1 target genes include the transcription factor Klf2, which turns on expression of L-selectin and the emigration receptor itself, a G-protein coupled receptor for the glycolipid sphingosine 1-phosphate.[153–156] Thus, the cells are enabled to leave the medulla and migrate out to the periphery. The TCR upregulation, rescue from death by neglect, release to the medulla, and functional maturation events appear to be common to all positively selected thymocytes.

The exact stage at which negative selection is initiated has been a matter of debate. Using TCR transgenic model systems, clonal deletion was originally found to occur at a range of stages from the DN or DP stage of T-cell development in the thymic cortex to the SP stage in the medulla. However, the interpretation of these results for normal thymocytes remained controversial because of the early timing and/or high level of transgenic TCR expression relative to normal T cells.[157,158] Several lines of evidence suggest that under normal conditions, negative selection may be predominantly separated from positive selection both developmentally and spatially. In a transgenic TCR model system where the TCR was expressed with normal timing, deletion was found to predominantly occur in SP cells in the medulla.[159] Moreover, CCR7-directed migration to the medulla was recently shown to be necessary for negative selection against tissue-restricted antigens (TSAs).[160]

During positive and negative selection, cells migrate through the cortex and medulla in distinct patterns that reflect selection and progression to the next stages of development. Thus in the cortex, positively selecting cells survey self-antigen presenting cTECs by a "random walk" at low speeds of 3 to 8 μm/minute. Once a positively selecting signal is received and thymocytes upregulate CCR7, they stop surveying the cortex and, presumably pulled by the chemotactic attraction to CCR7 ligands expressed by mTECs, migrate in a highly directed manner to the medulla. CCR7 is not only important for the directional migration of SP thymocytes, but it is also important for the accumulation of SP cells in the medulla. In the medulla, they resume their random walk but at a much higher speed of 20 to 25 μm/minute. Any particular self-antigen may be expressed only by 1% to

5% of mTECs, and this high-speed scanning is thought to help the thymocytes in seeing all possible self-peptides expressed in the medulla. Upon encountering a negatively selecting antigen, SP cells slow down, give up their random walk again, and restrict their movement to confined areas but continue to survey additional peptide MHC complexes. Thus, developing thymocytes effectively scan both the cortex and the medulla to increase their chance of encountering positively and negatively selecting ligands.[161,162]

Signal Strength and Signal Quality

Both positive and negative selection involve TCR- and Lck-mediated signaling cascades triggered in response to self-peptide-MHC complexes, but these processes result in very different outcomes (Fig. 13.6). While it has been known for a long time that cells that react with self-peptide:MHC with low affinity (and thus receive weaker TCR signal) are positively selected while those that react too strongly are negatively selected, most of our knowledge has come through transgenic TCR expression, and it has been difficult to demonstrate the signal strength perceived by polyclonal thymocytes undergoing selection in vivo. Recently, Moran et al. reported the development of a BAC transgenic Nur77-GFP knock-in reporter mouse that has made it possible for the first time to look at TCR signal strength on a stage-by-stage and cell-by-cell basis.[163] Nur77 is an orphan nuclear receptor that is a product of the *Nr4a1* gene, an immediate early response gene transcribed downstream of TCR engagement.[164,165] Importantly, upregulation of Nur77 is directly proportional to strength of the activating TCR signals. Earlier work has shown that while positive selection causes a 2-fold increase in Nur77 expression, negatively selecting cells expressed Nur77 at 10-fold higher levels.[166] Similarly, Nur77-GFP expression in vivo was found to be much higher in cells undergoing negative selection as compared to positively selecting cells, thus demonstrating directly that negative selection is the result of very strong TCR signaling.

While it is not fully understood how these signals give such different outcomes, several factors contribute. Combined triggering of TCR and costimulatory receptors such as CD28 and CD40L strongly favors a cell death response by purified DP cells and incompletely mature single-positive cells alike.[6] Such costimulation may activate distinct signaling mediators in the cell, or provide an altered balance of signals, not only act to amplify perceived TCR signal intensity. For example, research over the past several

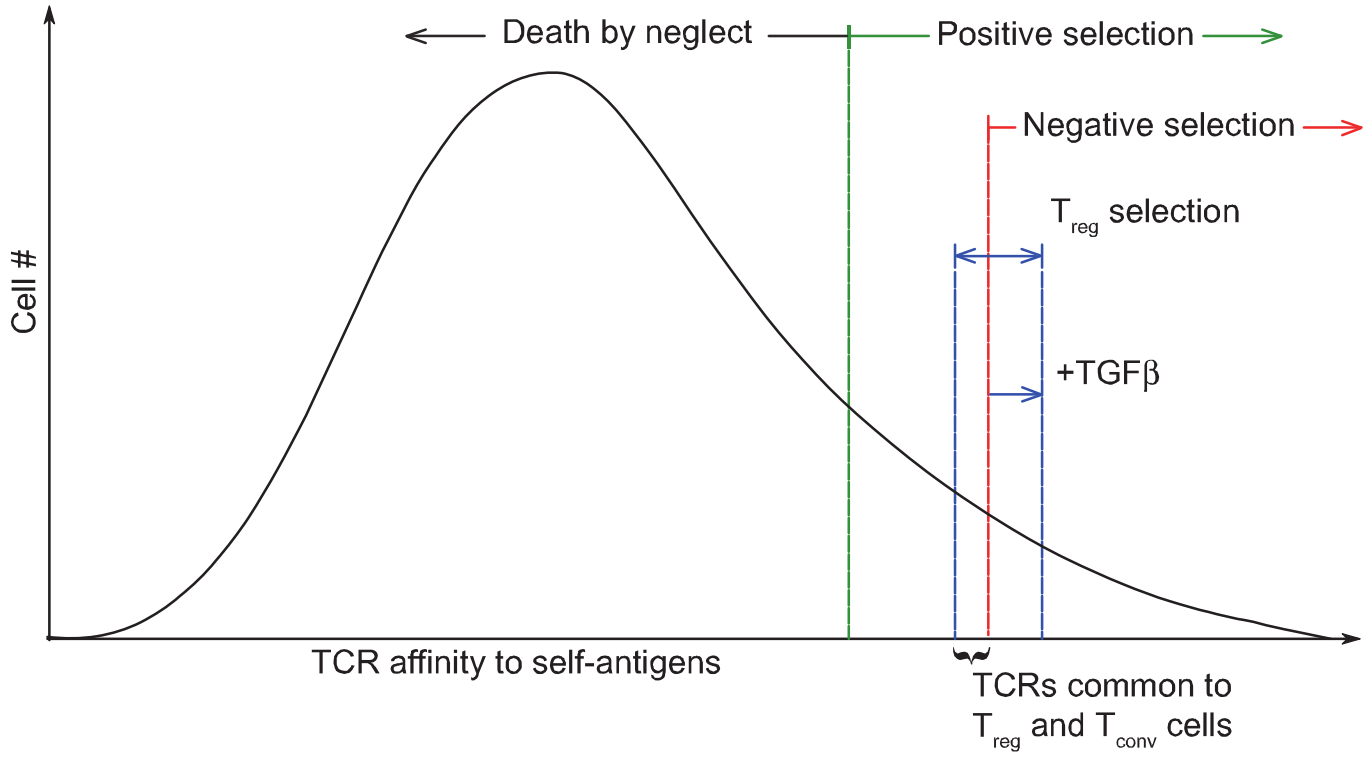


FIG. 13.6. T-Cell Developmental Fate is Determined by the Affinity to Self-Antigens. Majority of thymocytes in normal wild-type mice express T-cell receptors (TCRs) that do not recognize self-antigen:major histocompatibility complex complexes with sufficient affinity and hence die due to neglect while a minority are positively selected (*dashed green line*). However, only those positively selected cells that escape later negative selection can mature into conventional effector T cells (T_{conv}). During negative selection, thymocytes that recognize self-antigens with strong affinity (*dashed red line*) undergo clonal deletion. T_{reg} selection occurs in a narrow window of TCR affinity, (*dashed blue lines*), which shows some overlap with net positive selection giving rise to TCRs represented in both conventional CD4+ T cell (T_{conv}) and regulatory T (T_{reg}) cell populations.[245,246,248] As shown in the figure, TGFβ is important in rescuing T_{reg} cells as well as thymocytes in general from negative selection.[221]

years continues to highlight the essential role of differential activation of the mitogen-activated protein kinase (MAPK) pathways during positive and negative selection. Signals transduced during positive selection appear to be particularly dependent upon calcineurin and ERK, while negative selection depends more upon JNK and p38 activation, although ERK also appears to be activated. However, it seems that weak TCR signals during positive selection result in low, sustained ERK activation, while strong negative selection signals result in a transient burst of ERK activation and JNK and p38 activation. It is also reported that during positive selection, activated Erk remains compartmentalized in the Golgi membrane as opposed to its negative-selection-specific localization at the plasma membrane. Differential ERK activation patterns are functionally important, not just reporters for the difference between positive and negative selection signaling, for double knockout of Erk1 and Erk2 severely reduced positive selection although it did not show any effect on negative selection.[153,167,168,168a] Additionally, while the loss of Grb2, an adaptor protein that mediates Ras-MAPK activation downstream of TCR engagement, results in a severe defect in both positive and negative selection, the absence of Grb2-associating protein, Gasp (also known as Themis: thymocyte-expressed molecule involved in selection) causes a defect only in positive selection.[169–171] Identifying signaling molecules that act exclusively or differentially during positive or negative selection will be important for discovering specific differences in the pathways that lead to such strikingly different fates.

The difference may not simply be based on signal strength. The physiological context changes between positive selection, occurring in the more immature DP cells in the thymic cortex, and negative selection, occurring typically, but not exclusively, in more mature positively selected SP T cells in the thymic medulla. These SP T cells are negatively selected within a network of mTECs and DCs that not only express an expanded array of self-peptides and MHC complexes but also express costimulatory molecules such as CD80, CD86, and CD40 that are rare in the cortex. Furthermore, as a result of positive selection, these SP T cells have undergone major changes in differentiation programming as CD4 or CD8 cells. The higher levels of surface TCR and other changes as a result of positive selection, such as upregulation of CD5 and restored sialylation of surface glycoproteins are likely to change sensitivity of SP cells to high-affinity TCR signals. Thus, the different developmental states (DP versus SP), levels of surface TCR and other signaling components, gene expression programs, and microenvironment of the T cells, as well as the differing arrays of presented antigens in the cortex versus medulla, are all factors that likely contribute to the different outcomes of high- versus low-affinity TCR-peptide-MHC interactions leading to negative versus positive selection.

Anatomical Differences in Antigen Presentation

Cortical epithelial cells provide a rich source of MHC class I and class II surface complexes with a notable lack of costimulatory molecules for T cells. These features of the cTECs are important because at the DP stage as already noted, costimulation leads to clonal deletion instead of activation. Thus, the cortical epithelial microenvironment provides a uniquely forgiving testing ground for newly generated TCR recognition specificities. In addition, however, it may present a qualitatively distinctive set of antigens for positive selection. Recent work has revealed that cTECs uniquely express a novel catalytic subunit "β5t" of the 20S proteosome, a multisubunit protein complex that cuts proteins into peptides, some of which will eventually be displayed on MHC I molecules. While cTECs also express a low level of the immune-cell-specific β5i subunit, the expression of the β5t subunit is essential for the selection of immunocompetent CD8 T-cell repertoire. Peptides that bind MHC I molecules in other cells are generated by the chymotrypsin activity of the canonical β5 subunit, which generates peptides with hydrophobic residues at their C terminus. This is important because they form a hydrophobic anchor and ensure that the peptides fit tightly in the peptide-binding groove of the MHC. The β5t subunit has significantly reduced chymotrypsin activity, and it is not clear whether self-peptides that are processed in cTECs fit snugly in MHC I peptide-binding groove at all.[172–176] Additionally, the crystal structure of TCR-MHC complex shows that TCR V regions that make contacts with MHC are encoded by the germline Vβ and Vα elements themselves, in contrast to the sequences generated during VDJ recombination, which encode the TCR regions that contact the antigenic peptide. These reports have important implications for positive selection, because suboptimal binding of self-peptides to MHC I molecules on cTECs and the possibility that MHC recognition may be encoded in the genomic sequence of the TCRs together imply that the weak signal required for positive selection could be generated by TCR-MHC rather than TCR-peptide-MHC contacts.[177] A cTEC-specific difference is also seen in the peptide processing machinery responsible for loading MHC II molecules. Thus, unlike other bone marrow–derived APCs that express the protease cathepsin S, cTECs express cathepsin L, and the expression of this protease is crucial for the positive selection of CD4 cells.[178,179]

Negative selection depends on the presentation of self-peptides to deliver a strong TCR signal that initiates apoptosis in self-reactive thymocytes, i.e. cells that might react against self peptides if presented in the periphery by professional antigen-presenting cells. Accordingly, it is not surprising that an mTEC-specific difference in the peptide processing and presentation machinery has not yet been described for the medulla. mTECs do have special properties that make the medulla a highly efficient site of negative selection, and these are discussed in a later section.

Thus it is possible that the mechanisms described previously generate positively selecting peptides that could be entirely different from those that trigger negative selection, accounting for the difference in signal strength. A detailed investigation of the nature of MHC class I and II associated peptides displayed by the cTECs should therefore help in a better understanding of the differences between positive and negative selection.

POSITIVE SELECTION: CD4/CD8 LINEAGE CHOICE

Major Models for Functional Lineage Divergence

The mechanism that regulates the choice between CD4 and CD8 lineages has been the focus of intense research as well as debate for the last two decades. The central question has been how DP cells, which express both CD4 and CD8 co-receptors, make the decision to differentiate into CD4 or CD8 SP thymocytes. The CD4/CD8 fate decision is probably made in the cortex, during the iteration of positive selection signals. By the time the cells reach the medulla, their CD4 or CD8 identities appear to be set. Research from several groups has now provided a better understanding of how and when the CD4 versus CD8 lineage choice is made.

It is now clear that MHC class I– and II–restricted thymocytes experience positive selection signals differently. Firstly, it was observed that the affinity of Lck, a downstream kinase crucial for transmitting the TCR signal, for the CD4 and CD8 coreceptors is different. Thus, because CD4 has more Lck associated with it than CD8, DP cells expressing an MHC II-restricted TCR receive a stronger signal. The second difference lies in the duration of Lck signaling over subsequent developmental time. All positively selected cells are preprogrammed to downregulate CD8 irrespective of their MHC restriction and progress to the CD4+ $CD8^{lo}$ stage. These cells are still uncommitted, and their lineage fate is determined based on whether or not they receive further TCR signals. Downregulation of CD8 results in interruption of TCR signaling in MHC I–restricted thymocytes because now there is no CD8 to stabilize the class I MHC and TCR interaction. On the other hand, class II–restricted cells still express CD4, which allows continued TCR signaling upon subsequent contact with MHC II molecules and results in the development of CD4 SP thymocytes. Thus, while CD4 cells develop in a straightforward manner by downregulating CD8, CD8 SP development involves the downregulation of the CD8 receptor itself. In the subsequent stages, in the absence of further TCR signaling and presence of IL-7R-Stat5 signaling, MHC I–restricted cells downregulate CD4, undergo "coreceptor reversal" to upregulate CD8 and mature to the CD8 SP stage. A set of five enhancers, regulated in a stage specific manner, control the expression of CD8α; it is interesting to note that different enhancers are involved in the CD8 downregulation in postselection thymocytes and its re-expression in CD8 SP cells. This allows for coreceptor reversal by the induction of lineage-specific factors downstream of IL-7R signaling that are silent in uncommitted cells and thus adds another layer of transcriptional regulation to the lineage choice decision.[180–182]

The major hypotheses originally proposed to explain the lineage choice decision can be classified into two main categories. 1) The "instructive" models were based on the proposal that MHC class I and II signals are qualitatively different and that TCR and CD8 or CD4 interaction with these molecules "instructs" the cells to differentiate to CD8 and CD4 lineage, respectively. 2) The "selective" or "stochastic" models posited that CD4 and CD8 lineage choices are made even before the cells interact with MHC molecules and that the interaction with MHC merely selects the precommitted cells by delivering a survival signal. In one version, stochastic events were thought to give rise to CD8 and CD4 T cells with mismatched TCR coreceptor pairs, which would eventually die due to neglect. However, the experimental evidence required to support either of these models was lacking. Firstly, in certain TCR transgenic models, MHC I–restricted cells could develop into CD4 cells and conversely CD8 cells could be class II MHC–restricted based on the selecting antigen, thus discounting the exclusivity of the signals these subsets received. Secondly, the efficiency of selection of TCR repertoire can be much higher than that predicted by stochastic matching of TCR specificity and co-receptors.

The experiments that resulted in the abandonment of these hypotheses gave rise to newer, more refined models that focused on the strength and more importantly on the duration of TCR signaling. Thus it was demonstrated using fetal thymic organ cultures in which, depending on whether TCR signaling was either sustained or interrupted, that thymocytes expressing the same transgenic TCR could be differentiated into CD4 and CD8 lineage, respectively. Finally, when the CD4 gene was placed under the control of CD8 regulatory elements so that CD4 instead of CD8 was downregulated in postselection thymocytes, MHC II–restricted thymocytes developed into CD8 SP cells. These experiments thus showed that signal strength was secondary to the more important factor, the duration of TCR signaling, in deciding CD4- versus CD8-lineage fate.[183,184]

Kinetic Signaling

The most recent refinement to the lineage choice hypothesis came in the form of the kinetic signaling model, which provides an explanation of the pathway (outlined previously) through which majority of thymocytes make the CD4/CD8 decision[182,185–188] (Fig. 13.7). Importantly, kinetic signaling agrees with previous models in that the duration of TCR signaling is important in lineage choice. It was formulated principally to incorporate the following experimental observations not explained by previous models: 1) the silencing of CD8 transcription in positively selected DP thymocytes resulting in the development of CD4+ $CD8^{lo}$ thymocytes that exhibit unequal surface expression of co-receptor molecules, and 2) the lineage noncommitted state of postselection CD4+ $CD8^{lo}$ thymocytes. Thus, it was proposed that transcriptional silencing of CD8 expression in thymocytes following a positive selection signal is employed as a mechanism to assess changes in the TCR signaling environment, which would distinguish between TCR/coreceptor complexes with class I MHC and those with class II MHC. If TCR/coreceptor signaling persists, the cells will differentiate into CD4 SP. If TCR/coreceptor signaling begins strongly but is then reduced, then upon receiving IL-7R or other γ_c chain mediated signals, positively selected MHC I–restricted thymocytes differentiate to the CD8 lineage. Recent experiments have now shown that IL-7R-Stat5 mediated signaling is crucial for coreceptor reversal and CD8 development. Elegantly, the emphasis

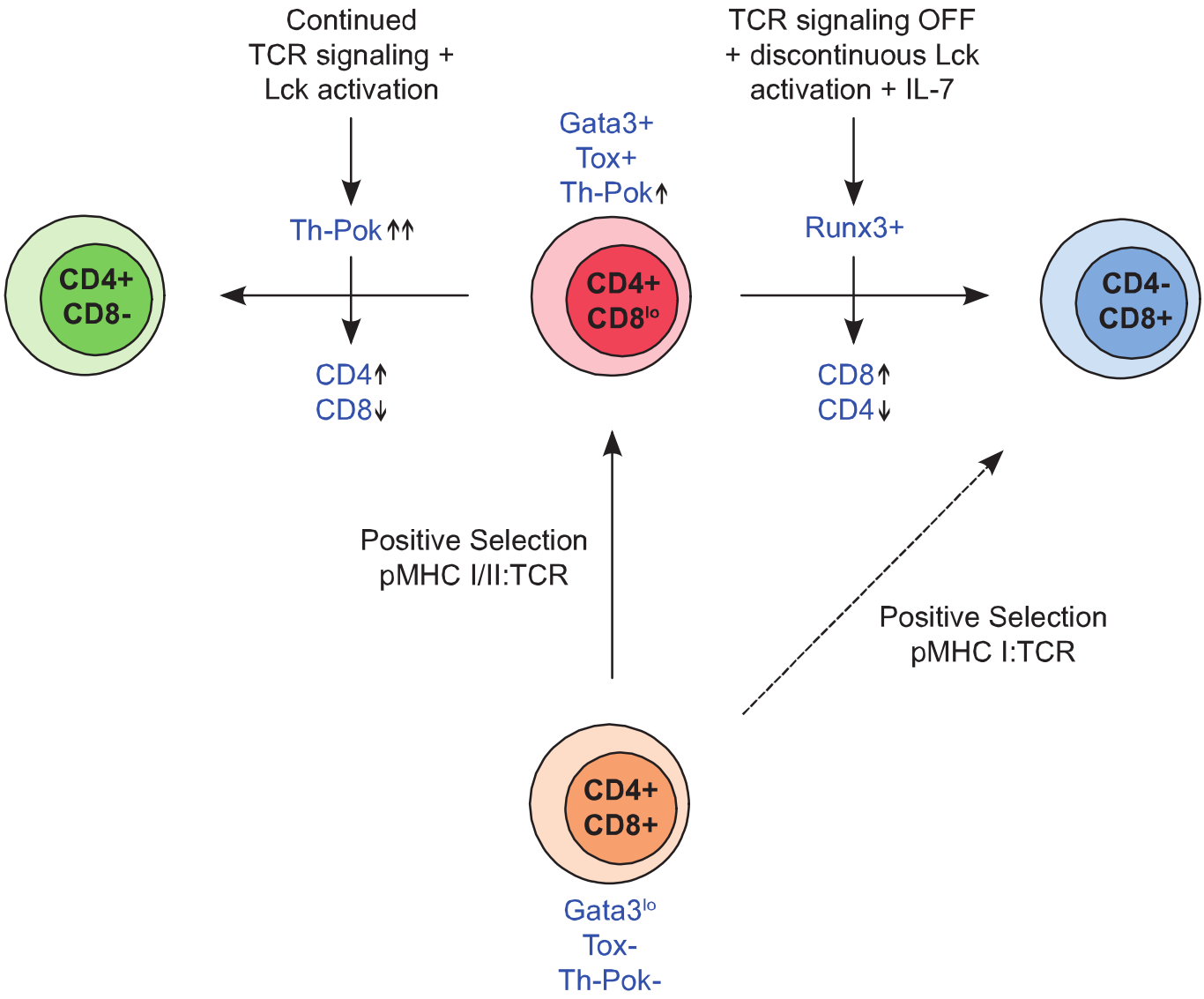


FIG. 13.7. CD4 and CD8 Lineage Differentiation. The majority of the positively selected DP cells (*peach*) differentiate into CD4 (*green*) and CD8 single positive (SP; *blue*) cells through the common CD4+ CD8^{lo} (*red*) uncommitted intermediate.[185] Transcription factors and coreceptor gene expression are shown in *blue*, whereas increases or decreases in their expression are denoted by *upward and downward arrows*, respectively. A small number of major histocompatibility complex I–restricted cells directly mature to the CD8 SP stage (*dashed arrow*) after positive selection. Transcription factor expression and signaling differences that enable these cells to take a more direct route to the CD8 SP stage remain to be identified.

on signal continuity or discontinuity rather than absolute strength enables the CD4/CD8 decision-making mechanism to operate independently of the decision to be positively or negatively selected.

The understanding of the genetic basis for CD4 commitment came about through the discovery of *Th-Pok*, a gene that enforces CD4 commitment in CD4+ CD8^{lo} thymocytes that experience sustained TCR signaling. Study of mice deficient in *Th-Pok* function also showed for the first time that positive selection and lineage commitment are two separate events[189,190] (see Fig. 13.7). The molecular circuitry that executes the CD4/CD8 lineage choice is becoming one of the best understood aspects of T-cell development.

Th-POK and GATA3 as CD4-Specific Drivers

Work from two groups independently led to the discovery of T-helper–inducing POZ/Kruppel-like factor (Th-POK, also known as c-Krox or Zfp67), a BTB-POZ domain containing transcription factor encoded by the *zbtb7b* gene, which is crucial for CD4 lineage commitment and fidelity. Kappes et al. identified a point mutation in the DNA-binding Kruppel-like zinc finger of Th-POK to be responsible for the complete absence of mature CD4+ T cells in the "helper-deficient" mouse model.[189] In these mice, while MHC II–restricted cells were positively selected, they did not mature into CD4 SP cells but were efficiently redirected to the CD8 lineage instead. Similar results were seen in a *Th-Pok* knockout mouse, thus identifying a central role for

Th-POK in CD4-lineage commitment and blocking CD8-lineage development. Bosselut et al. also identified Th-POK as a differentially expressed gene, which is highly expressed in the CD4 lineage as compared with the CD8-lineage cells.[190] Forced expression of Th-POK was able to block CD8 T-cell development completely and redirect MHC I–restricted cells into the CD4 lineage instead. Interestingly, lineage diversion in the absence or forced expression of Th-POK was accompanied by the acquisition of a gene expression pattern specific to the diverted lineage, indicating that Th-POK does more than simply regulate CD4 and CD8 expression.

Th-POK can enforce CD4-lineage commitment in a dominant fashion and is also required to maintain CD4-lineage–specific gene expression even after commitment. Continuous *Th-Pok* expression is required for maintaining CD4 lineage fidelity of developing as well as mature cells, as its absence leads to the upregulation of CD8-specific transcription factors and effector genes, including *Runx3*, *eomesodermin*, *perforin*, and *granzyme B*.[191] Thus the results obtained so far indicate that Th-POK represses CD8-lineage specific gene expression, in addition to providing positive input into several helper-specific genes, to enforce the CD4 fate on developing thymocytes.[192–197]

GATA-3, another transcription factor that is important for T-lineage specification of early DN-stage thymocytes, also plays a major role in CD4 development. GATA-3 is normally downregulated during the DP stage, and its expression can be reactivated by a strong TCR signal typically experienced by DP cells expressing an MHC II–restricted TCR. Several important observations point toward an important role for GATA-3 during CD4 specification and commitment. Firstly, DP-specific knockout of *Gata3* results in the blockade of cells at the CD4+ $CD8^{lo}$ stage, and these cells showed some low-level redirection to the CD8 lineage even in a β2-microglobulin–deficient environment where MHC class I surface expression is profoundly impaired. Furthermore, forced expression of GATA-3 blocks CD8 T-cell development and promotes CD4 development instead. On the other hand, on its own, it cannot redirect developing class I–restricted CD8 cells to the CD4 lineage, and thus is not sufficient to mimic Th-POK in gain of function experiments. A link between GATA-3 and Th-POK was established when positively selected GATA-3 knockout DP cells were found to be deficient in *Th-Pok* expression, and GATA-3 appears to regulate Th-POK directly because a GATA-3 binding site in the second intron of the *Th-Pok* gene was also detected. As expected, strong TCR signals are required in addition to GATA-3 expression for optimal upregulation of Th-Pok. GATA-3 seems to be upstream of Th-Pok because its increased expression in positively selected DP cells does not depend on Th-POK. However, because Th-POK overexpression cannot rescue CD4 development in GATA-3 knockout DP cells, it is clear that GATA-3 is not just required to upregulate *Th-Pok* expression. Instead, like Th-POK, GATA-3 has other important functions of its own in promoting the CD4 fate. Thus, in summary, while GATA-3 acts as a specification factor, Th-POK is the major commitment factor for the CD4 lineage.[192,198–201]

Runx3 as a CD8-Specific Driver

In the CD8 lineage, Runx3, a Runt domain–containing transcription factor expressed only in CD8 SP cells in the thymus, has emerged as the major factor required for lineage commitment. Another family member, Runx1, is expressed in DP thymocytes as well as in CD4 SP cells, but its expression is downregulated in CD8 SP thymocytes. Single knockout of Runx3 shows only a reduction in the number of mature CD8 SP cells in the thymus, but Runx1 was found to be upregulated in these cells, indicating that there may be some functional redundancy among these proteins. Indeed, double knockout of *Runx1* and *Runx3* displayed a severe and complete block in CD8 SP development, highlighting the crucial role of Runx activity in promoting this lineage. In this model, CD8 T cells were redirected to the CD4 lineage instead, and interestingly *Th-Pok* expression was found to be upregulated in DP cells at a stage even before positive selection. Thus part of the mechanism of Runx-mediated CD8 development may be through its role in repressing *Th-Pok* expression to a level that does not allow it to dictate the CD4 fate in these cells (see following discussion). There are some asymmetries between the roles of Runx3 and Th-POK in CD8 SP and CD4 SP development, respectively. Forced expression of Runx3 does not redirect committed CD4 cells to the CD8 lineage. Thus Runx3 seems to promote the CD8 fate by repressing *Th-Pok* expression, but not after high-level *Th-Pok* expression is already established.[202–205] This asymmetry makes sense in light of the different signal duration requirements for CD4 SP and CD8 SP development.

While both mature CD4 and CD8 SP cells express Runx3 messenger RNA, it is translated much more efficiently in the CD8 lineage. The difference seems to be in promoter usage: Runx3 is transcribed from the distal promoter in the CD8 lineage, which encodes an efficient translational start site, while the poorly translated proximal promoter isoform is expressed in the CD4 lineage. The distal isoform of Runx3 is transcribed in CD4+ $CD8^{lo}$ cells only after they receive an IL-7R–Stat5 mediated signal, and this may be important in activating the distal promoter.[182,192,202,206] Runx3 and Th-POK thus drive cells to the CD8 and CD4 lineages, respectively, and the gene networks that steer precursors to adopt these fates will be described in the following section.

Architecture of a Signal-Duration–Dependent Lineage Choice Network

The research that highlighted the role of Th-Pok and Runx3 as the major drivers of the CD4 and CD8 lineage fates, respectively, has shown that these factors antagonize each other's function and expression to establish lineage-specific gene expression profiles. However, these are not the only players, and indeed several other proteins play an important role in translating TCR and cytokine dependent signals to drive lineage choice[4,193,194,196,197,207–210] (Fig. 13.8).

For the CD4 lineage, a strong positively selecting TCR signal leads to the upregulation of *Gata3* in DP cells, which in turn activates the expression of Th-Pok. *Gata3* expression itself is mediated by Ras/MAPK and calcineurin pathways, and depends on the activity of Myb, a transcription factor

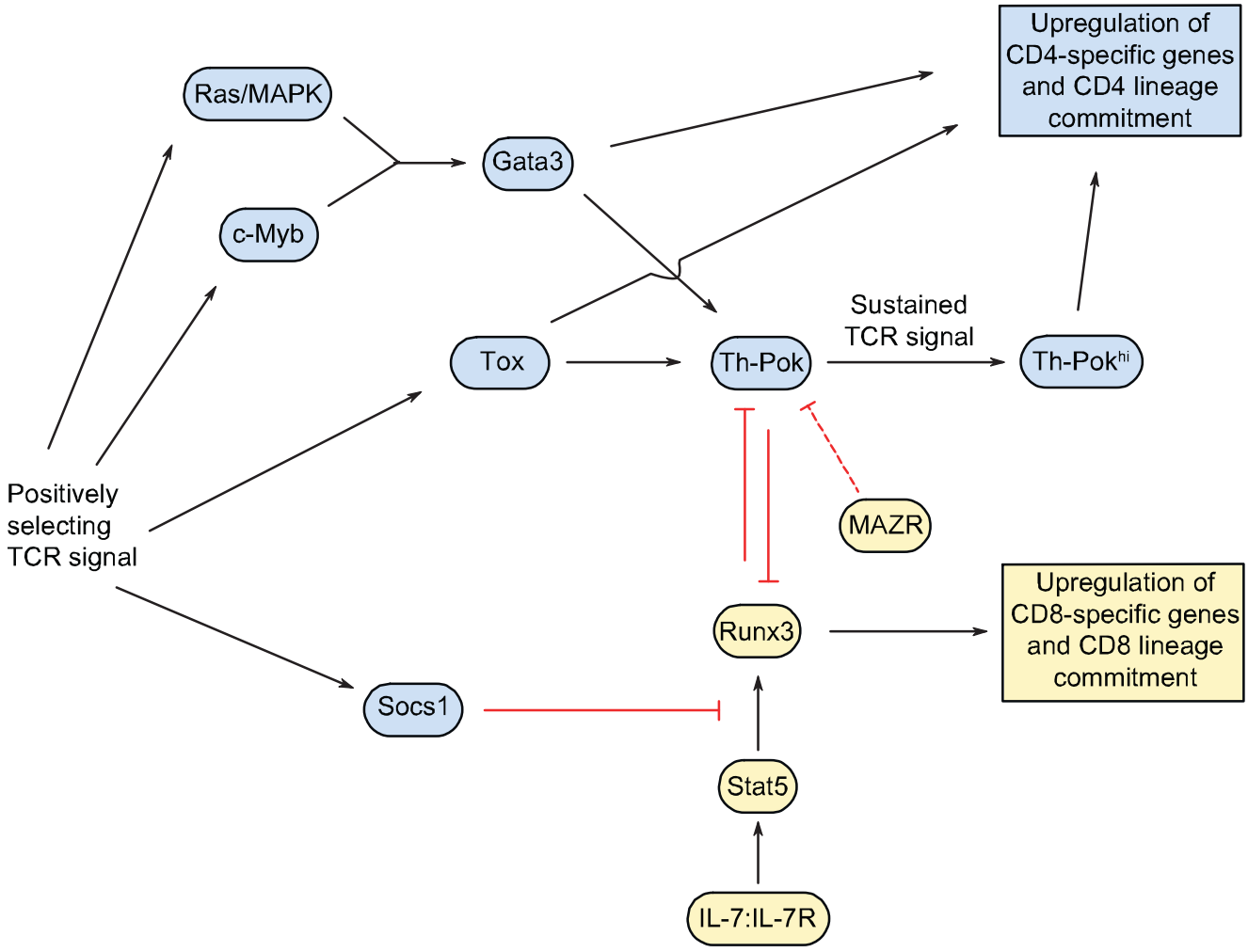


FIG. 13.8. Gene Network Involved in Regulating Commitment to the Cluster of differentiation (CD)4 and CD8 Lineages. Important components of the network that drive CD4 and CD8 lineage commitment following positive selection are shown in *blue and yellow boxes*, respectively. *Red lines* show direct or indirect antagonistic or repressive interactions, whereas *black arrows* denote positive input into specific genes. The mechanism by which MAZR leads to the repression of Th-Pok (*dashed red line*) is not well understood. See text for details.

activated downstream of TCR signaling, as in the absence of *Myb*, *Gata3* is not upregulated in CD69+ postselection thymocytes. Myb was also shown to regulate Gata3 expression directly by binding to the upstream regulatory region of *Gata3*.[211,212] Together with GATA-3, the high mobility group protein Tox is also important for optimal *Th-Pok* upregulation in CD69+ cells. *Tox* deficiency blocks development of all CD4+ lineages selectively while permitting CD8 development. Additionally, positively selected *Tox*-deficient thymocytes upregulate *Gata3* normally but fail to maintain normal Th-POK and surface CD4 expression. Thus it seems that Tox and GATA-3 work in parallel in the presence of strong TCR signaling to upregulate *Th-Pok* expression and advance the cells to the CD4+ $CD8^{lo}$ stage, which as stated previously, is still uncommitted to either lineage.[213]

From here on, presence or absence of continued TCR signaling determines the lineage fate. If these cells receive further TCR signals, it leads to an even greater upregulation of Th-POK whose activity ensures a total shutoff of the CD8 program. Firstly, Th-POK binds to the CD4 silencer element making sure that Runx-mediated repression of *Cd4* cannot take place. *Th-Pok* itself has two upstream Runx binding sites, through which it can be silenced in the CD8 lineage. When expressed at a high level, Th-POK binds to this element, an event that neutralizes Runx mediated silencing of *Th-Pok*. In addition to this, Th-POK weakens Runx3 gene expression by repressing the distal isoform of Runx3 that is crucial for its optimal translation and CD8 lineage promoting function. Lastly, Th-POK also maintains CD4 lineage fidelity by dominantly maintaining repression of important CD8-lineage–specific genes like *CD8α*, *Itgae*, *Nkg7*, *Cd160*, and *Prf1*, giving rise to stable, lineage-committed CD4 SP cells.[192,195]

It is not clear whether Th-POK expression is ever initiated in wild-type positively selected MHC I–restricted thymocytes. However, in TCR transgenic mice, Th-POK is upregulated to a much higher level in class II–restricted thymocytes.[190] Even if some Th-POK was induced in class I–restricted thymocytes in the wild-type situation, its effects could be reversible because class II–restricted CD4+ $CD8^{lo}$

thymocytes that express relatively higher levels of Th-POK still remain uncommitted to the CD4 lineage. Thus, positively selected CD4+ $CD8^{lo}$ thymocytes that do not receive any further TCR signal upregulate Runx3 expression, which drives them to the CD8 lineage. Activation of Runx3 expression in these cells depends on the signaling through the IL-7R, which is not expressed on DP cells but is upregulated in positively selected CD69+ thymocytes. Stat5 (and under some conditions Stat6 also), which are downstream of IL-7R signaling, were shown to be crucial for induction of the CD8-lineage–specific distal isoform of Runx3. This process in turn is negatively regulated by SOCS1, which extinguishes signaling downstream of the cytokine receptor and may play a part in keeping developing CD4 SP thymocytes refractory to IL-7R mediated signaling.[182] Once activated, Runx3 sets off a series of events that in turn block CD4 development. Most importantly, it silences *Th-Pok* and *Cd4* expression by binding to the silencer elements in these genes.[204,214] However, since Runx complexes are bound to the *Th-Pok* silencer even in Th-POK expressing cells, other as yet unidentified factors may be crucial to enforce Runx-mediated *Th-Pok* repression. The transcription factor MAZR or Zfp238, product of the gene *Patz1*, may also cooperate with Runx3 in repressing Th-POK expression, as *Patz1* knockout CD8 SP cells re-express some Th-POK and a small number of them are redirected to the CD4 lineage.[215] Lastly, Runx3 also promotes the expression of CD8-specific genes, thus driving the cells' commitment to that lineage.[192]

Thus, it is the outcome of the antagonistic interplay between Th-POK and Runx3 that determines the lineage choice of uncommitted precursors (see Fig. 13.8). However, the execution of these fates depend on some of their collaborators and target genes, and more factors contributing directly to CD4- and CD8-lineage differentiation probably remain to be identified. This is prompted by the striking observation that deficiency of both Runx activity and Th-POK still allows some CD4 and CD8 development to take place.[192]

NEGATIVE SELECTION

The phenomenon of negative selection of self-reactive T cells in the thymus was first demonstrated in response to endogenous superantigens and self-MHC.[216] Strong TCR signals transduced by self-reactive TCRs trigger apoptosis that appears to be mediated by upregulation and/or phosphorylation of a proapoptotic Bcl-2 family member, Bim, in collaboration with Bax and Bak.[217,218] Upregulation of the orphan steroid receptor, Nur77, also plays a role in this apoptosis.[219] The negative selection program is not only facilitated by TCR+CD28 costimulation in vitro; it has also recently been shown to require CD28 in vivo.[219a] Distinctive signaling pathways from TCR and costimulatory molecules that may activate these mediators are under intense investigation. In knockdown experiments using small interfering (si)-RNA, the serine-threonine kinase MINK has been reported to be involved in negative selection specifically, potentially linking TCR signals with JNK and p38, as well as Bim activation.[220] Recent data has also shown that TGFβ signaling provides a survival signal to thymocytes during the negative signaling window. TGFβRII−/− thymocytes showed an upregulation of the proapoptotic Bim, Bax, and Bak proteins, and this had an adverse effect on conventional T cell as well as T_{reg} maturation.[221]

The Special Role of the Medulla

The medulla is the specific site of two kinds of APCs, which are potent inducers of negative selection: mTECs and DCs. These cells express high levels of MHC and costimulatory molecules, both of which greatly facilitate negative selection, as well as being highly specialized for the presentation of a large array of peripheral self-antigens acquired by several unique mechanisms. The critical importance of the thymic medulla to central tolerance, but not SP cell maturation, was demonstrated in experiments showing that when T cells are prevented from migrating from the cortex to the medulla by the lack of the chemokine receptor CCR7 or its ligand, cells undergo normal maturation and export from the thymus, but the animals develop autoimmunity.[222] The autoimmune phenotype resembles a failure of negative selection, although faulty regulatory T-cell development (see subsequent discussion) has not been ruled out. This showed that central tolerance is, at least in part, dependent upon T-cell passage through the medulla and interactions with medullary cells.

The discovery of the transcription factor gene, *Aire*, which causes a rare autoimmune disease, autoimmune polyendocrinopathy-candidiasis-ectodermal dystrophy syndrome, when mutated in humans and mice, confirmed the critical role of the medulla in negative selection.[9a,223–226] *Aire* expression is restricted to the $CD80^{hi}$ $MHCII^{hi}$ mature mTECs in the thymus where it regulates the transcription of several tissue restricted antigen genes and may also contribute to the development and turnover of these mTECs.[227,228] The importance of *Aire* function was shown by experiments in which the deletion of a single *Aire*-regulated tissue-restricted gene, coding for Interphotoreceptor Retinoid Binding Protein (*Irbp3*), led to an eye-specific autoimmune response when the deficient thymus was transplanted into an athymic, *Irbp3*-sufficient host.[228] AIRE interacts with several other transcription factors and related proteins, but the exact transcriptional mechanism through which it regulates its target genes is not known. Several lines of evidence indicate that *Aire* may control chromatin accessibility to allow transcription of repressed genes. First, the expression of tissue specific antigens (TSAs) in mTECs does not require transcription factors that are normally essential for their expression, and TSA levels are much lower than in the tissue to which their expression is normally restricted. Also, AIRE has the ability to bind H3K4me0, a histone mark associated with silent chromatin, which may help its recruitment and the subsequent activation of transcription of silent TSA genes.[229–232] Finally, a new population of *Aire*-expressing cells (extrathymic *Aire*-expressing cells) important in maintaining peripheral tolerance in adult mice was recently reported to be present in secondary lymphoid organs. Interestingly, AIRE does not upregulate the exact same set of TSAs in extrathymic *Aire*-expressing cells as it does in

mTECs, indicating that target specificity is determined by the transcriptional state of the cell in which it is expressed.[233] Thus *Aire*-mediated promiscuous expression of TSA genes by mTECs provides essential self-peptides required for the clonal deletion of self-reactive thymocytes. Recently, it was shown that *Aire* function is also required for the cross-presentation of TSAs expressed by mTECs.[234] Thus, while the expression level of an *Aire*-regulated transgenic ovalbumin construct was directly correlated with the negative selection of CD8 SP T cells with cognate TCRs, the deletion of ovalbumin-specific CD4 SP T cells was independent of its activity to regulate transgene expression. Interestingly, *Aire* seemed to regulate transfer of expressed ovalbumin from mTECs to intrathymic DCs that are important for CD4 SP negative selection.

DCs are more abundant in the thymic medulla than in the cortex and are very potent mediators of negative selection, even more so than mTECs. They do not express *Aire* and so do not express the huge range of tissue-specific genes that mTECs do. However, DCs have the ability to cross-present antigens obtained from various other cells. Medullary DCs can cross-present antigens expressed by mTECS; as stated previously, *Aire* expressed in mTECs plays an important role in the antigen transfer. DCs are also capable of acquiring antigens from the periphery, migrating to the thymic medulla for antigen presentation to developing T cells and inducing apoptosis in antigen-specific T cells. Thus, DCs in the medulla have access to antigens obtained in the periphery and indirectly from promiscuous gene expression by mTECs, as well as those they express themselves, for presentation to T cells.

In addition to their extraordinary capacity for acquiring and presenting self-antigens, mTECs and DCs also express costimulatory molecules such as B7 and CD40. CD28/B7 or possibly CD40/40L interactions appear to play an important role in negative selection, although neither is absolutely required for deletion. It is possible that in the absence of these molecules, very strong TCR signals and/or other costimulatory molecules may be able to provide the additional signal.[6,235,236]

T_{reg} Selection as an Alternative

T_{reg} cells are a naturally occurring population of rare Foxp3+ CD25+ thymocytes that are activated by self-antigens in the periphery and function to suppress autoimmune responses in a dominant fashion. Foxp3 is the lineage-determining factor for these cells, and its expression in conventional Foxp3- peripheral CD4+ T cells lead to their differentiation into functional T_{reg} cells. *Foxp3*, a forkhead winged-helix transcription family member, was initially identified as the mutated gene causing a severe autoimmune disease in humans, immunodysregulation, polyendocrinopathy and enteropathy, X-linked syndrome, and a similar disease in scurfy mice. These mutations, as well as knockouts of the *Foxp3* gene, result in complete loss of T_{reg} cells.[237–241] Although the cortex can fully support the development of T_{reg} cells, it is thought that T_{reg}-cell differentiation correlates temporally and spatially with negative selection in the medulla.[225]

The linkage between T_{reg} development and negative selection is based on the common requirement of both processes for high-affinity TCR interaction with its cognate ligand (see Fig. 13.6). T_{reg} cells do not develop in mice that express a transgenic TCR specific for an exogenous protein unless the cognate ligand is also simultaneously expressed, and T_{reg} development in these mice is also accompanied by massive negative selection of self-reactive thymocytes.[242–244] Also, as compared to conventional T-cells, T_{reg} cells also have higher levels of the surface markers CD5, CTLA4, and CD25, whose expression level is directly proportional to the TCR signaling intensity. In the Nur77-GFP mouse model, T_{reg} cells show two-fold higher GFP levels as compared to conventional T cells, further supporting the inference that strong TCR signals are needed for T_{reg} development.[163] Thus, it is currently thought that TCR affinities for self-antigen that are required for T_{reg} differentiation are higher than those required for positive selection but lower than the affinity threshold that triggers negative selection (see Fig. 13.6). However, this presents a dilemma: if negative selection leads to the deletion of self-reactive thymocytes, how does this allow for the development of T_{reg} cells? While the mechanism is not fully understood, recent experiments have revealed many details of this process.

Sequencing of TCRs from transgenic mice that can generate limited TCR diversity has shown that the regulatory and conventional cells have equally diverse but largely distinct repertoires.[245–247] These experiments seem to suggest an instructive role for TCR signals in the development of T_{reg} cells.[248,249] However, competition between developing T cells with different TCRs and a limiting supply of selecting ligands may also play a role. Transgenic mice that only express a single TCR that was isolated from a mature naturally occurring T_{reg} develop only very low numbers of T_{reg} cells. However, when these TCR-transgenic bone marrow cells were injected into Rag knockout mice together with wild-type precursor cells, T_{reg} frequency was inversely proportional to the fraction of injected cells that were transgenic. Thus, intraclonal competition within transgenic thymocytes for rare selecting ligands could limit normal T_{reg} differentiation.[250] Furthermore, Nur-77 GFP induction in individual cells was also shown to be inversely proportional to the fraction of transgenic cells in a similar competitive assay as previously discussed.[163] This indicates that low number of thymocytes expressing a particular self-reactive TCR normally facilitates their interaction with rare T_{reg}-selecting ligands, and that availability of selecting ligands seems to be another important factor in T_{reg} development. Finally TCR avidity (TCR affinity × number of interactions) may also play a role in T_{reg} differentiation, as reducing the self-antigen–presenting capacity of mTECs by knocking down the expression of MHC II transcriptional activator CIITA resulted in decreased efficiency of negative selection but an increase in the number of regulatory T cells.[251]

Putting several lines of evidence together, a two-step model was proposed for intrathymic T_{reg} development[252,253] (Fig. 13.9). The simultaneous delivery of TCR and CD28 signals to CD4+ Foxp3− T_{reg} precursors advances their development to the CD4+ CD25+ Foxp3− stage. This stage is the

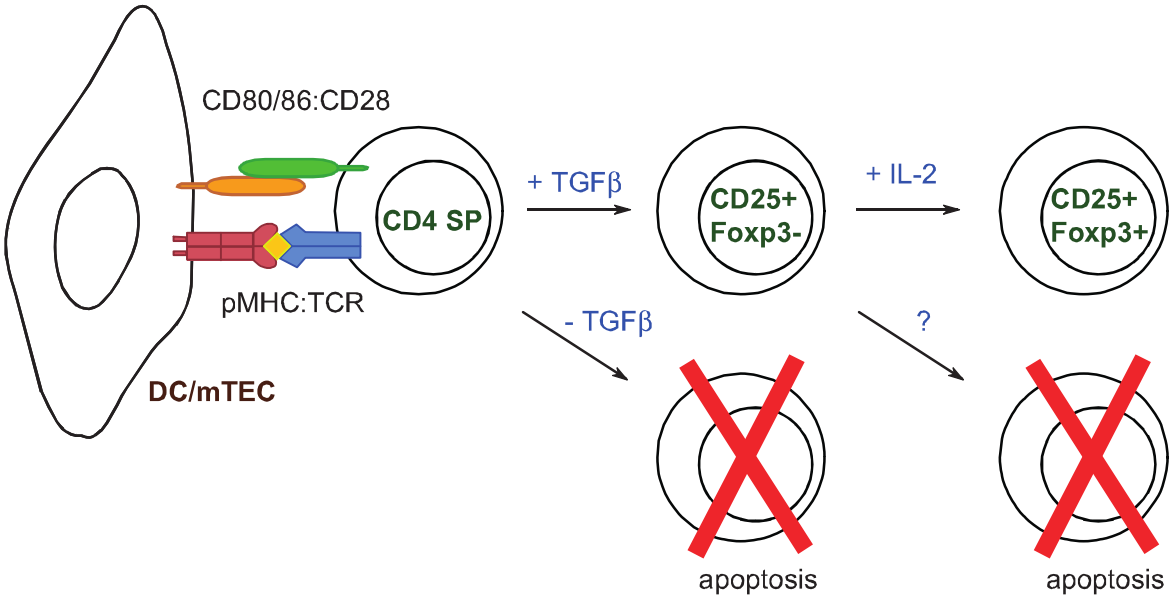


FIG. 13.9. Development of Regulatory T (T_{reg}) Cells. Surface receptors and cytokines (*blue*) important at each step in the two-step model of T_{reg} development are shown.[248,249] The efficiency of T_{reg} selection and the time and location of initial major histocompatibility complex contact on T_{reg} maturation are not known; although T_{reg} cells are found mainly in the medulla, the cortex has also been shown to fully support T_{reg} development.[282] Additionally, the question of whether and how much negative selection and T_{reg} developmental pathways overlap also remains unanswered.

immediate thymic precursor to the fully mature Foxp3+ T_{reg} cells. CD28 expression, CD28-enhanced Lck recruitment, and downstream signaling in the CD4 SP cell are important for this first step because deletion of CD28 or its ligands B7-1 and B7-2 leads to a severe reduction in T_{reg} numbers and proportion.[254–256] The NF-κB subunit c-Rel, which is activated by TCR and CD28 signaling, binds directly to the Foxp3 promoter and a conserved enhancer element, CNS3 (conserved noncoding DNA sequence 3), implying a direct transcriptional role.[257–261] c-Rel also appears to promote the earliest steps in T_{reg} development even before Foxp3 is detectably turned on.[262] The survival of cells that have received the TCR-CD28 signal also depends on TGFβRII-mediated signaling, which rescues these intermediates from Bim-mediated apoptosis.[221]

At this stage, these cells require a second signal through cytokines like IL-2, IL-7, and IL-15 that signal through the γc chain–containing receptors, with IL-2 playing the major role in the final maturation to Foxp3+ T_{reg} stage (see Fig. 13.9). Stat5b, a major transcription factor activated by signaling of the γc cytokine receptor chain, binds directly to the promoter and CNS2 of *Foxp3*, and mice expressing a transgenic, constitutively active version of Stat5 show a dramatic increase in T_{reg} numbers and percentage. This cytokine-dependent final maturation step is thought to be largely independent of TCR stimulation.[263,264] Once induced, Foxp3 suppresses alternate lineage genes and permanently establishes a gene expression pattern characteristic of T_{reg} cells. Although Foxp3 is not required for commitment to the Treg lineage, its continuous expression is important for T_{reg} function as a loss of its expression in mature T_{reg} cells leads to a loss of their suppressor function and their ability to produce effector cytokines including IFNγ, IL-17, and IL-4 etc. is restored[265–267] Thus akin to the role of Th-POK in conventional CD4+ T cells, Foxp3 acts as a dominant factor in the maintenance of the regulatory T-cell lineage.

"AGONIST SELECTION" OF INNATE-TYPE LYMPHOCYTES

Distinctive Features of Innate-Type Lymphocytes

The precedent of T_{reg} selection shows that strong TCRαβ interactions with agonist ligands can promote something other than death in the thymus, parallel to the TCRγδ lineage maturation programs that are triggered by strong agonist-mediated TCR signaling. However, the special conditions of DP cell physiology do not apply to DN2-DN3 thymocytes becoming TCRγδ cells nor to medullary CD4 SP cells becoming T_{reg} cells. Therefore, it has still been a surprise that a major class of T cells, the "innate-type" cells that include NKT cells, are also positively selected by strong agonist ligand and selected apparently from the DP population itself.

The distinguishing features of iNKT cells are a pairing of canonical effector function with canonical TCR rearrangement and recognition specificity.[268] These cells use a limited set of possible Vβ rearrangements—Vβ2, Vβ8.2, or Vβ7 (Vβ11 in humans)—together with an invariant pairing of Vα14 (Vα24 in humans) with Jα18. From the start, they appear to observe a different set of rules from most TCRαβ cells. Although their positively selecting ligands are nonclassical class I MHC rather than class II MHC, they predominantly become CD4+ or revert to a CD4– CD8– phenotype rather than becoming CD8 SP. They acquire a

chronically activated phenotype marked by CD122 (IL2Rβ) expression, CD44 expression, and NK receptor expression in a stepwise process from the DP stage, starting with the first cells that acquire the canonical receptors. Even within the thymus, these cells are spontaneously triggered to express cytokines that normally require multiple rounds of activation to be induced, IL-4, and IFNγ, and they can express them simultaneously, combining Th2- and Th1-like functions.

Promyelocytic Leukemia Zinc Finger and the Id-Driven Maturation Pathway

DP cells need to survive in a DP state for a longer-than-average amount of time in order to acquire the ability to express the invariant iNKT TCR.[269] The particular TCRα segments used in the canonical receptor are among the last ones that most DP cells use for rearrangement, because of the 5′ position of Vα14 and the 3′ position of Jα18. In any mutant that shortens DP lifespan (eg, loss of RORγt, HEB, BclXL), the iNKT TCRα chain does not have a chance to be made.[268,270] Once the receptor is expressed, however, and if its ligand is present in the thymic environment, the cells embark on their new program. In the process, they will make use of the signature transcription factors of Th1, Th2, and NK cells, as well as a canonical regulatory factor of their own, the zinc finger-BTB domain factor PLZF (or Zbtb16). This is the crucial regulator that confers on them an activated CD44-high phenotype as well as their distinctive "ready-to-go" priming for effector cytokine production,[271,272] the same factor that is also required by the "innate-like" Vγ1.1/Vδ6.3 γδ cells.

DP cells, upon expressing the invariant iNKT receptor, embark on a pathway first resembling standard positive selection to a CD4 SP lineage, including use of Runx1, GATA-3, and the transcription factor TOX. In the process, they downregulate CD24 normally, but activate a "survival-associated" pathway module including Egr2, Myc, and NF-κB activation, which drives a burst of proliferation (unlike the conventional positive selection program). The proliferation and emergence of the NKT cells is dependent on IL-15 and CD122 (IL-2/IL-15Rβ), unlike the conventional SP cells that primarily express IL-7 receptors. Following proliferation, the cells turn on PLZF expression, which endows them with effector function. After this, the cells can turn on T-bet, the NK-, CD8-, and Th1-associated factor that promotes IFNγ expression and enables them to acquire their distinctive NK receptor–positive phenotype. With the completion of the iNKT program, the cells leave the thymus, turning on Id2 that maintains their homeostasis in the periphery.

Special Selection Mechanism: Hematopoietic Antigen-Presenting Cells and Distinctive Signaling

The iNKT pathway offers a striking view of how use of distinctive signaling mediators to interpret TCR signaling can instructively determine the developmental outcome. The difference between positive selection of iNKT cells and other conventional TCRαβ cells starts with the APCs they interact with and also includes the channeling of TCR signals through a distinctive pathway. Whereas conventional positive selection is mediated by cTECs presenting peptides on classical class I and class II MHC antigens, NKT cell selection is based on recognition of glycolipids presented on nonclassical class I MHC antigens that are only expressed by hematopoietic cells, not thymic epithelial cells. In general, the main APCs for NKT cell selection are other DP thymocytes themselves. The homotypic cell-cell interaction that this entails also makes it possible for the cells to use a special kind of coreceptor, receptors of the SLAM family (mostly Slamf1 = CD150, or Slamf6 = Ly108), to mediate homotypic adhesion between the future iNKT cell and its developmentally similar APC. The engagement of SLAM family receptors recruits an adaptor that is not used in conventional positive selection, SLAM-associated protein (Sh2d1a), which efficiently couples TCR signaling with Fyn tyrosine kinase activation and protein kinase C . This is a fast track to NF-κB activation,[273] which may even occur preferentially with respect to conventional Ras/MAP kinase pathway activation.[274,275] The potentially altered quantitative balance between signaling pathways is a likely origin for the distinctive program that iNKT selection activates.

iNKT cells are only the best-studied representative of a number of distinct agonist-selected innate-like T-cell lineages. It appears that other subsets share many aspects of the iNKT selection pathway, including use of PLZF and a dependence on SAP and Fyn that separates all of them from most conventional T cells.[273,276] Thus, this is an alternate modality for positive selection that violates the simple picture that fate might be determined only by TCR avidity and developmental stage of contact.

CONCLUSION

The remarkable diversity of mature T-cell types and their potential for long proliferative lifespans offers a challenge to understanding their development in terms of a single commitment pathway. T-lineage commitment is a process that instills a profoundly durable and renewable cell type identity via stable expression of multiple T-cell genes, but enables the cell to keep exploring different variants of function. Past views of T-cell development centered on the need to develop a diverse and self-tolerant recognition repertoire, but increasing appreciation for the sophistication of innate immunity casts the T-cell agenda in a different light. Signaling does not need to be dependent on a single receptor in a plus/minus way, nor is the TCR unique in its ability to transmit quantitatively graded signals; innate immune cells use integrative signaling to adapt to various circumstances very effectively without clonally unique receptors. T-cell development itself produces many lineages that use stereotyped, practically invariant TCRs, and as these cells must consistently be positively selected by agonist in the thymus, it follows that the receptors that evolution has conserved for use by these cells must be self-reactive ones. Seen in this light, many T cells like innate cells must be important for the functions they link to their TCR specificities and not only for the diversity of non-self–structures that they can tell apart.

This chapter has touched on a number of cases where parts of the mechanism that endow T cells with a function to match their specificity can be discerned. However, these are mostly at the frontiers of current understanding. Simple knockout approaches can be foiled by the way a key signaling molecule or transcription factor is often shared between different developmental contexts where it may play different roles. Stage-specific analysis is crucial to reveal the regulatory combinations that are actually guiding each developmental decision. New tools will be needed to dissect the operation of signaling pathways with quantitative, temporal resolution, in order to understand their different outputs.[277,278] But the outlines of the answers are coming into view.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

The authors gratefully acknowledge the important intellectual contributions to the development of this chapter from Dr. Mary A. Yui. Support was from NIH grants CA090233, AI095943, and AI083514, and from the Albert Billings Ruddock Professorship to E. V. R.

REFERENCES

1. Boehm T. Thymus development and function. *Curr Opin Immunol*. 2008;20:178–184. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18403191
2. Love PE, Bhandoola A. Signal integration and crosstalk during thymocyte migration and emigration. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2011;11:469–477. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21701522
3. Petrie HT, Zuniga-Pflucker JC. Zoned out: functional mapping of stromal signaling microenvironments in the thymus. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 2007;25:649–679. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17291187
4. Carpenter AC, Bosselut R. Decision checkpoints in the thymus. *Nat Immunol*. 2010;11:666–673. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20644572
5. Hayday AC, Pennington DJ. Key factors in the organized chaos of early T cell development. *Nat Immunol*. 2007;8:137–144. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17242687
6. Starr TK, Jameson SC, Hogquist KA. Positive and negative selection of T cells. *Ann Rev Immunol*. 2003;21:139–176. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12414722
7. McCaughtry TM, Wilken MS, Hogquist KA. Thymic emigration revisited. *J Exp Med*. 2007;204:2513–2520. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17908937
8. Lind EF, Prockop SE, Porritt HE, Petrie HT. Mapping precursor movement through the postnatal thymus reveals specific microenvironments supporting defined stages of early lymphoid development. *J Exp Med*. 2001;194:127–134. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11457887
9. Takahama Y. Journey through the thymus: stromal guides for T-cell development and selection. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2006;6:127–135. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16491137

9a. Kyewski B, Klein L. A central role for central tolerance. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 2006;24:571–606. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16551260

10. Bajoghli B, Adhaallaei N, Hess I, et al. Evolution of genetic networks underlying the emergence of thymopoiesis in vertebrates. *Cell*. 2009; 138:186–197. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19559469
11. Bajoghli B, Guo P, Aghaallaei N, et al. A thymus candidate in lampreys. *Nature*. 2011;470:90–94. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21293377
12. Ikuta K, Kina T, MacNeil I, et al. A developmental switch in thymic lymphocyte maturation potential occurs at the level of hematopoietic stem cells. *Cell*. 1990;62:863–874. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1975515
13. Ikuta K, Weissman IL. The junctional modifications of a T cell receptor gamma chain are determined at the level of thymic precursors. *J Exp Med*. 1991;174:1279–1282. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1834763
14. Zamisch M, Moore-Scott B, Su DM, Lucas PJ, Manley N, Richie ER. Ontogeny and regulation of IL-7-expressing thymic epithelial cells. *J Immunol*. 2005;174:60–67. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15611228
15. Griffith AV, Fallahi M, Nakase H, Gosink M, Young B, Petrie HT. Spatial mapping of thymic stromal microenvironments reveals unique features influencing T lymphoid differentiation. *Immunity*. 2009;31: 999–1009. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20064453
16. Lu M, Tayu R, Ikawa T, et al. The earliest thymic progenitors in adults are restricted to T, NK, and dendritic cell lineage and have a potential to form more diverse TCRβ chains than fetal progenitors. *J Immunol*. 2005;175:5848–5856. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16237077
17. Kawamoto H, Ohmura K, Fujimoto S, Lu M, Ikawa T, Katsura Y. Extensive proliferation of T cell lineage-restricted progenitors in the thymus: an essential process for clonal expression of diverse T cell receptor β chains. *Eur J Immunol*. 2003;33:606–615. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12616481
18. Bucy RP, Chen CH, Cooper MD. Analysis of γδ T cells in the chicken. *Semin Immunol*. 1991;3:109–117. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1832318
19. Rast JP, Anderson MK, Strong SJ, Luer C, Litman RT, Litman GW. α, β, γ, and δ T cell antigen receptor genes arose early in vertebrate phylogeny. *Immunity*. 1997;6:1–11. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9052832
20. Vicente R, Swainson L, Marty-Gres S, et al. Molecular and cellular basis of T cell lineage commitment. *Semin Immunol*. 2010;22:270–275. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20630771
21. Joachims ML, Chain JL, Hooker SW, Knott-Craig CJ, Thompson LF. Human αβ and γδ thymocyte development: TCR gene rearrangements, intracellular TCRβ expression, and γδ developmental potential—differences between men and mice. *J Immunol*. 2006;176:1543–1552. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16424183
22. Taghon T, Rothenberg EV. Molecular mechanisms that control mouse and human TCR-αβ and TCR-γδ T cell development. *Semin Immunopathol*. 2008;30:383–398. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18925397
23. Van de Walle I, De Smet G, De Smedt M, et al. An early decrease in Notch activation is required for human TCR-αβ lineage differentiation at the expense of TCR-γδ T cells. *Blood*. 2009;113:2988–2998. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19056690
24. Jenkinson EJ, Owen JJ. T cell differentiation in thymus organ cultures. *Semin Immunol*. 1990;2:51–58. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2129901
25. Kawamoto H, Ohmura K, Katsura Y. Direct evidence for the commitment of hematopoietic stem cells to T, B, and myeloid lineages in murine fetal liver. *Int Immunol*. 1997;9:1011–1019. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9237110
26. Anderson G, Jenkinson EJ. Use of explant technology in the study of in vitro immune responses. *J Immunol Methods*. 1998;216:155–163. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9760221
27. Nakano T, Kodama H, Honjo T. Generation of lymphohematopoietic cells from embryonic stem cells in culture. *Science*. 1994;265:1098–1101. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8066449
28. Radtke F, Wilson A, Stark G, et al. Deficient T cell fate specification in mice with an induced inactivation of Notch1. *Immunity*. 1999;10: 547–558. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10367900
29. Pui JC, Allman D, Xu L, et al. Notch1 expression in early lymphopoiesis influences B versus T lineage determination. *Immunity*. 1999;11:299–308. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10514008
30. Schmitt TM, Zúñiga-Pflücker JC. Induction of T cell development from hematopoietic progenitor cells by Delta-like-1 in vitro. *Immunity*. 2002; 17:749–756. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12479821
31. Visan I, Tan JB, Yuan JS, Harper JA, Koch U, Guidos CJ. Regulation of T lymphopoiesis by Notch1 and Lunatic fringe-mediated competition for intrathymic niches. *Nat Immunol*. 2006;7:634–643. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16699526
32. Rothenberg EV, Moore JE, Yui MA. Launching the T-cell-lineage developmental programme. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2008;8:9–21. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18097446
33. Dias S, Xu W, McGregor S, Kee B. Transcriptional regulation of lymphocyte development. *Curr Opin Genet Dev*. 2008;18:441–448. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18775782
34. Naito T, Tanaka H, Naoe Y, Taniuchi I. Transcriptional control of T-cell development. *Int Immunol*. 2011;23:661–668. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21948191
35. Rothenberg EV, Taghon T. Molecular genetics of T cell development. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 2005;23:601–649. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15771582
36. Shen HQ, Lu M, Ikawa T, et al. T/NK bipotent progenitors in the thymus retain the potential to generate dendritic cells. *J Immunol*. 2003;171: 3401–3406. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14500634
37. Balciunaite G, Ceredig R, Rolink AG. The earliest subpopulation of mouse thymocytes contains potent T, significant macrophage, and natural killer cell but no B-lymphocyte potential. *Blood*. 2005;105:1930–1936. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15522952
38. Bell JJ, Bhandoola A. The earliest thymic progenitors for T cells possess myeloid lineage potential. *Nature*. 2008;452:764–767. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18401411

39. Wada H, Masuda K, Satoh R, et al. Adult T-cell progenitors retain myeloid potential. *Nature*. 2008;452:768–772. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18401412
40. Heinzel K, Benz C, Martins VC, Haidl ID, Bleul CC. Bone marrow-derived hemopoietic precursors commit to the T cell lineage only after arrival in the thymic microenvironment. *J Immunol*. 2007;178:858–868. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17202347
41. Feyerabend TB, Terszowski G, Tietz A, et al. Deletion of Notch1 converts pro-T cells to dendritic cells and promotes thymic B cells by cell-extrinsic and cell-intrinsic mechanisms. *Immunity*. 2009;30:67–79. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19110448
42. Rothenberg EV. T cell lineage commitment: identity and renunciation. *J Immunol*. 2011;186:6649–6655. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21646301
43. Katsura Y, Kawamoto H. Stepwise lineage restriction of progenitors in lympho-myelopoiesis. *Int Rev Immunol*. 2001;20:1–20. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11342295
44. Masuda K, Kubagawa H, Ikawa T, et al. Prethymic T-cell development defined by the expression of paired immunoglobulin-like receptors. *EMBO J*. 2005;24:4052–4060. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16292344
45. Harman BC, Jenkinson WE, Parnell SM, Rossi SW, Jenkinson EJ, Anderson G. T/B lineage choice occurs prior to intrathymic Notch signalling. *Blood*. 2005;106:886–892. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15845899
46. Taghon T, Yui MA, Rothenberg EV. Mast cell lineage diversion of T lineage precursors by the essential T-cell transcription factor GATA-3. *Nat Immunol*. 2007;8:845–855. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17603486
47. Saran N, Lyszkiewicz M, Pommerencke J, et al. Multiple extrathymic precursors contribute to T-cell development with different kinetics. *Blood*. 2010;115:1137–1144. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20009033
48. Inlay MA, Bhattacharya D, Sahoo D, et al. Ly6d marks the earliest stage of B-cell specification and identifies the branchpoint between B-cell and T-cell development. *Genes Dev*. 2009;23:2376–2381. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19833765
49. Bhandoola A, von Boehmer H, Petrie HT, Zuniga-Pflucker JC. Commitment and developmental potential of extrathymic and intrathymic T cell precursors: plenty to choose from. *Immunity*. 2007;26:678–689. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17582341
50. Boehm T, Bleul CC. Thymus-homing precursors and the thymic microenvironment. *Trends Immunol*. 2006;27:477–484. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16920024
51. Ng SY, Yoshida T, Zhang J, Georgopoulos K. Genome-wide lineage-specific transcriptional networks underscore Ikaros-dependent lymphoid priming in hematopoietic stem cells. *Immunity*. 2009;30:493–507. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19345118
52. Laiosa CV, Stadtfeld M, Xie H, Andres-Aguayo L, Graf T. Reprogramming of committed T cell progenitors to macrophages and dendritic cells by C/EBPα and PU.1 transcription factors. *Immunity*. 2006;25:731–744. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17088084
53. Wilson A, MacDonald HR, Radtke F. Notch 1-deficient common lymphoid precursors adopt a B cell fate in the thymus. *J Exp Med*. 2001;194:1003–1012. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11581321
54. Koch U, Lacombe TA, Holland D, et al. Subversion of the T/B lineage decision in the thymus by lunatic fringe-mediated inhibition of Notch-1. *Immunity*. 2001;15:225–236. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11520458
55. Franco CB, Scripture-Adams DD, Proekt I, et al. Notch/Delta signaling constrains re-engineering of pro-T cells by PU.1. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2006;103:11993–11998. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16880393
56. Yui MA, Feng N, Rothenberg EV. Fine-scale staging of T cell lineage commitment in adult mouse thymus. *J Immunol*. 2010;185:284–293. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20543111
57. Schmitt TM, Ciofani M, Petrie HT, Zúñiga-Pflücker JC. Maintenance of T cell specification and differentiation requires recurrent Notch receptor-ligand interactions. *J Exp Med*. 2004;200:469–479. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15314075
58. Li P, Burke S, Wang J, et al. Reprogramming of T cells to natural killer-like cells upon Bcl11b deletion. *Science*. 2010;329:85–89. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20538915
59. Li L, Leid M, Rothenberg EV. An early T cell lineage commitment checkpoint dependent on the transcription factor Bcl11b. *Science*. 2010;329:89–93. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20595614
60. Ikawa T, Hirose S, Masudea K, et al. An essential developmental checkpoint for production of the T cell lineage. *Science*. 2010;329:93–96. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20595615
61. Tydell CC, David-Fung ES, Moore JE, Rowen L, Taghon T, Rothenberg EV. Molecular dissection of prethymic progenitor entry into the T lymphocyte developmental pathway. *J Immunol*. 2007;179:421–438. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17579063
62. Weber BN, Chi AW, Chavez A, et al. A critical role for TCF-1 in T-lineage specification and differentiation. *Nature*. 2011;476:63–68. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21814277
63. Wakabayashi Y, Watanabe H, Inoue J, et al. Bcl11b is required for differentiation and survival of αβ T lymphocytes. *Nat Immunol*. 2003;4:533–539. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12717433
64. Albu DI, Feng D, Bhattacharya D, et al. BCL11B is required for positive selection and survival of double-positive thymocytes. *J Exp Med*. 2007;204:3003–3015. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17998389
65. Masuda K, Kakugawa K, Nakayama T, Minato M, Katsura Y, Kawamoto H. T cell lineage determination precedes the initiation of TCRβ rearrangement. *J Immunol*. 2007;179:3699–3706. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17785806
66. Allman D, Sambandam A, Kim S, et al. Thymopoiesis independent of common lymphoid progenitors. *Nat Immunol*. 2003;4:168–174. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12514733
67. Pang SS, Berry R, Chen Z, et al. The structural basis for autonomous dimerization of the pre-T-cell antigen receptor. *Nature*. 2010;467:844–848. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20944746
68. Yamasaki S, Ishikawa E, Sakuma M, et al. Mechanistic basis of pre-T cell receptor-mediated autonomous signaling critical for thymocyte development. *Nat Immunol*. 2006;7:67–75. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16327787
69. von Boehmer H. Unique features of the pre-T-cell receptor alpha-chain: not just a surrogate. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2005;5:571–577. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15999096
70. Lin WC, Desiderio S. Cell cycle regulation of V(D)J recombination-activating protein RAG-2. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1994;91:2733–2737. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8146183
71. Ishida I, Verbeek S, Bonneville M, Itohara S, Berns A, Tonegawa S. T-cell receptor gδ and g transgenic mice suggest a role of a g gene silencer in the generation of ab T cells. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1990;87:3067–3071. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2326267
72. Haks MC, Lefebvre JM, Lauritsen JP, et al. Attenuation of gδ TCR signaling efficiently diverts thymocytes to the ab lineage. *Immunity*. 2005;22:595–606. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15894277
73. Ferrero I, Mancini SJ, Grosjean F, Wilson A, Otten L, MacDonald HR. TCRgamma silencing during alphabeta T cell development depends upon pre-TCR-induced proliferation. *J Immunol*. 2006;177:6038–6043. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17056529
74. Gillespie W, Paulson JC, Kelm S, Pang M, Baum LG. Regulation of a2,3-sialyltransferase expression correlates with conversion of peanut agglutinin (PNA)$^{+}$ to PNA^{-} phenotype in developing thymocytes. *J Biol Chem*. 1993;268:3801–3804. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8440675
75. Mandal M, Borowski C, Palomero T, et al. The BCL2A1 gene as a pre-T cell receptor-induced regulator of thymocyte survival. *J Exp Med*. 2005;201:603–614. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15728238
76. Yui MA, Rothenberg EV. Deranged early T cell development in immunodeficient strains of nonobese diabetic mice. *J Immunol*. 2004;173:5381–5391. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15494484
77. Rothenberg EV, Diamond RA. Costimulation by interleukin-1 of multiple activation responses in a developmentally restricted subset of immature thymocytes. *Eur J Immunol*. 1994;24:24–33. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8020563

78. Myers MD, Sosinowski T, Dragone LL, et al. Src-like adaptor protein regulates TCR expression on thymocytes by linking the ubiquitin ligase c-Cbl to the TCR complex. *Nat Immunol*. 2006;7:57–66. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16327786
79. Daniels MA, Devine L, Miller JD, et al. CD8 binding to MHC class I molecules is influenced by T cell maturation and glycosylation. *Immunity*. 2001;15:1051–1061. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11754824
80. Davey GM, Schober SL, Endrizzi BT, Dutcher AK, Jameson SC, Hogquist KA. Preselection thymocytes are more sensitive to T cell receptor stimulation than mature T cells. *J Exp Med*. 1998;188:1867–1874. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9815264
81. Eck SC, Zhu P, Pepper M, Bensinger SJ, Freedman BD, Laufer TM. Developmental alterations in thymocyte sensitivity are actively regulated by MHC class II expression in the thymic medulla. *J Immunol*. 2006;176:2229–2237. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16455979
82. Moody AM, Chui D, Reche PA, Priatel JJ, Marth JD, Reinherz EL. Developmentally regulated glycosylation of the CD8αβ coreceptor stalk modulates ligand binding. *Cell*. 2001;107:501–512. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11719190
83. Heng TSP, Painter MW, Consortium TIGP. The Immunological Genome Project: networks of gene expression in immune cells. *Nat Immunol*. 2008;9:1091–1094. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18800157
84. He YW, Beers C, Deftos ML, Ojala EW, Forbush KA, Bevan MJ. Down-regulation of the orphan nuclear receptor RORγ t is essential for T lymphocyte maturation. *J Immunol*. 2000;164:5668–5674. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10820242
85. Sun Z, Unutmaz D, Zou YR, et al. Requirement for RORγ in thymocyte survival and lymphoid organ development. *Science*. 2000;288:2369–2373. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10875923
86. Eberl G, Marmon S, Sunshine MJ, Rennert PD, Choi Y, Littman DR. An essential function for the nuclear receptor RORγ t in the generation of fetal lymphoid tissue inducer cells. *Nat Immunol*. 2004;5:64–73. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14691482
87. Ivanov II, McKenzie BS, Zhou L, et al. The orphan nuclear receptor RORγt directs the differentiation program of proinflammatory IL-17^{+} T helper cells. *Cell*. 2006;126:1121–1133. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16990136
88. Chen Z, Laurence A, O'Shea JJ. Signal transduction pathways and transcriptional regulation in the control of Th17 differentiation. *Semin Immunol*. 2007;19:400–408. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18166487
89. Sawa S, Cherrier M, Lochner M, et al. Lineage relationship analysis of RORγt+ innate lymphoid cells. *Science*. 2010;330:665–669. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20929731
90. Michie AM, Zuniga-Pflucker JC. Regulation of thymocyte differentiation: pre-TCR signals and β-selection. *Semin Immunol*. 2002;14:311–323. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12220932
91. Cantrell DA. Transgenic analysis of thymocyte signal transduction. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2002;2:20–27. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11905834
92. Zamoyska R, Lovatt M. Signalling in T-lymphocyte development: integration of signalling pathways is the key. *Curr Opin Immunol*. 2004;16:191–196. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15023412
93. Koltsova EK, Ciofani M, Benezra R, et al. Early growth response 1 and NF-ATc1 act in concert to promote thymocyte development beyond the β-selection checkpoint. *J Immunol*. 2007;179:4694–4703. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17878368
94. Xi H, Schwartz R, Engel I, Murre C, Kersh GJ. Interplay between RORγt, Egr3, and E proteins controls proliferation in response to pre-TCRsignals. *Immunity*. 2006;24:813–826. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16782036
95. Carleton M, Haks MC, Smeele SA, et al. Early growth response transcription factors are required for development of CD4(−) CD(−) thymocytes to the CD4(+)CD8(+) stage. *J Immunol*. 2002;168:1649–1658. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11823493
96. Bain G, Cravatt CB, Loomans C, Alberola-Ila J, Hedrick SM, Murre C. Regulation of the helix-loop-helix proteins, E2A and Id3, by the Ras-ERK MAPK cascade. *Nat Immunol*. 2001;2:165–171. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11175815
97. Jones ME, Zhuang Y. Acquisition of a functional T cell receptor during T lymphocyte development is enforced by HEB and E2A transcription factors. *Immunity*. 2007;27:860–870. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18093538
98. Goux D, Coudert JD, Maurice D, et al. Cooperating pre-T cell receptor and TCF-1-dependent signals ensure thymocyte survival. *Blood*. 2005;106:1726–1733. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15890681
99. Xu M, Sharma A, Wiest DL, Sen JM. Pre-TCR-induced β-cateninfacilitates traversal through β-selection. *J Immunol*. 2009;182:751–758. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19124717
100. Yu Q, Erman B, Park JH, Feigenbaum L, Singer A. IL-7 receptor signals inhibit expression of transcription factors TCF-1, LEF-1, and RORγt: impact on thymocyte development. *J Exp Med*. 2004;200:797–803. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15365098
101. Michie AM, Chan AC, Ciofani M, et al. Constitutive Notch signalling promotes CD4 CD8 thymocyte differentiation in the absence of the pre-TCR complex, by mimicking pre-TCR signals. *Int Immunol*. 2007;19:1421–1430. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17981791
102. Ciofani M, Knowles GC, Wiest DL, von Boehmer H, Zuniga-Pflucker JC. Stage-specific and differential Notch dependency at the αβ and γδ T lineage bifurcation. *Immunity*. 2006;25:105–116. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16814577
103. Garbe AI, Krueger A, Gounari F, Zuniga-Pflucker JC, von Boehmer H. Differential synergy of Notch and T cell receptor signaling determines αβ versus γδ lineage fate. *J Exp Med*. 2006;203:1579–1590. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16754723
104. Aster JC, Blacklow SC, Pear WS. Notch signalling in T-cell lymphoblastic leukaemia/lymphoma and other haematological malignancies. *J Pathol*. 2011;223:262–273. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20967796
105. McCormack MP, Young LF, Vasudevan S, et al. The Lmo2 oncogene initiates leukemia in mice by inducing thymocyte self-renewal. *Science*. 2010;327:879–883. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20093438
106. Tremblay CS, Hoang T. Early T cell differentiation lessons from T-cell acute lymphoblastic leukemia. *Prog Mol Biol Transl Sci*. 2010;92:121–156. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20800819
107. Murre C. Helix-loop-helix proteins and lymphocyte development. *Nat Immunol*. 2005;6:1079–1086. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16239924
108. Chari S, Winandy S. Ikaros regulates Notch target gene expression in developing thymocytes. *J Immunol*. 2008;181:6265–6274. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18941217
109. Xiong N, Raulet DH. Development and selection of γδ T cells. *Immunol Rev*. 2007;215:15–31. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17291276
110. Ye SK, Agata Y, Lee HC, et al. The IL-7 receptor controls the accessibility of the TCRγ Locus by Stat5 and histone acetylation. *Immunity*. 2001;15:813–823. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11728342
111. Schlissel MS, Durum SD, Muegge K. The interleukin 7 receptor is required for T cell receptor γ locus accessibility to the V(D)J recombinase. *J Exp Med*. 2000;191:1045–1050. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10727465
112. Ye SK, Maki K, Kitamura T, et al. Induction of germline transcription in the TCRγ locus by Stat5: implications for accessibility IL-7 receptor. *Immunity*. 1999;11:213–223. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10485656
113. Durum SK, Candeias S, Nakajima H, et al. Interleukin 7 receptor control of T cell receptor γ gene rearrangement: role of receptor-associated chains and locus accessibility. *J Exp Med*. 1998;188:2233–2241. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9858510
114. Wilson A, MacDonald HR. A limited role for β-selection during γδ T cell development. *J Immunol*. 1998;161:5851–5854. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9834063
115. Taghon T, Yui MA, Pant R, Diamond RA, Rothenberg EV. Developmental and molecular characterization of emerging β- and γδ-selected pre-T cells in the adult mouse thymus. *Immunity*. 2006;24:53–64. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16413923

116. Wells FB, Tatsumi Y, Bluestone JA, Hedrick SM, Allison JP, Matis LA. Phenotypic and functional analysis of positive selection in the g/δ T cell lineage. *J Exp Med*. 1993;177:1061–1070.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8459203
117. Pereira P, Zijlstra M, McMaster J, Loring JM, Jaenisch R, Tonegawa S. Blockade of transgenic gδ T cell development in b2-microglobulin deficient mice. *EMBO J*. 1992;11:25–31.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1531458
118. Hayes SM, Li L, Love PE. TCR signal strength influences ab/gδ lineage fate. *Immunity*. 2005;22:583–593.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15894276
119. Egawa T, Kreslavsky T, Littman DR, von Boehmer H. Lineage diversion of T cell receptor transgenic thymocytes revealed by lineage fate mapping. *PLoS ONE*. 2008;3:e1512.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18231598
120. Terrence K, Pavlovich CP, Matechak EO, Fowlkes BJ. Premature expression of T cell receptor (TCR) ab suppresses TCR gδ gene rearrangement but permits development of gδ lineage T cells. *J Exp Med*. 2000; 192:537–548.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10952723
121. Bruno L, Fehling HJ, von Boehmer H. The ab T cell receptor can replace the gδ receptor in the development of gδ lineage cells. *Immunity*. 1996;5:343–352.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8885867
122. Kreslavsky T, Gleimer M, Garbe AI, von Boehmer H. ab versus gδ fate choice: counting the T-cell lineages at the branch point. *Immunol Rev*. 2010;238:169–181.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20969592
123. Kang J, Volkmann A, Raulet DH. Evidence that gδ versus ab T cell fate determination is initiated independently of T cell receptor signaling. *J Exp Med*. 2001;193:689–698.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11257136
124. Huang J, Garrett KP, Pelayo R, Zúñiga-Pflücker JC, Petrie HT, Kincade PW. Propensity of adult lymphoid progenitors to progress to DN2/3 stage thymocytes with Notch receptor ligation. *J Immunol*. 2005;175: 4858–4865.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16210587
125. Balciunaite G, Ceredig R, Fehling HJ, Zúñiga-Pflücker JC, Rolink AG. The role of Notch and IL-7 signaling in early thymocyte proliferation and differentiation. *Eur J Immunol*. 2005;35:1292–1300.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15770699
126. Inoue J, Kanefuji T, Okazuka K, Watanabe H, Mishima Y, Kominami R. Expression of TCR ab partly rescues developmental arrest and apoptosis of ab T cells in Bcl11b -/- mice. *J Immunol*. 2006;176:5871–5879.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16670294
127. Kastner P, Chan S, Vogel WK, et al. Bcl11b represses a mature T-cell gene expression program in immature CD4(+)CD8(+) thymocytes. *Eur J Immunol*. 2010;40:2143–2154.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20544728
128. Barndt RJ, Dai M, Zhuang Y. Functions of E2A-HEB heterodimers in T-cell development revealed by a dominant negative mutation of HEB. *Mol Cell Biol*. 2000;20:6677–6685.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10958665
129. Blom B, Heemskerk MHM, Verschuren MCM, et al. Disruption of ab but not of gδ T cell development by overexpression of the helix-loop-helix protein Id3 in committed T cell progenitors. *EMBO J*. 1999;18:2793–2802.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10329625
130. Garbe AI, von Boehmer H. TCR and Notch synergize in ab versus gδ lineage choice. *Trends Immunol*. 2007;28:124–131.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17261380
131. Tanigaki K, Tsuji M, Yamamoto N, et al. Regulation of ab/gδ T cell lineage commitment and peripheral T cell responses by Notch/RBP-J signaling. *Immunity*. 2004;20:611–622.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15142529
132. Wolfer A, Wilson A, Nemir M, MacDonald HR, Radtke F. Inactivation of Notch1 impairs VDJ b rearrangement and allows pre-TCR-independent survival of early ab lineage thymocytes. *Immunity*. 2002;16: 869–879.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12121668
133. Washburn T, Schweighoffer E, Gridley T, et al. Notch activity influences the ab versus gδ T cell lineage decision. *Cell*. 1997;88:833–843.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9118226
134. Gebuhr TC, Kovalev GI, Bultman S, Godfrey V, Su L, Magnuson T. The role of Brg1, a catalytic subunit of mammalian chromatin-remodeling complexes, in T cell development. *J Exp Med*. 2003;198:1937–1949.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14676303
135. Lee PP, Fitzpatrick DR, Beard C, et al. A critical role for Dnmt1 and DNA methylation in T cell development, function, and survival. *Immunity*. 2001;15:763–774.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11728338
136. Miyazaki M, Miyazaki K, Itoi M, et al. Thymocyte proliferation induced by pre-T cell receptor signaling is maintained through polycomb gene product Bmi-1-mediated Cdkn2a repression. *Immunity*. 2008;28:231–245.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18275833
137. Anderson SJ, Lauritsen JP, Hartment MG, et al. Ablation of ribosomal protein L22 selectively impairs αβ T cell development by activation of a p53-dependent checkpoint. *Immunity*. 2007;26:759–772.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17555992
138. Bonneville M, O'Brien RL, Born WK. Gammadelta T cell effector functions: a blend of innate programming and acquired plasticity. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2010;10:467–478.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20539306
139. Nonaka S, Naito T, Chen H, et al. Intestinal γδ T cells develop in mice lacking thymus, all lymph nodes, Peyer's patches, and isolated lymphoid follicles. *J Immunol*. 2005;174:1906–1912.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15699117
140. Bain G, Romanow WJ, Albers K, Havran WL, Murre C. Positive and negative regulation of V(D)J recombination by the E2A proteins. *J Exp Med*. 1999;189:289–300.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9892611
141. De Creus A, Van Beneden K, Stevenaert F, Debacker V, Plum J, Leclercq G. Developmental and functional defects of thymic and epidermal Vγ3 cells in IL-15-deficient and IFN regulatory factor-1-deficient mice. *J Immunol*. 2002;168:6486–6493.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12055269
142. Zhao H, Nguyen H, Kang J. Interleukin 15 controls the generation of the restricted T cell receptor repertoire of γδ intestinal intraepithelial lymphocytes. *Nat Immunol*. 2005;6:1263–1271.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16273100
143. Kreslavsky T, Savage AK, Hobbs R, et al. TCR-inducible PLZF transcription factor required for innate phenotype of a subset of γδ T cells with restricted TCR diversity. Proc *Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2009;106: 12453–12458.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19617548
144. Alonzo ES, Gottschalk RA, Das J, et al. Development of promyelocytic zinc finger and ThPOK-expressing innate γδ T cells is controlled by strength of TCR signaling and Id3. *J Immunol*. 2010;184:1268–1279.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20038637
145. Ueda-Hayakawa I, Mahlios J, Zhuang Y. Id3 restricts the developmental potential of γδ lineage during thymopoiesis. *J Immunol*. 2009;182:5306–5316.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19380777
146. Verykokakis M, Boos MD, Bendelac A, Adams EJ, Pereira P, Kee BL. Inhibitor of DNA binding 3 limits development of murine slam-associated adaptor protein-dependent "innate" γδ T cells. *PLoS One*. 2010; 5:e9303.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20174563
147. Do JS, Fink PJ, Li L, et al. Cutting edge: spontaneous development of IL-17-producing γδ T cells in the thymus occurs via a TGF-β 1-dependent mechanism. *J Immunol*. 2010;184:1675–1679.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20061408
148. Park K, He X, Lee HO, et al. TCR-mediated ThPOK induction promotes development of mature (CD24-) γδ thymocytes. *EMBO J*. 2010;29: 2329–2341.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20551904
149. Meyer C, Zeng X, Chien YH. Ligand recognition during thymic development and γδ T cell function specification. *Semin Immunol*. 2010;22: 207–213.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20430644
150. Ignatowicz L, Rees W, Pacholczyk R, et al. T cells can be activated by peptides that are unrelated in sequence to their selecting peptide. *Immunity*. 1997;7:179–186.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9285403

151. Wang B, Primeau TM, Myers N, et al. A single peptide-MHC complex positively selects a diverse and specific CD8 T cell repertoire. *Science*. 2009;326:871–874.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19892989
152. Krangel MS, Carabana J, Abbarategui I, Schlimgen R, Hawwari A. Enforcing order within a complex locus: current perspectives on the control of V(D)J recombination at the murine T-cell receptor α/δ locus. *Immunol Rev*. 2004;200:224–232.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15242408
153. Rosen H, Goetzl EJ. Sphingosine 1-phosphate and its receptors: an autocrine and paracrine network. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2005;5:560–570.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15999095
154. Allende ML, Dreier JL, Mandala S, Proia RL. Expression of the sphingosine 1-phosphate receptor, S1P1, on T-cells controls thymic emigration. *J Biol Chem*. 2004;279:15396–15401.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14732704
155. Matloubian M, Lo CG, Cinamon G, et al. Lymphocyte egress from thymus and peripheral lymphoid organs is dependent on S1P receptor 1. *Nature*. 2004;427:355–360.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14737169
156. Carlson CM, Endrizzi BT, Wu J, et al. Kruppel-like factor 2 regulates thymocyte and T-cell migration. *Nature*. 2006;442:299–302.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16855590
157. Hogquist KA, Baldwin TA, Jameson SC. Central tolerance: learning self-control in the thymus. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2005;5:772–782.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16200080
158. von Boehmer H, Kisielow P. Negative selection of the T-cell repertoire: where and when does it occur? *Immunol Rev*. 2006;209:284–289.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16448549
159. Baldwin TA, Sandau MM, Jameson SC, Hogquist KA. The timing of TCR alpha expression critically influences T cell development and selection.*J Exp Med*. 2005;202:111–121.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15998791
160. Nitta T, Nitta S, Lei Y, Lipp M, Takahama Y. CCR7-mediated migration of developing thymocytes to the medulla is essential for negative selection to tissue-restricted antigens. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2009;106:17129–17133.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19805112
161. Ehrlich LI, Oh DY, Weissman IL, Lewis RS. Differential contribution of chemotaxis and substrate restriction to segregation of immature and mature thymocytes. *Immunity*. 2009;31:986–998.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19962328
162. Le Borgne M, Ladi E, Dzhagalov I, et al. The impact of negative selection on thymocyte migration in the medulla. *Nat Immunol*. 2009;10:823–830.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19543275
163. Moran AE, Holzapfel KL, Xing Y, et al. T cell receptor signal strength in Treg and iNKT cell development demonstrated by a novel fluorescent reporter mouse. *J Exp Med*. 2011;208:1279–1289.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21606508
164. Liu ZG, Smith SW, McLaughlin KA, Schwartz LM, Osborne BA. Apoptotic signals delivered through the T-cell receptor of a T-cell hybrid require the immediate-early gene nur77. *Nature*. 1994;367:281–284.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8121494
165. Osborne BA, Smith SW, Liu ZG, McLaughlin KA, Grimm L, Schwartz LM. Identification of genes induced during apoptosis in T lymphocytes. *Immunol Rev*. 1994;142:301–320.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7698798
166. Baldwin TA, Hogquist KA. Transcriptional analysis of clonal deletion in vivo. *J Immunol*. 2007;179:837–844.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17617574
167. Palmer E. Negative selection—clearing out the bad apples from the T-cell repertoire. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2003;3:383–391.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12766760
168. McGargill MA, Ch'en IL, Katayama CD, Pages G, Pouyssegur J, Hedrick SM. Cutting edge: extracellular signal-related kinase is not required for negative selection of developing T cells. *J Immunol*. 2009;183:4838–4842.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19801509
168a. Fischer AM, Katayama CD, Pages G, Pouyssegur J, Hedrick SM. The role of *erk1* and *erk2* in multiple stages of T cell development. *Immunity*. 2005;23:431–443.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16226508
169. Patrick MS, Oda H, Hayakawa K, et al. Gasp, a Grb2-associating protein, is critical for positive selection of thymocytes. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2009;106:16345–16350.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19805304
170. Gascoigne NR, Palmer E. Signaling in thymic selection. *Curr Opin Immunol*. 2011;23:207–212.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21242076
171. Jang IK, Zhang J, Chiang YJ, et al. Grb2 functions at the top of the T-cell antigen receptor-induced tyrosine kinase cascade to control thymic selection. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2010;107:10620–10625.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20498059
172. Murata S, Takahama Y, Tanaka K. Thymoproteasome: probable role in generating positively selecting peptides. *Curr Opin Immunol*. 2008;20:192–196.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18403190
173. Nitta T, Murata S, Sasaki K, et al. Thymoproteasome shapes immunocompetent repertoire of CD8+ T cells. *Immunity*. 2010;32:29–40.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20045355
174. Takahama Y, Nitta T, Mat Ripen A, Nitta S, Murata S, Tanaka K. Role of thymic cortex-specific self-peptides in positive selection of T cells. *Semin Immunol*. 2010;22:287–293.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20510627
175. Takahama Y, Tanaka K, Murata S. Modest cortex and promiscuous medulla for thymic repertoire formation. *Trends Immunol*. 2008;29:251–255.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18472300
176. Ziegler A, Muller CA, Bockmann RA, Uchanska-Ziegler B. Low-affinity peptides and T-cell selection. *Trends Immunol*. 2009;30:53–60.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19201651
177. Huseby ES, White J, Crawford F, et al. How the T cell repertoire becomes peptide and MHC specific. *Cell*. 2005;122:247–260.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16051149
178. Nakagawa T, Roth W, Wong P, et al. Cathepsin L: critical role in Ii degradation and CD4 T cell selection in the thymus. *Science*. 1998;280:450–453.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9545226
179. Honey K, Nakagawa T, Peters C, Rudensky A. Cathepsin L regulates CD4+ T cell selection independently of its effect on invariant chain: a role in the generation of positively selecting peptide ligands. *J Exp Med*. 2002;195:1349–1358.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12021314
180. Wiest DL, Yuan L, Jefferson J, et al. Regulation of T cell receptor expression in immature CD4+CD8+ thymocytes by p56*lck* tyrosine kinase: basis for differential signaling by CD4 and CD8 in immature thymocytes expressing both coreceptor molecules. *J Exp Med*. 1993;178:1701–1712.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8228817
181. Hernandez-Hoyos G, Sohn SJ, Rothenberg EV, Alberola-Ila J. Lck activity controls CD4/CD8 T cell lineage commitment. *Immunity*. 2000;12:313–322.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10755618
182. Park JH, Adoro S, Guinter T, et al. Signaling by intrathymic cytokines, not T cell antigen receptors, specifies CD8 lineage choice and promotes the differentiation of cytotoxic-lineage T cells. *Nat Immunol*. 2010;11:257–264.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20118929
183. Yasutomo K, Doyle C, Miele L, Fuchs C, Germain RN. The duration of antigen receptor signalling determines CD4+ versus CD8+ T-cell lineage fate. *Nature*. 2000;404:506–510.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10761920
184. Sato T, Ohno S, Hayashi T, et al. Dual functions of Runx proteins for reactivating CD8 and silencing CD4 at the commitment process into CD8 thymocytes. *Immunity*. 2005;22:317–328.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15780989
185. Brugnera E, Bhandoola A, Cibotti R, et al. Coreceptor reversal in the thymus: signaled CD4+8+ thymocytes initially terminate CD8 transcription even when differentiating into CD8+ T cells. *Immunity*. 2000;13:59–71.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10933395
186. Adoro S, Erman B, Sarafova SD, et al. Targeting CD4 coreceptor expression to postselection thymocytes reveals that CD4/CD8 lineage choice is neither error-prone nor stochastic. *J Immunol*. 2008;181:6975–6983.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18981117

187. Singer A, Adoro S, Park JH. Lineage fate and intense debate: myths, models and mechanisms of CD4- versus CD8-lineage choice. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2008;8:788–801.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18802443
188. Singer A. New perspectives on a developmental dilemma: the kinetic signaling model and the importance of signal duration for the CD4/CD8 lineage decision. *Curr Opin Immunol*. 2002;14:207–215.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11869894
189. Keefe R, Dave V, Allman D, Wiest D, Kappes DJ. Regulation of lineage commitment distinct from positive selection. *Science*. 1999;286:1149–1153.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10550051
190. Sun G, Liu X, Mercado P, et al. The zinc finger protein cKrox directs CD4 lineage differentiation during intrathymic T cell positive selection. *Nat Immunol*. 2005;6:373–381.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15750595
191. Wang L, Wildt KF, Castro E, et al. The zinc finger transcription factor Zbtb7b represses CD8-lineage gene expression in peripheral CD4+ T cells. *Immunity*. 2008;29:876–887.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19062319
192. Egawa T, Littman DR. ThPOK acts late in specification of the helper T cell lineage and suppresses Runx-mediated commitment to the cytotoxic T cell lineage. *Nat Immunol*. 2008;9:1131–1139.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18776905
193. Satoh-Takayama N, Lesjean-Pottier S, Vieira P, et al. IL-7 and IL-15 independently program the differentiation of intestinal CD3-NKp46+ cell subsets from Id2-dependent precursors. *J Exp Med*. 2010;207:273–280.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20142427
194. Kappes DJ. Expanding roles for ThPOK in thymic development. *Immunol Rev*. 2010;238:182–194.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20969593
195. Muroi S, Naoe Y, Miyamoto C, et al. Cascading suppression of transcriptional silencers by ThPOK seals helper T cell fate. *Nat Immunol*. 2008;9:1113–1121.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18776907
196. Wang L, Bosselut R. CD4-CD8 lineage differentiation: Thpok-ing into the nucleus. *J Immunol*. 2009;183:2903–2910.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19696430
197. Xiong Y, Bosselut R. The enigma of CD4-lineage specification. *Eur J Immunol*. 2011;41:568–574.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21341258
198. Hernandez-Hoyos G, Anderson MK, Wang C, Rothenberg EV, Alberola-Ila J. GATA-3 expression is controlled by TCR signals and regulates CD4/CD8 differentiation. *Immunity*. 2003;19:83–94.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12871641
199. Hosoya T, Maillard I, Engel JD. From the cradle to the grave: activities of GATA-3 throughout T-cell development and differentiation. *Immunol Rev*. 2010;238:110–125.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20969588
200. Pai SY, Truitt ML, Ting CN, Leiden JM, Glimcher LH, Ho IC. Critical roles for transcription factor GATA-3 in thymocyte development. *Immunity*. 2003;19:863–875.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14670303
201. Wang L, Wildt KF, Zhu J, et al. Distinct functions for the transcription factors GATA-3 and ThPOK during intrathymic differentiation of CD4(+) T cells. *Nat Immunol*. 2008;9:1122–1130.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18776904
202. Egawa T, Tillman RE, Naoe Y, Taniuchi I, Littman DR. The role of the Runx transcription factors in thymocyte differentiation and in homeostasis of naive T cells. *J Exp Med*. 2007;204:1945–1957.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17646406
203. Grueter B, Petter M, Egawa T, et al. Runx3 regulates integrin α E/CD103 and CD4 expression during development of CD4-/CD8+ T cells. *J Immunol*. 2005;175:1694–1705.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16034110
204. Taniuchi I, Osato M, Egawa T, et al. Differential requirements for Runx proteins in CD4 repression and epigenetic silencing during T lymphocyte development. *Cell*. 2002;111:621–633.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12464175
205. Kohu K, Sato T, Ohno S, et al. Overexpression of the Runx3 transcription factor increases the proportion of mature thymocytes of the CD8 single-positive lineage. *J Immunol*. 2005;174:2627–2636.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15728469
206. Egawa T. Runx and ThPOK: a balancing act to regulate thymocyte lineage commitment. *J Cell Biochem*. 2009;107:1037–1045.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19479890
207. Collins A, Littman DR, Taniuchi I. RUNX proteins in transcription factor networks that regulate T-cell lineage choice. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2009;9:106–115.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19165227
208. Egawa T, Taniuchi I. Antagonistic interplay between ThPOK and Runx in lineage choice of thymocytes. *Blood Cells Mol Dis*. 2009;43:27–29.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19375362
209. Naito T, Taniuchi I. The network of transcription factors that underlie the CD4 versus CD8 lineage decision. *Int Immunol*. 2010;22:791–796.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20732858
210. Taniuchi I. Transcriptional regulation in helper versus cytotoxic-lineage decision. *Curr Opin Immunol*. 2009;21:127–132.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19361971
211. Gimferrer I, Hu T, Simmons A, et al. Regulation of GATA-3 expression during CD4 lineage differentiation. *J Immunol*. 2011;186:3892–3898.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21357543
212. Maurice D, Hooper J, Lang G, Weston K. c-Myb regulates lineage choice in developing thymocytes via its target gene Gata3. *EMBO J*. 2007;26:3629–3640.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17641686
213. Aliahmad P, Kaye J. Development of all CD4 T lineages requires nuclear factor TOX. *J Exp Med*. 2008;205:245–256.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18195075
214. Setoguchi R, Tachibana M, Naoe Y, et al. Repression of the transcription factor Th-POK by Runx complexes in cytotoxic T cell development. *Science*. 2008;319:822–825.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18258917
215. Sakaguchi S, Hombauer M, Bilic I, et al. The zinc-finger protein MAZR is part of the transcription factor network that controls the CD4 versus CD8 lineage fate of double-positive thymocytes. *Nat Immunol*. 2010;11:442–448.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20383150
216. Kappler JW, Roehm N, Marrack P. T cell tolerance by clonal elimination in the thymus. *Cell*. 1987;49:273–280.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3494522
217. Bouillet P, Purton JF, Godfrey DI, et al. BH3-only Bcl-2 family member Bim is required for apoptosis of autoreactive thymocytes. *Nature*. 2002;415:922–926.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11859372
218. Rathmell JC, Lindsten T, Zong WX, Cinalli RM, Thompson CB. Deficiency in Bak and Bax perturbs thymic selection and lymphoid homeostasis. *Nat Immunol*. 2002;3:932–939.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12244308
219. Calnan BJ, Szychowski S, Chan FK, Cado D, Winoto A. A role for the orphan steroid receptor Nur77 in apoptosis accompanying antigen-induced negative selection. *Immunity*. 1995;3:273–282.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7552993
219a. Pobezinsky L, Angelov GS, Tai X, et al. Clonal deletion and the fate of autoreactive thymocytes that survive negative selection. *Nat Immunol*. 2012;13:569–578.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22544394
220. McCarty N, Paust S, Ikizawa K, Dan I, Li X, Cantor H. Signaling by the kinase MINK is essential in the negative selection of autoreactive thymocytes. *Nat Immunol*. 2005;6:65–72.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15608642
221. Ouyang W, Beckett O, Ma Q, Li MO. Transforming growth factor-beta signaling curbs thymic negative selection promoting regulatory T cell development. *Immunity*. 2010;32:642–653.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20471291
222. Kurobe H, Liu X, Ueno T, et al. CCR7-dependent cortex-to-medulla migration of positively selected thymocytes is essential for establishing central tolerance. *Immunity*. 2006;24:165–177.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16473829
223. Nagamine K, Peterson P, Scott HS, et al. Positional cloning of the APECED gene. *Nat Genet*. 1997;17:393–398.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9398839
224. Anderson MS, Venanzi ES, Klein L, et al. Projection of an immunological self shadow within the thymus by the Aire protein. *Science*. 2002;298:1395–1401.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12376594

225. Liston A, Lesage S, Wilson J, Peltonen L, Goodnow CC. Aire regulates negative selection of organ-specific T cells. *Nat Immunol*. 2003;4:350–354. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12612579
226. Villasenor J, Benoist C, Mathis D. AIRE and APECED: molecular insights into an autoimmune disease. *Immunol Rev*. 2005;204:156–164. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15790357
227. Derbinski J, Gabler J, Brors B, et al. Promiscuous gene expression in thymic epithelial cells is regulated at multiple levels. *J Exp Med*. 2005;202:33–45. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15790357
228. DeVoss J, Hou Y, Johannes K, et al. Spontaneous autoimmunity prevented by thymic expression of a single self-antigen. *J Exp Med*. 2006;203:2727–2735. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17116738
229. Metzger TC, Anderson MS. Control of central and peripheral tolerance by Aire. *Immunol Rev*. 2011;241:89–103. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21488892
230. Anderson MS, Su MA. Aire and T cell development. *Curr Opin Immunol*. 2011;23:198–206. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21163636
231. Taniguchi RT, Anderson MS. The role of Aire in clonal selection. *Immunol Cell Biol*. 2011;89:40–44. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21079643
232. Mathis D, Benoist C. Aire. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 2009;27:287–312. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19302042
233. Gardner JM, Devoss JJ, Friedman RS, et al. Deletional tolerance mediated by extrathymic Aire-expressing cells. *Science*. 2008;321:843–847. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18687966
234. Hubert FX, Kinkel SA, Davey GM, et al. Aire regulates the transfer of antigen from mTECs to dendritic cells for induction of thymic tolerance. *Blood*. 2011;118:2462–2472. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21505196
235. Punt JA, Osborne BA, Takahama Y, Sharrow SO, Singer A. Negative selection of CD4+CD8+ thymocytes by T cell receptor-induced apoptosis requires a costimulatory signal that can be provided by CD28. *J Exp Med*. 1994;179:709–713. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8294878
236. Proietto AI, van Dommelen S, Wu L. The impact of circulating dendritic cells on the development and differentiation of thymocytes. *Immunol Cell Biol*. 2009;87:39–45. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19048018
237. Sakaguchi S. Naturally arising Foxp3-expressing CD25+CD4+ regulatory T cells in immunological tolerance to self and non-self. *Nat Immunol*. 2005;6:345–352. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15785760
238. Kim JM, Rudensky A. The role of the transcription factor Foxp3 in the development of regulatory T cells. *Immunol Rev*. 2006;212:86–98. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16903908
239. Fontenot JD, Gavin MA, Rudensky AY. Foxp3 programs the development and function of CD4+CD25+ regulatory T cells. *Nat Immunol*. 2003;4:330–336. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12612578
240. Wildin RS, Freitas A. IPEX and FOXP3: clinical and research perspectives. *J Autoimmun*. 2005;25(suppl):56–62. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16243487
241. Gavin MA, Rasmussen JP, Fontenot JD, et al. Foxp3-dependent programme of regulatory T-cell differentiation. *Nature*. 2007;445:771–775. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17220874
242. Olivares-Villagomez D, Wang Y, Lafaille JJ. Regulatory CD4(+) T cells expressing endogenous T cell receptor chains protect myelin basic protein-specific transgenic mice from spontaneous autoimmune encephalomyelitis. *J Exp Med*. 1998;188:1883–1894. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9815266
243. Kawahata K, Misaki Y, Yamauchi M, et al. Generation of CD4(+) CD25(+) regulatory T cells from autoreactive T cells simultaneously with their negative selection in the thymus and from nonautoreactive T cells by endogenous TCR expression. *J Immunol*. 2002;168:4399–4405. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11970982
244. Walker LS, Chodos A, Eggena M, Dooms H, Abbas AK. Antigen-dependent proliferation of CD4+ CD25+ regulatory T cells in vivo. *J Exp Med*. 2003;198:249–258. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12874258
245. Pacholczyk R, Kern J. The T-cell receptor repertoire of regulatory T cells. *Immunology*. 2008;125:450–458. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19128356
246. Wong J, Obst R, Correia-Neves M, Losyev G, Mathis D, Benoist C. Adaptation of TCR repertoires to self-peptides in regulatory and nonregulatoryCD4+ T cells. *J Immunol*. 2007;178:7032–7041. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17513752
247. Hsieh CS, Zheng Y, Liang Y, Fontenot JD, Rudensky AY. An intersection between the self-reactive regulatory and nonregulatory T cell receptor repertoires. *Nat Immunol*. 2006;7:401–410. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16532000
248. Josefowicz SZ, Rudensky A. Control of regulatory T cell lineage commitment and maintenance. *Immunity*. 2009;30:616–625. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19464984
249. Wirnsberger G, Hinterberger M, Klein L. Regulatory T-cell differentiation versus clonal deletion of autoreactive thymocytes. *Immunol Cell Biol*. 2011;89:45–53. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21042335
250. Bautista JL, Lio CW, Lathrop SK, et al. Intraclonal competition limits the fate determination of regulatory T cells in the thymus. *Nat Immunol*. 2009;10:610–617. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19430476
251. Hinterberger M, Aichinger M, da Costa OP, Voehringer D, Hoffmann R, Klein L. Autonomous role of medullary thymic epithelial cells in central CD4(+) T cell tolerance. *Nat Immunol*. 2010;11:512–519. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20431619
252. Burchill MA, Yang J, Vang KB, et al. Linked T cell receptor and cytokine signaling govern the development of the regulatory T cell repertoire. *Immunity*. 2008;28:112–121. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18199418
253. Burchill MA, Yang J, Vang KB, Farrar MA. Interleukin-2 receptor signaling in regulatory T cell development and homeostasis. *Immunol Lett*. 2007;114:1–8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17936914
254. Tang Q, Henriksen KJ, Boden EK, et al. Cutting edge: CD28 controls peripheral homeostasis of CD4+CD25+ regulatory T cells. *J Immunol*. 2003;171:3348–3352. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14500627
255. Tai X, Cowan M, Feigenbaum L, Singer A. CD28 costimulation of developing thymocytes induces Foxp3 expression and regulatory T cell differentiation independently of interleukin 2. *Nat Immunol*. 2005;6:152–162. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15640801
256. Vang KB, Yang J, Pagán AJ, et al. Cutting edge: CD28 and c-Rel-dependent pathways initiate regulatory T cell development. *J Immunol*. 2010;184:4074–4077. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20228198
257. Deenick EK, Elford AR, Pellegrini M, Hall H, Mak TW, Ohashi PS. c-Rel but not NF-kappaB1 is important for T regulatory cell development. *Eur J Immunol*. 2010;40:677–681. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20082358
258. Ruan Q, Kameswaran V, Tone Y, et al. Development of Foxp3^{+} regulatory T cells is driven by the c-Rel enhanceosome. *Immunity*. 2009;31:932–940. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20064450
259. Visekruna A, Huber M, Hellhund A, et al. c-Rel is crucial for the induction of Foxp3+ regulatory CD4+ T cells but not T H 17 cells. *Eur J Immunol*. 2010;40:671–676. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20049877
260. Long M, Park SG, Strickland I, Hayden MS, Ghosh S. Nuclear factor-kappaB modulates regulatory T cell development by directly regulating expression of Foxp3 transcription factor. *Immunity*. 2009;31:921–931. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20064449
261. Isomura I, Palmer S, Grumont RJ, et al. c-Rel is required for the development of thymic Foxp3+ CD4 regulatory T cells. *J Exp Med*. 2009;206:3001–3014. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19995950
262. Grigoriadis G, Vasanthakumar A, Banerjee A, et al. c-Rel controls multiple discrete steps in the thymic development of Foxp3 CD4 regulatory T cells. *PLoS One*. 2011;6:e26851. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22066012
263. Burchill MA, Yang J, Vogtenhuber C, Blazar BR, Farrar MA. IL-2 receptor beta-dependent STAT5 activation is required for the development of Foxp3+ regulatory T cells. *J Immunol*. 2007;178:280–290. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17182565

264. Yao Z, Kanno Y, Kerenyi M, et al. Nonredundant roles for Stat5a/b in directly regulating Foxp3. *Blood*. 2007;109:4368–4375. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17227828
265. Lin W, Haribhai D, Relland LM, et al. Regulatory T cell development in the absence of functional Foxp3. *Nat Immunol*. 2007;8:359–368. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17273171
266. Wan YY, Flavell RA. Regulatory T-cell functions are subverted and converted owing to attenuated Foxp3 expression. *Nature*. 2007;445:766–770. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17220876
267. Williams LM, Rudensky AY. Maintenance of the Foxp3-dependent developmental program in mature regulatory T cells requires continued expression of Foxp3. *Nat Immunol*. 2007;8:277–284. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17220892
268. Das R, Sant'Angelo DB, Nichols KE. Transcriptional control of invariant NKT cell development. *Immunol Rev*. 2010;238:195–215. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20969594
269. D'Cruz LM, Knell J, Fujimoto JK, Goldrath AW. An essential role for the transcription factor HEB in thymocyte survival, Tcra rearrangement and the development of natural killer T cells. *Nat Immunol*. 2010;11:240–249. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20154672
270. D'Cruz LM, Yang CY, Goldrath AW. Transcriptional regulation of NKT cell development and homeostasis. *Curr Opin Immunol*. 2010;22:199–205. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20171073
271. Savage AK, Constantinides MG, Han J, et al. The transcription factor PLZF directs the effector program of the NKT cell lineage. *Immunity*. 2008;29:391–403. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18703361
272. Kovalovsky D, Alonzo ES, Uche OU, Eidson M, Nichols KE, Sant'Angelo DB. PLZF induces the spontaneous acquisition of memory/effector functions in T cells independently of NKT cell-related signals. *J Immunol*. 2010;184:6746–6755. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20495068
273. Schwartzberg PL, Mueller KL, Qi H, Cannons JL. SLAM receptors and SAP influence lymphocyte interactions, development and function. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2009;9:39–46. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19079134
274. Borowski C, Bendelac A. Signaling for NKT cell development: the SAP-FynT connection. *J Exp Med*. 2005;201:833–836. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15781574
275. Hu T, Gimferrer I, Simmons A, Wiest D, Alberola-Ila J. The Ras/MAPK pathway is required for generation of iNKT cells. *PLoS One*. 2011;6:e19890. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21572967
276. Veillette A, Dong Z, Latour S. Consequence of the SLAM-SAP signaling pathway in innate-like and conventional lymphocytes. *Immunity*. 2007;27:698–710. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18031694
277. Prasad A, Zikherman J, Das J, Roose JP, Weiss A, Chakraborty AK. Origin of the sharp boundary that discriminates positive and negative selection of thymocytes. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2009;106:528–533. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19098101
278. Fraser ID, Germain RN. Navigating the network: signaling cross-talk in hematopoietic cells. *Nat Immunol*. 2009;10:327–331. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19295628
279. Rothenberg EV, Zhang J, Li L. Multilayered specification of the T-cell lineage fate. *Immunol Rev*. 2010;238:150–168. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20969591
280. Heilig JS, Tonegawa S. Diversity of murine gamma genes and expression in fetal and adult lymphocytes-T. *Nature*. 1986;322:836–840. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2943999
281. Garman RD, Doherty PJ, Raulet DH. Diversity, rearrangement, and expression of murine T cell γ genes. *Cell*. 1986;45:733–742. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3486721
282. Liston A, Nutsch KM, Farr AG, et al. Differentiation of regulatory Foxp3+ T cells in the thymic cortex. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2008;105:11903–11908. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18695219
283. Blom B, Spits H. Development of human lymphoid cells. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 2006;24:287–320. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16551251

CHAPTER 14

Peripheral T Lymphocyte Responses and Function

Marc K. Jenkins

INTRODUCTION

This chapter focuses on the processes by which conventional thymus-derived (T)-lymphocytes that express αβ T-cell antigen receptors (TCRs) become activated by their cognate peptide (p): major histocompatibility complex (MHC) ligand. It will cover how TCR ligation by foreign antigen-derived p:MHC ligands causes rare naïve T cells from the preimmune repertoire to proliferate in the secondary lymphoid organs (sometimes referred to by immunologists as the periphery) to become effector cells capable of producing microbicidal cytokines and eliminating foreign antigens from nonlymphoid tissues. It will also describe how the innate immune response and signals from costimulatory and cytokine receptors shape the functional and migratory properties of effector T cells, and ends with a discussion of how effector cells give rise to diverse memory cell subsets. An emphasis is placed on the dynamics and anatomy of naïve to effector to memory-cell conversion.

The chapter will focus on conventional T cells that express αβ TCRs. The reader is directed to other chapters in the book for details concerning natural killer T cells, γδ T cells, and regulatory T cells.

NAÏVE T CELLS

To understand effector T-cell generation, it is important to consider the naïve T cells from which they are derived. The capacity of the host to make effector and memory cells in response to new foreign proteins depends on the existence of naïve T cells that express αβ TCRs specific for MHC-bound peptides derived from that protein.[1] Naïve T cells with this particular p:MHC specificity are rare members of a vast repertoire also containing naïve T cells specific for other p:MHC ligands. Each naïve T cell expresses a randomly generated TCR, which is produced regardless of whether the relevant foreign antigen is in the host's body. Thus, naïve T cells are defined as T cells that have not yet been stimulated by a p:MHC ligand for which their TCR has a high affinity.

Generation

A naïve T cell is the end result of a complex developmental process that occurs in the thymus.[2] To complete development, each thymocyte must produce an αβ TCR by randomly recombining one of multiple variable (V), diversity (D), and joining (J) deoxyribonucleic acid segments at the *Tcrb* locus and one of multiple V and J segments at the *Tcra* locus.[3] Once an in-frame rearrangement at a locus has occurred on one chromosome, further rearrangement on the other chromosome is suppressed, although not completely. These processes lead to the situation where most developing thymocytes express a single unique type of αβ TCR.

Thymocytes that successfully express a TCR must then pass positive and negative selection based on the p:MHC specificity of that TCR.[4] Positive selection occurs just after completion of TCR gene rearrangement at the time when thymocytes first express TCRs and coexpress both cluster of differentiation (CD)4 and CD8 coreceptors. To pass positive selection, a thymocyte must receive a TCR signal transduced by low affinity binding to a self p:MHC ligand on radio-resistant thymic epithelial cells in the cortex. It was thought that this process was inefficient due to the improbability of VDJ segment rearrangement by chance producing TCRs with any affinity for a self p:MHC ligand.[5] However, recent work from Marrack and colleagues has shown that all TCRs have germ-line encoded complementarity determining region (CDR) 1 and CDR2 domains within their V segments that bind MHC molecules.[6] This binding has been postulated to cause most thymocytes to undergo negative selection,[7] which is a desirable outcome for the host because these cells could cause autoimmunity if allowed to mature. In this model, the only thymocytes that receive the weak positive selection signal are those that produce a CDR3 through VDJ recombination that partially impairs CDR1 and 2 binding to MHC and allows weak binding to a self-p:MHC complex. Cells that undergo positive selection by recognition of a self-p:MHCI ligand lose CD4 and retain CD8, whereas cells that undergo positive selection by recognition of a self-p:MHCII ligand lose CD8 and retain CD4, in a process controlled by ThPOK and Runx3 transcription factors.[8] In contrast, thymocytes that undergo negative selection either die by apoptosis or differentiate into Foxp3+ regulatory T cells.[9]

Recirculation

CD4+ and CD8+ T cells that complete positive selection exit the thymus and enter the secondary lymphoid organs (lymph nodes, spleen, and mucosal lymphoid organs). Just before leaving the thymus, these cells turn on the KLF2 transcription factor, which promotes expression of several gene products that control thymus exit, such as S1P1, and subsequent circulation through secondary lymphoid organs, such as CD62L and CC chemokine receptor (CCR) 7.[10] T cells also express low levels of CD44 and CD45RO and high levels of CD45RB and CD45RA as they leave the thymus. Over the first 2 weeks after leaving the thymus in adults,

T cells increase the levels of expression of CD28 and the interleukin (IL)-7 receptor α chain, and become better able to proliferate and differentiate if confronted with the relevant foreign p:MHC ligand.[11,12] After completing this maturation process, T cells express a $CD44^{low}$ CD45RO− $CD45RB^{high}$ CD45RA+ CCR7+ CD62L+ $CD28^{high}$ IL-$7R\alpha^{high}$ phenotype, which is used to identify naïve T cells.

Naïve T cells spend their lives ($T_{1/2}$ of 2 to 5 years in humans,[13] and 50 to 100 days in mice[14]) recirculating through secondary lymphoid organs. Expression of trafficking molecules that bind ligands that are only expressed on the specialized blood vessels and sinuses of these organs explain this behavior. For example, the extravasation of naïve T cells through the high endothelial venules (HEVs) of lymph nodes and mucosal lymphoid organs depends on CD62L and CCR7, the ligands for which are only expressed on HEVs.[15] After passing through the HEVs, naïve T cells enter the T-cell–rich paracortical areas of the lymph nodes and mucosal lymphoid organs and are constrained in these regions by sensing CCL19 and CCL21 with CCR7.[16] Similarly, naïve T cells migrate from the marginal zone sinuses of the spleen into the T-cell–rich periarteriolar lymphoid sheathes (PALSs) via an unknown G-protein–coupled receptor-dependent mechanism. Naïve T cells again migrate within the PALSs through CCR7 sensing of CCL19 and CCL21. In all secondary lymphoid organs, naïve T cells are excluded from the B-cell–rich follicles due to lack of expression of CXC chemokine receptor (CXCR) 5, which binds to CXCL13 produced in follicles and guides cells to this location.

Survival

The T-cell areas within lymph nodes contain a network of thin collagen tubes called conduits, which carry lymph-borne antigens and chemokines from the subcapsular sinus, where lymph enters the lymph nodes through afferent lymphatic vessels, to sinuses surrounding HEVs.[17] The conduits are wrapped with fibroblastic reticular cells, which produce IL-7. Naïve T cells migrate along the conduits, placing themselves in a good position to receive IL-7, on which they depend for survival.[18]

To survive for a normal lifespan, naïve T cells must also receive TCR signals through weak recognition of self p:MHC ligands, perhaps the ones that caused the T cells to undergo positive selection in the thymus.[1] Dendritic cells are probably the important antigen-presenting cell (APC) for this process because they are constantly in contact with T cells in the secondary lymphoid organs, and expression of MHCII molecules under the control of the dendritic cell–specific CD11c (*Itgax*) promoter is sufficient to maintain the survival of naïve CD4+ T cells. On the other hand, mice lacking dendritic cells by *Itgax* promoter–directed expression of diphtheria toxin have normal numbers of naïve T cells.[19] This result does not rule out a role for dendritic cells in naïve T-cell maintenance, however, because it is possible that the naïve T cells die at a higher than normal rate without dendritic cells but are also produced at a higher rate. Studies on the turnover rate of naïve T cells in dendritic cell–deficient mice will be needed to address this question.

Self p:MHC ligand presentation by dendritic cells has different consequences for naïve T cells than foreign p:MHC ligand presentation. For example, self p:MHC ligand presentation results in only a subset of the signals that emanate from the TCR when bound by a high affinity foreign p:MHC ligand, including partial phosphorylation of the TCR-associated CD3-zeta chain.[20] In addition, although signals through the TCR and IL-7 receptor are required for the survival of naïve T cells,[21] these signals do not cause the T cells to proliferate in hosts containing normal numbers of T cells due to competition for IL-7. The Tsc1[22,23] and Foxp1[24] transcription factors, the second of which regulates IL-7Rα levels, enforce the quiescent survival of naïve T cells in this situation. In contrast, naïve T cells proliferate when the number of T cells is very low and IL-7 becomes more available, for example, early in life or after radiation or chemotherapy. This "homeostatic" proliferation also depends on IL-7 and low-affinity TCR recognition of self p:MHC complexes,[21] but differs from proliferation in response to foreign p:MHC ligands by being independent of the CD28 costimulatory receptor.[25] Thus, the same signaling events that cause naïve T cells to survive in interphase in T-cell–sufficient hosts cause these cells to proliferate in T-cell–deficient hosts, but using a program different from that engaged during the T-cell response to high affinity TCR ligands.

Survival and proliferation could both contribute to control of the number of naïve T cells in normal hosts. In adults, new naïve T cells are exported from the thymus into the secondary lymphoid organs that are already full of other T cells. Naïve T cells survive in interphase under these conditions. However, in neonates[26] and perhaps the very aged, new naïve T cells enter relatively lymphopenic secondary lymphoid organs and undergo homeostatic proliferation to fill the space. Notably, this proliferation causes the T cells to lose many of the markers that define the naïve phenotype and express surface molecules that are characteristic of memory cells.[21] Thus, although cells with the naïve phenotype dominate the preimmune repertoire, it can contain some cells with a memory cell phenotype.

Abundance

An adult mouse has about 10^8 αβ TCR+ T cells in the secondary lymphoid organs and another 5×10^6 in the blood.[1] The naïve T-cell population is split about 60:40 in favor of CD4+ T cells over CD8+ T cells. About 70% of the cells in both subsets are naïve phenotype cells, at least in young mice housed under specific pathogen-free conditions. Thus, an adult mouse has about 7×10^7 naïve phenotype T cells in its body, which extrapolates to about 3×10^{11} naïve phenotype T cells in an adult human. Because the number of potential TCR amino acid sequences that could be produced by VDJ recombination ($> 10^{15}$)[27] is greater than the number of naïve cells in the body, it is possible that each naïve T cell has a different TCR. Thus, it is possible that each of the 7×10^7 naïve T cells in a mouse has a TCR capable of binding to one of 7×10^7 different foreign p:MHC ligands. This would mean that the frequency of naïve cells expressing TCRs specific for a single p:MHC ligand could be as low as $1/7 \times 10^7$ naïve T cells.

The actual number of naïve T cells specific for single foreign p:MHC-specific ligands has been measured by flow cytometry following labeling with fluorochrome-labeled pMHC tetramers and enrichment with anti-fluorochrome antibody-coated magnetic beads. C57BL/6 mice contain about 200 naïve CD4+ T cells specific for an immunogenic peptide called 2W bound to I-A^b but only about 20 cells specific for peptide 427–441 from the FliC protein of *Salmonella typhimurium* bound to I-A^b.[28] Thus, the frequencies of cells capable of binding to these foreign p:MHCII ligands ranges from about 1:200,000 to 1:2,000,000 of the naïve phenotype CD4+ T cells in mice that were never exposed to these peptides. Similar analyses have been done for foreign p:MHCI-specific CD8+ murine T-cell populations.[29–31] The number of naïve CD8+ T cells in C57BL/6 mice ranged from 15 lymphocytic choriomeningitis virus (LCMV) $L_{338–346}$:D^b-specific cells to 1,100 vaccinia virus B8R:K^b-specific cells per mouse.[31]

An important conclusion from these studies is that naïve populations specific for different foreign p:MHC ligands vary in size in a predictable fashion. There is evidence that size differences between foreign pMHC-specific populations in the preimmune repertoire are caused by negative selection.[32] In other words, naïve foreign pMHC-specific populations can be small because their TCRs by chance bind with high affinity to self p:MHC complexes. Another possibility is that peptides that are recognized by larger naïve populations have structural features that are conducive to recognition by a more diverse set of TCRs (eg, amino acids with prominent side chains).[32,33]

Another important conclusion from these experiments is that the size of naïve p:MHC-specific populations can predict the magnitude of the effector cell response after certain forms of antigen administration. For example, the presence of about 200 2W:I-A^b- and 20 FliC:I-A^b-specific naïve CD4+ T cells correlates with the 100,000 2W:I-A^b- and 15,000 FliC:I-A^b-specific effector T cells induced by injection of the relevant peptides.[28] Similarly, the size of naïve LCMV p:MHCI-specific T-cell populations plays a role the magnitude of the primary CD8+ T-cell response to the virus. LCMV infection of B6 mice activates CD8+ T cells specific for at least 28 different p:MHCI.[31] However, about one-third of the total response is directed against three p:MHCI complexes. The feature of these dominant p:MHCI ligands that correlates best with their potent immunogenicity is the large size of their naïve populations.[31] Therefore, although antigen abundance, efficiency of peptide generation by antigen processing, and MHC binding affinity are important factors in immunodominance,[34] so is naïve T-cell population size.

GENERAL ASPECTS OF EFFECTOR T-CELL FORMATION

Unlike the presentation of low-affinity self p:MHC ligands that maintains the survival of naïve T cells in interphase under nonlymphopenic conditions, the presentation of high-affinity foreign p:MHC ligands induces the specific naïve T cells to produce lymphokines, proliferate, and differentiate into effector T cells that aid in elimination of the antigen from the body. These more dramatic biological effects occur because the responding T cells receive much stronger or more durable signals through the TCR upon recognition of high-affinity foreign p:MHC ligands than they do when recognizing low-affinity self p:MHC ligands.[35] In addition, foreign antigens naturally enter the body during infection or tissue damage, which triggers dendritic cells and other innate immune cells to stabilize foreign p:MHC ligands and induce costimulatory receptors and cytokines.[36,37] The nature of the signals from the TCR, costimulatory receptors, and cytokine receptors then influences the type of effector cells that naïve T cells differentiate into. These three signals and how they vary depending on the nature of the antigen will be described.

Dendritic Cells as Initiating Antigen-Presenting Cells

Arguably, the most important of the three signals is transduced by the TCR pursuant to bind to a foreign p:MHC ligand on an APC. It is clear from ablation experiments that dendritic cells are the only APCs capable of initiating the TCR signal in CD8+ and CD4+ T cells in the spleen.[38] Dendritic cells are also important for initiating APCs for CD4+ T cells in lymph nodes, although other MHCII+ cells can do this job.[38] It has also become clear that many dendritic cell subsets exist.[38,39] A brief synopsis is presented here to give the reader a sense of which dendritic cell types function as APCs for different antigens. Refer to Chapter 16 on dendritic cells for more detailed information on their biology. Dendritic cells are defined in the mouse as cells that express the CD11c integrin, have large amounts of MHCI and MHCII molecules, and reside in or have the capacity to migrate to the T-cell zones of secondary lymphoid organs.[40] The spleen and lymph nodes contain two types of dendritic cells that develop from monocyte-dendritic cell precursors in these organs. One type expresses the myeloid marker CD11b and is often referred to as the myeloid dendritic cell. These dendritic cells are found mainly in the red pulp or marginal zones of the spleen and outer T-cell–rich regions of the lymph nodes. A second type depends on the Batf3 transcription factor, expresses CD8α, and is referred to as the CD8α+ dendritic cell.[41] These dendritic cells are located primarily in the PALSs of the spleen and the T-cell–rich regions of the lymph nodes, and are the major IL-12–producing cells in these locations. Myeloid and CD8α+ dendritic cells turnover rapidly with the latter population having only a 3-day half-life.

Another type of dendritic cell is called the plasmacytoid dendritic cell because of its morphology.[42] These cells develop in the bone marrow and then seed the spleen and lymph nodes from the blood. Plasmacytoid dendritic cells in mice express low amounts of CD11c and the B220 and Gr-1 molecules normally expressed by B cells and granulocytes, and are the most potent producers of type 1 interferons (IFNs)[43] when stimulated through pattern recognition receptors (PRRs).[44] These cells therefore play a key role in inducing an antiviral state in many cell types.

The lymph nodes contain several additional migratory CD11c+ dendritic populations that move to this location

from tissues through afferent lymphatic vessels.[39] All lymph nodes contain CD11b+ dendritic cells that also express F4/80 and SIRPα, distinguishing them from myeloid dendritic cells and other CD103+ dendritic cells that often express an intracellular protein called langerin. In the case of the skin, these two types of dendritic cells migrate to lymph nodes from the dermis and are called dermal dendritic cells and dermal langerin-positive dendritic cells. The skin-draining lymph nodes also contain epidermal Langerhans cells, which express langerin and high levels of CD11b and EpCAM. Epidermal Langerhans cells are generated from a local radio-resistant precursor in the skin and are more long-lived than myeloid and CD8α+ dendritic cells.

The dendritic cell type that is most important for the presentation of p:MHC ligands depends on the nature of the antigen. Resident CD8α+ dendritic cells and CD103+ dendritic cell migrants are critical for p:MHCI ligand production from exogenous antigens because these are the only cells in the body that are capable of a process called cross presentation.[41,45] These dendritic cells express receptors such as CD36 that mediate uptake of apoptotic cells. After taking up apoptotic or other extracellular material, these dendritic cells have the unique capacity to move proteins from the phagosome directly into the cytoplasm. Once in the cytosol, the translocated proteins can be cleaved by the proteosome into peptides, which are then pumped by the transporter associated with antigen processing into the endoplasmic reticulum where binding to MHCI occurs. Other cells of the body cannot translocate ingested proteins into the cytosol and thus are only capable of producing p:MHCI complexes from proteins that are translated in their cytosols (eg, their own proteins or proteins from cytosolic microbes that infect them). Thus, the cross presentation pathway is important for initiating the CD8+ T-cell response to viruses that do not infect dendritic cells but kill their host cells. In contrast, any dendritic cell including plasmacytoid dendritic cells can likely serve as an initiating APC for CD8+ T cells specific for MHCI-binding peptides derived from proteins from viruses that directly infect it.

Early activation of CD4+ T cells specific for p:MHCII ligands derived from soluble antigens can occur in two waves in lymph nodes.[46] Soluble antigens (eg, toxins secreted by bacteria in a subcutaneous infection site) rapidly flow through lymphatic vessels to the draining lymph nodes and into the conduit network. Resident dendritic cells associate with the conduits, then take up the antigen, perhaps from small gaps between the fibroblastic reticular cells that encircle these tubes.[47] These dendritic cells process the antigen, produce p:MHCII complexes, and display them for recognition by naïve CD4+ T cells. This process occurs within several hours of antigen deposition in the skin and results in CD69 induction and proliferation in the T cells.

The initial wave of p:MHCII presentation is followed by a second wave mediated by dermal dendritic cells that take up the antigen at the site of deposition and then migrate to the draining lymph node.[46] These dendritic cells arrive in the T-cell areas 12 to 24 hours after antigen enters the tissue. p:MHCII presentation by these dendritic cells prolongs induction of the IL-2 receptor and is required for T-cell acquisition of the capacity to cause a later delayed-type hypersensitivity reaction.

Other types of antigens are accessed and processed by different dendritic cells. Given their location in the spleen, myeloid dendritic cells probably play a key role as initiating APCs for CD4+ T cells in the case of antigens that are present in the blood.[48] Dendritic cells that migrate from the relevant tissue (eg, submucosal dendritic cells during vaginal infection are likely the only cells capable of producing p:MHCII ligands from microbes that are too large to enter the conduits.[43] For unknown reasons, dermal Langerin-positive dendritic cells are the most important APCs for induction of contact hypersensitivity-causing CD8+ T cells by protein-modifying chemicals applied to the skin surface.[49] Surprisingly, epidermal Langerhans cells are not required for contact hypersensitivity, although the sensitizing chemicals are applied to the skin surface. Rather, p:MHCII presentation by Langerhans cells inhibits the induction of delayed-type hypersensitivity by suppressing the priming of CD4+ Th1 cells and promoting the priming of Th17 cells.[50]

T-Cell Antigen Receptor Signaling

Once dendritic cells displaying foreign p:MHC ligands appear in the T-cell area of a secondary lymphoid organ, they can be recognized by naïve T cells expressing complementary TCRs. In vitro experiments have shown that high-affinity TCR ligation by p:MHC ligands causes the TCR to concentrate in a stable central supramolecular activating cluster (cSMAC) structure at the point of contact between the T cell and the APC.[51] cSMAC formation is often preceded by the formation of TCR microclusters at the periphery of the T cell-APC contact zone, which are capable of the transducing signals.[52] TCR clustering then activates protein tyrosine kinases such as lck, which stimulate signaling cascades that trigger protein kinase c theta, elevate intracellular calcium, convert ras into its active form, and activate the extracellular signal-regulated kinases (ERK1 and ERK2) and stress-activated protein kinases (jun kinase and p38 mitogen-activated protein kinase).[53] These pathways culminate in the nuclear translocation and binding of transcription factors such as NFAT and NF-κB to deoxyribonucleic acid sequences that regulate lymphokine gene expression.[54]

Very little is known about early TCR signaling events in naïve T cells in vivo because the assays used to measure most of these events rely on cell lines and in vitro culture methods. Interestingly, in vivo imaging of naïve T cells showed rapid, p:MHC-dependent TCR internalization that was not contingent on prolonged contacts between T cells and APCs or cSMACs.[55] These transient interactions must be sufficient for TCR signaling, however, because intracellular staining with antibodies that recognize the active forms of the c-jun transcription factor and the p38 mitogen–activated protein kinase showed that both of these molecules are phosphorylated in p:MHC-specific naïve T cells in the spleen within minutes of intravenous injection of the relevant peptide.[56]

This rapid response is likely explained by the fact that the majority of naïve T cells are constantly contacting dendritic cells in the T-cell areas.[56]

Proliferation and Costimulation

Initial TCR binding to p:MHC ligands on dendritic cells causes naïve T cells to begin proliferating in vivo about 2 days later.[57] In vitro experiments indicate that this cell division is driven by production of IL-2[58] and induction of the IL-2 receptor alpha chain (CD25).[59] Surprisingly, however, p:MHC-driven proliferation of naïve T cells is minimally dependent on IL-2 in vivo.[60,61] Therefore, other signals or growth factors must be capable of driving T-cell proliferation in vivo, although IL-2 may contribute. The role of IL-2 as a T-cell growth factor may be difficult to reveal because IL-2 is also required to maintain regulatory T cells[62] and can promote death of activated T cells.[60] Thus, a reduction in IL-2–dependent effector T-cell proliferation could be masked by a removal of regulatory T-cell–mediated suppression and activation-induced cell death. In addition, although IL-2 is not essential for initial p:MHCI ligand-driven T-cell proliferation, it does appear to be essential for memory cell differentiation.[63]

The initial proliferation of naïve T cells is followed by an exponential increase in the number of p:MHC-specific T cells over the next several days.[64,65] Depending on the stimulus, the number of p:MHC-specific T cells reaches its highest level in the relevant secondary lymphoid organs, 5 to 7 days after antigen enters the body. As mentioned previously, naïve mice contain about 200 CD8+ T cells specific for a given p:MHC I complex. Because p:MHCI-specific CD8+ T cells can increase to 10^7 cells at the peak of the primary response,[64,65] it follows that CD8+ T cells can expand 500,000-fold in vivo. Although naïve CD4+ T cells are also capable of dramatic clonal expansion when stimulated appropriately, their burst size appears to be less than CD8-positive T cells.[64] For both CD4+ and CD8+ T cells, the amount of cell division is inversely proportional to the number of naïve precursors,[14,66,67] indicating that in vivo proliferation is limited by competition between p:MHC-specific T cells.

In vivo T-cell proliferation is regulated by signals from the costimulatory CD28 molecule, which is triggered by binding to CD80 and CD86 on APCs.[68] The proliferation of antigen-stimulated CD4+ or CD8+ T cells is greatly reduced in mice in which CD28 cannot interact with its ligands. CD40 ligand (CD154) deficiency also affects T-cell expansion,[69] which may be related to the fact that CD40 signaling in APC induces CD80 and CD86.[70] Although costimulatory signals enhance TCR-driven IL-2 production, the in vivo significance of this effect for T-cell proliferation is unclear, as described above. Although it has been proposed that CD28 acts by promoting TCR aggregation in the cSMAC,[71] enhancing lymphokine messenger ribonucleic acid production[72] and stability,[73] and/or promoting T-cell survival by augmenting Bcl-X_L production,[74] the bulk of recent evidence indicates that it acts by NF-κB signaling.[75] Members of the TNF receptor family, such as OX40, CD27, and 4-1BB are induced in T cells by CD28 signaling several days into the primary response.[76,77] These molecules bind ligands of the TNF family on the surface of APC and transduce signals that sustain the proliferation or survival of p:MHC-stimulated T cells.

Enhancement of costimulatory signals may underlie the observation that in vivo T-cell proliferation is also influenced by inflammation at the time of initial p:MHC presentation. This effect is observed in the case of soluble antigens, where the magnitude of T-cell proliferation is several-fold greater if antigen is administered with a microbial substance[78,79] containing a pathogen-associated molecular pattern[43] such as lipopolysaccharide, which is recognized by a PRR such as toll-like receptor 4.[80] PRR signaling stimulates tissue macrophages to produce tumor necrosis factor–α,[81] which in turn stimulates dendritic cells to migrate from nonlymphoid tissues into the T-cell areas and express higher levels of CD80 and CD86.[82] In addition, these signals result in a maturation process that changes the antigen processing and presentation potential of all dendritic cell types.[83] When inflammation is not present, dendritic cells efficiently engulf extracellular fluid and produce p:MHC complexes from the ingested proteins. However, these p:MHC molecules turn over rapidly on the dendritic cell surface and are presented in the context of low amounts of CD80 and CD86. These factors are thought to be part of the explanation for why p:MHCII presentation by dendritic cells in uninflamed secondary lymphoid organs leads to poor T-cell priming and can result in tolerance.[84] In contrast, inflammatory signals cause dendritic cells to reduce antigen uptake and processing, stabilize p:MHCII molecules, and induce expression of CD80 and CD86. Therefore, inflammatory signals enhance proliferation by driving more dendritic cells into the T-cell areas to present p:MHC ligands and by increasing the costimulatory capacity of these dendritic cells.

PRR signaling in dendritic cells or macrophages can also trigger the production of proinflammatory cytokines, which enhance effector cell proliferation. For example, IL-1 from several sources enhances the proliferation of CD4+ T cells through an early indirect effect on APCs,[85] and a later more potent direct effect on the T cells themselves.[86] PRR signaling causes CD8α+ dendritic cells to produce IL-12[41] and plasmacytoid dendritic cells to produce type 1 IFNs,[42] both of which enhance the proliferation of CD8+ effector T cells.[87]

EFFECTOR T-CELL DIFFERENTIATION

The proliferation of p:MHC-specific effector T cells during the primary response is linked with the acquisition of functions that affect the elimination of antigen such as microbicidal cytokine production and cytolysis. The functional properties that effector cells acquire are influenced by the presence of inflammatory cytokines and costimulatory ligands on APCs present at the time of initial p:MHC presentation in secondary lymphoid organs.

CD4+ T Cells

Many variations on this theme exist in the case of CD4+ T cells. Effector cells that are generated in the presence of IL-12, IL-4, IL-6 and TGF-β, or IL-6 and IL-21 become

IFN-γ–producing Th1 cells, IL-4–producing Th2 cells, IL-17–producing Th17 cells, or IL-21–producing follicular helper cells (Tfh), respectively. These effector T cells play specialized roles in the elimination of intracellular microbes, worms, and extracellular microbes. Polarization of Th cells is covered in detail elsewhere in this volume.

Signaling through the IL-2 receptor plays an essential and early role in the formation of Th1, Th2, and Th17 effector cells. IL-2 receptor alpha chain (CD25) expression is induced in naïve T cells by TCR signaling, which then pairs with IL-2/IL-15 receptor β (CD122) and IL-2 receptor γ (CD132) chains, to produce the high-affinity IL-2 receptor.[88] Under Th1 priming conditions, the IL-2–bound receptor recruits Jak1 and Jak3 that phosphorylate the STAT5 transcription factor, which enters the nucleus and enhances expression of the IL-12 receptor β2 chain and the T-bet and Blimp-1 transcription factors.[89] IL-12 receptor signaling through STAT4 then enhances T-bet expression and enforces the Th1 fate,[90] while Blimp-1 suppresses another transcription factor Bcl6 that is needed for other fates.[91] Under Th2 priming conditions, IL-2 receptor signaling through STAT5 regulates the Th2 cytokine gene cluster and expression of the IL-4 receptor α-chain.[89] In contrast, IL-2 receptor signaling inhibits Th17 differentiation by suppressing components of the IL-6 receptor.[89]

A variation on this theme was recently described for CD4+ T cells during acute systemic *Listeria monocytogenes* or LCMV infections.[92–94] In this case, CD25 is induced by TCR signaling in microbe p:MHCII-specific CD4+ T cells 1 day into the infection. However, by day 3, about half of the responding T cells lose CD25 expression and begin to express CXCR5, while half retain CD25 and do not express CXCR5.[92,94] The mechanism underlying this bifurcation is unknown, although asymmetric division of CD25+ mother cells into CD25+ and CD25– daughter cells is a possibility.[95] Another possibility is that very strong TCR signaling favors CD25 expression.[96] In any case, the CD25+ cells go on to form T-bet^{high} Th1 effector cells in the T cell areas, red pulp, and probably nonlymphoid organs where they could produce IFN-γ in response to p:MHCII presentation by macrophages. It is likely that early CD25+ effector cells become Th2 cells during infections that promote IL-4 production by innate immune cells.[97]

The CD25– CXCR5+ cells formed early during acute infection yield two T-bet^{low} effector cell populations,[92,93] both expressing the B-cell–follicle guiding CXCR5 receptor but only one expressing the Tfh marker PD-1.[98] Both of these CXCR5+ effector cell populations depend on the Bcl6 transcription factor for their formation.[92] The CXCR5+ PD-1– and CXCR5+ PD-1+ effector cell populations probably differentiate depending on quantitative differences in signals from the TCR and the inducible costimulator (ICOS) receptor.[68,94,99,100] Following stimulation by p:MHCII ligands on dendritic cells, the naïve T cells that quickly lose CD25 and express Bcl6 migrate toward the follicles under the guidance of CXCR5 to interact with, and provide helper signals to, antigen-specific B cells that display the relevant p:MHCII complexes and ICOS ligand.[101–103] In return, the T cells receive signals from the TCR and ICOS. If these signals are relatively weak, then Bcl6 expression may not be maintained and the cells acquire a CCR7+ CXCR5^{intermediate} P-selectin ligand (PSGL-1)+ PD-1– phenotype and live in the outer T-cell area. As discussed in more detail below, some of these effector cells yield multipotent central memory cells.

In contrast, if early CD25– CXCR5+ effector cells receive strong TCR and ICOS signals when interacting with B cells, perhaps because of expression of TCRs with very high affinity for the inducing p:MHCII ligand,[91,104] then they become CCR7^{low} CXCR5^{high} PSGL-1– PD-1+ Tfh cells. The cytokines IL-6 and IL-21 are also required for this process,[105,106] with IL-21 probably coming from the developing Tfh cells themselves. The CCR7^{low} CXCR5^{high} phenotype causes Tfh cells to localize in germinal centers, which are rich sources of CXCR5 but not CCR7 ligands.[16] Here, Tfh cells produce IL-21 and CD40 ligand that promote germinal center B-cell differentiation, antibody isotype switching, and plasma cell formation.[98]

CD8+ T Cells

As in the case of CD4+ T cells, IL-2 receptor signaling is not essential for the initial proliferation of p:MHCI-stimulated naïve CD8+ T cells.[63] However, IL-2 receptor signaling plays a key role in effector cell differentiation and memory cell formation. Naïve CD8+ T cells that are stimulated by p:MHCI ligands on dendritic cells in secondary lymphoid organs during acute LCMV infection rapidly express CD25 to produce high-affinity IL-2 receptors.[96] However, as in the case of CD4+ T cells, a subset of the CD8+ T cells sustains CD25 expression longer than the other cells in the population. The CD25^{low} cells preferentially upregulate the IL-7 receptor and the central memory T-cell marker CD62L and produce long-lived memory cells. In contrast, the CD25^{high} cells proliferate more rapidly and become apoptosis-prone terminally differentiated effector cells, although it is likely that some of these cells produce effector memory cells. Thus, for both CD4+ and CD8+ T cells, a lack of IL-2 receptor signaling early in the primary response produces effector cell precursors of central memory cells, whereas IL-2 receptor signaling promotes highly differentiated effector cells and like effector memory cells.

Again like CD4+ T cells, costimulatory signals and cytokines produced by innate immune cells are needed for optimal differentiation of CD8+ effector cells. Naïve CD8+ T cells that are stimulated by p:MHCI ligands also require CD28 signals and either IL-12 or type I IFN (IFNα/β) for maximal proliferation and development of cytolytic activity.[87] The effects of IL-12 and type 1 IFN are mediated directly on the CD8+ T cells. When either IL-12 or type 1 IFN are delivered with antigen, the responding CD8+ T cells form a memory cell population, while immunization with antigen alone induces some clonal expansion, but very few cells survive long-term and those that do are anergic. Thus, IL-12 and type 1 IFN provide a "third signal" that is necessary, along with TCR and CD28 signals, for development of optimal effector functions and formation of a responsive memory population. Dendritic cells activated by PRRs, or CD40 signals pursuant to interaction with CD40 ligand (CD154)+ CD4+ T cells, produce IL-12 and type I IFNs, and are thus equipped to provide all three signals needed by a naïve CD8+ T cell to become a cytotoxic effector cell.

IL-12 and type I IFN are largely redundant in their capacity to support a productive CD8+ effector T-cell response, and which cytokine is critical depends on the infection. Studies using CD8+ T cells lacking receptors for one or both of the cytokines have shown that type I IFN is essential for response to LCMV,[107] while IL-12 signaling plays the major role in responses to vaccinia virus and *Listeria monocytogenes*.[108] In a minor histocompatibility antigen transplant model, rapid graft rejection depends on CD4+ T cells stimulating dendritic cells in a CD40-dependent manner to produce IL-12 needed for generation of cytotoxic CD8+ effector T cells.[109] Thus, it appears that one way in which CD4+ T cells can provide help for CD8+ T-cell responses is by stimulating dendritic cells to produce third signal cytokines.

CD8+ effector T cells differ from their naïve precursors regarding surface markers, function, and trafficking properties. CD8+ effector T cells that are generated in secondary lymphoid organs during microbial infections express slightly lower levels of CD8 and more surface O-glycans than naïve cells,[110] and in the human some CD8+ effector T cells lose CD27 and CD28 but retain CD45RA.[111] Unlike naïve cells, these cells express perforin and granzymes,[110] which are required for efficient cytolytic function. Expression of perforin and granzymes contributes to the defining feature of cytotoxic T cells,[110] that is, the ability to directly kill target cells that display the appropriate p:MHC I complexes. Interestingly, although large numbers of antigen-specific CD8+ T cells accumulate in mice injected with heat-killed *Listeria monocytogenes* bacteria, these T cells do not acquire cytolytic function.[112] This situation may come about because heat-killed *Listeria monocytogenes* bacteria are poor inducers of IL-12 by innate immune cells compared to live organisms.

EFFECTOR T-CELL FUNCTION IN NONLYMPHOID ORGANS

Some CD4+ effector T cells migrate into nonlymphoid tissues at the peak of the primary response.[113] Separate homing pathways to the intestines and skin have been characterized in detail,[114] although other pathways probably exist. Injection of antigen and cholera toxin into the skin induces two populations of CD4+ effector T cells in the draining lymph nodes that do or do not express the fucosylated form of P-selectin glycoprotein-1 (fPSGL-1), which binds to CD62P on inflamed blood vessels.[115] The fPSGL-1− cells are potent helpers of antibody production by B cells and are likely one of the CXCR5+ effector cell populations described above. In contrast, the fPSGL-1+ cells are poor helpers of antibody production by B cells but are capable of IFN-γ production and are likely similar to the T-bet^{high} Th1 effector cells induced during acute infections. After transfer into naïve recipients, these cells migrate to the skin as evidenced by a capacity to cause delayed-type hypersensitivity reactions. Injection of antigen into the skin with complete Freund's adjuvant also induces Th1 effector cells in draining lymph nodes, which migrate to the skin injection site in a CD62E- and CD62P-dependent fashion.[116] Interestingly, in this case and another involving lung migration,[117] the CD4+ T cells in the lymph nodes that migrate to nonlymphoid tissues are those that undergo the most cell divisions in the secondary lymphoid organs. Thus, only the most-divided subset of Th1 effector cells in lymph nodes acquire the appropriate trafficking receptors and have the capacity to migrate to nonlymphoid organs.

The induction of skin-homing capacity is controlled by several factors produced by dendritic cells that migrate from the skin and present p:MHCII ligands to naïve T cells in the draining lymph nodes. One of these factors is IL-12, which induces the expression of enzymes that fucosylate PSGL-1 and convert it into the CD62P-binding form.[118] Dendritic cells from the skin also produce 1,25 dihydroxy-vitamin D3, which induces the putative skin-homing chemokine receptor CCR10 on T cells.[119] It should be noted, however, that regulation of CCR4, which is probably the most important skin-homing chemokine receptor on T cells,[120] is not understood in this context.

The generation of gut-homing CD4+ effector T cells is also controlled by factors produced by dendritic cells at the time of T-cell priming. Presentation of p:MHCII ligands to CD4+ T cells in mucosal lymphoid organs induces effector cells that express large amounts of α4β7 integrin, which facilitates T-cell migration into tissues containing mucosal addressin cell adhesion molecule-1+ blood vessels such as the intestines.[15] CD103+ dendritic cells in the mucosal lymphoid organs produce all-trans retinoic acid, which enhances the expression of α4β7 integrin and CCR9 on CD4+ T cells.[121]

Mycobacterium tuberculosis (TB) infection by inhalation provides another example of CD4+ effector T-cell migration to nonlymphoid tissue.[122] Inhaled TB organisms are taken up in the lungs by CD11b+ dendritic cells, which carry the bacteria to the mediastinal lymph nodes and present TB p:MHCII ligands to naïve CD4+ T cells expressing relevant TCRs. This presentation occurs in an IL-12–rich context, and Th1 effector cells are produced, many of which traffic back to the lungs. The molecules that control this migration are unknown although CCL27, MIP-1α, IP-10, CCR4, CCR5, and CXCR3 may be involved. Once in the lungs, effector T cells produce IFN-γ in response to TB p:MHCII presentation by infected dendritic cells and macrophages, which triggers the microbicidal functions of these cells. During this process, the lung effector T cells start out as PD-1^{high} CD69^{high} cells that convert to KLRG1^{high} CD69^{low} short-lived, terminally differentiated cells as they become activated by local TB p:MHCII presentation. Because TB organisms are not completely eliminated by this process, it goes on for protracted periods of time as new effector cells migrate to the lungs from the draining lymph nodes, eventually damaging the lung tissue. Thus, TB p:MHCII-specific effector T cells and their effects on infected phagocytes knock the TB organisms down but not out, and in the process protect the host in the relative short-term and damage it in the long-term.

CD8+ effector T cells also migrate out of the T-cell areas and into many nonlymphoid tissues, particularly inflamed sites of antigen deposition (eg, the lungs during influenza infection[123,124] and the gut during vesicular stomatitis virus infection[125]). Strong or prolonged IL-2 receptor signaling is an important factor in the generation of highly differentiated nonlymphoid tissue-homing effector CD8+ T cells.[96] The migratory capacities of effector CD8-positive T cells correlate with loss of receptors involved in lymph node

migration (CCR7 and CD62L) and acquisition of receptors such as α4β7 integrin,[126] following instructions from dendritic cells as described above for CD4-positive T cells. The migration of CD8+ effector T cells with cytotoxic potential into nonlymphoid organs is an effective way of eliminating cells that display p:MHC I complexes from all parts of the body.

Several CD8+ effector T-cell–specific homing phenomenon are worth mentioning. One is that CD8+ T-cell recruitment to nonlymphoid tissue depends on prior entry of CD4+ T cells in certain situations. Recognition of p:MHCI complexes on dendritic cells in the secondary lymphoid organs induces the expression of CXCR3 on effector CD8+ T cells, which facilitates entry into nonlymphoid tissues through blood vessels displaying CXCL9 and CXCL10.[127] During certain viral infections, CD4+ effector T cells first enter the relevant nonlymphoid tissue and are stimulated by their p:MHCII ligands to produce IFN-γ, causing local epithelial cells to secrete CXCL9 and CXCL10, which then recruit the CD8+ effector T cells.[128]

Another special homing property of some CD8+ effector T cells relates to the capacity to enter a nonlymphoid tissue and never leave.[129] Viral infections in the skin, brain, and intestinal mucosa result in expansion of viral p:MHCI-specific CD8+ effector T cells in the draining lymph nodes and then migration of some effector cells to the site of infection. Some of these cells can be found at this site long after the infection is cleared. Parabiosis experiments indicate that these T cells are not constantly leaving and entering the site from the blood as expected, but rather remain in the original site without leaving. These resident CD8+ T cells express CD103, which may tether them in the site by binding to E-cadherin on local epithelial cells. Tissue-resident CD8+ effector T cells also express CD69, a marker of acute activation, even under conditions where local relevant p:MHCI complexes cannot be detected. Thus, CD69 expression may be driven in these cells by cytokine receptor rather than TCR signaling. It should be noted that not all CD8+ effector T cells in nonlymphoid tissues are noncirculating residents as evidenced by the presence of p:MHCI-experienced CD8+ T cells in efferent lymphatic vessels, which carry cells from tissues to the blood.[130] The factors that determine whether naïve CD8+ T cells will become nonrecirculating CD103+ tissue-resident effector cells or effectors cells that recirculate through nonlymphoid tissues are not known.

GENERATION OF MEMORY T CELLS FROM EFFECTOR CELLS

Another key function of effector T cells is the production of memory cells.[131] The number of antigen-derived p:MHC-specific effector T cells in the body peaks about a week into the primary response, and then falls rapidly over a 2-week contraction period to about 10% of the peak value.[132] This decline must be due to cell death because the total number of cells in all parts of the body declines shortly after the peak.[113] The T cells that survive the contraction phase can persist stably for the life of the host even when the antigen is cleared from the body due to the expression and function of IL-7 and IL-15 receptors.[133] These long-lived cells are known as memory cells, which are capable of rapid secondary responses that can produce protective immunity to a later challenge from a microbe.[134] Memory cells can be distinguished from effector cells in that most memory cells are not blasts, are not in the cell cycle, and many are not directly cytolytic or producing lymphokines.[135]

Memory cells are heterogenous, however, and exist in at least two subsets: effector memory (Tem) cells and central memory (Tcm) cells.[136] Tem cells express homing receptors that facilitate migration to nonlymphoid sites of inflammation[113] and produce microbicidal cytokines such as IFN-γ within several hours of TCR stimulation. In many ways, these cells resemble effector cells (eg, Th1 or Th2 cells), with the exceptions that they are no longer blasts and express IL-7 receptors. Tcm cells do not produce any of the prototypic effector cell lineage cytokines immediately after stimulation through the TCR, although they secrete IL-2 and proliferate extensively and acquire effector lymphokine production later. These cells express CD62L and CCR7, which are involved in migration through lymph nodes and mucosal lymphoid organs and positioning in the T-cell areas of these organs,[16] and IL-7 receptors, which are critical for their survival.[133]

The Tem and Tcm model fits well for CD8+ memory T cells. A subset of human CD8+ memory cells lacks the naïve cell marker CD45RA but expresses CCR7.[111,137] These memory cells also express CD62L and lack perforin and thus would not be expected to be directly cytotoxic. Mice contain a comparable $CD44^{high}$ memory cell population after clearance of acute viral infection.[125] These similar populations in mice and humans fit the description of Tcm cells. In mice, the CD62L+ Tcm cells undergo slow IL-15–dependent, MHCI-independent homeostatic proliferation, which is thought to account for their numerical stability.[138]

Mice and humans also contain CD45RA– CCR7– CD62L– CD8+ memory T cells. These cells express high levels of β1 and β7 integrins, fPSGL-1, and CCR5, which are predicted to facilitate migration into nonlymphoid tissues,[139] and produce IFN-γ rapidly after TCR stimulation.[125,137] These cells therefore fit the description of Tem cells. In mice, CD8+ Tem cells undergo much less IL-15–dependent, MHCI-independent homeostatic proliferation than Tcm cells,[140] and convert into Tcm cells over long periods of time in some[141] but not all[142] situations. Murine CD8+ Tem cells can recirculate through nonlymphoid organs or reside permanently in nonlymphoid organs, as described above.

Humans also contain a CD45RA+ CCR7– CD8+ T-cell subset that contains especially high levels of perforin and direct ex vivo cytotoxic activity.[111,137] These cells are likely effector cells that were recently stimulated by p:MHCI ligands.

Memory CD4+ T-cell populations also contain Tcm and Tem subsets. The microbial p:MHCII-specific CD4+ T cells that survive in secondary lymphoid organs long after clearance of *Listeria monocytogenes* or LCMV infections consist of two subsets.[92,93] One subset has the characteristics of Tem cells including a $T\text{-}bet^{high}$ CCR7– phenotype, expression of nonlymphoid tissue homing receptors, and immediate IFN-γ production after stimulation with the relevant p:MHCII ligand. These cells correspond to human CD45RA– CCR7– CD4+ Tem cells, which express low or

variable levels of CD62L and high levels of fPSGL-1, and/or β1 and β7 integrins and produce IFN-γ or IL-4 rapidly when stimulated with anti-CD3 antibody in vitro.[137] In the mouse, CD4+ Tem cells are also found in liver, lungs, and gut long after intravenous injection of antigen plus adjuvant.[113] Because CD4+ memory T cells are constantly coming out of tissues and into afferent lymphatic vessels,[130,143] it is likely that CD4+ Tem cells are not fixed in nonlymphoid organs but recirculate through these sites.

The other microbial p:MHCII-specific CD4+ T-cell population that survives after clearance of acute infections in mice has the characteristics of Tcm cells. This population has a T-bet^{low} CCR7+ CXCR5+ Ly6C^{-} PD-1− Tfh-like phenotype and produces IL-2 but not IFN-γ immediately after stimulation with the relevant p:MHCII ligand.[92,93] These cells have been found to be potent helpers of antibody production by B cells.[143–145] In humans, this population can give rise to Tfh cells when stimulated in vitro.[146] In mice, these cells also generate Th1 cells and themselves during secondary immune responses and thus have the capacity of Tcm cells to generate diverse effector cells.[92]

Evidence suggests that Tem and Tcm memory cells derive from like effector cells. IFN-γ-producing CD62L− CD4+ Tem cells that survive after clearance of acute LCMV infection are derived from similar IFN-γ–producing CD62L− effector cells present at the peak of infection.[147,148] Similarly, the T-bet^{low} CXCR5+ CCR7+ Tfh-like Tcm cells that survive after clearance of *Listeria monocytogenes* infection are derived from similar T-bet^{low} CXCR5+ CCR7+ effector cells present at the peak of infection.[92]

Even though the various types of memory cells are derived from effector cells, they must be subsets of their effector cell precursor populations because they are 10 times smaller than those populations. In other words, even though Th1 effector memory cells are derived from similar Th1 effector cells, the former cells are 10 times less abundant than the latter cells. Thus, to understand how memory cells emerge at the end of the primary response, it is useful to consider the factors that cause 90% of the effector cells to die. Effector cells produce reactive oxygen species, which can cause cell death by damaging mitochondrial membranes. Bcl-2 family proteins regulate this type of death. Naïve and memory T cells express anti-apoptotic Bcl-2 molecules in their mitochondria, which inhibit the formation of apoptosis-inducing complexes consisting of Bim and Bak. In mice overexpressing Bcl-2 or lacking Bim, a greater fraction of the effector cell population survive contraction and differentiate into memory cells.[149] Thus, it is conceivable that under normal circumstances, the effector cells that are destined to become memory cells produce less reactive oxygen species or protect themselves better than other effector cells in the population.

Another possibility relates to expression of the IL-7 receptor. The survival of naïve T cells depends on IL-7 receptor signaling, which maintains Bcl-2 expression and limits Bim expression.[149] TCR-driven activation causes effector cells to lose the IL-7 receptor, leading to the fatal situation where Bcl-2 is reduced and Bim is increased. It has been reported that a subset of CD8+ effector cells retains IL-7 receptor expression and survives the contraction phase to become memory cells,[150] although some evidence against this idea has accumulated.[151,152] Thus, it is possible that 10% of the effector cells present at the peak of the T-cell response retain the IL-7 receptor or some other survival factor, which allows these cells to become memory cells.

Another possibility is that metabolic rate determines whether an effector cell will survive to become a memory cell. Quiescent naïve and memory T cells produce adenosine-5′-triphosphate by mitochondrial oxidative phosphorylation.[153] In contrast, activation causes effector cells to shift to glycolytic adenosine-5′-triphosphate production by a pathway that depends on mammalian target of rapamycin. Inhibition of mammalian target of rapamycin with rapamycin early during the primary response promotes the formation of CD8+ memory T cells by inhibiting T-bet expression in favor of another transcription factor, eomesodermin.[154–156] This result fits with a model in which most effector cells are killed by products of their own high rate of glycolysis through a T-bet–dependent program, which when blocked allows a return to oxidative phosphorylation and memory cell formation. In this model, memory cells arise from effector cells with the lowest glycolytic rates in the population. Again, increased glycolytic rate and the favoring of effector cell death over memory cell formation could involve IL-2 receptor signaling.

Tumor necrosis factor receptor family proteins also promote CD4+ T memory cell survival by inducing antiapoptotic factors by TRAF-dependent triggering of NFκB.[77] For example, effector T cells that do not express CD27 survive poorly in vivo.[157,158] Other work indicates that OX40 is dispensable for effector cell generation but required for memory cell formation.[159]

Recent work indicates that Id transcription factors also regulate effector-memory cell conversion. Id2 is required for the maximal generation of CD8+ effector T cells and perhaps the formation of Tem cells.[160–162] Conversely, Id3 appears to be critical for CD8+ Tcm cell formation.[162]

CONCLUSION AND MODELS

What follows is an attempt to unify the information presented in this chapter into a theoretical sequence of events that occur after naïve CD4+ or CD8+ T cells encounter the relevant p:MHC ligands during skin or mucosal infections, respectively. Because these processes are not completely understood, certain aspects of what follows are speculative.

Naïve T-cell populations that are specific for single p:MHC epitopes exist at a frequency of about 1:200,000 in the preimmune repertoire.[1] These T cells, like other naïve T cells, spend their life spans (~2 months in mice, ~2 years in humans) in a series of 1-day stops in the T-cell areas of different secondary lymphoid organs with intervening trips through the blood. While in the T-cell area, these naïve T cells receive survival signals through the IL-7 receptor as it binds to IL-7 made by stromal cells and through the TCR as it binds to the relevant selecting self p:MHC ligand on the surface of an APC, probably a dendritic cell.

Consider first the case of the CD4+ T-cell response to a bacterial infection in the dermis of the skin (Fig. 14.1). In this case, local dermal dendritic cells take up the microbe,

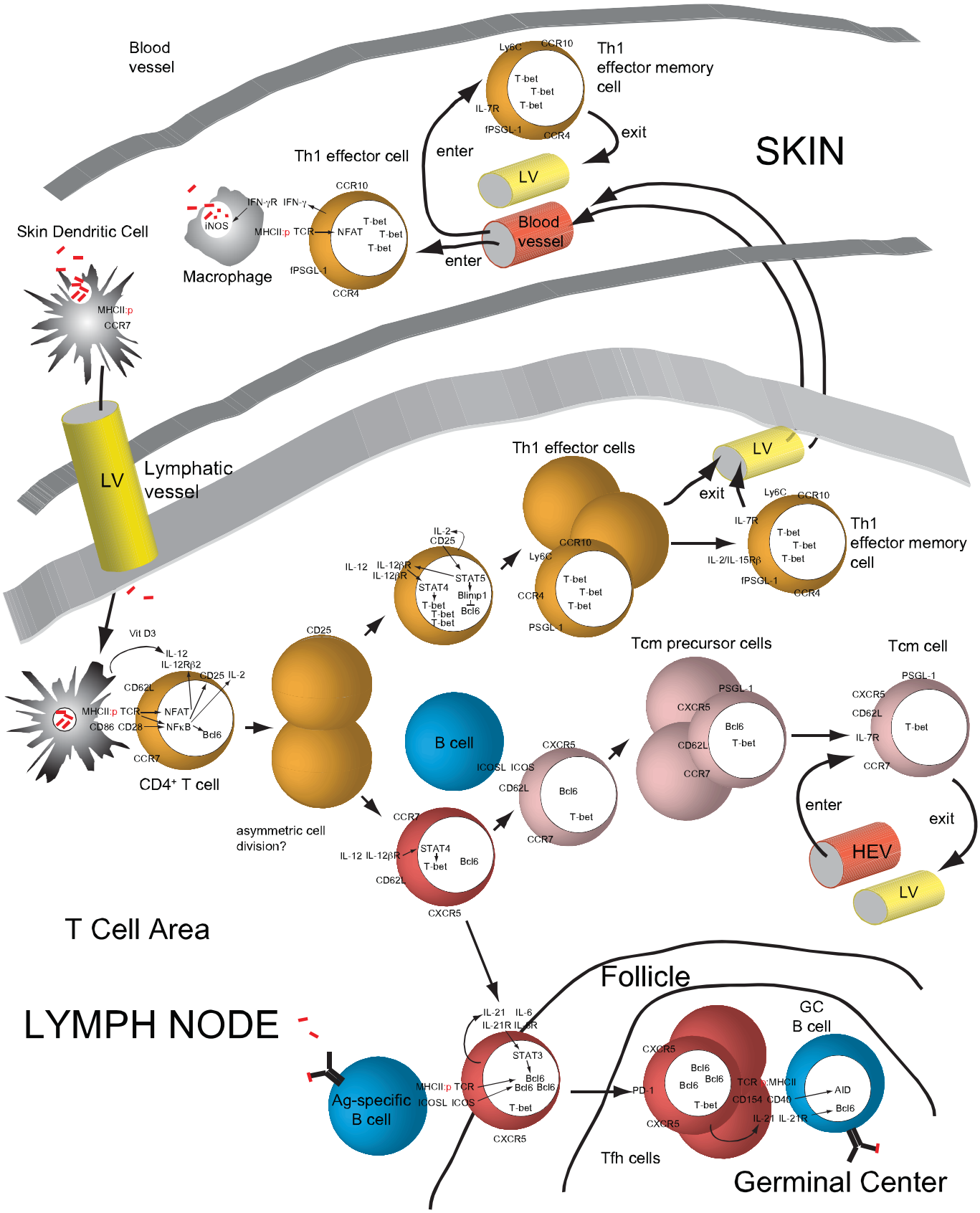


FIG. 14.1. CD4+ T-Cell Response to Bacterial Infection of the Skin. See the text for description. Bacterial antigen is indicated with red rectangles. Surface receptors are shown attached to the cell surface. Transcription factors are shown in the nucleus. Signals are shown with the *smallest arrows*. Sequential cell fates are shown with the *next largest arrows*. Migration routes are shown with the *largest arrows*. LV, lymphatic vessel; R, receptor.

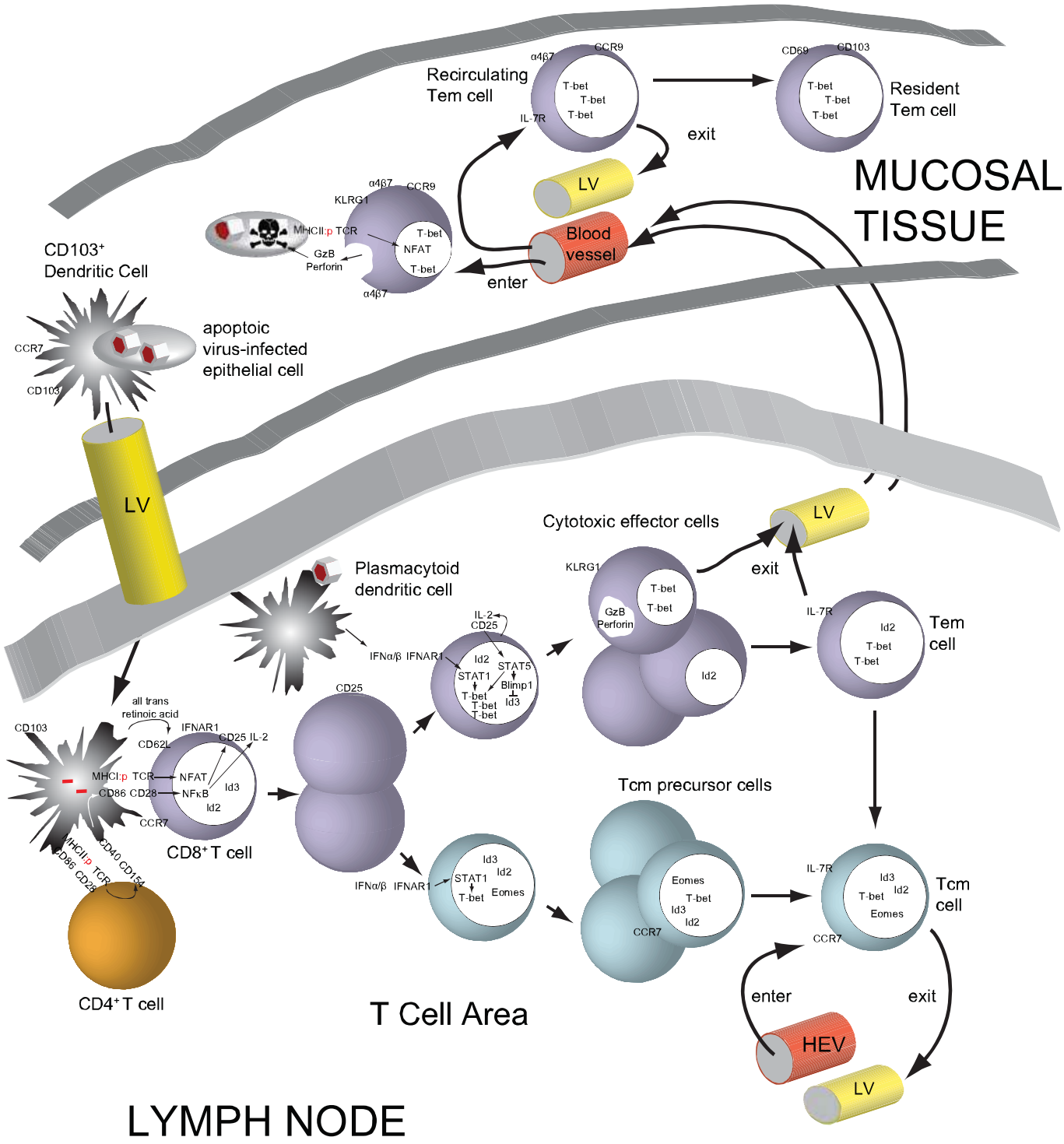


FIG. 14.2. CD8+ T-Cell Response to Viral Infection of a Mucosal Tissue. See the text for description. Virus particles are indicated with hexagons. Surface receptors are shown attached to the cell surface. Transcription factors are shown in the nucleus. Signals are shown with the *smallest arrows*. Sequential cell fates are shown with the *next largest arrows*. A virally infected cell killed by a cytotoxic clust of differentiation 8–positive T cell is indicated with a *skull and cross bones*. Migration routes are shown with the *largest arrows*. LV, lymphatic vessel; R, receptor.

produce microbe p:MHCII complexes,[45] upregulate CD28 ligands,[163] begin producing IL-12[164] and vitamin D3,[119] and migrate through an afferent lymphatic vessel to the draining lymph node. Naïve T cells interact with these dendritic cells[165] and those CD4+ T cells that express bacterial p:MHCII-specific TCRs receive TCR and CD28 signals[56] and induce the translocation of NFAT and NF-κB to the nucleus,[54] which in turn drive expression of CD25, IL-2, Bcl6, and the IL-12 receptor β2 chain, and loss of the IL-7 receptor.[61,89,166] The T cells then divide in response to IL-2 and unknown growth factors,[57] perhaps asymmetrically,[95] to produce CD25+ and CD25− effector cell progeny.[92,94] The CD25+ cells activate STAT5 through IL-2 receptor signaling,[167] which further increases expression of the IL-12 receptor β2 chain,[89] which combines with the IL-12 receptor β1 chain, binds IL-12, and activates STAT4[168] to amplify T-bet expression.[169] IL-2 receptor signaling and STAT5 activation also stimulates Blimp-1 expression,[170] which represses Bcl6,[171] thereby enforcing the Th1 fate and preventing Bcl6-dependent cell fates. The Th1 effector cells also express CCR10, CCR4, and fucosylated PSGL-1 due to activation in the presence of IL-12 and vitamin D3.[114,118] Some of these effector cells then leave the lymph nodes through efferent lymphatic vessels, enter the bloodstream, and migrate into the infection site through skin blood vessels displaying CD62P, CCL17, and CCL27.[116,119,172] After entering this site, the Th1 effector cells interact with infected macrophages displaying bacterial p:MHCII ligands.[173] TCR signaling then causes the T cells to secrete IFN-γ, which triggers production of inducible nitric oxide synthase and nitric oxide as well as killing of intracellular bacteria.[173] Some of the Th1 effector cells in the lymph nodes survive the contraction phase, re-express the IL-7 receptor, and become Th1 effector memory cells,[147] which recirculate through the skin.

The early CD25− progeny do not experience IL-2 receptor signaling and STAT5 activation, do not upregulate the IL-12 receptor β2 chain, and are left with a low amount of T-bet. Blimp-1 is also not turned on, allowing the cells to retain Bcl6 and express CXCR5. The CXCR5+ T cells then migrate toward the follicles.[103] If they interact with an antigen-specific B cell, then they receive TCR and ICOS ligand signals[98] and produce IL-21, which binds the IL-21 receptor and activates STAT3.[174] The combination of TCR, ICOS, and STAT3 signals then amplifies Bcl6 expression, stimulating the cells to express PD-1 and more CXCR5, and to commit to the Tfh lineage. The Tfh cells then migrate into germinal centers, interact with antigen-specific germinal center B cells, induce expression of CD154, which engages CD40 on the B cells and stimulates them to express activation induced cytidine deaminase, and undergo antibody isotype switching and somatic hypermutation.[98] If the early CXCR5+ T cells interact with B cells that are not specific for bacterial antigens, then they receive an ICOS signal that maintains their survival.[92] However, without additional TCR signaling, the T cells do not further upregulate CXCR5, do not lose CCR7 or CD62L, and some of these cell become Tcm cells, eventually losing Bcl6.[92] These Tcm cells recirculate through secondary lymphoid organs like naïve cells.

Now consider the CD8+ T-cell response to viral infection of a mucosal tissue (Fig. 14.2). Local CD103+ dendritic cells with cross-presentation capacity take up apoptotic infected cells,[41] produce viral p:MHCI and p:MHCII complexes, upregulate CD28 ligands, produce all-trans retinoic acid,[121] and migrate through an afferent lymphatic vessel to the draining lymph node. Plasmacytoid dendritic cells are recruited to the lymph node and produce type I IFNs in response to PRR recognition of viral pathogen-associated molecular patterns.[42] Interaction with CD154+ virus p:MHCII-specific CD4+ T cells increases the activation state of the CD103+ dendritic cells through CD40 signaling.[175,176] Naïve virus p:MHCI-specific CD8+ T cells interact with these dendritic cells and produce IL-2 and induce expression of CD25. Unknown T-cell growth factors and perhaps IL-2 then stimulate the CD8+ T cells to divide to produce progeny that express small or large amounts of CD25.[96] The CD25^{high} cells experience IL-2 receptor signaling and STAT5 activation, which stimulates Blimp-1 expression, which cooperates with STAT1 activation from the type I IFN receptor to upregulate T-bet.[177] T-bet and Blimp-1 drive the cells to become terminally differentiated KLRG1+ cytotoxic effector cells loaded with granzyme B and perforin-containing granules.[170,178] Blimp-1 represses another transcription factor Id3, which is required for Tcm cell formation,[162] thereby reinforcing effector cell formation. The effector cells also express α4β7 integrin and CCR9 due to activation in the presence of all-trans retinoic acid,[121] and migrate to the site of infection through mucosal blood vessels displaying mucosal addressin cell adhesion molecule-1 and CCL25.[179] After extravasating into this site, the cytotoxic effector cells interact with infected cells displaying virus p:MHCI ligands. TCR signaling then causes the T cells to expel granzyme B and perforin, which enter the target cell and kill it.[180] Some of the KLRG1+ effector cells in the lymph node survive the contraction phase, perhaps through the action of Id2,[161] and then either become CD103− Tem cells that recirculate through the mucosal tissue or CD103+ Tem cells that enter the tissue and never leave.[129] The recirculating Tem cells may convert to Tcm cells over long periods of time.[141]

The early CD25− progeny do not experience IL-2 receptor signaling and STAT5 activation and do not turn on Blimp-1.[178] Without Blimp-1, the cells retain Id3 expression[162] and are prevented from becoming terminally differentiated Tbet^{high} cytotoxic effector cells. Instead, type I IFN receptor signaling facilitates expression of the Eomes transcription factor,[156] retention of CCR7 expression, and survival as Tcm cells, which recirculate through the secondary lymphoid organs like naïve cells.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

I am grateful to Antonio Pagán, Matthew Mescher, and David Masopust for their helpful suggestions.

REFERENCES

1. Jenkins MK, Chu HH, McLachlan JB, et al. On the composition of the preimmune repertoire of T cells specific for peptide-major histocompatibility complex ligands. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 2010;28:275–294. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20307209
2. Thompson PK, Zuniga-Pflucker JC. On becoming a T cell, a convergence of factors kick it up a Notch along the way. *Semin Immunol*. 2011;23(5):350–359. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21981947
3. Thomas LR, Cobb RM, Oltz EM. Dynamic regulation of antigen receptor gene assembly. *Adv Exp Med Biol*. 2009;650:103–115. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19731805
4. Starr TK, Jameson SC, Hogquist KA. Positive and negative selection of T cells. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 2003;21:139–176. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12414722
5. Surh CD, Sprent J. T-cell apoptosis detected in situ during positive and negative selection in the thymus. *Nature*. 1994;372:100–103. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7969401
6. Marrack P, Scott-Browne JP, Dai S, et al. Evolutionarily conserved amino acids that control TCR-MHC interaction. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 2008;26:171–203. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18304006
7. Huseby ES, White J, Crawford F, et al. How the T cell repertoire becomes peptide and MHC specific. *Cell*. 2005;122:247–260. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16051149
8. Wang L, Bosselut R. CD4-CD8 lineage differentiation: Thpoking into the nucleus. *J Immunol*. 2009;183:2903–2910. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19696430
9. Hogquist KA, Moran AE. Treg cells meet their limit. *Nat Immunol*. 2009;10:565–566. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19448655
10. Weinreich MA, Hogquist KA. Thymic emigration: when and how T cells leave home. *J Immunol*. 2008;181:2265–2270. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18684914
11. Makaroff LE, Hendricks DW, Niec RE, et al. Postthymic maturation influences the CD8 T cell response to antigen. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2009;106:4799–4804. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19270077
12. Boursalian TE, Golob J, Soper DM, et al. Continued maturation of thymic emigrants in the periphery. *Nat Immunol*. 2004;5:418–425. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14991052
13. Hellerstein MK, Hoh RA, Hanley MB, et al. Subpopulations of long-lived and short-lived T cells in advanced HIV-1 infection. *J Clin Invest*. 2003;112:956–966. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12975480
14. Hataye J, Moon JJ, Khoruts A, et al. Naïve and memory CD4+ T cell survival controlled by clonal abundance. *Science*. 2006;312:114–116. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16513943
15. Denucci CC, Mitchell JS, Shimizu Y. Integrin function in T-cell homing to lymphoid and nonlymphoid sites: getting there and staying there. *Crit Rev Immunol*. 2009;29:87–109. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19496742
16. Cyster JG. Chemokines, sphingosine-1-phosphate, and cell migration in secondary lymphoid organs. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 2005;23:127–159. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15771568
17. Anderson AO, Shaw S. Conduit for privileged communications in the lymph node. *Immunity*. 2005;22:3–5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15664153
18. Link A, Vogt TK, Favre S, et al. Fibroblastic reticular cells in lymph nodes regulate the homeostasis of naïve T cells. *Nat Immunol*. 2007;8:1255–1265. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17893676
19. Birnberg T, Bar-On L, Sapoznikov A, et al. Lack of conventional dendritic cells is compatible with normal development and T cell homeostasis, but causes myeloid proliferative syndrome. *Immunity*. 2008;29:986–997. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1906231
20. Dorfman JR, Stefanova I, Yasutomo K, et al. CD4+ T cell survival is not directly linked to self-MHC-induced TCR signaling. *Nat Immunol*. 2000;1:329–335. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11017105
21. Surh CD, Sprent J. Homeostasis of naïve and memory T cells. *Immunity*. 2008;29:848–862. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19100699
22. Yang K, Neale G, Green DR, et al. The tumor suppressor Tsc1 enforces quiescence of naïve T cells to promote immune homeostasis and function. *Nat Immunol*. 2011;12:888–897. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21765414
23. Wu Q, Liu Y, Chen C, et al. The tuberous sclerosis complex-mammalian target of rapamycin pathway maintains the quiescence and survival of naïve T cells. *J Immunol*. 2011;187:1106–1112. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21709159
24. Feng X, Wang H, Takata H, et al. Transcription factor Foxp1 exerts essential cell-intrinsic regulation of the quiescence of naïve T cells. *Nat Immunol*. 2011;12:544–550. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21532575
25. Prlic M, Blazar BR, Khoruts A, et al. Homeostatic expansion occurs independently of costimulatory signals. *J Immunol*. 2001;167:5664–5668. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11698438
26. Min B, McHugh R, Sempowski GD, et al. Neonates support lymphopenia-induced proliferation. *Immunity*. 2003;18:131–140. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12530982
27. Davis MM, Bjorkman PJ. T-cell antigen receptor genes and T-cell recognition. *Nature*. 1988;334:395–402. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3043226
28. Moon JJ, Chu HH, Pepper M, et al. Naïve CD4+ T cell frequency varies for different epitopes and predicts repertoire diversity and response magnitude. *Immunity*. 2007;27:203–213. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17707129
29. Obar JJ, Khanna KM, Lefrancois L. Endogenous naïve CD8+ T cell precursor frequency regulates primary and memory responses to infection. *Immunity*. 2008;28:859–869. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18499487
30. Haluszczak C, Akue AD, Hamilton SE, et al. The antigen-specific CD8+ T cell repertoire in unimmunized mice includes memory phenotype cells bearing markers of homeostatic expansion. *J Exp Med*. 2009;206:435–448. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19188498
31. Kotturi MF, Scott I, Wolfe T, et al. Naïve precursor frequencies and MHC binding rather than the degree of epitope diversity shape CD8+ T cell immunodominance. *J Immunol*.2008;181:2124–2133. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18641351
32. Chu HH, Moon JJ, Kruse AC, et al. Negative selection and peptide chemistry determine the size of naïve foreign peptide-MHC class II-specific CD4+ T cell populations. *J Immunol*. 2010;185:4705–4713. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20861357
33. Turner SJ, Kedzierska K, Komodromou H, et al. Lack of prominent peptide-major histocompatibility complex features limits repertoire diversity in virus-specific CD8+ T cell populations. *Nat Immunol*. 2005;6:382–389. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15735650
34. Yewdell JW. Confronting complexity: real-world immunodominance in antiviral CD8+ T cell responses. *Immunity*. 2006;25:533–543. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17046682
35. Rosette C, Werlen G, Daniels MA, et al. The impact of duration versus extent of TCR occupancy on T cell activation: a revision of the kinetic proofreading model. *Immunity*. 2001;15:59–70. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11485738
36. Janeway CA Jr. Approaching the asymptote? Evolution and revolution in immunology. *Cold Spring Harb Symp Quant Biol*. 1989;54:1–13. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2700931
37. Matzinger P. Tolerance, danger, and the extended family. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 1994;12:991–1045. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8011301
38. Bar-On L, Jung S. Defining dendritic cells by conditional and constitutive cell ablation. *Immunol Rev*. 2010;234:76–89. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20193013
39. Helft J, Ginhoux F, Bogunovic M, et al. Origin and functional heterogeneity of nonlymphoid tissue dendritic cells in mice. *Immunol Rev*. 2010;234:55–75. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20193012
40. Steinman RM, Idoyaga J. Features of the dendritic cell lineage. *Immunol Rev*. 2010;234:5–17. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20193008
41. Shortman K, Heath WR. The CD8+ dendritic cell subset. *Immunol Rev*. 2010;234:18–31. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20193009

42. Swiecki M, Colonna M. Unraveling the functions of plasmacytoid dendritic cells during viral infections, autoimmunity, and tolerance. *Immunol Rev*. 2010;234:142–162. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20193017
43. Zhao X, Deak E, Soderberg K, et al. Vaginal submucosal dendritic cells, but not Langerhans cells, induce protective Th1 responses to herpes simplex virus-2. *J Exp Med*. 2003;197:153–162. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12538655
44. Janeway CA Jr. The immune system evolved to discriminate infectious nonself from noninfectious self. *Immunol Today*. 1992;13:11–16. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1739426
45. Brossart P, Bevan MJ. Presentation of exogenous protein antigens on major histocompatibility complex class I molecules by dendritic cells: pathway of presentation and regulation by cytokines. *Blood*. 1997;90:1594–1599. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9269778
46. Itano AA, Jenkins MK. Antigen presentation to naïve CD4 T cells in the lymph node. *Nat Immunol*. 2003;4:733–739. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12888794
47. Sixt M, Kanazawa N, Selg M, et al. The conduit system transports soluble antigens from the afferent lymph to resident dendritic cells in the T cell area of the lymph node. *Immunity*. 2005;22:19–29. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15664156
48. Pooley JL, Heath WR, Shortman K. Intravenous soluble antigen is presented to CD4 T cells by CD8(-) dendritic cells, but cross-presented to CD8 T cells by CD8(+) dendritic cells. *J Immunol*. 2001;166:5327–5330. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11313367
49. Bursch LS, Wang L, Igyarto B, et al. Identification of a novel population of Langerin+ dendritic cells. *J Exp Med*. 2007;204:3147–3156. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18086865
50. Igyarto BZ, Haley K, Ortner D, et al. Skin-resident murine dendritic cell subsets promote distinct and opposing antigen-specific T helper cell responses. *Immunity*. 2011;35:260–272. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21782478
51. Monks CR, Freiberg BA, Kupfer H, et al. Three-dimensional segregation of supramolecular activation clusters in T cells. *Nature*. 1998;395:82–86. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9738502
52. Campi G, Varma R, Dustin ML. Actin and agonist MHC-peptide complex-dependent T cell receptor microclusters as scaffolds for signaling. *J Exp Med*. 2005;202:1031–1036. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16216891
53. Yokosuka T, Sakata-Sogawa K, Kobayashi W, et al. Newly generated T cell receptor microclusters initiate and sustain T cell activation by recruitment of Zap70 and SLP-76. *Nat Immunol*. 2005;6:1253–1262. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16273097
54. Kane LP, Lin J, Weiss A. Signal transduction by the TCR for antigen. *Curr Opin Immunol*. 2000;12:242–249. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10781399
55. Friedman RS, Beemiller P, Sorensen CM, et al. Real-time analysis of T cell receptors in naïve cells in vitro and in vivo reveals flexibility in synapse and signaling dynamics. *J Exp Med*. 2010;207:2733–2749. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21041455
56. Zell T, Khoruts A, Ingulli E, et al. Single-cell analysis of signal transduction in CD4 T cells stimulated by antigen in vivo. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2001;98:10805–10810. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11535838
57. Gudmundsdottir H, Wells AD, Turka LA. Dynamics and requirements of T cell clonal expansion in vivo at the single-cell level: effector function is linked to proliferative capacity. *J Immunol*. 1999;162:5212–5223. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10227995
58. Schorle H, Holtschke T, Hunig T, et al. Development and function of T cells in mice rendered interleukin-2 deficient by gene targeting. *Nature*. 1991;352:621–624. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1830926
59. Willerford DM, Chen J, Ferry JA, et al. Interleukin-2 receptor alpha chain regulates the size and content of the peripheral lymphoid compartment. *Immunity*. 1995;3:521–530. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7584142
60. Kneitz B, Herrmann T, Yonehara S, et al. Normal clonal expansion but impaired Fas-mediated cell death and anergy induction in interleukin-2-deficient mice. *Eur J Immunol*. 1995;25:2572–2577. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7589128
61. Khoruts A, Mondino A, Pape KA, et al. A natural immunological adjuvant enhances T cell clonal expansion through a CD28-dependent, interleukin (IL)-2-independent mechanism. *J Exp Med*. 1998;187:225–236. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9432980
62. Furtado GC, Curotto de Lafaille MA, Kutchukhidze N, et al. Interleukin 2 signaling is required for CD4(+) regulatory T cell function. *J Exp Med*. 2002;196:851–857. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12235217
63. Obar JJ, Molloy MJ, Jellison ER, et al. CD4+ T cell regulation of CD25 expression controls development of short-lived effector CD8+ T cells in primary and secondary responses. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2010;107:193–198. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19966302
64. Homann D, Teyton L, Oldstone MB. Differential regulation of antiviral T-cell immunity results in stable CD8+ but declining CD4+ T-cell memory. *Nat Med*. 2001;7:913–919. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11479623
65. Murali-Krishna K, Altman JD, Suresh M, et al. Counting antigen-specific CD8 T cells: a reevaluation of bystander activation during viral infection. *Immunity*. 1998;8:177–187. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9491999
66. Smith AL, Wikstrom ME, Fazekas de St Groth B. Visualizing T cell competition for peptide/MHC complexes: a specific mechanism to minimize the effect of precursor frequency. *Immunity*. 2000;13:783–794. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11163194
67. Badovinac VP, Haring JS, Harty JT. Initial T cell receptor transgenic cell precursor frequency dictates critical aspects of the CD8(+) T cell response to infection. *Immunity*. 2007;179:53–63. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17555991
68. Greenwald RJ, Freeman GJ, Sharpe AH. The B7 family revisited. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 2005;23:515–548. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15771580
69. Grewal IS, Xu J, Flavell RA. Impairment of antigen-specific T-cell priming in mice lacking CD40 ligand. *Nature*. 1995;378:617–620. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8524395
70. Ranheim EA, Kipps TJ. Activated T cells induce expression of B7/BB1 on normal or leukemic B cells through a CD40-dependent signal. *J Exp Med*. 1993;177:925–935. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7681471
71. Tavano R, Contento RL, Baranda SJ, et al. CD28 interaction with filamin-A controls lipid raft accumulation at the T-cell immunological synapse. *Nat Cell Biol*. 2006;8:1270–1276. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17060905
72. Sanchez-Lockhart M, Marin E, Graf B, et al. Cutting edge: CD28- mediated transcriptional and posttranscriptional regulation of IL-2 expression are controlled through different signaling pathways. *J Immunol*. 2004;173:7120–7124. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15585831
73. Lindsten T, June CH, Ledbetter JA, et al. Regulation of lymphokine messenger RNA stability by a surface-mediated T cell activation pahtway. *Science*. 1989;144:339–343. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2540528
74. Boise LH, Minn AJ, Noel PJ, et al. CD28 costimulation can promote T cell survival by enhancing the expression of Bcl-XL. *Immunity*. 1995;3:87–98. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7621080
75. Riha P, Rudd CE. CD28 co-signaling in the adaptive immune response. *Self Nonself*. 2010;1:231–240. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21487479
76. Watts TH, DeBenedette MA. T cell co-stimulatory molecules other than CD28. *Curr Opin Immunol*. 1999;11:286–293. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10375549
77. Croft M. Co-stimulatory members of the TNFR family: keys to effective T-cell immunity? *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2003;3:609–620. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12974476
78. Vella AT, McCormack JE, Linsley PS, et al. Lipopolysaccharide interferes with the induction of peripheral T cell death. *Immunity*. 1995;2:261–270. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7535182
79. Pape KA, Khoruts A, Mondino A, et al. Inflammatory cytokines enhance the in vivo clonal expansion and differentiation of antigen-activated CD4+ T cells. *J Immunol*. 1997;159:591–598. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9218573

80. Poltorak A, He X, Smirnova I, et al. Defective LPS signaling in C3H/HeJ and C57BL/10ScCr mice: mutations in Tlr4 gene. *Science*. 1998; 282:2085–2088.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9851930
81. Jones BW, Means TK, Heldwein KA, et al. Different Toll-like receptor agonists induce distinct macrophage responses. *J Leukoc Biol*. 2001;69: 1036–1044.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11404392
82. Kaisho T, Takeuchi O, Kawai T, et al. Endotoxin-induced maturation of MyD88-deficient dendritic cells. *J Immunol*. 2001;166:5688–5694.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11313410
83. Banchereau J, Briere F, Caux C, et al. Immunobiology of dendritic cells. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 2000;18:767–811.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10837075
84. Hawiger D, Inaba K, Dorsett Y, et al. Dendritic cells induce peripheral T cell unresponsiveness under steady state conditions in vivo. *J Exp Med*. 2001;194:769–780.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11560993
85. Khoruts A, Osness RE, Jenkins MK. IL-1 acts on antigen-presenting cells to enhance the in vivo proliferation of antigen-stimulated naïve CD4 T cells via a CD28-dependent mechanism that does not involve increased expression of CD28 ligands. *Eur J Immunol*. 2004;34: 1085–1090.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15048719
86. Ben-Sasson SZ, Hu-Li J, Quiel J, et al. IL-1 acts directly on CD4 T cells to enhance their antigen-driven expansion and differentiation. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2009;106:7119–7124.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19359475
87. Curtsinger JM, Mescher MF. Inflammatory cytokines as a third signal for T cell activation. *Curr Opin Immunol*. 2010;22:333–340.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20363604
88. Malek TR. The biology of interleukin-2. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 2008;26: 453–479.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18062768
89. Liao W, Lin JX, Wang L, et al. Modulation of cytokine receptors by IL-2 broadly regulates differentiation into helper T cell lineages. *Nat Immunol*. 2011;12:551–559.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21516110
90. Schulz EG, Mariani L, Radbruch A, et al. Sequential polarization and imprinting of type 1 T helper lymphocytes by interferon-gamma and interleukin-12. *Immunity*. 2009;30:673–683.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19409816
91. Johnston RJ, Poholek AC, DiToro D, et al. Bcl6 and Blimp-1 are reciprocal and antagonistic regulators of T follicular helper cell differentiation. *Science*. 2009;325:1006–1010.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19608860
92. Pepper M, Pagan AJ, Igyarto BZ, et al. Opposing signals from the Bcl6 transcription factor and the interleukin-2 receptor generate T helper 1 central and effector memory cells. *Immunity*. 2011;35:583–595.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22018468
93. Marshall HD, Chandele A, Jung YW, et al. Differential expression of Ly6C and T-bet distinguish effector and memory Th1 CD4(+) cell properties during viral infection. *Immunity*. 2011;35:633–646.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22018471
94. Choi YS, Kageyama R, Eto D, et al. ICOS receptor instructs T follicular helper cell versus effector cell differentiation via induction of the transcriptional repressor Bcl6. *Immunity*. 2011;34:932–946.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21636296
95. Chang JT, Palanivel VR, Kinjyo I, et al. Asymmetric T lymphocyte division in the initiation of adaptive immune responses. *Science*. 2007; 315:1687–1691.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17332376
96. Kalia V, Sarkar S, Subramaniam S, et al. Prolonged interleukin-2Ralpha expression on virus-specific CD8+ T cells favors terminal-effector differentiation in vivo. *Immunity*. 2010;32:91–103.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20096608
97. Seder RA, Paul WE. Acquisition of lymphokine-producing phenotype by CD4+ T cells. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 1994;12:635–673.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7912089
98. Crotty S. Follicular helper CD4 T cells (TFH). *Annu Rev Immunol*. 2011;29:621–663.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21314428
99. Nurieva RI, Chung Y, Hwang D, et al. Generation of T follicular helper cells is mediated by interleukin-21 but independent of T helper 1, 2, or 17 cell lineages. *Immunity*. 2008;29:138–149.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18599325
100. Vinuesa CG, Cook MC, Angelucci C, et al. A RING-type ubiquitin ligase family member required to repress follicular helper T cells and autoimmunity. *Nature*. 2005;435:452–458.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15917799
101. Garside P, Ingulli E, Merica RR, et al. Visualization of specific B and T lymphocyte interactions in the lymph node. *Science*. 1998;281:96–99.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9651253
102. Fulcher DA, Lyons AB, Korn SL, et al. The fate of self-reactive B cells depends primarily on the degree of antigen receptor engagement and availability of T cell help. *J Exp Med*. 1996;183:2313–2328.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8642340
103. Ansel KM, McHeyzer-Williams LJ, Ngo VN, et al. In vivo-activated CD4 T cells upregulate CXC chemokine receptor 5 and reprogram their response to lymphoid chemokines. *J Exp Med*. 1999;190:1123–1134.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10523610
104. Fazilleau N, McHeyzer-Williams LJ, Rosen H, et al. The function of follicular helper T cells is regulated by the strength of T cell antigen receptor binding. *Nat Immunol*. 2009;10:375–384.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19252493
105. LuKT, Kanno Y, Cannons JL, et al. Functional and epigenetic studies reveal multistep differentiation and plasticity of in vitro-generated and in vivo-derived follicular T helper cells. *Immunity*. 2011;35: 622–632.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22018472
106. Eto D, Lao C, DiToro D, et al. IL-21 and IL-6 are critical for different aspects of B cell immunity and redundantly induce optimal follicular helper CD4 T cell (Tfh) differentiation. *PLoS One*. 2011;6:e17739.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21423809
107. Kolumam GA, Thomas S, Thompson LJ, et al. Type I interferons act directly on CD8 T cells to allow clonal expansion and memory formation in response to viral infection. *J Exp Med*. 2005;202:637–650.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16129706
108. Xiao Z, Casey KA, Jameson SC, et al. Programming for CD8 T cell memory development requires IL-12 or type I IFN. *J Immunol*. 2009; 182:2786–2794.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19234173
109. Filatenkov AA, Jacovetty EL, Fischer UB, et al. CD4 T cell-dependent conditioning of dendritic cells to produce IL-12 results in CD8-mediated graft rejection and avoidance of tolerance. *J Immunol*. 2005; 174:6909–6917.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15905533
110. Harrington LE, Galvan M, Baum LG, et al. Differentiating between memory and effector CD8 T cells by altered expression of cell surface O-glycans. *J Exp Med*. 2000;191:1241–1246.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10748241
111. Hamann D, Baars PA, Rep MH, et al. Phenotypic and functional separation of memory and effector human CD8+ T cells. *J Exp Med*. 1997; 186:1407–1418.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9348298
112. Lauvau G, Vijh S, Kong P, et al. Priming of memory but not effector CD8 T cells by a killed bacterial vaccine. *Science*. 2001;294:1735–1739.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11721060
113. Reinhardt RL, Khoruts A, Merica R, et al. Visualizing the generation of memory CD4 T cells in the whole body. *Nature*. 2001;410:101–105.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11242050
114. Sigmundsdottir H, Butcher EC. Environmental cues, dendritic cells and the programming of tissue-selective lymphocyte trafficking. *Nat Immunol*. 2008;9:981–987.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1871143
115. Campbell DJ, Kim CH, Butcher EC. Separable effector T cell populations specialized for B cell help or tissue inflammation. *Nat Immunol*. 2001;2:876–881.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11526405
116. Reinhardt RL, Bullard DC, Weaver CT, et al. Preferential accumulation of antigen-specific effector CD4 T cells at an antigen injection site involves CD62E-dependent migration but not local proliferation. *J Exp Med*. 2003;197:751–762.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12629067

117. Roman E, Miller E, Harmsen A, et al. CD4 effector T cell subsets in the response to influenza: heterogeneity, migration, and function. *J Exp Med*. 2002;196:957–968. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12370257
118. Lim YC, Xie H, Come CE, et al. IL-12, STAT4-dependent up-regulation of CD4(+) T cell core 2 beta-1,6-n- acetylglucosaminyltransferase, an enzyme essential for biosynthesis of P-selectin ligands. *J Immunol*. 2001;167:4476–4484. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11591774
119. Sigmundsdottir H, Pan J, Debes GF, et al. DCs metabolize sunlight-induced vitamin D3 to "program" T cell attraction to the epidermal chemokine CCL27. *Nat Immunol*.2007;8:285–293. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17259988
120. Tubo NJ, McLachlan JB, Campbell JJ. Chemokine receptor requirements for epidermal T-cell trafficking. *Am J Pathol*. 2011;178:2496–2503. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21641376
121. Hall JA, Grainger JR, Spencer SP, et al. The role of retinoic acid in tolerance and immunity. *Immunity*. 2011;35:13–22. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21777796
122. Urdahl KB, Shafiani S, Ernst JD. Initiation and regulation of T-cell responses in tuberculosis. *Mucosal Immunol*. 2011;4:288–293. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21451503
123. Flynn KJ, Belz GT, Altman JD, et al. Virus-specific CD8+ T cells in primary and secondary influenza pneumonia. *Immunity*. 1998;8:683–691. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9655482
124. Hendriks J, Gravestein LA, Tesselaar K, et al. CD27 is required for generation and long-term maintenance of T cell immunity. *Nat Immunol*. 2000;1:433–440. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11062504
125. Masopust D, Vezys V, Marzo AL, et al. Preferential localization of effector memory cells in nonlymphoid tissue. *Science*. 2001;291:2413–2417. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11264538
126. Lefrancois L, Parker CM, Olson S, et al. The role of beta7 integrins in CD8 T cell trafficking during an antiviral immune response. *J Exp Med*. 1999;189:1631–1638. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10330442
127. Groom JR, Luster AD. CXCR3 ligands: redundant, collaborative and antagonistic functions. *Immunol Cell Biol*. 2011;89:207–215. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21221121
128. Nakanishi Y, Lu B, Gerard C, et al. CD8(+) T lymphocyte mobilization to virus-infected tissue requires CD4(+) T-cell help. *Nature*. 2009;462:510–513. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19898495
129. Bevan MJ. Memory T cells as an occupying force. *Eur J Immunol*. 2011;41:1192–1195. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21469134
130. Mackay C, Marston W, Dudler L. Naïve and memory T cells show distinct pathways of lymphocyte recirculation. *J Exp Med*. 1990;171:801–817. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2307933
131. Cui W, Kaech SM. Generation of effector CD8+ T cells and their conversion to memory T cells. *Immunol Rev*. 2010;236:151–166. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20636815
132. Seder RA, Ahmed R. Similarities and differences in CD4+ and CD8+ effector and memory T cell generation. *Nat Immunol*. 2003;4:835–842. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12942084
133. Surh CD, Boyman O, Purton JF, et al. Homeostasis of memory T cells. *Immunol Rev*. 2006;211:154–163. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16824125
134. Ahmed R, Gray D. Immunological memory and protective immunity: understanding their relation. *Science*. 1996;272:54–60. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8600537
135. Dutton RW, Bradley LM, Swain SL. T cell memory. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 1998;16:201–223. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9597129
136. Sallusto F, Geginat J, Lanzavecchia A. Central memory and effector memory T cell subsets: function, generation, and maintenance. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 2004;22:745–763. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15032595
137. Sallusto F, Lenig D, Forster R, et al. Two subsets of memory T lymphocytes with distinct homing potentials and effector functions. *Nature*. 1999;401:708–712. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10537110
138. Becker TC, Wherry EJ, Boone D, et al. Interleukin 15 is required for proliferative renewal of virus-specific memory CD8 T cells. *J Exp Med*. 2002;195:1541–1548. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12070282
139. Sallusto F, Mackay CR, Lanzavecchia A. The role of chemokine receptors in primary, effector, and memory immune responses. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 2000;18:593–620. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10837070
140. Wherry EJ, Becker TC, Boone D, et al. Homeostatic proliferation but not the generation of virus specific memory CD8 T cells is impaired in the absence of IL-15 or IL-15Ralpha. *Adv Exp Med Biol*. 2002;512:165–175. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12405201
141. Wherry EJ, Teichgraber V, Becker TC, et al. Lineage relationship and protective immunity of memory CD8 T cell subsets. *Nat Immunol*. 2003;4:225–234. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12563257
142. Marzo AL, Klonowski KD, Le Bon A, et al. Initial T cell frequency dictates memory CD8+ T cell lineage commitment. *Nat Immunol*. 2005;6:793–799. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16025119
143. Gebhardt T, Whitney PG, Zaid A, et al. Different patterns of peripheral migration by memory CD4+ and CD8+ T cells. *Nature*. 2011;477:216–219. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21841802
144. MacLeod MK, David A, McKee AS, et al. Memory CD4 T cells that express CXCR5 provide accelerated help to B cells. *J Immunol*. 2011;186:2889–2896. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21270407
145. Chevalier N, Jarrossay D, Ho E, et al. CXCR5 expressing human central memory CD4 T cells and their relevance for humoral immune responses. *J Immunol*. 2011;186:5556–5568. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21471443
146. Morita R, Schmitt N, Bentebibel SE, et al. Human blood CXCR5(+) CD4(+) T cells are counterparts of T follicular cells and contain specific subsets that differentially support antibody secretion. *Immunity*. 2011;34:108–121. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21215658
147. Harrington LE, Janowski KM, Oliver JR, et al. Memory CD4 T cells emerge from effector T-cell progenitors. *Nature*. 2008;452:356–360. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18322463
148. Lohning M, Hegazy AN, Pinschewer DD, et al. Long-lived virus-reactive memory T cells generated from purified cytokine-secreting T helper type 1 and type 2 effectors. *J Exp Med*. 2008;205:53–61. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18195073
149. Kurtulus S, Tripathi P, Opferman JT, et al. Contracting the "mus cells"—does down-sizing suit us for diving into the memory pool? *Immunol Rev*. 2010;236:54–67. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20636808
150. Kaech SM, Tan JT, Wherry EJ, et al. Selective expression of the interleukin 7 receptor identifies effector CD8 T cells that give rise to long-lived memory cells. *Nat Immunol*. 2003;4:1191–1198. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14625547
151. Hand TW, Morre M, Kaech SM. Expression of IL-7 receptor alpha is necessary but not sufficient for the formation of memory CD8 T cells during viral infection. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2007;104:11730–11735. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17609371
152. Klonowski KD, Williams KJ, Marzo AL, et al. Cutting edge: IL-7-independent regulation of IL-7 receptor alpha expression and memory CD8 T cell development. *J Immunol*. 2006;177:4247–4251. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16982855
153. Prlic M, Bevan MJ. Immunology: a metabolic switch to memory. *Nature*. 2009;460:41–42. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19571872
154. Araki K, Turner AP, Shaffer VO, et al. mTOR regulates memory CD8 T-cell differentiation. *Nature*. 2009;460:108–112. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19543266

155. Pearce EL, Walsh MC, Cejas PJ, et al. Enhancing CD8 T-cell memory by modulating fatty acid metabolism. *Nature*. 2009;460:103–107. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19494812
156. Rao RR, Li Q, Odunsi K, et al. The mTOR kinase determines effector versus memory CD8+ T cell fate by regulating the expression of transcription factors T-bet and Eomesodermin. *Immunity*. 2010;32:67–78. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20060330
157. Hendriks J, Xiao Y, Borst J. CD27 promotes survival of activated T cells and complements CD28 in generation and establishment of the effector T cell pool. *J Exp Med*. 2003;198:1369–1380. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14581610
158. Pepper M, Linehan JL, Pagan AJ, et al. Different routes of bacterial infection induce long-lived TH1 memory cells and short-lived TH17 cells. *Nat Immunol*. 2010;11:83–89. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19935657
159. Gramaglia I, Jember A, Pippig SD, et al. The OX40 costimulatory receptor determines the development of CD4 memory by regulating primary clonal expansion. *J Immunol*. 2000;165:3043–3050. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10975814
160. Yang CY, Best JA, Knell J, et al. The transcriptional regulators Id2 and Id3 control the formation of distinct memory CD8(+) T cell subsets. *Nat Immunol*. 2011;12(12):1221–1229. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22057289
161. Cannarile MA, Lind NA, Rivera R, et al. Transcriptional regulator Id2 mediates CD8+ T cell immunity. *Nat Immunol*. 2006;7:1317–1325. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17086188
162. Ji Y, Pos Z, Rao M, et al. Repression of the DNA-binding inhibitor Id3 by Blimp-1 limits the formation of memory CD8(+) T cells. *Nat Immunol*. 2011;12(12):1230–1237. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22057288
163. Medzhitov R, Preston-Hurlburt P, Janeway CA Jr. A human homologue of the Drosophila Toll protein signals activation of adaptive immunity. *Nature*. 1997;388:394–397. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9237759
164. Reis e Sousa C, Hieny S, Scharton-Kersten T, et al. In vivo microbial stimulation induces rapid CD40 ligand-independent production of interleukin 12 by dendritic cells and their redistribution to T cell areas. *J Exp Med*. 1997;186:1819–1829. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9382881
165. Ingulli E, Mondino A, Khoruts A, et al. In vivo detection of dendritic cell antigen presentation to $CD4^{+}$ T cells. *J Exp Med*. 1997;185:2133–2141. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9182685
166. Lund R, Ahlfors H, Kainonen E, et al. Identification of genes involved in the initiation of human Th1 or Th2 cell commitment. *Eur J Immunol*. 2005;35:3307–3319. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16220538
167. Hou J, Schindler U, Henzel WJ, et al. Identification and purification of human Stat proteins activated in response to interleukin-2. *Immunity*. 1995;2:321–329. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7719937
168. Jacobson NG, Szabo SJ, Weber-Nordt RM, et al. Interleukin 12 signaling in T helper type 1 (Th1) cells involves tyrosine phosphorylation of signal transducer and activator of transcription (Stat)3 and Stat4. *J Exp Med*. 1995;181:1755–1762. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7722452
169. Grogan JL, Mohrs M, Harmon B, et al. Early transcription and silencing of cytokine genes underlie polarization of T helper cell subsets. *Immunity*. 2001;14:205–215. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11290331
170. Gong D, Malek TR. Cytokine-dependent Blimp-1 expression in activated T cells inhibits IL-2 production. *J Immunol*. 2007;178:242–252. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17182561
171. Crotty S, Johnston RJ, Schoenberger SP. Effectors and memories: Bcl-6 and Blimp-1 in T and B lymphocyte differentiation. *Nat Immunol*. 2010;11:114–120. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20084069
172. Chong BF, Murphy JE, Kupper TS, et al. E-selectin, thymus- and activation-regulated chemokine/CCL17, and intercellular adhesion molecule-1 are constitutively coexpressed in dermal microvessels: a foundation for a cutaneous immunosurveillance system. *J Immunol*. 2004;172:1575–1581. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14734737
173. Mogues T, Goodrich ME, Ryan L, et al. The relative importance of T cell subsets in immunity and immunopathology of air-borne Mycobacterium tuberculosis infection in mice. *J Exp Med*. 2001;193:271–280. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11157048
174. Wei L, Laurence A, Elias KM, et al. IL-21 is produced by Th17 cells and drives IL-17 production in a STAT3-dependent manner. *J Biol Chem*. 2007;282:34605–34610. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17884812
175. Schoenberger SP, Toes RE, van der Voort EI, et al. T-cell help for cytotoxic T lymphocytes is mediated by CD40-CD40L interactions. *Nature*. 1998;393:480–483. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9624005
176. Ridge JP, Di Rosa F, Matzinger P. A conditioned dendritic cell can be a temporal bridge between a CD4+ T- helper and a T-killer cell. *Nature*. 1998;393:474–478. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9624003
177. Agarwal P, Raghavan A, Nandiwada SL, et al. Gene regulation and chromatin remodeling by IL-12 and type I IFN in programming for CD8 T cell effector function and memory. *J Immunol*. 2009;183:1695–1704. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19592655
178. Pipkin ME, Sacks JA, Cruz-Guilloty F, et al. Interleukin-2 and inflammation induce distinct transcriptional programs that promote the differentiation of effector cytolytic T cells. *Immunity*. 2010;32:79–90. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20096607
179. Iwata M, Hirakiyama A, Eshima Y, et al. Retinoic acid imprints gut-homing specificity on T cells. *Immunity*. 2004;21:527–538. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15485630
180. Zhang N, Bevan MJ. CD8(+) T cells: foot soldiers of the immune system. *Immunity*. 2011;35:161–168. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21867926

SECTION V

The Intersection of Innate and Adaptive Immunity

CHAPTER 15

The Innate Immune System

Luke A. J. O'Neill

INTRODUCTION

Every organism has to contend with infection by microbes. Infectious agents such as bacteria, viruses, and fungi threaten health and viability by competing for nutrients or more dangerously by killing the infected host as a consequence of infection or in order to spread to another host. This threat occurs largely because microorganisms divide at a faster rate than the host and because of the production of toxins that the microorganism uses for its own viability. The job of the immune system is firstly to sense the danger posed and secondly to mount an appropriate response. This response can be to tolerate the microorganism or to resist it such that at best sterilizing immunity occurs.

The immune system is traditionally split into two categories: innate and acquired (or adaptive) immunity. The term "innate" refers to the feature that the sensors involved are encoded by genes that do not undergo any rearrangement to generate variants. Adaptive immunity, on the other hand, refers to host defense proteins encoded by genes that undergo rearrangement to generate great diversity. This rearrangement process is not driven by the infectious agent, but happens by genetic programming. Antigens then lead to an expansion of antigen-specific B cells or T cells that help clear the infection and importantly persist in the form of memory cells. This means that when the host is re-infected, there are substantially greater numbers of the specific B- and T-cell populations that lead to clearance of the infectious agent. There are therefore insufficient numbers of microbes to trigger substantial systemic symptoms.

It is estimated that more than 99% of life on earth only has innate immunity.[1] What advantage would the evolution of adaptive immunity bestow on an organism? The answer lies in part in the nature of innate immunity. As will be discussed, the effector mechanisms here involve the inflammatory process, which when out of control can harm the host. In mammals, a "sickness behavior" also occurs, which includes processes such as fever, aches and pains, and drowsiness, which are thought to allow the infected host to rest and recuperate.[2] They also present a disadvantage, however, because they leave the host vulnerable to predators and decrease reproductive potential. Adaptive immunity occurs later in the cycle of infection, typically becoming evident several days after infection, and probably only after innate immune defenses have been breached. It is needed for sterilizing immunity. The fact that memory is a key feature of adaptive immunity, however (which is evident because of the expansion of specific B and T cells), means that upon re-infection, the innate response is limited because the pathogen is more rapidly cleared and there are therefore fewer microbial products present to activate innate immunity. In addition, there is evidence that adaptive immune cells actually inhibit the innate immune response, which in the first infection acts in a negative feedback manner.[3] In subsequent infections, the memory cells probably inhibit innate immunity from the start of the infection. In essence, therefore, it appears that adaptive immunity evolved to promote sterilizing immunity and also to prevent innate immunity happening upon reexposure to pathogen, given its potential disadvantages in terms of systemic inflammation. Figure 15.1 illustrates this principal.

Previously thought to be crude and nonspecific, innate immunity is now known to involve a range of receptor families that recognize diverse microbial products. Importantly, these receptors program gene expression changes in target cells. The products of these genes drive inflammation and are also required for adaptive immunity. These proteins include cytokines that promote expansion of B and T cells. Other innate immune proteins have direct antimicrobial effects or act as opsonins, coating bacteria and promoting phagocytosis. Innate immunity has therefore gone from being viewed as a process lacking sophistication, to one determining for both inflammation and adaptive immunity.[4]

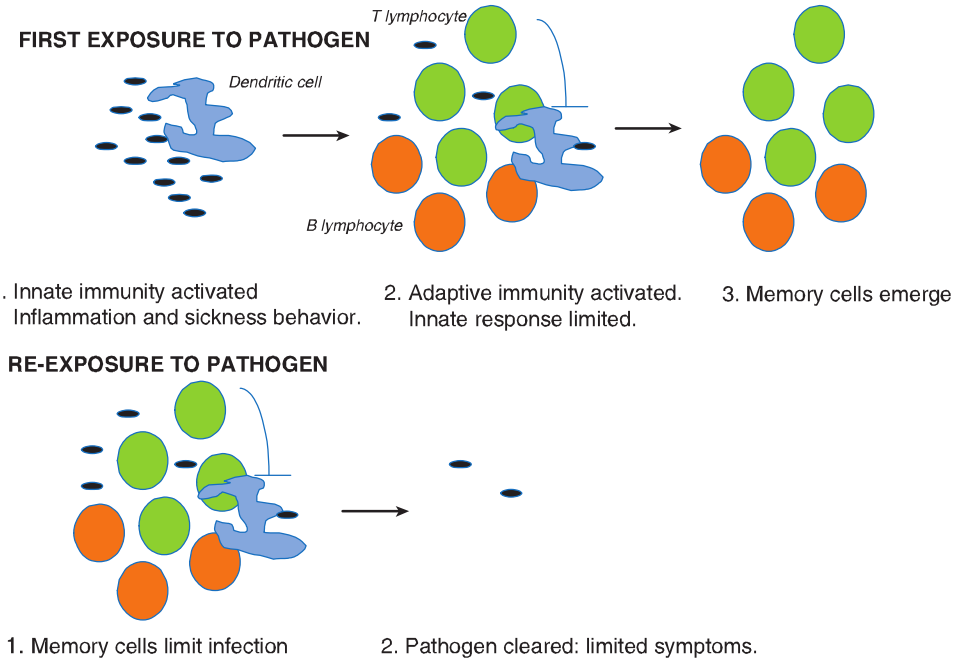


FIG. 15.1. The Relationship between Innate and Adaptive Immunity. A: Upon exposure to a pathogen, the innate immune response is triggered mainly by phagocytes and dendritic cells. Inflammation ensues, which leads to sickness behavior and host defense. The adaptive immune system is then triggered leading to effector T- and B-lymphocytes, some of which become memory cells. Adaptive immunity also has a negative feedback effect on innate immunity, preventing damage. **B:** When an organism is exposed to the same pathogen again, the memory cells can handle the infection, limiting innate immunity such that there are only minor symptoms. The evolution of adaptive immunity therefore provides an advantage to the host: adaptive immunity evolved to clear pathogens and limit innate immunity.

THE FRONTLINE OF INNATE IMMUNITY

The Skin

Innate immunity at its simplest involves barriers that prevent entry of microorganisms in the first place. In mammals, the skin is an obvious barrier that when broken in injury allows pathogens to enter. Many pathogens use insects that can deliver them across the skin into the bloodstream. A good example here is *Plasmodium falciparum*, which causes malaria. It is transmitted by mosquitoes feeding on blood. If the skin is broken, pathogens can enter. The importance of the integrity of the skin barrier can be seen in atopic dermatitis, an inflammatory skin disease. Mutations in the gene encoding fillaggrin, which is important for skin integrity, associate with atopic dermatitis.[5] The altered fillaggrin is less able to maintain the skin barrier, and the dermatitis is likely to be caused by microorganisms penetrating the skin or environmental irritants that provoke allergy.

The Epithelial Barrier

Equally important is the epithelial barrier that lines surfaces inside the body in the respiratory, gastrointestinal, and urogenital tracts. Microbes gain access to these surfaces via processes such as inhalation and digestion. The epithelial cells that make up the epithelium form tight junctions that keep the microorganisms out.[6] Specialized structures called cilia also expel microbes, and damage to cilia, for example caused by cigarette smoke, promotes respiratory tract infections.[7]

DIRECT-ACTING ANTIMICROBIAL FACTORS

The epithelia also produce a range of chemicals that limit microbial growth. Mucus is a key substance that traps microbes and is expelled. The importance of mucus can be seen in cystic fibrosis, where unusually thick mucus is made in lungs that limits expulsion and gives rise to growth of bacteria in the airways.[8] This chronic infection in turn leads to the lung pathology in this disease. In the stomach, acid production by the epithelium leads to low pH that limits growth of microbes. Enzymes that digest microbial proteins are also produced, including pepsin in the gut. A phospholipid-based substance termed pulmonary surfactant is made in the lungs that acts to trap microbes and can also directly lyse bacteria. Similarly, in skin the production of fatty acids in sebum limits bacterial growth. Lysozyme is a prominent enzyme in tears and saliva that breaks down peptidoglycan in the cell walls of gram-positive bacteria. Lysozyme is in fact a prototype of an innate immune protein because it does not affect the host cells, as they lack peptidoglycan. It is made by epithelial cells, but also phagocytes and Paneth cells in the crypts in the small intestine.

Antimicrobial Peptides

Another important example of innate immune proteins produced at barriers is antimicrobial peptides.[9] Epithelial cells are a major source of these peptides, but phagocytes can also make them. They are an ancient form of defense because they are found in most species, including insects and plants. There are three classes: defensins, catelicidins, and histatins. Defensins are 30 to 40 amino acid peptides that usually have three disulphide bonds. Their key property is amphipathicity (they contain both polar and nonpolar properties), and it is this property that is thought to underly their specificity for the membranes of bacteria, fungi, and certain viruses. Their hydrophobic part inserts into these membranes, which are more positively charged than host cell membranes. A pore is formed, rendering the membrane leaky and leading to lysis.

There are three subfamilies of defensins-: α, β, and θ, which have different specificities in terms of target microorganisms.[10] They are produced as propeptides that require processing by proteases. Neutrophils produce α-defensins and store them in so-called primary granules from which they are secreted upon neutrophil activation. Paneth cells in the gut produce a class of α-defensins called cryptidins, which are processed by trypsin prior to secretion into the gut., β-defensins are made in the urogenital and respiratory tracts, skin, and tongue. Keratinocytes in skin are also a key producer of β-defensins.

Catelicidins lack the disulphide bonds in the α-defensins and are produced by epithelial cells, phagocytes, and keratinocytes. They are also produced as propeptides and in neutrophils are processed by elastases in secondary granules and then secreted in response to microbial stimulation. Histatins are produced in the parotid, sublingual, and submandibular glands in the oral cavity. They are histidine-rich and target fungal membranes.

Phospholipase A2

Phospholipase A2 (PLA2) is another antimicrobial protein found in primary granules of neutrophils and similar to defensins, is secreted during degranulation in response to bacterial activation. It is also secreted by epithelial cells and Paneth cells. PLA2 can directly kill gram-positive bacteria by hydrolysing phospholipids in the microbial membrane.[11] The means by which it distinguishes host membranes from bacterial membranes is because its effect on phospholipids is strongly potentiated by another protein termed bactericidal permeability increasing (BPI), which binds to lipopolysaccharide (LPS) in gram-negative bacterial membranes.[12] As will be discussed subsequently, LPS is one of most potent innate immune activators known; it is sensed by a protein termed toll-like receptor-4 (TLR4). LPS does not occur in host membranes, and so BPI only facilitates the effect of PLA2 on bacterial membranes. BPI disrupts the integrity of the bacterial membrane and presumably allows PLA2 to gain access to phospholipids, where it cleaves fatty acids from the sn-2 position, leading to lysis. Similar to PLA2, BPI is found in primary granules in neutrophils.

Lactoferrin

Lactoferrin is an 80 kDa protein that belongs to the transferrin family and therefore acts to sequester iron. This effect is thought to limit the availability of iron to bacteria, altering their metabolism and thereby compromising their ability to replicate.[13] Lactoferrin is found in the secondary granules of neutrophils and occurs at a high level in breast milk, its cellular origin there being epithelial cells. Lactoferrin can also be processed to generate an antimicrobial peptide called lactoferricin that, similar to other such peptides, can lyse bacterial membranes.

The Microbiota

A final front-line mechanism to keep microbes at bay is commensal bacteria in the healthy intestine. Commensal bacteria live in our intestines and serve several functions, including providing vitamin B_{12} and other nutrients. However, they also maintain epithelial barrier integrity, most likely because they are sensed by innate immune receptors that will be described in subsequent sections, and these receptors seal the epithelial barrier against infection.[14] However, importantly they also compete with any pathogenic bacteria in the intestines limiting their growth. Similarly, on skin and in the urogenital tract, there are competing microbes.

THE INITIAL RESPONSE ONCE BARRIERS ARE BREACHED

What happens when skin or epithelial barriers are breached? Pathogens have mechanisms to get across the barriers, or if the barrier is damaged by trauma, pathogens will traverse the broken barrier. Two important cascades are triggered in blood that will generate inflammatory factors or act to wall off pathogens and prevent them from spreading. The first cascade to be characterized in detail is the complement cascade, described in detail elsewhere in this volume. Complement generates the membrane attack complex that will lyse bacteria. Complement factors such as C1q also bind to pathogen surfaces and act as opsonins, promoting uptake by neutrophils and phagocytes. The complement cascade also generates chemotactic factors such as C5a, which attracts neutrophils to the site of infection. Coagulation is the other cascade that is triggered, largely by bacteria. This will form clots that prevent bacteria from spreading.

The Neutrophil

A key cell type, however, that is engaged early in infection is the neutrophil, again described in detail elsewhere. Chemotactic peptides present in bacteria, termed fMLP, act as chemoattractants for neutrophils. Both C5a and fMLP also trigger an important process in the neutrophil termed the respiratory burst.[15] This involves an enzyme complex termed the nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide phosphate-oxidase. This is also present in macrophages and is activated either by the G-protein coupled receptors that bind fMLP or C5a, or by the process of phagocytosis. It is a multicomponent enzyme complex that contains three cytosolic subunits: p40phox, p47phox, and p67phox. It also contains a membrane-associated flavocytochrome complex comprising p22phox and p91phox. The subunits form the enzyme complex following activation of the low molecular weight G protein Rac. The nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide phosphate-oxidase generates reactive oxygen species by transferring an electron from its flavin adenine dinucleotide cofactor to molecular oxygen forming the superoxide anion and other oxygen radicals. This all occurs in the so-called phagolysosome, which comprises a fusion between the phagosome that contains the ingested bacteria with the lysosome. The oxidizing environment will be antibacterial, but in addition, will lead to acidification of the phagolysosome due to potassium and hydrogen ions being drawn in to neutralize the charged superoxide ion. The acidification, however, has been shown to lead to dissociation of proteolytic

enzymes such as elastase from the proteoglycan matrix in the phagolysosome.[16] These proteases will also have a direct effect on bacteria.

In addition, superoxide is a substrate for myeloperoxidase, which is stored in primary granules and generates hypochlorous acid and chloramines, as well as other reactive oxygen species that are bactericidal and fungicidal. A final oxygen radical generated in neutrophils is nitric oxide. It is produced by the enzyme nitric oxide synthase, which is induced by cytokines such as interferon-γ. Nitric oxide is also microbicidal.

THE CONCEPT OF PATTERN RECOGNITION: HISTORICAL PERSPECTIVE

Much of the forgoing components of innate immunity had been worked out at least in broad terms by the mid-1990s. However, the issue of the exact recognition mechanism during innate immunity by the host was poorly understood. In 1989, Janeway made the point that the continued focus on adaptive immunity, which was evident at the time, would lead to an asymptote being approached in our understanding of immunity.[17] He speculated that receptors must exist for microbial structures that were known to be proinflammatory, such as LPS from gram-negative bacteria. Receptors such as mannan-binding lectin (MBL), which binds mannose in microbial membranes (and which does not exist in host membranes) and CD14 (which binds LPS), had already been described at that stage, but importantly these proteins did not signal because they possessed no intracellular domains. MBL was shown to be an opsonin, and CD14 had no clear function. Janeway therefore proposed that pattern recognition receptors (PRRs) must exist that recognize microbial "patterns" such as LPS, termed pathogen-associated molecular patterns (PAMPs), and trigger activation of cells such as dendritic cells, which are prodigious producers of cytokines and also present antigen to T cells. At around the same time, Matzinger was proposing that the job of the immune system is to sense "danger."[18] The danger can be in the form of a microbe or in the form of tissue injury. Again, the idea that specific receptors would exist to recognize products of damaged tissue was proposed. In essence, what was being hypothesized was the existence of receptors that would drive the production of cytokines, as several cytokines had been found that could provoke inflammation and also adaptive immunity. LPS was a powerful inducer of such cytokines and yet no receptor had been convincingly described for LPS that would activate transcription factors such as NF-kB, which was known to be required for increased transcription of genes such as that encoding the potent proinflammatory cytokine tumor necrosis factor (TNF).

How did Janeway's insight that PRRs and PAMPs would form the core of innate immunity lead to the discovery of the TLRs, which became the prototypical PRRs? Five important findings were made.

1) The receptor for the proinflammatory cytokine interleukin (IL)-1, which is a key mediator of many aspects of inflammation and which, similar to LPS, could activate NFκB, was shown to have a signalling domain similar to a *Drosphila melanogaster* protein Toll.[19] The Toll protein had been discovered as being important in the generation of dorsal-ventral polarity in the developing *Drosophila* embryo. At first glance, this seemed odd. What was a receptor important for inflammation doing with a signaling domain highly similar to a protein in fruit fly development? Toll drives a transcription factor termed dorsal, however, which is highly similar to NFκB so it seemed as if a similar "machine" was being used in two different contexts: one for inflammation in the case of IL-1 and the other for development in the fruit fly.
2) In 1994, a protein termed N protein was described in tobacco by Whitham and colleagues, which provided resistance to tobacco mosaic virus.[20] This protein also had the domain found in the type I IL-1 receptor and Toll, which was then named the Toll-IL-1 receptor–resistance (TIR) domain. Clearly, the TIR domain was therefore important for innate immunity in very diverse species.
3) This was confirmed when in 1996, Lemaitre and colleagues reported that Toll also has a role in innate immunity in *Drosophila*, being activated in response to fungi and driving the antifungal peptide drosomycin.[21]
4) Mammalian proteins even more similar to Toll than the IL-1 receptor, and termed TLRs, were then reported[22] and one, termed Toll (subsequently renamed TLR4) when overexpressed in dendritic cells, was shown to drive costimulation of T cells, as reported by Medzhitov and colleagues.[23]
5) In 1999, Poltorak and colleagues reported that the lack of responsiveness of a strain of mouse termed C3H/HeJ to LPS was due to a mutation in the gene encoding TLR4, such that a proline in the signaling domain was converted to a histidine.[24] This rendered TLR4 unable to signal, identifying TLR4 as the long-sought signaling receptor for LPS. It was therefore clear that TLRs were ideal examples of the PRRs proposed by Janeway. Subsequently, 10 TLRs were described in human, although other species have very many more, notably the sea urchin, which has over 150.[25] TLRs were shown to recognize a diverse range of PAMPs and also in some cases products of damaged tissue, termed danger-associated molecular patterns (DAMPs). Complex signaling pathways were elucidated and links to disease established. The discovery of TLRs also galvanized researchers to seek other PRR types, and there are now several families, notably the retinoic acid-inducible gene I (RIG-I)-like receptors (RLRs), which sense viral ribonucleic acid (RNA), the nucleotide oligomerization domain (NOD)-like receptors (NLRs), which sense bacteria and DAMPs, and the C-type lectin receptors, which sense fungi.[26] Figure 15.2 illustrates the main families of PRRs. A level of complexity in innate immunity was therefore revealed that has provided great insight into the overall workings of the immune systems of many organisms.

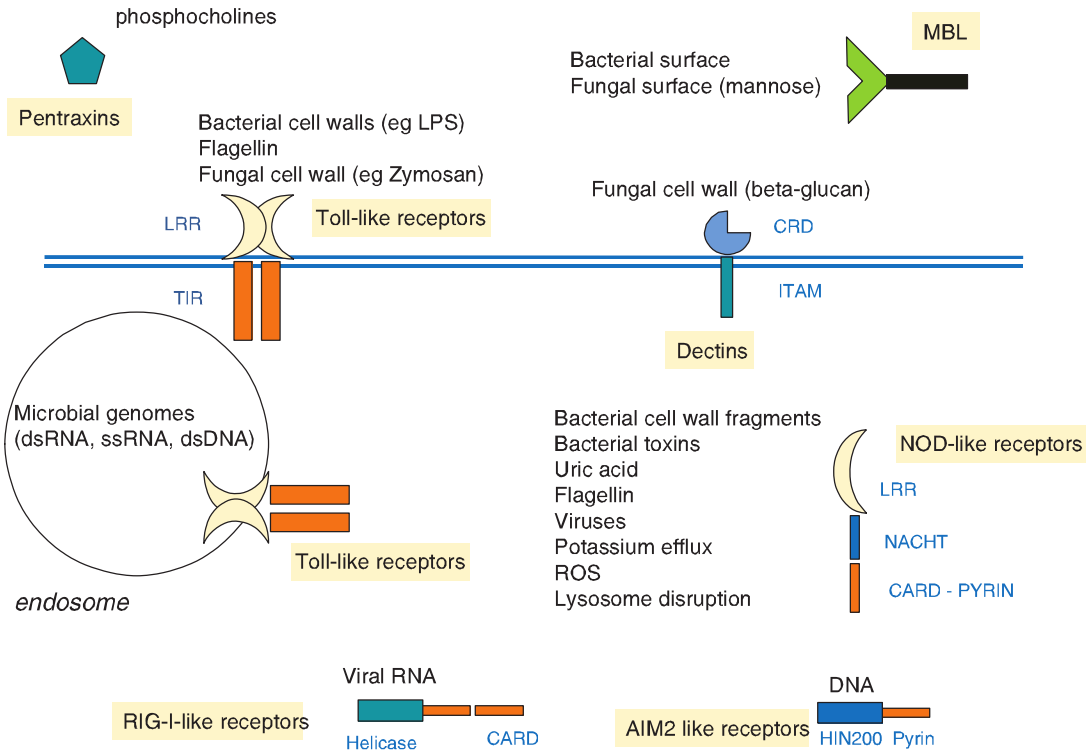


FIG. 15.2. Innate Immune Sensors. Several classes of innate immune sensors have been found. Soluble factors such as pentraxins and mannoan-binding lectins bind pathogen structures and promote phagocytosis. Toll-like receptors (TLRs) sense bacteria, fungi, and protozoans from the plasma membrane, whereas endosomal TLRs sense microbially derived nucleic acids. C-type lectin receptors sense fungal cell wall components and mycobacteria. In the cytosol nucleotide oligomerization domain–like receptors sense microbial products and also, in the case, of Nlrp3 particles such as uric acid and IAPP. Retinoic acid-inducible gene I–like receptor sense viral ribonucleic acid, whereas AIM-2-like receptors sense microbial deoxyribonucleic acid. All lead to signaling pathways culminating in the induction of immune and inflammatory genes.

Toll-Like Receptors

TLRs are type I transmembrane receptors that have leucine-rich repeats (LRRs) and a TIR domain. LRRs are found in many proteins, and that they occur in TLRs is of interest given their capacity to interact with different kinds of ligands. Also of note is that in agnathans, the LRR is used to build a repertoire of variable lymphocyte receptors, which are analogous to the antibody repertoire in human.[27] The LRR domain is therefore of evolutionary interest in that it is used for TLRs but also generation of diversity in the lamprey and the hagfish. The immunoglobulin domain serves this purpose in vertebrates and in fact is fused to the TIR domain in the type I IL-1 receptor. Figure 15.3 illustrates the relationship between these domains.

The 10 TLRs in human have different ligand specificities, and several ligand/TLR structures have been solved.[28] Broadly speaking, TLRs can be split into two families. TLRs 1, 2, 4, 5, and 6 are expressed in the plasma membrane, and their job is to sense bacterial, fungal, and protozoal products. TLRs 3, 7, and 9 are all expressed in endosomal membranes with their LRRs in the lumen and their TIR domains pointing into the cytosol. Their role is to sense viral nucleic acids. There are also differences in relation to signaling,[29] with all of the TLRs with the exception of TLR3 signalling via MyD88, to NF-κB and mitogen-activated protein (MAP) kinases such as p38. TLR2 and especially TLR4 require a bridging adapter termed Mal to recruit MyD88. TLR3 signals via Trif to NF-κB and another transcription factor IRF3. TLR4 can also signal via Trif and does so via the second bridging adapter Tram.

Toll-Like Receptors 2, 1, and 6

TLR2 recognizes multiple ligands. From bacteria, these include lipopeptides, lipoproteins, lipoteichoic acid, and mycobacterial lipoarabinomannan. From yeast, TLR2 recognizes the cell wall structure zymosan. TLR2 also recognizes glycosylphosphoinositol from the parasite *Tryanosoma cruzi*. Alone amongst the TLRs, TLR2 can heterodimerize with other TLRs, and this provides a degree of specificity in ligand recognition.[30] The TLR1/TLR2 dimer binds triacylated lipopeptides whereas TLR2/TLR6 recognizes diacylated lipopepides. In the case of TLR2/6, one acyl chain fits into a hydrophobic pocket in one TLR, whereas the second acyl chain fits into the other TLR.[31] This allows the TLRs to dimerize, an important event for signaling. There is also a coreceptor for TLR2/6 in the form of CD36, which appears to deliver the

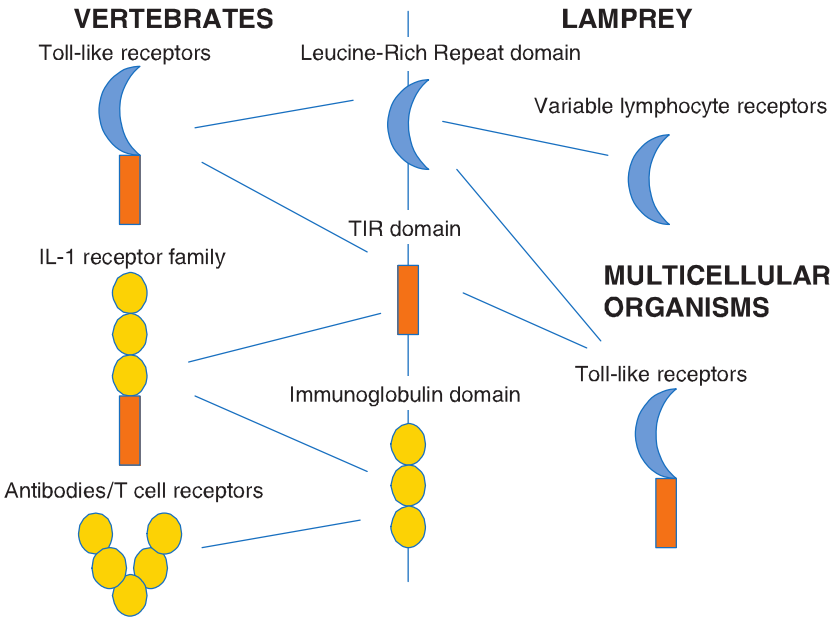


FIG. 15.3. Protein Domains in Innate and Adaptive Immunity. Three protein domains occur in several immune system proteins. The leucine-rich repeat occurs in toll-like receptors in vertebrates and all multicellular organisms combing with the toll-IL-1 receptor–resistance (TIR) domain. The leucine-rich repeat also forms the basis of the repertoire of variable lymphocyte receptors in the hagfish. The immunoglobulin domain only occurs in vertebrates and is found in antibodies and T-cell receptors. However, it also combines with the TIR domain to form interleukin-1 receptor family members.

lipopeptide to the TLR dimer.[32] TLR2 is expressed on macrophage, dendritic cells, B cells, and also on regulatory T cells.

Toll-Like Receptor 4

TLR4 is the receptor for LPS and is the most studied TLR. It acts as a homodimer but on its own is unable to recognize LPS. Similar to TLR2 and CD36, a coreceptor is needed, termed MD2.[33] LPS is a hexacylated lipid, and five of the acyl chains are buried in MD2, whereas the sixth is on the surface and interacts with TLR4.[34] However, two other proteins are needed to deliver LPS to MD2. LBP occurs in serum and binds LPS monomers, transferring them to CD14.[35] CD14 can occur as a soluble protein or as a glycerophosphatidylinositol anchored protein.[36] The job of CD14 appears to be to concentrate LPS and deliver it to MD2. In B cells, there are two other accessory molecules: RP105 and MD1.[37] These appear to serve an analogous function to CD14 and MD2. Recognition of LPS is therefore highly complex. This is presumably because once TLR4 is activated, there can be lethal consequences in the form of septic shock; therefore, several proteins are needed for LPS recognition. Similar to TLR2, a dimerization event occurs upon ligand binding that allows the intracellular TIR domains to come into juxtaposition and trigger signaling pathways. TLR4 has been shown to recognize other ligands, notably F protein from respiratory syncytial virus,[38] although the basis for this recognition is not known. Another example is the metal nickel. In contact dermatitis, there is an inflammatory reaction to nickel, and it has been shown that nickel coordinates two key histidines on different TLR4 proteins, causing a cross-linking event that activates TLR4 and drives the inflammatory process in skin.[39] TLR4 is expressed on multiple cell types, notably on macrophages and dendritic cells but also on neutrophils and in the endothelium.

Toll-Like Receptor 3

TLR3 is the receptor for double-stranded RNA, found in viruses or more commonly in the form of the viral RNA analogue polyIC. PolyIC had been known for some time to be a potent inducer of the antiviral type I interferons. Similar to LPS, therefore, the discovery of TLR3 as the receptor for polyIC provided a molecular explanation for how polyIC induces this response. TLR3 is expressed on macrophages and dendritic cells and importantly on CD8+ dendritic cells, which are potent type I interferon producers.

Toll-Like Receptor 5

TLR5 is the receptor for bacterial flagella.[40] Flagellin is a key protein in flagella, which occur in multiple bacteria species. Flagellin is in many ways a prototypical PAMP because it does not occur in humans and can bear few mutations in bacteria. TLR5 is therefore required for host defence against flagellated bacteria such as *Legionella* and *Salmonella*.

Toll-Like Receptor 7

TLR7 recognizes single-stranded RNA from viruses. It is highly expressed in plasmacytoid dendritic cells, where when activated it induces type I interferons. TLR7 was first described as the receptor for a small molecule termed imiquimod, which is used to treat genital warts. This effect is mediated by type I interferons. TLR7's expression on plasmocytoid dendritic cells reveals a key function in antiviral immunity.

Toll-Like Receptor 9

TLR9 is the deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) sensing TLR that, similar to TLR3 and TLR7, is found in endosomes. The type of DNA recognized is of interest as it binds to hypomethylated CpG-rich DNA, commonly found in bacteria and viruses. TLR9 is also expressed in plasmacytoid dendritic cells as well as in macrophages and in the epithelium. Once activated, again by dimerization, TLR9 induces a strong proinflammatory signal, increasing TNF production as well as type I interferons. A protein termed Unc93b is required to traffic TLR9 from the Golgi to intracellular vesicles. The CpG-rich DNA

from pathogens is taken up by cells in an endosome, which fuses with the TLR9-expressing endosome. In this way, the receptor can interact with its ligand. TLR9 has no known co-receptors, but it has been shown that it requires cleavage by cathepsins for full activation.[41]

The Recognition of Danger-Associated Molecular Patterns by Toll-Like Receptors

TLRs have also been implicated in the recognition of products of damaged tissues.[42] This is an important area as the inflammatory process can occur under conditions where there is apparently no infection. DAMPs include a range of factors released by damaged cells and include high-mobility group protein 1, heat shock proteins such as hsp90, products of damaged connective tissue such as hyaluronic acid fragments, versican and tenascin-C, the acute-phase reactant serum amyloid A, pyrrole-based lipids such as CEP, and coagulation products such as fibrinogen. This area has been somewhat controversial, as in vitro there is a risk of LPS contamination. However, the consensus has emerged that at least some of these are indeed sensed by TLRs although what the mechanism might be is not fully understood. Many of these are sensed by TLR4, notably high-mobility group protein-1, hsps, hyaluronan fragments, and tenascin-C. TLR2 has been shown to sense versican and CEP. Importantly, these factors are only produced by damaged cells, as would occur during tissue injury. There may be coreceptors involved here, which explains the recognition process, because it is difficult to imagine how a single TLR can recognize multiple ligands. A clearer example is the sensing of host nucleic acids in the case of cell damage. Necrotic cells have been shown to release double-stranded RNA, which is sensed by TLR3. TLR7 can sense host RNA, and TLR9 can sense host DNA in the context of immune complexes. This has particular relevance to autoimmune diseases such as systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE).[43]

Toll-Like Receptor Signaling Pathways

The key output from TLR signaling is cytokines, and TLRs filled the missing gap in our understanding of what actually induces cytokines. Because they bind directly to microbial ligands, TLRs bring us close to the initiation of host defense.

The type of cytokine being induced is dependent on the TLR. TLR4 is the most prodigious activator of macrophages known, with many genes induced by TLR4. Other TLRs are less prolific but all share the feature of driving inflammation. Cytokines such as IL-6, TNF, and the chemokine IL-8 are typical responses for plasma membrane receptors. For the endosomal TLRs, type I interferons are the typical readout. What gives rise to signaling specificity? As stated previously, TLRs use different adapter proteins. All have a TIR domain, and upon TLR dimerization, adapter TIR domains are likely to be recruited to the interface formed between two TLRs. This then launches the signaling pathways.

Broadly speaking, TLR signaling pathways can be divided into two: MyD88-dependent and MyD88-independent. All TLRs, with the exception of TLR3, signal via MyD88. IL-1 receptor family members, including the receptor for IL-18, also signal via MyD88.[44] The MyD88 dependent pathway involves the IL-1 receptor–associated kinases (IRAKs). There are four of these: IRAK-1, IRAK-2, IRAK-4, and IRAK-M. They interact with MyD88 via their death domains, because along with the TIR domain, MyD88 has a death domain. The structure of this multicomponent signaling machine, termed the MyDDosome, has been solved.[45,46] Strikingly, it has a stoichiometry of 14. SIx MyD88 subunits assemble and bring four IRAK-4s to the complex. These sit on top of the assembled MyD88 subunits in a helical structure. Four IRAK-2s or IRAK-4s are then recruited. All of the death domain interfaces in this complex have been solved, and it is predicted to have a high degree of cooperativity. The so-called MyDDosome launches signaling pathways activated by TLRs.

Once assembled, IRAK-4 phosphorylates IRAK-1, and this event appears to be key for signaling. The IRAKs then dissociate from the complex, and IRAK-1 and/or IRAK-2 then interact with the ubiquitin ligase Traf6, a member of the Traf family. Once activated, Traf-6 signals in association with two noncanonical E3 ubiquitin ligases, Ubc13 and Uev1A.[47] This results in polyubiquitination of Traf6. This is a type of ubiquitination termed K63-linked ubiquitination. This covalently modifies Traf-6 causing oligomerization and downstream activation. This activation involves the IkappaB kinase (IKK) complex for the NF-κB pathway. The main form of NF-κB in cells is a p50/p65 dimer. It is, however, kept in check by an inhibitory protein I-κB. Traf6 activates the kinase TAK-1, which in turn activates the IKK complex leading to I-κB degradation (via K48-linked polyubiquitination). This releases the p50/p65 dimer, exposing a nuclear localization sequence and allowing NF-κB to bind its consensus site in target genes. In addition, TAK-1 can activate MAP kinase cascades, notably via MKK3/6, which leads to p38 MAP kinase activation, and MKK7, which leads to activation of Jun N-terminal kinase . Both of these MAP kinases can activate transcription factors, such as ATF3 in the case of p38 and Jun in the case of Jun N-terminal kinase. This in turn will modulate inflammatory gene expression.[48]

MyD88 is also involved in activation of IRF7 by TLR7 and TLR9.[49] This is an important transcription factor for the induction of interferon–alpha, a key antiviral cytokine but also a cytokine implicated in the pathogenesis of SLE.

The importance of the MyD88 pathway can be seen in MyD88-deficient mice, which are unable to mount an effective host defense response to multiple pathogens, including a wide range of bacteria, as well as fungi, protozoans, and certain viruses.[50] In addition, MyD88-deficient mice are resistant to inflammation in a number of disease models including models of SLE and arthritis. However, in the case of humans, the situation is not as clear-cut. This is because of reports of MyD88 deficiency in human.[51] People with this deficiency show higher mortality in childhood but susceptibility to a restricted set of pathogens, the main defect in host defense being against pyogenic infections such as *Streptococci*. This is also the case in subjects with IRAK-4 deficiencies.[52] Once people with these deficiencies reach adulthood, however, no immunodeficiencies are evident. It is likely, therefore, that the MyD88 pathway is somewhat redundant in children and is not required in adults probably

because of the emergence of adaptive immunity. This supports the concept raised at the start of this chapter, that once memory is established, innate immunity is not as important.

The second TIR domain adapter to be found was Mal (also termed TIRAP).[53,54] This protein is required for MyD88-dependent signaling specifically by TLR2 and especially TLR4. It appears to act as a bridging adapter for MyD88 to be recruited to the receptor TIR domains and has a PIP2 binding domain which localizes it to the plasma membrane.[55] It is also a substrate for IRAK-1 and IRAK-4, and upon phosphorylation undergoes ubiquitination and degradation,[56] providing a negative feedback loop in TLR signaling.

The MyD88-independent signalling pathway involves the third adapter, Trif.[57] This adapter is used by TLR3 to signal and activates NF-κB as well as another transcription factor IRF3 via activation of the kinase TBK-1.[58] TLR4 can also activate Trif, but this happens in endosomes. The fourth adapter, Tram, mediates this effect, acting as a bridge for Trif in a manner similar to Mal acting as a bridge for MyD88.[59] Tram has a myristoylation motif that localizes it to the plasma membrane.[60] However, upon activation of TLR4, Tram undergoes phosphorylation by protein kinase C-epsilon.[61] This leads to dissociation of Tram from the plasma membrane, and it is likely that a TLR/Tram complex localizes to the endosome, where Trif is then recruited, again leading to TBK-1 activation and induction of type I interferons. The TLR4 signal is terminated by a splice variant of Tram termed TAG, which displaces the Trif/Tram complex.[62] It is this dual pathway, Mal/MyD88 and Tram/Trif, occurring at different subcellular localizations, that probably make LPS such a powerful innate immune activator, as a wide range of genes can be induced. Figure 15.4 illustrates the TLR4 signaling pathway.

The final TIR domain adaptor to be found is SARM. This is a large protein with a TIR domain and SAM and ARM domain. SARM is a negative regulator of Trif-dependent signaling, acting as another modulator of TLR4 action.[63] It is of interest that there are several mechanisms to inhibit TLR signaling, including microRNAs, decoy receptors, ubiquitin regulators (eg, A20), and splice variants of MyD88 and IRAK2 that are inhibitory.[64] This tells us that TLRs, and in particular TLR4, must be kept under control otherwise the host can be damaged or even succumb.

Viruses have also been shown to target TLRs. The best examples are two vaccinia virus proteins A46R and A52R.[65] A46R has been shown to block recruitment of TIR domain–containing adapters, particularly Mal and Tram.[66] A52R inhibits activation of the IRAKs.[67] Deletion of A52R leads to attenuation of the virus, confirming its importance for viral evasion.[68]

Conservation of the Toll-Like Receptor System Across Nature

Every multicellular organism has proteins with TIR domains, attesting to their evolutionary importance. A particular case is in plants, which have a number of TLRs.[69] As mentioned previously, N protein from tobacco has a TIR domain and is required for antiviral immunity. Similarly, L protein from flax has a TIR domain and is required for resistance to flax rust. Plants also have IRAK-like kinases activated by these receptors, notably BAK1 and BIK1 in Arabidopsis. The receptor for flagellin in Arabidopsis is sensed by a leucine rich repeat protein termed FLS-2. This receptor has an IRAK-like kinase domain actually attached and also activates BAK-1 and BIK-1. FLS-2 activates MAP kinases such as MEKK1, which probably lead to activation of the AtWRKY family of transcription factors. In addition, ubiquitin ligases termed PUBs ubiquitinate FLS-2, downregulating it.[70] The parallel in human is Triad3a, which ubiquinates TLR4 leading to its degradation.[71] These conserved elements confirm the importance of the TLR pathways across evolutionary time. Table 15.1 illustrates the conservation between mammals, insects, and plants.

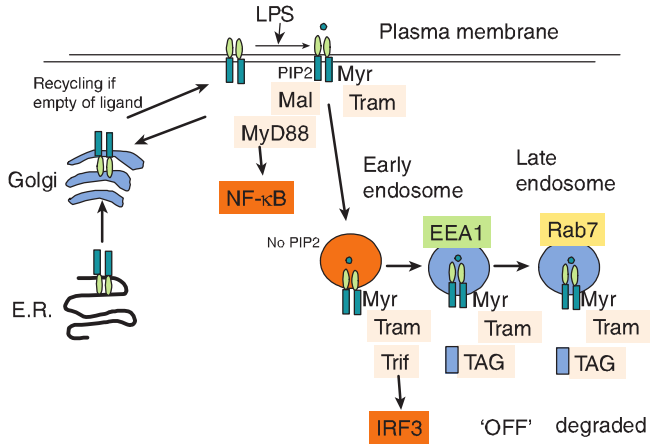


FIG. 15.4. Subcellular Toll-Like Receptor 4 Signaling. The signaling pathway, activated by lipopolysaccharide (LPS) via toll-like receptor-4 (TLR4), is highly complex. In resting cells, TLR4 recycles from the endoplasmic reticulum to the plasma membrane. An LPS/MD2 complex binds TLR4, stabilizing it transiently at the plasma membrane. The activated TLR4 dimer recruits the adapters Mal and MyD88, which then lead to activation of NF-κB, which induces multiple immune and inflammatory genes, such as tumor necrosis factor, interleukin-1beta, and interleukin-6. Mal is retained in the membrane by binding the phospholipid PIP2. Th adapter Tram is also membrane-localized via a myristate in its N-terminus. Tram then undergoes phosphorylation by protein kinase C-epsilon. TLR4 then internalizes in combination with Tram and localizes to an early endosome where it encounters Trif. This adapter activates TBK-1 and promotes IRF3 activation, which regulates the expression of type I interferons and other gene products. The endsome containing TLR4 then matures to a late endosome where TAG is engaged. This protein displaces Trif from Tram, and TLR4 is ultimately degraded.

Therapeutic Targeting of Toll-Like Receptors

TLRs are being targeted clinically, either in the form of new vaccine adjuvants or with inhibitors that would be anti-inflammatory.[72] The best example of an adjuvant approach is imiquimod, a compound found to be antiviral by activating TLR7. This induces type I interferons, and imiquimod is used to treat genital warts. Another example of an adjuvant approach is the use of monophosphoryl lipid A in vaccines for such pathogens as human papilloma virus. This acts via TLR4 but is not as toxic as LPS. In terms of anti-inflammatory

TABLE 15.1 Conservation of Innate Immunity across Species

	Human	Fruit Fly	Plant
Receptor (TIR domain)	Toll-like receptors	Toll	Tobacco: N protein Flax: L6
Adapter protein (TIR domain)	MyD88, Mal, Trif, Tram	dMyD88	
Non-RD kinase	IRAK-1	Pelle	Rice: XA21
RD kinase	IRAK-4		Arabidopsis: BIK1
Ankyrin repeat	IkappaB NF-κB	Cactus Relish	Rice: NH

RD, Arginine-Aspartic acid; TIR, toll-IL-1 receptor–resistance.
Notes: Each receptor senses microbial products and activates the adapters and kinases indicated. Human and insects have the NF-κB family transcription factors on these pathways. Plants lack NF-κB but have other transcription factors such as the WRKY family.

approaches, eritoran, an antagonist toward TLR4, has been tested in septic shock, but with only limited success. As referred to previously, TLR4 has also been implicated in the pathogenesis of contact dermatitis. It is also implicated in rheumatoid arthritis and inflammatory bowel disease. TLR2 has been shown to be important for ischemia/reperfusion injury and may prove interesting as a target to limit this process in transplantation.[73] There is promise that targeting TLR7 and/or TLR9 might be effective in SLE, as in this disease TLR7 senses host ribonucleoprotein complexes (known to be implicated in SLE) while TLR9 senses DNA/chromatin complexes (again implicated in SLE). Whether inhibiting TLRs will be prove to be to immunosuppressant remains to be seen, although given the redundancy in the TLR system in relation of host defense, this may not pose a problem, particularly if a given TLR has a nonredundant role in inflammatory disease.

NOD-Like Receptors

The second major family of PRRs are the NLRs.[74] Nod-like receptors undergo oligomerization in response to activation. They also have LRRs, similar to TLRs. There are several subfamilies that can be defined by additional domains. The main members are summarized in Table 15.2. Of particular interest are the NLRC family, which have antibacterial NOD1 and NOD2 as members and are defined by the caspase recruitment domain (CARD). The Nlrp subfamily contains a pyrin domain, and the prototypical member is Nlrp3, which is a key component of the inflammasome multiprotein complex that regulates caspase-1 and drives production of the proinflammatory cytokine IL-1beta. The NAIP subfamily contains a Bir domin. All NLRs are intracellular proteins, implying that ligands have to be endocytosed in order to activate them.

Nucleotide Oligomerization Domain 1 and Nucleotide Oligomerization Domain 2

NOD1 and NOD2 sense breakdown products of peptidoglyan, which is a major component of the cell wall of gram-positive and gram-negative bacteria. The finding that NOD2 mutations strongly associate with Crohn disease was an important finding. It supported the hypothesis that aberrant sensing of intestinal microbes is important for the pathogenesis of inflammatory bowel disease.[75] NOD2 detects muramyl dipeptide, whereas NOD1 detects *meso*-diaminopimelic acid. This latter component is more common in gram-negative bacteria. Peptidoglycan is constantly remodeled during bacterial growth, and the component parts are produced constantly, making them ideal PAMPs. How the ligands get into the cytosol is not wholly clear, however. Transport systems such as pannexin, PepT1, and PepT2 have been shown to carry muramyl peptides across the plasma membrane, and there is also evidence of endocytosis.[76] NOD1 and NOD2 signaling leads to NF-κB and MAP kinase activation in a manner similar to TLRs. There are no adapters, however, and they recruit RIP2 kinase to activate these downstream pathways. NOD1 and NOD2 agonists can synergise with TLRs, which is likely to be important in vivo.[77]

Role of Nucleotide Oligomerization Domain 1 in Antimicrobial Responses

The first pathogen shown to be sensed by NOD1 in vivo was *Helicobacter pylori*; NOD1-deficient mice were demonstrated to be more susceptible.[78] Key outputs from NOD1 in this model are chemokines, antimicrobial peptides, and type I interferons. NOD1 has also been shown to be important in the host defense response to other pathogens,

TABLE 15.2 Notable Nucleotide Oligomerization Domain–Like Receptor Family Members

Subfamily	N-terminus	Function
NLRB (NAIP)	BIR	Binds flagellin
NLRC		
NOD1	CARD	Binds ieDAP
NOD2	CARD	Binds MDP
NLRC4	CARD	Binds flagellin/NAIP
NLRP		
NLRP1	Pyrin domain	Binds anthrax lethal toxin
NLRP3	Pyrin domain	Mutiple activators (eg, uric acid, IAPP, cholesterol crystals)

BIR, Baculo Virus Repeat; CARD, caspase recruitment domain; IAPP, islet amyloid polypeptide; ieDAP, Diaminopimelic acid; MDP, Muramyl Dipeptide; NAIP, Neuronal Apoptosis Inhibitory Protein; NLRB, Nod-like receptor with BIR domain; NLRP, Nod-like receptor with Pyrin domain; NOD, nucleotide oligomerization domain.

including *Clostridium difficile*, *Legionella pneumophilia*, and *Listeria monocytogenes*.[79] In all cases, impaired recruitment of neutrophils was a feature of the NOD1-deficient mice, highlighting again the importance of neutrophils in antibacterial host defense. NOD1-deficient mice have also been shown to be impaired in their response to the intracellular parasite *Trypanosome cruzi*.[80] Although the *T. cruzi* ligand is not known, macrophages from the deficient mice have an impaired ability to kill intracellular parasites.

Role of Nucleotide Oligomerization Domain 2 in the Antimicrobial Response

Similar to NOD1, NOD2 has been shown to be important for host defense against multiple bacteria. One interesting aspect, however, was that NOD2 was only shown to be required for host defense against *L. monocytogenes* when given by the oral route.[81] Intravenous and intraperitoneal infections were handled normally in NOD2-deficient mice. This suggests that other PRRs can compensate for the lack of NOD2 depending on the route of infection. There is also redundancy in relation to NOD1 in the response to *Salmonella typhiurium* infection. NOD1- or NOD2-deficient mice are normal in their response, but the double knockout is impaired, with decreased inflammation and enhanced colonization of the intestine.[82]

Autophagy, Adaptive Immunity, and Nucleotide Oligomerization Domain 1 and Nucleotide Oligomerization Domain 2

Another interesting aspect of NOD1 and NOD2 biology concerns a process termed autophagy. This is a process whereby an organelle called the autophagosome digests material in the cytosol of cells. Autophagosomes are related to lysosomes and were originally shown to be important in development and in starvation where in effect a cell will digest some of its own contents to provide nutrients. Autophagy has also been found to be important in antimicrobial immunity. It is an important part of intracellular innate immunity and may in fact be the means by which cells such as macrophages clear bacteria in a process that was originally thought to involve the lysosome. Autophagosomes can be viewed as a subtype of lysosome. These insights came from the uncovering of proteins required for the formation of the autophagosome, notably ATG16, which is recruited to membranes and allows formation of the autophagosomal double membrane structure. NOD1 and NOD2 activation have been shown to lead to recruitment of ATG16L to the plasma membrane sites where *S. typhimurium* and *Shigella flexneri* intrude.[83] This leads to degradation of bacteria in autophagosomes and importantly to the processing of bacterial antigens for presentation on major histocompatibility complex class II molecules. This is a classic example of the link between innate and adaptive immunity. Also of interest is the observation of mutations in ATG16L in Crohn disease and the observation that the mutant NOD2 also in Crohn disease is less able to drive ATG16L recruitment.[84] This could mean that impaired antigen presentation to T cells (eg, regulatory T cells that produce IL-10) might be important in Crohn disease pathogenesis.

There is additional evidence that NOD1 and NOD2 promote adaptive immunity. This was first observed when it was realized that muramyl dipeptide was a key component in Freund's adjuvant, a standard adjuvant used in experimental immunology to drive antibody production. This is probably due to NOD2 inducing important T-cell–activating cytokines, but there is also evidence for NOD2 in T cells themselves where it promotes interferon-gamma production.

Inflammasomes

There are 14 members in the Nlrp branch of the NLRs, and those with a known function are components in inflammasomes. The term inflammasome comes from the fact that the regulation of caspase-1 was shown to be due to assembly of a multiprotein complex involving Nlrps and also the scaffold protein Asc.[85] This complex is needed for the activation of caspase-1, the enzyme that processes the pro-forms of IL-1beta and IL-18. Given the importance of these cytokines in inflammation and inflammatory diseases, much attention has focused on inflammasome regulation.

Nlrp3

The Nlrp3 inflammasome has been characterized in detail. Nlrp3 has a carboxy-terminal LRR domain, a central NOD domain, and an amino terminal pyrin domain. The pyrin domain mainly interacts with the key scaffold protein Asc. It is triggered by agents phagocytosed by macrophages, including bacteria and viruses, but also particles such as uric acid, silica, asbestos and cholesterol crystals, and amyloid-containing proteins such as beta-amyloid and islet amyloid polypeptide (IAPP).[86] Uric acid, cholesterol crystals, beta-amyloid, and IAPP all constitute DAMPs. Activation mechanisms are not fully worked out, although potassium efflux is a common event that is required for oligomerization of the Nlrp3/Asc complex. Roles for reactive oxygen species and cathepsins have also been suggested.[87,88] CARD domains in Asc and caspase interact, whereas the pyrin domain in Nlrp3 interacts with the pyrin domain in Asc, allowing for the complex to assemble. This is needed to activate caspase-1. Extracellular adenosine triphosphate is also able to activate the Nlrp3 inflammasome. Also of note is the fact that the system must be primed by other innate receptors, notably the TLRs, which induce Nlrp3 and also pro-IL-1beta expression.

The effect of uric acid on Nlrp3 is of interest because uric acid may be a common danger signal from damaged cells, as well as having a clear role in gout.[89,90] Similarly, the inflammation associated with silica and asbestos is likely to be due Nlrp3 activation.[91] The effect of cholesterol crystals, which form in atherosclerotic plaques, on Nlrp3 implicates the inflammasome in heart disease.[92] Similarly, the effect of beta-amyloid suggests a role in Alzheimer disease.[93] In the case of IAPP, a role in type 2 diabetes is suggested.[94] IL-1 has been implicated in insulin resistance and beta cell loss in type 2 diabetes, but s there is no infection, what drives IL-1beta is not clear. Hyperlipidemia is now known to activate the Nlrp3 inflammasome in adipose tissue.[95] This will

lead to IL-1beta release, which causes insulin resistance. The beta cells in the pancreas respond by secreting insulin, but also IAPP, which modulates insulin action. However, IAPP can form amyloid, and macrophages in the pancreas take up IAPP; the Nlrp3 inflammasome is activated leading to IL-1beta production. These findings support the clinical targeting of IL-1beta in several diseases notably type 2 diabetes and atherosclerosis.[96]

Another important aspect of the Nlrp3 inflammasome concerns genetic mutations. Activating mutations in Nlrp3 lead to autoinflammatory diseases such as Muckle Wells disease and familial Mediteranean fever.[97] Autoinflammatory diseases such as these are prototypical genetic diseases of innate immunity because there are only inflammatory symptoms with no roles for T and B cells and autoimmunity. The diseases are systemic, involving skin inflammation, arthropathy, and amyloidosis. They are treatable with anti-IL-1beta blocking agents, attesting to the potency of this proinflammatory cytokine.

Nlrp3 in Host Defense

Several bacteria have been shown to activate the Nlrp3 inflammasome. A common feature is pore-forming toxins that cause potassium efflux. *Listeria* produces a toxin called listeriolysin that is required for Nlrp3 activation.[98] Secretion of pneumolysin by *S. pneumoniae* or streptolysin O from *S. pyogenes* both result in activation of the Nlrp3 inflammasome.[99]

Nlrp3 is also activated by viruses. Influenza is a potent Nlrp3 activator, and Nlrp3-deficient mice are less able to survive influenza infection.[100] Viral RNA was shown to prime the inflammasome via TLR7, whereas activation of Nlrp3 was mediated by the influenza-encoded M2 ion channel, which led to potassium efflux.[101] Other viruses such as the DNA viruses vaccinia and varicella zoster, and RNA viruses such as encephalomyocarditis virus and vesicular stomatits virus all activate the Nlrp3 inflammasome.[102] It is therefore likely that the Nlrp3 inflammasome is key for the fever response to all these viruses, as IL-1beta is a key pyrogen during infection.

The Nlrp3 inflammasome can also be activated by fungi, notably *Candida albicans* and *Saccharomyces cerevisiase*.[103] Again, there is interplay with TLRs, as zymosan (a PAMP in the cell wall of yeast) acting via TLR2 primes the Nlrp3 inflammasome for activation. *Aspergillus fumigatus* can also activate the inflammasome.[104]

Finally, parasites can also activate the Nlrp3 inflammasome. *Plasmodium falciparum*, the causative agent of malaria, secretes a crystal called hemazoin, which activates Nlrp3.[105] Malaria severity is less in Nlrp3-deficient mice. Schistosomes have also been shown to activate Nlrp3.

Overall, therefore, fever, a common response to infection, is likely to involve the Nlrp3 inflammasome in many cases.

IPAF

Another inflammasome complex comprises the NLR IPAF, also known as NLRC4. IPAF contains an N-terminal CARD, a central NOD domain, and a C-terminal LRR. It responds to bacterial flagellin, which activates caspase-1 via IPAF.[106] Bacteria such as *Salmonella* are sensed by IPAF. The interaction between IPAF and caspase-1 again involves CARD domains. More generally, IPAF is activated mainly by gram-negative bacteria that contain bacterial type III or type IV secretion systems. These include *Salmonella*, *Legionella*, *Shigella*, *Pseudomonas*, and *Yersinia*.[107] Several of these strains when deficient in flagellin do not activate caspase-1. Flagellin added extracellularly does not activate the IPAF inflammasome and is likely to enter the cytosol via the type III or type IV secretion systems. IPAF has a coreceptor that is another NLR family member NAIP5. This protein interacts directly with flagellin and is the actual sensor, the signaling occurring via IPAF.[108] Similar to NODs and TLRs, there is also evidence for an interaction between IPAF and TLR5. In a model of immunization with ovalbumin and flagellin, it was shown that IPAF- or TLR5-deficient mice are normal in the humoral response, but a double knockout mouse was deficient in its response.[109] This implies that both IPAF and TLR5 are acting in a redundant manner in this system. More generally, it is no surprise that innate systems would be redundant in terms of host defense, as a lack of redundancy would leave the host open to manipulation by pathogens.

Nlrp1

The Nlrp1 inflammasome was the first to be characterized biochemically, but its activators are not fully understood. It is expressed in many cell types, including granulocytes, monocytes, dendritic cells, B cells, T cells, and neurons. It also interacts with Asc, and there is evidence for both caspase-1 and caspase-5 in the Nlrp1 inflammasome. Anthrax toxin has been shown to be sensed by Nlrp1, and in mice the Nlrp1b isoform has been shown to be a key determinant of susceptibility to infection by *Bacillus anthracis*.[110] A role for Nlrp1 in antiviral immunity is suggested from the observation that Kaposi sarcoma herpes virus encodes a protein called Orf63 that blocks Nlrp1-dependent responses and is required for reactivation and generation of progeny virus.[111] Finally, mutations in Nlrp1 are associated with the skin disease vitiligo.[112]

AIM2

The final inflammasome to be characterized contains AIM2, which also couples to caspase-1 via Asc. AIM2 is a member of the PYHIN family of proteins, which contain a pyrin domain and HIN200 domain, which binds DNA.[113] The pyrin domain in AIM2 allows it to interact with Asc. It is activated directly by DNA and has been shown to be activated by DNA from bacteria such as *Listeria monocytogenes* and *Francisella tularensis*, and viruses such as vaccinia virus and cytomegalovirus.[114] Responses to these pathogens in vivo are all impaired in AIM2-deficient mice.

Retinoic Acid-Inducible Gene I–Like Receptors

RLRs are a family of RNA helicases that contain a DExD/H box as the defining protein domain.[115] They occur in the cytosol of most cell types and sense viral RNA. The key output from RLRs is type I interferons. There are three RLRs: RIG-I, melanoma differentiation associated factor 5 (Mda5), and laboratory of genetics and physiology 2.

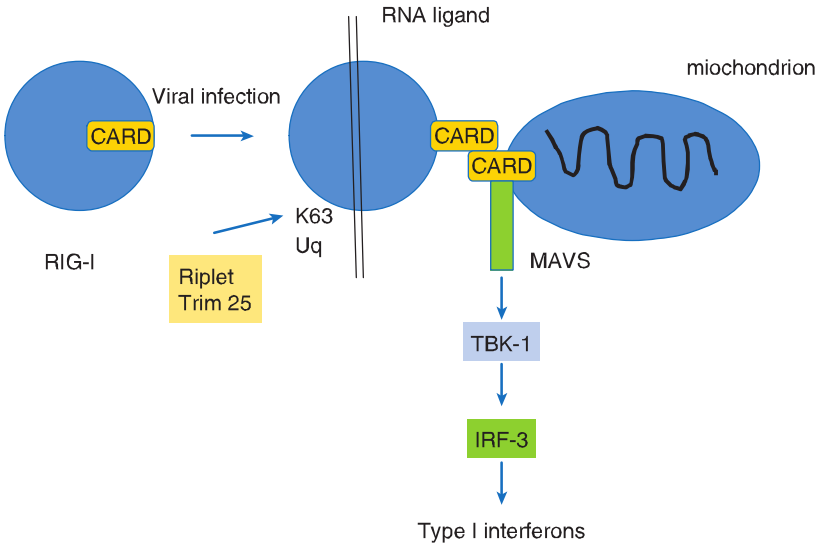


FIG. 15.5. Retinoic Acid-inducible Gene I (RIG-I) Signaling. In response to viruses such as influenza, RIG-I is activated by viral ribonucleic acid. This leads to a dramatic conformational change, such that the caspase recruitment domain (CARD) domains (*orange*) move out from the protein structure and engage with the CARD domain in MAVS, which is in the mitochondrial outer membrane. RIG-I also undergoes K63-linked ubiquitination by Riplet and TRIM25, an event required for activation. MAVS then activates TBK-1, which phosphorylates IRF3, leading to induction of type I interferons and an antiviral response.

Figure 15.5 illustrates RIG-I signaling. RIG-I and Mda5 sense a wide range of viruses and have shared structural features. They both have two CARD domains, a DEAD box Helicase domain, a repressor domain, and a C-terminal domain. Structural insights have revealed that upon binding RNA, a major conformational change occurs releasing the repressor domain and shifting the two CARDs out of the protein to engage with the downstream signaling molecule MAVS.[116–118] Laboratory of genetics and physiology 2 lacks the CARDs and is thought to function as a regulator of RIG-I and Mda5 signaling.

Viruses detected by RLRs include Sendai, respiratory syncytial virus, measles, rabies, influenza, Ebola, hepatitis C, myxoma, West Nile virus, dengue, and vaccinia. RIG-I preferentially recognizes RNA sequences that contain 5′triphosphorylated ends, which serves to distinguish them from host RNA sequences.[119] Polyuridine motifs in the RNA are also important for recognition, and such motifs occur in hepatitis C, Ebola, and influenza virus.

Retinoic Acid-Inducible Gene I–Like Receptor Signaling

The key process in the RLR signaling mechanism is the recruitment of the adapter protein MAVS (also known as IPS-1, Visa, and Cardif). MAVS is a membrane-bound CARD-containing protein that occurs in the outer mitochondrial membrane and also on the membrane of peroxisomes.[120] Activation of RIG-I and Mda5 leads to a translocation to these membranes via the interaction with MAVS. The transcription factors IRF3 and IRF7 are activated by MAVS via the kinases TBK-1 and IKK-epsilon.[121] These in turn lead to induction of type I interferons and other anti-viral genes, with the type I interferons then activating subsequent antiviral responses via the JAK/STAT signaling pathway. RIG-I can also interact with Asc and activate caspase-1, placing RIG-I as another inflammasome component.[122] Another key protein that interacts with RIG-I is STING. This protein was found to be involved in DNA-dependent signaling but also appears to be involved in RNA-dependent signaling via RIG-I.[123]

An excellent example of immune evasion by viruses is the targeting of MAVS by the hepatitis C protease NS4.[124] This leads to MAVS degradation and impaired RIG-I signaling. NS4 is currently the focus of targeting by a protease inhibitor, which could have utility in the treatment of hepatitis C.[125]

RIG-I signaling is a tightly controlled process as overactivation could kill the host; in fact, this may be the reason for the lethal effects of influenza and other viruses. Ubiquitination is a key process here. K63-linked ubiquitination of RIG-I by the ubiquintin ligase Riplet is required for RIG-I signaling.[126] TRIM25 also causes K63-linked ubiquitination, and this has been shown to enhance the interaction with MAVS.[127] RNF125, on the other hand, causes K48-linked ubiquination of RIG-I, leading to its degradation in the proteosome.[128] The deubiquitinase CYLD removes the K63-linked ubiquitin from RIG-I, inhibiting RIG-I activity.[129] Reversible ubiquitination is therefore a key control mechanism for RIG-I.

Cooperation between Retinoic Acid-Inducible Gene I–Like Receptors and Other Pattern Recognition Receptors in Antiviral Immunity

As is the case with NLRs and TLRs, RLRs and other PRRs also cooperate in host defense, in this case against viruses. A good example is the response to West Nile virus. This virus is transmitted by mosquitoes; upon injection into skin, RIG-I triggers an interferon response from resident Langerhans cells and skin fibroblasts.[130] Some virus will then disseminate to the draining lymph node where it infects resident macrophages and dendritic cells. The TLRs are then engaged, particularly TLR7, and induce cytokines to promote adaptive immunity.[131] Some virus will escape to the spleen, and RIG-I will again be engaged here. The situation for TLR3 is more complex because TLR3-deficient mice have improved survival rates.[132] SARM knockout mice, on the other hand, have increased lethality,[133] consistent with the inhibitory effect of SARM on TLR3 signaling.

Retinoic Acid-Inducible Gene I–Like Receptors and Adaptive Immunity

As with other PRRs, RLRs have also been shown to be key for adaptive immunity via the induction of cytokines, in this case type I interferons. Interferons are key regulators of T cells, promoting their survival and clonal expansion after antigen presentation. Interferons also promote the activity of cytotoxic T cells and promote antibody production in B cells. They also promote major histocompatibility complex class I expression as well as costimulatory molecules on dendritic cells.

PKR, 2′-5′-Oligoadenylate Synthase, and RNaseL

Prior to the RLRs, PKR and 2′-5′-oligoadenylate synthase were known to sense viral RNA. PKR is a serine/threonine protein kinase that contains three double-stranded RNA binding domains in the N terminus and a kinase domain in the C terminus.[134] It is activated by double-stranded RNA and therefore acts as an intracellular PRR. A key substrate for PKR is the translation initiation factor eIF-2alpha.[135] This directly restricts both cellular and viral protein synthesis. PKR can also induce apoptosis in virally infected cells.

Oligoadenylate synthase (OAS) is another double-stranded RNA sensor.[136] It is highly induced by Type I interferons. Oligoadenylate produced by OAS activates RNAseL.[137] This enzyme degrades viral RNA but can also degrade ribosomal RNA, limiting translation of host and viral mRNAs. Of particular note is the observation that RNAseL can also generate ligands for RIG-I from viral RNA.[138] This indicates that the OAS/RNAseL axis can serve to amplify antiviral responses triggered by double-stranded RNA. There is also evidence that RNAseL can also promote Mda5 activation. Based on the nature of RNAseL-generated products, both RIG-I and Mda5 can therefore recognize fragments of RNA that are specific cleavage products from viral RNA.

Cytosolic Sensors of Dexoyribonucleci Acid that Induce Type I Interferons

The process of DNA sensing in the cytosol that leads to type I interferons is not as well understood as RNA sensing. As mentioned previously, TLR9 can sense hypomethylated CpG motifs in DNA, but this occurs in endosomes. Intracellular delivery of mammalian or bacterial DNA can, however, induce type I interferons in a TLR9-independent manner. The pathway was shown to involve IRF3 and TBK-1, as with RLRs. Three mechanisms have been proposed. The first is DNA-dependent activator of IFN-regulatory factor (DAI) that interacts with DNA and enhances type I interferons.[139] The precise role of DAI, however, is not clear because DAI-deficient mice have a normal response to infection with DNA viruses.[140] The second mechanism involves RNA polymerase III. This host enzyme has been shown to convert viral DNA into RNA, which can then be detected by RIG-I.[141] This process has been shown to occur during infection with Epstein-Barr virus, herpes virus. and the bacterium *Legionella pneumoniea*. The third process involves DNA sensing with IFI16.[142] This protein was identified as the product of an interferon-inducible gene and was then shown to bind a 70-base-pair double-stranded DNA sequence from vaccinia. Of particular interest is the structure of IFI16 because, similar to AIM2, it also senses DNA but activates caspase-1. IFI16 has a pyrin domain and two HIN200 domains, placing it in the PYHIN family. AIM2 and IFI16 are therefore part of the AIM2-like receptor family.

IFI16 signals via a protein termed STING, which is found in the endoplasmic reticulum membrane.[143] DAI has also been found to signal via STING. The function of STING is to interact with TBK-1 and promote IRF3 activation. STING is in fact essential for TBK-1 activation. STING-deficient mice have impaired interferon induction in response to bacterial, viral, and mammalian DNA, as well as to several DNA viruses, including herpes simplex virus-1, human cytomegalovirus, vaccinia virus and baculovirus, and *Plasmodium falciparum*.[144,145] STING is also required for the immune response to DNA vaccines, presumably because of the essential role it plays in the induction of interferons.

STING also plays a role in the induction of interferon by *Francisella tularensis* and *Listeria monocytogenes*. Cyclic dinucleotides produced by *Listeria* have been shown to be directly sensed by STING, implying that it is actually a PRR for these dinucleotides.[146]

There is also evidence for viral evasion of DNA-sensing pathways. Cytomegalovirus encodes a protein termed M45 that blocks DAI signaling.[147] Another cytomegalovirus protein is pUL83, which inhibits IFI16.[148] The pox virus protein M13L has been shown to target AIM2.[149]

C-Type Lectin Receptors

The term C-type lectin was first used to describe a family of calcium (hence "C")-dependent carbohydrate-binding (lectin) proteins.[150] The carbohydrate binding region was in a carbohydrate recognition domain and the more general term C-type lectin domain is used to describe this family of receptors. Dectin-1 is the best characterized member. It recognizes β-1,3-linked glucans, which occur in the cell wall of fungi, some bacteria, and plants.[151] It binds a range of fungal pathogens, including *Candida*, *Aspergillu*, *Coccidiodes*, *Pneumocystis*, and also bacterial pathogens such as *Mycobacteria*.[151] Two related proteins are CLEC-2 and DNGR-1.[152,153] CLEC-2 has been shown to bind HIV, whereas DNGR-1 has been shown to bind an unknown ligand sequestered in living cells and exposed upon cell death. All three of these C-type lectin receptors (CLRs) signal via a tyrosine kinase termed Syk.[154] This protein couples to CARD9, which in turn can activate NF-κB and promote inflammatory gene expression. It has also been shown to activate Nlrp3 and promote IL-1beta production,[155] These CLRs can also promote phagocytosis. Similar to other PRRs, there are also synergies. Dectin-1 and TLR2 when both activated strongly promote the production of proinflammatory cytokines.[156]

DC-SIGN is another CLR but instead of signaling via Syk, it activates Raf-1 and promotes MAP kinase activation.[157] It binds to mannose and fucose and has been shown to bind HIV, measles virus, severe acute respiratory syndrome, dengue virus, and mycobacteria. Raf-1 is able to modulate the

NF-κB pathway by regulating phosphorylation of the p65 subunit of NF-κB.

Phagocytic Receptors

The PRRs clearly form a major class of innate immune receptors. What distinguishes them from other innate recognition systems is their ability to change gene expression in target cells, the complexity of the gene expression profiles ultimately giving rise to the specific effector mechanisms required to clear the provoking pathogen. Another group of pathogen sensors, however, are proteins that recognize the pathogen but whose function it is to promote phagocytosis.

Scavenger receptors. Scavenger receptors (SRs) are in the plasma membrane and are defined by their ability to bind modified low-density lipoprotein.[158] Six classes are known but most is known about two: SR-A and macrophage receptor with collagenous structure. Both contain a collagenous region and an SR cysteine-rich domain. Both are trimers. They have a role in low-density lipoprotein uptake, but also recognize LPS and lipoteichoic acid from bacteria. SR-A–deficient mice are more susceptible to infection by *Listeria monocytogenes*, herpes simplex, and malaria.[159] They are also more susceptible to LPS-induced sepsis, implying a role in LPS clearance. Macrophage receptor with collagenous structure can bind gram-positive and gram-negative bacteria and promote their phagocytosis.[160]

Macrophage mannose receptor. The macrophage mannose receptor (MR) is a protein found in the plasma membrane of macrophages and contains cysteine-rich and fibronectin type 2 domains, followed by eight carbohydrate recognition domains of the C-type lectin family.[161] MR recognizes mannose-rich carbohydrates from bacteria but can also promote phagocytosis of high-mannose glycoproteins from the host. MR has been shown to be required for phagocytosis of multiple bacteria, fungi, and protozoans. There is evidence that MR can complex with TLRs and promote TLR signaling,[162] yet another example of cooperation between PRRs.

Secreted pattern recognition molecules. There are also a range of secreted pattern recognition molecules that have various functions, although a unifying feature is opsonization. They are secreted into the circulation during infection and can reach high concentrations, effectively acting as acute phase proteins. Three classes have been particularly well-studied.

Mannan-binding lectin. MBL is the best characterized of the collectin family, which have a C-type lectin domain.[163] It binds to the terminal mannose and fucose residents on microbial carbohydrates and importantly can recognize the spatial arrangement of these sugars, which differs according to the host forms. It recognizes a wide range of pathogens, including *Staphylococci*, *Streptococci*, *Pseudomonas*, *Klebsiella*, *Salmonella*, *Mycobacteria*, *Candida*, influenza, human immunodeficiency virus, and trypanosomes. As can be seen from this list, MBL can therefore recognize all classes of pathogens. The main function of MBL is to activate the lectin pathway of complement. It is associated with two serine proteases, MASP-1 and MASP-2.[164] These proteases, when activated by ligand-bound MBL, cleave the C2 and C4 complement proteins initiating the complement cascade. MBL can also act as an opsonin, binding to C1qRp. MBL deficiency has been found in humans and leads to increased susceptibility to various infections.[165]

Pentraxins. C-reactive protein (CRP) and serum amyloid P both belong to the pentraxin family.[166] They are acute phase protein in human and mouse, respectively. They are produced mainly by hepatocytes in response to cytokines such as IL-1 and IL-6. They bind to bacterial surfaces and recognize phosphorylcholine. They promote opsonization and can activate the classical complement pathway via C1q. CRP is a classical diagnostic indicator of inflammation. Another pentraxin is PTX3, which plays an important role in host defense against bacteria and fungi.[167] It is expressed on multiple cell types, including dendritic cells, macrophages, and neutrophils. It is strongly induced by TLRs. Similar to CRP and serum amyloid P, it binds directly to bacterial and fungal membranes and promotes phagocytosis.

Peptidoglycan recognition proteins. Peptidoglycan recognition proteins are a family of PRRs that bind peptidoglycan.[168] They are conserved across evolution and were first described in *Drosophila*. They all contain a highly conserved peptidoglycan domain, and some also have transmembrane domains. Most are secreted, however. Four have been described in humans. Their functions have yet to be fully elucidated, although they can clearly bind peptidoglycan. There is some evidence that they might compete with other peptidoglyan recognition PRRs, such as TLR2, possibly acting to limit inflammation, although this has to be demonstrated.

CONCLUSION

Clearly our knowledge of innate immune processes has greatly improved in the past few years. Multiple mechanisms exist that keep pathogens at bay, and several receptor classes can drive innate defence mechanisms via the production of effector cytokines and other mediators. The innate immune system provides an important link to the adaptive response, mainly via the activation of dendritic cells. Other cell types that participate include mast cells, basophils, and natural killer cells, which are discussed at length elsewhere. Innate immunity therefore provides us with a first line of defense, but via the inflammatory response and the activation of adaptive immunity orchestrates the major mechanisms that lead to restoration of the host after infection.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

This work is supported by Science Foundation Ireland and the European Research Council.

REFERENCES

1. Medzhitov R, Janeway CA Jr. Decoding the patterns of self and nonself by the innate immune system. *Science*. 2002;296(5566):298–300. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11951031
2. Dinarello CA. Immunological and inflammatory functions of the interleukin-1 family. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 2009;27:519–550. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19302047
3. Guarda G, Dostert C, Staehli F, et al. T cells dampen innate immune responses through inhibition of NLRP1 and NLRP3 inflammasomes. *Nature*. 2009;460(7252):269–273. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19494813
4. O'Neill LAJ. Immunity's early warning system. *Scientific American*. 2005;292:38–45. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15724335
5. Irvine AD, McLean WH, Leung DY. Filaggrin mutations associated with skin and allergic diseases. *N Engl J Med*. 2011;365(14):1315–1327. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21991953
6. Liu Z, Shi C, Yang J, et al. Molecular regulation of the intestinal epithelial barrier: implication in human diseases. *Front Biosci*. 2011;17:2903–2909. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21622211
7. Foster WM, Langenback EG, Bergofsky EH. Disassociation in the mucociliary function of central and peripheral airways of asymptomatic smokers. *Am Rev Respir Dis*. 1985;132(3):633–639. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2864009
8. Fahy JV, Dickey BF. Airway mucus function and dysfunction. *N Engl J Med*. 2010;363(23):2233–2247. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21121836
9. Wiesner J, Vilcinskas A. Antimicrobial peptides: the ancient arm of the human immune system. *Virulence*. 2010;1(5):440–464. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21178486
10. Levy O. Antimicrobial proteins and peptides of blood: templates for novel antimicrobial agents. *Blood*. 2000;96 8):2664–2672. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11023496
11. Laine VJ, Grass DS, Nevalainen TJ. Protection by group II phospholipase A2 against Staphylococcus aureus. *J Immunol*. 1999;162(12):7402–7408. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10358193
12. Elsbach P, Weiss J. Role of the bactericidal/permeability increasing protein in host defence. *Curr Opin Immunol*. 1998;10(1):45–49. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9523110
13. Hoek KS, Milne JM, Grieve PA, Dionysius DA, Smith R. Antibacterial activity in bovine lactoferrin-derived peptides. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother*. 1997;41(1):54–59. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8980754
14. Wells JM, Rossi O, Meijerink M, van Baarlen P. Epithelial cross-talk at the microbiota-mucosal interface. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2011;108(suppl 1):4607–4614. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20826446
15. Bogdan C, Rollinghof M, Diefenbach A. Reactive oxygen and reactive nitrogen intermediates in innate and specific immunity. *Curr Opin Immunol*. 2000;12(1):64–76. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10679404
16. Segal AW. How neutrophils kill microbes. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 2005;23:197–223. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15771570
17. Janeway CA Jr. Approaching the asymptote? Evolution and revolution in immunology. *Co Spring Harb Symp Quant Biol*. 1989;54(pt 1):1–13. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2700931
18. Matzinger P. Tolerance, danger, and the extended family. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 1994;12:991–1045. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8011301
19. Gay NJ, Keith FJ. Drosophila toll and IL-1 receptor. *Nature*. 1991;351(6325):355–356. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1851964
20. Whitham S, Dinesh-Kumar SP, Choi D, Hehl R, Corr C, Baker B. The product of the tobacco mosaic virus resistance gene N: similarity to toll and the interleukin-1 receptor. *Cell*. 1994;78(6):1101–1115. Erratum in: *Cell*. 1995;81(3):466. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7923359
21. Lemaitre B, Nicolas E, Michaut L, Reichhart JM, Hoffmann JA. The dorsoventral regulatory gene cassette spätzle/toll/cactus controls the potent antifungal response in Drosophila adults. *Cell*. 1996;86(6):973–983. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8808632
22. Rock FL, Hardiman G, Timans JC, Kastelein RA, Bazan JF. A family of human receptors structurally related to Drosophila Toll. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1998;95(2):588–593. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9435236
23. Medzhitov R, Preston-Hurlburt P, Janeway CA Jr. A human homologue of the Drosophila Toll protein signals activation of adaptive immunity. *Nature*. 1997;388:394–397. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9237759
24. Poltorak A, Smirnova I, Clisch R, Beutler B. Defective LPS signalling in C3H/HeJ and C57BL/10ScCr mice: mutations in the Tlr4 gene. *Science*. 1998;282(5396):2085–2088. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9851930
25. Satake H, Sasaki N. Comparative overview of toll-like receptors in lower animals. *Zoolog Sci*. 2010;27(2):154–161. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20141420
26. Medzhitov R. Inflammation 2010: new adventures of an old flame. *Cell*. 2010;140(6):771–776. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20303867
27. Herrin BR, Cooper MD. Alternative adaptive immunity in jawless vertebrates. *J Immunol*. 2010;185(3):1367–1374. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20660361
28. Kang JY, Lee JO. Structural biology of the toll-like receptor family. *Annu Rev Biochem*. 2011;80:917–941. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21548780
29. O'Neill LA, Bowie AG. The family of five: TIR domain containing adapters in TLR signalling. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2007;7:353–364. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17457343
30. Ozinsky A, Underhill DM, Fontenot JD, et al. The repertoire for pattern recognition of pathogens by the innate immune system is defined by co-operation between toll-like receptors. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2000;97(25):13766–13771. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11095740
31. Jin MS, Kim SE, Heo JY, et al. Crystal structure of the TLR1-TLR2 heterodimer induced by binding of a tri-acylated lipopeptide. *Cell*. 2007;130(6):1071–1082. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17889651
32. Hoebe K, Georgel P, Rutschmann S, et al. CD36 is a sensor of diglycerides. *Nature*. 2005;433(7025):523–527. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15690042
33. Shimazu R, Akashi S, Ogata H, et al. MD2, a molecule that confers lipopolysaccharide responsiveness on Toll-like receptor-4. *J Exp Med*. 1999;189:1777–1787. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10359581
34. Park BS, Song DH, Kim HM, Choi BS, Lee H, Lee JO. The structural basis of lipopolysaccharide recognition by the TLR4-MD-2 complex. *Nature*. 2009;458(7242):1191–1195. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19252480
35. Kitchens RL, Thompson PA. Modulatory effects of sCD14 and LBP on LPS-host cell interactions. *J Endotoxin Res*. 2005;11(4):225–229. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16176659
36. Haziot A, Ferrero E, Kontgen F, et al. Resistance to endotoxin shock and reduced dissemination of gram-negative bacteria in CD14-deficient mice. *Immunity*. 1996;4(4):407–414. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8612135
37. Miura Y, Shimazu R, Miyake K, et al. RP105 is associated with MD1 and transmits an activation signal in human B cells. *Blood*. 1998;92:2815–2823. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9763566
38. Kurt-Jones EA, Popova L, Kwinn L, et al. Pattern recognition receptors TLR4 and CD14 mediate response to respiratory syncytial virus. *Nat Immunol*. 2000;1(5):398–401. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11062499
39. Schmidt M, Raghavan B, Muller V, et al. Crucial role for human toll-like receptor 4 in the development of contact allergy to nickel. *Nat Immunol*. 2010;11(9):814–819. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20711192
40. Hayashi F, Smith KD, Ozinsky A, et al. The innate immune response to bacterial flagellin is mediated by Toll-like receptor 5. *Nature*. 2001;410(6832):1099–1103. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11323673
41. Park B, Brinkmann MM, Spooner E, Lee CC, Kim YM, Ploegh HL. Proteolytic cleavage in an endolysosomal compartment is required for activation of Toll-like receptor 9. *Nat Immunol*. 2008;9(12):1407–1414. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18931679

42. Bianchi ME. DAMPs, PAMPs and alarmins: all we need to know about danger. *J Leukoc Biol*. 2007;81(1):1–5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17032697
43. Leadbetter EA, Rifkin IR, Hohlbaum AM, Beaudette BC, Shlomchik MJ, Marshak-Rothstein A. Chromatin-IgG complexes activate B cells by dual engagement of IgM and Toll-like receptors. *Nature*. 2002;416(6881):603–607. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11948342
44. O'Neill LA. The interleukin-1 receptor/Toll-like receptor superfamily: 10 years of progress. *Immunol Rev*. 2008;226:10–18. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19161412
45. Lin SC, Lo YC, Wu H. Helical assembly in the MyD88-IRAK4-IRAK2 complex in TLR/IL-1R signalling. *Nature*. 2010;465(7300):885–890. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20485341
46. Gay NJ, Gangloff M, O'Neill LA. What the Myddosome structure tells us about the initiation of innate immunity. *Trends Immunol*. 2011;32(3):104–109. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21269878
47. Deng L, Wang C, Spencer E, et al. Activation of the IkappaB kinase complex by Traf6 requires a dimeric ubiquitin-conjugating enzyme complex and a unique polyubiquitin chain. *Cell*. 2000;103(2):351–361. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11057907
48. Cohen P. Targeting protein kinases for the development of anti-inflammatory drugs. *Curr Opin Cell Biol*. 2009;21(2):317–324. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19217767
49. Honda K, Taniguchi T. IRFs: master regulators of signalling by Toll-like receptors and cytosolic pattern recognition receptors. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2006;6(9):644–658. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16932750
50. Takeuchi O, Akira S. MyD88 as a bottle neck in Toll/IL-1 signaling. *Curr Top Microbiol Immunol*. 2002;270:155–167. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12467250
51. von Bernuth H, Picard C, Jin Z, et al. Pyogenic bacterial infections in humans with MyD88 deficiency. *Science*. 2008;321(5889):691–696. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18669862
52. Ku CL, von Bernuth H, Picard C, et al. Selective predisposition to bacterial infections in IRAK-4-deficient children: IRAK-4-dependent TLRs are otherwise redundant in protective immunity. *J Exp Med*. 2007;204(10):2407–2422. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17893200
53. Fitzgerald KA, Palsson-McDermott EM, Bowie AG, et al. Mal (MyD88-adapter-like) is required for Toll-like receptor-4 signal transduction. *Nature*. 2001;413:78–83. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11544529
54. Horng T, Barton GM, Medzhitov R. TIRAP: an adapter molecule in the toll signaling pathway. *Nat Immunol*. 2001;2(9):835–841. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11526399
55. Kagan JC, Medzhitov R. Phosphoinositide-mediated adaptor recruitment controls Toll-like receptor signaling. *Cell*. 2006;125(5):943–955. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16751103
56. Dunne A, Carpenter S, Brikos C, et al. IRAK1 and IRAK4 promote phosphorylation, ubiquitination, and degradation of MyD88 adaptor-like (Mal). *J Biol Chem*. 2010;285(24):18276–18282. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20400509
57. Yamamoto M, Sato S, Mori K, et al. Cutting edge: a novel toll/IL-1 receptor domain-containing adapter that preferentially activates the IFN-beta promoter in the toll-like receptor signaling. *J Immunol*. 2002;169(12):6668–6672. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12471095
58. Fitzgerald KA, McWhirter SM, Faia KL, et al. IKKepsilon and TBK1 are essential components of the IRF3 signaling pathway. *Nat Immunol*. 2003;4(5):491–496. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12692549
59. Fitzgerald KA, Rowe DC, Barnes BJ, et al. LPS-TLR4 signaling to IRF-3/7 and NF-kappaB involves the toll adapters TRAM and TRIF. *J Exp Med*. 2003;198(7):1043–1055. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14517278
60. Rowe DC, McGettrick AF, Latz E, et al The myristoylation of TRIF-related adaptor molecule is essential for Toll-like receptor 4 signal transduction. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2006;103(16):6299–6304. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16603631
61. McGettrick A, Brint EK, Palsson-McDermott EM, et al. Trif-related adapter molecule is phosphorylated by protein kinase C epsilon during toll-like receptor 4 signalling. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2006;103(24):9196–9201. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16757566
62. Palsson-McDermott E, Doyle S, McGettrick A, et al. TAG: a GOLD domain-containing splice variant of TRAM that negatively regulates the MyD88-independent pathway in TLR4 signaling. *Nat Immunol*. 2009;10:579–586. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19412184
63. Carty M, Goodbody R, Schroder M, Stack J, Moynagh PN, Bowie AG. The human adaptor SARM negatively regulates adaptor protein TRIF-dependent toll-like receptor signaling. *Nat Immunol*. 2006;7(10):1074–1081. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16964262
64. Liew E, Xu D, Brint E, O'Neill LA. Negative regulation of TLR signalling. *Nature Rev Immunol*. 2005;5(6):446–458. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15928677
65. Bowie A, Kiss-Toth E, Symons JA, Smoth GL, Dower SK, O'Neill LA. A46R and A52R from vaccinia virus are antagonists of host IL-1 and Toll-like receptor signalling. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2000;97:10162–10167. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10920188
66. Stack J, Haga IR, Schroder M, et al. Vaccinia virus protein A46R targets multiple Toll-like-interleukin-1 receptor adaptors and contributes to virulence. *J Exp Med*. 2005;201(6):1007–1018. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15767367
67. Maloney G, Schröder M, Bowie AG. Vaccinia virus protein A52R activates p38 mitogen-activated protein kinase and potentiates lipo-polysaccharide-induced interleukin-10. *J Biol Chem*. 2005;280(35):30838–30844. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15998638
68. Harte MT, Haga IR, Maloney G, et al. The poxvirus protein A52R targets Toll-like receptor signaling complexes to suppress host defence. *J Exp Med*. 2003;197(3):343–351. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12566418
69. Ronald PC, Beutler B. Plant and animal sensors of conserved microbial signatures. *Science*. 2010;333:1061–1064. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21097929
70. O'Neill LA. Plant science. Innate immunity in plants goes to the PUB. *Science*. 2011;332(6036):1386–1387. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21680829
71. Chuang TH, Ulevitch RJ. Triad3A, an E3 ubiquitin-protein ligase regulating toll-like receptors. *Nat Immunol*. 2004;5(5):495–502. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15107846
72. Hennessy EJ, Parker AE, O'Neill LA. Targeting toll-like receptors: emerging therapeutics? *Nat Rev Drug Discov*. 2010;9(4):293–307. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20380038
73. Farrar CA, Keogh B, McCormack W, et al. Inhibition of TLR2 promotes graft function in a murine model of renal transplant ischemia-reperfusion injury. *FASEB J*. 2012;26(2):799–807. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22042224
74. Elinav E, Trowig T, Henao-Mejia J, Flavell RA. Regulation of the antimicrobial response by NLR proteins. *Immunity*. 2011;34:665–679. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21616436
75. Cho JH. The genetics and immunopathogenesis of inflammatory bowel disease. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2008;8:458–466. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18500230
76. Vavricka SR, Musch MW, Chang JE, et al. hPepT1 transports muramyl dipeptide, activating NF-kappaB and stimulating IL-8 secretion in human colonic Caco2/bbe cells. *Gastroenterology*. 2004;127:1401–1409. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15521010
77. Fritz JH, Girardin SE, Fitting C, et al. Synergistic stimulation of human monocytes and dendritic cells by Toll-like receptor 4 and NOD1-and NOD2-activating agonists. *Eur J Immunol*. 2005;35:2459–2470. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16021602
78. Viala J, Chaput C, Boneca IG, et al. Nod1 responds to peptidoglycan delivered by the Helicobacter pylori cag pathogenicity island. *Nat Immunol*. 2004;5:1166–1174. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15489856
79. Hassegawa M, Yamazaki T, Kamada N, et al. Nod1 mediates recognition of Clostridium difficile and induces neutrophil recruitment and protection against the pathogen. *J Immunol*. 2011;186:4872–4880. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21411735
80. Silva GK, Gutierrez FR, Guedes PM, et al. Cutting edge: Nod1 – dependent responses account for murine resistance against Trypanosome cruzi infection. *J Immunol*. 2010;184:1148–1152. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20042586

81. Kobyashi KS, Chamaillard M, Ogura Y, et al. Nod2-dependent regulation of innate and adaptve immunity in the intestinal tracts. *Science*. 2005;307:731–734. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15692051
82. Geddes K, Rubino S, Streutker C, et al. Nod1 and Nod2 regulation of inflammation in the Salmonella colitis model. *Infect Immunity*. 2010; 78:5107–5115. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20921147
83. Cooney R, Baker J, Brain O, et al. NOD2 stimulation induces autophagy in dendritic cells influencing bacterial handling and antigen presentation. *Nat Med*. 2010;16:90–97. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19966812
84. Travassos LH, Carneiro LA, Ramjeet M, et al. Nod1 and Nod2 direct autophagy by recruiting ATG16L1 to the plasma membrane site of bacterial entry. *Nat Immunol*. 2010;11:55–62. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19898471
85. Tschopp J, Martinon F, Burns K. NALPs: a novel protein family involved in inflammation. *Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol*. 2003;4(2):95–104. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12563287
86. Masters SL, O'Neill LA. Disease-associated amyloid and misfolded protein aggregates activate the inflammasome. *Trends Mol Med*. 2011; 17(5):276–282. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21376667
87. Zhou R, Yazdi AS, Menu P, Tschopp J A role for mitochondria in NLRP3 inflammasome activation. *Nature*. 2011;469:221–225. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21124315
88. Hornung V, Bauernfeind F, Halle A, et al. Silica crystals and aluminium salts activate the NALP3 inflammasome through phagosomal destabilisation. *Nat Immunol*. 2008;9;847–856. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18604214
89. Shi Y, Evans JE, Rock KL. Molecular identification of a danger signal that alerts the immune system to dying cells. *Nature*. 2003;425(6957):516–521. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14520412
90. Martinon F, Pétrilli V, Mayor A, Tardivel A, Tschopp J. Gout-associated uric acid crystals activate the NALP3 inflammasome. *Nature*. 2006;440(7081):237–241. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16407889
91. Dostert C, Petrilli V, Van Bruggen R, Steele C, Mossman BT, Tchopp J. Innate immune activation through Nalp3 inflammasome sensing of asbestos and silica. *Science*. 2008;320(5876):674–677. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18403674
92. Duewell P, Kono H, Rayner KJ, et al. Nlrp3 inflammasomes are required for atherogenesis and activated by cholesterol crystals. *Nature*. 2010;464:1357–1361. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20428172
93. Halle A, Hornung V, Petzold GC, et al. The NALP3 inflammasome is involved in the innate immune response to amyloid beta. *Nat Immunol*. 2008;9:857–865. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18604209
94. Masters SL, Dunne A, Subramanian SL, et al. Activation of the NLRP3 inflammasome by islet amyloid polypeptide provides a mechanism for enhanced IL-1 β in type 2 diabetes. *Nat Immunol*. 2010;11(10):897–904. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20835230
95. Wen H, Gris D, Lei Y, et al. Fatty acid-induced Nlrp3-Asc inflammasome activation interferes with insulin signalling. *Nat Immunol*. 2011;12:408–415. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21478880
96. Dinarello CA. Immunological and inflammatory functions of the interleukin-1 family. *Ann Rev Immunol*. 2009;27:519–550. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19302047
97. Hoffman HM, Mueller JL, Broide DH, Wanderer AA, Kolodner RD. Mutation of a new gene encoding a putative pyrin-like protein causes familial cold autoinflammatory syndrome and Muckle-Wells syndrome. *Nat Genet*. 2001;29(3):301–305. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11687797
98. Mariathasan S, Newton K, Monack DM, et al. Differential activation of the inflammasome by caspase-1 adapters Asc and Ipaf. *Nature*. 2004; 430:213–218. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15190255
99. Harder J, Franchi L, Munoz-Planillo R, Park JH, Reimer T, Nunex G. Activation of the Nlrp3 inflammasome by Streptococcus pyogenes requires streptolysin O and NF-kappaB activation but proceeds independently of TLR signalling and P2X7 receptor. *J Immunol*. 2009;183: 5823– 5829. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19812205
100. Allen IC, Scull MA, Holl EK, et al. The Nlrp3 inflammasome mediates in vivo innate immunity to influenza A virus through recognition of viral RNA. *Immunity*. 2009;30:556–565. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19362020
101. Ichinohe T, Lee HK, Ogura Y, Flavell R, Iwasaki A. Influenza virus activates inflammasomes via its intracellular M2 ion channel. *Nat Immunol* 2010;11:404–410. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20383149
102. Barlan AU, Griffen TM, McGuire KA, Wietoff CM. Adenovirus membrane penetration activates the Nlrp3 inflammasome. *J Virol*. 2011;85:146–155. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20980503
103. Hise AG, Tomalka J, Ganesan S, et al. An essential role for the Nlrp3 inflammasome in host defense against the human fungal pathogen Candida albican. *Cell Host Microbe*. 2009;5:487–497. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19454352
104. Said-Sadler N, Padilla E, Langsley G, Ojcius DM. Aspergillus fumigatus stimulates the Nlrp3 inflammasome through a pathway requiring ROS production and the Syk tyrosine kinase. *PLoS One*. 2010;5:e10008. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20368800
105. Dostert C, Guarda G, Romero JF, et al. Malarial hemozoin is a Nalp3 inflammasome activating danger signal. *PLoS One*. 2009;4:e6510. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19652710
106. Sutterwala FS, Mijares LA, Li L, Ogura Y, Kazmierczak BL, Flavell RA. Immune recognition of Pseudomonas aeruginosa mediated by the IPAF/NLRC4 inflammasome. *J Exp Med*. 2007;294:3235–3245. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18070936
107. Franchi L, Amer A, Body-Malapel M, et al. Cytosolic flagellin requires Ipaf for activation of caspase-1 and interleukin 1-beta in Salmonella-infected macrophages. *Nat Immunol*. 2006;7:576–582. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16648852
108. Kofoed EM, Vance RE. Innate immune recognition of bacterial ligands by NAIPs determines inflammasome specificity. *Nature*. 2011;477(7366): 592–595. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21874021
109. Vijay-Kumar M, Carvalho FA, Aitken JD, Fifadara NH, Gewirtz AT. TLR5 or NLRC4 is necessary and sufficient for promotion of humoral immunity by flagellin. *Eur J Immunol*. 2010;40:3582–3534. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21072873
110. Boyden ED, Dietrich WF. Nalp1b controls mouse macrophage susceptibility to anthrax lethal toxin. *Nat Genetics*. 2006;38:240–244. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16429160
111. Gregory SM, Davis BK, West JA, et al. Discovery of a viral NLR homolog that inhibits the inflammasome. *Science*. 2011;331:330–334. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21252346
112. Jin Y, Mailloux CM, Gowan K, et al. NALP1 in vitiligo-associated multiple autoimmune disease. *N Engl J Med*. 2007;356(12):1216–1225. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17377159
113. Schattgen SA, Fitzgerald KA. The PYHIN protein family as mediators of host defenses. *Immunol Rev*. 2011;243(1):109–118. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21884171
114. Rathinam VA, Jiang Z, Waggoner SN, et al. The AIM2 inflammasome is essential for host defense against cytosolic bacteria and DNA viruses. *Nat Immunol*. 2010;11(5):395–402. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20351692
115. Loo YM, Gale M Jr. Immune signalling by RIG-I-like receptors. *Immunity*. 2011;34:680–692. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21616437
116. O'Neill LA, Bowie AG. The powerstroke and camshaft of the RIG-I antiviral RNA detection machine. *Cell*. 2011;147(2):259–261. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22000004
117. Luo D, Ding SC, Vela A, Kohlyway A, Lindenbach BD, Pyle AM. Structural insights into RNA recognition by RIG-I. *Cell*. 2011;147(2):409–422. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22000018
118. Kowalinski E, Lunardi T, McCarthy AA, et al. Structural basis for the activation of innate immune pattern-recognition receptor RIG-I by viral RNA. *Cell*. 2011;147(2):423–435. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22000019
119. Hornung V, Ellegast J, Kim S, et al. 5′ -triphosphate RNA is a ligand for RIG-I. *Science*. 2006;314:994–997. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17038590

120. Scott I. The role of mitochondria in the mammalian antiviral defense system. *Mitochondrion*. 2010;10:316–320. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20206303
121. Paz S, Sun Q, Nakhaei P, et al. Induction of IRF3 and IRF7 phosphorylation following activation of the RIG-I pathway. *Cell Mol Biol*. 2006;52:17–28. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16914100
122. Poeck H, Bscheider M, Gross O, et al. Recognition of RNA virus by RIG-I results in activation of CARD9 and inflammasome signalling for interleukin-1 beta production. *Nat Immunol*. 2010;11:63–69. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19915568
123. Ishikawa H, Barber GN. STING is an endoplasmic reticulum adaptor that facilitates innate immune signalling. *Nature*. 2008;455:674–678. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18724357
124. Baril M, Racine ME, Penin F, Lamarre D. MAVS dimer is a crucial signaling component of innate immunity and the target of hepatitis C virus NS3/4A protease. *J Virol*. 2009;83(3):1299–1311. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19036819
125. Hézode C. Oral combination therapy: future hepatitis C virus treatment? *J Hepatol*. 2011;55(4):933–935. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21708200
126. Gao D, Yang YK, Wang RP, et al. REUL is a novel E3 ubiquitin ligase and stimulator of RIG-I. *PLoS One*. 2009;4:e5760. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19484123
127. Gack ME, Shin YC, Joo CH, et al. TRIM25 E3-ubiquitin ligase is essential for RIG-I antiviral activity. *Nature*. 2007;446:916–920. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17392790
128. Arimoto K, Takahashi H, Hishiki T, Konishi H, Fujita T, Shimotohno K. Negative regulation of RIG-I signalling by the ubiquitin ligase RNF125. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2007;104:7500–7505. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17460044
129. Friedman CS, O'Donnell MA, Legarda-Addison D, et al. The tumor suppressor CYLD is a negative regulator of RIG-I-mediated anti-viral response. *EMBO Rep*. 2008;9:930–936. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18636086
130. Frederickson BL, Gale M Jr. West Nile virus evades activation of IRF3 through RIG-I-dependent and –independent pathways without antagonising host defense signalling. *J Virol*. 2006;80:2913–2923. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16501100
131. Town T, Bai F, Wang T, et al. TLR7 mitigates lethal West Nile encephalitis via interleukin-23-dependent immune cell infiltration and homing. *Immunity*. 2009;30:242–253. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19200759
132. Wang T, Town T, Alexopoulou L, Anderson JF, Fikrig E, Flavell RA. TLR3 mediates West Nile virus entry into the brain causing lethal encephalitis. *Nat Med*. 2004;10:1366–1373. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15558055
133. Szretter KJ, Samuel MA, Gilfillan S, Fuchs A, Colonna M, Diamond MS. The immune adapter molecule SARM modulates tumor necrosis factor alpha production and microglia activation in the brain stem and restricts West Nile virus pathogenesis. *J Virol*. 2009;83:9329–9338. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19587044
134. Seth RB, Sun L, Chen ZJ. Antiviral innate immunity pathways. *Cell Res*. 2006;16:141–147. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16474426
135. Williams BR. PKR: sentinel kinase for cellular stress. *Oncogene*. 1999;18:6112–6120. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10557102
136. Kumar M, Carmichael GG. Antisense RNA: function and fate of duplex RNA in cells of higher eukaryotes. *Microbiol Mol Biol Rev*. 1998;62:6112–6120. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9841677
137. Samuel CE. Antiviral actions of interferons. *Clin Microbiol Rev*. 2001;14:778–809. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11585785
138. Malathi K, Saito T, Crochet N, Barton DJ, Gale M Jr, Silverman RH. RNAse L releases small RNA from HCV RNA that refolds into a potent PAMP. *RNA*. 2010;16:2108–2119. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20833746
139. Wang Z, Choi MK, Ban T, et al. Regulation of innate immune responses by DAI (DLM-1/ZBP1) and other DNA sensing molecules. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2008;105:5477–5482. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18375758
140. Ishii KJ, Kawagoe T, Koyama S, et al. TANK-binding kinase-1 delineates innate and adaptive immune responses to DNA vaccines. *Nature*. 2008;451:725–729. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18256672
141. Ablasser A, Bauernfeind F, Hartmann G, Latz E, Fitzgerald KA, Hornung V. RIG-I-dependent sensing of poly(dA:dT) through the induction of an RNA polymerase III-transcribed RNA intermediate. *Nat Immunol*. 2009;10:1065–1072. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19609254
142. Unterholzner L, Keating SE, Baran M, et al. IFI16 is an innate immune sensor for intracellular DNA. *Nat Immunol*. 2010;11:997–1004. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20890285
143. Keating SE, Baran M, Bowie AG. Cytosolic DNA sensors regulating type I interferon induction. *Trends Immunol*. 2011;32(12):574–581. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21940216
144. Ishikawa H, Ma Z, Barber GN. STING regulates intracellular DNA-mediated Type I interferon-dependent innate immunity. *Nature*. 2009;461:788–792. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19776740
145. Sharma S, DeOliveria RB, Kalantari P, et al. Innate immune recognition of an AT-rich stem-loop DNA motif in the Plasmodium falciparum genome. *Immunity*. 2011;35(2):194–207. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21820332
146. Burdette DL, Monroe KM, Sotelo-Troha K, et al. STING is a direct innate immune sensor of cyclic di-GMP. *Nature*. 2011;478(7370):515–518. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21947006
147. Rebsamen M, Heinz LX, Meylan E, et al. DAI/ZBP1 recruits RIP1 and RIP3 thought RIP homotypic interaction motifs to activate NF- kappaB. *EMBO Rep*. 2009;10:916–922. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19590578
148. Cristea IM, Moorman NJ, Terhune SS, et al. Human cytomegalo-virus pUL83 stimulates activity of the viral immediate-early promoter through its interaction with the cellular IFI16 protein. *J Virol*. 2010;84:7803–7814. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20504932
149. JohnstonJB,Barrett JW, Nazarian SH, et al. A poxvirus–encoded pyrin domain protein interacts with ASC-1 to inhibit host inflammatory and apoptotic responses to infection. *Immunity*. 2005;23:587–598. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16356857
150. Osorio F, Reis E, Sousa C. Myeloid C-type lectin receptors in pathogen recognition and host defence. *Immunity*. 2011;651–664. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21616435
151. Brown GD. Dectin-1: a signalling non-TLR pattern-recognition receptor. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2006;6:33–43. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16341139
152. Suzuki-Inoue K, Fuller GL, Garcia A, et al. A novel Syk-dependent mechanism of platelet activation by the C-type lectin receptor CLEC-2. *Blood*. 2006;107:542–549. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16174766
153. Sancho D, Joffre OP, Keller AM, et al. Identification of a dendritic cell receptor that couples sensing of necrosis to immunity. *Nature*. 2009;458:899–903. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19219027
154. Rogers NC, Slack EC, Edwards AD, et al. Syk-dependent cytokine induction by Dectin-1 reveals a novel pattern recognition pathway for C-type lectins. *Immunity*. 2005;22:507–517. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15845454
155. Gross O, Poeck H, Bscheider M, et al. Syk kinase signalling couples to the Nlrp3 inflammasome for anti-fungal host defence. *Nature*. 2009;459:433–436. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19339971
156. Brown GD, Herre J, Williams DL, Willment JA, Marshall AS, Gordon S. Dectin-1 mediates the biological effects of beta-glucans. *J Exp Med*. 2003;197:1119–1124. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12719478
157. Geijtenbeek TB, Gringhuis SI. Signaling through C-type lectin receptors: shaping immune responses. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2009;9:465–479. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19521399
158. Krieger M, Herz J. Structure and functions of multiligand lipoprotine receptors: macrophage scavenger receptors and LDL receptor-related protein (LRP). *Ann Rev Biochem*. 1994;63:601–637. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7979249

159. Suzuki H, Kurihara Y, Takeya M, et al. A role for macrophage scavenger receptors in atherosclerosis and susceptibility to infection. *Nature*. 1997;386:292–296. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9069289
160. Kraal G, van der Laan LJ, Elomaa O, Tryggvason K. The macrophage receptor MARCO. *Microbes Infect.* 2000;2:313–316. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10758408
161. Fraser IP, Koziel H, Ezekowitz RA. The serum mannose-binding protein and the macrophage mannose receptor are pattern recognition molecules that link innate and adaptive immunity. *Semin Immunol*. 1998;10:363–372. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9799711
162. Linehan SA, Martinez-Pomares L, Gordon S. Macrophage lectins in host defence. *Microbes Infect*. 2000;2:279–286. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10758404
163. Clark HW, Reid KB, Sim RB. Collectins and innate immunity in the lung. *Microbes Infect*. 2000;2:273–278. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10758403
164. Degn SE, Jensenius JC, Thiel S. Disease-causing mutations in genes of the complement system. *Am J Hum Genet*. 2011;88(6):689–705. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21664996
165. Tsutsumi A, Takahashi R, Sumida T. Mannose binding lectin: genetics and autoimmune disease. *Autoimmun Rev*. 2005;4(6):364–372. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16081027
166. Garlanda C, Bottazzi B, Salvatori G, et al. Pentraxins in innate immunity and inflammation. *Novartis Found Symp*. 2006;279:80–86. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17278387
167. Bottazzi B, Doni A, Garlanda C, Mantovani A. An integrated view of humoral innate immunity: pentraxins as a paradigm. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 2010;28:157–183. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19968561
168. Liu C, Xu Z, Gupta D, Dziarski R. Peptidoglycan recognition proteins: a novel family of four human innate immunity pattern recognition molecules. *J Biol Chem*. 2001;276:34686–34694. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11461926

CHAPTER 16

Dendritic Cells

Kang Liu • Michel C. Nussenzweig

INTRODUCTION

Immunology interfaces with medicine at many points, the most prominent being infectious diseases, cancer, transplantation, allergy, and autoimmunity. Antigen-specific immunity is critical for vaccination and for protective immunity against pathogens and tumors. Moreover, when control over immune responses is lost, the result is autoimmune disease. T cells are an essential element that regulates the balance in immunity by killing infected cells, helping antibody formation, and suppressing autoimmune responses. However, T cells are incapable of recognizing native antigens. Instead, they recognize processed peptides presented by major histocompatibility complex (MHC) molecules. Dendritic cells (DCs) are professional antigen-presenting cells that inform the fight against invasive pathogens while enforcing tolerance to self- and harmless environmental antigens. They capture pathogens and receive signals from pathogens that influence the outcome of immune responses. On the basis of these signals, DCs orchestrate antigen-specific T-cell differentiation toward Th1, Th2, Th17, or Tfh pathways. Alternatively, they can silence self-reactive T cells by inducing deletion, anergy, or active regulation (via regulatory T [T_{reg}] cells). This chapter will focus on the discovery, function, and development of DCs, and the mechanisms by which they link innate immunity to adaptive immunity.

DISCOVERY

DCs were discovered as part of an effort to understand the initiation of immunity. The mouse as an experimental animal was critical because of a system, developed by Mishell and Dutton,[1] in which mouse spleen cell suspensions could be stimulated to generate antibody responses in culture. One of the early observations was that lymphocytes alone were not sufficient to induce antibody-forming cell responses and that an adherent accessory cell was required. The search for the accessory cell led to the discovery of DCs. In this section, we will review the early methods used to identify and study DCs.

Identification and Isolation

DCs were discovered by Steinman and Cohn when they examined spleen adherent cells by phase contrast microscopy.[2] They then employed physical techniques to fractionate spleen cells and purify DCs. These cells were found to adhere to plastic or glass, had low buoyant density, and did not bind to erythrocytes coated with antibody. Sequential steps of density centrifugation in bovine serum albumin gradients and adherence to glass were originally used to purify DCs.[3]

At the time, macrophages were thought to be the key accessory cell because they composed a major population of adherent cells and also because their role in innate immunity had been long appreciated. Moreover, purified antigen loaded macrophages induced immune responses when reinjected into their hosts.[4] However, macrophages failed to show robust activity in induction of antibody responses in vitro, and they rapidly degraded ingested antigens suggesting that they would be unable to present it to lymphocytes.[5–7]

Dendritic Cells Initiate T-Cell Responses

In addition to their morphology, the cell surface composition of the newly discovered DCs proved to be distinct. DCs were found to express high levels of MHC antigens.[8,9] At the time, the precise function of the MHC in antigen presentation was not known, but it was already clear that the MHC was a key genetic determinant of immune responses and that it encoded many of the antigens involved in graft rejection.

The mixed leukocyte reaction (MLR) was considered an in vitro model system to study graft rejection and was used by Steinman and Cohn to examine the function of DCs.[10] They found that DCs were nearly two orders of magnitude more potent than unfractionated spleen cells, B cells, or macrophages in stimulating allogeneic T cells in the MLR.[10,11] On the basis of these experiments, they speculated that DCs were the accessory cells that present antigen to T cells to initiate immune responses.[12] However, their conclusions were not widely accepted by immunologists because unlike traditional immune responses, the MLR did not require priming.[13]

Proof that DCs are antigen-presenting cells came from experiments performed by Nussenzweig and Steinman who cocultured DCs with responding T cells and hapten-modified thymocytes. They showed that DCs induced MHC-restricted cytotoxic T cells specific to the hapten and that macrophages and other purified populations of lymphoid cells were nearly inactive as accessory cells.[14]

Monoclonal Antibodies to Dendritic Cells

Although the morphologic and functional differences between DCs and other leukocytes were striking, few immunology laboratories were equipped to perform the purification procedures required to study DCs until monoclonal antibodies to DCs became available. A series of

mouse DC-restricted monoclonal antibodies were produced by Steinman and others starting in 1980s, including 33D1 (specific for the cell surface receptor DCIR2/Clec4a4),[15] NLDC-145 (specific for the adsorptive endocytosis receptor, DEC205/cluster of differentiation [CD]205),[16] and N418 (specific for the CD11c integrin).[17] These monoclonal antibodies were used to establish the unique functions of DCs within heterogeneous mixtures of leukocytes and to identify DCs in situ. For example, 33D1 was used to selectively deplete DCs from mouse spleen suspensions and shows that this depleted MLR stimulating activity[12] and accessory function in the Mishell-Dutton system.[18]

Dendritic Cell Subsets

Shortman and colleagues first showed that DCs are heterogeneous and suggested the existence of DC subsets.[19,20] These subsets differ in their anatomic distribution, cell surface marker expression, and function. In the mouse, three major groups of DCs exist in the steady state: plasmacytoid DCs (pDCs), conventional DCs (cDCs), and migratory DCs (mDCs). pDCs are important mediators of antiviral immunity through their ability to produce large amounts of type I interferons (IFNs) upon viral infection (see following discussion). cDCs are composed of two major subsets, namely CD8α+ and CD8α–.[21] mDCs are present in nonlymphoid tissues such as the liver, gut, skin, lung, and aorta, and they are composed of two main subsets CD103+ and CD103–.[22] These nonlymphoid tissue DCs are referred to as mDCs because they transit from tissue to lymphoid organs.[21,23]

The two major subsets of mouse spleen cDCs have some overlapping functions. Both can process and present antigens to T cells and also secrete cytokines such as interleukin (IL)-12, which can influence the ultimate polarization of the T-cell response to pathogens. However, the two subsets also have unique functions in vivo and are not redundant.[24–26]

Some of the differences in cDC subset function may be accounted for differential expression of toll-like receptors (TLRs) or other mediators of cDC activation. For example, spleen CD8α+ cDCs express TLR3 (recognizing double-stranded ribonucleic acid [RNA]) but lack TLR5 (recognizing flagellin) and TLR7 (recognizing single-stranded RNA), whereas CD8α– cDCs express TLR5 and TLR7 but have low levels of TLR3.[27] Comparative analysis of messenger RNA expression profiles between the two DC subsets revealed that the two are as different from each other as are T- and B-lymphocytes.[28] This is in part reflected in the antigen processing capacity of the two cDCs types. CD8α+ cDCs are specialized for MHCI cross-presentation, and enriched in Tap1, Tap2, calreticulin, calnexin, Sec61, ERp57, ERAAP, as well as cystatin B and C, all of which are involved in MHCI presentation or inhibition of enzymes that process peptides for MHCII presentation. In contrast, CD8α– cDCs, which are biased for MHCII presentation, were enriched in cathepsins C, H, and Z, asparagine endopeptidase, GILT, and H2-Mbeta 1, all of which are implicated in the MHCII antigen-processing pathway.[28] The immunologic consequences of this specialization can be seen after immunization with antigens targeted to one or the other cDC in vivo. Antigens targeted to CD8α+ and CD8α– DCs by chimeric monoclonal antibodies that bind endocytic receptors Dec205/CD205 or DCIR2/Clec4a4 are biased to strong CD8 or CD4 T-cell responses, respectively.[28]

In conclusion, the two major subsets of DCs have distinct microanatomic locations, gene expression profiles, and functions. However the CD8α+ cDC in lymphoid tissue and CD103+ subset in nonlymphoid tissue DCs subsets are far better characterized than the CD8α– cDC or CD103– subset, which are heterogeneous and difficult to distinguish from activated monocytes.

ANATOMIC DISTRIBUTION

Lymphoid Organs

Peripheral lymphoid organs (ie, spleen, lymph nodes, and mucosal associated lymphoid tissues) are the sites where primary immune responses develop, including activation of helper, killer, and antibody-forming cells. Initiation of immune responses is facilitated by the highly organized structure of the peripheral lymphoid organs, with lymphocytes segregated into B- and T-cell areas. In addition to lymphocytes, the T-cell area also contains large interdigitating cells that were initially thought to be macrophages. However, cytologic and functional studies of spleen and lymph nodes in rat and mice revealed that interdigitating cells lack phagosomes and lysosomes, and are poorly phagocytic.[29–31] These features distinguished interdigitating cells from macrophages and suggested that they might be related to the cDCs isolated from mouse spleen.

Mouse interdigitating cells were later proven to be cDCs based on immunohistochemistry using DC-specific monoclonal antibodies. In human lymphoid organs, interdigitating cells in the T-cell area express CD83, a member of immunoglobulin superfamily. This marker is not conserved in the mouse where the interdigitating cells in the T-cell area of lymph nodes express CD11c and DEC205/CD205. In contrast, the two cDC subsets in the mouse spleen segregate into distinct microanatomic compartments. CD8α+ cDCs in spleen T-cell areas resemble those in the lymph nodes in that they express DEC-205, whereas those in the bridging channels and red pulp express DCIR2.[28]

In the T-cell area, cDCs form a dense network of cells that are primarily sessile but constantly protrude and retract large membrane folds into their environment.[32] T cells actively migrate through the DC network in search of antigen, and when they find a cDC presenting cognate antigen, they pause for a prolonged interaction.[33] The large DC membrane protrusions are thought to increase the surface area for antigen presentation and facilitate antigen detection by migrating T cells.[34]

Nonlymphoid Organs

In addition to the lymphoid organs, DCs are also found in most nonlymphoid organs and in all epithelial surfaces that contact the environment. In organs such as heart, lung, kidney, the dermal layer of skin, and meninges and choroid

TABLE 16.1 Cell Surface Comparison between Dendritic Cells and Macrophage

	DC	Macrophage
MHC II	+	–/lo
FcR (CD16/CD32)	–	+
CD11b	–/lo	+
F4/80	–	+
CD115	–/lo	+

CD, cluster of differentiation; DC, dendritic cell; MHC, major histocompatibility complex.

plexus in the brain, they are found in interstitial spaces that are drained by lymphatics.[35–37] Like their lymphoid counterparts, interstitial DCs can be distinguished from macrophages by abundant expression of MHCII and low levels of lysosomal hydrolases. In comparison to macrophages, which are also abundant in the interstitial spaces, interstitial DCs are less phagocytic and more sensitive to radiation. Tissue macrophages and DCs can be distinguished by immunohistology; the former typically express F4/80 and lysosomal hydrolase, whereas the latter express MHCII and CD11c. The standard markers for distinguishing DCs and macrophages in interstitial tissues are listed in Table 16.1. Importantly, although these markers help to differentiate macrophage and cDCs in most tissues, they are not sufficient in defining cell lineages unless used in combination with functional and developmental analysis. This is because CD11c and MHCII can also be expressed by lung macrophages and induced on monocytes during inflammation.[38]

Afferent Lymphatics

Afferent lymphatics in rats, rabbits, guinea pigs, sheep, and humans contain cells with motile processes that were named veiled cells because of their large membrane protrusions.[34,39–41] These cells were found to be poorly phagocytic, express high levels of MHCII, and are potent stimulators of the MLR in vitro. Lymphadenectomy and thoracic duct cannulation in larger animals such as rats and sheep made it possible to collect these cells from afferent lymph. Using this technique, Huang et al. revealed that veiled cells are constantly carrying intestinal epithelial contents via lymphatics to the cDC network in the T-cell area of the mesenteric lymph nodes.[42] Therefore, in the healthy individual, these veiled cells continually carry and present self- and harmless antigen to the adaptive immune system, thereby contributing to the induction of peripheral tolerance (see following discussion); during infection, they carry pathogen-derived antigens and induce specific T-cell activation. Thus veiled cells correspond to mDCs.

Dendritic Cells in the Skin and Other Body Surfaces

Several types of DCs, monocytes, and macrophages exist in the skin and at other body surfaces. Professional antigen-presenting cells in the skin include Langerhans cells (LCs) in the epidermis, and CD103+ and CD103– DCs in the dermis.

DENDRITIC CELL DEVELOPMENT

Origin of Conventional Dendritic Cells in the Lymphoid Organs

DCs, like all other leukocytes, develop from bone-marrow–derived hematopoietic stem cells. Monocytes, macrophages, granulocytes, megakaryocytes, and erythrocytes differentiate from a common myeloid progenitor (CMP) whereas B, T, and natural killer (NK) cells differentiate from a common lymphoid progenitor.[43–45] Although early cell transfer and genetic experiments were interpreted to indicate that DCs originated from lymphoid and myeloid progenitors,[46–49] subsequent work showed that all DCs are derived from myeloid progenitors.[50]

Relationship between Dendritic Cells and Monocytes

In the steady state, DCs and monocytes can readily be distinguished based on cell surface marker expression. For example, DCs are CD11c+CD115–/loMHCII+ and monocytes are CD11b+CD115+F4/80+ (see Table 16.1). In contrast, under inflammatory conditions or in tissues such as lung and intestine, where they can be exposed to pathogenic and nonpathogenic microbes, monocytes develop many of the characteristic features associated with DCs, and the distinction becomes far more difficult. Moreover, the question of how DCs are related to monocytes and macrophages during development was a vexing problem that was only resolved very recently.

The idea that monocytes might be the direct precursors of DCs in vivo was suggested by elegant experiments with human CD14+ monocytes.[51] Monocytes undergoing reverse transmigration, which simulates their entry into lymphatic vessels from tissues, lose expression of monocyte markers CD14 and CD64 and upregulate human leukocyte antigen-DR and CD54.[51] Phagocytosis further stimulates expression of CD80, CD86, human leukocyte antigen-DR, DC-LAMP, and CD83, all of which are expressed by DCs.[51] Consistent with these cell surface changes, activated monocytes stimulate allogeneic T-cell proliferation in MLRs.

Similarly, in mice, microspheres injected intracutaneously are phagocytosed by CD11b+F4/80+ monocytes that can then be found in the draining lymph nodes 3 to 4 days after the injection.[52] These cells display high expression of MHCII, MHCI, CD86, and stimulate allogeneic T-cell proliferation; however, unlike DCs, they express low levels of CD11c and no CD8α. Therefore, monocytes in the skin did not appear to become classical cDCs upon migration to lymph nodes; nevertheless, these activated monocytes shared many of the features associated with DCs. Finally, activated monocytes that appear in the spleen during *Listeria monocytogenes* infection expressed many of the cell surface features of cDCs.[53] These cells produce tumor necrosis factor (TNF) and inducible nitric oxide synthase (iNOS) and were named TNF/iNOS–producing DCs (Tip-DCs).[53] Tip-DC deficiency led to lethal *L. monocytogenes* infection; however, this effect was independent of the development of adaptive CD8 T-cell immunity.[53]

The idea that DCs develop from monocytes was tested by several laboratories in direct transfer experiments in

mice without clear success.[54–57] Indeed, it was always the nonmonocyte fraction of the bone marrow that produced cDCs.[54,56] The only exception to this rule occurred after inflammation induced by Freund's Complete Adjuvant (CFA), when monocytes differentiated into CD11c+CD11b+Mac3+ cells, which again are phenotypically distinct from cDCs.[56]

The inability of monocytes to produce cDCs in steady-state lymphoid organs was further confirmed in a series of elegant genetic studies using reporter mice carrying Rosa26-Stop^{flox}EGFP.[58] In these mice, a lox-flanked Stop transcription signal must be deleted by Cre expression before GFP can be transcribed. Breeding LysM-Cre and Rosa26-Stop^{flox}EGFP mice results in lysozyme promoter–driven Cre expression in monocytes and neutrophils, as well as deletion of the Stop sequence from Rosa26-Stop^{flox}EGFP in these cells. As a result, monocytes and their progeny are irreversibly marked with enhanced green fluorescent protein expression. Classical DCs in the peripheral lymphoid organs remained enhanced green fluorescent protein negative in these mice; therefore, they cannot be derived from monocytes.[58]

In conclusion, experiments in humans and mice show that monocytes can develop some of the features of DCs under conditions of inflammation in vivo, or when cultured with cytokines in vitro, but they are not precursors of cDCs.

Dendritic Cell Progenitors in the Bone Marrow

If monocytes do not produce DCs, the question remains: what is the origin of DCs and where does commitment to this lineage occur? The first clue in solving this problem came from the identification of a common precursor for monocytes, macrophagesm and classical DCs (macrophage-DC progenitors [MDPs][54]). MDP are Lin−CX3CR1+CD11b−CD115+cKit+CD135+ and account for 0.5% of all bone marrow mononuclear cells in mice.[54,59] When cultured with granulocyte-macrophage–colony stimulating factor (GM-CSF) in vitro or adoptively transferred into mice, these cells produced macrophages and DCs, but not neutrophil granulocytes, B- or T-lymphocytes, or NK cells.[54,59,60] Therefore, MDPs are more restricted than CMPs, from which they are derived.

A DC-restricted progenitor that produces cDCs and pDCs but not monocytes in vitro[61] or in vivo[62] was then identified based on reduced cKit (CD117) and residual Flt3 expression and named common-DC progenitor (CDP; Lin−CD115+Flt3+CD117lo). The CDP is downstream of CMP and MDP because adoptive transfer of either CMP or MDP gives rise to CDP and monocytes.[60] More importantly, these experiments showed that the split between the monocyte and DC lineages occurs in the bone marrow between the MDP and CDP stages of development.[60]

Migratory Pre-Dendritic Cells

cDC precursors must migrate from the bone marrow to the lymphoid organs through the blood. However, MDPs and CDPs are restricted to the bone marrow.[60] The identity of the DC precursor was suggested by the finding that low-density CD11c+MHC II−SIRPα^{lo} cells isolated from blood, bone marrow, and periphery had the potential to produce cDCs.[56,63,64] Although this group of cells was heterogeneous, the combination of these markers and persistent expression of Flt3 defined pre-DCs and allowed for their isolation in mice.[60]

Pre-DCs migrate from the bone marrow to the blood and then to peripheral lymphoid organs and nonlymphoid tissues.[60] These cells comprise ~0.5% of all leukocytes in bone marrow, 0.02% in blood, 0.05% in the spleen, and 0.03% in the lymph nodes. Pre-DCs have a short half-life in the blood of < 1 hour[65]; this, together with the small number of these cells in blood and tissues, may explain why previous efforts to identify pre-DCs failed and why human pre-DCs have yet to be identified.

Pre-cDCs isolated from the bone marrow, blood, or spleen give rise to both CD8α+ and CD8α− cDCs in lymphoid and nonlymphoid organs.[60] Thus, the pre-DC is a progenitor with significant plasticity. In conclusion, the DC and monocyte lineages split in the bone marrow, where MDPs give rise to both monocytes and CDP; the latter produce pre-DCs, which migrate from bone marrow through the blood to the periphery to give rise to DCs (Fig. 16.1).

Origin of Nonlymphoid Tissue Dendritic Cells

Skin

The skin contains LCs in the epidermis and CD103+ and CD103− DCs in the dermis.

Epidermis. LCs were discovered in 1868 by Paul Langerhans. Although LCs were initially thought to be of neural crest origin,[66,67] this view was changed with the discovery that LCs are closely related to leukocytes,[68,69] express Fc receptors[70] and MHCII antigens,[71] and are competent to present antigen to primed T cells.[72]

Experiments using bone marrow chimeras and parabiotic mice demonstrated that LCs are long-lived cells that divide in situ in the skin.[73] These cells originate from fetal liver–derived progenitors in an Flt3L-independent manner, and they are only replaced by bone marrow–derived hematopoietic cells during inflammation.[73,74] Thus, the origin of the LCs is different from that of cDCs.

Nevertheless, mouse LCs have been valuable as models for studying the differentiation and migration of antigen-presenting cells.[75–81] LCs in the epithelial layer of the skin can take up particles[82] and contain distinct granules, known as Birbeck granules, which are a type of endocytic organelle enriched in langerin.[83,84] While LCs express Fc receptors and MHCII in situ, the expression of Fc receptors drops and MHCII molecules redistribute from intracellular compartments to the cell surface in cultured LCs that become more highly immunostimulatory.[75,76,85] Cells that resemble LCs are also found in other stratified squamous epithelia such as the vagina, cervix, anus, pharynx, and esophagus.

LCs show many of the phenotypic features of cDCs, including morphology, ability to redistribute large amounts of MHCII from the endocytic system to the cell surface, and capacity to stimulate allogeneic T-cell proliferation in vitro after activation.[75,78,86–88] Importantly, however, LCs differ from DCs in that they are resistant to irradiation, they are self-renewing in situ and not of pre-DC origin in the steady

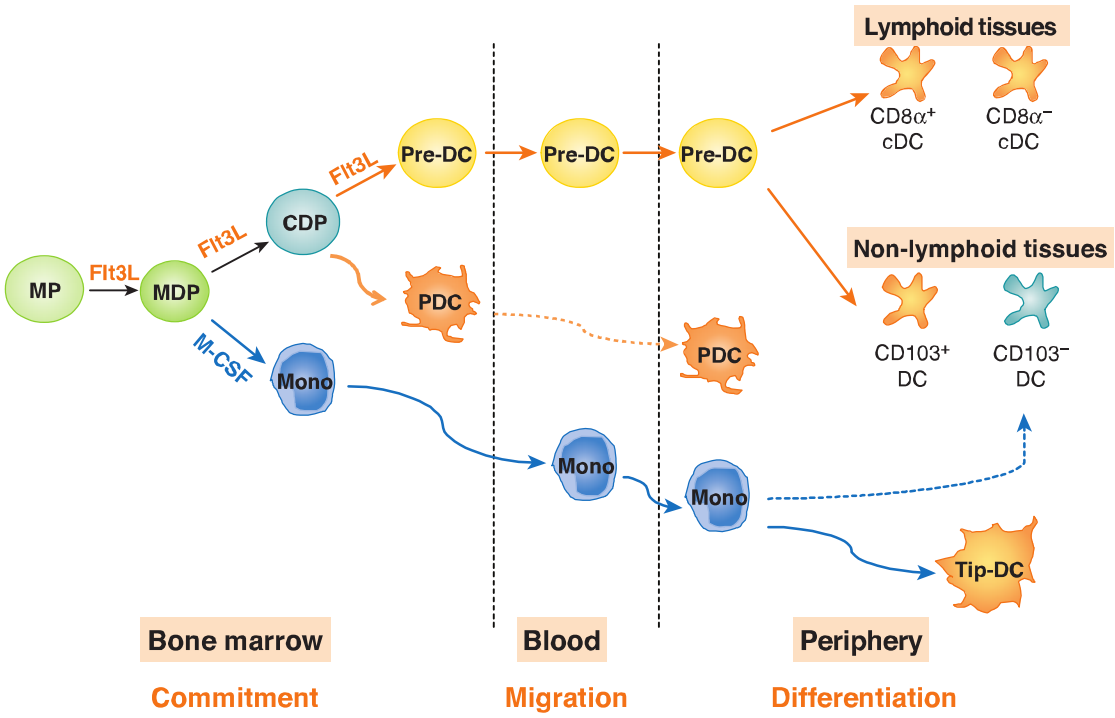


FIG. 16.1. Dendritic Cell and Monocyte Origin and Development.

state, and finally, like monocytes and macrophages, their development is dependent on macrophage-colony stimulating factor (M-CSF) and not on Flt3L.[89] LC precursors, which are CX3CR1+CD45+, colonize the dermis during late embryonic development.[90,91] In mice, these precursors complete their differentiation into LCs by postnatal d2, whereupon they undergo a burst of cell division between postnatal d2 and d7, which accounts for the dramatic increase in LCs during this developmental window. The LC precursor in skin appears to resemble the MDP.[90] Recently, fate-mapping analysis revealed that LCs derive from primitive macrophages during yolk sac stage of embryogenesis, and not from postnatal hematopoietic progenitors.[91] These two lineages can be differentiated by their dependence of Myb gene. The absence of Myb impaired HSC development, but did not affect development of the yolk sac macrophage progenitor that gives rise to LCs, microglia and liver Kupffer cells. This finding places the LC in its own differentiation pathway distinctive from cDC and monocyte.[91]

Dermis. The dermal layer of the skin contains two subsets of DCs: CD103+ and CD103− DCs. CD103+ dermal DCs are langerin+CD11blo, whereas CD103− dermal DCs are langerin−CD11b+.[92–95] Although both LCs and CD103+ dermal DCs express langerin, CD103+ dermal DCs are more closely related to spleen CD8α+ cDCs than to LCs.[25,37,96] CD103+ dermal DCs, like spleen cDCs, are M-CSF–independent and Flt3-dependent.[37] Unlike LCs that can self-renew in situ, dermal CD103+ DCs are continually replenished from the same bloodborne pre-DCs that give rise to lymphoid organ DCs.[95] In addition, like CD8α+ splenic cDCs, development of CD103+ dermal DCs requires expression of the IFN regulatory factor (IRF) 8, Id2, and Batf3 transcription factors (see following discussion). Finally, both dermal CD103+ dermal DCs and CD8α+ cDCs specialize in antigen cross-presentation.[28,96] The CD103− dermal DC compartment appears to be a heterogenous mixture of cells, some of which are Flt3 dependent and of pre-DC origin and others M-CSF–dependent and of monocyte origin.[37]

Skin-draining lymph nodes contain subpopulations of DCs that resemble CD103+ and CD103− dermal DCs.[92,95] Their migration from the skin to the draining lymph nodes is dependent on CCR7 but independent of CD62L. In the steady state, these cells account for 20% of lymph node DCs while the remainder of the DCs are derived from blood pre-DCs.[60] Inflammation dramatically enhances the migration of dermal DCs to the lymph node.[52,58]

Gut, Kidney, Lung, and Liver

Similar to the skin, CD103+ and CD103− DCs are found in nearly all mouse nonlymphoid tissues.[37,97] However, the origin of these cells was not established until very recently. CD103+ nonlymphoid tissue DCs express Flt3, a marker expressed on most cells in the DC lineage but not on monocytes. Furthermore, mice deficient in Flt3L or its receptor, Flt3, showed significant decreases in CD103+ nonlymphoid tissue DCs but normal numbers of monocytes.[37,98] Finally, adoptive transfer of pre-DCs into naïve recipients, or mice in which CD11c cells had been depleted, resulted in reconstitution of the CD103+ nonlymphoid tissue DC compartment in the liver, lung, kidney, and intestine.[37,57] In contrast, adoptive transfer of 50 times more monocytes failed to show detectable DC progeny in naïve mice.[37,57] Thus, in the steady state, CD103+ DCs in all tissues tested are pre-DC

and not monocyte-derived. Only after depletion of endogenous CD11c+ cells were monocytes able to produce some CD103− DCs.[37,57] The idea that all CD103+ nonlymphoid tissue DCs are derived from pre-DCs and not from monocytes is further supported by genetic experiments that show a common requirement for Batf3, Id2, and IRF8 for lymphoid tissue CD8α+ DCs, and CD103+ nonlymphoid tissue DCs, but not monocytes or macrophages (see following discussion).[24,37,99,100]

In conclusion, in addition to DCs in the lymphoid organs, pre-cDCs also contribute to CD103+ DC development in nonlymphoid tissues. CD103− DCs appear to be more heterogenous; some of these cells are derived from pre-DCs while others may be of monocyte origin.

Plasmacytoid Dendritic Cells

pDCs were described by pathologists as a unique population of cells in the peripheral lymphoid organs that resemble plasma cells and monocytes and were referred to as plasmacytoid monocytes. In 1990s, Svensson et al. described a population of cells in human blood that produces large amounts of type I IFN upon exposure to herpes simplex virus, and they named these cells IFN-producing cells.[101] Both of these populations correspond to the pDCs described by Liu and colleagues.[102–104]

pDCs were first purified from human tonsil and blood on the basis of being CD4+CD3−CD11c−. They were then shown to develop DC-like morphology upon culture with IL-3 and anti-CD40. Liu and colleagues discovered that purified pDCs produced 100 to 1,000 times more type I IFN than the other blood cell types following viral activation.[104] Subsequently, pDCs were identified and isolated from lymphoid tissues in mice, and later in rats, monkeys, and pigs. In humans, the pDCs express CD4, MHCII, CD68, CD123, and blood DC antigen 2 (BDCA2), but do not express other lineage marker such as CD3 (T cell), CD14 (monocyte), CD19 (B cell), CD16 and CD56 (NK cell), or CD11c, BDCA1, and BDCA3 (cDC). They are identified as CD4+, CD11c−, and Lin− (CD3, CD14, CD16, CD19, CD56) cells.[105] In mice, pDCs express CD11c (lower levels than cDCs), Gr1, B220, and PDCA1; low levels of MHCII; do not express CD11b or CD19;and they are frequently isolated by virtue of CD11c and B220 expression.[106]

pDCs are closely related to cDCs; they originate from the same progenitor, the CDP. Development of pDCs is also critically dependent on Flt3L. Unlike cDCs, however, pDCs do not express high levels of MHC II in the steady state and therefore, their primary function is not antigen presentation to CD4 T cells. Instead, pDCs focus on sensing infection and producing type I IFN. Depletion of pDC blocks antiviral IFN responses but also results in loss of T_{reg} homeostasis, impaired differentiation of Th cells, and initiation of CD8 T-cell responses (see following discussion).[107,108]

Growth Factors for Dendritic Cells and Monocytes

GM-CSF, M-CSF and Flt3L are essential growth factors for myeloid cell development in vitro and in vivo. During the early stages in myeloid development, shared progenitors of lymphocytes, polymorphonuclear leukocytes, monocytes, and DCs express one or more of the receptors for these growth factors. For example, Flt3 is expressed very early in hematopoiesis on shared progenitors of lymphocytes and all myeloid cells.[109] However, with the exception of pre-DCs, Flt3 expression is lost by nearly all leukocytes by the time they enter circulation.[60] Conversely, M-CSF receptor expression is retained by cells in the monocyte lineage but lost on pre-DCs and DCs.[60]

As might be predicted from their patterns of expression, M-CSF and Flt3L are essential for normal development of the monocyte and DC lineages, respectively. For example, mice deficient in M-CSF or its receptor show deficiencies in monocyte, macrophage, and LC development but have normal spleen and lymph node DCs.[110] In contrast, DC development is impaired in mice deficient in either Flt3L or Flt3, but monocyte development is normal.[59,111] Consistent with these observations, administration or overexpression of Flt3L results in selective expansion of DC populations, including fully differentiated DCs in lymphoid organs.[59,112]

Dendritic Cell Cultures

In the early 1990s, Banchereau and Schuler and their colleagues established in vitro culture systems to produce human monocyte–derived DCs (moDCs), and Inaba and Steinman for the mouse equivalent.[76,113,114] These culture systems are widely used today for basic and clinical studies. Bone marrow cells from mice or monocytes from humans are cultured for 6 days in medium containing GM-CSF to produce cells with dendritic morphology that exhibit modest phagocytic activity, express CD11c and MHCII, and stimulate the MLR. Differentiation to moDCs is further stimulated by addition of lipopolysaccharide, which induces a series of changes that were originally described as maturation. Notably, monocytes do not give rise to DCs in the lymphoid organs in vivo (see previous discussion), and GM-CSF is entirely dispensable for DC development in vivo[115]; thus, the moDCs generated in GM-CSF culture are not entirely representative of the cDCs found in the lymphoid tissues. moDCs may be more closely related to activated monocytes than to steady-state DCs in the lymphoid organs.

Authentic cDCs can be produced in in vitro cultures of bone marrow cells supplemented with Flt3L, which is an essential growth factor for DCs in vivo.[116] Flt3L cultures produce all of the known subsets of DCs, including cells with features of pDCs, CD8α+/CD103+ cDCs, and CD8α− cDCs.[116]

Transcriptional Regulation of Dendritic Cell Development

A number of different transcription factors are known to regulate DC development, but to date none of these are cDC specific. For example, signal transducer and activator of transcription (STAT)3 is required for cDC development in part because this transcription factor is downstream of Flt3.[117] Binding of Flt3L to its receptor on the surface of DC precursors or cDCs induces activation of the phosphoinositide 3-kinase–Akt–mammalian target of rapamycin signaling

pathway; this leads to activation of STAT3.[118] Activation of STAT3 is also regulated by the transcriptional repressor, Gfi-1, deletion of which leads to reduction of lymphoid DCs and increase of LCs.[119] PU.1, an E-twenty-six family transcription factor, is a third transcription factor that is downstream of Flt3 signaling.[120] Although PU.1 deficiency is lethal, mice reconstituted with PU.1-deficient hematopoietic cells show a number of hematopoietic defects, including strong reduction in CD8α+ and CD8α– cDCs.

The Interferon Regulatory Factors

IRF2, 4, and 8 are prominent transcription factors that regulate DC diversification. IRF2–/– mice exhibit reduced CD8α– cDCs, IRF4–/– mice display reduced CD8α– cDCs and slightly reduced pDCs, and IRF8–/– mice have reduced CD8α+ cDCs, pDCs, and LCs.[100,121–123]

NF-kB/Rel

Members of the NF-kB/Rel family also contribute to DC development. CD8α– cDC numbers are dramatically reduced in RelB–/– mice.[124] TRAF6 belongs to TNF receptor–associated factor family and acts upstream of the NF-kB cascade. Consistent with a role for NF-kB in cDC development, TRAF6–/– mice also show a defect in the CD8α– cDC compartment.[125]

Basic Helix-Loop-Helix Transcription Factors

Basic helix-loop-helix factors (E12, E47, HEB, E2-2) interact with helix-loop-helix Id (inhibitors of deoxyribonucleic acid [DNA] binding) proteins to control DC development. Loss of Id2 leads to a severe reduction of CD8α+ cDCs and absence of LCs. Another helix-loop-helix family member, E2-2, plays a crucial role in guiding pDC development and maintaining stability of the pDC lineage. Deletion of E2-2 in developing precursors blocked pDC development, whereas deletion in more mature cells reversed the development, suggesting differentiation plasticity that needs to be constantly reenforced.[126,127] Similar to mice, E2-2 haploinsufficient humans with Pitt-Hopkins syndrome show a pDC defect.[126]

Batf3

Batf3 is expressed at high levels in DCs and is specifically required for development of CD8α+ cDCs and CD103+ nonlymphoid tissue DCs.[24,128] Batf3–/– mice failed to mount antitumor and antiviral immune responses, demonstrating a key role of CD8α+ cDCs and CD103+ nonlymphoid tissue DCs in priming CD8 T cells.

Notch

Terminal DC differentiation appears to depend on signaling through Notch receptors and their transcriptional effector RBP-J. Inactivation of RBP-J in DCs results in severe reduction and functional impairment of splenic CD8α– cDCs.[129] In addition, Notch2 deletion leads to the loss of CD103+ nonlymphoid tissue DCs in the intestinal lamina propria and to a corresponding decrease of IL-17–producing CD4 T cells in the intestine.[130]

In conclusion, DC differentiation is dependent on a number of interacting transcription factors (Table 16.2). Together, they turn on expression of lineage-specific genes and suppress alternative developmental programs.

Human Dendritic Cell Development

Research on human DCs is difficult because it is largely limited to peripheral blood, whereas in the mouse, most of the work has been done on DCs residing in lymphoid or nonlymphoid tissues. As a result, human DC research has relied on peripheral blood monocytes cultured in the presence of cytokines, which generate moDCs and not cDCs.

TABLE 16.2 Transcription Factors Determine Dendritic Cell Development and Homeostasis in Vivo

		Classical DC		Tissue DC		
	Plasmacytoid DC	CD8α+	CD8α–	CD103+	CD103–	LC
PU.1–/–		– – –	– – – –			
Irf8–/–	– – – –	– – – –	n.a.	– – – –		– –
Irf2–/–		n.a.	– – –			–
Irf4–/–	–	n.a.	– – –			
RelB–/–		n.a.	– – – – –			n.a.
Gfi1–/–	– –	– –	– –			+ +
ID2–/–	n.a.	– – – –	n.a.	– – – –		– – – – –
E2-2–/–	– – – –	n.a.	n.a.			
Stat3–/–		– – – –	– – – –			
Stat5–/–	– – –	– – –	– – –			
Ikaros–/–		– – – –	– – – – –			
Xbp1–/–	– – –	– –	– –			
Batf3–/–	n.a.	– – – – –	n.a.	– – – – –	n.a.	
Runx3–/–		+ +	–			– – – – –
RBP-J–/–		n.a.	– – – –			
Notch2–/–		–	– – – –	– – – –	n.a.	

–, decrease; +, increase; CD, cluster of differentiation; DC, dendritic cell; LC, Langerhans cell; n.a., not altered.

Despite these obstacles, three different subsets of DCs have been found in human blood. These subsets are referred to as BDCA1, 2, and 3 based on their expression of cell surface markers.[131] BCDA1+ DCs resemble mouse CD8α– cDCs, BDCA2+CD11c– DCs are equivalent to mouse pDCs, and BDCA3+ DCs are equivalent to mouse CD8α+ cDCs (Fig. 16.2). These interspecies associations were initially based on similarities in gene expression between human and mouse DC subsets,[132] and were recently confirmed in functional experiments.[133–137] Moreover, human DCs can be obtained from cultures of human cord blood supplemented with Flt3L and GM-CSF.[134]

The human equivalents of the bone marrow–derived DC precursors, MDP, CDP, and pre-DC remain to be isolated. However, recent clinical studies revealed genetically defined syndromes associated with DC deficiency, which may shed some light on human DC development. Three different genetic lesions have been associated with the triad of DC deficiency, monocytopenia, and opportunistic infections. GATA2 mutation leads to a loss of DC, monocytes, B cells, and NK cells.[138,139] These patients have normal LCs and macrophages, suggesting that LCs and tissue macrophage have different origin from DCs and monocytes in humans. Mutations in IRF8 are associated with disseminated bacille Calmette-Guérin infection.[140] Two different mutations in IRF8 have been identified. The K108E variant is associated with an autosomal recessive severe immunodeficiency with a complete absence of circulating monocytes and DCs; the T80A variant is an autosomal dominant, milder immunodeficiency and is associated with selective depletion of circulating DCs. Loss of DCs due to IRF8 mutation also leads to myeloproliferation in humans and in mice due to increased serum Flt3L, which induces expansion of myeloid progenitors. In humans, as in mice, loss of DCs is associated with loss of T_{reg} cells, confirming the existence of a homeostatic feedback loop these two cell types[141] (see following discussion).

DENDRITIC CELL HOMEOSTASIS

Lymphoid Organs

Based on their rapid labeling kinetics and loss of label in pulse chase experiments with BrdU, it was proposed that DCs have a very short half-life.[136,137] However, these early experiments are difficult to interpret in view of the more recent finding that DCs in lymphoid and nonlymphoid tissues divide in situ.[37,65,142]

The half-life of cDCs in tissues was measured in parabionts and shown to vary from 5 to 7 days in the spleen, lymph nodes, liver, and kidney, and as many as 25 days in the lung.[37,65] cDC homeostasis in all organs is maintained through a dynamic balance of three parameters: continuous input of pre-DCs from the blood, limited cDC division in situ, and cell death. Fitting BrdU incorporation and parabiosis separation data into mathematical equations produced a numerical estimate of the rate of DC precursor input (~4,300/hour) and DC death (~9,600/hour) in the mouse spleen.[65]

Regulation of Dendritic Cell Division

cDCs in mouse lymphoid and nonlymphoid tissues divide in situ for 10 to 14 days before being replaced by pre-DCs.[65] In the steady state, their division is regulated by

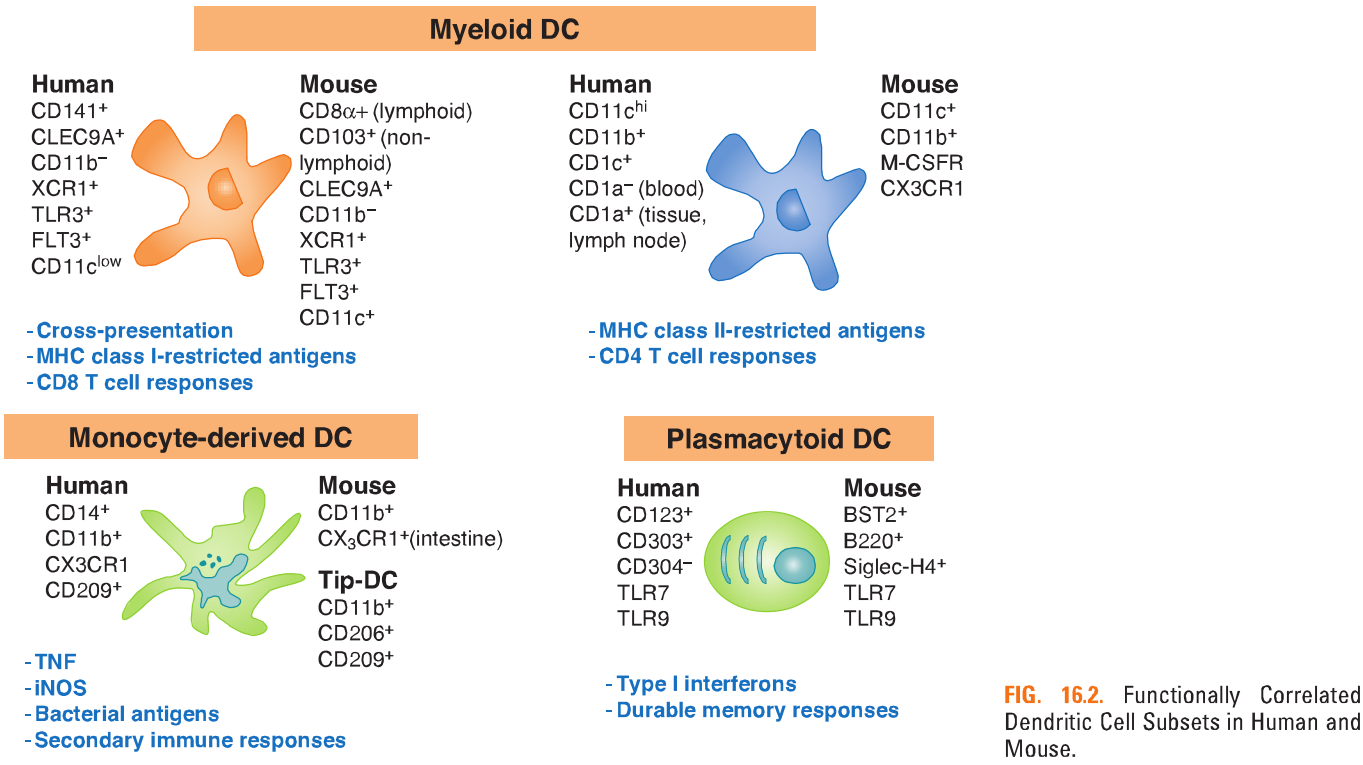


FIG. 16.2. Functionally Correlated Dendritic Cell Subsets in Human and Mouse.

lymphotoxin-beta and Flt3L. Flt3L impacts nearly all stages of cDC development in lymphoid and nonlymphoid tissues, and is essential for their development.[59,112,143] In contrast, the effects of lymphotoxin-beta appear to be limited to CD4+ spleen DCs.[142] How the levels of circulating Flt3L are regulated is not known, but there appears to be a feedback loop between tissue cDCs and Flt3L that results in upregulation of Flt3L in the serum in response to cDC depletion,[144] loss of T_{reg}s,[60,145,146] or TLR ligand injection.[147] In all instances, increased Flt3L production leads to increased export of DC progenitors from the bone marrow and DC division in the periphery.

Conversely, increasing the number of DCs by Flt3L injection leads to an increase in the number of T_{reg} cells. Thus, the feedback loop between DCs and T_{reg}s is mediated by Flt3L, and that maintains the physiologic numbers of these two cell types in the steady state (Fig. 16.3).[146] Alterations in this mechanism lead to immune imbalance and can alter the course of autoimmune disease in mice.[146,148] For example, increasing the number of DCs in diabetes prone nonobese diabetic mice leads to increased numbers of T_{reg}s and a delay in disease onset. Similarly, Flt3L injection can protect mice from inflammatory bowel disease by increasing the number of cDCs and thereby the number of T_{reg}s. Thus, the Flt3L-mediated homeostatic feedback loop between T_{reg}s and DCs has clinical implication for vaccine design as well as the control of autoimmunity. Finally, this mechanism is entirely consistent with the proposed role of DCs in maintaining tolerance and regulating immunologic responses in vivo.[149]

Dendritic Cell Migration

DC migration from peripheral tissues into lymphoid organs is key to their sentinel and antigen trafficking functions. Upon microbial contact or stimulation by inflammatory cytokines, nonlymphoid tissue resident cDCs traffic through afferent lymphatics to the T-cell areas of the lymph node where they can participate in the initiation of immune responses. Migration is dependent on CCR7, which is upregulated by stimuli such as TLR ligands that activate DCs.

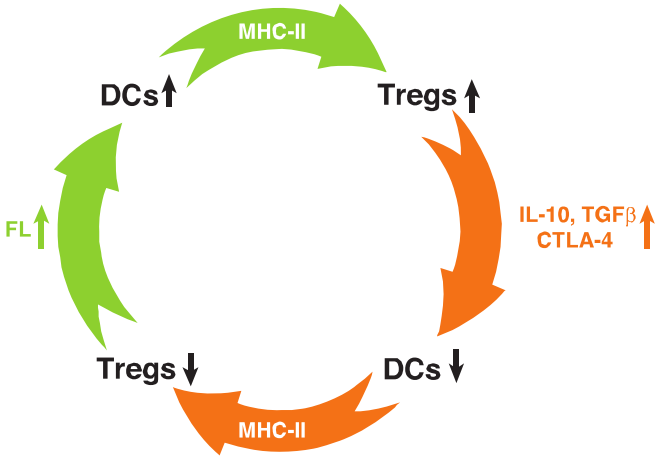


FIG. 16.3. Homeostatic Feedback Loop between Dendritic Cells and Regulatory T Cells.

Even in the absence of invading pathogens, some DCs are always migrating from tissues to lymph nodes. Studying afferent lymph is difficult in mice, but in rats, for example, DCs move along liver sinusoids in hepatic lymphatics to celiac lymph nodes,[150,151] and DCs from intestine migrate to mesenteric lymph nodes.[42,152] These cells are not found in the efferent lymph, indicating that most of the migrating DCs die after their arrival in lymphoid tissues. The DCs that migrate in the steady state might have several functions: to replenish immature populations, to transport self- or environmental antigens, or to be on patrol to identify invaders.

DC migration is a regulated process, controlled at the level of chemokine production and chemokine receptor expression and function.[153] Some immature DCs can express a repertoire of receptors (eg, CCR1, CCR2, CCR5, CCR6, and CXCR4) that bind inflammatory chemokines (eg, CCL5, CCL2, CCL3, CCL4, CCL20, and CXCL12). DC activation due to inflammatory signals is usually associated with downregulation of chemokine inflammatory receptors and the de novo expression of CCR7, the receptor for CCL19 and CCL21. In mice homozygous for an autosomal recessive mutation in CCL21 (paucity of lymph node T cells or plt/plt mice), naive T cells fail to home to secondary lymphoid organs. DCs in these mice also fail to accumulate in the spleen and in the T-cell areas of lymph nodes.[154] Similarly, CCR7−/− mice show defective secondary lymphoid organ architecture, defective homing of DCs and lymphocytes, and defective entry of DCs into lymphatic vessels at peripheral sites both in the steady state and inflammation conditions.[155] CCL19 and CCL21 also increase the maturation and proinflammatory differentiation of cDCs.[156] Therefore, chemokine/chemokine receptor interactions not only orchestrate the DC migration but also influence their immunogenic potential.

There are many other examples in which specific chemokines control the traffic of select populations of DCs (Table 16.3). In skin exposed to ultraviolet light, LCs disappear and are replaced in 2 weeks. The recruitment of LC precursors from blood is dependent on their expression of CCR2.[73] During murine listeriosis, CCR2 is also required for TNF-inducible nitric oxide synthase–producing DCs to migrate into the spleen.[53] Migration of pDCs into inflamed lymph nodes and their redistribution during inflammation depend on CXCR3 and CCR7. CCR6 is used by cDCs to populate epithelial surfaces during inflammation.[157–159] In the steady state, CXCL14 is important for LC progenitors to establish themselves in the skin.[160] All these findings indicate that the differential expression of chemokine receptors by DCs (and their subsets) at different stages of their life history determines their location in vivo.

ANTIGEN PRESENTATION

Antigen Capture

Macropinocytosis

DCs in culture continuously form 0.25 to 1.0 um pinocytic vesicles. These vesicles allow DCs to sample a large volume of extracellular fluid and soluble proteins that are present at low concentrations. Expression of aquaporin 3 and 7 on DCs may also contribute to macropinocytosis.[161]

TABLE 16.3 Animal Models Demonstrate Dendritic Cell Migration Depending on Chemokine Receptor

DC migration	
CCR2–/–, CCR5–/–	The recruitment of new Langerhans cells is dependent on their expression of the CCR2 chemokine receptor and on the secretion of CCR2-binding chemokines by inflamed skin.[73] Recruitment of TNF/inducible nitric oxide synthase–producing DC subset in spleens of *Listeria monocytogenes*–infected mice is dependent on CCR2 and independent of CCR5.[53,246]
CCR6–/–	CCR6 mediates DC localization, lymphocyte homeostasis, and immune responses in mucosal tissue. In CCR6–/– mice, DCs expressing CD11c and CD11b are absent from the subepithelial dome region of Peyer patches.[247]
CCR7–/–, plt/plt (CCL19 and CCL21–/–)	CCR7 coordinates the primary immune response by establishing functional microenvironments in secondary lymphoid organs.[155] Plt/plt mice lacking CCR7 ligands, CCL19 and CCL21, have defects in lymphocyte homing and DC localization.[154] CCR7 also governs skin DC migration under inflammatory and steady-state conditions.[248] CCR7 ligands, CCL19 and CCL21, induce a proinflammatory differentiation program in DCs.[156]
CCR8–/–	CCR7 and CCR8 pathways are used by monocyte-derived DCs during mobilization from skin to lymph nodes.[249]
CXCR3–/–	Plasmacytoid DCs migrate to inflamed lymph nodes, produce interferon-α, and help lymph node DCs to induce antiviral CTLs.[250,251]

CTL, cytotoxic T-lymphocyte; DC, dendritic cell; plt, paucity of lymph node T cells; TNF, tumor necrosis factor

Receptor-Mediated Phagocytosis

Phagocytosis is triggered by the attachment of extracellular particles to surface receptors, which mediate particle uptake. Multiple receptors on cDCs enhance recognition and ingestion of particulates including pathogens and dying cells. Importantly, many of the receptors also recognize molecular patterns on pathogens and as a result, activate DCs. In addition, DCs also express Fc receptors that mediate ingestion of opsonized particles and delivery to intracellular compartments that facilitate TAP-1–dependent cross-presentation to CD8 T cells. DCs express both activating and inhibitory forms of Fc receptors.[162] The inhibitory receptors help maintain DCs in an immature tolerogenic state. DCs that lack the FcγRIIB inhibitory receptor are more readily activated because the immunoreceptor-based tyrosine activation motif–associated FcγRIIA receptor is no longer subject to inhibition.[163] These observations have been extended in mice and humans through the identification of monoclonal antibodies that selectively block inhibitory receptors.[164,165]

Other than TLRs, DCs express many different types of pattern recognition receptors including those of the specific intercellular adhesion molecule-3-grabbing nonintegrin (SIGN) family, and multiple C-type lectins such as macrophage mannose receptor (MMR), DEC205, and DCIR2. MMR binds a range of bacteria, yeasts, and viruses through interactions between a mannose-type carbohydrate recognition domain and pathogen-associated high mannose structures. Notably, DCs deficient in any single C-type lectin receptor, such as MMR, DEC205, or DCIR2, develop normal adaptive immune response to dying cells, or pathogens, suggesting that this important class of receptors is redundant.

Dendritic Cell Maturation

DCs exist in two functionally distinct and phenotypically different stages. In the steady state, DCs in most tissues are equipped to capture and present antigens to T cells, but the outcome of antigen presentation by steady-state DCs is tolerance and not immunity. Steady-state DCs express high levels of pattern recognition and activation receptors, allowing them to sense changes in the environment, including pathogens and inflammatory cytokines. These signals induce extensive differentiation to a mature or activated state characterized by increased levels of cell surface MHC and coactivator expression, as well as cytokine secretion. In the activated state, DCs initiate potent and specifically polarized T-cell immune responses. Thus, pathogen sensing by DCs is an important mechanism that links innate pathogen recognition to the adaptive immune response.

Toll-Like Receptor Signaling

Microbes and viruses induce DC activation in part by engaging TLRs. DCs express nearly all known TLRs and also express additional cytoplasmic receptors that recognize pathogen patterns such as melanoma differentiation associated protein 5 (MDA-5), RIG-I, and DDX41, and nucleotide oligomerization domain–like receptors, although expression of specific receptors is restricted to distinct DC subsets.[166–168] In many cases, a single microbe will trigger several different TLRs expressed by DCs; therefore, a single TLR may be redundant for inducing immunity to many, but not all, pathogens. Thus, in humans, loss of TLR3 results in susceptibility to herpes simplex virus-1 infection but not to other microbes that also contain the TLR3 ligand.[169] Pathogen recognition by TLR ligation induces rapid DC activation and upregulation of MHC and costimulatory molecules, and also triggers secretion of inflammatory cytokines such as IL-1α, IL-6, TNFα, IL-18, and IL-12, which are critical in driving T-cell differentiation.[170–172]

Cytokines, T, and Natural Killer T Cell Signals

DCs can also sense proinflammatory cytokines such as TNFα and IL-1β, and direct cellular contact with activated T or NKT cells by ligation of CD40, a TNF receptor family molecule that is highly expressed on the surface of DCs. Many of these receptors, including TLRs, IL-1R, and TNF receptors, activate DCs through the NF-κB pathway.

Antigen Processing

DCs process ingested antigens for presentation on both MHC class I and MHC class II. Although DCs are excellent MHCII antigen-presenting cells, they are not unique in this respect. Other cells, including activated B cells and monocytes, can also process and present antigens for presentation by MHCII efficiently. For example, in germinal centers, activated B cells are the key antigen-presenting cell.

Macrophages endocytose antigens and rapidly digest them. In contrast, DCs sequester and preserve the captured antigen for later presentation. Preservation of antigens is critical for immunogenicity and depends on two DC specializations. The first is low lysosomal protease activity. Macrophages contain high levels of lysosomal proteases, including cathepsin S, cathepsin L, cathepsin K, and asparagine endopeptidase. These proteases enable rapid degradation of internalized proteins to single amino acids. Compared to macrophages, DCs express low amounts of proteases, resulting in a limited capacity for lysosomal degradation.[173] This low-level proteolytic capacity appears to be crucial as the peptides loaded on MHC and recognized by T cells consist of peptides between 8 to 17 amino acids. Consistent with this idea, mutations in amino acids in antigens that increase their resistance to lysosomal proteolysis increase immunogenicity by decreasing the rate of proteolysis.[173]

A second feature of DC lysosomes that facilitates antigen presentation is that DC lysosomes are less acidic compared to those in professional phagocytes. In macrophages and neutrophils, the low pH of the phagosome and endosome activates lysosomal proteases delivered to these endocytic vesicles. In DCs, the pH in these compartments is less acidic because the assembly of V-ATPase, an adenosine triphosphate–dependent vacuolar proton pump, appears to be incomplete in the lysosome of steady-state DCs, leading to alkalinization of the endocytic compartment.[174] In addition, DCs show efficient recruitment of Nox2 to endosomes and phagosomes. Nox2 produces reactive oxygen species, which consumes protons and thereby reduces the acidification of the endocytic compartment. NOX2-defective DCs exhibit a higher level acidification of the phagosome and increased proteolysis and decreased antigen presentation.[175] Furthermore, Nox2-deficient patients, who suffer from chronic granulomatous disease, show impaired cross-presentation.[176] Together, the lower levels of proteolytic activity and decreased acidity in endocytic compartment lead to a decrease in the rate of antigen digestion and increased availability of partially processed peptides for loading on MHC. This unique feature of DCs may also help preserve the antigen during the migration of nonlymphoid tissue DCs from the site of antigen capture to the lymph nodes.

Antigens are actively taken up by immature DCs and targeted to MHCII-positive lysosomes. However, these antigens are sequestered in an intact form and are not efficiently utilized for formation of MHCII-peptide complexes. Immature DCs do form stable MHCII dimers, but their presence does not result in immunogenic complexes. DC activation by microbial products or proinflammatory cytokines results in redistribution of MHCII from intracellular compartments to the plasma membrane. In addition, DC activation reduces lysosomal cystatin C, which leads to increased activation of cathepsin S and more efficient processing of Ii.[85]

DENDRITIC CELLS LINK INNATE AND ADAPTIVE IMMUNITY

Plasmacytoid Dendritic Cells

Nucleic acid–sensing pDCs are activated when they sense pathogen or self-derived nucleic acids and are involved in antiviral immunity and autoimmune diseases. Whereas monocytes express TLR4 (lipopolysaccharide sensor) and cDCs express TLR3 (double-stranded RNA sensor), pDCs selectively express TLR7 (single-stranded RNA sensor) and TLR9 (DNA sensor). pDCs endocytose viruses and sense their nucleic acids using TLR7 and TLR9, both of which reside in the endosomal compartment. TLR7 detects single-stranded RNA viruses, such as influenza, respiratory syncytial virus, Sendai, and vesicular stomatitis virus, and synthetic single-stranded RNA analogs such as R848/Imiqimod; TLR9 detects DNA viruses, such as herpes simplex virus-1, herpes simplex virus-2, and murine cytomeglavirus, or cytosin-phosphatidyl-guanosin oligodeoxynucleotides. Viruses that enter the cytoplasm of pDCs are detected after autophagy, a conserved cell-autonomous process involving lysosomal degradation of cellular organelles to deliver cytoplasmic RNA to TLR7-containing endosomal compartments. Both TLR7 and TLR9 use MyD88 as the adaptor protein for activation; thus, MyD88-deficient pDCs have defective responses to a wide range of viruses that enter the cytoplasm. Recruitment (binding) of MyD88 to the TLR leads to assembly of a signal-transducing complex that includes IRAK4, TRAF6, Bruton's tyrosine kinase, and IRF7.[177] This signaling complex is critical for IFN production by pDCs. In most cells, production of IFNα depends on binding of IFNβ to interferon-α/β receptor (IFNAR), which induces IRF7 expression. In pDCs, however, constitutive high-level expression of IRF7 facilitates a rapid IFNα response that is independent of IFNAR signaling.[105]

IFN production by pDCs is rapid, starting 4 hours after exposure to TLR ligands and peaking after 24 hours when pDCs become refractory. Type I IFN produced from activated pDCs not only directly inhibits viral replication, but also activates NK, B cells, and cDCs.[178] For example, human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) or herpes simplex virus infection stimulates pDCs to produce type I IFN and CD40L, which in turn activates cDCs and facilitates antigen presentation and development of antiviral immunity. Similarly, pDC nucleic acid sensing and cDC activation occurs in autoimmune diseases. In patients with systemic lupus erythematosus, pDCs are continuously activated by circulating immune complexes composed of self-DNA or RNA leading to high circulating levels of IFNα.[178]

Given the potential pathologic consequences of high-level IFNα production by pDCs, it is not surprising that this response is highly regulated. pDCs express an array of negative regulators to downregulate IFNα production. In humans, two surface molecules, BDCA2 and immunoglobulin-like

transcript 7 (also known as LILRA4), were found to suppress TLR-induced IFN production from pDCs. Both receptors mediate their inhibitory effects through cytoplasmic immunoreceptor-based tyrosine activation motifs, and both BDCA2 and immunoglobulin-like transcript 7 associate with the γ-chain of the high-affinity Fc receptor for immunoglobulin E (FcεRIγ).[179] Other immunoreceptor-based tyrosine activation motif–mediated inhibitors of pDC IFN production include NKp44 and sialic acid binding Ig-like lectin (Siglec)-H, which recruits DAP12.[180]

Interactions with Innate Lymphocytes

DCs interact with innate lymphocytes (eg, NK, NKT, and γδ T cells) in ways that enhance the functions of both cell types. DCs produce IL-12, IL-15, IL-2, and IFNα/β that affect different facets of NK cell function, whereas the innate lymphocytes induce DC activation.[181,182] Injection of activated cDCs leads to the recruitment of NK cells into the draining lymph nodes while exposure of cDCs to TLR stimuli induces IL-2 and IL-12 production, which in turn activate NK cells to produce IFNγ. DCs also present different glycolipids on CD1d molecules to the invariant T-cell receptor on NKT cells. These include endogenous lysosomal glycosphingolipids (eg, iGb3),[183] microbial lipids,[184,185] or synthetic glycolipids (eg, alpha-GalCer)[186,187] to activate NKT cells in vivo.

Type I IFN appears to be one of the essential mediators of DC activation in vivo. For example, antigen targeted to cDCs can elicit strong Th1 immunity in the presence of PolyI:C. PolyI:C binds to TLR3 on the cell surface and intracellular sensor MDA-5. However, PolyI:C does not directly stimulate DC maturation because deficiency of TLR3 or MDA-5 on DCs does not abrogate immunogenicity.[188] Instead, PolyI:C stimulates nonhematopoietic cells to produce large amounts of type I IFN.[188] High levels of systemic type I IFN stimulate functional maturation of cDCs, which consequently induce a robust Th1 response. Thus, microbial stimuli–induced DC maturation in vivo engages a cascade of cellular and molecular mechanisms, which may amplify the environmental signals to facilitate optimal immunity.

Initiating Adaptive T-Cell Immunity

In the steady state, DCs can endocytose a diverse array of antigens through multiple receptors on their cell surface. However, steady-state DCs typically express relatively low levels of surface MHC class I and II products and only low levels of costimulatory molecules (eg, CD80, CD86). Upon receipt of an activation stimulus, DCs undergo extensive differentiation, and they migrate in increased numbers to secondary lymphoid tissues.

DC–T-cell interactions in the lymph nodes have now been studied in the living state with two-photon microscopy.[33,189–192] Naïve antigen-specific T cells arrest on antigen-presenting DCs, and this stable interaction lasts for at least 18 hours. In the steady state, this stable DC–T-cell interaction leads to tolerance while an activation signal such as TLR ligation allow DCs to initiate immunity. cDC activation results in redistribution of MHCII from intracellular compartments to the plasma membrane; the upregulation of costimulatory molecules such as CD40, CD80, and CD86; and change in profiles of cytokine and chemokines such as TNFα and IL-12. All these changes likely contribute to the initiation of T-cell immunity.

The communication between DCs and T cells is a dialogue in which the DCs also respond to T cells. For example, CD40 and TRANCE/RANK receptor on DCs are ligated by the corresponding TNF family member expressed on activated and memory T cells (ie, CD40L and RANK-L).[193–195] This leads to increased DC survival and in the case of CD40 ligation, upregulation of CD80 and CD86, secretion of IL-12, and release of chemokines such as IL-8 and MIP-1α and β.

Controlling the Quality of the T-Cell Response

DCs are involved in critical T-cell fate decisions such as clonal selection, tolerance versus immunity, Th1 versus Th2, and even memory. In the presence of mature DCs producing IL-12 or IFNs (as might occur when DCs are ligated by CD40L or infected with viruses), CD4 T cells differentiate along a Th1 pathway for IFNγ production. The latter in turn activates the antimicrobial activity of macrophages and promotes killer T-cell differentiation. However, in the presence of exogenous IL-4, DCs induce T cells to differentiate into Th2 cells, which secrete IL-4, IL-5, and IL-13. These cytokines help B cells to make antibodies of the IgG1 and IgE isotypes, activate eosinophils, and stimulate fibrosis. A new and striking pathway that was first discovered with human monocyte–derived DCs involves the epithelial–derived cytokine thymic stromal lymphopoietin (TSLP). This cytokine stimulates DCs to induce "inflammatory Th2 cells" that produce TNFα (rather than IL-10) in addition to IL-4, IL-5, and IL-13.[196] Recent studies have shown that TSLP receptor knockout mice exhibit strong Th1 responses, with high levels of IL-12, IFNγ, and IgG2a, but low production of IL-4, IL-5, IL-10, IL-13, and immunoglobulin E.[197] DCs that are activated with either CD40L or TSLP are similar in appearance, being rich in MHCII and CD86 co-stimulatory molecules. However, they differ significantly in cytokine and chemokine production, and the functional consequences for T cells vary.[196]

Cross-Presentation by Conventional Dendritic Cells

CD8 T cells are critical for protective immunity against intracellular pathogens and malignant tumor cells. When autologous T cells are incubated with influenza-infected DCs, strong proliferative and cytotoxic T-lymphocyte (CTL) responses develop within a week. Thus, DCs present endogenous antigens on MHCI to prime CD8+ T cells. Interestingly, DCs can also present exogenous antigen on MHCI, an unconventional presentation path called "cross-presentation." The earliest experiment demonstrating the capacity of DCs in cross-presentation was done in vitro, when trinitrophenyl-modified cells were taken up by DCs. DCs can present trinitrophenyl, an exogenous antigen, and induce antitrinitrophenyl CTLs in vitro in a MHC-restricted manner.[14] Later, DCs were found to take up exogenous influenza

antigen in the form of nonreplicative virus or apoptotic cells, and present them on MHCI to prime CD8 T cells.[198] In the absence of DCs, mice are unable to process several different antigens through the exogenous pathway, indicating that DCs were a major cell type for cross presentation to CD8 T cells in vivo.[199] DCs cross present exogenous antigen taken up as soluble form or via multiple receptors, including FcR, CD91, Lox-1, DEC205/CD205, and DNGR1. CD8+ DCs in mice and their functional equivalent BDCA3+ DCs in humans excel in cross-presenting exogenous antigens.[24,134,200] Exogenous presentation or cross-presentation is essential for protective immunity against viruses and tumors.

DENDRITIC CELLS CONTROL TOLERANCE

The mechanisms used by DCs to initiate immunity against pathogens pose a major risk for the development of autoimmunity, allergy, and chronic inflammatory disease. For example, infection frequently induces some cell death; therefore, DCs at the site of infection capture pathogens and dying cells, and the two are processed and presented similarly.[201,202] Likewise, at body surfaces, maturing DCs are also capturing environmental antigens to which the body must remain unresponsive. How do maturing DCs focus the immune response on antigens derived from the pathogen and avoid inducing immunity to self- and nonpathogenic environmental antigens?

Thymic Dendritic Cells Contribute to Central Tolerance

Self-reactive thymocytes are deleted by antigen-presenting cells during negative selection. The thymus contains two major populations of antigen-presenting cells that express MHCII, namely, medullary thymic epithelial cells and cDCs. Both cell types are required for efficient negative selection. Medullary thymic epithelial cells express a panoply of self-antigens under the control of the autoimmune regulator "AIRE."[203] Self-antigens for negative selection in the thymus also include antigens expressed by DCs, and antigens that enter the thymus through the bloodstream and are captured by DCs. In the absence of antigen presentation by DCs, negative selection of CD4+ thymocytes is impaired.[204] In addition to negative selection, thymic cDCs also support the development of Foxp3+ T_{reg}s.[205] Thus cDCs contribute to central tolerance in the thymus by more than one mechanism.

Dendritic Cells Mediate Peripheral Tolerance

DCs also mediate tolerance in the periphery. Because central tolerance alone is incomplete, the immune system must continually establish tolerance to harmless or "noninfectious" antigen in the environment. Therefore, the effective control of self-reactive T cells depends on peripheral tolerance. For example, mice and humans deficient in T_{reg}s, which suppress autoreactive T cells in the periphery, succumb to autoimmunity at an early age. DCs constantly carry innocuous antigens from the periphery (eg, from the skin, airways, stomach, intestine, and pancreas) and present them to T cells in lymphoid organs.[206] A critical observation was that bone-marrow–derived cells in the pancreatic lymph nodes present peptides derived from insulin-producing β cells from pancreatic islets, leading to tolerance.[207,208] Although DCs were not implicated directly, a direct role for DCs in maintaining tolerance was established by Hawiger and colleagues by targeting antigens directly to DCs.[209] Furthermore, CD8α+ cDCs are particularly efficient in capturing dying cells[201] and inducing tolerance.[202] Likewise, when DCs capture innocuous proteins from the airway, profound tolerance develops even though the T cells can initially proliferate extensively to the antigen-capturing DCs in the draining lymph nodes.[210]

Deletion and Anergy

Mechanisms for peripheral tolerance can be intrinsic (deletion and anergy) or extrinsic (through suppressive T_{reg} cells). Interestingly, the former requires expression of B7 family members on the steady state DCs (eg, PD-L1 and CD86), which then ligate PD-1 and CTL antigen-4 on the T cells to be tolerized.

Regulatory T cells

Autoreactive T cells can remain quiescent in the presence of T_{reg} cells. There are two types of T_{reg}s: naturally occurring T_{reg}s derived from thymus (natural T_{reg}s) and T_{reg}s induced from Foxp3−CD4+ T cells in the periphery (induced T_{reg}s).[211]

The groups of Belkaid and Powrie found that a subset of gut DCs expressing CD103, the αEβ7 integrin, are specialized at inducing Foxp3+ T_{reg}s and maintaining oral tolerance.[212] CD103+ DCs from mesenteric lymph nodes or gut-associated lymphoid tissue produce transforming growth factor-β, a cytokine critical for induction of Foxp3+ T_{reg}s.[212] Additionally, CD103+ gut DCs use retinal dehydrogenase to metabolize vitamin A to bioactive retinoic acid, which acts as a cofactor for transforming growth factor-β to induce Foxp3+ T_{reg}s.[212,213] Similarly, skin DCs use vitamin D3 to induce T_{reg}s.[214,215] Therefore, DCs are able to employ environmental signals, vitamin A in the gut, and vitamin D3 in the skin to induce tolerance to harmless foreign antigens. The CD8+ and CD103+ DC subset appears to be specialized at T_{reg} induction. When antigens were targeted to CD8α+ DEC-205+ or CD8α− DCIR2+ DC subsets in vivo, only CD8α+ DEC-205+ DCs were able to induce Foxp3+ T_{reg}s from Foxp3− CD4+ T cells.[216]

DCs also maintain the homeostasis of T_{reg}s. Loss of DCs leads to a loss of T_{reg} cells, and the remaining T_{reg} cells exhibit decreased Foxp3 expression. The DC-dependent loss in T_{reg} cells leads to an increase in the number of T cells producing inflammatory cytokines, such as IFNβ and IL-17.[217] Conversely, increasing the number of DCs leads to increased T_{reg}-cell division and accumulation by a mechanism that requires MHCII expression on DCs.[146] Activation of β-catenin is essential for DC to control T_{reg} and peripheral tolerance. DCs lacking β-catenin show decreased production of immunosuppressive cytokines and a decreased ability to support the differentiation of naïve T cells into T_{reg}s in vitro.[218]

In summary, DCs have the capacity to induce tolerance by several mechanisms.

DENDRITIC CELLS IN CLINICAL IMMUNOLOGY

This section focuses on diseases in which DCs play a pathogenic role or can be targets for therapy.

Dendritic Cells in Transplantation

DCs play a key role in the outcome of organ and hematopoietic transplantation. In organ transplantation, both donor and recipient DCs contribute to graft rejection. Donor DCs in grafted organs migrate to lymphoid organs where they stimulate alloreactive T cells in the recipient to induce organ rejection[219,220]; recipient DCs can also capture antigens from the graft and elicit organ rejection. For example, in hematopoietic transplantation, recipient DCs initiate T-cell–induced graft-versus-host reactions.[74,221]

Dendritic Cells in Autoimmune Disease

Several human autoimmune diseases appear to involve DCs. Abundant DCs are found in the synovial exudates of rheumatoid arthritis, and TNF-α produced by DCs contributes to the severity of the disease. Similarly, in psoriasis, DCs infiltrate lesional skin, produce TNF-α, and polarize T cells toward Th1/Th17[222,223]; additionally, pDCs in psoriatic lesion become activated to produce type I IFN, which also contributes to the inflammatory response.

In systemic lupus erythematosus, two subsets of DCs contribute to the onset and severity of the disease; pDCs in patients with systemic lupus erythematosus overproduce IFNα, which activates cDCs and interferes with their ability to maintain peripheral tolerance.[178] Finally, DCs have been implicated in mouse models of type I diabetes by carrying self-antigens from the pancreas to draining lymph nodes where diabetogenic T-cell responses are initiated. In addition, DCs cultured from nonobese diabetic mice show an activated phenotype with increased IL-12 and costimulatory molecule expression.[224]

Dendritic Cells in Viral Infections

DCs mediate antiviral immunity by priming T-cell responses. However, a number of viruses have evolved strategies to subvert DCs, and thereby, the immune system.

The interaction between HIV and DCs is a fascinating example of viral immune subversion. DCs carry HIV from peripheral tissues into draining lymph nodes where the virus is transmitted to CD4 T cells. HIV binds to DCs by CCR4, CXCR5, or DC-SIGN, but productive infection is restricted by SAMHD1, a protein encoded by an Aicardi-Goutières syndrome susceptibility gene.[225] Transmission to CD4 T cells is dependent on DC-SIGN, a C-type lectin pathogen-recognition receptor expressed on the surface of DCs that retains the attached virus in an infectious state. In the lymphoid organs, close interaction between DCs and CD4+ T cells facilitate HIV transmission.[226,227]

Interestingly, DC-SIGN also serves as receptor for several other viruses including hepatitis C virus, Ebola virus, cytomegalovirus, dengue virus, and the severe acute respiratory syndrome coronavirus.[228–230] Dengue is a mosquito-borne flavivirus that causes a disease that can be associated with hemorrhagic fever. Dengue virus targets DCs directly through DC-SIGN but also enters DCs as a passenger in immune complexes that are taken up by Fc receptors.[231,232] When infection occurs through antibody enhancement mediated by Fc receptor, the infected DCs are involved in induction of the T-cell cytokines that mediate the vascular leak syndrome associated with the infection.

Dendritic Cells in Cancer

Tumors can suppress immunity in part through their effects on DCs. DC differentiation and activation can be suppressed by cancer-derived cytokines, such as IL-6, vascular endothelial growth factor, and IL-10.[233] In contrast to their normal counterparts that activate immune responses, DCs derived from tumors induce Foxp3+ T_{regs}[234] and IL-13–producing CD4+ T cells,[235] and suppress proliferation of CTLs[236] and NKT cells.

Dendritic Cell–Targeted Vaccines

DC-based vaccines are currently being used in the clinic, and DC-targeted vaccines are being tested.

DC-based immune therapy is currently available for treating prostatic cancer, but it is far from optimized and is not curative. Monocyte-derived DCs are generated ex vivo, loaded with tumor cells or tumor antigens, and reinjected into the patient.[237] Scientific and practical problems exist with this approach, including limited responses possibly due to inefficient migration of monocyte-derived DCs from injection site to the draining lymphoid organs and inefficient antigen presentation.

DC-targeted vaccines are based on the idea that antigens delivered specifically to DCs in conjunction with the appropriate adjuvants will produce strong and lasting immunity.[209] DC-targeted vaccines require that antigens be delivered specifically to endocytic receptors on DCs together with the appropriate stimuli to induce DC activation. For example, antigens have been incorporated into antireceptor monoclonal antibodies, which are then injected into the vaccine recipient.[209,238,239] This paradigm was established using antibodies to DEC205/CD205, which is abundant on DCs and delivers antigens to both MHC class I and II antigen-processing compartments.[240] In mice, antigens targeted to DEC205/CD205 on activated DCs induce strong immunity against tumors and a number of intracellular pathogens, including malaria and *Leishmania*.[238,241,242] Importantly, these responses are broad, often generating immunity against multiple epitopes[243] in mice of several MHC haplotypes and the responses elicit protection from mucosal infections.[244] Other potential DC targets include LOX-1/OLR1, MMR/CD206, DCIR/CLEC4A, DC-SIGN/CD209, DNGR1, langerin (CD207), and CD40.[28,245]

In conclusion, DCs play important roles in a number of different diseases. Moreover, they are excellent targets in designing new approaches to prevention and treatment of these diseases.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

We thank Drs. Heidi Schreiber and Jakob Loschko for their comments on the manuscript.

REFERENCES

1. Mishell RI, Dutton RW. Immunization of dissociated spleen cell cultures from normal mice. *J Exp Med*. 1967;126(3):423–442. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6034749
2. Steinman RM, Cohn ZA. Identification of a novel cell type in peripheral lymphoid organs of mice. I. Morphology, quantitation, tissue distribution. *J Exp Med*. 1973;137(5):1142–1162. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4573839
3. Steinman RM, Cohn ZA. Identification of a novel cell type in peripheral lymphoid organs of mice. II. Functional properties in vitro. *J Exp Med*. 1974;139(2):380–397. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4589990
4. Unanue ER, Cerottini JC. The immunogenicity of antigen bound to the plasma membrane of macrophages. *J Exp Med*. 1970;131(4):711–725. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/5430785
5. Ehrenreich BA, Cohn ZA. The fate of peptides pinocytosed by macrophages in vitro. *J Exp Med*. 1969;129(1):227–245. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/5782769
6. Ehrenreich BA, Cohn ZA. The uptake and digestion of iodinated human serum albumin by macrophages in vitro. *J Exp Med*. 1967;126(5):941–958. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6062005
7. Steinman RM, Cohn ZA. The interaction of soluble horseradish peroxidase with mouse peritoneal macrophages in vitro. *J Cell Biol*. 1972;55(1):186–204. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4347251
8. Steinman RM, Kaplan G, Witmer MD, Cohn ZA. Identification of a novel cell type in peripheral lymphoid organs of mice. V. Purification of spleen dendritic cells, new surface markers, and maintenance in vitro. *J Exp Med*. 1979;149(1):1–16. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/762493
9. Nussenzweig MC, Steinman RM, Unkeless JC, Witmer MD, Gutchinov B, Cohn ZA. Studies of the cell surface of mouse dendritic cells and other leukocytes. *J Exp Med*. 1981;154(1):168–187. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7252426
10. Steinman RM, Witmer MD. Lymphoid dendritic cells are potent stimulators of the primary mixed leukocyte reaction in mice. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1978;75(10):5132–5136. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/154105
11. Nussenzweig MC, Steinman RM. Contribution of dendritic cells to stimulation of the murine syngeneic mixed leukocyte reaction. *J Exp Med*. 1980;151(5):1196–1212. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6445399
12. Steinman RM, Gutchinov B, Witmer MD, Nussenzweig MC. Dendritic cells are the principal stimulators of the primary mixed leukocyte reaction in mice. *J Exp Med*. 1983;157(2):613–627. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6185614
13. Paul WE. Bridging innate and adaptive immunity. *Cell*. 2011;147(6):1212–1215. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22153065
14. Nussenzweig MC, Steinman RM, Gutchinov B, Cohn ZA. Dendritic cells are accessory cells for the development of anti-trinitrophenyl cytotoxic T lymphocytes. *J Exp Med*. 1980;152(4):1070–1084. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6968335
15. Nussenzweig MC, Steinman RM, Witmer MD, Gutchinov B. A monoclonal antibody specific for mouse dendritic cells. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1982;79(1):161–165. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6948298
16. Kraal G, Breel M, Janse M, Bruin G. Langerhans' cells, veiled cells, and interdigitating cells in the mouse recognized by a monoclonal antibody. *J Exp Med*. 1986;163(4):981–997. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3950549
17. Metlay JP, Witmer-Pack MD, Agger R, Crowley MT, Lawless D, Steinman RM. The distinct leukocyte integrins of mouse spleen dendritic cells as identified with new hamster monoclonal antibodies. *J Exp Med*. 1990;171(5):1753–1771. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2185332
18. Inaba K, Steinman RM, Van Voorhis WC, Muramatsu S. Dendritic cells are critical accessory cells for thymus-dependent antibody responses in mouse and in man. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1983;80(19):6041–6045. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6351074
19. Ardavin C, Shortman K. Cell surface marker analysis of mouse thymic dendritic cells. *Eur J Immunol*. 1992;22(3):859–862. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1347747
20. Vremec D, Zorbas M, Scollay R, et al. The surface phenotype of dendritic cells purified from mouse thymus and spleen: investigation of the CD8 expression by a subpopulation of dendritic cells. *J Exp Med*. 1992;176(1):47–58. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1613465
21. Shortman K, Liu YJ. Mouse and human dendritic cell subtypes. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2002;2(3):151–161. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11913066
22. Helft J, Ginhoux F, Bogunovic M, Merad M. Origin and functional heterogeneity of non-lymphoid tissue dendritic cells in mice. *Immunol Rev*. 2010;234(1):55–75. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20193012
23. Banchereau J, Steinman RM. Dendritic cells and the control of immunity. *Nature*. 1998;392(6673):245–252. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9521319
24. Hildner K, Edelson BT, Purtha WE, et al. Batf3 deficiency reveals a critical role for CD8alpha+ dendritic cells in cytotoxic T cell immunity. *Science*. 2008;322(5904):1097–1100. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19008445
25. Edelson BT, Kc W, Juang R, et al. Peripheral CD103+ dendritic cells form a unified subset developmentally related to CD8alpha+ conventional dendritic cells. *J Exp Med*. 2010;207(4):823–836. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20351058
26. Mashayekhi M, Sandau MM, Dunay IR, et al. CD8alpha(+) dendritic cells are the critical source of interleukin-12 that controls acute infection by Toxoplasma gondii tachyzoites. *Immunity*. 2011;35(2):249–259. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21867928
27. Edwards AD, Diebold SS, Slack EM, et al. Toll-like receptor expression in murine DC subsets: lack of TLR7 expression by CD8 alpha+ DC correlates with unresponsiveness to imidazoquinolines. *Eur J Immunol*. 2003;33(4):827–833. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12672047
28. Dudziak D, Kamphorst AO, Heidkamp GF, et al. Differential antigen processing by dendritic cell subsets in vivo. *Science*. 2007;315(5808):107–111. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17204652
29. Veerman AJ. On the interdigitating cells in the thymus-dependent area of the rat spleen: a relation between the mononuclear phagocyte system and T-lymphocytes. *Cell Tissue Res*. 1974;148(2):247–257. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4546010
30. Fossum S. The architecture of rat lymph nodes. II. Lymph node compartments. *Scand J Immunol*. 1980;12(5):411–420. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7466328
31. Fossum S, Vaaland JL. The architecture of rat lymph nodes. I. Combined light and electron microscopy of lymph node cell types. *Anat Embryol (Berl)*. 1983;167(2):229–246. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6614506
32. Lindquist RL, Shakhar G, Dudziak D, et al. Visualizing dendritic cell networks in vivo. *Nat Immunol*. 2004;5(12):1243–1250. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15543150
33. Shakhar G, Lindquist RL, Skokos D, et al. Stable T cell-dendritic cell interactions precede the development of both tolerance and immunity in vivo. *Nat Immunol*. 2005;6(7):707–714. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15924144
34. Knight SC, Balfour BM, O'Brien J, Buttifant L, Sumerska T, Clarke J. Role of veiled cells in lymphocyte activation. *Eur J Immunol*. 1982;12(12):1057–1060. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7160425
35. Hart DN, Fabre JW. Demonstration and characterization of Ia-positive dendritic cells in the interstitial connective tissues of rat heart and other tissues, but not brain. *J Exp Med*. 1981;154(2):347–361. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6943285
36. Anandasabapathy N, Victora GD, Meredith M, et al. Flt3L controls the development of radiosensitive dendritic cells in the meninges and choroid plexus of the steady-state mouse brain. *J Exp Med*. 2011;208(8):1695–1705. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21788405
37. Ginhoux F, Liu K, Helft J, et al. The origin and development of nonlymphoid tissue CD103+ DCs. *J Exp Med*. 2009;206(13):3115–3130. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20008528

38. Landsman L, Varol C, Jung S. Distinct differentiation potential of blood monocyte subsets in the lung. *J Immunol*. 2007;178(4):2000–2007. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17277103
39. Kelly RH, Balfour BM, Armstrong JA, Griffiths S. Functional anatomy of lymph nodes. II. Peripheral lymph-borne mononuclear cells. *Anat Rec*. 1978;190(1):5–21. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/626416
40. Bujdoso R, Hopkins J, Dutia BM, Young P, McConnell I. Characterization of sheep afferent lymph dendritic cells and their role in antigen carriage. *J Exp Med*. 1989;170(4):1285–1301. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2794860
41. Drexhage HA, Mullink H, de Groot J, Clarke J, Balfour BM. A study of cells present in peripheral lymph of pigs with special reference to a type of cell resembling the Langerhans cell. *Cell Tissue Res*. 1979;202(3):407–430. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/519712
42. Huang FP, Platt N, Wykes M, et al. A discrete subpopulation of dendritic cells transports apoptotic intestinal epithelial cells to T cell areas of mesenteric lymph nodes. *J Exp Med*. 2000;191(3):435–444. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10662789
43. Kondo M, Weissman IL, Akashi K. Identification of clonogenic common lymphoid progenitors in mouse bone marrow. *Cell*. 1997;91(5):661–672. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9393859
44. Akashi K, Traver D, Miyamoto T, Weissman IL. A clonogenic common myeloid progenitor that gives rise to all myeloid lineages. *Nature*. 2000;404(6774):193–197. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10724173
45. Kondo M, Scherer DC, King AG, Manz MG, Weissman IL. Lymphocyte development from hematopoietic stem cells. *Curr Opin Genet Dev*. 2001;11(5):520–526. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11532393
46. Wu L, Li CL, Shortman K. Thymic dendritic cell precursors: relationship to the T lymphocyte lineage and phenotype of the dendritic cell progeny. *J Exp Med*. 1996;184(3):903–911. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9064350
47. Wu L, Nichogiannopoulou A, Shortman K, Georgopoulos K. Cell-autonomous defects in dendritic cell populations of Ikaros mutant mice point to a developmental relationship with the lymphoid lineage. *Immunity*. 1997;7(4):483–492. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9354469
48. Shortman K, Vremec D, Corcoran LM, Georgopoulos K, Lucas K, Wu L. The linkage between T-cell and dendritic cell development in the mouse thymus. *Immunol Rev*. 1998;165:39–46. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9850850
49. Guerriero A, Langmuir PB, Spain LM, Scott EW. PU.1 is required for myeloid-derived but not lymphoid-derived dendritic cells. *Blood*. 2000;95(3):879–885. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10648399
50. Manz MG, Traver D, Akashi K, et al. Dendritic cell development from common myeloid progenitors. *Ann N Y Acad Sci*. 2001;938:167–173, discussion 173–174. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11458504
51. Randolph GJ, Beaulieu S, Lebecque S, Steinman RM, Muller WA. Differentiation of monocytes into dendritic cells in a model of transendothelial trafficking. *Science*. 1998;282(5388):480–483. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9774276
52. Randolph GJ, Inaba K, Robbiani DF, Steinman RM, Muller WA. Differentiation of phagocytic monocytes into lymph node dendritic cells in vivo. *Immunity*. 1999;11(6):753–761. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10626897
53. Serbina NV, Salazar-Mather TP, Biron CA, Kuziel WA, Pamer EG. TNF/iNOS-producing dendritic cells mediate innate immune defense against bacterial infection. *Immunity*. 2003;19(1):59–70. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12871639
54. Fogg DK, Sibon C, Miled C, et al. A clonogenic bone marrow progenitor specific for macrophages and dendritic cells. *Science*. 2006;311(5757):83–87. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16322423
55. Varol C, Landsman L, Fogg DK, et al. Monocytes give rise to mucosal, but not splenic, conventional dendritic cells. *J Exp Med*. 2007;204(1):171–180. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17190836
56. Naik SH, Metcalf D, van Nieuwenhuijze A, et al. Intrasplenic steady-state dendritic cell precursors that are distinct from monocytes. *Nat Immunol*. 2006;7(6):663–671. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16680143
57. Bogunovic M, Ginhoux F, Helft J, et al. Origin of the lamina propria dendritic cell network. *Immunity*. 2009;31(3):513–525. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19733489
58. Jakubzick C, Bogunovic M, Bonito AJ, Kuan EL, Merad M, Randolph GJ. Lymph-migrating, tissue-derived dendritic cells are minor constituents within steady-state lymph nodes. *J Exp Med*. 2008;205(12):2839–2850. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18981237
59. Waskow C, Liu K, Darrasse-Jeze G, et al. The receptor tyrosine kinase Flt3 is required for dendritic cell development in peripheral lymphoid tissues. *Nat Immunol*. 2008;9(6):676–683. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18469816
60. Liu K, Victora GD, Schwickert TA, et al. In vivo analysis of dendritic cell development and homeostasis. *Science*. 2009;324(5925):392–397. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19286519
61. Naik SH, Sathe P, Park HY, et al. Development of plasmacytoid and conventional dendritic cell subtypes from single precursor cells derived in vitro and in vivo. *Nat Immunol*. 2007;8(11):1217–1226. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17922015
62. Onai N, Obata-Onai A, Schmid MA, Ohteki T, Jarrossay D, Manz MG. Identification of clonogenic common Flt3+M-CSFR+ plasmacytoid and conventional dendritic cell progenitors in mouse bone marrow. *Nat Immunol*. 2007;8(11):1207–1216. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17922016
63. del Hoyo GM, Martin P, Vargas HH, Ruiz S, Arias CF, Ardavin C. Characterization of a common precursor population for dendritic cells. *Nature*. 2002;415(6875):1043–1047. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11875574
64. Diao J, Winter E, Chen W, Cantin C, Cattral MS. Characterization of distinct conventional and plasmacytoid dendritic cell-committed precursors in murine bone marrow. *J Immunol*. 2004;173(3):1826–1833. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15265914
65. Liu K, Waskow C, Liu X, Yao K, Hoh J, Nussenzweig M. Origin of dendritic cells in peripheral lymphoid organs of mice. *Nat Immunol*. 2007;8(6):578–583. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17450143
66. Rowden G. The Langerhans cell. *Crit Rev Immunol*. 1981;3(2):95–180. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6178552
67. Stingl G, Elbe A, Paer E, Kilgus O, Strohal R, Schreiber S. The role of fetal epithelial tissues in the maturation/differentiation of bone marrow-derived precursors into dendritic epidermal T cells (DETC) of the mouse. *Curr Top Microbiol Immunol*. 1991;173:269–277. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1833153
68. Katz SI, Tamaki K, Sachs DH. Epidermal Langerhans cells are derived from cells originating in bone marrow. *Nature*. 1979;282(5736):324–326. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/503208
69. Frelinger JG, Hood L, Hill S, Frelinger JA. Mouse epidermal Ia molecules have a bone marrow origin. *Nature*. 1979;282(5736):321–323. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/503207
70. Stingl G, Wolff-Schreiner EC, Pichler WJ, Gschnait F, Knapp W, Wolff K. Epidermal Langerhans cells bear Fc and C3 receptors. *Nature*. 1977;268(5617):245–246. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/887158
71. Rowden G, Lewis MG, Sullivan AK. Ia antigen expression on human epidermal Langerhans cells. *Nature*. 1977;268(5617):247–248. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/329141
72. Stingl G, Katz SI, Clement L, Green I, Shevach EM. Immunologic functions of Ia-bearing epidermal Langerhans cells. *J Immunol*. 1978;121(5):2005–2013. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/81860
73. Merad M, Manz MG, Karsunky H, et al. Langerhans cells renew in the skin throughout life under steady-state conditions. *Nat Immunol*. 2002;3(12):1135–1141. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12415265
74. Merad M, Hoffmann P, Ranheim E, et al. Depletion of host Langerhans cells before transplantation of donor alloreactive T cells prevents skin graft-versus-host disease. *Nat Med*. 2004;10(5):510–517. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15098028

75. Schuler G, Steinman RM. Murine epidermal Langerhans cells mature into potent immunostimulatory dendritic cells in vitro. *J Exp Med*. 1985;161(3):526–546. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3871837
76. Romani N, Lenz A, Glassel H, et al. Cultured human Langerhans cells resemble lymphoid dendritic cells in phenotype and function. *J Invest Dermatol*. 1989;93(5):600–609. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2529318
77. Romani N, Schuler G. Structural and functional relationships between epidermal Langerhans cells and dendritic cells. *Res Immunol*. 1989; 140(9):895–898, discussion 918–926. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2697912
78. Inaba K, Schuler G, Witmer MD, Valinksy J, Atassi B, Steinman RM. Immunologic properties of purified epidermal Langerhans cells. Distinct requirements for stimulation of unprimed and sensitized T lymphocytes. *J Exp Med*. 1986;164(2):605–613. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3487618
79. Pure E, Inaba K, Crowley MT, et al. Antigen processing by epidermal Langerhans cells correlates with the level of biosynthesis of major histocompatibility complex class II molecules and expression of invariant chain. *J Exp Med*. 1990;172(5):1459–1469. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2121888
80. Larsen CP, Steinman RM, Witmer-Pack M, Hankins DF, Morris PJ, Austyn JM. Migration and maturation of Langerhans cells in skin transplants and explants. *J Exp Med*. 1990;172(5):1483–1493. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2230654
81. Macatonia SE, Knight SC, Edwards AJ, Griffiths S, Fryer P. Localization of antigen on lymph node dendritic cells after exposure to the contact sensitizer fluorescein isothiocyanate. Functional and morphological studies. *J Exp Med*. 1987;166(6):1654–1667. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3119761
82. Reis e Sousa C, Stahl PD, Austyn JM. Phagocytosis of antigens by Langerhans cells in vitro. *J Exp Med*. 1993;178(2):509–519. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8393477
83. Kissenpfennig A, Ait-Yahia S, Clair-Moninot V, et al. Disruption of the langerin/CD207 gene abolishes Birbeck granules without a marked loss of Langerhans cell function. *Mol Cell Biol*. 2005;25(1):88–99. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15601833
84. Schuler G, Romani N, Linert J, Shevach EM, Stingl G. Subsets of epidermal Langerhans cells as defined by lectin binding profiles. *J Invest Dermatol*. 1983;81(5):397–402. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6631049
85. Pierre P, Turley SJ, Gatti E, et al. Developmental regulation of MHC class II transport in mouse dendritic cells. *Nature*. 1997;388(6644): 787–792. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9285592
86. Steiner G, Wolff K, Pehamberger H, Stingl G. Epidermal cells as accessory cells in the generation of allo-reactive and hapten-specific cytotoxic T lymphocyte (CTL) responses. *J Immunol*. 1985;134(2):736–741. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2578162
87. Schuler G, Romani N, Steinman RM. A comparison of murine epidermal Langerhans cells with spleen dendritic cells. *J Invest Dermatol*. 1985; 85(1)(suppl):99s–106s. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3159809
88. Witmer-Pack MD, Olivier W, Valinsky J, Schuler G, Steinman RM. Granulocyte/macrophage colony-stimulating factor is essential for the viability and function of cultured murine epidermal Langerhans cells. *J Exp Med*. 1987;166(5):1484–1498. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2445889
89. Ginhoux F, Tacke F, Angeli V, et al. Langerhans cells arise from monocytes in vivo. *Nat Immunol*. 2006;7(3):265–273. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16444257
90. Chorro L, Sarde A, Li M, et al. Langerhans cell (LC) proliferation mediates neonatal development, homeostasis, and inflammation-associated expansion of the epidermal LC network. *J Exp Med*. 2009;206(13):3089–3100. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19995948
91. Schulz C, Gomez Perdiguero E, Chorro L, et al. A lineage of myeloid cells independent of Myb and hematopoietic stem cells. *Science*. 2012; 336(6077):86–90. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22442384
92. Bogunovic M, Ginhoux F, Wagers A, et al. Identification of a radioresistant and cycling dermal dendritic cell population in mice and men. *J Exp Med*. 2006;203(12):2627–2638. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17116734
93. Poulin LF, Henri S, de Bovis B, Devilard E, Kissenpfennig A, Malissen B. The dermis contains langerin+ dendritic cells that develop and function independently of epidermal Langerhans cells. *J Exp Med*. 2007;204(13): 3119–3131. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18086861
94. Bursch LS, Wang L, Igyarto B, et al. Identification of a novel population of Langerin+ dendritic cells. *J Exp Med*. 2007;204(13):3147–3156. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18086865
95. Ginhoux F, Collin MP, Bogunovic M, et al. Blood-derived dermal langerin+ dendritic cells survey the skin in the steady state. *J Exp Med*. 2007;204(13):3133–3146. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18086862
96. Bedoui S, Whitney PG, Waithman J, et al. Cross-presentation of viral and self antigens by skin-derived CD103+ dendritic cells. *Nat Immunol*. 2009;10(5):488–495. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19349986
97. Sung SS, Fu SM, Rose CE Jr, Gaskin F, Ju ST, Beaty SR. A major lung CD103 (alphaE)-beta7 integrin-positive epithelial dendritic cell population expressing Langerin and tight junction proteins. *J Immunol*. 2006;176(4):2161–2172. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16455972
98. Varol C, Vallon-Eberhard A, Elinav E, et al. Intestinal lamina propria dendritic cell subsets have different origin and functions. *Immunity*. 2009;31(3):502–512. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19733097
99. Hacker C, Kirsch RD, Ju XS, et al. Transcriptional profiling identifies Id2 function in dendritic cell development. *Nat Immunol*. 2003;4(4): 380–386. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12598895
100. Aliberti J, Schulz O, Pennington DJ, et al. Essential role for ICSBP in the in vivo development of murine CD8alpha+ dendritic cells. *Blood*. 2003;101(1):305–310. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12393690
101. Svensson H, Johannisson A, Nikkila T, Alm GV, Cederblad B. The cell surface phenotype of human natural interferon-alpha producing cells as determined by flow cytometry. *Scand J Immunol*. 1996;44(2):164–172. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8711430
102. Grouard G, Durand I, Filgueira L, Banchereau J, Liu YJ. Dendritic cells capable of stimulating T cells in germinal centres. *Nature*. 1996; 384(6607):364–367. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8934523
103. Grouard G, Rissoan MC, Filgueira L, Durand I, Banchereau J, Liu YJ. The enigmatic plasmacytoid T cells develop into dendritic cells with interleukin (IL)-3 and CD40-ligand. *J Exp Med*. 1997;185(6):1101–1111. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9091583
104. Siegal FP, Kadowaki N, Shodell M, et al. The nature of the principal type 1 interferon-producing cells in human blood. *Science*. 1999;284(5421): 1835–1837. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10364556
105. Liu YJ. IPC: professional type 1 interferon-producing cells and plasmacytoid dendritic cell precursors. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 2005;23:275–306. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15771572
106. Ferrero I, Held W, Wilson A, Tacchini-Cottier F, Radtke F, MacDonald HR. Mouse CD11c(+) B220(+) Gr1(+) plasmacytoid dendritic cells develop independently of the T-cell lineage. *Blood*. 2002;100(8): 2852–2857. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12351395
107. Cervantes-Barragan L, Lewis KL, Firner S, et al. Plasmacytoid dendritic cells control T-cell response to chronic viral infection. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2012;109(8):3012–3017. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22315415
108. Takagi H, Fukaya T, Eizumi K, et al. Plasmacytoid dendritic cells are crucial for the initiation of inflammation and T cell immunity in vivo. *Immunity*. 2011;35(6):958–971. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22177923
109. Karsunky H, Merad M, Cozzio A, Weissman IL, Manz MG. Flt3 ligand regulates dendritic cell development from Flt3+ lymphoid and myeloid-committed progenitors to Flt3+ dendritic cells in vivo. *J Exp Med*. 2003;198(2):305–313. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12874263
110. Witmer-Pack MD, Hughes DA, Schuler G, et al. Identification of macrophages and dendritic cells in the osteopetrotic (op/op) mouse. *J Cell Sci*. 1993;104(pt 4):1021–1029. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8314887

111. McKenna HJ, Stocking KL, Miller RE, et al. Mice lacking flt3 ligand have deficient hematopoiesis affecting hematopoietic progenitor cells, dendritic cells, and natural killer cells. *Blood*. 2000;95(11):3489–3497. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10828034
112. Maraskovsky E, Brasel K, Teepe M, et al. Dramatic increase in the numbers of functionally mature dendritic cells in Flt3 ligand-treated mice: multiple dendritic cell subpopulations identified. *J Exp Med*. 1996;184(5):1953–1962. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8920882
113. Caux C, Dezutter-Dambuyant C, Schmitt D, Banchereau J. GM-CSF and TNF-alpha cooperate in the generation of dendritic Langerhans cells. *Nature*. 1992;360(6401):258–261. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1279441
114. Inaba K, Inaba M, Romani N, et al. Generation of large numbers of dendritic cells from mouse bone marrow cultures supplemented with granulocyte/macrophage colony-stimulating factor. *J Exp Med*. 1992; 176(6):1693–1702. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1460426
115. Vremec D, Lieschke GJ, Dunn AR, Robb L, Metcalf D, Shortman K. The influence of granulocyte/macrophage colony-stimulating factor on dendritic cell levels in mouse lymphoid organs. *Eur J Immunol*. 1997; 27(1):40–44. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9021996
116. Naik SH, Proietto AI, Wilson NS, et al. Cutting edge: generation of splenic CD8+ and CD8- dendritic cell equivalents in Fms-like tyrosine kinase 3 ligand bone marrow cultures. *J Immunol*. 2005;174(11): 6592–6597. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15905497
117. Laouar Y, Welte T, Fu XY, Flavell RA. STAT3 is required for Flt3L-dependent dendritic cell differentiation. *Immunity*. 2003;19(6):903–912. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14670306
118. Sathaliyawala T, O'Gorman WE, Greter M, et al. Mammalian target of rapamycin controls dendritic cell development downstream of Flt3 ligand signaling. *Immunity*. 2010;33(4):597–606. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20933441
119. Rathinam C, Geffers R, Yucel R, et al. The transcriptional repressor Gfi1 controls STAT3-dependent dendritic cell development and function. *Immunity*. 2005;22(6):717–728. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15963786
120. Onai N, Obata-Onai A, Tussiwand R, Lanzavecchia A, Manz MG. Activation of the Flt3 signal transduction cascade rescues and enhances type I interferon-producing and dendritic cell development. *J Exp Med*. 2006;203(1):227–238. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16418395
121. Tamura T, Tailor P, Yamaoka K, et al. IFN regulatory factor-4 and -8 govern dendritic cell subset development and their functional diversity. *J Immunol*. 2005;174(5):2573–2581. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15728463
122. Schiavoni G, Mattei F, Borghi P, et al. ICSBP is critically involved in the normal development and trafficking of Langerhans cells and dermal dendritic cells. *Blood*. 2004;103(6):2221–2228. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15728463
123. Ichikawa E, Hida S, Omatsu Y, et al. Defective development of splenic and epidermal CD4+ dendritic cells in mice deficient for IFN regulatory factor-2. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2004;101(11):3909–3914. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15728463
124. Wu L, D'Amico A, Winkel KD, Suter M, Lo D, Shortman K. RelB is essential for the development of myeloid-related CD8alpha-dendritic cells but not of lymphoid-related CD8alpha+ dendritic cells. *Immunity*. 1998;9(6):839–847. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9881974
125. Kobayashi T, Walsh PT, Walsh MC, et al. TRAF6 is a critical factor for dendritic cell maturation and development. *Immunity*. 2003;19(3): 353–363. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14499111
126. Cisse B, Caton ML, Lehner M, et al. Transcription factor E2-2 is an essential and specific regulator of plasmacytoid dendritic cell development. *Cell*. 2008;135(1):37–48. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18854153
127. Ghosh HS, Cisse B, Bunin A, Lewis KL, Reizis B. Continuous expression of the transcription factor e2-2 maintains the cell fate of mature plasmacytoid dendritic cells. *Immunity*. 2010;33(6):905–916. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21145760
128. Edelson BT, Bradstreet TR, Wumesh KC, et al. Batf3-dependent CD11b(low/-) peripheral dendritic cells are GM-CSF-independent and are not required for Th cell priming after subcutaneous immunization. *PLoS One*. 2011;6(10):e25660. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22065991
129. Caton ML, Smith-Raska MR, Reizis B. Notch-RBP-J signaling controls the homeostasis of CD8- dendritic cells in the spleen. *J Exp Med*. 2007; 204(7):1653–1664. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17591855
130. Lewis KL, Caton ML, Bogunovic M, et al. Notch2 receptor signaling controls functional differentiation of dendritic cells in the spleen and intestine. *Immunity*. 2011;35(5):780–791. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22018469
131. Collin M, Bigley V, Haniffa M, Hambleton S. Human dendritic cell deficiency: the missing ID? *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2011;11(9):575–583. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21852794
132. Robbins SH, Walzer T, Dembele D, et al. Novel insights into the relationships between dendritic cell subsets in human and mouse revealed by genome-wide expression profiling. *Genome Biol*. 2008;9(1):R17. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18218067
133. Crozat K, Guiton R, Contreras V, et al. The XC chemokine receptor 1 is a conserved selective marker of mammalian cells homologous to mouse CD8alpha+ dendritic cells. *J Exp Med*. 2010;207(6):1283–1292. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20479118
134. Poulin LF, Salio M, Griessinger E, et al. Characterization of human DNGR-1+ BDCA3+ leukocytes as putative equivalents of mouse CD8alpha+ dendritic cells. *J Exp Med*. 2010;207(6):1261–1271. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20479117
135. Lauterbach H, Bathke B, Gilles S, et al. Mouse CD8alpha+ DCs and human BDCA3+ DCs are major producers of IFN-lambda in response to poly IC. *J Exp Med*. 2010;207(12):2703–2717. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20975040
136. Kamath AT, Henri S, Battye F, Tough DF, Shortman K. Developmental kinetics and lifespan of dendritic cells in mouse lymphoid organs. *Blood*. 2002;100(5):1734–1741. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12176895
137. Kamath AT, Pooley J, O'Keeffe MA, et al. The development, maturation, and turnover rate of mouse spleen dendritic cell populations. *J Immunol*. 2000;165(12):6762–6770. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11120796
138. Kazenwadel J, Secker GA, Liu YJ, et al. Loss-of-function germ-line GATA2 mutations in patients with MDS/AML or MonoMAC syndrome and primary lymphedema reveal a key role for GATA2 in the lymphatic vasculature. *Blood*. 2012;119(5):1283–1291. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22147895
139. Hahn CN, Chong CE, Carmichael CL, et al. Heritable GATA2 mutations associated with familial myelodysplastic syndrome and acute myeloid leukemia. *Nat Genet*. 2011;43(10):1012–1017. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21892162
140. Hambleton S, Salem S, Bustamante J, et al. IRF8 mutations and human dendritic-cell immunodeficiency. *N Engl J Med*. 2011;365(2):127–138. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21524210
141. Bigley V, Haniffa M, Doulatov S, et al. The human syndrome of dendritic cell, monocyte, B and NK lymphoid deficiency. *J Exp Med*. 2011;208(2): 227–234. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21242295
142. Kabashima K, Banks TA, Ansel KM, Lu TT, Ware CF, Cyster JG. Intrinsic lymphotoxin-beta receptor requirement for homeostasis of lymphoid tissue dendritic cells. *Immunity*. 2005;22(4):439–450. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15845449
143. Kingston D, Schmid MA, Onai N, Obata-Onai A, Baumjohann D, Manz MG. The concerted action of GM-CSF and Flt3-ligand on in vivo dendritic cell homeostasis. *Blood*. 2009;114(4):835–843. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19465690
144. Birnberg T, Bar-On L, Sapoznikov A, et al. Lack of conventional dendritic cells is compatible with normal development and T cell homeostasis, but causes myeloid proliferative syndrome. *Immunity*. 2008; 29(6):986–997. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19062318
145. Kim JM, Rasmussen JP, Rudensky AY. Regulatory T cells prevent catastrophic autoimmunity throughout the lifespan of mice. *Nat Immunol*. 2007;8(2):191–197. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17136045

146. Darrasse-Jeze G, Deroubaix S, Mouquet H, et al. Feedback control of regulatory T cell homeostasis by dendritic cells in vivo. *J Exp Med*. 2009;206(9):1853–1862. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19667061
147. Eidenschenk C, Crozat K, Krebs P, et al. Flt3 permits survival during infection by rendering dendritic cells competent to activate NK cells. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2010;107(21):9759–9764. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20457904
148. O'Keeffe M, Brodnicki TC, Fancke B, et al. Fms-like tyrosine kinase 3 ligand administration overcomes a genetically determined dendritic cell deficiency in NOD mice and protects against diabetes development. *Int Immunol*. 2005;17(3):307–314. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15684037
149. Steinman RM, Nussenzweig MC. Avoiding horror autotoxicus: the importance of dendritic cells in peripheral T cell tolerance. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2002;99(1):351–358. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11773639
150. Matsuno K, Ezaki T, Kudo S, Uehara Y. A life stage of particle-laden rat dendritic cells in vivo: their terminal division, active phagocytosis, and translocation from the liver to the draining lymph. *J Exp Med*. 1996;183(4):1865–1878. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8666943
151. Matsuno K, Ezaki T. Dendritic cell dynamics in the liver and hepatic lymph. *Int Rev Cytol*. 2000;197:83–136. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10761116
152. Mayrhofer G, Pugh CW, Barclay AN. The distribution, ontogeny and origin in the rat of Ia-positive cells with dendritic morphology and of Ia antigen in epithelia, with special reference to the intestine. *Eur J Immunol*. 1983;13(2):112–122. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6403355
153. Randolph GJ, Angeli V, Swartz MA. Dendritic-cell trafficking to lymph nodes through lymphatic vessels. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2005;5(8):617–628. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16056255
154. Gunn MD, Kyuwa S, Tam C, et al. Mice lacking expression of secondary lymphoid organ chemokine have defects in lymphocyte homing and dendritic cell localization. *J Exp Med*. 1999;189(3):451–460. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9927507
155. Forster R, Schubel A, Breitfeld D, et al. CCR7 coordinates the primary immune response by establishing functional microenvironments in secondary lymphoid organs. *Cell*. 1999;99(1):23–33. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10520991
156. Marsland BJ, Battig P, Bauer M, et al. CCL19 and CCL21 induce a potent proinflammatory differentiation program in licensed dendritic cells. *Immunity*. 2005;22(4):493–505. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15845453
157. Greaves DR, Wang W, Dairaghi DJ, et al. CCR6, a CC chemokine receptor that interacts with macrophage inflammatory protein 3alpha and is highly expressed in human dendritic cells. *J Exp Med*. 1997;186(6):837–844. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9294138
158. Dieu MC, Vanbervliet B, Vicari A, et al. Selective recruitment of immature and mature dendritic cells by distinct chemokines expressed in different anatomic sites. *J Exp Med*. 1998;188(2):373–386. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9670049
159. Iwasaki A, Kelsall BL. Localization of distinct Peyer's patch dendritic cell subsets and their recruitment by chemokines macrophage inflammatory protein (MIP)-3alpha, MIP-3beta, and secondary lymphoid organ chemokine. *J Exp Med*. 2000;191(8):1381–1394. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10770804
160. Schaerli P, Willimann K, Ebert LM, Walz A, Moser B. Cutaneous CXCL14 targets blood precursors to epidermal niches for Langerhans cell differentiation. *Immunity*. 2005;23(3):331–342. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16169505
161. de Baey A, Lanzavecchia A. The role of aquaporins in dendritic cell macropinocytosis. *J Exp Med*. 2000;191(4):743–748. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10684866
162. Muta T, Kurosaki T, Misulovin Z, Sanchez M, Nussenzweig MC, Ravetch JV. A 13-amino-acid motif in the cytoplasmic domain of Fc gamma RIIB modulates B-cell receptor signalling. *Nature*. 1994;369(6478):340. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8183374
163. Kalergis AM, Ravetch JV. Inducing tumor immunity through the selective engagement of activating Fcgamma receptors on dendritic cells. *J Exp Med*. 2002;195(12):1653–1659. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12070293
164. Dhodapkar KM, Kaufman JL, Ehlers M, et al. Selective blockade of inhibitory Fcgamma receptor enables human dendritic cell maturation with IL-12p70 production and immunity to antibody-coated tumor cells. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2005;102(8):2910–2915. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15703291
165. Samuelsson A, Towers TL, Ravetch JV. Anti-inflammatory activity of IVIG mediated through the inhibitory Fc receptor. *Science*. 2001;291(5503):484–486. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11161202
166. Gitlin L, Barchet W, Gilfillan S, et al. Essential role of mda-5 in type I IFN responses to polyriboinosinic:polyribocytidylic acid and encephalomyocarditis picornavirus. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2006;103(22):8459–8464. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16714379
167. Kato H, Sato S, Yoneyama M, et al. Cell type-specific involvement of RIG-I in antiviral response. *Immunity*. 2005;23(1):19–28. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16039576
168. Zhang Z, Yuan B, Bao M, Lu N, Kim T, Liu YJ. The helicase DDX41 senses intracellular DNA mediated by the adaptor STING in dendritic cells. *Nat Immunol*. 2011;12(10):959–965. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21892174
169. Zhang SY, Jouanguy E, Ugolini S, et al. TLR3 deficiency in patients with herpes simplex encephalitis. *Science*. 2007;317(5844):1522–1527. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17872438
170. Kadowaki N, Ho S, Antonenko S, et al. Subsets of human dendritic cell precursors express different toll-like receptors and respond to different microbial antigens. *J Exp Med*. 2001;194(6):863–869. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11561001
171. Sporri R, Reis e Sousa C. Inflammatory mediators are insufficient for full dendritic cell activation and promote expansion of CD4+ T cell populations lacking helper function. *Nat Immunol*. 2005;6(2):163–170. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15654341
172. Kupz A, Guarda G, Gebhardt T, et al. NLRC4 inflammasomes in dendritic cells regulate noncognate effector function by memory CD8 T cells. *Nat Immunol*. 2012;13(2):162–169. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22231517
173. Delamarre L, Pack M, Chang H, Mellman I, Trombetta ES. Differential lysosomal proteolysis in antigen-presenting cells determines antigen fate. *Science*. 2005;307(5715):1630–1634. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15761154
174. Trombetta ES, Ebersold M, Garrett W, Pypaert M, Mellman I. Activation of lysosomal function during dendritic cell maturation. *Science*. 2003;299(5611):1400–1403. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12610307
175. Savina A, Jancic C, Hugues S, et al. NOX2 controls phagosomal pH to regulate antigen processing during crosspresentation by dendritic cells. *Cell*. 2006;126(1):205–218. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16839887
176. Mantegazza AR, Savina A, Vermeulen M, et al. NADPH oxidase controls phagosomal pH and antigen cross-presentation in human dendritic cells. *Blood*. 2008;112(12):4712–4722. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18682599
177. Ito T, Wang YH, Liu YJ. Plasmacytoid dendritic cell precursors/type I interferon-producing cells sense viral infection by Toll-like receptor (TLR) 7 and TLR9. *Springer Semin Immunopathol*. 2005;26(3):221–229. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15592841
178. Blanco P, Palucka AK, Gill M, Pascual V, Banchereau J. Induction of dendritic cell differentiation by IFN-alpha in systemic lupus erythematosus. *Science*. 2001;294(5546):1540–1543. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11711679
179. Cao W, Rosen DB, Ito T, et al. Plasmacytoid dendritic cell-specific receptor ILT7-Fc epsilonRI gamma inhibits Toll-like receptor-induced interferon production. *J Exp Med*. 2006;203(6):1399–1405. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16735691
180. Sjolin H, Robbins SH, Bessou G, et al. DAP12 signaling regulates plasmacytoid dendritic cell homeostasis and down-modulates their function during viral infection. *J Immunol*. 2006;177(5):2908–2916. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16920926

181. Munz C, Steinman RM, Fujii S. Dendritic cell maturation by innate lymphocytes: coordinated stimulation of innate and adaptive immunity. *J Exp Med*. 2005;202(2):203–207. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16027234
182. Walzer T, Dalod M, Robbins SH, Zitvogel L, Vivier E. Natural-killer cells and dendritic cells: "l'union fait la force." *Blood*. 2005;106(7):2252–2258. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15933055
183. Zhou D, Mattner J, Cantu C III, et al. Lysosomal glycosphingolipid recognition by NKT cells. *Science*. 2004;306(5702):1786–1789. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15539565
184. Mattner J, Debord KL, Ismail N, et al. Exogenous and endogenous glycolipid antigens activate NKT cells during microbial infections. *Nature*. 2005;434(7032):525–529. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15791258
185. Kinjo Y, Wu D, Kim G, et al. Recognition of bacterial glycosphingolipids by natural killer T cells. *Nature*. 2005;434(7032):520–525. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15791257
186. Fujii S, Shimizu K, Smith C, Bonifaz L, Steinman RM. Activation of natural killer T cells by alpha-galactosylceramide rapidly induces the full maturation of dendritic cells in vivo and thereby acts as an adjuvant for combined CD4 and CD8 T cell immunity to a coadministered protein. *J Exp Med*. 2003;198(2):267–279. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12874260
187. Hermans IF, Silk JD, Gileadi U, et al. NKT cells enhance CD4+ and CD8+ T cell responses to soluble antigen in vivo through direct interaction with dendritic cells. *J Immunol*. 2003;171(10):5140–5147. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14607913
188. Longhi MP, Trumpfheller C, Idoyaga J, et al. Dendritic cells require a systemic type I interferon response to mature and induce CD4+ Th1 immunity with poly IC as adjuvant. *J Exp Med*. 2009;206(7):1589–1602. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19564349
189. Bousso P, Robey E. Dynamics of CD8+ T cell priming by dendritic cells in intact lymph nodes. *Nat Immunol*. 2003;4(6):579–585. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12730692
190. Miller MJ, Safrina O, Parker I, Cahalan MD. Imaging the single cell dynamics of CD4+ T cell activation by dendritic cells in lymph nodes. *J Exp Med*. 2004;200(7):847–856. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15466619
191. Mempel TR, Henrickson SE, Von Andrian UH. T-cell priming by dendritic cells in lymph nodes occurs in three distinct phases. *Nature*. 2004;427(6970):154–159. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14712275
192. Hugues S, Fetler L, Bonifaz L, Helft J, Amblard F, Amigorena S. Distinct T cell dynamics in lymph nodes during the induction of tolerance and immunity. *Nat Immunol*. 2004;5(12):1235–1242. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15516925
193. van Kooten C, Banchereau J. Functions of CD40 on B cells, dendritic cells and other cells. *Curr Opin Immunol*. 1997;9(3):330–337. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9203418
194. Anderson DM, Maraskovsky E, Billingsley WL, et al. A homologue of the TNF receptor and its ligand enhance T-cell growth and dendritic-cell function. *Nature*. 1997;390(6656):175–179. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9367155
195. Wong BR, Josien R, Lee SY, et al. TRANCE (tumor necrosis factor [TNF]-related activation-induced cytokine), a new TNF family member predominantly expressed in T cells, is a dendritic cell-specific survival factor. *J Exp Med*. 1997;186(12):2075–2080. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9396779
196. Soumelis V, Reche PA, Kanzler H, et al. Human epithelial cells trigger dendritic cell mediated allergic inflammation by producing TSLP. *Nat Immunol*. 2002;3(7):673–680. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12055625
197. Al-Shami A, Spolski R, Kelly J, Keane-Myers A, Leonard WJ. A role for TSLP in the development of inflammation in an asthma model. *J Exp Med*. 2005;202(6):829–839. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16172260
198. Albert ML, Sauter B, Bhardwaj N. Dendritic cells acquire antigen from apoptotic cells and induce class I-restricted CTLs. *Nature*. 1998;392(6671):86–89. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9510252
199. Jung S, Unutmaz D, Wong P, et al. In vivo depletion of CD11c+ dendritic cells abrogates priming of CD8+ T cells by exogenous cell-associated antigens. *Immunity*. 2002;17(2):211–220. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12196292
200. Schreibelt G, Klinkenberg LJ, Cruz LJ, et al. The C-type lectin receptor CLEC9A mediates antigen uptake and (cross-)presentation by human blood BDCA3+ myeloid dendritic cells. *Blood*. 2012;119(10):2284–2292. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22234694
201. Iyoda T, Shimoyama S, Liu K, et al. The CD8+ dendritic cell subset selectively endocytoses dying cells in culture and in vivo. *J Exp Med*. 2002;195(10):1289–1302. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12021309
202. Liu K, Iyoda T, Saternus M, Kimura Y, Inaba K, Steinman RM. Immune tolerance after delivery of dying cells to dendritic cells in situ. *J Exp Med*. 2002;196(8):1091–1097. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12391020
203. Anderson MS, Venanzi ES, Klein L, et al. Projection of an immunological self shadow within the thymus by the aire protein. *Science*. 2002;298(5597):1395–1401. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12376594
204. Brocker T, Riedinger M, Karjalainen K. Targeted expression of major histocompatibility complex (MHC) class II molecules demonstrates that dendritic cells can induce negative but not positive selection of thymocytes in vivo. *J Exp Med*. 1997;185(3):541–550. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9053454
205. Proietto AI, van Dommelen S, Zhou P, et al. Dendritic cells in the thymus contribute to T-regulatory cell induction. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2008;105(50):19869–19874. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19073916
206. Steinman RM, Hawiger D, Nussenzweig MC. Tolerogenic dendritic cells. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 2003;21:685–711. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12615891
207. Kurts C, Heath WR, Carbone FR, Allison J, Miller JF, Kosaka H. Constitutive class I-restricted exogenous presentation of self antigens in vivo. *J Exp Med*. 1996;184(3):923–930. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9064352
208. Kurts C, Kosaka H, Carbone FR, Miller JF, Heath WR. Class I-restricted cross-presentation of exogenous self-antigens leads to deletion of autoreactiveCD8(+) T cells. *J Exp Med*. 1997;186(2):239–245. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9221753
209. Hawiger D, Inaba K, Dorsett Y, et al. Dendritic cells induce peripheral T cell unresponsiveness under steady state conditions in vivo. *J Exp Med*. 2001;194(6):769–779. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11560993
210. Brimnes MK, Bonifaz L, Steinman RM, Moran TM. Influenza virus-induced dendritic cell maturation is associated with the induction of strong T cell immunity to a coadministered, normally nonimmunogenic protein. *J Exp Med*. 2003;198(1):133–144. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12847140
211. Kretschmer K, Apostolou I, Hawiger D, Khazaie K, Nussenzweig MC, von Boehmer H. Inducing and expanding regulatory T cell populations by foreign antigen. *Nat Immunol*. 2005;6(12):1219–1227. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16244650
212. Coombes JL, Siddiqui KR, Arancibia-Carcamo CV, et al. A functionally specialized population of mucosal CD103+ DCs induces Foxp3+ regulatory T cells via a TGF-beta and retinoic acid-dependent mechanism. *J Exp Med*. 2007;204(8):1757–1764. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17620361
213. Sun CM, Hall JA, Blank RB, et al. Small intestine lamina propria dendritic cells promote de novo generation of Foxp3 T reg cells via retinoic acid. *J Exp Med*. 2007;204(8):1775–1785. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17620362
214. van der Aar AM, Sibiryak DS, Bakdash G, et al. Vitamin D3 targets epidermal and dermal dendritic cells for induction of distinct regulatory T cells. *J Allergy Clin Immunol*. 2011;127(6):1532–1540 e7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21497886
215. Sigmundsdottir H, Pan J, Debes GF, et al. DCs metabolize sunlight-induced vitamin D3 to "program" T cell attraction to the epidermal chemokine CCL27. *Nat Immunol*. 2007;8(3):285–293. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17259988
216. Yamazaki S, Dudziak D, Heidkamp GF, et al. CD8+ CD205+ splenic dendritic cells are specialized to induce Foxp3+ regulatory T cells. *J Immunol*. 2008;181(10):6923–6933. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17259988
217. Ohnmacht C, Pullner A, King SB, et al. Constitutive ablation of dendritic cells breaks self-tolerance of CD4 T cells and results in spontaneous fatal autoimmunity. *J Exp Med*. 2009;206(3):549–559. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19237601

218. Manicassamy S, Reizis B, Ravindran R, et al. Activation of beta-catenin in dendritic cells regulates immunity versus tolerance in the intestine. *Science*. 2010;329(5993):849–853. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20705860
219. Ochando JC, Homma C, Yang Y, et al. Alloantigen-presenting plasmacytoid dendritic cells mediate tolerance to vascularized grafts. *Nat Immunol*. 2006;7(6):652–662. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16633346
220. Inaba K, Turley S, Yamaide F, et al. Efficient presentation of phagocytosed cellular fragments on the major histocompatibility complex class II products of dendritic cells. *J Exp Med*. 1998;188(11):2163–2173. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9841929
221. Shlomchik WD, Couzens MS, Tang CB, et al. Prevention of graft versus host disease by inactivation of host antigen-presenting cells. *Science*. 1999;285(5426):412–415. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10411505
222. Lowes MA, Chamian F, Abello MV, et al. Increase in TNF-alpha and inducible nitric oxide synthase-expressing dendritic cells in psoriasis and reduction with efalizumab (anti-CD11a). *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2005;102(52):19057–19062. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16380428
223. Zaba LC, Fuentes-Duculan J, Eungdamrong NJ, et al. Psoriasis is characterized by accumulation of immunostimulatory and Th1/ Th17 cell-polarizing myeloid dendritic cells. *J Invest Dermatol*. 2009;129(1):79–88. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18633443
224. Poligone B, Weaver DJ Jr, Sen P, Baldwin AS Jr, Tisch R. Elevated NF-kappaB activation in nonobese diabetic mouse dendritic cells results in enhanced APC function. *J Immunol*. 2002;168(1):188–196. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11751962
225. Laguette N, Sobhian B, Casartelli N, et al. SAMHD1 is the dendritic- and myeloid-cell-specific HIV-1 restriction factor counteracted by Vpx. *Nature*. 2011;474(7353):654–657. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21613998
226. Frankel SS, Wenig BM, Burke AP, et al. Replication of HIV-1 in dendritic cell-derived syncytia at the mucosal surface of the adenoid. *Science*. 1996;272(5258):115–117. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8600520
227. Kwon DS, Gregorio G, Bitton N, Hendrickson WA, Littman DR. DC-SIGN-mediated internalization of HIV is required for transenhancement of T cell infection. *Immunity*. 2002;16(1):135–144. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11825572
228. Alvarez CP, Lasala F, Carrillo J, Muniz O, Corbi AL, Delgado R. C-type lectins DC-SIGN and L-SIGN mediate cellular entry by Ebola virus in cis and in trans. *J Virol*. 2002;76(13):6841–6844. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12050398
229. Yang ZY, Huang Y, Ganesh L, et al. pH-dependent entry of severe acute respiratory syndrome coronavirus is mediated by the spike glycoprotein and enhanced by dendritic cell transfer through DC SIGN. *J Virol*. 2004;78(11):5642–5650. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15140961
230. Lozach PY, Amara A, Bartosch B, et al. C-type lectins L-SIGN and DC-SIGN capture and transmit infectious hepatitis C virus pseudotype particles. *J Biol Chem*. 2004;279(31):32035–32045. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15140961
231. Boonnak K, Slike BM, Burgess TH, et al. Role of dendritic cells in antibody-dependent enhancement of dengue virus infection. *J Virol*. 2008;82(8):3939–3951. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18272578
232. Tassaneetrithep B, Burgess TH, Granelli-Piperno A, et al. DC-SIGN (CD209) mediates dengue virus infection of human dendritic cells. *J Exp Med*. 2003;197(7):823–829. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12682107
233. Kortylewski M, Kujawski M, Wang T, et al. Inhibiting Stat3 signaling in the hematopoietic system elicits multicomponent antitumor immunity. *Nat Med*. 2005;11(12):1314–1321. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16288283
234. Ghiringhelli F, Puig PE, Roux S, et al. Tumor cells convert immature myeloid dendritic cells into TGF-beta-secreting cells inducing CD4+CD25+ regulatory T cell proliferation. *J Exp Med*. 2005;202(7):919–929. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16186184
235. Aspord C, Pedroza-Gonzalez A, Gallegos M, et al. Breast cancer instructs dendritic cells to prime interleukin 13-secreting CD4+ T cells that facilitate tumor development. *J Exp Med*. 2007;204(5):1037–1047. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17438063
236. Diao J, Zhao J, Winter E, Cattral MS. Tumors suppress in situ proliferation of cytotoxic T cells by promoting differentiation of Gr-1(+) conventional dendritic cells through IL-6. *J Immunol*. 2011;186(9):5058–5067. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21430223
237. Schuler-Thurner B, Schultz ES, Berger TG, et al. Rapid induction of tumor-specific type 1 T helper cells in metastatic melanoma patients by vaccination with mature, cryopreserved, peptide-loaded monocyte-derived dendritic cells. *J Exp Med*. 2002;195(10):1279–1288. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12021308
238. Soares H, Waechter H, Glaichenhaus N, et al. A subset of dendritic cells induces CD4+ T cells to produce IFN-gamma by an IL-12-independent but CD70-dependent mechanism in vivo. *J Exp Med*. 2007;204(5):1095–1106. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17438065
239. Trumpfheller C, Finke JS, Lopez CB, et al. Intensified and protective CD4+ T cell immunity in mice with anti-dendritic cell HIV gag fusion antibody vaccine. *J Exp Med*. 2006;203(3):607–617. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16505141
240. Jiang W, Swiggard WJ, Heufler C, et al. The receptor DEC-205 expressed by dendritic cells and thymic epithelial cells is involved in antigen processing. *Nature*. 1995;375(6527):151–155. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7753172
241. Boscardin SB, Hafalla JC, Masilamani RF, et al. Antigen targeting to dendritic cells elicits long-lived T cell help for antibody responses. *J Exp Med*. 2006;203(3):599–606. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16505139
242. Trumpfheller C, Longhi MP, Caskey M, et al. Dendritic cell-targeted protein vaccines: a novel approach to induce T cell immunity. *J Intern Med*. 2012;271(2):183–192. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22126373
243. Bozzacco L, Yu H, Zebroski HA, et al. Mass spectrometry analysis and quantitation of peptides presented on the MHC II molecules of mouse spleen dendritic cells. *J Proteome Res*. 2011;10(11):5016–5030. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21913724
244. Trumpfheller C, Caskey M, Nchinda G, et al. The microbial mimic poly IC induces durable and protective CD4+ T cell immunity together with a dendritic cell targeted vaccine. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2008;105(7):2574–2579. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18256187
245. Idoyaga J, Lubkin A, Fiorese C, et al. Comparable T helper 1 (Th1) and CD8 T-cell immunity by targeting HIV gag p24 to CD8 dendritic cells within antibodies to Langerin, DEC205, and Clec9A. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2011;108(6):2384–2389. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21262813
246. Zhong MX, Kuziel WA, Pamer EG, Serbina NV. Chemokine receptor 5 is dispensable for innate and adaptive immune responses to Listeria monocytogenes infection. *Infect Immun*. 2004;72(2):1057–1064. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14742553
247. Cook DN, Prosser DM, Forster R, et al. CCR6 mediates dendritic cell localization, lymphocyte homeostasis, and immune responses in mucosal tissue. *Immunity*. 2000;12(5):495–503. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10843382
248. Ohl L, Mohaupt M, Czeloth N, et al. CCR7 governs skin dendritic cell migration under inflammatory and steady-state conditions. *Immunity*. 2004;21(2):279–288. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15308107
249. Qu C, Edwards EW, Tacke F, et al. Role of CCR8 and other chemokine pathways in the migration of monocyte-derived dendritic cells to lymph nodes. *J Exp Med*. 2004;200(10):1231–1241. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15534368
250. Asselin-Paturel C, Brizard G, Chemin K, et al. Type I interferon dependence of plasmacytoid dendritic cell activation and migration. *J Exp Med*. 2005;201(7):1157–1167. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15795237
251. Yoneyama H, Matsuno K, Zhang Y, et al. Evidence for recruitment of plasmacytoid dendritic cell precursors to inflamed lymph nodes through high endothelial venules. *Int Immunol*. 2004;16(7):915–928. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15159375

CHAPTER 17

Natural Killer Cells

Wayne M. Yokoyama

INTRODUCTION

Natural killer (NK) cells were initially described because they spontaneously kill certain tumor targets.[1–4] However, they are now recognized to play important roles in early innate immune responses, especially to viral infections. They interact with other innate immune components and modulate the subsequent adaptive immune response. These effects are due to NK cell responses to proinflammatory cytokines or susceptible targets, which stimulate NK cells to secrete other cytokines and/or kill targets. In this chapter, we will consider all of these issues in detail by describing how they differ from other lymphocytes, their functions, unique target recognition strategies, tolerance, development, and role in immune responses and human diseases. There will be an emphasis on their target recognition receptors because their discovery made it possible to understand NK cell biology more precisely.

GENERAL DESCRIPTION

Developmental studies have provided strong evidence that NK cells belong to the lymphocyte lineage (discussed in detail in the following). Morphologically, NK cells are typically large lymphocytes containing azurophilic granules.[5] However, the large granular lymphocyte morphology is not invariably associated with NK cells because small, agranular lymphocytes may display natural killing,[6] activated cytotoxic T-lymphocytes (CTLs) can display this morphology,[7] and human large granular lymphocyte leukemias contain NK- and T-cell variants.[8] Among lymphocytes, NK cells more closely resemble T cells than B cells. Thus, it is useful to compare and contrast these two lymphocyte populations as well as consider another enigmatic cell termed the "lymphokine-activated killer" (LAK) cell.

Natural Killer Cells versus T Cells

NK cells are most often confused with T cells because they may have similar morphologies, express several cell surface molecules in common,[9,10] and share functional capabilities. While this confusion was frequent before the molecular description of the T-cell receptor (TCR)/cluster of differentiation (CD)3 complex, their similarities remain a potential source of uncertainty. However, mature NK cells are clearly not T cells by several criteria.[11] Conventional NK cells do not require a thymus for development and are normal in athymic nude mice (though this is not the case for the newly described "thymic" NK cell subset, discussed subsequently). NK cells do not express the TCR on the cell surface, do not produce mature transcripts for TCR chains, and do not rearrange TCR genes.[12,13] Mice with the *scid* mutation or deficiencies in *Rag1* or *Rag2* lack TCR gene rearrangements and mature T cells but possess NK cells with apparently normal function.[14–17] Several CD3 components may be found in the cytoplasm of NK cells, particularly immature NK cells, but they are not displayed on the cell surface[18] with the exception of CD3ζ. But CD3ζ is expressed in association with FcγRIII (CD16) and other NK cell activation receptors instead of the TCR/CD3 complex.[19,20] Whereas mice lacking CD3ζ lack most T cells, NK cell number and function are minimally affected.[21] On the other hand, NK cells are completely absent in mice with only partial defects in T-cell subsets, such as in mice lacking components of the IL-15R (see following discussion). NK cells do not require the presence of major histocompatibility complex (MHC) class I (MHC-I) molecules on their targets for lysis in an important functional distinction with CD8+ MHC-I–restricted T cells. Instead, NK cells kill more efficiently when their targets lack MHC-I expression. Thus, NK cells can be clearly distinguished from T cells, even from so-called CD3+ NKT cells that express NK cell markers (see following discussion).

Natural Killer Cells, Lymphokine-Activated Killer Cells, and Interleukin-15

Another area of overlap between NK and T cells concerns cytokine responses. When mouse splenocytes or human peripheral mononuclear cells are exposed to high concentrations of interleukin (IL)-2 (800 to 1000 U/mL), robust lymphocyte proliferation ensues (ie, LAK cells are generated).[22–25] Although most are CD3– NK cells, TCR/CD3+ T cells are also produced. To distinguish NK cells within this population, they are sometimes called "$CD3^-$ LAK" cells or "IL-2–activated NK cells."

In a related phenomenon, NK cells are activated when mice are injected with polyinosinic-polycytidylic acid (poly-lic) or other agents that trigger through Toll-like receptors (TLRs), often on plasmacytoid dendritic cells (DCs).[26] NK cells can also be activated in vitro with interferon (IFN)α/β, IFNγ, or low concentrations of IL-2 that are insufficient to induce proliferation.[3,4,27]

NK cells activated in these various ways, with or without proliferation, display enhanced killing of typical NK-sensitive targets. They also kill a broader panel of targets, including those that are generally resistant to freshly isolated NK cells, such as the murine P815 mastocytoma cells and

freshly explanted tumors. Many agents that enhance killing by NK cells may also activate T cells, such that even T-cell clones may display promiscuous killing of targets that is no longer MHC-restricted.[28] This phenomenon was a frequent source of confusion between NK cells and T cells during the initial characterization of both cell types.

Why cytokine activation leads to enhanced killing is incompletely understood. Interestingly, mouse NK cells constitutively express messenger ribonucleic acid (mRNA) for cytotoxicity components, perforin, and granzymes, but no protein.[29] Cytokine activation enhances expression of mRNA for perforin and granzymes,[30] and translation into expressed proteins that contributes to more lytic capacity,[29,31] but this effect may not explain the capacity of LAK cells to kill a broader panel of targets. Activated NK cells express additional receptors that may deliver stimulatory signals,[32,33] but their contribution to the LAK phenomenon remains unclear. In mice, cytokine activation of NK cells results in expression of an alternatively spliced form of a receptor termed NKG2D (see subsequent discussion), which may play a role,[34,35] and IL-15 contributes to LAK-like activity of CTLs, although how much this applies to conventional NK cells is not understood.[36] Enhanced killing may also be due to effects on adhesion molecules.[37,38] Nonetheless, it remains unclear how each of these factors contribute to the LAK phenomenon of enhanced and broader killing capacity as compared to resting NK cells.

It seems unlikely that high concentrations of IL-2 can be achieved, even locally, to stimulate NK cells in vivo. Furthermore, NK cells tend to be early responders in immune responses whereas the prime reservoir of large amounts of IL-2 is the activated T cell that produces it somewhat later. Although naïve T cells can make IL-2 soon after stimulation[39,40] and DCs can produce IL-2 to enhance NK lytic activity,[41] whether the resultant IL-2 concentrations are sufficient to generate LAK cells in vivo is unclear.

Interestingly, NK cells are apparently normal in mice with a targeted mutation in the IL-2 gene or the IL-2Rα chain,[42,43] indicating that IL-2 itself is not required for normal NK cell development. Paradoxically, NK cells are deficient in mice with a mutation in either IL-2Rβ or IL-2Rγ.[44–46] The discrepancy in NK cell dependence on IL-2 versus IL-2 receptor (IL-2R), as well as the LAK cell phenomenon, may be best understood by comparing the components of the IL-2 and IL-15 receptors.

In brief, the high affinity IL-2R is a heterotrimeric receptor complex comprised of α (p55), β (p75), and γ (p64) chains.[47] Though individual components may bind IL-2 with low affinity, only the intermediate-affinity βγ receptor (K_d ~1 nM) and the high-affinity αβγ receptor (K_d ~10 pM) are capable of signaling. Resting NK cells constitutively express IL-2Rβγ[47,48] and upon activation, may induce IL-2Rα and further upregulate IL-2Rγ chain expression.[47] In contrast, resting T cells generally do not express any functional IL-2 receptors, and most naïve T cells do not respond to high concentrations of IL-2.[49] The IL-2Rγ chain is also termed the common γ subunit (γc) because it is a required component of the multimeric receptor complexes for other cytokines, including IL-15,[50] that is particularly relevant to NK cells. IL-15 does not bind to IL-2Rα but instead utilizes a unique IL-15Rα chain to form a high-affinity complex with IL-2Rβγ.[51,52] The IL-15Rα chain does not directly signal. Its distribution is widespread on numerous cell and tissue lineages including NK cells.

IL-15 has a number of effects on NK cell biology. It is required for NK cell development; mice lacking IL-15 or any component of the trimeric IL-15R complex lack NK cells.[44–46,53,54] Not surprisingly, mice deficient in other components of the IL-15R complex and its signaling pathway (IL-2Rβ, Jak3, and STAT5α/β) exhibit similar defects in NK cell development.[44,55–57] Depending on its relative concentration, IL-15 has an antiapoptotic or proproliferative effect.[58,59] When NK cells are transferred to NK cell–deficient mice, they undergo "homeostatic" proliferation,[60,61] akin to T-cell homeostatic proliferation.[62] Like memory CD8+ T-cell homeostasis, NK-cell homeostasis is IL-15–dependent,[60,61] to a more or less degree.[63] Finally, LAK cells can be generated with IL-15.[64] These studies strongly suggest that LAK cells are generated because high-dose IL-2 acts through the IL-2Rβγ that is normally expressed with IL-15Rα as components of the constitutively expressed trimeric IL-15R complex on resting NK cells. Thus, the LAK cell phenomenon is related to the role of IL-15 and its receptor in NK cell biology.

Interestingly, IL-15 is expressed at very low levels and is difficult to detect in vivo.[65] The IL-15Rα chain can present IL-15 in *trans* to NK cells that can respond through IL-2/15Rβγ alone.[66] For example, IL-15Rα–deficient NK cells develop in bone marrow (BM) chimeric mice in which IL-15Rα–deficient BM was used to reconstitute IL-15Rα–sufficient animals,[67] indicating that IL-15Rα on another cell can allow IL-15Rα–deficient NK-cell development. In certain inflammatory situations in vivo, DC presentation of IL-15 in *trans* can enhance NK cell responses (also known as priming).[31,68] In DCs expressing both IL-15 and IL-15Ra, the IL-15Ra chain provides a chaperone function to stabilize receptor-cytokine complexes on the cell surface.[69] Taken together, *trans* presentation of IL-15 may be physiologically important to NK cell function.

SELECTIVE NATURAL KILLER CELL SURFACE MARKERS

The constitutive expression on NK cells of IL-15R complex with IL-2Rβ has practical usefulness because anti-IL-2Rβ (CD122) is sometimes used to identify naïve CD3− NK cells or deplete them in mice,[70] but anti-CD122 is less useful during an ongoing immune response and CD122 is expressed on regulatory T cells. Anti-IL-15Rα antibodies have not been widely used. Other markers have proven to be more useful for analysis of NK cells.

In the mouse, the NK1.1 molecule is an especially important marker on NK cells in C57BL strains.[11] NK1.1 is an activation receptor encoded by *Nkrp1c* (*Klrb1c*),[71] a member of the *Nkrp1* gene family (see following discussion). In FACS sorting experiments, the NK1.1+ fraction contained all of the natural killing activity in the spleen.[72] In vivo administration of the anti-NK1.1 mAb PK136[73] completely abrogated natural killing but did not affect adaptive immune responses[74]

(mAb PK136 is available from the American Type Culture Collection [ATCC], Manassas, VA [HB-191] and is an IgG2a isotype [ATCC, and data not shown], not IgG2b as originally described[73]). While mAb PK136 is very efficient at NK-cell depletion and is widely used for this purpose, unfortunately it recognizes an epitope on NK1.1 that is confined to C57BL/6, C57BL/10, and a few other strains.[73] Moreover, in Swiss, NIH and SJL/J mice, mAb PK136 recognizes another NKRP1 family member, NKRP1B.[75,76] However, there are now available NK1.1+ congenic strains, such as BALB.B6-*Cmv1*^{r} (catalogued as C.B6-*Klra8*$^{Cmv1\text{-}r}$/UwaJ, stock number 002936 at The Jackson Laboratory, Bar Harbor, ME) in which the C57BL/6 allele of NK1.1 has been genetically bred onto the BALB/c background that otherwise lacks the NK1.1 epitope.[77] Similarly, the NK1.1 allele has been introgressed onto the nonobese diabetic (NOD) background.[78]

A subpopulation of T cells expresses NK1.1, described in detail in another chapter 18. These "natural killer T (NKT) cells" express the TCR/CD3 complex and typically are restricted by the nonclassical MHC-I molecule, CD1, which presents glycolipid antigens to NKT cells. NKT cells respond early during the course of an immune response and may potently activate conventional NK cells.[79] Nonetheless, NKT cells can be distinguished from conventional NK cells by expression of the CD3 complex (ie, conventional NK cells are NK1.1+ CD3−).

The NKG2D (Klrk1) activation receptor is expressed on all NK cells in human and all strains of mice examined.[80] In humans, NKG2D is also expressed on all γδTCR+ and CD8+ T cells, whereas in mice, NKG2D is expressed on most NKT and γδTCR+ T cells but not on resting CD8+ T cells.[81–83] However, essentially all activated mouse CD8+ T cells express NKG2D. In both humans and mice, CD4+ T cells do not express NKG2D, but it is found on a subset CD4+CD28− T cells in patients with rheumatoid arthritis.[84] Blocking anti-NKG2D mAbs and NKG2D-deficient mice have been described.[80,85–87] Regardless, conventional NK cells are NKG2D+ CD3−.

The NKp46 (Ncr1) activation receptor appears to be expressed on all CD3− NK cells in humans and all strains of mice. However, recent reports indicate expression of NKp46 on immune cells in the gut that may be developmentally distinct from conventional NK cells.[88–92] Moreover, depleting anti-NKp46 mAbs have not been described, limiting its usefulness for in vivo functional experiments. Nonetheless, recently developed mice may allow other approaches, such as a mouse where a green fluorescent protein (GFP) cassette was inserted into *Nkp46* and two different transgenic (Tg) mice with a *Nkp46* promoter contruct for expression of Cre or diptheria toxin receptor.[93–95]

The mAb DX5 recognizes a molecule that is coexpressed on most NK1.1+ CD3− cells and on small populations of splenocytes in NK1.1− strains, consistent with identification of NK cells in all strains. However, mAb DX5 recognizes the α2 integrin that is widely expressed on other leukocytes, not just NK cells,[96,97] and its expression is regulated.[98] Nevertheless, the DX5 epitope has been used to identify NK cells in mouse strains that do not express NK1.1, but it has been largely supplanted by other nonpolymorphic markers such as NKp46.

The glycolipid determinant asialo-GM$_1$ is expressed by most if not all murine NK cells and a subpopulation of T cells.[99–101] Although the functional significance of this molecule is unknown, polyclonal rabbit anti-asialo-GM$_1$ (Wako Chemicals USA, Richmond, VA) has been used to effectively deplete NK cells. In more recent studies, the anti-NK1.1 mAb PK136 has become the reagent of choice for NK-cell depletion because of an available defined mAb and its more restricted reactivity with NK cells.[11,72–74] However, anti-asialo-GM$_1$ remains in use for NK-cell depletion when anti-NK1.1 cannot be employed.[73]

In addition to NKG2D and NKp46, human NK cells selectively express CD56. Although it is also found on neural tissues and some tumors, CD56 is generally not expressed by other hematopoietic cells or lymphocytes.[102–104] This 140 kDa molecule is derived from alternative splicing of the gene encoding neural cell adhesion molecule (NCAM) involved in nervous system development and cell-cell interactions.[105,106] CD56 may be involved in adhesion between NK cells and their targets,[107] but this function is controversial. Curiously, mouse CD56 is not expressed on hematopoietic cells,[108] indicating that its role on NK cells is not conserved. Nevertheless, CD56 is particularly useful as a pan-NK–cell marker in humans.

Human NK cells can be functionally divided according to the level of CD56 expressed.[103,109] Most human peripheral blood NK cells are CD56^{dim}, a phenotype associated with more cytotoxicity and less cytokine production than a smaller subset of NK cells that express CD56 at higher levels (CD56^{bright}). These cells also tend to differentially express receptors involved in target recognition as well as CD16. The CD56^{bright} cells may undergo a maturation process to become CD56^{dim} cells[110] and may be related to a subset of NK cells identified in mice, termed "thymic" NK cells.[111]

Other molecules selectively expressed on NK cells are better discussed below under the general topic of NK cell receptors because they are molecularly defined and their ligands are known.

A MOLECULAR DEFINITION OF NATURAL KILLER CELLS?

A precise molecular definition of NK cells has been elusive. There are no known molecules that are exclusively expressed on NK cells and are responsible for critical functions only displayed by NK cells. The NK cell is therefore still defined by function to the exclusion of other cells, a concept first articulated 25 years ago.[11]

The defining functional feature of NK cells remains their intrinsic ability to perform natural killing (ie, they spontaneously lyse certain tumor cells in a perforin-dependent manner). Unlike other lymphocytes, NK cells do not express surface immunoglobulin or the TCR/CD3 complex, and generally do not require MHC-I expression on targets for lysis. Therefore, a current working definition is that an NK cell is a sIg$^-$, TCR/CD3$^-$ lymphocyte that can mediate perforin-dependent natural killing against targets that may lack MHC-I expression.

It is noteworthy that T cells were historically defined by an awkward functional definition (thymus-derived, sIg$^-$ lymphocytes responsible for cell mediated immunity).[112]

With the molecular definition of the TCR and coexpressed CD3 molecules, immunologists can now define a T cell as a cell expressing the TCR/CD3 complex.[113] The availability of molecular probes and mAbs directed against this complex provides precise definition even in pathologic tissue sections, without the need for functional analysis (cell mediated immunity, thymus dependence). Similarly, a molecular definition should permit unequivocal identification of NK cells to define their role in normal immune responses and pathologic settings.

Presumably, such a definition will require further knowledge of the molecular basis for NK-cell function, such as the receptors involved in natural killing. On the other hand, one difficulty is that the function that is most attributed to NK cells, natural killing, can be displayed by other cells, such as cytokine-treated T cells. Moreover, NK cells can utilize more than one receptor for target recognition, and individual NK cells can simultaneously express several of these receptors. Thus, there is, as yet, no consensus on the elusive "NK-cell receptor" analogous to the TCR, and the general sentiment in the field is that there is unlikely to be such a receptor.

In the absence of a precise definition, most investigators currently consider the following phenotypes to be surrogate markers of bona fide NK cells. Mouse NK cells are typically NK1.1+ (in appropriate strains), FcγRIII+ (CD16), CD122+, and CD3−. Human NK cells are generally CD56+ and CD3−. In general, mouse and human NK cells also express NKG2D and NKp46, with caveats as elaborated previously.

Note that these markers are generally correlated with cells having natural killing capacity but the markers themselves are not required for natural killing. It should be emphasized that these phenotypes can lead to some confusion due to expression of other molecules on NK cells that are used to help define other immune cells. For example, NK cells express B220 (CD45R) that is often used as a B-cell–specific marker; CD19 is more reliable to distinguish B cells from NK cells.[114] Similarly, NK cells express CD11b, first described as Mac-1 on macrophages.[98] Moreover, NK cells express CD11c, a marker used to define certain DC populations, leading to publications describing a novel type of DC, termed killer DCs.[115,116] However, detailed investigation suggests that these cells are developmentally unrelated to DCs and are actually activated NK cells.[117–119] Therefore, markers associated with NK-cell function have been extremely useful in shaping our current concepts of NK cell biology and elaborate their effector functions, but caution may be necessary to avoid confusion with other immune cells.

EFFECTOR FUNCTIONS OF NATURAL KILLER CELLS

Cytotoxicity

A hallmark of NK-cell effector function is target killing, mediated by a process termed granule exocytosis that can be initiated by exposure to susceptible targets or cross-linking of specific activation receptors. Like CTLs, NK cells possess preformed cytoplasmic granules that resemble secretory lysosomes with properties of both secretory granules and lysosomes.[120] Granule formation is affected by Lyst, the molecule defective in humans with Chediak-Higashi syndrome[121,122] in which enlarged lysosomes are observed apparently due to decreased lysosome fission.[123] Normal granules contain perforin and granzymes (granule enzymes). Perforin, a pore-forming protein, is rendered inactive by association with calreticulin and serglycin, and is activated by a cysteine protease.[124] Granzymes are first produced as inactive proenzymes that are activated by N-terminal cleavage by dipeptidyl peptidase I, also known as cathepsin C. However, granzymes are rendered inactive by the acidic pH of the granules. Upon activation by a sensitive target, NK (and T) cells are triggered to rapidly polarize the granules and reposition the microtubule organizing center toward the target in a dynein-dependent manner.[125] The granule membrane ultimately fuses with the plasma membrane, and externalizes, releasing granule contents. Calcium-dependent polymerization of perforin results in "perforation" of the target cell plasma membrane, and granzyme entry by an as yet incompletely understood process. A recent study suggests that perforin induces a plasma membrane repair process that results in endocytosis of perforin and granzymes into enlarged endosomes, called "gigantosomes."[126] Perforin pores in the gigantosome membrane then allow delivery of granzymes that mediate cleavage of caspases and Bid, ultimately leading to target cell apoptosis.[127]

Recently, many details of the granule exocytosis pathway have come from studies of the heterogeneous human disorder, hemophagocytotic lymphohistiocytosis (HLH).[128,129] In particular, genetic studies of heritable HLH, termed familial HLH (FHL), led to identification of the first described FHL mutation in the perforin gene (*PRF1*), responsible for FHL2. Studies of patients with FHL without *PRF1* mutations led to discovery of other genes whose products (MUNC13-4, syntaxin 11, MUNC18-2) affect granule exocytosis by cytotoxic lymphocytes. Fusion of the cytolytic granule with the plasma membrane requires vesicular RAB27a, a member of the small GTPase superfamily. Defects in RAB27a are associated with the human disorder Griscelli syndrome, type 2. Mice have been described with defects in granule exocytosis components including LYST (*beige*), perforin (*Pfn1*−/−), Unc13d (equivalent to MUNC13-4, also known as *Jinx*), and Rab27a (*ashen*). As highlighted by the names of the mutant mice, many mutations of molecules in the granule exocytosis pathway are associated with skin pigment changes because these molecules also affect melanosomes in melanocytes.[130]

Human T and NK cells also express another pore-forming molecule, granulysin, that is related to a family of saposin-like proteins.[131] Based on crystallographic studies, these molecules appear to be active against bacteria, fungi, and tumor cells by charge association with target membranes and subsequent disruption, leading to target cell lysis.[132] Granulysin is contained in cytolytic granules containing the other cytolytic proteins, such as granzymes.[133] In a perforin-dependent manner, granulysin causes target apoptosis but is not expressed in mouse cytotoxic lymphocytes.[134]

NK-cell cytotoxcity can be demonstrated in several related ways. Natural killing refers to the process by which NK cells kill certain tumor targets without need for prior host sensitization with the target. Natural killing was first

assessed with a simple in vitro assay for target membrane integrity that is still used today, the standard ^{51}Cr-release assay.[135] The prototypical NK-sensitive tumor target for mouse NK cells is YAC-1 (TIB-160 from ATCC), a thymoma derived from Moloney virus–infected A strain mice, whereas the standard human target is K-562 (CCL-243 from ATCC), an erythroleukemic cell line derived from a human patient with chronic myelogenous leukemia in blast crisis.[136] Maximal killing by enriched, IL-2–activated NK cells usually occurs with effector:target (E:T) ratios of <10:1 whereas unfractionated, freshly isolated peripheral blood or splenocyte preparations usually require E:T ratios of >100:1. Even at high E:T ratios, not all targets are killed, with percentage-specific cytotoxicity typically ranging from ~10% with fresh NK cells to ~80% with activated NK cells. Note that perforin-dependent leakage of ^{51}Cr from the targets is mostly complete within about an hour; 4-hour assays are standard. Longer periods may reflect other apoptotic processes, such as Fas-induced apoptosis.

While ^{51}Cr release is still the gold standard, there are also numerous nonradioactive tests for perforin-dependent killing, including release of intracellular enzymes or use of fluorochromes for target labeling.[137–139] The release of granule components, including granzymes, into the supernatant can be determined by conversion of an appropriate substrate, such as granzyme A-mediated cleavage of alpha-N-benzyloxy-carbonyl-L-lysinethiobenzyl ester (also known as BLT-esterase activity).[140]

A particularly useful new flow cytometric assay exploits the orientation of lysosomal-associated membrane protein-1 (LAMP-1, CD107a) on the luminal side of cytotoxic granules in unactivated NK cells. During granule exocytosis, the granule fuses with the plasma membrane, resulting in externalization of the granule membrane and exposing CD107a on the external surface of the plasma membrane as an indicator of NK-cell activation.[141–143] By contrast to other methods, the CD107a assay provides the opportunity for measuring NK-cell responses at the single cell level, isolating triggered NK cells,[144] and possibly simultaneously assessing other NK-cell functions.

Activated NK cells and CTLs also induce perforin-independent target cell killing by expressing Fas ligand (tumor necrosis factor [TNF] superfamily 6) that binds Fas (TNF receptor superfamily 6, TNFRSF6) on the target, triggering apoptosis.[145–150] Similarly, other TNF superfamily members, such as TNF-related apoptosis-inducing ligand (TRAIL TNFSF10), can be involved in related processes.[151] However, mice deficient in TNF family members or their receptors may manifest significant alterations in lymphoid organogenesis and splenic architecture, and NK cell number and function,[152–154] such that the relative contributions of these pathways to NK-cell function are incompletely understood. Moreover, NK cells from mice deficient in perforin, granzymes, or molecules involved in granule formation or exocytosis demonstrate profound defects in natural killing in vitro.[155–158] Similar defects have been found with NK cells derived from patients with deficiencies in granule exocytosis.[128] Thus, the available data strongly suggest that granule exocytosis is the predominant mechanism for natural killing.

In addition to natural killing, cytotoxicity by NK cells can be triggered by deliberate cross-linking of activation receptors (discussed in greater detail in the "Activation Receptors" section). Plant lectins can also trigger target killing.[159] In general for all stimuli, cytotoxicity occurs via granule exocytosis and can be measured with the same assays for natural killing.

Cytokine Production

When exposed to NK-sensitive targets or cross-linking of receptors, NK cells also produce cytokines, including IFNγ, TNFα, and granulocyte-macrophage colony stimulating factor (GM-CSF).[160–162] They can also be similarly triggered to produce chemokines, such as RANTES, lymphotactin, MIP-1α, and MIP-1β.[163] Moreover, NK cells produce cytokines in response to other cytokines. For example, in response to IL-12, NK cells produce IFNγ.[164] Similarly, NK cells respond to type I IFNs (IFNα/β) produced by DCs stimulated by in vivo administration of poly-I:C and other ligands for TLR and nucleic acid sensors.[165] Cytokine-stimulated responses may obscure detection of specific activation by activation receptors in vivo.[163,166]

While cytokine production can be indirectly measured with RT-PCR for mRNA, it should be noted that resting NK cells typically already express abundant levels of cytokine mRNA even though the proteins are not synthesized,[167] as described previously for granule components in mouse NK cells.[29] Enzyme-linked immunosorbent assays (ELISA) of tissue culture supernatants are often used, but recent studies have utilized intracellular staining of cytokines, such as IFN, for analysis of individual NK-cell responses that may be more informative, akin to use of the CD107a degranulation assay.[168]

In immune responses, NK-cell production of cytokines should occur relatively early and may thereby influence the subsequent adaptive immune response. Moreover, their responses to cytokines are regulated by complex interacting pathways.[169] A fuller description of NK-cell cytokine responses and production is provided in the following sections on NK cell responses during infections and interactions with DCs.

NATURAL KILLER CELL RECOGNITION OF TARGETS

Molecular dissection of NK-cell recognition of their targets opened new frontiers in NK-cell biology because it not only explained target recognition but it led to identification of receptors that are selectively expressed on NK cells. In addition to providing molecular tools for detailed studies of NK cell function, this analysis yielded several surprises. In contrast to CTL recognition: 1) NK cell receptors are germline encoded and are not strictly "clonotypic" as defined in terms of clonotypic TCRs (unique receptor only expressed by the rare effector clone and its progeny); 2) individual NK cells express both inhibitory and activation receptors for target recognition, and often simultaneously express several different receptors of each type; 3) the receptors are often promiscuous and may have overlapping ligand specificities; and 4) NK-cell receptors specifically bind MHC-I molecules but they are functionally and structurally distinct from other

receptors that bind MHC-I (ie, TCR and CD8). In the following sections, we will discuss NK-cell receptors involved in target recognition by first considering the relationship between target susceptibility to natural killing and expression of MHC-I.

Target Cell Major Histocompatibility Complex-I and Natural Killer Cells: The "Missing-Self" Hypothesis

Whereas initial studies suggested that natural killing was "non-MHC-restricted,"[11] substantial progress in understanding NK-cell recognition began with ascertaining the role of MHC-I molecules in natural killing (Fig. 17.1). Kärre and colleagues discovered that MHC-I–deficient tumors remained susceptible to in vivo rejection, apparently by NK cells.[170] Conversely, target cell expression of MHC-I molecules appeared to have a protective effect against NK-cell–mediated lysis in vitro. A number of methods, such as IFNγ treatment, to upregulate MHC-I correlated with target protection but other effects could not be excluded.[171] There was significant variability in capacity of specific MHC-I molecules to protect targets[172,173]; in vitro culture conditions could influence NK-cell specificities,[174] and the specificities of individual human NK cell clones were not easily assignable to specific MHC-I alleles.[175] Thus, the MHC-I effect on natural killing was controversial for some time.

Several groups, however, observed that MHC-I–expressing parental targets were resistant to natural killing, whereas mutants selected for absence of MHC-I expression became susceptible. The parental (resistant) phenotype could be restored by reconstitution of MHC-I expression by transfected expression of molecules to correct the defect, be it β_2-microglobulin (β2m)[176] or transporter associated with processing (TAP).[177,178] Studies utilizing mice with a targeted mutation in the β2m gene added substantial support to the MHC-I protective effect, as normal expression of MHC-I heavy chains requires β2m.[179,180] β2m-deficient lymphoblasts were susceptible to lysis by normal NK cells. Moreover, β2m−/− BM transplanted into otherwise syngeneic normal hosts was rejected by recipient NK cells.[180,181] These results resembled hybrid resistance whereby NK cells in irradiated F_1 hybrid mice reject parental BM transplants.[182] Hybrid resistance is regulated by parental determinants that are genetically linked to the MHC-I region, H-2D.[183] Thus, in several distinct NK-cell recognition systems, the target cell expression of certain MHC-I molecules correlated with resistance to

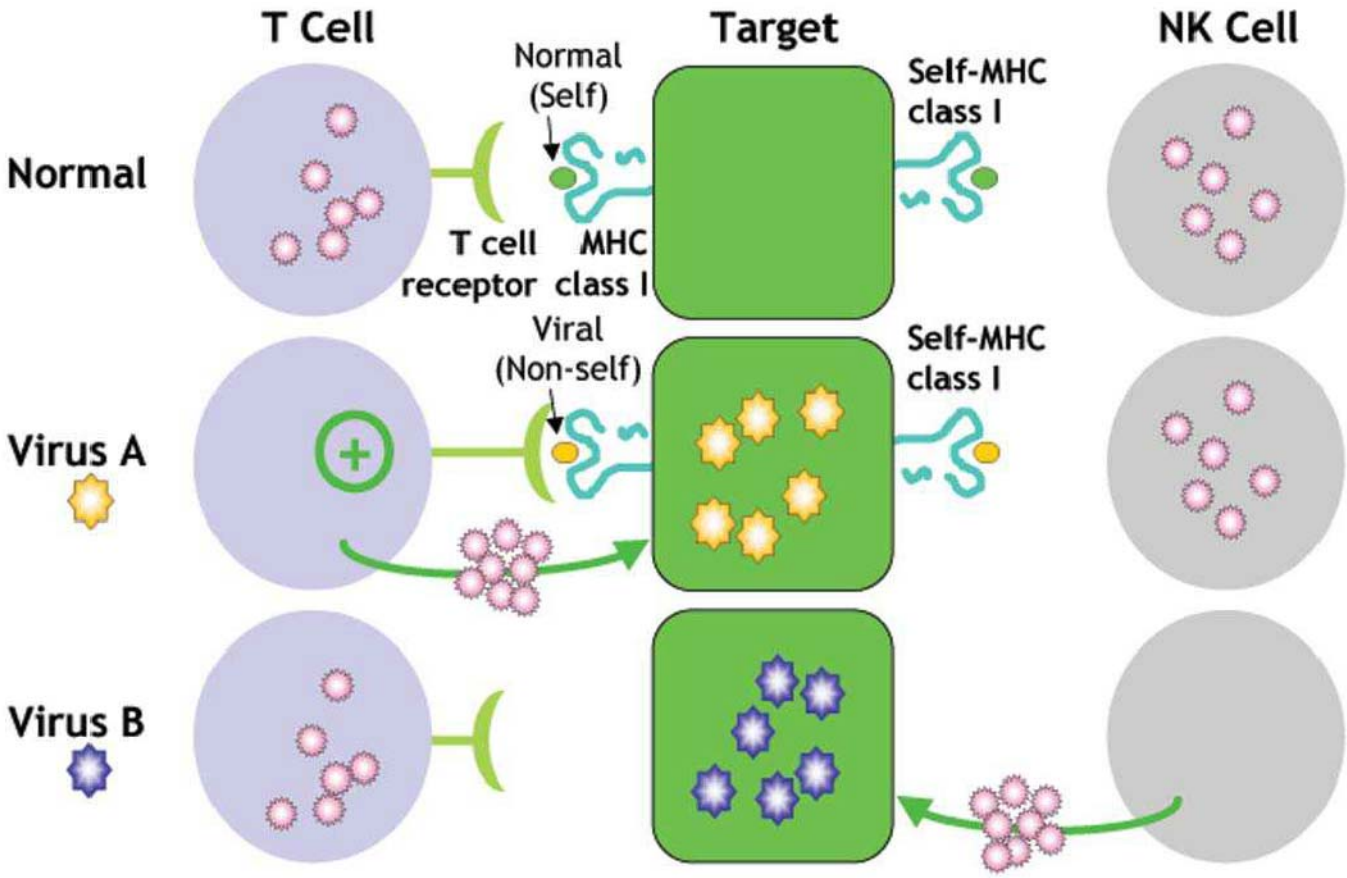


FIG. 17.1. Major Histocompatibility Complex (MHC)-I Expression on Targets is Inversely Related to Natural Killing. Targets expressing MHC-I are more resistant to lysis by natural killer (NK) cells than targets lacking MHC-I expression. This is the exact opposite of the requirements for MHC-I–restricted cytotoxic T-lymphocytes that recognize foreign peptides presented by MHC-I. As depicted, T cells can recognize virus-infected cells, but some viruses may evade T cells by downregulating MHC-I. These infected cells then become more susceptible to NK cells, which generally tend not to discriminate between self- and viral-peptides, though there are some peptide contributions to NK recognition as described in the text.

natural killing whereas absence of MHC-I was associated with susceptibility to NK cells.

NK cells, therefore, have a different relationship to target cell MHC-I molecules than MHC-I–restricted CTLs (see Fig. 17.1). Strictly speaking, NK cell lysis is "non-MHC–restricted,"[11] at least as far as MHC restriction is precisely defined for T cells having a requirement for specific self-MHC molecules presenting a given peptide antigen.[184] However, the term "non-MHC–restricted" (and its synonyms) is now somewhat outdated because it implies, when viewed in a broader sense, that MHC plays no role in NK-cell cytotoxicity. Avoidance of these terms will minimize confusion concerning the relationship of target cell MHC-I molecules with NK-cell specificity.

As initially observed and discussed by Kärre in the "missing-self" hypothesis, the relationship between target expression of MHC-I and resistance to natural killing highlights a fundamental distinction between NK and T cells[185] (see Fig. 17.1). Whereas T cells are triggered by detection of "foreign" epitopes, Kärre proposed that NK cells are equipped to detect the absence of "self" epitopes. The [missing-self] hypothesis suggests that NK cells survey tissues for expression of MHC-I molecules that are normally ubiquitously expressed and that somehow prevent NK-cell activity. If MHC-I molecules are downregulated or mutated, NK cells can then lyse the target. The generally opposite requirements of NK and T cells for target cell MHC-I expression may be physiologically important. Several pathogens, including herpes viruses, possess mechanisms that prevent the normal expression of MHC-I molecules on infected cells, providing means to avoid MHC-I–restricted T cells.[186] Moreover, tumorigenesis is frequently associated with alterations in MHC molecules, either mutation in structural genes or decreased expression, again leading to escape from T-cell surveillance.[187–189] In either case, however, the MHC-I–deficient cells should become more susceptible to natural killing. The host, therefore, is endowed with two components (T and NK cells) with opposing requirements for self–MHC-I expression. This fail-safe system should eliminate pathologic processes that might otherwise evade immune responses by any alteration of MHC-I expression (either increased to avoid NK cells or decreased to avoid T cells). The missing-self hypothesis thus provided a tentative physiologic explanation for MHC-I–associated resistance, creating a framework for initial attempts to define NK-cell recognition of their targets.

Current Principles of Target Recognition by Natural Killer Cells

The MHC-I–associated resistance to natural killing inspired a panoply of models and their variants to explain not only resistance but also natural killing.[172] The *target interference* or *masking* model predicted that a single NK-cell receptor activates natural killing when it engages its putative target cell ligand.[185] MHC-I molecules mask the putative target cell ligand and block its recognition by the NK-cell receptor. This hypothesis was initially favored because it was the simplest.[190] Moreover, it made the most sense if one considered that NK cells should have only one defined receptor analogous to the TCR. The *effector inhibition* or *inhibitory receptor* model suggested that NK cells are inhibited from natural killing by an NK-cell receptor that binds MHC-I on the target and delivers negative signals overriding a default pathway of activation.[185]

Although the target interference model has not been refuted, it is now known that NK cells express inhibitory receptors that physically bind MHC-I in a manner that may be influenced by MHC-bound peptides[191] (Fig. 17.2).

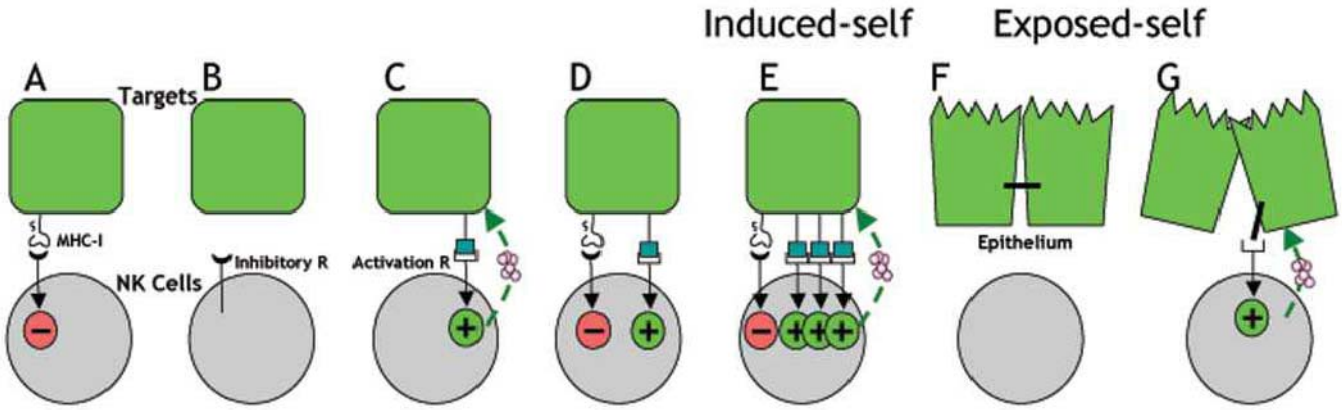


FIG. 17.2. Current Principles of Target Recognition by Natural Killer (NK) Cells. Pictured are several scenarios of interactions between ligands on targets (*top row*) and receptors on NK cells (*bottom row*). Successful activation of NK cells is shown by the *dashed upward line*. **A:** Targets expressing majoe histcompatibility complex (MHC)-I are resistant to lysis by NK cells because of MHC-I–specific inhibitory receptors. **B:** The absence of MHC-I (or lack of receptors specific for target MHC-I, not depicted) does not automatically result in target killing. **C:** Activation receptor engagement is required to trigger target killing in absence of MHC-I. **D:** In the situation where both inhibitory and activation receptors are engaged, the inhibitory receptor effect often dominates and no killing occurs. **E:** In the induced-self model, induced expression of NKG2D ligands can overcome the inhibitory influence of MHC-I, resulting in NK cell activation. **F:** Normal epithelium masks ligands for NK-cell activation receptors at the tight junctions. **G:** Under pathologic situations, the epithelial architecture may be disrupted, leading to ligand exposure. (Not depicted are inhibitory ligands at the epithelial tight junctions that may inhibit NK cells when they transmigrate through epithelial barriers.) NK cells can also recognize pathogen encoded ligands on infected cells (not shown, but similar to *C* or *E*).

All known inhibitory receptors contain cytoplasmic immunoreceptor tyrosine-based inhibitory motifs (ITIMs) consisting of V/I/L/SxYxxL/V (single amino acid code where x is any amino acid).[192] Ligand engagement leads to phosphorylation of the ITIM, which leads to inhibition, traditionally thought to be due to recruitment and activation of intracellular phosphatases, although recent evidence suggests more complexity.

MHC-I inhibitory receptors on NK cells have either of two general structures[193]: 1) C-type lectin-like receptors that are disulfide-linked dimers with type II transmembrane topology (extracellular carboxyl termini). These receptors are encoded in the NK gene complex (NKC) and were first described in mice. 2) Immunoglobulin (Ig)-superfamily receptors that have type I transmembrane orientation. These molecules are encoded in a different genetic region, termed the leukocyte receptor complex (LRC), and were first described in humans. Although ongoing studies indicate that both structural types of receptors are expressed on mouse and human NK cells, the lectin-like receptors (Ly49 receptors) are the major MHC-specific inhibitory receptors in mouse whereas the Ig-like receptors (killer Ig–like receptors [KIRs]) predominate in human.

The absence of MHC-I does not always result in killing, indicating that release from inhibition does not result in activation by default (Fig. 17.2B). Instead, it was suggested that NK cells express two functionally different receptors for target cell ligands.[194,195] In this *two receptor model*, one receptor triggers activation upon ligand binding (Fig. 17.2C) whereas the MHC-I–specific receptor inhibits activation by negative signaling. In many circumstances, the inhibitory receptor effect dominates over the activation receptor (Fig. 17.2D), but the outcome usually reflects the integration of signals from both types of receptors, which can be affected by ligand expression or affinities (not shown).

Many, but not all, NK-cell activation receptors are encoded in the NKC and LRC, having similar structural properties as their inhibitory receptor counterparts except for absence of cytoplasmic ITIMs. The activation receptors typically do not have signaling motifs in their cytoplasmic domains but contain charged transmembrane residues that facilitate association with reciprocally charged residues in the transmembrane domains of signaling chains having immunoreceptor tyrosine-based activation motifs (ITAMs) analogous to ITAMs in TCR and B-cell receptor (BCR) complexes (D/ExxYxxL/Ix_{6-8}YxxL/I). NK cells express three ITAM-containing signaling chains: CD3ζ, FcεRIγ, and DAP12 (DNAX associated protein of 12 kDa, also known as killer activating receptor–associated protein, KARAP; Ly83; tyrosine kinase binding protein, Tyrobp). NK cells also express DAP10 (hematopoietic cell signal transducer, Hcst) that lacks ITAMs and instead contains a motif for recruitment of phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase (PI3K) and Grb2. The signaling chains typically provide two major functions: facilitate cell surface expression of the associated activation receptor, and transduce signals.

To date, the ligands for activation receptors fall into several major groups. One group is encoded by the host and is expressed normally. Presumably, NK-cell attack against cells expressing these ligands is limited by inhibitory receptors (Fig. 17.2D). Another group of ligands is characterized by their relatively low expression on normal tissues and induced expression under "stress" conditions (Fig. 17.2E). Other ligands become exposed when tissue architecture is altered (Fig. 17.2F,G). Because the ligands are encoded in the normal host genome, they would be recognized by the NK cell as indicators of pathologic conditions, either as "induced-self" or "exposed-self," respectively. Another group of ligands is found on infected cells and is encoded by the pathogen (not shown but similar to Fig. 17.2C or E).

Finally, many other NK-cell receptors have been discovered that do not fall neatly into the categories described here. Some appear to have similar inhibitory function as the MHC-specific inhibitory receptors but bind non-MHC ligands, strongly suggesting MHC-independent self-recognition. The function of these and other receptors remains under intense investigation.

NATURAL KILLER CELL RECEPTORS

In the following sections, we will describe the major receptors on NK cells in detail by first discussing the MHC-specific inhibitory receptors that helped elucidate NK recognition paradigms before delving into MHC-independent inhibitory receptors, activation receptors, and other receptors found on NK cells. Given the large number of receptors now identified (Table 17.1), this section will primarily discuss work on the receptors that have been studied most extensively. This summary will illustrate the experimental approaches that led to identification of these receptors, their features, and outline general principles applicable for study of other receptors that will not be discussed in detail due to space constraints. Nonetheless, description of the major activation receptors and their ligands help illustrate and provide molecular handles on the various functions of NK cells.

Inhibitory Natural Killer-Cell Receptors Specific for Major Histocompatibility Complex–I Molecules

The mouse and human MHC-specific inhibitory receptors are remarkably different in protein structure. Each will be discussed separately.

Mouse Ly49

The Ly49A receptor was the first inhibitory MHC-I–specific NK-cell receptor to be described in molecular terms.[191,196] Ly49A was originally identified as a molecule of unknown function on a T-cell tumor.[197,198] It is a disulfide-linked homodimer (44 kDa subunits) with type II membrane orientation, and C-type lectin superfamily homology.[199,200] Previously termed Ly49, it is now appreciated that Ly49A (Klra1) belongs to a family of highly related molecules.[195,201–203] Indeed, genetic analysis revealed that the genes for Ly49A and NK1.1 are linked in the NKC (Fig. 17.3), leading to studies indicating that Ly49A is constitutively expressed on a distinct subpopulation (20%) of NK cells in C57BL/6 mice.[203]

TABLE 17.1 The Panoply of Receptors Expressed by Natural Killer Cells[a]

Receptor	H	M	Inhibitory (I) or Activation (A)	Other Names	Ligand
Ly49A		X	I	Ly49, Ly-49, Klra1	$H2D^d$, D^k, D^p, alleles in $H2^r$, and $H2^q$
Ly49C		X	I	Klra3	$H2K^b$, numerous
Ly49E		X	I	Klra5	Urokinase plasminogen activator
Ly49G2		X	I	LGL-1, Klra7	$H2D^d$
$Ly49I^{129}$		X	I	Klra9	m157
Ly49Q		X	I	Klra17	$H2K^b$
KIR2DL1	X		I	CD158a, p58.1, EB6	HLA-C2 (HLA-Cw2, Cw4, -Cw5, -Cw6)
KIR2DL2/KIR2DL3	X		I	CD158b, p58.2, GL183	HLA-C1 (HLA-Cw1, -Cw3, -Cw7, -Cw8)
KIR2DL4	X		I	CD158d	HLA-G
KIR3DL1	X		I	CD185e1, NKB1, p70, NKAT3	Bw4 (HLA-A and B)
KIR3DL2	X		I	CD158k, p140, NKAT4	HLA-A3, -A11
Lilrb4		X	I	gp49	$\alpha v\beta 3$ integrin
CD94/NKG2A	X		I	Kp43	HLA-E
		X	I		Qa-1
LILRB1	X		I	CD85j, ILT2, LIR1	Folded HLA, UL18
LILRB2	X		I	ILT4, LIR2	Folded, free HLA
LAIR-1	X		I		Collagen
Siglec-7	X		I	P75, AIRM1	Carbohydrates
Siglec-10	X		I		Carbohydrates?
Siglec-E		X	I		?
PILRa	X		I		CD99
PILRb	X		I		CD99
FcγRIII	X	X	A	CD16	Fc of IgG
Ly49D		X	A		Chinese hamster MHC-I, $H2D^d$
Ly49H		X	A		m157
$Ly49P^{MA/My}$		X	A		M04 + $H2D^k$
KIR2DS1	X		A	CD158h, p50.1	HLA-Cw7
KIR2DS2	X		A	CD158j, NKAT5, p50.2, clone 49	
KIR2DS3	X		A	NKAT7	
KIR2DS4	X		A	CD158i, NKAT8, clone 39	HLA-Cw4
KIR2DS5	X		A	CD158g, NKAT9	
KIR3DS1	X		A	CD158e2	
CD94/NKG2C	X		A		HLA-E
CD94/NKG2C		X	A		Qa-1
NKG2D	X		A, costimulation	KLRK1	MICA, MICB, ULBP/RAET1
NKG2D		X	A, costimulation	Klrk1	H60, RAE1, MULT1
Nkrp1c		X	A	NK1.1	?
Nkrp1b(d)		X	I		Clrb
Nkrp1f		X	A?		Clrg
NKRP1A	X		I		LLT1
NKp80	X		A		AICL
NKp65	X		A	KLRF2	CLEC2A
2B4	X	X	A,I	SLAMF4	CD48
CD2	X	X	A		CD48
NTBA	X	X	A	SLAMF6, Ly108	NTBA
Ly9	X	X	A	SLAMF3	Ly9
CD84	X	X	A	SLAMF5	CD84
CRACC	X	X	A	SLAMF7	CRACC
NKp46	X	X	A		Hemagglutinin
NKp44	X		A		?

(continued)

TABLE 17.1 The Panoply of Receptors Expressed by Natural Killer Cells[a] *(Cont.)*

Receptor	H	M	Inhibitory (I) or Activation (A)	Other Names	Ligand
NKp30	X		A		B7-H6
CD69	X	X	A		?
Ly6		X	A		?
Gp42		Rat	A		?
Klrg1		X	I		Caherins
CEACAM1	X		I	CD66a	CEA
CD226	X	X	A	DNAM-1	necl-5 (CD155, PVR), nectin-2 (CD112, PVRL2)
CD96	X		A	Tactile	necl-5
CRTAM	X		A		necl-2
TIGIT	X		I		PVR, PVRL2

AICL, activation-induced C-type lectin; AIRM1, adhesion inhibitory receptor 1; CRTAM, class I-restricted T-cell–associated molecule; LGL, large granular lymphocyte; NK, natural killer; TIGIT, T-cell immunoglobulin and immunoreceptor tyrosine-based inhibitory motif domain.
[a]These are the major receptors discovered on NK cells in humans and mice, listed in order of appearance in the text.

Multiple lines of evidence indicate that Ly49A is an inhibitory receptor specific for MHC-I, particularly $H2D^d$: 1) Functional analysis: the Ly49A+ NK-cell subset were equivalent to Ly49A– NK cells in killing several targets, but they could not lyse a large panel of targets that were readily lysed by Ly49A– NK cells. This phenotype was related to MHC-I expression of certain H2 haplotypes on target cells.[191,204,205] Transfected expression of $H\text{-}2D^d$ selectively rendered a susceptible target resistant to natural killing by Ly49A+ NK cells. Moreover, killing through disparate stimuli by Ly49A+ NK cells was also inhibited. 2) Cell binding: Ly49A+ tumor cells bound specifically to immobilized MHC-I molecules[206] and to $H\text{-}2D^d$-transfectants.[207] 3) Antibody blocking: $F(ab')_2$ fragments of mAb directed against either Ly49A or the $\alpha1/\alpha2$ (but not the $\alpha3$ domain) of $H\text{-}2D^d$ reversed resistance in killing experiments (permitted lysis) and blocked the cell binding assay.[191,204,206,207] 4) In vivo expression: the apparent level of Ly49A expressed per NK cell was downregulated in MHC congenic and Tg mice expressing $H\text{-}2D^d$.[208–210] This was not due to negative selection because the percentage of Ly49A+ NK cells was unchanged. 5) Gene transfer: primary NK cells and T cells expressing a Ly49A transgene and a Ly49A-transfected NK cell line were specifically inhibited by $H\text{-}2D^d$.[211,212] 6) Inhibition by Ly49A is ITIM-dependent, based on gene transfer of mutant Ly49A molecules.[212] 7) $H2D^d$ tetramers bind Ly49A transfectants.[213] 8) Ly49A tetramers bind $H2D^d$ on transfected cells.[214,215] 9) Biophysical studies: recombinant Ly49A binds recombinant $H2D^d$ in surface plasmon resonance (SPR) studies with K_D = ~2.0 μM.[216]

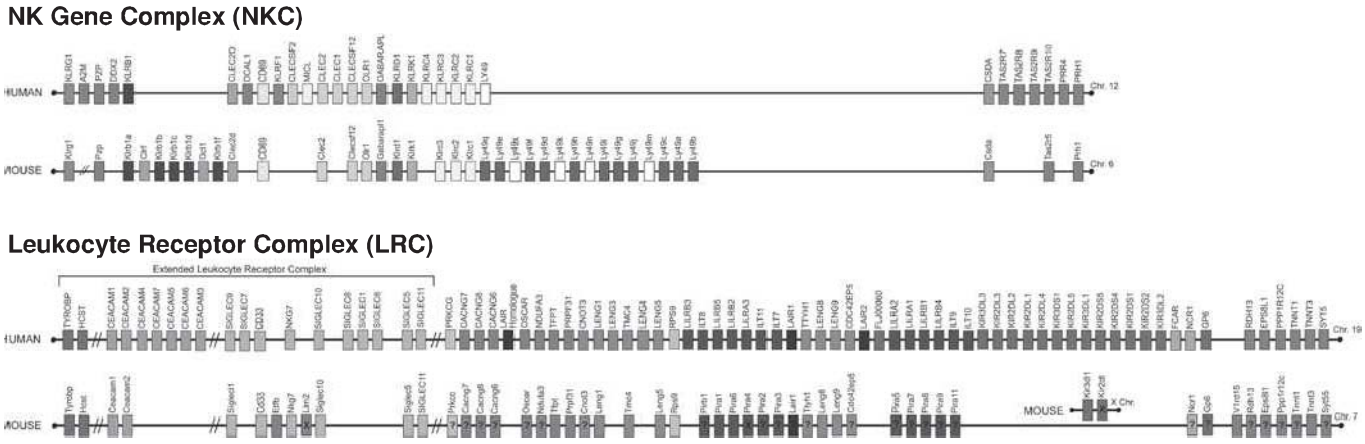


FIG. 17.3. The Genomic Organization of the Natural Killer (NK) Gene Complex and Leukocyte Receptor Complex in Humans and Mice. The figures are not drawn to scale with precise gene locations being modified as new sequence information becomes available (genome.ucsc.edu/ and www.ebi.ac.uk/ipd/kir/). The *grey shading* is coordinated to represent related genes. *Question marks* indicate genes whose precise location is not known. An "*X*" indicates genes not homologous to other aligned genes. *Double slashes* represent large genomic distances. Note that most but not all genes are expressed on NK cells. Many remain orphan genes because the functions of their gene products have not been determined. Modified from Kelley et al.[312]

10) Crystallography: the structure of Ly49A complexed with $H2D^d$ was determined.[217] 11) Less extensive studies also indicate that Ly49A recognizes $H\text{-}2D^k$, $H2D^p$, and alleles in $H2^r$ and $H2^q$.[191,208,213,218,219] Therefore, Ly49A is an MHC-I–specific receptor for $H\text{-}2D^d$, $H\text{-}2D^k$, and $H2D^p$, and alleles in $H2^r$ and $H2^q$.

The nature of the Ly49A interaction with MHC-I, however, is fundamentally different from TCR/MHC-I interactions because the former appears to be relatively independent of the specific peptide bound by $H2D^d$.[220,221] However, bound peptides are required for appropriately folded MHC-I molecules that can be recognized. Despite its structural homology to C-type lectins that are carbohydrate-binding proteins,[222,223] Ly49A does not have the residues for coordinate binding to calcium that is required for lectin binding. Moreover, Ly49A binding to its MHC ligands is not carbohydrate-dependent based on functional, SPR, and crystallographic analyses.[216,224] In the crystallographic structure of Ly49A complexed to $H2D^d$ (2.3Å resolution), the lectin-like structure of Ly49A was confirmed[217] (Fig. 17.4). Two interaction sites were seen between the lectin-like domain of Ly49A and $H2D^d$: site 1 involved the "left" side of the peptide-binding cleft of $H2D^d$ and a wedge-like site 2 involved the undersurface of the peptide-binding cleft. The residues in Ly49A involved in binding either ligand site are overlapping. Mutational analysis revealed that Ly49A binds site 2 where it contacts α1, α2, and α3 of $H2D^d$ and β2m.[214,216,225] This site is near Asn80, an Asn-linked glycosylation site conserved in all MHC-I molecules, leaving open the issue of whether carbohydrates could affect the interaction, such as affinities or kinetic parameters, but this has not been studied in depth. These studies also provide a structural explanation for species-specific β2m requirements as revealed by functional studies.[226] Thus, Ly49A recognizes site 2 in the MHC molecule in terms of *trans* recognition between the NK-cell receptor and target cell MHC-I molecule.

Most but not all other Ly49 receptors are MHC-I–specific inhibitory receptors. First noted by Southern blot analysis and cDNA cloning, genome sequence analysis revealed 15 complete Ly49 genes in C57BL/6 mice.[199–202,227] There is evidence for alternative splicing and alternative transcriptional start sites for the Ly49 genes, though their importance has not been elucidated.[202,228,229] Notably, Ly49C has broad specificity for H2 alleles, as revealed by tetramer staining, and is the only known inhibitory NK-cell receptor specific for an $H2^b$ haplotype allele ($H2K^b$) in C57BL/6 mice, notwithstanding unconfirmed reports that Ly49I also binds $H2K^b$.[168,213,230] Ly49C is recognized by two mAbs: 5E6, which also binds Ly49I, and 4LO3311, which has exquisite specificity for Ly49C.[231–233] X-ray crystallographic studies have indicated that Ly49C binds $H2K^b$ in a manner similar to Ly49A interaction with $H2D^d$ (see Fig. 17.4).[234,235] Only a site 2 interaction was seen with the contact residues, showing a similar but distinct topology to the Ly49A-$H2D^d$ interaction. Interestingly, however, peptides bound to $H2K^b$ clearly affect functional interactions with Ly49C[236] and affinities as measured by SPR.[234] However, Ly49C does not directly engage the peptide, indicating long-range effects. Finally, both Ly49A and Ly49C

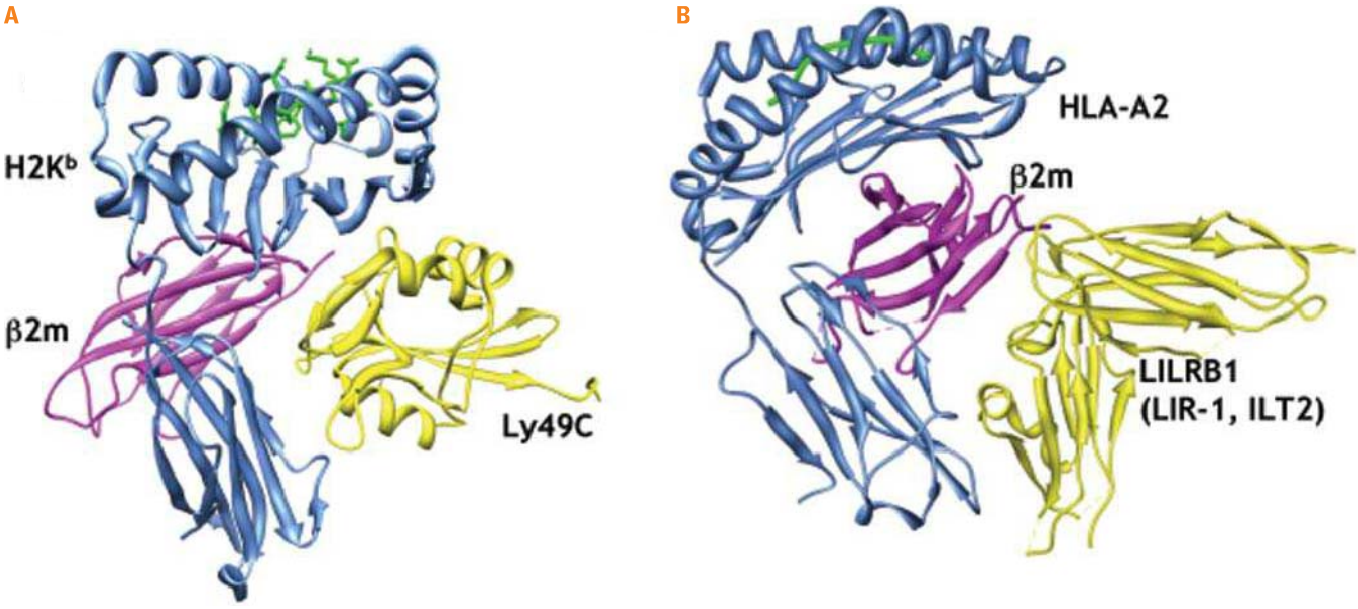


FIG. 17.4. Crystal Structures of Natural Killer (NK)-Cell Receptors in Complex with Their Ligands. **A:** Mouse Ly49C bound to $H2K^b$ at site 2 (PDB ID = 3C8K).[193,235] Ly49A interaction with site 2 of $H2D^d$ is very similar.[170] Site 1 of Ly49A-$H2D^d$ interaction is approximately located where the $H2K^b$ label is placed. **B:** Human LILRB1 (LIR1, ILT2) bound to human leukocyte antigen-A2 (PDB ID = 1P7Q).[266] Figures were produced using the University of California, San Francisco Chimera package from the Resource for Biocomputing, Visualization, and Informatics at the University of California, San Francisco (www.cgl.ucsf.edu/chimera).[1030] The structures are viewed from the side with the NK cell positioned at the top of the figure and the target cell surface at the bottom. The major histocompatibility complex molecules are oriented similarly.

appear to undergo conformational changes upon ligand binding, and a Ly49 dimer can engage two MHC-I molecules.[235,237] Thus, Ly49 receptors bind their MHC ligands in a structurally related manner.

Recent studies suggest that Ly49 molecules also can bind MHC in a *cis* interaction between receptor and ligand on the NK cell itself.[168,238] For example, an MHC ligand for Ly49A or Ly49C on the same cell prevents binding of MHC tetramer.[168,238] If the cells are briefly exposed to mild acidic conditions, MHC-I expression is lost (due to disruption of the noncovalently linked MHC-I heterotrimer), and Ly49A binding to cognate MHC-tetramers is restored. This *cis* interaction is dependent on site 2 residues in the MHC molecule. These findings may help explain the observation that the presence of self-MHC ligands leads to downregulation of Ly49 expression, as previously noted on primary NK cells in MHC congenic mice.[208–210] *Cis* interactions may also explain functional differences in NK cells in MHC-congenic mice or NK cells that do or do not express MHC ligands in Tg mice that are mosaic for MHC expression.[239–241] Finally, there are biophysical data supporting a role for the relatively long, flexible stalk region of Ly49 receptors in allowing either *trans* or *cis* interactions.[242] At the moment, the physiologic importance of *cis* interactions is incompletely understood but may be relevant to NK-cell tolerance and education, as discussed below.

Although they have not been studied as extensively as Ly49A and Ly49C, other inhibitory Ly49 receptors and their ligands have been identified[202,230] and characterized with other MHC allele specificities, as detailed in a recent review.[243] Moreover, they are structurally related.[235,244] Individual NK cells may express multiple Ly49 receptors simultaneously,[210,233,245] often (but not always) two or more, suggesting that individual NK cells may be inhibited by more than one MHC-I molecule.

Ontogenetic studies demonstrate that the total repertoire of Ly49 expression does not reach adult levels until sometime after 3 weeks of age, concomitant with attainment of full NK-cell cytolytic activity.[246] Thereafter, the expression of Ly49 receptors is generally thought to be fixed and stable on an individual NK cell. Ly49E is expressed only on fetal NK cells, but NK cells in mice deficient in Ly49E are otherwise normal.[247] In adult mice, developmental studies indicate that Ly49 receptors are first expressed on immature NK cells in the BM, before a phase of constitutive proliferation[98] that appears to be modestly affected by MHC haplotype.[168] There are only modest effects on the final "repertoire" of MHC-specific receptors expressed by splenic NK cells in different MHC environments.[210,248]

The expression of inhibitory Ly49 receptors appears to occur in a stochastic manner. There is evidence for monoallelic expression of Ly49 receptors (expression from one chromosome), initially described as "allelic exclusion," a term that has fallen out of favor because it has a specific meaning and mechanism for TCRs and BCRs.[249] At least some Ly49 genes possess bidirectional, overlapping promoters directed in opposite orientations.[250] Transcription factors driving transcription in one direction prevent binding of other factors driving transcription in the opposite direction. Directionality and monoallelic expression may also be controlled by DNA methylation.[251] A "probabilistic" model has been proposed to explain these findings that may also explain the stochastic expression of Ly49 genes and their stable expression. However, recent studies of *Ly49* indicate highly variable transcriptional start sites, suggesting that the probabilistic model may not be correct.[229] Other data indicate that TCF-1 but not LEF-1 in the T-cell factor/lymphoid enhancer family of DNA-binding proteins affects some but not all Ly49 receptor expression.[252–254] Thus, the elements controlling Ly49 gene expression are incompletely understood.

Analysis of the Ly49 receptors thus far is largely based on examination of the C57BL/6 alleles, but the Ly49 receptors display extensive polymorphism. The Ly49 family is encoded in the NKC located on mouse chromosome 6 with the syntenic human region being chromosome 12p13.2[195,203,255,256] (see Fig. 17.3). While the NKC also contains genes for other lectin-like receptors, the Ly49 genes are clustered with the exception of *Ly49b*. Corresponding to restriction fragment length polymorphic (RFLP) variants originally detected with the Ly49A cDNA,[203] there is significant allelic polymorphism of the Ly49 cluster between inbred mouse strains with differences in gene number as well as alleles for the *Ly49* genes.[227,257–259] In contrast to C57BL/6J mice, genomic sequence analysis shows 8 putative *Ly49* genes in BALB/c mice, 19 in 129 mice (of which at least 9 appear to be pseudogenes) and 22 in NOD mice. Array-based comparative genomic hybridization analysis of 21 mouse strains compared to the reference C57BL/6J strain indicated that these mice could be grouped into five clusters that correspond to or are predictive of restriction fragment length polymorphic patterns on Southern blot analysis.[203,260] There are also multiple alleles for individual *Ly49* family members.[227,249,257,258,261] Thus, there is significant polymorphism of the *Ly49* molecules at both the haplotype (gene numbers) and individual gene (alleles) levels, not unexpected because the Ly49 molecules bind highly polymorphic MHC-I molecules.

The MHC-I specificities have generally been well characterized for only a few Ly49 alleles. Interestingly, mAbs specific for one Ly49 allele may bind another molecule with a different function or specificity in another mouse strain,[262–264] similar to what was recognized for mAb reactivity with different MHC alleles.[265] Thus, the polymorphisms also raise practical issues when studying Ly49 molecules in different mouse strains.

Finally, it should be noted that Ly49 receptors may be expressed by other cells; some are selectively expressed on non-NK cells and some may have specificities for non-MHC ligands. NKT and other T-cell subsets may express Ly49 receptors but they have not been thoroughly studied.[266,267] Ly49B and Ly49Q are not expressed on NK cells; rather, they are expressed on myeloid cells.[268,269] Interestingly, Ly49Q recognizes $H2K^b$ and positively regulates TLR signaling.[270,271] On the other hand, Ly49E appears to recognize urokinase plasminogen activator, though physical binding has not been established.[272] Interestingly, Ly49B, Ly49E, and Ly49Q are predicted to be distinct in fine structure from the

known MHC-I–specific Ly49 receptors on NK cells.[235] Thus, while Ly49 receptors are predominantly NK-cell inhibitory receptors for MHC class I, they may have other roles that are less well understood; still other Ly49 receptors have activation function, as discussed subsequently.

Human Killer Immunoglobulin-like Receptors

In contrast to mouse NK cells, human NK cells can be cloned by limiting dilution in the presence of irradiated feeder cells, phytohemagglutinin, and IL-2, leading to establishment of short-term NK-cell clones that have differences in target killing and surface molecules. mAbs were isolated that reacted specifically with these clones; reactivity correlated with the capacity of the clones to kill certain tumors, and the mAbs affected cytotoxicity. This general approach led to the identification of the human NK-cell receptors.

A series of studies[273–275] showed that the mAbs GL183 and EB6 identify serologically distinct 55 kDa or 58 kDa molecules, initially termed p58. These molecules had several features: 1) selective expression on overlapping NK cell subsets; 2) expression on NK cell clones correlated with expression of certain human leukocyte antigen (HLA) class I alleles on resistant targets; 3) a target susceptible to a given NK-cell clone bearing p58 molecules reactive with either mAb was made resistant by transfection of cDNAs encoding certain HLA-C molecules; 4) the otherwise resistant, HLA-C–transfected targets could be lysed in the presence of the appropriate anti-p58 mAbs. The mAb effect occurred with $F(ab')_2$ fragments, suggesting that the interaction between p58 and an HLA class I molecule on the target cell inhibits the NK cell. Thus, the p58 molecules displayed features consistent with a role as inhibitory human NK-cell receptors specific for MHC-I, analogous to the mouse Ly49A receptor that was being studied in parallel, as described previously.

Other studies noted that NK-cell specificity was skewed when the NK cells were grown in the presence of cells bearing allo-MHC determinants.[276,277] This specificity correlated with reactivities that mapped to paired residues at position 77 and 80 in the .α1 domain of HLA-C. All known HLA-C molecules could be divided into two groups, one with Asn77-Lys80 (HLA-Cw2, -Cw4, -Cw5, -Cw6) and the other with Ser77-Asn80 (HLA-Cw1, -Cw3, -Cw7, -Cw8). Indeed, transfection analysis showed that p58 specificity for HLA-C molecules was related to expression of the EB6 epitope for the former (specificity 1, now termed HLA-C1), whereas the latter was related to the GL183 epitope (specificity 2, HLA-C2) on the NK-cell clones.[276,278,279] Thus, human NK-cell receptors showed promiscuous specificity that was dependent on residues 77 and 80 in HLA-C.

The NKB1 (p70) molecule was serologically similar to p58 molecules with regard to subset expression, and correlation of expression on NK-cell clones to specificity for HLA class I.[280,281] In contrast to p58 molecules, however, NKB1 had a distinct M_r (70 kDa) and specificity for HLA-B. The NKB1+ clones were specifically inhibited by targets expressing transfected HLA-Bw4 molecules, and the anti-NKB1 mAb reversed the inhibition. Analysis of informative HLA-B alleles showed that this specificity was conferred by a region in the α1 domain overlapping the area on HLA-C recognized by p58 molecules.[282] Finally, HLA-A3, -A11–specific receptors have similar properties to p58 and NKB1 except that they appear to be disulfide-linked dimers termed p140,[283] whereas others have found that a monomeric HLA-A3–specific receptor resembles NKB1.[284] Thus, representative alleles of all classical HLA class I loci are capable of inhibiting NK cells through p58/NKB1/p140 receptors although HLA-B and -C alleles dominate human NK-cell specificities, and it is not yet known if there are receptors reactive with each HLA allele.

When the cDNAs for the p58 and NKB1 molecules were cloned, they were surprisingly found to encode type I integral membrane proteins with Ig-like domains[285–287] unlike the lectin-like Ly49 family of type II receptors. The Ig-like receptors are now collectively known as killer Iq-like receptors (KIRs) or CD158.[288,289] The KIR nomenclature is based on whether the receptor has two or three Ig-like external domains (KIR2D or KIR3D, respectively), and possession of a long (L) or short (S) cytoplasmic domain. In general, the L forms are inhibitory because they contain ITIMs, whereas the S forms appear to be activation receptors (see following discussion). Each distinct receptor is also designated by a number. The KIR2DL1 (CD158a, p58.1) molecule bears the original EB6 epitope and is specific for HLA-C (Lys80, specificity 2), whereas KIR2DL2 (CD158b1, p58.2) and KIR2DL3 (CD158b2, p58) have the GL183 epitope and are specific for HLA-C (Asn80, specificity 1). (As detailed in the following, structural analysis supports grouping of HLA-C alleles into two mutually exclusive groups, HLA-C1 and HLA-C2, based on direct interaction of KIR2DL2/3 and KIR2DL1, respectively, with residue 80 of HLA-C, validating original functional groupings but simplifying HLA-C groupings to just residue 80.[276,277]) KIR2DL4 (CD158d, p49) reportedly binds HLA-G[290] but displays both inhibitory and activation functions.[291–293] KIR3DL1 (CD158e1, NKB1, NKAT3) is specific for HLA-A and HLA-B molecules with the Bw4 epitope.[282] KIR3DL2 (CD158k, p140, NKAT4) has HLA-A3 and HLA-A11 specificity.[283,284]

There is unequivocal evidence that the KIR2DL and KIR3DL molecules are inhibitory HLA class I–specific receptors. In addition to the data with NK cell clones and mAbs mentioned previously, the following have been described: 1) KIR bind directly to HLA class I: soluble KIR2DL-Fc fusion proteins bind cells expressing the appropriate transfected HLA class I alleles.[294,295] In addition, a soluble KIR2DL molecule containing only the extracellular domain binds specifically to its HLA-C ligand in solution.[296] 2) Gene transfer of KIR: KIR2DL specificity and inhibitory function were transferred when KIR2DL cDNAs were transiently expressed with vaccinia constructs in human NK-cell clones.[294] Similarly, Tg expression of KIR2DL2 in mice conferred inhibition of rejection of BM expressing Tg HLA-Cw3.[297] 3) SPR measurements indicate that the KIRs bind their HLA ligands with $K_d = \sim 10$ μM.[298–301] Binding is affected by peptide bound by HLA molecule.[300,301] Through histidine-rich domains, the KIRs bind Zn++, which affects KIR multimerization and binding kinetics to HLA ligands.[302,303] 4) Crystallographic studies dem-

onstrate KIR2DL1 (2.8 Å resolution) and KIR2DL2 (3.0 Å resolution) interactions with their cognate HLA ligands.[299,304] Thus, KIR molecules are clearly MHC-I–specific inhibitory receptors on NK cells.

Interestingly, structural studies indicate that KIR molecules bind HLA class I molecules in a manner analogous to recognition of MHC by TCRs (Fig. 17.5). In particular, both KIR2DL1 and KIR2DL2 use surface loops near their interdomain hinge regions to bind their cognate HLA-C ligands (Cw4 and Cw3, respectively) with a footprint overlying the "right" side of the peptide-binding cleft (when viewed from the "top" in standard depictions of MHC-I molecules).[299,304] The receptors bind both α1 and α2 helices with interactions between KIR2DL1 and Lys80 of HLA-Cw4 and between KIR2DL2 and Asn80 of HLA-Cw3. These interactions with residue 80 of the HLA-C molecules were lost when the reciprocal residues were swapped, accounting for the previously described HLA-C groupings and KIR specificities in functional studies[276,277] and mutational analysis indicating that residue 80 is more significant for KIR interaction than residue 77.[305–308] Although neither KIR2DL molecule has extensive contacts with peptides bound to HLA-C, KIR2DL interactions with HLA-C imposes physical constraints on the p8 position of the peptide. This may account for observed peptide preferences in functional studies and antagonism of certain peptides on KIR inhibitory function.[309,310] A recent structure (1.8 Å resolution) of KIR3DL1 complexed to HLA-B*5701 revealed a similar recognition strategy.[301] Thus, KIRs and Ly49s bind their MHC ligands in markedly different ways, despite their analogous functions as MHC-specific inhibitory receptors.

Also unlike the Ly49s, the KIRs are encoded in the LRC on human chromosome 19q13.4 that encodes many other Ig-like receptors (see Fig. 17.3)[311]; the KIR genes are clustered toward the telomeric end of the LRC.[312] Interestingly, the mouse LRC on chromosome 7qA1 does not include genes for KIR-like molecules that instead are encoded on the X chromosome.[313,314] On the other hand, like the Ly49s, the KIRs display remarkable polymorphism with at least 11 genes[315–317] (see www.ebi.ac.uk/ipd/kir/index.html for updated database).

The human *KIR* locus also demonstrates considerable haplotype diversity with at least 27 different haplotypes,[315,316,318] recently defined at the sequence level.[317] While there has not been a consensus definition, two major types of haplotypes have been described.[289] Group B contains one or more of the following: *KIR2DL5*, *KIR2DS1*, *KIR2DS2*, *KIR2DS3*, *KIR2DS5*, and *KIR3DS1*, whereas group A haplotypes have none of these genes. Reflecting extensive allelic polymorphism of individual genes, a large number of different KIR genotypes have been described, and they are distributed differently in the various ethnic populations.

As with the Ly49s, only a few KIR alleles have been well characterized with respect to HLA class I specificities. Nonetheless, these genetic variants have not only provided clues to new receptors and ligand specificities but also valuable links to the role of NK cells and their receptors in

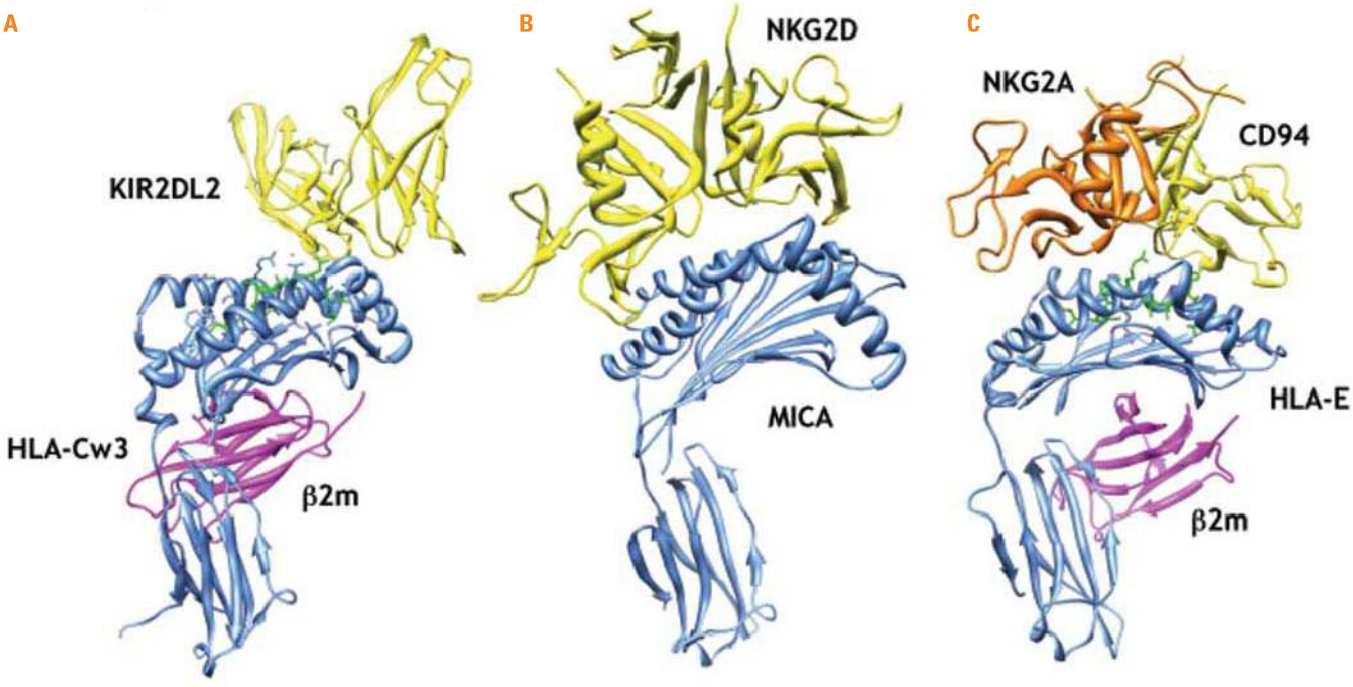


FIG. 17.5. Additional Structures of Natural Killer–Cell Receptors in Complex with Their Ligands. **A:** Human KIR2DL2 with HLA-Cw3 (PDB ID = 1EFX).[236] Two KIR molecules are apparent in the crystal structure with only one molecule (killer Ig–like receptor [KIR] A) contacting the human leukocyte antigen (HLA) molecule. In this view, KIR B molecule is not shown. **B:** Human NKG2D with MICA (PDB ID = 1HYR).[412] **C:** Human CD94/NKG2A with HLA-E (PDB ID=3CDG).[382] The figures were produced and oriented as described in Figure 17.4.

disease pathogenesis (discussed in the subsequent clinical section), and more broadly, human evolution.

Convergent Evolution of Major Histocompatibility Complex–Specific Natural Killer-Cell Receptors

Despite the controversy surrounding the initial cloning of mouse Ly49s and human KIRs and leukocyte Ig-like receptors (LILRs), additional data have provided new interpretations of the distinctly different receptors used by mouse and human NK cells, respectively, to recognize MHC-I. Detailed genome sequence information is available on the NKC and LRC in mice, humans, and other species. In the mouse, MHC-specific NK-cell receptors with Ig-like domains have not yet been described, although there is conservation of several genes in the broader LRC on mouse chromosome 7[312] (see Fig. 17.3). Activated mouse NK cells do express gp49b (Lilrb4), an Ig-like inhibitory receptor also expressed on other leukocytes, including mast cells.[319–322] However, it is not expressed by resting NK cells and is not specific for MHC-I. Instead, it binds the integrin αvβ3 and appears more important for responses of other cells, such as neutrophil, eosinophil, and DCs.[323–328] Mouse *Kir3dl1* is on the X chromosome (see Fig. 17.3) and expressed in NK and T cells, but its function and ligand remain unknown.[313,314] The Ly49 locus in humans consists only of *LY49L* (*KLRA1*) that is a pseudogene because of a point mutation that gives rise to a splicing abnormality.[329] Thus, current data indicate that mouse NK cells do not express functional KIR orthologues while human NK cells do not express functional Ly49 orthologues.

One reason for this discrepancy may be that the corresponding orthologue is present in the genome but has not been identified. Indeed, genomic sequencing has revealed a multitude of candidate orphan receptors in the genome and specifically the LRC and NKC that have yet to be studied carefully.[311,330] In that regard, identification and functional analyses of NK cell receptors led to the recognition that they are encoded in genomic regions containing gene clusters for related receptors that are expressed on other leukocytes, not just NK cells. Dissection of the expression and function of these receptors is a rich area of research that is beyond the scope of this chapter.

The alternative and currently favored view for the discrepancy is that mice and humans independently evolved analogous receptors to serve the same function. While both human and mouse NK cells express a conserved relatively nonpolymorphic lectin-like receptor, CD94/NKG2, it does not possess many of the features that are shared by mouse Ly49 and human KIRs:

1) both Ly49s and KIRs are constitutively and selectively expressed on naïve, unstimulated NK cells (with exceptions for rare populations of T cells);
2) both bind MHC-I molecules with intermediate affinity (K_D = ~2-10 μM);
3) binding to MHC is promiscuous;
4) MHC-bound peptides have only a modest effect, if at all, on recognition;
5) both use ITIMs to inhibit NK-cell activation;
6) they are expressed in a stochastic fashion on overlapping subsets of NK cells;
7) a single NK cell simultaneously expresses one or more of either type of inhibitory receptor (each may be functional);
8) once they are expressed, their expression appears to be stable;
9) both are germ-line encoded by small families of genes that are clustered in the genome;
10) both display impressive polymorphism, in terms of gene number and alleles for each gene;
11) both are related to molecules that lack ITIMs and instead are activation receptors; and
12) both are involved in NK-cell education by self-MHC-I (see following discussion).

Thus, the mouse Ly49 receptors and human KIRs are analogous receptors in an apparently striking example of convergent evolution,[331] whereby each species came up with a different genetic solution to provide extremely important functions for species reproduction and survival.

In other species, *Ly49* and *KIR* genes have been analyzed primarily with respect to sequence and gene number.[332] For example, the *LY49L* gene in baboons appears to be functional but the putative polypeptide lacks an ITIM.[333] In rats, the *Ly49* cluster appears to have markedly expanded with at least 25 genes,[334,335] demonstrating one of the most rapid rates of gene expansion.[336] Dog, cat, and pig appear to have only one *Ly49*, whereas horse represents the only known nonrodent mammal with several *Ly49* genes.[337] The chicken genome has several lectin-like receptor genes that are genetically linked to the MHC.[338–340] On the other hand, multiple KIR genes have been described in primates and cattle.[341–344] Rhesus macaques have a profound plasticity of KIRs with multiple genotypes and haplotypes[345] encoding receptors that bind MHC-I.[346,347] In rat, a KIR-like sequence has been reported,[314] and dogs and cats lack functional KIRs.[348] Interestingly, pigs and marine carnivores each possess a single Ly49 and KIR gene, but it is not clear if these are functional.[348] Finally, several species have no readily identifiable Ly49 or KIR genes[332] (eg, teleost fish instead possess a large number of novel immune-type receptors with sequence homology to mammalian LRC-encoded receptors[349]). Perhaps these species have had alternative convergent evolutionary stratetgies to preserve inhibitory MHC-I–specific receptors.

Additional studies of the Ly49-like and KIR-like molecules as well as potential new orthologues in other species will be of interest to evolutionary biologists for several reasons including prior description of NK-like cells in lower vertebrates and MHC genes that are coevolving.[332,350] Moreover, in primitive chordates, NK-like, missing-self–like recognition affects histocompatiblity reactions[351] but the molecular determinants of histocompatibility involves molecules unrelated to mammalian Ly49, KIR, or even MHC itself.[352–354] Thus, evolutionary studies of NK-cell receptors and their ligands may provide unique insight into missing-self and other histocompatiblity reactions.

While we have focused thus far on mouse Ly49 and human KIR as the major MHC-I–specific receptors, there are other well-described NK-cell receptors belonging to

either the lectin-like receptor or Ig-like receptor superfamilies. These receptors also have specificities for MHC-I molecules.

Human and Mouse CD94/NKG2

The analysis of CD94 (Klrd1) and NKG2 (Klrc, excluding NKG2D [Klrk1]) family of molecules was especially challenging and required insightful investigations. Identified by subtractive hybridization, the human NKG2 molecules are type II integral membrane proteins with external C-type lectin domains[355] encoded in the NKC[356] (see Fig. 17.3). Initial attempts to express NKG2 molecules on the cell surface were thwarted. Meanwhile, mAb reactivity suggested that CD94 was variably expressed on human NK cells as a disulfide-linked dimer (70 kDa NR, 43 kDa R),[357] and both activation and inhibition functions for CD94 were described.[358–361] Surprisingly, cDNA cloning revealed that CD94 has a short seven amino acid cytoplasmic domain, suggesting that it cannot signal on its own.[360] Furthermore, anti-CD94 immunoprecipitates were not detectable from radiolabeled CD94 transfectants, despite easily detectable expression on FACS analysis with the same mAbs.[362,363] These apparent discrepancies were resolved when it became clear that CD94 heterodimerizes with NKG2 molecules[362]; NKG2A is the 43 kDa molecule previously identified as Kp43 with anti-CD94 mAbs.[364,365] While CD94 may be expressed as a homodimer, the NKG2 partner provides the signaling motif, whether activation or inhibition.[364,366] (NKG2B is an alternatively spliced form of NKG2A. The rest of the NKG2 family is discussed in the following.)

The ligand specificity for CD94/NKG2 receptors was also initially thought to be promiscuous as interactions with many classical (class Ia) and nonclassical (class Ib) HLA molecules had been described.[359,362,364,367–370] However, human CD94/NKG2 receptors directly recognize HLA-E, a MHC-Ib molecule homologous to mouse Qa-1.[371–373] HLA-E (and Qa-1) is widely expressed with limited polymorphism.[374–376] While HLA-E heavy chain is expressed with β2m and a peptide occupying its peptide-binding cleft, its peptide repertoire is largely derived from the leader sequences of MHC-Ia molecules, as previously noted for mouse Qa-1.[377,378] HLA-E (or Qa-1) expression thus requires normal production of HLA-E (or Qa-1) and synthesis of certain MHC-Ia molecules. Mouse CD94/NKG2 recognizes Qa-1 that shares many features with HLA-E.[379,380] These findings need to be considered in the context of the prevailing view at the time that mouse and human NK cells use structurally different receptors to recognize MHC-I molecules.[381] Clearly, the CD94/NKG2 receptors and their ligands are conserved in humans and mice.

The crystal structure of human CD94/NKG2A bound to HLA-E was resolved to 2.5Å and 4.4Å resolution.[382,383] Remarkably, CD94/NKG2A interfaces with HLA-E in a manner analogous to TCR recognition of peptide-loaded MHC-I,[384] including TCR binding to HLA-E itself.[385] Both innate and adaptive receptors for HLA-E lay across the peptide-binding cleft, though peptide itself plays a relatively minor role in binding CD94/NKG2A.[382,383] Strikingly, this binding is distinct from that of Ly49 receptors to their classical MHC-I ligands (see previous discussion). On the other hand, this binding interface is similar to binding of another NKC-encoded, lectin-like receptor, the NKG2D activation receptor, to its MHC-like ligands (see following discussion). Thus, NKC-encoded, lectin-like receptors surprisingly use different strategies to contact their ligands, even though these ligands have structurally related MHC-I folds.

Despite its conservation between mice and humans, the role of CD94/NKG2 receptors in NK-cell function is still incompletely understood. For example, viruses encode peptides that bind and enhance expression of HLA-E, providing a CD94/NKG2A-dependent mechanism to avoid NK-cell attack.[386,387] By contrast, human NK cells expressing CD94/NKG2C (an activation receptor) expand in response to cytomegalovirus (CMV)-infected targets.[388] When a large number of human NK-cell clones were obtained from two normal individuals, CD94/NKG2 seemed to account for the majority of self-MHC–specific receptors on clones from one individual whereas KIRs dominated the self-specific receptors on clones from the other individual, suggesting that some individuals may depend on CD94/NKG2 for self-tolerance.[389] Qa-1 and HLA-E can present peptides derived from other molecules, including the signal sequence of heat shock protein 60 (Hsp60) that is induced by a number of stimuli,[390,391] a multidrug resistance transporter,[392] or blastocyst MHC expressed in embryonic tissues.[393] This may result in loss or gain of recognition by the inhibitory CD94/NKG2A receptor, suggesting intrinsic mechanisms to perturb inhibition by CD94/NKG2A in certain circumstances.

Yet, CD94 appears to be dispensable in certain strains of mice, such as DBA/2J, that do not appear to have any untoward NK-cell phenotype.[394] This finding has been recapitulated in studies of a CD94 knockout mouse on the 129 strain background.[395] Interestingly, CD94 knockout mice are more susceptible to ectromelia virus,[396] as detailed below.

CD94/NKG2 molecules may be important in T-cell function. CD94/NKG2A is rapidly induced on antigen-specific CD8+ T cells during polyoma virus and other infections,[397–399] and CD8+ T cells expressing CD94/NKG2A preferentially proliferate during persistent infection, suggesting that CD94/NKG2 receptors may play a role in memory T-cell responses,[400] and that TCR specificity is correlated with CD94/NKG2A expression by human CTL.[401] Indeed, CD94/NKG2A inhibits antigen-specific cytotoxicity in polyoma virus responses, although this effect is pathogen-dependent. CD94/NKG2A has been studied with other viral infections, including herpes simplex virus,[402] murine CMV,[403] gHV68, and influenza,[404] for example. Although not all studies revealed functional consequences, the recurring theme is the appearance of CD94/NKG2A on previously activated CD8+ T cells. Thus, CD94/NKG2 receptors may regulate T-cell responses.

Other Human Immunoglobulin-like Receptors Specific for Major Histocompatibility Complex-I Molecules

The human LILR family is encoded in the LRC (see Fig. 17.3), just centromeric to the *KIR* genes. There are two general forms of these receptors, subfamily A that appears to be activation receptors, and subfamily B that has the ITIMs

characteristic of inhibitory receptors. The best characterized members, LILRB1 (also known as CD85j, Ig-like transcript 2 [ILT2], or leukocyte IG-like receptor 1 [LILR1]) is broadly expressed whereas LILRB2 (CD85d, ILT4, or LIR2) is not expressed on NK cells but is expressed by myelomonocytic cells, including DCs and monocytes. Both recognize HLA class I molecules[405,406] with LILRB1 exclusively binding folded HLA class I molecules with β2m, whereas LILRB2 can bind both folded and free HLA class I heavy chains.[407] Interestingly, a human CMV protein, UL18, binds LILRB1 with 1000-fold higher affinity than HLA molecules, implicating a role for LILRB1 in host defense.[408] The ligands and functions of other LILRBs (LILRB3 [CD85a, ILT5, LIR3], LILRB4 [CD85k, ILT3, LIR5], LILRB5 [CD85c, LIR8], and LILRB6 [CD85b]) are as yet unknown but they may not be able to bind HLA due to structural constraints.[409]

LILRB1 has four Ig-like domains and binds a conserved region in the α3 domain of most, if not all, classical and nonclassical HLA class I molecules (HLA-A, -B, -C, -E, -F, and -G).[408] Interestingly, the crystal structure of LILRB1 bound to HLA-A2 (3.4Å resolution) reveals that it binds MHC molecules under the peptide-binding domain where it contacts α3 and β2m, more akin to Ly49 engagement of MHC than KIR[409] (see Figs. 17.4 and 17.5). Even though LILRB1 and LILRB2 have differing capacities to bind free HLA molecules, LILRB2 has an HLA class I binding site that overlaps with but is distinct from that for LILRB1.[410] LILRB1 binds UL18 in a manner structurally similar to HLA class I binding.[411]

Interestingly, LILR genes demonstrate allelic polymorphisms,[412] though less so than the adjacent KIR cluster.[413] Nonetheless, polymorphisms in LILRB1 may affect receptor expression.[414] Moreover, polymorphisms in LILR genes are associated with certain autoimmune diseases, such as rheumatoid arthritis.[415]

Major Histocompatibility Complex–Independent Natural Killer-Cell Inhibitory Receptors

As already mentioned, NK cells also express inhibitory receptors for non-MHC ligands, such as mouse gp49b, which binds the αvβ3 integrin,[323] and there is a growing list of other such molecules.[416] Some of these receptors will be discussed in a more appropriate context in the following sections. Most of these receptors contain cytoplasmic ITIMs so their inhibitory function can be predicted even if not directly tested, though some caution is required because the motifs may be involved in other signaling processes.

Human and mouse NK cells express the ITIM-bearing leukocyte-associated Ig-like receptor 1 (LAIR-1, CD305), which is an Ig-like molecule broadly expressed by most leukocytes and encoded in the LRC.[417,418] Initial reports indicating that LAIR-1 binds epithelial cellular adhesion molecule were irreproducible.[419,420] Instead, LAIR-1 binds multiple forms of collagen,[421] which has been validated in crystallographic and biochemical studies.[422] Interestingly, LAIR-1 mediates inhibition that is independent of Src homology 2 (SH2)-domain–containing phosphatases, and instead recruits C-terminal Src kinase (Csk),[423] suggesting that Csk may be involved in inhibitory signaling. Although the in vivo context for functional interaction awaits further characterization, it is reminiscent of the broader reactivity of the Siglecs.

The CD33-related sialic acid binding Ig-like lectins (CD33rSiglecs) are type I receptors with varying numbers of Ig-like domains expressed on a broad array of cells and encoded in the "extended" LRC[312,424,425] (see Fig. 17.3). Despite having sialic acid recognition in common, the Siglecs appear to show differences in carbohydrate recognition, depending on the specific glycan context.[424] Human NK cells express Siglec-7 (p75, adhesion inhibitory receptor 1 [AIRM1]) and Siglec-10, whereas some mouse NK cells express a related Siglec-E.[425] Siglec-7 has been most extensively studied. As expected, its cytoplasmic ITIM can recruit SHP-1 and inhibit NK-cell functions.[426,427] Moreover, expression of its ligand on targets inhibits NK cells in a Siglec-dependent manner.[428] However, the effects appear to be modulated by *cis* interactions between the Siglec receptor and its carbohydrate ligands on the NK cell itself,[424,428,429] reminiscent of *cis* interactions between Ly49 and MHC ligands, as previously discussed.

The Ig-like receptors, termed paired Ig-like receptor (PILR)α and β, are not encoded in the LRC, rather on human chromosome 7 (mouse chromosome 5).[430,431] Mouse PILRα is an ITIM-containing inhibitory receptor, whereas PILRβ is an activation receptor that couples to DAP12.[430,432] Both receptors are expressed on NK (and other immune) cells and recognize CD99. Interestingly, sialylated O-linked glycans on CD99 are involved in recognition by PILRs.[433]

Thus, NK cells (and other leukocytes) express multiple inhibitory receptors that are capable of MHC-independent recognition. How they participate in NK-cell responses and contribute to MHC-dependent effects are beginning to be elucidated, and some appear to play a specific role in the context of activation receptors, as discussed in the following.

Natural Killer-Cell Activation Receptors

NK cells clearly kill MHC-I–deficient targets more efficiently than MHC-I–sufficient targets. However, this enhanced killing does not occur simply because a nonspecific default pathway is unleashed when MHC-I is absent. Instead, it is clear that susceptible targets express ligands for NK-cell activation receptors. In general, these receptors and their ligands were defined following description of the inhibitory receptors.

Approaches to Identification of Activation Receptors

Initial progress in elucidating NK-cell activation receptors was difficult. The approaches that yielded the molecular definition of the TCR, such as subtractive hybridization, mutagenesis of T-cell tumors, and anticlonotypic mAbs,[434–436] were of limited success.[437,438] Unlike the working paradigm of MHC restriction that guided the molecular identification of the TCR, the principles guiding NK-cell activation by targets were unclear. Breakthroughs in identifying NK-cell activation receptors thus required other approaches.

Some activation receptors were recognized because they were first identified on other cells, such as FcγRIII. Other

activation receptors were identified by genetic means, such as cDNA clones for molecules resembling the inhibitory receptors but lacking cytoplasmic ITIMs. Others were identified by a genetic positional cloning approach. Specific stimulation of NK cells through mAbs proved useful for the initial identification of candidate activation receptors and to validate the activation function of receptors identified by other means.

NK cells can be stimulated to mediate antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity (ADCC) through the FcγRIII (CD16) receptor that binds the Fc portion of the IgG coating a target. In a related way, anti-FcγRIII can also trigger through CD16 in a process termed "redirected lysis" or "reverse ADCC" because the antibody binds in the opposite orientation to ADCC. A few mAbs against other NK-cell surface molecules also can activate in the redirected lysis assay, highlighting a relatively unique functional property of the recognized molecules (and mAbs), because activation does not occur when most NK-cell surface molecules are cross-linked. First, popularized for analysis of anti-TCR antibodies,[439] redirected lysis occurs when IgG reacts specifically with the NK-cell receptor, and its Fc portion binds a target cell Fc receptor (FcγR) that apparently provides bridging and cross-linking effects.[439] Target lysis does not occur if FcγR binding on the target is prevented with FcγR-deficient targets, $F(ab')_2$ fragments of the anti–NK-cell receptor antibody, or anti-target cell FcγR Ab blockade. In the latter case, Fc regions must be removed to prevent inadvertent triggering of conventional ADCC via CD16 on the NK cell. Thus, the redirected lysis assay is a helpful experimental tool.

Gene transfer studies have been helpful adjuncts to study NK-cell receptors. NK cells are difficult to transfect, and there are few useful tumors with the notable exception of RNK-16, a rat NK tumor line.[440] Viral vectors, such as vaccinia virus, have been useful for gene transfer with the caveat that functional experiments have to be performed within a small time frame before untoward effects occur.[441] Recent use of lentiviral vectors also show promise for gene transfer into primary NK cells.[442]

Recent studies have exploited reporter cell assay systems similar to those used to identify TCR ligands.[443] ITAM-mediated signaling leads to inducible, nuclear factor of activated T cells (NFAT)–dependent expression of a reporter molecule, such as β-galactosidase or GFP. Even an inhibitory receptor can be used to activate the reporter cell by fusion of its extracellular domain to a suitable transmembrane and cytoplasmic domain containing ITAMs. Such reporter cells can then be used to detect ligands.[444–446]

In the following sections, we will describe NK-cell activation receptors with an emphasis on those with known ligands.

Activation Receptors Related to Major Histocompatibility Complex–Specific Inhibitory Receptors

Despite initial characterization as inhibitory receptors for MHC-I, the Ly49 family contains other members (ie, Ly49D and Ly49H in C57BL/6 mice) without cytoplasmic ITIMs. Instead, they are activation receptors containing charged transmembrane residues for association with DAP12 that facilitates expression and provides signal transduction capacity.[447–450] Although Ly49H will be considered below in the context of viral infection, Ly49D has no known role in viral defense. A positional cloning approach indicated that Ly49D is the product of the *Chok* locus, which controls NK-cell specificity for killing of a xenogeneic target, Chinese hamster ovary cells,[159,451] due to recognition of a Chinese hamster MHC-I molecule.[452] Interestingly, when Ly49D was transfected into RNK-16 cells, Ly49D can recognize $H2D^d$,[440] but $H2D^d$ tetramers do not bind Ly49D for unclear reasons, although potentially reflecting lower avidity.[213,262] Several other Ly49 receptors have been identified in non-C57BL/6 mouse strains that have properties of activation receptors (charged transmembrane residues, no ITIMs) but they have been less well characterized,[257,258] except for Ly49P in MA/My mice, which is involved in controlling viral infection that is related to MHC-I recognition[453] (see subsequent details). Thus, some members of the Ly49 family are activation receptors with apparent specificity for MHC-I, potentially with less avidity.

Molecular cloning of the KIR family also led to the identification of two domain receptors (also known as p50) or three domain Ig-like receptors with short cytoplasmic domains lacking the ITIM.[454,455] These molecules are now known as the KIR2DS or KIR3DS, respectively, with numbers for specific molecules (ie, KIR2DS1 [CD158h, p50.1], KIR2DS2 [CD185j, NKAT5, p50.2, clone 49], KIR2DS3 [NKAT7], KIR2DS4 [CD158i, NKAT8, clone 39], KIR2DS5 [CD158g, NKAT9], and KIR3DS1 [CD158e2]). Expression of these molecules may be difficult to determine because mAbs for KIR2DL molecules cross-react with KIR2DS molecules.[456] KIR2DS molecules can associate with DAP12 and activate NK cells in the redirected lysis assay.[454,457] KIR2DS and KIR3DS molecules can recognize HLA class I molecules with specificities similar to corresponding inhibitory KIRs, apparently with lower avidity.[458–461] However, KIR2DS4 and HLA-C alleles and KIR3DS1 and HLA-B alleles influence their respective interactions.[462,463] Thus, further analysis is needed to support the hypothesis that activating forms of KIRs bind HLA alleles less well than the inhibitory receptors as a potential explanation for dominance of inhibition over activation (see Fig. 17.2D).

It remains possible that the activating forms of the Ly49s and KIRs have other ligands and perhaps their MHC specificities are instead somehow related to their physiologically relevant ligand. Indeed, this has been demonstrated for Ly49H, an activation receptor that recognizes a virus-encoded ligand with an MHC-I–like fold.[444,446,464] Moreover, KIR2DS4 may recognize a non-MHC ligand.[465] Thus, further analysis is required for understanding the role of Ly49 and KIR activation receptors in MHC-I recognition and with respect to their inhibitory counterparts.

In addition to NKG2A, the NKG2 family also contains NKG2C, NKG2E, and NKG2F, which are products of different genes.[355,466] (NKG2B is an alternatively spliced isoform of NKG2A, whereas NKG2H is an alternatively spliced isoform of NKG2E.) NKG2C and NKG2E lack cytoplasmic ITIMs and contain charged transmembrane residues for association with DAP12.[467] While the role of NKG2F is unknown

because it lacks an external domain and remains inside the cell, associated with DAP12 but not with CD94,[468] NKG2C and NKG2E form functional heterodimers with CD94.[364] Like CD94/NKG2A receptors, these heterodimers recognize HLA-E or Qa-1, but unlike CD94/NKG2A receptors, they activate NK cells.[469,470] Interestingly, the inhibitory form binds with higher affinity to HLA-E than the activating form.[382,383,471,472] There also appears to be some peptide preference between the different functional forms[382,383,473] that may be relevant in certain physiologic situations. Thus, the CD94/NKG2 receptors may discriminate between subtle differences in their MHC-Ib ligands.

FcγRIII (CD16)

Frequently overlooked but perhaps the first molecularly defined activation receptor on NK cells is FcγRIII (CD16), through which NK cells mediate ADCC against IgG-coated targets.[474,475] Unlike other Fcγ receptor–bearing effector cells, NK cells are generally thought to express only one of the known Fcγ receptors that binds IgG with low affinity,[476] although others suggest that human NK cells may express FcγRII isoforms.[477] There are two human FcγRIII isoforms with identical extracellular domains.[476] Human NK cells express only FcγRIIIA, which is a transmembrane molecule, whereas FcγRIIIB has a glycosylphosphatidyl-inositol (GPI) linkage and is expressed by neutrophils. In mice, only the transmembrane isoform (FcγRIII) is present[478] and displays 95% sequence conservation with muFcγRII. The recently described FcγRIV is a newly recognized orthologue of human CD16A but is not expressed on mouse NK cells.[479,480] There are species differences in CD16 binding to mouse IgG isotypes; mouse IgG3 mAbs bind human CD16 the most efficiently (3 > 2a > 2b >> 1), whereas they bind mouse CD16 with the lowest affinity (2b > 2a > 1 >> 3).[476] In the laboratory, a rabbit antimouse Ig polyclonal Ab, whose Fc portion binds strongly to both human and mouse CD16, could be added to facilitate Fc receptor binding.

The transmembrane FcγRIII molecules are physically associated with FcεRIγ and less commonly with CD3ζ.[481] FcγRIII can also associate with γζ heterodimers. The associated chains are required for optimal cell surface expression of FcγRIII and for signal transduction. After cross-linking, FcγRIII activates biochemical events that are reminiscent of T-cell activation, leading to granule exocytosis and cytokine production.[161,482–485] In vivo, ADCC may be useful in host defense against pathogens or infected cells if Abs are bound to their surface, triggering not only killing but also cytokine production and other NK-cell responses. Although NK cells are generally thought to participate early in a primary immune response (see subsequent discussion), the delay required for isotype switching to IgG production suggests that CD16 cross-linking on NK cells plays a role in secondary immune responses in vivo.

Regardless, ADCC is remarkably similar to natural killing and was important for the initial establishment of the concept of NK-cell activation receptors.[161] Yet, CD16 is not required for NK-cell target recognition because human CD16−CD3− lymphocytes can still mediate natural killing.[486] Moreover, CD3ζ is phosphorylated upon CD16 ligation but not when NK cells are exposed to NK-sensitive targets. Deficiency of γ chain abrogated ADCC but not natural killing.[474] Thus, CD16 is not involved in natural killing.

CD16-related artifacts must be considered when studying NK cells. Flow cytometry experiments may be flawed if CD16 binding is not taken into account. To eliminate this possibility, $F(ab')_2$ fragments should be used. Alternatively, blockade of FcγRIII binding may be sufficient with protein A or G (that bind Fc region on Ig) or anti-FcγRIII mAbs, such as unlabeled mAb 2.4G2 (ATCC HB 197) that reacts with both mouse FcγRII and FcγRIII.[478] Similarly, as discussed previously, antibody blockade experiments should be done with caution if the antibody specifically reacts with the target because ADCC may be stimulated.

NKG2D

NKG2D (KLRK1) was first cloned from human NK cells as a cDNA related to NKG2A and C.[355] However, NKG2D is distinct from other NKG2 molecules for several reasons. There is only limited sequence homology between NKG2D and other NKG2 molecules (28% amino acid identity for the lectin-like domain) whereas other NKG2 molecules are closely related to each other (70% identity). Rather than heterodimerizing with CD94, NKG2D is expressed as a disulfide-linked homodimer on all NK cells in humans and mice. In humans, NKG2D is also expressed on all γδTCR+ and CD8+ T cells, whereas in mice, NKG2D is expressed on most NKT and γδTCR+ T cells but not on resting CD8+ T cells.[81–83] However, essentially all activated mouse CD8+ T cells express NKG2D. In both humans and mice, CD4+ T cells do not express NKG2D, but it is found on a subset of CD4+ T cells in patients with rheumatoid arthritis.[84] Finally, NKG2D has functional properties and ligand specificities that distinguish it from the other NKG2 molecules, indicating that NKG2D should not be considered as a member of the NKG2 family.

NKG2D does not have any known cytoplasmic motif and was first shown in humans to preferentially associate with a signaling chain termed DAP10, encoded by a gene localized 130 bp away from the gene for DAP12.[487] DAP10 does not have any ITAMs; instead, it contains a YxxM motif for recruitment of PI3K.[487] This motif is similar to that found in CD28, and functional studies indicate that NKG2D can act as a costimulatory molecule on T cells.[488–490] Moreover, DAP10 has a site for recruitment of Grb2.[491] Thus, NKG2D may provide qualitatively different signals, resulting in different cytokine production, for example,[490] than activation receptors associated with ITAM-signaling chains.

Other studies have suggested that NKG2D functions as a primary activation (triggers alone) rather than costimulatory receptor (does not stimulate unless it synergizes with another receptor) on NK cells.[80,492] Such studies need to be reconsidered in light of several factors. 1) Many studies of NKG2D function use targets that are poorly killed by NK cells. When these targets are transfected with NKG2D ligands, killing is enhanced in an NKG2D-dependent manner. However, such studies do not distinguish whether NKG2D functions as a primary activation receptor or as a costimulatory receptor (analogous to CD28 requirement for

full activation of T cells) as the same experimental outcome is anticipated in either case. 2) When cross-linking is done with immobilized mAbs alone and CD16 coengagement on NK cells is avoided, NKG2D functions as a costimulatory receptor on mouse IL-2-activated NK cells.[80] 3) In mice but not humans, there are two alternatively spliced isoforms of NKG2D.[34,493] A long form (NKG2D-L) contains a 13 amino acid extension at the amino terminus (cytoplasmic domain) as compared to the short form (NKG2D-S). Resting NK cells predominantly express NKG2D-L that preferentially associates with DAP10. However, activation of NK cells with cytokines causes a transient increase in NKG2D-S that associates with ITAM-containing DAP12 as well as DAP10. However, others have found that NKG2D-L can associate with DAP12, albeit to a lesser degree, and that both isoforms are present in resting NK cells.[494] Regardless, in the absence of DAP10, mouse NKG2D can associate with DAP12,[35] allowing it to signal akin to a primary activation receptor. Thus, mouse NKG2D is an unusual example of a receptor with the same extracellular domain but with potentially different functional outcomes (primary activation versus costimulation), depending on its associated partner chain.

There is remarkable plasticity for NKG2D in that it can bind many apparently disparate ligands that are only superficially related to each other by sequence alignment, and human NKG2D can bind mouse ligands and vice versa. Based on soluble MICA binding, the first human NKG2D ligands were found to be MICA and MICB (MHC-I chain-related, A and B) encoded on chromosome 6p21.3, centromeric to HLA-B locus.[81] Subsequently binding studies of UL16 from human CMV (HCMV) identified the ULBP (UL16 binding protein) family that in turn binds NKG2D.[495] The UL16-binding proteins (ULBPs) are encoded by genes in the retinoic acid expressed transcript (*RAET1*) gene family (official HUGO nomenclature) encoded on chromosome 6q24.2-q25.3 and discovered by genomic mining. Whereas *RAET1F*, *RAET1J*, *RAET1K*, and *RAET1M* are pseudogenes, other *RAET1* genes give rise to ULBP1 (RAET1I), ULBP2 (RAET1H), ULBP3 (RAET1N), ULBP4 (RAET1E), ULBP5 (RAET1G), and ULBP6 (RAET1L), some of which have been extensively studied as ligands for NKG2D.[495–498] MICA, MICB, ULBP4, and ULBP5 are considered to be transmembrane proteins whereas the other RAET1 proteins are GPI-linked.[499]

Mouse NKG2D ligands were discovered with soluble NKG2D that was used for expression cloning.[82,83] Two types of ligands were originally defined: the minor histocompatiblity antigen H60 and members of the retinoic acid early inducible gene-1 (RAE-1) family. It is now clear that the mouse NKG2D ligands are the H-60 family, consisting of H60a, b, and c, the RAE-1 family, consisting of RAE-1α, β, γ, δ, and ε (also known as Raet1a-e), and murine ULBP-like transcript (MULT1).[82,83,500–502] There are strain-specific differences in ligand expression. For example, BALB/c mice express H60a, RAE-1α, β, and γ, whereas C57BL/6 mice do not express these molecules and express RAE-1δ and ε.[503] In addition, there are allelic forms of NKG2D ligands (eg, 80 different alleles of MICA and 33 alleles of MICB [hla.alleles.org/classo.html]), but these have not been fully characterized in humans (or mice).

Where studied, all NKG2D ligands have distant amino acid similarity to MHC-I, although they share only about ~25% amino acid identity with each other. Within a family, however, they may be much more closely related (up to 90% identity). None of the NKG2D ligands associates with β2m or binds peptides.[504–507] Many contain only the α1/α2 platforms and many are GPI-linked to the plasma membrane. The ligands display binding to NKG2D in two ways based on affinity.[501,502,504,508,509] For example, RAE1α, β, γ, and δ, and H60b and c demonstrate low-affinity interactions with mouse NKG2D, similar to MICA to human NKG2D (K_D = ~300 to 8700 nM). In contrast, RAE1ε (also described as RAE1B6),[509] H60a and MULT1 show a much higher affinity interaction (K_D = 6 to 30 nM). Thus, closely related molecules within a family may display wide disparity in affinities whereas distantly related molecules can share high affinity with NKG2D.

Structural studies at 2.6 to 3.5 Å resolution indicate that the NKG2D ligands have MHC-I–like folds, though the "peptide-binding cleft" is closed.[504,505,510] NKG2D binds its ligands more analogous to TCR docking on MHC and unlike Ly49 recognition (see Figs. 17.4 and 17.5), despite the relationship of NKG2D and Ly49 receptors as NKC-encoded, lectin-like homodimers that bind MHC-related molecules.[504,510,511] Indeed, NKG2D interactions with its ligands are much more aligned with CD94/NKG2A recognition of HLA-E, as described previously. Moreover, NKG2D uses largely nonoverlapping patches to engage a similar orthogonal footprint on its disparate ligands. Interestingly, the putative immunoevasion molecule, UL16, binds MICB in essentially the same manner as NKG2D is predicted to bind, even though UL16 has a different three-stranded β-sheet structure.[512] Additional structures of NKG2D complexed with other ligands should yield additional insight as to how NKG2D can bind a panoply of distantly related ligands with varying affinities.

NKG2D function has been described in the "induced-self" model (see Fig. 17.2E) because expression of its ligands can be inducible and can override inhibitory influences of MHC-I.[513–515] In many cases, low basal transcriptional levels are markedly upregulated in pathologic conditions. For example, MICA and MICB expression is markedly enhanced on epithelial tissues in inflammatory bowel disease.[516] Whereas this notion was initially thought to be related to heat shock elements in MICA promoter, recent detailed studies indicate that NKG2D ligand transcription in some cells is not affected by heat shock or hypoxia in vitro.[517] Instead, transcription of NKG2D ligands can be induced by several other stimuli. For example, DNA damage from ionizing radiation or chemotherapy agents results in upregulation of human and mouse NKG2D ligand transcripts and concomitant surface protein expression.[517] This process was dependent on activation of the ataxia telangiectasia, mutated (ATM), and ATM- and Rad3 (ATR)-related pathways. Interestingly, several micro-ribonucleic acids (miRNAs) can regulate MICA and MICB expression, and they are decreased following heat shock, allowing upregulation of MICA and MICB.[518] On the other hand, Dicer knockdown also results in a DNA damage response that results

in enhanced MICA and MICB expression.[519] Regardless, NKG2D ligand expression due to genotoxic responses may be relevant to chemotherapy effects in cancer, such as multiple myeloma.[520]

Other external stimuli, such as phorbol ester, retinoic acid, cytokines, and TLR stimulation, can induce NKG2D ligand expression on mouse and human cells.[500,521,522] The phorbol ester effect is regulated by the transcription factor JunB[523] and retinoic acid stimulation was the impetus for original identification of the RAE-1 family.[524] Cytokines can also regulate NKG2D ligands. For example, IFNγ can downregulate transcripts for H60a expression on tumor cells and alter NK-cell susceptibility.[525] For MICA, the IFNγ effect is mediated through miRNAs.[526] Interestingly, TLR-induced primarily MICA and not MICB, through pathways dependent on ATM, ATR, and miRNAs.[522] Viral infection can also induce NKG2D ligands,[527] perhaps not surprisingly because viruses target NKG2D and its ligands (described in the following). For example, murine CMV (MCMV) infection induced RAE-1 mRNA and surface expression within 18 hours. This effect was independent of the DNA damage response but required PI3K activation.[527] However, PI3K activation alone was insufficient to induce ligand expression, suggesting that additional signals are required for NKG2D ligand expression by viral infections and perhaps other stimuli.

For other NKG2D ligands, transcripts are constitutively expressed in a wide variety of tissues[495,501]; posttranslational modifications alter surface protein expression levels. For example, mRNA for MULT1 is widely expressed in normal tissues[501] and MULT1 surface expression is regulated by ubiquitination.[528] MULT1 has a long cytoplasmic domain, unlike most other NKG2D ligands, which are GPI-linked. Under normal circumstances, MULT1 is ubiquitinated on its cytoplasmic Lys residues and is targeted for degradation. However, cellular stress, such as heat shock or ultraviolet irradiation, reduced its ubiquitination and allowed surface expression. In particular, MULT1 expression is regulated by the E3 ubiquitin ligases, membrane-associated RING-CH (MARCH) 4 and membrane-associated MARCH 9.[529] A human virus, Kaposi sarcoma–associated herpesvirus (KSHV), exploits this pathway to avoid NK-cell attack (detailed in the following).

Despite the nearly universal acceptance of the induced-self model for NKG2D function, it is not clear if this hypothesis is applicable to all of its ligands.[530,531] It remains possible that constitutive expression or affinity of some NKG2D ligands may be too low to permit NKG2D activation to override MHC-I–dependent and –independent inhibitory receptors. Continued analysis at the protein level is anticipated, as well as study of NKG2D ligands in specific tissues, exemplied by analysis of H60c in the skin where it is selectively expressed and can also costimulate dendritic epidermal T cells.[532]

On the other hand, chronic exposure to membrane-bound or soluble NKG2D ligands results in downregulation of NKG2D expression and lower functional responsiveness.[85,533–535] Patients with tumors expressing MIC frequently contain soluble MIC in their peripheral blood, presumably as a result of proteolytic cleavage of membrane-expressed ligands,[533,536] though the enzyme required is unclear, and the process apparently requires palmitoylation of MICA.[537] Mice Tg for NKG2D ligands show impotent NKG2D responses,[534,538] a topic better discussed subsequently in the context of NK cell tolerance and education. On the other hand, acute upregulation of an NKG2D ligand alone can rapidly induce immune responses[539] (albeit effects not examined for NK cells). Taken together, these findings may explain why tumors frequently express NKG2D ligands that would otherwise enhance their susceptibility to NK-cell attack, supporting a role for NKG2D in tumor surveillance and also the general concept that NKG2D-mediated activation is balanced between acute, induced-self, and chronic expression of its ligands.

Additional studies support a role for NKG2D in tumor surveillance. For example, mice are more sensitive to developing methylcholanthrene-induced fibrosacromas when NKG2D is neutralized by chronic anti-NKG2D mAb administration[86] or targeted deletion.[540] Moreover, mice lacking γδT cells are more susceptible to carcinogenesis apparently due to an NKG2D-dependent effect.[500] IFNγ is a known host mediator that shapes the tumor phenotypes in a broader process known as "immunoediting,"[541,542] and IFNγ also mediates downregulation of H60 expression on tumors.[525] Thus, NKG2D and its ligands are important in the host response (or lack thereof) to tumors.

A role for NKG2D in antiviral responses is indicated by studies that show that viruses use different strategies to interfere with ligand recognition by NKG2D. This was first noted when the HCMV protein UL16 was found to bind ULBPs.[495] In infected cells, UL16 retains some (MICB, ULBP1, and ULBP2) but not all NKG2D ligands in the endoplasmic reticulum and cis-Golgi, preventing their expression on the cell surface and protecting from NK cell lysis.[543–545] HCMV also encodes UL142, which retains certain alleles of MICA in the cis-Golgi.[546] In mice, MCMV encodes four molecules that downregulate expression of all NKG2D ligands. gp40 from the *m152* open reading frame (ORF) downregulates all five RAE-1 ligands but has no effect on H60 or MULT1.[503,547] H60 is downregulated by the product of the *m155* ORF at a post-Golgi level, perhaps by targeting H60 for proteasomal degradation[548,549] and MULT1 expression is affected by *m145*.[550] The herpes virus Fc receptor (fcr-1), the product of the *m138* ORF, targets RAE-1ε, H60, and MULT1.[551,552] Interestingly, KSHV encodes an E3 ligase, termed K5, that can downregulate MICA and MICB expression.[553] This effect was due to ubiquitinated internalization of MICA, but not degradation, and protected cells from NK-cell cytotoxicity, suggesting that KSHV targets a normal pathway regulating NKG2D ligand expression. HCMV and other herpes viruses (KSHV, Epstein-Barr virus) encode miRNAs that affect MICA and/or MICB expression.[554,555] Non–herpes viruses also target the NKG2D pathway; adenovirus E3/19K sequesters MICA and MICB in the endoplastic reticulum,[556] whereas the orthopoxviruses, cowpox, and monkeypox viruses encode a secreted, high-affinity NKG2D ligand that antagonizes NKG2D recognition and activation.[557] Thus, the multitude of viral strategies that affect NKG2D recognition

strongly suggests that NKG2D plays an important role in the host response to viral infections.

Surprisingly, an NKG2D knockout mouse displayed enhanced resistance to MCMV infections.[87] This mouse also displayed modest changes in NK-cell development with faster NK-cell maturation that were not demonstrated in another NKG2D knockout,[540] even though both were generated directly in C57BL/6-derived embryonic stem cells. A subsequent retargeting of the *Klrk1* locus recapitulated the enhanced resistance to MCMV,[558] which for the moment is at odds with viral neutralization of NKG2D.

Finally, NKG2D may play a role in autoimmune disorders. In autoimmune type I diabetes mellitus (TIDM), MICA polymorphisms are reportedly associated with increased risk,[559] but *MICA* is closely linked with *HLA*, which clearly imparts significant risk so additional analysis of large patient cohorts is needed to segregate the *MICA* effect from that of *HLA* alleles in TIDM or any other HLA-associated autoimmune disease.[560] Nonetheless, NKG2D ligands are expressed in the prediabetic NOD mouse pancreas and anti-NKG2D blockade prevents TIDM.[561] In human patients with inflammatory syndromes, such as rheumatoid arthritis, Wegener granulomatosis, and unstable angina, there is an unusual population of CD4+ CD28– NKG2D+ T cells that is expanded.[562–564] NKG2D can provide a costimulatory signal for T cells, at least for CD4+ CD28– T cells in rheumatoid arthritis and rheumatoid arthritis synovium expresses NKG2D ligands.[84,489] IL-15 induces NKG2D expression on intestinal epithelial T-lymphocytes that then display a LAK cell–like promiscuous killing capacity against enterocytes which upregulate NKG2D ligands from gliadin exposure, suggesting that NKG2D may play a pathogenic role in celiac sprue.[36,565,566] On the other hand, others have postulated that CD4+ NKG2D+ T cells may be normally immunosuppressive as they are inversely correlated with disease activity in patients with systemic lupus erythematosus.[567] Thus, NKG2D may play a pathogenic role, albeit somewhat unclear, in several autoimmune disorders in humans and mice.

Natural Killer Gene Complex–encoded Lectin-like Receptors Recognize Natural Killer Gene Complex–encoded Lectin-like Ligands

First identified by functional studies in the rat, Nkrp1 (Klrb1) molecules belong to a family of lectin-like, disulfide-linked homodimers with type II orientation encoded in the mouse and rat NKC[71,255,330,568–571] (see Fig. 17.3). Expression is relatively selective for NK cells, although Nkrp1 molecules are also expressed by NKT cells in rats and mice.[572,573] There is only a single gene (*NKRP1A*, CD161) in humans that is expressed on a subpopulation of NK cells.[574] The continuing allure of the Nkrp1 family stems from observations that NK1.1 (the most widely known specific serologic marker of NK cells) is encoded by *Nkpr1c* (*Klrb1c*) in C57BL/6 mice,[71] Nkrp1 receptors are conserved, and they have interesting genetics with respect to their ligands.[575]

Initial functional studies indicated that rodent Nkrp1 molecules can activate NK cells through redirected lysis,[32,571,576–578] which can be prevented by inhibitory Ly49 receptor engagement.[140] Mouse Nkrp1c (NK1.1) is functionally associated with FcεRIγ, although its deficiency curiously does not affect NK1.1 expression.[579] An Nkrp1a loss mutant of rat RNK-16 cells failed to kill certain targets; transfection restored killing capacity, suggesting that rat Nkrp1a is an activation receptor specific for target determinants.[580] Thus, Nkrp1 molecules were among the first described NK-cell–specific activation receptors though inhibitory forms were later described.

Inasmuch as Nkrp1 molecules are homologous to C-type lectins, the ligands for Nkrp1 molecules were initially presumed to be carbohydrates but Nkpr1 molecules lack residues for coordinate binding of calcium that is required for authentic C-type lectin recognition of carbohydrates.[222] While the ligands for Nkrp1c have not yet been identified, Nkrp1f recognizes C-type lectin related g (Clrg, also known as Clec2i, Dcl1).[445,581–583] Nkrp1f is presumed to be an activation receptor because it has a charged transmembrane residue and no cytoplasmic signaling motifs. The inhibitory receptor, Nkrp1d, is expressed on all NK cells in C57BL/6 mice and is specific for Clrb (Clec2d; osteoclast inhibitory lectin, Ocil). Thus, the Nkrp1 family is an MHC-independent system that is presumably involved in self-tolerance and is the first example of a lectin-like receptor recognizing a lectin-like ligand unlike MHC-like ligands for other NKC-encoded receptors.

Genome sequence analysis indicates that *Nkrp1d* in C57BL/6 mice is represented by *Nkrp1b* in other strains.[75,76,569,584] The Nkrp1b molecule from SJL and SW mice was discovered to be reactive with the anti-NK1.1 mAb, highlighting the close similarities of these molecules and serologic cross-reactivity. Whereas the older literature suggested that there are also strain differences in transcript expression with markedly lower expression in BALB/c NK cells,[585] more recent data demonstrate abundant expression of Nkrp1 transcripts.[584] Moreover, the BALB/c allele of Nkpr1b also reacts with Clrb, indicating conserved specificity and function.

The Clr molecules belong to an NKC-encoded family with type II orientation and C-type lectin homology.[581] They are most closely related to the CD69 molecule encoded by an adjacent gene. In C57BL/6 mice, seven Clr genes have been identified at the genomic level. RT-PCR analysis indicates that *Clrb* is broadly expressed, whereas *Clrg* and *Clrf* genes are present in restricted and nonoverlapping tissues, including NK cells, and *Clra* and *Clrc* transcripts have not yet been identified. *Clre*, a probable pseudogene, has numerous stop codons in its expected open reading frame. Genomic analysis indicates the existence of a rat *Clr* family,[570] whereas in humans, three genes, *LLT1*,[586] *AICL*,[587] and *DCAL-1*[588] are localized next to CD69 and are related to the Clr family of genes.

Human NKRP1A binds LLT1, a functional homolog of mouse Clr.[589,590] Moreover, activation-induced C-type lectin (AICL CLEC2B) is the ligand for the NK-cell receptor activation receptor, NKp80 (KLRF1), which is also encoded in the NKC but is absent in rodents.[591–593] Finally, CLEC2A (keratinocyte-associated C-type lectin, KACL) is primarily expressed in the skin and is recognized by another NK-cell activation receptor, termed NKp65 (KLRF2).[594] All of these

receptors and their ligands are lectin-like molecules encoded in the human NKC.

The genetics of the *Nkrp1* and *Clr* loci is especially interesting from several viewpoints. 1) These loci are co-mingled in the NKC, from rodents to humans[445,570,575,584,589,590] (see Fig. 17.3). 2) In mice, there is limited allelic polymorphism, with conservation of gene order and content, despite genetic proximity to the highly polymorphic *Ly49* cluster.[445,584,595] For example, compare the conservation of the Nkrp1 gene cluster with polymorphism of the Ly49 cluster in C57BL/6 and 129 strain mice.[227,257,260,445,595] 3) At the individual gene level, *Nkpr1* alleles appear to be much less divergent than the corresponding *Ly49* alleles in the same inbred mouse strains.[257,445,584,595] 4) The *Nkpr1-Clr* interval of the NKC appears to be genetically protected with suppression of recombination.[596,597] Genetic linkage of Nkrp1 and its ligands thus resembles the tight genetic linkage of receptor and ligand genes and recombinational suppression of the self-incompatibility loci in plants to prevent self-fertilization and related mating loci in other species.[598,599] Furthermore, the coevolution of such linked genes for receptors and ligands also represents an interesting issue in evolutionary biology because reciprocal mutations in both receptor and ligand genes are simultaneously needed to generate new specificities.[598] Nevertheless, the genetic pressure to conserve the *Nkrp1-Clr* gene order and coding sequences may therefore reflect a critical role for Nkrp1 and Clr molecules in innate immune cell interactions and functions.[575]

While the in vivo role of Nkrp1 and Clr molecules is incompletely understood, the best evidence for their functional importance comes from studies in rats. Rat CMV encodes RCTL (rat CMV C type lectin-like), which closely resembles rat Clrb and regulates its expression on infected cells.[600] RCTL interacts with the Nkrp1b inhibitory receptor and inhibits NK cell killing of infected cells. An RCTL loss mutant rat CMV is attenuated in vivo in an NK-cell–dependent manner. These studies, indicating that viruses encode decoy ligands for Nkrp1 receptors, support the importance of Nkpr1-Clr interactions in immune responses.

2B4, CD2, and Signaling Lymphocytic Activation Molecule Family of Receptors

The 2B4 (CD244, SLAMF4) molecule was originally identified on mouse NK cells with a mAb that perturbed mouse NK-cell function.[601] 2B4 is a type I integral membrane protein that belongs to the family of Ig-like molecules, including signaling lymphocytic activation molecule (SLAM) (SLAMF4, CD150), NK, T, and B cell antigen (NTBA, also known as SLAMF6 or Ly108), Ly9 (SLAMF3, CD229), CD84 (SLAMF5), and CD2-like receptor activating cytotoxic cells (CRACCs; SLAMF7, CD319).[602] Although these receptors may be broadly expressed, 2B4, NTBA, Ly9, CD84, and CRACC are expressed on NK cells. NTBA, Ly9, CD84, and CRACC are involved in homophilic interactions whereas 2B4 recognizes CD48, a GPI-linked molecule expressed on hematopoietic cells.[603,604] CD48 itself is also recognized by CD2, albeit at a ninefold lower affinity than by 2B4 (K_d = ~16 μM). Anti-CD2 mAbs can stimulate NK cells in the redirected lysis assay[605] and granule exocytosis,[606] but CD2– NK cells can still mediate natural killing.[9] The cytoplasmic domains of SLAM, 2B4, NTBA, Ly9, CD84, and CRACC contain a motif with sequence similarly to the ITIM, termed the immunoreceptor tyrosine-based switch motif (ITSM) consisting of TxYxxV/I consensus sequence.[607] The ITSMs allow interactions with a signaling adapter, SLAM-associated protein (SAP, also known as SH2D1A). The importance of SAP and its associated receptors is highlighted by the X-linked lymphoproliferative (XLP) syndrome, a human immunodeficiency involving abnormal proliferation of T and B cells during Epstein-Barr virus infections due to mutations in SAP.[608]

SAP is related to Ewing sarcoma–associated transcript (EAT2, also known as SH2D1B1) and EAT2-related transducer (ERT, also known as SH2D1B2), which is present in rodents and only expressed in NK cells.[604] SAP and the SAP-related molecules contain a single SH2 domain for interaction with the ITSMs of presumably all SLAM family members except CRACC.[609–613] Instead, CRACC recruits EAT2, which functionally substitutes for SAP.[612] Subsequently, the SAP-related proteins can recruit a wide variety of downstream signaling molecules including Fyn, a Src-family tyrosine kinase, and tyrosine phosphatases, inositol phosphatases, and adaptor molecules.[614]

The complexities of this receptor-ligand signaling pathway are evident from the previous description. Receptors have overlapping ligand specificities; they recruit different adaptors that in turn can recruit downstream signaling molecules, even those with opposing functions. In this regard, functional studies of SLAM family molecules on NK cells have often been ambiguous, often depending on the experimental approach.[602] For example, 2B4 cross-linking with mAb can both stimulate as well as inhibit mouse NK cells,[601] whereas a 2B4-deficient mouse primarily displays effects consistent with 2B4 being primarily an inhibitory receptor.[615] However, the inhibitory effect of 2B4 is more apparent in mice than humans.[604] Some of these outcomes may depend on spatial distribution, 2B4 isoforms, or differential recruitment of SAP or its related molecules.[602] Further analysis should enlighten NK-cell function and signaling because 2B4 and related receptors demonstrate MHC-independent regulation of NK cells, and mediate inhibition and activation in a functionally distinct manner from the MHC-specific inhibitory receptors and ITAM-signaling chain associated receptors, respectively.

Natural Cytotoxicity Receptors

A series of mAbs that redirected lysis of human NK cell clones lacking KIRs led to the identification of the "natural cytotoxicity receptors" (NCRs), NKp46 (NCR1, CD335), NKp44 (NCR2, CD336), and NKp30 (NCR3, CD337).[616–620] These molecules are selectively expressed on NK cells, though NKp44 is expressed only upon activation. Whereas NKp46 is encoded in the LRC (see Fig. 17.3), NKp44 and NKp30 are encoded in the class III region of the MHC on human chromosome 6.[621,622] cDNA cloning revealed that they are type I integral proteins with one (NKp30, NKp44) or two (NKp46) Ig-like extracellular domains.

They contain charged transmembrane residues for association with ITAM-signaling chains (ie, ζγ heterodimers (NKp46, NKp30) or DAP12 (NKp44). In the mouse, only the gene for NKp46 is present in the syntenic region of chromosome 7 with the genes for other NCRs being absent (NKp44) or a pseudogene (NKp30).[623] The NCRs appear to play a role in cytotoxicity against tumors of varying origins because anti-NCR antibodies block target killing.[624] A mouse NKp46-Ig fusion protein binds RMA-S targets and deficiency of NKp46 leads to impaired in vivo clearance of RMA-S cells.[93] Interestingly, human NCRs apparently recognize mouse tumors and vice versa, suggesting conservation of these receptor-ligand pairs across species but identity of their target ligands were elusive,[624] until recently for NKp30 and NKp46.

In functional and structural studies, NKp30 clearly recognizes B7-H6, a member of the CD28 family that also includes CTLA-4 and PD-1.[625,626] B7-H6 is not expressed normally, is found on tumor cells, and sensitizes targets to NKp30-dependent cytotoxicity by NK cells. In a 2.0 Å structure of NKp30 complexed to B7-H6, NKp30 engages its ligand in an antibody-like manner distinct from the way other receptors bind B7 family molecules. Other potential NKp30 ligands include pp65 of HCMV, though it is a tegument protein and not expressed on the plasma membrane of infected cells.[627] HLA-B–associated transcript 3 (BAT3) was also proposed, but it is a nuclear protein that is released with DNA damage or endoplasmic reticulum stress.[628] Finally, NKp30 reportedly binds poxviral hemagglutinin independent of B7-H6 and BAT3.[629] Nonetheless, at least one ligand is now well characterized for NKp30.

Human NKp46 appears to recognize influenza hemagglutinin on infected cells.[629,630] The interaction is dependent on sialic acid residues on oligosaccharides on NKp46 itself,[630] but this specificity is difficult to explain due to the ubiquitous expression of sialylated saccharides. NKp46 and NKp30 may recognize heparan sulfate proteoglycans on their cellular targets, though this is also controversial.[631,632] Nevertheless, NKp46-knockin (GFP)/knockout mice are susceptible to influenza, consistent with a role for NKp46 in defense against influenza,[93] albeit possibly in an indirect manner.[633] These studies may provide important clues to understanding of a receptor (NKp46) conserved in humans and mice.

NKp46 Tg mice have been proposed to be useful for NK-cell analysis.[95] These mice are Tg for a construct consisting of 400 bp from the human NKp46 promoter driving expression of enhanced GFP and the human diptheria toxin receptor. However, NKp46+ cells in the gut may be derived from a non–NK-cell lineage.

Human NK-22 cells were identified in the gut as being CD3− CD56+ NKp44+ cells that produce IL-22 but not IL-17 upon stimulation with IL-23.[88] In the mouse, a similar functional population producing IL-22 was identified among NKp46+ cells and to a lesser degree, among NK1.1+ cells.[89–91,634] Immature human NK cells in secondary lymphoid tissue and the uterus may produce IL-22.[635,636] However, other reports indicate that NK-22 cells are more closely related to lymphoid tissue inducer (LTi) cells.[634,637–639] Thus, there may be heterogeneity among IL-22–producing NKp46+ cells.

Other Activation Receptors

Several other NK-cell–expressed molecules can activate cytolysis. For example, mAbs against mouse CD69 and Ly-6 and rat gp42 can trigger killing.[32,33] CD69 is encoded in the NKC and is structurally related to other NKC-encoded receptors. Interestingly, CD69 expression is upregulated upon stimulation,[322] and its expression is not confined to NK cells.[640] CD69 is functionally active on a large variety of hematopoietic cells when cross-linked by anti-CD69 mAbs. Its ligand is unknown, but it regulates the function of the sphingosine 1-phosphate receptor-1 through a membrane interaction.[641] Ly-6 belongs to a large family of small (15 to 18 kDa) GPI-anchored molecules that can activate lymphocytes when cross-linked.[642,643] Rat gp42 is a GPI-anchored protein with two Ig-like domains that was originally identified on IL-2–activated NK cells and the rat RNK-16 NK cell line.[33] Anti-gp42 can activate RNK-16 but not IL-2-activated NK cells. However, CD69, Ly-6, and gp42 are not expressed on freshly isolated NK cells and are expressed only after activation through other pathways; they are therefore not involved in triggering natural killing by freshly isolated NK cells. Although their physiological role is unknown, their activation potential and enhanced killing by IL-2–activated NK cells suggest that these molecules may contribute to this phenotype.

Receptors Involved in Recognition of Epithelial Tissues

NK cells possess receptors that are specific for ligands expressed at cell-cell junctions in epithelial tissues. Interestingly, ligands, such as cadherins, carcinoembryonic antigen (CEA)-related adhesion molecules (CEACAMs), nectins, and nectin-like proteins (necls), are involved in forming adherens junctions and are engaged in homotypic or heterotypic interactions, and thus, are not normally exposed.[644] KLRG1 (also known as mast cell–associated function antigen, MAFA) is a lectin-like receptor with a single cytoplasmic ITIM.[645–647] Unlike human *KLRG1*, mouse *Klrg1* resides relatively distant and centromeric from the rest of the NKC, consistent with gene duplication and chromosomal inversion events. First discovered on rat mast cells, it has a broader distribution in human and mouse, including NK and T cells but not mast cells. Expression of Klrg1 on NK cells is downregulated in MHC-I–deficient mice, unlike the Ly49s that are modestly upregulated, but no MHC binding has been observed for Klrg1.[648] Instead, mouse Klrg1 binds three of the seven "classical" cadherins, E-, N-, and R-cadherin, leading to inhibition of NK lysis.[649,650] Biophysical studies show the K_D = 120 mM for mouse KLRG1-mouse E-caherin.[651] The structure of KLRG1 at 1.8 Å resolution revealed a typical lectin-like domain for KLRG1, which binds E-cadherin at a site distinct from where the integrin $a_E b_7$ (CD103) binds E-cadherin. A KLRG1-deficient mouse demonstrates that it is dispensable for NK- and T-cell differentiation and antiviral responses, but it has not been

exhaustively studied, especially for epithelial responses.[652] Human CEACAM1 (CD66a) contains a cytoplasmic ITIM and can directly bind CEA, thereby potentially regulating NK-cell activities in human MHC-I–deficient patients and during pregnancy.[653–655] Mouse NK cells also express CEACAM1.[656] Inasmuch as CEACAM1 binds homophilic and heterophilic ligands expressed on epithelial and other cells,[657] NK cells thus express several inhibitory receptors for ligands normally expressed on epithelial cells.

NK cells also express cell-cell adhesion Ig-like receptors for molecules located at the adherens junction (ie, nectins and necls).[658,659] Specifically, they express CD226 (DNAM-1, DNAX accessory molecule-1) that recognizes necl-5 (CD155, poliovirus receptor, PVR) and nectin-2 (CD112, PVRL2).[660] NK cells also express CD96 (Tactile, T-cell activation, increased late expression) that binds necl-5 but not nectin-2, and class I-restricted T-cell–associated molecule (CRTAM), a receptor that recognizes necl-2.[661–663] DNAM-1 associates with lymphocyte function–associated antigen (LFA-1) and regulates its capacity to bind its ligand, ICAM-1.[660,664] In addition, DNAM-1 can recruit actin-binding proteins to form an adhesive complex with other cells. DNAM-1–deficient mice have defective NK and T cells, and fail to control tumors, both transferred and de novo carcinogen-induced.[665,666] Although these receptors can activate Src and other downstream pathways,[659] they are thought to function on NK cells as adhesion receptors that enhance cytotoxicity, rather than as primary activation receptors. Conversely, NK cells also express T-cell immunoglobulin and ITIM domain (TIGIT), which recognizes PVR and PVRL2 but not PVRL3, and inhibits NK-cell killing.[667,668]

These studies suggest that these receptors may affect different NK-cell functions as related to epithelial tissues.[644,649] For example, the inhibitory receptors may regulate NK-cell transmigration across an epithelial barrier or prevent NK-cell attack against normal tissues.[649,669] While the activation receptors could also affect NK-cell transmigration,[649,669,670] they also could be poised to attack cells that have disordered cell-cell junctions, such as tumors that typically lose cadherin expression and expose nectins and necls, potentially making them more susceptible to NK attack, consistent with an "exposed-self" model for NK-cell activation (see Fig. 17.2F, G). On the other hand, tumors may become resistant to NK cells by altering expression of these molecules. Current evidence provides some support to these complex scenarios that will require further investigation.[644]

Accessory Molecules

The role of accessory molecules in NK-cell activation has been difficult to address without knowledge of the "NK-cell (activation) receptor." Nevertheless, NK-cell cytotoxicity is critically dependent on classical accessory and adhesion molecules, such as LFA-1.[671,672] Insect cells expressing ICAM-1, a ligand for LFA-1, can be killed by human NK cells through an LFA-1–dependent process, suggesting that LFA-1 alone is sufficient to trigger killing.[673] LFA-1 cross-linking does not lead to granule polarization, suggesting that it may be insufficient for triggering the killing process by itself.[143] This issue is further complicated by the capacity of receptors like DNAM-1 to modulate LFA-1 association and function on NK cells.[660] Moreover, NK cells express multiple receptors capable of binding target ligands, with each receptor potentially affecting different downstream signaling pathways. When pairs of these receptors (eg, CD16, NKp46, NKG2D, 2B4, DNAM-1, or CD2) are cross-linked, synergistic NK-cell activation in terms of cytokine production and target killing can be seen for some but not all pairs.[674] However, this approach has not been used for the panoply of NK-cell receptors. Thus, how "accessory" molecules or other receptors contribute to each activation receptor function on NK cells remains to be systematically determined.

Ligands Recognized by Both Activation and Inhibitory Receptors

Evident from the previous discussion is the general concept that NK cells usually express both activation and inhibitory receptors simultaneously. Moreover, some of these receptors with opposing functions bind essentially identical ligands. For example, both activation and inhibitory receptors in the Ly49 and KIR families reportedly bind MHC-I molecules, and CD94/NKG2A and CD94/NKG2C bind HLA-E/Qa1. In general, where studied, the inhibitory receptors tend to bind ligands with higher affinities than their corresponding activation receptor counterpart, perhaps accounting for the common observation that inhibition tends to dominate over activation. However, the overall relevance of paired activation and inhibitory receptors to NK-cell immune responses remains to be elaborated.

SIGNAL TRANSDUCTION IN NATURAL KILLER CELLS

NK cells receive two basic types of external stimuli from cytokines and chemokines, and from target cell recognition. In general, their cytokine and chemokine responses are related to those found in other cells responding to the same pathways. However, as can be appreciated from the previous description of individual target recognition receptors, the pathways leading to target killing are complicated because some receptors are coupled to ITAM-containing signaling chains (CD3ζ, FcεRIγ, or DAP12). Indeed, some receptors use more than one of these signaling chains, which are generally thought to be equivalent but not dissected in detail. Other receptors, such as NKG2D (through DAP10), have Tyr motifs for recruitment of PI3K and Grb2. Still others (2B4 and related receptors) have ITSMs. Moreover, integrin signaling also affects NK-cell activation by targets, and it was reported that NKG2D signaling through DAP10 can affect IL15 responses and vice versa,[675] which highlights the possible cross-talk of signaling pathways more broadly in immune cells.[676] Finally, because individual NK cells can express (and use) multiple different receptors simultaneously, and some but not all work synergistically,[674] the outcomes of these activation pathways may reflect profound complexity, even without consideration of inhibitory receptor signaling events.[677]

The study of NK-cell signal transduction also comes with some caveats. Most studies have been performed on bulk populations of NK cells, NK cell clones, or in vitro adapted cell lines that may not be representative of pathways triggered in individual NK cells which may express only some but not all signaling molecules detected in the entire NK-cell population. When NK cells are triggered by target cells, there may be unknown stimulation through other receptors because unknown target ligands may inadvertently trigger or modulate functions of other NK-cell receptors. Finally, there may be species (human versus mouse) differences in signaling. Despite these complexities, themes have emerged in understanding of NK-cell signal transduction.

For the signal transduction pathways stimulated by NK-cell activation receptors coupled to ITAM-containing signaling chains, downstream events resemble those found in TCR and BCR signaling.[678] Activation receptor cross-linking leads to ITAM phosphorylation by Src family tyrosine kinases, recruitment and activation of Syk family tyrosine kinases, and subsequent downstream activation events. Inasmuch as TCR and BCR signaling is covered in detail elsewhere, we will highlight here notable differences with TCR and BCR signaling. 1) Individual NK cells may simultaneously express multiple activation receptors, each of which may associate with different ITAM-signaling chains that could be phosphorylated by different Src family tyrosine kinases and/or lead to different downstream signaling events. 2) NK cells express multiple Src kinases, including Lck, Fyn, Src, Yes, Lyn, and Fgr,[679] with redundancies in their contributions to ITAM phosphorylation. For example, Fyn is activated following Ly49D (DAP12) cross-linking but NK cells deficient in Fyn, Lck, or both still kill in a Ly49D-dependent manner.[680] 3) NK cells express both Syk family tyrosine kinases, ZAP-70, and Syk itself, whereas T and B cells express either, respectively, but not both. Deficiency of either ZAP-70, Syk, or both has only minimal effects on NK cell killing,[681] suggesting other pathways for transmitting NK activation signals. 4) NK cells express many adapter molecules found in T and B cells, but their contributions to NK signal transduction are less well defined. For example, SLP-76 and linker for activation of T cells are dispensable for NK-cell signaling, although they are both required for T-cell signaling.[682,683] 5) Different isoforms of signal transduction molecules are responsible for NK-cell activation. For example, mouse NK cells utilize phospholipase C-γ2 (PLCγ2) as a critical signaling mediator[684] more like B cells than T cells.[685] 6) In contrast to T and B cells, NK-cell signaling components are generally not required for normal NK-cell development. For example, NK cells are not deficient in number or maturation state in PLCγ2-deficient mice, unlike B cells, which require PLCγ2 for development.[684,685] Taken together, these findings highlight differences between NK-cell and T- and B-cell signaling.

Illustrating some of the aforementioned issues are studies on the Vav family of guanine nucleotide exchange factors, Vav1, Vav2, and Vav3, which are all expressed in mouse NK cells.[686] Vav2 and Vav3 are required for FcRγ and DAP12 signaling, whereas Vav1 is required for DAP10 signal transduction. Additionally, NK-cell number and differentiation are not apparently affected by Vav deficiencies even when they are required for NK-cell activation. In contrast, deficiencies in Vav family members lead to T- and B-cell development defects.[687] These observations also indicate the redundancies in NK-cell receptor signaling.

On the other hand, Vav1 appears to be central to human NK-cell activation by targets[688,689] even though the role of other Vav isoforms in human NK cells is less clear. Vav1 is also involved in macromolecular complexes with c-Cbl that are formed during NK-cell activation.[690] Interestingly, c-Cbl provides an inhibitory influence on NK-cell activation.[689] During NKG2D and 2B4 synergistic signaling, strong Vav1 signals override the c-Cbl effect to allow NK-cell activation, again placing Vav1 as a central player in human NK-cell activation.

Recruitment and activation of PI3K appears to be critical to NK-cell activation for target killing.[691,692] How PI3K is activated depends on the receptor and its proximal signal transduction events.[677] In the case of NKG2D, the YxxM motif in DAP10 is phosphorylated and recruits PI3K directly,[693] which appears to be sufficient to activate NK-cell killing in the absence of DAP12 or Syk family tyrosine kinases.[694] The pathway may be more complex in human NK cells where evidence suggests that DAP10 recruits a Grb2-Vav1 intermediate for activation.[491] For other activation receptors, Syk activation is upstream of PI3K[695] and may directly recruit PI3K.[696] PI3K in turn activates a mitogen activated protein kinase (MEK) for stimulation of extracellular signal-regulated kinase (ERK).[691] Ultimately, actin polymerization occurs, granules become polarized toward the target, and exocytosis occurs, resulting in target apoptosis, as discussed previously. Interestingly, in human NK cells, engagement of LFA-1 by ICAM-1 on insect cells was sufficient to induce granule polarization but not degranulation,[143,674] suggesting additional complexity regarding the signals required for polarization versus degranulation.

High-resolution microscopy has enabled visualization of events following NK-cell activation. Like CTLs, NK cells form discrete protein clusters at the site of contact with their targets, termed the immunological synapse,[697,698] though obviously the TCR is not involved. Following target contact, the NK immunological synapse (NKIS) is formed at the NK-target interface in discrete stages whereby receptor signaling, filamentous (F)-actin rearrangement, and polarization of granules occur.[699,700] CD2, F-actin, LFA-1, and Mac-1 accumulate in the peripheral supramolecular activation complex (pSMAC), whereas granules (perforin) and the activation receptor accumulate centrally (cSMAC).[701] Other peripheral supramolecular activation complex and centrally supramolecular activation complex components and patterns are found depending on whether or not the contacts lead to cytolysis.[698,702] With this basic outline of microscopic events, molecules required for NKIS formation and granule polarization are being dissected.[125,692,703–705]

Mechanism of Inhibition by Natural Killer–Cell Receptors

The now widely accepted view is that the NK-cell inhibitory receptor mechanism consists of ligand binding and receptor cross-linking followed by ITIM phosphorylation, and preferential recruitment of SHP-1, and that this mechanism

operates with both structural types of inhibitory receptors. A typical human KIR molecule has two ITIMs separated by ~24 residues. In contrast, Ly49A has only one ITIM per chain, but Ly49 molecules are normally expressed as homodimers. CD94 has a minimal cytoplasmic tail, but NKG2A has two ITIMs. Each ITIM can be phosphorylated upon receptor cross-linking (though difficult to visualize) or tyrosine phosphatase inhibition,[212,706–710] presumably by a Src family tyrosine kinase as in B cells,[711] although redundant expression and function of these kinases have precluded identification of a single kinase required for ITIM phosphorylation in NK cells. ITIM phosphorylation results in recruitment and activation of the intracellular tyrosine phosphatase, SH2-containing protein tyrosine phosphatase (SHP)-1 (also known as hematopoietic cell phosphatase (HCP), protein tyrosine phosphatase 1C (PTPIC), and protein-tyrosine phosphatase, nonreceptor-type, 6(PTPN6)).[212,706–708,712] Two ITIMs are required for sequential binding of the two SH2 domains in SHP-1.[710,713] The NK-cell MHC-specific inhibitory receptors preferentially recruit SHP-1 rather than SH2-containing inositol polyphosphate 5-phosphatase (SHIP), though they may occasionally bind SHP-2.[706,714,715] Inhibitory receptor engagement results in early KIR and SHP-1 recruitment to areas surrounded by LFA-1.[716] Moreover, early events in NK-cell activation are blocked by inhibitory receptors, such as formation of the NKIS.[716–718] On the other hand, KIR phosphorylation occurs within clusters at the NKIS, which may serve to focus inhibition on downstream targets,[719] such as Vav1, which is recruited into the mature synapse during NKG2D/DAP10 signaling.[704] Indeed, the downstream target of the ITIM-recruited tyrosine phosphatase appears to be Vav1 in human NK cells activated by targets.[688] Thus, the general consensus has long been that the inhibitory receptors recruit tyrosine phosphatases that dephosphorylate molecules in the activation receptor cascade, such as Vav1.

On the other hand, related ITIM-containing inhibitory receptors bind other effector molecules, such as Csk by LAIR-1 and LILRB1,[423,720] suppressor of cytokine signaling 3 (SOCS3) by Siglecs,[721] and SHIP by KLRG1[722] and FcγRIIB.[723] Even a KIR ITIM may recruit other molecules such as β-arrestin[724] and PI3K.[725] Morever, a SHIP-deficient mouse demonstrates abnormalities in NK-cell function and Ly49 receptor expression,[726] even though Ly49 receptors recruit SHP-1. The functional significance of these signaling effector molecules in NK-cell inhibition and the specificity for ITIM recruitment of selective molecules are poorly understood and is potentially related to the complexity of inhibitory receptor signaling.

Emerging data suggest that inhibitory receptor signaling may not be as simple as phosphatase recruitment to dephosphorylate proximal molecules in the activation pathway that then prevents all downstream signaling events. For example, inhibitory receptors efficiently blocked granule polarization but inefficiently prevented degranulation.[727] During ongoing NK-cell activation, KIR2DL2 engagement by photoactivated HLA-C ligand disrupted the NKIS but had little effect on ongoing calcium flux.[728] Thus, some but not all of the signaling events downstream of NK-cell activation receptors may be effectively regulated by the inhibitory receptors, directing future studies to selected aspects of NK-cell signal transduction.

Inhibitory signaling also induces other events. Normal human NK-cell activation by susceptible targets led to Tyr phosphorylation of Vav1 and its association with c-Cbl, which was also Tyr phosphorylated.[690] In turn, c-Cbl was associated with a signaling complex consisting of an adaptor protein (Crk, either CrkII or CrkL, depending on the cell), a scaffold protein (p130CAS, 130 kDa Crk-associated substrate), and C3G (Crk SH3 domain-binding guanine-nucleotide exchange factor). These c-Cbl complexes have the potential to signal a wide variety of cellular pathways including Rap1 GTPase activation, actin reorganization, cell adhesion, and mitogen-activated protein kinase activation,[729] which appear to be critical for NK killing. By contrast, ligand engagement of either KIR or CD94/NKG2A blocked the formation of Cbl-Crk-p130CAS-C3G complexes.[690] Moreover, ligand engagement of either KIR or CD94/NKG2A induced the association of the tyrosine kinase c-Abl with Crk, and Crk phosphorylation that was shown to be required for active dissociation of Crk from Cbl and for inhibition. Thus, these studies showed that inhibitory signaling ironically involved Tyr phosphorylation and disruption of macromolecular signaling complexes, which in turn, suggest that NK-cell activation (and inhibition) may be subject to more qualitative controls than previously recognized.

Another possible explanation for inhibitory signaling is related to the inhibitory influence that c-Cbl has on NK-cell activation[689] and other immune cells, such as T and B cells.[730] Although Cbl family molecules exhibit E3 ubiquitin ligase activity, and may exert their negative effects on lymphocyte signaling by enhancing degradation of signaling components,[731] there are as yet little data supporting this mechanistic role for Cbl in NK-cell activation.[689,690] Nonetheless, current information suggests additional aspects of NK-cell inhibitory receptor signaling are yet to be discovered.

Finally, Ly49 receptors on NK cells can acquire their cognate MHC-I ligands from surrounding cells, resulting in display of both molecules on the NK cells.[732,733] Broadly speaking, this effect is probably related to trogocytosis, a poorly understood phenomenon of intercellular transfer of surface molecules.[734] How much this contributes to *cis* effects on inhibitory receptor function and its physiological relevance require further evaluation.

NATURAL KILLER–CELL TOLERANCE

NK cells display potent effector functions that must be controlled to prevent inadvertent damage to normal tissues (ie, NK cells must demonstrate tolerance to self). Although the missing-self hypothesis provides a rationale and starting point for dissection of NK-cell tolerance, it has a number of caveats that need to be considered before delving into current understanding of this aspect of NK-cell biology.

Influence of Host Major Histocompatibility Complex–I Environment

The missing-self hypothesis implies that there should be overt NK-cell autoreactivity in MHC-I–deficient hosts, but this was not observed in humans or mice.[179–181,735–738] Instead,

NK cells from MHC-I–deficient mice demonstrate poor killing of MHC-I–deficient targets or rejection of MHC-I–deficient BM, even though they appear normal in number, tissue distribution, and expression of activation receptors. Another very difficult issue is related to hybrid resistance whereby host NK cells in an F_1 hybrid animal can reject BM grafts from either inbred parent.[739,740] It was difficult to understand how NK cells discriminate between cells expressing the full complement of self-MHC alleles versus those otherwise normal cells expressing only some self-MHC molecules. NK-cell–mediated rejection of MHC-I–sufficient BM grafts also depends on which host MHC-I allele is present.[741,742] Thus, NK cells are regulated by host MHC environment, not just by the target cell in effector responses.

The MHC-specific inhibitory receptors were likely to be involved in self-tolerance because they explain the influence of MHC expression on NK-cell effector functions against target cells. However, how these receptors are related to self-tolerance in vivo was a challenging issue. Several hypotheses were proposed. An individual NK cell can simultaneously express multiple inhibitory receptors but some may not recognize self-MHC. The "at least one receptor" model suggests tolerance is achieved as long as each NK cell expresses at least one receptor with self-MHC specificity.[389,743] There are changes in the repertoire of MHC-I–specific inhibitory receptors, depending on the MHC haplotype, but these differences are modest, regardless of whether the receptor is self-specific or not.[210,248,389,743,744] As determined by antibody reactivity, the expression level of an NK receptor on an individual NK cell decreases when the host expresses the MHC ligand for that receptor.[208,209,745] Functional analyses of NK cells with "downregulated" receptor expression suggest that such NK cells are more sensitive to small changes in MHC ligand expression on the target, as explained by the "receptor calibration" model.[744,746] However, these studies involved in vitro conditions that could alter their intrinsic functional capacities. Thus, several hypotheses based on the MHC-specific inhibitory receptors were proposed to account for NK-cell self-tolerance.

Also unexplained was the observation that NK cells were found in wild-type mice expressing none of the known self-MHC–specific inhibitory receptors. These cells were functionally "hyporesponsive," showing defective antiactivation receptor cross-linking and killing of NK-sensitive targets,[747] but it was possible that other, yet to be defined receptors were playing a role. Another issue was the appropriate pairing of polymorphic inhibitory receptors with their highly polymorphic cognate MHC ligands.[260,317] The genes for the receptors and their ligands are located on different chromosomes (ie, the receptor and ligand genes segregate independently). Thus, there must be mechanisms to provide NK cells with the appropriate inhibitory receptors with specificity for self-MHC because the appropriate pairs are not inherited together, unlike the closely linked *Nkpr1-Clr* gene pairs.[575]

The Licensing Hypothesis

Studies with target cell-free stimulation and single cell assays of NK-cell responsiveness revealed insight into NK-cell tolerance.[168,747,748] Freshly explanted, resting murine NK cells from MHC-I–deficient mice were functionally defective in triggering by immobilized antiactivation receptor antibodies.[168] Conversely, in wild-type mice, functional competence correlated with expression of a Ly49 inhibitory receptor for self-MHC-I.[168] CD94/NKG2 receptors appeared not to be relevant,[168] as confirmed by studies of a CD94-deficient mouse.[395] Particularly informative were studies with a single chain trimer MHC-I molecule, consisting of antigenic peptide-linker-β2m-linker-H2K^b as a single polypeptide that binds only Ly49C.[168] In Tg mice expressing only this MHC-I molecule, only Ly49C+ NK cells were functionally competent. Although crystallographic studies revealed two potential sites on MHC-I that could be recognized by Ly49 receptors, studies of Tg mice bearing mutant MHC molecules indicate that the Ly49 receptors recognize the same site on their MHC ligands (site 2) for both education and effector inhibition.[749] Thus, NK cells use their MHC-specific receptors interacting with self-MHC-I to become competent to be triggered through their activation receptors by (Fig. 17.6), an education process termed "licensing."

Despite initial confusion over the term licensing,[750] most investigators now concur that licensing or education by self-MHC–specific receptors results in fuctionally competent NK cells.[751] Moreover, human NK cells are also subjected to a similar process involving KIR and self-HLA ligands[752,753] that may also explain clinical studies relating KIR and HLA alleles and disease and even human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) control.[754,755] Such KIR-HLA relationships frequently involve pairs with high affinities and resolution of chronic infections[756] that are difficult to explain when only considering effector inhibitory function of the KIRs. Thus, licensing may be clinically relevant and may be applicable to other clinical uses of NK cells (see following discussion) because it is a second function of the NK-cell receptors for MHC.

Licensing leads to appropriate pairing of inhibitory receptors with self-MHC and strongly suggests that there are two types of self-tolerant NK cells (see Fig. 17.6).[750,757] Regardless of the MHC-I environment, licensed NK cells are tolerant because they have inhibitory receptors for self-MHC, the same receptors involved in licensing. Unlicensed NK cells are also tolerant because they are not functionally competent and have no need for inhibition by self-MHC under steady-state conditions. In hosts heterozygous for MHC alleles, each MHC allele could potentially license different NK-cell populations. This aspect of licensing is relevant to hybrid resistance because an (A × B)F_1 hybrid animal should have NK cells that are separately licensed on different MHC alleles.[750] F_1 hybrid NK cells that were licensed by MHC alleles from parent A should be inhibited by A alleles but not B alleles, and thus reject BM from parent B. The converse should also be true. In the F_1 animal itself, NK cells are licensed by either parental allele so all NK cells should be inhibited by normal tissues that codominantly express both MHC alleles. Licensing potentially explains how NK cells distinguish cells expressing the full complement of MHC-I from those expressing only some alleles.

Although initial studies on licensing were focused on only a few receptors and MHC alleles to demonstrate convincing effects, subsequent studies have demonstrated that

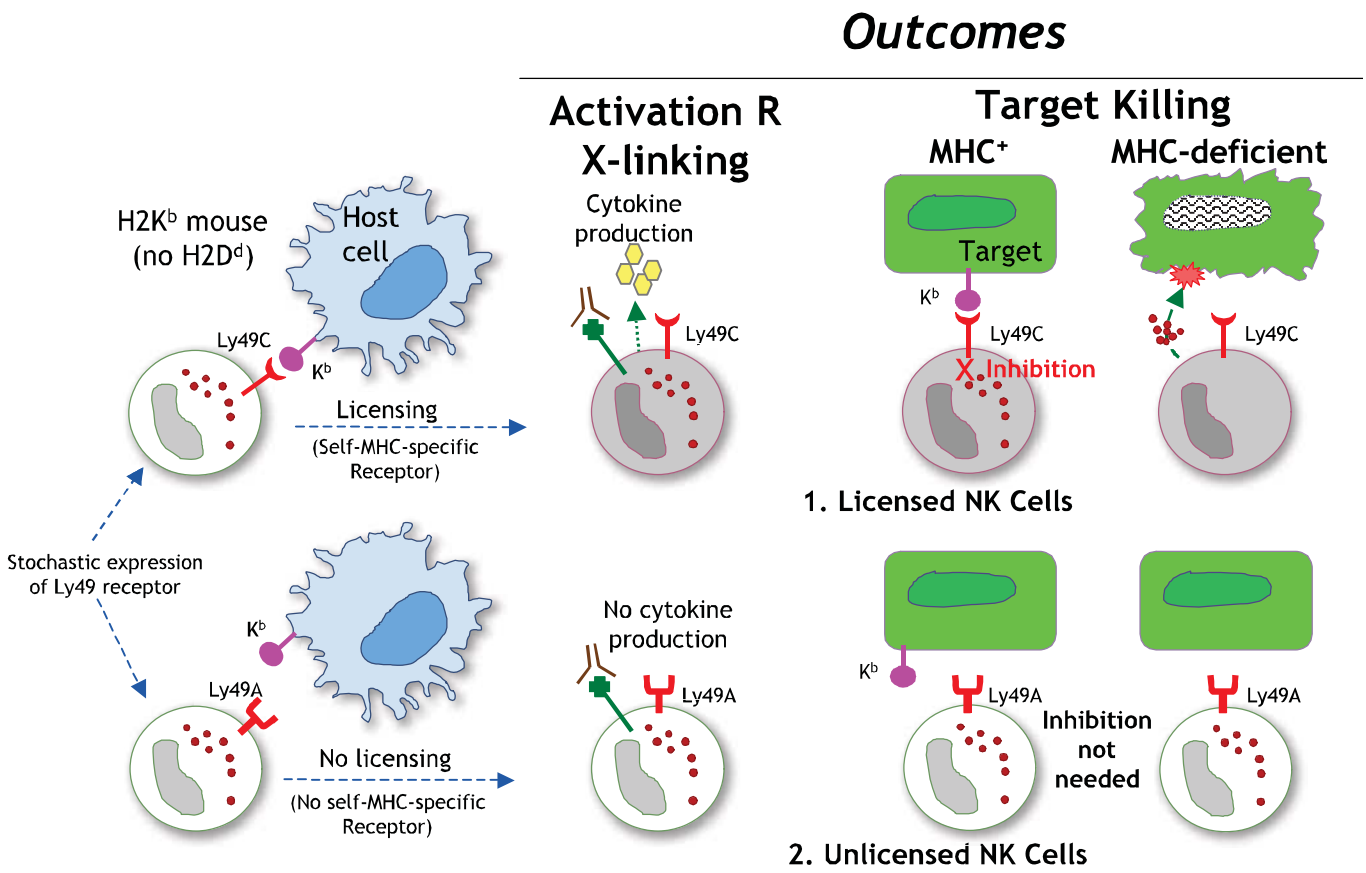


FIG. 17.6. Licensing of Natural Killer (NK) Cells by Host Major Histocompatibility Complex (MHC)-I. Depicted is the situation in a mouse expressing only H2K^b that is a ligand for Ly49C but not Ly49A. Cells expressing Ly49C therefore have a self-specific receptor, whereas those expressing Ly49A do not. Ly49C engagement by self-MHC-I results in a licensed NK cell that has functional competence to be triggered through its activation receptors. These cells can be inhibited by self-MHC through the same receptor that conferred licensing. Ly49A+ NK cells remain self-tolerant because they are unlicensed. For clarity, only one MHC allele and cells expressing one Ly49 receptor are shown. Activation receptors are also not shown for the target killing depiction. Normally, the host has multiple MHC alleles, each of which could license different NK cells, and individual NK cells express multiple Ly49s simultaneously. Each NK cell is likely to be licensed separately, potentially by different MHC alleles, and through different Ly49s. Modified from Elliott and Yokoyama.[750]

the licensing status of an individual NK cell is dependent on the Ly49 receptor, MHC allele, and the number of expressed self-MHC–specific Ly49 receptors.[219,758] For example, different MHC alleles appear to be more potent in licensing Ly49A+ NK cells, in a hierarchical manner.[219] The same hierarchy of MHC alleles was seen with Ly49A downregulation and inhibition of Ly49A+ NK cells in effector responses. An MHC allele was more potent at inhibition as compared to licensing, providing a margin of safety against NK-cell autoreactivity.[219,759] Interestingly, MHC heterozygosity was comparable to homozygosity with capacity of an MHC allele to license.[219] Studies of mice bearing one, two, or more MHC alleles also show similar effects.[758] These results have prompted a refinement of the licensing hypothesis (ie, the "tuning" or "rheostat" model) whereby the strength of inhibitory receptor engagement by self-MHC determines the degree to which an NK cell is capable of being activated.[750,760]

Where and with whom licensing occurs is currently unclear. While original studies suggested that licensing occurs during development in the BM,[168] adoptive transfer of otherwise unlicensed NK cells from an MHC-deficient host into an MHC-sufficient environment results in licensed donor NK cells.[761,762] The converse was also observed (ie, loss of function when wild-type NK cells were transferred into an MHC-deficient environment). These studies add to the discussion of whether an NK cell interacts with self-MHC in *trans* (on another cell) on in *cis* (on the same NK cell).[763] What is difficult to exclude is the possibility that NK cells may take up MHC-I from other cells via their MHC-specific receptors,[732,733] but the transfer studies indicate that the NK cell itself does not need to synthesize MHC-I. Thus, licensing may be a dynamic process in which NK cells constantly test the same site on their MHC-I ligands to simultaneously maintain functional competency and effector inhibition.

Although licensing is a positive outcome (ie, the acquisition of functional competence), it requires the ITIM of the self-specific Ly49 receptor to deliver signals that ultimately result in a licensed NK cell[168] (see Fig. 17.6). The nature of such signals is not yet known, and at least two qualitatively different models are being considered. The MHC-specific receptor could confer licensing in a positive way by delivery of signals that directly induce a differentiation process and

license NK cells, akin to a stimulatory receptor and also known as the "arming" hypothesis[764] In the second model, also known as the "disarming" hypothesis,[764] the MHC-specific receptors decrease the effect of a putative, as yet uncharacterized, self-specific activation receptor. If unimpeded by self-MHC-I, NK cells become hyporesponsive due to overstimulation through the activation receptor. This model is somewhat akin to T-cell anergy and places the self-MHC–specific receptor in a familiar light as an inhibitory receptor. Both models are similar to those previously proposed,[765] but engagement of the MHC-specific receptor with self-MHC is now known to be a required key step[168] and is common to both models. Also, the models are not mutually exclusive and either could be affected by coreceptors or adhesion molecules. Regardless, licensing may be explained by either the arming or disarming hypothesis.[750]

For the arming hypothesis, it is difficult to reconcile the involvement of the ITIM in the self-MHC specific receptor in licensing,[168] though recent analysis shows that inhibitory receptor signaling is more complex than previously recognized.[689,690] Recent studies also suggest that there are few differences in genes expressed by licensed verus unlicensed NK cells.[766] Instead, in licensed NK cells, the activation receptors appeared to be localized in nanodomains in the plasma membrane, whereas in unlicensed cells, the activation receptors were apparently confined to the actin meshwork.[766] Future studies will be needed to validate this correlation and how the self-MHC–specific receptors mediate these changes.

For the disarming model, studies on mice constitutively expressing activation receptor ligands by transgensis or retroviral transduction of hematopoietic stem cells have been informative.[534,538,767,768] In support of the disarming hypothesis, continuous engagement of NKG2D or Ly49H resulted in hypofunctional NK cells, akin to anergy. Indeed, m157 Tg mice could not resist MCMV infections normally, and the Ly49H+ NK-cell subset was selectively hyporesponsive. However, the anergic phenotype was unaffected by expression of a self-MHC–specific receptor.[767] Although it remains possible that receptor-ligand interactions that normally govern NK-cell self-tolerance were not well represented in these Tg mice, the current data nonetheless do not support the disarming hypothesis as an explanation for licensing and suggest that "anergy" may be a distinct tolerance mechanism for NK cells, perhaps analogous to separable tolerance mechanisms for T and B cells.[769]

In addition to bone marrow rejection, licensed NK cells may provide primary protection in viral infections and may enhance CD8+ T-cell responses.[770–772] On the other hand, unlicensed NK cells may gain functional competence by exposure to cytokines.[168] During MCMV infection, unlicensed NK cells (ie, cells without self-MHC–specific receptors) appear to control viral replication in both MHC-deficient and -sufficient mice.[773–775] Thus, the role of self-tolerant NK cells in immune responses requires additional study.

NATURAL KILLER–CELL DEVELOPMENT

Early evidence indicated that the complete phenotypic and functional maturation of NK cells occurs in the BM and requires an intact microenvironment because BM ablation or congenital BM defects lead to abnormal NK cells.[776–780] Indeed, certain aspects of NK-cell development are regulated by direct interactions between developing NK cells and stromal elements, such as interactions between membrane lymphotoxin-α (LTα)–expressing NK-cell precursors (NKPs) and LTα–responsive stromal cells that are necessary for normal development.[154,781] In vitro, NK cells can be generated from early hematopoietic cells in a cytokine cocktail consisting of stem cell factor (c-kit ligand), IL-7, flt-3 ligand, and IL-15.[782–789] Direct contact with stromal cells appears to be required for acquisition of Ly49 receptors by developing NK cells. Moreover, the Tyro3 family of receptors (Tyro3, Mer, Axl) on NK cells and their ligands (Gas6, protein S) on stromal cells are apparently necessary for expression of NK-cell receptors and functional differentiation in vitro and in vivo.[790,791] Thus, NK-cell development requires certain cytokines and direct stromal cell contact.

Although the general topic of NK-cell development is currently an active area of investigation, and is thus subject to future modifications, several major themes have emerged that will be summarized here. The earliest step involves the commitment of hematopoietic stem cells in the BM to the common lymphoid progenitor that can give rise to NK, T, and B cells, but not to myeloid cell lineages.[792,793] Mice deficient in various transcription factors, including Ikaros and PU.1, display severe defects in the development of all lymphoid cells including NK cells, while myeloid and erythroid lineages are less affected.[794–798] Thus, NK-cell development appears to share a common pathway with other lymphocytes, providing evidence that NK cells belong to the lymphocyte lineage.

Commitment to the NK-cell lineage from the common lymphoid progenitor (CLP) appears to involve an intermediary cell with T- and NK-cell potential (T/NK progenitor), perhaps reflecting the close resemblance of T- and NK-cell effector functions. Consistent with this bipotentiality, CD3ε and FcεRIγ Tg mice exhibit selective defects in both NK- and T-cell development.[799,800] Moreover, deficiencies in several genes, including transcription factors and IL-15,[54,801] affect development of NK-cell and certain T-cell subpopulations, particularly NKT cells and memory T cells. T/NK progenitor populations, including immature thymocytes, can give rise to T and/or NK cells but not to other lineages, depending on culture conditions, such as Notch signaling.[802–808] Interestingly, the transcription factor Bcl11b is required to maintain T-cell fate by apparently repressing NK-cell fate. Specifically, Bcl11b is required for T-cell specification,[809–812] and its deletion, in committed T-cell precursors or even mature T cells, results in loss of T-cell phenotype and instead acquisition of NK cell-like phenotype,[809] highlighting the developmental pathways shared by these cell lineages.

NK cells also have a developmental relationship to Lymphoid Tissue inducer (LTi) cells. In addition to phenotypic similarities as previously discussed for NK-22 cells, LTi and NK cells also share a relatively unique feature in expressing surface LTα, which influences development of lymphoid tissues and NK cells, respectively.[154,781] Moreover, deficiencies of either Ikaros or Id2 result in defects in LTi and NK cells, though other cells are also affected.[813,814] Interestingly,

mice lacking the thymocyte selection-associated high mobility group box protein DNA-binding protein lack both LTi and CD122+ NK cells.[815] The NK-cell defect is NK cell–intrinsic, and Id2 overexpression could not compensate for thymocyte selection-associated high mobility group box protein (TOX)–deficiency.

Until recently, the acquisition of IL-2/15Rβ subunit (CD122) was considered to mark the earliest identifiable committed NKP.[805,816] However, an earlier progenitor population (pre-NKP) has been identified that has not yet expressed CD122.[817] Upon adoptive transfer, these lineage-negative (lin–) cKit– Flk2– CD27+ CD244+ IL-7Rα+ CD122– cells from the BM could give rise to NK cells in the BM, blood, and spleen but no other cell lineages. Thus, IL-15 is not required for commitment to the NK cell lineage, even though it is required for subsequent NK-cell developmental stages as illustrated by the persistent expression of CD122.[44,53–57]

CD122 expression is regulated by the combined action of the T-box transcription factors, T-bet (Tbx21) and Eomesodermin (Eomes) that have redundant function in NK-cell development.[801,818] Specifically, *Tbx21*–/– *Eomes*+/– mice have marked decreases in CD122 expression and NK cells, whereas *Tbx21*–/– *Eomes*+/+ mice manifest no defect in CD122 expression and more modest defects in NK-cell number. Moreover, Eomes targets the promoter of *Cd122*. IL-15 appears to regulate the basic leucine zipper (bZip) transcription factor E4BP4 (E4 binding protein 4,[819] also known as nuclear factor IL-3[820]) in NK-cell development. *E4bp4*–/– mice display profound NK-cell deficiency.[821–823] Gene transduction of *E4bp4*–/– hematopoietic stem cells with *E4bp4* rescued NK-cell development in vitro even in the absence of IL-15, suggesting that E4BP4 acts downstream of IL-15 signaling. *E4bp4*–/– mice show no alterations in other hematopoietic cells except for a defect in CD8a+ cell development.[824] This latter finding may be relevant to phenotypic overlap between NK cells and DCs.[115–119] Regardless, Eomes affects NK-cell development by promoting CD122 expression, whereas E4BP4 affects commitment to the NK-cell lineage by apparently acting downstream of IL-15.

Committed NKPs next differentiate into mature NK cells in a series of putative developmental intermediate stages that occur in the BM.[98,816] Originally defined by correlating phenotypic markers, including NK-cell receptors, integrins, and other molecules with apparently distinct developmental stages,[825,826] these stages have been confirmed by studies following serial acquisition of markers during NK-cell differentiation in vitro.[789] Regardless, these stages of committed NKPs are undergoing constant refinement as new rate-limiting steps are being uncovered, such as in studies of mice lacking specific transcription factors or as new markers and tools are developed.[827] Nonetheless, a few highlights should be noted.

NK-cell receptors involved in target recognition are expressed at immature stages, with NK1.1 and CD94/NKG2 being among the first, followed by NKp46, and NKG2D then the Ly49s.[827] Following Ly49 acquisition, developing NK cells undergo spontaneous proliferation at an immature stage.[98] Thereafter, as NK cells acquire high-level expression of Mac-1 (αMβ1) and CD43, proliferation markedly decreases unless challenged by pathogens such as viruses that can stimulate mature NK-cell proliferation.[98,166] NK cells then gain functional activities associated with splenic NK cells, indicating that Mac-1 expression correlates with a late maturation stage. A selective NK-cell deficiency in a Tg mouse is manifested by a failure to become mature, functional Mac-1^{hi} cells,[828,829] consistent with this differentiation step. Finally, while CD27 is expressed from the very earliest stages of NK-cell development,[817] its diminished expression within the Mac-1+ subset is associated with a more responsive capacity.[830] Thus, Mac-1 and CD27 expression are now commonly used to ascertain NK-cell maturation in the mouse.

In addition to the transcription factors mentioned previously, several other transcription factors, including Ets-1, Id2, IRF-1, MEF, and GATA-3, have been implicated in NK-cell development and function.[813,831–836] The need for Id2 in NK-cell development can be overcome by deletion of the gene for the E protein, E2A.[814] IRF-1–deficient mice lack NK cells, and this defect can be overcome by the addition of IL-15, suggesting that stromal cells produce IL-15 in an IRF-1–dependent manner.[813] Expression of Bcl2 restored the CD8+ T-cell deficiency but not the NK-cell deficiency in IRF-1–deficient mice.[837] IRF-2–deficient mice manifest a late defect in NK-cell maturation with normal constitutive proliferation but increased apoptosis thereafter.[838,839] In contrast to the other transcription factors, GATA-3 does not affect NK cell number; rather, it controls their IFNγ production and their homing to the liver.[836] Similarly, CCAAT/enhancer binding protein (C/EBP) γ-deficient NK cells display defective effector functions.[840] The relationships of the transcription factors to each other are just beginning to be elaborated in terms of regulating NK-cell development and function.

As for mouse NK cells, human NK-cell developmental stages have been identified by correlating markers on in vivo subsets.[841–844] In general, these stages have been recapitulated by in vitro development of functional human NK cells from hemapoietic stem cells from umbilical cord blood or differentiated embryonic stem cells.[845,846] As in the mouse, a combination of cytokines and stromal cells is necessary for in vitro differentiation.

These studies suggest that human NK cells differentiate in secondary lymphoid tissues as revealed by studies of CD56^{bright} and CD56^{dim} NK cells.[110,847] CD56^{bright} NK cells preferentially express CD94/NKG2 receptors (versus KIRs), are CD16–, and are better cytokine producers and less efficient killers than the CD56^{dim} subset that tend to be KIR+ and CD16+.[109] A CD34+ CD45RA+ hematopoietic precursor cell (HPC) was identified that expressed the integrin $\alpha_4\beta_7$ at high levels.[847] This population was found at low levels (< 1% of HPCs) in the BM but was markedly enriched in lymph node (LN; > 95% of HPCs), and could be differentiated into CD56^{bright} NK cells in vitro. On the other hand, in nonreactive LNs, NK cells tend to be CD56^{bright} whereas in reactive LNs, they tend to be CD56^{dim}, the predominant population in peripheral blood.[110] CD56^{bright} cells acquire the CD56^{dim} phenotype when stimulated in vitro with proinflammatory

cytokines, such as IL-12, or with IL-15 in *trans* in a humanized mouse model.[848] Taken together, these data suggest that human NK cells differentiate in secondary lymphoid tissues in response to inflammation by first becoming $CD56^{bright}$ then completing maturation to the $CD56^{dim}$ phenotype.

Although the maturation of mouse NK cells in secondary lymphoid tissues has not been studied carefully, there is an abundance of NK cells with an immature phenotype in organs, such as the liver.[98] On the other hand, recent studies also provide evidence for thymic maturation of a subpopulation of mouse NK cells, termed "thymic" NK cells[111] These cells are characteristically CD127+ $CD69^{high}$ $Ly49^{low}$ $CD11b^{low}$ in contrast to conventional resting splenic NK cells that are CD127− CD69− $Ly49^{hi}$ $CD11b^{hi}$. Thymic NK cells were enriched in LNs and are absent in GATA-3-deficient and in athymic nude mice, indicating that these cells require GATA-3 and an intact thymus for their development. Indeed, thymic NK cells can develop in vivo and in vitro from double negative (CD4− CD8−) 1 (DNI) subsets of immature thymocytes.[789] Interestingly, mouse thymic NK cells bear some phenotypic markers that tend to be found on human $CD56^{bright}$ NK cells.[111] The contribution of secondary lymphoid tissues to NK-cell development, the role of thymic NK cells in immune responses, and the relationship of these mouse and human NK-cell subsets remain to be clarified.

ROLE OF NATURAL KILLER CELLS IN IMMUNE RESPONSES

Mature NK cells in the periphery are involved in rapid innate defense. However, they constitute only a small population of cells (about 2.5% of splenic leukocytes in C57BL/6 mice). How can this small population quickly respond with enough of a critical mass to effect significant innate defense? One mechanism involves the expression of multiple activation receptors by individual NK cells.[449] By contrast to clonally distributed TCRs endowing the individual T cell with the ability to respond only to one antigen, an individual NK cell appears capable of responding to multiple activation receptor ligands. Furthermore, the naïve T-cell population contains only rare cells with a TCR for the relevant antigen, whereas large percentages of the NK-cell population express any given activation receptor in an overlapping fashion. This multiple activation receptor expression on sizeable subpopulations would allow a substantial number of NK cells to quickly respond to a given specific insult. Another mechanism is related to their constitutive expression of cytokine receptors that permit many NK cells to be stimulated by proinflammatory cytokines produced early in the course of an immune response. Finally, NK cells appear poised to respond rapidly. They constitutively express mRNA for effector molecules, such as granzymes and cytokines, but no protein due to translational control, and can rapidly produce these molecules upon stimulation.[29] Thus, large numbers of NK cells can rapidly respond to a particular stimulus through their activation or cytokine receptors.

Where do NK cells respond? In the mouse, mature conventional NK cells are found primarily in the spleen, blood, and liver. Interestingly, NK cells are localized to the red pulp of the spleen.[849,850] In the liver, they are in the sinusoidal regions rather than the parenchyma, and few NK cells are present in other solid organs. In viral infections, NK cells infiltrate the liver parenchyma in the vicinity of infected foci.[849,851] Several chemokines, including MIP1α, have been implicated in NK-cell localization to liver parenchyma during immune responses,[852] for example, but the NK cell "chemokine code" needs to be clarified.[853] Surprisingly, there are relatively few NK cells in naïve lymph nodes,[849,854] and the thymic NK-cell phenotype is overrepresented among the few resident NK cells,[111] although NK cells can be recruited to draining LNs.[855,856] However, human NK cells are relatively abundant in LNs where they appear to mature, as discussed previously. Study of human NK-cell responses in solid tissues has been limited for obvious reasons. Nonetheless, NK cells seem best suited for surveying the blood for transformed or infected cells and pathogens during acute immune responses but can be recruited to pathologic sites as needed.

As early innate immune responders, NK cells have the capacity to shape the adaptive immune response. For example, early NK-cell control of viral infection essentially limits antigen load and presentation by DCs thereby limiting CD4+ T-cell responses.[857] By contrast, early control also reduces activation of plasmacytoid DCs, thereby lessening the detrimental effects of type I IFNs, preserves the conventional DC compartment, and accelerates CD8+ T-cell responses.[858] Early IFNγ production by NK cells can prime and polarize T-helper responses.[855,859–861] In leishmania infections, later production of IL-10 by NK cells has an inhibitory effect on T cells.[862] In addition, NK-cell lysis of targets also enhances T-cell responses.[863] Thus, NK cells have the capacity to enhance, suppress, and polarize adaptive immune responses.

Natural Killer Cells and Tumor Surveillance

An abundant early literature supported a role for NK cells in resisting tumor growth and metastasis.[3] Most prior work utilized experimental protocols involving adoptive transfer of tumor cells into mice where NK cells may eliminate > 90% of tumor cells within the first 24 hours.[864] Several long-term assays of in vivo tumor clearance are available, such as survival or lesion size, but T-cell responses need to be excluded even in syngeneic hosts due to the possibility of tumor-specific peptides. Clearance of intravenously administered radiolabeled tumor cells can be measured with radioactivity of the lung as an index of tumor burden. Because this lung clearance assay can be performed as early as 4 hours after tumor inoculation, it is relatively confined to innate NK-cell responses in the unimmunized host.[15] In these assays, NK-deficient mice are unable to clear adoptively transferred tumors.[828]

On the other hand, few studies are available on control of primary tumor formation by NK cells (ie, tumor surveillance).[865] Probably the most systematic studies in a single experimental model involve fibrosarcoma development after subcutaneous methylcholanthrene challenge.[866–868] In brief, NK cells collaborate with NKT cells in preventing

fibrosarcomas through mechanisms involving perforin, TRAIL, and IFNγ. There is also evidence for involvement of NKG2D[86] and its ligands with respect to the immunoediting of tumors by NK cells.[525,542]

In humans, epidemiological data indicates a strong correlation between high cytotoxic activity of peripheral blood lymphocytes and reduced cancer risk.[869] In addition, ongoing studies of BM transplantation for leukemia demonstrate a relationship between KIR, HLA alleles, and reduced risk of relapse from leukemia in some circumstances.[870,871] Thus, current data support the initial concept that NK cells are involved in tumor immunosurveillance.

Natural Killer Cells in Host Defense Against Pathogens

While NK cells reportedly respond to a wide variety of microorganisms including viruses, bacteria, parasites, and fungi,[872,873] the role of NK cells in infections is probably best illustrated by human patients with selective NK-cell deficiencies.[874,875] Although the molecular basis for most human NK-cell deficiencies is unknown, several points can be gleaned. 1) NK-cell deficiency is associated with a propensity for severe or recurrent virus infections, particularly herpes viruses. 2) Difficulty with tumors is not a common feature, except for virus-related lesions. 3) The disorder is rare, perhaps because patients succumb to overwhelming infection before the syndrome is recognized. 4) Defective NK cells can be found in other genetic and acquired immunodeficiency disorders that affect other immune components. For example, NK cell activity is significantly diminished in AIDS.[876,877] NK-cell infection with herpesvirus 6 induces de novo expression of CD4 rendering susceptibility to HIV-1 infection,[878] perhaps accounting, in part, for increased susceptibility of patients with acquired immunodeficiency syndrome to opportunistic infections, such as severe CMV.[879] Immature NK-cell number and function in the developing fetus may be clinically relevant to the classic "TORCH" syndrome, birth defects associated with maternal toxoplasma, rubella, CMV, and herpes virus infections.[880] Thus, NK cells appear to be especially important in controlling infections, especially from herpes viruses.

In mouse models, detailed evaluation of NK-cell responses against *Listeria* and viral infections have been especially revealing.[881,882] In vivo antibody depletion of NK cells results in marked viral replication in internal organs (spleen, liver), and lethality with MCMV, vaccinia virus, or mouse hepatitis virus.[883–885] A similar phenotype was observed in Tg mice lacking NK cells.[886,887] Interestingly, if depleting antibody was given to wild-type mice later in the infection, there was no untoward effect.[884] Thus, NK cells are significant in early, innate immunity to infections.

Natural Killer–Cell Cytokine Responses and Production during Infection

During infection, NK cells can respond to several different cytokines resulting in production of other cytokines. In listeriosis, the classic model for T-cell–dependent resistance, *scid* mice achieve acute control of infection despite absence of T cells,[888] due to early NK-cell production of IFNγ.[889] However, NK cells do not appear to respond directly to *Listeria*. Rather, macrophages produce IL-12 that then stimulate NK-cell secretion of IFNγ and infection control.[164,890] Furthermore, TNFα can synergize with IL-12 to induce NK-cell production of IFNγ, whereas IL-10 is antagonistic.[164] The increased susceptibility of mice lacking IL-12 receptor, IFNγ, or the IFNγ receptor signaling pathway[891–894] are consistent with macrophage production of IL-12 that stimulates NK cells to secrete IFNγ in listeriosis.

While a similar IL-12-IFNγ pathway is also operational in MCMV infections,[886,895,896] IL-18 also contributes somewhat to NK cell control of MCMV.[897] However, IL-12 appears to be more critical than IL-18 because uniform lethality was observed in IL-12p35−/−mice challenged with MCMV while all IL-18−/− mice survive.[897] On the other hand, neutralization of IL-18 is a common feature of orthopox-viruses.[898] For example, ectromelia virus (mousepox) contains an ORF for an IL-18 binding protein (IL18BP) that effectively neutralizes the effects of IL-18 on NK cells.[899] In addition to augmented IFNγ production, IL-18 enhances perforin-dependent cytotoxicity.[900–902]

Importantly, not all viral infections are controlled by NK cells. For example, NK-cell depletion has little effect on lymphocytic choriomeningitis virus (LCMV) infections.[883,896,903] Yet, during infections, even with LCMV, cytotoxicity of NK cells is enhanced and proliferation ensues. These events constitute systemic effects directly or indirectly mediated by cytokines, such as IL-12, IL-18, and IFNα/β.[904] However, IFNγ production is not seen in LCMV infections.[895,905] This apparent paradox is due to an inhibitory effect of IFNα/β on IL-12–dependent IFNγ production.[905] Inhibition by IFNα/β is mediated through the STAT1 signaling pathway. In the absence of STAT1, IL-12 responsiveness is restored and IFNα/β induces IFNγ production. These studies indicate that the NK-cell cytokine response to infection varies with the pathogen even though many responses may appear to be similar.

A challenging issue is the role of IL-15 in NK cell responses in vivo[906] because IL-15 and IL-15Rα-deficient mice lack NK cells.[53,54] Nevertheless, NK cells can be stimulated during infection by IL-15 and control viral replication during in vitro cultures.[906–910] Moreover, IL-15 can provide protection to herpes simplex viral infections.[910] IFNα/β can stimulate IL-15 production that can drive NK-cell proliferation.[911] Interestingly, however, NK-cell proliferation can occur in an IFNα/β- or IL-15–independent manner.[912,913]

NK-cell responses to cytokines are also regulated by other innate lymphocytes. For example, in TCRδ−/− mice, *Listeria* infection is enhanced compared to TCRβ−/− mice and is associated with diminished production of IFNγ by NK cells, suggesting that γδT cells regulate NK-cell responses.[914] Similarly, NKT cells can regulate NK cells because administration of α-galactosylceramide, a potent ligand for the TCR on NKT cells, results in nearly concomitant activation of NK cells[79] that may be exploited as a potential cancer immunotherapy.[915] The mechanism behind the NK and NKT cell cross-talk involves IFNγ, apparently produced initially by an activated macrophage.[916] Inasmuch as NKT cells can

recognize glycolipid antigens in mycobacteria,[917,918] these studies indicate a potential physiologically important mechanism and therapeutic intervention for NK-cell activation in innate control of these organisms.[919]

Natural Killer–Cell Activation Receptors in Infection

There are several observations from studies of viral evasion indicating the importance of NK-cell activation receptors in infection. Because viruses have evolved numerous strategies to downregulate MHC-I molecules on infected cells to avoid MHC-I–restricted cytotoxic T-lymphocytes,[186] virally infected cells should have enhanced susceptibility to NK-cell lysis. However, viruses also encode proteins that evade NK cells.[920] In many cases, viral interference of NK cells is related to enhanced function of inhibitory MHC-I–specific NK-cell receptors. For example, murine and rat CMV contain ORFs *m144* and *r144*, respectively, that encode molecules with sequence and structural homology to MHC-I and enhance in vivo virulence presumably by interacting with as yet unidentified NK-cell inhibitory receptors.[921–925] MCMV also encodes m157 that can bind the inhibitory receptor Ly49I in 129 strain mice (see following discussion), as well as other MHC-I–like molecules of unknown function.[444,446,464,926] HCMV encodes an MHC-I–like molecule (UL18) that binds LIR1 (ILT2), an Ig-like inhibitory receptor on NK cells,[405,411,927] though its functional significance is somewhat unclear.[928] HCMV also encodes a peptide that binds and enhances expression of HLA-E that in turn binds CD94/NKG2A, a lectin-like NK-cell inhibitory receptor.[386,929–931] Another example is the selective downregulation of MHC-I by HIV-1.[932,933] In this case, the virus downregulates HLA-A and B but not HLA-C or E; the former HLA molecules tend to be restricting elements for MHC-I–restricted CTLs, whereas the latter are selectively recognized by human KIRs and CD94/NKG2A. Therefore, viruses have evolved mechanisms to selectively engage inhibitory receptors that presumably prevent the action of NK-cell activation receptors.

Viruses can also directly block triggering of NK-cell activation receptors. For example, both HCMV and MCMV encode multiple proteins that block NKG2D ligand expression by intracellular retention with functional consequences in vitro and in vivo,[920] as previously detailed. HIV-1 Nef also blocks NKG2D ligand expression.[934] Cowpox and monkeypox viruses use a different strategy; they encode a high-affinity, soluble antagonist that binds NKG2D and blocks its ligand recognition.[557] HCMV, Epstein-Barr virus, and KSHV use yet another strategy by encoding miRNAs that target MICB mRNA.[554,555] More generally, KSHV also avoids NK-cell activation through K5 that downregulates expression of ICAM-1 and B7-2, ligands for NK cell coreceptors involved in target-induced stimulation.[935] Thus, viruses use multiple strategies to specifically thwart NK-cell responses through their activation receptors.

The viral evasion strategies implicate NK-cell activation receptors that specifically recognize infected cells; several have been identified. Human NKp46 binds hemagglutinin of influenza virus and hemagglutinin-neuraminidase of parainfluenza virus, suggesting it may be involved in resistance to these viruses.[630] However, this interaction is dependent on sialic acid residues that are widely expressed, and the in vivo significance of these findings is difficult to assess in humans. Nevertheless, susceptibility of NKp46-deficient mice to influenza infections corroborates these findings.[93]

The autosomal dominant *Cmv1* gene in the NKC is responsible for resistance of certain mouse strains to MCMV[596,597,936,937]; MCMV-resistant C57BL/6 mice are susceptible when depleted of NK cells.[938] Extensive genetic and immunological evidence established that *Ly49h* is responsible for genetic resistance to MCMV.[449,938–942] A DAP12-signaling mutant mouse could not resist MCMV,[943] consistent with in vitro signaling studies showing that Ly49H signals through DAP12.[448,939] Thus, Ly49H is an NK-cell activation receptor responsible for genetic resistance to MCMV.

The ligand for Ly49H is encoded by the *m157* ORF in MCMV.[444,446] m157 and 11 other putative MCMV molecules have predicted MHC-I folds, now validated by crystallography.[464,926] Interestingly, in mice lacking adaptive immunity, m157 mutant MCMV clones emerge during MCMV infection, indicating selection pressure from Ly49H+ NK cells result in escape mutant viruses.[944] The reasons for maintenance of *m157* in the MCMV genome are still under investigation, but several observations suggest *m157* may be advantageous to the virus under certain circumstances. 1) m157 binds to the Ly49I inhibitory receptor in 129 mice.[446] 2) *m157*-deletion viruses cause a modest decrease in viral titers in mice lacking both Ly49I and Ly49H, suggesting yet another immune evasion role.[945] 3) A unique aspect of herpes virus biology is the capacity to become latent. If the virus kills the host during the acute viral replicative phase during which Ly49H mediates its control, then there will be no latent phase. 4) Host-virus coevolution often results in attenuated viruses,[946] and other MCMV proteins have positive effects on host responses.[947] Indeed, as one aspect of this coevolution, natural variants of m157 show differential binding activities to a broader range of inhibitory receptors in different mouse strains, including inhibitory Ly49C from B6 mice.[948,949] Thus, studies of m157 reflect the coevolution of the host and virus.

Interestingly, other Ly49 activation receptors also recognize MCMV-encoded proteins. In MA/My mice, the Ly49P activation receptor is responsible for resistance in the context of $H2^k$.[453,950–952] This receptor-ligand interaction is more complex than Ly49H-m157 because Ly49P appears to recognize the cell surface combination of $H2D^k$ in association with m04/gp34 encoded by MCMV. However, there appears to be another molecule required for Ly49P recognition as m04 expression on $H2D^k$-expressing cells was insufficient for recognition; infection with *Δm04* MCMV was required.[453] Recent studies demonstrate that other Ly49 activation receptors from different mouse strains (BALB/c, NOD/LtJ, PWK/Pas) can also recognize MCMV-infected cells in an m04-H2 allele-dependent manner, providing in vivo control.[953] Taken together, these remarkable studies indicate NK cells recognize MCMV in an "MHC-restricted" manner that is fundamentally different than MHC-restriction as defined for T-cell biology.

Loci for resistance to other pathogens, such as ectromelia virus and herpes simplex virus, have also been genetically mapped to the NKC.[954,955] These loci are termed *Rmp1* and *Rhs1*, respectively, and C57BL/6 mice are resistant. *Rmp1* was initially mapped using DBA/2 mice that lack a functional *Cd94* gene.[394,954] Recent studies of a CD94-deficient mouse show ectromelia virus susceptibility, suggesting that *Rmp1* is encoded by *Cd94*.[396] CD94/NKG2E appears to recognize ectromelia virus–infected cells via Qa-1 and synergizing with NKG2D. Thus, NKC-encoded NK-cell activation receptors mediate NK-cell–dependent resistance to viruses.

In addition to target killing, NK-cell activation receptors also trigger cytokine production in vitro. For example, Ly49H+ NK cells can be selectively activated to produce IFNγ and chemokines within 6 to 8 hours after coculture in vitro with MCMV-infected macrophages or m157 transfectants,[444,956] and m157 itself is expressed soon after infection.[957] However, during early MCMV infection in vivo, IFNγ production was not confined to the Ly49H+ NK-cell subset in C57BL/6 mice, indicating early relative "nonspecific" stimulation of NK cells.[166] Moreover, infection stimulates NK-cell proliferation[958,959] but early (days 1 to 2 postinfection) in vivo NK-cell proliferation was nonselective with respect to Ly49H expression. This proliferation resembled the cytokine-driven "bystander proliferation" observed in T cells in response to viral infections or stimulation with IFNα/β,[960] suggesting that the initial phase of viral-induced NK-cell proliferation represents a nonspecific response to proinflammatory cytokines (IL-12, IFNα/β) and proliferative cytokines such as IL-15.[912] The nonselective proliferation phase was followed by a period of preferential proliferation of Ly49H+ NK cells peaking at days 4 to 6 of MCMV infection.[166] The selective phase of NK-cell proliferation reflected the augmentation of pro-proliferative cytokine stimulation by Ly49H signaling mediated via DAP12.[59] Other activation receptors also trigger specific proliferation in MCMV infection, such as Ly49L+ NK cells in BALB/c mice.[953] However, in infection with vaccinia virus, which lacks a ligand for Ly49H, the initial phase of nonspecific NK-cell proliferation was found but the later specific proliferation of Ly49H+ NK cells was absent.[166] Thus, initial virus-specific NK-cell responses may be masked by generic cytokine responses and only later become detectable.

In humans, how NK cells participate in viral infections has been challenging to understand. However, an unprecedented opportunity to study human NK-cell responses during an epidemic of *Puumala hantavirus* revealed rapid and sustained expansion of NK cells.[961] Most cells expressed CD94/NKG2C and a self-HLA–specific KIR, consistent with expansion of licensed NK cells. Interestingly, expansion of CD94/NKG2C+ NK cells occurs in HCMV+ individuals but not with Epstein-Barr virus or herpes simplex virus infections,[962] though this could not explain the finding in the hantavirus-infected individuals. Regardless, children infected with HCMV show a similar expansion of CD94/NKG2C+ NK cells; in one case of a T-cell–deficient infant, the expanded NK-cell population was associated with resolution of infection, suggesting that human NK cells can control HCMV.[963,964] Moreover, expansion of CD94/NKG2C+ NK cells also occurs in the setting of acute Chikungunya virus infection.[965] In vitro studies revealed that human NK cells can respond to HCMV-infected fibroblasts by producing cytokines and degranulating. These responses were enhanced by IL-12 and type I IFNs, and there was evidence for stimulation through NKp46 and DNAM-1. However, there was no apparent involvement of the CD94/NKG2C activation receptor,[966] despite expansion of CD94/NKG2C+ NK cells with prolonged culture.[388] Thus, the factors driving human NK-cell expansion and control of viral infection are not completely understood.

MEMORY-LIKE NATURAL KILLER RESPONSES

Although innate immunity is typified by the absence of memory responses, several recent studies suggest that NK cells have memory-like responses, more typical of adaptive immunity, apparently blurring the distinction between innate and adaptive immune responses.[751] In classic contact hypersensitivity (CHS) assays in vivo, NK cells appear to mediate hapten-specific responses in a T- and B-cell–independent manner.[967,968] Adoptive transfer of Ly49C/I+ liver NK cells from sensitized C57BL/6 mice transferred CHS. In addition, hapten-specificity was long lived, as NK-dependent responses lasted at least 4 weeks. Subsequent studies indicated that exposure to virus and viral particles, specifically influenza virus, vesicular stomatitis virus, HIV-1, and MCMV, can also induce virus-specific memory-like NK cells.[969,970] Upon adoptive transfer, NK cells can then protect against lethal challenge with the sensitizing virus. While MCMV protection apparently occurred with sensitized splenic NK cells, protection from other viral challenges required liver NK cells expressing CXCR6. Thus, emerging studies suggest that NK cells can display memory-like responses.

The role and basis for NK-cell memory-like responses will require detailed investigation. It is not yet clear if this aspect of NK-cell function is relevant to "vaccination" and how much it contributes to immune protection when immune T and B cells are present. It is unclear how NK cells can demonstrate "antigen" specificity in the absence of the somatic rearrangement mechanism underlying T- and B-cell antigen receptor gene recombination because NK memory-like responses were seen in *Rag2*–/– mice.[967] Moreover, cytokine stimulation alone, without "antigen" stimulation, can induce NK cells to have more robust responses later.[971] Finally, there appear to be significant differences in the inflammatory characteristics and histological features of CHS related to NK-cell responses,[972] suggesting that there may be aspects to be considered that differ from conventional concepts of T-cell–mediated CHS.[968] Thus, although mechanistic details should be forthcoming, this topic has generated intense interest as indicated by review articles which now outnumber the primary literature by about three to one, because the concept of NK-cell memory breaks traditional views on innate and adaptive immunity, and potentially opens the door for examination of related processes in other innate immune components.

NATURAL KILLER CELL AND DENDRITIC CELL INTERACTIONS

Given that both NK cells and DCs, when separately studied, are critical early responders in host immune defense, it was not surprising that these cells could communicate in a bidirectional manner.[973] Since the initial description of this "cross-talk," innumerable studies have been published indicating that NK cells can respond to signals derived from the various DC subsets and vice versa, in a variety of different immune responses in mice and humans.

Data support both cell contact-independent and -dependent pathways. The contact-independent pathways are perhaps better understood. For example, a variety of stimuli, such as certain TLR ligands,[26,974,975] can activate DCs to produce cytokines. Indeed, activated DCs can produce cytokines, including IFNα/β, IL-12, IL-15, IL-18, and apparently IL-2,[26,975–979] that can stimulate NK-cell production of other cytokines, such as IFNγ. Moreover, these cytokines enhance NK-cell cytotoxicity by increasing protein expression of perforin and granzymes[29] as well as perforin-independent cytotoxic pathways. The cytokines can also enhance responses mediated by ITAM-signaling chain–associated receptors.[59] The in vivo relevance of TLR-induced, DC-produced cytokines is evident in studies showing that TLR9-dependent activation of plasmacytoid DCs in MCMV infections is critical for appropriate Ly49H-dependent NK-cell control of infection.[974]

Direct NK-DC cell-cell contact can also enhance NK-cell activation.[973] Several molecules have been implicated in this process, including cytokine-induced DC expression of ligands for human or mouse NKG2D.[980,981] Human DCs can also activate resting NK cells via the NKp30 receptor.[982] Other studies indicate that mouse NK cells can be activated by DCs in a TREM-2–dependent manner through the DAP12 signaling pathway.[983] DCs can also present IL-15 in *trans* that promotes NK-cell development and primes NK cells to respond to bacterial and viral pathogens.[31,984] This process may also be relevant to human NK-cell differentiation.[848]

On the other hand, NK-DC interactions can induce DC maturation.[985] For example, MHC-I–deficient targets can activate NK cells that then induce DC maturation.[986] NK-DC interactions also enhance TH1 polarization apparently through NK-cell production of IFNγ.[855] During MCMV infections, recognition of virus-infected cells by NK cells is critical for maintenance of DC subsets in the spleen.[987] While NK-DC cell contact is also subject to inhibitory effects and even killing of DCs by NK cells,[988,989] the capacity of NK-DC interactions to induce T-cell responses[855,981,986,990] has led to interest in exploiting these interactions for therapeutic vaccines.[991]

A hallmark of DC maturation is migration to a draining LN. Interestingly, however, deliberate introduction of DCs into the lymphatics leads to robust recruitment of activated NK cells.[855] Real-time imaging indicates that NK cells contact DCs in the superficial regions of the LNs where they are less motile and their interactions with DCs are more extensive than T-cell motility and contacts with DCs.[992] *Leishmania* infection led to NK-cell secretion of IFNγ and migration to the paracortex where CD4 T-cell activation occurred, indicating dynamic interactions in the LN not previously appreciated. In humans, DCs in LNs may be involved in differentiation of $CD56^{bright}$ NK cells into $CD56^{dim}$ NK cells.[110]

NATURAL KILLER CELLS AND MATERNAL-FETAL INTERACTIONS

One enigmatic area of continuing interest concerns NK cells in maternal-fetal interactions.[993–995] Several observations are related: 1) Initially described as granulated metrial gland cells, maternal uterine NK (uNK) cells accumulate in the uterus, near the fetal trophoblast layer, in all mammalian species examined thus far. 2) At the time of implantation, uNK cells are the most abundant leukocyte present. 3) In humans, uNK cells closely resemble $CD56^{bright}$ subpopulation, but there are phenotypic differences, including expression of activation markers, and different repertoire of MHC-specific receptors. 4) In some mice lacking NK cells, reproductive defects have been described.[996,997] 5) Trophoblasts can stimulate mouse uNK cells.[998,999] 6) There are significant differences in the anatomy of the maternal-fetal interface that may limit extrapolation of experimental results from one species to another,[994] although recent studies suggest that rodent uNK cells may interact with trophoblast tissues in a manner similar to human uNK cells.[1000,1001] Thus, uNK cells may provide important clues to understanding maternal-fetal interactions.

Interestingly, counterintuitive insight has come from epidemiological data regarding KIR and HLA genotype associations with reproductive failure.[1002,1003] The role for HLA-G in these disorders is unclear, though early studies suggested that human trophoblasts express the nonclassical MHC-I molecule, HLA-G,[1004] but not other MHC-I or -II molecules; HLA-G may protect the fetus from uNK cell attack.[1005] However, HLA-G is relatively nonpolymorphic, so this may not be able to explain alloantigenicity of the fetus. By contrast, recent studies, using newly available staining reagents, indicate that trophoblast cells predominantly express HLA-C.[1003] Furthermore, protection from reproductive failure is associated with maternal KIR haplotypes encoding the KIR2DS1 activation receptor that is specific for HLA-C2, whereas unopposed inhibitory receptors are associated with increased risk. In addition, protection increased when the fetus carried HLA-C2. The implication of this work is that uNK cells sense fetal tissues via their activation and inhibitory receptors to guide the dynamic process of placental remodeling,[1006] and suggest a mechanism for selection of KIR and HLA genotypes in different populations.

Indeed, uNK cells appear to regulate the placental vasculature. Mice lacking NK cells show defects in placental blood vascular remodeling that appears to be partially IFNγ-dependent.[1007] In addition, human uNK cells produce angiogenic factors, particularly early in pregnancy.[1008] Recent studies in mice and rats recapitulate some of the findings observed in humans,[1000,1001,1003] providing new experimental approaches to better understand the role of uNK cells in maternal-fetal tolerance.

NATURAL KILLER CELLS IN HUMAN DISEASE

Throughout this chapter, we have used human disorders involving NK cells to help illustrate their biology. Whereas NK-cell dysfunction has been associated with a large number of other diseases, it is not yet clear if they are clearly involved in a pathogenic manner. However, KIR and HLA genotypes have been linked with an increasing number of human ailments,[754] providing strong evidence implicating a pathogenetic role for NK cells in these diseases. For example, hepatitis C virus can cause a chronic, persistent infection, although some patients resolve the infection. Interestingly, patients who are homozygous for a KIR gene (KIR2DL3) are more likely to clear hepatitis C virus if they are also homozygous for the HLA-C alleles recognized by KIR2DL3.[756] In papillomavirus infections that can go on to produce cervical carcinomas, resistance to developing neoplasia is similarly associated with genotypes encoding certain KIR-HLA receptor-ligand pairs.[1009] In HIV-1 infections, certain KIR and HLA alleles are associated with reduced risk of infection and slower progression.[1010–1013] These associations are even more compelling given a recent report indicating that the KIR genotypes are associated with amino acid polymorphisms in HIV-1 itself, suggesting that NK cells through their KIRs selected specific HIV-1 genotypes.[1014] These sequences enhance binding of inhibitory KIRs to HIV-1–infected CD4+ T cells and reduce the antiviral activity of NK cells, providing a putative mechanism to explain the association of specific KIR and HLA genotypes with HIV-1 progression. Thus, while the means by which other KIR-HLA combinations modify disease progression is a topic under current investigation, the emerging data nonetheless demonstrate the importance of NK cells and KIR specificities in human disorders and treatments.

Studies also suggest that KIR specificities may be clinically useful to guide treatment. For example, in BM transplantation for leukemia, donor NK cells may help provide as in anti-leukemia effect against residual malignant cells in the recipient if there is a mismatch between the donor and recipient HLA alleles.[870] While this observation was not uniformly observed in other transplant centers,[871,1015,1016] improvements in determing KIR polymorphisms have guided donor selection strategies, leading to superior outcomes in BM transplant therapy for leukemia and neuroblastoma.[1017,1018] Thus, KIR genotyping is clinically useful.

Dysfunctional NK cells are found in patients with FHL who typically demonstrate HLH, as described previously. NK-cell dysfunction is also found in systemic onset juvenile idiopathic arthritis and macrophage activation syndrome associated with that disease.[1019] However, it is not yet clear if NK dysfunction is a cause or effect of systemic illness.

Early studies used LAK cells for adoptive immunotherapy of cancers refractory to conventional therapy.[1020] Several cases of complete remission were reported, but the treatment required intravenous administration of high doses of IL-2 that has significant toxicity. Improved understanding of NK-cell biology and their receptors and specificities has renewed interest in using NK cells for adoptive immunotherapy.[1021,1022] In addition, clinical use of IL-15 may allow for more specific NK-cell activation while sparing the toxicity seen with IL-2.[1023] However, these approaches are still in their infancy and will require controlled studies.

Finally, NK-cell proliferative disorders are associated with both chronic viral infections (Epstein-Barr virus) and autoimmune phenomenon.[8,1024,1025] NK-cell malignancies are particularly aggressive and can appear as lethal midline granuloma due to the propensity of NK lymphomas to present in the sinus and nasopharyngeal passages where they are especially destructive.[1026] NK cells are also associated with hydroa vacciniforme and hypersensitivity to mosquito bites.[1027]

CONCLUSION

Detailed studies have moved NK cells from the fringes of immunology into the mainstream. Along the way, there have been innumerable challenges, some from "mistaken notions" based on existing paradigms for other immune cells, because NK cells have novel mechanisms of participating in immune defense and tolerance.[1028] Nonetheless, as immunologists and physicians gain more appreciation for the molecular basis for NK-cell biology, the future holds promise for insight into a number of enigmatic and unusual human diseases as well as common disorders, such as hepatitis C virus and HIV infections, and exploitation of NK cells for immunotherapy.

Finally, the elucidation of KIR genotypes and their role in infection and pregnancy support a broader view. The net outcome of selection for certain KIR and HLA genotypes may reflect a short-term survival advantage in terms of infection and a longer-term survival advantage as determined by reproductive influences. Similar processes must also be ongoing in other mammalian species and support the basis for convergent evolution of the NK-cell inhibitory receptors for MHC-I. Thus, "NK cells are centrally involved in both immunity and reproduction."[1029]

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

I thank members of my laboratory and our collaborators for their continued interest in dissecting the molecular basis for NK-cell activities and tolerance. I thank Megan Cooper, Tony French, and Dorothy K.Sojka for their review of the manuscript. Investigations in the author's laboratory are supported by the National Institutes fo Health, the Barnes-Jewish Hospital Research Foundation, and the Howard Hughes Medical Institute.

REFERENCES

1. Kiessling R, Klein E, Wigzell H. Natural killer cells in the mouse. I. Cytotoxic cells with specificity for mouse Moloney leukemia cells: specificity and distribution according to genotype. *Eur J Immunol*. 1975; 5:112–117. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1234049
2. Herberman RB, Nunn ME, Lavrin DH. Natural cytotoxic reactivity of mouse lymphoid cells against syngeneic and allogeneic tumors. I. Distribution of reactivity and specificity. *Int J Cancer*. 1975;16:216. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/50294
3. Herberman R. *NK Cells and Other Natural Effector Cells*. New York, NY: Academic Press; 1982.
4. Trinchieri G. Biology of natural killer cells. *Adv Immunol*. 1989;47: 187–376. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2683611
5. Timonen T, Ortaldo JR, Herberman RB. Characteristics of human large granular lymphocytes and relationship to natural killer and K cells. *J Exp Med*. 1981;153:569–582. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6166701
6. Inverardi L, Witson JC, Fuad SA, et al. CD3 negative "small agranular lymphocytes" are natural killer cells. *J Immunol*. 1991;146:4048–4052. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1827820
7. Shortman K, Wilson A, Scollay R, et al. Development of large granular lymphocytes with anomalous, non-specific cytotoxicity in clones derived from Ly 2+ T cells. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1983;80:2728. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6405387
8. Lamy T, Loughran TP Jr. Clinical features of large granular lymphocyte leukemia. *Semin Hematol*. 2003;40:185–195. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12876667
9. Lanier LL, Phillips JH. A map of the cell surface antigens expressed on resting and activated human natural killer cells. In: Reiherz EL, ed. *Leukocyte Typing II*. New York, NY: Springer-Verlag; 1986:165–180.
10. Barclay AN, Birkeland ML, Brown MH, et al. *The Leucocyte Antigen Factsbook*. London, United Kingdom: Academic Press, 1993.
11. Lanier LL, Phillips JH, Hackett J Jr, et al. Natural killer cells: definition of a cell type rather than a function. *J Immunol*. 1986;137:2735–2739. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3489775
12. Ritz J, Campen TJ, Schmidt RE, et al. Analysis of T-cell receptor gene rearrangement and expression in human natural killer clones. *Science*. 1985;228:1540. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2409597
13. Lanier LL, Cwirla S, Federspiel N, et al. Human natural killer cells isolated from peripheral blood do not rearrange T cell receptor b chain genes. *J Exp Med*. 1986;163:209. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3484512
14. Dorshkind K, Pollack SB, Bosma MJ, et al. Natural killer (NK) cells are present in mice with severe combined immunodeficiency (scid). *J Immunol*. 1985;134:3798–3801. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3989296
15. Hackett J Jr, Bosma GC, Bosma MJ, et al. Transplantable progenitors of natural killer cells are distinct from those of T and B lymphocytes. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1986;83:3427–3431. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2871552
16. Mombaerts P, Iacomini J, Johnson RS, et al. RAG-1-deficient mice have no mature B and T lymphocytes. *Cell*. 1992;68:869–877. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1547488
17. Shinkai Y, Rathbun G, Lam KP, et al. RAG-2-deficient mice lack mature lymphocytes owing to inability to initiate V(D)J rearrangement. *Cell*. 1992;68:855–867. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1547487
18. Phillips JH, Hori T, Nagler A, et al. Ontogeny of human natural killer (NK) cells: fetal NK cells mediate cytolytic function and express cytoplasmic CD3 epsilon,delta proteins. *J Exp Med*. 1992;175:1055–1066. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1372642
19. Anderson P, Caligiuri M, Ritz J, et al. CD3-negative natural killer cells express zeta TCR as part of a novel molecular complex. *Nature*. 1989; 341:159–162. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2528695
20. Lanier LL, Cwirla S, Yu G, et al. Membrane anchoring of a human IgG Fc receptor (CD16) determined by a single amino acid. *Science*. 1989; 246:1611–1613. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2531919
21. Liu CP, Ueda R, She J, et al. Abnormal T cell development in CD3-zeta-/- mutant mice and identification of a novel T cell population in the intestine. *EMBO J*. 1993;12:4863–4875. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8223495
22. Grimm EA, Mazumder A, Zhang HZ, et al. Lymphokine-activated killer cell phenomenon. Lysis of natural killer-resistant fresh solid tumor cells by interleukin 2-activated autologous human peripheral blood lymphocytes. *J Exp Med*. 1982;155:1823–1841. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6176669
23. Trinchieri G, Matsumoto-Kobayashi M, Clark SC, et al. Response of resting human peripheral blood natural killer cells to interleukin 2. *J Exp Med*. 1984;160:1147–1169. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6434688
24. Phillips JH, Lanier LL. Dissection of the lymphokine-activated killer phenomenon. Relative contribution of peripheral blood natural killer cells and T lymphocytes to cytolysis. *J Exp Med*. 1986;164:814–825. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3489062
25. Ortaldo JR, Mason A, Overton R. Lymphokine-activated killer cells. Analysis of progenitors and effectors. *J Exp Med*. 1986;164:1193–1205. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3093626
26. Gerosa F, Gobbi A, Zorzi P, et al. The reciprocal interaction of NK cells with plasmacytoid or myeloid dendritic cells profoundly affects innate resistance functions. *J Immunol*. 2005;174:727–734. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15634892
27. Reynolds CW, Wiltrout RH. *Functions of the Natural Immune System*. New York, NY: Plenum Press, 1989.
28. Brooks CG, Holscher M, Urdal D. Natural killer activity in cloned cytotoxic T lymphocytes: regulation by interleukin 2, interferon, and specific antigen. *J Immunol*. 1985;135:1145–1152. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2409140
29. Fehniger TA, Cai SF, Cao X, et al. Acquisition of murine NK cell cytotoxicity requires the translation of a pre-existing pool of granzyme B and perforin mRNAs. *Immunity*. 2007;26:798–8113. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17540585
30. Salcedo TW, Azzoni L, Wolf SF, et al. Modulation of perforin and granzyme messenger RNA expression in human natural killer cells. *J Immunol*. 1993;151:2511–2520. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8103068
31. Lucas M, Schachterle W, Oberle K, et al. Dendritic cells prime natural killer cells by transpresenting interleukin 15. *Immunity*. 2007;26:503–517. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17398124
32. Karlhofer FM, Yokoyama WM. Stimulation of murine natural killer (NK) cells by a monoclonal antibody specific for the NK1.1 antigen. IL-2-activated NK cells possess additional specific stimulation pathways. *J Immunol*. 1991;146:3662–3673. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2026886
33. Seaman WE, Niemi EC, Stark MR, et al. Molecular cloning of gp42, a cell-surface molecule that is selectively induced on rat natural killer cells by interleukin 2: glycolipid membrane anchoring and capacity for transmembrane signaling. *J Exp Med*. 1991;173:251–260. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1845873
34. Diefenbach A, Tomasello E, Lucas M, et al. Selective associations with signaling molecules determine stimulatory versus costimulatory activity of NKG2D. *Nat Immunol*. 2002;3:1142–1149. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12426565
35. Gilfillan S, Ho EL, Cella M, et al. NKG2D recruits two distinct adapters to trigger natural killer cell activation and costimulation. *Nat Immunol*. 2002;3:1150–1155. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12426564
36. Meresse B, Chen Z, Ciszewski C, et al. Coordinated induction by IL15 of a TCR-independent NKG2D signaling pathway converts CTL into lymphokine-activated killer cells in celiac disease. *Immunity*. 2004;21: 357–366. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15357947
37. Umehara H, Takashima A, Minami Y, et al. Signal transduction via phosphorylated adhesion molecule, LFA-1 beta (CD18), is increased by culture of natural killer cells with IL-2 in the generation of lymphokine-activated killer cells. *Int Immunol*. 1993;5:19–27. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8095153
38. Nishio M, Spielman J, Lee RK, et al. CD80 (B7.1) and CD54 (intracellular adhesion molecule-1) induce target cell susceptibility to promiscuous cytotoxic T cell lysis. *J Immunol*. 1996;157:4347–4353. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8906809

39. Sojka DK, Bruniquel D, Schwartz RH, et al. IL-2 secretion by CD4+ T cells in vivo is rapid, transient, and influenced by TCR-specific competition. *J Immunol*. 2004;172:6136–6143. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15128800
40. D'Souza WN, Lefrancois L. Frontline: An in-depth evaluation of the production of IL-2 by antigen-specific CD8 T cells in vivo. *Eur J Immunol*. 2004;34:2977–2985. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15384078
41. Granucci F, Feau S, Angeli V, et al. Early IL-2 production by mouse dendritic cells is the result of microbial-induced priming. *J Immunol*. 2003;170:5075–5081. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12734352
42. Schorle H, Holtschke T, Hunig T, et al. Development and function of T cells in mice rendered interleukin-2 deficient by gene targeting. *Nature*. 1991;352:621–624. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1830926
43. Willerford DM, Chen J, Ferry JA, et al. Interleukin-2 receptor alpha chain regulates the size and content of the peripheral lymphoid compartment. *Immunity*. 1995;3:521–530. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7584142
44. Suzuki H, Duncan GS, Takimoto H, et al. Abnormal development of intestinal intraepithelial lymphocytes and peripheral natural killer cells in mice lacking the IL-2 receptor beta chain. *J Exp Med*. 1997;185: 499–505. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9053450
45. DiSanto JP, Muller W, Guy-Grand D, et al. Lymphoid development in mice with a targeted deletion of the interleukin 2 receptor gamma chain. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1995;92:377–381. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7831294
46. Cao X, Shores EW, Hu-Li J, et al. Defective lymphoid development in mice lacking expression of the common cytokine receptor gamma chain. *Immunity*. 1995;2:223–238. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7697543
47. Taniguchi T, Minami Y. Minireview: the IL-2/IL-2 receptor system: a current overview. *Cell*. 1993;73:5–8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8462103
48. Nakarai T, Robertson MJ, Streuli M, et al. Interleukin 2 receptor g chain expression on resting and activated lymphoid cells. *J Exp Med*. 1994;180: 241–251. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8006584
49. Perussia B. Lymphokine-activated killer cells, natural killer cells and cytokines. *Curr Opin Immunol*. 1991;3:49–55. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2054113
50. Sugamura K, Asao H, Kondo M, et al. The interleukin-2 receptor gamma chain: its role in the multiple cytokine receptor complexes and T cell development in XSCID. *Ann Rev Immunol*. 1996;14:179–205. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8717512
51. Giri JG, Kumaki S, Ahdieh M, et al. Identification and cloning of a novel IL-15 binding protein that is structurally related to the alpha chain of the IL-2 receptor. *EMBO J*. 1995;14:3654–663. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7641685
52. Tagaya Y, Bamford RN, DeFilippis AP, et al. IL-15: a pleiotropic cytokine with diverse receptor/signaling pathways whose expression is controlled at multiple levels. *Immunity*. 1996;4:329–336. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8612127
53. Lodolce JP, Boone DL, Chai S, et al. IL-15 receptor maintains lymphoid homeostasis by supporting lymphocyte homing and proliferation. *Immunity*. 1998;9:669–676. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9846488
54. Kennedy MK, Glaccum M, Brown SN, et al. Reversible defects in natural killer and memory CD8 T cell lineages in interleukin 15-deficient mice. *J Exp Med*. 2000;191:771–780. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10704459
55. Park SY, Saijo K, Takahashi T, et al. Developmental defects of lymphoid cells in Jak3 kinase-deficient mice. *Immunity*. 1995;3:771–782. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8777722
56. Imada K, Bloom ET, Nakajima H, et al. Stat5b is essential for natural killer cell-mediated proliferation and cytolytic activity. *J Exp Med*. 1998; 188:2067–2074. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9841920
57. Moriggl R, Topham DJ, Teglund S, et al. Stat5 is required for IL-2-induced cell cycle progression of peripheral T cells. *Immunity*. 1999; 10:249–259. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10072077
58. Cooper MA, Bush JE, Fehniger TA, et al. In vivo evidence for a dependence on interleukin 15 for survival of natural killer cells. *Blood*. 2002;100:3633–3638. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12393617
59. French AR, Sjolin H, Kim S, et al. DAP12 signaling directly augments proproliferative cytokine stimulation of NK cells during viral infections. *J Immunol*. 2006;177:4981–4990. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1701568
60. Prlic M, Blazar BR, Farrar MA, et al. In vivo survival and homeostatic proliferation of natural killer cells. *J Exp Med*. 2003;197:967–976. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12695488
61. Ranson T, Vosshenrich CA, Corcuff E, et al. IL-15 is an essential mediator of peripheral NK-cell homeostasis. *Blood*. 2003;101:4887–4893. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12586624
62. Jameson SC. Maintaining the norm: T-cell homeostasis. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2002;2:547–556. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12154374
63. Jamieson AM, Isnard P, Dorfman JR, et al. Turnover and proliferation of NK cells in steady state and lymphopenic conditions. *J Immunol*. 2004;172:864–870. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14707057
64. Carson WE, Giri JG, Lindemann MJ, et al. Interleukin (IL) 15 is a novel cytokine that activates human natural killer cells via components of the IL-2 receptor. *J Exp Med*. 1994;180:1395–1403. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7523571
65. Burkett PR, Koka R, Chien M, et al. Coordinate expression and trans presentation of interleukin (IL)-15Ralpha and IL-15 supports natural killer cell and memory CD8+ T cell homeostasis. *J Exp Med*. 2004; 200:825–834. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15452177
66. Dubois S, Mariner J, Waldmann TA, et al. IL-15Ralpha recycles and presents IL-15 In trans to neighboring cells. *Immunity*. 2002;17:537–547. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12433361
67. Koka R, Burkett PR, Chien M, et al. Interleukin (IL)-15R[alpha]-deficient natural killer cells survive in normal but not IL-15R[alpha]-deficient mice. *J Exp Med*. 2003;197:977–984. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12695489
68. Koka R, Burkett P, Chien M, et al. Cutting edge: murine dendritic cells require IL-15R alpha to prime NK cells. *J Immunol*. 2004;173:3594–3598. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15356102
69. Mortier E, Woo T, Advincula R, et al. IL-15Ralpha chaperones IL-15 to stable dendritic cell membrane complexes that activate NK cells via trans presentation. *J Exp Med*. 2008;205:1213–1225. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18458113
70. Tanaka T, Kitamura F, Nagasaka Y, et al. Selective long-term elimination of natural killer cells in vivo by an anti-interleukin 2 receptor beta chain monoclonal antibody in mice. *J Exp Med*. 1993;178:1103–1107. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8350049
71. Ryan JC, Turck J, Niemi EC, et al. Molecular cloning of the NK1.1 antigen, a member of the NKR-P1 family of natural killer cell activation molecules. *J Immunol*. 1992;149:1631–1635. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1506685
72. Hackett J Jr, Tutt M, Lipscomb M, et al. Origin and differentiation of natural killer cells. II. Functional and morphologic studies of purified NK-1.1+ cells. *J Immunol*. 1986;136:3124–3131. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3958492
73. Koo GC, Peppard JR. Establishment of monoclonal anti-Nk-1.1 antibody. *Hybridoma*. 1984;3:301–303. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6500587
74. Seaman WE, Sleisenger M, Eriksson E, et al. Depletion of natural killer cells in mice by monoclonal antibody to NK-1.1. Reduction in host defense against malignancy without loss of cellular or humoral immunity. *J Immunol*. 1987;138:4539–4544. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3584981
75. Carlyle JR, Martin A, Mehra A, et al. Mouse NKR-P1B, a novel NK1.1 antigen with inhibitory function. *J Immunol*. 1999;162:5917–5923. 76. Kung SK, Su RC, Shannon J, et al. The NKR-P1B gene product is an inhibitory receptor on SJL/J NK cells. *J Immunol*. 1999;162:5876–5887. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10229823
77. Scalzo AA, Lyons PA, Fitzgerald NA, et al. The BALB.B6-Cmv1r mouse: a strain congenic for Cmv1 and the NK gene complex. *Immunogenetics*. 1995;41:148–151. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7806288

78. Carnaud C, Gombert J, Donnars O, et al. Protection against diabetes and improved NK/NKT cell performance in NOD.NK1.1 mice congenic at the NK complex. *J Immunol*. 2001;166:2404–2411. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11160299
79. Carnaud C, Lee D, Donnars O, et al. Cutting edge: crosstalk between cells of the innate immune system: NKT cells rapidly activate NK cells. *J Immunol*. 1999;163:4647–4650. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10528160
80. Ho EL, Carayannopoulos LN, Poursine-Laurent J, et al. Co-stimulation of multiple NK cell activation receptors by NKG2D. *J Immunol*. 2002; 169:3667–3675. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12244159
81. Bauer S, Groh V, Wu J, et al. Activation of NK cells and T cells by NKG2D, a receptor for stress-inducible MICA. *Science*. 1999;285:727–729. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10426993
82. Cerwenka A, Bakker ABH, McClanahan T, et al. Retinoic acid early inducible genes define a ligand family for the activating NKG2D receptor in mice. *Immunity*. 2000;12:721–727. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10894171
83. Diefenbach A, Jamieson AM, Liu SD, et al. Ligands for the murine NKG2D receptor: expression by tumor cells and activation of NK cells and macrophages. *Nat Immunol*. 2000;1:119–126. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11248803
84. Groh V, Bruhl A, El-Gabalawy H, et al. Stimulation of T cell autoreactivity by anomalous expression of NKG2D and its MIC ligands in rheumatoid arthritis. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2003;100:9452–9457. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12878725
85. Ogasawara K, Hamerman JA, Hsin H, et al. Impairment of NK cell function by NKG2D modulation in NOD mice. *Immunity*. 2003;18:41–51. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12530974
86. Smyth MJ, Swann J, Cretney E, et al. NKG2D function protects the host from tumor initiation. *J Exp Med*. 2005;202:583–588. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16129707
87. Zafirova B, Mandaric S, Antulov R, et al. Altered NK cell development and enhanced NK cell-mediated resistance to mouse cytomegalovirus in NKG2D-deficient mice. *Immunity*. 2009;31(2):270–282. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19631564
88. Cella M, Fuchs A, Vermi W, et al. A human natural killer cell subset provides an innate source of IL-22 for mucosal immunity. *Nature*. 2009; 457:722–725. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18978771
89. Satoh-Takayama N, Vosshenrich CA, Lesjean-Pottier S, et al. Microbial flora drives interleukin 22 production in intestinal NKp46+ cells that provide innate mucosal immune defense. *Immunity*. 2008;29:958–970. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1908443
90. Sanos SL, Bui VL, Mortha A, et al. RORgammat and commensal microflora are required for the differentiation of mucosal interleukin 22-producing NKp46+ cells. *Nat Immunol*. 2009;10:83–91. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19029903
91. Luci C, Reynders A, Ivanov, II, et al. Influence of the transcription factor RORgammat on the development of NKp46+ cell populations in gut and skin. *Nat Immunol*. 2009;10:75–82. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19029904
92. Satoh-Takayama N, Dumoutier L, Lesjean-Pottier S, et al. The natural cytotoxicity receptor NKp46 is dispensable for IL-22-mediated innate intestinal immune defense against Citrobacter rodentium. *J Immunol*. 2009;183:6579–6587. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19846871
93. Gazit R, Gruda R, Elboim M, et al. Lethal influenza infection in the absence of the natural killer cell receptor gene Ncr1. *Nat Immunol*. 2006;7:517–523. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16565719
94. Eckelhart E, Warsch W, Zebedin E, et al. A novel Ncr1-Cre mouse reveals the essential role of STAT5 for NK-cell survival and development. *Blood*. 2011;117:1565–1573. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21127177
95. Walzer T, Blery M, Chaix J, et al. Identification, activation, and selective in vivo ablation of mouse NK cells via NKp46. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2007;104:3384–3389. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17360655
96. Arase H, Saito T, Phillips JH, et al. Cutting edge: the mouse NK cell-associated antigen recognized by DX5 monoclonal antibody is CD49b (alpha 2 integrin, very late antigen-2). *J Immunol*. 2001;167:1141–1144. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11466327
97. Edelson BT, Li Z, Pappan LK, et al. Mast cell-mediated inflammatory responses require the alpha 2 beta 1 integrin. *Blood*. 2004;103:2214–2220. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14645004
98. Kim S, Iizuka K, Kang HS, et al. In vivo developmental stages in murine natural killer cell maturation. *Nat Immunol*. 2002;3:523–528. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12006976
99. Kasai M, Iwamori M, Nagai Y, et al. A glycolipid on the surface of mouse natural killer cells. *Eur J Immunol*. 1980;10:175–180. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6966574
100. Young WW Jr, Hakomori SI, Durdik JM, et al. Identification of ganglio-N-tetraosylceramide as a new cell surface marker for murine natural killer (NK) cells. *J Immunol*. 1980;124:199–201. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6985637
101. Suttles J, Schwarting GA, Stout RD. Flow cytometric analysis reveals the presence of asialo GM1 on the surface membrane of alloimmune cytotoxic T lymphocytes. *J Immunol*. 1986;136:1586–1591. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2936802
102. Hercend T, Griffin JD, Bensussan A, et al. Generation of monoclonal antibodies to a human natural killer clone: characterization of two natural killer associated antigens, NKH1A and NKH2, expressed on subsets of large granular lymphocytes. *J Clin Invest*. 1985;75:932. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3884668
103. Lanier LL, Le AM, Civin CI, et al. The relationship of CD16 (Leu-11) and Leu-19 (NKH-1) antigen expression on human peripheral blood NK cells and cytotoxic T lymphocytes. *J Immunol*. 1986;136:4480. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3086432
104. Lanier LL, Testi R, Bindl J, et al. Identity of Leu-19 (CD56) leukocyte differentiation antigen and neural cell adhesion molecule. *J Exp Med*. 1989;169:2233. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2471777
105. Cunningham BA, Hemperly JJ, Murray BA, et al. Neural cell adhesion molecule: structure, immunoglobulin-like domains, cell surface modulation, and alternative RNA splicing. *Science*. 1987;236:799. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3576199
106. Rutishauser U, Acheson A, Hall AK, et al. The neural cell adhesion molecule (NCAM) as a regulator of cell-cell interactions. *Science*. 1988; 240:53. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3281256
107. Nitta T, Yagita H, Sato K, et al. Involvement of CD56 (NKH1/Leu-19 antigen) as an adhesion molecule in natural killer-target cell interactions. *J Exp Med*. 1989;170:1757. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2478655
108. Barclay AN, Brown MH, Law SKA, et al. *The Leucocyte Antigen Factsbook*. San Diego, CA: Academic Press, 1997.
109. Cooper MA, Fehniger TA, Caligiuri MA. The biology of human natural killer-cell subsets. *Trends Immunol*.2001;22:633–640. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11698225
110. Romagnani C, Juelke K, Falco M, et al. CD56brightCD16- killer Ig- like receptor- NK cells display longer telomeres and acquire features of CD56dim NK cells upon activation. *J Immunol*. 2007;178:4947–4955. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17404276
111. Vosshenrich CA, Garcia-Ojeda ME, Samson-Villeger SI, et al. A thymic pathway of mouse natural killer cell development characterized by expression of GATA-3 and CD127. *Nat Immunol*. 2006;7:1217–1224. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17013389
112. Paul WE. *Fundamental Immunology*. New York, NY: Raven Press, 1984.
113. Paul WE. *Fundamental Immunology*. 3rd ed. New York, NY: Raven Press, 1993.
114. Rolink A, ten Boekel E, Melchers F, et al. A subpopulation of B220+ cells in murine bone marrow does not express CD19 and contains natural killer cell progenitors. *J Exp Med*. 1996;183:187–194. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8551222
115. Chan CW, Crafton E, Fan HN, et al. Interferon-producing killer dendritic cells provide a link between innate and adaptive immunity. *Nat Med*. 2006;12:207–213. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16444266
116. Taieb J, Chaput N, Menard C, et al. A novel dendritic cell subset involved in tumor immunosurveillance. *Nat Med*. 2006;12:214–219. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16444265
117. Vosshenrich CA, Lesjean-Pottier S, Hasan M, et al. CD11cloB220+ interferon-producing killer dendritic cells are activated natural killer cells. *J Exp Med*. 2007;204:2569–2578. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17923507

118. Caminschi I, Ahmet F, Heger K, et al. Putative IKDCs are functionally and developmentally similar to natural killer cells, but not to dendritic cells. *J Exp Med*. 2007;204:2579–2590. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17923506
119. Blasius AL, Barchet W, Cella M, et al. Development and function of murine B220+CD11c+NK1.1+ cells identify them as a subset of NK cells. *J Exp Med*. 2007;204:2561–2568. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17923504
120. Clark R, Griffiths GM. Lytic granules, secretory lysosomes and disease. *Curr Opin Immunol*. 2003;15:516–521. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14499259
121. Perou CM, Moore KJ, Nagle DL, et al. Identification of the murine beige gene by YAC complementation and positional cloning. *Nat Gen*. 1996; 13:303–308. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8673129
122. Barbosa MD, Nguyen QA, Tchernev VT, et al. Identification of the homologous beige and Chediak-Higashi syndrome genes. *Nature*. 1996; 382:262–265. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8717042
123. Durchfort N, Verhoef S, Vaughn MB, et al. The enlarged lysosomes in beige(j) cells result from decreased lysosome fission and not increased lysosome fusion. *Traffic*. 2011;13(1):108–119. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21985295
124. Lieberman J. The ABCs of granule-mediated cytotoxicity: new weapons in the arsenal. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2003;3:361–370. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12766758
125. Mentlik AN, Sanborn KB, Holzbaur EL, et al. Rapid lytic granule convergence to the MTOC in natural killer cells is dependent on dynein but not cytolytic commitment. *Mol Biol Cell*. 2010;21:2241–2256. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20444980
126. Thiery J, Keefe D, Boulant S, et al. Perforin pores in the endosomal membrane trigger the release of endocytosed granzyme B into the cytosol of target cells. *Nat Immunol*. 2011;12:770–777. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21685908
127. Afonina IS, Cullen SP, Martin SJ. Cytotoxic and non-cytotoxic roles of the CTL/NK protease granzyme B. *Immunol Rev*. 2010;235:105–116. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20536558
128. de Saint Basile G, Menasche G, Fischer A. Molecular mechanisms of biogenesis and exocytosis of cytotoxic granules. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2010;10:568–579. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20634814
129. Wood SM, Ljunggren HG, Bryceson YT. Insights into NK cell biology from human genetics and disease associations. *Cell Mol Life Sci*. 2011; 68:3479–3493. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21874350
130. Bahadoran P, Aberdam E, Mantoux F, et al. Rab27a: a key to melanosome transport in human melanocytes. *J Cell Biol*. 2001;152:843–850. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11266474
131. Clayberger C, Krensky AM. Granulysin. *Curr Opin Immunol*. 2003;15: 560–565. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14499265
132. Anderson DH, Sawaya MR, Cascio D, et al. Granulysin crystal structure and a structure-derived lytic mechanism. *J Mol Biol*. 2003;325:355–365. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12488100
133. Schmidt H, Gelhaus C, Nebendahl M, et al. Effector granules in human T lymphocytes: proteomic evidence for two distinct species of cytotoxic effector vesicles. *J Proteome Res*. 2011;10:1603–1620. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21247065
134. Saini RV, Wilson C, Finn MW, et al. Granulysin delivered by cytotoxic cells damages endoplasmic reticulum and activates caspase-7 in target cells. *J Immunol*. 2011;186:3497–3504. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21296981
135. Brunner KT, Mauel J, Cerottini JC, et al. Quantitative assay of the lytic action of immune lymphoid cells on 51Cr-labelled allogeneic target cells in vitro; inhibition by isoantibody and by drugs. *Immunol*. 1968; 14:181. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4966657
136. Lozzio CB, Lozzio BB. Human chronic myelogenous leukemia cell-line with positive Philadelphia chromosome. *Blood*. 1975;45:321–334. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/163658
137. Korzeniewski C, Callewaert DM. An enzyme-release assay for natural cytotoxicity. *J Immunol Methods*. 1983;64:313–320. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6199426
138. Wierda WG, Mehr DS, Kim YB. Comparison of fluorochrome-labeled and 51Cr-labeled targets for natural killer cytotoxicity assay. *J Immunol Methods*. 1989;122:15–24. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2760476
139. Radosevic K, Garritsen HS, Van Graft M, et al. A simple and sensitive flow cytometric assay for the determination of the cytotoxic activity of human natural killer cells. *J Immunol Methods*. 1990;135:81–89. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2273268
140. Kim S, Yokoyama WM. NK cell granule exocytosis and cytokine production inhibited by Ly-49A engagement. *Cell Immunol*. 1998;183: 106–112. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9606994
141. Betts MR, Brenchley JM, Price DA, et al. Sensitive and viable identification of antigen-specific CD8+ T cells by a flow cytometric assay for degranulation. *J Immunol Methods*. 2003;281:65–78. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14580882
142. Alter G, Malenfant JM, Altfeld M. CD107a as a functional marker for the identification of natural killer cell activity. *J Immunol Methods*. 2004; 294:15–22. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15604012
143. Bryceson YT, March ME, Barber DF, et al. Cytolytic granule polarization and degranulation controlled by different receptors in resting NK cells. *J Exp Med*. 2005;202:1001–1012. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16203869
144. Penack O, Gentilini C, Fischer L, et al. CD56dimCD16neg cells are responsible for natural cytotoxicity against tumor targets. *Leukemia*. 2005;19:835–840. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15744340
145. Henkart PA. Lymphocyte-mediated cytotoxicity: two pathways and multiple effector molecules. *Immunity*. 1994;1:343–346. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7882166
146. Montel AH, Bochan MR, Hobbs JA, et al. Fas involvement in cytotoxicity mediated by human NK cells. *Cell Immunol*. 1995;166:236–246. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7497525
147. Arase H, Arase N, Saito T. Fas-mediated cytotoxicity by freshly isolated natural killer cells. *J Exp Med*. 1995;181:1235–1238. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7532682
148. Lee RK, Spielman J, Zhao DY, et al. Perforin, Fas ligand, and tumor necrosis factor are the major cytotoxic molecules used by lymphokine-activated killer cells. *J Immunol*. 1996;157:1919–1925. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8757310
149. Oshimi Y, Oda S, Honda Y, et al. Involvement of Fas ligand and Fas-mediated pathway in the cytotoxicity of human natural killer cells. *J Immunol*. 1996;157:2909–2915. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8816396
150. Screpanti V, Wallin RP, Ljunggren HG, et al. A central role for death receptor-mediated apoptosis in the rejection of tumors by NK cells. *J Immunol*. 2001;167:2068–2073. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11489989
151. Takeda K, Hayakawa Y, Smyth MJ, et al. Involvement of tumor necrosis factor-related apoptosis-inducing ligand in surveillance of tumor metastasis by liver natural killer cells. *Nat Med*. 2001;7:94–100. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11135622
152. Gommerman JL, Browning JL. Lymphotoxin/light, lymphoid microenvironments and autoimmune disease. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2003;3: 642–655. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12974479
153. Ware CF. Network communications: lymphotoxins, LIGHT, and TNF. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 2005;23:787–819. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15771586
154. Iizuka K, Chaplin DD, Wang Y, et al. Requirement for membrane lymphotoxin in natural killer cell development. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1999;96:6336–6340. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10339588
155. Kagi D, Ledermann B, Burki K, et al. Cytotoxicity mediated by T cells and natural killer cells is greatly impaired in perforin-deficient mice. *Nature*. 1994;369:31–37. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8164737
156. Revell PA, Grossman WJ, Thomas DA, et al. Granzyme B and the downstream granzymes C and/or F are important for cytotoxic lym-phocyte functions. *J Immunol*. 2005;174:2124–2131. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15699143

157. Pham CT, Ley TJ. Dipeptidyl peptidase I is required for the processing and activation of granzymes A and B in vivo. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1999;96:8627–8632.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10411926
158. Crozat K, Hoebe K, Ugolini S, et al. Jinx, an MCMV susceptibility phenotype caused by disruption of Unc13d: a mouse model of type 3 familial hemophagocytic lymphohistiocytosis. *J Exp Med*. 2007;204:853–863.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17420270
159. Idris AH, Smith HRC, Mason LH, et al. The natural killer cell complex genetic locus, Chok, encodes Ly49D, a target recognition receptor that activates natural killing. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1999;96:6330–6335.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10339587
160. Degliantoni G, Murphy M, Kobayashi M, et al. Natural killer (NK) cell-derived hematopoietic colony-inhibiting activity and NK cytotoxic factor. Relationship with tumor necrosis factor and synergism with immune interferon. *J Exp Med*. 1985;162:1512–1530.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3932579
161. Anegon I, Cuturi MC, Trinchieri G, et al. Interaction of Fc receptor (CD16) ligands induces transcription of interleukin 2 receptor (CD25) and lymphokine genes and expression of their products in human natural killer cells. *J Exp Med*. 1988;167:452–472.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2831292
162. Cuturi MC, Anegon I, Sherman F, et al. Production of hematopoietic colony stimulating factors by human natural killer cells. *J Exp Med*. 1989;169:569.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2521357
163. Dorner BG, Scheffold A, Rolph MS, et al. MIP-1alpha, MIP-1beta, RANTES, and ATAC/lymphotactin function together with IFN-gamma as type 1 cytokines. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2002;99:6181–6186.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11972057
164. Tripp CS, Wolf SF, Unanue ER. Interleukin 12 and tumor necrosis factor alpha are costimulators of interferon gamma production by natural killer cells in severe combined immunodeficiency mice with listeriosis, and interleukin 10 is a physiologic antagonist. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1993;90:3725–3729.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8097322
165. McCartney S, Vermi W, Gilfillan S, et al. Distinct and complementary functions of MDA5 and TLR3 in poly(I:C)-mediated activation of mouse NK cells. *J Exp Med*. 2009;206:2967–2976.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19995959
166. Dokun AO, Kim S, Smith HR, et al. Specific and nonspecific NK cell activation during virus infection. *Nat Immunol*. 2001;2:951–956.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11550009
167. Stetson DB, Mohrs M, Reinhardt RL, et al. Constitutive cytokine mRNAs mark natural killer (NK) and NK T cells poised for rapid effector function. *J Exp Med*. 2003;198:1069–1076.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14530376
168. Kim S, Poursine-Laurent J, Truscott SM, et al. Licensing of natural killer cells by host major histocompatibility complex class I molecules. *Nature*. 2005;436:709–713.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16079848
169. Biron CA. Interferons alpha and beta as immune regulators—a new look. *Immunity*. 2001;14:661–664.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11420036
170. Kärre K, Ljunggren H-G, Piontek G, et al. Selective rejection of H-2-deficient lymphoma variants suggests alternative immune defence strategy. *Nature*. 1986;319:675–678.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3951539
171. Piontek GE, Taniguchi K, Ljuggren HG, et al. YAC-1 MHC class I variants reveal an association between decreased NK sensitivity and increased H-2 expression after interferon treatment or in vivo passage. *J Immunol*. 1985;135:4281–4288.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3905967
172. Ljunggren HG, Karre K. In search of the "missing self": MHC molecules and NK cell recognition. *Immunol Today*. 1990;11:237–244.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2201309
173. Storkus WJ, Salter RD, Alexander J, et al. Class I-induced resistance to natural killing: identification of nonpermissive residues in HLA-A2. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1991;88:5989–5992.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2068075
174. Colonna M, Brooks EG, Falco M, et al. Generation of allospecific natural killer cells by stimulation across a polymorphism of HLA-C. *Science*. 1993;260:1121–1124.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8493555
175. Litwin V, Gumperz J, Parham P, et al. Specificity of HLA class I antigen recognition by human NK clones: evidence for clonal heterogeneity, protection by self and non-self alleles, and influence of the target cell type. *J Exp Med*. 1993;178:1321–1336.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8376937
176. Quillet A, Presse F, Marchiol-Fournigault C, et al. Increased resistance to non-MHC-restricted cytotoxicity related to HLA A,B expression. Direct demonstration using beta 2-microglobulin-transfected Daudi cells. *J Immunol*. 1988;141:17–20.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3288697
177. Franksson L, George E, Powis S, et al. Tumorigenicity conferred to lymphoma mutant by major histocompatibility complex-encoded transporter gene. *J Exp Med*. 1993;177:201–205.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8418201
178. Salcedo M, Momburg F, Hammerling GJ, et al. Resistance to natural killer cell lysis conferred by TAP1/2 genes in human antigen-processing mutant cells. *J Immunol*. 1994;152:1702–1708.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8120379
179. Liao NS, Bix M, Zijlstra M, et al. MHC class I deficiency: susceptibility to natural killer (NK) cells and impaired NK activity. *Science*. 1991;253:199–202.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1853205
180. Höglund P, Ohlén C, Carbone E, et al. Recognition of beta 2-microglobulin- negative (beta 2m-) T-cell blasts by natural killer cells from normal but not from beta 2m- mice: nonresponsiveness controlled by beta 2m- bone marrow in chimeric mice. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1991;88:10332–10336.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1946452
181. Bix M, Liao NS, Zijlstra M, et al. Rejection of class I MHC-deficient haemopoietic cells by irradiated MHC-matched mice. *Nature*. 1991;349:329–331.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1987491
182. Yu YYL, Kumar V, Bennett M. Murine natural killer cells and marrow graft rejection. *Ann Rev Immunol*. 1992;10:189–213.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1590985
183. Rembecki RM, Kumar V, David CS, et al. Bone marrow cell transplants involving intra-H-2 recombinant inbred mouse strains. Evidence that hemopoietic histocompatibility-1 (Hh-1) genes are distinct from H-2D or H-2L. *J Immunol*. 1988;141:2253–22560.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3049802
184. Jorgensen JL, Reay PA, Ehrici EW, et al. Molecular components of T-cell recognition. *Ann Rev Immunol*. 1992;10:835–873.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1591005
185. Kärre K. Role of target histocompatibility antigens in regulation of natural killer activity: a reevaluation and a hypothesis. In: Herberman RB, Callewaert D, eds. *Mechanisms of Cytotoxicity by NK Cells*. Orlando, FL: Academic Press; 1985:81–103.
186. Hansen TH, Bouvier M. MHC class I antigen presentation: learning from viral evasion strategies. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2009;9:503–513.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19498380
187. Holtkamp B, Cramer M, Rajewsky K. Somatic variation of H-2Kk expression and structure in a T-cell lymphoma: instability, stabilization, high production and structural mutation. *EMBO J*. 1983;2:1943–1951.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6196194
188. Gattoni-Celli S, Kirsch K, Timpane R, et al. Beta 2-microglobulin gene is mutated in a human colon cancer cell line (HCT) deficient in the expression of HLA class I antigens on the cell surface. *Cancer Res*. 1992;52:1201–1204.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1737380
189. Korkolopoulou P, Kaklamanis L, Pezzella F, et al. Loss of antigen-presenting molecules (MHC class I and TAP-1) in lung cancer. *Br J Cancer*. 1996;73:148–153.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8546899
190. Storkus WJ, Dawson JR. Target structures involved in natural killing (NK): characteristics, distribution, and candidate molecules. *Crit Rev Immunol*. 1991;10:393–416.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2021423

191. Karlhofer FM, Ribaudo RK, Yokoyama WM. MHC class I alloantigen specificity of Ly-49+ IL-2-activated natural killer cells. *Nature*. 1992; 358:66–70.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1614533
192. Long EO. Regulation of immune responses through inhibitory receptors. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 1999;17:875–904.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10358776
193. Yokoyama WM. Natural killer cells. Right-side-up and up-side-down NK-cell receptors. *Curr Biol*. 1995;5:982–985.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8542289
194. Yokoyama WM. Recognition structures on natural killer cells. *Curr Opin Immunol*. 1993;5:67–73.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8452676
195. Yokoyama WM, Seaman WE. The Ly-49 and NKR-P1 gene families encoding lectin-like receptors on natural killer cells: the NK gene complex. *Ann Rev Immunol*. 1993;11:613–635.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8476574
196. Yokoyama WM, Daniels BF, Seaman WE, et al. A family of murine NK cell receptors specific for target cell MHC class I molecules. *Sem Immunol*. 1995;7:89–101.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7579199
197. Chan PY, Takei F. Expression of a T cell receptor-like molecule on normal and malignant murine T cells detected by rat monoclonal antibodies to nonclonotypic determinants. *J Immunol*. 1986;136: 1346.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2418112
198. Nagasawa R, Gross J, Kanagawa O, et al. Identification of a novel T cell surface disulfide-bonded dimer distinct from the alpha/beta antigen receptor. *J Immunol*. 1987;138:815–824.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2433330
199. Chan PY, Takei F. Molecular cloning and characterization of a novel murine T cell surface antigen, YE1/48. *J Immunol*. 1989;142:1727.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2783949
200. Yokoyama WM, Jacobs LB, Kanagawa O, et al. A murine T lymphocyte antigen belongs to a supergene family of type II integral membrane proteins. *J Immunol*. 1989;143:1379–1386.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2787364
201. Wong S, Freeman JD, Kelleher C, et al. Ly-49 multigene family. New members of a superfamily of type II membrane proteins with lectin-like domains. *J Immunol*. 1991;147:1417–1423.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1869832
202. Smith HRC, Karlhofer FM, Yokoyama WM. Ly-49 multigene family expressed by IL-2-activated NK cells. *J Immunol*. 1994;153:1068–1079.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8027540
203. Yokoyama WM, Kehn PJ, Cohen DI, et al. Chromosomal location of the Ly-49 (A1, YE1/48) multigene family. Genetic association with the NK 1.1 antigen. *J Immunol*. 1990;145:2353–2358.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1975828
204. Karlhofer FM, Ribaudo RK, Yokoyama WM. The interaction of Ly-49 with H-2Dd globally inactivates natural killer cell cytolytic activity. *Trans Assoc Am Physicians*. 1992;105:72–85.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1309007
205. Correa I, Corral L, Raulet DH. Multiple natural killer cell-activating signals are inhibited by major histocompatibility complex class I expression in target cells. *Eur J Immunol*. 1994;24:1323–1331.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8206092
206. Kane KP. Ly-49 mediates EL4 lymphoma adhesion to isolated class I major histocompatibility complex molecules. *J Exp Med*. 1994;179: 1011–1015.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8113669
207. Daniels BF, Karlhofer FM, Seaman WE, et al. A natural killer cell receptor specific for a major histocompatibility complex class I molecule. *J Exp Med*. 1994;180:687–692.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8046342
208. Karlhofer FM, Hunziker R, Reichlin A, et al. Host MHC class I molecules modulate in vivo expression of a NK cell receptor. *J Immunol*. 1994;153:2407–2416.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8077656
209. Olsson MY, Karre K, Sentman CL. Altered phenotype and function of natural killer cells expressing the major histocompatibility complex receptor Ly-49 in mice transgenic for its ligand. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1995;92:1649–1653.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7878033
210. Held W, Dorfman JR, Wu MF, et al. Major histocompatibility complex class I dependent skewing of the natural killer cell LY49 receptor repertoire. *Eur J Immunol*. 1996;26:2286–2292.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8898935
211. Held W, Cado D, Raulet DH. Transgenic expression of the Ly49A natural killer cell receptor confers class I major histocompatibility complex (MHC)-specific inhibition and prevents bone marrow allograft rejection. *J Exp Med*. 1996;184:2037–2041.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8920892
212. Nakamura MC, Niemi EC, Fisher MJ, et al. Mouse Ly-49A interrupts early signaling events in natural killer cell cytotoxicity and functionally associates with the Shp-1 tyrosine phosphatase. *J Exp Med*. 1997;185:673–684.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9034146
213. Hanke T, Takizawa H, McMahon CW, et al. Direct assessment of MHC class I binding by seven Ly49 inhibitory NK cell receptors. *Immunity*. 1999;11:67–77.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10435580
214. Matsumoto N, Mitsuki M, Tajima K, et al. The functional binding site for the C-type lectin-like natural killer cell receptor Ly49A spans three domains of its major histocompatibility complex class I ligand. *J Exp Med*. 2001;193:147–158.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11148219
215. Matsumoto N, Yokoyama WM, Kojima S, et al. The NK cell MHC class I receptor Ly49A detects mutations on H-2D(d) inside and out-side of the peptide binding groove. *J Immunol*. 2001;166:4422–4428.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11254697
216. Wang J, Whitman MC, Natarajan K, et al. Binding of the natural killer cell inhibitory receptor Ly49A to its major histocompatibility complex class I ligand. Crucial contacts include both H-2Dd and beta 2-microglobulin. *J Biol Chem*. 2002;277:1433–1442.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11696552
217. Tormo J, Natarajan K, Margulies DH, et al. Crystal structure of a lectin-like natural killer cell receptor bound to its MHC class I ligand. *Nature*. 1999;402:623–631.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10604468
218. Olsson-Alheim MY, Sundback J, Karre K, et al. The MHC class I molecule H-2Dp inhibits murine NK cells via the inhibitory receptor Ly49A. *J Immunol*. 1999;162:7010–7014.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10358142
219. Jonsson AH, Yang L, Kim S, et al. Effects of MHC class I alleles on licensing of Ly49A+ NK cells. *J Immunol*. 2010;184:3424–3432.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20194719
220. Correa I, Raulet DH. Binding of diverse peptides to MHC class I molecules inhibits target cell lysis by activated natural killer cells. *Immunity*.1995;2:61–71.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7541307
221. Orihuela M, Margulies DH, Yokoyama WM. The natural killer cell receptor Ly-49A recognizes a peptide-induced conformational determinant on its major histocompatibility complex class I ligand. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1996;93:11792–11797.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8876216
222. Weis WI, Drickamer K. Structural basis of lectin-carbohydrate recognition. *Ann Rev Biochem*. 1996;65:441–473.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8811186
223. Natarajan K, Dimasi N, Wang J, et al. Structure and function of natural killer cell receptors: multiple molecular solutions to self, nonself discrimination. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 2002;20:853–885.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11861620
224. Matsumoto N, Ribaudo RK, Abastado J-P, et al. The lectin-like NK cell receptor Ly-49A recognizes a carbohydrate-independent epitope on its MHC class I ligand. *Immunity*. 1998;8:245–254.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9492005
225. Mitsuki M, Matsumoto N, Yamamoto K. A species-specific determinant on beta2-microglobulin required for Ly49A recognition of its MHC class I ligand. *Int Immunol*. 2004;16:197–204.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14734604
226. Michaelsson J, Achour A, Rolle A, et al. MHC Class I Recognition by NK Receptors in the Ly49 Family Is Strongly Influenced by the beta(2)-Microglobulin Subunit. *J Immunol*. 2001;166:7327–7334.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11390483
227. Wilhelm BT, Gagnier L, Mager DL. Sequence analysis of the ly49 cluster in C57BL/6 mice: a rapidly evolving multigene family in the immune system. *Genomics*. 2002;80:646–661.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12504856

228. Silver ET, Elliott JF, Kane KP. Alternatively spliced LY-49D and H transcripts are found in IL-2-activated NK cells. *Immunol Today*. 1996;44: 14–17.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8824161
229. Gays F, Koh AS, Mickiewicz KM, et al. Comprehensive analysis of transcript start sites in ly49 genes reveals an unexpected relationship with gene function and a lack of upstream promoters. *PLoS One*. 2011;6:e18475.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21483805
230. Brennan J, Mager D, Jefferies W, et al. Expression of different members of the Ly-49 gene family defines distinct natural killer cell subsets and cell adhesion properties. *J Exp Med*. 1994;180:2287–2295.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7964501
231. Lemieux S, Ouellet-Talbot F, Lusignan Y, et al. Identification of murine natural killer cell subsets with monoclonal antibodies derived from 129 anti-C57BL/6 immune spleen cells. *Cell Immunol*. 1991;134:191–204.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2013102
232. Stoneman ER, Bennett M, An J, et al. Cloning and characterization of 5E6(Ly-49C), a receptor molecule expressed on a subset of murine natural killer cells. *J Exp Med*. 1995;182:305–313.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7629496
233. Brennan J, Lemieux S, Freeman JD, et al. Heterogeneity among Ly-49C natural killer (NK) cells - characterization of highly related receptors with differing functions and expression patterns. *J Exp Med*. 1996;184: 2085–2090.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8976165
234. Dam J, Guan R, Natarajan K, et al. Variable MHC class I engagement by Ly49 natural killer cell receptors demonstrated by the crystal structure of Ly49C bound to H-2K(b). *Nat Immunol*. 2003;4:1213–1222.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14595439
235. Deng L, Cho S, Malchiodi EL, et al. Molecular architecture of the major histocompatibility complex class I-binding site of Ly49 natural killer cell receptors. *J Biol Chem*. 2008;283:16840–16849.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18426793
236. Franksson L, Sundback J, Achour A, et al. Peptide dependency and selectivity of the NK cell inhibitory receptor Ly-49C. *Eur J Immunol*. 1999;29:2748–2758.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10508249
237. Dam J, Baber J, Grishaev A, et al. Variable dimerization of the Ly49A natural killer cell receptor results in differential engagement of its MHC class I ligand. *J Mol Biol*. 2006;362:102–113.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16899255
238. Doucey MA, Scarpellino L, Zimmer J, et al. Cis association of Ly49A with MHC class I restricts natural killer cell inhibition. *Nat Immunol*. 2004;5:328–336.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14973437
239. Johansson MH, Bieberich C, Jay G, et al. Natural killer cell tolerance in mice with mosaic expression of major histocompatibility complex class I transgene. *J Exp Med*. 1997;186:35–64.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9236187
240. Andersson M, Freland S, Johansson MH, et al. MHC class I mosaic mice reveal insights into control of Ly49C inhibitory receptor expression in NK cells. *J Immunol*. 1998;161:6475–6479.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9862670
241. Chalifour A, Scarpellino L, Back J, et al. A Role for cis interaction between the inhibitory Ly49A receptor and MHC class I for natural killer cell education. *Immunity*. 2009;30:337–347.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19249231
242. Back J, Malchiodi EL, Cho S, et al. Distinct conformations of Ly49 natural killer cell receptors mediate MHC class I recognition in trans and cis. *Immunity*. 2009;31:598–608.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19818651
243. Orr MT, Lanier LL. Inhibitory Ly49 receptors on mouse natural killer cells. *Curr Top Microbiol Immunol*. 2011;350:67–87.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20680808
244. Dimasi N, Sawicki MW, Reineck LA, et al. Crystal structure of the Ly49I natural killer cell receptor reveals variability in dimerization mode within the Ly49 family. *J Mol Biol*. 2002;320:573–585.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12096910
245. Kubota A, Kubota S, Lohwasser S, et al. Diversity of NK cell receptor repertoire in adult and neonatal mice. *J Immunol*. 1999;163:212–216.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10384118
246. Dorfman JR, Raulet DH. Acquisition of Ly49 receptor expression by developing natural killer cells. *J Exp Med*. 1998;187:609–618.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9463411
247. Aust JG, Gays F, Hussain F, et al. Mice lacking Ly49E show normal NK cell development and provide evidence for probabilistic expression of Ly49E in NK cells and T cells. *J Immunol*. 2011;186:2013–2023.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21248256
248. Salcedo M, Diehl AD, Olsson-Alheim MY, et al. Altered expression of Ly49 inhibitory receptors on natural killer cells from MHC class I-deficient mice. *J Immunol*. 1997;158:3174–3180.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9120271
249. Held W, Roland J, Raulet DH. Allelic exclusion of Ly49-family genes encoding class I MHC-specific receptors on NK cells. *Nature*. 1995;376:355–358.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7630404
250. Saleh A, Davies GE, Pascal V, et al. Identification of probabilistic transcriptional switches in the Ly49 gene cluster: a eukaryotic mechanism for selective gene activation. *Immunity*. 2004;21:55–66.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15345220
251. Rouhi A, Gagnier L, Takei F, et al. Evidence for epigenetic maintenance of Ly49a monoallelic gene expression. *J Immunol*. 2006;176:2991–2999.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16493057
252. Kunz B, Held W. Positive and negative roles of the transacting T cell factor-1 for the acquisition of distinct Ly-49 MHC class I receptors by NK cells. *J Immunol*. 2001;166:6181–6187.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11342639
253. Ioannidis V, Kunz B, Tanamachi DM, et al. Initiation and limitation of Ly-49A NK cell receptor acquisition by T cell factor-1. *J Immunol*. 2003; 171:769–775.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12847244
254. Held W, Clevers H, Grosschedl R. Redundant functions of TCF-1 and LEF-1 during T and NK cell development, but unique role of TCF-1 for Ly49 NK cell receptor acquisition. *Eur J Immunol*. 2003;33:1393–1398.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12731066
255. Yokoyama WM, Ryan JC, Hunter JJ, et al. cDNA cloning of mouse NKR-P1 and genetic linkage with Ly-49. Identification of a natural killer cell gene complex on mouse chromosome 6. *J Immunol*. 1991;147: 3229–3236.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1680927
256. Yokoyama WM, Plougastel BF. Immune functions encoded by the natural killer gene complex. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2003;3:304–316.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12669021
257. Makrigiannis AP, Patel D, Goulet ML, et al. Direct sequence comparison of two divergent class I MHC natural killer cell receptor haplotypes. *Genes Immun*. 2005;6:71–83.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15674375
258. Anderson SK, Dewar K, Goulet ML, et al. Complete elucidation of a minimal class I MHC natural killer cell receptor haplotype. *Genes Immun*. 2005;6:481–492.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15931229
259. Belanger S, Tai LH, Anderson SK, et al. Ly49 cluster sequence analysis in a mouse model of diabetes: an expanded repertoire of activating receptors in the NOD genome. *Genes Immun*. 2008;9:509–521.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18528402
260. Higuchi DA, Cahan P, Gao J, et al. Structural variation of the mouse natural killer gene complex. *Genes Immun*. 2010;11:637–648.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20861859
261. Sundback J, Karre K, Sentman CL. Cloning of minimally divergent allelic forms of the natural killer (NK) receptor LY-49C, differentially controlled by host genes in the MHC and NK gene complexes. *J Immunol*. 1996;157:3936–3942.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8892625
262. Mehta IK, Smith HRC, Wang J, et al. A "chimeric" C57L-derived Ly49 inhibitory receptor resembling the Ly49D activation receptor. *Cell Immunol*. 2001;209:29–41.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11414734
263. Makrigiannis AP, Pau AT, Saleh A, et al. Class i mhc-binding characteristics of the 129/j ly49 repertoire. *J Immunol*. 2001;166:5034–5043.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11290784
264. Mehta IK, Wang J, Roland J, et al. Ly49A allelic variation and MHC class I specificity. *Immunogenetics*. 2001;53:572–583.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11685470
265. Hansen TH, Carreno BM, Sachs DH. The major histocompatibility complex. In: Paul WE, ed. *Fundamental Immunology*. 3rd ed. New York, NY: Raven Press; 1993:577–628.

266. Maeda M, Lohwasser S, Yamamura T, et al. Regulation of NKT cells by Ly49: analysis of primary NKT cells and generation of NKT cell line. *J Immunol*. 2001;167:4180–4186.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11591738
267. Coles MC, McMahon CW, Takizawa H, et al. Memory CD8 T lymphocytes express inhibitory MHC-specific Ly49 receptors. *Eur J Immunol*. 2000;30:236–244.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10602046
268. Toyama-Sorimachi N, Tsujimura Y, Maruya M, et al. Ly49Q, a member of the Ly49 family that is selectively expressed on myeloid lineage cells and involved in regulation of cytoskeletal architecture. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2004;101:1016–1021.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14732700
269. Gays F, Aust JG, Reid DM, et al. Ly49B Is expressed on multiple subpopulations of myeloid cells. *J Immunol*. 2006;177:5840–5851.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17056508
270. Tai LH, Goulet ML, Belanger S, et al. Positive regulation of plasmacytoid dendritic cell function via Ly49Q recognition of class I MHC. *J Exp Med*. 2008;205:3187–3199.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19075287
271. Yoshizaki M, Tazawa A, Kasumi E, et al. Spatiotemporal regulation of intracellular trafficking of Toll-like receptor 9 by an inhibitory receptor, Ly49Q. *Blood*. 2009;114:1518–1527.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19528537
272. Van Den Broeck T, Stevenaert F, Taveirne S, et al. Ly49E-dependent inhibition of natural killer cells by urokinase plasminogen activator. *Blood*. 2008;112:5046–5051.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18784372
273. Moretta A, Tambussi G, Bottino C, et al. A novel surface antigen expressed by a subset of human CD3- CD16+ natural killer cells. Role in cell activation and regulation of cytolytic function. *J Exp Med*. 1990;171:695.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2137855
274. Moretta A, Bottino C, Pende D, et al. Identification of four subsets of human CD3-CD16+ natural killer (NK) cells by the expression of clonally distributed functional surface molecules: correlation between subset assignment of NK clones and ability to mediate specific alloantigen recognition. *J Exp Med*. 1990;172:1589–1598.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2147946
275. Moretta A, Biassoni R, Bottino C, et al. Major histocompatibility complex class I-specific receptors on human natural killer and T lymphocytes. *Immunol Rev*. 1997;155:105–117.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9059886
276. Colonna M, Borsellino G, Falco M, et al. HLA-C is the inhibitory ligand that determines dominant resistance to lysis by NK1- and NK2-specific natural killer cells. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1993;90:12000–12004.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8265660
277. Colonna M. Specificity and function of immunoglobulin super-family NK cell inhibitory and stimulatory receptors. *Immunol Rev*. 1997;155:127–133.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9059888
278. Ciccone E, Pende D, Viale O, et al. Involvement of HLA class I alleles in natural killer (NK) cell-specific functions: expression of HLA-Cw3 confers selective protection from lysis by alloreactive NK clones displaying a defined specificity (specificity 2). *J Exp Med*. 1992;176:963.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1328466
279. Moretta A, Vitale M, Bottino C, et al. P58 molecules as putative receptors for major histocompatibility complex (MHC) class I molecules in human natural killer (NK) cells. Anti-p58 antibodies reconstitute lysis of MHC class I-protected cells in NK clones displaying different specificities. *J Exp Med*. 1993;178:597–604.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8340759
280. Litwin V, Gumperz J, Parham P, et al. NKB1: a natural killer cell receptor involved in the recognition of polymorphic HLA-B molecules. *J Exp Med*. 1994;180:537–543.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8046332
281. Lanier LL, Corliss B, Phillips JH. Arousal and inhibition of human NK cells. *Immunol Rev*. 1997;155:145–154.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9059890
282. Gumperz JE, Litwin V, Phillips JH, et al. The Bw4 public epitope of HLA-B molecules confers reactivity with natural killer cell clones that express NKB1, a putative HLA receptor. *J Exp Med*. 1995;181:1133–1144.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7532677
283. Pende D, Biassoni R, Cantoni C, et al. The natural killer cell receptor specific for HLA-A allotypes: a novel member of the p58/p70 family of inhibitory receptors that is characterized by three immunoglobulin-like domains and is expressed as a 140-kD disulphide-linked dimer. *J Exp Med*. 1996;184:505–518.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8760804
284. Dohring C, Scheidegger D, Samaridis J, et al. A human killer inhibitory receptor specific for HLA-A. *J Immunol*. 1996;156:3098–3101.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8617928
285. Wagtmann N, Biassoni R, Cantoni C, et al. Molecular clones of the p58 NK cell receptor reveal immunoglobulin-related molecules with diversity in both the extra- and intracellular domains. *Immunity*. 1995;2:439–449.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7749980
286. Colonna M, Samaridis J. Cloning of immunoglobulin-superfamily members associated with HLA-C and HLA-B recognition by human natural killer cells. *Science*. 1995;268:405–408.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7716543
287. D'Andrea A, Chang C, Franz-Bacon K, et al. Molecular cloning of NKB1. A natural killer cell receptor for HLA-B allotypes. *J Immunol*. 1995;155:2306–2310.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7650366
288. Long EO, Colonna M, Lanier LL. Inhibitory MHC class I receptors on NK and T cells: a standard nomenclature. *Immunol Today*. 1996;17:100.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8808061
289. Marsh SG, Parham P, Dupont B, et al. Killer-cell immunoglobulin-like receptor (KIR) nomenclature report, 2002. *Tissue Antigens*. 2003;62:79–86.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12859599
290. Rajagopalan S, Long EO. A human histocompatibility leukocyte antigen(HLA)-G-specific receptor expressed on all natural killer cells. *J Exp Med*. 1999;189:1093–1100.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10190900
291. Cantoni C, Verdiani S, Falco M, et al. P49, a putative HLA class I-specific inhibitory NK receptor belonging to the immunoglobulin superfamily. *Eur J Immunol*. 1998;28:1980–1990.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9645380
292. Faure M, Long EO. KIR2DL4 (CD158d), an NK cell-activating receptor with inhibitory potential. *J Immunol*. 2002;168:6208–6214.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12055234
293. Miah SM, Hughes TL, Campbell KS. KIR2DL4 differentially signals downstream functions in human NK cells through distinct structural modules. *J Immunol*. 2008;180:2922–2932.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18292514
294. Wagtmann N, Rajagopalan S, Winter CC, et al. Killer cell inhibitory receptors specific for HLA-C and HLA-B identified by direct binding and by functional transfer. *Immunity*. 1995;3:801–809.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8777725
295. Dohring C, Colonna M. Human natural killer cell inhibitory receptors bind to HLA class I molecules. *Eur J Immunol*. 1996;26:365–369.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8617305
296. Fan QOR, Garboczi DN, Winter CC, et al. Direct binding of a soluble natural killer cell inhibitory receptor to a soluble human leukocyte antigen-Cw4 class I major histocompatibility complex molecule. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1996;93:7178–7183.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8692965
297. Cambiaggi A, Verthuy C, Naquet P, et al. Natural killer cell acceptance of H-2 mismatch bone marrow grafts in transgenic mice expressing HLA-Cw3 specific killer cell inhibitory receptor. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1997;94:8088–8092.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9223319
298. Vales-Gomez M, Reyburn HT, Mandelboim M, et al. Kinetics of interaction of HLA-C ligands with natural killer cell inhibitory receptors. *Immunity*. 1998;9:337–344.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9768753
299. Boyington JC, Motyka SA, Schuck P, et al. Crystal structure of an NK cell immunoglobulin-like receptor in complex with its class I MHC ligand. *Nature*. 2000;405:537–543.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10850706
300. Maenaka K, Juji T, Nakayama T, et al. Killer cell immunoglobulin receptors and T cell receptors bind peptide-major histocompatibility complex class I with distinct thermodynamic and kinetic properties. *J Biol Chem*. 1999;274:28329–28334.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10497191

301. Vivian JP, Duncan RC, Berry R, et al. Killer cell immunoglobulin-like receptor 3DL1-mediated recognition of human leukocyte antigen B. *Nature*. 2011;479:401–405. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22020283
302. Rajagopalan S, Long EO. Zinc bound to the killer cell-inhibitory receptor modulates the negative signal in human NK cells. *J Immunol*. 1998;161:1299–1305. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9686591
303. Vales-Gomez M, Erskine RA, Deacon MP, et al. The role of zinc in the binding of killer cell Ig-like receptors to class I MHC proteins. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2001;98:1734–1739. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11172020
304. Fan QR, Long EO, Wiley DC. Crystal structure of the human natural killer cell inhibitory receptor KIR2DL1-HLA-Cw4 complex. *Nat Immunol*. 2001;2:452–460. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11323700
305. Cella M, Longo A, Ferrara GB, et al. NK3-specific natural killer cells are selectively inhibited by Bw4-positive HLA alleles with isoleucine 80. *J Exp Med*. 1994;180:1235–1242. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7931060
306. Luque I, Solana R, Galiani MD, et al. Threonine 80 on HLA-B27 confers protection against lysis by a group of natural killer clones. *Eur J Immunol*. 1996;26:1974–1977. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8765048
307. Mandelboim O, Reyburn HT, Valesgomez M, et al. Protection from lysis by natural killer cells of group 1 and 2 specificity is mediated by residue 80 in human histocompatibility leukocyte antigen C alleles and also occurs with empty major histocompatibility complex molecules. *J Exp Med*. 1996;184:913–922. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9064351
308. Mandelboim O, Reyburn HT, Sheu EG, et al. The binding site of NK receptors on HLA-C molecules. *Immunity*. 1997;6:341–350. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9075934
309. Rajagopalan S, Long EO. The direct binding of a p58 killer cell inhibitory receptor to human histocompatibility leukocyte antigen (HLA)-Cw4 exhibits peptide selectivity. *J Exp Med*. 1997;185:1523–1528. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9126935
310. Fadda L, Borhis G, Ahmed P, et al. Peptide antagonism as a mechanism for NK cell activation. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2010;107:10160–10165. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20439706
311. Barrow AD, Trowsdale J. The extended human leukocyte receptor complex: diverse ways of modulating immune responses. *Immunol Rev*. 2008;224:98–123. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18759923
312. Kelley J, Walter L, Trowsdale J. Comparative genomics of natural killer cell receptor gene clusters. *PLoS Genet*. 2005;1:129–139. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16132082
313. Welch AY, Kasahara M, Spain LM. Identification of the mouse killer immunoglobulin-like receptor-like (Kirl) gene family mapping to chromosome X. *Immunogenetics*. 2003;54:782–790. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12618911
314. Hoelsbrekken SE, Nylenna O, Saether PC, et al. Cutting edge: molecular cloning of a killer cell Ig-like receptor in the mouse and rat. *J Immunol*. 2003;170:2259–2263. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12594244
315. Vilches C, Parham P. KIR: diverse, rapidly evolving receptors of innate and adaptive immunity. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 2002;20:217–251. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11861603
316. Bashirova AA, Martin MP, McVicar DW, et al. The killer immunoglobulin-like receptor gene cluster: tuning the genome for defense. *Annu Rev Genomics Hum Genet*. 2006;7:277–300. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16824023
317. Pyo CW, Guethlein LA, Vu Q, et al. Different patterns of evolution in the centromeric and telomeric regions of group A and B haplotypes of the human killer cell Ig-like receptor locus. *PLoS One*. 2010;5:e15115. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21206914
318. Hsu KC, Chida S, Geraghty DE, et al. The killer cell immunoglobulin-like receptor (KIR) genomic region: gene-order, haplotypes and allelic polymorphism. *Immunol Rev*. 2002;190:40–52. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12493005
319. Wang LL, Mehta IK, LeBlanc PA, et al. Mouse natural killer cells express gp49B1, a structural homologue of human killer inhibitory receptors. *J Immunol*. 1997;158:13–17. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8977170
320. Rojo S, Burshtyn DN, Long EO, et al. Type I transmembrane receptor with inhibitory function in mouse mast cells and NK cells. *J Immunol*. 1997;158:9–12. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8977169
321. Katz HR, Vivier E, Castells MC, et al. Mouse mast cell gp49B1 contains two immunoreceptor tyrosine-based inhibition motifs and suppresses mast cell activation when coligated with the high-affinity Fc receptor for IgE. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1996;93:10809–10814. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8855262
322. Wang LL, Chu DT, Dokun AO, et al. Inducible expression of the gp49B inhibitory receptor on NK cells. *J Immunol*. 2000;164:5215–5220. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10799881
323. Castells MC, Klickstein LB, Hassani K, et al. gp49B1-alpha(v) beta3 interaction inhibits antigen-induced mast cell activation. *Nat Immunol*. 2001;2:436–442. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11323698
324. Norris HH, Peterson ME, Stebbins CC, et al. Inhibitory receptor gp49B regulates eosinophil infiltration during allergic inflammation. *J Leukoc Biol*. 2007;82:1531–1541. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17761953
325. Kasai S, Inui M, Nakamura K, et al. A novel regulatory role of gp49B on dendritic cells in T-cell priming. *Eur J Immunol*. 2008;38:2426–2437. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18792399
326. Breslow RG, Rao JJ, Xing W, et al. Inhibition of Th2 adaptive immune responses and pulmonary inflammation by leukocyte Ig-like receptor B4 on dendritic cells. *J Immunol*. 2010;184:1003–1013. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19966208
327. Zhou JS, Friend DS, Feldweg AM, et al. Prevention of lipopolysaccharide-induced microangiopathy by gp49B1: evidence for an important role for gp49B1 expression on neutrophils. *J Exp Med*. 2003;198:1243–1251. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14557414
328. Zhou JS, Friend DS, Lee DM, et al. gp49B1 deficiency is associated with increases in cytokine and chemokine production and severity of proliferative synovitis induced by anti-type II collagen mAb. *Eur J Immunol*. 2005;35:1530–1538. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15827966
329. Westgaard IH, Berg SF, Orstavik S, et al. Identification of a human member of the Ly-49 multigene family. *Eur J Immunol*. 1998;28:1839–1846. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9645365
330. Flornes LM, Nylenna O, Saether PC, et al. The complete inventory of receptors encoded by the rat natural killer cell gene complex. *Immunogenetics*. 2010;62:521–530. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20544345
331. Barten R, Torkar M, Haude A, et al. Divergent and convergent evolution of NK-cell receptors. *Trends Immunol*. 2001;22:52–57. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11286693
332. Yoder JA, Litman GW. The phylogenetic origins of natural killer receptors and recognition: relationships, possibilities, and realities. *Immunogenetics*. 2011;63:123–141. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21191578
333. Mager DL, McQueen KL, Wee V, et al. Evolution of natural killer cell receptors: coexistence of functional Ly49 and KIR genes in baboons. *Curr Biol*. 2001;11:626–630. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11369209
334. Wilhelm BT, Mager DL. Rapid expansion of the Ly49 gene cluster in rat. *Genomics*. 2004;84:218–221. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15203220
335. Nylenna O, Naper C, Vaage JT, et al. The genes and gene organization of the Ly49 region of the rat natural killer cell gene complex. *Eur J Immunol*. 2005;35:261–272. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15593300
336. Hao L, Nei M. Genomic organization and evolutionary analysis of Ly49 genes encoding the rodent natural killer cell receptors: rapid evolution by repeated gene duplication. *Immunogenetics*. 2004;56:343–354. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15316687
337. Gagnier L, Wilhelm BT, Mager DL. Ly49 genes in non-rodent mammals. *Immunogenetics*. 2003;55:109–115. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12712264
338. Kaufman J, Milne S, Gobel TW, et al. The chicken B locus is a minimal essential major histocompatibility complex. *Nature*. 1999;401:923–925. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10553909

339. Rogers SL, Gobel TW, Viertlboeck BC, et al. Characterization of the chicken C-type lectin-like receptors B-NK and B-lec suggests that the NK complex and the MHC share a common ancestral region. *J Immunol*. 2005;174:3475–3483. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15749883
340. Hao L, Klein J, Nei M. Heterogeneous but conserved natural killer receptor gene complexes in four major orders of mammals. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2006;103:3192–3197. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16492762
341. Khakoo SI, Rajalingam R, Shum BP, et al. Rapid evolution of NK cell receptor systems demonstrated by comparison of chimpanzees and humans. *Immunity*. 2000;12:687–698. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10894168
342. Hershberger KL, Shyam R, Miura A, et al. Diversity of the killer cell Ig-like receptors of rhesus monkeys. *J Immunol*. 2001;166:4380–4390. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11254692
343. Rajalingam R, Hong M, Adams EJ, et al. Short KIR haplotypes in pygmy chimpanzee (Bonobo) resemble the conserved framework of diverse human KIR haplotypes. *J Exp Med*. 2001;193:135–146. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11136827
344. Storset AK, Slettedal IO, Williams JL, et al. Natural killer cell receptors in cattle: a bovine killer cell immunoglobulin-like receptor multigene family contains members with divergent signaling motifs. *Eur J Immunol*. 2003;33:980–990. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12672064
345. Blokhuis JH, van der Wiel MK, Doxiadis GG, et al. The extreme plasticity of killer cell Ig-like receptor (KIR) haplotypes differentiates rhesus macaques from humans. *Eur J Immunol*. 2011;41:2719–2728. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21710469
346. Older Aguilar AM, Guethlein LA, Hermes M, et al. Rhesus macaque KIR bind human MHC class I with broad specificity and recognize HLA-C more effectively than HLA-A and HLA-B. *Immunogenetics*. 2011;63:577–585. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21614583
347. Rosner C, Kruse PH, Hermes M, et al. Rhesus macaque inhibitory and activating KIR3D interact with Mamu-A-encoded ligands. *J Immunol*. 2011;186:2156–2163. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21257962
348. Hammond JA, Guethlein LA, Abi-Rached L, et al. Evolution and survival of marine carnivores did not require a diversity of killer cell Ig-like receptors or Ly49 NK cell receptors. *J Immunol*. 2009;182:3618–3627. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19265140
349. Yoder JA, Mueller MG, Wei S, et al. Immune-type receptor genes in zebrafish share genetic and functional properties with genes encoded by the mammalian leukocyte receptor cluster. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2001;98:6771–6776. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11381126
350. Hao L, Nei M. Rapid expansion of killer cell immunoglobulin-like receptor genes in primates and their coevolution with MHC Class I genes. *Gene*. 2005;347:149–159. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15733532
351. De Tomaso AW. Sea squirts and immune tolerance. *Dis Model Mech*. 2009;2:440–445. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19726803
352. De Tomaso AW, Nyholm SV, Palmeri KJ, et al. Isolation and characterization of a protochordate histocompatibility locus. *Nature*. 2005;438:454–459. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16306984
353. Nyholm SV, Passegue E, Ludington WB, et al. fester, a candidate allorecognition receptor from a primitive chordate. *Immunity*. 2006;25:163–173. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16860765
354. McKitrick TR, Muscat CC, Pierce JD, et al. Allorecognition in a basal chordate consists of independent activating and inhibitory pathways. *Immunity*. 2011;34:616–626. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21497115
355. Houchins JP, Yabe T, McSherry C, et al. DNA sequence analysis of NKG2, a family of related cDNA clones encoding type II integral membrane proteins on human natural killer cells. *J Exp Med*. 1991;173:1017–1020. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2007850
356. Ho EL, Heusel JW, Brown MG, et al. Murine Nkg2d and Cd94 are clustered within the natural killer complex and are expressed independently in natural killer cells. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1998;95:6320–6325. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9600963
357. Aramburu J, Balboa MA, Izquierdo M, et al. A novel functional cell surface dimer (Kp43) expressed by natural killer cells and gamma/ delta TCR+ T lymphocytes. II. Modulation of natural killer cytotoxicity by anti-Kp43 monoclonal antibody. *J Immunol*. 1991;147:714–721. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1830071
358. Rubio G, Aramburu J, Ontanon J, et al. A novel functional cell surface dimer (kp43) serves as accessory molecule for the activation of a subset of human gamma delta T cells. *J Immunol*. 1993;151:1312–1321. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8335929
359. Moretta A, Vitale M, Sivori S, et al. Human natural killer cell receptors for HLA-class I molecules. Evidence that the Kp43 (CD94) molecule functions as receptor for HLA-B alleles. *J Exp Med*. 1994;180:545–555. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8046333
360. Chang C, Rodriguez A, Carretero M, et al. Molecular characterization of human CD94: a type II membrane glycoprotein related to the C-type lectin superfamily. *Eur J Immunol*. 1995;25:2433–2437. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7589107
361. Perez-Villar JJ, Melero I, Rodriguez A, et al. Functional ambivalence of the Kp43 (CD94) NK cell-associated surface antigen. *J Immunol*. 1995;154:5779–5788. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7751628
362. Phillips JH, Chang CW, Mattson J, et al. CD94 and a novel associated protein (94ap) form a NK cell receptor involved in the recognition of HLA-A, HLA-B, and HLA-C allotypes. *Immunity*. 1996;5:163–172. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8769479
363. Perez-Villar JJ, Carretero M, Navarro F, et al. Biochemical and serologic evidence for the existence of functionally distinct forms of the CD94 NK cell receptor. *J Immunol*. 1996;157:5367–5374. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8955184
364. Lazetic S, Chang C, Houchins JP, et al. Human natural killer cell receptors involved in MHC class I recognition are disulfide-linked heterodimers of CD94 and NKG2 subunits. *J Immunol*. 1996;157:4741–4745. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8943374
365. Carretero M, Cantoni C, Bellon T, et al. The CD94 and NKG2-A C-type lectins covalently assemble to form a natural killer cell inhibitory receptor for HLA class I molecules. *Eur J Immunol*. 1997;27:563–567. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9045931
366. Houchins JP, Lanier LL, Niemi EC, et al. Natural killer cell cytolytic activity is inhibited by NKG2-A and activated by NKG2-C. *J Immunol*. 1997;158:3603–3609. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9103421
367. Pazmany L, Mandelboim O, Valesgomez M, et al. Protection from natural killer cell-mediated lysis by HLA-G expression on target cells. *Science*. 1996;274:792–795. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8864122
368. Sivori S, Vitale M, Bottino C, et al. CD94 functions as a natural killer cell inhibitory receptor for different HLA class I alleles: identification of the inhibitory form of CD94 by the use of novel monoclonal antibodies. *Eur J Immunol*. 1996;26:2487–2492. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8898964
369. Pende D, Sivori S, Accame L, et al. HLA-G recognition by human natural killer cells. Involvement of CD94 both as inhibitory and as activating receptor complex. *Eur J Immunol*. 1997;27:1875–1880. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9295021
370. Perez-Villar JJ, Melero I, Navarro F, et al. The CD94/NKG2-A inhibitory receptor complex is involved in natural killer cell-mediated recognition of cells expressing HLA-G1. *J Immunol*. 1997;158:5736–5743. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9190923
371. Lee N, Llano M, Carretero M, et al. HLA-E is a major ligand for the natural killer inhibitory receptor CD94/NKG2A. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1998;95:5199–5204. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9560253
372. Braud VM, Allen DSJ, O'Callaghan CA, et al. HLA-E binds to natural-killer-cell receptors CD94/NKG2A, B and C. *Nature*. 1998;391:795–799. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9486650
373. Borrego F, Ulbrecht M, Weiss EH, et al. Recognition of human histocompatibility leukocyte antigen (HLA)-E complexed with HLA class I signal sequence-derived peptides by CD94/NKG2 confers protection from natural killer cell-mediated lysis. *J Exp Med*. 1998;187:813–818. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9480992
374. Wei XH, Orr HT. Differential expression of HLA-E, HLA-F, and HLA-G transcripts in human tissue. *Human Immunol*. 1990;29:131–142. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2249951

375. Koller BH, Geraghty DE, Shimizu Y, et al. HLA-E. A novel HLA class I gene expressed in resting T lymphocytes. *J Immunol*. 1988;141:897–904. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3260916
376. Ulbrecht M, Honka T, Person S, et al. The HLA-E gene encodes two differentially regulated transcripts and a cell surface protein. *J Immunol*. 1992;149:2945–2953. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1401923
377. Aldrich CJ, DeCloux A, Woods AS, et al. Identification of a Tap-dependent leader peptide recognized by alloreactive T cells specific for a class Ib antigen. *Cell*. 1994;79:649–658. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7525079
378. Soloski MJ, DeCloux A, Aldrich CJ, et al. Structural and functional characteristics of the class IB molecule, Qa-1. *Immunol Rev*. 1995;147:67–89. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8847081
379. Vance RE, Kraft JR, Altman JD, et al. Mouse CD94/NKG2A is a natural killer cell receptor for the nonclassical major histocompatibility complex (MHC) class I molecule Qa-1(b). *J Exp Med*. 1998;188:1841–1848. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9815261
380. Salcedo M, Bousso P, Ljunggren HG, et al. The Qa-1b molecule binds to a large subpopulation of murine NK cells. *Eur J Immunol*. 1998;28:4356–4361. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9862372
381. Gumperz JE, Parham P. The enigma of the natural killer cell. *Nature*. 1995;378:245–248. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7477341
382. Petrie EJ, Clements CS, Lin J, et al. CD94-NKG2A recognition of human leukocyte antigen (HLA)-E bound to an HLA class I leader sequence. *J Exp Med*. 2008;205:725–735. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18332182
383. Kaiser BK, Pizarro JC, Kerns J, et al. Structural basis for NKG2A/CD94 recognition of HLA-E. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2008;105:6696–6701. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18448674
384. Garcia KC, Adams JJ, Feng D, et al. The molecular basis of TCR germline bias for MHC is surprisingly simple. *Nat Immunol*. 2009;10:143–147. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19148199
385. Hoare HL, Sullivan LC, Pietra G, et al. Structural basis for a major histocompatibility complex class Ib-restricted T cell response. *Nat Immunol*. 2006;7:256–264. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16474394
386. Tomasec P, Braud VM, Rickards C, et al. Surface expression of HLA- E, an inhibitor of natural killer cells, enhanced by human cytomegalovirus gpUL40. *Science*. 2000;287:1031. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10669413
387. Nattermann J, Nischalke HD, Hofmeister V, et al. The HLA-A2 restricted T cell epitope HCV core 35-44 stabilizes HLA-E expression and inhibits cytolysis mediated by natural killer cells. *Am J Pathol*. 2005;166:443–453. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15681828
388. Guma M, Budt M, Saez A, et al. Expansion of CD94/NKG2C+ NK cells in response to human cytomegalovirus-infected fibroblasts. *Blood*. 2006;107:3624–3631. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16384928
389. Valiante NM, Uhrberg M, Shilling HG, et al. Functionally and structurally distinct NK cell receptor repertoires in the peripheral blood of two human donors. *Immunity*. 1997;7:739–751. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9430220
390. Lo WF, Woods AS, DeCloux A, et al. Molecular mimicry mediated by MHC class Ib molecules after infection with gram-negative pathogens. *Nat Med*. 2000;6:215–218. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10655113
391. Michaelsson J, Teixeira de Matos C, Achour A, et al. A signal peptide derived from hsp60 binds HLA-E and interferes with CD94/NKG2A recognition. *J Exp Med*. 2002;196:1403–1414. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12461076
392. Wooden SL, Kalb SR, Cotter RJ, et al. Cutting edge: HLA-E binds a peptide derived from the ATP-binding cassette transporter multidrug resistance-associated protein 7 and inhibits NK cell-mediated lysis. *J Immunol*. 2005;175:1383–1387. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16034073
393. Tajima A, Tanaka T, Ebata T, et al. Blastocyst MHC, a putative murine homologue of HLA-G, protects TAP-deficient tumor cells from natural killer cell-mediated rejection in vivo. *J Immunol*. 2003;171:1715–1721. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12902470
394. Vance RE, Jamieson AM, Cado D, et al. Implications of CD94 deficiency and monoallelic NKG2A expression for natural killer cell development and repertoire formation. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2002;99:868–873. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11782535
395. Orr MT, Wu J, Fang M, et al. Development and function of CD94-deficient natural killer cells. *PLoS One*. 2010;5:e15184. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21151939
396. Fang M, Orr MT, Spee P, et al. CD94 is essential for NK cell-mediated resistance to a lethal viral disease. *Immunity*. 2011;34:579–589. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21439856
397. Moser JM, Gibbs J, Jensen PE, et al. CD94-NKG2A receptors regulate antiviral CD8+ T cell responses. *Nat Immunol*. 2002;3:189–195. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11812997
398. Miller JD, Peters M, Oran AE, et al. CD94/NKG2 expression does not inhibit cytotoxic function of lymphocytic choriomeningitis virus-specific CD8(+) T cells. *J Immunol*. 2002;169:693–701. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12097371
399. McMahon CW, Zajac AJ, Jamieson AM, et al. Viral and bacterial infections induce expression of multiple NK cell receptors in responding CD8(+) T cells. *J Immunol*. 2002;169:1444–1452. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12133970
400. Byers AM, Andrews NP, Lukacher AE. CD94/NKG2A expression is associated with proliferative potential of CD8 T cells during persistent polyoma virus infection. *J Immunol*. 2006;176:6121–6129. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16670321
401. Jabri B, Selby JM, Negulescu H, et al. TCR specificity dictates CD94/NKG2A expression by human CTL. *Immunity*. 2002;17:487–499. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12387742
402. Suvas S, Azkur AK, Rouse BT. Qa-1b and CD94-NKG2a interaction regulate cytolytic activity of herpes simplex virus-specific memory CD8+ T cells in the latently infected trigeminal ganglia. *J Immunol*. 2006;176:1703–1711. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16424200
403. Cavanaugh VJ, Raulet DH, Campbell AE. Upregulation of CD94/NKG2A receptors and Qa-1b ligand during murine cytomegalovirus infection of salivary glands. *J Gen Virol*. 2007;88:1440–1445. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17412971
404. Zhou J, Matsuoka M, Cantor H, et al. Cutting edge: engagement of NKG2A on CD8+ effector T cells limits immunopathology in influenza pneumonia. *J Immunol*. 2008;180:25–29. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18096998
405. Cosman D, Fanger N, Borges L, et al. A novel immunoglobulin superfamily receptor for cellular and viral MHC class I molecules. *Immunity*. 1997;7:273–282. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9285411
406. Colonna M, Navarro F, Bellon T, et al. A common inhibitory receptor for MHC class I molecules on human lymphoid and myelomonocytic cells. *J Exp Med*. 1997;186:1809–1818. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9382880
407. Jones DC, Kosmoliaptsis V, Apps R, et al. HLA class I allelic sequence and conformation regulate leukocyte Ig-like receptor binding. *J Immunol*. 2011;186:2990–2997. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21270408
408. Chapman TL, Heikeman AP, Bjorkman PJ. The inhibitory receptor LIR-1 uses a common binding interaction to recognize class I MHC molecules and the viral homolog UL18. *Immunity*. 1999;11:603–613. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10591185
409. Willcox BE, Thomas LM, Bjorkman PJ. Crystal structure of HLA-A2 bound to LIR-1, a host and viral major histocompatibility complex receptor. *Nat Immunol*. 2003;4:913–919. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12897781
410. Shiroishi M, Kuroki K, Rasubala L, et al. Structural basis for recognition of the nonclassical MHC molecule HLA-G by the leukocyte Ig-like receptor B2 (LILRB2/LIR2/ILT4/CD85d). *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2006;103:16412–16417. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17056715
411. Yang Z, Bjorkman PJ. Structure of UL18, a peptide-binding viral MHC mimic, bound to a host inhibitory receptor. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2008;105:10095–10100. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18632577
412. Hirayasu K, Ohashi J, Tanaka H, et al. Evidence for natural selection on leukocyte immunoglobulin-like receptors for HLA class I in north-east Asians. *Am J Hum Genet*. 2008;82:1075–1083. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18439545

413. Wilson MJ, Torkar M, Haude A, et al. Plasticity in the organization and sequences of human KIR/ILT gene families. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2000;97:4778–4783. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10781084
414. Davidson CL, Li NL, Burshtyn DN. LILRB1 polymorphism and surface phenotypes of natural killer cells. *Hum Immunol*. 2010;71:942–949. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20600445
415. Kuroki K, Tsuchiya N, Shiroishi M, et al. Extensive polymorphisms of LILRB1 (ILT2, LIR1) and their association with HLA-DRB1 shared epitope negative rheumatoid arthritis. *Hum Mol Genet*. 2005;14:2469–2480. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16014635
416. Kumar V, McNerney ME. A new self: MHC-class-I-independent natural-killer-cell self-tolerance. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2005;5:363–374. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15841099
417. Meyaard L, Adema GJ, Chang C, et al. LAIR-1, a novel inhibitory receptor expressed on human mononuclear leukocytes. *Immunity*. 1997;7:283–290. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9285412
418. Lebbink RJ, de Ruiter T, Verbrugge A, et al. The mouse homologue of the leukocyte-associated Ig-like receptor-1 is an inhibitory receptor that recruits Src homology region 2-containing protein tyrosine phosphatase (SHP)-2, but not SHP-1. *J Immunol*. 2004;172:5535–5543. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15100296
419. Meyaard L, van der Vuurst de Vries AR, de Ruiter T, et al. The epithelial cellular adhesion molecule (Ep-CAM) is a ligand for the leukocyte-associated immunoglobulin-like receptor (LAIR). *J Exp Med*. 2001;194:107–112. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11435477
420. Meyaard L, van der Vuurst de Vries AR, de Ruiter T, et al. Retraction. *J Exp Med*. 2003;198:1129. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14517276
421. Lebbink RJ, de Ruiter T, Adelmeijer J, et al. Collagens are functional, high affinity ligands for the inhibitory immune receptor LAIR-1. *J Exp Med*. 2006;203:1419–1425. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16754721
422. Brondijk TH, de Ruiter T, Ballering J, et al. Crystal structure and collagen-binding site of immune inhibitory receptor LAIR-1: unexpected implications for collagen binding by platelet receptor GPVI. *Blood*. 2010;115:1364–1373. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20007810
423. Verbrugge A, Rijkers ES, de Ruiter T, et al. Leukocyte-associated Ig-like receptor-1 has SH2 domain-containing phosphatase-independent function and recruits C-terminal Src kinase. *Eur J Immunol*. 2006;36:190–198. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16380958
424. Varki A, Angata T. Siglecs—the major subfamily of I-type lectins. *Glycobiol*. 2006;16:1R–27R. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16014749
425. Cao H, Crocker PR. Evolution of CD33-related siglecs: regulating host immune functions and escaping pathogen exploitation? *Immunol*. 2011;132:18–26. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21070233
426. Falco M, Biassoni R, Bottino C, et al. Identification and molecular cloning of p75/AIRM1, a novel member of the sialoadhesin family that functions as an inhibitory receptor in human natural killer cells. *J Exp Med*. 1999;190:793–802. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10499918
427. Avril T, Floyd H, Lopez F, et al. The membrane-proximal immunoreceptor tyrosine-based inhibitory motif is critical for the inhibitory signaling mediated by Siglecs-7 and -9, CD33-related Siglecs expressed on human monocytes and NK cells. *J Immunol*. 2004;173:6841–6849 http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15557178
428. Nicoll G, Avril T, Lock K, et al. Ganglioside GD3 expression on target cells can modulate NK cell cytotoxicity via siglec-7-dependent and -independent mechanisms. *Eur J Immunol*. 2003;33:1642–1648. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12778482
429. Avril T, North SJ, Haslam SM, et al. Probing the cis interactions of the inhibitory receptor Siglec-7 with {alpha}2,8-disialylated ligands on natural killer cells and other leukocytes using glycan-specific antibodies and by analysis of {alpha}2,8-sialyltransferase gene expression. *J Leukoc Biol*. 2006;80(4):787–796. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16857734
430. Mousseau DD, Banville D, L'Abbe D, et al. PILRalpha, a novel immunoreceptor tyrosine-based inhibitory motif-bearing protein, recruits SHP-1 upon tyrosine phosphorylation and is paired with the truncated counterpart PILRbeta. *J Biol Chem*. 2000;275:4467–4474. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10660620
431. Wilson MD, Cheung J, Martindale DW, et al. Comparative analysis of the paired immunoglobulin-like receptor (PILR) locus in six mammalian genomes: duplication, conversion, and the birth of new genes. *Physiol Genomics*. 2006;27:201–218. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16926269
432. Shiratori I, Ogasawara K, Saito T, et al. Activation of natural killer cells and dendritic cells upon recognition of a novel CD99-like ligand by paired immunoglobulin-like type 2 receptor. *J Exp Med*. 2004;199:525–533. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14970179
433. Wang J, Shiratori I, Satoh T, et al. An essential role of sialylated O-linked sugar chains in the recognition of mouse CD99 by paired Ig-like type 2 receptor (PILR). *J Immunol*. 2008;180:1686–1693. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18209065
434. Hedrick SM, Cohen DI, Nielsen EA, et al. Isolation of cDNA clones encoding T cell-specific membrane-associated proteins. *Nature*. 1984;308:149–153. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6199676
435. Weiss A, Stobo JD. Requirement for the coexpression of T3 and the T cell antigen receptor on a malignant human T cell line. *J Exp Med*. 1984;160:1284–1299. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6208306
436. Samelson LE, Germain RN, Schwartz RH. Monoclonal antibodies against the antigen receptor on a cloned T-cell hybrid. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1983;80:6972–6976. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6316339
437. Houchins JP, Yabe T, McSherry C, et al. Isolation and characterization of NK cell or NK/T cell-specific cDNA clones. *J Mol Cell Immunol*. 1990;4:295–304. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2080984
438. Seaman WE, Eriksson E, Dobrow R, et al. Inositol trisphosphate is generated by a rat natural killer cell tumor in response to target cells or to crosslinked monoclonal antibody OX-34: possible signaling role for the OX-34 determinant during activation by target cells. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1987;84:4239–4243. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3495804
439. Leo O, Sachs DH, Samelson LE, et al. Identification of monoclonal antibodies specific for the T cell receptor complex by Fc receptor-mediated CTL lysis. *J Immunol*. 1986;137:3874–3880. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3097135
440. Nakamura MC, Linnemeyer PA, Niemi EC, et al. Mouse Ly-49D recognizes H-2Dd and activates natural killer cell cytotoxicity. *J Exp Med*. 1999;189:493–500. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9927511
441. Rajagopalan S, Long EO. Use of vaccinia virus for functional gene transfer in natural killer cells. *Methods Mol Biol*. 2000;121:265–272. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10818732
442. Tran J, Kung SK. Lentiviral vectors mediate stable and efficient gene delivery into primary murine natural killer cells. *Mol Ther*. 2007;15:1331–1339. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17505478
443. Sanderson S, Shastri N. LacZ inducible, antigen/MHC-specific T cell hybrids. *Int Immunol*. 1994;6:369–376. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8186188
444. Smith HR, Heusel JW, Mehta IK, et al. Recognition of a virus-encoded ligand by a natural killer cell activation receptor. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2002;99:8826–8831. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12060703
445. Iizuka K, Naidenko OV, Plougastel BF, et al. Genetically linked C-type lectin-related ligands for the NKRP1 family of natural killer cell receptors. *Nat Immunol*. 2003;4:801–807. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12858173
446. Arase H, Mocarski ES, Campbell AE, et al. Direct recognition of cytomegalovirus by activating and inhibitory NK cell receptors. *Science*. 2002;296:1323–1326. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11950999
447. Mason LH, Anderson SK, Yokoyama WM, et al. The Ly-49D receptor activates murine natural killer cells. *J Exp Med*. 1996;184:2119–2128. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8976168

448. Smith KM, Wu J, Bakker AB, et al. Cutting edge: Ly-49D and Ly-49H associate with mouse DAP12 and form activating receptors. *J Immunol*. 1998;161:7–10. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9647200
449. Smith HR, Chuang HH, Wang LL, et al. Nonstochastic coexpression of activation receptors on murine natural killer cells. *J Exp Med*. 2000;191:1341–1354. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10770801
450. Bakker AB, Hoek RM, Cerwenka A, et al. DAP12-deficient mice fail to develop autoimmunity due to impaired antigen priming. *Immunity*. 2000;13:345–353. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11021532
451. Nakamura MC, Naper C, Niemi EC, et al. Natural killing of xenogeneic cells mediated by the mouse Ly-49D receptor. *J Immunol*. 1999;163:4694–4700. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10528166
452. Furukawa H, Iizuka K, Poursine-Laurent J, et al. A ligand for the murine NK activation receptor Ly-49D: activation of tolerized NK cells from beta(2)-microglobulin-deficient mice. *J Immunol* .2002;169:126–136. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12077237
453. Kielczewska A, Pyzik M, Sun T, et al. Ly49P recognition of cyto-megalovirus-infected cells expressing H2-Dk and CMV-encoded m04 correlates with the NK cell antiviral response. *J Exp Med*. 2009;206:515–523. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19255146
454. Moretta A, Sivori S, Vitale M, et al. Existence of both inhibitory (p58) and activatory (p50) receptors for HLA-C molecules in human natural killer cells. *J Exp Med*. 1995;182:875–884. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7650491
455. Biassoni R, Cantoni C, Falco M, et al. The human leukocyte antigen (HLA)-C-specific "activatory" or "inhibitory" natural killer cell receptors display highly homologous extracellular domains but differ in their transmembrane and intracytoplasmic portions. *J Exp Med*. 1996;183:645–650. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8627176
456. Sivori S, Carlomagno S, Falco M, et al. Natural killer cells expressing the KIR2DS1-activating receptor efficiently kill T-cell blasts and dendritic cells: implications in haploidentical HSCT. *Blood*. 2011;117:4284–4292. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21355085
457. Lanier LL, Cortiss BC, Wu J, et al. Immunoreceptor DAP12 bearing a tyrosine-based activation motif is involved in activating NK cells. *Nature*. 1998;391:703–707. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9490415
458. Biassoni R, Pessino A, Malaspina A, et al. Role of amino acid position 70 in the binding affinity of p50.1 and p58.1 receptors for HLA-Cw4 molecules. *Eur J Immunol*. 1997;27:3095–3099. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9464792
459. Stewart CA, Laugier-Anfossi F, Vely F, et al. Recognition of peptide-MHC class I complexes by activating killer immunoglobulin-like receptors. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2005;102:13224–13229. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16141329
460. Chewning JH, Gudme CN, Hsu KC, et al. KIR2DS1-positive NK cells mediate alloresponse against the C2 HLA-KIR ligand group in vitro. *J Immunol*. 2007;179:854–868. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17617576
461. Vales-Gomez M, Reyburn HT, Erskine RA, et al. Differential binding to HLA-C of p50-activating and p58-inhibitory natural killer cell receptors. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1998;95:14326–14331. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9826699
462. Graef T, Moesta AK, Norman PJ, et al. KIR2DS4 is a product of gene conversion with KIR3DL2 that introduced specificity for HLA-A*11 while diminishing avidity for HLA-C. *J Exp Med*. 2009;206:2557–2572. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19858347
463. O'Connor GM, Yamada E, Rampersaud A, et al. Analysis of binding of KIR3DS1*014 to HLA suggests distinct evolutionary history of KIR3DS1. *J Immunol*. 2011;187:2162–2171. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21804024
464. Adams EJ, Juo ZS, Venook RT, et al. Structural elucidation of the m157 mouse cytomegalovirus ligand for Ly49 natural killer cell receptors. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2007;104:10128–10133. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17537914
465. Katz G, Gazit R, Arnon TI, et al. MHC class I-independent recognition of NK-activating receptor KIR2DS4. *J Immunol*. 2004;173:1819–1825. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15265913
466. Plougastel B, Trowsdale J. Cloning of NKG2-F, a new member of the NKG2 family of human natural killer cell receptor genes. *Eur J Immunol*. 1997;27:2835–2839. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9394807
467. Wu J, Cherwinski H, Spies T, et al. DAP10 and DAP12 form distinct, but functionally cooperative, receptor complexes in natural killer cells. *J Exp Med*. 2000;192:1059–1068. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11015446
468. Kim DK, Kabat J, Borrego F, et al. Human NKG2F is expressed and can associate with DAP12. *Mol Immunol*. 2004;41:53–62. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15140575
469. Llano M, Lee N, Navarro F, et al. HLA-E-bound peptides influence recognition by inhibitory and triggering CD94/NKG2 receptors: preferential response to an HLA-G-derived nonamer. *Eur J Immunol*. 1998;28:2854–2863. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9754572
470. Vance RE, Jamieson AM, Raulet DH. Recognition of the class Ib molecule Qa-1(b) by putative activating receptors CD94/NKG2C and CD94/NKG2E on mouse natural killer cells. *J Exp Med*. 1999;190:1801–1812. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10601355
471. Vales-Gomez M, Reyburn HT, Erskine RA, et al. Kinetics and peptide dependency of the binding of the inhibitory NK receptor CD94/NKG2-A and the activating receptor CD94/NKG2-C to HLA-E. *EMBO J*. 1999;18:4250–4260. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10428963
472. Kaiser BK, Barahmand-Pour F, Paulsene W, et al. Interactions between NKG2x immunoreceptors and HLA-E ligands display overlapping affinities and thermodynamics. *J Immunol*. 2005;174:2878–2884. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15728498
473. Kraft JR, Vance RE, Pohl J, et al. Analysis of Qa-1(b) peptide binding specificity and the capacity of CD94/NKG2A to discriminate between Qa-1-peptide complexes. *J Exp Med*. 2000;192:613–624. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10974028
474. Takai T, Li M, Sylvestre D, et al. FcR gamma chain deletion results in pleiotrophic effector cell defects. *Cell*. 1994;76:519–529. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8313472
475. Hazenbos WLW, Gessner JE, Hofhuis FMA, et al. Impaired IgG-dependent anaphylaxis and arthus reaction in Fc-gamma-RIII (CD16) deficient mice. *Immunity*. 1996;5:181–188. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8769481
476. Ravetch JV, Kinet JP. Fc receptors. *Ann Rev Immunol*. 1991;9:457–491. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1910686
477. Metes D, Ernst LK, Chambers WH, et al. Expression of functional CD32 molecules on human NK cells is determined by an allelic polymorphism of the FcgammaRIIC gene. *Blood*. 1998;91:2369–2380. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9516136
478. Perussia B, Tutt MM, Qiu WQ, et al. Murine natural killer cells express functional Fc gamma receptor II encoded by the Fc gamma R alpha gene. *J Exp Med*. 1989;170:73–86. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2526196
479. Nimmerjahn F, Ravetch JV. Fcgamma receptors: old friends and new family members. *Immunity*. 2006;24:19–28. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16413920
480. Nimmerjahn F, Lux A, Albert H, et al. FcgammaRIV deletion reveals its central role for IgG2a and IgG2b activity in vivo. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2010;107:19396–19401. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20974962
481. Letourneur O, Kennedy IC, Brini AT, et al. Characterization of the family of dimers associated with Fc receptors (Fc epsilon RI and Fc gamma RIII). *J Immunol*. 1991;147:2652–2656. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1833456
482. Cassatella MA, Anegon I, Cuturi MC, et al. Fc gamma R(CD16) interaction with ligand induces Ca2+ mobilization and phosphoinositide turnover in human natural killer cells. Role of Ca2+ in Fc gamma R(CD16)-induced transcription and expression of lymphokine genes. *J Exp Med*. 1989;169:549–567. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2536067
483. Azzoni L, Kamoun M, Salcedo TW, et al. Stimulation of Fc gamma RIIIA results in phospholipase C-gamma 1 tyrosine phosphorylation and p56lck activation. *J Exp Med*. 1992;176:1745–1750. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1281217

484. Kanakaraj P, Duckworth B, Azzoni L, et al. Phosphatidylinositol-3 kinase activation induced upon Fc gamma RIIIA-ligand interaction. *J Exp Med*. 1994;179:551–558. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8294866
485. Aramburu J, Azzoni L, Rao A, et al. Activation and expression of the nuclear factors of activated T cells, NFATp and NFATc, in human natural killer cells: regulation upon CD16 ligand binding. *J Exp Med*. 1995;182:801–810. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7650486
486. Lanier LL, Ruitenberg JJ, Phillips JH. Functional and biochemical analysis of CD16 antigen on natural killer cells and granulocytes. *J Immunol*. 1988;136:3478–3485. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2903193
487. Wu J, Song Y, Bakker AB, et al. An activating immunoreceptor complex formed by NKG2D and DAP10. *Science*. 1999;285:730–732. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10426994
488. Groh V, Rhinehart R, Randolph-Habecker J, et al. Costimulation of CD8ab T cells by NKG2D via engagement by MIC induced on virus-infected cells. *Nat Immunol*. 2001;2:255–260. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11224526
489. Fasth AE, Bjorkstrom NK, Anthoni M, et al. Activating NK-cell receptors co-stimulate CD4(+)CD28(-) T cells in patients with rheumatoid arthritis. *Eur J Immunol*. 2010;40:378–387. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19904767
490. Barber A, Sentman CL. NKG2D receptor regulates human effector T-cell cytokine production. *Blood*. 2011;117:6571–6581. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21518928
491. Upshaw JL, Arneson LN, Schoon RA, et al. NKG2D-mediated signaling requires a DAP10-bound Grb2-Vav1 intermediate and phosphatidylinositol-3-kinase in human natural killer cells. *Nat Immunol*. 2006;7:524–532. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16582911
492. Pende D, Cantoni C, Rivera P, et al. Role of NKG2D in tumor cell lysis mediated by human NK cells: cooperation with natural cytotoxicity receptors and capability of recognizing tumors of nonepithelial origin. *Eur J Immunol*. 2001;31:1076–1086. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11298332
493. Rosen DB, Araki M, Hamerman JA, et al. A Structural basis for the association of DAP12 with mouse, but not human, NKG2D. *J Immunol*. 2004;173:2470–2478. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15294961
494. Rabinovich B, Li J, Wolfson M, et al. NKG2D splice variants: a reexamination of adaptor molecule associations. *Immunogenetics*. 2006;58:81–88. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16470377
495. Cosman D, Mullberg J, Sutherland CL, et al. ULBPs, novel MHC class I-related molecules, bind to CMV glycoprotein UL16 and stimulate NK cytotoxicity through the NKG2D receptor. *Immunity*. 2001;14:123–133. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11239445
496. Kubin M, Cassiano L, Chalupny J, et al. ULBP1, 2, 3: novel MHC class I-related molecules that bind to human cytomegalovirus glycoprotein UL16, activate NK cells. *Eur J Immunol*. 2001;31:1428–1437. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11465099
497. Bacon L, Eagle RA, Meyer M, et al. Two human ULBP/RAET1 molecules with transmembrane regions are ligands for NKG2D. *J Immunol*. 2004;173:1078–1084. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15240696
498. Radosavljevic M, Cuillerier B, Wilson MJ, et al. A cluster of ten novel MHC class I related genes on human chromosome 6q24.2-q25.3. *Genomics*. 2002;79:114–123. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11827464
499. Eagle RA, Trowsdale J. Promiscuity and the single receptor: NKG2D. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2007;7:737–744. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17673918
500. Girardi M, Oppenheim DE, Steele CR, et al. Regulation of cutaneous malignancy by gd T Cells. *Science*. 2001;294:605–609. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11567106
501. Carayannopoulos L, Naidenko O, Fremont D, et al. Cutting edge: Murine UL16-binding protein-like transcript 1: a newly described transcript encoding a high-affinity ligand for murine NKG2D. *J Immunol*. 2002;169:4079–4083. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12370332
502. Takada A, Yoshida S, Kajikawa M, et al. Two novel NKG2D ligands of the mouse H60 family with differential expression patterns and bindingaffinities to NKG2D. *J Immunol*. 2008;180:1678–1685. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18209064
503. Lodoen M, Ogasawara K, Hamerman JA, et al. NKG2D-mediated natural killer cell protection against cytomegalovirus is impaired by viral gp40 modulation of retinoic acid early inducible 1 gene molecules. *J Exp Med*. 2003;197:1245–1253. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12756263
504. Li P, Morris DL, Willcox BE, et al. Complex structure of the activating immunoreceptor NKG2D and its MHC class I-like ligand MICA. *Nat Immunol*. 2001;2:443–451. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11323699
505. Radaev S, Rostro B, Brooks AG, et al. Conformational plasticity revealed by the cocrystal structure of NKG2D and its class I MHC-like ligand ULBP3. *Immunity*. 2001;15:1039–1049. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11754823
506. McFarland BJ, Kortemme T, Yu SF, et al. Symmetry recognizing asymmetry: analysis of the interactions between the C-type lectin-like immunoreceptor NKG2D and MHC class I-like ligands. *Structure (Camb)*. 2003;11:411–422. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12679019
507. Li P, Willie ST, Bauer S, et al. Crystal structure of the MHC class I homolog MIC-A, a gammadelta T cell ligand. *Immunity*. 1999;10:577–584. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10367903
508. O'Callaghan CA, Cerwenka A, Willcox BE, et al. Molecular competition for NKG2D: H60 and RAE1 compete unequally for NKG2D with dominance of H60. *Immunity*. 2001;15:201–211. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11520456
509. Carayannopoulos LN, Naidenko OV, Kinder J, et al. Ligands for murine NKG2D display heterogeneous binding behavior. *Eur J Immunol*. 2002; 32:597–605. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11857333
510. Li P, McDermott G, Strong RK. Crystal structures of RAE-1beta and its complex with the activating immunoreceptor NKG2D. *Immunity*. 2002; 16:77–86. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11825567
511. Wolan DW, Teyton L, Rudolph MG, et al. Crystal structure of the murine NK cell-activating receptor NKG2D at 1.95 A. *Nat Immunol*. 2001;2:248–254. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11224525
512. Muller S, Zocher G, Steinle A, et al. Structure of the HCMV UL16-MICB complex elucidates select binding of a viral immunoevasin to diverse NKG2D ligands. *PLoS Pathog*. 2010;6:e1000723. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20090832
513. Cerwenka A, Baron JL, Lanier LL. Ectopic expression of retinoic acid early inducible-1 gene (RAE-1) permits natural killer cell-mediated rejection of a MHC class I-bearing tumor in vivo. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2001;98:11521–11526. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11562472
514. Diefenbach A, Jensen ER, Jamieson AM, et al. Rae1 and H60 ligands of the NKG2D receptor stimulate tumour immunity. *Nature*. 2001;413:165–171. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11557981
515. Regunathan J, Chen Y, Wang D, et al. NKG2D receptor-mediated NK cell function is regulated by inhibitory Ly49 receptors. *Blood*. 2005;105: 233–240. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15328154
516. Groh V, Bahram S, Bauer S, et al. Cell stress-regulated human major histocompatibility complex class I gene expressed in gastrointestinal epithelium. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1996;93:12445–12450. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8901601
517. Gasser S, Orsulic S, Brown EJ, et al. The DNA damage pathway regulates innate immune system ligands of the NKG2D receptor. *Nature*. 2005; 436:1186–1190. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15995699
518. Stern-Ginossar N, Gur C, Biton M, et al. Human microRNAs regulate stress-induced immune responses mediated by the receptor NKG2D. *Nat Immunol*. 2008;9:1065–1073. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18677316
519. Tang KF, Ren H, Cao J, et al. Decreased Dicer expression elicits DNA damage and up-regulation of MICA and MICB. *J Cell Biol*. 2008;182: 233–239. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18644891
520. Soriani A, Zingoni A, Cerboni C, et al. ATM-ATR-dependent upregulation of DNAM-1 and NKG2D ligands on multiple myeloma cells by therapeutic agents results in enhanced NK-cell susceptibility and is associated with a senescent phenotype. *Blood*. 2009;113:3503–3511. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19098271

521. Hamerman JA, Ogasawara K, Lanier LL. Cutting edge: toll-like receptor signaling in macrophages induces ligands for the NKG2D receptor. *J Immunol*. 2004;172:2001–2005. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14764662
522. Eissmann P, Evans JH, Mehrabi M, et al. Multiple mechanisms downstream of TLR-4 stimulation allow expression of NKG2D ligands to facilitate macrophage/NK cell crosstalk. *J Immunol*. 2010;184:6901–6909. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20488792
523. Nausch N, Florin L, Hartenstein B, et al. Cutting edge: the AP-1 subunit JunB determines NK cell-mediated target cell killing by regulation of the NKG2D-ligand RAE-1epsilon. *J Immunol*. 2006;176:7–11. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16365389
524. Zou Z, Nomura M, Takihara Y, et al. Isolation and characterization of retinoic acid-inducible cDNA clones in F9 cells: a novel cDNA family encodes cell surface proteins sharing partial homology with MHC class I molecules. *J Biochem (Tokyo)*. 1996;119:319–328. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8882725
525. Bui JD, Carayannopoulos LN, Lanier LL, et al. IFN-dependent down-regulation of the NKG2D ligand H60 on tumors. *J Immunol*. 2006;176:905–913. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16393975
526. Yadav D, Ngolab J, Lim RS, et al. Cutting edge: down-regulation of MHC class I-related chain A on tumor cells by IFN-gamma-induced microRNA. *J Immunol*. 2009;182:39–43. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19109132
527. Tokuyama M, Lorin C, Delebecque F, et al. Expression of the RAE-1 family of stimulatory NK-cell ligands requires activation of the PI3K pathway during viral infection and transformation. *PLoS Pathog*. 2011;7:e1002265. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21966273
528. Nice TJ, Coscoy L, Raulet DH. Posttranslational regulation of the NKG2D ligand Mult1 in response to cell stress. *J Exp Med*. 2009;206:287–298. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19171762
529. Nice TJ, Deng W, Coscoy L, et al. Stress-regulated targeting of the NKG2D ligand Mult1 by a membrane-associated RING-CH family E3 ligase. *J Immunol*. 2010;185:5369–5376. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20870941
530. Eagle RA, Jafferji I, Barrow AD. Beyond stressed self: evidence for NKG2D ligand expression on healthy cells. *Curr Immunol Rev*. 2009;5:22–34. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19626129
531. Champsaur M, Lanier LL. Effect of NKG2D ligand expression on host immune responses. *Immunol Rev*. 2010;235:267–285. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20536569
532. Whang MI, Guerra N, Raulet DH. Costimulation of dendritic epidermal gammadelta T cells by a new NKG2D ligand expressed specifically in the skin. *J Immunol*. 2009;182:4557–4564. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19342629
533. Groh V, Wu J, Yee C, et al. Tumour-derived soluble MIC ligands impair expression of NKG2D and T-cell activation. *Nature*. 2002;419:734–738. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12384702
534. Wiemann K, Mittrucker HW, Feger U, et al. Systemic NKG2D down-regulation impairs NK and CD8 T cell responses in vivo. *J Immunol*. 2005;175:720–729. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16002667
535. Ogasawara K, Benjamin J, Takaki R, et al. Function of NKG2D in natural killer cell-mediated rejection of mouse bone marrow grafts. *Nat Immunol*. 2005;6:938–945. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16086018
536. Salih HR, Rammensee HG, Steinle A. Cutting edge: down-regulation of MICA on human tumors by proteolytic shedding. *J Immunol*. 2002;169:4098–4102. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12370336
537. Aguera-Gonzalez S, Gross CC, Fernandez-Messina L, et al. Palmitoylation of MICA, a ligand for NKG2D, mediates its recruitment to membrane microdomains and promotes its shedding. *Eur J Immunol*. 2011;41(12):3667–3676. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21928280
538. Oppenheim DE, Roberts SJ, Clarke SL, et al. Sustained localized expression of ligand for the activating NKG2D receptor impairs natural cytotoxicity in vivo and reduces tumor immunosurveillance. *Nat Immunol*. 2005;6:928–937. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16116470
539. Strid J, Roberts SJ, Filler RB, et al. Acute upregulation of an NKG2D ligand promotes rapid reorganization of a local immune compartment with pleiotropic effects on carcinogenesis. *Nat Immunol*. 2008;9:146–154. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18176566
540. Guerra N, Tan YX, Joncker NT, et al. NKG2D-deficient mice are defective in tumor surveillance in models of spontaneous malignancy. *Immunity*. 2008;28:571–580. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18394936
541. Dunn GP, Bruce AT, Sheehan KC, et al. A critical function for type I interferons in cancer immunoediting. *Nat Immunol*. 2005;6:722–729. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15951814
542. Dunn GP, Old LJ, Schreiber RD. The three Es of cancer immunoediting. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 2004;22:329–360. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15032581
543. Welte SA, Sinzger C, Lutz SZ, et al. Selective intracellular retention of virally induced NKG2D ligands by the human cytomegalovirus UL16 glycoprotein. *Eur J Immunol* .2003;33:194–203. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12594848
544. Wu J, Chalupny NJ, Manley TJ, et al. Intracellular retention of the MHC class I-related chain B ligand of NKG2D by the human cyto-megalovirus UL16 glycoprotein. *J Immunol*. 2003;170:4196–4200. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12682252
545. Dunn C, Chalupny NJ, Sutherland CL, et al. Human cytomegalovirus glycoprotein UL16 causes intracellular sequestration of NKG2D ligands, protecting against natural killer cell cytotoxicity. *J Exp Med*. 2003;197:1427–1439. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12782710
546. Ashiru O, Bennett NJ, Boyle LH, et al. NKG2D ligand MICA is retained in the cis-Golgi apparatus by human cytomegalovirus protein UL142. *J Virol*. 2009;83:12345–12354. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19793804
547. Krmpotic A, Busch DH, Bubic I, et al. MCMV glycoprotein gp40 confers virus resistance to CD8+ T cells and NK cells in vivo. *Nat Immunol*. 2002;3:529–535. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12021778
548. Lodoen MB, Abenes G, Umamoto S, et al. The cytomegalovirus m155 gene product subverts natural killer cell antiviral protection by disruption of H60-NKG2D interactions. *J Exp Med*. 2004;200:1075–1081. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15477345
549. Hasan M, Krmpotic A, Ruzsics Z, et al. Selective down-regulation of the NKG2D ligand H60 by mouse cytomegalovirus m155 glycoprotein. *J Virol*. 2005;79:2920–2930. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15709011
550. Krmpotic A, Hasan M, Loewendorf A, et al. NK cell activation through the NKG2D ligand MULT-1 is selectively prevented by the glycoprotein encoded by mouse cytomegalovirus gene m145. *J Exp Med*. 2005;201:211–220. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15642742
551. Lenac T, Budt M, Arapovic J, et al. The herpesviral Fc receptor fcr-1 down-regulates the NKG2D ligands MULT-1 and H60. *J Exp Med*. 2006;203:1843–1850. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16831899
552. Arapovic J, Lenac Rovis T, Reddy AB, et al. Promiscuity of MCMV immunoevasin of NKG2D: m138/fcr-1 down-modulates RAE-1epsilon in addition to MULT-1 and H60. *Mol Immunol*. 2009;47:114–122. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19297023
553. Thomas M, Boname JM, Field S, et al. Down-regulation of NKG2D and NKp80 ligands by Kaposi's sarcoma-associated herpesvirus K5 protects against NK cell cytotoxicity. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2008;105:1656–1661. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18230726
554. Stern-Ginossar N, Elefant N, Zimmermann A, et al. Host immune system gene targeting by a viral miRNA. *Science*. 2007;317:376–381. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17641203
555. Nachmani D, Stern-Ginossar N, Sarid R, et al. Diverse herpesvirus microRNAs target the stress-induced immune ligand MICB to escape recognition by natural killer cells. *Cell Host Microbe*. 2009;5:376–385. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19380116
556. McSharry BP, Burgert HG, Owen DP, et al. Adenovirus E3/19K promotes evasion of NK cell recognition by intracellular sequestration of the NKG2D ligands major histocompatibility complex class I chain-related proteins A and B. *J Virol*. 2008;82:4585–4594. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18287244

557. Campbell JA, Trossman DS, Yokoyama WM, et al. Zoonotic orthopoxviruses encode a high-affinity antagonist of NKG2D. *J Exp Med*. 2007;204:1311–1317.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17548517
558. Zafirova B, Wensveen FM, Gulin M, et al. Regulation of immune cell function and differentiation by the NKG2D receptor. *Cell Mol Life Sci*. 2011;68:3519–3529.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21898152
559. Gambelunghe G, Brozzetti A, Ghaderi M, et al. MICA gene polymorphism in the pathogenesis of type 1 diabetes. *Ann N Y Acad Sci*. 2007;1110:92–98.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17911424
560. Choy MK, Phipps ME. MICA polymorphism: biology and importance in immunity and disease. *Trends Mol Med*. 2010;16:97–106.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20153697
561. Ogasawara K, Hamerman JA, Ehrlich LR, et al. NKG2D blockade prevents autoimmune diabetes in NOD mice. *Immunity*. 2004;20:757–767.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15189740
562. Moosig F, Csernok E, Wang G, et al. Costimulatory molecules in Wegener's granulomatosis (WG): lack of expression of CD28 and preferential up-regulation of its ligands B7-1 (CD80) and B7-2 (CD86) on T cells. *Clin Exp Immunol*. 1998;114:113–118.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9764612
563. Namekawa T, Snyder MR, Yen JH, et al. Killer cell activating receptors function as costimulatory molecules on CD4+ CD28null T cells clonally expanded in rheumatoid arthritis. *J Immunol*. 2000;165:1138–1145.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10878393
564. Liuzzo G, Goronzy JJ, Yang H, et al. Monoclonal T-cell proliferation and plaque instability in acute coronary syndromes. *Circulation*. 2000;101:2883–2888.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10869258
565. Roberts AI, Lee L, Schwarz E, et al. Cutting edge: NKG2D receptors induced by IL-15 costimulate CD28-negative effector CTL in the tissue microenvironment. *J Immunol*. 2001;167:5527–5530.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11698420
566. Hue S, Mention JJ, Monteiro RC, et al. A direct role for NKG2D/MICA interaction in villous atrophy during celiac disease. *Immunity*. 2004;21:367–377.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15357948
567. Dai Z, Turtle CJ, Booth GC, et al. Normally occurring NKG2D+ CD4+ T cells are immunosuppressive and inversely correlated with disease activity in juvenile-onset lupus. *J Exp Med*. 2009;206:793–805.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19289577
568. Giorda R, Trucco M. Mouse NKR-P1. A family of genes selectively coexpressed in adherent lymphokine-activated killer cells. *J Immunol*. 1991;147:1701–1708.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1880421
569. Plougastel B, Matsumoto K, Dubbelde C, et al. Analysis of a 1-Mb BAC contig overlapping the mouse Nkrp1 cluster of genes: cloning of three new Nkrp1 members, Nkrp1d, Nkrp1e, and Nkrp1f. *Immunogenetics*. 2001;53:592–598.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11685472
570. Kveberg L, Back CJ, Dai KZ, et al. The novel inhibitory NKR-P1C receptor and Ly49s3 identify two complementary, functionally distinct NK cell subsets in rats. *J Immunol*. 2006;176:4133–4140.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16547249
571. Chambers WH, Vujanovic NL, DeLeo AB, et al. Monoclonal antibody to a triggering structure expressed on rat natural killer cells and adherent lymphokine-activated killer cells. *J Exp Med*. 1989;169:1373–1389.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2466943
572. Bendelac A. Mouse NK1+ T cells. *Curr Opin Immunol*. 1995;7:367–374.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7546402
573. Knudsen E, Seierstad T, Vaage JT, et al. Cloning, functional activities and in vivo tissue distribution of rat NKR-P1+ TCR alpha beta+ cells. *Int Immunol*. 1997;9:1043–1051.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9237113
574. Lanier LL, Chang C, Phillips JH. Human NKR-P1A. A disulfide-linked homodimer of the C-type lectin superfamily expressed by a subset of NK and T lymphocytes. *J Immunol*. 1994;153:2417–2428.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8077657
575. Plougastel BF, Yokoyama WM. Extending missing-self? Functional interactions between lectin-like NKrp1 receptors on NK cells with lectin-like ligands. *Curr Top Microbiol Immunol*. 2006;298:77–89.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16323412
576. Ryan JC, Niemi EC, Goldfien RD, et al. NKR-P1, an activating molecule on rat natural killer cells, stimulates phosphoinositide turnover and a rise in intracellular calcium. *J Immunol*. 1991;147:3244–3250.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1919012
577. Ljutic B, Carlyle JR, Filipp D, et al. Functional requirements for signaling through the stimulatory and inhibitory mouse NKR-P1 (CD161) NK cell receptors. *J Immunol*. 2005;174:4789–4796.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15814704
578. Arase H, Arase N, Saito T. Interferon gamma production by natural killer (NK) cells and NK1.1+ T cells upon NKR-P1 cross-linking. *J Exp Med*. 1996;183:2391–2396.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8642351
579. Arase N, Arase H, Park SY, et al. Association with FcR-g is essential for activation signal through NKR-P1 (CD161) in natural killer (NK) cells and NK1.1^{+} T cells. *J Exp Med*. 1997;186:1957–1963.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9396764
580. Ryan JC, Niemi EC, Nakamura MC, et al. NKR-P1A is a target-specific receptor that activates natural killer cell cytotoxicity. *J Exp Med*. 1995;181:1911–1915.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7722466
581. Plougastel B, Dubbelde C, Yokoyama WM. Cloning of Clr, a new family of lectin-like genes localized between mouse Nkrp1a and Cd69 genes. *Immunogenetics*. 2001;53:209–214.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11398965
582. Carlyle JR, Jamieson AM, Gasser S, et al. Missing self-recognition of Ocil/Clr-b by inhibitory NKR-P1 natural killer cell receptors. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2004;101:3527–3532.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14990792
583. Zhou H, Kartsogiannis V, Hu YS, et al. A novel osteoblast-derived C-type lectin that inhibits osteoclast formation. *J Biol Chem*. 2001;276:14916–14923.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11278931
584. Carlyle JR, Mesci A, Ljutic B, et al. Molecular and genetic basis for strain-dependent NK1.1 alloreactivity of mouse NK cells. *J Immunol*. 2006;176:7511–7524.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16751398
585. Giorda R, Weisberg EP, Ip TK, et al. Genomic structure and strain-specific expression of the natural killer cell receptor NKR-P1. *J Immunol*. 1992;149:1957–1963.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1517565
586. Boles KS, Barten R, Kumaresan PR, et al. Cloning of a new lectin-like receptor expressed on human NK cells. *Immunogenetics*. 1999;50:1–7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10541800
587. Hamann J, Montgomery KT, Lau S, et al. AICL: a new activation-induced antigen encoded by the human NK gene complex. *Immunogenetics*. 1997;45:295–300.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9038101
588. Ryan EJ, Marshall AJ, Magaletti D, et al. Dendritic cell-associated lectin-1: a novel dendritic cell-associated, C-type lectin-like molecule enhances T cell secretion of IL-4. *J Immunol*. 2002;169:5638–5648.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12421943
589. Rosen DB, Bettadapura J, AlsharifiM, et al. Cutting edge: lectin-like transcript-1 is a ligand for the inhibitory human NKR-P1A receptor. *J Immunol*. 2005;175:7796–7799.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16339513
590. Aldemir H, Prod'homme V, Dumaurier MJ, et al. Cutting edge: lectin-like transcript 1 is a ligand for the CD161 receptor. *J Immunol*. 2005;175:7791–7795.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16339512
591. Roda-Navarro P, Arce I, Renedo M, et al. Human KLRF1, a novel member of the killer cell lectin-like receptor gene family: molecular characterization, genomic structure, physical mapping to the NK gene complex and expression analysis. *Eur J Immunol*. 2000;30:568–576.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10671213
592. Vitale M, Falco M, Castriconi R, et al. Identification of NKp80, a novel triggering molecule expressed by human NK cells. *Eur J Immunol*. 2001;31:233–242.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11265639
593. Welte S, Kuttruff S, Waldhauer I, et al. Mutual activation of natural killer cells and monocytes mediated by NKp80-AICL interaction. *Nat Immunol*. 2006;7:1334–1342.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17057721

594. Spreu J, Kuttruff S, Stejfova V, et al. Interaction of C-type lectin-like receptors NKp65 and KACL facilitates dedicated immune recognition of human keratinocytes. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2010;107:5100–5105. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20194751
595. Chen P, Belanger S, Aguilar OA, et al. Analysis of the mouse 129-strain Nkrp1-Clr gene cluster reveals conservation of genomic organization and functional receptor-ligand interactions despite significant allelic polymorphism. *Immunogenetics*. 2011;63:627–640. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21667046
596. Depatie C, Muise E, Lepage P, et al. High-resolution linkage map in the proximity of the host resistance locus CMV1. *Genomics*. 1997;39:154–163. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9027502
597. Forbes CA, Brown MG, Cho R, et al. The Cmv1 host resistance locus is closely linked to the Ly49 multigene family within the natural killer cell gene complex on mouse chromosome 6. *Genomics*. 1997;41:406–413. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9169139
598. Nasrallah JB. Recognition and rejection of self in plant reproduction. *Science*. 2002;296:305–308. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11951033
599. Ferris PJ, Armbrust EV, Goodenough UW. Genetic structure of the mating-type locus of Chlamydomonas reinhardtii. *Genetics*. 2002;160:181–200. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11805055
600. Voigt S, Mesci A, Ettinger J, et al. Cytomegalovirus evasion of innate immunity by subversion of the NKR-P1B:Clr-b missing-self axis. *Immunity*. 2007;26:617–627. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17462921
601. Garni-Wagner BA, Purohit A, Mathew PA, et al. A novel function-associated molecule related to non-MHC-restricted cytotoxicity mediated by activated natural killer cells and T cells. *J Immunol*. 1993;151:60–70. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8326140
602. Veillette A. SLAM-family receptors: immune regulators with or without SAP-family adaptors. *Cold Spring Harb Perspect Biol*. 2010;2:a002469. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20300214
603. Brown MH, Boles K, Anton van der Merwe P, et al. 2B4, the natural killer and T cell immunoglobulin superfamily surface protein, is a ligand for CD48. *J Exp Med*. 1998;188:2083–2090. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9841922
604. Veillette A. Immune regulation by SLAM family receptors and SAP-related adaptors. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2006;6:56–66. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16493427
605. Siliciano RF, Pratt JC, Schmidt RE, et al. Activation of cytolytic T lymphocyte and natural killer cell function through the T11 sheep erythrocyte binding protein. *Nature*. 1985;317:428–430. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2864636
606. Umehara H, Huang JY, Kono T, et al. Involvement of protein tyrosine kinase p72syk and phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase in CD2-mediated granular exocytosis in the natural killer cell line, NK3.3. *J Immunol*. 1997;159:1200–1207. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9233614
607. Shlapatska LM, Mikhalap SV, Berdova AG, et al. CD150 association with either the SH2-containing inositol phosphatase or the SH2-containing protein tyrosine phosphatase is regulated by the adaptor protein SH2D1A. *J Immunol*. 2001;166:5480–5487. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11313386
608. Engel P, Eck MJ, Terhorst C. The SAP and SLAM families in immune responses and X-linked lymphoproliferative disease. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2003;3:813–821. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14523387
609. Tangye SG, Lazetic S, Woollatt E, et al. Cutting edge: human 2B4, an activating NK cell receptor, recruits the protein tyrosine phosphatase SHP-2 and the adaptor signaling protein SAP. *J Immunol*. 1999;162:6981–6985. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10358138
610. Bottino C, Falco M, Parolini S, et al. NTB-A, a novel SH2D1A- associated surface molecule contributing to the inability of natural killer cells to kill Epstein-Barr virus-infected B cells in X-linked lymphoproliferative disease. *J Exp Med*. 2001;194:235–246. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11489943
611. Bouchon A, Cella M, Grierson HL, et al. Cutting edge: activation of NK cell-mediated cytotoxicity by a SAP-independent receptor of the CD2 family. *J Immunol*. 2001;167:5517–5521. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11698418
612. Tassi I, Colonna M. The cytotoxicity receptor CRACC (CS-1) recruits EAT-2 and activates the PI3K and phospholipase Cgamma signaling pathways in human NK cells. *J Immunol*. 2005;175:7996–8002. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16339536
613. Cruz-Munoz ME, Dong Z, Shi X, et al. Influence of CRACC, a SLAM family receptor coupled to the adaptor EAT-2, on natural killer cell function. *Nat Immunol*. 2009;10:297–305. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19151721
614. Schwartzberg PL, Mueller KL, Qi H, et al. SLAM receptors and SAP influence lymphocyte interactions, development and function. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2009;9:39–46. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19079134
615. Lee KM, McNerney ME, Stepp SE, et al. 2B4 acts as a non-major histocompatibility complex binding inhibitory receptor on mouse natural killer cells. *J Exp Med*. 2004;199:1245–1254. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15123744
616. Sivori S, Vitale M, Morelli L, et al. p46, a novel natural killer cell-specific surface molecule that mediates cell activation. *J Exp Med*. 1997;186:1129–1136. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9314561
617. Pessino A, Sivori S, Bottino C, et al. Molecular cloning of NKp46: a novel member of the immunoglobulin superfamily involved in triggering of natural cytotoxicity. *J Exp Med*. 1998;188:953–960. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9730896
618. Pende D, Parolini S, Pessino A, et al. Identification and molecular characterization of NKp30, a novel triggering receptor involved in natural cytotoxicity mediated by human natural killer cells. *J Exp Med*. 1999;190:1505–1516. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10562324
619. Cantoni C, Bottino C, Vitale M, et al. NKp44, a triggering receptor involved in tumor cell lysis by activated human natural killer cells, is a novel member of the immunoglobulin superfamily. *J Exp Med*. 1999;189:787–796. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10049942
620. Vitale M, Bottino C, Sivori S, et al. NKp44, a novel triggering surface molecule specifically expressed by activated natural killer cells, is involved in non-major histocompatibility complex-restricted tumor cell lysis. *J Exp Med*. 1998;187:2065–2072. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9625766
621. Neville MJ, Campbell RD. A new member of the Ig superfamily and a V-ATPase G subunit are among the predicted products of novel genes close to the TNF locus in the human MHC. *J Immunol*. 1999;162:4745–4754. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10202016
622. Allcock RJ, Barrow AD, Forbes S, et al. The human TREM gene cluster at 6p21.1 encodes both activating and inhibitory single IgV domain receptors and includes NKp44. *Eur J Immunol*. 2003;33:567–577. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12645956
623. Hollyoake M, Campbell RD, Aguado B. NKp30 (NCR3) is a pseudogene in 12 inbred and wild mouse strains, but an expressed gene in Mus caroli. *Mol Biol Evol*. 2005;22:1661–1672. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15872155
624. Moretta L, Bottino C, Pende D, et al. Surface NK receptors and their ligands on tumor cells. *Semin Immunol*. 2006;18:151–158. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16730454
625. Brandt CS, Baratin M, Yi EC, et al. The B7 family member B7-H6 is a tumor cell ligand for the activating natural killer cell receptor NKp30 in humans. *J Exp Med*. 2009;206:1495–1503. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19528259
626. Li Y, Wang Q, Mariuzza RA. Structure of the human activating natural cytotoxicity receptor NKp30 bound to its tumor cell ligand B7-H6. *J Exp Med*. 2011;208:703–714. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21422170
627. Arnon TI, Achdout H, Levi O, et al. Inhibition of the NKp30 activating receptor by pp65 of human cytomegalovirus. *Nat Immunol*. 2005;6:515–523. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15821739
628. Pogge von Strandmann E, Simhadri VR, von Tresckow B, et al. Human leukocyte antigen-B-associated transcript 3 is released from tumor cells and engages the NKp30 receptor on natural killer cells. *Immunity*. 2007;27:965–974. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18055229

629. Jarahian M, Fiedler M, Cohnen A, et al. Modulation of NKp30- and NKp46-mediated natural killer cell responses by poxviral hemagglutinin. *PLoS Pathog*. 2011;7:e1002195. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21901096
630. Mandelboim O, Lieberman N, Lev M, et al. Recognition of haemagglutinins on virus-infected cells by NKp46 activates lysis by human NK cells. *Nature*. 2001;409:1055–1060. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11234016
631. Bloushtain N, Qimron U, Bar-Ilan A, et al. Membrane-associated heparan sulfate proteoglycans are involved in the recognition of cellular targets by NKp30 and NKp46. *J Immunol*. 2004;173:2392–2401. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15294952
632. Warren HS, Jones AL, Freeman C, et al. Evidence that the cellular ligand for the human NK cell activation receptor NKp30 is not a heparan sulfate glycosaminoglycan. *J Immunol*. 2005;175:207–212. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15972650
633. Spies T, Groh V. Natural cytotoxicity receptors: influenza virus in the spotlight. *Nat Immunol*. 2006;7:443–444. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16622429
634. Satoh-Takayama N, Lesjean-Pottier S, Vieira P, et al. IL-7 and IL-15 independently program the differentiation of intestinal CD3-NKp46+ cell subsets from Id2-dependent precursors. *J Exp Med*. 2010;207:273–280. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20142427
635. Hughes T, Becknell B, McClory S, et al. Stage 3 immature human natural killer cells found in secondary lymphoid tissue constitutively and selectively express the TH 17 cytokine interleukin-22. *Blood*. 2009;113:4008–4010. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19244159
636. Male V, Hughes T, McClory S, et al. Immature NK cells, capable of producing IL-22, are present in human uterine mucosa. *J Immunol*. 2010;185:3913–3918. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20802153
637. Cupedo T, Crellin NK, Papazian N, et al. Human fetal lymphoid tissue-inducer cells are interleukin 17-producing precursors to RORC+ CD127+ natural killer-like cells. *Nat Immunol*. 2009;10:66–74. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19029905
638. Crellin NK, Trifari S, Kaplan CD, et al. Human NKp44+IL-22+ cells and LTi-like cells constitute a stable RORC+ lineage distinct from conventional natural killer cells. *J Exp Med*. 2010;207:281–290. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20142432
639. Vivier E, Spits H, Cupedo T. Interleukin-22-producing innate immune cells: new players in mucosal immunity and tissue repair? *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2009;9:229–234. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19319141
640. Sancho D, Gomez M, Sanchez-Madrid F. CD69 is an immuno-regulatory molecule induced following activation. *Trends Immunol*. 2005;26:136–140. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15745855
641. Bankovich AJ, Shiow LR, Cyster JG. CD69 suppresses sphingosine 1-phosophate receptor-1 (S1P1) function through interaction with membrane helix 4. *J Biol Chem*. 2010;285:22328–22337. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20463015
642. Gumley TP, McKenzie IF, Sandrin MS. Tissue expression, structure and function of the murine Ly-6 family of molecules. *Immunol Cell Biol*. 1995;73:277–296. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7493764
643. Bamezai A. Mouse Ly-6 proteins and their extended family: markers of cell differentiation and regulators of cell signaling. *Arch Immunol Ther Exp (Warsz)*. 2004;52:255–266. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15467490
644. Colonna M. Cytolytic responses: cadherins put out the fire. *J Exp Med*. 2006;203:261–264. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16461342
645. Guthmann MD, Tal M, Pecht I. A secretion inhibitory signal transduction molecule on mast cells is another C-type lectin. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1995;92:9397–9401. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7568140
646. Butcher S, Arney KL, Cook GP. MAFA-L, an ITIM-containing receptor encoded by the human NK cell gene complex and expressed by basophils and NK cells. *Eur J Immunol*. 1998;28:3755–3762. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9842918
647. Blaser C, Kaufmann M, Pircher H. Cutting edge: virus-activated CD8 T cells and lymphokine-activated NK cells express the mast cell function-associated antigen, an inhibitory C-type lectin. *J Immunol*. 1998;161:6451–6454. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9862665
648. Corral L, Hanke T, Vance RE, et al. NK cell expression of the killer cell lectin-like receptor G1 (KLRG1), the mouse homolog of MAFA, is modulated by MHC class I molecules. *Eur J Immunol*. 2000;30:920–930. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10741410
649. Ito M, Maruyama T, Saito N, et al. Killer cell lectin-like receptor G1 binds three members of the classical cadherin family to inhibit NK cell cytotoxicity. *J Exp Med*. 2006;203:289–295. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16461340
650. Grundemann C, Bauer M, Schweier O, et al. Cutting edge: identification of E-cadherin as a ligand for the murine killer cell lectin-like receptor G1. *J Immunol*. 2006;176:1311–1315. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16424155
651. Li Y, Hofmann M, Wang Q, et al. Structure of natural killer cell receptor KLRG1 bound to E-cadherin reveals basis for MHC-independent missing self recognition. *Immunity*. 2009;31:35–46. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19604491
652. Grundemann C, Schwartzkopff S, Koschella M, et al. The NK receptor KLRG1 is dispensable for virus-induced NK and CD8+ T-cell differentiation and function in vivo. *Eur J Immunol*. 2010;40:1303–1314. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20201037
653. Stern N, Markel G, Arnon TI, et al. Carcinoembryonic antigen (CEA) inhibits NK killing via interaction with CEA-related cell adhesion molecule 1. *J Immunol*. 2005;174:6692–6701. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15905509
654. Markel G, MussaffiH, Ling KL, et al. The mechanisms controlling NK cell autoreactivity in TAP2-deficient patients. *Blood*. 2004;103:1770–1778. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14604968
655. Markel G, Wolf D, Hanna J, et al. Pivotal role of CEACAM1 protein in the inhibition of activated decidual lymphocyte functions. *J Clin Invest*. 2002;110:943–953. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12370272
656. Thirion G, Feliu AA, Coutelier JP. CD66a (CEACAM1) expression by mouse natural killer cells. *Immunology*. 2008;125:535–540. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18492055
657. Gray-Owen SD, Blumberg RS. CEACAM1: contact-dependent control of immunity. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2006;6:433–446. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16724098
658. Fuchs A, Colonna M. The role of NK cell recognition of nectin and nectin-like proteins in tumor immunosurveillance. *Semin Cancer Biol*. 2006;16:359–366. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16904340
659. Takai Y, Miyoshi J, Ikeda W, et al. Nectins and nectin-like molecules: roles in contact inhibition of cell movement and proliferation. *Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol*. 2008;9:603–615. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18648374
660. Shibuya K, Lanier LL, Phillips JH, et al. Physical and functional association of LFA-1 with DNAM-1 adhesion molecule. *Immunity*. 1999;11:615–623. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10591186
661. Fuchs A, Cella M, Giurisato E, et al. Cutting edge: CD96 (tactile) promotes NK cell-target cell adhesion by interacting with the poliovirus receptor (CD155). *J Immunol*. 2004;172:3994–3998. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15034010
662. Tahara-Hanaoka S, Shibuya K, Onoda Y, et al. Functional characterization of DNAM-1 (CD226) interaction with its ligands PVR (CD155) and nectin-2 (PRR-2/CD112). *Int Immunol*. 2004;16:533–538. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15039383
663. Boles KS, Barchet W, Diacovo T, et al. The tumor suppressor TSLC1/NECL-2 triggers NK-cell and CD8+ T-cell responses through the cell-surface receptor CRTAM. *Blood*. 2005;106:779–786. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15811952
664. Shibuya A, Campbell D, Hannum C, et al. DNAM-1, a novel adhesion molecule involved in the cytolytic function of T lymphocytes. *Immunity*. 1996;4:573–581. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8673704
665. Gilfillan S, Chan CJ, Cella M, et al. DNAM-1 promotes activation of cytotoxic lymphocytes by nonprofessional antigen-presenting cells and tumors. *J Exp Med*. 2008;205:2965–2973. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19029380

666. Iguchi-Manaka A, Kai H, Yamashita Y, et al. Accelerated tumor growth in mice deficient in DNAM-1 receptor. *J Exp Med*. 2008;205:2959–2964. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19029379
667. Yu X, Harden K, Gonzalez LC, et al. The surface protein TIGIT suppresses T cell activation by promoting the generation of mature immunoregulatory dendritic cells. *Nat Immunol*. 2009;10:48–57. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19011627
668. Stanietsky N, Simic H, Arapovic J, et al. The interaction of TIGIT with PVR and PVRL2 inhibits human NK cell cytotoxicity. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2009;106:17858–17863. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19815499
669. Inngjerdingen M, Rolstad B, Ryan JC. Activating and inhibitory Ly49 receptors modulate NK cell chemotaxis to CXC chemokine ligand (CXCL) 10 and CXCL12. *J Immunol*. 2003;171:2889–2895. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12960311
670. Reymond N, Imbert AM, Devilard E, et al. DNAM-1 and PVR regulate monocyte migration through endothelial junctions. *J Exp Med*. 2004; 199:1331–1341. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15136589
671. Melero I, Balboa MA, Alonso JL, et al. Signaling through the LFA-1 leucocyte integrin actively regulates intercellular adhesion and tumor necrosis factor-alpha production in natural killer cells. *Eur J Immunol*. 1993;23:1859–1865. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8344347
672. Helander TS, Carpen O, Turunen O, et al. ICAM-2 redistributed by ezrin as a target for killer cells. *Nature*. 1996;382:265–268. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8717043
673. Barber DF, Faure M, Long EO. LFA-1 contributes an early signal for NK cell cytotoxicity. *J Immunol*. 2004;173:3653–3659. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15356110
674. Bryceson YT, March ME, Ljunggren HG, et al. Synergy among receptors on resting NK cells for the activation of natural cytotoxicity and cytokine secretion. *Blood*. 2006;107:159–166. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16150947
675. Horng T, Bezbradica JS, Medzhitov R. NKG2D signaling is coupled to the interleukin 15 receptor signaling pathway. *Nat Immunol*. 2007;8: 1345–1352. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17952078
676. Ivashkiv LB. Cross-regulation of signaling by ITAM-associated receptors. *Nat Immunol*. 2009;10:340–347. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19295630
677. Watzl C, Long EO. Signal transduction during activation and inhibition of natural killer cells. *Curr Protoc Immunol*. 2010;Chapter 11:Unit 11 9B. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20814939
678. MacFarlane AWT, Campbell KS. Signal transduction in natural killer cells. *Curr Top Microbiol Immunol*. 2006;298:23–57. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16329184
679. Salcedo TW, Kurosaki T, Kanakaraj P, et al. Physical and functional association of p56lck with Fc gamma RIIIA (CD16) in natural killer cells. *J Exp Med*. 1993;177:1475–1480. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8478617
680. Mason LH, Willette-Brown J, Taylor LS, et al. Regulation of Ly49D/ DAP12 signal transduction by Src-family kinases and CD45. *J Immunol*. 2006;176:6615–6623. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16709819
681. Colucci F, Schweighoffer E, Tomasello E, et al. Natural cytotoxicity uncoupled from the Syk and ZAP-70 intracellular kinases. *Nat Immunol*. 2002;3:288–294. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11836527
682. Peterson EJ, Clements JL, Ballas ZK, et al. NK cytokine secretion and cytotoxicity occur independently of the SLP- 76 adaptor protein. *Eur J Immunol*. 1999;29:2223–2232. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10427985
683. Zhang W, Sommers CL, Burshtyn DN, et al. Essential role of LAT in T cell development. *Immunity*. 1999;10:323–332. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10204488
684. Tassi I, Presti R, Kim S, et al. Phospholipase C-gamma 2 is a critical signaling mediator for murine NK cell activating receptors. *J Immunol*. 2005;175:749–754. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16002670
685. Wang D, Feng J, Wen R, et al. Phospholipase Cgamma2 is essential in the functions of B cell and several Fc receptors. *Immunity*. 2000;13: 25–35. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10933392
686. Cella M, Fujikawa K, Tassi I, et al. Differential requirements for Vav proteins in DAP10- and ITAM-mediated NK cell cytotoxicity. *J Exp Med*. 2004;200:817–823. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15365099
687. Fujikawa K, Miletic AV, Alt FW, et al. Vav1/2/3-null mice define an essential role for Vav family proteins in lymphocyte development and activation but a differential requirement in MAPK signaling in T and B cells. *J Exp Med*. 2003;198:1595–1608. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14623913
688. Stebbins CC, Watzl C, Billadeau DD, et al. Vav1 dephosphorylation by the tyrosine phosphatase SHP-1 as a mechanism for inhibition of cellular cytotoxicity. *Mol Cell Biol*. 2003;23:6291–6299. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12917349
689. Kim HS, Das A, Gross CC, et al. Synergistic signals for natural cytotoxicity are required to overcome inhibition by c-Cbl ubiquitin ligase. *Immunity*. 2010;32:175–186. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20189481
690. Peterson ME, Long EO. Inhibitory receptor signaling via tyrosine phosphorylation of the adapter CRK. *Immunity*. 2008;29:578–588. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18835194
691. Jiang K, Zhong B, Gilvary DL, et al. Pivotal role of phosphoinositide-3 kinase in regulation of cytotoxicity in natural killer cells. *Nat Immunol*. 2000;1:419–425. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11062502
692. Segovis CM, Schoon RA, Dick CJ, et al. PI3K links NKG2D signaling to a CrkL pathway involved in natural killer cell adhesion, polarity, and granule secretion. *J Immunol*. 2009;182:6933–6942. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19454690
693. Wu J, Song Y, Bakker AB, et al. An activating immunoreceptor complex formed by NKG2D and DAP10. *Science*. 1999;285:730–732. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10426994
694. Zompi S, Hamerman JA, Ogasawara K, et al. NKG2D triggers cytotoxicity in mouse NK cells lacking DAP12 or Syk family kinases. *Nat Immunol*. 2003;4:565–572. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12740576
695. Jiang K, Zhong B, Gilvary DL, et al. Syk regulation of phosphoinositide 3-kinase-dependent NK cell function. *J Immunol*. 2002;168:3155–3164. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11907067
696. Moon KD, Post CB, Durden DL, et al. Molecular basis for a direct interaction between the Syk protein-tyrosine kinase and phosphoinositide 3-kinase. *J Biol Chem*. 2005;280:1543–1551. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15536084
697. Bromley SK, Burack WR, Johnson KG, et al. The immunological synapse. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 2001;19:375–396. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11244041
698. Davis DM, Dustin ML. What is the importance of the immunological synapse? *Trends Immunol*. 2004;25:323–327. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15145322
699. Orange JS. Formation and function of the lytic NK-cell immunological synapse. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2008;8:713–725. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19172692
700. Bryceson YT, Long EO. Line of attack: NK cell specificity and integration of signals. *Curr Opin Immunol*. 2008;20:344–352. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18439809
701. Orange JS, Harris KE, Andzelm MM, et al. The mature activating natural killer cell immunologic synapse is formed in distinct stages. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2003;100:14151–14156. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14612578
702. Vyas YM, Mehta KM, Morgan M, et al. Spatial organization of signal transduction molecules in the NK cell immune synapses during MHC class I-regulated noncytolytic and cytolytic interactions. *J Immunol*. 2001;167:4358–4367. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11591760
703. Krzewski K, Chen X, Orange JS, et al. Formation of a WIP-, WASp-, actin-, and myosin IIA-containing multiprotein complex in activated NK cells and its alteration by KIR inhibitory signaling. *J Cell Biol*. 2006; 173:121–132. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16606694
704. Graham DB, Cella M, Giurisato E, et al. Vav1 controls DAP10- mediated natural cytotoxicity by regulating actin and microtubule dynamics. *J Immunol*. 2006;177:2349–2355. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16887996

705. Sinai P, Nguyen C, Schatzle JD, et al. Transience in polarization of cytolytic effectors is required for efficient killing and controlled by Cdc42. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2010;107:11912–11917. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20547841
706. Burshtyn DN, Scharenberg AM, Wagtmann N, et al. Recruitment of tyrosine phosphatase HCP by the killer cell inhibitor receptor. *Immunity*. 1996;4:77–85. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8574854
707. Campbell KS, Dessing M, Lopez-Botet M, et al. Tyrosine phosphorylation of a human killer inhibitory receptor recruits protein tyrosine phosphatase 1C. *J Exp Med*. 1996;184:93–100. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8691154
708. Fry AM, Lanier LL, Weiss A. Phosphotyrosines in the killer cell inhibitory receptor motif of NKB1 are required for negative signaling and for association with protein tyrosine phosphatase 1C. *J Exp Med*. 1996; 184:295–300. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8691146
709. Faure M, Barber DF, Takahashi SM, et al. Spontaneous clustering and tyrosine phosphorylation of NK cell inhibitory receptor induced by ligand binding. *J Immunol*. 2003;170:6107–6114. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12794140
710. Kabat J, Borrego F, Brooks A, et al. Role that each NKG2A immunoreceptor tyrosine-based inhibitory motif plays in mediating the human CD94/NKG2A inhibitory signal. *J Immunol*. 2002;169:1948–1958. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12165520
711. Smith KGC, Tarlinton DM, Doody GM, et al. Inhibition of the B cell by CD22: a requirement for Lyn. *J Exp Med*. 1998;187:807–811. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9480991
712. Olcese L, Lang P, Vely F, et al. Human and mouse killer-cell inhibitory receptors recruit PTP1C and PTP1D protein tyrosine phosphatases. *J Immunol*. 1996;156:4531–4534. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8648092
713. Wang LL, Blasioli J, Plas DR, et al. Specificity of the SH2 domains of SHP-1 in the interaction with the immunoreceptor tyrosine-based inhibitory motif-bearing receptor gp49B. *J Immunol*. 1999;162:1318–1323. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9973385
714. Gupta N, Scharenberg AM, Burshtyn DN, et al. Negative signaling pathways of the killer cell inhibitory receptor and Fc gamma RIIb1 require distinct phosphatases. *J Exp Med*. 1997;186:473–478. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9236201
715. Yusa S, Campbell KS. Src homology region 2-containing protein tyrosine phosphatase-2 (SHP-2) can play a direct role in the inhibitory function of killer cell Ig-like receptors in human NK cells. *J Immunol*. 2003;170:4539–4547. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12707331
716. Vyas YM, Maniar H, Lyddane CE, et al. Ligand binding to inhibitory killer cell Ig-like receptors induce colocalization with Src homology domain 2-containing protein tyrosine phosphatase 1 and interruption of ongoing activation signals. *J Immunol*. 2004;173:1571–1578. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15265884
717. Standeven LJ, Carlin LM, Borszcz P, et al. The actin cytoskeleton controls the efficiency of killer Ig-like receptor accumulation at inhibitory NK cell immune synapses. *J Immunol*. 2004;173:5617–5625. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15494512
718. Masilamani M, Nguyen C, Kabat J, et al. CD94/NKG2A inhibits NK cell activation by disrupting the actin network at the immunological synapse. *J Immunol*. 2006;177:3590–3596. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16951318
719. Treanor B, Lanigan PM, Kumar S, et al. Microclusters of inhibitory killer immunoglobulin-like receptor signaling at natural killer cell immunological synapses. *J Cell Biol*. 2006;174:153–161. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16801390
720. Sayos J, Martinez-Barriocanal A, Kitzig F, et al. Recruitment of C-terminal Src kinase by the leukocyte inhibitory receptor CD85j. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun*. 2004;324:640–647. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15474475
721. Orr SJ, Morgan NM, Elliott J, et al. CD33 responses are blocked by SOCS3 through accelerated proteasomal-mediated turnover. *Blood*. 2007;109:1061–1068. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17008544
722. Xu R, Abramson J, Fridkin M, et al. SH2 domain-containing inositol polyphosphate 5′-phosphatase is the main mediator of the inhibitory action of the mast cell function-associated antigen. *J Immunol*. 2001; 167:6394–6402. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11714805
723. Ono M, Bolland S, Tempst P, et al. Role of the inositol phosphatase SHIP in negative regulation of the immune system by the receptor Fc(gamma)RIIB. *Nature*. 1996;383:263–266. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8805703
724. Yu MC, Su LL, Zou L, et al. An essential function for beta-arrestin 2 in the inhibitory signaling of natural killer cells. *Nat Immunol*. 2008;9(8): 898–907. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18604210
725. Marti F, Xu CW, Selvakumar A, et al. LCK-phosphorylated human killer cell-inhibitory receptors recruit and activate phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1998;95:11810–11815. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9751747
726. Wang JW, Howson JM, Ghansah T, et al. Influence of SHIP on the NK repertoire and allogeneic bone marrow transplantation. *Science*. 2002; 295:2094–2097. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11896280
727. Das A, Long EO. Lytic granule polarization, rather than degranulation, is the preferred target of inhibitory receptors in NK cells. *J Immunol*. 2010;185:4698–4704. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20833835
728. Abeyweera TP, Merino E, Huse M. Inhibitory signaling blocks activating receptor clustering and induces cytoskeletal retraction in natural killer cells. *J Cell Biol*. 2011;192:675–690. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21339333
729. Feller SM. Crk family adaptors-signalling complex formation and biological roles. *Oncogene*. 2001;20:6348–6371. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11607838
730. Huang F, Gu H. Negative regulation of lymphocyte development and function by the Cbl family of proteins. *Immunol Rev*. 2008;224:229–238. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18759930
731. Schmitz ML. Activation of T cells: releasing the brakes by proteolytic elimination of Cbl-b. *Sci Signal*. 2009;2:pe38. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19549983
732. Sjostrom A, Eriksson M, Cerboni C, et al. Acquisition of external major histocompatibility complex class I molecules by natural killer cells expressing inhibitory ly49 receptors. *J Exp Med*. 2001;194:1519–1530. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11714758
733. Zimmer J, Ioannidis V, Held W. H-2D ligand expression by Ly49A+ natural killer (NK) cells precludes ligand uptake from environmental cells: implications for NK cell function. *J Exp Med*. 2001;194:1531–1539. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11714759
734. Davis DM. Intercellular transfer of cell-surface proteins is common and can affect many stages of an immune response. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2007; 7:238–243. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17290299
735. Furukawa H, Yabe T, Watanabe K, et al. Tolerance of NK and LAK activity for HLA class I-deficient targets in a TAP1-deficient patient (bare lymphocyte syndrome type I). *Hum Immunol*. 1999;60:32–40. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9952025
736. Vitale M, Zimmer J, Castriconi R, et al. Analysis of natural killer cells in TAP2-deficient patients: expression of functional triggering receptors and evidence for the existence of inhibitory receptor(s) that prevent lysis of normal autologous cells. *Blood*. 2002;99:1723–1729. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11861289
737. Ljunggren HG, Van Kaer L, Ploegh HL, et al. Altered natural killer cell repertoire in Tap-1 mutant mice. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1994;91: 6520–6524. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8022815
738. Dorfman JR, Zerrahn J, Coles MC, et al. The basis for self-tolerance of natural killer cells in beta2-microglobulin- and TAP-1- mice. *J Immunol*. 1997;159:5219–5225. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9548460
739. Cudkowicz G, Stimpfling JH. Hybrid resistance to parental marrow grafts: association with the K Region of H-2. *Science*. 1964;144:1339–1340. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14171524
740. Bennett M. Biology and genetics of hybrid resistance. *Adv Immunol*. 1987;41:333–445. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2891262

741. Ohlen C, Kling G, Hoglund P, et al. Prevention of allogeneic bone marrow graft rejection by H-2 transgene in donor mice. *Science*. 1989; 246:666–668.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2814488
742. Bennett M, Yu YY, Stoneman E, et al. Hybrid resistance: "negative" and "positive" signaling of murine natural killer cells. *Sem Immunol*. 1995;7: 121–127.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7579194
743. Raulet DH, Vance RE, McMahon CW. Regulation of the natural killer cell receptor repertoire. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 2001;19:291–330.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11244039
744. Sentman CL, Olsson MY, Karre K. Missing self recognition by natural killer cells in MHC class I transgenic mice. A "receptor calibration" model for how effector cells adapt to self. *Sem Immunol*. 1995;7:109–119.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7579193
745. Dorfman JR, Raulet DH. Major histocompatibility complex genes determine natural killer cell tolerance. *Eur J Immunol*. 1996;26:151–155.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8566058
746. Olsson-Alheim MY, Salcedo M, Ljunggren HG, et al. NK cell receptor calibration: effects of MHC class I induction on killing by Ly49Ahigh and Ly49Alow NK cells. *J Immunol*. 1997;159:3189–3194.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9317116
747. Fernandez NC, Treiner E, Vance RE, et al. A subset of natural killer cells achieves self-tolerance without expressing inhibitory receptors specific for self-MHC molecules. *Blood*. 2005;105:4416–4423.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15728129
748. Jonsson AH, Yokoyama WM. Assessing licensing of NK cells. *Methods Mol Biol*. 2010;612:39–49.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20033633
749. Choi T, Ferris ST, Matsumoto N, et al. Ly49-dependent NK cell licensing and effector inhibition involve the same interaction site on MHC ligands. *J Immunol*. 2011;186:3911–3917.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21335486
750. Elliott JM, Yokoyama WM. Unifying concepts of MHC-dependent natural killer cell education. *Trends Immunol*. 2011;32:364–372.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21752715
751. Vivier E, Raulet DH, Moretta A, et al. Innate or adaptive immunity? The example of natural killer cells. *Science*. 2011;331:44–49.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21212348
752. Anfossi N, Andre P, Guia S, et al. Human NK cell education by inhibitory receptors for MHC class I. *Immunity*. 2006;25:331–342.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16901727
753. Kim S, Sunwoo JB, Yang L, et al. HLA alleles determine differences in human natural killer cell responsiveness and potency. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2008;105:3053–3058.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18287063
754. Kulkarni S, Martin MP, Carrington M. The Yin and Yang of HLA and KIR in human disease. *Semin Immunol*. 2008;20:343–352.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18635379
755. Altfeld M, Fadda L, Frleta D, et al. DCs and NK cells: critical effectors in the immune response to HIV-1. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2011;11:176–186.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21350578
756. Khakoo SI, Thio CL, Martin MP, et al. HLA and NK cell inhibitory receptor genes in resolving hepatitis C virus infection. *Science*. 2004; 305:872–874.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15297676
757. Jonsson AH, Yokoyama WM. Natural killer cell tolerance licensing and other mechanisms. *Adv Immunol*. 2009;101:27–79.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19231592
758. Johansson S, Johansson M, Rosmaraki E, et al. Natural killer cell education in mice with single or multiple major histocompatibility complex class I molecules. *J Exp Med*. 2005;201:1145–1155.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15809355
759. Brodin P, Lakshmikanth T, Mehr R, et al. Natural killer cell tolerance persists despite significant reduction of self MHC class I on normal target cells in mice. *PLoS One*. 2010;5:e13174.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20957233
760. Hoglund P, Brodin P. Current perspectives of natural killer cell education by MHC class I molecules. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2010;10:724–734.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20818413
761. Elliott JM, Wahle JA, Yokoyama WM. MHC class I-deficient natural killer cells acquire a licensed phenotype after transfer into an MHC class I-sufficient environment. *J Exp Med*. 2010;207:2073–2079.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20819924
762. Joncker NT, Shifrin N, Delebecque F, et al. Mature natural killer cells reset their responsiveness when exposed to an altered MHC environment. *J Exp Med*. 2010;207:2065–2072.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20819928
763. Held W, Mariuzza RA. Cis interactions of immunoreceptors with MHC and non-MHC ligands. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2008;8:269–278.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18309314
764. Raulet DH, Vance RE. Self-tolerance of natural killer cells. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2006;6:520–531.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16799471
765. Wu MF, Raulet DH. Class I-deficient hemopoietic cells and nonhemopoietic cells dominantly induce unresponsiveness of natural killer cells to class I-deficient bone marrow cell grafts. *J Immunol*. 1997; 158:1628–1633.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9029098
766. Guia S, Jaeger BN, Piatek S, et al. Confinement of activating receptors at the plasma membrane controls natural killer cell tolerance. *Sci Signal*. 2011;4:ra21.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21467299
767. Tripathy SK, Keyel PA, Yang L, et al. Continuous engagement of a self-specific activation receptor induces NK cell tolerance. *J Exp Med*. 2008; 205:1829–1841.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18606857
768. Sun JC, Lanier LL. Tolerance of NK cells encountering their viral ligand during development. *J Exp Med*. 2008;205:1819–1828.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18606858
769. Mathis D, Benoist C. Levees of immunological tolerance. *Nat Immunol*. 2010;11:3–6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20016503
770. Xie X, Stadnisky MD, Brown MG. MHC class I Dk locus and Ly49G2+ NK cells confer H-2k resistance to murine cytomegalovirus. *J Immunol*. 2009;182:7163–7171.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19454713
771. Xie X, Stadnisky MD, Coats ER, et al. MHC class I D(k) expression in hematopoietic and nonhematopoietic cells confers natural killer cell resistance to murine cytomegalovirus. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2010; 107:8754–8759.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20421478
772. Stadnisky MD, Xie X, Coats ER, et al. Self MHC class I-licensed NK cells enhance adaptive CD8 T-cell viral immunity. *Blood*. 2011;117: 5133–5141.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21436069
773. Tay CH, Welsh RM, Brutkiewicz RR. NK cell response to viral infections in beta 2-microglobulin-deficient mice. *J Immunol*. 1995;154: 780–789.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7529286
774. Sun JC, Lanier LL. Cutting edge: viral infection breaks NK cell tolerance to "missing self." *J Immunol*. 2008;181:7453–7457.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19017932
775. Orr MT, Murphy WJ, Lanier LL. "Unlicensed" natural killer cells dominate the response to cytomegalovirus infection. *Nat Immunol*. 2010;11: 321–327.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20190757
776. Seaman WE, Blackman MA, Gindhart TD, et al. beta-Estradiol reduces natural killer cells in mice. *J Immunol*. 1978;121:2193–2198.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/722074
777. Seaman WE, Gindhart TD, Greenspan JS, et al. Natural killer cells, bone, and the bone marrow: studies in estrogen-treated mice and in congenitally osteopetrotic (mi/mi) mice. *J Immunol*. 1979;122:2541–2547.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/376736
778. Kumar V, Ben-Ezra J, Bennett M, et al. Natural killer cells in mice treated with 89strontium: normal target-binding cell numbers but inability to kill even after interferon administration. *J Immunol*. 1979; 123:1832–1838.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/383842
779. Puzanov IJ, Bennett M, Kumar V. IL-15 can substitute for the marrow microenvironment in the differentiation of natural killer cells. *J Immunol*. 1996;157:4282–4285.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8906800
780. Ito A, Kataoka TR, Kim DK, et al. Inhibitory effect on natural killer activity of microphthalmia transcription factor encoded by the mutant mi allele of mice. *Blood*. 2001;97:2075–2083.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11264174

781. Wu Q, Sun Y, Wang J, et al. Signal via lymphotoxin-beta R on bone marrow stromal cells is required for an early checkpoint of NK cell development. *J Immunol*. 2001;166:1684–1689. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11160211
782. Miller JS, Alley KA, McGlave P. Differentiation of natural killer (NK) cells from human primitive marrow progenitors in a stroma-based long-term culture system: identification of a CD34+7+ NK progenitor. *Blood*. 1994;83:2594–2601. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7513206
783. Shibuya A, Nagayoshi K, Nakamura K, et al. Lymphokine requirement for the generation of natural killer cells from CD34+ hematopoietic progenitor cells. *Blood*. 1995;85:3538–3546. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7540065
784. Mrozek E, Anderson P, Caligiuri MA. Role of interleukin-15 in the development of human CD56+ natural killer cells from CD34+ hematopoietic progenitor cells. *Blood* .1996;87:2632–2640. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8639878
785. Williams NS, Moore TA, Schatzle JD, et al. Generation of lytic natural killer 1.1+ , Ly-49-cells from multipotential murine bone marrow progenitors in a stroma-free culture: definition of cytokine requirements and developmental intermediates. *J Exp Med*. 1997;186:1609–1614. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9348320
786. Yu H, Fehniger TA, Fuchshuber P, et al. Flt3 ligand promotes the generation of a distinct CD34(+) human natural killer cell progenitor that responds to interleukin-15. *Blood*. 1998;92:3647–3657. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9808558
787. Williams NS, Klem J, Puzanov IJ, et al. Differentiation of NK1.1+, Ly49 + NK cells from flt3+ multipotent marrow progenitor cells. *J Immunol*. 1999;163:2648–2656. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10453005
788. Roth C, Carlyle JR, Takizawa H, et al. Clonal acquisition of inhibitory Ly49 receptors on developing NK cells is successively restricted and regulated by stromal class I MHC. *Immunity*. 2000;13:143–153. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10933402
789. Vargas CL, Poursine-Laurent J, Yang L, et al. Development of thymic NK cells from double-negative 1 thymocyte precursors. *Blood*. 2011; 118:3570–3578. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21821702
790. Caraux A, Lu Q, Fernandez N, et al. Natural killer cell differentiation driven by Tyro3 receptor tyrosine kinases. *Nat Immunol*. 2006;7:747–754. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16751775
791. Park IK, Giovenzana C, Hughes TL, et al. The Axl/Gas6 pathway is required for optimal cytokine signaling during human natural killer cell development. *Blood*. 2009;113:2470–2477. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18840707
792. Kondo M, Weissman IL, Akashi K. Identification of clonogenic common lymphoid progenitors in mouse bone marrow. *Cell*. 1997; 91:661–672. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9393859
793. Galy A, Travis M, Cen D, et al. Human T, B, natural killer, and dendritic cells arise from a common bone marrow progenitor cell subset. *Immunity*. 1995;3:459–473. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7584137
794. Georgopoulos K, Bigby M, Wang JH, et al. The Ikaros gene is required for the development of all lymphoid lineages. *Cell*. 1994;79:143–156. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7923373
795. Wang JH, Nichogiannopoulou A, Wu L, et al. Selective defects in the development of the fetal and adult lymphoid system in mice with an Ikaros null mutation. *Immunity*. 1996;5:537–549. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8986714
796. Scott EW, Fisher RC, Olson MC, et al. PU.1 functions in a cell-autonomous manner to control the differentiation of multipotential lymphoid-myeloid progenitors. *Immunity*. 1997;6:437–447. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9133423
797. DeKoter RP, Singh H. Regulation of B lymphocyte and macrophage development by graded expression of PU.1. *Science*. 2000;288:1439–1441. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10827957
798. Colucci F, Samson SI, DeKoter RP, et al. Differential requirement for the transcription factor PU.1 in the generation of natural killer cells versus B and T cells. *Blood*. 2001;97:2625–2632. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11313251
799. Wang B, Biron C, She J, et al. A block in both early T lymphocyte and natural killer cell development in transgenic mice with high-copy numbers of the human CD3E gene. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1994; 91:9402–9406. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7937778
800. Flamand V, Shores EW, Tran T, et al. Delayed maturation of CD4- CD8- Fc gamma RII/III+ T and natural killer cell precursors in Fc epsilon RI gamma transgenic mice. *J Exp Med*. 1996;184:1725–1735. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8920861
801. Townsend MJ, Weinmann AS, Matsuda J, et al. T-bet regulates the terminal maturation and homeostasis of NK and Va14i NKT cells. *Immunity*. 2004;20:477–494. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15084276
802. Rodewald HR, Moingeon P, Lucich JL, et al. A population of early fetal thymocytes expressing Fc gamma RII/III contains precursors of T lymphocytes and natural killer cells. *Cell*. 1992;69:139–150. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1532536
803. Carlyle JR, Michie AM, Furlonger C, et al. Identification of a novel developmental stage marking lineage commitment of progenitor thymocytes. *J Exp Med*. 1997;186:173–182. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9221746
804. Carlyle JR, Zuniga-Pflucker JC. Requirement for the thymus in alpha-beta T lymphocyte lineage commitment. *Immunity*. 1998;9:187–197. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9729039
805. Ikawa T, Kawamoto H, Fujimoto S, et al. Commitment of common T/Natural killer (NK) progenitors to unipotent T and NK progenitors in the murine fetal thymus revealed by a single progenitor assay. *J Exp Med*. 1999;190:1617–1626. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10587352
806. Douagi I, Colucci F, Di Santo JP, et al. Identification of the earliest prethymic bipotent T/NK progenitor in murine fetal liver. *Blood*. 2002;99:463–471. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11781226
807. Porritt HE, Rumfelt LL, Tabrizifard S, et al. Heterogeneity among DN1 prothymocytes reveals multiple progenitors with different capacities to generate T cell and non-T cell lineages. *Immunity*. 2004;20:735–745. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15189738
808. Zuniga-Pflucker JC. T-cell development made simple. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2004;4:67–72. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14704769
809. Li P, Burke S, Wang J, et al. Reprogramming of T cells to natural killer-like cells upon Bcl11b deletion. *Science*. 2010;329:85–89. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20538915
810. Ikawa T, Hirose S, Masuda K, et al. An essential developmental checkpoint for production of the T cell lineage. *Science*. 2010;329:93–96. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20595615
811. Li L, Leid M, Rothenberg EV. An early T cell lineage commitment checkpoint dependent on the transcription factor Bcl11b. *Science*. 2010; 329:89–93. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20595614
812. Di Santo JP. Immunology. A guardian of T cell fate. *Science*. 2010;329: 44–45. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20595605
813. Yokota Y, Mansouri A, Mori S, et al. Development of peripheral lymphoid organs and natural killer cells depends on the helix-loop-helix inhibitor Id2. *Nature*. 1999;397:702–706. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10067894
814. Boos MD, Yokota Y, Eberl G, et al. Mature natural killer cell and lymphoid tissue-inducing cell development requires Id2-mediated suppression of E protein activity. *J Exp Med*. 2007;204:1119–1130. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17452521
815. Aliahmad P, de la Torre B, Kaye J. Shared dependence on the DNA-binding factor TOX for the development of lymphoid tissue-inducer cell and NK cell lineages. *Nat Immunol*. 2010;11:945–952. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20818394
816. Rosmaraki EE, Douagi I, Roth C, et al. Identification of committed NK cell progenitors in adult murine bone marrow. *Eur J Immunol*. 2001;31: 1900–1909. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11433387
817. Fathman JW, Bhattacharya D, Inlay MA, et al. Identification of the earliest natural killer cell-committed progenitor in murine bone marrow. *Blood*. 2011;118:5439–5447. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21931117

818. Intlekofer AM, Takemoto N, Wherry EJ, et al. Effector and memory CD8+ T cell fate coupled by T-bet and eomesodermin. *Nat Immunol*. 2005;6:1236–1244.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16273099
819. Cowell IG, Skinner A, Hurst HC. Transcriptional repression by a novel member of the bZIP family of transcription factors. *Mol Cell Biol*. 1992;12:3070–3077.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1620116
820. Zhang W, Zhang J, Kornuc M, et al. Molecular cloning and characterization of NF-IL3A, a transcriptional activator of the human interleukin-3 promoter. *Mol Cell Biol*. 1995;15:6055–6063.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7565758
821. Gascoyne DM, Long E, Veiga-Fernandes H, et al. The basic leucine zipper transcription factor E4BP4 is essential for natural killer cell development. *Nat Immunol*. 2009;10:1118–1124.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19749763
822. Kamizono S, Duncan GS, Seidel MG, et al. Nfil3/E4bp4 is required for the development and maturation of NK cells in vivo. *J Exp Med*. 2009;206:2977–2986.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19995955
823. Kashiwada M, Levy DM, McKeag L, et al. IL-4-induced transcription factor NFIL3/E4BP4 controls IgE class switching. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2010;107:821–826.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20080759
824. Kashiwada M, Pham NL, Pewe LL, et al. NFIL3/E4BP4 is a key transcription factor for CD8alpha dendritic cell development. *Blood*. 2011;117:6193–6197.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21474667
825. Yokoyama WM, Kim S, French AR. The dynamic life of natural killer cells. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 2004;22:405–429.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15032583
826. Di Santo JP. Natural killer cell developmental pathways: a question of balance. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 2006;24:257–286.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16551250
827. Narni-Mancinelli E, Chaix J, Fenis A, et al. Fate mapping analysis of lymphoid cells expressing the NKp46 cell surface receptor. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2011;108:18324–18329.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22021440
828. Kim S, Iizuka K, Aguila HL, et al. In vivo natural killer cell activities revealed by natural killer cell-deficient mice. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2000;97:2731–2736.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10694580
829. Kim S, Song YJ, Higuchi DA, et al. Arrested natural killer cell development associated with transgene insertion into the Atf2 locus. *Blood*. 2006;107:1024–1030.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16223777
830. Hayakawa Y, Smyth MJ. CD27 dissects mature NK cells into two subsets with distinct responsiveness and migratory capacity. *J Immunol*. 2006;176:1517–1524.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16424180
831. Barton K, Muthusamy N, Fischer C, et al. The Ets-1 transcription factor is required for the development of natural killer cells in mice. *Immunity*. 1998;9:555–563.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9806641
832. Duncan GS, Mittrucker HW, Kagi D, et al. The transcription factor interferon regulatory factor-1 is essential for natural killer cell function in vivo. *J Exp Med*. 1996;184:2043–2048.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8920893
833. Ogasawara K, Hida S, Azimi N, et al. Requirement for IRF-1 in the microenvironment supporting development of natural killer cells. *Nature*. 1998;391:700–703.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9490414
834. Ohteki T, Yoshida H, Matsuyama T, et al. The transcription factor interferon regulatory factor 1 (IRF-1) is important during the maturation of NK1.1^{+} T cell receptor-ab^{+} (NK1^{+} T) cells, natural killer cells, and intestinal intraepithelial T cells. *J Exp Med*. 1998;187:967–972.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9500799
835. Lacorazza HD, Miyazaki Y, Di Cristofano A, et al. The ETS protein MEF plays a critical role in perforin gene expression and the development of natural killer and NK-T cells. *Immunity*. 2002;17:437–449.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12387738
836. Samson SI, Richard O, Tavian M, et al. GATA-3 promotes maturation, IFN-gamma production, and liver-specific homing of NK cells. *Immunity*. 2003;19:701–711.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14614857
837. Ohteki T, Maki C, Koyasu S. Overexpression of Bcl-2 differentially restores development of thymus-derived CD4-8+ T cells and intestinal intraepithelial T cells in IFN-regulatory factor-1-deficient mice. *J Immunol*. 2001;166:6509–6513.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11359801
838. Lohoff M, Duncan GS, Ferrick D, et al. Deficiency in the transcription factor interferon regulatory factor (IRF)-2 leads to severely compromised development of natural killer and T helper type 1 cells. *J Exp Med*. 2000;192:325–336.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10934221
839. Taki S, Nakajima S, Ichikawa E, et al. IFN regulatory factor-2 deficiency revealed a novel checkpoint critical for the generation of peripheral NK cells. *J Immunol*. 2005;174:6005–6012.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15879093
840. Kaisho T, Tsutsui H, Tanaka T, et al. Impairment of natural killer cytotoxic activity and interferon gamma production in CCAAT/enhancer binding protein gamma-deficient mice. *J Exp Med*. 1999;190:1573–1582.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10587348
841. Freud AG, Yokohama A, Becknell B, et al. Evidence for discrete stages of human natural killer cell differentiation in vivo. *J Exp Med*. 2006;203:1033–1043.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16606675
842. Freud AG, Caligiuri MA. Human natural killer cell development. *Immunol Rev*. 2006;214:56–72.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17100876
843. Huntington ND, Vosshenrich CA, Di Santo JP. Developmental pathways that generate natural-killer-cell diversity in mice and humans. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2007;7:703–714.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17717540
844. Caligiuri MA. Human natural killer cells. *Blood*. 2008;112:461–469.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18650461
845. Woll PS, Martin CH, Miller JS, et al. Human embryonic stem cell-derived NK cells acquire functional receptors and cytolytic activity. *J Immunol*. 2005;175:5095–5103.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16210613
846. Woll PS, Grzywacz B, Tian X, et al. Human embryonic stem cells differentiate into a homogeneous population of natural killer cells with potent in vivo antitumor activity. *Blood*. 2009;113:6094–6101.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19365083
847. Freud AG, Becknell B, Roychowdhury S, et al. A human CD34(+) subset resides in lymph nodes and differentiates into CD56bright natural killer cells. *Immunity*. 2005;22:295–304.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15780987
848. Huntington ND, Legrand N, Alves NL, et al. IL-15 trans-presentation promotes human NK cell development and differentiation in vivo. *J Exp Med*. 2009;206:25–34.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19103877
849. Dokun AO, Chu DT, Yang L, et al. Analysis of in situ NK cell responses during viral infection. *J Immunol*. 2001;167:5286–5293.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11673544
850. Andrews DM, Farrell HE, Densley EH, et al. NK1.1+ cells and murine cytomegalovirus infection: what happens in situ? *J Immunol*. 2001;166:1796–1802.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11160226
851. Salazar-Mather TP, Lewis CA, Biron CA. Type I interferons regulate inflammatory cell trafficking and macrophage inflammatory protein 1alpha delivery to the liver. *J Clin Invest*. 2002;110:321–330.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12163451
852. Salazar-Mather TP, Orange JS, Biron CA. Early murine cytomegalovirus (MCMV) infection induces liver natural killer (NK) cell inflammation and protection through macrophage inflammatory protein 1-alpha (MIP-1-alpha)-dependent pathways. *J Exp Med*. 1998;187:1–14.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9419206
853. Walzer T, Vivier E. G-protein-coupled receptors in control of natural killer cell migration. *Trends Immunol*. 2011;32:486–492.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21664184

854. Fehniger TA, Cooper MA, Nuovo GJ, et al. CD56bright natural killer cells are present in human lymph nodes and are activated by T cell-derived IL-2: a potential new link between adaptive and innate immunity. *Blood*. 2003;101:3052–3057.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12480696
855. Martin-Fontecha A, Thomsen LL, Brett S, et al. Induced recruitment of NK cells to lymph nodes provides IFN-gamma for T(H)1 priming. *Nat Immunol*. 2004;5:1260–1265.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15531883
856. Fang M, Lanier LL, Sigal LJ. A role for NKG2D in NK cell-mediated resistance to poxvirus disease. *PLoS Pathog*. 2008;4:e30.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18266471
857. Andrews DM, Estcourt MJ, Andoniou CE, et al. Innate immunity defines the capacity of antiviral T cells to limit persistent infection. *J Exp Med*. 2010;207:1333–1343.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20513749
858. Robbins SH, Bessou G, Cornillon A, et al. Natural killer cells promote early CD8 T cell responses against cytomegalovirus. *PLoS Pathog*. 2007;3:e123.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17722980
859. Scharton TM, Scott P. Natural killer cells are a source of interferon gamma that drives differentiation of CD4+ T cell subsets and induces early resistance to Leishmania major in mice. *J Exp Med*. 1993;178:567–577.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8101861
860. Laouar Y, Sutterwala FS, Gorelik L, et al. Transforming growth factor-beta controls T helper type 1 cell development through regulation of natural killer cell interferon-gamma. *Nat Immunol*. 2005;6:600–607.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15852008
861. Morandi B, Bougras G, Muller WA, et al. NK cells of human secondary lymphoid tissues enhance T cell polarization via IFN-gamma secretion. *Eur J Immunol*. 2006;36:2394–2400.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16917961
862. Maroof A, Beattie L, Zubairi S, et al. Posttranscriptional regulation of Il10 gene expression allows natural killer cells to express immunoregulatory function. *Immunity*. 2008;29:295–305.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18701085
863. Krebs P, Barnes MJ, Lampe K, et al. NK-cell-mediated killing of target cells triggers robust antigen-specific T-cell-mediated and humoral responses. *Blood*. 2009;113:6593–6602.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19406986
864. Herberman RB, Gorelik E. Role of the natural immune system in control of primary tumors and metastasis. In: Reynolds CW, Wiltrout RH, eds. *Functions of the Natural Immune System*. New York, NY: Plenum Press; 1989:3–37.
865. Smyth MJ, Dunn GP, Schreiber RD. Cancer immunosurveillance and immunoediting: the roles of immunity in suppressing tumor development and shaping tumor immunogenicity. *Adv Immunol*. 2006;90:1–50
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16730260
866. Smyth MJ, Crowe NY, Godfrey DI. NK cells and NKT cells collaborate in host protection from methylcholanthrene-induced fibrosarcoma. *Int Immunol*. 2001;13:459–463.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11282985
867. Smyth MJ, Cretney E, Takeda K, et al. Tumor necrosis factor-related apoptosis-inducing ligand (TRAIL) contributes to interferon gamma-dependent natural killer cell protection from tumor metastasis. *J Exp Med*. 2001;193:661–670.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11257133
868. Takeda K, Smyth MJ, Cretney E, et al. Critical role for tumor necrosis factor-related apoptosis-inducing ligand in immune surveillance against tumor development. *J Exp Med*. 2002;195:161–169.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11805143
869. Imai K, Matsuyama S, Miyake S, et al. Natural cytotoxic activity of peripheral-blood lymphocytes and cancer incidence: an 11-year follow-up study of a general population. *Lancet*. 2000;356:1795–1799.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11117911
870. Ruggeri L, Capanni M, Urbani E, et al. Effectiveness of donor natural killer cell alloreactivity in mismatched hematopoietic transplants. *Science*. 2002;295:2097–2100.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11896281
871. Hsu KC, Keever-Taylor CA, Wilton A, et al. Improved outcome in HLA-identical sibling hematopoietic stem-cell transplantation for acute myelogenous leukemia predicted by KIR and HLA genotypes. *Blood*. 2005;105:4878–4884.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15731175
872. Zucchini N, Crozat K, Baranek T, et al. Natural killer cells in immunodefense against infective agents. *Expert Rev Anti Infect Ther*. 2008;6:867–885.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19053900
873. Bouzani M, Ok M, McCormick A, et al. Human NK cells display important antifungal activity against Aspergillus fumigatus, which is directly mediated by IFN-gamma release. *J Immunol*. 2011;187:1369–1376.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21697457
874. Biron CA, Byron KS, Sullivan JL. Severe herpesvirus infections in an adolescent without natural killer cells. *New Eng J Med*. 1989;320:1731–1735.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2543925
875. Orange JS. Human natural killer cell deficiencies. *Curr Opin Allergy* Clin Immunol.2006;6:399–409.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17088643
876. Rook AH, Masur H, Lane HC, et al. Interleukin-2 enhances the depressed natural killer and cytomegalovirus-specific cytotoxic activities of lymphocytes from patients with the acquired immune deficiency syndrome. J Clin Invest.1983;72:398–403.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6308051
877. Bonavida B, Katz J, Gottlieb M. Mechanism of defective NK cell activity in patients with acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS) and AIDS-related complex. I. Defective trigger on NK cells for NKCF production by target cells, and partial restoration by IL 2. J Immunol. 1986;137:1157–1163.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3488345
878. Lusso P, Malnati MS, Garzino-Demo A, et al. Infection of natural killer cells by human herpesvirus 6. *Nature*. 1993;362:458–462.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7681936
879. Fauci AS, Mavilio D, Kottilil S. NK cells in HIV infection: paradigm for protection or targets for ambush. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2005;5:835–843.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16239902
880. Epps RE, Pittelkow MR, Su WP. TORCH syndrome. *Sem Dermatol*. 1995;14:179–186.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7640200
881. Unanue ER. Inter-relationship among macrophages, natural killer cells and neutrophils in early stages of Listeria resistance. *Curr Opin Immunol*. 1997;9:35–43.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9039774
882. Biron CA. Expansion, maintenance, and memory in NK and T cells during viral infections: responding to pressures for defense and regulation. *PLoS Pathog*. 2010;6:e1000816.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20361055
883. Bukowski JF, Woda BA, Habu S, et al. Natural killer cell depletion enhances virus synthesis and virus-induced hepatitis in vivo. *J Immunol*. 1983;131:1531–1538.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6309965
884. Bukowski JF, Woda BA, Welsh RM. Pathogenesis of murine cyto-megalovirus infection in natural killer cell-depleted mice. *J Virol*. 1984;52:119–128.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6207307
885. Welsh RM, Dundon PL, Eynon EE, et al. Demonstration of the antiviral role of natural killer cells in vivo with a natural killer cell-specific monoclonal antibody (NK 1.1). *Nat Immun Cell Growth Regul*. 1990;9:112–120.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2352539
886. Orange JS, Wang B, Terhorst C, et al. Requirement for natural killer cell-produced interferon gamma in defense against murine cyto-megalovirus infection and enhancement of this defense pathway by interleukin 12 administration. *J Exp Med*. 1995;182:1045–1056.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7561678
887. Loh J, Chu DT, O'Guin AK, et al. Natural killer cells utilize both perforin and gamma interferon to regulate murine cytomegalovirus infection in the spleen and liver. *J Virol*. 2005;79:661–667.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15596864
888. Bancroft GJ, Schreiber RD, Unanue ER. Natural immunity: a T-cell-independent pathway of macrophage activation, defined in the scid mouse. *Immunol Rev*. 1991;124:5–24.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1804781
889. Dunn PL, North RJ. Early gamma interferon production by natural killer cells is important in defense against murine listeriosis. *Infect Immun*. 1991;59:2892–2900.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1679040

890. Tripp CS, Gately MK, Hakimi J, et al. Neutralization of IL-12 decreases resistance to Listeria in SCID and C.B-17 mice. Reversal by IFN-gamma. *J Immunol*. 1994;152:1883–1887. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7907107
891. Brombacher F, Dorfmuller A, Magram J, et al. IL-12 is dispensable for innate and adaptive immunity against low doses of Listeria monocytogenes. *Int Immunol*. 1999;11:325–332. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10221644
892. Harty JT, Bevan MJ. Specific immunity to Listeria monocytogenes in the absence of IFN gamma. *Immunity*. 1995;3:109–117. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7621071
893. Huang S, Hendriks W, Althage A, et al. Immune response in mice that lack the interferon-gamma receptor. *Science*. 1993;259:1742–1745. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8456301
894. Meraz MA, White JM, Sheehan KC, et al. Targeted disruption of the Stat1 gene in mice reveals unexpected physiologic specificity in the JAK-STAT signaling pathway. *Cell*. 1996;84:431–442. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8608597
895. Orange JS, Biron CA. An absolute and restricted requirement for IL-12 in natural killer cell IFN-gamma production and antiviral defense. Studies of natural killer and T cell responses in contrasting viral infections. *J Immunol*. 1996;156:1138–1142. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8557990
896. Biron CA, Nguyen KB, Pien GC, et al. Natural killer cells in antiviral defense: function and regulation by innate cytokines. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 1999;17:189–220. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10358757
897. Pien GC, Satoskar AR, Takeda K, et al. Cutting edge: selective IL-18 requirements for induction of compartmental IFN- gamma responses during viral infection. *J Immunol*. 2000;165:4787–4791. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11046000
898. Smith VP, Bryant NA, Alcami A. Ectromelia, vaccinia and cowpox viruses encode secreted interleukin-18-binding proteins. *J Gen Virol*. 2000;81(pt 5):1223–1230. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10769064
899. Born TL, Morrison LA, Esteban DJ, et al. A poxvirus protein that binds to and inactivates IL-18, and inhibits NK cell response. *J Immunol*. 2000;164:3246–3254. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10706717
900. Akira S. The role of IL-18 in innate immunity. *Curr Opin Immunol*. 2000;12:59–63. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10679398
901. Hyodo Y, Matsui K, Hayashi N, et al. IL-18 up-regulates perforin-mediated NK activity without increasing perforin messenger RNA expression by binding to constitutively expressed IL-18 receptor. *J Immunol*. 1999;162:1662–1668. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9973427
902. Takeda K, Tsutsui H, Yoshimoto T, et al. Defective NK cell activity and Th1 response in IL-18-deficient mice. *Immunity*. 1998;8:383–390. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9529155
903. Bukowski JF, Warner JF, Dennert G, et al. Adoptive transfer studies demonstrating the antiviral effect of natural killer cells in vivo. *J Exp Med*. 1985;161:40–52. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2981954
904. Guidotti LG, Chisari FV. Noncytolytic control of viral infections by the innate and adaptive immune response. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 2001;19:65–91. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11244031
905. Nguyen KB, Cousens LP, Doughty LA, et al. Interferon a/b-mediated inhibition and promotion of interferong: STAT1 resolves a paradox. *Nat Immunol*. 2000;1:70–76. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10881178
906. Waldmann TA, Tagaya Y. The multifaceted regulation of interleukin-15 expression and the role of this cytokine in NK cell differentiation and host response to intracellular pathogens. *Ann Rev Immunol*. 1999;17:19–49. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10358752
907. Gosselin J, TomoIu A, Gallo RC, et al. Interleukin-15 as an activator of natural killer cell-mediated antiviral response. *Blood*. 1999;94:4210–4219. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10590066
908. Fawaz LM, Sharif-Askari E, Menezes J. Up-regulation of NK cytotoxic activity via IL-15 induction by different viruses: a comparative study. *J Immunol*. 1999;163:4473–4480. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10510389
909. Ahmad A, Sharif-Askari E, Fawaz L, et al. Innate immune response of the human host to exposure with herpes simplex virus type 1: in vitro control of the virus infection by enhanced natural killer activity via interleukin-15 induction. *J Virol*. 2000;74:7196–7203. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10906173
910. Tsunobuchi H, Nishimura H, Goshima F, et al. A protective role of interleukin-15 in a mouse model for systemic infection with herpes simplex virus. *Virol*. 2000;275:57–66. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11017787
911. Nguyen KB, Salazar-Mather TP, Dalod MY, et al. Coordinated and distinct roles for IFN-alphabeta, IL-12, and IL-15 regulation of NK cell responses to viral infection. *J Immunol* .2002;169:4279–4287. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12370359
912. Geurs TL, Zhao YM, Hill EB, et al. Ly49H engagement compensates for the absence of type I interferon signaling in stimulating NK cell proliferation during murine cytomegalovirus infection. *J Immunol*. 2009;183:5830–5836. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19828630
913. Sun JC, Ma A, Lanier LL. Cutting edge: IL-15-independent NK cell response to mouse cytomegalovirus infection. *J Immunol*. 2009;183:2911–2914. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19648279
914. Ladel CH, Blum C, Kaufmann SH. Control of natural killer cell-mediated innate resistance against the intracellular pathogen Listeria monocytogenes by gamma/delta T lymphocytes. *Infect Immun*. 1996;64:1744–1749. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8613386
915. Smyth MJ, Wallace ME, Nutt SL, et al. Sequential activation of NKT cells and NK cells provides effective innate immunotherapy of cancer. *J Exp Med*. 2005;201:1973–1985. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15967825
916. Wesley JD, Robbins SH, Sidobre S, et al. Cutting edge: IFN-gamma signaling to macrophages is required for optimal Valpha14i NK T/NK cell cross-talk. *J Immunol*. 2005;174:3864–3868. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15778340
917. Moody DB, Reinhold BB, Guy MR, et al. Structural requirements for glycolipid antigen recognition by CD1b- restricted T cells. *Science*. 1997;278:283–286. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9323206
918. Moody DB, Ulrichs T, Muhlecker W, et al. CD1c-mediated T-cell recognition of isoprenoid glycolipids in Mycobacterium tuberculosis infection. *Nature*. 2000;404:884–888. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10786796
919. Sada-Ovalle I, Skold M, Tian T, et al. Alpha-galactosylceramide as a therapeutic agent for pulmonary Mycobacterium tuberculosis infection. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2010;182:841–847. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20508216
920. Lisnic VJ, Krmpotic A, Jonjic S. Modulation of natural killer cell activity by viruses. *Curr Opin Microbiol*. 2010;13:530–539. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20558100
921. Farrell HE, Vally H, Lynch DM, et al. Inhibition of natural killer cells by a cytomegalovirus MHC class I homologue in vivo. *Nature*. 1997;386:510–514. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9087412
922. Kloover JS, Grauls GE, Blok MJ, et al. A rat cytomegalovirus strain with a disruption of the r144 MHC class I-like gene is attenuated in the acute phase of infection in neonatal rats. *Arch Virol*. 2002;147:813–824. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12038690
923. Cretney E, Degli-Esposti MA, Densley EH, et al. m144, a murine cytomegalovirus (MCMV)-encoded major histocompatibility complex class I homologue, confers tumor resistance to natural killer cell-mediated rejection. *J Exp Med*. 1999;190:435–444. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10430631
924. Kubota A, Kubota S, Farrell HE, et al. Inhibition of NK cells by murine CMV-encoded class I MHC homologue m144. *Cell Immunol*. 1999;191:145–151. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9973537
925. Natarajan K, Hicks A, Mans J, et al. Crystal structure of the murine cytomegalovirus MHC-I homolog m144. *J Mol Biol*. 2006;358:157–171. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16500675
926. Mans J, Natarajan K, Balbo A, et al. Cellular expression and crystal structure of the murine cytomegalovirus major histocompatibility complex class I-like glycoprotein, m153. *J Biol Chem*. 2007;282:35247–35258. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17897947

927. Reyburn HT, Mandelboim O, Vales-Gomez M, et al. The class I MHC homologue of human cytomegalovirus inhibits attack by natural killer cells. *Nature*. 1997;386:514–517. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9087413
928. Wagner CS, Ljunggren HG, Achour A. Immune modulation by the human cytomegalovirus-encoded molecule UL18, a mystery yet to be solved. *J Immunol*. 2008;180:19–24. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18096997
929. Ulbrecht M, Martinozzi S, Grzeschik M, et al. Cutting edge: the human cytomegalovirus UL40 gene product contains a ligand for HLA-E and prevents NK cell-mediated lysis. *J Immunol*. 2000;164:5019–5022. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10799855
930. Cerboni C, Mousavi-Jazi M, Wakiguchi H, et al. Synergistic effect of IFN-gamma and human cytomegalovirus protein UL40 in the HLA-E-dependent protection from NK cell-mediated cytotoxicity. *Eur J Immunol*. 2001;31:2926–2935. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11592068
931. Wang EC, McSharry B, Retiere C, et al. UL40-mediated NK evasion during productive infection with human cytomegalovirus. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2002;99:7570–7575. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12032324
932. Cohen GB, Gandhi RT, Davis DM, et al. The selective downregulation of class I major histocompatibility complex proteins by HIV-1 protects HIV-infected cells from NK cells. *Immunity*. 1999;10:661–671. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10403641
933. Bonaparte MI, Barker E. Killing of human immunodeficiency virus-infected primary T-cell blasts by autologous natural killer cells is dependent on the ability of the virus to alter the expression of major histocompatibility complex class I molecules. *Blood*. 2004;104:2087–2094. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15117765
934. Cerboni C, Neri F, Casartelli N, et al. Human immunodeficiency virus 1 Nef protein downmodulates the ligands of the activating receptor NKG2D and inhibits natural killer cell-mediated cytotoxicity. *J Gen Virol*. 2007;88:242–250. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17170457
935. Ishido S, Choi JK, Lee BS, et al. Inhibition of natural killer cell-mediated cytotoxicity by Kaposi's sarcoma-associated herpesvirus K5 protein. *Immunity*. 2000;13:365–374. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11021534
936. Scalzo AA, Fitzgerald NA, Simmons A, et al. Cmv-1, a genetic locus that controls murine cytomegalovirus replication in the spleen. *J Exp Med*. 1990;171:1469–1483. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2159050
937. Scalzo AA, Lyons PA, Fitzgerald NA, et al. Genetic mapping of Cmv1 in the region of mouse chromosome 6 encoding the NK gene complex-associated loci Ly49 and musNKR-P1. *Genomics*. 1995;27:435–441. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7558024
938. Scalzo AA, Fitzgerald NA, Wallace CR, et al. The effect of the Cmv-1 resistance gene, which is linked to the natural killer cell gene complex, is mediated by natural killer cells. *J Immunol*. 1992;149:581–589. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1378069
939. Brown MG, Dokun AO, Heusel JW, et al. Vital involvement of a natural killer cell activation receptor in resistance to viral infection. *Science*. 2001;292:934–937. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11340207
940. Lee SH, Girard S, Macina D, et al. Susceptibility to mouse cytomegalovirus is associated with deletion of an activating natural killer cell receptor of the C-type lectin superfamily. *Nat Genet*. 2001;28:42–425. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11326273
941. Daniels KA, Devora G, Lai WC, et al. Murine cytomegalovirus is regulated by a discrete subset of natural killer cells reactive with monoclonal antibody to Ly49h. *J Exp Med*. 2001;194:29–44. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11435470
942. Lee SH, Zafer A, de Repentigny Y, et al. Transgenic expression of the activating natural killer receptor Ly49H confers resistance to cytomegalovirus in genetically susceptible mice. *J Exp Med*. 2003;197:515–526. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12591908
943. Sjolin H, Tomasello E, Mousavi-Jazi M, et al. Pivotal role of KARAP/DAP12 adaptor molecule in the natural killer cell-mediated resistance to murine cytomegalovirus infection. *J Exp Med*. 2002;195:825–834. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11927627
944. French AR, Pingel JT, Wagner M, et al. Escape of mutant double-stranded DNA virus from innate immune control. *Immunity*. 2004;20:747–756. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15189739
945. Bubic I, Wagner M, Krmpotic A, et al. Gain of virulence caused by loss of a gene in murine cytomegalovirus. *J Virol*. 2004;78:7536–7544. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15220428
946. Virgin HWt. Pathogenesis of viral infection. In: Knipe DM, Howley PM, Griffin DE, eds. *Fields Virology*. 5th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2007.
947. Holtappels R, Gillert-Marien D, Thomas D, et al. Cytomegalovirus encodes a positive regulator of antigen presentation. *J Virol*. 2006;80:7613–7624. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16840340
948. Voigt V, Forbes CA, Tonkin JN, et al. Murine cytomegalovirus m157 mutation and variation leads to immune evasion of natural killer cells. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2003;100:13483–13488. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14597723
949. Corbett AJ, Coudert JD, Forbes CA, et al. Functional consequences of natural sequence variation of murine cytomegalovirus m157 for Ly49 receptor specificity and NK cell activation. *J Immunol*. 2011;186:1713–1722. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21187440
950. Desrosiers MP, Kielczewska A, Loredo-Osti JC, et al. Epistasis between mouse Klra and major histocompatibility complex class I loci is associated with a new mechanism of natural killer cell-mediated innate resistance to cytomegalovirus infection. *Nat Genet*. 2005;37:593–599. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15895081
951. Dighe A, Rodriguez M, Sabastian P, et al. Requisite H2k role in NK cell-mediated resistance in acute murine cytomegalovirus-infected MA/My mice. *J Immunol*. 2005;175:6820–6828. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16272339
952. Xie X, Dighe A, Clark P, et al. Deficient major histocompatibility complex-linked innate murine cytomegalovirus immunity in MA/My.L-H2b mice and viral downregulation of H-2k class I proteins. *J Virol*. 2007;81:229–236. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17050600
953. Pyzik M, Charbonneau B, Gendron-Pontbriand EM, et al. Distinct MHC class I-dependent NK cell-activating receptors control cytomegalovirus infection in different mouse strains. *J Exp Med*. 2011;208:1105–1117. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21518798
954. Delano ML, Brownstein DG. Innate resistance to lethal mousepox is genetically linked to the NK gene complex on chromosome 6 and correlates with early restriction of virus replication by cells with an NK phenotype. *J Virol*. 1995;69:5875–5877. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7637035
955. Pereira RA, Scalzo A, Simmons A. Cutting edge: a NK complex-linked locus governs acute versus latent herpes simplex virus infection of neurons. *J Immunol*. 2001;166:5869–5873. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11342599
956. Dorner BG, Smith HRC, French AR, et al. Coordinate expression of cytokines and chemokines by natural killer cells during murine cytomegalovirus infection. *J Immunol*. 2004;172:3119–3131. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14978118
957. Tripathy SK, Smith HRC, Holroyd EA, et al. Expression of m157, a murine cytomegalovirus-encoded putative major histocompatibility class I (MHC-I)-like protein, is independent of viral regulation of host MHC-I. *J Virol*. 2006;80:545–550. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16352579
958. Biron CA, Sonnenfeld G, Welsh RM. Interferon induces natural killer cell blastogenesis in vivo. *J Leukoc Biol*. 1984;35:31–37. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6200554
959. Orange JS, Biron CA. Characterization of early IL-12, IFN-alphabeta, and TNF effects on antiviral state and NK cell responses during murine cytomegalovirus infection. *J Immunol*. 1996;156:4746–4756. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8648121
960. Tough DF, Borrow P, Sprent J. Induction of bystander T cell proliferation by viruses and type I interferon in vivo. *Science*. 1996;272:1947–1950. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8658169
961. Bjorkstrom NK, Lindgren T, Stoltz M, et al. Rapid expansion and long-term persistence of elevated NK cell numbers in humans infected with hantavirus. *J Exp Med*. 2011;208:13–21. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21173105
962. Guma M, Angulo A, Vilches C, et al. Imprint of human cytomegalo-virus infection on the NK cell receptor repertoire. *Blood*. 2004;104:3664–3671. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15304389
963. Monsivais-Urenda A, Noyola-Cherpitel D, Hernandez-Salinas A, et al. Influence of human cytomegalovirus infection on the NK cell receptor repertoire in children. *Eur J Immunol*. 2010;40:1418–1427. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20201038

964. Kuijpers TW, Baars PA, Dantin C, et al. Human NK cells can control CMV infection in the absence of T cells. *Blood*. 2008;112:914–915. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18650467
965. Petitdemange C, Becquart P, Wauquier N, et al. Unconventional repertoire profile is imprinted during acute chikungunya infection for natural killer cells polarization toward cytotoxicity. *PLoS Pathog*. 2011;7:e1002268. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21966274
966. Magri G, Muntasell A, Romo N, et al. NKp46 and DNAM-1 NK- cell receptors drive the response to human cytomegalovirus-infected myeloid dendritic cells overcoming viral immune evasion strategies. *Blood*. 2011;117:848–856. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21030563
967. O'Leary JGO, Goodarzi M, Drayton DL, et al. T and B cell-independent adaptive immunity mediated by natural killer cells. *Nat Immunol*. 2006;7:507–516. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16617337
968. Yokoyama WM. Contact hypersensitivity: not just T cells! *Nat* Immunol.2006;7:437–439. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16622426
969. Paust S, Gill HS, Wang BZ, et al. Critical role for the chemokine receptor CXCR6 in NK cell-mediated antigen-specific memory of haptens and viruses. Nat Immunol.2010;11:1127–1135. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20972432
970. Sun JC, Beilke JN, Lanier LL. Adaptive immune features of natural killer cells. Nature.2009;457:557–561. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19136945
971. Cooper MA, Elliott JM, Keyel PA, et al. Cytokine-induced memory-like natural killer cells. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A.2009;106:1915–1919. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19181844
972. Rouzaire P, Luci C, Blasco E, et al. Natural killer cells and T cells induce different types of skin reactions during recall responses to haptens. *Eur J Immunol*. 2011;42(1):80–88. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21968602
973. Fernandez NC, Lozier A, Flament C, et al. Dendritic cells directly trigger NK cell functions: cross-talk relevant in innate anti-tumor immune responses in vivo. *Nat Med*. 1999;5:405–411. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10202929
974. Krug A, French AR, Barchet W, et al. TLR9-dependent recognition of MCMV by IPC and DC generates coordinated cytokine responses that activate antiviral NK cell function. *Immunity*. 2004;21:107–119. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15345224
975. Zanoni I, Foti M, Ricciardi-Castagnoli P, et al. TLR-dependent activation stimuli associated with Th1 responses confer NK cell stimulatory capacity to mouse dendritic cells. *J Immunol*. 2005;175:286–292. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15972660
976. Nishioka Y, Nishimura N, Suzuki Y, et al. Human monocyte-derived and CD83(+) blood dendritic cells enhance NK cell-mediated cytotoxicity. *Eur J Immunol*. 2001;31:2633–2641. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11536161
977. Ferlazzo G, Pack M, Thomas D, et al. Distinct roles of IL-12 and IL-15 in human natural killer cell activation by dendritic cells from secondary lymphoid organs. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2004;101:16606–16611. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15536127
978. Foti M, Granucci F, Pelizzola M, et al. Dendritic cells in pathogen recognition and induction of immune responses: a functional genomics approach. *J Leukoc Biol*. 2006;79:913–916. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16641136
979. Stober D, Schirmbeck R, Reimann J. IL-12/IL-18-dependent IFN-gamma release by murine dendritic cells. *J Immunol*. 2001;167:957–965. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11441104
980. Jinushi M, Takehara T, Kanto T, et al. Critical role of MHC class I-related chain A and B expression on IFN-alpha-stimulated dendritic cells in NK cell activation: impairment in chronic hepatitis C virus infection. *J Immunol*. 2003;170:1249–1256. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12538683
981. Adam C, King S, Allgeier T, et al. DC-NK cell cross talk as a novel CD4+ T-cell-independent pathway for antitumor CTL induction. *Blood*. 2005;106:338–344. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15769894
982. Ferlazzo G, Tsang ML, Moretta L, et al. Human dendritic cells activate resting natural killer (NK) cells and are recognized via the NKp30 receptor by activated NK cells. *J Exp Med*. 2002;195:343–351. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11828009
983. Terme M, Tomasello E, Maruyama K, et al. IL-4 confers NK stimulatory capacity to murine dendritic cells: a signaling pathway involving KARAP/DAP12-triggering receptor expressed on myeloid cell 2 molecules. *J Immunol*. 2004;172:5957–5966. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15128777
984. Castillo EF, Stonier SW, Frasca L, et al. Dendritic cells support the in vivo development and maintenance of NK cells via IL-15 transpresentation. *J Immunol*. 2009;183:4948–4956. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19786554
985. Munz C, Steinman RM, Fujii S. Dendritic cell maturation by innate lymphocytes: coordinated stimulation of innate and adaptive immunity. *J Exp Med*. 2005;202:203–207. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16027234
986. Mocikat R, Braumuller H, Gumy A, et al. Natural killer cells activated by MHC class I(low) targets prime dendritic cells to induce protective CD8 T cell responses. *Immunity*. 2003;19:561–569. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14563320
987. Andrews DM, Scalzo AA, Yokoyama WM, et al. Functional interactions between dendritic cells and NK cells during viral infection. *Nat Immunol*. 2003;4:175–181. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12496964
988. Piccioli D, Sbrana S, Melandri E, et al. Contact-dependent stimulation and inhibition of dendritic cells by natural killer cells. *J Exp Med*. 2002;195:335–341. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11828008
989. Ferlazzo G, Morandi B, D'Agostino A, et al. The interaction between NK cells and dendritic cells in bacterial infections results in rapid induction of NK cell activation and in the lysis of uninfected dendritic cells. *Eur J Immunol*. 2003;33:306–313. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12548561
990. Mailliard RB, Son YI, Redlinger R, et al. Dendritic cells mediate NK cell help for Th1 and CTL responses: two-signal requirement for the induction of NK cell helper function. *J Immunol*. 2003;171:2366–2373. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12928383
991. Ferlazzo G. Natural killer and dendritic cell liaison: recent insights and open questions. *Immunol Lett*. 2005;101:12–17. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15941591
992. Bajenoff M, Breart B, Huang AY, et al. Natural killer cell behavior in lymph nodes revealed by static and real-time imaging. *J Exp Med*. 2006;203:619–631. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16505138
993. Croy BA. Granulated metrial gland cells: hypotheses concerning possible functions during murine gestation. *J Reprod Immunol*. 1994;27:85–94. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7884744
994. Moffett A, Loke C. Immunology of placentation in eutherian mammals. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2006;6:584–594. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16868549
995. Manaster I, Mandelboim O. The unique properties of uterine NK cells. *Am J Reprod Immunol*. 2010;63:434–444. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20055791
996. Guimond MJ, Luross JA, Wang BP, et al. Absence of natural killer cells during murine pregnancy is associated with reproductive compromise in TGE26 mice. *Biol Reprod*. 1997;56:169–179. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9002646
997. Guimond MJ, Wang B, Croy BA. Engraftment of bone marrow from severe combined immunodeficient (SCID) mice reverses the reproductivedeficits in natural killer cell-deficient tg epsilon 26 mice. *J Exp Med*. 1998;187:217–223. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9432979
998. Erlebacher A, Lukens AK, Glimcher LH. Intrinsic susceptibility of mouse trophoblasts to natural killer cell-mediated attack in vivo. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2002;99:16940–16945. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12486249
999. Carayannopoulos LN, Barks JL, Yokoyama WM, et al. Murine trophoblast cells induce NK cell interferon-gamma production through KLRK1. *Biol Reprod*. 2010;83:404–414. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20484740
1000. Madeja Z, Yadi H, Apps R, et al. Paternal MHC expression on mouse trophoblast affects uterine vascularization and fetal growth. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2011;108:4012–4017. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21300875
1001. Chakraborty D, Rumi MA, Konno T, et al. Natural killer cells direct hemochorial placentation by regulating hypoxia-inducible factor

dependent trophoblast lineage decisions. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2011;108:16295–16300.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21900602
1002. Hiby SE, Walker JJ, O'Shaughnessy K M, et al. Combinations of maternal KIR and fetal HLA-C genes influence the risk of preeclampsia and reproductive success. *J Exp Med*. 2004;200:957–965.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15477349
1003. Hiby SE, Apps R, Sharkey AM, et al. Maternal activating KIRs protect against human reproductive failure mediated by fetal HLA-C2. *J Clin Invest*. 2010;120:4102–4110.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20972337
1004. Schmidt CM, Orr HT. Maternal/fetal interactions: the role of the MHC class I molecule HLA-G. *Crit Rev Immunol*. 1993;13:207–224.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8110376
1005. Rouas-Freiss N, Goncalves RM, Menier C, et al. Direct evidence to support the role of HLA-G in protecting the fetus from maternal uterine natural killer cytolysis. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1997;94:11520–11525.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9326642
1006. Parham P, Guethlein LA. Pregnancy immunogenetics: NK cell education in the womb? *J Clin Invest*. 2010;120:3801–3804.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20972330
1007. Ashkar AA, Di Santo JP, Croy BA. Interferon gamma contributes to initiation of uterine vascular modification, decidual integrity, and uterine natural killer cell maturation during normal murine pregnancy. *J Exp Med*. 2000;192:259–270.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10899912
1008. Lash GE, Schiessl B, Kirkley M, et al. Expression of angiogenic growth factors by uterine natural killer cells during early pregnancy. *J Leukoc Biol*. 2006;80:572–580.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16816146
1009. Carrington M, Wang S, Martin MP, et al. Hierarchy of resistance to cervical neoplasia mediated by combinations of killer immunoglobulin-like receptor and human leukocyte antigen loci. *J Exp Med*. 2005; 201:1069–1075.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15809352
1010. Martin MP, Gao X, Lee JH, et al. Epistatic interaction between KIR3DS1 and HLA-B delays the progression to AIDS. *Nat Genet*. 2002;31: 429–434.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12134147
1011. Martin MP, Qi Y, Gao X, et al. Innate partnership of HLA-B and KIR3DL1 subtypes against HIV-1. *Nat Genet* .2007;39:733–740.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17496894
1012. BouletS,SharafiS, Simic N, et al. Increased proportion of KIR3DS1 homozygotes in HIV-exposed uninfected individuals. *AIDS*. 2008;22: 595–599.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18317000
1013. Bashirova AA, Thomas R, Carrington M. HLA/KIR restraint of HIV: surviving the fittest. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 2011;29:295–317.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21219175
1014. Alter G, Heckerman D, Schneidewind A, et al. HIV-1 adaptation to NK-cell-mediated immune pressure. *Nature* .2011;476:96–100.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21814282
1015. Davies SM, Ruggieri L, DeFor T, et al. Evaluation of KIR ligand incompatibility in mismatched unrelated donor hematopoietic transplants. Killer immunoglobulin-like receptor. *Blood*. 2002;100:3825–3827.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12393440
1016. Parham P, McQueen KL. Alloreactive killer cells: hindrance and help for haematopoietic transplants. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2003;3:108–122.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12563295
1017. Cooley S, Weisdorf DJ, Guethlein LA, et al. Donor selection for natural killer cell receptor genes leads to superior survival after unrelated transplantation for acute myelogenous leukemia. *Blood*. 2010;116: 2411–2419.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20581313
1018. Venstrom JM, Zheng J, Noor N, et al. KIR and HLA genotypes are associated with disease progression and survival following autologous hematopoietic stem cell transplantation for high-risk neuroblastoma. *Clin Cancer Res*. 2009;15:7330–7334.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19934297
1019. Grom AA, Villanueva J, Lee S, et al. Natural killer cell dysfunction in patients with systemiconset juvenile rheumatoid arthritis and macrophage activation syndrome. *J Pediatr*. 2003;142:292–296.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12640378
1020. Rosenberg SA, Lotze MT, Muul LM, et al. Observations on the systemic administration of autologous lymphokine-activated killer cells and recombinant interleukin-2 to patients with metastatic cancer. *N Engl J Med*. 1985;313:1485–1492.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3903508
1021. Bachanova V, Burns LJ, McKenna DH, et al. Allogeneic natural killer cells for refractory lymphoma. *Cancer Immunol Immunother*. 2010;59: 1739–1744.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20680271
1022. Lundqvist A, Berg M, Smith A, et al. Bortezomib treatment to potentiate the anti-tumor immunity of exvivo expanded adoptively infused autologous natural killer cells. *J Cancer*. 2011;2:383–385.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21750690
1023. Waldmann TA, Lugli E, Roederer M, et al. Safety (toxicity), pharmacokinetics, immunogenicity, and impact on elements of the normal immune system of recombinant human IL-15 in rhesus macaques. *Blood*. 2011;117:4787–4795.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21385847
1024. Nava VE, Jaffe ES. The pathology of NK-cell lymphomas and leukemias. *Adv Anat Pathol*. 2005;12:27–34.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15614162
1025. Dearden CE, Johnson R, Pettengell R, et al. Guidelines for the management of mature T-cell and NK-cell neoplasms (excluding cutaneous T-cell lymphoma). *Br J Haematol*. 2011;153:451–485.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21480860
1026. Chim CS, Ma SY, Au WY, et al. Primary nasal natural killer cell lymphoma: long-term treatment outcome and relationship with the International Prognostic Index. *Blood*. 2004;103:216–221.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12933580
1027. Zhang Y, Nagata H, Ikeuchi T, et al. Common cytological and cytogenetic features of Epstein-Barr virus (EBV)-positive natural killer (NK) cells and cell lines derived from patients with nasal T/NK-cell lymphomas, chronic active EBV infection and hydroa vacciniforme-like eruptions. *Br J Haematol*. 2003;121:805–814.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12780797
1028. Yokoyama WM. Mistaken notions about natural killer cells. *Nat Immunol*. 2008;9:481–485.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18425104
1029. Parham P. MHC class I molecules and KIRs in human history, health and survival. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2005;5:201–214.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15719024
1030. Pettersen EF, Goddard TD, Huang CC, et al. UCSF Chimera— a visualization system for exploratory research and analysis. *J Comput Chem*. 2004;25:1605–1612.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15264254

CHAPTER 18

CD1d–Restricted Natural Killer T Cells

Albert Bendelac

INTRODUCTION AND DEFINITION

Natural killer T (NKT) cells are cluster of differentiation (CD)1d-restricted T cells that use semi-invariant αβ T-cell receptors (TCRs) and reside as long-lived effector cells in lymphoid tissues and in the microvasculature of organs such as the lung and the liver. They promptly release a broad range of cytokines and chemokines in response to microbial and self-lipid antigens presented by CD1d glycoproteins, exerting a protective or pathogenic role in infection, inflammation, allergy, and cancer. The NKT lineage is best defined by expression of *Zbtb16*, which encodes promyelocytic leukemia zinc factor (PLZF), a master transcription factor that directs acquisition of innate-like effector properties during thymic development.

The NKT lineage is a member of the larger family of so-called innate-like lymphocytes, which includes B1 B cells, marginal zone B cells, intraepithelial γδ T-cell sublineages, the CD8αα TCRαβ population of intestinal lymphocytes, and the MR1-restricted mucosal associated invariant T cells.[1] Like NKT cells, these lineages express semi-invariant TCRs or B-cell receptors encoding specificity for conserved microbial and self-ligands. Their "canonical" antigen receptors are sufficient to instruct lineage differentiation during development in the thymus or bone marrow, in a process matching antigen specificity with specialized effector functions and homing to dedicated tissue environments. These stereotypical properties, which are reminiscent of truly innate lymphoid cells, such as natural killer (NK) cells, represent a distinct host defense strategy, perhaps corresponding to an early phase of evolution of adaptive T- and B-cell immunity.

CANONICAL NATURAL KILLER T T-CELL RECEPTORS

In mice, the vast majority of CD1d-restricted NKT cells express the semi-invariant Vα14-Jα18 TCRα chain paired with β chains made of Vβ8, Vβ7, or Vβ2 joined to variable DβJβ segments, whereas the homologous Vα24-Jα18 chain associated with Vβ11 is used in humans[2] (Table 18.1). The "canonical" sequence of the TCR alpha chain is entirely encoded in the genome, although alterations due to nucleotide trimming and N additions can be tolerated if they preserve the antigenic specificity of the TCR. These canonical rearrangements arise randomly and at very low frequency in both fetal and adult life, but massive thymic expansion post-TCR expression ensures a high frequency of NKT cells among recent thymic emigrants.[3]

Other semi-invariant TCRs have been identified among mouse CD1d-restricted NKT cells, including Vα10-Jα50/Vβ8,[4] Vα3.2-Jα9/Vβ8, and Vα8/Vβ8,[5] but their combined frequency is modest compared to the dominant Vα14-Jα18 TCR. Nevertheless, these cells appear to adopt a similar NKT effector phenotype, likely because they follow the same thymic developmental pathway.

ANTIGENIC LIGANDS OF NATURAL KILLER T CELLS

Cluster of Differentiation 1d

CD1d is one of five members of the mammalian family of lipid-presenting, β2-microglobulin–associated, major histocompatibility complex (MHC)-like CD1 molecules, and the only one conserved in mouse.[6,7] The mouse CD1 locus contains *cd1d1* encoding a functional surface glycoprotein and a duplicated gene *cd1d2*, which is generally poorly expressed and, in the C57 background, is inactivated by a frameshift mutation preventing surface expression.[8] CD1d is found constitutively on the cell surface of most antigen-presenting cells, including dendritic cells (DCs), macrophages, and B cells, with particularly high levels on marginal zone B cells.[9] Of relevance to NKT-cell development, CD1d is also prominently but transiently displayed on cortical thymocytes. It is also expressed by endothelial cells and hepatocytes.

CD1d is assembled in the endoplasmic reticulum by association with β2-microglobulin before reaching the cell surface and undergoing extensive rounds of internalization and recycling between the late endosome/lysosome and the plasma membrane[10–12] (Fig. 18.1). The rapid rate of internalization depends upon a tyrosine motif encoded in its cytoplasmic tail, which binds adaptor protein (AP)-2 and AP-3 in mouse, and AP-2 in human. This intense recycling accounts for the steady state accumulation of CD1d in the late endosome/lysosome for mouse or late endosome for human. While a diversity of exogenous and endogenous lipids can load CD1d in various compartments,[13–15] the late endosome/lysosome environment is optimized for lipid antigen acquisition due to the presence of efficient glycolipid processing enzymes and lipid transfer proteins such as saposins,[16–18] Gm2 activator,[16] Niemann-Pick type C2 protein,[19] and, in humans, CD1e.[20] In this acidic compartment, short or polyunsaturated lipids loaded at the cell surface are quickly removed and replaced by long and saturated lipids that bind more stably to CD1d but require lysosomal transfer proteins for loading.[21] Unlike MHC class II, CD1d expression and its presentation of lipid antigens at the cell surface are

TABLE 18.1 Semi-invariant T-Cell Receptors of Cluster of Differentiation 1d–Restricted Natural Killer T Cells

Human			
Canonical hVα24	TRAV10 TRAJ18	GTG GTG AGC G C GAC AGA GGC TCA ACC GTG GTG AGC GAC AGA GGC TCA ACC V V S D R G S T	Variable hVβ11
Mouse			
Canonical mVα14	TRAV11 TRAJ18	GTG GTG GGC G TA GAT AGA GGT TCA GCC GTG GTG GGC GAT AGA GGT TCA GCC V V G D R G S A	Variable mVβ8, mVβ7, mVβ2,

independent of toll-like receptor (TLR) signaling and DC maturation.[22] Thus, immature DCs can readily present purified lipid antigens to NKT cells and become activated upon CD40 engagement by NKT cells.

Lipid Ligands of Natural Killer T cells

bial α-glycosylated Lipid Ligands

The first universal NKT ligand emerged from studies of marine sponge extracts that prolonged survival of mice bearing B16 melanoma.[23] The active principle of the sponge *Agelas mauritianus* was an alpha-branched galactosylceramide, which after slight modification led to the synthesis of an extremely potent variant named KRN7000, commonly referred to as αGalCer[24,25] (Fig. 18.2). Over 95% of mouse and human NKT cells recognize αGalCer, irrespective of their variable CDR3 β sequence.[26,27] Furthermore, the mouse CD1d-αGalCer tetramers stain the NKT cells of both human and nonhuman primates,[28,29] attesting to the high degree of conservation of this recognition system.

The marine sponge lipid turned out to be closely related to microbial lipids found in some gram-negative lipopolysaccharide (LPS)-negative bacteria. Notably, *Sphingomonas*, a member of the class of α-proteobacteria and a ubiquitous bacterium found in terrestrial and marine environments (including as a bacterial symbiont of sponges), uses alpha-branched glycuronylceramides as a substitute for LPS in the outer membrane of its cell wall.[30] It can infect dendritic cells and macrophages to activate NKT cells.[31,32] Other structurally related α-glycosylated lipids, such as α-galactosyldiacylglycerol, found in *Borrelia burgdorferi*, the agent of Lyme disease,[33] and α-glucosyldiacylglycerol, found in *Streptococcus pneumoniae*,[34] also activate mouse and human NKT cells. Such α-branched glycolipids have not been reported in vertebrates, suggesting that they represent a pathogen signature that the canonical NKT TCR may have evolved to recognize.

Endogenous β-glycosylated Lipid Ligands

Vα14 NKT cells are spontaneously autoreactive to CD1d-expressing cells.[35] For example, NKT hybridomas or clones

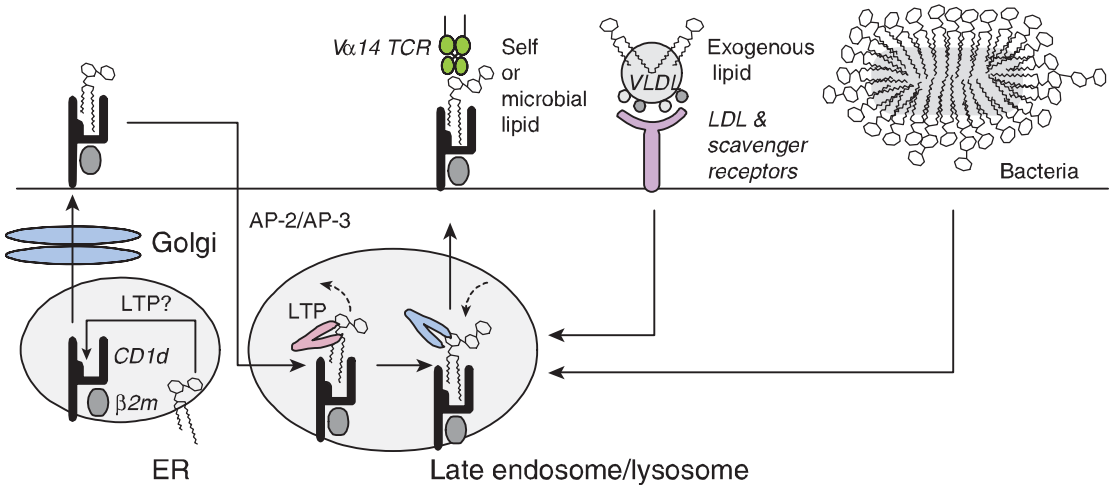


FIG. 18.1. Presentation of Lipid Antigens by Cluster of Differentiation (CD)1d. CD1d acquires lipid antigens after biosynthesis in the endoplastic reticulum and Golgi prior to reaching the cell surface. Multiple rounds of AP-2/AP-3 clathrin-mediated internalization to the late endosome/lysosome and recycling to the plasma membrane allow lipid exchange. Lysosomal degradation pathways provide lipid antigens for exchange in a process assisted by lysosomal lipid transfer proteins such as saposins, Gm2 activator, NPC-2, and CD1e. Exogenous lipids bound to lipoproteins enter the cell through scavenger receptors and low-density lipoprotein receptor. Microbial organisms access the lysosome after phagocytosis.

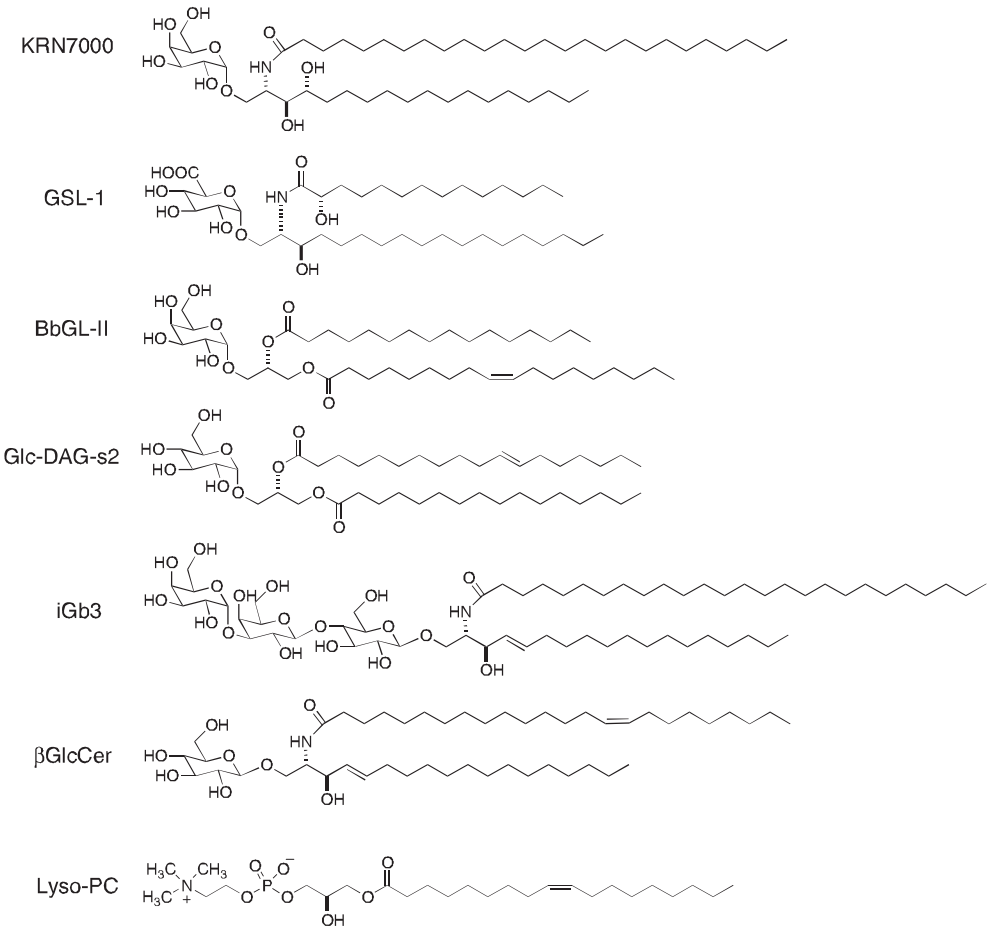


FIG. 18.2. Self- and Foreign-Lipid Antigens Recognized by Natural Killer T Cells. From top to bottom, KRN7000, or reference α-GalCer, synthetic version of the original marine sponge antigen; *Sphingomonas* GSL-1; *Borrelia burgdorferi* BbGL-II, α-galactosyldiacylglycerol; *Streptococcus pneumoniae*, α-glucosyldiacylglycerol; isoglobotrihexosylceramide iGb3; β-glucosylceramide; and lyso-phophatidylcholine.

can be activated to secrete modest amounts of cytokines when cultured in the presence of fresh thymocytes, DCs, and various tumor cell lines.[8,35–38] This autoreactivity and the agonist ligands involved appear to be central not only for NKT-cell thymic development,[36] but also for their response to various microbial infections, especially when the pathogens themselves do not express NKT ligands.[31,39] The identification of self-ligands is therefore of major relevance to key aspects of the biology of NKT cells.

In the mouse system, recognition of self-ligands by Vα14 NKT cells is largely dependent upon CD1d endosomal trafficking,[40,41] suggesting the recognition of endosomal/lysosomal lipid antigens. This may not be the case for their human counterpart, Vα24 NKT cells.[42] The search for a lysosomally-loaded self-ligand recognized by NKT cells led to the identification of a trihexosylceramide, iGb3, which is synthesized in the Golgi as an intermediate in the biosynthetic pathway of iGb4 and is also generated in the lysosome after degradation of iGb4 by β-hexosaminidase AB.[43] iGb3 is further degraded into LacCer by α-galactosidase A (Fig. 18.3). Mice lacking β-hexosaminidase B lacked 95% of their NKT cells, a defect associated with the impaired ability of their thymocytes to stimulate autoreactive NKT hybridomas. Conversely, unlike αGalCer, iGb3 is recognized with a Vβ7 > Vβ8 > Vβ2 hierarchy of affinities that mirrors the relative selection of NKT thymic precursors.[44] Furthermore, DCs lacking α-galactosidase A exhibited greater spontaneous stimulation of NKT cells,[45] consistent with the demonstrated accumulation of iGb3.[46–48]

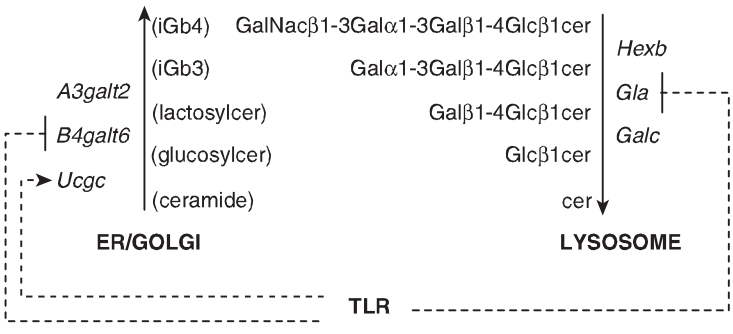


FIG. 18.3. Toll-Like Receptor (TLR)-Mediated Regulation of the Synthesis and Degradation of Natural Killer T Cell Glycosphingolipid Antigens. TLR signaling downregulates *B4galt6* encoding lactosylceramide synthase and *Gla* encoding α-galactosidase A, but upregulates Ucgc encoding β-glucosylceramide synthase. These changes result in the net accumulation of β-glucosylceramide and iGb3.

Among several genes encoding Galα1-3Gal transferases, *a3galt2* is considered more specialized for iGb3 synthesis. As *a3galt2* null mutant mice did not show NKT cell defects[49] and the human homologous gene appeared dysfunctional,[50] iGb3 may not be the sole endogenous glycosylceramide recognized by mouse and human NKT cells. Other reports have suggested that β-galactosylsylceramide[51] and β-glucosylceramide[52] might also function as natural ligands of NKT cells, but these claims have not yet been widely replicated. While the respective importance of all these candidate ligands remains to be further studied in physiological and pathological conditions, it is possible that NKT cells might recognize multiple endogenous β-glycosylceramides as weak agonists.

Importantly, several enzymes involved in the synthesis and degradation of β-glycosylceramides appear to be coordinately regulated in conditions associated with NKT-cell activation[45,52,53] (see Fig. 18.3). For example, TLR signaling was shown to specifically downregulate α-galactosidase A in the degradation pathway,[45] leading to increased iGb3.[46] In the biosynthetic pathway, TLR signaling upregulated β-glucosylceramide synthase while downregulating lactosylceramide synthase, thus increasing β-glucosylceramide.[52] Collectively, these findings suggest that microbial organisms lacking NKT ligands can nevertheless activate NKT cells through TLR-mediated accumulation of endogenous glycosphingolipid ligands.

Lysophosphatidylcholine was also reported to stimulate a fraction of human but not mouse NKT cells,[54,55] suggesting that upregulation of this ligand in multiple myeloma and other inflammatory conditions might also contribute to NKT-cell activation.

Structural Basis of Lipid Recognition by Natural Killer T cells

The lipid-binding pocket of CD1d is particularly well adapted to bind self- and microbial glycosphingolipids, with the acyl chain in the A' hydrophobic pocket and the sphingosine chain in the F' hydrophobic channel.[56–58] The hydroxyl groups of the sphingosine emerge from the groove to establish hydrogen bonds with the α1 helix Arg79 and Asp80, while the galactose is stabilized though hydrogen bonds between its 2- and 3-hydroxyl groups and Asp153 of the α2 helix. Thus, the protruding sugar is solidly anchored in a position parallel to the plane of the α-helices, explaining the exquisite stimulatory properties of several carbohydrate hydroxyl groups. In contrast, the trisaccharide chain of iGb3 protrudes in orthogonal orientation to the plane of the α-helices, with the proximal glucose forming hydrogen bonds with the α2 helix, in particular Asp153 and Thr156, whereas the position of the ceramide backbone is similar to αGalCer (Fig. 18.4).

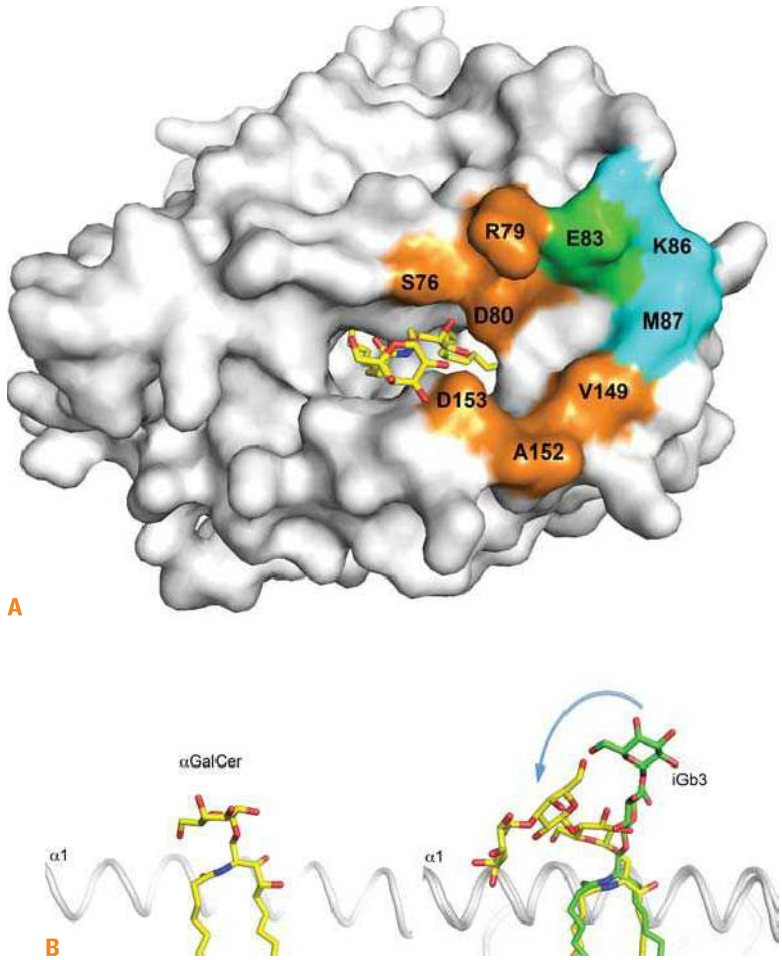


FIG. 18.4. Natural Killer T (NKT) T-Cell Receptor (TCR) Recognition of αGalCer and iGb3. **A:** Conserved footprint of the mouse NKT TCR on the surface of cluster of differentiation (CD)1d-αGalCer and CD1d-iGb3 (the lipid shown is αGalCer): *orange*, CDR3α; *cyan*, CDR2β; *green*, CDR3α and CDR2β. **B:** Binding mode of αGalCer and iGb3 to CD1d and TCR. *Left*, αGalCer (same structure before and after TCR binding); *right*, iGb3 before (*green sticks*) and after (*yellow sticks*) TCR binding. Note that the distal sugar is not represented before TCR binding. Courtesy of Dirk Zajonc (La Jolla Institute of Allergy and Immunology, San Diego, CA).

How could such highly dissimilar structures be recognized by the same TCR? In the ternary structure of the human TCR-CD1d-αGalCer complex, the TCR docked parallel to and at the extreme end (F' pocket) of the CD1d binding groove, enabling a lock-and-key type of interaction with the solidly anchored, rigid αGalCer antigen. The docking was parallel to the long axis of the binding groove, contrasting with the diagonal footprints observed for MHC-restricted TCRs.[59] The CDR3α loop encoded by the conserved germline Jα18 segment provided a majority of contacts, straddling the antigen binding cleft and engaging electrostatic interactions with α-GalCer, the α1 and the α2 helices of CD1d. CDR1α interacted solely with αGalCer, and CDR2β formed a stretch of interactions with the α1 helix. Consistent with the great diversity of CDR3β usage, this loop contact was limited to a single van der Waals contact with Gln150 of the α2 helix.

The ternary structure of the TCR-CD1d-iGb3 complex was recently elucidated. Unsurprisingly, given the conservation of Jα18 and CD1d in both structures, the overall footprint of the TCR on the CD1d-glycolipid surface was unchanged compared with CD1d-αGalCer. Strikingly, however, the TCR appeared to simply "squash" the trisaccharide headgroup of iGb3 over the α2 helix of CD1d, with the proximal β-linked glucose molded into an orientation similar to the α-linked galactose of αGalCer (see Fig. 18.4). Each of the three sugars made stabilizing polar and van der Waals interactions with CD1d residues. The proximal and second sugars also contacted the TCR CDR2α loop, which is not involved in CD1d-αGalCer recognition. The importance of the distal sugar is reflected by the lack of detectable stimulation by lactosylceramide where the third sugar is absent. These conformational changes imply a highly dynamic interaction process during the association phase. The energy penalty incurred for binding self-ligands could be overcome in specific conditions that strengthen the immune synapse. For example, this may occur during TLR-induced inflammation, which upregulates lymphocyte function–associated antigen (LFA-1) and intercellular adhesion molecule (ICAM-1) integrin interactions, or during thymic development, which involves homophilic engagement of signaling lymphocytic activation molecule (SLAM) family receptors.

Additional crystallographic studies further illustrated the difference between self- and foreign-antigen recognition. The α-glycosyldiacylglycerol antigens of *Borrelia burgdorferi*[33,60,61] and *Streptococcus pneumoniae*[34] adopted configurations relatively similar to αGalCer, although some induced fit was observed for both CD1d and the glycolipid upon TCR binding. In the case of *Streptococcus pneumoniae*, an unusual sn2 alkyl chain, vaccenic acid (with an unsaturation at C7), was important for favorable positioning of the glucose. After insertion of a stretch of hydrophobic aminoacids in the CDR3β loop in order to enhance binding to CD1d, other self-lipids such as β-GalCer, Galα1-4GlcCer (lactosylceramide), and phosphatidylinositol could be recognized.[62] Although somewhat contrived, this system revealed a similar bending of the β-linkage between the proximal sugar and the ceramide backbone as seen for iGb3, raising the possibility that several β-linked self glycolipids might serve as autoantigens.

DEVELOPMENT AND HOMEOSTASIS OF NATURAL KILLER T CELLS

Development

The major determinant of NKT cell development is the semi-invariant TCR, which, upon binding to CD1d ligands expressed by cortical thymocytes, provides the signals required for induction of the lineage-specific transcription factor PLZF. Therefore, insights into the peculiar nature and context of TCR engagement and its downstream signaling have considerably advanced our understanding of the molecular mechanisms of NKT-cell development.

T-Cell Receptor Expression and Positive Selection

The use of CD1d-αGalCer tetramers specific for the canonical mVα14-Jα18/hVα24-Jα18 TCRs has revealed a sequence of selection, expansion, and differentiation events preceding the terminally differentiated NK1.1+ stage.[3,63,64] As illustrated in Figure 18.5, NKT cells originate from mainstream thymocyte precursors that transit through the pre-TCRα+TCRβ+ stage to reach the CD4+CD8+ double positive (DP) stage, where stochastic Vα-Jα rearrangements lead to expression of canonical Vα14-Jα18/Vβ8, Vβ7 or Vβ2 TCRs. These rearrangements involve distal gene segments that require prolonged cell survival mediated by Bcl-xL, whose expression depends on HEB-induced RORγt.[65–67] All Vβ families can pair with the Vα14-Jα18 chain, but only the biased set of Vβs confers specificity for the endogenous ligands. Although Vβ8 predominates among mature NKT cells, the most enriched Vβ family relative to preselection frequency is Vβ7, followed by Vβ8 and Vβ2.[44] This is consistent with the observation that endogenous ligands displayed on the surface of thymocytes activate the Vα14-Jα18 TCRs with a Vβ7 > Vβ8 > Vβ2 hierarchy of affinity, and that in mice expressing very low levels of CD1d, NKT cells showed increased representation of Vβ7.[44,68–71] Notably, this hierarchy of affinity parallels that of iGb3 but is different from αGalCer, which favors Vβ8. Thus, the naturally selected Vβ repertoire seems to precisely reflect the affinities of the preselected repertoire for endogenous ligands, suggesting that negative selection plays little role in shaping the Vβ repertoire. However, this does not imply that NKT cells are impervious to negative selection because transgenic overexpression of CD1d decreased the relative frequency of the high affinity Vβ7+ cells and exposure to αGalCer-induced deletion of NKT thymocytes.[69]

Developmental Stages

The earliest signaled NKT precursors are rare CD4+CD8+ DP cells that express the semi-invariant TCR. These cells become CD4+ single positive (SP) cells expressing high levels of CD24, a marker of immature cortical thymocytes, as well as CD69, a marker of positive selection.[64] This is the so-called stage 0 of NKT development. As $CD24^{high}CD4+$ cells mature into the next $CD24^{low}CD4+$ stage 1, they undergo several rounds of cell division.[3] Cell cycle may be initiated as early as stage 0, as suggested from the analysis of cyclin D2- or c-Myc-deficient mice.[72,73] The lineage expansion following positive selection ensures the high frequency that is critical for innate immunity. During this phase, a fraction of CD4+

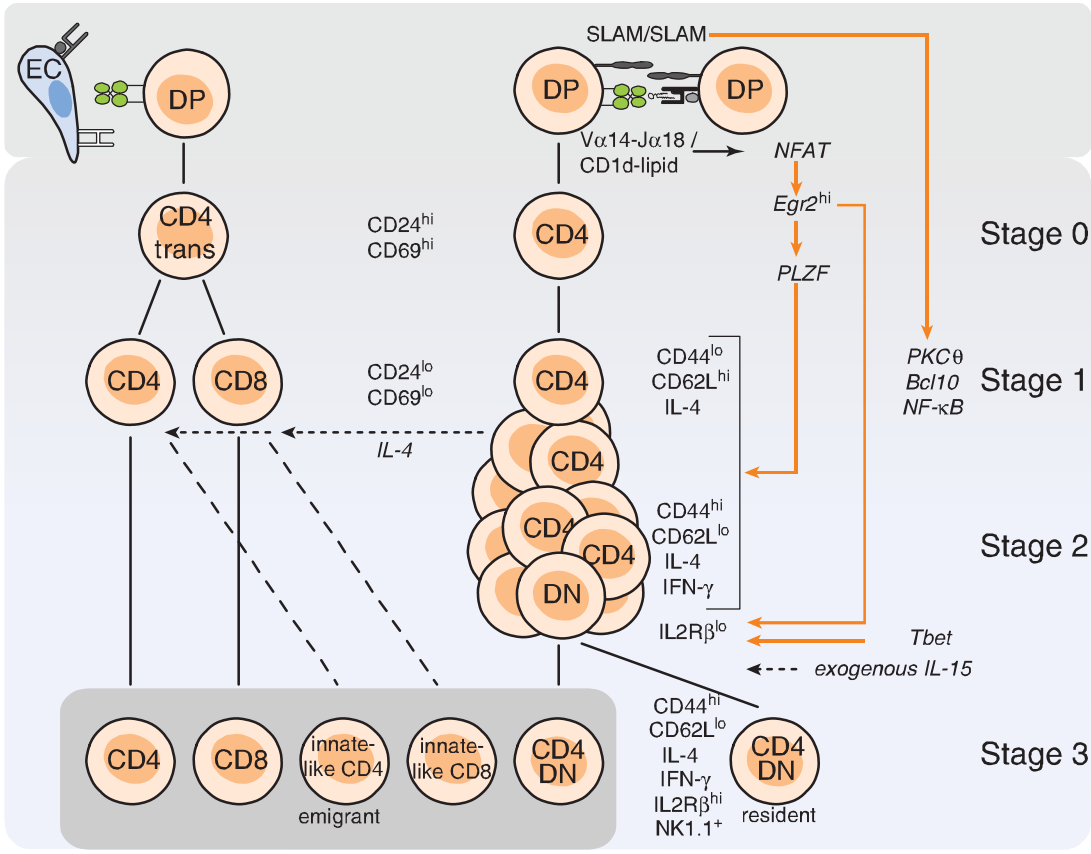


FIG. 18.5. Development of Natural Killer T (NKT) Cells. Thymic stages of NKT-cell development are aligned with corresponding stages of cluster of differentiation (CD)4 and CD8 T-cell development. Stage 0 NKT cells correspond to the transitional CD4 cells. Note the cross-talk between NKT cells and CD4 and CD8 T cells, which is mediated by interleukin-4, and results in the differentiation of "innate-like" CD4 and CD8 T cells in Balb/C mice. DP, CD4+CD8+ double positive; DN, CD4-CD8- double negative; EC, epithelial cell.

cells downregulates CD4 to become CD4-CD8- double negative (DN) T cells,[64] acquiring a more restricted Th1 cytokine and chemokine profile and an enhanced ability to reject tumors.[74–76] Dividing cells first activate their interleukin (IL)-4 locus (stage 1) then interferon (IFN)-γ (independently of both stat6 and stat4) as they upregulate CD44 and downregulate CD62L (stage 2).[3,63,77] Thus, unlike other αβT cells, postselection NKT lineage cells undergo a sequence of events that is reminiscent of the antigen-driven activation, expansion, and effector differentiation of mature T cells.[78]

NKT lineage cells emigrate from the thymus after upregulation of the S1P1 receptor,[79] as dividing effector-type cells. They represent up to 5% of recent thymic emigrants in the mouse spleen.[3,80] Within a couple of days after emigration, they express NK lineage receptors, including the activating NK1.1 and NKG2D receptors and the inhibitory CD94/NKG2A, Ly49A, C/I, and G2 receptors. Acquisition of this terminal differentiation program is associated with cessation of division and with upregulation of IL2Rβ, which is necessary for IL-15 signaling. Intriguingly, a fraction of NKT thymocytes downregulate the S1P1R and remain as permanent residents in the thymic medulla, where they undergo the same terminal maturation program.[79] These thymic residents appear to be absent in humans.[81]

Recent thymic NKT emigrants and their immediate precursors, stage 2 NKT thymocytes, express neuropilin 1 (Nrp-1), a transmembrane receptor for vascular endothelium growth factor and semaphorin family members.[82] Nrp-1 represents a convenient marker of recent thymic NKT emigrants, as it remains expressed for a few days and is downregulated after terminal maturation to stage 3.

Homotypic Thymocyte-Thymocyte Interactions

The thymic cell types involved in presenting NKT ligands have been thoroughly investigated. Unlike MHC class I or class II, CD1d is prominently expressed on cortical thymocytes, which is consistent with the ability of cortical thymocytes to stimulate NKT hybridomas.[36] Bone marrow chimera experiments demonstrated that NKT-cell development required CD1d expression by cortical thymocytes but not radioresistant stromal cells.[83–85] This is radically different from conventional T-cell development that is driven by MHC expression on thymic epithelial cells. Transgenic experiments using promoters for Lck, MHC class I, or MHC class II to redirect CD1d to various cell compartments in CD1d-deficient hosts suggested that expression on cortical thymocytes was necessary and sufficient for lineage development.[70,86–88] This conclusion was recently confirmed after

conditional deletion of CD1d using Cd4-Cre.[89] Mixed chimera experiments using CD1d knockout pLck-CD1d transgenic TCR Cα knockout bone marrow (where thymocyte development is arrested at the DP stage) as the sole source of CD1d expression demonstrated that expression of CD1d solely on cortical thymocytes was sufficient for the full differentiation of NKT cells.[87] Intriguingly, however, the transition to the NK1.1 positive stage was partially impaired after emigration to peripheral tissues, although it was preserved for the cells remaining as residents in the thymus. Terminal differentiation was fully restored if CD1d was re-expressed on MHC class II expressing cells or if the cells were transferred into wild-type recipients.[80,87]

Homophilic Signaling Lymphocytic Activation Molecule-f Family Interactions

A major pathway that is selectively recruited by the thymocyte-thymocyte interactions involves homophilic binding of SLAM family receptors, mainly Slamf1 (SLAM) and Slamf6 (Ly108), which are expressed by cortical thymocytes, but not by thymic epithelial cells.[90] These partially redundant receptors signal through the adaptor SLAM-associated protein (SAP) and the kinase Fyn, explaining earlier reports of developmental arrest in SAP- or Fyn-deficient NKT precursors.[91–95] SAP- and Fyn-deficient NKT thymocytes were blocked at stage 0 and could not be rescued by expression of Bcl-2 or Bcl-xL. They showed lower induction of CD69,[90] suggesting defective signaling by the TCR, perhaps due to a role of Slamf-SAP-Fyn signaling in stabilizing the immune synapse.[96] Individual ablation of Slamf1 or Slamf6 resulted in a modest twofold defect in the expansion of the NKT lineage between stages 1 and 2. However, in "pseudo-double mutant" mixed chimeras where Slamf1/CD1d double deficient NKT precursors were forced to see their ligands on Slamf6-deficient thymocytes, a > 10-fold reduction of NKT cells was observed, demonstrating a requirement of Slamf receptors at the time of TCR engagement by CD1d ligands.[90] Notably, the Slamf locus exhibits considerable polymorphism, which may underlie some of the reported variations in NKT-cell frequencies in different mouse strains and in humans. Genetic studies have provided support for this hypothesis by identifying the lack of expression of Slamf1 by cortical thymocytes in the nonobese diabetic (NOD) strain, which is spontaneously NKT deficient.[97]

Signaling in the Natural Killer T-Cell Microenvironment

Engagement of the semi-invariant TCR activates the same Ras/MAP kinase and calcineurin pathways as reported for MHC-restricted TCRs during positive selection.[98,99] Notably, NKT thymocytes show elevated and sustained expression of the early growth response (Egr) factors 1 and 2 compared with the weak and transient expression observed in MHC-restricted thymocytes.[100] Egr1 is thought to be downstream of the Ras/MAP kinase pathway, whereas Egr2 is mainly induced by the calcineurin/nuclear factor of activated T cells (NFAT) pathway. Egr1 and Egr2 mediate the survival of MHC-restricted T-cell precursors after positive selection through induction of Bcl2 and Bcl-xL.[101–103] In the case of NKT cells, however, sustained Egr elevation has specific lineage-determining consequences. Egr2 directly binds to the promoters of NKT lineage–specific genes such as *Zbtb16*, encoding PLZF, and *Il2rb*, encoding the β chain of the IL-15 receptor, and it is required for their induction. This suggests a direct connection between the peculiar signaling emanating from the TCR synapse and these NKT lineage checkpoints.[100] The sustained elevated Egr levels likely result from the TCR recognition of agonist ligands[36,43] or from the Slamf-SAP–mediated stabilization of the immune synapse.[96] As some *Zbtb16* messenger ribonucleic acid induction was detected in SAP-deficient NKT precursors, SAP may not be absolutely required for PLZF induction.[104]

TCR and Slamf-SAP-Fyn signaling both involve the canonical NF-κB pathway through PKCθ and Bcl-10.[105,106] Mice lacking these downstream signaling components showed partial defects in NKT-cell development,[107,108] as further detailed in the following.

Thus, NKT-cell development is tightly dependent on the signaling elicited through the TCR and Slamf-SAP-Fyn pathways, the specific contributions of which remain to be dissected. Notably, redirecting the expression of MHC class II proteins on cortical thymocytes through ectopic expression of the transcription factor CIITA led to the differentiation of "innate-like" CD4+ thymocytes in a SAP-dependent manner. These cells resembled stage 2 NKT cells and expressed PLZF, reinforcing the notion that homotypic thymocyte-thymocyte interactions, Slamf-SAP-Fyn signaling, and PLZF define a dedicated thymic pathway for the production of innate-like effector T cells.[109–112] In that context, the reciprocal expression patterns of CD1 and Slamf receptors by thymocytes and of MHC proteins by epithelial cells may well serve the primary purpose of creating different niches for different thymic lineages.[90]

Cluster of Differentiation 4 and Cluster of Differentiation 8 Coreceptor Expression

NKT cells originate from the same pool of DP precursors as MHC-restricted T cells and emerge from thymic selection as CD4 SP cells expressing the CD4 lineage factor ThPOK/c-Krox in a Gata-3–dependent manner.[113,114] A fraction goes on to downregulate CD4 and acquire the DN phenotype, but they still stably express ThPOK, which is essential to downregulate CD8. In humans, some NKT cells can express CD8αα homodimers. ThPOK-deficient NKT cells did not express CD4, and some of them also failed to repress CD8, but otherwise they appeared to develop normally.[113] Their functional properties, however, have not been fully assessed. CD8α-deficient mice showed a modest but significant bias toward the selection of high-affinity Vβ7 TCRs compared with littermate controls.[83] A similar bias was observed after anti-CD8 antibody treatment, suggesting a minor role of CD8 as a coreceptor for CD1d. Transgenic expression of CD8α resulted in the disappearance of NKT thymocytes, suggesting a role in negative selection,[83] a conclusion subsequently challenged when the transgenic model was found to have impaired Vα-Jα rearrangements.[114]

Thus, while NKT-cell development does not appear to rely on CD4 or CD8 coreceptors, the induction of ThPOK and CD4 in this lineage may simply reflect the path of high

affinity TCRs whose signaling is coreceptor independent.[115] However, the subsequent CD4 downregulation in up to 50% to 70% of NKT cells, despite persistent ThPOK expression, remains to be explained.

Cluster of Differentiation 28-B7 Interactions

A modest decrease in the thymic expansion of NKT cells was reported in mice lacking CD28 or B7,[116,117] but the nature of the B7-expressing cell type (epithelial cells or DCs) has not been determined.

Transcriptional Control of Natural Killer T-Cell Development: The Central Role of Promyelocytic Leukemia Zinc Factor

The transcription factor PLZF encoded by *Zbtb16* was identified as the signature master transcription factor of the NKT-cell lineage.[104,118] PLZF is a member of the BTB-ZF family of transcription factors, which also includes Bcl6 and ThPOK. It is composed of a bric-a-brac, tramtrack, and broad (BTB) homodimerizing domain and nine Kruppel-type Cys2His2 zinc fingers. The BTB domain binds a corepressor complex made of histone deacetylases, N-Cor, and SMRT, whereas deoxyribonucleic acid binding is mediated by the zinc fingers. PLZF is induced in NKT precursors just after TCR signaling, with high amounts detected on nearly half of stage 0 and all of stage 1 and 2 cells, and lower levels found in stage 3 cells.

Mice lacking PLZF through either the *luxoid* mutation, which induces a frameshift leading to a truncated BTB protein without zinc fingers, or deletion of exon 2 encoding the BTB domain, exhibited a block in NKT-cell development,[104,118] as well as defects in spermatogonial cell maintenance and osteoblast differentiation.[119,120] PLZF-deficient NKT precursors identified by CD1d-αGalCer tetramers were blocked at stage 1, unable to acquire effector characteristics. Instead, they maintained a naïve phenotype and function, recirculating between blood, lymph node, and spleen, rather than homing to liver and lung, and producing IL-2 instead of IL-4 and IFNγ upon stimulation. Intriguingly, however, they incorporated BrdU at the same high rate as wild type, but without showing expansion, suggesting aborted division or increased cell death.

Ectopic expression of PLZF under the CD4 or Lck promoter induced a typical stage 2 NKT program in CD4 T cells, with downregulation of CD62L, upregulation of CD44 and LFA-1, dual secretion of IL-4 and IFNγ, and homing to liver and lung.[104,121–123] Notably, the full effector conversion depended on expression of PLZF at high levels comparable to stage 1 and 2 NKT thymocytes, which was only achieved in the CD4 promoter transgenic model.[124] In these mice, nearly 100% of CD4 cells acquired the effector phenotype at the CD4 SP stage. This effector conversion was also observed in MHC class II–restricted TCR/RAG knockout transgenic models. Thus, while the induction of PLZF requires the signaling environment of NKT cells, the NKT effector program can be transferred by PLZF alone. The molecular basis of the extensive gene reprogramming induced by PLZF, in particular the direct target genes and the biochemical mechanisms of gene activation or repression, are currently being studied.

Other Transcription Factors

The induction of Tbet represents an essential step at the transition between stage 2 and stage 3,[125–127] coinciding with the relative decrease in PLZF expression. Both Tbet and Egr2 contribute to *Il2rb* induction,[100] allowing responsiveness to IL-15. While the pathways leading to Tbet induction independently of Stat1 or Stat4 remain unclear, a role for Ets1 or MEF has been suggested.[127,128]

Mice lacking Gata-3 exhibited severe but complex NKT-cell defects[129] consisting of a considerable reduction of most of their thymic and peripheral NKT cells, with the strange exception of their stage 3 thymocytes which accumulated normally. Gata-3 is required for ThPOK induction, explaining the loss of CD4 by residual NKT cells.[113]

Mice lacking TGFβRII had severe NKT-cell developmental defects, particularly in a competitive chimera setting.[130] Mutant NKT cells had defective expression of the IL-7 receptor and increased apoptosis at stage 1, but a normal rate of cell division at stage 2. Tbet and IL2Rβ were expressed by a larger than normal fraction of stage 2 cells. These effects were mediated by different branches of TGFβ signaling, including Tif-1γ, Smad4, and the Smad4/Tif-1–independent pathway.

Complex and somewhat conflicting results have been reported regarding the role of different NF-κB factors. Mice lacking IKKβ or expressing a degradation resistant form of I-κBα generally exhibited severe cell-intrinsic defects at stage 1 and 2, due in part to apoptosis. These effects appeared to be mediated by the partly redundant functions of NF-κB1, RelA, and c-Rel.[131–134] The upstream activator of NF-κB may include signaling through TCR, SLAM/SAP/Fyn, or CD28/B7. In contrast, ablation of RelB in the alternate pathway impaired early NKT cells development nonspecifically by disrupting the thymic stroma.

While early reports suggested some cell-intrinsic role for lymphotoxin signaling in NKT-cell development,[135] more recent analysis indicated that the major attrition in lymphotoxin-deficient animals occurred during the transition from the thymus to the periphery, possibly related to a defect in NKT thymocyte emigration in the absence of interaction between LTβR on thymic stromal cells and lymphotoxin on bone marrow–derived cells.[136]

cMyc is induced as early as stage 0, when NKT cells enter S phase. Its conditional ablation resulted in developmental arrest at stage 0,[72] similar to cyclin D2-deficient mice (unpublished data), suggesting that entry into cell cycle occurred at stage 0, one stage earlier than previously thought.[64]

Micro-Ribonucleic Acids

Conditional ablation of *Dicer* in thymocytes led to a massive loss of NKT thymocytes but the micro-ribonucleic acids involved have eluded identification.[137–140]

Other Promyelocytic Leukemia Zinc Factor–Positive Lineages

γδT cells expressing the semi-invariant Vγ1Vδ6 receptor were previously shown to express the NK1.1 marker, home to the liver, and produce IL-4, like Vα14-Jα18 NKT cells.[141]

These cells were not only dependent on SAP for their differentiation, but also expressed PLZF.[142–144] In OP-9 supported thymocyte cultures, PLZF could be induced after cross-linking with Vγ-specific TCR antibodies. Likewise, TCR αβ thymocytes upregulated *Zbtb16* messenger ribonucleic acid after injection of anti-TCRβ antibodies in vivo.[100] These findings support the notion that agonist signaling induces PLZF to generate innate-like αβ and γδ lineages. MR-1–specific Mucosal-associated invariant T cells were also reported to express PLZF[104] and home to liver and gut.[145] Together with experiments showing that CD4 T cells selected by MHC class II expressed on thymocytes also acquired PLZF in a SAP-dependent manner,[109–112] these observations reveal an authentic cellular and molecular pathway dedicated to the generation of innate-like lymphocytes.

Deficiencies or mutations affecting certain genes associated with TCR signaling produced a phenotype characterized by a cell-intrinsic expansion of the PLZF-expressing thymic lineages, including Vγ1Vδ6 T cells and Vα14-Jα18 NKT cells. This expansion was associated with a bystander conversion of MHC-restricted thymocytes, mainly CD8 T cells, into innate-like CD62L^{lo} CD44^{hi} CD122^{hi} eomesodermin^{hi} effectors, caused by IL-4 secreted by the PLZF-expressing cells. This complex phenotype was observed in mice lacking the Tec kinases Itk or Rlk,[146–148] or bearing the Y145F mutation in the scaffold protein SLP76, which impairs binding of these kinases after TCR signaling.[143] Mice lacking the inhibitor of E proteins Id3, which can be induced downstream of the TCR-activated MAP kinases, showed a strikingly similar phenotype,[143,149,150] as did mice after conditional ablation of CREB binding protein,[151] a general transcriptional coactivator, and KLF2, a transcription factor that controls CD62L and S1P1 receptor upregulation after positive selection.[148,152]

The convergent impact of these different genes suggests the existence of a negative regulatory pathway that physiologically contains the expansion and function of innate-like T cells. Notably, wild-type BALB/c mice spontaneously exhibited a similar, albeit milder, phenotype as mutant C57BL/6 mice, including a relative expansion of PLZF-expressing NKT thymocytes and a bystander induction of CD44, CD122, eomesodermin, and the rapid production of cytokines by CD8 SP thymocytes.[148] This phenotype was dependent on *klf13*.[153] Thus, there is a natural crosstalk between innate-like and conventional T cells during thymic development, whose variations may have a profound impact on the immune system.

Homeostasis

NKT cells are produced at a similar rate from fetal to adult life, and they persist indefinitely after adult thymectomy. The mechanisms ensuring their long life in peripheral tissues are detailed in the following.

Interleukin-15

Like NK cells and CD8 memory cells, mature NKT cells critically depend on IL-15 for their terminal maturation as well as their survival and homeostatic renewal.[154–156] Cell-type–specific ablation of IL-15Rα, which is essential to present IL-15 at the surface of IL-15–producing cells, revealed that the sole source of IL-15 for development was a nonhemopoietic radiation-insensitive stromal cell type, most likely a medullary epithelial cell.[157] In contrast, both radiation-resistant and hemopoietic cells served as partly redundant sources of IL-15 for peripheral NKT cells.

CXCL16

CXCR6 signaling, in response to CXCL16 produced by endothelial cells, is critical for the survival of liver NKT cells in basal conditions, but not for their specific accumulation or their crawling behavior in the liver sinusoids.[158]

Cluster of Differentiation 1d Ligands

In mice lacking CD1d in peripheral tissues, the full terminal maturation of NKT cells after thymic export is partially altered but the overall frequency, tissue distribution, survival, and functional properties of NKT cells are not significantly impaired.[80,87] Thus, peripheral NKT cells do not require contact with self-antigens for homeostasis.

Microbiota

NKT cells did not exhibit major disturbances in their development or function in germ-free mice.[78,159,160] However, mice lacking NKT cells were reported to harbor changes in the composition of their microbiota.[160]

TISSUE DISTRIBUTION AND RECIRCULATION

In C57BL/6 mice, NKT cells represent ~0.2% of the T-cell population in blood and peripheral lymph nodes; ~2.5% of T cells in spleen, mesenteric, and pancreatic lymph nodes; 5% in the lung; and up to 40% in the liver. Furthermore, parabiotic experiments have shown that, unlike most lymphocytes, NKT cells do not recirculate and are lifelong residents of lymphoid tissues, lung, and liver.[161]

Tissue and Intravascular Residents

This tissue residency is particularly remarkable in the liver and lung where NKT cells are mainly found within the capillary microvasculature.[158,161] Intravital imaging using confocal microscopy of the liver of CXCR6^{GFP} mice, where a majority of brightly fluorescent liver lymphocytes are Vα14 NKT cells, demonstrated their presence inside the sinusoid capillaries, adhering to the luminal side of endothelial cells and crawling, without directional bias, at a speed of ~10μm/min (Fig. 18.6). While other effector T cells and monocytes can adopt a similar crawling behavior transiently, before they extravasate to enter inflamed tissues, NKT cells are constitutively and permanently crawling in steady-state conditions.

The expression of high amount of CXCR6 by NKT cells matches the production of the corresponding chemokine ligand CXCL16 by endothelial cells lining the sinusoids. CXCR6 appeared to be important for the survival of liver NKT cells[158] as well as NK cells,[162] but it was not required for liver accumulation. Furthermore, the adhesion and crawling processes were unaltered by pertussis toxin treatment, suggesting independence from $G\alpha_i$ protein signaling.[163]

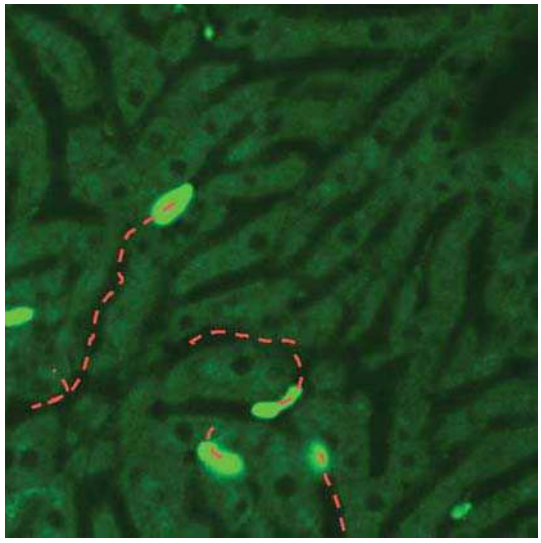


FIG. 18.6. Intravascular Patrolling by Liver Natural Killer T (NKT) Cells. Fluorescent NKT cells in CXCR6-GFP "knock-in" mice are crawling on the luminal side of sinusoid endothelial cells. *Dashed lines* show their path over a period of 10 mn in a live imaging study. (Courtesy of Frederic Geissmann, King's College, London, UK, and Dan Littman, New York University, New York, NY, USA)

Thus, the constitutive activation of LFA-1 was neither a consequence of TCR signaling, as NKT cells normally accumulated in the liver of mice lacking CD1d outside of the thymus,[80,87] nor of chemokine-induced $G\alpha_i$ protein signaling. Notably, transgenic expression of PLZF in MHC class II–restricted CD4 T cells was sufficient to induce their liver retention, indicating that the adhesion and crawling behavior are an integral component of the PLZF-induced functional program.[161]

Organ-specific Natural Killer T-Cell Sublineages

DN NKT cells expressing Rorγt and producing IL-17 and IL-22 but not IL-4 or IFN-γ selectively resided in skin and draining axillary and inguinal lymph nodes.[164,165] While they shared the usual $CD44^{hi}CD62L^{lo}$ effector phenotype of other NKT cells, they did not express the stage 3 markers Tbet, IL2Rβ, CD69, or NK receptors and instead displayed a $CD103^{hi}$ CCR6+ CD121a+ phenotype. The identification of a minor cell population in the thymus with a similar phenotype suggested that they constituted a separate developmental sublineage.[166] Intriguingly, their expression of Nrp-1, a marker of recent thymic emigrants and their rapid disappearance after adult thymectomy, suggested that, unlike most NKT cells, they represented a short-lived population.[82]

A subset of NKT cells expressing the IL-25 receptor and biased toward production of IL-4, IL-3, and IL-9 was found in the thymus, spleen, and lung, but was poorly represented in the liver and bone marrow.[167] Whether these cells constitute a tissue-specific sublineage that differentiates in the thymus or in the periphery remains to be determined.

NATURAL KILLER T-CELL FUNCTIONS

Functional Properties

DC activation and the explosive release of cytokines and chemokines by NKT cells have well-documented functional consequences in a variety of pathological or therapeutic conditions involving lymphoid tissues and body organs. Important factors biasing the Th1, Th2, or Th17 outcome of NKT-cell activation in vivo have recently emerged. They include the structure of the lipid antigen, the antigen-presenting cell type, the tissue, and the coexposure to TLR ligands. These will be discussed in two separate contexts: the administration of synthetic NKT ligands, which function as potent vaccine adjuvants, and the activation of NKT cells in the context of microbial infection.

Vaccine Adjuvant Properties

Dendritic Cell–based Network of Activation

Several studies have characterized a cascade of activation events following the exogenous administration of NKT ligands such as αGalCer (Fig. 18.7). The central feature was a cross-activation between NKT cells and DCs initiated upon the presentation of αGalCer by resting DCs to NKT cells. Activated NKT cells upregulated CD40L, Th1 and Th2 cytokines, and chemokines; CD40 crosslinking induced DCs to upregulate CD40, B7.1, and B7.2 and IL-12p40, which in turn enhanced NKT-cell activation and cytokine production.[168,169] DCs upregulated MHC class I– and class II–mediated antigen presentation, particularly cross-priming, and secreted CCL17,[170] a chemoattractant for naïve CCR4+ CD8 T cells. IL-12 released by DCs promoted prolonged IFN-γ production by NK cells and activated their cytolytic properties.[171,172] Thus, αGalCer promotes robust CD4 and CD8 T-cell–mediated adaptive immune responses against coadministered nonreplicating protein antigens.[173–175] Furthermore, although TLR signaling is not involved in the innate response to αGalCer, the combination of TLR and NKT ligands was synergistic.[176]

Th1 and Th2 Variants

Different synthetic agonists showed biased Th1 versus Th2 outcomes mainly due to their differential ability to induce IL-12 from DCs and to transactivate NK cells. Variants of the original αGalCer (KRN7000) with short or unsaturated lipid chains induced similar Th2 but decreased Th1 cytokines.[177–179] While early reports pointed to the lower TCR affinity of a variant with truncated phytosphingosine chain (psC9:0, called "OCH"),[180] several other Th2 variants, including acylC8:0 or acylC20:2, demonstrated identical interactions based on affinity measurements and crystal structures.[56,181,182] All these Th2 variants had increased solubility in water and could be rapidly loaded onto CD1d molecules at the cell surface. In contrast, αGalCer was almost exclusively loaded in the lysosome due to a requirement for lipid transfer proteins. Whereas αGalCer remained stably associated with CD1d, the short or unsaturated variants were rapidly ejected upon recycling to the acidic endosome.[21] Interestingly, αGalCer was found associated with surface CD1d molecules on lipid rafts, whereas the short or unsaturated variants were loaded to CD1d molecules outside of these rafts, perhaps as a consequence of their different loading compartments.[182] However,

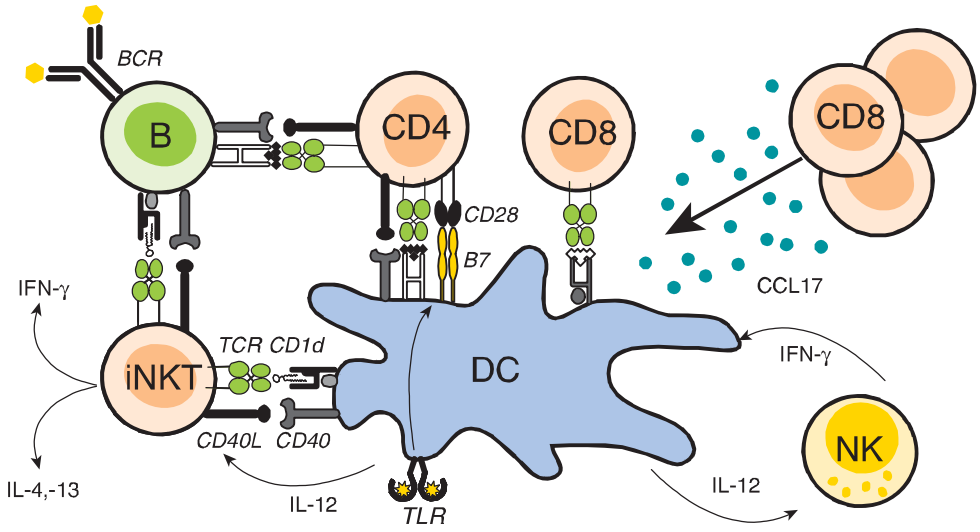


FIG. 18.7. Cellular and Molecular Network Activated by the Natural Killer T (NKT) Ligand αGalCer. Cross-activation between NKT cells and dendritic cells (DCs) lead to cluster of differentiation (CD)40L-CD40 interactions, activating the DC to present peptide antigens to CD4 and also to CD8 cells (cross-priming). NKT cells promptly release Th1 and Th2 cytokines. Naïve CD8 T cells are chemoattracted through CCL17 secreted by DCs. NK cells are "transactivated" by DCs and interleukin-12 to release interferon-γ in a prolonged manner. B cells seeing antigens can receive cognate help from NKT cells and/or from CD4 cells.

this is unlikely to explain the Th2 bias, as the variants induced the same balance of cytokines as αGalCer when tested in vitro with purified antigen-presenting cells. A more likely explanation for the Th2 bias was suggested by in vivo studies with mice carrying a floxed CD1d allele. Indeed, while αGalCer presentation was mostly limited to lysosomally active DCs and macrophages, which produced IL-12, the Th2 variants were broadly presented by all CD1d-expressing cell types, most of which did not produce IL-12.[89] Thus, structural differences in lipids resulted in the involvement of different antigen-presenting cell types, altering the cellular network and the outcome of NKT-cell activation (Fig. 18.8).

Anergy

A limitation to the adjuvant properties of NKT ligands is the rapid NKT TCR downregulation and apoptosis, followed by a long-lasting depletion and a state of anergy.[183–185] Anergy could be partially avoided by CD28 costimulation or PD1 blockade,[186,187] or by the administration of αGalCer-pulsed DCs, or αGalCer conjugated to nanoparticles.[188–190] The mechanism of NKT-cell anergy remains obscure.

Natural Killer T-Cell Help to B Cells

NKT-cell activation by agonist ligands promoted antibody production, affinity maturation, and switching against associated antigens. Help could be indirect, through CD40L-CD40 mediated activation of the DCs presenting peptide antigen to CD4 T cells, which in turn provided MHC II–restricted help to B cells recognizing a linked antigen. Alternatively, direct NKT-B cell cognate interactions have been demonstrated in vitro and in vivo.[191–197] The relevance of this direct cognate help was illustrated by infection with *Sphingomonas*, which carries abundant glycosphingolipid ligands in its cell wall.[198] The production of immunoglobulin (Ig)G antibodies against the bacterial membrane appended enzyme pyruvate dehydrogenase complex-E2 depended on CD1d expression by B cells, as evidenced in mixed bone marrow chimeras where CD1d expression was limited to one Ig allotype–marked, B-cell compartment. NKT cells engaged in cognate and prolonged interactions with B cells, after acquiring a stereotypical Bcl-6 dependent follicular helper program with induction of CXCR5, PD1, and IL-21, and migration to the germinal center.[196,197] Intriguingly, immunization with αGalCer-nitrophenol (NP) induced faster but less sustained germinal center formation with fewer long-lived plasma cells and inferior memory compared with keyhole limpet hemocyanin-NP or ovalbumin-loaded (OVA)-NP,[196,197] suggesting that NKT cell help to B cells was intrinsically inferior to conventional T-cell help. However, other variables might have contributed to these differences, including the monovalency of NP in the case of αGalCer, differences in bioavailability, cellular targeting, half-life, and processing of the different immunogen preparations. It is also possible that the rapid induction of NKT-cell anergy after exposure to αGalCer might limit the interactions required for effective B-cell help.

Splenic marginal zone B cells constitutively express approximately eight times more CD1d on their surface than other B-cell subsets.[9] They responded to antigen in an accelerated manner with increased sensitivity conferred by the complement receptor CD21, which lowers the B-cell receptor signaling threshold to complement-coated antigen.[199] These characteristics have long suggested a special function in CD1d-mediated B-cell responses. In support of such

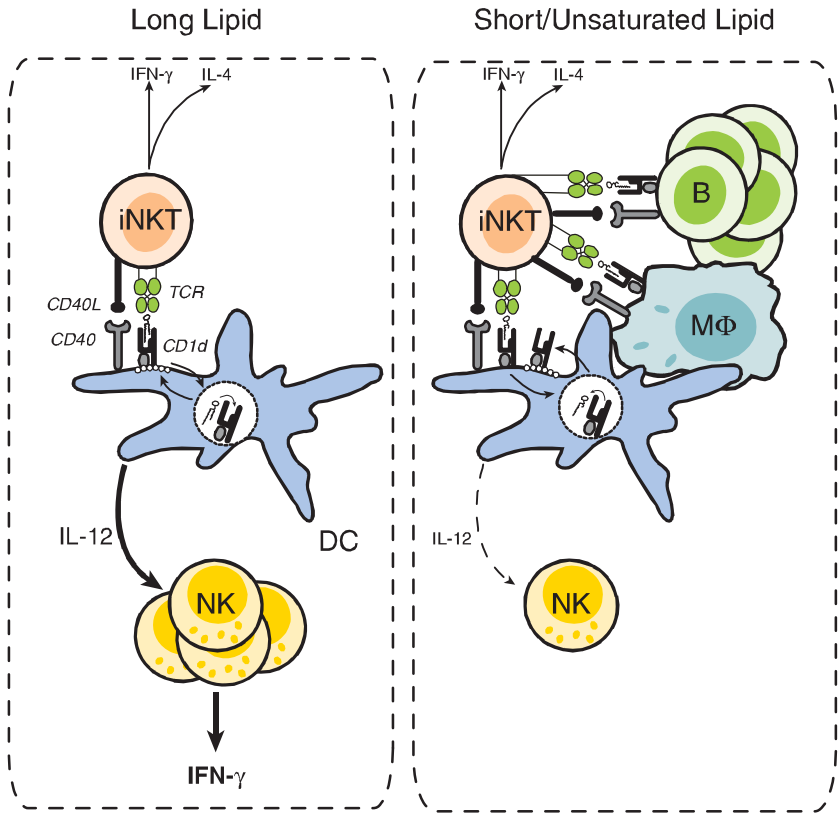


FIG. 18.8. Th1 and Th2 Agonist Ligands of Natural Killer T (NKT) Cells. *Left*, long and saturated αGalCer variants (including KRN7000) load cluster of differentiation (CD)1d in the lysosomal compartment due to their requirement for lipid transfer proteins. The main antigen-presenting cell is a dendritic cell (DC), which produces lots of interleukin (IL)-12 and transactivates NK cells. *Right*, short or polyunsaturated lipids load CD1d directly at the cell surface, but are rapidly ejected upon recycling to the lysosome due to displacement by longer, hydrophobic peptides at acidic pH. These short or polyunsaturated lipids are promiscuously presented by all CD1d expressing cells, limiting DC interactions, interleukin-12 production, and natural killer transactivation. CD1d complexed with long and saturated variants sit in lipid rafts, whereas CD1d complexed with short or polyunsaturated variants are excluded from lipid rafts.

NKT-MZB interactions in vivo, depletion of marginal zone B cells impaired the IgM anti-NP antibody response after systemic administration of αGalCer-NP.[200]

Natural Killer T-Cell Help to Macrophages and Myeloid Suppressor Cells

Subcapsular CD169+ macrophages efficiently captured and presented αGalCer to NKT cells in lymph nodes after footpad injection of 200 nm silica beads coated with the lipid antigen.[201] This selective capture further emphasizes the importance of the formulation of αGalCer in targeting different antigen-presenting cell types. Notably, agonist-mediated NKT-cell interaction with myeloid suppressor cells could reverse their suppressive properties. Furthermore, natural interactions between NKT cells and myeloid suppressor cells have been suggested in transplanted cancers and influenza infection.[202–204]

Microbial Infections

The recognition of either microbial α-linked glycolipid antigens or self-β-linked antigens induced by TLR signaling ensures the recruitment of NKT cells in most microbial infections (Fig. 18.9). Which of these modes of activation predominates for individual microorganisms is somewhat controversial, as TLR signaling induces IL-12, which is a potent amplifier of IFN-γ secretion, and NKT cells upregulate their IL-12 receptor upon TCR signaling.

Direct Microbial Lipid Recognition

Glycosphingolipids closely related to αGalCer were found in the cell wall of *Sphingomonas*,[30,205] a prominent gram-negative LPS-negative member of α-proteobacteria, an abundant class of bacteria. These glycosphingolipids included the dominant α-branched glucuronyl and galacturonyl ceramides (GSL-1) and the less abundant di- (GSL-2), tri- (GSL-3), and tetraglycosylated (GSL-4) species. Although they form structures that are reminiscent of LPS, their synthesis pathway and their role in the microbial cell wall are not well understood. GSL-1 activates large proportions of mouse and human NKT cells,[31,32,206,207] but it is unclear at present whether the more complex GSL-2, -3, and -4 can be recognized by NKT cells or even whether they can be efficiently processed into GSL-1 by host antigen-presenting cells. During infection, *Sphingomonas* was phagocytosed by macrophages and DCs, and elicited an activation cascade similar to exogenous αGalCer. NKT-deficient mice had 15- to 1000-fold more residual bacteria than their wild-type littermates in the first few days after infection.[31,32] High doses of *Sphingomonas* induced a lethal toxic shock in wild-type but not NKT-deficient littermates. These observations have led to the hypothesis that NKT cells and their canonical TCR specificity might have evolved to meet the challenges of these gram-negative LPS-negative bacteria. While *Sphingomonas* can cause severe infection, particularly in immunocompromised hosts, other more deadly members of the class of α-proteobacteria may have provided stronger evolutionary pressures on the NKT-cell system. Particularly interesting is the case of *Ehrlichia*, a tick-borne pathogen and member of the *Rickettsiales*, which is of widespread significance for mammals, including wild and domesticated ruminants, dogs, and humans in some regions of the world such as Africa and east Asia. *Ehrlichia muris*

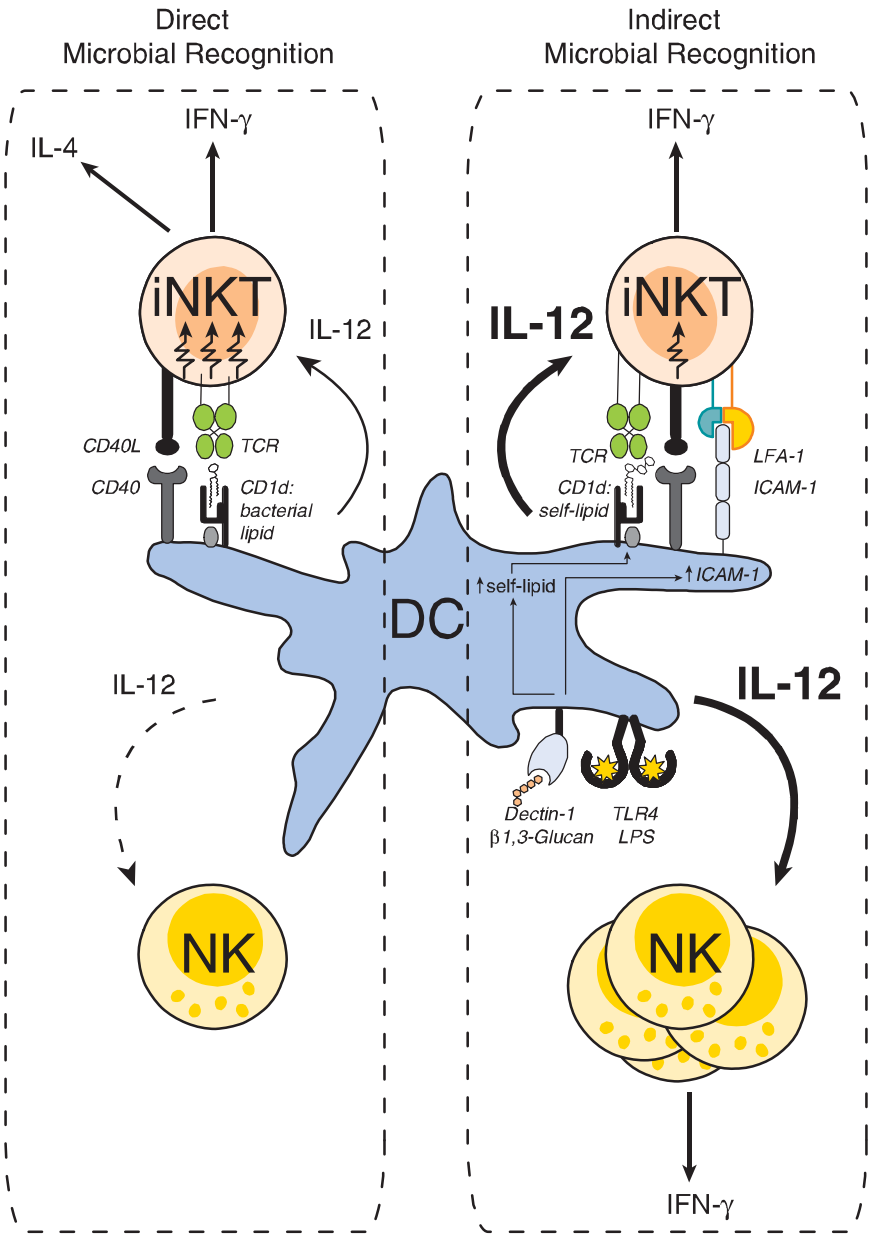


FIG. 18.9. Dual Recognition of Self- and Microbial Ligands in Microbial Infections. *Left,* microbial organisms expressing agonist ligands can elicit direct activation of natural killer T (NKT) cells. *Right,* microbial organisms lacking NKT ligands activate NKT cells through the enhanced recognition of self NKT ligands. These self ligands are upregulated by toll-like receptor– or dectin-1–mediated signals, and their recognition is enhanced by upregulation of intercellular adhesion molecule at the immune synapse. Interleukin-12 secreted by dendritic cells amplifies interferon-γ produced by NKT cells and by natural killer cells.

activated NKT cells independently of MyD88, and its clearance was profoundly impaired in CD1d- or Jα18-deficient animals.[31] However, the cell wall composition of *Ehrlichia*, a gram-negative, LPS-negative obligate intracellular bacterium, has not been elucidated.

Other bacteria such as *Streptococcus*[34,208] and *Borrelia*[33] expressed α-linked diacylglycerol lipids that bound CD1d and could directly engage the mouse and human NKT TCR, resulting in accelerated microbial clearance. *Borrelia* was normally cleared by NKT-deficient mice, except at later time points in the joints.[163,209] Intravital microscopy of the liver response to an intravenous inoculation of *Borrelia burgdorferi* showed rapid microbial uptake by stationary Kupffer cells followed by the attraction and arrest of NKT cells in the sinusoids. Stable, CD1d-mediated contacts between Kupffer cells and NKT cells depended on the secretion of CXCL9 by Kupffer cells and the pertussis toxin–sensitive response of CXCR3-expressing NKT cells.

Self-Lipid Recognition

Many bacteria that do not harbor NKT ligands nevertheless induce massive amounts of IFN-γ in a NKT- and CD1d-dependent manner.[31,39] This secretion of IFN-γ is considerably amplified through TLR-induced IL-12 released by DCs and macrophages and the transactivation of NK cells (see Fig. 18.9). TLR signaling regulates several glycosphingolipid enzymes, leading to the accumulation of stimulatory glycosphingolipids (see Fig. 18.3), and activation of LFA-1/ICAM-1 interactions further facilitate NKT-cell recognition of these low-affinity ligands. However, contrary to an early report,[210] NKT cells do not usually constitute the predominant cell-type producing IFN-γ in response to IL-12

in vivo,[39,211] which explains why they generally do not appear to play an essential role in many bacterial infections. Nevertheless, bacterial clearance and neutrophils were reportedly decreased in the lungs of CD1d-deficient mice after infection with *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*.[212] This may not be the case at other sites of infection.[213] Different conclusions were also reported regarding the importance of NKT cells versus NK cells in lethal LPS-induced toxic shock.[214,215]

Fungal and Parasitic Infections

The production of IgG antibodies to the malaria circumsporozoite antigen, a key component of protective immune responses in humans, was suggested to depend on NKT-cell recognition of malarial glycosylphosphatidylinositol antigens in a mouse model.[216] However, additional experiments failed to detect a CD1d-dependent component to this antibody response and glycosylphosphatidylinositols have not been identified as NKT-cell antigens in other reports.[217,218] In the context of helminth infection, DCs pulsed with *Schistosoma mansoni* eggs activated NKT cells to secrete Th1 and Th2 cytokines in vitro in a β-hexosaminidase B-dependent but MyD88-independent manner, suggesting recognition of the self-ligand iGb3 in the absence of TLR signaling.[219]

Intratracheal infection by the fungal pathogen *Aspergillus fumigatus* indirectly stimulated NKT-cell production of IFN-γ through activation of the dectin-1/MyD88 pathway by the major cell wall polysaccharides, β-1,3 glucans. Clearance of the pathogen was impaired in NKT-deficient mice.

Viral Infections

Viruses can activate TLR signaling through the adaptors MyD88 and TRIF, which in turn activate autoreactive NKT cells. Relatively modest defects in viral clearance have been reported in CD1d-deficient mice infected with encephalomyocarditis virus[220] or coxsackie B3,[221] but these defects were not observed in Jα18-deficient mice, ruling out a specific role of Vα14 NKT cells. Influenza virus clearance was normal or modestly impaired in mice lacking NKT cells.[222,223] Infections with lymphocytic choriomeningitis virus, mouse cytomegalovirus, vaccinia virus, and coronavirus were unaffected. In humans, a profibrotic role of Vα24 NKT cells was suggested in hepatitis C[224] and non-Vα24 CD1d-restricted T cells were found in the liver.[225] Although a specific role of Vα14 NKT cells in herpes simplex virus infection is controversial,[226,227] studies have suggested that viral invasion may be associated with countermeasures against CD1d or NKT cells. For example, herpes simplex virus-1 drastically and specifically impaired CD1d recycling from lysosome to plasma membrane, an essential pathway for glycolipid antigen presentation to NKT cells.[228] Kaposi sarcoma–associated herpes virus encodes two modulators of immune recognition MIR1 and MIR2 that downregulated CD1d along with other immunologically relevant molecules such as MHC class I, CD86, and ICAM-1 through ubiquitination of lysine residues in their cytoplasmic tail.[229] The lethal outcome of infections with Epstein-Barr virus in patients with X-linked lymphoproliferative immunodeficiency syndrome due to SAP mutations was hypothesized to result from the absence of NKT cells.[93] Which of these effects or associations reflect specific viral evasion/immune defense strategies and the nature of the putative NKT ligands involved in these infectious conditions remain to be determined.

Autoimmunity, Inflammation, and Allergy

Asthma

Studies in the OVA/Alum model of asthma in mouse and a report that humans with asthma harbored high percentages of Vα24 NKT cells in their bronchoalveolar lavage suggested a broad role of NKT cells in various forms of airway allergic inflammation. However, these studies have not been widely confirmed.[230]

Other studies have focused on the presence of airborne NKT ligands in natural environments, for example in house dust or in air samples where *Sphingomonas* is one of the predominant microbial species identified.[231,232] Airway exposure to these NKT ligands resulted in the rapid CCL17-induced recruitment of resident intravascular NKT cells into the lung with formation of eosinophilic granulomas. Notably, a single airway exposure to protein antigen associated with NKT ligands led to massive recall allergic airway inflammation upon airborne challenge with protein alone. Likewise, coadministration of house dust extracts containing unidentified NKT ligands promoted allergic sensitization to airborne OVA in an NKT-dependent manner.

Thus, emerging studies indicate that natural exposure to airborne NKT ligands in the environment may constitute a previously unappreciated cause of allergic sensitization.

Diabetes and Autoimmune Diseases

Many reports have suggested a role of NKT cells, usually of regulatory nature, in autoimmune diseases such as type I diabetes, arthritis, and lupus, and in atherosclerosis and inflammatory bowel disease.[233] These reports mostly relied on comparisons between wild-type versus Jα18- or CD1d-deficient mice but did not offer precise mechanistic insights into the putative function of NKT cells and their mode of recruitment. Some of these studies did not use littermates as wild-type controls and have not been widely reproduced. Furthermore, the recent discovery that NKT thymocytes impact the function of MHC-restricted T cells in a bystander manner, through the secretion of IL-4,[148] suggests that alternative, indirect mechanisms might contribute to these observations.

Primary Biliary Cirrhosis

Primary biliary cirrhosis (PBC) is an enigmatic disease characterized by the presence of antimitochondrial antibodies, liver lymphocytic infiltrates, and the chronic destruction of the biliary epithelium leading to cirrhosis.[234] The autoantibodies recognize an epitope of the mitochondrial pyruvate dehydrogenase complex-E2 enzyme that is particularly well conserved in *Novosphingobium aromaticivorans*, a strain of *Sphingomonas*. Further, patients with PBC, including those

lacking antimitochondrial antibodies, were specifically seropositive against *Sphingomonas*, which was detected by polymerase chain reaction in stool samples of 25% of diseased or healthy individuals, suggesting that PBC may be induced by aberrant host reactivity to this bacterium.[235] Patients with PBC also showed an enrichment of Vα24 NKT cells in liver biopsies and a depletion in blood.[236] In light of the recent finding that *Sphingomonas* cell wall glycolipids specifically activate NKT cells, these studies suggested that NKT cells might play a key role in the pathogenesis of PBC by promoting aberrant responses to *Sphingomonas*. An experimental model of infection induced a chronic liver disease with PBC-like granulomas and antimicrobial autoantibodies, which could be transferred by lymphocytes. These provocative findings support the hypothesis that PBC might be the consequence of cryptic episodes of bacterial infections, perhaps triggered by commensals containing NKT ligands, leading to NKT cell–assisted breakdown of tolerance to shared mitochondrial/bacterial antigens.

Cancer

A role of Jα18 and non-Jα18 CD1d-restricted NKT cells in cancer surveillance has been inferred from reports that CD1d- and Jα18-deficient mice seemed to differ from wild-type mice in their susceptibility to a variety of spontaneous and transplanted cancers.[237] Vα14 NKT cells were suggested to exert protection against spontaneous sarcomas. These included fibrosarcomas in mice injected intramuscularly with methylcholantrene,[238] osteosarcomas and hemopoietic tumors in p53+/- mice,[239] and carcinomas in transgenic adenocarcinoma of the mouse prostate mice.[240] Some transplanted cancers seemed aggravated in their progression by the presence of non-Vα14 NKT cells, apparently because of their secretion of IL-13 and interaction with myeloid suppressor cells.[202,203] These cancer studies have commonly concluded that endogenous ligands might be induced and presented by the tumor themselves or by antigen-presenting cells. The crosstalk between myeloid-derived cells and NKT cells resulted in suppression, or on the contrary, to exacerbation of immune responses against cancer. In most cases, however, the nature of these putative ligands has escaped precise identification. One exception lies with the proposed role of lysophosphatidylcholine as a tumor antigen in myeloma patients.[54]

A serious challenge to the interpretation of these studies is their near exclusive reliance on comparisons between wild-type and NKT-deficient mice and the lack of direct evidence of NKT cell involvement in the antitumor response. Moreover, some studies did not use proper littermate controls, or could not be independently reproduced. For example, the longstanding but isolated report that methylcholantrene-induced sarcomas were naturally controlled by Vα14 NKT cells[238] could not be confirmed in recent double-blind studies comparing large groups of CD1d- or Jα18-deficient mice and their littermate controls.[241] In addition, some of the reported results may be explained by an indirect rather than a direct function of NKT cells, for example due to their cross-talk with conventional T cells.[148]

CONCLUSION

Recent Advances

In the past 4 years, pivotal discoveries have advanced our understanding of the biology of NKT cells, particularly regarding their dual recognition of self- and foreign-lipid antigens; their role in infectious and allergic diseases; their specialized effector functions within microenvironments; their expression of a lineage-specific master transcription factor, PLZF; and their cross-talk with MHC-restricted T cells.

Remaining Challenges

The nature and the hierarchy of self- and foreign antigens recognized by NKT cells and their proposed role in a variety of diseases remain a work in progress. Are there other, perhaps more broadly relevant NKT ligands and what controls their expression?

Which class of microorganisms might explain the evolution of this elaborate lineage? Might NKT cells protect against diseases that have recently disappeared, at least in Western societies? In that regard, typhus-like disease after infection by tick-borne *Ehrlichia* may be comparable to malarial disease in its devastating impact in endemic regions.

What are the signaling events underlying NKT-cell differentiation, particularly the signals inducing PLZF, the molecular mechanisms of PLZF function, and the acquisition of NK receptors? Are there master transcription factors, similar to PLZF, that control other innate-like lineages such as CD8αα TCRαβ IELs and B1 B cells?

Finally, will NKT agonists demonstrate efficiency and safety as vaccine adjuvants to combat infections and cancer in humans?

Other Cluster of Differentiation 1–restricted T Cells?

Although there is strong evidence that the majority of CD1d-restricted αβ T cells in mice belong to the NKT lineage,[5] little is known about the human populations of αβT cells restricted by CD1d or other CD1 isotypes such as CD1a, b, and c.

Convergent studies reviewed in this chapter suggested that thymic selection by ligands predominantly expressed on cortical thymocytes or other hemopoietic cells was a key determinant of innate-like lineage decision. As CD1a, b, c, and d are all predominantly expressed on cortical thymocytes, they might mainly select PLZF-expressing T cells. This hypothesis remains to be directly tested in fresh human T-cell populations. Notably, humanized mice expressing a CD1b-restricted human TCR together with human CD1b under its own regulatory elements developed effector-like T cells that expressed PLZF.[242] Other insights have come from studies of a small subpopulation of human αGalCer-specific T cells that did not express Vα24, but used the remaining conserved elements of the NKT TCR, Jα18 and Vβ11. These cells expressed intermediate amounts of PLZF and kept a naïve $CD62L^{hi}$ $CD45RO^{hi}$ phenotype.[124] This natural example suggests that PLZF expression may be a reliable marker of T cells selected by CD1 molecules, but that different levels of expression may be imparted depending on as yet unknown factors such as perhaps, the intensity of TCR

signaling. Other studies based on the large scale cloning of fresh T cells have suggested that 3% to 10% of the cord blood T-cell population may be CD1-restricted and naïve-like, with a larger proportion of memory-type cells appearing in adults.[243] These important studies could not, however, determine whether the CD1-restricted T cells were selected by CD1 molecules or were merely cross-reactive cells primarily selected by MHC.

Most fresh CD1-restricted T cells identified so far in mice and humans have shown a CD4+ or CD4-CD8β- DN phenotype, with occasional expression of CD8α but rarely CD8β.[124,243] This coreceptor expression pattern parallels the one found in mouse and human CD1d-restricted NKT cells where it is associated with expression of ThPOK/cKrox, suggesting that most CD1-restricted T cells might also express this transcription factor.

These observations provide a background for studies of fresh, unimmunized CD1-restricted T cells in humans, which are now possible through the use of tetramers. Together with studies of "humanized" mice expressing human CD1-restricted TCRs and CD1 molecules, a more definitive characterization of the different populations of CD1-restricted T cells should emerge. Will they demonstrate the heavy contribution of germline TCR segments and the basal autoreactivity that is a hallmark of NKT cells? Will they display adaptive or innate-like features? Forthcoming answers to these fundamental questions will not only be crucial for clinical applications, but will also shed light on the evolutionary logics of lipid antigen recognition.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

I thank members of my laboratory and my colleagues Luc Teyton and Paul B. Savage for their insights, contributions, and comments on this chapter; Dirk Zajonc for discussions and for providing Figure 18.4; Frederic Geissmann and Dan Littman for providing Figure 18.6; and Seth Scanlon for help with the figures. Albert Bendelac is supported by the Howard Hughes Medical Institute and by grants from the National Institutes of Health.

REFERENCES

1. Bendelac A, Bonneville M, Kearney JF. Autoreactivity by design: innate B and T lymphocytes. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2001;1:177–186. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11905826
2. Lantz O, Bendelac A. An invariant T cell receptor a chain is used by a unique subset of MHC class I-specific CD4 $^{+}$ and CD4^{-}8^{-} T cells in mice and humans. *J Exp Med*. 1994;180:1097–1106. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7520467
3. Benlagha K, Kyin T, Beavis A, Teyton L, Bendelac A. A thymic precursor to the NKT cell lineage. *Science*. 2002;296:553–555. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11968185
4. Uldrich AP, Patel O, Cameron G, et al. A semi-invariant Valpha10+ T cell antigen receptor defines a population of natural killer T cells with distinct glycolipid antigen-recognition properties. *Nat Immunol*. 2011;12:616–623. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21666690
5. Park SH, Weiss A, Benlagha K, Kyin T, Teyton L, Bendelac A. The mouse CD1d-restricted repertoire is dominated by a few autoreactive t cell receptor families. *J Exp Med*. 2001;193:893–904. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11304550
6. Calabi F, Jarvis JM, Martin LH, Milstein C. Two classes of CD1 genes. *Eur J Immunol*. 1989;19:285–292. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2467814
7. Miller MM, Wang C, Parisini E, et al. Characterization of two avian MHC-like genes reveals an ancient origin of the CD1 family. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2005;102:8674–8679. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15939884
8. Park S-H, Roark JH, Bendelac A. Tissue specific recognition of mouse CD1 molecules. *J Immunol*. 1998;160:3128–3134. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9531267
9. Roark JH, Park S-H, Jayawardena J, Kavita U, Shannon M, Bendelac A. CD1.1 expression by mouse antigen presenting cells and marginal zone B cells. *J Immunol*. 1998;160:3121–3127. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9531266
10. Jayawardena-Wolf J, Benlagha K, Chiu YH, Mehr R, Bendelac A. CD1d endosomal trafficking is independently regulated by an intrinsic CD1d-encoded tyrosine motif and by the invariant chain. *Immunity*. 2001;15:897–908. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11754812
11. Kang SJ, Cresswell P. Calnexin, calreticulin, and ERp57 cooperate in disulfide bond formation in human CD1d heavy chain. *J Biol Chem*. 2002;277:44838–44844. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12239218
12. Zhu Y, Zhang W, Veerapen N, Besra G, Cresswell P. Calreticulin controls the rate of assembly of CD1d molecules in the endoplasmic reticulum. *J Biol Chem*. 2010;285:38283–38292. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20861015
13. Cox D, Fox L, Tian R, et al. Determination of cellular lipids bound to human CD1d molecules. *PloS One*. 2009;4:e5325. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19415116
14. Muindi K, Cernadas M, Watts GF, et al. Activation state and intracellular trafficking contribute to the repertoire of endogenous glycosphingolipids presented by CD1d [corrected]. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2010;107:3052–3057. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20133624
15. Yuan W, Kang SJ, Evans JE, Cresswell P. Natural lipid ligands associated with human CD1d targeted to different subcellular compartments. *J Immunol*. 2009;182:4784–4791. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19342656
16. Zhou D, Cantu C III, Sagiv Y, et al. Editing of CD1d-bound lipid antigens by endosomal lipid transfer proteins. *Science*. 2004;303:523–527. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14684827
17. Winau F, Schwierzeck V, Hurwitz R, et al. Saposin C is required for lipid presentation by human CD1b. *Nat Immunol*. 2004;5:169–174. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14716313
18. Kang SJ, Cresswell P. Saposins facilitate CD1d-restricted presentation of an exogenous lipid antigen to T cells. *Nat Immunol*. 2004;5:175–181. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14716312
19. Schrantz N, Sagiv Y, Liu Y, Savage PB, Bendelac A, Teyton L. The Niemann-Pick type C2 protein loads isoglobotrihexosylceramide onto CD1d molecules and contributes to the thymic selection of NKT cells. *J Exp Med*. 2007;204:841–852. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17389239
20. de la Salle H, Mariotti S, Angenieux C, et al. Assistance of microbial glycolipid antigen processing by CD1e. *Science*. 2005;310:1321–1324. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16311334
21. Bai L, Sagiv Y, Liu Y, et al. Lysosomal recycling terminates CD1d-mediated presentation of short and polyunsaturated variants of the NKT cell lipid antigen alphaGalCer. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2009;106:10254–10259. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19506241
22. Moody DB. TLR gateways to CD1 function. *Nat Immunol*. 2006;7:811–817. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16855607
23. Kobayashi E, Motoki K, Uchida T, Fukushima H, Koezuka Y. KRN7000, a novel immunomodulator, and its antitumor activities. *Oncol Res*. 1995;7:529–534. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8866665
24. Morita M, Motoki K, Akimoto K, et al. Structure-activity relationship of alpha-galactosylceramides against B16-bearing mice. *J Med Chem*. 1995;38:2176–2187. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7783149
25. Kawano T, Cui J, Koezuka Y, et al. CD1d-restricted and TCR-mediated activation of valpha14 NKT cells by glycosylceramides. *Science*. 1997;278:1626–1629. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9374463
26. Benlagha K, Weiss A, Beavis A, Teyton L, Bendelac A. In vivo identification of glycolipid antigen specific T cells using fluorescent CD1d tetramers. *J Exp Med*. 2000;191:1895–1903. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10839805
27. Matsuda JL, Naidenko OV, Gapin L, et al. Tracking the response of natural killer T cells to a glycolipid antigen using CD1d tetramers [see comments]. *J Exp Med*. 2000;192:741–754. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10974039
28. Brossay L, Chioda M, Burdin N, et al. CD1d-mediated recognition of an alpha-galactosylceramide by natural killer T cells is highly conserved through mammalian evolution. *J Exp Med*. 1998;188:1521–1528. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9782129
29. Liu Y, Goff RD, Zhou D, et al. A modified alpha-galactosyl ceramide for staining and stimulating natural killer T cells. *J Immunol Methods*. 2006;312:34–39. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16647712
30. Kawahara K, Moll H, Knirel YA, Seydel U, Zahringer U. Structural analysis of two glycosphingolipids from the lipopolysaccharide-lacking bacterium Sphingomonas capsulata. *Eur J Biochem*. 2000;267:1837–1846. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10712617
31. Mattner J, Debord KL, Ismail N, et al. Exogenous and endogenous glycolipid antigens activate NKT cells during microbial infections. *Nature*. 2005;434:525–529. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15791258
32. Kinjo Y, Wu D, Kim G, et al. Recognition of bacterial glycosphingolipids by natural killer T cells. *Nature*. 2005;434:520–525. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15791257
33. Kinjo Y, Tupin E, Wu D, et al. Natural killer T cells recognize diacylglycerol antigens from pathogenic bacteria. *Nat Immunol*. 2006;7:978–986. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16921381
34. Kinjo Y, Illarionov P, Vela JL, et al. Invariant natural killer T cells recognize glycolipids from pathogenic Gram-positive bacteria. *Nat Immunol*. 2011;12:966–974. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21892173
35. Bendelac A, Lantz O, Quimby ME, Yewdell JW, Bennink JR, Brutkiewicz RR. CD1 recognition by mouse NK1+ T lymphocytes. *Science*. 1995;268:863–865. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7538697
36. Bendelac A. Positive selection of mouse NK1+ T cells by CD1-expressing cortical thymocytes. *J Exp Med*. 1995;182:2091–2096. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7500054
37. Behar SM, Podrebarac TA, Roy CJ, Wang CR, Brenner MB. Diverse TCRs recognize murine CD1. *J Immunol*. 1999;162:161–167. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9886382
38. Couedel C, Peyrat MA, Brossay L, et al. Diverse CD1d-restricted reactivity patterns of human T cells bearing "invariant" AV24BV11 TCR. *Eur J Immunol*. 1998;28:4391–4397. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9862376
39. Brigl M, Bry L, Kent SC, Gumperz JE, Brenner MB. Mechanism of CD1d-restricted natural killer T cell activation during microbial infection. *Nat Immunol*. 2003;4:1230–1237. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14578883

40. Chiu YH, Jayawardena J, Weiss A, et al. Distinct subsets of CD1d-restricted T cells recognize self-antigens loaded in different cellular compartments [in process citation]. *J Exp Med*. 1999;189:103–110. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9874567
41. Chiu YH, Park SH, Benlagha K, et al. Multiple defects in antigen presentation and T cell development by mice expressing cytoplasmic tail-truncated CD1d. *Nat Immunol*. 2002;3:55–60. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11731798
42. Chen X, Wang X, Keaton JM, et al. Distinct endosomal trafficking requirements for presentation of autoantigens and exogenous lipids by human CD1d molecules. *J Immunol*. 2007;178:6181–6190. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17475845
43. Zhou D, Mattner J, Cantu C III, et al. Lysosomal glycosphingolipid recognition by NKT cells. *Science*. 2004;306:1786–1789. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15539565
44. Wei DG, Curran SA, Savage PB, Teyton L, Bendelac A. Mechanisms imposing the Vbeta bias of Valpha14 natural killer T cells and consequences for microbial glycolipid recognition. *J Exp Med*. 2006;203:1197–1207. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16651387
45. Darmoise A, Teneberg S, Bouzonville L, et al. Lysosomal alpha-galactosidase controls the generation of self lipid antigens for natural killer T cells. *Immunity*. 2010;33:216–228. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20727792
46. Li Y, Thapa P, Hawke D, et al. Immunologic glycosphingolipidomics and NKT cell development in mouse thymus. *J Proteome Res*. 2009;8:2740–2751. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19284783
47. Li Y, Teneberg S, Thapa P, Bendelac A, Levery SB, Zhou D. Sensitive detection of isoglobo and globo series tetraglycosylceramides in human thymus by ion trap mass spectrometry. *Glycobiol*. 2008;18:158–165. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18056651
48. Li Y, Zhou D, Xia C, Wang PG, Levery SB. Sensitive quantitation of isoglo-botriaosylceramide in the presence of isobaric components using electro-spray ionizationion trap mass spectrometry. *Glycobiol* .2008;18:166–176. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18048405
49. Porubsky S, Speak AO, Luckow B, Cerundolo V, Platt FM, Grone HJ. Normal development and function of invariant natural killer T cells in mice with isoglobotrihexosylceramide (iGb3) deficiency. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2007;104:5977–5982. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17372206
50. Christiansen D, Milland J, Mouhtouris E, et al. Humans lack iGb3 due to the absence of functional iGb3-synthase: implications for NKT cell development and transplantation. *PLoS Biol*. 2008;6:e172. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18630988
51. Parekh VV, Singh AK, Wilson MT, et al. Quantitative and qualitative differences in the in vivo response of NKT cells to distinct alpha- and beta-anomeric glycolipids. *J Immunol*. 2004;173:3693–3706. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15356115
52. Brennan PJ, Tatituri RV, Brigl M, et al. Invariant natural killer T cells recognize lipid self antigen induced by microbial danger signals. *Nat Immunol*. 2011;12:1202–1211. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22037601
53. De Libero G, Moran AP, Gober HJ, et al. Bacterial infections promote T cell recognition of self-glycolipids. *Immunity*. 2005;22:763–772. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15963790
54. Chang DH, Deng H, Matthews P, et al. Inflammation-associated lysophospholipids as ligands for CD1d-restricted T cells in human cancer. *Blood*. 2008;112:1308–1316. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18535199
55. Fox LM, Cox DG, Lockridge JL, et al. Recognition of lysophospholipids by human natural killer T lymphocytes. *PLoS Biol*. 2009;7:e1000228. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19859526
56. Zajonc DM, Cantu C III, Mattner J, et al. Structure and function of a potent agonist for the semi-invariant natural killer T cell receptor. *Nat Immunol*. 2005;6:810–818. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16007091
57. Wu D, Zajonc DM, Fujio M, et al. Design of natural killer T cell activators: structure and function of a microbial glycosphingolipid bound to mouse CD1d. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2006;103:3972–3977. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16537470
58. Zajonc DM, Maricic I, Wu D, et al. Structural basis for CD1d presentation of a sulfatide derived from myelin and its implications for autoimmunity. *J Exp Med*. 2005;202:1517–1526. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16314439
59. Borg NA, Wun KS, Kjer-Nielsen L, et al. CD1d-lipid-antigen recognition by the semi-invariant NKT T-cell receptor. *Nature*. 2007;448:44–49. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17581592
60. Wang J, Li Y, Kinjo Y, et al. Lipid binding orientation within CD1d affects recognition of Borrelia burgorferi antigens by NKT cells. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2010;107:1535–1540. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20080535
61. Li Y, Girardi E, Wang J, et al. The Valpha14 invariant natural killer T cell TCR forces microbial glycolipids and CD1d into a conserved binding mode. *J Exp Med*. 2010;207:2383–2393. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20921281
62. Pellicci DG, Clarke AJ, Patel O, et al. Recognition of beta-linked self glycolipids mediated by natural killer T cell antigen receptors. *Nat Immunol*. 2011;12:827–833. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21804559
63. Pellicci DG, Hammond KJ, Uldrich AP, Baxter AG, Smyth MJ, Godfrey DI. A natural killer T (NKT) cell developmental pathway involving a thymus-dependent NK1.1(−)CD4(+) CD1d-dependent precursor stage. *J Exp Med*. 2002;195:835–844. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11927628
64. Benlagha K, Wei DG, Veiga J, Teyton L, Bendelac A. Characterization of the early stages in thymic NKT cell development. *J Exp Med*. 2005;202:485–492. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16087715
65. Bezbradica JS, Hill T, Stanic AK, Van Kaer L, Joyce S. Commitment toward the natural T (iNKT) cell lineage occurs at the CD4+8+ stage of thymic ontogeny. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2005;102:5114–5119. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15792999
66. Egawa T, Eberl G, Taniuchi I, et al. Genetic evidence supporting selection of the Valpha14i NKT cell lineage from double-positive thymocyte precursors. *Immunity*. 2005;22:705–716. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15963785
67. D'Cruz LM, Knell J, Fujimoto JK, Goldrath AW. An essential role for the transcription factor HEB in thymocyte survival, Tcra rearrangement and the development of natural killer T cells. *Nat Immunol*. 2010;11:240–249. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20154672
68. Schumann J, Voyle RB, Wei BY, MacDonald HR. Cutting edge: influence of the TCR V beta domain on the avidity of CD1d:alpha-galactosylceramide binding by invariant V alpha 14 NKT cells. *J Immunol*. 2003;170:5815–5819. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12794105
69. Chun T, Page MJ, Gapin L, et al. CD1d-expressing dendritic cells but not thymic epithelial cells can mediate negative selection of NKT cells. *J Exp Med*. 2003;197:907–918. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12682110
70. Xu H, Chun T, Colmone A, Nguyen H, Wang CR. Expression of CD1d under the control of a MHC class Ia promoter skews the development of NKT cells, but not CD8+ T cells. *J Immunol*. 2003;171:4105–4112. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14530332
71. Schumann J, Mycko MP, Dellabona P, Casorati G, MacDonald HR. Cutting edge: influence of the TCR Vbeta domain on the selection of semi-invariant NKT cells by endogenous ligands. *J Immunol*. 2006;176:2064–2068. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16455960
72. Dose M, Sleckman BP, Han J, Bredemeyer AL, Bendelac A, Gounari F. Intrathymic proliferation wave essential for Valpha14+ natural killer T cell development depends on c-Myc. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2009;106:8641–8646. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19423665
73. Mycko MP, Ferrero I, Wilson A, et al. Selective requirement for c-Myc at an early stage of V(alpha)14i NKT cell development. *J Immunol*. 2009;182:4641–4648. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19342639
74. Crowe NY, Coquet JM, Berzins SP, et al. Differential antitumor immunity mediated by NKT cell subsets in vivo. *J Exp Med*. 2005;202:1279–1288. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16275765
75. Lee PT, Benlagha K, Teyton L, Bendelac A. Distinct functional lineages of human valpha24 natural killer T cells. *J Exp Med*. 2002;195:637–641. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11877486

76. Gumperz JE, Miyake S, Yamamura T, Brenner MB. Functionally distinct subsets of CD1d-restricted natural killer T cells revealed by CD1d tetramer staining. *J Exp Med*. 2002;195:625–636. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11877485
77. Stetson DB, Mohrs M, Reinhardt RL, et al. Constitutive cytokine mRNAs mark natural killer (NK) and NK T cells poised for rapid effector function. *J Exp Med*. 2003;198:1069–1076. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14530376
78. Park SH, Benlagha K, Lee D, Balish E, Bendelac A. Unaltered phenotype, tissue distribution and function of Valpha14(+) NKT cells in germ-free mice. *Eur J Immunol*. 2000;30:620–625. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10671219
79. Allende ML, Zhou D, Kalkofen DN, et al. S1P1 receptor expression regulates emergence of NKT cells in peripheral tissues. *FASEB J*. 2008;22:307–315. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17785606
80. McNab FW, Berzins SP, Pellicci DG, et al. The influence of CD1d in postselection NKT cell maturation and homeostasis. *J Immunol*. 2005; 175:3762–3768. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16148122
81. Berzins SP, Cochrane AD, Pellicci DG, Smyth MJ, Godfrey DI. Limited correlation between human thymus and blood NKT cell content revealed by an ontogeny study of paired tissue samples. *Eur J Immunol*. 2005;35:1399–1407. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15816002
82. Milpied P, Massot B, Renand A, et al. IL-17-producing invariant NKT cells in lymphoid organs are recent thymic emigrants identified by neuropilin-1 expression. *Blood*. 2011;118:2993–3002. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21653940
83. Bendelac A, Killeen N, Littman D, Schwartz RH. A subset of CD4 + thymocytes selected by MHC class I molecules. *Science*. 1994;263:1774–1778. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7907820
84. Ohteki T, MacDonald HR. Major histocompatibility complex class I related molecules control the development of CD4+ 8- and CD4–8- subsets of natural killer 1.1+ T cell receptor-a/b+ cells in the liver of mice. *J Exp Med*. 1994;180:699–704. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8046344
85. Coles MC, Raulet DH. NK1.1 + T cells in the liver arise in the thymus and are selected by interactions with class I molecules on CD4 +CD8+ cells. *J Immunol*. 2000;164:2412–2418. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10679077
86. Forestier C, Park SH, Wei D, Benlagha K, Teyton L, Bendelac A. T cell development in mice expressing CD1d directed by a classical MHC class II promoter. *J Immunol*. 2003;171:4096–4104. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14530331
87. Wei DG, Lee H, Park SH, et al. Expansion and long-range differentiation of the NKT cell lineage in mice expressing CD1d exclusively on cortical thymocytes. *J Exp Med*. 2005;202:239–248. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16027237
88. Zimmer MI, Colmone A, Felio K, Xu H, Ma A, Wang CR. A cell-type specific CD1d expression program modulates invariant NKT cell development and function. *J Immunol*. 2006;176:1421–1430. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16424169
89. Bai L, Constantinides MG, Thomas SY, et al. Distinct antigen-presenting cells expalin the cytokine bias of -a-galactosylceramide variants in vivo. *J Immunol*. 2012188(7):3053–3061. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22393151
90. Griewank K, Borowski C, Rietdijk S, et al. Homotypic interactions mediated by Slamf1 and Slamf6 receptors control NKT cell lineage development. *Immunity*. 2007;27:751–762. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18031695
91. Gadue P, Stein PL. NK T cell precursors exhibit differential cytokine regulation and require Itk for efficient maturation. *J Immunol*. 2002;169:2397–2406. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12193707
92. Eberl G, Lowin-Kropf B, MacDonald HR. Cutting edge: NKT cell development is selectively impaired in Fyndeficient mice. *J Immunol*. 1999;163:4091–4094. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10510341
93. Pasquier B, Yin L, Fondaneche MC, et al. Defective NKT cell development in mice and humans lacking the adapter SAP, the X-linked lymphoproliferative syndrome gene product. *J Exp Med*. 2005;201:695–701. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15738056
94. Nichols KE, Hom J, Gong SY, et al. Regulation of NKT cell development by SAP, the protein defective in XLP. *Nat Med*. 2005;11:340–345. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15711562
95. Chung B, Aoukaty A, Dutz J, Terhorst C, Tan R. Signaling lymphocytic activation molecule-associated protein controls NKT cell functions. *J Immunol*. 2005;174:3153–3157. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15749842
96. Cannons JL, Qi H, Lu KT, et al. Optimal germinal center responses require a multistage T cell:B cell adhesion process involving integrins, SLAM-associated protein, and CD84. *Immunity*. 2010;32:253–265. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20153220
97. Jordan MA, Fletcher JM, Jose R, et al. Role of SLAM in NKT cell development revealed by transgenic complementation in NOD mice. *J Immunol*. 2011;186:3953–3965. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21357537
98. Hu T, Gimferrer I, Simmons A, Wiest D, Alberola-Ila J. The Ras/ MAPK pathway is required for generation of iNKT cells. *PloS One*. 2011;6:e19890.
99. Lazarevic V, Zullo AJ, Schweitzer MN, et al. The gene encoding early growth response 2, a target of the transcription factor NFAT, is required for the development and maturation of natural killer T cells. *Nat Immunol*. 2009;10:306–313. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19169262
100. Seiler MP, Mathew R, Liszewski MK, et al. Elevated and sustained expression of the transcription factors Egr1 and Egr2 controls NKT lineage differentiation in response to TCR signaling. *Nat Immunol*. 2012;13(3):264–271. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22306690
101. Shao H, Kono DH, Chen LY, Rubin EM, Kaye J. Induction of the early growth response (Egr) family of transcription factors during thymic selection. *J Exp Med*. 1997;185:731–744. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9034151
102. Carter JH, Lefebvre JM, Wiest DL, Tourtellotte WG. Redundant role for early growth response transcriptional regulators in thymocyte differentiation and survival. *J Immunol*. 2007;178:6796–6805. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17513727
103. Lawson VJ, Weston K, Maurice D. Early growth response 2 regulates the survival of thymocytes during positive selection. *Eur J Immunol*. 2010;40:232–241. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19877014
104. Savage AK, Constantinides MG, Han J, et al. The transcription factor PLZF directs the effector program of the NKT cell lineage. *Immunity*. 2008;29:391–403. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18703361
105. Veillette A, Dong Z, Perez-Quintero LA, Zhong MC, Cruz-Munoz ME. Importance and mechanism of 'switch' function of SAP family adapters. *Immunol Rev*. 2009;232:229–239. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19909367
106. Cannons JL, Yu LJ, Hill B, et al. SAP regulates T(H)2 differentiation and PKC-theta-mediated activation of NF-kappaB1. *Immunity*. 2004;21:693–706. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15539155
107. Schmidt-Supprian M, Tian J, Grant EP, et al. Differential dependence of CD4+CD25+ regulatory and natural killer-like T cells on signals leading to NF-kappaB activation. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2004;101:4566–4571. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15070758
108. Stanic AK, Bezbradica JS, Park JJ, Van Kaer L, Boothby MR, Joyce S. Cutting edge: the ontogeny and function of Va14Ja18 natural T lymphocytes require signal processing by protein kinase C theta and NF- kappa B. *J Immunol*. 2004;172:4667–4671. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15067039
109. Li W, SofiMH, Rietdijk S, Wang N, Terhorst C, Chang CH. The SLAM-associated protein signaling pathway is required for development of CD4+ T cells selected by homotypic thymocyte interaction. *Immunity*. 2007;27:763–774. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18031696
110. Lee YJ, Jeon YK, Kang BH, et al. Generation of PLZF+ CD4+ T cells via MHC class II-dependent thymocyte-thymocyte interaction is a physiological process in humans. *J Exp Med*. 2010;207:237–246. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20038602
111. Choi EY, Jung KC, Park HJ, et al. Thymocyte-thymocyte interaction for efficient positive selection and maturation of CD4 T cells. *Immunity*. 2005;23:387–396. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16226504

112. Li W, Kim MG, Gourley TS, McCarthy BP, Sant'Angelo DB, Chang CH. An alternate pathway for CD4 T cell development: thymocyte-expressed MHC class II selects a distinct T cell population. *Immunity*. 2005;23:375–386. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16226503
113. Wang L, Carr T, Xiong Y, et al. The sequential activity of Gata3 and Thpok is required for the differentiation of CD1d-restricted CD4+ NKT cells. *Eur J Immunol*. 2010;40:2385–2390. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20706986
114. Engel I, Hammond K, Sullivan BA, et al. Co-receptor choice by V alpha14i NKT cells is driven by Th-POK expression rather than avoidance of CD8-mediated negative selection. *J Exp Med*. 2010;207:1015–1029. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20404101
115. Sarafova SD, Erman B, Yu Q, et al. Modulation of coreceptor transcription during positive selection dictates lineage fate independently of TCR/coreceptor specificity. *Immunity*. 2005;23:75–87. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16039581
116. Williams JA, Lumsden JM, Yu X, et al. Regulation of thymic NKT cell development by the B7-CD28 costimulatory pathway. *J Immunol*. 2008;181:907–917. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18606642
117. Zheng X, Zhang H, Yin L, Wang CR, Liu Y, Zheng P. Modulation of NKT cell development by B7-CD28 interaction: an expanding horizon for costimulation. *PloS One*. 2008;3:e2703. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18628995
118. Kovalovsky D, Uche OU, Eladad S, et al. The BTB-zinc finger transcriptional regulator PLZF controls the development of invariant natural killer T cell effector functions. *Nat Immunol*. 2008;9:1055–1064. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18660811
119. Barna M, Hawe N, Niswander L, PandolfiPP. Plzf regulates limb and axial skeletal patterning. *Nat Genet*. 2000;25:166–172. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10835630
120. Buaas FW, Kirsh AL, Sharma M, et al. Plzf is required in adult male germ cells for stem cell self-renewal. *Nat Genet*. 2004;36:647–652. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15156142
121. Savage AK, Constantinides MG, Bendelac A. Promyelocytic leukemia zinc finger turns on the effector T cell program without requirement for agonist TCR signaling. *J Immunol*. 2011;186:5801–5806. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21478405
122. Kovalovsky D, Alonzo ES, Uche OU, Eidson M, Nichols KE, Sant'Angelo DB. PLZF induces the spontaneous acquisition of memory/effector functions in T cells independently of NKT cell-related signals. *J Immunol*. 2010;184:6746–6755. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20495068
123. Raberger J, Schebesta A, Sakaguchi S, et al. The transcriptional regulator PLZF induces the development of CD44 high memory phenotype T cells. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2008;105:17919–17924. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19004789
124. Constantinides MG, Picard D, Savage AK, Bendelac A. A naive-like population of human CD1d-restricted T cells expressing intermediate levels of promyelocytic leukemia zinc finger. *J Immunol* .2011;187:309–315. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21632718
125. Intlekofer AM, Takemoto N, Wherry EJ, et al. Effector and memory CD8 + T cell fate coupled by T-bet and eomesodermin. *Nat Immunol*. 2005;6:1236–1244. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16273099
126. Matsuda JL, Zhang Q, Ndonye R, Richardson SK, Howell AR, Gapin L. T-bet concomitantly controls migration, survival, and effector functions during the development of Valpha14i NKT cells. *Blood*. 2006;107:2797–2805. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16357323
127. Townsend MJ, Weinmann AS, Matsuda JL, et al. T-bet regulates the terminal maturation and homeostasis of NK and Valpha14i NKT cells. *Immunity*. 2004;20:477–494. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15084276
128. Lacorazza HD, Miyazaki Y, Di Cristofano A, et al. The ETS protein MEF plays a critical role in perforin gene expression and the development of natural killer and NK-T cells. *Immunity*. 2002;17:437–449 http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12387738
129. Kim PJ, Pai SY, Brigl M, Besra GS, Gumperz J, Ho IC. GATA-3 regulates the development and function of invariant NKT cells. *J Immunol*. 2006;177:6650–6659. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17082577
130. Doisne JM, Bartholin L, Yan KP, et al. iNKT cell development is or-chestrated by different branches of TGF-beta signaling. *J Exp Med*. 2009;206:1365–1378. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19451264
131. Stanic AK, Bezbradica JS, Park JJ, et al. NF-kappa B controls cell fate specification, survival, and molecular differentiation of immunoregulatory natural T lymphocytes. *J Immunol*. 2004;172:2265–2273. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14764695
132. Stankovic S, Gugasyan R, Kyparissoudis K, et al. Distinct roles in NKT cell maturation and function for the different transcription factors in the classical NF-kappaB pathway. *Immunol Cell Biol*. 2011;89:294–303. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20697425
133. Sivakumar V, Hammond KJ, Howells N, Pfeffer K, Weih F. Differential requirement for Rel/nuclear factor kappa B family members in natural killer T cell development. *J Exp Med*. 2003;197:1613–1621. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12810684
134. Vallabhapurapu S, Powolny-Budnicka I, Riemann M, et al. Rel/NF- kappaB family member RelA regulates NK1.1- to NK1.1+ transition as well as IL-15-induced expansion of NKT cells. *Eur J Immunol*. 2008;38:3508–3519. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19003818
135. Iizuka K, Chaplin DD, Wang Y, et al. Requirement for membrane lymphotoxin in natural killer cell development. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1999;96:6336–6340. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10339588
136. Franki AS, Van Beneden K, Dewint P, et al. A unique lymphotoxin {alpha}beta-dependent pathway regulates thymic emigration of V{alpha}14 invariant natural killer T cells. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2006;103:9160–9165. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16751279
137. Fedeli M, Napolitano A, Wong MP, et al. Dicer-dependent microRNA pathway controls invariant NKT cell development. *J Immunol*. 2009;183:2506–2512. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19625646
138. Zhou L, Seo KH, He HZ, et al. Tie2cre-induced inactivation of the miRNA-processing enzyme Dicer disrupts invariant NKT cell development. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2009;106:10266–10271. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19509335
139. Seo KH, Zhou L, Meng D, Xu J, Dong Z, Mi QS. Loss of microRNAs in thymus perturbs invariant NKT cell development and function. *Cell Mol Immunol*. 2010;7:447–453. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20852654
140. Bezman NA, Chakraborty T, Bender T, Lanier LL. miR-150 regulates the development of NK and iNKT cells. *J Exp Med*. 2011;208:2717–2731. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22124110
141. Gerber DJ, Azuara V, Levraud JP, Huang SY, Lembezat MP, Pereira P. IL-4-producing gamma delta T cells that express a very restricted TCR repertoire are preferentially localized in liver and spleen. *J Immunol*. 1999;163:3076–3082. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10477572
142. Kreslavsky T, Savage AK, Hobbs R, et al. TCR-inducible PLZF transcription factor required for innate phenotype of a subset of gammadelta T cells with restricted TCR diversity. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2009;106:12453–12458. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19617548
143. Alonzo ES, Gottschalk RA, Das J, et al. Development of promy-elocytic zinc finger and ThPOK-expressing innate gamma delta T cells is controlled by strength of TCR signaling and Id3. *J Immunol*. 2010;184:1268–1279. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20038637
144. Felices M, Yin CC, Kosaka Y, Kang J, Berg LJ. Tec kinase Itk in gammadeltaT cells is pivotal for controlling IgE production in vivo. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2009;106:8308–8313. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19416854
145. Dusseaux M, Martin E, Serriari N, et al. Human MAIT cells are xenobiotic-resistant, tissue-targeted, CD161hi IL-17-secreting T cells. *Blood*. 2011;117:1250–1259. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21084709
146. Atherly LO, Lucas JA, Felices M, Yin CC, Reiner SL, Berg LJ. The tec family tyrosine kinases itk and rlk regulate the development of conventional CD8(+) T cells. *Immunity*. 2006;25:79–91. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16860759
147. Broussard C, Fleischecker C, Horai R, et al. Altered development of CD8(+) T cell lineages in mice deficient for the tec kinases itk and rlk. *Immunity*. 2006;25:93–104. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16860760

148. Weinreich MA, Odumade OA, Jameson SC, Hogquist KA. T cells expressing the transcription factor PLZF regulate the development of memory-like CD8+ T cells. *Nat Immunol*. 2010;11:709–716. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20601952
149. Verykokakis M, Boos MD, Bendelac A, Adams EJ, Pereira P, Kee BL. Inhibitor of DNA binding 3 limits development of murine slam-associated adaptor protein-dependent "innate" gammadelta T cells. *PloS One*. 2010;5:e9303. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20174563
150. Verykokakis M, Boos MD, Bendelac A, Kee BL. SAP protein-dependent natural killer T-like cells regulate the development of CD8(+) T cells with innate lymphocyte characteristics. *Immunity*. 2010;33:203–215. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20674402
151. Fukuyama T, Kasper LH, Boussouar F, Jeevan T, van Deursen J, Brindle PK. Histone acetyltransferase CBP is vital to demarcate conventional and innate CD8+ T-cell development. *Mol Cell Biol*. 2009;29:3894–3904. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19433445
152. Weinreich MA, Takada K, Skon C, Reiner SL, Jameson SC, Hogquist KA. KLF2 transcription-factor deficiency in T cells results in unrestrained cytokine production and upregulation of bystander chemokine receptors. *Immunity*. 2009;31:122–130. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19592277
153. Lai D, Zhu J, Wang T, et al. KLF13 sustains thymic memory-like CD8(+) T cells in BALB/c mice by regulating IL-4-generating invariant natural killer T cells. *J Exp Med*. 2011;208:1093–1103. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21482696
154. Ohteki T, Ho S, Suzuki H, Mak TW, Ohashi PS. Role for IL-15/IL-15 receptor beta-chain in natural killer 1.1+ T cell receptor-alpha beta+ cell development. *J Immunol*. 1997;159:5931–5935. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9550390
155. Kennedy MK, Glaccum M, Brown SN, et al. Reversible defects in natural killer and memory CD8 T cell lineages in interleukin 15-deficient mice [see comments]. *J Exp Med*. 2000;191:771–780. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10704459
156. Matsuda JL, Gapin L, Sidobre S, et al. Homeostasis of V alpha 14i NKT cells. *Nat Immunol*. 2002;3:966–974. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12244311
157. Castillo EF, Acero LF, Stonier SW, Zhou D, Schluns KS. Thymic and peripheral microenvironments differentially mediate development and maturation of iNKT cells by IL-15 transpresentation. *Blood*. 2010;116:2494–2503. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20581314
158. Geissmann F, Cameron TO, Sidobre S, et al. Intravascular immune surveillance by CXCR6+ NKT cells patrolling liver sinusoids. *PLoS Biol*. 2005;3:e113. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15799695
159. Wei B, Wingender G, Fujiwara D, et al. Commensal microbiota and CD8+ T cells shape the formation of invariant NKT cells. *J Immunol*. 2010;184:1218–1226. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20048124
160. Nieuwenhuis EE, Matsumoto T, Lindenbergh D, et al. Cd1d-dependent regulation of bacterial colonization in the intestine of mice. *J Clin Invest*. 2009;119:1241–1250. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19349688
161. Thomas SY, Scanlon ST, Griewank KG, et al. PLZF induces an intravascular surveillance program mediated by long-lived LFA-1-ICAM-1 interactions. *J Exp Med*. 2011;208:1179–1188. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21624939
162. Paust S, Gill HS, Wang BZ, et al. Critical role for the chemokine receptor CXCR6 in NK cell-mediated antigen-specific memory of haptens and viruses. *Nat Immunol*. 2010;11:1127–1135. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20972432
163. Lee WY, Moriarty TJ, Wong CH, et al. An intravascular immune response to Borrelia burgdorferi involves Kupffer cells and iNKT cells. *Nat Immunol*. 2010;11:295–302. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20972432
164. Doisne JM, Becourt C, Amniai L, et al. Skin and peripheral lymph node invariant NKT cells are mainly retinoic acid receptor-related orphan receptor (gamma)t+ and respond preferentially under inflammatory conditions. *J Immunol*. 2009;183:2142–2149. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19587013
165. Doisne JM, Soulard V, Becourt C, et al. Cutting edge: crucial role of IL-1 and IL-23 in the innate IL-17 response of peripheral lymph node NK1.1- invariant NKT cells to bacteria. *J Immunol*. 2011;186:662–666. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21169541
166. Coquet JM, Chakravarti S, Kyparissoudis K, et al. Diverse cytokine production by NKT cell subsets and identification of an IL-17-producing CD4-NK1.1- NKT cell population. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2008;105:11287–11292. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18685112
167. Terashima A, Watarai H, Inoue S, et al. A novel subset of mouse NKT cells bearing the IL-17 receptor B responds to IL-25 and contributes to airway hyperreactivity. *J Exp Med*. 2008;205:27272733. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19015310
168. Tomura M, Yu WG, Ahn HJ, et al. A novel function of Valpha14+CD4+NKT cells: stimulation of IL-12 production by antigen-presenting cells in the Innate Immune System. *J Immunol*. 1999;163:93–101. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10384104
169. Kitamura H, Iwakabe K, Yahata T, et al. The natural killer T (NKT) cell ligand alpha-galactosylceramide demonstrates its immunopotentiating effect by inducing interleukin (IL)- 12 production by dendritic cells and IL-12 receptor expression on NKT cells. *J Exp Med*. 1999;189: 11211128. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10190903
170. Semmling V, Lukacs-Kornek V, Thaiss CA, et al. Alternative cross-priming through CCL17-CCR4-mediated attraction of CTLs toward NKT cell-licensed DCs. *Nat Immunol*. 2010;11:313–320. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20190758
171. Carnaud C, Lee D, Donnars O, et al. Cross-talk between cells of the innate immune system: NKT cells rapidly activate NK cells. *J Immunol (Cutting Edge)*. 1999;163:4647–4650. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10528160
172. Eberl G, MacDonald HR. Selective induction of NK cell proliferation and cytotoxicity by activated NKT cells. *Eur J Immunol*. 2000;30:985–992. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10760785
173. Gonzalez-Aseguinolaza G, Van Kaer L, Bergmann CC, et al. Natural killer T cell ligand alpha-galactosylceramide enhances protective immunity induced by malaria vaccines. *J Exp Med*. 2002;195:617–624. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11877484
174. Fujii S, Shimizu K, Smith C, Bonifaz L, Steinman RM. Activation of natural killer T cells by alpha-galactosylceramide rapidly induces the full maturation of dendritic cells in vivo and thereby acts as an adjuvant for combined CD4 and CD8 T cell immunity to a coadministered protein. *J Exp Med*. 2003;198: 267279. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12874260
175. Fujii S, Liu K, Smith C, Bonito AJ, Steinman RM. The linkage of innate to adaptive immunity via maturing dendritic cells in vivo requires CD40 ligation in addition to antigen presentation and CD80/86 co-stimulation. *J Exp Med*. 2004;199:1607–1618. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15197224
176. Silk JD, Hermans IF, Gileadi U, et al. Utilizing the adjuvant properties of CD1d-dependent NK T cells in T cell-mediated immunotherapy. *J Clin Invest*. 2004;114:1800–1811. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15599405
177. Miyamoto K, Miyake S, Yamamura T. A synthetic glycolipid prevents autoimmune encephalomyelitis by inducing TH2 bias of natural killer T cells. *Nature*. 2001;413:531–534. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11586362
178. Goff RD, Gao Y, Mattner J, et al. Effects of lipid chain lengths in alpha-galactosylceramides on cytokine release by natural killer T cells. *J Am Chem Soc*. 2004;126:13602–13603. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15493902
179. Yu KO, Im JS, Molano A, et al. Modulation of CD1d-restricted NKT cell responses by using N-acyl variants of alpha-galactosylceramides. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2005;102:3383–3388. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15722411
180. Oki S, Chiba A, Yamamura T, Miyake S. The clinical implication and molecular mechanism of preferential IL-4 production by modified glycolipid-stimulated NKT cells. *J Clin Invest*. 2004;113:1631–1640. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15173890
181. Wun KS, Cameron G, Patel O, et al. A molecular basis for the exquisite CD1d-restricted antigen specificity and functional responses of natural killer T cells. *Immunity*. 2011;34:327–339. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21376639
182. Im JS, Arora P, Bricard G, et al. Kinetics and cellular site of glyco-lipid loading control the outcome of natural killer T cell activation. *Immunity*. 2009;30:888–898. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19538930

183. Eberl G, MacDonald HR. Rapid death and regeneration of NKT cells in anti-CD3epsilon- or IL-12- treated mice: a major role for bone marrow in NKT cell homeostasis. *Immunity*. 1998;9:345–353. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9768754
184. Uldrich AP, Crowe NY, Kyparissoudis K, et al. NKT cell stimulation with glycolipid antigen in vivo: costimulation-dependent expansion, Bim-dependent contraction, and hyporesponsiveness to further antigenic challenge. *J Immunol*. 2005;175:3092–3101. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16116198
185. Parekh VV, Wilson MT, Olivares-Villagomez D, et al. Glycolipid antigen induces long-term natural killer T cell anergy in mice. *J Clin Invest*. 2005;115:2572–2583. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16138194
186. Wang J, Cheng L, Wondimu Z, Swain M, Santamaria P, Yang Y. Cutting edge: CD28 engagement releases antigen-activated invariant NKT cells from the inhibitory effects of PD-1. *J Immunol*. 2009;182:6644–6647. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19454657
187. Parekh VV, Lalani S, Kim S, et al. PD-1/PD-L blockade prevents anergy induction and enhances the anti-tumor activities of glycolipid-activated invariant NKT cells. *J Immunol*. 2009;182:2816–2826. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19234176
188. Fujii S, Shimizu K, Kronenberg M, Steinman RM. Prolonged IFN-gamma-producing NKT response induced with alpha-galactosylce-ramide-loaded DCs. *Nat Immunol*. 2002;3:867–874. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12154358
189. Chang DH, Osman K, Connolly J, et al. Sustained expansion of NKT cells and antigen-specific T cells after injection of alpha-galactosyl-ceramide loaded mature dendritic cells in cancer patients. *J Exp Med*. 2005;201:1503–1517. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15867097
190. Thapa P, Zhang G, Xia C, et al. Nanoparticle formulated alpha-galactosylceramide activates NKT cells without inducing anergy. *Vaccine*. 2009;27:3484–3488. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19200815
191. Tonti E, Galli G, Malzone C, Abrignani S, Casorati G, Dellabona P. NKT-cell help to B lymphocytes can occur independently of cognate interaction. *Blood* .2009;113:370–376. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18832653
192. Lang GA, Exley MA, Lang ML. The CD1d-binding glycolipid alpha-galactosylceramide enhances humoral immunity to T-dependent and T-independent antigen in a CD1d-dependent manner. *Immunol*. 2006; 119:116–125. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16792697
193. Galli G, Nuti S, Tavarini S, et al. CD1d-restricted help to B cells by human invariant natural killer T lymphocytes. *J Exp Med*. 2003;197: 1051–1057. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12695492
194. Leadbetter EA, Brigl M, Illarionov P, et al. NK T cells provide lipid antigen-specific cognate help for B cells. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2008; 105:8339–8344. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18550809
195. Barral P, Eckl-Dorna J, Harwood NE, et al. B cell receptor-mediated uptake of CD1d-restricted antigen augments antibody responses by recruiting invariant NKT cell help in vivo. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2008;105:8345–8350. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18550831
196. Chang PP, Barral P, Fitch J, et al. Identification of Bcl-6-dependent follicular helper NKT cells that provide cognate help for B cell responses. *Nat Immunol*. 2012;13:35–43. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22120117
197. King IL, Fortier A, Tighe M, et al. Invariant natural killer T cells direct B cell responses to cognate lipid antigen in an IL-21-dependent manner. *Nat Immunol*. 2012;13:44–50. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22120118
198. Mattner J, Savage PB, Leung P, et al. Liver autoimmunity triggered by microbial activation of natural killer T cells. *Cell Host Microbe*. 2008;3:304–315. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18474357
199. Oliver AM, Martin F, Gartland GL, Carter RH, Kearney JF. Marginal zone B cells exhibit unique activation, proliferative and immunoglobulin secretory responses. *Eur J Immunol*. 1997;27:2366–2374. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9341782
200. Muppidi JR, Arnon TI, Bronevetsky Y, et al. Cannabinoid receptor 2 positions and retains marginal zone B cells within the splenic marginal zone. *J Exp Med*. 2011;208:1941–1948. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21875957
201. Barral P, Polzella P, Bruckbauer A, et al. CD169(+) macrophages present lipid antigens to mediate early activation of iNKT cells in lymph nodes. *Nat Immunol*. 2010;11:303–312. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20228797
202. Terabe M, Matsui S, Noben-Trauth N, et al. NKT cell-mediated repression of tumor immunosurveillance by IL-13 and the IL-4R-STAT6 pathway. *Nat Immunol*. 2000;1:515–520. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11101874
203. Terabe M, Swann J, Ambrosino E, et al. A nonclassical non-Valpha-14Jalpha18 CD1d-restricted (type II) NKT cell is sufficient for down-regulation of tumor immunosurveillance. *J Exp Med*. 2005;202:1627–1633. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16365146
204. De Santo C, Salio M, Masri SH, et al. Invariant NKT cells reduce the immunosuppressive activity of influenza A virus-induced myeloid-derived suppressor cells in mice and humans. *J Clin Invest*. 2008; 118(12):4036–4048. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19033672
205. Kawasaki S, Moriguchi R, Sekiya K, et al. The cell envelope structure of the lipopolysaccharide-lacking gram-negative bacterium Sphingomonas paucimobilis. *J Bacteriol*. 1994;176:284–290. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8288520
206. Sriram V, Du W, Gervay-Hague J, Brutkiewicz RR. Cell wall glycosphingolipids of Sphingomonas paucimobilis are CD1d-specific ligands for NKT cells. *Eur J Immunol*. 2005;35:1692–1701. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15915536
207. Wu D, Xing GW, Poles MA, et al. Bacterial glycolipids and analogs as antigens for CD1d-restricted NKT cells. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2005; 102:1351–1356. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15665086
208. Brigl M, Tatituri RV, Watts GF, et al. Innate and cytokine-driven signals, rather than microbial antigens, dominate in natural killer T cell activation during microbial infection. *J Exp Med*. 2011;208:1163–1177. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21555485
209. Tupin E, Benhnia MR, Kinjo Y, et al. NKT cells prevent chronic joint inflammation after infection with Borrelia burgdorferi. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2008;105:19863–19868. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19060201
210. Cui J, Shin T, Kawano T, et al. Requirement for Valpha14 NKT cells in IL-12-mediated rejection of tumors. *Science*. 1997;278:1623–1626. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9374462
211. Park SH, Kyin T, Bendelac A, Carnaud C. The contribution of NKT cells, NK cells, and other gamma-chain-dependent non-T non-B cells to IL-12-mediated rejection of tumors. *J Immunol*. 2003;170:1197–1201. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12538676
212. Nieuwenhuis EE, Matsumoto T, Exley M, et al. CD1d-dependent macrophage-mediated clearance of Pseudomonas aeruginosa from lung. *Nat Med*. 2002;8:588–593. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12042809
213. Muhlen KA, Schumann J, Wittke F, et al. NK cells, but not NKT cells, are involved in Pseudomonas aeruginosa exotoxin A-induced hepatotoxicity in mice. *J Immunol*. 2004;172:3034–3041. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14978108
214. Dieli F, Sireci G, Russo D, et al. Resistance of natural killer T cell-deficient mice to systemic Shwartzman reaction. *J Exp Med*. 2000;192:1645– 1652. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11104806
215. Emoto M, Miyamoto M, Yoshizawa I, et al. Critical role of NK cells rather than V alpha 14(+)NKT cells in lipopolysaccharide-induced lethal shock in mice. *J Immunol*. 2002;169:1426–1432. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12133968
216. Schofield L, McConville MJ, Hansen D, et al. CD1d-restricted immunoglobulin G formation to GPI-anchored antigens mediated by NKT cells. *Science*. 1999;283:225–229. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9880256
217. Molano A, Park SH, Chiu YH, Nosseir S, Bendelac A, Tsuji M. Cutting edge: the IgG response to the circumsporozoite protein is MHC class II-dependent and CD1d-independent: exploring the role of GPIs in NK T cell activation and antimalarial responses. *J Immunol*. 2000;164:5005–5009. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10799852

218. Romero JF, Eberl G, MacDonald H, Corradin G. CD1d-restricted NK T cells are dispensable for specific antibody responses and protective immunity against liver stage malaria infection in mice. *Parasite Immunol*. 2001;23:267–269. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11309137
219. Mallevaey T, Zanetta JP, Faveeuw C, et al. Activation of invariant NKT cells by the helminth parasite Schistosoma mansoni. *J Immunol*. 2006;176:2476–2485. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16456008
220. Ilyinskii PO, Wang R, Balk SP, Exley MA. CD1d mediates T-cell-dependent resistance to secondary infection with encephalomyocarditis virus (EMCV) in vitro and immune response to EMCV infection in vivo. *J Virol*. 2006;80:7146–7158. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16809320
221. Huber S, Sartini D, Exley M. Role of CD1d in coxsackievirus B3-induced myocarditis. *J Immunol*. 2003;170:3147–3153. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12626572
222. Paget C, Ivanov S, Fontaine J, et al. Potential role of invariant NKT cells in the control of pulmonary inflammation and CD8+ T cell response during acute influenza A virus H3N2 pneumonia. *J Immunol*. 2011;186:5590–5602. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21490153
223. De Santo C, Salio M, Masri SH, et al. Invariant NKT cells reduce the immunosuppressive activity of influenza A virus-induced myeloid-derived suppressor cells in mice and humans. *J Clin Invest*. 2008;118:4036–4048. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19033672
224. de Lalla C, Galli G, Aldrighetti L, et al. Production of profibrotic cytokines by invariant NKT cells characterizes cirrhosis progression in chronic viral hepatitis. *J Immunol*. 2004;173:1417–1425. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15240738
225. Durante-Mangoni E, Wang R, Shaulov A, et al. Hepatic CD1d expression in hepatitis C virus infection and recognition by resident proinflammatory CD1d-reactive T cells. *J Immunol* .2004;173:2159–2166. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15265953
226. Grubor-Bauk B, Simmons A, Mayrhofer G, Speck PG. Impaired clearance of herpes simplex virus type 1 from mice lacking CD1d or NKT cells expressing the semivariant V alpha 14-J alpha 281 TCR. *J Immunol*. 2003;170:1430–1434. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12538704
227. Cornish AL, Keating R, Kyparissoudis K, Smyth MJ, Carbone FR, Godfrey DI. NKT cells are not critical for HSV-1 disease resolution. *Immunol Cell Biol*. 2006;84:13–19. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16277640
228. Yuan W, Dasgupta A, Cresswell P. Herpes simplex virus evades natural killer T cell recognition by suppressing CD1d recycling. *Nat Immunol*. 2006;7:835–842. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16845396
229. Sanchez DJ, Gumperz JE, Ganem D. Regulation of CD1d expression and function by a herpesvirus infection. *J Clin Invest*. 2005;115:1369–1378. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15864354
230. Thomas SY, Chyung YH, Luster AD. Natural killer T cells are not the predominant T cell in asthma and likely modulate, not cause, asthma. *J Allergy Clin Immunol*. 2010;125:980–984. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20304475
231. Wingender G, Rogers P, Batzer G, et al. Invariant NKT cells are required for airway inflammation induced by environmental antigens. *J Exp Med*. 2011;208:1151–1162. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21624935
232. Scanlon ST, Thomas SY, Ferreira CM, et al. Airborne lipid antigens mobilize resident intravascular NKT cells to induce allergic airway inflammation. *J Exp Med*. 2011;208:2113–2124. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21930768
233. Wu L, Van Kaer L. Natural killer T cells and autoimmune disease. *Curr Mol Med*. 2009;9:4–14. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19199937
234. Kaplan MM, Gershwin ME. Primary biliary cirrhosis. *New Engl J Med*. 2005;353:1261–1273. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16177252
235. Selmi C, Balkwill DL, Invernizzi P, et al. Patients with primary biliary cirrhosis react against a ubiquitous xenobiotic-metabolizing bacterium. *Hepatol*. 2003;38:1250–1257. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14578864
236. Kita H, Naidenko OV, Kronenberg M, et al. Quantitation and phenotypic analysis of natural killer T cells in primary biliary cirrhosis using a human CD1d tetramer. *Gastroenterol*. 2002;123:1031–1043. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12360465
237. Berzofsky JA, Terabe M. The contrasting roles of NKT cells in tumor immunity. *Curr Mol Med*. 2009;9:667–672. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19689293
238. Smyth MJ, Thia KY, Street SE, et al. Differential tumor surveillance by natural killer (NK) and NKT cells. *J Exp Med*. 2000;191:661–668. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10684858
239. Swann JB, Uldrich AP, van Dommelen S, et al. Type I natural killer T cells suppress tumors caused by p53 loss in mice. *Blood*. 2009;113:6382–6385. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19234138
240. Bellone M, Ceccon M, Grioni M, et al. iNKT cells control mouse spontaneous carcinoma independently of tumor-specific cytotoxic T cells. *PloS One*. 2010;5:e8646. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20072624
241. Kammertoens T, Qin Z, Briesemeister D, Bendelac A, Blankenstein T. Methylcholanthrene-induced carcinogenesis is promoted by B-cells and IL-4 but there is no evidence for a role of T / NKT-cells and their effector molecules (Fas-ligand, TNF-alpha, Perforin). *Int J Cancer*. 2011. [Epub ahead of print.] http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22212899
242. Li S, Choi HJ, Felio K, Wang CR. Autoreactive CD1b-restricted T cells: a new innate-like T-cell population that contributes to immunity against infection. *Blood*. 2011;118:3870–3878. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21860021
243. de Lalla C, Lepore M, Piccolo FM, et al. High-frequency and adaptive-like dynamics of human CD1 self-reactive T cells. *Eur J Immunol*. 2011;41:602–610. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21246542

CHAPTER 19

Macrophages and Phagocytosis

Siamon Gordon

INTRODUCTION

Macrophages (Mϕ) represent a family of mononuclear leukocytes that are widely distributed throughout the body within and outside of lymphohemopoietic organs. They vary considerably in lifespan and phenotype, depending on their origin and local microenvironment. Mature Mϕ are highly phagocytic, relatively long-lived cells that are adaptable in their biosynthetic responses to antigens and microbial stimuli. The functions of Mϕ within tissues are homeostatic, regulating the local and systemic milieu through diverse plasma membrane receptors and varied secretory products. They react to, and themselves generate, signals that influence growth, differentiation, and death of other cells, recognizing and engulfing senescent and abnormal cells. These activities contribute substantially to recognition and defense functions against invading microorganisms, foreign particulates, and other immunogens. Innate immune functions of Mϕ complement their contributions to acquired humoral and cellular immunity, in which they regulate activation of T- and B-lymphocytes; this is achieved in part through their specialized derivatives, dendritic cells (DCs) of myeloid origin. Mϕ, with or without DCs, process and present antigen; produce chemokines and cytokines such as interleukin (IL)-1, IL-6, IL-12, IL-18, IL-23, tumor necrosis factor (TNF)-α, IL-10, and TGFβ; and phagocytose apoptotic and necrotic cells. Acting directly or under the influence of other immune cells, Mϕ capture extra- and intracellular pathogens, eliminate invaders, and deliver them to appropriate subcompartments of lymphoid organs. As key regulators of the specific as well as the natural immune response, Mϕ boost as well as limit induction and effector mechanisms of the specific immune response by positive and negative feedback.

The properties and roles of DCs, especially in antigen presentation, are described in detail elsewhere in this volume. Here, we focus on other members of the Mϕ lineage, consider their interrelationship, and outline specialized properties that underlie their roles in the execution and regulation of immune responses. A number of texts and presentations deal with the history and broad aspects of Mϕ immunobiology.[1–8]

SOME LANDMARKS IN THE STUDY OF MACROPHAGES

Our understanding of Mϕ developed in parallel with the growth of immunology as an experimental science. Metchnikoff, a comparative developmental zoologist, is widely credited for his recognition of phagocytosis and leukocyte recruitment as a fundamental host defense mechanisms of primitive, as well as highly developed multicellular organisms.[3,4,7] The Nobel awards of 2011 to Bruce Beutler,[9] Jules Hoffman,[10] and Ralph Steinman[11] reflect the paradigm shift of immune recognition from lymphocytes to innate antigen-presenting cells (APCs). Metchnikoff already clearly stated the link between capture of infectious microorganisms by the spleen and subsequent appearance of reactive substances (antibodies) in the blood, although mistakenly ascribing their production to the phagocytes themselves. The importance of systemic clearance of particles by Mϕ, especially Kupffer cells in liver and other endothelial cells, was enshrined in the term reticuloendothelial system. Although it was rejected by influential investigators in the field in favor of the term mononuclear phagocyte system, the appreciation that sinuslining Mϕ in liver and elsewhere share common properties with selected endothelial cells is worth preserving.[3] Earlier studies by Florey and his students, including Gowans, established that circulating monocytes give rise to tissue Mϕ. Van Furth and his colleagues investigated the life history of Mϕ by kinetic labeling methods; subsequently, the development of membrane antigen markers facilitated a more precise definition of specialized Mϕ subpopulations in tissues such as brain. The appearance and potential importance of Mϕ during development also became evident as a result of sensitive immunocytochemical methods. Morphologic and functional studies by Humphrey and many others drew attention to striking diversity among Mϕ-like cells in secondary lymphoid organs, especially within the marginal zone of the spleen, where complex particulates and polysaccharides are captured from the circulation.

The era of modern cell biology impinged on Mϕ studies following the studies of Cohn,[12] Hirsch, and their colleagues. Their work touched on many aspects of cell structure and function, including phagocytosis (the zipper mechanism of Silverstein), fluid- and receptor-mediated endocytosis, secretion, and antimicrobial resistance. Isolation and in vitro culture systems became available for cells from mice and humans, especially after the identification of specific growth and differentiation factors such as colony-stimulating factor-1 (CSF-1). It is perhaps fitting that the earliest known natural knockout (ko) affecting Mϕ, a natural mutation in the op gene in the osteopetrotic mouse, should involve CSF-1.[13] Cell lines retaining some but not all features of

mature Mϕ have been useful for many biochemical and cellular studies. Macrophages and dendritic cells can be derived from embryonic stem cells and induced pluripotent cells by growth in appropriate culture conditions and transfection of selected transcription factors.

The role of Mϕ as antigen-processing cells able to initiate adaptive immune responses had false trails ("immunogenic ribonucleic acid [RNA]" was thought to be involved at one time) and encompassed early genetic strategies (Mϕ of mice selected for high antisheep erythrocyte antibody responses by Biozzi and colleagues displayed enhanced degradative properties; adherent cells from defined guinea pig strains were shown to play an important role in major histocompatibility complex [MHC] Ia-restricted anti-insulin responses). For many years, the APC functions of adherent cells were highly controversial as promoted by Unanue, who concentrated on intracellular processing by Mϕ, and Steinman, who discovered the specialized role of "DCs" in antigen presentation to naive T-lymphocytes. The importance of Mϕ as effector cells in immunity to intracellular pathogens such as *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* was recognized early by Lurie and Dannenberg. Mackaness used *Listeria monocytogenes* and bacille Calmette-Guérin (BCG) infection in experimental models and developed the concept of Mϕ activation as an antigen-dependent but immunologically nonspecific enhancement of antimicrobial resistance. The subsequent delineation of T-lymphocyte subsets and characterization of interferon (IFN)-γ as the major cytokine involved in macrophage activation, including MHC II induction, merged with increasing knowledge of the role of reactive oxygen and, later, nitrogen metabolites as cytotoxic agents. The role of virus-infected Mϕ as MHC I–restricted targets for antigen-specific CD8+ killer cells was part of the initial characterization of this phenomenon by Zinkernagel and Doherty. D'Arcy Hart was an early investigator of the intracellular interactions between Mϕ and invaders of the vacuolar system, especially mycobacteria, which survive within Mϕ by inhibiting acidification and phagosomelysosome fusion, thus evading host resistance mechanisms. Mouse breeding studies by several groups defined a common genetic locus involved in resistance to BCG, *Leishmania*, and *Salmonella* organisms. The host phenotype was shown to depend on expression in Mϕ and, many years later, the gene (termed N-ramp for natural resistance-associated membrane protein) was identified by positional cloning by Skamene, Gros, and their colleagues. Positional cloning by Beutler and associates led to the identification of the gene responsible for lipopolysaccharide (LPS) resistance in particular mouse strains. Together with studies by Hoffmann and his colleagues on the toll pathway in *Drosophila*, this work resulted in an explosion of interest in the identification of mammalian toll-like receptors (TLRs) and their role in innate immunity to infection. At the same time, it became apparent that some malignant tumors contain macrophage populations that may favor their growth.

This brief survey concludes with the identification of Mϕ as key target cells for infection, dissemination, and persistence of human immunodeficiency virus (HIV), tropic for Mϕ by virtue of their expression of cluster of differentiation (CD)4, chemokine coreceptors, and DC-SIGN, a C-type lectin also expressed by DCs. Although Mϕ had been implicated by earlier workers such as Mims as important in antiviral resistance generally, their role in this regard was neglected before the emergence of HIV as a major pathogen.

Many molecules have been identified as important in Mϕ functions in immunity and serve as valuable markers to study their properties in mice and humans. These include Fc and complement receptors, which are important in opsonic phagocytosis, killing, and immunoregulation; scavenger receptors originally implicated in foam cell formation and atherogenesis by Brown and Goldstein; nonopsonic lectin receptors, such as the mannose receptor (MR) and β-glucan receptor (dectin-1) and secretory products such as lysozyme, neutral proteinases, TNFα, chemokines, and many other cytokines. A range of membrane antigens expressed by human and rodent mononuclear phagocytes has been characterized and reagents made available for further study of Mϕ in normal and diseased states. Recently, the role of deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA)-binding transcription factors including members of the NF-κB and ETS (Pu-1) families has received increased attention in the study of differential gene expression by Mϕ. Gene inactivation has confirmed the important role of many of these molecules within the intact host, and use has been made of cell-specific or conditional ko to uncover the role of Mϕ in immunologic processes. Naturally occurring inborn errors in humans such as the leukocyte adhesion deficiency syndrome and chronic granulomatous disease have contributed to the analysis of important leukocyte functions, including those of Mϕ, in host resistance to infection. Mutations in a monocyte-expressed gene (nucleotide oligomerization domain [NOD]-2), involved in cytosolic sensing of microbial products and NF-κB activation, have been implicated in a subset of individuals with an enhanced susceptibility to Crohn disease. The validity of murine ko models for human genetic deficiencies has been confirmed for key molecules involved in Mϕ activation, such as IFNγ and IL-12. *N*-ethyl *N*-nitrosourea mutagenesis has begun to reveal new macrophage innate immune functions, as has increasing application of system biology tools for microarray, proteomic, epigenetic, and microRNA analysis.

PROPERTIES OF MACROPHAGES AND THEIR RELATION TO IMMUNE FUNCTIONS

Introduction

Mϕ participate in the production, mobilization, activation, and regulation of all immune effector cells. They interact reciprocally with other cells while their own properties are modified to perform specialized immunologic functions. As a result of cell surface and auto- and paracrine interactions, Mϕ display marked heterogeneity in phenotype,[14,15] a source of interest and considerable confusion to the investigator. Increasing knowledge of cellular and molecular properties of Mϕ bears strongly on our understanding of their role in the immune response. These will be reviewed

briefly, with emphasis on functional significance, and attention will be drawn to unresolved and controversial issues.

Growth and Differentiation: Life History and Turnover

In contrast to T- and B-lymphocytes, monocytes from blood give rise to terminally differentiated Mϕ that cannot recirculate or reinitiate DNA replication except in a limited way. Unlike other myeloid granulocytic cells, Mϕ can be long lived and retain the ability to synthesize RNA and protein to a marked extent, even when in a relatively quiescent state as "resident" cells. These are distributed throughout the tissues of the body and constitute a possible alarm-response system, but they also mediate homeostatic and poorly understood trophic functions. Following inflammatory and immune stimuli, many more monocytes can be recruited to local sites and give rise to "elicited" or "immunologically activated" Mϕ with altered surface, secretory, and cytotoxic properties. The origins of Mϕ from precursors are well known: from yolk sac (and possibly earlier paraaortic progenitors), migrating to fetal liver, then spleen and bone marrow, before and after birth.[16] Yolk sac precursor cells may contribute to the establishment of selected tissue macrophages such as Langerhans cells in the adult.[17] In the fetus, mature Mϕ proliferate actively during tissue remodeling in developing organs. In the normal adult, tissue Mϕ do not self-renew extensively except in specialized microenvironments such as epidermis,[18] nervous system, or lung; after TH2-type parasitic infection, there can be considerable further replication at local sites of inflammation.[19] Growth and differentiation are tightly regulated by specific growth factors and their receptors (eg, IL-3, CSF-1, granulocyte-macrophage [GM]-CSF/IL-34, IL-4, IL-13) and inhibitors (eg, IFNα/β, transforming growth factor [TGF]-β, leukemia inhibitory factor), which vary considerably in their potency and selectivity. These processes are modulated by interactions with adjacent stromal and other cells (eg, through c-kit/ligand and Flt-3/ligand interactions). The growth-response of the target cell to an extrinsic stimulus decreases progressively and markedly (from 10^8 or more to 10^0) during differentiation from stem cell to committed precursor to monoblast, monocyte, and Mϕ, yet even the most terminally differentiated Mϕ such as microglial cells can be "reactivated" to a limited extent by local stimuli. Elicited/activated Mϕ respond more vigorously than resident Mϕ to growth stimuli in vivo and in vitro, but the molecular basis for their enhanced proliferation is unknown.

Although this general picture of blood monocyte-to-tissue Mϕ differentiation has been accepted for some time as a result of parabiosis, adoptive transfer, and irradiation-reconstitution experiments, recent studies in mouse and man have demonstrated monocyte heterogeneity and distinct properties,[20–23] with a subpopulation remaining within the vasculature, to perform a patrolling function. Our understanding of DCs and osteoclast differentiation is still compatible with a relatively simple model (Fig. 19.1) in which major Mϕ populations in mouse tissues can be characterized by selected antigen markers such as F4/80 (Emrl,

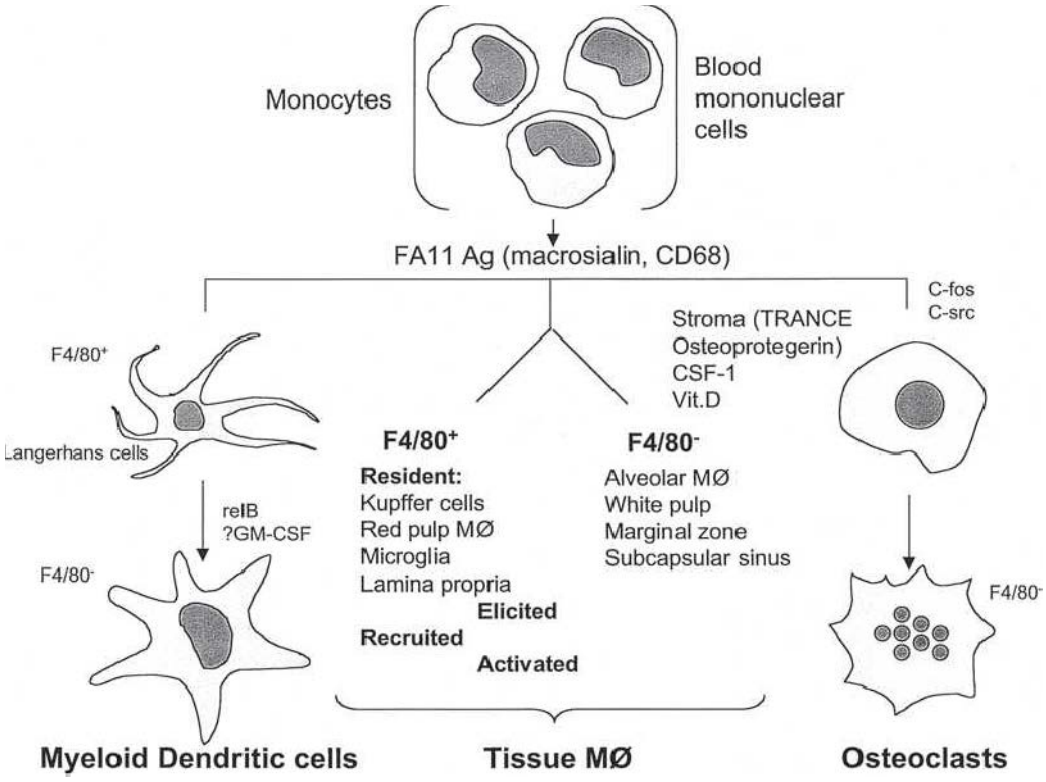


FIG. 19.1. Differentiation of mononuclear phagocytes based on antigen markers FA-11 (macrosialin, murine CD68) and F4/80. See text for detailed discussion.

a member of a family of EGF-TM7 molecules) and macrosialin (CD68), a pan-Mϕ endosomal glycoprotein related to the lysosome-associated membrane protein (LAMP) family. The DCs of myeloid origin (see elsewhere in this volume) share many properties with monocyte/macrophages,[24] but are specialized to capture, process, and present antigens to naïve lymphocytes. Circulating precursors of DCs and and macrophages are normally present in the mononuclear fraction of blood in small numbers[25]; studies in the mouse may not reflect the origin and differentiation of precursor cells in humans.[26] Monocytes that have crossed the endothelium may be induced to "reverse migrate" into the circulation by selected stimuli in tissues.[27] Finally, the mouse spleen has been shown to serve as a reservoir of monocyte/Mϕ for recruitment to sites of inflammation.[28]

Circulating mononuclear precursors for osteoclasts are less defined and differentiate into mononucleate cells, recruited in response to sphingosine-1-phosphate to bone, for example,[29] where they fuse to form multinucleate bone-resorbing osteoclasts.[30] Local stromal cells, growth factors such as CSF-1, steroids (vitamin D metabolites), and hormones (eg, calcitonin, for which osteoclasts express receptors) all contribute to local maturation. Osteoprotegerin, a naturally occurring secreted protein with homology to members of the TNF-receptor family, interacts with TRANCE, a TNF-related protein, to regulate osteoclast differentiation and activation in vitro and in vivo.

Use of antigen markers such as CD34 on progenitors, CD14 and CD16 on monocytes, and chemokine receptors and multichannel fluorescein-activated cell sorter analysis have made it possible to isolate leukocyte subpopulations and study their progeny and differential responses in different mouse tissues and models of disease.[31] The mononuclear fraction of blood may contain precursors of other tissue cells, including mesenchymal stem cells able to synthesize matrix proteins such as collagen, and some endothelial cells. Perhaps the mysterious follicular dendritic cells (FDCs) with mixed hemopoietic and mesenchymal properties fall in this category.

The large-scale production of immature and mature DC-like cells from bulk monocytes in cytokine-supplemented culture systems (IL-4, GM-CSF, TNFα) has revolutionized the study of these specialized APCs. Individually, the same cytokines give rise to Mϕ-like cells, and early during in vitro differentiation, the cellular phenotype is reversible. Later, when mature DCs with high MHC II, APC function, and other characteristic markers are formed, differentiation is irreversible. This process is independent of cell division, although earlier progenitors in bone marrow and GM-CSF–mobilized blood mononuclear cells can be stimulated to multiply, as well as differentiate, in vitro. These examples of terminal differentiation observed with DCs and osteoclasts may extend to other specialized, more obvious Mϕ-like cells. Mature Mϕ can be derived by growth and differentiation in steroid-supplemented media in Dexter-type long-term bone marrow cultures that contain stromal fibroblasts and hemopoietic elements. These Mϕ express adhesion molecules responsible for divalent cation-dependent cluster formation with erythroblasts (EbR). This receptor, possibly related to V-CAM, cannot be induced on terminally differentiated peritoneal Mϕ if these are placed in the same culture system. This contrasts sharply with the ready adaptation of many tissue Mϕ to conventional cell culture conditions, when the cells often adopt a common, standard phenotype. Irreversible stages of Mϕ differentiation may therefore occur in specialized microenvironments in vitro or in vivo.

Little is known about determinants of Mϕ longevity and turnover. Growth factors such as CSF-1 enhance Mϕ survival and prevent induction of an apoptotic program. The expression of Fas-L and Fas on Mϕ has been less studied than on lymphocytes; they and other members of the TNF and its receptor family may play a major role in determining Mϕ survival, especially in induced populations, where cell turnover is markedly enhanced. Tissue Mϕ vary greatly in their lifespan, from days to months. Apart from inflammatory and microbial stimuli, local and systemic environmental factors such as salt loading and hormones, including estrogen, are known to influence Mϕ turnover.

Tissue Distribution and Phenotypic Heterogeneity of Resident Macrophages in Lymphoid and Nonlymphoid Organs

The use of the F4/80 plasma membrane antigen made it possible to detect mature Mϕ in developing and adult murine tissues and define their anatomic relationship to other cells in endothelium, epithelium, and connective tissue, as well as the nervous system.[32,33] Subsequently, other membrane antigens,[34] macrosialin, sialoadhesin, and others were identified as useful markers for Mϕ in situ (Table 19.1). Mϕ subpopulations in different tissues display considerable heterogeneity in expressing these and selected receptor antigens (eg, complement receptor [CR]3 and class A scavenger receptor [SR-A]), drawing attention to unknown mechanisms of homing, emigration, and local adaptation to particular microenvironments. From the viewpoint of immune responses, a few aspects deserve comment.

Fetal Liver and Bone Marrow

Mature Mϕ form an integral part of the hemopoietic microenvironment and play a key role in the production, differentiation, and destruction of all hemopoietic cells. The fetal liver is a major site of definitive erythropoiesis from midgestation.[16] The bone marrow becomes active in the production of hemopoietic cells from shortly before birth, and Mϕ are a prominent component of the hemopoietic stroma throughout adult life. Mature "stromal" Mϕ in fetal liver and adult bone marrow express nonphagocytic adhesion molecules such as sialoadhesin (Sn), an immunoglobulin (Ig)-superfamily sialic acid-binding lectin (Table 19.1), and the EbR referred to previously, which is also involved in adhesion of developing myeloid and possibly lymphoid cells (Fig. 19.2). VLA-4 has been implicated as a ligand for EbR. Ligands for Sn include CD43 on developing granulocytes and on lymphocyte subpopulations. Sn clusters at sites of contact between stromal Mϕ and myeloid but not erythroid cells. Chemokines are able to induce polarized expression of adhesion molecules such as intercellular adhesion molecules and CD43 in leukocytes, but the significance

TABLE 19.1 Selected Differentiation Antigens Used to Study Murine Macrophage Heterogeneity

Ab	Ag	Structure	Ligands	Cellular Expression	Function	Comment
F4/80	F4/80 (EMR1)	EGF-TM7	?	Mature Mϕ, absent T areas	Peripheral tolerance	Useful marker development, CNS
FA-11	Macrosialin (CD68)	Mucin-LAMP	OX-LDL	Pan-Mϕ, DC	Late endosomal	Glycoforms regulated by inflammation and phagocytosis
5C6	CR3 (CD11b, CD18)	β2-integrin	iC3b, ICAM	Monocytes, microglia, PMN, NK cells	Phagocytosis, adhesion	Important in inflammatory recruitment, PMN apoptosis
2F8	SR-A (I, II)	Collagenous, type II glycoprotein Isoforms differ, cysteine-rich domain	Polyanions, LTA, LPS, bacterial proteins Modified proteins β-amyloid apolipoprotein A, E		Adhesion, endocytosis	Protects host against LPS-induced shock
				Mϕ, sinusoidal endothelium	Phagocytosis of apoptotic cells and bacteria	Promotes atherosclerosis
SER-4	Sn (Siglec-1)	Ig superfamily	Sialyl glycoconjugates (eg, CD43)	Subsets tissue Mϕ	Lectin	Strongly expressed
3D6						Marginal zone metallophils in spleen and subcapsular sinus of lymph nodes

CNS, central nervous system; DC, dendritic cell; ICAM, intercellular adhesion molecule; Ig, immunoglobulin; LAMP, lysosome-associated membrane protein; LPS, lipopolysaccharide; LTA, lipoteichoic acid; Mϕ, macrophages; NK, natural killer; OX-LDL, oxidised low density lipoprotein; PMN, polymorphonuclear neutrophil; Sn, sialoadhesin; SR-A, type A scavenger receptor.

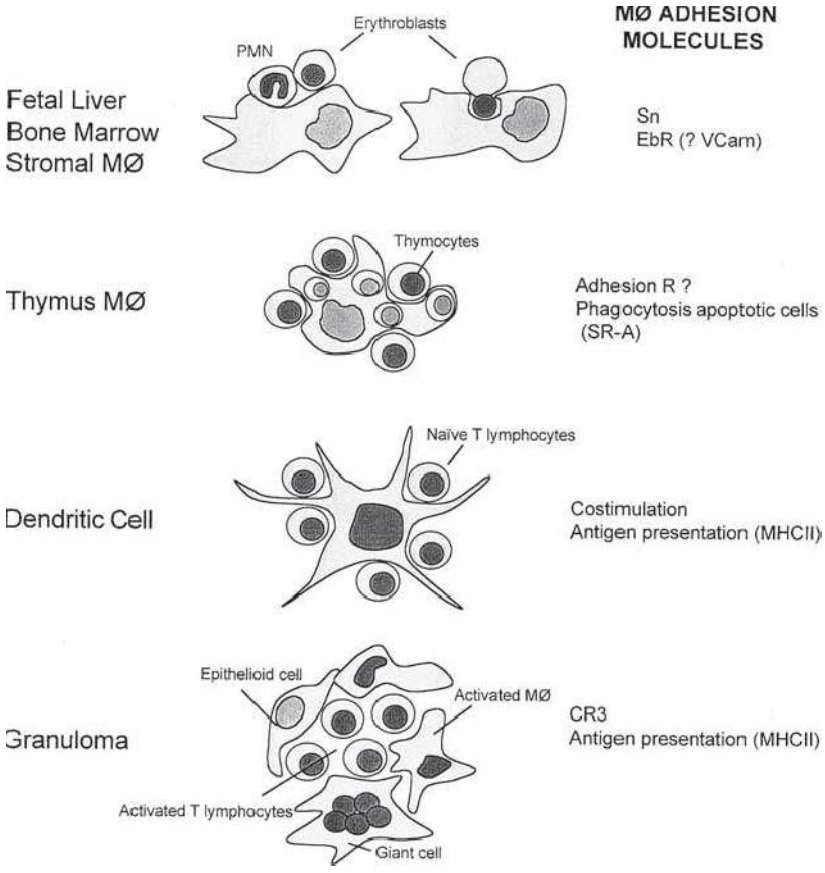


FIG. 19.2. Associations of tissue macrophages with other hemopoietic cells to illustrate variations on a common theme. See text for details.

of altered ligand distribution for interactions between Mϕ and bound hemopoietic cells is unknown. Adhesion of immature cells to stromal Mϕ may play a role in regulating their intermediate stages of development before release into the bloodstream, whereas fibroblasts in the stroma associate with earlier progenitors, as well as with Mϕ. Discarded nuclei of mammalian erythroid cells are rapidly engulfed by stromal Mϕ, but the receptors involved in their binding and phagocytosis are unknown. Mϕ also phagocytose apoptotic hemopoietic cells generated in bone marrow, including large numbers of myeloid and B cells. We know little about the plasma membrane molecules and cytokine signals operating within this complex milieu, but it is clear that stromal Mϕ constitute a neglected constituent within the hemopoietic microenvironment.

Thymus

Apart from their remarkable capacity to remove apoptotic thymocytes, the possible role of Mϕ in positive and negative selection of thymocytes has been almost totally overlooked; more attention has been given to local DCs and their specialized properties. Mature Mϕ with unusual features are also present in cortex and medulla. Clusters of viable thymocytes and Mϕ can be isolated from the thymus of young animals by collagenase digestion and adherence to a substratum (see Fig. 19.2). The nonphagocytic adhesion receptors responsible for cluster formation are more highly expressed by thymic than other Mϕ, but their nature is unknown (N. Platt, unpublished observations). These Mϕ also express MHC class II antigens and other receptors such as the SR-A (see subsequent discussion), which contributes to phagocytosis of apoptotic thymocytes in vitro, but is redundant in vivo; other markers, such as the F4/80 antigen, are poorly expressed in situ but can be readily detected after cell isolation. A striking difference between thymic and several other tissue Mϕ subpopulations is their independence of CSF-1; the CSF-1–deficient *op/op* mouse lacks osteoclasts and some Mϕ populations, including monocytes, peritoneal cells, and Kupffer cells, but contains normal numbers of thymic Mϕ, as well as DCs and selected Mϕ in other sites. A second ligand for the CSF-1 receptor Fms, IL-34, may account for CSF-1 independence.[35] Factors involved in constitutive recruitment of thymic Mϕ are unknown; following death of thymocytes induced by ionizing radiation or glucocorticoids, intensely phagocytic Mϕ appear in large numbers; it is not known what proportion arises locally and by recruitment.

Spleen

From the viewpoint of the Mϕ, the spleen is perhaps the most complex organ in the body.[36,37] It contributes to hemopoiesis, which persists postnatally in some species or can be induced by increased demand, can serve as a reservoir as noted previously, and contributes to the turnover of all blood elements at the end of their natural lifespan. The spleen filters a substantial proportion of total cardiac output, captures particulate and other antigenic materials from the bloodstream, and plays an important role in natural and acquired humoral and cellular immunity. The organ is rich in subpopulations of Mϕ that differ in microanatomic localization, phenotype, life history, and functions (Fig. 19.3). Mϕ are central to antigen capture, degradation, transport, and presentation to T- and B-lymphocytes, and contribute substantially to antimicrobial resistance. Recent work has unveiled an unexpected role in facilitating activation of other lymphocyte subsets, such as invariant natural killer T cells[37]; CD 169+ macrophages also activate CD8 T cells in response to dead cell–associated antigens in lymph nodes and by transferring antigen to DCs in the spleen. Because other hemopoietic and secondary lymphoid organs can replace many of these functions after maturation of the immune system, the unique properties of the spleen have been mainly recognized in the immature host and in immune responses to complex polysaccharides. Splenectomy in the adult renders the host susceptible to infection by pathogenic bacteria such as pneumococci that contain saccharide-rich capsular antigens; the marginal zone of the spleen in particular may play an essential role in this aspect of host resistance.

The properties of Mϕ in the unstimulated mature mouse spleen are different according to their localization in red or white pulp and the marginal zone. Mϕ are intimately associated with the specialized vasculature. Species differences in splenic anatomy and phenotype are well recognized, although Mϕ display broadly common features in humans and rodents. Subpopulations of Mϕ, DCs, and cells with mixed phenotypes have been characterized by in situ analysis by antigen markers, liposome or diphtheria toxin-depletion studies, various immunization and infection protocols, and cytokine and receptor gene ko models in the mouse. The results raise questions about the dynamics and molecular basis of cell production, recruitment, differentiation, emigration, and death within each distinct splenic compartment. Cell isolation methods are still primitive in correlating in vitro properties with those of Mϕ subpopulations in vivo and remain an important challenge. Detailed aspects of splenic architecture, DC origin and function, and T- and B-lymphocyte induction and differentiation are described elsewhere in this volume. Here, some features of Mϕ in the normal and immunoreactive organ are highlighted.

Marginal Zone Macrophages

The marginal zone of spleen consists of a complex mixture of resident cells (reticular and other fibroblasts, endothelium), Mϕ, DCs, and lymphoid cells, including subpopulations of B-lymphocytes. It constitutes an important interface with the circulation that delivers cells, particulates, or soluble molecules directly into the marginal sinus or via the red pulp. Resident Mϕ are present as specialized metallophilic cells in the inner marginal zone, and other Mϕ are found in the outer zone; the latter may be more phagocytic. Sn is strongly expressed by the marginal metallophils, compared with only weak expression in red pulp and virtual absence in the white pulp. Sn+ cells appear in this zone 2 to 4 weeks postnatally in the mouse as the white pulp forms. Liposomes containing clodronate, a cytotoxic drug, can be delivered systemically and deplete Sn+ cells and other Mϕ; regeneration of different Mϕ subpopulations in spleen occurs at different times, and this procedure has been used to correlate their reappearance with distinct immunologic functions. Marginal

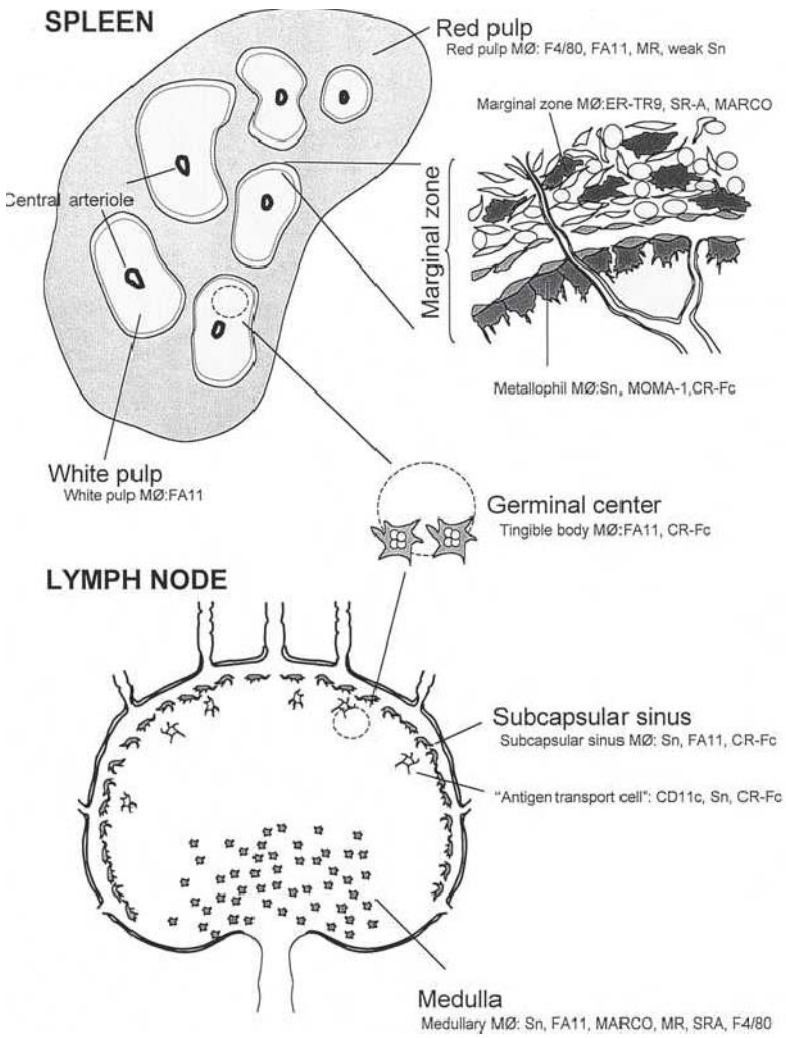


FIG. 19.3. Microheterogeneity of macrophages in spleen, resting, and antigen-stimulated lymph nodes. See text for markers and details.

zone Mϕ lack F4/80 but may express an undefined ligand for F4/80 on circulating activated DCs, which mediates peripheral tolerance to anterior chamber or gut-derived antigens.[38] Marginal zone Mϕ express phagocytic receptors, such as SR-A, which is more widely present on tissue Mϕ, as well as MARCO, a distinct collagenous scavenger receptor, which is almost exclusively present on these Mϕ in the normal mouse. The structures and possible role of these pattern recognition receptors in uptake of microbes are discussed subsequently. In vivo studies have shown that an Mϕ lectin, the MR, may be involved in transfer of mannosylated ligands to the site of an immune response in the white pulp.[39] The MR contains a highly conserved cysteine-rich domain, not involved in mannosyl recognition, that reacts strongly with ligands on a subset of marginal metallophilic Mϕ, sulfated glycoforms of Sn, and CD45, among others; this has been demonstrated with a chimeric probe of the cysteine-rich domain of the MR and human Fc (CR-Fc) and by immunochemical analysis of tissue sections and affinity chromatography of spleen ligands. After immunization, this probe additionally labels undefined cells in the FDC network of germinal centers, as well as tingible body Mϕ. It is possible that marginal zone Mϕ can be induced to migrate into white pulp as described after LPS injection; alternatively, they may shed complexes of soluble MR-glycoprotein ligand for transfer to other CR-Fc+ cells, which may be resident or newly recruited mononuclear cells. Finally, the marginal metallophilic Mϕ population depends on CSF-1 for its appearance and on members of the TNF receptor family, as shown with *op/op* and experimentally produced ko mice.

White Pulp Macrophages

The F4/80 antigen is strikingly absent on murine white pulp Mϕ, which do express FA-11 (macrosialin), the murine homolog of CD68. Actively phagocytic Mϕ express this intracellular glycoprotein in abundance compared with DCs. After uptake of a foreign particle (eg, sheep erythrocytes or an infectious agent, such as BCG or *Plasmodium yoelii*), white pulp Mϕ become more prominent, although it is not known whether there is migration of cells into the white pulp or transfer of phagocytosed material and reactivation of previous resident Mϕ. Tingible body Mϕ appear to be involved in uptake and digestion of apoptotic B-lymphocytes.

Red Pulp Macrophages

These express F4/80 antigen and MR strongly and in the mouse include stromal-type Mϕ involved in hemopoiesis. Extensive phagocytosis of senescent erythrocytes results in accumulation of bile pigments and ferritin, and play an important role in iron turnover[40] and tolerance.[41] The role of various phagocytic receptors in clearance of host cells and pathogens by red pulp Mϕ requires further study.

There is no evidence that Mϕ, other than interdigitating DCs, associate directly with CD4+ T-lymphocytes in the normal spleen. Following infection by BCG, for example, or by other microorganisms such as *Salmonella*, there is massive recruitment and local production of Mϕ, many of which associate with T-lymphocytes. Newly formed granulomata often appear first in the marginal zone (focal accumulations of activated Mϕ and activated T cells). As infections spread into the white and red pulp, the granulomata become confluent and less localized, obscuring and/or disrupting the underlying architecture of the spleen. The possible role of activated Mϕ in T-cell apoptosis and clearance in spleen has not been defined.

Lymph Nodes

F4/80 antigen is relatively poorly expressed in lymph node (see Fig. 19.3), but many macrosialin (CD68)+ cells are present. The subcapsular sinus is analogous to the marginal zone and contains strongly Sn+ cells; this is the site where afferent lymph enters, containing antigen and migrating DCs derived from skin and mucosal surfaces. The medulla contains Sn+, CD68+ Mϕ, which also express high levels of SR-A. As in the spleen marginal zone, subcapsular sinus Mϕ are strongly labeled by the CR-Fc probe. Following primary or secondary immunization, the staining pattern moves deeper into the cortex and eventually becomes concentrated in germinal centers. The kinetics of this process strongly suggests a transport process by Mϕ-related cells resembling antigen transport cells described previously. CR-Fc+ cells can be isolated by digestion of lymph nodes and form clusters with CR-Fc– lymphocytes. Adoptive transfer has shown that fluorescein-activated cell sorter–isolated CR-Fc+ cells resemble DCs in their ability to home to T-cell areas and to present antigen to naive T and B cells. Overall, there is considerable heterogeneity in the population of migratory APCs involved in antigen capture, transport, and delivery to T and B cells, and it may turn out that specialized tissue Mϕ as well as myeloid-type DCs can migrate in response to immunologic stimuli, especially TLR ligands.[42]

Peyer Patch

Although less studied, the Mϕ in Peyer patch resemble the CD68+, F4/80– cells described in spleen and white pulp and in other T-cell–rich areas. They are well placed to interact with gut-derived antigens and pathogens taken up via specialized epithelial M cells in the dome, and deliver antigens to afferent lymphatics, as myeloid DCs. These cells are distinct from abundant F4/80+ cells in the lamina propria found all the way down the gastrointestinal tract and may play a role in the induction of mucosal immunity. Recent studies have described heterogeneous populations of resident and recruited macrophages and DC in the mouse intestine.[43] The role of the microbiome[44] has received a great deal of attention in regard to innate cell phenotype and epithelial integrity in the gut.

Nonlymphoid Organs

Regional F4/80+ and CD68+ Mϕ are well described in liver (Kupffer cells), dermis, neuroendocrine and reproductive organs, and serosal cavities, where they are able to react to systemic and local stimuli. In the lung, alveolar Mϕ are strongly CD68+ but only weakly F4/80+ and are distinct from interstitial Mϕ and intraepithelial DCs. In the lamina propria of the intestine, Mϕ display a downregulated phenotype, ascribed to TGFβ of local origin.[45] In addition, resident Mϕ are found throughout connective tissue and within the interstitium of organs, including heart, kidney, and pancreas. These cells vary greatly depending on their local microenvironment; for example, in the central nervous system, microglia within the neuropil differ strikingly from Mϕ in the meninges or choroid plexus.[46] Perivascular Mϕ in the brain can be distinguished from resident microglia by their expression of endocytic receptors (eg, the SR-A and MR, and of MHC I and II antigens). Microglia are highly ramified, terminally differentiated cells of monocytic origin; many Mϕ markers are downregulated. Their phenotype is influenced by the blood–brain barrier, normally absent in circumventricular organs, and disrupted by inflammatory stimuli. Microglia can be reactivated by local LPS and neurocytotoxins; they are then difficult to distinguish from newly recruited monocytes, which acquire microglial features once they enter the parenchyma of the brain. Resting microglia are unusual among many tissue Mϕ in that they constitutively express high levels of CR3 and respond to CR3 ligands, such as mAb, by induced DNA synthesis and apoptosis. In other sites, such as lung and liver, CR3 expression is a feature of recent myeloid recruitment, including monocytes. Resident Kupffer cells lack constitutive CR3 but express a novel CR implicated in clearance function.

Resident tissue macrophages in human tissues express CD68 antigen, but their phenotypic diversity and microheterogeneity in different organs remain poorly defined. Access to skin biopsies, bronchoalveolar lavage, and placenta, for example, provides material for further analysis.

Enhanced Recruitment of Monocytes by Inflammatory and Immune Stimuli: Activation in Vivo

In response to local tissue and vascular changes, partly induced by resident Mϕ during (re)activation by inflammatory, infectious, and immunologic stimuli, monocytes are recruited from marrow pools and blood in increased numbers; they diapedese and differentiate into Mϕ with altered effector functions as they enter the tissues.[47] These Mϕ are classified as "elicited" when cells are generated in the absence of IFNγ and as "immunologically activated" after exposure to IFNγ. Enhanced recruitment can also involve that of other myeloid or lymphoid cells; selectivity of the cellular response depends on the nature of the evoking stimulus (immunogenic or not), the chemokines produced,

and the receptors expressed by different leukocytes. Mϕ and other cells produce a range of different chemokines and express multiple seven-transmembrane, G protein-coupled chemokine receptors. The chemokines can also act in the marrow compartment, especially if anchored to matrix and glycosaminoglycans, may display other growth regulatory functions, and can control egress. Locally bound or soluble chemokines induce the surface expression and activity of adhesion molecules on circulating white cells, as well as directing their migration through and beyond endothelium. Feedback mechanisms from periphery to central stores and within the marrow stroma may depend on cytokines and growth factors such as macrophage inflammatory protein-1α and GM-CSF, which inhibit or enhance monocyte production, respectively. The adhesion molecules involved in recruitment of monocytes, originally defined by studies in humans with inborn errors and by use of inhibitory antibodies in experimental animal models,[48] overlap with those of polymorphonuclear neutrophils and lymphocytes and include L-selectin, β_2-integrins, especially CR3, CD31, an Ig-superfamily molecule, and CD99; additional monocyte adhesion molecules for activated endothelium include CD44, vascular cell adhesion molecules, β_1-integrins, and newly described receptors such as EMR2 and CD97, members of the EGF-TM7 family.[33] The mechanisms of constitutive entry of monocytes into developing and adult tissues, in the absence of an inflammatory stimulus, are unknown.

By contrast with the uncertain precursors of resident Mϕ and DC populations, distinct monocyte subsets have been implicated in the enhanced mobilization and turnover in response to inflammatory, infectious, and metabolic stimuli, as noted previously (Fig. 19.4). Differential expression of the fractalkine receptor, CCR2, and other chemokine receptors, together with antigen markers (Gr-1 in mouse and CD14 in human), have made it possible to define monocyte heterogeneity. Although such subsets seem to be conserved across several species, their properties may reflect stages of cell activation along a continuous spectrum rather than true differentiation.

The migration and differentiation of newly recruited monocytes once they have left the circulation are poorly understood. They are able to enter all tissues, undergoing alterations in membrane molecules and secretory potential under the influence of cytokines and surface interactions with endothelial cells, leukocytes, and other local cells. Phenotypic changes mentioned in the following section have been characterized by a range of in vitro and in vivo studies. Well-studied examples include murine peritoneal Mϕ—resident, elicited by thioglycollate broth or biogel polyacrylamide beads, and immunologically activated by BCG infection. The latter provides a useful model of granuloma formation in solid organs but does not fully mimic the human counterpart associated with *M. tuberculosis* infection. Granuloma Mϕ vary in their turnover and immune effector functions and display considerable heterogeneity; lesions contain recently recruited monocytes, mature, epithelioid Mϕ (described as secretory cells), and Langhans giant cells. Interactions with T-lymphocytes, other myeloid cells, DCs, fibroblasts, and microorganisms yield a dynamic assembly of cells as the granuloma evolves, heals, and resolves (see Fig. 19.2). Apoptosis and necrosis of Mϕ and other cells contribute to the balance of continued recruitment and local proliferation. The emigration of Mϕ rather than DCs from sites of inflammation is less evident, although it has become clear that elicited Mϕ within the peritoneal cavity, for example, migrate actively to draining lymph nodes.[49]

Gene ko models have confirmed the role of molecules previously implicated in recruitment, activation, and granuloma formation. These include the adhesion molecules listed previously, their ligands, such as intercellular adhesion molecule-1, and key cytokines such as IFNγ, IL-12, IL-23, and TNFα, as well as their receptors. Antimicrobial resistance and Mϕ cytotoxicity resulting from production of reactive oxygen and nitrogen metabolites are now accessible to study

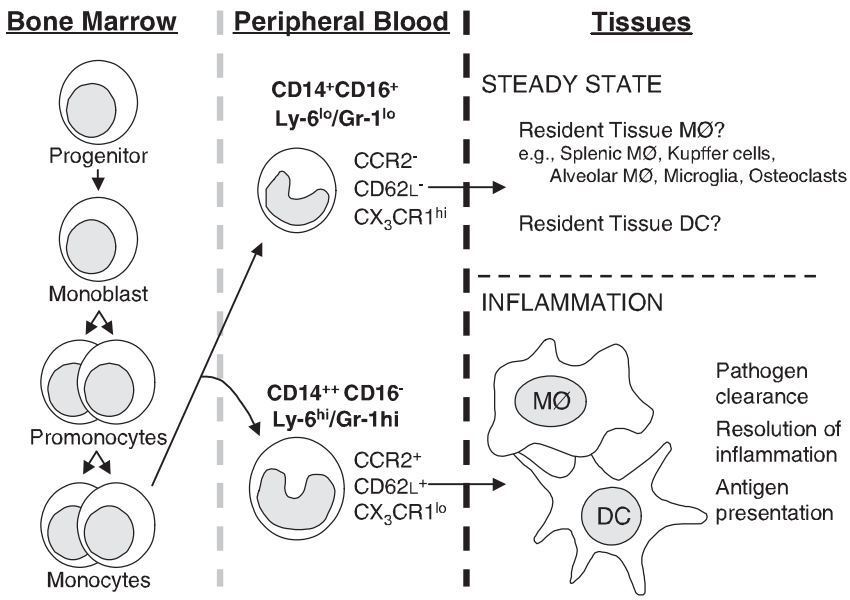


FIG. 19.4. Distinct monocyte subsets give rise to inflammatory and resident macrophages and dendritic cells. The origin of different resident subpopulations is not clear. See text for further details.

in knockouts of the phagocyte oxidase and inducible nitric oxide synthase. kos of membrane molecules of immunologic interest expressed by Mϕ and other cells include MHC class II and I, CD4, and CD40L, other accessory molecules such as B7–1 and B7–2, and the Mϕ-restricted intracellular molecule N-ramp.

The study of inborn errors in humans[50,51] and of disease models in genetically modified mice has brought insight into essential, nonredundant contributions of molecules that regulate Mϕ activation in vivo, including immunopathology syndromes such as septic shock and autoimmunity. Examples include myeloid antigens such as TREM-1/2,[52] associated with DAP-12, receptor-ligand pairs such as CD200/CD200 receptor,[53] and suppressors of cytokine signaling proteins.[54,55] TNFα is essential for host resistance to infection[56] and also contributes to immunopathology. Highly effective anti-TNFα therapy for chronic inflammatory diseases such as rheumatoid arthritis can result in reactivation of latent tuberculosis.

The potential for innate,Th1- and Th2-type regulation of Mϕ demonstrated in vitro, and discussed subsequently, can result in highly complex, often coexistent, heterogeneity of Mϕ phenotype in situ (see Fig. 19.4). Although almost all granuloma Mϕ express lysozyme,[57] only subpopulations express cytokines such as IL-1β, IL-6, and TNFα. Pro- and anti-inflammatory cytokines, IL-12, IL-18, IL-10, and TGFβ, produced by Mϕ themselves and other cells, modulate the phenotype of Mϕ in vivo.

Intravital imaging has provided insights into the dynamics of interactions of myeloid and lymphoid cells in granuloma formation.[58] Studies of human granulomatous, chronic inflammation provide opportunities to dissect genetic and acquired influences (eg, in NOD-2 deficiency in Blau syndrome[59] and Crohn disease[60]). The mouse resistance protein lrgm1 (LRG-47)[61] has also been implicated in pathogen defense.[62]

Apart from the local interactions outlined, Mϕ regulate systemic host reactions to immune and infectious stimuli by producing circulating cytokines such as IL-6 and arachidonate- and other lipid-derived metabolites, including resolvins, that contribute to the resolution of acute inflammation.[49] These mediators also act on neural and endocrine centers, crossing the blood–brain barrier, or are generated locally by reactive microglia and Mϕ. MicroRNAs have been identified that play a role in resolution.[63] Glucocorticosteroids are powerful immunomodulators[64] and form part of a network that regulates monocyte recruitment and Mϕ functions through circulating mediators such as migration inhibition factor. Mϕ contain potent enzymes involved in steroid biosynthesis and catabolism.[65]

Although the immunologic relevance of Mϕ-induced responses may seem evident, many aspects remain unclear. For example, what is the role and phenotype of monocyte/macrophages in the immune reconstitution inflammatory syndrome, associated with dual acquired immunodeficiency syndrome/tuberculosis infection, recipitated by antiretroviral treatment[66]? Do Mϕ actively suppress or destroy activated T-lymphocytes, thus contributing to regulation of immune responses and peripheral tolerance, or are Mϕ only passive removers of dying cells? Do Mϕ contribute to recruitment, differentiation, and death of DCs at sites of inflammation before their migration to secondary lymphoid organs? Do adjuvant-stimulated Mϕ interact with B-lymphocytes, directing their migration into germinal centers? Are interactions of activated Mϕ with antibody and complement, through different Fc and complement receptors, implicated in fine-tuning humoral responses? Are activated Mϕ themselves cytocidal for infected host cells, and to what extent do they in turn interact with and provide targets for attack by natural killer cells and cytotoxic T-lymphocytes? Study of a range of experimental models and disease processes in vivo should yield new insights, as well as extend and confirm mechanisms already defined in vitro.

Phagocytic Recognition and Intracellular Infection

The initiation and localization of an immune response depends on recognition by Mϕ and other cells of particulate agents or soluble proteins that are foreign or modified-self.[67] Phagocytic and endocytic recognition by Mϕ and DCs depends, in turn, on opsonic (mainly antibody, complement) and nonopsonic pattern recognition receptors that interact with a range of related ligands (Fig. 19.5). Innate and acquired responses are thus interlinked. Different FcR are involved in uptake and destruction of targets as well as in negative regulation of effector functions.[68] CRs[69] are also heterogeneous; CR3 interacts with C3-derived ligands formed by activation of the classical, alternate, or lectin pathways and mediate phagocytosis, cell migration, and cell activation. Other ligands include intercellular adhesion molecules. CR3 functions are modulated by fibronectin, via integrins, other adhesion molecules, and inflammatory stimuli. FcR ligation and cross-linking activates tyrosine kinases such as syk that are essential for phagocytosis; CR3 signaling is less defined and may not trigger a respiratory burst or arachidonate release, unlike FcR, thus favoring pathogen entry. Antibody-mediated uptake targets an organism or soluble antigen to a different, degradative compartment[70] (Fig. 19.6) and usually results in its neutralization and destruction, although enhancement of infection can also occur in Mϕ.[71] Flavivirus infection in the presence of specific antibody can result in the dengue hemorrhagic shock syndrome. Immune complexes, with or without complement, localize antigens to FDCs and other FcR+ CR+ cells. Mϕ themselves are able to produce all components of the complement cascade in significant amounts at local sites, which may be less accessible to circulating proteins made by hepatocytes.

Nonopsonic receptors reacting directly with ligands on microorganisms[72] include CR3, lectins, especially the MR and β-glucan receptor, the scavenger receptors SR-A and MARCO, and the family of TLRs. MRs are present on Mϕ, DCs, and sinusoidal endothelium.[39] They mediate phagocytosis and endocytosis, including macropinocytosis, and structurally resemble another multilectin, Dec 205, present on DCs as well as tissue Mϕ and epithelial cells in thymus; carbohydrate recognition by the latter has not been demonstrated. The MR has eight C-type lectin domains, homologous to the mannose-binding protein, a circulating

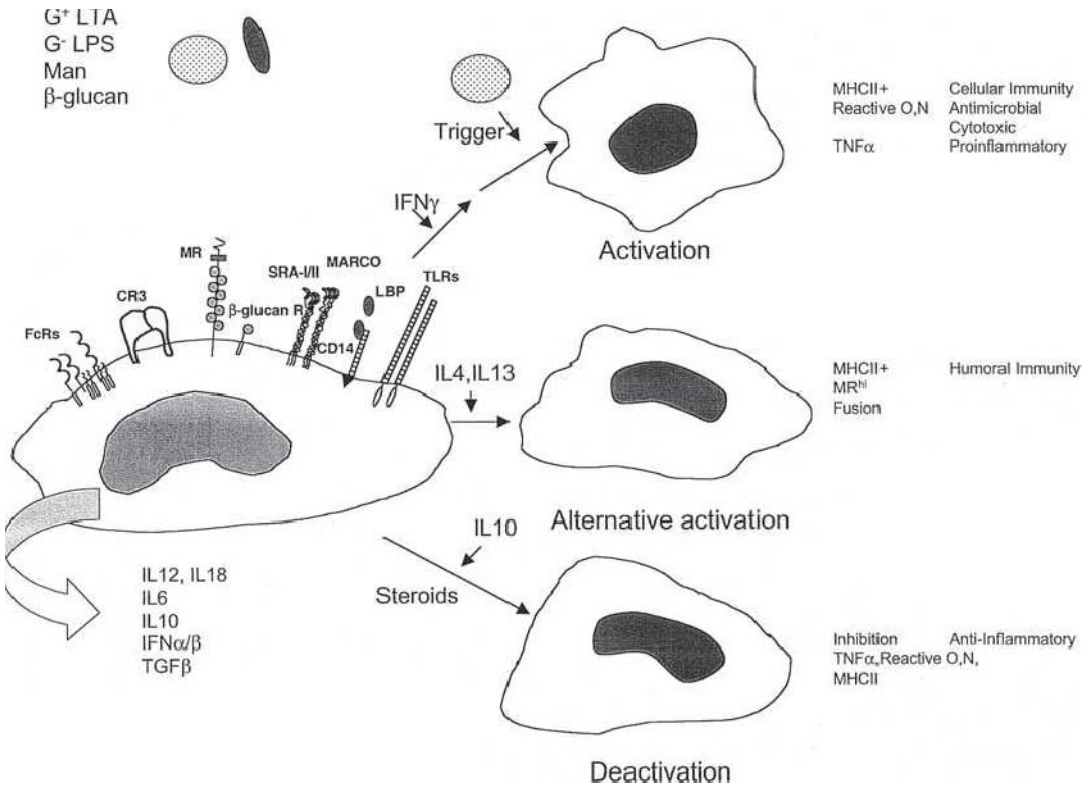


FIG. 19.5. Macrophage activation and the role of microbial stimuli and cytokines. See text for details.

hepatocyte-derived, acute-phase reactant. Mannose-binding protein, also known as mannan-binding lectin, contains a single lectin domain per polypeptide, which oligomerizes like other collectins to achieve multivalent interactions and activate complement via associated serine proteases. MR expression on Mϕ is selectively down- and upregulated by IFNγ and IL-4/13, respectively. A possible role of the cysteine-rich domain in transport of immunogenic glycopeptides within secondary lymphoid organs has been proposed.[73]

The β-glucan receptor, previously reported as dectin-1, is related to C-type lectins and is responsible for phagocytic recognition of unopsonized zymosan and for Mϕ activation (Figs. 19.7 and 19.8).[74] It contains an immunoreceptor tyrosine-based activation motif–like motif in its cytoplasmic domain that is essential for phagocytosis and induced secretory responses (eg, TNFα). It cooperates with TLR2 and synergizes with other TLRs in cell activation, utilizing syk and CARD9,[75] and can promote TH17 differentiation.[76] It is essential for resistance to a range of fungal particles in vivo, as shown by studies with ko mice and in human primary innate immunodeficiency.[77] Dectin-2, a distinct mannan-binding lectin, has also been implicated in TH17 differentiation.[45,78]

SR-A mediates endocytosis of modified proteins (eg, acetylated lipoproteins) and selected polyanions, such as apolipoprotein A1 and E,[79] LPS, and lipoteichoic acid.[72] In addition, it can serve as an adhesion molecule and contributes to phagocytic clearance of apoptotic thymocytes and gram-negative as well as gram-positive bacteria. MARCO, a related collagenous receptor,[72] mediates cell adhesion and phagocytosis of bacteria but is independently regulated, as discussed subsequently. MARCO[80] and Mincle,[81] a lectin-like receptor, contribute to macrophage responses to trehalose dimycolate, a virulence factor of pathogenic *M. tuberculosis*. An initial report of a phosphatidylserine receptor implicated in the recognition of novel lipid ligands expressed on the surface of apoptotic cells was not confirmed. CD36 (thrombospondin receptor), vitronectin receptors, CD91, and CD44 have all been implicated in the uptake of senescent polymorphonuclear neutrophils by Mϕ.[82] Other opsonins for apoptotic cell clearance include milk fat globule protein (lactadherin). A role for Mϕ SR-A in immune induction has not been demonstrated, but studies in SR-A ko mice have revealed an important inhibitory role in limiting TNFα production by immunologically activated Mϕ. Wild-type, BCG-primed mice produce granulomata rich in SR-A+ Mϕ; SR-A ko mice restrict growth of this organism and form normal granulomata containing activated, MHC II+ Mϕ; on additional challenge with LPS, the ko mice die more readily than wild-type animals. TNFα levels in the circulation rise markedly because of unopposed triggering via CD14, a receptor for the LPS-binding protein, and contribute to septic shock, because blocking anti-TNF mAb protects these mice.

The family of TLRs consists of homo- or heterodimeric transmembrane molecules related to the IL-1 receptor, which are involved in innate immunity to microbial constituents and activation of Mϕ responses, and are discussed elsewhere in this volume.[83] Downstream signaling depends on association with other soluble and membrane molecules, as well as with intracellular proteins. MyD88, for example,

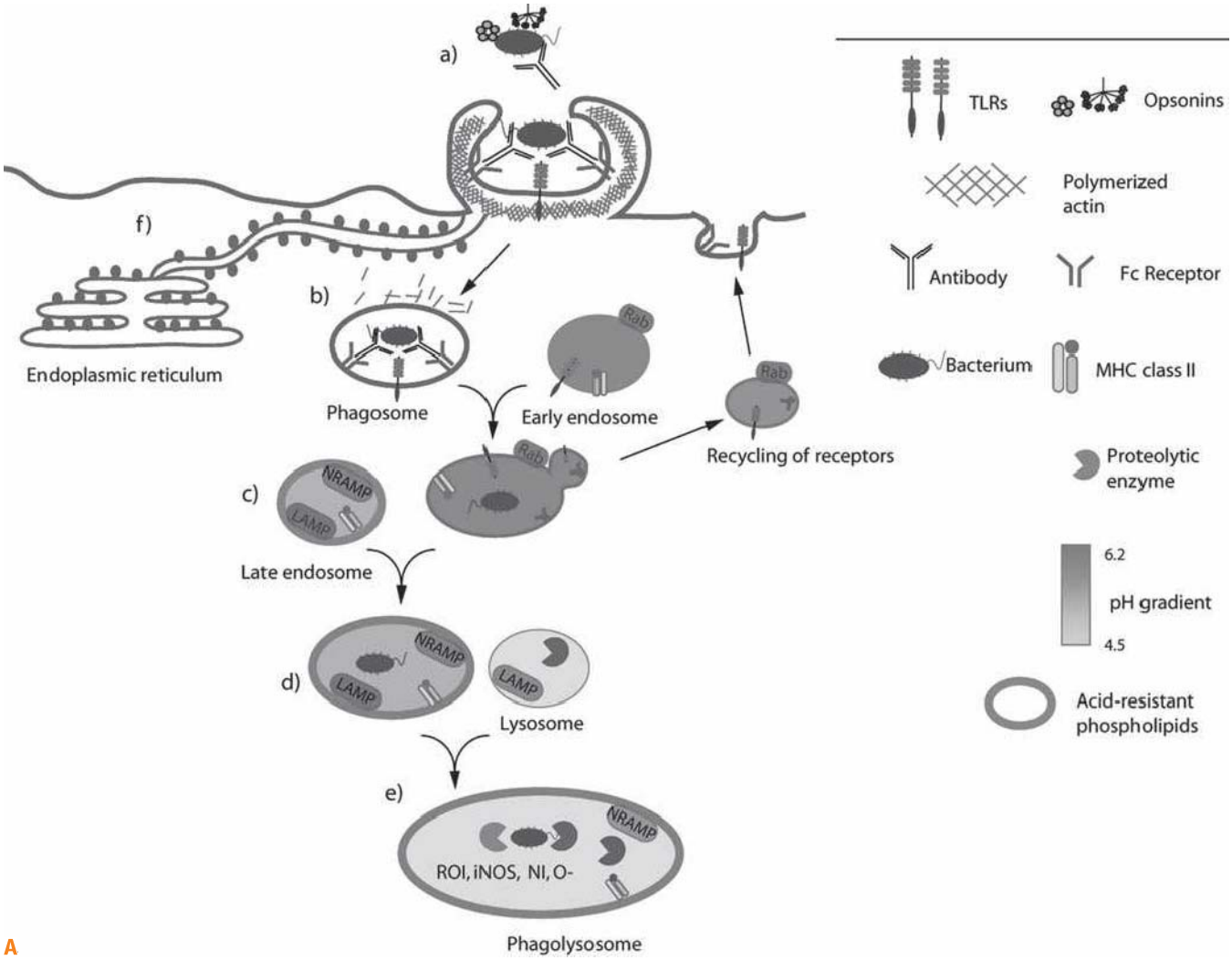


FIG. 19.6. Phagocytic Pathway in Macrophages. **A:** Heterophagy. Fc receptor-mediated phagocytosis. **a:** Microbes are coated with a variety of opsonins, including complement, pentraxin 3, and antibodies. A number of receptors are involved in initial recognition of microbes and induction of proinflammatory signaling (eg, the toll-like receptors [TLRs], and especially TLRs 2, 4, and 5), but these receptors are not phagocytic. Receptors involved in phagocytosis include the complement receptors, Fc receptors, and others. **b:** Fc receptor ligation initiates a signaling cascade that results in actin polymerization and extension of the plasma membrane. Phagocytosis mediated by this method occurs via the "zipper" mechanism (ie, sequential binding between the Fc receptors and their ligands along the length of the microbe). **c:** Fusion with the early endosome results in a slight drop in pH that results in the uncoupling of receptors with their ligands. Receptor recycling is facilitated by the Rab proteins, which also confer the ability to undergo subsequent fusion. The developing phagosome now contains major histocompatibility complex (MHC) class II and TLRs, including those that signal from within the developing endosome (eg, TLR9). **d:** Fusion with the late endosome results in the addition of the lysosome-associated membrane proteins, the accumulation of acid-resistant phospholipids, and a subsequent drop in pH. **e:** On fusion with lysosomes, the low pH results in the activation of a number of proteolytic enzymes. These are necessary for both direct antimicrobial activity and the creation of peptides for presentation via MHC class II. The phagolysosome is a highly oxidative environment, exposing the pathogen to destructive reactive oxygen and reactive nitrogen intermediates. **f:** Under certain circumstances, the phagosome may contain markers specific for the endoplasmic reticulum (ER). The ER may contribute directly to the creation of the phagocytic membrane in some circumstances (eg, phagocytosis of latex beads), or ER-derived vacuoles may contribute MHC class I and other molecules to the endosomes or the developing phagolysosome. *(continued)*

has been implicated in many but not all TLR-induced signaling resulting in transcription factor regulation, cell activation, or apoptosis.

Naturally occurring microbial ligands for these nonopsonic receptors are still poorly defined; individual receptors mediate microbial binding and uptake of microorganisms, although each contributes only part of total binding (see Fig. 19.6A).[72,84] Particle uptake involves multiple membrane receptors, the cytoskeleton, bulk membrane flow, and remodeling, including formation of a phagocytic synapse and signaling pathways[85,86] (see Fig. 19.8[87]). Phagosome formation and maturation resemble endocytic uptake, initiating Mϕ vesicle trafficking and recirculation, fusion with lysosomes, acidification, ion fluxes, and digestion. Table 19.2 lists immunologic and other markers

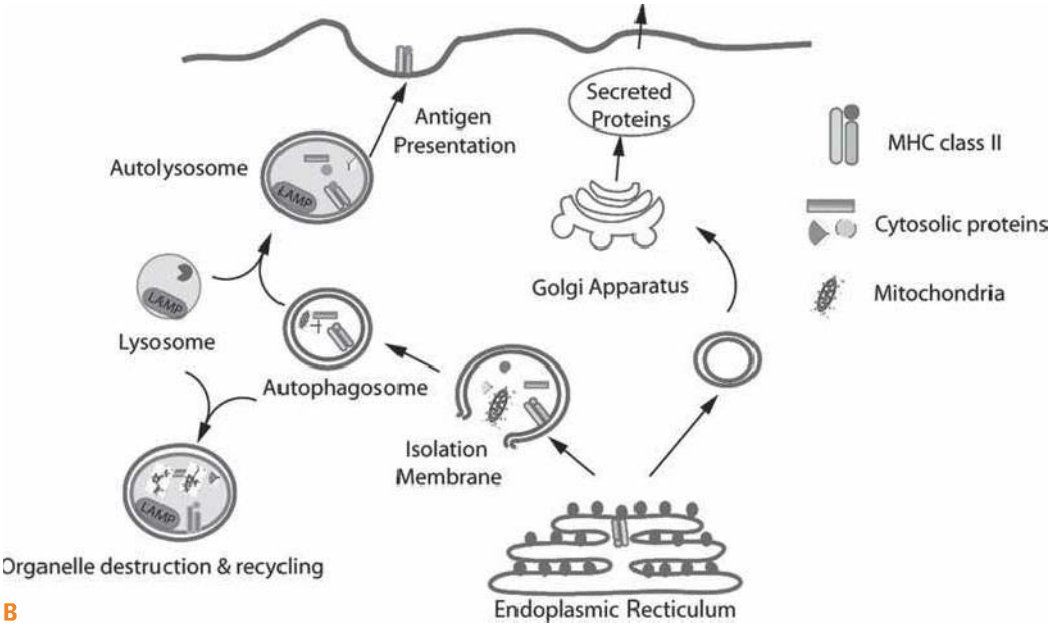


FIG. 19.6. *(continued)* **B:** The autophagy pathway. Autophagy is a homeostatic process that can be further enhanced in macrophages in the presence of interferons or by starvation. Cytosolic proteins and organelles are found in ER-derived cytoplasmic vesicles. These vesicles fuse with lysosomes, and the proteins and organelles are degraded and recycled. Conventional wisdom states that endogenous and cytoplasmic proteins are presented by MHC class I molecules, whereas exogenous peptides are presented by MHC class II molecules; however, it has become clear that peptide presentation is altered considerably on induction of autophagy. The presentation of peptides from intracellular and lysosomal source proteins is increased on MHC-II.

used to identify intracellular compartments.[88] Guanosine triphosphate–binding proteins and complex signaling cascades play an important role in these dynamic events.[62] A key issue that needs to be resolved is how cell and receptor functions are modulated so that microbial phagocytosis or invasion induces inflammatory responses, unlike the uptake of apoptotic cells. The MHC II biosynthesis and subcellular localization and proteolytic processing of peptide antigens in vacuolar and cytosolic compartments of APCs are discussed elsewhere in this volume. Cytokines, especially IL-4/13, IL-10, and IFNγ, influence endocytosis via MR-dependent and -independent pathways and selectively alter vesicle dynamics.

Pathogens vary in using Mϕ plasma membrane molecules for entry and evasion of host defenses, and modify the composition of the resultant phagosome membrane (Fig. 19.9).[89] Mycobacteria, for example, employ a range of mechanisms to evade killing by Mϕ, including delayed maturation of phagosomes and inhibition of fusion with lysosomes and acidification (Figs. 19.9 and 19.10).[90,91] *Listeria monocytogenes* escapes into the cytosol by disruption of the phagosome membrane,[92,93] whereas *Leishmania* multiplies in phagolysosomes.[94] Humoral (antibody, complement) and cellular (IFNγ) mechanisms overcome parasitization of Mϕ by diversion to lysosomes or induce killing via oxygen/nitrogen (O/N)- dependent and other mechanisms.

Entry of microbial constituents such as muramyldipeptide from vacuolar compartments to the cytosol can result in sensing by NOD-like receptors, inflammasome assembly, activation of caspase-1, and processing and release of IL-1 β.[95–97] Nucleic acid recognition results in cytoplasmic and mitochondrial-associated protein signaling responsible for type 1 interferon gene expression (see Fig. 19.9).[98] A novel ligand, c-di-AMP, secreted by cytosolic *Listeria monocytogenes*, activates a host type I IFN response[92] and may serve as a sensing mechanism for many intracellular pathogens (see Fig. 19.10).[99] STING is a direct innate immune sensor of cyclic di-GMP, another cytosolic metabolite of intracellular microbial infection.[100] It has recently become clear that induction of autophagy and apoptosis by intracellular pathogens, including *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*, provides important host-protective responses[101] (see Figs. 19.6B and 19.9A, B). For a review on autophagy in immunity and inflammation, see Levine et al.[102]

Although the "canonical" entry pathway described here and illustrated in Figure 19.6A is used and modified by many pathogens, recent evidence has shown that organisms such as *Legionella pneumophila*[102,103] (see Fig. 19.9C, D) and *Brucella abortus*[104] induce vacuoles with novel membrane components or colonize compartments derived from the Golgi apparatus and the endoplasmic reticulum. The relative contributions of plasma membrane and endoplasmic reticulum (see Fig. 19.6A) to vacuole formation varies considerably, depending on the nature of the phagocytic cargo or invading pathogen.[105] Opsonins such as antibody are able to divert the cargo to lysosomes. IFNγ can induce

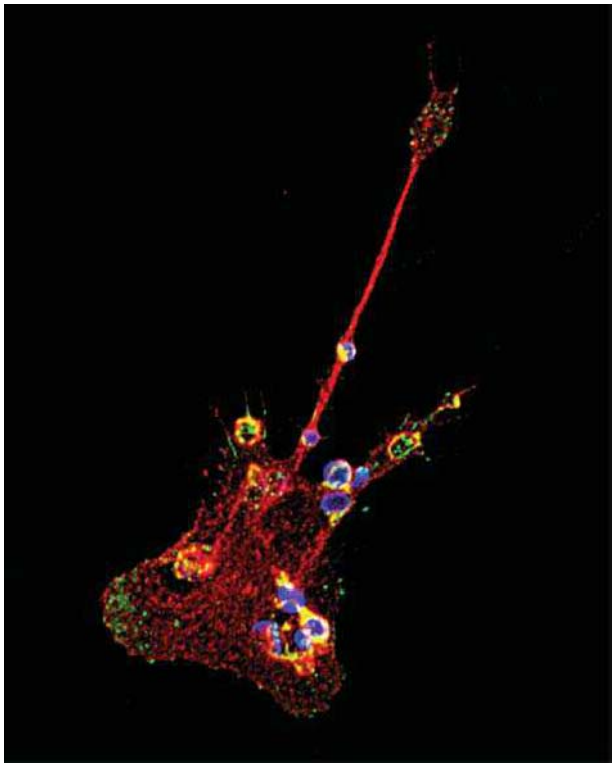


FIG. 19.7. Macrophages Rock! Macrophage engaging zymosan particles. Macrophages are adherent but motile. They use focal adhesions to anchor themselves to the extracellular matrix. Membrane ruffles and lamellipodia form at the leading edge of the cell to enable them to crawl around, and they extend pseudopodia to explore their environment and capture microbes and dead cells for phagocytosis. Consequently, their morphology is highly variable and constantly changing. © Helen Goodridge and David Underhill

TABLE 19.2 Membrane or Content Markers Used to Identify Phagosomes as Resembling a Given Endocytic Compartment or the Endoplasmic Reticulum

Compartment	Markers
Early endosome	Membrane markers: TfR, Rab5, annexins, I, II, and III
	Proteases: immature cathepsin D
Late endosome	Membrane markers: M6PR, Rab7, LAMP1, LAMP2, CD63, CD68
	Hydrolases: acid phosphatase, aryl sulfatase, trimetaphosphatase
	Proteases: cathepsin B, D, H, dipeptidyl peptidase I and II
	Phospholipid: LBPA
Lysosome	Membrane markers: LAMP1, LAMP2, CD63
	Hydrolases: acid phosphatase, aryl sulfatase, trimetaphosphatase
	Proteases: cathepsin B, D, H, dipeptidyl peptidase I and II
ER	Membrane markers: calnexin, calreticulin
	Enzyme: glucose-6-phosphatase

CD, cluster of differentiation; ER, endoplasmic reticulum; LAMP, lysosome-associated membrane protein; LBPA, lysobisphosphatidic acid; M6PR, mannose-6-phosphate receptor; TfR, transferrin receptor. From de Chastellier C. Electron microscopy. In: Cossart P, Boquet P, Normark, et al., eds. *Cellular Microbiology*, 2nd ed. Washington, DC: ASM Press, 2005:451, with permission.

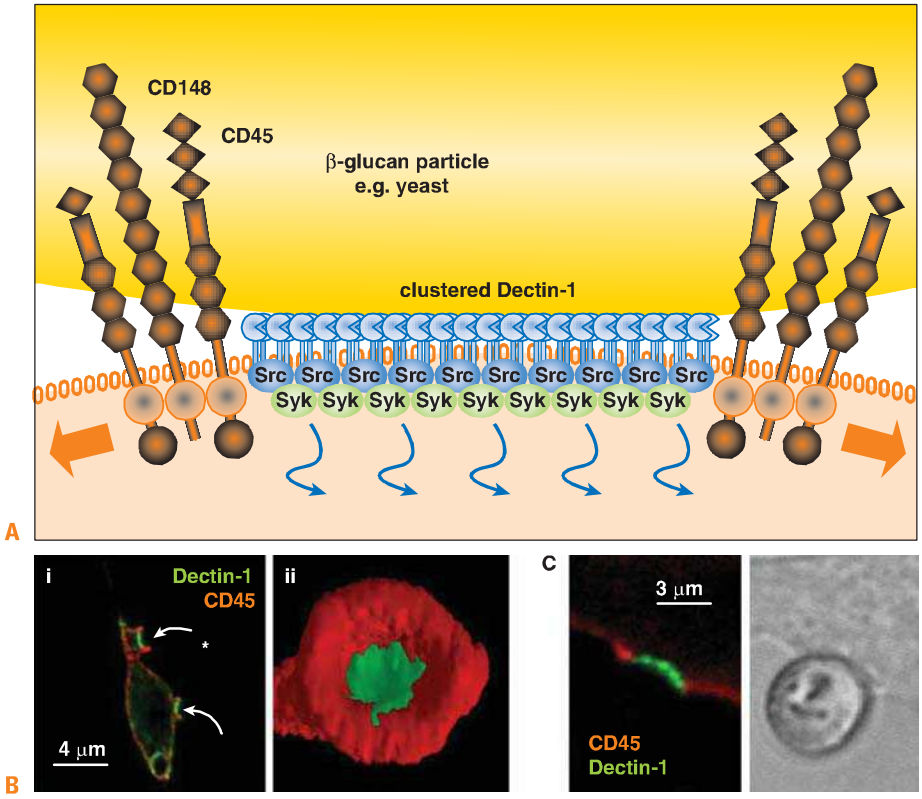
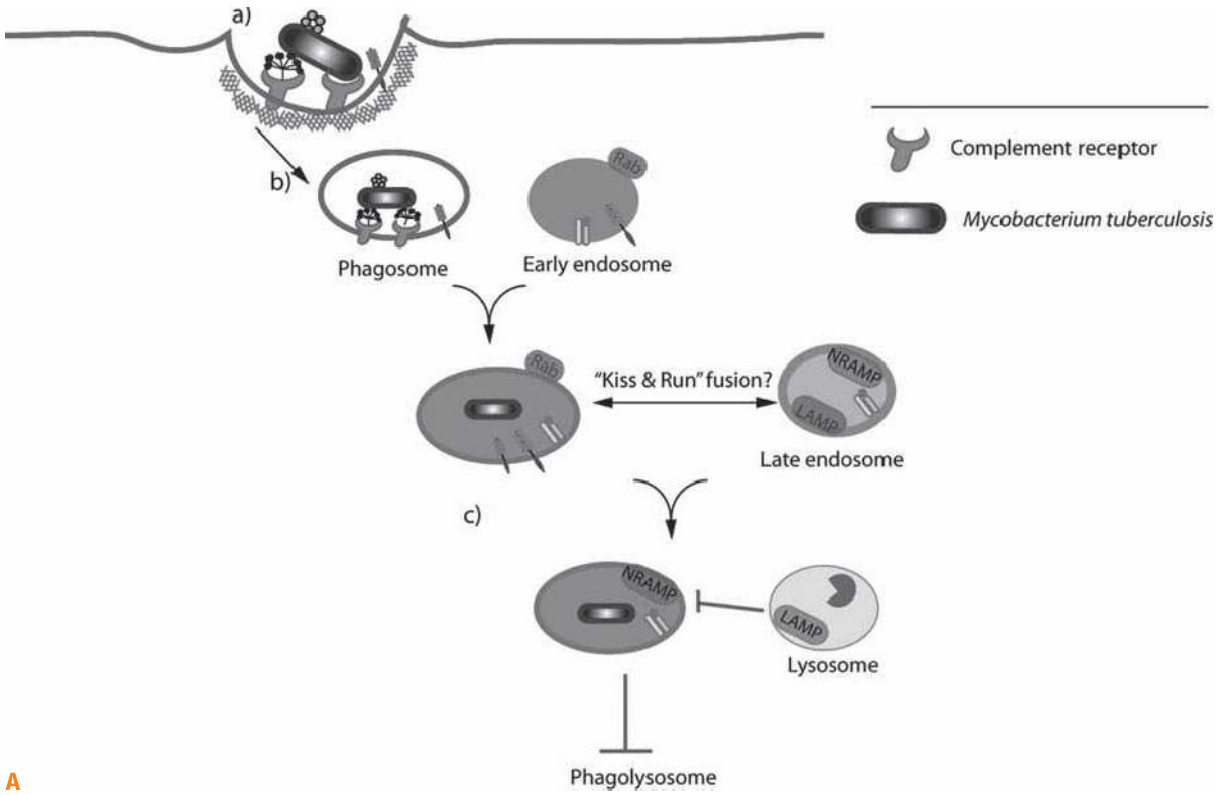


FIG. 19.8. The Dectin-1 Phagocytic Synapse. **A:** To permit sectin-1 signaling, cluster of differentiation (CD)45 and CD148 tyrosine phosphatases (which negatively regulate signal transduction downstream of dectin-1) are excluded from the contact site upon detection of beta-glucan particles by dectin-1 at the macrophage surface.The phagocytic synapse is similar to the immunological synapse that forms between an antigen presenting cell and a T cell. **B:** Confocal imaging of a macrophage encountering zymosan particles (**i**) shows two phagocytic synapses (arrows), and a three-dimensional isosurface model (**ii**) of one of them (*asterisk*). **C:** A phagocytic synapse that formed upon contact of a swollen *Aspergillus fumigatus* conidium with a macrophage. Images from Goodridge et al.,[87] with permission from Nature Publishing Group.



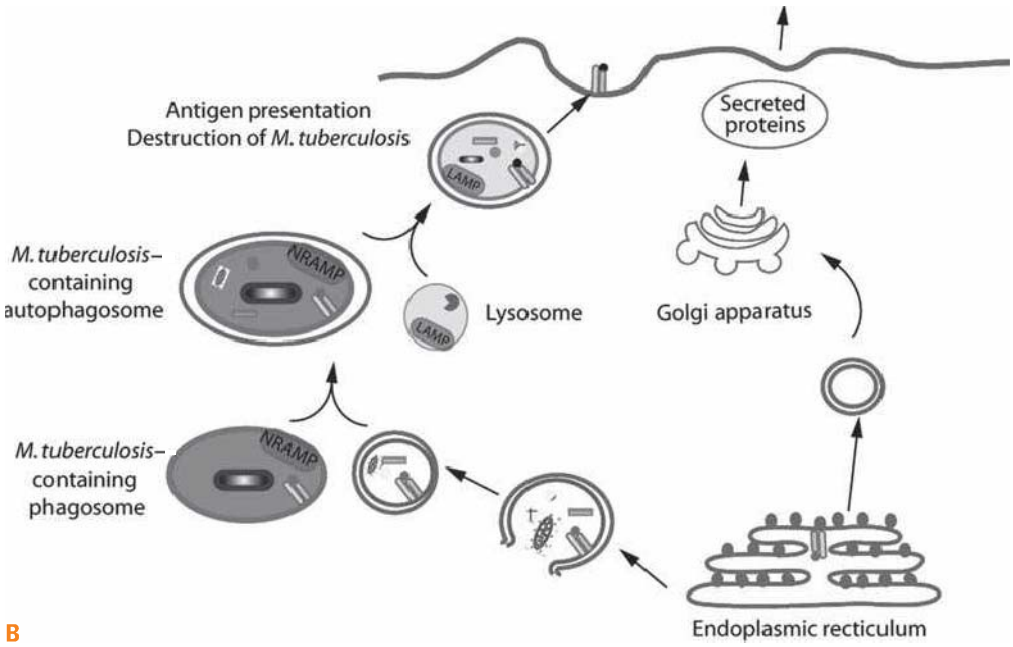
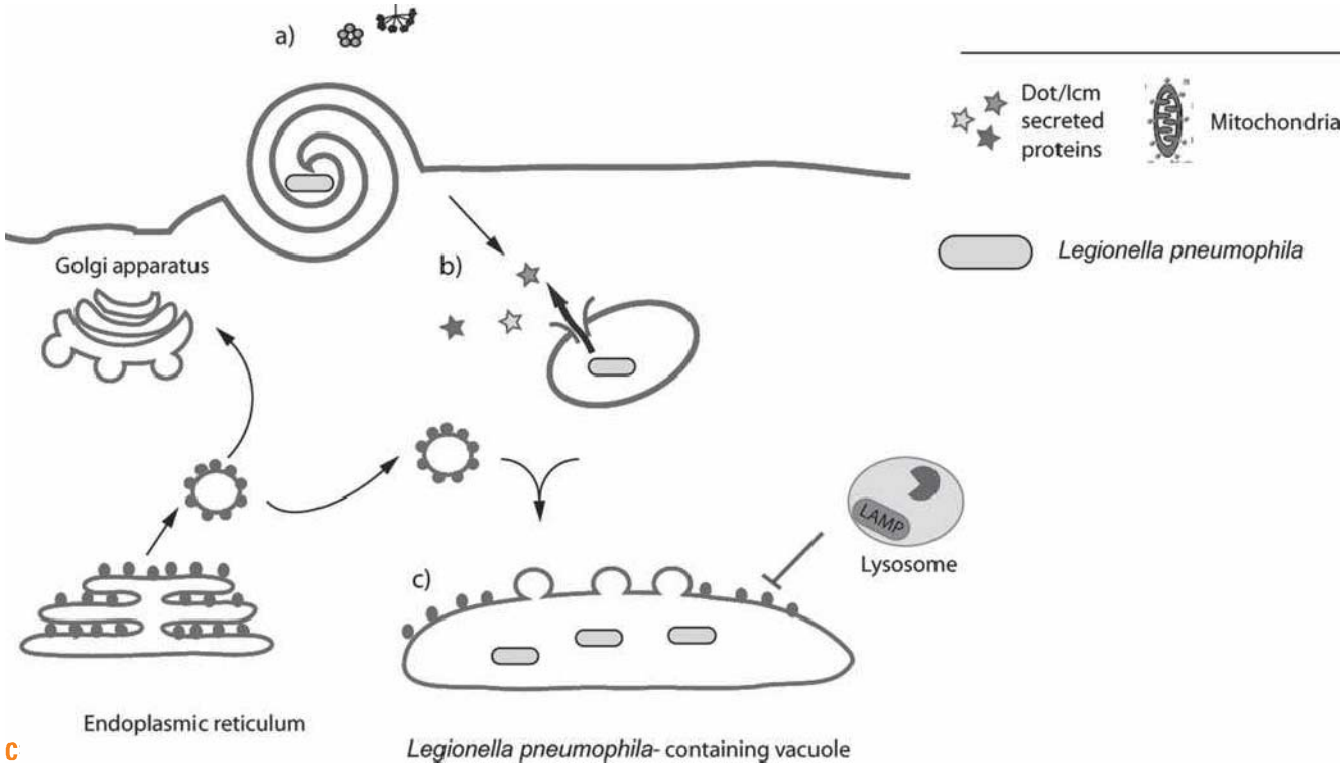
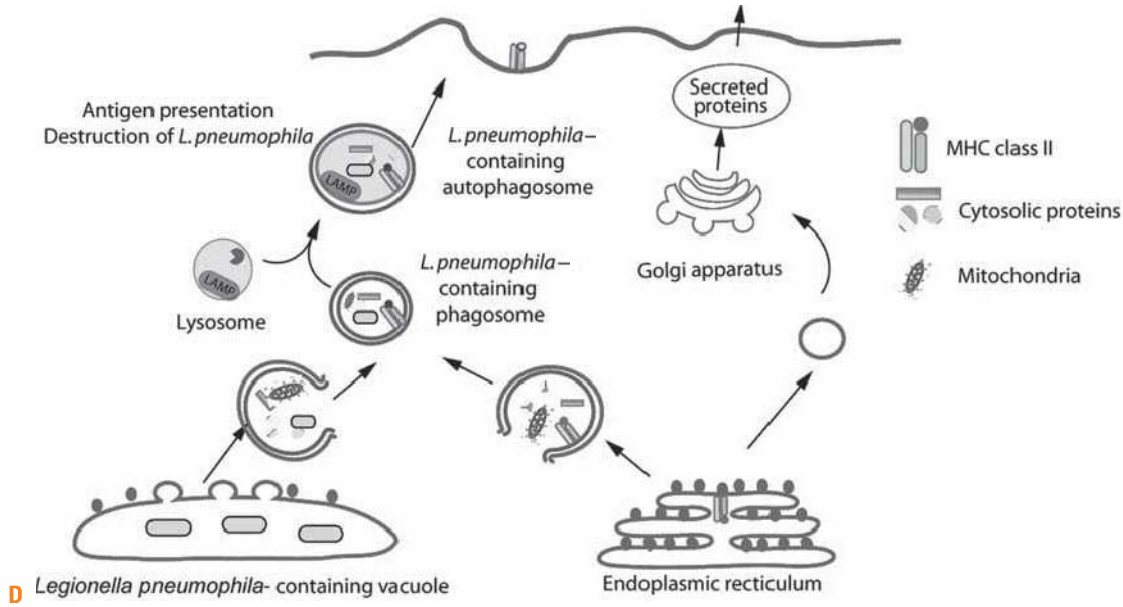


FIG. 19.9. Interactions of Selected Intracellular Pathogens with the Phagocytic Pathway. **A**: *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* evades destruction by subverting normal phagolysosome maturation. **a**: Phagocytosis of *M. tuberculosis* occurs via the complement pathway (although it may not require direct binding of complement to the bacterium) and is characterized by (**b**) "sinking" phagocytosis (ie, very little filopodia formation or actin polymerization). **c**: The *M. tuberculosis*–containing vacuoles contain markers of the early and late endosomes such as Rab5 and Nrampl but are devoid of most lysosomal markers, including the lysosome-associated membrane proteins, and do not undergo normal acidification. It has been proposed that the colocalization of some but not the normal allotment of endosomal markers can be explained by the concept of "kiss and run" fusion. This implies that the early and late endosomes may have transient contact with the *M. tuberculosis*–containing vacuoles, and there may be a selective transfer of markers rather than a complete fusion. The high pH of the *M. tuberculosis*–containing vacuole (pH 6.2) does not allow optimum loading of major histocompatibility complex (MHC) class II molecules, and thus they remain loaded with nonmycobacterial peptides. Elevated pH also inhibits production of inducible nitric oxide synthase, which is required for killing. In the presence of interferon (IFN)-γ, normal acidification may be restored, resulting in destruction of the pathogen. **B**: *M. tuberculosis*–containing phagosomes are targeted to the autophagy pathway on treatment with IFNγ. IFNγ treatment can both restore the normal process of acidification and alter the expression of a number of endoplasmic reticulum proteins, the result of which is the targeting of *M. tuberculosis*–containing phagosomes to the autophagosomes. The fusion between the *M. tuberculosis*–containing phagosomes and lysosomes results in an autolysosome with low pH that destroys *M. tuberculosis* and results in *M. tuberculosis* peptides being presented via MHC class II. *(continued)*



C



D

FIG. 19.9. *(continued)* **C:** *Legionella pneumophila* survives intracellularly by subverting phagosome maturation at an early stage. **a:** The recognition and uptake of *L. pneumophila* are not well characterized, but phagocysis occurs via a "spiral" mechanism. **b:** Once inside the cell, *L. pneumophila* uses a specialized secretion system (ie, Dot/Icm secretion system) to secrete proteins directly into the cytosol. These proteins alter the morphology of the vacuole in a number of ways, for example, by actively recruiting vesicles in transit from the endoplastic reticulum to the Golgi apparatus and inhibiting the fusion of lysosomes. **c:** The *L. pneumophila*–containing vacuole thus has many similarities to the Golgi apparatus and endoplastic reticulum, and is rich in peptides, the primary carbon source for *L. pneumophila.* **D:** Macrophages enhance autophagy in response to *L. pneumophila.* A consequence of residing in a vacuole that so closely resembles the endoplastic reticulum is that it is subject to autophagy. *L. pneumophila*–containing phagosomes fuse with lysosomes, resulting in destruction of the pathogen and antigen presentation. Factors secreted from *L. pneumophila* cause macrophages to increase the number of autophagosomes, although autophagosomes containing *L. pneumophila* mature more slowly, and thus it is believed that the bacteria encode factors to delay normal progression.

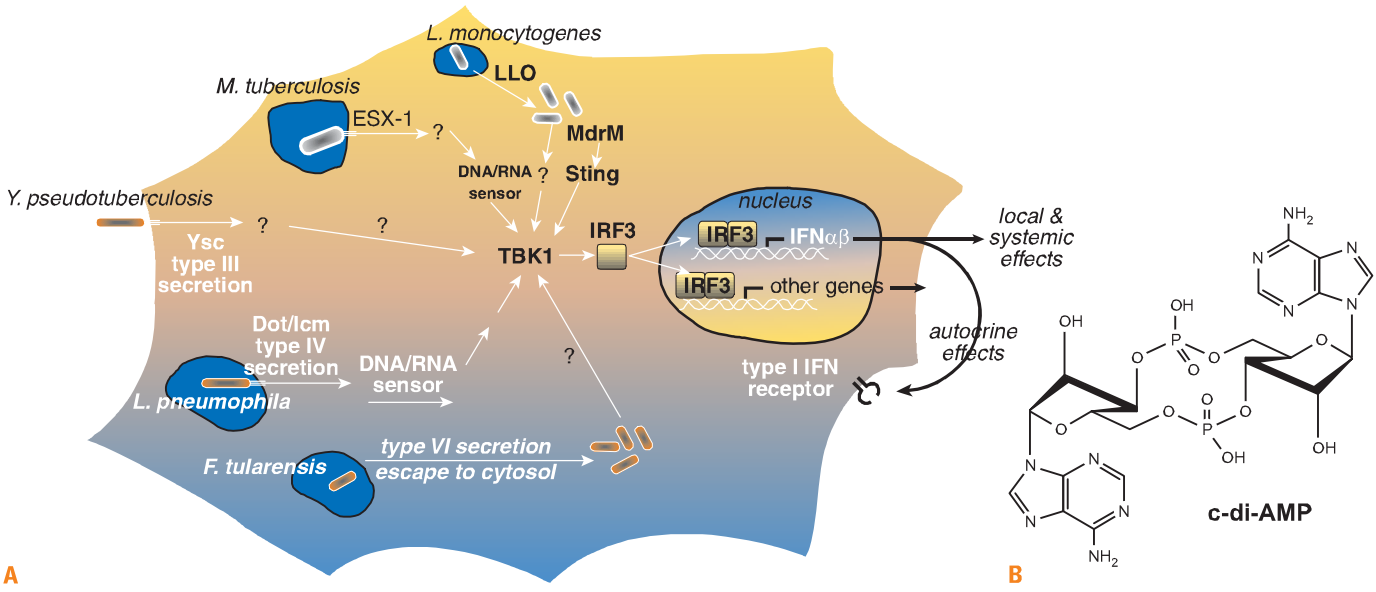


FIG. 19.10. Host Pathways Leading to the Expression of Interferon (IF) Beta and Coregulated Genes. **A:** Virulent, but not avirulent, intracellular pathogens activate a cytosolic surveillance pathway of innate immunity. Induction of IFN beta by all depicted bacterial species is MyD88 and TRIF-independent, indicating that toll-like receptors are not required. Sting and TBK1 are necessary for IRF3 activation.Wild-type *Listeria monocytogenes* enters the cytosol and activates the expression of IFN beta, while LLO-minus mutants that fail to enter the cytosol do not. Mutants in the multidrug efflux pump, MdrM, enter the cytosol, but induce threefold less IFN beta expression. The *L. monocytogenes* ligand is c-di-AMP **(B)**, while the receptor remains unknown. Mycobacterium tuberculosis resides in a phagosome that resembles early endosomes. Mutants in the ESX-1 auxiliary secretion system and phthiocerol dimycocerosate synthesis fail to induce IFN beta expression. Both TBK-1 and IRF3 are required. The infectious spore from *Histoplasma capsulatum* induces the expression of IFN beta, whereas the parasitic yeast form does not. *Legionella pneumophila* resides in a modified vacuolar compartment that has features of the endoplasmic reticulum. The Dot/Icm-type IV secretion system is necessary for intracellular growth and, independently, for induction of IFN beta expression. Both MDA5 and MAVS are required, suggesting that the ligand may be ribonucleic acid. *Francisella tularensis* needs to enter the cytosol to induce expression of IFN beta. The putative type VI secretion system is required for entry into the cytosol and induction of IFN beta. In each case, nucleic acids may be the ligands specifically recognized by cytosolic receptors, leading to the activation of IFN beta and co-regulated genes. Courtesy of D.A. Portnoy and R.E. Vance. For further information see Vance et al.[91] and Woodward et al.[92]

guanosine triphosphate-binding proteins that associate with vacuoles inhabited by a range of intracellular pathogens (eg, *Toxoplasma gondii*), thus marking them for destruction within the macrophage.[62,106]

Clearance of proteinase-inhibitor complexes (eg, by CD91) and of haptoglobin-hemoglobin complexes by the Mϕ-receptor CD163, and protection by hemeoxygenase-1, are essential homeostatic functions of tissue Mϕ, limiting potentially injurious extracellular molecules.[107] Other molecules released by injured infected cells can serve as alarmins[108] and danger signals (eg, heat shock proteins[109] and S100 family members,[110] inducers of inflammatory and immune responses).

Major unsolved questions remain concerning phagocytosis, intracellular infection, and immune responses. How do sterile particulate antigens[111] and microbial agents induce T=cell responses, and what are the relative contributions to this process of Mϕ and DCs, abundant and sparser professional phagocytes, respectively? What is the role of Scavenger and RAGE[72,110] receptors mediating entry of diverse ligands in subsequent adaptive immunity? Does TLR engagement within vacuoles determine the kinetics of phagosome maturation as well as induce local intracellular responses? What determines the balance between total antigen degradation and loading of MHC molecules? What interactions take place between intracellular pathogens and host Mϕ, especially in regard to hypoxia[112] and nutritional requirements of the host and microbe? What is the role of pathogen-derived secretory products in the vacuolar milieu, in recruitment of organelles such as endoplasmic reticulum and mitochondria, and in effects on host cell biosynthesis? What are the intracellular killing mechanisms, and how can organisms survive, or become latent, within Mϕ? To what extent do extracellular pathogens interact with macrophages and DCs[113]? Finally, what receptor-mediated signals induce the secretion of Mϕ molecules such as IL-12, IL-23, and IL-10 that direct and regulate the resultant specific immune response?

Gene Expression and Secretion

Knowledge of Mϕ gene expression and protein synthesis is growing rapidly from the application of gene array and proteomic technologies. After surface and endocytic stimulation, the mature Mϕ is able to secrete a very large range of high- and low-molecular weight products. These include enzymes involved in antimicrobial resistance (lysozyme), neutral proteinases and arachidonate metabolites that

TABLE 19.3 Modulation of Macrophage Phenotype

Category	Stimulus	Selected Marker Changes	Function
Innate activation	Microbial products (eg, LPS, other TLR ligands)	Costimulatory molecule expression, MARCO upregulation	Phagocytosis, adaptive immunity
Classic activation	Interferon γ	MHC II upregulation, proinflammatory cytokine secretion, inducible NO synthase	Cell-mediated immunity (eg, intracellular pathogens)
Alternative activation	IL-4/IL-13	Upregulation of MHC II, arginase, mannose receptor, Ym1, FIZZ1 (resistin-like), production of selected chemokines, macrophage fusion	Parasitic and allergic immunity, repair
Innate and acquired deactivation	Apoptotic cells, IL-10, glucocorticoids, TGFβ, PGE2	Various surface and secretory markers, (eg, anti-TNFα actions)	Anti-inflammatory and altered immunity

IL, interleukin; LPS, lipopolysaccharide; MHC, major histocompatibility complex; NO, nitric oxide; PGE2, prostaglandin E2; TGFβ, transforming growth factor-β; TLR, toll-like receptor; TNFα, tumor necrosis factor-α.

contribute to inflammation and tissue repair, cytokines such as IL-1 and TNFα that modulate the activities of other leukocytes and endothelium, and reactive oxygen and nitrogen intermediates implicated in host defense. Proinflammatory cytokines account for part of the effects of immune adjuvants in promoting, broadening, and sustaining humoral responses. The ability to release these products depends on the prior history of the Mϕ, whether resident, recruited, or activated (primed), its encounters with microbial wall products, including LPS acting via TLRs, or with apoptotic cells, and exposure to cytokines and other immunomodulatory molecules in its immediate environment. Ligation of specific receptors induces various signaling pathways[114] and is able to alter gene expression in the Mϕ selectively. NF-κB,[115] Pu-1 and other transcription factors,[116–119] and IFN regulatory factor families[119,120] contribute to Mϕ-restricted or activation-dependent changes in gene expression, as does epigenetic regulation.[121] Product expression depends further on translational regulation, posttranslational modification such as proteolytic processing, intracellularly or at the cell surface, and coexpression of inhibitors such as IL-10. Messenger RNA turnover varies greatly for different products due to the presence or absence of specific 3′ instability sequences. Many Mϕ products are labile and act close to the cell surface; overproduction results in tissue catabolism and systemic effects associated with widespread infection or chronic inflammation, often as a result of an immunologically driven disease process.

Whereas most bioactivities have been defined in vitro, there is evidence that expression of Mϕ secretory activities may be quite different in situ; lysozyme production is characteristic of all Mϕ in culture but is downregulated on most resident cells in vivo, and its expression by granuloma Mϕ, for example, depends on induction by immune or phagocytic stimuli. 5′ promoter sequences of human lysozyme and CD68 transgenes have been used to target tissue- and Mϕ activation-specific expression of reporter molecules in vivo. The promoters of these and other Mϕ-restricted molecules may, in due course, make it possible to direct Mϕ biosynthetic activities precisely, to boost or inhibit immune responses.

Modulation of Macrophage Activation in Vitro

Our understanding of Mϕ activation derives from studies of induction of MHC II and costimulatory antigens; of effector functions such as proteinase, TNFα, reactive oxygen intermediate and reactive nitrogen intermediate release; of expression of membrane receptors such as MRs; and of resistance to infectious agents, for example, *Mycobacteria*, *Listeria*, *Candida*, and HIV. Generalizations can be made, but it must be remembered that organisms vary considerably in their ability to evade or survive Mϕ restriction mechanisms, and they interact with Mϕ in individual ways. Various inhibitory cell surface molecules (eg, CD200, SIRPα,[122] and TAM receptors[123]) are known to regulate Mϕ activation through interactions with other activating plasma membrane receptors. Receptors including FcRγ use paired immunoreceptor tyrosine-based activation motif and immunoreceptor tyrosine-based inhibitory motif intracellular signaling motifs.

Figure 19.4 and Table 19.3 illustrate various pathways and markers of Mϕ activation that result from microbial, cellular, and cytokine interactions. Knowledge is based mainly on in vitro experiments and in vivo challenge of selected animal models. Innate activation depends on direct stimulation by microbial products, independent of cytokines, although often enhanced by concomitant stimulation (eg, by IFNγ). Newly discovered markers of innate activation of mouse peritoneal macrophages include upregulation of MARCO, SR-A, via a TLR pathway, and of CD200, a more widely expressed IgSF membrane glycoprotein able to inhibit TLR, NOD-like receptors, and inflammasome activation. Induction of MARCO, a phagocytic receptor for a range of bacteria, represents an adaptation of the innate immune response to microbial contact Analysis of the actions of individual cytokines (IFNγ, IL-10, IL-4/13) on defined Mϕ targets (murine peritoneal Mϕ and

human monocyte–derived Mϕ) reveals three characteristic and distinctive in vitro phenotypes across a spectrum of activation.[124,125] IFNγ and its production and amplification via IL-12, IL-23, or IL-18 play a central role in MHC II induction, enhanced antimicrobial resistance, and proinflammatory cytokine production, characteristic of Th1-type (M1-type) responses; conversely, IL-10 suppresses markers of activation while inducing selective expression of other Mϕ genes. A comparable link between Mϕ/APC and the induction of Th2-type responses has proved elusive to identify. IL-4/13 have closely overlapping functions and induce an alternative, M2-type activation phenotype in Mϕ consistent with increased APC function and humoral responses in allergy and parasitic infection as well as giant cell formation (see Table 19.3).[126] It is important to distinguish modulation of Mϕ immunologic properties by IL-4/13 from marked deactivation and inhibition of proinflammatory and cytotoxic functions by IL-10 and glucocorticosteroid. Immune complexes are also able to induce an analogous, regulatory alternative activation pathway, which overlaps with, but differs from IL-4/13– and IL-10–induced phenotypes.[127] By extension, GM-CSF, glucocorticosteroids, TGF-β, and type I IFN all modulate Mϕ gene expression with individual signatures.

The interplay of cytokines derived from Mϕ themselves, from activated T- and B-lymphocytes, and from other cells (eg, natural killer cells, endothelial cells) results in reciprocal positive or negative interactions and time-dependent changes in activating and inhibitory signals. Some predictions from in vitro studies can be extended to the intact host. For example, IFNγ, IL-12, and IL-23 deficiency results in inability to restrict opportunistic organisms in murine models and in humans, and inducible nitric oxide synthase is important for resistance to a range of infectious agents.[128] IL-10 deficiency, on the other hand, results in overactive Th1-dependent inflammation, for example, in gut. IL-4 deficiency by itself has little effect on Mϕ phenotype in vivo because IL-13 mimics many of its actions. These cytokines share a common receptor subunit, and its targeted genetic ablation makes it possible to study Mϕ that lack the ability to respond to both IL-4 and IL-13.

The foregoing analysis is oversimplified. Combinations of cytokines in vitro have different effects on Mϕ than the sum of the parts. For example, the combination of IL-4 and GM-CSF induces differentiation of human monocytes into immature DCs, whereas each alone induces cells with distinctive Mϕ properties. Furthermore, a particular "Th2-type" cytokine such as IL-10 can display radically different effects on antimicrobial (inducible nitric oxide synthase dependent) killing, which is markedly suppressed, and anti-HIV activities of Mϕ, which are enhanced. Whereas IFNγ and IL-4 may have opposing actions on MR expression and phagocytosis of yeast, in combination they synergize to enhance uptake markedly. Other combinations of cytokines, such as IFNαβ and IFNγ, can antagonize each other, presumably by competition for signaling pathways. Selected pathogens such as *Francisella tularensis* are able to modulate macrophage responses to infection from an M1- to an M2-type, thus facilitating their survival.[129] Finally, alternative activation of macrophages has recently been implicated in thermoregulation.[130] A great deal remains to be learned about Mϕ behavior in physiology as well as disease.

CONCLUSION AND SOME REMAINING ISSUES

Mϕ influence and respond to all other cells involved in immunity, during both the afferent and efferent limbs. Many of the molecules that mediate particular functions are now defined, but their role within the Mϕ and in intercellular interactions is often poorly understood. Mϕ developed during the evolution of multicellular organisms before immunologically specific, clonotypic responses of B- and T-lymphocytes emerged. A recent report of a rearranging, TCR-like receptor in macrophages needs confirmation.[131] Mϕ themselves diversified in parallel with T-helper lymphocytes, generating DCs as specialized APCs for naïve T-lymphocytes and yielding a range of effector cell phenotypes in response to diverse activated T cells, both CD4+ and CD8+. Mϕ and their derivatives cluster with differentiating hemopoietic cells in fetal liver and bone marrow, with developing thymocytes, with naïve CD4+ T lymphocytes and antigen during immune induction, and with activated T cells and microbial pathogens in granuloma formation (see Fig. 19.2). In addition, they associate with antigen-stimulated B-lymphocytes during cell expansion, diversification, and apoptosis. A major challenge will be to define the role of specific and accessory surface molecules by which Mϕ discriminate between live and dying cells and to uncover the intrinsic and extrinsic factors that control Mϕ activities within these diverse immune cell interactions.

Our understanding of the multiple roles of Mϕ and DCs in immunoregulation is also evolving as we better appreciate their specializations and adaptations. Central issues in the immunobiology of Mϕ remain interesting topics for further investigation. These include the following:

Mϕ display broad functions in homeostasis, beyond host defense and immunity, which may be special instances of a more general role in preserving host integrity, comparable to that of the central nervous and endocrine systems. Their dispersion, plasticity, and responsiveness raise obvious questions for the biologist. In particular, what are their roles in development, in trophic interactions within different organs, in angiogenesis,[132] repair, and fibrosis[133]?

The Mϕ lie at the heart of the classic immunologic question of recognition of altered or non-self, especially of particulates. What are the actual exogenous and endogenous[134] ligands recognized by the diverse range of plasma membrane receptors capable of direct detection, and what determines whether uptake of a target is immunologically silent or productive? How can this information be harnessed for vaccine development?

The delineation of further subsets of CD4+ T lymphocytes (TH17, regulatory T cells) suggests that it will be useful to define the effects on the Mϕ phenotype of contact-and cytokine-dependent interactions with these cells. It is likely that further distinctive type 2 activation pathways of Mϕ will be discovered by microarray and protein analysis.

Once activated, Mϕ change their ability to recognize and destroy targets, directly or in concert with antibody, complement, and other less-defined opsonins. Can Mϕ directly kill virus-infected and other immunologically activated cells? If so, do they use MHC matching, even in a limited way, and do they contribute to tolerance and, by implication, autoimmunity by failure to perform such a suppressive function?

A special case in which Mϕ are present in large numbers at a site of "failure" to respond immunologically is the fetoplacental unit. CSF-1 is produced locally at high levels; does this deactivate Mϕ or make them switch to perform a trophic role? Do tumors that are rich in Mϕ adopt a similar strategy[135–137]? Catabolism of tryptophan by Mϕ enzymes has been put forward as another mechanism for preventing local destruction of an allogeneic fetus.[138] This is but one example of a growing interest in immunometabolism.[139]

Although Mϕ express a large number of genes involved in household functions and share expression of others with a limited range of cell types, they also express highly restricted molecules responsible for unique functions. Can these be harnessed for Mϕ-specific gene targeting at selected microanatomic sites to deliver functionally precise signals at predetermined times? Techniques are becoming available for at least part of this fantasy, and they should provide new insights into the multiple roles of the Mϕ in immunity.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

I thank my colleagues for discussions; Drs. Martinez-Pomares, Bowdish, Goodridge, Underhill, Portnoy, and Vance for providing illustrations; and Dr. Annette Pluddemann for help in preparing the manuscript. Research in the author's laboratory was supported by grants from the Medical Research Council, UK, the Wellcome Trust, the Arthritis Research Council, and the British Heart Foundation.

REFERENCES

1. Gordon S, ed. *Cells of the Innate Immune System: Role in Health and Disease*. London, United Kingdom: Biomedical and Life Sciences Collection, Henry Stewart Talks Limited; 2012.
2. Gordon S, ed. *Macrophage Heterogeneity and Function*. London, United Kingdom: Biomedical and Life Sciences Collection, Henry Stewart Talks Limited; 2012.
3. Cavaillon JM. The historical milestones in the understanding of leukocyte biology initiated by Elie Metchnikoff. *J Leukoc Biol*. 2011;90(3):413–424. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21628329
4. Gordon S. The macrophage: past, present and future. *Eur J Immunol*. 2007;37(suppl 1):S9–S17. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17972350
5. Gordon S, ed. *Innate Immunity: Host Recognition and Response in Health and Disease*. London, United Kingdom: Biomedical and Life Sciences Collection, Henry Stewart Talks Limited; 2009.
6. Medzhitov R, Shevach EM, Trinchieri G, et al. Highlights of 10 years of immunology in Nature Reviews Immunology. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2011;11(10):693–702. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21941295
7. Metchnikoff E. *Immunity in Infective Disease*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press; 1905.
8. Russell DG, Gordon S, eds. *Phagocyte-Pathogen Interactions: Macrophages and the Host Response to Infection*. Washington, DC: American Society of Microbiology; 2009.
9. Beutler B. *Nobel Lectures*. 2012.
10. Hoffman J. *Nobel Lecture*. 2012. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22620286
11. Moberg CL. An appreciation of Ralph Marvin Steinman (1943–2011). *J Exp Med*. 2011;208:2337–2342.
12. Steinman RM, Moberg CL. Zanvil Alexander Cohn 1926–1993. *J Exp Med*. 1994;179(1):1–30. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8270858
13. Wiktor-Jedrzejczak W, Gordon S. Cytokine regulation of the macrophage (M phi) system studied using the colony stimulating factor-1- deficient op/op mouse. *Physiol Rev*. 1996;76(4):927–947. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8874489
14. Geissmann F, Gordon S, Hume DA, Mowat AM, Randolph GJ. Unravelling mononuclear phagocyte heterogeneity. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2010;10(6):453–460. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20467425
15. Gordon S, Taylor PR. Monocyte and macrophage heterogeneity. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2005;5(12):953–964. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16322748
16. Morris L, Graham CF, Gordon S. Macrophages in haemopoietic and other tissues of the developing mouse detected by the monoclonal antibody F4/80. *Development*. 1991;112(2):517–526. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1794320
17. Chorro L, Geissmann F. Development and homeostasis of ' resident' myeloid cells: the case of the Langerhans cell. *Trends Immunol*. 2010;31(12):438–445. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21030305
18. Chow A, Brown BD, Merad M. Studying the mononuclear phagocyte system in the molecular age. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2011;11(11):788–798. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22025056
19. Jenkins SJ, Ruckerl D, Cook PC, et al. Local macrophage proliferation, rather than recruitment from the blood, is a signature of TH2 inflammation. *Science*. 2011;332(6035):1284–1288. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21566158
20. Auffray C. Sieweke MH, Geissmann F. Blood monocytes: development, heterogeneity, and relationship with dendritic cells. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 2009;27:669–692. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19132917
21. Geissmann F, Jung S, Littman DR. Blood monocytes consist of two principal subsets with distinct migratory properties. *Immunity*. 2003;19(1):71–82. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12871640
22. Geissmann F, Manz MG, Jung S, Sieweke S, Merad M, Ley K. Development of monocytes, macrophages, and dendritic cells. *Science*. 2010;327(5966):656–661. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20133564
23. Ziegler-Heitbrock L, Ancuta P, Crowe S, et al. Nomenclature of monocytes and dendritic cells in blood. *Blood*. 2010;116(16):e74–80. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20628149
24. Hume DA. Applications of myeloid-specific promoters in transgenic mice support in vivo imaging and functional genomics but do not support the concept of distinct macrophage and dendritic cell lineages or roles in immunity. *J Leukoc Biol*. 2010;89(4):525–538. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21169519
25. Fogg DK, Sibon C, Miled C, et al. A clonogenic bone marrow progenitor specific for macrophages and dendritic cells. *Science*. 2006;311(5757):83–87. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16322423
26. Collin M, Bigley V, Haniffa M, Hambleton S. Human dendritic cell deficiency: the missing ID? *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2011;11(9):575–583. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21852794
27. Gautier EL, Jakubzick C, Randolph GJ. Regulation of the migration and survival of monocyte subsets by chemokine receptors and its relevance to atherosclerosis. *Arterioscler Thromb Vasc Biol*. 2009;29(10):1412–1418. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19759373
28. Swirski FK, Nahrendorf M, Erzrodt M, et al. Identification of splenic reservoir monocytes and their deployment to inflammatory sites. *Science*. 2009;325(5940):612–616. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19644120
29. Ishii M, Egen JG, Klauschen F, et al. Sphingosine-1-phosphate mobilizes osteoclast precursors and regulates bone homeostasis. *Nature*. 2009;458(7237):524–528. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19204730
30. Zhu FG, Reich CF, Pisetsky DS. The role of the macrophage scavenger receptor in immune stimulation by bacterial DNA and synthetic oligonucleotides. *Immunology*. 2001;103(2):226–234. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11412310
31. Yona S, Jung S. Monocytes: subsets, origins, fates and functions. *Curr Opin Hematol*. 2009;17(1):53–59. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19770654
32. Macrophages.com. Homepage. www.macrophages.com.
33. Gordon S, Hamman J, Lin HH, Stacey M. F4/80 and the related adhesion-GPCRs. *Eur J Immunol*. 2011;41(9):2472–2476. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21952799
34. Taylor PR, Martinez-Pomares L, Stacey M, Lin HH, Brown GD, Gordon S. Macrophage receptors and immune recognition. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 2005;23:901–944. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15771589
35. Chihara T, Suzu S, Hassan R, et al. IL-34 and M-CSF share the receptor Fms but are not identical in biological activity and signal activation. *Cell Death Differ*. 2010;17(12):1917–1927. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20489731
36. Den Haan JMM, Kraal G. Innate immune functions of macrophage subpopulations in the spleen. *J Innate Immun*, In Press. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20489731
37. Martinez-Pomares L, Gordon S. CD169 + macrophages at the crossroad of antigen presentation. *Trends in Immunology*, In Press. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22192781
38. Lin HH, Faunce DE, Stacey M, et al. The macrophage F4/80 receptor is required for the induction of antigen-specific efferent regulatory T cells in peripheral tolerance. *J Exp Med*. 2005;201(10):1615–1625. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15883173
39. Taylor PR, Gordon S, Martinez-Pomares L. The mannose receptor: linking homeostasis and immunity through sugar recognition. *Trends Immunol*. 2005;26(2):104–110. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15668126
40. Ganz T. Hepcidin and iron regulation, 10 years later. *Blood*. 2011;117(17):4425–4433. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21346250
41. Kurotaki D, Kon S, Bae K, et al. CSF-1-dependent red pulp macrophages regulate CD4 T cell responses. *J Immunol*. 2011;186(4):2229–2237. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21239712
42. Cyster J. Lymph node macrophages. *J Innate Immun*, In Press.
43. Bain CC, Mowat AM. Intestinal macrophages - specialised adaptation to a unique environment. *Eur J Immunol*. 2011;41(9):2494–2498. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21952804
44. Ivanov II, Littman DR. Modulation of immune homeostasis by commensal bacteria. *Curr Opin Microbiol*. 2011;14(1):106–114. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21215684

45. Graham LM, Brown GD. The Dectin-2 family of C-type lectins in immunity and homeostasis. *Cytokine*. 2009;48(1–2):148–155. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19665392
46. Perry VH, Andersson PB, Gordon S. Macrophages and inflammation in the central nervous system. *Trends Neurosci*. 1993;16(7):268–273. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7689770
47. Shi C, Pamer EG. Monocyte recruitment during infection and inflammation. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2011;11(11):762–774. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21984070
48. Rosen H, Gordon S. Monoclonal antibody to the murine type 3 complement receptor inhibits adhesion of myelomonocytic cells in vitro and inflammatory cell recruitment in vivo. *J Exp Med*. 1987;166(6):1685–1701. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2445894
49. Liddiard K, Rosas M, Davies LC, Jones SA, Taylor PR. Macrophage heterogeneity and acute inflammation. *Eur J Immunol*. 2011;41(9):2503–2508. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21952806
50. Casanova JL, Abel L, Quintana-Murci L. Human TLRs and IL-1Rs in host defense: natural insights from evolutionary, epidemiological, and clinical genetics. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 2011;29:447–491. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21219179
51. Rosenzweig SD, Holland SM. Recent insights into the pathobiology of innate immune deficiencies. *Curr Allergy Asthma Rep*. 2011;11(5):369–377. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21814768
52. Ford JW, McVicar DW. TREM and TREM-like receptors in inflammation and disease. *Curr Opin Immunol*. 2009;21(1):38–46. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19230638
53. Mukhopadhyay S, Pluddemann A, Hoe JC, et al. Immune inhibitory ligand CD200 induction by TLRs and NLRs limits macrophage activation to protect the host from meningococcal septicemia. *Cell Host Microbe*. 2010;8(3):236–247. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20833375
54. Cassel SL, Rothman PB. Chapter 3: role of SOCS in allergic and innate immune responses. *Adv Immunol*. 2009;103:49–76. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19755183
55. Dimitriou ID, Clemenza L, Scotter AJ, Chen G, Guerra FM, Rottapel R. Putting out the fire: coordinated suppression of the innate and adaptive immune systems by SOCS1 and SOCS3 proteins. *Immunol Rev*. 2008;224:265–283. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18759933
56. Kindler V, Sappino AP, Grau GE, Piquet PF, Vassalli P. The inducing role of tumor necrosis factor in the development of bactericidal granulomas during BCG infection. *Cell*. 1989;56(5):731–740. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2647299
57. Keshav S, Chung P, Milon P, Gordon S. Lysozyme is an inducible marker of macrophage activation in murine tissues as demonstrated by in situ hybridization. *J Exp Med*. 1991;174(5):1049–1058. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1940787
58. Egen JG, Rothfuchs AG, Feng CG, Winter N, Sher A, Germain RN. Macrophage and T cell dynamics during the development and disintegration of mycobacterial granulomas. *Immunity*. 2008;28(2):271–284. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18261937
59. Rose CD, Martin TM, Wouters CH. Blau syndrome revisited. *Curr Opin Rheumatol*. 2011;23(5):411–418. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21788900
60. Smith AM, Rahman FZ, Hayee B, et al. Disordered macrophage cytokine secretion underlies impaired acute inflammation and bacterial clearance in Crohn's disease. *J Exp Med*. 2009;206(9):1883–1897. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19652016
61. Hunn JP, Howard JC. The mouse resistance protein Irgm1 (LRG-47): a regulator or an effector of pathogen defense? *PLoS Pathog*. 2010;6(7):e1001008. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20664789
62. Hunn JP, Feng CG, Sher A, Howard JC. The immunity-related GTPases in mammals: a fast-evolving cell-autonomous resistance system against intracellular pathogens. *Mamm Genome*. 2010;22(1–2):43–54. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21052678
63. Alam MM, O'Neill LA. MicroRNAs and the resolution phase of inflammation in macrophages. *Eur J Immunol*. 2011;41(9):2482–2485. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21952801
64. Yona S, Gordon S. Inflammation: glucocorticoids turn the monocyte switch. *Immunol Cell Biol*. 2007;85(2):81–82. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17242692
65. Chapman KE, Odermatt A. Steroids: modulators of inflammation and immunity. *J Steroid Biochem Mol Biol*. 2010;120(2–3):67–68. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20493434
66. Meintjes G, Rabie H, Wilkinson RJ, Cotton MF. Tuberculosis-associated immune reconstitution inflammatory syndrome and un-masking of tuberculosis by antiretroviral therapy. *Clin Chest Med*. 2009;30(4):797–810, x. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19925968
67. Janeway CA Jr, Medzhitov R. Innate immune recognition. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 2002;20:197–216. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11861602
68. Nimmerjahn F, Ravetch JV. FcgammaRs in health and disease. *Curr Top Microbiol Immunol*. 2010;350:105–125. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20680807
69. Carroll MC. Complement and humoral immunity. *Vaccine*. 2008;26(suppl 8):I28–33. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19388161
70. Gollins SW, Porterfield JS. A new mechanism for the neutralization of enveloped viruses by antiviral antibody. *Nature*. 1986;321(6067):244–246. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3713806
71. Peiris JS, Porterfield JS. Antibody-mediated enhancement of Flavivirus replication in macrophage-like cell lines. *Nature*. 1979;282(5738):509–511. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/503230
72. Pluddemann A, Mukhopadhyay S, Gordon S. Innate immunity to intracellular pathogens: macrophage receptors and responses to micro-bial entry. *Immunol Rev*. 2011;240(1):11–24. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21349083
73. Gazi U, Martinez-Pomares L. Influence of the mannose receptor in host immune responses. *Immunobiology*. 2009;214(7):554–561. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19162368
74. Brown GD. Dectin-1: a signalling non-TLR pattern-recognition receptor. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2006;6(1):33–43. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16341139
75. Ruland J. CARD9 signaling in the innate immune response. *Ann N Y Acad Sci*. 2008;1143:35–44. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19076343
76. Cheng SC, van de Veerdonk FL, Lenardon M, et al. The dectin-1/inflammasome pathway is responsible for the induction of protective T-helper 17 responses that discriminate between yeasts and hyphae of Candida albicans. *J Leukoc Biol*. 2011;90(2):357–366. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21531876
77. Netea MG, van de Veerdonk FL, van Deuren M, van der Meer JW. Defects of pattern recognition: primary immunodeficiencies of the innate immune system. *Curr Opin Pharmacol*. 2011;11(4):412–422. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21498117
78. Robinson MJ, Osorio F, Rosas M, et al, Dectin-2 is a Syk-coupled pattern recognition receptor crucial for Th17 responses to fungal infection. *J Exp Med*. 2009;206(9):2037–2051. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19703985
79. Neyen C, Pluddemann A, Roversi P, et al. Macrophage scavenger receptor A mediates adhesion to apolipoproteins A-I and E. *Biochemistry*. 2009;48(50):11858–11871. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19911804
80. Bowdish DM, Sakamoto K, Kim MJ, et al. MARCO, TLR2, and CD14 are required for macrophage cytokine responses to mycobacterial trehalose dimycolate and Mycobacterium tuberculosis. *PLoS Pathog*. 2009;5(6):e1000474. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19521507
81. Schoenen H, Bodendorfer B, Hitchens K, et al. Cutting edge: mincle is essential for recognition and adjuvanticity of the mycobacterial cord factor and its synthetic analog trehalose-dibehenate. *J Immunol*. 2010;184(6):2756–2760. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20164423
82. Ravichandran KS. Beginnings of a good apoptotic meal: the find-me and eat-me signaling pathways. *Immunity*. 2011;35(4):445–455. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22035837
83. Kawai T, Akira S. Toll-like receptors and their crosstalk with other innate receptors in infection and immunity. *Immunity*. 2011;34(5):637–650. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21616434
84. Stuart LM, Ezekowitz RA. Phagocytosis: elegant complexity. *Immunity*. 2005;22(5):539–550. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15894272

85. Flannagan S, Jaumouille V, Grinstein S. The cell biology of phagocytosis. *Ann Rev Pathol Mech Dis*. 2012;7:49–86. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21910624
86. Heinsbroek SE, Taylor PR, Martinez FO, Martinez-Pomares L, Brown GD, Gordon S. Stage-specific sampling by pattern recognition receptors during Candida albicans phagocytosis. *PLoS Pathog*. 2008;4(11): e1000218. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19043561
87. Goodridge HS, Reyes CN, Becker CA, et al. Activation of the innate immune receptor Dectin-1 upon formation of a "phagocytic synapse." *Nature*. 2011;472(7344):471–475. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21525931
88. De Chastellier C. Electron microscopy. In: Cossart P, Boquet P, Normark S, eds. *Cellular Microbiology*. 2nd ed. Washington, DC: American Society of Microbiology Press; 2005:451.
89. Flannagan RS, Cosio G, Grinstein S. Antimicrobial mechanisms of phagocytes and bacterial evasion strategies. *Nat Rev Microbiol*. 2009; 7(5):355–366. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19369951
90. Dorhoi A, Reece ST, Kaufmann SH. For better or for worse: the immune response against Mycobacterium tuberculosis balances pathology and protection. *Immunol Rev*. 2011;240(1):235–251. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21349097
91. Russell DG. Mycobacterium tuberculosis and the intimate discourse of a chronic infection. *Immunol Rev*. 2011;240(1):252–268. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21349098
92. Woodward JJ, Iavarone AT, Portnoy DA. c-di-AMP secreted by intracellular Listeria monocytogenes activates a host type I interferon response. *Science*. 2010;328(5986):1703–1705. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20508090
93. Stavru F, Archambaud C, Cossart P. Cell biology and immunology of Listeria monocytogenes infections: novel insights. *Immunol Rev*. 2011; 240(1):160–184. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21349093
94. Mougneau E, Bihl F, Glaichenhaus N. Cell biology and immunology of Leishmania. *Immunol Rev*. 2011;240(1):286–296. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21349100
95. Franchi L, Munoz-Planillo R, Reimer T, Eigenbrod T, Nunez G. Inflammasomes as microbial sensors. *Eur J Immunol*. 2010;40(3): 611–615. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20201013
96. Philpott DJ, Girardin SE. Nod-like receptors: sentinels at host membranes. *Curr Opin Immunol*. 2010;22(4):428–434. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20605429
97. Schroder K, Tschopp J. The inflammasomes. *Cell*. 2010;140(6):821–832. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20303873
98. Rathinam VA, Jiang Z, Waggoner SN, et al. The AIM2 inflammasome is essential for host defense against cytosolic bacteria and DNA viruses. *Nat Immunol*. 2010;11(5):395–402. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20351692
99. Vance RE, Isberg RR, Portnoy DA. Patterns of pathogenesis: discrimination of pathogenic and nonpathogenic microbes by the innate immune system. *Cell Host Microbe*. 2009;6(1):10–21. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19616762
100. Burdette DL, Monroe KM, Sotelo-Troha K, et al. STING is a direct innate immune sensor of cyclic di-GMP. *Nature*. 2011;478:515–518. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21947006
101. Harris J. Autophagy and cytokines. *Cytokine*. 2011;56(2):140–144. 102. Levine B, Mizushima N, Virgin HW. Autophagy in immunity and inflammation. *Nature*. 2011;469:323–335. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21248839
102. Amer AO, Swanson MS. A phagosome of one's own: a microbial guide to life in the macrophage. *Curr Opin Microbiol*. 2002;5(1):56–61. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11834370
103. Clemens DL, Horwitz MA. Uptake and intracellular fate of Francisella tularensis in human macrophages. *Ann N Y Acad Sci*. 2007;1105: 160–186. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17435118
104. Celli J. Surviving inside a macrophage: the many ways of Brucella. *Res Microbiol*. 2006;157(2):93–98. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16364608
105. Roy CR, Salcedo SP, Gorvel JP. Pathogen-endoplasmic-reticulum interactions: in through the out door. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2006;6(2):136–147. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16491138
106. Sibley LD. Invasion and intracellular survival by protozoan parasites. *Immunol Rev*. 2011;240(1):72–91. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21349087
107. Gozzelino R, Jeney V, Soares MP. Mechanisms of cell protection by heme oxygenase-1. *Annu Rev Pharmacol Toxicol*. 2010;50:323–354. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20055707
108. Yang D, Tewary P, de la Rosa G, Wei F, Oppenheim JJ. The alarmin functions of high-mobility group proteins. *Biochim Biophys Acta*. 2010; 1799(1–2):157–163. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20123077
109. Van Eden W, Wick G, Albani S, Cohen I. Stress, heat shock proteins, and autoimmunity: how immune responses to heat shock proteins are to be used for the control of chronic inflammatory diseases. *Ann N Y Acad Sci*. 2007;1113:217–237. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17584980
110. Leclerc E, Heizmann CW. The importance of Ca2 + /Zn2 + signaling S100 proteins and RAGE in translational medicine. *Front Biosci (Schol Ed)*. 2011;3:1232–1262. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21622268
111. Shi Y, Evans JE, Rock KL. Molecular identification of a danger signal that alerts the immune system to dying cells. *Nature*. 2003;425(6957): 516–521. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14520412
112. Nizet V, Johnson RS. Interdependence of hypoxic and innate immune responses. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2009;9(9):609–617. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19704417
113. Areschoug T, Plüddemann A, Gordon S. Innate immunity against bacteria. In: Kaufmann SH, Rouse T, Sacks DL, eds. *The Immune Response to Infection,*. Washington, DC: American Society of Microbiology Press; 2011:209–223.
114. Ivashkiv LB. Inflammatory signaling in macrophages: transitions from acute to tolerant and alternative activation states. *Eur J Immunol*. 2011; 41(9):2477–2481. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21952800
115. Vallabhapurapu S, Karin M. Regulation and function of NF-kappaB transcription factors in the immune system. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 2009; 27:693–733. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19302050
116. Glass CK, Saijo K. Nuclear receptor transrepression pathways that regulate inflammation in macrophages and T cells. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2010; 10(5):365–376. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20414208
117. Ostuni R, Natoli G. Transcriptional control of macrophage diversity and specialization. *Eur J Immunol*. 2011;41(9):2486–2490. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21952802
118. Sarrazin S, Sieweke M. Integration of cytokine and transcription factor signals in hematopoietic stem cell commitment. *Semin Immunol*. 2011; 23(5):326–334. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21937237
119. Savitsky D, Tamura T, Yanai H, Taniguchi T. Regulation of immunity and oncogenesis by the IRF transcription factor family. *Cancer Immunol Immunother*. 2010;59(4):489–510. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20049431
120. Krausgruber T, Blazek K, Smallie T, et al. IRF5 promotes inflammatory macrophage polarization and TH1-TH17 responses. *Nat Immunol*. 2011;12(3):231–238. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21240265
121. Satoh T, Takeuchi O, Vandenbon A, et al. The Jmjd3-Irf4 axis regulates M2 macrophage polarization and host responses against helminth infection. *Nat Immunol*. 2010;11(10):936–944. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20729857
122. Barclay AN, Brown MH. The SIRP family of receptors and immune regulation. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2006;6(6):457–464. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16691243
123. Lemke G, Rothlin CV. Immunobiology of the TAM receptors. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2008;8(5):327–336. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18421305
124. Gordon S, Martinez FO. Alternative activation of macrophages: mechanism and functions. *Immunity*. 2010;32(5):593–604. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20510870
125. Martinez FO, Helming L, Gordon S. Alternative activation of macrophages: an immunologic functional perspective. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 2009;27:451–483. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19105661

126. Helming L, Gordon S. Molecular mediators of macrophage fusion. *Trends Cell Biol*. 2009;19(10):514–522. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19733078
127. Fleming BD, Mosser DM. Regulatory macrophages: setting the threshold for therapy. *Eur J Immunol*. 2011;41(9):2498–2502. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21952805
128. Bogdan C. Regulation and antimicrobial function of inducible nitric oxide synthase in phagocytes. In: Russell DG, Gordon S, eds. *Phagocyte-Pathogen Interactions: Macrophages and the Host Response to Infection*. Washington, DC: American Society of Microbiology Press; 2009: 367–378.
129. Shirey KA, Cole LE, Keegan AD, Vogel SN. Francisella tularensis live vaccine strain induces macrophage alternative activation as a survival mechanism. *J Immunol*. 2008;181(6):4159–4167. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18768873
130. Nguyen KD, Qiu Y, Cui X, et al. Alternatively activated macrophages produce catecholamines to sustain adaptive thermogenesis. *Nature*. 2011;480(7375):104–108. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22101429
131. Beham AW, Puellmann K, Laird R, et al. A TNF-regulated recombinatorial macrophage immune receptor implicated in granuloma formation in tuberculosis. *PLoS Pathogens*. 2011;7:1–16. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22114556
132. Nucera S, Biziato D, De Palma M. The interplay between macrophages and angiogenesis in development, tissue injury and regeneration. *Int J Dev Biol*. 2011;55(4–5):495–503. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21732273
133. Barron L, Wynn TA. Macrophage activation governs schistosomiasis-induced inflammation and fibrosis. *Eur J Immunol*. 2011;41(9):2509–2514. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21952807
134. Garcia-Vallejo JJ, van Kooyk Y. Endogenous ligands for C-type lectin receptors: the true regulators of immune homeostasis. *Immunol Rev*. 2009;230(1):22–37. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19594627
135. Biswas SK, Mantovani A. Macrophage plasticity and interaction with lymphocyte subsets: cancer as a paradigm. *Nat Immunol*. 2010;11(10): 889–896. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20856220
136. Egeblad M, Nakasone ES, Werb Z. Tumors as organs: complex tissues that interface with the entire organism. *Dev Cell*. 2010;18(6):884–901. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20627072
137. Qian BZ, Pollard JW. Macrophage diversity enhances tumor progression and metastasis. *Cell*. 2010;141(1):39–51. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20371344
138. Mellor AL, Sivakumar J, Chandler P, et al. Prevention of T cell-driven complement activation and inflammation by tryptophan catabolism during pregnancy. *Nat Immunol*. 2001;2(1):64–68. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11135580
139. Chawla A, Nguyen KD, Goh YP. Macrophage-mediated inflammation in metabolic disease. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2011;11(11):738–749. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21984069

CHAPTER 20

Granulocytes and Mast Cells

Patrizia Scapini • Nicola Tamassia • Carlo Pucillo • Marco A. Cassatella

INTRODUCTION

Polymorphonuclear leukocytes or granulocytes are hematopoietically derived blood cells that typically act at the frontline of innate defense in host response to foreign microorganisms. Granulocytes contain heterogeneous cytoplasmic granules, which are storage pools for cell-specific intracellular enzymes, preformed receptors, cationic proteins, and other cell-specific molecules. According to their granular staining properties, polymorphonuclear leukocytes are classified into three different populations: neutrophils, eosinophils (Eos), and basophils (Bas). Neutrophil granules stain preferentially with neutral dyes, eosinophilic granules stain with acidic colorants such as eosin, and Ba granules stain with basic dyes.

Mast cells (MCs), similarly to polymorphonuclear leukocytes, represent another crucial effector cell type of the innate immune system that also stores elevated amounts of preformed inflammatory mediators within their cytoplasmic granules. However, while polymorphonuclear leukocytes are mainly peripheral blood–circulating cells, MCs are tissue resident cells distributed throughout the vascularized tissues or serosal cavity. Granulocytes and MCs differ in their functions and roles during the inflammatory process, MCs, Bas, and Eos being, for instance, essential components of allergic inflammation. Interestingly, recent data have revealed that granulocytes and MCs may also play key roles in orchestrating the transition from innate to adaptive immunity. These latter observations have caught the attention of immunologists who are currently reevaluating the importance of granulocytes and MCs, and very intensively working to clarify their multifaceted aspects in immunity.

NEUTROPHILS

Neutrophils are well known to function as the first line of defense against invading pathogens, principally bacteria and fungi, but also viruses.[1] These cells, together with monocytes, macrophages, and dendritic cells (DCs), feature the characteristic properties of the "professional" phagocytes and utilize several effector mechanisms to destroy pathogens, including the generation of massive amounts of reactive oxygen species (ROS) in combination with the discharge of many potent antimicrobial enzymes or factors.[1] Because of their powerful microbicidal equipment, neutrophils are often depicted as harmful cells that can cause damage to the surrounding tissues during acute inflammation (as observed in those inflammatory diseases dominated by neutrophils).[1] Nonetheless, extensive research performed in the last 20 years has recognized neutrophils as highly versatile and sophisticated cells displaying a significant synthetic capacity as well as an important role in linking the innate and adaptive arms of the immune response.[2,3]

Neutrophil Generalities

Neutrophils are the most abundant (40% to 70%) circulating leukocyte type in human blood, normally present at 2.5 to 7.5 $\times$ 10^9 cells/L.[4] Morphologically, these cells can be identified by the peculiar shape of their nucleus, which is polymorphous and usually consists of three to five sausage-shaped masses of chromatin connected by fine threads (Fig. 20.1). Mature neutrophils are terminally differentiated, nondividing cells that develop and mature in the bone marrow from pluripotent CD (cluster of differentiation)34-positive (CD34+) stem cells, under the regulatory effects of several colony-stimulating factors (CSFs), including granulocyte-macrophage CSF (GM-CSF), granulocyte CSF (G-CSF), interleukin (IL)-3, and IL-6.[4] Neutrophils can be cytofluorimetrically identified by their characteristic morphology (high side scatter) and expression pattern of plasma membrane proteins such as CD66b, CD11b, CD15, and CD16, in conjunction with the lack of expression of CD2 and CD19. In humans, circulating polymorphonuclear leukocytes are 10 to 20 μm in diameter, display a half-life previously thought to correspond to 7 to 12 hours, but more recently reevaluated and extended to up to 90 hours,[5] and exist in a dynamic equilibrium with a "marginated" pool that is sequestered within the microvasculature of many organs.[1,4] In the resting uninfected host, the peripheral neutrophil population is maintained within a constant number by several mechanisms. One of them consists in programming neutrophils to spontaneously undergo apoptosis[1,3] to be, in turn, cleared by tissue macrophages located in the bone marrow, spleen, and liver.[6] In this latter context, a feedback loop involving an IL-23/IL-17/G-CSF axis, crucial for the regulation of neutrophil production, has been recently identified in mice.[7] According to this model, the uptake of apoptotic neutrophils by macrophages and DCs would determine a downregulation of their IL-23 production. Consequently, the Th17 subset of proinflammatory T-lymphocytes would be poorly sustained and thus much less IL-17A would be generated. As IL-17A positively regulates fibroblast- and endothelial cell–derived G-CSF, which is essential for controlling both granulopoiesis and neutrophil survival, the final outcome of this circuit—triggered by the massive neutrophil

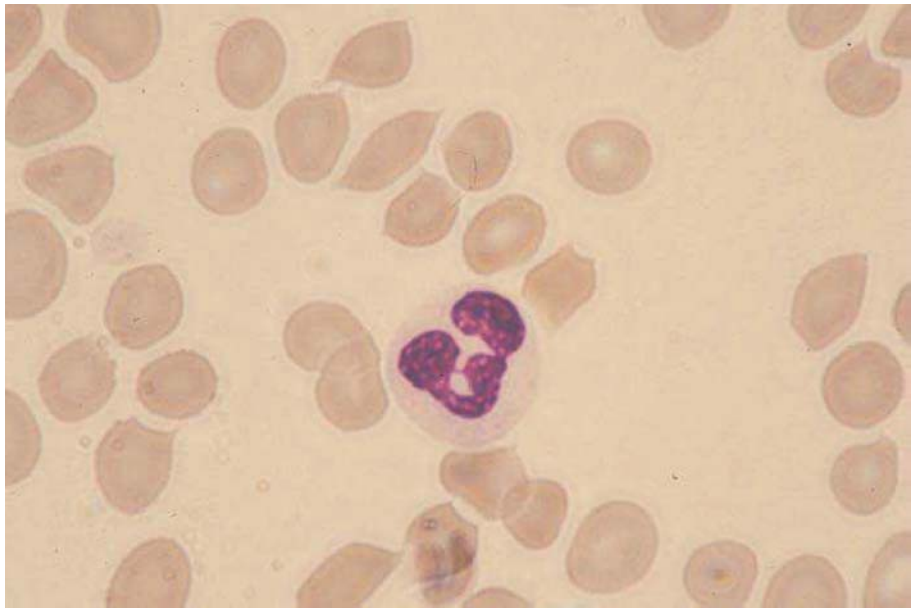


FIG. 20.1. A Polymorphonuclear Neutrophil Circulating in Peripheral Blood. From *Anderson's Atlas of Hematology*, Anderson, Shauna C., PhD. Copyright 2003, Wolters Kluwer Health/Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.

apoptosis at peripheral sites—would consist in a decrease in the levels of neutrophils released from the bone marrow.[7] On the other hand, the number of circulating neutrophils can dramatically increase (even up to 10-fold) under acute inflammatory conditions (eg, during a bacterial infection), from accelerated neutrophil production and release from the bone marrow.[4] Moreover, even the lifespan of neutrophils is significantly extended under inflammatory conditions, as various host- and pathogen-derived mediators such as G-CSF, GM-CSF, interferon (IFN)-γ, tumor necrosis factor (TNF)-α, lipopolysaccharide, and nucleic acids inhibit neutrophil apoptosis and hence prolong their survival.[8]

During an acute inflammatory response, neutrophils are rapidly recruited to the site of injury by a coordinated sequence of events that begin with the elaboration of various mediators able to specifically promote their migration from the intravascular compartment. Mediators derive from numerous sources (tissue macrophages, endothelial cells, activated plasma components) and include vasoactive amines, proinflammatory lipids, small polypeptides, chemotactic factors, and cytokines such as TNFα, IL-1β, or IL-17A (the latter being one of the most abundant products of Th17 cells).[1,3] Chemotactic factors, in particular, are generated in temporally distinct waves and include C5a, leukotriene-B_4 (LTB_4), formyl-Met-Leu-Phe (fMLF), as well as neutrophil specific chemokines, such as CXCL8/IL-8, CXCL1/GROα, CXCL5/epithelial cell neutrophil-activating protein-78, etc.[1,3] Once recruited at an inflammatory site, neutrophils function as mobile arsenals that recognize, phagocytose, and ultimately destroy their targets. If the acute inflammatory response correctly subsides, then neutrophils may actively participate in its resolution (see following discussion). If not, an uncontrolled and continuous release of the proinflammatory cargo (ROS and proteases) by neutrophils recruited at the site of infection/injury may eventually lead to destruction of bystander tissue, and thus to exacerbation of the ongoing inflammation, ultimately provoking the onset of chronic inflammatory/autoimmune diseases.[9]

Neutrophil Microbicidal Mechanisms

To destroy and eliminate invading pathogens, neutrophils essentially utilize two fundamental mechanisms[10]: an oxygen-dependent process that is mediated by the generation of ROS, which include O_2^- (superoxide anion), hydrogen peroxide, singlet oxygen, and other products derived from the metabolism of hydrogen peroxide; and an oxygen-independent process consisting in the release into the phagocytic vacuole of lytic enzymes; and antimicrobial polypeptides stored in their intracellular granules.[10] The oxygen-dependent process, also referred to as the "respiratory burst," is defined as an increase of a mitochondrial independent oxidative metabolism that leads to the generation of O_2^-, which occurs through the activation of the phagocytic NADPH oxidase, an enzymatic system that is unique to phagocytes (neutrophils, monocytes, macrophages, DCs, and also Eos). Nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide phosphate (NADPH) oxidase is a multiprotein complex formed by a flavocytochrome-b_{558} (a heterodimer of gp91*phox* and p22*phox* chains, where *phox* stands for phagocyte oxidase), three cytoplasmic components (namely p40*phox*, p47*phox*, p67*phox*) and either Rac1 or Rac2 from the Rho family of low-molecular-weight GTPases (Fig. 20.2). Upon cell stimulation, the cytosolic components of the complex become phosphorylated and assemble together with the cytochrome and Rac1/2 on the plasma membrane, thus forming the active enzyme that produces superoxide anion radicals, by catalyzing the transfer of electrons from NADPH to molecular oxygen (see Fig. 20.2). O_2^- is converted by superoxide dismutase into hydrogen peroxide, which, in the presence of myeloperoxidase and halogens, is then metabolized into hypochlorous acid. The latter represents one of the neutrophil's

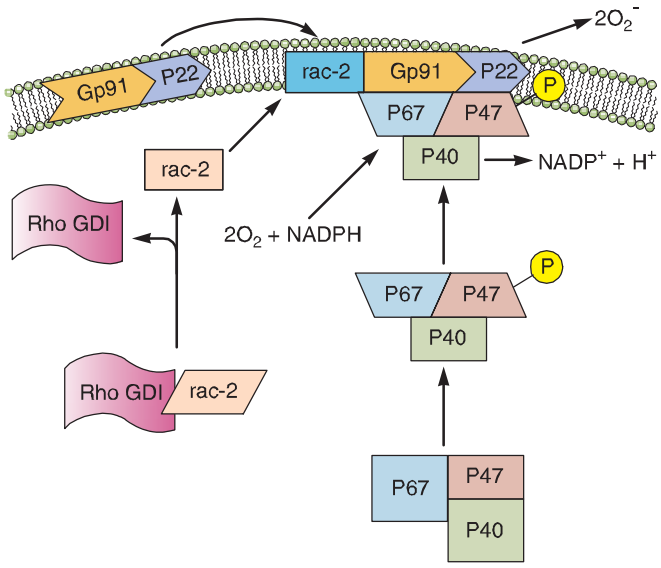


FIG. 20.2. Nicotinamide Adenine Dinucleotide Phosphate (NADPH) Oxidase Assembly. In the resting neutrophil, the cytochrome b subunits gp91-phox and p22-phox are tightly bound in the membrane. p47-phox, p67-phox, and rac-s complex are in the cytosol. Upon activation, Rho GDP-dissociation inhibitor (GDI) releases rac-2, and p47-phox becomes phosphorylated. This causes translocation of rac-2, p47-phox, and p67-phox to the membrane and complex formation with the cytochrome components, thereby completing the assembly of the active oxidase. (After Burg ND, Pillinger MH. *Clin Immunol.* 2001;1:7–17.)

major weapons against microbes, as it also synergizes with granule proteins to kill pathogens in the neutrophil phagolysosome. O_2^- can also reacts with other cellular radicals, such as nitric oxide, to form different species of cytotoxic oxidant, such as peroxynitrite. The critical role of NADPH oxidase and its products in host defense is best illustrated by the plight of patients with chronic granulomatous disease, in which mutations in any of the NADPH oxidase complex subunits (gp91*phox*, p22*phox*, p40*phox*, p47*phox*, and p67*phox*) leads to a severe immunodeficiency characterized by defective killing of phagocytosed pathogens for the lack of ROS generation.[10] These infections typically involve microorganisms for which oxidant-mediated killing is particularly critical for effective host defense, such as *Staphylococcus aureus*, *Aspergillus* spp., *Nocardia*, and a variety of gram-negative enteric bacilli.

The release of potent proteolytic enzymes contained in their granules represents the other crucial mechanisms utilized by neutrophils to eliminate pathogens following phagocytosis.[10] Neutrophil granules are subdivided into peroxidase-positive granules (based on the presence of myeloperoxidase, their marker), also called primary or azurophil granules (owing to their affinity for the basic dye azure A), and peroxidase-negative granules that include the specific (secondary) granules, the gelatinase (tertiary) granules, and the secretory vesicles[11] (Fig. 20.3). The different types of granules appear at progressive stage of neutrophil development,[11] with the primary granules, as suggested by the name, being the first ones to appear during hematopoiesis at the promyelocyte stage. As highlighted in Figure 20.3, granules are released in a hierarchical order and under separate control by mature neutrophils, depending on the type of stimulus.[11]

Azurophil or primary granules undergo limited exocytosis in response to stimulation and are packaged with acidic hydrolases and antimicrobial proteins that contribute primarily to the killing and degradation of engulfed microorganisms into the phagolysosome.[11,12] These granules contain myeloperoxidase, an enzyme that catalyzes the formation of hypochlorous acid, hydrolases, lysozyme, matrix metalloproteinases, and three structurally related serprocidins (serine proteases with microbicidal activity): proteinase-3, cathepsin G, and elastase. The latter proteins can degrade a variety of extracellular matrix components, including elastin, fibronectin, laminin, type IV collagen, and vitronectin. Azurophil granules also contain antimicrobial molecules such as bactericidal/permeability-increasing protein (which is important for killing gram-negative bacteria) and α-defensins, a family of small cysteine-rich antibiotic peptides with broad antimicrobial activity against bacteria, fungi, and certain enveloped viruses.[11,12]

Specific (or secondary) granules, which are formed at the myelocytic stage, are smaller and less dense than the azurophil ones, and contain unique constituents, such as collagenase, haptoglobin, vitamin B_{12}-binding protein, as well an extensive array of membrane-associated proteins including cytochromes, signaling molecules, and receptors.[11,12] Secondary granules also contain an arsenal of antimicrobial substances, such as lactoferrin, neutrophil gelatinase-associated lipocalin, lysozyme, hCAP18 (cathelicidin human cationic antimicrobial protein of 18 kDa, the proform of LL-37), and pentraxin-3. The inhibitory effect of antimicrobial proteins include depriving ions essential for microbial survival, degrading structural components of microorganisms (eg, peptidoglycan), and disrupting the integrity of target cell membrane by punching pores in the membrane or by perturbing membrane integrity. Neutrophil-specific granules also contain an important family of soluble proteinases, known as matrix metalloproteinases (MMPs), which include neutrophil collagenase-2 (MMP-8), gelatinase-B (MMP-9), and leukolysin (MMP-25). These proteinases are generally stored as inactive proenzymes and undergo proteolytic activation following granule fusion and interaction with azurophilic granule contents. Neutrophil MMPs disrupt major structural components of bacteria and/or extracellular membranes, and are therefore crucial not only for bacterial killing, but also for neutrophil extravasation and migration.[11,12]

Tertiary granules are produced at the metamyelocyte stage of differentiation and are smaller, lighter, and more easily exocytosed than the other granule classes.[11,12] These granules are indeed important primarily as a reservoir of matrix-degrading enzymes and membrane receptors needed during polymorphonuclear leukocyte extravasation and diapedesis. The primary constituent of tertiary granules is gelatinase, a latent metalloenzyme with the capacity for tissue destruction. Finally, the secretory vesicles are smaller than the other granules, are generated by endocytosis during the late stage

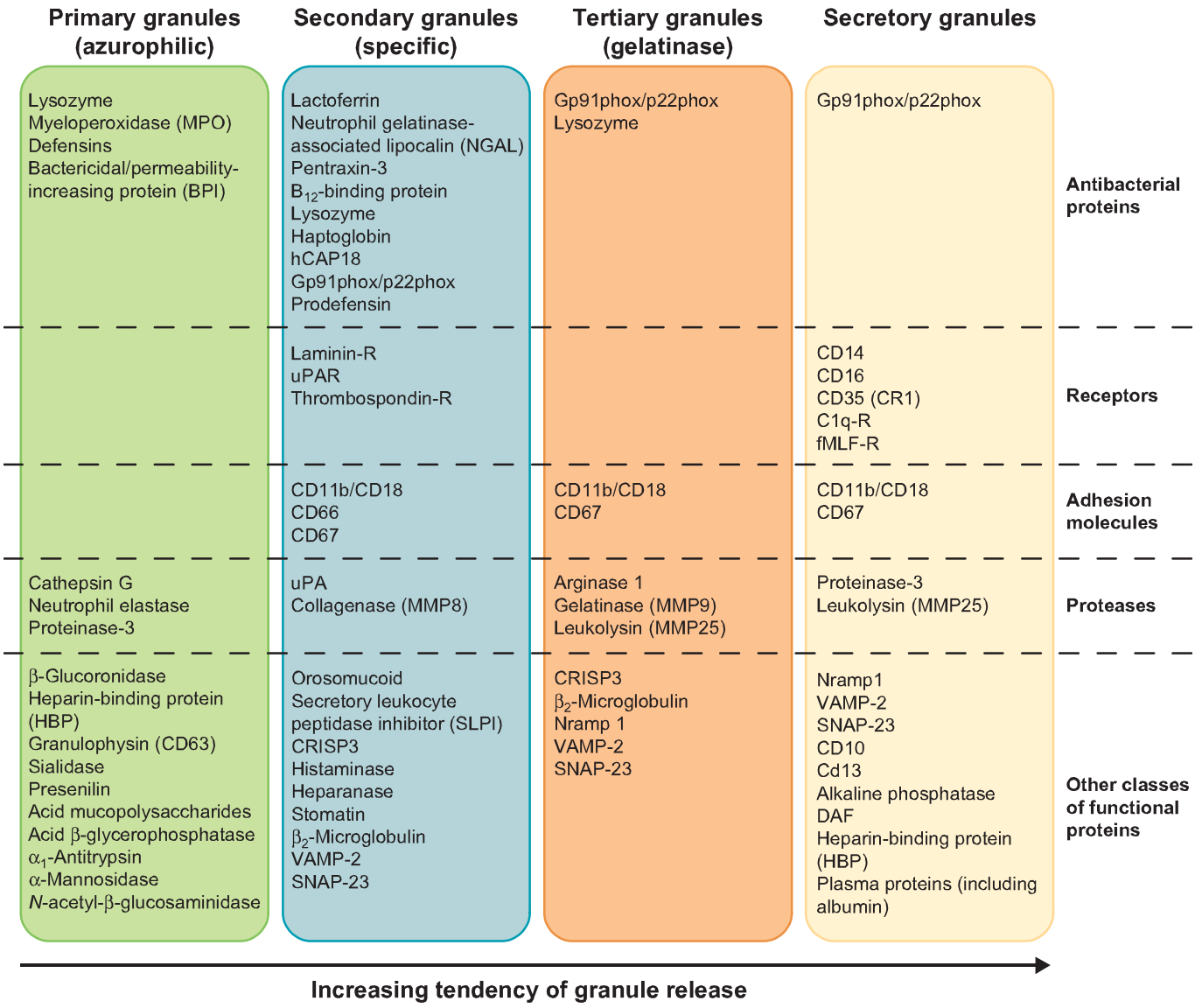


FIG. 20.3. Main Constituents of Neutrophil Granules.

of nuclear neutrophil segmentation in the bone marrow, and are the most readily mobilizable.[11,12] These vesicles are preferentially directed to the plasma membrane, as reflected in the density of vesicle-associated membrane protein (VAMP), a fusogenic protein associated with the granule membrane. Secretory vesicles do not contain toxic substances, but mainly plasma proteins like albumin and receptors (including β_2-integrins, the complement receptor [CR]1, receptors for formylated bacterial peptides [fMLF-R], CD14, the Fc portion of γ-immunoglobulins (Igs) [FcγRIII/CD16], and the metalloprotease leukolysin). Heparin-binding protein (also known as CAP37 or azurocidin), whose release is essential for the polymorphonuclear leukocyte–induced increase in vascular permeability at the initial stage of extravasation, is also stored in the secretory vesicles.

An additional nonphagocytic microbicidial mechanism used by neutrophils to capture and destroy microbes in the extracellular space consists in the ability of neutrophils to form so-called neutrophil extracellular traps (NETs).[13] The latter structures consist of nuclear chromatin decorated with antimicrobial peptides and enzymes (eg, bactericidal/permeability-increasing protein, elastase, pentraxin3, cathepsin G, and many others) that lacks membranes and cytosolic markers.[13] NETtosis, a novel type of neutrophil death mechanism that occurs under settings of extreme neutrophil stimulation (different from necrosis, apoptosis, and also independent from caspase activation), underlies the generation of NETs.[14] Accordingly, the nuclear envelope, granules, and cell membranes gradually dissolve during NETtosis, allowing the nuclear contents to mix and condense in the cytoplasm before being released into the extracellular space.[14] NETs, in turn, bind to various gram-positive and gram-negative bacteria (such as *Staphylococcus aureus*, *Salmonella typhimurium*, *Streptococcus pneumoniae*,

and group A streptococci), as well as to pathogenic fungi (such as *Candida albicans*). Similarly to what happens in the phagolysosome, the high local concentration of antimicrobial peptides and enzymes is responsible for the killing of the pathogens trapped by NETs.[13] The observation that neutrophils from patients with chronic granulomatous disease do not form NETs has suggested, on the one hand, that ROS-mediated signaling/cascades are involved in NET generation, and, on the other hand, that the lack of NETs might contribute to the pathogenesis of chronic granulomatous disease.[3,14] Whatever the case, it is noteworthy to remark that both the oxygen-dependent and -independent effector mechanisms in host defense toward pathogens are also utilized by neutrophils for their cytotoxic and tumoricidal activities.

Neutrophil Receptors

Under inflammatory conditions, neutrophils sense a wide range of extracellular ligands that, through the interaction with specific receptors, subsequently trigger a number of effector functions, including adhesion, migration, phagocytosis, survival, cell activation, gene expression modulation, target cell killing, and mediator production and release.[1,3,15] For instance, agonist-stimulated neutrophils may trigger not only degranulation, but also the release of arachidonic acid and/or other eicosanoids (eg, prostaglandin [PG]E_2), via the activation and/or the upregulation of PLA_2 and COX-2, respectively. Upon appropriate stimulation, neutrophils can also generate LTA_4 through the action of 5-lipoxygenase, as well as LTB_4 by converting LTA_4 via the action of LTA_4 hydrolase.[15] A nonexhaustive list of neutrophil receptors includes 1) receptors for proinflammatory mediators (eg, the anaphylotoxin complement component C5a, LTB_4, platelet-activating factor [PAF], substance P, and fMLF); 2) receptors for cytokines, such as IFNγ, IL-1, IL-4, IL-6, IL-10, IL-13, IL-15, IL-18, TNFα, G-CSF, GM-CSF, and many others; 3) receptors for chemokines, including CXCR1 and CXCR2; 4) receptors/adhesion molecules for the endothelium; 5) receptors for tissue matrix proteins; and 6) opsonin receptors, such as FcγRs and those for the major cleavage fragments of the complement system (see following discussion). Neutrophils also express a variety of pattern recognition receptors (PRRs), including all toll-like receptors (TLRs), with the exception of TLR3, cytoplasmic ribonucleic acid helicases involved in viral ribonucleic acid recognition such as MDA5 and RIG-I, and deoxyribonucleic acid binding cytoplasmic proteins (IFI16 and LRRFIP1).[3]

The Role of Neutrophils in Acute Inflammation

In order to carry out their prototypical defensive role in acute inflammation, bloodstream neutrophils must extravasate. To do so, they attach to activated endothelium, transmigrate through postcapillary venules (diapedesis), and then migrate toward a corresponding chemotactic gradient to the injury site where they recognize their target, engulf, and finally destroy it.

Neutrophil Extravasation

In general, leukocyte recruitment during inflammation, also called extravasation, is a multistep and highly complex phenomenon characterized by a number of predetermined steps occurring in the vessel lumen, known as leukocyte capture (or tethering), rolling, activation, and firm adhesion (arrest)[16] (Fig. 20.4). These latter steps are not discrete phases of inflammation; rather, they simply represent a sequence of events from the perspective of each leukocyte. Moreover, each of these steps appears to be necessary for the effective leukocyte recruitment; blocking any of them can severely reduce leukocyte accumulation in the tissue.[17] Adhesion of blood leukocytes to the endothelium during inflammation requires specific leukocyte–endothelial interactions involving different families of adhesion molecules. The latter include members of the selectin family and their cognate carbohydrate and glycoprotein ligands, which mediate the initial leukocyte deceleration along the vessel wall (a process called "rolling"), as well as members of the integrin family and their cognate Ig superfamily ligands, which mediate the subsequent high-affinity adhesion and arrest of leukocytes to the venules[16,17] (Table 20.1).

Under noninflammatory conditions, neutrophils (as well as other leukocytes) travel primarily through the center of the blood vessel lumen, where the flow is fastest. In response to proinflammatory signals, however, both the neutrophils and the blood vessels undergo a series of changes. As a consequence of vascular dilatation, blood flow first increases and then slows, thus facilitating the interactions between leukocytes and the endothelial cells. The process of capture/tethering and rolling then ensues, in which L-selectins on neutrophils, and P- or E-selectins on endothelia, interact with sialyl-Lewisx moieties or PSGL-1 on their respective cell partners. Although these interactions are reversible and transient, they prepare neutrophils for a tighter binding, integrin-mediated step.[16,17] The most important neutrophil integrins are four, each one composed of an identical β-subunit (β_2, known as CD18) noncovalently linked to different α-subunits: CD11a/CD18 ($\alpha_L\beta_2$, lymphocyte function antigen), CD11b/CD18 ($\alpha_M\beta_2$, CR3), CD11c/CD18 ($\alpha_X\beta_2$, CR4), and CD11d/CD18.[18] When neutrophils encounter their specific chemoattractants (eg, CXCL8), displayed bound to glycosaminoglycans on the vessel wall, neutrophil integrins are converted from an inactive to an active conformation[16,17] (see Fig. 20.4). Activated integrins can interact with their counterreceptors on the surface of the TNFα and/or IL-1β–activated endothelium (eg, intercellular adhesion molecule-1 [ICAM-1] and intercellular adhesion molecule-2), leading to the strong adhesion and arrest of the cells. Neutrophils then flatten and transmigrate between and through the endothelial cells of postcapillary venules into the surrounding tissue (see Fig. 20.4), also secreting a broad range of MMPs that degrade the basement membrane. Transmigration involves homophilic interaction of CD31/PECAM-1 and JAM-A on neutrophils and endothelial cells, where CD31/PECAM-1 and JAM-A act sequentially to mediate neutrophil migration through the venular walls.[17,18] Once in the interstitial compartment, neutrophils migrate along the chemotactic gradient toward the site of

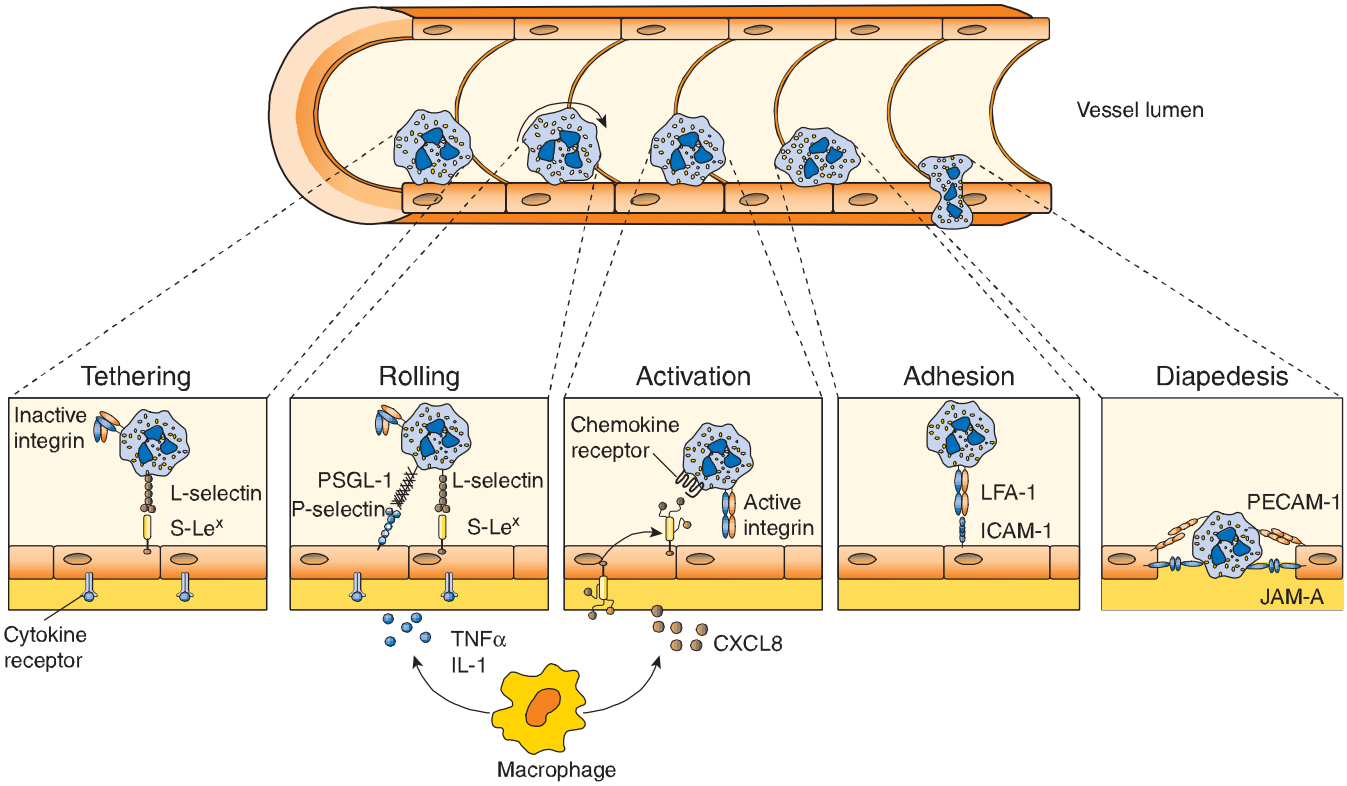


FIG. 20.4. Leukocyte Transmigration. Following an inflammatory stimulus, tissue-resident macrophages and other cells release inflammatory mediators such as tumor necrosis factor α and interleukin-1, which induce the rapid expression of preformed P-selectin (and transcription-dependent E-selectin expression) on the endothelium. The interaction between selectins and their glycoprotein ligands initiates leukocyte tethering and rolling. Activation by chemokines—and other leukocyte activators (eg, leukotriene-B_4 or platelet-activating factor)—presented on endothelial cells causes leukocyte integrin activation, thus resulting in transition from cell rolling to cell firm adhesion, in view of the strength of integrin-mediated binding with endothelial immunoglobulin superfamily members. Leukocytes can then transmigrate through the endothelial monolayer and chemotactically move toward the inflammatory stimulus. Examples of adhesion molecules involved in each step are depicted.

injury or infection and, once arrived, begin to react with the etiopathogenic agent.

The fundamental importance of adhesive glycoproteins in vivo is testified by those individuals affected leukocyte adhesion deficiency (LAD) disease, who display an abnormally high susceptibility to bacterial infections.[19] Several types of LAD disease have been identified. In LAD-I, mutations of the β2 integrin typically eliminate the expression of all four integrin complexes. Because of the multiple defects in adhesion-related functions, patients with LAD-I develop recurrent bacterial and fungal infections, mostly with *Staphylococcus aureus* or gram-negative enteric microbes. Neutrophilia with paucity of neutrophils at inflamed or infected sites is characteristic of LAD-I, while typical clinical features include frequent skin and periodontal infections, delayed separation of the umbilical cord and omphalitis, and deep tissue abscesses. LAD-II is caused by mutations in the membrane transporter for fucose and thus is associated with loss of expression of fucosylated glycans on the cell surface. Fucosylated proteins such as sialyl-Lewis X (CD15s) are ligands for endothelial selectins and are important for the rolling phases of leukocyte extravasation. Patients with LAD-II also have leukocytosis and form pus poorly, although infections tend to be less severe in patients with LAD-II than in patients with LAD-I. Finally, LAD-III has been recently described. LAD-III is an autosomal recessive disorder caused by mutations in the human kindlin-3 gene, which codes for a protein essential for integrin activation. Consequently, LAD-III is characterized by impaired adhesion of leukocytes to the endothelium of inflamed tissues and by severe bleeding. Curiously, a number of LAD-III patients additionally suffer from osteopetrosis.

Neutrophil-Mediated Phagocytosis

Neutrophils play a critical role in host protection as they eliminate microorganisms through phagocytosis (the cellular process of engulfing particles larger than 0.5 μm). While many cells in our body are capable of phagocytosis, neutrophils do it to an extent sufficient to be considered "professional phagocytes" (eg, a single neutrophil can engulf up to 10 to 12 particles [eg, bacteria]).[20] Phagocytosis is triggered either through receptor (eg, mannose receptor or Dectin-1) recognition of certain polysaccharides present on the surface of some yeast cells and/or upon the binding of opsonized microorganisms through, for instance, FcγRs and CRs.[20] Neutrophils constitutively express the low-affinity

TABLE 20.1 Main Adhesion Molecules Involved in Leukocyte-Endothelial Cell Interaction

Adhesion Molecule	Distribution	Ligands and Counterreceptors	Function
E-selectin (CD62E)	Endothelial cells	PSGL-1, ESL-1, CD44[a], CD43[a]	Rolling
P-selectin (CD62P)	Endothelial cells, platelets	PSGL-1, PNAd	Rolling
L-selectin (CD62L)	All leukocytes except effector and memory effector T cells	PNAd, MAdCAM-1, PSGL-1, E-selectin, P-selectin	Rolling
Selectin ligands			
PSGL-1	All leukocytes	All selectins (essential for P-selectin)	Rolling
sLe^x	Myeloid cells, some memory T cells, HEVs	All selectins	Rolling
PNAd	HEV, some sites of chronic inflammation	L-selectin, P-selectin	Rolling
Integrins			
$\alpha_M\beta_{2(MAC\text{-}1;\ CD11b/CD18)}$	Granulocytes, monocytes, some activated T cells	ICAM-1, fibrinogen, C3b, JAM-C	Adhesion, transmigration
$\alpha_L\beta_{2(LFA\text{-}1;\ CD11a/CD18)}$	All leukocytes	ICAM-1, ICAM-2, JAM-A	Adhesion, transmigration
$\alpha_D\beta_{2(CD11d/CD18)}$	Monocytes, macrophages, eosinophils	ICAM-1, VCAM-1	Adhesion
$\alpha_x\beta_{2(p150,95;\ CD11c/CD18)}$	DCs	Fibrinogen, C3b	Adhesion
$\alpha_4\beta_{1(VLA\text{-}4)}$	Most leukocytes	VCAM-1, fibrinogen, JAM-B	Rolling, adhesion
$\alpha_4\beta_{7(LPAM\text{-}1)}$	Lymphocytes, NKCs, mast cells, monocytes	MAdCAM-1, fibronectin, VCAM-1	Rolling, adhesion
Immunoglobulin superfamily			
ICAM-1 (CD54)	Most types of cells	LFA-1 Mac-1, fibrinogen	Adhesion, transmigration
ICAM-1 (CD102)	Endothelial cells, platelets	LFA-1 Mac-1	Adhesion, transmigration
VCAM-1 (CD106)	Endothelial cells	VLA-4, $\alpha_4\beta_7\alpha_D\beta_2$	Rolling, adhesion
MAdCAM-1	HEVs in PP and MLN	$\alpha_4\beta_7$, L-selectin	Rolling
PECAM-1	Endothelial cells, platelets, leukocytes	PECAM-1	Transmigration
JAM-A	Endothelial cells, platelets, most leukocytes	JAM-A	Transmigration
JAM-B	Endothelial cells, HEVs	JAM-B, JAM-C	Transmigration
JAM-C	Endothelial cells, HEVs, platelets, monocytes, DC, some T cells	JAM-C, JAM-B	Transmigration

CD, cluster of differentiation; DC, dentritic cell; ESL, HEV, high endothelial venule; ICAM, intercellular adhesion molecule; JAM, LFA, MAdCAM, mucosal addressin cell adhesion molecule; NKC, PECAM, PNAd, PSGL, sLe^x, VCAM, VLA.
[a]CLA decorated.

FcγRs (FcγRIIA/CD32A and FcγRIIIA/CD16A), and, when exposed to IFNγ or G-CSF, the high-affinity FcγR (FcγRI/CD64) as well.[3] CRs expressed by neutrophils are CR1 (also known as CD35), which binds to complement components C1q, C4b, C3b, and mannan-binding lectin; CR3, which binds to iC3b, intercellular adhesion molecule-1, and some microbes; and CR4, which binds to iC3b. By expressing these latter receptors, neutrophils are able to recognize and bind, in a cooperative manner, IgG-opsonized particles and/or complement-opsonized microbes, and then activate their phagocytosis. During the phagocytic process, the foreign particle is internalized, initially through membrane recruitment to the site of particle contact, and then via membrane extensions outward to surround the particle and form a new vesicle called a cytoplasmic phagosome.[20] (Fig. 20.5). The phagosome then undergoes fusion with neutrophil granules to form a phagolysosome, a protected space in which proteolytic enzymes and other bactericidal components are discharged and pathogen degradation occurs. At the same time, NADPH oxidase assembles on the phagosomal membrane after phagocytosis and starts to generate ROS into the phagolysosome to kill bacteria by oxidizing microbial proteins and lipids. The activity of NADPH oxidase also leads to the acidification of the phagosome, which enhances the effectiveness of pH-sensitive antimicrobial compounds. Thus, neutrophil mechanisms of pathogen destruction within the phagosome are multiple and involve granule fusion, toxic oxygen radical production, activation of latent proteolytic enzymes, and the activity of antibacterial proteins (see Fig. 20.5). Remarkably, an activation of gene transcription and a selected generation of cytokines also occur during phagocytosis, a feature that neutrophils utilize for boosting a more effective innate immune response. For instance, recruited neutrophils that phagocytose

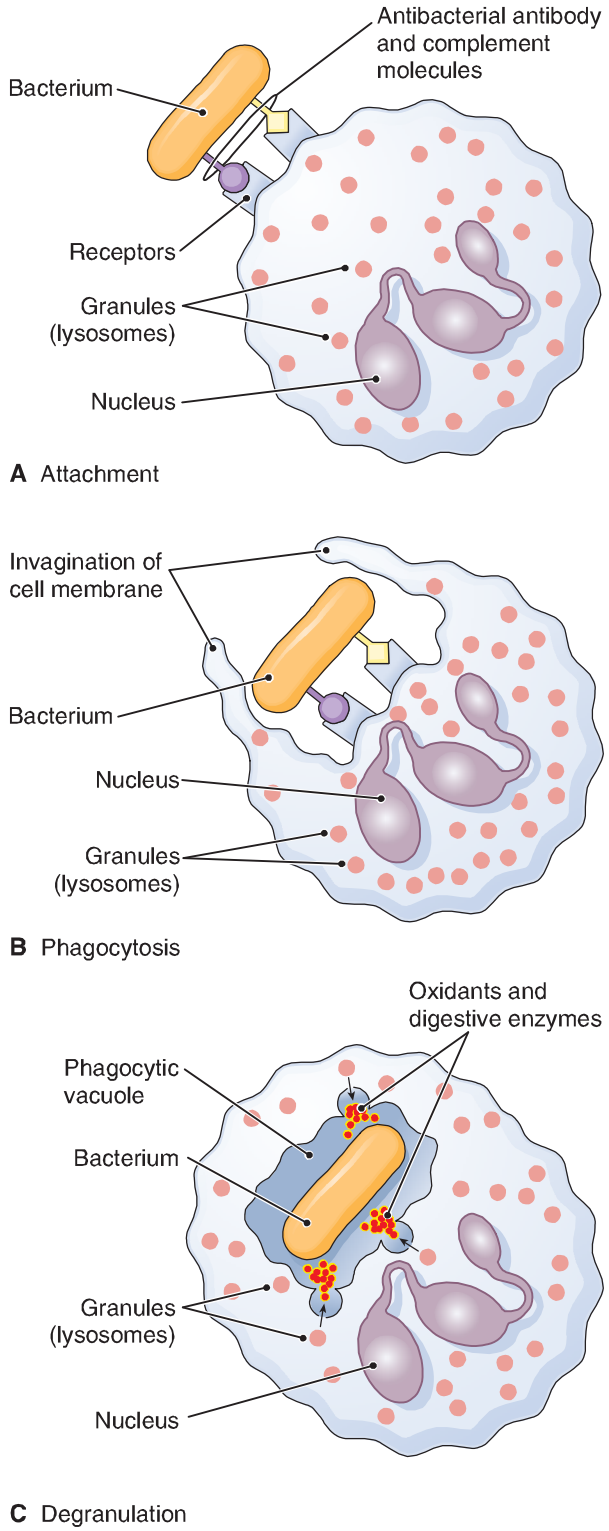


FIG. 20.5. Phagocytosis. The figure shows ingestion, digestion, and destruction of foreign particulate matter (a bacterium, in this example) by a neutrophil. **A:** Cell membrane receptors bind to antibody and complement molecules previously attached to the bacterial surface. **B:** The cell membrane creeps around the bacterium and envelopes it. **C:** The bacterium is trapped in a special space, the phagocytic vacuole, into which lysosomes discharge proteases, which together with oxidants kill it. Then, digestive enzymes dissolve it. (Thomas H. McConnell, *The Nature Of Disease Pathology for the Health Professions*, Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2007.)

a pathogen also respond by producing chemokines, in particular CXCL8, to amplify their own recruitment, but also CCL3, CCL4, and CCL19 that serve to recruit monocytes and DCs.[21]

Role in the Resolution Phase of Inflammation

Locally activated neutrophils not only amplify the inflammatory process, but, surprisingly, actively participate in its resolution phase.[22] To do so, during the late, final phases of a resolving, acute inflammatory reaction neutrophils, for instance, switch their eicosanoid biosynthesis potential from LTB_4 to lipoxins, with profound modifications of their effector functions. In fact, lipoxin A_4 (LXA_4) and LXB_4 stop neutrophil chemotaxis, adhesion, and transmigration through endothelium (by decreasing P-selectin expression), inhibit Eo recruitment, stimulate vasodilation (by inducing synthesis of PGI_2 and PGE_2), inhibit LTC_4- and LTD_4-stimulated vasoconstriction, inhibit LTB_4 inflammatory effects, and inhibit the function of natural killer (NK) cells.[22] Neutrophils also contribute to the biosynthesis of resolvins (such as resolvin E1, resolvin E2, resolvin D1, and resolvin D2) and protectin D1, which all inhibit neutrophil transendothelial migration and tissue infiltration, as well as stimulate resolution and reduce the magnitude of the inflammatory response in vivo.[22] Furthermore, neutrophils might also serve as major producers of anti-inflammatory cytokines such as transforming growth factor (TGF)β and IL-1 receptor antagonist, the latter being an endogenous inhibitor of IL-1β signaling and mediated effects.[21] Finally, neutrophils must be cleared from the inflammatory site as inflammation resolves. Indeed, neutrophils undergo apoptosis and are engulfed by tissue macrophages, which then reprogram into the M2 phenotype and start to generate antiinflammatory cytokines such as TGFβ and IL-10.[6,23]

Novel Neutrophil Effector Functions

The functions described previously for neutrophils in host defense are fundamental for combating infectious diseases. However, more recent discoveries on neutrophils as source of a variety of cytokines[21] have revealed that these cells are not only key components of the inflammatory response, but also crucial effectors of innate and adaptive immune regulatory networks.[23]

Neutrophil-Derived Cytokines and Chemokines

Numerous in vitro and in vivo studies, focusing on novel aspects of the neutrophil biology and function, have recently shed new light on the potential role that neutrophils can exert in the modulation of innate and adaptive immune responses.[23] It is now unequivocal that neutrophils are not, as for a long time thought, terminally differentiated cells "devoid of transcriptional and protein synthesis activity."[23a] In fact, besides the several preformed or rapidly generated inflammatory mediators described previously, neutrophils display the capacity to de novo synthesize and release also several chemokines and cytokines with immunoregulatory properties.[21,23] It is, however, important to mention that, at least in vitro, neutrophils usually produce, on a per-cell

basis, fewer molecules of a given cytokine than mononuclear leukocytes.[21] However, considering that neutrophils clearly predominate over other cell types under inflammatory conditions in vivo, it becomes obvious that the contribution of neutrophil-derived cytokines can be of foremost importance. To date, a wide range of stimuli able to induce characteristic signatures of chemokine and cytokine synthesis by neutrophils have been identified. Among these, cytokines themselves, chemotactic factors (fMLF, LTB_4, PAF, C5a, and CXCL8), phagocytic particles, microorganisms (such as fungi, viruses, and bacteria), and PRR ligands can all induce the synthesis and release of chemokines and cytokines by neutrophils.[21] Considering that neutrophils usually represent the first cell type infiltrating at the site of infections, a stimulus-specific response of neutrophils in terms of cytokine production might direct the evolution of certain types of inflammatory and immune reactions to support the transition from innate to adaptive immunity.

Table 20.2 lists all the cytokines that, to date, have been shown to be released by neutrophils in vitro, either constitutively or following appropriate stimulation, or in vivo. Numerous in vivo observations, in fact, not only have confirmed and reproduced the in vitro findings, but often have clarified their biological meaning and implications. As outlined in Table 20.2, neutrophils can produce proinflammatory, anti-inflammatory, immunoregulatory, angiogenic, and fibrogenic cytokines, chemokines, and ligands belonging to the TNF superfamily. The role of these molecules in mediating various neutrophil-dependent immunoregulatory functions is partially described in the following chapter. For instance, chemokines are particularly represented among the cytokines produced by neutrophils and include those primarily chemotactic for neutrophils themselves, monocytes, DCs, NK cells, and T helper (Th)1 and Th17 cells. It follows that a role for neutrophils in orchestrating the sequential recruitment to, and activation of, distinct leukocyte types in the inflamed tissue is plausible, as already demonstrated to occur in several experimental models.[21,23]

TABLE 20.2 Cytokines Expressed in Resting or Activated Neutrophils

C-X-C Chemokines	**Proinflammatory Cytokines**	**TNF Superfamily Members**
GROα/CXCL1	**TNFβ**	**FasL**
CINC-2α/GROχ/ MIP-2α/**CXCL2**	IL-1α, IL-1β	CD30L
CINC-2β/GROγ/ MIP-2β/CXCL3	**IL-6**(?),IL-7, IL-9	TRAIL
PF4/CXCL4	IL-16(?), **IL-17A/F**(?)	**LIGHT**[a]
ENA-78/CXCL5	IL-18	**Lymphotoxin-β**
GCP-2/CXCL6	MIF	APRIL, **BAFF/BLyS**
IL-8/CXCL8		RANKL
MIG/CXCL9 IP-10/ CXCL10 I-TAC/ CXCL11	**Anti-inflammatory Cytokines**	**Colony Stimulating Factors**
	IL-1ra	G-CSF
C-C Chemokines	IL-4(?), **IL-10**(?)	M-CSF(?)
MCP-1/ CCL2MIP-1α, CCL3	**$TGFβ_1$, $TGβ_2$**	GM-CSF(?)
MIP-1β, CCL4		IL-3(?)
TARC/CCL17	**Immunoregulatory Cytokines**	SCF[a](?)
PARC/CCL18	IFNα, IFNβ, **IFNγ**(?)	**Angiogenic and Fibrogenic Factors**
MIP-3α, CCL19	**IL-12**	**VEGF**
MIP-3β, CCL20	IL-23(?)	BV8/Prokineticin-2
MDC/CCL22		HB-EGF
	Other Cytokines	**FGF-2**
	Oncostatin M	**TGFβ**
	GDF (?)	**HGF**
	NGF, BDNF, NT4	
	PBEF/visfatin/ NAMPT	
	amphiregulin	

?, requires definitive corroboration; GRO, growth regulated oncogene; CXCL, CXC chemokine ligand; CCL, CC chemokine ligand; MIP, macrophage inflammatory protein; CINC, Cytokine induced neutrophil chemoattractant; PF4, Platelet factor-4; ENA-78, epithelial-derived neutrophil-activating peptide 78; GCP-2, granulocyte chemotactic protein-2; IL-, interleukin-; MIG, Monokine induced by gamma interferon; I-TAC, Interferon-inducible T-cell alpha chemoattractant; IP-10, Interferon gamma-induced protein 10; MCP, monocyte chemotactic protein; TARC, Thymus and activation regulated chemokine; PARC, pulmonary and activation-regulated chemokine; MDC, Macrophage-derived chemokine; TNF, tumor necrosis factor; MIF, macrophage inhibitory factor; IL-1ra, IL-1 receptor antagonist; TGF, Transforming growth factor; IFN, interferon; GDF, Growth Differentiation factor; NGF, nerve growth factor; BDNF, Brain derived neurotrophic factor; NT4, Neurotrophin-4; PBEF, pre-B-cell colony-enhancing factor; NAMPT, Nicotinamide phosphoribosyltransferase; TRAIL, TNF-related apoptosis-inducing ligand; APRIL, a proliferation-inducing ligand; BAFF/BLyS, B-cell activating factor/B lymphocyte stimulator; RANKL, Receptor activator of nuclear factor kappa-B ligand; G-CSF, macrophage colony stimulating factor; M-CSF, macrophage colony stimulating factor; GM-CSF, granulocyte-macrophage colony stimulating factor; SCF, stem cell factor; HB-EGF, heparin binding-like epidermal growth factor; FGF, fibroblast growth factor; HGF, hepatocyte growth factor.

Cytokines in **bold** refer to neutrophil studies in animal models that confirm human findings.

[a]Messenger ribonucleic acid only.

Neutrophils in Immunoregulation

There is now wide experimental evidence that neutrophils have the capacity to modulate the migration, maturation, and function of several leukocyte types including DCs, T cells, and B cells.[23] Regarding DCs, it is noteworthy to mention that neutrophils have been shown to produce biologically active CCL20 and CCL19, two structurally related CC-chemokines that have been suggested to play a fundamental role in trafficking of, respectively, immature and mature DCs to mucosal surfaces and lymphoid organs. Likewise, neutrophils release several antimicrobial compounds, such as lactoferrin, LL-37, and cathepsin G, that have been found to act as chemoattractants for immature DCs. In addition, neutrophils can proteolytically activate prochemerin to generate chemerin, one of the few chemokines that attracts both immature DCs and plasmacytoid DCs.[3] Neutrophils can also modulate DC maturation and function either through the release of several mediators or through direct physical interaction between Mac-1 (CD11b/CD18) and DC-specific intercellular adhesion molecule.[24] Neutrophils also act as transport vehicle for pathogens and, in turn, deliver antigens to DCs, thus playing an important role in the activation of T-cell immune responses controlled by DCs.[24]

Concerning the interactions between neutrophils and B cells, of particular interest are the findings that neutrophils produce significant amounts of BLyS/BAFF (B-lymphocyte stimulator/B-cell activating factor) and APRIL (a proliferation-inducing ligand), two related members of the TNF

family that are well known to be essential for B-lymphocyte homeostasis.[25] Therefore, it is plausible to assume a role of neutrophils not only in sustaining B and plasma cell antibody production and survival, but also in promoting B-cell–dependent autoimmune diseases and tumors, as already elegantly demonstrated in the case of B-cell lymphoma.[25]

Cross-talk between neutrophils and T cells has been repeatedly described to occur during infections or other inflammatory responses and diseases. Current evidence now indicates that neutrophils exhibit a significant chemotactic effect toward Th1 or Th17 cell subsets, through the release of CCL2, CXCL9, and CXCL10, or CCL2 and CCL20, respectively.[26] Neutrophils have also a role in directing T-cell polarization, for instance through their capacity to produce the Th1-inducing cytokine, IL-12. The latter has been clearly demonstrated in mouse models, in which strong Th1-dependent T-cell responses that result in pathogen clearance are elicited upon infection with *Candida albicans*, *Helicobacter pylori*, or *Legionella pneumophila*. Strikingly, depletion of neutrophils reverses the Th1 responses into a predominant Th2-response, therefore making the mice susceptible to infection. Besides the neutrophil's ability to modulate T-cell functions through the production of chemokines and cytokines, recent reports suggest that neutrophils travel to the lymph nodes during infections and express both major histocompatibility complex (MHC) II and costimulatory molecules.[27] However, whether neutrophils directly acquire antigen-presenting functions or transmit signals to naïve T cells remains still puzzling.

Neutrophils have also been shown to modulate the maturation, activation, and functions of NK cells, either by themselves or in cooperation with other cell types.[28] In this context, it is worth mentioning that neutrophils, by interacting with specific subsets of peripheral blood myeloid DC (eg, 6-sulpho LacNAc+ DC, also known as slanDC) can strongly potentiate IFNγ release by NK cells.[29] Importantly, the potential pathophysiologic relevance of a cell network among neutrophils, slanDC, and NK cells has been suggested by immunohistochemical studies that have revealed their colocalization in several chronic inflammatory pathologies, such as Crohn disease and psoriasis.[29] Finally, it has also been proposed that mature postmitotic neutrophils can also "transdifferentiate" into much-longer-lived cells with macrophage- or DC-like characteristics, which might constitute a further manner for neutrophils to act as regulatory cells of the adaptive immune response.[3,23]

It is important to mention that despite of all experimental observations in vivo that strongly suggest that neutrophils could potentially act as important players in the orchestration of immune responses, additional reevaluations and validations are required. Indeed, in order to investigate the role of neutrophils in vivo, an antigranulocyte receptor-1 monoclonal antibody, RB6-8C5, has been extensively used to deplete mice of neutrophils.[30] However, RB6-8C5 not only binds to Ly6G, which is present on neutrophils, but also to Ly6C, which is expressed on neutrophils, DCs, and subpopulations of lymphocytes and monocytes. Therefore, it has recently been shown that in vivo administration of RB6-8C5 depletes not only neutrophils but also other granulocyte receptor-1+ (Ly6C+) cells. Luckily, a more specific anti-Ly6G monoclonal antibody (1A8) has been raised; it is now preferentially used to deplete neutrophils in vivo under different experimental settings.[31] Obviously, it will take some time prior to controlling and, eventually, revising all data on neutrophil depletion generated by using RB6-8C5. More importantly, the future availability of conditional knockout mice, selectively targeting, one by one, neutrophil function such as survival, migration, or activation, will help to finally clarify the specific contributions of neutrophils under different inflammatory/immune settings.

Role of Neutrophils in Angiogenesis and Tumor Growth

There is no longer doubt that, in addition to macrophages, neutrophils may positively or negatively influence the angiogenic process and tumor growth.[32] In the former case, it has been observed that neutrophils, via elastase release, may indirectly generate massive amounts of bioactive, angiostatin-like fragments, and thus inhibit fibroblast growth factor (bFGF) plus vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF)-induced endothelial cell proliferation.[33] However, as described for macrophages, neutrophils can also favor malignant growth and progression, in relation to the type of tumor environment in which they reside, for instance via a remarkable production of proangiogenic molecules such as VEGF and CXCL8.[34] On the other hand, experimental studies of tumor cure and prevention have suggested that, at least in some models, engagement of neutrophil functions can be crucial for the establishment of an effective antitumoral immune response and immune memory reactions.[35] Indeed, neutrophils can produce several cytotoxic mediators for tumor and endothelial cell killing, including TNFα, defensins, proteases (such as elastase and cathepsin G), ROS, nitric oxide, and angiostatic chemokines (CXCL9, CXCL10, and CXCL11).[35] It has been recently found that neutrophils exposed to IFNs express and produce TNF-related apoptosis-inducing ligand,[36] another TNF superfamily member that selectively stimulates tumor cell killing. More recently, in vivo evidence proving that, similarly to M1 and M2 macrophages, neutrophils also polarize from an N1, proinflammatory and antitumoral phenotype, to an N2 anti-inflammatory and protumoral phenotype, has been provided,[37] thus supporting the notion that the tumor environment can profoundly shape the functional status of neutrophils. Furthermore, it is now well established that myelopoiesis can be profoundly modified during inflammation and cancer, releasing altered mature myelocytes and myeloid-derived suppressor cells (MDSCs) that exert immunosuppressive and protumoral activity, mainly by inhibiting T-cell functions.[38] Although mature human neutrophils do not seem to be a major component of such MDSC population, several mouse tumor models have revealed the existence of a granulocytic MDSC population with potent T-cell suppressing activity.[38] Nonetheless, low-density granulocytes (so called because of their abnormal behavior upon density centrifugation) able to inhibit T-cell activation and function have been found in human patients with cancer.[39] Further research is now needed to better understand the origin, phenotype, and relationship to mature

neutrophils of all these immunosuppressive granulocytic populations. Such studies will better clarify the real role of neutrophils in cancer as well as in other inflammatory/autoimmune diseases (such as infections, psoriasis, and lupus), in which the presence of MDSC- or low-density granulocyte–like cells have been also described.[40]

Neutrophils in Diseases

Previous sections have already summarized some of the most common inherited disorders of neutrophil function that impair critical responses for host defense. Dramatic clinical consequences may also be observed as a consequence of acquired neutropenia (eg, a susceptibility to infectious diseases when neutrophil counts fall below 500 cells/μL^4). Neutropenia can be due to depressed production (ie, hereditary neutropenias) or increased peripheral destruction.[4] Apart from the disorders associated with genetic dysfunctions or quantitative alterations of neutrophils, there are other pathologic situations in which neutrophils themselves become the predominant contributors to tissue injury, especially when the mechanisms supposed to control and inactivate their hypothetical beneficial and protective effector functions are deregulated. Examples of such pathologies, tentatively classified according to the major neutrophil-activating event,[1] are 1) diseases caused by ischemia reperfusion injury (ie, myocardial infarction); 2) bacterial infections (endotoxic shock, osteomyelitis, adult respiratory distress syndrome,); 3) cytokine-mediated diseases (rheumatoid arthritis, inflammatory bowel diseases); 4) diseases caused by crystal deposition (gout); 5) antineutrophil cytoplasmic antibody–associated vasculitis (Wegener granulomatosis, pauci-immune necrotizing crescentic glomerulonephritis); and 6) airway diseases (chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, bronchiectasis, bronchiolitis, cystic fibrosis, and even certain forms of asthma are characterized by neutrophil infiltration of the airway wall). One of the key challenges in neutrophil-dominated conditions is how to manipulate neutrophil function to abolish their destructive potential in a way that does not compromise their antibacterial and antifungal capacity. This has been difficult to achieve, as successful treatments in animal models have frequently proven ineffective or limited by side effects when used in human inflammatory diseases.

EOSINOPHILS, BASOPHILS, AND MAST CELLS

Eos, Bas, and MCs are critical effector cells not only in allergic inflammation, but also in innate and adaptive immunity. In addition, they have a crucial role in the surveillance of epithelial tissues, especially of the mucosa of the gastrointestinal, respiratory, and urogenital tracts: MCs as tissue resident sentinel cells, while Eos and Bas principally upon recruitment from the bloodstream. The microbicidal activity of these cells can be induced either after direct microorganism recognition or after activation by complement- or other leukocyte-derived products. Whereas neutrophils destroy internalized microorganisms by delivering cytotoxic intracellular compartments to them, Eos, Bas, and MCs are mainly involved in host defense against large parasites that cannot be internalized by other professional phagocytes. Eos can directly kill the parasites, whereas Bas and MCs preferentially release the contents of their granules into the external milieu upon activation, thus creating an environment hostile to invading organisms. Furthermore, the unique property of Bas and MCs to express the high-affinity Fc receptor for IgE (FcεRI) that, after activation by antigen-specific IgE, induces rapid discharge of potent inflammatory mediators (histamine being one of them), is central to the initiation and propagation of immediate hypersensitivity reactions. Coughing, sneezing, and vomiting, all expulsive responses that typically are caused by basophil- and MC-derived mediators and accompany allergic and pathologic inflammatory diseases, may actually reflect mechanisms that evolved to expel parasites. The properties and roles of Eos, Bas, and MCs in pathologic conditions such as allergy and autoimmunity are described in detail Chapter 45. Herein, we focus on the specialized properties that highlight their role in the innate and acquired immune response.

Eosinophils

Eosinophil Generalities

Eos are end-stage, multifunctional leukocytes involved in protection against parasitic helminths and bacterial and viral infections, that are also implicated in the pathogenesis of numerous Th2-type inflammatory processes and tissue injury.[41] These granulocytic, bilobed, nucleated cells were named as Eos by Paul Ehrlich in 1879, because of their intense staining with eosin, an acid aniline dye (Fig. 20.6). Eos are approximately 12 to 17 μm in diameter and represent 1% to 6 % of the total blood leukocyte population. Besides circulating and massively recruited at sites of Th2-dominated inflammation, Eos also reside in various organs, such as the gastrointestinal tract, mammary glands, and bone marrow.[41,42] Eos derive from bone marrow, CD34+ myeloid-committed progenitors, and upon maturation can be cytofluorimetrically identified by their characteristic morphology/side scatter and expression pattern of plasma membrane proteins such as CD66b, CCR3, IL-5Ra in con-

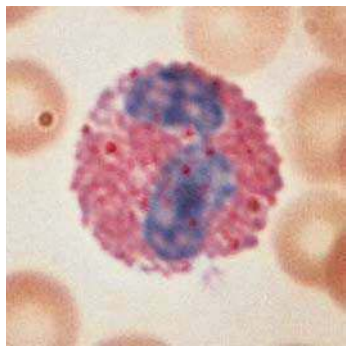


FIG. 20.6. A polymorphonuclear eosinophil circulating in peripheral blood. (Reprinted with permission from Cohen BJ, Wood DL. *Memmler's The Human Body in Health and Disease*. 9th Ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2000.)

junction with the lack of expression of CD16 (to better distinguish them from neutrophils), and other lineage markers (such as CD2, CD14, and CD19).[41–43] Eosinophil differentiation and expansion from progenitor cells mainly occurs in response to three cytokines, namely IL-3, IL-5, and GM-CSF, which provide permissive proliferative and differentiation signals through GATA-1, PU.1, C/EBPα, and C/EBPε transcription factors.[44] IL-5 is, however, the most specific factor for Eo development, differentiation, and release from the bone marrow into the peripheral circulation, especially during helminthic infection or allergic inflammation.[41–43] Also, allergen challenge or the experimental administration of CCL11/eotaxin-1 (acting through the CCR3 receptor) can cause bone marrow release of Eo precursors and mature Eos.[45,46] However, basal levels of Eo development can also occur in the absence of IL-5 as in antigen-induced tissue eosinophilia, as suggested by the presence of tissue Eos in asthmatic patients treated with anti–IL-5–neutralizing antibodies.[45,46] Once released from the bone marrow, Eos enter the circulation (with a half-life of 8 to 18 hours) and then traffic to tissues, at mucosal surfaces and/or sites of allergic inflammation, in response to a variety of different chemoattractants including CCL11, CCL24/eotaxin-2, CCL26/eotaxin-3, CCL5/RANTES, or LTB_4, LTD_2, PAF, and C5a. IL-4 and IL-13 play a central role in promoting Eo trafficking to mucosal tissue by upregulating eotaxins (CCL11 and CCL26) and endothelial expression of vascular cell adhesion molecule (VCAM)-1, the counterreceptor for VLA-4, which is expressed on the surface of Eos.[45,47] In addition, GM-CSF, IL-3, and IL-5, as well as IL-33 and IFNγ, are important for promoting long-term Eo survival and activation in vitro and in tissues.[41–43,46]

Eosinophil Granules

Human Eos have a bilobed nucleus with highly condensed chromatin and contain up to four different populations of secretory organelles: primary granules, secondary/specific/crystalloid granules, small amorphous granules (containing arylsulfatase and acid phosphatase), and secretory vesicles.[48] These four organelles, along with vesiculotubular structures and small vesicles involved in transport and secretion by the activated cell, serve as the major subcellular sites for the eosinophil armamentarium of preformed cytotoxic and inflammatory mediators.[48] Eos also contain lipid bodies, which are non–membrane-bound lipid-rich organelles that are the major site of eicosanoid synthesis as they contain eicosanoid synthetic enzymes including 5-lipoxygenase, leukotriene C_4 synthase, and cyclooxygenase.[41–43,48,49] Eos contain greater numbers of lipid bodies than neutrophils, which even increase during eosinophil activation in vitro or engagement in inflammatory reactions in vivo.[41–43,48,49]

Primary granules are similar to those found in other granulocyte lineages, are formed early in Eo development, and are enriched in Charcot–Leyden crystal protein (which represent less than 5% of total granules).[48,49] Charcot–Leyden crystal/galectin-10 is a hydrophobic protein of unknown function that is produced and released in high levels by activated Eos. Its characteristic hexagonal bipyramidal crystals can be detected as a hallmark of Eo involvement in host allergic and other immune responses, for instance in the stool or sputum of patients with gastrointestinal or respiratory eosinophilia.[48,49] Specific granules have a distinctive ultrastructural appearance with an electron-dense core and contain cationic proteins that give Eos their unique staining properties. The major cationic proteins in the specific granules are major basic protein (MBP, composed of two related cationic proteins, MBP-1 and MBP-2), Eo peroxidase (EPO), Eo cationic protein (the Eo's two ribonucleases RNase2 and RNase3, respectively), and Eo-derived neurotoxin (EDN). MBP is the major component of the crystalloid cores of specific granules and accounts for more than 50% of the Eo granule protein mass. MBP is highly cationic, it lacks enzymatic activity, and its toxicity is mediated by enhanced membrane permeability resulting from interactions of the cationic protein with the plasma membrane. MBP has in vitro activity toward parasites, including schistosomes and other helminths. In patients with asthma, serum and bronchoalveolar lavage fluid MBP concentration correlates with bronchial hyperresponsiveness. EDN and Eo cationic protein demonstrate in vitro toxicity to parasites and single-stranded ribonucleic acid pneumoviruses, including respiratory syncytial virus. EPO is another highly cationic protein that makes up approximately 25% of granule proteins and that catalyzes the oxidation of halides, pseudohalides, and nitric oxide to oxidant products that are toxic to microorganisms and host cells. It has been shown that, depending on the activation stimulus, Eo granule cationic proteins can be selectively secreted or released into tissues by a number of different secretory pathways, ranging from classical granule fusion and exocytosis (eg, in killing parasitic helminths), piecemeal degranulation (eg, vesicular transport from the granules in the absence of classical exocytosis), and cytolytic degranulation (release of intact membrane-bound granules directly into the tissue upon eosinophil apoptosis/cell death).[41–43,48,49] Studies in the past 15 to 20 years of the biochemistry, functions, and localization in tissues of the unique enzymatic and nonenzymatic cationic proteins present in Eo granules have provided compelling evidence supporting a pathologic proinflammatory and effector role for the Eo in directly inducing tissue damage.

Eosinophil Mediators

In addition to containing numerous highly basic and cytotoxic granule proteins that are released upon activation, Eos can also synthesize an arsenal of lipid mediators, ROS, and inflammatory/hematopoietic cytokines that mediate the pathophysiologic role of this granulocyte in health and disease (Table 20.3). Lipid-derived mediators generated by Eos include PGE_2, thromboxane, LTC_4, and PAF, which are all considered as responsible for many of the Eo-triggered proinflammatory activities, namely the increase in leukocyte trafficking, endothelial adhesion, smooth muscle contraction, vascular permeability, and mucus secretion.[41–43] Eo-derived cytokines (including TGFβ, GM-CSF, IL-3, IL-4, IL-5, CXCL8, IL-10, IL-12, IL-13, IL-16, IL-18, TNFα, CCL5, stem cell factor [SCF], NGF, and CCL11) are in part stored as preformed in granules and thus can be rapidly released upon degranulation (similarly to MCs).[41–43,50–52]

TABLE 20.3 Major Eosinophil-Derived Mediators

Class	Mediators	Physiologic Effects
Cationic granule proteins	MBP, ECP, EDN, EPO	Cytotoxic and bactericidal properties, smooth muscle cells contraction, mast cell activation and survival
Lipid mediators	LTD_4, LTE_4, PAF, PGE_1, PGE_2, 15-HETE	Leukocyte trafficking, endothelial adhesion, smooth muscle cells contraction, vascular permeability, inflammation
Cytokines	TNFα, IFNγ, IL-1α, IL-1β, IL-2, IL-3, IL-4, IL-5, IL-6, IL-9, IL-10, IL-11, IL-12, IL-13, IL-16, IL-17, IL-25	Inflammation, immunoregulation
Chemokines	CXCL1, CXCL5, CXCL8, CXCL9, CXCL10, CXCL11, CCL2, CCL3, CCL5, CCL7, CCL11, CCL13	Leukocyte chemoattraction and tissue infiltration of leukocytes
Growth factors	HB-EGF, LBP, NGF, GM-CSF, TGFα, TGFβ, SCF, VEGF, APRIL	Growth of various cell types

ECP, eosinophil cationic protein; EDN, eosinophil-derived neurotoxin; EPO, eosinophil peroxidase; IFN, interferon; IL, interleukin; LTD, leukotriene D; LTE, leukotriene E; MBP, major basic protein; PAF, platelet-activating factor; PGE, prostaglandin E; TNF, tumor necrosis factor.

Interestingly,GM-CSF is among the cytokines produced in greatest quantities by Eos.[53]

Eos are functionally activated via an array of cell surface molecules, including Ig receptors for IgG (FcγRII/CD32) and IgA (FcαRI/CD89), receptors for complement-derived fragments (CR1/CD35, CR3, and CD88), cytokines (IL-3R, IL-5R, GM-CSF, as well as IL-1αR, IL-2R, IL-4R, IFNαR, and TNFRI), chemokines (CCR1 and CCR3), adhesion molecules (VLA4, α4β7), leukotrienes (CysLT1R and CysLT2R; LTB_4-R), prostaglandins (PGD_2 type 2R), PAF, and ligands for TLRs (TLR1, TLR4, TLR7, TLR9, and TLR10, the TLR7/8 representing an important mechanism for host defense against viral infections).[41–43]

Eosinophil Effector Functions

Eos have historically been considered as end-stage effector cells, causing damage to parasitic pathogens during helminthic infections or to host tissues in allergic diseases. However, as outlined in the following, accumulating evidence suggest that Eos can perform various immune regulatory functions, pointing to a more complex role of these cells not only in regulating inflammation and bridging innate and adaptive immunity, but also in maintaining epithelial barrier functions and affecting tissue remodeling.[41–43]

Eosinophils in Host Defense. The earliest recognized Eo effector functions were those associated to their role in host defense against multicellular helminthic parasites, although it is now clear that Eos are also involved in host defense against viral and bacterial infections.[54] Among the several mechanisms through which Eos can exert defensive functions, the best described consist in their release of cytotoxic cationic proteins (such as MBP, Eo cationic protein, EDN, and EPO), production of ROS, antibody- and complement-mediated killing, and the expulsion of extracellular deoxyribonucleic acid traps.[43,54] Despite substantial in vitro data, there is a lack of convincing evidence of the effective role of Eos in host defense in vivo, in particular during helminthic infections. Indeed, the only human Eo-specific condition, known as hereditary EPO deficiency, has not been related to increased susceptibility to helminthic infections. Furthermore, the results from infection studies carried out in mouse models remain unclear and controversial.[55,56] Considering that many of these experiments were performed using human pathogens, which do not naturally infect rodents, and that there are several phenotypic and functional differences between human and murine Eos, the relevance of these data should be reconsidered.[55,56] It is noteworthy to mention that, as described subsequently, some of the mechanisms used by Eos in host defense against pathogens may also produce detrimental effects on the host.[42,54]

Eosinophils in Immunoregulation. Accumulating evidence suggest that Eos can perform discrete immune regulatory functions mainly through production and release of cytokines and other immunomodulatory molecules, or via antigen presentation. For instance, Eos produce cytokines that are able to act on Eos themselves, the so-called autocrine cytokines, including IL-3 and GM-CSF, which function, in part, to prevent apoptosis and prolong Eo survival, once these cells are recruited into sites of tissue inflammation, such as the lung in asthma.[41–43] Eos can regulate their own recruitment, as well as that of DCs and T cells, through the secretion of CCL3, CCL5, and CCL11. Eo-derived cytokines may also influence the functions of other immune cells. For instance, Eos play an important role in the regulation of MC functions, including activation, differentiation, maturation, and survival, mainly via the release of SCF.[50–52] Eos have also been implicated in the regulation of B-cell function, not only under homeostatic conditions, but also during immunization responses with alum.[57] Eos seem indeed able to modulate early stages of B-cell activation and IgM production.[57] The best characterized role of Eos in immune regulation is their ability to initiate Th2-type responses by modulating DC and T-cell recruitment and activation. Eo-derived EDN can recruit and activate DCs and, in turn, skew them to a Th2-promoting phenotype.[58] In several murine models of parasitic infections and airway allergen challenge, Eos have been shown not only to precede Th2 cells arrivals in tissues, but also to be able to migrate to draining lymph nodes and polarize Th2 immune responses through the secretion of cytokines such as IL-4 and IL-25.[42,58] However, human Eos also express indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase which, through kynurenine production, inhibits Th1 effector functions.[59]

Another important role of Eos in immune regulation is their function as antigen-presenting cells. Eos possess the capacity to internalize, process, and present antigenic peptides within the context of surface expressed MHC II, to provide costimulatory signals to T cells through surface expression of molecules such as CD80, CD86, and CD40, and to physically interact with CD4+ T cells.[60] In humans, although circulating Eos from healthy donors are generally devoid of surface MHC class II expression, they can be induced to express MHC class II and costimulatory molecules upon appropriate cytokine stimulation and after transmigration through endothelial cell monolayers.[42,60] Human Eos also constitutively express a Jagged1, a Notch ligand, suggesting a capacity of Eos to provide a polarization signal to naive CD4+ T cells.[61]

Eosinophil Homeostatic Functions. As mentioned, at baseline conditions Eos are present in tissues such as the gut, mammary gland, uterus, thymus, and bone marrow, via recruitment by the CCL11/CCR3 axis. Although their homeostatic role in all these tissues is not fully understood, Eos seem to be mainly involved in regulating the morphogenesis and maintenance of mucosal organs, as well as the immune homeostasis of the thymus and bone marrow.[41–43] Thymic Eos, for instance, are thought to be involved in the MHC class I–restricted negative selection of double positive thymocytes. In the bone marrow, instead, Eos colocalize with plasma cells, and by secreting a proliferation inducing ligand (APRIL) and IL-6, they play a crucial role in long-term maintenance and survival of the same plasma cells.[41,43,62]

Eosinophils in Tissue Remodeling. A growing body of evidence has proven the ability of Eos to influence tissue remodeling and fibrosis in many Eo-associated diseases, mainly due to their ability of secreting high levels of TGFβ. Human Eos also produce other profibrotic and angiogenic factors, such as osteopontin, VEGF, and MMPs.[50–52] Furthermore, Eos produce and release NGF and promote the extension of neurites in nerve cells.

Eosinophils in Diseases

Eos are currently thought to participate in the pathogenesis of the chronic phases of allergic diseases such as asthma, allergic rhinitis, atopic dermatitis, and hypereosinophilic syndromes.[41–43] Allergic diseases are associated with a mild peripheral blood eosinophilia, although in tissues and in the nasal secretions, sputum, and BAL fluid, Eos can be more significantly elevated. Studies in murine models support a role for Eos in airway remodeling, airway hyperactivity, and mucous production. Elevation of peripheral blood Eos is also observed in drug reactions, helminthic infections, as well as in specific primary immunodeficiency diseases, most notably Omenn syndrome and hyper-IgE syndrome. Eosinopenia is typically seen in acute bacterial or viral infections and with systemic corticosteroid treatment. Finally, the use of Eo-specific antibodies has demonstrated that almost all human or mouse cancers are associated with an important Eo infiltrate at some point in tumor growth.[43]

Mast Cells and Basophils

Mast Cell Generalities

MCs were identified as granular cells in the mesentery of the frog by Dr. Von Recklinghausen in 1863 and were named "Mastzellen" by Dr Paul Ehrlich in 1878. Initial studies focused on their histologic characteristics, distribution, and abundance in health and disease. The discovery of histamine in 1910, slow-reacting substance of anaphylaxis (now leukotrienes) in 1938, and IgE in 1966 provided initial insights into the role of MCs in allergic reactions. MCs are tissue-dwelling inflammatory cells widely distributed throughout the body and are common at perivascular sites and at mucosal surfaces, particularly in those tissues that form interfaces with the external environment, such as skin, conjunctivae, and intestinal and airway mucosa.[63–65] Thus, MCs are strategically placed so as to function in a first line of host defense.[66,67] Morphologically, MCs in tissues appear as round, spindle-shaped, or spider-like cells, with round or oval nuclei, ranging between 7 and 20 μm in diameter, and readily identified using cationic dyes such as toluidine blue or methylene blue.[68] These dyes impart a blue-to-purple change in color, known as "metachromasia," which occurs as a result of their abundant intragranular content of sulfated proteoglycans (eg, heparin and chondroitin sulfates).[68] Of all other hematopoietic cells, only Bas share this staining feature with MCs, along with other properties (see Table 20.4

TABLE 20.4 Major Features of Mast Cells and Basophils

	Mast Cells	Basophils
Origin	Hematopoietic stem cells	Hematopoietic stem cells
Lifespan	Months	Days
Primary location	Tissues	Intravascular circulation
Site of maturation	Connective tissues	Bone marrow
Differentiation factors	Stem cell factor	Interleukin-3
Histamine content	1 to 15 pg/cell	1 to 2 pg/cell
Size	7 to 20 μm	5 to 10 μm
Nucleus	Oval or round	Segmented
Granules	Smaller and more numerous compared with basophils	Larger and fewer compared with mast cells
Peptidoglycans	Heparin and chondroitin sulfates	Predominantly chondroitin sulfates
Chymase content	High	Absent
Tryptase content	High	Low
Lipid mediators	PGD_2, LTB_4, LTC_4, LTD_4, LTE_4, PAF	LTC_4, LTD_4, LTE_4
Activation by		
Substance P	Activation	No effect
Morphine	Activation	No effect
fMLF	No effect	Activation

fMLF, formyl-Met-Leu-Phe; LTB,leukotriene B; LTC, leukotriene C; LTD, leukotriene D; LTE, leukotriene E; PAF, platelet-activating factor; PGD, prostaglandin D.

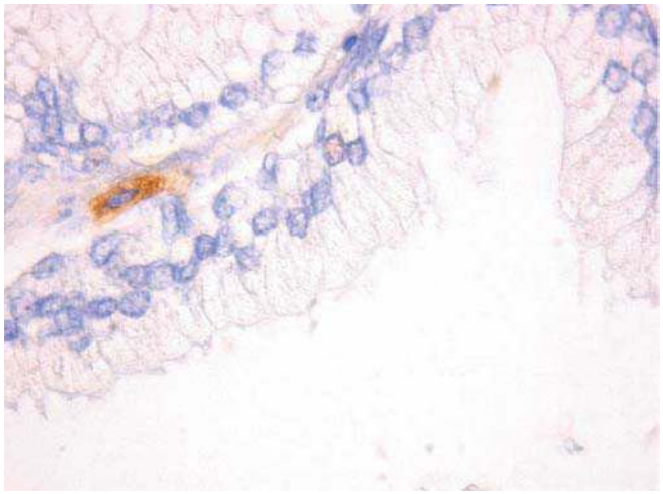


FIG. 20.7. Formalin-fixed, paraffin-embedded human prostate tissue stained with an anti–mast cell tryptase antibody.

for the major similarities and differences between MCs and Bas). MCs can be cytofluorimetrically identified by their characteristic expression pattern of plasma membrane proteins serving as markers, including FcεRI (as Bas and a subpopulation of DCs), CD23, CD117, and CD203, in conjunction with the lack of expression of lineage markers (such as CD2, CD14, and CD19).[69,70] Furthermore, MCs can be identified either by biochemical reagents that detect their intracellular proteases for their enzymatic properties or by immunostaining using antibodies toward tryptase (Fig. 20.7) or chymase (the latter representing the primary method of choice for identifying human MCs in tissues).[71]

Human MCs originate from CD34+/CD117+/CD13+ multipotent hematopoietic progenitors in bone marrow, and then migrate through blood to tissues where they mature.[72,73] Details of their differentiation and phenotypic diversification have not been definitively identified, but are likely included within the CD34+/KIT+ cell subpopulation and are clearly distinct from the basophil lineage (which is KIT/CD117– but IL-3R+).[74] In mice, a hematopoietic stem cell progresses to a multipotent progenitor, a common myeloid progenitor and a granulocyte/monocyte progenitor.[75,76] A monopotent MC progenitor is found in bone marrow and intestine, and a common basophil/MC progenitor is also found in mouse spleen, observations that await study in human. After their homing in the tissues, maturation of the MC precursors is dependent on SCF expressed on the surface of fibroblasts, stromal cells, and endothelial cells.[68,77] Accordingly, in vitro studies using mouse and human MCs confirm that soluble SCF protects MCs from apoptosis and induces their proliferation, chemotaxis, and also some degree of activation and secretion.[68] Consistently, mutant mice lacking KIT- or SCF-mediated functions are often used as experimental tools to implicate a biologic role of MCs in given models.[68] While there are several studies on the mechanisms of localization of MCs to different tissues, there is little information about specific molecules that could regulate MC-progenitor trafficking to tissues, movement, and incremental recruitment upon inflammation.[63,72] Accordingly, while a range of chemokines are active on human and mouse MCs in vitro, no MC-selective chemokine has been identified yet.

MC localization to small intestine is reliant on adhesive interactions controlled by $\alpha_4\beta_7$ integrin, VCAM-1, and mucosal addressin cell adhesion molecule-1 (MAdCAM-1).[63] CXCR2 ligands also play a critical role for the constitutive localization of MC progenitors to the intestine.[63,78] In contrast to the small intestine, MC progenitors are not abundant in normal lung. However, MCs are detected in the bronchial epithelium and airway smooth muscle, associated with pulmonary inflammation and abundant in human asthma.[79] VCAM-1 interactions with both $\alpha_4\beta_1$ and $\alpha_4\beta_7$ integrins, but not mucosal addressin cell adhesion molecule-1, are essential for the trafficking of MC progenitors to the lung during antigen-induced pulmonary inflammation.[79] It is interesting to note that in a model of *Aspergillus fumigatus* extract–induced allergic pulmonary inflammation, IgE can influence the number and function of mature MCs, but not MC progenitor recruitment.[80]

On the basis of their location, histochemical staining, content of proteases, and reactivity to selected secretagogues and antiallergic drugs, two major subtypes of MCs have been described in rodents: mucosal-type MCs, which express MC protease-1 and -2; and connective tissue–type MCs, which are positive for MC protease-4, -5, -6, and carboxypeptidase A.[81] In humans, mucosal MCs preferentially express mouse MC protease-1 and -2, whereas connective tissue MCs express MC protease-4, -5, -6, and carboxypeptidase A.[81,82] Human MCs also exhibit heterogeneity and are thus classified by their content of serine proteases as tryptase-only MC, chymase-only MC, or both tryptase- and chymase-positive MC.[81,82] Both in humans and mice, these MC phenotypes are reversible in certain microenvironmental conditions, and transdifferentiation between the phenotypes has been shown.[81,82] Each MC subtype predominates in different locations: tryptase-only MC cells are prominent within the mucosa of the respiratory (nose, lung) and gastrointestinal tracts, and increase upon mucosal inflammation, whereas tryptase- and chymase-positive MC cells are prominent within connective tissues such as the dermis, submucosa of the gastrointestinal tract, heart, conjunctivae muscularis of the uterus, and perivascular tissues.[81] In light of murine studies highlighting a "fine tuning" on the MC functions and effector properties by cytokines or matrix proteins, it seems likely that human MCs will prove to be even more heterogeneous than currently thought. Accordingly, MC phenotype, behavior, and responsiveness may be dramatically altered by cytokines, including IL-4 (which upregulates the expression of FcεRI and is particularly pivotal in regulating functional responses of MCs in mucosal inflammation), IL-5 (which promotes MC proliferation in the presence of SCF), and IFNγ (which induces the expression of the high-affinity activating FcγRI/CD64 and also decreases MC numbers).[68] Furthermore, MCs express an array of adhesion and immune receptors that may assist in the recognition of invading pathogens and in the sampling of different stimuli coming from the microenvironment.[67] This versatility is reflected in the numerous

TABLE 20.5 Major Basophil and/or Mast Cell–Derived Mediators

Class	Mediators	Physiologic Effects
Preformed mediators	Histamine	Vasodilation, angiogenesis, mitogenesis, suppressor of T-cell activation
	5-HT	Leukocyte regulation, vasoconstriction, pain
	Chymase	Tissue damage, pain, angiotensin II synthesis
	Tryptase	Activation of PAR, inflammation, pain, tissue damage, degradation of antigens and peptides
	kininogenases	Synthesis of kinins, pain
	Nitric oxide synthase	Nitric oxide production
	Carboxypeptidase A	Degrades enzymes
	CRH	Inflammation, vasodilation, mast-cell VEGF release
	Endothelin	Sepsis
	Kinins	Inflammation, pain, vasodilation, mast cell trigger
	Somatostatin	Anti-inflammatory effects, mast cell trigger
	VEGF	Neovascularization, vasodilation
	Chondroitin sulfate	Connective tissue component, anti-inflammatory, mast cell inhibitor
	Heparin	Angiogenesis, NGF stabilization, mast cell inhibitor
Lipid mediators	LTB_4, LTC_4, PAF, PGD_2	Leukocyte chemotaxis, vasoconstriction, pain, platelet activation, vasodilation, inflammation, bronchoconstriction
Cytokines	TNFα, TGFβ, IFNα, IFNβ, IFNγ, IL-1α, IL-1β, IL-3, IL-4, IL-5, IL-6, IL-8, IL-9, IL-10, IL-11, IL-12, IL-13, IL-15, IL-16, IL-18, IL-25, SCF, MIF	Inflammation, leucocyte migration/proliferation
Chemokines	CXCL8, CCL3, CCL2, CCL7, CCL13, CCL5, CCL11, CCL19	Chemoattraction and tissue infiltration of leukocytes
Growth factors	CSF, GM-CSF, bFGF, VEGF, NGF, LIF	Growth of various cell types
Antimicrobic products	Nitric oxide, superoxide, antimicrobial peptides	Microbial killing

bFGF, fibroblast growth factor; CRH, corticotropin-releasing hormone; CSF, colony-stimulating factor; GM-CSF, granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor; IFN, interferon; IL, interleukin; LIF, leukemia inhibitory factor; LTB, leukotriene B; LTC, leukotriene C; MIF, migration inhibitory factor; NGF, nerve growth factor; PAF, platelet-activating factor; PAR, proteinase activated receptor; PGD, prostaglandin D; SCF; stem cell factor; TGF, transforming growth factor; TNF, tumor necrosis factor; VEGF, vascular endothelial growth factor.

IgE-dependent and -independent activation pathways that modulate the quality and magnitude of MC responses and cytokine release. MCs are endowed with a range of potent proinflammatory effector molecules that may be selectively released not only through FcεR1 activation, but also in response to a variety of other receptors including C3aR and C5aR, FcγRIIa/CD32a, KIT/CD117/SCF-R, IL-3R, IL-4R, IL-5R, IL-9R, IL-10R, GM-CSFR, IFNγR, CCR3, CCR5, CXCR2, CXCR4, NGFR/TRKA, the type 1 receptor for cys-LTs (CysLT1R), the adenosineA3 receptor, and many TLRs, among others.[68] Depending on the type, property, strength, and combination of the stimuli that they receive, MCs secrete a diverse and wide range of biologically active products (Table 20.5) that can trigger, direct, or suppress the immune response.[68,83,84]

Basophil Generalities

Bas are the rarest of the granulocytes (typically constituting 0.5% to 1.5% of peripheral blood leukocytes), are 5 to 10 μm in diameter, and exhibit a bean-shaped or bilobed condensed nucleus.[85] Compared to MCs, they have little proliferative capacity and possess fewer, but larger (up to 1.2 μm) round metachromatic granules (Fig. 20.8) enriched in histamine (stored at about 1 to 2 pg per cell).[86,87] Bas develop from CD34+ progenitors, differentiate and mature in the bone marrow in response to IL-3, and circulate in the periphery with a half-life thought to be of a few days.[85,88] Although not predominantly tissue-dwelling cells, Bas are able to infiltrate inflamed tissues, particularly at sites of allergic inflammation within several hours after exposure to allergens, and are often accompanied by a simultaneous influx of eosinophilic granulocytes and Th2 lymphocytes.[82,85,89] Bas can be cytofluorimetrically identified by their selective pattern of plasma membrane proteins serving as markers, including FcεRI (like MCs), CD123 (the α chain of the IL-3 receptor), CD11b, and CD13, in conjunction with the absence of other lineage markers (such as CD2, CD14, CD16, CD19, and MHC class II).[89] They also express, and dynamically respond to, ligands for a variety of functional cytokine/chemokine receptors (eg, IL-5R, GM-CSFR, CCR2, and CCR3), complement receptors (CD11b, CD11c, CD35, and CD88), prostaglandin receptors (CRTH2), Ig Fc receptors (FcεRI and FcγRIIb), and TLRs. For example, following FcεRI activation (which typically triggers granule exocytosis and mediator release), a number of basophil cell surface markers, including CD13, CD63, CD107a, CD164, and CD203C, may increase.[85,89,90]

Mast Cell and Basophil Mediators

The mediators produced by MCs and Bas are schematically divided into preformed mediators, newly synthesized lipid mediators, and cytokines/chemokines (see Table 20.5).[82,86,89]

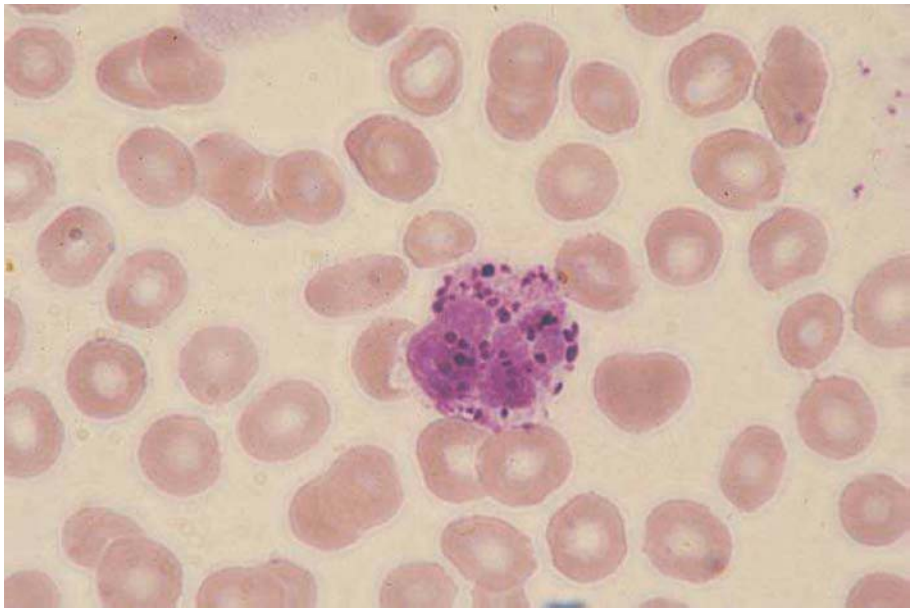


FIG. 20.8. A Polymorphonuclear Basophil Circulating in Peripheral Blood. From *Anderson's Atlas of Hematology,* Anderson, Shauna C., PhD. Copyright 2003, Wolters Kluwer Health/Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.

Such subdivision is not exclusive as TNFα, for instance, occurs as both preformed and as a newly synthesized molecule.[91] Preformed mediators, including histamine or MC neutral proteases (tryptase, chymase, cathepsin G, and carboxypeptidase) are stored in cytoplasmic granules and form complexes with the negatively charged, very abundantly expressed, sulfated proteoglycans.[82,92] Upon MC/Ba activation, the granules fuse with the plasma membrane and, within minutes, release their content into the extracellular environment where the various mediators dissociate from proteoglycans.[68,85] Other than being secreted upon stimulation, some molecules are also constitutively released, as in the case of MC tryptase. Consequently, tryptase levels are considered as a parameter that reflects the MC burden, and, in fact, they significantly increase in systemic mastocytosis.[82,92] Curiously, the function of tryptase in vivo is still unknown, even though, in vitro, it digests fibrinogen, fibronectin, prourokinase, proMMP-3, protease-activated receptor-2, and complement component C3; it activates fibroblasts as well. The functions of MC/Ba-derived proteoglycans and proteases are less well understood, but proteases provide some protection against snake and insect venoms.[82,92] Differently from MCs, humans Bas do not express chymase, appear to contain very low levels of heparin and tryptase (with some exceptions), but contain MBP and Charcot–Leyden crystal (which are typical eosinophil products). Activated Bas have been shown to also contain granzyme B and to directly kill target cells, at least in part by this cytotoxic serine protease.[82,90,93] More importantly, Bas, together with neutrophils, seem to be the exclusive peripheral blood source of histamine.

Newly synthesized lipid mediators by FcεRI-activated MCs are PAF, PGD_2, and LTA_4. The latter is then converted to LTB_4 or conjugated with glutathione to form LTC_4 (the parent compound to the cysteinyl leukotrienes, which also include LTD_4 and LTE_4).[86,92] Activated Bas can produce the same lipid mediators but PGD_2 (as they lack the PGD_2 synthase).[82,86,93] PGD_2 functions as bronchoconstrictor and attracts both Eos and Bas, LTB_4 attract neutrophils and effector T-cells, while cysteinyl leukotrienes attract Eos and work as potent bronchoconstrictors, in addition to promote vascular permeability and to induce mucus production.

MCs produce several cytokines, including IL-3, IL-4, GM-CSF, IL-5, IL-6, IL-10, and IL-13, growth factors, including bFGF, SCF, VEGF, and several chemokines, including CXCL8 and CCL3.[82,86,92] In addition, MCs are considered the only cells storing very abundant levels of preformed TNFα, whose critical role in host defense against bacterial infections has been widely highlighted: in fact, specific experimental animal models lacking MC-derived TNFα result in drastically reduced neutrophil influx and significantly increased mortality.[91] Bas are a major source of GM-CSF and VEGF, and release significant amount of chemokines (CXCL8, CCL3, CCL11) in response to IgE cross-linking. Chief among the cytokines produced by Bas are IL-4 and IL-13, which are released in response to FcεRI or C5a stimulation within the range of 20 to more than 600 pg/million and < 20 to 2000 pg/million cells, respectively.[82,86,93]

Mast Cell and Basophil Effector Functions

MCs and Bas, although derived from distinct progenitors, have been recognized to express partially overlapping functions in many aspects of natural and acquired immunity.[86,87] Traditionally, MCs and Bas, together with Eos, are considered essential components of IgE-mediated classic type 1 hypersensitivity (allergic) reactions and allergic inflammation (see Chapter 45). Nonetheless, MCs and Bas have also the ability to release and synthesize highly bioactive, proinflammatory, and cytotoxic substances, independent of signaling through FcεRI. Therefore, these cells, besides

being important modulators of allergic reaction, can also contribute to leucocyte recruitment, stromal and tissue cell activation, modulation of immune reactions, tissue remodelling, and angiogenesis.[84,89,90,94]

Mast Cells and Basophils in Allergy. Allergen-specific IgE production, with subsequent fixation of IgE to FcεRI receptors on MCs and Bas, followed by rapid degranulation and release of histamine and specific eicosanoids (eg, LTC_4), is central to the initiation and propagation of immediate hypersensitivity reactions.[65,82] It has been widely accepted that MCs contribute significantly to acute inflammatory reactions to antigens/allergens toward which the host bears antibodies of the IgE class.[95] MCs are responsible for virtually all of the increased vascular permeability and tissue swelling early in the IgE-dependent passive cutaneous anaphylactic response.[95,96] If the stimulation is of more persistent or of more severe nature, acute response may undergo transition into a late-phase reaction, which, except for the time scale ranging from a few to several hours from initial antigen challenge, is characterized by new recruitment of leukocytes (Eos, Bas, and Th2 lymphocytes) to the site of inflammation.[65] Bas play a crucial role in sustaining allergic chronic inflammation upon their entering the affected tissue, not only due to the release of stored and newly synthesized mediators, such as histamine and LTC_4, but also via the release of high amounts of the cytokines IL-4 and IL-13.[89,90,97]

Mast Cells and Basophils in Innate Immunity and Host Defense. Recent studies have demonstrated that MCs express many PRRs, including TLRs 1 to 10 and nucleotide oligomerization domain–like Receptors (NLR) (including nucleotide oligomerization domainreceptors and the NLRP3). Expression of various PRRs thus permits MCs to respond to both pathogen-associated molecular and "danger signals" resulting from cell stress or injury. Several MC functions triggered by PRR have been implicated in host defense.[84,94,98] These latter include enhancement of the recruitment or function of granulocytes, phagocytosis-dependent bactericidal activities, and proteolytic degradation of endogenous mediators, which would otherwise be elevated to toxic levels, such as endothelin-1 and neurotensin. Secretion of proteases/enzymes and formation of extracellular traps that contain antimicrobial peptides, histone, deoxyribonucleic acid, and tryptase have also been proposed as potential mechanisms by which MCs exert protective functions.[94,98] In addition to their role in bacterial infections, MCs can promote host resistance to certain parasite and virus infections. However, the mechanisms involved in these functions have not been fully elucidated.[94,98] Differently from MCs, the role of Bas in host defense is less studied, especially in bacterial or viral infections. Some evidence for a role of Bas in host defense against parasitic infections and tick infestations has been reported, but the molecular mechanisms underlying the Ba-mediated protection in these processes remain to be determined.[89,99,100]

Mast Cells and Basophils in Immunoregulation. MCs and Bas manifest immunoregulatory functions in IgE-dependent and -independent inflammatory reactions, mainly by secreting soluble mediators and cytokines or by functioning as antigen-presenting cells. These cells contribute to the initiation of acquired immunity by orchestrating DC migration, maturation, and function and by interacting with T and B cells.[84,89,90,94] MCs have the potential to influence DC functions, mainly through the release of histamine, PGD_2, PGE_2, LTB_4, or cytokines such as TNF, IL-1, IL-16, IL-18, and CCL5. Generally, both in vitro and in vivo evidence indicate that MCs predominantly inhibit IL-12p70 production and induce a Th2-promoting phenotype in DCs.[94,101] MCs can also modulate B-lymphocyte functions by supporting their survival, proliferation, and IgA production, mainly through the expression of CD40L and IL-6.[94,102] Evidence of cell-contact interactions between MCs and B cells in vivo have been found to occur in secondary lymphoid organs and inflamed tissues.[94,103]

MC surface molecules and secreted products can also influence various aspects of the biology of T cells, for example, by polarizing naive T cells to Th1, Th2, Th17, and regulatory T (T_{reg}) cells or by modulating the functions of distinct T-cell subsets.[94,101] Interestingly, MCs through IL-6 secretion and via OX40/OX40L contact have recently been shown to counteract T_{reg}-mediated suppression, thus leading to the establishment of Th17-mediated inflammatory responses.[104] MCs can also induce antigen-specific T-cell proliferation and activation (of both CD8+ and CD4+ T cells) due to their expression of MHC class I and II molecules, of costimulatory molecules of the B7 family (such as ICOS-L, PD-L1, CD80, and CD86), and of members of the TNF/TNF receptor families (such as OXOL and CD40L).[84,94,101] Finally, MCs produce several mediators with anti-inflammatory activities, including TGFβ, IL-4, IL-10, and IL-9, and have been shown to play a crucial role in transplantation engraftment, for instance toward allogeneic skin graft.[94,101,105] Most likely, MCs manifest predominantly proinflammatory effects in the earlier phase of the immune response, while the anti-inflammatory effects of these cells are more pronounced at the later phase of the response to limit ongoing inflammation.[105]

Bas have the ability to regulate the acquired immune response, mainly by potentiating humoral responses and promoting Th2 polarization.[86,89] Bas can enhance B-cell survival and proliferation, and Ig production mainly through the release of IL-4, IL-6, BAFF, and APRIL.[89,106,107] The ability of Bas to polarize Th2 immune responses is dependent on their function as antigen-presenting cells and on IL-4 secretion. These Th2-promoting functions of Bas have been demonstrated in responses to protease allergens, helminthic parasites, or antigen-IgE complex in vivo.[108–110] Recently, the Th2-promoting functions of Bas have been linked to the development of systemic lupus erythematosus in mice deficient of the Src family protein tyrosin kinase Lyn, and in human patients.[111]

Mast Cells and Basophils in Disease

The most striking increase in MCs occurs during parasitic diseases and mastocytosis (the latter being a pathologic excess of MCs, most notably in the skin, bone marrow, gastrointestinal tract, spleen, liver, and lymph nodes, that is

usually caused by gain-of-function mutations of KIT).[68,112] The importance of MCs in IgE-allergic reactions (including rhinitis, urticaria, and asthma) is emphasized by the increased numbers of these cells seen in affected tissues in both mice and humans.[68,95] MC hyperplasia and increased MC products at sites of tissue injury have also been observed in chronic inflammatory and autoimmune diseases, such as rheumatoid arthritis and multiple sclerosis. A pathologic role of MCs in these diseases has been suggested mainly by the utilization of the K/BxN mouse model of antibody-induced arthritis and the experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis mouse model of multiple sclerosis.[94,112] Moreover, studies in mice indicate that activation of MCs via the NLRP3 can contribute to IL-1β overproduction and chronic urticarial rash in subjects with cryopyrin-associated periodic syndrome, a disorder associated with NLRP3 mutations.[113] There is evidence for MCs in promoting, but also in protecting against, tumor growth. The accumulation of MCs at the periphery of tumors has been observed in both rodent models and in a diverse array of tumors in humans. It is generally thought that MCs promote early angiogenesis events in tumor development through the release of mediators such as VEGF, CXCL8, angiopoietin-1, bFGF, heparin, and proteases.[114] Finally, MCs could also contribute to the pathogenesis of acute or chronic vascular events: accordingly, acute myocardial infarctions show elevations of both histamine and mature β-tryptase, suggesting that MC activation occurs concomitantly with ischemia.[94,112]

As far as Bas, it has remained obscure whether these cells actually play a crucial role or are just redundant with MCs in allergic reactions in vivo.[89,97] Human Bas have been shown to release IL-1β and TNFα upon the crosslinking of surface-bound IgD, but not IgE, suggesting a possible role of these cells in autoinflammatory disorders such as hyper-IgD syndrome.[115] Bas may also contribute to the production of autoantibodies that cause lupus nephritis.[116]

CONCLUSION

In the last few years, our perception of granulocytes and MCs has changed dramatically. In fact, there has been mounting evidence that the function of these cells is not limited to acting as first line of defense against invading pathogens, but is extended to perform additional and unexpected activities in strict collaboration with adaptive immune and other non-immune cells. Thus, cells of innate and adaptive immunity together orchestrate complex functional programs to promote host defense, control the development of self-tolerance, and avoid autoimmunity. In this context, the gene expression pattern and phenotype of the cells discussed in this chapter must rapidly change in a coordinate, time-dependent manner in response to microenvironmental soluble and cellular signals.[117] Granulocytes and MCs, in view of their wide variety of membrane receptor are able to mediate delivery of costimulatory signals, their broad array of molecules involved in cell–extracellular-matrix adhesion and in cell–cell contacts, their extensive assortment of soluble pro- and anti-inflamatory mediators, may profoundly influence the development, intensity, and duration of adaptive immune responses that ultimately serve for host defense, allergy, and autoimmunity. A representative example of this aptitude is the plasticity that MCs manifest as a result of their reciprocal interactions with the T-cell populations exerting regulatory or activatory functions in normal and/or pathologic immune responses.[101,105] In this context, it has been demonstrated that CD4+CD25+ T_{reg} cells establish a cell-cell contact with MCs through the OX40:OX40L axis, which regulates the MC degranulation threshold and contributes to tissue tolerance.[104,118] However, in an inflammatory environment, this MCs/CD4+CD25+ T_{reg} cell interaction induces a Th17 switch by T_{reg} cells.[104,118] On the same line, it is remarkable that, under particular settings, granulocytes and MCs display functions that in the past were ascribed only to immune adaptive cells. For instance, it has been recently demonstrated that neutrophils, among their various immunoregulatory functions,[23] can also display a B-cell–helper function that promotes Ig class switching, Ig somatic hypermutation, and antibody production by activating marginal zone B cells through BAFF, APRIL, and IL-21 secretion.[119] Similarly to neutrophils, MCs are also able to provide costimulatory signals that sustain B-cell expansion and drive the development of IgA-oriented humoral immune responses,[102] thus ascribing a B-cell–helper function that in the past was retained exclusive of T cells.

Novel activities have been described for myeloid cells also in the context of host defense, such as for instance in the case of Bas that, during primary and secondary exposure to parasites, might display different roles.[93,120] Indeed, in a murine model of primary helminthes infection,[121] Bas often accumulate in affected tissues where they produce large quantities of Th2 cytokines that not only regulate the eosinophil recruitment to the lung and the IgE production, but also favor mucosal MC infiltration.[121] However, their major defensive role occurs during the secondary infection, in which worm expulsion is more rapid (by 5 days) than in the primary one (by 10 days postinfection), as revealed by Ba depletion studies that cause an impaired worm expulsion by mice, regardless of the presence or the absence of MCs.[122]

In view of the continuously emerging findings in the field, it is predictable that in the next years there will be the discovery of additional, unsuspected biologic features that granulocytes and MCs possess.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

This work was supported to MAC by grants from Ministero dell'Universita' e della Ricerca (MIUR-PRIN 2009 MFXE7L), and Associazione Italiana per la Ricerca sul Cancro (AIRC-IG 11782). N.T. holds a FIRC fellowship.

REFERENCES

1. Witko-Sarsat V, Rieu P, Descamps-Latscha B, et al. Neutrophils: molecules, functions and pathophysiological aspects. *Lab Invest*. 2000;80:617–653. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10830774
2. Nathan C. Neutrophils and immunity: challenges and opportunities. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2006;6:173–182. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16498448
3. Cassatella MA. The neutrophil (II). In: Serhan CN, Ward PA, Gilroy DW, eds. *Fundamentals of Inflammation*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press; 2010:49–64.
4. Holland SM, Gallin JI. Disorders of granulocytes and monocytes. In: Longo DL, Fauci AS, Kasper DL, Hauser SL, Jameson JL, Loscalzo J, eds. *Harrison's Principles of Internal Medicine*. 17th ed. New York, NY: McGraw-Hill Professional; 2008:375–385.
5. Pillay J, den Braber I, Vrisekoop N, et al. In vivo labeling with $2H_2O$ reveals a human neutrophil lifespan of 5.4 days. *Blood*. 2010;116:625–627. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20410504
6. Fox S, Leitch AE, Duffin R, et al. Neutrophil apoptosis: relevance to the innate immune response and inflammatory disease. *J Innate Immun*. 2010;2:216–227. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20375550
7. Stark MA, Huo Y, Burcin TL, et al. Phagocytosis of apoptotic neutrophils regulates granulopoiesis via IL-23 and IL-17. *Immunity*. 2005;22:3285–3294. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15780986
8. Witko-Sarsat V, Pederzoli-Ribeil M, Hirsch E, et al. Regulating neutrophil apoptosis: new players enter the game. *Trends Immunol*. 2011;32:117–124. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21317039
9. Wright HL, Moots RJ, Bucknall RC, et al. Neutrophil function in inflammation and inflammatory diseases. *Rheumatology (Oxford)*. 2010;49:1618–1631. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20338884
10. Segal AW. How neutrophils kill microbes. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 2005;23:197–223. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15771570
11. Borregaard N, Sørensen OE, Theilgaard-Mönch K. Neutrophil granules: a library of innate immunity proteins. *Trends Immunol*. 2007;28:340–345. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17627888
12. Berton G. Degranulation. In: Gallin JI, Snyderman R, eds. *Inflammation: Basic Principles and Clinical Correlates*. 3rd ed. Philadelphia, PA: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 1999:703–720.
13. Brinkmann V, Reichard U, Goosmann C, et al. Neutrophil extracellular traps kill bacteria. *Science*. 2004;303:1532–1535. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15001782
14. Fuchs TA, Abed U, Goosmann C, et al. Novel cell death program leads to neutrophil extracellular traps. *J Cell Biol*. 2007;176:231–241. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17210947
15. Scher JU, Abramson SB, Pillinger MH. The neutrophil (I). In: Serhan CN, Ward PA, Gilroy DW, eds. *Fundamentals of Inflammation*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press; 2010:39–48.
16. Ley K, Laudanna C, Cybulsky MI, et al. Getting to the site of inflammation: the leukocyte adhesion cascade updated. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2007;7:678–689. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17717539
17. Norling LV, Leoni G, Cooper D, et al. Cell adhesion molecules. In: Serhan CN, Ward PA, Gilroy DW, eds. *Fundamentals of Inflammation*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press; 2010:208–216.
18. Schmidt EP, Lee WL, Zemans RL, et al. On, around, and through: neutrophil-endothelial interactions in innate immunity. *Physiology*. 2011;26:334–347. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22013192
19. Etzioni A. Genetic etiologies of leukocyte adhesion defects. *Curr Opin Immunol*. 2009;21:481–486. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19647987
20. Flannagan RS, Jaumouillé V, Grinstein S. The cell biology of phagocytosis. *Annu Rev Pathol*. 2012;7:61–98. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21910624
21. Cassatella MA. Neutrophil-derived proteins: selling cytokines by the pound. *Adv Immunol*. 1999;73:369–509. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10399011
22. Serhan CN, Brain SD, Buckley CD, et al. Resolution of inflammation: state of the art, definitions and terms. *FASEB J*. 2007;21:325–332. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17267386
23. Mantovani A, Cassatella MA, Costantini C, et al. Neutrophils in the activation and regulation of innate and adaptive immunity. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2011;11:519–531. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21785456

23a. Cassatella MA. The neutrophil: an emerging regulator of inflammatory and immune response. In: Cassatella MA, ed. *Chemical Immunology and Allergy*. Basel, Switzerland: Karger; 2003;83;11.

24. Boudaly S. Activation of dendritic cells by polymorphonuclear neutrophils. *Front Biosci*. 2009;14:1589–1595. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19273148
25. Scapini P, Bazzoni F, Cassatella, MA. Regulation of BAFF/BLyS expression in human neutrophils. *Immunol Lett*. 2008;116:1–6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18155301
26. Pelletier M, Maggi L, Micheletti A, et al. Evidence for a cross-talk between human neutrophils and Th17 cells. *Blood*. 2010;115:335–343. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19890092
27. Abadie, V, Badell E, Douillard P, et al. Neutrophils rapidly migrate via lymphatics after Mycobacterium bovis BCG intradermal vaccination and shuttle live bacilli to the draining lymph nodes. *Blood*. 2005;106:1843–1850. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15886329
28. Costantini C, Cassatella MA. The defensive alliance between neutrophils and NK cells as a novel arm of innate immunity. *J Leukoc Biol*. 2011;89:221–233. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20682626
29. Constantini C, Calzetti F, Perbillini O, et al. Human neutrophils interact with both 6-sulfo LacNAc+ DC and NK cells to amplify NK- derived IFN{gamma}: role of CD18, ICAM-1, and ICAM-3. *Blood*. 2011;117:1677–1686. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21098395
30. Daley JM, Thomay AA, Connolly MD, et al. Use of Ly6G-specific monoclonal antibody to deplete neutrophils in mice. *J Leukoc Biol*. 2008;83:64–70. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17884993
31. Bao Y, Cao X. Revisiting the protective and pathogenic roles of neutrophils: Ly-6G is key! *Eur J Immunol*. 2011;41:2535–2538. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21952813
32. Noonan DM, De Lerma Barbaro A, Vannini N, et al. Inflammation, inflammatory cells and angiogenesis: decisions and indecisions. *Cancer Metastasis Rev*. 2008;27:31–40. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18087678
33. Scapini P, Nesi L, Morini M, et al. Generation of biologically active angiostatin kringle 1-3 by activated human neutrophils. *J Immunol*. 2002;168:5798–5804. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12023382
34. Gregory AD, Houghton AD. Tumor-associated neutrophils: new targets for cancer therapy. *Cancer Res*. 2011;71:2411–2416. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21427354
35. Di Carlo E, Forni G, Lollini P, et al. The intriguing role of polymorphonuclear neutrophils in antitumor reactions. *Blood*. 2001;97:339–345. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11154206
36. Cassatella MA. On the production of TNF-related apoptosis-inducing ligand (TRAIL/Apo-2 ligand) by human neutrophils. *J Leukoc Biol*. 2006;79:1140–1149. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16574768
37. Fridlender ZG, Sum J, Kim F, et al. Polarization of tumor-associated neutrophil phenotype by TGF-beta: "N1" versus "N2" TAN. *Cancer Cell*. 2009;16:183–194. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19732719
38. Gabrilovich DI, Nagaraj S. Myeloid-derived suppressor cells as regulators of the immune system. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2011;11:693–702. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19197294
39. Müller I, Munder M, Kropf P, et al. Polymorphonuclear neutrophils and T lymphocytes: strange bedfellows or brothers in arms? *Trends Immunol*. 2009;30:522–530. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19775938
40. Kaplan MJ. Neutrophils in the pathogenesis and manifestations of SLE. *Nat Rev Rheumatol*. 2011;7:691–699.
41. Fillon S, Ackerman SJ, Furuta GT. Eosinophils. In Serhan CN, Ward PA, Gilroy DW, eds. *Fundamentals of Inflammation*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press; 2010:86–94.

42. Kita H. Eosinophils: multifaceted biological properties and roles in health and disease. *Immunol Rev*. 2011;242:161–177. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21682744
43. Hogan SP, Rosenberg HF, Moqbel R, et al. Eosinophils: biological properties and role in health and disease. *Clin Exp Allergy*. 2008;38:709–750. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18384431
44. McNagny K, Graf T. Making eosinophils through subtle shifts in transcription factor expression. *J Exp Med*. 2002;195:43–47. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12045250
45. Collins PD, Marleau S, Griffiths-Johnson DA, et al. Cooperation between interleukin-5 and the chemokine eotaxin to induce eosinophil accumulation in vivo. *J Exp Med*. 1995 182:1169–1174. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7561691
46. Sanderson CJ. Interleukin-5, eosinophils, and disease. *Blood*. 1992;79: 3101–3109. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1596561
47. Wardlaw AJ, Walsh GM, Symon FA. Mechanisms of eosinophil and basophil migration. *Allergy*. 1994;49:797–807 . http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7709988
48. Egesten A, Calafat J, Janssen H, et al. Granules of human eosinophilic leucocytes and their mobilization. *Clin Exp Allergy*. 2001;31:1173–1188. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11529886
49. Neves JS, Weller PF. Functional extracellular eosinophil granules: novel implications in eosinophil immunobiology. *Curr Opin Immunol*. 2009; 21:694–699. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19709867
50. Spencer LA, Szela CT, Perez SA, et al. Human eosinophils constitutively express multiple Th1, Th2, and immunoregulatory cytokines that are secreted rapidly and differentially. *J Leukoc Biol*. 2009;85:117–123. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18840671
51. Moqbel R, Lacy P. New concepts in effector functions of eosinophil cytokines. *Clin Exp Allergy*. 2000;30:1667–1671. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11122202
52. Lamkhioued B, Aldebert D, Gounni AS, et al. Synthesis of cytokines by eosinophils and their regulation. *Int Arch Allergy Immunol*. 1995;107:122–123. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7613117
53. Kita H, Ohnishi T, Okubo Y, et al. Granulocyte/macrophage colony-stimulating factor and interleukin 3 release from human peripheral blood eosinophils and neutrophils. *J Exp Med*. 1991;174:745–748. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1875171
54. Shamri R, Xenakis JJ, Spencer LA. Eosinophils in innate immunity: an evolving story. *Cell Tissue Res*. 2011;343:57–83. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21042920
55. Meeusen EN, Balic A. Do eosinophils have a role in the killing of helminth parasites? *Parasitol Today*. 2000;16:95–101 . http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10689327
56. Behm CA, Ovington KS. The role of eosinophils in parasitic helminth infections: insights from genetically modified mice. *Parasitol Today*. 2000;16:202–209. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10782080
57. Wang HB, Weller PF. Pivotal advance: eosinophils mediate early alum adjuvant-elicited B cell priming and IgM production. *J Leukoc Biol*. 2008;83:817–821. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18192490
58. Spencer LA, Weller PF. Eosinophils and Th2 immunity: contemporary insights. *Immunol Cell Biol*. 2010;88:250–256. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20065995
59. Odemuyiwa SO, Ghahary A, Li Y, et al. Cutting edge: human eosinophils regulate T cell subset selection through indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase. *J Immunol*. 2004;173:5909–5913 http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15528322
60. Akuthota P, Wang HB, Spencer LA, et al. Immunoregulatory roles of eosinophils: a new look at a familiar cell. *Clin Exp Allergy*. 2008;38: 1254–1263. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18727793
61. Radke AL, Reynolds LE, Melo RC, et al. Mature human eosinophils express functional Notch ligands mediating eosinophil autocrine regulation. *Blood*. 2009;113:3092–3101. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19171875
62. Chu VT, Fröhlich A, Steinhauser G, et al. Eosinophils are required for the maintenance of plasma cells in the bone marrow. *Nat Immunol*. 2011;12:151–159. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21217761
63. Gurish MF, Boyce JA. Mast cells: ontogeny, homing, and recruitment of a unique innate effector cell. *J Allergy Clin Immunol*. 2006;117:1285–1291. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16750988
64. Bischoff SC. Role of mast cells in allergic and non-allergic immune responses: comparison of human and murine data. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2007;7:93–104. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17259966
65. Galli SJ, Tsai M, Piliponsky AM. The development of allergic inflammation. *Nature*. 2008;454:445–454. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18650915
66. Janssens AS, Heide R, den Hollander JC, et al. Mast cell distribution in normal adult skin. *J Clin Pathol*. 2005;58:285–289. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15735162
67. Marshall, JS. Mast-cell responses to pathogens. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2004; 4:787–799. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15459670
68. Boyce JA. Mast cells as sentinels of inflammation. In: Serhan CN, Peter A, Ward PA, Gilroy DW, eds. *Fundamentals of Inflammation*. 1st ed. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 2010:65–73.
69. Escribano L, Orfao A, Villarrubia J, et al. Immunophenotypic characterization of human bone marrow mast cells. A flow cytometric study of normal and pathological bone marrow samples. *Anal Cell Pathol*. 1998;16:151–159. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9699944
70. Beil WJ, Füreder W, Wiener H, et al. Phenotypic and functional characterization of mast cells derived from renal tumor tissues. *Exp Hematol*. 1998;26:158–169. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9472805
71. Irani AM, Bradford TR, Kepley CL, et al. Detection of MCT and MCTC types of human mast cells by immunohistochemistry using new monoclonal anti-tryptase and anti-chymase antibodies. *J Histochem Cytochem*. 1989;37:1509–1515. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2674273
72. Hallgren J, Gurish MF. Mast cell progenitor trafficking and maturation. *Adv Exp Med Biol*. 2011;716:14–28. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21713649
73. Collington SJ, Williams TJ, Weller CL. Mechanisms underlying the localisation of mast cells in tissues. *Trends Immunol*. 2011;32: 478–485. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21917522
74. Franco CB, Chen CC, Drukker M, et al. Distinguishing mast cell and granulocyte differentiation at the single-cell level. *Cell Stem Cell*. 2010;6:361–368. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20362540
75. Chen, CC, Grimbaldeston, MA, Tsai, M, et al. Identification of mast cell progenitors in adult mice. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2005;102:11408–11413. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16006518
76. Arinobu Y, Iwasaki H, Gurish MF, et al. Developmental checkpoints of the basophil/mast cell lineages in adult murine hematopoiesis. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2005;102:18105–18110. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16330751
77. Jamur MC, Oliver C. Origin, maturation and recruitment of mast cell precursors. *Front Biosci (Schol Ed)*. 2011;3:1390–1406. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21622276
78. Abonia JP, Austen KF, Rollins BJ, et al. Constitutive homing of mast cell progenitors to the intestine depends on autologous expression of the chemokine receptor CXCR2. *Blood*. 2005;105:4308–4313. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15705791
79. Abonia JP, Hallgren J, Jones T, et al. Alpha-4 integrins and VCAM-1, but not MAdCAM-1, are essential for recruitment of mast cell progenitors to the inflamed lung. *Blood*. 2006;108:1588–1594. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16670268
80. Mathias CB, Freyschmidt EJ, Caplan B, et al. IgE influences the number and function of mature mast cells, but not progenitor recruitment in allergic pulmonary inflammation. *J Immunol*. 2009;182:2416–2424. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19201896
81. Zhao W, Schwartz LB. Mast cells. In: Greaves M, Kaplan AP, eds. *Urticaria and Angioedema*. New York, NY: Marcel Dekker; 2009:31–52.
82. Stone KD, Prussin C, Metcalfe DD. IgE, mast cells, basophils, and eosinophils. *J Allergy Clin Immunol*. 2010;125:S73–S80. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20176269

83. Frossi B, De Carli M, Pucillo C. The mast cell: an antenna of the microenvironment that directs the immune response. *J Leukoc Biol*. 2004;75:579–585. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14726495
84. Shelburne CP, Abraham SN. The mast cell in innate and adaptive immunity. *Adv Exp Med Biol*. 2011;716:162–185. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21713657
85. Arm J, Sloane D. Basophils. In: Serhan CN, Ward PA, Gilroy DW, eds. *Fundamentals of Inflammation*. 1st ed. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press; 2010:74–85.
86. Knol EF, Olszewski M. Basophils and mast cells: underdog in immune regulation? *Immunol Lett*. 2011;138:28–31. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21333679
87. Crivellato E, Nico B, Ribatti D. The history of the controversial relationship between mast cells and basophils. *Immunol Lett*. 2011;141:10–17. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21756940
88. Valent P, Dahinden CA. Role of interleukins in the regulation of basophil development and secretion. *Curr Opin Hematol*. 2010;17:60–66. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19741522
89. Karasuyama H, Mukai K, Obata K, et al. Nonredundant roles of basophils in immunity. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 2011;29:45–69. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21166539
90. Sullivan BM, Locksley RM. Basophils: a nonredundant contributor to host immunity. *Immunity*. 2009;30:12–20. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19144314
91. Gordon JR, Galli SJ. Mast cells as a source of both preformed and immunologically inducible TNF-alpha/cachectin. *Nature*. 1990;346:274–276. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2374592
92. Hsu F, Boyce JA. Biology of mast cells and their mediators. In: Adkinson N, Bochner BS, Busse WW, et al., eds. *Middleton's Allergy: Principles and Practice*. 7th ed. St. Louis, MO: Mosby Elsevier; 2009:311–325.
93. Karasuyama H, Mukai K, Tsujimura Y, Obata K. Newly discovered roles for basophils: a neglected minority gains new respect. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2009;9:9–13.
94. Tsai M, Grimbaldeston M, Galli SJ. Mast cells and immunoregulation/immunomodulation. *Adv Exp Med Biol*. 2011;716:186–211. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21713658
95. Amin K. The role of mast cells in allergic inflammation. *Respir Med*. 2012;106:9–14. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22112783
96. Hakim-Rad K, Metz M, Maurer M. Mast cells: makers and breakers of allergic inflammation. *Curr Opin Allergy Clin Immunol*. 2009;9:427–430. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19550301
97. Schroeder JT. Basophils: emerging roles in the pathogenesis of allergic disease. *Immunol Rev*. 2011;242:144–160. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21682743
98. Abraham SN, St John AL. Mast cell-orchestrated immunity to pathogens. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2010;10:440–452. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20498670
99. Falcone FH, Pritchard DI, Gibbs BF. Do basophils play a role in immunity against parasites? *Trends Parasitol*. 2001;17:126–129. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11286795
100. Voehringer D. The role of basophils in helminth infection. *Trends* Parasitol. 2009;25:551–556. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19782643
101. Galli SJ, Grimbaldeston M, Tsai M. Immunomodulatory mast cells: negative, as well as positive, regulators of immunity. Nat Rev Immunol. 2008;8:478–486. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18483499
102. Merluzzi S, Frossi B, Gri G, et al. Mast cells enhance proliferation of B lymphocytes and drive their differentiation toward IgA-secreting plasma cells. *Blood*. 2010;115:2810–2817. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20101023
103. McLachlan JB, Shelburne CP, Hart JP, et al. Mast cell activators: a new class of highly effective vaccine adjuvants. *Nat Med*. 2008;14:536–541. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18425129
104. Piconese S, Gri G, Tripodo C, et al. Mast cells counteract regulatory T-cell suppression through interleukin-6 and OX40/OX40L axis toward Th17-cell differentiation. *Blood*. 2009;114:2639–2648. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19643985
105. Frossi B, Gri G, Tripodo C, Pucillo C. Exploring a regulatory role for mast cells: "MCregs"? *Trends Immunol*. 2010;31:97–102. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20149743
106. Denzel A, Maus UA, Rodriguez Gomez M, et al. Basophils enhance immunological memory responses. *Nat Immunol*. 2008;9:733–742. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18516038
107. Chen K, Xu W, Wilson M, et al. Immunoglobulin D enhances immune surveillance by activating antimicrobial, proinflammatory and B cell-stimulating programs in basophils. *Nat Immunol*. 2009;10:889–898. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19561614
108. Perrigoue JG, Saenz SA, Siracusa MC, et al. MHC class II-dependent basophil-CD4+ T cell interactions promote T(H)2 cytokine-dependent immunity. *Nat Immunol*. 2009;10:697–705. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19465906
109. Sokol CL, Chu NQ, Yu S, et al. Basophils function as antigen-presenting cells for an allergen-induced T helper type 2 response. *Nat Immunol*. 2009;10:713–720. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19465907
110. Yoshimoto T, Yasuda K, Tanaka H, et al. Basophils contribute to T(H)2-IgE responses in vivo via IL-4 production and presentation of peptide-MHC class II complexes to CD4+ T cells. *Nat Immunol*. 2009;10:706–712. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19465908
111. Charles N, Hardwick D, Daugas E, et al. Basophils and the T helper 2 environment can promote the development of lupus nephritis. *J Nat Med*. 2010;16:701–707. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20512127
112. Weller CL, Collington SJ, Williams T, et al. Mast cells in health and disease. *Clin Sci (Lond)*. 2011;120:473–484. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21320076
113. Nakamura Y, Kambe N, Saito M, et al. Mast cells mediate neutrophil recruitment and vascular leakage through the NLRP3 inflammasome in histamine-independent urticaria. *J Exp Med*. 2009;206:1037–1046. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19364881
114. Khazaie K, Blatner NR, Khan MW, et al. The significant role of mast cells in cancer. *Cancer Metastasis Rev*. 2011;30:45–60. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21287360
115. Chen K, Xu W, Wilson M, et al. Immunoglobulin D enhances immune surveillance by activating antimicrobial, proinflammatory and B cell-stimulating programs in basophils. *Nat Immunol*. 2009;10:889–898. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19561614
116. Charles N, Rivera J. Basophils and autoreactive IgE in the pathogenesis of systemic lupus erythematosus. *Curr Allergy Asthma Rep*. 2011;11:378–387. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21805094
117. Galli SJ, Borregaard N, Wynn TA. Phenotypic and functional plasticity of cells of innate immunity: macrophages, mast cells and neutrophils. *Nat Immunol*. 2011;12:1035–1044. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22012443
118. Gri G, Piconese S, Frossi B, et al. CD4+CD25+ regulatory T cells suppress mast cell degranulation and allergic responses through OX40-OX40L interaction. *Immunity*. 2008;29(5):771–781. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18993084
119. Puga I, Cols M, Barra CM, et al. B cell-helper neutrophils stimulate the diversification and production of immunoglobulin in the marginal zone of the spleen. *Nat Immunol*. 2011;13(2):170–180. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22197976
120. Karasuyama H, Wada T, Yoshikawa S, et al. Emerging roles of basophils in protective immunity against parasites. *Trends Immunol*. 2011;32:125–130. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21168364
121. Ohnmacht C, Schwartz C, Panzer M, et al. Basophils orchestrate chronic allergic dermatitis and protective immunity against helminths. *Immunity*. 2010;33:364–374. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20817571
122. Ohnmacht C, Voehringer D. Basophils protect against reinfection with hookworms independently of mast cells and memory Th2 cells. *J Immunol*. 2010;184:344–350. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19955520

CHAPTER 21

The Major Histocompatibility Complex and Its Proteins

David H. Margulies • Kannan Natarajan • Jamie Rossjohn • James McCluskey

INTRODUCTION

The extended family of glycoproteins known as major histocompatibility complex (MHC) and MHC-like molecules is now recognized to comprise a class of receptors, usually expressed at the surface of somatic cells of vertebrates, which confer a wide range of functions in the regulation of the immune response. Their cumbersome moniker, MHC, derives from the early determination that the genes that encode these molecules control one of the fundamental manifestations of an immune response, skin graft rejection, but contemporary immunologists, virologists, and tumor biologists rarely think about these molecules with allogeneic (ie, genetically distinct) skin transplantation in mind. The name MHC is a general label, and specific immunologic functions or molecular structures invoked when a particular MHC is mentioned are dependent on biologic context. In recent years, our understanding of the structure, evolution, and molecular basis of MHC-based interactions has blossomed, and our ability to exploit engineered forms of these molecules has also expanded enormously. Our blueprint for this chapter is to give an overview of MHC-regulated immunologic function and then to summarize the explosive growth in understanding of the molecular structures of MHC molecules and their ligands. Of necessity, we discuss briefly some aspects of the cell biology and cellular maturation of MHC molecules but leave the detailed description of these essential aspects of the classic MHC molecules to the chapter on antigen presentation. Basic aspects of the genetics of MHC molecules not only descriptions of the genetic loci that encode them but also discussion of what we know of the evolution of their encoding genes will be raised.

Functional glycoproteins are molecular machines and their cellular and immunologic activities depend on the shape of these macromolecules, their surface charge and ability to interact with solvent, as well as the flexibility and relationship of their structured domains and unstructured regions. To understand molecules of the MHC in a rational functional context, we consider it crucial to describe their overall structures as well as their structural interactions with bound ligands and their binding to their cognate receptors found on T cells and natural killer (NK) cells. Despite a large and ever increasing database of MHC and MHC-like structures, a number of general questions remain unanswered. We will present some of the unsolved mysteries of the evolution and function of the MHC-like molecules and their viral homologs.

The importance of MHC molecules is underscored by two general characteristics: the enormous degree of polymorphism of genes of the *Mhc* and the identification of a large number of human diseases that are profoundly influenced by either defects of MHC expression or by polymorphic variants. Every student of immunology must be acquainted with the basic biology of MHC-encoded molecules, and the student's comprehension of the regulation of the immune response, encompassing the inflammatory, NK, T-cell, and B-cell responses, will be lacking unless the function and ongoing evolution of the MHC is understood.

We stress that the evolution of the MHC is *ongoing* because for no other set of genetic markers is there such a large database cataloguing genetic polymorphism; as a result, it is apparent that not only are new alleles being identified, but that many of these new alleles have arisen recently. Dramatic examples of the ongoing evolution of MHC molecules are seen not only in new variants of the deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) sequences observed by those that perform the necessary typing of *Mhc* genotypes for transplantation but also in surveys of the sequences of viruses, particularly the cytomegaloviruses (CMVs), which appear to have purloined host *Mhc* genes for immunoevasion. In sequence gazing, we observe the interplay between host and pathogen, as the pathogenic viruses, exploiting their rapid generation times, develop new variations on the MHC theme for distinct purposes.

The prototypes of MHC molecules are the MHC class I (MHC-I) and class II (MHC-II) molecules, obligate cell-surface heterodimers that bind and display self- or foreign peptides at the cell surface so that T-cell receptors (TCRs) or NK cell receptors can interact with the molecular complexes in an MHC- and peptide-dependent manner.

MHC molecules are crucial for both TCR- and NK-mediated interactions. Our efforts will be to preserve some sense of the historical development of this exciting field of study and also to focus on paradigmatic genetic, structural, and functional features that unify this extensive gene/protein family. Finally, the *Mhc* provides a genetic link from immune responsiveness to autoimmune disease—those well-known strong associations of particular *Mhc* genes to particular human diseases—and we will provide an outline of the molecular basis for such associations.

Mhc Nomenclature—Dialects of *Mhc*

The names of the genes and proteins that are critical to understanding the *Mhc* reflect the historical discovery of their functions and differ among different species. Often confusing to students of immunology, the nomenclature of

the *Mhc* differs for different species and must deal not only with a number of distinct, but usually linked, genetic loci but also with their encoded molecules, many of which are heterodimeric glycoproteins. Because the first genes of the *Mhc* identified were those that encoded cell surface molecules that could be detected by antibodies or by transplantation responses, these are the ones that are referred to as *Mhc* genes. Now we know of more than 400 genes that map to the human or mouse *Mhc*, although technically they are all "*Mhc*" genes, the "MHC" molecules refer specifically to the MHC-I or MHC-II molecules that are related in structure and function. (Genes for several complement components and related molecules also map here and are occasionally referred to as MHC class III.) Other *Mhc*-encoded molecules with distinct structure and function are usually referred to by their specific names. Molecules that exhibit structural similarity with MHC-I molecules, whether they map to the *Mhc* or not, may be called as a group "MHC-Ib" to distinguish them from the "classical" MHC-I molecules, also referred to as "MHC-Ia." Another subset of molecules that exhibit the MHC-I fold but that are expressed by viruses may be called "MHC-Iv" molecules.[1,2]

By convention, genetic loci are indicated by designations in italics, and the encoded protein products or phenotypic descriptions are shown in a standard font. The extended genetic region is referred to as the complex; thus the general term used for all species is the *Mhc* or *MHC*. The mouse *Mhc* is referred to as *H2* (previously called *H-2)* because it was the second genetic locus involved in control of expression of erythrocyte antigens identified by Gorer.[3,4] The *Mhc* in the rat is known as *RT1*, the human locus is known as *HLA* (for human leukocyte antigen), *DLA* for the dog, *GPLA* for the guinea pig, *SLA* for the swine, and *RLA* for the rabbit. For other species, based on a suggestion by Klein,[5] the taxonomic name forms the basis for the designation, contributing the first two letters of the genus and the first two of the species to name the locus. Thus, we have *Patr* for the chimpanzee, *Pan troglodytes*; *Gogo* for the Gorilla, *Gorilla gorilla*; *Mamu* for the Rhesus macaque, *Macaca mulatta*; *Mane* for the pig-tailed macaque, *Macaca nemestrina, Mafa* for the cynomolgous monkey, *Macaca fascicularis*; and *Papa* for the Bonobo, *Pan paniscus*. A single site for curated sequences of many species of MHC molecules is the IPD-MHC Database at www.ebi.ac.uk/ipd/mhc/.[6] The most important and widely studied models are those of the human, the mouse, and the rat. For the mouse and rat *Mhc*, the search engine on the Jackson Laboratory Web site (www.informatics.jax.org/mgihome/nomen) is the most comprehensive.

The naming of new HLA genes and alleles and their quality control are governed by the World Health Organization Nomenclature Committee for Factors of the HLA System. Software conversion tools to assist in gene/protein identification are to be found at the IMGT/HLA database (www.ebi.ac.uk/imgt/hla/dictionary.html). Regular updates on HLA nomenclature featuring new alleles can be found in the journal *Tissue Antigens* and via http://hla.alleles.org/nomenclature/nomenc_updates.html. The standardization of serologically defined HLA antigens has been achieved by the exchange of typing reagents and cells in the International Histocompatibility Workshops. The *HLA Dictionary* is a summary of HLA-A, HLA-B, HLA-C, HLA-DRB1/3/4/5, and HLA-DQB1 alleles and their association with serologically defined HLA-A, -B, -C, -DR, and -DQ antigens, respectively, available free online at the IMGT/HLA database site.[7] As defined by the Nomenclature Committee (http://hla.alleles.org/nomenclature/naming.html), each HLA allele name has a unique number corresponding to up to four sets of digits separated by colons (Table 21.1 and Fig. 21.1). The digits before the first colon describe the type, which often corresponds to the serologic antigen carried by an allotype (a genetically distinguishable form of the molecule within the same species). The next set of digits lists the subtypes, numbers being assigned in the order in which DNA sequences have been determined. Longer names are assigned only when necessary. Precise designation of human genes is by a nomenclature including a number following the locus (eg, HLA-A*01:01 and HLA-DRB1*01:01). Summaries of the hundreds of human alleles that have been identified are in Tables 21.2 and 21.3. Comprehensive databases of human *Mhc* genes are maintained at the IMGT/HLA database (see previous link)[8,9] where, at the time of this writing, more than 7000 HLA class I and class II alleles have been tabulated.

TABLE 21.1 Nomenclature of HLA Loci and Alleles

Nomenclature	Definition
HLA	The HLA region and prefix for HLA gene
HLA-DRB1	Particular HLA genetic locus
*HLA-DRB1*13*	Group of alleles encoding DR13 antigen or with sequence similarity to other DRB1*13 alleles
*HLA-DRB1*13:01*	A specific HLA allele
*HLA-DRB1*13:01:02*	An allele that differs by a synonymous mutation from DRB1*13:01:01 (ie, DNA sequence difference but no amino acid sequence difference)
*HLA-DRB1*13:01:01:02*	An allele that contains a mutation outside the coding region distinguishing it from DRB1*13:01:02
*HLA-A*24:09N*	A "null," unexpressed allele
*HLA-A*30:14L*	An allele encoding reduced or "low" cell surface expression
*HLA-A*24:02:01:02L*	An allele encoding a reduced or "low" cell surface expression, where the mutation is outside the coding region
*HLA-B*44:02:01:02S*	An allele encoding a protein that is expressed as a "secreted" molecule only
*HLA-A*32:11Q*	An allele for which a previous effect on surface expression has not been confirmed and is considered "questionable"

DNA, deoxyribonucleic acid; HLA, human leukocyte antigen.
Source: Adapted from the designations summarized by the *WHO Nomenclature Committee For Factors of the HLA System,* Stephen G.E. Marsh, http://hla.alleles.org. Also available at the IMGT website: www.ebi.ac.uk/imgt/hla/nomenclature/index.html.

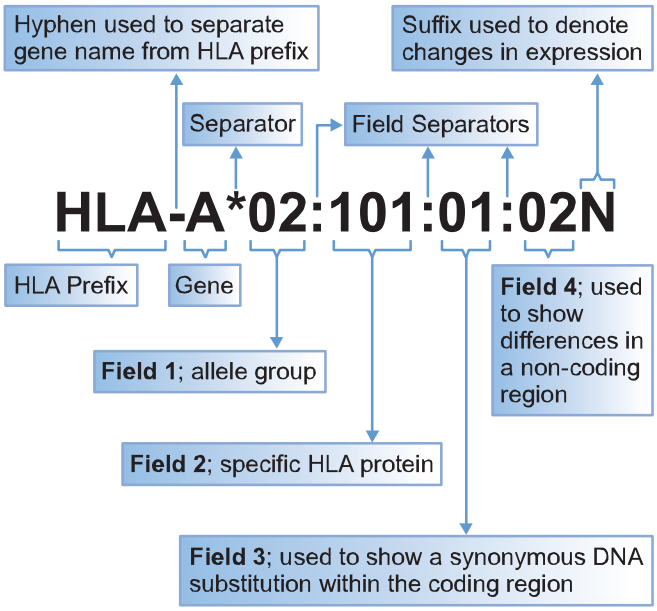


FIG. 21.1. Summary of Current HLA Gene Nomenclature. This illustration explains the nomenclature for HLA alleles as described in http://hla.alleles.org/nomenclature/naming.html.[164]

The commonly used term "haplotype" refers to the linkage of particular alleles at distinct loci that occur as a group on a parental chromosome.[10] The concept of haplotype is important in typing the *HLA* loci in the human where the linked *Mhc* genes (those genes in "linkage disequilibrium") of one chromosome of one parent will generally segregate as a group to the children. Individual haplotypes of the *Mhc* in the mouse are referred to by a lowercase letter superscript as $H2^b$, $H2^d$, or $H2^k$. Thus, the $H2^k$ haplotype refers to the full set of linked genes, $H2\text{-}K^k$, $H2\text{-}IA^k$, $H2\text{-}IE^k$, $H2\text{-}D^k$, and extends to the genes of the *Q* and *T* regions as well.[11,12] (Some haplotype designations, such as $H2^a$, refer to natural recombinants and thus have some of the linked genes from one haplotype and some from another.) A complication that demands the precise use of gene and encoded protein names is that the number of genes in a particular homologous genetic region may differ between strains or between individuals. In the mouse, although some strains have only a single gene at the *D* locus ($H2\text{-}D^b$ for instance), other strains may have as many as five genes in homologous region ($H2\text{-}D^d$, $H2\text{-}D2^d$, $H2\text{-}D3^d$, $H2\text{-}D4^d$, and $H2\text{-}L^d$).[13,14]

Table 21.4 summarizes the haplotypes of common mouse strains. Included in this listing are a number of congenic inbred mouse strains, strains that contain the *Mhc* derived from one strain, and the remaining background genes from another. A regularly updated and comprehensive listing can be obtained at http://jaxmice.jax.org/literature/catalog/mhc_h2_haplotypes.pdf. An ongoing project, the "Collaborative Cross," aims to establish a panel of mouse recombinant inbred lines derived from eight diverse founder mouse strains as a resource for mammalian genetics. These lines, when their breeding is completed, will provide an opportunity for mapping a wide variety of quantitative trait loci with respect to measurable phenotypes and can be expected to play an important role in studies of immune recognition.[15]

The Immunologic Function of MHC Molecules

MHC molecules are a molecular reflection of the health status of either the cell that synthesizes them (for MHC-I molecules) or of the local environment in which the cell resides (for MHC-II). The structure of the MHC molecule depends not only on the amino acid sequence of the two polypeptide chains (α and β for MHC-II; heavy [or α] and β2m [for the light chain] for MHC-I) that form the core of the complex but also of the variable bound peptide that forms an integral part of the trimer. The MHC molecule, governed by the sequence of the encoding structural genes for the *Mhc-I* heavy chain and the *Mhc-II* α and β chains, as well as other genes involved in antigen processing and presentation, must satisfy at least two distinct recognition functions: the binding of peptides or in some cases nonpeptidic molecules and the interaction with either T or NK cells via their respective receptors. The TCR may augment its interaction with the MHC molecule by virtue of interaction with a T cell–expressed coreceptor (cluster of differentiation [CD]8 for MHC-I and CD4 for MHC-II). Some NK receptors may also serve as coreceptors when expressed on T cells.[16] The binding of peptides by an MHC-I or MHC-II molecule is the initial selective event that permits the cell expressing the MHC molecule (the antigen-presenting cell [APC] or when this cell is to be the recipient of a cytolytic signal, the target cell) to sample fragments derived either from its own proteins (for MHC-I–restricted antigen presentation) or from those proteins ingested from the immediate extracellular environment (for the case of MHC-II). The biochemical steps involved in the production of antigen fragments from large molecules are collectively known as "antigen processing," whereas those that concern the binding of antigen fragments by MHC molecules and their display at the cell surface are known as "antigen presentation."

Specifically, MHC-I glycoproteins gather from the cell's biosynthetic pathway fragments of proteins derived from infecting viruses, intracellular parasites, or self-molecules, either expressed normally or in a dysregulated fashion as a result of tumorigenesis, and then display these molecular fragments, in complex with the mature MHC-I molecule, at the cell surface.[17–21] The cell-bound MHC-I/β2m/peptide complex on the APC is exposed to the extracellular milieu and is available for interaction with either T cells or NK cells. The T cell bearing an αβ receptor recognizes the particular MHC/peptide complex by virtue of a specific physical binding interaction. Each T cell is representative of a clonal population and bears a unique TCR encoded by somatically rearranged TCR genetic elements. T cells bearing αβ receptors undergo a complex selective process in the thymus. Only a small proportion of T cells that enter the thymus ultimately reach peripheral lymphoid organs, such as lymph nodes and spleen. A particular TCR can only bind a very limited selection of MHC/peptide complexes. The recognition by T cells is considered "MHC restricted" in that only a limited set of MHC molecules can bind a particular TCR and is also

TABLE 21.2 Listing of HLA Class I Alleles[a]

HLA-A Alleles	HLA-B Alleles	HLA-C Alleles
A*01:01:01:01—A*01:104	B*07:02:01—B*07:144	C*01:02:01—C*01:61
A*02:01:01:01—A*02:336	B*08:01:01—B*08:80	C*02:02:01—C*02:55
A*03:01:01:01—A*03:135	B*14:01:01—B*:14:28	C*03:02:01—C*03:139
A*11:01:01—A*11:112	B*15:01:01:01—B*15:238	C*04:01:01:01—C*04:107
A*23:01:01—A*23:50	B*18:01:01—B*18:68	C*05:01:01:01—C*05:72
A*24:02:01:01—A*24:190	B*27:01—B*27:86	C*06:02:01:01—C*06:69
A*25:01:01—A*25:16	B*35:01:01:01—B*35:186	C*07:01:01—C*-7:220
A*26:01:01—A*26:72	B*37:01:01—B*37:31	C*08:01:01—C*08:56
A*29:01:01:01—A*29:32	B*38:01:01—B*38:37	C*12:02:01—C*12:68
A*30:01:01—A*30:58	B*39:01:01:01—B*39:68	C*14:02:01-C*14:34
A*31:01:02—A*31:59	B*40:01:01—B*40:180	C*15:02:01—C*15:56
A*32:01:01—A*32:37	B*41:01—B*41:19	C*16:01:01—C*16:44
A*33:01:01—A*33:54	B*42:01:01—B*42:16	C*17:01:01:01—C*17:11
A*34:01:01—A*34:09	B*44:02:01:01—B*44:139	C*18:01—C*8:05
A*36:01—A*36:05	B*45:01—B*45:13	
A*43:01	B*46:01:01—B*46:30	
A*66:01—A*66:16	B*47:01:01:01—B*47:08	
A*68:01:01:01—A*68:85	B*48:01:01—B*48:27	
A*74:01—A*74:15	B*49:01:01—B*49:20	
A*80:01—A*80:02	B*50:01:01—B*50:15	
	B*51:01:01—B*51:126	
	B*52:01:01:01—B*52:27	
	B*53:01:01—B*53:27	
	B*54:01:01—B*54:24	
	B*55:01:01—B*55:54	
	B*56:01:01—B*56:32	
	B*57:01:01—B*57:52	
	B*58:01:01—B*48:36	
	B*59:01:01:01—B*59:05	
	B*67:01:01—B*67:03	
	B*73:01—B*73:02	
	B*78:01:01—B*78:07	
	B*81:01—B*81:05	
	B*82:01—B*82:03	
	B*83:01	

[a] This summarizes HLA alleles as of January, 2012, as described by Robinson et al.[8,9] and available at http://www.imgt.org or at www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/projects/gv/mhc/main.fcgi?cmd-init. HLA-Bw4 alleles are generally agreed to include B5, B5102, B5103, B13, B17, B27, B37, B38(16), B44(12), B47, B49(21), B51(5), B52(5), B53, B57(17), B58(17), B59, B63(15), B77(15), and A9, A23(9), A24(9), A2403, A25(10), A32(19) (http://hla.alleles.org/antigens/bw46.html). Similarly, HLA-Bw6 alleles include B7, B703, B8, B14, B18, B22, B2708, B35, B39(16), B3901, B3902, B40, B4005, B41, B42, B45(12), B46, B48, B50(21), B54(22), B55(22), B56(22), B60(40), B61(40), B62(15), B64(14), B65(14), B67, B70, B71(70), B72(70), B73, B75(15), B76(15), B78, B81, and B82.

HLA, human leukocyte antigen.

termed "antigen specific" in that a particular T cell identifies a particular peptide. For any given T-cell clone, single amino acid substitutions of either the MHC or the peptide may severely diminish, obliterate, or even augment the functional interaction of the TCR with the MHC-II/peptide complex. The MHC-I system draws its spectrum of peptides from proteins in the cytosol that are degraded by the proteolytic proteasome complex to peptides that are transported from the cytosol to the endoplasmic reticulum (ER) with the aid of the intrinsic membrane peptide transporter, the transporter associated with antigen processing (TAP), are then trimmed at their amino termini[22] and are cooperatively folded as an intrinsic component of the newly synthesized MHC-I molecule.[23] Interactions with the peptide-loading complex (PLC), which includes TAP, the chaperone tapasin,[24] and Erp57,[25] are crucial to MHC-I loading. MHC-I molecules are unique among proteins in that their three-dimensional structure and thermal stability are exquisitely dependent on the heavy/light chain heterodimer being bound by an appropriate peptide.[26,27] In mutant cells that lack the necessary apparatus for generating and transporting peptides to the ER where peptide loading takes place, MHC-I molecules are expressed poorly and are inherently unstable.[28] MHC-II/peptide loading is controlled in part by the multifunctional chaperone/groove protector, Ii, as well as the important catalytic machinery of the endosomes, molecules known as HLA-DM and -DO in the human, and H2-M and H2-O in the mouse.[24] Although there remains some controversy as

TABLE 21.3 Listing of HLA Class II Alleles[a]

HLA-DR Alleles	HLA-DQ Alleles	HLA-DP Alleles	HLA-DM Alleles	HLA-DO Alleles
α chain	α chain	α chain	α chain	α chain
DRA	DQA1	DPA1	DMA	DOA
DRA*01:01:01—DRA*01:02	DQA1*01:01:01—DQA1*01:09	DPA1*01:03:01:01—DPA1*01:10	DMA*01:01:01:01—DMA*01:04	DOA*01:01:01—DOA*01:04N
	DQA1*02:01	DPA1*02:01:01—DPA1*02:04		
	DQA1*03:01:01—DQA1*03:03:02	DPA1*03:01—DPA1*03:03		
	DQA1*04:01:01—DQA1*04:04	DPA1*04:01		
	DQA1*05:01:01:01—DQA1*05:11			
	DQA1*06:01:01—DQA1*06:02			
β chain	β chain	β chain	β chain	β chain
DRB1	DQB1	DPB1	DMB	DOB
DRB1*01:01:01—DRB1*01:45	DQB1*05:01:01:01—DQB1*05:14	DPB1*01:01:01—DPB1:01:03	DMB*01:0101:01—DMB*01:07	DOB*01:01—DOB*01:05
DRB1*03:01:01:01—DRB1*03:77	DQB1*06:01:01—DQB1*06:47	DPB1*02:01:02—DPB1*02:02		
DRB1*04:01:01—DRB1*04:107	DQB1*02:01:01—DQB1*02:06	DPB1*03:01:01—DPB1*03:01:02		
DRB1*07:01:01:01—DRB1*07:22	DQB1*03:01:01:01—DQB1*03:39	DPB1*04:01:01:01—DPB1*04:02:01:02		
DRB1*08:01:01—DRB1*08:49	DQB1*04:01:01—DQB1*04:08	DPB1*05:01:01—DPB1*05:01:02		
DRB1*09:01:02—DRB1*09:17		DPB1*06:01		
DRB1*10:01:01—DRB1*10:04		DPB1*08:01		
DRB1*11:01:01—DRB1*11:121		DPB1*09:01		
DRB1*12:01:01—DRB1*12:35		DPB1*10:01		
DRB1*13:01:01—DRB1*13:135		DPB1*11:01:01—DPB1*11:01:02		
DRB1*14:01:01—DRB1*14:122		DPB1*13:01—DPB1*19:01		
DRB1*15:01:01:02—DRB1*15:69		DPB1*20:01:01—DPB1*20:01:02		
DRB1*16:01:01—DRB1*16:19		DPB1*20:01:01—DPB1*35:01:01		
DRB2		DPB1*35:01:01—DPB1*35:01:02		
DRB2*01:01				
DRB3		DPB1*35:01:01—DPB1*41:01:01		
DRB3*01:01:02:01—DRB3*03:03				
DRB4		DPB1*41:01:01—DPB1*41:01:02		
DRB4*01:01:01:01—DRB4*01:08				
DRB5		DPB1*44:01—DPB1*136:01		
DRB5*01:01:01—DRB5*02:05				
DRB6				
DRB6*01:01—DRB6*02:02				
DRB7				
DRB7*01:01:01—DRB7*01:01:02				
DRB8				
DRB8*01:01				
DRB9				
DRB9*01:01				

[a]This table is based on a listing of alleles maintained by the World Health Organization Nomenclature Committee for Factors of the HLA System, as of January 2012. All new and confirmatory sequences are generally submitted directly to the committee via the IMGT/HLA database using the sequence submission tool provided. The IMGT/HLA database may be accessed at www.ebi.ac.uk/imgt/hla. Serologic assignment of HLA-DR molecules is largely determined by the DRB1 gene product, whereas assignment of DQ molecules reflects serologic contributions from both DQA1 and DQB1 gene products.

HLA, human leukocyte antigen.

TABLE 21.4 Commonly Used Mouse Strains: *H-2* Haplotypes[a]

		H-2 Complex							
Strain	**Haplotype**	***KK***	***Ab***	***Aa***	***Eb***	***Ea***	***D***	***Q***	***T***
Common strains									
129/J	*bc*	*b*	*b*	*b*	*b*	–	*b*	*b*	*f*
AKR/J	*k*	*k*	*k*	*k*	*k*	*k*	*k*	*b*	*b*
ASW/Sn	*s*	*s*	*s*	*s*	*s*	–	*s*	*b*	*b*
BALB/c	*d*	*d*	*d*	*d*	*d*	*d*	*d*	*b*	*c*
C3H/HeJ	*k*	*k*	*k*	*k*	*k*	*k*	*k*	*b*	*b*
CBA/J	*k*	*k*	*k*	*k*	*k*	*k*	*k*	*b*	*b*
C57BL/6	*b*	*b*	*b*	*b*	*b*	–	*b*	*b*	*b*
C57BL/10	*b*	*b*	*b*	*b*	*b*	–	*b*	*b*	*b*
C57BR	*k*	*k*	*k*	*k*	*k*	*k*	*k*	*a*	*a*
DBA/2J	*d*	*d*	*d*	*d*	*d*	*d*	*d*	*b*	*c*
NOD/LtJ	*g7*	*d*	*g7*	*d*	–	–	*b*		
NON/LtJ	*nb1*	*b*	*nb1*	*?*	*k*	*k*	*b*		
NZB/BINJ	*d2*	*d*	*d*	*d*	*d*	*d*	*d*	*a*	*a*
NZW/LacJ	*z*	*u*	*u*	*u*	*u*	*u*	*z*		
P/J	*p*	*p*	*p*	*p*	*p*	*p*	*p*	*a*	*e*
PL/J	*u*	*u*	*u*	*u*	*u*	*u*	*d*		
RIII	*r*	*r*	*r*	*r*	*r*	*r*	*r*	*c(r)*	*b*
SJL	*s2*	*s*	*s*	*s*	*s*	–	*s*	*a*	*a*
Congenic strains									
B10.BR	*k2*	*k*	*k*	*k*	*k*	*k*	*k*		
B10.D2	*d*	*d*	*d*	*d*	*d*	*d*	*d*		
B10.S	*s*	*s*	*s*	*s*	*s*	–	*s*		
BALB.B	*b*	*b*	*b*	*b*	*b*	–	*b*		
BALB.K	*k*	*k*	*k*	*k*	*k*	*k*	*k*		
C3H.SW	*b*	*b*	*b*	*b*	*b*	–	*b*		
Recombinant strains									
A	*a*	*k*	*k*	*k*	*k*	*k*	*k*		
A.TL	*tl*	*s*	*k*	*k*	*k*	*k*	*d*		
B10.A	*a*	*k*	*k*	*k*	*k*	*k*	*d*		
B10.A(1R)	*h1*	*k*	*k*	*k*	*k*	*k*	*b*		
B10.A(2R)	*h2*	*k*	*k*	*k*	*k*	*k*	*b*		
B10.A(3R)	*l3*	*b*	*b*	*b*	*b/k*	*k*	*d*		
B10.A(4R)	*h4*	*k*	*k*	*k*	*k/b*	–	*b*		
B10.A(5R)	*l5*	*b*	*b*	*b*	*b/k*	*k*	*d*		
B10.T(6R)	*y2*	*q*	*q*	*q*	*q*	–	*d*		
B10.S(7R)	*t2*	*s*	*s*	*s*	*s*	–	*d*		
B10.S(8R)	*as1*	*k*	*k*	*k*	*k/s*	–	*s*		
B10.S(9R)	*t4*	*s*	*s*	*s*	*s/k*	*k*	*d*		
B10.HTT	*t3*	*s*	*s*	*s*	*s/k*	*k*	*d*		

*Adapted from Kruisbeek[561] and www.imgt.org/IMGTrepertoireMHC/Polymorphism/haplotypes/mouse/MHC/Mu_haplotypes.html#polymorphism. A dash indicates abnormal gene expression, although precise mechanism may differ in different strain. Blanks indicate insufficient data for characterization. Additional strains may be identified at http://jax-mice.jax.org/findmice/index.html.

NOD, nonobese diabetic.

to the precise site of interaction of HLA-DM with HLA-DR, evidence supports the view that this interaction catalyzes peptide interchange, leading to the selection of high-affinity antigenic peptides.[29]

MHC-II molecules, in contrast to MHC-I, are expressed on a more limited set of somatic cells—B cells, macrophages, dendritic cells, activated but not resting T cells in the human—and have a somewhat more specific function in peptide selection and presentation. In general, they bind peptides derived from the degradation of proteins ingested by the APC, and they sort their MHC-II molecules into cellular compartments where the degraded peptides are generated and catalytically transferred to the binding site of the MHC-II. The MHC-II antigen-presentation pathway is based on the initial assembly of the MHC-II αβ heterodimer with a dual function molecule, the invariant chain (Ii),

which serves as both a chaperone to direct the αβ heterodimer to an endosomal, acidic, protein processing location where it encounters antigenic peptides and also serves to protect the antigen-binding site of the MHC-II molecule so that it preferentially will be loaded with antigenic peptides in this location.[30–33] The loading of the MHC-II molecule with antigenic peptide, a process dependent on the release of the Ii derived "CLIP" peptide, in part dependent on the MHC-II–like molecule, HLA-DM in the human,[34,35] H2-M in the mouse,[36] then leads to the cell surface expression of MHC-II/peptide complexes. The MHC-II–recognizing T cells then secrete cytokines and may also be induced to proliferate or to undergo programmed cell death. Such MHC-restricted cytokine production that facilitates and augments the recruitment of additional inflammatory cells as well as APCs and antibody-producing cells is a contemporary explanation for what was historically referred to as "T-cell help." Under some physiologic circumstances, particularly during viral infection, antigens incorporated into antigen-presenting dendritic cells via an "outside in" pathway may alternatively enter the MHC-I presentation pathway. This phenomenon is known as "cross-presentation."[37,38]

MHC molecules perform a crucial role in the thymus by shaping the TCR repertoire as T-cell precursors mature into cells that eventually emigrate from the thymus and populate the spleen and other secondary lymphoid organs. In a complex, multistep process termed "thymic education,"[39] developing T cells expressing randomly rearranged TCR αβ receptors are first subjected to positive selection on MHC-I and MHC-II molecules expressed by cells of the thymic cortex in order to select for further maturation of only those cells capable of recognizing peptides in the context of self-MHC molecules. Positive selection may be viewed as setting the minimum threshold for T-cell activation. T cells surviving positive selection then migrate to the thymic medulla where those T cells with higher-than-average affinity for self-MHC-II/peptide complexes, and which therefore pose the threat of autoimmune disease should they be allowed to emigrate to secondary lymphoid organs, are deleted by negative selection. MHC-I and MHC-II molecules thus play a critical role in shaping the peripheral TCR repertoire. Indeed, mice engineered to lack MHC-I or MHC-II expression are also deficient in T cells.[36,40]

Distinct from the recognition of MHC molecules by TCRs, a number of NK-cell receptors, both activating and inhibitory, bind MHC-I molecules, and several NK receptors interact with MHC-I–like molecules encoded by CMVs.[2,41] In general, the NK/MHC-I interaction, as compared to the TCR/MHC interaction, shows considerably less peptide specificity, although the interaction is peptide dependent, and in some cases may exhibit clear-cut peptide preferences.[42–44] The functional purpose of the MHC-I or MHC-I–like molecule in NK-cell recognition appears to be more subtle than that in T-cell recognition. The NK cell is tuned to a balance of inhibitory and activating signals conveyed to it via MHC interaction. In its resting state, the inhibitory signals predominate. MHC-I is a sensor of the biosynthetic and metabolic state of the cell in which it is synthesized. When the level of MHC-I is dysregulated by tumorigenesis or viral infection, this change can be detected by the NK cell. This ability of the NK cell to sense altered levels of MHC-I on target cells is the basis of the "missing self hypothesis," which explains that NK cells detect and lyse those cells defective in MHC-I expression due to the loss of the inhibitory signal that results from engagement of NK receptors by MHC-I.[45–47] The prototype NK receptor in the mouse is the NK inhibitory receptor, Ly49A, a C-type lectin-like molecule that signals its interaction with a normally expressed MHC-I molecule, such as H2-D^d.[48] Distinct clones of NK cells differ in the combinatorial expression of different NK receptors that have different MHC preferences. Thus, in the mouse, each distinct NK clone may express a different combination of NK inhibitory receptors such as Ly49A, Ly49C, Ly49G2, and Ly49I.[49] Because each inhibitory molecule may exhibit slight differences in its MHC-I and/or peptide preference and specificity, this kind of combinatorial expression of NK activity offers a breadth of specificity toward different potential target cells. Recently, it has been shown that developing NK cells within the thymus are also subject to an education process, known as "licensing," which prevents improper activation of their cytolytic function in peripheral tissues.[50–52] NK cells that develop in MHC-I–deficient humans and mice fail to kill target cells that lack MHC-I expression. Such targets are readily killed by NK cells that develop in MHC-I–sufficient thymi. Human NK cells seem to go through a similar selective/educating process, but the relevant NK receptors on human cells are generally of the killer cell immunoreceptor (KIR) inhibitory receptor family.[53]

In addition to showing preference for distinct pathways of antigen presentation, the MHC-I and MHC-II molecules also show preferential restriction to T cells of the CD8- or CD4-bearing lineages. This results from the interaction of CD8 with the nonpolymorphic α3 domain of MHC-I molecules,[54–58] whereas CD4 binds to membrane proximal domains of MHC-II.[59–64] The CD8 and CD4 molecules serve as "coreceptors" on the surface of T lymphocytes, providing both adhesion (increase in avidity) and specific activating signals, mediated through the kinase, lck, which modulate the avidity of the T cell in a time-dependent manner.[65–68] Additional complexities arise from the interaction of CD8 with MHC-I. CD8 is expressed as either the CD8αα homodimer or the CD8αβ heterodimer, which are expressed in a developmentally regulated fashion and seem to have distinct functions.[69] The numerous interactions of MHC molecules with other cellular components as well as with the wide variety of peptides and of various immunologic receptors reflect the robust potential of the MHC structure as a molecular sensor and as a master regulator of immune responses. These molecular interactions then read out in different cell trafficking and signaling functions.

THE MAJOR HISTOCOMPATIBILITY COMPLEX

Mhc Genetics

The *Mhc* is an extended region of the genome that spans some 4 million basepairs (Mb) on the short arm of human chromosome 6 in the region 6p21.3. The *Mhc* in the human may be considered to map from HLA-F to the gene encoding the MHC chaperone tapasin (TAP binding protein), a distance of some 2 Mb, but the "extended" human

Mhc (also known as the xMHC) covers some 7.6 Mb from the HIST1H2AA locus to SYNGAP1.[70–72] In the mouse, the *Mhc* encompasses almost 3.5 Mb on chromosome 17, extending from the *H2-Ke1* gene at basepair position 34056423 to the *H2-M2* gene at basepair position 37620474 (www.imgt.org/IMGTrepertoireMHC/LocusGenes/index.php?repertoire=listIG_TR&species=mouse&group=MHC). Although *Mhc* genes were among the first to be mapped here, it is now clear that a large number of genes with function unrelated to immune recognition also reside in this region. The interested reader is referred to the regularly updated maps and linkages available at various Web sites including www.ebi.ac.uk/imgt/hla, and the MHC haplotype project at www.sanger.ac.uk/HGP/Chr6/.

A schematic of the human *Mhc* is shown in Figure 21.2. For a rough guide, we also provide a simple illustrative map comparing human, mouse, and rat *Mhc* regions (Fig. 21.3) and refer the reader to the National Center for Biotechnology Information homology Web site: www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/projects/homology/maps/ and National Center for Biotechnology Information Web viewer for access to detailed maps and sequences.

The human *Mhc* map reveals clusters of genes grouped roughly into an Mhc-II region covering about 1000 kb, an Mhc-III of about 1000 kb, and an *Mhc* class I region spanning 2000 kb (see Fig. 21.2). *HLA-DP* genes (*DPA* encoding the α chain and *DPB* encoding the β chain) are proximal to the centromere on the short arm of the chromosome and are linked to the genes encoding the related HLA-DM molecule (*DMB* and *DMA*). Between these and the *DQ* genes lie *LMP* (for low molecular weight proteins[73–76]) and *TAP*[77–81] genes that encode molecules that are involved in peptide generation in the cytosol and peptide transport across the ER membrane, respectively. Low molecular weight proteins

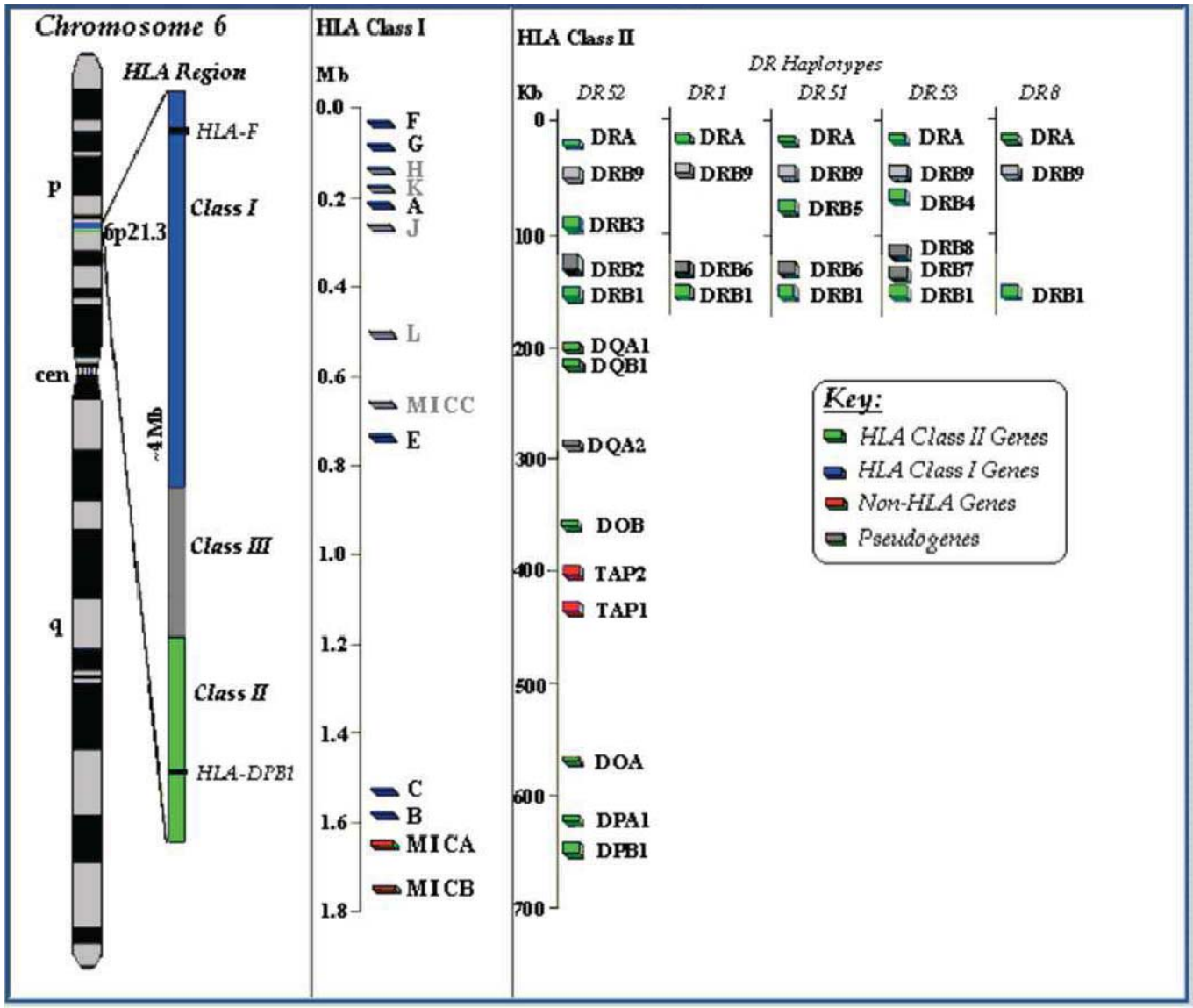


FIG. 21.2. Map of the Human MHC (HLA Region) on the Short Arm of Chromosome 6. A variety of online tools for seeking and manipulating MHC sequences can be found at www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/gv/mhc/main.cgi?cmd=init.

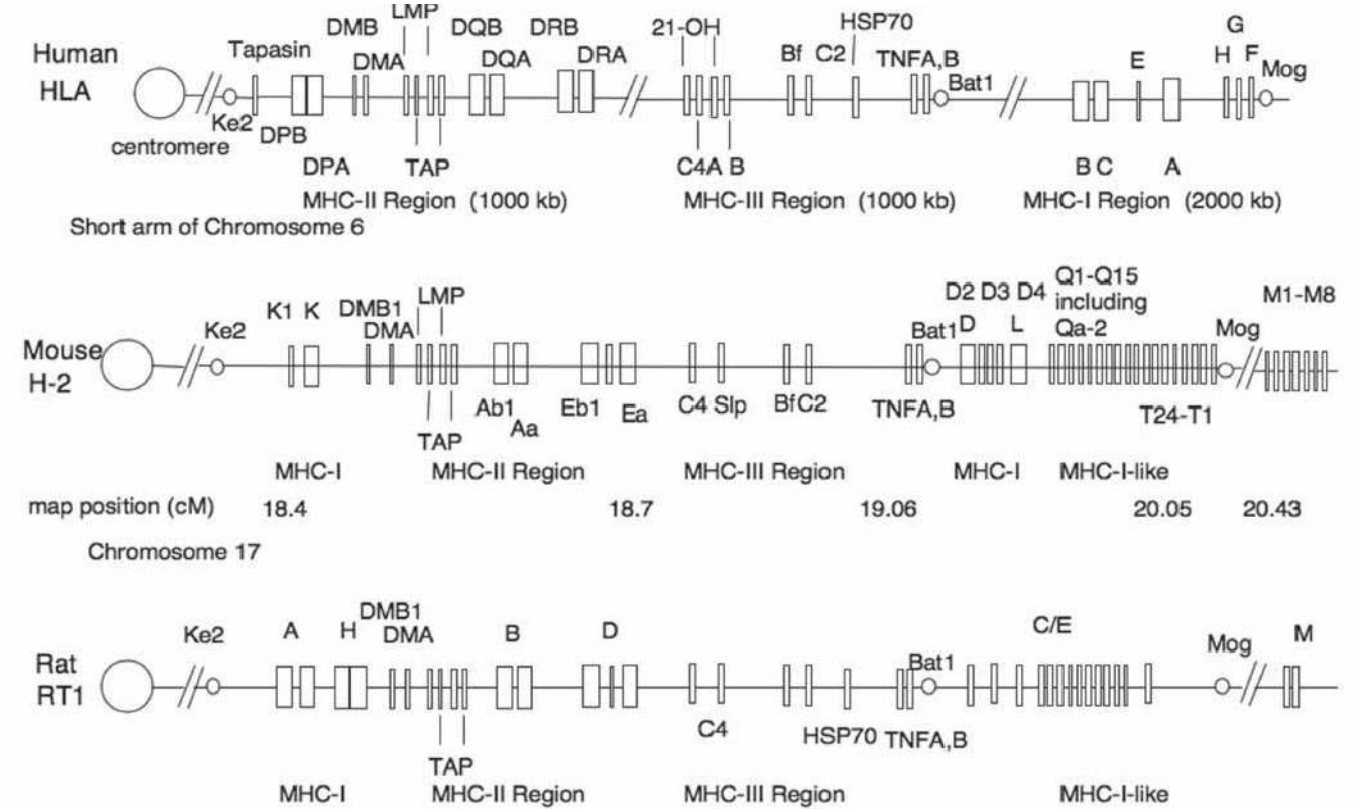


FIG. 21.3. Comparative Maps of Human, Mouse, and Rat *Mhc* Regions. This schematic map is not complete nor drawn to scale and is derived from maps available at www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/projects/homology/maps/.

are subunits of the catalytic proteolytic proteasome complex that regulate the specificity of cleavage of proteins, and thus modulate the repertoire of peptides available for MHC-I–restricted antigen presentation.[82–85] The *TAP* genes encode a two-chain intrinsic membrane protein that resides in the ER of all cells and functions as an adenosine triphosphate–dependent transporter that pumps peptides generated in the cytosol into the lumen of the ER.[86,87] The selective transport of cytoplasmically generated peptides by different TAP proteins in the rat demonstrates that the spectrum of MHC/peptide complexes expressed at the cell surface can be significantly altered by differences in the antigen presentation pathway,[88–90] although there is little evidence for this phenomenon in humans.[91] Nevertheless, TAP deficiency syndromes in humans[92–95] emphasize the importance of peptide delivery in the antigen presentation pathway for normal immune function.

The major *Mhc-II* genes of the human are *HLA-DRA* and *HLA-DRB* that encode the chains that form the HLA-DR molecule, a major antigen-presentation element. Genetic mapping of the human DRB region indicates that several alternative arrangements of *DRB* loci explain the varied serotypes and genotypes observed among different individuals (see Fig. 21.2). In particular, note that several HLA-DR "haplotypes," originally defined serologically as DR52, DR1, DR51, DR53, and DR8, differ not only in particular allelic genes at the *DR* locus but also in the number and precise location of several of the *DRB* genes and pseudogenes. The *Mhc-III* region is important in immunologic terms for several reasons—the structural genes for several complement components map here, as well as the structural genes for 21-hydroxylase (CYP21A2),[96,97] an enzyme critical in the biosynthesis of glucocorticoids, a deficiency of which can lead to the genetic disease congenital adrenal hyperplasia. Also located in the *Mhc-III* region are the structural genes for tumor necrosis factor (TNF) A (also known as lymphotoxin α) and B, which are cytokines made by activated T cells.[98–100]

The more distal region of the *Mhc* encodes other MHC molecules. In humans, the cluster of the major *Mhc-I* genes lies here, spanning two Mb, including the genes encoding HLA-B, HLA-C, HLA-E, and HLA-A, as well as HLA-H, HLA-G, and HLA-F. HLA-A, HLA-B, and HLA-C are the major MHC-I molecules of man. (A summary of these is in Table 21.2.) Serologic identification of HLA-C molecules has been difficult and imprecise. However, HLA-C molecules interact directly with NK receptors of the KIR2D family. Direct binding studies have analyzed the kinetics of the interaction of the KIR2 immunoglobulin (Ig)-like NK receptors,[101–103] and three-dimensional structures of KIR2DL2 in complex with HLA-Cw3 and KIR2DL1 complexed with HLA-Cw4 have been published.[104,105] Recently, the structure of a KIR3DL1 molecule in complex with HLA-B*57:01 emphasizes the unique nature of different KIR/MHC interactions.[106] The precise functions of HLA-E, HLA-F, and HLA-G are not yet clear. HLA-E and its murine analog Qa-1 bind hydrophobic leader peptides derived from some MHC-I

molecules, forming a complex recognized by the C-type lectin-like NK receptor CD94/NKG2.[107–111] This implies an important function for HLA-E because these molecules are expressed on placental trophoblast cells and would be expected to bind the inhibitory NK receptor, CD94/NKG2A, preventing NK-mediated rejection of the fetus.[112] HLA-E may serve as a recognition element for some T cells as well, so it also seems capable of a classical role.[113,114] Additional evidence now supports an antigen presentation function of HLA-F and HLA-G,[115,116] and the tissue restricted expression of HLA-G as well as the observation that a soluble form leads to apoptosis of CD8+ T cells suggest that this molecule may be involved in the mother's immunologic tolerance of the fetus.[117] *HLA-H* is a pseudogene mapping to this region.[118] This should not be confused with the more distantly related *HLA-HFE*, an *Mhc-Ib* gene erroneously called *HLA-H* by some authors,[118,119] which controls hereditary hemochromatosis by virtue of the interaction of its encoded protein with the transferrin receptor.[120–125] The observations that extravillous trophoblast cells express an unusual combination of HLA-C, HLA-E, and HLA-G molecules; that uterine NK cells express NK inhibitory receptor (KIR) molecules known to interact with HLA-C allelic products; and that complex genotypes predispose to preeclampsia raise the possibility that important aspects of fetal rejection and clinical infertility may be related to MHC recognition by NK cells in the placenta.[126]

Comparison of the mouse, rat, and human *Mhc* maps (Fig. 21.3) reveals several interesting differences.[5,127–129] The *Mhc* genes proximal to the centromere of the mouse and rat belong to the *Mhc-I* family, rather than to the *Mhc-II* family, as they do in the human. This mapping has suggested that an intrachromosomal recombination event that occurred in some common rodent ancestor relocated some of the *Mhc-I* genes from a more distal location to the proximal site.[130] Inspection of the current human, mouse, and rat maps clearly indicates similarities in the relative locations and organization of *Mhc-II*, *Mhc-III*, and the distal *Mhc-I* genes.[128] Various genetic expansions and contractions[131] are obvious as well. In particular, the mouse *Q* and *T* regions have expanded the pool of *Mhc-I* genes, which are relatively few in the human and the rat. Early studies of congenic mouse strains mapped multiple genes to the *Q* and *T* regions,[132–134] and recent evidence suggests significant differences in the number of genes of this region in different strains. The mouse has some *MHC-Ib* genes that seem to be relatively unique in function. In particular, the *H2-M3* gene, which maps distal to the *Q* and *T* regions, encodes a protein that exhibits a preference for binding peptides that have N-formyl amino terminal modifications. This antigen presentation function may be geared to bacterial, protozoal, and mitochondrial antigens.[135–137] Rat homologues of the mouse *H2-M3* and *H2-M2* genes have also been identified.[138,139]

Mhc Polymorphism

The *Mhc's* function in immune responsiveness is also reflected in its genetic polymorphism. Polymorphism is the presence at any given time of a larger than expected number of genetic variants in a population. As populations change and evolve, we expect that genetic variants should arise but because of the selection exerted on most gene products, relatively few of these genetic variants will persist. A genetic locus that exhibits variant alleles at a frequency of more than 1% is considered "polymorphic."[5] A genetic locus that is relatively invariant is often referred to as "monomorphic," even if more than one allele is known. *HLA* genes exhibit a high degree of polymorphism; a number of different mechanisms may contribute to the generation and maintenance of polymorphism. Among these are the selective advantage of a heterozygous pool of antigen-presenting elements in a given individual that might allow the binding and presentation of antigenic peptides derived from a wide variety of environmental pathogens. Limited polymorphism would make the entire population susceptible to a chance infectious agent for which all individuals would be unable to respond, whereas widespread polymorphism would be expected to allow the APCs of at least a proportion of the population to effectively bind and present antigens derived from invading pathogens.[140] Although such a view was originally based on HLA molecules as presenting elements for pathogen-derived peptide fragments to T cells and their antigen-specific TCRs, studies suggest an additional role for *Mhc-I*–related resistance to viral infection via NK cell–mediated recognition[141,142] and altered antigen presentation pathway.[143] Additionally, the presence of a high degree of polymorphism also implies that there is little or no selective disadvantage to the expression of new variant MHC molecules.

The human *Mhc-I* and *Mhc-II* genes are clearly polymorphic, with more than 5000 alleles at the *Mhc-I* loci and some 2000 alleles at the *Mhc-II* loci known (see Tables 21.2 and 21.3) (www.ebi.ac.uk/imgt/hla/index.html).[8,9] In experimental animals, it is more difficult to demonstrate polymorphism in terms of population genetics, although typing of wild mice has confirmed the existence of natural polymorphism predicted from the analysis of inbred strains and their mutants.[144,145] The polymorphism of *Mhc-I* and *Mhc-II* genes, so evident in man and mouse, has also been documented in analyses of cichlid fishes—animals that diverged from the line leading to mammals at least several hundred million years ago.[146–149]

Genetic Mechanisms for *Mhc* Evolution

As both an extended genetic region and a group of genes with many belonging to the Ig supergene family,[150,151] the *Mhc* has served as a prototype for elucidating mechanisms that contribute to the evolution of a multigene family and that add to the polymorphism that is such a dominant characteristic of the classical MHC molecules.[152] The analysis of mutations in the mouse, mostly those of *Mhc-I* genes, has led to the understanding of the mechanisms that give rise to polymorphism. Both induced and spontaneous mutations affecting skin graft acceptance or rejection have been identified, and many of these have been mapped to the *Mhc*. Gross recombinational events have been documented in the *Mhc*,[153,154] as well as more subtle mutations, many of which are multiple amino acid substitutions in a relatively small part of the protein that seem to derive from nonreciprocal recombinational events. Such recombination that occurs over short sequences

is known as "gene conversion" because of its similarity to the phenomenon that occurs in yeast.[153–161] Convincing evidence for interlocus gene conversion has been documented in for the *Mhc-II* genes of teleost fish[162] and by deep sequencing of *Mhc-I* genes in recently founded bird populations.[163]

Some of the polymorphisms of *Mhc* genes that have been identified clearly reflect point mutations.[164] Structural studies have shown that the profound immunologic effects of mutations of the *H2* genes $H2K^{bm1}$ and $H2K^{bm8}$ result from minimal detectable changes that may affect thermostability.[165] In addition to such mouse mutants, a number of somatic cell variants and mutants, some due to major deletions or regulatory defects, others clearly point mutants of structural genes, have been described.[166]

The *Mhc* and Transplantation

Although the early description of the genes of the *Mhc* was based on identification of loci involved in tumor and allograft rejection, and although these genes clearly play a role in such complex phenomena, a contemporary understanding of the function of *Mhc* genes in immunology requires little understanding of the rules of transplantation. The early history of transplantation is chronicled extensively in several books[5,167] and reflects a developing interest in tumor immunology and congenic mouse strains. The mouse has served as the model system for understanding the genetic underpinnings of skin, tumor, and organ transplantation, so a brief description of some relevant principles is in order. Comprehensive manuals and reviews are available.[168] Propagation of a mouse strain by repeated matings of brothers and sisters leads to the establishment of an inbred strain, a group of animals that is genetically identical at all loci. More complete descriptions of the process by which brother–sister mating leads to homozygosity at all loci are given elsewhere.[5,167]

"Congenic" mouse strains, also known as "congenic resistant" or "CR" strains, are those derived by first crossing two inbred strains that differ in a histocompatibility phenotype such as resistance to a transplantable tumor or ability to reject a skin graft. These are then successively backcrossed to one parental strain, and the resistance phenotype is preserved. Following at least 10 backcross generations (N10), a point at which $(1/2)^9 = 0.002$ of the genes of the selected strain should be present, the new strain is propagated by brother–sister mating. Several relevant inbred and congenic mouse strains are listed in Table 21.4 along with their *H2* designations.

The early rules of transplantation were determined by observation of the ability of either transplantable tumors or allografts (usually from skin) to survive in a particular inbred mouse strain host. The graft rejection phenomenon is an extremely sensitive and specific bioassay that permits the detection of genetic differences as small as a single amino acid in an MHC protein. It has been particularly valuable in assessing spontaneous and induced mutants (see previous discussion) and remains the absolute experimental discriminator of "histocompatibility."

In addition to the *Mhc* genes, we should not overlook the genes that encode minor histocompatibility antigens. In the mouse, these were originally identified as genetic loci responsible for graft rejection after extended periods of time. More recently, several minor histocompatibility loci have been identified as those that encode polymorphic proteins that give rise to peptides presented by MHC molecules,[169–173] and we now can understand the complexities of transplantation tolerance in terms not only of *Mhc* genes but also in terms of numerous proteins that may give rise to variant peptides for T-cell recognition. Not only can peptides derived from polymorphic genes throughout the genome serve as minor histocompatibility antigens but also defective translation products, or peptides resulting from transcription of introns or noncoding strands of DNA may also produce immunologically significant peptides, which, bound by self-MHC molecules may stimulate T cells.[174,175] Whether such defective, newly synthesized proteins serve as a major source of MHC-I–bound peptides remains controversial.[176] Minor antigens that are confined to hematopoietic cells can be recognized as targets by antitumor cytolytic cells and may explain the lower incidence of relapse in hematopoietic stem cell (HSC) transplant recipients who experience graft-versus-host disease (GVHD).[177]

The *Mhc* and Clinical Transplantation

Processed foreign antigen complexed to HLA class I or class II molecules is recognized by a specific clonally distributed TCR for antigen on the surface of T lymphocytes. The T cell bearing an αβ receptor is capable of recognizing the unitary structure of the HLA molecule itself coordinately with the exposed parts of the peptide antigen. Corecognition of HLA and peptide antigen means that TCRs are highly specific and genetically restricted to recognizing HLA molecules of the individual from which they were derived. Thus, a killer (cytotoxic) T cell raised against an influenza virus peptide in an individual expressing HLA-A2 will not recognize influenza-infected HLA-A1. This concept is known as "MHC restriction" and was described by Shevach and Rosenthal for recognition of amino acid polymers,[178] by Zinkernagel and Doherty for recognition of viral antigens,[179,180] and by Shearer et al. for recognition of altered self-ligands.[181] Given that T cells are MHC-restricted, it is difficult to understand why they should ever recognize a foreign HLA type. However, in practice they do, data indicate that such alloreactive T cells arise with remarkably high frequency. It is estimated that between 1/10 to 1/1000 activated clonally distinct T cells are capable of responding to any random allogeneic HLA molecule.[182–185] Given the number of T cells in the human lymphoid system, this represents a striking tendency for T cells that are normally restricted to recognizing self-HLA molecules complexed to foreign peptides to cross-react on allogeneic HLA molecules. This cross-reaction can arise from direct recognition of the allogeneic HLA/peptide complex, which usually depends on the peptide antigen as well as the allogeneic HLA molecule. Alternatively, allorecognition by T cells can occur indirectly.[186,187] In such cases, peptides derived from the allogeneic HLA molecules are presented as nominal antigen after processing by the host cells bearing self-HLA molecules. In the normal course of

events, T-cell alloreactivity is an in vitro curiosity, although it is still not entirely clear why the fetal "allograft" does not stimulate the maternal immune system. However, it is the clinical transplantation of organs and hematopoietic stem cells across HLA compatibility barriers that produces graft rejection or GVHD due to T-cell alloreactivity. Fully allogeneic transplants theoretically expose the recipient immune system to up to 12 non–self-HLA allele products expressed by the allograft. Moreover, the "self-peptides" constitutively presented by allogeneic HLA molecules are likely to be quite distinct from those presented by syngeneic HLA molecules because the polymorphisms of the peptide antigen-binding cleft of the MHC-I molecule that distinguish HLA alleles alter the spectrum of selected peptides. In the presence of appropriate costimuli, allogeneic HLA/peptide complexes probably stimulate powerful T-cell responses because of the high density of unusual determinants and the diversity of new peptide ligands presented by the allogeneic HLA/peptide complexes. Because there are many MHC-linked genes encoding a host of proteins, many lacking known immunologic function, it is likely that polymorphisms in these molecules contribute significantly to the alloresponse (see previous discussion of *Mhc* genetic maps and *Mhc* alleles). Accordingly, many studies have demonstrated an incremental improvement in long-term graft survival with progressively higher levels of HLA matching at HLA-A, -B, and -DR loci. For this reason, HLA matching is essential in allogeneic HSC transplantation and highly desirable in solid-organ transplantation. The degree of HLA matching usually required for renal transplantation is shown in Figure 21.4 and for bone marrow transplantation in Table 21.5. Survival of HSC transplants varies according to the nature of the disease, disease stage, and age of the patient but can be >70% in some cases (see Centre for International Blood and Marrow Transplant Research at www.cibmtr.org/pages/index.aspx). The effect of HLA matching on solid-organ transplantation has been monitored by the Collaborative Transplant Study since 1982 (www.ctstransplant.org/).

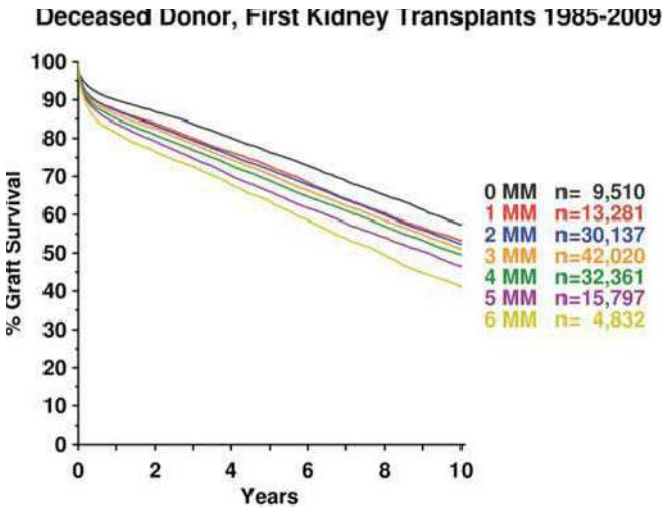


FIG. 21.4. Effect of HLA Matching on First Deceased Donor Kidney Graft Survival. Survival of first kidney transplants based on number of HLA-A, -B, and -C mismatches as a function of time. Courtesy of Collaborative Transplant Study, G. Opelz, University of Heidelberg (www.ctstransplant.org/public/graphics.shtml).

TABLE 21.5 MHC Matching versus Success of Bone Marrow Transplantation

MHC Compatibility	Risk of Graft Rejection (%)	Risk of Acute Graft-versus-Host Disease (%)	Survival (3 Years) (%)
Share two haplotypes (HLA identical sibling)	2	40	50
Share one haplotype plus phenotypically identical	7	40	50
1 HLA mismatch	9	70	50
>2 HLA mismatches	21	80	15
Share zero haplotypes (unrelated)			
"Matched"	3	80	35
"Mismatched"	5	95	35

HLA, human leukocyte antigen; MHC, major histocompatibility complex.
Reprinted from Christiansen FT, Witt CS. Allogeneic bone marrow transplantation. In: Bradley J, McCluskey J, eds. *Clinical Immunology*. Oxford: Oxford University Press; 1997:445, with permission.

In addition to the allogeneic cellular response, the antibody response to HLA molecules and ABO blood groups can also cause rejection of certain grafts, especially where these antibodies are preformed and, therefore, present at the time of organ transplantation. Antibodies to ABO blood-group antigens react with these determinants on vascular endothelium, and, therefore, ABO-incompatible solid organs can be rapidly rejected by humoral mechanisms. In patients who have been transfused or previously transplanted, or in multiparous females, exposure to allogeneic HLA molecules can also result in the production of anti-HLA class I antibodies. These preformed antibodies can lead to acute and hyperacute rejection of grafts expressing the particular HLA molecules recognized by these antibodies. Renal graft survival improves with fewer HLA mismatches. In Figure 21.4, cumulative data for graft survival are plotted as a function of time. Curves represent those groups with the indicated number of mismatches. Therefore, for solid-organ transplants, individuals are not only matched as closely as possible for their HLA types to avert cellular rejection but, it is also necessary to ensure ABO compatibility and to exclude preformed antidonor HLA antibodies in the host. Paradoxically, some patients who have received multiple blood transfusions prior to transplantation appear to develop some form of T-cell tolerance to allogeneic donor HLA alleles; renal graft survival is actually enhanced in these individuals. This is known as the "transfusion effect," and in some centers, pretransplant transfusion and even donor-specific transfusions are routinely carried out.

Transfusion of potential renal transplant recipients carries the risk, however, of inducing undesirable anti-HLA

antibodies in the patient. Testing for anti-HLA antibodies is known as the "crossmatch." In practice, many laboratories crossmatch only for anti-HLA class I antibodies. Crossmatch compatibility to exclude anti-HLA class I antibodies is essential in renal transplantation and is widely practiced in heart/lung transplantation. Crossmatching for liver transplantation is practiced at only some centers, and the evidence that a positive crossmatch predicts allogeneic liver graft rejection has not convinced everyone of its importance in routine matching. Patients awaiting renal transplantation are usually monitored regularly for anti-HLA class I antibodies because the level and specificity of these antibodies can change with time. This monitoring involves regular crossmatching of patient serum against a panel of randomly selected cells bearing different HLA types. The percentage of positively reacting cells is known as the "panel reactivity." When carrying out a crossmatch between a patient's serum and donor cells, many centers test the current as well as "historical peak" serum from the patient. The historical peak is defined as the patient serum sample giving the highest panel reactivity throughout the monitoring period and is thought to be a reflection of previous HLA sensitization. Most centers now prescreen patients on transplant waiting lists for anti-HLA antibodies using MHC-coated beads as a source of antigen and a highly sensitive flow cytometry technology for their detection. In highly sensitized patients with multiple host antidonor antibodies, these unwanted antibodies can sometimes be functionally eliminated using B-cell ablation therapies (anti-CD20 monoclonal antibodies), plasmapharesis, and intravenous gammaglobulin infusions, thus allowing successful transplantation. Similar approaches, coupled with plasmapharesis, are now taken with increasing frequency in transplanting kidneys across the ABO barrier. The role of antibody crossmatching in allogeneic HSC transplantation is less clear, and many centers do not take the class I or class II crossmatch into account when identifying a bone marrow transplant donor. On the other hand, some large centers place considerable importance on a positive crossmatch as a predictor of bone marrow rejection, and it is therefore advisable to crossmatch bone marrow donor–recipient pairs when there is a high risk of rejection (eg, aplastic anemia). Crossmatching is also used to detect anti-HLA antibodies that may cause refractoriness to platelet transfusion with random platelets.

Family Studies in Histocompatibility Testing

The linkage of HLA loci on chromosome 6 means that individuals will usually inherit a set of nonrecombined HLA alleles encoded at linked HLA loci from each parent. This set of genes (the haplotype) is often identifiable in family studies, where all the alleles present on one chromosome cosegregate. In identifying donors for HSC transplantation, testing of family members is essential to determine haplotypes accurately.[188,189] This is because sharing of HLA antigens from different haplotypes is quite common in families, so mismatches within HLA subtypes (ie, allele-level mismatches) are easily overlooked as a result of mistaken haploidentity of siblings or other family members. Because unrecognized HLA mismatching is poorly tolerated in HSC transplantation, high-resolution sequence-based DNA matching (or its equivalent) is required to avoid GVHD.[190–192] The impact of HLA on the outcome of HSC transplants has been studied in unrelated donor–recipient pairs by several groups,[193,194] and guidelines for matching have been published by the U.S. National Marrow Donor Panel.[195] These data show that unrelated matched transplants can be as effective as sibling matched donor–recipient transplants in donor survival. Mismatching beyond a single, or at most two, HLA loci is associated with increased GVHD and inversely with a lower rate of leukemic relapse. Although allogeneic HSC transplantation can be carried out across single-locus mismatches, there is little correlation with the magnitude of a given mismatch (ie, number of polymorphisms between alleles) and the subsequent immune response. Donor–recipient MHC differences of just a single amino acid can provoke strong alloresponses comparable to reactions between vastly different MHC products.[191] An example of haplotyping in a family study is shown in Figure 21.5. Matching for HLA-DP in allogeneic stem cell transplantation appears to improve graft success in both stem cell and renal transplantation,[196,197] but testing for this locus is not routinely carried out clinically for renal transplants and only for HSC when several donors are available and a rational choice of the best donor has to be made.[198,199] HLA-C matching is also important for chronic myeloid leukemia.[200] Typically, an HLA typing laboratory will test for HLA-A, -B, -DRB1, -DRB3, -DRB4, -DRB5, and -DQ loci for HSC transplant matching.[198] Many centers will also insist on HLA-C testing. In the family study shown in Figure 21.5, the mother and father are mismatched at both haplotypes. Among the children, John and Andrew are haploidentical (and therefore phenotypically identical). Jane and Jim share a single haplotype, as do Tom and Jim. Jane's paternal haplotype is a recombinant involving a crossover event between HLA-A and HLA-B. Recombination is observed between HLA-A/B and HLA-B and HLA-DR in about 1% of meiotic events. The implications of this family study are that Andrew and John would be ideal bone marrow donors for each other. However, none of the other siblings would be suitable as a donor for these brothers. Even though there is sharing of a single haplotype between Tom and both Andrew and John, the complete mismatch in the second haplotype would make Tom unsuitable as a donor for HSC transplantation, which requires very close matching of HLA. On the other hand, haplotype mismatching is common in renal transplantation, in which perfect HLA matching is not absolutely required or routinely achievable. However, for renal and other solid organ transplantation, ABO blood group compatibility is usually essential because these determinants are expressed on vascular endothelium where recognition by isohemagglutinins leads to rapid intravascular coagulation and organ failure. When a matched sibling donor does not exist for a patient requiring allogeneic HSC transplantation (70% of cases), searching of the extended family or unrelated bone marrow registries is indicated. The National Marrow Donor

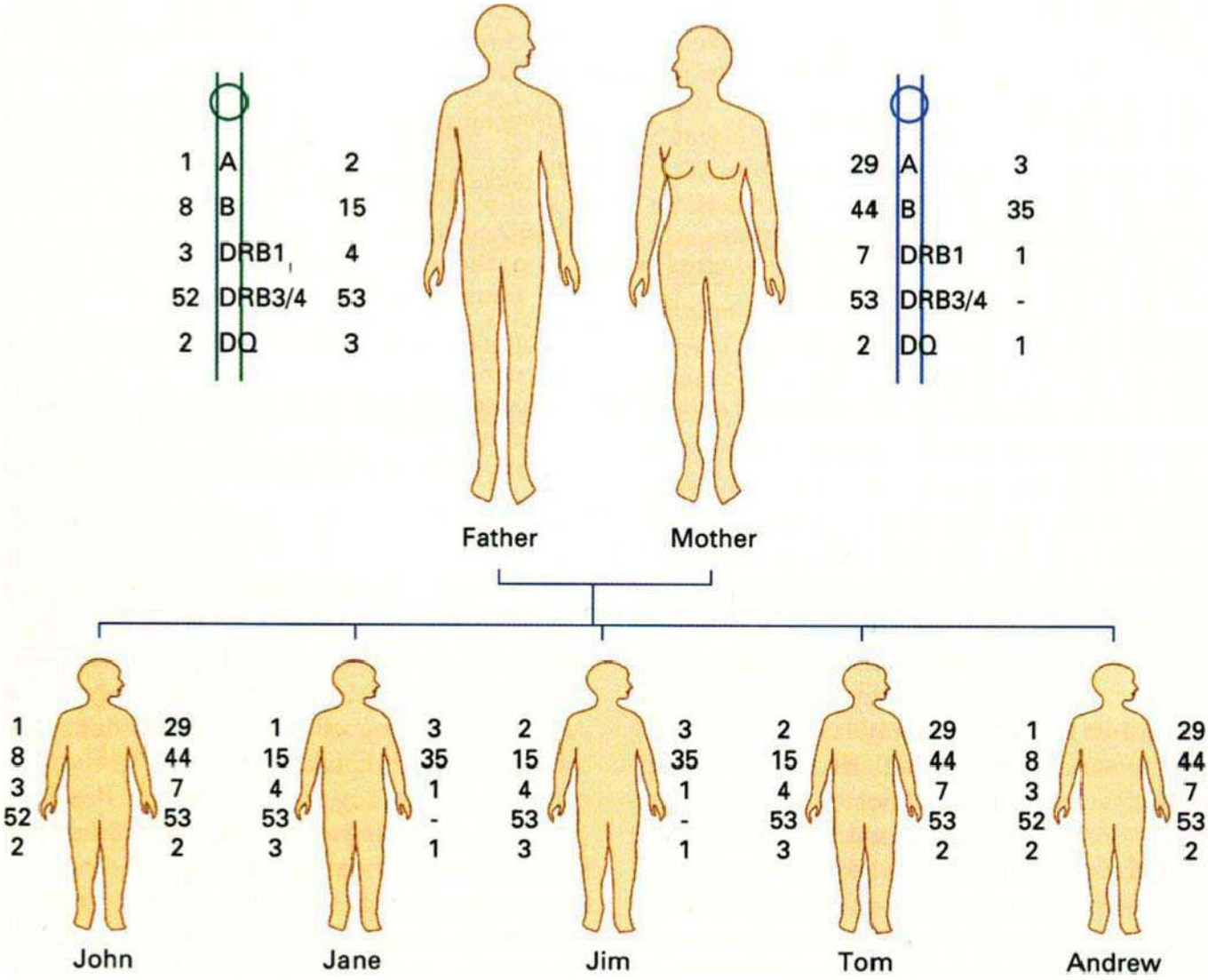


FIG. 21.5. Segregation of Haplotypes in a Family. From McCluskey,[558] with permission.

Panel (www.marrow.org) has several million potential donors suitable for unrelated stem cell transplantation; these donors are used in the United States and worldwide. Bone marrow donor registries also exist in Europe, Australia, Hong Kong, and Japan; these registries often provide donors for patients in other parts of the world. Mobilization of stem cells in the blood following administration of hematopoietic growth factors is now widely used to avoid the need for marrow collections from donors.

In the last decade, many HSC transplant protocols have sought to reduce the pretransplant conditioning of patients. There have also been controversial reports indicating dramatic outcomes of HSC transplantation where deliberate KIR-ligand mismatching leads to donor-versus-recipient NK-cell alloreactivity toward cells of hematopoietic origin.[201–204] The Velardi group in Perugia has championed this approach providing evidence that in the absence of GVHD, a high frequency of donor NK cells in KIR-ligand mismatched transplants can remove recipient's target cells.[202] In particular, HLA haplotype–mismatched hematopoietic transplants can be beneficial in adult acute myeloid leukemia and childhood acute lymphoblastic leukemia leading to the development of adoptive NK-cell transfers as an experimental therapy for graft-versus-leukemia treatment.[205] However, these transplants must be rigorously T-cell depleted, and variable results appear to reflect different transplant protocols, disease parameters, and KIR-mismatching assignment.[203,204,206]

Cord blood banks have also been established around the world. However, cord blood donation of stem cells is often unsuitable for adult transplantation because of limitations in the volume of cord blood collections providing inadequate numbers of stem cells. Many centers will combine different cord bloods that are matched with the recipient as much as feasible to increase the stem cell number. Cord bloods offer the advantage of finding donors faster than adult unrelated registries[197] and theoretically providing banked stem cells from ethnic minority groups that are not well represented in bone marrow donor registries.[198] Cord blood transplants induce less GVHD than bone marrow or peripheral blood stem cell transplants, but posttransplant engraftment is

slower.[196,207] Cord transplants may also tolerate greater levels of HLA mismatching than unrelated bone marrow transplant, but this is dependent on the transfer of sufficient CD34+ stem cells.[208] The results of transplants using bone marrow or peripheral blood stem cells are now considered comparable clinically,[207] but the impact of HLA matching in patients transplanted at early stage in their disease appears to be more marked. Functional tests of HLA compatibility testing for HLA identity at all HLA loci is a daunting task for most laboratories because of the very large number of alleles present in the population. Moreover, in renal transplantation, some mismatches appear to be well tolerated and are associated with long-term graft survival, whereas other mismatches of similar genetic disparity are poorly tolerated and are associated with early rejection.[209,210] Reliable methods for predicting these "taboo" mismatches are not readily available. Similarly, high-resolution HLA typing does not predict all GVHD when selecting suitable unrelated donors for HSC transplantation.[190,211] Therefore, there has been a great deal of interest in developing functional or in vitro cellular tests of overall donor–recipient compatibility. Unfortunately, none of the tests so far developed provides convincing predictability of impending graft rejection or, more importantly, GVHD.

Among the tests used historically for assessing functional compatibility are the mixed lymphocyte reactivity (MLR) test and allogeneic T-helper or cytotoxic T-lymphocyte precursor studies. The MLR or MLC (C = culture) involves measuring T-cell proliferation of host T cells in response to donor lymphocytes and vice versa. In a one-way MLR, the stimulating lymphocytes are irradiated to prevent their proliferation; in the two-way MLR, both stimulator and responder cells are allowed to proliferate. In MLR studies, it is necessary to include controls showing that responder cells can all respond and that stimulator cells can all stimulate across an appropriate barrier such as third-party donor cells. Responses can vary widely, and individual laboratories use their own cutoff values to define negative (ie, nonreactive) and positive (ie, reactive) MLR results.[211] Unfortunately, known HLA mismatches can be present in a negative MLR, and a positive MLR can be obtained between phenotypically HLA-identical transplant pairs. Because the MLR is biased toward measuring HLA class II discrepancies and is notoriously irreproducible,[211] most laboratories have abandoned this test in favor of implementation of high-resolution polymerase chain reaction–based HLA class II typing. Measurement of allogeneic cytotoxic T-lymphocyte or helper T–cell precursor frequencies is carried out at specialized bone marrow transplant centers but is not universally accepted as being predictive of GVHD.[212,213] The test is labor intensive and requires a skilled technician for reproducibility. Precursor frequencies are estimated by limiting dilution analysis or ELISpot of donor-versus-host lymphocytes (ie, T cells expected to cause GVHD). High precursor frequencies (up to 1 in 10^4 cells) are thought to be associated with a greater risk for acute GVHD.[214] It is possible that precursor studies detect major and minor incompatibilities, and so, theoretically, they might give a broad measure of the transplant barrier, but technical improvements will be required before this test is widely adopted in clinical practice.[215]

The *Mhc* and Disease

In addition to the control of transplant acceptance or rejection and immune responsiveness, the *Mhc* in the human plays an important role in the etiology of a number of diseases, many of which are autoimmune in nature.[123,216–218] Several human diseases are associated with the *Mhc-III* genes because some of the structural genes for enzymes involved in the adrenal steroid biosynthetic pathway (ie, 21-hydroxylase, CYP21A2) map to this region. As many as 200 diseases have well-established genetic linkages to the *Mhc*,[217,219–222] the most important of which are summarized in Tables 21.6 and 21.7. Recent genome-wide association studies confirm the importance of the HLA-DRB1 locus in rheumatoid arthritis and type 1 diabetes,[71,223–225] and fine mapping analysis suggests that a total of five amino acid polymorphisms (three in HLA-DRB1, one in HLA-B, and one in HLA-DPB1), all located in peptide-binding grooves, almost completely explain the MHC association with the risk of rhuematoid arthritis.[226] The precise mechanisms underlying the association of most of these diseases with the particular *Mhc* haplotypes are unknown, but several models have been proposed, including the cross-reactivity of antimicrobial antibodies and the molecular mimicry of

TABLE 21.6 Some HLA Disease Associations

Disease	MHC-I	Strength of Association
Ankylosing spondylitis	HLA-B27	+++
Reiter disease	HLA-B27	++
Psoriasis	HLA-C*06	+
Abacavir drug hypersensitivity	HLA-B*57:01	+++
Behcet disease	HLA-B*51	+
Birdshot retinopathy	HLA-A*29	+++
	MHC-II	
Narcolepsy	HLA-DQB1*06:02	++
Insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus	HLA-DQ8	++
	HLA-DQ2	+
	HLA-DR2	–
Rheumatoid arthritis	HLA-DR4	+
Celiac disease	HLA-DQ2	+++
	HLA-DQ8	+
Multiple sclerosis	HLA-DR2	+

HLA, human leukocyte antigen; MHC, major histocompatibility complex
+++ = very strong association that is clinically useful as a diagnostic tool
++ = strong association with likely primary involvement in disease pathogenesis
+ = clear association with likely role in disease pathogenesis
– = negative or protective influence on disease probability
For a more detailed summary of MHC and disease associations see Shiina et al.[220]

TABLE 21.7 HLA Disease Associations and Relative Risk[a]

Disease	Antigen	Estimated or Relative Risk
Graves disease or myasthenia gravis	B*08:01 DRB1*03:01 DQA1*05:01 DQB1*02:01	4 or 2.5
Multiple sclerosis	DRB1*15:01 DQB1*06:02	4
Multiple sclerosis	DQA1*01:02	4
Psoriasis	C*06:02	5
Celiac disease	DQA1*02:01/DQB* 02:02 (DQ2.2)	1
	DQA1*05:01/DQB1* 02:01 (DQ2.5)	7
SLE	DRB1*15:01	2
Type 1 diabetes or SLE	DRB1*03:0101	4.5

[a] These examples were taken from single nucleotide polymorphism associations reported by de Bakker et al.,[71] where the tag single nucleotide polymorphisms and coefficients of determination (r^2) are also reported. For celiac disease, DQ2.2 only has an effect when in combination with DQ2.5. The relative risk of DQ2.5 changes depending on the coordinate presence of other DQ types.

SLE, systemic lupus erythematosus.

viral antigens that might induce T-cell responses to self-antigens.[227–229] The very high incidence of some diseases associated with certain HLA genes assists in the diagnosis as well as the counseling of patients and their families. Several of these diseases are of particular note. Because virtually 100% of patients with narcolepsy have HLA-DQB1*06:02 (associated with HLA-DR2),[230,231] HLA typing can be used as a test of disease exclusion. Thus, a diagnosis of narcolepsy can be excluded with reasonable certainty if the patient does not have HLA-DQB1*06:02. On the other hand, the presence of HLA-DQB1*06:02 is of little predictive value in diagnosis of narcolepsy because this HLA type is relatively common in many populations and occurs frequently in the absence of disease.

Ankylosing spondylitis is so strongly associated with the *Mhc-I* allele HLA-B27 and the presence of some bacterial pathogens that it is a popular hypothesis that ankylosing spondylitis is due to the stimulation of particular T cells by HLA-B27–presented bacterial antigens that cross-react on self-tissues. These T cells are then thought to initiate an inflammatory cascade. Despite the strong association of HLA with spondyloarthropathy, critical evaluation of the literature brings a postinfectious etiology into question and certainly more studies are indicated.[232,233] Recent genome-wide studies strongly indicate that a genetic interaction between an enzyme involved in processing MHC-I–associated peptides, ERAP1, and HLA-B27 contributes to disease susceptibility.[234] The tendency of HLA-B27 to form disulfide-linked covalent dimers raises the question whether the resulting cellular pathology related to poor cell surface expression of this MHC-I molecule may be related to the inflammation of joints that is characteristic of this disease.[235,236]

Hereditary hemochromatosis is one of the most common genetic disorders in Caucasian populations (with a prevalence of 1/300 to 1/400). The gene controlling this condition (*HFE*) is *Mhc* linked, mapping approximately three Mb telomeric to the HLA-A locus.[122] The HFE protein is a class I–like molecule, the structure of which has been determined.[237,238] HFE assembles with β2m and is expressed in the intestinal mucosa and placenta, where it plays a role in regulating iron uptake and transport.[239,240] Mice that are homozygous for an induced defect of β2m as well as those with targeted inactivation of the HFE gene suffer from iron overload or hemochromatosis.[241–244] Mutations at loci other than β2m or HFE also lead to the same disease phenotype.[245] HFE regulates the affinity of the receptor for transferrin, resulting in an alteration of the efficiency of iron transport. The most common molecular defect associated with hereditary hemochromatosis involves a point mutation that results in a Cys282Tyr substitution in the α3 domain of this class I–like molecule.[122] This mutation accounts for >80% of patients with hereditary hemochromatosis.[246] The disruption of the disulfide bond in the α3 domain at this site prevents efficient folding of the molecule and impairs assembly with β2m, resulting in improper HFE protein expression. This leads to a failure to downregulate the affinity of the transferrin receptor for its ligand, transferrin, presumably causing increased iron uptake by cells and tissue damage as a result of iron overload. A second common HFE mutation, 187G, results in a His63Asp substitution and a very slight increase in susceptibility to developing hereditary hemochromatosis, depending on the genotype of the individual.[247] Incomplete penetrance of even the high-risk Cys282Tyr *HFE* genotypes can be partly explained by natural iron deficiency from limited dietary intake and menstrual losses in women.

As summarized in Tables 21.6 and 21.7 and discussed previously, there are a number of autoimmune diseases associated with particular alleles of HLA class II loci, especially with DR and DQ.[221] These diseases include type 1 (insulin-dependent) diabetes mellitus, rheumatoid arthritis, multiple sclerosis, systemic lupus erythematosus, thyrogastric autoimmunity, Sjögren syndrome, and many others. Rheumatoid arthritis is strongly associated with HLA-DR4 subtypes that share a common sequence motif within the DRβ chain,[248] suggesting antigen presentation of self-epitopes by these molecules. The relative risk of severe rheumatoid arthritis is increased in DR4 homozygotes and particularly in compound heterozygotes with high-risk alleles,[249,250] indicating a gene dose effect in susceptibility to autoimmune inflammation.

Although the number of different *HLA* class I and class II alleles that are associated with type 1 diabetes clearly indicates that this relatively common disease has a complex etiology, the identification of a novel *Mhc-II* haplotype in the mutant nonobese diabetic mouse,[251–255] and the recognition that particular TCRs can mediate disease,[256] suggest that a cross-reactive response to a common self- or environmental antigen may play an important role in the etiology of this disease as well. In human type 1 diabetes, the incidence of disease is significantly increased in Caucasians with HLA-

DR3-DQ2 and DR4-DQ8 haplotypes.[257–259] These haplotypes impart a synergistically increased relative risk when they occur as a heterozygous combination compared to the risk of disease conferred by either haplotype alone.[258–260] This raises the possibility of transcomplementation of HLA-DQ gene products producing new molecules involved in antigen presentation.[261] Analysis of large cohorts of patients in genome-wide marker studies offers a promising approach to identify additional genetic factors that act synergistically with HLA allelic linkages in raising the odds of disease susceptibility.[262] Online genomic maps and correlations of associations with particular loci further augments our ability to understand the relative contributions of MHC-linked and MHC-unlinked genes in autoimmune diseases such as type 1 diabetes.

Celiac disease is an underdiagnosed inflammatory disorder affecting the small intestine[263] but resulting from a Th1 hypersensitivity to wheat gluten and related proteins present in barley and rye. Normally manifest in childhood as a failure to thrive, the disease may affect adults quite later in life leading to malabsorption and wasting.[264] Celiac disease can be subclinical, presenting with anemia, osteoporosis, or neurologic symptoms.[263] This disease is strongly associated with HLA-DQ2 and/or HLA-DQ8 (DQ3)[265] as well as with autoantibodies to the enzyme tissue transglutaminase (TG2). Deamidated gluten peptides are presented to CD4+ T cells by HLA-DQ2 or HLADQ8 molecules via macrophages, dendritic cells, and B cells.[266,267] HLA-DQ2 preferentially binds peptides that contain glutamic acid residues at P4 or P6/P7. The dominant gluten peptide is thought to have a low affinity for HLA-DQ2 but this is improved if P6 glutamine is deamidated first.[266,267] HLA-DQ2 forms a network of hydrogen bonds that bind a dominant deamidated gliadin determinant.[268] This leads to enhanced Ag presentation and T-cell recognition with intestinal inflammation in susceptible patients.[266,267,269] The protease resistance of the dominant DQ2-restricted gliadin peptides contrasts with DQ8-associated disease where the dominant gliadin peptides are protease sensitive. The HLA-DQ2–associated and HLA-DQ8–associated forms of celiac disease have their own epitope patterns of deamidation dependence leading to T-cell reactivity. The DQ2-linked peptides possess single residue deamidation at P6 as compared with the preferred deamidation at positions P1 and P9 for DQ8-associated celiac disease.[270] Deamidation of both P1 and P9 to form glutamate residues engenders peptide salt-bridges with HLA-DQ8.[271] Whereas the mechanism of immunopathology of celiac disease is well defined, the exact combination of factors that trigger celiac pathology is still mysterious.[272]

HLA and Drug Reactions

Recently, a number of adverse drug reactions (ADRs) have revealed strong associations with particular HLA types[273] (Table 21.8). The most notable HLA associations are HLA-B*57:01 with abacavir hypersensitivity syndrome in the Caucasian population,[274–276] HLA-B*15:02 with carbamazepine induced Stevens-Johnson syndrome and toxic epidermal necrolysis in Asian populations,[277–279] and HLA-B*58:01 and allopurinol hypersensitivity syndrome and Stevens-Johnson syndrome/toxic epidermal necrolysis.[280–282] Odds ratios or relative risks of these associations are greater than 500, 1000, and 800, respectively. These ADRs are all associated with HLA class I allotypes, with evidence of T-cell involvement.

TABLE 21.8 HLA–Linked Drug Hypersensitivity Reactions

	Drug	Adverse Drug Reaction	HLA Association
MHC class I associations	Abacavir	HSS	B*57:01
	Allopurinol	SJS/TEN and HSS	B*58:01
	Carbamazepine	SJS/TEN	B*15:02
	Feprazone	Fixed drug eruption	B22
	Flucloxacillin	Hepatitis	B*57:01
	Sulfamethoxazole	Fixed drug eruptions	A30, B13, Cw6
	Sulfonamides (including sulfamethoxazole)	TEN	A29, B12, DR7
	Levamisole	Agranulocytosis	B27
	Oxicam	SJS/TEN	A2, B12
	Phenytoin	SJS/TEN	B*15:02
MHC class II associations	Aspirin	Asthma	DPB1*03:01
		Urticaria	DRB1*13:02-DQB1*06:09
	Hydralazine	Systemic lupus erythematosus	DR4
	Lapatinib	Hepatotoxicity	DRB1*07:01-DQA1*02:01-DQB1*0202/0203
	NSAIDs	Anaphylactoid and cutaneous reactions	DR11
	Ximelagatran	Elevated alanine aminotransferase	DRB1*07, DQA1*02

HLA, human leukocyte antigen; HSS, allopurinol hypersensitivity syndrome; MHC, major histocompatibility complex; NSAID, nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drug; SJS, Steven-Johnson syndrome; TEN, toxic epidermal necrolysis.
Adapted from Bharadwaj et al.[273]

The kinetics of the syndromes are also consistent with T-cell–mediated drug hypersensitivity.[276,283–286] The systemic features of many HLA-linked ADRs suggest that general mechanisms might mediate these reactions. Abacavir-pulsed APCs expressing HLA-B*57:01, but not closely related allotypes, stimulate CD8-positive T cells that are drug-specific.[287] It is now known that abacavir specifically binds the HLA-B*57:01 Ag-binding cleft straddling the central pockets and occupying the F-pocket which normally accommodates a tryptophan anchoring the carboxyl terminus of the peptide.[287a] Consequentially, the chemical environment of the cleft is changed which in turn alters the range of self-peptides that now bind HLA-B*57:01. Accordingly, abacavir induces a dramatic shift in the endogenous peptides selected for binding by HLA-B*57:01. This leads to a state of "altered self" that stimulates a broad range of CD8+ T cells reactive in a GVHD-like manner, explaining the clinical manifestations of the drug hypersensitivity.[287] The mode of abacavir binding provides a basis for understanding its exquisite specificity in binding to HLA-B*57:01 and not to closely related allotypes with polymorphisms in the C, D, E, or F pockets. It will be interesting to learn whether this represents a general mechanism for HLA-linked drug reactions applicable to other small molecule drugs that might bind specifically to HLA antigen-binding clefts. HLA testing before administration of these drugs is now recommended by many physicians and the U.S. Food and Drug Administration in order to avoid life-threatening ADRs.[273,288] The very high relative risks of abacavir, carbamazepine, and allopurinol ADRs and HLA class I allotypes suggests a very high level of specificity in HLA binding, either directly or through a drug-peptide conjugate(s) that only binds the associated HLA allotype. Interestingly, such high relative risks are not commonplace in HLA allotypes and protective immunity, perhaps because it is unusual for any single determinant or HLA allotype to control protective phenotypes.

In addition to recent progress in recognizing *Mhc* associations with adverse reactions to small molecule drugs and a variety of autoimmune and immune deficiency conditions, further analysis has identified relationships of HLA-linked markers with susceptibility and prognosis in a number of infectious diseases. Among the most striking has been the recognition that delayed progression of human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) infection to acquired immunodeficiency syndrome correlates with possession of HLA alleles that express a molecule with a "HLA-Bw4 motif" (see Table 21.2) containing isoleucine at position 80 along with a gene for the NK-cell receptor KIR3DS1. This observation suggested that KIR3DS1 offered protection early in HIV infection for those patients bearing the appropriate Bw4 allele.[289] More recent observations indicate that patients with such a KIR3DS1/B*04 ile80 genotype also exhibit resistance to late opportunistic infections.[290] Other studies now show that particular *HLA-DRB* alleles as well as *MHC-I* alleles significantly influence hepatitis B and C virus susceptibility, persistence, and response to treatment.[291–293]

Mutations in the *H2* Region

The rapid pace of improvements in deriving mouse and other models for genetic disease based on the engineering of transgenic, targeted deletion and mutation, and conditional knockout mice emphasizes the importance of understanding the valuable reservoir of *Mhc-I* and *Mhc-II* mutants originally derived by laborious methods and still available for precise studies of the role of the *Mhc* in immune responses. Mutations at the *H2* locus have been identified in animals screened by skin grafting in extensive experiments carried out over a 25-year period.[294,295] By grafting tail skin of siblings to and from each other, spontaneous or induced mutant animals that displayed either "gain," "loss," or "gain plus loss" transplantation phenotype were identified. Gain mutants are those that express a new transplantation antigen—thus their skin is rejected by their nonmutant siblings; loss mutants have lost a transplantation antigen—thus they recognize the skin of their siblings as foreign and reject that graft. Gain plus loss mutations give effects in both directions—they reject the skin of their siblings, and their skin is rejected by their siblings as well. In classic studies, Melvold, Kohn, and colleagues screened a large number of mouse progeny.[294,295] Homozygous inbred and F1 animals were examined, yielding a total of 25 *H2* mutations identified at *K*, *D*, *L*, and *Ab* loci, and an additional 80 mutations of non-*H2* histocompatibility genes. Although earlier studies suggested that all *H2* genes might be hypermutable, a more complete retrospective evaluation of the available data suggests that with the exception only of the *H2-K*^{b} gene, the spontaneous mutation rate for *H2* genes was comparable to that for non-*H2* genes. The characterization of these mutant animals, first based on peptide maps and amino acid sequences of the H2 proteins,[296–298] and later based on the nucleotide sequences of the cloned complementary DNAs or genes,[159] provided some of the basic biochemical information on which further studies of structure and function and mechanism of gene evolution were based. X-ray structure determination of the H2-K^{bm1} and H2-K^{bm8} mutant proteins suggests explanations for the differences in T-cell recognition that result from what might appear to be subtle amino acid substitutions.[165]

Control of Expression of MHC Molecules

MHC molecules, synthesized in the ER and destined for cell surface expression, are controlled at many checkpoints before their final disposition as receptors available for interaction with either T cells or NK cells. The classical MHC-I molecules are trimers, consisting of the polymorphic H2 or HLA heavy chain, the light chain β2m, and the assembled self-peptide. Thus, the cell surface expression of the assembled trimer may be reduced by a defect in the synthesis, steady state, or assembly of any of these requisite protein/peptide chains. The first level of MHC-I expression control is transcriptional; interferon-γ–dependent regulation is particularly important.[299] For the most part, MHC-I molecules are ubiquitously expressed. Their expression is dependent on a complex regulatory process that coordinately controls the transcription of both MHC-I and β2m.[300,301] The basis of the

more limited tissue specific expression of MHC-Ib molecules is of interest because of the potential importance in the role of some of the MHC-Ib molecules in tolerance to the placenta. HLA-E and HLA-G, expressed on placenta, and HLA-F, another MHC-Ib with limited tissue specific expression, have been examined in considerable detail.[116,302–305] Another critical level of control of MHC-I expression is genetic, that is, the genes for a particular chain or key components of the PLC must be present for the trimer to be assembled and then expressed at the cell surface. A decrease in heavy chain synthesis as a result of a structural mutation in a coding (such as HLA-A*30:14L [see Table 21.1]) or in a noncoding region (such as HLA-A*24:02:01:02L) would reveal the simplest level of control. In addition, the light chain is absolutely required for cell surface expression of most MHC-I molecules. Deficiency of β2m in various tumors is a relatively common occurrence.[306–308] Induced β2m defective animals (*B2m*$^{o/o}$, "β2m knockouts") lack normal levels of MHC-I expression because of this requirement for cell surface expression.[309,310] In addition, polymorphism of the MHC-I heavy chain may influence the efficiency with which the molecule can interact with the PLC or with which it binds self-peptides, and thus some alleles, because of a decreased ability to be loaded with self-peptides, may not be well expressed at the surface. The rest of the MHC-I biosynthetic pathway is dependent on proper generation of cytosolic peptides by the proteasome and delivery to the ER by TAP, appropriate core glycosylation in the ER, transport through the Golgi, and arrival at the plasma membrane.[311] A number of persistent viruses have evolved mechanisms for subverting this pathway of expression.[312] The herpes simplex virus encodes a protein, infected cell peptide 47,[313–315] that blocks the activity of the peptide transporter TAP.[316] Cowpox virus encodes two proteins, CPXV12 and CPXV203, which contribute to the downregulation of host MHC-I, CPXV12 inhibits TAP, and CPXV203 retains MHC-I in the ER.[317,318] The human disease bare lymphocyte syndrome, type I, manifested by chronic lung disease in late childhood, results from genetic lesions in either TAP1, TAP2, or tapasin, also known as TAP-binding protein.[93,319–323] Several proteins encoded by the human CMV, unique short region proteins 2 and 11 (US2 and US11), cause rapid protein degradation of MHC-I molecules.[324] Murine CMV encodes an MHC-I-like protein, m152/gp40, which inhibits MHC-I expression by diverting MHC-I molecules to rapid degradation in the endosome.[325,326]

Other molecules that assist the large DNA viruses in evading either the T-cell or NK-cell immune response include human CMV UL142.[327] Murine CMV[328] encodes a number of open reading frames considered MHC-I homologues that may function to deceive NK cells into the perception of normal MHC-I expression.[2,329–331] The adenovirus 2 protein, E3/19K, also functions to block the transfer of folded assembled MHC-I molecules from the ER to the Golgi.[332–335]

MHC-II molecules are also susceptible to regulation at multiple steps. The clear-cut tissue dependence of MHC-II expression—MHC-II molecules are generally found on cells, which have specific antigen presentation functions such as macrophages, dendritic cells, Langerhans cells, thymic epithelial cells, and B cells, but can also be detected on activated T cells of the human and rat—suggests that transcriptional regulation plays an important role. Extensive studies of the promoter activities of *Mhc-II* genes have defined a number of specific transcriptional regulatory sequences.[336] One transcription factor, MHC class II transcriptional activator (CIITA) is clearly crucial.[300,336–338] The expression of CIITA is regulated in a complex fashion, possessing at least three distinct promoters that function in a cell type–specific manner.[339] MHC-II deficiency diseases categorized as bare lymphocyte syndrome, type II, result from lesions in at least four different complementation groups, implicating defects in CIITA, RFX5, RFXAP, or RFXANK, all encoding proteins regulating MHC-II transcription.[338,340–344] Polymorphisms in MHC-II and the resulting differences in tissue and lineage-specific expression of MHC-II suggest a role in the control of autoimmune disease.[145,345–347]

A unique aspect of MHC-II regulation is the need to protect its peptide-binding site from loading with self-peptides in the ER and the requirement to traffic to an acidic endosomal compartment where antigenic peptides, the products of proteolytic digestion of exogenous proteins, can be obtained. These two functions are controlled by the type II membrane protein, invariant chain, Ii,[30,348–350] which forms a nine subunit complex consisting of three Ii and three αβ MHC-II heterodimers. The region of Ii that protects the MHC-II peptide-binding groove, the class II-associated invariant chain peptide (CLIP), is progressively trimmed from Ii and is ultimately released from the MHC-II by the catalytic action of HLA-DM in the endosome to allow exchange for peptides generated there. HLA-DO, another MHC-II–like molecule, regulates the repertoire of bound peptides, presumably by modulating the catalytic activity of the DM exchange reaction. The important role of Ii in regulating MHC-II expression has been emphasized by the behavior of induced mutant mice lacking normal Ii[351–353] that exhibit a profound defect in MHC-II function and expression.

STRUCTURE OF MHC AND MHC–LIKE MOLECULES

"There is nothing that living things do that cannot be understood from the point of view that they are made of atoms acting according to the laws of physics."

—Richard Feynman[354]

"Love hides in molecular structures, yeah,
Love is the answer."

—Jim Morrison[355]

So central are *Mhc* genes and their encoded molecules to both the regulation and the effector function of the immune system that it has been apparent almost since their discovery that an understanding of their structure and structural interactions would be fundamental to a comprehension of their physiologic effects. Structural relationships of MHC molecules came first from understanding serologic differences, then from analysis of cellular immune responses, and subsequently from biochemical studies of the MHC-I and MHC-II chains. Amino acid sequence comparisons

suggested a domain structure for the MHC-I molecules, and an exon/domain correspondence was apparent with the initial identification of genomic and complementary DNA clones.[356] Shortly thereafter, a large number of sequences were determined leading to their alignment and comparison. Databases of these sequences are maintained and updated as indicated in previous sections of this chapter, and searches of standard sequence databases may find *Mhc* gene and protein sequences of numerous species. Expression of recombinant clones encoding MHC molecules in several systems: mammalian cells, insect cells, and bacteria, then permitted the accumulation and purification of molecules for functional, binding and ultimately x-ray structural studies.

A current search of the protein data bank (www.rcsb.org/pdb) for the keyword "histocompatibility" yields three-dimensional coordinates of more than 500 MHC/peptide, MHC/peptide/TCR, MHC/peptide/coreceptor, and MHC/peptide/NK receptor complexes that allow an understanding of the function of these molecules in a detailed structural context.[357] However, these structures also pose a number of questions that may only be addressed by additional functional experiments in whole animals complemented by biophysical methods applied in vitro. The molecular biologic, functional, and structural studies have led to the development of the use of MHC multimers as extremely powerful tools for imaging specific T cells or NK cells. The goal of this section of this chapter is to summarize these developments with an eye toward explanation of function by structure and in hopes of revealing some of the current quandaries that continue to confound our understanding of the function of the *Mhc*.

Amino Acid Sequences—Primary Structure

Before the cloning of *Mhc* genes, the biochemical purification and amino acid sequence determination of the HLA-A2, HLA-B7, and H2-K^b MHC-I molecules[358,359] indicated that the MHC molecules had unique amino terminal "domains" and showed similarities to Igs in their membrane proximal regions. Early concerns were to identify the differences between allelic gene products as well as the differences between MHC proteins encoded at different loci. With the cloning of complementary DNAs and genomic clones for MHC-I molecules[156,360–362] and shortly thereafter for MHC-II molecules,[151,363–365] the encoded amino acid sequences of a large number of MHC molecules of a number of species quickly became available. The comparison of gene and complementary DNA sequences gave an indication of the exon/intron organization of the genes and explained the evolution of the MHC molecules as having been derived from primordial single domain structures of a unit size of a single Ig-domain (such as the light chain β2m) that duplicated to form the basic unit of the MHC-II chain (two extracellular domains) and the MHC-I chain (three extracellular domains).[129] The canonical MHC-I molecule has a heavy chain (also known as the α chain), which is an intrinsic type I integral membrane protein with amino terminal domains called α1, α2, and α3, is embedded in the cell membrane by a hydrophobic transmembrane domain and extends into the cytoplasm of the cell with a short carboxyl-terminal tail. The light chain of the MHC-I molecule, β2m, is a single domain soluble molecule that is encoded elsewhere in the genome.

The MHC-II molecule consists of two chains embedded in the membrane as type I proteins, an α chain and a β chain. The α and β chains both consist of two major extracellular domains, α1 and α2, and β1 and β2, respectively, each linked to a transmembrane domain and cytoplasmic sequences. An initial analysis of both MHC-I and MHC-II molecules suggests that they are noncovalently assembled heterodimers consisting of four extracellular domains, the two membrane proximal domains (α3 and β2m for MHC-I and α2 and β2 for MHC-II) of each molecule are Ig-like, while the two amino terminal domains (α1 and α2 of MHC-I and α1 and β1 of MHC-II) possess what is known as the MHC-fold. The α1 domains of both MHC-I and MHC-II lack the intradomain disulfide bond characteristic of the other extracellular domains. The cytoplasmic domain of MHC-I molecules can be regulated by splicing and differential phosphorylation or other modification, and is likely to play a role in cell surface stability and cycling between the cell surface and other intracellular compartments.[366–372] However, analysis of directed mutants of MHC-I in some systems indicates that the cytoplasmic domain is not required for cytoskeletal association or surface recycling.[373] (The cytoplasmic domain of MHC-I molecules is the target for the Nef protein of HIV, and the Nef/MHC interaction results in MHC-I downregulation in HIV-infected cells.[374,375] The MHC-II transmembrane and cytoplasmic domains have clear effects on the level of cell surface expression, the efficiency of antigen presentation, and the rate of lateral diffusion of the molecules in the cell membrane.[376,377] Single particle tracking of MHC-II molecules indicates that such lateral diffusion is governed, at least in part, by interaction with the actin-based membrane skeleton.[378] Amino acid sequence alignments of MHC-I and MHC-II proteins, particularly of the human molecules, are available in a number of databases such as www.ebi.ac.uk/imgt/hla/ and http://www.ebi.ac.uk/ipd/mhc/.

Identification of Peptides Bound by MHC Molecules

Although initial understanding of MHC molecules indicated that they are heterodimers, a complete understanding of their structure and resulting function requires the appreciation that they are, in fact, heterotrimers, in which the third component is a short peptide ranging from eight to roughly 15 amino acids in length. This characteristic of mature MHC-I and MHC-II molecules makes them a unique class of protein molecules because an integral part of their peptide composition and resulting structure derive from a heterogeneous array of peptides delivered to the assembling molecules during their maturation. Many different lines of evidence coalesced over a short period of time to demonstrate that MHC molecules function by binding peptides. From functional experiments, MHC-II–restricted T-cell responses to protein antigens were shown to be dependent on peptide fragments.[379] The first direct evidence of MHC/peptide interactions was that purified MHC-II proteins could

bind synthetic peptides in a specific, saturable, and stable manner[380,381] with measurable affinity and a remarkably slow dissociation rate.[381] For MHC-I molecules, the results were at first less clear, but the realization that some cell lines defective in MHC-I surface expression could be induced to express higher levels of surface MHC-I molecules by exposure to the appropriate peptides[382] led the way for direct measurement of MHC-I peptide binding.[383]

Several laboratories succeeded in developing methods for the partial purification and identification of the peptides that copurified with MHC molecules. A viral, antigenic peptide was identified bound to the MHC-I molecule H2-K^b by recovering MHC molecules from virus infected cells, fractionating the bound peptides chromatographically, identifying a peak of functional biologic activity in a cytotoxic T-cell assay, and determining the amino acid sequence of the recovered peptide by radiochemical techniques.[384] Another method that was applied to the identification of both virus-derived peptides as well as the "motif" of self-peptides by particular MHC-I molecules involved first the isolation of a large amount of detergent solubilized MHC-I using appropriate antibodies, the elution of the bound peptides, their partial purification as pools by reverse phase high pressure liquid chromatography, and the determination of the amino acid sequence of the bound peptides by classic amino terminal sequencing.[385–387] The unpredicted and surprising result obtained from these studies of MHC-I–derived peptides was that specific amino acid residues were favored at particular positions of the sequence, depending on the MHC-I molecule from which the peptides were obtained, and that the length of the bound peptides was well defined and short, ranging from 8 to 10 amino acids. From such experiments, a number of peptide "motifs" of peptides bound to particular MHC-I molecules and allelic products were identified. Often, specific amino acids were identified at particular Edman degradation steps, indicating a common, highly preferred residue at the same spacing from the amino terminus of the peptide. Thus, the peptide "motif" could be determined even from heterogeneous pools of peptides eluted from particular MHC-I molecules. Further refinements in methodology have included the application of mass spectrometry to the identification and sequencing of individual peptides.[388,389] Alternative approaches for identifying peptide motifs include the use of soluble analogs of MHC-I molecules to ease the purification[390,391] or the use of peptide display libraries to identify those peptides that can bind the MHC.[392,393] With steady improvements in technology, including the use of transfected soluble versions of MHC-I molecules, immunoaffinity purification of the MHC-I molecules of interest, tandem reverse phase high pressure liquid chromatography and further identification and sequencing by tandem mass spectrometry, particularly MHC-I motifs, as well as tumor antigen peptides, may now be identified routinely.[394] A summary of MHC-I peptide motifs is given in Table 21.9. Regularly maintained online databases of MHC-I peptide motifs may be found at several sites (www.imtech.res.in/raghava/mhcbn/links.html and www.syfpeithi.de).[395] Antigenic peptides that represent those observed as tumor antigens

TABLE 21.9 Peptide-Binding Motifs for Some MHC Class I Molecules[a]

Position	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9 (or C-term)
MHC-I molecule									
HLA-A*01		(T)	D				(L)		Y
HLA-A*02:01		L(M)				(V)			V(L)
HLA-A*03		L(V,M)	(F,Y)			(I,M,F,V,L)	(I,L,M,F)		K,Y,F
HLA-B*07		P	(R)						L,F
HLA-B*08:01			K		K,R				L
HLA-B*27:05		R							L,F (Y,R,H,K)
HLA-B*35:01		P							Y,F,M,L,I
HLA-B*53:01		P							W,F,L
H2-K^b			Y		F (Y)			L (M,I,V)	*prefers 8-mers
H2-D^b					N				M(I,L)
H2-K^d		Y(F)							I(L,V)
H2-D^d		G	P		(R)				I(L,F)
H2-L^d		P,S							F,L,M
H2-K^k		E						I(V)	*prefers 8-mers
H2-D^k	Motif uncertain	(R)							
Qa-2		(M,L,Q)	(N,I,L)		(V,I)	(K,M,I)	H		L,I,F
H2-M3	formyl-M								
RT1.A1		(A,S,V)	F,Y						Y,F,L,M

[a] Peptide-binding motifs for the indicated MHC class I molecules are shown in the single amino acid code. Position refers to the amino acid position of the peptide from the amino terminus. Only the most common residues are shown. Assignments in parenthesis are less common than the others. These motifs are taken from the more extensive summary of www.syfpeithi.de/, www.imtech.res.in/raghava/mhcbn/links.html, and Biddison and Martin.[562] Full sequences of proteins may be queried for MHC peptides presented by particular alleles with http://bimas.dcrt.nih.gov/molbio/hla_bind/, www.immuneepitope.org/, or www.mpiib-berlin.mpg.de/MAPPP/expertquery.html.

HLA, human leukocyte antigen; MHC, major histocompatibility complex.

and available for recognition by T cells are summarized at www.cancerimmunity.org/peptidedatabase/differentiation.htm. In addition, the immune epitope database (www.immuneepitope.org)[396] offers a regularly updated and curated Web site that describes MHC motifs, allows evaluation of new proteins for MHC epitopes, and provides new computational tools for such evaluation. An algorithm that allows the prediction of candidates for MHC-I–restricted peptides based on the amino acid sequence of the protein of interest is also available (www-bimas.cit.nih.gov/molbio/hla_bind/).[397] The distinction between "motif" residues of an MHC-restricted peptide and "anchor" residues is an important one. Motif refers to those amino acid residues that are identified based on the sequences of self-peptide or antigenic peptides that have been demonstrated to bind or copurify with a particular MHC molecule. Anchor implies a biophysical function of the particular amino acid residue as specifically interacting with a particular part of the MHC molecule itself. The designation of a residue as an anchor residue may be inferred by analysis of binding to peptide variants in the context of the parental peptide. Alternatively, anchors can be defined from a knowledge of the x-ray structure of the peptide complexed to the MHC-I molecule, and predictions of likely peptide motifs for MHC molecules whose sequence is known but whose structure has not yet been determined can be made by comparison to known structures.

The identification of MHC-II–bound self-peptide-or antigenic peptides by biochemical methods similar to those employed for MHC-I molecules has been proved more difficult because the MHC-II molecules do not have the rigorous requirements for a defined amino terminus or restricted length. Whereas MHC-I molecules bind peptides with a particular motif residue at a specific position as defined by the amino terminus, resulting in the ability to identify the dominant residue at a particular step in the Edman degradation even amidst a pool of peptides, MHC-II molecules bind peptides with "ragged ends," and little information is obtained from the standard methods of sequencing of pools of peptides.[398–401] Thus, more precise fractionation of the peptides released from purified MHC-II molecules is required. Identification of MHC-II/peptide-binding motifs by bacteriophage display is also possible.[402] In accord with the view that MHC-II molecules present peptides derived from an "outside in" pathway, many of the peptides that copurify with MHC-II molecules represent molecules derived from the extracellular milieu or the medium in which the cells were grown. Analysis of MHC-II/peptide complexes with cloned T cells and monoclonal antibodies with MHC/peptide specificity reveals that, in part because of the ability of MHC-II molecules to accommodate peptides with extensions at their amino and carboxyl-termini, and in part because of the smaller role that anchor residues seem to play in peptide binding by MHC-II molecules, occasionally even a unique peptide can bind a particular MHC-II molecule in more than one frame.[403–406] As a result of structural studies (summarized in the following) and compilation of sequences of those peptides bound by particular MHC-II molecules, the general conclusion is that MHC-II molecules all have binding pockets identifiable for the particular allelic product. For some alleles, such as HLA-DR1 and IA^d, these pockets are spaced at position P1, P4, P6, and P9 (or i, i + 3, i + 5, i + 9). (Some analyses, borne out in part by structural studies, suggest that a pocket at P7 [i + 6] may also contribute to the energy of binding.) Because of the complexity and potential degeneracy of peptide motifs for MHC-II molecules, more elaborate schemes have been devised for predicting those peptides that may bind to particular MHC-II molecules.[407] A summary of identified peptide-binding motifs for MHC-II molecules is in Table 21.10, but for some alleles, the analysis of MHC-II binding peptides is not straightforward and demands sophisticated algorithms for identifying potential antigenic peptides from new proteins. The site www.imtech.res.in/raghava/mhcbn/links.html tabulates a number of links to various servers for predicting likely peptide epitopes for particular MHC-I and MHC-II molecules. Implicit in the description of MHC-I and MHC-II peptide motifs is that the bound peptides bind to the MHC molecule only in an amino to carboxyl-terminal orientation, that is, that all peptides

TABLE 21.10 Peptide-Binding Motifs for Some MHC Class II Molecules[a]

Position	i (P1)	i + 1	i + 2	i + 3 (P4)	i + 4	i + 5 (P6)	i + 6	i + 7	i + 8 (P9)
Allele									
DRB1*01:01	YVLFIAMW			LAIVMNQ		AGSTCP			LAIVNFY
DRB1*03:01	LIFMV			D		KREQN			YLF
DRB1*04:01	FYWILVM			PWILVADE		STQHR	DEHKNQR..		DEHKNQR..
DRB1*04:05	FYWVILM			VILMDE		NSTQKD			DEQ
DQA1*05:01/B1*03:01	WYAVM			A		AIVTS			QN
H2-IA^b (undefined)									
H2-IA^d	STYEVWMLI..			VLIA		AV			
H2-IA^{g7}	KHSAV			L		VA			DSE
H2-IA^k	DN			IVLN		EQ			
H2-IA^s (undefined)									
H2-IE^b	WFYILV			LIFSA		QNASTHRE			KR
H2-IE^d	WFYILV			KRIV		ILVG			KR
H2-IE^{g7}	ILVFWM			DESMV		QNASTED			RKMF

[a] Major histocompatibility complex class II peptide-binding motifs are summarized from those of Biddison and Martin[562] and www.syfpeithi.de/home.htm.

bound to MHC molecules bind with the amino terminus at the lefthand side of the peptide-binding groove, in the canonical structural representation that will be described in further detail subsequently. However, a recent analysis employing both x-ray crystallography and nuclear magnetic resonance indicates that the CLIP peptide may undergo orientational inversion, binding dynamically in the carboxyl to amino as well as the amino to carboxyl direction.[408]

High-Resolution Structures

MHC-I Molecules

A most graphic description of the relationship of form to function of the MHC molecules was made by Bjorkman et al.[409,410] who determined the three-dimensional structure of the human MHC-I molecule, HLA-A*02:01, by x-ray crystallography. For these studies, the extracellular, soluble portion of the type I membrane-associated molecule was purified by papain cleavage from the surface of tissue culture cells. At the time, there was not a clear appreciation of the role of peptide either in the assembly of the molecule or of the nature of the recognition of the MHC molecule by TCRs or, for that matter, NK receptors. Despite the fact that the first purified HLA-A2 molecules possessed a heterogeneous mixture of bound peptides, protein from these preparations crystallized readily, and electron density maps calculated from the diffraction data were interpretable, allowing modelling of the backbone molecular structure. The most important insight in the interpretation of the derived electron density map was that part of the electron density, and thus part of the structure, was due to this mixture of peptides bound tightly by the molecule, and that this density could not be modeled based on the known amino acid sequence of HLA-A2.

This first MHC-I structure clarified several important aspects of the mechanism by which the MHC-I molecule carries out its peptide binding function. The amino terminal domains (α1 and α2) form a unitary binding site for peptide. This domain unit (also called a "superdomain") consists of a floor of eight strands of antiparallel β-pleated sheet that supports two α-helices, one contributed from the α1 domain and one from the α2 domain, aligned in an antiparallel orientation. The membrane proximal α3 domain has an Ig C-type fold and pairs asymmetrically with the other Ig domain of the molecule contributed by β2m. The nature of recognition by T-cells was suggested by comparing the location of those amino acid residues that had been characterized as being strong elements in T-cell recognition, residues that distinguished closely related allelic gene products, and amino acid residues that had been identified as those that were responsible for the transplant rejection of the mutants of the *H2-K*^{b} series.[409] Amino acid residues of the MHC-I molecule responsible for T-cell recognition were clearly classified into one of two categories or an overlapping set: those residues that were "on the top of the molecule," exposed to solvent and available for direct interaction with the TCR, and those residues whose side chains pointed into the peptide binding groove and might be considered crucial in the peptide-binding specificity of the particular MHC molecule. The original publications, based on a structure determined to a resolution of 3.5 Å, focused mainly on the general structural outline of the molecule. More recently, structures of a wide variety of MHC-I molecules of different species including human, mouse, rat, and chicken, complexed with specific peptides, have been determined. Ribbon diagrams of HLA-A2 as seen from the side (Fig. 21.6A) and from the top (Fig. 21.6B), complexed with a unique synthetic peptide, indicate the design of the entire molecule: the peptide-binding site is supported by the β-sheet floor, and the floor in turn is supported by the two Ig-like domains, the α3 domain of the heavy chain and the β2m light chain. (In the canonical view of the MHC-I, HLA-A2 molecule shown in Fig. 21.6B through D, the amino terminal residue of the bound peptide lies to the left, and the carboxyl terminal residue lies to the right.)

The comparison of this structure with that of the closely related human MHC-I molecule, HLA-A*68:01 (see Table 21.2), suggested that surface depressions in the groove of the MHC-I molecule, now designated pockets A through F, would be available for interactions with some of the side chains of the bound peptide.[411,412] These six pockets are illustrated in Fig. 21.6C and with bound peptide in Fig. 21.6D. Concomitant with the determination of the x-ray structure of the human MHC-I molecule, HLA-B*27:05,[413,414] the motif of the peptides that were recovered from this molecule was determined, permitting the more precise modeling of the bound peptide in the cleft of the MHC-I. For HLA-B27, this was of particular interest because the bound peptides had a strong overrepresentation of arginine at position 2,

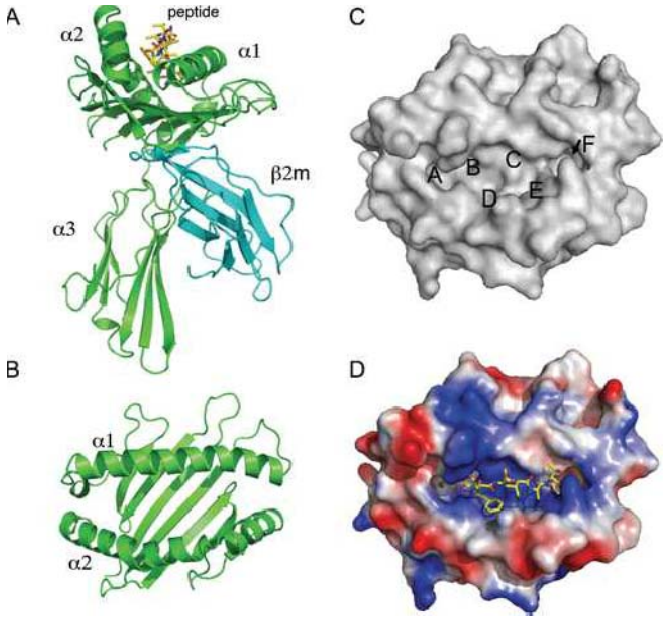


FIG. 21.6. Structure of HLA-A*02:01. **A:** Ribbon representation of HLA-A2 heavy chain *(green)*, β2m light chain *(cyan)*, and bound peptide *(yellow)*. **B:** Ribbon representation of the peptide-binding groove. **C:** Surface representation of the binding groove with pockets labeled. **D:** Surface representation of binding groove colored by electrostatic charge (*red*, acidic; *blue*, basic) with peptide shown in stick illustration. Figure generated from protein data bank[559] structure 2BSV using PyMOL.[560]

and scrutiny of the HLA-B27 structure suggested that the amino acid residues lining the B pocket, particularly glutamic acid at position 45 as well as cysteine 67, were complementary to the long, positively charged arginine side chain of the peptide amino acid at that position. Structural studies supported a view of MHC-I/peptide binding in which the side chain of the carboxyl-terminal residue of the bound peptide sits deep in the F pocket. In addition, the amino terminal amino group of the peptide forms hydrogen bonds with the hydroxyl groups of conserved amino acids tyrosine 59 and tyrosine 171 that line the A pocket. A hydrogen bond from the amino group of conserved tryptophan 147 to the backbone carbonyl oxygen of the penultimate peptide amino acid (usually position 8) also seems important, as do charge interactions and hydrogen bonds of the free carboxyl group at the carboxyl terminus of the peptide with tyrosine 84, threonine 143, and lysine 146.

Other structures of MHC-I molecules were determined involving complexes produced with homogeneous peptide, assembled either in vitro from bacterially expressed proteins with synthetic peptide[415] or exploiting MHC proteins expressed in insect cells.[416,417] The structures determined with homogeneous peptide confirmed the impression obtained from the structures obtained from molecules with heterogeneous self-peptides. Examination of the H2-K^b molecule complexed with synthetic, known antigenic peptides derived either from Sendai virus, vesicular stomatitis virus, or chicken ovalbumin revealed that the same MHC molecule can bind peptides of different sequence, length, and structure by virtue of their conserved motif residue side chains. Although small conformational changes of the MHC are detectable on binding the different peptides, the main distinction in the recognition of different peptides bound by the same MHC molecule is due to the location, context, size, and charge of amino acid side chains that are anchored in the MHC pockets. Conversely, solvent-exposed side chains contribute to the unique structure of the surface of the molecule available for interaction with TCR and other receptors.

The most consistent rule learned from the first x-ray structures and complemented by peptide recovery and early binding studies was that the carboxyl-terminal amino acid side chain of the MHC-I–bound peptide was embedded in the F pocket. A recent study revealing that the MHC-I molecule H2-D^b binds a pentapeptide well anchored in the F pocket, but lacking amino terminal interactions, is consistent with this view.[418] However, other studies indicate that MHC-I molecules may bind longer peptides that extend beyond the residue anchored in the F pocket,[419] an observation confirmed by a crystallographic structure.[420] More recently, the lack of an absolute requirement for a free C-terminal amino acid has been exploited in the engineering of single chain molecules in which peptide, β2m, and the MHC-I heavy chain are covalently linked. These molecules have unusual thermal stability and are effective MHC/peptide immunogens.[421] An additional variation on the theme of MHC–I binding peptides based on particular anchor residues includes the demonstration that glycopeptides, bound to MHC-I via amino acid side chains and termini, can expose their carbohydrate moieties to solvent and be available for TCR interaction.[422–424] An example of a 13-residue peptide bound to its MHC-I–presenting element, the rat MHC-I molecule, RT1-Aa, was crystallized and shown to produce a peptide/MHC complex with a large central bulge. Two different complexes consisting of the same MHC and peptide reveal significantly different conformations in this central bulge region.[425] "Bulged" viral peptides have also been characterized in complex with human MHC-I structures of HLA-B35 allotypes complexed with 13-mer and 11-mer peptides.[426,427] TCR recognition of such bulged peptides can involve conformational adjustments of the TCR in recognizing a fairly rigid peptide[426] or "crumplings" of the bound peptide by a largely rigid face of the TCR upon binding the MHC-I/peptide complex.[428] Another set of modified peptides that can be bound by MHC-I molecules and presented to TCR includes self-peptides modified by phosphorylation.[429,430] Although the fundamental topology of MHC-I structure and its interactions with antigenic peptide have been solved by the classic structures mentioned previously, many more MHC-I/peptide complexes have been studied crystallographically in order to define the details of particular interactions with antigenic peptides. A number of structures at a resolution of 1.40 Å or better have been deposited in the protein database. Structure determination of representative single-chain peptide-β2m-MHC-I,[431] and of MHC-I molecules containing photolabile peptides that can be exchanged with other peptides easily,[432] reinforce our basic understanding of the structure of MHC-I/peptide complexes.

MHC-II Molecules

Before any MHC-II structure had been determined experimentally, a model was constructed based on the alignment of amino acid sequences and the available MHC-I three-dimensional structure.[433] This model made several valid predictions that were borne out by the subsequent x-ray structure determination of HLA-DR1.[434] MHC-II clearly showed similarity to MHC-I and formed its binding groove by the juxtaposition of the α1 and β1 domains. The position of the electron density representing the heterogeneous peptide that copurified with the HLA-DR1 was identified. Figure 21.7A and C show a ribbon diagram of HLA-DR1 with a homogeneous bound peptide. In comparison to the MHC-I structure (see Fig. 21.6), the peptides bound to the MHC-II molecule extend through the binding groove rather than being anchored at both ends.

A comparison of the α-carbon backbone of the peptide-binding region of an MHC-I structure with that of an MHC-II structure is shown in Figure 21.8. The structures are very similar although the binding domain is built of the α1 and α2 domains from the same chain (for MHC-I) or of the α1 and β1 domains that derive from two chains (for MHC-II). The location of polymorphic residues can be determined by variability plots based on multiple sequence alignments, as originally suggested by Wu and Kabat.[435] The current bioinformatics approach to variability prefers to calculate *Shannon entropy*, a function that describes the degree of unpredictability of an event.[436,437] For protein sequence

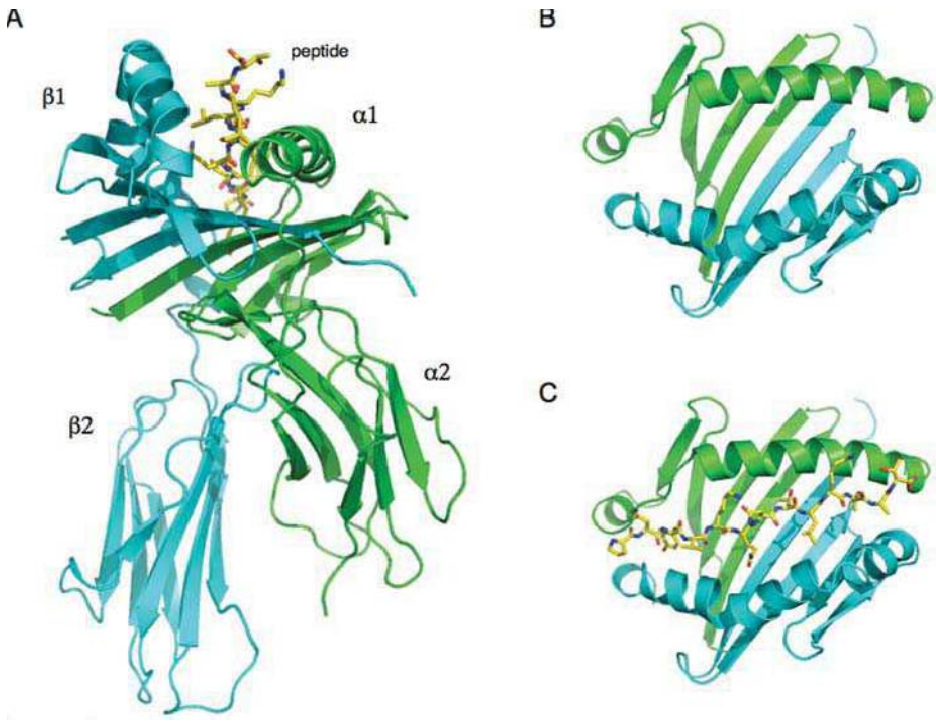


FIG. 21.7. Color Ribbon Representation of HLA-DR1. A: Side view. α chain is in *green;* β chain is in *blue;* peptide in stick representation in *yellow.* B: Top view. C: Top view with bound peptide (PKYVKQNTLKLAT) visualized. The illustration was made with PyMol[560] based on the protein data bank[559] coordinates of 1DLH.

alignments, Shannon entropy provides a sensitive measure of the diversity of particular amino acid positions.[438] Several online tools are available for implementing and displaying the results of such calculations (http://bio.dfci.harvard.edu/Tools/svs_help.html; http://imed.med.ucm.es/Tools/svs_help.html; and http://consurfdb.tau.ac.il/). Comparative ribbon diagrams (Fig. 21.9), in which the location of the amino acid residues that are polymorphic for the human MHC-I and MHC-II chains are indicated with a color map, show that the bulk of MHC polymorphism derives from amino acid variability in regions that line the peptide-binding groove. This suggests that MHC polymorphism is required to allow the MHC molecules, and as a result, the organism and its species, to respond to a changing antigenic environment.

As with MHC-I, a further understanding of the details of the interactions of peptides with the MHC-II molecule came from crystallographic studies of molecules prepared with

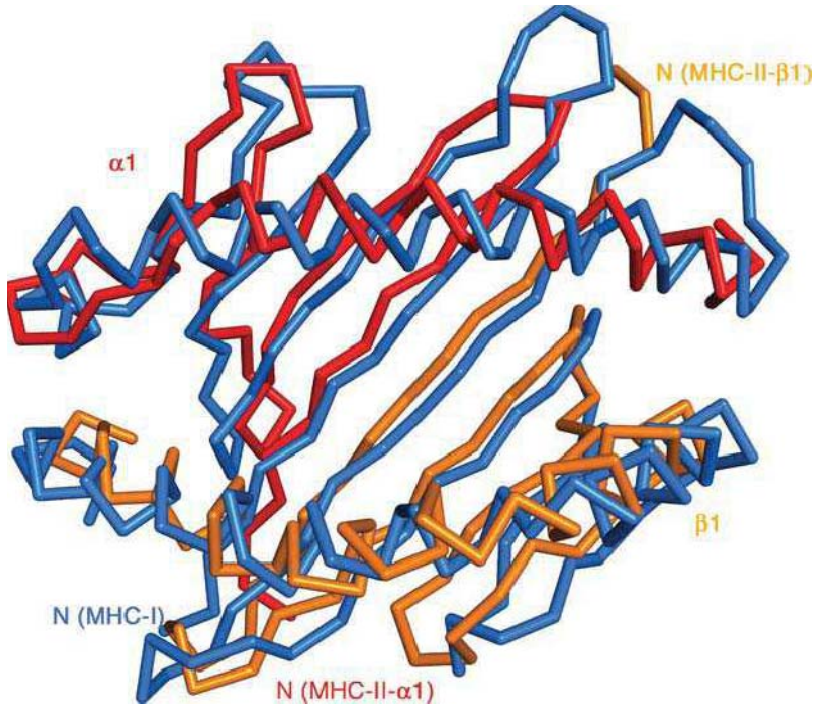


FIG. 21.8. Comparison of α-Carbon Backbone of MHC-I and MHC-II molecules. The α1α2 domains of MHC-I (human leukocyte antgien [HLA]-A2, PDB 3HLA) and the α1 and β1 domans of MHC-II (HLA-DR1, PDB 1DLH) were superposed with PyMOL[560] and displayed as a Cα carbon representation. MHC-I is *blue,* the α1 domain of MHC-II is *red,* and the β1 domain of MHC-II is *orange.*

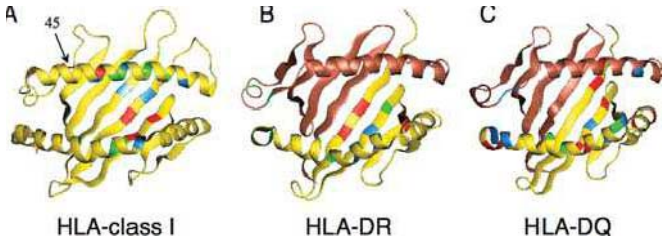


FIG. 21.9. Location of Polymorphic Amino Acid Residues in MHC-I and MHC-II molecules. Variability plots were calculated as described by Kabat and Wu[435] and level of variability illustrated on ribbon diagrams (generated in QUANTA 2000 [Accelrys] of 3HLA[412] [HLA-class I], 1DLH[439] [HLA-DR], and 1JK8 [HLA-DQ]) where greatest variability is *red*, intermediate is *green*, and least is *blue*.

homogeneous peptide—in the first case HLA-DR1 complexed with an antigenic peptide derived from the hemagglutinin of influenza virus.[439] Based on this structure, a set of pockets was initially designated, numbered for the peptide position that is bound. For the influenza peptide studied in this example, the major interactions were from peptide positions 1, 4, 6, 7, and 9 that are indicated in Figure 21.10. The deep P1 pocket accommodates the tyrosine (the third position of the peptide PKYVKQNTLKLAT) and the pockets indicated by 4, 6, 7, and 9 fit the Q, T, L, and L residues, respectively. MHC-II exploits a similar mode of binding as compared with MHC-I, but there are key differences. MHC-II lacks the requirement for free amino and carboxyl termini of the peptide, the peptide conformation is relatively extended (like that of a type II polyproline helix), and the MHC-II forms number of hydrogen bonds between conserved amino acids that line the binding cleft and the main chain (ie, amino nitrogen and carbonyl oxygen) atoms of the peptide. Although the pocket designations refer specifically to the features of the MHC-II molecule surface, occasionally the cognate peptide positions that reside in such pockets are given the same names.

Among the most provocative observations from the first MHC-II structures was that the molecule was visualized as a dimer of dimers, and this moved a number of investigators to consider the possibility that activation of the T cell via its receptor might require the dimerization or multimerization of the TCR, an event thought to be dependent on the propensity of the MHC/peptide complex to self-dimerize. The simple elegance of this dimer of dimers is illustrated in Figure 21.11. Several arguments support the dimerization hypothesis: the finding of a dimer of dimers in the crystals of HLA-DR that formed in several different space groups,[434,439] the observation that a TCR Vα domain formed tight dimers and in its crystals formed dimers of the dimers,[440] the demonstration of the ability to immunoprecipitate MHC-II dimers from B cells,[441] the apparent requirement for purified MHC-I dimers for stimulation of a T cell in an in vitro system,[442] and the finding that MHC-II/peptide/TCR complexes could form higher order multimers in solution as detected by quasi-elastic light scattering.[443] However, a number of strong counterarguments draw this hypothesis into question. Many MHC-II molecules other than HLA-DR1 that have been crystallized do not seem to form the same kind of

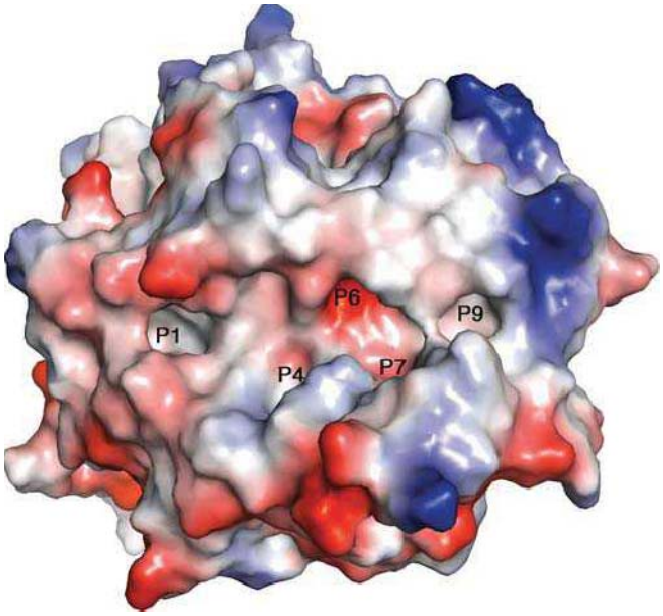


FIG. 21.10. Location of Pockets in HLA-DR1 Based on the Cocrystal of HLA-DR1 with a Peptide Derived from the Influenza Hemagglutinin. An electrostatic surface representation of HLA-DR1 (1DLH) generated in PyMOL[560] is shown with the positions of pockets P1, P4, P6, P7, and P9 indicated.

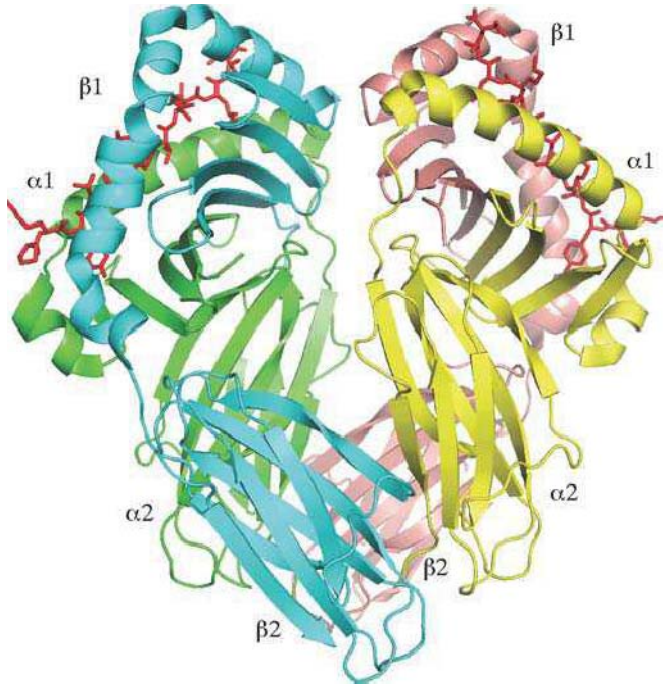


FIG. 21.11. Ribbon Diagram of the Structure of HLA-DR1 showing the dimer of dimers and the individual domains of the protein. α chains are in *green* and *yellow;* β chains are in *blue* and *salmon.* Peptide in stick representation is in *red.* The illustration was generated from PDB 1DLH with PyMOL.

dimer of dimers in their crystals.[444,445] Modes of MHC-II dimerization with distinct topology that would preclude simultaneous interaction with multiple TCRs on the same T cell have been observed. None of the MHC-I molecules that have been examined by x-ray crystallography show dimers in the same orientation as the MHC-II ones reported. A different Vα domain fails to dimerize even at high concentration.[446] Many reported x-ray structures of MHC/peptide/TCR complexes[447–450] fail to show dimerization. Despite the simple elegance of the dimer hypothesis, it is clear that additional experimentation will be required to understand the topologic requirements for T-cell activation through the αβ TCR.

Recent additions to the library of MHC-II structures include the I-A^{g7} molecule, a unique MHC-II that provides one link in the susceptibility to insulin-dependent diabetes in the mouse model.[451,452] Although the structure fails to provide direct evidence to explain the linkage to diabetes, it suggests that the novel repertoire of peptides bound by this MHC-II molecule reveals unique features of a wider peptide binding groove and resulting relatively low-affinity interaction with peptide. Until recently, all of the MHC-II/peptide structures revealed bound peptide in a canonical left to right, amino to carboxyl orientation. A detailed analysis of HLA-DR1 molecules bound to the CLIP 106 to 120 peptide revealed crystals in two different forms, which on solution and refinement indicated that this peptide could interact in either of two distinct orientations (Fig. 21.12).[408] This exception to the general rule of left to right, amino to carboxyl orientation, may reflect the unique role that the CLIP peptide must play in protecting the MHC-II–binding site while simultaneously being available for DM-mediated peptide exchange in the endosome.

MHC-Ib Molecules

H2-M3

To this point, our description of MHC-I molecules has focused on the classical MHC-Ia molecules, represented by HLA-A, HLA-B, and HLA-C in the human, and by H2-K, H2-D, and H2-L in the mouse. Several MHC-Ib molecules for which three-dimensional structures have been determined are of particular interest, the CD1 molecules,[453,454] H2-M3,[137,455] MICA,[456,457] FcRn,[458] and Rae-1.[459] Other molecules that are thought to show structural relatedness to the MHC-I fold but whose x-ray structures have not yet been reported include the stress-induced molecules H-60[173] and MULT1,[460] and the mucosally expressed MR1 molecule that selects invariant T cells in the gut.[461] H2-M3 is of particular note because of its ability to bind and present peptide antigens that contain amino terminal N-formyl groups. H2-M3 was originally identified as the MHC-Ib molecule that presents an endogenous peptide derived from the mitochondrially encoded protein ND1 known as maternally transmitted factor.[137,462] Thus, it was of interest to understand in structural terms how this molecule binds such N-formylated peptides.[455,463] The crystal structure of H2-M3 complexed with an N-formylated nonamer peptide, fMYFINILTL, revealed that the structure of the A pocket, highly conserved among MHC-Ia molecules, which have tyrosine 7, tyrosine 59, tyrosine 159, tryptophan 167, and tyrosine 171, is quite different so that it can accommodate the N-formyl group in the A pocket. In particular, H2-M3 has an A pocket reduced in size and lined by hydrophobic residues, leucine at 167 and phenylalanine at 171, and leucine 16. These structural features cause the amino terminal nitrogen of the formylated peptide to be positioned where the peptide position 2 amino nitrogen would lie in a MHC-Ia molecule. Thus, the unique peptide selectivity of H2-M3 is explained in structural terms.

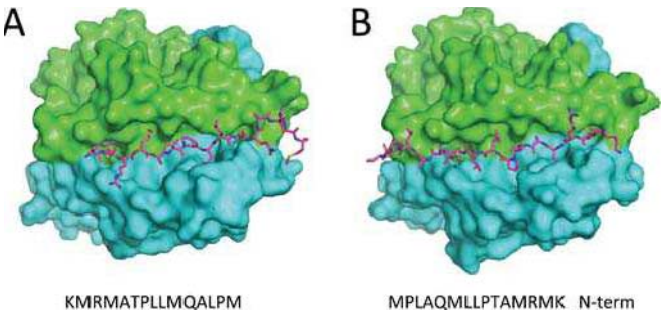


FIG. 21.12. MHC-II Binds Class II-Associated Invariant Chain Peptide in Either N to C or C to N Orientation. The structures of HLA-DR1 bound to the CLIP 106 to 120 peptide in either the N to C (A) or C to N (B) orientation is illustrated. α1 domain is in *green*; β1 domain is in *cyan*. Peptide sequences are shown at the bottom.

CD1

Another MHC-Ib molecule of great interest is CD1, representative of a class of MHC-I molecules that map outside of the MHC, that have limited tissue-specific expression, and that are capable of interaction with both αβ and γδ T cells.[464] In the human, there are two clearly distinct groups of CD1 molecules: one consisting of CD1a, CD1b, CD1c, and CD1e; and another of CD1d alone.[465] In the mouse and rat, only CD1d is expressed.[466] As a group, these are β2m–associated chains that bind hydrophobic antigens, primarily glycolipids, with the lipid moiety embedded in the CD1 heavy chain and the carbohydrate portion exposed to solvent. CD1a, CD1b, and CD1c are capable of binding and presenting various nonpeptidic mycobacterial cell wall components such as mycolic acid containing lipids and lipoarabinomannan lipoglycans.[467,468] NK T cells, a subset of αβ-TCR–bearing T cells, of independent lineage and defined by the expression of the NK1.1 marker, are restricted to CD1 recognition.[469] The crystal structures of both mouse and human CD1d1 have been determined,[453,470] revealing classic MHC-I structures with the basic protein fold and β2m association quite similar to that of the MHC-Ia molecules. Consistent with its apparent biologic function of binding hydrophobic lipid-containing molecules, its binding groove is somewhat narrower and deeper than that of either MHC-Ia molecules or MHC-II molecules. The backbone configuration of the α1α2 domain structure of CD1 is shown in Figure 21.13, where it is compared to the homologous region of H2-K^b, HLA-DR1, and another MHC-Ib molecule, a neonatal Fc receptor (FcRn). The structure of a number of CD1-glycolipid complexes

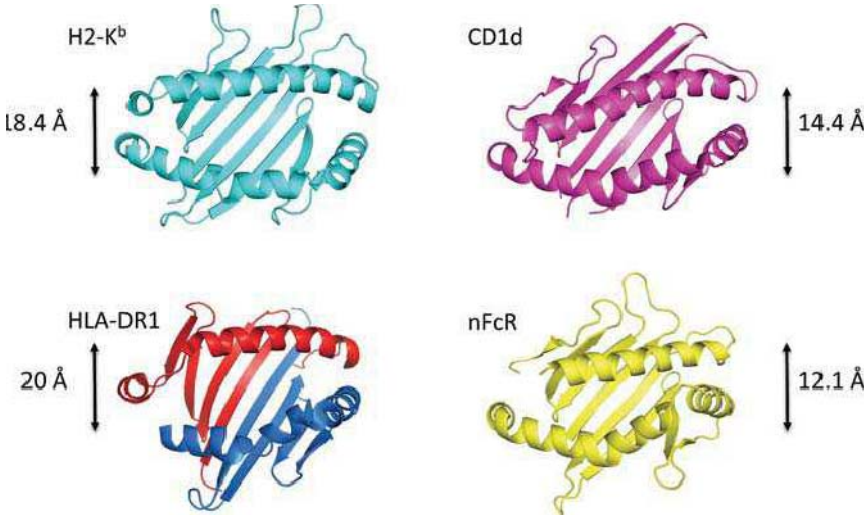


FIG. 21.13. Comparison of the Ribbon Representations and Size of the Potential Peptide-Binding Cleft. MHC-I molecule H2-K^b (2vaa), MHC-II HLA-DR1 (1DLH), and MHC-Ib molecules CD1d (1Z5L) and FcRn (1EXU) are compared. Approximate maximal distances separating the two helices are indicated.

have been determined, and human and mouse CD1 molecules bound to different glycolipids have been compared.[466] The depth of the groove of CD1 results from the merging of pockets to form what have been termed the *A' and F' pockets* in place of the MHC-Ia A through F pockets. This A' pocket is about the size of the binding site of a nonspecific lipid binding protein.

In an effort to understand more precisely how CD1 molecules bind lipid antigens, Gadola et al.[454] crystallized human CD1b complexed with either phosphatidylinositol or ganglioside GM2 and determined their x-ray structures. The structures were essentially identical for the CD1b heavy chain and β2m in the two complexes, and revealed a network of four hydrophobic channels at the core of the α1α2 domain, which accommodate four hydrocarbon chains of length from 11 to 22 carbon atoms. These channels are called A', C', and F' for the three analagous to the A, C, and F pockets of the MHC-Ia molecules, and a fourth, termed *T'* which is a distinct tunnel. Illustrations of the binding groove with the bound alkyl chains is shown in Figure 21.14, which shows views of the binding pockets of CD1a, b, and d with different ligands. These structures illustrate how the

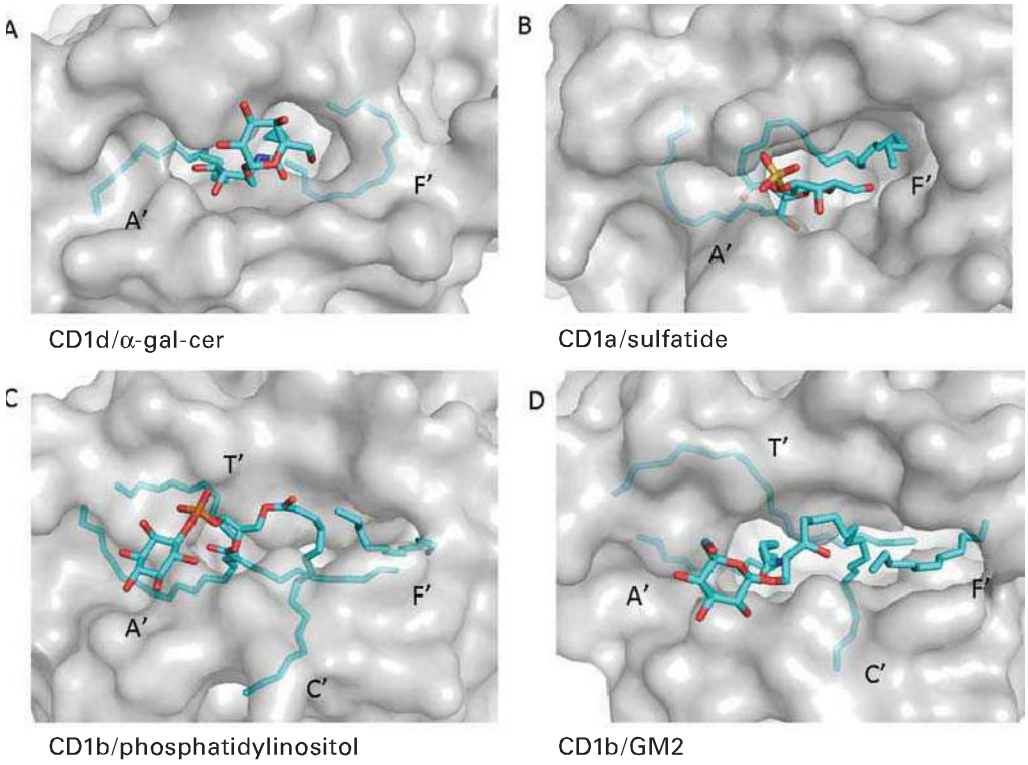


FIG. 21.14. Tunnels and Pockets of CD1 Molecules. Structures of (A) CD1d with α-galactosyl ceramide (1Z5L), (B) CD1a with sulfatide (1ONQ), (C) CD1b with phosphatidylinositol (1GZQ), and (D) CD1b with ganglioside GM2 are shown, with pockets A', C', and F' indicated and tunnel T'.

binding site of a classical MHC-I molecule may have evolved from (or to) the binding site of molecule like CD1 to provide antigen selectivity for a distinct set of molecules that would be common to a set of important mycobacterial pathogens. Complexes of CD1 with their cognate NK TCR have been reported and will be discussed subsequently.[471–474]

Neonatal Fc Receptor

Another example of an MHC-Ib molecule, noteworthy because it exemplifies a novel function of MHC molecules, is the FcRn. Originally described in the rat as a molecule of the intestinal epithelium that is involved in the transport of colostral Ig from the lumen to the bloodstream,[475,476] homologues in the mouse and human have also been described,[477–479] and the structure of the rat molecule has been determined crystallographically[458] (Fig. 21.15). As suggested by the amino acid sequence similarity of the FcRn to MHC-I proteins, the three-dimensional structure revealed considerable similarity to MHC-Ia molecules.[458] Specifically, α1 and α2 domains have similar topology to the MHC-I molecule, although, as discussed previously, what would be the peptide-binding groove in the MHC-Ia molecules is closed tightly and lacks space sufficient for a ligand. The most provocative feature of the structure of the FcRn/Fc complex is that the MHC-I–like FcRn interacts with the Fc through contacts from the α2 and β2m domains to interact with the Fc $C_\gamma2$-$C_\gamma3$ interface. As compared to the structure of the unliganded Fc, the complex reveals both conformational changes in the Fc and the presence of several titratable groups in the interface that must play a role in the pH-dependent binding and release of Ig molecules from the FcRn. The FcRn has taken the MHC-I fold and diverted its function for an interaction with the Fc of the Ig. Amino acids at what would classically be considered the "righthand side" of the peptide-binding groove make contact with the Fc interface that lies between $C_\gamma2$ and $C_\gamma3$ domains. The FcRn serves as an excellent example of similar structures in the immune system being diverted for alternate purpose. The importance of the FcRn has been underscored by observations of differences in the serum half-life of Ig in animals that, as a result of an induced deletion of β2m, lack the normal expression FcRn as well and seem to metabolize serum Ig aberrantly.[480]

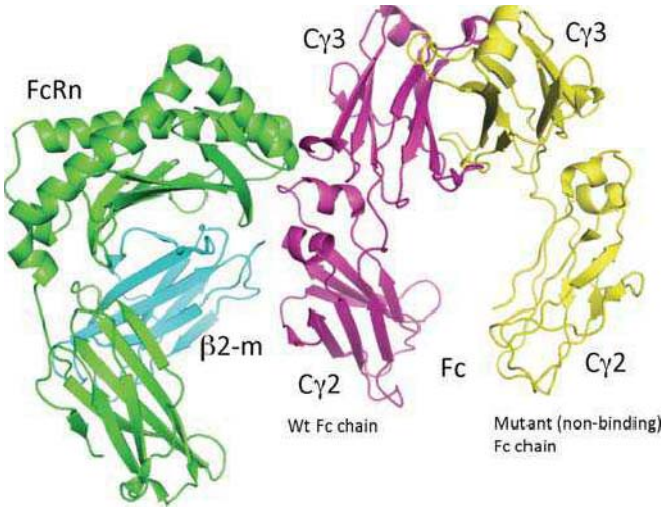


FIG. 21.15. Structure of the Rat Neonatal Fc Receptor Complexed with Fc. Ribbon diagram of rat neonatal Fc receptor complexes with the Fc heterodimer consisting of the wild-type and nonbinding chains. This is from PDB 1I1A.

MILL MHC–Like Molecules

A novel set of MHC-Ib–like genes designated *Mill* (*M*HC class *I*-*l*ike located near the *l*eukocyte receptor complex) has recently been identified in both mice and rats.[481–483] These encode MICA/B-like glycophosphatidylinsol-linked cell surface molecules that are associated with β2m and do not require TAP for cell surface expression. Their function remains unclear, although further examination indicates the presence of two family members, Mill1 and Mill2, observed on cycling thymocytes, proliferating smooth muscle cells and fibroblasts.[484]

M10 Proteins

The robust MHC fold seems to possess both the stability and flexibility requisite for the molecular function of binding ligands such as peptides, glycopeptides, phosphopeptides, and glycolipids as well as for subsequent interactions with macromolecular receptors such as NK receptors and TCRs. Likely, these qualities have allowed its adaptation for distinct function related to a class of MHC-Ib molecules, the M1 and M10 families, some members of which are associated with the V2R mouse pheromone receptors. The structure determination of M10.5 revealed a β2m-associated MHC-I–like molecule with clear three-dimensional similarity to the MHC-I molecule H2-D^d.[485]

MHC-Iv Molecules

Because viruses are constantly engaged in a struggle for survival in their interplay with the immune system of their hosts, there is little surprise to note that pathogenic eukaryotic viruses can evolve numerous approaches to evade the immune response. MHC and structurally related molecules are produced not only by vertebrates but also by CMVs, large DNA viruses of the β-herpesvirus family, which have coevolved with their vertebrate hosts over millennia and are exquisitely adapted to persist in the face of host immune responses.[2] Viral MHC-I–like molecules have been identified bioinformatically from amino acid sequences of the open reading frames predicted from genome sequence data. A number of putative MHC-Iv molecules, including UL18 and UL142 of the human CMV,[327,486] members of the "m145 family" of the mouse CMV1[487,488] the 2L molecule of tanapox,[489] and the U21 molecule of human herpesvirus 7,[490] may modulate the immune response of the host. In some cases, such as the UL18 protein of human CMV and the m144 protein of mouse CMV, the sequence homology to bonafide MHC-I molecules is sufficiently strong to unambiguously identify them as MHC-I like. However, in most cases, such as with the m145 family of mouse CMV, the sequence homology to MHC-I is very weak, and relatedness to MHC-I was originally based on structure prediction algorithms alone. We term these virally encoded MHC-I–like molecules MHC-Iv

to reflect their distinct evolutionary history, their structural deviation from typical MHC-I molecules, and their role in evading host immune responses. A survey of DNA sequences of 11 genes obtained from 26 wild murine CMV isolates and laboratory strains indicated that several of the *MHC-Iv* genes (m144, m145, and m155) revealed significant sequence variation, consistent with the view that this variation may offer some immune-evasive benefit to the virus.[491]

Structural characterization of MHC-Iv molecules begins with an evaluation of the requirement for β2m and/or peptide for stable expression. The UL18 is associated with both β2m and peptide, whereas m144 may be associated only with β2m but does not require β2m for cell surface expression. The structure of m144 has been reported,[487] revealing the preservation of all structural elements of the MHC-I fold (Fig. 21.16). The cleft of m144 does not seem capable of binding peptides as the groove is narrow and critical tyrosine residues are not conserved, results consistent with earlier biochemical studies.[492] A unique disulfide anchors the α1 helix to the β sheet. The structure of m157, a CMV MHC-I–like immunoevasin that binds the Ly49H activation receptor of C57BL/6 mice and the Ly49I inhibitory receptor of 129/J mice, has been reported.[493] This β2m-independent, peptide-free MHC-Iv molecule reveals the major features of the MHC-I fold with some unique aspects, in particular a novel amino terminal α helix. How it binds its Ly49 ligands remains unclear. The m153 protein of mouse CMV, also a member of the m145 family, reveals novel adaptations of the MHC-I fold.[1] The m153 protein does not require β2m or peptide and, in contrast to other MHC-I molecules, is a noncovalent dimer. The monomers are associated in a head-to-tail fashion. An extended N-terminus contains a unique disulfide that anchors it to the α3 domain. The m153 structure hints tantalizingly of more surprises to come as structures of other MHC-Iv molecules become available. Other MHC-Iv proteins whose structure have been determined include the 2L tanapox virus protein that binds the inflammatory cytokine TNF-α[489] and the mouse CMV-encoded m152, which sequesters both classical MHC-I and the stress-induced NKG2D ligand, RAE-1, from the cell surface.[494]

In those cases where functions have been elucidated, MHC-Iv molecules have been shown to act as immunoevasins that inhibit the NK cell to enable virus survival and persistence in the host. Both UL18 and UL142 inhibit human NK function, the former by binding to the inhibitory receptor LIR-1. The mode of action of UL142 remains to be determined.[327] The m157 binds to the inhibitory NK receptor Ly49I in mouse strains susceptible to viral infection but remarkably serves as a target for the activating NK receptor Ly49H expressed in resistant strains. The m144 protein has also been shown to inhibit NK activation,[495,496] but the ligand remains to be identified.

Complexes of MHC Molecules with Ligands

The most recent and exciting developments in MHC biology include the detailed description of the interactions of MHC-I and MHC-II molecules with their receptors and coreceptors on cells of the innate and adaptive immune system. Our structure/function survey will be completed by brief descriptions of the interactions of MHC-I and MHC-II molecules with αβ TCRs, with the T-cell coreceptors CD8 and CD4, and of MHC-I molecules with NK receptors. Details of the interactions of a number of CD1 molecules with their glycolipid antigens and specific NK T-cell receptors shed light on the biology and evolution of these molecules. A brief description of interactions of MHC-II molecules with superantigen will follow. Each of these structural studies complements a host of biologic experiments that have led to an appreciation of the importance of understanding the structural basis of these immune reactions.

MHC/T-Cell Receptor Interactions

Second to the initial visualization of the structure of the MHC-I molecule HLA-A2 by crystallographic analysis, the images of TCR/MHC/peptide complexes initially reported some 15 years ago clarified the phenomenologic details of T-cell recognition, antigen specificity, and MHC restriction. The initial structures were determined in several systems,[447–449,497,498] and there remains ongoing interest in the details of particular TCR/MHC interactions. The first examples were of MHC-I–restricted TCR, one from the mouse[448] and one from the human.[447] The mouse MHC-I molecule H2-K^b was analyzed in complex with a self-peptide, dEV8, and a TCR known as 2C,[448,499] and the human

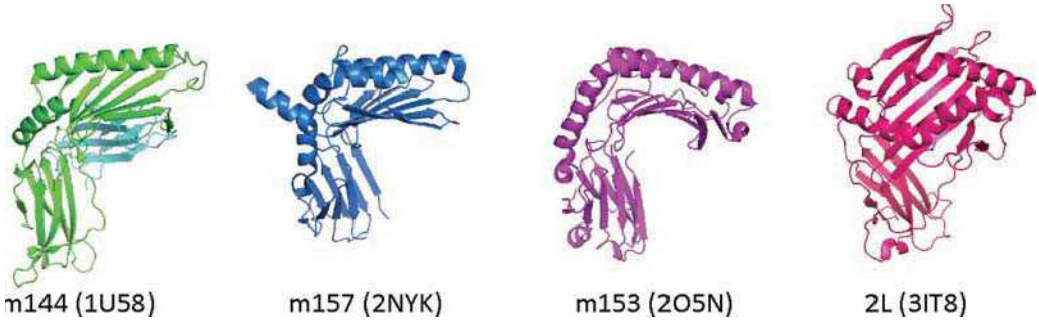


FIG. 21.16. Comparison of MHC-Iv Molecules. Structures of MHC-Iv chains of m144 (1U58), m153 (2O5N), m157 (2NYK), and the 2L protein of tanapox virus (3IT8) were superposed and are illustrated as ribbon diagrams.

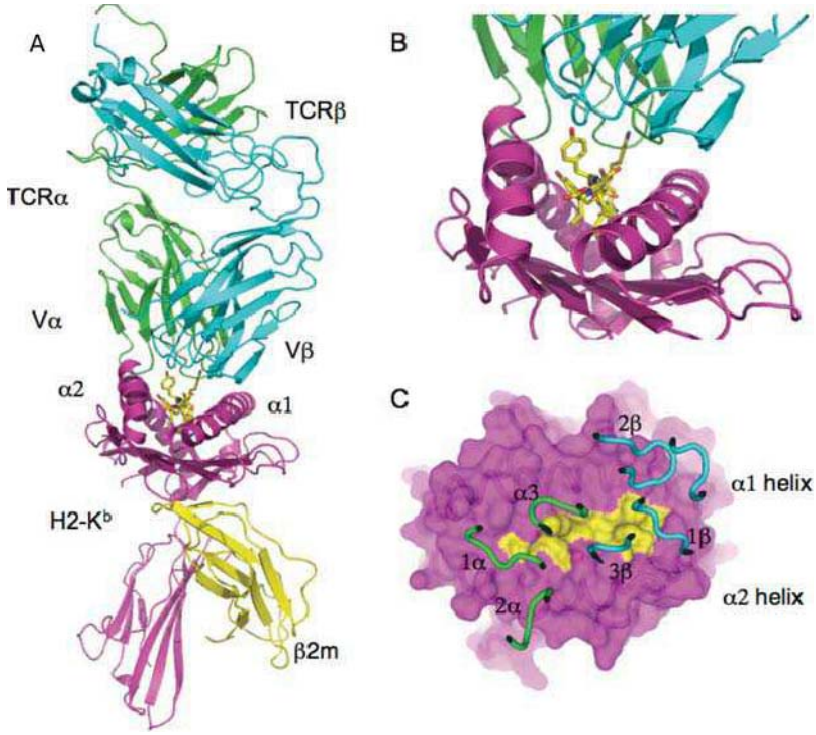


FIG. 21.17. Structure of an MHC-I/Peptide/T-Cell Receptor (TCR) Complex and the TCR Footprint on the MHC/Peptide. The structure of the H2-K^b/dEV8/2CTCR complex (2TCR) is displayed. **A:** The complex complex. **B:** A close-up of the MHC/peptide/TCR interface. **C:** The surface of the MHC *(magenta)*/peptide *(yellow)* complex with the complementarity determining region loop of the TCR Vα *(green)* and Vβ *(blue)* shown and labeled.

HLA-A2 complexed with the Tax peptide was studied with its cognate TCR derived from a cytolytic cell known as A6.[447] These structures offered a consistent first glimpse at the orientation of the TCR on the MHC/peptide complex, but additional structures, including that involving a murine MHC-II–restricted TCR suggest that more molecular variations may exist. As a canonical example of the MHC/peptide/TCR complex, we include an illustration of the H2-K^b/dEV8/2CTCR complex[499] (Fig. 21.17). This illustration shows that the complementarity determining regions (CDRs) of the TCR (labeled 1α, 2α, 3α for CDRs of Vα and 1β, 2β, and 3β for the CDRs of Vβ, respectively) sit symmetrically on the MHC/peptide complexes. For the H2-K^b/dEV8/2CTCR complex, the region contacted by the CDRs of the Vα domain of the TCR lie to the left and that contacted by the CDRs of the Vβ domain lie to the right. The regions contacted by CDR3, labeled 3α and 3β, are at the center of the bound peptide, whereas the regions contacted by CDR1 and CDR2 of both Vα and Vβ lie peripherally. Footprints of other TCR have been reviewed elsewhere.[357]

With the publication of additional MHC/peptide/TCR structures,[357] additional points have emerged: 1) There is considerable variability in the orientation of the TCR Vα and Vβ domains with respect to the MHC/peptide complex. Although the first MHC-II/peptide/TCR structure suggested that an orthogonal disposition, in which Vβ makes the great majority of contacts with the MHC-II α1 domain and the Vα predominantly interacts with the β1 domain, might be the preference for MHC-II/TCR interactions,[449] additional MHC-II/peptide/TCR structures[450,497] suggest that this disposition is not indicative of MHC-II as compared to MHC-I but rather reveals the wide variety of possibilities. 2) Considerable plasticity in the conformation of the CDR loops of the TCR, particularly long CDR3 loops, is observed in the comparison of TCR free or bound to their cognate MHC/peptide ligands.[499,500] A striking example of this is illustrated by the structure of the KB5-C20 TCR alone as compared to its complex with H2-K^b/peptide (Fig. 21.18).

Structural Insights into Alloreactivity

During T-cell development, TCRs destined to be useful to the host are selected for weak reactivity with one or more self-peptides complexed with cell surface host major histocompatibility (MHC/peptide) molecules. TCR selection is customized in each individual because of extensive polymorphism in MHC molecules that is designed to diversify peptide repertoire and optimize immune responsiveness. Thymic selection and MHC polymorphism conspire to generate antimicrobial T-cell responses that are genetically restricted to recognizing host MHC molecules while retaining Ag-specificity. MHC restriction has been a central paradigm of T-cell immunity and was the basis for the 1996 Nobel Prize awarded to Peter Doherty and Rolf Zinkernagel.

Unfortunately for transplant clinicians and their patients, the rule of MHC restriction is violated when T cells are exposed to allogeneic MHC/peptide complexes. Remarkably, up to 10% of naive T cells react strongly against allogeneic MHC/peptide in vitro (mixed lymphocyte reaction) and in vivo leading to allograft rejection and GVHD. This reaction, known as T-cell alloreactivity, is why MHC molecules were initially called transplantation or histocompatibility molecules and has puzzled immunologists for decades.

There are two main historical theories to explain the high frequency of alloreactive T cells. The first, proposed in 1977,[183] postulated that a single allogeneic MHC molecule

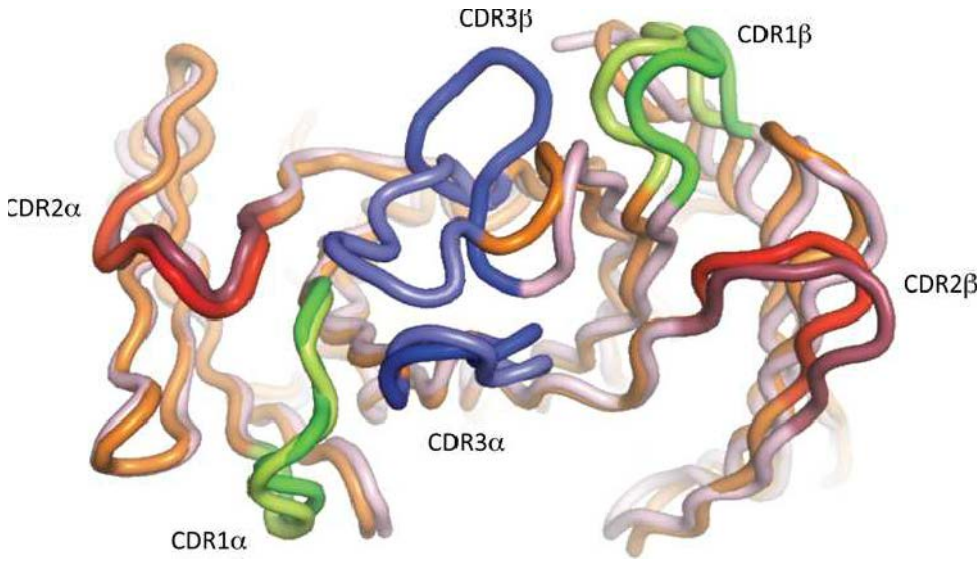


FIG. 21.18. Complementarity Determining Region (CDR)3 Plasticity. Backbone tracings of the KB5-C20 T-cell receptor CDR loops free (1KB5) or bound to the major histocompatibility/peptide complex (1KJ2) are superposed. Unliganded forms are in *darker colors*. The largest conformational difference is seen in the CDR3β loop.

could give rise to multiple binary complexes with cell surface molecules, creating "neoantigenic determinants" recognized by clonally distinct T cells. This has been reinterpreted in a "peptide-centric" hypothesis whereby as a single MHC molecule presents disparate peptides recognized by multiple different T-cell clones. The "multiple binary complex" model implies the TCR interacts with a set of amino acids shared by self- and allogeneic MHC molecules, so the cross-reaction depends crucially on the peptide antigen. However, it was later suggested that alloreactive T cells might focus on polymorphic residues exposed on the allogeneic MHC molecule itself, the so-called high determinant density model in which the TCR focus is "MHC centric," and the peptide is largely irrelevant.[501]

Colf et al.[502] solved the structure of the 2C TCR in complex with its known allogeneic ligand, H2-L^d-QL9, and then compared it to the structure of 2C in complex with its positively selecting ligand, H2-K^b-dEV8, and thus were able to provide important insight into the structural basis of alloreactivity. These two TCR footprints were typical of known MHC/peptide/TCR structures but differed from each other in a number of ways. For instance, each chain of 2C made contacts with one MHC α helix of H2-L^d-QL9, whereas both chains contacted both α helices in H2-K^b-dEV8. The geometry of 2C adopted a more perpendicular orientation on H2-L^d-QL9, and there was a relative rotation of H2-K^b-dEV8 by 20 degrees. The alloreactive complex reveals that both peptide-centric and MHC-centric interactions underpin direct T-cell allorecognition by the 2C receptor but with a heavy emphasis on MHC-centric interactions. Most surprising, however, was the small number of shared contacts between the two structures, implying a limited role for mimicry between cognate and allogeneic MHC/peptide. The H2-K^b and H2-L^d have 31 amino acid differences, and there is no sequence similarity between the H2-K^b–restricted octamer self-peptide, dEV8, and the H2-L^d–restricted nonamer, QL9. Given these differences, it was a fair bet that the cross-reactivity of 2C on H2-K^b-dEV8 and H2-L^d-QL9 would depend upon plasticity in the CDR3 regions of the TCR as documented in comparisons of bound and free TCRs, including 2C. Surprisingly, this was not the case as the TCR actually adopted very similar conformations in the two structures. In contrast to the findings with the alloreactive murine, 2C TCR, alloreactivity of the natural human LC13 TCR is based on striking molecular mimicry between the cognate and alloantigens.[503] The LC13 recognizes an Epstein-Barr viral peptide complexed with self-HLA-B*08:01 but also alloreacts with B44 allotypes (HLA-B*44:02 and 44:05) bound to an endogenous allopeptide from an adenosine triphosphate–binding cassette protein ABCD3. HLA-B*08:01, and the closely related allotypes HLA-B*44:02 and HLA-B*44:05, are distinguished by numerous polymorphisms and the LC13-reactive viral and endogenous peptides are unrelated in their sequence. Nonetheless, the LC13 TCR bound the allogeneic and cognate virus-specific HLA-peptide structures in a very similar manner.[503] Moreover, there was mimicry of the viral peptide by the allopeptide. Hence, this study demonstrates that recognition of allogeneic and cognate HLA-peptide structures can occur via molecular mimicry, even in the face of polymorphism and disparate peptide ligands.[503] Interestingly, another HLA-B*08:01–restricted TCR (CF34) with the identical Epstein-Barr virus–peptide specificity as LC13 lacks B44 reactivity because it arises when HLA-B44 is coinherited in trans with HLA-B8. Docking of the CF34 TCR focused on the N-terminus of the HLA-B*08:01-peptide while LC13 docked over the C-terminus of the viral peptide bound by HLA-B*08:01.[504] This corresponds with CF34 engagement of a polymorphic region distinguishing HLA-B8 from HLA-B44, revealing a topographical image of shifting TCR specificity to accommodate T cell self-tolerance.[504]

The role of molecular mimicry and the relative importance of peptide-centric versus MHC-centric bias in T-cell allorecognition is likely to vary in different systems. Hence, it is likely that the nature of the polymorphisms between cognate and allogeneic MHC allotypes will affect TCR focus. Thus, closely related MHC allotypes that differ by as little as one amino acid (eg, H2-K^b mutants in mice; HLA-A2, B44, and B27 families in humans) are set up for MHC mimicry to be a key component of T-cell allorecognition where *specificity* is likely to be peptide centric. For example, HLA-B*44:02 and B*44:03 allotypes differ by only a single amino acid and yet stimulate strong mutual allogeneic T-cell responses. Indeed, the potency of T-cell alloresponses between closely related MHC allotypes probably occurs because positive selection of host T cells is purposely designed to create a repertoire responsive to subtle changes in peptide display. Therefore, closely related MHC allotypes, with differences in both peptide repertoire and MHC/peptide conformation of a shared repertoire, play straight into nature's design for T-cell recognition.

Important questions concerning the nature of T-cell signaling mediated by engagement of the TCR by MHC/peptide complexes remain. What are the molecular and biophysical determinants of agonist as compared with antagonist activity of particular MHC/peptide ligands? Although it is clear that a number of parameters such as binding kinetics, half-life, and affinity (both two dimensional and three dimensional) as well as coreceptor contributions may play a role in the outcome of TCR engagement by MHC/peptide complexes, and the additional role of receptor clustering may contribute to such signaling, the precise contribution of each of these factors has not been established. A provocative approach to the question of the role of the geometry of docking of the TCR onto the MHC/peptide complex has been addressed in the analysis of the relationship of stimulatory parameters of four different peptides bound to H2-L^d with respect to the three-dimensional structure of the relevant MHC/peptide/TCR complex.[505] One of the four peptides failed to induce signaling, and remarkably, the TCR docked onto the MHC/peptide in a unique docking geometry. The authors interpreted these results to demonstrate the relationship between TCR/pMHC docking geometry, peptide cross-reactivity, and signaling as well as explaining the basis for germline bias in TCR/MHC interactions.

MHC/Coreceptor Complexes

The major coreceptors for recognition by αβ TCRs are CD8, which interacts with MHC-I molecules, and CD4, which interacts with MHC-II. Coreceptor function plays a role in signaling the T cell in addition to contributions the MHC/coreceptor interaction may provide in increasing apparent avidity between the MHC/peptide and the TCR. CD8, the coreceptor on MHC-I–restricted αβ T cells, exists as a cell surface homodimer of two α chains or a heterodimer of α and β chains and plays an important role both in the activation of mature peripheral T cells as well as in the thymic development of MHC-I–restricted lymphocytes.[506,507] Mature peripheral CD8 T cells express significant amounts of CD8αβ, whereas other lymphocytes, such as intraepithelial lymphocytes in the gut, predominantly express the CD8αα homodimer. The CD8αβ heterodimer is considered the relevant functional coreceptor on peripheral T cells. The three-dimensional structures of human and mouse MHC-I/CD8αα complexes have been described,[508,509] and more recently, a complex of mouse MHC-I/CD8αβ has been reported.[58] These structures localize the binding site of the CD8 Ig-like αα homodimer or CD8αβ heterodimer to a region on an exposed loop of the MHC-I α3 domain. This interaction is illustrated in Figure 21.19, which shows the flexible loop of residues 223 to 229 clamped into the CD8 combining site. This is one of relatively few examples of an non-Ig, Ig-like molecule exploiting an Ig-like heterodimer interface to bind another ligand. The structural identification of the CD8αα and CD8αβ on the MHC-I provides a context for understanding the contribution of CD8, which binds the kinase Lck through the cytoplasmic domain of its α chain to T-cell signaling.

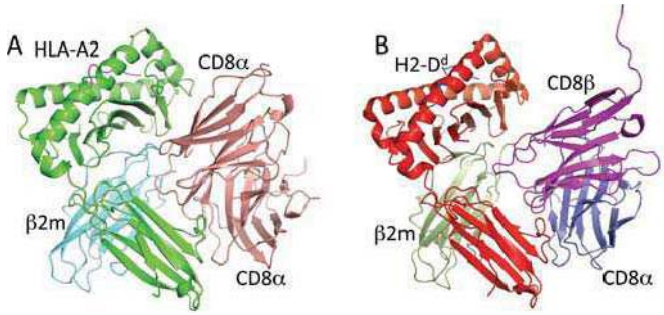


FIG. 21.19. CD8αα and CD8αβ Bind the Same Site on the MHC-I α3 Domain. The MHC-I interactions with the CD8αα (PDB 1AKJ) homodimer **(A)** and CD8αβ (PDB 3DMM) heterodimer **(B)** are shown.

The T-cell coreceptor associated with cells restricted to MHC-II antigens, CD4, has also been the subject of detailed structural studies, in part, because of its role as a receptor for attachment and entry of HIV.[510] The x-ray structure determination of the complete extracellular portion of the molecule (domains D1 through D4) indicates a degree of segmental flexibility between domains D2 and D3, and both crystallographic and biochemical data suggest that dimerization of cell surface CD4 occurs.[511] These results have been interpreted to support a role for CD4-mediated MHC-II–dependent dimerization in facilitating TCR dimerization and signaling. Although a mixed species structure of human CD4 D1-D2 domains with a mouse MHC-II molecule was reported at low resolution some years ago,[63] only recently, employing an affinity matured human CD4 molecule have diffraction quality crystals of human MHC-II/human CD4 D1-D2 molecules been obtained[64] (Fig. 21.20). This recently determined human MHC-II/hCD4 structure is remarkably similar to the low-resolution mixed species structure determined more than 10 years earlier. Both structures reveal the focus of the CD4 interaction on a stretch of amino acid residues on the Ig-like β2 domain of the MHC-II molecule. Earlier mutagenesis and functional studies of CD4-dependent MHC-II–mediated T-cell activation

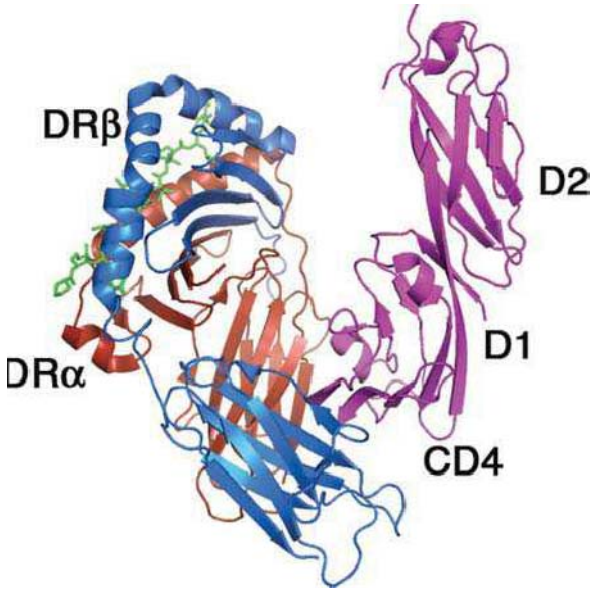


FIG. 21.20. CD4 Interacts Directly with the β2 Domain of MHC-II. A ribbon illustration of a complex of human CD4 with HLA-DR1 (PDB 3S5L) is shown. The HLA-DRα chain is in *firebrick*, HLA-DRβ chain in *blue*, peptide in *green*, and CD4 in *magenta*.

also implicated a region on the α2 domain of MHC-II.[61,512] Although the α2 domain residues do not directly interact with CD4 in these structures, it is conceivable that they play some indirect role in MHC multimerization that may contribute to signaling.

MHC/Natural Killer Receptor Complexes

NK cells provide a first line of defense against virus-infected and host cells, and their recognition of such targets is dependent on a balance of NK activating and inhibitory receptors.[513,514] In addition to their expression on NK cells, some of the NK receptors are also expressed on subsets of T cells and other hematopoietic cells. In general, each of these classes of NK receptors also falls into two different structural groups: the Ig-like receptors and the C-type lectin–like receptors. Because of their functional interactions with MHC-I and MHC-I–like molecules, and because several different systems have evolved to recognize MHC-I molecules differently, it is worthwhile to examine the recently determined structures of several MHC-I/NK receptor complexes.

In the human, the major NK receptors fall into several categories: those of the NKG2 family, the NKp molecules, and the KIRs. The NKG2 family molecules are C-type lectin–like molecules that recognize ligands grouped broadly as the NKG2D ligands, which include the MHC-like molecules, MICA and MICB, as well as the ULBP family of stress-induced molecules. NKp molecules include NKp30, NKp44, and NKp46, all members of the Ig superfamily. The KIR molecules, also Ig superfamily members, bind either HLA-C, or for the KIR3 subfamily, HLA-B molecules. Because the focus of this chapter is members of the MHC protein family, we will restrict our discussion of the human NK receptor/ligand interactions to the NKG2/MIC and ULBP complexes and to the KIR2D and KIR3D/MHC interactions.

The activating receptor, NKG2D, interacts with MICA, a stress-induced MHC-I–like molecule, allowing NK cells to eliminate virus-infected or tumor cells that are marked by the surface expression of MICA. The structure of the human NKG2D/MICA complex reveals that the homodimeric binding site of NKG2D recognizes the surface α-helical superdomain, in an orientation similar to that by which TCR see MHC-I molecules[456] (Fig. 21.21). This structure shows remarkable similarity to that of the hNKG2D bound to another MHC-Ib protein, ULBP3.[515] Similarly, the mouse NKG2D interacts, in a similar orientation, with the murine stress-induced molecule, RAE-1β.[459]

The short KIRs (eg, KIR3DS and KIR2DS molecules) are considered activating receptors because they have the potential to interact with the DAP12 signal-transducing molecule, and the long KIRs (eg, KIR3DL and KIR2DL) are inhibitory because they have cytoplasmic domains that contain immunoreceptor tyrosine-based inhibitory motifs. KIR2DL1 and KIR2DL2 have been studied extensively. They interact with the human MHC-I molecules HLA-C*04 and HLA-C*03, respectively, and show some preferences for MHC-I molecules complexed with particular peptides. Among the polymorphic amino acid residues that distinguish HLA-C*03 and HLA-C*04 are Asn80 of -C*03 and Lys80 of -C*04. Thus, it was of interest when the structures of HLA-C*03/KIR2DL2[104] and HLA-C*04/KIR2DL1 complexes were reported.[105] The KIR2DL2/HLA-C*03 interaction is illustrated in Figure 21.22. The important conclusions from this structure and those of similar KIR2DL complexes is that the recognition of MHC-I is via amino acid residues of the

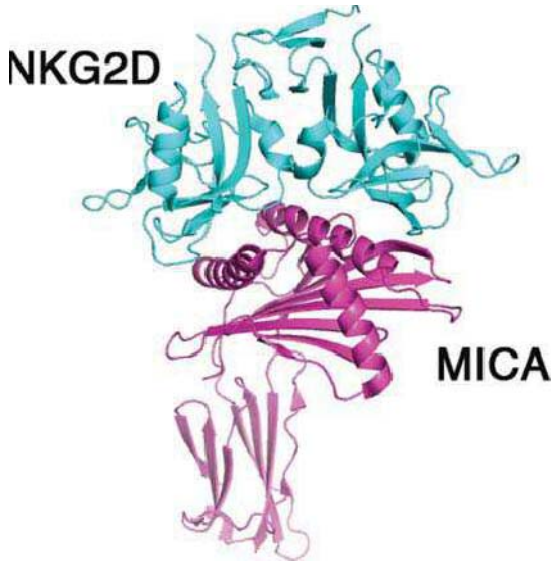


FIG. 21.21. The NKG2D sees the MHC-Ib MICA α-Helical Superdomain. The structure of the human NKG2D/MICA complex (PDB 1HYR) reveals the homodimer NKG2D sitting asymmetrically astride the MICA α-helical superdomain. The NKG2D domains are in *cyan* and MICA in *magenta*.

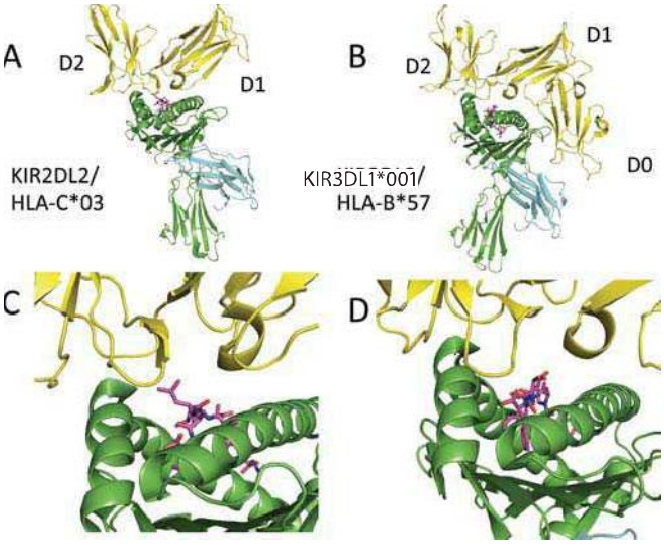


FIG. 21.22. KIR2DL2 and KIR3DL1 Interact Similarly with Their MHC-I/p Ligands. KIR2DL2 complexed with HLA-C*03 (PDB 1EFX) **(A,C)** and KIR3DL1 complexed with HLA-B*57:01 (PDB 3VH8) **(B,D)** are shown to illustrate the overall interactions **(A,B)** and close-ups of the contact with bound peptide **(C,D).**

elbow bend joining the two Ig-like domains of the KIR, and that residues that vary among different KIRs determine the molecular specificity of the interaction with the particular allelic product of HLA-C. In addition, the interaction of the KIR with the HLA-C is also modulated by the particular bound peptide, explaining the results of binding/peptide specificity studies. Structural understanding of the KIR3 molecules, which have three extracellular Ig-like domains, eluded the field for many years. Recently, a molecular complex of HLA-B*57:01 with KIR3DL1 has been reported (see Fig. 21.22). This structure reveals the contribution of the D0 amino terminal domain of KIR3DL1 in recognizing a region of the MHC-I with limited polymorphism, the D1 domain accommodates a region with sequence variation, and the D2 domain shows high complementarity.

The mouse exploits a set of NK receptors of a different structural family to provide the same function. In particular, the predominant, and best studied, mouse NK receptors are those of the Ly49 family. Functional experiments had demonstrated that Ly49A interacts with the MHC-I molecule, H2-D^d, and also that for appropriate interaction, H2-D^d needs to be complexed with a peptide. In contrast to human NK recognition, however, surveys of H2-D^d–binding peptides revealed little if any peptide preference or specificity. This would explain the function of the NK inhibitory receptor in that they are at baseline chronically stimulated by normal MHC-I on somatic cells, turning off the NK cell. When MHC-I is dysregulated by tumorigenesis or by pathogenic infection, the lower level of surface MHC-I diminishes the NKIR-mediated signal, and the NK cell is activated. The structure of the mouse Ly49A inhibitory receptor in complex with its MHC-I ligand, H2-D^d (Fig. 21.23), reveals several crucial features of the interaction: 1) the Ly49A C-type lectin–like molecule is a homodimer; 2) the Ly49A molecule makes no direct contact with residues of the MHC-bound peptide; and 3) in the x-ray structure, there are two potential sites for Ly49A interaction with the MHC molecule: site 1 at the end of the α1 and α2 helices, and site 2, an extensive region making contact with the floor of the peptide binding groove, the α3 domain of the MHC-I molecule, and the β2m domain as well. The ambiguity suggested by the x-ray structure has been resolved by extensive mutagenesis studies that are consistent with the view that site 2 is functionally significant.[516,517] Recently, several other NK receptors have been studied structurally. These include the Ly49I inhibitory receptor, which interacts functionally with H2-K^b. The Ly49I has been crystallized without a ligand, revealing a basic fold similar to that of Ly49A but with a somewhat different dimeric arrangement.[518] The Ly49C, another murine NK inhibitory receptor, has been examined in complex with its H2-K^b ligand.[519] Differences between H2-K^b/Ly49C and H2-D^d/Ly49A suggest different modes of NK receptor binding to MHC-I depending on whether the interaction is "cis" (ie, between the NK receptor and the MHC-I on the same NK cell) or "trans" (between the NK receptor on the NK cell and the MHC-I on its target).[520]

MHC-II Superantigen Complexes

Superantigens are molecules, frequently toxic products of bacteria, which bind MHC molecules on the cell surface and are then presented to a large subset of T cells, usually defined by the expression of a particular family of TCR V regions.[521] Most of the known superantigens bind MHC-II molecules, although one, the agglutinin from *Urtica dioica*, the stinging nettle, can be bound by both MHC-I and MHC-II molecules and presented to T cells of the Vβ8.3 family.[522] Its structure in complex with carbohydrate ligand has been reported.[523,524] MHC-II interactions with superantigens, such as those derived from pathogenic bacteria, are the first step in the presentation of the multivalent array of the APC-bound superantigen to T cells bearing receptors of the family or class that can bind the superantigen.[521] A number of structural studies examining the interaction

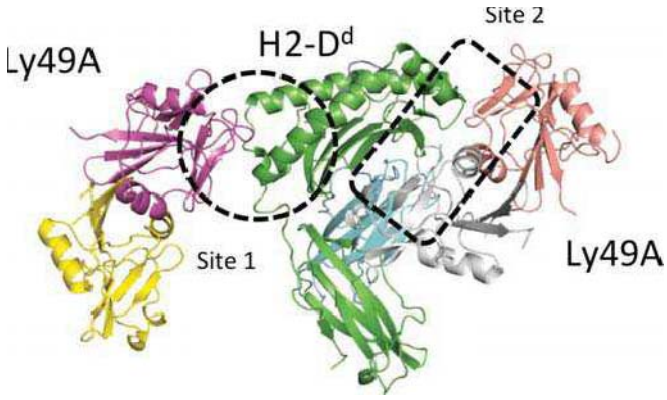


FIG. 21.23. Structure of the H2-D^d/Ly49A Complex Reveals an Alternate Site for MHC/Natural Killer Receptor Interaction. The structure of the complex (PDB 1Q03) is shown, illustrating both potential sites of interaction.

of superantigen both with their MHC-II ligands and with TCR have been reported.[525] Structural analysis of crystals derived from staphylococcal enterotoxin B complexed with HLA-DR1[526] and from toxic shock syndrome toxin-1 complexed with HLA-DR1[527] revealed that the two toxins bind to an overlapping site, primarily on the MHC-II α chain, and indicated that the staphylococcal enterotoxin B site would not be expected to be influenced by the specific peptide bound by the MHC, although the toxic shock syndrome toxin-1 site would. The view that superantigens exert their biologic effects by interaction with conserved regions of the MHC-II molecule as well as with conserved regions of the TCR has been challenged by the determination of two structures, that of *S. aureus* enterotoxin H complexed with HLA-DR1[528] and that of streptococcal pyrogenic toxin C in complex with HLA-DR2a.[529] Both of these studies indicate that these superantigens can interact with the MHC-II β chain through a zinc-dependent site that includes superantigen contacts to bound peptide. Our understanding of superantigen interactions has been augmented by the determination of ternary structures of MHC-II/superantigen/TCR complexes for two examples, that of the *Mycoplasma arthritidis* mitogen in complex with HLA-DR1 and TCR,[530] and that of *Staphylococcus aureus* enterotoxin H complexed with HLA-DR1 and TCR.[531] In both of these cases, the superantigen interacts with the MHC-II and with both TCR Vα and Vβ domains.

MOLECULAR INTERACTIONS OF MHC MOLECULES

Assays for Molecular Interactions

Whereas the crystal structures provide a vivid static illustration of the interactions of MHC molecules with their peptide, FcRn, CD8, CD4, superantigen, NK receptor, and TCR ligands, the dynamic aspects of these binding steps can be approached by a variety of biophysical methods.[532] It is important to note that affinities and kinetics of interaction of MHC/peptide complexes for TCR have been determined by several methods in a variety of systems.[533–540] In addition, MHC interactions with NK receptors[101,102,541,542] have been quantified by similar techniques. Although there are clear differences in the affinity and kinetics of binding of different TCR and NK receptors for their respective cognate MHC/peptide complexes, the generally consistent findings are that the affinities are low to moderate (ie, $K_d = 5 \times 10^{-5}$ to 10^{-7} M) and are characterized by relatively rapid dissociation rates (ie, $k_d = 10^{-1}$ to 10^{-3} sec^{-1}). Recently, attention has been drawn to the differences in measuring interactions with one component in solution (three-dimensional affinity) as compared with measurements made between multivalent displays of the interactions on two surfaces, such as might mimic the apposition of two cells. Methods exploiting microscopic techniques[543,544] or a micropipette adhesion frequency assay[545,546] suggest that the biologic readout of T-cell activation may be more readily correlated with two-dimensional rather than three-dimensional measurements of MHC/TCR affinities.

Multivalent MHC/Peptide Complexes

A major development in the past several years has been the engineering and application of multivalent MHC/peptide complexes for the identification, quantification, purification, and functional modulation of T cells with particular MHC or MHC/peptide specificity. Two general approaches have been exploited: one based on the enzymatic biotinylation of soluble MHC/peptide molecules generated in bacterial expression systems that are then multimerized by binding of the biotinylated molecules to the tetravalent streptavidin,[547] and another based on the engineering of dimeric MHC/Ig fusion proteins.[548] These reagents can be used in flow cytometric assays that permit the direct enumeration of MHC/peptide-specific T cells taken directly ex vivo. In either of these methods, multivalent MHC/peptide complexes are generated, and the relatively weak intrinsic affinity of the MHC/peptide complex for its cognate TCR is effectively magnified by the gain in avidity obtained by the increase in valency. For MHC-I molecules, the technology has been so reliable in producing multivalent (tetrameric) molecules loaded homogeneously with synthetic peptides that a wide variety of specific MHC-I/peptide multimers are available either from a resource facility sponsored by the National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases (www.niaid.nih.gov/reposit/tetramer/index.html) or from commercial suppliers that offer either the tetramer, Ig multimer, or a pentamer preparation. The MHC-I/peptide multimers have also been exploited for identification of specific populations of NK cells and for assignment of various NK-receptor specificities.[549–552] For some MHC-II molecules, similar success has been achieved in the production of such multimers, using insect cell or mammalian cell expression systems for molecules produced by either the tetramer or Ig chimera strategy.[553–557] MHC-II/peptide tetramers can be effectively used for a variety of CD4 T-cell applications, but some TCRs (particularly those involved in autoimmune diseases) have an affinity for their cognate MHC-II/peptide that is beneath the threshold for detection.[545] Also, the potential for the same peptide binding to one MHC-II in multiple frames generates difficulties in the engineering and preparation of effective MHC-II tetramers.[406]

CONCLUSION

We have surveyed the *Mhc* as a genetic region and a source for molecules crucial to immune regulation and immunologic disease. These genes reflect the panoply of mechanisms involved in the evolution of complex systems and encode cell surface proteins that interact via complex orchestration with small molecules including peptides and glycolipids as well as with macromolecular receptors on T cells and NK cells. The MHC-I molecules provide the immune system with a window for viewing the biologic health of the cell in which they are expressed, and MHC-II molecules function as scavengers to taste and display the remnants of the cellular environment. Viruses and bacterial pathogens contribute enormously to the genetic dance—

they modulate and compete in the control of MHC expression, sometimes exploiting MHC mimics that they have acquired—and the host by adjusting its T-cell and NK-cell repertoire on the time scale of both the individual organism and the species, resisting the push to extinction. The immune system, dynamically, resourcefully, and creatively provides, through the concerted action of its MHC molecules, TCRs, NK receptors, and antibodies as well as a host of other regulatory molecules, an organ system vital not only to the survival of the individual but also to the success of the species. As we understand better the molecular functions of the MHC, we should better understand rational approaches to manipulating the immune system in the prevention, diagnosis, and treatment of immunologic and infectious diseases.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

We openly accept the responsibility for errors of fact, interpretation, or citation and ask our colleagues to forgive any failure to appropriately quote their work. We thank the members of our laboratories and our families for their patience and understanding. Part of this work was supported by the intramural research program of the U.S. National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases, National Institutes of Health.

REFERENCES

1. Mans J, Natarajan K, Balbo A, et al. Cellular expression and crystal structure of the murine cytomegalovirus major histocompatibility complex class I-like glycoprotein, m153. *J Biologic Chem*. 2007;282(48): 35247–35258. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17897947
2. Revilleza MJ, Wang R, Mans J, et al. How the virus outsmarts the host: function and structure of cytomegalovirus MHC-I-like molecules in the evasion of natural killer cell surveillance. *J Biomed Biotechnol*. 2011; 2011:724607. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21765638
3. Gorer PA. Studies in antibody response of mice to tumour inoculation. *Br J Cancer*. 1950;4(4):372–379. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14801344
4. Gorer PA. The detection of antigenic differences in mouse erythrocyte by the employment of immune sera. *Br J Exp Pathol*. 1936;17:42–50.
5. Klein J. *Natural History of the Major Histocompatibility Complex*. New York, NY: Wiley-Interscience; 1986.
6. Robinson J, Waller MJ, Stoehr P, et al. IPD—the immuno polymorphism database. *Nucleic Acids Res*. 2005;33:D523–526. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15608253
7. Holdsworth R, Hurley CK, Marsh SG, et al. The HLA dictionary 2008: a summary of HLA-A, -B, -C, -DRB1/3/4/5, and -DQB1 alleles and their association with serologically defined HLA-A, -B, -C, -DR, and -DQ antigens. *Tissue Antigens*. 2009;73(2):95–170. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19140825
8. Robinson J, Mistry K, McWilliam H, et al. The IMGT/HLA database. *Nucleic Acids Res*. 2011;39:D1171–1176. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21071412
9. Robinson J, Malik A, Parham P, et al. IMGT/HLA database—a sequence database for the human major histocompatibility complex. *Tissue Antigens*. 2000;55(3):280–287. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10777106
10. Ceppellini R. *Histocompatibility Testing, 1967*. Copenhagen, Denmark: Munksgaard;1967. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4908971
11. Yoshino M, Xiao H, Jones EP, et al. Genomic evolution of the distal Mhc class I region on mouse Chr 17. *Hereditas*. 1997;127(1–2):141–148. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9420479
12. Yoshino M, Xiao H, Amadou C, et al. BAC clones and STS markers near the distal breakpoint of the fourth t-inversion, In(17)4d, in the H2-M region on mouse chromosome 17. *Mamm Genome*. 1998;9(3):186–192. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9501300
13. Duran LW, Horton RM, Birschbach CW, et al. Structural relationships among the H-2 D-regions of murine MHC haplotypes. *J Immunol*. 1989;142(1):288–296. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2909618
14. Hedley M, Forman J, Tucker PW. D2d, a D-End class I gene: tissue expression and alternative processing of the pre-mRNA. *Int Immunol*. 1990;2(1):25–32. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1965142
15. Aylor DL, Valdar W, Foulds-Mathes W, et al. Genetic analysis of complex traits in the emerging Collaborative Cross. *Genome Res*. 2011;21(8):1213–1222. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21406540
16. Jamieson AM, Diefenbach A, McMahon CW, et al. The role of the NKG2D immunoreceptor in immune cell activation and natural killing. *Immunity*. 2002;17(1):19–29. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12150888
17. Germain RN, Margulies DH. The biochemistry and cell biology of antigen processing and presentation. *Ann Rev Immunol*. 1993;11:403–450. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8476568
18. York IA, Rock KL. Antigen processing and presentation by the class I major histocompatibility complex. *Ann Rev Immunol*. 1996;14:369–396. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8717519
19. Yewdell JW, Bennink JR. Cell biology of antigen processing and presentation to major histocompatibility complex class I molecule-restricted T lymphocytes. *Adv Immunol*. 1992;52:1–123. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1442305
20. Androlewicz MJ. Peptide generation in the major histocompatibility complex class I antigen processing and presentation pathway. *Curr Opin Hematol*. 2001;8(1):12–16. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11138620
21. Watts C, Powis S. Pathways of antigen processing and presentation. *Rev Immunogen*. 1999;1(1):60–74. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11256573
22. Nguyen TT, Chang SC, Evnouchidou I, et al. Structural basis for antigenic peptide precursor processing by the endoplasmic reticulum aminopeptidase ERAP1. *Nat Structur Mol Biol*. 2011;18(5):604–613. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21478864
23. Heemels MT, Ploegh H. Generation, translocation, and presentation of MHC class I-restricted peptides. *Ann Rev Biochem*. 1995;64:463–491. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7574490
24. Brocke P, Garbi N, Momburg F, et al. HLA-DM, HLA-DO and tapasin: functional similarities and differences. *Curr Opin Immunol*. 2002;14(1): 22–29. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11790529
25. Zhang Y, Kozlov G, Pocanschi CL, et al. ERp57 does not require interactions with calnexin and calreticulin to promote assembly of class I histocompatibility molecules, and it enhances peptide loading independently of its redox activity. *J Biol Chem*. 2009;284(15):10160–10173. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19196713
26. Bouvier M, Wiley DC. Importance of peptide amino and carboxyl termini to the stability of MHC class I molecules. *Science*. 1994;265(5170):398–402. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8023162
27. Bouvier M, Wiley DC. Structural characterization of a soluble and partially folded class I major histocompatibility heavy chain/beta 2m heterodimer. *Nat Struct Biol*. 1998;5(5):377–384. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9587000
28. Ljunggren HG, Stam NJ, Ohlen C, et al. Empty MHC class I molecules come out in the cold. *Nature*. 1990;346(6283):476–480. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2198471
29. Painter CA, Negroni MP, Kellersberger KA, et al. Conformational lability in the class II MHC 310 helix and adjacent extended strand dictate HLA-DM susceptibility and peptide exchange. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2011;108(48):19329–19334. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22084083
30. Cresswell P. Invariant chain structure and MHC class II function. *Cell*. 1996;84(4):505–507. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8598037
31. Amigorena S, Webster P, Drake J, et al. Invariant chain cleavage and peptide loading in major histocompatibility complex class II vesicles. *J Exp Med*. 1995;181(5):1729–1741. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7722451
32. Thery C, Amigorena S. The cell biology of antigen presentation in dendritic cells. *Curr Opin Immunol*. 2001;13(1):45–51. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11154916
33. Newcomb JR, Carboy-Newcomb C, Cresswell P. Trimeric interactions of the invariant chain and its association with major histocompatibility complex class II alpha beta dimers. *J Biol Chem*. 1996;271(39):24249–24256. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8798670
34. Denzin LK, Hammond C, Cresswell P. HLA-DM interactions with intermediates in HLA-DR maturation and a role for HLA-DM in stabilizing empty HLA-DR molecules. *J Exp Med*. 1996;184(6):2153–2165. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8976171
35. Pierre P, Denzin LK, Hammond C, et al. HLA-DM is localized to conventional and unconventional MHC class II-containing endocytic compartments. *Immunity*. 1996;4(3):229–239. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8624813
36. Grusby MJ, Glimcher LH. Immune responses in MHC class II-deficient mice. *Ann Rev Immunol*. 1995;13:417–435. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7612230
37. Cresswell P, Ackerman AL, Giodini A, et al. Mechanisms of MHC class I-restricted antigen processing and cross-presentation. *Immunol Rev*. 2005;207:145–157. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16181333
38. Segura E, Villadangos JA. A modular and combinatorial view of the antigen cross-presentation pathway in dendritic cells. *Traffic*. 2011; 12(12):1677–1685. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21777358
39. Gascoigne NR, Palmer E. Signaling in thymic selection. *Curr Opin Immunol*. 2011;23(2):207–212. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21242076
40. Lemonnier FA. The utility of H-2 class I knockout mice. *Virus Res*. 2002;82(1–2):87–90. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11885956

41. Lanier LL. NK cell receptors. *Ann Rev Immunol*. 1998;16:359–393. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9597134
42. Correa I, Raulet DH. Binding of diverse peptides to MHC class I molecules inhibits target cell lysis by activated natural killer cells. *Immunity*. 1995;2(1):61–71. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7541307
43. Malnati MS, Peruzzi M, Parker KC, et al. Peptide specificity in the recognition of MHC class I by natural killer cell clones. *Science*. 1995;267(5200):1016–1018. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7863326
44. Orihuela M, Margulies DH, Yokoyama WM. The natural killer cell receptor Ly-49A recognizes a peptide-induced conformational determinant on its major histocompatibility complex class I ligand. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1996;93(21):11792–11797. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8876216
45. Karre K. How to recognize a foreign submarine. *Immunol Rev*. 1997; 155:5–9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9059878
46. Karre K. NK cells, MHC class I molecules and the missing self. *Scand J Immunol*. 2002;55(3):221–228. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11940227
47. Ljunggren HG, Karre K. In search of the "missing self": MHC molecules and NK cell recognition. *Immunol Today*. 1990;11(7):237–244. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2201309
48. Karlhofer FM, Ribaudo RK, Yokoyama WM. MHC class I alloantigen specificity of Ly-49 + IL-2-activated natural killer cells. *Nature*. 1992; 358(6381):66–70. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1614533
49. Dorfman JR, Raulet DH. Acquisition of Ly49 receptor expression by developing natural killer cells. *J Exp Med*. 1998;187(4):609–618. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/946341
50. Kim S, Poursine-Laurent J, Truscott SM, et al. Licensing of natural killer cells by host major histocompatibility complex class I molecules. *Nature*. 2005;436(7051):709–713. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16079848
51. Brodin P, Karre K, Hoglund P. NK cell education: not an on-off switch but a tunable rheostat. *Trends Immunol*. 2009;30(4):143–149. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19282243
52. Orr MT, Lanier LL. Natural killer cell education and tolerance. *Cell*. 2010;142(6):847–856. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20850008
53. Anfossi N, Andre P, Guia S, et al. Human NK cell education by inhibitory receptors for MHC class I. *Immunity*. 2006;25(2):331–342. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16901727
54. Salter RD, Benjamin RJ, Wesley PK, et al. A binding site for the T-cell co-receptor CD8 on the alpha 3 domain of HLA-A2. *Nature*. 1990; 345(6270):41–46. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2109837
55. Connolly JM, Potter TA, Wormstall EM, et al. The Lyt-2 molecule recognizes residues in the class I alpha 3 domain in allogeneic cytotoxic T cell responses. *J Exp Med*. 1988;168(1):325–341. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2456371
56. Norment AM, Salter RD, Parham P, et al. Cell-cell adhesion mediated by CD8 and MHC class I molecules. *Nature*. 1988;336(6194):79–81. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3263576
57. Salter RD, Norment AM, Chen BP, et al. Polymorphism in the alpha 3 domain of HLA-A molecules affects binding to CD8. *Nature*. 1989;338(6213):345–347. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2784196
58. Wang R, Natarajan K, Margulies DH. Structural basis of the CD8 alpha beta/MHC class interaction: focused recognition orients CD8 beta to a T cell proximal position. *J Immunol*. 2009;183(4):2554–2564. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19625641
59. Doyle C, Strominger JL. Interaction between CD4 and class II MHC molecules mediates cell adhesion. *Nature*. 1987;330(6145):256–259. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2823150
60. Doyle C, Shin J, Dunbrack RL Jr, et al. Mutational analysis of the structure and function of the CD4 protein. *Immunol Rev*. 1989;109:17–37. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2670748
61. Konig R, Fleury S, Germain RN. The structural basis of CD4-MHC class II interactions: coreceptor contributions to T cell receptor antigen recognition and oligomerization-dependent signal transduction. *Curr Topics Microbiol Immunol*. 1996;205:19–46. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8575196
62. Konig R. Interactions between MHC molecules and co-receptors of the TCR. *Curr Opin Immunol*. 2002;14(1):75–83. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11790535
63. Wang JH, Meijers R, Xiong, Y, et al. Crystal structure of the human CD4 N-terminal two-domain fragment complexed to a class II MHC molecule. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2001;98(19):10799–10804. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11535811
64. Wang XX, Li Y, Yin Y, et al. Affinity maturation of human CD4 by yeast surface display and crystal structure of a CD4-HLA-DR1 complex. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2011;108(38):15960–15965. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21900604
65. Kittipatarin C, Tschammer N, Khaled AR. The interaction of LCK and the CD4 co-receptor alters the dose response of T-cells to interleukin-7. *Immunol Lett*. 2010;131(2):170–181. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20433867
66. Trobridge PA, Forbush KA, Levin SD. Positive and negative selection of thymocytes depends on Lck interaction with the CD4 and CD8 co-receptors. *J Immunol*. 2001;166(2):809–818. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11145654
67. Luescher IF, Vivier E, Layer A, et al. CD8 modulation of T-cell antigen receptor-ligand interactions on living cytotoxic T lymphocytes. *Nature*. 1995;373(6512):353–356. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7830771
68. Arcaro A, Gregoire C, Bakker TR, et al. CD8beta endows CD8 with efficient coreceptor function by coupling T cell receptor/CD3 to raft-associated CD8/p56(lck) complexes. *J Exp Med*. 2001;194(10):1485–1495. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11714755
69. Gangadharan D, Cheroutre H. The CD8 isoform CD8alphaalpha is not a functional homologue of the TCR co-receptor CD8alphabeta. *Curr Opin Immunol*. 2004;16(3):264–270. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15134773
70. Horton R, Wilming L, Rand V, et al. Gene map of the extended human MHC. *Nat Rev Gen*. 2004;5(12):889–899. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15573121
71. de Bakker PI, McVean G, Sabeti PC, et al. A high-resolution HLA and SNP haplotype map for disease association studies in the extended human MHC. *Nat Gen*. 2006;38(10):1166–1172. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16998491
72. Horton R, Gibson R, Coggill P, et al. Variation analysis and gene annotation of eight MHC haplotypes: the MHC Haplotype Project. *Immunogenetics*. 2008;60(1):1–18. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18193213
73. Monaco JJ, McDevitt HO. H-2-linked low-molecular weight polypeptide antigens assemble into an unusual macromolecular complex. *Nature*. 1984;309(5971):797–799. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6738696
74. Martinez CK, Monaco JJ. Post-translational processing of a major histocompatibility complex-encoded proteasome subunit, LMP-2. *Mol Immunol*. 1993;30(13):1177–1183. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8413322
75. Monaco JJ, McDevitt HO. The LMP antigens: a stable MHC-controlled multisubunit protein complex. *Human Immunol*. 1986;15(4): 416–426. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3700147
76. van Endert PM, Lopez MT, Patel SD, et al. Genomic polymorphism, recombination, and linkage disequilibrium in human major histocompatibility complex-encoded antigen-processing genes. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1992;89(23):11594–11597. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1360671
77. Suh WK, Mitchell EK, Yang Y, et al. MHC class I molecules form ternary complexes with calnexin and TAP and undergo peptide-regulated interaction with TAP via their extracellular domains. *J Exp Med*. 1996;184(2):337–348. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8760787
78. Spies T, Cerundolo V, Colonna M, et al. Presentation of viral antigen by MHC class I molecules is dependent on a putative peptide transporter heterodimer. *Nature*. 1992;355(6361):644–646. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1538752
79. Powis SJ. Major histocompatibility complex class I molecules interact with both subunits of the transporter associated with antigen processing, TAP1 and TAP2. *Eur J Immunol*. 1997;27(10):2744–2747. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9368636

80. Hill A, Ploegh H. Getting the inside out: the transporter associated with antigen processing (TAP) and the presentation of viral antigen. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1995;92(2):341–343. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7831287
81. Yang Y, Sempe P, Peterson PA. Molecular mechanisms of class I major histocompatibility complex antigen processing and presentation. *Immunol Res*. 1996;15(3):208–233. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8902577
82. Driscoll J, Brown MG, Finley D, et al. MHC-linked LMP gene products specifically alter peptidase activities of the proteasome. *Nature*. 1993;365(6443):262–264. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8371781
83. Nandi D, Jiang H, Monaco JJ. Identification of MECL-1 (LMP-10) as the third IFN-gamma-inducible proteasome subunit. *J Immunol*. 1996; 156(7):2361–2364. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8786291
84. Kuckelkorn U, Frentzel S, Kraft R, et al. Incorporation of major histocompatibility complex—encoded subunits LMP2 and LMP7 changes the quality of the 20S proteasome polypeptide processing products independent of interferon-gamma. *Eur J Immunol*. 1995;25(9):2605–2611. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7589133
85. Ehring B, Meyer TH, Eckerskorn C, et al. Effects of major-histocompatibility-complex-encoded subunits on the peptidase and proteolytic activities of human 20S proteasomes. Cleavage of proteins and antigenic peptides. *Eur J Biochem*. 1996;235(1–2):404–415. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8631360
86. Elliott T, Willis A, Cerundolo V, et al. Processing of major histocompatibility class I-restricted antigens in the endoplasmic reticulum. *J Exp Med*. 1995;181(4):1481–1491. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7699331
87. Velarde G, Ford RC, Rosenberg MF, et al. Three-dimensional structure of transporter associated with antigen processing (TAP) obtained by single Particle image analysis. *J Biol Chem*. 2001;276(49):46054–46063. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11595746
88. Powis SJ, Young LL, Joly E, et al. The rat cim effect: TAP allele-dependent changes in a class I MHC anchor motif and evidence against C-terminal trimming of peptides in the ER. *Immunity*. 1996;4(2):159–165. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8624806
89. Livingstone AM, Powis SJ, Diamond AG, et al. A trans-acting major histocompatibility complex-linked gene whose alleles determine gain and loss changes in the antigenic structure of a classical class I molecule. *J Exp Med*. 1989;170(3):777–795. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2475574
90. Livingstone AM, Powis SJ, Gunther E, et al. Cim: an MHC class II-linked allelism affecting the antigenicity of a classical class I molecule for T lymphocytes. *Immunogenetics*. 1991;34(3):157–163. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1909994
91. McCluskey J, Rossjohn J, Purcell AW. TAP genes and immunity. *Curr Opin Immunol*. 2004;16(5):651–659. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15342013
92. Caversaccio M, Bonel HM, Carter R, et al. TAP deficiency syndrome: chronic rhinosinusitis and conductive hearing loss. *Eur Arch Otorhinolaryngol*. 2008;265(10):1289–1292. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18283480
93. Dogu F, Ikinciogullari A, Fricker D, et al. A novel mutation for TAP deficiency and its possible association with Toxoplasmosis. *Parasitol Int*. 2006;55(3):219–222. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16624613
94. Parissiadis A, Dormoy A, Fricker D, et al. Unilateral necrotising toxoplasmic retinochoroiditis as the main clinical manifestation of a peptide transporter (TAP) deficiency. *Br J Ophthalmol*. 2005;89(12):1661–1662. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16299152
95. Hanna J, MussaffiH, Steuer G, et al. Functional aberrant expression of CCR2 receptor on chronically activated NK cells in patients with TAP-2 deficiency. *Blood*. 2005;106(10):3465–3473. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16037391
96. White PC, Chaplin DD, Weis JH, et al. Two steroid 21-hydroxylase genes are located in the murine S region. *Nature*. 1984;312(5993):465–467. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6095106
97. White PC, New MI, Dupont B. HLA-linked congenital adrenal hyperplasia results from a defective gene encoding a cytochrome P-450 specific for steroid 21-hydroxylation. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1984;81(23):7505–7509. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6334310
98. Lawton P, Nelson J, Tizard R, et al. Characterization of the mouse lymphotoxin-beta gene. *J Immunol*. 1995;154(1):239–246. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7995944
99. Browning JL, Ngam-ek A, Lawton P, et al. Lymphotoxin beta, a novel member of the TNF family that forms a heteromeric complex with lymphotoxin on the cell surface. *Cell*. 1993;72(6):847–856. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7916655
100. Iraqi F, Teale A. Polymorphisms in the Tnfa gene of different inbred mouse strains. *Immunogenetics*. 1999;49(3):242–245. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9914340
101. Vales-Gomez M, Reyburn HT, Erskine RA, et al. Differential binding to HLA-C of p50-activating and p58-inhibitory natural killer cell receptors. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1998;95(24):14326–14331. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9826699
102. Vales-Gomez M, Reyburn HT, Mandelboim M, et al. Kinetics of interaction of HLA-C ligands with natural killer cell inhibitory receptors. *Immunity*. 1998;9(3):337–344. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9768753
103. Fan QR, Garboczi DN, Winter CC, et al. Direct binding of a soluble natural killer cell inhibitory receptor to a soluble human leukocyte antigen-Cw4 class I major histocompatibility complex molecule. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1996;93(14):7178–7183. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8692965
104. Boyington JC, Motyka SA, Schuck P, et al. Crystal structure of an NK cell immunoglobulin-like receptor in complex with its class I MHC ligand. *Nature*. 2000;405(6786):537–543. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10850706
105. Fan QR, Long EO,Wiley DC. Crystal structure of the human natural killer cell inhibitory receptor KIR2DL1-HLA-Cw4 complex. *Nat Immunol*. 2001;2(5):452–460. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11323700
106. Vivian JP, Duncan RC, Berry R, et al. Killer cell immunoglobulin-like receptor 3DL1-mediated recognition of human leukocyte antigen B. *Nature*. 2011;479(7373):401–405. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22020283
107. Braud VM, Allan DS, Wilson D, et al. TAP- and tapasin-dependent HLA-E surface expression correlates with the binding of an MHC class I leader peptide. *Curr Biol*. 1998;8(1):1–10. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9427624
108. Braud V, Jones EY, McMichael A. The human major histocompatibility complex class Ib molecule HLA-E binds signal sequence-derived peptides with primary anchor residues at positions 2 and 9. *Eur J Immunol*. 1997;27(5):1164–1169. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9174606
109. Aldrich CJ, DeCloux A, Woods AS, et al. Identification of a Tap-dependent leader peptide recognized by alloreactive T cells specific for a class Ib antigen. *Cell*. 1994;79(4):649–658. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7525079
110. SoloskiMJ,DeCloux A, Aldrich CJ, et al. Structural and functional characteristics of the class IB molecule, Qa-1. *Immunol Rev*. 1995;147: 67–89. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8847081
111. Kurepa Z, Hasemann CA, Forman J. Qa-1b binds conserved class I leader peptides derived from several mammalian species. *J Exp Med*. 1998;188(5):973–978. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9730898
112. King A, Hiby SE, Gardner L, et al. Recognition of trophoblast HLA class I molecules by decidual NK cell receptors—a review. *Placenta*. 2000;21(suppl A):S81–85. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10831129
113. Deenik W, Janssen JJ, van der Holt B, et al. Efficacy of escalated imatinib combined with cytarabine in newly diagnosed patients with chronic myeloid leukemia. *Haematologica*. 2010;95(6):914–921. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20015886
114. Lowen LC, Aldrich CJ, Forman J. Analysis of T cell receptors specific for recognition of class IB antigens. *J Immunol*. 1993;151(11):6155–6165. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8245458
115. LeBouteiller P, Solier C, Proll J, et al. Placental HLA-G protein expression in vivo: where and what for? *Hum Reprod Update*. 1999;5(3):223–233. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10438107
116. Le Bouteiller P, Lenfant F. Antigen-presenting function(s) of the non-classical HLA-E, -F and -G class I molecules: the beginning of a story. *Res Immunol*. 1996;147(5):301–313. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8876058

117. Fournel S, Aguerre-Girr M, Huc X, et al. Cutting edge: soluble HLA-G1 triggers CD95/CD95 ligand-mediated apoptosis in activated CD8+ cells by interacting with CD8. *J Immunol*. 2000;164(12):6100–6104. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10843658
118. Mercier B, Mura C, Ferec C. Putting a hold on "HLA-H." *Nat Gen*. 1997;15(3):234. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9054932
119. Bodmer JG, Parham P, Albert ED, et al. Putting a hold on "HLA-H." The WHO Nomenclature Committee for Factors of the HLA System. *Nat Gen*. 1997;15(3):234–235. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9054933
120. Gerhard GS, Ten Elshof AE, Chorney MJ. Hereditary haemochromatosis as an immunological disease. *Br J Haematol*. 1998;100(2):247–255. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9488610
121. Gerhard GS, Levin KA, Price Goldstein J, et al. Vibrio vulnificus septicemia in a patient with the hemochromatosis HFE C282Y mutation. *Arch Pathol Lab Med*. 2001;125(8):1107–1109. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11473471
122. Feder JN, Gnirke A, Thomas W, et al. A novel MHC class I-like geneis mutated in patients with hereditary haemochromatosis. *Nat Gen*. 1996;13(4):399–408. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8696333
123. Mura C, Le Gac G, Raguenes O, et al. Relation between HFE mutations and mild iron-overload expression. *Mol Gen Metabol*. 2000;69(4):295–301. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10870847
124. Hanson EH, Shue PM, Palm-Leis A, et al. An aviator with cardiomyopathy and genetic susceptibility to hereditary hemochromatosis: a case report. *Aviat Space Environ Med*. 2001;72(10):924–927. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11601557
125. Fleming RE, Ahmann JR, Migas MC, et al. Targeted mutagenesis of the murine transferrin receptor-2 gene produces hemochromatosis. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2002;99(16):10653–10658. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12134060
126. Moffett A, Hiby SE. How does the maternal immune system contribute to the development of pre-eclampsia? *Placenta*. 2007;28(suppl A): S51–56. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17292469
127. Vincek V, Nizetic D, Golubic M, et al. Evolutionary expansion of Mhc class I loci in the molerat, Spalax ehrenbergi. *Mol Biol Evol*. 1987; 4(5):483–491. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3449737
128. Gunther E, Walter L. The major histocompatibility complex of the rat (Rattus norvegicus). *Immunogenetics*. 2001;53(7):520–542. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11685465
129. Lawlor DA, Zemmour J, Ennis PD, et al. Evolution of class-I MHC genes and proteins: from natural selection to thymic selection. *Ann Rev Immunol*. 1990;8:23–63. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2188663
130. Bodmer WF. HLA structure and function: a contemporary view. *Tissue Antigens*. 1981;17(1):9–20. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6166086
131. Shiina T, Shimizu S, Hosomichi K, et al. Comparative genomic analysis of two avian (quail and chicken) MHC regions. *J Immunol*. 2004; 172(11):6751–6763. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15153492
132. Pease LR, Nathenson SG, Leinwand LA. Mapping class I gene sequences in the major histocompatibility complex. *Nature*. 1982;298(5872): 382–385. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6283386
133. Steinmetz M, Minard K, Horvath S, et al. A molecular map of the immune response region from the major histocompatibility complex of the mouse. *Nature*. 1982;300(5887):35–42. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6290895
134. Margulies DH, Evans GA, Flaherty L, et al. H-2-like genes in the Tla region of mouse chromosome 17. *Nature*. 1982;295(5845):168–170. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6276757
135. Shawar SM, Vyas JM, Rodgers JR, et al. Antigen presentation by major histocompatibility complex class I-B molecules. *Ann Rev Immunol*. 1994;12:839–880. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8011299
136. Kurlander RJ, Shawar SM, Brown ML, et al. Specialized role for a murine class I-b MHC molecule in prokaryotic host defenses. *Science*. 1992;257(5070):678–679. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1496381
137. Lindahl KF, Byers DE, Dabhi VM, et al. H2-M3, a full-service class Ib histocompatibility antigen. *Ann Rev Immunol*. 1997;15:851–879. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9143709
138. Walter L, Gunther E. Physical mapping and evolution of the centromeric class I gene-containing region of the rat MHC. *Immunogenetics*. 2000;51(10):829–837. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10970097
139. Gunther E, Walter L. Comparative genomic aspects of rat, mouse and human MHC class I gene regions. *Cytogenet Cell Genet*. 2000;91(1–4):107–112. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11173841
140. Moore CB, John M, James IR, et al. Evidence of HIV-1 adaptation to HLA-restricted immune responses at a population level. *Science*. 2002;296(5572):1439–1443. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12029127
141. Michael NL. Host genetics and HIV—removing the mask. *Nat Med*. 2002;8(8):783–785. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12152029
142. Martin MP, Gao X, Lee JH, et al. Epistatic interaction between KIR3DS1 and HLA-B delays the progression to AIDS. *Nat Gen*. 2002;31(4): 429–434. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12134147
143. Zernich D, Purcell AW, Macdonald WA, et al. Natural HLA class I polymorphism controls the pathway of antigen presentation and susceptibility to viral evasion. *J Exp Med*. 2004;200(1):13–24. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15226359
144. Figueroa F, Tichy H, McKenzie I, et al. Polymorphism of lymphocyte antigens-encoding loci in wild mice. *Curr Top Microbiol Immunol*. 1986;127:229–235. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2426042
145. Mitchison NA, Mayer W. A survey of H2 gene sequences, including new wild-derived genes. *Int J Immunogen*. 2007;34(1):3–12. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17284221
146. Sultmann H, Mayer WE, Figueroa F, et al. Zebrafish Mhc class II alpha chain-encoding genes: polymorphism, expression, and function. *Immunogenetics*. 1993;38(6):408–420. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8406613
147. Sato A, Klein D, Sultmann H, et al. Class I mhc genes of cichlid fishes: identification, expression, and polymorphism. *Immunogenetics*. 1997;46(1):63–72. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9148790
148. Sato A, Dongak R, Hao L, et al. Mhc class I genes of the cichlid fish Oreochromis niloticus. *Immunogenetics*. 2006;58(11):917–928. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17033824
149. Murray BW, Shintani S, Sultmann H, et al. Major histocompatibility complex class II A genes in cichlid fishes: identification, expression, linkage relationships, and haplotype variation. *Immunogenetics*. 2000;51(7):576–586. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10912508
150. Williams AF. Immunoglobulin-related domains for cell surface recognition. *Nature*. 1985;314(6012):579–580. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3990793
151. Hood L, Steinmetz M, Malissen B. Genes of the major histocompatibility complex of the mouse. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 1983;1:529–568. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6152713
152. Lawlor DA, Warren E, Ward FE, et al. Comparison of class I MHC alleles in humans and apes. *Immunol Rev*. 1990;113:147–185. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1690682
153. Sun YH, Goodenow RS, Hood L. Molecular basis of the dm1 mutation in the major histocompatibility complex of the mouse: a D/L hybrid gene. *J Exp Med*. 1985;162(5):1588–1602. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2997361
154. Burnside SS, Hunt P, Ozato K, et al. A molecular hybrid of the H-2Dd and H-2Ld genes expressed in the dm1 mutant. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1984;81(16):5204–5208. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6206494
155. Ohta T. Gene conversion vs point mutation in generating variability at the antigen recognition site of major histocompatibility complex loci. *J Mol Evol*. 1995;41(2):115–119. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6206494
156. Evans GA, Margulies DH, Camerini-Otero RD, et al. Structure and expression of a mouse major histocompatibility antigen gene, H-2Ld. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1982;79(6):1994–1998. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6952248

157. Schulze DH, Pease LR, Geier SS, et al. Comparison of the cloned H-2Kbm1 variant gene with the H-2Kb gene shows a cluster of seven nucleotide differences. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1983;80(7):2007–2011. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6300887
158. Geliebter J, Zeff RA, Schulze DH, et al. Interaction between Kb and Q4 gene sequences generates the Kbm6 mutation. *Mol Cell Biol*. 1986;6(2):645–652. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3023861
159. Nathenson SG, Geliebter J, Pfaffenbach GM, et al. Murine major histocompatibility complex class-I mutants: molecular analysis and structure-function implications. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 1986;4:471–502. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3518748
160. Nathenson SG, Kesari K, Sheil JM, et al. Use of mutants to analyze regions on the H-2Kb molecule for interaction with immune receptors. *Cold Spring Harb Symp Quant Biol*. 1989;54(pt 1):521–528. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2700943
161. Hasenkrug KJ, Nathenson SG. Nucleic acid sequences of the H-2Ks and H-2Ksm1 genes. *Immunogenetics*. 1991;34(1):60–61. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1840571
162. Reusch TB, Schaschl H, Wegner KM. Recent duplication and inter-locus gene conversion in major histocompatibility class II genes in a teleost, the three-spined stickleback. *Immunogenetics*. 2004;56(6):427–437. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15322775
163. Spurgin LG, van Oosterhout C, Illera JC, et al. Gene conversion rapidly generates major histocompatibility complex diversity in recently founded bird populations. *Mol Ecol*. 2011;20(24):5213–5225. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22106868
164. Marsh SG. Nomenclature for factors of the HLA system, update September 2011. *Tissue Antigens*. 2011;78(6):482–484. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22077628
165. Rudolph MG, Speir JA, Brunmark A, et al. The crystal structures of K(bm1) and K(bm8) reveal that subtle changes in the peptide environment impact thermostability and alloreactivity. *Immunity*. 2001;14(3):231–242. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11290333
166. Witte T, Smolyar A, Spoerl R, et al. Major histocompatibility complex recognition by immune receptors: differences among T cell receptor versus antibody interactions with the VSV8/H-2Kb complex. *Eur J Immunol*. 1997;27(1):227–233. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9022023
167. Snell GD, Dausset J, Nathenson S. *Histocompatibility*. New York, NY: Academic Press; 1976:401.
168. SilverLM. *Mouse Genetics: Concepts and Applications*. New York, NY: Oxford University Press; 1995:362.
169. den Haan JM, Meadows LM, Wang W, et al. The minor histocompatibility antigen HA-1: a diallelic gene with a single amino acid polymorphism. *Science*. 1998;279(5353):1054–1057. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9461441
170. Simpson E. Minor transplantation antigens: mouse models for human host-versus-graft, graft-versus-host and graft-versus-leukemia reactions. *Arch Immunol Ther Exp (Warsz)*. 1998;46(6):331–339. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9883311
171. Simpson E, Scott D, James E, et al. Minor H antigens: genes and peptides. *Transpl Immunol*. 2002;10(2–3):115–123. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12216941
172. Mendoza LM, Villaflor G, Eden P, et al. Distinguishing self from nonself: immunogenicity of the murine H47 locus is determined by a single amino acid substitution in an unusual peptide. *J Immunol*. 2001;166(7):4438–4445. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11254699
173. Malarkannan S, Shih PP, Eden PA, et al. The molecular and functional characterization of a dominant minor H antigen, H60. *J Immunol*. 1998;161(7):3501–3509. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9759870
174. Schwab SR, Li KC, Kang C, et al. Constitutive display of cryptic translation products by MHC class I molecules. *Science*. 2003;301(5638):1367–1371. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12958358
175. Yewdell JW, Anton LC, Bennink JR. Defective ribosomal products (DRiPs): a major source of antigenic peptides for MHC class I molecules? *J Immunol*. 1996;157(5):1823–1826. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8757297
176. Eisenlohr LC, Huang L, Golovina TN. Rethinking peptide supply to MHC class I molecules. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2007;7(5):403–410. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17457346
177. Goulmy E. Minor histocompatibility antigens: from transplantation problems to therapy of cancer. *Hum Immunol*. 2006;67(6):433–438. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16728266
178. Shevach EM, Rosenthal AS. Function of macrophages in antigen recognition by guinea pig T lymphocytes. II. Role of the macrophage in the regulation of genetic control of the immune response. *J Exp Med*. 1973;138(5):1213–1229. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4126770
179. Zinkernagel RM, Dunlop MB, Blanden RV, et al. H-2 compatibility requirement for virus-specific T-cell-mediated cytolysis. Evaluation of the role of H-2I region and non-H-2 genes in regulating immune response. *J Exp Med*. 1976;144(2):519–532. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4126770
180. Zinkernagel RM, Doherty PC. Restriction of in vitro T cell-mediated cytotoxicity in lymphocytic choriomeningitis within a syngeneic or semiallogeneic system. *Nature*. 1974;248(450):701–702. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4133807
181. Shearer GM, Rehn TG, Garbarino CA. Cell-mediated lympholysis of trinitrophenyl-modified autologous lymphocytes. Effector cell specificity to modified cell surface components controlled by H-2K and H-2D serological regions of the murine major histocompatibility complex. *J Exp Med*. 1975;141(6):1348–1364. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/47900
182. Lindahl KF, Wilson DB. Histocompatibility antigen-activated cytotoxic T lymphocytes. I. Estimates of the absolute frequency of killer cells generated in vitro. *J Exp Med*. 1977;145(3):500–507. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/233898
183. Matzinger P, Bevan MJ. Hypothesis: why do so many lymphocytes respond to major histocompatibility antigens? *Cell Immunol*. 1977;29(1):1–5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/300293
184. Maryanski JL, MacDonald HR, Cerottini JC. Limiting dilution analysis of alloantigen-reactive T lymphocytes. IV. High frequency of cytolytic T lymphocyte precursor cells in MLC blasts separated by velocity sedimentation. *J Immunol*. 1980;124(1):42–47. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6444230
185. Dalchau R, Fangmann J, Fabre JW. Allorecognition of isolated, denatured chains of class I and class II major histocompatibility complex molecules. Evidence for an important role for indirect allorecognition in transplantation. *Eur J Immunol*. 1992;22(3):669–677. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1547813
186. Auchincloss H Jr, Sultan H. Antigen processing and presentation in transplantation. *Curr Opin Immunol*. 1996;8(5):681–687. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8902394
187. Tiercy JM. Molecular basis of HLA polymorphism: implications in clinical transplantation. *Transplant Immunol*. 2002;9(2–4):173–180. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12180827
188. Hansen JA, Yamamoto K, Petersdorf E, et al. The role of HLA matching in hematopoietic cell transplantation. *Rev Immunogen*. 1999;1(3):359–373. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11256427
189. Mickelson EM, Petersdorf E, Anasetti C, et al. HLA matching in hematopoietic cell transplantation. *Human Immunol*. 2000;61(2):92–100. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10717800
190. Hansen JA, Petersdorf E, Martin PJ, et al. Impact of HLA matching on hematopoietic cell transplants from unrelated donors. *Vox Sanguinis*. 2000;78(suppl 2):269–271. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10938967
191. Petersdorf EW, Gooley T, Malkki M, et al. The biological significance of HLA-DP gene variation in haematopoietic cell transplantation. *Br J Haematol*. 2001;112(4):988–994. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11298597
192. Varney MD, Lester S, McCluskey J, et al. Matching for HLA DPA1 and DPB1 alleles in unrelated bone marrow transplantation. *Human Immunol*. 1999;60(6):532–538. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10408803
193. Morishima Y, Sasazuki T, Inoko H, et al. The clinical significance of human leukocyte antigen (HLA) allele compatibility in patients receiving a marrow transplant from serologically HLA-A, HLA-B, and HLA-DR matched unrelated donors. *Blood*. 2002;99(11):4200–4206. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12010826
194. Petersdorf EW, Hansen JA, Martin PJ, et al. Major-histocompatibility-complex class I alleles and antigens in hematopoietic-cell transplantation. *N Engl J Med*. 2001;345(25):1794–1800. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11752355

195. Bray RA, Hurley CK, Kamani NR, et al. National marrow donor program HLA matching guidelines for unrelated adult donor hematopoietic cell transplants. *Biol Blood Marrow Transplant*. 2008;14(9)(suppl):45–53. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18721780
196. Gluckman E, Rocha V, Chastang C. Peripheral stem cells in bone marrow transplantation. Cord blood stem cell transplantation. Bailliere's best practice & research. *Clin Haematol*. 1999;12(1–2):279–292.
197. Barker JN, Krepski TP, DeFor TE, et al. Searching for unrelated donor hematopoietic stem cells: availability and speed of umbilical cord blood versus bone marrow. *Biol Blood Marrow Transplant*. 2002;8(5):257–260. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12064362
198. Rubinstein P. HLA matching for bone marrow transplantation—how much is enough? *N Engl J Med*. 2001;345(25):1842–1844. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11752363
199. Hakenberg P, Kogler G, Wernet P. NETCORD: a cord blood allocation network. *Bone Marrow Transplant*. 1998;22(suppl 1):S17–18. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9715876
200. Petersdorf EW, Anasetti C, Martin PJ, et al. Limits of HLA mismatching in unrelated hematopoietic cell transplantation. *Blood*. 2004;104(9):2976–2980. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15251989
201. Ruggeri L, Capanni M, Urbani E, et al. Effectiveness of donor natural killer cell alloreactivity in mismatched hematopoietic transplants. *Science*. 2002;295(5562):2097–2100. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11896281
202. Ruggeri L, Capanni M, Casucci M, et al. Role of natural killer cell alloreactivity in HLA-mismatched hematopoietic stem cell transplantation. *Blood*. 1999;94(1):333–339. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10381530
203. Claas FH, Oudshoorn M. Role of NK cells in mismatched unrelated haematopoietic stem-cell transplantation: fact or fiction? *Tissue Antigens*. 2005;65(6):515–518. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15896198
204. Willemze R, Ruggeri A, Purtill D, et al. Is there an impact of killer cell immunoglobulin-like receptors and KIR-ligand incompatibilities on outcomes after unrelated cord blood stem cell transplantation? *Best Pract Res Clin Haematol*. 2010;23(2):283–290. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20837340
205. Velardi A, Ruggeri L, Mancusi A, et al. Natural killer cell allorecognition of missing self in allogeneic hematopoietic transplantation: a tool for immunotherapy of leukemia. *Curr Opin Immunol*. 2009;21(5):525–530. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19717293
206. Brunstein CG, Wagner JE, Weisdorf DJ, et al. Negative effect of KIR alloreactivity in recipients of umbilical cord blood transplant depends on transplantation conditioning intensity. *Blood*. 2009;113(22):5628–5634. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19329778
207. Gluckman E, Rocha V, Chevret S. Results of unrelated umbilical cord blood hematopoietic stem cell transplant. *Transfus Clin Biol*. 2001;8(3):146–154. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11499955
208. Wagner JE, Barker JN, DeFor TE, et al. Transplantation of unrelated donor umbilical cord blood in 102 patients with malignant and nonmalignant diseases: influence of CD34 cell dose and HLA disparity on treatment-related mortality and survival. *Blood*. 2002;100(5):1611–1618. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12176879
209. Doxiadis II, Smits JM, Schreuder GM, et al. Association between specific HLA combinations and probability of kidney allograft loss: the taboo concept. *Lancet*. 1996;348(9031):850–853. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8826810
210. Doxiadis II, Smits JM, Stobbe I, et al. Taboo HLA mismatches in cadaveric renal transplantation: definition, analysis, and possible implications. *Transplant Proc*. 1996;28(1):224. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8644189
211. Mickelson EM, Longton G, Anasetti C, et al. Evaluation of the mixed lymphocyte culture (MLC) assay as a method for selecting unrelated donors for marrow transplantation. *Tissue Antigens*. 1996;47(1):27–36. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8929710
212. Pei J, Akatsuka Y, Anasetti C, et al. Generation of HLA-C-specific cytotoxic T cells in association with marrow graft rejection: analysis of alloimmunity by T-cell cloning and testing of T-cell-receptor rearrangements. *Biol Blood Marrow Transplant*. 2001;7(7):378–383. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11529487
213. Wang XN, Taylor PR, Skinner R, et al. T-cell frequency analysis does not predict the incidence of graft-versus-host disease in HLA-matched sibling bone marrow transplantation. *Transplantation*. 2000;70(3):488–493. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10949192
214. Kaminski E, Hows J, Man S, et al. Prediction of graft versus host disease by frequency analysis of cytotoxic T cells after unrelated donor bone marrow transplantation. *Transplantation*. 1989;48(4):608–613. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2508280
215. Oudshoorn M, Doxiadis II, van den Berg-Loonen PM, et al. Functional versus structural matching: can the CTLp test be replaced by HLA allele typing? *Human Immunol*. 2002;63(3):176–184. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11872235
216. Nepom GT, Erlich H. MHC class-II molecules and autoimmunity. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 1991;9:493–525. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1910687
217. Thomson G. HLA disease associations: models for the study of complex human genetic disorders. *Crit Rev Clin Lab Sci*. 1995;32(2):183–219. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7598790
218. Baines M, Ebringer A. HLA and disease. *Mol Aspects Med*. 1992;13(4):263–378. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1287396
219. Malkki M, Single R, Carrington M, et al. MHC microsatellite diversity and linkage disequilibrium among common HLA-A, HLA-B, DRB1 haplotypes: implications for unrelated donor hematopoietic transplantation and disease association studies. *Tissue Antigens*. 2005;66(2):114–124. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16029431
220. Shiina T, Inoko H, Kulski JK. An update of the HLA genomic region, locus information and disease associations: 2004. *Tissue Antigens*. 2004;64(6):631–649. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15546336
221. Lechler R, Warrens A. *HLA in Health and Disease*. 2nd ed. San Diego, CA: Academic Press; 2000.
222. TiwariJL,TerasakiPI. *HLA and Disease Associations*. New York, NY: Springer-Verlag; 1985.
223. Zhernakova A, Stahl EA, Trynka G, et al. Meta-analysis of genome-wide association studies in celiac disease and rheumatoid arthritis identifies fourteen non-HLA shared loci. *PLoS Gen*. 2011;7(2):e1002004. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21383967
224. Barrett JC, Clayton DG, Concannon P, et al. Genome-wide association study and meta-analysis find that over 40 loci affect risk of type 1 diabetes. *Nat Gen*. 2009;41(6):703–707. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19430480
225. Oldstone MB. Virus-induced autoimmunity: molecular mimicry as a route to autoimmune disease. *J Autoimmunity*. 1989;2(suppl):187–194. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2673272
226. Raychaudhuri S, Sandor C, Stahl EA, et al. Five amino acids in three HLA proteins explain most of the association between MHC and seropositive rheumatoid arthritis. *Nat Gen*. 2012;44(3):291–296. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22286218
227. Oldstone MB, von Herrath M. Virus-induced autoimmune disease: transgenic approach to mimic insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus and other autoimmune diseases. *APMIS*. 1996;104(10):689–697. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8980618
228. Oldstone MB. Molecular mimicry and autoimmune disease. *Cell*. 1987;50(6):819–820. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3621346
229. Wucherpfennig KW. Structural basis of molecular mimicry. *J Autoimmunity*. 2001;16(3):293–302. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11334495
230. Mignot E, Tafti M, Dement WC, et al. Narcolepsy and immunity. *Adv Neuroimmunol*. 1995;5(1):23–37. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7795891
231. Ellis MC, Hetisimer AH, Ruddy DA, et al. HLA class II haplotype and sequence analysis support a role for DQ in narcolepsy. *Immunogenetics*. 1997;46(5):410–417. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9271631
232. Ringrose JH, Muijsers AO, Pannekoek Y, et al. Influence of infection of cells with bacteria associated with reactive arthritis on the peptide repertoire presented by HLA-B27. *J Med Microbiol*. 2001;50(4):385–389. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11289525
233. Ringrose JH. HLA-B27 associated spondyloarthropathy, an autoimmune disease based on crossreactivity between bacteria and HLA-B27? *Ann Rheum Dis*. 1999;58(10):598–610. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10491358

234. Evans DM, Spencer CC, Pointon JJ, et al. Interaction between ERAP1 and HLA-B27 in ankylosing spondylitis implicates peptide handling in the mechanism for HLA-B27 in disease susceptibility. *Nat Gen*. 2011;43(8):761–767. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21743469
235. Kollnberger S, Bird LA, Roddis M, et al. HLA-B27 heavy chain homodimers are expressed in HLA-B27 transgenic rodent models of spondyloarthritis and are ligands for paired Ig-like receptors. *J Immunol*. 2004;173(3):1699–1710. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15265899
236. Bird LA, Peh CA, Kollnberger S, et al. Lymphoblastoid cells express HLA-B27 homodimers both intracellularly and at the cell surface following endosomal recycling. *Eur J Immunol*. 2003;33(3):748–759. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12616495
237. Bennett MJ, Lebron JA, Bjorkman PJ. Crystal structure of the hereditary haemochromatosis protein HFE complexed with transferrin receptor. *Nature*. 2000;403(6765):46–53. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10638746
238. Lebron JA, Bennett MJ, Vaughn DE, et al. Crystal structure of the hemochromatosis protein HFE and characterization of its interaction with transferrin receptor. *Cell*. 1998;93(1):111–123. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9546397
239. Trinder D, Olynyk JK, Sly WS, et al. Iron uptake from plasma transferrin by the duodenum is impaired in the Hfe knockout mouse. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2002;99(8):5622–5626. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11943867
240. Waheed A, Grubb JH, Zhou XY, et al. Regulation of transferrin mediated iron uptake by HFE, the protein defective in hereditary hemochromatosis. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2002;99(5):3117–3122. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11867720
241. Zhou XY, Tomatsu S, Fleming RE, et al. HFE gene knockout produces mouse model of hereditary hemochromatosis. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1998;95(5):2492–2497. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9482913
242. Santos M, Clevers HC, Marx JJ. Mutations of the hereditary hemochromatosis candidate gene HLA-H in porphyria cutanea tarda. *N Engl J Med*. 1997;336(18):1327–1328. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9132598
243. Santos M, Schilham MW, Rademakers LH, et al. Defective iron homeostasis in beta 2-microglobulin knockout mice recapitulates hereditary hemochromatosis in man. *J Exp Med*. 1996;184(5):1975–1985. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8920884
244. Rothenberg BE, Voland JR. beta2 knockout mice develop parenchymal iron overload: a putative role for class I genes of the major histocompatibility complex in iron metabolism. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1996;93(4):1529–1534. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8643666
245. Fleming RE, Migas MC, Zhou X, et al. Mechanism of increased iron absorption in murine model of hereditary hemochromatosis: increased duodenal expression of the iron transporter DMT1. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1999;96(6):3143–3148. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10077651
246. Consortium TUH. A simple genetic test identifies 90% of UK patients with haemochromatosis. *Gut*. 1997;41(6):841–844. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9462220
247. Lester S, Bardy P, McCluskey J. HFE genotypes and haemochromatosis: quantifying the risks of disease. *Tissue Antigens*. 1999;54(3):282–284. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10519366
248. Wordsworth P. Rheumatoid arthritis. *Curr Opin Immunol*. 1992;4(6):766–769. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1466800
249. Wordsworth P, Pile KD, Buckely JD, et al. HLA heterozygosity contributes to susceptibility to rheumatoid arthritis. *Am J Hum Gen*. 1992;51(3):585–591. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1496989
250. Hall FC, Weeks DE, Camilleri JP, et al. Influence of the HLA-DRB1 locus on susceptibility and severity in rheumatoid arthritis. *QJM*. 1996;89(11):821–829. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8977961
251. Hattori M, Buse JB, Jackson RA, et al. The NOD mouse: recessive diabetogenic gene in the major histocompatibility complex. *Science*. 1986;231(4739):733–735. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3003909
252. Acha-Orbea H, McDevitt HO. The first external domain of the nonobese diabetic mouse class II I-A beta chain is unique. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1987;84(8):2435–2439. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2882518
253. Atkinson MA, Leiter EH. The NOD mouse model of type 1 diabetes: as good as it gets? *Nat Med*. 1999;5(6):601–604. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10371488
254. Wicker LS, Miller BJ, Fischer PA, et al. Genetic control of diabetes and insulitis in the nonobese diabetic mouse. Pedigree analysis of a diabetic H-2nod/b heterozygote. *J Immunol*. 1989;142(3):781–784. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2643662
255. Quartey-Papafio R, Lund T, Chandler P, et al. Aspartate at position 57 of nonobese diabetic I-Ag7 beta-chain diminishes the spontaneous incidence of insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus. *J Immunol*. 1995;154(10):5567–5575. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7730655
256. Tisch R, McDevitt H. Insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus. *Cell*. 1996;85(3):291–297. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8616883
257. Noble JA, Valdes AM. Genetics of the HLA region in the prediction of type 1 diabetes. *Curr Diabetes Rep*. 2011;11(6):533–542. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21912932
258. Undlien DE, Thorsby E. HLA associations in type 1 diabetes: merging genetics and immunology. *Trends Immunol*. 2001;22(9):467–469. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11525926
259. Undlien DE, Lie BA, Thorsby E. HLA complex genes in type 1 diabetes and other autoimmune diseases. Which genes are involved? *TIG*. 2001;17(2):93–100. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11173119
260. Lechler R, Warrens A. *Handbook of HLA and Disease*. 2nd ed. London, United Kingdom: Academic Pres; 1998.
261. Morton NE, Green A, Dunsworth T, et al. Heterozygous expression of insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus (IDDM) determinants in the HLA system. *Am J Hum Gen*. 1983;35(2):201–213. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6573128
262. Brorsson C, Tue Hansen N, Bergholdt R, et al. The type 1 diabetes - HLA susceptibility interactome—identification of HLA genotype-specific disease genes for type 1 diabetes. *PloS One*. 2010;5(3):e9576.
263. Green PH, Cellier C. Celiac disease. *N Engl J Med*. 2007;357(17):1731–1743. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17960014
264. Vilppula A, Kaukinen K, Luostarinen L, et al. Increasing prevalence and high incidence of celiac disease in elderly people: a population-based study. *BMC Gastroenterol*. 2009;9:49. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19558729
265. Spurkland A, Celius EG, Knutsen I, et al. The HLA-DQ(alpha 1*0102, beta 1*0602) heterodimer may confer susceptibility to multiple sclerosis in the absence of the HLA-DR(alpha 1*01, beta 1*1501) heterodimer. *Tissue Antigens*. 1997;50(1):15–22. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9243750
266. Anderson RP, Degano P, Godkin AJ, et al. In vivo antigen challenge in celiac disease identifies a single transglutaminase-modified peptide as the dominant A-gliadin T-cell epitope. *Nat Med*. 2000;6(3):337–342. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10700238
267. Arentz-Hansen H, Korner R, Molberg O, et al. The intestinal T cell response to alpha-gliadin in adult celiac disease is focused on a single deamidated glutamine targeted by tissue transglutaminase. *J Exp Med*. 2000;191(4):603–612. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10684852
268. Kim CY, Quarsten H, Bergseng E, et al. Structural basis for HLA-DQ2-mediated presentation of gluten epitopes in celiac disease. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2004;101(12):4175–4179. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15020763
269. Tye-Din JA, Stewart JA, Dromey JA, et al. Comprehensive, quantitative mapping of T cell epitopes in gluten in celiac disease. *Sci Transl Med*. 2010;2(41):41ra51. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20650871
270. van de Wal Y, Kooy Y, van Veelen P, et al. Selective deamidation by tissue transglutaminase strongly enhances gliadin-specific T cell reactivity. *J Immunol*. 1998;161(4):1585–1588. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9712018
271. Henderson KN, Tye-Din JA, Reid HH, et al. A structural and immunological basis for the role of human leukocyte antigen DQ8 in celiac disease. *Immunity*. 2007;27(1):23–34. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17629515

272. Tye-Din J, Anderson R. Immunopathogenesis of celiac disease. *Curr Gastroenterol Rep*. 2008;10(5):458–465. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18799120
273. Bharadwaj M, Illing P, Theodossis A, et al. Drug hypersensitivity and human leukocyte antigens of the major histocompatibility complex. *Ann Rev Pharmacol Toxicol*. 2012;52:401–431. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22017685
274. Hetherington S, Hughes AR, Mosteller M, et al. Genetic variations in HLA-B region and hypersensitivity reactions to abacavir. *Lancet*. 2002;359(9312):1121–1122. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11943262
275. Mallal S, Nolan D, Witt C, et al. Association between presence of HLA-B*5701, HLA-DR7, and HLA-DQ3 and hypersensitivity to HIV-1 reverse-transcriptase inhibitor abacavir. *Lancet*. 2002;359(9308):727–732. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11888582
276. Martin AM, Nolan D, Gaudieri S, et al. Predisposition to abacavir hypersensitivity conferred by HLA-B*5701 and a haplotypic Hsp70-Hom variant. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2004;101(12):4180–4185. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15024131
277. Chung WH, Hung SI, Hong HS, et al. Medical genetics: a marker for Stevens-Johnson syndrome. *Nature*. 2004;428(6982):486. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15057820
278. Hung SI, Chung WH, Jee SH, et al. Genetic susceptibility to carbamazepine-induced cutaneous adverse drug reactions. *Pharmacogenet Genomics*. 2006;16(4):297–306. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16538176
279. Locharernkul C, Loplumlert J, Limotai C, et al. Carbamazepine and phenytoin induced Stevens-Johnson syndrome is associated with HLA-B*1502 allele in Thai population. *Epilepsia*. 2008;49(12):2087–2091. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18637831
280. Hung SI, Chung WH, Liou LB, et al. HLA-B*5801 allele as a genetic marker for severe cutaneous adverse reactions caused by allopurinol. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2005;102(11):4134–4139. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15743917
281. Tassaneeyakul W, Jantararoungtong T, Chen P, et al. Strong association between HLA-B*5801 and allopurinol-induced Stevens-Johnson syndrome and toxic epidermal necrolysis in a Thai population. *Pharmacogenet Genomics*. 2009;19(9):704–709. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19696695
282. Kaniwa N, Saito Y, Aihara M, et al. HLA-B locus in Japanese patients with anti-epileptics and allopurinol-related Stevens-Johnson syndrome and toxic epidermal necrolysis. *Pharmacogenomics*. 2008;9(11):1617–1622. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19018717
283. Phillips EJ, Sullivan JR, Knowles SR, et al. Utility of patch testing in patients with hypersensitivity syndromes associated with abacavir. *AIDS*. 2002;16(16):2223–2225. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12409746
284. Nassif A, Bensussan A, Dorothee G, et al. Drug specific cytotoxic T-cells in the skin lesions of a patient with toxic epidermal necrolysis. *J Invest Dermatol*. 2002;118(4):728–733. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11918724
285. Hari Y, Frutig-Schnyder K, Hurni M, et al. T cell involvement in cutaneous drug eruptions. *Clin Exp Allergy*. 2001;31(9):1398–1408. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11591190
286. Le Cleach L, Delaire S, Boumsell L, et al. Blister fluid T lymphocytes during toxic epidermal necrolysis are functional cytotoxic cells which express human natural killer (NK) inhibitory receptors. *Clin Exp Immunol*. 2000;119(1):225–230. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10606987
287. Chessman D, Kostenko L, Lethborg T, et al. Human leukocyte antigen class I-restricted activation of CD8 + T cells provides the immunogenetic basis of a systemic drug hypersensitivity. *Immunity*. 2008;28(6):822–832. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18549801

287a. Illing PT, Vivian JP, Dudek NL, et al. Immune self-reactivity triggered by drug-modified HLA-peptide repertoire. *Nature*. 2012;486:554–558. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22722860

288. Mallal S, Phillips E, Carosi G, et al. HLA-B*5701 screening for hypersensitivity to abacavir. *N Engl J Med*. 2008;358(6):568–579. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18256392
289. Carrington M, Martin MP, van Bergen J. KIR-HLA intercourse in HIV disease. *Trends Microbiol*. 2008;16(12):620–627. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18976921
290. Qi Y, Martin MP, Gao X, et al. KIR/HLA pleiotropism: protection against both HIV and opportunistic infections. *PLoS Pathog*. 2006;2(8):e79. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16933987
291. Zeniya M, Takahashi H. Characteristics of autoimmune hepatitis in the Asia-Pacific Region: historical review. *Hepatol Int*. 2011. Epub ahead of print. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22020829
292. Elfaramawy AA, Elhossiny RM, Abbas AA, et al. HLA-DRB1 as a risk factor in children with autoimmune hepatitis and its relation to hepatitis A infection. *Ital J Pediatr*. 2010;36:73. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21067577
293. Wawrzynowicz-Syczewska M, Underhill JA, Clare MA et al. HLA class II genotypes associated with chronic hepatitis C virus infection and response to alpha-interferon treatment in Poland. *Liver*. 2000;20(3):234–239. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10902974
294. Kohn HI, Melvold RW. Spontaneous histocompatibility mutations detected by dermal grafts: significant changes in rate over a 10-year period in the mouse H-system. *Mutat Res*. 1974;24(2):163–169. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4605140
295. Melvold RW, Wang K, Kohn HI. Histocompatibility gene mutation rates in the mouse: a 25-year review. *Immunogenetics*. 1997;47(1):44–54. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9382920
296. Yamaga KM, Pfaffenbach GM, Pease LR, et al.. Biochemical studies of H-2K antigens from a group of related mutants. I. Identification of a shared mutation in B6-H-2bm5 and B6-H-2bm16. *Immunogenetics*. 1983;17(1):19–29.
297. Pease LR, Ewenstein BM, McGovern D, et al. Biochemical studies on the H-2K mutant B6.C-H-2bm10. *Immunogenetics*. 1983;17(1):7–17. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6826210
298. Ewenstein BM, Uehara H, Nisizawa T, et al. Biochemical studies on the H-2K antigens of the MHC mutants bm3 and bm11. *Immunogenetics*. 1980;11(4):383–395. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7429601
299. Boehm U, Klamp T, Groot M, et al. Cellular responses to interferon-gamma. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 1997;15:749–795. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9143706
300. Gobin SJ, van den Elsen PJ. Locus-specific regulation of HLA-A and HLA-B expression is not determined by nucleotide variation in the X2 box promoter element. *Blood*. 2001;97(5):1518–1521. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11243241
301. van den Elsen PJ, Gobin SJ. The common regulatory pathway of MHC class I and class II transactivation. *Microbes Infect*. 1999;1(11):887–892. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10614006
302. Wainwright SD, Biro PA, Holmes CH. HLA-F is a predominantly empty, intracellular, TAP-associated MHC class Ib protein with a restricted expression pattern. *J Immunol*. 2000;164(1):319–328. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10605026
303. Houlihan JM, Biro PA, Harper HM, et al. The human amnion is a site of MHC class Ib expression: evidence for the expression of HLA-E and HLA-G. *J Immunol*. 1995;154(11):5665–5674. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7751618
304. McMaster MT, Librach CL, Zhou Y, et al. Human placental HLA-G expression is restricted to differentiated cytotrophoblasts. *J Immunol*. 1995;154(8):3771–3778. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7706718
305. Gobin SJ, van den Elsen PJ. Transcriptional regulation of the MHC class Ib genes HLA-E, HLA-F, and HLA-G. *Hum Immunol*. 2000;61(11):1102–1107. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11137213
306. Hicklin DJ, Wang Z, Arienti F, et al. beta2-Microglobulin mutations, HLA class I antigen loss, and tumor progression in melanoma. *J Clin Invest*. 1998;101(12):2720–2729. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9637706
307. Hsieh CH, Hsu YJ, Chang CC, et al. Total HLA class I loss in a sarcomatoid renal carcinoma cell line caused by the coexistence of distinct mutations in the two encoding beta2-microglobulin genes. *Cancer Immunol Immunother*. 2009;58(3):395–408. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18704411

308. Chang CC, Ogino T, Mullins DW, et al. Defective human leukocyte antigen class I-associated antigen presentation caused by a novel beta2-microglobulin loss-of-function in melanoma cells. *J Biol Chem*. 2006;281(27):18763–18773. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16648140
309. Zijlstra M, Li E, Sajjadi F, et al. Germ-line transmission of a disrupted beta 2-microglobulin gene produced by homologous recombination in embryonic stem cells. *Nature*. 1989;342(6248):435–438. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2685607
310. Koller BH, Smithies O. Inactivating the beta 2-microglobulin locus in mouse embryonic stem cells by homologous recombination. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1989;86(22):8932–8935. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2682666
311. Wiertz EJ, Mukherjee S, Ploegh HL. Viruses use stealth technology to escape from the host immune system. *Mol Med Today*. 1997;3(3):116–123. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9095486
312. Fruh K, Ahn K, Peterson PA. Inhibition of MHC class I antigen presentation by viral proteins. *J Mol Med*. 1997;75(1):18–27. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9020380
313. Easterfield AJ, Austen BM, Westwood OM. Inhibition of antigen transport by expression of infected cell peptide 47 (ICP47) prevents cell surface expression of HLA in choriocarcinoma cell lines. *J Reprod Immunol*. 2001;50(1):19–40. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11254939
314. Berger C, Xuereb S, Johnson DC, et al. Expression of herpes simplex virus ICP47 and human cytomegalovirus US11 prevents recognition of transgene products by CD8(+) cytotoxic T lymphocytes. *J Virol*. 2000;74(10):4465–4473. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10775582
315. Furukawa L, Brevetti LS, Brady SE, et al. Adenoviral-mediated gene transfer of ICP47 inhibits major histocompatibility complex class I expression on vascular cells in vitro. *J Vasc Surg*. 2000;31(3):558–566. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10709070
316. Jugovic P, Hill AM, Tomazin R, et al. Inhibition of major histocompatibility complex class I antigen presentation in pig and primate cells by herpes simplex virus type 1 and 2 ICP47. *J Virol*. 1998;72(6):5076–5084. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9573278
317. Byun M, Verweij MC, Pickup DJ, et al. Two mechanistically distinct immune evasion proteins of cowpox virus combine to avoid antiviral CD8 T cells. *Cell Host Microbe*. 2009;6(5):422–432. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19917497
318. Alzhanova D, Edwards DM, Hammarlund E, et al. Cowpox virus inhibits the transporter associated with antigen processing to evade T cell recognition. *Cell Host Microbe*. 2009;6(5):433–445. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19917498
319. de la Salle H, Hanau D, Fricker D, et al. Homozygous human TAP peptide transporter mutation in HLA class I deficiency. *Science*. 1994;265(5169):237–241. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7517574
320. de la Salle H, Houssaint E, Peyrat MA, et al. Human peptide transporter deficiency: importance of HLA-B in the presentation of TAP-independent EBV antigens. *J Immunol*. 1997;158(10):4555–4563. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9144467
321. de la Salle H, Saulquin X, Mansour I, et al. Asymptomatic deficiency in the peptide transporter associated to antigen processing (TAP). *Clin Exp Immunol*. 2002;128(3):525–531. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12067308
322. Zimmer J, Andres E. Comments on type I bare lymphocyte syndrome. *Immunol Lett*. 2012;143(2):218–219. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22321372
323. Shrestha D, Szollosi J, Jenei A. Bare lymphocyte syndrome: an opportunity to discover our immune system. *Immunol Lett*. 2012;141(2):147–157. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22027563
324. Rehm A, Engelsberg A, Tortorella D, et al. Human cytomegalovirus gene products US2 and US11 differ in their ability to attack major histocompatibility class I heavy chains in dendritic cells. *J Virol*. 2002;76(10):5043–5050. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11967320
325. Gold MC, Munks MW, Wagner M, et al. The murine cytomegalovirus immunomodulatory gene m152 prevents recognition of infected cells by M45-specific CTL but does not alter the immunodominance of the M45-specific CD8 T cell response in vivo. *J Immunol*. 2002;169(1):359–365. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12077265
326. Kavanagh DG, Gold MC, Wagner M, et al. The multiple immune-evasion genes of murine cytomegalovirus are not redundant: m4 and m152 inhibit antigen presentation in a complementary and cooperative fashion. *J Exp Med*. 2001;194(7):967–978. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11581318
327. Wills MR, Ashiru O, Reeves MB, et al. Human cytomegalovirus encodes an MHC class I-like molecule (UL142) that functions to inhibit NK cell lysis. *J Immunol*. 2005;175(11):7457–7465. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16301653
328. Koszinowski UH, Reddehase MJ, Del Val M. Principles of cytomegalovirus antigen presentation in vitro and in vivo. *Semin Immunol*. 1992;4(2):71–79. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1319768
329. Scalzo AA, Corbett AJ, Rawlinson WD, et al. The interplay between host and viral factors in shaping the outcome of cytomegalovirus infection. *Immunol Cell Biol*. 2007;85(1):46–54. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17146464
330. Rawlinson WD, Farrell HE, Barrell BG. Analysis of the complete DNA sequence of murine cytomegalovirus. *J Virol*. 1996;70(12):8833–8849. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8971012
331. Smith HR, Heusel JW, Mehta IK, et al. Recognition of a virus-encoded ligand by a natural killer cell activation receptor. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2002;99(13):8826–8831. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12060703
332. Burgert HG, Kvist S. An adenovirus type 2 glycoprotein blocks cell surface expression of human histocompatibility class I antigens. *Cell*. 1985;41(3):987–997. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3924414
333. Burgert HG, Kvist S. The E3/19K protein of adenovirus type 2 binds to the domains of histocompatibility antigens required for CTL recognition. *EMBO J*. 1987;6(7):2019–2026. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2958275
334. Sester M, Koebernick K, Owen D, et al. Conserved amino acids within the adenovirus 2 E3/19K protein differentially affect downregulation of MHC class I and MICA/B proteins. *J Immunol*. 2010;184(1):255–267. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19949079
335. Menz B, Sester M, Koebernick K, et al. Structural analysis of the adenovirus type 2 E3/19K protein using mutagenesis and a panel of conformation-sensitive monoclonal antibodies. *Mol Immunol*. 2008;46(1):16–26. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18692902
336. Boss JM. Regulation of transcription of MHC class II genes. *Curr Opin Immunol*. 1997;9(1):107–113. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9039770
337. Fontes JD, Kanazawa S, Nekrep N, et al. The class II transactivator CIITA is a transcriptional integrator. *Microbes Infect*. 1999;1(11):863–869. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10614003
338. Jabrane-Ferrat N, Nekrep N, Tosi G, et al. Major histocompatibility complex class II transcriptional platform: assembly of nuclear factor Y and regulatory factor X (RFX) on DNA requires RFX5 dimers. *Mol Cell Biol*. 2002;22(15):5616–5625. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12101253
339. Zinzow-Kramer WM, Long AB, Youngblood BA, et al. CIITA promoter I CARD-deficient mice express functional MHC class II genes in myeloid and lymphoid compartments. *Genes Immun*. 2012;13(4):299–310. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22218223
340. Rohn WM, Lee YJ, Benveniste EN. Regulation of class II MHC expression. *Crit Rev Immunol*. 1996;16(3):311–330. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8922901
341. Reith W, Mach B. The bare lymphocyte syndrome and the regulation of MHC expression. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 2001;19:331–373. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11244040
342. Abdulkadir SA, Krishna S, Thanos D, et al. Functional roles of the transcription factor Oct-2A and the high mobility group protein I/Y in HLA-DRA gene expression. *J Exp Med*. 1995;182(2):487–500. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7629508
343. Hume CR, Shookster LA, Collins N, et al. Bare lymphocyte syndrome: altered HLA class II expression in B cell lines derived from two patients. *Hum Immunol*. 1989;25(1):1–11. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2785516

344. Mach B. MHC class II regulation—lessons from a disease. *N Engl J Med*. 1995;332(2):120–122. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7990888
345. Mitchison NA, Schuhbauer D, Muller B. Natural and induced regulation of Th1/Th2 balance. *Springer Semin Immunopathol*. 1999;21(3):199–210. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10666769
346. Mitchison NA, Roes J. Patterned variation in murine MHC promoters. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2002;99(16):10561–10566. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12134058
347. Guardiola J, Maffei A, Lauster R, et al. Functional significance of polymorphism among MHC class II gene promoters. *Tissue Antigens*. 1996;48(6):615–625. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9008303
348. Stumptner-Cuvelette P, Benaroch P. Multiple roles of the invariant chain in MHC class II function. *Biochim Biophys Acta*. 2002;1542 (1–3):1–13. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11853874
349. Roche PA, Marks MS, Cresswell P. Formation of a nine-subunit complex by HLA class II glycoproteins and the invariant chain. *Nature*. 1991;354(6352):392–394. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1956401
350. Roche PA, Cresswell P. Invariant chain association with HLA-DR molecules inhibits immunogenic peptide binding. *Nature*. 1990;345(6276): 615–618. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2190094
351. Bikoff EK, Huang LY, Episkopou V, et al. Defective major histocompatibility complex class II assembly, transport, peptide acquisition, and CD4 + T cell selection in mice lacking invariant chain expression. *J Exp Med*. 1993;177(6):1699–1712. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8098731
352. Viville S, Neefjes J, Lotteau V, et al. Mice lacking the MHC class II-associated invariant chain. *Cell*. 1993;72(4):635–648. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7679955
353. Bonnerot C, Marks MS, Cosson P, et al. Association with BiP and aggregation of class II MHC molecules synthesized in the absence of invariant chain. *EMBO J*. 1994;13(4):934–944. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8112308
354. Feynman R. The Feynman lectures on physics. In: Feynman R, Leighton R, Sands M, eds. *The Feynman Lectures on Physics.* Reading, MA: Addison-Wesley; 1963:5.
355. Morrison J. Love hides. In: *Absolutely Live*. Elektra; 1970.
356. Margulies DH, McCluskey J. Exon shuffling: new genes from old. *Surv Immunol Res*. 1985;4(2):146–159. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2412269
357. RudolphMG,Stanfield RL, Wilson IA. How TCRs bind MHCs, peptides, and coreceptors. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 2006;24:419–466. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16551255
358. Orr HT, Lopez de Castro JA, Parham P, et al. Comparison of amino acid sequences of two human histocompatibility antigens, HLA-A2 and HLA-B7: location of putative alloantigenic sites. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1979;76(9):4395–4399. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/92029
359. Coligan JE, Kindt TJ, Uehara H, et al. Primary structure of a murine transplantation antigen. *Nature*. 1981;291(5810):35–39. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7231522
360. Steinmetz M, Frelinger JG, Fisher D, et al. Three cDNA clones encoding mouse transplantation antigens: homology to immunoglobulin genes. *Cell*. 1981;24(1):125–134. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6786753
361. Sood AK, Pereira D, Weissman SM. Isolation and partial nucleotide sequence of a cDNA clone for human histocompatibility antigen HLA-B by use of an oligodeoxynucleotide primer. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1981;78(1):616–620. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6165999
362. Ploegh HL, Orr HT, Strominger JL. Molecular cloning of a human histocompatibility antigen cDNA fragment. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1980;77(10):6081–6085. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6934534
363. Choi E, McIntyre K, Germain RN, et al. Murine I-A beta chain polymorphism: nucleotide sequences of three allelic I-A beta genes. *Science*. 1983;221(4607):283–286. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6407114
364. Mathis DJ, Benoist CO, Williams VE II, et al. The murine E alpha immune response gene. *Cell*. 1983;32(3):745–754.
365. Davis MM, Cohen DI, Nielsen EA, et al. Cell-type-specific cDNA probes and the murine I region: the localization and orientation of Ad alpha. *Proc Natl Acad Sc U S A*. 1984;81(7):2194–2198. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6326111
366. Lew AM, Margulies DH, Maloy WL, et al. Alternative protein products with different carboxyl termini from a single class I gene, H-2Kb. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1986;83(16):6084–6088. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3461476
367. Lew AM, McCluskey J, Maloy WL, et al. Multiple class I molecules generated from single genes by alternative splicing of pre-mRNAs. *Immunol Res*. 1987;6(1–2):117–132. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2442272
368. Handy DE, McCluskey J, Lew AM, et al. Signals controlling alternative splicing of major histocompatibility complex H-2 class I pre-mRNA. *Immunogenetics*. 1988;28(2):81–90. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3397132
369. Vega MA, Strominger JL. Constitutive endocytosis of HLA class I antigens requires a specific portion of the intracytoplasmic tail that shares structural features with other endocytosed molecules. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1989;86(8):2688–2692. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2495533
370. Balomenos D, Poretz RD. An acidic modification of the cytoplasmic domain contributes to the charge heterogeneity of the MHC class I antigens. *Immunogenetics*. 1998;47(5):381–389. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9510556
371. Capps GG, Pine S, Edidin M, et al. Short class I major histocompatibility complex cytoplasmic tails differing in charge detect arbiters of lateral diffusion in the plasma membrane. *Biophys J*. 2004;86(5):2896–2909. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15111406
372. Fooksman DR, Edidin M, Barisas BG. Measuring rotational diffusion of MHC class I on live cells by polarized FPR. *Biophys Chem*. 2007;130 (1–2):10–16. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17656002
373. Gur H, Geppert TD, Lipsky PE. Structural analysis of class I MHC molecules: the cytoplasmic domain is not required for cytoskeletal association, aggregation and internalization. *Mol Immunol*. 1997;34(2): 125–132. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9188845
374. Singh RK, Lau D, Noviello CM, et al. An MHC-I cytoplasmic domain/HIV-1 Nef fusion protein binds directly to the mu subunit of the AP-1 endosomal coat complex. *PloS One*. 2009;4(12):e8364. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20020046
375. Yi L, Rosales T, Rose JJ, et al. HIV-1 Nef binds a subpopulation of MHC-I throughout its trafficking itinerary and down-regulates MHC-I by perturbing both anterograde and retrograde trafficking. *J Biol Chem*. 2010;285(40):30884–30905. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20622010
376. St-Pierre Y, Nabavi N, Ghogawala Z, et al. A functional role for signal transduction via the cytoplasmic domains of MHC class II proteins. *J Immunol*. 1989;143(3):808–812. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2473111
377. Nabavi N, Freeman GJ, Gault A, et al. Signalling through the MHC class II cytoplasmic domain is required for antigen presentation and induces B7 expression. *Nature*. 1992;360(6401):266–268. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1279442
378. Umemura YM, Vrljic M, Nishimura SY, et al. Both MHC class II and its GPI-anchored form undergo hop diffusion as observed by single-molecule tracking. *Biophys J*. 2008;95(1):435–450. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18339737
379. Schwartz RH. Immune response (Ir) genes of the murine major histocompatibility complex. *Adv Immunol*. 1986;38:31–201. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3083654
380. Babbitt BP, Allen PM, Matsueda G, et al. Binding of immunogenic peptides to Ia histocompatibility molecules. *Nature*. 1985;317(6035): 359–361. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3876513
381. Buus S, Sette A, Colon SM, et al. Isolation and characterization of antigen-Ia complexes involved in T cell recognition. *Cell*. 1986;47(6): 1071–1077. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3490919
382. Townsend A, Ohlen C, Foster L, et al. A mutant cell in which association of class I heavy and light chains is induced by viral peptides. *Cold Spr Harb Symp Quant Biol*. 1989;54(pt 1):299–308. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2484163

383. Boyd LF, Kozlowski S, Margulies DH. Solution binding of an antigenic peptide to a major histocompatibility complex class I molecule and the role of beta 2-microglobulin. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1992;89(6):2242–2246.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1549590
384. Van Bleek GM, Nathenson SG. Isolation of an endogenously processed immunodominant viral peptide from the class I H-2Kb molecule. *Nature*. 1990;348(6298):213–216.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1700303
385. Rotzschke O, Falk K, Deres K, et al. Isolation and analysis of naturally processed viral peptides as recognized by cytotoxic T cells. *Nature*. 1990;348(6298):252–254.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1700304
386. Rotzschke O, Falk K, Wallny HJ, et al. Characterization of naturally occurring minor histocompatibility peptides including H-4 and H-Y. *Science*. 1990;249(4966):283–287.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1695760
387. Rammensee HG, Falk K, Rotzschke O. Peptides naturally presented by MHC class I molecules. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 1993;11:213–244.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8476560
388. Arnott D, Shabanowitz J, Hunt DF. Mass spectrometry of proteins and peptides: sensitive and accurate mass measurement and sequence analysis. *Clin Chem*. 1993;39(9):2005–2010.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8375091
389. Hunt DF, Henderson RA, Shabanowitz J, et al. Characterization of peptides bound to the class I MHC molecule HLA-A2.1 by mass spectrometry. *Science*. 1992;255(5049):1261–1263.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1546328
390. Corr M, Boyd LF, Frankel SR, et al. Endogenous peptides of a soluble major histocompatibility complex class I molecule, H-2Lds: sequence motif, quantitative binding, and molecular modeling of the complex. *J Exp Med*. 1992;176(6):1681–1692.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1281216
391. Corr M, Boyd LF, Padlan EA, et al. H-2Dd exploits a four residue peptide binding motif. *J Exp Med*. 1993;178(6):1877–1892.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8245770
392. Gavin MA, Dere B, Grandea AG III, et al. Major histocompatibility complex class I allele-specific peptide libraries: identification of peptides that mimic an H-Y T cell epitope. *Eur J Immunol*. 1994;24(9):2124–2133.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7522161
393. Gavin MA, Bevan MJ. Major histocompatibility complex allele-specific peptide libraries and identification of T-cell mimotopes. *Methods Mol Biol*. 1998;87:235–248.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9523275
394. Hendrickson RC, Cicinnati VR, Albers A, et al. Identification of a 17beta-hydroxysteroid dehydrogenase type 12 pseudogene as the source of a highly restricted BALB/c Meth A tumor rejection peptide. *Cancer Immunol Immunother*. 2010;59(1):113–124.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19562340
395. Rammensee H, Bachmann J, Emmerich NP, et al. SYFPEITHI: database for MHC ligands and peptide motifs. *Immunogenetics*. 1999;50(3–4):213–219.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10602881
396. Peters B, Sidney J, Bourne P, et al. The design and implementation of the immune epitope database and analysis resource. *Immunogenetics*. 2005;57(5):326–336.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15895191
397. Parker KC, Bednarek MA, Coligan JE. Scheme for ranking potential HLA-A2 binding peptides based on independent binding of individual peptide side-chains. *J Immunol*. 1994;152(1):163–175.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8254189
398. Rudensky A, Preston-Hurlburt P, Hong SC, et al. Sequence analysis of peptides bound to MHC class II molecules. *Nature*. 1991;353(6345):622–627.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1656276
399. Chicz RM, Urban RG, Lane WS, et al. Predominant naturally processed peptides bound to HLA-DR1 are derived from MHC-related molecules and are heterogeneous in size. *Nature*. 1992;358(6389):764–768.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1380674
400. Janeway CA Jr, Mamula MJ, Rudensky A. Rules for peptide presentation by MHC class II molecules. *Int Rev Immunol*. 1993;10(4):301–311.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8294843
401. Urban RG, Chicz RM, Vignali DA, et al. The dichotomy of peptide presentation by class I and class II MHC proteins. *Chem Immunol*. 1993;57:197–234.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8260088
402. Hammer J, Takacs B, Sinigaglia F. Identification of a motif for HLA-DR1 binding peptides using M13 display libraries. *J Exp Med*. 1992;176(4):1007–1013.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1402647
403. Carrasco-Marin E, Petzold S, Unanue ER. Two structural states of complexes of peptide and class II major histocompatibility complex revealed by photoaffinity-labeled peptides. *J Biol Chem*. 1999;274(44):31333–31340.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10531333
404. Gugasyan R, Velazquez C, Vidavsky I, et al. Independent selection by I-Ak molecules of two epitopes found in tandem in an extended polypeptide antigen. *J Immunol*. 2000;165(6):3206–3213.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10975836
405. Cease KB, Berkower I, York-Jolley J, et al. T cell clones specific for an amphipathic alpha-helical region of sperm whale myoglobin show differing fine specificities for synthetic peptides. A multiview/single structure interpretation of immunodominance. *J Exp Med*. 1986;164(5):1779–1784.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3490536
406. Landais E, Romagnoli PA, Corper AL, et al. New design of MHC class II tetramers to accommodate fundamental principles of antigen presentation. *J Immunol*. 2009;183(12):7949–7957.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19923463
407. Chang KY, Suri A, Unanue ER. Predicting peptides bound to I-Ag7 class II histocompatibility molecules using a novel expectation-maximization alignment algorithm. *Proteomics*. 2007;7(3):367–377.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17211830
408. Gunther S, Schlundt A, Sticht J, et al. Bidirectional binding of invariant chain peptides to an MHC class II molecule. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2010;107(51):22219–22224.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21115828
409. Bjorkman PJ, Saper MA, Samraoui B, et al. The foreign antigen binding site and T cell recognition regions of class I histocompatibility antigens. *Nature*. 1987;329(6139):512–518.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2443855
410. Bjorkman PJ, Saper MA, Samraoui B, et al. Structure of the human class I histocompatibility antigen, HLA-A2. *Nature*. 1987;329(6139):506–512.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3309677
411. Garrett TP, Saper MA, Bjorkman PJ, et al. Specificity pockets for the side chains of peptide antigens in HLA-Aw68. *Nature*. 1989;342(6250):692–696.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2594067
412. Saper MA, Bjorkman PJ, Wiley DC. Refined structure of the human histocompatibility antigen HLA-A2 at 2.6 A resolution. *J Mol Biol*. 1991;219(2):277–319.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2038058
413. Madden DR, Gorga JC, Strominger JL, et al. The three-dimensional structure of HLA-B27 at 2.1 A resolution suggests a general mechanism for tight peptide binding to MHC. *Cell*. 1992;70(6):1035–1048.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1525820
414. Jardetzky TS, Lane WS, Robinson RA, et al. Identification of self peptides bound to purified HLA-B27. *Nature*. 1991;353(6342):326–329.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1922338
415. Zhang W, Young AC, Imarai M, et al. Crystal structure of the major histocompatibility complex class I H-2Kb molecule containing a single viral peptide: implications for peptide binding and T-cell receptor recognition. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1992;89(17):8403–8407.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1325657
416. Fremont DH, Matsumura M, Stura EA, et al. Crystal structures of two viral peptides in complex with murine MHC class I H-2Kb. *Science*. 1992;257(5072):919–927.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1323877
417. Fremont DH, Stura EA, Matsumura M, et al. Crystal structure of an H-2Kb-ovalbumin peptide complex reveals the interplay of primary and secondary anchor positions in the major histocompatibility complex binding groove. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1995;92(7):2479–2483.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7708669

418. Glithero A, Tormo J, Doering K, et al. The crystal structure of H-2D(b) complexed with a partial peptide epitope suggests a major histocompatibility complex class I assembly intermediate. *J Biol Chem*. 2006; 281(18):12699–12704.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16478731
419. Joyce S, Kuzushima K, Kepecs G, et al. Characterization of an incompletely assembled major histocompatibility class I molecule (H-2Kb) associated with unusually long peptides: implications for antigen processing and presentation. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1994;91(10): 4145–4149.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8183884
420. Collins EJ, Garboczi DN, Wiley DC. Three-dimensional structure of a peptide extending from one end of a class I MHC binding site. *Nature*. 1994;371(6498):626–629.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7935798
421. Lybarger L, Yu YY, Miley MJ, et al. Enhanced immune presentation of a single-chain major histocompatibility complex class I molecule engineered to optimize linkage of a C-terminally extended peptide. *J Biol Chem*. 2003;278(29):27105–27111.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1273263
422. Kastrup IB, Stevanovic S, Arsequell G, et al. Lectin purified human class I MHC-derived peptides: evidence for presentation of glycopeptides in vivo. *Tissue Antigens*. 2000;56(2):129–135.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11019912
423. Speir JA, Abdel-Motal UM, Jondal M, et al. Crystal structure of an MHC class I presented glycopeptide that generates carbohydrate-specific CTL. *Immunity*. 1999;10(1):51–61.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10023770
424. Glithero A, Tormo J, Haurum JS, et al. Crystal structures of two H-2Db/glycopeptide complexes suggest a molecular basis for CTL cross-reactivity. *Immunity*. 1999;10(1):63–74.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10023771
425. Speir JA, Stevens J, Joly E, et al. Two different, highly exposed, bulged structures for an unusually long peptide bound to rat MHC class I RT1-Aa. *Immunity*. 2001;14(1):81–92.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11163232
426. Miles JJ, Elhassen D, Borg NA, et al. CTL recognition of a bulged viral peptide involves biased TCR selection. *J Immunol*. 2005;175(6):3826–3834.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16148129
427. Tynan FE, Borg NA, Miles JJ, et al. High resolution structures of highly bulged viral epitopes bound to major histocompatibility complex class I. Implications for T-cell receptor engagement and T-cell immunodominance. *J Biol Chem*. 2005;280(25):23900–23909.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15849183
428. Tynan FE, Reid HH, Kjer-Nielsen L, et al. A T cell receptor flattens a bulged antigenic peptide presented by a major histocompatibility complex class I molecule. *Nat Immunol*. 2007;8(3):268–276.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17259989
429. Mohammed F, Cobbold M, Zarling AL, et al. Phosphorylation-dependent interaction between antigenic peptides and MHC class I: a molecular basis for the presentation of transformed self. *Nat Immunol*. 2008;9(11):1236–1243.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18836451
430. Petersen J, Wurzbacher SJ, Williamson NA, et al. Phosphorylated self-peptides alter human leukocyte antigen class I-restricted antigen presentation and generate tumor-specific epitopes. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2009;106(8):2776–2781.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19196958
431. Mitaksov V, Truscott SM, Lybarger L, et al. Structural engineering of pMHC reagents for T cell vaccines and diagnostics. *Chem Biol*. 2007; 14(8):909–922.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17719490
432. Celie PH, Toebes M, Rodenko B, et al. UV-induced ligand exchange in MHC class I protein crystals. *J Am Chem Soc*. 2009;131(34):12298–12304.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19655750
433. Brown JH, Jardetzky T, Saper MA, et al. A hypothetical model of the foreign antigen binding site of class II histocompatibility molecules. *Nature*. 1988;332(6167):845–850.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3258651
434. Brown JH, Jardetzky TS, Gorga JC, et al. Three-dimensional structure of the human class II histocompatibility antigen HLA-DR1. *Nature*. 1993; 364(6432):33–39.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8316295
435. Wu TT, Kabat EA. An analysis of the sequences of the variable regions of Bence Jones proteins and myeloma light chains and their implications for antibody complementarity. *J Exp Med*. 1970;132(2): 211–250.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/5508247
436. Shannon CE. The mathematical theory of communication. *Bell System Techn J*. 1948;27:379–423.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9230594
437. Shannon CE. The mathematical theory of communication. *Bell System Techn J*. 1948;27:623–656.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9230594
438. Strait BJ, Dewey TG. The Shannon information entropy of protein sequences. *Biophys J*. 1996;71(1):148–155.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8804598
439. Stern LJ, Brown JH, Jardetzky TS, et al. Crystal structure of the human class II MHC protein HLA-DR1 complexed with an influenza virus peptide. *Nature*. 1994;368(6468):215–221.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8145819
440. Fields BA, Ober B, Malchiodi EL, et al. Crystal structure of the V alpha domain of a T cell antigen receptor. *Science*. 1995;270(5243):1821–1824.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8525376
441. Schafer PH, Malapati S, Hanfelt KK, et al. The assembly and stability of MHC class II-(alpha beta)2 superdimers. *J Immunol*. 1998;161(5): 2307–2316.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9725225
442. Abastado JP, Lone YC, Casrouge A, et al. Dimerization of soluble major histocompatibility complex-peptide complexes is sufficient for activation of T cell hybridoma and induction of unresponsiveness. *J Exp Med*. 1995;182(2):439–447.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7629504
443. Reich Z, Boniface JJ, Lyons DS, et al. Ligand-specific oligomerization of T-cell receptor molecules. *Nature*. 1997;387(6633):617–620.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9177351
444. Fremont DH, Hendrickson WA, Marrack P, et al. Structures of an MHC class II molecule with covalently bound single peptides. *Science*. 1996; 272(5264):1001–1004.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8638119
445. Fremont DH, Dai S, Chiang H, et al. Structural basis of cytochrome c presentation by IE(k). *J Exp Med*. 2002;195(8):1043–1052.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11956295
446. Plaksin D, Chacko S, McPhie P, et al. A T cell receptor V alpha domain expressed in bacteria: does it dimerize in solution? *J Exp Med*. 1996; 184(4):1251–1258.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8879196
447. Garboczi DN, Ghosh P, Utz U, et al. Structure of the complex between human T-cell receptor, viral peptide and HLA-A2. *Nature*. 1996; 384(6605):134–141.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8906788
448. Garcia KC, Degano M, Stanfield RL, et al. An alphabeta T cell receptor structure at 2.5 A and its orientation in the TCR-MHC complex. *Science*. 1996;274(5285):209–219.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8824178
449. Reinherz EL, Tan K, Tang L, et al. The crystal structure of a T cell receptor in complex with peptide and MHC class II. *Science*. 1999; 286(5446):1913–1921.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10583947
450. Hennecke J, CarfiA, Wiley DC. Structure of a covalently stabilized complex of a human alphabeta T-cell receptor, influenza HA peptide and MHC class II molecule, HLA-DR1. *EMBO J*. 2000;19(21):5611–5624.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11060013
451. Corper AL, Stratmann T, Apostolopoulos V, et al. A structural framework for deciphering the link between I-Ag7 and autoimmune diabetes. *Science*. 2000;288(5465):505–511.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10775108
452. Latek RR, Suri A, Petzold SJ, et al. Structural basis of peptide binding and presentation by the type I diabetes-associated MHC class II molecule of NOD mice. *Immunity*. 2000;12(6):699–710.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10894169
453. Zeng Z, Castano AR, Segelke BW, et al. Crystal structure of mouse CD1: an MHC-like fold with a large hydrophobic binding groove. *Science*. 1997;277(5324):339–345.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9219685

454. Gadola SD, Zaccai NR, Harlos K, et al. Structure of human CD1b with bound ligands at 2.3 A, a maze for alkyl chains. *Nat Immunol*. 2002; 3(8):721–726.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12118248
455. Wang CR, Lindahl KF, Deisenhofer J. Crystal structure of the MHC class Ib molecule H2-M3. *Res Immunol*. 1996;147(5):313–321.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8876059
456. Li P, Morris DL, Willcox BE, et al. Complex structure of the activating immunoreceptor NKG2D and its MHC class I-like ligand MICA. *Nat Immunol*. 2001;2(5):443–451.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11323699
457. Li P, Willie ST, Bauer S, et al. Crystal structure of the MHC class I homolog MIC-A, a gammadelta T cell ligand. *Immunity*. 1999;10(5): 577–584.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10367903
458. Burmeister WP, Gastinel LN, Simister NE, et al. Crystal structure at 2.2 A resolution of the MHC-related neonatal Fc receptor. *Nature*. 1994; 372(6504):336–343.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7969491
459. Li P, McDermott G, Strong RK. Crystal structures of RAE-1beta and its complex with the activating immunoreceptor NKG2D. *Immunity*. 2002;16(1):77–86.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11825567
460. Carayannopoulos LN, Naidenko OV, Kinder J, et al. Ligands for murine NKG2D display heterogeneous binding behavior. *Eur J Immunol*. 2002; 32(3):597–605.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11857333
461. Treiner E, Duban L, Bahram S, et al. Selection of evolutionarily conserved mucosal-associated invariant T cells by MR1. *Nature*. 2003; 422(6928):164–169.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12634786
462. Loveland B, Wang CR, Yonekawa H, et al. Maternally transmitted histocompatibility antigen of mice: a hydrophobic peptide of a mitochondrially encoded protein. *Cell*. 1990;60(6):971–980.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2317868
463. Wang CR, Castano AR, Peterson PA, et al. Nonclassical binding of formylated peptide in crystal structure of the MHC class Ib molecule H2-M3. *Cell*. 1995;82(4):655–664.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7664344
464. Moody DB, Besra GS, Wilson IA, et al. The molecular basis of CD1-mediated presentation of lipid antigens. *Immunol Rev*. 1999;172:285–296.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10631954
465. Calabi F, Jarvis JM, Martin L, et al. Two classes of CD1 genes. *Eur J Immunol*. 1989;19(2):285–292.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2467814
466. Zajonc DM, Kronenberg M. CD1 mediated T cell recognition of glycolipids. *Curr Opin Struct Biol*. 2007;17(5):521–529.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17951048
467. Shamshiev A, Donda A, Carena I, et al. Self glycolipids as T-cell autoantigens. *Eur J Immunol*. 1999;29(5):1667–1675.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10359121
468. Rosat JP, Grant EP, Beckman EM, et al. CD1-restricted microbial lipid antigen-specific recognition found in the CD8 + alpha beta T cell pool. *J Immunol*. 1999;162(1):366–371.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9886408
469. Bendelac A, Rivera MN, Park SH, et al. Mouse CD1-specific NK1 T cells: development, specificity, and function. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 1997; 15:535–562.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9143699
470. Koch M, Stronge VS, Shepherd D, et al. The crystal structure of human CD1d with and without alpha-galactosylceramide. *Nat Immunol*. 2005; 6(8):819–826.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16007090
471. Wun KS, Cameron G, Patel O, et al. A molecular basis for the exquisite CD1d-restricted antigen specificity and functional responses of natural killer T cells. *Immunity*. 2011;34(3):327–339.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21376639
472. Borg NA, Wun KS, Kjer-Nielsen L, et al. CD1d-lipid-antigen recognition by the semi-invariant NKT T-cell receptor. *Nature*. 2007;448(7149):44–49.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17581592
473. Pellicci DG, Clarke AJ, Patel O, et al. Recognition of beta-linked self glycolipids mediated by natural killer T cell antigen receptors. *Nat Immunol*. 2011;12(9):827–833.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21804559
474. Girardi E, Yu ED, Li Y, et al. Unique interplay between sugar and lipid in determining the antigenic potency of bacterial antigens for NKT cells. *PLoS Biol*. 2011;9(11):e1001189.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22069376
475. Simister NE, Rees AR. Isolation and characterization of an Fc receptor from neonatal rat small intestine. *Eur J Immunol*. 1985;15(7):733–738.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2988974
476. Simister NE, Mostov KE. Cloning and expression of the neonatal rat intestinal Fc receptor, a major histocompatibility complex class I antigen homolog. *Cold Spring Harb Symp Quant Biol*. 1989;54(pt 1): 571–580.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2534798
477. Ahouse JJ, Hagerman CL, Mittal P, et al. Mouse MHC class I-like Fc receptor encoded outside the MHC. *J Immunol*. 1993;151(11):6076–6088.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7504013
478. Story CM, Mikulska JE, Simister NE. A major histocompatibility complex class I-like Fc receptor cloned from human placenta: possible role in transfer of immunoglobulin G from mother to fetus. *J Exp Med*. 1994;180(6):2377–2381.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7964511
479. Simister NE. IgG Fc receptors that resemble class I major histocompatibility complex antigens. *Biochem Soc Trans*. 1993;21(4):973–976.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7510654
480. Israel EJ, Wilsker DF, Hayes KC, et al. Increased clearance of IgG in mice that lack beta 2-microglobulin: possible protective role of FcRn. *Immunology*. 1996;89(4):573–578.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9014824
481. Kasahara M, Watanabe Y, Sumasu M, et al. A family of MHC class I-like genes located in the vicinity of the mouse leukocyte receptor complex. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2002;99(21):13687–13692.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12370446
482. Watanabe Y, Maruoka T, Walter L, et al. Comparative genomics of the Mill family: a rapidly evolving MHC class I gene family. *Eur J Immunol*. 2004;34(6):1597–1607.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15162429
483. Kajikawa M, Baba T, Tomaru U, et al. MHC class I-like MILL molecules are beta2-microglobulin-associated, GPI-anchored glycoproteins that do not require TAP for cell surface expression. *J Immunol*. 2006; 177(5):3108–3115.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16920948
484. Rabinovich BA, Ketchem RR, Wolfson M, et al. A role for the MHC class I-like Mill molecules in nutrient metabolism and wound healing. *Immunol Cell Biol*. 2008;86(6):489–496.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18560379
485. Olson R, Huey-Tubman KE, Dulac C, et al. Structure of a pheromone receptor-associated MHC molecule with an open and empty groove. *PLoS Biol*. 2005;3(8):e257.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16089503
486. Yang Z, Bjorkman PJ. Structure of UL18, a peptide-binding viral MHC mimic, bound to a host inhibitory receptor. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2008;105(29):10095–10100.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18632577
487. Natarajan K, Hicks A, Mans J, et al. Crystal structure of the murine cytomegalovirus MHC-I homolog m144. *J Mol Biol*. 2006;358(1): 157–171.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16500675
488. Zhi L, Mans J, Paskow MJ, et al. Direct interaction of the mouse cytomegalovirus m152/gp40 immunoevasin with RAE-1 isoforms. *Biochemistry*. 2010;49(11):2443–2453.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20166740
489. Yang Z, West AP Jr, Bjorkman PJ. Crystal structure of TNFalpha complexed with a poxvirus MHC-related TNF binding protein. *Nat Struct Mol Biol*. 2009;16(11):1189–1191.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19838188
490. Schneider CL, Hudson AW. The human herpesvirus-7 (HHV-7) U21 immunoevasin subverts NK-mediated cytoxicity through modulation of MICA and MICB. *PLoS Pathog*. 2011;7(11):e1002362.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22102813
491. Smith LM, Shellam GR, Redwood AJ. Genes of murine cytomegalovirus exist as a number of distinct genotypes. *Virology*. 2006;352(2): 450–465.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16781754

492. Chapman TL, Bjorkman PJ. Characterization of a murine cytomegalovirus class I major histocompatibility complex (MHC) homolog: comparison to MHC molecules and to the human cytomegalovirus MHC homolog. *J Virol*. 1998;72(1):460–466. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9420246
493. Adams EJ, Juo ZS, Venook RT, et al. Structural elucidation of the m157 mouse cytomegalovirus ligand for Ly49 natural killer cell receptors. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2007;104(24):10128–10133. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17537914
494. Wang R, Natarajan K, Margulies DH. Personal communication, August 6, 2012. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22753930
495. Cretney E, Degli-Esposti MA, Densley EH, et al. m144, a murine cytomegalovirus (MCMV)-encoded major histocompatibility complex class I homologue, confers tumor resistance to natural killer cell-mediated rejection. *J Exp Med*. 1999;190(3):435–444. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10430631
496. Kubota A, Kubota S, Farrell HE, et al. Inhibition of NK cells by murine CMV-encoded class I MHC homologue m144. *Cell Immunol*. 1999; 191(2):145–151. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9973537
497. Hennecke J, Wiley DC. Structure of a complex of the human alpha/ beta T cell receptor (TCR) HA1.7, influenza hemagglutinin peptide, and major histocompatibility complex class II molecule, HLA-DR4 (DRA*0101 and DRB1*0401): insight into TCR cross-restriction and alloreactivity. *J Exp Med*. 2002;195(5):571–581.
498. Reiser JB, Darnault C, Guimezanes A, et al. Crystal structure of a T cell receptor bound to an allogeneic MHC molecule. *Nat Immunol*. 2000; 1(4):291–297. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11017099
499. Garcia KC, Degano M, Pease LR, et al. Structural basis of plasticity in T cell receptor recognition of a self peptide-MHC antigen. *Science*. 1998; 279(5354):1166–1172. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9469799
500. Reiser JB, Gregoire C, Darnault C, et al. A T cell receptor CDR3beta loop undergoes conformational changes of unprecedented magnitude upon binding to a peptide/MHC class I complex. *Immunity*. 2002; 16(3):345–354. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11911820
501. Crispe IN, Husmann LA, Bevan MJ. T cell receptor expression and receptor-mediated induction of clonal growth in the developing mouse thymus. High surface beta-chain density is a requirement for functional maturity. *Eur J Immunol*. 1986;16(10):1283–1288. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3095126
502. Colf LA, Bankovich AJ, Hanick NA, et al. How a single T cell receptor recognizes both self and foreign MHC. *Cell*. 2007;129(1):135–146. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17418792
503. Macdonald WA, Chen Z, Gras S, et al. T cell allorecognition via molecular mimicry. *Immunity*. 2009;31(6):897–908. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20064448
504. Gras S, Burrows SR, Kjer-Nielsen L, et al. The shaping of T cell receptor recognition by self-tolerance. *Immunity*. 2009;30(2):193–203. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19167249
505. Adams JJ, Narayanan S, Liu B, et al. T cell receptor signaling is limited by docking geometry to peptide-major histocompatibility complex. *Immunity*. 2011;35(5):681–693. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22101157
506. Devine L, Kavathas PB. Molecular analysis of protein interactions mediating the function of the cell surface protein CD8. *Immunol Res*. 1999;19(2–3):201–210. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10493174
507. Gao GF, Jakobsen BK. Molecular interactions of coreceptor CD8 and MHC class I: the molecular basis for functional coordination with the T-cell receptor. *Immunol Today*. 2000;21(12):630–636. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11114424
508. Gao GF, Tormo J, Gerth UC, et al. Crystal structure of the complex between human CD8alpha(alpha) and HLA-A2. *Nature*. 1997; 387(6633):630–634. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9177355
509. Kern PS, Teng MK, Smolyar A, et al. Structural basis of CD8 co-receptor function revealed by crystallographic analysis of a murine CD8alphaalpha ectodomain fragment in complex with H-2Kb. *Immunity*. 1998;9(4):519–530. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9806638
510. Maddon PJ, Dalgleish AG, McDougal JS, et al. The T4 gene encodes the AIDS virus receptor and is expressed in the immune system and the brain. *Cell*. 1986;47(3):333–348. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3094962
511. Wu H, Kwong PD, Hendrickson WA. Dimeric association and segmental variability in the structure of human CD4. *Nature*. 1997;387(6632): 527–530. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9168119
512. Shen X, Hu B, McPhie P, et al. Peptides corresponding to CD4-interacting regions of murine MHC class II molecules modulate immune responses of CD4 + T lymphocytes in vitro and in vivo. *J Immunol*. 1996;157(1):87–100. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8683160
513. Lanier LL. Activating and inhibitory NK cell receptors. *Adv Exp Med Biol*. 1998;452:13–18. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9889954
514. Natarajan K, Dimasi N, Wang J, et al. Structure and function of natural killer cell receptors: multiple molecular solutions to self, nonself discrimination. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 2002;20:853–885. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11861620
515. Radaev S, Rostro B, Brooks AG, et al. Conformational plasticity revealed by the cocrystal structure of NKG2D and its class I MHC-like ligand ULBP3. *Immunity*. 2001;15(6):1039–1049. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11754823
516. Matsumoto N, Mitsuki M, Tajima K, et al. The functional binding site for the C-type lectin-like natural killer cell receptor Ly49A spans three domains of its major histocompatibility complex class I ligand. *J Exp Med*. 2001;193(2):147–158. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11148219
517. Wang J, Whitman MC, Natarajan K, et al. Binding of the natural killer cell inhibitory receptor Ly49A to its major histocompatibility complex class I ligand. Crucial contacts include both H-2Dd AND beta 2-microglobulin. *J Biol Chem*. 2002;277(2):1433–1442. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11696552
518. Dimasi N, Sawicki MW, Reineck LA, et al. Crystal structure of the Ly49I natural killer cell receptor reveals variability in dimerization mode within the Ly49 family. *J Mol Biol*. 2002;320(3):573–585. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12096910
519. Dam J, Guan R, Natarajan K, et al. Variable MHC class I engagement by Ly49 natural killer cell receptors demonstrated by the crystal structure of Ly49C bound to H-2K(b). *Nat Immunol*. 2003;4(12):1213–1222. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14595439
520. Held W, Mariuzza RA. Cis-trans interactions of cell surface receptors: biological roles and structural basis. *Cell Mol Life Sci*. 2011;68(21): 3469–3478. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21863376
521. Herman A, Kappler JW, Marrack P, et al. Superantigens: mechanism of T-cell stimulation and role in immune responses. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 1991;9:745–772. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1832875
522. Rovira P, Buckle M, Abastado JP, et al. Major histocompatibility class I molecules present Urtica dioica agglutinin, a superantigen of vegetal origin, to T lymphocytes. *Eur J Immunol*. 1999;29(5):1571–1580. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10359111
523. Harata K, Muraki M. Crystal structures of Urtica dioica agglutinin and its complex with tri-N-acetylchitotriose. *J Mol Biol*. 2000;297(3): 673–681. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10731420
524. Saul FA, Rovira P, Boulot G, et al. Crystal structure of Urtica dioica agglutinin, a superantigen presented by MHC molecules of class I and class II. *Structure Fold Des*. 2000;8(6):593–603. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10873861
525. Papageorgiou AC, Acharya KR. Microbial superantigens: from structure to function. *Trends Microbiol*. 2000;8(8):369–375. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10920396
526. Jardetzky TS, Brown JH, Gorga JC, et al. Three-dimensional structure of a human class II histocompatibility molecule complexed with superantigen. *Nature*. 1994;368(6473):711–718. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8152483
527. Fields BA, Malchiodi EL, Li H, et al. Crystal structure of a T-cell receptor beta-chain complexed with a superantigen. *Nature*. 1996; 384(6605):188–192. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8906797

528. Petersson K, Hakansson M, Nilsson H, et al. Crystal structure of a superantigen bound to MHC class II displays zinc and peptide dependence. *EMBO J*. 2001;20(13):3306–3312. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11432818
529. Delon J, Germain RN. Information transfer at the immunological synapse. *Curr Biol*. 2000;10(24):R923–933. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11137031
530. Wang L, Zhao Y, Li Z, et al. Crystal structure of a complete ternary complex of TCR, superantigen and peptide-MHC. *Nat Struct Mol Biol*. 2007;14(2):169–171. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17220897
531. Saline M, Rodstrom KE, Fischer G, et al. The structure of superantigen complexed with TCR and MHC reveals novel insights into superantigenic T cell activation. *Nat Commun*. 2010;1:119. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21081917
532. Fremont DH, Rees WA, Kozono H. Biophysical studies of T-cell receptors and their ligands. *Curr Opin Immunol*. 1996;8(1):93–100. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8729452
533. Matsui K, Boniface JJ, Reay PA, et al. Low affinity interaction of peptide-MHC complexes with T cell receptors. *Science*. 1991;254(5039):1788–1791. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1763329
534. Matsui K, Boniface JJ, Steffner P, et al. Kinetics of T-cell receptor binding to peptide/I-Ek complexes: correlation of the dissociation rate with T-cell responsiveness. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1994;91(26):12862–12866. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7809136
535. Khilko SN, Jelonek MT, Corr M, et al. Measuring interactions of MHC class I molecules using surface plasmon resonance. *J Immunol Methods*. 1995;183(1):77–94. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7602142
536. Corr M, Slanetz AE, Boyd LF, et al. T cell receptor-MHC class I peptide interactions: affinity, kinetics, and specificity. *Science*. 1994;265(5174):946–949. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8052850
537. Sykulev Y, Brunmark A, Jackson M, et al. Kinetics and affinity of reactions between an antigen-specific T cell receptor and peptide-MHC complexes. *Immunity*. 1994;1(1):15–22. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7889394
538. Alam SM, Travers PJ, Wung JL, et al. T-cell-receptor affinity and thymocyte positive selection. *Nature*. 1996;381(6583):616–620. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8637599
539. Alam SM, Davies GM, Lin CM, et al. Qualitative and quantitative differences in T cell receptor binding of agonist and antagonist ligands. *Immunity*. 1999;10(2):227–237. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10072075
540. Willcox BE, Gao GF, Wyer JR, et al. TCR binding to peptide-MHC stabilizes a flexible recognition interface. *Immunity*. 1999;10(3):357–365. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10204491
541. Natarajan K, Boyd LF, Schuck P, et al. Interaction of the NK cell inhibitory receptor Ly49A with H-2Dd: identification of a site distinct from the TCR site. *Immunity*. 1999;11(5):591–601. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10591184
542. Vales-Gomez M, Reyburn HT, Erskine RA, et al. Kinetics and peptide dependency of the binding of the inhibitory NK receptor CD94/NKG2-A and the activating receptor CD94/NKG2-C to HLA-E. *EMBO J*. 1999;18(15):4250–4260. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10428963
543. Fooksman DR, Dustin ML. Affinity measured by microcluster. *J Exp Med*. 2010;207(5):907–909. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20439542
544. Dustin ML. Making a little affinity go a long way: a topological view of LFA-1 regulation. *Cell Adhes Commun*. 1998;6(2–3):255–262. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9823476
545. Sabatino JJ Jr, Huang J, Zhu C, et al. High prevalence of low affinity peptide-MHC II tetramer-negative effectors during polyclonal CD4 + T cell responses. *J Exp Med*. 2011;208(1):81–90. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21220453
546. Huang J, Edwards LJ, Evavold BD, et al. Kinetics of MHC-CD8 interaction at the T cell membrane. *J Immunol*. 2007;179(11):7653–7662. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18025211
547. Altman JD, Moss PA, Goulder PJ, et al. Phenotypic analysis of antigen-specific T lymphocytes. *Science*. 1996;274(5284):94–96. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8810254
548. O'Herrin SM, Lebowitz MS, Bieler JG, et al. Analysis of the expression of peptide-major histocompatibility complexes using high affinity soluble divalent T cell receptors. *J Exp Med*. 1997;186(8):1333–1345. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9334373
549. Hanke T, Takizawa H, McMahon CW, et al. Direct assessment of MHC class I binding by seven Ly49 inhibitory NK cell receptors. *Immunity*. 1999;11(1):67–77. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10435580
550. Mehta IK, Smith HR, Wang J, et al. A "chimeric" C57l-derived Ly49 inhibitory receptor resembling the Ly49D activation receptor. *Cell Immunol*. 2001;209(1):29–41. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11414734
551. Mehta IK, Wang J, Roland J, et al. Ly49A allelic variation and MHC class I specificity. *Immunogenetics*. 2001;53(7):572–583. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11685470
552. Braud VM, Allan DS, O'Callaghan CA, et al. HLA-E binds to natural killer cell receptors CD94/NKG2A, B and C. *Nature*. 1998;391(6669):795–799. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9486650
553. Cameron T, Norris P, Patel A, et al. Labeling antigen-specific CD4(+) T cells with class II MHC oligomers. *J Immunol Methods*. 2002;268(1):51. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12213343
554. Hugues S, Malherbe L, Filippi C, et al. Generation and use of alternative multimers of peptide/MHC complexes. *J Immunol Methods*. 2002;268(1):83. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12213345
555. Malherbe L, Filippi C, Julia V, et al. Selective activation and expansion of high-affinity CD4 + T cells in resistant mice upon infection with Leishmania major. *Immunity*. 2000;13(6):771–782. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11163193
556. Lebowitz MS, O'Herrin SM, Hamad AR, et al. Soluble, high-affinity dimers of T-cell receptors and class II major histocompatibility complexes: biochemical probes for analysis and modulation of immune responses. *Cell Immunol*. 1999;192(2):175–184. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10087186
557. Crawford F, Kozono H, White J, et al. Detection of antigen-specific T cells with multivalent soluble class II MHC covalent peptide complexes. *Immunity*. 1998;8(6):675–682. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9655481
558. McCluskey J. The human leucocyte antigens and clinical medicine. In: Bradley J, McCluskey J, eds. *Clinical Immunology*. Oxford, NY; Oxford University Press;1997;415–427.
559. Berman HM, Westbrook J, Feng Z, et al. The protein data bank. *Nucleic Acids Res*. 2000;28(1);235–242. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10592235
560. DeLano WL. *The PyMol Molecular Graphics System*. 2002. www.pymol.org.
561. Kruisbeek AM. Commonly used mouse strains. Current protocols in immunology. 2001;17:A.1C.1–A.1C.2. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18432639
562. Biddison, WE, Martin R. Peptide binding motifs for MHC class I and II molecules. *Current Protocols in Immunology*. 2001;36:A.1I.1–A.1I.7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18432645

CHAPTER 22

Antigen Processing and Presentation

Ted H. Hansen • Paul A. Roche

ANTIGEN PRESENTATION PATHWAYS

As part of the adaptive immune response, T cells mount immune responses to diseased cells and abnormal cells. Remarkably, the mechanism by which T cells discriminate self from non-self is based on pathogen- or tumor-derived proteins displayed on the cell surface by self–major histocompatibility complex (MHC) molecules. More specifically, when T cells detect diseased cells displaying MHC molecules loaded with peptides derived from foreign peptides, effector mechanisms are initiated to eliminate the diseased cell. By contrast, T cells that detect cells displaying MHC molecules loaded with peptides derived from self-proteins are either eliminated during ontogeny by negative selection or suppressed by peripheral tolerance mechanisms. Thus, at the molecular level, the T-cell receptors on T cells discriminates MHC loaded with self- versus non–self-peptides displayed at the cell surface of normal and diseased cells. The mechanisms by which peptide ligands for MHC molecules are generated is referred to as *antigen processing*, whereas the mechanism by which peptide/MHC complexes are displayed at the cell surface is called *antigen presentation*.

To assure the appropriate effector mechanism is generated to detect cells infected with pathogens in the cytosol or endocytic compartments, the antigen presentation pathways for classical cluster of differentiation (CD)8+ versus CD4+ T cells are different. More specifically, antigen derived from intracellular pathogens is typically bound to MHC-I proteins that are uniquely detected by CD8 T cells, whereas antigen derived from extracellular pathogens is typically bound to MHC-II proteins that are uniquely detected by CD4 T cells. To preferentially bind peptides derived from proteins synthesized inside the cell, the processing of peptides that bind MHC-I proteins occurs in the cytosol and the loading of these peptides occurs in the endoplasmic reticulum (ER). This pathway is commonly referred to as the classical MHC-I antigen-binding pathway. By contrast, to preferentially bind peptides from proteins synthesized outside the cell, the processing and loading of antigenic peptide ligands for MHC-II proteins occurs in an endocytic pathway terminating in the lysosomes. This pathway is typically referred to the classical MHC-II antigen-binding pathway. The differences between the MHC-I and MHC-II antigen presentation pathways are determined by their differential interaction with molecular chaperones. These same molecular chaperones enforce the quality control of antigen presentation to assure appropriate T cells are activated for detection and elimination of pathogen-infected cells or tumors.

ANTIGEN PROCESSING AND PRESENTATION BY MAJOR HISTOCOMPATIBILITY CLASS I (MHC-I) PROTEINS

Origin of MHC-I binding peptides

As detailed in Chapter 21, MHC-I proteins preferentially bind peptides of 8 to 10 amino acid lengths, and which peptides bind is determined by MHC-I allele-specific polymorphic residues that form the architecture of its peptide binding groove. Each MHC-I allele typically binds peptides with a consensus binding motif requiring a relatively specific amino acid central anchor and a C-terminal hydrophobic amino acid. Given the lack of restraints in most peptide positions and the large number of proteins synthesized by each cell relative to the number of MHC molecules, the selective processes controlling which peptides get presented is of considerable importance for the detection of pathogens and malignancies.

The source of the peptides that get presented during infection has been a question of considerable investigation. It has been known for some time that MHC-I–binding peptides are derived from membrane-bound, secreted, cytosolic, and nuclear proteins that are almost exclusively generated by the proteasome in the cytosol. However, the uncertainty of peptide source is based on two apparently incongruent observations. Most proteins from which MHC-I–binding peptides are derived have slow rates of turnover in cells ranging from hours to days; viral-derived peptides are presented by infected cells to CD8 T cells within a few minutes. This disparity between the degradation versus presentation kinetics is potentially explained by cumulative observations that a fraction of newly synthesized polypeptides are rapidly degraded, providing a peptide reservoir sufficient to support a robust CD8 T-cell response. Supporting evidence for this conclusion comes from studies that block protein synthesis with cycloheximide and detected a rapid decrease in the peptide supply for MHC-I binding.[1,2] One of the more elegant ways to monitor peptide transport into the ER was by transporter associated with antigen presentation (TAP) mobility in the ER membrane by photobleaching; establishing TAP mobility was proportional to the peptides in the cytosol. This assay was used to show a 90% reduction in peptide supply after 30 m treatment with cycloheximide, thus kinetically linking presentation closely to translation.[3] Indeed, there are now several reports that within 30 minutes after synthesis, antigenic peptides are presented at

the cell surface at levels that activate T cells.[4,5] What remained unclear from these studies is the biochemical and mechanistic basis for the generation of these rapidly transcribed proteins from which MHC-I–binding peptides are derived.

In a model that has gained wide acceptance, Yewdell and colleagues proposed that a rapid supply of MHC-I ligands is derived from aberrant protein production they termed defective ribosomal products or DriPs.[6,7] In their model, it was speculated that DriPs could be derived from unfolded or misfolded proteins of the proper sequence and length, proteins with errors in sequence or posttranslational modifications, prematurely terminated proteins, and proteins translated from the wrong start codon.[8] Regarding aberrant translations, there is evidence that MHC-presented peptides can arise from alternative reading frames, generating what has been called cryptic epitopes.[9] For example, Schwab et al. showed that inhibition of the eukaryotic translational initiation factor eIF2α resulted in the synthesis of cryptic peptides and intriguingly, viruses inhibit host translation by inactivating eIF2α.[10,11] However, most MHC-I–presented peptides have native amino acid sequence and are derived from standard messenger ribonucleic acid (mRNA) translation products, suggesting cryptic epitopes represent only a minor component of MHC-presented peptides. In addition, the contribution of peptides derived from misfolded proteins in the secretory pathway is also likely modest. Although antigenic peptides from misfolded tyrosinase were found to be preferentially presented,[12] other studies show that several mutations causing misfolding do not lead to enhanced antigen presentation. Furthermore, ER quality control is typically too slow to account for the rapid supply of MHC-I–binding peptides.[13] The reason for this kinetic delay is that substrates for ER-associated degradation (ERAD) must be 1) translocated into the ER, 2) detected presumably by ER chaperones as being misfolded, 3) ubiquitinated and extracted from the ER, and 4) degraded by the proteasome in the cytosol. Thus the predominance of MHC-I–presented peptides likely does not come from cryptic epitopes or misfolded ER proteins identified by ER quality control.

To obviate trafficking into the ER, misfolded secretory proteins could be degraded rapidly based on degron detection such as unshielded hydrophobicity.[14] Alternatively, early in translation a lack of signal recognition particle engagement could lead to the mistargeting of secretory proteins to the cytosol. In support of this model, Schlosser et al.[15] showed that an epitope encompassing the signal peptidase cleavage site was efficiently presented by MHC-I proteins. To rapidly generate peptides, it has been speculated that cells may have select ribosomes called "immunoribosomes."[16] Such immunoribosomes might be more adept at generating peptides with TAP access perhaps by compartmentalization and/or targeting proteins to the 20S proteasome for immediate destruction. In any case, there is considerable evidence that antigenic peptides can be rapidly presented by MHC-I within minutes after translation of the protein source. The physiologic significance of this rapid kinetics of antigen presentation is that it allows CD8 T cells to kill virus-infected cells before viral replication is completed and progeny are released. However, whether the production of peptides bound to MHC class I molecules is a deliberate process for degrading defective translation products and/or a stochastic event of normal protein translation remains to be determined.[17]

Peptide Trimming in the Cytosol

Degradation of cellular and antigenic peptides bound to MHC-I is largely mediated in the cytosol by the proteasome. The proteasome is responsible for the degradation of the majority of cytosolic and nuclear proteins, and in most cases proteasome targeted proteins are ubiquitinated. Ubiquitin (Ub) is typically coupled to internal lysine residues of proteins substrates, but coupling can also occur at the N terminus or on internal cysteine, serine, or threonine residues.[18–21] In this orchestrated process, activated Ub is transferred from one predominant Ub-activating enzyme (E1) to one of 30 to 40 mammalian Ub conjugating enzymes (E2s) and then to the substrate that is bound by one of hundreds of different ubiquitin protein ligases (E3s). The E3s are the major determinant of substrate specificity. This process can be repeated to form polyUb chains whereupon the next Ub moiety is added to one of the seven internal lysine residues of Ub. Proteins coupled with polyUb chains of four or more Ub moieties linked through Lys48 Ub residues are the prototypic signal for proteasome mediated degradation.

The cylindrical 20S catalytic particle (CP) of the proteasome is formed by four stacked rings of seven subunits each. The inner two rings of the 20S proteasome are assembled from the beta subunits, three of which have catalytic activity with chymotryptic, tryptic, or caspase activity. Thus each proteasome has six active sites with the ability to cleave after most types of peptide bonds, although to differing efficiencies based on flanking residues. The catalytic sites are exposed to the interior of the central chamber of the 20S cylinder. The two outer rings of the 20S proteasome are assembled from alpha subunits forming a pore of 13 Angstrom, mandating protein substrates be partially denatured prior to entering the interior of the chamber. The gate of the 20S CP is normally closed, and access to the interior of the 20S proteasome is controlled by the complex of proteins termed the 19S regulatory particle that binds to each end of the 20S cylinder. The full assemblage of 19S-20S-19S complex constitutes the 26S proteasome. The lid of the 19S regulator particle binds and deubiquitinates protein substrates before they gain entry in the 20S CP; the base of the 19S regulatory particle contains ATPases that promote substrate unfolding and open the gate of the 20S CP to provide access of denatured protein substrates to the catalytic activity of the inner chamber.

The evolutionarily conserved function of the proteasome is for recycling amino acids and ubiquitin moieties. However, in mammals, modifications to the proteasome have been made to promote antigen presentation. In response to interferon (IFN)γ stimulation that occurs during inflammation, three catalytic subunits of the constitutively expressed proteasome are replaced by IFNγ-induced homologs forming what is called the immunoproteasome. More specifically, subunits β1, β2, and β5 of the constitutive proteasome are replaced by subunits β1i (LMP2), β2i (MECL-1), and β5i (LMP7) of the immunoproteasome. Suggesting an immunologic function, LMP2 and 5 are genetically encoded within a central

region of the mouse and human MHCs juxtaposed to genes encoding the TAP heterodimer. Consistent with their immunologic relevance, the immunoproteasomes display enhanced cleavage of protein substrates after hydrophobic and basic amino acids, thus generating peptides with C-terminal residues preferred for binding to many MHC-I alleles. IFNγ stimulation also induces the expression of PA28α and PA28β that form the 11S regulatory particle, which can also bind to either end of the 20S CP. Interestingly, the PA28 regulatory particle does not contain ATPases, but it does induce conformational changes to open the 20S CP gate. Thus, PA28 may function to prevent the overdigestion of short peptides. This is an important issue, as it has been estimated that a nonamer peptide in the cytosol has a half-life of only 7 seconds.[22] However, studies testing PA28α/β-deficient mice demonstrated that PA28α/β is not required for overall antigen presentation during virus infection, but may affect degradation of select substrates.[23] In any case, the inclusion of the IFNγ-inducible β subunits into the 20S CP of immunoproteasome enhances antigen presentation by generating peptides with preferred C-terminal anchor residues, and in some same cases inclusion of the PA28 regulatory particle may prevent overdegradation of immunologically relevant proteins.

The proteasome generates the final C-terminal cleavage of most MHC-I–binding peptides. A recently reported exception to this is the generation of the tumor antigen MAGE-A3 by insulin-degrading enzyme.[23] Whereas insulin degrading enzyme is solely responsible for the generation of the human leukocyte antigen (HLA)-A1–restricted MAGE-A3 epitope, the HLA-B40–restricted MAGE-A3 epitope was proteasome dependent. Although there are several N-terminal proteases in the cytosol, they have only a limited role in generation of the MHC-I–binding peptides. More specifically, tripeptidyl peptidase II, leucine amino peptidase, bleomycin hydrolase, and puromycin-sensitive aminopeptidase have all been found to affect generation of select MHC-I–binding epitopes, but these proteases have an overall negative effect on antigen presentation by MHC-I. Interestingly, the metalloprotease nardilysin that cleaves substrates on the N-terminus of arginine residues in dibasic pairs was implicated in three cytotoxic T lymphocyte epitopes and may be more generalizable given the preference for basic N-terminal resides for MHC-I binding.[24] However, as noted in the following, significant N terminal trimming of MHC-I–binding peptide occurs after transport from the cytosol into the ER.

Peptide Transport into the Endoplasmic Reticulum

Landmark studies of the mutagenized and immunoselected mouse cell line RMA-S resulted in the discovery of how peptides are transported from the cytosol into the ER lumen.[25–27] The low level of surface expression of MHC-I molecules by RMA-S that could be rescued by either low temperatures or culturing with known MHC-I–binding peptides was attributed to lack of peptide transport by TAP. TAP is a member of the adenosine triphosphate (ATP) binding cassette family. Mechanistically, hydrolysis of ATP is required both for peptide binding to the cytosolic face of TAP as well as peptide transport into the ER. Structurally, TAP is a heterodimeric complex of TAP1 and TAP2 subunits both encoded within the central region of the MHC of mouse and human. The translocation pore of TAP is formed by six transmembrane domains of each subunit, whereas the remaining transmembrane domains (four for TAP1 and three for TAP2) are involved in interaction with peptide loading complex (PLC).[28] Awaiting transport, both the N- and C-termini of peptides are bound to TAP[29]; peptides with higher affinity for binding TAP have a greater likelihood of transport, MHC binding, and presentation to T cells during infection.[30,31] TAP typically transports peptides of 8 to 16 residues, although longer peptides are less efficiently transported. As discussed in the next section, peptides with N-terminal extensions are trimmed in the ER.

Peptide Trimming in the Endoplasmic Reticulum

As noted previously, TAP transports many peptides with C-terminal hydrophobic residues required for MHC binding, but with N-terminal extensions, which need to be cleaved to conform to the MHC-binding motif of the expressed alleles. It is now clear that N-terminal trimming within the ER is carried out by the ER-associated aminopeptidase (ERAAP; ERAP1 in mice and ERAP1 in humans). Interestingly, unlike other aminopeptidases, ERAP1 preferentially cleaved peptides of 9 to 16 amino acids thus matching the same peptide length preference as transported by TAP.[32] More specifically, ERAP1 was found to degrade a model 13-mer to a 9-mer and then stop, an apparent adaptation to maximize optimal MHC-I binding. The length preference of ERAP1 could be explained by extended peptides binding to MHC-I before N-terminal trimming. However, this model is not supported by structural analyses of ERAP1 and the location of its active site.[33] Alternatively, recent analyses support a "molecular ruler" model. In this model, a hydrophobic pocket of ERAP1 binds the C-terminal peptide residue thereby positioning the peptide so that N-terminal cleavage occurs about nine amino acids away.[32,33] Thus, ERAAP/ERAP1 has unique structural features explaining its ability to trim extended peptide precursors while sparing ones of optimal length for MHC-I binding. As further evidence of their specialized functions in antigen presentation by MHC-I proteins, ERAP1 preferentially binds and processes peptides with hydrophobic C-terminal residues consistent with the majority of the TAP-transported MHC-I–binding peptides. Interestingly, humans have a second ER-associated peptidase with homology to ERAP1 designated ERAP2.[34] ERAP2 preferentially binds peptides with C-terminal basic residues and thus may function in human cells to provide peptides for HLA-A3, -Aw68, and -B27 alleles that bind such peptides. Additionally, in humans the combined activity of both ERAP1 and ERAP2 (most likely as heterdimers) is required for the presentation of certain epitopes.[35] By contrast, in mice ERAAP/ERAP1 is sufficient to service their MHC-I alleles, all of which bind peptides with hydrophobic C-termini. As additional evidence for their tailoring for MHC-I–antigen presentation, the expression and trimming activity of ERAP1 and ERAP2 are upregulated upon IFNγ stimulation.

The impact of ERAP on specific epitopes and the overall MHC-binding peptide repertoire has been analyzed using

cell lines[36,37] and ERAAP-knockout mice.[38,39] These studies have shown that cytotoxic T lymphocyte detection of some but not all MHC-I/peptide complexes are ERAP1-dependent. For example, in vitro ribonucleic acid interference experiments suggested that ERAP1 is involved in formation of one-third of peptide/MHC-I complexes.[36,37] ERAAP-deficient mice had a 20% lower expression of K^b, D^b, K^d, and D^d alleles at the cell surface but a 70% lower expression of L^d. Of these mouse alleles, only L^d preferentially binds peptides with the motif of Pro in the second position, although about 20% of human HLA alleles also prefer peptides with a Pro in the second position. Notably, peptides with Pro in the second position are only transported by TAP with N-terminal extensions and are thus dependent upon ERAP1 for their generation. In vivo relevance of this conclusion was demonstrated by the observation that ERAAP-deficient BALB/c mice were found to be susceptible to *Toxoplasma gondii* infection resulting from the fact that the immunodominant epitope presented to CD8 T cells is L^d restricted.[40] Interestingly the ERAAP-deficient mice were also found to present several unique peptides that elicited potent CD8 T-cell responses demonstrating ERAAP functions, as a peptide editor altering the repertoire of peptides presented.[38]

Chaperone-assisted Peptide Loading in the Endoplasmic Reticulum

Full assembly of the MHC-I heavy chains (HCs) with β2m and peptide within the ER is orchestrated by molecular chaperones that keep folding intermediates in a conformation capable of attaining full assembly (Fig. 22.1). Nascent HCs are transiently associated with the membrane-anchored

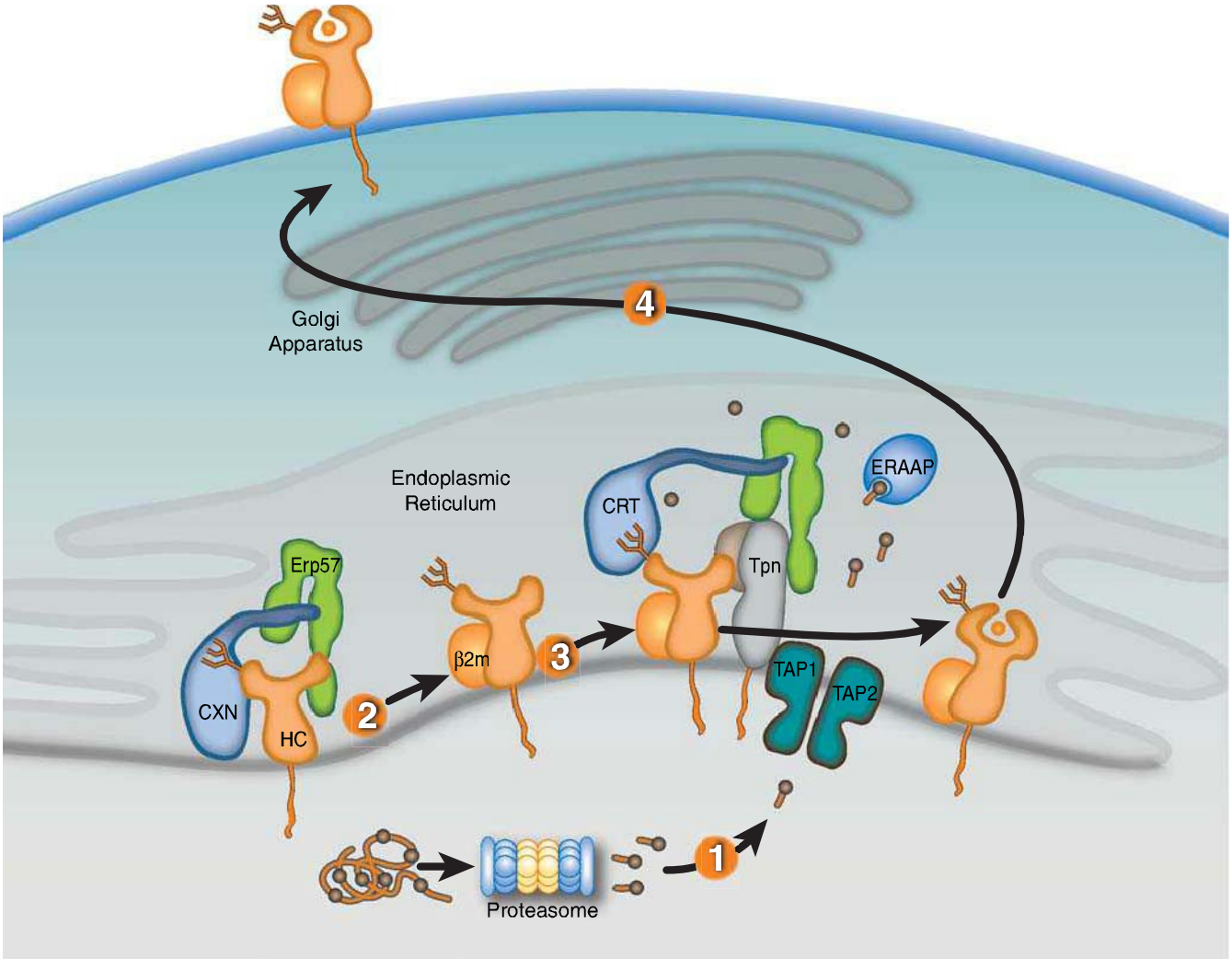


FIG. 22.1. Schematic Representation of the Sequential Events of Antigen Processing and Presentation by Major Histocompatibility Complex (MHC)-I Proteins. 1: Peptides are processed by the proteasome and translocated into the ER by TAP1/TAP2 heterodimers. 2: MHC-I heavy chains (HCs) awaiting assembly with β2m are bound to calnexin (CXN)/ERp57 complexes. 3: After assembly with β2m, HC/β2m heterodimers enter the peptide loading complex wherein tapasin (Tpn) bridges HC with transporter associated with antigen presentation (TAP)/TAP2, and calreticulin (CRT)/ERp57 complexes bridge HC with Tpn. 4: Following the binding of a suitable peptide, which may require final N-terminal trimming by ERAAP, fully assembled MHC-I proteins (HC/β2m/peptide) traffic to the plasma membrane via the secretory pathway.

lectin calnexin (CXN) that, like its soluble paralog calreticulin (CRT), functions as a general chaperone for assembly of oligomeric glycoproteins. Quality control of glycoprotein assembly by CXN and CRT is carried out by monitoring terminal glucose residues on their N-linked glycans. More specifically, the folding sensor UDP-glucose glycoprotein glucotransferase allows incompletely assembled substrates to reassociate with CXN or CRT, and cycles of glucose addition and removal continue until substrates are either correctly folded and assembled or targeted for ERAD. After the MHC-I HC assembles with β2m, the HC/β2m heterodimer exchanges CXN for CRT and enters the PLC consisting of CRT, ERp57, tapasin (Tpn), and TAP.[41–44] Optimal antigen presentation by MHC-I is dependent upon all four components of the PLC (Tpn, TAP, CRT, and ERp57) that function to improve peptide loading in MHC-I proteins and their surface display.[45,46]

Knockout cell lines, genetically deficient mouse strains, and mutagenesis studies have provided key insights in the selective roles of PLC components in MHC-I assembly. CRT association with MHC-I proteins is dependent upon the N-linked glycan at residue Asn86 of the HC. Interestingly, the location of the glycan is important for CRT but not CXN association with HCs, likely reflecting geometric constraints imposed by PLC assembly. CRT-deficient cells have suboptimal peptide loading resulting in reduced surface MHC-I expression.[47] ERp57 is a thiol oxidoreductase that mediates disulfide bond formation of different substrates and is commonly associated with CXN and CRT. Interestingly, however, the function of ERp57 as a component of the PLC appears to be independent of the MHC-I redox state. ERp57 forms a disulfide bond with Tpn that is required for PLC construction.[48,49] It was originally proposed that the ERp57-Tpn complex prevents reduction of the α2 disulfide HC bond, thereby keeping HC in a peptide-receptive state.[50] However, other studies have detected little evidence the ERp57 controls redox state of MHC-I and more recently, the crystal structure of the ERp57-Tpn complex suggests that the role of the ERp57 in the PLC is structural, facilitating recruitment of peptide-accessible MHC-I.[49,51,52] As a likely reflection of its fundamental role in PLC construction, ERp57-deficient cells were found to have impaired peptide loading, surface expression, and antigen presentation by MHC-I proteins.

Tpn, an MHC-I–dedicated molecular chaperone, is required to bridge β2m-assembled HCs with TAP.[53] Playing a redundant role with other members of the PLC, Tpn also functions in ER retention of MHC with suboptimal peptide cargo.[54,55] Perhaps most importantly, Tpn functions as a peptide editor by stabilizing peptide-accessible MHC-I proteins and optimizing peptide cargo before release from the PLC. The mechanism of peptide editing by Tpn of MHC-I proteins was revealed using recombinant Tpn tethered to HLA,[56] and using recombinant Tpn-ERp57 conjugates added to Tpn-deficient cells.[57] These and other reports support the model that Tpn promotes the peptide exchange of MHC molecules in an affinity-dependent manner. The consensus model is that Tpn stabilizes the peptide binding groove of MHC-I in an "open" peptide-accessible conformation. The association of Tpn with peptide-accessible MHC-I then promotes peptide exchange until a peptide of suitable affinity binds to complete the folding of the ligand binding groove. This peptide-induced folding then induces the release of fully assembled MHC-I from the PLC. Logistically, how peptide editing by Tpn might occur was provided by mutagenesis studies of the MHC-I/Tpn interaction site. Two sites on the HC are critical for Tpn interaction: one site is in the α3 domain (residues 227 and 229) and the other in the α2 domain (residues 128-136)[43,58,59] (Fig. 22.2A). Based on the location of the latter site and molecular dynamic modeling, it has been theorized that the α2 interaction site might function as a folding sensor for C-terminal peptide anchoring in the MHC-I F pocket.[60,61] Consistent with this model, polymorphisms within the F pocket can have a profound effect of Tpn dependencies of different MHC-I alleles.[62] Based on mutagenesis and structural analyses, a credible model was constructed by Dong et al. of the MHC-I/PLC interactions[52] (see Fig. 22.2).

Although Tpn within the PLC is thought to enforce most of the quality control of antigen presentation by MHC-I, there are also adjunct pathways. For example, the sensor UGT1 that adds a terminal glucose to unfolded ER proteins for rebinding CRT has been recently implicated in the quality control of antigen presentation by MHC-I. In support of this conclusion, using in vitro assays with recombinant components, UTG1 was reported to preferentially reglucosylate MHC-I proteins loaded with suboptimal peptides.[63] Also, as a post-ER quality control pathway, CRT was reported to use a KDEL-dependent mechanism to recycle suboptimally loaded MHC-I proteins from the early Golgi back the ER for improved peptide binding.[64]

Viral Immune Evasion of Antigen Presentation

As noted previously, several molecular components of antigen presentation were coopted from physiologic pathways of protein degradation and quality control. Using elegant mechanisms, viruses express diverse proteins that coopt these same pathways of protein degradation and quality control to evade immune detection by CD8 T cells.[65] Indeed, the specificity and potency of immune evasion proteins impairing antigen presentation makes them efficacious probes for physiologic pathways of relevance for MHC expression. Most of the well-characterized immune evasion proteins are expressed by deoxyribonucleic acid viruses with large genomes, particular viruses capable of latency or host coexistence. Strikingly, immune evasion proteins block several different steps of the antigen presentation pathway by MHC-I proteins (Fig. 22.3). For example, Epstein-Barr virus and Kaposi sarcoma–associated herpesvirus express proteins during latency that escape cytotoxic T lymphocyte detection by containing sequences that inhibit proteasome processing.[66–70] Alternatively, blocking peptide transport by inhibiting TAP function is a commonly used immune evasion strategy. For example, ICP47 of herpes simplex virus binds the cytosolic side of TAP and blocks peptide and not ATP binding,[71–76] whereas US6 of human cytomegalovirus (HCMV) binds the luminal side of TAP and induces a conformational change resulting in inhibition of ATP hydrolysis

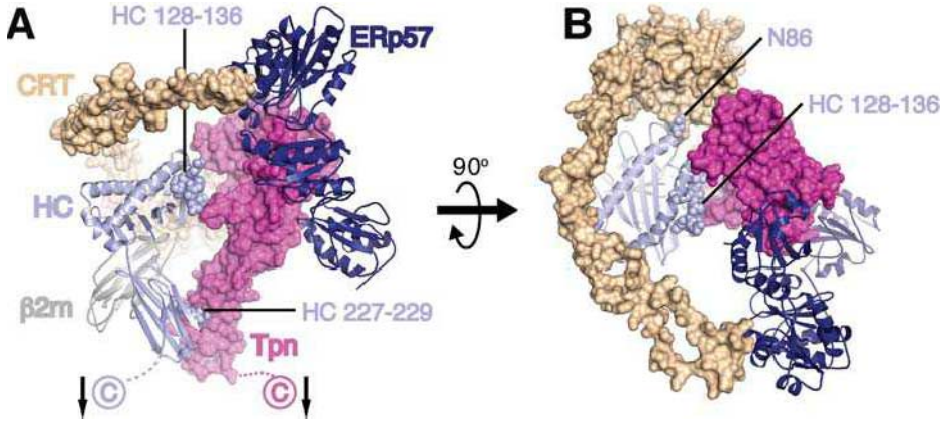


FIG. 22.2. A Model of the Peptide Loading Complex Based on Known Structures and Mutagenesis Data of Interaction Sites.[52] Heavy chains (HCs), β2m, and ERp57 are shown as ribbons, while calreticulin (CRT) and tapasin (Tpn) are shown as Connolly surfaces (1.4 Å probe). HCs and Tpn are membrane anchored as indicated with *arrows*, whereas transmembrane interactions between Tpn and TAP (not shown) attach the phospholipase C (PLC) components to TAP. HC sites predicted by mutagenesis studies to interact with Tpn (residues 227 to 229 and 128 to 136) and CRT (N86) are indicated as *spheres*. The long flexible P domain of CRT extends above the major histocompatibility complex (MHC)-I peptide binding platform before it noncovalently binds to ERp57, which is covalently attached to Tpn. **A:** PLC components are shown from the side to highlight Tpn contacts to the HC α2 and α3 domains. **B:** PLC components shown from above reveal coordinated chaperone binding of both MHCI α-helices near the antigenic peptide's C-terminus. The figure was rendered by Drs. William McCoy IV and Daved Fremont using Protein Data Bank (PDB) files kindly provided by Drs. Karin Reinisch and Peter Cresswell. The structures of the Tpn/ERp57 complex was published in Dong et al.,[52] the structure of CRT was modeled using PHYRE2[235] on its homolog calnexin,[236] and human leukocyte antigen-A2[237] is shown as a representative HC. It should be noted that the HC conformation shown is that attained after peptide occupancy, as the peptide-accessible HC conformation that binds the PLC has not been resolved.

and peptide translocation.[77–81] As a third mechanism of TAP blocking, UL49.5 of bovine herpesvirus induces TAP degradation.[82] There are also published examples of immune evasion proteins inhibiting Tpn function. For example, US3 of HCMV binds to Tpn and impairs optimization of peptide loading,[83,84] whereas E3-19K of AdV inhibits the ability of Tpn to bridge MHC-I with TAP.[85]

Immune evasion proteins also employ strategies to misdirect trafficking of MHC-I proteins. For example, the aforementioned E3-19K protein of AdV binds MHC-I proteins and blocks their transport out of the ER.[86–90] Interestingly, cowpox virus expresses two different immune evasion proteins targeting MHC-I proteins that function in tandem. Cowpox virus 12 is a TAP function blocker that curtails peptide supply, whereas cowpox virus 203 returns fully assembled MHC-I proteins from the Golgi back to the ER.[91–94] To also misdirect assembled MHC-I proteins, the Nef protein of human immunodeficiency virus and gp48 protein of murine cytomegalovirus shuttle assembled MHC-I proteins from the Golgi to the lysosome.[95–97]

Interestingly, the aforementioned immune evasion proteins for the most part do not have cellular homologs, making it difficult to track their evolution. Striking exceptions to this generality are the viral ER ubiquitin ligases called the viral MARCH (*m*embrane-*a*ssociated *R*ING-*CH*) proteins. The extensive family of MARCH proteins includes viral and cellular homologs that share a transmembrane orientation and a highly conserved atypical RING domain that confers E3 ubiquitin ligase activity.[98–100] Viral proteins mK3 of MHV68, and proteins kK3 and kK5 of Kaposi sarcoma–associated herpesvirus that function as immune evasion proteins were the founding members of the MARCH protein family.[101–103] Mechanistically, mK3 binds to TAP and awaits the entry of MHC-I into the PLC after which mK3 ubiquitinates the cytosolic tail of MHC-I HCs and thus induces their dislocation to the cytosol and degradation in the cytosol (ie, ERAD).[104–107] Of note, the extensively studied US2 and US11 proteins of HCMV also target ERAD of MHC-I proteins by recruiting cellular E3 ligases.[108–113] Indeed, studies of US2, US11 and mK3 continue to provide molecular insights into various mechanisms by which ERAD substrates are detected in the ER and dislocated to the cytosol.[114,115] In contrast to ERAD, the kK3 and kK5 MARCH ligases of Kaposi sarcoma–associated herpesvirus induce endocytosis and lysosomal degradation of MHC-I proteins. Interesting, kK3 like mK3 appears to ubiquitinate only MHC-I proteins, whereas kK5 targets other surface receptors including the T cell costimulation molecule CD86 (B7.2) as well as natural killer cell ligands, MHC class I-related chain A or B (MICA, MICB), and newly defined ligand for NKp80, activation-induced C-type lectin (AICL).[116] Inhibition of natural killer responses is of importance to the virus because downregulation of MHC-I proteins renders cells susceptible to natural killer cell lysis. Mechanistic studies of viral MARCH

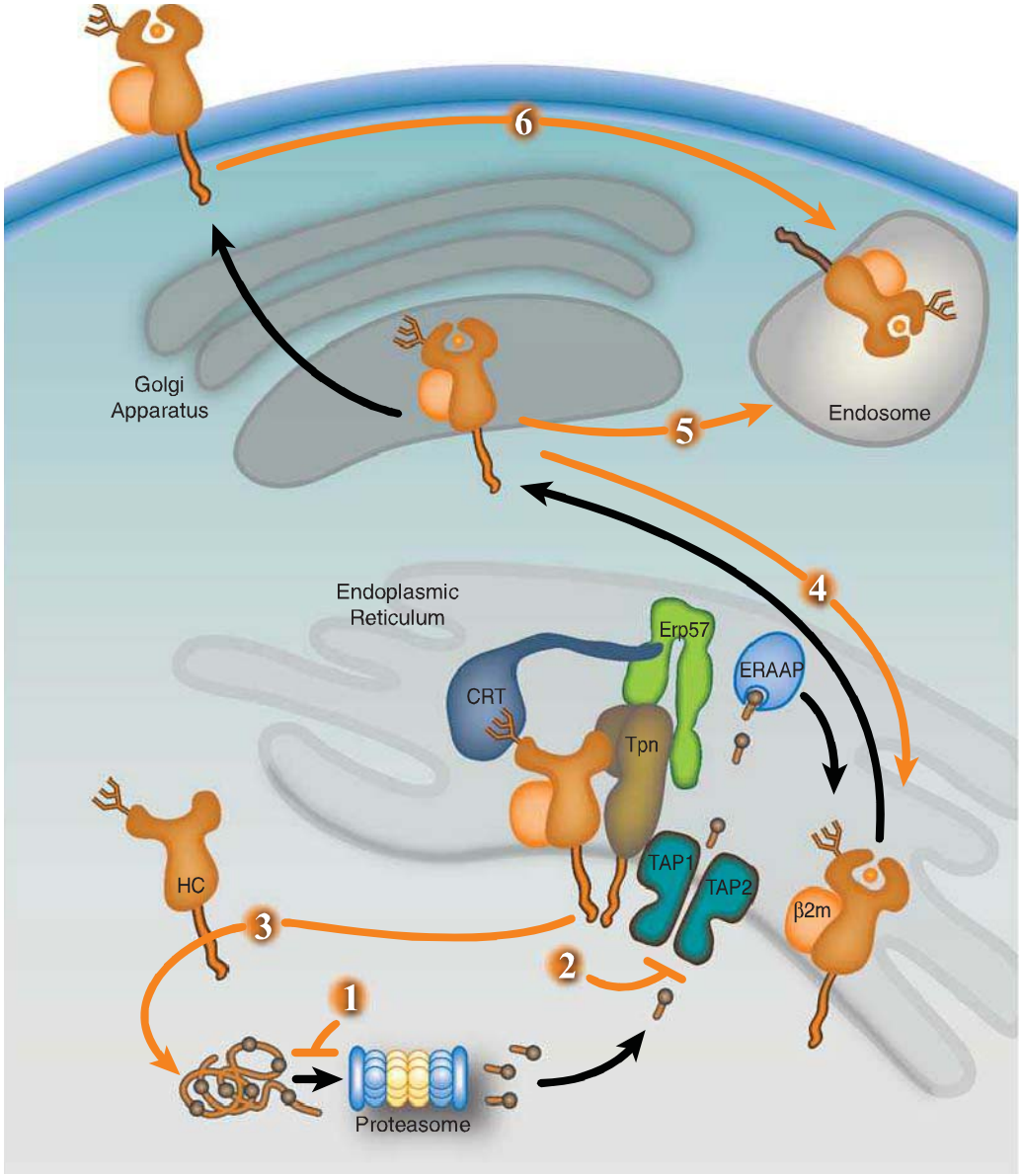


FIG. 22.3. Immune Evasion Strategies Used by Viral Proteins to Block Antigen Presentation by Major Histocompatibility Complex (MHC)-I Proteins. *Black arrows* demarcate physiologic pathways for antigen presentation, whereas the *numbered red arrows* demarcate reported immune evasion strategies by virus proteins. 1: Blocking of antigen processing by the proteasome (examples are the EDNA1 protein of Epstein-Barr virus or the LANA1 protein of Kaposi sarcoma–associated herpesvirus). 2: Blocking peptide transport by transporter associated with antigen presentation (examples include the ICP47 protein of herpes simplex virus, US6 protein of human cytomegalovirus, cpxv12 protein of cowpox virus, UL49.5 protein of bovine herpesvirus, and BNFL2a protein of Epstein-Barr virus). 3: Dislocation of MHC-I proteins from the endoplasmic reticulum (ER) to the cytosol for proteasome-mediated degradation (examples are US2 and US11 proteins of human cytomegalovirusand mK3 protein of MHV68). 4: ER retention and retrieval of MHC-I proteins (examples are E3-19K protein of AdV and the cpxv203 protein of cowpox virus). 5: Mistrafficking of MHC-I proteins from the Golgi to an endosomal compartment (examples include gp48 protein of murine cytomegalovirus and Nef protein of human immunodeficiency virus-1). 6: Rapid internalization of MHC-I proteins from the cell surface to an endosomal/lysosomal compartment (examples are kK3 and kK5 proteins of Kaposi sarcoma–associated herpesvirus).

proteins have provided several molecular insights into ubiquitin-dependent degradation pathways of particular relevance to antigen processing. In addition, there are about 10 cellular MARCH protein homologs in humans and mice, many of which detect immune receptors.[98–100] For example, as mentioned in the MHC-II section, MARCHI regulates MHC-II expression in B cells and dendritic cell (DC) subsets.[117–119] Thus, viral MARCH proteins were stolen from the host and adapted by the virus to function as immune evasion proteins using similar mechanisms.

ANTIGEN PROCESSING AND PRESENTATION BY MAJOR HISTOCOMPATIBILITY CLASS II (MHC-II) PROTEINS

Source of Antigen for MHC-II Presentation

As a general rule, the antigen-processing machinery that is utilized by MHC-I is specialized for the degradation, importation, and binding of peptides that are derived from antigens present in the cytosol of host cells. Although many viruses and bacteria thrive in the cytosol of infected cells, there are pathogens (such as *Toxoplasma gondii*) that reside in membrane-encapsulated intracellular compartments and do not access the cytosol.[120] Furthermore, almost any foreign material (including live or dead pathogens, fragments of apoptotic cells, or soluble proteins) can enter the cell by endocytosis and are therefore sequestered from the cytosol. It is for recognition of antigens such as this that MHC-II molecules exist; MHC-II binds peptides derived from antigens that gain access to intracellular compartments in cells by a variety of endocytic pathways.[121] Fluid-phase macropinocytosis is a process whereby extracellular fluid is taken up by plasma membrane protrusions that bring extracellular fluids and soluble proteins into the cell by endocytosis. Once internalized, macropinosomes fuse with early endosomes, thereby releasing their contents to the endocytic pathway. Immature (resting) DCs are particularly efficient in their capacity for macropinocytosis that enhances their significance as "sentinals" of the immune system.[122] Upon activation by encounter with foreign organisms, DCs greatly suppress macropinocytosis,[122–124] thereby limiting the ability of the activated DCs to sample their microenvironment and restricting the repertoire of antigenic peptides presented to T-lymphocytes.

As one can imagine, macropinocytosis is not a particularly efficient mechanism of antigen uptake. B cells possess antigen-specific receptors (immunoglobulins) that permit specific antigen internalization and presentation to T cells that can be 1000 times more efficient than fluid-phase endocytosis.[125] Curiously, the function and fate of B cells that generate specific MHC-II peptide complexes following immunoglobulin-mediated antigen uptake versus fluid-phase uptake of the same antigen differ significantly,[126] highlighting the importance of the receptor-mediated antigen uptake pathway in B cells. Similarly, macrophages and DCs express Fc receptors and complement receptors that allow efficient phagocytosis of large extracellular particles such as antibody-coated organisms or even apoptotic cells. Following endocytosis, the phagosome fuses with the membrane of a lysosome, forming a degradative phagolysosome that neutralizes and degrades internalized antigens into peptides.[127] Other surface receptors, such as mannose receptors[122,128,129] and DEC-205[130] on DCs, also allow for efficient antigen binding and uptake onto the endocytic pathway, and these receptors have been exploited as a vehicle to efficiently deliver bring foreign vaccine antigens into the MHC-II processing pathway in antigen-presenting cells (APCs).[131]

While antigens entering the endocytic pathway by phagocytosis, macropinocytosis, and receptor-mediated endocytosis give rise to the majority of peptides that bind to MHC-II, there is increasing evidence that cytosolic antigens are capable of entering endosomal MHC-II processing compartments and are degraded there into MHC-II–binding peptides. The most likely cellular mechanism responsible for this phenomena is process termed autophagy.[132,133] Macroautophagy is constitutively active in DCs and is a process that leads to the "engulfment" of aggregated cytosolic protein complexes to form an autophagosome. Like phagosomes from extracellular antigens, the autophagosome fuses with a lysosome and results in the degradation of autophagosome contents into antigenic peptides.[134,135] A related process, termed chaperone-mediated autophagy, results from the direct import of cytosolic proteins into the lumen of endo/lysosomes and is facilitated by the chaperone protein hsc-70 and the lysosomal integral membrane protein Lamp2a.[136] Once inside this organelle, the imported protein is degraded into antigenic peptides just like "conventionally" internalized antigens. While this pathway clearly functions in vitro, the extent to which autophagy participates in MHC-II–restricted immune responses remains to be established.

MHC-II Assembly and Transport to the Endosomal Pathway

Because MHC-II is specialized to bind peptides generated in the endocytic pathway, there must be mechanisms in APCs to prevent the premature binding of peptides to MHC-II as the molecules assemble in the ER and traffic through the Golgi apparatus before their delivery to endosomal peptide loading compartments. In addition to the inability of MHC-II to bind to TAP/tapasin and other members of the MHC-I–peptide loading complex, MHC-II is unique in that it binds to a transmembrane chaperone protein termed the invariant chain (Ii). It is the association of Ii with the MHC-II–peptide binding site that prevents MHC-II molecules in the early secretory pathway from binding peptides.[137,138] Indeed, failure of newly synthesized MHC-II to bind Ii allows for the presentation of ER-imported peptides to CD4 T cells by MHC-II.[139] A specific region of Ii, termed the class II-associated Ii peptide (CLIP), serves to block the peptide-binding groove of nascent MHC-II molecules until it is ready for removal in endo-/lysosomes. The MHC-II-CLIP complex has been crystallized, and as one might expect, the structure of this complex is nearly identical to that of a MHC-II molecule containing an "antigenic" peptide.[140] As the name implies, unlike the highly polymorphic MHC-II molecule itself, Ii is nonpolymorphic. However, the human Ii mRNA can initiate protein synthesis using one of

two translation initiation sites (Fig. 22.4A), leading to generation of a major 33 kDa form of Ii (Ii-p33) as well as a minor population of larger Ii molecules whose translation is initiated using an upstream methionine (Ii-p35[141]). The use of alternative translation initiation sites appears to be unique to humans, as it is not seen in rodents.[142] Furthermore, alternative mRNA splicing in all species examined can give rise to an additional 8 kDa domain in each form of Ii, leading to the production of Ii-p41 and (in humans) Ii-p43.[143,144] This additional exon encodes a domain (see subsequent discussion) that regulates the activity of proteases in endo-/lysosomes.

The Ii molecule itself forms a trimer even in the absence of MHC-II, and each constituent subunit of this trimer contains either Ii-p33, -p35, -p41, or -p43 isoforms (see Fig. 22.4B). Ii homotrimers and mixed heterotrimers are generated, and each trimer contains an Ii molecule whose presence in the trimer is proportional to its level of expression.[145–147] Onto this "scaffold" of an Ii trimer, pairs of MHC-II αβ heterodimers assemble, ultimately forming a mature, nine-chain MHC-II-Ii complex.[148] The partially formed MHC-II-Ii complex containing an Ii trimer and only one or two αβ heterodimers is retained in the ER by interacting with the chaperone calnexin,[149] presumably allowing the MHC-II molecule additional time to form a fully functional MHC-II-Ii nonamer. In addition, the longer p35 and p43 forms of human Ii contain an ER retention motif, and free Ii trimers containing one of these longer Ii forms are retained in the ER.[150,151] Curiously, completely folded MHC-II-Ii nonamers containing one of

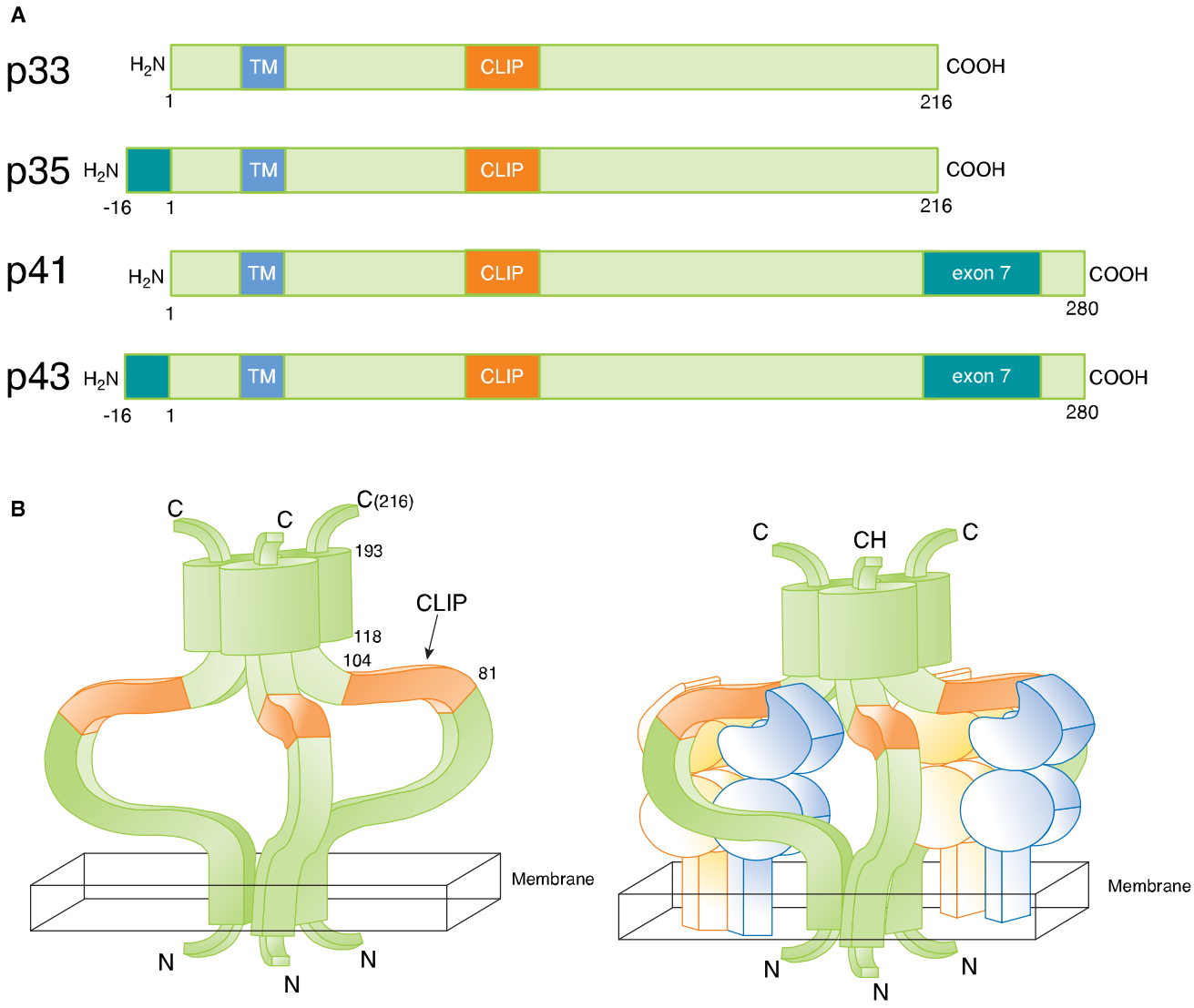


FIG. 22.4. Structure of Invariant Chain (Ii) and Major Histocompatibility Complex (MHC)-II–Ii Complexes. **A:** The major 216 amino acid form of human Ii is the 33 kDa Ii-p33 isoform. The use of an upstream initiation methionine results in the generation of Ii-p35 (which contains an endoplasmic reticulum–retention motif), and alternative splicing of each of these isoforms leads to the generation of Ii-p41 and Ii-p43 forms of Ii that possess proteinase inhibitor activity. The relative positions of the transmembrane domain (TM) and class II-associated Ii peptide region of each isoform of Ii are indicated. **B:** Models of Ii trimer (*left panel*) and the MHC-II–Ii complex (*right panel*). Only two of the three pairs of MHC-II αβ dimers are shown bound to the Ii trimer. The model shows the peptide-binding groove of MHC-II αβ dimers occupied by the CLIP region of Ii. (From Cresswell P. The biochemistry and cell biology of antigen processing. In: Paul WE. *Fundamental Immunology*. 5th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2003:613–629, reprinted with permission).

these longer Ii isoforms are capable of exiting the ER and moving to antigen-processing compartments,[147,152] demonstrating that assembly with MHC-II masks the ER-retention motif on the Ii trimer.

Ii association does more for MHC-II than simply prevent premature peptide binding. Assembly with Ii is critical for some alleles of MHC-II to fold property and achieve competence to leave the ER, thus revealing a role for Ii as an assembly/folding molecular chaperone.[153] After leaving the ER, the MHC-II-Ii complex moves through the Golgi apparatus and is targeted to the endosomal pathway[150,154] (Fig. 22.5A). It is likely that MHC-II-Ii complexes arrive in the endocytic pathway by two distinct mechanisms and the relative contribution of each pathway may be cell-type specific. Some MHC-II-Ii complexes target directly from the trans-Golgi network to endosomes,[155,156] while other complexes move from the trans-Golgi network directly to the plasma membrane and enter endosomes only after endocytosis.[157] The movement of MHC-II-Ii complexes to the endosomal pathway is facilitated by recognition of two dileucine sorting motifs present in the cytosolic domain of every isoform of Ii.[158,159] The machinery that recognizes these motifs in the trans-Golgi network remains to be defined; however, it is clear that these motifs are recognized at the plasma membrane by the AP-2 adaptor protein complex.[160,161] This protein complex serves as a linker between Ii and the clathrin-mediated endocytosis pathway and serves to deliver plasma membrane-localized MHC-II-Ii to the early endosomes. Recognition and internalization of MHC-II-Ii from the plasma membrane is efficient and rapid,[157] and as a consequence of this, very little MHC-II-Ii is present on the plasma membrane of APCs at any given moment.

Removal of Invariant Chain in Antigen-Processing Compartments

Regardless of the mechanism responsible for delivering MHC-II-Ii to endosomes, Ii must be removed in order to allow antigenic peptides to bind to nascent MHC-II. Ii is

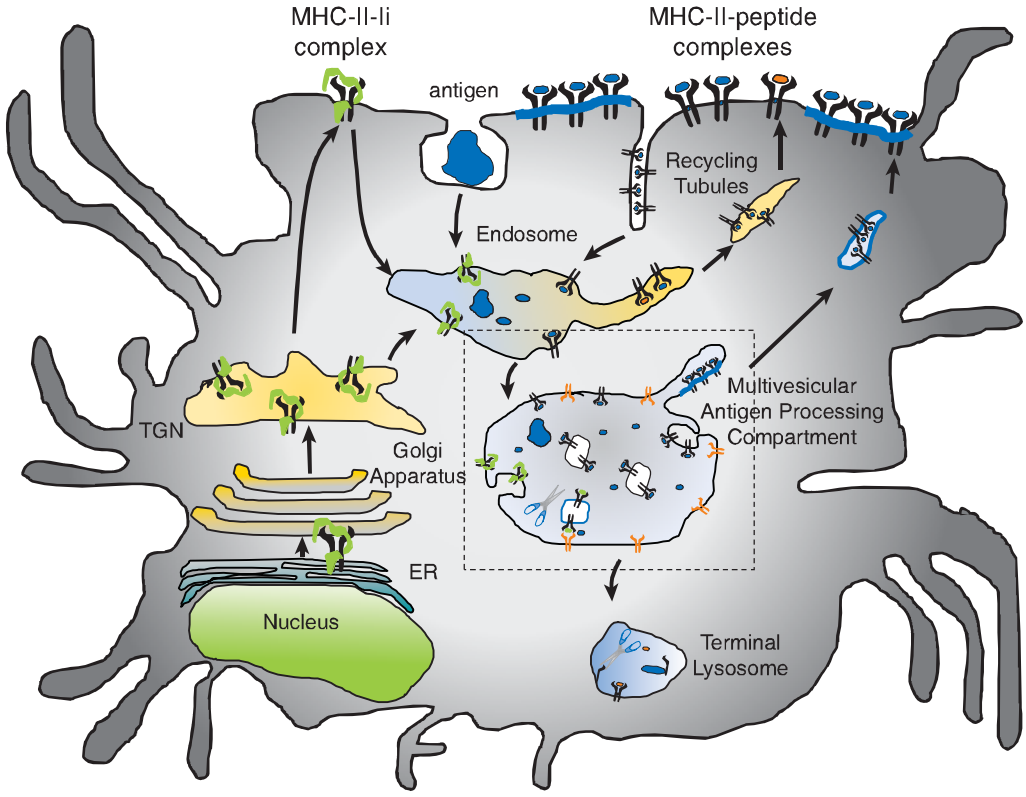


FIG. 22.5. Transport of Major Histocompatibility Complex (MHC)-II in Antigen-Presenting Cells. **A:** MHC-II associates with Ii in the endoplasmic reticulum, moves through the Golgi apparatus to the plasma membrane, and enters the endocytic pathway by clathrin-mediated endocytosis. Some fraction of MHC-II can also access these endocytic compartments directly from the Golgi apparatus/trans-Golgi network. Antigens access these same endocytic compartments by a number of different endocytosis pathways. The MHC-II–invariant chain (Ii) complex moves to late endosomal/prelysosomal antigen-processing compartments in which Ii is degraded, the MHC-II–associated class II-associated Ii peptide (CLIP) fragment of Ii is removed by DM, and peptides derived from foreign antigens then bind to MHC-II (this compartment is highlighted in *panel B*). MHC-II–peptide complexes leave these intracellular antigen-processing compartments via vesicles or tubules that fuse with the plasma membrane, thereby delivering MHC-II–peptide complexes on the antigen-presenting cell surface. Once at the surface, MHC-II–peptide complexes can recycle between the plasma membrane and the endosomal system, potentially exchanging antigenic peptides. Some fraction of internalized MHC-II is also targeted for degradation in terminal lysosomes. *(continued)*

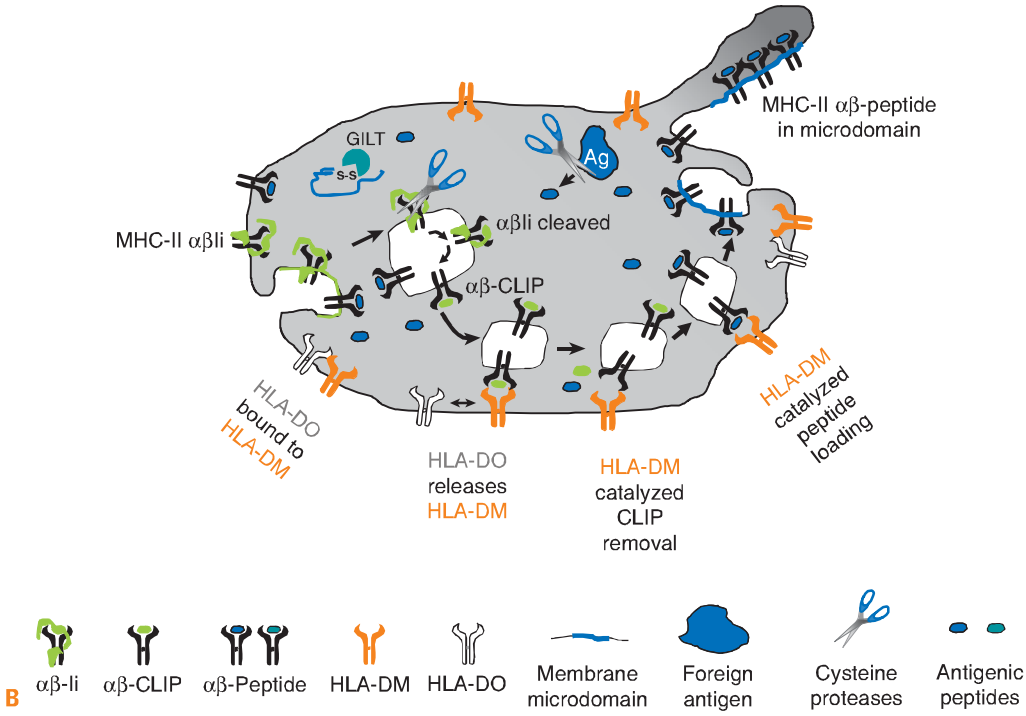


FIG. 22.5 *(continued)* **B:** Binding of peptides to MHC-II in antigen-processing compartments. The multivesicular antigen-processing compartment highlighted in *panel A* is shown here. MHC-II–Ii complexes are targeted to intraluminal vesicles of late endosomal multivesicular antigen-processing compartments where Ii proteolysis is initiated. This process results in the generation of MHC-II–CLIP complexes that are subject to editing by DM. DO binds to DM during intracellular transport and dissociates at the low pH of these compartments, thereby liberating free DM that catalyzes the removal of CLIP from the MHC-II–CLIP complex. DM also stabilizes the structure of peptide-free MHC-II until high-affinity peptide binding. Disulfide bonds present in protein antigens can be reduced by IFNγ-induced thiol reductase, thereby enhancing the formation of antigenic peptides generated by proteolysis. In this cartoon MHC-II, DM, and DO have particular membrane distributions; however, whether these distributions are maintained in all antigen-presenting cells and whether the reactions highlighted here occur on the indicated membranes remains to be determined. MHC-II molecules present in antigen-processing compartments are present in distinct membrane microdomains, and after peptide binding, microdomain-associated MHC-II is transported to the plasma membrane in vesicles or tubules that bud from the limiting membrane of the antigen processing compartments (DM, HLA-DM; DO, HLA-DO).

degraded in discrete steps by proteolysis in acidic endosomes (see Fig. 22.5B), with proteolysis initiated at the luminal C-terminus of Ii in earlier endosomes and Ii degradation completed in more acidic late endosomal/prelysosomal structures. In vitro studies have shown that many different proteinases are capable of degrading Ii; however, in vivo, the initial cleavage of Ii is initiated by a proteinase whose activity in insensitive to the protease inhibitor leupeptin while additional cleavage is strictly leupeptin-dependent.[162] Leupeptin treatment of living APCs results in the accumulation of a 21 kDa Ii degradation intermediate that retains the nonameric MHC-II-Ii stoichiometry and is unable to bind antigenic peptides.[152] After the initial cleavage of Ii, a variety of proteinases can cleave the remaining MHC-II–associated Ii molecule; however, the terminal stages of Ii degradation in B cells and DCs are dependent on the cysteine proteinase cathepsin S.[163] Inhibition of cathepsin S activity or analysis of DCs isolated from cathepsin S-deficient mice reveal the accumulation of a 10 kDa Ii degradation product, highlighting the importance of this proteinase in Ii degradation. Curiously, MHC-II–expressing epithelial cells in the thymus do not rely on cathepsin S for Ii degradation but require cathepsin L for terminal Ii degradation.[164]

Proteolysis of Ii from both the luminal C-terminus and from residues adjacent to the luminal Ii transmembrane domain ultimately leaves a small fragment of Ii bound to MHC-II. This class II-associated Ii polypeptide, termed CLIP, is bound to the peptide-binding groove of MHC-II and serves as a "placeholder" to occupy the peptide-binding site until antigenic peptides are available to bind (see Fig. 22.4). While some MHC-II alleles have a very low affinity for CLIP and CLIP spontaneously dissociates from MHC-II,[165] in most cases CLIP must be actively removed from the peptide-binding site of MHC-II prior to antigenic peptide binding. A seminal finding in antigen processing and presentation came in 1994 with the discovery of HLA-DM (DM).[166,167] HLA-DM (known as H-2M in mice) is a nonpolymorphic transmembrane heterodimer whose α- and β-subunits are encoded in the MHC gene locus.

Like MHC-II, DM is expressed exclusively in APCs. An important function of DM is to facilitate the removal of CLIP from the MHC-II-CLIP complex.[168,169] DM functions enzymatically, and while the precise mechanism by which DM promotes CLIP dissociation from MHC-II remains to be completely elucidated, it is thought that DM disrupts the hydrogen bonding network in the peptide binding groove of MHC-II and thereby enhances the kinetics of CLIP dissociation from MHC-II.[170] Not only does DM catalyze CLIP removal from MHC-II, but DM also facilitates the dissociation of weakly bound antigenic peptides from MHC-II[168,170,171]; it is for this reason that DM has been termed a "peptide editor." Unlike the MHC-II molecule itself, DM contains a tyrosine-based endocytic sorting motif in its cytosolic domain that directly interacts with clathrin-associated adaptor proteins.[172] The presence of this signal allows for the entry of DM into the endocytic pathway after arrival at the cell surface. Most DM is localized in late endocytic compartments[173] that contain MHC-II-CLIP complexes,[174] and the activity of DM is enhanced by the low pH of these later endocytic compartments.[168,169,175]

DM editing activity in APCs can be regulated by its association with another MHC-encoded transmembrane protein termed HLA-DO (DO; H-2O in mice[176]). While the precise function of DO in antigen processing and presentation remains to be defined, in vitro studies have shown that DO binds to DM and inhibits the ability of DM to catalyze CLIP removal.[177,178] Like DM, DO expression is relatively restricted to APCs. Unlike MHC-II-Ii or DM, DO does not contain any intrinsic endo-/lysosomal sorting motifs. Instead, DO associated with DM in the ER and DM serves to "escort" DO to antigen-processing compartments.[179] It is in the low pH of these compartments that DO dissociates from DM, thereby enhancing DM activity. In this respect, DO acts as an inhibitor of DM function in much the same way that the CLIP region of Ii acts as an inhibitor of MHC-II peptide binding.

Antigen Processing and Peptide Loading onto MHC-II

While MHC-II in lysosome-like antigen-processing compartments must be "prepared" for peptide binding (by degrading MHC-II–associated Ii and removing CLIP by DM), internalized foreign antigens must be similarly prepared for binding to the nascent MHC-II molecule. This task is initiated by proteolysis by any number of endocytic proteinases. Antigen-processing compartments have a pH between 4.5 and 6.5, and most proteinases in these compartments have enzymatic activity optima at this pH. There is remarkable diversity in the proteinase pool in these compartments and great redundancy in the ability of distinct proteinases to degrade particular proteins. For this reason, it has been difficult to identify specific proteinases whose activity is required to generate specific antigenic peptides. There are exceptions to this, however, as asparaginyl cysteine endoprotease is required for the generation of an immunodominant epitope to tetanus toxoid[180] and both cathepsin L and cathepsin S affect quantitative and qualitative differences in the repertoire of peptides bound to MHC-II molecules.[181] It is also a known fact that many internalized foreign (and self-) antigens contain intrachain disulfide bonds, and reduction of these bonds would alter protein conformation and render a protein more (or less) sensitive to proteolysis in antigen-processing compartments. As its name implies, the expression of IFNγ-induced thiol reductase, GILT, can be induced by exposure to IFNγ.[182] This thiol reductase is expressed in antigen-processing compartments in APCs, and the activity of GILT is important for the presentation of antigenic epitopes that are generated from proteins that contain many intrachain disulfide bonds.[183]

Just as important as generation of antigenic peptides is the ability of the antigen-processing compartment to limit excessive proteolytic degradation of antigenic peptides. While asparaginyl cysteine endoprotease positively regulates expression tetanus toxoid epitopes, this same proteinase destroys expression of the immunodominant epitope of myelin basic protein,[184] a protein thought to be involved in the demyelinating autoimmune disease multiple sclerosis. Clearly, the proteinase activity of antigen-processing compartments must be sufficient to generate antigenic peptides capable of binding to MHC-II but not so great as to completely destroy these same epitopes. Measurement of proteinase activity in various APC subtypes has revealed that macrophages have high proteinase activity and efficiently degrade proteins, but are relatively pool generators of antigenic peptides.[185] By contrast, DCs and B cells possess less proteinase activity, degrade proteins less efficiently, and are superb generators of antigen peptides.[185,186] This specialization of limiting proteinase activity helps DCs function as initiators of naïve T-cell activation and B cell capacity for immunoglobulin class switching after encounter with antigen-specific T cells.

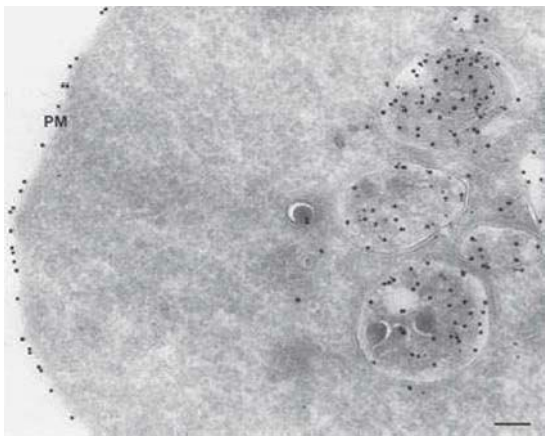
It has been proposed that binding to the MHC-II molecules can serve as a mechanism to preserve the integrity of antigenic peptides. The peptide-binding groove of MHC-II is open, and in vitro binding experiments have shown that MHC-II is capable of binding to unfolded (but otherwise intact) protein antigens.[187] The association of distinct regions within a full-length (unfolded) protein with the peptide-binding site of MHC-II could therefore protect these regions from proteolytic degradation by endo-/lysosomal proteinases. This model of "bind first trim later" has been championed as a major mechanism of peptide loading onto MHC-II[188] and has been supported by experimental studies in B cells[189]; however, the extent to which "bind first trim later" versus "trim first bind later" predominates in distinct APC subsets and for different antigens remains to be determined.

Curiously, the Ii molecule itself also can serve to limit proteinase activity of antigen-processing compartments. The additional exon that is present in Ii isoforms that are products of alternative splicing (Ii-p41 and Ii-p43) encodes a domain that functions as an inhibitor of cathepsin L.[190,191] In vitro studies showed that coexpression with Ii-p41 inhibits the kinetics of Ii-p33 degradation,[192] a finding that is consistent with the role of Ii-p41 as a proteinase inhibitor. However, no defects in function have been identified using APCs isolated from mice expression only the Ii-p41,[193] leaving the importance of this domain in APC function an open issue.

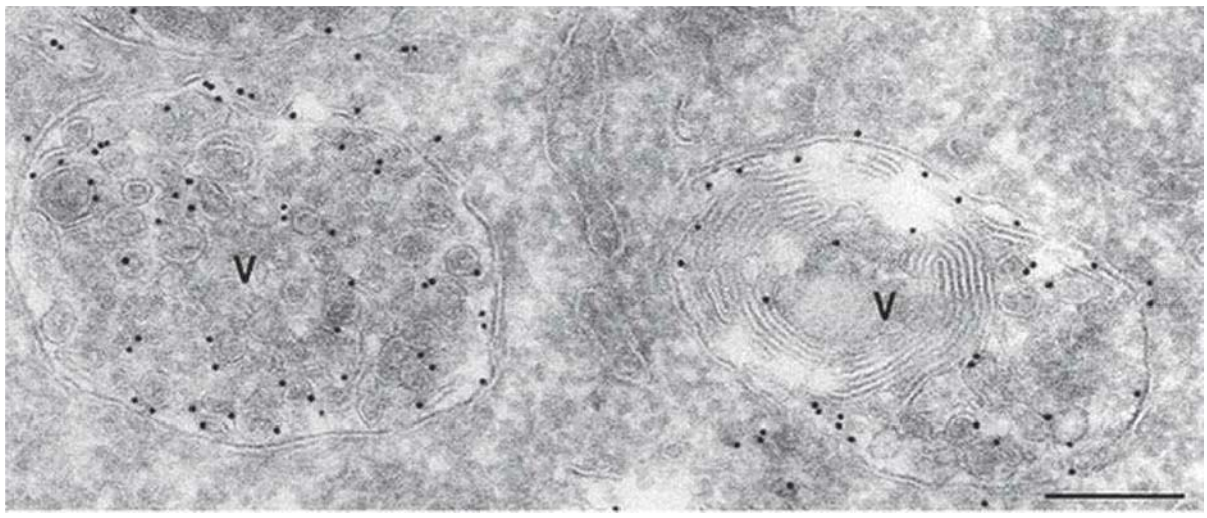
DCs are particularly interesting APCs in that they can regulate their proteinase activity upon cell activation. Immature (resting) DCs are highly phagocytic and have a remarkable capacity for macropinocytosis. Nevertheless, these cells have little proteinase activity and are relatively inefficient generators of antigenic MHC-II–peptide complexes, potentially allowing them to serve as a "depot" for antigen internalized while the cell is in the quiescent state. It has even been shown that internalized proteins can remain intact in immature DCs for days.[194,195] Activation of the immature DC by any of a number of mechanisms (either by toll-like receptor signaling or stimulation by activated T cells) leads to a number of changes in the cell, with perhaps the most important being the activation of the vacuolar proton ATPase.[196] Activation of this ATPase leads to the acidification of antigen-processing compartments, enhances the activity of endo-/lysosomal proteinases that have low pH optima, and leads to the degradation of internalized antigens to form antigenic peptides capable of binding to MHC-II. Other changes also take place following activation of immature DCs, including downregulating expression of the endogenous cysteine proteinase inhibitor cystatin C[197] and reorganizing the internal membrane structure of the antigen processing compartments[198]; however, it is likely that acidification of these compartments is the major mechanism leading to enhanced antigen processing, peptide generation, and formation of MHC-II–peptide complexes upon DC activation.

Delivery of MHC-II to the Cell Surface

The sites of antigenic protein degradation and subsequent binding of peptides onto nascent MHC-II are commonly referred to as antigen-processing compartments. At one time, it was thought that APCs possessed a "special" compartment that served as the major antigen-processing compartment[199]; however, it is now clear that "antigen-processing compartments" refer to a heterogenous collection of intracellular (generally acidic) organelles that permit peptide binding onto MHC-II.[200] These organelles generally have characteristics of typical late endosomes/prelysosomes found in all cell types (Fig. 22.6); however, in APCs these organelles contain the specialized protein machinery required for antigen processing and presentation such as MHC-II, DM, DO, GILT, and Ii-processing enzymes. A "typical" antigen-processing compartment is a late endosomal multivesicular body (MVB), an organelle that possesses intraluminal vesicles encapsulated in a limiting membrane.[201] These compartments can also have a multilamellar structure, containing numerous membrane sheets contained within an even



A



B

FIG. 22.6. Structure of Multivesicular Antigen-Processing Compartments. **A:** Ultrathin cryosections of a human B-cell line were stained with antibodies recognizing DM (10 nm gold) and total major histocompatibility complex (MHC)-II (15 nm gold). The plasma membrane stains almost exclusively for MHC-II while various forms of multivesicular antigen-processing compartments contain both MHC-II and DM (reprinted with permission Kleijmeer et al., *Methods*, 1996). **B:** Ultrathin cryosections of a mouse immature DC line were stained with antibodies recognizing MHC-II (10 nm gold). MHC-II staining is observed on the limiting membrane as well as in the intraluminal vesicles of a multivesicular body (*left*) and the numerous intraluminal membrane sheets in a multilamellar endosome (*right*) (reprinted with permission Kleijmeer et al.[198]).

more acidic lysosome-like organelles. Curiously, the in DCs majority of MHC-II is present on the intraluminal vesicles of these MVBs while the CLIP editor DM and MHC-II–peptide complexes are enriched on the MVB-limiting membrane.[198] Although most MHC-II and DM are present on distinct MVB membranes, it is unclear on which membranes the process of Ii proteolysis, CLIP release, and peptide binding to MHC-II occurs. For example, while there is in vitro evidence that DM primarily interacts with MHC-II when these proteins are on the same membrane,[202,203] whether this is the intraluminal vesicle or the MVB-limiting membrane remains to be determined.

The presence of MHC-II–peptide complexes on the intraluminal vesicles of MVB presents a topological problem for the APC, as direct fusion of the MVB with the plasma membrane would release the intraluminal vesicles from these compartments to the extracellular space. Such a process would effectively result in the secretion of MHC-II from the APC. This process does occur in DCs with some frequency, and these secreted intraluminal vesicles are termed exosomes that are capable of stimulating naïve T cells in vivo.[204] While APC-derived exosomes are being utilized as cell-free vaccines,[205] their physiologic role remains to be unambiguously determined. The majority of MHC-II in antigen-processing compartments is not released as exosomes, but is instead either degraded following fusion of the MVB with lysosomes or inserted into the plasma membrane by "vesicle"-mediated protein transport. While vesicles containing intracellular MHC-II have been observed to fuse with the plasma membrane,[206] in APCs such as DCs it is likely that these "vesicles" are actually tubules that bud from the MVB membrane and subsequently fuse with the plasma membrane. The tubulation of these compartments is stimulated in DCs by APC activation,[198,207,208] and the encounter of DCs with T cells leads to the fusion of these tubules directly to the plasma membrane region at the point of DC:T-cell contact,[208] thereby delivering MHC-II–peptides generated in DCs directly to the site of T-cell receptor concentration at the immunologic synapse.

The cellular processes that govern the movement of MHC-II to the surface of APCs are similar to those that govern the movement of any late endosomal protein the surface of any cell. In some cases, the machinery regulating discrete transport steps remains a mystery while other steps are more well characterized. For example, the mechanism leading to the delivery of intraluminal vesicle-bound MHC-II back to the MVB0limiting membrane (from which tubules are formed) is termed back-fusion,[209] and the proteins and lipids that regulate this curious process remain to be identified. By contrast, it is known that the ability of MHC-II to insert into the plasma membrane is regulated by the small GTPase ARL14/ARF7 that couples the tubulovesicle membrane with the actin cytoskeleton.[210] Like other vesicle-mediated protein transport steps, microtubules and dynein/kinesin motors[211] as well as actin and myosin motors[212] are important for the locomotion of MHC-II into and out of antigen-processing compartments.

Once at the plasma membrane, MHC-II–peptide complexes are poised to interact with antigen-specific T-cell receptors. MHC-II–peptide complexes are clustered on the plasma membrane[195,213] and associate with distinct lipid raft-[214] and tetraspanin-membrane[215] microdomains, thereby locally concentrating MHC-II on the cell surface. Biochemical studies have revealed that MHC-II associates with these membrane microdomains while still present in antigen-processing compartments even before antigenic peptide binding.[216] This finding is consistent with the observation that MVBs contain large amounts of cholesterol, a major constituent of lipid raft membrane microdomains.[217] While lipid raft- and tetraspanin-microdomain associations are important for the T-cell stimulatory function of APCs,[214,218] the molecular signals leading to membrane microdomain association of MHC-II remain to be determined.

MHC-II–peptide complexes are generated and reside in a relatively hostile (acidic, proteinase-rich) environment, and therefore it is not surprising that cell surface MHC-II has a relatively long half-life.[219,220] While this is true on activated B cells and mature DCs, MHC-II on the surface of immature DCs has a significantly reduced half-life. This is likely due to rapid endocytosis and lysosomal degradation of surface MHC-II in resting (immature) DCs.[221,222] The dichotomy between the endocytosis and survival of MHC-II in immature and mature DCs can be explained in part by the fact that internalized MHC-II is ubiquitinated in immature DCs and targeted for lysosomal degradation while internalized MHC-II is not ubiquitined in mature DCs and efficiently recycles back to the plasma membrane.[223,224] The E3 ubiquitin ligase March-I, whose expression appears to be limited to APCs, ubiquitinates the cytosolic domain of the MHC-II β-chain in APCs,[118] thereby preventing the recycling of internalized MHC-II and targeting ubiquitinated MHC-II for lysosomal degradation.[225] This mechanism ensures that the kinetics of MHC-II synthesis and degradation in immature DCs are similar and provides a means to halt the degradation of relevant MHC-II–peptide complexes upon DC activation.

Simply because MHC-II has a long half-life in B cells and DCs does not mean that these molecules do not internalize. In these APC subtypes, internalized MHC-II efficiently recycles from early (recycling) endosomes back to the plasma membrane,[221] thereby limiting their delivery to lysosomes and prolonging MHC-II half-life. The ability of internalized MHC-II to exchange one peptide for another in endosomes has been demonstrated in vitro[226,227]; however, it remains to be determined whether peptide exchange onto recycling MHC-II in vivo is a significant mechanism of peptide loading onto MHC-II. There is convincing evidence, however, that certain protein epitopes are primarily presented by recycling MHC-II.[228] Unlike presentation of epitopes from "classically processed" antigens, presentation of these epitopes does not require neosynthesis of MHC-II and is independent of Ii expression or DM activity. A particularly intriguing example of this pathway can be found in the analysis of an immunogenic epitope presentation of the influenza virus hemagglutinin,[228] in which presentation of one epitope is via the classical (late endosomal) processing and presentation pathway while another is presented via a nonclassical (early endosomal) recycling pathway.

Alternate Pathways of Antigen Presentation

In this chapter, we have reviewed what is typically called the classical MHC-I and MHC-II antigen-processing and -presentation pathways. In addition to these pathways, there are also interesting alternative antigen-presentation pathways. Although not the focus of this chapter, these nonclassical pathways provide clear evidence that antigen presentation is more complex than a simple dichotomy of the two classical pathways. The most extensively studied of these alternative pathways is cross-presentation, a process by which CD8 T cells present exogenous antigen taken up by professional APCs such as DCs. Cross-presentation is critical for initiating CD8+ immune responses to pathogens that do not infect professional APCs or tumors that do not arise in professional APCs. Although several details remain unsolved, cell biologic approaches suggest that the loading of cross-presented antigens occurs by several different pathways each with hybrid features of both of the classical pathways.[229–231]

The presentation of lipid antigens by MHC-I like CD1 molecules also occurs by a nonclassical pathway.[232,233] Human CD1a, CD1b, and CD1c isoforms present bacterial lipids to conventional αβ T cells, whereas CD1d presents endogenous and microbial lipids to invariant natural killer T cells. Interestingly, disparate targeting motifs in their cytoplasmic tails facilitate the binding of lipid antigens in the early endosomes by CD1a, in the late endosome/lysosome by CD1b and CD1d, and at both sites by CD1c. This diversity of location of lipid antigen binding by different human CD1 isoforms allows surveying of different endosomal compartments for microbes. The assembly of CD1 isoforms in the ER uses molecular chaperones CXN, CRT, and ERp57 similar to the classical MHC-I pathways. As expected, the processing and loading of lipid antigens presented by CD1 isoforms requires unique players.[234] However, the trafficking of CD1 isoforms between the plasma membrane and endosomal compartments to acquire lipid antigens has parallels with the classical MHC-II pathway. In sum, with the underlying goal of providing maximal immunity for detection and protection against diverse pathogens, mammals have two classical and other nonclassical pathways of antigen presentation.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

The authors thank Drs. Peter Cresswell and Karin Reinisch for sharing Protein Data Bank (PDB) files with the model shown in Figure 22.3, Dr. William McCoy IV for his rendering of Figure 22.3, and Dr. Janet Connolly for professional editing.

REFERENCES

1. Reits EA, Vos JC, Gromme M, Neefjes J. The major substrates for TAP in vivo are derived from newly synthesized proteins. *Nature*. 2000; 404:774. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10783892
2. Schubert U, Anton LC, Gibbs J, Norbury CC, Yewdell JW, Bennink JR. Rapid degradation of a large fraction of newly synthesized proteins by proteasomes. *Nature*. 2000;404:770. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10783891
3. Qian SB, Reits E, Neefjes J, Deslich JM, Bennink JR, Yewdell JW. Tight linkage between translation and MHC class I peptide ligand generation implies specialized antigen processing for defective ribosomal products. *J Immunol*. 2006;177:227. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16785518
4. Princiotta MF, Finzi D, Qian SB, et al. Quantitating protein synthesis, degradation, and endogenous antigen processing. *Immunity*. 2003; 18:343. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12648452
5. Dolan BP, Li L, Takeda K, Bennink JR, Yewdell JW. Defective ribosomal products are the major source of antigenic peptides endogenously generated from influenza A virus neuraminidase. *J Immunol*. 2010; 184:1419. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20038640
6. Yewdell J. To DRiP or not to DRiP: generating peptide ligands for MHC class I molecules from biosynthesized proteins. *Mol Immunol*. 2002; 39:139. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12200046
7. Yewdell JW, Anton LC, Bennink JR. Defective ribosomal products (DRiPs): a major source of antigenic peptides for MHC class I molecules? *J Immunol*. 1996;157:1823. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8757297
8. Dolan BP, Bennink JR, Yewdell JW. Translating DRiPs: progress in understanding viral and cellular sources of MHC class I peptide ligands. *Cell Mol Life Sci*. 2011;68:1481. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21416150
9. Starck SR, Shastri N. Non-conventional sources of peptides presented by MHC class I. *Cell Mol Life Sci*. 2011;68:1471. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21390547
10. Schwab SR, Li KC, Kang C, Shastri N. Constitutive display of cryptic translation products by MHC class I molecules. *Science*. 2003;301:1367. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12958358
11. Schwab SR, Shugart JA, Horng T, Malarkannan S, Shastri N. Unanticipated antigens: translation initiation at CUG with leucine. *PLoS Biol*. 2004;2:e366. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15510226
12. Ostankovitch M, Robila V, Engelhard VH. Regulated folding of tyrosinase in the endoplasmic reticulum demonstrates that misfolded full-length proteins are efficient substrates for class I processing and presentation. *J Immunol*. 2005;174:2544. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15728460
13. Golovina TN, Morrison SE, Eisenlohr LC. The impact of misfolding versus targeted degradation on the efficiency of the MHC class I-restricted antigen processing. *J Immunol*. 2005;174:2763. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15728485
14. Huang L, Kuhls MC, Eisenlohr LC. Hydrophobicity as a driver of MHC class I antigen processing. *EMBO J*. 2011;30:1634. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21378750
15. Schlosser E, Otero C, Wuensch C, et al. A novel cytosolic class I antigen-processing pathway for endoplasmic-reticulum-targeted proteins. *EMBO Rep*. 2007;8:945. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17853904
16. Yewdell JW, Nicchitta CV. The DRiP hypothesis decennial: support, controversy, refinement and extension. *Trends Immunol*. 2006;27:368. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16815756
17. Eisenlohr LC, Huang L, Golovina TN. Rethinking peptide supply to MHC class I molecules. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2007;7:403. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17457346
18. Ciechanover A, Ben-Saadon R. N-terminal ubiquitination: more protein substrates join in. *Trends Cell Biol*. 2004;14:103. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15055197
19. Cadwell K, Coscoy L. Ubiquitination on nonlysine residues by a viral E3 ubiquitin ligase. *Science*. 2005;309:127. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15994556
20. Wang X, Herr RA, Chua WJ, Lybarger L, Wiertz EJ, Hansen TH. Ubiquitination of serine, threonine, or lysine residues on the cytoplasmic tail can induce ERAD of MHC-I by viral E3 ligase mK3. *J Cell Biol*. 2007;177:613. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17502423
21. Wang X, Herr RA, Rabelink M, Hoeben RC, Wiertz EJ, Hansen TH. Ube2j2 ubiquitinates hydroxylated amino acids on ER-associated degradation substrates. *J Cell Biol*. 2009;187:655. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19951915
22. Reits E, Griekspoor A, Neijssen J, et al. Peptide diffusion, protection, and degradation in nuclear and cytoplasmic compartments before antigen presentation by MHC class I. *Immunity*. 2003;18:97. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12530979
23. Murata S, Udono H, Tanahashi N, et al. Immunoproteasome assembly and antigen presentation in mice lacking both PA28alpha and PA28beta. *EMBO J*. 2001;20:5898. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11689430
24. Kessler JH, Khan S, Seifert U, et al. Antigen processing by nardilysin and thimet oligopeptidase generates cytotoxic T cell epitopes. *Nat Immunol*. 2011;12:45. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21151101
25. Townsend A, Ohlen C, Bastin J, Ljunggren HG, Foster L, Karre K. Association of class I major histocompatibility heavy and light chains induced by viral peptides. *Nature*. 1989;340:443. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21151101
26. Townsend A, Elliott T, Cerundolo V, Foster L, Barber B, Tse A. Assembly of MHC class I molecules analyzed in vitro. *Cell*. 1990;62:285. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2196996
27. Kelly A, Powis SH, Kerr LA, et al. Assembly and function of the two ABC transporter proteins encoded in the human major histocompatibility complex. *Nature*. 1992;355:641. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1538751
28. Koch J, Guntrum R, Heintke S, Kyritsis C, Tampe R. Functional dissection of the transmembrane domains of the transporter associated with antigen processing (TAP). *J Biol Chem*. 2004;279:10142. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14679198
29. Herget M, Baldauf C, Scholz C, et al. Conformation of peptides bound to the transporter associated with antigen processing (TAP). *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2011;108:1349. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21205905
30. Burgevin A, Saveanu L, Kim Y, et al. A detailed analysis of the murine TAP transporter substrate specificity. *PLoS One*. 2008;3:e2402. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18545702
31. Peters B, Bulik S, Tampe R, van Endert PM, Holzhutter HG. Identifying MHC class I epitopes by predicting the TAP transport efficiency of epitope precursors. *J Immunol*. 2003;171:1741. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12902473
32. Chang SC, Momburg F, Bhutani N, Goldberg AL. The ER aminopeptidase, ERAP1, trims precursors to lengths of MHC class I peptides by a "molecular ruler" mechanism. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2005;102:17107. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16286653
33. Nguyen TT, Chang SC, Evnouchidou I, et al. Structural basis for antigenic peptide precursor processing by the endoplasmic reticulum aminopeptidase ERAP1. *Nat Struct Mol Biol*. 2011;18:604. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21478864
34. Tanioka T, Hattori A, Masuda S, et al. Human leukocyte-derived arginine aminopeptidase. The third member of the oxytocinase subfamily of aminopeptidases. *J Biol Chem*. 2003;278:32275. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12799365
35. Saveanu L, Carroll O, Lindo V, et al. Concerted peptide trimming by human ERAP1 and ERAP2 aminopeptidase complexes in the endoplasmic reticulum. *Nat Immunol*. 2005;6:689. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15908954
36. Serwold T, Gonzalez F, Kim J, Jacob R, Shastri N. ERAAP customizes peptides for MHC class I molecules in the endoplasmic reticulum. *Nature*. 2002;419:480. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12368856
37. York IA, Chang SC, Saric T, et al. The ER aminopeptidase ERAP1 enhances or limits antigen presentation by trimming epitopes to 8-9 residues. *Nat Immunol*. 2002;3:1177. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12436110
38. Hammer GE, Gonzalez F, Champsaur M, Cado D, Shastri N. The aminopeptidase ERAAP shapes the peptide repertoire displayed by major histocompatibility complex class I molecules. *Nat Immunol*. 2006;7:103. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16299505

39. Yan J, Parekh VV, Mendez-Fernandez Y, et al. In vivo role of ER-associated peptidase activity in tailoring peptides for presentation by MHC class Ia and class Ib molecules. *J Exp Med*. 2006;203:647. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16505142
40. Blanchard N, Shastri N. Coping with loss of perfection in the MHC class I peptide repertoire. *Curr Opin Immunol*. 2008;20:82. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18243675
41. Suh WK, Cohen-Doyle MF, Fruh K, Wang K, Peterson PA, Williams DB. Interaction of MHC class I molecules with the transporter associated with antigen processing. *Science*. 1994;264:1322. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8191286
42. Ortmann B, Androlewicz MJ, Cresswell P. MHC class I/beta 2-microglobulin complexes associate with TAP transporters before peptide binding. *Nature*. 1994;368:864. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8159247
43. Carreno BM, Solheim JC, Harris M, Stroynowski I, Connolly JM, Hansen TH. TAP associates with a unique class I conformation, whereas calnexin associates with multiple class I forms in mouse and man. *J Immunol*. 1995;155:4726. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7594473
44. Solheim JC, Harris MR, Kindle CS, Hansen TH. Prominence of beta 2-microglobulin, class I heavy chain conformation, and tapasin in the interactions of class I heavy chain with calreticulin and the transporter associated with antigen processing. *J Immunol*. 1997;158:2236. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9036970
45. Purcell AW, Elliott T. Molecular machinations of the MHC-I peptide loading complex. *Curr Opin Immunol*. 2008;20:75. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18243674
46. Peaper DR, Cresswell P. Regulation of MHC class I assembly and peptide binding. *Annu Rev Cell Dev Biol*. 2008;24:343. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18729726
47. Gao B, Adhikari R, Howarth M, et al. Assembly and antigen-presenting function of MHC class I molecules in cells lacking the ER chaperone calreticulin. *Immunity*. 2002;16:99. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11825569
48. Dick TP, Bangia N, Peaper DR, Cresswell P. Disulfide bond isomerization and the assembly of MHC class I-peptide complexes. *Immunity*. 2002;16:87. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11825568
49. Peaper DR, Wearsch PA, Cresswell P. Tapasin and ERp57 form a stable disulfide-linked dimer within the MHC class I peptide-loading complex. *EMBO J*. 2005;24:3613. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16193070
50. Kienast A, Preuss M, Winkler M, Dick TP. Redox regulation of peptide receptivity of major histocompatibility complex class I molecules by ERp57 and tapasin. *Nat Immunol*. 2007;8:864. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17603488
51. Garbi N, Tanaka S, Momburg F, Hammerling GJ. Impaired assembly of the major histocompatibility complex class I peptide-loading complex in mice deficient in the oxidoreductase ERp57. *Nat Immunol*. 2006;7:93. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16311600
52. Dong G, Wearsch PA, Peaper DR, Cresswell P, Reinisch KM. Insights into MHC class I peptide loading from the structure of the tapasin-ERp57 thiol oxidoreductase heterodimer. *Immunity*. 2009;30:21. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19119025
53. Ortmann B, Copeman J, Lehner PJ, et al. A critical role for tapasin in the assembly and function of multimeric MHC class I-TAP complexes. *Science*. 1997;277:1306. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9271576
54. Schoenhals GJ, Krishna RM, Grandea AG III, et al. Retention of empty MHC class I molecules by tapasin is essential to reconstitute antigen presentation in invertebrate cells. *EMBO J*. 1999;18:743. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9927434
55. Lybarger L, Yu YY, Chun T, et al. Tapasin enhances peptide-induced expression of H2-M3 molecules, but is not required for the retention of open conformers. *J Immunol*. 2001;167:2097. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11489993
56. Chen M, Bouvier M. Analysis of interactions in a tapasin/class I complex provides a mechanism for peptide selection. *EMBO J*. 2007;26:1681. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17332746
57. Wearsch PA, Cresswell P. Selective loading of high-affinity peptides onto major histocompatibility complex class I molecules by the tapasin-ERp57 heterodimer. *Nat Immunol*. 2007;8:873. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17603487
58. Lewis JW, Neisig A, Neefjes J, Elliott T. Point mutations in the alpha 2 domain of HLA-A2.1 define a functionally relevant interaction with TAP. *Curr Biol*. 1996;6:873. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8805302
59. Yu YY, Turnquist HR, Myers NB, Balendiran GK, Hansen TH, Solheim JC. An extensive region of an MHC class I alpha 2 domain loop influences interaction with the assembly complex. *J Immunol*. 1999;163:4427. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10510384
60. Hansen TH, Lybarger L, Yu L, Mitaksov V, Fremont DH. Recognition of open conformers of classical MHC by chaperones and monoclonal antibodies. *Immunol Rev*. 2005;207:100. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16181330
61. Sieker F, Straatsma TP, Springer S, Zacharias M. Differential tapasin dependence of MHC class I molecules correlates with conformational changes upon peptide dissociation: a molecular dynamics simulation study. *Mol Immunol*. 2008;45:3714. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18639935
62. Williams AP, Peh CA, Purcell AW, McCluskey J, Elliott T. Optimization of the MHC class I peptide cargo is dependent on tapasin. *Immunity*. 2002;16:509. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11970875
63. Zhang W, Wearsch PA, Zhu Y, Leonhardt RM, Cresswell P. A role for UDP-glucose glycoprotein glucosyltransferase in expression and quality control of MHC class I molecules. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2011; 108:4956. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21383159
64. Howe C, Garstka M, Al-Balushi M, et al. Calreticulin-dependent recycling in the early secretory pathway mediates optimal peptide loading of MHC class I molecules. *EMBO J*. 2009;28:3730. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19851281
65. Hansen TH, Bouvier M. MHC class I antigen presentation: learning from viral evasion strategies. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2009;9:503. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19498380
66. Levitskaya J, Coram M, Levitsky V, et al. Inhibition of antigen processing by the internal repeat region of the Epstein-Barr virus nuclear antigen-1. *Nature*. 1995;375:685. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7540727
67. Dantuma NP, Heessen S, Lindsten K, Jellne M, Masucci MG. Inhibition of proteasomal degradation by the gly-Ala repeat of Epstein-Barr virus is influenced by the length of the repeat and the strength of the degradation signal. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2000;97:8381. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10890896
68. Bennett NJ, May JS, Stevenson PG. Gamma-herpesvirus latency requires T cell evasion during episome maintenance. *PLoS Biol*. 2005; 3:e120. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15769185
69. Zaldumbide A, Ossevoort M, Wiertz EJ, Hoeben RC. In cis inhibition of antigen processing by the latency-associated nuclear antigen I of Kaposi sarcoma herpes virus. *Mol Immunol*. 2007;44:1352. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16828498
70. Kwun HJ, da Silva SR, Shah IM, Blake N, Moore PS, Chang Y. Kaposi's sarcoma-associated herpesvirus latency-associated nuclear antigen 1 mimics Epstein-Barr virus EBNA1 immune evasion through central repeat domain effects on protein processing. *J Virol*. 2007;81:8225. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17522213
71. Fruh K, Ahn K, Djaballah H, et al. A viral inhibitor of peptide transporters for antigen presentation. *Nature*. 1995;375:415. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7760936
72. Hill A, Jugovic P, York I, et al. Herpes simplex virus turns off the TAP to evade host immunity. *Nature*. 1995;375:411. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7760935
73. Ahn K, Meyer TH, Uebel S, et al. Molecular mechanism and species specificity of TAP inhibition by herpes simplex virus ICP47. *EMBO J*. 1996;15:3247. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8670825
74. Tomazin R, Hill AB, Jugovic P, et al. Stable binding of the herpes simplex virus ICP47 protein to the peptide binding site of TAP. *EMBO J*. 1996;15:3256. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8670826
75. Lacaille VG, Androlewicz MJ. Herpes simplex virus inhibitor ICP47 destabilizes the transporter associated with antigen processing (TAP) heterodimer. *J Biol Chem*. 1998;273:17386. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9651323

76. Gorbulev S, Abele R, Tampe R. Allosteric crosstalk between peptide-binding, transport, and ATP hydrolysis of the ABC transporter TAP. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2001;98:3732. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11274390
77. Ahn K, Gruhler A, Galocha B, et al. The ER-luminal domain of the HCMV glycoprotein US6 inhibits peptide translocation by TAP. *Immunity*. 1997;6:613. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9175839
78. Hengel H, Koopmann JO, Flohr T, et al. A viral ER-resident glycoprotein inactivates the MHC-encoded peptide transporter. *Immunity*. 1997;6:623. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9175840
79. Lehner PJ, Karttunen JT, Wilkinson GW, Cresswell P. The human cytomegalovirus US6 glycoprotein inhibits transporter associated with antigen processing-dependent peptide translocation. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1997;94:6904. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9192664
80. Hewitt EW, Gupta SS, Lehner PJ. The human cytomegalovirus gene product US6 inhibits ATP binding by TAP. *EMBO J*. 2001;20:387. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11157746
81. Kyritsis C, Gorbulev S, Hutschenreiter S, Pawlitschko K, Abele R, Tampe R. Molecular mechanism and structural aspects of transporter associated with antigen processing inhibition by the cytomegalovirus protein US6. *J Biol Chem*. 2001;276:48031. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11606590
82. Loch S, Klauschies F, Scholz C, et al. Signaling of a varicelloviral factor across the endoplasmic reticulum membrane induces destruction of the peptide-loading complex and immune evasion. *J Biol Chem*. 2008;283:13428. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18321854
83. Lee S, Yoon J, Park B, et al. Structural and functional dissection of human cytomegalovirus US3 in binding major histocompatibility complex class I molecules. *J Virol*. 2000;74:11262. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11070025
84. Park B, Kim Y, Shin J, et al. Human cytomegalovirus inhibits tapasin-dependent peptide loading and optimization of the MHC class I peptide cargo for immune evasion. *Immunity*. 2004;20:71. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14738766
85. Bennett EM, Bennink JR, Yewdell JW, Brodsky FM. Cutting edge: adenovirus E19 has two mechanisms for affecting class I MHC expression. *J Immunol*. 1999;162:5049. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10227971
86. Andersson M, Paabo S, Nilsson T, Peterson PA. Impaired intracellular transport of class I MHC antigens as a possible means for adenoviruses to evade immune surveillance. *Cell*. 1985;43:215. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2934137
87. Burgert HG, Kvist S. An adenovirus type 2 glycoprotein blocks cell surface expression of human histocompatibility class I antigens. *Cell*. 1985;41:987. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3924414
88. Paabo S, Bhat BM, Wold WS, Peterson PA. A short sequence in the COOH-terminus makes an adenovirus membrane glycoprotein a resident of the endoplasmic reticulum. *Cell*. 1987;50:311. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2954653
89. Gabathuler R, Levy F, Kvist S. Requirements for the association of adenovirus type 2 E3/19K wild-type and mutant proteins with HLA antigens. *J Virol*. 1990;64:3679. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2142509
90. Liu H, Stafford WF, Bouvier M. The endoplasmic reticulum lumenal domain of the adenovirus type 2 E3-19K protein binds to peptide-filled and peptide-deficient HLA-A*1101 molecules. *J Virol*. 2005;79:13317. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16227254
91. Dasgupta A, Hammarlund E, Slifka MK, Fruh K. Cowpox virus evades CTL recognition and inhibits the intracellular transport of MHC class I molecules. *J Immunol*. 2007;178:1654. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17237415
92. Byun M, Wang X, Pak M, Hansen TH, Yokoyama WM. Cowpox virus exploits the endoplasmic reticulum retention pathway to inhibit MHC class I transport to the cell surface. *Cell Host Microbe*. 2007;2:306. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18005752
93. Byun M, Verweij MC, Pickup DJ, Wiertz EJ, Hansen TH, Yokoyama WM. Two mechanistically distinct immune evasion proteins of cowpox virus combine to avoid antiviral CD8 T cells. *Cell Host Microbe*. 2009;6:422. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19917497
94. Alzhanova D, Edwards DM, Hammarlund E, et al. Cowpox virus inhibits the transporter associated with antigen processing to evade T cell recognition. *Cell Host Microbe*. 2009;6:433. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19917498
95. Schwartz O, Marechal V, Le GS, Lemonnier F, Heard JM. Endocytosis of major histocompatibility complex class I molecules is induced by the HIV-1 Nef protein. *Nat Med*. 1996;2:338. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8612235
96. Collins KL, Chen BK, Kalams SA, Walker BD, Baltimore D. HIV-1 Nef protein protects infected primary cells against killing by cytotoxic T lymphocytes. *Nature*. 1998;391:397. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9450757
97. Schaefer MR, Wonderlich ER, Roeth JF, Leonard JA, Collins KL. HIV-1 Nef targets MHC-I and CD4 for degradation via a final common beta-COP-dependent pathway in T cells. *PLoS Pathog*. 2008;4:e1000131. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18725938
98. Wang X, Herr RA, Hansen T. Viral and cellular MARCH ubiquitin ligases and cancer. *Semin Cancer Biol*. 2008;18:441. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18948196
99. Nathan JA, Lehner PJ. The trafficking and regulation of membrane receptors by the RING-CH ubiquitin E3 ligases. *Exp Cell Res*. 2009;315:1593. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19013150
100. Ohmura-Hoshino M, Goto E, Matsuki Y, et al. A novel family of membrane-bound E3 ubiquitin ligases. *J Biochem*. 2006;140:147. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16954532
101. Stevenson PG, Efstathiou S, Doherty PC, Lehner PJ. Inhibition of MHC class I-restricted antigen presentation by gamma 2-herpesviruses. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2000;97:8455. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10890918
102. Coscoy L, Ganem D. Kaposi's sarcoma-associated herpesvirus encodes two proteins that block cell surface display of MHC class I chains by enhancing their endocytosis. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2000;97:8051. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10859362
103. Ishido S, Wang C, Lee BS, Cohen GB, Jung JU. Downregulation of major histocompatibility complex class I molecules by Kaposi's sarcoma-associated herpesvirus K3 and K5 proteins. *J Virol*. 2000;74:5300. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10799607
104. Lybarger L, Wang X, Harris MR, Virgin HW, Hansen TH. Virus subversion of the MHC class I peptide-loading complex. *Immunity*. 2003;18:121. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12530981
105. Wang X, Lybarger L, Connors R, Harris MR, Hansen TH. Model for the interaction of gammaherpesvirus 68 RING-CH finger protein mK3 with major histocompatibility complex class I and the peptide-loading complex. *J Virol*. 2004;78:8673. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15280476
106. Wang X, Connors R, Harris MR, Hansen TH, Lybarger L. Requirements for the selective degradation of endoplasmic reticulum-resident major histocompatibility complex class I proteins by the viral immune evasion molecule mK3. *J Virol*. 2005;79:4099. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15767411
107. Boname JM, de Lima BD, Lehner PJ, Stevenson PG. Viral degradation of the MHC class I peptide loading complex. *Immunity*. 2004;20:305. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15030774
108. Wiertz EJ, Jones TR, Sun L, Bogyo M, Geuze HJ, Ploegh HL. The human cytomegalovirus US11 gene product dislocates MHC class I heavy chains from the endoplasmic reticulum to the cytosol. *Cell*. 1996;84:769. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8625414
109. Wiertz EJ, Tortorella D, Bogyo M, et al. Sec61-mediated transfer of a membrane protein from the endoplasmic reticulum to the proteasome for destruction. *Nature*. 2001;384:432. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8945469
110. Loureiro J, Lilley BN, Spooner E, Noriega V, Tortorella D, Ploegh HL. Signal peptide peptidase is required for dislocation from the endoplasmic reticulum. *Nature*. 2006;441:894. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16738546
111. Lilley BN, Ploegh HL. A membrane protein required for dislocation of misfolded proteins from the ER. *Nature*. 2004;429:834. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15215855
112. Mueller B, Lilley BN, Ploegh HL. SEL1L, the homologue of yeast Hrd3p, is involved in protein dislocation from the mammalian ER. *J Cell Biol*. 2006;175:261. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17043138

113. Mueller B, Klemm EJ, Spooner E, Claessen JH, Ploegh HL. SEL1L nucleates a protein complex required for dislocation of misfolded glycoproteins. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2008;105:12325. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18711132
114. Lilley BN, Ploegh HL. Viral modulation of antigen presentation: manipulation of cellular targets in the ER and beyond. *Immunol Rev*. 2005;207:126. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16181332
115. Lybarger L, Wang X, Harris M, Hansen TH. Viral immune evasion molecules attack the ER peptide-loading complex and exploit ER- associated degradation pathways. *Curr Opin Immunol*. 2005;17:71. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15653314
116. ThomasM,BonameJM, Field S, et al. Down-regulation of NKG2D and NKp80 ligands by Kaposi's sarcoma-associated herpesvirus K5 protects against NK cell cytotoxicity. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2008;105:1656. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8230726
117. DeGA, Camosseto V, Thibodeau J, et al. MHC class II stabilization at the surface of human dendritic cells is the result of maturation-dependent MARCH I down-regulation. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2008;105:3491. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18305173
118. Matsuki Y, Ohmura-Hoshino M, Goto E, et al. Novel regulation of MHC class II function in B cells. *EMBO J*. 2007;26:846. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17255932
119. Young LJ, Wilson NS, Schnorrer P, et al. Differential MHC class II synthesis and ubiquitination confers distinct antigen-presenting properties on conventional and plasmacytoid dendritic cells. *Nat Immunol*. 2008;9:1244. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18849989
120. Sinai AP, Joiner KA. Safe haven: the cell biology of nonfusogenic pathogen vacuoles. *Annu Rev Microbiol*. 1997;51:415. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9343356
121. Doherty GJ, McMahon HT. Mechanisms of endocytosis. *Annu Rev Biochem*. 2009;78:857. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19317650
122. Sallusto F, Cella M, Danieli C, Lanzavecchia A. Dendritic cells use macropinocytosis and the mannose receptor to concentrate macromolecules in the major histocompatibility complex class II compartment: downregulation by cytokines and bacterial products. *J Exp Med*. 1995;182:389. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7629501
123. Garrett WS, Chen LM, Kroschewski R, et al. Developmental control of endocytosis in dendritic cells by Cdc42. *Cell*. 2000;102:325. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10975523
124. West MA, Prescott AR, Eskelinen EL, Ridley AJ, Watts C. Rac is required for constitutive macropinocytosis by dendritic cells but does not control its downregulation. *Curr Biol*. 2000;10:839. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10899002
125. Lanzavecchia A. Antigen-specific interaction between T and B cells. *Nature*. 1985;314:537. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3157869
126. Nashar TO, Drake JR. The pathway of antigen uptake and processing dictates MHC class II-mediated B cell survival and activation. *J Immunol*. 2005;174:1306. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15661887
127. Trombetta ES, Mellman I. Cell biology of antigen processing in vitro and in vivo. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 2005;23:975. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15771591
128. Tan MC, Mommaas AM, Drijfhout JW, et al. Mannose receptor mediated uptake of antigens strongly enhances HLA-class II restricted antigen presentation by cultured dendritic cells. *Adv Exp Med Biol*. 1997;417:171. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9286356
129. Engering AJ, Cella M, Fluitsma D, et al. The mannose receptor functions as a high capacity and broad specificity antigen receptor in human dendritic cells. *Eur J Immunol*. 1997;27:2417. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9341788
130. Jiang W, Swiggard WJ, Heufler C, et al. The receptor DEC-205 expressed by dendritic cells and thymic epithelial cells is involved in antigen processing. *Nature*. 1995;375:151. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7753172
131. Steinman RM, Banchereau J. Taking dendritic cells into medicine. *Nature*. 2007;449:419. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17898760
132. Munz C. Autophagy and antigen presentation. *Cell Microbiol*. 2006; 8:891. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16681832
133. Crotzer VL, Blum JS. Cytosol to lysosome transport of intracellular antigens during immune surveillance. *Traffic*. 2008;9:10. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17916226
134. Paludan C, Schmid D, Landthaler M, et al. Endogenous MHC class II processing of a viral nuclear antigen after autophagy. *Science*. 2005; 307:593. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15591165
135. Schmid D, Pypaert M, Munz C. Antigen-loading compartments for major histocompatibility complex class II molecules continuously receive input from autophagosomes. *Immunity*. 2007;26:79. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17182262
136. Zhou D, Li P, Lin Y, et al. Lamp-2a facilitates MHC class II presentation of cytoplasmic antigens. *Immunity*. 2005;22:571. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15894275
137. Roche PA, Cresswell P. Invariant chain association with HLA-DR molecules inhibits immunogenic peptide binding. *Nature*. 1990;345:615. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2190094
138. Teyton L, O'Sullivan D, Dickson PW, et al. Invariant chain distinguishes between the exogenous and endogenous antigen presentation pathways. *Nature*. 1990;348:39. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2234057
139. Long EO, LaVaute T, Pinet V, Jaraquemada D. Invariant chain prevents the HLA-DR-restricted presentation of a cytosolic peptide. *J Immunol*. 1994;153:1487. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8046228
140. Ghosh P, Amaya M, Mellins E, Wiley DC. The structure of an intermediate in class II MHC maturation: CLIP bound to HLA-DR3. *Nature*. 1995;378:457. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7477400
141. Strubin M, Long EO, Mach B. Two forms of the Ia antigen-associated invariant chain result from alternative initiations at two in-phase AUGs. *Cell*. 1986;47:619. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3779839
142. Koch N, Lauer W, Habicht J, Dobberstein B. Primary structure of the gene for the murine Ia antigen-associated invariant chains (Ii). An alternatively spliced exon encodes a cysteine-rich domain highly homologous to a repetitive sequence of thyroglobulin. *EMBO J*. 1987;6:1677. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3038530
143. Strubin M, Berte C, Mach B. Alternative splicing and alternative initiation of translation explain the four forms of the Ia antigen-associated invariant chain. *EMBO J*. 1986;5:3483. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3104027
144. O'Sullivan DM, Noonan D, Quaranta V. Four Ia invariant chain forms derive from a single gene by alternate splicing and alternate initiation of transcription/translation. *J Exp Med*. 1987;166:444. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3036998
145. Marks MS, Blum JS, Cresswell P. Invariant chain trimers are sequestered in the rough endoplasmic reticulum in the absence of association with HLA class II antigens. *J Cell Biol*. 1990;111:839. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2391366
146. Lamb CA, Cresswell P. Assembly and transport properties of invariant chain trimers and HLA-DR- invariant chain complexes. *J Immunol*. 1992;148:3478. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1588042
147. Arunachalam B, Lamb CA, Cresswell P. Transport properties of free and MHC class II-associated oligomers containing different isoforms of human invariant chain. *Int Immunol*. 1994;6:439. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8186195
148. Roche PA, Marks MS, Cresswell P. Formation of a nine-subunit complex by HLA class II glycoproteins and the invariant chain. *Nature*. 1991;354:392. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1956401
149. Anderson KS, Cresswell P. A role for calnexin (IP90) in the assembly of class II MHC molecules. *EMBO J*. 1994;13:675. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8313912
150. Lotteau V, Teyton L, Peleraux A, et al. Intracellular transport of class II MHC molecules directed by invariant chain. *Nature*. 1990;348:600. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2250716
151. Schutze MP, Peterson PA, Jackson MR. An N-terminal double-arginine motif maintains type II membrane proteins in the endoplasmic reticulum. *EMBO J*. 1994;13:1696. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8157008

152. Newcomb JR, Cresswell P. Structural analysis of proteolytic products of MHC class II-invariant chain complexes generated in vivo. *J Immunol*. 1993;151:4153. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8409392
153. Bikoff EK, Germain RN, Robertson EJ. Allelic differences affecting invariant chain dependency of MHC class II subunit assembly. *Immunity*. 1995;2:301. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7697546
154. Romagnoli P, Layet C, Yewdell J, Bakke O, Germain RN. Relationship between invariant chain expression and major histocompatibility complex class II transport into early and late endocytic compartments. *J Exp Med*. 1993;177:583. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8436902
155. Neefjes JJ, Stollorz V, Peters PJ, Geuze HJ, Ploegh HL. The biosynthetic pathway of MHC class II but not class I molecules intersects the endocytic route. *Cell*. 1990;61:171. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2156628
156. Benaroch P, Yilla M, Raposo G, et al. How MHC class II molecules reach the endocytic pathway. *EMBO J*. 1995;14:37. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7530198
157. Roche PA, Teletski CL, Stang E, Bakke O, Long EO. Cell surface HLA-DR-invariant chain complexes are targeted to endosomes by rapid internalization. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1993;90:8581. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8397411
158. Bakke O, Dobberstein B. MHC class II-associated invariant chain contains a sorting signal for endosomal compartments. *Cell*. 1990; 63:707. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2121367
159. Pieters J, Bakke O, Dobberstein B. The MHC class II-associated invariant chain contains two endosomal targeting signals within its cytoplasmic tail. *J Cell Sci*. 1993;106:831. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8308066
160. McCormick PJ, Martina JA, Bonifacino JS. Involvement of clathrin and AP-2 in the trafficking of MHC class II molecules to antigen-processing compartments. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2005;102:7910. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15911768
161. Walseng E, Bakke O, Roche PA. Major histocompatibility complex class II-peptide complexes internalize using a clathrin- and dynamin-independent endocytosis pathway. *J Biol Chem*. 2008;283:14717. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18378669
162. Blum JS, Cresswell P. Role for intracellular proteases in the processing and transport of class II HLA antigens. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1998; 85:3975. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3287381
163. Riese RJ, Wolf PR, Bromme D, et al. Essential role for cathepsin S in MHC class II-associated invariant chain processing and peptide loading. *Immunity*. 1996;4:357. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8612130
164. Shi GP, Villadangos JA, Dranoff G, et al. Cathepsin S required for normal MHC class II peptide loading and germinal center development. *Immunity*. 1999;10:197. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10072072
165. Sette A, Southwood S, Miller J, Appella E. Binding of major histocompatibility complex class II to the invariant chain-derived peptide, CLIP, is regulated by allelic polymorphism in class II. *J Exp Med*. 1995;181:677. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7836921
166. Morris P, Shaman J, Attaya M, et al. An essential role for HLA-DM in antigen presentation by class II major histocompatibility molecules. *Nature*. 1994;368:551. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8139689
167. Fling SP, Arp B, Pious D. HLA-DMA and -DMB genes are both required for MHC class II/peptide complex formation in antigen-presenting cells. *Nature*. 1994;368:554. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8139690
168. Sloan VS, Cameron P, Porter G, et al. Mediation by HLA-DM of dissociation of peptides from HLA-DR. *Nature*. 1995;375:802. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7596415
169. Denzin LK, Cresswell P. HLA-DM induces CLIP dissociation from MHC class II alpha beta dimers and facilitates peptide loading. *Cell*. 1995;82:155. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7606781
170. Weber DA, Evavold BD, Jensen PE. Enhanced dissociation of HLA-DR-bound peptides in the presence of HLA-DM. *Science*. 1996;274:618. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8849454
171. Kropshofer H, Vogt AB, Moldenhauer G, Hammer J, Blum JS, Hammerling GJ. Editing of the HLA-DR-peptide repertoire by HLA-DM. *EMBO J*. 1996;15:6144. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8947036
172. Marks MS, Roche PA, van Donselaar E, Woodruff L, Peters PJ, Bonifacino JS. A lysosomal targeting signal in the cytoplasmic tail of the beta chain directs HLA-DM to MHC class II compartments. *J Cell Biol*. 1995;131:351. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7593164
173. Sanderson F, Kleijmeer MJ, Kelly A, et al. Accumulation of HLA-DM, a regulator of antigen presentation, in MHC class II compartments. *Science*. 1994;266:1566. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7985027
174. Stang E, Guerra CB, Amaya M, Paterson Y, Bakke O, Mellins ED. DR/CLIP (class II-associated invariant chain peptides) and DR/peptide complexes colocalize in prelysosomes in human B lymphoblastoid cells. *J Immunol*. 1998;160:4696. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9590215
175. Sherman MA, Weber DA, Jensen PE. DM enhances peptide binding to class II MHC by release of invariant chain-derived peptide. *Immunity*. 1995;3:197. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7648393
176. Denzin LK, Fallas JL, Prendes M, Yi W. Right place, right time, right peptide: DO keeps DM focused. *Immunol Rev*. 2005;207:279. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16181343
177. Denzin LK, Sant'Angelo DB, Hammond C, Surman MJ, Cresswell P. Negative regulation by HLA-DO of MHC class II-restricted antigen processing. *Science*. 1997;278:106. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9311912
178. van Ham SM, Tjin EP, Lillemeier BF, et al. HLA-DO is a negative modulator of HLA-DM-mediated MHC class II peptide loading. *Curr Biol*. 1997;7:950. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9382849
179. Liljedahl M, Kuwana T, Fung-Leung WP, Jackson MR, Peterson PA, Karlsson L. HLA-DO is a lysosomal resident which requires association with HLA-DM for efficient intracellular transport. *EMBO J*. 1996;15:4817. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8890155
180. Manoury B, Hewitt EW, Morrice N, Dando PM, Barrett AJ, Watts C. An asparaginyl endopeptidase processes a microbial antigen for class II MHC presentation. *Nature*. 1998;396:695. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9872320
181. Hsieh CS, deRoos P, Honey K, Beers C, Rudensky AY. A role for cathepsin L and cathepsin S in peptide generation for MHC class II presentation. *J Immunol*. 2002;168:2618. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11884425
182. Arunachalam B, Phan UT, Geuze HJ, Cresswell P. Enzymatic reduction of disulfide bonds in lysosomes: characterization of a gamma-interferon-inducible lysosomal thiol reductase (GILT). *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2000;97:745. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10639150
183. Maric M, Arunachalam B, Phan UT, et al. Defective antigen processing in GILT-free mice. *Science*. 2001;294:1361. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11701933
184. Manoury B, Mazzeo D, Fugger L, et al. Destructive processing by asparagine endopeptidase limits presentation of a dominant T cell epitope in MBP. *Nat Immunol*. 2002;3:169. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11812994
185. Delamarre L, Pack M, Chang H, Mellman I, Trombetta ES. Differential lysosomal proteolysis in antigen-presenting cells determines antigen fate. *Science*. 2005;307:1630. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15761154
186. Delamarre L, Couture R, Mellman I, Trombetta ES. Enhancing immunogenicity by limiting susceptibility to lysosomal proteolysis. *J Exp Med*. 2006;203:2049. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16908625
187. Sette A, Adorini L, Colon SM, Buus S, Grey HM. Capacity of intact proteins to bind to MHC class II molecules. *J Immunol*. 1989;143:1265. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2787361
188. Sercarz EE, Maverakis E. Mhc-guided processing: binding of large antigen fragments. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2003;3:621. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12974477
189. Moss CX, Tree TI, Watts C. Reconstruction of a pathway of antigen processing and class II MHC peptide capture. *EMBO J*. 2007;26:2137. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17396153

190. Bevec T, Stoka V, Pungercic G, Dolenc I, Turk V. Major histocompatibility complex class II-associated p41 invariant chain fragment is a strong inhibitor of lysosomal cathepsin L. *J Exp Med*. 1996;183:1331. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8666891
191. Guncar G, Pungercic G, Klemencic I, Turk V, Turk D. Crystal structure of MHC class II-associated p41 Ii fragment bound to cathepsin L reveals the structural basis for differentiation between cathepsins L and S. *EMBO J*. 1999;18:793. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10022822
192. Fineschi B, Arneson LS, Naujokas MF, Miller J. Proteolysis of major histocompatibility complex class II-associated invariant chain is regulated by the alternatively spliced gene product, p41. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1995;92:10257. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7479763
193. Takaesu NT, Lower JA, Yelon D, Robertson EJ, Bikoff EK. In vivo functions mediated by the p41 isoform of the MHC class II-associated invariant chain. *J Immunol*. 1997;158:187. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8977190
194. Inaba K, Turley S, Iyoda T, et al. The formation of immunogenic major histocompatibility complex class II-peptide ligands in lysosomal compartments of dendritic cells is regulated by inflammatory stimuli. *J Exp Med*. 2000;191:927. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10727455
195. Turley SJ, Inaba K, Garrett WS, et al. Transport of peptide-MHC class II complexes in developing dendritic cells. *Science*. 2000;288:522. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10775112
196. Trombetta ES, Ebersold M, Garrett W, Pypaert M, Mellman I. Activation of lysosomal function during dendritic cell maturation. *Science*. 2003;299:1400. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12610307
197. Pierre P, Mellman I. Developmental regulation of invariant chain proteolysis controls MHC class II trafficking in mouse dendritic cells. *Cell*. 1998;93:1135. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9657147
198. Kleijmeer M, Ramm G, Schuurhuis D, et al. Reorganization of multivesicular bodies regulates MHC class II antigen presentation by dendritic cells. *J Cell Biol*. 2001;155:53. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11581285
199. Peters PJ, Neefjes JJ, Oorschot V, Ploegh HL, Geuze HJ. Segregation of MHC class II molecules from MHC class I molecules in the Golgi complex for transport to lysosomal compartments [see comments]. *Nature*. 1991;349:669. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1847504
200. Kleijmeer MJ, Morkowski S, Griffith JM, Rudensky AY, Geuze HJ. Major histocompatibility complex class II compartments in human and mouse B lymphoblasts represent conventional endocytic compartments. *J Cell Biol*. 1997;139:639. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9348281
201. Geuze HJ. The role of endosomes and lysosomes in MHC class II functioning. *Immunol Today*. 1998;19:282. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9639994
202. Weber DA, Dao CT, Jun J, Wigal JL, Jensen PE. Transmembrane domain-mediated colocalization of HLA-DM and HLA-DR is required for optimal HLA-DM catalytic activity. *J Immunol*. 2001;167:5167. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11673529
203. Zwart W, Griekspoor A, Kuijl C, et al. Spatial separation of HLA-DM/HLA-DR interactions within MIIC and phagosome-induced immune escape. *Immunity*. 2005;22:221. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15723810
204. Thery C, Duban L, Segura E, Veron P, Lantz O, Amigorena S. Indirect activation of naive CD4+ T cells by dendritic cell-derived exosomes. *Nat Immunol*. 2002;3:1156. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12426563
205. Zitvogel L, Regnault A, Lozier A, et al. Eradication of established murine tumors using a novel cell-free vaccine: dendritic cell-derived exosomes. *Nat Med*. 1998;4:594. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9585234
206. Wubbolts R, Fernandez-Borja M, Oomen L, et al. Direct vesicular transport of MHC class II molecules from lysosomal structures to the cell surface. *J Cell Biol*. 1996;135:611. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8909537
207. Boes M, Cerny J, Massol R, et al. T-cell engagement of dendritic cells rapidly rearranges MHC class II transport. *Nature*. 2002;418:983. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12198548
208. Chow A, Toomre D, Garrett W, Mellman I. Dendritic cell maturation triggers retrograde MHC class II transport from lysosomes to the plasma membrane. *Nature*. 2002;418:988. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12198549
209. Murk JL, Stoorvogel W, Kleijmeer MJ, Geuze HJ. The plasticity of multivesicular bodies and the regulation of antigen presentation. *Semin Cell Dev Biol*. 2002;13:303. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12243730
210. Paul P, van den Hoorn T, Jongsma ML, et al. A genome-wide multidimensional RNAi screen reveals pathways controlling MHC class II antigen presentation. *Cell*. 2011;145:268. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21458045
211. Wubbolts R, Fernandez-Borja M, Jordens I, et al. Opposing motor activities of dynein and kinesin determine retention and transport of MHC class II-containing compartments. *J Cell Sci*. 1999;112(pt 6):785. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10036229
212. Vascotto F, Lankar D, Faure-Andre G, et al. The actin-based motor protein myosin II regulates MHC class II trafficking and BCR-driven antigen presentation. *J Cell Biol*. 2007;176:1007. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17389233
213. Jenei A, Varga S, Bene L, et al. HLA class I and II antigens are partially co-clustered in the plasma membrane of human lymphoblastoid cells. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1997;94:7269. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9207080
214. Anderson HA, Hiltbold EM, Roche PA. Concentration of MHC class II molecules in lipid rafts facilitates antigen presentation. *Nat Immunol*. 2000;1:156. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11248809
215. Kropshofer H, Spindeldreher S, Rohn TA, et al. Tetraspan microdomains distinct from lipid rafts enrich select peptide-MHC class II complexes. *Nat Immunol*. 2002;3:61. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11743588
216. Poloso NJ, Muntasell A, Roche PA. MHC class II molecules traffic into lipid rafts during intracellular transport. *J Immunol*. 2004;173:4539. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15383586
217. Mobius W, van Donselaar E, Ohno-Iwashita Y, et al. Recycling compartments and the internal vesicles of multivesicular bodies harbor most of the cholesterol found in the endocytic pathway. *Traffic*. 2003;4:222. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12694561
218. Eren E, Yates J, Cwynarski K, et al. Location of major histocompatibility complex class II molecules in rafts on dendritic cells enhances the efficiency of T-cell activation and proliferation. *Scand J Immunol*. 2006;63:7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16398696
219. Davis JE, Cresswell P. Lack of detectable endocytosis of B lymphocyte MHC class II antigens using an antibody-independent technique. *J Immunol*. 1990;144:990. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2295824
220. Lanzavecchia A, Reid PA, Watts C. Irreversible association of peptides with class II MHC molecules in living cells. *Nature*. 1992;357:249. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1375347
221. Cella M, Engering A, Pinet V, Pieters J, Lanzavecchia A. Inflammatory stimuli induce accumulation of MHC class II complexes on dendritic cells. *Nature*. 1997;388:782. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9285591
222. Pierre P, Turley SJ, Gatti E, et al. Developmental regulation of MHC class II transport in mouse dendritic cells. *Nature*. 1997;388:787. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9285592
223. Shin JS, Ebersold M, Pypaert M, Delamarre L, Hartley A, Mellman I. Surface expression of MHC class II in dendritic cells is controlled by regulated ubiquitination. *Nature*. 2006;444:115. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17051151
224. van Niel G, Wubbolts R, ten Broeke T, et al. Dendritic cells regulate exposure of MHC class II at their plasma membrane by oligoubiquitination. *Immunity*. 2006;25:885. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17174123
225. Walseng E, Furuta K, Bosch B, et al. Ubiquitination regulates MHC class II-peptide complex retention and degradation in dendritic cells. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2010;107:20465. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21059907
226. Pinet V, Vergelli M, Martin R, Bakke O, Long EO. Antigen presentation mediated by recycling of surface HLA-DR molecules. *Nature*. 1995;375:603. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7540726

227. Pathak SS, Blum JS. Endocytic recycling is required for the presentation of an exogenous peptide via MHC class II molecules. *Traffic*. 2000;1:561. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11208144
228. Sinnathamby G, Eisenlohr LC. Presentation by recycling MHC class II molecules of an influenza hemagglutinin-derived epitope that is revealed in the early endosome by acidification. *J Immunol*. 2003;170:3504. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12646611
229. Blanchard N, Shastri N. Cross-presentation of peptides from intracellular pathogens by MHC class I molecules. *Ann N Y Acad Sci*. 2010; 1183:237. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20146719
230. Rock KL, Farfan-Arribas DJ, Shen L. Proteases in MHC class I presentation and cross-presentation. *J Immunol*. 2010;184:9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20028659
231. van Endert P. Post-proteasomal and proteasome-independent generation of MHC class I ligands. *Cell Mol Life Sci*. 2001;68:1553. 232. Barral DC, Brenner MB. CD1 antigen presentation: how it works. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2007;7:929. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21390545
233. Kasmar A, Van Rhijn I, Moody DB. The evolved functions of CD1 during infection. *Curr Opin Immunol*. 2009;21:397. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19541469
234. Darmoise A, Maschmeyer P, Winau F. The immunological functions of saposins. *Adv Immunol*. 2010;105:25. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20510729
235. Kelley LA, Sternberg MJ. Protein structure prediction on the Web: a case study using the Phyre server. *Nat Protoc*. 2009;4:363. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19247286
236. Schrag JD, Bergeron JJ, Li Y, et al. The structure of calnexin, an ER chaperone involved in quality control of protein folding. *Mol Cell*. 2001;8:633. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11583625
237. Khan AR, Baker BM, Ghosh P, Biddison WE, Wiley DC. The structure and stability of an HLA-A*0201/octameric tax peptide complex with an empty conserved peptide-N-terminal binding site. *J Immunol*. 2000; 164:6398. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10843695

SECTION VI

Induction, Regulation, and Effector Functions of the Immune Response

CHAPTER 23

Immunogenicity and Antigen Structure

Jay A. Berzofsky • Ira J. Berkower

THE NATURE OF ANTIGENIC DETERMINANTS RECOGNIZED BY ANTIBODIES

Haptens

In the antigen–antibody binding reaction, the antibody-binding site is often unable to accommodate the entire antigen. The part of the antigen that is the target of antibody binding is called an antigenic determinant, and there may be one or more antigenic determinants per molecule. To study antibody specificity, we need to have antibodies against single antigenic determinants. Small functional groups that correspond to a single antigenic determinant are called haptens. For example, these may be organic compounds, such as trinitrophenyl or benzene arsonate, a monosaccharide or oligosaccharide such as glucose or lactose, or an oligopeptide such as pentalysine. Although these haptens can bind to antibody, immunization with them usually will not provoke an antibody response (for exceptions, see Goodman[1]). Immunogenicity often can be achieved by covalently attaching haptens to a larger molecule, called the carrier. The carrier is immunogenic in its own right, and immunization with the hapten-carrier conjugate elicits an antibody response to both hapten and carrier. However, the antibodies specific for hapten can be studied by equilibrium dialysis using pure hapten (without carrier) or by immunoprecipitation using hapten coupled to a different (and non–cross-reacting) carrier or by inhibition of precipitation with free hapten.

This technique was pioneered by Landsteiner[2] and helped to elucidate the exquisite specificity of antibodies for antigenic determinants. For instance, the relative binding affinity of antibodies prepared against succinic acid–serum protein conjugates shows marked specificity for the maleic acid analog, which is in the cis configuration, as compared to the fumaric acid (trans) form.[3] Presumably, the immunogenic form of succinic acid corresponds to the cis form.[3] This ability of antibodies to distinguish cis from trans configurations was reemphasized in later studies measuring relative affinities of antibodies to maleic and fumaric acid conjugates[4] (Table 23.1A). Table 23.1B shows the specificity of antibodies prepared against p-azobenzenearsonate coupled to bovine gamma globulin.[5] As the hapten is coupled through the p-azo group to aromatic amino acids of the carrier, haptens containing bulky substitutions in the para position would most resemble the immunizing antigen. In fact, p-methyl–substituted benzene arsonate has a higher binding affinity than unsubstituted benzene arsonate. However, methyl substitution elsewhere in the benzene ring reduces affinity, presumably due to interference with the way hapten fits into the antibody-binding site. Thus, methyl substitutions can have positive or negative effects on binding energy, depending on where the substitution occurs. Table 23.1C shows the specificity of antilactose antibodies for lactose versus cellobiose.[6] These disaccharides differ only by the orientation of the hydroxyl attached to C4 of the first sugar either above or below the hexose ring. The three examples in this table, as well as many others,[1] show the marked specificity of antibodies for cis–trans, ortho–meta–para, and stereoisomeric forms of the antigenic determinant.

Comparative binding studies of haptens have been able to demonstrate antibody specificity despite the marked heterogeneity of antibodies. Unlike the antibodies against a multideterminant antigen, the population of antibodies specific for a single hapten determinant is a relatively restricted population due to the shared structural constraints necessary for hapten to fit within the antibody-combining site. However, the specificity of an antiserum depends on the collective specificities of the entire population of antibodies, which are determined by the structures of the various antibody-binding sites. When studying the cross-reactions of hapten analogs, some haptens bind all antibodies but with reduced K_A. Other hapten analogs reach a plateau of binding because they fit some antibody-combining sites quite

TABLE 23.1 Exquisite Specificity of Antihapten Antibodies

Hapten	Structure		K_{rel} of Antibody Specific for	
A.			Maleic (cis)	Fumaric (trans)
	Maleanilate		1.0	<0.01
	Fumaranilate		<0.01	1.0
B.			Parasubstituted benzene arsonate	
	Benzene arsonate		1.0	
	o-Methyl benzene arsonate		0.2	
	m-Methyl benzene arsonate		0.8	
	p-Methyl benzene arsonate		1.9	
C.			Lactose	
	Lactose	β Gal (1 → 4) Glu	1.00	
	Cellobiose	β Glu (1 → 4) Glu	0.0025	

Part A from Pressman and Grossberg,[4] part B from Pressman et al.,[5] and part C from Karush,[6] with permission.

well but not others (see discussion of cross-reactivity in Chapter 7). Antibodies raised in different animals may show different cross-reactivities with related haptens. Even within a single animal, antibody affinity and specificity are known to increase over time following immunization under certain conditions.[7] Thus any statements about the cross-reactivity of two haptens reflect both structural differences between the haptens that affect antigen–antibody fit and the diversity of antibody-binding sites present in a given antiserum.

Carbohydrate Antigens

The antigenic determinants of a number of biologically important substances consist of carbohydrates. These often occur as glycolipids or glycoproteins. Examples of the former include bacterial cell wall antigens and the major blood group antigens, whereas the latter group includes "minor" blood group antigens such as Rh. In addition, the capsular polysaccharides of bacteria are important for virulence and are often targeted by protective antibodies. A number of spontaneously arising myeloma proteins have been found to show carbohydrate specificity, possibly reflecting the fact that carbohydrates are common environmental antigens. In the days prior to hybridoma technology, these carbohydrate-specific myeloma proteins provided an important model for studying the reaction of antigen with a monoclonal antibody.

Empirically, the predominant antigenic determinants of polysaccharides often consist of short oligosaccharides (one to five sugars long) at the nonreducing end of the polymer chain.[8] This situation is analogous to a hapten consisting of several sugar residues linked to a large nonantigenic polysaccharide backbone. The remainder of the polysaccharide is important for immunogenicity, just as the carrier molecule was important for haptens. In addition, branch points in the polysaccharide structure allow for multiple antigenic determinants to be attached to the same macromolecule. This is important for immunoprecipitation by lattice formation, as discussed in Chapter 5. Several examples illustrating structural studies of oligosaccharide antigens are given later.

The technique used most widely to analyze the antigenic determinants of polysaccharides is called hapten inhibition.[8] In this method, the precipitation reaction between antigen and antibody is inhibited by adding short oligosaccharides. These oligosaccharides are large enough to bind with the same affinity and specificity as the polysaccharide, but because they are monomeric, no precipitate forms. As more inhibitor is added, fewer antibody-combining sites remain available for precipitation. Using antiserum specific for a single antigenic determinant, it is often possible to block precipitation completely with a short oligosaccharide corresponding to the nonreducing end of the polysaccharide chain. Besides showing the "immunodominance" of the nonreducing end of the chain, this result also shows that the structure of the antigenic determinant of polysaccharides depends on the sequence of carbohydrates and their linkage, rather than their conformation. For inhibition by hapten to be complete, the antigen–antibody system studied must be made specific for a single antigenic determinant. For optimal sensitivity, the equivalence point of antigen and antibody should be used.

We illustrate the types of carbohydrate antigens encountered by examining three classic examples in more detail: the salmonella O antigens, the blood group antigens, and dextrans that bind to myeloma proteins.

Immunochemistry of Salmonella O Antigens

The antigenic diversity among numerous salmonella species resides in the structural differences of the lipopolysaccharide (LPS) component of the outer membrane.[9] These molecules are the main target for antisalmonella antibodies. The polysaccharide moiety contains the antigenic determinant, whereas the lipid moiety is responsible for endotoxin effects. The chemical structure of LPS can be divided into three regions (Fig. 23.1). Region I contains the antigenic O-specific polysaccharide, usually made up of repeated oligosaccharide units, which vary widely among different strains. Region II contains an oligosaccharide "common core" shared among many different strains. Failure to synthesize region II oligosaccharide or to couple completed region I polysaccharide to the growing region II core results in R (rough) mutants, which have "rough" colony morphology and lack the O antigen. Region III is the lipid part, called lipid A, which is shared among all salmonellae and serves to anchor LPS on the outer membrane. Early immunologic attempts to classify the O antigens of different salmonellae revealed a large number of cross-reactions between different strains. These were detected by preparing antiserum to one strain of salmonella and using it to agglutinate bacteria of a second strain. Each cross-reacting determinant was assigned a number, and each strain was characterized by a series of O antigen determinants (in aggregate, the "serotype" of the strain) based on its pattern of cross-reactivity. Each strain was classified within a group, based on sharing a strong O determinant. For example, group A strains share determinant 2, whereas

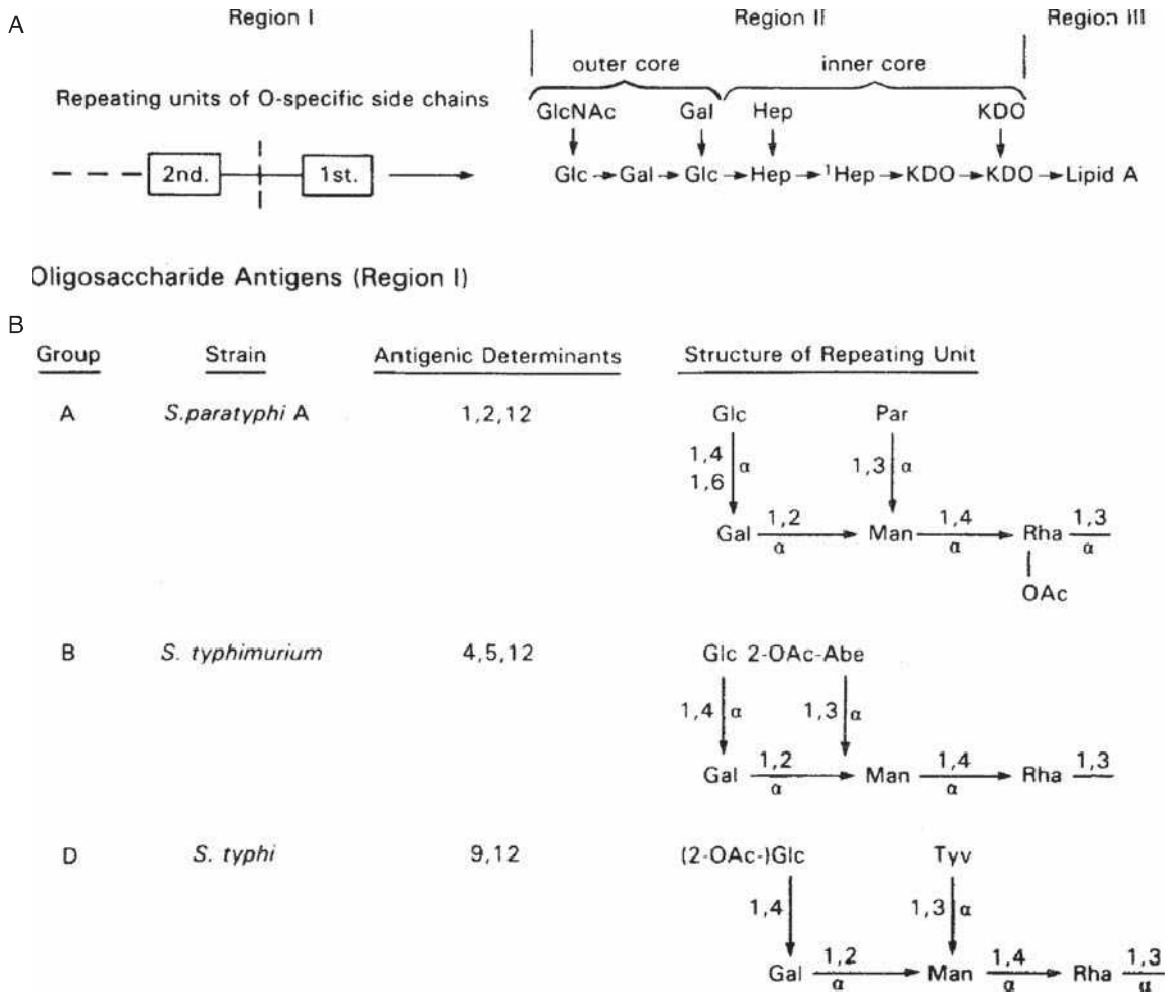


FIG. 23.1. Structure of Salmonella Lipopolysaccharide. Region I contains the unique O-antigen determinants, which consist of repeating units of oligosaccharides. These are attached to lipid moiety through the core polysaccharide. Three examples of oligosaccharide units are shown.[9] (Part A adapted from Kabat,[8] with permission; part B based on Jann and Westphal.[9])

group B strains share determinant 4 (Table 23.2). However, within a group, each strain possesses additional O determinants, which serve to differentiate it from other members of that group. Thus, determinant 2 coexists with determinants 1 and 12 on *Salmonella paratyphi* A. This problem of cross-reactivity based on sharing of a subset of antigenic determinants is commonly encountered in complex antigen–antibody systems. The problem may be simplified by making antibodies monospecific for individual antigenic determinants. To do this, antibodies are absorbed to remove irrelevant specificities, or cross-reactive strains are chosen that share only a single determinant with the immunizing strain. The reaction of each determinant with its specific antibody can be thought of as an antigen–antibody system. Thus, for the strains shown in Table 23.2, antiserum to *Salmonella typhi* (containing anti-9 and anti-12 antibodies) may be absorbed with *S. paratyphi* A to remove anti-12, leaving a reagent specific for antigen 9 (see Table 23.2). Alternatively, the unabsorbed antiserum may be used to study the system antigen 12–anti-12 by allowing it to agglutinate *S. paratyphi* B, which shares only antigen 12 with the immunogen. Because the other determinants on *S. paratyphi* B were absent from the immunizing strain, the antiserum contains no antibodies to them.

Once the antigen–antibody reaction is made specific for a single determinant, a variety of oligosaccharides can be added

TABLE 23.2 Salmonella O Antigen Serotyping

Salmonella Strain	Serogroup	O Antigenic Determinants
S. paratyphi A	A	1, 2, 12
S. paratyphi B	B	1, 4, 5, 12
S. typhi	D	9, 12

Antiserum	Absorbed	Tested on	Single Determinant Measured
Anti-*S. typhi*		*S. paratyphi* B	12
Anti-*S. typhi*	*S. paratyphi* A	*S. typhi*	9

Reprinted with permission from Kabat.[8]

TABLE 23.3 Analysis of Salmonella O-Antigen Structure by Hapten Inhibition

Maximum Inhibition by Hapten (%)	Antigen System	
	1: anti-1	19: anti-19
d-Glu	—	0
Me-α-D-Glu	35	10
α-D-Glu(1 → 6)-D-Gal	80	25
Glu.Gal.Man	80	70
Gtu.Gal.Man.L-Rham	>70	>70
Deduced structure	α-D-Glu(1 → 6)-D-Gal	D-Glu-D-Gal-D-Man-L-Rham

Reprinted with permission from Kabat.[8]

to test for hapten inhibition. Because the O antigens contain repeating oligosaccharide units, it is often possible to obtain model oligosaccharides by mild chemical or enzymatic degradation of the LPS itself. Once the most inhibitory oligosaccharide is found, its chemical structure is determined. Alternatively, a variety of synthetic monosaccharide, disaccharide, trisaccharide and oligosaccharides are tested for hapten inhibition of precipitation. For example, as shown in Table 23.3, antigen 1–anti-1 antibody precipitation is inhibited by methyl-α D-glucoside. Therefore, various disaccharides incorporating this structure were tested, of which α-D-Glu-(1 → 6)-D-Gal was the most inhibitory. Then various trisaccharides incorporating this sequence were tested. The results indicate the sequence and size of the determinant recognized by anti-1 antibodies to be a disaccharide with the previously discussed structure. The test sequences can be guessed by analyzing the oligosaccharide breakdown products of the LPS, which include tetramers of D-Glu-D-Gal-D-Man-L-Rham. The results in Table 23.3 also suggest that the difference between determinants 1 and 19 is the length of oligosaccharide recognized by antibodies specific for each determinant. This hypothesis is supported by the observation that determinant 1 is found in some strains with, and in other strains without, determinant 19; whereas determinant 19 is always found with determinant 1. As shown in Table 23.3, determinant 19 requires the full tetrasaccharide for maximal hapten inhibition, including the sequence coding for determinant 1. Besides identifying the antigenic structures, these results indicate that there is variation in the size of different antigenic determinants of polysaccharides.

Blood Group Antigens

The major blood group antigens A and B were originally detected by the ability of serum from individuals lacking either determinant to agglutinate red blood cells bearing them (for reviews, see Kabat,[8] Springer,[10] Marcus,[11] and Watkins[12]). In addition, group O individuals have an H antigenic determinant that is distinct from A or B types, and individuals in all three groups may have additional determinants such as the Lewis (Le) antigens. Although the ABH and Le antigenic determinants are found on a carbohydrate moiety, the carbohydrate may occur in a variety of biochemical forms. On cell surfaces, they are either glycolipids that are synthesized within the cell (AB and H antigens) or glycoproteins taken up from serum (Le antigens). In mucinous secretions, such as saliva, they occur as glycoproteins. Milk, ovarian cyst fluid, and gastric mucosa contain soluble oligosaccharides containing blood group reactivity. In addition, these antigens occur frequently in other species, including about half of the bacteria in the normal flora of the gut.[10] This widespread occurrence may account for the ubiquitous anti-AB reactivity of human sera, even in people never previously exposed to human blood group substances through transfusion or pregnancy.

The immunochemistry of these antigens was simplified greatly by the use of oligosaccharides in hapten inhibition studies. Group A oligosaccharides, for example, would inhibit the agglutination of group A red blood cells by anti-A antibodies. They could also inhibit the immunoprecipitation of group A–bearing glycoproteins by anti-A antibodies. Because the oligosaccharides are monomeric, their reaction with antibody does not form a precipitate but does block an antibody-combining site.

The inhibitory oligosaccharides from cyst fluid were purified and found to contain D-galactose, L-fucose, N-acetylgalactosamine, and N-acetylglucosamine. The most inhibitory oligosaccharides for each antigen are indicated in Figure 23.2. As can be seen in Figure 23.2, the ABH and Le antigens all share a common oligosaccharide core sequence, and the antigens appear to differ from each other by the sequential addition of individual sugars at the end or at branch points. Besides hapten inhibition, other biochemical data support this relationship among the different determinants. Enzymatic digestion of A, B, or H antigens yields a common core oligosaccharide from each. This product cross-reacts with antiserum specific for pneumococcal polysaccharide type XIV, which contains structural elements shared with blood group determinants, as shown at the bottom of Figure 23.2. In addition, this structure, known as precursor substance, has been isolated from ovarian cyst fluid.

Starting from precursor substance, the H determinant results from the addition of L-fucose to galactose, whereas Le^a determinant results from the addition of L-fucose to N-acetylglucosamine and Le^b from the addition of L-fucose to both sugars. Addition of N-acetylgalactosamine to H substance produces the A determinant, whereas addition of galactose produces the B determinant, in each case blocking reactivity of the H determinant.

The genetics of ABH and Le antigens is explained by this sequential addition of sugars via glycosyltransferases. The allelic nature of the AB antigens is explained by the addition of N-acetylgalactosamine, galactose, or nothing to the H antigen. The rare inherited trait of inability to synthesize the H determinants from precursor substance (Bombay phenotype) also blocks the expression of A and B antigens because the A and B transferases lack an acceptor substrate. However, the appearance of the Le^a antigen on red cells is independent of H antigen synthesis. Its structure, shown in Figure 23.2, can be derived directly from precursor substance without going through an H antigen intermediate. Comparing different individuals, the appearance of Le^a antigen on red blood cells correlates with its presence in saliva, as the Le^a

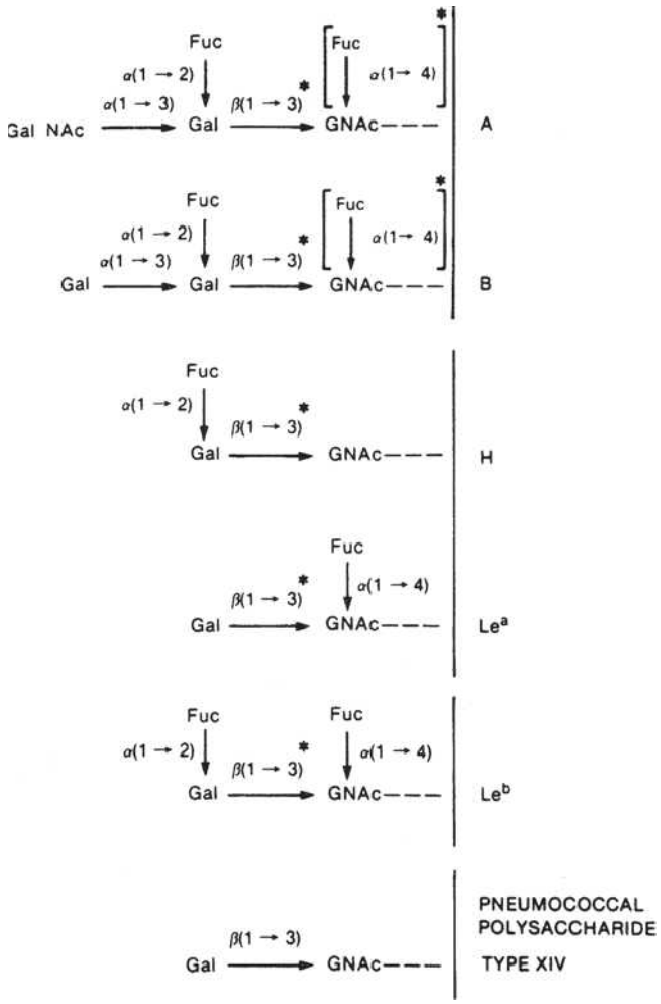


FIG. 23.2. Oligosaccharide Chain Specificity. Structure of the ABH and Le blood group antigens as determined by hapten inhibition studies.[8,11] There are two variants of each of these determinants. In type 1, the Gal-GNAc linkage is β(1 → 3), whereas in type 2, the Gal-GNAc linkage is β(1 → 4). In addition, there is heterogeneity in the A and B antigens with respect to the presence of the Le fucose attached to the GNAc. In the molecules that contain the extra fucose, when the Gal-GNAc linkage is β(1 → 3) (type 1), the fucose must be linked α(1 → 4), whereas the type 2 molecules, with the β(1 → 4) Gal-GNAc linkage, contain α(1 → 3)-linked fucose. The *asterisks* indicate the sites of this variability in linkage.

antigen is not an intrinsic membrane component but must be absorbed from serum glycoproteins, which, in turn, depend on secretion. In addition to the independent synthetic pathway, the secretion of Le^a antigen is also independent of the secretory process for ABH antigens. Therefore, salivary nonsecretors of ABH antigens (which occur in 20% of individuals) may still secrete Le^a antigen if they have the fucosyl transferase encoded by the Le gene. In contrast, salivary secretion of ABH is required for red blood cells to express Le^b.

Dextran-Binding Myeloma Proteins

Because polysaccharides are common environmental antigens, it is not surprising that randomly induced myeloma proteins were frequently found to have carbohydrate specificities. Careful studies of these monoclonal antibodies support the clonal expansion model of antibody diversity: heterogeneous antisera behave as the sum of many individual clones of antibody with respect to affinity and specificity. In the case of the Ig Aκ myeloma proteins W3129 and W3434, both antibodies were found to be specific for dextrans containing α-glu (1 → 6)glu bonds.[12] Hapten inhibition with a series of monosaccharide or oligosaccharides of increasing chain length indicated that the percentage of binding energy derived from the reaction with one glucose was 75%, two glucoses 95%, three glucoses 95% to 98%, and four glucoses 100%. This suggests that most binding energy between antidextran antibodies and dextran derives from the terminal monosaccharide, and that oligosaccharides of chain length four to six commonly fill the antibody-combining site. Human antidextran antisera behaved similarly, with tetrasaccharides contributing 95% of the binding energy. These experiments provided the first measure of the size of an antigenic determinant, four to six residues.[13,14] In addition, as was observed for antisera, binding affinity of myeloma proteins was highly sensitive to modifications of the terminal sugar and highly specific for α(1 → 6) versus α(1 → 3) glycosidic bonds. However, modification of the third or fourth sugar of an oligosaccharide had relatively less effect on hapten inhibition of either myeloma protein or of antisera reacting with dextran.

Studies with additional dextran-binding myeloma proteins[15] revealed that not all antipolysaccharide monoclonal antibodies are specific for the nonreducing end, as exemplified by QUPC 52. Competitive inhibition with monosaccharide and oligosaccharides revealed that <5% of binding energy derived from monosaccharides or disaccharides, 72% from trisaccharides, 88% from tetrasaccharides, and 100% from hexasaccharides, in marked contrast to other myeloma proteins. A second distinctive property of myeloma protein QUPC 52 was its ability to precipitate unbranched dextran of chain length 200. As the unbranched dextran has only one nonreducing end, and as the myeloma protein has only one specificity, lattice formation due to cross-linking between the nonreducing ends is impossible, and precipitation must be explained by binding some other determinant. Therefore, QUPC 52 appears to be specific for internal oligosaccharide units of three to seven chain length. The W3129 is specific for end determinants and will not precipitate unbranched dextran chains. Antibodies precipitating linear dextran were also detected in six antidextran human sera, comprising 48% to 90% of the total antibodies to branched chain dextran. Thus, antidextrans can be divided into those specific for terminal oligosaccharides and those specific for internal oligosaccharides; monoclonal examples of both types are available, and both types are present in human immune serum. Cisar et al.[15] speculated as to the different topology of the binding sites of W3129 or QUPC 52 necessary for terminal or internal oligosaccharide specificity. Both terminal and internal oligosaccharides have nearly identical chemical structures, differing at a single C–OH or glycoside bond. Perhaps the terminal oligosaccharide specificity of W3129 is due to the shape of the antibody-combining site—a cavity into which only the end can fit—whereas the

internal oligosaccharide-binding site of QUPC 52 could be a surface groove in the antibody, which would allow the rest of the polymer to protrude out at both ends. A more definitive answer depends on x-ray crystallographic studies of the combining sites of monoclonal antibodies with precisely defined specificity, performed with antigen occupying the binding site.

With the advent of hybridoma technology, it became possible to produce monoclonal antibodies of any desired specificity. Immunizing mice with nearly linear dextran (the preferred antigen of QUPC 52), followed by fusion and screening (with linear dextran) for dextran-binding antibodies, yielded 12 hybridomas,[16] all with specificity similar to QUPC 52. First, oligosaccharide inhibition of all 12 monoclonals showed considerable increments in affinity up to hexasaccharides, with little affinity for disaccharides and only 49% to 77% of binding energy derived from trisaccharides.[17] Second, all 12 monoclonals had internal $\alpha(1 \rightarrow 6)$ dextran specificity, as they could all precipitate linear dextran. Third, 9 out of 11 BALB/c monoclonals shared a cross-reactive idiotype with QUPC 52, whereas none shared idiotype with W3129.[18] These data support the hypothesis that different antibodies with similar specificity and similar groove-type sites may be derived from the same family of germline V_H genes bearing the QUPC 52 idiotype.[18]

The large number of environmental carbohydrate antigens and the high degree of specificity of antibodies elicited in response to each carbohydrate antigen suggest that a tremendous diversity of antibody molecules must be available, from which some antibodies can be selected for every possible antigenic structure. Studies of a series of 17 monoclonal anti-$\alpha(1 \rightarrow 6)$ dextran hybridomas[19,20] have investigated whether the binding sites of closely related antibodies were derived from a small number of variable region genes, for both heavy and light chains, or whether antibodies of the same specificity could derive from variable region genes with highly divergent sequences. Each monoclonal had a groove-type site that could hold six or seven sugar residues (with one exception), based on inhibition of immunoprecipitation by different length oligosaccharides. Thus, unlike monoclonals to haptenated proteins, the precise epitope could be well characterized and was generally quite similar among the entire series.

Studies of the V_κ sequences revealed that only three V_κ groups were used in these hybridomas. Use of each V_κ group correlated with the particular antigen used to immunize the animals, whether linear dextran or short oligosaccharides, so that 10 of the monoclonals from mice immunized the same way all used the same V_κ.

In contrast, the 17 V_H chains were derived from at least five different germline genes from three different V_H gene families.[21] The two most frequently used germline V_H genes were found in seven and five monoclonals, respectively, with minor variations explainable by somatic mutations. The remarkable finding is that very different V_H chains (about 50% homologous) can combine with the same V_κ to produce antibody-binding sites with nearly the same size, shape, antigen specificity, and affinity. Even when different V_H sequences combine with different V_κ sequences, they can produce antibodies with very similar properties. Dextran binding depends on the antigen fitting into the groove and interacting favorably with the residues forming the sides and bottom of the groove. The results indicate that divergent variable region sequences, both in and out of the complementarity-determining regions, can be folded to form similar binding site contours, which result in similar immunochemical characteristics. Similar results have been reported in other antigen–antibody systems, such as phenyloxazolone.[22]

Additional studies of carbohydrate binding monoclonal antibodies have revealed significant information about how the antibody variable regions can bind a carbohydrate structure with high affinity and specificity. Several examples are now available of crystal structures of carbohydrates bound to antibodies.

For example, monoclonal antibody Se155-4 is specific for the group B determinant of the salmonella O antigen, which consists of the sugars Gal-Abequose-Man.[23,24] The crystal structure of antibody bound to the polysaccharide shows that one hexose, abequose, fits into the binding pocket, while the rest of the interactions occur along the surface of the antibody, similar to the groove-type sites described previously. Binding energy depends on hydrogen bonds formed between the protein residues and the hydroxyl groups of the carbohydrate. The protein residues include aromatic amines, such as His 32, Trp 91, and Trp 96 of the light chain, as well as His 97 and His 35 of the heavy chain. In addition, one of the sugars is hydrogen bonded via a water molecule bridge to the amide bonds of the protein backbone. About three quarters of all sugar hydroxyl groups are involved in hydrogen bonds with the protein. Although each H-bond is relatively weak by itself, the combined effect of eight hydrogen bonds results in high-affinity binding. Antibody specificity derives from the fact that the carbohydrate fits into a binding pocket, where H-bond formation depends on precise interactions with amino acid residues that are oriented about the pocket. Surprisingly, most of these bonds are formed between sugar hydroxyls and aromatic amino acids that are neither charged nor very polar at neutral pH.

Similarly, monoclonal antibody BR96 and the humanized monoclonal hu3S193 are specific for the Le Y antigen, which resembles the Le B antigen described in Figure 23.2, except that the fucose-N-acetylglucosamine bond is $\beta(1 \rightarrow 3)$ instead of $\beta(1 \rightarrow 4)$. The Le Y antigen is commonly expressed on tumor cells of epithelial origin. The crystal structures have revealed the sources of the binding energy that results in affinity and specificity for this carbohydrate antigen.[25,26] These two monoclonals bind Le Y antigen in a large, deep pocket, which accommodates all four hexoses and correspond to the cavity type binding site predicted by Kabat.[15] The terminal fucose goes in first while the other three sugars are hydrogen bonded to amino acid side chains lining the pocket, including Tyr 33, Tyr 35, and Gln 52 of the heavy chain and His 27 of the light chain. Once again, hydrogen bonds between hydroxyl groups of the sugars and aromatic amines (Trp and Tyr) of the protein play a dominant role in determining affinity and specificity of binding. A smaller number of H-bonds depend on amide groups of the protein backbone.

A third example is provided by human monoclonal 2G12, which has neutralizing activity against a broad spectrum of human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) isolates. This antibody binds the mannose-rich oligosaccharide side chains that form a protective surface, called a glycoshield, on the envelope glycoprotein gp120. The crystal structure shows that the two terminal mannose sugars of each oligosaccharide bind end on into a deep pocket of the antibody, in a cavity-type site.[27,28] Twelve hydrogen bonds form between the two terminal mannose residues and the protein, depending mainly on the amide groups of the protein backbone. Additional hydrogen bonds form between the third mannose residue and the side chain of Asp 100 of the heavy chain and between the fourth mannose residue and Tyr 94 of the light chain and Tyr 56 of the heavy chain. A unique feature of this antibody is the crossover of variable regions between heavy and light chains so that each binding site is made up of the V_H from one HL pair combining with the V_L chain of the opposite pair. This arrangement allows the antibody to bind one branch of an oligosaccharide and the opposite branch of a nearby oligosaccharide and makes it ideally suited for cross-linking the densely clustered oligosaccharides of gp120.

Immunogenicity of Polysaccharide Conjugates

Capsular polysaccharides are the main target of protective antibodies against bacterial infection, and, as such, are important vaccine antigens. In adults, the chain length of the polysaccharide is an important determinant of immunogenicity, and the polysaccharides induce a T-independent response that cannot be boosted on repeat exposure. In young children, whose maternal antibodies wane by 6 months of age and who most need immunity to pathogens such as *Haemophilus influenzae* type b and *Streptococcus pneumoniae* of multiple serotypes, the T-independent response to these polysaccharides is weak, regardless of chain length. To immunize children, the polysaccharides were coupled to a protein carrier to create a new T-dependent antigen that gained immunogenicity from T-cell help and boosted antibody titers with each successive dose. This strategy has produced highly successful conjugate vaccines against *H. influenzae* type b,[29] resulting in a markedly reduced incidence of meningitis caused by this agent in immunized children[30,31] and evidence of herd immunity even among unimmunized children. The same strategy has produced an effective vaccine against invasive disease[32] and otitis media[33] caused by the most prevalent serotypes of *S. pneumoniae*.

Protein and Polypeptide Antigenic Determinants

Like the proteins themselves, the antigen determinants of proteins consist of amino acid residues in a particular three-dimensional array. The residues that make contact with complementary residues in the antibody-combining site are called contact residues. To make contact, of course, these residues must be exposed on the surface of the protein, not buried in the hydrophobic core. As the complementarity-determining residues in the hypervariable regions of antibodies have been found to span as much as 30 to 40 Å × 15 to 20 Å × 10 Å (D. R. Davies, personal communication), these contact residues comprising the antigenic determinant may cover a significant area of protein surface, as measured by x-ray crystallography of antibody–protein antigen complexes.[34–37] The size of the combining sites has also been estimated using simple synthetic oligopeptides of increasing length, such as oligolysine. In this case, a series of elegant studies[38–40] suggested that the maximum chain length a combining site could accommodate was six to eight residues, corresponding closely to that found earlier for oligosaccharides,[13,14] as discussed previously.

Several types of interactions contribute to the binding energy. Many of the amino acid residues exposed to solvent on the surface of a protein antigen will be hydrophilic. These are likely to interact with antibody contact residues via polar interactions. For instance, an anionic glutamic acid carboxyl group may bind to a complementary cationic lysine amino group on the antibody, or vice versa, or a glutamine amide side chain may form a hydrogen bond with the antibody. However, hydrophobic interactions can also play a major role. Proteins cannot exist in aqueous solution as stable monomers with too many hydrophobic residues on their surface. Those hydrophobic residues that are on the surface can contribute to binding to antibody for exactly the same reason. When a hydrophobic residue in a protein antigenic determinant or, similarly, in a carbohydrate determinant[8] interacts with a corresponding hydrophobic residue in the antibody-combining site, the water molecules previously in contact with each of them are excluded. The result is a significant stabilization of the interaction. A thorough review of these aspects of the chemistry of antigen–antibody binding is in Getzoff et al.[41]

Mapping Epitopes: Conformation versus Sequence

The other component that defines a protein antigenic determinant, besides the amino acid residues involved, is the way these residues are arrayed in three dimensions. As the residues are on the surface of a protein, we can also think of this component as the topography of the antigenic determinant. Sela[42] divided protein antigenic determinants into two categories, sequential and conformational, depending on whether the primary sequence or the three-dimensional conformation appeared to contribute the most to binding. On the other hand, as the antibody-combining site has a preferred topography in the native antibody, it would seem a priori that some conformations of a particular polypeptide sequence would produce a better fit than others and therefore would be energetically favored in binding. Thus, conformation or topography must always play some role in the structure of an antigenic determinant.

Moreover, when one looks at the surface of a protein in a space-filling model, one cannot ascertain the direction of the backbone or the positions of the helices (contrast Figs. 23.3A and 23.3B).[43–47] It is hard to recognize whether two residues that are side by side on the surface are adjacent on the polypeptide backbone or whether they come from different parts of the sequence and are brought together by the folding of the molecule. If a protein maintains its native conformation when an antibody binds, then it must similarly

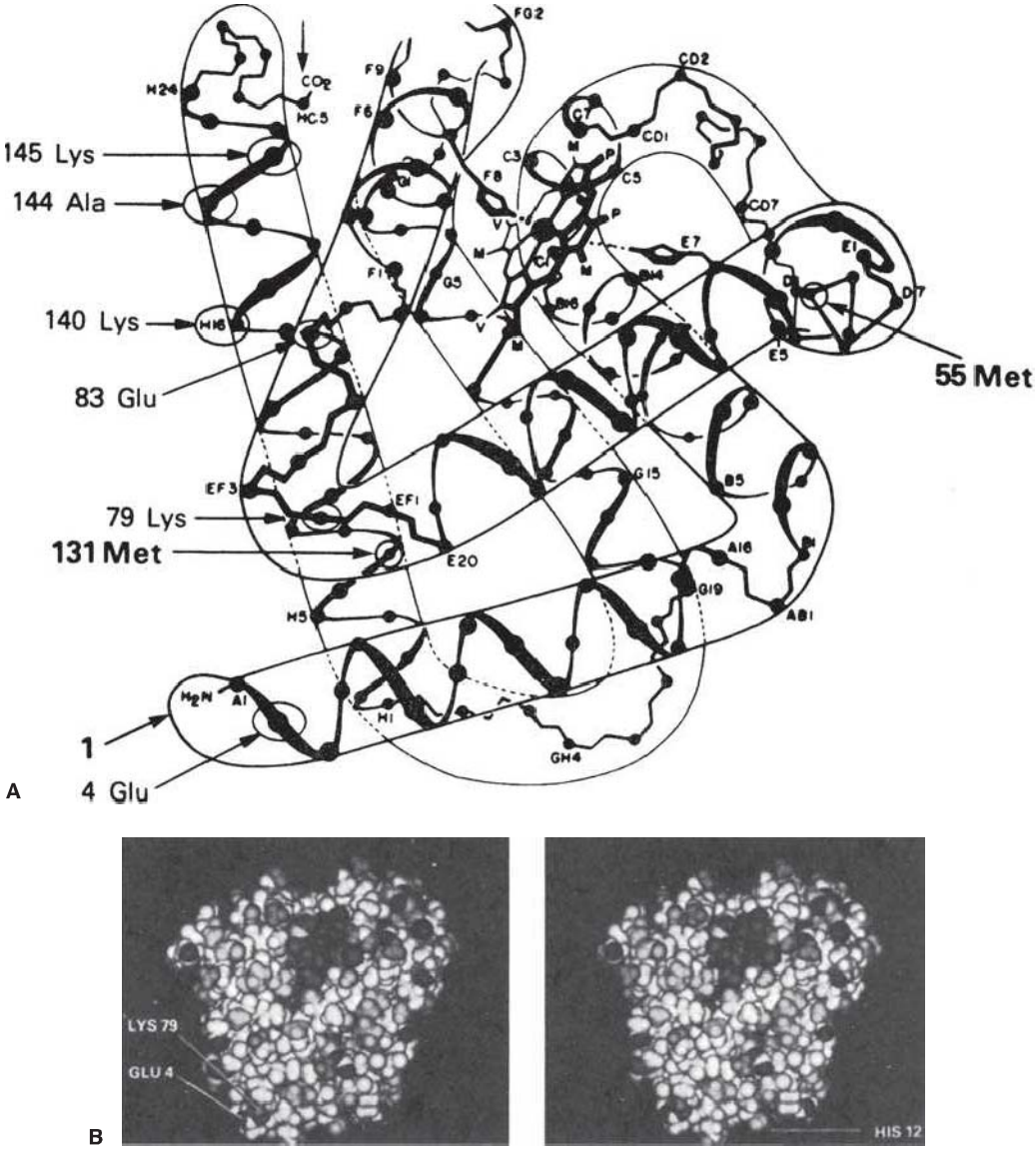


FIG. 23.3. A: Artist's representation of the polypeptide backbone of sperm whale myoglobin in its native three-dimensional conformation. The α helices are labeled A through H from the amino terminal to the carboxyl terminal. Side chains are omitted, except for the two histidine rings (F8 and E7) involved with the heme iron. Methionines at positions 55 and 131 are the sites of cleavage by cyanogen bromide (CNBr), allowing myoglobin to be cleaved into three fragments. Most of the helicity and other features of the native conformation are lost when the molecule is cleaved. A less drastic change in conformation is produced by removal of the heme to form apomyoglobin, as the heme interacts with several helices and stabilizes their positions relative to one another. The other labeled residues (Glu 4, Lys 49, Glu 83, Lys 140, Ala 144, and Lys 145) are residues that have been found to be involved in antigenic determinants recognized by monoclonal antibodies.[43] Note that cleavage by CNBr separates Lys 79 from Glu 4 and separates Glu 83 from Ala 144 and Lys 145. The "sequential" determinant of Koketsu and Atassi[44] (residues 15 to 22) is located at the elbow, lower right, from the end of the A helix to the beginning of the B helix. (Adapted from Dickerson.[45]) **B:** Stereoscopic views of a computer-generated space-filling molecular model of sperm whale myoglobin, based on the Takano[46] x-ray diffraction coordinates. This orientation, which corresponds to that in Panel A, is arbitrarily designated the "front view." The computer method was described by Feldmann et al.[47] The heme and aromatic carbons are *shaded darkest*, followed by carboxyl oxygens, then other oxygens, then primary amino groups, then other nitrogens, and finally side chains of aliphatic residues. The backbone and the side chains of nonaliphatic residues, except for the functional groups, are shown in *white*. Note that the direction of the helices is not apparent on the surface, in contrast to the backbone drawing in Panel A. The residues Glu 4, Lys 79, and His 12 are believed to be part of a topographic antigenic determinant recognized by a monoclonal antibody to myoglobin.[43] This stereo pair can be viewed in three dimensions using an inexpensive stereoviewer such as the "stereoscopes" sold by Abrams Instrument Corp. (Lansing, MI) or Hubbard Scientific Co. (Northbrook, IL). (Adapted from Berzofsky et al.[43])

be hard for the antibody to discriminate between residues that are covalently connected directly and those connected only through a great deal of intervening polypeptide. Thus, the probability that an antigenic determinant on a native globular protein consists of only a consecutive sequence of amino acids in the primary structure is likely to be rather small. Even if most of the determinant were a continuous sequence, other nearby residues would probably play a role as well. Only if the protein were cleaved into fragments before the antibodies were made would there be any reason to favor connected sequences.

This concept was analyzed and confirmed quantitatively by Barlow et al.,[48] who examined the atoms lying within spheres of different radii from a given surface atom on a protein. As the radius increases, the probability that all the atoms within the sphere will be from the same continuous segment of protein sequence decreases rapidly. Correspondingly, the fraction of surface atoms that would be located at the center of a sphere containing only residues from the same continuous segment falls dramatically as the radius of the sphere increases. For instance, for lysozyme, with a radius of 8 Å, fewer than 10% of the surface residues would lie in such a "continuous patch" of surface. These are primarily in regions that protrude from the surface. With a radius of 10 Å, almost none of the surface residues fall in the center of a continuous patch. Thus, for a contact area of about 20 Å × 25 Å, as found for a lysozyme–antibody complex studied by x-ray crystallography, none of the antigenic sites could be completely continuous segmental sites (see following discussion and Fig. 23.4). On the other hand, other analyses did not find a correlation of epitope residues with surface accessibility, suggesting that the situation is more complex.[49]

Antigenic sites consisting of amino acid residues that are widely separated in the primary protein sequence but brought together on the surface of the protein by the way it folds in its native conformation have been called "assembled topographic" sites[50,51] because they are assembled from different parts of the sequence and exist only in the surface topography of the native molecule. By contrast, the sites that consist of only a single continuous segment of protein sequence have been called "segmental" antigenic sites.[50,51]

In contrast to T-cell recognition of "processed" fragments retaining only primary and secondary structures, the evidence is overwhelming that most antibodies are made against the native conformation when the native protein is used as immunogen. For instance, antibodies to native staphylococcal nuclease were found to have about a 5000-fold higher affinity for the native protein than for the corresponding polypeptide on which they were isolated (by binding to the peptide attached to Sepharose).[52] An even more dramatic example is that demonstrated by Crumpton[53] for antibodies to native myoglobin or to apomyoglobin. Antibodies to native ferric myoglobin produced a brown precipitate with myoglobin but did not bind well to apomyoglobin, which, without the heme, has a slightly altered conformation. On the other hand, antibodies to the apomyoglobin, when mixed with native (brown) myoglobin, produced a white precipitate. These antibodies so strongly favored the conformation of apomyoglobin, from which the heme was excluded, that they trapped those molecules that vibrated toward that conformation and pulled the equilibrium state over to the apo form. One could almost say, figuratively, that the antibodies squeezed the heme out of the myoglobin. Looked at it thermodynamically, it is clear that the conformational preference of the antibody for the apo versus native forms, in terms of free energy, had to be greater than the free energy of binding of the heme to myoglobin. Thus, in general, antibodies are made that are very specific for the conformation of the protein used as immunogen. Other more recent examples also show that antibodies can

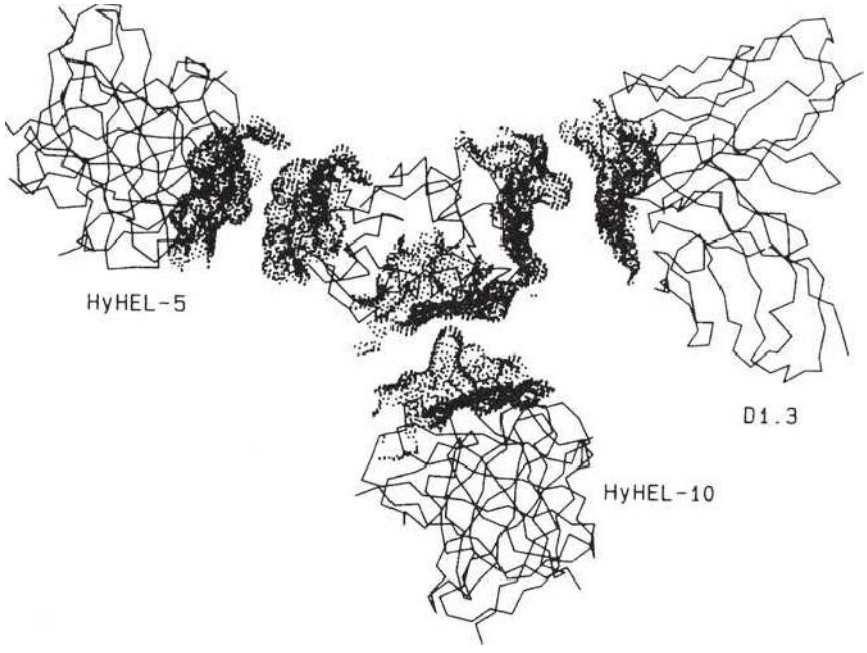


FIG. 23.4. Assembled Topographic Sites of Lysozyme Illustrated by the Footprints of Three Nonoverlapping Monoclonal Antibodies. Shown are the α-carbon backbones of lysozyme in the center and the Fv portions of three anti-lysozyme monoclonal antibodies D1.3, HyHEL-5, and HyHEL-10. The footprints of the antibodies on lysozyme and lysozyme on the antibodies (ie, their interacting surfaces) are shown by a *dotted representation*. Note that the three antibodies each contact more than one continuous loop of lysozyme and so define assembled topographic sites. Reproduced from Davies and Padlan[37] with permission.

enforce structures on disordered or denatured structures in proteins such as HIV-1 Tat[54] or influenza hemagglutinin.[55]

Synthetic peptides corresponding to segments of the protein antigen sequence can be used to identify the structures bound by antibodies specific for segmental antigenic sites. To identify assembled topographic sites, more complex approaches have been necessary. The earliest was the use of natural variants of the protein antigen with known amino acid substitutions, where such evolutionary variants exist.[50] Thus, substitution of different amino acids in proteins in the native conformation can be examined. The use of this method, which is illustrated later, is limited to studying the function of amino acids that vary among homologous proteins, that is, those that are polymorphic. It may now be extended to other residues by use of site-directed mutagenesis. A second method is to use the antibody that binds to the native protein to protect the antigenic site from modification[56] or proteolytic degradation.[57] A related but less sensitive approach makes use of competition with other antibodies.[58–60] A third approach, taking advantage of the capability of producing thousands of peptides on a solid-phase surface for direct binding assays,[61] is to study binding of a monoclonal antibody to every possible combination of six amino acids.[61] If the assembled topographic site can be mimicked by a combination of six amino acids not corresponding to any continuous segment of the protein sequence but structurally resembling a part of the surface, then one can produce a "mimotope" defining the specificity of that antibody.[61] Mimotopes have become widely used and can be combined with mutational analysis to map assembled topographic epitopes.[62] Mimetics have even been made for quaternary structural epitopes.[63] Many mimotope approaches use phase display peptide libraries to map epitopes of monoclonal antibodies.[64–66] However, other studies have been less optimistic about the ability to predict assembled topographic or discontinuous epitopes from mimotope binding[67] or random peptide libraries.[68]

Myoglobin also serves as a good model protein antigen for studying the range of variation of antigenic determinants from those that are more sequential in nature to those that do not even exist without the native conformation of the protein (see Fig. 23.3). A good example of the first more segmental type of determinant is that consisting of residues 15 to 22 in the amino terminal portion of the molecule. Crumpton and Wilkinson[69] first discovered that the chymotrypsin cleavage fragment consisting of residues 15 to 29 had antigenic activity for antibodies raised to either native or apomyoglobin. Two other groups[44,70] then found that synthetic peptides corresponding to residues 15 to 22 bind antibodies made to native sperm whale myoglobin, even though the synthetic peptides were only seven to eight residues long. Peptides of this length do not spend much time (in solution) in a conformation corresponding to that of the native protein. On the other hand, these synthetic peptides had a several hundred-fold lower affinity for the antibodies than did the native protein. Thus, even if most of the determinant was included in the consecutive sequence 15 to 22, the antibodies were still much more specific for the native conformation of this sequence than for the random conformation peptide. Moreover, there was no evidence to exclude the participation of other residues, nearby on the surface of myoglobin but not in this sequence, in the antigenic determinant.[71–74*]

A good example of the importance of secondary structure is the case of the loop peptide (residues 64 to 80) of hen egg white lysozyme.[75] This loop in the protein sequence is created by the disulfide linkage between cysteine residues 64 and 80 and has been shown to be a major antigenic determinant for antibodies to lysozyme.[75] The isolated peptide 60 to 83, containing the loop, binds antibodies with high affinity, but opening of the loop by cleavage of the disulfide bond destroys most of the antigenic activity for antilysozyme antibodies.[75]

At the other end of the range of conformational requirements are those determinants involving residues far apart in the primary sequences that are brought close together on the surface of the native molecule by its folding in three dimensions, called assembled topographic determinants.[50,51] Of six monoclonal antibodies to sperm whale myoglobin studied by Berzofsky et al.,[43,76] none bound to any of the three cyanogen bromide (CNBr) cleavage fragments of myoglobin that together span the whole sequence of the molecule. Therefore, these monoclonal antibodies (all with affinities between 2×10^8 and 2×10^9 M^{-1}) were all highly specific for the native conformation. These were studied by comparing the relative affinities for a series of native myoglobins from different species with known amino acid sequences. This approach allowed the definition of some of the residues involved in binding to three of these antibodies. Two of these three monoclonal antibodies were found to recognize topographic determinants, as defined previously. One recognized a determinant including Glu 4 and Lys 79, which come within about 2 Å of each other to form a salt bridge in the native molecule (see Fig. 23.3A, B). The other antibody recognized a determinant involving Glu 83, Ala 144, and Lys 145 (see Fig. 23.3A). Again, these are far apart in the primary sequence but are brought within 12 Å of each other by the folding of the molecule in its native conformation. Similar examples have been reported for monoclonal antibodies to human myoglobin[77] and to lysozyme[37,58] as well as the HIV-1 envelope protein (neutralizing epitopes)[78,79] and the prion protein.[80] Other examples of such conformation-dependent antigenic determinants have been suggested using conventional antisera to such proteins as insulin,[81] hemoglobin,[82] tobacco mosaic virus,[83] and cytochrome c.[84] Moreover, the crystallographic structures of lysozyme-antibody[34,36,37] and neuraminidase-antibody[35] complexes, as well as HIV-1 envelope antibody complexes,[78,79] show clearly that, in both cases, the epitope bound is an assembled topographic site.

*This is the only segmental antigenic determinant of myoglobin that has clearly been confirmed by more than one independent group of investigators. Crumpton and Wilkinson[69] did measure antigenic activity for a chymotryptic fragment 147 to 153 that overlaps one of the other reported sequential determinants.[71] However, two of the other reported sequential determinants,[71] corresponding to residues 56 to 62 and 94 to 100, have not been reproducible when tested with other antisera, even raised in the same species.[72] For related studies, see Hurrell et al.[73] and East et al.[74]

In the case of the three monoclonal antibodies binding to nonoverlapping sites of lysozyme (Fig. 23.4), it is clear that the footprints of all three antibody-combining sites cover more than one loop of polypeptide chain, and thus, each encompasses an assembled topographic site.[37] This result illustrates the concept that most antibody-combining sites must interact with more than a continuous loop of polypeptide chain and thus must define assembled topographic sites.[48] Another important example is represented by neutralizing antibodies to the HIV envelope protein that similarly bind assembled topographic sites[85,86] (see the end of this section).

How frequent are antibodies specific for topographic determinants compared to those that bind consecutive sequences when conventional antisera are examined? This question was studied by Lando et al.,[87] who passed goat, sheep, and rabbit antisera to sperm whale myoglobin over columns of myoglobin fragments, together spanning the whole sequence. After removal of all antibodies binding to the fragments, 30% to 40% of the antibodies remained that still bound to the native myoglobin molecule with high affinity but did not bind to any of the fragments in solution by radioimmunoassay. Thus, in four of four antimyoglobin sera tested, 60% to 70% of the antibodies could bind peptides, and 30% to 40% could bind only native-conformation intact protein.

On the basis of studies such as these, it has been suggested that much of the surface of a protein molecule may be antigenic,[50,88] but that the surface can be divided up into antigenic domains.[43,73,74,77] Each of these domains consists of many overlapping determinants recognized by different antibodies.

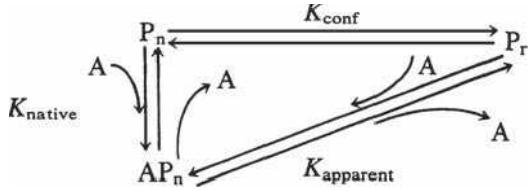
An additional interesting point is that in three published crystal structures of protein antigen–antibody complexes, the contact surfaces were broad, with local complementary pairs of concave and convex regions in both directions.[34–37] Thus, the concept of an antigen binding in the groove or pocket of an antibody may be oversimplified, and antibodies may sometimes bind by extending into pockets on an antigen.

Further information on the subjects discussed in this section is available in the reviews by Sela,[42] Crumpton,[53] Reichlin,[89] Kabat,[90] Benjamin et al.,[50] Berzofsky,[51] Getzoff et al.,[41] and Davis and Padlan.[37]

Conformational Equilibria of Protein and Peptide Antigenic Determinants

There are several possible mechanisms to explain why an antibody specific for a native protein will bind a peptide fragment in random conformation with lower affinity. Of course, the peptide may not contain all the contact residues of the antigenic determinant so that the binding energy would be lower. However, for cases in which all the residues in the determinant are present in the peptide, several mechanisms still remain. First, the affinity may be lower because the topography of the residues in the peptide may not produce as complementary a fit in the antibody-combining site as the native conformation would. Second, the apparent affinity may be reduced because only a small fraction of the peptide molecules are in a native-like conformation at any time, assuming that the antibody binds only to the native conformation. Because the concentration of peptide molecules in native conformation is lower than the total peptide concentration by a factor that corresponds to the conformational equilibrium constant of the peptide, the apparent affinity is also lower by this factor. This model is analogous to an allosteric model. A third, intermediate hypothesis would suggest that initial binding of the peptide in a nonnative conformation occurs with submaximal complementarity and is followed by an intramolecular conformational change in the peptide to achieve energy minimization by assuming a native-like conformation. This third hypothesis corresponds to an induced fit model. The loss of affinity is due to the energy required to change the conformation of the peptide, which in turn corresponds to the conformational equilibrium constant in the second hypothesis. To some extent, these models could be distinguished kinetically, as the first hypothesis predicts a faster "on" rate and a faster "off" rate than does the second hypothesis.[91] Such kinetic approaches have likewise been used to support an "encounter-docking" model related to this concept.[92]

Although not the only way to explain the data, the second hypothesis is useful because it provides a method to estimate the conformational equilibria of proteins and peptides.[52,93] The method assumes the second hypothesis, which can be expressed as follows:



(1)

where A = antibody, P_n = native peptide, and P_r = random conformation peptide so that

$$K_{apparent} = K_{conf}K_{native} \quad (2)$$

Thus, the ratio of the apparent association constant for peptide to the measured association constant for the native molecule should give the conformational equilibrium constant of the peptide. Note the implicit assumption that the total peptide concentration can be approximated by $[P_r]$. This will generally be true, as most peptide fragments of proteins demonstrate little native conformation, that is, $K_{conf} = [Pn] / [Pr]$ is much less than one. Also note that if the first hypothesis (or third) occurs to some extent, this method will overestimate K_{conf}. On the other hand, if the affinity for the peptide is lower because it lacks some of the contact residues of the determinant, this method will underestimate K_{conf} (by assuming that all the affinity difference is due to conformation). To some extent, the two errors may partially cancel out. When this method was used to determine the K_{conf} for a peptide from staphylococcal nuclease, a value of 2×10^{-4} (unitless because it is a ratio of two concentrations) was obtained.[52] Similarly, when antibodies raised to a peptide fragment were used, it was possible to estimate the fraction of time the native nuclease spends in nonnative

conformations.[93] In this case, the K_{conf} was found to be about 3000-fold in favor of the native conformation.

Antipeptide Antibodies that Bind to Native Proteins at a Specific Site

In light of the conformational differences between native proteins and peptides and the observed K_{conf} effects shown by antibodies to native proteins when tested on the corresponding peptides, it was somewhat surprising to find that antibodies to synthetic peptides show extensive cross-reactions with native proteins.[94,95] These two types of cross-reactions can be thought of as working in opposite directions: The binding of antiprotein antibodies to the peptide is inefficient, whereas the binding of antipeptide antibodies to the protein is quite efficient and commonly observed. This finding is quite useful, as automated solid-phase peptide synthesis has become readily available. This has been particularly useful in three areas: exploitation of protein sequences deduced by recombinant deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) methods, preparation of site specific antibodies, and the attempt to focus the immune response on a single protein site that is biologically important but may not be particularly immunogenic. This section focuses on the explanation of the cross-reaction, uses of the cross-reaction, and the potential limitations regarding immunogenicity.

The basic assumption is that antibodies raised against peptides in an unfolded structure will bind the corresponding site on proteins folded into the native structure.[95] This is not immediately obvious, as antibody binding to antigen is the direct result of the antigen fitting into the binding site. Affinity is the direct consequence of "goodness of fit" between antibody and antigen, whereas antibody specificity is due to the inability of other antigens to occupy the same site. How then can the antipeptide antibodies overcome the effect of K_{conf} and still bind native proteins with good affinity and specificity? The whole process depends on the antibody-binding site forming a three-dimensional space and the antigen filling it in an energetically favorable way.

Because the peptides are randomly folded, they rarely occupy the native conformation, so they are not likely to elicit antibodies against a conformation they do not maintain. If the antibodies are specific for a denatured structure, then, like the myoglobin molecules that were denatured to apomyoglobin by antibody binding,[53] the cross-reaction may depend on the native protein's ability to assume different conformational states. If the native protein is quite rigid, then the possibility of it assuming a random conformation is quite small; if it is a flexible three-dimensional spring, then local unfolding and refolding may occur all the time. Local unfolding of protein segments may permit the immunologic cross-reaction with antipeptide antibodies, as a flexible segment could assume many of the same conformations as the randomly folded peptide.[95] On the other hand, peptides with more stable conformations may be more likely to elicit antibodies that bind both the peptide and the native protein.[96] To this end, scaffolding has been used to maintain the conformation of peptides or protein fragments to be used as immunogens/vaccines, such as for respiratory syncytial virus[97] or HIV epitopes.[98,99]

In contrast, the ability of proteins to crystallize (a feature that allows the study of their structure by x-ray crystallography) has long been taken as evidence of protein rigidity.[100] In addition, the existence of discrete functional states of allosteric enzymes[101] provides additional evidence of stable structural states of a protein. Finally, the fact that antibodies can distinguish native from denatured forms of intact proteins is well known for proteins such as myoglobin.[53]

However, protein crystals are a somewhat artificial situation, as the formation of the crystal lattice imposes order on the components, each of which occupies a local energy minimum at the expense of considerable loss of randomness (entropy). Thus, the crystal structure may have artificial rigidity that exceeds the actual rigidity of protein molecules in solution. On the contrary, we may attribute some of the considerable difficulty in crystallizing proteins to disorder within the native conformation. Second, allosterism may be explained by two distinct conformations that are discrete without being particularly rigid. Finally, the ability to generate antiprotein antibodies that are conformation specific does not rule out the existence of antipeptide antibodies that are not. All antibodies are probably specific for some conformation of the antigen, but this need not be the crystallographic native conformation in order to achieve a significant affinity for those proteins or protein segments that have a "loose" native conformation.

Antipeptide antibodies have proved to be very powerful reagents when combined with recombinant DNA methods of gene sequencing.[95,102] From the DNA sequence, the protein sequence is predicted. A synthetic peptide is constructed, coupled to a suitable carrier molecule, and used to immunize animals. The resulting polyclonal antibodies can be detected with a peptide-coated enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay plate (see Chapter 7). They are used to immunoprecipitate the native protein from a ^{35}S-labeled cell lysate and thus confirm expression of the gene product in these cells. The antipeptide antibodies can also be used to isolate the previously unidentified gene product of a new gene. The site-specific antibodies are also useful in detecting posttranslational processing, as they bind all precursors and products that contain the site. In addition, because the antibodies bind only to the site corresponding to the peptide, they are useful in probing structure–function relationships. They can be used to block the binding of a substrate to an enzyme or the binding of a virus to its cellular receptor.

Immunogenicity of Proteins and Peptides

Up to this point, we have considered the ability of antibodies to react with proteins or peptides as antigens. However, immunogenicity refers to the ability of these compounds to elicit antibodies following immunization. Several factors limit the immunogenicity of different regions of proteins, and these have been divided into those that are intrinsic to protein structure itself versus those extrinsic to the antigen that are related to the responder and vary from one animal or species to another.[51] In addition, we consider the special case of peptide immunogenicity, as it applies to vaccine development. The features of protein structure that have been suggested to explain the results include surface accessibility

of the site, hydrophilicity, flexibility, and proximity to a site recognized by helper T cells.

When the x-ray crystallographic structure and antigenic structure are known for the same protein, it is not surprising to find that a series of monoclonal antibodies binding to a molecule such as influenza neuraminidase choose an overlapping pattern of sites at the exposed head of the protein.[103] The stalk of neuraminidase was not immunogenic apparently because it was almost entirely covered by carbohydrate.

Beyond such things as carbohydrate, which may sterically interfere with antibody binding to protein, accessibility on the surface is clearly a sine qua non for an antigenic determinant to be bound by an antibody specific for the native conformation, without any requirement for unfolding of the structure.[51] Several measures of such accessibility have been suggested. All these require knowledge of the x-ray crystallographic three-dimensional structure. Some have measured accessibility to solvent by rolling a sphere with the radius of a water molecule over the surface of a protein.[104,105] Others have suggested that accessibility to water is not the best measure of accessibility to antibody and have demonstrated a better correlation by rolling a sphere with the radius of an antibody-combining domain.[106] Another approach to predicting antigenic sites on the basis of accessibility is to examine the degree of protrusion from the surface of the protein.[107] This was done by modeling the body of the protein as an ellipsoid and examining which amino acid residues remain outside ellipsoids of increasing dimensions. The most protruding residues were found to be part of antigenic sites bound by antibodies, but usually, these sites had been identified by using short synthetic peptides and so were segmental in nature. As noted previously, for an antigenic site to be contained completely within a single continuous segment of protein sequence, the site is likely to have to protrude from the surface, as otherwise residues from other parts of the sequence would fall within the area contacting the antibody.[48] However, inability of such surface or protrusion information to predict antigenic sites has also been encountered in some studies.[49]

Because the three-dimensional structure of most proteins is not known, other ways of predicting surface exposure have been proposed for the vast majority of antigens. For example, hydrophilic sites tend to be found on the water-exposed surface of proteins. Thus, hydrophilicity has been proposed as a second indication of immunogenicity.[108–110] This model has been used to analyze 12 proteins with known antigenic sites: The most hydrophilic site of each protein was indeed one of the antigenic sites. However, among the limitations are the facts that a significant fraction of surface residues can be nonpolar,[104,105] and that several important examples of hydrophobic and aromatic amino acids involved in the antigenic sites are known.[42,83,111,112] Specificity of antibody binding likely depends on the complementarity of surfaces for hydrogen bonding and polar bonding as well as van der Waals contacts, whereas hydrophobic interactions and the exclusion of water from the interacting surfaces of proteins may contribute a large but nonspecific component to the energy of binding.[113] Another study suggested that amino acid pairs were better predictors of epitopes.[114]

A third factor suggested to play a role in immunogenicity of protein epitopes is mobility. Measurement of mobility in the native protein is largely dependent on the availability of a high-resolution crystal structure, so its applicability is limited to only a small subset of proteins. Furthermore, it has been studied only for antibodies specific for segmental antigenic sites; therefore, it may not apply to the large fraction of antibodies to assembled topographic sites. Studies of mobility have taken two directions. The case of antipeptide antibodies has already been discussed, in which antibodies made to peptides corresponding to more mobile segments of the native protein were more likely to bind to the native protein.[95,115] This is not considered just a consequence of the fact that more mobile segments are likely to be those on the surface and therefore more exposed because in the case of myohemerythrin (which was used as a model), two regions of the native protein that were equally exposed but less mobile did not bind nearly as well to the corresponding antipeptide antibodies.[116] However, as is clear from the previous discussion, this result applies to antibodies made against short peptides and therefore is not directly relevant to immunogenicity of parts of the native protein. Rather, it concerns the cross-reactivity of antipeptide antibodies with the native protein and therefore is of considerable practical importance for the purposes outlined in the section on antipeptide antibodies.

Studies in the other direction—that is, of antibodies raised against native proteins—would be by definition more relevant to the question of immunogenicity of parts of the native protein. Westhof et al.[117] used a series of hexapeptides to determine the specificity of antibodies raised against native tobacco mosaic virus protein and found that six of the seven peptides that bound antibodies to native protein corresponded to peaks of high mobility in the native protein. The correlation was better than could be accounted for just by accessibility because three peptides that corresponded to exposed regions of only average mobility did not bind antibodies to the native protein. However, when longer peptides—on the order of 20 amino acid residues—were used as probes, it was found that antibodies were present in the same antisera that bound to less mobile regions of the protein.[118] They simply had not been detected with the short hexapeptides with less conformational stability. Thus, it was not that the more mobile regions were necessarily more immunogenic but rather that antibodies to these were more easily detected with short peptides as probes. A similar good correlation of antigenic sites with mobile regions of the native protein in the case of myoglobin[117] may also be attributed to the fact that seven of the nine sites were defined with short peptides of six to eight residues.[71] Again, this result becomes a statement about cross-reactivity between peptides and native protein rather than about the immunogenicity of the native protein. For reviews, see Van Regenmortel[119] and Getzoff et al.[41]

To address the role of mobility in immunogenicity, an attempt was made to quantitate the relative fraction of antibodies specific for different sites on the antigen myohemerythrin.[120] The premise was that, although the entire surface of the protein may be immunogenic, certain regions may elicit significantly more antibodies than others and therefore may

be considered immunodominant or at least more immunogenic. Because this study was done with short synthetic peptides from 6 to 14 residues long based on the protein sequence, it was limited to the subset of antibodies specific for segmental antigenic sites. Among these, it was clear that the most immunogenic sites were in regions of the surface that were most mobile, convex in shape, and often of negative electrostatic potential. Other more recent studies corroborate the greater immunogenicity of more flexible segments of protein structures.[121] The role of these parameters has been reviewed.[41]

These results have important practical and theoretical implications. First, to use peptides to fractionate antiprotein antisera by affinity chromatography, peptides corresponding to more mobile segments of the native protein should be chosen when possible. If the crystal structure is not known, it may be possible to use peptides from amino or carboxyl termini or from exon–intron boundaries, as these are more likely to be mobile.[115] Second, these results may explain how a large but finite repertoire of antibody-producing B cells can respond to any antigen in nature or even artificial antigens never encountered in nature. Protein segments that are more flexible may be able to bind by induced fit in an antibody-combining site that is not perfectly complementary to the average native structure.[41,51] Indeed, evidence from the crystal structure of antigen–antibody complexes[122–124] suggests that mobility in the antibody-combining site as well as in the antigen may allow both reactants to adopt more complementary conformations on binding to each other, that is, a two-way induced fit. A nice example comes from the study of antibodies to myohemerythrin,[123] in which the data suggested that initial binding of exposed side chains of the antigen to the antibody promoted local displacements that allowed exposure and binding of other, previously buried residues that served as contact residues. The only way this could occur would be for such residues to become exposed during the course of an induced fit conformational change in the antigen.[41,123] In a second very clear example of induced fit, the contribution of antibody mobility to peptide binding was demonstrated for a monoclonal antibody to peptide 75 to 110 of influenza hemagglutinin, which was crystallized with or without peptide in the binding site and analyzed by x-ray crystallography for evidence of an induced fit.[124] Despite flexibility of the peptide, the antibody-binding site probably could not accommodate the peptide without a conformational change in the third complementarity determining region of the heavy chain, in which an asparagine residue of the antibody was rotated out of the way to allow a tyrosine residue of the peptide to fit in the binding pocket of the antibody.[124]

Regarding host-limited factors, immunogenicity is certainly limited by self-tolerance. Thus, the repertoire of potential antigenic sites on mammalian protein antigens such as myoglobin or cytochrome c can be thought of as greatly simplified by the sharing of numerous amino acids with the endogenous host protein. For mouse, guanaco, or horse cytochrome c injected into rabbits, each of the differences between the immunogen and rabbit cytochrome c is seen as an immunogenic site on a background of immunologically silent residues.[50,84,125] In another example, rabbit and dog antibodies to beef myoglobin bound almost equally well to beef or sheep myoglobin.[126] However, sheep antibodies bound beef but not sheep myoglobin, even though these two myoglobins differ by just six amino acids. Thus, the sheep immune system was able to screen out those clones that would be autoreactive with sheep myoglobin.

Ir genes of the host also play an important role in regulating the ability of an individual to make antibodies to a specific antigen.[127] These antigen-specific immune response genes are among the major histocompatibility complex (MHC) genes that code for transplantation antigens. Structural mutations, gene transfer experiments, and biochemical studies[127] all indicate that Ir genes are actually the structural genes for MHC antigens. The mechanism of action of the MHC antigens works through their effect on helper T cells (described later in this chapter). There appear to be constraints on which B and T cells of a given specificity can help,[128,129] a process called T–B reciprocity.[130] Thus, if Ir genes control helper T-cell specificity, they will in turn limit which B cells are activated and which antibodies are made.

The immunogenicity of peptide antigens is also limited by intrinsic and extrinsic factors. With less structure to go on, each small peptide must presumably contain some non–self-structural feature in order to overcome self-tolerance. In addition, the same peptide must contain antigenic sites that can be recognized by helper T cells as well as by B cells. When no T-cell site is present, three approaches may be helpful: graft on a T-cell site, couple the peptide to a carrier protein, or overcome T-cell nonresponsiveness to the available structure with various immunologic agents, such as interleukin 2.

An example of a biologically relevant but poorly immunogenic peptide is the asparagine-alanine-asparagine-proline (NANP) repeat unit of the circumsporozoite (CS) protein of malaria sporozoites. A monoclonal antibody to the repeat unit of the CS protein can protect against murine malaria.[131] Thus, it would be desirable to make a malaria vaccine of the repeat unit of *Plasmodium falciparum* $(NANP)_n$. However, only mice of one MHC type ($H\text{-}2^b$) of all mouse strains tested were able to respond to $(NANP)_n$.[132,133] One approach to overcome this limitation is to couple $(NANP)_n$ to a site recognizable by T cells, perhaps a carrier protein such as tetanus toxoid.[134] In human trials, this conjugate was weakly immunogenic and only partially protective. Moreover, as helper T cells produced by this approach are specific for the unrelated carrier, a secondary or memory response would not be expected to be elicited by the pathogen itself.

Another choice might be to identify a T-cell site on the CS protein itself and couple the two synthetic peptides together to make one complete immunogen. The result with one such site, called Th2R, was to increase the range of responding mouse MHC types by one, to include $H\text{-}2^k$ as well as $H\text{-}2^b$.[135] This approach has the potential advantage of inducing a state of immunity that could be boosted by natural exposure to the sporozoite antigen. As CS-specific T and B cells are both elicited by the vaccine, natural exposure to the antigen could help maintain the level of immunity during the entire period of exposure.

Another strategy to improve the immunogenicity of peptide vaccines is to stimulate the T- and B-cell responses artificially by adding interleukin 2 to the vaccine. Results with myoglobin indicate that genetic nonresponsiveness can be overcome by appropriate doses of interleukin 2.[136] The same effect was found for peptides derived from malaria proteins.[137,137a]

One of the most important possible uses of peptide antigens is as synthetic vaccines. However, even though it is possible to elicit with synthetic peptides anti-influenza antibodies to nearly every part of the influenza hemagglutinin,[94] antibodies that neutralize viral infectivity have not been elicited by immunization with synthetic peptides. This may reflect the fact that antibody binding by itself often does not result in virus inactivation. Viral inactivation occurs only when antibody interferes with one of the steps in the life cycle of the virus, including binding to its cell surface receptor, internalization, and virus uncoating within the cell. Apparently, antibodies can bind to most of the exposed surface of the virus without affecting these functions. Only those antibodies that bind to certain "neutralizing" sites can inactivate the virus. In addition, as in the case of the VP1 coat protein of poliovirus, certain neutralizing sites are found only on the native protein and not on the heat-denatured protein.[138] Thus, not only the site but also the conformation that is bound by the antibodies may be important for the antibody to inactivate the virus. These sites may often be assembled topographic sites not mimicked by peptide segments of the sequence. Perhaps binding of an antibody to such an assembled site can alter the relative positions of the component subsites so as to induce an allosteric neutralizing effect. Alternatively, antibodies to such an assembled site may prevent a conformational change necessary for activity of the viral protein.

One method of mapping neutralizing sites is based on the use of neutralizing monoclonal antibodies. The virus is grown in the presence of neutralizing concentrations of the monoclonal antibody, and virus mutants are selected for the ability to overcome antibody inhibition. These are sequenced, revealing the mutation that permits "escape" by altering the antigenic site for that antibody. This method has been used to map the neutralizing sites of influenza hemagglutinin[139] as well as poliovirus capsid protein VP1.[140] The influenza escaping mutations are clustered to form an assembled topographic site, with mutations distant from each other in the primary sequence of hemagglutinin but brought together by the three-dimensional folding of the native protein. At first, it was thought that neutralization was the result of steric hindrance of the hemagglutinin-binding site for the cell surface receptor of the virus.[141] However, similar work with poliovirus reveals that neutralizing antibodies that bind to assembled topographic sites may inactivate the virus at less than stoichiometric amounts, when at least half of the sites are unbound by antibody.[142] The neutralizing antibodies all cause a conformational change in the virus, which is reflected in a change in the isoelectric point of the particles from pH 7 to pH 4.[140,143] Antibodies that bind without neutralizing do not cause this shift. Thus, an alternative explanation for the mechanism of antibody-mediated neutralization is the triggering of the virus to self-destruct. Perhaps the reason that neutralizing sites are clustered near receptor-binding sites is that occupation of such sites by antibody mimics events normally caused by binding to the cellular receptor, causing the virus to prematurely trigger its cell entry mechanisms. However, in order to transmit a physiologic signal, the antibody may need to bind viral capsid proteins in the native conformation (especially assembled topographic sites), which antipeptide antibodies may fail to do. Antibodies of this specificity are similar to the viral receptors on the cell surface, some of which have been cloned and expressed without their transmembrane sequences as soluble proteins. The soluble recombinant receptors for poliovirus[144] and HIV-1[145–147] exhibit high-affinity binding to the virus and potent neutralizing activity in vitro. The HIV-1 receptor, cluster of differentiation (CD)4, has been combined with the human Ig heavy chain in a hybrid protein CD4-Ig,[148] which spontaneously assembles into dimers and resembles a monoclonal antibody, in which the binding site is the same as the receptor-binding site for HIV-1. In these recombinant constructs, high-affinity binding depends on the native conformation of the viral envelope glycoprotein gp120. Binding of CD4 to gp120 elicits a conformational change exposing a CD4-induced epitope, and fusions of CD4 domains to gp120 can be used as vaccines to elicit such antibodies.[149]

For HIV-1, two types of neutralizing antibodies have been identified. The first type binds a continuous or segmental determinant, such as the "V3 loop" sequence between amino acids 296 and 331 of gp120.[150–152] Antipeptide antibodies against this site can neutralize the virus.[150] However, because this site is located in a highly variable region of the envelope, these antibodies tend to neutralize a narrow range of viral variants with nearly the same sequence as the immunogen. Even for this highly variable site, more broadly neutralizing antibodies can be obtained that recognize conserved conformations.[153–155] The second type of neutralizing antibody binds conserved sites on the native structure of gp120, allowing them to neutralize a broad spectrum of HIV-1 isolates. These antibodies are commonly found in the sera of infected patients,[156] and a panel of neutralizing monoclonals derived from these subjects has been analyzed.

These monoclonals can be divided into three types. One group, possibly the most common ones in human polyclonal sera, bind at or near the CD4 receptor–binding site of gp120.[79,157–161] A second type of monoclonal, called 2G12, binds a conformational site on gp120 that also depends on glycosylation, but has no direct effect on CD4 binding.[162] A third type, quite rare in human sera, is represented by monoclonal antibody 2F5[163] and binds a conserved site on the transmembrane protein gp41. Although this site is contained on a linear peptide ELDKWA, antibodies such as 2F5 cannot be elicited by immunizing with the peptide, again suggesting the conformational aspect of this site.[164,165] Indeed, the binding of antibodies to this membrane-proximal site has even been found to involve interaction of the antibody with the lipid membrane.[166] One might view this intriguing case as an example of a discontinuous or assembled topographic site created by the proximity of residues of the protein with structures in the lipid membrane, thus, spanning more than just different parts of the antigenic protein.

These monoclonals neutralize fresh isolates, as well as laboratory-adapted strains, and they neutralize viruses tropic for T cells or macrophages,[167] regardless of the use of CXCR4 or CCR5 as second receptor. These monoclonals, which target different sites, act synergistically. A cocktail combining all three types of monoclonals can protect monkeys against iv challenge or vaginal challenge with a simian immunodeficiency virus/HIV hybrid virus, indicating the potential for antibodies alone to prevent HIV infection.[168,169] Because each of the three conserved neutralizing determinants depends on the native conformation of the protein,[170] a prospective gp120 vaccine (or gp160 vaccine) would need to be in the native conformation to be able to elicit these antibodies.

ANTIGENIC DETERMINANTS RECOGNIZED BY T CELLS

Studies of T-cell specificity for antigen were motivated by the fact that the immune response to protein antigens is regulated at the T-cell level. A hapten, not immunogenic by itself, will elicit antibodies only when coupled to a protein that elicits a T-cell response in that animal. This ability of the protein component of the conjugate to confer immunogenicity on the hapten has been termed the "carrier effect." Recognition of the carrier by specific helper T cells induces the B cells to make antibodies. Thus, the factors contributing to a good T-cell response appear to control the B-cell response as well.

"Nonresponder" animals display an antigen-specific failure to respond to a protein antigen, both for T cells and antibody responses. The "high responder" phenotype for each antigen is a genetically inheritable, usually dominant trait. Using inbred strains of mice, the genes controlling the immune response were found to be tightly linked to the MHC genes.[127,171] MHC-linked immune responsiveness has been shown to depend on the T-cell recognition of antigen bound within a groove of MHC antigens of the antigen-presenting cell (APC) (discussed herein below and see Chapters 21 and 22). The recognition of antigen in association with MHC molecules of the B cell is necessary for carrier-specific T cells to expand and provide helper signals to B cells.

In contrast to the range of antigens recognized by antibodies, the repertoire recognized by helper and cytotoxic T cells appears to be limited largely to protein and peptide antigens, although exceptions such as the small molecule tyrosine-azobenzene arsonate[172] exist. Once the antigenic determinants on proteins recognized by T cells are identified, it may be possible to better understand immunogenicity and perhaps even to manipulate the antibody response to biologically relevant antigens by altering the helper T–cell response to the antigen.

Defining Antigenic Structures

Polyclonal T-Cell Response

Significant progress in understanding T-cell specificity was made possible by focusing on T-cell proliferation in vitro, mimicking the clonal expansion of antigen specific clones in vivo. The proliferative response depends on only two cells: the antigen-specific T cell and an APC, usually a macrophage, dendritic cell, or B cell. The growth of T cells in culture is measured as the incorporation of [^{3}H]thymidine into newly formed DNA. Under appropriate conditions, thymidine incorporation increases with antigen concentration. This assay permits the substitution of different APCs and is highly useful in defining the MHC and antigen-processing requirements of the APCs.

Using primarily this assay, several different approaches have been taken to mapping T-cell epitopes. First, T cells immunized to one protein have been tested for a proliferative response in vitro to the identical protein or to a series of naturally occurring variants. By comparing the sequences of stimulatory and nonstimulatory variants, it was possible to identify potential epitopes recognized by T cells. For example, the T-cell response to myoglobin was analyzed by immunizing mice with sperm whale or horse myoglobin and testing the resulting T cells for proliferation in response to a series of myoglobins from different species with known amino acid substitutions.[173] Reciprocal patterns were observed in T cells from mice immunized with sperm whale or horse myoglobin. The response to the cross-stimulatory myoglobins was as strong as to the myoglobin used to immunize the mice. This suggested that a few shared amino acid residues formed an immunodominant epitope, and that most substitutions had no effect on the dominant epitope. A comparison of the sequences revealed that substitutions at a single residue could explain the pattern observed. All myoglobins that cross-stimulated sperm whale–immune T cells had Glu at position 109, whereas all that cross-stimulated horse-immune T cells had Asp at 109. No member of one group could stimulate T cells from donors immunized with a myoglobin of the other group. This suggested that an immunodominant epitope recognized by T cells was centered on position 109, regardless of which amino acid was substituted. Usually, this approach has led to correct localization of the antigenic site in the protein,[173–175] but the possibility of long-range effects on antigen processing must be kept in mind (see the section on "Antigen Processing"). Also, this approach using natural variants is limited in that it can focus on the correct region of the molecule but cannot define the boundaries of the site. Site-directed mutagenesis may therefore expand the capabilities of this approach.

A second approach is to use short peptide segments of the protein sequence, taking advantage of the fact that T cells specific for soluble protein antigens appear to see only segmental antigenic sites not assembled topographic ones.[127,176–180] These may be produced by chemical or enzymatic cleavage of the natural protein,[178–186] solid-phase peptide synthesis,[185,187–190] or recombinant DNA expression of cloned genes or gene fragments.[191] In the case of class I MHC molecule–restricted cytotoxic T cells, viral gene deletion mutants expressing only part of the gene product have also been used.[192–194]

In the case of myoglobin-specific T cells, mapping of an epitope to residue Glu 109 was confirmed by use of a synthetic peptide 102 to 118, which stimulated the T cells.[189,195] The T cells elicited by a myoglobin with either Glu or Asp 109 could readily distinguish between synthetic peptides containing Glu or Asp at this position. Similar results were obtained with cytochrome c, where the predominant site recognized by T cells was localized with sequence variants to the region

around residue 100 at the carboxyl end of cytochrome.[174] Furthermore, the response to cytochrome c peptide 81 to 104 was as great as the response to the whole molecule. This indicated that a 24 amino acid peptide contained an entire antigenic site recognized by T cells. The T cells could distinguish between synthetic peptides with Lys or Gln at position 99, although both were immunogenic with the same MHC molecule.[196–198] This residue determined T-cell memory and specificity, and so presumably was interacting with the T-cell receptor (TCR). A similar conclusion could be drawn for residue 109 of myoglobin. However, this type of analysis must be used with caution. When multiple substitutions at position 109 were examined for T-cell recognition and MHC binding, residue 109 was found to affect both functions.[199] The ultimate use of synthetic peptides to analyze the segmental sites of a protein that are recognized by T cells was to synthesize a complete set of peptides, each staggered by just one amino acid from the previous peptide, corresponding to the entire sequence of hen egg lysozyme.[200] Around each immunodominant site, a cluster of several stimulatory peptides was found. The minimum "core" sequence consisted of just those residues shared by all antigenic peptides within a cluster, whereas the full extent of sequences spanning all stimulatory peptides within the same cluster defined the "determinant envelope." These two ways of defining an antigenic site differ, and one interpretation is that each core sequence corresponds to an MHC-binding site, whereas the determinant envelope includes the many ways for T cells to recognize the same peptide bound to the MHC.

In each case, the polyclonal T-cell response could be mapped to a single predominant antigenic site. These results are consistent with the idea that each protein antigen has a limited number of immunodominant sites (possibly one) recognized by T cells in association with MHC molecules of the high-responder type. If none of the antigenic sites could associate with MHC molecules on the APCs, then the strain would be a low responder, and the antigen would have little or no immunogenicity.

Monoclonal T Cells

Further progress in mapping T-cell sites depended on the analysis of cloned T-cell lines. These were either antigen-specific T-cell lines made by the method of Komoto and Fathman[201] or T-cell hybridomas made by the method of Kappler et al.[202] In the former method, T cells are allowed to proliferate in response to antigen and APCs, rested, and then restimulated again. After stimulation, the blasts can be cloned by limiting dilution and grown from a single cell in the presence of interleukin 2. In the second method, enriched populations of antigen-specific T cells are fused with a drug-sensitive T-cell tumor, and the fused cells are selected for their ability to grow in the presence of the drug. Then the antigen specificity of each fused cell line must be determined. The key to determining this in a tumor line is that antigen-specific stimulation of a T-cell hybridoma results in release of interleukin 2, even though proliferation is constitutive. T cells produced by either method are useful in defining epitopes, measuring their MHC associations and studying antigen-processing requirements.

Monoclonal T cells may be useful in identifying which of the many proteins from a pathogen are important for T-cell responses. For instance, Young and Lamb[203] have developed a way to screen proteins separated by SDS–polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis and blotted onto nitrocellulose for stimulation of T-cell clones and have used this to identify antigens of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*.[204] Mustafa et al.[205] have even used T-cell clones to screen recombinant DNA expression libraries to identify relevant antigens of *Mycobacterium leprae*. Use of T cells to map epitopes has also been important in defining tumor antigens.[206–211]

Precise mapping of antigenic sites recognized by T cells was made possible by the fact that T cells would respond to peptide fragments of the antigen when they contain a complete antigenic determinant. A series of overlapping peptides can be used to walk along the protein sequence and find the antigenic site. Then, by truncating the peptide at either end, the minimum antigenic peptide can be determined. For example, in the case of myoglobin, a critical amino acid residue, such as Glu 109 or Lys 140, was found by comparing the sequences of stimulatory and nonstimulatory myoglobin variants and large CNBr cleavage fragments[212] as previously discussed, and then a series of truncated peptides containing the critical residue was synthesized with different overlapping lengths at either end.[185,189] Because solid-phase peptide synthesis starts from a fixed carboxyl end and proceeds toward the amino end, it can be stopped at various positions to produce a nested series of peptides that vary in length at the amino end. In this way, it was found that two of the Glu 109–specific T-cell clones responded to synthetic peptides 102 to 118 and 106 to 118 but not to peptide 109 to 118.[189] One clone responded to peptide 108 to 118, whereas the other did not. Thus, the amino end of the peptide recognized by one clone was Ser 108, whereas the other clone required Phe 106 and/or Ile 107. Similar fine specificity differences have been observed with T-cell clones specific for the peptides 52 to 61 and 74 to 96 of hen egg lysozyme,[182,213,214] the peptide 323 to 339 of chicken ovalbumin,[183] and the peptide 81 to 104 of pigeon cytochrome c[188]: The epitopes recognized by several T-cell clones overlap but are distinct. In addition, nine T-cell clones recognized a second T-cell determinant in myoglobin located around Lys 140, and each one responded to the CNBr cleavage fragment 132 to 153.[215] Further studies with a nested series of synthetic peptides showed that the stimulatory sequence is contained in peptide 136 to 145.[185]

These findings can be generalized to characterize a large number of epitopes recognized by T cells from a number of protein antigens (Table 23.4).[212–227] What these studies and others demonstrated about epitopes recognized by T cells is that in each case, the entire site is contained on a short peptide. MHC class I–restricted antigens also follow this rule,[228] even when the protein antigen is normally expressed on the surface of infected cells. This applies to viral glycoproteins, such as influenza hemagglutinin, which are recognized by cytolytic T cells after antigen processing[229] (see section on "Antigen Processing"). These peptides consist of no more than about 12 to 17 amino acid residues for class II MHC or 8 to 10 residues for class I. Within this size, they must contain all the information necessary to survive processing

TABLE 23.4 Examples of Immunodominant T-Cell Epitopes Recognized in Association with Class II MHC Molecules

Protein	T-Cell Antigenic Sites and Reference	Amphipathic Segments
Sperm whale myoglobin	69–78[148]	64–78
	102–118[159]	99–117
	132–145[155]	128–145
Pigeon cytochrome c	93–104[158]	92–103
Beef cytochrome c	11–25[192]	9–29
	66–80[193]	58–78
Influenza	109–119[186]	97–120
Hemagglutinin	130–140[187]	—
A/PR/8/34	302–313[187,188]	291–314
Pork insulin	B 5–16[157]	4–16
	A 4–14[189]	1–21
Chicken lysozyme	46–61[185]	—
	74–86[184]	72–86
	81–96[175]	86–102
	109–119[145]	—
Chicken ovalbumin	323–339[153]	329–346
Foot and mouth virus VP1	141–160[191]	148–165
Hepatitis B virus		
Pre-S	120–132[190]	121–135
Major surface antigen	38–52[194]	36–49
	95–109[194]	—
	140–154[194]	—
λ Repressor protein CI	12–26[195]	8–25
Rabies virus spike glycoprotein precursor	32–44[196]	29–46

Adapted with permission from Schwartz et al.[188]

within the APC, associate with the MHC antigen, and bind to the TCR, as discussed in the following sections.

Sequential Steps that Focus the T-Cell Response on Immunodominant Determinants

In contrast to antibodies that bind all over the surface of a native protein[50] (see "Protein and Polypeptide Antigenic Determinants" section), it has been observed that T cells elicited by immunization with the native protein tend to be focused on one or a few immunodominant sites.[230–232] This is true whether one deals with model mammalian or avian proteins such as cytochrome c,[179] myoglobin,[178,180] lysozyme,[182,214,233,234] insulin,[187,219] and ovalbumin,[183] or with bacterial, viral, and parasitic proteins from pathogens, such as influenza hemagglutinin[217] or nucleoprotein (NP),[228] staphylococcal nuclease,[235] or malarial CS protein.[135,236] Because the latter category of proteins shares no obvious homology to mammalian proteins, the immunodominance of a few sites cannot be attributed simply to tolerance for the rest of the protein because of homologous host proteins. Moreover, immunodominance is not simply the preemption of the response by a single clone of predominant T cells because it has been observed that immunodominant sites tend to be the focus for a polyclonal response of a number of distinct T-cell clones recognizing overlapping subsites within the antigenic site or having different sensitivities to substitutions of amino acids within the site.[182,183,188,189,200,213,214,237]

Immunodominant antigenic sites appear to be qualitatively different from other sites. For example, in the case of myoglobin, when the number of clones responding to different epitopes after immunization with native protein was quantitated by limiting dilution, it was observed that the bulk of the response to the whole protein in association with the high-responder class II MHC molecules was focused on a single site within residues 102 to 118[195] (Fig. 23.5). When T cells in the (high × low responder) F1 hybrid restricted to each MHC haplotype were compared, there was little difference in the responses to nondominant epitopes, and all the overall difference in magnitude of response restricted by the high versus low responder MHC could be attributed to the high response to the immunodominant determinant in the former and the complete absence of this response in the latter (see Fig. 23.5). Similar results were found for two different high-responder and two different low-responder MHC haplotypes.[195] Why did the response to the other sites not compensate for the lack of response to the immunodominant site in the low responders?

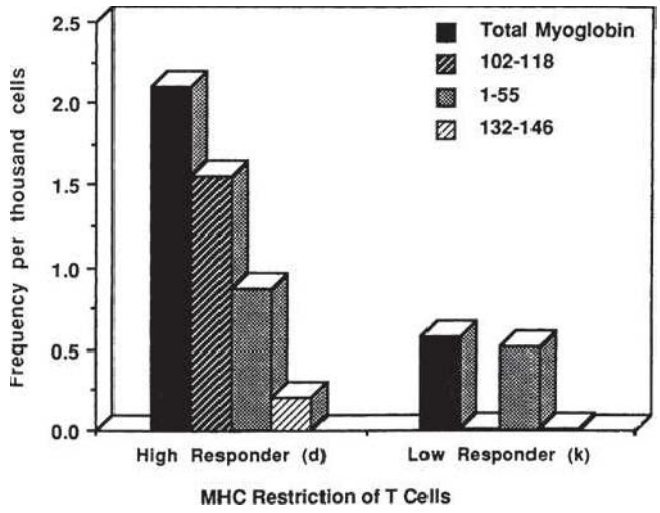


FIG. 23.5. Frequency of High- and Low-Responder Major Histocompatibility Complex (MHC)-Restricted T Cells in F1 Hybrid. High responsiveness may be accounted for by the response to a single immunodominant epitope. Lymph node T cells from (low-responder [H-2^k] × high-responder [H-2^d]) F1 hybrid mice immunized with whole myoglobin were plated at different limiting dilutions in microtiter wells with either high- or low-responder presenting cells and myoglobin as antigen. The cells growing in each well were tested for responsiveness to whole myoglobin and to various peptide epitopes of myoglobin. The frequency of T cells of each specificity and MHC restriction was calculated from Poisson statistics and is plotted on the ordinate. Most of the difference in T-cell frequency between high- and low-responder restriction types *(solid bars)* can be accounted for by the presence of T cells responding to the immunodominant site at residues 102 to 118, accounting for more than two-thirds of the high-responder myoglobin-specific T cells, in contrast to the absence of such T cells restricted to the low-responder MHC type. (Based on the data in Kojima et al.[195].)

The greater frequency of T cells specific for the immunodominant site may in part be attributed to the large number of ways this site can be recognized by different T-cell clones, as mentioned previously, but this only pushes the problem back one level. Why is an immunodominant site the focus for so many different T-cell clones? Because the answer cannot depend on any particular T cell, it must depend on other factors primarily involved in the steps in antigen processing and presentation by MHC molecules.

It has also been observed that some peptides may be immunogenic themselves, but the T-cell response they elicit is specific only for the peptide and does not cross-react with the native protein nor do T cells specific for the native protein recognize this site.[238–240] These are called cryptic determinants.[240] The reasons for these differences may involve the way the native protein is processed to produce fragments distinct from, but including or overlapping, the synthetic peptides used in experiments and also the competition among sites within the protein for binding to the same MHC molecules, as discussed further in the next section. To understand these factors that determine dominance or crypticity, one must understand the steps through which an antigen must go before it can stimulate a T-cell response.

Unlike B cells, T-cell recognition of antigen depends on the function of another cell, the APC.[241] Antigen must pass through a number of intracellular compartments and survive processing and transport steps before it can be effectively presented to T cells. Following antigen synthesis in the cell (as in a virally infected cell) or antigen uptake via phagocytosis, pinocytosis, or, in some cases, receptor-mediated endocytosis, the subsequent steps include 1) partial degradation ("processing") into discrete antigenic fragments that can be recognized by T cells, 2) transport of these fragments into a cellular compartment where MHC binding can occur, 3) MHC binding and assembly of a stable peptide-MHC complex, and 4) recognition of that peptide-MHC complex by the expressed T-cell repertoire. At each step, a potential antigenic determinant runs the risk of being lost from the process, for example, by excessive degradation or failure to meet the binding requirements needed for transport to the next step. Only those peptides that surmount the four selective hurdles will prove to be antigenic for T cells. We will now consider each step in detail, for its contribution to the strength and specificity of the T-cell response to protein antigens.

Antigen Processing

Influence of Antigen Processing on the Expressed T-Cell Repertoire. Several lines of evidence indicate that antigen processing plays a critical role in determining which potential antigenic sites are recognized and, therefore, what part of the potential T-cell repertoire is expressed upon immunization with a protein antigen. Because the T cell does not see the native antigen but only the products of antigen processing, it is not unreasonable that the nature of these products would at least partly determine which potential epitopes could be recognized by T cells.

One line of evidence that processing plays a major role in T-cell repertoire expression came from comparisons that were made of the immunogenicity of peptide versus native molecule in the cases of myoglobin[238] or lysozyme.[239] In the case of myoglobin, a site of equine myoglobin (residues 102 to 118) that did not elicit a response when H-2^k mice were immunized with native myoglobin nevertheless was found to be immunogenic when such mice were immunized with the peptide.[238] Thus, the low responsiveness to this site in mice immunized with the native myoglobin was not due to either of the classical mechanisms of Ir gene defects—namely, a hole in the T-cell repertoire or a failure of the site to interact with MHC molecules of that strain. However, the peptide-immune T cells responded only poorly to native equine myoglobin in vitro. Thus, the peptide and the native molecule did not cross-react well in either direction. The problem was not simply a failure to process the native molecule to produce this epitope because (H-2^k × H-2^s) F1-presenting cells could present this epitope to H-2^s T cells when given native myoglobin but could not present it to H-2^k T cells. Also, because the same results applied to individual T-cell clones, the failure to respond to the native molecule was apparently not due to suppressor cells induced by the native molecule. Similar observations were made for the response to the peptide 74 to 96 of hen lysozyme in B10.A mice.[239] The peptide, not the native molecule, induced T cells specific for this site, and these T cells did not cross-react with the native molecule. With these alternative mechanisms excluded, we are left with the conclusion that an appropriate peptide was produced, but it differed from the synthetic peptide in such a way that a hindering site outside the minimal antigenic site interfered with presentation by presenting cells of certain MHC types. Further evidence consistent with this mechanism came from the work of Shastri et al.,[242] who found that different epitopes within the 74 to 96 region of lysozyme were immunodominant in H-2^b mice when different forms of the immunogen were used.

Another line of evidence came from fine specificity studies of individual T-cell clones. Shastri et al.[243] observed that H-2^b T-cell clones specific for hen lysozymes were about 100-fold more sensitive to ring-necked pheasant lysozyme than to hen lysozyme. Nevertheless, they were equally sensitive to the CNBr cleavage fragments containing the antigenic sites from both lysozymes. Thus, regions outside the minimal antigenic site removable by CNBr cleavage presumably interfered with processing, presentation, or recognition of the corresponding site in hen lysozyme. Similarly, it was observed that a T-cell clone specific for sperm whale myoglobin, not equine myoglobin, responded equally well to the minimal epitope synthetic peptides from the two species.[238] Also, residues outside the actual site must be distinguishing equine from sperm whale myoglobin. Experiments using F1-presenting cells that can clearly produce this epitope for presentation to other T cells proved that the problem was not a failure to produce the appropriate fragment from hen lysozyme[239] or equine myoglobin.[238] Thus, these cases provide evidence that a structure outside the minimal site can hinder presentation in association with a particular MHC molecule.

Such a hindering structure was elegantly identified in a study by Grewal et al.[244] comparing hen egg lysozyme peptides presented by strains C57BL/6 and C3H.SW that share H-2^b but differ in non-MHC genes. After immunization with whole lysozyme, a strong T-cell response was seen to peptide 46 to 61 in C3H.SW mice but not at all in C57BL/6 mice. Because the F1 hybrids of these two strains responded, the lack of response in one strain was not due to a hole in

the T-cell repertoire produced by self-tolerance. It was found that peptide 46 to 60 bound directly to the I-A^b class II MHC molecule, whereas peptide 46 to 61 did not, indicating that the C-terminal Arg at position 61 hindered binding. Evidently, a non–MHC-linked difference in antigen processing allowed this Arg to be cleaved off the 46 to 61 peptide in C3H.SW mice, in which the peptide was dominant, but not in C57Bl/6 mice, in which the peptide was cryptic.

Even a small peptide that does not need processing may nevertheless be processed, and that processing may affect its interaction with MHC molecules. Fox et al.[245] found that substitution of a tyrosine for isoleucine at position 95 of cytochrome c peptide 93 to 103 enhanced presentation with $E\beta^b$ but diminished presentation with $E\beta^k$ when live APCs were used but not when the APCs were fixed and could not process antigen. Therefore, the tyrosine residue was not directly interacting with the different MHC molecule but was affecting the way the peptide was processed, which in turn affected MHC interaction.

Besides the mechanisms suggested previously, Gammon et al.[239] and Sercarz et al.[246] have proposed the possibility of competition between different MHC-binding structures ("agretopes") within the same processed fragment. If a partially unfolded fragment first binds to MHC by one such site already exposed, further processing may stop, and other potential binding sites for MHC may never become accessible for binding. Such competition could also occur between different MHC molecules on the same presenting cell.[239] For instance, BALB/c mice, expressing both A^d and E^d, produce a response to hen lysozyme specific for 108 to 120, not for 13 to 35,[239] and this response is restricted to E^d. However, B10.GD mice that express only A^d respond well to 13 to 35 when immunized with lysozyme. The BALB/c mice clearly express an A^d molecule, so the failure to present this 13 to 35 epitope may be due to competition from E^d, which may preempt by binding the 108 to 120 site with higher affinity and preventing the 13 to 35 site from binding to A^d. Competition between different peptides binding to the same MHC molecule could also occur.

All these results, taken together, indicate that antigen processing not only facilitates interaction of the antigenic site with the MHC molecule and/or the TCR but also influences the specificity of these interactions and, in turn, the specificity of the elicited T-cell repertoire. The molecular mechanisms behind such effects are just now being elucidated, as described in the following sections.

Processing of Antigen for T Cells Restricted to Class II Major Histocompatibility Complex Molecules. It has long been known that T-cell responses such as delayed hypersensitivity in vivo or T-cell proliferation in vitro to exogenous proteins can be stimulated not only by the native protein but also by denatured protein[176] and fragments of native protein.[219] Indeed, this feature, along with the requirement for recognition in association with class II MHC molecules, distinguishes T- from B-cell responses. In a number of cases, the site recognized by cloned T cells has been located to a discrete synthetic peptide corresponding to a segment of the primary sequence of the protein. Examples include insulin,[187,219] cytochrome c,[188] lysozyme,[182,213] and myoglobin.[178,185,189] In each case, the stimulatory peptide must contain all the information required for antigen presentation and T-cell stimulation. The lack of conformational specificity does not indicate a lack of TCR specificity. Rather, it results from antigen processing into peptide fragments that destroys conformational differences prior to binding the TCR. One way to accomplish this is via antigen processing, which involves the partial degradation of a protein antigen into peptide fragments (Fig. 23.6).

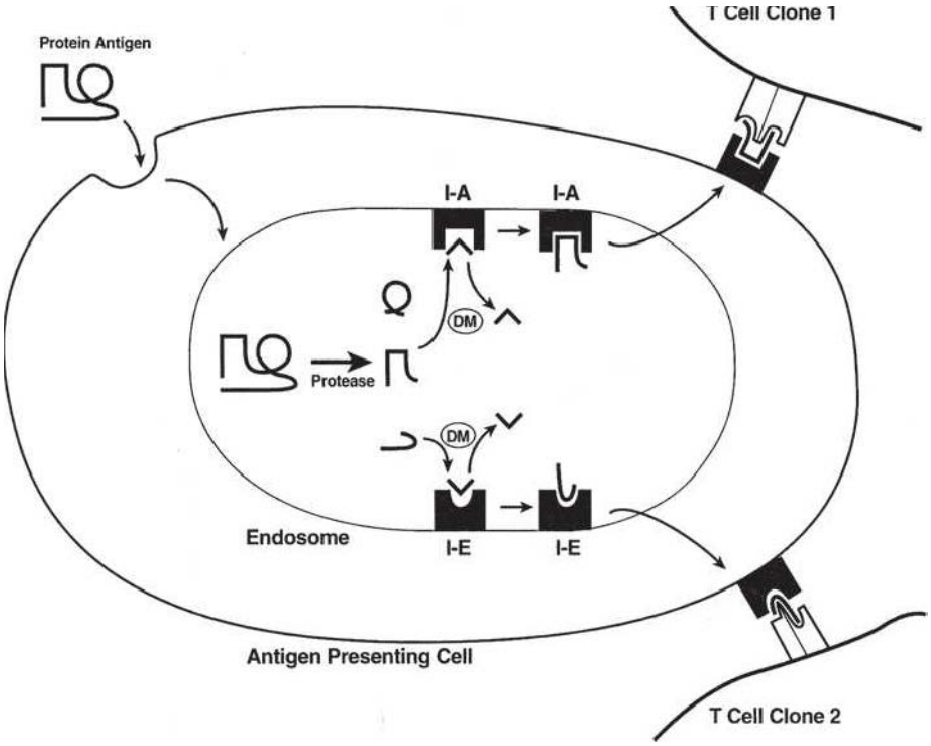


FIG. 23.6. Steps in Antigen Presentation by Class II Major Histocompatibility Complex (MHC) Molecules. Soluble antigen enters the presenting cell by phagocytosis, pinocytosis, or receptor-mediated endocytosis. It is partially degraded to peptide fragments by acid-dependent proteases in endosomes. Antigenic peptides associate with MHC class II molecules (I-A or I-E in the mouse) to form an antigenic complex that is transported to the cell surface. Before an MHC class II molecule can bind the peptide, it must release the class II–associated invariant chain peptide fragment of invariant chain from the binding groove, which is catalyzed by human leukocyte antigen (HLA)-DM. Binding of T-cell receptors to the peptide-MHC complex triggers T-cell proliferation, resulting in clonal expansion of antigen-specific T cells.

Evidence of processing came from the fact that a single protein antigen could stimulate T cells to different epitopes, each specific for a different MHC antigen. For example, when a series of myoglobin-specific T-cell clones were tested for both antigen specificity and MHC restriction, six clones were specific for a site centering on amino acid Glu 109, and all six recognized the antigen in association with I-A^d. Nine additional T-cell clones were specific for a second epitope centered on Lys 140 and were restricted to a different MHC antigen, I-E^d. Thus, the antigen behaved as if it was split up into distinct epitopes, each with its own ability to bind MHC.[215]

That T cells recognize processed antigen was demonstrated by the fact that inhibitors of processing can block antigen presentation. Early experiments by Ziegler and Unanue[247] showed that processing depends on intracellular degradative endosomes, as drugs such as chloroquine and ammonium chloride (NH4 Cl), which raise endosomal pH and inhibit acid-dependent proteases, could block the process. However, prior degradation of proteins into peptide fragments allows them to trigger T cells even in the presence of these inhibitors of processing.[248] For example, T-cell clone 14.5 recognizes the Lys 140 site of myoglobin equally well on the antigenic peptide (residues 132 to 153) as on the native protein (Fig. 23.7). The difference between these two forms of antigen is brought out by the presence of processing inhibitors. Leupeptin, for example, inhibits lysosomal proteases and blocks the T-cell responses to native myoglobin but not to peptide 132 to 153. Thus, native myoglobin cannot stimulate T cells without further processing, whereas the peptide requires little or no additional processing.[249]

Why is antigen processing necessary? For class II MHC molecules, experiments suggest that antigen processing may uncover functional sites that are buried in the native protein structure. For example, a form of intact myoglobin that has been partially unfolded through chemical modification can behave like a myoglobin peptide and can be presented by APC even in the presence of enough protease inhibitor or chloroquine to completely block the presentation of native myoglobin.[249] Denatured lysozyme could also be presented without processing to one T-cell clone.[184] This result suggests that the requirement for processing may simply be a steric requirement, that is, to uncover the two sites needed to form the trimolecular complex between antigen and MHC and between antigen and TCR. Thus, unfolding may be sufficient without proteolysis, and proteolysis may simply accomplish an unfolding analogous to Alexander's approach to the Gordian knot.

The importance of antigen unfolding for T-cell recognition and the ability of unfolding to bypass the need for antigen processing apply to a range of polypeptide sizes from small peptides to extremely large proteins. At one extreme, Lee et al.[250] found that even fibrinogen, of Mr 340,000, does not need to be processed if the epitope recognized is on the carboxy-terminal portion of the α chain, which is naturally unfolded in the native molecule. At the other extreme, even a small peptide of only 18 amino acid residues, apamin, requires processing unless the two disulfide bonds that hold it in the native conformation are cleaved artificially to allow

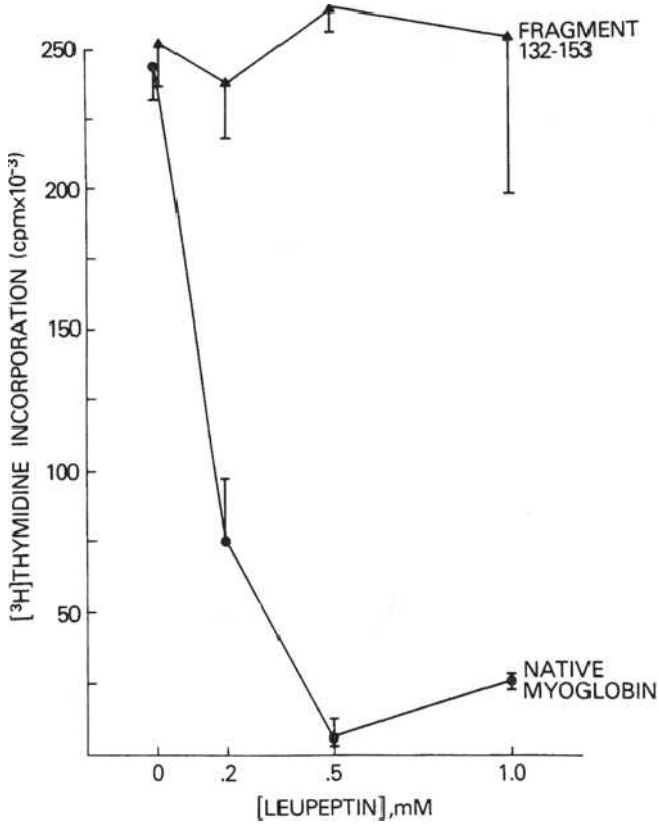


FIG. 23.7. Inhibition of Antigen Presentation by the Protease Inhibitor Leupeptin: Differential Effect on Presentation of the Same Epitope of Native Myoglobin or Peptide 132 to 153 to the Same Monoclonal T-Cell Population. Splenic cells from nonimmunized B10.D2 mice, as a source of antigen-presenting cells, were incubated with leupeptin at the concentration indicated for 15 minutes prior to and during exposure to 2 μM native myoglobin or 1 μM peptide fragment, washed, irradiated, and cultured at 400,000 cells per well with 10,000 T cells of clone 14.5; thymidine incorporation was measured after 4 days of culture.[249]

unfolding.[251] Therefore, large size does not mandate processing, and small size does not necessarily obviate the need for processing, at least for class II presentation. The common feature throughout the size range seems to be the need for unfolding. This evidence, taken together with the earlier data on unfolding of myoglobin and lysozyme, strongly supports the conclusion that unfolding, rather than size reduction, is the primary goal of antigen processing, and that either antigen presentation by MHC molecules or TCR recognition frequently requires exposure of residues not normally exposed on the surface of the native protein. This conclusion is supported by recent studies of peptides eluted from class II MHC molecules, and the crystal structures of class II MHC-peptide complexes, which show that longer peptides can bind with both ends extending beyond the two ends of the MHC groove[252–254] (see "Antigen Interaction with MHC Molecules" section).

Besides proteolysis, unfolding may require the reduction of disulfide bonds between or within protein antigens. A gamma interferon–inducible lysosomal thiol reductase (GILT) is expressed in APCs and localizes to the late endosomal and lysosomal compartments where MHC class II peptide loading

occurs.[255] Unlike thioredoxin, this enzyme works at the acid pH of endosomes and uses Cys but not glutathione as a reducing agent. APCs from GILT knockout mice were tested for the ability to present hen egg lysozyme to hen egg lysozyme–specific T-cell lines.[256] For two epitopes, the T-cell response was insensitive to the GILT defect, even though they involved a disulfide bond in the native protein. But for one epitope, located between disulfide bonds, the T-cell response was completely inhibited when the APCs lacked GILT reductase. In this case, reduction of disulfide bonds was an essential step for antigen presentation, presumably needed to generate free peptides for MHC class II binding.

Processing of Antigen for T Cells Restricted to Class I Major Histocompatibility Complex Molecules. Early studies on class I–restricted T cells, such as cytolytic T cells (CTLs) specific for virus-infected cells, assumed that they responded mainly to unprocessed viral glycoproteins expressed on the surface of infected cells. However, since the mid-1980s, it has been clear that CTLs, like other T cells, recognize processed antigens. For example, influenza NP was a major target antigen for influenza specific CTLs, even though NP remains in the nucleus of infected cells and none is detectable on the cell surface.[257] Further support came from the finding that target cells that take up synthetic NP peptide 366 to 379 were lysed by NP-specific CTLs.[228] This constitutes evidence that antigen presented in association with class I molecules requires processing into antigenic fragments. Also, the demonstration that synthetic peptides could sensitize targets for CTLs introduced a powerful tool for mapping and studying CTL epitopes.

Even for influenza hemagglutinin, which is expressed on the surface of infected cells, surface expression was not required for antigenicity, implying that it is the processed antigen that stimulates a T-cell response. Target cells expressing leader-negative hemagglutinin, which is not transported to the cell surface but remains in the cytosol, were lysed equally well as those with surface hemagglutinin.[229] Similar conclusions were drawn from anchor-negative mutants.[258] Indeed, studies of HIV-1 gp160 genes with or without a leader sequence suggest that removal of the leader sequence can increase the amount of protein that is retained in the cytosol and is available for processing and presentation through the class I MHC processing pathway.[259] The explanation may be that the signal peptide results in cotranslational translocation of the growing peptide chain into the endoplasmic reticulum (ER), whereas proteins without a signal peptide remain in the cytosol, where they are accessible to the processing machinery of the class I pathway (see subsequent discussion). This cytosolic protein processing machinery consists primarily of the 26S proteasomes.[260,261] The specificity of such proteasomes to cleave at certain positions in a protein sequence thus provides the first hurdle that a potential epitope must surmount to be presented by class I MHC molecules to be cut out correctly but not destroyed by the proteasome.

In the standard proteasome, 14 distinct subunits assemble to form a high-molecular weight complex of about 580 kD with three distinct protease activities located on different subunits. The proteasome is a barrel-shaped structure, with the protease activities arrayed on the inner surface, and unfolded proteins are believed to enter the barrel at one end, leaving as peptides at the other end. The different proteases cut preferentially after aromatic or branched chain amino acids (chymotryptic-like activity of the β5 subunit), basic amino acids (trypsin-like activity of the β2 subunit), or acidic residues (glutamate preferring of the β1 subunit).[262,263] Protease activity is increased against misfolded proteins, such as senescent proteins, which are tagged with ubiquitin and directed to the proteasome. In addition, viral proteins produced during infection and proteins synthesized with artificial amino acids are particularly susceptible to degradation by proteasomes. The products of protease digestion are peptides ranging from to 3 to 14 amino acids in length, including 9-mers, of just the right size for MHC binding. The chymotrypsin- and trypsin-like activities may be particularly important for antigenic peptides, as many peptides that naturally bind MHC end in hydrophobic or basic residues.[264]

The proteasome is the major processing machinery of the nonendosomal processing pathway. This is shown by the effect of proteasome inhibitors on MHC class I assembly and antigen presentation and by the effect of Large Multifunctional Peptidase (LMP-2) and LMP-7 mutations on antigen processing. A family of proteasome inhibitors have been described[262,263,265] that consist of short peptides, three to four amino acids in length, ending in an aldehyde, such as Ac-Leu Leu norLeu-al, carbobenzoxy-Leu Leu nor-Val-al,[263] or nonpeptides such as lactacystin.[266] Although the peptides appear to be directed primarily at the chymotrypsin-like protease activity, as false substrates, in fact, they inhibit all three types of protease activity.

By inhibiting antigen processing, these inhibitors induce a phenotype of reduced expression of MHC class I and inability to present antigen to class I–restricted CTL.[263] The MHC class I heavy chains remain in the ER, as shown by failure to become resistant to endoglycosidase H,[267] which occurs in the Golgi. They are also unable to form stable complexes with β2-microglobulin due to a lack of peptides. These effects are specific for the protease function because the inhibitors do not block presentation of synthetic peptides, which also rescue MHC class I expression, and because inhibition is reversible when inhibitor is removed. These results suggest that proteasomes are the primary supplier of antigenic peptides for class I, as other pathways are unable to compensate. However, it is also possible that the inhibitors could block other potential processing enzymes as well. An alternative processing pathway that bypasses the proteasome is provided by signal peptidase. As signal peptides are cleaved from proteins entering the ER, these hydrophobic peptides can bind MHC class I.[268] Particularly for MHC molecules such human leukocyte antigen (HLA)-A2, which prefer hydrophobic sequences, this peptidase can be an alternative source of antigenic peptides that are independent of proteasomes and transporter associated with antigen presentation (TAP)-1/2 transport (see section on "Transport")because they are formed inside the ER.

The proteins destined for proteasomal processing include some normally short-lived proteins with a half-life of about 10 minutes, which constitute about 25% of the proteins in the cell. The rest arise from long-lived proteins, with a half-life

of about 1 day, which may be synthesized incorrectly. These defective ribosomal products are ubiquitinated and marked for rapid degradation in proteasomes.[269,270] In a normal cell, these can arise from errors in ribonucleic acid transcription, protein translation, assembly, folding, or targeting. But in a virally infected cell, misfolded viral proteins provide a ready supply of antigenic peptides for antigen presentation and T-cell recognition almost as soon as the virus starts to produce new viral proteins. Similarly, incorporation of amino acid analogues, such as canavavanine in place of arginine, creates misfolded proteins that are rapidly processed and more efficiently presented via the proteasomal pathway.[271]

Interestingly, the MHC itself encodes, near the class II region, three proteins, known as LMP-2 and LMP-7 for "low-molecular-weight protein," and MECL-1, for "multicatalytic endopeptidase complex-like 1," which contribute to the proteasome structure. The LMP-2, MECL-1, and LMP-7 subunits are upregulated by interferon-γ, and substitute for the subunits β1, β2, and β5, respectively, forming what has been dubbed an "immunoproteasome," present in professional APCs. All complexes with LMPs contain proteasome proteins, but only 5% to 10% of proteasomes contain LMP-2 and LMP-7. The ones without LMPs are called constitutive proteasomes.

These MHC-encoded subunits of the immunoproteasome shift the preference of proteasomes for cleaving after certain sequences, resulting in the production of different peptide fragments.[272–274] Proteasomes lacking LMP-2 through mutation or gene knockout have the same affinity, but decreased cleavage rate, for sequences ending in hydrophobic or basic amino acids. The effect is specific for these proteolytic sites, as the activity against sequences containing acidic amino acids actually increased.[273] Despite the shift in specific peptides released, the overall level of MHC class I expression was reduced only slightly in LMP-7 knockouts[274] and not at all in the LMP-2 knockouts. However, presentation of specific epitopes of the male H-Y antigen or of influenza NP was reduced by three-fold to five-fold in these knockouts. Toes et al.[275] quantitatively compared the cleavage fragments produced by standard proteasomes and immunoproteasomes and defined the prevalence of different amino acids on each side of the cleavage site. Consistent with earlier studies, there is a strong preference for both to cleave after leucine and also to a lesser extent after other hydrophobic residues, both aliphatic and aromatic. However, the immunoproteasomes have a stronger tendency to cleave after such hydrophobic residues and a much reduced cleavage frequency after acidic residues, Asp and Glu, than standard or constitutive proteasomes. This shift in specificity is concordant with the observation that class I MHC molecules tend to bind peptides with C-terminal hydrophobic or basic residues, not acidic ones. Thus, the immunoproteasomes in professional APCs may be more effective at generating antigenic peptides that can be presented by MHC molecules.[272,275] Protein degradation by proteasomes is processive, so the peptides released after 5% digestion are the same as the fragments released after 90% digestion. This suggests that intact proteins may enter the barrel, but they are not released at the other end until processing is complete.

Immunoproteasomes were shown to be essential for production of a hepatitis B virus core antigenic epitope[276] and to increase production of epitopes from adenovirus[277] and lymphocytic choriomeningitis virus.[278] Similarly, certain epitopes of latent membrane protein 2 of Epstein-Barr virus depended on immunoproteasomes.[279] In that case, the requirement for immunoproteasomes depended on the context of the peptide within the native protein. Incomplete protein synthesis due to puromycin or expression of the epitope surrounded by protein fragments with fewer membrane spanning domains allowed epitope generation by constitutive proteasomes.

On the other hand, some epitopes are generated more effectively by the constitutive proteasome than the immunoproteasome.[275,280] When the repertoire of seven defined class I MHC-restricted epitopes was compared in an elegant quantitative study in LMP-2–deficient or wild-type C57BL/6 mice, it was found that responses to the two epitopes that are immunodominant in wild-type mice were greatly reduced in the LMP-2–deficient mice, which lack immunoproteasomes, and two normally subdominant epitopes became dominant.[281] However, from adoptive transfer experiments in both directions, it was found that the reduced response to one normally dominant epitope was due to decreased production without immunoproteasomes, but that to the other was due to an altered T-cell repertoire in the LMP-2–deficient mice, presumably due to alterations in the peptides presented in the thymus. Further, the increased response to one of the subdominant determinants was related to increased production of this peptide by the constitutive proteasomes compared to the immunoproteasomes. Thus, the immunoproteasome specificity plays a significant role in determining the repertoire of epitopes presented, and in selecting those that are immunodominant, as well as regulating the $CD8^+$ T-cell repertoire generated in the thymus.

Another protein associated with proteasomes is the proteasome activator PA28, which assembles into 11s structures.[282] Like LMP-2 and LMP-7,[272] PA28 is inducible by interferon-γ, and its induction causes a shift in proteasome function that may lead to the production of greater amounts of and different repertoires of antigenic peptides. For example, synthetic substrates were designed to test the ability of proteasomes to generate authentic MHC-binding peptides. These substrates contained the MHC-binding ligand flanked by the natural sequence as found in the original protein.

To generate the MHC-binding ligand, the proteasome would have to cleave the substrate twice.[283] By itself, the 20s proteasome was able to produce singly cleaved fragments, but with added PA28, doubly cut peptides were generated preferentially. Thus, PA28 favored the production of antigenic peptides, possibly by keeping the peptide in the proteasome until processing was complete. Alternatively, PA28 may coordinate the proteolytic activity of two adjacent sites to generate doubly cut peptides of just the right length (8- to 9-mers) to fit in the MHC groove. The distance between these nearby sites would determine the size of the peptides produced. The PA28 has been shown to increase generation of a dominant lymphocytic choriomeningitis virus epitope independently of the presence of the other interferon-γ–inducible components LMP-2, LMP-7, and MECL-1.[284]

The specificity of this proteasomal processing system determines the first step in winnowing the number of

protein segments that can become CTL epitopes, by selectively producing some peptide fragments in abundance and destroying others. Thus, it is probably not just coincidental that the C-terminal residues produced by proteasomal cleavage often serve as anchor residues for binding class I MHC molecules, or that the lengths of peptides produced are optimal for class I MHC binding.[272,285] Better understanding of the specificity of proteasomes will contribute to the new methods to predict dominant $CD8^+$ T-cell epitopes.[232]

An analysis of proteasomal target sites was based on the proteasomal degradation pattern of three proteins: beta-casein, enolase, and prions.[286] The resulting peptides were analyzed by mass spectrometry, and the cleavage sites identified, including four amino acids on the amino end of each cleavage site and two amino acids on the carboxy end. The results are summarized in Figure 23.8. The three proteolytic activities of the proteasome were represented by favorable amino acids: Arg (trypsin-like), Tyr and Phe (chymotrypsin-like), and peptidylglutamylpeptide (Asp and Glu) at position P1. At this site, Pro was unfavored, as were Asn, Lys, and Ser. Additional negative effects were observed for Asp, Pro, and Ile at position P2. On the carboxy side of the cleavage site, at position P'1, the positive effect of Tyr was noted as well as negative effects of Ile, Phe, and Val.

Additional downstream processing steps, after the proteasome, are known to be important for generation of antigenic peptides. One of these occurs in the cytoplasm, prior to TAP transport, and others occur after transport into the ER. The proteasome creates a first draft of the peptides, which are then selected and trimmed to produce the final pool of antigenic peptides of optimal size and sequence for MHC binding while protecting the nascent peptides from degradation before they can bind MHC.

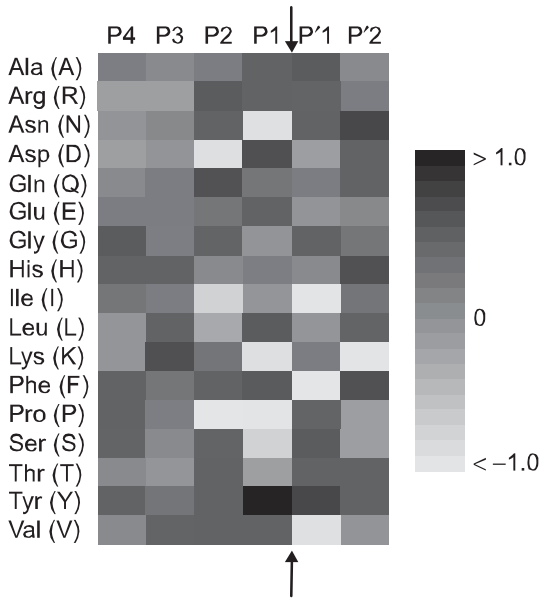


FIG. 23.8. The Effect of Specific Amino Acids on Proteasomal Cleavage between Positions P1 and P'1. Amino acids that favor cleavage are shown in *black*, whereas those that inhibit cleavage are shown in *white*. Reproduced from Donnes and Kohlbacher[286] with permission.

Recent studies have revealed that most peptides are released from the proteasome when they still need further processing to become antigenic peptides.[287,288] In the cytoplasm, the major proteolytic activity comes from an enzyme called tripeptidyl amino peptidase II (TPPII), which is located on a large particle. It has amino peptidase activity, which can remove 1 to 3 amino acids at a time and is useful for peptides of 15 amino acids or less. It also has endopeptidase activity that can cut in the middle of peptides larger than 15 amino acids, with the release of fragments of at least 9 amino acids. These are a significant source of 9-mers with new carboxyl ends, and this may be the only way to generate carboxyl ends other than the proteasome itself.

The importance of TPPII activity for antigen processing is shown by the fact that a specific inhibitor, butabindide, can prevent peptide loading of MHC, resulting in reduced surface expression. The most likely path for most protein antigens is to enter the proteasome and emerge as peptides of 15 amino acids or larger. These are then trimmed by TPPII, resulting in peptides ready for TAP transport. Longer peptides are trimmed internally by TPPII endoprotease, which may generate carboxyl ends needed for TAP binding. The resulting peptides are then transported by TAP into the ER, where they may be trimmed further to prepare them for MHC binding. An additional role of TPPII is shown by the generation of unique epitopes that are not produced by proteasomes. For example, an important T-cell epitope of the Nef protein of HIV requires TPPII processing. Proteasomal inhibitors have no effect on it, but butabindide prevents its processing and presentation to HLA-A3– or A11-restricted T cells.[289] This pathway seems particularly important for generating epitopes ending in lysine groups, which bind these two MHC types but are rarely generated by proteasomes alone. TPPII can act in parallel with proteasomes or in tandem with them to release this epitope from intact protein or its partially degraded fragments.

Transport into a Cellular Compartment Where Major Histocompatibility Complex Binding Can Occur

The second hurdle a potential epitope must surmount is to be transported into the cellular compartment for loading onto MHC molecules. These compartments are different for class I and II molecules, as noted previously.

Transport Pathways Leading to Major Histocompatibility Complex Class I Presentation. The second hurdle for peptide presentation by class I MHC molecules is to get from the cytosol, where the peptides are produced, to the ER, where the newly synthesized class I MHC molecules are assembled and loaded with peptide. The discovery of a specific active transporter suggested that specificity of transport could further restrict the repertoire of peptides available to load onto class I MHC molecules. Genetic analysis of mutant cell lines that failed to load endogenous peptides onto class I MHC molecules revealed homozygous deletions of part of the MHC class II region near the DR locus. Molecular cloning of DNA from this region revealed at least 12 new genes, of which 2, called TAP-1 and TAP-2 showed a typical sequence for ABC transporter proteins.[290–292] Their function is

to transport processed peptides from the cytosol to the ER. Once in this compartment, peptides are handed off by TAP to newly formed MHC class I molecules and stabilize a trimolecular complex with β2-microglobulin. This complex is then transported to the cell surface, where antigen presentation occurs. Without the peptide transporters, empty dimers of MHC class I with β2-microglobulin form, but these are unstable. Excess free peptide would rescue MHC class I by stabilizing the few short-lived empty complexes that reach the surface, as shown by Townsend et al.[293] and Schumacher et al.[294] Thus, MHC-linked genes coding for proteolysis, peptide transport, and presentation at the cell surface have been identified. In effect, the MHC now appears to encode a complex system of multiple elements devoted to the rapid display of foreign protein determinants on the surface of an infected cell. By continuously sampling the output of the protein synthesizing machinery, this system permits rapid identification and destruction of infected cells by CTL before infectious virus can be released.

In an infected cell, as soon as viral proteins are made, peptide fragments generated by the proteasome become available to the TAP-1 and TAP-2 transporter proteins (Fig. 23.9). These transport the peptide fragments into the ER for association with newly formed MHC class I molecules, which would carry them to the cell surface for antigen presentation, all within 30 minutes. Indeed, the finding of a physical association between TAP and the nascent class I heavy chain/β2-microglobulin complex suggests that the peptide may be directly handed off from TAP to the new MHC molecule without being free in solution.[295,296] If TAP transport is highly selective, then some cytosolic peptides may fail to enter the ER for presentation with class I, but if it is promiscuous, then some peptides may be transported that were better off not presented, such as those leading to autoimmunity.

The idea that other proteins may control accessibility of MHC class I–binding sites for peptides originally came from the observation that two rat strains with the same MHC type (RT1.A^a) were nevertheless not histocompatible, and CTL could recognize the difference between them.[297] The difference, called a cim effect, for class I modification, occurred because different peptides were binding the same MHC in the two strains.[298,299] The rat has two alleles for a peptide transporter supplying peptides to MHC. The one called TAP2A has peptide specificity matching that of RT1.A^a and delivers a broad set of peptides for MHC binding. The other transporter allele, called TAP-2B, supplies a different set of peptides that are discordant with RT1.A^a, so fewer types of peptides are bound. Although RT1.A^a would prefer to bind peptides with Arg at position 9, it has to settle for peptides with hydrophobic termini as provided by TAP-2B,[300] thereby accounting for the apparent histocompatibility difference. Thus, the specificity of TAP transport was shown to provide a selective step in narrowing the potential repertoire of CTL epitopes.

To measure TAP specificity in other species, a transportable peptide bearing an N-linked glycosylation site was added to cells permeabilized by treatment with streptolysin. If the peptide was transported by TAP, it would enter the ER and cis Golgi, where it would be glycosylated.[301–303] The extent of glycosylation served as a measure of TAP function. When competitor peptides were added as well, TAP-mediated transport of the reporter peptide decreased, indicating saturation of peptide-binding sites. In this way, a series of related peptides could be tested for the ability to compete for TAP binding and transport in order to identify the requirements for TAP binding and transport.

TAP binding and transport depended strongly on peptide length.[303,304] Mouse TAP was shown to have a strong preference for peptides of nine residues or longer.[304] For human TAP, peptides shorter than seven amino acids long were not transported, regardless of sequence.[303] Peptides 8 to 11 amino acids long were almost all transported, with some variation in binding affinities depending on sequence.

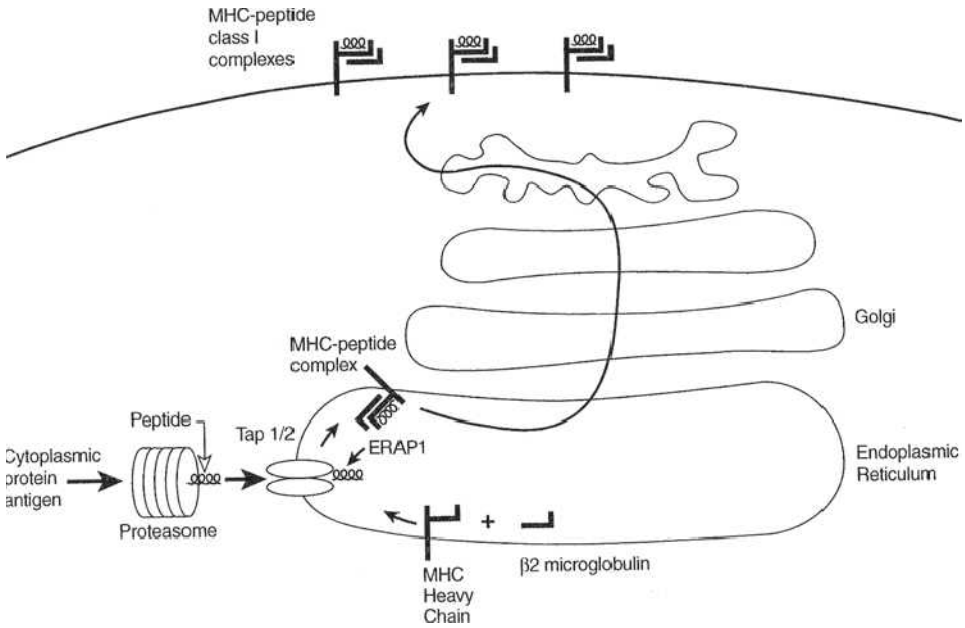


FIG. 23.9. Cytoplasmic Antigen-Processing Pathway leading to Major Histocompatibility Complex (MHC) Class I Presentation. Cytoplasmic antigen is degraded in the proteasome to fragments, which are transported into the endoplasmic reticulum by the transporter associated with antigen presentation (TAP) transporter. Peptide supplied by TAP forms a stable complex with MHC class I heavy chains and β2-microglobulin, and the complex is transported through the Golgi, where it achieves mature glycosylation, and out to the cell surface for presentation to class I–restricted T cells. Additional processing options by tripeptidyl amino peptidase II in the cytoplasm and endoplasmic reticulum aminopeptidase I in the endoplasmic reticulum, before and after TAP transport, allow greater flexibility in meeting the requirements of binding both TAP and MHC molecules.

Peptides 14 to 21 amino acids in length were transported selectively, whereas those longer than 24 amino acids were almost never transported intact. Thus, human TAP transport selected against peptides <7 or >24 amino acids in length, regardless of sequence. Unlike the rat, human and mouse TAP do not show allelic differences in peptide transport.

Although TAP can and must transport a wide variety of peptides, it may still have preferences for which peptides are transported most efficiently and which MHC types are provided with the peptides they need. For example, a self-peptide that naturally binds HLA-B27 was modified slightly to produce an N-linked glycosylation site, resulting in the sequence RRYQNSTEL.[303] Using the glycosylation of this peptide to measure transport, saturation of TAP by homologous peptides occurred with a 50% inhibitory concentration of <1 μM. Other peptides with unrelated sequences also inhibited, often with equally high affinity. Not only did natural HLA-binding peptides compete but also did peptide variants lacking the MHC-binding motif at positions 2 and 9 (see subsequent discussion). Clearly, peptides binding different MHC types were transported by the same TAP protein, and even peptides that bound mouse MHC were transported by human TAP. In another example, using rat TAP proteins, peptides with Pro at position 2, 6, or 9 were found to be poor competitors for transport of a reference peptide.[302]

In a different approach, using a baculovirus system overexpressing TAP proteins in microsomes, the affinity of TAP binding was determined for a wide variety of synthetic peptides, allowing mapping of the important residues.[305,306] Binding, rather than transport, appears to be the major step determining TAP peptide selectivity.[307] Indeed, artificial neural networks have been developed to predict peptide binding to human TAP.[308] Using this scheme, it was found that peptides eluted from three different human class I molecules had higher predicted affinities for TAP than a control set of peptides with equal binding to those class I MHC molecules, supporting the hypothesis that TAP specificity contributes to the selection of the subset of peptides able to bind a class I molecule that actually bind in vivo.[308] Unlike MHC class I, there were no anchor positions at which a specific amino acid was required. However, there were several positions where substituting the wrong amino acid caused a marked reduction in TAP binding. In a typical MHC class I binding 9-mer, the strongest substitution effects were observed at position 9 (P9), followed by substitutions at P2 and P3, followed by P1. At the carboxy-terminal P9, the preferred residues were Tyr and Phe (as well as Arg and Lys), whereas Glu was worst, causing a 3 log reduction in binding. Similarly, substituting Pro at P2 caused a 1.5 to 2 log reduction in binding, as compared to preferred residues Arg, Val, and Ile.

These binding studies were extended to 231 peptides, which were evaluated for binding to both mouse and human TAP proteins.[309] Both TAP proteins showed strong positive selection favoring certain amino acids (Tyr and Phe) at position P9 and strong negative selection against others (Glu, Asp, and Ser) at P9. However, mouse TAP showed greater negative effects from basic amino acids (Arg or Lys) at P9. Both TAPs were sensitive to Pro at P1, P2, and P3, but human TAP was also sensitive to negative effects of amino acids Asp, Glu, and Gly at these positions. In both cases, TAP binding was insensitive to amino acid substitutions at intermediate P4 through P8.

TAP preferences such as these would selectively transport some peptides more than others from cytoplasm to ER. Use of combinatorial peptide libraries independently confirmed that the critical residues influencing TAP transport were the first three N-terminal residues and the last C-terminal residue.[310]

Interestingly, these preferred residues are many of the same ones forming the MHC class I–binding motifs (P2 and P9). However, as the MHC-binding motifs differ from each other, it is not possible for TAP preferences to match them all. For example, the TAP preference for Arg at P2 and Phe, Tyr, Leu, Arg, or Lys at P9 overlaps with the binding motif of HLA-B27 and may favor the transport of peptide ligands for this MHC type. Remarkably, the variant B*2709, which does not prefer Tyr or Phe at P9, is not associated with autoimmune disease as in the more common form of HLA-B27. In contrast, HLA-B7 requires a Pro at P2, which greatly decreases TAP binding. Similarly, some peptides binding HLA-A2 have hydrophobic residues unfavorable for TAP binding, suggesting suboptimal compatibility between TAP and the most common HLA class I allele. Measurements with a series of naturally presented peptides from HLA-A2 and HLA-B27 indicated a mean 300-fold higher affinity of TAP for the HLA-B27 peptides than for those from HLA-A2, and some of the HLA-A2 peptides did not bind TAP at all.[308] How are these low-affinity peptides delivered to MHC? One suggestion is that peptide ligands for HLA-A2 and HLA-B7 may be transported as a larger precursor peptide containing the correct amino acids, which are then trimmed off to fit the MHC groove.

A series of studies support this mechanism, showing that longer peptide precursors are trimmed at the N-terminus by aminopeptidases in the ER to form HLA-binding peptides.[311] The ability to transport larger peptides, followed by trimming, could increase the range of permissible antigenic peptides, by facilitating transport of nonantigenic peptides, followed by trimming to the size and specificity needed for MHC binding. For example, following hepatitis B virus infection, certain peptide epitopes that are frequently recognized by CTL are nevertheless not bound or transported by TAP. By extending these peptides by one or two amino acids of the natural sequence at the amino end, their TAP binding was greatly enhanced, but at the expense of reduced MHC binding. When tested on permeabilized cells, the overall effect of the extended peptides was to increase MHC binding. Apparently, by improving TAP transport, these peptides were able to increase peptide delivery into the ER, where they were trimmed to produce peptides compatible with MHC binding.[312]

Similarly, it is known that peptides with a Pro at P2, needed to bind to certain MHC molecules but poorly transported, are produced from longer precursors that are transported by N-terminal trimming in the ER by aminopeptidases.[313] In fact, the inability of the aminopeptidase to cleave beyond a residue preceding a Pro naturally leads to trimming of peptides to produce ones with a Pro at P2. Alternatively, some of these peptides may derive from signal peptides and enter

the ER in a TAP-independent manner. As HLA-A2 tends to bind hydrophobic peptides, signal peptides, which are usually hydrophobic, may account for some HLA-A2-binding epitopes. The ER trimming enzyme has been identified as endoplasmic reticulum aminopeptidase I (ERAP I).[314–316] This enzyme is a 106 kD zinc metalloproteinase, and it is the major ER protease with broad specificity. It is inducible by interferon-γ and inhibited by the aminopeptidase inhibitor leucinethiol. Downregulation of ERAP I with small interfering ribonucleic acid in decreased expression of MHC class I, indicating that ERAP I contributes to the supply of peptides. ERAP I prefers peptides of 9 or 10 amino acids or longer and ignores peptides of 8 amino acids or fewer, which may allow it to generate antigenic peptides for MHC binding without degrading them beyond recognition.

The aminopeptidase provides a way to relax the requirement for proteasomes to generate ends that can simultaneously bind TAP and MHC. In contrast, the fact that a comparable carboxypeptidase has not been identified suggests that carboxyl ends generated by proteasomal processing must be suitable for TAP transport and compatible with MHC binding. This requirement is quite stringent, as the carboxyl-terminal residue is the most important for TAP binding, and it is frequently an anchor residue for MHC as well.

The significance of selective peptide transport may be to limit immunity to self-peptides. If the match between HLA-B27 and TAP specificity is too good, it may contribute to the increased incidence of autoimmune disease associated with HLA-B27.[305] An effect of human TAP specificity in loading of peptides in viral infection has confirmed the biologic significance of TAP specificity.[312] TAP-binding specificity also limited the repertoire of alloantigenic peptides presented by HLA-B27.[317] Tapasin, which is involved in the TAP-binding process, may also contribute to selective MHC loading contributing to immunodominance by favoring binding of peptides with slow dissociation rates from MHC molecules.[318]

By combining the selectivity of proteasomal processing, TAP transport and MHC binding, it has been possible to generate models that correlate with known antigenic peptides.[319,320] These can be used to analyze the sequence of any given protein and to predict epitopes that may be recognized by T cells restricted to MHC class I. These may be important for analyzing the T-cell response to viral or neoplastic antigens and for generating synthetic vaccines capable of eliciting a T-cell response to these antigens.

The importance of TAP proteins to antiviral immunity is shown by the fact that herpesviruses have targeted TAP-1 function as a way to interfere with antigen presentation to $CD8^+$ CTL. A herpes simplex virus immediate early viral protein called ICP47 binds to TAP and inhibits its function, causing reduced expression of new MHC class I molecules on the cell surface and inability to present viral or other antigens with MHC class I.[321–323] As a way to evade immune surveillance, this strategy could contribute to viral persistence in chronic infection and viral activation in recurrent disease as frequently occurs with herpes simplex virus-1 and herpes simplex virus-2. These findings also raise the possibility of making a live-attenuated ICP47-defective herpes simplex virus vaccine that would be more immunogenic than natural infection.

Transport Pathways Leading to Major Histocompatibility Complex Class II Presentation. Unlike the class I pathway, which delivers peptides to MHC, the MHC class II pathway transports MHC molecules to the endosomal compartment, where antigenic peptides are produced. During transport, the peptide-binding groove must be kept free of endogenous peptides. The cell uses one protein, called invariant chain (and its processed fragment CLIP), to block the binding site until needed, and another protein, HLA-DM, to facilitate release of CLIP peptides and their exchange for antigenic peptides as they become available.

MHC class II molecules assemble in the ER, where α and β chains form a complex with invariant chain.[324–326] Invariant chain binds MHC and blocks the peptide-binding groove, so endogenous peptides transported into the ER, for example by TAP, cannot bind.[325,327–332] The complex of α, β, and invariant chains, consisting of nine polypeptide chains in all,[333] is transported via the Golgi and directed by signals on invariant chain into endosome-/lysosome-like vesicles called MHC class II compartments. The compartments contain acid-activated proteases capable of digesting foreign proteins into antigenic peptides. In addition, they degrade invariant chain to a fragment called CLIP, corresponding to amino acids 80 to 103. As long as CLIP remains in the binding groove, antigenic peptides cannot bind, so the rate of CLIP release limits the capacity of MHC to take up antigenic peptides.

Peptide loading can be measured by its effect on MHC structure. When an MHC class II molecule binds a peptide, it changes conformation, and certain monoclonal antibodies are specific for the peptide-bound conformation.[334] Also, the α-β complex becomes more stable after peptide binding, which can be detected by running the MHC on an SDS gel without boiling. The peptide bound form runs on gels as a large α-β dimer while MHC without peptides (but still bound to CLIP) is unstable under these conditions and falls apart to give α and β chain monomers on SDS gels.[335]

Mutant cell lines have been generated with a deletion between HLA-DP and HLA-DQ genes on chromosome 6.[334,336–338] These cells express normal levels of MHC class II structural proteins, HLA-DQ and HLA-DR, but fail to present protein antigens.[338] Some of their class II MHC proteins appear on the cell surface but more are retained in the MHC class II compartments. Biochemically, they still contain CLIP peptides,[339] rather than peptide antigens, and they have not achieved the conformation[334] or SDS stability of peptide-binding MHC class II complexes.[340] The defect was discovered to be due to loss of either of the two chains of a class II molecule, HLA-DM, and the phenotype can be corrected by adding back the missing gene.[341] In the presence of normal HLA-DM, MHC releases CLIP and binds antigenic peptides for presentation to T cells.

The importance of HLA-DM function for T-cell help in vivo was studied in H2-DM knockout mice.[342] These mice have reduced numbers of T cells, their class II MHC molecules reach the cell surface bearing high levels of CLIP peptide, and their B cells are unable to present certain antigens, such as ovalbumin, to T cells. When H2-DM knockout

mice were immunized with 4-hydroxy-5-nitrophenyl acetyl ovalbumin, specific IgG antibodies were reduced 20-fold, as compared to wild type. Germinal center formation and class switching were greatly reduced, and affinity maturation was not observed. The phenotype was more pronounced for some MHC types, such as I-A^b, than for others, such as I-A^k. Due to tighter binding of CLIP peptides, these MHC types may be more dependent on H2-DM to maintain empty class II molecules in a peptide receptive state.

In vitro studies with purified MHC class II molecules and biotin-labeled peptides have shown that HLA-DM can accelerate loading of exogenous peptides into HLA-DR–binding sites.[343,344] For example, loading of myelin basic protein fragment 90 to 102 was accomplished in 9 minutes with HLA-DM versus 60 minutes without it (Table 23.5). Other peptides were also loaded at the same rate, suggesting that the rate limiting step was the same for each: removal of CLIP peptides to expose the peptide binding sites on HLA-DR. The kinetic effect was optimal between pH 4.5 and 5.8, which is typical of the endosomal/lysosomal compartment where HLA-DM operates. HLA-DM did not affect the affinity, as measured by half-maximal binding, but it had a marked effect on the kinetics of binding.

Conversely, when biotinylated peptides were allowed to saturate HLA-DR–binding sites overnight, and then free peptides were removed, the off rate could be measured over time.[343,344] As shown in Table 23.5 (adapted from Sloan et al.[343]), the off rate for different peptides could be compared in the absence or presence of HLA-DM. The half-life for CLIP peptides was reduced from 11 hours to 20 minutes by adding HLA-DM. This could explain the enhanced loading of all other peptides, as they must wait for CLIP to come off. In the case of antigenic peptides, myelin basic protein 90 to 112 was released 80-fold faster in the presence of DM than in its absence. However, another peptide, influenza hemagglutinin 307 to 319, was not affected at all. The differential effect on these antigenic peptides suggests that HLA-DM can serve a potential role in editing which peptides stay on MHC long enough to be presented and which are removed.[343] By releasing myelin basic protein preferentially and not the hemagglutinin peptide, HLA-DM would favor the stable MHC binding and presentation of hemagglutinin peptides over myelin basic protein peptides. The affinity of each peptide is determined by the fit between peptide and MHC groove, not by HLA-DM. However, DM can amplify the impact of the difference in affinity (ie, signal to noise ratio) by facilitating release of low-affinity peptides and allowing the high-affinity ones to remain. This editing function could have an important effect on which peptides get presented and elicit a T-cell response. HLA-DM could contribute to immunodominance of a peptide binding MHC with high affinity by releasing its lower affinity competitors. Alternatively, HLA-DM could contribute to self-tolerance by releasing self-peptides of low affinity before they could stimulate self-reactive T cells either at the time of positive selection (so they would fail to be positively selected) or in the periphery (so they would fail to be activated). When HLA-DM was engineered to be expressed on the cell surface, it also facilitated loading of exogenous peptides onto class II MHC molecules and affected the activation of T cells of different fine specificity for the same epitope.[345]

TABLE 23.5 Effect of Human Leukocyte Antigen-DM on Peptide on Rates and Off Rates for Binding to Human Leukocyte Antigen-DR1

Peptide	HLA-DM	Half-Time for Binding	Half-life for Release
CLIP (80–103)	–	60 min	11 hr
	+	9 min	0.3 hr
MBP (90–102)	–	62 min	86 hr
	+	9 min	1 hr
HA (307–319)	–	67 min	144 hr
	+	10 min	144 hr

CLIP, class II–associated invariant chain peptide; HA, hemagglutinin; HLA, human leukocyte antigen; MBP, myelin basic protein.
The on (association) and off (dissociation) rates of biotinylated peptide from purified soluble HLA-DR1 were measured by fluorescence assay, in the presence or absence of HLA-DM. The on rates of all three peptides are increased similarly in the presence of HLA-DM and probably reflect the rate-limiting dissociation of the bound CLIP fragment of the invariant chain. In contrast, once the peptides are bound, the off rates differ as a result of differences in affinity. Thus, HLA-DM catalyzes release of more weakly binding peptides and allows stable binding of higher affinity peptides. In effect, this is an editing function of HLA-DM.
Adapted from the data of Sloan et al.[298]

Major Histocompatibility Complex Binding and Assembly of a Stable Peptide-Major Histocompatibility Complex

Antigen Interaction with Major Histocompatibility Complex Molecules. Perhaps the most selective step a potential antigenic site must pass is to bind with sufficiently high affinity to an appropriate MHC molecule.

The response specificity of T cells to antigens on APCs or target cells provides a number of hints that antigen interacts directly with MHC molecules of the APCs to form an antigenic complex recognized by T cells. First, genes coding for immune responsiveness (Ir genes) to a specific antigen are tightly linked to genes for MHC-encoded cell surface molecules.[127,171] Second, it became apparent that T-cell recognition of antigen is the step at which MHC restriction occurs.[127,179,219,346] For example, in vitro T-cell responses to small protein and polypeptide antigens were found to parallel in vivo responses controlled by Ir genes, and T cells were exquisitely sensitive to differences in MHC antigens of the APCs in all their antigen recognition functions. This observation in vitro made it possible to separate the MHC of the T cell from that of the APC. The T-cell response to antigenic determinants on each chain of insulin depended on the MHC antigens of the APC. This was particularly apparent when T cells from an (A × B)F1 animal responded to antigen presented by APCs of either the A or B parental MHC type.[219,347] Neither parental APC stimulated an allogeneic response from (A × B)F1 T cells, and the response to antigen was now limited by the MHC of the APCs. This ability of the APCs to limit what could be presented to the T cells was termed "determinant selection."[219,347] It became obvious that even in a single (A × B)F1 animal, distinct sets of antigen-specific T cells exist that respond to each antigenic determinant only in association with MHC type A or B.[348]

Experiments on the fine specificity of antigen-specific T-cell clones suggested that the MHC of the APCs could influence the T-cell response in more subtle ways than just allowing or inhibiting it. Determinant selection implied that a given processed peptide should contain both a site for MHC interaction and a distinct functional site for TCR binding. Thus, a protein with multiple determinants could be processed into different peptides, each with a different MHC restriction, consistent with the independent Ir gene control of the response to each antigenic determinant on the same protein.[181] For example, T-cell clones specific for myoglobin responded to different antigenic determinants on different peptide fragments of myoglobin[215]: Those specific for one of the epitopes were always restricted to I-A, whereas those specific for the other were always restricted to I-E. The simplest interpretation was that each antigenic peptide contained an MHC association site for interacting with I-A or I-E. At the level of Ir genes, mouse strains lacking a functional I-E molecule could respond to one of the sites only, and those with neither I-A nor I-E molecules capable of binding to any myoglobin peptide would be low responders to myoglobin.

Evidence for a discrete MHC association site on peptide antigens came from studies with pigeon cytochrome c. The murine T-cell response to pigeon cytochrome c and its carboxy-terminal peptide (81 to 104) depends on the I-E molecules of the APCs.[179] However, distinct structural sites on the synthetic peptide antigen appear to constitute two functional sites: an epitope site for binding to the TCR and an "agretope" (for "antigen restriction tope") site for interacting with the MHC molecule of the APC.[179,196–198] Amino acid substitutions for Lys at position 99 on the peptide destroyed the ability to stimulate T-cell clones specific for the peptide, whereas the difference between Ala and a deletion at position 103 determined T-cell stimulation in association with some MHC antigens but not others, independent of the T-cell fine specificity. In addition, immunizing with the peptides substituted at position 99 elicited new T-cell clones that responded to the substituted peptide but not the original and showed the same pattern of genetic restriction, correlated with the residue at position 103, as the clones specific for the original peptide. These results implied that the substitutions at position 99 had not affected the MHC association site but independently altered the epitope site that interacts directly with the TCR. In contrast, position 103 was a likely subsite for MHC interaction, without altering the TCR-binding site.

It remained to be shown that MHC molecules without any other cell surface protein were sufficient for presentation of processed peptide antigens. This was demonstrated by Watts et al.,[349] who showed that glass slides coated with lipid containing purified I-A molecules could present an ovalbumin peptide to an ovalbumin-specific T-cell hybridoma. This result meant that no other special steps were required other than antigen processing and MHC association. Likewise, Walden et al.[350] specifically stimulated T-cell hybridomas with liposomes containing nothing but antigen and MHC molecules. Also, Norcross et al.[351] transformed mouse L cells with the genes for the I-A α and β chains and converted the fibroblasts (which do not express their own class II molecules) into I-A–expressing cells. These cells were able to present several antigens to I-A–restricted T-cell clones and hybridomas[351] and similar I-E transfectants presented to I-E–restricted T cells.[215] Thus, whatever processing enzymes are required are already present in fibroblasts, and the only additional requirement for antigen-presenting function is the expression of I-A or I-E antigens.

The planar membrane technique has been applied to determine the minimum number of MHC-antigen complexes per APC necessary to induce T-cell activation.[352] After pulsing the presenting cells with antigen, the cells were studied for antigen-presenting activity, and some of the cells were lysed to produce a purified fraction containing MHC charged with antigenic peptides. These MHC-peptide complexes were used to reconstitute planar membranes, and their potency was compared to a reference MHC preparation pulsed with a high peptide concentration in vitro and presumed to be fully loaded. In this way, the relative peptide occupancy of MHC-binding sites corresponding to any level of antigen presentation could be determined. For B cells and macrophages, the threshold of antigen loading necessary for triggering T cells was 0.2% of $I\text{-}E^d$ molecules occupied by peptide, corresponding to about 200 MHC-peptide complexes per presenting cell. For artificial presenting cells, such as L cells transfected with $I\text{-}E^d$, the threshold was 23 times greater or 4.6% of MHC occupied by peptide. Similarly, when MHC-peptide binding was measured directly, using radiolabeled peptide to determine the minimum level of MHC-peptide complexes required for T-cell triggering, B cells were capable of presenting antigen with as few as 200 to 300 MHC-peptide complexes per cell.[353] A similar number of peptide-MHC class I molecule complexes was reported to be required on a cell for recognition by $CD8^+$ cytotoxic T cells.[354] These results explain how newly generated peptide antigens can bind enough MHC molecules to stimulate a T-cell response, even in the presence of competing cellular antigens, as a low level of MHC occupancy is sufficient. In addition, this threshold of presentation may explain how multivalent protein antigens, such as viral particles, with 100 to 200 protein copies each, can be over 10^3-fold more immunogenic than the same weight of protein monomers.[355–357] Studies on the number of TCRs needed for triggering, based on titrating peptide and recombinant soluble class I MHC molecules on plastic, suggested that interaction of three to five TCRs with MHC-peptide complexes was sufficient, consistent with several T cells interacting with one APC.[358,359] Biochemical evidence for the direct association between processed peptide and MHC molecules was demonstrated by competition between peptides for antigen presentation[225,360–363] and then more directly by equilibrium dialysis,[364] molecular sieve chromatography,[365] or affinity labeling.[366] Equilibrium dialysis (see Chapter 7) was performed by incubating detergent-solubilized class II molecules with fluoresceinated or radioactive antigenic peptides, followed by dialysis against a large volume of buffer. Peptide can pass in or out of the dialysis bag, but the class II molecules are trapped inside. In the absence of binding by class II molecules, the labeled peptide would distribute itself equally between the inside and outside of the dialysis

TABLE 23.6 Correlation between Major Histocompatibility Complex Restriction and Binding to Major Histocompatibility Complex Molecules

Competitor Peptide		Ova + A^d	Myo + E^d	HEL + A^k	Cyto + E^k
Ova	323–339	++++	–	++	+
Myo	106–118	++++	–	++	+/–
Myo	132–153	–	++++	–	++
HEL	46–61	+	+	++++	+
Cytochrome c	88–104	++	+/–	++	++++

HEL, hen egg lysozyme.
Data from Früh et al.[322]

chamber. However, when the appropriate class II molecules were added to the chamber, extra peptide molecules were retained inside it due to formation of a complex with MHC class II. In this way, direct binding of antigen and MHC was shown, and an affinity constant was determined.[364,365]

A second approach was to form the antigen-MHC complex over 48 hours, followed by rapid passage over a Sephadex G50 sizing column (Sigma-Aldrich). The bound peptide came off the column early because it is the size of class II molecules (about 58 kD), while free peptide was usually included in the column and eluted later, as it is only approximately 2 kD.[365] Peptide bound to specific and saturable sites on MHC. Competitive binding showed that different peptide antigens with the same MHC restriction bind to the same site on the MHC class II molecule.[367,368] For example, Table 23.6 shows the results with peptide antigens that are known to be presented with I-A or I-E antigens of the D or K haplotype. We observe that Ova peptide 323 to 329, which is presented with I-A^d, also binds well to purified I-A^d, whereas nonradioactive peptide competes for the peptide-binding sites of the I-A^d molecule. Similarly, the other I-A^d–restricted peptide, myoglobin 106 to 118, competes with Ova 323 to 339 for the same site. However, myoglobin 132 to 153, which is not restricted to I-A^d, does not compete for it but does compete for its own restriction element, I-E^d. Similarly, pigeon cytochrome c competes best for its restriction element I-E^k rather than I-A^k or I-E^d, which do not present cytochrome. Conversely, recombinant Eβ genes have been used to map separate sites on a class II MHC molecule for binding to peptide antigen and to the TCR.[369]

Using these two biochemical methods, it has been possible to explain major losses of peptide antigenicity resulting from amino acid substitutions in terms of their adverse effect on epitope or agretope function. For example, the response of each of two ovalbumin-specific T-cell clones was mapped to peptide 325 to 335 by using a nested set of synthetic peptides. Five substitutions were made for each amino acid in the peptide, and the resulting 55 different peptides were each tested for the ability to stimulate the clone.[370] Presumably, those peptides that failed to stimulate could be defective at an epitope or an agretope functional site. In fact, only two amino acids (Val 327 and Ala 332) were essential for MHC interaction, and changes at either of these resulted in a loss of antigenicity for the clone. Seven other amino acids were critical for T-cell stimulation but did not affect MHC binding. Thus, these must be part of the functional epitope. Interestingly, certain substitutions for His 328, Ala 330, and Glu 333 had effects on MHC binding, whereas others had effects on T-cell stimulation without affecting MHC binding. These amino acids might participate in both agretope and epitope functional sites, or, alternatively, the substitutions may affect the conformation of the peptide as it binds, thus indirectly affecting T-cell recognition[371] (see following discussion). The fact that substitutions at 9 of 11 amino acids could be tolerated without affecting MHC binding is consistent with the determinant selection hypothesis in that multiple antigenic peptides are capable of interacting with the same antigen-binding site on the MHC molecule.

Similarly, by using a T-cell clone specific for peptide 52 to 61 of hen egg lysozyme, substitutions at each amino acid were analyzed for the ability to bind to I-A^k and stimulate the clone.[372] Four of eleven amino acid residues were silent, whereas substitutions at three positions resulted in reduced binding to I-A^k. Substitutions at the remaining three positions resulted in decreased T-cell stimulation without affecting MHC association. The epitope was very sensitive to substitutions, even conservative ones such as changing Leu 56 to Ile, norLeu, or Val. The results in both of these studies confirmed by competitive binding that the MHC molecule contains a single saturable site for peptide binding. This site must be capable of binding a broad range of antigenic peptides. In binding the MHC groove, antigenic peptides assume the extended conformation that exposes the epitope for recognition by the TCR.

Although a full set of general principles explaining the specificity of antigen presentation and T-cell recognition has not yet emerged, it is studies such as these, combined with complementary structural studies characterizing the antigen-interacting portions of MHC molecules[214,253,254,369,373–380] (see Chapters 21 and 22) and of TCRs[381–387] (see Chapter 11) that will ultimately lead to an understanding of these principles.

One observation that came out of this type of structure-function study was that a single peptide can bind to a class II MHC molecule in more than one way, and thus be seen by different T cells in different orientations or conformations.[371,388] The same conclusion can be reached from an entirely different type of study, in which mutations are introduced into the MHC molecule. Mutations in the floor of the peptide-binding groove, which cannot directly interact with the TCR, can differentially affect recognition of a peptide by one clone and not another.[389–391] In a particularly thoroughly studied case, it was clear that the quantitative level of peptide binding was not affected by the mutation, but rather the change in the floor of the groove imposed an altered conformation on the peptide that differentially affected recognition by different T cells.[391] If indeed the TCR cannot detect the mutation in the MHC molecule except indirectly by its effect on the peptide conformation, then

one is forced to conclude that different T cells have preferences for different conformations of the same peptide bound to (what appears to the T cell as) the same MHC molecule.

Another general observation to come from this type of study is that substitution of amino acids often affects presentation by MHC and recognition by T cells through introduction of dominant negative interactions or interfering groups, whereas only a few residues are actually essential for peptide binding.[392] Both for class II binding[392–395] and for class I MHC binding,[396] most residues can be replaced with Ala or sometimes Pro without losing MHC binding, as long as a few critical residues are retained. Of course, T-cell recognition may require retention of other residues. If many of the amino acid side chains are not necessary for binding to the MHC molecule, then one might expect side chains of noncritical amino acids to occasionally interfere with binding, either directly or through an effect on conformation. That is exactly what was observed for a helper epitope from the HIV-1 envelope protein when a heteroclitic peptide—that is, one that stimulated the T cells at much lower concentrations than did the wild-type peptide—was obtained by replacing a negatively charged Glu with Ala or with Gln, which has the same size but no charge.[392] An Asp, negatively charged but smaller, behaved like the Glu. Thus, this residue was not necessary for binding to the class II MHC molecule, but a negatively charged side chain interfered with binding to the MHC molecule as measured by competition studies. Information about residues that interfere with binding has allowed the refinement of sequence motifs for peptides binding to MHC molecules to permit more reliable prediction of binding[397] (see following discussion).

This observation also provides a novel approach to make more potent vaccines by "epitope enhancement," the process of modifying the internal sequence of epitopes to make them more potent, for example, by increasing affinity for an MHC molecule or TCR, or able to induce more broadly cross-reactive T cells specific for multiple strains of a virus.[398–401] Proof of principle that this approach can make more potent peptide vaccines has recently been obtained.[401] The modified "enhanced" helper T-cell epitope from the HIV-1 envelope protein described previously,[392] with Ala substituted for Glu, was shown to be immunogenic at 10- to 100-fold lower doses for in vivo immunization than the wild-type HIV-1 peptide to induce a T-cell proliferative response specific for the wild-type peptide. Further, when a peptide vaccine construct using this helper epitope coupled to a CTL epitope[402,403] was modified with the same Glu-to-Ala substitution, it was more potent at inducing $CD8^+$ CTL specific for the CTL epitope than was the original vaccine construct, even though the CTL epitope was unchanged (Fig. 23.10).[401] The increased potency of the vaccine construct was shown to be due to improved class II MHC–restricted help by genetic mapping using congenic strains of mice expressing the same class I MHC molecule to present the CTL epitope and the same background genes but differing in class II MHC molecules.[401] Thus, class II–restricted help makes an enormous difference in induction of class I–restricted CTL, and epitope enhancement can allow construction of more potent vaccines, providing greater protection against viral infection.[404] Further, the improved help was found to be qualitatively, not just quantitatively, different, skewed more toward Th1 cytokines.[404] The mechanism was found to involve greater induction of CD40 ligand on the helper T cells, resulting in greater interleukin 12 production by the antigen-presenting dendritic cells, which in turn polarized the helper cells toward Th1 phenotype.[404] The dendritic cells conditioned with the helper T cells and the higher affinity peptide and then purified were also more effective at activating $CD8^+$ CTL precursors in the absence of helper cells, supporting a mechanism of help mediated

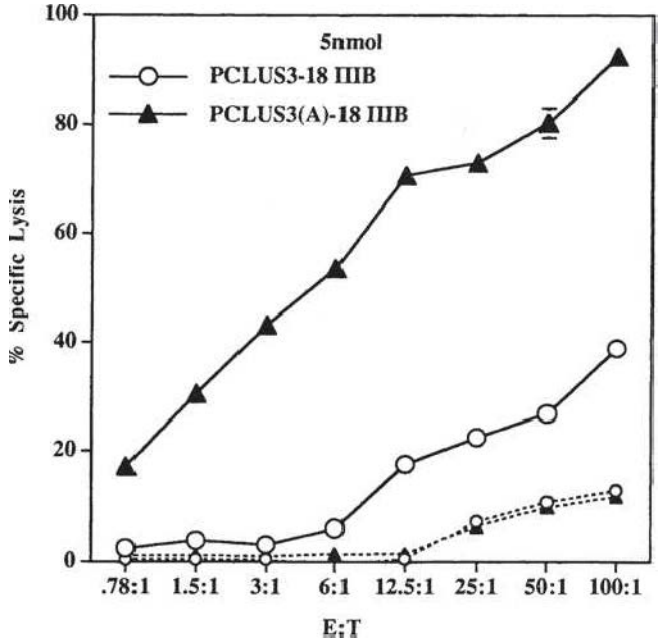


FIG. 23.10. Enhancement of Immunogenicity of a Peptide Vaccine for Induction of Class I Major Histocompatibility Complex (MHC)-Restricted Cytotoxic T-Lymphocytes by Modification of the Class II MHC-Binding Portion to Increase Cluster of Differentiation (CD)4+ T-Cell Help. Peptide vaccine PCLUS3-18 IIIB contains a class II MHC binding helper region, consisting of a cluster of overlapping determinants from the human immunodeficiency virsu-1 envelope protein gp160, and a class I MHC-binding cytolytic T cell (CTL) epitope, P18 IIIB. Modification of the helper epitope to remove an adverse negative charge by replacement of a Glu with an Ala residue was shown to increase binding to the class II MHC molecule.[392] Here, introduction of the same modification of the helper epitope, to produce PCLUS3(A)-18IIIB, is shown to greatly increase immunogenicity in vivo for induction of CTL to the class I-binding P18IIIB portion. Immunization of A.AL mice with 5 nmol of either vaccine construct subcutaneously in montanide ISA 51 adjuvant, and stimulation of resulting spleen cells with P18IIIB for 1 week in culture, resulted in 33-fold more lytic units for lysing targets coated with P18IIIB when mice were immunized with the modified second-generation vaccine than when they were immunized with the original construct with the natural sequence. Thus, class II–restricted $CD4^+$ T-cell help has a major impact on induction of class I–restricted CTL, and this process of "epitope enhancement" can be used to make vaccines more potent than the natural viral antigens. Targets: BALB/c 3T3 fibroblasts with P18IIIB (*solid lines*) or no peptide (*dashed lines*). (Modified from Ahlers et al.[401] with permission.)

through activation of dendritic cells.[405–407] This study showed also that such help was mediated primarily through upregulation of interleukin 12 production and CD80 and CD86 expression on the dendritic cell.[404] A similar or overlapping HIV envelope epitope recognized by human $CD4^+$ T cells when presented by HLA-DR13 has been mapped and has undergone epitope enhancement as well.[408] Understanding this mechanism of epitope enhancement may contribute to the design of improved vaccines.

Similar epitope enhancement has been carried out for class I MHC–binding viral or tumor peptides as well,[409–414] and in one case has been found to result in greater clinical efficacy of a melanoma vaccine used for human immunotherapy.[415] Cautions have also been raised about the use of enhanced epitopes (sometimes also called agonistic or heteroclitic epitopes), in that the amino acid sequence modifications that affect MHC binding can also alter the conformation of the MHC-bound peptide and affect the specificity of T cells elicited.[416–419] The altered or enhanced peptides that elicit the most T cells specific for the wild-type epitope are the most effective at clearing tumors.[420] Thus, it is important in using epitope-enhanced peptides that the peptides still activate a large number of T cells that recognize the wild-type sequence. These results emphasize the importance of affinity for MHC molecules vaccine efficacy[421] and suggest that rational design of vaccines with higher affinity epitopes may produce more effective second-generation vaccines.[422,423] To that end, the discovery of sequence motifs predicting MHC molecule binding and the development of bioinformatics strategies to predict peptide affinity have proven a great impetus to the field.[424]

In the case of class I MHC molecules, results defining sequence binding motifs generalize the conclusion that only a few critical "anchor" residues determine the specificity of binding to the MHC molecule (Table 23.7).[264,396,425–429] These motifs were defined by a detailed study of one peptide-MHC system[427] by sequencing the mixture of natural peptides eluted from a class I MHC molecule and finding that at

TABLE 23.7 Examples of Motifs for Peptides Binding to Class I and II Major Histocompatibility Complex Molecules

	Residue Number								
MHC Molecule	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**6**	**7**	**8**	**9**
Class I									
H-2K^d		Y							I, L, V
H-2D^b					N				M, I
H-2K^b					F, Y			L, M	
H-2L^d		P			(hydrophilic K, R)				M, L, F
H-2D^d		G	P		K, R				L
H-2K^k		E						I	
HLA-A2.1		L, M							V
HLA-A3		L	(F)						Y, K
HLA-B27	K, R G	R	I, Y, F, W						K, R
Class II									
DRB1*0101	Y, V, L, F, I, A			L, A		A, G			L, A
DRB1*0301	L, I F, M V			D		K, R E, Q			Y, L F
DRB1*0401 (DR4Dw4)	F, Y W			no R, K		N, S T, Q Aliphatic	Polar Charged		Polar Aliphatic K
DRB1*0402 (DR4Dw10)	V, I, L, M		no	D, E		N, Q, S, T K	R, K H, N Q, P		Polar Aliphatic H
DRB1*1501 (DR2b)	L, V, I			F, Y I			I, L V, M F		
DQA1*0501 DQB1*0301	F, Y, I, M L, V				V, L I, M Y		Y, F M, L, V, I		

HLA, human leukocyte antigen; MHC, major histocompatibility complex.
Data from Goodman and Sercarz,[234] Walden et al.,[350] Sette et al.,[370] Kurata and Berzofsky,[371] Allen et al.,[372] Brown et al.,[373] and Bjorkman et al.[374]

certain positions in the sequence, a single residue predominated within the pool of peptides,[425] and by separating and sequencing individual natural peptides eluted from a class I molecule and finding a conserved residue at certain positions.[426] The latter two studies also made the important observation that the natural peptides eluted from class I MHC molecules were all about the same length, eight or nine residues, and this was confirmed for a much larger collection of peptides eluted from HLA-A2 and analyzed by tandem mass spectrometry.[428] This finding was consistent with other studies demonstrating that a minimal nonapeptide was many orders of magnitude more potent than longer peptides in presentation by class I molecules to T cells.[430,431] This conservation of length was critical to the success of the approach of sequencing mixtures of peptides eluted from a class I molecule[425] because such a method requires that the conserved anchor residues all be at the same distance from the N-terminus. The fact that Falk et al.[425] could find a single amino acid at certain positions, such as a Tyr at position 2 in peptides eluted from K^d, implies not only that most or all of the peptides bound to K^d had a Tyr that could be aligned but also that the peptides were already aligned as bound to the MHC molecule, with each one having just one residue N-terminal to the Tyr. This result implies that the position of the N-terminal residue is fixed in the MHC molecule. It is this fact that has made the identification of motifs for binding to class I molecules much more straightforward than finding motifs for binding class II molecules.

This conclusion has not only been confirmed but also explained by x-ray crystallographic data on class I peptide–MHC complexes.[376–378] It appears that both the N-terminal α-amino group and the C-terminal carboxyl group are fixed in pockets at either end of the MHC groove, independent of what amino acids are occupying those positions, and that the rest of the peptide spans these fixed points in a more or less extended conformation. The minimum length that can span the distance between these pockets is 8 residues, but 9 or 10 residues can be accommodated with a slight bulge or β turn in the middle of the peptide, explaining the narrow restriction on length. Between these ends, one or two pockets in the groove can accommodate the side chain of an amino acid, usually either at P2 binding in the B pocket or at P5 binding in the C pocket, depending on the particular MHC molecule. Additionally, the side chain of the C-terminal residue serves as an anchor in the F pocket at the end of the groove. These residues that fit into pockets correspond exactly to the "anchor" residues, at P2 or P5, and P8, P9, or P10, defined by the sequence motifs, and appear to be the primary determinants of specificity for peptide binding because the rest of the interactions are largely with peptide backbone atoms, including the α-amino and carboxyl groups, and therefore do not contribute to sequence specificity. This finding can explain both the breadth of peptides that can bind to a single MHC molecule because most of the binding involves only backbone atoms common to all peptides and also the exquisite specificity of binding is determined by the anchor residues that account for the Ir gene control of responsiveness.

In contrast, when natural self-peptides were eluted from class II MHC molecules,[252,432] the lengths were much more variable, ranging from 13 to 18 residues, and several variants of the same peptide were found with different lengths of extra sequence at one end or the other ("ragged ends"). This finding suggested that both ends of the peptide-binding groove of class II MHC molecules are open, in contrast to class I, so that additional lengths of peptide can hang out either side, and trimming does not have to be precise. However, a corollary is that the peptides eluted from class II molecules would not be aligned in a motif starting from the exact amino terminus and that was indeed what was found. Although a moderately conserved motif was found in some of the peptides eluted from the murine class II molecule $I\text{-}A^d$, consistent with the motif defined based on known antigenic peptides binding to $I\text{-}A^d$,[433] the motif was neither so clearly defined nor so highly conserved as in the class I case and required aligning of sequences to identify a core motif of about nine amino acid residues.[432] Subsequently, a number of motifs for peptides binding to human class II MHC molecules have been defined.[264,434–439] Unlike peptides eluted from MHC class I grooves, these class II–binding peptides may locate the core-binding motif at various distances from the amino or carboxyl end of the peptide.

The crystal structure of a peptide bound to a human class II MHC molecule, DR1, revealed that indeed the ends of the groove are open, and the peptide can extend beyond the groove in either direction.[254,440] In addition, the more broadly defined class II motifs in Table 23.7 can be explained by less stringent requirements for amino acid side chains to interact with binding pockets in class II. In general, the MHC class II binding pockets are shallower than for class I, and a selected peptide derives less binding energy from each pocket. In fact, they form fewer H-bonds with the peptide side chains, and more H-bonds are directed at the peptide backbone, allowing a variety of different peptides to bind. Rather than requiring a specific amino acid at each position, the shallow binding pockets of MHC class II tend to exclude peptides based on unfavorable interactions, such as side chains too large to fit the binding pocket. Even one amino acid side chain that binds strongly to an MHC pocket is sufficient to anchor the peptide to MHC class II and set the frame for the interaction of the rest of the peptide with the MHC groove.

For example, binding of three peptides to the class II molecules I-A in mice or HLA-DQ in humans are shown in Figure 23.11. The first residue of the peptide motif is designated P1, the next is P2, and so on. The α-helical walls and β-sheet floor of the MHC class II groove (see Chapter 21) are peeled away to reveal the peptide backbone and side chains in relation to MHC-binding pockets. For the ovalbumin peptide $Ova_{323\text{-}329}$ binding to $I\text{-}A^d$, residues P1, P4, and P9 all point down into the binding pockets.[441] The best fit is between Val 327 and the P4 pocket, which creates mainly hydrophobic interactions with MHC and serves as the anchor residue. Residues P5 (His 328) and P8 (His 331) project upward for binding to the TCR. The shallow P4 pocket can tolerate only small hydrophobic side chains, such as Val, so it dictates which peptides can bind here. The other MHC

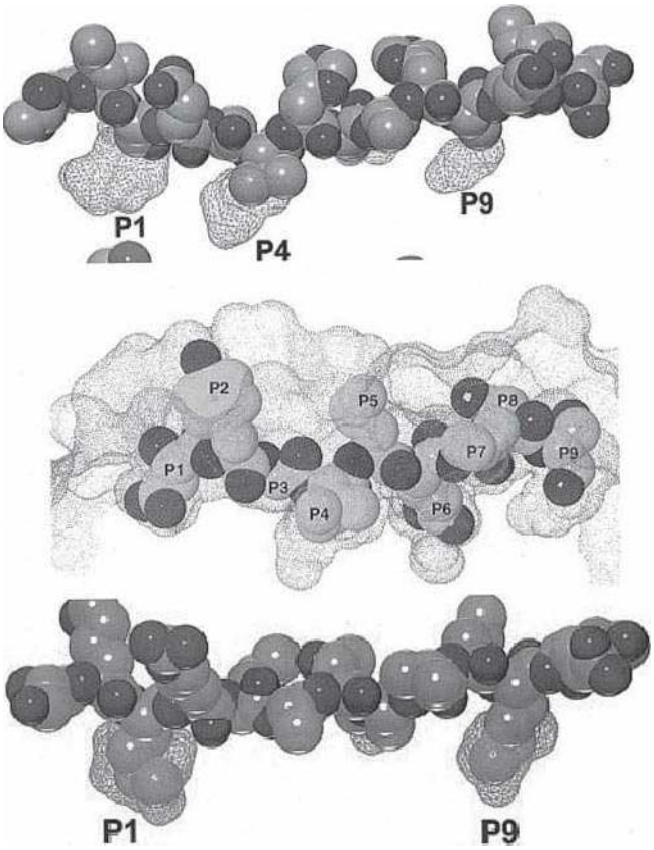


FIG. 23.11. Interaction of Peptides with the Binding Groove of Major Histocompatibility Complex Class II, as Determined by X-ray Crystallography. Anchor residue side chains fill binding pockets to a greater or lesser extent, supplemented by H-bonds to the peptide backbone. Examples include I-A^d with ovalbumin peptide 323 to 334 *(Top)*,[441] I-A^k with hen egg lysozyme 52 to 60 *(Middle)*,[442] and HLA-DR3 with invariant chain class II–associated invariant chain peptide *(Bottom)*.[443]

pockets, P1 and P9, accommodate many different residues, so they have little effect on which peptides can be presented by I-A^d.

For hen egg lysozyme $peptide_{50-62}$ binding to I-A^k, interactions with MHC are observed for P1, P4, P6, and P9.[442] The P1 interaction is very different from I-A^d, as the P1 pocket is a perfect fit for Asp and has an arginine at the end of the tunnel to neutralize charge. This structure explains why nearly all peptides presented by I-A^k must have Asp at this position. In contrast, the P4 and P9 pockets are partially filled and will tolerate a number of different side chains at these positions. The P6 pocket requires a Glu or Gln here, even though the MHC residues deep in the pocket are acidic. It is presumed that one of the Glu residues must be protonated to allow Glu binding at this position. This arrangement of the peptide leaves P2, P5, and P8 exposed to solvent in the crystal structure and to the TCR during antigen presentation.

For the CLIP peptide binding to HLA-DR3, deep pockets at P1 and P9 are more fully occupied by the peptide side chains.[443] The pH-dependent binding is important because CLIP must be stable at neutral pH and unstable at acid pH in the presence of HLA-DM in order to perform its function.

Based on affinity for MHC, these interactions explain the peptide-binding motifs for MHC class II that select which peptides can be presented to T cells. In addition, these interactions orient the peptide in the MHC groove and determine which residues are accessible for recognition by the TCR.

T-Cell Receptor Recognition

The last hurdle that a potential antigenic determinant must surmount is recognition by a TCR within the repertoire of the individual responding. This repertoire may be limited by the availability of combinations of V, D, and J genes (see Chapter 11) in the genome that can combine to form an appropriate receptor, given the lack of somatic hypermutation in TCRs in contrast to antibodies,[383,444] and then by self-tolerance, as mediated by thymic or peripheral negative selection, or by limits on the repertoire that is positively selected in the thymus on existing self-peptide–MHC complexes. The available repertoire may also be influenced by prior exposure to cross-reactive antigens. In general, however, it has been hard to find holes in the repertoire.[445] Indeed, studies examining large panels of peptides binding to particular class I molecules for correlations between peptide affinity for MHC and T-cell responses have failed to find high-affinity peptides for which no T-cell response can be raised, whereas not all lower affinity peptides elicit a response.[446,447] These results suggest that if the peptide can bind well enough to the MHC molecule, there is virtually always a T cell that can see the complex. However, the array of other MHC molecules present can influence the breadth of the T-cell repertoire.[448] Furthermore, when TCR repertoires of mice and humans were compared for peptides presented by HLA-A2.1, they seemed to be capable of seeing the same spectrum of peptides.[449] Eleven peptides from hepatitis C virus proteins, each of which had a motif for binding to HLA-A2.1, were tested for recognition by CTL from HLA-A2.1 transgenic mice and human HLA-A2.1 positive patients infected with hepatitis C virus. The same four peptides that were recognized by the T cells from the mice were the ones recognized by the human T cells, whereas the others were not recognized well by either murine or human T cells. The selection of which peptides were recognized seemed to be determined by binding to the HLA-A2.1 molecule rather than by the availability of T cells. Thus, despite the differences in TCR genes in mice and humans, the repertoires are plastic enough that if a peptide passes the other three hurdles of processing, transport, and binding to MHC molecules, T cells can be elicited to respond to it in either species.[449] Likewise, no hole in the helper T-cell repertoire could be found to explain low responders to the recombinant hepatitis B vaccine.[450]

On the other hand, evidence exists that MHC binding is not the whole story. Schaeffer et al.[451] examined 14 overlapping peptides covering the sequence of staphylococcal nuclease with different class II MHC molecules, constituting 54 different peptide-MHC combinations. Clearly, MHC binding plays a major role because 12 out of 13 immunogenic peptides were high or intermediate binders to MHC molecules, whereas only 1 of 37 poor binders were immunogenic. Of high-affinity binders, five out of five peptides

were immunogenic. However, for intermediate affinity MHC-binding peptides, only 7 out of 12 were immunogenic. Similar results were found for the class I MHC molecule HLA-B*0702, in which it was found that 7 of 7 high-affinity binders but only 9 out of 12 intermediate affinity binders, were immunogenic.[447] Thus, MHC binding alone is not sufficient to ensure immunogenicity. The T-cell repertoire was one factor suggested that might limit the spectrum of immunogenic peptides.

Indeed, examples for selection at the level of the TCR repertoire exist. A particularly elegant example described by Moudgil et al.[452] is one in which a peptide (46 to 61) of mouse lysozyme presented by I-A^k is recognized T cells from CBA/J and B10.A mice, expressing I-A^k and I-E^k, but not by T cells from B10.A(4R) mice expressing only I-A^k, even though the APC from B10.A(4R) mice can present the peptide to T cells from the other strains. T cells from the B10.A(4R) mice can respond to variant 46 to 61 peptides in which the C-terminal Arg is replaced by Ala, Leu, Phe, Asn, or Lys, indicating that the C-terminal Arg is hindering recognition, but not binding by I-A^k, and in this case, not processing as the B10.A(4R) APC can present the peptide. It appears that the hindrance interferes with recognition by TCRs available in B10.A(4R) mice, but not TCRs available in B10.A or CBA/J mice, or in (B10.A(4R) × CBA/J)F1 mice. Because the B10.A mice are congenic with the B10.A(4R) mice, the difference is not one of non–MHC-linked genes such as TCR structural genes or non-MHC self-antigens producing self-tolerance. Further, because the F1 mice respond, the difference is not due to a hole in the repertoire produced by a self-antigen of the B10.A(4R) mice. It was concluded that the CBA/J and B10.A mice contain an additional repertoire, positively selected on I-E^k or possibly an H-2D/L class I molecule, in which these strains differ, which can recognize the 46 to 61 peptide despite the hindering Arg at the C-terminus. An alternative related explanation is that strains that express I-E^k or D^k or D^d/L^d have an additional repertoire of TCRs positively selected on I-A^k–presenting self-peptides from processing of these other MHC molecules in the thymus. This example illustrates a case in point that subtle differences in TCRs, presumably caused in this case by positive selection, can lead to responsiveness or nonresponsiveness to a determinant that has already passed all of the three earlier hurdles, processing, transport, and MHC binding. Of course, there are some holes related to self-tolerance, primarily related to the loss of response to dominant determinants[453] and especially loss of high-avidity T cells.[454–457] Interestingly, not only is there no loss of response to cryptic determinants but also T cells recognizing cryptic determinants of mouse lysozyme can be positively selected on other nonmouse lysozyme self-ligands in a lysozyme knockout mouse.[453] The selective loss of high-avidity T cells to immunodominant determinants has suggested a strategy to apply epitope enhancement to modify subdominant lower affinity tumor antigen peptides to increase their affinity for MHC molecules, and thereby make them more immunogenic in order by to take advantage of a repertoire not already crippled by loss of the high-avidity clones.[458]

Another elegant example of T-cell repertoire limitations on immunodominance comes from a study of mice deficient in LMP-2, and so unable to make immunoproteasomes. Reduced response to one normally immunodominant influenza epitope was found by T-cell adoptive transfer studies to be due to an alteration in the T-cell repertoire, presumably because of altered processing of self-peptides in the thymus.[281]

A recent study found another mechanism by which the T-cell repertoire contributes to immunodominance. It was found that the relative immunodominance of a dominant determinant of the HIV envelope protein among different strains of H-2D mice all presenting the same peptide–H-$2D^d$ complex correlated with the avidity of the T cells responding in those strains.[459] The mechanism found was that high-avidity T cells proliferate faster than low-avidity ones when exposed to antigen and therefore dominate the response. This mechanism differs from those at earlier steps that progressively constrain the response, and thereby narrow the repertoire to dominant epitopes, whereas this mechanism selectively expands the dominant repertoire. This mechanism may also explain other recent findings such as the higher affinity of dominant compared to subdominant TCRs specific for human cytomegalovirus.[460] Because high-avidity T cells are better able to clear virus infection,[461,462] a recent study even suggests that the driving force for MHC polymorphism is to create a large enough repertoire to select for high-avidity T cells.[463]

Several critical parameters have been reported to be involved in more effective T-cell activation during TCR-peptide-MHC interaction. In some situations, TCR avidity for the peptide-MHC complex appears to play a more critical role than dissociation rate[464] and a threshold for maximal activity may even be defined,[465] whereas in other situations, the half-life of the TCR-peptide-MHC interaction seems most critical.[466–468] Moreover, in situ in two-dimensional surface interactions, a rapid on-rate may compensate for a faster off-rate (shorter half-life) and allow effective TCR-peptide-MHC engagement, suggesting the total cumulative duration time (including multiple repeat engagements) may be most critical.[469–472]

As more is understood about the molecular basis of TCR recognition, with crystallographic data now available,[386,387,473] it becomes possible to apply epitope enhancement in a rational way to the affinity of the peptide-MHC complex to the TCR, as was described for the peptide affinity for MHC molecules. Sequence modifications in the peptide that increase the affinity for the TCR were shown to be more effective at expanding in vivo the T cells specific for tumor antigens.[474–476] Most of these modifications were found empirically, but a systematic study of substitutions throughout a number of peptides revealed a pattern in which peptides with conservative substitutions at P3, P5, or P7 were most likely to yield increased TCR affinity, narrowing the candidate list of peptides that require empirical screening.[477] This strategy provides a second type of epitope enhancement, derived from basic immunologic principles, to produce more effective vaccines.

The advent of DNA vaccines has made it possible to link a series T-cell epitopes in tandem and express them in the form of a multiepitope vaccine. These chimeric proteins have the

potential advantages of focusing the immune response on biologically important epitopes, combining T helper epitopes with CTL epitopes, using epitopes with high affinity for MHC, and linking the epitopes in any desired order to optimize immunogenicity. Ideally, antigen processing throughout the construct would produce multiple epitopes that could be presented independently. In the case of HIV, where antigenic variation is so common, these vaccines could be designed to overcome variation by including epitopes that are conserved within each geographical region (clades).

For example, Létourneau et al.[478] expressed a string of HIV sequence fragments from the gag, pol, vif, and env genes that were highly conserved within their own clades. As they progressed from one fragment to the next, they alternated sequences from different HIV clades: Immunity to multiple epitopes would produce broad based immunity across clades. Fourteen fragments were linked in tandem. Each fragment contained multiple T-cell epitopes, for a total of 270 known epitopes recognized with human MHC. In addition, T cells from most patients infected with HIV responded to peptide pools from the vaccine, indicating that the epitopes were processed and presented to T cells. But when the multiepitope vaccine was given as a DNA vaccine followed by two viral vector boosts, it elicited relatively weak T-cell responses to two out of six peptide pools in HLA-A2 transgenic mice.

For these constructs to function as multiepitope vaccines, antigen processing between epitopes is required. In any given string, all of the epitopes are expressed equally, but different locations might be processed differently. In order to elicit T-cell immunity to multiple epitopes at the same time, there must be efficient processing and presenting of epitopes in all parts of the string. For example, Depla et al.[479] created a vaccine with 30 epitopes from hepatitis B virus that were restricted to five different MHC class I types. The immune response to the combined antigen was compared to individual peptides as an indication of the effect of antigen processing on presentation of internal epitopes. For two MHC types, the same 5 out of 12 epitopes were immunogenic, regardless of whether they were presented as a string of epitopes or as free peptides. However, for three other MHC types, whereas 14 out of 18 epitopes were immunogenic as peptides, only 3 out of 18 were immunogenic in the multiepitope vaccine. This difference suggests inefficient antigen processing at multiple sites, either because of failure to process the epitopes correctly or due to excessive degradation.

One way to control processing was suggested by Livingston et al.[480,481] These authors found that the first amino acid following each epitope is an important marker for antigen processing. They demonstrated that poor presentation of an internal epitope can be corrected by adding a spacer of as little as one amino acid between epitopes to improve the yield of processed peptides. The most favorable amino acid spacers were Lys, Arg, Asn, and Gln, followed by Cys, Gly, Ala, Thr, or Phe. The least active spacer residues were Asp, Val, Met, or Leu.[480,481] For example, an epitope from hepatitis B virus core antigen was poorly immunogenic when it was located next to a Phe residue, but its immunogenicity was enhanced by four logs when Lys was substituted for Phe at this position. These amino acid preferences may reflect the major protease activities of proteasomes: The most targeted amino acids could improve the yield of intact epitopes.

This strategy was used to construct a multiepitope vaccine from HIV antigens.[482] Twenty-one epitopes were identified, based on the T-cell response of infected humans, and these were linked together in a multiepitope DNA vaccine. Spacers of one to four amino acids were inserted between epitopes to optimize antigen processing. The DNA vaccine was used to immunize HLA transgenic mice, and the response to each epitope was compared to peptide vaccinated mice. For two HLA types, A2 and A3, the peptide and multiepitope vaccines were nearly equal, suggesting efficient processing. In addition, for HLA-A2, the potency of the T-cell response to different epitopes was largely independent of their position in the vaccine sequence, suggesting efficient antigen processing at various points throughout the chimeric protein. But for a third HLA type, B7, despite a normal peptide response, the multiepitope vaccine failed to elicit immunity to four out of seven epitopes tested, indicating that processing was limiting the response to these residues.

Design of an effective multiepitope vaccine depends on finding the optimal balance between antigen processing and epitope survival. Antigen processing between epitopes generates antigenic peptides, but processing within the epitope would destroy its antigenicity. Delamarre et al.[483] have compared pairs of proteins with the same sequence but different conformations, resulting in different susceptibilities to lysosomal processing. Ribonuclease (RNAse) A was relatively stable to lysosomal extracts of dendritic cells, whereas RNAse S was degraded quickly. Of these two forms of the same protein, RNAse A was a far more potent immunogen, as measured by T-cell proliferation or Delayed Type Hypersensitivity (DTH). Similarly, horseradish peroxidase is stable to lysosomal proteases in the native form, but is quickly degraded in the apo form. Native horse radish peroxidase (HRP) was a much more potent immunogen than the unstable apo form. These results indicate the harmful effect of excessive processing on T-cell stimulation and immunogenicity.

Multiepitope immunogens have been designed to elicit CTLs by stimulating T helper cells and CTLs simultaneously. These immunogens have combined T helper and CTL epitopes in a variety of ways. Some vaccines contain at least one T helper epitope and one CTL epitope on each polypeptide chain.[484] Others have expressed them separately: A polypeptide consisting of multiple T helper epitopes was coadministered with a DNA plasmid coding for multiple CTL epitopes.[485] A third way would be to express alternating T helper and CTL epitopes in tandem in the same multiepitope vaccine, either as DNA or polypeptide. The T-cell response to paired T helper epitopes was generally weak,[484] whereas the response to a string of multiple T helper epitopes was reportedly stronger, although it did not confer any improvement on the immune response to CTL epitopes expressed separately.[485]

As with T-cell help for B cells, a multiepitope vaccine for CTLs should combine T helper and CTL epitopes in the same construct.[402] It would deliver both epitopes into

the same APC, to facilitate helper T cell effects on CTL induction. But the epitopes should target different cellular compartments, leading to the main processing pathways: T helper epitopes should travel to endosomes for processing and presentation with MHC class II. CTL epitopes should traffic to the cytoplasm for proteasomal processing and presentation with MHC class I.

Defining the Role of Individual Amino Acids and Effects of Altered Peptide Ligands

Once an antigenic peptide is identified, the next step is to map key amino acid residues by making a series of variant peptides, each of which differs from the native sequence by a single amino acid substitution, as previously described in the section on MHC binding. One approach, called an alanine scan, substitutes Ala for the natural amino acid at each position in the peptide or uses Ser or Gly to replace naturally occurring Ala. Ala is used because the side chain is only a methyl group, so it replaces whatever functional side chain is present with the smallest one other than that of Gly, which is not used because of its effects on conformation. Thus, one can ask whether loss of the naturally occurring side chain affects function, without the introduction of a new side chain that might itself affect function. Generally, each peptide will have several amino acids where Ala substitution destroys antigenicity. Some of these correspond to contact residues for the TCR, whereas others are contact residues for MHC. In many cases, the MHC-binding residues can be determined by testing the substituted peptides in a competitive MHC-binding assay (discussed previously). The amino acid substitutions that knockout T-cell proliferation but not MHC binding are presumed to be in the epitope recognized by the TCR directly, and these can be studied with additional substitutions. For example, this technique was used to compare the residues interacting with the MHC molecule or TCR when the same HIV-1 V3 loop peptide P18 (residues 308 to 322) was presented by three different MHC molecules, a human class I molecule, a mouse class I molecule, and a mouse class II molecule (Fig. 23.12).[486,487] Interestingly, there was a striking concordance of function of several of the residues as presented by all three MHC molecules (see Fig. 23.12). For example, Pro and Phe interacted with the MHC in all three cases, and the same Val interacted with the TCR in all three cases. Also, the same Arg in the middle of the peptide interacted with both the mouse class I and II molecules, and the C-terminal Ile was an anchor residue for both human and murine class I molecules.[486,487]

In the case of autoimmune T cells, these techniques have been used to study the number and variety of epitopes recognized by self-reactive T cells. In the nonobese diabetic mouse, the β chain of insulin is a major target of T cells recovered from pancreatic islets.[488] Alanine scanning of β chain peptide 9 to 23 revealed two patterns of T-cell recognition for the same peptide. Some T cells recognize peptide 9 to 16, whereas others respond to peptide 13 to 23. Each epitope appears to have distinct sites for MHC and TCR binding, even though they come from the same peptide chain. Similarly, in systemic lupus erythematosus, human T cells specific for the Sm antigen are narrowly restricted to a few epitopes that are found on a small group of proteins.[489] On the Sm-B antigen, three epitopes were recognized. On Sm-D antigen, there were two. In each case, alanine scans showed that the same epitopes were recognized by distinct T-cell clones. These results are consistent with the hypotheses that the autoimmune response to insulin or to Sm antigen may be induced by abnormal exposure of a very few cryptic epitopes, or they may depend on selective loss of tolerance for a limited number of epitopes shared by a small subset of self-proteins.

TCRs may distinguish different chemical classes of amino acid side chains. An example of structural differences between amino acid side chains recognized by the TCR comes from an analysis of non–cross-reactive CTL that distinguishes homologous peptides from the V3 loop of different strains of HIV-1 envelope protein. The residue at P8 in the minimal determinant was identified as a key

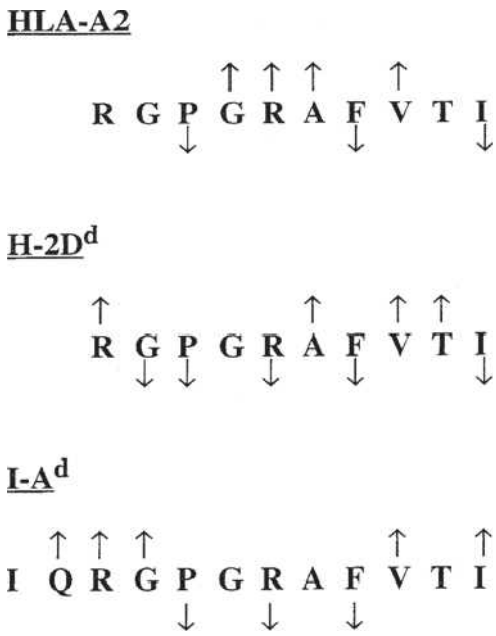


FIG. 23.12. Comparison of the Major Histocompatibility Complex (MHC)-Interacting ("Agretopic") and T-Cell Receptor (TCR)-Interacting ("Epitopic") Residues of the Same Human Immunodeficiency Virus (HIV)-1 Envelope V3 Loop Peptide as It Is Presented by Human Class I, Murine Class I, and Murine Class II MHC Molecules to Cluster of Differentiation (CD)8$^+$ Cytolytic T Cell and CD4$^+$ Helper T Cells. The sequence of the optimal binding portion of peptide P18 IIIB from the HIV-1 envelope protein V3 loop for each MHC molecule, in single letter amino acid code, is shown. *Arrows pointing up* indicate residues determined to interact with the TCR, and *arrows pointing down* indicate residues determined to interact with the MHC molecule. Mapping of residue function for binding to the human class I MHC molecule HLA-A2.1 was described in Alexander-Miller et al.,[487] and binding to the murine class I molecule H-2D^d and the murine class II molecule I-A^d was described in Takeshita et al.[486] Note the common use of the Pro and Phe for binding all three MHC molecules and the use of the key Val residue for binding all the TCRs. Also, the murine MHC molecules both use the central Arg residue as a contact residue, whereas both class I molecules use the C-terminal Ile residue as an anchor residue. Thus, there is a surprising degree of concordance.

"epitopic" TCR contact residue in both strain IIIB, which has a Val at this position, and strain MN, which has a Tyr at this position.[486,490,491] CTLs specific for strain IIIB do not recognize the MN sequence but will recognize peptides identical to MN except for the substitution of any aliphatic amino acid at that position, such as Val, Leu, or Ile.[400] In contrast, CTL specific for the MN strain do not recognize the IIIB sequence but will recognize the IIIB peptide if the Val at this position is replaced by a Tyr.[490] Moreover, they will see any MN variant in which the Tyr is replaced by another aromatic amino acid, such as Phe, Trp, or His.[400] Thus, the two non–cross-reactive TCRs see similar peptides but discriminate strongly between peptides with amino acids with aliphatic versus aromatic side chains. On the other hand, they do not distinguish strongly among different aliphatic residues or among different aromatic residues. Interestingly, however, in each category, the least active is the bulkiest member of the category, Ile and Trp, respectively, suggesting that these residues must fit into a pocket of limited size in the TCR.

The interaction of peptide ligand with TCR can be studied by introducing single substitutions of conservative amino acids at these contact residues, such as Glu for Asp, Ser for Thr, or Gln for Asn. The TCR readily distinguishes among peptides with these minor differences at a single residue, and the results have been revealing. Depending on affinity for the TCR, closely related (altered) peptides can elicit very different responses in T cells. Thus, although a substituted peptide may be very weak or nonstimulatory by itself, it may still act as a partial agonist or even a strong antagonist of an ongoing T-cell response. Antagonistic peptides can be demonstrated by pulsing APCs with native peptide antigen first so that one is not measuring competition for binding to MHC molecules, followed by pulsing with a 10-fold or greater excess of the antagonist before adding T cells. In the case of influenza hemagglutinin peptide 307 to 319 presented with HLA-DR1, peptide analogues such as Gln substituted for Asn 313 inhibited the proliferation of a human T-cell clone, even though they did not stimulate the clone. Anergy was not induced, and the antagonist peptide had to be present throughout the culture to inhibit the response.[492,493] Thus, lack of antagonist activity is another feature of the interaction between peptide (in complex with MHC molecule) and TCR that is required for the peptide to be a stimulatory antigenic determinant.

Partial agonists were first demonstrated using T-cell clones specific for an allelic form of mouse hemoglobin. These T cells were from CE/J mice, which express the Hb^s allele of mouse hemoglobin, after immunization with the Hb^d allele. The minimum antigenic peptide corresponds to amino acids 67 to 76 of the Hb^d sequence and differs from Hb^s at P72, P73, and P76.[494] Peptides substituted at each residue from amino acid 69 to 76 were tested for T-cell proliferation and cytokine release. Some substitutions, such as Gln for Asn at P72, blocked T-cell stimulation completely in both assays. Other substituted peptides, such as Asp for Glu at P73, lost T-cell proliferation but still stimulated interleukin 4 release, and these are considered partial agonists (Fig. 23.13).[495] Lack of stimulation was not due to failure to bind MHC, as both substituted peptides gave reasonable

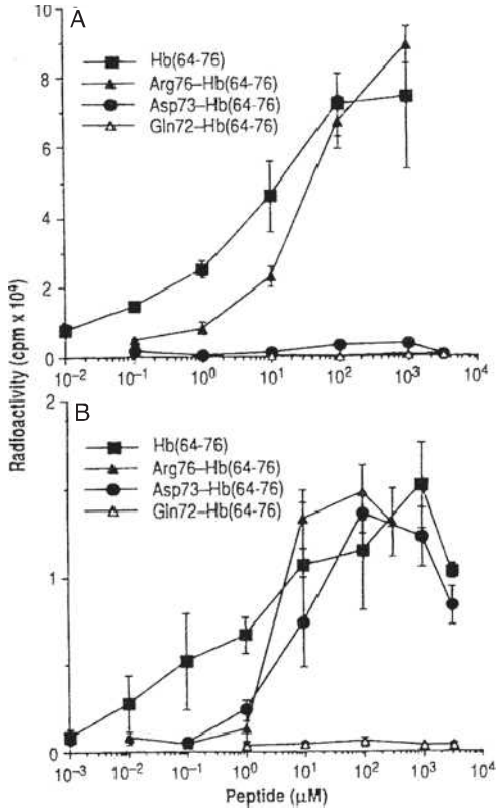


FIG. 23.13. Differential Effect of Altered Peptide Ligands on the Response to Peptide 64 to 76 from Hemoglobin. A: Proliferative response of a T-cell line incubated with antigen-presenting cells and the natural Hb (64-76) peptide or with peptides substituted at positions 72, 73, or 76. B: Interleukin 4 release by the T-cell line under the same conditions. The peptide substituted with Asp for Glu at position 73 is unable to induce T-cell proliferation, but it can still induce production of interleukin 4, so it is a partial agonist. In contrast, substitution of Gln for Asn at position 72 knocks out both responses equally. Modified from Evavold and Allen,[495] with permission.

binding in a competitive-binding assay.[496] Similar alteration of cytokine profile by altering the peptide ligand can be seen in other systems.[493,497,498]

For one of the Hb 64 to 76 specific T-cell clones, PL.17, substitutions at amino acids 70, 72, 73, or 76 reduced antigenic potency by 1000-fold or more, even though conservative amino acids were substituted. Although substitution of Ser for Ala 70 prevented T-cell stimulation in both assays, there was clearly some response to this peptide, as it induced expression of the interleukin 2 receptor.[499] In addition, once T cells were exposed to the Ser 70 peptide, they became unresponsive to subsequent exposure to the natural Hb^d peptide. This phenomenon closely resembled T-cell anergy and persisted for a week or more. The Ser 70 substitution alters a contact residue of the peptide for the TCR of clone PL.17 and affects its affinity. Other T-cell clones, however, can respond to this peptide presented on the same MHC molecule ($I\text{-}E^k$). Other Hb^d peptides substituted at this position, such as Met and Gly 70, also induced anergy but not proliferation, whereas nonconservative substitutions such as Phe, Asn, Asp, and His 70 induced neither.[500]

Another well-studied example is influenza hemagglutinin peptide 306 to 318 as presented on human HLA-DR1. Based on the known crystal structure of the peptide-MHC complex,[253] amino acid substitutions could be targeted to contact residues for the TCR at P307, P309, P310, P312, P315, and P318.[501] At each position, nonconservative substitutions often rendered the peptide inactive, whereas conservative substitutions at several sites either gave full antigenicity or gave progressively lower stimulatory activity, down to 1000-fold less than native peptide while retaining the ability to induce anergy. For example, substituting His or Gly for Lys 307 gave 1000-fold reduced stimulation of T-cell proliferation but full ability to induce tolerance. Similarly, substituting His for Lys 315 gave complete loss of stimulation but nearly full anergy inducing activity. As before, induction of the interleukin 2 receptor (CD25) was a sign of T-cell activation by these altered peptide ligands, even when they did not induce proliferation. Unlike these peptides, the antagonists do not induce interleukin receptors or secretion, and they do not cause long-lasting tolerance. Overall, a number of altered peptide ligands have now been identified that, in appropriate complexes with MHC molecules, induce anergy or act as antagonists of the TCR and block activation by agonist ligands by delivering an abortive signal.[493]

Several methods have been found to anergize T cells to a specific antigen for up to a week, and all have the common theme of delivering a partial signal via the TCR, resulting in tolerance rather than stimulation. The first method was to expose the T cells to peptide plus APCs treated with the carbodiimide cross-linker ECDI.[502] This treatment may prevent accessory molecules on the presenting cell from interacting with the TCR complex or costimulatory signals from contributing to T-cell activation. The second method was to present peptide on presenting cells with mutated I-E molecules.[503,504] The third method was to use altered peptide ligands that act as TCR antagonists as described previously.[493,500,501] The final method was to block CD4 function with a monoclonal antibody, which would delay the recruitment of CD4 to the engaged TCR.[505] Because generation of a complete stimulatory signal requires the interaction of TCR and accessory molecules, modifications that affect either component can block signaling. An altered peptide ligand, with decreased affinity for the TCR, may form an unstable complex, which cannot stay together long enough to recruit accessory molecules and generate a complete signal.[505,506] Altered peptide ligands with low affinity for the TCR can also act as partial agonists that can compete with optimal agonists and reduce T-cell stimulation based on a similar mechanism (short dwell time of peptide-MHC complex on the TCR).[199]

Abnormal TCR signaling can be demonstrated by following the activity of protein kinases. Normal signaling produces phosphorylation of TCR subunits, such as ζ chain, as well as phosphorylation and activation of receptor-associated tyrosine kinases, such as ZAP-70. These kinases generate the downstream signal needed for T-cell activation. However, in each case studied, partial antigen signaling resulted in ζ chain phosphorylation without phosphorylation or activation of ZAP-70,[500,504,505] so downstream activation did not occur. This abnormal pattern occurred regardless of the method of anergy induction.

Partial signaling may be important for T-cell survival during negative selection in the thymus or in maintaining peripheral tolerance. By responding to self-antigens as if they were altered ligands presented in the thymus, T cells could use anergy induction as a successful strategy for avoiding clonal deletion. Similarly, peripheral tolerance may be an important mechanism for preventing autoimmune disease. Immunotherapy with altered peptide ligands could be envisioned as a way to block an ongoing response or induce tolerance to a specific antigen, such as the synovium in arthritis, or foreign MHC antigens in allograft rejection. However, a potential pitfall is that different T cells recognize the same peptide differently, so a peptide that is seen as an altered peptide ligand by some T-cell clones may be seen as a complete antigen by others. In addition, the choice of peptide would vary with MHC type. To be effective, an altered peptide ligand should antagonize or anergize polyclonal T cells and should work with each patient's MHC type.

A similar mechanism may be invoked to explain the generally weak immunogenicity of tumor antigens. According to this hypothesis, the only T cells capable of responding to self-antigens on tumors may have low-affinity receptors for them. In effect, the natural sequence is the altered ligand that induces tolerance. In some cases, this anergy can be overcome with modified peptides that have greater affinity for the TCR and induce a full stimulatory signal, resulting in an effective immune response to the tumor antigens,[474] as previously described under epitope enhancement.

Prediction of T-Cell Epitopes

The fact that T cells recognize processed fragments of antigens presented by MHC molecules leads to the ironic situation that T-cell recognition of antigen, which is more complex than antibody recognition due to the ternary complex needed between TCR, antigen, and MHC molecule, may actually be focused on simpler structures of the antigen than those seen by most antibodies specific for native protein antigens. In contrast to the assembled topographic antigenic sites seen by many antibodies,[50,51] T cells specific for processed antigens are limited to seeing short segments of continuous sequence.[177,233] Therefore, the tertiary structure of the protein plays little if any role in the structure of the epitope recognized by T cells, except as it may influence processing. However, the structure of the T-cell antigenic site itself must be limited to primary (sequence) and secondary structure, the latter depending only on local rather than long-range interactions. This limitation greatly simplifies the problem of identifying structural properties important to T-cell recognition because one can deal with sequence information, which can now be obtained from DNA without having a purified protein, and with the secondary structure implicit therein without having to obtain an x-ray crystallographic three-dimensional structure of the native protein—a much more difficult task.

Because the key feature necessary for a peptide to be recognized by T cells is its ability to bind to an MHC molecule, most approaches for predicting T-cell epitopes are based on

predicting binding to MHC molecules. These approaches, which have been reviewed,[424,507–510] can be divided into those that focus on specific individual MHC molecules one at a time, such as motif-based methods, and those that look for general structural properties of peptide sequences. We shall discuss first the methods based on general properties and then those directed to individual MHC molecules.

The first structural feature of amino acid sequences found associated with T-cell epitopes that remains in use today is helical amphipathicity,[227,511–514] which is statistically significant independent of the tendency to form a helix per se.[512] Because the x-ray crystallographic structures of both MHC class I[376–378,515] and II molecules[253,443] have consistently shown peptides to be bound in extended, not α-helical, conformation, helicity per se has been abandoned as an associated structural feature of T-cell epitopes. However, as discussed in the following text, other explanations of amphipathic structures have been discovered that do not require the peptide to be bound to the MHC molecule as an α helix. Amphipathicity is the property of having hydrophobic and hydrophilic regions separated in space. It was observed that the immunodominant T-cell epitopes of myoglobin and cytochrome c corresponded to amphipathic helices.[185,189,516] DeLisi and Berzofsky[511] developed an algorithm to search for segments of protein sequence that could fold as amphipathic helices based on the idea that the hydrophobicity of the amino acids in the sequence must oscillate as one goes around an amphipathic helix. For the hydrophobic residues to line up on one side and the hydrophilic residues on the other, the periodicity of this oscillation must be approximately the same as the structural periodicity of the helix, about 100 degrees per residue (360 degrees per 3.6 residues per turn) (Fig. 23.14).

A microcomputer program implementing this analysis was published.[514] Margalit et al.[227] optimized the original approach,[511] correctly identifying 18 of the 23 immunodominant helper T cell antigenic sites from the 12 proteins in

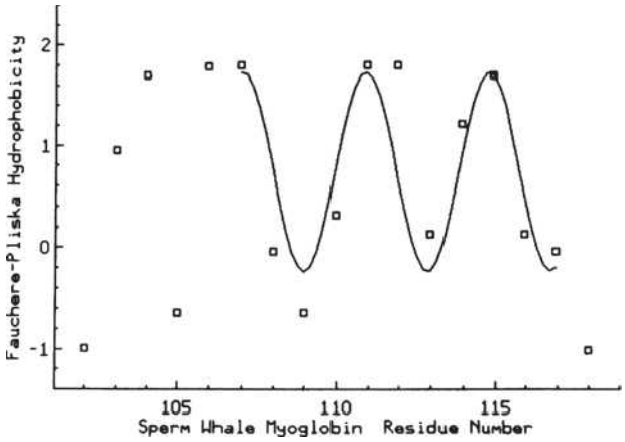


FIG 23.14. Plot of hydrophobicity of each amino acid in sperm whale myoglobin 102 to 118, according to the scale of Fauchère and Pliska,[604] as a function of amino acid sequence, showing least-squares fit of a sinusoidal function to the sequence of hydrophobicities from 107 to 117. (From Berzofsky et al.,[180] with permission.)

an expanded database ($p < .001$)[227] (see Table 23.4). Indeed, when the database was expanded to twice and then four times its original size, the correlation remained highly significant, and the fraction of sites predicted remained relatively stable (34/48 sites = 71%, $p < .003$; 61/92 sites = 66%, $p < .001$).[517,518] A similar correlation was found for 65% of peptides presented by class I MHC molecules.[518] A primary sequence pattern found in a substantial number of T-cell epitopes by Rothbard and Taylor[519] was consistent with one turn of an amphipathic helix. Also, another approach, called the "strip-of-the-helix" algorithm, which searches for helices with a hydrophobic strip down one face, found a correlation between amphipathic helices and determinants presented by both class II and I MHC molecules.[513,520]

Newer data suggest at least two explanations, not mutually exclusive, for this correlation in the absence of helical structure found in the peptides bound to MHC molecules.[521] First, crystal structures of peptides bound to class II MHC molecules have found that the peptides are bound in an extended conformation, but with a −130-degree twist like that of a type II polyproline helix,[253,443] and can be quite amphipathic because of this twist.[253] Although the −130-degree twist is distinct from that of an α helix, it gives a periodicity similar enough to be detected. Second, it was observed that spacing of the anchor residues in the motifs for peptides binding to class I and II MHC molecules was consistent with the spacing of turns of an α helix, for example, at P2 and P9 (seven residues apart like two turns of a helix) or at P5 and P9 (spaced like one turn of a helix).[521] Because the anchor residues are most often hydrophobic, this pattern resulted in an amphipathic periodicity pattern like that of an amphipathic α helix for just the anchor residues alone, seen in most motifs.[521] Thus, if the other residues have a random pattern, the anchor residue spacing alone, which is enforced by the spacing of the pockets in the MHC molecules that bind these anchor residues, will produce the amphipathic helical signal, even though the peptide is bound in an extended conformation. This amphipathic helical periodicity has held up as a correlate for peptides defined as T-cell epitopes[521] and has continued to be a useful predictive tool for identifying potential epitopes, successful in a number of studies, when one does not want to focus on individual MHC alleles or wants to find regions of high epitope density. Other structural properties such as coil content and exposure have been used as general predictors of MHC class II binding.[522]

Other approaches to predicting T-cell epitopes are generally based on sequences found to bind to specific MHC molecules.[424,507–510,523–525] The simplest approach is to apply standard sequence search algorithms to known protein sequences to locate motifs for peptides binding to particular MHC molecules, using collections of motifs identified in the literature.[264] This approach showed early success for epitopes in proteins from *Listeria monocytogenes*[526] and malaria,[527] but it also became apparent that only about 30% of sequences bearing motifs actually bound to the corresponding MHC molecules.[526,528,529] This discrepancy may relate to adverse interactions created by nonanchor residues[392,397,530] and

could be overcome to some extent by generating extended motifs taking into account the role of each residue in the sequence.[397,530]

To determine whether one could locate regions of proteins with high densities of motifs for binding multiple MHC molecules, Meister et al.[531] developed the algorithm Epimer, which determined the density of motifs per length of sequence. A surprising result was that the motifs were not uniformly distributed but clustered. This clustering may reflect the fact that many motifs are related, and that the same anchor residues are shared by several motifs, perhaps because MHC molecules are also related and their variable segments that define some of the binding pockets are sometimes exchanged by gene conversion events.[532] This hypothesis has now been confirmed and extended by studies showing that each anchor pocket can be grouped into families of MHC molecules sharing similar pockets and therefore anchor residues, but the families for the B, C, and F pockets do not coincide, so there is a reassortment between pockets.[533,534] These observations allow prediction of motifs for additional MHC molecules. In the case of HIV, the densities of motifs for class I MHC binding were anomalous at both the low and high ends of the spectrum.[535] Clustering at the high end may be due to anchor sharing and showed no correlation with conserved or variable regions of the sequence. However, at the low end, long stretches with low motif density occurred preferentially in variable regions, suggesting that the virus was mutating to escape the CTL immune system.[535] This clustering may be useful in vaccine development because identification of sequences containing overlapping motifs for multiple MHC molecules may define promiscuously presented peptides that would elicit responses in a broad segment of the population.[531]

Another type of MHC allele–specific approach is the use of matrices defining the positive or negative contribution of each amino acid possible at each position in the sequence toward binding to an MHC molecule. A positive or negative value is assigned to each of the 20 possible amino acids that can occur at each position in a peptide sequence, and these are summed to give the estimated potential of that peptide for binding. The values in the matrix are derived from either experimental binding studies using peptide panels with single positions substituted with each possible amino acid,[439,536–539] or from comparisons of peptides known to bind in a compilation of the literature, if the number known is sufficiently large.[507,540] One improvement described is an amino acid similarity matrix that disfavors substitutions with opposite charge.[541] Davenport et al.[542,543] also developed a motif method based on Edman degradation sequencing of pooled peptides eluted from MHC molecules. All of these methods have had some success in predicting peptides binding to particular MHC molecules,[507] but they all require the assumption that each position in a peptide must be acting independently of its neighbors, which is a reasonable first approximation, but exceptions are known.[544,545] The more experimental data that goes into generating the matrix, the more reliable the predictions. Therefore, the predictive success may be greater for some of the more common HLA molecules for which more data exists. This matrix approach has been used for both class I and II MHC molecules. Current predictive matrix algorithms, compared to experimental screening, have been found to detect the vast majority of $CD8^+$ T-cell epitopes detected experimentally, for example, in vaccinia virus, in which the top-ranked 300 peptides using four different algorithms predicted 40 per 49 epitopes found.[546]

A potentially very useful observation is the finding that HLA class I molecules can be grouped into families (HLA supertypes) that share similar binding motifs.[438,536,547,548] The broader motifs that encompass several MHC molecules have been called supermotifs. For example, HLA-A*0301, A*1101, A*3101, A*3401, A*6601, A*6801, and A*7401 all fall into the HLA-A3 superfamily.[547] A peptide that carried this supermotif should be active in a broader range of individuals than one which was presented by a single HLA molecule. Moreover, as several HLA supertypes have been defined, it should be possible to design a vaccine effective in a large fraction of the population with only a limited number of well-selected antigenic determinants.[549]

Another approach for predicting peptides that bind to MHC molecules is based on free energy calculations of peptides docked into the groove of a known MHC structure, for which the crystallographic coordinates are known, or on structural modeling of the MHC molecule by homologous extension from another MHC molecule, when the crystal structure is not known, followed by peptide docking calculations.[550–552] It is important to use free energy rather than energy, as the latter alone cannot find the most stable orientation of a side chain and cannot correctly rank order different side chains at the same position. This approach correctly predicts the structure of several known peptide-MHC complexes when starting with the crystal structure of a different complex, in each case to within 1.2 to 1.6 Å all-atom root-mean square deviation.[551] Using this structural modeling can allow one to extend motifs to nonanchor positions for cases where only anchor residue motifs are known and can allow one to predict new motifs for MHC molecules whose motifs have not yet been determined.

Another approach to predicting MHC-binding sequences uses a technique called threading that has been developed for predicting peptide secondary structure, based on threading a sequence through a series of known secondary structures, and calculating the energies of each structure. Altuvia et al.[553,554] showed that threading could be applied to peptides in the groove of MHC molecules, because when several peptides that bind to the same MHC molecule are compared crystallographically, the conformation of the peptides is fairly similar, as for example in several peptides cyrstallized bound to HLA-A2.1.[515] In testing the threading approach, Altuvia et al.[553,554] showed that known antigenic peptides are highly ranked among all peptides in a given protein sequence, and the rank order of peptides in competitive binding studies could be correctly predicted. The advantage of this approach is that it is independent of known binding motifs and can identify peptides that bind despite lack of the common motif for the MHC molecule in question. It can

also be used to rank a set of peptides all containing a known motif. For both class I and II MHC–binding peptides, a number of structure-based predictive approaches have been developed as well.[522,555–558]

Finally, artificial neural networks can be trained on a set of peptides that bind to a given MHC molecule to recognize patterns present in binding peptides.[559,560] When the predictions of the artificial neural networks are tested, the results can be used to further train the artificial neural networks to improve the predictive capability in an iterative fashion.

Recently, predictive algorithms for proteasomal cleavage sites[561,562] and TAP-transported peptides[319,563] have been developed. Combining these into approaches to predict epitopes based on all the steps a peptide must pass through, cleavage, transport, and MHC binding (except for TCR binding), has led to the most recent comprehensive algorithms for epitope prediction that can achieve up to 72% sensitivity.[286,320,508,564–568]

As all these methods are further developed and refined, they promise to allow accurate prediction of peptides that will bind to different MHC molecules and thus allow the design of vaccines without empirical binding studies until the end of the process. In addition, empirical high throughput methods for epitope mapping have been developed to speed the latter.[569] Further, localization of clusters of adjacent or overlapping binding sequences in a short segment of protein sequence can also be useful for selecting sequences that will be broadly recognized. Predictive algorithms for locating T-cell epitopes also have the potential use to reduce immunogenicity of therapeutic proteins (such as hormones, cytokines, and monoclonal antibodies) against which one would not want an immune response to develop.[570,571] For this purpose and others, it is useful to be able to predict all the epitopes likely to be recognized not just with a single MHC allele but with all of a person's MHC molecules or even those of a larger population; such methods have also been developed.[572]

RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN HELPER T-CELL EPITOPES AND B-CELL EPITOPES ON A COMPLEX PROTEIN ANTIGEN

As we have seen, the factors that determine the location of antigenic sites for T and B cells, with the possible exception of self-tolerance, are largely different. Indeed, if B cells (with their surface antibody) bind sites that tend to be especially exposed or protruding—sites that are also more accessible and susceptible to proteolytic enzymes—then there is reason to think that T cells may have a lower probability of being able to recognize these same sites, which may be more likely to be destroyed during processing. Certainly, assembled topographic sites will be destroyed during processing. On the other hand, there are examples in which T cells and antibodies seem to see the same, or very closely overlapping, sites on a protein,[43,185,215,573–575] although fine specificity analysis usually indicates that the antibody and T cell fine specificities are not identical. The question dealt with here is whether there are any functional or regulatory factors in T cell–B cell cooperation that would produce a relationship between helper T cell specificity and B cell specificity for the same protein antigen.

Early evidence that helper T cells might influence the specificity of the antibodies produced came from a number of studies showing that Ir genes, which appeared to act through effects of T-cell help, could influence the specificity of antibodies produced to a given antigen.[181,576–583] It was hard to imagine how MHC-encoded Ir genes could determine which epitopes of a protein elicit antibodies, when such antibodies are generally not MHC restricted. One explanation suggested was that the Ir genes first select which helper T cells are activated, and these in turn influence which B cells, specific for particular epitopes, could be activated.[130] Because, for cognate help, the B cell has to present the antigen in association with an MHC molecule to the helper T cell, the Ir gene control of antibody specificity must operate at least partly at this step by selecting which helper T cell can be activated by and help a given B cell. Conversely, if the helper T cell selects a subset of B cells to be activated on the basis of their antibody specificity, then there is a reciprocal interaction between T and B cells influencing each other's specificity. Therefore this hypothesis was called "T–B reciprocity."[130] Steric constraints on the epitopes that could be used by helper T cells to help a B cell specific for another particular epitope of the same protein were also proposed by Sercarz et al.[584]

The concept was first tested by limiting the fine specificity of helper T cells to one or a few epitopes and then determining the effect on the specificities of antibodies produced in response to the whole molecule. This was accomplished by inducing T-cell tolerance to certain epitopes[585] or using T cells from animals immune to peptide fragments of the protein.[128,586,587] In each case, the limitation on the helper T-cell specificity repertoire influenced the repertoire of antibodies produced.

One purpose of the B-cell surface Ig is to take up the specific antigen with high affinity, which is then internalized by receptor-mediated endocytosis and processed like any other antigen.[588–595] Therefore, the explanation was proposed that the surface Ig, which acts as the receptor to mediate endocytosis, sterically influences the rate at which different parts of the antigen are processed because what the B cell is processing is not free antigen but a monoclonal antibody–antigen immune complex.[130] This concept presupposes that many antibody–antigen complexes are stable near pH 6 in the endosome, and that what matters is the kinetics of production of large fragments, rather than the products of complete digestion, when both the antigen and the antibody may be degraded to single amino acids. Such protection from proteolysis of antigen epitopes by bound antibody can be demonstrated at least in vitro.[57] More recently, the effect of antigen-specific B-cell surface Ig on the fragments produced by proteolytic processing of antigen was elegantly demonstrated by Davidson and Watts.[596] They demonstrated that the pattern of fragmentation of tetanus toxoid, as measured by SDS–polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis, produced during processing by B-lymphoblastoid clones specific for tetanus toxoid varied among B-cell clones depending on their specificity for different epitopes within the antigen.

Binding to the antibody may also influence which fragments are shuttled to the surface and which are shunted into true lysosomes for total degradation. Thus, different B cells bearing different surface Ig would preferentially process the antigen differently to put more of some potential fragments than others on their surface in contrast to nonspecific presenting cells that would process the antigen indifferently. By this mechanism, it is proposed that B-cell specificity leads to selective antigen presentation to helper T cells and, therefore, to selective help from T cells specific for some epitopes more than from T cells specific for others.[130]

To test this hypothesis, Ozaki and Berzofsky[129] made populations of B cells effectively monoclonal for purposes of antigen presentation by coating polyclonal B cells with a conjugate of monoclonal antimyoglobin coupled to anti-IgM antibodies. B cells coated with one such conjugate presented myoglobin less well to one myoglobin-specific T-cell clone than to others. B cells coated with other conjugates presented myoglobin to this clone equally well as to other clones. Therefore, the limitation on myoglobin presentation by this B cell to this T-cell clone depended on the specificity of both the monoclonal antibody coating the B cell and the receptor of the T-cell clone. It happened in this case that both the monoclonal antibody and the T-cell clone were specific for the same or closely overlapping epitopes. Therefore, it appears that the site bound by the B-cell surface Ig is less well presented to T cells. This finding is also consistent with a recent study of chimeric proteins in which one or more copies of an ovalbumin helper T-cell determinant were inserted in different positions.[597] Although the position of the ovalbumin determinants did not affect the antibody response to one epitope, the position did matter for antibody production to an epitope of the chimeric protein derived from insulin-like growth factor I. An ovalbumin determinant inserted distal to this epitope was much more effective in providing help than one inserted adjacent to the same epitope, when both constructs were used as immunogens, even though both constructs elicited similar levels of ovalbumin-specific T-cell proliferation in the presence of nonspecific presenting cells in vitro as a control for nonspecific effects of flanking residues on processing and presentation of the helper T-cell determinants. However, circumstantial evidence from the Ir gene studies mentioned previously suggests that T cells may preferentially help B cells that bind with some degree of proximity to the T-cell epitope, as there was a correlation between T cell and antibody specificity for large fragments of protein antigens under Ir gene control.[127,130,181,579,580,583] Therefore, antibodies may have both positive and negative selective effects on processing. Further studies on presentation of β-galactosidase–monoclonal antibody complexes by nonspecific APCs suggest similar conclusions.[598,599] Presumably, the conjugates are taken up via Ig fragment c (Fc) receptors on the presenting cells and processed differentially according to the site bound by the antibody so that they are presented differentially to different T-cell clones. Thus, non–B-presenting cells can be made to mimic specific B-presenting cells. This also suggests that circulating antibody may have a role in the selection of which T cells are activated in a subsequent exposure to antigen.

The issue of whether bound antibody enhanced or suppressed presentation of specific determinants to T cells was explored further by Watts et al.[600] and Simitsek et al.[601] They first found that a particular tetanus toxoid–specific Epstein-Barr virus–transformed human B-cell clone 11.3 failed to present the tetanus toxoid epitope 1174 to 1189 to specific T cells, whereas it presented another epitope as well as did other B cells, and another B-cell clone presented the 1174 to 1189 epitope well. Moreover, the free 11.3 antibody also inhibited presentation of this epitope to T cells at the same time that it enhanced presentation of other epitopes by Fc receptor facilitated uptake.[600] They subsequently found that the same 11.3 B cell and antibody actually enhanced presentation of another epitope of tetanus toxoid, 1273 to 1284, by about 10-fold, even though both epitopes were within the footprint of the antibody as determined by protection from proteolytic digestion.[601] The enhancement could be mediated also by free antibody as well as Fab fragments thereof, indicating that the mechanism did not involve Fc receptor facilitated uptake. Furthermore, the 11.3 antibody had no effect on presentation of another determinant in the same tetanus toxoid C fragment, 947 to 967, which was not within the footprint of the antibody, and another antibody to the C fragment did not enhance presentation of 1273 to 1284. The authors concluded that the same antibody or surface Ig can protect two determinants from proteolysis but sterically hinder the binding of one to class II MHC molecules while facilitating the binding of the other.[601] The facilitation may involve protection from degradation. This antibody-mediated enhancement of presentation of selected epitopes to helper T cells can greatly lower the threshold for induction of a T-cell response and may thereby elicit responses to otherwise subdominant epitopes. It can also contribute to epitope spreading, for example, in autoimmune disease, in which an initial response to one dominant determinant leads to a subsequent response to other subdominant determinants, perhaps by helping for antibody production, which in turn facilitates presentation of the other determinants.

Taken together, these results support the concept of T–B reciprocity in which helper T cells and B cells each influence the specificity of the other's expressed repertoire.[130] This mechanism may also provide an explanation for some of the cases in which Ir genes have been found to control antibody idiotype.[602,603] These relationships probably play a significant role in regulating the fine specificity of immune response of both arms of the immune system. Therefore, they will also be of importance in the design of synthetic or recombinant fragment vaccines that incorporate both T- and B-cell epitopes to elicit an antibody response.

CONCLUSION

Overall, antibodies and T cells recognize different structural features in different contexts or environments, and thus complement each other to detect the spectrum of foreign (or self-) antigens encountered. Antibodies recognize three-dimensional structures on the exposed surface of molecules either in solution or on a cell surface.

Therefore, they are dependent on the conformation of the antigen and can recognize structures that are assembled on the surface of the antigen molecule by the way it folds but that are not contiguous in the primary sequence. However, they do not generally recognize structures buried within protein molecules or inside cells. In contrast, T cells are designed to recognize short segments of primary amino acid sequence of protein antigens, and thus are not dependent on the conformation of the original protein unless it affects processing. Furthermore, T cells particularly provide internal surveillance of proteins inside cells, recognizing peptide fragments of these presented by MHC molecules that carry these fragments to the cell surface. This surveillance of intracellular proteins requires a number of hurdles including proteolytic processing of the antigen into fragments, transport of these into the compartments where they are loaded onto MHC molecules, binding with appropriate specificity to the combining site of specific MHC molecules, and then finally recognition by an appropriate TCR. These hurdles limit the number of amino acid sequences that can be recognized and account in part for immunodominance. Furthermore, the two major subsets of T cells also complement each other by recognizing exogenous and endogenous proteins processed and transported through different pathways and presented by difference classes of MHC molecules. Thus, the two major classes of T cells complement the types of structures and the locales surveyed by antibodies. For example, in the case of viruses, antibodies can detect intact virions and shed viral proteins in solution as well as viral proteins expressed on the surface of infected cells; $CD4^+$ T cells can recognize viral proteins taken up by APCs and processed in an endosomal pathway and $CD8^+$ T cells can detect proteins synthesized within the infected cell, whether or not they are ever expressed intact on the cell surface or secreted. Together, they provide the immune system with a strategy to detect all forms of foreign invaders as well as to protect the host through different effector mechanisms.

REFERENCES

1. Goodman JW. Antigenic determinants and antibody combining sites. In: Sela M, ed. *The Antigens*. New York, NY: Academic; 1975:127–187.
2. Landsteiner K. *The Specificity of Serological Reactions*. Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press; 1945.
3. Landsteiner K, Van der Scheer J. Serological studies on azoproteins antigens containing azo components with aliphatic side chains. *J Exp Med*. 1934;59:751–768. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19870277
4. Pressman D, Grossberg AL. *The Structural Basis of Antibody Specificity*. New York, NY: Benjamin; 1968.
5. Pressman D, Siegel M, Hall LAR. The closeness of fit of antibenzoate antibodies about haptens and the orientation of the haptens in combination. *J Am Chem Soc*. 1954;76:6336–6341.
6. Karush F. The interaction of purified anti-b-lactoside antibody with haptens. *J Am Chem Soc*. 1957;79:3380–3384.
7. Eisen HN, Siskind GW. Variations in affinities of antibodies during the immune response. *Biochem*. 1964;3:996–1008. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14214095
8. Kabat EA. *Structural Concepts in Immunology and Immunochemistry*. 2nd ed. New York, NY: Holt Rinehart & Winston; 1976.
9. Jann K, Westphal O. Microbial polysaccharides. In: Sela M, ed. *The Antigens*. New York, NY: Academic; 1975:1–125.
10. Springer GF. Blood group and Forssman antigenic determinants shared between microbes and mammalian cells. In: Kallos P, Waksman BH, eds. *Progress in Allergy*. Basel, Switzerland: Karger; 1971:9–77. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4133332
11. Marcus DM. The ABO and Lewis blood-group system. Immunochemistry, genetics, and relation to human disease. *N Engl J Med*. 1969;280:994–1006. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4888078
12. Watkins WM. Biochemistry and genetics of the ABO, Lewis, and P blood group systems. *Adv Hum Genet*. 1980;10:1–136. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6156588
13. Kabat EA. The upper limit for the size of the human antidextran combining site. *J Immunol*. 1960;84:82–85. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14408291
14. Kabat EA. The nature of an antigenic determinant. *J Immunol*. 1966;97:1–11. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/5332005
15. Cisar J, Kabat EA, Dorner MM, Liao J. Binding properties of immunoglobulin combining sites specific for terminal or nonterminal antigenic determinants in dextran. *J Exp Med*. 1975;142:435–459. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/49389
16. Sharon J, Kabat EA, Morrison SL. Studies on mouse hybridomas secreting IgM or IgA antibodies to a(1->6)-linked dextran. *Mol Immunol*. 1981;18:831–846. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6175897
17. Sharon J, Kabat EA, Liao J, Potter M. Immunochemical characterization of binding sites of hybridoma antibodies specific for alpha (1 leads to 6) linked dextran. *Mol Immunol*. 1982;19:375–388. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6178961
18. Sharon J, D'Hoostelaere L, Potter M, Kabat EA, Morrison SL. A cross-reactive idiotype, QUPC 52 IdX, present on most but not all antialpha (1 replaced by 6) dextran-specific IgM and IgA hydriboma antibodies with combining sites of different sizes. *J Immunol*. 1982;128:498–500.
19. Sikder SK, Akolkar PN, Kaladas PM, Morrison SL, Kabat EA. Sequences of variable regions of hybridoma antibodies to alpha (1----6) dextran in BALB/c and C57BL/6 mice. *J Immunol*. 1985;135:4215–4221. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2415605
20. Akolkar PN, Sikder SK, Bhattacharya SB, et al. Different VL and VH germline genes are used to produce similar combining sites with specificity for alpha(1----6) dextrans. *J Immunol*. 1987;138:4472–4479. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2438345
21. Brodeur PM, Riblet R. The immunoglobulin heavy chain variable region (Igh-v) locus in the mouse I. One-hundred Igh-v genes comprise seven families of homologous genes. *Eur J Immunol*. 1984;14:922–930. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6092095
22. Griffiths GM, Berek C, Kaartinen M, Milstein C. Somatic mutation and the maturation of immune response to 2-phenxyloxazolone. *Nature*. 1984;14:271–275. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6504141
23. Cygler M, Rose DR, Bundle DR. Recognition of a cell-surface oligosaccharide of pathogenic Salmonella by an antibody Fab fragment. *Science*. 1991;253:442–445. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1713710
24. Bundle DR, Eichler E, Gidney MA, et al. Molecular recognition of a Salmonella trisaccharide epitope by monoclonal antibody Se155-4. *Biochemistry*. 1994;33:5172–5182. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7513555
25. Jeffrey PD, Bajorath J, Chang CY, et al. The x-ray structure of an anti-tumour antibody in complex with antigen. *Nat Struct Biol*. 1995;2:466–471. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7664109
26. Ramsland PA, Farrugia W, Bradford TM, Mark Hogarth P, Scott AM. Structural convergence of antibody binding of carbohydrate determinants in Lewis Y tumor antigens. *J Mol Biol*. 2004;340:809–818. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15223322
27. Calarese DA, Scanlan CN, Zwick MB, et al. Antibody domain exchange is an immunological solution to carbohydrate cluster recognition. *Science*. 2003;300:2065–2071. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12829775
28. Calarese DA, Lee HK, Huang CY, et al. Dissection of the carbohydrate specificity of the broadly neutralizing anti-HIV-1 antibody 2G12. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2005;102:13372–13377. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16174734
29. Schneerson R, Barrera O, Sutton A, Robbins JB. Preparation, characterization, and immunogenicity of Haemophilus influenzae type b polysaccharide-protein conjugates. *J Exp Med*. 1980;152:361–376. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6967514
30. Robbins JB, Schneerson R, Anderson P, Smith DH. The 1996 Albert Lasker Medical Research Awards. Prevention of systemic infections, especially meningitis, caused by Haemophilus influenzae type b. Impact on public health and implications for other polysaccharide-based vaccines. *JAMA*. 1996;276:1181–1185. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8827975
31. Murphy TV, White KE, Pastor P, et al. Declining incidence of Haemophilus influenzae type b disease since introduction of vaccination. *JAMA*. 1993;269:246–248. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8417244
32. Black S, Shinefield H, Fireman B, et al. Efficacy, safety and immunogenicity of heptavalent pneumococcal conjugate vaccine in children. Northern California Kaiser Permanente Vaccine Study Center Group. *Pediatr Infect Dis J*. 2000;19:187–195.
33. Eskola J, Kilpi T, Palmu A, et al. Efficacy of a pneumococcal conjugate vaccine against acute otitis media. *N Engl J Med*. 2001;344:403–409. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11172176
34. Amit AG, Mariuzza RA, Phillips SEV, Poljak RJ. Three-dimensional structure of an antigen-antibody complex at 2.8 Å resolution. *Science*. 1986;233:747–758.
35. Colman PM, Laver WG, Varghese JN, et al. Three-dimensional structure of a complex of antibody with influenza virus neuraminidase. *Nature*. 1987;326:358–363. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2436051
36. Sheriff S, Silverton EW, Padlan EA, et al. Three-dimensional structure of an antibody-antigen complex. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1987;84:8075–8079. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2446316
37. Davies DR, Padlan EA. Antibody-antigen complexes. *Annu Rev Biochem*. 1990;59:439–473. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2197980
38. Schlossman SF, Yaron A, Ben-Efraim S, Sober HA. Immunogenicity of a series of alpha,N-DNP-L-lysines. *Biochem*. 1965;4:1638–1645. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/5865661
39. Schlossman SF, Levine H. Desensitization to delayed hypersensitivity reactions. With special reference to the requirement for an immunogenic molecule. *J Immunol*. 1967;99:111–114. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6029269
40. Van Vunakis H, Kaplan J, Lehrer H, Levine L. Immunogenicity of polylysine and polyornithine when complexed to phosphorylated bovine serum albumin. *Immunochemistry*. 1966;3:393–402. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/5970630
41. Getzoff ED, Tainer JA, Lerner RA, Geysen HM. The chemistry and mechanisms of antibody binding to protein antigens. *Adv Immunol*. 1988;43:1–98.
42. Sela M. Antigenicity: some molecular aspects. *Science*. 1969;166:1365–1374. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4900368

43. Berzofsky JA, Buckenmeyer GK, Hicks G, Gurd FRN, Feldmann RJ, Minna J. Topographic antigenic determinants recognized by monoclonal antibodies to sperm whale myoglobin. *J Biol Chem*. 1982;257:3189–3198. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6174516
44. Koketsu J, Atassi MZ. Immunochemistry of sperm-whale myoglobin-XVI: accurate delineation of the single region in sequence 1-55 by immunochemical studies of synthetic peptides. Some conclusions concerning antigenic structures of proteins. *Immunochemistry*. 1974;11:1–8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4855726
45. Dickerson RE. X-ray analysis and protein structure. In: Neurath H, ed. *The Proteins*. New York, NY: Academic; 1964:603–778.
46. Takano T. Structure of myoglobin refined at 2.0 Å resolution I crystallographic refinement of metmyoglobin from sperm whale. *J Mol Biol*. 1977;110:537–568. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/845959
47. Feldmann RJ, Bing DH, Furie BC, Furie B. Interactive computer surface graphics approach to the study of the active site of bovine trypsin. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1978;75:5409–5412. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/281690
48. Barlow DJ, Edwards MS, Thornton JM. Continuous and discontinuous protein antigenic determinants. *Nature*. 1986;322:747–748. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2427953
49. Lollier V, Denery-Papini S, Larre C, Tessier D. A generic approach to evaluate how B-cell epitopes are surface-exposed on protein structures. *Mol Immunol*. 2011;48:577–585. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21111484
50. Benjamin DC, Berzofsky JA, East IJ, et al. The antigenic structure of proteins: a reappraisal. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 1984;2:67–101. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6085753
51. Berzofsky JA. Intrinsic and extrinsic factors in protein antigenic structure. *Science*. 1985;229:932–940. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2410982
52. Sachs DH, Schechter AN, Eastlake A, Anfinsen CB. An immunological approach to the conformational equilibria of polypeptides. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1972;69:3790–3794. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4118873
53. Crumpton MJ. Protein antigen: the molecular bases of antigenicity and immunogenicity. In: Sela M, ed. *The Antigens*. New York, NY: Academic; 1974:1–79.
54. Serriere J, Dugua JM, Bossus M, et al. Fab'-induced folding of antigenic N-terminal peptides from intrinsically disordered HIV-1 tat revealed by x-ray crystallography. *J Mol Biol*. 2011;405:33–42. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21035463
55. Yewdell JW. Monoclonal antibodies specific for discontinuous epitopes direct refolding of influenza A virus hemagglutinin. *Mol Immunol*. 2010;47:1132–1136. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20047763
56. Burnens A, Demotz S, Corradin G, Binz H, Bosshard HR. Epitope mapping by chemical modification of free and antibody-bound protein antigen. *Science*. 1987;235:780–783. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2433768
57. Jemmerson R, Paterson Y. Mapping epitopes on a protein antigen by the proteolysis of antigen-antibody complexes. *Science*. 1986;232:1001–1004. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2422757
58. Smith-Gill SJ, Wilson AC, Potter M, Prager EM, Feldmann RJ, Mainhart CR. Mapping the antigenic epitope for a monoclonal antibody against lysozyme. *J Immunol*. 1982;128:314–322. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6172484
59. Kohno Y, Berkower I, Minna J, Berzofsky JA. Idiotypes of anti-myoglobin antibodies: shared idiotypes among monoclonal antibodies to distinct determinants of sperm whale myoglobin. *J Immunol*. 1982;128:1742–1748. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6174613
60. Streicher HZ, Cuttitta F, Buckenmeyer GK, Kawamura H, Minna J, Berzofsky JA. Mapping the idiotopes of a monoclonal anti-idiotypic antibodies: Detection of a common idiotope. *J Immunol*. 1986;136:1007–1014. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3484497
61. Geysen HM, Rodda SJ, Mason TJ, Tribbick G, Schoofs PG. Strategies for epitope analysis using peptide synthesis. *J Immunol Methods*. 1987;102:259–274. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2443575
62. Denisova GF, Denisov DA, Yeung J, Loeb MB, Diamond MS, Bramson JL. A novel computer algorithm improves antibody epitope prediction using affinity-selected mimotopes: a case study using monoclonal antibodies against the West Nile virus E protein. *Mol Immunol*. 2008;46:125–134. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18760481
63. Sadler K, Zhang Y, Xu JX, Yu QT, Tam JP. Quaternary protein mimetics of gp41 elicit neutralizing antibodies against HIV fusion-active intermediate state. *Biopolymers*. 2008;90:320–329. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18338371
64. Bublil EM, Freund NT, Mayrose I, et al. Stepwise prediction of conformational discontinuous B-cell epitopes using the Mapitope algorithm. *Proteins*. 2007;68:294–304. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17427229
65. Mayrose I, Shlomi T, Rubinstein ND, et al. Epitope mapping using combinatorial phage-display libraries: a graph-based algorithm. *Nucleic Acids Res*. 2007;35:69–78. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17151070
66. Pacios LF, Tordesillas L, Palacin A, Sanchez-Monge R, Salcedo G, Diaz-Perales A. LocaPep: localization of epitopes on protein surfaces using peptides from phage display libraries. *J Chem Inform Model*. 2011;51:1465–1473. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21539309
67. Irving MB, Craig L, Menendez A, et al. Exploring peptide mimics for the production of antibodies against discontinuous protein epitopes. *Mol Immunol*. 2010;47:1137–1148. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20031219
68. Sun PP, Chen WH, Huang YX, Wang HY, Ma ZQ, Lv YH. Epitope prediction based on random peptide library screening: bench-mark dataset and prediction tools evaluation. *Molecules*. 2011;16:4971–4993. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21681149
69. Crumpton MJ, Wilkinson JM. The immunological activity of some of the chymotryptic peptides of sperm-whale myoglobin. *Biochem J*. 1965;94:545–556. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16749070
70. Smith JA, Hurrell JGR, Leach SJ. A novel method for delineating antigenic determinants: peptide synthesis and radioimmunoassay using the same solid support. *Immunochemistry*. 1977;14:565–568. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/74357
71. Atassi MZ. Antigenic structure of myoglobin: the complete immunochemical anatomy of a protein and conclusions relating to antigenic structures of proteins. *Immunochemistry*. 1975;12:423–438. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/53189
72. Berzofsky JA, Buckenmeyer GK, Hicks G, et al. Topographic antigenic determinants detected by monoclonal antibodies to myoglobin. In: Celada F, Sercarz E, Shumaker V, eds. *Protein Conformation as Immunological Signal*. New York, NY: Plenum Press; 1983:165–180.
73. Hurrell JGR, Smith JA, Todd PE, Leach SJ. Cross-reactivity between mammalian myoglobins: linear vs. spatial antigenic determinants. *Immunochemistry*. 1977;14:283–288. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/68916
74. East IJ, Todd PE, Leach SJ. On topographic antigenic determinants in myoglobins. *Mol Immunol*. 1980;17:519–525. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6156406
75. Maron E, Shiozawa C, Arnon R, Sela M. Chemical and immunological characterization of a unique antigenic region in lysozyme. *Biochem*. 1971;10:763–771. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/5544667
76. Berzofsky JA, Hicks G, Fedorko J, Minna J. Properties of monoclonal antibodies specific for determinants of a protein antigen, myoglobin. *J Biol Chem*. 1980;255:11188–11191. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6160146
77. East IJ, Hurrell JGR, Todd PE, Leach SJ. Antigenic specificity of monoclonal antibodies to human myoglobin. *J Biol Chem*. 1982;257:3199–3202. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6174517
78. Zhou T, Georgiev I, Wu X, et al. Structural basis for broad and potent neutralization of HIV-1 by antibody VRC01. *Science*. 2010;329:811–817. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20616231
79. Zhou TQ, Xu L, Dey B, et al. Structural definition of a conserved neutralization epitope on HIV-1 gp120. *Nature*. 2007;445:732–737. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17301785

80. Sasamori E, Suzuki S, Kato M, Tagawa Y, Hanyu Y. Characterization of discontinuous epitope of prion protein recognized by the mono clonal antibody T2. *Arch Biochem Biophysics*. 2010;501:232–238. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20599662
81. Arquilla ER, Bromer WW, Mercola D. Immunology conformation and biological activity of insulin. *Diabetes*. 1969;18:193–205. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/5813336
82. Lau HKF, Reichlin M, Noble RW. Preparation of antibodies that bind to HbF but not to the isolated a and g subunits. *Fed Proc*. 1975;34:975–980.
83. Benjamini E, Shimizu M, Yound JD, Leung CY. Immunochemical studies on the tobacco mosaic virus protein. VII. The binding of octanoylated peptides of the tobacco mosaic virus protein with antibodies to the whole protein. *Biochem*. 1968;7:1261–1264. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/5663399
84. Urbanski GJ, Margoliash E. Topographic determinants on cytochrome c : I. The complete antigenic structures of rabbit, mouse, and guanaco cytochromes c in rabbits and mice. *J Immunol*. 1977;118:1170–1180. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/66279
85. Kwong PD, Wyatt R, Robinson J, Sweet RW, Sodroski J, Hendrickson WA. Structure of an HIV gp120 envelope glycoprotein in complex with the CD4 receptor and a neutralizing human antibody. *Nature*. 1998; 393:648–659. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9641677
86. Wyatt R, Kwong PD, Desjardins E, et al. The antigenic structure of the HIV gp120 envelope glycoprotein. *Nature*. 1998;393:705–711. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9641684
87. Lando G, Berzofsky JA, Reichlin M. Antigenic structure of sperm whale myoglobin: I. Partition of specificities between antibodies reactive with peptides and native protein. *J Immunol*. 1982;129:206–211. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7086130
88. White TJ, Ibrahimi IM, Wilson AC. Evolutionary substitutions and the antigenic structure of globular proteins. *Nature*. 1978;274:92–94. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/78455
89. Reichlin M. Amino acid substitution and the antigenicity of globular proteins. *Adv Immunol*. 1975;20:71–123. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/47221
90. Kabat EA. The structural basis of antibody complementarity. *Adv Protein Chem*. 1978;32:1–76. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/362869
91. Berzofsky JA, Schechter AN. The concepts of crossreactivity and specificity in immunology. *Molec Immunol*. 1981;18:751–763. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6171727
92. Kourentzi K, Srinivasan M, Smith-Gill SJ, Willson RC. Conformational flexibility and kinetic complexity in antibody-antigen interaction. *J Mol Recog*. 2008;21:114–121. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18383102
93. Furie B, Schechter AN, Sachs DH, Anfinsen CB. An immunological approach to the conformational equilibria of staphylococcal nuclease. *J Mol Biol*. 1975;92:497–506. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1171246
94. Green N, Alexander H, Wilson A, et al. Immunogenic structure of the influenza virus hemagglutinin. *Cell*. 1982;28:477–487. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6176330
95. Lerner R. Antibodies of predetermined specificity in biology and medicine. *Adv Immunol*. 1984;36:1–44. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6209966
96. Camacho CJ, Katsumata Y, Ascherman DP. Structural and thermodynamic approach to peptide immunogenicity. *Plos Computat Biol*. 2008;4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19023401
97. McLellan JS, Correia BE, Chen M, et al. Design and characterization of epitope-scaffold immunogens that present the motavizumab epitope from respiratory syncytial virus. *J Mol Biol*. 2011;409:853–866. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21549714
98. Totrov M, Jiang XQ, Kong XP, et al. Structure-guided design and immunological characterization of immunogens presenting the HIV-1 gp120 V3 loop on a CTB scaffold. *Virology*. 2010;405:513–523. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20663531
99. Correia BE, Ban YEA, Friend DJ, et al. Computational protein design using flexible backbone remodeling and resurfacing: case studies in structure-based antigen design. *J Mol Biol*. 2011;405:284–297. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20969873
100. Perutz MF. Hemoglobin structure and respiratory transport. *Sci Am*. 1978;239:92–125. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/734439
101. Monod J, Wyman J, Changeux JP. On the nature of allosteric transitions: a plausible model. *J Mol Biol*. 1965;12:88–118. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14343300
102. Papkoff J, Lai MH-T, Hunter T, Verma IM. Analysis of transforming gene products from Moloney murine sarcoma virus. *Cell*. 1981;27:109–119. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6276018
103. Colman PM, Varghese JN, Laver WG. Structure of the catalytic and antigenic sites in influenza virus neuraminidase. *Nature*. 1983;303: 41–44.
104. Lee B, Richards FM. The interpretation of protein structures: estimation of static accessibility. *J Mol Biol*. 1971;55:379–400. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/5551392
105. Connolly ML. Solvent-accessible surfaces of proteins and nucleic acids. *Science*. 1983;221:709–713. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6879170
106. Novotny J, Handschumacher M, Haber E, et al. Antigenic determinants in proteins coincide with surface regions accessible to large probes (antibody domains). *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1986;83:226–230. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2417241
107. Thornton JM, Edwards MS, Taylor WR, Barlow DJ. Location of "continuous" antigenic determinants in protruding regions of proteins. *EMBO J*. 1986;5:409–413. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2423325
108. Hopp TP, Woods KR. Prediction of protein antigenic determinants from amino acid sequences. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1981;78:3824–3828. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6167991
109. Fraga S. Theoretical prediction of protein antigenic determinants from amino acid sequences. *Can J Chem*. 1982;60:2606–2610.
110. Hopp TP. Protein surface analysis: methods for identifying antigenic determinants and other interaction sites. *J Immunol Methods*. 1986; 88:1–18. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2420894
111. Leach SJ. How antigenic are antigenic peptides? *Biopolymers*. 1983;22: 425–440. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6201204
112. Todd PEE, East IJ, Leach SJ. The immunogenicity and antigenicity of proteins. *Trends Biochem Sci*. 1982;7:212–216.
113. Chothia C, Janin J. Principles of protein-protein recognition. *Nature*. 1975;256:705–708. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1153006
114. Chen J, Liu H, Yang J, Chou KC. Prediction of linear B-cell epitopes using amino acid pair antigenicity scale. *Amino Acids*. 2007;33:423–428. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17252308
115. Tainer JA, Getzoff ED, Paterson Y, Olson AJ, Lerner RA. The atomic mobility component of protein antigenicity. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 1985;3: 501–535. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2415142
116. Tainer JA, Getzoff ED, Alexander H, et al. The reactivity of anti-peptide antibodies is a function of the atomic mobility of sites in a protein. *Nature*. 1984;312:127–133. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6209578
117. Westhof E, Altschuh D, Moras D, et al. Correlation between segmental mobility and the location of antigenic determinants in proteins. *Nature*. 1984;311:123–126. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6206398
118. Al Moudallal Z, Briand JP, Van Regenmortel MHV. A major part of the polypeptide chain of tobacco masaic virus protein is antigenic. *EMBO J*. 1985;4:1231–1235. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16453613
119. Van Regenmortel MHV. Antigenic cross-reactivity between proteins and peptides: new insights and applications. *Trends Biochem Sci*. 1987; 12:237–240.
120. Geysen HM, Tainer JA, Rodda SJ, et al. Chemistry of antibody binding to a protein. *Science*. 1987;235:1184–1190. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3823878
121. Scarabelli G, Morra G, Colombo G. Predicting interaction sites from the energetics of isolated proteins: a new approach to epitope mapping. *Biophys J*. 2010;98:1966–1975. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20441761
122. Edmundson AB, Ely KR, Herron JN. A search for site-filling ligands in the Meg Bence-Jones dimer: crystal binding studies of fluorescent compounds. *Mol Immunol*. 1984;21:561–576. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6431268

123. Getzoff ED, Geysen HM, Rodda SJ, Alexander H, Tainer JA, Lerner RA. Mechanisms of antibody binding to a protein. *Science*. 1987;235:1191–1196.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3823879
124. Rini JM, Schulze-Gahmen U, Wilson IA. Structural evidence for inducedfit as a mechanism for antibody-antigen recognition. *Science*. 1992;255:959–965.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1546293
125. Jemmerson R, Margoliash E. Topographic antigenic determinants on cytochrome c. Immunoadsorbent separation of rabbit antibody populations directed against horse cytochrome c. *J Biol Chem*. 1979;254:12706–12716.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/91614
126. Cooper HM, East IJ, Todd PEE, Leach SJ. Antibody response to myoglobins: effect of host species. *Mol Immunol*. 1984;21:479–487.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6749133
127. Berzofsky JA. Ir genes: antigen-specific genetic regulation of the immune response. In: Sela M, ed. *The Antigens*. New York: Academic Press;1987:1–146.
128. Manca F, Kunkl A, Fenoglio D, Fowler A, Sercarz E, Celada F. Constraints in T-B cooperation related to epitope topology on E. coli b-galactosidase. I. The fine specificity of T cells dictates the fine specificity of antibodies directed to conformation-dependent determinants. *Eur J Immunol*. 1985;15:345–350.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2580713
129. Ozaki S, Berzofsky JA. Antibody conjugates mimic specific B cell presentation of antigen: relationship between T and B cell specificity. *J Immunol*. 1987;138:4133–4142.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2438335
130. Berzofsky JA. T-B reciprocity: an Ia-restricted epitope-specific circuit regulating T cell-B cell interaction and antibody specificity. *Survey of Immunol Res*. 1983;2:223–229.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6201979
131. Potocnjak P, Yoshida N, Nussenzweig RS, Nussenzweig V. Monovalent fragments (Fab) of monoclonal antibodies to a sporozoite surface antigen (Pb44) protect mice against malarial infection. *J Exp Med*. 1980;151:1504.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6991628
132. Good MF, Berzofsky JA, Maloy WL, et al. Genetic control of the immune response in mice to a Plasmodium facilparum sporozoite vaccine: widespread non-responsiveness to a single malaria T epitope in highly repetitive vaccine. *J Exp Med*. 1986;164:655–660.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2425037
133. Del Giudice G, Cooper JA, Merino J, et al. The antibody response in mice to carrier-free synthetic polymers of Plasmodium falciparum circumsporozoite repetitive epitope is I-Ab-restricted: possible implications for malaria vaccines. *J Immunol*. 1986;137:2952–2955.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3531341
134. Herrington DA, Clyde DF, Losonsky G, et al. Safety and immunogenicity in man of a synthetic peptide malaria vaccine against Plasmodium falciparum sporozoites. *Nature*. 1987;328:257–259.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2439920
135. Good MF, Maloy WL, Lunde MN, et al. Construction of a synthetic immunogen: use of a new T-helper epitope on malaria circumsporozoite protein. *Science*. 1987;235:1059–1062.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2434994
136. Kawamura H, Rosenberg SA, Berzofsky JA. Immunization with antigen and interleukin-2 in vivo overcomes Ir genetic low responsiveness. *J Exp Med*. 1985;162:381–386.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3925070
137. Good MF, Pombo D, Lunde MN, et al. Recombinant human interleukin-2 (IL-2) overcomes genetic nonresponsiveness to malaria sporozoite peptides. Correlation of effect with biological activity of IL-2. *J Immunol*. 1988;141:972–977.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2969396
137a. Akaji K, Liu DT, Berkower IJ. unpublished results
138. Le Bouvier GL. The D->C change in poliovirus particles. *Br J Exp Pathol*. 1959;40:605–620.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14414843
139. Gerhard W, Yewdell JW, Frankel ME, Webster RG. Antigenic structure of influenza virus hemagglutinin defined by hybridoma antibodies. *Nature*. 1981;290:713–717.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6163993
140. Emini EA, Kao SY, Lewis AJ, Crainic R, Wimmer E. Functional basis of poliovirus neutralization determined with mono-specific neutralizing antibodies. *J Virol*. 1983;46:466–474.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6188863
141. Wiley DC, Wilson EA, Skehel JJ. Structural identification of the antibody-binding sites of Hong Kong influenza haemagglutinin and their involvement in antigenic variation. *Nature*. 1981;289:373–378.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6162101
142. Icenogle J, Shiwen H, Duke G, Gilbert S, Rueckert R, Anderegg J. Neutralization of poliovirus by a monoclonal antibody: kinetics and stoichiometry. *Virology*. 1983;127:412–425.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6306918
143. Mandel B. Interaction of viruses with neutralizing antibodies. In: Fraenkel-Conrat H, Wagner RR, eds. *Comprehensive Virology 15: Viral-Host Interactions*. New York, NY: Plenum; 1979.
144. Kaplan G, Freistadt MS, Racaniello VR. Neutralization of poliovirus by cell receptors expressed in insect cells. *J Virol*. 1990;64:4697–4702.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2168959
145. Smith DH, Byrn RA, Marsters SA, Gregory T, Groopman JE, Capon DJ. Blocking of HIV-1 infectivity by a soluble, secreted form of the CD4 antigen. *Science*. 1987;238:1704–1707.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3500514
146. Fisher RA, Bertonis JM, Meier W, et al. HIV infection is blocked in vitro by recombinant soluble CD4. *Nature*. 1988;331:76–78.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2829022
147. Hussey RE, Richardson NE, Kowalski M, et al. A soluble CD4 protein selectively inhibits HIV replication and syncytium formation. *Nature*. 1988;331:78–81.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2829023
148. Capon DJ, Chamow SM, Mordenti J, et al. Designing CD4 immunoadhesins for AIDS therapy. *Nature*. 1989;337:525–531.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2536900
149. DeVico A, Fouts T, Lewis GK, et al. Antibodies to CD4-induced sites in HIV gp120 correlate with the control of SHIV challenge in macaques vaccinated with subunit immunogens. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2007;104:7477–17482.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17956985
150. Palker TJ, Clark ME, Langlois AJ, et al. Type-specific neutralization of the human immunodeficiency virus with antibodies to env-encoded synthetic peptides. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1988;85:1932–1936.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2450351
151. Rusche JR, Javaherian K, McDanal C, et al. Antibodies that inhibit fusion of HIV infected cells bind a 24 amino acid sequence of the viral envelope, gp120. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1988;85:3198–3202.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2452447
152. Goudsmit J, Debouck C, Meloen RH, et al. Human immunodeficiency virus type 1 neutralization epitope with conserved architecture elicits early type-specific antibodies in experimentally infected chimpanzees. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1988;85:4478–4482.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2454471
153. Gorny MK, VanCott TC, Hioe C, et al. Human monoclonal antibodies to the V3 loop of HIV-1 with intra- and interclade cross-reactivity. *J Immunol*. 1997;159:5114–5122.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9366441
154. Gorny MK, Williams C, Volsky B, et al. Human monoclonal antibodies specific for conformation-sensitive epitopes of V3 neutralize human immunodeficiency virus type 1 primary isolates from various clades. *J Virol*. 2002;76:9035–9045.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12186887
155. Sharon M, Kessler N, Levy R, Zolla-Pazner S, Gorlach M, Anglister J. Alternative conformations of HIV-1 V3 loops mimic beta hairpins in chemokines, suggesting a mechanism for coreceptor selectivity. *Structure (Camb)*. 2003;11:225–236.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12575942
156. Berkower I, Smith GE, Giri C, Murphy D. Human immunodeficiency virus-1: predominance of a group-specific neutralizing epitope that persists despite genetic variation. *J Exp Med*. 1989;170:1681–1695.
157. Kang CY, Nara P, Chamat S, et al. Evidence for non-V3-specific neutralizing antibodies that interfere with gp120/CD4 binding in human immunodeficiency virus 1-infected humans. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1991;88:6171–6175.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2068099
158. Berkower I, Murphy D, Smith CC, Smith GE. A predominant group-specific neutralizing epitope of human immunodeficiency virus type 1

maps to residues 342 to 511 of the envelope glycoprotein gp120. *J Virol*. 1991;65:5983–5990.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1717712
159. Thali M, Olshevsky U, Furman C, Gabuzda D, Posner M, Sodroski J. Characterization of a discontinuous human immunodeficiency virus type 1 gp120 epitope recognized by a broadly reactive neutralizing human monoclonal antibody. *J Virol*. 1991;65:6188–6193.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1717717
160. Tilley SA, Honnen WJ, Racho ME, Hilgartner M, Pinter A. A human monoclonal antibody against the CD4-binding site of HIV1 gp120 exhibits potent, broadly neutralizing activity. *Res Virol*. 1991;142:247–259.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1724568
161. Kessler JA 2nd, McKenna PM, Emini EA, et al. Recombinant human monoclonal antibody IgG1b12 neutralizes diverse human immunodeficiency virus type 1 primary isolates. *AIDS Res Hum Retroviruses*. 1997;13:575–582.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9135875
162. Trkola A, Purtscher M, Muster T, et al. Human monoclonal antibody 2G12 defines a distinctive neutralization epitope on the gp120 glycoprotein of human immunodeficiency virus type 1. *J Virol*. 1996;70:1100–1108.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8551569
163. Muster T, Steindl F, Purtscher M, et al. A conserved neutralizing epitope on gp41 of human immunodeficiency virus type 1. *J Virol*. 1993;67:6642–6647.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7692082
164. Eckhart L, Raffelsberger W, Ferko B, et al. Immunogenic presentation of a conserved gp41 epitope of human immunodeficiency virus type 1 on recombinant surface antigen of hepatitis B virus. *J Gen Virol*. 1996;77:2001–2008.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8810996
165. Burton DR. A vaccine for HIV type 1: the antibody perspective. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1997;94:10018–10023.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9294155
166. Dennison SM, Stewart SM, Stempel KC, Liao HX, Haynes BF, Alam SM. Stable docking of neutralizing human immunodeficiency virus type 1 gp41 membrane-proximal external region monoclonal antibodies 2F5 and 4E10 is dependent on the membrane immersion depth of their epitope regions. *J Virol*. 2009;83:10211–10223.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19640992
167. Trkola A, Ketas T, Kewalramani VN, et al. Neutralization sensitivity of human immunodeficiency virus type 1 primary isolates to antibodies and CD4-based reagents is independent of coreceptor usage. *J Virol*. 1998;72:1876–1885.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9499039
168. Baba TW, Liska V, Hofmann-Lehmann R, et al. Human neutralizing monoclonal antibodies of the IgG1 subtype protect against mucosal simian-human immunodeficiency virus infection. *Nat Med*. 2000;6:200–206.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10655110
169. Mascola JR, Stiegler G, VanCott TC, et al. Protection of macaques against vaginal transmission of a pathogenic HIV-1/SIV chimeric virus by passive infusion of neutralizing antibodies. *Nat Med*. 2000;6:207–210.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10655111
170. Steimer KS, Scandella CJ, Skiles PV, Haigwood NL. Neutralization of divergent HIV-1 isolates by conformation-dependent human antibodies to Gp120. *Science*. 1991;254:105–108.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1718036
171. Benacerraf B, McDevitt HO. Histocompatibility-linked immune response genes. *Science*. 1972;175:273–279.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4109878
172. Godfrey WL, Lewis GK, Goodman JW. The anatomy of an antigen molecule: functional subregions of L-tyrosine-p-azobenzenearsonate. *Mol Immunol*. 1984;21:969–978.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6209567
173. Berkower I, Buckenmeyer GK, Gurd FRN, Berzofsky JA. A possible immunodominant epitope recognized by murine T lymphocytes i mmune to different myoglobins. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1982;79:4723–4727.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6181511
174. Solinger AM, Ultee ME, Margoliash E, Schwartz RH. The T-lymphocyte response to cytochrome c. I. Demonstration of a T-cell heteroclitic proliferative response and identification of a topographic antigenic determinant on pigeon cytochrome c whose immune recognition requires two complementing major histocompatibility complex-linked immune response genes. *J Exp Med*. 1979;150:830–848.
175. Katz ME, Maizels RM, Wicker L, Miller A, Sercarz EE. Immunological focusing by the mouse major histocompatibility complex: mouse strains confronted with distantly related lysozymes confine their attention to very few epitopes. *Eur J Immunol*. 1982;12:535–540.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6180905
176. Gell PGH, Benacerraf B. Studies on hypersensitivity II Delayed hypersensitivity to denatured proteins in guinea pigs. *Immunology*. 1959;2:64–70.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/13640681
177. Berzofsky JA. The nature and role of antigen processing in T cell activation. In: Cruse JM, Lewis RE Jr, eds. *The Year in Immunology 1984–1985*. Basel, Switzerland: Karger; 1985:18–24.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3916381
178. Livingstone A, Fathman CG. The structure of T cell epitopes. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 1987;5:477–501.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2439104
179. Schwartz RH. T-lymphocyte recognition of antigen in association with gene products of the major histocompatibility complex. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 1985;3:237–261.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2415139
180. Berzofsky JA, Cease KB, Cornette JL, et al. Protein antigenic structures recognized by T cells: potential applications to vaccine design. *Immunol Rev*. 1987;98:9–52.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2443443
181. Berzofsky JA, Richman LK, Killion DJ. Distinct H-2-linked Ir genes control both antibody and T cell responses to different determinants on the same antigen, myoglobin. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1979;76:4046–4050.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/91172
182. Manca F, Clarke JA, Miller A, Sercarz EE, Shastri N. A limited region within hen egg-white lysozyme serves as the focus for a diversity of T cell clones. *J Immunol*. 1984;133:2075–2078.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6206149
183. Shimonkevitz R, Colon S, Kappler JW, Marrack P, Grey H. Antigen recognition by H-2-restricted T cells. II. A tryptic ovalbumin peptide that substitutes for processed antigen. *J Immunol*. 1984;133:2067–2074.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6332146
184. Allen PM, Unanue ER. Differential requirements for antigen processing by macrophages for lysozyme-specific T cell hybridomas. *J Immunol*. 1984;132:1077–1079.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6607276
185. Berkower I, Buckenmeyer GK, Berzofsky JA. Molecular mapping of a histocompatibility-restricted immunodominant T cell epitope with synthetic and natural peptides: implications for antigenic structure. *J Immunol*. 1986;136:2498–2503.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2419437
186. Kurokohchi K, Akatsuka T, Pendleton CD, et al. Use of recombinant protein to identify a motif-negative human CTL epitope presented by HLA-A2 in the hepatitis C virus NS3 region. *J Virol*. 1996;70:232–240.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8523531
187. Thomas JW, Danho W, Bullesbach E, Fohles J, Rosenthal AS. Immune response gene control of determinant selection. III. Polypeptide fragments of insulin are differentially recognized by T but not by B cells in insulin immune guinea pigs. *J Immunol*. 1981;126:1095–1100.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6161958
188. Schwartz RH, Fox BS, Fraga E, Chen C, Singh B. The T lymphocyte response to cytochrome c. V. Determination of the minimal peptide size required for stimulation of T cell clones and assessment of the contribution of each residue beyond this size to antigenic potency. *J Immunol*. 1985;135:2598–2608.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2411804
189. Cease KB, Berkower I, York-Jolley J, Berzofsky JA. T cell clones specific for an amphipathic alpha helical region of sperm whale myoglobin show differing fine specificities for synthetic peptides: A multi-view/single structure interpretation of immunodominance. *J Exp Med*. 1986;164:1779–1784.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3490536
190. Kurata A, Palker TJ, Streilein RD, Scearce RM, Haynes BF, Berzofsky JA. Immunodominant sites of human T-cell lymphotropic virus type 1 envelope protein for murine helper T cells. *J Immunol*. 1989;143:2024–2030.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2528586

191. Lamb JR, Ivanyi J, Rees ADM, et al. Mapping of T cell epitopes using recombinant antigens and synthetic peptides. *EMBO J*. 1987;6:1245–1249. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2440673
192. Townsend ARM, Gotch FM, Davey J. Cytotoxic T cells recognize fragments of the influenza nucleoprotein. *Cell*. 1985;42:457–467. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2411422
193. Walker BD, Flexner C, Birch-Limberger K, et al. Long-term culture and fine specificity of human cytotoxic T lymphocyte clones reactive with human immunodeficiency virus type 1. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1989; 86:9514–9518. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2480604
194. Hosmalin A, Clerici M, Houghten R, et al. An epitope in HIV-1 reverse transcriptase recognized by both mouse and human CTL. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1990;87:2344–2348. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1690429
195. Kojima M, Cease KB, Buckenmeyer GK, Berzofsky JA. Limiting dilution comparsion of the repertoires of high and low responder MHC-restricted T cells. *J Exp Med*. 1988;167:1100–1113. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2450949
196. Heber-Katz E, Hansburg D, Schwartz RH. The Ia molecule of the antigen-presenting cell plays a critical role in immune response gene regulation of T cell activation. *J Mol Cell Immunol*. 1983;1:3–14. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6101061
197. Matis LA, Longo DL, Hedrick SM, Hannum C, Margoliash E, Schwartz RH. Clonal analysis of the major histocompatibility complex restriction and the fine specificity of antigen recognition in the T cell proliferative response to cytochrome c. *J Immunol*. 1983;130:1527–1535. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6187812
198. Hansburg D, Heber-Katz E, Fairwell T, Appella E. Major histocompatibility complex-controlled antigen presenting cell-expressed specificity of T cell antigen recognition. *J Exp Med*. 1983;158:25–39. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6190979
199. England RE, Kullberg MC, Cornette JL, Berzofsky JA. Molecular analysis of a heteroclitic T-cell response to the immunodominant epitope of sperm whale myoglobin: implications for peptide partial agonists. *J Immunol*. 1995;155:4295–4306. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7594588
200. Gammon G, Geysen HM, Apple RJ, et al. T cell determinant structure: cores and determinant envelopes in three mouse major histocompatibility complex haplotypes. *J Exp Med*. 1991;173:609–617. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1705279
201. Kimoto M, Fathman CG. Antigen-reactive T cell clones. I. Transcomplementing hybrid I-A-region gene products function effectively in antigen presentation. *J Exp Med*. 1980;152:759–770. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6158548
202. Kappler JW, Skidmore B, White J, Marrack P. Antigen-inducible H-2-restricted interleukin-2-producing T cell hybridomas. Lack of independent antigen and H-2 recognition. *J Exp Med*. 1981;153:1198–1214. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6166712
203. Young DB, Lamb JR. T lymphocytes respond to solid-phase antigen: a novel approach to the molecular analysis of cellular immunity. *Immunology*. 1986;59:167–171. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2429917
204. Lamb JR, Young DB. A novel approach to the identification of T-cell epitopes in Mycobacterium tuberculosis using human T-lymphocyte clones. *Immunology*. 1987;60:1–5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2434413
205. Mustafa AS, Gill HK, Nerland A, et al. Human T-cell clones recognize a major M. leprae protein antigen expressed in E. coli. *Nature*. 1986;319: 63–66. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3510397
206. De Plaen E, Lurquin C, Van Pel A, et al. Immunogenic (tum-) variants of mouse tumor P815: cloning of the gene of tum-antigen P91A and identification of the tummutation. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1988;85: 2274–2278. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3127830
207. Van der Bruggen P, Traversari C, Chomez P, et al. A gene encoding an antigen recognized by cytolytic T lymphocytes on a human melanoma. *Science*. 1991;254:1643–1647. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1840703
208. Guilloux Y, Lucas S, Brichard VG, et al. A peptide recognized by human cytolytic T lymphocytes on HLA-A2 melanomas is encoded by an intron sequence of the N-Acetylglucosaminyltransferase B gene. *J Exp Med*. 1996;183:1173–1183. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8642259
209. Kawakami Y, Eliyahu S, Delgado CH, et al. Cloning of the gene coding for a shared human melanoma antigen recognized by autologous T cells infiltrating into tumor. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1994;91:3515–3519. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8170938
210. Robbins PF, El-Gamil M, Li YF, et al. A mutated b-catenin gene encodes a melanoma-specific antigen recognized by tumor infiltrating lymphocytes. *J Exp Med*. 1996;183:1185–1192. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8642260
211. Wang R-F, Parkhurst MR, Kawakami Y, Robbins PF, Rosenberg SA. Utilization of an alternative open reading frame of a normal gene in generating a novel human cancer antigen. *J Exp Med*. 1996;183:1131–1140. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8642255
212. Berkower I, Matis LA, Buckenmeyer GK, Gurd FRN, Longo DL, Berzofsky JA. Identification of distinct predominant epitopes recognized by myoglobin-specific T cells under control of different Ir genes and characterization of representative T-cell clones. *J Immunol*. 1984; 132:1370–1378. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6198391
213. Shastri N, Oki A, Miller A, Sercarz EE. Distinct recognition phenotypes exist for T cell clones specific for small peptide regions of proteins. Implications for the mechanisms underlying major histocompatibility complex-restricted antigen recognition and clonal deletion models of immune response gene defects. *J Exp Med*. 1985;162:332–345.
214. Allen PM, McKean DJ, Beck BN, Sheffield J, Glimcher LH. Direct evidence that a class II molecule and a simple globular protein generate multiple determinants. *J Exp Med*. 1985;162:1264–1274. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2413156
215. Berkower I, Kawamura H, Matis LA, Berzofsky JA. T cell clones to two major T cell epitopes of myoglobin: Effect of I-A/I-E restriction on epitope dominance. *J Immunol*. 1985;135:2628–2634. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2411806
216. Hackett CJ, Dietzschold B, Gerhard W, et al. Influenza virus site recognized by a murine helper T cell specific for H1 strains. *J Exp Med*. 1983;158:294–302. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6224879
217. Hurwitz JL, Heber-Katz E, Hackett CJ, Gerhard WJ. Characterization of the murine TH response to influenza virus hemagglutinin: evidence for three major specificities. *J Immunol*. 1984;133:3371–3377. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6208279
218. Lamb JR, Eckels DD, Lake P, Woody JN, Green N. Human T cell clones recognize chemically synthesized peptides of influenza hemagglutinin. *Nature*. 1982; 300:66–69. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6982419
219. Rosenthal AS. Determinant selection and macrophage function in genetic control of the immune response. *Immunol Rev*. 1978;40:136–152. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/89077
220. Milich DR, McLachlan A, Chisari FV, Thornton GB. Nonoverlapping T and B cell determinants on an hepatitis B surface antigen pre-S(2) region synthetic peptide. *J Exp Med*. 1986;164:532–547. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2425034
221. Francis MJ, Fry CM, Rowlands DJ, et al. Immunological priming with synthetic peptides of foot and mouth disease virus. *J Gen Virol*. 1985;66:2347–2352. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2997370
222. Corradin GP, Juillerat MA, Vita C, Engers HD. Fine specificity of a BALB/c T cell clone directed against beef apo cytochrome c. *J Mol Immunol*. 1983;20:763–768. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6310373
223. Corradin GP, Wallace CJA, Proudfoot AEI, Baumhuter S. Murine T cell response specific for cytochrome c. In: Sercarz EE, Berzofsky JA, eds. *The Immunogenicity of Protein Antigens: Repertoire and Regulation*. Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press; 1987:43–48.
224. Milich DR, Peterson DL, Leroux-Roels GG, Lerner RA, Chisari FV. Genetic regulation of the immune response to hepatitis B surface antigen (HBsAg). VI. Fine specificity. *J Immunol*. 1985;134:4203–4211. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2580909
225. Guillet JG, Lai MZ, Briner TJ, Smith JA, Gefter ML. Interaction of peptide antigens and class II major histocompatibility complex antigens. *Nature*. 1986;324:260–262. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2946957

226. Macfarlan RI, Dietzschold B, Wiktor TJ, et al. T cell responses to cleaved rabies virus glycoprotein and to synthetic peptides. *J Immunol*. 1984;133:2748–2752. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6332859
227. Margalit H, Spouge JL, Cornette JL, Cease K, DeLisi C, Berzofsky JA. Prediction of immunodominant helper T-cell antigenic sites from the primary sequence. *J Immunol*. 1987;138:2213–2229. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2435793
228. Townsend ARM, Rothbard J, Gotch FM, Bahadur G, Wraith D, McMichael AJ. The epitopes of influenza nucleoprotein recognized by cytotoxic T lymphocytes can be defined with short synthetic peptides. *Cell*. 1986;44:959–968.
229. Townsend AR, Bastin J, Gould K, Brownlee GG. Cytotoxic T lymphocytes recognize influenza haemagglutinin that lacks a signal sequence. *Nature*. 1986;324:575–577. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3491325
230. Berzofsky JA. Structural features of protein antigenic sites recognized by helper T cells: what makes a site immunodominant? In: Cruse JM, Lewis RE Jr, eds. *The Year in Immunology 1985–1986*. Basel, Switzerland: Karger; 1986:28–38. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2437727
231. Berzofsky JA. Immunodominance in T lymphocyte recognition. *Immunol Lett*. 1988;18:83–92.
232. Yewdell JW, Bennink JR. Immunodominance in major histocompatibility complex class I-restricted T lymphocyte responses. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 1999;17:51–88. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10358753
233. Allen PM. Antigen processing at the molecular level. *Immunol Today*. 1987;8:270–273.
234. Goodman JW, Sercarz EE. The complexity of structures involved in T-cell activation. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 1983;1:465–498. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6085787
235. Finnegan A, Smith MA, Smith JA, Berzofsky JA, Sachs DH, Hodes RJ. The T cell repertoire for recognition of a phylogenetically distant protein antigen: peptide specificity and MHC restriction of staphylococcal nuclease specific T cell clones. *J Exp Med*. 1986;164:897–910. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2427638
236. Good MF, Pombo D, Quakyi IA, et al. Human T cell recognition of the circumsporozoite protein of Plasmodium falciparum. Immunodominant T cell domains map to the polymorphic regions of the molecule. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1988;85:1199–1203. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2448793
237. Nanda NK, Arzoo KK, Geysen HM, Sette A, Sercarz EE. Recognition of mutiple peptide cores by a single T cell receptor. *J Exp Med*. 1995; 182:531–539. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7629510
238. Brett SJ, Cease KB, Berzofsky JA. Influences of antigen processing on the expression of the T cell repertoire: evidence for MHC-specific hindering structures on the products of processing. *J Exp Med*. 1988; 168:357–373. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2456373
239. Gammon G, Shastri N, Cogswell J, et al. The choice of T-cell epitopes utilized on a protein antigen depends on multiple factors distant from as well as at the determinant site. *Immunol Rev*. 1987;98:53–73. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2443442
240. Sercarz EE, Lehmann PV, Ametani A, Benichou G, Miller A, Moudgil K. Dominance and crypticity of T cell antigenic determinants. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 1993;11:729–766. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7682817
241. Unanue ER. Antigen-presenting function of the macrophage. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 1984;2:395–428. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6242349
242. Shastri N, Gammon G, Horvath S, Miller A, Sercarz EE. The choice between two distinct T cell determinants within a 23 amino acid region of lysozyme depends upon structure of the immunogen. *J Immunol*. 1986;137:911–915. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2424989
243. Shastri N, Miller A, Sercarz EE. Amino acid residues distinct from the determinant region can profoundly affect activation of T cell clones by related antigens. *J Immunol*. 1986;136:371–376. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2416804
244. Grewal IS, Moudgil KD, Sercarz EE. Hindrance of binding to class II major histocompatibility complex molecules by a single amino acid residue contiguous to a determinant leads to crypticity of the determinant as well as lack of response to the protein antigen. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1995;92:1779–1783. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7533299
245. Fox BS, Carbone FR, Germain RN, Paterson Y, Schwartz RH. Processing of a minimal antigenic peptide alters its interaction with MHC molecules. *Nature*. 1988;331:538–540. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2448649
246. Sercarz E, Wilbur S, Sadegh-Nasseri S, et al. The molecular context of a determinant influences its dominant expression in a T cell response hierarchy through "fine processing." In: Cinader B, Miller RG, eds. *Progress in Immunology VI*. New York, NY: Academic; 1986:227–237.
247. Ziegler HK, Unanue ER. Decrease in macrophage antigen catabolism caused by ammonia and chloroquine is associated with inhibition of antigen presentation to T cells. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1982;79:175–178. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6798568
248. Shimonkevitz R, Kappler J, Marrack P, Grey H. Antigen recognition by H-2 restricted T cells. I. Cell free antigen processing. *J Exp Med*. 1983;158:303–316. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6193218
249. Streicher HZ, Berkower IJ, Busch M, Gurd FRN, Berzofsky JA. Antigen conformation determines processing requirements for T-cell activation. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1984;81:6831–6835. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6333686
250. Lee P, Matsueda GR, Allen PM. T cell recognition of fibrinogen. A determinant on the Aa-chain does not require processing. *J Immunol*. 1988;140:1063–1068. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2449493
251. Régnier-Vigouroux A, Ayeb ME, Defendini ML, Granier C, Pierres M. Processing by accessory cells for presentation to murine T cells of apamin, a disulfide-bonded 18 amino acid peptide. *J Immunol*. 1988; 140:1069–1075. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2449494
252. Rudensky AY, Preston-Hurlburt P, Hong SC, Barlow A, Janeway CA Jr. Sequence analysis of peptides bound to MHC class II molecules. *Nature*. 1991;353:622–627. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1656276
253. Stern LJ, Brown JH, Jardetzky TS, et al. Crystal structure of the human class II MHC protein HLA-DR1 complexed with an influenza virus peptide. *Nature*. 1994;368:215–221. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8145819
254. Stern LJ, Wiley DC. Antigenic peptide binding by class I and class II histocompatibility proteins. *Structure*. 1994;2:245–251.
255. Arunachalam B, Phan UT, Geuze HJ, Cresswell P. Enzymatic reduction of disulfide bonds in lysosomes: characterization of a gamma-interferon-inducible lysosomal thiol reductase (GILT). *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2000;97:745–750. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10639150
256. Maric M, Arunachalam B, Phan UT, et al. Defective antigen processing in GILT-free mice. *Science*. 2001;294:1361–1365. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11701933
257. Townsend ARM, Skehel JJ. The influenza A virus nucleoprotein gene controls the induction of both subtype specific and crossreactive cytotoxic T cells. *J Exp Med*. 1984;160:552–563. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6206181
258. Braciale TJ, Braciale VL, Winkler M, et al. On the role of the transmembrane anchor sequence of influenza hemagglutinin in target cell recognition by class I MHC-restricted hemagglutinin-specific cytolytic T lymphocytes. *J Exp Med*. 1987;166:678–692. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2442285
259. Tobery T, Siliciano RF. Targeting of HIV-1 antigens for rapid intracellular degradation enhances cytotoxic T lymphocytes (CTL) recognition and the induction of De Novo CTL responses in vivo after immunization. *J Exp Med*. 1997;185:909–920. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9120397
260. York IA, Goldberg AL, Mo XY, Rock KL. Proteolysis and class I major histocompatibility complex antigen presentation. *Immunol Rev*. 1999; 172:49–66. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10631936
261. Yewdell JW, Bennink JR. Cut and trim: generating MHC class I peptide ligands. *Curr Opin Immunol*. 2001;13:13–18. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11154911

262. Vinitsky A, Antón LC, Snyder HL, Orlowski M, Bennink JR, Yewdell JW. The generation of MHC class I-associated peptides is only partially inhibited by proteasome inhibitors involvement of nonproteasomal cytosolic proteases in antigen processing? *J Immunol*. 1997;159:554–564. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9218569
263. Rock KL, Gramm C, Rothstein L, et al. Inhibitors of the proteasome block the degradation of most cell proteins and the generation of peptides presented on MHC class I molecules. *Cell*. 1994;78:761–771. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8087844
264. Rammensee HG, Friede T, Stevanovíc S. MHC ligands and peptide motifs: first listing. *Immunogenetics*. 1995;41:178–228. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7890324
265. Vinitsky A, Cardozo C, Sepp-Lorenzino L, Michaud C, Orlowski M. Inhibition of the proteolytic activity of the multicatalytic proteinase complex (proteasome) by substrate-related peptidyl aldehydes. *J Biol Chem*. 1994;269:29860–29866. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7961980
266. Fenteany G, Standaert RF, Lane WS, Choi S, Corey EJ, Schreiber SL. Inhibition of proteasome activities and subunit-specific amino-terminal threonine modification by lactacystin. *Science*. 1995;268:726–731. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7732382
267. Hughes EA, Ortmann B, Surman M, Cresswell P. The protease inhibitor, N-Acetyl-L-Leucyl-L-Leucyl-L-Norleucinal, decreases the pool of major histocompatibility complex class I-binding peptides and inhibits peptide trimming in the endoplasmic reticulum. *J Exp Med*. 1996;183:1569–1578. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8666915
268. Henderson RA, Michel H, Sakaguchi K, et al. HLA-A2.1-associated peptides from a mutant cell line: a second pathway of antigen presentation. *Science*. 1992;255:1264–1266. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1546329
269. Yewdell J. To DRiP or not to DRiP: generating peptide ligands for MHC class I molecules from biosynthesized proteins. *Mol Immunol*. 2002;39:139–146. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12200046
270. Princiotta MF, Finzi D, Qian SB, et al. Quantitating protein synthesis, degradation, and endogenous antigen processing. *Immunity*. 2003;18:343–354. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12648452
271. Qian SB, Reits E, Neefjes J, Deslich JM, Bennink JR, Yewdell JW. Tight linkage between translation and MHC class I peptide ligand generation implies specialized antigen processing for defective ribosomal products. *J Immunol*. 2006;177:227–233. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16785518
272. Gaczynska M, Rock KL, Goldberg AL. g-Interferon and expression of MHC genes regulate peptide hydrolysis by proteasomes. *Nature*. 1993;365:264–267. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8396732
273. Van Kaer L, Ashton-Rickardt PG, Eichelberger M, et al. Altered peptidase and viral-specific T cell response in LMP2 mutant mice. *Immunity*. 1994;1:533–541. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7600282
274. Fehling HJ, Swat W, Laplace C, et al. MHC class I expression in mice lacking the proteasome subunit LMP-7. *Science*. 1994;265:1234–1237. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8066463
275. Toes RE, Nussbaum AK, Degermann S, et al. Discrete cleavage motifs of constitutive and immunoproteasomes revealed by quantitative analysis of cleavage products. *J Exp Med*. 2001;194:1–12. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11435468
276. Sijts AJ, Ruppert T, Rehermann B, Schmidt M, Koszinowski U, Kloetzel PM. Efficient generation of a hepatitis B virus cytotoxic T lymphocyte epitope requires the structural features of immunoproteasomes. *J Exp Med*. 2000;191:503–514. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10662796
277. Sijts AJ, Standera S, Toes RE, et al. MHC class I antigen processing of an adenovirus CTL epitope is linked to the levels of immunoproteasomes in infected cells. *J Immunol*. 2000;164:4500–4506. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10779750
278. Schwarz K, van Den Broek M, Kostka S, et al. Overexpression of the proteasome subunits LMP2, LMP7, and MECL-1, but not PA28 alpha/beta, enhances the presentation of an immunodominant lymphocytic choriomeningitis virus T cell epitope. *J Immunol*. 2000;165:768–778. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10878350
279. Ito Y, Kondo E, Demachi-Okamura A, et al. Three immunoproteasome-associated subunits cooperatively generate a cytotoxic T-lymphocyte epitope of Epstein-Barr virus LMP2A by overcoming specific structures resistant to epitope liberation. *J Virol*. 2006;80:883–890. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16378990
280. Morel S, Levy F, Burlet-Schiltz O, et al. Processing of some antigens by the standard proteasome but not by the immunoproteasome results in poor presentation by dendritic cells. *Immunity*. 2000;12:107–117. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10661410
281. Chen W, Norbury CC, Cho Y, Yewdell JW, Bennink JR. Immunoproteasomes shape immunodominance hierarchies of antiviral CD8(+) T cells at the levels of T cell repertoire and presentation of viral antigens. *J Exp Med*. 2001;193:1319–1326. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11390439
282. Dubiel W, Pratt G, Ferrell K, Rechsteiner M. Purification of an 11S regulator of the multicatalytic protease. *J Biol Chem*. 1992;267:22369–22377. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1429590
283. Dick TP, Ruppert T, Groettrup M, et al. Coordinated dual cleavages induced by the proteasome regulator PA28 lead to dominant MHC ligands. *Cell*. 1996;86:253–262. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8706130
284. van Hall T, Sijts A, Camps M, et al. Differential influence on cytotoxic T lymphocyte epitope presentation by controlled expression of either proteasome immunosubunits or PA28. *J Exp Med*. 2000;192:483–494. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10952718
285. Goldberg AL, Rock KL. Proteolysis, proteasomes and antigen presentation. *Nature*. 1992;357:375–379. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1317508
286. Donnes P, Kohlbacher O. Integrated modeling of the major events in the MHC class I antigen processing pathway. *Protein Sci*. 2005;14:2132–2140. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15987883
287. Reits E, Neijssen J, Herberts C, et al. A major role for TPPII in trimming proteasomal degradation products for MHC class I antigen presentation. *Immunity*. 2004;20:495–506. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15084277
288. Kloetzel PM. Generation of major histocompatibility complex class I antigens: functional interplay between proteasomes and TPPII. *Nat Immunol*. 2004;5:661–669. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15224091
289. Seifert U, Maranon C, Shmueli A, et al. An essential role for tripeptidyl peptidase in the generation of an MHC class I epitope. *Nat Immunol*. 2003;4:375–379. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12598896
290. Monaco JJ, Cho S, Attaya M. Transport protein genes in the murine MHC: possible implications for antigen processing. *Science*. 1990;250:1723–1726. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2270487
291. Deverson EV, Gow IR, Coadwell WJ, Monaco JJ, Butcher GW, Howard JC. MHC class II region encoding proteins related to the multidrug resistance family of transmembrane transporters. *Nature*. 1990;348:738–741. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1979660
292. Trowsdale J, Hanson I, Mockridge I, Beck S, Townsend A, Kelly A. Sequences encoded in the class II region of the MHC related to the "ABC" superfamily of transporters. *Nature*. 1990;348:741–743.
293. Townsend A, Öhlén C, Bastin J, Ljunggren H-G, Foster L, Kärre K. Association of class I major histocompatibility heavy and light chains induced by viral peptides. *Nature*. 1989;340:443–448.
294. Schumacher TNM, Heemels MT, Neefjes JJ, Kast WM, Melief CJM, Ploegh HL. Direct binding of peptide to empty MHC class I molecules on intact cells and in vitro. *Cell*. 1990;62:563–567. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2199065
295. Ortmann B, Androlewicz MJ, Cresswell P. MHC class I/b2-microglobulin complexes associate with TAP transporters before peptide binding. *Nature*. 1994;368:864–867. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8159247
296. Suh WK, Cohen-Doyle MF, Fruh K, Wang K, Peterson PA, Williams DB. Interaction of MHC class I molecules with the transporter associated with antigen processing. *Science*. 1994;264:1322–1326. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8191286
297. Livingstone AM, Powis SJ, Diamond AG, Butcher GW, Howard JC. A transacting major histocompatibility complex-linked gene whose alleles

determine gain and loss changes in the antigenic structure of a classical class I molecule. *J Exp Med*. 1989;170:777–795.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2475574

298. Livingstone AM, Powis SJ, Günther E, Cramer DV, Howard JC, Butcher GW. Cim: an MHC class II-linked allelism affecting the antigenicity of a classical class I molecule for T lymphocytes. *Immunogenetics*. 1991; 34:157–163.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1909994
299. Powis SJ, Deverson EV, Coadwell WJ, et al. Effect of polymorphism of an MHC-linked transporter on the peptides assembled in a class I molecule. *Nature*. 1992;357:211–215.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1350326
300. Powis SJ, Young LL, Joly E, et al. The rat cim effect: TAP alleledependent changes in a class I MHC anchor motif and evidence against C-terminal trimming of peptides in the ER. *Immunity*. 1996;4:159–165.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8624806
301. Neefjes JJ, Momburg F, Hämmerling GJ. Selective and ATP-dependent translocation of peptides by the MHC-encoded transporter. *Science*. 1993;261:769–771.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8342042
302. Neefjes J, Gottfried E, Roelse J, et al. Analysis of the fine specificity of rat, mouse and human TAP peptide transporters. *Eur J Immunol*. 1995; 25:1133–1136.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7737286
303. Androlewicz MJ, Cresswell P. Human transporters associated with antigen processing possess a promiscuous peptide-binding site. *Immunity*. 1994;1:7–14.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7889401
304. Schumacher TNM, Kantesaria DV, Heemels MT, et al. Peptide length and sequence specificity of the mouse TAP1/TAP2 translocator. *J Exp Med*. 1994;179:533–540.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8294864
305. van Endert PM, Riganelli D, Greco G, et al. The peptide-binding motif for the human transporter associated with antigen processing. *J Exp Med*. 1995;182:1883–1895.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7500034
306. van Endert PM. Peptide selection for presentation by HLA class I: a role for the human transporter associated with antigen processing? *Immunol Res*. 1996;15:265–279.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8988395
307. Gubler B, Daniel S, Armandola EA, Hammer J, Caillat-Zucman S, van Endert PM. Substrate selection by transporters associated with antigen processing occurs during peptide binding to TAP. *Mol Immunol*. 1998;35:427–433.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9798647
308. Daniel S, Brusic V, Caillat-Zucman S, et al. Relationship between peptide selectivities of human transporters associated with antigen processing and HLA class I molecules. *J Immunol*. 1998;161:617–624.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9670935
309. Burgevin A, Saveanu L, Kim Y, et al. A detailed analysis of the murine TAP transporter substrate specificity. *PLoS One*. 2008;3:e2402.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18545702
310. Uebel S, Kraas W, Kienle S, Wiesmuller KH, Jung G, Tampe R. Recognition principle of the TAP transporter disclosed by combinato rial peptide libraries. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1997;94:8976–8981.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9256420
311. Fruci D, Niedermann G, Butler RH, van Endert PM. Efficient MHC class I-independent amino-terminal trimming of epitope precursor peptides in the endoplasmic reticulum. *Immunity*. 2001;15:467–476.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11567636
312. Lauvau G, Kakimi K, Niedermann G, et al. Human transporters associated with antigen processing (TAPs) select epitope precursor peptides for processing in the endoplasmic reticulum and presentation to T cells. *J Exp Med*. 1999;190:1227–1240.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10544195
313. Serwold T, Gaw S, Shastri N. ER aminopeptidases generate a unique pool of peptides for MHC class I molecules. *Nat Immunol*. 2001;2: 644–651.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11429550
314. Serwold T, Gonzalez F, Kim J, Jacob R, Shastri N. ERAAP customizes peptides for MHC class I molecules in the endoplasmic reticulum. *Nature*. 2002;419:480–483.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12368856
315. York IA, Chang SC, Saric T, et al. The ER aminopeptidase ERAP1 enhances or limits antigen presentation by trimming epitopes to 8-9 residues. *Nat Immunol*. 2002;3:1177–1184.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12436110
316. Saric T, Chang SC, Hattori A, et al. An IFN-gamma-induced aminopeptidase in the ER, ERAP1, trims precursors to MHC class I-presented peptides. *Nat Immunol*. 2002;3:1169–1176.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12436109
317. Paradela A, Alvarez I, Garcia-Peydro M, et al. Limited diversity of peptides related to an alloreactive T cell epitope in the HLA-B27-bound peptide repertoire results from restrictions at multiple steps along the processing-loading pathway. *J Immunol*. 2000;164:329–337.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10605027
318. Thirdborough SM, Roddick JS, Radcliffe JN, Howarth M, Stevenson FK, Elliott T. Tapasin shapes immunodominance hierarchies according to the kinetic stability of peptide-MHC class I complexes. *Eur J Immunol*. 2008;38:364–369.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18196518
319. Peters B, Bulik S, Tampe R, Van Endert PM, Holzhutter HG. Identifying MHC class I epitopes by predicting the TAP transport efficiency of epitope precursors. *J Immunol*. 2003;171:1741–1749.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12902473
320. Tenzer S, Peters B, Bulik S, et al. Modeling the MHC class I pathway by combining predictions of proteasomal cleavage, TAP transport and MHC class I binding. *Cell Mol Life Sci*. 2005;62:1025–1037.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15868101
321. York IA, Roop C, Andrews DW, Riddell SR, Graham FL, Johnson DC. A cytosolic herpes simplex virus protein inhibits antigen presentation to CD8+ T lymphocytes. *Cell*. 1994;77:525–535.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8187174
322. Früh K, Ahn K, Djaballah H, et al. A viral inhibitor of peptide transporters for antigen presentation. *Nature*. 1995;375:415–418.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7760936
323. Hill A, Jugovic P, York I, et al. Herpes simplex virus turns off the TAP to evade host immunity. *Nature*. 1995;375:411–415.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7760935
324. Stockinger B, Pessara U, Lin RH, Habicht J, Grez M, Koch N. A role of Ia-associated invariant chains in antigen processing and presentation. *Cell*. 1989;56:683–689.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2917369
325. Brodsky FM, Guagliardi LE. The cell biology of antigen processing and presentation. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 1991;9:707–744.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1910692
326. Germain RN, Margulies DH. The biochemistry and cell biology of antigen processing and presentation. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 1993;11:403–450.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8476568
327. Elliot WL, Stille CJ, Thomas LJ, Humphreys RE. An hypothesis on the binding of an amphipathic, a helical sequence in Ii to the desetope of class II antigens. *J Immunol*. 1987;138:2949–2952.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3494776
328. Roche PA, Cresswell P. Invariant chain association with HLA-DR molecules inhibits immunogenic peptide binding. *Nature*. 1990;345:615–618.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2190094
329. Teyton L, O'Sullivan D, Dickson PW, et al. Invariant chain distinguishes between the exogenous and endogenous antigen presentation pathways. *Nature*. 1990;348:39–44.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2234057
330. Roche PA, Cresswell P. Proteolysis of the class II-associated invariant chain generates a peptide binding site in intracellular HLA-DR molecules. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1991;88:3150–3154.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2014234
331. Bodmer H, Viville S, Benoist C, Mathis D. Diversity of endogenous epitopes bound to MHC class II molecules limited by invariant chain. *Science*. 1994;263:1284–1286.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7510069
332. Long EO, LaVaute T, Pinet V, Jaraquemada D. Invariant chain prevents the HLA-DR-restricted presentation of a cytosolic peptide. *J Immunol*. 1994;153:1487–1494.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8046228
333. Roche PA, Marks MS, Cresswell P. Formation of a nine-subunit complex by HLA class II glycoproteins and the invariant chain. *Nature*. 1991; 354:392–394.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1956401

334. Fling SP, Arp B, Pious D. HLA-DMA and -DMB genes are both required for MHC class II/peptide complex formation in antigen-presenting cells. *Nature*. 1994;368:554–558. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8139690
335. Sadegh-Nasseri S, Stern LJ, Wiley DC, Germain RN. MHC class II function preserved by low-affinity peptide interactions preceding stable binding. *Nature*. 1994;370:647–650. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8065450
336. Mellins E, Kempin S, Smith L, Monji T, Pious D. A gene required for class II-restricted antigen presentation maps to the major histocompatibility complex. *J Exp Med*. 1991;174:1607–1615. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1744588
337. Riberdy JM, Newcomb JR, Surman MJ, Barbosa JA, Cresswell P. HLA-DR molecules from an antigen-processing mutant cell line are associated with invariant chain peptides. *Nature*. 1992;360:474–477. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1448172
338. Morris P, Shaman J, Attaya M, et al. An essential role for HLA-DM in antigen presentation by class II major histocompatibility molecules. *Nature*. 1994;368:551–554. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8139689
339. Sette A, Ceman S, Kubo RT, et al. Invariant chain of peptides in most HLA-DR molecules of an antigen-processing mutant. *Science*. 1992;258:1801–1804. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1465617
340. Denzin LK, Cresswell P. HLA-DM induces CLIP dissociation from MHC class II ab dimers and facilitates peptide loading. *Cell*. 1995; 82:155–165. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7606781
341. Denzin LK, Robbins NF, Carboy-Newcome C, Cresswell P. Assembly and intracellular transport of HLA-DM and correction of the class II antigen-processing defect in T2 cells. *Immunity*. 1994;1:595–606. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7600288
342. Alfonso C, Han JO, Williams GS, Karlsson L. The impact of H2-DM on humoral immune responses. *J Immunol*. 2001;167:6348–6355. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11714799
343. Sloan VS, Cameron P, Porter G, et al. Mediation by HLA-DM of dissociation of peptides from HLA-DR. *Nature*. 1995;375:802–806. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7596415
344. Sherman MA, Weber DA, Jensen PE. DM enhances peptide binding to class II MHC by release of invariant chain-derived peptide. *Immunity*. 1995;3:197–205. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7648393
345. Pezeshki AM, Cote MH, Azar GA, Routy JP, Boulassel MR, Thibodeau J. Forced expression of HLA-DM at the surface of dendritic cells increases loading of synthetic peptides on MHC class II molecules and modulates T cell responses. *J Immunol*. 2011;187:74–81. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21622867
346. Benacerraf B. A hypothesis to relate the specificity of T lymphocytes and the activity of I region-specific Ir genes in macrophages and B lymphocytes. *J Immunol*. 1978;120:1809–1812. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/77879
347. Rosenthal AS, Barcinski MA, Blake JT. Determinant selection is a macrophage dependent immune response gene function. *Nature*. 1977; 267:156–158. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16073428
348. Paul WE, Shevach EM, Pickeral S, Thomas DW, Rosenthal AS. Independent populations of primed F1 guinea pig T-lymphocytes respond to antigen-pulsed parental peritoneal exudate cells. *J Exp Med*. 1977; 145:618–630. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/233906
349. Watts TH, Brian AA, Kappler JW, Marrack P, McConnell HM. Antigen presentation by supported planar membranes containing affinity-purified I-Ad. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1984;81:7564–7568. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6334313
350. Walden P, Nagy ZA, Klein J. Induction of regulatory T-lymphocyte responses by liposomes carrying major histocompatibility complex molecules and foreign antigen. *Nature*. 1985;315:327–329. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3873617
351. Norcross MA, Bentley DM, Margulies DH, Germain RN. Membrane Ia expression and antigen-presenting accessory cell function of L cells transfected with class II major histocompatibility genes. *J Exp Med*. 1984;160:1316–1337. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6436430
352. Demotz S, Grey HM, Sette A. The minimal number of class II MHC-antigen complexes needed for T cell activation. *Science*. 1990;249: 1028–1030. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2118680
353. Harding CV, Unanue ER. Quantitation of antigen-presenting cell MHC class II/peptide complexes necessary for T-cell stimulation. *Nature*. 1990;346:574–576. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2115981
354. Christinck ER, Luscher MA, Barber BH, Williams DB. Peptide binding to class I MHC on living cells and quantitation of complexes required for CTL lysis. *Nature*. 1991;352:67–70. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2062379
355. Cabral GA, Marciano-Cabral F, Funk GA, et al. Cellular and humoral immunity in guinea pigs to two major polypeptides derived from hepatitis B surface antigen. *J Gen Virol*. 1978;38:339–350. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/627876
356. Kirnbauer R, Booy F, Cheng N, Lowy DR, Schiller JT. Papillomavirus L1 major capsid protein self-assembles into virus-like particles that are highly immunogenic. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1992;89:12180–12184. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1334560
357. Stoute JA, Slaoui M, Heppner G, et al. A preliminary evaluation of a recombinant circumsporozoite protein vaccine against Plasmodium falciparum malaria. *New Engl J Med*. 1997;336:86–91. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8988885
358. Takeshita T, Kozlowski S, England RD, et al. Role of conserved regions of class I MHC molecules in the activation of CD8+ CTL by peptide and purified cell-free class I molecules. *Int Immunol*. 1993;5:1129–1138. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8241055
359. Brower RC, England R, Takeshita T, et al. Minimal requirements for peptide mediated activation of CD8+ CTL. *Molec Immunol*. 1994;31: 1285–1293. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7969189
360. Werdelin O. Chemically related antigens compete for presentation by accessory cells to T cells. *J Immunol*. 1982;129:1883–1891. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6181148
361. Rock KL, Benacerraf B. Inhibition of antigen-specific T lymphocyte activation by structurally related Ir gene-controlled polymers. Evidence of specific competition for accessory cell antigen presentation. *J Exp Med*. 1983;157:1618–1634. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6189942
362. Rock KL, Benacerraf B. Inhibition of antigen-specific T lymphocyte activation by structurally related Ir gene-controlled polymers. II. Competitive inhibition of I-E. *J Exp Med*. 1984;160:1864–1879. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6210339
363. Guillet JG, Lai MZ, Briner TJ, et al. Immunological self, nonself discrimination. *Science*. 1987;235:865–870. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2433769
364. Babbitt BP, Allen PM, Matsueda G, Haber E, Unanue ER. The binding of immunogenic peptides to Ia histocompatibility molecules. *Nature*. 1985;317:359–361. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3876513
365. Buus S, Sette A, Colon SM, Jenis DM, Grey HM. Isolation and characterization of antigen-Ia complexes involved in T cell recognition. *Cell*. 1986;47:1071–1077. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3490919
366. Phillips ML, Yip CC, Shevach EM, Delovitch TL. Photoaffinity labeling demonstrates binding between Ia molecules and nominal antigen on antigen-presenting cells. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1986;83:5634–5638. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2942939
367. Babbitt BP, Matsueda G, Haber E, Unanue ER, Allen PM. Antigenic competition at the level of peptide-Ia binding. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1986;83:4509–4513. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3459185
368. Buus S, Sette A, Colon SM, Miles C, Grey HM. The relation between major histocompatibility complex (MHC) restriction and the capacity of Ia to bind immunogenic peptides. *Science*. 1987;235:1353–1358. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2435001
369. Ronchese F, Schwartz RH, Germain RN. Functionally distinct subsites on a class II major histocompatibility complex molecule. *Nature*. 1987;329:254–256. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3041233

370. Sette A, Buus S, Colon S, Smith JA, Miles C, Grey HM. Structural characteristics of an antigen required for its interaction with Ia and recognition by T cells. *Nature*. 1987;328:395–399. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3497349
371. Kurata A, Berzofsky JA. Analysis of peptide residues interacting with MHC molecule or T-cell receptor: can a peptide bind in more than one way to the same MHC molecule? *J Immunol*. 1990;144:4526–4535. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2141038
372. Allen PM, Matsueda GR, Evans RJ, Dunbar JB Jr, Marshall GR, Unanue ER. Identification of the T-cell and Ia contact residues of a T-cell antigenic epitope. *Nature*. 1987;327:713–717. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2439915
373. Brown JH, Jardetzky T, Saper MA, Samraoui B, Bjorkman PJ, Wiley DC. A hypothetical model of the foreign antigen binding site of Class II histocompatibility molecules. *Nature*. 1988;332:845–850. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3258651
374. Bjorkman PJ, Saper MA, Samraoui B, Bennett WS, Strominger JL, Wiley DC. Structure of the human class I histocompatibility antigen HLA-A2. *Nature*. 1987;329:506–512.
375. Bjorkman PJ, Saper MA, Samraoui B, Bennett WS, Strominger JL, Wiley DC. The foreign antigen binding site and T cell recognition regions of class I histocompatibility antigens. *Nature*. 1987;329:512–518.
376. Madden DR, Gorga JC, Strominger JL, Wiley DC. The structure of HLA-B27 reveals nonamer self-peptides bound in an extended conformation. *Nature*. 1991;353:321–325. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1922337
377. Matsumura M, Fremont DH, Peterson PA, Wilson IA. Emerging principles for the recognition of peptide antigens by MHC class I molecules. *Science*. 1992;257:927–934. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1323878
378. Fremont DH, Matsumura M, Stura EA, Peterson PA, Wilson IA. Crystal structures of two viral peptides in complex with murine MHC class I H-2Kb. *Science*. 1992;257:919–927. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1323877
379. Germain RN, Ashwell JD, Lechler RI, et al. "Exon-shuffling" maps control of antibody and T-cell-recognition sites to the NH2 terminal domain of the class II major histocompatibility polypeptide Abeta. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1985;82:2940–2944. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3921966
380. Glimcher LH. T cells recognize multiple determinants on a single class II molecule, some of which depend on tertiary conformation. In: Sercarz EE, Berzofsky JA, eds. *Immunogenicity of Protein Antigens: Repertoires and Regulation*. Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press; 1987:131–138.
381. Haskins K, Kappler J, Marrack P. The major histocompatibility complex-restricted antigen receptor on T cells. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 1984;2:51–66.
382. Meuer SC, Acuto O, Hercend T, Schlossman SF, Reinherz EL. The human T-cell receptor. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 1984;2:23–50.
383. Davis MM. Molecular genetics of the T cell-receptor beta chain. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 1985;3:537–560. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3933533
384. Kronenberg M, Siu G, Hood LE, Shastri N. The molecular genetics of the T-cell antigen receptor and T-cell antigen recognition. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 1986;4:529–591. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3518750
385. Vasmatzis G, Cornette J, Sezerman U, DeLisi C. TcR recognition of the MHC-peptide dimer: structural properties of a ternary complex. *J Mol Biol*. 1996;261:72–89. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8760503
386. Garcia KC, Degano M, Stanfield RL, et al. An ab T cell receptor structure at 2.5Å and its orientation in the TCR-MHC complex. *Science*. 1996;274:209–219.
387. Garboczi DN, Ghosh P, Utz U, Fan QR, Biddison WE, Wiley DC. Structure of the complex between human T-cell receptor, viral peptide and HLA-A2. *Nature*. 1996;384:134–141. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8906788
388. Bhayani H, Paterson Y. Analysis of peptide binding patterns in different major histocompatibility complex/T cell receptor complexes using pigeon cytochrome c-specific T cell hybridomas. Evidence that a single peptide binds major histocompatibility complex in different conformations. *J Exp Med*. 1989;170:1609–1625. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2553848
389. Brett SJ, McKean D, York-Jolley J, Berzofsky JA. Antigen presentation to specific T cells by Ia molecules selectively altered by site-directed mutagenesis. *Int Immunol*. 1989;1:130–140. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2518656
390. McMichael AJ, Gotch FM, Santos-Aguado J, Strominger JL. Effect of mutations and variations of HLA-A2 on recognition of a virus peptide epitope by cytotoxic T lymphocytes. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1988;85:9194–9198. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2461564
391. Racioppi L, Ronchese F, Schwartz RH, Germain RN. The molecular basis of class II MHC allelic control of T cell responses. *J Immunol*. 1991;147:3718–3727. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1658150
392. Boehncke WH, Takeshita T, Pendleton CD, et al. The importance of dominant negative effects of amino acids side chain substitution in peptide-MHC molecule interactions and T cell recognition. *J Immunol*. 1993;150:331–341. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8093457
393. Rothbard JB, Busch R, Howland K, et al. Structural analysis of a peptide-HLA class II complex: identification of critical interactions for its formation and recognition by T cell receptor. *Int Immunol*. 1989;1:479–486. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2489038
394. Jardetzky TS, Gorga JC, Busch R, Rothbard J, Strominger JL, Wiley DC. Peptide binding to HLA-DR1: a peptide with most residues substituted to alanine retains MHC binding. *EMBO J*. 1990;9:1797–1803. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2189723
395. Rothbard JB, Busch R, Bal V, Trowsdale J, Lechler RI, Lamb JR. Reversal of HLA restriction by a point mutation in an antigenic peptide. *Int Immunol*. 1989;1:487–495. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2489039
396. Maryanski JL, Verdini AS, Weber PC, Salemme FR, Corradin G. Competitor analogs for defined T cell antigens: peptides incorporating a putative binding motif and polyproline or polyglycine spacers. *Cell*. 1990;60:63–72. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2295089
397. Ruppert J, Sidney J, Celis E, Kubo RT, Grey HM, Sette A. Prominent role of secondary anchor residues in peptide binding to HLA-A2.1 molecules. *Cell*. 1993;74:929–937. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8104103
398. Berzofsky JA. Epitope selection and design of synthetic vaccines: molecular approaches to enhancing immunogenicity and crossreactivity of engineered vaccines. *Ann N Y Acad Sci*. 1993;690:256–264. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7690214
399. Berzofsky JA. Designing peptide vaccines to broaden recognition and enhance potency. *Ann N Y Acad Sci*. 1995;754:161–168. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7625650
400. Takahashi H, Nakagawa Y, Pendleton CD, et al. Induction of broadly cross-reactive cytotoxic T cells recognizing an HIV-1 envelope determinant. *Science*. 1992;255:333–336. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1372448
401. Ahlers JD, Takeshita T, Pendleton CD, Berzofsky JA. Enhanced immunogenicity of HIV-1 vaccine construct by modification of the native peptide sequence. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1997;94:10856–10861. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9380724
402. Shirai M, Pendleton CD, Ahlers J, Takeshita T, Newman M, Berzofsky JA. Helper-CTL determinant linkage required for priming of anti-HIV CD8+ CTL in vivo with peptide vaccine constructs. *J Immunol*. 1994;152:549–556. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8283036
403. Ahlers JD, Dunlop N, Alling DW, Nara PL, Berzofsky JA. Cytokine-in-adjuvant steering of the immune response phenotype to HIV-1 vaccine constructs: GM-CSF and TNFa synergize with IL-12 to enhance induction of CTL. *J Immunol*. 1997;158:3947–3958. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9103465
404. Ahlers JD, Belyakov IM, Thomas EK, Berzofsky JA. High affinity T-helper epitope induces complementary helper and APC polarization, increased CTL and protection against viral infection. *J Clin Invest*. 2001;108:1677–1685. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11733563
405. Ridge JP, Di Rosa F, Matzinger P. A conditioned dendritic cell can be a temporal bridge between a CD4+ T-helper and a T-killer cell. *Nature*. 1998;393:474–478. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9624003

406. Bennett SRM, Carbone FR, Karamalis F, Flavell RA, Miller JFAP, Heath WR. Help for cytotoxic-T-cell responses is mediated by CD40 signalling. *Nature*. 1998;393:478–480. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9624004
407. Schoenberger SP, Toes REM, van der Voort EIH, Offringa R, Melief CJM. T-cell help for cytotoxic T lymphocytes is mediated by CD40-CD40L interactions. *Nature*. 1998;393:480–483.
408. Okazaki T, Pendleton CD, Sarobe P, et al. Epitope-enhancement of a CD4 HIV epitope toward the development of the next generation HIV vaccine. *J Immunol*. 2006;176:3753–3759. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16517744
409. Pogue RR, Eron J, Frelinger JA, Matsui M. Amino-terminal alteration of the HLA-A*0201-restricted human immunodeficiency virus pol peptide increases complex stability and in vitro immunogenicity. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1995;92:8166–8170. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7545295
410. Parkhurst MR, Salgaller ML, Southwood S, et al. Improved induction of melanoma-reactive CTL with peptides from the melanoma antigen gp100 modified at HLA-A*0201-binding residues. *J Immunol*. 1996; 157:2539–2548. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8805655
411. Sarobe P, Pendleton CD, Akatsuka T, et al. Enhanced in vitro potency and in vivo immunogenicity of a CTL epitope from hepatitis C virus core protein following amino acid replacement at secondary HLA-A2.1 binding positions. *J Clin Invest*. 1998;102:1239–1248. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9739058
412. Okazaki T, Pendleton DC, Lemonnier F, Berzofsky JA. Epitope-enhanced conserved HIV-1 peptide protects HLA-A2-transgenic mice against virus expressing HIV-1 antigen. *J Immunol*. 2003;171:2548–2555. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12928405
413. Oh S, Terabe M, Pendleton CD, et al. Human CTL to wild type and enhanced epitopes of a novel prostate and breast tumor-associated protein, TARP, lyse human breast cancer cells. *Cancer Res*. 2004;64:2610–2618. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15059918
414. Okazaki T, Terabe M, Catanzarot AT, Pendleton CD, Yarchoan R, Berzofsky JA. Possible therapeutic vaccine strategy against HIV escape from RT inhibitors studied in HLA-A2 transgenic mice. *J Virol*. 2006;80: 10645–10651. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16920824
415. Rosenberg SA, Yang JC, Schwartzentruber DJ, et al. Immunologic and therapeutic evaluation of a synthetic peptide vaccine for the treatment of patients with metastatic melanoma. *Nat Med*. 1998;4:321–327. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9500606
416. Borbulevych OY, Do P, Baker BM. Structures of native and affinity-enhanced WT1 epitopes bound to HLA-A*0201: implications for WT1-based cancer therapeutics. *Mol Immunol*. 2010;47:2519–2524. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20619457
417. Cole DK, Edwards ESJ, Wynn KK, et al. Modification of MHC anchor residues generates heteroclitic peptides that alter TCR binding and T cell recognition. *J Immunol*. 2010;185:2600–2610. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20639478
418. Miles KM, Miles JJ, Madura F, Sewell AK, Cole DK. Real time detection of peptide-MHC dissociation reveals that improvement of primary MHC-binding residues can have a minimal, or no, effect on stability. *Mol Immunol*. 2011;48:728–732. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21130497
419. Hou YF, Kavanagh B, Fong L. Distinct CD8(+) T cell repertoires primed with agonist and native peptides derived from a tumor-associated antigen. *J Immunol*. 2008;180:1526–1534. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18209048
420. Jordan KR, McMahan RH, Kemmler CB, Kappler JW, Slansky JE. Peptide vaccines prevent tumor growth by activating T cells that respond to native tumor antigens. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2010;107:4652–4657. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20133772
421. Sette A, Vitiello A, Reherman B, et al. The relationship between class I binding affinity and immunogenicity of potential cytotoxic T cell epitopes. *J Immunol*. 1994;153:5586–5592. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7527444
422. Berzofsky JA, Ahlers JD, Derby MA, Pendleton CD, Arichi T, Belyakov IM. Approaches to improve engineered vaccines for human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) and other viruses that cause chronic infections. *Immunol Rev*. 1999;170:151–172. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10566149
423. Berzofsky JA, Ahlers JD, Belyakov IM. Strategies for designing and optimizing new generation vaccines. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2001;1:209–219. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11905830
424. DeGroot AS, Meister GE, Cornette JL, Margalit H, DeLisi C, Berzofsky JA. Computer prediction of T-cell epitopes. In: Levine MM, Woodrow GC, Kaper JB, Cobon GS, eds. *New Generation Vaccines*. New York, NY: Marcel Dekker, Inc.; 1997:127–138.
425. Falk K, Rötzschke O, Stevanovic S, Jung G, Rammensee HG. Allele-specific motifs revealed by sequencing of self-peptides eluted from MHC molecules. *Nature*. 1991;351:290–296. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1709722
426. Jardetzky TS, Lane WS, Robinson RA, Madden DR, Wiley DC. Identification of self peptides bound to purified HLA-B27. *Nature*. 1991;353: 326–329. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1922338
427. Romero P, Corradin G, Luescher IF, Maryanski JL. H-2Kd-restricted antigenic peptides share a simple binding motif. *J Exp Med*. 1991;174: 603–612. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1714934
428. Hunt DF, Henderson RA, Shabanowitz J, et al. Characterization of peptides bound to the class I MHC molecule HLA-A2.1 by mass spectrometry. *Science*. 1992;255:1261–1263. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1546328
429. Corr M, Boyd LF, Padlan EA, Margulies DH. H-2Dd exploits a four residue peptide binding motif. *J Exp Med*. 1993;178:1877–1892. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8245770
430. Schumacher TNM, De Bruijn MLH, Vernie LN, et al. Peptide selection by MHC class I molecules. *Nature*. 1991;350:703–706. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1708852
431. Tsomides TJ, Walker BD, Eisen HN. An optimal viral peptide recognized by CD8+ T cells binds very tightly to the restricting class I major histocompatibility complex protein on intact cells but not to the purified class I protein. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1991;88:11276–11280. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1722325
432. Hunt DF, Michel H, Dickinson TA, et al. Peptides presented to the immune system by the murine class II major histocompatibility complex molecule I-Ad. *Science*. 1992;256:1817–1820. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1319610
433. Sette A, Buus S, Appella E, et al. Prediction of major histocompatibility complex binding regions of protein antigens by sequence pattern analysis. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1989;86:3296–3300. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2717617
434. Chicz RM, Urban RG, Gorga JC, Vignali DAA, Lane WS, Strominger JL. Specificity and promiscuity among naturally processed peptides bound to HLA-DR alleles. *J Exp Med*. 1993;178:27–47. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8315383
435. Chicz RM, Urban RG, Lane WS, et al. Predominant naturally processed peptides bound to HLA-DR1 are derived from MHC-related molecules and are heterogeneous in size. *Nature*. 1992;358:764–768. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1380674
436. Hammer J, Takacs B, Sinigaglia F. Identification of a motif for HLA-DR1 binding peptides using M13 display libraries. *J Exp Med*. 1992;176:1007–1013. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1402647
437. Hammer J, Valsasnini P, Tolba K, et al. Promiscuous and allele-specific anchors in HLA-DR-binding peptides. *Cell*. 1993;74:197–203. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8334703
438. Sinigaglia F, Hammer J. Motifs and supermotifs for MHC class II binding peptides. *J Exp Med*. 1995;181:449–451. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7836904
439. Marshall KW, Wilson KJ, Liang J, Woods A, Zaller D, Rothbard JB. Prediction of peptide affinity to HLA DRB1*0401. *J Immunol*. 1995; 154:5927–5933. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7751636
440. Jardetzky TS, Brown JH, Gorga JC, et al. Three-dimensional structure of a human class II histocompatibility molecule complexed with superantigen. *Nature*. 1994;368:711–718. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8152483
441. Scott CA, Peterson PA, Teyton L, Wilson IA. Crystal structures of two I-A(d)-peptide complexes reveal that high affinity can be achieved without large anchor residues. *Immunity*. 1998;8:319–329. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9529149

442. Fremont DH, Monnaie D, Nelson CA, Hendrickson WA, Unanue ER. Crystal structure of I-A(k) in complex with a dominant epitope of lysozyme. *Immunity*. 1998;8:305–317. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9529148
443. Ghosh P, Amaya M, Mellins E, Wiley DC. The structure of an intermediate in class II MHC maturation: CLIP bound to HLA-DR3. *Nature*. 1995;378:457–462. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7477400
444. Davis MM, Bjorkman PJ. T-cell antigen receptor genes and T-cell recognition. *Nature*. 1988;334:395–402. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3043226
445. Ogasawara K, Maloy WL, Schwartz RH. Failure to find holes in the T cell repertoire. *Nature*. 1987;325:450–452. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2433591
446. Alexander J, Snoke K, Ruppert J, et al. Functional consequences of engagement of the T cell receptor by low affinity ligands. *J Immunol*. 1993;150:1–7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8417115
447. Alexander J, Oseroff C, Sidney J, Sette A. Derivation of HLA-B*0702 transgenic mice: functional CTL repertoire and recognition of human B*0702-restricted CTL epitopes. *Hum Immunol*. 2003;64:211–223.
448. Firat H, Cochet M, Rohrlich PS, et al. Comparative analysis of the CD8(+) T cell repertoires of H-2 class I wild-type/HLA-A2.1 and H-2 class I knockout/HLA-A2.1 transgenic mice. *Int Immunol*. 2002;14:925–934. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12147629
449. Shirai M, Arichi T, Nishioka M, et al. CTL responses of HLA-A2.1-transgenic mice specific for hepatitis C viral peptides predict epitopes for CTL of humans carrying HLA-A2.1. *J Immunol*. 1995;154:2733–2742. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7533182
450. Soroosh P, Shokri F, Azizi M, Jeddi-Tehrani M. Analysis of T-cell receptor beta chain variable gene segment usage in healthy adult responders and nonresponders to recombinant hepatitis B vaccine. *Scand J Immunol*. 2003;57:423–31. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12753498
451. Schaeffer EB, Sette A, Johnson DL, et al. Relative contribution of " determinant selection" and "holes in the T-cell repertoire" to T-cell responses. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1989;86:4649–4653. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2471972
452. Moudgil KD, Grewal IS, Jensen PE, Sercarz EE. Unresponsiveness to a self-peptide of mouse lysozyme owing to hindrance of T cell receptor-major histocompatibility complex/peptide interaction caused by flanking epitopic residues. *J Exp Med*. 1996;183:535–546. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8627165
453. Sinha P, Chi HH, Kim HR, et al. Mouse lysozyme-M knockout mice reveal how the self-determinant hierarchy shapes the T cell repertoire against this circulating self antigen in wild-type mice. *J Immunol*. 2004;173:1763–1771. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15265906
454. Hernandez J, Lee PP, Davis MM, Sherman LA. The use of HLA A2.1/p53 peptide tetramers to visualize the impact of self tolerance on the TCR repertoire. *J Immunol*. 2000;164:596–602. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10623800
455. Theobald M, Biggs J, Hernández J, Lustgarten J, Labadie C, Sherman LA. Tolerance to p53 by A2.1-restricted cytotoxic T lymphocytes. *J Exp Med*. 1997;185:833–841. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9120389
456. Sandberg JK, Franksson L, Sundback J, et al. T cell tolerance based on avidity thresholds rather than complete deletion allows maintenance of maximal repertoire diversity. *J Immunol*. 2000;165:25–33. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10861031
457. Slifka MK, Blattman JN, Sourdive DJ, et al. Preferential escape of subdominant CD8+ T cells during negative selection results in an altered antiviral T cell hierarchy. *J Immunol*. 2003;170:1231–1239. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12538681
458. Gross DA, Graff-Dubois S, Opolon P, et al. High vaccination efficiency of low-affinity epitopes in antitumor immunotherapy. *J Clin Invest*. 2004;113:425–433. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14755339
459. Dzutsev AH, Belyakov IM, Isakov DV, Margulies DH, Berzofsky JA. Avidity of CD8 T cells sharpens immunodominance. *Int Immunol*. 2007;19:497–507. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17376783
460. Trautmann L, Rimbert M, Echasserieau K, et al. Selection of T cell clones expressing high-affinity public TCRs within Human cytomegalovirus-specific CD8 T cell responses. *J Immunol*. 2005;175:6123–6132. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16237109
461. Alexander-Miller MA, Leggatt GR, Berzofsky JA. Selective expansion of high or low avidity cytotoxic T lymphocytes and efficacy for adoptive immunotherapy. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1996;93:4102–4107. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8633023
462. Gallimore A, Dumrese T, Hengartner H, Zinkernagel RM, Rammensee HG. Protective immunity does not correlate with the hierarchy of virus-specific cytotoxic T cell responses to naturally processed peptides. *J Exp Med*. 1998;187:1647–1657. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9584143
463. Messaoudi I, Patino JA, Dyall R, LeMaoult J, Nikolich-Zugich J. Direct link between MHC polymorphism, T cell avidity, and diversity in immune defense. *Science*. 2002;298:1797–1800. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12459592
464. Tian S, Maile R, Collins EJ, Frelinger JA. CD8(+) T cell activation is governed by TCR-Peptide/MHC affinity, not dissociation rate. *J Immunol*. 2007;179:2952–2960. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17709510
465. Schmid DA, Irving MB, Posevitz V, et al. Evidence for a TCR affinity threshold delimiting maximal CD8 T cell function. *J Immunol*. 2010;184:4936–4946. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20351194
466. Carreno LJ, Bueno SM, Bull P, Nathenson SG, Kalergis AM. The half-life of the T-cell receptor/peptide-major histocompatibility complex interaction can modulate T-cell activation in response to bacterial challenge. *Immunology*. 2007;121:227–237. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17313485
467. Riquelme E, Carreno LJ, Gonzalez PA, Kalergis AM. The duration of TCR/pMHC interactions regulates CTL effector function and tumor-killing capacity. *Eur J Immunol*. 2009;39:2259–2269. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19637198
468. Carreno LJ, Riquelme EM, Gonzalez PA, et al. T-cell antagonism by short half-life pMHC ligands can be mediated by an efficient trapping of T-cell polarization toward the APC. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2010;107:210–215. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20075022
469. Aleksic M, Dushek O, Zhang H, et al. Dependence of T cell antigen recognition on T cell receptor-peptide MHC confinement time. *Immunity*. 2010;32:163–174. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20137987
470. Govern CC, Paczosa MK, Chakraborty AK, Husebyb ES. Fast on-rates allow short dwell time ligands to activate T cells. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2010;107:8724–8729. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20421471
471. Huppa JB, Axmann M, Mortelmaier MA, et al. TCR-peptide-MHC interactions in situ show accelerated kinetics and increased affinity. *Nature*. 2010;463:963–U143. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20164930
472. Huang J, Zarnitsyna VI, Liu BY, et al. The kinetics of two-dimensional TCR and pMHC interactions determine T-cell responsiveness. *Nature*. 2010;464:932–U156. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20357766
473. Ding YH, Smith KJ, Garboczi DN, Utz U, Biddison WE, Wiley DC. Two human T cell receptors bind in a similar diagonal mode to the HLA-A2/Tax peptide complex using different TCR amino acids. *Immunity*. 1998;8:403–411. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9586631
474. Slansky JE, Rattis FM, Boyd LF, et al. Enhanced antigen-specific antitumor immunity with altered peptide ligands that stabilize the MHC-peptide-TCR complex. *Immunity*. 2000;13:529–538. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11070171
475. Zaremba S, Barzaga E, Zhu M, Soares N, Tsang KY, Schlom J. Identification of an enhancer agonist cytotoxic T lymphocyte peptide from human carcinoembryonic antigen. *Cancer Res*. 1997;57:4570–4577. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9377571
476. Fong L, Hou Y, Rivas A, et al. Altered peptide ligand vaccination with Flt3 ligand expanded dendritic cells for tumor immunotherapy. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2001;98:8809–8814. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11427731

477. Tangri S, Ishioka GY, Huang X, et al. Structural features of peptide analogs of human histocompatibility leukocyte antigen class I epitopes that are more potent and immunogenic than wild-type peptide. *J Exp Med*. 2001;194:833–846. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11560998
478. Letourneau S, Im EJ, Mashishi T, et al. Design and pre-clinical evaluation of a universal HIV-1 vaccine. *PLoS One*. 2007;2:e984.
479. Depla E, Van der Aa A, Livingston BD, et al. Rational design of a multiepitope vaccine encoding T-lymphocyte epitopes for treatment of chronic hepatitis B virus infections. *J Virol*. 2008;82:435–450. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17942551
480. Livingston B, Crimi C, Newman M, et al. A rational strategy to design multiepitope immunogens based on multiple Th lymphocyte epitopes. *J Immunol*. 2002;168:5499–5506. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12023344
481. Livingston BD, Newman M, Crimi C, McKinney D, Chesnut R, Sette A. Optimization of epitope processing enhances immunogenicity of multiepitope DNA vaccines. *Vaccine*. 2001;19:4652–4660. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11535313
482. Wilson CC, McKinney D, Anders M, et al. Development of a DNA vaccine designed to induce cytotoxic T lymphocyte responses to multiple conserved epitopes in HIV-1. *J Immunol*. 2003;171:5611–5623. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14607970
483. Delamarre L, Couture R, Mellman I, Trombetta ES. Enhancing immunogenicity by limiting susceptibility to lysosomal proteolysis. *J Exp Med*. 2006;203:2049–2055. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16908625
484. Spearman P, Kalams S, Elizaga M, et al. Safety and immunogenicity of a CTL multiepitope peptide vaccine for HIV with or without GM-CSF in a phase I trial. *Vaccine*. 2009;27:243–249. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18996425
485. Jin X, Newman MJ, De-Rosa S, et al. A novel HIV T helper epitope-based vaccine elicits cytokine-secreting HIV-specific CD4+ T cells in a phase I clinical trial in HIV-uninfected adults. *Vaccine*. 2009;27:7080–7086. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19786145
486. Takeshita T, Takahashi H, Kozlowski S, et al. Molecular analysis of the same HIV peptide functionally binding to both a class I and a class II MHC molecule. *J Immunol*. 1995;154:1973–1986. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7530749
487. Alexander-Miller MA, Parker KC, Tsukui T, Pendleton CD, Coligan JE, Berzofsky JA. Molecular analysis of presentation by HLA-A2.1 of a promiscuously binding V3 loop peptide from the HIV-1 envelope protein to human CTL. *Int Immunol*. 1996;8:641–649. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8671651
488. Abiru N, Wegmann D, Kawasaki E, Gottlieb P, Simone E, Eisenbarth GS. Dual overlapping peptides recognized by insulin peptide B:9-23 T cell receptor AV13S3 T cell clones of the NOD mouse. *J Autoimmun*. 2000;14:231–237. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10756085
489. Talken BL, Schafermeyer KR, Bailey CW, Lee DR, Hoffman RW. T cell epitope mapping of the Smith antigen reveals that highly conserved Smith antigen motifs are the dominant target of T cell immunity in systemic lupus erythematosus. *J Immunol*. 2001;167:562–568. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11418695
490. Takahashi H, Merli S, Putney SD, et al. A single amino acid interchange yields reciprocal CTL specificities for HIV gp160. *Science*. 1989;246:118–121. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2789433
491. Takahashi H, Houghten R, Putney SD, et al. Structural requirements for class-I MHC molecule-mediated antigen presentation and cytotoxic T-cell recognition of an immunodominant determinant of the HIV envelope protein. *J Exp Med*. 1989;170:2023–2035. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2479705
492. De Magistris MT, Alexander J, Coggeshall M, et al. Antigen analogmajor histocompatibility complexes act as antagonists of the T cell receptor. *Cell*. 1992;68:625–634. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1739971
493. Sette A, Alexander J, Ruppert J, et al. Antigen analogs/MHC complexes as specific T cell receptor antagonists. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 1994;12:413–431. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8011286
494. Lorenz RG, Allen PM. Direct evidence for functional self-protein/Ia-molecule complexes in vivo. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1988;85:5220–5223. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2839836
495. Evavold BD, Allen PM. Separation of IL-4 production from Th cell proliferation by an altered T cell receptor ligand. *Science*. 1991;252:1308–1310. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1833816
496. Evavold BD, Williams SG, Hsu BL, Buus S, Allen PM. Complete dissection of the Hb(64-76) determinant using Th1, Th2 clones and T cell hybridomas. *J Immunol*. 1992;148:347–353. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1370311
497. Pfeiffer C, Stein J, Southwood S, Ketelaar H, Sette A, Bottomly K. Altered peptide ligands can control CD4 T lymphocyte differentiation in vivo. *J Exp Med*. 1995;181:1569–1574. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7699337
498. Chaturvedi P, Yu Q, Southwood S, Sette A, Singh B. Peptide analogs with different affinities for MHC alter the cytokine profile of T helper cells. *Int Immunol*. 1996;8:745–755. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8671663
499. Sloan-Lancaster J, Evavold BD, Allen PM. Induction of T-cell anergy by altered T-cell-receptor ligand on live antigen-presenting cells. *Nature*. 1993;363:156–159. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8483498
500. Sloan-Lancaster J, Shaw AS, Rothbard JB, Allen PM. Partial T cell signaling: altered phospho-z and lack of Zap70 recruitment in APL-induced T cell anergy. *Cell*. 1994;79:913–922. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8001128
501. Tsitoura DC, Holter W, Cerwenka A, Gelder CM, Lamb JR. Induction of anergy in human T helper 0 cells by stimulation with altered T cell antigen receptor ligands. *J Immunol*. 1996;156:2801–2808. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8609399
502. Mueller DL, Jenkins MK, Schwartz RH. Clonal expansion versus functional clonal inactivation: a costimulatory signalling pathway determines the outcome of T cell antigen receptor occupancy. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 1989;7:445–480. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2653373
503. Racioppi L, Ronchese F, Matis LA, Germain RN. Peptide-major histocompatibility complex class II complexes with mixed agonist/antagonist properties provide evidence for ligand-related differences in T cell receptor-dependent intracellular signaling. *J Exp Med*. 1993;177:1047–1060. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8384651
504. Madrenas J, Wange RL, Wang JL, Isakov N, Samelson LE, Germain RN. Zeta phosphorylation without ZAP-70 activation induced by TCR antagonists or partial agonists. *Science*. 1995;267:515–518. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7824949
505. Madrenas J, Chau LA, Smith J, Bluestone JA, Germain RN. The efficiency of CD4 recruitment to ligand-engaged TCR controls the agonist/partial agonist properties of peptide-MHC molecule ligands. *J Exp Med*. 1997;185:219–229. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9016871
506. McKeithan TW. Kinetic proofreading in T-cell receptor signal transduction. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1995;92:5042–5046. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7761445
507. DeGroot AS, Jesdale BM, Berzofsky JA. Prediction and determination of MHC ligands and T cell epitopes. In: Kaufmann SHE, Kabelitz D, eds. *Immunology of Infection*. London, United Kingdom: Academic Press; 1998:79–108.
508. Kessler JH, Melief CJM. Identification of T-cell epitopes for cancer immunotherapy. *Leukemia*. 2007;21:1859–1874. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17611570
509. De Groot AS, Cohen T, Ardito M, Moise L, Martin B, Berzofsky JA. Use of bioinformatics to predict MHC ligands and T-cell epitopes: application to epitope-driven vaccine design. In: Elsevier, ed. *Methods in Microbiology*. Vol. 37. 2010:35–66.
510. Salimi N, Fleri W, Peters B, Sette A. Design and utilization of epitope-based databases and predictive tools. *Immunogenetics*. 2010;62:185–196. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20213141
511. DeLisi C, Berzofsky JA. T cell antigenic sites tend to be amphipathic structures. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1985;82:7048–7052. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2413457
512. Spouge JL, Guy HR, Cornette JL, et al. Strong conformational propensities enhance T-cell antigenicity. *J Immunol*. 1987;138:204–212. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2431054
513. Stille CJ, Thomas LJ, Reyes VE, Humphreys RE. Hydrophobic strip-of-helix algorithm for selection of T cell-presented peptides. *Molec Immunol*. 1987;24:1021–1027. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2825000

514. Sette A, Doria G, Adorini L. A microcomputer program for hydrophilicity and amphipathicity analysis of protein antigens. *Mol Immunol*. 1986;23:807–810. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2432413
515. Madden DR, Garboczi DN, Wiley DC. The antigenic identity of peptide-MHC complexes: a comparison of the conformations of five viral peptides presented by HLA-A2. *Cell*. 1993;75:693–708. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7694806
516. Carbone FR, Fox BS, Schwartz RH, Paterson Y. The use of hydrophobic a-helix-defined peptides in delineating the T cell determinant for pigeon cytochrome c. *J Immunol*. 1987;138:1838–1844. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2434562
517. Cornette JL, Margalit H, DeLisi C, Berzofsky JA. Concepts and methods in the identification of T cell epitopes and their use in the construction of synthetic vaccines. *Methods Enzymol*. 1989;178:611–634. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2481216
518. Cornette JL, Margalit H, DeLisi C, Berzofsky JA. The amphipathic Helix as a structural feature involved in T-cell recognition. In: Epand RM, ed. *The Amphipathic Helix*. Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press; 1993:333–346.
519. Rothbard JB, Taylor WR. A sequence pattern common to T cell epitopes. *EMBO J*. 1988;7:93–100. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2452085
520. Reyes VE, Chin LT, Humphreys RE. Selection of class I MHC-restricted peptides with the strip-of-helix hydrophobicity algorithm. *Molec Immunol*. 1988;25:867–871. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3264884
521. Cornette JL, Margalit H, Berzofsky JA, DeLisi C. Periodic variation in side-chain polarities of T-cell antigenic peptides correlates with their structure and activity. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1995;92:8368–8372. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7667297
522. Jorgensen KW, Buus S, Nielsen M. Structural properties of MHC class II ligands, implications for the prediction of MHC class II epitopes. *Plos One*. 2010;5.
523. Dimitrov I, Garnev P, Flower DR, Doytchinova I. MHC class II binding prediction-a little help from a friend. *J Biomed Biotechnol*. 2010;2010:705821. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20508817
524. Lin HH, Ray S, Tongchusak S, Reinherz EL, Brusic V. Evaluation of MHC class I peptide binding prediction servers: applications for vaccine research. *Bmc Immunol*. 2008;9.
525. Gupta A, Chaukiker D, Singh TR. Comparative analysis of epitope predictions: proposed library of putative vaccine candidates for HIV. *Bioinformation*. 2011;5:386–389. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21383906
526. Pamer EG, Harty JT, Bevan MJ. Precise prediction of a dominant class I MHC-restricted epitope of Listeria monocytogenes. *Nature*. 1991;353:852–855. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1719425
527. Hill AVS, Elvin J, Willis AC, et al. Molecular analysis of the association of HLA-B53 and resistance to severe malaria. *Nature*. 1992;360:434–439. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1280333
528. Lipford GB, Hoffman M, Wagner H, Heeg K. Primary in vivo responses to ovalbumin: probing the predictive value of the Kb binding motif. *J Immunol*. 1993;150:1212–1222. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7679422
529. Nijman HW, Houbiers JGA, Vierboom MPM, et al. Identification of peptide sequences that potentially trigger HLA-A2.1-restricted cytotoxic T lymphocytes. *Eur J Immunol*. 1993;23:1215–1219. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7684681
530. Altuvia Y, Berzofsky JA, Rosenfeld R, Margalit H. Sequence features that correlate with MHC restriction. *Molec Immunol*. 1994;31:1–19. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8302295
531. Meister GE, Roberts CGP, Berzofsky JA, DeGroot AS. Two novel T cell epitope prediction algorithms based on MHC-binding motifs; comparison of predicted and published epitopes from Mycobacterium tuberculosis and HIV protein sequences. *Vaccine*. 1995;13:581–591.
532. Kaufman JF, Auffray C, Korman AJ, Shackelford DA, Strominger J. The class II molecules of the human and murine major histocompatibility complex. *Cell*. 1984;36:1–13. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6198089
533. Zhang C, Anderson A, DeLisi C. Structural principles that govern the peptide-binding motifs of class I MHC molecules. *J Mol Biol*. 1998;281:929–947. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9719645
534. Sturniolo T, Bono E, Ding J, et al. Generation of tissue-specific and promiscuous HLA ligand databases using DNA microarrays and virtual HLA class II matrices. *Nat Biotechnol*. 1999;17:555–561. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10385319
535. Zhang C, Cornette JL, Berzofsky JA, DeLisi C. The organization of human leukocyte antigen class I epitopes in HIV genome products: implications for HIV evolution and vaccine design. *Vaccine*. 1997;15:1291–1302. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9302734
536. Hammer J, Bono E, Gallazzi F, Belunis C, Nagy Z, Sinigaglia F. Precise prediction of major histocompatibility complex class II-peptide interaction based on peptide side chain scanning. *J Exp Med*. 1994;180:2353–2358. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7964508
537. Parker KC, Bednarek MA, Coligan JE. Scheme for ranking potential HLA-A2 binding peptides based on independent binding of individual peptide side-chains. *J Immunol*. 1994;152:163–175. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8254189
538. Fleckenstein B, Kalbacher H, Muller CP, et al. New ligands binding to the human leukocyte antigen class II molecule DRB1*0101 based on the activity pattern of an undecapeptide library. *Eur J Biochem*. 1996;240:71–77. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8797837
539. Schuler MM, Nastke MD, Stevanovikc S. SYFPEITHI: database for searching and T-cell epitope prediction. *Method Mol Biol*. 2007;409:75–93. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18449993
540. Jesdale BM, Mullen L, Meisell J, Marznello M, Deocampo G, De Groot AS. *Epimatrix and Epimer, Tools for HIV Research*. Vaccines: Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory Press; 1997.
541. Kim Y, Sidney J, Pinilla C, Sette A, Peters B. Derivation of an amino acid similarity matrix for peptide: MHC binding and its application as a Bayesian prior. *Bmc Bioinformatics*. 2009;10. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19948066
542. Davenport MP, Ho Shon IAP, Hill AVS. An empirical method for the prediction of T-cell epitopes. *Immunogenetics*. 1995;42:392–397. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7590973
543. Davenport MP, Godkin A, Friede T, et al. A distinctive peptide binding motif for HLA-DRB1*0407, an HLA-DR4 subtype not associated with rheumatoid arthritis. *Immunogenetics*. 1997;45:229–232. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8995193
544. Leggatt GR, Hosmalin A, Pendleton CD, Kumar A, Hoffman S, Berzofsky JA. The importance of pairwise interactions between peptide residues in the delineation of T cell receptor specificity. *J Immunol*. 1998;161:4728–4735. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9794403
545. James EA, Moustakas AK, Bui J, Nouv R, Papadopoulos GK, Kwok WW. The binding of antigenic peptides to HLA-DR is influenced by interactions between Pocket 6 and Pocket 9. *J Immunol*. 2009;183:3249–3258. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19648278
546. Moutaftsi M, Peters B, Pasquetto V, et al. A consensus epitope prediction approach identifies the breadth of murine T(CD8+)-cellresponses to vaccinia virus. *Nat Biotechnol*. 2006;24:817–819. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16767078
547. Sidney J, Grey HM, Southwood S, et al. Definition of an HLA-A3-like supermotif demonstrates the overlapping peptide-binding repertoires of common HLA molecules. *Hum Immunol*. 1996;45:79–93. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8882405
548. Kropshofer H, Max H, Halder T, Kalbus M, Muller CA, Kalbacher H. Self-peptides from four HLA-DR alleles share hydrophobic anchor residues near the NH2-terminal including proline as a stop signal for trimming. *J Immunol*. 1993;151:4732–4742. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8409432
549. Sette A, Sidney J. Nine major HLA class I supertypes account for the vast preponderance of HLA-A and -B polymorphism. *Immunogenetics*. 1999;50:201–212. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10602880
550. Vajda S, Weng Z, Rosenfeld R, DeLisi C. Effect of conformational flexibility and solvation on receptor-ligand binding free energies. *Biochem*. 1994;33:13977–13988. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7947806
551. Sezerman U, Vajda S, DeLisi C. Free energy mapping of class I MHC molecules and structural determination of bound peptides. *Protein Science*. 1996;5:1272–1281. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8819160

552. Atanasova M, Dimitrov I, Flower DR, Doytchinova I. MHC class II binding prediction by molecular docking. *Molecular Informatics*. 2011;30:368–375.
553. Altuvia Y, Schueler O, Margalit H. Ranking potential binding peptides to MHC molecules by a computational threading approach. *J Mol Biol*. 1995;249:244–250. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7540211
554. Altuvia Y, Margalit H. A structure-based approach for prediction of MHC-binding peptides. *Methods*. 2004;34:454–459. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15542371
555. Antunes DA, Vieira GF, Rigo MM, Cibulski SP, Sinigaglia M, Chies JAB. Structural allele-specific patterns adopted by epitopes in the MHC-I cleft and reconstruction of MHC:peptide complexes to cross-reactivity assessment. *Plos One*. 2010;5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20442757
556. Bordner AJ. Towards universal structure-based prediction of class II MHC epitopes for diverse allotypes. *Plos One*. 2010;5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21187956
557. Mohanapriya A, Lulu S, Kayathri R, Kangueane P. Class II HLA-peptide binding prediction using structural principles. *Hum Immunol*. 2009; 70:159–169. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19187794
558. Schiewe AJ, Haworth IS. Structure-based prediction of MHC-peptide association: algorithm comparison and application to cancer vaccine design. *J Mol Graphics Model*. 2007;26:667–675. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17493854
559. Brusic V, Rudy G, Harrison LC. Prediction of MHC binding peptides using artificial neural networks. In: Stonier RJ, Yu XH, eds. *Complex Systems Mechanism of Adaptation*. Amsterdam, The Netherlands: IOS Press; 1994:253–260.
560. Nielsen M, Lund O. NN-align. An artificial neural network-based alignment algorithm for MHC class II peptide binding prediction. *Bmc Bioinformatics*. 2009;10. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19765293
561. Altuvia Y, Margalit H. Sequence signals for generation of antigenic peptides by the proteasome: implications for proteasomal cleavage mechanism. *J Mol Biol*. 2000;295:879–890. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10656797
562. Ginodi I, Vider-Shalit T, Tsaban L, Louzoun Y. Precise score for the prediction of peptides cleaved by the proteasome. *Bioinformatics*. 2008;24:477–483. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18216070
563. Diez-Rivero CM, Chenlo B, Zuluaga P, Reche PA. Quantitative modeling of peptide binding to TAP using support vector machine. *Proteins*. 2010;78:63–72. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19705485
564. Peters B, Sette A. Generating quantitative models describing the sequencespecificity of biological processes with the stabilized matrix method. *BMC Bioinformatics*. 2005;6:132. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15927070
565. Larsen MV, Lundegaard C, Lamberth K, et al. An integrative approach to CTL epitope prediction: a combined algorithm integrating MHC class I binding, TAP transport efficiency, and proteasomal cleavage predictions. *Eur J Immunol*. 2005;35:2295–2303. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15997466
566. Doytchinova IA, Flower DR. Class I T-cell epitope prediction: improvements using a combination of proteasome cleavage, TAP affinity, and MHC binding. *Mol Immunol*. 2006;43:2037–2044. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16524630
567. Doytchinova IA, Guan P, Flower DR. EpiJen: a server for multistep T cell epitope prediction. *BMC Bioinformatics*. 2006;7:131.
568. Larsen MV, Lundegaard C, Lamberth K, Buus S, Lund O, Nielsen M. Large-scale validation of methods for cytotoxic T-lymphocyte epitope prediction. *Bmc Bioinformatics*. 2007;8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17973982
569. Pira GL, Ivaldi F, Moretti P, Manca F. High throughput T epitope mapping and vaccine development. *J Biomed Biotechnol*. 2010;2010: 325720.
570. Scott DW, De Groot AS. Can we prevent immunogenicity of human protein drugs? *Ann Rheum Dis*. 2010;69:72–76. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19995750
571. Parker AS, Zheng W, Griswold KE, Bailey-Kellogg C. Optimization algorithms for functional deimmunization of therapeutic proteins. *BMC Bioinformatics*. 2010;11:180. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20380721
572. Cohen T, Moise L, Ardito M, Martin W, De Groot AS. A method for individualizing the prediction of immunogenicity of protein vaccines and biologic therapeutics: individualized T cell epitope measure (iTEM). *J Biomed Biotechnol*. 2010;2010. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20706613
573. Takahashi H, Cohen J, Hosmalin A, et al. An immunodominant epitope of the HIV gp160 envelope glycoprotein recognized by class I MHC molecule-restricted murine cytotoxic T lymphocytes. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1988;85:3105–3109. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2452443
574. Langton BC, Mackewicz CE, Wan AM, Andria ML, Benjamini E. Structural features of an antigen required for cellular interactions and for T-cell activation in an MHC-restricted response. *J Immunol*. 1988; 141:447–456. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3260252
575. Thomas DB, Skehel JJ, Mills KHG, Graham CM. A single amino acid substitution in influenza haemagglutinin abrogates recognition by a monoclonal antibody and a spectrum of subtype-specific L3T4+ T cell clones. *Eur J Immunol*. 1987;17:133–136. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2434337
576. Mozes E, McDevitt HO, Jaton JC, Sela M. The nature of the antigenic determinant in genetic control of antibody response. *J Exp Med*. 1969; 130:493–504. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/5807278
577. Mozes E, McDevitt HO, Jaton JC, Sela M. The genetic control of antibodyspecificity. *J Exp Med*. 1969;130:1263–1278. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4187525
578. Bluestein HG, Green I, Maurer PH, Benacerraf B. Specific immune response genes of the guinea pig. V: influence of the GA and GT immune response genes on the specificity of cellular and humoral immune responses to a terpolymer of L-glutamic acid, L-alanine, and L-tyrosine. *J Exp Med*. 1972;135:98–109. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/5009706
579. Berzofsky JA, Schechter AN, Shearer GM, Sachs DH. Genetic control of the immune response to staphyloccal nuclease. III. Time course and correlation between the response to native nuclease and the response to its polypeptide fragments. *J Exp Med*. 1977;145:111–112. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/830786
580. Berzofsky JA, Schechter AN, Shearer GM, Sachs DH. Genetic control of the immune response to staphylococcal nuclease. IV. H-2-linked control of the relative proportions of antibodies produced to different determinants of native nuclease. *J Exp Med*. 1977;145:123–145. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/63533
581. Campos-Neto A, Levine H, Schlossman SJ. T cell regulation of specific B cell responses. *J Immunol*. 1978;121:2235–2240.
582. Campos-Neto A, Levine H, Schlossman SJ. Immune response gene control of antibody specificity. *Cellular Immunol*. 1982;69:128–137. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6809338
583. Kohno Y, Berzofsky JA. Genetic control of the immune response to myoglobin. V. Antibody production in vitro is macrophage and T cell-dependent and is under control of two determinant-specific Ir genes. *J Immunol*. 1982;128:2458–2464. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6176636
584. Sercarz E, Cecka JM, Kipp D, Miller A. The steering function of T cells in expression of the antibody repertoire directed against multideterminant protein antigen. *Ann Immunol Inst Pasteur*. 1977;128:599. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/68705
585. Cecka JM, Stratton JA, Miller A, Sercarz EE. Structural aspects of immune recognition of lysozymes. III: T cell specificity restriction and its consequences for antibody specificity. *Eur J Immunol*. 1976;6:639–646. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1087241
586. Ferguson TA, Peters T Jr, Reed R, Pesce A, Michael JG. Immunoregulatory properties of antigenic fragments from bovine serum albumin. *Cellular Immunol*. 1983;78:1–12. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6601999
587. Kawamura H, Berkower I, Glover C, Berzofsky J. Helper T cell epitope specificity regulates B cell (antibody) specificity. *J Cell Biochem*. 1984;8A:211–220.

588. Chesnut RW, Colon SM, Grey HM. Antigen presentation by normal B cells B cell tumors and macrophages: functional biochemical comparison. *J Immunol*. 1982;128:1764–1768. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6977567
589. Chesnut RW, Colon SM, Grey HM. Requirements for the processing of antigen by antigen-presenting cells. I: functional comparison of B cell tumors and macrophages. *J Immunol*. 1982;129:2382–2388. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6982920
590. Lanzavecchia A. Antigen-specific interaction between T cells and B cells. *Nature*. 1985;314:537–539. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3157869
591. Chesnut RW, Grey HM. Studies on the capacity of B cells to serve as antigen-presenting cells. *J Immunol*. 1981;126:1075–1079. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6970212
592. Malynn BA, Wortis HH. Role of antigen-specific B cells in the induction of SRBC-specific T cell proliferation. *J Immunol*. 1984;132:2253–2258. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6201538
593. Rock KL, Benacerraf B, Abbas AK. Antigen presentation by hapten-specific B lymphocytes. I. Role of surface immunoglobulin receptors. *J Exp Med*. 1984;160:1102–1113. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6207262
594. Tony HP, Parker DC. Major histocompatibility complex-restricted polyclonal B cell responses resulting form helper T cell recognition of antiimmunoglobulin presented by small B lymphocytes. *J Exp Med*. 1985;161:223–241. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3155791
595. Kawamura H, Berzofsky JA. Enhancement of antigenic potency in vitro and immunogenicity in vivo by coupling the antigen to anti-immunoglobulin. *J Immunol*. 1986;136:58–65. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3079611
596. Davidson HW, Watts C. Epitope-directed processing of specific antigen by B lymphocytes. *J Cell Biol*. 1989;109:85–92. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2473083
597. Löwenadler B, Lycke N, Svanholm C, Svennerholm AM, Krook K, Gidlund M. T and B cell responses to chimeric proteins containing hete rologous T helper epitopes inserted at different positions. *Molec Immunol*. 1992;29:1185–1190. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1388243
598. Manca F, Fenoglio D, Kunkl A, Cambiaggi C, Sasso M, Celada F. Differential activation of T cell clones stimulated by macrophages exposed to antigen complexed with monoclonal antibodies. A possible influence of paratope specificity on the mode of antigen processing. *J Immunol*. 1988;140:2893–2898. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3129502
599. Manca F, Fenoglio D, Li Pira G, Kunkl A, Celada F. Effect of antigen/antibody ratio on macrophage uptake, processing, and presentation to T cells of antigen complexed with polyclonal antibodies. *J Exp Med*. 1991;173:37–48. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1985125
600. Watts C, Lanzavecchia A. Suppressive effect of antibody on processing of T cell epitopes. *J Exp Med*. 1993;178:1459–1463. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7690836
601. Simitsek PD, Campbell DG, Lanzavecchia A, Fairweather N, Watts C. Modulation of antigen processing by bound antibodies can boost or suppress class II major histocompatibility complex presentation of different T cell determinants. *J Exp Med*. 1995;181:1957–1963. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7539034
602. Bekoff MC, Levine H, Schlossman SF. T cell and Ir gene regulation of expression of a cross-reactive idiotype. *J Immunol*. 1982;129:1173–1180. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6809813
603. Kawamura H, Kohno Y, Busch M, Gurd FRN, Berzofsky JA. A major anti-myoglobin idiotype: influence of H-2-linked Ir genes on idiotype expression. *J Exp Med*. 1984;160:659–678. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6432932
604. Fauchère JL, Pliska V. Hydrophobic parameters p of amino-acid side chains from the partitioning of N-acetyl-amino-acid amides. *Eur J Med Chem*. 1983;18:369–374.

CHAPTER 24

Fc Receptors and Their Role in Immune Regulation and Inflammation

Jeffrey V. Ravetch • Falk Nimmerjahn

HISTORICAL BACKGROUND

Cellular receptors for immunoglobulins (Igs) were anticipated by the description of cytophilic antibodies of the IgG class, identified by Boyden and Sorkin in 1960.[1] These antibodies conferred upon normal cells, like macrophages, the capacity to specifically absorb antigen. Using sheep red blood cells (RBCs) as the antigen resulted in rosette formation between the cytophilic antisheep RBC antibodies and macrophages and provided a convenient means of visualization of the binding of cytophilic antibodies with normal cells. Subsequent studies by Berken and Benacerraf[2] suggested that the crystallized fragment (Fc) of the cytophilic antibody interacted with a cell surface receptor on macrophages. Similar studies on B-lymphocytes extended the generality of these receptors and led to the term *Fc receptor* (FcR) to denote the surface molecules on lymphoid and myeloid cells that are capable of interacting with the Fc of immunoglobulin molecules.[3] Studies on IgE, IgM, and IgA demonstrated the existence of distinct receptors for those isotypes as well on various immune cell types. Detailed biochemical characterization of Fc receptors was inaugurated by the studies of Kulczycki et al.[4] on the high-affinity IgE FcR of mast cells, revealing a hetero-oligomeric $\alpha\beta\gamma_2$ subunit structure. A distinction between FcRs for the IgE and IgG isotypes emerged with the observation of the very high (10^{10} M^{-1}) binding affinity of IgE for its receptor in comparison with the low binding (10^{6} M^{-1}) of IgG1 to its receptor. This distinction led to the realization that the functional IgG1 ligand was exclusively in the form of an immune complex (IC), whereas IgE binding occurred through monomer interaction with its receptor. This difference in binding affinity had significant functional implications for the structures of these receptors and mechanisms by which each isotype activated its target cell. Determination of the structure of these receptors was facilitated by their molecular cloning, beginning with the IgG FcRs[5,6] and followed by the IgE FcR.[7] Two distinct types of IgG receptors, differing in their transmembrane and cytoplasmic sequences, were identified that offered a molecular explanation for the apparent contradictory activation and inhibitory activities attributed to IgG FcRs. The primary structure of the subunits of the high-affinity IgE FcR revealed homology in the ligand binding α subunit to its IgG counterparts. However, the extent of similarity between these receptors became apparent with the observation that the γ chain subunit was common to both IgG and IgE FcRs, providing both assembly and signaling functions to these activation receptors.[8,9] This common structure suggested a functional link between IC diseases and allergic reactions, a prediction that was confirmed through mouse knockout studies of IgG FcRs.[10,11] The FcRs, through their dependence on the immunoreceptor tyrosine-based activation motif (ITAM) pathway of cellular activation, belonged to the family of immunoreceptors that included the antigen receptors on B and T cells. Three-dimensional crystal structures have been solved for the low-affinity IgG FcRs[12,13] and the high-affinity IgE FcR,[14] alone and in complex with their Ig ligands,[15,16] further establishing the close structural link between these Ig receptors.

The functional roles of IgG FcRs were suggested by the distribution of these receptors on both lymphoid and myeloid cells.[17] On myeloid cells, they were presumed to mediate effector cell activation, resulting in phagocytosis, antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity (ADCC), and release of inflammatory mediators. However, the well-known ability of the classical pathway of complement to generate activated fragments in response to ICs capable of inducing inflammatory responses by myeloid cells complicated the interpretation of the physiological role of IgG FcRs. Thus, the contribution of IgG FcRs to the mechanism of IC-mediated inflammation, as distinct from the role of complement, remained uncertain. Insight into this distinction was gained through the generation of mouse strains specifically deficient or blocked in either FcRs[10,18–20] or components of the classical complement pathway.[21] Studies on IC-mediated inflammatory responses in these animals, such as the Arthus reaction, led to the realization that IgG FcRs and not the classical pathway of complement activation were the functional mediators of inflammatory responses triggered by ICs.[20,22,23] The situation for IgE was less confounding, and the identification and characterization of a high-affinity receptor for this isotype on mast cells offered a plausible explanation for many of the inflammatory features of allergic reactions,[24] validated later by mouse knockouts of this receptor. IgG ICs had also been observed to mediate suppression of B-cell responses; thus, the presence of an IgG FcR activity on B cells provided a possible, but uncharacterized, mechanism for this inhibitory activity. Molecular characterization of this inhibitory activity for the B-cell FcR, FcRIIB, resulted in the first detailed description of an inhibitory motif, now termed the immunoreceptor tyrosine-based inhibitory motif (ITIM),[25,26] and the signaling pathway by which it abrogates ITAM-triggered activation. The ITIM mechanism is now recognized as ubiquitous and has resulted in the recognition of a large family of inhibitory receptors on immune cells that function to maintain proper

thresholds for activation and abrogate activation responses to terminate an immune reaction.[27]

FcRs are now recognized as central mediators of antibody-triggered responses, coupling the innate and adaptive immune responses in effector cell activation.[28] In addition to these specialized roles, the IgG FcRs have served as an example of the emerging class of balanced immunoreceptors, in which activation and inhibition are tightly coupled in response to ligand binding. Perturbations in either arm of the response have been shown to lead to pathological consequences and have been taken as a paradigm of how these systems are likely to work for those paired immunoreceptors with unknown ligand-binding functions. The newly described roles for FcRs in maintaining peripheral tolerance, shaping the antibody repertoire, regulating antigen-presenting cell (APC) maturation, and promoting mast cell survival indicate the diversity of functions that these receptors possess and their central role in modulating both afferent and efferent responses in the immune response.

This chapter focuses primarily on the IgG and IgE FcRs, for which substantial data on their structure, function, regulation, and role in a variety of physiological and pathological conditions are now available. The similarity in structure and signaling between those receptors and other members of this family, such as the IgA FcR and the recently discovered Fc-receptor for mouse and human IgM (FcμR), is also discussed. These FcRs will be referred to as "canonical Fc receptors," reflecting their shared structural and functional properties. In contrast, lectins such as SIGN-R1 and DC-SIGN, which bind IgG Fc when sialylated, represent a novel class of FcRs with distinct structures and functions and will be discussed in detail in the following. Other Ig receptors with specialized functions in the transport of Igs, such as the FcRn[29] and the poly-Ig FcR,[30] will not be discussed here.

STRUCTURE AND EXPRESSION

Molecular Genetics

Two general classes of canonical FcRs are now recognized: the activation receptors, characterized by the presence of a cytoplasmic ITAM sequence associated with the receptor, and the inhibitory receptor, characterized by the presence of an ITIM sequence. These two classes of receptors function in concert and are usually found coexpressed on the cell surface. Thus coengagement of both signaling pathways is the rule, setting thresholds for and ultimately determining the physiological outcome of effector cell responses. Among the factors that determine this threshold level are the actual affinities of the individual activating and inhibitory receptors for a specific IgG ligand and the expression level of the receptor pairs on immune effector cells. Importantly, the affinity of different antibody isotypes and subclasses for their respective activating and inhibitory FcRs varies significantly, thus explaining the differential activity of antibody isotypes in vivo.[20,31,32] In addition, alleles of specific FcRs have been described that alter their affinity for individual subclasses thus accounting for the variable responses seen in a population to an antibody (see subsequent discussion). Noncanonical FcRs such as the IgM receptors FcμR, Fca/μR, the poly-Ig receptor, and the sialylated IgG Fc receptors SIGN-R1 and DC-SIGN, contain neither ITAM nor ITIM motifs.

Subunit Composition

Canonical FcRs are typically type I integral membrane glycoproteins consisting of, at the least, a ligand recognition α subunit that confers isotype specificity for the receptor. α subunits for IgG, IgE, IgM, and IgA have been described.[17,33–35] These subunits typically consist of two extracellular domains of the IgV type superfamily, a single transmembrane domain and a relatively short intracytoplasmic domain. In activation FcRs, a signaling subunit of the γ family is often found, resulting in an $\alpha\gamma_2$ complex. The inhibitory FcγRIIB molecule, in contrast, is expressed as a single-chain receptor. The α subunits have apparent molecular weights of between 40 and 75 kDa, and share significant amino acid sequence homology in their extracellular domains. Alternatively, spliced forms of FcγRIIB modify the intracytoplasmic domain of this molecule. For example, the B2 form lacks sequences that inhibit internalization and thus demonstrates enhanced internalization of ICs, in comparison with FcγRIIB1. However, all the splice variants contain the ITIM motif, a necessary and sufficient domain for mediating inhibitory signaling. The conservation of this sequence in mice and humans, its presence in all splice variants, and the hyperresponsive phenotypes generated in mice deficient in this receptor all support inhibition as the central function of FcγRIIB. The specific structures of the α subunits of the canonical FcRs are shown in Figure 24.1. The notable exceptions to the general structure just outlined are seen for the high-affinity FcγRIα subunit, which has three extracellular domains; the activation FcγRIIAα subunit, which does not require additional subunits for assembly or signaling; and the glycosylphosphatidyl-inositol (GPI)-linked FcγRIIIB, which attaches to the cell surface through a GPI linkage, rather than through a transmembrane domain.

The γ subunit is found associated with activation IgG, IgE, and IgA FcRs, as well as with non-FcR molecules, such as paired Ig-like receptor A (PIR-A) and natural killer (NK) cell cytotoxicity receptors, but not with IgM receptors, nor the lectins SIGN-R1 and DC-SIGN.[36–38] It is required for assembly of the α subunits of these receptors by protecting these subunits from degradation in the endoplasmic reticulum. The γ chain is found as a disulfide-linked homodimer, with a short extracellular domain containing the cysteine involved in dimerization, a transmembrane domain, and an intracytoplasmic domain containing the ITAM. An aspartic acid residue found in the transmembrane domain of the γ chain is often associated with a basic amino acid residue in the transmembrane domain of the α subunit. The γ subunit belongs to a gene family that includes the T-cell receptor–associated ζ chain and the NK receptor DAP-10– and DAP-12–associated molecules.[39] FcγRIIIA can associate with the ζ chain, resulting in the $\alpha\zeta_2$ complex found in human NK cells.

A third subunit is found associated with the activation FcRs FcεRI and FcγRIII, the β subunit. This 33-kDa subunit has four transmembrane-spanning domains and amino and carboxy intracytoplasmic domains, belonging to the cluster

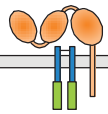
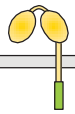
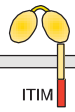
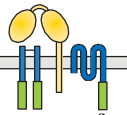
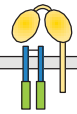
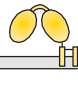
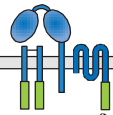
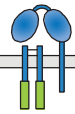
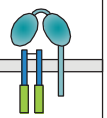
	FcγRI CD64	FcγRIIA CD32	FcγRIIB CD32	FcγRIIIA CD16		FcγRIIIB CD16	FcεRI		FcαRI CD89
Structure									
Subunit composition	γ_2 α	α	ITIM α	γ_2 α β	γ_2 α	α-GPI	γ_2 α β	γ_2 α	γ_2 α
Ka	10^8 M^{-1}	$2x10^6$ M^{-1}	$2x10^6$ M^{-1}	$5x10^5$ M^{-1}	$5x10^5$ M^{-1}	$2x10^5$ M^{-1}	10^{10} M^{-1}	10^{10} M^{-1}	$5x10^7$ M^{-1}
Binding Specificity	1. IgG1=IgG3 2. IgG4 3. IgG2	1. IgG1 2. IgG2=IgG3 3. IgG4	1. IgG1 2. IgG2=IgG3 3. IgG4	1. IgG1=IgG3	1. IgG1=IgG3	1. IgG1=IgG3	IgE	IgE	IgA_2=IgA_2
Expression	Macrophages Neutrophils Eosinophils Dendritic Cells	Macrophages Neutrophils Mast cells Eosinophils Platelets Dendritic Cells	Macrophages Neutrophils Mast cells Eosinophils Dendritic Cells FDC B cells	Mast cells Basophils	Macrophages Mast cells Basophils NK cells Dendritic Cells	Neutrophils	Mast cells Basophils	Mast cells Basophils Eosinophils Platelets Dendritic Cells	Macrophages Neutrophils Eosinophils
Class	Activation	Activation	Inhibition	Activation		Decoy	Activation	Activation	Activation
Function	-Inducible by inflammatory cytokines -Enhance effector responses at inflammatory sites -IC capturing by DC	-Effector cell activation by IC's, cytotoxic Ab	-Set threshold for effector cell activation by Fc -B cell repression -Maintain tolerance	-Dominant pathway for effector activation by IgG -In vivo ADCC -Arthus reaction -IC capture by DC -IC mediated DC maturation		-Sink for IC -Focus IC to PMN -Synergize with FcγRIIA	-Degranulation -Allergic reactions (Type I)	-Degranulation -Allergy -Antigen caption by DC	-IgA binding -IgA activation of effector cells

FIG. 24.1. Summary of Fc Receptor Structures, Expression Patterns, and in Vivo Functions. The immunoreceptor tyrosine-based activation motif signaling motif is indicated by the *green rectangle*; the immunoreceptor tyrosine-based inhibitor motif is indicated as a *red rectangle*. Alleles of FcγRIIA and FcγRIIIB and their binding properties are discussed in the text.

of differentiation (CD)20 family of tetraspan molecules.[24] An ITAM sequence is found in the intracytoplasmic carboxy domain. In mast cells and basophils, the β chain assembles into an $\alpha\beta\gamma_2$ complex with the α chain belonging to either FcγRIII or FcεRI. Its presence is required for assembly of FcεRI in rodents. In humans, however, $\alpha\gamma_2$ complexes of FcεRI are found in monocytes, Langerhans cells, and dendritic cells (DCs), in addition to the $\alpha\beta\gamma_2$ complexes found in mast cells and basophils. The ITAM motif found in the β subunit is not an autonomous activation sequence but functions as a signaling amplifier of the ITAM found in the γsubunits.[40]

Gene Organization, Linkage, and Polymorphisms

All α subunits of canonical FcRs share a common gene organization, which indicates that the evolution of this family of receptors resulted from gene duplication from a common ancestor.[41] Sequence divergence then resulted in the acquisition of distinctive specificities for these related sequences. Most of the genes belonging to the expanded FcR family, including the recently identified Fcμ-receptor, the Fcα/μR, the poly-Ig receptor, the group of FcR-homologous or -like (FCRL) proteins, the α chains of FcγRI, FcγRII, FcγRIII, and FcεRI including the common FcR-γ chain (Fig. 24.2), are found on the long arm of chromosome 1.[34,35,42–44] This region is syntenic with a comparable region on mouse chromosome 1; however, FcγRIα and several FCRLs are found on mouse chromosome 3. In humans, the α subunit of the IgA receptor is found on chromosome 19 as is the lectin DC-SIGN (CD209) and the β subunit is on chromosome 11. The FcγRII–FcγRIII locus on chromosome 1 is further linked to a variety of lupus susceptibility genes found in that region, including the *Sle1* cluster.[45] A locus linked to atopy has been identified at 11q12–13 and further delineated polymorphisms of the β chain (I181V and V183L) that are associated with a heightened risk of atopy. However, a direct functional association of these polymorphisms with the known biological activities of the β chain has not been found.[46]

Polymorphisms in the α chains of the FcγRs have been described, most notably in FcγRIIA and FcγRIIIA; these polymorphisms result in differences in binding affinity to specific IgG subclasses.[47] For example, a histidine at position 131 in FcγRIIA results in higher affinity binding to IgG2 and IgG3 than does an arginine at that position. Similarly, FcγRIIIA with valine at position 158 of the α chain has a higher binding affinity for IgG1 and 3 than does the polymorphic form with phenylalanine at that position. These polymorphisms translate into a more robust ADCC response for the FcγRIIIA val/val and the FcγRIIA his/his haplotype in vitro and has been positively correlated with a better clinical response to antitumor antibodies inclunding the CD20-specific antibody rituximab, the Her2/neu-specific antibody trastuzumab, and the epidermal growth factor receptor–specific antibody cetuximab in human lymphoma, metastatic breast cancer, and colorectal cancer patient cohorts, respectively.[48–53] This data is consistent with previous results obtained with rituximab

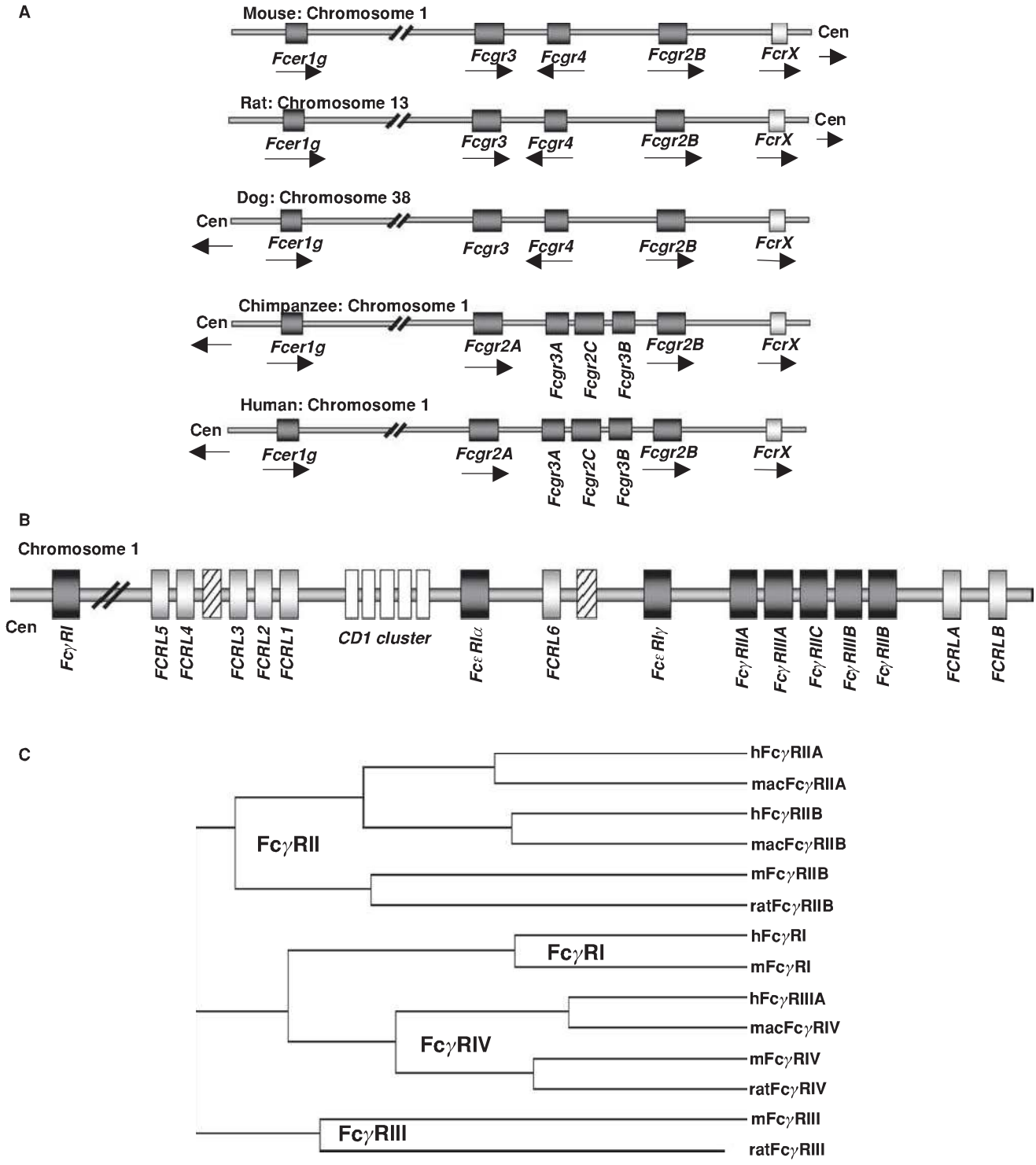


FIG. 24.2. Chromosomal Organization of Fc Receptor (FcR) and FcR-Like Genes. **A:** Localization of FcR genes in different species. **B:** The human FcR locus on chromosome 1. Classical FcR genes are shown in *dark grey*, FCRL genes as *light grey*, and the CD1 gene cluster on chromosome 1 as *white boxes*. Pseudogenes are indicated as hatched boxes. (adapted from Davis et al.[44]). **C:** The cladogramm shows the alignment of selective classical FcRs of humans (*h*), macaques (*mac*), mice (*m*), and rats.

and trastuzumab in mouse models, demonstrating an important role of cellular FcγRs for the activity of these therapeutic antibodies in vivo.[54,55] Four amino acids are polymorphic for FcγRIIIB at positions 18, 47, 64, and 88, which contribute to the neutrophil antigen polymorphisms for this receptor. Several studies have attempted to link specific FcR polymorphisms or copy number variations to autoimmune diseases, specifically to systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE).[56] Recent studies have reported associations in susceptibility to SLE in both murine and human populations with levels of FcγRIIB

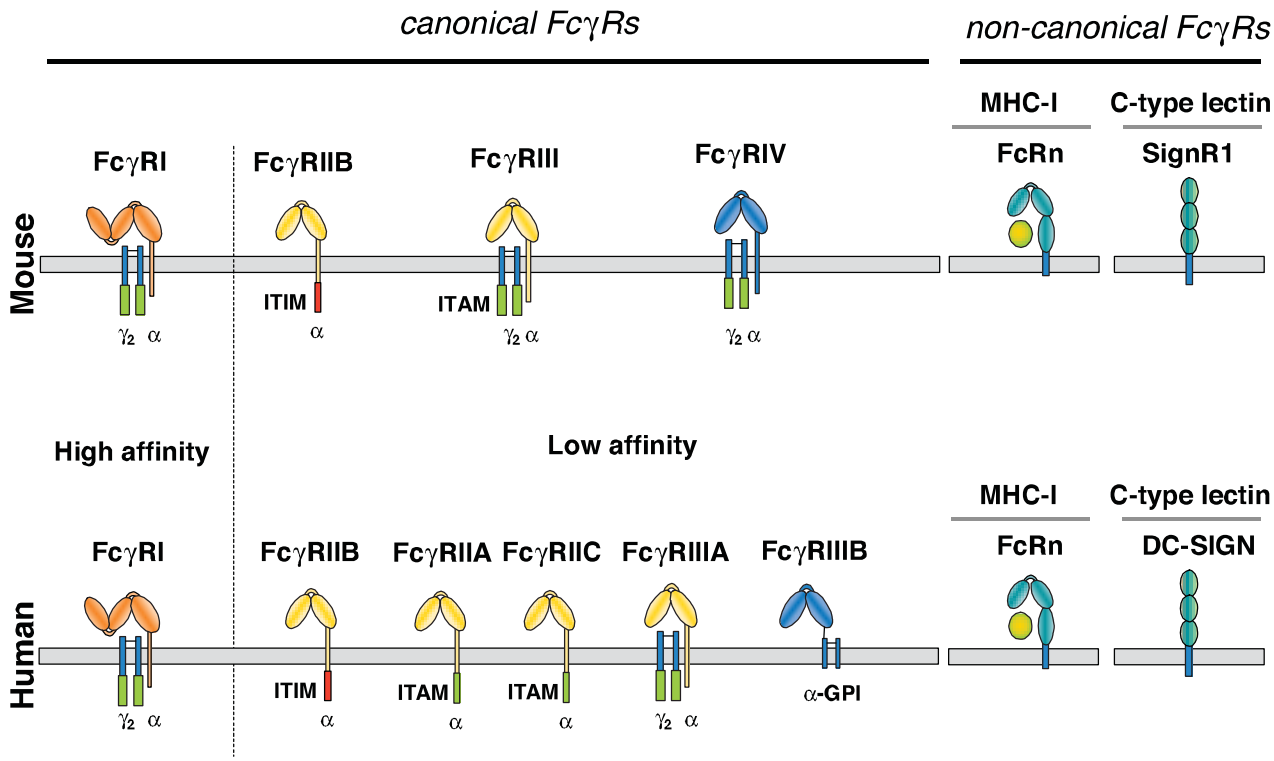


FIG. 24.3. Comparison of the Human and Mouse Canonical and Noncanonical Fcγ-Receptor Protein Family. In both species, canonical FcγRs can be distinguished by their affinity for the antibody Fc-portion (high or low affinity) and by the signaling pathways they trigger (activating versus inhibitory). The noncanonical neonatal FcR belongs to the family of major histocompatibility class I proteins and regulates immunoglobulin (Ig)G half life. Mouse SIGNR1 or human DC-SIGN are C-type lectin proteins that can only bind to IgG glycoforms rich in terminal sialic acid residues and are involved in the anti-inflammatory activity of IgG.

expression or alleles of FcγRIIB.[57] Reduced expression of FcγRIIB on activated B cells, such as memory cells, has been seen in patients with SLE and chronic inflammatory demyelinating polyneuropathy (CIDP), and is associated with a promoter polymorphism.[58,59] In mouse strains that develop a spontaneous, lupus-like disease, restoring the level of FcγRIIB expression on their B cells to a wild-type level reverses disease.[60,61] A higher incidence of an allele of FcγRIIB has been reported in several populations with autoimmune disease. This allele, found in the transmembrane domain of the receptor, is suggested to result in a hypomorphic phenotype, similar to the reduced expression observed.[57] Of note, despite increasing the risk for development of SLE, this FcγRIIB allele seems to decrease the likelihood of malaria infections and the severity of disease and can be found at increased frequencies in areas of the world where malaria is endemic.[62,63]

Species Comparisons

Detailed comparisons between the canonical FcRs in mice and humans have revealed several notable differences in both structure and expression of these molecules (Figs. 24.1 to 24.3). Whereas IgG, IgM, and IgE FcRs are conserved in these species, IgA FcRs are not. To date, a murine homolog for the IgA FcR has not been identified. In general, murine and human IgG FcRs display comparable degrees of heterogeneity and complexity.[41,64] Specific differences, however, have been noted. For example, FcγRI is encoded by a single gene in the mouse, in comparison with three genes in the human.[43] Two genes for activation FcRs, FcγRIIA and C, are found in the human and not rodents, which is notable because of their unusual single-chain activation structure.[65] Both mice and human encode a gene referred to as FcγRIIIA, although recent studies have identified a novel mouse FcR with higher homology to the human FcγRIIIA called FcγRIV.[31,64,66] As mentioned previously, FcγRIIIB is unique among FcRs in being expressed as a GPI-anchored protein (see Fig. 24.3). Its expression is limited to human neutrophils, in comparison with FcγRIIIA, which is expressed widely on cells of the myeloid lineage, such as macrophages, NK cells, mast cells, and DCs. Finally, both mice and humans have only a single gene encoding the inhibitory FcγRIIB molecule. Among the noncanonical FcRs, the lectin DC-SIGN is the functional homologue of the murine SIGN-R1 molecule with respect to its ability to bind sialylated IgG Fc and mediate an anti-inflammatory response.[67,68] While the overall structure of these proteins are similar (see Fig. 24.3), their patterns of expression are quite distinct. SIGN-R1 expression is restricted to marginal zone macrophages of the spleen and lymph node, whereas DC-SIGN expression is seen on myeloid DCs and macrophages in a variety of tissues, including spleen, bone marrow, and lymph node.[69]

The genes for the IgE FcR are conserved in mice and humans. The difference that is observed relates to the requirement for the β chain to achieve surface expression

in mice, precluding the expression of the $\alpha\gamma_2$ complex.[24] In humans, this form of the receptor is widely expressed on monocytes, Langerhans cells, and DCs, and is likely to be found on mast cells and basophils as well. This difference in FcεRI subunit composition is likely to result in functional differences as well. Although these specific interspecies differences are important, the fundamental organization of the canonical FcR system, with activation and inhibitory signaling through a shared ligand specificity coupled to opposing signaling pathways, is well conserved, as is the role of the noncanonical FcRs in mediating the immunomodulatory functions of sialylated IgG. Thus, conclusions regarding the function of this expanded FcR system in immunity by the analysis of murine models are relevant to an understanding of the role of these receptors to human immunity as well.

Expression

Canonical FcRs are expressed widely on cells of the myeloid lineage, including monocytes, macrophages, DCs, mast cells, basophils, neutrophils, eosinophils, and NK cells.[17,33] In addition, B cells and follicular DCs (FDCs) express the inhibitory FcγRIIB receptor, whereas T cells are generally negative for FcγR expression, but may express the Fc-receptor for IgM. Interestingly, the majority of FCRL proteins are expressed during varying stages of B-cell development. Despite their homology to the canonical FcRs, however, the FCRL proteins seem not to bind to Igs, rendering FcγRIIB the only IgG binding FcR on B cells. The specific expression pattern for each FcR varies, and these patterns are summarized in Figure 24.1. Because canonical FcRs represent a balanced system of activation and inhibition, the general rule of coexpression of FcRs of these classes is maintained. B cells use the B-cell antigen receptor as the activation coreceptor for FcγRIIB, whereas NK cells appear to utilize NK inhibitory receptors to modulate FcγRIIIA activation. The decoy FcγR, FcγRIIIB, is expressed exclusively on human neutrophils, on which it functions to concentrate and focus ICs without directly triggering cell activation, perhaps also playing role in neutrophil recruitment.[70] The FcγRIIA–FcγRIIB pair functions on neutrophils to modulate IC activation. FcεRI can be modulated by FcγRIIB, as demonstrated both in vitro and in vivo; mice deficient in FcγRIIB display enhanced IgE-triggered anaphylaxis[71] by virtue of the ability of IgE to bind with high affinity to FcεRI and with low affinity for FcγRIIB. Other mast cell inhibitory receptors, such as glycoprotein 49B1, modulate mast cell sensitivity to IgE: mice deficient in this molecule display enhanced anaphylactic responses to IgE stimulation.[72] Expression of the common γ chain is broad: it has been found on all myeloid and lymphoid cells examined to date. In contrast, the β chain appears to be quite restricted in its expression: it has been found only on mast cells and basophils.

Regulation of canonical FcR expression can occur at several levels. In general, cytokines involved in activation of inflammatory responses induce expression of activation FcγRs, whereas inhibitory cytokines downregulate these activation receptors. Transcriptional regulation of α chain levels has been documented for a variety of cytokines, including interferon-γ, interleukin (IL)-4, and transforming growth factor β.[73,74] In addition, complement component C5a binding to its receptor, C5aR, results in the induction of expression of activation FcγRs.[75] Induction of FcγRI, FcγRIIA, and FcγRIIIA α and γ chains in myeloid cells occurs upon interferon-γ treatment: IL-4 generally inhibits expression of these activation receptors but induces expression of the inhibitory FcγRIIB. Administration of intravenous gamma globulin, a widely used treatment for inflammatory diseases, has been shown to induce expression of the inhibitory FcγRIIB on effector macrophages and B cells in mice and humans.[59,76–78] This induction is not direct but mediated through other, noncanonical FcR pathways including molecules such as SIGNR1 and its human orthologe DC-SIGN (see Fig. 24.7). Engagement of these receptors by sialylated IgG results in an intrinsic Th2 pathway, ultimately leading to the expression of IL-4, which induces FcRIIB expression on inflammatory macrophages.[67,68,79,80] The situation in B cells is likely to be more complex, whereby regulation of FcγRIIB is critical for the maintenance of peripheral tolerance. Germinal center B cells downregulate FcγRIIB, perhaps in response to IL-4 production by T cells. Regulation of FcR expression has also been documented to occur upon binding of ligand. IgE regulates the expression of FcεRI by stabilizing the intracellular pool of receptor upon receptor engagement.[81] Thus, high IgE levels result in the induction of surface expression of FcεRI. However, this same mechanism of regulation is not seen for FcγRs: mice deficient in IgG have FcγR levels comparable with those of wild-type animals. Competition for limiting subunits also contributes to regulation of receptor expression. In mast cells, it appears that the level of γ chain is limiting. Competition between α chains for the limiting concentration of γ chain has been documented in mouse knockouts, whereby levels of one receptor increase if the α chain of the other receptor is reduced.[82] This type of reciprocal regulation has recently also been observed for FcγRs in neutrophils and is likely to be significant in the cross-regulation of FcRs by different isotypes of Ig.[83]

Three-Dimensional Structure

The crystal structures of FcγRIIA, FcγRIIB, FcγRIIIA, and FcεRI have been solved, as have the cocrystals of FcγRIIIA–IgG1 Fc and FcεRI–IgE Fc[84] (Fig. 24.4). These studies demonstrate that the receptors have a common structure in which the two extracellular Ig domains fold in a strongly bent overall structure, arranged into a heart-shaped domain structure. A 1:1 stoichiometry between the receptor and ligand is observed, with the receptor inserted into the cleft formed by the two chains of the Fc fragment (Cγ2 or Cε3). The binding region of the FcR to Fc fragments consists mainly of rather flexible loops that rearrange upon complex formation. Only domain 2 and the linker region connecting domains 1 and 2 interact in the complex with different regions of both chains of the Fc. Conserved tryptophans located on the FcRs interact with proline to form a "proline sandwich." A solvent-exposed hydrophobic residue at position 155 is conserved among all FcRs and represents a binding site for the important IgG1 residue Leu 235 (not

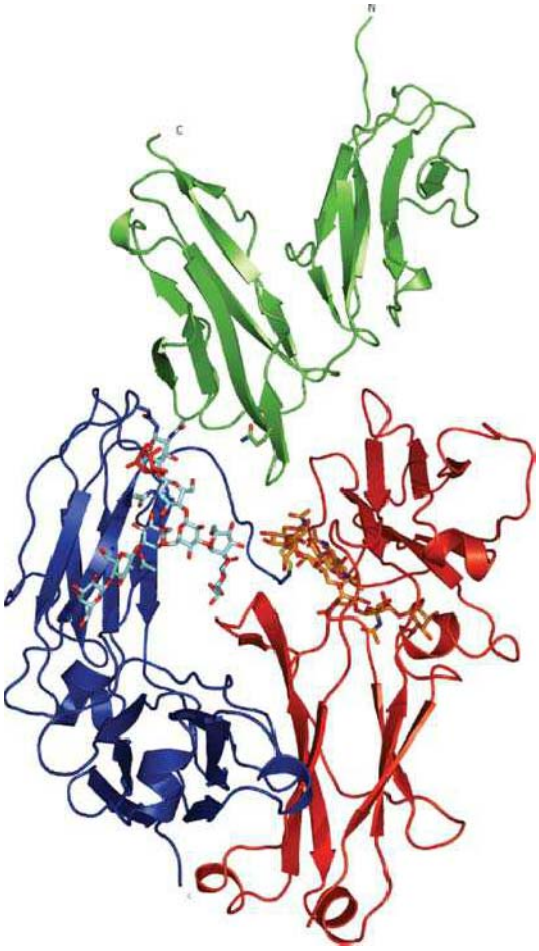


FIG. 24.4. Ribbon Diagram of Crystallizable Fragment (Fc) Receptor III–Immunoglobulin (IG)G1 Fc Structure. The carbohydrate moiety attached to both CH2 domains of the IgG Fc-fragment is shown as a stick and ball model. The extracellular domains of Fc receptor III are shown, together with the Fc fragment of IgG1. See text for details. Adapted from Sondermann et al.,[15] with permission.

found in IgE). Specificity is generated among the receptor–ligand pairs in a variable region connecting the two extracellular domains that is in contact with the lower hinge region of the Fc fragment (residues 234 to 238), a region not conserved among the IgGs and IgE. The binding region of FcRs to their Ig ligands does not overlap with other Fc binding molecules such as protein A, protein G, and FcRn.

The structure of the FcR bound to its ligand reveal that the antigen-binding fragment (Fab) arms are quite sharply bent and may adopt a perpendicular orientation toward the Fc. This arrangement would give the Fab arms maximal flexibility to bind antigen when the Fc fragment is oriented parallel to the membrane of the FcR-expressing cell. The asymmetrical interaction of the two Fc chains with a single FcR prevents a single antibody molecule from triggering dimerization of receptors and initiating signaling. Instead, dimerization is initiated by the interaction of antigen with the Fab arms, thus linking adaptive responses to effector cell triggering. Of note, the majority of the IgG-FcγR cocrystals have been generated with FcγRs produced in bacteria and therefore in an aglycosylated form. In general glycosylation at Asn 297 is critical for FcγR binding; modulation of FcγR binding by glycan modification has been observed for several classes of glycan modifications, including sialylation, fucosylation, and branching N-acetyl glucosamine.[85,86] The first IgG-FcγR cocrystal structure with differentially glycosylated IgG variants demonstrated that carbohydrate-carbohydrate interactions between IgG and FcγR are essential for high-affinity recognition of afucosylated IgG glycovariants by FcγRIIIA.[87] In contrast, low-affinity binding of FcγRIIIA to fucosylated IgG is independent of these carbohydrate interactions. These novel insights may offer new ways of optimizing IgG-FcγR interactions for enhanced therapeutic activity of IgG.

IN VITRO ACTIVITY

Binding Properties

As outlined in Figures 24.1 and 24.3, Ig binding to canonical FcRs falls into either high- or low-affinity binding classes. The high-affinity binding class is typified by FcεRI, with a binding affinity of 10^{10} M^{-1} for IgE, which ensures a monomeric interaction between IgE and its receptor. FcγRI binds with relatively high affinity for IgG1 and IgG3 (human) and IgG2a (mouse) with an affinity constant of 10^8 M^{-1}. In contrast to these high-affinity FcRs, the low-affinity receptors, such as the human FcγRIIA, FcγRIIB, FcγRIIIA, FcγRIIIB, and FcαRI, and the mouse FcγRIIB, FcγRIII, and FcγRIV bind with affinities ranging from 5×10^5 M^{-1} (FcγRIII) to 5×10^7 M^{-1}. This low-affinity binding ensures that these receptors interact with ICs and not monomeric ligands. As described subsequently, this dependence on high-avidity and low-affinity interactions ensures that these receptors are activated only by physiologically relevant ICs and not by circulating monomeric Ig, thus avoiding inappropriate activation of effector responses. In general, low-affinity FcγRs bind IgG1 and IgG3 preferentially; their binding to IgG2 and IgG4 is of even lower affinity. As mentioned previously, polymorphisms in FcγRIIA and FcγRIIIA affect binding to IgG2 and IgG1, respectively, which may have significance in vivo in predicting responses to specific cytotoxic antibodies (Table 24.1). The isolated consideration of the affinity of antibody isotypes to their activating FcγRs is not sufficient, however, to explain the differences in in vivo activity. More importantly, the ratio of the affinities of an antibody isotype to the activating FcγRs compared to the inhibitory FcγRIIB (termed A/I-ratio) predicts antibody activity more consistently.[20,64] Thus, antibody isotypes with a high A/I-ratio, such as mouse IgG2a and IgG2b, will show a greater activity than counterparts with a lower ratio (see Table 24.1). The sugar moiety of the antibody Fc-portion is essential for FcR binding and the presence or absence of certain sugar residues can significantly impact on antibody-FcR binding.[20,80,88,89] The absence of fucose, for example, will selectively increase the affinity of human IgG1 or mouse IgG2b for human FcγRIIIa or mouse FcγRIV, respectively. In contrast, the presence of terminal sialic acid on the N-linked Fc glycan reduces affinities for FcRs by an order of magnitude with a concomitant reduction in in vivo activity.[80] Subunit interactions have also

TABLE 24.1 Affinities of Mouse and Human Fc Receptors to Different Antibody Isotypes

	Mouse Soluble FcγR (K_A in M^{-1})					*Human Soluble FcγR (K_A in M^{-1})*						
	FcγRI	FcγRIIB	FcγRIII	FcγRIV	A/I	FcγRI	FcγRIIA^{131R}	FcγRIIA^{131H}	FcγRIIB	FcγRIIIA^{158F}	FcγRIIIA^{158V}	A/I[a]
mIgG1	n.b.	3.3×10^6	3.1×10^5	n.b.	0.1	n.d.	2.5×10^5	0.4×10^5	1×10^5	$< 10^{4b}$	n.d.	
mIgG2a	1.8×10^8	0.42×10^6	6.8×10^5	2.9×10^7	69	n.d.	3.2×10^5	1.7×10^5	1.6×10^5	1.0×10^5	n.d.	
mIgG2b	n.b.	2.2×10^6	6.4×10^5	1.7×10^7	7	n.d.	9.1×10^4	1.2×10^5	1.2×10^5	0.1×10^5	n.d.	
mIgG3	n.b.	n.b.	n.b.	n.b.	—	n.d.	$< 10^{4b}$	$< 10^{4b}$	$< 10^{4b}$	$< 10^{4b}$	n.d.	
hIgG1	3.8×10^6	2×10^5	3.5×10^4	2.2×10^6		9.1×10^{8d}	3.5×10^{5e}	5.2×10^{5e}	$1–3.8 \times 10^{5c,e}$	$0.4–1.1 \times 10^{6e}$	$1.9–4.8 \times 10^{6c,e}$	1/13
hIgG2	n.b.	$< 10^{4b}$	$< 10^{4b}$	n.b		n.b.	1.0×10^{5e}	4.5×10^{5e}	0.2×10^{5e}	0.3×10^{5e}	0.7×10^{5e}	1.5/3.5
hIgG3	1.2×10^6	8.3×10^4	n.b.	$< 10^{4b}$		6.1×10^{7e}	9.1×10^{5e}	8.9×10^{5e}	1.7×10^{5e}	7.7×10^{6e}	9.8×10^{6e}	45/57
hIgG4	7.2×10^4	$< 10^{4b}$	$< 10^{4b}$	$< 10^{4b}$		3.4×10^{7e}	2.1×10^{5e}	1.7×10^{5e}	2×10^{5e}	2.0×10^{5e}	2.5×10^{5e}	1

Binding constants were obtained by surface plasmon resonance analysis with immobilized antibodies (FITC-isotype switch variants) and soluble Fc receptors (FcRs) produced by transient transfection in 293T cells. Shown are the association constants (K_A in M^{-1}) of soluble FcR binding to the indicated antibody isotypes as determined by surface plasmon resonance analysis.[31,174–178] IG, immunoglobulin; n.b., no detectable binding or binding that is too low to be evaluated; n.d., that no surface plasmon resonance or other quantitative data are available.

[a]The two numbers indicate the A/I ratios for the low and high affinity allele of FcγRIII

[b]Indicates detectable but very low binding that did not allow to determine exact binding constants by surface plasmon resonance.

[c*]Maenaka et al.[174]; Okazaki et al.[175]

[d#]Paetz et al.[178]

[e§]Bruhns et al.[177]

been reported to influence affinity for ligand, as demonstrated for the common γchain associating with FcγRIIIA.[90] Its affinity for IgG1 is higher than the GPI-anchored form of this receptor, FcγRIIIB.

The crystal structures of IgG1-FcγRIIIA and IgE-FcεRI reveal similarities in the binding properties of these two complexes. Of significance is the 1:1 stoichiometry of the complexes, which ensures that a single receptor binds to a single immunoglobulin molecule.[15,16] This property in turn ensures that activation occurs upon cross-linking of receptor complexes by multivalent ligands. Two binding sites on the receptor interact asymmetrically with two sites on the Fc molecule. The FcR inserts into the cleft formed by the two chains of the Fc molecule, burying a binding surface of 895 Å for each binding site. Alterations in the Fc structure that reduce the cleft, such as deglycosylation of IgG, inhibit FcR binding. Four distinct regions have been defined in the Fc domains involved in FcR interactions. For IgE, this includes residues 334 to 336, 362 to 365, 393 to 396, and 424. The homologous regions for IgG are residues 234 to 239, 265 to 269, 297 to 299, and 327 to 332. Interactions of these residues occur with the carboxy-terminal domain 2 of the respective FcRs. In view of the similarities of these complexes and the homologies among the receptors and their ligands, an obvious question that arises concerns the molecular basis for specificity. Attempts to resolve that question have relied on mutagenesis studies of the ligands and domain exchanges between receptors. For example, exchange of the FG loop in domain 2 of Fcε to Fcγ receptors confers detectable IgE binding; similarly, variation in this loop in FcγRs may provide interactions that determine IgG specificity for these receptors. Mutagenesis of IgG1 revealed that a common set of residues is involved in binding to all FcγRs, but FcγRII and FcγRIII also utilize distinct residues.[91] Several IgG1 residues not found at the IgG–FcR interface by crystallographic determination had a profound effect on binding, which indicates the greater complexity of these interactions in solution.

The implications of these structural studies are that the Fc domain of IgG may be selectively mutated to direct its binding to specific FcγRs. Fc mutants that selectively engage activation FcγRs (IIIA and IIA) while minimally interacting with inhibitory and decoy FcγRs (IIB and IIIB) would confer optimal cytotoxic potential for tumoricidal applications. Indications that such Fc engineering is possible are suggested by IgG mutants with selective binding to FcγRIII or FcγRII.[92–94]

Effector Cell Activation

The critical step in triggering effector cell response by canonical FcRs is mediated by the cross-linking of these receptors by Ig. This can occur either by interactions of low-affinity, high-avidity IgG ICs or of IgG opsonized cells with activation FcγRs or by the cross-linking of monomeric IgG or IgE bound to FcγRI or FcεR, respectively, by multivalent antigens binding to the Fab of the antibody. Cross-linking of ITAM-bearing FcRs results in common cellular responses, determined by the cell type, rather than the FcR. Thus, for example, FcεRI or FcγRIII cross-linking of mast cells results in degranulation of these cells, whereas cross-linking of macrophage expressed FcαRI or FcγRIII by opsonized cells triggers phagocytosis. These functions underlie the functional similarity of activation FcRs in which cross-linking mediates cellular responses by ITAM-mediated tyrosine kinase cascades. In addition to degranulation and phagocytosis, activation FcR cross-linking has been demonstrated to induce ADCC, the oxidative burst, and the release of cytokines and other inflammatory cell mediators. A sustained calcium influx is associated with these functions, as is transcription of genes associated with the activated state.

Cellular activation initiated by ITAM-bearing activation FcRs can be enhanced by coengagement with integrin and complement receptors. Although the ability of these receptors to mediate phagocytosis, for example, are

modest, synergistic interactions with FcRs result in sustained activation and enhancement. Synergistic interactions between activation FcRs and toll receptors, mannose receptors, and other pattern-recognition molecules have also been reported in vitro and suggest that interplay between the innate and adaptive effector mechanisms of an immune response are involved in mediating efficient protection from microbial pathogens.

In contrast to the activation of effector cell responses triggered by cross-linking of ITAM-bearing FcRs in vitro, cross-linking of an ITIM-bearing inhibitory receptor to an ITAM-bearing receptor results in the arrest of these effector responses. Homoaggregation of FcγRIIB by its cross-linking on effector cells by ICs does not result in cellular responses; rather, it is the coengagement of ITAM- and ITIM-bearing receptors that results in the functional generation of an inhibitory signal. In vitro, it is possible to ligate any ITAM-bearing receptor to any ITIM-bearing receptor with a resulting inhibitory response. This activity is used functionally to define putative ITIMs and has proved to be a useful device in dissecting the signaling pathways induced by ITAM-ITIM coligation.

B-Lymphocyte Suppression

B-cell stimulation through the B-cell antigen receptor can be arrested by the coligation of FcγRIIB to the B-cell receptor (BCR). This occurs naturally when ICs, retained on FDCs in the germinal center, interact with both the BCR and FcγRIIB during the affinity maturation of an antibody response. In vitro suppression of B-cell activation has been demonstrated by coligation of BCR and FcγRIIB, resulting in arrest of calcium influx and proliferative responses triggered by the BCR,[25,95] the result of recruitment of the SH2-containing inositol 5′-phosphatase (SHIP)-1.[96] Calcium release from the endoplasmic reticulum is not affected, and there is thus an initial rise in intracellular calcium; however, this calcium flux is not sustained, because SHIP recruitment blocks calcium influx by uncoupling of the capacitance channel. Homoaggregation of FcγRIIB by ICs can trigger apoptosis in B cells, as demonstrated in the DT40 B-cell line and in murine splenocyte preparations.[97] This activity is retained in ITIM mutants and is dependent on the transmembrane sequence of FcγRIIB. Consistent with this, other studies showed that a SHIP-independent but BTK-, JNK1-, and cABL-dependent pathway is involved in induction of apoptosis upon FcγRIIB homoaggregation.[98] The potent inhibitory effect of FcγRIIB on B-cell activation has recently been used therapeutically to suppress autoantibody production by B cells. By engineering the Fc-fragment of CD19-specific antibodies to have increased affinity to FcγRIIB, resulting in an enhanced coengagment of the inhibitory FcγRIIB with the BCR signaling complex, it was possible to suppress humoral immunity in mice and to shut down autoantibody production by B cells.[94] In contrast to mature B cells, which coexpress the BCR and FcγRIIB, plasma cells responsible for high-level antibody production downregulate BCR expression but maintain FcγRIIB expression. It was suggested that crossliniking of FcγRIIB by ICs on bone marrow plasma cells might be involved in inducing apoptosis in a fraction of plasma cells thereby creating niches for newly generated plasma cells during exposure to a new antigenic stimulus.[99]

SIGNALING

Immunoreceptor Tyrosine-Based Activation Motif Pathways

The general features of signal transduction through ITAM receptors are conserved among all members of this family, including T-cell receptors, BCRs, and various FcRs. The 19 amino acid–conserved ITAM is necessary and sufficient to generate an activation response, as demonstrated by the analysis of chimeric receptors. With a single exception, FcRs associate with accessory subunits that contain these signaling motifs. As described previously, the common γ chain contains an ITAM and is associated with FcεRI, FcγRI, FcγRIII, FcγRIV, and FcαRI. In addition, both FcεRI and FcγRIII may associate with the β subunit in mast cells. The ITAM found in the β chain does not function as an autonomous activation cassette, as has been found for most other ITAMs. Rather, it functions to amplify the activation response generated by the γ chain ITAM by increasing the local concentration of Lyn available for activation upon aggregation of the receptor.[40] FcγRIIA contains an ITAM in the cytoplasmic domain of its ligand recognition α subunit and is thus able to activate in the absence of any associated subunit.

Upon sustained receptor aggregation, Src family kinases that may be associated with the receptor in an inactive form become activated and rapidly tyrosine-phosphorylate the ITAM sequences, creating SH2 sites for the docking and subsequent activation of Syk kinases. Ligands that rapidly dissociate from their receptors result in nonproductive signaling complexes that fail to couple to downstream events and behave as antagonists.[100] The specific Src kinase involved for each FcR depends on the receptor and cell type in which it is studied. Thus, Lyn is associated with the FcεRI pathway in mast cells, Lck is associated with FcγRIIIA in NK cells, and both of these kinases as well as Hck are associated with FcγRI and FcγRIIA in macrophages. After activation of the Src kinase, tyrosine phosphorylation of the ITAM motif rapidly ensues, leading to the recruitment and activation of Syk kinases. This two-step process is absolutely necessary to transduce the aggregation signal to a sustainable intracellular response. Once activated, Syk kinases lead to the phosphorylation or recruitment of a variety of intracellular substrates, including PI3K, Btk and other Tec family kinases, phospholipase C-γ(PLCγ), and adaptor proteins such as SLP-76 and BLNK. The Ras pathway is also activated through Sos bound to Grb2 that is recruited upon phosphorylation of Shc. Ras phosphorylates Raf, which in turn leads to MEK kinase and MAP kinase activation. A summary of these intracellular pathways is shown in Figure 24.5A. A crucial step in this sequential activation cascade occurs with the activation of PI3K by Syk. By generating phosphatidyl inositol polyphosphates, such as PIP_3, PI3K leads to the recruitment of pleckstrin homology (PH) domain–expressing proteins such as Btk and PLCγ which in turn leads to the

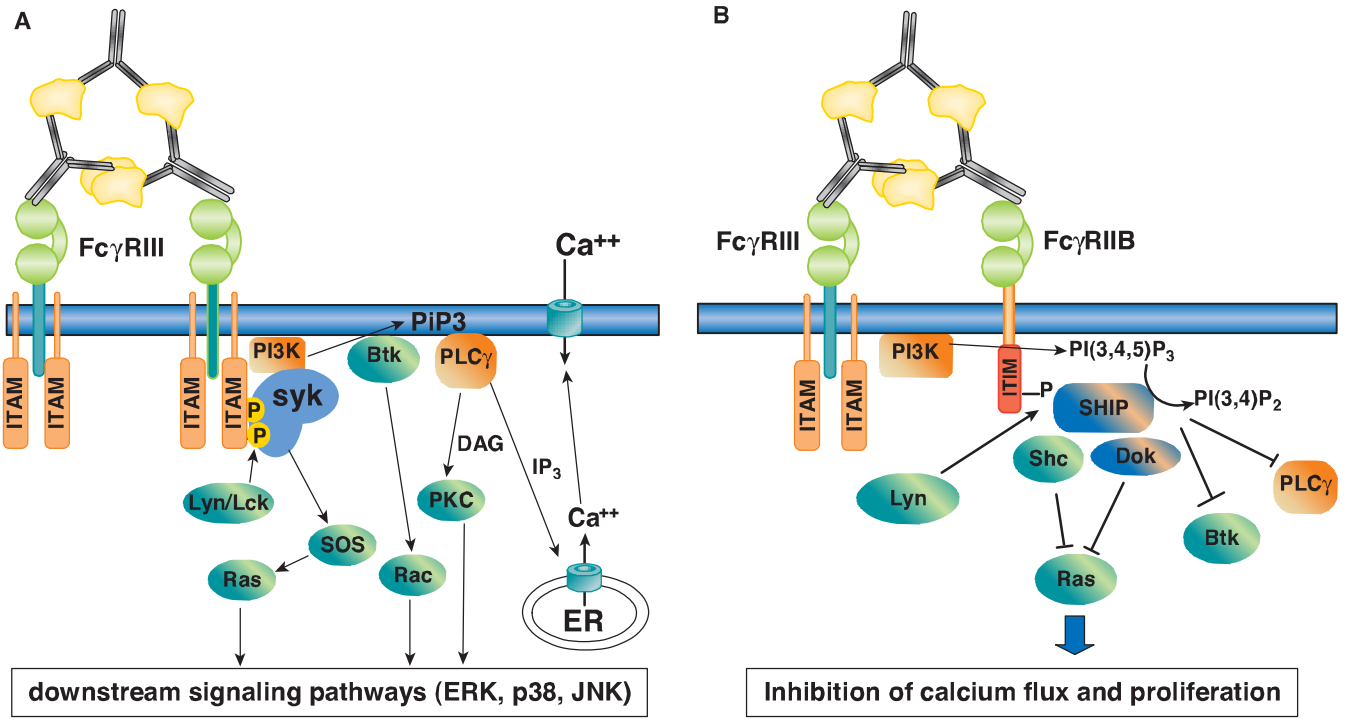


FIG. 24.5. Signaling by Activation and Inhibitory Fc Receptors (FcRs). **A:** FcγRIII signaling in natural killer cells is shown as an example of the activation class of FcRs. Cross-linking by an immune complex initiates the signaling cascade. The specific Src family kinase varies, depending on the cell type. **B:** FcR signaling in macrophages is shown as an example of simultaneous triggering of activation and inhibitory FcRs.

generation of inositol triphosphate and diacylglycerol, intermediates crucial to the mobilization of intracellular calcium and activation of protein kinase C, respectively.

Immunoreceptor Tyrosine-Based Inhibitory Motif Pathways

The inhibitory motif, embedded in the cytoplasmic domain of the single-chain FcγRIIB molecule, was defined as a 13 amino acid sequence AENTITYSLLKHP, shown to be both necessary and sufficient to mediate the inhibition of BCR-generated calcium mobilization and cellular proliferation.[25,26] Significantly, phosphorylation of the tyrosine of this motif was shown to occur upon BCR coligation and was required for its inhibitory activity. This modification generated an SH2 recognition domain that is the binding site for the inhibitory signaling molecule SHIP.[96,101] In addition to its expression on B cells, where it is the only IgG FcR, FcγRIIB is widely expressed on macrophages, neutrophils, mast cells, DCs, and FDCs, absent only from T and NK cells. Studies on FcγRIIB provided the impetus to identify similar sequences in other surface molecules that mediated cellular inhibition and resulted in the description of the ITIM, a general feature of inhibitory receptors.

FcγRIIB displays multiple inhibitory activities. Coengagement of FcγRIIB to an ITAM-containing receptor leads to tyrosine phosphorylation of the ITIM by the Lyn kinase, recruitment of SHIP, and the inhibition of ITAM-triggered calcium mobilization and cellular proliferation (see Fig. 24.5B).[96,102,103] These two activities result from different signaling pathways; calcium inhibition requires the phosphatase activity of SHIP to hydrolyze PIP_3 and the ensuing dissociation of PH domain–containing proteins such as Btk and PLCγ.[104] The net effect is to block calcium influx and prevent sustained calcium signaling. Calcium-dependent processes such as degranulation, phagocytosis, ADCC, cytokine release, and proinflammatory activation are all blocked. Arrest of proliferation in B cells is also dependent on the ITIM pathway, through the activation of the adaptor protein Dok and subsequent inactivation of MAP kinases.[105,106] The role of SHIP in this process has not been fully defined, inasmuch as it can affect proliferation in several ways. SHIP, through its catalytic phosphatase domain, can prevent activation of the PH domain survival factor Akt by hydrolysis of PIP_3.[107,108] SHIP also contains phosphotyrosine-binding domains that could act to recruit Dok to the membrane and provide access to the Lyn kinase that is involved in its activation. Dok-deficient B cells are unable to mediate FcγRIIB–triggered arrest of BCR-induced proliferation, while retaining their ability to inhibit a calcium influx, which demonstrates the dissociation of these two ITIM-dependent pathways.

Another inhibitory activity displayed by FcγRIIB is independent of the ITIM sequence and is displayed upon homoaggregation of the receptor. Under these conditions of FcγRIIB clustering, a proapoptotic signal is generated through the transmembrane sequence. This proapoptotic signal is blocked by recruitment of SHIP, which occurs upon coligation of FcγRIIB to the BCR, because of the Btk requirement for this apoptotic pathway.[97] This novel activity

has been reported only in B cells and has been proposed to act as a means of maintaining peripheral tolerance for B cells that have undergone somatic hypermutation. The in vivo relevance of this pathway remains to be proven.

IN VIVO FUNCTIONS

FcγReceptors in the Afferent Response

The ability of IgG ICs to influence the afferent response has been known since the 1950s and can be either enhancing or suppressive, depending on the precise combination of antibody and antigen and the mode of administration.[109] Investigators have attempted to define the molecular mechanisms behind these activities with the availability of defined mouse strains with mutations in activation or inhibitory FcRs and through the use of specific blocking antibodies to individual receptors. Direct effects on B cells stem from the ability of the inhibitory FcγRIIB molecule to influence the state of B-cell activation and survival. Because antigen is retained in the form of ICs on FDCs, it can interact with B cells by coengaging FcγRIIB with BCR, modulating the activation state of the cell. Mice deficient in this inhibitory receptor develop anti-deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) and antichromatin antibodies and die of a fatal, autoimmune glomerulonephritis at 8 months of age. The phenotype is strain dependent and is not seen in BALB/c or 129 strains of mice.[110] Combining FcγRIIB deficiency with defects in other inhibitory receptor pathways, such as PD-1, results in autoantibodies with different specifities and distinct pathological presentation. Thus, PD–1–deficient Balb/c mice develop cardiomyopathy resulting from anticardiac myosin antibodies. PD-1/FcγRIIB double deficient BALB/c mice develop antiuroepithelial antibodies and hydronephrosis.[111] FcγRIIB thus acts as a modifier of autoimmune disease, a conclusion further supported by studies that determined the contribution of the C57BL/6 background to the spontaneous lupus-like disease observed in those mice. The B6 background, by virtue of an incomplete light chain editing pathway, provides a source of autoreactive B cells in the periphery, which, when combined with defects in the inhibitory FcγRIIB pathway, leads to the accumulation of autoantibodies, pathogenic ICs, and disease.[112] Further support for this conclusion is provided by the observations that autoimmune disease–prone strains of mice, such as New Zealand black (NZB), BXSB, SB/Le, MRL, and nonobese diabetic, have reduced surface expression of FcγRIIB on activated B cells, attributed to DNA polymorphisms in the promoter region of the gene encoding this receptor.[113,114] This reduced expression of FcγRIIB is thus suggested to contribute to the increased susceptibility of these animals to the development of autoantibodies and autoimmune disease. Direct evidence that this is indeed the case comes from studies where FcγRIIB expression levels have been restored by retrovirus-mediated gene transfer in BXSB, NZM, and FcγRIIB knockout animals. These mice had dramatically reduced levels of autoreactive antibodies and were protected from the development of fatal autoimmune disease.[60] Consistent with these results obtained in mouse model systems, human patients with SLE and CIDP were demonstrated to have a reduced FcγRIIB expression level on B cells.[58,59]

Moreover, if FcγRIIB indeed functions in vivo to maintain peripheral tolerance, then its loss should allow for the emergence of autoantibodies when otherwise resistant animals are challenged with potentially crossreactive antigens. This hypothesis has been validated in models of collagen-induced arthritis and Goodpasture syndrome. FcγRIIB-deficient mice, with the nonpermissive H-2^b haplotype, develop arthritis when immunized with bovine type II collagen.[115] The loss of FcγRIIB thus bypasses the requirement for the specific H-2^q and H-2^r alleles previously demonstrated to be necessary in this model by allowing FcγRIIB-deficient autoreactive B-cell clones to expand and produce pathogenic autoantibodies. When the permissive DBA/1 strain (H-2^q) is made deficient in FcγRIIB, autoantibody development is augmented and disease is greatly enhanced. In a similar manner, immunization of H-2^b mice deficient in FcγRIIB with bovine type IV collagen results in crossreactive autoantibodies to murine type IV collagen, with dramatic pathogenic effects.[115,116] These mice develop hemorrhagic lung disease and glomerulonephritis with a "ribbon deposition" pattern of ICs in the glomeruli. These characteristics are indicative of Goodpasture syndrome, a human disease not previously modeled in an animal species.

Expression of the inhibitory FcγRIIB on B cells thus provides a mechanism for the suppressive effects of ICs on antibody production. Although FcγRIIB is expressed throughout peripheral B-cell development, recent data suggest that it represents a late checkpoint controlling the expansion of autoreactive IgG-positive plasma cells. In contrast, deficiency of the inhibitory receptor did not impact the generation of autoreactive IgM antibodies.[112] Taking the considerably higher pathogenic potential of IgG compared to IgM antibodies into account, this late stage of FcγRIIB-mediated regulation seems to be sufficient to prevent severe autoreactive processes.

The enhancing property of ICs on the afferent response is likely to arise from the expression of FcRs on APCs, such as DCs.[117–119] DCs express all three classes of IgG FcRs as well as FcεRI. Although in vitro studies have suggested that triggering of activation FcRs can induce DC maturation, the in vivo significance of this pathway has not been established.[120] The ability of FcRs, particularly FcγRI, to internalize ICs could provide a mechanism for enhanced presentation and augmented antibody responses, whereas the presence of the inhibitory FcγRIIB molecule appears to reduce the enhancing effect. Mice deficient in FcγRIIB display enhanced antibody responses to soluble antibody–antigen complexes, in some cases dramatically so, which is likely to result from enhanced presentation.[121,122] In addition, in vitro studies suggest that internalization through specific FcRs on APCs may influence the epitopes presented and T-cell response generated as a result. At present, a growing body of data suggests that FcRs are indeed involved in enhancement of the afferent response, by influencing antigen presentation and cognate T-cell interactions. FcγRIIB-deficient DCs pulsed ex vivo with antigen in the form of ICs induce a strong and protective cytotoxic immune response after transfer into naïve mice.[123] In contrast, wild-type DCs induce a much smaller and nonprotective response, indicating that the threshold set by co-crosslinking of the inhibitory and activating FcRs

prevents complete DC maturation. Moreover, blocking of IC binding to FcγRIIB on human DCs with an FcγRIIB-specific antibody resulted in spontaneous maturation of the cells by ICs present in low amounts in human serum.[124,125] Taken together, these data indicate that the inhibitory receptor is an important regulator of DC activation. As the DC maturation state will determine whether an activating or a tolerogenic signal will be delivered to T cells, FcRs might be important factors for the maintenance of peripheral tolerance in the cellular immune system. Transiently blocking FcγRIIB activity with monoclonal antibodies in vivo might thus be an interesting strategy to optimize immunotherapeutic and vaccination approaches. Further defining the precise role of each FcR expressed on APCs will require conditional knockouts of these molecules on specific DC populations to resolve the contribution of these systems to the generation of an appropriate antibody response.

FcγReceptors in the Efferent Response

The first canonical FcR knockout to be described was for the common activation subunit, the γchain, which resulted in the loss of surface assembly and signaling of FcγRI, FcγRIII and FcγRIV as well as FcεRI (10). Mice deficient in the common γ chain were systematically studied in diverse models of inflammation and found to be unable to mediate IgG-triggered inflammatory responses for cytotoxic or IC reaction; attributed to low-affinity activation receptors, the high-affinity FcγRI played a minimal role in the in vivo inflammatory response triggered by IgG.[22,126–128] The results were further confirmed by comparisons of mice deficient or blocked for either FcγRI, FcγRIII, or FcγRIV.[19,20,32,129] The loss of FcεRI ablated IgE-mediated anaphylaxis; this was demonstrated independently by gene disruption in the α subunit of that receptor.[11] Subsequent studies on mice deficient in the inhibitory FcγRIIB molecule established the opposing action of this receptor, in which mice deficient in that receptor displayed enhanced B-cell responses, autoimmunity, and augmented IgG-mediated inflammation in a subclass and effector cell–dependent manner.[18,20,32,55,128] The general finding, which is discussed in detail subsequently, illustrates that IgGs initiate their effector responses in vivo through coengagement of activating and inhibitory FcRs. The physiological response is thus the net of the opposing activation and inhibitory signaling pathways that each receptor triggers and is determined by the level of expression of each receptor and the selective avidity of the IgG ligand (see Table 24.1). This also explains the longstanding observation that different IgG isotypes have a differential activity in vivo (Fig. 24.6A). The absence of a murine homolog for FcαRI has precluded similar studies for that receptor. Studies on mice bearing a human transgene of FcαRI suggest that this receptor is involved in IgA nephropathy (Berger disease).[130]

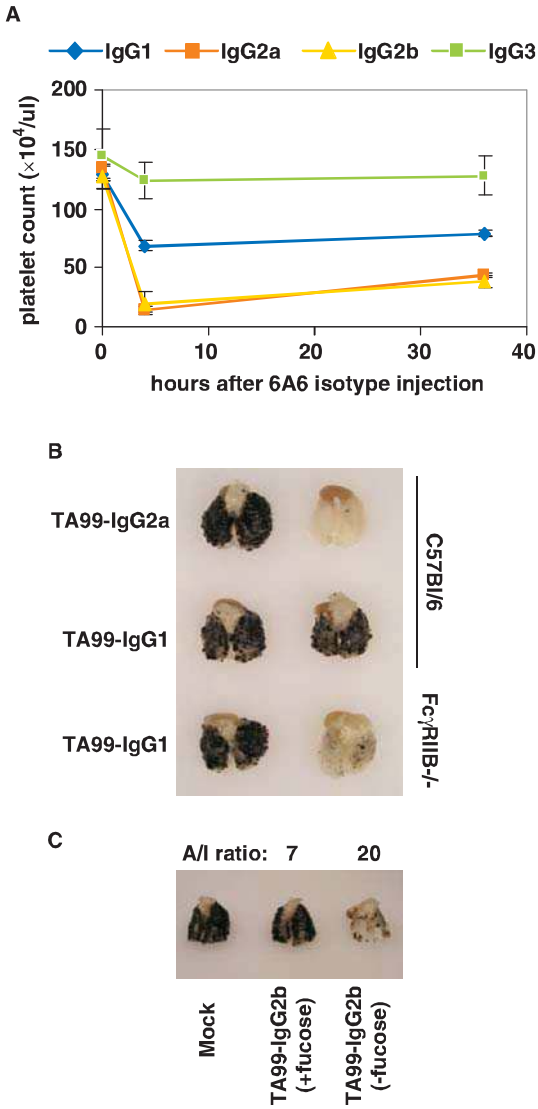


FIG. 24.6. Antibody Activity is Determined by Activating and Inhibitory Fc Receptors (FcRs). **A:** Mice were injected with the same amount of different 6A6 antibody isotypes, which recognize an integrin on mouse platelets and lead to FcR-dependent clearance of platelets from the blood as observed by the drop in platelet count after antibody injection. **B:** Wild-type or FcγRIIB knockout mice were injected intravenously with B16 melanoma cells on day 0 and with IgG1 and IgG2a isotype switch variants of the monoclonal antibody TA99 on alternate days. **C:** Mice were injected with antitumor antibodies containing or lacking branching fucose residues, thereby enhancing binding to activating FcRs and changing the A/I ratio (see text for details). Lungs were harvested on day 14. Adapted from Nimmerjahn and Ravetch,[20] with permission.

Type I: Immediate Hypersensitivity

Both cutaneous and systemic models of passive anaphylaxis, induced by IgE, were studied in FcRγchain–deficient mice and were found to be absent, a finding fully consistent with the observations obtained in FcεRI-deficient mice and confirming the role of the high-affinity IgE receptor in mediating IgE-induced anaphylactic responses.[10,11,40,131] FcγRIIB-deficient mice, challenged in this model, displayed an unexpected enhancement of IgE-mediated anaphylaxis, which suggests a physiological interaction between this inhibitory receptor and FcεRI.[71] The molecular basis for this modulation of FcεRI signaling by FcγRIIB has not been

determined, although previous studies have indicated that IgE can bind with low affinity to FcγRII/FcγIII, which suggests that there exists a mechanism for coengagement of these receptors. Deletion of the mast cell inhibitory receptor glycoprotein 49B1 also results in enhanced IgE-induced anaphylaxis.[72] In addition to FcεRI, mast cells also express the IgG FcγRIIB and FcγRIII, but not FcγRIV. Passive systemic anaphylaxis induced by IgG was attenuated in FcRγ chain–deficient and FcγRIII-deficient mice, which indicates the capacity of IgG and FcγRIII to mediate mast cell activation in vivo. FcγRIIB-deficient mice displayed enhanced IgG-induced anaphylaxis. Active anaphylaxis, induced by immunization with antigen in alum, was enhanced in FcεRI-, FcγRIIB-, and glycoprotein 49B1–deficient mice and attenuated in FcRγ- and FcγRIII-deficient mice. All these animals displayed antigen-specific antibodies for IgE and IgGs, which indicates that the active anaphylaxis seen was attributed primarily to IgG antibodies. The reason for the enhancement of anaphylactic responses in FcεRI-deficient animals resulted from the increased expression of FcγRIII on mast cells in these mice, normally limited by competition of α chains for the available pool of the common γ chain.[82] In the absence of FcεRI α chain, FcRγ chain is available to associate with FcγRIII α chain and assemble on the cell surface as a functional signaling receptor. A similar type of regulation was also described for expression of FcγRIII and FcγRIV on mouse neutrophils, where deletion of one receptor resulted in enhanced expression of the other γ-chain–dependent molecule.[83] These studies indicated the importance of the γ chain in regulating the level of surface expression of FcεRI and FcγRIII. Because γ chain is also associated with other members of the activation/inhibition paired receptors expressed on mast cells, such as PIR-A/PIR-B, the intracellular competition between these diverse α subunits and the common γ chain determines the level of surface expression of individual receptors and thus their ability to respond to specific biological stimuli. The absolute level of surface expression of FcRs on mast cells is clearly of therapeutic significance in both IgE- and IgG-mediated inflammatory responses; modulation of γ chain expression could thus represent a new therapeutic avenue for intervention in diseases such as anaphylaxis and asthma.

Type II Inflammation: Cytotoxic Immunoglobulin G

Cytotoxic IgGs are found in a variety of autoimmune disorders and have been developed for therapeutic indications in the treatment of infectious and neoplastic diseases. The mechanisms by which these antibodies trigger cytotoxicity in vivo have been investigated in FcR knockout mice. Anti-RBC antibodies trigger erythrophagocytosis of IgG-opsonized RBCs in an FcR-dependent manner; γ chain–deficient mice were protected from the pathogenic effect of these antibodies, whereas complement C3–deficient mice were indistinguishable from wild-type animals in their ability to clear the targeted RBCs.[132,133] FcγRIII plays the exclusive role in this process for the mouse IgG1 isotype. Murine IgG2a anti-RBC antibodies utilize primarily the FcγRIV receptor pathway despite the singular ability of murine IgG2a antibodies to bind as monomers to FcγRI. These and other studies suggest that the role of the high-affinity FcγRI in IgG-mediated inflammation is likely to be restricted to augmenting the effector response (determined by FcγRIII and IV) in situations that involve high concentrations of murine IgG2a antibodies which are found at localized inflammatory sites where FcγRI expression is induced on recruited macrophages.

Experimental models of immune thrombocytopenic purpura (ITP) in which murine IgG1 antiplatelet antibodies trigger thrombocytopenia and yielded results similar to those of the anti-RBC studies cited previously. The specific FcγR involved depended on the subclass of antibody used. IgG1 antibodies mediated their activity exclusively through FcγRIII, while IgG2a and 2b were FcγRIV dependent. In contrast, FcγRI- or C3-deficient mice were fully susceptible to antibody-induced thrombocytopenia.[20,31] FcγRIIB-deficient mice showed an isotype-specific enhancement of antibody-mediated platelet depletion, with the strongest impact on IgG1 and much smaller increases for IgG2a and IgG2b isotypes. This is consistent with the affinities of these isotypes for their specific activating and the inhibitory receptor, which will determine antibody activity in vivo (see Table 24.1). In a passive protection model of *Cryptococcus neoformans*–induced disease, passive immunization with mouse IgG1, IgG2a, and IgG2b antibodies resulted in protection in wild-type animals but not in FcRγchain–deficient animals.[134]

IgG antibodies raised to murine glomerular basement membrane preparations induce acute glomerulonephritis in a model of Goodpasture disease in wild-type but not FcRγ- or FcγRIV-deficient animals.[77,135,136] FcγRIIB-deficient animals displayed enhanced disease in this model, which indicates that the effector cells involved were constitutively expressing significant levels of FcγRIIB. Similar results were obtained when DBA/1 animals were immunized with bovine type II collagen to induce arthritis. Deficiency of FcRγ chain protected these mice from the pathogenic effects of the anticollagen antibodies that were generated.[137] As mentioned previously, deficiency of FcγRIIB in the DBA/1 collagen-induced arthritis model resulted in enhanced disease, through increased autoantibody production and elevated effector responses.

A dramatic example of the importance of these pathways in determining the in vivo activity of cytotoxic antibodies was obtained in models of antitumor antibody response. In a syngenic murine model of metastatic melanoma, a murine IgG2a antimelanocyte antibody was able to reduce tumor metastasis in wild-type animals but was ineffective in FcRγ- or FcγRIV-deficient mice.[20,83,138] In the absence of FcγRIIB, the activity of an IgG1 antibody, matched in its antigen binding domain, was enhanced, which indicates that the in vivo cytotoxic activity of the antibody was the net of activation and inhibitory receptor engagement[20,55] (see Fig. 24.6B). These studies, together with similar studies performed with antiplatelet antibodies or defucosylated antibodies, demonstrated that the in vivo activity of a cytotoxic antibody could be predicted by a simple equilibrium binding model in which the ratio of the monomeric affinity constants for

the activation and inhibitory Fc receptors (A/I ratio) are the dominant parameters, as demonstrated for T-cell receptor–major histocompability complex interactions.[139] An example for the enhanced cytotoxic activity of an antitumor antibody due to increased affinity for activating FcRs is shown in Figure 24.6C. The generation of an afucosylated antitumor antibody resulted in an increase of the A/I ratio of 7 to 20 for this IgG subclass, resulting in enhanced antitumor activity in vivo. Xenograft models of human tumors transplated into nude mice demonstrated, for a variety of tumors and cytotoxic antibodies, the requirement for FcR effector activity. For example, human breast carcinoma or lymphoma lines transplanted into nude mice and treated with either the humanized IgG1 or chimerized IgG1 antibodies (trastuzumab and rituximab), respectively, revealed that the ability of these antibodies to modulate tumor growth was abrogated in FcRγ chain–deficient mice. A point mutation that eliminated FcR binding of the anti-Her2/neu murine IgG1 antibody 4D5 abolished the in vivo cytotoxic activity of the antibody against a human xenograft but did not affect the in vitro growth inhibitory activity; this again illustrates the difference between in vivo and in vitro mechanisms. Similar results were obtained for T-cell lymphoma xenograft models and anti-CD2 antibodies, among others.[140,141] The general conclusions that can be drawn from these studies support a dominant role for the low-affinity activating FcγRs in mediating cytotoxicity by IgG antibodies. FcγRIIB restricts the effector response for those antibodies with low A/I ratios and in situations in which the effector cell expresses this inhibitory molecule.

The relevance of these murine in vivo studies to the treatment of human populations with antitumor cytotoxic antibodies has been demonstrated in two studies that investigated the differential responses of patients treated with anti-CD20 (rituximab) for lymphoma.[48,52] Both studies demonstrated a highly significant correlation between patient response, as measured by the time to relapse, and alleles of FcγRIIIA. In patients with an allele of this low-affinity activation receptor (158V) that confers higher binding affinity for human IgG1 Fc, improved outcome was observed, as compared to those with a lower binding allele of this receptor (158F). In addition, lymphoma patients with the high affinity allele showed a significantly better clinical response after receiving anti-idiotype vaccination.[51]

Type III Responses: Immune Complex–Mediated Inflammation

The classic example of this reaction, the Arthus reaction, has been studied in a variety of FcR- and complement-deficient animals. The initial studies were performed by using the cutaneous reverse passive Arthus reaction, in which antibody was injected intradermally and antigen was given intravenously. An inflammatory response, characterized by edema, hemorrhage, and neutrophil infiltration, developed within 2 hours. This reaction was elicited in a variety of complement- and FcR-deficient animals. The results from several independent studies confirmed the initial observations: that IgG ICs triggered cutaneous inflammatory reactions even in the absence of complement but displayed an absolute requirement for FcγR activation.[22] FcγRIIB modulated the magnitude of the response, with enhanced Arthus reactions observed in FcγRIIB-deficient strains.[18] The effector cell in the cutaneous reaction was determined to be the mast cell, as demonstrated by the use of mast cell–deficient strains and by mast cell reconstitution studies.[131] The generality of this result was demonstrated in similar reactions performed in the lung, illustrating the FcR dependence and relative complement independence of this response.[116] Thus, all studies have demonstrated an absolute dependence on FcR expression in the Arthus reaction. One model for IC-induced arthritis, the KRN/nonobese diabetic model, in which IgG1 anti-GPI antibodies are responsible for IC deposition in the synovium,[142] has been shown to depend on both FcγRIII and C3 but not on components of the classical complement pathway, such as C1q and C4; transfer of serum to animals deleted for FcγRIII or C3 prevented the development of disease.[143,144] Deficiency in the late components of complement, such as C5a or its receptor, have also been reported to result in a partial reduction in the magnitude of the response in IC-induced lung inflammation[145] and to result in a complete block in the KRN/nonobese diabetic arthritis model. The likely mechanism by which C5a exerts its effects is through upregulation of activating FcγRs, resulting in an amplification loop.[75] C5a is generated in this system as a result of FcR activation of effector cells and is independent of the classical, alternative, and mannan-binding protein pathways. Binding of C5a to the C5aR results in upregulation of activation receptors on these effector macrophages, thus augmenting the inflammatory response triggered by FcRs. These studies have led to a revision of the hypotheses about the mechanism of IC-mediated inflammation, typified by the Arthus reaction, in which there is an absolute requirement for activating FcγRs in initiating mast cell activation by ICs. FcγR activation is, in turn, modulated by the inhibitory receptor FcγRIIB. The A/I value of a specific IgG antibody and the densities of these opposing signaling receptors determines the concentration threshold for IC activation and the magnitude of the effector response that can be obtained. The classical pathway of complement activation is not required; however, C5a activation, through the FcγR pathway, may enhance the response under some circumstances through an amplifying loop. The release of inflammatory mediators such as vasoactive amines, chemokines, and cytokines leads to the hallmarks of this reaction: edema, hemorrhage, and neutrophil infiltration at the site of IC deposition.

The significance of the FcR pathway in initiating IC inflammation in autoimmune disease was further established by investigating a spontaneous murine model of lupus, the B/W F1 mouse. The Arthus reaction results predicted the absolute requirement of activation FcγR in initiating inflammation and tissue damage in IC diseases such as lupus. The FcRγ chain deletion was backcrossed onto the NZB and New Zealand white strains for eight generations, and the intercrossed progeny were segregated into B/W FcRγ−/− and FcRγ+/−. Anti-DNA antibodies and circulating ICs developed in all animals; IC and complement C3 deposition was similarly observed in all animals. However, mice deficient in the common γ chain showed no evidence of glomerulonephritis

and had normal life expectancy, despite comparable levels of circulating ICs and glomerular deposition of these complexes along with complement C3. Mice heterozygous for the γchain mutation were indistinguishable from B/W F1 animals with wild-type γchains in developing glomerulonephritis and displaying reduced viability.[127] This spontaneous model supports the conclusions stated previously about the absolute requirement for FcγRIII in the activation of inflammatory disease by ICs: in the absence of this receptor, deposited ICs and C3 are not sufficient to trigger effector cell activation, which indicates that it is possible to uncouple pathogenic ICs from inflammatory disease by removing activating FcR engagement. Similar conclusions were reached in a murine model of Goodpasture disease where IC deposition, composed of mouse IgG2b antibodies, resulted in a fulminant glomerulonephritis.[77] Blocking the relevant activation FcR, FcγRIV, with a monoclonal antibody, protected the animals from fatal disease. These results further indicate that intervention in the effector stage of IC diseases, such as lupus and rheumatoid arthritis, would be accomplished by blocking activation Fcγ Rs to prevent initiation of effector cell responses.

Immunoglobulin G–Dependent Neutralization and Induction of Agonistic Signaling

In contrast to these FcR-dependent activities, IgG molecules, by virtue of their exquisite specifity for discrete antigens, are expected to mediate FcγR-independent effects, such as neutralization of bacterial toxins or viruses. Here, IgG molecules would prevent the toxin or microorganism from binding to its cellular receptor, thereby protecting the host from the pathogenic effects of the infecting microbe. This picture changed, however, as it was demonstrated that both IgG-mediated toxin and virus neutralization can be dependent on cellular FcRs in vivo. Thus, neutralization of the anthrax toxin (called protective antigen component) by anti–protective antigen antibodies required FcR expression in vivo and anti–protective antigen antibodies that differed only by their Fc subclasses showed a hierarchy of protection with IgG2a and IgG2b antibodies affording a better protection than IgG1 antibodies, consistent with previous observation for cytotoxic IgG.[146,147] Similar results were obtained for the mechanism of activity of neutralizing antibodies protecting from influenza or human immunodeficiency virus infection.[148,149] These results suggest that current in vitro assays using only the pathogen-specific antibody, a target cell line might miss an important component required for antibody activity in vivo, and that novel assays including the FcR-dependent component might provide a better predictability of IgG activity.[150]

Beyond the central function of IgG in host defense, agonistic antibodies triggering signaling pathways in target cells are being evaluated for their therapeutic potential. For example, agonistic antibodies for tumor necrosis factor receptor family members such as anti-CD40 or anti-DR5 (drozitumab) are under evaluation for their ability to enhance tumor cell clearance by both direct and indirect mechanisms. Interestingly, the apoptosis inducing activity of anti-DR5 agonistic antibodies was found to be dependent on FcRs in vivo.[151] A similar dependence on FcRs for in vivo activity was demonstrated for agonistic anti-Fas antibodies.[152] A variety of CD40-specific agonistic antibodies have been used to deliver costimulatory signals to augment and sustain T-cell responses to result in tumor clearance.[151] Recent studies showed that the inhibitory FcγRIIB was essential for this agonistic activity and could not be replaced by activation FcγRs.[153,154] Although the exact mechanism of these FcR-dependent pathways remain to be established, these findings open the path toward generating improved agonistic anti-tumor necrosis factor receptor antibodies by Fc engineering. Consistent with this notion, a recent study showed that generating anti-CD40 antibodies with enhanced FcγRIIB binding considerably augmented their in vivo adjuvant activity.[154]

DISEASE ASSOCIATIONS

Autoimmunity and Tolerance

In view of their functional capacity to link autoantibodies to effector cells, FcRs have naturally been considered to have a pathogenic role in the development of autoimmune diseases. Several studies have attempted to correlate specific polymorphisms in FcγRIIA, FcγRIIIA, or FcγRIIIB with incidence or severity of lupus or rheumatoid arthritis.[155] In view of the heterogeneity of these diseases, it is perhaps not surprising that inconsistent results have been obtained. Alleles that increase the ability of FcγRIIA to bind IgG2 or FcγRIIIA to bind IgG1 might be expected to correlate with disease severity in some populations. Indeed, these types of associations have been reported in some studies but not in others.[156] These variable results have often been explained as an indication that other genes may be in linkage disequilibrium with the FcR alleles under investigation. This is a plausible explanation when viewed in light of the autoimmunity susceptibility genes mapping in or near the region of the FcR genes, chromosome 1q21–24.[157] This region of chromosome 1 has been implicated in a variety of human and murine linkage studies. For example, the Sle1 alleles derived from NZB flank the FcγRIIB gene and form a linkage group with the ability to break tolerance to nuclear antigens, resulting in production of antichromatin antibodies. Epistatic interactions between FcγRIIB and lupus susceptibility genes have been demonstrated in the murine lupus model of B6.RIIB. Crossing the *yaa* gene to this strain accelerates the development of disease; 50% survival is decreased from 8 months to 4 months, with 100% fatality by 8 months. This increase in severity correlates with a change in the specificity of the autoantibodies, from diffuse antinuclear antibodies to antibodies that stain with a punctate, nucleolar pattern on antinuclear antibody staining. Recently, it has been shown that the yaa susceptibility locus contains a duplication of the toll-like receptor 7 gene in the pseudoautosomal region of the y-chromosome (158). Moreover, toll-like receptor 7 and toll-like receptor 9 with their ability to recognize potential self-antigens such as ribonucleic acid or DNA, respectively, were shown to be important components in the generation of pathogenic autoreactive antibodies.[159,160] Compared to other Yaa-independent SLE susceptibility loci, FcγRIIB may be a dominant factor for the development of autoantibodies

and the systemic activation of the immune system as demonstrated by a study using NZB/BXSB F1 animals congenic for the wild-type *fcgr2b* gene. In these mice, a dramatic reduction in the production of autoantibodies and immune cell activation was noted compared to mice with impaired FcγRIIB expression.[161] These data are consistent with studies that overexpressed FcγRIIB in autoimmune-prone mouse strains resulting in suppression of autoantibody production.[60,61]

Two types of polymorphisms in the FcγRIIB gene have been associated with SLE. Promoter polymorphisms have been described resulting in reduced expression of FcγRIIB on activated B cells in both mouse and human SLE and CIDP populations.[59,113,162] In addition, a polymorphism in the transmembrane domain of FcγRIIB has been identified that is associated with susceptibility to SLE in Japanese populations. This polymorphism results in an FcγRIIB protein with reduced ability to enter lipid rafts and thus behaves as a hypomorphic allele for inhibitory function.[163]

Together, these studies point to FcγRIIB as a susceptibility factor in the development of autoimmunity with the ability to interact with other susceptibility factors to modify both the afferent and efferent limbs of the autoimmune response.

Inflammation

Antibody-mediated inflammatory diseases have been clearly demonstrated to involve the coupling of pathogenic autoantibodies or ICs to cellular FcRs. Therapeutics targeted to disrupt these interactions are in development, beginning with a monoclonal antibody to human IgE that functions to reduce IgE binding to its high-affinity receptor and thereby prevent allergic and anaphylactic reactions.[164] Because IgE is required for the survival of mast cells as well as in the regulation of FcεRI expression, reduction in IgE has synergistic effects on the ligand, receptor, and effector cell. The success of this approach will undoubtedly lead to other approaches that target the receptor or its signaling pathway. Blocking FcγRIIIA or IIA is expected to mimic the phenotype of FcRgamma-deficient animals in models of IgG-induced disease. Early attempts to use this approach in ITP were promising but limited by the crossreactivity to receptors on neutrophils, which led to neutropenia and the development of immune response to the murine antibody.[165] Development of second-generation anti-FcγRIIIA antibodies with greater specificity and reduced toxicity now appears to be a viable approach for the treatment of autoimmune diseases. Moreover, using small molecules to inhibit signaling molecules such as Syk seems to have promising effects in preventing autoantibody dependent platelet depletion in mice and humans.[166]

An alternative approach to limiting the activation of FcRs is to utilize the endogenous inhibitory pathway to abrogate IgE or IgG activation of their cognate receptors through coligation to FcγRIIB. This mechanism has been proposed to explain the ability to induce desensitization for the treatment of allergic diseases.[33,167] Inducing production of IgG antibodies to an allergen may facilitate cross-linking of FcγRIIB to FcεRI. A similar approach involving anti-CD19 antibodies containing an engineered Fc-fragment with enhanced binding to FcγRIIB has been successfully used to shut down autoantibody production by human B cells in a xenograft mouse model system.[168] The ability to exploit the inhibitory pathway to reduce the activity of activation FcγRs has been demonstrated to account for some of the anti-inflammatory activity associated with high-dose intravenous gamma globulin (IVIG), which consists of the pooled IgG fraction of serum from thousands of donors.[76] The use of IVIG for the treatment of ITP and other autoimmune diseases is well established, although the mechanism of action has been elusive. In murine models of ITP, arthritis, and nephritis, it has been demonstrated that protection by IVIG is dependent on the presence of FcγRIIB; deletion of FcγRIIB or blocking FcγRIIB by a monoclonal antibody eliminates the ability of IVIG to protect the animal against an inflammatory response.[76,78,80] IVIG was demonstrated to lead to the in vivo induction of FcγRIIB on splenic effector macrophages, which would raise the threshold required for platelet clearance by activating FcγRs on these cells.[20,31,78,83] A similar upregulation of the human inhibitory FcγRIIB was demonstrated in patients with CIDP receiving IVIG treatment as a first-line therapy.[59] Recently, it has become clear that the sialic acid–rich fraction of IgG antibodies in the IVIG preparation is responsible for the anti-inflammatory activity and FcγRIIB upregulation, enabling for the first time the generation of a recombinant IVIG replacement consisting of a sialic acid–rich IgG Fc fragment.[79,80] Human and mouse sialic acid–rich IgG has a reduced affinity for classical FcRs and acquires the capacity to bind to SIGNR1 strongly expressed on mouse splenic marginal zone macrophages.[68,80] By using SIGNR1-deficient mice expressing human DC-SIGN, it was demonstrated that human DC-SIGN expressed on macrophages or DCs can substitute for mouse SIGNR1 affording a candidate molecule essential for the anti-inflammatory activity of IVIG in humans.[67] Both molecules belong to the C-type lectin family and have been implicated in recognition of pathogenic microorganisms including human immunodeficiency virus and *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*.[169] Therefore, SIGNR1 and human DC-SIGN can be considered as noncanonical FcRs recognizing specific IgG glycovariants and, together with the family of toll-like receptors, provide a prime example for the dual usage of one molecule in the recognition of self- and non–self-ligands. Moreover, infusion of sialic acid–rich IgG resulted in an IL33-dependent expansion of basophils and IL4 production. IL4 is one of the interleukins known to upregulate FcγRIIB on innate immune effector cells, consistent with the upregulation of FcγRIIB noted in mouse model systems and humans. Together with previous data on the dependence of FcγRIIB upregulation on colony-stimulating factor-1–dependent macrophages, so called sensor macrophages, this suggests the following model for the anti-inflammatory activity of IVIG (Fig. 24.7). In this model, sialic acid–rich IVIG binds to mouse SIGNR1 or human DC-SIGN on sensor macrophages or DCs, which results in the production of IL33 that in turn leads to IL4 production by basophils, inducing the upregulation of FcγRIIB on effector macrophages, thereby raising the threshold for activation.[67] There is evidence that this

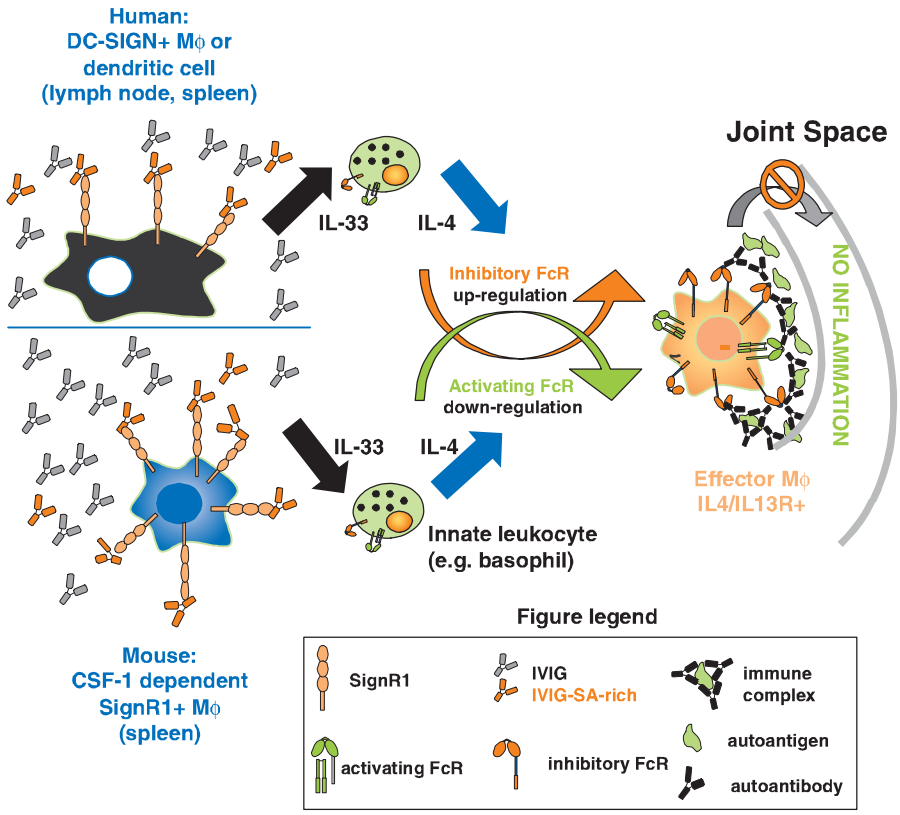


FIG. 24.7. Model for the Anti-inflammatory Activity of Intravenous Gamma Globulin (IVIG) in Mice and Humans. Sialic acid–rich antibodies in the IVIG preparation lose affinity for classical FcγRs and acquire the capacity to bind to molecules such as mouse SIGNR1 or human DC-SIGN on the surface of colony-stimulating factor-1–dependent sensor macrophages or dendritic cells. This results in the production of IL33 and the expansion of innate leukocytes such as basophils followed by IL4 release resulting in the upregulation of the inhibitory FcγRIIB and downmodulation of activating FcγRs on effector macrophages inhibiting the release of inflammatory mediators and tissue destruction.

anti-inflammatory pathway triggered by IgG glycovariants rich in terminal sialic acid residues is of general importance for maintaining immune homeostasis. Thus, patients with rheumatoid arthritis and autoimmune-prone mouse strains have reduced levels of serum IgG–rich containing terminal sialic acid and galactose residues during active phases of the disease.[170,171] A similar reduction of this anti-inflammatory IgG variant is observed during aging, consistent with an increased probability to develop autoimmune disease.[172] This downmodulation of sialic acid–rich IgG was also observed during normal immunization conditions in mice, suggesting the general importance of this phenomenon during proinflammatory conditions.[80] The opposite type of regulation is seen in women with rheumatoid arthritis during pregnancy.[173] Parallelling the decreased frequency of arthritic flares an increased level of IgG glycoforms rich in terminal galactose and sialic acid residues was observed. In addition, inducing expression of FcγRIIB might be a clinically feasible approach and could be effective at modulating pathogenic autoantibodies from activation effector cell responses through activating FcRs.

Studies on the FcαRI receptor have demonstrated a role for this molecule in the pathogenesis of IgA nephropathy, in which circulating macromolecular complexes are deposited in the mesangium, resulting in hematuria and eventually leading to renal failure. Soluble FcαRI is found in the circulating IgA complexes, which suggests a role for the receptor in the formation of these pathogenic complexes. A transgenic mouse expressing FcαRI spontaneously develops IgA nephropathy resulting from the interaction of polymeric mouse IgA and the human FcαRI receptor to release soluble receptor–IgA complexes, which leads to deposition in the mesangium and the sequelae of IgA neuropathy.

CONCLUSION

Receptors for the Fc of immunoglobulins provide an essential link between the humoral and adaptive response, translating the specificity of antibody diversity into cellular responses. The canonical FcRs mediate their biological responses through the coupling of Fc recognition to ITAM-/ITIM-based signaling motifs. A diverse array of biological responses depends on the FcR system, influencing both the afferent and efferent limbs of the immune response. Detailed biochemical, structural, and molecular biological data have provided a detailed understanding of how these receptors are regulated, are assembled, bind their ligand, and transduce specific cellular signals. FcRs play a significant role in vivo in maintaining peripheral tolerance by limiting the accumulation of autoreactive B cells that escape central tolerance checkpoints, such as light chain editing or potentially arise during somatic hypermutation in germinal centers, in modulating T-cell responses by regulating both antigen presentation and maturation by DCs, and in mediating the coupling of antigen recognition to effector-cell activation. They are the primary pathways by which pathogenic IgG and IgE antibodies trigger inflammatory responses in vivo. Allergic reactions, cytotoxic IgG responses, and IC-mediated inflammation are all critically dependent on FcR cross-linking and have resulted in a fundamental revision of the mechanisms

underlying such classic immunological responses as the Arthus reaction. Blocking of these receptors uncouples the pathogenic potential of autoantibodies and represents an important new therapeutic target for the development of anti-inflammatory therapeutic agents. Central to the correct functioning of these responses is the balance that is maintained through the pairing of activation and inhibitory receptors that coengage the IgG ligand; perturbations in either component can result in pathological responses. The study of FcRs defined the ubiquitous inhibitory motif, the ITIM, and has provided a paradigm for how these pathways modulate ITAM-based activation responses. Studies in mice deficient in individual FcRs have provided the necessary insights for defining comparable activities in human autoimmune diseases and suggest ways in which manipulation of the IgG–FcR interaction may lead to new classes of therapeutics for the treatment of these diseases. Modulation of the inhibitory response, a novel activity associated with IVIG to account for some of its anti-inflammatory activity in vivo, represents a novel approach to the regulation of Ig-mediated inflammation and suggests that therapeutic agents based on those pathways are likely to be effective. It seems clear that this anti-inflammatory pathway is of general importance for maintaining immune homeostasis, suggesting that IgG glycoforms rich in terminal sialic acid residues might be considered as a molecular switch either keeping the immune system in a resting state or, during infection or autoimmune responses, loosening the brakes thereby allowing full blown inflammation. In this pathway, noncanonical FcRs including SignR1 and human DC-SIGN recognizing specific IgG glycoforms are of central importance. Conversely, engineering of therapeutic antibodies targeted to eliminate infectious or neoplastic disease will probably benefit from optimization of their Fc domains for interaction with specific canonical FcRs.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

The Laboratory of Molecular Genetics and Immunology at the Rockefeller University is supported by grants from the National Institutes of Health, the Dana Foundation, the Juvenile Diabetes Research Foundation, the Cancer Research Institute, and by Theresa and Eugene Lang. The Laboratory of Genetics at the University of Erlangen-Nuernberg is supported by the German Research Foundation and the Bavarian Genome Research Network.

REFERENCES

1. Boyden SV, Sorkin E. The adsorption of antigen by spleen cells previously treated with antiserum in vitro. *Immunology*. 1960;3:272–283. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/13803569
2. Berken A, Benacerraf B. Properties of antibodies cytophilic for macrophages. *J Exp Med*. 1966;123(1):119–144. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4159249
3. Paraskevas F, Lee ST, Orr KB, Israels LG. A receptor for Fc on mouse B-lymphocytes. *J Immunol*. 1972;108(5):1319–1327. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4555113
4. Kulczycki A Jr, Isersky C, Metzger H. The interaction of IgE with rat basophilic leukemia cells. I. Evidence for specific binding of IgE. *J Exp Med*. 1974;139(3):600–616. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4812630
5. Lewis VA, Koch T, Plutner H, Mellman I. A complementary DNA clone for a macrophage-lymphocyte Fc receptor. *Nature*. 1986;324(6095):372–375. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3024012
6. Ravetch JV, Luster AD, Weinshank R, et al. Structural heterogeneity and functional domains of murine immunoglobulin G Fc receptors. *Science*. 1986;234(4777):718–725. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2946078
7. Kinet JP, Metzger H, Hakimi J, Kochan J. A cDNA presumptively coding for the alpha subunit of the receptor with high affinity for immunoglobulin E. *Biochemistry*. 1987;26(15):4605–4610. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2959318
8. Ra C, Jouvin MH, Blank U, Kinet JP. A macrophage Fc gamma receptor and the mast cell receptor for IgE share an identical subunit. *Nature*. 1989;341(6244):752–754. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2529442
9. Kurosaki T, Ravetch JV. A single amino acid in the glycosyl phosphatidylinositol attachment domain determines the membrane topology of Fc gamma RIII. *Nature*. 1989;342(6251):805–807. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2532306
10. Takai T, Li M, Sylvestre D, Clynes R, Ravetch JV. FcR gamma chain deletion results in pleiotrophic effector cell defects. *Cell*. 1994;76(3):519–529. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8313472
11. Dombrowicz D, Flamand V, Brigman KK, Koller BH, Kinet JP. Abolition of anaphylaxis by targeted disruption of the high affinity immunoglobulin E receptor alpha chain gene. *Cell*. 1993;75(5):969–976. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8252632
12. Maxwell KF, Powell MS, Hulett MD, et al. Crystal structure of the human leukocyte Fc receptor, Fc gammaRIIa. *Nat Struct Biol*. 1999;6(5):437–442. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10331870
13. Sondermann P, Huber R, Jacob U. Crystal structure of the soluble form of the human fcgamma-receptor IIb: a new member of the immunoglobulin superfamily at 1.7 A resolution. *EMBO J*. 1999;18(5):1095–1103. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10064577
14. Garman SC, Kinet JP, Jardetzky TS. Crystal structure of the human high-affinity IgE receptor. *Cell*. 1998;95(7):951–961. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9875849
15. Garman SC, Wurzburg BA, Tarchevskaya SS, Kinet JP, Jardetzky TS. Structure of the Fc fragment of human IgE bound to its high-affinity receptor Fc epsilonRI alpha. *Nature*. 2000;406(6793):259–266. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10917520
16. Sondermann P, Huber R, Oosthuizen V, Jacob U. The 3.2-A crystal structure of the human IgG1 Fc fragment-Fc gammaRIII complex. *Nature*. 2000;406(6793):267–273. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10917521
17. Ravetch JV, Kinet JP. Fc receptors. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 1991;9:457–492. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1910686
18. Takai T, Ono M, Hikida M, Ohmori H, Ravetch JV. Augmented humoral and anaphylactic responses in Fc gamma RII-deficient mice. *Nature*. 1996;379(6563):346–349. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8552190
19. Hazenbos WL, Gessner JE, Hofhuis FM, et al. Impaired IgG-dependent anaphylaxis and Arthus reaction in Fc gamma RIII (CD16) deficient mice. *Immunity*. 1996;5(2):181–188. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8769481
20. Nimmerjahn F, Ravetch JV. Divergent immunoglobulin g subclass activity through selective Fc receptor binding. *Science*. 2005;310(5753):1510–1512. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16322460
21. Carroll MC. The role of complement and complement receptors in induction and regulation of immunity. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 1998;16:545–568. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9597141
22. Sylvestre DL, Ravetch JV. Fc receptors initiate the Arthus reaction: redefining the inflammatory cascade. *Science*. 1994;265(5175):1095–1098. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8066448
23. Ravetch JV, Clynes RA. Divergent roles for Fc receptors and complement in vivo. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 1998;16:421–432. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9597136
24. Kinet JP. The high-affinity IgE receptor (Fc epsilon RI): from physiology to pathology. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 1999;17:931–972. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10358778
25. Muta T, Kurosaki T, Misulovin Z, Sanchez M, Nussenzweig MC, Ravetch JV. A 13-amino-acid motif in the cytoplasmic domain of Fc gamma RIIB modulates B-cell receptor signalling. *Nature*. 1994;368(6466):70–73. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8107887
26. Amigorena S, Bonnerot C, Drake JR, et al. Cytoplasmic domain heterogeneity and functions of IgG Fc receptors in B lymphocytes. *Science*. 1992;256(5065):1808–1812. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1535455
27. Ravetch JV, Lanier LL. Immune inhibitory receptors. *Science*. 2000;290(5489):84–89. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11021804
28. Ravetch JV, Bolland S. IgG Fc receptors. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 2001;19:275–290. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11244038
29. Ghetie V, Ward ES. Multiple roles for the major histocompatibility complex class I-related receptor FcRn. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 2000;18:739–766. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10837074
30. Mostov KE. Transepithelial transport of immunoglobulins. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 1994;12:63–84. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8011293
31. Nimmerjahn F, Bruhns P, Horiuchi K, Ravetch JV. FcgammaRIV: a novel FcR with distinct IgG subclass specificity. *Immunity*. 2005;23(1):41–51. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16039578
32. Hamaguchi Y, Xiu Y, Komura K, Nimmerjahn F, Tedder TF. Antibody isotype-specific engagement of Fcgamma receptors regulates B lymphocyte depletion during CD20 immunotherapy. *J Exp Med*. 2006;203(3):743–753. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16520392
33. Daeron M. Fc receptor biology. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 1997;15:203–234. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9143687
34. Kubagawa H, Oka S, Kubagawa Y, et al. Identity of the elusive IgM Fc receptor (FcmuR) in humans. *J Exp Med*. 2009;206(12):2779–2793. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19858324
35. Shima H, Takatsu H, Fukuda S, et al. Identification of TOSO/FAIM3 as an Fc receptor for IgM. *Int Immunol*. 2010;22(3):149–156. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20042454
36. Kubagawa H, Chen CC, Ho LH, et al. Biochemical nature and cellular distribution of the paired immunoglobulin-like receptors, PIR-A and PIR-B. *J Exp Med*. 1999;189(2):309–318. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9892613
37. Maeda A, Kurosaki M, Kurosaki T. Paired immunoglobulin-like receptor (PIR)-A is involved in activating mast cells through its association with Fc receptor gamma chain. *J Exp Med*. 1998;188(5):991–995. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9730901
38. Moretta A, Bottino C, Vitale M, et al. Activating receptors and coreceptors involved in human natural killer cell-mediated cytolysis. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 2001;19:197–223. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11244035
39. Lanier LL. Face off—the interplay between activating and inhibitory immune receptors. *Curr Opin Immunol*. 2001;13(3):326–331. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11406364
40. Dombrowicz D, Lin S, Flamand V, Brini AT, Koller BH, Kinet JP. Allergy-associated FcRbeta is a molecular amplifier of IgE- and IgG-mediated in vivo responses. *Immunity*. 1998;8(4):517–529. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9586641
41. Qiu WQ, de Bruin D, Brownstein BH, Pearse R, Ravetch JV. Organization of the human and mouse low-affinity Fc gamma R genes: duplication and recombination. *Science*. 1990;248(4956):732–735. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2139735

42. Su Y, Brooks DG, Li L, et al. Myelin protein zero gene mutated in Charcot-Marie-tooth type 1B patients. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1993; 90(22):10856–10860.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7504284
43. Maresco DL, Chang E, Theil KS, Francke U, Anderson CL. The three genes of the human FCGR1 gene family encoding Fc gamma RI flank the centromere of chromosome 1 at 1p12 and 1q21. *Cytogenet Cell Genet*. 1996;73(3):157–163.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7504284
44. Davis RS, Dennis G Jr, Odom MR, et al. Fc receptor homologs: newest members of a remarkably diverse Fc receptor gene family. *Immunol Rev*. 2002;190:123–136.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12493010
45. Morel L, Blenman KR, Croker BP, Wakeland EK. The major murine systemic lupus erythematosus susceptibility locus, Sle1, is a cluster of functionally related genes. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2001;98(4):1787–1792.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11172029
46. Sandford AJ, Moffatt MF, Daniels SE, et al. A genetic map of chromosome 11q, including the atopy locus. *Eur J Hum Genet*. 1995;3(3):188–194.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7583044
47. van der Pol W, van de Winkel JG. IgG receptor polymorphisms: risk factors for disease. *Immunogenetics*. 1998;48(3):222–232.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9683667
48. Cartron G, Dacheux L, Salles G, et al. Therapeutic activity of humanized anti-CD20 monoclonal antibody and polymorphism in IgG Fc receptor FcgammaRIIIa gene. *Blood*. 2002;99(3):754–758.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11806974
49. Musolino A, Naldi N, Bortesi B, et al. Immunoglobulin G fragment C receptor polymorphisms and clinical efficacy of trastuzumab-based therapy in patients with HER-2/neu-positive metastatic breast cancer. *J Clin Oncol*. 2008;26(11):1789–1796.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18347005
50. Paiva M, Marques H, Martins A, Ferreira P, Catarino R, Medeiros R. FcgammaRIIa polymorphism and clinical response to rituximab in non-Hodgkin lymphoma patients. *Cancer Genet Cytogenet*. 2008;183(1):35–40.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18474295
51. Weng WK, Czerwinski D, Timmerman J, Hsu FJ, Levy R. Clinical outcome of lymphoma patients after idiotype vaccination is correlated with humoral immune response and immunoglobulin G Fc receptor genotype. *J Clin Oncol*. 2004;22(23):4717–4724.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15483014
52. Weng WK, Levy R. Two immunoglobulin G fragment C receptor polymorphisms independently predict response to rituximab in patients with follicular lymphoma. *J Clin Oncol*. 2003;21(21):3940–3947.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12975461
53. Bibeau F, Lopez-Crapez E, Di Fiore F, et al. Impact of Fc{gamma}RIIa-Fc{gamma}RIIIa polymorphisms and KRAS mutations on the clinical outcome of patients with metastatic colorectal cancer treated with cetuximab plus irinotecan. *J Clin Oncol*. 2009;27(7):1122–1129.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19164213
54. Houghton AN, Scheinberg DA. Monoclonal antibody therapies-a "constant" threat to cancer. *Nat Med*. 2000;6(4):373–374.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10742135
55. Clynes RA, Towers TL, Presta LG, Ravetch JV. Inhibitory Fc receptors modulate in vivo cytoxicity against tumor targets. *Nat Med*. 2000;6(4): 443–446.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10742152
56. Bournazos S, Woof JM, Hart SP, Dransfield I. Functional and clinical consequences of Fc receptor polymorphic and copy number variants. *Clin Exp Immunol*. 2009;157(2):244–254.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19604264
57. Smith KG, Clatworthy MR. FcgammaRIIB in autoimmunity and infection: evolutionary and therapeutic implications. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2010;10(5):328–343.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20414206
58. Mackay M, Stanevsky A, Wang T, et al. Selective dysregulation of the FcgammaIIB receptor on memory B cells in SLE. *J Exp Med*. 2006; 203(9):2157–2164.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16923849
59. Tackenberg B, Jelcic I, Baerenwaldt A, et al. Impaired inhibitory Fcgamma receptor IIB expression on B cells in chronic inflammatory demyelinating polyneuropathy. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2009;106(12):4788–4792.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19261857
60. McGaha TL, Sorrentino B, Ravetch JV. Restoration of tolerance in lupus by targeted inhibitory receptor expression. *Science*. 2005;307(5709):590–593.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15681388
61. Brownlie RJ, Lawlor KE, Niederer HA, et al. Distinct cell-specific control of autoimmunity and infection by FcgammaRIIb. *J Exp Med*. 2008;205(4):883–895.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18362174
62. Clatworthy MR, Willcocks L, Urban B, et al. Systemic lupus erythematosus-associated defects in the inhibitory receptor FcgammaRIIb reduce susceptibility to malaria. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2007;104(17): 7169–7174.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17435165
63. Waisberg M, Tarasenko T, Vickers BK, et al. Genetic susceptibility to systemic lupus erythematosus protects against cerebral malaria in mice. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2011;108(3):1122–1127.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21187399
64. Nimmerjahn F, Ravetch JV. Fcgamma receptors: old friends and new family members. *Immunity*. 2006;24(1):19–28.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16413920
65. Brooks DG, Qiu WQ, Luster AD, Ravetch JV. Structure and expression of human IgG FcRII(CD32). Functional heterogeneity is encoded by the alternatively spliced products of multiple genes. *J Exp Med*. 1989; 170(4):1369–1385.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2529342
66. Ravetch JV, Perussia B. Alternative membrane forms of Fc gamma RIII(CD16) on human natural killer cells and neutrophils. Cell type-specific expression of two genes that differ in single nucleotide substitutions. *J Exp Med*. 1989;170(2):481–497.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2526846
67. Anthony RM, Kobayashi T, Wermeling F, Ravetch JV. Intravenous gammaglobulin suppresses inflammation through a novel T(H)2 pathway. *Nature*. 2011;475(7354):110–113.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2526846
68. Anthony RM, Wermeling F, Karlsson MC, Ravetch JV. Identification of a receptor required for the anti-inflammatory activity of IVIG. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2008;105(50):19571–19578.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19036920
69. Geijtenbeek TB, Gringhuis SI. Signalling through C-type lectin receptors: shaping immune responses. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2009;9(7): 465–479.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19521399
70. Coxon A, Cullere X, Knight S, et al. Fc gamma RIII mediates neutrophil recruitment to immune complexes. a mechanism for neutrophil accumulation in immune-mediated inflammation. *Immunity*. 2001;14(6): 693–704.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11420040
71. Ujike A, Ishikawa Y, Ono M, et al. Modulation of immunoglobulin (Ig) E-mediated systemic anaphylaxis by low-affinity Fc receptors for IgG. *J Exp Med*. 1999;189(10):1573–1579.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10330436
72. Daheshia M, Friend DS, Grusby MJ, Austen KF, Katz HR. Increased severity of local and systemic anaphylactic reactions in gp49B1-deficient mice. *J Exp Med*. 2001;194(2):227–234.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11457897
73. de Andres B, Mueller AL, Verbeek S, Sandor M, Lynch RG. A regulatory role for Fcgamma receptors CD16 and CD32 in the development of murine B cells. *Blood*. 1998;92(8):2823–2829.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9763567
74. Pricop L, Redecha P, Teillaud JL, et al. Differential modulation of stimulatory and inhibitory Fc gamma receptors on human monocytes by Th1 and Th2 cytokines. *J Immunol*. 2001;166(1):531–537.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11123333
75. Schmidt RE, Gessner JE. Fc receptors and their interaction with complement in autoimmunity. *Immunol Lett*. 2005;100(1):56–67.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16125792
76. Samuelsson A, Towers TL, Ravetch JV. Anti-inflammatory activity of IVIG mediated through the inhibitory Fc receptor. *Science*. 2001; 291(5503):484–486.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11161202
77. Kaneko Y, Nimmerjahn F, Madaio MP, Ravetch JV. Pathology and protection in nephrotoxic nephritis is determined by selective engagement of specific Fc receptors. *J Exp Med*. 2006;203(3):789–797.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16520389

78. Bruhns P, Samuelsson A, Pollard JW, Ravetch JV. Colony-stimulating factor-1-dependent macrophages are responsible for IVIG protection in antibody-induced autoimmune disease. *Immunity*. 2003;18(4):573–581. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12705859
79. Anthony RM, Nimmerjahn F, Ashline DJ, Reinhold VN, Paulson JC, Ravetch JV. Recapitulation of IVIG anti-inflammatory activity with a recombinant IgG Fc. *Science*. 2008;320(5874):373–376. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18420934
80. Kaneko Y, Nimmerjahn F, Ravetch JV. Anti-inflammatory activity of immunoglobulin G resulting from Fc sialylation. *Science*. 2006; 313(5787):670–673. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16888140
81. Yamaguchi M, Lantz CS, Oettgen HC, et al. IgE enhances mouse mast cell Fc(epsilon)RI expression in vitro and in vivo: evidence for a novel amplification mechanism in IgE-dependent reactions. *J Exp Med*. 1997; 185(4):663–672. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9034145
82. Dombrowicz D, Flamand V, Miyajima I, Ravetch JV, Galli SJ, Kinet JP. Absence of Fc epsilonRI alpha chain results in upregulation of Fc gammaRIII-dependent mast cell degranulation and anaphylaxis. Evidence of competition between Fc epsilonRI and Fc gammaRIII for limiting amounts of FcR beta and gamma chains. *J Clin Invest*. 1997; 99(5):915–925.
83. Nimmerjahn F, Lux A, Albert H, et al. FcgammaRIV deletion reveals its central role for IgG2a and IgG2b activity in vivo. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2010;107(45):19396–19401. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20974962
84. Sondermann P, Kaiser J, Jacob U. Molecular basis for immune complex recognition: a comparison of Fc-receptor structures. *J Mol Biol*. 2001; 309(3):737–749. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11397093
85. Anthony RM, Nimmerjahn F. The role of differential IgG glycosylation in the interaction of antibodies with FcgammaRs in vivo. *Curr Opin Organ Transplant*. 2010 Dec 9. [Epub ahead of print.] http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21150612
86. Ferrara C, Stuart F, Sondermann P, Brunker P, Umana P. The carbohydrate at FcgammaRIIIa Asn-162. An element required for high affinity binding to non-fucosylated IgG glycoforms. *J Biol Chem*. 2006;281(8): 5032–5036. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16330541
87. Ferrara C, Grau S, Jager C, et al. Unique carbohydrate-carbohydrate interactions are required for high affinity binding between FcγRIII and antibodies lacking core fucose. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2011;108(31): 12669–12674. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21768335
88. Shinkawa T, Nakamura K, Yamane N, et al. The absence of fucose but not the presence of galactose or bisecting N-acetylglucosamine of human IgG1 complex-type oligosaccharides shows the critical role of enhancing antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity. *J Biol Chem*. 2003;278(5):3466–3473. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12427744
89. Shields RL, Lai J, Keck R, et al. Lack of fucose on human IgG1 N-linked oligosaccharide improves binding to human Fcgamma RIII and antibodydependent cellular toxicity. *J Biol Chem*. 2002;277(30):26733–26740. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11986321
90. Miller KL, Duchemin AM, Anderson CL. A novel role for the Fc receptor gamma subunit: enhancement of Fc gamma R ligand affinity. *J Exp Med*. 1996;183(5):2227–2233. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8642332
91. Shields RL, Namenuk AK, Hong K, et al. High resolution mapping of the binding site on human IgG1 for Fc gamma RI, Fc gamma RII, Fc gamma RIII, and FcRn and design of IgG1 variants with improved binding to the Fc gamma R. *J Biol Chem*. 2001;276(9):6591–6604. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11096108
92. Zalevsky J, Leung IW, Karki S, et al. The impact of Fc engineering on an anti-CD19 antibody: increased Fcgamma receptor affinity enhances B-cell clearing in nonhuman primates. *Blood*. 2009;113(16):3735–3743. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19109559
93. Lazar GA, Dang W, Karki S, et al. Engineered antibody Fc variants with enhanced effector function. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2006;103(11):4005–4010. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16537476
94. Horton HM, Bernett MJ, Peipp M, et al. Fc-engineered anti-CD40 antibody enhances multiple effector functions and exhibits potent in vitro and in vivo antitumor activity against hematologic malignancies. *Blood*. 2010;116(16):3004–3012. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20616215
95. Choquet D, Partiseti M, Amigorena S, Bonnerot C, Fridman WH, Korn H. Cross-linking of IgG receptors inhibits membrane immunoglobulin-stimulated calcium influx in B lymphocytes. *J Cell Biol*. 1993;121(2):355–363. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8468351
96. Ono M, Bolland S, Tempst P, Ravetch JV. Role of the inositol phosphatase SHIP in negative regulation of the immune system by the receptor Fc(gamma)RIIB. *Nature*. 1996;383(6597):263–266. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8805703
97. Pearse RN, Kawabe T, Bolland S, Guinamard R, Kurosaki T, Ravetch JV. SHIP recruitment attenuates Fc gamma RIIB-induced B cell apoptosis. *Immunity*. 1999;10(6):753–760. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10403650
98. Tzeng SJ, Bolland S, Inabe K, Kurosaki T, Pierce SK. The B cell inhibitory Fc receptor triggers apoptosis by a novel c-Abl family kinase-dependent pathway. *J Biol Chem*. 2005;280(42):35247–35254. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16115887
99. Xiang Z, Cutler AJ, Brownlie RJ, et al. FcgammaRIIb controls bone marrow plasma cell persistence and apoptosis. *Nat Immunol*. 2007;8(4): 419–429. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17322888
100. Torigoe C, Inman JK, Metzger H. An unusual mechanism for ligand antagonism. *Science*. 1998;281(5376):568–572. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9677201
101. Tridandapani S, Pradhan M, LaDine JR, Garber S, Anderson CL, Coggeshall KM. Protein interactions of Src homology 2 (SH2) domain-containing inositol phosphatase (SHIP): association with Shc displaces SHIP from FcgammaRIIb in B cells. *J Immunol*. 1999;162(3):1408–1414. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9973396
102. Daeron M, Latour S, Malbec O, et al. The same tyrosine-based inhibition motif, in the intracytoplasmic domain of Fc gamma RIIB, regulates negatively BCR-, TCR-, and FcR-dependent cell activation. *Immunity*. 1995;3(5):635–646. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7584153
103. Malbec O, Fong DC, Turner M, et al. Fc epsilon receptor I-associated lyn-dependent phosphorylation of Fc gamma receptor IIB during negative regulation of mast cell activation. *J Immunol*. 1998;160(4):1647–1658. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9469421
104. Bolland S, Pearse RN, Kurosaki T, Ravetch JV. SHIP modulates immune receptor responses by regulating membrane association of Btk. *Immunity*. 1998;8(4):509–516. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9586640
105. Tamir I, Stolpa JC, Helgason CD, et al. The RasGAP-binding protein p62dok is a mediator of inhibitory FcgammaRIIB signals in B cells. *Immunity*. 2000;12(3):347–358. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10755621
106. Yamanashi Y, Tamura T, Kanamori T, et al. Role of the rasGAPassociated docking protein p62(dok) in negative regulation of B cell receptor-mediated signaling. *Genes Dev*. 2000;14(1):11–16. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10640270
107. Aman MJ, Lamkin TD, Okada H, Kurosaki T, Ravichandran KS. The inositol phosphatase SHIP inhibits Akt/PKB activation in B cells. *J Biol Chem*. 1998;273(51):33922–33928. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9852043
108. Liu Q, Sasaki T, Kozieradzki I, et al. SHIP is a negative regulator of growth factor receptor-mediated PKB/Akt activation and myeloid cell survival. *Genes Dev*. 1999;13(7):786–791. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10197978
109. Heyman B. Regulation of antibody responses via antibodies, complement, and Fc receptors. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 2000;18:709–737. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10837073
110. Bolland S, Ravetch JV. Spontaneous autoimmune disease in Fc(gamma) RIIB-deficient mice results from strain-specific epistasis. *Immunity*. 2000;13(2):277–285. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10981970
111. Okazaki T, Otaka Y, Wang J, et al. Hydronephrosis associated with anti-urothelial and antinuclear autoantibodies in BALB/c-Fcgr2b-/Pdcd1-/- mice. *J Exp Med*. 2005;202(12):1643–1648. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16352741

112. Fukuyama H, Nimmerjahn F, Ravetch JV. The inhibitory Fcgamma receptor modulates autoimmunity by limiting the accumulation of immunoglobulin G+ anti-DNA plasma cells. *Nat Immunol*. 2005;6(1):99–106. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15592473
113. Jiang Y, Hirose S, Abe M, et al. Polymorphisms in IgG Fc receptor IIB regulatory regions associated with autoimmune susceptibility. *Immunogenetics*. 2000;51(6):429–435. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10866109
114. Pritchard NR, Cutler AJ, Uribe S, Chadban SJ, Morley BJ, Smith KG. Autoimmune-prone mice share a promoter haplotype associated with reduced expression and function of the Fc receptor FcgammaRII. *Curr Biol*. 2000;10(4):227–230. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10704418
115. Yuasa T, Kubo S, Yoshino T, et al. Deletion of fcgamma receptor IIB renders H-2(b) mice susceptible to collagen-induced arthritis. *J Exp Med*. 1999;189(1):187–194. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9874575
116. Nakamura A, Yuasa T, Ujike A, et al. Fcgamma receptor IIB-deficient mice develop Goodpasture's syndrome upon immunization with type IV collagen: a novel murine model for autoimmune glomerular basement membrane disease. *J Exp Med*. 2000;191(5):899–906. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10704470
117. Banchereau J, Steinman RM. Dendritic cells and the control of immunity. *Nature*. 1998;392(6673):245–252. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9521319
118. Amigorena S, Bonnerot C. Fc receptors for IgG and antigen presentation on MHC class I and class II molecules. *Semin Immunol*. 1999;11(6):385–390. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10625592
119. Hamano Y, Arase H, Saisho H, Saito T. Immune complex and Fc receptor-mediated augmentation of antigen presentation for in vivo Th cell responses. *J Immunol*. 2000;164(12):6113–6119. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10843660
120. Regnault A, Lankar D, Lacabanne V, et al. Fcgamma receptor-mediated induction of dendritic cell maturation and major histocompatibility complex class I-restricted antigen presentation after immune complex internalization. *J Exp Med*. 1999;189(2):371–380. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9892619
121. Wernersson S, Karlsson MC, Dahlstrom J, Mattsson R, Verbeek JS, Heyman B. IgG-mediated enhancement of antibody responses is low in Fc receptor gamma chain-deficient mice and increased in Fc gamma RII-deficient mice. *J Immunol*. 1999;163(2):618–622. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10395649
122. Baiu DC, Prechl J, Tchorbanov A, et al. Modulation of the humoral immune response by antibody-mediated antigen targeting to complement receptors and Fc receptors. *J Immunol*. 1999;162(6):3125–3130. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10092761
123. Kalergis AM, Ravetch JV. Inducing tumor immunity through the selective engagement of activating Fcgamma receptors on dendritic cells. *J Exp Med*. 2002;195(12):1653–1659. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12070293
124. Dhodapkar KM, Kaufman JL, Ehlers M, et al. Selective blockade of inhibitory Fcgamma receptor enables human dendritic cell maturation with IL-12p70 production and immunity to antibody-coated tumor cells. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2005;102(8):2910–2915. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15703291
125. Boruchov AM, Heller G, Veri MC, Bonvini E, Ravetch JV, Young JW. Activating and inhibitory IgG Fc receptors on human DCs mediate opposing functions. *J Clin Invest*. 2005;15:15. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16167082
126. Clynes R, Ravetch JV. Cytotoxic antibodies trigger inflammation through Fc receptors. *Immunity*. 1995;3(1):21–26. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7621075
127. Clynes R, Dumitru C, Ravetch JV. Uncoupling of immune complex formation and kidney damage in autoimmune glomerulonephritis. *Science*. 1998;279(5353):1052–1054. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9461440
128. Clynes R, Maizes JS, Guinamard R, Ono M, Takai T, Ravetch JV. Modulation of immune complex-induced inflammation in vivo by the coordinate expression of activation and inhibitory Fc receptors. *J Exp Med*. 1999;189(1):179–185. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9874574
129. Hazenbos WL, Heijnen IA, Meyer D, et al. Murine IgG1 complexes trigger immune effector functions predominantly via Fc gamma RIII (CD16). *J Immunol*. 1998;161(6):3026–3032. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9743367
130. Launay P, Grossetete B, Arcos-Fajardo M, et al. Fcalpha receptor (CD89) mediates the development of immunoglobulin A (IgA) nephropathy (Berger's disease). Evidence for pathogenic soluble receptor-Iga complexes in patients and CD89 transgenic mice. *J Exp Med*. 2000;191(11):1999–2009. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10839814
131. Miyajima I, Dombrowicz D, Martin TR, Ravetch JV, Kinet JP, Galli SJ. Systemic anaphylaxis in the mouse can be mediated largely through IgG1 and Fc gammaRIII. Assessment of the cardiopulmonary changes, mast cell degranulation, and death associated with active or IgE- or IgG1-dependent passive anaphylaxis. *J Clin Invest*. 1997;99(5):901–914. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9062348
132. Sylvestre D, Clynes R, Ma M, Warren H, Carroll MC, Ravetch JV. Immunoglobulin G-mediated inflammatory responses develop normally in complement-deficient mice. *J Exp Med*. 1996;184(6):2385–2392. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8976192
133. Fossati-Jimack L, Ioan-Facsinay A, Reininger L, et al. Markedly different pathogenicity of four immunoglobulin G isotype-switch variants of an antierythrocyte autoantibody is based on their capacity to interact in vivo with the low-affinity Fcgamma receptor III. *J Exp Med*. 2000;191(8):1293–1302. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10770797
134. Yuan R, Clynes R, Oh J, Ravetch JV, Scharff MD. Antibody-mediated modulation of Cryptococcus neoformans infection is dependent on distinct Fc receptor functions and IgG subclasses. *J Exp Med*. 1998;187(4):641–648. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9463414
135. Suzuki Y, Shirato I, Okumura K, et al. Distinct contribution of Fc receptors and angiotensin II-dependent pathways in anti-GBM glomerulonephritis. *Kidney Int*. 1998;54(4):1166–1174. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9767532
136. Park SY, Ueda S, Ohno H, et al. Resistance of Fc receptor-deficient mice to fatal glomerulonephritis. *J Clin Invest*. 1998;102(6):1229–1238. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9739057
137. Kleinau S, Martinsson P, Heyman B. Induction and suppression of collagen-induced arthritis is dependent on distinct fcgamma receptors. *J Exp Med*. 2000;191(9):1611–1616. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10790435
138. Clynes R, Takechi Y, Moroi Y, Houghton A, Ravetch JV. Fc receptors are required in passive and active immunity to melanoma. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1998;95(2):652–656. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9435247
139. Stone JD, Cochran JR, Stern LJ. T-cell activation by soluble MHC oligomers can be described by a two-parameter binding model. *Biophys J*. 2001;81(5):2547–2557. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11606269
140. Zhang Z, Zhang M, Ravetch JV, Goldman C, Waldmann TA. Effective therapy for a murine model of adult T-cell leukemia with the humanized anti-CD2 monoclonal antibody, MEDI-507. *Blood*. 2003;102(1):284–288. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12649132
141. Zhang M, Zhang Z, Garmestani K, et al. Activating Fc receptors are required for antitumor efficacy of the antibodies directed toward CD25 in a murine model of adult t-cell leukemia. *Cancer Res*. 2004;64(16):5825–5829. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15313926
142. Ji H, Ohmura K, Mahmood U, et al. Arthritis critically dependent on innate immune system players. *Immunity*. 2002;16(2):157–168. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11869678
143. Korganow AS, Ji H, Mangialaio S, et al. From systemic T cell selfreactivity to organ-specific autoimmune disease via immunoglobulins. *Immunity*. 1999;10(4):451–461. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10229188
144. Matsumoto I, Staub A, Benoist C, Mathis D. Arthritis provoked by linked T and B cell recognition of a glycolytic enzyme. *Science*. 1999;286(5445):1732–1735. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10576739
145. Baumann U, Kohl J, Tschernig T, et al. A codominant role of Fc gamma RI/III and C5aR in the reverse Arthus reaction. *J Immunol*. 2000;164(2):1065–1070. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10623857

146. Nimmerjahn F, Ravetch JV. Antibody-mediated modulation of immune responses. *Immunol Rev*. 2010;236:265–275. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20636822
147. Abboud N, Chow SK, Saylor C, et al. A requirement for FcgammaR in antibody-mediated bacterial toxin neutralization. *J Exp Med*. 2010; 207(11):2395–2405. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20921285
148. Huber VC, Lynch JM, Bucher DJ, Le J, Metzger DW. Fc receptor-mediated phagocytosis makes a significant contribution to clearance of influenza virus infections. *J Immunol*. 2001;166(12):7381–7388. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11390489
149. Hessell AJ, Hangartner L, Hunter M, et al. Fc receptor but not complement binding is important in antibody protection against HIV. *Nature*. 2007;449(7158):101–104. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17805298
150. Verma A, Ngundi MM, Meade BD, De Pascalis R, Elkins KL, Burns DL. Analysis of the Fc gamma receptor-dependent component of neutralization measured by anthrax toxin neutralization assays. *Clin Vaccine Immunol*. 2009;16(10):1405–1412. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19656993
151. Wilson NS, Yang B, Yang A, et al. An Fcgamma receptor-dependent mechanism drives antibody-mediated target-receptor signaling in cancer cells. *Cancer Cell*. 2011;19(1):101–113. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21251615
152. Xu Y, Szalai AJ, Zhou T, et al. Fc gamma Rs modulate cytotoxicity of anti-Fas antibodies: implications for agonistic antibody-based therapeutics. *J Immunol*. 2003;171(2):562–568. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12847219
153. White AL, Chan HT, Roghanian A, et al. Interaction with Fc{gamma} RIIB is critical for the agonistic activity of anti-CD40 monoclonal antibody. *J Immunol*. 2011;187(4):1754–1763. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21742972
154. Li F, Ravetch JV. Inhibitory Fcgamma receptor engagement drives adjuvant and anti-tumor activities of agonistic CD40 antibodies. *Science*. 2011;333(6045):1030–1034. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21852502
155. Dijstelbloem HM, van de Winkel JG, Kallenberg CG. Inflammation in autoimmunity: receptors for IgG revisited. *Trends Immunol*. 2001; 22(9):510–516. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11525942
156. Nimmerjahn F, Ravetch JV. Fcgamma receptors as regulators of immune responses. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2008;8(1):34–47. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18064051
157. Wakeland EK, Liu K, Graham RR, Behrens TW. Delineating the genetic basis of systemic lupus erythematosus. *Immunity*. 2001;15(3): 397–408. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11567630
158. Pisitkun P, Deane JA, Difilippantonio MJ, Tarasenko T, Satterthwaite AB, Bolland S. Autoreactive B cell responses to RNA-related antigens due to TLR7 gene duplication. *Science*. 2006;312(5780):1669–1672. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16709748
159. Pasare C, Medzhitov R. Control of B-cell responses by toll-like receptors. *Nature*. 2005;438(7066):364–368. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16292312
160. Ehlers M, Fukuyama H, McGaha TL, Aderem A, Ravetch JV. TLR9/ MyD88 signaling is required for class switching to pathogenic IgG2a and 2b autoantibodies in SLE. *J Exp Med*. 2006;203(3):553–561. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16492804
161. Lin Q, Hou R, Sato A, et al. Inhibitory IgG Fc receptor promoter region polymorphism is a key genetic element for murine systemic lupus erythematosus. *J Autoimmun*. 2010;34(4):356–363. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19758787
162. Blank MC, Stefanescu RN, Masuda E, et al. Decreased transcription of the human FCGR2B gene mediated by the -343 G/C promoter polymorphism and association with systemic lupus erythematosus. *Hum Genet*. 2005;117(2-3):220–227. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15895258
163. Floto RA, Clatworthy MR, Heilbronn KR, et al. Loss of function of a lupus-associated FcgammaRIIb polymorphism through exclusion from lipid rafts. *Nat Med*. 2005;11(10):1056–1058. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16170323
164. Heusser C, Jardieu P. Therapeutic potential of anti-IgE antibodies. *Curr Opin Immunol*. 1997;9(6):805–813. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9492982
165. Bussel JB. Fc receptor blockade and immune thrombocytopenic purpura. *Semin Hematol*. 2000;37(3):261–266. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10942220
166. Podolanczuk A, Lazarus AH, Crow AR, Grossbard E, Bussel JB. Of mice and men: an open-label pilot study for treatment of immune thrombocytopenic purpura by an inhibitor of Syk. *Blood*. 2009;113(14):3154–3160. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19096013
167. Strait RT, Morris SC, Finkelman FD. IgG-blocking antibodies inhibit IgE-mediated anaphylaxis in vivo through both antigen interception and Fc gamma RIIb cross-linking. *J Clin Invest*. 2006;116(3):833–841. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16498503
168. Horton HM, Chu SY, Ortiz EC, et al. Antibody-mediated coengagement of FcgammaRIIb and B cell receptor complex suppresses humoral immunity in systemic lupus erythematosus. *J Immunol*. 2011;186(7): 4223–4233. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21357255
169. Geijtenbeek TB, den Dunnen J, Gringhuis SI. Pathogen recognition by DC-SIGN shapes adaptive immunity. *Future Microbiol*. 2009;4(7): 879–890. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19722841
170. Parekh RB, Dwek RA, Sutton BJ, et al. Association of rheumatoid arthritis and primary osteoarthritis with changes in the glycosylation pattern of total serum IgG. *Nature*. 1985;316(6027):452–457. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3927174
171. Bond A, Cooke A, Hay FC. Glycosylation of IgG, immune complexes and IgG subclasses in the MRL-lpr/lpr mouse model of rheumatoid arthritis. *Eur J Immunol*. 1990;20(10):2229–2233. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2242757
172. Parekh R, Roitt I, Isenberg D, Dwek R, Rademacher T. Age-related galactosylation of the N-linked oligosaccharides of human serum IgG. *J Exp Med*. 1988;167(5):1731–1736. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3367097
173. van de Geijn FE, Wuhrer M, Selman MH, et al. Immunoglobulin G galactosylation and sialylation are associated with pregnancy-induced improvement of rheumatoid arthritis and the postpartum flare: results from a large prospective cohort study. *Arthritis Res Ther*. 2009;11(6): R193.
174. Maenaka K, van der Merwe PA, Stuart DI, Jones EY, Sondermann P. The human low affinity Fcgamma receptors IIa, IIb, and III bind IgG with fast kinetics and distinct thermodynamic properties. *J Biol Chem*. 2001; 276(48):44898–44904. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11544262
175. Okazaki A, Shoji-Hosaka E, Nakamura K, et al. Fucose depletion from human IgG1 oligosaccharide enhances binding enthalpy and association rate between IgG1 and FcgammaRIIIa. *J Mol Biol*. 2004;336(5):1239–1249. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15037082
176. Paetz A, Sack M, Thepen T, et al. Recombinant soluble human Fcgamma receptor I with picomolar affinity for immunoglobulin G. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun*. 2005;338(4):1811–1817. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16289041
177. Bruhns P, Iannascoli B, England P. et al. Specificity and affinity of human Fcgamma receptors and their polymorphic variants for human IgG subclasses. *Blood*. 2009;113(16):3716–3725. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19018092

CHAPTER 25

Type I Cytokines and Interferons, and Their Receptors

Warren J. Leonard

OVERVIEW AND ISSUES OF NOMENCLATURE

Cytokines are proteins that are secreted by cells and transduce signals via specific cell surface receptors on either the cytokine-producing cell (autocrine actions) or on other target cells (paracrine actions). From this operational type of description, it is clear that the distinction between cytokines, growth factors, and hormones may be imprecise. In general, cytokines and growth factors are similar, except that the term cytokine most often refers to molecules involved in host defense that have actions on leukocytes, whereas the term growth factor more often refers to molecules acting on other somatic cell types. Cytokines most often act locally. For example, in the interaction between a T cell and an antigen-presenting cell, cytokines are produced and usually exert potent actions locally, with rather limited biologic half-lives in the circulation. In contrast, hormones are released and then disseminated via the bloodstream throughout the body, with actions on distal target organs. Nevertheless, this distinction between cytokines and hormones is not absolute, with certain cytokines acting at longer distances as well.

In the immune system, terms such as *monokines* and *lymphokines* were originally devised to identify the cellular source for cytokines.[1] Specifically, monokines included molecules such as interleukin (IL)-1, which was first recognized to be produced by monocytes, and lymphokines included molecules such as IL-2, which was first described as a T-cell growth factor produced by T lymphocytes. The monokine/lymphokine nomenclature can be problematic; however, when a cytokine is synthesized by more than one type of cell. This resulted in the adoption of the term cytokine, as proposed by Stanley Cohen in 1974.[2,3] The term cytokine refers to a protein made by a cell ("cyto") that acts ("kine") on target cells. Cytokines can have very broad ranges of actions, including on cell development, differentiation, growth, cytolytic activity of effector cells, survival, apoptosis, and chemotaxis.

Many cytokines are referred to as *interleukins* to indicate molecules that are produced by one leukocyte and act on another.[4] However, this term is also problematic as some interleukins (eg, IL-1 and IL-6) are additionally produced by cells other than leukocytes and/or exert actions on cell types beyond the immune system. For example, IL-7 is produced by stromal and epithelial cells rather than by typical leukocytes. Furthermore, nomenclature can be inconsistent. For example, IL-7 is highly related to another cytokine that is denoted as thymic stromal lymphopoietin (TSLP) rather than as an interleukin (see section on IL-7 and Thymic Stromal Lymphopoietin), even though both can be produced by stromal and epithelial cells and share a receptor component as well as select actions on lymphocytes. The more descriptive name of TSLP correctly describes its production by thymic stroma but obscures its production by skin epithelial cells, and that major target cells include dendritic cells (DCs) and cluster of differentiation (CD)4+ T cells.

Among the many classes of cytokines, the "type I" cytokines are distinctive in their sharing a similar four α-helical bundle structure, as detailed in the section on Type I Cytokines—Structural Considerations, and correspondingly, their receptors share characteristic features that have led to their description as the cytokine receptor superfamily, hematopoietin receptors, or type I cytokine receptors.[5–8] Although many interleukins are type I cytokines, some are not. For example, two of the major "proinflammatory cytokines," IL-1 and IL-6, are interleukins, but IL-6 is a type I cytokine, whereas IL-1 is not. One interleukin, IL-8, is a CXC family chemokine, an entirely different type of molecule involved in chemotaxis. Moreover, IL-10, IL-19, IL-20, IL-22, IL-24, IL-26, IL-28A, IL-28B, and IL-29 are more similar to interferons (IFNs) and are denoted as type II cytokines.

In summary, the term interleukin indicates a relationship to leukocytes, whereas the identification of a cytokine as a type I or type II cytokine indicates general properties of its three-dimensional structure. Knowing that a molecule is a type I cytokine is instructive as it indicates a likely general structure for the cytokine receptor as well as the mechanism of signal transduction. In contrast, the identification of a molecule as an interleukin provides little information other than that it often, but not always, is a type I or type II cytokine of immunologic interest.

In addition to molecules of primarily immunologic interest, other important proteins, such as growth hormone, prolactin, erythropoietin (Epo), thrombopoietin, and leptin, are type I cytokines and their receptors are type I cytokine receptors. Despite having their major actions outside the immune system, these cytokines nevertheless share important signal transduction pathways with type I cytokines of immunologic interest. By focusing on type I cytokines and IFNs and their receptors, this chapter necessarily focuses on cytokines that are evolutionarily related and share common signaling pathways, instead of focusing on common functions per se. For example, although IL-6 has overlapping actions with IL-1 and tumor necrosis factor (TNF)-α, these latter proinflammatory cytokines are not discussed in this chapter

because they are not type I cytokines, and the signaling pathways they use are distinct from those used by IL-6. This illustrates the important concept that similar end functions can be mediated via more than one type of signaling pathway. This is not to minimize the observation that many type I cytokines in fact do have similar/overlapping functions, as detailed in the section on "cytokine redundancy."

The field of IFN research is older than the cytokine field, but both fields more recently have developed in parallel. In fact, one can consider the IFNs to be the first cytokines that were identified. IFN was discovered as an antiviral activity in 1957. This turned out to be type I IFN (IFNα/β). Type II IFN (IFNγ) was discovered in 1965. Over time, it was recognized that type I cytokines and IFNs/type II cytokines share a number of common features, including signaling pathways.

An unfortunate nomenclature issue exists that should be noted. There are specialized popuplations of T cells that include T helper 1 (Th1) and T helper 2 (Th2) cells (see following discussion), which produced specialized sets of cytokines, such as IFNγ by Th1 and IL-4 by Th2 cells. These are sometimes called type 1 and type 2 cytokines (for Th1 and Th2 cytokines); unfortunately, this jargon can result in confusion as IL-4 is a type I (ie, four α-helical bundle) cytokine that is functionally a type 2 cytokine (in that it is produced by Th2 cells), where IFNγ is a type II structure cytokine produced by Th1 cells.

TYPE I CYTOKINES AND THEIR RECEPTORS

Type I Cytokines—Structural Considerations

Type I cytokines typically share only limited amino acid sequence identity, but strikingly, all type I cytokines whose structures have been solved by nuclear magnetic resonance and/or x-ray crystallographic methods achieve similar three-dimensional structures,[5–9] and those whose structures have not yet been solved are believed to share similar three-dimensional structures. Type I cytokines contain four α helices and thus are designated as four α-helical bundle cytokines (Fig. 25.1). Within their structures, the first two and last two α helices are each connected by long overhand loops, resulting in an "up-up-down-down" topologic structure, as the first two helices (A and B) can be oriented in an "up" orientation and the last two helices (C and D) can be oriented in a "down" orientation, as viewed from the N- to C-terminal direction. As shown in Figure 25.1, the N- and C-termini of the cytokines are positioned on the same part of the molecule.

Type I cytokines are either "short chain" or "long chain" four α-helical bundle cytokines based on the lengths of the α helices.[8] Some of the short-chain cytokines include IL-2,

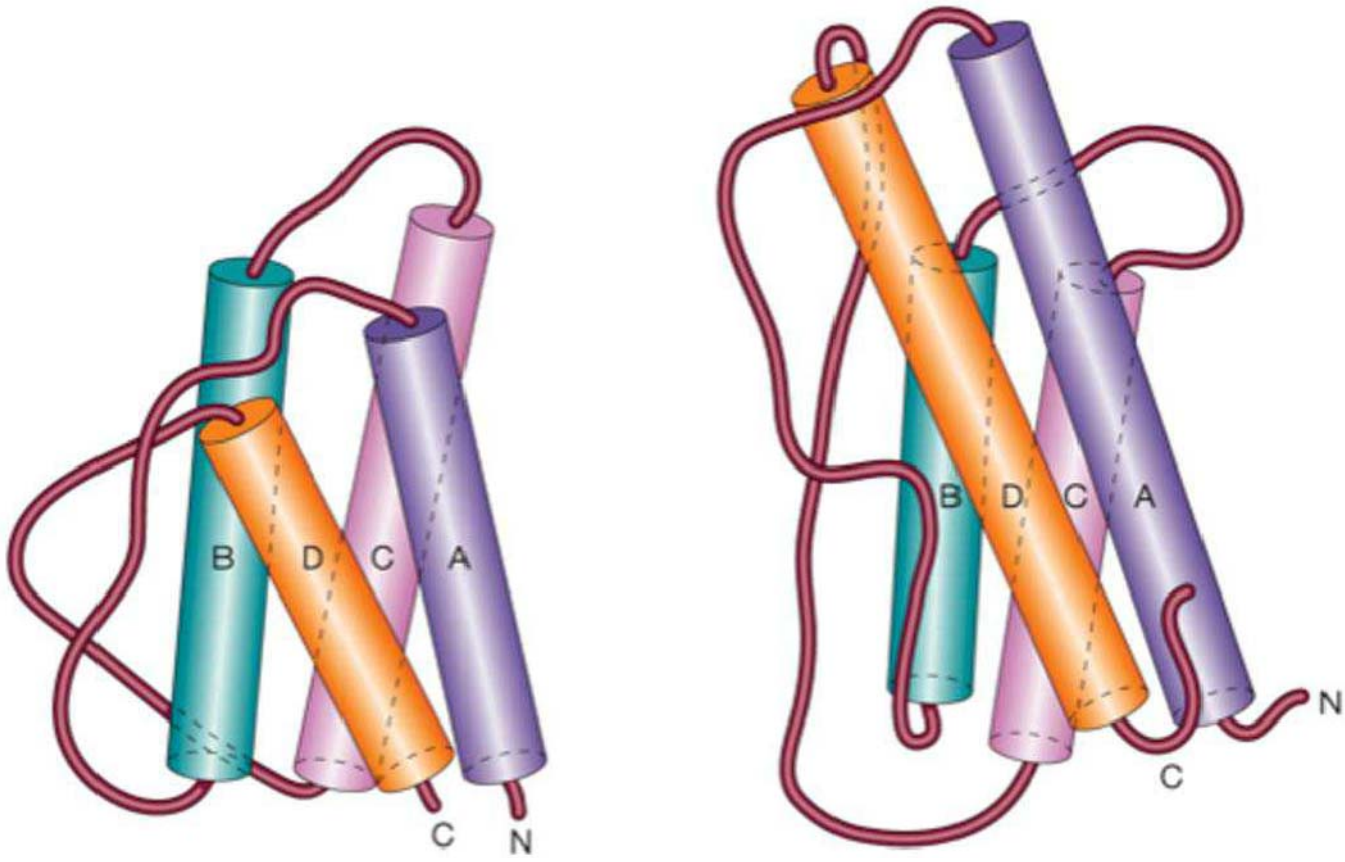


FIG. 25.1. Schematic of Four α-Helical Bundle Cytokines. Schematic drawing showing typical short-chain and long-chain four helical bundle cytokines. Although these both exhibit an "up-up-down-down" topology to their four α helices, note that in the short-chain cytokines, the AB loop is in behind the CD loop, whereas in the long-chain cytokines the situation is reversed. See text. The figure was provided by Dr. Alex Wlodawer, National Cancer Institute.

TABLE 25.1 Four Helical Bundle Cytokines

Short-Chain Cytokines	Long-Chain Cytokines
IL-2	IL-6
IL-4	IL-11
IL-7	Oncostatin M
IL-9	Leukemia inhibitory factor
IL-13	CNTF
IL-15	Cardiotropin-1
IL-21	NNT-1/BSF-3
TSLP	
IL-3	Growth hormone
IL-5[a]	Prolactin
GM-CSF	Erythropoietin
	Thrombopoietin
M-CSF[a,b]	Leptin
SCF[b]	G-CSF

BSF-3, B cell-stimulating factor-3; CNTF, ciliary neurotrophic factor; G-CSF, granulocyte-colony stimulating factor; GM-CSF, granulocyte macrophage-colony stimulating factor; IL, interleukin; M-CSF, macrophage-colony stimulating factor; NNT-1, novel neurotrophin-1; SCF, stem cell factor; TSLP, thymic stromal lymphopoietin.

[a] Dimers.

[b] Different from the other four helical bundle cytokines in that the M-CSF and SCF receptors (CSF-1R and c-kit, respectively) have intrinsic tyrosine kinase activity and are not type I cytokine receptors.

IL-3, IL-4, IL-5, granulocyte macrophage-colony stimulating factor (GM-CSF), IL-7, IL-9, IL-13, IL-15, IL-21, macrophage-colony stimulating factor (M-CSF), stem cell factor (SCF), and TSLP, whereas long-chain cytokines include growth hormone, prolactin, Epo, thrombopoietin, leptin, IL-6, IL-11, leukemia inhibitory factor (LIF), oncostatin M (OSM), ciliary neurotrophic factor (CNTF), cardiotrophin-1 (CT-1), novel neurotrophin-1 (NNT-1)/B cell-stimulating factor-3 (BSF-3)/cardiotrophin-like factor (CLC), and granulocyte-colony stimulating factor (G-CSF) (Table 25.1).[8,10,11] The α helices are approximately 15 amino acids long in short-chain helical cytokines and 25 amino acids long in long-chain cytokines. Additional differences include differences in the angles between the pairs of helices, and the AB loop is "under" the CD loop in the short cytokines but "over" the CD loop in the long cytokines (see Fig. 25.1).[7,8,12] Moreover, short-chain cytokines have β structures in the AB and CD loops, whereas long-chain cytokines do not.

The division of type I cytokines into short-chain and long-chain cytokines has evolutionary considerations and correlates with grouping of their receptor chains for these two subfamilies of type I cytokines. An analysis of short-chain cytokines has revealed that 61 residues comprise the family framework, including most of the 31 residues that contribute to the buried inner core. The similarities and differences in the structures of IL-2, IL-4, and GM-CSF have been analyzed.[5] Among these cytokines, there is considerable variation in the intrachain disulfide bonds that stabilize the structures. For example, IL-4 has three intrachain disulfide bonds, GM-CSF has two, and IL-2 has only one. In IL-4, the first disulfide bond (between Cys 24 and Cys 65) connects loop AB to BC, the second disulfide bond (between Cys 46 and Cys 99) connects helix B and loop CD, and the third disulfide bond (between Cys 3 and Cys 127) connects the residue preceding helix B with helix D. In GM-CSF, the N-terminus of helix B and the N-terminus of β strand CD are connected by one disulfide bond, whereas the other disulfide bond connects the C-terminus of helix C and a strand following helix D. In IL-2, a single essential disulfide bond between Cys 58 and Cys 105 connects helix B to strand CD. Thus, each cytokine has evolved distinctive disulfide bonds to stabilize its structure, although it is typical that helix B is connected to the loop between helices C and D. The structures formed by helices A and D are more conserved than those formed by helices B and C, primarily due to the interhelical angles; helix D and the connecting region are the most highly conserved elements among the three cytokines.[5] This is of particular interest, as the regions of type I cytokines that are most important for cytokine receptor interactions (based on analogy to the growth hormone receptor structure, see subsequent discussion) include helices A and D and residues in the AB and CD loops, whereas helices B and C do not form direct contacts.[5]

Variations on these typical four α-helical bundle structures can occur. For example, IL-5 is unusual in that it is a dimer, wherein the ends containing the N- and C-termini are juxtaposed, and helix D is "exchanged" between the two covalently attached monomers so that helix D of each molecule actually forms part of the four helix bundle of the other.[13] M-CSF is also a dimer, but no exchange of helix D occurs.[12]

The IFNs form related albeit distinctive structures from type I cytokines and are designated as type II cytokines.[8] IFNβ has an extra helix that is positioned in place of the CD strand.[14] IFNγ is a dimer, each of which consists of six α helices[15] (Fig. 25.2). Two of these helices are interchanged, including one from each four α-helical bundle.[12,15] IL-10, which is closely related to IFNγ, has a similar structure,[16] as

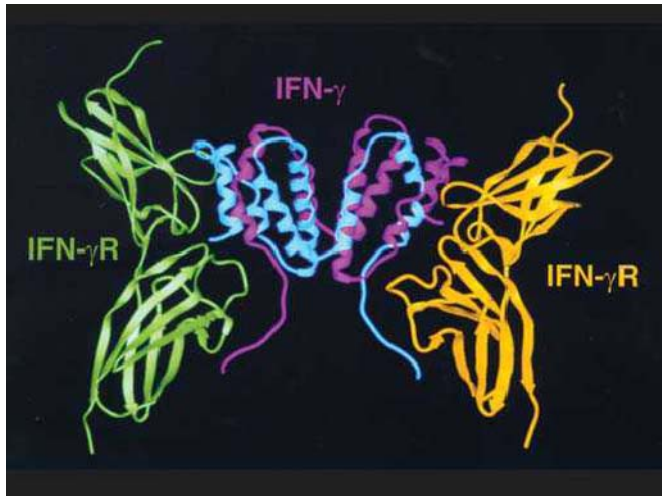


FIG. 25.2. Structure of the Interferon γ Receptor (IFNγR). Shown are ribbon diagrams of the structures of the IFNγ/IFNγR complex as an example of a type II cytokine/cytokine receptor. In the IFNγR, only IFNGR-1 complexed to the IFNγ dimer is shown, as the full structure with IFNGR-2 is not available. See text for discussion of the structure. The IFNγ-IFNGR-1 structure is from Walter et al.[401] The figure was provided by Dr. Alex Wlodawer, National Cancer Institute.

presumably do the more recently identified IL-10–like molecules, including IL-19, IL-20, IL-22, IL-24, IL-26, IL-28A, IL-28B, and IL-29. Interestingly, although not universally the case, most four α-helical bundle cytokines have four exons, with helix A in exon 1, helices B and C in exon 3, and helix D in exon 4.[7] A related organization is found for IFNγ, as well as for the long-chain helical cytokines, growth hormone, and G-CSF. However, there are exceptions, for example, IL-15 is divided into nine exons, whereas the IFNαs and IFNβ are encoded by single exons.

Receptors for Type I Cytokines

The first report suggesting that type I cytokines interacted with receptors with similar features identified similarities in the sequences of the erythropoietin receptor and the IL-2 receptor β chain,[17] and subsequent analysis of a large number of type I cytokine receptors established these receptors as a superfamily.[18] Type I cytokine receptors are generally type I membrane–spanning glycoproteins (N-terminus extracellular, C-terminus intracellular). The only exceptions are proteins such as the CNTF receptor α chain (see the following discussion), which lacks a cytoplasmic domain and instead has a glycosylphosphatidylinositol (GPI) anchor; however, the orientation of this protein is otherwise similar to that of a type I membrane protein. In their extracellular domains, a number of conserved features have been noted (Table 25.2). These include four conserved cysteine residues that are involved in intrachain disulfide bonding, and a tryptophan residue, located two amino acids C-terminal to the second conserved cysteine. In addition, a membrane proximal WSXWS (Trp-Ser-X-Trp-Ser) motif is generally conserved, although again exceptions exist, for example, in the growth hormone receptor, the motif is a substantially different YGEFS (Tyr-Gly-Glu-Phe-Ser) sequence, and in the IL-23R, it is WQPWS (Trp-Gln-Pro-Trp-Ser). In some cases, such as the common cytokine receptor β chain, β_c, shared by the IL-3, IL-5, and GM-CSF receptors (see subsequent discussion), the extracellular domain is extended, with a duplication of the domains containing the four conserved cysteines and the WSXWS motif. Another shared feature of type I cytokine receptors is the presence of fibronectin type III domains.

The two pairs of conserved cysteine residues are typically encoded in two adjacent exons, and the exon containing the WSXWS motif is typically just 5′ to the exon encoding the transmembrane domain. Although serines can be encoded by six different codons (ie, sixfold degeneracy in codon usage), only two of these (AGC and AGT) dominate as the codons used for the serines in WSXWS. All of these features indicate a common ancestral type I cytokine receptor.

Overall, analogous to limited sequence identity between type I cytokines, there is only limited sequence identity among type I receptor molecules. Nevertheless, they appear to form similar structures, based on the known structures for the receptors for growth hormone, prolactin, erythropoietin, IL-4, IL-13, IL-6, and IL-2[9,19–25] as well as the modeling of other cytokine receptor molecules based on the known structures. The cytokines and their receptors have presumably coevolved, with the differences in amino acid sequences between different cytokines allowing for their distinctive interactions with their cognate receptor chains. Despite amino acid differences, there are also several sets of cytokines that coevolved to interact with shared receptor chains, which form type I cytokine and cytokine receptor subfamilies.[8,11]

In addition to these noted similarities in the extracellular domains, there are sequence similarities that are conserved in the cytoplasmic domain of cytokine receptors. In particular, membrane proximal "Box 1/Box 2" regions are conserved (see Table 25.2), with the proline-rich Box 1 region being the most conserved.[26] This will be discussed in greater detail related to its role in the binding of JAK kinases.

Type I Cytokine Receptors Are Homodimers, Heterodimers, or Higher Order Receptor Oligomers

The first cytokine receptor structure solved was that for growth hormone (Fig. 25.3).[19] Prior to x-ray crystallographic analysis, it was believed that growth hormone bound to its

TABLE 25.2 Features Common to Type I Cytokine Receptors

Extracellular domain

1. Four conserved cysteine residues, involved in intrachain disulfide bonds
2. WSXWS motif
3. Fibronectin type III modules

Cytoplasmic domain

1. Box 1/Box 2 regions—The Box 1 region is a proline-rich region that is involved in the interaction of Janus family tyrosine kinases.

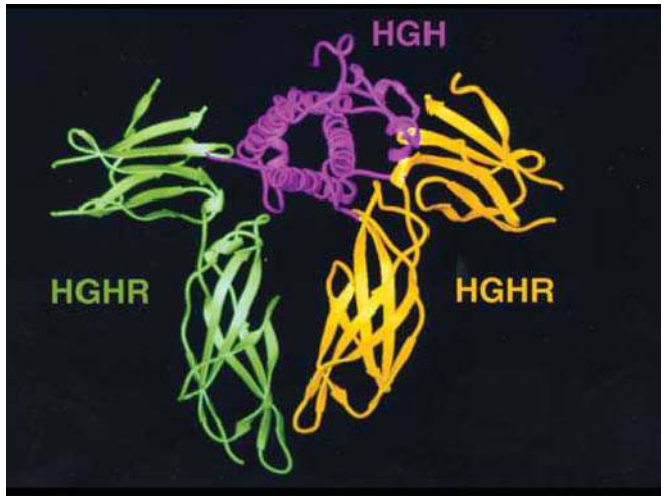


FIG. 25.3. Structure of the Growth Hormone Receptor. Shown are ribbon diagrams of the structure of the growth hormone receptor as an example of a type I cytokine receptor. For growth hormone, both growth hormone receptor monomers are shown. See text for discussion of the structures. The growth hormone/growth hormone receptor structure is from de Vos et al.[19] The figure was provided by Dr. Alex Wlodawer, National Cancer Institute.

receptor with a stoichiometry of 1:1, but x-ray crystal solution structure revealed that a single growth hormone molecule interacts with a dimer of the growth hormone receptor, in which each receptor monomer contributes a total of seven β strands. Perhaps the most striking finding is that totally different parts of growth hormone interact with the same general region of each receptor monomer. The three-dimensional structure for the growth hormone/growth hormone receptor complex is shown in Figure 25.3. Solving the structure also clarified the basis for the assembly of the growth hormone receptor complex.[19] Growth hormone first interacts with one receptor monomer via a relatively large and high-affinity interaction surface (site I), spanning ~1230 Å^2. A second receptor monomer then interacts with the growth hormone/growth hormone receptor complex via two contact points: one on growth hormone (spanning ~900 Å^2) (site II) and the other on the first receptor monomer (spanning ~500 Å^2) (site III), located much more proximal to the cell membrane. Thus, three extracellular interactions are responsible for the formation and stabilization of the growth hormone/growth hormone receptor complex. Mutations in critical residues in site I should prevent growth hormone binding to its receptor, whereas inactivating mutations in site II can be predicted to prevent dimerization and signal transduction, suggesting a basis by which different classes of antagonists might be identified.

The growth hormone/growth hormone receptor structure revealed that the growth hormone receptor extracellular domain is composed of two fibronectin type III modules, each of which is approximately 100 amino acids long and contains seven β strands, resulting in the formation of an immunoglobulin (Ig)-like structure. The contact surface between ligand and receptor occurs in the hinge region that separates these two fibronectin type III modules. Analysis of a growth hormone–prolactin receptor complex revealed a similar structure for the prolactin receptor.[20]

The growth hormone/growth hormone receptor structure served as a paradigm for the structures of other type I cytokine receptors. As a receptor homodimer, it immediately served as a model for other homodimers, such as the Epo receptor, whose structure was solved[21] using a small protein mimetic (20 amino acid long peptide) of Epo.[27] The Epo receptor structure is similar to that of the growth hormone receptor, although the "site III" stem region interaction surface in the Epo receptor is much smaller than that in the growth hormone receptor, comprising only 75 Å^2.[21]

In addition to the structural similarities for the growth hormone and Epo receptors and perhaps other homodimeric type I cytokine receptors, a similar structure was achieved by the heterodimeric growth hormone/growth hormone receptor/prolactin receptor structure,[20] in which one of the growth hormone receptor monomers is replaced by a prolactin receptor molecule. Thus, the two surfaces of growth hormone interact either with two identical monomers of growth hormone receptor or with two nonidentical monomers in the case of the growth hormone receptor/prolactin receptor heterodimer.

It seems reasonable that cytokine-receptor systems with a homodimeric receptor are evolutionarily older than those with heterodimeric receptors, and that the coordination of two different receptor chains in heterodimeric receptors would have evolved in order to allow higher levels of specialization. In this regard, it is interesting that growth hormone and Epo, whose actions are vital for growth and erythropoiesis, bind to receptor homodimers, whereas the heterodimeric structures that typify the immune system are perhaps more "specialized" functions that arose later in evolution.

Interestingly, all type I cytokines known to interact with homodimers (growth hormone, prolactin, Epo, and G-CSF) are long-chain helical cytokines, although other long-chain helical cytokines (eg, cytokines whose receptors contain gp130; see following discussion) interact with heteromeric receptors. The short-chain cytokines that signal through homodimers are SCF and M-CSF, but in these cases, the receptors (c-kit and CSF-1R, respectively) are different from type I cytokine receptors in that they contain intrinsic tyrosine kinase domains. Thus, SCF and M-CSF are not typical type I cytokines and all other short-chain cytokines signal through heterodimers or more complex receptor structures (eg, IL-2 and IL-15 receptors have three components).

Heterodimeric receptors are involved when site II on a cytokine has evolved to a point where it interacts with a different receptor molecule than site I does. This latter situation is the case for many cytokines, including all short-chain type I cytokines except for SCF and M-CSF. Overall, several sets of type I cytokines fall into distinct groups, wherein each group shares at least one common receptor component. This phenomenon is observed for certain sets of both short-chain and long-chain four α-helical bundle cytokines, and depending on the set of cytokines, the shared chain interacts either with site I or site II.

The structures of the low- and high-affinity forms of the IL-2 receptor have now been solved[9,23,28]; these are the first complete structures for a short-chain cytokine/receptor complex.[29] Moreover, they are of added interest in that the low-affinity receptor involves the interaction of IL-2 with IL-2Rα, which is not a type I cytokine receptor protein but instead is a distinctive sushi-domain containing protein, whereas the high-affinity receptor includes not only IL-2Rα but also IL-2Rβ and γ_c, which are both type I cytokine receptor proteins that are shared either with IL-15 (IL-2Rβ) or with IL-4, IL-7, IL-9, IL-15, and IL-21 (γ_c),[30] as discussed in the following text. In the structure of IL-2 bound to its high-affinity receptor (Fig. 25.4), there is a long peptide connecting the IL-2Rα globular head and transmembrane segment, allowing the binding site on this protein to extend relatively far from the cell surface in order to bind the dorsal surface of IL-2. Both the IL-2/IL-2Rα and IL-2/IL-2Rβ contacts are independent, and IL-2Rα does not appear to contact either IL-2Rβ or γ_c; however, IL-2/IL-2Rβ forms a composite surface with γ_c, somewhat analogous to the composite surface formed by growth hormone and one growth hormone receptor monomer for binding to a second monomer. As anticipated, the surface interaction between IL-2 and γ_c is smaller than that between IL-2 and either of the other chains. In addition to the heterodimeric IL-2 receptor structure,[23] the IL-6[31,32] and LIF[33] receptor complexes,

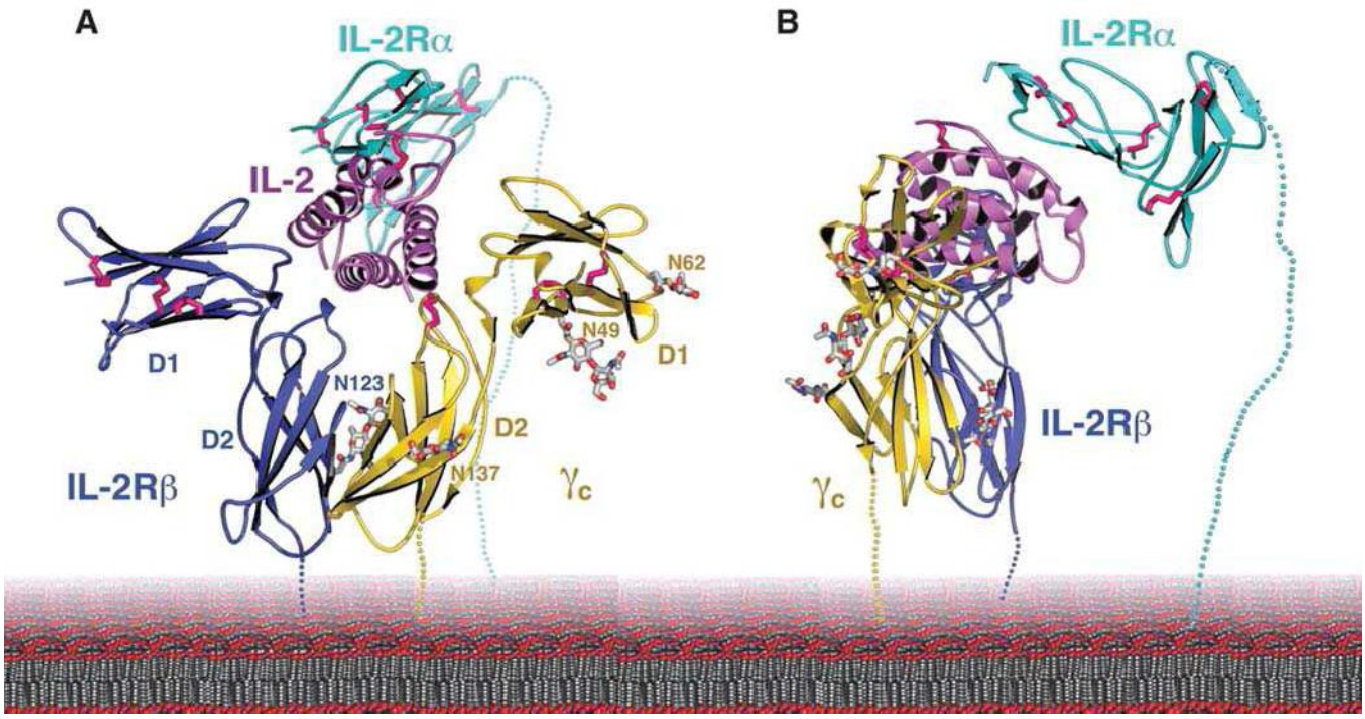


FIG. 25.4. Structure of the High-Affinity Interleukin (IL)-2 Receptor. This is the first structure for a short-chain type I cytokine complexed to its complete receptor. It is particularly interesting in that it includes the sushi-domain containing IL-2Rα chain as well. Reprinted from Wang et al.,[23] with permission of Dr. Garcia and *Science* magazine.

the IL-4/IL-13 receptor[34] complexes, and GM-CSF receptor structure[35] have been solved.

TYPE I CYTOKINE RECEPTOR FAMILIES AND THEIR RELATIONS

Cytokines that Share the Common Cytokine Receptor γ Chain (Interleukin-2, Interleukin-4, Interleukin-7, Interleukin-9, Interleukin-15, and Interleukin-21)

The receptors for six different immunologically important cytokines, IL-2, IL-4, IL-7, IL-9, IL-15, and IL-21, share the common cytokine receptor γ chain, γ_c (CD132).[11,30,36–45] These cytokines are all short-chain four α-helical bundle cytokines; basic features of these cytokines are summarized in Table 25.3. The properties of these cytokines and their distinctive receptor chains are summarized in the following text, followed by a discussion of the discovery that they share a common receptor component and the implications thereof.

IL-2 is important not only for its function but also historically, as it was the first type I cytokine that was cloned,[46] the first type I cytokine for which a receptor component was cloned,[47,48] and the first short-chain type I cytokine whose receptor structure was solved.[23] Many general principles have derived from studies of this cytokine, including its being the first cytokine that was demonstrated to act in a growth factor–like fashion through specific high-affinity receptors, analogous to the growth factors being studied by endocrinologists and biochemists.[49,50]

Mature IL-2 is a 133 amino acid long peptide that can act as a major T-cell growth factor, in keeping with its original discovery as a T-cell growth factor.[51] Although IL-2 is not produced by resting T cells, it is rapidly and potently induced following antigen encounter with resting CD4+ T cells, and transcription and synthesis of IL-2 are often used as indicators of T-cell receptor (TCR)-mediated cellular activation. Although the antigen determines the specificity of the T-cell immune response, the interaction of IL-2 with high-affinity IL-2 receptors regulates the magnitude and duration of the subsequent response, based on the amount of IL-2 produced, the levels of high-affinity receptors expressed, and the duration of IL-2 production and receptor expression. IL-2 can act in either an autocrine or paracrine fashion, depending on whether the producing cell is also the responding cell or whether the responding cell is a nonproducing cell. The gene encoding IL-2 is located on chromosome 4,[52] and like many other helical cytokines, its gene consists of four exons.[7] IL-2 binds to three different classes of receptors. These are formed by different combinations of three different chains, IL-2Rα,[47,48,53] IL-2Rβ,[54–57] and a protein initially called IL-2Rγ[36] but now known as the common cytokine receptor γ chain, γ_c.[11,30,37] These different classes of IL-2 receptors are discussed in the following text.

In addition to its being a T-cell growth factor, IL-2 has other important actions as well (see Table 25.3).[29] For example, it can increase Ig synthesis and J chain transcription in B cells,[50,58,59] potently augment the cytolytic activity of

TABLE 25.3 Features of Cytokines Whose Receptors Share γ_c

Cytokine	Major Source	Size[a]	Actions	Chromosome Location (h/m)	Genomic Org
IL-2	Activated T cells (Th1 cells)	h153 aa/20aa m169aa/20aa 15.5 kDa	T-cell growth factor B-cell growth, Ig production, J chain expression Induces LAK activity Induces tumor infiltrating lymphocyte activity Augments NK activity Critical roles in antigen-induced cell death Stimulates macrophage/monocyte Antitumor effects Promotes T_{reg} development Promotes Th1 and Th2 differentiation Inhibits Th17 differentiation	4q26–27/3	Four exons
IL-4	Activated T cells (Th2 cells) CD4+NK1.1+ natural T cells	h153/24 aa m140 aa/20 aa 18 kDa	B-cell proliferation Ig class switch: IgG1, IgE production Augment MHC II, Fcε receptors, IL-4Rα, and IL-2Rβ expression Th2 cell differentiation Antitumor effects	5q31.1/11	Four exons
IL-7	Stromal cells	h177 aa/25aa m154aa/25aa 17–25 kDa	Thymocyte growth T-cell growth Pre–B-cell growth in mice but not human Survival and growth of peripheral T cells CD4+ and CD8+ T-cell homeostasis	8q12–13/3	Six exons
IL-9	Activated Th cells	h144aa/18aa m144aa/18aa 14 kDa	Th helper clones Erythroid progenitors B cells Mast cells/allergic responses Fetal thymocytes	5q31–35/13	Five exons
IL-15	Monocytes and many cells outside the immune system[b]	h162aa/48aa m162aa/48aa 14–15 kDa	Mast cell growth NK cell development and activity T-cell proliferation CD8+ T-cell homeostasis	4q31/8	Nine exons
IL-21	Activated CD4+ T cells	h162aa/31 aa m146aa/24 aa	Comitogen for T-cell proliferation Inhibits B-cell proliferation to anti-IgM + IL-4 Augments B-cell proliferation to anti-CD40 Conflicting reports related to NK cells Cooperates with IL-7 and IL-15 to expand CD8 cells Antitumor effects Drives terminal B-cell differentiation to plasma cells Proapoptotic for B and NK cells Promotes Tfh differentiation Promotes Th17 differentiation	4q67–27/3	Five exons

CD, cluster of differentiation; Ig, immunoglobulin; IL, interleukin; LAK, lymphokine activated killer; MHC, major histocompatibility complex; NK, natural killer; Tfh, T follicular helper; Th, T helper; T_{reg}, regulatory T.

[a] h and m refer to human and mouse, respectively. The number of amino acids refers to the length of the open reading frame/length of signal peptide. The number of amino acids in the mature protein is therefore the difference between these numbers. Note that for IL-15, residues 1 to 29 have been identified as a signal peptide and 30 to 48 as a propeptide.

[b] More IL-15 messenger ribonucleic acid is produced in skeletal muscle, kidney, placenta, and lung than in thymus or spleen. It is important to note, however, that IL-15 messenger ribonucleic acid is widely expressed without concomitant production of IL-15 protein so that the source of biologically meaningful IL-15 may be more limited.

natural killer (NK) cells,[60–62] induce the cytolytic activity of lymphokine activated killer cells, promote the elimination of autoreactive cells in a process known as antigen-induced (or activation-induced) cell death,[29,50,63] and promote the differentiation of regulatory T (T_{reg}) cells,[64,65] cells that suppress inappropriate responses and are important for immunologic tolerance. Low-dose IL-2 is sufficient to promote T_{reg}-cell survival, and thereby, for example, can protect mice from developing autoimmune diabetes.[66] Interestingly, IL-2 can also prime CD8+ T cells during a primary response to undergo enhanced proliferation in vivo during a secondary response,[67,68] and autocrine IL-2 is believed to be required for secondary expansion of CD8+ memory T cells.[69] There appears to be a complex interplay between IL-2 and inflammatory signals to regulate effector and memory cytolytic T-lymphocytes generation in lymphocytic choriomeningitis virus infection, with persistent IL-2 promoting effector rather than memory cytotoxic T-lymphocyte development.[70,71] In *Listeria monocytogenesis* infection, Th1 effector memory cells highly express the transcription factor T-Bet and IL-2Rα, and IL-2Rα appears to be critical for the development of these cells.[72] Presumably because of its critical role in T_{reg} development, the absence of IL-2, IL-2Rα, or IL-2Rβ leads to autoimmunity. Interestingly, the production of IL-2 by mast cells has been reported to contribute to the suppression of chronic allergic dermatitis by its increasing the relative number of T_{reg} cells at the site of inflammation.[73]

IL-2 is also important in inducing or inhibiting Th differentiation. It is required for efficient Th1[74] and Th2 differentiation,[75–78] which are populations of T helper cells first described based on patterns of cytokine production by mouse T cells.[79] This theme was then extended to human cells as well,[80–84] although there are some variations in humans and mice in terms of the degree of how tightly restricted cytokine expression is. IFNγ is the cytokine most reliably produced by Th1 cells; IL-2 is also produced by these cells, although without as rigorous an association. In contrast, IL-4, IL-5, IL-6, IL-9, IL-10, and IL-13 are produced by Th2 cells. In both species, certain type I cytokines (eg, IL-3 and GM-CSF) are produced by both Th1 and Th2 cells. IL-12 and the transcription factors signal transducer and activator of transcription (STAT)4 and T-Bet are the major transcription factors promoting Th1 differentiation, whereas IL-4 and the transcription factor STAT6 drive Th2 differentiation. For Th1 cells, IL-2 acts by STAT5-dependent induction and expression of IL-12Rβ1/IL-12Rβ2 and T-Bet,[74] whereas for Th2 differentiation, IL-2 via STAT5 promotes IL-4[75,76] and IL-4Rα[77] expression. In addition, IL-2 also affects chromatin remodeling at the *Ifng* locus during Th1 differentiation.[85] IL-2 also inhibits Th17 differentiation,[86] in part via downregulation of IL-6Rα/gp130 expression[74] and by inducing T-bet,[74,87] which prevents Runx1-mediated activation of RORγt, a transcription factor that drives Th17 differentiation.[87]

Like IL-2, IL-4 is produced primarily by activated CD4+ T cells.[88,89] IL-4 is also produced by CD4+NK1.1+ "natural" T cells, denoted as natural killer T (NKT) cells,[90] and by mast cells and basophils.[88] IL-4 is the major B-cell growth factor, and it promotes Ig class switch, enhancing the production and secretion of mouse IgG1 (human IgG4) and being essential for the production of IgE.[88] IL-4 is involved in the physiologic response to parasites, including helminths, and for allergen sensitization. IL-4 induces expression of class II major histocompatibility complex molecules and increases cell surface expression of the CD23 (the low-affinity IgE receptor) on B cells. In addition to its actions on B cells, IL-4 can also act as a T-cell growth factor, inducing proliferation in both human and mouse T cells, and is critical for normal differentiation of Th2 cells.[89] Moreover, when IL-4 and transforming growth factor (TGF)-β are combined, cells that produce IL-9 (Th9) cells are induced (see following discussion). When combined with phorbol 2-myristate 3-acetate, IL-4 is also a potent comitogen for thymocytes. Importantly, IL-4 can inhibit certain responses of cells to IL-2.[91] Moreover, IL-4 can exert actions on macrophages, hematopoietic precursor cells, stromal cells, and fibroblasts.[92] The gene encoding IL-4 is located on human chromosome 5 (5q23.3–31.2) and mouse chromosome 11,[92,93] in the same region as IL-3, IL-5, IL-13, and GM-CSF. The type I IL-4 receptor is expressed on T cells and other hematopoietic cells consists of the 140 kDa IL-4Rα protein[88,94–96] and γ_c.[38,39] Expression of IL-4Rα tends to be quite low, and cells that potently respond to IL-4 often express only a few hundred receptors per cell. In addition to the type I IL-4 receptor, an alternate form of the receptor (the type II IL-4 receptor), containing IL-4Rα and IL-13Rα1, although not expressed on mature T cells, is expressed on many other cell types and can transduce IL-4 signals into these cells. For example, IL-13Rα1 is expressed on neonatal Th1 cells and the type II IL-4 receptor has been implicated as mediating apoptosis of these cells.[97]

IL-7 is not produced by lymphocytes but instead is a 152 amino acid long cytokine that is produced by stromal cells and certain other cells.[98–100] Based on the analysis of patients with X-linked severe combined immunodeficiency (SCID), JAK3-deficient SCID, and IL-7Rα-deficient SCID, IL-7 receptor-dependent signaling is essential for T-cell development in humans (discussed subsequently). The major role of IL-7 is to enhance thymocyte survival, growth, and differentiation[101–105] as well as low-affinity peptide-induced proliferation, and thus it promotes homeostatic proliferation of naive and memory CD8+ T cells.[100,105–107] Additionally, IL-7 can regulate the homeostasis of CD4+ memory T cells[108,109] and also can stimulate the growth of mature T cells.[30,105,110,111] Although IL-7, as noted previously, is believed to primarily be a stromal factor, IL-7 has also been noted to be produced by the liver and kidney but not spleen or lymph nodes after toll-like receptor (TLR) signaling. Although basal liver production is low, after TLR signaling, hepatic IL-7 can promote CD4 and CD8 T-cell survival and promotes antigen-specific T-cell responses.[112] In addition, in the mouse, IL-7 is vital for the growth of mouse pre-B cells,[96,98,103,104,111] and transient IL-7 signaling can inhibit Ig heavy chain gene rearrangements.[113] IL-7 via STAT5 has also been shown to inhibit Ig-κ recombination in pro-B cells.[114] In contrast to its requirement for B-cell development in the mouse, there is normal B-cell development in patients with defective IL-7 signaling, as is found in patients with X-linked SCID, JAK3-deficient

SCID, and IL-7Rα-deficient SCID (see following discussion). Thus, human B cells can develop normally in the absence of IL-7 responsiveness, demonstrating that in humans, IL-7 is not vital for the growth of human pre-B cells,[30,115] and it remains unknown whether IL-7 plays important roles in human B-cell biology. Interestingly, IL-7 also acts on DCs, and this appears to limit the homeostatic proliferation of T cells under lymphopenic conditions.[100,116] Clinically, IL-7 has been of interest in terms of its ability to induce T-cell proliferation and to thereby increase T-cell numbers, with a greater effect on CD8+ than on CD4+ T cells, as well as to augment the diversity of the TCR repertoire[117]; IL-7 also can increase antigen-specific responses following vaccination[100] and can promote antiviral immunity, apparently in part due to its induction of IL-22 and repression of SOCS3.[118] The gene encoding IL-7 is located on human chromosome 8q12 to 8q13[119] and mouse chromosome 3. The functional IL-7 receptor contains the 75 kDa IL-7Rα[120] and γ_c.[37,40] Interestingly, signaling via the TCR, IL-2 or IL-7 can downregulate IL-7Rα expression,[121,122] with PI 3-kinase/AKT and GFI1B being implicated in its downregulation in T cells.[122–124] The downregulation of IL-7Rα not only can both decrease responsiveness of cells but can also increase the availability of the cytokine for other cells that are poised to respond.[11] Induction of IL-7Rα requires PU.1 in B cells[125] and another Ets family protein, GABP, in T cells.[123]

IL-9 was originally described as a mouse T-cell growth factor[126] that is produced by activated T cells and can support the growth of T-helper clones but not of cytolytic clones.[127] In contrast to IL-2, its production is delayed, suggesting its involvement in later, perhaps secondary signals. In the mouse, IL-9 can exert proliferative effects on erythroid progenitors, B cells, B-1 cells, mast cells, and fetal thymocytes. IL-9 is identical to mast cell growth–enhancing activity, a factor present in conditioned medium from splenocytes,[128] and synergizes with IL-3 for maximal mast cell proliferation. IL-9 is highly expressed in the lung of patients with asthma,[129] and overexpression leads to airway inflammation and Th2 cytokine production.[130] Interestingly, IL-9 is substantially made in the lung by innate lymphoid cells, and in these cells neutralizing antibodies to IL-9 lowered expression of IL-13 and IL-5, supporting a link between IL-9 and the regulation of the Th2 response.[131] Consistent with the action of IL-9 on thymocytes in vitro, IL-9 transgenic mice develop thymic lymphomas, and IL-9 is a major antiapoptotic factor for such tumors.[132] Nevertheless, IL-9 knockout mice have normal T-cell development[133]; instead, they exhibit a defect in pulmonary goblet cell hyperplasia and mastocytosis following challenge with *Schistosoma mansoni* eggs, a synchronous pulmonary granuloma formation model. However, there was no defect in eosinophilia or granuloma formation.[133] Mice expressing an IL-9 transgene in the lung exhibit airway inflammation and bronchial hyperresponsiveness; nevertheless, IL-9−/− mice exhibit normal eosinophilia and airway hyperreactivity in an ovalbumin-induced inflammatory model.[134–136] Thus, although IL-9 can contribute to allergic/pulmonary responses, there are compensatory cytokines that substitute for IL-9 in at least certain settings. IL-9 can be produced by the Th9 populations of cells, which can be induced by IL-4 plus TGF-β in a fashion that is dependent on PU.1 and interferon regulatory factor (IRF)-4.[137] Interestingly, the addition of IL-25 further enhances the production of IL-9.[138] IL-9–producing cells are typically IL-9+IL-10+Foxp3− effector T cells and can be derived from Th2 cells.[139,140] Overall, IL-9 is believed to play a key role in allergic responses; additionally, given the ability of both Th17 and T_{reg} cells to produce IL-9 during autoimmunity and transplantation, it will be interesting to further clarify the role of IL-9 in autoimmunity.[141] Currently, there is some confusion, as one study showed that antibody blockade of IL-9 or IL-9Rα blocks experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis (EAE) disease progression,[142] whereas another study showed that IL-9Rα knockout mice develop more severe EAE.[138] While mouse IL-9 is active on human cells, human IL-9 is not biologically active on mouse cells (the opposite situation from that for IL-2). Human IL-9 is located on chromosome 5q31 to 5q35,[143] which is also the location for the genes encoding IL-3, IL-4, IL-5, IL-13, and GM-CSF. In contrast, mouse IL-9 is "isolated" on chromosome 13, while IL-3, IL-4, IL-5, IL-13, and GM-CSF are clustered on chromosome 11. IL-9 binds to the 64 kDa IL-9Rα binding protein, which is similar in size to γ_c,[144] and the functional IL-9 receptor consists of IL-9Rα plus γ_c.[30,41,42]

IL-15 was identified as a T-cell growth factor that also unexpectedly was expressed in the supernatant of a human T-lymphotropic virus type I (HTLV-I)–transformed T-cell line.[145,146] Although IL-15 messenger ribonucleic acid (RNA) is produced by a range of nonlymphocytic cell types, it is difficult to detect physiologic levels of IL-15 protein.[147] Its main site of synthesis appears to be DCs and monocytes, and unlike IL-2, IL-15 is not produced by activated T cells.[148] IL-15 receptors are widely expressed; although IL-15 is perhaps most important for the development of NK cells[149–151] and CD8+ memory T cells,[150,151] it also has both paracrine and autocrine actions on DCs, including promoting the survival of these cells.[11] Interestingly, it also regulates the TCR repertoire of γδ intraepithelial lymphocytes[152] and cross talk between different types of DCs.[153] The receptor for IL-15 on T cells contains IL-2Rβ,[43,147,154] γ_c,[43] and an IL-15–specific protein, IL-15Rα. IL-15Rα shares a number of structural similarities with IL-2Rα, including that it is a sushi domain-containing protein (IL-2Rα has two sushi domains, whereas IL-15Rα has one),[155] and the *IL2RA* and *IL15RA* genes are closely positioned on human chromosome 10p14.[156] A distinctive feature of IL-15 signaling is that it signals substantially by a process called *transpresentation,* wherein IL-15Rα on the surface of dendritic cells or monocytes will transpresent IL-15 to responding cells such as CD8+ T cells or NK cells that express IL-2Rβ + γ_c.[148,157] IL-15Rα has a longer cytoplasmic domain than IL-2Rα and appears to be critical for IL-15Rα function, although potentially not for transpresentation.[158] Interestingly, transpresentation can be utilized by IL-2 as well.[159] The very high affinity of IL-15Rα for IL-15 is explained by a large number of ionic interactions mediated by the sushi domain.[160] Note that these responding cells can also express IL-15Rα. In contrast to IL-2, which is a growth factor as well as a mediator of antigen-induced (or activation-induced) cell death and promoter of T_{reg} differentiation, the

role of IL-15 appears to be more focused on growth of CD8+ T cells,[161] maintaining long-lasting, high-avidity T-cell responses to foreign pathogens (ie, CD8+ T-cell memory).[148,162] This ability has suggested it could have potential as a vaccine adjuvant.[163] Overall, the fact that IL-15 promotes the proliferation and differentiation of B, T, and NK cells; the cytolytic activity of CD8 T cells; and the maturation of dendritic cells, yet, unlike IL-2, fails to stimulate immunosuppressive T_{reg} cells indicates that it has an array of properties that make it potentially promising as an anticancer therapeutic agent; as a result, a number of ongoing clinical trials are now in progress.[164]

IL-21 is the most recently identified member of the IL-2 family of cytokines. IL-21 can bind to specific receptors and exert actions on T, B, NK cells, DCs, and macrophages.[165] It augments T-cell proliferation as a comitogen,[166] can cooperate with IL-7 or IL-15 to drive the expansion of freshly isolated mouse CD8+ T cells, and it can augment the antitumor activity of CD8+ T cells.[167] IL-21 promotes the differentiation of Th17 cells[168,169] as well as the generation of T follicular helper cells.[170] In the case of Th17 differentiation, IL-21 is part of an IL-6 to IL-21 to IL-23 signaling cascade[169,171,172] to drive the differentiation of these cells in an RORγ-dependent manner.[173] Polarization of Th17 cells is dependent on TCR stimulation, TGF-β, and IL-6 but is independent of IL-23, which instead may be required for maintaining/expanding these cells.[174–177]

The actions of IL-21 on B cells are particularly complex. It augments B-cell proliferation when combined with anti-CD40 or lipopolysaccharide (LPS) but inhibits proliferation in response to anti-IgM + IL-4[166]; this inhibition is reversed if anti-CD40 is additionally provided. It induces apoptosis of incompletely activated B cells, perhaps serving a role analogous to that of IL-2 in activation-induced cell death of T cells to eliminate incompletely activated cells.[165] In contrast, IL-21 drives terminal differentiation to plasma cells of more fully activated cells. Strikingly, IL-21 can drive plasma cell differentiation of both peripheral memory B cells and cord blood B cells, at least in part explained by its ability to induce expression of BLIMP1.[178,179] Strikingly, IL-21 regulates not only BLIMP-1 but also a broad range of genes via a functional cooperation between STAT3 and IRF4.[180] In IL-21R knockout mice, following immunization, IgG1 is diminished related to a role for IL-21 in class switching to IgG1 and IgG3, whereas IgE is elevated, related to the ability of IL-21 to inhibit Cε transcription[181] and/or to its ability to augment the apoptosis of IgE-producing B cells. Analysis of IL-21R/IL-4 double knockout mice has revealed that IL-21 cooperates with IL-4 to globally regulate Ig production in that these mice exhibit a panhypogammaglobulinemia, mimicking the T-cell phenotype in humans with X-linked SCID.[182] IL-21 can also cooperate with IL-15 and Flt-3 ligand to increase development of NK cells[166] and augment antitumor activity[183]; however, it was also reported to oppose the actions of IL-15[184] and can also direct NK cell apoptosis. Interestingly, IL-21 exerts potent antitumor effects, including against large established solid tumors.[11,165] In the pMEL-1 CD8 TCR transgenic system, the effector cells recognize a melanoma antigen. When cells are adoptively transferred into tumor-bearing mice and animals are vaccinated with the cognate antigen, the addition of IL-21 or IL-21 plus IL-15 has potent antitumor effects.[167] Moreover, treatment of cells with IL-21 in vitro prior to adoptive transfer results in markedly enhanced antitumor effects in vivo, conferring a distinctive differentiation program from that conferred by IL-2.[185] IL-21 is now in phase II clinical trials for cancer. In addition to its anticancer activity, IL-21 can also promote autoimmunity. Elevated IL-21 levels have been reported in the BXSB-*Yaa* mouse model of systemic lupus erythematosus,[178] and elevated IL-21 levels have been found in a subset of humans with systemic lupus erythematosus (P. Lipsky, personal communication). Elevated IL-21 has also been associated with other autoimmune processes, including in the non-obese diabetic (NOD) mouse.[181] More importantly, in mouse models of type 1 diabetes, lupus, and experimental allergic uveitis, no autoimmune disease develops on an IL-21R knockout background.[186–188] IL-21 unexpectedly can also be immunosuppressive via its induction of IL-10.[189,190] Consistent with this, an IL-21/IL-10/STAT3 pathway is required for normal development of memory CD8+ T cells after lymphocytic choriomeningitis virus (LCMV) infection[191]; similarly, STAT3, presumably by an overlapping mechanism is important for human T-cell memory development, as evidenced by studies in patients with autosomal dominant hyper-IgE syndrome, which is caused by dominant negative mutations in STAT3.[192] IL-21 has complex roles in viral responses. For LCMV, IL-21 is required to control chronic infection,[193] whereas IL-21 mediates the pathogenic response after infection with pneumonia virus of mice.[194] Interestingly, for hepatitis B virus, IL-21 appears to be critical in determining the age-dependent effectiveness of immune responses, wherein decreased IL-21 production in younger individuals hinders the generation of critical lymphoid responses to the virus, whereas more robust IL-21 production in adults is associated with viral clearance that occurs in 95% of patients.[195]

The receptor for IL-21 consists of IL-21R plus γ_c.[30,44] IL-21R is most related to IL-2Rβ, and like IL-2Rβ, its expression is induced following cellular stimulation with anti-CD3 or phytohemagglutinin, and in addition, its expression is augmented in T cells following transformation with HTLV-I.[196] Both human and mouse IL-21 can act on cells of the other species. IL-21 is on human chromosome 4q26 to 4q27, while its receptor is on chromosome 16p11, immediately downstream of the *IL4R* gene.

Thus, IL-2, IL-4, IL-7, IL-9, IL-15, and IL-21 collectively exhibit partially overlapping roles related to T cells, NK cells, B cells, and mast cells, and together would be expected to play vital roles for normal development and/or function of these cellular lineages. As discussed in the following, IL-2, IL-7, IL-9, and IL-15 utilize primarily STAT5A and STAT5B; IL-4 activates primarily STAT6; and IL-21 activates STAT1, STAT3, STAT5A, and STAT5B, with STAT3 being the dominant STAT for this cytokine.[11] The fact that these six cytokines share γ_c is of particular interest, especially as the gene encoding γ_c is mutated in patients with the most common form of severe combined immunodeficiency in humans.

X-Linked Severe Combined Immunodeficiency Disease Results from Mutations in the Gene Encoding γ_c

The γ chain was originally identified as a third component of the IL-2 receptor[36] after it became clear that IL-2 receptor α and β chains alone were not sufficient to transduce an IL-2 signal. The hypothesis that the γ chain was a shared component of receptors for cytokines in addition to IL-2 was motivated from a comparison of the clinical phenotypes in humans that result from defective expression of IL-2 versus. the γ chain. In 1993, it was discovered that mutations in the gene encoding the γ chain resulted in X-linked SCID (the disease is also designated as SCIDX1).[30,197] X-linked SCID is characterized by profoundly diminished numbers of T cells and NK cells[30,45,197–201] (Table 25.4). Although the B cells are normal in number, they are nonfunctional, apparently due to a lack of T-cell help as well as an intrinsic B-cell defect.[45,200,202] In contrast to the profoundly decreased number of T cells in patients with X-linked SCID, IL-2–deficient patients[203,204] and mice[205] have normal numbers of T cells (the phenotypes of mice deficient in type I and type II cytokines and their receptor, JAK kinases, and STAT proteins are summarized in Table 25.15). This observation indicated that defective IL-2 signaling was unlikely to be responsible for X-linked SCID, making the finding that the gene encoding the γ chain was mutated in X-linked SCID all the more unexpected. Thus, the conundrum was why a defect in a component of a receptor would cause a more severe than a defect in the corresponding cytokine. This led to the hypothesis that the γ chain was critical for other cytokine receptors as well.[197] In this model, defective IL-2 signaling either did not contribute to the defects in X-linked SCID or these defects were explained by the simultaneous inactivation of multiple signaling pathways.[45,197] Indeed, it was found that the γ chain was also an essential component of both the IL-4 and IL-7 receptors on T cells,[37–40] leading to it being renamed as the common cytokine receptor γ chain, γ_c.[37,38] IL-9, IL-15, and IL-21 were subsequently also shown to share γ_c[30] (Fig. 25.5).

The sharing of γ_c by six different cytokine receptors revealed that X-linked SCID is a disease of defective cytokine signaling. The major deficiencies in X-linked SCID can be attributed to defects related to different cytokines. Based on the dramatically diminished T-cell development not only in IL-7–deficient[104] or IL-7Rα–deficient[103] mice but also in *IL-7R*-deficient humans with T–B+NK+ SCID,[206,207] yet normal T-cell development in mice deficient in IL-2,[205] IL-4,[208,209] both IL-2 and IL-4,[210] IL-9,[133] IL-15,[151] IL-15Rα,[150] IL-21R,[182,184] and most if not all of the defect in T-cell development in patients with X-linked SCID can be attributed to defective IL-7 signaling.[30] In addition to profoundly diminished numbers of T cells, humans with X-linked SCID lack NK cells. As discussed previously, NK-cell development is defective in IL-15– and IL-15Rα–deficient mice, indicating that it is defective IL-15 signaling that is responsible for the defective NK-cell development in X-linked SCID.[30]

In contrast to the greatly diminished number of T cells and absent NK cells in patients with X-linked SCID, B-cell numbers are normal. This is in contrast to the greatly diminished numbers of B cells in γ_c-deficient mice[211,212] as well as mice deficient in either IL-7 or IL-7Rα, indicating that IL-7 is not required for pre-B-cell development in humans and underscoring a major difference for IL-7 in human versus mouse biology. Indeed, patients with *IL-7R*-deficient SCID have a T–B+NK+ form of SCID.[206,207] Although B cells develop in patients with X-linked SCID, they are nonfunctional. This is due in part to a lack of T-cell help (given the near absence of T cells in X-linked SCID), but a variety of data indicate an intrinsic B-cell defect as well.[30] As discussed

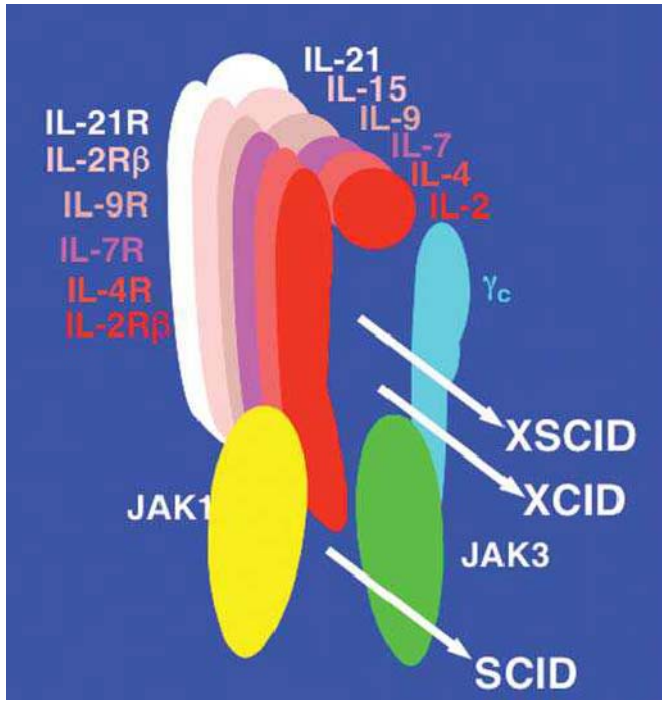


FIG. 25.5. Schematic of the Receptors for Interleukin (IL)-2, IL-4, IL-7, IL-9, IL-15, and IL-21, Showing Interactions with JAK1 and JAK3. The figure shows that IL-2, IL-4, IL-7, IL-9, IL-15, and IL-21 all share γ_c. IL-2Rα and IL-15Rα are not shown. Whereas the distinctive chains associate with JAK1, γ_c associates with JAK3. Mutations in γ_c cause X-linked severe combined immunodeficiency or more moderate forms of X-linked immunodeficiency. Mutations in JAK3 cause an autosomal recessive form of severe combined immunodeficiency (see text).

TABLE 25.4 Features of X-Linked Severe Combined Immunodeficiency

1. Absent or profoundly diminished numbers of T cells and mitogen responses
2. Absence of NK cells
3. Normal numbers of B cells, but defective B-cell responses
4. IgM can be normal but greatly diminished Igs of other classes
5. XSCID carrier females exhibit nonrandom X-inactivation patterns in their T cells and NK cells; the X-inactivation pattern is random in surface IgM-positive B cells but nonrandom in more terminally differentiated B cells.

Ig, immunoglobulin; NK, natural killer; XSCID, X-linked severe combined immunodeficiency.

previously, analysis of IL-4/IL-21R double knockout mice indicate that defective signaling by IL-4 and IL-21 appear to explain the intrinsic B-cell defect in X-linked SCID.[182]

Rationale for the Sharing of γ_c

Why should there have been evolutionary pressure to maintain the sharing of γ_c, given the obvious increased risk associated with sharing a receptor component when it is mutated? There are at least two different types of models.[45,213] First, the sharing of γ_c could be a basis for shared actions. For example, given that IL-2, IL-4, IL-7, IL-9, IL-15, and IL-21 can each act as T-cell growth factors, at least in vitro, it is possible that γ_c might couple to signal transducing molecule(s) that promote T-cell growth. Second, the sharing of γ_c might represent a means by which one cytokine using γ_c can modulate the signals of the others. To understand this model, it is important to recognize that, in contrast to antigen receptor complexes, cytokine receptor components individually are targeted to the cell surface, and the formation/stability of receptor complexes is promoted or stabilized by ligand binding, as noted in the discussion of growth hormone, wherein the second receptor monomer recognizes the combined surface of growth hormone and the first growth hormone receptor monomer[19] or for the IL-2 receptor where γ_c "sees" a combined IL-2/IL-2Rβ surface.[23] This latter finding is consistent with γ_c originally having been coprecipitated with IL-2Rβ in the presence but not in the absence of IL-2,[214] and dimerization of IL-2Rβ and γ_c is known to be required for efficient signaling.[215,216] Thus, receptor heterodimerization at a minimum is stabilized by the cytokine and physiologically may be absolutely dependent on the presence of the cytokine. In the absence of stable preformed cytokine receptor complexes between γ_c and the other receptor chains, one can envision that γ_c might be differentially recruited to different receptors based on the relative amount of a cytokine or its binding efficiency. In a situation where γ_c is limiting, a cytokine might then not only induce its own action but could also simultaneously inhibit the action of another cytokine that was less efficient at recruiting γ_c to its cognate receptor complex.

An analysis of mice deficient in IL-2,[205] IL-2Rα,[217] IL-2Rβ,[218] and γ_c[211,212] provides the interesting observation that although the mice lacking γ_c have defective signaling in six different cytokine pathways, mice deficient in IL-2, IL-2Rα, and IL-2Rβ appear to be less healthy than the γ_c-knockout mice with more markedly activated T cells and autoimmunity that is not evident in γ_c-deficient mice. This is at least in part explained by the fact that IL-2–deficient mice lack T_{reg} cells and thus develop autoimmune disease,[65] whereas γ_c-deficient mice lack T cells due to defective IL-7 signaling and thus lack effector T cells. These and other data indicate that γ_c plays a major role in regulating lymphoid homeostasis, as originally indicated.[219]

Cytokines whose Receptors Share the Common β Chain, β_c (Interleukin-3, Interleukin-5, and Granulocyte Macrophage-Colony Stimulating Factor)

The hematopoietic cytokines, IL-3, IL-5, and GM-CSF (Table 25.5) are all synthesized by T cells and exert effects on cells of hematopoietic lineage.[220–222] These cytokines are vital for proliferation as well as differentiation of myeloid precursor cells. Of these three cytokines, IL-3 is the most pluripotent[221] and historically was also called multi-CSF, reflecting the large number of lineages on which it can act. It can act to promote proliferation, survival, and development of multipotent hematopoietic progenitor cells and of cells that have become dedicated to a range of different lineages, including granulocyte, macrophage, eosinophil, mast cell, basophil, megakaryocyte, and erythroid lineages. It induces a range of effects, including, for example, inducing the production off IL-4 by basophils.[223] IL-3 also can exert end-function effects, such as enhancing phagocytosis and cytotoxicity. GM-CSF is mainly restricted to the granulocyte and monocyte/macrophage lineages, but its actions are nevertheless still quite broad.[220] It is both a growth and survival factor. In addition, it can expand the number of antigen-presenting cells, such as DCs, and thereby may greatly expand the ability of the host to respond to antigen. IL-23 and RORγt can augment GM-CSF production in Th cells, whereas IL-12, IFNγ, and IL-27 negatively regulate its expression, and GM-CSF is now known to be required for the initiation of autoimmune neuroinflammation in experimental autoimmune encephalitis. Collectively, these results suggest that GM-CSF is important for encephalitogenic actions of both Th1 and Th17 cells.[224,225] GM-CSF mediates autoimmune effects at least in part by enhancing IL-6–

TABLE 25.5 Features of Cytokines whose Receptors Share the Common β Chain, β_c

Cytokine	Major Source	Size	Cellular Targets	Chromosome Location (h/m)	Exons
IL-3	T cells	h152/19aa m166/26 aa 22–34 kDa	Multiple lineages	5q31.1/11	5
IL-5	T cells	h139/22aa m133/21 45 kDa dimer	Eosinophils B cells (?)	5 q31.1/11	4
GM-CSF	T cells	h144/17aa m141/17aa 23 kDa	Granulocytes Macrophages	5q31.1/11	4

GM-CSF, granulocyte macrophage-colony stimulating factor; IL, interleukin.

dependent Th17 cell development and survival.[226] Whereas IL-3 and GM-CSF can act on eosinophils, they act at much earlier stages than IL-5, presumably expanding the number of eosinophil-committed precursors cells. IL-5 stimulates the eosinophilic lineage and eosinophil release from the bone marrow and is essential for expanding eosinophils after helminth infections,[227,228] and can mediate the killing of *S. mansoni*. IL-5 can also induce Ig production in B cells activated by contact with activated Th cells in mouse systems, and IL-5 and IL-5Rα knockout mice have diminished CD5+ B1 cells and decreased thymocytes until approximately 6 weeks of age.[227,228] Interestingly, the production of IL-5 by memory Th2 cells is driven by GATA3 but downregulated by expression of eomesodermin, which interacts with GATA3. Most memory Th2 cells produce the transcription factor Eomes, but the $CD62^{lo}CXCR3^{lo}$ population has decreased Eomes and is the population of cells that produces IL-5.[229]

On cells that express receptors for more than one of these cytokines, such as eosinophilic progenitors that express receptors for IL-3, IL-5, and GM-CSF, or on mouse pre-B cells, which express receptors for IL-3 and IL-5, the signals induced are indistinguishable.[221,222] Thus, the differential lineage specificities of these cytokines are determined by the cellular distribution of their receptors rather than by fundamental differences in the signals that are induced by each cytokine. These observations are explained by studies demonstrating that each of these three cytokines has its own unique 60 to 80 kDa α chain (ie, IL-3Rα, IL-5Rα, and GM-CSFRα),[230–236] but that they share a common 120 to 130 kDa β chain, β_c.[222,237–239] The α chains are the principal binding proteins for the cytokines, whereas the shared β_c subunit augments binding affinity but does not exhibit binding activity in the absence of the proper α chain. The α chains have relatively short cytoplasmic domains (approximately 55 amino acids long for IL-3Rα, IL-5Rα, and GM-CSFRα) and are not believed to play major roles in signaling function, whereas β_c, with its cytoplasmic domain of 432 amino acids, is the primary determinant of the signal. As a result, there is a relative compartmentalization of binding and signaling function for these cytokines, although the cytoplasmic domains of the GM-CSFRα and IL-5Rα chains (and by analogy, perhaps the IL-3Rα chain), as well as β_c, appear to be capable of at least modulating the growth signals in transfected cells.[222,240–242] In any case, the sharing of β_c helps to explain why the signals induced by IL-3, IL-5, and GM-CSF are similar on cells that can respond to more than one of these cytokines. The situation for the β_c family of cytokines is therefore quite different from the receptors for γ_c family cytokines, wherein the chains with the largest cytoplasmic domains (IL-2Rβ, IL-4Rα, IL-7Rα, IL-9Rα, and IL-21R) not only contribute most to signaling specificity but also are the proteins principally involved in ligand binding (note that for IL-2 and IL-15, IL-2Rα and IL-15Rα, respectively, serve important roles as well). The shared chain, γ_c, serves a vital accessory function (hence the development of X-linked SCID when the *IL2RG* gene is mutated), but it contributes less to cytokine binding and does not provide an obvious basis for signaling specificity (see subsequent discussion).

An interesting feature of the β_c family of hematopoietic cytokines is that there appears to be considerable redundancy of function so that knockout mice that lack the ability to respond to all three cytokines (GM-CSF, IL-3, and IL-5) due to deletion of β_c as well as the mouse IL-3–specific β_c-like protein (discussed in the following text) nevertheless exhibit relatively normal hematopoiesis. These observations do not minimize the potency of these particular cytokines but instead underscore a substantial redundancy for a particularly important set of functions.[221,222,243] It is also noteworthy that β_c-deficient mice exhibit defective host responses to infectious challenge, suggesting that these hematopoietic cytokines play a vital role in promoting immune function.

Cytokines whose Receptors Share gp130 (Interleukin-6, Interleukin-11, Oncostatin M, Ciliary Neurotropic Factor, Leukemia Inhibitory Factor, Cardiotrophin-1, Novel Neurotrophin-1/B Cell-Stimulating Factor-3/ Cardiotrophin-Like Factor, and Interleukin-27)

There are now eight cytokines that are known to utilize gp130 as a signal transducing molecule.[244–255] Some of the properties of these cytokines are summarized in Table 25.6. This family is often referred to as the IL-6 family of cytokines and includes IL-6, IL-11, OSM, LIF, CNTF, CT-1, NNT/BSF-3/CLC, and IL-27. This group of cytokines comprises molecules with a diverse range of actions, ranging beyond the hematopoietic and

TABLE 25.6 Cytokines whose Receptors Share gp130[a]

Cytokine	Chromosome Location (h/m)
IL-6	7p21/5
IL-11	19q13.3–13.4/7
LIF	22q12.1–12.2/11
OSM	22q12.1–12.2/11
CNTF	11q12.2/19
CT-1	16p11.1–11.2/7
NNT-1/BSF-3/CLC	11q13/19
IL-27	

Overlapping actions of several gp130 cytokines

	IL-6	IL-11	LIF	OSM	CNTF	CT-1
Growth of myeloma cells	+	–	+	+	+	?
Maintenance of embryonic stem cell pluripotency	–	–	+	+	+	+
Induction of hepatic acute phase proteins	+	+	+	+	+	+
Induction of cardiac hypertrophy	–	+	+	+	+/–	+
Induction of osteoclast formation	–	+	+	+	?	?
Enhanced neuronal survival/differentiaion	+	+	+	+	+	+
Inhibit adipogenesis	?	+	+	?	?	?

BSF-3, B cell-stimulating factor-3; CLC, cardiotrophin-like factor; CNTF, ciliary neurotrophic factor; CT-1, cardiotrophin-1; IL, interleukin; LIF, leukemia inhibitory factor; NNT-1, novel neurotrophin-1; OSM, oncostatin M.

[a]Most of the data in this table are derived from Yin et al.[248]

Note that NNT-1 can support survival of chicken embryonic and sympathetic neurons, can induce amyloid A, and analogous to IL-6 can induce B-cell hyperplasia.

immune systems to the central nervous and cardiovascular systems, making them even more "multifunctional" than the γ_c and β_c families of cytokines, whose actions are more restricted to the lymphoid and hematopoietic systems.

IL-6 was originally identified and then cloned as a B-cell differentiation factor that stimulated terminal differentiation/maturation of B cells into antibody-producing plasma cells.[256–258] However, IL-6 also can exert effects for T-cell growth and differentiation (and thus is a thymocyte "comitogen"), induce myeloid differentiation into macrophages, induce acute-phase protein synthesis of hepatocytes, and exert actions on keratinocytes, mesangial cells, hematopoietic stem cells, the development of osteoclasts, and neural differentiation of PC12 cells.[250] IL-6 is also a mediator of amplified lymphocyte trafficking during febrile inflammatory responses, which is dependent on IL-6–mediated activation of L-selectin.[259] IL-6 binds to an 80 kDa IL-6 binding protein, denoted IL-6Rα, which has a comparatively short 82 amino acid long cytoplasmic domain.[257,260] This IL-6-IL-6Rα complex then interacts with and recruits the 130 kDa signal transducing molecule, gp130, which together with IL-6Rα can form a functional IL-6 receptor.[250] From a structural perspective, gp130 contains a total of six fibronectin type III modules, with the four conserved cysteine residues and the WSXWS motif being located in the second and third of these modules, starting from the N-terminus. As such, these regions are topologically positioned at greater distance external to the cell membrane than is the case for the other type I cytokine receptors discussed previously.

The IL-6 system illustrates a novel twist related to the properties of their principal binding proteins: The cytoplasmic domain of IL-6Rα is superfluous for signaling; a soluble form of the IL-6Rα extracellular domain is in fact sufficient for ligand binding and coordination with gp130, a process termed *IL-6 transsignaling*.[261] Thus, in the presence of soluble IL-6Rα and IL-6, many cell types that express gp130 but not IL-6Rα are capable of signaling in response to IL-6. It was observed that IL-6 signaling requires the dimerization of gp130 and that the overall complex containing two molecules each of IL-6, IL-6Rα, and gp130 (a dimer of a trimer or a hexamer),[32,262–265] providing a possible paradigm for the stoichiometry of subunits for other members of the IL-6 family of cytokines.[24]

IL-11 was identified as a factor produced by a stromal cell line in response to stimulation with IL-1.[266,267] It has a number of effects on hematopoiesis, particularly in combination with IL-3 and SCF. Because IL-11 exhibited "IL-6–like activities," a complementary deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) was isolated based on the presence of IL-6–like activity in the presence of antibodies to IL-6.[268] Other actions of IL-11 include the ability to stimulate the proliferation of lymphoid and hematopoietic progenitor cells, stimulate megakaryocytic progenitors and megakaryocyte maturation, and stimulate erythroid progenitors (an action not shared by IL-6).[266,267] Overall, it acts on T cells, B cells, hematopoietic cells, epithelium, endothelial cells, and osteoclasts.[269] Like IL-6, IL-11 induces acute-phase proteins and augments antigen-specific B-cell responses, but it does not stimulate human myeloma cells.[266–268,270] Subsequently, adipogenesis inhibitory factor was cloned and found to be identical to IL-11,[271] revealing another action of IL-11. IL-11 is also produced by lung eosinophils and various structural cells in the lung and is expressed in patients with modest-to-severe asthma.[272] IL-11 signals via a receptor complex containing both IL-11Rα[273] and gp130.[244] Interestingly, IL-11Rα messenger RNA can be alternatively spliced to yield a form lacking the cytoplasmic domain, and like IL-6Rα, a soluble form of IL-11Rα can coordinate with IL-11 to transsignal in cells expressing gp130.[274] Studies on the stoichiometry of the IL-11 receptor complex failed to reveal dimerization of gp130 to itself or LIFRβ. Thus, assuming that it forms a hexameric receptor complex, only five of the members are known: two molecules of IL-11 and IL-11Rα, respectively, and one of gp130, suggesting that another component may still be found.[275] IL-11 and STAT3 are expressed in gastrointestinal cancers associated with inflammation, suggesting a possible link to cancer.[269]

LIF is another multifunctional cytokine originally cloned based on the activity associated with its name.[276] LIF can suppress the differentiation of pluripotent embryonic stem cells, inhibit adipogenesis (like IL-11), and induce monocyte differentiation of the M1 murine leukemia cell line, thus mimicking a number of the actions of IL-6.[277] In addition, it exerts a number of actions in the central nervous system, and LIF was shown to be identical to cholinergic neural differentiation factor.[278] and can induce acetylcholine synthesis while simultaneously suppressing catecholamine production, thereby inducing cholinergic function while suppressing noradrenergic function.[278] LIF has been shown to be essential for embryo implantation.[279] LIF binds to a receptor (LIFRβ) that is structurally related to gp130,[280] but the functional LIF receptor (LIFR) receptor requires the heterodimerization of LIFRβ and gp130 as well.[246] Interestingly, whereas IL-6 promotes Th17 differentiation, this is inhibited by LIF, apparently based on LIF's ability to activate ERKs and to augment the expression of SOCS-3, which can inhibit STAT3 activation.[281] Interestingly, LIF can also promote the differentiation of T_{reg} cells and may exhibit therapeutic potential in multiple sclerosis.[282] LIF maintains mouse embryonic stem cells, but LIF is not capable of maintaining human embryonic stem cells or mouse epiblast stem cells in the pluripotent state.[283]

CNTF was discovered based on its ability to promote neuronal survival.[284,285] CNTF signals through a receptor comprising LIFRβ and gp130 but requires a specific binding protein,[286,287] now denoted CNTF receptor (CNTFR)α. Interestingly, CNTFRα lacks transmembrane and cytoplasmic domains and instead is a GPI-linked receptor molecule. CNTFRα appears to provide a receptor-cytokine surface with which gp130 and LIFRβ can interact. Thus, CNTF is like IL-6 in that each requires initial binding to a receptor component (CNTFRα or IL-6Rα) that does not require its own cytoplasmic domain for signaling. Whereas IL-6 signaling involves homodimerization of gp130, CNTF signaling involves the heterodimerization of LIFRβ and gp130. In fact, the functional CNTFR appears to be a hexameric structure containing two molecules of CNTF, two of CNTFRα, and one each of gp130 and LIFRβ.[288] The receptor is expressed largely within the nervous system and in skeletal muscle, accounting for largely restricted actions of CNTF.[286]

OSM is a growth regulator that was originally identified based on its ability to inhibit the growth of A375 human melanoma cells.[289,290] OSM is a potent growth factor for Kaposi sarcoma in patients with acquired immunodeficiency syndrome.[291,292] Not only OSM can bind directly to gp130 and signals through a receptor combination of gp130 and LIFRβ[246] but also has an alternative receptor comprising a specific OSM receptor subunit (OSMRβ) and gp130.[293] These are now known as the type I and type II OSM receptors (OSMRs), respectively. OSM can enhance the development of both endothelial cells and hematopoietic cells, possibly by increasing hamangioblasts, a common precursor for endothelial and hematopoietic cells.[251]

CT-1 was initially isolated based on its actions on cardiac muscle cells.[294] However, it is now clear that it is a multifunctional cytokine with hematopoietic, neuronal, and developmental effects, in addition to its effects on cardiac development and hypertrophy.[295,296] Like OSM and LIF, CT-1 can also signal through a heterodimer of LIFRβ and gp130.[249] Interestingly, the CT-1 receptor on motor neurons may involve a third receptor component, possibly GPI linked.[297,298]

NNT-1/BSF-3, like CNTF, can also support the survival of chicken embryonic sympathetic and motor neurons.[253] Interestingly, in mice, NNT-1/BSF-3 can augment the effects of IL-1 and IL-6 and is a B-cell–stimulating factor (hence the term BSF-3). The NNT-1 receptor contains LIFRβ and gp130.[253] NNT-1 is also known as CLC, and this forms a complex with a soluble receptor protein known as cytokine-like factor-1. Together, this complex is a second ligand for CNTFR.[299] It appears that CLC can also interact directly with soluble CNTFR to form a related cytokine.[254]

IL-27 is an IL-6–related cytokine[300] that represents a dimer of the p28 protein (also known as IL-30) and EB13 (Epstein-Barr virus–induced gene 3) (also known as IL-27B), which can induce proliferation of naive CD4+ T cells. p28 can exist by itself independently of EB13 and is capable of antagonizing gp130-mediated signaling by IL-6, and indeed, overexpression of p28 in transgenic mice prevents normal development of germinal centers and antibody production.[301] Together with IL-12, IL-23, CLC/cytokine-like factor-1, and CLC/soluble CNTFR, this is one of five cytokines that represent dimers including a type I cytokine and a soluble receptor-like protein. IL-27 signals via gp130 and the WSX-1/TCCR receptor,[300] which is discussed in the section on diseases of cytokine receptors and related molecules. IL-27 has proinflammatory and anti-inflammatory effects. Although it was suggested to promote Th1 responses, it is clear that it can also antagonize such responses, and IL-27 can promote effector responses of both CD4+ and CD8+ T cells, of NK cells, and it additionally stimulates mast cells. The anti-inflammatory effects of IL-27 are indicated by the absence of WSX-1 resulting in increased mast cell and macrophage responses.[302,303]

Thus, eight cytokines (IL-6, IL-11, LIF, CNTF, OSM, CT-1, NNT-1/BSF-3, and IL-27) all have receptors that are dependent on gp130.[304] These can be divided into two sets of cytokines: those known to not require LIFRβ (IL-6, IL-11, and IL-27) and those that use both gp130 and LIFRβ (LIF, CT-1, OSM, CNTF, and NNT-1/BSF-3) (Table 25.7), with OSM having two forms of receptors, each of which contains gp130 but only one of which contains LIFRβ. When cytokines share essentially the same receptor, one can hypothesize that two cytokines might exert identical actions on cells that can respond to both cytokines. It is clear that the presence of IL-6Rα, IL-11Rα, and CNTFRα (either on the cell surface or as a soluble receptor form, discussed subsequently) determines whether a cell can respond to IL-6, IL-11, and CNTF. This raises the interesting question as to whether functional homologues of these proteins will also exist for LIF, OSM, CT-1, NNT-1/BSF-3, and IL-27.

TABLE 25.7 Composition of Receptors for the Interleukin-6 Family of Cytokines

Cytokines whose receptors do not contain LIFRβ	
IL-6	IL-6Rα + gp130
IL-11	IL-11Rα + gp130
OSM	OSMRβ + gp130
Cytokines whose receptors contain LIFRβ	
LIF	LIFRβ + gp130
OSM	LIFRβ + gp130
CNTF	CNTFRα + LIFRβ + gp130
CT-1	LIFRβ + gp130 + ?CT1Rα
NNT-1/BSF-3 /CLC + CLF-1	CNTFRα + LIFRβ + gp130
CLC + soluble CNTFRα	LIFRβ + gp130
Cytokines whose receptors contain OSMRβ	
OSM	OSMRβ + gp130
IL-31	IL-31R + OSMRβ

BSF-3, B cell-stimulating factor-3; CLC, cardiotrophin-like factor; CLF-1, cytokine-like factor-1; CNTF, ciliary neurotrophic factor; CNTFR, CNTF receptor; CT-1, cardiotrophin-1; IL, interleukin; LIF, leukemia inhibitory factor; NNT-1, novel neurotrophin-1; OSM, oncostatin M.

Note that the sharing of CNTFRα by CNTF and the dimeric NNT-1/BSF-3/CLC – CLF-1 ligand helps to explain why the phenotype in CNTF–/– mice is less severe than that found in CNTFRα–/– mice.

Significance of the Sharing of Receptor Chains

Interestingly, γ_c, β_c, and gp130 all contribute to signaling, but none of these shared cytokine receptor proteins has primary binding activity for any known cytokine. Instead, they each increase binding affinity in the context of the primary binding protein for each cytokine. Consequently, the capacity of a cell to respond to a given cytokine is determined by the unique binding chain(s), but signaling pathways can be shared.

Other Receptors with Similarities to gp130 (Granulocyte-Colony Stimulating Factor Receptor, OB-R, Interleukin-12Rβ1, Interleukin-12Rβ2, and Interleukin-31R)

As noted previously, LIFRβ and OSMRβ bear some similarities to gp130.[293] In addition, the G-CSF receptor, the leptin receptor (also denoted OB-R, for obesity receptor), IL-12/IL-23 receptor components, and IL-31R all resemble gp130. The amino acid identity among these different receptors, compared pairwise, ranges from 18% to 32%, with LIFRβ and OSMRβ being the most similar. Although G-CSF is granulocyte-colony stimulating factor, it may have

a broader role. For example, G-CSF has been shown to stimulate myoblast proliferation and thereby to affect skeletal muscle formation,[305] indicating broad pleiotropic actions by this cytokine.

Leptin

Leptin is the product of the obesity (ob) gene, an adipose tissue–derived cytokine that plays a role in body weight homeostasis.[306–308] Additionally, leptin affects thymic homeostasis, increasing thymocyte number and having antiapoptotic effects in the thymus and periphery. It is proinflammatory, promoting Th1 differentiation, and augmenting the production of TNF-α, IL-1, and IL-6 by monocytes/macrophages.[308] The leptin receptor, OB-R, was cloned and found to be most closely related to the gp130 signal transducer, G-CSF receptor, and LIFRβ.[309] Interestingly, this receptor is encoded by the "diabetes gene," which is mutated in db/db mice.[310]

Interleukin-12, IL-23, and IL-35

As noted previously, IL-12 is the major inducer of Th1 cells. IL-12 is primarily produced by phagocytic cells in response to bacterial and intracellular parasites, such as *Toxoplasma gondii*, but it is also produced by other antigen-presenting cells, such as B cells.[311] IL-12 potently induces the production of IFNγ by NK cells and T cells and is also a growth factor for preactivated but not resting NK and T cells. IL-12 was originally discovered as NK cell stimulatory factor.[312] IL-12 can also induce the production of IL-2, IL-3, GM-CSF, IL-9, TNF-α, and M-CSF, although inducing IFNγ is perhaps its most important known action.[311,313,314] As is discussed in the section on immunodeficiency diseases, IL-12 is essential for the proper clearing of mycobacterial infections. It is interesting that Th2 cells do not respond to IL-12; the lack of responsiveness of these cells to IL-12 results from their loss of expression of the IL-12Rβ2 subunit of the IL-12 receptor.[315] Apparently, IL-4 inhibits IL-12Rβ2 expression, whereas IL-2[74] and IFNγ[315] induce its expression. The abilities of mice to survive infections is critically linked to the Th patterns of cytokines. For example, the ability to survive *T. gondii* infection is dependent on IFNγ/IL-12 production (a Th1 pattern).[83]

IL-12 can be thought of as having vital roles in both innate immunity and acquired immune responses. It is rapidly produced by NK cells and then T cells in response to antigens or foreign pathogens. This rapid response facilitates the activation of first-line defense against infections. In addition, however, IL-12 is also required for the subsequent differentiation of specialized T-cell populations, including its STAT4-dependent priming of Th1 cells for optimal production of IFNγ and IL-2. IL-12 can act synergistically with hematopoietic growth factors, such as IL-3 and SCF, to support the proliferation and survival of hematpoietic stem cells.[311] Structurally, IL-12 is a covalently linked dimer of 35 (IL-12A) and 40 (IL-12B) kDa peptides[311]; thus, successful production of IL-12 requires that a cell transcribe both the p35 and p40 genes.[316] Interestingly, whereas p35 bears sequence similarity to IL-6 and G-CSF, p40 is homologous to the extracellular domains of IL-6Rα, CNTFRα, and G-CSF receptor and bears some of the features typical of type I receptors, including four conserved cysteines, a conserved tryptophan, and a WSEWAS motif, which has similarity to the typical WSXWS motif.[311] Moreover, as both IL-12 receptor (IL-12Rβ1 and IL-12Rβ2) chains bear some similarity to gp130,[312,316,317] one can think of p40 as a functional homologue of the soluble p80 IL-6Rα chain. Thus, for this cytokine, part of the "receptor" has become part of the cytokine. Interestingly, all cells that produce IL-12 synthesize much more p40 than p35, suggesting that the careful control of signaling is at the level of the "primordial" p35 cytokine part of IL-12. p40 is on human chromosome 5q31 to 5q33 while p35 is on 3p12 tp 3p13.2.[311] As noted previously, it is interesting that IL-2 induces expression of IL-12Rβ1 and IL-12Rβ2.

IL-23 is similar to IL-12 in that it also contains p40.[318] However, rather than also containing p35, IL-23 is a dimer of a p40 and p19 (IL-23A). IL-23 signals via a receptor that contains IL-12Rβ1 but not IL-12Rβ2.[319] Instead, another receptor chain, denoted IL-23R, is the second component of the IL-23R[320]; both IL-12Rβ2 and IL-23R are located on chromosome 1 within 150 kb of each other.[320] Both IL-12 and IL-23 activate JAK2 and TYK2. IL-12 and IL-23 can activate STAT1, STAT3, STAT4, and STAT5. STAT4 is the dominant STAT protein activated by IL-12.[320] Interestingly, as compared to human IL-23R, mouse IL-23R contains a 20 amino acid duplicated region that spans the WQPWS motif. IL-23 appears to play a vital role in the maintenance, rather than in the initial differentiation of Th17 cells (IL-17–producing cells), and IL-23 is essential for resistance to certain diseases, such as EAE, which were originally believed to be Th1-mediated diseases, as elimination of IL-23 by eliminating either the p40 subunit shared by IL-12 and IL-23 or by eliminating p19 confers resistance to EAE.[175,321] Whereas IL-23 promotes Th17 cell numbers, IL-27 can negatively regulate their development.[321] In the CD40-mediated model of inflammatory bowel disease, IL-12 p35 secretion controlled wasting disease and serum cytokine production but did not affect mucosal pathology, which instead was associated with IL-23/p19.[322] Interestingly, IL-23R has been identified as an inflammatory bowel disease gene,[323] and IL-23 can drive intestinal inflammation via direct actions on T cells.[324] Separate from Th17 cells, a population of innate lymphoid cells that produce IL-17, IL-22, and IFNγ in response to IL-23 have been identified as the mediators of inflammatory bowel disease.[325] IL-23 and its receptor are nevertheless critical for the terminal differentiation of Th17 cells.[169,326] IL-27 is a related cytokine (discussed previously), but it can act as an inhibitor of Th1 responses associated with intracellular infections such as *T. gondii*. Whereas host defense to *T. gondii* is dependent on IL-12 and IFNγ, IL-27–deficient mice control the parasite replication but develop a lethal inflammatory disease that is dependent on CD4+ T cells. Additionally, IL-27 can inhibit Th2 actions.[303]

IL-35 is produced by T_{reg} cells and plays a role in immunosuppression. It is a heterodimer of IL-12A (p35) and IL-27B (EBI3).[327] IL-35 treatment of naive mouse or human T cells induces regulatory cells that have been called iTR35 cells[328] and promote tolerance and tumor progression.

Interleukin-31

IL-31 is a four α-helical bundle cytokine that fits into the greater IL-6 extended family in that its receptor consists of IL-31RA and the OSMRβ.[329] IL-31R is a gp130-like type 1 receptor, with four splice variants. IL-31 is produced primarily by activated T cells and when overexpressed results in pruritis, alopecia, and skin lesions, indicating a potential role in dermatitis.[329,330]

Other Examples of Shared Receptor Molecules

Interleukin-7 and Thymic Stromal Lymphopoietin Share Interleukin-7 Receptor α Chain

In addition to IL-7, a second stromal factor, TSLP has been identified that shares at least some actions with IL-7.[11,331–333] The TSLP receptor is a heterodimer of TSLPR and IL-7Rα.[334,335] Interestingly, TSLPR is 24% identical to γ_c, making it the cytokine receptor most like γ_c.[334] Human and mouse TSLP share only 43% amino acid identity, and human and mouse TSLP receptors share only 39% identity.[336] This is very low for human and mouse orthologues of cytokine receptors, for example, human and mouse γ_c are 70% identical.[337] In addition to their wide sequence divergence, mouse and human TSLP were originally suggested to substantially differ in their actions. Mouse TSLP was first reported to be a B-cell differentiation factor that is important for the development of IgM+ immature B cells from pre-B cells and to also be a weak thymic comitogen. In contrast, human TSLP appeared not to exert effects on these lineages but was found to be an epithelial-derived cytokine that potently activated DCs related to Th2 allergic responses, an action not then known to be shared by mouse TSLP.[338–340] However, it is now clear that mouse TSLP can also activate DCs and that it plays a critical role in both atopic disease and asthma in mouse models, and that these effects of TSLP are mediated via actions on both DCs and CD4+ T cells.[341–347] TSLP can also promote immunity to helminth parasites,[333] and TSLP is also important for mucosal healing in the dextran sulfate sodium–induced colitis model.[348] Interestingly, human TSLP is expressed by Hassall corpuscles[349] and was suggested to promote selection of T_{reg} cells in human thymus, thus contributing to central tolerance.[350] It is striking, however, that mice lacking TSLP receptor have normal numbers of T_{reg} cells, indicating that TSLP is not absolutely essential for this function, and that other molecules can at least substitute for TSLP. Indeed, IL-7 is such a molecule.[350a] TSLP is now known to be produced by a range of cell types, including epithelial cells, fibroblasts, keratinocytes, stromal cells, basophils, mast cells, and DCs,[11] and to in turn act on multiple lineages, including DCs, CD4+ and CD8+ T cells, mast cells, NKT cells, eosinophils, and B cells.[11,333,351] Interestingly, TSLP promotes Th2 differentiation and has been shown to promote metastasis in breast cancer and pancreatic cancer.[352–354] From a signaling perspective, whereas IL-7 activates JAK1 and JAK3, TSLP activates JAK1 and JAK2, making it the only type 1 cytokine to use this combination of JAK kinases to activate STAT5.[347] Although IFNγ also uses JAK1 and JAK2, it instead activates STAT1.[355]

Two Types of Interleukin-4 Receptors, One of which also Responds to Interleukin-13

As detailed previously, on T cells, IL-4 acts through a receptor comprising IL-4Rα and γ_c (the type I IL-4 receptor)[38,39]; however, IL-4 can also signal through type II IL-4 receptors comprising IL-4Rα and IL-13Rα1 but not γ_c.[356] IL-13 is another cytokine that shares some actions with IL-4 and was originally described as a T-cell–derived cytokine capable of inhibiting inflammation,[357] although it is now clear that other cells such as NK cells and mast cells can also produce IL-13. IL-13 can induce identical signals to IL-4 on non-T cells that respond to IL-4 but lacks effects on mature T cells, as these cells do not bind IL-13.[358,359] The shared actions of IL-4 and IL-13 include the ability to 1) decrease expression of inflammatory cytokines, 2) induce major histocompatibility complex class II expression, 3) induce CD23 expression and IgE production by B cells in humans, 4) inhibit IL-2–induced proliferation of chronic lymphocytic leukemia cells of B-cell origin, and 5) costimulate with anti-CD40 antibodies. This is explained by the observation that the type II IL-4 receptor consists of IL-4Rα plus IL-13Rα1,[360,361] with both IL-4 and IL-13 inducing indistinguishable signals on cells expressing this receptor. Interestingly, IL-4 binds primarily to IL-4Rα and IL-13 binds primarily to IL-13Rα1. This situation may be analogous to the situation for LIF, CT-1, and OSM, which can all act through receptors containing LIFRβ and gp130 but differ in their abilities to directly interact with each of these receptor proteins. An additional IL-13 binding protein, IL-13Rα2, has much higher binding affinity for IL-13 than does IL-13Rα1.[362] IL-13Rα2 is nonfunctional in terms of signaling and instead acts as a "decoy" receptor.

Although IL-13 was originally believed to be substantially redundant with IL-4, it has important distinctive actions as well. IL-13 may be vital in asthma, as blocking IL-13 can inhibit pathophysiologic changes of asthma.[363,364] It also is clear that IL-13 regulates eosinophilic infiltration, airway hyperresponsiveness, and mucus secretion, and that it is a potent mediator of fibrosis.[357] Moreover, IL-13 that is produced by innate natural helper cells in the lung contributes to asthma.[365] The phenotype of IL-13 knockout mice suggested a role for IL-13 the ability to expel helminths,[366] and it is clear that IL-13 specifically can modulate resistance to intracellular organisms, including *Leishmania major* and *Listeria monocytogenes*.[357] IL-13 has also been identified as a factor that is secreted by and can stimulate the growth of Hodgkin and Reed-Sternberg cells.[367]

Although IL-4 and IL-13 are both critical for host defense to helminths, the use of reporter mice revealed that Th2 cells produce both cytokines. Tfh cells in lymph nodes as well as basophils make IL-4, whereas innate helper type 2 cells secrete IL-13. Thus, although both are produced during helminth infection, there are distinctive sites of production, correlating with distinctive roles.[368]

An Example of Multiple Affinities of Binding for a Single Cytokine: Three Classes of Interleukin-2 Receptors

Although cytokines typically signal via a single class of high-affinity cell surface receptor, more complex situations exist.

TABLE 25.8 Classes of Interleukin-2 Receptors

Affinity	K_d	Where Expressed	Composition	Functional
Low	10^{-8} M	Activated cells	IL-2Rα	No
Intermediate	10^{-9} M	Resting cells	IL-2Rβ and γ_c	Yes
High	10^{-11}M	Activated cells	IL-2Rα, IL-2Rβ, and γ_c	Yes

IL, interleukin

The IL-2 system provides the very interesting illustration of a system with three classes of affinities of receptors (Table 25.8). In addition to the high-affinity receptor (IL-2Rα + IL-2Rβ + γ_c, $K_d \approx 10^{-11}$ M), there are both low-affinity (IL-2Rα alone, $K_d \approx 10^{-8}$ M) and intermediate-affinity (IL-2Rβ + γ_c, $K_d \approx 10^{-9}$ M) receptors.[29,50] Low- and high-affinity receptors are expressed on activated lymphocytes, whereas intermediate-affinity receptors are found on resting lymphocytes, particularly on NK cells. Both intermediate- and high-affinity receptors can signal, suggesting that IL-2Rβ and γ_c are necessary and sufficient for signaling, in keeping with the theme of dimerization indicated previously. Given that the intermediate-affinity form is functional, what then is the rationale for having a high-affinity IL-2 receptor that also contains IL-2Rα? This is a particularly important question in view of the fact IL-2Rα has an extremely short cytoplasmic domain that does not appear to play a role in signaling. The importance of IL-2Rα is clearly demonstrated by the severely abnormal phenotype of IL-2Rα–deficient mice, which exhibit autoimmunity, inflammatory bowel disease, and premature death,[217] and by the observation that IL-2Rα mutations can cause an autoimmune syndrome in humans as well.[369] A clue to the importance of IL-2Rα comes from the kinetics of association of IL-2 with each chain. Although the IL-2Rα appears to lack a direct signaling function, it has a very fast on-rate for IL-2 binding.[370] Thus, the combination of this rapid on-rate with the slow off-rate from IL-2Rβ/γ_c dimers results in high-affinity binding that is vital for responding to the very low concentrations of IL-2 that are physiologically present in vivo. Moreover, as activated T cells express approximately 10 times as many low-affinity than high-affinity receptors, IL-2Rα may serve as an efficient means of recruitment and concentration of IL-2 on the cell surface, allowing more efficient formation of IL-2/IL-2Rβ/γ_c signaling complexes.

As noted previously, IL-2Rα is not a type I cytokine receptor and in fact has homology to the recognition domain of complement factor B.[371] Subsequently, the IL-15 receptor α chain was shown to also have a similar structure to IL-2Rα,[155] with both IL-2Rα and IL-15Rα having what are called "sushi" domains, which contribute to ligand binding. The fact that IL-2 and IL-15 both have related α chains is consistent with the close relationship between IL-2 and IL-15, and that the receptors for both IL-2 and IL-15 contain both IL-2Rβ and γ_c.

As IL-2Rα cannot transduce a signal by itself, the detection of IL-2Rα on the cell surface does not necessarily reflect IL-2 responsiveness. Because IL-2Rα was discovered before IL-2Rβ and γ_c, many papers in the literature have evaluated IL-2 receptor expression based on IL-2Rα expression alone, and this may not reflect IL-2 responsiveness. IL-2Rα is also expressed on a subpopulation of double negative thymocytes, but it remains unclear if IL-2 physiologically acts on these cells. Each of the components of the IL-2 receptor is located on a different chromosome: Human IL-2Rα is located on chromosome 10p14 to 10p15,[372] IL-2Rβ is at 22q,[373,374] and γ_c is at Xq13.1,[197] while the mouse homologues are located at chromosomes 2, 15, and X.

Erythropoietin, Thrombopoietin, and Stem Cell Factor

Epo was the first cytokine that was biochemically purified and is vital for erythropoiesis, whereas thrombopoietin is critical for thrombopoiesis. These cytokines each bind to receptors that are homodimers.[21,375] Interestingly, Epo signaling may depend in part on the functional cooperation of the Epo receptor and c-kit, the receptor for SCF.[376] This latter receptor has intrinsic tyrosine kinase activity and is not a type I cytokine receptor. Epo was the first cytokine with demonstrated clinical efficacy, for example, in renal insufficiency. Although it is dominantly associated with erythrocyte production, Epo receptors have been found more broadly on immune cells. Recently, Epo has been shown to have effects on a number of cell types, blocking NF-κB p65 and resulting in inhibition of the induction of TNF-α and inducible nitric oxide synthase in activated macrophages, with diminished control of *Salmonella* infection, whereas in a model of chemical-induced colitis, such inhibition of NF-κB–dependent immune modulators limits tissue damage and disease severity.[377] It will therefore be important to determine the full scope of immunologic actions that are mediated by Epo.

CYTOKINE AND CYTOKINE RECEPTOR PLEIOTROPY AND REDUNDANCY

It is well recognized that many cytokines exhibit the phenomena of cytokine "pleiotropy" and "redundancy."[304] Cytokine pleiotropy refers to the ability of a cytokine to exert many different types of responses, often on different cell types, whereas cytokine redundancy refers to the fact that many different cytokines can induce similar actions. One set of cytokines that exhibit cytokine pleiotropy is the γ_c family of cytokines. For example, IL-2 can induce T-cell growth, augment B-cell Ig synthesis, increase the cytolytic activity of lymphokine-activated killer and NK cells, and play an essential role in mediating activation-induced cell death; IL-4 can induce B-cell growth and Ig class switch; and IL-7 not only plays a major role in thymocyte development but also can stimulate mature T cells, and at least in the mouse, can act as a pre–B-cell growth factor. The gp130 family cytokines also exhibit broad actions. For example, IL-6 exerts effects ranging from that of

a comitogen for thymocyte activation to that of a mediator of the acute-phase response in liver. Regarding cytokine redundancy, it has already been highlighted that IL-2, IL-4, IL-7, and IL-15 receptors contain γ_c can act as T-cell growth factors, and that IL-3 has actions that overlap with IL-5 and GM-CSF.

The recognition that cytokines not only have overlapping actions but also share receptor components, led to the concepts of "cytokine receptor pleiotropy" and "cytokine receptor redundancy."[304] The first of these terms can be defined by the ability of a single cytokine receptor subunit to function in more than one receptor. Thus, examples include the sharing of γ_c, β_c, gp130, IL-4Rα, LIFRβ, and OSMRβ, as summarized previously, as well as the sharing of IL-2Rβ by IL-2 and IL-15 receptors, the sharing of IL-4Rα and IL-13Rα in type II IL-4 receptors and IL-13 receptors, and the sharing of IL-7Rα by the IL-7 and TSLP receptors. Another way of viewing receptor pleiotropy is that certain receptor chains are useful "modules" that function in more than one context.

The final term, cytokine receptor subunit redundancy, is the one with fewest examples. There is one well-documented example in mice but not in humans. IL-3 signals through IL-3Rα plus either β_c or an alternative unique IL-3Rβ that shares 91% amino acid identity with β_c and appears to be a completely functionally redundant protein for IL-3 signaling, but IL-3Rβ cannot substitute for β_c in the context of IL-5 or GM-CSF signaling.[239] Other potential examples exist. For example, in type I and type II IL-4 receptors, IL-4Rα coordinates with either γ_c or IL-13Rα1, respectively, and there are two types of OSM receptors, both of which contain gp130, but one of which contains a specific OSM receptor while the other contains LIFRβ. What remains unknown, however, is whether the signals mediated by these different types of receptors are truly identical so that there is redundancy, or whether there are distinctive features to the signals that IL-4 and OSM induce via the different receptors. Indeed, mice lacking IL-13Rα1 have exacerbated Th2 responses and is essential for allergen-induced airway hyperreactivity, suggesting that type 2 IL-4 receptor signaling (either via IL-4 or IL-13) is not identical to that mediated by the type 1 IL-4 receptor (via IL-4).[378]

In addition to these examples related to type I cytokines, the IL-10 subfamily of type II cytokines is interesting in that IL-10Rβ (IL-10R1), IL-20Rα (IL-10R1), IL-20Rβ (IL-20R2), and IL-22Rα (IL-22R) are each shared receptor components, collectively affecting signaling in response to IL-10, IL-19, IL-20, IL-22, and IL-24.[304,379] Specifically, IL-10 signals via a receptor containing IL-10R1 and IL-10R2, IL-19 signals via a receptor containing IL-20R1 and IL-20R2, IL-20 signals via receptors containing IL-20R2 and either IL-20R1 or IL-22R, IL-22 signals via receptors containing IL-22R and IL-10R2, and IL-24 signals through receptors containing IL-20R2 plus either IL-20R1 or IL-22R. Two other IL-10 family members, IL-28 and IL-29, both signal via IL-28R + IL-10R2.[380] Interestingly, IL-10 is believed to be a dimer; IL-26 may also be a dimer, but the other family members are monomers.[379]

SOLUBLE RECEPTORS

Soluble forms of many cytokine receptors have been identified, including those for IL-1, IL-2, IL-4, IL-5, IL-6, IL-7, IL-13Rα2, GM-CSF, type I and type II IFNs, IL-22, and TNF.[381–383] As is clear from this list of cytokines, soluble receptors are not restricted to receptors for type I cytokines, and in the case of IL-2, the principal soluble receptor protein is IL-2Rα, which is not a type I cytokine receptor. Soluble receptors can be created by alternative splicing that truncates the protein N-terminal to the transmembrane domain, resulting in a secreted protein rather than a membrane-anchored membrane in the case of IL-4Rα, IL-5Rα, IL-6Rα, IL-7Rα, IFNAR-2, and GM-CSFRα. Alternatively, they can be created by proteolytic cleavage of the membrane receptor as is found for the receptors for IL-2Rα and TNFRI and TNFRII[382] (Table 25.9). Although it is conceivable that a distinct gene might encode the soluble forms of a receptor, no examples have been reported. In the cases where proteolytic cleavage occurs, the identity of the proteases has not been identified. The major questions related to these soluble receptors are as follows: 1) Do they have physiologic or pathophysiologic functions? 2) How do their affinities compare to the corresponding cell surface receptor? 3) Do they have diagnostic, prognostic, and therapeutic applications?

Unfortunately, there is little information available on the in vivo role of soluble receptors. In general, when analyzed using in vitro studies, soluble receptors can compete with their corresponding cell surface receptors, thereby serving negative regulatory roles. For example, this appears to be the case for the IL-22 soluble receptor. However, soluble IL-6Rα exerts an agonistic role because, as summarized previously, IL-6 signaling occurs equally well via gp130 when the soluble rather than transmembrane form of IL-6Rα interacts with IL-6. Nevertheless, a mutated form of IL-6Rα that cannot interact with gp130 but still binds IL-6 can effectively inhibit the actions of IL-6.[384] In the case of IL-2Rα, there is no reported physiologic function for soluble IL-2Rα, as the affinity of the released receptor is, as expected, similar to that of the low-affinity receptor ($K_d \approx 10^{-8}$ M), making it unlikely to effectively compete with the high-affinity cell surface receptor ($K_d \approx 10^{-11}$ M). However, this and other soluble receptors could serve as cytokine carrier proteins and potentially could increase stability of a cytokine by protecting it from proteolysis.[382] This theoretically could be similar to the role of IL-2/anti–IL-2 conjugates in exhibiting higher activity.[385] Moreover, there are potential diagnostic and prognostic uses for measuring the level of shed receptors (Table 25.10).

TABLE 25.9 Soluble Cytokine Receptors

Generated by Alternative Splicing	Generated by Proteolytic Cleavage of Mature Receptor
sIL-4Rα	sIL-2Rα
sIL-5Rα	sTNFR
sIL-6Rα	
sIL-7Rα	
sGM-CSFRα	
sIFNAR-2	

GM-CSF, granulocyte macrophage-colony stimulating factor; IL, interleukin; TNFR, tumor necrosis factor receptor.

TABLE 25.10 Soluble Interleukin-2 Receptors in Human Disease

Malignancies

Hematologic
- Adult T-cell leukemia
- Hairy cell leukemia
- Acute lymphocytic leukemia
- Chronic lymphocytic leukemia (B cell)
- Acute myelogenous leukemia
- Chronic myelogenous leukemia (especially in blast crisis)
- Malignant lymphomas
- Hodgkin disease
- Non-Hodgkin lymphomas

Nonhematologic
- Adenocarcinoma of lung, breast, pancreas
- Small cell bronchogenic carcinoma
- Ovarian, cervical, and endometrial cancers
- Nasopharyngeal carcinoma
- Melanoma

Infections
- Human immunodeficiency virus
- Tuberculosis
- Rubeola
- Infectious mononucleosis

Other diseases
- End-stage renal disease
- Rheumatoid arthritis
- Systemic lupus erythematosus
- Scleroderma
- Sarcoidosis

After transplantation

After interleukin-2 administration

In adults, the mean sIL-2Rα levels are 280 ± 161 units/mL (levels tend to be higher in pediatric populations). The situations where the levels exceed 5000 units/mL are adult T-cell leukemia, hairy cell leukemia, chronic myelogenous leukemia, and after interleukin-2 administration. The situations where levels are between 1000 and 5000 units/mL include acute myelogenous leukemia, chronic lymphocytic leukemia, non-Hodgkin lymphomas, acquired immunodeficiency syndrome associated with Kaposi sarcoma, tuberculosis, rubeola, and end-stage renal disease. Data are from Kurman et al.[381] and Fernandex-Botran et al.[382]

TABLE 25.11 Type II Cytokines

		Chromosomal Location (h/m)
Type I IFNs		
IFNα	Many genes	9p22/4
IFNβ	Single gene	9p21/4
IFNω	Single gene	9p21/4
IFNτ	Many genes	
Type II IFN		
IFNγ	Single gene	12q14/10
IL-10 family cytokines		
IL-10	Single gene	1q31–32/1
IL-19	Single gene	1q32/1
IL-20	Single gene	1q32/1
IL-22	Single gene	12q14–15/10
IL-24	Single gene	1q32/1
IL-26	Single gene	12q14–15/
IL-28	Single gene	19q13/7
IL-29	Single gene	19q13

IFN, interferon; IL, interleukin.

INTERFERONS (TYPE II CYTOKINES) AND THEIR RECEPTORS

IFNs represent an evolutionarily conserved family (Table 25.11) of cytokines that are related to the IL-10 family of type II cytokines. IFNs were discovered in 1957 on the basis of their antiviral activity and were the first cytokines that were discovered.[386] IFNs are known as either type I or type II IFNs,[387–396] where type I interferons include IFNα (originally known as leukocyte IFN) and IFNβ (originally known as fibroblast IFN), and IFNε, IFNκ, IFNω, IFNδ, and IFNτ. IFNδ and IFNτ are absent in humans. IFNω is closely related to the IFNαs and was formerly designated as an IFNα. There are multiple (at least 12) IFNαs in mice and humans. In contrast, the other type I IFNs, IFNβ and IFNω, are each encoded by single human and mouse genes near the IFNα cluster, and in addition, there are multiple pseudogenes most closely related to IFNα and IFNω. The type I IFNs are clustered on human chromosome 9 and mouse chromosome 4. Type II interferon is IFNγ,[314] which is encoded by a single gene on human chromosome 12 and mouse chromosome 10. IFNα/β is produced after viral infection in many cell types, although plasmacytoid DCs appear to be the largest producers of IFNα/β. These type I IFNs inhibit viral replication and induce the apoptosis of virally infected cells. In addition, IFNα/β mediate the activation of macrophages and NK cells, and they additionally affect the proliferation and survival of CD8+ T cells.

The grouping of the IFNαs and IFNβ together as type I IFNs is logical not only because of the similar amino acid sequences and structures of these IFNs but also based on the fact that they share the same receptor and induce essentially the same signals.[397,398] Although DNA array analysis does show some differences in the genes induced by IFNα and IFNβ, the basis for these differences are unclear.[399] These signals include not only antiproliferative and antiviral activities but also the ability to stimulate cytolytic activity in lymphoyctes, NK cells, and macrophages. In contrast, IFNγ has a distinct receptor. Type I and type II IFN receptors share a sufficient degree of similarity to each other so as to form a family.[400] The structure of the IFNγ receptor[401] is shown in Figure 25.2. IFN receptors are referred to as type II cytokine receptors, and there are substantial differences between these receptors and the type I cytokine receptors.[8] Because both type I and type II IFNs bind to type II cytokine receptors, IFNs are occasionally referred to as type II cytokines but more generally are referred to as IFNs. Based on the similarity of the

IL-10 receptor to the IFNγ receptors,[8] IL-10 was designated as a type II cytokine, and indeed when its x-ray crystal was determined, IL-10 was found to be topologically related to IFNγ.[16] As noted previously, more recently a series of IL-10–related cytokines has been identified, including IL-19, IL-20, IL-22, IL-24, IL-26, IL-28A, IL-28B, and IL-29, and these are also designated as type II cytokines, with IL-28A, IL28B, and IL-29 also known as IFNλs. Among type II cytokines, IFNγ has helices similar to those of the type I short-chain helical cytokines, but its short helices that occupy the AB and CD loops positions exhibit the long-chain cytokine-like AB over CD topology. IL-10 and IFNαβ have long-chain structures.[8] Thus, the theme of short-chain and long-chain type I cytokines also extends to the IFNs and the IL-10 family of type II cytokines.

Type I IFNs signal through a receptor known as the type I IFN receptor.[388,392,394,396,397] The receptor consists of at least two chains.[402–405] In contrast to the α and β chain nomenclature typical for type I cytokine receptors, IFN receptor chains are officially denoted as IFNAR-1 (previously also denoted IFN-αR1, IFNAR1, and IFN-Rα) and IFNAR-2 (previously also known as IFNα/β receptor, IFNαR2, IFNAR2, and IFNRβ).[406] IFNAR-2 has both short and long forms as well as a soluble form.[407] The long form has a much larger cytoplasmic domain and serves a more important role in signal transduction. Whereas IFNAR-1 cannot bind IFNα, IFNAR-2 binds with low affinity, and the combination of both chains results in high-affinity binding[407] and function. As detailed in the following, IFNAR-1 binds the Janus family tyrosine kinase TYK2, whereas IFNAR-2 binds JAK1. In addition to these cellular receptors, it is interesting that vaccinia virus and other orthopoxviruses encode a soluble form of type I IFN receptor that is related to the IL-1 receptors and that is capable of binding IFNα, IFNβ, and IFNω.[408,409] This form of IFN receptor is therefore not a member of the type II cytokine family but instead is an Ig superfamily protein. IFNαs are typically species specific, although IFNα8 is a human type I IFN that can bind to the mouse receptor. IFNAR-1 confers species specificity of binding. As noted previously, type I IFNs are induced by viral infection. Infection with viruses results in the generation of nonself RNAs in the cell, which are recognized by retinoic acid inducible gene-I (RIG-I)–like receptors, which include RIG-I, MDA5, and LGP2, each of which contains a helicase domain. Retinoic acid inducible gene-I–like receptors are essential for the production of tpe I interferons as well as IL-6, and cells lacking both RIG-I and MDA5 are completely defective in the production of type I IFNs.[410]

IFNγ was first recognized in 1965 as immune IFN, named as IFNγ in 1980, cloned in 1982, and then confirmed to be the same as primary macrophage activating factor.[388,397,411–413] In addition to its antiviral activity, IFNγ also has a range of actions on proinflammatory and anti-inflammatory host responses.[393] For example, IFNγ can prime macrophages to manifest antimicrobial and antitumor effects. Moreover, following IL-12–mediated differentiation of Th1 cells, IFNγ is a major secreted product. This production is critical for host response to a range of infectious pathogens, including, for example, *T. gondii*. IFNγ inhibits the generation of Th2 cells as well as Th17 cells. IFNγ is produced by a range of cells, including T_{reg} cells and in this context appears to result in apoptosis of naive cells and Th2 effector T cells. It is produced by NK cells and can mediate NK-dependent lysis of tumor cells, augment IgG2a isotype switching of B cells, and activate DCs. Moreover, IFNγ can either contribute to disease protection or can be protective, depending on the context.[413] Finally, IFNγ- or anti-IFNγ–based therapy are being tried in a range of conditions.[314]

IFNγ is encoded by four exons on chromosome 12. IFNγ forms a functional homodimer with an apparent molecular weight of 34 kDa, whereas little of the monomeric form can be detected and it is not biologically active. Each IFNγ monomer has six α helices, four of which resemble the short-chain helical cytokines, and there is no β sheet structure. The subunits interact in an antiparallel fashion. In contrast to the ability of many different cells to produce IFNα, IFNγ is more restricted, with it being produced primarily by NK cells, CD8+ T cells, and the Th1 subclass of CD4+ T cells.[388] Many signals, including antigen stimulation, IL-12, and IL-18, can induce the production of IFNγ. IFNγ exerts its effects through specific receptors that are expressed on all types of cells except erythrocytes. Interestingly, even platelets express IFNγ receptors, raising the possibility that they can serve a function in transporting IFNγ in the circulation.[388] The functional human receptor consists of two chains[414]: IFNGR-1, formerly also denoted IFNγR1 or IFNγRα[406,415] a 90 kDa protein whose gene is located on human chromosome 6q16 to 6q22 and mouse chromosome 10,[412] and IFNGR-2, also denoted as IFNγRβ,[416,417] located on human chromosome 21q22.1 and mouse chromosome 16.[412] IFNGR-1 is required for ligand binding, whereas IFNGR-2 plays a role in signaling. JAK1 associates with the Leu-Pro-Lys-Ser sequence in the membrane proximal region of the cytoplasmic domain of IFNGR-1,[418] whereas JAK2 binds to IFNGR-2.[419] The fact that IFNγ is a homodimer explains how its binding induces the homodimerization of IFNGR-1, which then allows the recruitment of IFNGR-2. Thus, the functional IFNγ receptor is believed to contain two molecules each of IFNGR-1 and IFNGR-2. Normal IFNγ production is dependent on IL-12, and defective IFNγ signaling is associated with failure to appropriately clear mycobacterial and other infections (discussed subsequently).

Both type I and type II IFNs are important for cancer immunoediting, a process in which neoplastic growth is suppressed by the immune system and tumor immunogenicity is shaped. IFNγ can suppress tumor development, but type I IFNs are required to initiate the antitumor response, at least in part via actions on DCs.[420]

Interleukin-10, a Type II Cytokine, and the Related Cytokines Interleukin-19, Interleukin-20, Interleukin-22, Interleukin-24, Interleukin-26, Interleukin-28A, Interleukin-28B, and Interleukin-29

IL-10 is a type II cytokine that originally was identified as cytokine synthesis inhibitory factor,[380,421,422] produced by Th2 cells. However, it then was observed to be produced by T_{reg} cells as well, and it is now clear that IL-10 is much

more broadly expressed, including by Th1, Th17 cells, B cells, macrophages, NKT, NK, T_{reg}, monocytes, and myeloid DCs but not plasmacytoid DCs, keratinocytes, as well as mast cells and eosinophils.[423,424] IL-10 production by T_{reg} cells helps to explain their suppressive effects, and IL-10 production by T_{reg} cells is required for their suppression of Th17-mediated inflammation.[425] The IL-10 gene contains five exons and is located on chromosome 1 in both mice and humans.[422] IL-10 has an open reading frame of 178 amino acids, including the signal peptide, and the mature protein is 18 kDa. Human IL-10 receptor maps to 11q23.3. IL-10 can inhibit the production of a number of cytokines, including IL-2, IL-3, IFNγ, GM-CSF, and TNF-α. Production of IL-10 is substantially dependent on the transcription factor E4BP4 (also called NFIL-3).[426] IL-10 production is induced by pathogen-derived products, with TLR2 signaling being critical for its induction by antigen-presenting cells and macrophages, although TLR-independent induction of IL-10 has also been observed.[423] Interestingly, IL-21 has been shown to be a potent inducer of IL-10 and to mediate IL-27 and part of the IL-6–mediated induction of IL-10 as well.[189,190] IL-10 inhibits monocyte/macrophage/DC-dependent T-cell proliferation, in part, by markedly decreasing synthesis of a variety of cytokines, expression of costimulatory molecules, and chemokines, to name just some of its inhibitory effects.[380] In addition to these indirect effects on T cells, IL-10 can exert direct stimulatory effects on thymocytes and T cells in vitro and promote the development of B1 cells and activity of NK cells. IL-10–deficient mice develop a form of inflammatory bowel disease that is similar to Crohn disease.[422,427] Interestingly, the BCRF1 protein that is encoded by Epstein-Barr virus is very similar to IL-10 and shares many of its biologic properties as a macrophage "deactivating" factor and as a costimulator of proliferation of B cells.[428] The Epstein-Barr virus IL-10 homologue is a selective agonist, although its binding to the IL-10 receptor is somewhat impaired.[428] IL-10 is a major inhibitor of Th1 functions.[422] Although it was originally suggested that IL-10 might also favor Th2 development, IL-4 is the major mediator of Th2 cell development, and IL-10 instead plays a major role in limiting and terminating inflammatory responses.[422]

The IL-10 receptor is most closely related to IFN receptors, making it a type II cytokine receptor[429,430] and corresponding to the close structural relationship of IL-10 to IFNγ. The receptor for IL-10 consists of an IL-10R1 chain and IL-10R2[422]; this latter protein is the same as CRF2-4, which was first identified as an "orphan" IFN receptor family member that is located on chromosome 21 within 35 kb of IFNGR-2.[431,432] The major STAT protein used by IL-10 is STAT3.[423]

A series of IL-10–related cytokines have been been identified, including IL-19, IL-20, IL-22, IL-24, IL-26, IL-28A, IL-28B, and IL-29.[379,424,433–437] IL-19 was discovered as a gene that was induced in LPS-stimulated monocytes. IL-19 has been suggested to potentially be involved in the pathogenesis of chronic inflammatory diseases, such as psoriasis. Like IL-19, IL-20 is produced by myeloid cells; it was also found to be produced by epidermal cells, with overexpression resulting in aberrant epidermal differentiation. IL-20 is believed to have a role in psoriasis, and in psoriatic skin, expression of IL-20 is primarily detected in DCs.[379,438] IL-20 also appears to contribute to rheumatoid arthritis, atherosclerosis, and stroke; recently, IL-20 has been implicated in bone loss, with elevated IL-20 in patients with osteopenia and osteoporosis in in ovariectomized mice. Moreover, IL-20R1–deficient mice have increased bone density as did treatment with anti–IL-20.[439]

IL-22 was found as an IL-9–induced cytokine that can in turn induce acute-phase reactant production by hepatocytes and accordingly that it might be involved in inflammatory responses. It was first observed to be produced by activated Th1 cells but was subsequently noted to be more broadly produced by CD4+ and CD8+ T cells, NK cells, lymphoid tissue-inducer cells and mucosal RORγt+NKp46+ cells in humans and mice,[440–442] and to be produced by Th17 cells. IL-22 is often coexpressed with IL-10, and STAT3, the Notch pathway, and the aryl hydrocarbon receptor promoter production of these cytokines; in contrast, TGF-β, ICOS, and IL-27 augment IL-10 production yet inhibit IL-22.[424] IL-22 mediates cross talk between leukocytes and tissue epithelia, with target cells primarily in the digestive and respiratory systems, but it also can act on keratinocytes, can promote innate immunity,[443] and can cooperate with IL-17A to effect epithelial and healing responses. In particular, IL-22 can contribute to epithelial resistance to injury after microbial infection of the gut or lungs, and thereby may play a role in host defense and tissue repair.[442] Interestingly, the transcription factor c-Maf mediates suppression of IL-22 production by TGF-β.[444]

IL-24 was originally discovered as melanoma differentiation-associated antigen 7. IL-24 is induced in peripheral blood mononuclear cells by mitogen stimulation and is produced not only by Th2 cells but also by myeloid cells. Overexpression of IL-24 can induce apoptosis in a wide range of tumor cells, including, for example, melanoma and malignant gliomas, and infection with adenoviral-drive melanoma differentiation-associated antigen 7 can sensitize tumors to ionizing radiation.[380] Like IL-19, IL-20, and IL-22, IL-24 is expressed in psoriatic but not normal skin and like these other cytokines, functional receptors are highly expressed on keratinocytes. IL-10, IL-19, IL-20, IL-22, and IL-24 are all increased in synovial fluid cells in rheumatoid arthritis and thus are potential mediators of this autoimmune disease. IL-20 and IL-22 in particular may be associated with lupus.[379]

IL-26 was originally discovered as AK155. Relatively little is known regarding the function of IL-26.

IL-28A and IL-28B (IFNλ1 and IFNλ2) and IL-29 (IFNλ3) are also called type III IFNs and are induced in plasmacytoid DCs by viral infection and exhibit antiviral activity, analogous to type I IFNs; nevertheless, they bind to a receptor consisting of IL-10R2 and IL-28R[445] and differ in terms of potency and kinetics from IFNα.[379] IL-28A, IL-28B, and IL-29 induce relatively weak antiviral responses, and the IL-28R chain is relatively restricted in its expression, as compared to the IFNα receptor. IL-28A appears to enhance antiviral activity induced by TLR3 and TLR9 and to be important for host defense to influenza A.[379] Interestingly, the genes encoding IL-10, IL-19, IL-20, and IL-24 colocalize at human chromosome 1q32, whereas those encoding IL-22

and IL-26 are at 12q14 to 12q15 near the *IFNG* gene, and IL-28 and IL-29 are at 19q13.[380,446] Thus, these type II cytokines can be subdivided into three different groups based at least in part on chromosome localization.

Overall, IL-10 family cytokines are diverse and can be subdivided into the IL-19, IL-20, IL-22, IL-24, and IL-26 subfamily that acts on tissue epithelial cells and in the case of IL-20 in wound healing, whereas IL-28A, IL-28A, and IL-29 exhibit antiviral activity and are more IFN-like in their biology.[379]

SPECIES SPECIFICITY OF CYTOKINES

There are no general rules for the species specificity of human and mouse cytokines, and how the cytokines and their receptor chains have coevolved. To provide illustrative examples of each situation, human IL-2 can stimulate both human and mouse cells, whereas mouse IL-2 exhibits little action on human cells.[59] Conversely, human IL-12 does not work on mouse cells, whereas mouse IL-12 is biologically active on both mouse and human cells.[311] This selective property of IL-12 is dependent on the species origin of p35. Finally, IL-4 exhibits rather strict specificity so that human and mouse IL-4 only induce responses on human and mouse cells, respectively.[92,93] As noted previously, IFNαs are generally specifies specific, although IFNα8 is not. In addition to these examples, varying degrees of relative species specificity have been demonstrated, depending on the cytokine. Thus, a cytokine may or may not be restricted in its specificity to its own species, and if it does occur, cross-species activity may have attenuated potency.

SIGNALING THROUGH INTERFERON AND CYTOKINE RECEPTORS

Our understanding of signaling through IFN and cytokine receptors has tremendously increased in the past few years. Multiple signaling pathways/molecules have been observed for various cytokines. Collectively, these include the JAK-STAT pathway, IRF family proteins, Ras/mitogen-activated protein (MAP) kinase pathway, Src and Zap70 and related proteins, PI 3-kinase, IRS-1 and IRS-2, and phosphatases. Each of these pathways will be discussed in turn. The JAK-STAT pathways are important for both type I and IFNs/type II cytokines, while the IRF proteins play central functions more so for the IFNs than type I cytokines.

OVERVIEW OF JAKS AND STATS

The JAK-STAT pathway[30,355,397,447–449] is particularly exciting in that it serves as a rapid mechanism by which signals can be transduced from the membrane to the nucleus. JAK kinases are known as Janus family tyrosine kinases, and the acronym "STAT" denotes signal transducer and activator of transcription. STAT proteins are substrates for JAK kinases. A tremendous amount of information is now available on JAKs and STATs that demonstrate their importance related to development, differentiation, proliferation, cellular transformation, and tumorigenesis.

JAKs

The JAK kinases are 116 to 140 kDa, and comprise approximately 1150 amino acids.[355,397] The seven regions of conserved sequences in JAK kinases, denoted JH1 to JH7, are depicted in Figure 25.6. One of the hallmark features of these kinases is that in addition to the presence of a catalytic tyrosine kinase domain (JH1), there is also a pseudokinase region (JH2). The name Janus kinase reflects the two faces of the mythological Roman god, with one face representing the true kinase and the other the pseudokinase. Although the JH nomenclature was used historically, it has obvious limitations in that except for the JH1 catalytic and JH2 pseudokinase domains, and it remains unclear whether or not the other JH regions correspond to discrete domains. Modeling has indicated five important regions, including an N-terminal domain, a FERM (4.1, ezrin, radixin, moesin) domain, and SH2, kinase-like (which spans two of the JH domains), and kinase domains.[450]

There are four mammalian JAK kinases, JAK1,[451] JAK2,[452] JAK3,[453,454] and TYK2,[455] each of which was identified as part

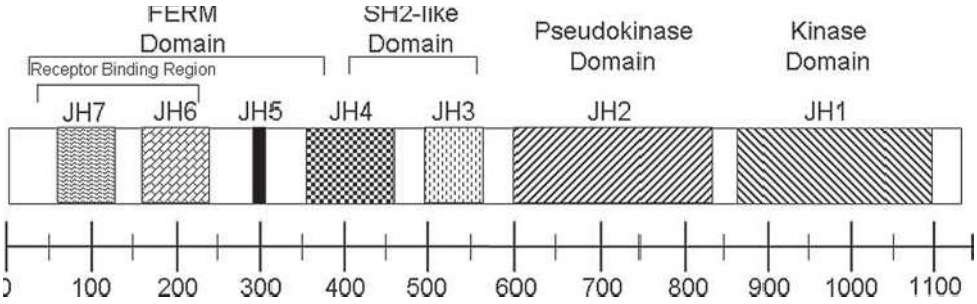


FIG. 25.6. Schematic of JAK Kinases. Shown are the locations of the seven JH domains. JH1 is the catalytic domain. JH2 is the pseudokinase domain, the presence of which prompted the naming of this family as Janus family tyrosine kinases. As noted in the text, the JH nomenclature has limitations and in fact masks the presence of an SH2 domain that spans parts of the JH4 and JH3 domains. Also shown is the conserved tyrosine (Y1007 in JAK2) whose phosphorylation is required for maximal catalytic activity.

TABLE 25.12 Features of Janus Family Kinases

Kinase	Inducible versus Constitutive	Size	Chromosomal Location (H/M)
JAK1	Constitutive	135 kDa	1p31.3/4
JAK2	Constitutive	130 kDa	9p23–24/19
JAK3	Inducible	116 kDa	19p13/8
TYK2	Constitutive	140 kDa	19p13.2/9

of a study intended to identify new kinases.[355] At least one JAK kinase is activated by every IFN and cytokine, and some cytokines activate two or three JAK kinases.[355,397,447,448] Table 25.12 lists a number of features of each JAK kinase, whereas Table 25.13 summarizes the JAK kinases that are activated by a variety of cytokines.

Because JAK1, JAK2, and TYK2 are ubiquitously expressed, each cell type expresses either three or in some cases all four JAK kinases (eg, lymphoid cells that also express JAK3). The JAK kinases that are activated by a specific cytokine are those that can bind to its receptor's cytoplasmic domain. JAK kinases physically bind to the membrane proximal Box 1/Box 2 region of the cytoplasmic domains,[454–459] and the N-terminal region of the JAK is required for this function.[460–462] In cytokine receptors, the Box 1 region is proline rich,[26] suggesting that JAK kinases may have SH3-like domains in their N-terminal regions to mediate these interactions. As each cytokine or IFN receptor is a homodimer, heterodimer, or higher order oligomer, it is reasonable to assume that at least two JAK molecules (either two molecules of one JAK or one molecule each of two different JAKs) will be activated, as one JAK will be associated with each receptor chain. In accord with their ubiquitous expression, JAK1, JAK2, and TYK2 are activated by a variety of different sets of cytokines (see Tables 25.12 and 25.13). For example, JAK1 is activated not only by type I and II IFNs but also by the γ_c family of cytokines (eg, IL-2, IL-4, IL-7, IL-9, IL-15, and IL-21), whereas JAK2 is activated not only by IFNγ but also by growth hormone, Epo, prolactin, and the hematopoietic cytokines, IL-3, IL-5, and GM-CSF.[355,447] TYK2 is somewhat more restricted in that it is activated by IFNα/β and IL-12/IL-23; the significance of its activation by gp130 family cytokines is less clear. Interestingly, JAK1, JAK2, and TYK2 are recruited by each of the cytokine receptors that share gp130 as a signal transducing molecule, raising the question as to whether these cytokines require all three JAK kinases for optimal function or whether any one or two is/are sufficient. At least for IL-6, JAK1 is vital,[463,464] whereas the importance of JAK2 and TYK2 is less clear.

JAK3 is different from the other JAK kinases in that it is much more inducible. Moreover, JAK3 is only activated by cytokines whose receptors contain γ_c.[30,45] Interestingly, each cytokine whose receptor contains γ_c activates not only JAK3 but also JAK1. The basis for the activation of both JAK1 and JAK3 by IL-2, IL-4, IL-7, IL-9, IL-15, and IL-21 is that JAK1 associates with each of the distinctive signaling chains (IL-2Rβ, IL-4Rα, IL-7Rα, IL-9Rα, and IL-21R), whereas JAK3 associates with γ_c.[30,45] Although this could be a coincidental result of coevolution of these cytokine systems, these observations raise the possibility that JAK1 is the JAK kinase that most efficiently functionally cooperates with JAK3.

Given the wide range of cytokines that activate any particular JAK kinase and that in some cases multiple cytokines can activate the same set of JAKs, it is clear that the JAK kinases by themselves do not determine signaling specificity. For example, IL-2, IL-4, IL-7, IL-9, IL-15, and IL-21 all activate JAK1 and JAK3 but induce a range of actions. Moreover, JAK2 is the only JAK kinase that is activated by growth hormone and erythropoietin, cytokines with different target cells and biologic functions. Interestingly, JAK2 is the JAK that interacts with all cytokine receptors that form homodimers. Given that homodimeric receptors are likely the oldest cytokine receptors in evolution, this suggests that JAK2 might be the "primordial" JAK kinase from which others evolved.

TABLE 25.13 Cytokines and the JAKs They Activate

Cytokine	JAK Kinase(s) Activated
IFNα/β	JAK1, TYK2
IFNγ	JAK1, JAK2
Growth hormone	JAK2
Prolactin	JAK2
Erythopoietin	JAK2
Thrombopoietin	JAK2
IL-10	JAK1, TYK2
IL-12, IL-23	JAK2, TYK2
G-CSF	JAK1, JAK2
γ_c family	
IL-2, IL-4,[a] IL-7, IL-9, IL-15, IL-21	JAK1, JAK3
β_c family	
IL-3, IL-5, GM-CSF	JAK2, ?JAK1
gp130 family	
IL-6, IL-11, CNTF, LIF, OSM, CT-1	JAK1, JAK2, TYK2
TSLP	JAK1, JAK2

CNTF, ciliary neurotrophic factor; CT-1, cardiotrophin-1; G-CSF, granulocyte-colony stimulating factor; GM-CSF, granulocyte macrophage-colony stimulating factor; IFN, interferon; IL, interleukin; LIF, leukemia inhibitory factor; OSM, oncostatin M; TSLP, thymic stromal lymphopoietin.

[a]Note that IL-4 activates JAK1 and JAK3 when it acts through the type I IL-4 receptor (IL-4Rα + γ_c, found for example on T cells). However, JAK3 is not activated when IL-4 signals through the type II IL-4 receptors (IL-4Rα + IL-13Rα1, a form of receptor that is expressed on a number of non-T cells, including fibroblasts).

Importance of JAK Kinases in Signaling

In addition to the activation of JAK kinases by multiples cytokines and IFNs, a variety of other data indicate their importance for signaling. One of the vital series of experiments that led to the establishment of the critical role of JAK kinases in IFN signaling involved a group of mutant cell lines that were defective for IFN signaling, but wherein signaling could be rescued by genetic complementation.[397] Defective signaling in response to IFNα and IFNβ was found in a mutant fibroblast cell line (U1 cells) lacking TYK2; defective signaling in response to IFNα,

IFNβ, and IFNγ was found in a mutant cell line lacking JAK1 (U4 cells), and defective IFNγ signaling was found in cells lacking JAK2.[397] A variety of other data have indicated the importance of JAK kinases in cytokine signaling pathways. First, dominant negative JAK2 inhibits signaling by erythropoietin and growth hormone,[465,466] while a dominant negative JAK3 inhibits signaling in response to IL-2[467]; as noted previoulsy, JAK1 is vital for IL-6 signaling. Second, humans[468,469] and mice[470–472] deficient in JAK3 exhibit developmental and signaling defects. Third, humans with an activating mutation in JAK2 develop polycythemia vera,[473] and a JAK2 inhibitor inhibited the growth of acute lymphoblastic leukemia cells in vitro.[474] Fourth, a patient with mutation in TYK2 developed a form of immunodeficiency.[475] Fifth, in Drosophila, the *hopscotch* gene encodes a JAK kinase, wherein loss-of-function alleles result in lethality and decreased proliferation, whereas a gain-of-function allele, *hopscotch*$^{Tumorous\text{-}lethal}$ results in melanotic tumors and hypertrophy of the hematopoietic organs.[476,477] Sixth, in zebrafish, JAK1 is vital for normal cell migration and anterior specification.[478] Seventh, as discussed in the following, JAK kinases are constitutively activated in many cell lines infected with a number of viruses, including HTLV-I, v-Abl, spleen focus-forming virus, and with v-Src.[479–482] These data together underscore the vital roles of JAKs in cytokine signaling. Depending on the function of the particular cytokine (eg, development, differentiation, or proliferation), the particular JAK kinases potentially may be involved in a variety of processes, and when dysregulated, in at least certain settings, they appear to contribute to cellular transformation.

JAK3 Mutations Result in an Autosomal Recessive Form of Severe Combined Immunodeficiency that is Indistinguishable from X-Linked Severe Combined Immunodeficiency

A very large number of different mutations in γ_c have been observed in X-linked SCID. As might be expected, in cases where it has been examined, amino acid substitutions in the extracellular domain result in defective cytokine binding. In contrast, mutations or truncations in the γ_c cytoplasmic domain result in defective signaling. Analysis of a family in which a number of males exhibit a moderate form of X-linked combined immunodeficiency revealed that this disease also resulted from a mutation in γ_c[41] (Leu 271 → Gln) that resulted in a decrease, but not total loss of JAK3 association, in contrast to the loss of JAK3 interaction seen with mutations in the γ_c cytoplasmic domain that cause X-linked SCID. Thus, the severity of the immunodeficiency inversely correlated with the degree of JAK3 activation.[30,45] Moreover, it was predicted that JAK3 was required for T-cell and NK-cell development, and that mutations in JAK3 might result in a clinical phenotype indistinguishable from that in X-linked SCID.[41] Indeed, this is the case in humans.[468,469] As one would hypothesize, many mutations in JAK3 have been identified.[355] Presumably, any mutation that interferes with its ability to interact with γ_c, with its catalytic activity, or with recruitment of substrates could result in clinical disease, ranging from moderate-to-severe immunodeficiency.

Analogous to the similarity of X-linked SCID and JAK3-deficient SCID, mice deficient in either γ_c or JAK3 also have indistinguishable phenotypes.[211,212,470–472] These in vivo data underscore the vital role of JAK3 in mediating γ_c-dependent functions and suggested that JAK3 is essential for most, if not all, γ_c functions. Some in vitro data indicate that γ_c may do more than to recruit JAK3,[467,483] and interestingly, γ_c can interact with calpain,[484] but the recruitment of JAK3 is clearly essential, and the defects in T-cell and NK-cell development associated with γ_c or JAK3 deficiency are indistinguishable. Because JAK3 deficiency is not clinically or phenotypically more severe than γ_c deficiency in humans and mice, it seems likely that γ_c is the major, if not only, protein with which JAK3 associates. Moreover, as had been predicted based on the association of γ_c with JAK3,[41] JAK3 inhibitors are immunosuppressive, and one JAK inhibitor has now been approved by the FDA.[485] Although JAK3 was suggested to associate with CD40,[486] a functional role for JAK3 in CD40 signaling has been questioned.[487] The phenotypes of mice lacking each of the four JAK kinases are summarized in Table 25.14.

JAK2 Mutations and Translocations

The JAK2V617F mutations has now been identified in most of patients with polycythemia vera,[473,488] some of whom have homozygous and some have heterozygous mutations. The homozygous patients had duplications of the mutated allele. This mutation results in a constitutively activated kinase and presumably confers factor-independent growth, something that has been demonstrated in transfected cell lines. Moreover, patients with polycythemia exhibit erythropoietin-independent BFU-E. Furthermore, the *JAK2* locus is involved in a chromosomal translocation to create the TEL-JAK2 protein that is causally related to a human leukemia,[489] further underscoring the relationship of JAK2 to the growth of hematopoietic cells.

TYK2 Mutations and Human Immunodeficiency

A mutation in TYK2 has now been identified in a patient with primary immunodeficiency.[475] The patient had clinical defects more severe than anticipated from TYK2-deficient mice, with increased susceptibility to viral infections and atypical mycobacterial infections and defective signaling in response to IL-23, IL-6, and IL-10. Additionally, the patient had hyper-IgE production, which perhaps corresponds to enhanced Th2 cell–mediated allergic inflammation in TYK2−/− mice.[490] Because this was a single patient, it remains to be determined if other individuals with TYK2 deficiency will have this full range of clinical problems.

ACTIVATION OF JAKS AND THE JAK-STAT PARADIGM

The paradigm of JAK-STAT activation is shown in Figure 25.7, which also shows activation of other pathways, such as the Ras-MAP kinase and PI 3-kinase/AKT/p70 S6

TABLE 25.14 Phenotypes of Mice Deficient in Type I and Type II Cytokines, Their Receptors, JAKs and STATs

Type I Cytokines and Their Receptors	
γ_c family	
IL-2[205,692,693]	Normal thymic and peripheral T-cell development. Decreased polyclonal T-cell responses in vitro, but more normal in vivo responses to pathogenic challenges. Autoimmunity with marked changes in levels of serum immunoglobulin isotypes. Ulcerative colitis–like inflammatory bowel disease.
IL-4[208,209]	Defective Th2 cytokine responses and class switch; defective IgG1 and IgE production.
IL-2/IL-4[210]	Some features of both IL-2 and IL-4 knockout mice. No gross abnormalities of T-cell development.
IL-7[104]	Greatly diminished thymic and peripheral T-cell development and B lymphopoiesis, resulting in profound lymphopenia.
IL-9[133,135]	No T-cell defect. Defect in pulmonary goblet cell hyperplasia and mastocytosis following challenge with *Schistoma mansoni* eggs. No defect in eosinophilia or granuloma formation.
IL-15[151]	Defective NK-cell development. Defect in CD8 memory T-cell homeostasis.
IL-2Rα[217]	Normal initial lymphoid development, but massive enlargement of peripheral lymphoid organs, polyclonal T- and B-cell expansions, and activated T cells, with impaired activation-induced cell death. Autoimmunity with increasing age, including hemolytic anemia and inflammatory bowel disease.
IL-2Rβ[218]	Severe autoimmunity including autoimmune hemolytic anemia. Death within approximately 3 months. Deregulated T-cell activation. Dysregulated B-cell differentiation and altered Ig profile.
γ_c[211,212]	Greatly diminished thymic development but double negative, double positives, and single positives all represented. Age-dependent accumulation of peripheral CD4+ T cells with an activated memory phenotype. Greatly diminished numbers of conventional B cells, although B1 cells are present. No NK cells or $\gamma\delta$ cells. Absent gut-associated lymphoid tissue, including Peyer patches.
IL-4Rα[694]	Like IL-4–/– mice, they have defective Th2 cytokine responses and class switch; defective IgG1 and IgE production. In addition, they cannot expel *Nippostrongylus brasiliensis*, presumably because of defective IL-13 signaling.
IL-7Rα[103]	Greatly diminished thymic and peripheral T-cell development and B lymphopoiesis, resulting in profound lymphopenia.
IL-15Rα[150]	Defective NK cell development. Defect in CD8 memory T-cell homeostasis.
IL-13[366,695]	Defective Th2 cell development and the ability to expel helminths. Impaired diarrhea to OVA.
IL-4/IL-13 DKO[695]	Produce almost no IgE, highly resistant to OVA-induced diarrhea.
IL-13Rα1[378,695]	Exacerbated Th2 responses, with diminished mortality after infection with *S. mansoni* and greater susceptibility to *N. brasiliensis*. However, partially impaired allergic diarrhea to OVA.
IL-21R[182,184]	Decreased IgG1, elevated IgE.
IL-21R/IL-4 DKO[182]	Panhypogammaglobulinemia (mimicks the B-cell phenotype in humans with XSCID).
β_c family	
IL-5[227]	Decreased basal level of eosinophils and defective induction of eosinophils following infectious challenge. Developmental defect in CD5+ B1 cells. Normal antibody and cytotoxic T-cell responses.
GM-CSF[696,697]	Normal basal hematopoiesis. Unexpected abnormalities of the lung; abnormal pulmonary homeostasis.
IL-3Rβ[698]	No defects (due to redundant function of β_c).
β_c[243,698]	Defective responses to IL-5 and GM-CSF but normal responses to IL-3 (due to redundant function of IL-3Rβ). Diminished eosinophils: both basal levels and in responses to infectious challenge. Unexpected abnormalities of the lung characterized by pulmonary proteinosis and reduced phagocytosis by alveolar macrophages. In other words, the defects are a combination of those found in the IL-5– and GM-CSF–deficient mice.
IL-3Rβ + β_c DKO[698]	Same phenotype as β_c-deficient mice, except that they cannot respond to IL-3.
gp130 family	
IL-6[699]	Impaired acute-phase responses following infection or tissue damage. Decreased numbers of hematopoietic progenitor cells.
gp130[700,701]	Embryonic lethal. Extreme hypoplastic development of the myocardium; although the ventricular wall was very thin, trabeculation within the ventricle chamber was normal. Hematologic abnormalities characterized by greatly reduced CFU-S and somewhat reduced CFU-Gm and BFU-E. Markedly diminished size of thymus and numbers of thymocytes. Reduced primordial germ cells in embryonic gonads. Diminished size of placenta.
LIF[702–704]	Decreased hematopoietic progenitor cells. Normal sympathetic neurons but deficient neurotransmitter switch in vitro. Defective blastocyst implantation.
LIFRβ[705,706]	Postnatal lethality. Normal hematopoietic and germ cell compartments but multiple neurologic, skeletal, placental, and metabolic defects. The greater severity than found in LIF-deficient mice reflects that LIFRβ is shared by several cytokines, including CNTF, LIF, OSM, and CT-1.
CNTF[707]	Progressive atrophy and loss of motor neurons.

TABLE 25.14 Phenotypes of Mice Deficient in Type I and Type II Cytokines, Their Receptors, JAKs and STATs *(Cont.)*

CNTFRα[708]	Severe motor neuron deficient resulting in perinatal mortality. The more severe phenotype than in CNTF-deficient mice was unexpected and suggests another cytokine may utilize CNTFRα.
IL-11Rα[709]	Blastocysts can implant but decidualization cannot occur, associated with failure of pregnancy. Fetal lethal phenotype.
IL-12 p40[710]	Impaired but not completely lacking in their ability to produce IFNγ and to mount a Th1 response in vivo. Elevated secretion of IL-4; normal production of IL-2 and IL-10. Substantially decreased CTL responses. Resistant to infection with intracellular pathogens.
IL-12Rβ1[711]	Defective IL-12 signaling. IL-2 but not IL-12 could augment NK activity. Defective IFNγ production in response to ConA or anti-CD3. Severe defect in Th1 differentiation.
IL-12 p35[175,712]	Selective loss of IL-12 function without loss of IL-23. Less resistant to infection than p40 and IL-12Rβ1 KO.
IL-12Rβ2[713]	Selective loss of IL-12 function without loss of IL-23. Less resistant to infection than p40 and IL-12Rβ1 KO.
IL-23 p19[175,714]	Complete resistance to EAE, defective DTH response.
EBI3[715]	Increased pathologic features of colitis and shorter survival than in p28 KO mice, indicating that IL-35 rather IL-27 is protective.
IL-27 p28[715]	Decreased pathologic features of colitis and longer survival than in EBI3 KO mice, indicating that IL-35 rather than IL-27 is protective.
Epo, Tpo, G-CSF, and M-CSF	
Epo[716]	Embryonic lethal. Complete block of fetal liver erythropoiesis, resulting in severe anemia, yet normal development of BFU-E and CFU-E progenitor cells.
EpoR[717]	Same as Epo-deficient mice.
TpoR[718]	Decreased megakaryocytes and platelets, but other hematopoietic cells are present in normal numbers.
G-CSF[719]	Neutropenia and impaired neutrophil mobility. Diminished granulocytes and macrophage precursors.
M-CSF[720,721]	Osteopetrosis, absence of teeth. Females are infertile, suggesting an unexpected role for M-CSF.
M-CSF + GM-CSF[721]	A combination of defects of both M-CSF and GM-CSF, with osteopetrosis and alveolar proteinosis. Early death of pneumonia.
Type II cytokines and their receptors	
IFNAR1[722–724]	Normal development. Defective immune defense against most viral infections tested, including lymphocytic choriomeningitis virus, Semliki Forest virus, Theiler virus, vesicular stomatitis virus. Normal resistance to *Listeria monocytogenes*, *Leishmania major*, *Mycobacterium bovis*, and *Mycobacterium avium*.
IFNγ[725–727]	Normal lymphoid development. Impaired resistance to *Listeria monocytogenes*, *Leishmania major*, *M. bovis*, and *M. avium*. Can mount curative responses to a number of viruses. CD4+ effector cells default to the Th2 pathway after infection with *Leishmania*. Succumb to infection with *Toxoplasmosis gondii*.
IFNGR1[723,724,728]	Normal lymphoid development. Impaired resistance to *Listeria monocytogenes, Leishmania major, M. bovis,* and *M. avium* Can mount curative responses to a number of viruses.
IL-10[422,427]	Normal lymphocyte development and antibody responses. Chronic enterocolitis, anemia, and growth retardation. Augmented inflammatory responses.
IL-19[729]	Increased susceptibility to dextran sulfate sodium–induced colitis, increased accumulation of macrophages, and production of proinflammatory cytokines and IFNγ.
IL-20R1[39]	Increased bone density with defective osteoclast differentiation.
IL-20R2[730]	Anti-TCR stimulation results in elevated IL-2 and IFNγ production, with increased antigen-specific CD4 and CD8 cells that produce IFNγ, but diminished IL-10.
IL-22[731]	Increased susceptibility to infection with *Citrobacter rodentium*, with augmented bacterial burden, intestinal epithelial damage, and mortality.
IL-28A[732]	Normal clearance of a range of viruses but diminished antiviral activity in response to TLR3 and TLR9 agonists. Expression of IL-28α on nonhematopoietic cells appears to be the most critical.
STATs and JAKs	
STAT1[557,558]	Defective responses to both type I and type II IFNs. Defective response to certain viruses and bacterial antigens.
STAT2[559]	Defective signaling in response to type I IFNs; interestingly, the defect in not as severe in STAT2-deficient macrophages as it is in STAT2-deficient fibroblasts.
STAT3[560–564]	Embryonic lethal. Embryos implant but cannot grow. The fact that this phenotype is even more severe than that seen with gp130 suggests a role for STAT3 via a gp130-independent cytokine. By Cre-lox methodology, *STAT3* was also selectively targeted in T cells, which exhibit defective IL-2–induced proliferation that correlates with a defect in IL-2–induced IL-2Rα expression; as expected, T cells also exhibit defective signaling in response to IL-6. *STAT3*-deficient neutrophils and macrophages show defective IL-10 signaling. STAT3 is also essential for normal involution of the mammary epithelium, for wound healing, and for normal hair cycle processes. *STAT3*-deficient DCs exhibit defective Flt3L-dependent expansion of DCs.

(continued)

TABLE 25.14 Phenotypes of Mice Deficient in Type I and Type II Cytokines, Their Receptors, JAKs and STATs *(Cont.)*

STAT4[566,567]	Defective Th1 development. Essentially, the same phenotype as in IL-12–deficient mice, including defective IL-12–mediated boosting of NK cell cytolytic activity.
STAT5A[511,571]	Defective lobuloalveolar development in the mammary gland, a syndrome resulting from defective prolactin signaling. Defective IL-2–induced IL-2Rα expression and associated defects in IL-2–induced T-cell proliferation. Defective superantigen-induced expansion of Vβ8 T cells. Defective antigen-induced recruitment of eosinophils into the lung as well as antigen-induced IgG1 production.
STAT5B[512,572]	Defective growth analogous to Laron dwarfism, a disease of defective growth hormone signaling. Defective IL-2–induced IL-2Rα expression. More severe defects in IL-2–induced T-cell proliferation and NK-cell proliferation. Defective antigen-induced recruitment of eosinophils into the lung as well as antigen-induced IgG1 production. Defective NK cytolytic activity.
Partial STAT5A/STAT5B[513,514]	Defective signaling in response to prolactin and growth hormone. Absent NK-cell development. Major defect in T-cell proliferation and TCR signaling. Anemia.
Complete STAT5A/STAT5B[573]	Fetal lethality; absent T-cell development.
STAT6[568–570]	Defective Th2 development. Essentially, the same phenotype as IL-4–deficient mice. Defective B-cell proliferation.
JAK1[463]	Perinatal lethality, with defective signaling by gp130-dependent cytokines (IL-6, IL-11, CNTF, OSM, LIF, CT-1, and NNT-1/BSF-3). Defective signaling by γ_c-dependent cytokines (IL-2, IL-4, IL-7, IL-9, IL-15, IL-21; of these, IL-2 and IL-7 were formally evaluated).
JAK2[733,734]	Fetal lethality with profound anemia due to defective signaling in response to Epo.
JAK3[470–472]	Very similar and possibly identical to γ_c-deficient mice. Defective signaling in response to γ_c-dependent cytokines (IL-2, IL-4, IL-7, IL-9, IL-15, IL-21). Greatly diminished T cells in thymus and spleen, but then age-dependent peripheral expansion of CD4+ T cells. Unlike humans with JAK3 mutations, Jak3-deficient mice have greatly diminished B-cell numbers as well.
TYK2[735–737]	Mice lacking TYK2 exhibit diminished signaling in response to IFNα/β and IL-12, but it is not abrogated. Primarily STAT3 activation is diminished, even though STAT1/STAT2 and STAT4, respectively, are the STAT proteins that are primarily activated by IFNα/β and IL-12. Additionally, there are diminished responses to IFNγ and IL-18.

BFU, burst forming unit; BSF-3, B cell-stimulating factor-3; CD, cluster of differentiation; CFU, colony forming unit; CNTF, ciliary neurotrophic factor; CT-1, cardiotrophin-1; CTL, cytotoxic T lymphocyte; DC, dendritic cell; DKO, double knockout; DTH, delayed type hypersensitivity; EAE, experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis; Epo, erythropoietin; G-CSF, granulocyte-colony stimulating factor; GM-CSF, granulocyte macrophage-colony stimulating factor; IFN, interferon; Ig, immunoglobulin; IL, interleukin; KO, knockout; LIF, leukemia inhibitory factor; M-CSF, macrophage-colony stimulating factor; NK, natural killer; NNT-1, novel neurotrophin-1; OSM, oncostatin M; STAT, signal transducer and activator of transcription; TCR, T-cell receptor; Th, T helper; Tpo, thrombopoietin; XSCID, X-linked severe combined immunodeficiency.

kinase pathways. Following IFN or cytokine engagement, dimerization or higher order oligomerization of receptor complexes is induced. This in turn allows the juxtapositioning of JAK kinases, facilitating transphosphorylation and activation. In receptors with only two chains, the direct transphosphorylation of one JAK by the other seems likely to occur. In more complex receptors, such as the IFNγ system, because the receptor is a heterotetramer with two IFNGR-1 chains that each bind JAK1 and two IFNGR-2 chains that each bind JAK2, it is not clear if JAK1 and JAK2 transactivate each other or if one of the JAK kinases plays a dominant role. Indeed, one study suggests that JAK2 may phosphorylate both itself and JAK1, thereby increasing the catalytic activities of both kinases.[491] JAK1 in turn then phosphorylates IFNGR-1, allowing the recruitment of STAT1. In this model, it is additionally suggested that JAK2 phosphorylates STAT1.[491] Interestingly, a kinase-dead mutant of JAK1 was able to mediate the induction of certain IFNγ-induced genes, indicating a potential "structural" role for JAK1, but catalytically active JAK1 was essential for the establishment of the antiviral state,[491] emphasizing the essential role of both JAK1 and JAK2 for normal IFNγ function.

The previous discussion assumes that transphosphorylation of JAK kinases is a mechanism for the amplification of catalytic activity. Unless other kinases are involved, however, implicit to this idea is that the JAK kinases themselves must exhibit some basal activity that is amplified to a higher level by autophosphorylation or transphosphorylation. It is reasonable to speculate that both models may be operative, depending on the system. Consistent with JAK kinases being activated by phosphorylation, mutagenesis of a critical tyrosine in TYK2[492] or JAK2[493] (eg, tyrosine 1007 in the case of JAK2) in the activation loop of the kinase domain inhibits activity. It is also conceivable that phosphorylation of other tyrosines on the JAKs may create appropriate motifs for the recruitment of additional signaling molecules.

The function of the pseudokinase domain remains unclear. No other metazoan protein tyrosine kinases contain such a domain. The JH2 lacks the third glycine in the critical Gly-X-Gly-X-X-Gly motif, is missing an aspartic acid that serves as the proton acceptor that is typically conserved in the catalytic loop of both tyrosine and serine kinases, and is missing the conserved phenylalanine in the Asp-Phe-Glu motif that binds adenosine triphosphate[355] together, pre-

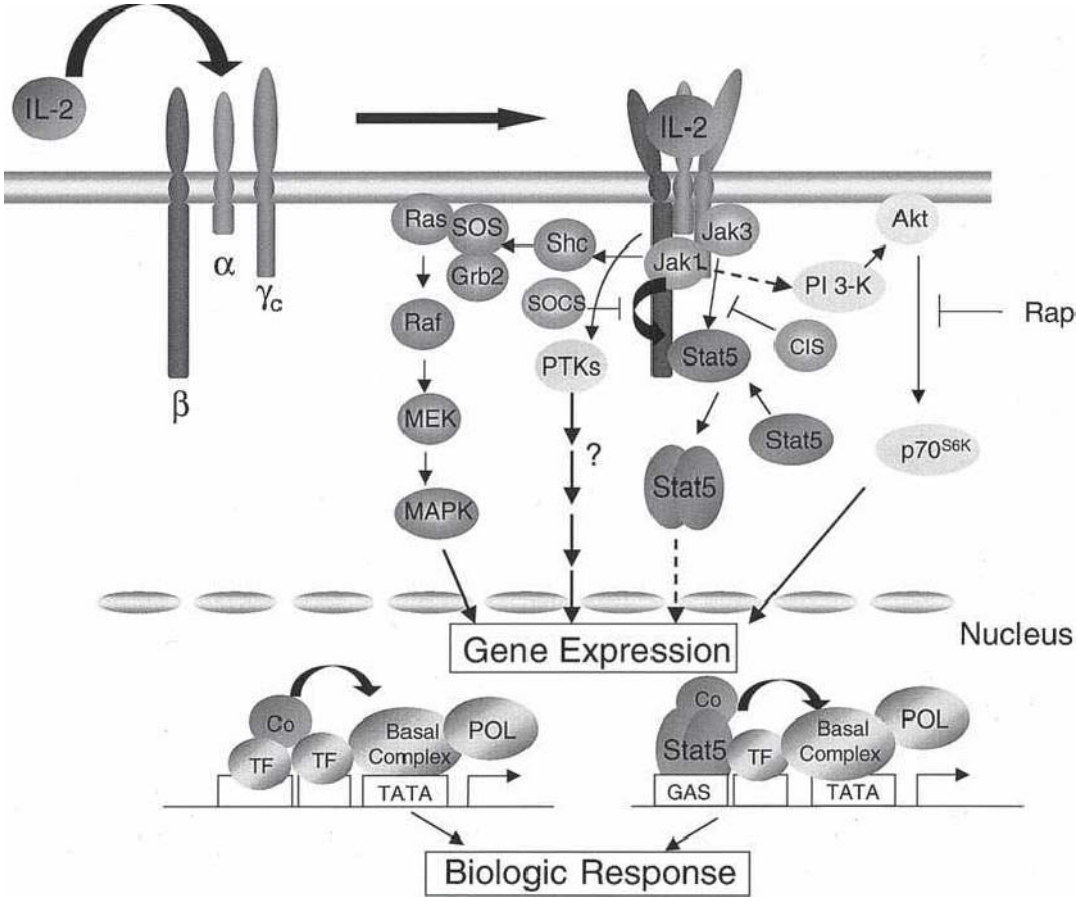


FIG. 25.7. Schematic of Cytokine Signaling Showing Multiple Signaling Pathways Activated by Interleukin (IL)-2. Shown is the association of JAK1 and JAK3 with different chains of the receptor. Activation of JAK kinases results in tyrosine phosphorylation of IL-2Rβ. This allows the docking of STAT5 proteins via their SH2 domain. The STATs themselves are tyrosine phosphorylated, dimerize, and translocate to the nucleus where they modulate expression of target genes. The schematic also indicates that another phosphotyrosine mediates recruitment of SHC, which then can couple to the Ras/Raf/MEK/mitogen-activated protein kinase pathway. Also shown is the important phosphatidyl inositol 3-kinase pathway. These and other pathways are activated by many type I cytokines.

sumably explaining the lack of catalytic function of the JH2 pseudokinase domain.[452] Despite the lack of catalytic activity, there are data in support of vital functions for this region. While the kinase domain alone can act as an active kinase, it is interesting that a mutation in the JAK kinase JH2 domain can hyperactivate the Drosophila (*hop*$^{Tum\text{-}l}$/DSTAT) JAK-STAT pathway, and that the corresponding Glu695 to Lys mutation in mouse JAK2 also resulted in increased autophosphorylation of JAK2 and phosphorylation of STAT5 in transfected cells.[494] Moreover, the JH2 domain may play an important role in mediating the interaction of JAKs with STAT proteins.[495]

Given that JAK kinases are associated with a wide range of IFN and cytokine receptors, it was predicted that JAKs would mediate signals involved in multiple processes. These include important roles in development (as demonstrated by the lack of T-cell and NK-cell development associated with JAK3 deficiency, a defect at least partially due to defective signaling in response to IL-7 and IL-15), signaling in response to cytokines that are mitogenic growth factors (eg, IL-2, IL-3, etc.), and in the antiviral response (IFNs). Studies in zebrafish revealed not only a role for JAK1 in early vertebrate development but also revealed that during early development JAK1 kinase was exclusively of maternal origin.[478] These developmental roles for JAK1 in zebrafish are consistent with the importance of a JAK kinase in early Drosophila development as well.[496]

SIGNAL TRANSDUCER AND ACTIVATOR OF TRANSCRIPTION PROTEINS ARE SUBSTRATES FOR JAKS THAT AT LEAST IN PART HELP DETERMINE SPECIFICITY

Given that there are only four JAK kinases but scores of cytokines, it is clear that JAKs by themselves cannot fully determine specificity. Indeed, different cytokines with different actions activate the same JAKs. One level of specificity comes from the same JAKs having different substrates, de-

pending on the receptor. The best characterized substrates for JAKs are the STAT proteins,[355,447,448] and these appear to provide some, but not all of the specificity, particularly given that there are only seven STAT proteins. Among the mutant cell lines with defects in IFN signaling, in addition to the ones with defects in JAKs noted previously, others were defective in STAT proteins, providing perhaps the earliest data proving a vital role for STAT proteins in signaling in response to IFNs.

STAT proteins are classically considered to be latent transcription factors that initially exist in the cytosol but then must be activated by phosphorylation, with subsequent translocation to the nucleus. STATs were first discovered as factors that bound to the promoters of interferon-inducible genes. The seven mammalian STAT proteins are STAT1,[497] STAT2,[498] STAT3,[499,500] STAT4,[501,502] STAT5A,[503–507] STAT5B,[505,507,508] and STAT6.[509] Table 25.15 summarizes the cytokines that activate each of the STATs. Additionally, some STATs (eg, STAT3) are known to have more than one isoform with distinct functions.[510] Although the STATs conserve a reasonable level of homology, STAT5A and STAT5B are unusually closely related, being 91% identical at the amino acid level.[505–508] It is interesting that mouse and human STAT5A are more related than STAT5A and STAT5B within a single species. The same is true for mouse and human STAT5B, suggesting that there has been evolutionary pressure to maintain the difference between STAT5A and STAT5B and that these two proteins might have certain distinctive functions. In this regard, STAT5A and STAT5B knockout mice exhibit both similarities as well as some differences in their phenotypes[511–514]; however, given different levels of each STAT5 protein in certain tissues, it remains to be determined if the different phenotypes result from different intrinsic actions of STAT5A and STAT5B versus differences in the total level of STAT5.

As active STAT proteins exist as dimers, the ability of at least some STATs to form heterodimers (eg, STAT1 with STAT2 or STAT3[448]) increases the number of different complexes that can form. In addition, further complexity can be generated by the ability of at least some of the STATs to exist in alternatively spliced forms,[508,515] some of which are inactive.

A schematic of STAT proteins is shown in Figure 25.8. The STATs can be divided into two basic groups: those that are longer (STAT2 and STAT6, approximately 850 amino acids) and those that are shorter (STAT1, STAT3, STAT4, STAT5A, and STAT5B, between 750 and 800 amino acids). The STAT genes cluster in three locations. Mouse STAT2 and STAT6 are both located on chromosome 10; STAT1 and STAT4 are located on chromosome 1; and STAT3, STAT5A, and STAT5B are located on chromosome 11.[516] Correspondingly, human STAT5A and STAT5B are closely positioned on chromosome 17q.[508]

The classic model is that in order for STATs to be "activated" and to be able to function as transcriptional activators, a number of cellular events must occur. They first bind to phosphorylated tyrosines on cytokine receptors, are tyrosine phosphorylated, dissociate, dimerize, translocate from the cytosol to the nucleus, bind to target DNA sequences, and activate gene expression. A number of conserved structural features common to all STATs help to explain these functions. These include an SH2 domain, a conserved tyrosine residue, a DNA-binding domain, and a C-terminal transactivation domain, and an N-terminal STAT tetramerization region (Fig. 25.8). In addition, there is now evidence for the biologic function of nuclear STATs that are not phosphorylated, as discussed subsequently.

TABLE 25.15 Cytokines and the Signal Transducer and Activator of Transcriptions They Activate

Cytokine	STATs Activated
IFNα/β	STAT1, STAT2, STAT4
IFNγ	STAT1
Growth hormone	STAT5A, STAT5B
Prolactin	STAT5A, STAT5B
Erythopoietin	STAT5A, STAT5B
Thrombopoietin	STAT5A, STAT5B
IL-10	STAT3
IL-12	STAT4, STAT3
G-CSF	STAT3
γ_c family	
IL-2, IL-7, IL-9, IL-15, IL-21	STAT5A, STAT5B, STAT3, STAT1
IL-4	STAT6, STAT5A, STAT5B
IL-13	STAT6
TSLP	STAT5A, STAT5B
β_c family	
IL-3, IL-5, GM-CSF	STAT5A, STAT5B
gp130 family	
IL-6, IL-11, CNTF, LIF, OSM, CT-1	STAT3
Leptin	STAT3

CNTF, ciliary neurotrophic factor; CT-1, cardiotrophin-1; G-CSF, granulocyte-colony stimulating factor; GM-CSF, granulocyte macrophage-colony stimulating factor; IFN, interferon; IL, interleukin; LIF, leukemia inhibitory factor; STAT, signal transducer and activator of transcription; TSLP, thymic stromal lymphopoietin.

Note that for IL-2, IL-7, IL-9, and IL-15, STAT5A and STAT5B appear to be the major STATs that are activated, although STAT3 in particular and STAT1 to a lesser degree can also be activated. For IL-21, STAT3 is the dominant STAT protein activated, followed by STAT1 and STAT5A/STAT5B.[44,585]

Docking of Signal Transducer and Activator of Transcription on Receptors or Other Molecules, their Tyrosine Phosphorylation, and Dimerization

Each STAT protein has an SH2 domain that plays two important roles: 1) for receptor docking, as for example, has been shown for STAT1 docking on IFNGR-1,[517] STAT2 docking on IFNAR-1,[518] STAT3 docking on gp130,[519] STAT5A and STAT5B docking on IL-2Rβ and IL-7Rα,[356,520] and STAT6 docking on IL-4Rα[521]; and 2) for STAT dimerization that is mediated by the SH2 of one STAT interacting with the conserved phosphorylated tyrosine of another STAT protein. In the case of the IFNα receptor, no STAT1 docking site on IFNAR-1 or IFNAR-2 has been identified, and it is believed that STAT1 may interact with STAT2 after STAT2 is itself tyrosine phosphorylated.[355] It is also possible that STATs can dock on JAKs, given the ability to directly coprecipitate JAKs and STATs.[480,495] After

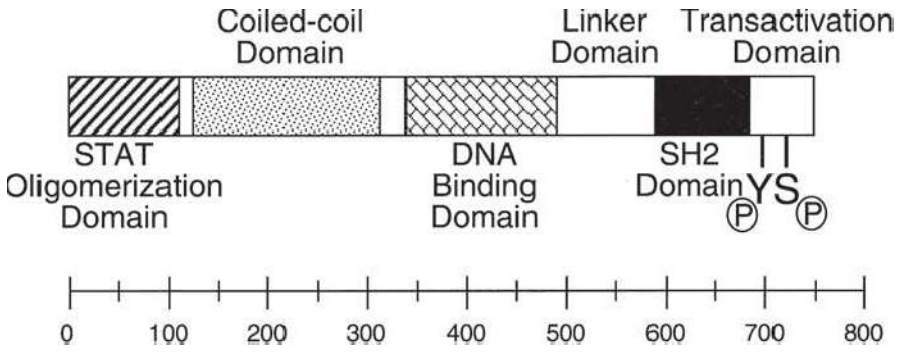


FIG. 25.8. Architecture of a Typical Signal Transducer and Activator of Transcription (STAT) Protein. Shown are the locations of the following important regions: 1) The N-terminal region has been shown to mediate the interaction of STAT dimers bound to adjacent gamma activated sites (known to be important for STAT1 but presumably true for all STATs), 2) the DNA–binding domain, 3) the SH2 domain that mediates STAT docking on receptors and STAT homodimerization/heterodimerization following tyrosine phosphorylation, and 4) the location of the conserved tyrosine whose phosphorylation allows the SH2-mediated dimerization. At least in STAT1 and STAT3, Serine 727, which is C-terminal to the conserved tyrosine, is an important site for phosphorylation. In the case of STAT1, p48 interacts downstream of the STAT dimerization domain. CBP/p300 interacts with two sites at both the N-terminus and C-terminus. Although it has been suggested that the region between the DNA–binding domains and the SH2 domain is an SH3 domain, this remains unproven, and no interactions with proline-rich regions have been reported; as a result, the labeling of this region as an SH3 domain has been omitted. Note that this structure is typical of that for STAT1, STAT3, STAT4, STAT5A, and STAT5B. The main features are conserved in STAT2 and STAT6, but these are approximately 50 to 100 amino acids longer.

docking has occurred, a conserved tyrosine (tyrosine 701 in STAT1, tyrosine 694 in STAT5A, etc.) can be phosphorylated. This phosphorylation is required for SH2 domain–mediated STAT dimerization, and the phosphorylation likely occurs while the STAT is docked on the receptor in physical proximity to receptor-associated JAK kinases. Following STAT phosphorylation, the STAT protein dissociates from the receptor, and its dimerization with itself or another STAT is presumably then favored over its reassociation with the cytokine receptor chain given that STAT dimerization involves two reciprocal phosphotyrosine-SH2 interactions, whereas docking on a receptor involves only one interaction. Thus, efficient activation of STATs requires the presence in STATs of a conserved SH2 domain and a critical tyrosine.

Whereas some receptor proteins such as IFNGR-1[517] and IL-7Rα[356] have a single STAT docking site (for STAT1 and STAT5, respectively), a number of receptor molecules, including IL-2Rβ,[356,520] IL-4Rα,[521] gp130,[519] Epo receptor (EpoR),[522] and IL-10R1,[523] have more than one docking site for their respective STATs. The presence of more than one site not only provides functional redundancy but also potentially could allow the simultaneous activation of two STAT molecules, providing a high local concentration of phosphorylated STATs to facilitate their dimerization.

Signal Transducer and Activator of Transcription Nuclear Translocation and Deoxyribonucleic Acid Binding

Following dimerization, the STATs translocate into the nucleus where they can bind to DNA as transcription factors. The mechanism for nuclear translocation was originally mysterious given the absence of an obvious nuclear localization signal.[524] However, it was shown that tyrosine-phosphorylated STAT1 dimers can directly interact with importin-α5, allowing internalization. This suggested that there indeed was a nuclear localization signal that is normally masked, and mutation of Leu407 does not interfere with tyrosine phosphorylation, dimerization, or DNA binding but prevents nuclear localization.[524] Following its dephosphorylation, nuclear STAT1 is exported to the cytosol by a process that is dependent on the chromosome region maintenance 1 (CRM1) export reporter.[525] Thus, both import and export of STAT1 appear to be regulated processes.[526]

Whereas most STAT dimers directly bind to DNA, in the case of IFN-α/β, STAT1-STAT2 heterodimers are formed, and these bind DNA in conjunction with a 48 kDa DNA-binding protein known as IRF9; the STAT1-STAT2-IRF9 complex is known as IFN-stimulated gene factor 3 (ISGF3).[448] In the case of other STAT dimers, accessory proteins are not required for DNA binding. The motif recognized by ISGF3 complexes is AGTTTNCNTTTCC (known as an ISRE, for IFN-stimulated response element), whereas the other STAT complexes bind more semipalindromic TTCNmGAA motifs that are generally denoted as gamma-activated site (GAS) motifs for IFNγ-activated sequences, reflecting their original discovery in the context of IFNγ.[355,397,447]

A series of chimeric STAT proteins were used to delineate a DNA-binding domain of approximately 180 amino acids, with two conserved subdomains. Although multiple STATs bind to the same motifs, their relative efficiencies vary, indicating fine specificities conferred by the different

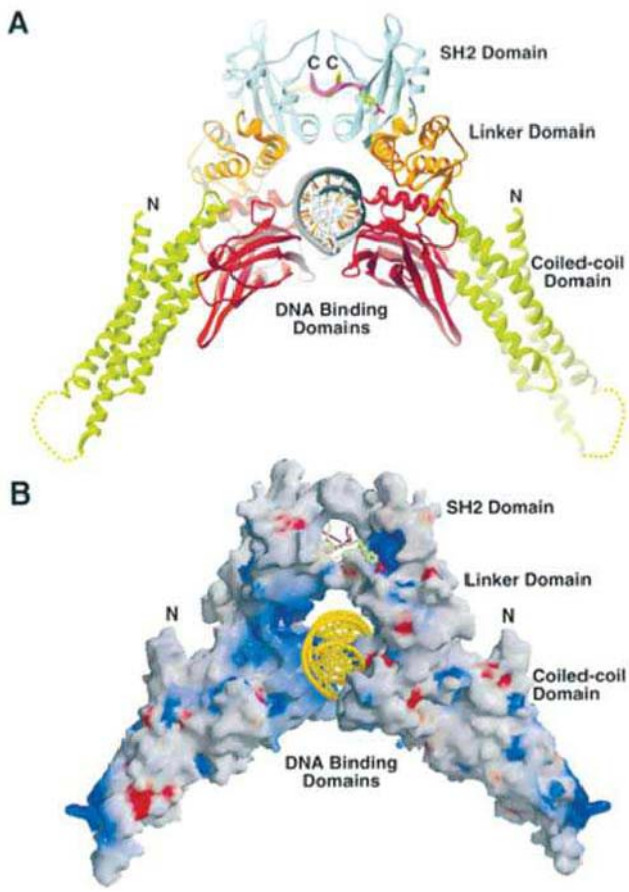


FIG. 25.9. Three-Dimensional Structure of a Signal Transducer and Activator of Transcription 1 Dimer Bound to Deoxyribonucleic Acid. Reproduced from Chen et al.[527] and Becker et al.,[528] with permission of Dr. Kuryian and Cell Press.

DNA-binding domains. For example, whereas STAT1 homodimers favor a TTCN3GAA motif, STAT6 prefers a TTCN4GAA motif.[521] These differences partially explain why different STATs modulate the expression of nonidentical sets of target genes. The structures of STAT1 and STAT3β bound to DNA[527,528] (Fig. 25.9) almost resembles that of a vertebral column, wherein the DNA represents the spinal cord. The N-terminal and coiled-coil domains are spatially the furthest from the DNA, whereas the DNA-binding domain, linker, and SH2 domain surround the DNA, with the stability apparently being provided by the SH2-phosphotyrosine interaction between the STAT monomers and each STAT monomer–DNA interaction with the DNA, presumably via a "half GAS site,"[529] as discussed under STAT tetramerization.

N-terminal regions mediate cooperative DNA binding of STAT proteins when multiple STAT-binding sites occur in close proximity,[530,531] for example, in the IFNγ gene.[530] In the IL-2Rα gene, IL-2 response elements have been described in both the 5′ regulatory region and the first intron, each of which has tandem GAS motifs that functionally cooperate to mediate IL-2–induced IL-2Rα transcription.[532–535]

STAT proteins were the first transcription factors that were identified as targets for tyrosine phosphorylation. Previously, tyrosine phosphorylation was primarily associated with membrane proximal events, but the tyrosine phosphorylation of STATs is associated with a membrane proximal event, as the STATs dock on cell surface receptors. This phosphorylation then allows the rapid dimerization that facilitates nuclear localization and DNA binding. STATs can interact directly with JAK kinases (first shown for STAT5 and JAK3),[480] suggesting that STATs may at times dock on JAKs rather than on receptors.

Nonphosphorylated Signal Transducer and Activator of Transcription Proteins Can Be Nuclear

In addition to the classical tyrosine phosphorylation–mediated dimerization and nuclear translocation, it is now clear that STAT proteins can exist in the nucleus even without being tyrosine phosphorylated and in that context can modulate gene expression.[536–538] Moreover, nonphosphorylaed STATs (eg, STAT4) can form N-domain–mediated dimers.[539]

Optimal Binding Sites for Signal Transducer and Activator of Transcription Proteins

The optimal binding motifs for several STAT proteins have been determined. For STAT1, STAT3, and STAT4, a TTCCSGGAA motif was defined,[448,530] while STAT5A and STAT5B optimally bind a TTCYNRGAA motif[529] and STAT6 binds a TTCNTNGGAA motif (where Y is C or T and R is G or A).[521,529] Whereas dimeric STAT protein binding strongly preferred canonical motifs, the range of sequences recognized by STAT5 tetramers is broader, often occurring to two imperfect motifs or with one canonical motif with an associated "TTC" or "GAA" half GAS motif. The optimal inter-GAS motif spacing is 11–12 bp, with relative secondary peaks of 6–7 bp and 16 bp as well.[529a] The presence of suboptimal GAS motifs spaced at appropriate distances to allow tetrameric binding may allow greater specificity via cooperative binding of STAT oligomers. A subset of genes bind STAT5 tetramers and STAT5 tetramers are critical for cytokine responses and normal immune function.

Transcriptional Activation by Signal Transducer and Activator of Transcription

In addition to tyrosine phosphorylation, some STATs can be phosphorylated on serine, and STAT1 and STAT3 phosphorylation at Serine 727 in the C-terminal transactivation domain is required for full activity.[540–542] The Serine 727 region resembles a MAP kinase recognition site, and one study indicated that MAP kinase activity is required for IFNα/β-induced gene expression.[543] Serine 727 mediates the interaction of STAT1 with MCM5, a member of the minichromosome maintenance family of proteins; this interaction presumably is important for maximal transcriptional activation.[544] In contrast, STAT2 is not serine phosphorylated.[448] STAT5A and STAT5B are serine phosphorylated,[545] and this phosphorylation may be important in cellular transformation.[546,547]

In addition to this regulated modification of the STAT proteins, STATs can also interact with other factors. For

example, as noted previously, STAT1-STAT2 heterodimers bind DNA only after interacting with IRF9 to form ISGF3.[448] STAT1 interacts with and synergizes with Sp1 for transcriptional activation in the ICAM-1 gene[548] and with TRADD to influence IFNγ signaling.[549] An alternatively spliced shorter form of STAT3, denoted STAT3β, associates with c-Jun to enhance transcriptional activity,[550] and full-length STAT3 can also associate with c-Jun.[551] Moreover, certain STATs can interact with the potent transcriptional coactivators CBP/p300.[552–554] In the case of STAT1, this is mediated by interactions involving both the N- and C-terminal regions of STAT1 and the CREB and E1A binding regions of CBP, respectively.[553] STAT5A has been shown to associate with the glucocorticoid receptor.[555] Additionally, the IL-2–response element in the IL-2Rα gene requires not only STAT5 binding but also the binding of Elf-1, an Ets family transcription factor, to a nearby site.[532] Thus, active STAT complexes appear to involve the coordination of STAT proteins with other factors. The corepressor silencing mediator for retinoic acid receptor and thyroid hormone receptor was identified as a potential STAT5-binding partner that binds to both STAT5A and STAT5B and potentially plays a negative regulatory role.[556]

Specificity of Signal Transducer and Activator of Transcription Proteins

Analogous to the JAKs, the same STATs are activated by multiple cytokines. The phenotypes of mice lacking expression of each of the seven STAT proteins are known, and these knockout models have helped to clarify which cytokines critically depend on a given STAT protein. STAT1 knockout mice exhibit defects that are very selective for the actions of type I and type II IFNs,[557,558] suggesting that STAT1 is only vital for the actions of IFNs, even though a variety of other cytokines have been reported to activate STAT1. Although it is possible that STAT1 plays an important but redundant role for at least some of these other cytokines, the phenotype of STAT1-deficient mice indicates a need for caution in the interpretation of in vitro experiments that use high concentrations of cytokines or cell lines. STAT2-deficient mice exhibit defects consistent with selective inactivation of IFNα/β signaling.[559] STAT3-deficient mice exhibit fetal lethality; the embryos implant, but they exhibit defective development and growth.[560] Deletion of STAT3 within specific lineages has revealed that mice lacking STAT3 in T cells[561] have normal lymphoid development but exhibit a defect in IL-2–induced IL-2Rα expression, somewhat analogous to what is seen in STAT5A- and STAT5B-deficient mice (see the following discussion). They also exhibit defective Th17 differentiation due to defective signaling by IL-6 and IL-21.[169] Neutrophils and macrophages lacking STAT3 exhibit defective signaling to IL-10, and it is known that STAT3 is important for the normal involution of the mammary epithelium, for wound healing, and for normal hair cycle.[562,563] DCs lacking STAT3 exhibit a defect in Flt3L-dependent differentiation,[564] and antigen-presenting cells that are deficient in STAT3 exhibit disruption of priming of antigen-specific CD4+ T cells.[565] STAT4-deficient mice exhibit a phenotype similar to that of IL-12–deficient mice (ie, defective Th1 development), consistent with the observation that STAT4 is activated by IL-12.[566,567] Analogously, STAT6-deficient mice exhibit a phenotype similar to that of IL-4–deficient mice (ie, defective Th2 development),[568–570] in keeping with the observation that STAT6 is only activated by IL-4 and the closely related cytokine, IL-13. Interestingly, mice lacking STAT5A exhibit a defect in prolactin-mediated effects, including defective lobuloalveloar proliferation,[571] whereas mice lacking STAT5B have defective growth similar to that found in Laron dwarfism.[572] Thus, although STAT5A and STAT5B appear to always be coordinately induced, each of these STATs is important in vivo. In addition to these defects, both STAT5A- and STAT5B-deficient mice have defects in T-cell development and signaling.[511,512] STAT5A-deficient mice have diminished numbers of splenocytes and exhibit a defect in IL-2–induced IL-2Rα expression.[511] STAT5B-deficient mice have similar defects but also have diminished thymocytes.[512] Most dramatically, these mice have a major defect in the proliferation of freshly isolated splenocytes[512] and defective NK-cell development.[512] Mice lacking both STAT5A and STAT5B in lymphoid cells exhibit a dramatic defect in T-cell development,[573] and even hypomorphic expression of both STAT5A and STAT5B is sufficient to result in a lack of NK-cell development.[513] Presumably, the lack of T-cell development relates to defective IL-7 signaling, whereas the lack of NK-cell development relates to defective IL-15–dependent STAT5 activation. STAT5A/STAT5B double knockout mice exhibit lethality that is associated with severe anemia that develops in these mice.[574]

Signal Transducer and Activator of Transcription Proteins are Evolutionarily Old

Just as Drosophila has a JAK kinase, there is a Drosophila STAT, denoted as either DSTAT or STAT92E.[575,576] The existence of JAK kinases and STAT proteins in lower organisms suggest that the system is evolutionarily old. A STAT has been identified in *Dictyostelium* that recognizes the sequence TTGA,[577] has highest sequence similarity to STAT5B, and can bind mammalian IFN-stimulated response elements.[577] Interestingly, *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* do not appear to have STATs as no SH2 domains have been identified in the entire *S. cerevisiae* genome.

What Types of Functions Are Mediated by Signal Transducer and Activator of Transcriptions?

First and foremost, STAT proteins can translocate to the nucleus and bind to regulatory regions of target genes and influence transcription. Although STATs are generally activators of transcription, they can repress. For example, STAT1 can function as a transcriptional repressor of the c-myc gene.[578]

STAT proteins were discovered based on the study of IFN-inducible genes as part of studies intended to understand the cellular differentiation events that lead to development of the antiviral state. In addition to roles in differentiation, STAT proteins can contribute, directly or indirectly, to survival and/or mitogenic/proliferative responses that typify he-

matopoietic and immunologic cytokines, such as IL-3, IL-5, GM-CSF, IL-2, and IL-4.[355] First, a number of in vitro systems have demonstrated that viruses or viral oncogenes are associated with activated JAK-STAT pathways, suggesting a role for STATs in cellular transformation. Indeed, STAT3 and STAT5 have been implicated as oncogenes, with compelling data for transformation capability of STAT3 in cell lines, persistently tyrosine-phosphorylated STATs in several types of leukemia and lymphoma, and the development of T-lymphoblastic lymphomas in STAT5 transgenic mice.[579] The role of STAT3 in the tumor microenvironment makes it an attractive target for cancer immunotherapy.[580] Second, there is diminished proliferation in a number of the STAT knockout mice that have been analyzed. For example, STAT4-deficient cells exhibit diminished cellular proliferation to IL-12[566,567]; STAT6-deficient cells exhibit diminished proliferation to IL-4[568,569]; and STAT5-deficient mice have diminished T-cell proliferation to IL-2.[511,512] Some of these effects are indirect, based on modulation of receptor expression. For example, STAT6-deficient mice exhibit decreased IL-4Rα expression. Similarly, the absence of STAT5 results in decreased IL-2–induced IL-2Rα expression as well as decreased proliferation.[511,512] Thus, in at least some cases, decreased proliferation results at least in part from decreased expression of receptor components. STAT5A and STAT5B regulate BCL-XL induction, indicating their ability to affect cell survival.[574] Finally, STAT1 has been linked to cell growth arrest and induction of the cdk inhibitor $p21^{WAF1/CIP1}$,[581] and activation of STAT1 occurs in thanatophoric dysplasia type II dwarfism as the result of a mutant fibroblast growth factor receptor.[582] In this chondrodysplasia, the mutant fibroblast growth factor receptor induces nuclear translocation of STAT1, expression of $p21^{WAF1/CIP1}$, and growth arrest, suggesting a possible relationship to the disease. Thus, different STATs may potentially mediate either growth expansion or growth arrest. Moreover, STATs may potentially play other types of roles, as well. For example, STAT3 has been reported to serve as an adapter to couple PI 3-kinase to the IFNAR-1 component of type I IFN receptors.[583]

A more complete understanding of the actions of the different STAT proteins may be facilitated with a compilation of the genes that are regulated by each STAT. Progress in this area has been made for a number of cytokines by microarray or RNA-Seq analysis (eg, for the IFNs[399]). It is also important to recognize that not all cytokine signals are dependent on STATs, as illustrated, for example, by STAT1-independent IFN signals,[584] STAT5-independent IL-2 signals,[520] and STAT1/STAT3-independent IL-21 signals.[585]

Do Other Proteins Bind to GAS Motifs?

At least one non-STAT protein can bind to GAS motifs. The *BCL6* gene is often mutated or has undergone translocations in diffuse large cell B-cell lymphomas. Interestingly, BCL6 binds to GAS motifs capable of binding STAT6 and specifically can inhibit IL-4 action.[586] Mice lacking BCL6 expression exhibit defective germinal center formation, suggesting that formation of germinal centers may be at least partially dependent on BCL6 regulated (presumably negative) control of certain STAT-responsive genes.[586]

OTHER LATENT TRANSCRIPTION FACTORS AS EXAMPLES OF CYTOPLASMIC TO NUCLEAR SIGNALING (NF-κB, NFAT, AND SMADS)

An exciting feature of STAT proteins is that they exist in an inactive form in the cytosol and then are rapidly translocated to the nucleus. The rapid activation within minutes of signals from cell membrane to nuclear DNA binding makes the STAT acronym apt, analogous to the urgency associated with "STAT" emergency physician orders in clinical medicine. The rapid activation of STAT proteins is somewhat analogous to several other transcription factors.[587] NF-κB also undergoes rapid nuclear translocation but by a completely different mechanism from STATs. In contrast to STAT proteins where the tyrosine phosphorylation of the STATs is an initiator of nuclear translocation, for NF-κB, it is the serine phosphorylation and/or uquitination of IκB that results in its dissociation and/or destruction, allowing the release and translocation of NF-κB. There is the classical NF-κB pathway used by many cytokines, which involves the IKKα/IKKβ/IKKγ-dependent phosphorylation of IκB, resulting in the activation of NFκB1 (p50)/Rel-A (p65) heterodimers as well as the alternative pathway in which a homodimer of IKKα mediates the activation of NFκB2 (p52)/Rel-B heterodimers.[588–594] A third example of cytosolic to nuclear translocation occurs with nuclear factor of activated T-cell (NFAT) family proteins,[595–597] which are vital for regulating transcription of a number of cytokines, including for example IL-2, IL-4, and GM-CSF. NFAT is translocated to the nucleus where it associates with activator protein 1 (AP-1) family proteins to form a functional complex. It is the activation of calcineurin and dephosphorylation of NFAT that allows its nuclear translocation. A fourth example of cytosolic to nuclear translocation occurs with the SMAD proteins that mediate TGF-β signaling, which contributes to Th17 differentiation (discussed subsequently). For SMADs, the phosphorylation is on serine and the kinase is intrinsic to the receptor, but like STATs, activation of these latent transcription factors is rapid and initiated by the binding of a growth factor. Thus, several mechanisms, each involving phosphorylation or dephosphorylation, have evolved to allow cytoplasmic to nuclear translocation of latent transcription factors.

OTHER SUBSTRATES FOR JAKS

As JAKs are potent cytosolic tyrosine kinases, it is evident that the JAKs may do more than just phosphorylate tyrosine residues on receptors where STAT proteins dock as well as phosphorylating the STATs. In vitro data indicate that JAK kinases also can phosphorylate receptor tyrosines other than the docking sites for STATs. For example, in the case of IL-2Rβ, JAK1 can phosphorylate not only tyrosines 392 and 510, which are STAT docking sites, but also tyrosine 338, which is a docking site for SHC,[520] all of which are required for maximal proliferation. JAK kinases are known to autophosphorylate themselves or transphosphorylate other JAKs. Other molecules are potentially phosphorylated by JAK kinases, including the STAM adapter molecule[598] and the p85 subunit of PI 3-kinase.[599]

Interferon Regulatory Factor Family Proteins

IRFs form a family of nine proteins that are regulated by type I IFNs.[395,600,601] They each have a well-conserved N-terminal DNA-binding domain that forms a helix-loop-helix structure as well as a C-terminal interaction domain. IRFs are critical for a number of actions, including type I IFN–dependent gene transcription.[395] Select IRFs play critical roles in TLR-mediated IFN induction. IRFs can have negative as well as positive effects. For example, IFNγ-mediated repression of IL-4 is mediated by IRF protein(s).[602]

OTHER SIGNALING MOLECULES IMPORTANT FOR CYTOKINES

Other Tyrosine Kinases besides JAKS

In addition to their activation of JAK kinases, a number of cytokines can activate Src family kinases. For example, IL-2 can activate p56lck[603,604] in T cells and p59fyn and p53/p56lyn in B-cell lines.[605,606] The activation of some of these kinases has been reported to be mediated by associating with the "A" region of IL-2Rβ. Another tyrosine kinase, Syk, has been reported to associate with the S region of IL-2Rβ.[607] However, the significance of these interactions is less clear than that for JAK kinases. First, cells lacking Lck can vigorously proliferate in response to IL-2.[608,609] Second, when the A region is deleted, proliferation still occurs, albeit at a lower level than seen with wild-type IL-2Rβ.[610] However, Y338, which is required for the recruitment of SHC, is in the A region and is required for normal proliferation.[520] Thus, it is possible that the decrease in proliferation associated with deletion of the A region relates more to the loss of Y338 than it does to the loss of association of Lck. Moreover, in *Il2rb*−/− mice reconstituted with an IL-2Rβ A-region mutant, proliferation is increased rather than decreased.[611] Additional investigation is required to clarify the role of activation of Src family kinases by IL-2 and other cytokines as well as the significance of the Syk interaction with IL-2Rβ. As Syk and JAK1 both associate with the S region of IL-2Rβ, mutations that delete the S region simultaneous prevent both associations, making it hard to determine the specific role of Syk. Syk-deficient mice exhibit normal IL-2 proliferation,[612] further suggesting that Syk may not play an important role in IL-2–induced proliferation. The G-CSF receptor also can form a complex with Lyn and Syk,[613] but again Syk-deficient mice do not exhibit a defect in G-CSF signaling.[612] β_c has also been reported to interact with Src family kinases[614]; gp130 has been reported to associate with a number of other kinases, including Btk, Tec, and Fes[615–617]; and IL-4Rα has been shown to interact with Fes.[618] However, relatively little is known about the significance of tyrosine kinases besides JAKs in cytokine signaling. Additionally, PI 3-kinase, p38, ERK, and JNK can each become activated, leading to activation of many downstream transcription factors, including NF-κB, AP1, PU.1, IRF1, IRF4, and IRF8, to mediate a program of gene expression.

IRS Proteins

IRS-1 was discovered as a tyrosine phosphorylated substrate of the insulin receptor.[619] IRS proteins have a large number of phosphotyrosine docking sites, particularly for the p85 subunit of PI 3-kinase, and they presumably serve to recruit important accessory molecules. Interestingly, both insulin and IL-4 could induce tyrosine phosphorylation of an IRS-1–like molecule in hematopoietic cells. The 32D myeloid progenitor cells lack IRS-1 and could only signal in response to insulin or IL-4 when they were transfected with IRS-1.[620] Both the insulin receptor and IL-4Rα proteins contain NPXY sequences that are important for IRS-1 or IRS-2 binding; in IL-4Rα, this is contained within a sequence denoted as the I4R motif.[621]

Other cytokines have subsequently been shown to activate IRS-1 and/or IRS-2. For example, growth hormone can induce phosphorylation of IRS-1[622] and IRS-2[623]; IFNγ and LIF induce phosphorylation of IRS-2[623]; and the γ_c-dependent cytokines IL-2, IL-7, and IL-15 can induce tyrosine phosphorylation of IRS-1 and IRS-2 in T cells.[624] The significance of these findings remain unclear, as 32D cells reconstituted with a complete IL-2 receptor can proliferative vigorously in response to IL-2,[608] whereas as noted previously, in these same cells, IL-4 responsiveness requires coexpression of both IL-4Rα and IRS-1, indicative of differing roles for IRS proteins for different cytokines.

Phosphatidylinositol 3-Kinase

PI 3-kinase is a lipid kinase that consists of an 85 kDa regulatory subunit and a 110 kDa catalytic subunit.[625] PI 3-kinase phosphorylation and activation can be induced by a number of cytokines,[626–629] and the use of inhibitors, such a wortmannin or LY294002, have demonstrated its importance in signaling for at least certain cytokines. IRS-1 has multiple docking sites for PI 3-kinase (YXXM motifs) and thus for some cytokines, such as IL-4, the association of IRS-1 might be the mechanism by which PI 3-kinase can be recruited.

The Ras/Mitogen-Activated Protein Kinase Pathway

Another major signaling pathway for a number of cytokines is the Ras/MAP kinase pathway.[630] This pathway presumably is used by cytokines whose receptors recruit the SHC adaptor molecule, which in turn mediates the recruitment of Grb2 and Sos, eventually leading to the activation of Ras. In turn, Ras couples to the MAP kinase pathway through a well-defined signaling cascade. Certain cytokines, such as IL-2 and IL-3, appear to use this pathway, whereas others, such as IL-4, do not, indicating that this pathway is differentially important depending on the cytokine that is being used.

DOWNMODULATION OF CYTOKINE SIGNALS

Much of the previous discussion has centered on the mechanisms by which cytokines induce signals. However, the mechanisms by which cytokine signals can be terminated are also extremely important. There are multiple levels at which negative regulation can occur. These include 1) regulating a balance between the production (transcriptional and translational control) of the cytokine, its receptor, and/or downstream signaling molecules and the degradation

of these same molecules; and 2) regulation of the activation state of the receptor and downstream signaling molecules. For example, these can be mediated by transcriptional repressors or molecules that either inhibit cytokine signaling (eg, SOCS proteins) or reverse activated states (eg, phosphatases).

Transcriptional control of cytokine production is a widely used mechanism. Many T-cell–derived cytokines such as IL-2, IL-3, and IL-4 are only produced by activated T cells, and their production is lost with the loss of activation. IL-15 provides an example where translation of the protein is carefully regulated, in part by the existence of multiple upstream antithymocyte globulins.[147] Most cytokine receptor chains are constitutively expressed, but some like IL-21R and IL-2Rβ are regulated in part by signals that act through the TCR. The most regulated receptor chain may be IL-2Rα, whose expression is absent on resting lymphocytes but strongly induced following stimulation with antigens, mitogens, and certain cytokines, but the transcriptional/translational control of most cytokine receptors is poorly studied.

Because phosphorylation events are vital for the creation of phosphotyrosine docking sites, dephosphorylation is an obvious mechanism of control. Indeed, two tyrosine phosphatases, Shp-1 (formerly also known as SHP, HCP, SH-PTP1, and PTP1C) and Shp-2 (formerly also known as Syp and PTP1D) have been shown to play roles related to cytokine signaling.[631,632] Shp-1 mutations cause the motheaten (*me*) and viable motheaten (*mev*) phenotypes in mice.[633,634] The viable motheaten mouse had a less severe phenotype that is associated with increased numbers of erythroid progenitor cells and hyperresponsiveness to Epo,[635] suggesting that Shp-1 might normally diminish responsiveness to Epo. Indeed, it was demonstrated that Shp-1 binds directly to the EpoR when Y429 is phosphorylated.[636] This tyrosine is located in a "negative" regulatory region of the EpoR, and when mutated, Epo-responsive cells can grow in lower concentrations of Epo. Following Shp-1 binding to Y429, dephosphorylation and inactivation of JAK2 is facilitated.[636] Thus, the negative regulation of Epo signaling appears to be at the level of a receptor-dependent inactivation of a JAK kinase. Shp-1 has also been shown to interact with β_c and to mediate diminished IL-3–induced signaling[637] and to be able to associate with both TYK2[638] and JAK2.[639]

Shp-2 has generally been considered primarily an "activating" phosphatase; it is therefore interesting that it can also interact with JAK1, JAK2, and TYK2.[640] In addition to the presumed dephosphorylation of JAK kinases by phosphatases, STAT proteins also appear to be regulated at the level of tyrosine dephosphorylation,[641] and interestingly, it has been shown that dephosphorylation of phosphotyrosine on STAT1 dimers requires extensive spatial reorientation of the two monomers within the dimer, something that is facilitated by the N-terminal domain that is involved in tetramerization.[642] Finally, another type of phosphatase, namely the lipid phosphatases, known as SHIP and SHIP2, can act as negative regulators of cytokine signals.[643]

In addition to Shp-1 and Shp-2, CD45, PTP1B, and T-cell PTP (TCPTP) have been reported to regulate JAK kinases. CD45 appears to play roles related to Epo and IFN signaling. PTP1B has been reported to dephosphorylate JAK2 and TYK2, and TCPTP has been reported to dephosphorylate JAK1 and JAK3.[449] In the cytosol, Shp-2 and PTP1B have also been reported to dephosphorylate cytosolic STAT5 and nuclear STAT1 and STAT3, whereas TCPTP has been reported to dephosphorylate STAT1 and STAT3 in both cytosol and nucleus, but additional work is needed to determine whether these events are occurring physiologically in vivo.[449]

In addition to dephosphorylation, another mode of negative regulation is by degradation. In addition to the degradation of receptor molecules, STAT1 itself is a target of the ubiquitin-proteasome pathway.[644] Finally, it is possible that regulation also can occur at the level of alternative splicing. In this regard, alternatively spliced versions of some of the STATs[448,508,515] have been reported.

THE CIS/SOCS/JAB/SSI FAMILY OF INHIBITORY ADAPTER PROTEINS

In 1995, the protoype molecule for an interesting class of proteins was discovered. The prototype molecule was named CIS, for cytokine inducible, SH2-containing protein, and it was shown to negatively regulate the actions of a set of cytokines.[645,646] CIS is rapidly induced by a variety of cytokines, including IL-2, IL-3, GM-CSF, and Epo, to physically associate with both the β_c and Epo receptors.[645,646] Subsequently, a related protein, variably denoted SOCS-1, JAB (JAK-binding protein), and SSI-1 (STAT-induced STAT inhibitor-1) was identified that could negatively regulate the activity of other cytokines, including IL-6[647–649] and IL-2, among others. Interestingly, this protein could associate with JAK family kinases, whereas this function has not been reported for CIS. A total of eight CIS/SOCS/JAB/SSI family members have been identified that collectively regulate signals in response to multiple cytokines.[650–654] These proteins are now generally known as SOCS proteins and share a central SH2 domain and a region known as a C-terminal region known as a SOCS box. Additional SOCS box–containing proteins lack SH2 domains and include proteins known as ASBs (ankyrin repeat-containing proteins with a SOCS box), SSBs (SPRY domain-containing proteins with a SOCS box), and WSBs (WD40 repeat–containing proteins with a SOCS box). SOCS proteins tend to be expressed at very low levels in nonactivated cells and to be induced by cytokines and pathogens. Following their induction, they negatively influence cytokine signaling, serving as negative feedback regulators. Their actions can extend beyond type I cytokines, for example, SOCS-1 can negatively regulate LPS responses.[655]

Knockout mice for a number of the SOCS proteins have been prepared, alone and in combination. CIS knockout mice are relatively normal, but CIS transgenic mice exhibit low body weight, failure of lactation, and diminished numbers of NK and NKT cells as well as altered TCR-mediated responses, presumably related to its ability to inhibit STAT5-dependent responses including those related to growth hormone, prolactin, IL-15, and IL-2, as well as others. SOCS-1 knockout exhibit multiorgan inflammation and neonatal lethality as the result of augmented re-

sponsiveness to IFNγ, and this lethality can be prevented if the mice are crossed to IFNγ-deficient mice. Interestingly, SOCS-1−/− mice also indicate an essential role for SOCS-1 in thymocyte differentiation, and there are diminished numbers of maturing B cells. Deletion of SOCS-1 within thymocytes/T cells/NKT cells results in multiple lymphoid abnormalites with increased CD8+ T cells due to increased sensitivity to γ_c-dependent cytokines, including IL-7.[656] SOCS-2 knockout mice exhibit gigantism, ostensible due to dysregulated growth hormone signaling. SOCS-2 knockout T cells exhibit enhanced Th2 differentiation, and knockout mice exhibit elevated Th2 responses after helminth infection.[657] SOCS-3 knockout mice exhibit embryonic lethality due to placental insufficiency and dysregulated responses to LIF and IL-6 as well as hematopoietic defects. Conditional SOCS-3 knockout mice have revealed a physiologic role for SOCS-3 in regulating G-CSF signaling in myeloid cells and for "emergency" granulopoiesis[658] as well as for IL-6/gp130 signaling.[659,660] SOCS-6 knockout have mild growth retardation.[449,652,661] Additional SOCS knockout mice and various combinations continue to be generated, adding additional information to this important area of negative regulation of STAT-dependent signaling.

PROTEIN INHIBITORS OF ACTIVATED SIGNAL TRANSDUCER AND ACTIVATOR OF TRANSCRIPTION PROTEINS

Protein inhibitors of activated STAT (PIAS) proteins are other negative regulators of cytokine actions,[449,662–666] with PIAS-1 being an inhibitor of STAT1-binding activity and PIAS-3 being a similar inhibitor of STAT3-binding activity. These PIAS proteins block the DNA-binding activity of STAT dimers. Two other members, PIASx (which has both α and β splice variants) and PIASy, have also been described, with PIASx inhibiting STAT4 and PIASY inhibiting STAT1. They appear to act at least in part as transcriptional corepressors by recruiting other proteins such as histone deacetylase. In addition, PIASx and PIASy have added actions not restricted to the context of STAT inhibition. For example, PIASy is a nuclear matrix-associated SUMO E3 ligase (a ubiquitin-related protein) that can repress the activitity of the Wnt-responsive transcription factor, LEF1.[665] PIASy coexpression results in the covalent modification of LEF1 by SUMO. Thus, as a class, PIAS proteins have more than one type of action.[449,667]

DISEASES OF CYTOKINE RECEPTORS AND RELATED MOLECULES

A Range of Cytokine-Related Causes of Severe Combined Immunodeficiency

As detailed previously, mutations in the γ_c cause X-linked SCID, and mutations in JAK3 cause a similar T−B+NK− SCID. Given that γ_c-dependent cytokines activate primarily STAT5A and STAT5B as signaling molecules downstream of the JAKs, it remains an open question as to whether mutations in these STAT proteins also cause human disease. Although one could hypothesize that mutations in either STAT5A or STAT5B alone might not cause a phenotype due to potential redundancy, mice lacking STAT5A or STAT5B exhibit defects in T- and NK-cell numbers as well as T-cell proliferation and NK cytolytic activity,[511,512] and mice lacking both STAT5A and STAT5B have an even more profound defect, with absent T-cell[573] and NK-cell development.[513] Moreover, STATB mutations have been found and cause growth hormone insensitivity, IGF-1 deficiency, and immune dysfunction.[573a,573b]

It can be predicted that human immunodeficiencies might also result from mutations in some of the cytokines whose receptors contain γ_c or from mutations in other components of the receptors for these cytokines. Indeed, as noted previously, patients with IL-2 deficiency exhibit a SCID-like syndrome, due to inadequate function of their T cells, and recently, an unusual immunodeficiency has been found to result from a mutation in IL-2Rα.[369] One patient with defective IL-2Rβ expression also had an immunodeficiency syndrome characterized by autoimmunity,[668] somewhat analogous to IL-2Rβ–deficient mice. Given that mutations in IL-7Rα in humans cause T−B+NK+ SCID,[206] mutations in IL-7 might be predicted to cause a similar syndrome. The one major difference might be that IL-7–deficient humans might not be capable of receiving a successful bone marrow transplant if stromal IL-7 is required for the graft. Such patients have not yet been identified. Given the defective NK-cell development and CD8+ memory T-cell development in IL-15– and IL-15Rα–deficient mice, it is likely that these types of defects would also occur in humans lacking either of these proteins. However, again, such patients have not yet been identified. Although IL-9 transgenic mice develop lymphomas,[669] IL-9–deficient mice exhibit defects related to mast cells and mucous production rather than lymphoid defects. Thus, defects related to the IL-9 system seem unlikely as causes of SCID. At present, defective expression of IL-2, IL-2Rα, IL-2Rβ, IL-7Rα, γ_c, and JAK3 are the only cytokine-related mutations that have been found to cause SCID, with TYK2 being implicated in another form of immunodeficiency. More time will be required to determine whether mutations in other cytokines, cytokine receptors, JAKs, or STATs can also cause SCID.

Defects in the Ability to Clear Mycobacterial Infections and Chronic Mucocutaneous Candidiasis

A number of immunodeficiencies have been characterized where affected individuals cannot properly clear mycobacterial infections. These have also turned out to be diseases of defective cytokine signaling. Mutations have been found in the components of either IL-12 itself or in the IFN or IL-12/IL-23 receptors, with mutations having been found in either the gene encoding the p40 subunit of IL-12 (which as noted previously is also a component of IL-23),[670] in IL-12Rβ1 (a component of both the IL-12 and IL-23 receptors),[671] or in either the IFNGR-1 or IFNGR-2 components of IFNγ receptors.[672,673] The critical role of IL-12 for Th1 cell–mediated differentiation and production of IFNγ provides the explanation for finding similar clinical syndromes in humans lacking the p40, IL-12Rβ1, IFNGR1, or IFNGR-2. Moreover,

one patient with a mutation in the STAT1 gene was also identified with a similar clinical syndrome,[674] indicating that as anticipated, STAT1 is a critical mediator of IFNγ signaling. Interestingly, this patient had a mutation on only one STAT1 allele, but the mutation was a dominant negative mutations that selectively inhibits the formation of STAT1 dimers (hence abrogating IFNγ signaling) but yet had at most only a modest effect on the ability to form ISGF3, hence leaving signaling in response to IFNα/β relatively intact. Chronic mucocutaneous candidiasis can be caused by autosomal dominant IL-17F or autosomal recessive IL-17RA deficiency or by gain-of-function heterozygous STAT1 mutant alleles that impair IL-17 immunity.[675]

Somatic mutations that activate STAT3 occur in benign liver adenomas, suggesting a role for IL-6–STAT3 pathway in human hepatocellular tumorigenesis.[676]

Mutations in the WSX-1/TCCR Type I Receptor

Interestingly, there is a type I cytokine receptor denoted as TCCR or WSX-1 that is related to IL-12β2 and its mutations results in defective Th1-related responses and diminished IFNγ production, resulting in susceptible to *Leishmania major* and *Listeria monocytogenes*.[254,677,678] TCCR/WSX-1 is an essential component of the receptor for IL-27[300] and also has been found to be required for resistance to *Trypanosoma cruzi*.[679,680]

Other Diseases Associated with Cytokine Receptors

A number of other diseases have been reported that related to cytokine receptors. First, mutations in the growth hormone receptor have been found in a form of dwarfism (Laron dwarfism)[681] in which target cells cannot respond to growth hormone. Interestingly, some aspects of STAT5B deficiency are related to this syndrome. Second, a single patient with a form of congenital neutropenia (Kostmann syndrome) has been found to have a mutation in one of his G-CSF receptor alleles.[682] Third, a kindred of patients with familial erythrocytosis has truncation in the erythropoietin receptor, resulting in hypersensitivity to Epo.[683] Fourth, an altered virally encoded form (v-mpl) of the thrombopoietin receptor (c-mpl) was originally identified as the oncogene of the myeloproliferative leukemia virus.[684] Finally, gain-of-function mutations in *IL7R*[685] and genomic aberrations of *TSLPR* (also known as *CRLF2*)[686–688] have been found in childhood acute lymphoblastic leukemias, sometimes associated with mutations in JAK2 or JAK1 or TLSPR itself.

Modulation of Cytokines and the Clinic

Certain diseases are associated with increased levels of cytokines or other situations where treatment with an anticytokine receptor antibody is a rationale therapy. One major example is Castleman disease, which is associated with overproduction of IL-6 by lymph node cells, leading to the successful treatment of this disease with IL-6 receptor blockade.[257,689] Anti–IL-6R–based therapy also has utility for rheumatoid arthritis and possibly for Crohn disase.[257,690] Blocking the IL-2 receptor has been used in the treatment of patients with adult T-cell leukemia and other neoplasias, and the use of humanized and conjugated antibodies have produced responses in a number of individuals. Humanized anti-Tac monoclonal antibody, marketed under the name daclizumab, has shown very strong efficacy in the treatment of allograft rejection as well as in T-cell–mediated autoimmune disorders, including multiple sclerosis, uveitis, and tropical spastic paraparesis. Conjugated antibodies to both IL-2Rα and IL-2Rβ are also being tested for use in a variety of malignant disorders, wherein the malignant cells express these proteins. Thus, there is the possibility of therapy, either based on blocking the cytokine or based on eliminating the responding cells.[691]

CONCLUSION

Type I cytokines and IFNs are involved in the regulation of an enormous number of immunologic and nonimmunologic processes. There has been a progressive transition from viewing these as discrete molecules with special actions to sets of molecules that can be grouped according to shared receptor components and common signaling pathways. Signaling is one area where our understanding has greatly expanded; the pathways that are activated are similar for many cytokines, even when the biologic functions they induce are dramatically different. Although some of the differences can be explained by "compartmentalization" according to which cells produce the cytokine and which cells express receptors that allow them to respond to the cytokine, a tremendous amount still needs to be learned about how distinctive signals are triggered as well as more regarding the sets of genes that are induced by each cytokine. These will provide vital information important to the quest to completely understand the mechanisms by which type I cytokines and IFNs can effect their actions. At the same time, the generation of knockout mice for most cytokines and their receptors, as well as many signaling molecules, has provided in vivo clues as to vital functions served by these cytokines. Caution is clearly needed, however, in generalizing from these findings to human biology, given some apparently major differences in roles served, such as the essential role played by IL-7 in both humans and mice for T-cell development, whereas IL-7 is also essential for B-cell development in mice but not in humans. The identification of so many humans disorders associated with cytokines and cytokine receptors has tremendously helped to teach us more about normal human biology as well.

REFERENCES

1. Dumonde DC, Wolstencroft RA, Panayi GS, Matthew M, Morley J, Howson WT. "Lymphokines": non-antibody mediators of cellular immunity generated by lymphocyte activation. *Nature*. 1969;224(214):38–42. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/5822903
2. Cohen S, Bigazzi PE, Yoshida T. Commentary. Similarities of T cell function in cell-mediated immunity and antibody production. *Cell Immunol*. 1974;12(1):150–159. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4156495
3. Waksman BH. *Immunology, The Making of a Modern Science*. London, United Kingdom: Academic Press; 1995.
4. Oppenheim JJ, Gery I. From lymphodrek to interleukin 1 (IL-1). *Immunol Today*. 1993;14(5):232–234. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8147958
5. Wlodawer A, Pavlovsky A, Gustchina A. Hematopoietic cytokines: similarities and differences in the structures, with implications for receptor binding. *Protein Sci*. 1993;2(9):1373–1382. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8401223
6. Bazan JF. Neuropoietic cytokines in the hematopoietic fold. *Neuron*. 1991;7(2):197–208. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1714745
7. Rozwarski DA Gronenborn AM, Clore GM, et al. Structural comparisons among the short-chain helical cytokines. *Structure*. 1994;2(3):159–173. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8069631
8. Sprang SR, Bazan JF. Cytokine structural taxonomy and mechanisms of receptor engagement. *Curr Opin Struct Biol*. 1993;3:815.
9. Wang X, Lupardus P, Laporte SL, Garcia KC. Structural biology of shared cytokine receptors. *Ann Rev Immunol*. 2009;27:29–60. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18817510
10. Zhang F, Basinksi MB, Beals JM, et al. Crystal structure of the obese protein leptin-E100. *Nature*. 1997;387(6629):206–209. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9144295
11. Rochman Y, Spolski R, Leonard WJ. New insights into the regulation of T cells by gamma(c) family cytokines. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2009;9(7):480–490. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19543225
12. Davies DR, Wlodawer A. Cytokines and their receptor complexes. *FASEB J*. 1995;9(1):50–56. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7821759
13. Milburn MV, Hassell AM, Lambert MH, et al. A novel dimer configuration revealed by the crystal structure at 2.4 A resolution of human interleukin-5. *Nature*. 1993;363(6425):172–176. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8483502
14. Senda T, Shimazu T, Matsuda S, et al. Three-dimensional crystal structure of recombinant murine interferon-beta. *EMBO J*. 1992;11(9):3193–3201. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1505514
15. Ealick SE, Cook WJ, Vijay-Kumar S, et al. Three-dimensional structure of recombinant human interferon-gamma. *Science*. 1991;252(5006):698–702. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1902591
16. Zdanov A, Schalk-Hihi C, Gustchina A, Tsang M, Weatherbee J, Wlodawer A. Crystal structure of interleukin-10 reveals the functional dimer with an unexpected topological similarity to interferon gamma. *Structure*. 1995;3(6):591–601. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8590020
17. D'Andrea AD, Fasman GD, Lodish HF. Erythropoietin receptor and interleukin-2 receptor beta chain: a new receptor family. *Cell*. 1989;58(6):1023–1024. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2550142
18. Bazan JF. Structural design and molecular evolution of a cytokine receptor superfamily. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1990;87(18):6934–6938. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2169613
19. de Vos AM, Ultsch M, Kossiakoff AA. Human growth hormone and extracellular domain of its receptor: crystal structure of the complex. *Science*. 1992;255(5042):306–312. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1549776
20. Somers W, Ultsch M, De Vos AM, Kossiakoff AA. The X-ray structure of a growth hormone-prolactin receptor complex. *Nature*. 1994;372(6505):478–481. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7984244
21. Livnah O, Stura EA, Johnson DL, et al. Functional mimicry of a protein hormone by a peptide agonist: the EPO receptor complex at 2.8 A. *Science*. 1996;273(5274):464–471. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8662530
22. Hage T, Sebald W, Reinemer P. Crystal structure of the interleukin-4/receptor alpha chain complex reveals a mosaic binding interface. *Cell*. 1999;97(2):271–281. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10219247
23. Wang X, Rickert M, Garcia KC. Structure of the quaternary complex of interleukin-2 with its alpha, beta, and gammac receptors. *Science*. 2005;310(5751):1159–1163. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16293754
24. Lupardus PJ, Skiniotis G, Rica AJ, et al. Structural snapshots of full-length Jak1, a transmembrane gp130/IL-6/IL-6Ralpha cytokine receptor complex, and the receptor-Jak1 holocomplex. *Structure*. 2011;19(1):45–55. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21220115
25. Lupardus PJ, Birnbaum ME, Garcia KC. Molecular basis for shared cytokine recognition revealed in the structure of an unusually high affinity complex between IL-13 and IL-13Ralpha2. *Structure*. 2010;18(3):332–342. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20223216
26. Murakami M, Narazaki M, Hibi M, et al. Critical cytoplasmic region of the interleukin 6 signal transducer gp130 is conserved in the cytokine receptor family. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1991;88(24):11349–11353. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1662392
27. Wrighton NC, Farrell FX, Chang R, et al. Small peptides as potent mimetics of the protein hormone erythropoietin. *Science*. 1996;273(5274):458–464. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8662529
28. Stauber DJ, Debler EW, Horton PA, Smith KA, Wilson IA. Crystal structure of the IL-2 signaling complex: paradigm for a heterotrimeric cytokine receptor. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2006;103(8):2788–2793. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16477002
29. Kim HP, Imbert J, Leonard WJ. Both integrated and differential regulation of components of the IL-2/IL-2 receptor system. *Cytokine Growth Factor Rev*. 2006;17(5):349–366. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16911870
30. Leonard WJ. Cytokines and immunodeficiency diseases. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2001;1(3):200–208. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11905829
31. Chow D, He X, Snow AL, Rose-John S, Garcia KC. Structure of an extracellular gp130 cytokine receptor signaling complex. *Science*. 2001;291(5511):2150–2155. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11251120
32. Boulanger MJ, Chow DC, Brevnova EE, Garcia KC. Hexameric structure and assembly of the interleukin-6/IL-6 alpha-receptor/gp130 complex. *Science*. 2003;300(5628):2101–2104. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12829785
33. Boulanger MJ, Bankovich AJ, Kortemme T, Baker D, Garcia KC. Convergent mechanisms for recognition of divergent cytokines by the shared signaling receptor gp130. *Mol Cell*. 2003;12(3):577–589. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14527405
34. LaPorte SL, Juo SZ, Vaclavikova J, et al. Molecular and structural basis of cytokine receptor pleiotropy in the interleukin-4/13 system. *Cell*. 2008;132(2):259–272. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18243101
35. Hansen G, Hercus TR, McClure BJ, et al. The structure of the GM-CSF receptor complex reveals a distinct mode of cytokine receptor activation. *Cell*. 2008;134(3):496–507. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18692472
36. Takeshita T, Asao H, Ohtani K, et al. Cloning of the gamma chain of the human IL-2 receptor. *Science*. 1992;257(5068):379–382. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1631559
37. Noguchi M, Nakamura Y, Russel SM, et al. Interleukin-2 receptor gamma chain: a functional component of the interleukin-7 receptor. *Science*. 1993;262(5141):1877–1880. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8266077
38. Russell SM, Keegan AD, Harada N, et al. Interleukin-2 receptor gamma chain: a functional component of the interleukin-4 receptor. *Science*. 1993;262(5141):1880–1883. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8266078

39. Kondo M, Takeshita T, Ishii N, et al. Sharing of the interleukin-2 (IL-2) receptor gamma chain between receptors for IL-2 and IL-4. *Science*. 1993;262(5141):1874–1877. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8266076
40. Kondo M, Takeshita T, Higuchi M, et al. Functional participation of the IL-2 receptor gamma chain in IL-7 receptor complexes. *Science*. 1994;263(5152):1453–1454. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8128231
41. Russell SM, Johnston JA, Noguchi M, et al. Interaction of IL-2R beta and gamma c chains with Jak1 and Jak3: implications for XSCID and XCID. *Science*. 1994;266(5187):1042–1045. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7973658
42. Kimura Y, Takeshita T, Kondo M, et al. Sharing of the IL-2 receptor gamma chain with the functional IL-9 receptor complex. *Int Immunol*. 1995;7(1):115–120. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7718508
43. Giri JG, Ahdieh M, Eisenman J, et al. Utilization of the beta and gamma chains of the IL-2 receptor by the novel cytokine IL-15. *EMBO J*. 1994;13(12):2822–2830. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8026467
44. Asao H, Okuyama C, Kumaki S, et al. Cutting edge: the common gamma-chain is an indispensable subunit of the IL-21 receptor complex. *J Immunol*. 2001;167(1):1–5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11418623
45. Leonard WJ. The molecular basis of X-linked severe combined immunodeficiency: defective cytokine receptor signaling. *Annu Rev Med*. 1996;47:229–239. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8712778
46. Taniguchi T, Matsui H, Fujita T, et al. Structure and expression of a cloned cDNA for human interleukin-2. *Nature*. 1983;302(5906):305–310. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6403867
47. Leonard WJ, Depper JM, Crabtree GR, et al. Molecular cloning and expression of cDNAs for the human interleukin-2 receptor. *Nature*. 1984;311(5987):626–631. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6090948
48. Nikaido T, Shimizu A, Ishida N, et al. Molecular cloning of cDNA encoding human interleukin-2 receptor. *Nature*. 1984;311(5987):631–635. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6090949
49. Lin JX, Leonard WJ. Signaling from the IL-2 receptor to the nucleus. *Cytokine Growth Factor Rev*. 1997;8(4):313–332. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9620644
50. Lin JX, Leonard WJ. *The Cytokine Handbook*. 4th ed. San Diego, CA: Academic Press; 2001.
51. Morgan DA, Ruscetti FW, Gallo R. Selective in vitro growth of T lymphocytes from normal human bone marrows. *Science*. 1976;193(4257):1007–1008. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/181845
52. Siegel LJ, Harper ME, Wong-Staal F, Gallo RC, Nash WG, O'Brien SJ. Gene for T-cell growth factor: location on human chromosome 4q and feline chromosome B1. *Science*. 1984;223:175–178. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6318318
53. Leonard WJ, Depper JM, Uchiyama T, Smith KA, Waldmann TA, Greene WC. A monoclonal antibody that appears to recognize the receptor for human T-cell growth factor; partial characterization of the receptor. *Nature*. 1982;300(5889):267–269. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6815536
54. Sharon M, Klausner RD, Cullen BR, Chizzonite R, Leonard WJ. Novel interleukin-2 receptor subunit detected by cross-linking under high-affinity conditions. *Science*. 1986;234(4778):859–863. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3095922
55. Tsudo M, Kozak RW, Goldman CK, Waldmann TA. Demonstration of a non-Tac peptide that binds interleukin 2: a potential participant in a multichain interleukin 2 receptor complex. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1986;83(24):9694–9698. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3099289
56. Teshigawara K, Wang HM, Kato K, Smith KA. Interleukin 2 high-affinity receptor expression requires two distinct binding proteins. *J Exp Med*. 1987;165(1):223–238. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3098894
57. Hatakeyama M, Tsudo M, Minamoto S, et al. Interleukin-2 receptor beta chain gene: generation of three receptor forms by cloned human alpha and beta chain cDNA's. *Science*. 1989;244(4904):551–556. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2785715
58. Blackman MA, Tigges MA, Minie ME, Koshland ME. A model system for peptide hormone action in differentiation: interleukin 2 induces a B lymphoma to transcribe the J chain gene. *Cell*. 1986;47(4):609–617. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3096574
59. Waldmann TA. The multi-subunit interleukin-2 receptor. *Annu Rev Biochem*. 1989;58:875–911. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2673025
60. Siegel JP, Sharon M, Smith PL, Leonard WJ. The IL-2 receptor beta chain (p70): role in mediating signals for LAK, NK, and proliferative activities. *Science*. 1987;238(4823):75–78. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3116668
61. Lanier LL, Phillips JH. Natural killer cells. *Curr Opin Immunol*. 1992;4(1):38–42.
62. Janssen RA, Mulder NH, The TH, de Leij L. The immunobiological effects of interleukin-2 in vivo. *Cancer Immunol Immunother*. 1994;39(4):207–216. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7954522
63. Lenardo M, Cham KM, Hornung F, et al. Mature T lymphocyte apoptosis—immune regulation in a dynamic and unpredictable antigenic environment. *Ann Rev Immunol*. 1999;17:221–253. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10358758
64. Malek TR, Yu A, Vincek V, Scibelli P, Kong L. CD4 regulatory T cells prevent lethal autoimmunity in IL-2Rbeta-deficient mice. Implications for the nonredundant function of IL-2. *Immunity*. 2002;17(2):167–178. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12196288
65. Malek TR, Castro I. Interleukin-2 receptor signaling: at the interface between tolerance and immunity. *Immunity*. 2010;33(2):153–165. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20732639
66. Tang Q, Adams JY, Penaranda C, et al. Central role of defective interleukin-2 production in the triggering of islet autoimmune destruction. *Immunity*. 2008;28(5):687–697. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18468463
67. Williams MA, Tyznik AJ, Bevan MJ. Interleukin-2 signals during priming are required for secondary expansion of CD8+ memory T cells. *Nature*. 2006;441(7095):890–893. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16778891
68. Schoenberger SP, Janssen EM. IL-2 gets with the program. *Nat Immunol*. 2006;7(8):798–800. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16855604
69. Feau S, Arens R, Togher S, Schoenberger SP. Autocrine IL-2 is required for secondary population expansion of CD8(+) memory T cells. *Nat Immunol*. 2011;12(9):908–913. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21804558
70. Pipkin ME, Sacks JA, Cruz-Guilloty F, et al. Interleukin-2 and inflammation induce distinct transcriptional programs that promote the differentiation of effector cytolytic T cells. *Immunity*. 2010;32(1):79–90. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20096607
71. Kalia V, Sarkar S, Subramaniam S, Haining WN, Smith KA, Ahmed R. Prolonged interleukin-2Ralpha expression on virus-specific CD8+ T cells favors terminal-effector differentiation in vivo. *Immunity*. 2010;32(1):91–103.
72. Pepper M, Pagan AJ, Igyarto BZ, Taylor JJ, Jenkins MK. Opposing signals from the Bcl6 transcription factor and the interleukin-2 receptor generate T helper 1 central and effector memory cells. *Immunity*. 2011;35(4):583–595. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20096608
73. Hershko AY, Suzuki R, Charles N, et al. Mast cell interleukin-2 production contributes to suppression of chronic allergic dermatitis. *Immunity*. 2011;35(4):562–571. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21982597
74. Liao W, Lin JX, Wang L, Li P, Leonard WJ. Modulation of cytokine receptors by IL-2 broadly regulates differentiation into helper T cell lineages. *Nat Immunol*. 2011;12(6):551–559. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21516110
75. Zhu J, Cote-Sierra J, Guo L, Paul WE. Stat5 activation plays a critical role in Th2 differentiation. *Immunity*. 2003;19(5):739–748. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14614860
76. Cote-Sierra J, Foucras G, Guo L, et al. Interleukin 2 plays a central role in Th2 differentiation. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2004;101(11):3880–3885. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15004274
77. Liao W, Schones DE, Oh J, et al. Priming for T helper type 2 differentiation by interleukin 2-mediated induction of interleukin 4 receptor alpha-chain expression. *Nat Immunol*. 2008;9(11):1288–1296. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18820682

78. Liao W, Lin JX, Leonard WJ. IL-2 family cytokines: new insights into the complex roles of IL-2 as a broad regulator of T helper cell differentiation. *Curr Opin Immunol*. 2011;23(5):598–604. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21889323
79. Mosmann TR, Cherwinski H, Bond MW, Giedlin MA, Coffman RL. Two types of murine helper T cell clone. I. Definition according to profiles of lymphokine activities and secreted proteins. *J Immunol*. 1986;136(7):2348–2357. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2419430
80. Lucey DR, Clerici M, Shearer GM. Type 1 and type 2 cytokine dysregulation in human infectious, neoplastic, and inflammatory diseases. *Clin Microbiol Rev*. 1996;9(4):532–562. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8894351
81. Abbas AK, Murphy KM, Sher A. Functional diversity of helper T lymphocytes. *Nature*. 1996;383(6603):787–793. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8893001
82. Mosmann TR, Sad S. The expanding universe of T-cell subsets: Th1, Th2 and more. *Immunol Today*. 1996;17(3):138–146. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8820272
83. Jankovic D, Sher A, Yap G. Th1/Th2 effector choice in parasitic infection: decision making by committee. *Curr Opin Immunol*. 2001;13(4):403–409. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11498295
84. Romagnani S. *Cytokine Reference*. Edited by JJ Oppenheim and M Feldman. San Diego, CA: Academic Press; 2001:99–112.
85. Shi M, Lin TH, Appell KC, Berg LJ. Janus-kinase-3-dependent signals induce chromatin remodeling at the Ifng locus during T helper 1 cell differentiation. *Immunity*. 2008;28(6):763–773. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18549798
86. Laurence A, Tato CM, Davidson TS, et al. Interleukin-2 signaling via STAT5 constrains T helper 17 cell generation. *Immunity*. 2007;26(3):371–381. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17363300
87. Lazarevic V, Chen X, Shim JH, et al. T-bet represses T(H)17 differentiation by preventing Runx1-mediated activation of the gene encoding RORgammat. *Nat Immunol*. 2011;12(1):96–104. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21151104
88. Nelms K, Keegan AD, Zamorano J, Ryan JJ, Paul WE. The IL-4 receptor: signaling mechanisms and biologic functions. *Ann Rev Immunol*. 1999;17:701–738. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10358772
89. Zhu J, Yamane H, Paul WE. Differentiation of effector CD4 T cell populations (*). *Ann Rev Immunol*. 2010;28:445–489. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20192806
90. Yoshimoto T, Bendelac A, Watson C, Hu-Li J, Paul WE. Role of NK1.1+ T cells in a TH2 response and in immunoglobulin E production. Science. 1995;270(5243):1845–1847. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8525383
91. Paul W. *IL-4: Structure and Function*. Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press; 1992.
92. Paul WE. Interleukin-4: a prototypic immunoregulatory lymphokine. *Blood*. 1991;77(9):1859–1870. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2018830
93. Boulay JL, Paul WE. Hematopoietin sub-family classification based on size, gene organization and sequence homology. *Curr Biol*. 1993;3(9):573–581. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15335670
94. Mosley B, Beckmann MP, March CJ, et al. The murine interleukin-4 receptor: molecular cloning and characterization of secreted and membrane bound forms. *Cell*. 1989;59(2):335–348. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2805066
95. Idzerda RL, March CJ, Mosley B, et al. Human interleukin 4 receptor confers biological responsiveness and defines a novel receptor superfamily. *J Exp Med*. 1990;171(3):861–873. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2307934
96. Galizzi JP, Zuber CE, Harada N, et al. Molecular cloning of a cDNA encoding the human interleukin 4 receptor. *Int Immunol*. 1990;2(7):669–675. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2278997
97. Li L, Lee HH, Bell JJ, et al. IL-4 utilizes an alternative receptor to drive apoptosis of Th1 cells and skews neonatal immunity toward Th2. *Immunity*. 2004;20(4):429–440. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15084272
98. Namen AE, Lupton S, Hjerrild K, et al. Stimulation of B-cell progenitors by cloned murine interleukin-7. *Nature*. 1988;333(6173):571–573. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3259677
99. Goodwin RG, Lupton S, Schmierer A, et al. Human interleukin 7: molecular cloning and growth factor activity on human and murine B-lineage cells. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1989;86(1):302–306. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2643102
100. Mackall CL, Fry TJ, Gress RE. Harnessing the biology of IL-7 for therapeutic application. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2011;11(5):330–342. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21508983
101. Murray R, Suda T, Wrighton N, Lee F, Zlotnik A. IL-7 is a growth and maintenance factor for mature and immature thymocyte subsets. *Int Immunol*. 1989;1(5):526–531. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2518727
102. Watson JD, Morrissey PJ, Namen AE, Conlon PJ, Widmer MB. Effect of IL-7 on the growth of fetal thymocytes in culture. *J Immunol*. 1989;143(4):1215–1222. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2787360
103. Peschon JJ, Morrissey PJ, Grabstein KH, et al. Early lymphocyte expansion is severely impaired in interleukin 7 receptor-deficient mice. *J Exp Med*. 1994;180(5):1955–1960. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7964471
104. von Freeden-Jeffry U, Vieiea P, Lucian LA, McNiel T, Burdach SE, Murray R. Lymphopenia in interleukin (IL)-7 gene-deleted mice identifies IL-7 as a nonredundant cytokine. *J Exp Med*. 1995;181(4):1519–1526. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7699333
105. Fry TJ, Mackall CL. Interleukin-7: from bench to clinic. *Blood*. 2002;99(11):3892–3904. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12010786
106. Tan JT, Dudl E, LeRoy E, et al. IL-7 is critical for homeostatic proliferation and survival of naive T cells. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2001;98(15):8732–8737. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11447288
107. Schluns KS, Kieper WC, Jameson SC, Lefrancois L. Interleukin-7 mediates the homeostasis of naive and memory CD8 T cells in vivo. *Nat Immunol*. 2000;1(5):426–432. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11062503
108. Schluns KS, Lefrancois L. Cytokine control of memory T-cell development and survival. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2003;3(4):269–279. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12669018
109. Seddon B, Tomlinson P, Zamoyska R. Interleukin 7 and T cell receptor signals regulate homeostasis of CD4 memory cells. *Nat Immunol*. 2003;4(7):680–686. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12808452
110. Chazen GD, Pereira GM, LeGros G, Gillis S, Shevach EM. Interleukin 7 is a T-cell growth factor. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1989;86(15):5923–5927. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2788279
111. Morrissey PJ, Goodwin RD, Nordan RP, et al. Recombinant interleukin 7, pre-B cell growth factor, has costimulatory activity on purified mature T cells. *J Exp Med*. 1989;169(3):707–716. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2522498
112. Sawa Y, Arima Y, Ogura H, et al. Hepatic interleukin-7 expression regulates T cell responses. *Immunity*. 2009;30(3):447–457. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19285437
113. Chowdhury D, Sen R. Transient IL-7/IL-7R signaling provides a mechanism for feedback inhibition of immunoglobulin heavy chain gene rearrangements. *Immunity*. 2003;18(2):229–241. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12594950
114. Malin S, McManus S, Cobaleda C, et al. Role of STAT5 in controlling cell survival and immunoglobulin gene recombination during pro-B cell development *Nat Immunol*. 2010;11(2):171–179. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19946273
115. Leonard WJ. The defective gene in X-linked severe combined immunodeficiency encodes a shared interleukin receptor subunit: implications for cytokine pleiotropy and redundancy. *Curr Opin Immunol*. 1994;6(4):631–635. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7946053
116. Guimond M, Veenstra RG, Grindler DJ, et al. Interleukin 7 signaling in dendritic cells regulates the homeostatic proliferation and niche size of CD4+ T cells. *Nat Immunol*. 2009;10(2):149–157. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19136960
117. Sportes C, Hakim FT, Memon SA, et al. Administration of rhIL-7 in humans increases in vivo TCR repertoire diversity by preferential expansion of naive T cell subsets. *J Exp Med*. 2008;205(7):1701–1714. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18573906

118. Pellegrini M, Calzascia T, Toe JG, et al. IL-7 engages multiple mechanisms to overcome chronic viral infection and limit organ pathology. *Cell*. 2011;144(4):601–613. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21295337
119. Brunton LL, Lupton SD. An STS in the human IL7 gene located at 8q12-13. *Nucleic Acids Res*. 1990;18(5):1315. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2320434
120. Goodwin RG, Friend D, Ziegler SF, et al. Cloning of the human and murine interleukin-7 receptors: demonstration of a soluble form and homology to a new receptor superfamily. *Cell*. 1990;60(6):941–951. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2317865
121. Xue HH, Kovanen PE, Pose-Masison CA, et al. IL-2 negatively regulates IL-7 receptor alpha chain expression in activated T lymphocytes. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2002;99(21): 13759–13764. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12354940
122. Park JH, Yu Q, Erman B, et al. Suppression of IL7Ralpha transcription by IL-7 and other prosurvival cytokines: a novel mechanism for maximizing IL-7-dependent T cell survival. *Immunity*. 2004;21(2):289–302. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15308108
123. Xue HH, Bollenbacher J, Rovella V, et al. GA binding protein regulates interleukin 7 receptor alpha-chain gene expression in T cells. *Nat Immunol*. 2004;5(10):1036–1044. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15361867
124. Chandele A, Joshi NS, Zhu J, Paul WE, Leonard WJ, Kaech SM. Formation of IL-7Ralphahigh and IL-7Ralphalow CD8 T cells during infection is regulated by the opposing functions of GABPalpha and Gfi-1. *J Immunol*. 2008;180(8):5309–5319. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18390712
125. DeKoter RP, Lee HJ, Singh H. PU.1 regulates expression of the interleukin-7 receptor in lymphoid progenitors. *Immunity*. 2002;16(2): 297–309. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11869689
126. Van Snick J, Goethals A, Renauld JC, et al. Cloning and characterization of a cDNA for a new mouse T cell growth factor (P40). *J Exp Med*. 1989;169(1):363–368. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2521242
127. Demoulin JB, Renauld JC. Interleukin 9 and its receptor: an overview of structure and function. *Int Rev Immunol*. 1998;16(3-4):345–364. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9505195
128. Hultner L, Moeller J, Schmitt E, et al. Thiol-sensitive mast cell lines derived from mouse bone marrow respond to a mast cell growth-enhancing activity different from both IL-3 and IL-4. *J Immunol*. 1989;142(10):3440–3446. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2785556
129. Erpenbeck VJ, Hohlfeld JM, Volkmann B, et al. Segmental allergen challenge in patients with atopic asthma leads to increased IL-9 expression in bronchoalveolar lavage fluid lymphocytes. *J Allergy Clin Immunol*. 2003;111(6):1319–1327. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12789235
130. Temann UA, Ray P, Flavell RA. Pulmonary overexpression of IL-9 induces Th2 cytokine expression, leading to immune pathology. *J Clin Invest*. 2002;109(1):29–39. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11781348
131. Wilhelm C, Hirota K, Stieglitz B, et al. An IL-9 fate reporter demonstrates the induction of an innate IL-9 response in lung inflammation. *Nat Immunol*. 2011;12(11):1071–1077. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21983833
132. Renauld JC, Vink A, Louahed J, Van Snick J. Interleukin-9 is a major antiapoptotic factor for thymic lymphomas. *Blood*. 1995;85(5):1300–1305. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7858260
133. Townsend JM, Fallon GP, Matthews JD, Smith P, Jolin EH, McKenzie NA. L-9-deficient mice establish fundamental roles for IL-9 in pulmonary mastocytosis and goblet cell hyperplasia but not T cell development. *Immunity*. 2000;13(4):573–583. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11070175
134. Temann UA, Geba GP, Rankin JA, Flavell RA. Expression of interleukin 9 in the lungs of transgenic mice causes airway inflammation, mast cell hyperplasia, and bronchial hyperresponsiveness. *J Exp Med*. 1998; 188(7):1307–1320. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9763610
135. McMillan SJ, Bishop B, Townsend MJ, McKenzie AN, Lloyd CM. The absence of interleukin 9 does not affect the development of allergen-induced pulmonary inflammation nor airway hyperreactivity. *J Exp Med*. 2002;195(1):51–57. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11781365
136. Renauld JC. New insights into the role of cytokines in asthma. *J Clin Pathol*. 2001;54(8):577–589. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11477111
137. Staudt V, Bothur E, Klein M, et al. Interferon-regulatory factor 4 is essential for the developmental program of T helper 9 cells. *Immunity*. 2010;33(2):192–202. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20674401
138. Noelle RJ, Nowak EC. Cellular sources and immune functions of interleukin-9. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2010;10(10):683–687. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20847745
139. Dardalhon V, Awasthi A, Kwon H, et al. IL-4 inhibits TGF-beta-induced Foxp3+ T cells and, together with TGF-beta, generates IL-9+ IL-10+ Foxp3(-) effector T cells. *Nat Immunol*. 2008;9(12):1347–1355. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18997793
140. Veldhoen M, Uyttekhove C, van Snick J, et al. Transforming growth factor-beta 'reprograms' the differentiation of T helper 2 cells and promotes an interleukin 9-producing subset. *Nat Immunol*. 2008; 9(12):1341–1346. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18931678
141. Elyaman W, Bradshaw EM, Uyttenhove C, et al. IL-9 induces differentiation of TH17 cells and enhances function of FoxP3+ natural regulatory T cells. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2009;106(31):12885–12890. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19433802
142. Nowak EC, Weaver CT, Turner H, et al. IL-9 as a mediator of Th17-driven inflammatory disease. *J Exp Med*. 2009;206(8):1653–1660. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19596803
143. Modi WS, Pollock DD, Mock BA, et al. Regional localization of the human glutaminase (GLS) and interleukin-9 (IL9) genes by in situ hybridization. *Cytogenet Cell Genet*. 1991;57(2-3):114–116. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1680606
144. Renauld JC, Druez C, Kermouni A, et al. Expression cloning of the murine and human interleukin 9 receptor cDNAs. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1992;89(12):5690–5694. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1376929
145. Grabstein KH, Eisenman J, Shanebeck K, et al. Cloning of a T cell growth factor that interacts with the beta chain of the interleukin-2 receptor. *Science*. 1994;264(5161):965–968. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8178155
146. Burton JD, Bamford RN, Peters C, et al. A lymphokine, provisionally designated interleukin T and produced by a human adult T-cell leukemia line, stimulates T-cell proliferation and the induction of lymphokineactivated killer cells. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1994;91(11): 4935–4939. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8197160
147. Waldmann TA, Tagaya Y. The multifaceted regulation of interleukin-15 expression and the role of this cytokine in NK cell differentiation and host response to intracellular pathogens. *Ann Rev Immunol*. 1999;17:19–49. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10358752
148. Waldmann TA. The biology of interleukin-2 and interleukin-15: implications for cancer therapy and vaccine design. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2006;6(8):595–601. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16868550
149. Carson WE, Gigi JG, Lindemann MJ, et al. Interleukin (IL) 15 is a novel cytokine that activates human natural killer cells via components of the IL-2 receptor. *J Exp Med*. 1994;180(4):1395–1403. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7523571
150. Lodolce JP, Boone DL, Chai S, et al. IL-15 receptor maintains lymphoid homeostasis by supporting lymphocyte homing and proliferation. *Immunity*. 1998;9(5):669–676. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9846488
151. Kennedy MK, Glaccum M, Brown SN, et al. Reversible defects in natural killer and memory CD8 T cell lineages in interleukin 15-deficient mice. *J Exp Med*. 2000;191(5):771–780. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10704459
152. Zhao H, Nguyen H, Kang J. Interleukin 15 controls the generation of the restricted T cell receptor repertoire of gamma delta intestinal intraepithelial lymphocytes. *Nat Immunol*. 2005;6(12):1263–1271. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16273100
153. Kuwajima S, Sato T, Ishida K, Tada H, Tezuka H, Ohteki T. Interleukin 15-dependent crosstalk between conventional and plasmacytoid

dendritic cells is essential for CpG-induced immune activation. *Nat Immunol*. 2006;7(7):740–746.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16715101
154. Bamford RN, Grant AJ, Burton JD, et al. The interleukin (IL) 2 receptor beta chain is shared by IL-2 and a cytokine, provisionally designated IL-T, that stimulates T-cell proliferation and the induction of lymphokine-activated killer cells. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1994; 91(11):4940–4944.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8197161
155. Giri JG, Kumaki S, Ahdieh M, et al. Identification and cloning of a novel IL-15 binding protein that is structurally related to the alpha chain of the IL-2 receptor. *EMBO J*. 1995;14(15):3654–3663.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7641685
156. Anderson DM, Kumaki S, Ahdieh M, et al. Functional characterization of the human interleukin-15 receptor alpha chain and close linkage of IL15RA and IL2RA genes. *J Biol Chem*. 1995;270(50):29862–29869.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8530383
157. Dubois S, Mariner J, Waldmann TA, Tagaya Y. IL-15Ralpha recycles and presents IL-15 In trans to neighboring cells. *Immunity*. 2002; 17(5):537–547.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12433361
158. Wu Z, Xue HH, Bernard J, et al. The IL-15 receptor {alpha} chain cytoplasmic domain is critical for normal IL-15Ralpha function but is not required for trans-presentation. *Blood*. 2008;112(12):4411–4419.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18796634
159. Wuest SC, Edwan JH, Martin JF, et al. A role for interleukin-2 trans-presentation in dendritic cell-mediated T cell activation in humans, as revealed by daclizumab therapy. *Nat Med*. 2011;17(5):604–609.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21532597
160. Lorenzen I, Dingley AJ, Jacques Y, Grotzinger J. The structure of the interleukin-15 alpha receptor and its implications for ligand binding. *J Biol Chem*. 2006;281(10):6642–6647.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16377614
161. Waldmann TA, Dubois S, Tagaya Y. Contrasting roles of IL-2 and IL-15 in the life and death of lymphocytes: implications for immunotherapy. *Immunity*. 2001;14(2):105–110.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11239443
162. Ma A, Koka R, Burkett P. Diverse functions of IL-2, IL-15, and IL-7 in lymphoid homeostasis. *Ann Rev Immunol*. 2006;24:657–679.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16551262
163. Oh S, Berzofsky JA, Burke DS, Waldmann TA, Perera LP. Coadministration of HIV vaccine vectors with vaccinia viruses expressing IL-15 but not IL-2 induces long-lasting cellular immunity. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2003;100(6):3392–3397.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12626740
164. Steel JC, Waldmann TA, Morris JC. Interleukin-15 biology and its therapeutic implications in cancer. *Trends Pharmacol Sci*. 2012;33(1): 35–41.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22032984
165. Spolski R, Leonard WJ. Interleukin-21: basic biology and implications for cancer and autoimmunity. *Ann Rev Immunol*. 2008;26:57–79.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17953510
166. Parrish-Novak J, Dillon SR, Nelson A, et al. Interleukin 21 and its receptor are involved in NK cell expansion and regulation of lymphocyte function. *Nature*. 2000;408(6808):57–63.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11081504
167. Zeng R, Spolski R, Finkelstein SE, et al. Synergy of IL-21 and IL-15 in regulating CD8+ T cell expansion and function. *J Exp Med*. 2005; 201(1):139–148.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15630141
168. Korn T, Bettelli E, Gao W, et al. IL-21 initiates an alternative pathway to induce proinflammatory T(H)17 cells. *Nature*. 2007;448(7152): 484–487.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15630141
169. Zhou L, Ivanov IL, Spolski R, et al. IL-6 programs T(H)-17 cell differentiation by promoting sequential engagement of the IL-21 and IL-23 pathways. *Nat Immunol*. 2007;8(9):967–974.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17581537
170. Vogelzang A, McGuire HM, Yu D,Sprent J, Mackay CR, King C. A fundamental role for interleukin-21 in the generation of T follicular helper cells. *Immunity*. 2008;29(1):127–137.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18602282
171. Harrington LE, Hatton RD, Mangan PR, et al. Interleukin 17-producing CD4+ effector T cells develop via a lineage distinct from the T helper type 1 and 2 lineages. *Nat Immunol*. 2005;6(11):1123–1132.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16200070
172. Park H, Li Z, Yan XO, et al. A distinct lineage of CD4 T cells regulates tissue inflammation by producing interleukin 17. *Nat Immunol*. 2005; 6(11):1133–1141.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16200068
173. Ivanov II, McKenzie BS, Zhou L, et al. The orphan nuclear receptor RORgammat directs the differentiation program of proinflammatory IL-17+ T helper cells. *Cell*. 2006;126(6):1121–1133.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16990136
174. Weaver CT, Harrington LE, Mangan PR, Gavrieli M, Murphy KM. Th17: an effector CD4 T cell lineage with regulatory T cell ties. *Immunity*. 2006;24(6):677–688.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16782025
175. Cua DJ, Sherlock J, Chen Y, et al. Interleukin-23 rather than interleukin-12 is the critical cytokine for autoimmune inflammation of the brain. *Nature*. 2003;421(6924):744–748.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12610626
176. Veldhoen M, Hocking RJ, Flavell RA, Stockinger B. Signals mediated by transforming growth factor-beta initiate autoimmune encephalomyelitis, but chronic inflammation is needed to sustain disease. *Nat Immunol*. 2006;7(11):1151–1156.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16998492
177. Bettelli E, Carrier Y, Gao W, et al. Reciprocal developmental pathways for the generation of pathogenic effector TH17 and regulatory T cells. *Nature*. 2006;441(7090):235–238.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16648838
178. Ozaki K, Spolski R, Ettinger R, et al. Regulation of B cell differentiation and plasma cell generation by IL-21, a novel inducer of Blimp-1 and Bcl-6. *J Immunol*. 2004;173(9):5361–5371.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15494482
179. Ettinger R, Sims GP, Fairhurst AM, et al. IL-21 induces differentiation of human naive and memory B cells into antibody-secreting plasma cells. *J Immunol*. 2005;175(12):7867–7879.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16339522
180. Kwon H, Thierry-Mieg D, Thierry-Mieg J, et al. Analysis of interleukin-21-induced Prdm1 gene regulation reveals functional cooperation of STAT3 and IRF4 transcription factors. *Immunity*. 2009;31(6): 941–952.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20064451
181. Leonard WJ, Spolski R. Interleukin-21: a modulator of lymphoid proliferation, apoptosis and differentiation. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2005;5(9): 688–698.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16138102
182. Ozaki K, Spolski R, Feng CG, et al. A critical role for IL-21 in regulating immunoglobulin production. *Science*. 2002;298(5598):1630–1634.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12446913
183. Wang G, Tschoi M, Spolski R, et al. In vivo antitumor activity of interleukin 21 mediated by natural killer cells. *Cancer Res*. 2003;63(24):9016–9022.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14695220
184. Kasaian MT, Whitters MJ, Carter LL, et al. IL-21 limits NK cell responses and promotes antigen-specific T cell activation: a mediator of the transition from innate to adaptive immunity. *Immunity*. 2002; 16(4):559–569.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11970879
185. Hinrichs CS, Spolski R, Paulos CM, et al. IL-2 and IL-21 confer opposing differentiation programs to CD8+ T cells for adoptive immunotherapy. *Blood*. 2008;111(11):5326–5333.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18276844
186. Spolski R, Kashyap M, Robinson C, Yu Z, Leonard WJ. IL-21 signaling is critical for the development of type I diabetes in the NOD mouse. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2008;105(37):14028–14033.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18779574
187. Bubier JA, Sproule TJ, Foreman O, et al. A critical role for IL-21 receptor signaling in the pathogenesis of systemic lupus erythematosus in BXSB-Yaa mice. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2009;106(5):1518–1523.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19164519
188. Wang L, Yu CR, Kim HP, et al. Key role for IL-21 in experimental autoimmune uveitis. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2011;108(23):9542–9547.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21593413

189. Spolski R, Kim HP, Zhu W, Levy DE, Leonard WJ. IL-21 mediates suppressive effects via its induction of IL-10. *J Immunol*. 2009;182(5):2859–2867. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19234181
190. Spolski R, Leonard WJ. IL-21 is an immune activator that also mediates suppression via IL-10. *Crit Rev Immunol*. 2009;30(6):559–570. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21175418
191. Cui W, Liu Y, Weinstein JS, Craft J, Kaech SM. An interleukin-21-interleukin-10-STAT3 pathway is critical for functional maturation of memory CD8+ T cells. *Immunity*. 2011;35(5):792–805. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22118527
192. Siegel AM, Heimall J, Freeman AF, et al. A critical role for STAT3 transcription factor signaling in the development and maintenance of human T cell memory. *Immunity*. 2011;35(5):806–818. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22118528
193. Elsaesser H, Sauer K, Brooks DG. IL-21 is required to control chronic viral infection. *Science*. 2009;324(5934):1569–1572. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19423777
194. Spolski R, Wang L, Wan CK, et al. IL-21 Promotes the pathologic immune response to pneumovirus infection. *J Immunol*. 2012;188(4):1924–1932. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22238461
195. Publicover J, Goodsell A, Nishimura S, et al. IL-21 is pivotal in determining age-dependent effectiveness of immune responses in a mouse model of human hepatitis B. *J Clin Invest*. 2011;121(3):1154–1162. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21393863
196. Ozaki K, Kikly K, Michalovich D, Young PR, Leonard WJ. Cloning of a type I cytokine receptor most related to the IL-2 receptor beta chain. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2000;97(21):11439–11444. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11016959
197. Noguchi M, Yi H, Rosenblatt HM, et al. Interleukin-2 receptor gamma chain mutation results in X-linked severe combined immunodeficiency in humans. *Cell*. 1993;73(1):147–157. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8462096
198. Conley ME. Molecular approaches to analysis of X-linked immunodeficiencies. *Ann Rev Immunol*. 1992;10:215–238. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1590986
199. Fischer A, Cavazzana-Calvo M, De Saint Basile G, et al. Naturally occurring primary deficiencies of the immune system. *Ann Rev Immunol*. 1997;15:93–124. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9143683
200. Buckley RH. Primary immunodeficiency diseases due to defects in lymphocytes. *N Engl J Med*. 2000;343(18):1313–1324. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11058677
201. Cunningham-Rundles C, Ponda PP. Molecular defects in T- and B-cell primary immunodeficiency diseases. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2005;5(11):880–892. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16261175
202. Haddad E, Le Deist F, Aucourturier P, et al. Long-term chimerism and B-cell function after bone marrow transplantation in patients with severe combined immunodeficiency with B cells: a single-center study of 22 patients. *Blood*. 1999;94(8):2923–2930. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10515898
203. Weinberg K, Parkman R. Severe combined immunodeficiency due to a specific defect in the production of interleukin-2. *N Engl J Med*. 1990;322(24):1718–1723. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2342538
204. Chatila T, Castigli E, Pahwa R, et al. Primary combined immunodeficiency resulting from defective transcription of multiple T-cell lymphokine genes. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1990;87(24):10033–10037. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2263604
205. Schorle H, Holtschke T, Hunig T, Schimpl A, Horak I. Development and function of T cells in mice rendered interleukin-2 deficient by gene targeting. *Nature*. 1991;352(6336):621–624. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1830926
206. Puel A, Ziegler SF, Buckley RH, Leonard WJ. Defective IL7R expression in T(-)B(+)NK(+) severe combined immunodeficiency. *Nat Genetics*. 1998;20(4):394–397. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9843216
207. Puel A, Leonard WJ. Mutations in the gene for the IL-7 receptor result in T(-)B(+)NK(+) severe combined immunodeficiency disease. *Curr Opin Immunol*. 2000;12(4):468–473. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10899029
208. Kuhn R, Rajewsky K, Muller W. Generation and analysis of interleukin-4 deficient mice. *Science*. 1991;254(5032):707–710. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1948049
209. Kopf M, Le Gros G, Bachmann M, Lamers MC, Bluethmann H, Kohler G. Disruption of the murine IL-4 gene blocks Th2 cytokine responses. *Nature*. 1993;362(6417):245–248. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8384701
210. Sadlack B, Kuhn R, Schorle H, et al. Development and proliferation of lymphocytes in mice deficient for both interleukins-2 and -4. *Eur J Immunol*. 1994;24(1):281–284. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7517363
211. DiSanto JP, Muller W, Guy-Grand D, Fischer A, Rajewsky K. Lymphoid development in mice with a targeted deletion of the interleukin 2 receptor gamma chain. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1995;92(2):377–381. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7831294
212. Cao X, Shores EW, Hu-Li J, et al. Defective lymphoid development in mice lacking expression of the common cytokine receptor gamma chain. *Immunity*. 1995;2(3):223–238. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7697543
213. Leonard WJ. Dysfunctional cytokine receptor signaling in severe combined immunodeficiency. *J Investig Med*. 1996;44(6):304–311. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8795294
214. Takeshita T, Asao H, Suzuki J, Sugamura K. An associated molecule, p64, with high-affinity interleukin 2 receptor. *Int Immunol*. 1990;2(5):477–480. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2085489
215. Nakamura Y, Russell SM, Mess SA, et al. Heterodimerization of the IL-2 receptor beta- and gamma-chain cytoplasmic domains is required for signalling. *Nature*. 1994;369(6478):330–333. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8183373
216. Nelson BH, Lord JD, Greenberg PD. Cytoplasmic domains of the interleukin-2 receptor beta and gamma chains mediate the signal for T-cell proliferation. *Nature*. 1994;369(6478):333–336. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7514277
217. Willerford DM, Chen J, Ferry JA, Davidson L, Ma A, Alt FW. Interleukin-2 receptor alpha chain regulates the size and content of the peripheral lymphoid compartment. *Immunity*. 1995;3(4):521–530. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7584142
218. Suzuki H, Kindug TM, Surlonger C, et al. Deregulated T cell activation and autoimmunity in mice lacking interleukin-2 receptor beta. *Science*. 1995;268(5216):1472–1476. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7770771
219. Nakajima H, Shores EW, Noguchi M, Leonard WJ. The common cytokine receptor gamma chain plays an essential role in regulating lymphoid homeostasis. *J Exp Med*. 1997;185(2):189–195. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9016868
220. MetcalfD. *The Hematopoietic Colony Stimulating Factors*. Amsterdam, The Netherlands: Elsevier; 1984.
221. Hara T, Miyajima A. Function and signal transduction mediated by the interleukin 3 receptor system in hematopoiesis. *Stem Cells*. 1996;14(6):605–618. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8948019
222. Geijsen N, Koenderman L, Coffer PJ. Specificity in cytokine signal transduction: lessons learned from the IL-3/IL-5/GM-CSF receptor family. *Cytokine Growth Factor Rev*. 2001;12(1):19–25. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11312115
223. Hida S, Yamasaki S, Sakamoto Y, et al. Fc receptor gamma-chain, a constitutive component of the IL-3 receptor, is required for IL-3-induced IL-4 production in basophils. *Nat Immunol*. 2009;10(2):214–222. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19098920
224. Codarri L, Gyulveszi G, Tosevski V, et al. RORgammat drives production of the cytokine GM-CSF in helper T cells, which is essential for the effector phase of autoimmune neuroinflammation. *Nat Immunol*. 2011;12(6):560–567. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21516112
225. El-Behi M, Ciric B, Dai H, et al. The encephalitogenicity of T(H)17 cells is dependent on IL-1- and IL-23-induced production of the cytokine GM-CSF. *Nat Immunol*. 2011;12(6):568–575. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21516111
226. Sonderegger I, Iezzi G, Maier R, Schmitz N, Kurrer M, Kopf M. GM-CSF mediates autoimmunity by enhancing IL-6-dependent Th17 cell development and survival. *J Exp Med*. 2008;205(10):2281–2294. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18779348

227. Kopf M, Brombacker F, Hodgkin PD, et al. IL-5-deficient mice have a developmental defect in CD5+ B-1 cells and lack eosinophilia but have normal antibody and cytotoxic T cell responses. *Immunity*. 1996; 4(1):15–24.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8574848
228. Yoshida T, Ikuta K, Sugaya H, et al. Defective B-1 cell development and impaired immunity against Angiostrongylus cantonensis in IL-5R alpha-deficient mice. *Immunity*. 1996;4(5):483–494.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8630733
229. Endo Y, Iwamura C, Kuwahara M, et al. Eomesodermin controls interleukin-5 production in memory T helper 2 cells through inhibition of activity of the transcription factor GATA3. *Immunity*. 2011;35(5):733–745.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22118525
230. Itoh N, Yonehara S, Schreurs J, et al. Cloning of an interleukin-3 receptor gene: a member of a distinct receptor gene family. *Science*. 1990;247(4940):324–327.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2404337
231. Hara T, Miyajima A. Two distinct functional high affinity receptors for mouse interleukin-3 (IL-3). *EMBO J*. 1992;11(5):1875–1884.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1582416
232. Kitamura T, Sato N, Arai K, Miyajima A. Expression cloning of the human IL-3 receptor cDNA reveals a shared beta subunit for the human IL-3 and GM-CSF receptors. *Cell*. 1991;66(6):1165–1174.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1833064
233. Takaki S, Tominaga A, Hitoshi Y, et al. Molecular cloning and expression of the murine interleukin-5 receptor. *EMBO J*. 1990;9(13):4367–4374.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2265612
234. Tavernier J, Devos R, Cornelis S, et al. A human high affinity interleukin-5 receptor (IL5R) is composed of an IL5-specific alpha chain and a beta chain shared with the receptor for GM-CSF. *Cell*. 1991;66(6):1175–1184.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1833065
235. Gearing DP, King JA, Gough NM, Nicola NA. Expression cloning of a receptor for human granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor. *EMBO J*. 1989;8(12):3667–3676.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2555171
236. Park LS, Martin U, Sorenson R, et al. Cloning of the low-affinity murine granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor receptor and reconstitution of a high-affinity receptor complex. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1992;89(10):4295–4299.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1533931
237. Gorman DM, Itoh N, Kitamura T, et al. Cloning and expression of a gene encoding an interleukin 3 receptor-like protein: identification of another member of the cytokine receptor gene family. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1990;87(14):5459–5463.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1695379
238. Hayashida K, Kitamura T, Gorman DM, Arai K, Yokota T, Miyajima A. Molecular cloning of a second subunit of the receptor for human granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor (GM-CSF): reconstitution of a high-affinity GM-CSF receptor. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1190;87(24):9655–9659.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1702217
239. Miyajima A, Kitamura T, Harada N, Yokota T, Arai K. Cytokine receptors and signal transduction. *Ann Rev Immunol*. 1992;10:295–331.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1590989
240. Sakamaki K, Miyajima I, Kitamura T, Miyajima A. Critical cytoplasmic domains of the common beta subunit of the human GM-CSF, IL-3 and IL-5 receptors for growth signal transduction and tyrosine phosphorylation. *EMBO J*. 1992;11(10):3541–3549.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1396555
241. Cornelis S, Fache I, Van der Heyden J, et al. Characterization of critical residues in the cytoplasmic domain of the human interleukin-5 receptor alpha chain required for growth signal transduction. *Eur J Immunol*. 1995;25(7):1857–1864.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7542592
242. Kouro T, Kikuchi Y, Kanazawa H, et al. Critical proline residues of the cytoplasmic domain of the IL-5 receptor alpha chain and its function in IL-5-mediated activation of JAK kinase and STAT5. *Int Immunol*. 1996;8(2):237–245.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8671609
243. Nishinakamura R, Miyajima A, Mee PJ, Tybulewicz VL, Murray R. Hematopoiesis in mice lacking the entire granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor/interleukin-3/interleukin-5 functions. *Blood*. 1996;88(7):2458–2464.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8839836
244. Hilton DJ, Hilton AA, Raicevic A, et al. Cloning of a murine IL-11 receptor alpha-chain; requirement for gp130 for high affinity binding and signal transduction. *EMBO J*. 1994;13(20):4765–4775.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7957045
245. Hibi M, Murakami M, Saito M, Hirano T, Taga T, Kishimoto T. Molecular cloning and expression of an IL-6 signal transducer, gp130. *Cell*. 1990;63(6):1149–1157.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2261637
246. Gearing DP, Corneau MR, Friend DJ, et al. The IL-6 signal transducer, gp130: an oncostatin M receptor and affinity converter for the LIF receptor. *Science*. 1992;255(5050):1434–1437.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1542794
247. Taga T, et al. Functional inhibition of hematopoietic and neurotrophic cytokines by blocking the interleukin 6 signal transducer gp130. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1992;89(22):10998–11001.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1438305
248. Yin T, Taga T, Tsang ML, et al. Involvement of IL-6 signal transducer gp130 in IL-11-mediated signal transduction. *J Immunol*. 1993;151(5): 2555–2561.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8360477
249. Pennica D, Shaw KJ, Swanson TA, et al. Cardiotrophin-1. Biological activities and binding to the leukemia inhibitory factor receptor/gp130 signaling complex. *J Biol Chem*. 1995;270(18):10915–10922.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7738033
250. Taga T, Kishimoto T. Gp130 and the interleukin-6 family of cytokines. *Ann Rev Immunol*. 1997;15:797–819.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9143707
251. Miyajima A, Kinshita T, Tanaka M, Kamiya A, Mukouyama Y, Hara T. Role of Oncostatin M in hematopoiesis and liver development. *Cytokine Growth Factor Rev*. 2000;11(3):177–183.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10817961
252. Bravo J, Heath JK. Receptor recognition by gp130 cytokines. *EMBO J*. 2000;19(11):2399–2411.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10835339
253. Senaldi G, Varnum BC, Sarmiento U, et al. Novel neurotrophin-1/B cell-stimulating factor-3: a cytokine of the IL-6 family. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1999;96(20):11458–11463.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10500198
254. TrinchieriG,Pflanz S, Kastelein RA. The IL-12 family of heterodimeric cytokines: new players in the regulation of T cell responses. *Immunity*. 2003;19(5):641–644.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14614851
255. Pflanz S, Hibbert L, Mattson J, et al. WSX-1 and glycoprotein 130 constitute a signal-transducing receptor for IL-27. *J Immunol*. 2004; 172(4):2225–2231.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14764690
256. Hirano T, Yaukawa K, Harada H, et al. Complementary DNA for a novel human interleukin (BSF-2) that induces B lymphocytes to produce immunoglobulin. *Nature*. 1986;324(6092):73–76.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3491322
257. Kishimoto T. Interleukin-6: from basic science to medicine—40 years in immunology. *Ann Rev Immunol*. 2005;23:1–21.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15771564
258. Tanaka T, Narazaki M, Kishimoto T. Therapeutic targeting of the interleukin-6 receptor. *Ann Rev Pharmacol Toxicol*. 2012;52:199–219.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21910626
259. Chen Q, Wang WC, Bruce R, et al. Central role of IL-6 receptor signal-transducing chain gp130 in activation of L-selectin adhesion by fever-range thermal stress. *Immunity*. 2004;20(1):59–70.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14738765
260. Yamasaki K, Taga T, Hirata Y, et al. Cloning and expression of the human interleukin-6 (BSF-2/IFN beta 2) receptor. *Science*. 1988; 241(4867):825–828.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3136546
261. Rose-John S, Neurath MF. IL-6 trans-signaling: the heat is on. *Immunity*. 2004;20(1):2–4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14738759
262. Murakami M, Hibi M, Nakagawa N, et al. IL-6-induced homodimerization of gp130 and associated activation of a tyrosine kinase. *Science*. 1993;260(5115):1808–1810.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8511589

263. Paonessa G, Graziani R, De Serio A, et al. Two distinct and independent sites on IL-6 trigger gp 130 dimer formation and signalling. *EMBO J*. 1995;14(9):1942–1951. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7744001
264. Ward LD, Howlett GJ, Discolo G, et al. High affinity interleukin-6 receptor is a hexameric complex consisting of two molecules each of interleukin-6, interleukin-6 receptor, and gp-130. *J Biol Chem*. 1994;269(37):23286–23289. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8083235
265. Skiniotis G, Boulanger MJ, Garcia KC, Walz T. Signaling conformations of the tall cytokine receptor gp130 when in complex with IL-6 and IL-6 receptor. *Nat Struct Mol Biol*. 2005;12(6):545–551. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15895091
266. Du XX, Williams DA. Interleukin-11: a multifunctional growth factor derived from the hematopoietic microenvironment. *Blood*. 1994;83(8):2023–2030. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7512836
267. Goldman SJ. Preclinical biology of interleukin 11: a multifunctional hematopoietic cytokine with potent thrombopoietic activity. *Stem Cells*. 1995;13(5):462–471. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8528095
268. Paul SR, Bennett D, Calvetti JA, et al. Molecular cloning of a cDNA encoding interleukin 11, a stromal cell-derived lymphopoietic and hematopoietic cytokine. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1990;87(19):7512–7516. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2145578
269. Putoczki T, Ernst M. More than a sidekick: the IL-6 family cytokine IL-11 links inflammation to cancer. *J Leukocyte Biol*. 2010;88(6):1109–1117. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20610798
270. Kobayashi S, Teramura M, Oshimi K, Mizoguchi H. Interleukin-11. *Leuk Lymphoma*. 1995;15(1-2):45–49. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7532057
271. Kawashima I, Ohsumi J, Mita-Honjo K, et al. Molecular cloning of cDNA encoding adipogenesis inhibitory factor and identity with interleukin-11. *FEBS Lett*. 1991;283(2):199–202. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1828438
272. Zheng T, Zhu Z, Wang J, Homer RJ, Elias JA. IL-11: insights in asthma from overexpression transgenic modeling. *J Allergy Clin Immunol*. 2001;108(4):489–496. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11590369
273. Cherel M, Sorel M, Lebeau B, et al. Molecular cloning of two isoforms of a receptor for the human hematopoietic cytokine interleukin-11. *Blood*. 1995;86(7):2534–2540. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7670098
274. Baumann H, Wang Y, Morella KK, et al. Complex of the soluble IL-11 receptor and IL-11 acts as IL-6-type cytokine in hepatic and nonhepatic cells. *J Immunol*. 1996;157(1):284–290. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8683127
275. Neddermann P, Graziani R, Ciliberto G, Paonessa G. Functional expression of soluble human interleukin-11 (IL-11) receptor alpha and stoichiometry of in vitro IL-11 receptor complexes with gp130. *J Biol Chem*. 1996;271(48):30986–30991. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8940087
276. Gearing DP, Gough NM, King JA, et al. Molecular cloning and expression of cDNA encoding a murine myeloid leukaemia inhibitory factor (LIF). *EMBO J*. 1987;6(13):3995–4002. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3127201
277. Hilton DJ, Gough NM. Leukemia inhibitory factor: a biological perspective. *J Cell Biochem*. 1991;46(1):21–26. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1908473
278. Yamamori T, Fukada K, Aebersold R, et al. The cholinergic neuronal differentiation factor from heart cells is identical to leukemia inhibitory factor. *Science*. 1989;246(4936):1412–1416. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2512641
279. Piccinni MP, Scaletti C, Vultaggio A, Maggi E, Romagnani S. Defective production of LIF, M-CSF and Th2-type cytokines by T cells at fetomaternal interface is associated with pregnancy loss. *J Reprod Immunol*. 2001;52(1-2):35–43. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11600176
280. Gearing DP, Thut CJ, VandeBos T, et al. Leukemia inhibitory factor receptor is structurally related to the IL-6 signal transducer, gp130. *EMBO J*. 1991;10(10):2839–2848. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1915266
281. Cao W, Yang Y, Wang Z, et al. Leukemia inhibitory factor inhibits T helper 17 cell differentiation and confers treatment effects of neural progenitor cell therapy in autoimmune disease. *Immunity*. 2011;35(2):273–284. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21835648
282. Metcalfe SM. LIF in the regulation of T-cell fate and as a potential therapeutic. *Genes Immunity*. 2011;12(3):157–168. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21368774
283. Pera MF, Tam PP. Extrinsic regulation of pluripotent stem cells. *Nature*. 2010;465(7299):713–720. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20535200
284. Lin LF, Mismer D, Lile JD, et al. Purification, cloning, and expression of ciliary neurotrophic factor (CNTF). *Science*. 1989;246(4933):1023–1025. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2587985
285. Stockli KA, Lottspeich F, Sendtner M, et al. Molecular cloning, expression and regional distribution of rat ciliary neurotrophic factor. *Nature*. 1989;342(6252):920–923. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2594085
286. Davis S, Aldrich TH, Valensuela DM, et al. The receptor for ciliary neurotrophic factor. *Science*. 1991;253(5015):59–63. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1648265
287. Davis S, Aldrich TH, Stahl N, et al. LIFR beta and gp130 as heterodimerizing signal transducers of the tripartite CNTF receptor. *Science*. 1993;260(5115):1805–1808. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8390097
288. De Serio A, Graziani R, Laufer R, Ciliberto G, Paonessa G. In vitro binding of ciliary neurotrophic factor to its receptors: evidence for the formation of an IL-6-type hexameric complex. *J Mol Biol*. 1995;254(5):795–800. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7500350
289. Zarling JM, Shoyab M, Marguardt H, et al. Oncostatin M: a growth regulator produced by differentiated histiocytic lymphoma cells. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1986;83(24):9739–9743. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3540948
290. Malik N, Kallestad JC, Gunderson NL, et al. Molecular cloning, sequence analysis, and functional expression of a novel growth regulator, oncostatin M. *Mol Cell Biol*. 1989;9(7):2847–2853. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2779549
291. Nair BC, DeVico AL, Nakamura S, et al. Identification of a major growth factor for AIDS-Kaposi's sarcoma cells as oncostatin M. *Science*. 1992;255(5050):1430–1432. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1542792
292. Miles SA, Martinez-Maza O, Rezai A, et al. Oncostatin M as a potent mitogen for AIDS-Kaposi's sarcoma-derived cells. *Science*. 1992;255(5050):1432–1434. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1542793
293. Mosley B, De Imus C, Friend D, et al. Dual oncostatin M (OSM) receptors. Cloning and characterization of an alternative signaling subunit conferring OSM-specific receptor activation. *J Biol Chem*. 1996;271(51):32635–32643. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8999038
294. Pennica D, King KL, Shaw KJ, et al. Expression cloning of cardiotrophin 1, a cytokine that induces cardiac myocyte hypertrophy. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1995;92(4):1142–1146. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7862649
295. Pennica D, Wood WI, Chien KR. Cardiotrophin-1: a multifunctional cytokine that signals via LIF receptor-gp 130 dependent pathways. *Cytokine Growth Factor Rev*. 1996;7(1):81–91. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8864356
296. Latchman DS. Cardiotrophin-1: a novel cytokine and its effects in the heart and other tissues. *Pharmacol Ther*. 2000;85(1):29–37. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10674712
297. Pennica D, Arce V, Swanson TA, et al. Cardiotrophin-1, a cytokine present in embryonic muscle, supports long-term survival of spinal motoneurons. *Neuron*. 1996;17(1):63–74. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8755479
298. Robledo O, Fourcin M, Chevalier S, et al. Signaling of the cardiotrophin-1 receptor. Evidence for a third receptor component. *J Biol Chem*. 1997;272(8):4855–4863. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9030543
299. Elson GC, Lelievre E, Guillet C, et al. CLF associates with CLC to form a functional heteromeric ligand for the CNTF receptor complex. *Nat Neurosci*. 2000;3(9):867–872. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10966616

300. Pflanz S, Timans JC, Cheung J, et al. IL-27, a heterodimeric cytokine composed of EBI3 and p28 protein, induces proliferation of naive CD4(+) T cells. *Immunity*. 2002;16(6):779–790. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12121660
301. Stumhofer JS, Tait ED, Quinn WJ 3rd, et al. A role for IL-27p28 as an antagonist of gp130-mediated signaling. *Nat Immunol*. 2010;11(12): 1119–1126. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21057510
302. Hunter CA. New IL-12-family members: IL-23 and IL-27, cytokines with divergent functions. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2005;5(7):521–531. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15999093
303. Kastelein RA, Hunter CA, Cua DJ. Discovery and biology of IL-23 and IL-27: related but functionally distinct regulators of inflammation. *Ann Rev Immunol*. 2007;25:221–242. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17291186
304. Ozaki K, Leonard WJ. Cytokine and cytokine receptor pleiotropy and redundancy. *J Biol Chem*. 2002;277(33):29355–29358. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12072446
305. Hara M, Yuasa S, Shimoji K, et al. G-CSF influences mouse skeletal muscle development and regeneration by stimulating myoblast proliferation. *J Exp Med*. 2011;208(4):715–727. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21422169
306. Zhang Y, Proenca R, Maffei M, Barone M, Leopold L, Friendman JM. Positional cloning of the mouse obese gene and its human homologue. *Nature*. 1994;372(6505):425–432. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7984236
307. Friedman JM, Halaas JL. Leptin and the regulation of body weight in mammals. *Nature*. 1998;395(6704):763–770. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9796811
308. La Cava A, Matarese G. The weight of leptin in immunity. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2004;4(5):371–379. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15122202
309. Tartaglia LA, Dembski M, Weng X, et al. Identification and expression cloning of a leptin receptor, OB-R. *Cell*. 1995;83(7):1263–1271. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8548812
310. Chen H, Charlat O, Tartaglia LA, et al. Evidence that the diabetes gene encodes the leptin receptor: identification of a mutation in the leptin receptor gene in db/db mice. *Cell*. 1996;84(3):491–495. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8608603
311. Trinchieri G. Interleukin-12: a proinflammatory cytokine with immunoregulatory functions that bridge innate resistance and antigen-specific adaptive immunity. *Ann Rev Immunol*. 1995;13:251–276. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7612223
312. Kobayashi M, Fitz L, Ryan M, et al. Identification and purification of natural killer cell stimulatory factor (NKSF), a cytokine with multiple biologic effects on human lymphocytes. *J Exp Med*. 1989;170(3): 827–845. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2504877
313. Trinchieri G. Interleukin-12 and the regulation of innate resistance and adaptive immunity. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2003;3(2):133–146. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12563297
314. Trinchieri G. Type I interferon: friend or foe? *J Exp Med*. 2010; 207(10):2053–2063. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20837696
315. Szabo SJ, Dighe AS, Gubler U, Murphy KM. Regulation of the interleukin (IL)-12R beta 2 subunit expression in developing T helper 1 (Th1) and Th2 cells. *J Exp Med*. 1997;185(5):817–824. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9120387
316. Gubler U, Chua AO, Schoenhaut DS, et al. Coexpression of two distinct genes is required to generate secreted bioactive cytotoxic lymphocyte maturation factor. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1991;88(10):4143–4147. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1674604
317. Chua AO, Wilkinson VL, Presky DH, Gubler U. Cloning and characterization of a mouse IL-12 receptor-beta component. *J Immunol*. 1995;155(9):4286–4294. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7594587
318. Gubler U, Presky DH. Molecular biology of interleukin-12 receptors. *Ann N Y Acad Sci*. 1996;795:36–40. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8958915
319. Oppmann B, Lesley R, Blom B, et al. Novel p19 protein engages IL-12p40 to form a cytokine, IL-23, with biological activities similar as well as distinct from IL-12. *Immunity*. 2000;13(5):715–725. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11114383
320. Parham C, Chirica M, Timans J, et al. A receptor for the heterodimeric cytokine IL-23 is composed of IL-12Rbeta1 and a novel cytokine receptor subunit, IL-23R. *J Immunol*. 2002;168(11):5699–5708. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12023369
321. Stumhofer JS, Laurence A, Wilson EH, et al. Interleukin 27 negatively regulates the development of interleukin 17-producing T helper cells during chronic inflammation of the central nervous system. *Nat Immunol*. 2006;7(9):937–945. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16906166
322. Uhlig HH, McKenzie BS, Hue S, et al. Differential activity of IL-12 and IL-23 in mucosal and systemic innate immune pathology. *Immunity*. 2006;25(2):309–318. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16919486
323. Duerr RH, Taylor KD, Brant SR, et al. A genome-wide association study identifies IL23R as an inflammatory bowel disease gene. *Science*. 2006;314(5804):1461–1463. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17068223
324. Ahern PP, Schiering C, Buonocore S, et al. Interleukin-23 drives intestinal inflammation through direct activity on T cells. *Immunity*. 2010;33(2):279–288. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20732640
325. Geremia A, Arancibia-Carcamo CV, Fleming MP, et al. IL-23-responsive innate lymphoid cells are increased in inflammatory bowel disease. *J Exp Med*. 2011;208(6):1127–1133. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21576383
326. McGeachy MJ, Chen Y, Tato CM, et al. The interleukin 23 receptor is essential for the terminal differentiation of interleukin 17-producing effector T helper cells in vivo. *Nat Immunol*. 2009;10(3):314-324. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19182808
327. Collison LW, Workman CJ, Kuo TT, et al. The inhibitory cytokine IL-35 contributes to regulatory T-cell function. *Nature*. 2007;450(7169): 566–569. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18033300
328. Collison LW, Chaturvedi V, Henderson AL, et al. IL-35-mediated induction of a potent regulatory T cell population. *Nat Immunol*. 2010;11(12):1093–1101. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20953201
329. Dillon SR, Sprecher C, Hammond A, et al. Interleukin 31, a cytokine produced by activated T cells, induces dermatitis in mice. *Nat Immunol*. 2004;5(7):752–760. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15184896
330. Zhang Q, Putheti P, Zhou Q, Liu Q, Gao W. Structures and biological functions of IL-31 and IL-31 receptors. *Cytokine Growth Factor Rev*. 2008;19(5-6):347–356. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18926762
331. Friend SL, Hosier S, Nelson A, et al. A thymic stromal cell line supports in vitro development of surface IgM+ B cells and produces a novel growth factor affecting B and T lineage cells. *Exp Hematol*. 1994; 22(3):321–328. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8112430
332. Sims JE, Williams DE, Morrissey PJ, et al. Molecular cloning and biological characterization of a novel murine lymphoid growth factor. *J Exp Med*. 2000;192(5):671–680. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10974033
333. Ziegler SF, Artis D. Sensing the outside world: TSLP regulates barrier immunity. *Nat Immunol*. 2010;11(4):289–293. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20300138
334. Pandey A, Ozaki K, Baumann H, et al. Cloning of a receptor subunit required for signaling by thymic stromal lymphopoietin. *Nat Immunol*. 2000;1(1):59–64. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10881176
335. Park LS, Martin U, Garka K, et al. Cloning of the murine thymic stromal lymphopoietin (TSLP) receptor: formation of a functional heteromeric complex requires interleukin 7 receptor. *J Exp Med*. 2000;192(5): 659–670. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10974032
336. Reche PA, Soumelis V, Gorman DM, et al. Human thymic stromal lymphopoietin preferentially stimulates myeloid cells. *J Immunol*. 2001;167(1):336–343. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11418668
337. Cao X, Kozak CA, Kiu JY, Noguchi M, O'Connell E, Leonard WJ. Characterization of cDNAs encoding the murine interleukin 2 receptor (IL-2R) gamma chain: chromosomal mapping and tissue specificity of

IL-2R gamma chain expression. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1993; 90(18):8464–8468.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8378320
338. Soumelis V, Reche PA, Kanzler H, et al. Human epithelial cells trigger dendritic cell mediated allergic inflammation by producing TSLP. *Nat Immunol*. 2002;3(7):673–680.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12055625
339. Leonard WJ. TSLP: finally in the limelight. *Nat Immunol*. 2002;3(7): 605–607.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12087416
340. Liu YJ, Soumelis V, Watanabe N, et al. TSLP: an epithelial cell cytokine that regulates T cell differentiation by conditioning dendritic cell maturation. *Ann Rev Immunol*. 2007;25:195–219.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17129180
341. Al-Shami A, Spolski R, Kelly J, et al. A role for thymic stromal lymphopoietin in CD4(+) T cell development. *J Exp Med*. 2004;200(2): 159–168.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15263024
342. Al-Shami A, Spolski R, Kelly J, Keane-Myers A, Leonard WJ. A role for TSLP in the development of inflammation in an asthma model. *J Exp Med*. 2005;202(6):829–839.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16172260
343. Yoo J, Omori M, Gyramati D, et al. Spontaneous atopic dermatitis in mice expressing an inducible thymic stromal lymphopoietin transgene specifically in the skin. *J Exp Med*. 2005;202(4):541–549.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16103410
344. Zhou B, Comeau MR, De Smedt T, et al. Thymic stromal lymphopoietin as a key initiator of allergic airway inflammation in mice. *Nat Immunol*. 2005;6(10):1047–1053.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16142237
345. Rochman I, Watanabe N, Arima K, Liu YJ, Leonard WJ. Cutting edge: direct action of thymic stromal lymphopoietin on activated human CD4+ T cells. *J Immunol*. 2007;178(11):6720–6724.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17513717
346. Rochman Y, Leonard WJ. The role of thymic stromal lymphopoietin in CD8+ T cell homeostasis. *J Immunol*. 2008;181(11):7699–7705.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19017958
347. Rochman Y, Kashyap M, Robinson GW, et al. Thymic stromal lymphopoietin-mediated STAT5 phosphorylation via kinases JAK1 and JAK2 reveals a key difference from IL-7-induced signaling. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2010;107(45):19455–19460.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20974963
348. Reardon C, Lechmann M, Brustle A, et al. Thymic stromal lymphopoetin-induced expression of the endogenous inhibitory enzyme SLPI mediates recovery from colonic inflammation. *Immunity*. 2011;35(2):223–235.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21820333
349. Watanabe N, Wang YH, Lee HK, et al. Hassall's corpuscles instruct dendritic cells to induce CD4+CD25+ regulatory T cells in human thymus. *Nature*. 2005;436(7054):1181–1185.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16121185
350. Liu YJ. IPC: professional type 1 interferon-producing cells and plasmacytoid dendritic cell precursors. *Ann Rev Immunol*. 2005;23:275–306.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15771572
350a. Mazzucchelli R, Hixon JA, Spolski R, et al. Development of regulatory T cells requires IL-7Rα stimulation by IL-7 or TSLP. *Blood*. 2008;112(8): 283–292.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18664628
351. Kashyap M, Rochman Y, Spolski R, Samsel L, Leonard WJ. Thymic stromal lymphopoietin is produced by dendritic cells. *J Immunol*. 2011;187(3):1207–1211.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18664628
352. Pedroza-Gonzalez A, Xu K, Wu TC, et al. Thymic stromal lymphopoietin fosters human breast tumor growth by promoting type 2 inflammation. *J Exp Med*. 2011;208(3):479–490.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21339324
353. De Monte L, Reni M, Tassi E, et al. Intratumor T helper type 2 cell infiltrate correlates with cancer-associated fibroblast thymic stromal lymphopoietin production and reduced survival in pancreatic cancer. *J Exp Med*. 2011;208(3):469–478.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21339327
354. Olkhanud PB, Rochman Y, Bodogai M, et al. Thymic stromal lymphopoietin is a key mediator of breast cancer progression. *J Immunol*. 2011;186(10):5656–5662.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21490155
355. Leonard WJ, O'Shea JJ. Jaks and STATs: biological implications. *Ann Rev immunol*. 1998;16:293–322.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9597132
356. Lin JX, Migone TS, Tsang M, et al. The role of shared receptor motifs and common Stat proteins in the generation of cytokine pleiotropy and redundancy by IL-2, IL-4, IL-7, IL-13, and IL-15. *Immunity*. 1995; 2(4):331–339.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7719938
357. Wynn TA. IL-13 effector functions. *Ann Rev Immunol*. 2003;21:425–456.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12615888
358. Zurawski G, de Vries JE. Interleukin 13, an interleukin 4-like cytokine that acts on monocytes and B cells, but not on T cells. *Immunol Today*. 1994;15(1):19–26.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7907877
359. Zurawski SM, Chomarat P, Djoussou O, et al. The primary binding subunit of the human interleukin-4 receptor is also a component of the interleukin-13 receptor. *J Biol Chem*. 1995;270(23):13869–13878.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7775445
360. Hilton DJ, Zhang JG, Metcalf D, Alexander WS, Nicola NA, Wilson TA. Cloning and characterization of a binding subunit of the interleukin 13 receptor that is also a component of the interleukin 4 receptor. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1996;93(1):497–501.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8552669
361. Aman MJ, Tayebi N, Obiri NI, Puri RK, Modi WS, Leonard WJ. cDNA cloning and characterization of the human interleukin 13 receptor alpha chain. *J Biol Chem*. 1996;271(46):29265–29270.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8910586
362. Caput D, Laurent P, Kaghad M, et al. Cloning and characterization of a specific interleukin (IL)-13 binding protein structurally related to the IL-5 receptor alpha chain. *J Biol Chem*. 1996;271(28):16921–16926.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8663118
363. Grunig G, Warnock M, Wakil AE, et al. Requirement for IL-13 independently of IL-4 in experimental asthma. *Science*. 1998;282(5397): 2261–2263.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9856950
364. Wills-Karp M, Luyimvazi J, Xu X, et al. Interleukin-13: central mediator of allergic asthma. *Science*. 1998;282(5397):2258–2261.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9856949
365. Cormier SA, Kolls JK. Innate IL-13 in virus-induced asthma? *Nat Immunol*. 2011;12(7):587–588.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21685950
366. McKenzie GJ, Emson CI, Bell SE, et al. Impaired development of Th2 cells in IL-13-deficient mice. *Immunity*. 1998;9(3):423–432.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9768762
367. Kapp U, Yah WC, Patterson B, et al. Interleukin 13 is secreted by and stimulates the growth of Hodgkin and Reed-Sternberg cells. *J Exp Med*. 1999;189(12):1939–1946.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10377189
368. Liang HE, Reinhardt RL, Bando JK, Sullivan BM, Ho IC, Lockslev RM. Divergent expression patterns of IL-4 and IL-13 define unique functions in allergic immunity. *Nat Immunol*. 2011;13(1):58–66.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22138715
369. Sharfe N, Dadi HK, Shahar M, Roifman CM. Human immune disorder arising from mutation of the alpha chain of the interleukin-2 receptor. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 197;94(7):3168–171.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9096364
370. Smith KA. The interleukin 2 receptor. *Annu Rev Cell Biol*. 1989;5: 397–425.
371. Leonard WJ, Depper JM, Kanehisa M, et al. Structure of the human interleukin-2 receptor gene. *Science*. 1985;230(4726):633–639.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2996141
372. Leonard WJ, Donlon TA, Lebo RV, Greene WC. Localization of the gene encoding the human interleukin-2 receptor on chromosome 10. *Science*. 1985;228(4707):1547–1549.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3925551
373. Shibuya H, Yoneyama M, Nakamura Y, et al. The human interleukin-2 receptor beta-chain gene: genomic organization, promoter analysis and chromosomal assignment. *Nucleic Acids Res*. 1990;18(13):3697–3703.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1973832
374. Gnarra JR, Otani H, Wang MG, McBride OW, Sharon M, Leonard WJ. Human interleukin 2 receptor beta-chain gene: chromosomal localization and identification of 5' regulatory sequences. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1990;87(9):3440–3444.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2333293

375. Watowich SS, Wu H, Scolovsky M, Klingmuller U, Constantinescu SN, Lodish HF. Cytokine receptor signal transduction and the control of hematopoietic cell development. *Annu Rev Cell Dev Biol*. 1996;12:91–128. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8970723
376. Wu H, Klingmuller U, Besmer P, Lodish HF. Interaction of the erythropoietin and stem-cell-factor receptors. *Nature*. 1995;377(6546):242–246. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7545788
377. Nairz M, Schroll A, Moschen AR, et al. Erythropoietin contrastingly affects bacterial infection and experimental colitis by inhibiting nuclear factor-kappaB-inducible immune pathways. *Immunity*. 2011;34(1):61–74. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21256055
378. Ramalingam TR, Pesce JT, Sheikh F, et al. Unique functions of the type II interleukin 4 receptor identified in mice lacking the interleukin 13 receptor alpha1 chain. *Nat Immunol*. 2008;9(1):25–33. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18066066
379. Ouyang W, Rutz S, Crellin NK, Valdez PA, Hymowitz SG. Regulation and functions of the IL-10 family of cytokines in inflammation and disease. *Ann Rev Immunol*. 2011;29:71–109. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21166540
380. Pestka S, Krause CD, Sarkar D, Walkter MR, Shi Y, Fisher PB. Interleukin-10 and related cytokines and receptors. *Ann Rev Immunol*. 2004;22:929–979. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15032600
381. Kurman C, Rubin L, Nelson D. *Article: Soluble Products of Immune Activation: Soluble Interleukin-2 Receptor (sIL-2R, tac Protein)*. Washington, DC: American Society for Microbiology; 1992.
382. Fernandez-Botran R, Chilton PM, Ma Y. Soluble cytokine receptors: their roles in immunoregulation, disease, and therapy. *Adv immunol*. 1996;63:269–336. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8787633
383. Kotenko SV, Izotova LS, Mirochnitchenko OV, et al. Identification, cloning, and characterization of a novel soluble receptor that binds IL-22 and neutralizes its activity. *J Immunol*. 2001;166(12):7096–7103. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11390454
384. Salvati AL, Lahm A, Paonessa G, Ciliberto G, Toniatti C. Interleukin-6 (IL-6) antagonism by soluble IL-6 receptor alpha mutated in the predicted gp130-binding interface. *J Biol Chem*. 1995;270(20):12242–12249. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7744875
385. Webster KE, Walters S, Kohler RE, et al. In vivo expansion of T reg cells with IL-2-mAb complexes: induction of resistance to EAE and longterm acceptance of islet allografts without immunosuppression. *J Exp Med*. 2009;206(4):751–760. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19332874
386. Isaacs A, Lindenmann J. Virus interference. I. The interferon. *Proc R Soc Lond B Biol Sci*. 1957;147(927):258–267. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/13465720
387. De Maeyer E, De Maeyer-Guignard J. Type I interferons. *Int Rev Immunol*. 1998;17(1-4):53–73. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9914943
388. Farrar MA, Schreiber RD. The molecular cell biology of interferon-gamma and its receptor. *Ann Rev Immunol*. 1993;11:571–611. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8476573
389. Roberts RM, Liu L, Alexenko A. New and atypical families of type I interferons in mammals: comparative functions, structures, and evolutionary relationships. *Prog Nucleic Acid Res Mol Biol*. 1997;56:287–325. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9187057
390. Roberts RM, Liu L, Guo Q, Leaman D, Bixby J. The evolution of the type I interferons. *J Interferon Cytokine Res*. 1998;18(10):805–816. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9809615
391. Hayes MP, Zoon KC. Production and action of interferons: new insights into molecular mechanisms of gene regulation and expression. *Prog Drug Res*. 1994;43:239–270. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7531856
392. Taniguchi T, Takaoka A. The interferon-alpha/beta system in antiviral responses: a multimodal machinery of gene regulation by the IRF family of transcription factors. *Curr Opin Immunol*. 2002;14(1):111–116. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11790540
393. Dunn GP, Koebel CM, Schreiber RD. Interferons, immunity and cancer immunoediting. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2006;6(11):836–848. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17063185
394. van Boxel-Dezaire AH, Rani MR, Stark GR. Complex modulation of cell type-specific signaling in response to type I interferons. *Immunity*. 2006;25(3):361–372. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16979568
395. Honda K, Takaoka A, Taniguchi T. Type I interferon [corrected] gene induction by the interferon regulatory factor family of transcription factors. *Immunity*. 2006;25(3):349–360. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16979567
396. Vilcek J. Fifty years of interferon research: aiming at a moving target. *Immunity*. 2006;25(3):343–348. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16979566
397. Stark GR, Kerr IM, Williams BR, Silverman RH, Schreiber RD. How cells respond to interferons. *Annu Rev Biochem*. 1998;67:227–264. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9759489
398. Langer J, Garotta G, Pestka S. Interferon receptors. *Biotherapy*. 1996;8(3-4):163–174. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8813328
399. de Veer MJ, Holko M, Frevel M, et al. Functional classification of interferon-stimulated genes identified using microarrays. *J Leukoc Biol*. 2001;69(6):912–920. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11404376
400. Bazan JF. Shared architecture of hormone binding domains in type I and II interferon receptors. *Cell*. 1990;61(5):753–754. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2140527
401. Walter MR, Windsor WT, Nagabhushan TL, et al. Crystal structure of a complex between interferon-gamma and its soluble high-affinity receptor. *Nature*. 1995;376(6537):230–235. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7617032
402. Uze G, Lutfalla G, Gresser I. Genetic transfer of a functional human interferon alpha receptor into mouse cells: cloning and expression of its cDNA. *Cell*. 1990;60(2):225–234. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2153461
403. Novick D, Cohen B, Rubinstein M. The human interferon alpha/beta receptor: characterization and molecular cloning. *Cell*. 1994;77(3):391–400. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8181059
404. Domanski P, Witte M, Kellum M, et al. Cloning and expression of a long form of the beta subunit of the interferon alpha beta receptor that is required for signaling. *J Biol Chem*. 1995;270(37):21606–21611. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7665574
405. Lutfalla G, Holland SJ, Cinato E, et al. Mutant U5A cells are complemented by an interferon-alpha beta receptor subunit generated by alternative processing of a new member of a cytokine receptor gene cluster. *EMBO J*. 1995;14(20):5100–5108. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7588638
406. ISICR-Newsletter. Nomenclature for interferon receptors and interferon d. *International Society for Interferon and Cytokine Research*. 1997;4:1.
407. Domanski P, Colamonici OR. The type-I interferon receptor. The long and short of it. *Cytokine Growth Factor Rev*. 1996;7(2):143–151. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8899292
408. Symons JA, Alcami A, Smith GL. Vaccinia virus encodes a soluble type I interferon receptor of novel structure and broad species specificity. *Cell*. 1995;81(4):551–560. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7758109
409. Spriggs MK. Poxvirus-encoded soluble cytokine receptors. *Virus Res*. 1994;33(1):1–10. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7941696
410. Kato H, Takahasi K, Fujita T. RIG-I-like receptors: cytoplasmic sensors for non-self RNA. *Immunol Rev*. 2011;243(1):91–98. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21884169
411. Gray PW, Leung DW, Pennica D, et al. Expression of human immune interferon cDNA in E. coli and monkey cells. *Nature*. 1982;295(5849):503–508. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6173769
412. Bach EA, Aguet M, Schreiber RD. The IFN gamma receptor: a paradigm for cytokine receptor signaling. *Ann Rev Immunol*. 1997;15:563–591. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9143700
413. Young HA, Romero-Weaver AL, Savan R, Maher SG, Weiss JM. *Class II Cytokines*. Kerala, India: Research Signpost, Fort Post Office; 2007.
414. Marsters SA, Pennica D, Bach E, Schreiber RD, Ashkenazi A. Interferon gamma signals via a high-affinity multisubunit receptor complex that contains two types of polypeptide chain. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1995;92(12):5401–5405. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7777519

415. Aguet M, Dembic Z, Merlin G. Molecular cloning and expression of the human interferon-gamma receptor. *Cell*. 1988;55(2):273–280. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2971451
416. Soh J, Donnelly RJ, Kotenko S, et al. Identification and sequence of an accessory factor required for activation of the human interferon gamma receptor. *Cell*. 1994;76(5):793–802. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8124716
417. Hemmi S, Bohni R, Stark G, Di Marco F, Aguet M. A novel member of the interferon receptor family complements functionality of the murine interferon gamma receptor in human cells. *Cell*. 1994;76(5):803–810. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8124717
418. Kaplan DH, Greenlund AC, Tanner JW, Shaw AS, Schreiber RD. Identification of an interferon-gamma receptor alpha chain sequence required for JAK-1 binding. *J Biol Chem*. 1996;271(1):9–12. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8550631
419. Sakatsume M, Igarashi K, Winestock KD, Garotta G, Larner AC, Finbloom DS. The Jak kinases differentially associate with the alpha and beta (accessory factor) chains of the interferon gamma receptor to form a functional receptor unit capable of activating STAT transcription factors. *J Biol Chem*. 1995;270(29):17528–17534. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7615558
420. Diamond MS, Kinder M, Matsushita H, et al. Type I interferon is selectively required by dendritic cells for immune rejection of tumors. *J Exp Med*. 2011;208(10):1989–2003. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21930769
421. Fiorentino DF, Bond MW, Mosmann TR. Two types of mouse T helper cell. IV. Th2 clones secrete a factor that inhibits cytokine production by Th1 clones. *J Exp Med*. 1989;170(6):2081–2095. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2531194
422. Moore KW, de Waal Malefyt R, Coffman RL, O'Garra A. Interleukin-10 and the interleukin-10 receptor. *Ann Rev Immunol*. 2001;19:683–765. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11244051
423. Saraiva M, O'Garra A. The regulation of IL-10 production by immune cells. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2010;10(3):170–181. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20154735
424. Rutz S, Ouyang W. Regulation of interleukin-10 and interleukin-22 expression in T helper cells. *Curr Opin Immunol*. 2011;23(5):605–612. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21862302
425. Chaudhry A, Samstein RM, Treuting P, et al. Interleukin-10 signaling in regulatory T cells is required for suppression of Th17 cell-mediated inflammation. *Immunity*. 2011;34(4):566–578. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21511185
426. Motomura Y, Kitamura H, Hijikata A, et al. The transcription factor E4BP4 regulates the production of IL-10 and IL-13 in CD4+ T cells. *Nat Immunol*. 2011;12(5):450–459. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21460847
427. Kuhn R, Lohler J, Rennick D, Rajewsky K, Muller W. Interleukin-10-deficient mice develop chronic enterocolitis. *Cell*. 1993;75(2):263–274. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8402911
428. Liu Y, de Waal Malefyt R, Briere F, et al. The EBV IL-10 homologue is a selective agonist with impaired binding to the IL-10 receptor. *J Immunol*. 1997;158(2):604–613. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8992974
429. Ho AS, Liu Y, Khan TA, Hsu DH, Bazan JF, Moore KW. A receptor for interleukin 10 is related to interferon receptors. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1993;90(23):11267–11271. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8248239
430. Liu Y, Wei SH, Ho AS, de Waal Malefyt R, Moore KW. Expression cloning and characterization of a human IL-10 receptor. *J Immunol*. 1994;152(4):1821–1829. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8120391
431. Lutfalla G, Gardiner K, Uze G. A new member of the cytokine receptor gene family maps on chromosome 21 at less than 35 kb from IFNAR. *Genomics*. 1993;16(2):366–373. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8314576
432. Gibbs VC, Pennica D. CRF2-4: isolation of cDNA clones encoding the human and mouse proteins. *Gene*. 1997;186(1):97–101. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9047351
433. Xie MH, Aggarwal S, Ho WH, et al. Interleukin (IL)-22, a novel human cytokine that signals through the interferon receptor-related proteins CRF2-4 and IL-22R. *J Biol Chem*. 2000;275(40):31335–31339. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10875937
434. Dumoutier L, Leemans C, Lejeune D, Kotenko SV, Renauld JC. Cutting edge: STAT activation by IL-19, IL-20 and mda-7 through IL-20 receptor complexes of two types. *J Immunol*. 2001;167(7):3545–3549. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11564763
435. Wang M, Tan Z, Zhang R, Kotenko SV, Liang P. Interleukin 24 (MDA-7/MOB-5) signals through two heterodimeric receptors, IL-22R1/IL-20R2 and IL-20R1/IL-20R2. *J Biol Chem*. 2002;277(9):7341–7347. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11706020
436. Gallagher G, Dickensheets H, Eskdale J, et al. Cloning, expression and initial characterization of interleukin-19 (IL-19), a novel homologue of human interleukin-10 (IL-10). *Genes Immun*. 2000;1(7):442–450. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11196675
437. Blumberg H, Conklin D, Xu WF, et al. Interleukin 20: discovery, receptor identification, and role in epidermal function. *Cell*. 2001;104(1):9–19. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11163236
438. Wegenka UM. IL-20: biological functions mediated through two types of receptor complexes. *Cytokine Growth Factor Rev*. 2010;21(5):353–363. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20864382
439. Hsu YH, Chen WY, Chan CH, Wu CH, Sun ZJ, Chang MS. Anti-IL-20 monoclonal antibody inhibits the differentiation of osteoclasts and protects against osteoporotic bone loss. *J Exp Med*. 2011;208(9):1849–1861. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21844205
440. Colonna M. Interleukin-22-producing natural killer cells and lymphoid tissue inducer-like cells in mucosal immunity. *Immunity*. 2009;31(1):15–23. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19604490
441. Ouyang W. Distinct roles of IL-22 in human psoriasis and inflammatory bowel disease. *Cytokine Growth Factor Rev*. 2010;21(6):435–441. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21106435
442. Vivier E, Spits H, Cupedo T. Interleukin-22-producing innate immune cells: new players in mucosal immunity and tissue repair? *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2009;9(4):229–234. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19319141
443. Wolk K, Kunz S, Witte E, Friedrich M, Asadullah K, Sabat R. IL-22 increases the innate immunity of tissues. *Immunity*. 2004;21(2):241–254. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15308104
444. Rutz S, Noubade R, Eidenschenk C, et al. Transcription factor c-Maf mediates the TGF-beta-dependent suppression of IL-22 production in T(H)17 cells. *Nat Immunol*. 2011;12(12):1238–1245. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22001828
445. Sheppard P, Kindsvogel W, Xu W, et al. IL-28, IL-29 and their class II cytokine receptor IL-28R. *Nat Immunol*. 2003;4(1):63–68. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12469119
446. Fickenscher H, Hor S, Kupers H, Knappe A, Wittmann S, Sticht H. The interleukin-10 family of cytokines. *Trends Immunol*. 2002;23(2):89–96. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11929132
447. Darnell JE Jr, Kerr IM, Stark GR. Jak-STAT pathways and transcriptional activation in response to IFNs and other extracellular signaling proteins. *Science*. 1994;264(5164):1415–1421. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8197455
448. Horvath CM, Darnell JE. The state of the STATs: recent developments in the study of signal transduction to the nucleus. *Curr Opin Cell Biol*. 1997;9(2):233–239. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9069254
449. Shuai K, Liu B. Regulation of JAK-STAT signalling in the immune system. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2003;3(11):900–911. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14668806
450. Giordanetto F, Kroemer RT. Prediction of the structure of human Janus kinase 2 (JAK2) comprising JAK homology domains 1 through 7. *Protein Eng*. 2002;15(9):727–737. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12456871
451. Wilks AF, Harpur AG, Kurban RR, Ralph SJ, Zurcher G, Ziemiecki A. Two novel protein-tyrosine kinases, each with a second phosphotransferase-related catalytic domain, define a new class of protein kinase. *Mol Cell Biol*. 1991;11(4):2057–2065. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1848670
452. Harpur AG, Andres AC, Ziemiecki A, Aston RR, Wilks AF. JAK2, a third member of the JAK family of protein tyrosine kinases. *Oncogene*. 1992;7(7):1347–1353. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1620548

453. Johnston JA, Kawamura M, Kirken RA, et al. Phosphorylation and activation of the Jak-3 Janus kinase in response to interleukin-2. *Nature*. 1994;370(6485):151–153. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8022485
454. Witthuhn BA, Silvennoinen O, Miura O, et al. Involvement of the Jak-3 Janus kinase in signalling by interleukins 2 and 4 in lymphoid and myeloid cells. *Nature*. 1994;370(6485):153–157. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8022486
455. Krolewski JJ, Lee R, Eddy R, Shows TB, Dalla-Favera R. Identification and chromosomal mapping of new human tyrosine kinase genes. *Oncogene*. 1990;5(3):277–282. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2156206
456. Gurney AL, Wong SC, Henzel WJ, de Sauvage FJ. Distinct regions of c-Mpl cytoplasmic domain are coupled to the JAK-STAT signal transduction pathway and Shc phosphorylation. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1995;92(12):5292–5296. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7777500
457. DaSilva L, Howard OM, Rui H, Kirken RA, Farrar WL. Growth signaling and JAK2 association mediated by membrane-proximal cytoplasmic regions of prolactin receptors. *J Biol Chem*. 1994;269(28):18267–18270. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8034567
458. Witthuhn BA, Quelle FW, Silvennoinen O, et al. JAK2 associates with the erythropoietin receptor and is tyrosine phosphorylated and activated following stimulation with erythropoietin. *Cell*. 1993;74(2):227–236. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8343951
459. Tanner JW, Chen W, Young RL, Longmore GD, Shaw AS. The conserved box 1 motif of cytokine receptors is required for association with JAK kinases. *J Biol Chem*. 1995;270(12):6523–6530. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7896787
460. Zhao Y, Wagner F, Frank SJ, Kraft AS. The amino-terminal portion of the JAK2 protein kinase is necessary for binding and phosphorylation of the granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor receptor beta c chain. *J Biol Chem*. 1995;270(23):13814–13818. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7775438
461. Kohlhuber F, Rogers NC, Watling D, et al. A JAK1/JAK2 chimera can sustain alpha and gamma interferon responses. *Mol Cell Biol*. 1997;17(2):695–706. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9001223
462. Chen M, Cheng A, Chen YQ, et al. The amino terminus of JAK3 is necessary and sufficient for binding to the common gamma chain and confers the ability to transmit interleukin 2-mediated signals. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1997;94(13):6910–6915. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9192665
463. Rodig SJ, Meraz MA, White JM, et al. Disruption of the Jak1 gene demonstrates obligatory and nonredundant roles of the Jaks in cytokineinduced biologic responses. *Cell*. 1998;93(3):373–383. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9590172
464. Guschin D, Rogers N, Briscoe J, et al. A major role for the protein tyrosine kinase JAK1 in the JAK/STAT signal transduction pathway in response to interleukin-6. *EMBO J*. 1995;14(7):1421–1429. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7537214
465. Frank SJ, Yi W, Zhao Y, et al. Regions of the JAK2 tyrosine kinase required for coupling to the growth hormone receptor. *J Biol Chem*. 1995;270(24):14776–14785. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7540178
466. Zhuang H, Patel SV, He TC, et al. Inhibition of erythropoietin-induced mitogenesis by a kinase-deficient form of Jak2. *J Biol Chem*. 1994;269(34):21411–21414. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8063772
467. Kawahara A, Minami Y, Miyazaki T, Ihle JN, Taniguchi T. Critical role of the interleukin 2 (IL-2) receptor gamma-chain-associated Jak3 in the IL-2-induced c-fos and c-myc, but not bcl-2, gene induction. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1995;92(19):8724–8728. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7568005
468. Russell SM, Tavebi N, Nakajima H, et al. Mutation of Jak3 in a patient with SCID: essential role of Jak3 in lymphoid development. *Science*. 1995;270(5237):797–800. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7481768
469. Macchi P, Villa A, Giliani S, et al. Mutations of Jak-3 gene in patients with autosomal severe combined immune deficiency (SCID). *Nature*. 1995;377(6544):65–68. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7659163
470. Nosaka T, van Deursen JM, Tripp RA, et al. Defective lymphoid development in mice lacking Jak3. *Science*. 1995;270(5237):800–802. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7481769
471. Thomis DC, Gurniak CB, Tivol E, Sharpe AH, Berg LJ. Defects in B lymphocyte maturation and T lymphocyte activation in mice lacking Jak3. *Science*. 1995;270(5237):794–797. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7481767
472. Park SY, Saijo K, Takahaski T, et al. Developmental defects of lymphoid cells in Jak3 kinase-deficient mice. *Immunity*. 1995;3(6):771–782. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8777722
473. Levine RL, Wadleigh M, Cools J, et al. Activating mutation in the tyrosine kinase JAK2 in polycythemia vera, essential thrombocythemia, and myeloid metaplasia with myelofibrosis. *Cancer Cell*. 2005;7(4):387–397. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15837627
474. Meydan N, Grunberger T, Dadi H, et al. Inhibition of acute lymphoblastic leukaemia by a Jak-2 inhibitor. *Nature*. 1996;379(6566):645–648. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8628398
475. Minegishi Y, Saito M, Morio T, et al. Human tyrosine kinase 2 deficiency reveals its requisite roles in multiple cytokine signals involved in innate and acquired immunity. *Immunity*. 2006;25(5):745–755. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17088085
476. Harrison DA, Binari R, Nahreini TS, Gilman M, Perrimon N. Activation of a Drosophila Janus kinase (JAK) causes hematopoietic neoplasia and developmental defects. *EMBO J*. 1995;14(12):2857–2865. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7796812
477. Luo H, Hanratty WP, Dearolf CR. An amino acid substitution in the Drosophila hopTum-l Jak kinase causes leukemia-like hematopoietic defects. *EMBO J*. 1995;14(7):1412–1420. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7729418
478. Conway G, Margoliath A, Wong-Madden S, Roberts RJ, Gilbert W. Jak1 kinase is required for cell migrations and anterior specification in zebrafish embryos. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1997;94(7):3082–3087. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9096349
479. Danial NN, Pernis A, Rothman PB. Jak-STAT signaling induced by the v-abl oncogene. *Science*. 1995;269(5232):1875–1877. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7569929
480. Migone TS, Lin JX, Cereseto A, et al. Constitutively activated Jak-STAT pathway in T cells transformed with HTLV-I. *Science*. 1995;269(5220):79–81. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7604283
481. Ohashi T, Masuda M, Ruscetti SK. Induction of sequence-specific DNA-binding factors by erythropoietin and the spleen focus-forming virus. *Blood*. 1995;85(6):1454–1462. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7888668
482. Yu CL, Meyer DJ, Campbell GS, et al. Enhanced DNA-binding activity of a Stat3-related protein in cells transformed by the Src oncoprotein. *Science*. 1995;269(5220):81–83. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7541555
483. Nelson BH, McIntosh BC, Rosencrans LL, Greenberg PD. Requirement for an initial signal from the membrane-proximal region of the interleukin 2 receptor gamma(c) chain for Janus kinase activation leading to T cell proliferation. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1997;94(5):1878–1883. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9050873
484. Noguchi M, Sarin A, Aman MJ, et al. Functional cleavage of the common cytokine receptor gamma chain (gammac) by calpain. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1997;94(21):11534–11539. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9326644
485. Changelian PS, Flanagan ME, Ball DJ, et al. Prevention of organ allograft rejection by a specific Janus kinase 3 inhibitor. *Science*. 2003;302(5646):875–878. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14593182
486. Hanissian SH, Geha RS. Jak3 is associated with CD40 and is critical for CD40 induction of gene expression in B cells. *Immunity*. 1997;6(4):379–387. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9133417
487. Jabara HH, Buckley RH, Roberts JL, et al. Role of JAK3 in CD40-mediated signaling. *Blood*. 1998;92(7):2435–2440. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9746783
488. Levine RL, Gilliland DG. JAK-2 mutations and their relevance to myeloproliferative disease. *Curr Opin Hematol*. 2007;14(1):43–47. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17133099

489. Lacronique V, Boureux A, Valle VD, et al. A TEL-JAK2 fusion protein with constitutive kinase activity in human leukemia. *Science*. 1997; 278(5341):1309–1312.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9360930
490. Seto Y, Nakajima H, Suto A, et al. Enhanced Th2 cell-mediated allergicinflammation in Tyk2-deficient mice. *J Immunol*. 2003;170(2): 1077–1083.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12517976
491. Briscoe J, Rogers NC, Witthuhn BA, et al. Kinase-negative mutants of JAK1 can sustain interferon-gamma-inducible gene expression but not an antiviral state. *EMBO J*. 1996;15(4):799–809.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8631301
492. Gauzzi MC, Valezquez L, McKendry R, Mogensen KE, Fellous M, Pellegrini S. Interferon-alpha-dependent activation of Tyk2 requires phosphorylation of positive regulatory tyrosines by another kinase. *J Biol Chem*. 1996;271(34):20494–20500.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8702790
493. Feng J, Witthuhn BA, Matsuda T, Kohlhuber F, Kerr IM, Ihle JN. Activation of Jak2 catalytic activity requires phosphorylation of Y1007 in the kinase activation loop. *Mol Cell Biol*. 1997;17(5):2497–2501.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9111318
494. Luo H, Rose P, Barber D, et al. Mutation in the Jak kinase JH2 domain hyperactivates Drosophila and mammalian Jak-Stat pathways. *Mol Cell Biol*. 1997;17(3):1562–1571.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9032284
495. Fujitani Y, Hibi M, Fukada T, et al. An alternative pathway for STAT activation that is mediated by the direct interaction between JAK and STAT. *Oncogene*. 1997;14(7):751–761.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9047382
496. Binari R, Perrimon N. Stripe-specific regulation of pair-rule genes by hopscotch, a putative Jak family tyrosine kinase in Drosophila. *Genes Dev*. 1994;8(3):300–312.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8314084
497. Fu XY. A transcription factor with SH2 and SH3 domains is directly activated by an interferon alpha-induced cytoplasmic protein tyrosine kinase(s). *Cell*. 1992;70(2):323–335.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1638633
498. Fu XY, Schindler C, Improta T, Aebersold R, Darnell JE Jr. The proteins of ISGF-3, the interferon alpha-induced transcriptional activator, define a gene family involved in signal transduction. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1992;89(16):7840–7843.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1502204
499. Zhong Z, Wen Z, Darnell JE Jr. Stat3: a STAT family member activated by tyrosine phosphorylation in response to epidermal growth factor and interleukin-6. *Science*. 1994;264(5155):95–98.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8140422
500. Akira S, Nishio Y, Inoue M, et al. Molecular cloning of APRF, a novel IFN-stimulated gene factor 3 p91-related transcription factor involved in the gp130-mediated signaling pathway. *Cell*. 1994;77(1):63–71.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7512451
501. Yamamoto K, Quelle FW, Thierfelder WE, et al. Stat4, a novel gamma interferon activation site-binding protein expressed in early myeloid differentiation. *Mol Cell Biol*. 1994;14(7):4342–4349.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8007943
502. Zhong Z, Wen Z, Darnell JE Jr. Stat3 and Stat4: members of the family of signal transducers and activators of transcription. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1994;91(11):4806–4810.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7545930
503. Hou J, Schindler U, Henzel WJ, Wong SC, McKnight SL. Identification and purification of human Stat proteins activated in response to interleukin-2. *Immunity*. 1995;2(4):321–329.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7719937
504. Wakao H, Gouilleux F, Groner B. Mammary gland factor (MGF) is a novel member of the cytokine regulated transcription factor gene family and confers the prolactin response. *EMBO J*. 1994;13(9):2182–2191.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7514531
505. Mui AL, Wakao H, Harada N, O'Farrell AM, Miyajima A. Interleukin-3, granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor, and interleukin-5 transduce signals through two forms of STAT5. *J Leukoc Biol*. 1995; 57(5):799–803.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7539031
506. Azam M, Erdjument-Bromage H, Kreider BL, et al. Interleukin-3 signals through multiple isoforms of Stat5. *EMBO J*. 1995;14(7):1402–1411.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7537213
507. Liu X, Robinson GW, Gouilleux F, Groner B, Hennighausen L. Cloning and expression of Stat5 and an additional homologue (Stat5b) involved in prolactin signal transduction in mouse mammary tissue. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1995;92(19):8831–8835.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7568026
508. Lin JX, Mietz J, Modi WS, John S, Leonard WJ. Cloning of human Stat5B. Reconstitution of interleukin-2-induced Stat5A and Stat5B DNA binding activity in COS-7 cells. *J Biol Chem*. 1996;271(18):10738–10744.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8631883
509. Hou J, Schindler U, Henzel WJ, Ho TC, Breasseur M, McKnight SL. An interleukin-4-induced transcription factor: IL-4 Stat. *Science*. 1994;265(5179):1701–1706.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8085155
510. Maritano D, Sugrue ML, Tininini S, et al. The STAT3 isoforms alpha and beta have unique and specific functions. *Nat Immunol*. 2004;5(4):401–409.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15021879
511. Nakajima H, Liu XW, Wynshaw-Boris A, et al. An indirect effect of Stat5a in IL-2-induced proliferation: a critical role for Stat5a in IL-2-mediated IL-2 receptor alpha chain induction. *Immunity*. 1997;7(5):691–701.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9390692
512. Imada K, Bloom ET, Nakajima H, et al. Stat5b is essential for natural killer cell-mediated proliferation and cytolytic activity. *J Exp Med*. 1998;188(11):2067–2074.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9841920
513. Teglund S, McKay C, Schuetz E, et al. Stat5a and Stat5b proteins have essential and nonessential, or redundant, roles in cytokine responses. *Cell*. 1998;93(5):841–850.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9630227
514. Moriggl R, Topham DJ, Teglund S, et al. Stat5 is required for IL-2-induced cell cycle progression of peripheral T cells. *Immunity*. 1999; 10(2):249–259.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10072077
515. Wang D, Stravopodis D, Teglund S, Kitazawa J, Ihle JN. Naturally occurring dominant negative variants of Stat5. *Mol Cell Biol*. 1996;16(11): 6141–6148.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8887644
516. Copeland NG, Gilbert DJ, Schindler C, et al. Distribution of the mammalian Stat gene family in mouse chromosomes. *Genomics*. 1995; 29(1):225–228.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8530075
517. Greenlund AC, Farrar MA, Viviano BL, Schreiber RD. Ligand-induced IFN gamma receptor tyrosine phosphorylation couples the receptor to its signal transduction system (p91). *EMBO J*. 1994;13(7):1591–1600.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8156998
518. Yan H, Krishnan K, Greenlund AC, et al. Phosphorylated interferon-alpha receptor 1 subunit (IFNaR1) acts as a docking site for the latent form of the 113 kDa STAT2 protein. *EMBO J*. 1996;15(5):1064–1074.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8605876
519. Stahl N, Farruggella TK, Boulton TG, et al. Choice of STATs and other substrates specified by modular tyrosine-based motifs in cytokine receptors. *Science*. 1995;267(5202):1349–1353.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7871433
520. Friedmann MC, Migone TS, Russell SM, Leonard WJ. Different interleukin 2 receptor beta-chain tyrosines couple to at least two signaling pathways and synergistically mediate interleukin 2-induced proliferation. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1996;93(5):2077–2082.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8700888
521. Schindler U, Wu P, Rothe M, Brasseur M, McKnight SL. Components of a Stat recognition code: evidence for two layers of molecular selectivity. *Immunity*. 1995;2(6):689–697.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7796300
522. Klingmuller U, Bergelson S, Hsiao JG, Lodish HF. Multiple tyrosine residues in the cytosolic domain of the erythropoietin receptor promote activation of STAT5. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1996;93(16):832–8328.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8710869
523. Weber-Nordt RM, Riley JK, Greenlund AC, Moore KW, Darnell JE, Schreiber RD. Stat3 recruitment by two distinct ligand-induced, tyrosine-phosphorylated docking sites in the interleukin-10 receptor intracellular domain. *J Biol Chem*. 1996;271(44):27954–27961.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8910398
524. McBride KM, Banninger G, McDonald C, Reich NC. Regulated nuclear import of the STAT1 transcription factor by direct binding of importin-alpha. *EMBO J*. 2002;21(7):1754–1763.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11927559

525. McBride KM, McDonald C, Reich NC. Nuclear export signal located within theDNA-binding domain of the STAT1transcription factor. *EMBO J*. 2000;19(22):6196–6206. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11080165
526. Reich NC. STAT dynamics. *Cytokine Growth Factor Rev*. 2007;18 (5-6):511–518. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17683973
527. Chen X, Veinkemeier U, Zhao Y, Jeruzalmi D, Darnell JE Jr, Kuriyan J. Crystal structure of a tyrosine phosphorylated STAT-1 dimer bound to DNA. *Cell*. 1998;93(5):827–839. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9630226
528. Becker S, Groner B, Muller CW. Three-dimensional structure of the Stat-3beta homodimer bound to DNA. *Nature*. 1998;394(6689):145–151. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9671298
529. Soldaini E, John S, Moro S, Bollenbacher J, Schindler U, Leonard WJ. DNA binding site selection of dimeric and tetrameric Stat5 proteins reveals a large repertoire of divergent tetrameric Stat5a binding sites. *Mol Cell Biol*. 2000;20(1):389–401. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10594041

529a. Lin JX, Peng L, Liu D, et al. Critical role of STAT5 transcription factor tetramerization for cytokine responses and normal immune function. *Immunity*. 2012;36:586–599. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22520852

530. Xu X, Sun YL, Hoey T. Cooperative DNA binding and sequence-selective recognition conferred by the STAT amino-terminal domain. *Science*. 1996;273(5276):794–797. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8670419
531. Vinkemeier U, Cohen SL, MoarefiI, Chait BT, Kuriyan J, Darnell JE Jr. DNA binding of in vitro activated Stat1 alpha, Stat1 beta and truncated Stat1: interaction between NH2-terminal domains stabilizes binding of two dimers to tandem DNA sites. *EMBO J*. 1996;15(20):5616–5626. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8896455
532. Sperisen P, Wang SM, Soldaini E, et al. Mouse interleukin-2 receptor alpha gene expression. Interleukin-1 and interleukin-2 control transcription via distinct cis-acting elements. *J Biol Chem*. 1995;270(18):10743–10753. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7738013
533. John S, Robbins CM, Leonard WJ. An IL-2 response element in the human IL-2 receptor alpha chain promoter is a composite element that binds Stat5, Elf-1, HMG-I(Y) and a GATA family protein. *EMBO J*. 1996;15(20):5627–5635. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8896456
534. Lecine P, Algarte M, Rameil P, et al. Elf-1 and Stat5 bind to a critical element in a new enhancer of the human interleukin-2 receptor alpha gene. *Mol Cell Biol*. 1996;16(12):6829–6840. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8943338
535. Kim HP, Kelly J, Leonard WJ. The basis for IL-2-induced IL-2 receptor alpha chain gene regulation: importance of two widely separated IL-2 response elements. *Immunity*. 2001;15(1):159–172. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11485747
536. Chatterjee-Kishore M, Wright KL, Ting JP, Stark GR. How Stat1 mediates constitutive gene expression: a complex of unphosphorylated Stat1 and IRF1 supports transcription of the LMP2 gene. *EMBO J*. 2000; 19(15):4111–4122. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10921891
537. Meyer T, Begitt A, Lodige I, van Rossum M, Vinkemeier U. Constitutive and IFN-gamma-induced nuclear import of STAT1 proceed through independent pathways. *EMBO J*. 2002;21(3):344–354. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11823427
538. Yang J, Chatterjee-Kishore M, Staugaitis SM, et al. Novel roles of unphosphorylated STAT3 in oncogenesis and transcriptional regulation. *Cancer Res*. 2005;65(3):939–947. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15705894
539. Ota N, Brett TJ, Murphy TL, Fremont DH, Murphy KM. N-domain-dependent nonphosphorylated STAT4 dimers required for cytokine-driven activation. *Nat Immunol*. 2004;5(2):208–215. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14704793
540. Wen Z, Zhong Z, Darnell JE Jr. Maximal activation of transcription by Stat1 and Stat3 requires both tyrosine and serine phosphorylation. *Cell*. 1995;82(2):241–250. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7543024
541. Zhang X, Blenis J, Li HC, Schindler C, Chen-Kiang S. Requirement of serine phosphorylation for formation of STAT-promoter complexes. *Science*. 1995;267(5206):1990–1994. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7701321
542. Horvath CM, Darnell JE Jr. The antiviral state induced by alpha interferon and gamma interferon requires transcriptionally active Stat1 protein. *J Virol*. 1996;70(1):647–650. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8523587
543. David M, Petricoin E 3rd, Benjamin C, Pine R, Weber MJ, Larner AC. Requirement for MAP kinase (ERK2) activity in interferon alpha- and interferon beta-stimulated gene expression through STAT proteins. *Science*. 1995;269(5231):1721–1723. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7569900
544. Zhang JJ, Zhao Y, Chait BT, et al. Ser727-dependent recruitment of MCM5 by Stat1alpha in IFN-gamma-induced transcriptional activation. *EMBO J*. 1998;17(23):6963–6971. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9843502
545. Xue HH, Fink DW Jr, Zhang X, Qin J, Turck CW, Leonard WJ. Serine phosphorylation of Stat5 proteins in lymphocytes stimulated with IL-2. *Int Immunol*. 2002;14(11):1263–1271. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12407017
546. Friedbichler K, Hoelbl A, Li G, et al. Serine phosphorylation of the Stat5a C-terminus is a driving force for transformation. *Front Biosci*. 2012;17:3043–3056. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21622220
547. Friedbichler K, Kerenyi MA, Kovacic B, et al. Stat5a serine 725 and 779 phosphorylation is a prerequisite for hematopoietic transformation. *Blood*. 2010;116(9):1548–1558. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20508164
548. Look DC, Pelletier MR, Tidwell RM, Roswit WT, Holtzman MJ. Stat1 depends on transcriptional synergy with Sp1. *J Biol Chem*. 1995; 270(51):30264–30267. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8530443
549. Wesemann DR, Qin H, Kokorina N, Benveniste EN. TRADD interacts with STAT1-alpha and influences interferon-gamma signaling. *Nat Immunol*. 2004;5(2):199–207. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14730360
550. Schaefer TS, Sanders LK, Nathans D. Cooperative transcriptional activity of Jun and Stat3 beta, a short form of Stat3. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1995;92(20):9097–9101. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7568080
551. Zhang X, Wrzeszczynska MH, Horvath CM, Darnell JE Jr. Interacting regions in Stat3 and c-Jun that participate in cooperative transcriptional activation. *Mol Cell Biol*. 1999;19(10):7138–7146. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10490649
552. Bhattacharya S, Eckner R, Grossman S, et al. Cooperation of Stat2 and p300/CBP in signalling induced by interferon-alpha. *Nature*. 1996; 383(6598):344–347. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8848048
553. Zhang JJ, Vinkemeier U, Gu W, Chakravarti D, Hovarth Sm, Darnell JE Jr. Two contact regions between Stat1 and CBP/p300 in interferon gamma signaling. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1996;93(26):15092–15096. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8986769
554. Horvai AE, Xi L, Korvus E, et al. Nuclear integration of JAK/STAT and Ras/AP-1 signaling by CBP and p300. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1997; 94(4):1074–1079. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9037008
555. Stocklin E, Wissler M, Gouilleux F, Groner B. Functional interactions between Stat5 and the glucocorticoid receptor. *Nature*. 1996;383(6602): 726–728. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8878484
556. Nakajima H, Brindle PK, Handa M, Ihle JN. Functional interaction of STAT5 and nuclear receptor co-repressor SMRT: implications in negative regulation of STAT5-dependent transcription. *EMBO J*. 2001; 20(23):6836–6844. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11726519
557. Durbin JE, Hackenmiller R, Simon MC, Levy DE. Targeted disruption of the mouse Stat1 gene results in compromised innate immunity to viral disease. *Cell*. 1996;84(3):443–450. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8608598
558. Meraz MA, White JM, Sheehan KC, et al. Targeted disruption of the Stat1 gene in mice reveals unexpected physiologic specificity in the JAK-STAT signaling pathway. *Cell*. 1996;84(3):431–442. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8608597
559. Park C, Li S, Cha E, Schindler C. Immune response in Stat2 knockout mice. *Immunity*. 2000;13(6):795–804. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11163195

560. Takeda K, Noguchi K, Shi W, et al. Targeted disruption of the mouse Stat3 gene leads to early embryonic lethality. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1997;94(8):3801–3804. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9108058
561. Akaishi H, Takeda K, Kaisho T, et al. Defective IL-2-mediated IL-2 receptor alpha chain expression in Stat3-deficient T lymphocytes. *Int Immunol*. 1998;10(11):1747–1751. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9846704
562. Akira S. Roles of STAT3 defined by tissue-specific gene targeting. *Oncogene*. 2000;19(21):2607–2611. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10851059
563. Chapman RS, Lourenco PC, Tonner E, et al. Suppression of epithelial apoptosis and delayed mammary gland involution in mice with a conditional knockout of Stat3. *Genes Dev*. 1999;13(19):2604–2616. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10521404
564. Laouar Y, Welte T, Fu XY, Flavell RA. STAT3 is required for Flt3L-dependent dendritic cell differentiation. *Immunity*. 2003;19(6):903–912. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14670306
565. Cheng F, Wang HW, Cuenca A, et al. A critical role for Stat3 signaling in immune tolerance. *Immunity*. 2003;19(3):425–436. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14499117
566. Kaplan MH, Sun YL, Hoey T, Grusby MJ. Impaired IL-12 responses and enhanced development of Th2 cells in Stat4-deficient mice. *Nature*. 1996;382(6587):174–177. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8700209
567. Thierfelder WE, van Deursen JM, Yamamoto K, et al. Requirement for Stat4 in interleukin-12-mediated responses of natural killer and T cells. *Nature*. 1996;382(6587):171–174. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8700208
568. Takeda K, Tanaka T, Shi W, et al. Essential role of Stat6 in IL-4 signalling. *Nature*. 1996;380(6575):627–630. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8602263
569. Kaplan MH, Schindler U, Smiley ST, Grusby MJ. Stat6 is required for mediating responses to IL-4 and for development of Th2 cells. *Immunity*. 1996;4(3):313–319. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8624821
570. Shimoda K, van Deursen J, Sangster MY, et al. Lack of IL-4-induced Th2 response and IgE class switching in mice with disrupted Stat6 gene. *Nature*. 1996;380(6575):630–633. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8602264
571. Liu X, Robinson GW, Wagner KU, et al. Stat5a is mandatory for adult mammary gland development and lactogenesis. *Genes Dev*. 1997;11(2):179–186. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9009201
572. Udy GB, Towers RP, Snell RG, et al. Requirement of STAT5b for sexual dimorphism of body growth rates and liver gene expression. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1997;94(14):7239–7244. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9207075
573. Yao Z, Cui Y, Watford WT, et al. Stat5a/b are essential for normal lymphoid development and differentiation. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2006;103(4):1000–1005. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16418296
573a. Kofoed EM, Hwa V, Little B, et al. Growth hormone insensitivity associated with a STAT5b mutation. *N Engl J Med*. 2003;349(12):1139–1147. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/13679528
573b. Scaglia PA, Martínez AS, Feigerlová E, et al. A novel missense mutation in the SH2 domain of the STAT5B gene results in a transcriptionally inactive STAT5b associated with severe IGF-I deficiency, immune dysfunction, and lack of pulmonary disease. *J Clin Endocrinol Metab*. 2012;97(5):E830-E839. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22419735
574. Socolovsky M, Fallon AE, Wang S, Brugnara C, Lodish HF. Fetal anemia and apoptosis of red cell progenitors in Stat5a–/–5b–/–mice: a direct role for Stat5 in Bcl-X(L) induction. *Cell*. 1999;98(2):181–191. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10428030
575. Yan R, Small S, Desplan C, Dearolf CR, Darnell JE Jr. Identification of a Stat gene that functions in Drosophila development. *Cell*. 1996;84(3):421–430. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8608596
576. Hou XS, Melnick MB, Perrimon N. Marelle acts downstream of the Drosophila HOP/JAK kinase and encodes a protein similar to the mammalian STATs. *Cell*. 1996;84(3):411–419. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8608595
577. Kawata T, Shevchenko A, Fukuzawa M, et al. SH2 signaling in a lower eukaryote: a STAT protein that regulates stalk cell differentiation in dictyostelium. *Cell*. 1997;89(6):909–916. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9200609
578. Ramana CV, Grammatikakis N, Chernov M, et al. Regulation of c-myc expression by IFN-gamma through Stat1-dependent and -independent pathways. *EMBO J*. 2000;19(2):263–272. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10637230
579. Darnell JE Jr. Transcription factors as targets for cancer therapy. *Nat Rev Cancer*. 2002;2(10):740–749. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12360277
580. Yu H, Kortylewski M, Pardoll D. Crosstalk between cancer and immune cells: role of STAT3 in the tumour microenvironment. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2007;7(1):41–51. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17186030
581. Chin YE, Kitagawa M, Su WC, You ZH, Iwamoto Y, Fu XY. Cell growth arrest and induction of cyclin-dependent kinase inhibitor p21 WAF1/CIP1 mediated by STAT1. *Science*. 1996;272(5262):719–722. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8614832
582. Su WC, Kitagawa M, Xue N, et al. Activation of Stat1 by mutant fibroblast growth-factor receptor in thanatophoric dysplasia type II dwarfism. *Nature*. 1997;386(6622):288–292. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9069288
583. Pfeffer LM, Mullersman JE, Pfeffer SR, Murti A, Shi W, Yang CH. STAT3 as an adapter to couple phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase to the IFNAR1 chain of the type I interferon receptor. *Science*. 1997;276(5317):1418–1420. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9162009
584. Ramana CV, Gil MP, Schreiber RD, Stark GR. Stat1-dependent and -independent pathways in IFN-gamma-dependent signaling. *Trends Immunol*. 2002;23(2):96–101. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11929133
585. Zeng R, Spolski R, Cases E, Zhu W, Lew DE, Leonard WJ. The molecular basis of IL-21-mediated proliferation. *Blood*. 2007;109(10):4135–4142. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17234735
586. Dent AL, Shaffer AL, Yu X, Allman D, Staudt LM. Control of inflammation, cytokine expression, and germinal center formation by BCL-6. *Science*. 1997;276(5312):589–592. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9110977
587. Brivanlou AH, Darnell JE Jr. Signal transduction and the control of gene expression. *Science*. 2002;295(5556):813–818. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11823631
588. Baldwin AS Jr. The NF-kappa B and I kappa B proteins: new discoveries and insights. *Ann Rev Immunol*. 1996;14:649–683. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8717528
589. Lee FS, Hagler J, Chen ZJ, Maniatis T. Activation of the IkappaB alpha kinase complex by MEKK1, a kinase of the JNK pathway. *Cell*. 1997;88(2):213–222. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9008162
590. Karin M. How NF-kappaB is activated: the role of the IkappaB kinase (IKK) complex. *Oncogene*. 1999;18(49):6867–6874. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10602462
591. Karin M, Greten FR. NF-kappaB: linking inflammation and immunity to cancer development and progression. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2005;5(10):749–759. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16175180
592. Oeckinghaus A, Hayden MS, Ghosh S. Crosstalk in NF-kappaB signaling pathways. *Nat Immunol*. 2011;12(8):695–708. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21772278
593. Smale ST. Hierarchies of NF-kappaB target-gene regulation. *Nat Immunol*. 2011;12(8):689–694. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21772277
594. Vallabhapurapu S, Karin M. Regulation and function of NF-kappaB transcription factors in the immune system. *Ann Rev Immunol*. 2009;27:693–733. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19302050
595. Macian F, Lopez-Rodriguez C, Rao A. Partners in transcription: NFAT and AP-1. *Oncogene*. 2001;20(19):2476–2489. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11402342
596. Crabtree GR, Olson EN. NFAT signaling: choreographing the social lives of cells. *Cell*. 2002;109(suppl):S67–S79. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11983154
597. Muller M, Rao A. NFAT, immunity and cancer: a transcription factor comes of age. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2010;10(9):645–656. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20725108

598. Takeshita T, Arita T, Higuchi M, et al. STAM, signal transducing adaptor molecule, is associated with Janus kinases and involved in signaling for cell growth and c-myc induction. *Immunity*. 1997;6(4):449–457. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9133424
599. Migone TS, Rodig S, Cacalano NA, Berg M, Schreiber RD, Leonard WJ. Functional cooperation of the interleukin-2 receptor beta chain and Jak1 in phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase recruitment and phosphorylation. *Mol Cell Biol*. 1998;18(11):6416–6422. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9774657
600. Savitsky D, Tamura T, Yanai H, Taniguchi T. Regulation of immunity and oncogenesis by the IRF transcription factor family. *Cancer Immunol Immunother*. 2010;59(4):489–510. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20049431
601. Tamura T, Yanai H, Savitsky D, Taniguchi T. The IRF family transcription factors in immunity and oncogenesis. *Ann Rev Immunol*. 2008; 26:535–584. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18303999
602. Elser B, Lohoff M, Kock S, et al. IFN-gamma represses IL-4 expression via IRF-1 and IRF-2. *Immunity*. 2002;17(6):703–712. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12479817
603. Horak ID, Gress RE, Lucas PJ, Horak EM, Waldmann TA, Bolen JB. T-lymphocyte interleukin 2-dependent tyrosine protein kinase signal transduction involves the activation of p56lck. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1991;88(5):1996–2000. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2000405
604. Hatakeyama M, Kono T, Kobayashi N, et al. Interaction of the IL-2 receptor with the src-family kinase p56lck: identification of novel intermolecular association. *Science*. 1991;252(5012):1523–1528. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2047859
605. Kobayashi N, Kono T, Hatakeyama M, et al. Functional coupling of the src-family protein tyrosine kinases p59fyn and p53/56lyn with the interleukin 2 receptor: implications for redundancy and pleiotropism in cytokine signal transduction. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1993;90(9):4201–4205. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8483935
606. Torigoe T, Saragovi HU, Reed JC. Interleukin 2 regulates the activity of the lyn protein-tyrosine kinase in a B-cell line. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1992;89(7):2674–2678. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1557373
607. Minami Y, Nakagawa Y, Kawahara A, et al. Protein tyrosine kinase Syk is associated with and activated by the IL-2 receptor: possible link with the c-myc induction pathway. *Immunity*. 1995;2(1):89–100. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7600304
608. Otani H, Siegel JP, Erdos M, et al. Interleukin (IL)-2 and IL-3 induce distinct but overlapping responses in murine IL-3-dependent 32D cells transduced with human IL-2 receptor beta chain: involvement of tyrosine kinase(s) other than p56lck. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1992; 89(7):2789–2793. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1557384
609. Karnitz L, Sutor SL, Torigoe T, et al. Effects of p56lck deficiency on the growth and cytolytic effector function of an interleukin-2-dependent cytotoxic T-cell line. *Mol Cell Biol*. 1992;12(10):4521–4530. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1557384
610. Hatakeyama M, Mori H, Doi T, Taniguchi T. A restricted cytoplasmic region of IL-2 receptor beta chain is essential for growth signal transduction but not for ligand binding and internalization. *Cell*. 1989; 59(5):837–845. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2590941
611. Fujii H, Ogasawara K, Otsuka H, et al. Functional dissection of the cytoplasmic subregions of the IL-2 receptor betac chain in primary lymphocyte populations. *EMBO J*. 1998;17(22):6551–6557. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9822600
612. Turner M, Mee PJ, Costello PS, et al. Perinatal lethality and blocked B-cell development in mice lacking the tyrosine kinase Syk. *Nature*. 1995;378(6554):298–302. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7477352
613. Corey SJ, Burkhardt AL, Bolen JB, Geahlen RL, Tkatch LS, Tweardy DJ. Granulocyte colony-stimulating factor receptor signaling involves the formation of a three-component complex with Lyn and Syk protein-tyrosine kinases. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1994;91(11):4683–4687. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8197119
614. Rao P, Mufson RA. A membrane proximal domain of the human interleukin-3 receptor beta c subunit that signals DNA synthesis in NIH 3T3 cells specifically binds a complex of Src and Janus family tyrosine kinases and phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase. *J Biol Chem*. 1995;270(12): 6886–6893. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7896837
615. Ernst M, Gearing DP, Dunn AR. Functional and biochemical association of Hck with the LIF/IL-6 receptor signal transducing subunit gp130 in embryonic stem cells. *EMBO J*. 1994;13(7):1574–1584. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8156996
616. Matsuda T, Fukada T, Takahashi-Tezuka M, et al. Activation of Fes tyrosine kinase by gp130, an interleukin-6 family cytokine signal transducer, and their association. *J Biol Chem*. 1995;270(19):11037–11039. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7538109
617. Matsuda T, Takahasi-Tezuka M, Fukada T, et al. Association and activation of Btk and Tec tyrosine kinases by gp130, a signal transducer of the interleukin-6 family of cytokines. *Blood*. 1995;85(3):627–633. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7530500
618. Izuhara K, Feldman RA, Greer P, Harada N. Interaction of the c-fes proto-oncogene product with the interleukin-4 receptor. *J Biol Chem*. 1994;269(28):18623–18629. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7518439
619. Burks DJ, White MF. IRS proteins and beta-cell function. *Diabetes*. 2001;50(suppl 1):S140–S145. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11272176
620. Wang LM, Myers MG Jr, Sun XJ, Aatonsen SA, White M, Pierce JH. IRS-1: essential for insulin- and IL-4-stimulated mitogenesis in hematopoietic cells. *Science*. 1993;261(5128):1591–1594. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8372354
621. Keegan AD, Nelms K, White M, Wang LM, Piece JH, Paul WE. An IL-4 receptor region containing an insulin receptor motif is important for IL-4-mediated IRS-1 phosphorylation and cell growth. *Cell*. 1994; 76(5):811–820. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8124718
622. Ridderstrale M, Degerman E, Tornqvist H. Growth hormone stimulates the tyrosine phosphorylation of the insulin receptor substrate-1 and its association with phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase in primary adipocytes. *J Biol Chem*. 1995;270(8):3471–3474. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7876077
623. Argetsinger LS, Norstedt G, Billestrup N, White MF, Carter-Su C. Growth hormone, interferon-gamma, and leukemia inhibitory factor utilize insulin receptor substrate-2 in intracellular signaling. *J Biol Chem*. 1996;271(46):29415–29421. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8910607
624. Johnston JA, Wang LM, Hanson EP, et al. Interleukins 2, 4, 7, and 15 stimulate tyrosine phosphorylation of insulin receptor substrates 1 and 2 in T cells. Potential role of JAK kinases. *J Biol Chem*. 1995;270(48): 28527–28530. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7499365
625. Fruman DA, Meyers RE, Cantley LC. Phosphoinositide kinases. *Annu Rev Biochem*. 1998;67:481–507. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9759495
626. Jucker M, Feldman RA. Identification of a new adapter protein that may link the common beta subunit of the receptor for granulocyte/macrophage colony-stimulating factor, interleukin (IL)-3, and IL-5 to phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase. *J Biol Chem*. 1995;270(46):27817–27822. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7499252
627. Truitt KE, Mills GB, Turck CW, Imboden JB. SH2-dependent association of phosphatidylinositol 3'-kinase 85-kDa regulatory subunit with the interleukin-2 receptor beta chain. *J Biol Chem*. 1994;269(8):5937–5943. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7509794
628. Damen JE, Cutler RL, Jiao H, Yi T, Krystal G. Phosphorylation of tyrosine 503 in the erythropoietin receptor (EpR) is essential for binding the P85 subunit of phosphatidylinositol (PI) 3-kinase and for EpR-associated PI 3-kinase activity. *J Biol Chem*. 1995;270(40):23402–23408. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7559499
629. Karnitz LM, Burns LA, Sutor SL, Blenis J, Abraham RT. Interleukin-2 triggers a novel phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase-dependent MEK activation pathway. *Mol Cell Biol*. 1995;15(6):3049–3057. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7760801
630. Dong C, Davis RJ, Flavell RA. MAP kinases in the immune response. *Ann Rev Immunol*. 2002;20:55–72. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11861597
631. Neel BG, Tonks NK. Protein tyrosine phosphatases in signal transduction. *Curr Opin Cell Biol*. 1997;9(2):193–204. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9069265

632. Li L, Dixon JE. Form, function, and regulation of protein tyrosine phosphatases and their involvement in human diseases. *Semin Immunol*. 2000;12(1):75–84. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10723800
633. Tsui HW, Siminovitch KA, de Souza L, Tsui FW. Motheaten and viable motheaten mice have mutations in the haematopoietic cell phosphatase gene. *Nat Gen*. 1993;4(2):124–129. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8348149
634. Shultz LD, Schweitzer PA, Pajan TV, et al. Mutations at the murine motheaten locus are within the hematopoietic cell protein-tyrosine phosphatase (Hcph) gene. *Cell*. 1993;73(7):1445–1454. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8324828
635. Van Zant G, Shultz L. Hematologic abnormalities of the immunodeficient mouse mutant, viable motheaten (mev). *Exp Hematol*. 1989;17(2):81–87. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2783574
636. Klingmuller U, Lorenz U, Cantley LC, Neel BG, Lodish HF. Specific recruitment of SH-PTP1 to the erythropoietin receptor causes inactivation of JAK2 and termination of proliferative signals. *Cell*. 1995;80(5):729–738. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7889566
637. Yi T, Mui AL, Krystal G, Ihle JN. Hematopoietic cell phosphatase associates with the interleukin-3 (IL-3) receptor beta chain and down-regulates IL-3-induced tyrosine phosphorylation and mitogenesis. *Mol Cell Biol*. 1993;13(12):7577–7586. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8246974
638. Yetter A, Uddin S, Krolewski JJ, Liao H, Yi T, Platanias LC. Association of the interferon-dependent tyrosine kinase Tyk-2 with the hematopoietic cell phosphatase. *J Biol Chem*. 1995;270(31):18179–18182. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7629131
639. Jiao H, Berrada K, Yang W, Tabrizi M, Platanias LC, Yi T. Direct association with and dephosphorylation of Jak2 kinase by the SH2-domain-containing protein tyrosine phosphatase SHP-1. *Mol Cell Biol*. 1996;16(12):6985–6992. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8943354
640. Yin T, Shen R, Feng GS, Yang YC. Molecular characterization of specific interactions between SHP-2 phosphatase and JAK tyrosine kinases. *J Biol Chem*. 1997;272(2):1032–1037. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8995399
641. Haspel RL, Salditt-Georgieff M, Darnell JE Jr. The rapid inactivation of nuclear tyrosine phosphorylated Stat1 depends upon a protein tyrosine phosphatase. *EMBO J*. 1996;15(22):6262–6268. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8947049
642. Mertens C, Zhong M, Krishnaraj R, Zou W, Chen X, Darnell JE Jr. Dephosphorylation of phosphotyrosine on STAT1 dimers requires extensive spatial reorientation of the monomers facilitated by the N-terminal domain. *Genes Dev*. 2006;20(24):3372–3381. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17182865
643. Krystal G. Lipid phosphatases in the immune system. *Semin Immunol*. 2000;12(4):397–403. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10995586
644. Kim TK, Maniatis T. Regulation of interferon-gamma-activated STAT1 by the ubiquitin-proteasome pathway. *Science*. 1996;273(5282):1717–1719. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8781235
645. Yoshimura A, Ohkubo T, Kiguchi T, et al. A novel cytokine-inducible gene CIS encodes an SH2-containing protein that binds to tyrosine-phosphorylated interleukin 3 and erythropoietin receptors. *EMBO J*. 1995;14(12):2816–2826. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7796808
646. Matsumoto A, Masuhara M, Mitsui K, et al. CIS, a cytokine inducible SH2 protein, is a target of the JAK-STAT5 pathway and modulates STAT5 activation. *Blood*. 1997;89(9):3148–3154. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9129017
647. Naka T, Narazaki M, Hirata M, et al. Structure and function of a new STAT-induced STAT inhibitor. *Nature*. 1997;387(6636):924–929. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9202127
648. Starr R, Willson RA, Viney EM, et al. A family of cytokine-inducible inhibitors of signalling. *Nature*. 1997;387(6636):917–921. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9202125
649. Endo TA, Masuhara M, Yokouchi M, et al. A new protein containing an SH2 domain that inhibits JAK kinases. *Nature*. 1997;387(6636):921–924. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9202126
650. Krebs DL, Hilton DJ. SOCS proteins: negative regulators of cytokine signaling. *Stem Cells*. 2001;19(5):378–387. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11553846
651. Yasukawa H, Sasaki A, Yoshimura A. Negative regulation of cytokine signaling pathways. *Ann Rev Immunol*. 2000;18:143–164. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10837055
652. Alexander WS, Hilton DJ. The role of suppressors of cytokine signaling (SOCS) proteins in regulation of the immune response. *Ann Rev Immunol*. 2004;22:503–529. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15032587
653. Starr R, Hilton DJ. Defining control: regulation of dendritic cell activation and immune homeostasis by SOCS1. *Immunity*. 2003;19(3):308–309. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14499106
654. Cassel SL, Rothman PB. Chapter 3: role of SOCS in allergic and innate immune responses. *Adv Immunol*. 2009;103:49–76. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19755183
655. Nakagawa R, Naka T, Tsutsui H, et al. SOCS-1 participates in negative regulation of LPS responses. *Immunity*. 2002;17(5):677–687. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12433373
656. Chong MM, Cornish AL, Darwiche R, et al. Suppressor of cytokine signaling-1 is a critical regulator of interleukin-7-dependent CD8+ T cell differentiation. *Immunity*. 2003;18(4):475–487. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12705851
657. Knosp CA, Carroll HP, Elliott J, et al. SOCS2 regulates T helper type 2 differentiation and the generation of type 2 allergic responses. *J Exp Med*. 2011;208(7):1523–1531. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21646394
658. Croker BA, JMetcalf D, Robb L, et al. SOCS3 is a critical physiological negative regulator of G-CSF signaling and emergency granulopoiesis. *Immunity*. 2004;20(2):153–165. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14975238
659. Croker BA, Krebs DL, Zhang JG, et al. SOCS3 negatively regulates IL-6 signaling in vivo. *Nat Immunol*. 2003;4(6):540–545. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12754505
660. Lang R, Pauleau AL, Parganas E, et al. SOCS3 regulates the plasticity of gp130 signaling. *Nat Immunol*. 2003;4(6):546–550. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12754506
661. Kovanen PE, Leonard WJ. Inhibitors keep cytokines in check. *Curr Biol*. 1999;9(23):R899–R902. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10607559
662. Chung CD, Liao J, Liu B, et al. Specific inhibition of Stat3 signal transduction by PIAS3. *Science*. 1997;278(5344):1803–1805. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9388184
663. Liu B, Liao J, Rao X, et al. Inhibition of Stat1-mediated gene activation by PIAS1. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1998;95(18):10626–10631. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9724754
664. Kile BT, Nicola NA, Alexander WS. Negative regulators of cytokine signaling. *Int J Hematol*. 2001;73(3):292–298. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11345194
665. Sachdev S, Bruhn L, Sieber H, Pichler A, Melchior F, Grosschedl R. PIASy, a nuclear matrix-associated SUMO E3 ligase, represses LEF1 activity by sequestration into nuclear bodies. *Genes Dev*. 2001;15(23):3088–3103. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11731474
666. Jackson PK. A new RING for SUMO: wrestling transcriptional responses into nuclear bodies with PIAS family E3 SUMO ligases. *Genes Dev*. 2001;15(23):3053–3058. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11731472
667. Palvimo JJ. PIAS proteins as regulators of small ubiquitin-related modifier (SUMO) modifications and transcription. *Biochem Soc Trans*. 2007;35(pt 6):1405–1408. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18031232
668. Gilmour KC, Fujii H, Cranston T, Davies EG, Kinnon C, Gaspar HB. Defective expression of the interleukin-2/interleukin-15 receptor beta subunit leads to a natural killer cell-deficient form of severe combined immunodeficiency. *Blood*. 2001;98(3):877–879. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11468191
669. Yang YC, Ricciardi S, Ciarletta A, Calvetti J, Kelleher K, Clark SC. Expression cloning of cDNA encoding a novel human hematopoietic growth factor: human homologue of murine T-cell growth factor P40. *Blood*. 1989;74(6):1880–1884. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2508790
670. Altare F, Lammas D, Revy P, et al. Inherited interleukin 12 deficiency in a child with bacille Calmette-Guerin and Salmonella enteritidis disseminated infection. *J Clin Invest*. 1998;102(12):2035–2040. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9854038

671. Altare F, Durandy A, Lammas D, et al. Impairment of mycobacterial immunity in human interleukin-12 receptor deficiency. *Science*. 1998;280(5368):1432–1435. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9603732
672. Jouanguy E, Lamhamedi-Cherradi S, Altare F, et al. Partial interferon-gamma receptor 1 deficiency in a child with tuberculoid bacillus Calmette-Guerin infection and a sibling with clinical tuberculosis. *J Clin Invest*. 1997;100(11):2658–2664. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9389728
673. Doffinger R, Jouanguy E, Dupuis S, et al. Partial interferon-gamma receptor signaling chain deficiency in a patient with bacille Calmette-Guerin and Mycobacterium abscessus infection. *J Infect Dis*. 2000; 181(1):379–384. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10608793
674. Dupuis S, Dargemont C, Fieschi C, et al. Impairment of mycobacterial but not viral immunity by a germline human STAT1 mutation. *Science*. 2001;293(5528):300–303. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11452125
675. Liu L, Okada S, Kong XF, et al. Gain-of-function human STAT1 mutations impair IL-17 immunity and underlie chronic mucocutaneous candidiasis. *J Exp Med*. 2011;208(8):1635–1648. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21727188
676. Pilati C, Amessou M, Bihl MP, et al. Somatic mutations activating STAT3 in human inflammatory hepatocellular adenomas. *J Exp Med*. 2011;208(7):1359–1366. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21690253
677. Yoshida H, Hamano S, Senaldi G, et al. WSX-1 is required for the initiation of Th1 responses and resistance to L. major infection. *Immunity*. 2001;15(4):569–578. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11672539
678. Chen Q, Chilhardi N, Wang H, et al. Development of Th1-type immune responses requires the type I cytokine receptor TCCR. *Nature*. 2000;407(6806):916–920. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11057672
679. Hamano S, Himeno K, Miyazaki Y, et al. WSX-1 is required for resistance to Trypanosoma cruzi infection by regulation of proinflammatory cytokine production. *Immunity*. 2003;19(5):657–667. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14614853
680. Villarino A, Hibbert L, Lieberman L, et al. The IL-27R (WSX-1) is required to suppress T cell hyperactivity during infection. *Immunity*. 2003;19(5):645–655. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14614852
681. Amselem S, Duquesnoy P, Attree O, et al. Laron dwarfism and mutations of the growth hormone-receptor gene. *N Engl J Med*. 1989; 321(15):989–995. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2779634
682. Dong F, Hoefsloot LH, Schelen AM, et al. Identification of a nonsense mutation in the granulocyte-colony-stimulating factor receptor in severe congenital neutropenia. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1994;91(10): 4480–4484. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7514305
683. de la Chapelle A, Traskelin AL, Juvonen E. Truncated erythropoietin receptor causes dominantly inherited benign human erythrocytosis. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1993;90(10):4495–4499. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8506290
684. Souyri M, Vigon I, Penciolelli JF, Heard JM, Tambourin P, Wendling F. A putative truncated cytokine receptor gene transduced by the myeloproliferative leukemia virus immortalizes hematopoietic progenitors. *Cell*. 1990;63(6):1137–1147. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2175677
685. Shochat C, Talet al. Gain-of-function mutations in interleukin-7 receptor-alpha (IL7R) in childhood acute lymphoblastic leukemias. *J Exp Med*. 2011;208(5):901–908. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21536738
686. Mullighan CG, Collins-Underwood JR, Phillips LA, et al. Rearrangement of CRLF2 in B-progenitor- and Down syndrome-associated acute lymphoblastic leukemia. *Nat Gen*. 2009;41(11):1243–1246. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19838194
687. Russell LJ, Capasso M, Vater I, et al. Deregulated expression of cytokine receptor gene, CRLF2, is involved in lymphoid transformation in B-cell precursor acute lymphoblastic leukemia. *Blood*. 2009;114(13):2688–2698. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19641190
688. Hertzberg L, Vendramini E, Ganmore I, et al. Down syndrome acute lymphoblastic leukemia, a highly heterogeneous disease in which aberrant expression of CRLF2 is associated with mutated JAK2: a report from the International BFM Study Group. *Blood*. 2010;115(5):1006–1017. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19965641
689. Nishimoto N, Kishimoto T. Inhibition of IL-6 for the treatment of inflammatory diseases. *Curr Opin Pharmacol*. 2004;4(4):386–391. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15251133
690. Ding C, Jones G. Technology evaluation: MRA, Chugai. *Curr Opin Mol Ther*. 2003;5(1):64–69. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12669473
691. Waldmann TA. The meandering 45-year odyssey of a clinical immunologist. *Ann Rev Immunol*. 2003;21:1–27. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12359737
692. Kundig TM, Schorle H, Bachmann MF, Hengartner H, Zinkernagel RM, Horak I. Immune responses in interleukin-2-deficient mice. *Science*. 1993;262(5136):1059–1061. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8235625
693. Sadlack B, Merz H, Schorle H, et al. Ulcerative colitis-like disease in mice with a disrupted interleukin-2 gene. *Cell*. 1993;75(2):253–261. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8402910
694. Noben-Trauth N, Shultz LD, Brombacher F, Urban JF Jr, Gu H, Paul WE. An interleukin 4 (IL-4)-independent pathway for CD4+ T cell IL-4 production is revealed in IL-4 receptor-deficient mice. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1997;94(20):10838–10843. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9380721
695. Brandt EB, Munitz A, Orekov T, et al. Targeting IL-4/IL-13 signaling to alleviate oral allergen-induced diarrhea. *J Allergy Clin Immunol*. 2009; 123(1):53–58. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18996576
696. Dranoff G, Crawford AD, Sadelain M, et al. Involvement of granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor in pulmonary homeostasis. *Science*. 1994;264(5159):713–716. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8171324
697. Stanley E, Lieschke GJ, Grail D, et al. Granulocyte/macrophage colonystimulating factor-deficient mice show no major perturbation of hematopoiesis but develop a characteristic pulmonary pathology. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1994;91(12):5592–5596. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8202532
698. Nishinakamura R, Nakayama N, Hirabayashi Y, et al. Mice deficient for the IL-3/GM-CSF/IL-5 beta c receptor exhibit lung pathology and impaired immune response, while beta IL3 receptor-deficient mice are normal. *Immunity*. 1995;2(3):211–222. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7697542
699. Kopf M, Baumann H, Freer G, et al. Impaired immune and acute-phase responses in interleukin-6-deficient mice. *Nature*. 1994;368(6469): 339–342. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8127368
700. Yoshida K, Taga T, Saito M, et al. Targeted disruption of gp130, a common signal transducer for the interleukin 6 family of cytokines, leads to myocardial and hematological disorders. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1996;93(1):407–411. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8552649
701. Akira S, Yoshida K, Tanaka T, Taga T, Kishimoto T. Targeted disruption of the IL-6 related genes: gp130 and NF-IL-6. *Immunol Rev*. 1995; 148:221–253. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8825289
702. Stewart CL, Kaspar P, Brunet LJ, et al. Blastocyst implantation depends on maternal expression of leukaemia inhibitory factor. *Nature*. 1992;359(6390):76–79. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1522892
703. Escary JL, Perreau J, Dumenil D, Ezine S, Brulet P. Leukaemia inhibitory factor is necessary for maintenance of haematopoietic stem cells and thymocyte stimulation. *Nature*. 1993;363(6427):361–364. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8497320
704. Rao MS, Sun Y, Escary JL, et al. Leukemia inhibitory factor mediates an injury response but not a target-directed developmental transmitter switch in sympathetic neurons. *Neuron*. 1993;11(6):1175–1185. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7506046
705. Ware CB, Horowitz MC, Renshaw BR, et al. Targeted disruption of the low-affinity leukemia inhibitory factor receptor gene causes placental, skeletal, neural and metabolic defects and results in perinatal death. *Development*. 1995;121(5):1283–1299. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7789261

706. Li M, Sendtner M, Smith A. Essential function of LIF receptor in motor neurons. *Nature*. 1995;378(6558):724–727. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7501019
707. Masu Y, Wolf E, Holtmann B, et al. Disruption of the CNTF gene results in motor neuron degeneration. *Nature*. 1993;365(6441):27–32. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8361533
708. DeChiara TM, Vejsada R, Poueymirou WT, et al. Mice lacking the CNTF receptor, unlike mice lacking CNTF, exhibit profound motor neuron deficits at birth. *Cell*. 1995;83(2):313–322. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7585948
709. Robb L, Li R, Hartley L, Nandurkar HH, Koentgen F, Begley CG. Infertility in female mice lacking the receptor for interleukin 11 is due to a defective uterine response to implantation. *Nat Med*. 1998;4(3):303–308. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7585948
710. Magram J, Connaughton SE, Warrier RR, et al. IL-12-deficient mice are defective in IFN gamma production and type 1 cytokine responses. *Immunity*. 1996;4(5):471–481. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8630732
711. Wu C, Ferrante J, Gately MK, Magram J. Characterization of IL-12 receptor beta1 chain (IL-12Rbeta1)-deficient mice: IL-12Rbeta1 is an essential component of the functional mouse IL-12 receptor. *J Immunol*. 1997;159(4):1658–1665. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9257825
712. Gran B, Zhang GX, Yu S, et al. IL-12p35-deficient mice are susceptible to experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis: evidence for redundancy in the IL-12 system in the induction of central nervous system autoimmune demyelination. *J Immunol*. 2002;169(12):7104–7110. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12471147
713. Zhang GX, Gran B, Yu S, et al. Induction of experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis in IL-12 receptor-beta 2-deficient mice: IL-12 responsiveness is not required in the pathogenesis of inflammatory demyelination in the central nervous system. *J Immunol*. 2003;170(4):2153–2160. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12574388
714. Ghilardi N, Kljavin N, Chen Q, Lucas S, Gurney AL, De Sauvage FJ. Compromised humoral and delayed-type hypersensitivity responses in IL-23-deficient mice. *J Immunol*. 2004;172(5):2827–2833. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14978083
715. Wirtz S, Billmeier U, McHedlidze T, Blumberg RS, Neurath MF. Interleukin-35 mediates mucosal immune responses that protect against T-cell-dependent colitis. *Gastroenterology*. 2011;141(5):1875–1886. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21820391
716. Wu H, Liu X, Jaenisch R, Lodish HF. Generation of committed erythroid BFU-E and CFU-E progenitors does not require erythropoietin or the erythropoietin receptor. *Cell*. 1995;83(1):59–67. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7553874
717. Lin CS, Lim SK, D'Agati V, Costantini F. Differential effects of an erythropoietin receptor gene disruption on primitive and definitive erythropoiesis. *Genes Dev*. 1996;10(2):154–164. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8566749
718. Gurney AL, Carver-Moore K, de Sauvage FJ, Moore MW. Thrombocytopenia in c-mpl-deficient mice. *Science*. 1994;265(5177):1445–1447. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8073287
719. Lieschke GJ, Grail D, Hodgson G, et al. Mice lacking granulocyte colony-stimulating factor have chronic neutropenia, granulocyte and macrophage progenitor cell deficiency, and impaired neutrophil mobilization. *Blood*. 1994;84(6):1737–1746. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7521686
720. Yoshida H, Hayashi S, Kunisada T, et al. The murine mutation osteopetrosis is in the coding region of the macrophage colony stimulating factor gene. *Nature*. 1990;345(6274):442–444. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2188141
721. Metcalf D. The granulocyte-macrophage regulators: reappraisal by gene inactivation. *Exp Hematol*. 1995;23(7):569–572. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7541367
722. Muller U, Steinhoff U, Reis LF, et al. Functional role of type I and type II interferons in antiviral defense. *Science*. 1994;264(5167):1918–1921. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8009221
723. van den Broek MF, Muller U, Huang S, Zinkernagel RM, Aguet M. Immune defence in mice lacking type I and/or type II interferon receptors. *Immunol Rev*. 1995;148:5–18. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8825279
724. van den Broek MF, Muller U, Huang S, Aguet M, Zinkernagel RM. Antiviral defense in mice lacking both alpha/beta and gamma interferon receptors. *J Virol*. 1995;69(8):4792–4796. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7609046
725. Dalton DK, Pitts-Meek S, Keshav S, Figari IS, Bradley A, Stewart TA. Multiple defects of immune cell function in mice with disrupted interferon-gamma genes. *Science*. 1993;259(5102):1739–1742. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8456300
726. Wang ZE, Reiner SL, Zheng S, Dalton DK, Locksley RM. CD4+ effector cells default to the Th2 pathway in interferon gamma-deficient mice infected with Leishmania major. *J Exp Med*. 1994;179(4):1367–1371. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7908325
727. Scharton-Kersten TM, Wynn TA, Denkers EY, et al. In the absence of endogenous IFN-gamma, mice develop unimpaired IL-12 responses to Toxoplasma gondii while failing to control acute infection. *J Immunol*. 1996;157(9):4045–4054. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8892638
728. Huang S, Hendriks W, Althage A, et al. Immune response in mice that lack the interferon-gamma receptor. *Science*. 1993;259(5102):1742–1745. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8456301
729. Azuma YT, Matsuo Y, Kuwamura M, et al. Interleukin-19 protects mice from innate-mediated colonic inflammation. *Inflamm Bowel Dis*. 2010;16(6):1017–1028. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19834971
730. Wahl C, Muller W, Leithauser F, et al. IL-20 receptor 2 signaling down-regulates antigen-specific T cell responses. *J Immunol*. 2009;182(2):802–810. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19124723
731. Zheng Y, Valdez PA, Danilenko DM, et al. Interleukin-22 mediates early host defense against attaching and effacing bacterial pathogens. *Nat Med*. 2008;14(3):282–289. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18264109
732. Ank N, Iversen MB, Bartholdy C, et al. An important role for type III interferon (IFN-lambda/IL-28) in TLR-induced antiviral activity. *J Immunol*. 2008;180(4):2474–2485. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18250457
733. Parganas E, Wang D, Stravopodis D, et al. Jak2 is essential for signaling through a variety of cytokine receptors. *Cell*. 1998;93(3):385–395. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9590173
734. Neubauer H, Cumano A, Muller M, Wu H, Huffstadt U, Pfeffer K. Jak2 deficiency defines an essential developmental checkpoint in definitive hematopoiesis. *Cell*. 1998;93(3):397–409. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9590174
735. Karaghiosoff M, Meubauer H, Lassnig C, et al. Partial impairment of cytokine responses in Tyk2-deficient mice. *Immunity*. 2000;13(4):549–560. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11070173
736. Shimoda K, Kato K, Aoki K, et al. Tyk2 plays a restricted role in IFN alpha signaling, although it is required for IL-12-mediated T cell function. *Immunity*. 2000;13(4):561–571. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11070174
737. Shimoda K, Tsutsui H, Aoki K, et al. Partial impairment of interleukin-12 (IL-12) and IL-18 signaling in Tyk2-deficient mice. *Blood*. 2002;99(6):2094–2099. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11877284

CHAPTER 26

The Interleukin-1 Family

Charles A. Dinarello • Mihai G. Netea

INTRODUCTION

More than any other cytokine family, the interleukin (IL)-1 family of ligands and receptors is primarily associated with acute and chronic inflammation. Also, more than any other cytokine family, the IL-1 family plays a fundamental role in the nonspecific innate response to infection that facilitates specific immunologic responses such as antibodies and cytotoxic T-lymphocytes. This nonspecific response to infection is now termed the "innate immune response." The cytosolic segment of each member of the IL-1 receptor family contains the toll-IL-1-receptor (TIR) domain. This domain is also present in each toll-like receptor (TLR), receptors that respond to microbial products, viruses, and nucleic acids. TIR is the functional domain for both the TLR and IL-1 receptor families, as mutations in this domain result in loss of response to IL-1 and TLR agonists. The biologic properties of both IL-1 family ligands and TLR agonists characteristically are proinflammatory and act as adjuvants for specific immune responses to antigen. Thus, the IL-1 family of ligands and receptors is fundamental to innate immunity. Of the 11 members of the IL-1 family, IL-1β has emerged as a therapeutic target for an expanding number of systemic and local inflammatory conditions termed "autoinflammatory" diseases. These diseases are distinct from autoimmune diseases and include rare hereditary conditions. But autoinflammatory diseases are also common diseases such as heart failure, gouty arthritis, and type 2 diabetes. For these, neutralization of IL-1β results in a rapid and sustained reduction in disease severity. Another member of the IL-1 family, IL-1α, is also a mediator of inflammation but is classified as an "alarmin" because the cytokine is present in most cells and readily released upon cell death. Whereas treatment for autoimmune diseases often includes immunosuppressive drugs, neutralization of IL-1β or blocking the IL-1 receptor is mostly anti-inflammatory.

With one exception, all members of the IL-1 family are initially translated as precursors lacking a signal peptide for secretion via the Golgi. The precursors are found in the cytosol and exit the cell following death by necrosis, not apoptosis. For example, once released, IL-1α, IL-33, and IL-36 can be processed extracellularly by neutrophil proteases into active cytokines. Although IL-1β is primarily processed intracellularly by the cysteine protease caspase-1, the IL-1β precursor can also be cleaved extracellularly into an active cytokine by similar serine proteases of neutrophils. The one member of the IL-1 family that is readily secreted is the IL-1 receptor antagonist (IL-1Ra). IL-1Ra is translated with a signal peptide (Fig. 26.1), although an intracellular form also exists.[1] IL-1Ra is produced in health and is found circulating in mice and humans where the antagonist serves as a brake on inflammation driven by endogenous IL-1α or IL-1β. IL-1Ra binds to the IL-1RI and blocks the receptor from binding to either IL-1α or IL-1β (see Fig. 26.1C). Mice as well as humans born with a deficiency in functional IL-1Ra exhibit increased systemic and local inflammation; in humans, a deficiency in IL-1Ra is lethal. The IL-36 receptor antagonist (IL-36Ra), another member of the IL-1 family, inhibits the activity of endogenous IL-36α, β, and γ. Although IL-36Ra is not readily secreted, individuals with a mutation in IL-36Ra develop a severe form of psoriasis. One may conclude that most members of the IL-1 family primarily promote inflammation and enhance specific acquired immune responses. But there are also members that provide a brake on inflammation. The primary characteristics of the each member of the IL-1 family are depicted in Table 26.1.

INTERLEUKIN-1 FAMILY AND INNATE RESPONSES

Independent of the type of organism or its products, the innate response is one of inflammation in which the host musters its defenses to increase the production and infiltration of phagocytic cells to the area of the invading microbe in an attempt limit infection and kill-off the invader. Systemically, the liver increases the synthesis of acute phase proteins, include antiproteases. Even in humans, in most cases this process protects the subject without the use of antibiotics. For example, a break in the skin allows bacteria to gain access to the dermis and subsequent inflammation provides activation of complement, the release of preformed cytokines from keratinocytes, an increase in vascular wall adhesions molecules, and the extravasation of neutrophils. This response has functioned to battle against invaders for millions of years and can be traced back to fruit flies.

The skin, lung, and intestinal tract each provide a first line of defense against microbial invasion and the lining cells, whether keratinocytes of the skin, the alveolar epithelial cells of the pulmonary tree, or the epithelial cells of the entire gastrointestinal tract, each contain preformed IL-1α, IL-18, and IL-33 as well as the members of the IL-36 subfamily. Because these members of the IL-1 family are each preformed in these cells, their release is a consequence of injury and is immediate. Therefore, they are termed "alarmins" as they alert the host to initiate the response. There are other "alarmins" from the lining cells that participate in defense, for example, defensins, which are directly antimicrobial.

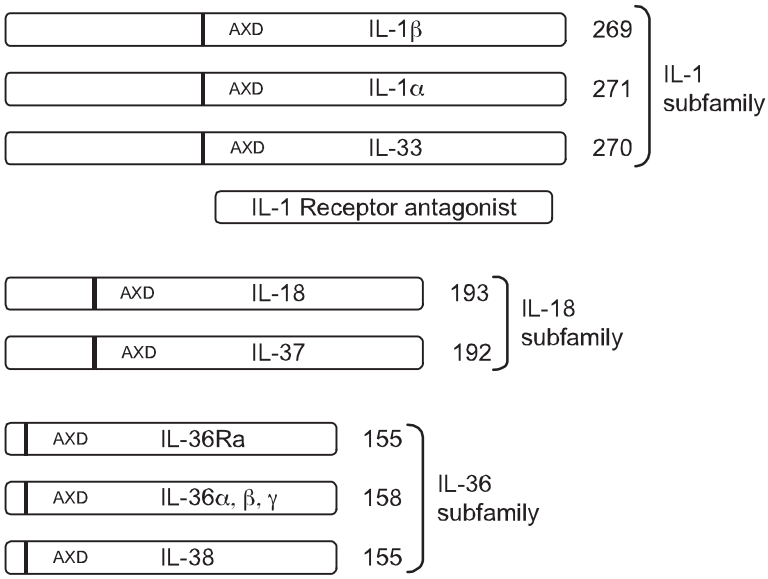


FIG. 26.1. Organization of the Interleukin (IL)-1 Family into Three Subfamilies. The number of amino acids of the full-length of each member is shown at the C-terminal end. The consensus sequence (A-X-D) is common to all IL-1 family members and serves to locate the N-terminus nine amino acids forward from this site, as shown by the *dark vertical bar*. The N-terminus results in propieces of various lengths. The IL-1Ra has a bonafide signal peptide and is shown by comparison.

Each of the constitutively present IL-1 family members in lining cells is present as a precursor. In the case of IL-1α, the precursor is fully active; in the case of the other members, the precursors are weakly active at first but are converted to more active cytokines upon the infiltration of neutrophils and processing by extracellular neutrophil proteases. In the end, the infection is contained, the invading microorganism is eliminated, and skin begins its process of repair.

Following the cloning of the mouse IL-1 receptor,[2] the cytosolic domain of the IL-1 receptor was found to be homologous to toll of the fruit fly.[3] Moreover, at the same time, the TIR domain for IL-1 signaling (Fig. 26.2A) was shown by Heguy to be required for IL-1 signaling.[4] Toll had been initially studied since its discovery in 1985 because of its central role in establishing dorsal ventral polarity in *Drosophila*. Only since 1996 was toll linked to survival in fruit flies infected with fungi.[5] However, it had already been reported, back in 1988, that a member of the IL-1/TLR family, human IL-1β, protected mice from lethal *Pseudomonas* infection.[6] As noted previously, the TIR domain is essential for both IL-1 receptor family and TLR family signaling; a mutation in the TIR domain severely impairs responses to IL-1 family ligands as well to a large number of microbial products.[7]

The TIR domain binds MyD88 (see Fig. 26.2A and E), itself a TIR domain–containing protein, through TIR/TIR interactions triggering a cascade of kinases that propagate the IL-1 signal and result in transcription of a large number of genes, the majority of which code for other cytokines, chemokines, and a host of inflammatory mediators. Of these is IL-1 and other members of the IL-1 family such as IL-36 and IL-18.

The "innate immune response" regulates to the "acquired immune response." The late Charles Janeway proposed that the innate response assists the host in mounting an acquired immune response. This relationship between a nonspecific cytokine providing help for a specific response to a microbial antigen is simply the adjuvant property of some cytokines. The adjuvant property of some cytokines functions by upregulating lymphocyte growth factors such as IL-2, IL-4, and IL-6, or lymphocyte receptors resulting in expansion of lymphocyte clones, which will either rid the host of the invading microorganism with neutralizing antibodies or in generation of cytotoxic T cells to eliminate viral infections. In 1979, purified human IL-1β, a nonspecific macrophage product, was shown to augment the T-cell response to specific antigen.[8] It was nearly 20 years later that TLR were identified as inducing IL-1β from monocytes.

TABLE 26.1 Interleukin-1 Family Members

Family Name	Name	Property
IL-1F1	IL-1α	Agonist
IL-1F2	IL-1β	Agonist
IL-1F3	IL-1Ra	Receptor antagonist
IL-1F4	IL-18	Agonist
IL-1F5	IL-36Ra	Receptor antagonist
IL-1F6	IL-36α	Agonist
IL-1F7	IL-37	Anti-inflammatory
IL-1F8	IL-36β	Agonist
IL-1F9	IL-36γ	Agonist
IL-1F10	IL-38	Receptor antagonist
IL-1F11	IL-33	Agonist

IL, interleukin.

ORGANIZATION OF THE INTERLEUKIN-1 FAMILY OF LIGANDS AND THE CONSENSUS SEQUENCE

As depicted in Figure 26.1, the IL-1 family can be divided into subfamilies according to the length of the precursor and the length of the propiece for each precursor. The IL-1 subfamily is comprised of IL-1α, IL-1β, and IL-33. This subfamily has the longest proteins with the longest propieces. In the case of IL-1β, the propiece is cleaved intracellularly by caspase-1 and then the mature cytokine is secreted. In the case of IL-1α, cleavage appears to be by the membrane protease calpain, but

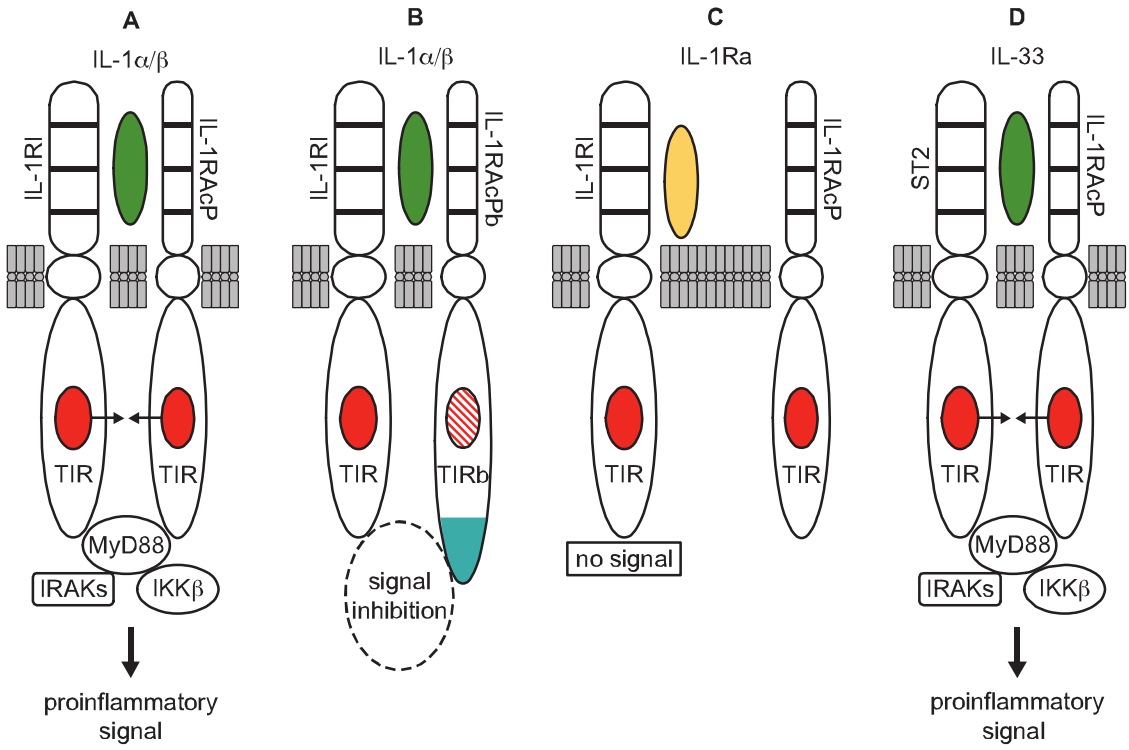


FIG. 26.2. Interleukin (IL)-1 Subfamily. **A:** IL-1α or IL-1β binds to the IL-1RI and recruits the coreceptor IL-1RAcP. The heterodimeric IL-1 receptor complex results in a close approximation of the toll-IL-1-receptor (TIR) domains on each receptor chain (*arrows*), resulting in the binding of intracellular MyD88 to the complex followed by phosphorylation of MyD88. Subsequent phosphorylations of IRAKs and IKKβ, increased NF-κB, and IL-1R AcP-1 translocation to the nucleus take place followed by expression of proinflammatory genes. **B:** In the central nervous system, IL-1α or IL-1β bind IL-1RI recruiting IL-1RAcP but can also recruit the coreceptor IL-1RAcPb. IL-1RAcPb contains an altered TIR domain, which results in a reduced signal. **C:** IL-1Ra binds to IL-1RI. There is no recruitment of the co-receptor IL-1RAcP, no approximation of the TIR domains, and no signal. **D:** IL-33 binds to its specific receptor, ST2, and recruits the coreceptor IL-1RAcP, the TIR domains approximate, and signal transduction is initiated resulting in the induction of proinflammatory gene profile.

extracellular neutrophil proteases can also cleave the IL-1α precursor. Extracellular neutrophil proteases account for the cleavage of the propiece of IL-33. The exception in the IL-1 subfamily is IL-1Ra, which contains a signal peptide.

The IL-18 subfamily is comprised of IL-18 and IL-37. By comparison, this subfamily has a smaller propiece. IL-18 requires the cleavage of its propiece by caspase-1 in order to be active. IL-37 is part of the IL-18 subfamily because the cytokine binds to the IL-18Rα chain. It is unclear how the propiece of IL-37 is removed. The IL-36 subfamily comprised of IL-36α, β, and γ, as well as IL-36Ra. In addition, IL-38 likely belongs to this family due to its binding to the IL-36R. The IL-36 subfamily has the shortest propiece.

A consensus sequence in all members of the IL-1 family is A-X-D, where A is an aliphatic amino acid such as isoleucine, methionine, or leucine; X is any amino acid; and D is aspartic acid. The aspartic acid of the consensus sequence is not the aspartic acid of the caspase-1 cleavage recognition site. The A-X-D motif is conserved in the IL-1 family where it plays a role in three-dimensional structure of the active cytokine. The actual N-terminus is often located nine amino acids before the A-X-D site. By eliminating the amino acids before the N-terminus, the first beta-sheet structure common to all members of the IL-1 family can form. For example, with the tenth amino acid before A-X-D consensus site as the N-terminus, the specific activity of the IL-36 subfamily (IL-36α, IL-36β, IL-36γ and the IL-36Ra) is low. However, with the ninth amino acid as the N-terminus, there was a marked increased in the activity.[9] In the case of IL-1β, the ninth amino acid before the A-X-D site coincides exactly with the N-terminal alanine generated by the caspase-1 site.

THE INFLUENCE OF INTERLEUKIN-1 FAMILY ON TH17 RESPONSES

The IL-1 family plays a significant role in interferon (IFN)γ production, which is essential for the defense against intracellular pathogens. On the other hand, Th2 cells are characterized by the production of IL-4 and are important in the host defense against parasitic infections. For more than one decade, the dichotomy between Th1 and Th2 has been the focus of studies on differentiation of cluster of differentiation (CD)4+ T-lymphocytes. More recently, Th17 helper cells have been described and are characterized by their production of IL-17. IL-17 plays a major role in neutrophil recruitment and host defense against extracellular bacteria and fungi. Th17 cells produce a distinct cytokine profile, namely IL-17A, IL-17F, IL-21, and IL-22. The cytokines produced

by Th17 cells, in addition to activating neutrophils, are also crucial for nonimmune cells, for example, induction of defensins by IL-22 in epithelial cells and keratinocytes, which are part of mucosal and skin defenses. It has become apparent that Th17 responses are associated with chronic inflammation and autoimmune diseases such as multiple sclerosis, type 1 diabetes, Crohn disease, and psoriasis. Furthermore, Th17 responses are fundamental for host defense against many microorganisms, although they also contribute to the inflammation during infection.

Whereas IL-4 and IL-12 were the first cytokines described as influencing Th-cell differentiation, cytokines of the IL-1 family also influence cytokine differentiation. IL-18 was initially described as IFNγ-inducing factor due to its strong stimulatory effect on Th1/IFNγ responses.[10] It is now known that IL-18 is, in fact, a crucial cytokine directing the development of Th1 cells, and one role of IL-12 is the induction of the expression of IL-18 receptors. In contrast, binding of IL-33, another member of the IL-1 family, to its ST2 receptor plays a role in inducing Th2 responses,[11] and it thus appeared as if distinct members of the IL-1 family of cytokines directed Th1 versus Th2 differentiation. Considering these effects of IL-18 and IL-33, it came as no surprise that IL-1, the most well-known member of the family, participates in the function of Th cells.

Known for over 30 years that IL-1 enhances T-cell activation and recognition of antigen, one of the early names of IL-1 was lymphocyte activation factor. The specificity of this response was, however, not known. Although initially only IL-23, IL-6, IL-21, and transforming growth factor-β were suggested to play a role in the development of Th17 responses in mice, there is no dearth of data that a more complex picture exists. Thus, IL-1β, IL-6, and transforming growth factor-β have been reported to induce the development of Th17 cells, whereas IL-23 has been reported to be important for the maintenance of Th17 cells. The combination of IL-23 and IL-1β induce the development of human Th17 cells expressing IL-17A, IL-17F, IL-22, IL-26, the chemokine CCL20, and transcription factor RORγt.[12] Interestingly, these cells also released IFNγ, displaying a phenotype common to both Th17 and Th1 cells.[12] The strong capacity of IL-1 to induce Th17 differentiation has been also linked to its well-known capacity to induce the release of prostaglandins, as reviewed in Dinarello.[13] PGE2 induced by COX-2 is a stimulator of Th17 induction, and inhibitors of cyclooxygenase decrease IL-17 production.[14] On the other hand, engagement of the aryl hydrocarbon receptor, a pathway demonstrated to be crucial for the generation of Th17 cells, has been shown to strongly induce IL-1β.[15] In addition to inducing IL-17 production from the Th17 subset of lymphocytes, IL-1β is required for the production of IL-17 by natural killer (NK) T cells[16] and of IL-22 from NK cells.[17]

Thus, cytokines of the IL-1 family have an important role in the differentiation of the Th subsets, with IL-1β strongly inducing Th17 responses, IL-18 being crucial for the generation of Th1 cells, and IL-33 being important in Th2 responses. Interestingly, reciprocal regulation has been demonstrated between the various Th subsets, with cytokines released by Th2 cells inhibiting Th1 responses, whereas IFNγ release from Th1 cells impairing both Th2 and Th17 responses.

INTERLEUKIN-1α

From an evolutionary viewpoint, IL-1α is the oldest member of the IL-1 family and its primary amino acid sequence is closely related to that of the fibroblast growth factor family. Like fibroblast growth factor, IL-1α does not have signal peptide, binds to nuclear deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA), exits the cell upon death, and binds to its receptor as an unprocessed precursor. As shown in Figure 26.2A, IL-1α binds to the IL-1RI and recruits the IL-1R accessory protein (IL-1RIAcP) to form a heterodimeric complex, which signals to induce inflammation. In health, primary cells contain constitutive levels of the IL-1α precursor but not IL-1β.[18] The IL-1α precursor is present in keratinocytes, thymic epithelium, hepatocytes, endothelial cells, the epithelial cells of mucus membranes, including the entire gastrointestinal tract, and fibroblasts, regardless of their location. The propiece of IL-1α precursor can be cleaved extracellularly by neutrophil proteases, a step that increases its biologic activity. However, IL-1α can also be active as a membrane-associated cytokine. Most cell lines, including tumor cell lines, contain constitutive levels of IL-1α.[19–21] Using an epithelial cell line, what was considered to be intrinsic IFNγ activities depended largely on constitutively expressed IL-1α. IFNγ activities were inhibited by antibodies to IL-1α, but not to IL-1β.[20] The concept that IL-1α acts as an autocrine growth factor assumes that the intracellular IL-1α precursor regulates normal cellular differentiation, particularly in epithelial and ectodermal cells. In support of the concept, an antisense oligonucleotide to IL-1α reduces senescence in endothelial cells.[22] In fibroblasts, the constitutive IL-1α precursor binds to HAX-1, a nonreceptor substrate for tyrosine kinases in hematopoietic cells. In fibroblasts, the IL-1α HAX-1 complex translocates to the nucleus.[23] Although the concept is that IL-1α acts as an autocrine growth factor in fibroblasts or endothelial cells in vitro, the data should be interpreted carefully as mice deficient in IL-1α show no demonstrable defects in growth and development, including skin, fur, epithelium, and gastrointestinal function.[24] However, mice deficient in IL-1α still retain the N-terminal propiece, which functions as nuclear factor.21 In fact, in another study, the N-terminal propiece of IL-1α was shown to bind HAX-1.[25]

Is there is a role for intracellular precursor IL-1α in normal cell function? The IL-1α precursor is present in cells that also contain large amounts of the intracellular form of the IL-1Ra (icIL-1Ra), as reviewed in Arend.[1] This form of the IL-1Ra also binds to the IL-1 receptor and prevents signal transduction. In fact, icIL-1Ra is thought to compete with the intracellular pool of precursor IL-1α for nuclear binding sites.

Membrane-Associated Interleukin-1α

Precursor IL-1α can be found on the surface of several cells, particularly on monocytes and B-lymphocytes, where it is referred to as membrane IL-1α.[26] Membrane IL-1α is biologically active[27]; its biologic activities are neutralized by antibodies to IL-1α but to IL-1β. Endothelial cells undergoing stress-induced apoptosis release membrane apoptotic body-like particles containing nuclear fragments and histones as well as full-length IL-1α precursor and the processed ma-

ture form.[28] When injected into mice, apoptotic body-like particles containing the IL-1α precursor induce neutrophilic infiltration that was prevented by neutralization of IL-1α but not IL-1β.[28]

Processing and Secretion of Interleukin-1α

Although the IL-1α precursor is biologically active, the processed form is more active. Furthermore, the binding of IL-1α to the IL-1RI has been modeled using recombinant IL-1α with an N-terminus at 113. The processing of the IL-1α precursor is accomplished by calpain II, a membrane-associated, calcium-dependent cysteine protease.[29] In macrophages treated with hydroquinone, calpain II levels fall and are associated with inhibition of IL-1α precursor processing.[29] Not surprisingly, calcium influx induced IL-1α secretion of the processed form.[30] The secretion of IL-1α requires the presence of IL-1β, as IL-1β–deficient mice do not secrete IL-1α.[31] IL-1α binding to IL-1β has been reported in which IL-1β acts as a chaperone for the secretion mechanism via caspase-1.[31] In another study, IL-1β was shown to bind to, and enhance the activity of, high-mobility group protein B1 (HMGB1).[32] It is thus possible that both IL-1α exits the cell bound to IL-1β and HMGB1.

Biologic Functions of Constitutive Interleukin-1α: Interleukin-1α and Sterile Inflammation

Large numbers of reports use bacterial and fungal products to induce cytokines as models of inflammatory disease; however, most inflammatory diseases are sterile. For example, the inflammation associated with atherosclerosis, myocardial infarction, stroke, cancer, and renal and liver failure is sterile. The hypoxic insult that takes place in ischemia results in local necrosis and release of cellular contents, including nucleic acids. Members of the IL-1 family contribute to sterile inflammation, and IL-1α plays a significant role in this regard. Upon cell death by necrosis, the IL-1α precursor is released[33,34] and binds to the IL-1 receptor on nearby tissue macrophages and epithelial cells, triggering a response.[35,36] For example, infiltration of neutrophils occurs first and followed by influx of monocytes.[35] Extracts of tumor cells induce neutrophilic inflammation, which does not occur in mice deficient in IL-1RI and is prevented by neutralization of IL-1α, not neutralization of IL-1β.[37] Sterile inflammation is independent on TLR2 and TLR4.[37]

Thus, IL-1α, either the unprocessed precursor or the calpain cleavage form, is classified as an "alarmin" because the cytokine is preformed and triggers an inflammatory response rapidly. Endothelial cells subjected to nutritional stress release inflammatory apoptotic bodies, which contain both the precursor and processed forms of IL-1α.[28] Inflammatory apoptotic bodies induce chemokine and neutrophilic infiltration into the peritoneal cavity, both of which are IL-1α dependent.[28] Platelets also contain IL-1α as well as IL-1β.[38] Platelet-derived IL-1 induces chemokines such as IL-8 from endothelial cells[39] and monocyte chemotactic protein (MCP-1) from monocytes.[40] Platelet-derived IL-1α is important in brain injury in stroke models[41] and in atherosclerosis.[42]

Studies in Interleukin-1α–Deficient Mice

Mice deficient in IL-1α are born healthy and develop normally. In some models of local inflammatory responses, wild-type and IL-1α–deficient mice develop fever and acute-phase proteins, whereas IL-1B–deficient mice do not.[24] In addition, although the inflammation-associated induction of glucocorticoids was suppressed in IL-1β–deficient mice, this suppression was not observed in IL-1α–deficient mice. However, expression of IL-1β messenger ribonucleic acid (mRNA) in the brain decreased 1.5-fold in IL-1α–deficient mice, whereas expression of IL-1α mRNA decreased more than 30-fold in IL-1β–deficient mice. These data suggest that IL-1β exerts greater control over production of IL-1α than does IL-1α over the production of IL-1β. In caspase-1–deficient mice, IL-1α production is also reduced,[43] further suggesting that production of IL-1α is under the control of IL-1β. It is important that caspase-1–deficient mice are also deficient in caspase-11.[44]

In mice fed a high-fat diet, serum amyloid A protein, a marker of inflammation in atherogenesis, was markedly lower in IL-1α–deficient mice compared to wild-type or IL-1β–deficient mice.[45] IL-1α–deficient mice had significantly higher levels of non–high-density lipoprotein cholesterol. The beneficial effect of IL-1α deficiency was due to hematopoietic cells transferred from the bone marrow of IL-1α–deficient mice, resulting in a reduction in aortic lesion size twice that observed in mice transplanted with IL-1β–deficient bone marrow cells. Therefore, IL-1α appears to play a greater role in the pathogenesis of lipid-mediated atherogenesis than IL-1β, and this may be due to an effect of membrane IL-1α.

INTERLEUKIN-1β

Interleukin-1β: The Master Cytokine in the Interleukin-1 Family

More than any other member of the IL-1 family, IL-1β has been the focus of most studies. IL-1β is a highly inflammatory cytokine, particularly in humans, as reviewed in Dinarello.[46] As shown in Figure 26.2A, IL-1β and IL-1α bind to the same IL-1RI and trigger a proinflammatory signal. The interest in IL-1β is also due, in part, to it being a secreted cytokine from macrophages and to the importance of the macrophage in antigen presentation before the era of dendritic cells. The inactive IL-1β precursor is converted into an active cytokine by the intracellular cysteine protease caspase-1. In particular, persons with activating mutations in one of the key genes that control the activation of caspase-1 can develop life-threatening systemic inflammation, which is reversed by either blocking the IL-1 receptor or through the use of a neutralizing antibody to IL-1β. Other chronic inflammatory diseases are mediated by IL-1β, as neutralizing antibodies have been used to treat a broad spectrum of diseases.

The IL-1β–mediated illnesses fall into the category of "autoinflammatory" diseases, which are to be distinguished from the classic "autoimmune" diseases. Although inflammation is common to both autoinflammatory and autoimmune diseases, in the case of IL-1–mediated disease, there is no evidence for role of adaptive immunity in its induction.

Interleukin-1β is an Inducible Cytokine

Unlike IL-1α, the IL-1β precursor is not present in health. Also unlike IL-1α, IL-1β is primarily a product of monocytes, macrophages, and dendritic cells, as well as B-lymphocytes and NK cells. In health, circulating human blood monocytes or bone marrow cells do not constitutively express mRNA for IL-1β. Endothelial cells, skin keratinocytes, fibroblasts, and epithelial cells contain constitutive IL-1α and constitutive IL-33 as precursors as well as mRNA, but these cells do not express IL-1β mRNA even upon stimulation with TLR ligands. Melanoma cells do express IL-1β as a precursor, and the more aggressive and metastatic the melanoma, the greater the likelihood of active caspase-1 and IL-1β secretion.[47] In the bone marrow neutrophil precursors, IL-1β gene expression is inducible but mature neutrophils in the circulation no longer produce IL-1β. Neutrophil IL-1β plays a pathologic role in the severe inflammation of mice with a mutant form of the phosphatase SHP1.[48] Several malignant tumors do express IL-1β as part of their neoplastic nature, particularly acute myelogenous leukemia, melanoma, multiple myeloma, and juvenile myelogenous leukemia, each of which exhibit constitutive expression of IL-1β. Unlike most cytokine promoters, IL-1β regulatory regions are distributed over several thousand base pairs upstream from the transcriptional start site. In addition to a cAMP response element, there are NF-κB–like and activating protein-1 sites. IL-1β gene regulation has been reviewed in detail.[49] Although steady-state mRNA levels for IL-1β may be present, there is distinct dissociation between transcription and translation of the IL-1β precursor. Non-TLR ligands such as the complement component C5a, hypoxia, adherence to surfaces, or clotting of blood induce the synthesis of large amounts of IL-1β mRNA in monocytic cells without significant translation into the IL-1β protein. In these cells, the IL-1β mRNA assembles into large polyribosomes, but there is no significant elongation of the peptide.[50] This failure to complete the translation into IL-1β protein may be due to the instability element present in the coding region. This instability region is also found in IL-18 and IL-37, and appears to limit the mRNA of these cytokines.[51] However, completion of translation of the mRNA into the respective cytokines can be accomplished by adding low concentrations of TLR ligands or IL-1 itself to the "primed" monocytes.[52]

Processing and Secretion of Interleukin-1β via the Caspase-1

Nearly all microbial products induce IL-1β via TLR activation; in addition, IL-1 (either IL-1α or IL-1β) induces itself both in vivo and in monocytes in vitro.[53] Other studies supporting this concept of IL-1–induced IL-1 have been reported.[54–57] Regardless of the stimulus, processing and secretion of IL-1β requires conversion of procaspase-1 to active caspase-1, although in some studies processing of the IL-1β precursor is caspase-1 independent.[58] The activation to active caspase-1 is dependent on a complex of intracellular proteins termed the "inflammasome" by the late Juerg Tschopp.[59,60] The critical component of the inflammasome is NACHT, LRR, and PYD domains containing protein 3 (NLRP3). NLRP3 is also termed cryopyrin as the gene was initially discovered in patients with "familial cold autoinflammatory syndrome," a genetic disease characterized by constitutional symptoms, fevers, and elevated acute-phase proteins following exposure to cold.[61]

As monocytes exit the bone marrow, they circulate in the bloodstream for approximately 3 days. In the absence of disease, it is likely that these cells do not enter tissues but are destroyed in the spleen or undergo apoptosis. There is no dearth of reports that circulating human blood monocytes release processed IL-1β upon stimulation starting 4 hours after stimulation with TLR agonists and continue to release the cytokine during the following 20 to 40 hours. Following lipopolysaccharide (LPS), IL-1β mRNA levels rise rapidly within 15 minutes but begin to decline after 4 hours due to the short half-life of their mRNA or the action of micro RNA. In contrast, using IL-1 itself as a stimulant, IL-1β mRNA levels are sustained for over 24 hours.[52] Raising intracellular cAMP levels with histamine enhances IL-1–induced IL-1 gene expression and protein synthesis. Monocytes of patients with autoinflammatory diseases such as cryopyrin-associated periodic syndrome (CAPS) and hyper IgΔ syndrome (HIDS) release IL-1β even without TLR stimulation during a 24-hour incubation.[62,63]

When obtained from the venous blood of healthy subjects, human blood monocytes contain active caspase-1. Active caspase-1, as determined by its cleavage into the active dimer, is present even in the absence of stimulation.[64] Active caspase-1 present in freshly obtained monocytes is nevertheless dependent on the presence of the key components of the inflammasome, namely ASC and NLRP3.[64] However, during subsequent incubation, extracellular levels of adenosine triphosphate (ATP) increase in the supernatant as IL-1β also increases and inhibition of ATP by oxidized ATP reduces the secretion of IL-1β.[64] The inhibition of IL-1β secretion by oxidized ATP is consistent with the role of the P2X7 receptor, which binds ATP and opens the potassium channel for release of intracellular potassium. The presence of active caspase-1 in circulating blood monocytes suggests that the rate limiting step in the processing and release of IL-1β is at the level of gene expression.

However, upon differentiation of the same blood monocytes into macrophages in vitro, TLR-induced IL-1β release requires activation of caspase-1 by exogenous ATP.[64] The assembly of the inflammasome components with inactive pro–caspase-1 takes place following a fall in intracellular potassium triggered by ATP binding to the P2X7 receptor. ATP activation of the P2X7 receptor opens the potassium channel, and simultaneously, as potassium levels fall, caspase-1 is activated by the inflammasome.[65–69] Without exogenous ATP, there is little or no processing of the IL-1β precursor in differentiated monocyte-derived macrophages. Alveolar macrophages obtained from the lungs of healthy human also do not release IL-1β with LPS stimulation unless exogenous ATP is added.[64] In addition to ATP activation of P2X7, activation of IL-1β processing can also take place with a cathelicidin-derived peptide termed LL37, which is released from neutrophils.[69]

The cleavage of the IL-1β precursor by active caspase-1 can take place in the specialized secretory lysosomes or in the cytoplasm. However, more than one pathway seems available for processed IL-1β to exit the cell. These include by exocytosis of the secretory lysosomes,[65,66] shedding of plasma membrane microvesicles, and direct release via transporters or multivesicular bodies containing exosomes.[70] In general, the release of processed IL-1β takes place before there is significant release of lactate dehydrogenase,[71] although in vitro cell death eventually takes place. Pyroptosis is a caspase-1–dependent form of cell death and is induced by certain bacteria using Ipaf, a member of the Nod-like receptor (NLR) family of intracellular receptors.[72] An increase in intracellular calcium is also required for the mature IL-1β to exit the cell and is phospholipase C dependent.[66]

Gain of Function Mutation in Cryopyrin

Diseases associated with single amino acid activating mutations in cryopyrin are termed CAPS. In monocytes from patients with CAPS, activation of caspase-1 occurs without a requirement for a rapid fall in the level of intracellular potassium.[57] Therefore, mutated cryopyrin allows for the assembly of the complex of interacting proteins in the presence of normal intracellular levels of potassium. Although often studied using LPS-induced synthesis of the IL-1β precursor,[73] it is unlikely that LPS plays a role in autoinflammatory diseases. On the other hand, spontaneous secretion of IL-1β from monocytes of patients is due to endogenous IL-1β stimulation. In patients with CAPS, there is a decrease in steady state levels of pro–caspase-1 mRNA with IL-1Ra treatment,[54] suggesting that IL-1β stimulates its own production and processing. Thus, in any disease process that includes an increase in the steady state levels of pro–caspase-1 mRNA, components of the inflammasome or the IL-1β precursor explain the "autoinflammatory" nature of the disease. Type 2 diabetes appears to be an example of an autoinflammatory disease where glucose induces IL-1β production from the insulin-producing beta cell and IL-1β induces the beta cell to produce its own IL-1β.[74]

Polymorphisms in P2X7 and the Activation of the Inflammasome

Patients with classic autoinflammatory diseases such as Familial Mediterranean Fever (FMF) or CAPS have nearly identical clinical parameters, secrete more IL-1β, and respond dramatically to IL-1 receptor blockade yet have no mutation in NALP3. It is therefore possible that mutations in P2X7 itself or regulation of the other genes controlling potassium channels[75] may account for dysfunctional secretion of IL-1β. For example, monocytes from patients with rheumatoid arthritis are more sensitive to release of IL-1β following ATP activation of the P2X7 receptor compared to monocytes from healthy controls.[76] However, monocytes from subjects with a P2X7 Glu496Ala loss-of-function polymorphism secrete significantly less IL-1β.[77] Monocytes from subjects homozygous for this polymorphism also released significantly less IL-18.[78] Another P2X7 receptor polymorphism is associated with increased mortality in patients undergoing allogenic stem cell transplantation.[79] Bacteremia was documented in 68% of patients with this polymorphism compared to 18% in wild-type control patients.[79]

In mice deficient in P2X7 receptors, inflammation, pain, and IL-1β–mediated IL-6 production are markedly reduced.[80] In addition to a fall in intracellular potassium, ATP triggers formation of peroxynitrite, which is required for caspase-1 activation because peroxynitrite scavengers prevent IL-1β secretion.[81] Pannexin-1, a mammalian protein that functions as a hemichannel for the uptake of dyes, is required for caspase-1 processing and release of IL-1β via the P2X7 receptor.[82] Pannexin-1 can also function for LPS-induced IL-1β synthesis in the absence of TLR4.[83] P2X7 receptor activity is also regulated by "regeneration and tolerance factor."[84]

Non–Caspase-1 Processing of Interleukin-1β

Non–caspase-1 mechanisms also exist to generate active forms of IL-1β. For example, sterile inflammation induces fever, elevated IL-6, and increased production of hepatic acute–phase proteins. These responses are absent in mice deficient in IL-1β but present in mice deficient in caspase-1.[85,86] Sterile inflammation is often associated with neutrophilic infiltration and neutrophils produce IL-1β. Because neutrophils are short-lived cells dying within hours upon emigration, release of the IL-1β precursor from intracellular stores is not unexpected. Processing of the IL-1β precursor extracellularly into an active cytokine has been reported for the common neutrophil protease, proteinase-3.[86,87] Proteinase-3 also contributes to the processing of IL-18.[88] Other proteases such as elastase, matrix metalloprotease 9, and granzyme A process the IL-1β precursor extracellularly. In addition, a mast cell chymase generates active IL-1β.

Mice with a targeted IKKβ deletion in myeloid cells are more susceptible to LPS-induced shock than control mice,[55] and markedly elevated levels of IL-1β are found in the circulation associated with a prominent neutrophilia.[55] The elevated levels of IL-1β are lethal as blockade with IL-1Ra protects these mice from death. The source of the IL-1β in these mice is the neutrophil. When incubated with proteinase-3, cleavage of the IL-1β precursor is observed yielding molecular weights of 25,000 and 15,000 Daltons.[55] Because the cleavage of the IL-1β precursor by proteinase-3, elastase, and cathepsin G are within three amino acids of the caspase-1 cleavage site, the products of the non–caspase-1 cleavage are biologically active.[86,87] Therefore, in inflammatory conditions such as urate crystal arthritis, which is characterized by a prominent neutrophilic infiltration, proteinase-3 cleavage of extracellular IL-1β precursor likely takes place.[89] Mice deficient in caspase-1 are not protected against urate-induced inflammation. Although IL-1Ra is effective in treating gout, IL-1Ra would be equally effective in any disease with extracellular processing of the precursor.[90–92] The importance of extracellular processing of the IL-1β precursor by serine proteases may explain, in part, the anti-inflammatory properties of alpha-1-antitrypsin.[93]

Reactive Oxygen Species and Interleukin-1β Processing

Is there a role for reactive oxygen species (ROS) in the activation of the IL-1β inflammasome? It was reported that uric acid crystals added to human monocytes result in the generation of ROS, which bind to and activate NLRP3 with subsequent secretion of IL-1β.[94] However, mice deficient in ROS production exhibit a proinflammatory phenotype.[95] Humans with chronic granulomatous disease (CGD) due to mutations in p47-phox cannot generate ROS and are severely affected by inflammatory granuloma. Uric acid crystal activation of primary monocytes from persons with CGD produced fourfold higher levels of IL-1β compared to monocytes from unaffected persons.[96] In contrast to previous studies,[94] the small molecule ROS inhibitor diphenyleneiodonium, which reduces the production of IL-1β, does so due to inhibition of IL-1β gene expression rather than decreased caspase-1 activation.[96] Another study identified phagocyte oxidase–defective monocytes from CGD patients as a source of elevated IL-1β.[97] These findings support the concept that ROS likely dampens inflammasome activation and may explain the presence of an inflammatory phenotype characterized by granulomas and inflammatory bowel disease occurring in patients with CGD. In fact, patients with CGD-related inflammatory bowel disease improve upon IL-1 receptor blocking therapy.[98]

Effects in Mice Deficient in Interleukin-1β

After 10 years of continuous breeding, mice deficient in IL-1β exhibit no spontaneous disease. However, upon challenge, IL-1β–deficient mice exhibit specific differences from their wild-type controls. The most dramatic is the response to local inflammation induced by a subcutaneous injection of an irritant. Within the first 24 hours, IL-1β–deficient mice do not manifest an acute-phase response, do not develop anorexia, have no circulating IL-6, and have no fever.[85,99] These findings are consistent with those reported in the same model using anti–IL-1R type I antibodies in wild-type mice.[85,99] IL-1β–deficient mice also have reduced inflammation due to zymosan-induced peritonitis.[85,100] In contrast, IL-1β–deficient mice have elevated febrile responses to LPS, IL-1β, or IL-1α compared to wild-type mice.[101] Nevertheless, IL-1β–deficient mice injected with LPS have little or no expression of leptin mRNA or protein.[102]

Mice deficient in IL-1β were compared to mice deficient in IL-1α after exposure to chemical carcinogens.[103] In IL-1β–deficient mice, tumors developed slower or did not develop in some mice. A deficiency in IL-1α, on the other hand, did not impair tumor development compared to wild-type mice injected with the same carcinogen. In IL-1Ra–deficient mice, tumor development was the most rapid. A leukocyte infiltrate was found at the site of carcinogen injection. The neutrophilic infiltrate was almost absent in IL-1β–deficient mice, whereas in IL-1Ra–deficient mice, a dense neutrophilic infiltrate was observed. In wild-type mice, the leukocytic infiltrate was sparse and the infiltrate that was observed in IL-1α–deficient mice was similar to that of control mice. These findings may reflect the fact that IL-1β is secreted into the microenvironment resulting in the emigration of monocytes and neutrophils, whereas IL-1α remaining cell-associated is less likely to affect the microenvironment.

Interleukin-1α and Autophagy

Autophagy is an ancient process of recycling cellular components, such as cytosolic organelles and protein aggregates, through degradation mediated by lysosomes. Autophagy is activated in conditions of cell stress, hypoxia, starvation, or growth factor deprivation; it promotes cell survival by generating free metabolites and energy through degradation of the endogenous cellular components.[104] However, in addition to its role in the pathophysiology of cancer, neurodegenerative diseases, or aging, autophagy is also a modulator of inflammation.[105] A role for autophagy in production of proinflammatory cytokines, particularly of IL-1β, has emerged with deletion of ATG16-L1. For example, macrophages from *ATG16L1*-deficient mice produce higher levels of IL-1β and IL-18 after stimulation with TLR4 ligands.[106] The data suggest that higher activation of caspase-1 in the *ATG16L1*-deficient mice accounts for the higher production level.[106] This observation was related to the specific degradation of the IL-1β precursor in autophagosomes in mouse macrophages.[107] Additional studies in the *ATG16L1*-deficient mice point toward a regulatory effect of autophagy on caspase-1 activation through modulation of the NLRP3 inflammasome.[94,108,109]

This role of autophagy in the secretion of IL-1β was also observed in human primary monocytes, in which specific inhibition of autophagy leads to increased production of IL-1β.[110] However, in the same cells, tumor necrosis factor (TNF)α production was decreased by autophagy inhibition. These data suggest divergent effects of autophagy on the production of these two important proinflammatory cytokines. In mice, the increase in IL-1β production is ascribed to increased activation of the inflammasome, but in human cells, it is IL-1β mRNA transcription that is elevated when autophagy was inhibited, whereas no effects were observed on caspase-1 activation.[106,107,110] Despite these differences between mouse and human cells, the inhibition of autophagy increases the production of IL-1β but not TNFα.

The modulation of inflammation by autophagy in humans has been studied in Crohn disease. Genome-wide association studies in large cohorts of patients with Crohn disease have revealed that genetic variants in two autophagy genes, *ATG16L1* and *IRGM*, result in increased susceptibility to the disease. A nonsynonymous polymorphism in *ATG16L1* on chromosome 2q37.1 and two polymorphisms in *IRGM* on chromosome 5q33.1 were significantly associated with Crohn disease risk.[111,112] Another study revealed a significant association of Crohn disease susceptibility with an intronic polymorphism in the autophagy gene *ULK1*.[113] Moreover, autophagy defects have been reported in individuals bearing nucleotide oligomerization domain *(NOD)2* mutations and are consistent with the concept that impaired bacterial clearance and increased bacterial persistence are part of the pathogenesis of Crohn disease.[114]

The mechanism through which polymorphisms in autophagy genes influence susceptibility to Crohn disease appears to involve IL-1β production. The *ATG16L1* 300Ala risk allele was associated with elevated production of IL-1β and IL-6; however, this finding was only observed in cells stimulated with the NOD2 ligand muramyl dipeptide. In contrast, the expected levels of IL-1β and IL-6 were produced upon stimulation with TLR2 and TLR4 ligands.[115] The increased production of IL-1β was associated with an increase in the steady state levels of IL-1β mRNA rather than increased activation of the inflammasome.[115] Studying the same polymorphism (*ATG16L1* Thr300Ala) in human dendritic cells, Cooney et al. reported defective NOD2-induced, but not TLR-induced, autophagy and antigen presentation.[116] Furthermore, effects of this polymorphism on antibacterial autophagy in epithelial cells have been observed.[117] The specific effect of the *ATG16L1* polymorphism on the NOD2 pathway, and not on TLR-induced stimulation, is likely related to the fact NOD2 and ATG16L1 form a protein complex that is essential for NOD2-induced autophagosome formation.[118] Because the *ATG16L1* Thr300Ala polymorphism affects protein stability,[119] defective induction of autophagy and therefore enhanced IL-1β mRNA transcription upon triggering of NOD2 may be due to the presence of defective complex.

INTERLEUKIN-33

Interleukin-33 as a Member of the Interleukin-1 Subfamily

Formerly termed IL-1F11, IL-33 belongs to the IL-1 subfamily and has been studied for its role in the Th2 paradigm of immune responses. IL-1β is also linked to the Th2 response. The existence of IL-33 was predicted in 1994 following the discovery of a novel member of the IL-1 receptor family termed ST2.[120] ST2 is the ligand binding chain for IL-33 (Table 26.2) and is structurally similar to the ligand binding chain of IL-1α and IL-1β. In addition, the coreceptor for IL-33 is the IL-1RAcP, which is also the coreceptor for IL-1α and IL-1β. It was not until 2005 that IL-33 was reported as the ligand for ST2.[11] ST2 is regulated by the estrogen inducible transcription factor Fos,[120] and this property of estrogens may be related to the large number of studies on the effect of estrogens to regulate IL-1 and inflammation.

Similar to most members of the IL-1 receptor family, ST2 is comprised of three extracellular immunoglobulin domains and an intracellular TIR domain. Although the name ST2 is still used, the correct term is the IL-33 receptor α chain (IL-33Rα). As shown in Figure 26.2D, the IL-33Rα chain similar to the IL-1R1 in that it is the ligand binding chain for IL-33 but requires the IL-1RAcP to signal.[121,122]

Before the discovery of IL-33, several studies suggested that the putative ligand (IL-33) for the ST2 orphan receptor was playing a role in allergic type diseases. It became clear that activation of ST2 was uniquely driving Th2 responses. Structurally, IL-33 is closer to IL-18 than IL-1β. Biologically, IL-33 is closest to IL-1α, as the precursors for IL-1α and IL-33 are constitutively present in all endothelial cells. As discussed in the following, like IL-1α, IL-33 functions as a DNA-binding molecule. The dominant property of IL-33 is the induction of IL-4, IL-5, and IL-13, as well as other properties anticipated for a Th2 type cytokine. Diseases thought to be due to increased immunoglobulin production may also be related to IL-33. IL-33 induces the production of IL-6, IL-1β, and PGE2 from mast cells.

Interleukin-33 and Th2 Responses

The properties of recombinant IL-33 recapitulate much of the existing data that ST2 promotes Th2-type responses. For example, before its discovery, a role for IL-33 in the Th2 response was observed using soluble extracellular forms of ST2.[11] However, IL-33 has properties that go beyond its role in the Th2 paradigm because, similar to IL-1α, IL-1β and IL-36, IL-33 forms a heterodimeric complex with IL-1RAcP for signal transduction.[121,122] Although the IL-1RAcP is expressed on most nucleated cells, ST2 is somewhat restricted to low expression on most cells with the notable exception of mast cells.

There are several mechanisms by which IL-33 favors the Th2 response. Similar to IL-1β, IL-33 induces IL-6, an adjuvant for antibody production. IL-33 induction of IL-6 is prevented by a blocking antibody to IL-1RAcP.[122] IL-33 initiates signal transduction via activation of NF-κB, which

TABLE 26.2 Interleukin-1 Receptor Family

Name	Designation	Ligands	Coreceptor
IL-1RI	IL-1R1	IL-1α, IL-1β, IL-1Ra	IL-1RAcP (IL-1R3)
IL-1RII	IL-1R2	IL-1β, IL-1β precursor	IL-1RAcP (IL-1R3)
IL-1RAcP	IL-1R3	IL-1α, IL-1β, IL-33, IL-36	Not applicable
ST2/IL-33Rα	IL-1 R4	IL-33	IL-1RAcP (IL-1R3)
IL-18Rα	IL-1R5	IL-18, IL-37	IL-18Rβ (IL-1R7)
IL-1Rrp-2	IL-1R6	IL-36α, β, γ	IL-1RAcP (IL-1R3)
IL-18Rβ	IL-1R7	IL-18	Not applicable
TIGIRR-2/IL-1RAPL	IL-1R8	Unknown	Unknown
TIGIRR-1	IL-1R9	Unknown	Unknown
SIGIRR	TIR8	Unknown	Unknown

IL, interleukin; SIGIRR, single immunoglobulin IL-1–related receptor; TIGIRR, three immunoglobulin IL-1–related receptor.

is typical of IL-1α, IL-1β and IL-18,[11] but other studies have shown that antibody cross-linking of ST2 does not result in activation of NF-κB but rather activating protein-1. IL-33 treatment also increased serum immunoglobulin A and immunoglobulin E, an expected response for a switch from Th1 to Th2.

Processing of the Interleukin-33 Precursor

Initially, IL-33 was considered closely related to IL-1β and IL-18 because the IL-33 precursor contains a caspase-1 site, which upon activation would cleave the IL-33 precursor and release the active cytokine,[11] similar to that for IL-1β and IL-18. Indeed, the first recombinant forms of IL-33 were produced with an N-terminus at the caspase-1 site.[11] Although recombinant IL-33 was active, the concentrations required for activity were considerably higher than those of other members of the IL-1 family. Indeed, subsequent studies revealed that caspase-1 actually results in loss of IL-33 activity and that the full-length IL-33 precursor binds to ST2 and is active,[123] similar to the ability of the IL-1α precursor to bind to IL-1RI. In addition, it was reported that the caspase-1 cleavage site at 178 is similar to the consensus sequence for caspase-3 and that intracellular IL-33 precursor is a substrate for caspase-3.[123]

Using immobilized IL-33 precursor, neutrophil proteinase 3 (PR3) was isolated from human urinary proteins.[124] Neutrophil PR3 is known to process the IL-1β precursor into an active cytokine.[86] PR3 converted human and mouse precursor IL-33 proteins to biologic active forms; however, increasing the incubation time of PR3 abrogated IL-33 activities.[124] Using the consensus amino acid sequence sites for PR3, six human and mouse recombinant IL-33 proteins were produced and assessed for biologic activities; varying levels of activity were reported.[124] Another study also demonstrated cleavage of the IL-33 precursor by neutrophil proteases such as PR3, neutrophil elastase, and cathepsin G,[125] resulting in the generation of IL-33 with different N-termini and varying levels of activity. These studies support the concept that extracellular IL-33 is released as a precursor, is rapidly processed by neutrophil enzymes, and generates active forms with varying levels of activity. The implications for generation of active IL-33 by neutrophil enzymes for Th2 polarization remain unclear. It may be more relevant to study the effect of proteases from eosinophils in the processing of the IL-33 precursor. Nevertheless, the IL-33 precursor binds to ST2 and recruits the accessory chain for signal transduction, but compared to IL-33 generated by neutrophil proteases, the activity of IL-33 precursor is weak.[124,125]

There was no dearth of studies on ST2 tissue–specific localization, regulation of its expression, effects in transgenic mice overexpressing ST2, as well as deletion, neutralization, and antibody cross-linking of ST2. Elevated levels of the soluble form of ST2 were present in the circulation of patients with a various inflammatory diseases and that exogenous administration of pharmacologic doses of soluble ST2 neutralized endogenous levels of the then putative ligand IL-33 and reduced inflammation.[126] IL-33 activates Th2 lymphocytes, mast cells, basophils, and eosinophils, as well as NK T cells and blood monocytes. One of the most studied properties of IL-33 is the induction of IL-5 and IL-13 and their respective roles in lung inflammation such as allergic type asthma. For example, instillation of IL-33 into the airways triggers an immediate allergic response in the lung of naïve mice and worsens the response in mice sensitized to antigen peripherally but challenged by exposure of antigen in the lung.[127]

Mice deficient in ST2 do not develop a Th2 response to *Schistosoma* egg antigen. Indeed, several studies have focused on the role of IL-33 in the pathogenesis of helminth worm infections. The Th2 response by the host contributes to the elimination of these worm infestations, which are worldwide and afflict hundreds of millions. The role of IL-33 in the induction of IL-4, IL-5, and IL-13 is of paramount importance in terms of pulmonary and intestinal complications that reduce lifespan. Using mice deficient in IL-33, a crucial role was demonstrated in mice to rid an infection with *Strongyloides venezuelensis*.[128] The infection induces a unique class of cells called natural helper cells or nuocytes, which upon activation by IL-33 produce IL-5 and IL-13, resulting in eosinophilic infiltration into the lungs. In this model, pulmonary inflammation causes damage via eosinophilic infiltration, which is IL-33 and IL-5 dependent.[128]

Mice injected with human IL-33 exhibit impressive pathologic changes in the arterial walls, lungs, and intestinal tissues.[11] Of particular relevance to the concept that IL-33 drives a Th2 response, eosinophilic infiltration was a prominent finding in the lung and in allergic rhinitis as well as allergic conjunctivitis.[129] These initial observations have been confirmed by other reports.[130] Although the interpretation of in vivo effects following the administration of an exogenous cytokine should be conservative, the findings are clearly consistent with IL-33 being a proinflammatory ligand of the IL-1 receptor family. Even before the ability to test IL-33–mediated activation, others had reported that neutralization of the putative ST2 ligand using soluble ST2 markedly reduced joint inflammation, synovial hyperplasia, and joint erosion when given in the therapeutic phase of collagen-induced arthritis in mice.[126]

Interleukin-33 as an Anti-inflammatory Cytokine

Members of the IL-1 family of ligands bind to their specific cell surface receptors and recruit an accessory chain. The IL-1RIAcP is used by IL-1α and IL-1β but also by IL-36 and IL-33. The accessory chain for IL-18 is related to the IL-1RIAcP but is encoded by a distinct gene. We now recognize that other members of the IL-1 receptor family will bind more than one cytokine. The best example is IL-1α and IL-1β. Both bind with similar affinities to IL-1RI, but the three-dimensional structure of IL-1α and IL-1β are hardy identical.[131] The IL-1β precursor binds to IL-1RII as well as a processed form with the first 112 amino acids cleaved from the precursor. IL-37 binds to the IL-18 receptor alpha chain,[132] and both IL-36 and IL-38 bind to the IL-36 receptor.[133]

IL-33 forms a complex with ST2 IL-1RIAcP but also with single immunoglobulin IL-1–related receptor (SIGIRR).[134]

This complex plays a role in the Th2 response by reducing IL-33 signaling,[134] and consistent with these observations, Th2 responses are increased in mice deficient in SIGIRR. Furthermore, there is high expression of SIGIRR in Th2 polarized cells and in models of Th2 antigen sensitization; SIGIRR-deficient mice exhibit a greater Th2 response.[134] The complex with SIGIRR and IL-33 may explain the anti-inflammatory properties of IL-33. ST2 can sequester TLR adaptor molecules such as MyD88 and Mal.[135]

In mice deficient in ST2, there is myocardial hypertrophy, ventricle dilation, and fibrosis upon pressure overload, suggesting that IL-33 plays a protective role in the heart.[136] Furthermore, elevated levels of the extracellular domain of ST2 predict outcomes in patients with systolic heart failure or following a myocardial infarction.[136] In a model of cardiomyocyte hypertrophy induced by chronic administration of phenylephrine, administration of recombinant IL-33 inhibited the phosphorylation of IκB and reduced the hypertrophy and fibrosis.[136] One of the more challenging aspects of the properties of IL-33 to act as a Th2 cytokine is its role as an antagonist in the ApoE-deficient mouse model of atherosclerosis. In this model, arterial wall plaques of mice on a high-fat diet contain IL-33 and ST2. In mice treated with IL-33, the atherosclerotic plaques were markedly reduced.[137] In mice treated with soluble ST2 to neutralize IL-33, the disease worsened.[137]

Interleukin-33 as a Transcription Factor

Similar to IL-1α, there is another side to IL-33. Although IL-33 binds to its specific surface receptor, IL-33 is identical to a nuclear factor dominantly expressed in high endothelial venules.[138] This nuclear factor is termed NF-HEV. In addition to endothelial cells, constitutive nuclear localization of IL-33 has been reported in several cell types such as type II lung epithelial cells,[128] epithelial cells,[139] and pancreatic stellate cells.[140] In fact, IL-33 binding to DNA and acting as a nuclear factor is similar to IL-1α binding to chromatin and functioning as a nuclear factor.[21,33,141] A short IL-33 peptide similar to a sequence in Kaposi sarcoma virus binds chromatin.[142] The full-length IL-33 precursor, but not mature IL-33, binds to the N-terminal Rel homology domain of NF-κB p65.[143] In cells overexpressing the IL-33 precursor, there was a reduction in IL-1β–induced TNFα.[143] These data are consistent with other data that IL-33 possesses anti-inflammatory properties (see previous discussion) and the mechanism for this property of IL-33 appears to be nuclear sequestration similar to that of IL-1α.[33]

INTERLEUKIN-18 AND INTERLEUKIN-37 SUBFAMILY

Interleukin-18

Background

IL-18 was first described in 1989 as "IFNγ-inducing factor" isolated in the serum of mice following an injection of endotoxin. The mice had been pretreated with *Proprionibacterium acnes*, which stimulates the reticuloendothelial system, particularly the Kupffer cells of the liver. Many investigators concluded that the serum factor was IL-12. With molecular cloning of "IFNγ-inducing factor" in 1995,[144] the name was changed to IL-18. Surprisingly, the new cytokine was related to IL-1 and particularly to IL-1β. Similar to IL-1β, IL-18 lacks a signal peptide, is first synthesized as an inactive precursor, and remains as an intracellular cytokine. The tertiary structure of the mature form of IL-18 closely resembles that of IL-1β,[144] although the IL-18 precursor is closely related to the IL-37 precursor. Since 1995, many studies have used neutralization of endogenous IL-18 or IL-18–deficient mice to demonstrate the role for this cytokine in promoting inflammation and immune responses.[145] However, the biology of IL-18 is hardly the recapitulation of IL-1β. There are several unique and specific differences between IL-18 and IL-1β. For example, in healthy human subjects and also in healthy mice, gene expression for IL-1β in blood mononuclear cells and hematopoietic cells is absent, and there is no evidence that the IL-1β precursor is constitutively present in epithelial cells.[146] In contrast, in the same blood cells, large amounts of the IL-18 precursor are present. Peritoneal macrophages and mouse spleen contain the IL-18 precursor in the absence of disease.[146] The IL-18 precursor is also present in keratinocytes and nearly all epithelial cells. In this regard, IL-18 is similar to IL-1α and IL-33.

Processing of the Interleukin-18 Precursor

The IL-18 precursor has a molecular weight of 24,000 and is processed by caspase 1 cleavage into a mature molecule of 18,000. Compared to wild-type mice, following an injection of endotoxin into caspase-1–deficient mice, circulating IFNγ is absent. IL-12–induced IFNγ is also absent in caspase-1–deficient mice.[147] Importantly, any phenotypic characteristic of capsase-1–deficient mice must be studied as to whether the deficiency is due to reduced IL-1β or IL-18 activity. For example, the caspase-1–deficient mouse is resistant to colitis,[148] but the IL-1β–deficient mouse is susceptible in the same disease. Because neutralizing antibodies to IL-18 are protective in the colitis model, caspase-1 deficiency appears to prevent processing of IL-18.[148,149] On the other hand, there are examples where caspase-1 processing of IL-18 is not required. For example, Fas ligand stimulation results in release of biologically active IL-18 in caspase-1–deficient murine macrophages.[150] Similar to IL-1β processing, proteinase-3 appears to activate processing to mature IL-18.[88]

Similar to IL-1α and IL-33, the IL-18 precursor is constitutively expressed in endothelial cells, keratinocytes, and intestinal epithelial cells throughout the gastrointestinal tract. Macrophages and dendritic cells are the primary sources for the release of active IL-18, whereas the inactive precursor remains in the intracellular compartment of mesenchymal cells. Also, similar to IL-1α and IL-33, the IL-18 precursor is released from dying cells and processed extracellularly, most likely by neutrophil proteases such as proteinase-3.

The IL-1 family consensus sequence (A-X-D) in IL-18 is I-N-D at amino acid 50, but the N-terminus generated by caspase-1 is 14 amino acids before the consensus sequence rather than 9 amino acids (see Fig. 26.1). Although the IL-18 as well as the IL-1β precursor can be cleaved extracellularly by proteianse-3, there is an additional enzyme that cleaves the IL-18 precursor into an active cytokine. Merprin β is a

member of the merpin family of zinc metalloproteinases, which are expressed on the membrane surface of epithelial cells of the intestine and kidney but also on myeloid cells.[151,152] Merprin α will cut the IL-1β precursor into an active cytokine, and inhibitors of merprin α markedly reduce serum levels of IL-1β in mice subjected to cecal ligation and puncture.[151] Merprin β will cleave the IL-18 precursor and generate an active cytokine on cells bearing the IL-18R.[153] In a model of dextran sulfate sodium (DSS) colitis, serum IL-18 is elevated on days 3 and 5, during which time the mice develop inflammatory colitis. However, in merprin β–deficient mice, there is a statistically significant reduction in serum IL-18.[153] The role of IL-18 and caspase-1 in DSS colitis is discussed in the following.

Signal Transduction by Interleukin-18

As shown in Figure 26.3A, IL-18 forms a signaling complex by binding to the IL-18 alpha chain (IL-18Rα), which is the ligand binding chain for mature IL-18; however, this binding is of low affinity. In cells that express the coreceptor, termed IL-18 receptor beta chain (IL-18Rβ), a high-affinity complex is formed, which then signals. The complex of IL-18 with the IL-18Rα and IL-18Rβ chains is similar to that formed by other members of the IL-1 family with the coreceptor, the IL-1R accessory chain IL-1RAcP. Following the formation of the heterodimer, the TIR domains approximate, and it appears that the cascade of sequential recruitment of MyD88, the four IRAKs, and TRAF-6 followed by the degradation of IκB and release of NFκB are nearly identical as that for IL-1.[154] There are differences between IL-1 and IL-18 signaling that remains unexplained. With few exceptions, IL-1α or IL-1β are active on cells in the low nanogram/mL range and often in the picogram/mL range. In contrast, IL-18 activation of cells expressing the two IL-18 receptor chains requires 10 to 20 ng/mL and sometimes higher levels.[155,156]

Although nearly all cells express the IL-1RI, not all cells express IL-1RAcP. Similarly, most cells express the IL-18Rα but not all cell express the IL-18Rβ. IL-18Rβ is expressed on T cells and dendritic cells but not commonly expressed in mesenchymal cells. The best example is the A549 cell. This cell line, derived from a lung carcinoma epithelial cell, does not express IL-18Rβ,[157] and there is no signal unless IL-12 is added to induce IL-18Rβ.[10] In the absence of IL-18Rβ, IL-18 binds to IL-18Rα without a proinflammatory signal. In A549 cells transfected with IL-18Rβ, IL-18 induces IL-8 and a large number of genes. One of these genes is the former IL-2-induced gene termed NK4,[158] now termed IL-32.[157] IL-32 is not a member of the IL-1 family but plays an important role in the regulation of cytokines such as IL-1β and TNFα.

Interleukin-18 as an Immunoregulatory Cytokine

Together with IL-12, IL-18 participates in the Th1 paradigm. This property of IL-18 is due to its ability to induce IFNγ either with IL-12 or IL-15. Without IL-12 or IL-15, IL-18 does not induce IFNγ. IL-12 or IL-15 increases the IL-18Rβ, which is essential for IL-18 signal transduction. Without IL-12 or IL-15, IL-18 plays a role in Th2 diseases.[159] The importance of IL-18 as an immunoregulatory cytokine

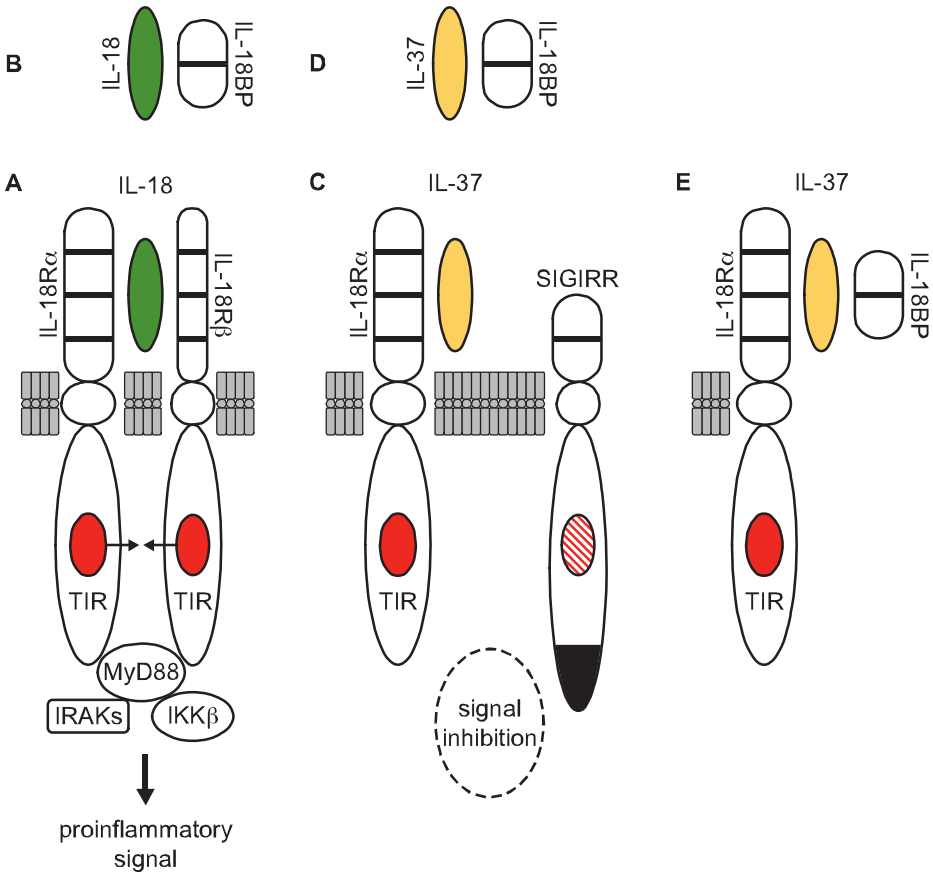


FIG. 26.3. Interleukin (IL)-18 Subfamily. **A:** IL-18 binds to the IL-18Rα chain and recruits the coreceptor IL-18Rβ. The signaling cascade of the IL-18 receptor complex is nearly the same as that of IL-1α and IL-1β, resulting in the expression of proinflammatory genes. **B:** The natural occurring IL-18BP binds IL-18, thus neutralizing the activity of the cytokine. **C:** IL-37 also binds to the IL-18Rα but with an affinity lower than that of IL-18 binding to the same receptor. Furthermore, the binding of IL-37 to IL-18Rα does not recruit the coreceptor IL-18Rβ and therefore there is no proinflammatory signal. The anti-inflammatory properties of IL-37 require single immunoglobulin IL-1–related receptor, which may act as a "decoy" for MyD88. **D:** IL-18BP also binds to IL-37, thus preventing binding of IL-37 to the IL-18Rα. **E:** IL-37 binds to IL-18BP forming a complex, which then binds to the IL-18Rα, enhancing the anti-inflammatory property of IL-18BP.

is derived from its prominent biologic property of inducing IFNγ from NK cells. Macrophage-colony stimulating factor induces human blood monocytes to develop into a subset of macrophages; these cells express a membrane-bound form of IL-18.[160] Membrane IL-18 is expressed in 30% to 40% of macrophage-colony stimulating factor–primed macrophages. In contrast, monocytes, dendritic cells, and monocytes differentiated into M1 macrophages did not express membrane IL-18. Although the expression of membrane IL-18 is caspase-1 dependent,[160] LPS treatment was necessary for the release of membrane IL-18.[160] A major immunoregulating role for IL-18 is on the NK cell. Upon shedding of membrane IL-18 into a soluble form, NK cells expressed CCR7 and produced high levels of IFNγ. As expected, IFNγ production was prevented by neutralization of IL-18. This mechanism may account for the role of IL-18 as major IFNγ-inducing factor from NK cells and the role of NK cells in the pathogenesis of autoimmune diseases.

The induction of IFNγ by IL-18 has been studied with coinducer IL-12. For example, mice injected with the combination of IL-18 plus IL-12 develop high levels of IFNγ and die with hypoglycemia, intestinal inflammation, and inanition.[161] In leptin-deficient mice, IL-18 plus IL-12 induce acute pancreatitis.[162] Several human autoimmune diseases are associated with elevated production of IFNγ and IL-18. Diseases such as systemic lupus erythematosus, rheumatoid arthritis, type 1 diabetes, Crohn disease, psoriasis, and graft-versus-host disease are thought to be mediated, in part, by IL-18.

Proinflammatory Properties of Interleukin-18

IL-18 exhibits characteristics of other proinflammatory cytokines, such as increases in cell adhesion molecules, nitric oxide synthesis, and chemokine production. Blocking IL-18 activity reduces metastasis in a mouse model of melanoma; this is due to a reduction in IL-18–induced expression of vascular call adhesion molecule-1.[163] A unique property of IL-18 is the induction of Fas ligand (FasL), which may account for the hepatic damage that takes place in macrophage activation syndrome.[150,164] The induction of fever, a well-studied property of IL-1α and IL-1β as well as TNFα and IL-6, is not a property of IL-18. Injection of IL-18 into mice, rabbits, or humans does not produce fever.[165,166] Unlike IL-1 and TNFα, IL-18 does not induce cyclooxygenase-2 and hence there is no production of prostaglandin E2.[156,167] IL-18 has been administered to humans for the treatment of cancer in order to increase the activity and expansion of cytotoxic T cells. Not unexpectedly and similar to several cytokines, the therapeutic focus on IL-18 has shifted from its use as an immune stimulant to inhibition of its activity.[145,168]

Because IL-18 can increase IFNγ production, blocking IL-18 activity in autoimmune diseases is an attractive therapeutic target as anti–IL-12/23 reduces the severity of Crohn disease as well as psoriasis. As discussed subsequently, there appears to be a role for blocking IL-18 in Crohn disease. However, there are several activities of IL-18 that are independent of IFNγ. For example, IL-18 inhibits proteoglycan synthesis in chondrocytes,[169] and proteoglycan synthesis is essential for maintaining healthy cartilage. IL-18 also increases vascular call adhesion molecule-1 expression in endothelial cells independently of IFNγ. Vascular call adhesion molecule-1 plays a major role in multiple sclerosis, other autoimmune diseases, as well as in the metastatic process.[170]

Role of Interleukin-18 in Models of Inflammatory Bowel Disease

Inflammatory bowel disease such as Crohn disease is a complex autoimmune disease. Treatment is initially based on immunosuppressive drugs. Not surprisingly, anticytokines such as neutralizing monoclonal antibodies to TNFα[171] or to IL-12/23 provide effective treatment for many patients.[172,173] The reduction of IFNγ in Crohn disease is linked to the clinical response to these agents.[173] IL-18 is found in affected intestinal lesions from patients with Crohn disease as a mature protein, but the IL-18 precursor form is present in uninvolved intestinal tissues.[174] This observation was confirmed in a similar assessment of mucosal biopsies from patients with Crohn disease.[175] Antisense RNA to IL-18 decreased IFNγ production in lamina propria mononuclear cells.[175]

A commonly used mouse model for colitis is DSS, which is added to the drinking water and which damages the intestinal wall. Thus in DSS-induced colitis, the epithelial barrier defenses against luminal bacterial products are breeched. In this model, reducing IL-18 with a neutralizing antibody is protective and linked to a reduction in IFNγ.[149] Blocking IL-18 with the IL-18 binding protein (IL-18BP) also reduces colitis induced by antigen sensitization.[176] Because generation of active IL-18 requires caspase-1, studies have also been performed in mice deficient in caspase-1 and subjected to DSS colitis. Nevertheless, despite many studies, the role of caspase-1 in DSS colitis remains unclear. The first study showed that mice deficient in caspase-1 were protected.[148,177] In addition, treatment of mice with a specific caspase-1 inhibitor was also effective in protecting against the colitis.[178–180] In both studies, the effect of caspase-1 deficiency was linked to reduced IL-18 activity, whereas reducing IL-1 activity with the IL-1Ra was ineffective.[148] In support of the role of IL-18 in DSS colitis, inhibition of endogenous merprin β to reduce the generation of active IL-18 was protective in DSS colitis.[153]

However, a conundrum has developed whether caspase-1 deficiency is protective or detrimental in DSS colitis. DSS colitis is not the optimal model for Crohn disease, as the model is one of rapid loss of the protective barrier of the intestinal epithelium exposing the lamina propria mononuclear cells to a large amount and variety of bacterial products. Using the same DSS model, mice deficient in the adapter protein inflammasome component ASC experienced increased disease, morbidity, and precancerous lesions compared to wild-type mice exposed to DSS.[181] Similarly, mice deficient in caspase-1 died rapidly from DSS compared to wild-type mice,[182] whereas mice deficient in caspase-12, in which caspase-1 is enhanced, were protected.[182] Administration of exogenous IL-18 restored mucosal healing in caspase-1–deficient mice.[182] Also, mice deficient in NLRP3 were more susceptible to either DSS or 2,4,6-trinitrobenzene sulfonic acid (TNBS)-induced colitis and exhibited decreased IL-1β as well as decreased beta-defensins.[183] Macrophages from NLRP3-deficient mice failed to respond

to muramyl dipeptide.[183] Mice deficient in NLRP6 are also more vulnerable to DSS,[37,184] and the susceptibility appears to be due to lack of sufficient IL-18.

How to reconcile these data in mouse models of colitis was addressed by Siegmund[185]? It is likely that IL-18 being constitutive in the intestinal epithelium has a protective role in that the cytokine contributes to maintaining the intestinal barrier. With loss of the barrier, the microbial products stimulate macrophages in the lamina propria and caspase-1–dependent processing of IL-18 results in inflammation. In this model, inhibition of IL-18 production in caspase-1–deficient mice or treatment of wild-type mice with anti–IL-18 antibodies or caspase-1 inhibitors is protective. Worsening of disease in mice deficient in caspase-1 or NLRP3 or NLRP6 may lower the levels of active endogenous IL-18 needed to protect the epithelial barrier. Similarly, active endogenous IL-1β may be needed to protect to maintain the epithelial barrier by inducing growth factors.

Although it remains unclear why caspase-1 deficiency worsens DSS colitis, in humans with Crohn disease, natalizumab, the antibody that blocks the very late antigen-4, is highly effective in treating the disease. Very late antigen-4 is the α4 subunit of the β-1 integrin. Anti–very late antigen-4 binds to the surface of macrophages and other myeloid cells, and prevents the binding of these cells to the very late antigen-4 receptor on endothelial cells known as vascular cell adhesion molecule-1. Thus, the antibody disables the function of vascular cell adhesion molecule-1 and prevents the passage of macrophages and other myeloid cells into tissues such as the intestine in Crohn disease and the brain in multiple sclerosis. Because IL-18 induces vascular cell adhesion molecule-1, blocking IL-18 would also reduce the passage of cells through the endothelium into to intestine.

Interleukin-18, Hyperphagia, and the Metabolic Syndrome

Whereas there is no constitutive gene expression for IL-1β in freshly obtained human peripheral blood mononuclear cells (PBMC), the same cells express constitutive mRNA for IL-18.[146] In western blot analysis from the same cells, the IL-18 precursor was present but not the IL-1β precursor. Similar observations were also made in mice.[146] These findings suggest that IL-18 may act as regulator of homeostasis. Starting at age 16 weeks of age, IL-18–deficient mice start to overeat, become obese, and exhibit lipid abnormalities; there is increased atherosclerosis, insulin resistance, and diabetes mellitus reminiscent of the metabolic syndrome.[186] IL-18Rα–deficient mice also develop a similar phenotype. The higher body weight is attributed to enhanced food intake, in which the IL-18–deficient mice begin to diverge from wild-type animals at a relatively early age, and to reach values 30% to 40% higher than that of wild-type mice. Others have observed similar findings.[187] A striking finding was an increase of more than 100% in the percent of adipose tissue in the IL-18–deficient animals that was accompanied by fat deposition in the arterial walls. The insulin resistance in these mice is corrected by exogenous recombinant IL-18. Mice deficient in IL-18 respond normally to a challenge with exogenous leptin, suggesting that expression of the leptin receptor is unaffected. The unexpected and unique mechanism is responsible for the higher food intake in the IL-18–deficient animals appears to be due to a central nervous system loss of appetite control. IL-18–deficient mice eat throughout the day, whereas wild-type mice eat once, nocturnally.

Interleukin-18 as a Protected Cytokine

As stated previously, mice deficient in caspase-1 experience increased disease severity when subjected to DSS colitis and that administration of exogenous IL-18 restored mucosal healing in these mice.[182] In addition, mice deficient in NLRP3 were more susceptible to DSS colitis, which is thought to be due to decreased IL-18.[183] Mice deficient in NLRP6 are also more vulnerable to DSS,[37,184] and the susceptibility appears to be due to lack of sufficient IL-18. Thus, there are a growing number of studies that support a protective role for IL-18. The fact that mice deficient in IL-18 develop a metabolic syndrome–like phenotype is consistent with a role for IL-18 in homeostasis. A study in age-related macular degeneration is also consistent with a protective role for IL-18. In that study, drusen, which is mixture of complement-derived and apolipoproteins and lipids, was shown to activate NLRP3 and induce the production of mature IL-1β and IL-18.[188] In a mouse model of "wet" age-related macular degeneration, the disease was worse in mice deficient in NLRP3 but not in IL-1RI–deficient mice.[188] Therefore, IL-18 rather than IL-1α or IL-1β were protective; upon administration of IL-IL-18, the disease severity improved. Taken together, there is a case for IL-18 being a protective rather than inflammatory cytokine.

Interleukin-18 Binding Protein

The discovery of the IL-18BP took place during the search for the soluble receptors for IL-18.[189] IL-18BP is a constitutively secreted protein with an exceptionally high affinity for IL-18 (400 pM) (see Fig. 26.3B). Present in the serum of healthy humans at a 20-fold molar excess compared to IL-18,[190] IL-18BP may contribute to a default mechanism by which a Th1 response to foreign organisms is blunted in order to reduce triggering an autoimmune responses to a routine infection. Although IL-18BP is readily secreted, it falls into the functional category of being a shed soluble receptor. As shown in Figure 26.3B, IL-18BP contains only one immunoglobulin G domain, whereas the type II IL-1 receptor contains three domains. In this regard, the single immunoglobulin G domain of IL-18BP is similar to SIGIRR, which also has a single immunoglobulin G domain and also functions as a decoy receptor. The salient property of IL-18BP in immune responses is in downregulating Th1 responses by binding to IL-18 and thus reducing the induction of IFNγ.[159] Because IL-18 also affects Th2 responses, IL-18BP also has properties controlling a Th2 cytokine response.[159] IL-18BP has a classic signal peptide and therefore is readily secreted. Serum levels in healthy subjects are in the range of 2,000 to 3,000 pg/mL compared to the levels of IL-18 in the same sera of 80 to 120 pg/mL/mL. Moreover, IL-18BP binds IL-18 with an affinity of 3 to 5 nM,[189] an affinity significantly higher than that of IL-18Rα. Because a single IL-18BP molecule binds a single IL-18 molecule, one can calculate bound versus free IL-18 in a mixture of both molecules.[190]

If one examines immunologically mediated diseases where IFNγ plays a pathologic role such as Wegener granulomatosis

and systemic lupus erythematosus, one must consider the level of free IL-18 compared to IL-18 bound to IL-18BP. In fact, in these diseases both IL-18BP and IL-18 are high,[191,192] but the level of IL-18BP is not sufficiently high enough to neutralize IL-18 and therefore, the level of free IL-18 is higher than in healthy subjects. In macrophage activation syndrome where IFNγ plays a pathologic role, both IL-18BP and IL-18 are also high but the clinical and hematologic abnormalities correlate with elevated free IL-18.[164]

A unique property of IL-18BP is that the molecule also binds IL-37[193] and in doing so, enhances the ability of IL-18BP to inhibit the induction of IFNγ by IL-18. IL-37 binds to the IL-18Rα with a very low affinity but in mice expressing human IL-37, a profound anti-inflammatory effect is observed,[194] particularly of LPS-induced cytokines and dendritic cell maturation.[194] Human IL-37–expressing mice are also resistant to colitis.[195] Thus, the anti-inflammatory property of IL-37 can be affected by the concentration of IL-18BP. As the concentration of IL-18BP increases and binds IL-37, there is the possibility that IL-37 becomes less available as an anti-inflammatory cytokine. Indeed, this has been observed in mice injected with IL-18BP. At low dosing of IL-18BP, there is reduced inflammation in a model of rheumatoid arthritis but as the doing of IL-18BP increases, the anti-inflammatory properties of IL-18BP are lost.[196]

IL-18BP is highly regulated at the level of gene expression and unexpectedly, IFNγ increases gene expression and synthesis of IL-18BP.[197,198] Therefore, IFNγ driving an increase in the natural and potent inhibitor of IL-18 falls into the category of a negative feedback loop. The concept is supported by clinical data showing that patients being treated with IFNα for hepatitis have elevated levels of IL-18BP.[199,200] IL-27, like IFNγ, functions as both a pro- as well as an anti-inflammatory cytokine and both may accomplish their roles as anti-inflammatory cytokines at the level of increased production of IL-18BP. In the skin, IL-27 also acts through a negative feedback loop for inflammation. IL-27 is acting, as is IFNγ, by induction of IL-18BP gene expression and synthesis.[201]

Viral Interleukin-18 Binding Protein

Natural neutralization of human IL-18 by IL-18BP takes place during a common viral infection. In *Molluscum contagiosum* infection, characterized by raised but bland eruptions, there are large numbers of viral particles in the epithelial cells of the skin, but histologically there are few inflammatory or immunologically active cells in or near the lesions. Clearly, the virus fails to elicit an inflammatory or immunologic response. Amino acid similarity exists between human IL-18BP and a gene found in various members of the poxviruses; the greatest degree of homology is found to be expressed by *Molluscum contagiosum* gene.[202] The ability of viral IL-18BP to reduce the activity of mammalian IL-18 likely explains the lack of inflammatory and immune cells in the infected tissues and provides further evidence for the natural ability of IL-18BP to interfere with IL-18 activity.

Interleukin-37

IL-37 was formerly termed IL-1F7. IL-37 lacks a signal peptide and has a caspase-1 site, but the secretion of IL-37 has not been documented with any certainty. It is likely, however, that similar to IL-1α and IL-33, with loss of membrane integrity upon cell death, the IL-37 precursor exits from the cell. The recombinant form of the IL-37 precursor suppresses LPS-induced IL-1β, IL-6, and TNFα. However, this is observed primarily in macrophages that have been differentiated into the M1 phenotype by 5 days in the presence of granulocyte macrophage-colony stimulating factor. There are two consensus sequences (A-X-D) in N-terminal domain of IL-37: IHD and LED. A recombinant form of IL-37 with an N-terminus nine amino acids from the IHD site is active in suppressing LPS-induced TNFα and IL-6. Whether this short form of recombinant IL-37 exists in nature is unclear.

Interleukin-37 Reduces Interleukin-1β and Lipopolysaccharide-Induced Inflammation in Vivo

A mouse homologue for human IL-37 has not been identified. Therefore, to define the in vivo functional role of IL-37, a strain of transgenic mice was generated.[194] The full-length IL-37 complementary DNA was inserted into a vector using the standard cytomegalovirus (CMV) promoter for constitutive expression of the transgene in all cells. Both heterozygous and homozygous IL-37 transgenic mice (IL-37 tg) mice breed normally and exhibit no obvious phenotype. Despite the presence of the CMV promoter, the IL-37 transcript is not constitutively expressed in the tissues of the IL-37 transgenic mice. The failure to express IL-37 is likely due to a functional instability sequence found in IL-37, which limits the half-life of IL-37 mRNA.[51] Nevertheless, upon stimulation with LPS or IL-1β, levels of IL-37 increase after 4 to 24 hours. Once the transcript is present, the IL-37 precursor can be found in peripheral blood cells taken from the transgenic mice.[203]

IL-37 transgenic mice are protected against LPS challenge compared to similarly challenged wild-type mice. IL-37 transgenic mice exhibit significantly less hypothermia, acidosis, hyperkalemia, hepatitis, and dehydration.[194] In addition, circulating cytokines are significantly reduced as well as cytokines induced in whole blood cultures and in lung and spleen cell homogenates. In addition to LPS-induced cytokines, whole blood cultures from IL-37 transgenic mice produce significantly less IL-6 and TNFα when stimulated by IL-1β or the combination of IL-12 plus IL-18. The anti-inflammatory activity of IL-37 was not limited to a reduction of the cytokines and chemokines of innate immunity. Dendritic cells isolated from the spleen of IL-37 transgenic mice upon LPS stimulation revealed a marked reduction (75% and 89%) in expression of CD86 and MHC II, respectively.[194] The total numbers of dendritic cells, macrophages, NK cells, and CD4+ T cells were similar in all strains and experimental conditions.

A Role for Interleukin-37 During Experimental Colitis

IL-37 transgenic mice have been subjected to DSS-induced colitis. Despite the presence of a CMV promoter to drive expression of IL-37, mRNA transcripts were not present in colons in the resting state.[195] Expression was observed only upon disruption of the epithelial barrier, with a six- to sevenfold increase on days 3 and 5 after continuous exposure to DSS. During the development of colitis, clinical disease

scores were reduced by 50% and histologic indices of colitis were one-third less in IL-37 transgenic mice compared with wild-type counterparts. Reduced inflammation was associated with decreased leukocyte recruitment into the colonic lamina propria. In addition, release of IL-1β and TNFα from ex vivo colonic explant tissue was decreased 5- and 13-fold, respectively, compared with wild-type mice, whereas IL-10 was increased 6-fold. However, IL-10 was not required for the anti-inflammatory effects of IL-37 because IL-10 receptor antibody blockade did not reverse IL-37–mediated protection. Mechanistically, IL-37 originating from hematopoietic cells was sufficient to exert anti-inflammatory effects because wild-type mice reconstituted with bone marrow from IL-37 transgenic mice were protected from colitis.

A Nuclear Role for Interleukin-37

In stable transfectants of human IL-37 in RAW macrophages stimulated with LPS, levels of TNFα, IL-1α, IL-6, as well as the chemokine MIP-2 were substantially reduced (72% to 98%) compared with LPS-stimulated cells transfected with the empty plasmid.[204] Similar to IL-1α and IL-33, IL-37 translocates to the nucleus following stimulation.[204] In mouse RAW macrophages stably expressing IL-37, the mature carboxyl-terminal was detected in the nucleus. Furthermore, a specific caspase-1 inhibitor markedly reduced nuclear entry of IL-37.[204] The data demonstrate that IL-37 translocates to the nucleus after caspase-1 processing and may act as a transcriptional modulator reducing the production of LPS-stimulated proinflammatory cytokines, consistent with IL-37 being an anti-inflammatory member of the IL-1 family.

IL-37 was identified in a proteomics-based search for proteins that interacted with Smad3.[205] To test for a functional interaction of Smad3 with IL-37, IL-37 was transfected into A549 cells. IL-37 colocalized with phospho-Smad3 and was found in perinuclear and cytosolic regions, and a IL-37-Smad3 complex was observed.[194] A specific inhibitor of Smad3 reversed the inhibition of IL-6 and IL-1β expression in RAW cells stably transfected with IL-37. In stable human macrophage lines expressing IL-37, depletion of Smad3 by lentiviral introduction of short hairpin RNA that inhibits Smad3 expression prevented the ability of IL-37 to reduce IL-1β- or LPS-induced production of IL-8, IL-6, and TNF. These in vitro findings were confirmed in vivo. IL-37 transgenic mice were pretreated intranasally with a Smad3 specific small interfering RNA and then challenged with intranasal LPS. The reduction of lung cytokines in IL-37 transgenic mice was reversed in transgenic mice with a lung knockdown of Smad3.[194]

Role of Interleukin-18Rα for Interleukin-37

From the first reports on IL-37, it was observed that the recombinant forms bound to the IL-18Rα.[132,206] This is shown in Figure 26.3C and E. The binding of IL-37 to IL-18Rα has also been observed in cells from IL-37 transgenic mice using immunofluoresence, immunoprecipitation, and fluorescence resonance energy transfer analysis.[207] IL-37 specifically binds to the third domain of the IL-18Rα.[193] Despite these studies showing binding of IL-37 to the IL-18Rα chain, IL-37 does not act as a classical receptor antagonist for IL-18 in that the ability of recombinant IL-18 to induce IFNγ is not inhibited by high concentrations of IL-37. However, in the presence of low concentrations of IL-18BP, recombinant IL-37 modestly reduces IL-18–induced IFNγ.[193] The concept that IL-37 binds to the IL-18Rα and reduces cytokine production is supported, in part, with the finding embryonic fibroblasts from mice deficient in IL-18Rα produce 10-fold more IL-6 in response to IL1β than do wild-type embryonic fibroblasts.[208] In addition, silencing of IL-18Rα in primary human blood monocytes results in a fourfold increase in the secretion of LPS-induced IL-1β, IL-6, IFNγ, and CD40 ligand.[208] Thus, the seemingly paradoxical hyperresponsive state in cells deficient in IL-18Rα supports the concept that IL-18Rα participates in both pro- and anti-inflammatory responses and that the endogenous ligand IL-37 engages the IL-18Rα to deliver an inhibitory signal.

Role of Single Immunoglobulin Interleukin-1–Related Receptor in the Anti-inflammatory Property of Interleukin-37

The mechanism by which an IL-1β or an LPS signal is suppressed by IL-37 requires an understanding of SIGIRR (Fig. 26.4G). The IL-1RAcP serves as the coreceptor for IL-1α, IL-1β, IL-36α, IL-36β, IL-36γ, and IL-33, each a proinflammatory cytokine. However, in the IL-1 family of receptors, three coreceptors contain unusually long intracellular domains. These are SIGIRR (Fig. 26.4G), a variant of the IL-1RAcP termed IL-1RAcPb (Fig. 26.4F) and receptors termed "three immunoglobulin IL-1–related receptors" (TIGIRRs). As shown in Figure 26.4H, there are two TIGIRRs: TIGIRR-1 and TIGIRR-2. IL-1RacPb is expressed only in the brain, and TIGIRR has limited expression. However, SIGIRR is expressed in most cells. The TIR domain of the three coreceptors is also different from that of other members of the IL-1 coreceptor family in that the TIR domain contains an amino acid sequence different from that of wild-type TIR.[209] As shown in Figure 26.2B, IL-1RAcPb forms the expected complex with IL-1 and IL-1R1 but does not recruit MyD88 or phosphorylate IRAK4.[209] Therefore, most IL-1 signaling is arrested. But as some genes are increased in response to the formation of the IL-1RI/IL-1RAcPb complex, partial IL-1 signaling must take place. Nevertheless, IL-1RAcPb functions as an inhibitory receptor chain but only in the brain. Mice deficient in IL-1RAcPb exhibit a normal inflammatory response in the periphery but greater neurodegeneration in the brain. As such, IL-1RAcPb could play a role in chronic inflammatory responses in the brain by "buffering" IL-1–mediated neurodegeneration.

Like IL-1RAcPb, SIGIRR contains the same amino acids differences in its TIR domain, termed TIRb. Compared to wild-type TIR, TIRb likely has reduced binding of MyD88.[209] In addition to an altered TIR domain, SIGIRR has a carboxyl extension of 140 amino acids. Carboxyl extensions are also present in IL-1RAcPb as well as the two TIGIRRs. TIGIRR-2, which is associated with an X-linked cognitive deficiency, is apparently independent of IL-1 function. Little is known whether these C-terminal segments contribute to the inhibitory properties of these receptors. Nevertheless,

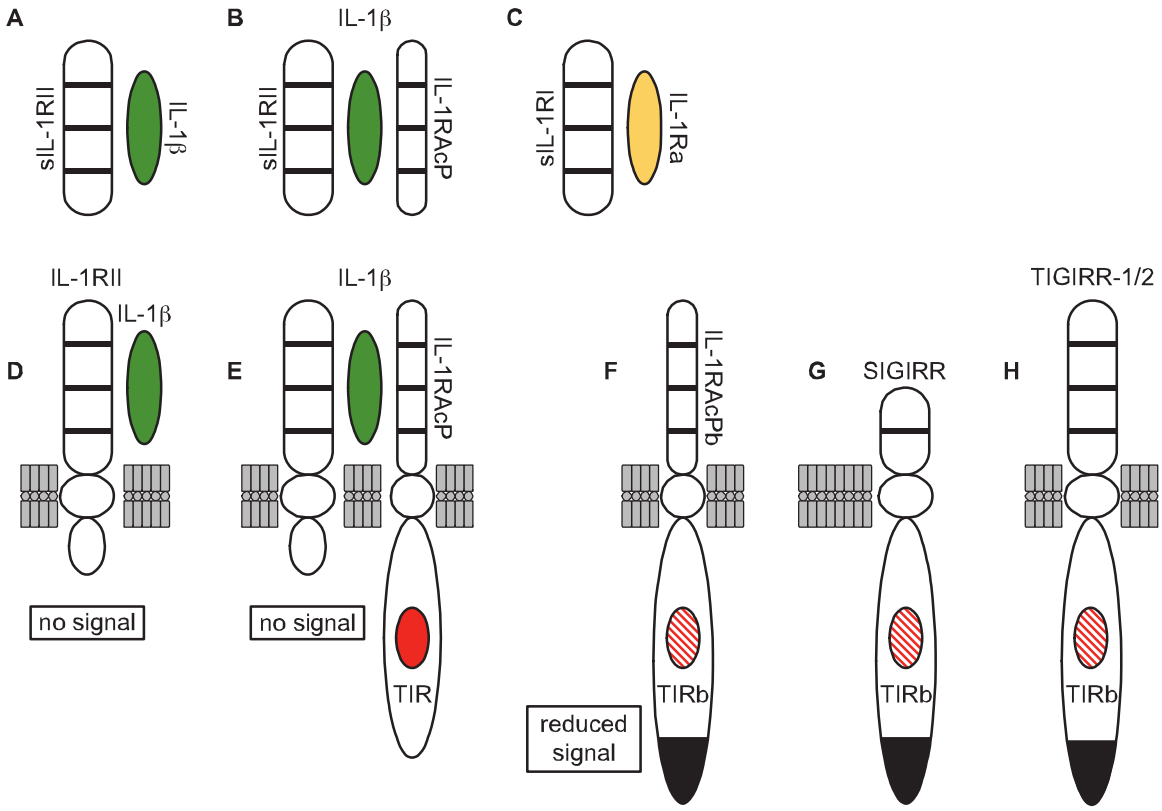


FIG. 26.4. Anti-Inflammatory Receptors of the Interleukin (IL)-1 Receptor Family. **A:** Soluble (extracellular) IL-1RII (sIL-1RII) binds and neutralizes either the precursor or mature form of IL-1β. **B:** A complex of IL-1β, sIL-1RII, and sIL-1RAcP neutralizes IL-1β activity. **C:** Soluble (extracellular) IL-1RI (sIL-1RI) binds IL-1Ra and prevents IL-1Ra from its function as a receptor antagonist. Similarly, IL-1α can bind to the sIL-1RI (not shown). **D:** IL-1RII expressed on the membrane binds mature IL-1β acting as a decoy receptor, preventing IL-1β from binding to its signaling receptor. **E:** A complex of membrane IL-1RII, IL-1β, and membrane IL-1RAcP also prevents IL-1β from signaling. **F:** The IL-1RAcPb is expressed in brain tissue (see Fig. 26.2B). **G:** Single immunoglobulin IL-1–related receptor is expressed in myeloid cells and epithelial cells and function in damped inflammation due to the TIRb domain. **H:** Three immunoglobulin IL-1–related receptor is also an anti-inflammatory member of the IL-1 due to the toll-IL-1-receptor b domain.

it seems likely that the alternative sequence in the TIRb domain of SIGIRR may act as a partial decoy for MyD88. MyD88 is phosphorylated upon TLR4 as well as IL-1β and IL-18 signaling, and results in downstream phosphorylation of IRAK-4. In cells expressing SIGIRR and activated by IL-37 binding to the IL-18Rα, the signal from either IL-1 or LPS initiates phosphorylation of MyD88. However, the decoy effect by the mutated TIRb of SIGIRR reduces the degree of phosphorylation of MyD88 and thus the phosphorylation of IRAK-4. The reduction, however, is partial. Indeed, the suppression by IL-37 added to blood macrophages is in the range of 20% to 50% and unlike the total loss of activation by a deficiency in MyD88.

Upon binding to the IL-18Rα, the IL-37 precursor may activate SIGIRR and provide a negative signal (see Fig. 26.3C). An inhibitory signal from IL-37 is enhanced by a low concentration of IL-18BP.[193] As shown in Figure 26.3D, IL-18BP binds IL-37[193] and likely presents the complex of the cytokine with the binding protein to the IL-18Rα (see Fig. 26.3E). Because A549 cells express SIGIRR, it is likely that the inhibitory signal from IL-37 activates SIGIRR or alternatively IL-37 recruits SIGIRR as the accessory chain. The inhibitory signal of SIGIRR is established in several mouse models of inflammation in which SIGIRR-deficient mice exhibit more inflammation compared to wild-type control mice.[210] In differentiated human blood M1 macrophages, recombinant IL-37 suppresses LPS-induced TNFα and IL-6 production 50% to 70%. A source of IL-18BP in this culture may be fetal calf serum. During the differentiation of macrophages into the M1 subset by granulocyte macrophage-colony stimulating factor, it is possible that SIGIRR expression increases whereas the level of IL-18Rβ decreases (see Fig. 26.3A). In the absence of IL-18Rβ, a proinflammatory complex is not formed with IL-18Rα and thus IL-37 binding to IL-18Rα may recruit or activate SIGIRR. Thus, expression of SIGIRR and the absence of IL-18Rβ would best explain the inhibitory properties of recombinant IL-37 reducing the response to LPS induction of IL-6 and TNFα.

INTERLEUKIN-36 SUBFAMILY

The IL-1 family members IL-1F5, IL-1F6, IL-1F8, and IL-1F9 are now termed IL-36Ra, IL-36α, IL-36β, and IL-36γ, respectively.[211] As shown in Figure 26.5A, each member of the IL-36

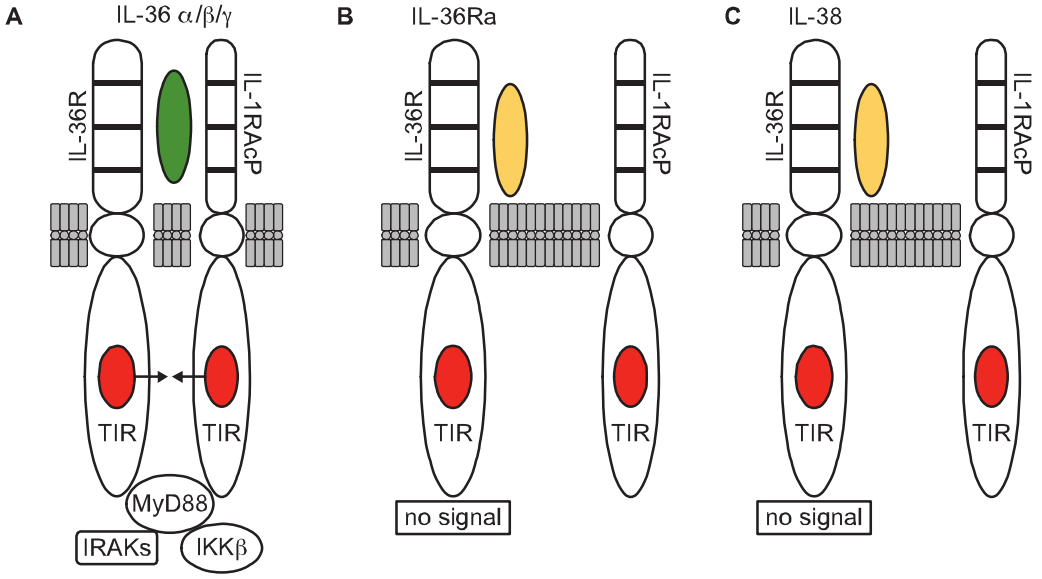


FIG. 26.5. Interleukin (IL)-36 Subfamily. **A:** IL-36α, IL-36β, or IL-36γ bind to the IL-36R and recruit the coreceptor IL-1RAcP. The heterodimeric IL-36 receptor complex results in a close approximation of the toll-IL-1-receptor (TIR) domains on each receptor chain (*arrows*), resulting in the binding of intracellular MyD88 to the complex with phosphorylation of MyD88. Subsequent phosphorylations of IRAKs and IKKβ, increased NF-κB, and activating protein-1 translocation to the nucleus take place, followed by expression of proinflammatory genes. **B:** IL-36Ra binds to IL-36R. There is no recruitment of the coreceptor IL-1RAcP, no approximation of the TIR domains, and no signal. **C:** IL-38 binds to IL-36R but there is no signal and acts similar to IL-36Ra.

subfamily binds to the IL-1Rpr2, now termed IL-36R.[212] Because IL-38 also binds to the IL-36R (Fig. 26.5C),[133] IL-38 is included in the IL-36R subfamily. The IL-36 subfamily is closely related to the IL-1 subfamily because, similar to the IL-1α and IL-1β and IL-33, the IL-36R forms a signaling complex with the IL-1RAcP (Fig. 26.5A).[122,212] Thus of the 11 members of the entire IL-1 family, 6 members use IL-1RAcP as the coreceptor for signal transduction.

Interleukin-36

The IL-36R is the ligand binding chain and therefore is comparable to the ligand binding IL-1R1 and the IL-18Rα. However, two members of the IL-36 subfamily bind to the IL-36R but do not signal, the IL-36 receptor antagonist (IL-36Ra) and IL-38 (see Fig. 26.5B and C). As such, these function as receptor antagonists.[9,133] An unusual property of IL-38 is that low concentrations (1 to 10 ng/mL) are able to reduce the activity of endogenous IL-36,[133] whereas in the case of IL-1Ra, higher concentrations are required to prevent the activating of endogenous IL-1α or IL-1β.

None of the members of the IL-36 subfamily have a signal peptide, indicating the generation of the N-terminus and secretion via the Golgi. In addition, each member of the IL-36 subfamily has an unusually short propiece compared to those of the IL-1α, IL-1β and IL-33 (see Fig. 26.1). Like IL-1β and IL-18, there is no true caspase-1 cleavage site for generation of an N-terminus in the IL-36 subfamily. It remains unknown which specific proteases generate the various N-termini of the IL-36 subfamily; nevertheless, each member has a unique N-terminus with a different levels of biologic activity.[9] What determines the N-terminus with optimal biologic activity in the IL-36 subfamily? Each member of the IL-36 subfamily contains the IL-1 family consensus sequence of A-X-D. The aspartic acid is not the recognition amino acid for caspase-1 or caspase-3, but rather participates in the stabilization of the first beta sheet of the three-dimensional structure that characterizes the entire IL-1 family.

The "A" of the consensus sequence is for any aliphatic amino acid, for example, leucine or isoleucine. Nine amino acids before the "A" of the consensus sequence is the N-terminal site, which results in the cytokine with the greatest activity.[9] For example, the biologic activity of IL-36γ increases by a factor of 1,000 when the N-terminus is at the site nine amino acids before the consensus sequence and in the case of the IL-36β, there is a 10,000-fold increase.[9] The nine amino acid forward site from the consensus sequence is not only the N-terminus for the agonist members of the IL-36 family but also the IL-36 receptor antagonist (IL-36Ra),[9] which increases from a low level of blocking of IL-36 family ligands to a high degree of blockade. It is unclear what specific protease cleaves at this site as the amino acid is different for each member of the IL-36 subfamily. Moreover, the site for the N-terminus of the IL-36Ra (valine) is but one amino acid from the N-terminal precursor methionine and yet IL-36Ra with an N-terminus at the valine site is 10,000-fold more potent that the IL-36 precursor. It is also an unusual situation that proteases that usually

are inflammatory in processing members of the IL-1 family in that case of IL-36Ra generate an anti-inflammatory molecule.

Interleukin-36α, β, and γ, Proinflammatory Members of the Interleukin-36 Subfamily

IL-36α was highly expressed in the murine model of glomerulonephritis[213] where the cytokine was localized to the kidney epithelium and also in CD3 T cells surrounding the tubules. IL-36α is also found in the kidneys of the MRL/lupus, nephritic syndrome, and streptozotocin-induced diabetic models.[213] IL-36γ increases IL-8, CXCL3, and the Th17 chemokine CCL20 in human lung fibroblasts,[214] and thus may account for acute neutrophilic lung inflammation. In addition to CD4+ T cells, human articular chondrocytes and synovial fibroblasts express the IL-36R.[215] In chondrocytes, there is also constitutive gene expression of IL-36β. Following stimulation with IL-1β or TNFα, levels of the IL-36β precursor rise intracellularly but the cytokine is not secreted. Although IL-36β levels were detected in the joint fluids of patients with rheumatoid arthritis as well as in serum samples, there was no correlation with disease severity.[215] It is likely that IL-36 ligands are functional only when released from dying cells and can be processed extracellularly by enzymes present in inflammatory conditions such as the joints of patients with rheumatoid arthritis. It unclear to what extent IL-36β plays a role in joint disease, although constitutive expression in primary chondrocytes may indicate a role for the cytokine in osteoarthritis.[215]

High levels of this cytokine are found in mouse embryonic tissues rich in epithelial cells.[216] In humans, IL-36α is observed in keratinocytes, not fibroblasts, and is thought to contribute to the inflammation of psoriasis. Upon forming the heterodimer with IL-36R and IL-1RAcP, IL-36α activates NF-κB similar to that of IL-1β.[212] In addition to NF-κB activation, IL-36α also activates MAPK, JNK, and ERK1/2.[212] In the mouse, bone marrow–derived dendritic cells and CD4+ T cells express IL-36 receptors in health. In a comparison with IL-1 as a stimulant, the three IL-36 ligands are more active in inducing IL-1β, IL-6, IL-12, TNFα, and IL-23.[217] In addition, IL-36 ligands induced the production of IFNγ, IL-4, and IL-17 from CD4+ T cells. Not unexpectedly, cytokines induced by IL-36 lands were prevented by 100- to 1,000-fold excess IL-36Ra.[217]

Interleukin-36 in Psoriasis

Several studies implicate IL-36 ligands in the pathogenesis of psoriasis.[218–220] IL-36γ is highly expressed in keratinocytes from healthy human skin and increases upon stimulation with TLR polyI:C.[221] Furthermore, polyI:C induced caspase-3, which resulted in cell death and the release of IL-36γ. Unexpectedly, stimulation of IL-36γ gene expression was dependent on caspase-1.[221] The caspase-1 dependency may be due to IL-18 as this cytokine is constitutively present in keratinocytes as is IL-1α. With the release of IL-36γ by polyI:C and the subsequent death of the cell, IL-36γ falls into the category of being an alarmin in the skin, particularly due to infection.[221] There is also a role for IL-36 in the production of IL-17: studies suggest that each of the IL-36 ligands is expressed in the skin and dependent on IL-22.[222] Furthermore, the expression of IL-36 ligands in the psoriatic skin correlated with IL-17.[222] Similar to other models in the IL-1 family, auto- and coinduction accounts for a role in a pathologic process.

Overexpression of IL-36 in mice results in inflammatory skin lesions that resemble psoriasis in humans, as reviewed in Towne and Sims.[223] Likewise, mice deficient in endogenous IL-36Ra results in a severe lesion similar to that of humans with pustular psoriasis. The role of IL-36 in pustular psoriasis may include IL-1α, as humans with pustular psoriasis responds to an antibody that neutralizes IL-1α. Both IL-36 and IL-1α are found in the keratinocytes in healthy skin.

A Role for Interleukin-36R in Metabolic Regulation

Obesity is characterized by chronic low-grade inflammation originating from expanding adipose tissue. Human adipogenic tissue levels of IL-36α is primarily present in adipose tissue resident macrophages and induced by inflammation; however, IL-36β is absent.[224] IL-36α, but not IL-36β, reduces adipocyte differentiation, as shown by a significant decrease in PPARγ gene expression. Both IL-36α and IL-36β induce inflammatory gene expression in mature adipocytes.[224] Therefore, IL-36α and IL-36β are present in adipose tissue and are involved in the regulation of adipose tissue gene expression. Importantly, IL-36α inhibits PPARγ expression, which may lead to reduced adipocyte differentiation suggesting metabolic effects of this cytokine.

Although IL-36Ra is known to occupy the IL-36R and act as a receptor antagonist, earlier studies revealed that IL-36Ra inhibited the induction of IL-1β by LPS. The role of IL-36Ra was also examined in the brain. IL-36Ra injected into the rat brain induced IL-4 and also in glial cells in vitro.[225] Moreover, the reduction in LPS-induced IL-1β was not observed in cells deficient in IL-4 and also not observed in cell deficient in SIGIRR.[225] However, these unique properties of IL-36Ra were not observed in peripheral monocytes or dendritic cells but only in the brain.

Role of Interleukin-36 in Human Disease

The importance of any cytokine in human biology can be found in mutations that result in a profound clinical picture. In the case IL-1, a mutation in the naturally IL-1Ra (see Fig. 26.5B) results in severe systemic inflammation with erosive bone lesions, sterile meningitis, and death; the syndrome is called deficiency of IL-1Ra.[226,227] In case of the IL-36 family, persons with a mutation in the naturally occurring IL-36Ra suffer with a severe form of pustular psoriasis.[228,229] These human studies are consistent with the data from transgenic mice overexpressing IL-36α in the skin and with the ability of IL-36Ra to suppress the

severity of the inflammation.[218] In mice overexpressing IL-36a in the skin, crossing the mice to generate a strain of mice heterozygous for natural IL-36Ra knockout results in worsening of the skin lesions.[218]

Interleukin-38

IL-38 is the name for the IL-1 family member 10. During the nomenclature revision of the IL-1 family in 2010,[211] the term IL-38 was assigned to IL-1F10 without any known biologic function. Since then, IL-38 has been shown to bind to the IL-36 receptor (formerly IL-1Rrp2) (see Fig. 26.5C).[133] In order to find the receptor for IL-38, each member of the IL-1 receptor family was immobilized and recombinant IL-38 precursor containing 152 amino acids was added and binding assessed using an antibody to the ligand. IL-38 bound only to the IL-36 receptor, as did IL-36Ra.[133] To assess the biologic function of IL-38, heat-killed *Candida albicans* was used to stimulate memory T-lymphocyte cytokine production in freshly obtained human peripheral blood mononuclear cells from healthy subjects. The addition of recombinant IL-38 inhibited the production of T-cell cytokines IL-22 and IL-17. The dose-response suppression of IL-38 as well as that of IL-36Ra of *Candida*-induced IL-22 and IL-17 was not that of the classic IL-1 receptor antagonist, because low concentrations were optimal for inhibiting IL-22 production.[133] These data provide evidence that IL-38 binds to the IL-36R, as does IL-36Ra, and that IL-38 and IL-36Ra have similar biologic effects on immune cells by engaging the IL-36 receptor.

CONCLUSION

In conclusion, IL-1 family of cytokines is one of the most important families of proinflammatory mediators, that have profound local and systemic effects. The importance of these molecules has been demonstrated in homeostasis, as well as in autoinflammatory diseases, and treatment strategies based on modulation of IL-1 cytokines have begun to be employed successfully. Furthermore, important and novel biologic roles are currently being described for the members of IL-1 family of cytokines, and it is to be expected that this will represent one of the most dynamic areas of research in immunology in the coming years.

REFERENCES

1. Arend WP. The balance between IL-1 and IL-1Ra in disease. *Cytokine Growth Factor Rev*. 2002;13:323–340. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12220547
2. Sims JE, March CJ, Cosman D, et al. cDNA expression cloning of the IL-1 receptor, a member of the immunoglobulin superfamily. *Science*. 1988;241:585–589. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2969618
3. Gay NJ, Keith FJ. Drosophila Toll and IL-1 receptor. *Nature*. 1991;351:355–356. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1851964
4. Heguy A, Baldari CT, Macchia G, et al. Amino acids conserved in interleukin-1 receptors (IL-1Rs) and the Drosophila toll protein are essential for IL-1R signal transduction. *J Biol Chem*. 1992;267:2605–2609. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1531143
5. Lemaitre B, Nicolas E, Michaut L, et al. The dorsoventral regulatory gene cassette spatzle/Toll/cactus controls the potent antifungal response in Drosophila adults. *Cell*. 1996;86:973–983. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8808632
6. van der Meer JWM, Barza M, Wolff SM, et al. A low dose of recombinant interleukin 1 protects granulocytopenic mice from lethal gram-negative infection. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1988;85:1620–1623. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3125553
7. O'Neill LA. The interleukin-1 receptor/Toll-like receptor superfamily: 10 years of progress. *Immunol Rev*. 2008;226:10–18. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19161412
8. Rosenwasser LJ, Dinarello CA, Rosenthal AS. Adherent cell function in murine T-lymphocyte antigen recognition. IV. Enhancement of murine T-cell antigen recognition by human leukocytic pyrogen. *J Exp Med*. 1979;150:709–714. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/314491
9. Towne JE, Renshaw BR, Douangpanya J, et al. Interleukin-36 (IL-36) ligands require processing for full agonist (IL-36alpha, IL-36beta, and IL-36gamma) or antagonist (IL-36Ra) activity. *J Biol Chem*. 2011;286:42594–42602. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21965679
10. Nakanishi K, Yoshimoto T, Tsutsui H, et al. Interleukin-18 regulates both Th1 and Th2 responses. *Ann Rev Immunol*. 2001;19:423–474. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11244043
11. Schmitz J, Owyang A, Oldham E, et al. IL-33, an interleukin-1-like cytokine that signals via the IL-1 receptor-related protein ST2 and induces T helper type 2-associated cytokines. *Immunity*. 2005;23:479–490. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16286016
12. Wilson NJ, Boniface K, Chan JR, et al. Development, cytokine profile and function of human interleukin 17-producing helper T cells. *Nat Immunol*. 2007;8:950–957. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17676044
13. Dinarello CA. Interleukin-1 in the pathogenesis and treatment of inflammatory diseases. *Blood*. 2011;117:3720–3732. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21304099
14. Chizzolini C, Chicheportiche R, Alvarez M, et al. Prostaglandin E2 synergistically with interleukin-23 favors human Th17 expansion. *Blood*. 2008;112:3696–3703. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18698005
15. Henley DV, Bellone CJ, Williams DA, et al. Aryl hydrocarbon receptor-mediated posttranscriptional regulation of IL-1beta. *Arch Biochem Biophys*. 2004;422:42–51. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14725856
16. Moreira AP, Cavassani KA, Ismailoglu UB, et al. The protective role of TLR6 in a mouse model of asthma is mediated by IL-23 and IL-17A. *J Clin Invest*. 2011;121:4420–4432. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22005301
17. Hughes T, Becknell B, Freud AG, et al. Interleukin-1beta selectively expands and sustains interleukin-22+ immature human natural killer cells in secondary lymphoid tissue. *Immunity*. 2010;32:803–814. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20620944
18. Hacham M, Argov S, White RM, et al. Different patterns of interleukin-1alpha and interleukin-1beta expression in organs of normal young and old mice. *Eur Cytokine Netw*. 2002;13:55–65. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11956021
19. Lonnemann G, Engler-Blum G, Müller GA, et al. Cytokines in human renal interstitial fibrosis. II. Intrinsic interleukin (IL)-1 synthesis and IL-1-dependent production of IL-6 and IL-8 by cultured kidney fibroblasts. *Kidney Int*. 1995;47:845–854. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7752583
20. Hurgin V, Novick D, Werman A, et al. Antiviral and immunoregulatory activities of IFN-gamma depend on constitutively expressed IL-1alpha. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2007;104:5044–5049. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17360358
21. Werman A, Werman-Venkert R, White R, et al. The precursor form of IL-1alpha is an intracrine proinflammatory activator of transcription. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2004;101:2434–2439. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14983027
22. Maier JAM, Voulalas P, Roeder D, et al. Extension of the life span of human endothelial cells by an interleukin-1a antisense oligomer. *Science*. 1990;249:1570–1574. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2218499
23. Kawaguchi Y, Nishimagi E, Tochimoto A, et al. Intracellular IL-1alpha-binding proteins contribute to biological functions of endogenous IL-1alpha in systemic sclerosis fibroblasts. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2006;103:14501–14506. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16971486
24. Horai R, Asano M, Sudo K, et al. Production of mice deficient in genes for interleukin (IL)-1a, IL- 1b, IL-1a/b, and IL-1 receptor antagonist shows that IL-1b is crucial in turpentine-induced fever development and glucocorticoid secretion. *J Exp Med*. 1998;187:1463–1475. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9565638
25. Yin H, Morioka H, Towle CA, et al. Evidence that HAX-1 is an interleukin-1 alpha N-terminal binding protein. *Cytokine*. 2001;15:122–137. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11554782
26. Kurt-Jones EA, Beller DI, Mizel SB, et al. Identification of a membrane-associated interleukin-1 in macrophages. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1985;82:1204–1208. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3919388
27. Kaplanski G, Farnarier C, Kaplanski S, et al. Interleukin-1 induces interleukin-8 from endothelial cells by a juxacrine mechanism. *Blood*. 1994;84:4242–4248. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7994038
28. Berda-Haddad Y, Robert S, Salers P, et al. Sterile inflammation of endothelial cell-derived apoptotic bodies is mediated by interleukin-1alpha. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2011;108:20684–20689. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22143786
29. Miller AC, Schattenberg DG, Malkinson AM, et al. Decreased content of the IL1 alpha processing enzyme calpain in murine bone marrow-derived macrophages after treatment with the benzene metabolite hydroquinone. *Toxicol Lett*. 1994;74:177–184. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7940599
30. Gross O, Yazdi AS, Thomas CJ, et al. Inflammasome activators induce interleukin-1alpha secretion via distinct pathways with differential requirement for the protease function of caspase-1. *Immunity*. 2012;36:388–400. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22444631
31. Fettelschoss A, Kistowska M, LeibundGut-Landmann S, et al. Inflammasome activation and IL-1beta target IL-1alpha for secretion as opposed to surface expression. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2011;108:18055–18060. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22006336
32. Sha Y, Zmijewski J, Xu Z, et al. HMGB1 develops enhanced proinflammatory activity by binding to cytokines. *J Immunol*. 2008;180:2531–2537. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18250463
33. Cohen I, Rider P, Carmi Y, et al. Differential release of chromatin-bound IL-1alpha discriminates between necrotic and apoptotic cell death by the ability to induce sterile inflammation. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2010;107:2574–2579. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20133797
34. Carmi Y, Voronov E, Dotan S, et al. The role of macrophage-derived IL-1 in induction and maintenance of angiogenesis. *J Immunol*. 2009;183:4705–4714. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19752225
35. Rider P, Carmi Y, Guttman O, et al. IL-1 α and IL-1 β recruit different myeloid cells and promote different stages of sterile inflammation. *J Immunol*. 2011;187:4835–4843. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21930960
36. Luheshi NM, Kovacs KJ, Lopez-Castejon G, et al. Interleukin-1alpha expression precedes IL-1beta after ischemic brain injury and is localised

to areas of focal neuronal loss and penumbral tissues. *J Neuroinflammation*. 2011;8:186.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22206506
37. Chen CJ, Kono H, Golenbock D, et al. Identification of a key pathway required for the sterile inflammatory response triggered by dying cells. *Nat Med*. 2007;13:851–856.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17572686
38. Hawrylowicz CM, Santoro SA, Platt FM, et al. Activated platelets express IL-1 activity. *J Immunol*. 1989;143:4015–4018.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2592766
39. Kaplanski G, Porat R, Aiura K, et al. Activated platelets induce endothelial secretion of interleukin-8 in vitro via an interleukin-1-mediated event. *Blood*. 1993;81:2492–2495.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8490165
40. Hawrylowicz CM, Howells GL, Feldmann M. Platelet-derived interleukin 1 induces human endothelial adhesion molecule expression and cytokine production. *J Exp Med*. 1991;174:785–790.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1680957
41. Thornton P, McColl BW, Greenhalgh A, et al. Platelet interleukin-1alpha drives cerebrovascular inflammation. *Blood*. 2010;115:3632–3639.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20200351
42. Gawaz M, Brand K, Dickfeld T, et al. Platelets induce alterations of chemotactic and adhesive properties of endothelial cells mediated through an interleukin-1-dependent mechanism. Implications for atherogenesis. *Atherosclerosis*. 2000;148:75–85.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10580173
43. Kuida K, Lippke JA, Ku G, et al. Altered cytokine export and apoptosis in mice deficient in interleukin-1b converting enzyme. *Science*. 1995;267:2000–2003.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7535475
44. Kenneth NS, Younger JM, Hughes ED, et al. An inactivating caspase 11 passenger mutation originating from the 129 murine strain in mice targeted for c-IAP1. *Biochem J*. 2012;443:355–359.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22332634
45. Kamari Y, Werman-Venkert R, Shaish A, et al. Differential role and tissue specificity of interleukin-1alpha gene expression in atherogenesis and lipid metabolism. *Atherosclerosis*. 2007;195:31–38.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17173923
46. Dinarello CA. A clinical perspective of IL-1beta as the gatekeeper of inflammation. *Eur J Immunol*. 2011;41:1203–1217.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21523780
47. Okamoto M, Liu W, Luo Y, et al. Constitutively active inflammasome in human melanoma cells mediating autoinflammation via caspase-1 processing and secretion of interleukin-1beta. *J Biol Chem*. 2009; 285:6477–6488.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20038581
48. Croker BA, Lewis RS, Babon JJ, et al. Neutrophils require SHP1 to regulate IL-1beta production and prevent inflammatory skin disease. *J Immunol*. 2011;186:1131–1139.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21160041
49. Unlu S, Kumar A, Waterman WR, et al. Phosphorylation of IRF8 in a pre-associated complex with Spi-1/PU.1 and non-phosphorylated Stat1 is critical for LPS induction of the IL1B gene. *Mol Immunol*. 2007;44:3364–3379.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17386941
50. Kaspar RL, Gehrke L. Peripheral blood mononuclear cells stimulated with C5a or lipopolysaccharide to synthesize equivalent levels of IL-1b mRNA show unequal IL-1b protein accumulation but similar polyribosome profiles. *J Immunol*. 1994;153:277–286.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8207242
51. Bufler P, Gamboni-Robertson F, Azam T, et al. Interleukin-1 homologues IL-1F7b and IL-18 contain functional mRNA instability elements within the coding region responsive to lipopolysaccharide. *Biochem J*. 2004;381:503–510.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15046617
52. Schindler R, Clark BD, Dinarello CA. Dissociation between interleukin-1b mRNA and protein synthesis in human peripheral blood mononuclear cells. *J Biol Chem*. 1990;265:10232–10237.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2354999
53. Dinarello CA, Ikejima T, Warner SJ, et al. Interleukin 1 induces interleukin 1. I. Induction of circulating interleukin 1 in rabbits in vivo and in human mononuclear cells in vitro. *J Immunol*. 1987;139: 1902–1910.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3497982
54. Goldbach-Mansky R, Dailey NJ, Canna SW, et al. Neonatal-onset multisystem inflammatory disease responsive to interleukin-1beta inhibition. *N Engl J Med*. 2006;355:581–592.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16899778
55. Greten FR, Arkan MC, Bollrath J, et al. NF-kappaB is a negative regulator of IL-1beta secretion as revealed by genetic and pharmacological inhibition of IKKbeta. *Cell*. 2007;130:918–931.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17803913
56. Boni-Schnetzler M, Thorne J, Parnaud G, et al. Increased interleukin (IL)-1beta messenger ribonucleic acid expression in beta-cells of individuals with type 2 diabetes and regulation of IL-1beta in human islets by glucose and autostimulation. *J Clin Endocrinol Metab*. 2008;93:4065–4074.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18664535
57. Gattorno M, Tassi S, Carta S, et al. Pattern of interleukin-1beta secretion in response to lipopolysaccharide and ATP before and after interleukin-1 blockade in patients with CIAS1 mutations. *Arthritis Rheum*. 2007;56:3138–3148.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18664535
58. Wewers MD, Dare HA, Winnard AV, et al. IL-1b-converting enzyme (ICE) is present and functional in human alveolar macrophages: macrophage IL-1b release limitation is ICE independent. *J Immunol*. 1997;159:5964–5972.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9550394
59. Martinon F, Mayor A, Tschopp J. The inflammasomes: guardians of the body. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 2009;27:229–265.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19302040
60. Agostini L, Martinon F, Burns K, et al. NALP3 forms an IL-1beta processing inflammasome with increased activity in Muckle-Wells autoinflammatory disorder. *Immunity*. 2004;20:319–325.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15030775
61. Hoffman HM, Mueller JL, Broide DH, et al. Mutation of a new gene encoding a putative pyrin-like protein causes familial cold autoinflammatory syndrome and Muckle-Wells syndrome. *Nat Genet*. 2001;29:301–305.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11687797
62. Drenth JP, van der Meer JW, Kushner I. Unstimulated peripheral blood mononuclear cells from patients with the hyper-IgD syndrome produce cytokines capable of potent induction of C-reactive protein and serum amyloid A in Hep3B cells. *J Immunol*. 1996;157:400–404.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8683144
63. Hoffman HM, Wanderer AA. Inflammasome and IL-1beta-mediated disorders. *Curr Allergy Asthma Rep*. 2011;10:229–235.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20425006
64. Netea MG, Nold-Petry CA, Nold MF, et al. Differential requirement for the activation of the inflammasome for processing and release of IL-1beta in monocytes and macrophages. *Blood*. 2009;113:2324–2335.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19104081
65. Andrei C, Dazzi C, Lotti L, et al. The secretory route of the leaderless protein interleukin 1beta involves exocytosis of endolysosome-related vesicles. *Mol Biol Cell*. 1999;10:1463–1475.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10233156
66. Andrei C, Margiocco P, Poggi A, et al. Phospholipases C and A2 control lysosome-mediated IL-1 beta secretion: implications for inflammatory processes. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2004;101:9745–9750.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15192144
67. Gardella S, Andrei C, Costigliolo S, et al. Secretion of bioactive interleukin-1beta by dendritic cells is modulated by interaction with antigen specific T cells. *Blood*. 2000;95:3809–3815.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10845914
68. Perregaux DG, McNiff P, Laliberte R, et al. ATP acts as an agonist to promote stimulus-induced secretion of IL-1 beta and IL-18 in human blood. *J Immunol*. 2000;165:4615–4623.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11035104
69. Elssner A, Duncan M, Gavrilin M, et al. A novel P2X7 receptor activator, the human cathelicidin-derived peptide LL37, induces IL-1 beta processing and release. *J Immunol*. 2004;172:4987–4994.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15067080
70. Qu Y, Franchi L, Nunez G, et al. Nonclassical IL-1 beta secretion stimulated by P2X7 receptors is dependent on inflammasome activation and correlated with exosome release in murine macrophages. *J Immunol*. 2007;179:1913–1925.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17641058

71. Brough D, Rothwell NJ. Caspase-1-dependent processing of prointerleukin-1beta is cytosolic and precedes cell death. *J Cell Sci*. 2007;120:772–781.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17284521
72. Suzuki T, Franchi L, Toma C, et al. Differential regulation of caspase-1 activation, pyroptosis, and autophagy via Ipaf and ASC in Shigella-infected macrophages. *PLoS Pathog*. 2007;3:e111.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17696608
73. Kahlenberg JM, Lundberg KC, Kertesy SB, et al. Potentiation of caspase-1 activation by the P2X7 receptor is dependent on TLR signals and requires NF-kappaB-driven protein synthesis. *J Immunol*. 2005;175:7611–7622.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16301671
74. Maedler K, Sergeev P, Ris F, et al. Glucose-induced beta cell production of IL-1beta contributes to glucotoxicity in human pancreatic islets. *J Clin Invest*. 2002;110:851–860.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12235117
75. Pascual V, Allantaz F, Arce E, et al. Role of interleukin-1 (IL-1) in the pathogenesis of systemic onset juvenile idiopathic arthritis and clinical response to IL-1 blockade. *J Exp Med*. 2005;201:1479–1486.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15851489
76. Al-Shukaili A, Al-Kaabi J, Hassan B. A comparative study of interleukin-1beta production and p2x7 expression after ATP stimulation by peripheral blood mononuclear cells isolated from rheumatoid arthritis patients and normal healthy controls. *Inflammation*. 2008;31:84–90.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18040764
77. Sluyter R, Shemon AN, Wiley JS. Glu496 to Ala polymorphism in the P2X7 receptor impairs ATP-induced IL-1 beta release from human monocytes. *J Immunol*. 2004;172:3399–3405.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15004138
78. Sluyter R, Dalitz JG, Wiley JS. P2X7 receptor polymorphism impairs extracellular adenosine 5′-triphosphate-induced interleukin-18 release from human monocytes. *Genes Immun*. 2004;5:588–591.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15306849
79. Lee KH, Park SS, Kim I, et al. P2X7 receptor polymorphism and clinical outcomes in HLA-matched sibling allogeneic hematopoietic stem cell transplantation. *Haematologica*. 2007;92:651–657.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17488689
80. Chessell IP, Hatcher JP, Bountra C, et al. Disruption of the P2X7 purinoceptor gene abolishes chronic inflammatory and neuropathic pain. *Pain*. 2005;114:386–396.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15777864
81. Hewinson J, Moore SF, Glover C, et al. A key role for redox signaling in rapid P2X7 receptor-induced IL-1 beta processing in human monocytes. *J Immunol*. 2008;180:8410–8420.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18523309
82. Pelegrin P, Surprenant A. Pannexin-1 mediates large pore formation and interleukin-1beta release by the ATP-gated P2X7 receptor. *EMBO J*. 2006;25:5071–5082.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17036048
83. Kanneganti TD, LamkanfiM, Kim YG, et al. Pannexin-1-mediated recognition of bacterial molecules activates the cryopyrin inflammasome independent of Toll-like receptor signaling. *Immunity*. 2007;26:433–443.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17433728
84. Derks R, Beaman K. Regeneration and tolerance factor modulates the effect of adenosine triphosphate-induced interleukin 1 beta secretion in human macrophages. *Hum Immunol*. 2004;65:676–682.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15301855
85. Fantuzzi G, Ku G, Harding MW, et al. Response to local inflammation of IL-1b converting enzyme-deficient mice. *J Immunol*. 1997;158:1818–1824.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9029121
86. Joosten LA, Netea MG, Fantuzzi G, et al. Inflammatory arthritis in caspase 1 gene-deficient mice: contribution of proteinase 3 to caspase 1-independent production of bioactive interleukin-1beta. *Arthritis Rheum*. 2009;60:3651–3662.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19950280
87. Coeshott C, Ohnemus C, Pilyavskaya A, et al. Converting enzyme-independent release of TNFa and IL-1b from a stimulated human monocytic cell line in the presence of activated neutrophils or purified proteinase-3. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1999;96:6261–6266.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10339575
88. Sugawara S, Uehara A, Nochi T, et al. Neutrophil proteinase 3-mediated induction of bioactive IL-18 secretion by human oral epithelial cells. *J Immunol*. 2001;167:6568–6575.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11714826
89. Joosten LA, Netea MG, Mylona E, et al. Engagement of fatty acids with Toll-like receptor 2 drives interleukin-1beta production via the ASC/caspase 1 pathway in monosodium urate monohydrate crystal-induced gouty arthritis. *Arthritis Rheum*. 2010;62:3237–3248.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20662061
90. So A, De Smedt T, Revaz S, et al. A pilot study of IL-1 inhibition by anakinra in acute gout. *Arthritis Res Ther*. 2007;9:R28.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17352828
91. So A, De Meulemeester M, Pikhlak A, et al. Canakinumab for the treatment of acute flares in difficult-to-treat gouty arthritis: Results of a multicenter, phase II, dose-ranging study. *Arthritis Rheum*. 2010;62:3064–3076.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20533546
92. Schlesinger N, Mysler E, Lin HY, et al. Canakinumab reduces the risk of acute gouty arthritis flares during initiation of allopurinol treatment: results of a double-blind, randomised study. *Ann Rheum Dis*. 2011;70:1264–1271.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21540198
93. Numanami H, Koyama S, Sato E, et al. Serine protease inhibitors modulate chemotactic cytokine production by human lung fibroblasts in vitro. *Am J Physiol Lung Cell Mol Physiol*. 2003;284:L882–890.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12676771
94. Zhou R, Tardivel A, Thorens B, et al. Thioredoxin-interacting protein links oxidative stress to inflammasome activation. *Nat Immunol*. 2010;11:136–140.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20023662
95. Meissner F, Molawi K, Zychlinsky A. Superoxide dismutase 1 regulates caspase-1 and endotoxic shock. *Nat Immunol*. 2008;9:866–872.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18604212
96. van de Veerdonk FL, Smeekens SP, Joosten LA, et al. Reactive oxygen species-independent activation of the IL-1beta inflammasome in cells from patients with chronic granulomatous disease. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2010;107:3030–3033.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20133696
97. Meissner F, Seger RA, Moshous D, et al. Inflammasome activation in NADPH oxidase defective mononuclear phagocytes from patients with chronic granulomatous disease. *Blood*. 2010;116:1570–1573.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20495074
98. van de Veerdonk FL, Netea MG, Dinarello CA, et al. Anakinra for the inflammatory complications of chronic granulomatous disease. *Neth J Med*. 2011;69:95.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21411850
99. Zheng H, Fletcher D, Kozak W, et al. Resistance to fever induction and impaired acute-phase response in interleukin-1b deficient mice. *Immunity*. 1995;3:9–19.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7621081
100. Fantuzzi G, Sacco S, Ghezzi P, et al. Physiological and cytokine responses in interleukin-1b-deficient mice after zymosan-induced inflammation. *Am J Physiol*. 1997;273:R400–R406.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9249578
101. Fantuzzi G, Zheng H, Faggioni R, et al. Effect of endotoxin in IL-1b-deficient mice. *J Immunol*. 1996;157:291–296.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8683129
102. Faggioni R, Fantuzzi G, Fuller J, et al. IL-1b mediates leptin induction during inflammation. *Am J Physiol*. 1998;274:R204–208.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9458919
103. Krelin Y, Voronov E, Dotan S, et al. Interleukin-1beta-driven inflammation promotes the development and invasiveness of chemical carcinogen-induced tumors. *Cancer Res*. 2007;67:1062–1071.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17283139
104. Klionsky DJ. Autophagy: from phenomenology to molecular understanding in less than a decade. *Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol*. 2007;8:931–937.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17712358
105. Schmid D, Munz C. Innate and adaptive immunity through autophagy. *Immunity*. 2007;27:11–21.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17663981
106. Saitoh T, Fujita N, Jang MH, et al. Loss of the autophagy protein Atg16L1 enhances endotoxin-induced IL-1beta production. *Nature*. 2008;456:264–268.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18849965

107. Harris J, Hartman M, Roche C, et al. Autophagy controls IL-1beta secretion by targeting pro-IL-1beta for degradation. *J Biol Chem*. 2011;286:9587–9597. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21228274
108. Nakahira K, Haspel JA, Rathinam VA, et al. Autophagy proteins regulate innate immune responses by inhibiting the release of mitochondrial DNA mediated by the NALP3 inflammasome. *Nat Immunol*. 2011;12:222–230. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21151103
109. Tschopp J, Schroder K. NLRP3 inflammasome activation: the convergence of multiple signalling pathways on ROS production? *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2010;10:210–215. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20168318
110. Crisan TO, Plantinga TS, van de Veerdonk FL, et al. Inflammasome-independent modulation of cytokine response by autophagy in human cells. *PLoS One*. 2011;6:e18666. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21490934
111. Hampe J, Franke A, Rosenstiel P, et al. A genome-wide association scan of nonsynonymous SNPs identifies a susceptibility variant for Crohn disease in ATG16L1. *Nat Genet*. 2007;39:207–211. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17200669
112. Rioux JD, Xavier RJ, Taylor KD, et al. Genome-wide association study identifies new susceptibility loci for Crohn disease and implicates autophagy in disease pathogenesis. *Nat Genet*. 2007;39:596–604. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17435756
113. Henckaerts L, Cleynen I, Brinar M, et al. Genetic variation in the autophagy gene ULK1 and risk of Crohn's disease. *Inflamm Bowel Dis*. 2011;17:1392–1397. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21560199
114. Lapaquette P, Glasser AL, Huett A, et al. Crohn's disease-associated adherent-invasive E. coli are selectively favoured by impaired autophagy to replicate intracellularly. *Cell Microbiol*. 2010;12:99–113. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19747213
115. Plantinga TS, Crisan TO, Oosting M, et al. Crohn's disease-associated ATG16L1 polymorphism modulates pro-inflammatory cytokine responses selectively upon activation of NOD2. *Gut*. 2011;60:1229–1235. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21406388
116. Cooney R, Baker J, Brain O, et al. NOD2 stimulation induces autophagy in dendritic cells influencing bacterial handling and antigen presentation. *Nat Med*. 2010;16:90–97. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19966812
117. Homer CR, Richmond AL, Rebert NA, et al. ATG16L1 and NOD2 interact in an autophagy-dependent antibacterial pathway implicated in Crohn's disease pathogenesis. *Gastroenterology*. 2010;139:1630–1641. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20637199
118. Travassos LH, Carneiro LA, Ramjeet M, et al. Nod1 and Nod2 direct autophagy by recruiting ATG16L1 to the plasma membrane at the site of bacterial entry. *Nat Immunol*. 2010;11:55–62. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19898471
119. Kuballa P, Huett A, Rioux JD, et al. Impaired autophagy of an intracellular pathogen induced by a Crohn's disease associated ATG16L1 variant. *PLoS One*. 2008;3:e3391. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18852889
120. Bergers G, Reikerstorfer A, Braselmann S, et al. Alternative promoter usage of the Fos-responsive gene *Fit-1* generates mRNA isoforms coding for either secreted or membrane-bound proteins related to the IL-1 receptor. *EMBO J*. 1994;13:1176–1188. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8131748
121. Chackerian AA, Oldham ER, Murphy EE, et al. IL-1 receptor accessory protein and ST2 comprise the IL-33 receptor complex. *J Immunol*. 2007;179:2551–2555. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17675517
122. Ali S, Huber M, Kollewe C, et al. IL-1 receptor accessory protein is essential for IL-33-induced activation of T lymphocytes and mast cells. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2007;104:18660–18665. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18003919
123. Cayrol C, Girard JP. The IL-1-like cytokine IL-33 is inactivated after maturation by caspase-1. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2009;106:9021–9026. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19439663
124. Bae S, Kang T, Hong J, et al. Contradictory functions (activation/termination) of neutrophil proteinase 3 enzyme (PR3) in interleukin-33 biological activity. *J Biol Chem*. 2012;287:8205–8213. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22270365
125. Lefrancais E, Roga S, Gautier V, et al. IL-33 is processed into mature bioactive forms by neutrophil elastase and cathepsin G. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2012;109:1673–1678. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22307629
126. Leung BP, Xu D, Culshaw S, et al. A novel therapy of murine collagen-induced arthritis with soluble T1/ST2. *J Immunol*. 2004;173:145–150. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15210768
127. Louten J, Rankin AL, Li Y, et al. Endogenous IL-33 enhances Th2 cytokine production and T-cell responses during allergic airway inflammation. *Int Immunol*. 2011;23:307–315. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21422152
128. Yasuda K, Muto T, Kawagoe T, et al. Contribution of IL-33-activated type II innate lymphoid cells to pulmonary eosinophilia in intestinal nematode-infected mice. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2012;109:3451–3456. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22331917
129. Matsuba-Kitamura S, Yoshimoto T, Yasuda K, et al. Contribution of IL-33 to induction and augmentation of experimental allergic conjunctivitis. *Int Immunol*. 2010;22:479–489. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20501612
130. Kim YH, Yang TY, Park CS, et al. Anti-IL-33 antibody has a therapeutic effect in a murine model of allergic rhinitis. *Allergy*. 2012;67:183–190. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22050307
131. Wang D, Zhang S, Li L, et al. Structural insights into the assembly and activation of IL-1beta with its receptors. *Nat Immunol*. 2010;11:905–911. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20802483
132. Kumar S, Hanning CR, Brigham-Burke MR, et al. Interleukin-1F7B (IL-1H4/IL-1F7) is processed by caspase-1 and mature IL-1F7B binds to the IL-18 receptor but does not induce IFN-gamma production. *Cytokine*. 2002;18:61–71. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12096920
133. van de Veerdonk FL, Stoeckman AK, Wu G, et al. IL-38 binds to the IL-36 receptor and has biological effects on immune cells similar to IL-36 receptor antagonist. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2012;109:3001–3005. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22315422
134. Bulek K, Swaidani S, Qin J, et al. The essential role of single Ig IL-1 receptor-related molecule/Toll IL-1R8 in regulation of Th2 immune response. *J Immunol*. 2009;182:2601–2609. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19234154
135. Gadina M, Jefferies CA. IL-33: a sheep in wolf's clothing? *Sci STKE*. 2007;2007:pe31. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17565120
136. Sanada S, Hakuno D, Higgins LJ, et al. IL-33 and ST2 comprise a critical biomechanically induced and cardioprotective signaling system. *J Clin Invest*. 2007;117:1538–1549. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17492053
137. Miller AM, Xu D, Asquith DL, et al. IL-33 reduces the development of atherosclerosis. *J Exp Med*. 2008;205:339–346. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18268038
138. Carriere V, Roussel L, Ortega N, et al. IL-33, the IL-1-like cytokine ligand for ST2 receptor, is a chromatin-associated nuclear factor in vivo. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2007;104:282–287. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17185418
139. Moussion C, Ortega N, Girard JP. The IL-1-like cytokine IL-33 is constitutively expressed in the nucleus of endothelial cells and epithelial cells in vivo: a novel "alarmin"? *PLoS One*. 2008;3:e3331. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18836528
140. Masamune A, Watanabe T, Kikuta K, et al. Nuclear expression of interleukin-33 in pancreatic stellate cells. *Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol*. 2010;299:G821–832. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20689058
141. Stevenson FT, Turck J, Locksley RM, et al. The N-terminal propiece of interleukin 1 alpha is a transforming nuclear oncoprotein. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1997;94:508–513. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9012814
142. Roussel L, Erard M, Cayrol C, et al. Molecular mimicry between IL-33 and KSHV for attachment to chromatin through the H2A-H2B acidic pocket. *EMBO Rep*. 2008;9:1006–1012. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18688256
143. Ali S, Mohs A, Thomas M, et al. The dual function cytokine IL-33 interacts with the transcription factor NF-kappaB to dampen NF-kappaB-stimulated gene transcription. *J Immunol*. 2011;187:1609–1616. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21734074

144. Okamura H, Nagata K, Komatsu T, et al. A novel costimulatory factor for gamma interferon induction found in the livers of mice causes endotoxic shock. *Infect Immun*. 1995;63:3966–3972. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7558306
145. Dinarello CA. Interleukin-18 and the pathogenesis of inflammatory diseases. *Semin Nephrol*. 2007;27:98–114. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17336692
146. Puren AJ, Fantuzzi G, Dinarello CA. Gene expression, synthesis and secretion of IL-1b and IL-18 are differentially regulated in human blood mononuclear cells and mouse spleen cells. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1999;96:2256–2261. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10051628
147. Fantuzzi G, Reed DA, Dinarello CA. IL-12-induced IFNg is dependent on caspase-1 processing of the IL-18 precursor. *J Clin Invest*. 1999;104:761–767. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10491411
148. Siegmund B, Lehr HA, Fantuzzi G, et al. IL-1beta-converting enzyme (caspase-1) in intestinal inflammation. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2001;98:13249–13254. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11606779
149. Siegmund B, Fantuzzi G, Rieder F, et al. Neutralization of interleukin-18 reduces severity in murine colitis and intestinal IFN-g and TNF-a production. *Am J Physiol Regul Integr Comp Physiol*. 2001;281:R1264–1273. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11557635
150. Tsutsui H, Matsui K, Okamura H, et al. Pathophysiological roles of interleukin-18 in inflammatory liver diseases. *Immunol Rev*. 2000;174:192–209. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10807517
151. Herzog C, Haun RS, Kaushal V, et al. Meprin A and meprin alpha generate biologically functional IL-1beta from pro-IL-1beta. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun*. 2009;379:904–908. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19135030
152. Herzog C, Kaushal GP, Haun RS. Generation of biologically active interleukin-1beta by meprin B. *Cytokine*. 2005;31:394–403. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16095909
153. Banerjee S, Bond JS. Prointerleukin-18 is activated by meprin beta in vitro and in vivo in intestinal inflammation. *J Biol Chem*. 2008;283:31371–31377. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18786924
154. Weber A, Wasiliew P, Kracht M. Interleukin-1 (IL-1) pathway. *Sci Signal*. 2010;3:cm1. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20086235
155. Morel JC, Park CC, Woods JM, et al. A novel role for interleukin-18 in adhesion molecule induction through NFkappa B and phosphati-dylinositol (PI) 3-kinase-dependent signal transduction pathways. *J Biol Chem*. 2001;276:37069–37075. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11477102
156. Lee JK, Kim SH, Lewis EC, et al. Differences in signaling pathways by IL-1beta and IL-18. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2004;101:8815–8820. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15161979
157. Kim SH, Han SY, Azam T, et al. Interleukin-32: a cytokine and inducer of TNFalpha. *Immunity*. 2005;22:131–142. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15664165
158. Dahl CA, Schall RP, He HL, et al. Identification of a novel gene expressed in activated natural killer cells and T cells. *J Immunol*. 1992;148:597–603. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1729377
159. Nakanishi K, Yoshimoto T, Tsutsui H, et al. Interleukin-18 is a unique cytokine that stimulates both Th1 and Th2 responses depending on its cytokine milieu. *Cytokine Growth Factor Rev*. 2001;12:53–72. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11312119
160. Bellora F, Castriconi R, Doni A, et al. M-CSF induces the expression of a membrane-bound form of IL-18 in a subset of human monocytes differentiating in vitro toward macrophages. *Eur J Immunol*. 2012;42:1618–1626. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22678914
161. Nakamura S, Otani T, Ijiri Y, et al. IFN-gamma-dependent and -independent mechanisms in adverse effects caused by concomitant administration of IL-18 and IL-12. *J Immunol*. 2000;164:3330–3336. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10706727
162. Sennello JA, Fayad R, Pini M, et al. Interleukin-18, together with interleukin-12, induces severe acute pancreatitis in obese but not in nonobese leptin-deficient mice. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2008;105:8085–8090. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18515422
163. Vidal-Vanaclocha F, Fantuzzi G, Mendoza L, et al. IL-18 regulates IL-1beta-dependent hepatic melanoma metastasis via vascular cell adhesion molecule-1. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2000;97:734–739. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10639148
164. Mazodier K, Marin V, Novick D, et al. Severe imbalance of IL-18/IL-18BP in patients with secondary hemophagocytic syndrome. *Blood*. 2005;106:3483–3489. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16020503
165. Gatti S, Beck J, Fantuzzi G, et al. Effect of interleukin-18 on mouse core body temperature. *Am J Physiol Regul Integr Comp Physiol*. 2002;282:R702–709. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11832389
166. Li S, Goorha S, Ballou LR, et al. Intracerebroventricular interleukin-6, macrophage inflammatory protein-1 beta and IL-18: pyrogenic and PGE(2)-mediated? *Brain Res*. 2003;992:76–84. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14604775
167. Reznikov LL, Kim SH, Westcott JY, et al. IL-18 binding protein increases spontaneous and IL-1-induced prostaglandin production via inhibition of IFN-gamma. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2000;97:2174–2179. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10681439
168. Tak PP, Bacchi M, Bertolino M. Pharmacokinetics of IL-18 binding protein in healthy volunteers and subjects with rheumatoid arthritis or plaque psoriasis. *Eur J Drug Metab Pharmacokinetics*. 2006;31:109–116. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16898079
169. Joosten LA, van De Loo FA, Lubberts E, et al. An IFN-gamma-independent proinflammatory role of IL-18 in murine streptococcal cell wall arthritis. *J Immunol*. 2000;165:6553–6558. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11086098
170. Carrascal MT, Mendoza L, Valcarcel M, et al. Interleukin-18 binding protein reduces b16 melanoma hepatic metastasis by neutralizing adhesiveness and growth factors of sinusoidal endothelium. *Cancer Res*. 2003;63:491–497. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12543807
171. ten Hove T, van Montfrans C, Peppelenbosch MP, et al. Infliximab treatment induces apoptosis of lamina propria T lymphocytes in Crohn's disease. *Gut*. 2002;50:206–211. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11788561
172. Sandborn WJ, Feagan BG, Fedorak RN, et al. A randomized trial of Ustekinumab, a human interleukin-12/23 monoclonal antibody, in patients with moderate-to-severe Crohn's disease. *Gastroenterology*. 2008;135:1130–1141. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18706417
173. Mannon PJ, Fuss IJ, Mayer L, et al. Anti-interleukin-12 antibody for active Crohn's disease. *N Engl J Med*. 2004;351:2069–2079. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15537905
174. Pizarro TT, Michie MH, Bentz M, et al. IL-18, a novel immunoregulatory cytokine, is up-regulated in Crohn's disease: expression and localization in intestinal mucosal cells. *J Immunol*. 1999;162:6829–6835. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10352304
175. Monteleone G, Trapasso F, Parrello T, et al. Bioactive IL-18 expression is up-regulated in Crohn's disease. *J Immunol*. 1999;163:143–147. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10384110
176. Ten Hove T, Corbaz A, Amitai H, et al. Blockade of endogenous IL-18 ameliorates TNBS-induced colitis by decreasing local TNF-alpha production in mice. *Gastroenterology*. 2001;121:1372–1379. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11729116
177. Siegmund B. Interleukin-1b converting enzyme and intestinal inflammation. *Biochem Pharmacol*. 2002;7273:1–8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12106600
178. Bauer C, Duewell P, Mayer C, et al. Colitis induced in mice with dextran sulfate sodium (DSS) is mediated by the NLRP3 inflammasome. *Gut*. 2010;59:1192–1199. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20442201
179. Bauer C, Loher F, Dauer M, et al. The ICE inhibitor pralnacasan prevents DSS-induced colitis in C57BL/6 mice and suppresses IP-10 mRNA but not TNF-alpha mRNA expression. *Dig Dis Sci*. 2007;52:1642–1652. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17393315
180. Loher F, Bauer C, Landauer N, et al. The interleukin-1 beta-converting enzyme inhibitor pralnacasan reduces dextran sulfate sodium-induced murine colitis and T helper 1 T-cell activation. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther*. 2004;308:583–590. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14610233

181. Allen IC, TeKippe EM, Woodford RM, et al. The NLRP3 inflammasome functions as a negative regulator of tumorigenesis during colitis-associated cancer. *J Exp Med*. 2010;207:1045–1056. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20385749
182. Dupaul-Chicoine J, Yeretssian G, Doiron K, et al. Control of intestinal homeostasis, colitis, and colitis-associated colorectal cancer by the inflammatory caspases. *Immunity*. 2010;32:367–378. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20226691
183. Hirota SA, Ng J, Lueng A, et al. NLRP3 inflammasome plays a key role in the regulation of intestinal homeostasis. *Inflamm Bowel Dis*. 2011;17:1359–1372. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20872834
184. Elinav E, Strowig T, Kau AL, et al. NLRP6 inflammasome regulates colonic microbial ecology and risk for colitis. *Cell*. 2011;145:745–757. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21565393
185. Siegmund B. Interleukin-18 in intestinal inflammation: friend and foe? *Immunity*. 2010;32:300–302. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20346770
186. Netea MG, Joosten LA, Lewis E, et al. Deficiency of interleukin-18 in mice leads to hyperphagia, obesity and insulin resistance. *Nat Med*. 2006;12:650–656. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16732281
187. Zorrilla EP, Sanchez-Alavez M, Sugama S, et al. Interleukin-18 controls energy homeostasis by suppressing appetite and feed efficiency. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2007;104:11097–11102. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17578927
188. Doyle SL, Campbell M, Ozaki E, et al. NLRP3 has a protective role in age-related macular degeneration through the induction of IL-18 by drusen components. *Nat Med*. 2012;18:791–798. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22484808
189. Novick D, Kim S-H, Fantuzzi G, et al. Interleukin-18 binding protein: a novel modulator of the Th1 cytokine response. *Immunity*. 1999;10: 127–136. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10023777
190. Novick D, Schwartsburd B, Pinkus R, et al. A novel IL-18BP ELISA shows elevated serum il-18BP in sepsis and extensive decrease of free IL-18. *Cytokine*. 2001;14:334–342. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11497494
191. Novick D, Elbirt D, Dinarello CA, et al. Interleukin-18 binding protein in the sera of patients with Wegener's granulomatosis. *J Clin Immunol*. 2009;29:38–45. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18594952
192. Novick D, Elbirt D, Miller G, et al. High circulating levels of free interleukin-18 in patients with active SLE in the presence of elevated levels of interleukin-18 binding protein. *J Autoimmun*. 2011;34:121–126. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19699611
193. Bufler P, Azam T, Gamboni-Robertson F, et al. A complex of the IL-1 homologue IL-1F7b and IL-18-binding protein reduces IL-18 activity. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2002;99:13723–13728. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12381835
194. Nold MF, Nold-Petry CA, Zepp JA, et al. IL-37 is a fundamental inhibitor of innate immunity. *Nat Immunol*. 2010;11:1014–1022. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20935647
195. McNamee EN, Masterson JC, Jedlicka P, et al. Interleukin 37 expression protects mice from colitis. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2011;108:16711–16716. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21873195
196. Banda NK, Vondracek A, Kraus D, et al. Mechanisms of inhibition of collagen-induced arthritis by murine IL-18 binding protein. *J Immunol*. 2003;170:2100–2105. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12574381
197. Muhl H, Kampfer H, Bosmann M, et al. Interferon-gamma mediates gene expression of IL-18 binding protein in nonleukocytic cells. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun*. 2000;267:960–963. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10673399
198. Hurgin V, Novick D, Rubinstein M. The promoter of IL-18 binding protein: activation by an IFN-gamma-induced complex of IFN regulatory factor 1 and CCAAT/enhancer binding protein beta. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2002;99:16957–16962. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12482935
199. Kaser A, Novick D, Rubinstein M, et al. Interferon-alpha induces interleukin-18 binding protein in chronic hepatitis C patients. *Clin Exp Immunol*. 2002;129:332–338. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12165091
200. Ludwiczek O, Kaser A, Novick D, et al. Plasma levels of interleukin-18 and interleukin-18 binding protein are elevated in patients with chronic liver disease. *J Clin Immunol*. 2002;22:331–337. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12462332
201. Wittmann M, Bachmann M, Doble R, et al. IL-27 regulates IL-18 binding protein in skin resident cells. *PLoS One*. 2012;7:e38751. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22761702
202. Xiang Y, Moss B. Correspondence of the functional epitopes of poxvirus and human interleukin-18-binding proteins. *J Virol*. 2001;75:9947–9954. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11559827
203. Nold M, Hauser IA, Hofler S, et al. IL-18BPa:Fc cooperates with immunosuppressive drugs in human whole blood. *Biochem Pharmacol*. 2003;66:505–510. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12907250
204. Sharma S, Kulk N, Nold MF, et al. The IL-1 family member 7b translocates to the nucleus and down-regulates proinflammatory cytokines. *J Immunol*. 2008;180:5477–5482. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18390730
205. Grimsby S, Jaensson H, Dubrovska A, et al. Proteomics-based identification of proteins interacting with Smad3: SREBP-2 forms a complex with Smad3 and inhibits its transcriptional activity. *FEBS Lett*. 2004;577:93–100. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15527767
206. Pan G, Risser P, Mao W, et al. IL-1H, an interleukin 1-related protein that binds IL-18 receptor/IL- 1Rrp. *Cytokine*. 2001;13:1–7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11145836
207. Nold MF, Nold-Petry CA, Zepp JA, et al. Interleukin 37 exerts its anti-inflammatory functions by associating with IL-18R alpha and SIGIRR. *Cytokine*. 2011;56:12.
208. Nold-Petry CA, Nold MF, Nielsen JW, et al. Increased cytokine production in interleukin-18 receptor alpha-deficient cells is associated with dysregulation of suppressors of cytokine signaling. *J Biol Chem*. 2009;284:25900–25911. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19592492
209. Smith DE, Lipsky BP, Russell C, et al. A central nervous system-restricted isoform of the interleukin-1 receptor accessory protein modulates neuronal responses to interleukin-1. *Immunity*. 2009;30:817–831. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19481478
210. Garlanda C, Anders HJ, Mantovani A. TIR8/SIGIRR: an IL-1R/TLR family member with regulatory functions in inflammation and T cell polarization. *Trends Immunol*. 2009;30:439–446. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19699681
211. Dinarello C, Arend W, Sims J, et al. IL-1 family nomenclature. *Nat Immunol*. 2010;11:973. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20959797
212. Towne JE, Garka KE, Renshaw BR, et al. Interleukin (IL)-1F6, IL-1F8, and IL-1F9 signal through IL-1Rrp2 and IL-1RAcP to activate the pathway leading to NF-kappaB and MAPKs. *J Biol Chem*. 2004;279:13677–13688. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14734551
213. Ichii O, Otsuka S, Sasaki N, et al. Local overexpression of interleukin-1 family, member 6 relates to the development of tubulointerstitial lesions. *Lab Invest*. 2010;90:459–475. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20101239
214. Chustz RT, Nagarkar DR, Poposki JA, et al. Regulation and function of the IL-1 family cytokine IL-1F9 in human bronchial epithelial cells. *Am J Respir Cell Mol Biol*. 2011;45:145–153. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20870894
215. Magne D, Palmer G, Barton JL, et al. The new IL-1 family member IL-1F8 stimulates production of inflammatory mediators by synovial fibroblasts and articular chondrocytes. *Arthritis Res Ther*. 2006;8:R80. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16646978
216. Debets R, Timans JC, Homey B, et al. Two novel IL-1 family members, IL-1 delta and IL-1 epsilon, function as an antagonist and agonist of NF-kappa B activation through the orphan IL-1 receptor-related protein 2. *J Immunol*. 2001;167:1440–1446. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11466363
217. Vigne S, Palmer G, Lamacchia C, et al. IL-36R ligands are potent regulators of dendritic and T cells. *Blood*. 2011;118:5813–5823. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21860022
218. Blumberg H, Dinh H, Trueblood ES, et al. Opposing activities of two novel members of the IL-1 ligand family regulate skin inflammation. *J Exp Med*. 2007;204:2603–2614. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17908936

219. Johnston A, Xing X, Guzman AM, et al. IL-1F5, -F6, -F8, and -F9: a novel IL-1 family signaling system that is active in psoriasis and promotes keratinocyte antimicrobial peptide expression. *J Immunol*. 2011;186:2613–2622. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21242515
220. Muhr P, Zeitvogel J, Heitland I, et al. Expression of interleukin (IL)-1 family members upon stimulation with IL-17 differs in keratinocytes derived from patients with psoriasis and healthy donors. *Br J Dermatol*. 2011;165:189–193. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21410667
221. Lian LH, Milora KA, Manupipatpong KK, et al. The double-stranded RNA analogue polyinosinic-polycytidylic acid induces keratinocyte pyroptosis and release of IL-36gamma. *J Invest Dermatol*. 2012;132:1346–1353. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22318382
222. Carrier Y, Ma HL, Ramon HE, et al. Inter-regulation of Th17 cytokines and the IL-36 cytokines in vitro and in vivo: implications in psoriasis pathogenesis. *J Invest Dermatol*. 2011;131:2428–2437. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21881584
223. Towne J, Sims J. IL-36 in psoriasis. *Curr Opin Pharmacol*. 2012;12(4):486–490. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22398321
224. van Asseldonk EJ, Stienstra R, Koenen TB, et al. The effect of the interleukin-1 cytokine family members IL-1F6 and IL-1F8 on adipocyte differentiation. *Obesity*. 2010;18:2234–2236. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20300079
225. Costelloe C, Watson M, Murphy A, et al. IL-1F5 mediates anti-inflammatory activity in the brain through induction of IL-4 following interaction with SIGIRR/TIR8. *J Neurochem*. 2008;105:1960–1969. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18284608
226. Aksentijevich I, Masters SL, Ferguson PJ, et al. An autoinflammatory disease with deficiency of the interleukin-1-receptor antagonist. *N Engl J Med*. 2009;360:2426–2437. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19494218
227. Reddy S, Jia S, Geoffrey R, et al. An autoinflammatory disease due to homozygous deletion of the IL1RN locus. *N Engl J Med*. 2009;360:2438–2444. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19494219
228. Onoufriadis A, Simpson MA, Pink AE, et al. Mutations in IL36RN/IL1F5 are associated with the severe episodic inflammatory skin disease known as generalized pustular psoriasis. *Am J Hum Genet*. 2011;89:432–437. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21839423
229. Marrakchi S, Guigue P, Renshaw BR, et al. Interleukin-36-receptor antagonist deficiency and generalized pustular psoriasis. *N Engl J Med*. 2011;365:620–628. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21848462

CHAPTER 27

Tumor Necrosis Factor–Related Cytokines in Immunity

Carl F. Ware

INTRODUCTION

Lymphocytes are highly mobile, transiting the vascular and lymphatic circulatory systems with limited stopovers in organized lymphoid tissues (lymph nodes, spleen, and Peyer's patches) in which they commune to initiate immune responses. Cytokines, both secreted and membrane-anchored proteins, serve as the communication media of the immune system. Cytokines in the tumor necrosis factor (TNF) superfamily (TNFSF) help orchestrate the development, homeostasis, and effector actions of cells in the immune system. The diversification of the TNFSF is evidenced by its roles in regulating cells of neuronal, skeletal, and ectodermal origin. This chapter's focus is on members in the TNFSF that are primarily involved in regulating immunity.

The ligands belonging to the TNFSF initiate intercellular communication by binding specific receptors on the surface of the receiving cell. The TNF-related ligands are membrane-bound and require cell-cell contact to initiate signaling, although some ligands may be secreted in soluble form influencing cellular responses at locations distant from the source of production. The TNF receptors (TNFRs) form a corresponding superfamily of cognate membrane proteins that initiate intracellular signaling pathways that influence cellular growth, differentiation, and survival. Each ligand-receptor pair forms a "system" with over 40 distinct ligand-receptor systems. Many of the ligands and receptors engage more than one cognate, thereby forming "circuits" of signaling systems, which often function together as coordinated or integrated networks with other cytokines to regulate a specific cellular process. The signals delivered to the cytosol activate transcription factors such as NF-κB and AP1, which in turn initiate the expression of hundreds of genes that alter cellular differentiation. Additionally, some TNFRs activate cell death pathways, both apoptotic and necrotic, terminating cellular life. Genetic mutations have revealed the importance of individual TNFSF members in human immune responses and development. Moreover, the beneficial effect of TNF antagonists in patients with certain autoimmune diseases brings the need to understand the complexities of the TNFSF into sharp focus.

The nomenclature of the TNFSF is a bit of a morass for students new to the field, although introduction of a numerical system standardizing gene names (www.genenames.org/) helps in accessing genomic databases. However, the use of more common, often colorful, acronyms continues. The name, rank, and genomic identification of each ligand (Table 27.1) and receptor (Table 27.2) is tabulated along with additional pertinent information for human and mouse genes.

TUMOR NECROSIS FACTOR LIGAND FAMILY

The TNF-related cytokines are type II transmembrane proteins (intracellular N-terminus) with a short cytoplasmic tail (15 to 25 residues in length) and a larger extracellular region (~150 amino acids) containing the signature TNF homology domain where the receptor binding sites are located (Fig. 27.1). The TNF homology domain assembles into trimers, the functional unit of the ligand. Atomic analysis of several members of the family[1–5] revealed the ligands have a highly conserved tertiary structure folding into a β sheet sandwich, yet amino acid sequence conservation is limited to < 35% among the family members. The conserved residues defining this superfamily are primarily located within the internal β strands that form the molecular scaffold, which promote assembly into trimers. The residues in the loops between the external β-strands are variable and in specific loops make contact with the receptor. Although most of the TNF ligands self-assemble into homotrimers, heterotrimers can also form between LTα and LTβ[6] and APRIL and BAFF.[7] The stoichiometry of the LT heterotrimer is 1:2 (LTαβ2), which imparts its distinct receptor specificity from the LTα homotrimer. Interestingly, complement component C1q and several related proteins are structurally related to the TNF family, containing a TNF homology domain, a rather surprising finding given the apparent functional divergence between the complement and TNF systems.[8] Alternate splicing can also generate distinct ligands, such as the splice form joining TWEAK and APRIL (TWE-PRIL),[9] the alternate ligands for ectodysplasin receptor,[10] and a cytosolic form of LIGHT.[11]

The genetic organization of TNF ligands is highly conserved and typically encoded in three or four exons, with the fourth exon encoding most of the extracellular TNF homology domain. The genes encoding TNF, LTβ, and LTα reside adjacent to each other in a compact loci in the class III region of the major histocompatibility complex (MHC) (in humans at chromosome 6p21) sandwiched between the antigenic-peptide presenting MHC proteins encoded by MHC class I and II genes.[6,12] Three other genetic clusters of TNF-related cytokines are found within the corresponding MHC paralogous regions, located on chromosomes 1, 9, and 19. These genetic clusters share a remarkably conserved gene structure and transcriptional orientation, and a similar function linked to regulating cellular immune responses.[11] The evolutionary pressures retaining this genetic configuration of the MHC in general is encompassed in the paralogy theory of genome

TABLE 27.1 Tumor Necrosis Factor Superfamily Chromosomal Locations

Gene Name/ Alias	Chromosomal Location: Human	Chromosomal Location: Mouse	Ligand Symbol
TNF	6p21.3	ch17 (19.06 cm)	TNFSF1A
LTα	6p21.3	ch17 (19.06 cm)	TNFSF1B
LTβ	6p21.3	ch17 (19.06 cm)	TNFSF3
OX40-L	1q25	ch1 (84.90 cM)	TNFSF4
CD40-L, CD154	Xq26	chX (18.0 cM)	TNFSF5
Fas-L	1q23	ch1 (85.0 cM)	TNFSF6
CD27-L, CD70	19p13	ch17 (20.0 cM)	TNFSF7
CD30-L, CD153	9q33	ch4 (32.20 cM)	TNFSF8
4-1BB-L	19p13	ch17 (20.0 cM)	TNFSF9
TRAIL	3q26	ch3	TNFSF10
RANK-L, TRANCE	13q14	ch14 (45.0 cM)	TNFSF11
TWEAK	17p13	ch11	TNFSF12
APRIL/TALL2	17P13.1	ch13	TNFSF13
BAFF, BLYS, TALL1	13q32-q34	ch8 (3 cM)	TNFSF13B
LIGHT	19p13.3	ch17 (D-E1)	TNFSF14
TL1A	9q33	ch4 (31.80 cM)	TNFSF15
G1TRL, A1TRL	1q23	Unknown	TNFSF18
EDA1	Xq12-q13.1	chX (37.0 cM)	EDA1
EDA2	Xq12-q13.1	cX (37.0 cM)	EDA2

CD, cluster of differentiation; LT, lymphotoxin; TNF, tumor necrosis factor; TNFSF, tumor necrosis factor superfamily; TRAIL, TMF-related apoptosis inducing ligand.
From Ware CF. The TNF superfamily-2008. *Cytokine Growth Factor Rev.* 2008;19:183–186.

TABLE 27.2 Tumor Necrosis Factor Receptor Superfamily

Gene Name/ Aliases	Chromosomal Location: Human	Chromosomal Location: Mouse	Gene Symbol
TNFR-1, p55-60	12p13.2	ch6 (60.55 cM)	TNFRSF1A
TNFR2, p75-80	1p36.3-36.2	ch4 (75.5 cM)	TNFRSF1B
LTβR	12p13	ch6 (60.4 cM)	LTβR
OX40	1p36	ch4 (79.4 cM)	TNFRSF4
CD40	20q12-q13.2	ch2 (97.0 cM)	CD40
FAS, CD95	10q24.1	ch19 (23.0 cM)	TNFRSF6
DcR3	20q13	unknown	TNFRSF6B
CD27	12p13	ch6 (60.35)	TNFRSF7
CD30	1p36	ch4 (75.5 cM)	TNFRSF8
4-1BB	1p36	ch4 (75.5 cM)	TNFRSF9
TRAILR-1, DR4	8p21	Unknown	TNRSF10A
TRAIL-R2, DR5	8p22-p21	ch14 (D1)	TNFRSF10B
TRAILR3, DcR1	8p22-p21	ch7 (69.6 cM)	TNFRSF10C
TRAILR4, DcR2	8p21	ch7 (69.6 cM)	TNFRSF10D
RANK, TRANCE-R	18q22.1	ch1	TNFRSF11A
OPG, TR1	8q24	ch15	TNFRSF11B
FN14	16p13.3	ch17	TNFRSF12A
TRAMP, DR3, LARD	1p36.3	ch4 (E1)	TNFRSF25
TACI	17p11.2	ch11	TNFRSF13B
BAFFR	22q13.1-q13.31	ch15	TNFRSF13C
HVEM, HveA, ATAR	1p36.3-p36.3	ch4	TNFRSF14
P75NTR, NGFR	17q12-q22	ch11 (55.6 cM)	TNFRSF16
BCMA	16p13.1	ch16 (B3)	TNFRSF17
AITR, GITR	1p36.3	ch4 (E)	TNFRSF18
RELT	11q13.2	unknown	TNFRSF19L
TROY, TAJ	13q12.11-q12.3	ch14	TNFRSF19
EDAR	2q11-q13	ch10	EDAR1
EDA2R	Xq11.1	ch X	EDA2R
DR6	6P12.2-21.1	ch17	TNFRSF21
IGFLR1, Tmem149	19q13.12	ch7	IGFLR1

CD, cluster of differentiation; HVEM, herpesvirus entry mediator; LT, lymphotoxin; OPG, osteoprotegerin; TNFR, tumor necrosis factor receptor; TNFRSF, tumor necrosis factor receptor superfamily; TRAIL, TMF-related apoptosis inducing ligand.
From Ware CF. The TNF superfamily-2008. *Cytokine Growth Factor Rev.* 2008;19:183–186.

evolution.[13] Conservation of gene structure of the TNF ligands outside these MHC paralogs is limited. An evolutionarily conserved pathway in *Drosophila melanogaster*, Eiger-Wengen system, is structurally and functionally related to the TNFSF-related signaling pathway, although this system is predominantly expressed in the nervous system in invertebrates.[14–16]

TUMOR NECROSIS FACTOR RECEPTOR FAMILY

Members of the TNF receptor superfamily (TNFRSF) include proteins of vertebrate and viral origin. Most of the signaling receptors in the TNFRSF are type I transmembrane glycoproteins (N-terminus exterior to the cell). However, several TNFRSF members lack a membrane-anchor domain, are proteolytically cleaved from the surface, or are anchored via glycolipid linkage (eg, TNF-related apoptosis inducing ligand [TRAIL]R3). These soluble receptors, termed "decoy receptors," retain their ligand-binding properties and compete with cellular receptors for the specific ligands, thus earning the title of decoy. The structural motifs in the cytoplasmic domains further categorize the TNFR into two groups based on their signaling properties: those contain a death domain (DD) and others that engage TNFR-associated factors (TRAFs).

The cysteine-rich domain (CRD) in the extracellular, ligand-binding region defines membership in the TNFRSF (see Fig. 27.1). Each CRD typically contains six cysteine residues forming three disulfide bonds. The CRD is pseudorepeated in different members ranging from one to six. Based upon the crystal structures solved for several TNFRSF members, the CRD confers an elongated shape and sidedness to the ectodomain.[17,18] The crystal structure of the complex between TNFR1 and one of its ligands, the LTα homotrimer, revealed

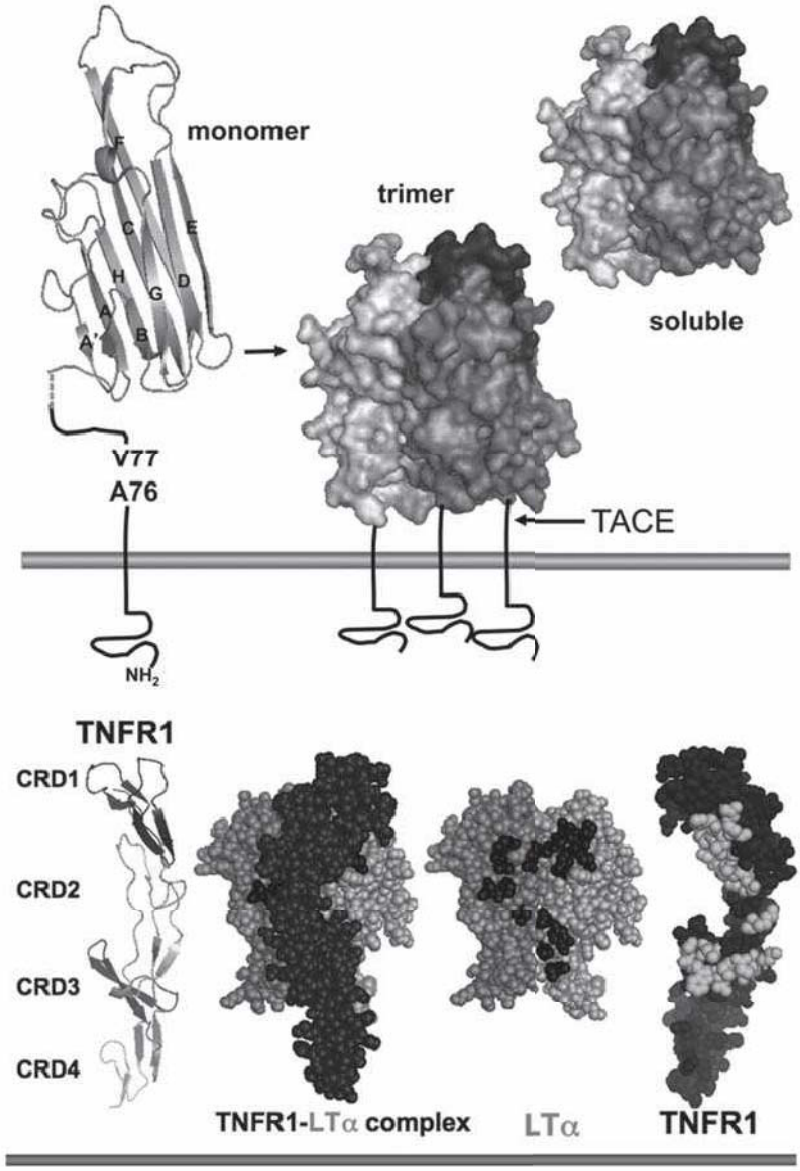


FIG. 27.1. Structure of Tumor Necrosis Factor (TNF) and TNF Receptors (TNFRs). **Top:** TNF. The β-sandwich of the TNF monomer (1A8M.pdf) (shown as a *ribbon diagram*) contains two stacked β-pleated sheets each formed by five antiparallel β strands (*wide ribbons given letter designations, A–G*) that fold into a Greek key or "jelly-roll" topology.[219] The inner β-sheet (strands A, A′, H, C, and F) is involved in contacts between adjacent subunits, which promotes assembly into a trimer. The trimer is formed such that one edge of each subunit is packed against the inner sheet of its neighbor. The outer β sheet (strands B, B′, D, E, and G) is surface exposed. The trimeric structure is characteristic of all TNF-related ligands. The type II configuration of TNF (N-terminus inside the cell) anchors TNF to the membrane. The TNF trimer is ~60 Å in height with a relatively flat base residing close to the membrane, resembling a bell-shape (shown as surface representation with *different shades of gray* used for each subunit of the trimer). The surface exposed loops between A-A′ and D-E strands are involved in receptor binding. TNF is cleaved by TNFα-converting enzyme (TACE), a member of the ADAM family of metalloproteinases (ADAM17) involved in processing of many cell surface proteins. TACE is a type 1 transmembrane protein that cleaves TNF between residues Val77 and Ala76, when all three sites in the trimer are cleaved TNF is released from the membrane. **Bottom:** TNFR and ligand complex. The ectodomain of TNFR1 forms an elongated molecule with CRD1 proximal to the N-terminus (*ribbon diagram*). The face of TNFR1 on the left engages LTα. In the ligand-receptor complex, the elongated receptor (*dark*) lies along the cleft formed between adjacent subunits. Shown (space-filling) is a single TNFR1 in complex with two subunits of LTα (*lighter shades*); the receptor N-terminus points upward, closest to the base of the ligand (transorientation). In the exploded view, TNFR1 is removed from in front of the ligand revealing the contact residues in the ligand, which are primarily located in the D–E and the A-A″ β-strands (*dark shade*). TNFR1 is rotated 180 degrees, exposing the contact residues in the receptor (*light shade*). Structures from 1TRN.pdf[17] as visualized with MacPyMOL (www.pymol.org).

that residues in CRD2 and 3 of TNFR1 contact the ligand. Variation in binding interactions has been identified; for example, the receptors for BAFF have one functional CRD.[2,19]

RECEPTOR-LIGAND COMPLEX

The binding specificity of the various members of the TNF ligand and receptor superfamilies show monotypic interaction, yet several members interact with multiple partners[20] (Figs. 27.2 and 27.3). The binding interactions between TNF-related ligands and TNFR are typically high affinity, with equilibrium binding constants measured in the high pM to low nM range. The membrane position of the ligands further enhances the binding interaction with their receptors. In the membrane anchored position, the ligands and receptors must be in trans to form a complex. In the LTα-TNFR1 complex, the surface loops between A-A″ and D-E β strands contain many of the amino acid residues that make contact with the receptor, with the receptor binding site formed as a composite of adjoining subunits in the trimeric ligand[17] (see Fig. 27.1).

The trimeric architecture of the TNF ligands, containing three equivalent receptor-binding sites, provides the basis for initiating signaling through aggregation or clustering of receptors. This concept is supported by the finding that receptor-specific bivalent antibodies can act as agonists mimicking the signaling activity of the natural ligand.[21] Indeed, antibodies or peptide mimetic to TNFR can function as antagonists, blocking the ability of the natural ligand to bind the receptor while simultaneously activating the receptor as an agonist.[22] Some ligands such as FasL, TRAIL, and BAFF form higher ordered oligomers of the basic trimer. These higher ordered oligomers promote supraaggregation of receptors, enhancing or sustaining signaling pathways in the receptor-bearing cell.[23,24] Overexpression of TNFR in cells can also lead to ligand-independent signaling, a

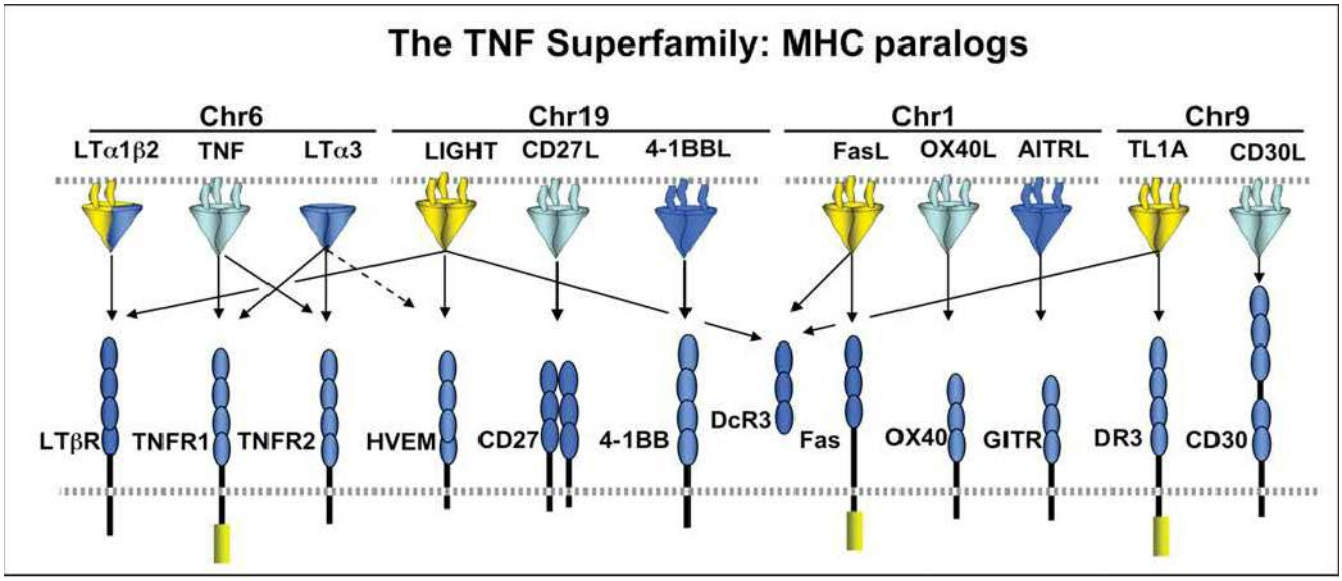


FIG. 27.2. The Tumor Necrosis Factor (TNF) Superfamily–Major Histocompatibility Complex (MHC) Paralogs. Members of the TNF ligand superfamily (*above*) and their corresponding receptors (*below*) are identified by connecting *arrows*. The ligands are grouped according to their chromosomal locations in the MHC paralogous regions. The number of cysteine-rich domains are depicted for each TNF receptor, and TNF receptors containing a death domain are identified by cylinder in the cytoplasmic tail. (Modified from Ware[336]).

feature bestowed in part by the propensity of the cytosolic tails to self-associate.[25] In the physiologic setting, the expression level and compartmentalization of these receptors are tightly controlled. A subregion in the first CRD of TNFR1 known as the preligand assembly domain may restrict the orientation of the unligated receptor to prevent spontaneous activation.[26] It is not known if this mechanism applies to all TNFRSF. Interestingly, some patients with periodic fever syndrome have mutant TNFR1 that form abnormal disulfide-linked oligomers that are retained intracellullarly and provoke misfolded protein response.[27]

Alternate Ligands

There is significant divergence in the ligands and the mechanisms of ligand binding by the TNFR family. A major branch point is exemplified by the ligands for p75 neurotrophin receptor (nerve growth factor and the other neurotrophins), which are structurally unrelated to TNF ligand family. Molecular contacts between NGF and p75NTR occur through two spatially separated binding regions located at the first and second CRD and the junction between the CRD3 and CRD4.[28] The p75NTR functions in complex with two other proteins, Nogo66 and LINGO, to engage myelin-associated inhibitory factors. Taj/TROY can supplant p75NTR in this complex.[29] Like p75 NTR, DR6, ILGF1R, and TROY/Taj do not bind any of the known TNF ligands but do engage other ligands. The pathways activated by p75NTR and TROY/Taj systems show both positive and inhibitory regulation of axonal regeneration.[29,30]

The herpesvirus entry mediator (HVEM; TNFRSF14) provides an example of a TNFR system that binds alternate ligands. Although HVEM engages two TNF-related ligands, LIGHT and LTα, it also engages two members of immunoglobulin (Ig) superfamily, B- and T-lymphocyte attenuator (BTLA)[31] and cluster of differentiation (CD)160.[32] BTLA binding to HVEM occurs in CRD1, on the opposite face of where LIGHT/LTα bind in CRD2 and 3. The BTLA binding site in CRD1 of HVEM is a region also targeted by herpesviruses.[33–35] Recent evidence indicates the neurotrophin and chondrocyte growth factor–like protein progranulin interacts with TNFR1 and TNFR2 and competes with TNF for binding.[36]

An insulin growth factor–like protein was recently identified as a ligand for a TNFR-like type 1 transmembrane protein (insulin growth factor–like R, formerly TMEM149).[37] Insulin growth factor–like R has conserved positioning of cysteines delineating a CRD1, but atypical CRD2/3. Insulin growth factor–like messenger ribonucleic acid (mRNA) is expressed in psoriatic skin lesions and the receptor is detected in T cells suggesting a possible role in skin inflammation.

Death receptor-6 (DR6) engages the growth factor–like domain in β-amyloid precursor protein[38,39] and thus may function as a negative regulator more like p75 neurotrophin receptor.[40] Emerging evidence suggests DR6 has a role in neuroimmune function. In a mouse experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis (EAE) model, DR6-deficiency was shown to protect against central nervous system demyelination and leukocyte infiltration, but also enhanced overall CD4+ T-cell proliferation and T_H2 differentiation, underscoring a role for DR6 in mediating T_H1-specific immune responses in EAE progression.[41] Taj/TROY and RELT also do not bind any of the known TNFSF ligands; however, recent evidence indicates that Taj/TROY functions more like p75NTR, capable of binding myelin inhibitory factors.[29,30] A role for Taj/TROY and RELT in immune function is presently unclear.

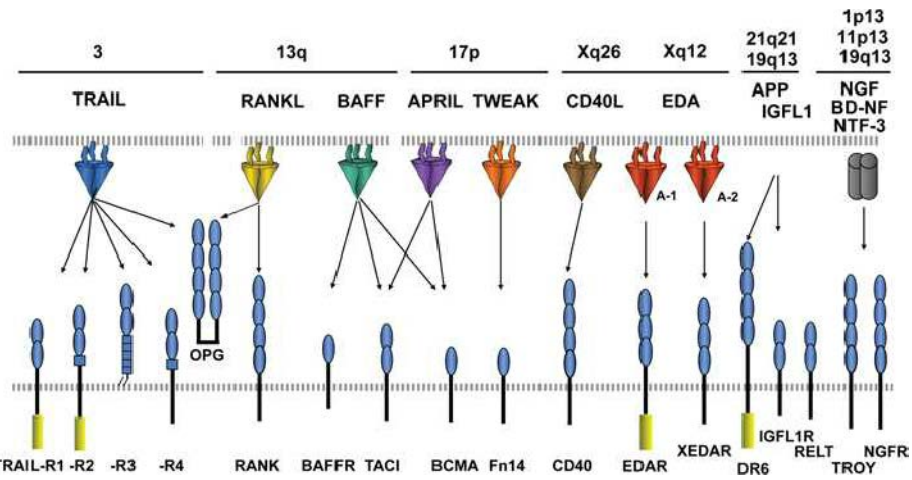


FIG. 27.3. The Tumor Necrosis Factor (TNF) Superfamily—Part 2. Members of the TNF ligand superfamily (*above*) and their corresponding receptors (*below*) are identified by connecting *arrows*. The ligands are grouped according to their chromosomal locations. The number of cysteine-rich domains are depicted for each TNF receptor, and TNF receptors containing a death domain are identified by cylinder in the cytoplasmic tail. (Modified from Ware[336]).

The engagement of ligands distinct from TNFSF members implicates a higher level of integration with other signaling pathways.

Viral Orthologs

TNFR-like proteins are found in the genomes of several viral pathogens representing captured cellular genes that have evolved as part of that pathogen's immune evasion strategy (Table 27.3). Poxviruses were the first pathogens identified harboring a version of a cellular TNFR.[43] Poxvirus TNFR displays significant sequence homology to TNFR2 and binds TNF and LTα. The rabbit poxvirus protein T2 is secreted by virally infected cells and contributes to the virulence of infection.[44,45] Smallpox virus, the former scourge of mankind, also harbored viral versions of TNFR2.[46]

SIGNALING PATHWAYS AND CELLULAR RESPONSES

Regulation

The cellular response activated by a TNF-related cytokine depends on several factors including the temporal patterns of expression of the ligands and receptors on the interacting cells, and the cellular context (the state of differentiation of the responding cell). Regulation is achieved at the level of transcriptional and translational controls, and by modulating the availability of the ligand or receptors (Fig. 27.4). For some ligands, transcriptional activation is a critical feature controlling the duration of mRNA expression. Some ligands exhibit inducible, transient expression of mRNA following signals from antigen receptors or innate receptor recognition systems. The half-life of mRNA

TABLE 27.3 Viral Orthologs and Modulators of the Tumor Necrosis Factor Superfamily

Virus	Name/ORF	Ortholog[a]	Mechanism
Poxvirus			
Myxoma	T2	Soluble TNFR2	TNF and LTα decoy
Variola	crm B (G2R)	Soluble TNFR2	TNF and LTα decoy
Cowpox	vCD30	Soluble CD30	CD30 ligand inhibitor
Herpesvirus			
HSV1&2	Glycoprotein D	BTLA	Entry; HVEM blockade
HCMV	UL144	HVEM	BTLA activation
EBV	LMP1	CD40 intracellular	TRAF activation
γHV	vFLIP	FLIP	Caspase 8 blockade
Adenovirus	E3-10.4, 14.5, 6.7	?	Fas and TRAILR downmodulation
Retrovirus			
EIAV	Envelope gp90	?	HVEM entry factor
FIV	Envelope gp95	?	Ox40 entry factor
ASLV	Envelope gp85	?	TRAILR entry factor
Rabies virus	Envelope RVG	?	NTRp75 entry factor

ASLV, avian sarcosis and leukosis virus; BTLA, B- and T-lymphocyte attenuator; CD, cluster of differentiation; EBV, Epstein-Barr virus; HCMV, human cytomegalovirus; HSV, herpes simplex virus; γHV, equine gamma herpesvirus; EIAV, equine infectious anemia virus; FIV, feline immunodeficiency virus; TNFR, tumor necrosis factor receptor; TRAF, TNFR-associated factor; TRAIL, TMF-related apoptosis inducing ligand; ?, no homology recognized.
[a]Relationship determined by sequence or structural homology to the indicated TNF superfamily member.

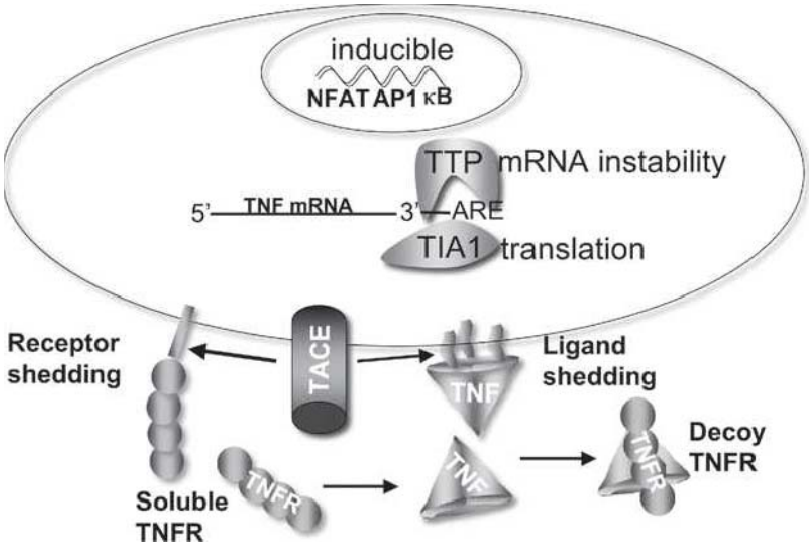


FIG. 27.4. Regulation of Tumor Necrosis Factor (TNF) Bioavailability. The expression of TNF is regulated at the transcriptional and translational levels, and bioavailability by altering its physical location and cellular receptors. TNF transcription is regulated by the action of multiple transcription factors including nuclear factors of activated T cells (NFAT), activated protein-1 (AP1), and NF-κB. NFAT is a predominant acting transcription factor regulating TNF transcription in T- and B-lymphocytes, and NF-κB and AP1 are important in myeloid lineage cells following activation via innate pattern recognition receptors, such as the toll-like receptors. TNF messenger ribonucleic acid (mRNA) stability is controlled by an adenylate-uridylate–rich element (ARE) in the 3′ untranslated region present in many transiently expressed inflammatory genes.[337] Stability of TNF mRNA is decreased by the action of tristetraprolin, and T-cell intracellular antigen silences translation of TNF mRNA through the ARE.[338] TACE proteolytically controls TNF at the membrane, generating the soluble form of TNF. TACE also cleaves TNFR1 and 2,[339] downregulating cell surface receptors and releasing soluble receptors that retain TNF binding activity. Soluble TNFR can stabilize the TNF trimer at sub saturating concentrations, and at higher, saturating concentrations act as decoys competing for TNF binding to cellular receptors.[340]

for TNF is short, controlled by an adenylate-uridylate–rich element in the 3′ untranslated region.[47] Deletion of the adenylate-uridylate–rich element in TNF mRNA in mice leads to a profound inflammatory disease.[47,48] TNF mRNA is inducible in macrophages by multiple pathways, particularly innate activation pathways such as toll-like receptor signaling, whereas other ligands like 41BBL and OX40L are constitutively expressed in differentiated antigen-presenting dendritic cells (DCs). T- and B-lymphocytes require activation prior to expression of TNF. In these cells, signals via the antigen receptor utilizing nuclear factor of activated T cells (NFAT) transcription factors are needed for the induction of TNF transcription. The inducible or constitutive patterns of expression are also observed with some receptors as well.

Posttranslational regulation of signaling is achieved by proteolytic cleavage of the ligand or receptor from the cell's surface, which places the protein into the soluble phase, where its half-life may be dramatically shortened. TNF and Fas ligand, for example, are shed from the surface by membrane proteases. ADAM17 (also known as TNFα-converting enzyme [TACE]), the enzyme that processes TNF into a soluble form, is involved in cleaving multiple cell surface proteins including transforming growth factor α, L-selectin, and TNFR1 and 2. Production of soluble TNFR1 and 2 may be important in regulating TNF bioavailability (see Fig. 27.4).

Most of the TNF-related ligands are expressed by DCs, activated lymphocytes, and myeloid cells, particularly macrophages, but can also be produced by nonlymphoid cells. TNF is an example of a ligand expressed by many cell types depending on the stimulus. Expression of TNFR is widespread. TNFR1 is expressed on most cells, while TNFR2 is limited to cells of hematopoietic origin and is expressed following activation of B or T cells. Macrophages are a primary source of TNF in response to toll-like receptor signaling, and T cells produce TNF when activated by antigenic stimuli. Fibroblasts also produce TNF in response to virus infection, and nonlymphoid tumor cells may ectopically express TNF. FasL is another example of a ligand with a varied cellular expression pattern. FasL is expressed by effector T cells and natural killer (NK) cells as a component of their cell lytic activity, yet FasL mRNA is also detected in reproductive organs and epithelium of the eye, which may use this TNFSF member to kill organ infiltrating inflammatory cells as a mechanism to dampen inflammation.

Signal Transduction Pathways

TNF receptors initiate signaling pathways that alter gene expression patterns, changing the differentiation status of a cell, as well as apoptotic pathways that terminate cellular life. The propagation of signals from receptor to enzymatically active proteins is mediated by two distinct types of signaling motifs in the cytosolic domain of the TNFR: DDs and TRAF-binding motifs. TNFR that contain a DD include Fas, TNFR1, DR3, and TRAILR1 and 2. Other TNFRs have TRAF recruitment motifs. Three basic schemes are used by TNF receptors to connect to enzymatically-driven signaling pathways (Fig. 27.5A). Adaptor molecules are required to establish the signaling connections between the receptor and signaling enzymes. The DD connects TNFR to cytosolic proteins containing a Death Effector Domain (DED), which in turn link to caspases (cysteine based, aspartic acid specific proteinases). Alternately, the TRAF proteins connect to the cytosolic domain of the TNFR, altering ubiquitin-dependent pathways that regulate key serine kinases that activate NFκB and AP1 transcription factors. The third scheme involves an indirect link between the death domain and TRAFs via the adaptor TNFR-associated death domain (TRADD).

The apoptotic and NF-κB pathways activated by the TNFR family help regulate cellular homeostasis by controlling cell death and survival. In the immune system, apoptosis is essential for homeostasis and for eliminating antigen-bearing cells from the host. Many TNFR can induce activation of survival or death pathways depending in part on the differentiated state of that cell. In all nucleated cells, apoptosis is the default pathway; that is to say, all of the constituents of the pathway are expressed and ready to be activated (Fig. 27.6), whereas cellular survival requires transcriptional control of genes that encode regulatory proteins that suppress the progression of the apoptotic pathway.

Apoptosis

Ligation of TNFR promotes assemble of the death-inducing signaling complex (DISC) that promotes dimerization of procaspase 8 forming an active enzyme complex.[49] Activated caspase 8 acts directly to cleave procaspase 3 and 7, which are known as the executioner caspases as they directly cleave critical cellular substrates leading to apoptotic death. Caspase 8 also cleaves BID, a crucial connector to the mitochondria-associated death mechanism, which greatly amplifies the apoptotic process.[50] A cell must be capable of actively transcribing and translating genes to resist apoptosis signaling. A variety of genes can inhibit apoptosis and cell death pathways. For example, the cellular inhibitor of apoptosis (XIAP) is a direct caspase inhibitor that is regulated at the level of gene expression by transcription factor NF-κB. Another regulator, FLIP (FLICE inhibitory protein), is also an NF-κB–regulated gene that contains a DED and a pseudocaspase domain that attenuates the apoptotic pathway by blocking conversion of procaspase 8 to the active form.[51] Many viral pathogens parasitize the transcriptional capabilities of the cell and prevent the cell from making new survival proteins, allowing apoptosis to proceed. As expected, viruses have evolved many different strategies to alter pro-apoptotic pathways (eg, viral orthologs of XIAP and FLIP prevent premature death of the cell) (see Fig. 27.6).

Cell Survival Signaling

Activation of transcription factors by TNFR utilizes the TRAF adaptors. There are seven members of the TRAF family (given numerical designations) that play key roles in regulating TNFR signaling and activation of host defenses. Each TRAF appears to play different roles in modulating signaling. Each TRAF protein contains a TRAF homology domain that binds TNFR and a RING and/or zinc finger domain characteristic of E3 ubiquitin ligases.[52–54] Ubiquitination plays an essential role in regulating signal transduction by TNFR[55,56] and in the pathogen recognition receptors as part of innate host defenses.[57]

Clustering of the TNFR promotes the recruitment of TRAFs into a complex with the receptor through two different mechanisms. TRAF2, 3, and 5 bind directly to the receptor's cytosolic domain recognizing a consensus PXQS/T motif,[58] whereas TNFR1 uses TRADD to couple to TRAF2. TRAF3 and TRAF6 are preassociated with different proteins, including protein kinases involved in multiple signaling pathways including the pathogen recognition and interferon (IFN) pathways.[53,59] TRAF adaptors link TNFR directly to protein kinase cascades, which in turn lead to activation of transcription factors including NF-κB and AP1.

The NF-κB family of transcription factors control expression of genes critical for cell survival, inflammatory, and immune responses. In mammalian cells, the NF-κB family consists of five members: RelA, RelB, c-Rel, p50/NFκB B1, and p52/NFκB B2 (proteolytic processing of p105 and p100 yields the active forms p50 and p52, respectively).[60,61] Activation of NF-κB releases inhibitors that restrict nuclear translocation.[62] Homo- and heterodimers of NF-κB family members are held inactive in the cytosol by inhibitors of κB (IκB), such as IκBα, that mask nuclear localization motifs on the NF-κB dimers. A complex consisting of the kinase catalytic subunits IKKα and IKKβ and the regulatory/scaffold subunit IKKγ form the IKK complex that mediates phosphorylation and ubiquitination of IκB, leading to its degradation and release of the active transcription factor. IκB is the common target of a variety of signals that control the activation of the RelA NF-κB transcription factor, which in turn regulates expression of many proinflammatory genes within a signal responsive cell.[63]

A distinct pathway regulates the activation of RelB NF-κB through the NF-κB–inducing kinase (NIK) and IKKα kinases. In unstimulated cells, NIK levels are maintained at vanishing low levels by ubiquitination and proteosome degradation through an E3 ligase complex comprised of TRAF3, TRAF2, and CIAP1/2.[52] Receptor ligation releases the active form of NIK by competitively displacing TRAF3, preventing further ubiquitination and allowing NIK to accumulate.[64] NIK phosphorylates IKKα, which induces the proteosome dependent processing of p100 to p52, degrading the inhibitory domain of p100 and allowing the RelB/p52 complex to activate gene transcription.

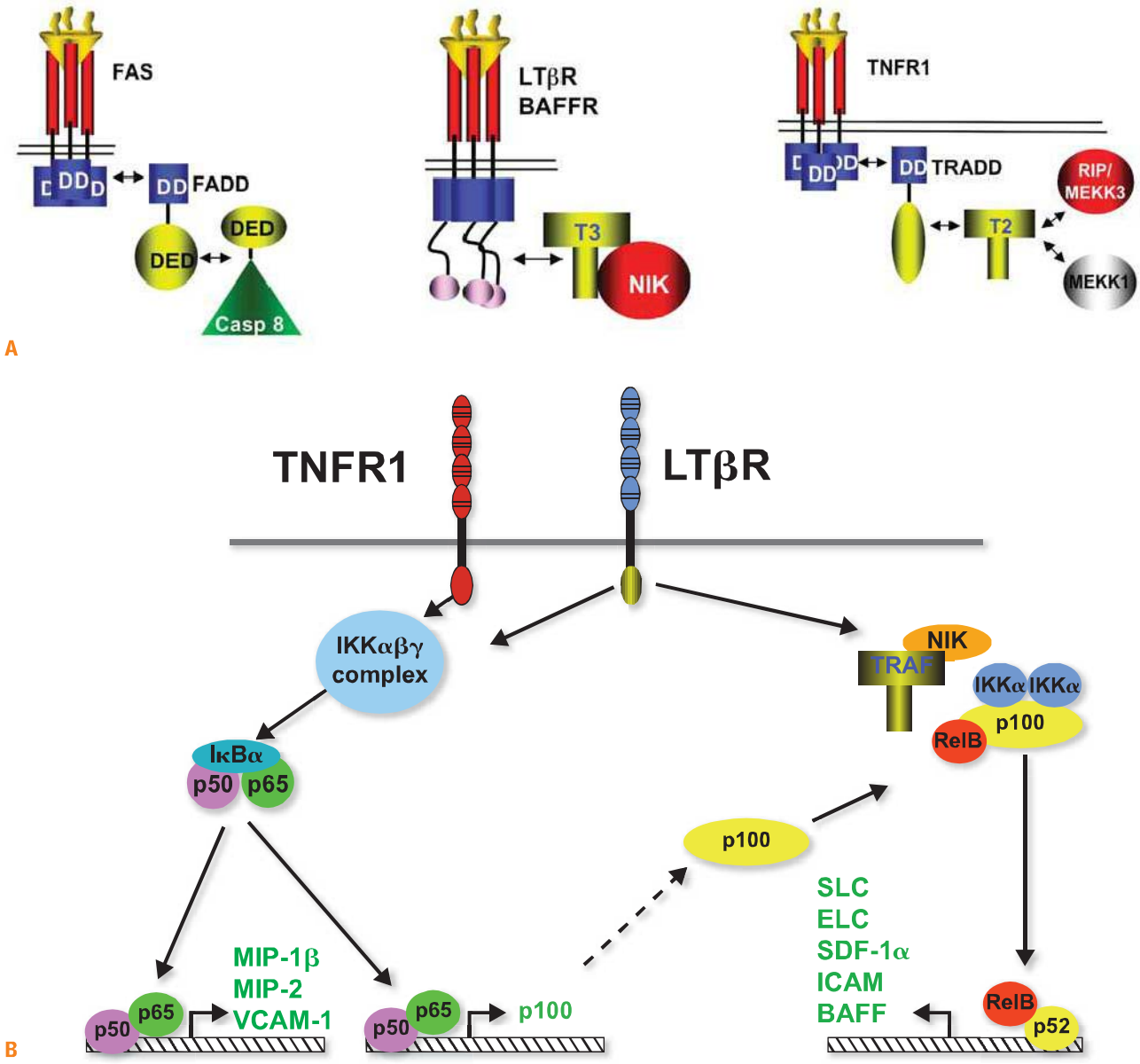


FIG. 27.5. Signaling Pathways and NF-κB. **A:** Adaptors link tumor necrosis factor receptors (TNFRs) to proteinases and kinases (*upper panel*). Three basic schemes link activated TNFRs to signaling pathways: the death inducing signaling complex formed with Fas is initiated by ligand clustering of Fas, promoting death domain (DD) interactions, which recruits Fas-associated death domain (FADD) (heterotypic interaction). The death effector domain of FADD links to the death effector domain of procaspase 8. The proximity of multiple procaspase 8 domains forms an active enzyme that can process other caspase 8 molecules. By contrast, TNFRs bind TNF-associated factor (TRAF) adaptors via short peptide motifs that release TRAF from associated kinases, such as NF-κB–inducing kinase (NIK). The third scheme is a combination of DD and TRAF recruitment. TNFR1 uses the DD protein TRADD to recruit RIP and TRAF2, promoting the activation of NF-κB. There are currently seven TRAF members with distinct interaction patterns with the TNFR family. TRAF proteins may function as regulators of key kinases. TRAF2, 3, and 6 function as modulators of several different kinases involved in toll-like receptor signaling, induction of type 1 interferon responses, and signaling by some TNFR family members. TRAF proteins contain an N-terminal RING finger motif, a coiled coil domain (isoleucine zipper), and the receptor association domain (TRAF) domain. The TRAF are trimers formed through their TRAF and coiled domains. The TRAF domain can bind to several different TNFR through a relatively short proline-anchored sequence that is responsible for binding directly to the mushroom head of various TRAF molecules.[341] The zinc RING of TRAF6 functions together with Ubc13 and Uev1A as ubiquitin E3 ligase targeting proteins for proteosome degradation. TRAF2, 3 and cIAP form the ubiquitin E3 ligase that targets NIK. Modified with permission from Ware CF. Tumor necrosis factors. In: Bertino JR, ed. *Encyclopedia of Cancer*. San Diego, CA: Academic Press, Inc.: 2002;475–489. **B:** NF-κB activation. TNFR1 and LTβR induce distinct forms of the NF-κB family of transcription factors. TNFR1 signaling is a potent activator of RelA/p50 but does not activate the RelB pathway, whereas lymphotoxin βR can activate both. The RelA and RelB forms of the κB family control transcription of distinct sets of genes; however, the two pathways are interrelated through the control of p100 expression by the RelA/p50 complex. Modified from Dejardin et al.[66]

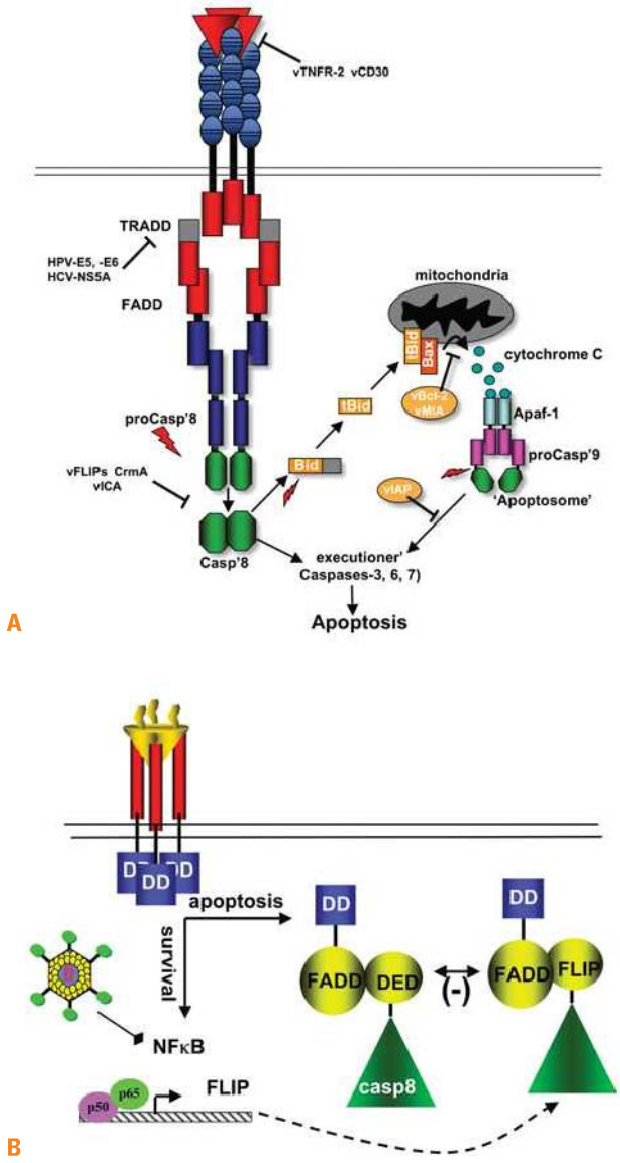


FIG. 27.6. Apoptosis and Survival Signaling. **A:** Ligation of tumor necrosis factor (TNF) receptor 1, Fas, or TNF-related apoptosis inducing ligand 1 and 2 activates apoptosis pathways. The nascent death-inducing signaling complex can directly cleave the executioner caspases 3, 6, and 7. Caspase 8 also cleaves BID to tBID, activating the mitochondrial regulated apoptotic pathway, dramatically accelerating cellular death. A number of viral proteins interfere with apoptosis induced through TNF pathway including human papilloma virus, hepatitis C virus, herpesvirus vFLIP, and virus orthologs of BCL2 and vMIA act on the mitochrondria. Adapted with permission.[111] **B:** The components of the apoptotic pathway are preformed in the cytosol enabling the cell to respond rapidly to death signaling. In contrast, the key regulators of the apoptotic pathway, including Bcl2 and inhibitor of apoptosis, require new gene expression controlled by NF-κB. An important NF-κB–induced gene is cellular FLIP, which contains a pseudocaspase domain. The cFLIP protein interferes with caspase 8 activation, blocking the prodeath pathway. If the cell is transcriptionally inactive or unable to activate NF-κB, which often occurs in a pathogen-infected cell, then the proapoptotic pathway dominates the signals emanating from the TNF receptor 1 signaling complex leading to apoptosis and curtailing parasitism of the cell.

As examples, TNFR1 and LTβR activate separate yet related pathways that lead to distinct forms of NF-κB, the RelA/p50, and RelB/p52 complexes.[65] Each form of NF-κB activates a large number of genes with distinct roles in physiology (see Fig. 27.5B). TNFR1 signaling rapidly mobilizes (within minutes) the RelA/p50 complex, which controls expression of many proinflammatory and survival genes. By contrast, the processing of p100 and accumulation of nuclear RelB/p52 takes several hours after the initial stimulus. RelB-dependent genes are often involved in lymphoid tissue organogenesis and homeostasis. NIK is also required for NF-κB RelB and RelA activation by CD27, CD40, and BAFF-R, but not by TNFRI, which is restricted to activating RelA/p50 complex.[66,67] Components of the NF-κB pathway, including TRAF3, cIAP, NIK, and A20, are frequently mutated in cancer, leading to constitutive expression of survival factors such as the BCL2 family.[68]

THE IMMEDIATE LYMPHOTOXIN AND TUMOR NECROSIS FACTOR FAMILY

TNF (formerly TNFα or TNFSF2) and lymphotoxin (LT)α (formerly TNFβ or TNFSF1) were originally pursued and characterized as inducers of tumor cell death, holding promise as antitumor therapeutics. However, the potent inflammatory action of TNF, particularly in the cardiovasculature, was quickly realized by the response of cancer patients injected with recombinant protein. We now recognize that TNF and LTα are two components of an interconnected network of "signaling circuits" that include LT-β, LIGHT (TNFSF14), and their specific receptors and regulatory proteins (Fig. 27.7). Each individual pathway has unique and cooperative signaling activities with other members of this immediate family. The immunologic processes controlled by this cytokine network are extensive, ranging from the development and homeostasis of lymphoid organs to the mobilization of innate defense systems to cosignaling activity promoting adaptive immune responses.[69–71]

TNF, LTα, LTβ, and LIGHT define the immediate group of TNF-related ligands that bind four cognate cell surface receptors with distinct but shared specificities. TNF and LTα both bind two distinct receptors, TNFR1 (p55-60, *TNFR1A*) and TNFR2 (p75-80, *TNFR1B*). The heteromeric LTαβ2 complex binds the LTβR, which also binds LIGHT (TNFSF14). LIGHT also engages the HVEM (TNFRSF14), which acts as a ligand for BTLA and CD160,[31] an Ig superfamily member. Two distinct human herpesviruses, herpes simplex virus and cytomegalovirus, target the HVEM-BTLA pathway using different mechanisms[35,72] (see Fig. 27.7).

TNF mediates a diverse range of cellular and physiologic responses linked to acute and chronic inflammatory processes. The diversity of responses is due in part to the broad expression of TNFR1 and the release of TNF as a soluble mediator where it can act in a systemic fashion. TNF production is triggered by many of the innate recognition systems, such as the toll-like receptors and by T and B cells. In chronic inflammation, TNF production can lead to tissue damage and organ failure. Genes expressed in response to TNF signaling

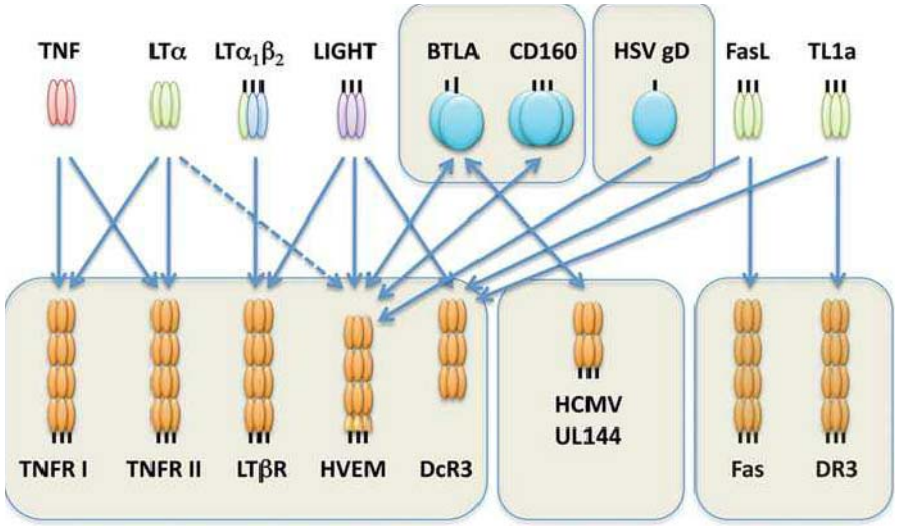


FIG. 27.7. The Immediate Tumor Necrosis Factor (TNF) Lymphotoxin (LT) Network. The cartoon depicts the signaling network formed between TNF, LTα, LTβ, and LIGHT, and their receptors. Each *arrow* indicates a ligand-receptor interaction. The network is defined by the extensive cross-utilization of ligand and receptors. Herpesvirus entry mediator (HVEM) forms a switch between positive cosignaling through LIGHT-HVEM interaction and inhibitory signaling through B- and T-lymphocyte attenuator (BTLA). LIGHT bound to HVEM activates TNF receptor–associated factor–dependent activation of NF-κB, whereas HVEM-BTLA acts through an immunoreceptor tyrosine-based inhibitory motif of BTLA to recruit the phosphatase SHP2, attenuating kinases activated by T-cell receptor signaling. The herpes simplex viron envelope protein gD attaches to HVEM acting as an entry step for infection. UL144 gene of human cytomegalovirus binds BTLA, but not LIGHT, selectively mimicking the inhibitory pathway of HVEM-BTLA. Fas Ligand and TL1A are included in this network through their interaction with decoy receptor-3.

coordinate the physiologic responses during inflammation (Table 27.4). The responses will reflect the characteristic of the inflamed organ, the local or systemic source of TNF, and the duration of TNF signaling. Acute inflammatory responses involve rapid changes in hemodynamics (plasma leakage and edema) and leukocyte adherence, extravasation, and organ infiltration induced by TNF. TNF production during chronic inflammation may contribute to systemic metabolic derangements and wasting (cachexia) or loss of organ structure and function (bone erosion in joints of patients with rheumatoid arthritis [RA]). In some models, TNF can promote an inflammatory environment that promotes tumor formation.[73–75]

Elucidation of the functions associated with this TNF/LT signaling network has been aided by studies with genetically modified mice engineered with null or transgene expression of the cytokine or receptor (Table 27.5). Deficiency in TNF or TNFR1, but not TNFR2, have similar phenotypes with alterations in host defense to intracellular bacterial pathogens, like *Listeria monocytogenes* and *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*, but surprisingly modest susceptibility to some viral pathogens. These results demonstrated a role for TNF in acute-phase response of the host defense system. In contrast, LTα-deficient mice showed a failure in formation of peripheral lymphoid organs, a phenotype not observed in mice deficient in either TNFR or TNF, which implicated the LTαβ complex signaling through the LTβR as a key developmental pathway for lymphoid organogenesis.

Lymphotoxinαβ-LymphotoxinβR, A Mammalian Organ Development Pathway

Gene-deficient mice sharing a common phenotype of no lymph nodes revealed the framework of a signaling pathway involved in mammalian organ development. LTα-, LTβ-, or LTβR-deficient mice fail to develop secondary lymphoid tissues.[76,77] Several other knockout mice, including the transcriptional regulators Ikaros, ID2, and RORγt, also lack lymph nodes,[78–82] as do mice deficient in components of the NF-κB

TABLE 27.4 Physiologic Correlates of Tumor Necrosis Factor–Mediated Gene Induction

Induced Gene	Response
iNOS	Vasodilation, edema
VCAM-1	Leukocyte margination and extravasation
IL-8	Leukocyte chemotaxis
MHC-1	Antigen presentation
Caspase 8 activation	Apoptosis
LPL	Cachexia

Caspase 8, cysteine-dependent aspartic acid specific proteinase-8; IL-8, interleukin-8 (CXC chemokine); iNOS, inducible nitric oxide synthetase; LPL, lipoprotein lipase; MHC-1, major histocompatibility complex-1; VCAM-1, vascular cell adhesion molecule-1.

TABLE 27.5 Phenotypes in Mice Deficient in Lymphotoxin and Tumor Necrosis Factor Immediate Family

	Phenotypes					
Gene Deletion	**LN[a]**	**PP[b]**	**Architecture[c]**	**NK[d]**	**NKT[e]**	**DC[f]**
LTα	–	–	Disrupted	Impaired	Impaired	CD8-DC
LTβ	–	–	Disrupted	Impaired	Impaired	CD8-DC
LIGHT	+	+	+	+	+	+
LTβ-B[g]	+	+	Disrupted	nr	nr	nr
LTβ-T[g]	+	+	+	nr	nr	nr
TNF[h]	+	+	+	+	+	Maturation
LTβR	–	–	Disrupted	–	–	CD8-DC
TNFR1	+	–	Disrupted MZ	+	+	Maturation
TNFR2	+	+	+	+	+	+

–, absent; +, normal; CD, cluster of differentiation; DC, dendritic cell; LN, lymph node; LT, lymphotoxin; MZ, marginal zone; NK, natural killer; NKT, natural killer T; nr, not reported; PP, Peyer's patches; TNF, tumor necrosis factor; TNFR, tumor necrosis factor receptor.
[a]LTβ–/– mice have ~75% of mesenteric LN; LIGHT/LTβ–/– mice have fewer mesenteric nodes than LTβ–/– mice.[76,342,343]
[b]See Rutschmann et al.[344] and Neumann et al.[345]
[c]Architecture of the splenic white pulp includes T- and B-zone segregation, MZ, germinal center and follicular DC network.
[d]NK-cell deficiency includes reduced cell numbers and enhanced tumor susceptibility.[348]
[e]NKT cells Vα14 subset.[347]
[f]CD8– DC subsets in spleen are diminished from failure to proliferate.[95]
[g]LTβ conditionally deleted in B cells or T cells.[348] LTβ-B cells showed partial disruption in architecture; normal for LTβ-T, but combined knockout in both B and T cells was worse than LTβ-B.
[h]Normal architecture observed in TNF point mutant[344]; abnormal architecture in TNFR1–/– mice.[345]
Modified with permission from Ware.[70]

activation pathway, including TRAF6, NIK, IKKα, and Rel B, and their gene targets. Target genes including CXCR5, the receptor for CXCL13, show defective lymphoid organ structure, as do CCR7–/– mice (receptor for CCL19/CCL21). The developmental program of secondary lymphoid organ formation initiates at 9 days post coitus progressing in organized fashion from dorsal to lateral movement, with intestinal Peyer's patches forming during the first postnatal week.[83] The defect is irreversible in that transferring LTαβ-sufficient bone marrow into an adult LT-mutant mouse failed to induce lymph node formation. Accumulating studies indicate that the formation of lymphoid organs involves two distinct cell types, an embryonic LTβR-expressing mesenchymal stromal cell that responds to LTαβ expressed in a cell of hematopoietically derived lineage, termed the lymphoid tissue inducer cell. The lymphoid tissue inducer cell develops separately from lymphocytes and myeloid cells in a pathway dependent on ID2 and RORγt and different cytokines including interleukin (IL)7, RANK ligand (TRANCE, TNFSF11), and TNF. These cytokines induce surface LTαβ in lymphoid tissue inducer cells that differentially engenders formation of lymph nodes and Peyer's patches.[84] Cells of the lymphoid tissue inducer lineage are maintained in the adult tissues at low levels (0.5%), presumably aiding in the homeostasis of lymphoid organs.[85,86]

The microarchitecture of the white pulp in the spleen[87] is disrupted in LT- and TNF-deficient mice.[88] Multiple abnormal features of the architecture are observed in LT- and TNF-deficient mice, including missing macrophages in the marginal sinus and the loss of positional segregation of T and B cells into discrete zones. The segregation of T and B cells into discrete compartments depends on expression of the tissue organizing chemokines CCL19 and CCL21, which attract T cells, and CXCL13, which attracts B cells. CCL19 and CCL21 act through the chemokine receptor CCR7 expressed on T cells, and CXCL13 binds CXCR5 on B cells to promote localization in the follicles. An LT-chemokine circuit is formed by migration of B cells to LTβR+ stromal cells expressing CXCL13, which in turn induces expression of LTαβ on B cells.[89–91] Circulating B cells lack surface LTαβ, but expression is regained upon reentry into the CXCL13 rich microenvironment.[91] The formation of the splenic microarchitecture depends on B-cell expression of LTαβ, which induces differentiation of specialized stromal cells (eg, secretion CCL20 and CXCL13 chemokines) in the spleen during postnatal maturation. Remodeling of the microarchitecture of the secondary lymphoid organs occurs during immune responses, which requires both TNF and LT pathways signaling on fibroblastic reticular cells.[92] A viral pathogen, cytomegalovirus, can induce specific changes in the splenic microenvironment through modulation of CCL21 expression.[93]

The LTβR and TNFR pathways facilitate lymphocyte entry into lymphoid tissues in part by modulating expression of adhesion molecules, such as peripheral node and mucosal addressins on high endothelial venules.[94] LTβR signaling is necessary to maintain networks of follicular DCs involved in capturing antigen and immune complexes that aid in activating B cells. These cellular interactions are further enhanced by LTβR signals that provide growth signals for some conventional myeloid DC (CD8– subsets) within the lymphoid organ, whereas TNF plays a role in differentiation of DC progenitors in bone marrow.[95]

T and B cells can communicate with stromal and myeloid cells via the LTαβ-LTβR pathway and thus modify their immediate microenvironment during the course of an immune response. Nonlymphoid tissues suffering from chronic inflammation associated with autoimmune disease, graft

rejection, or microbial infection often contain organized accumulations of lymphocytes reminiscent of secondary lymphoid organs, called tertiary lymphoid organs. Activated T and B cells provide the source of LTαβ that helps drive the process of forming these structures, but as antigen is cleared, immune responsiveness subsides and these structures resolve. A gradation of features may be found in the tertiary lymphoid organs including presence of DCs, expression of chemokines, high endothelial venules, segregated regions of T and B cells, and germinal centers, but these structures typically lack the permanence of a lymph node. TNF also contributes to formation of granuloma that assists in walling off bacteria.[96] Thus, the LTαβ and TNF pathways operative in embryonic life also play critical roles in the adult in the formation of tertiary lymphoid structures.

Influence of the Lymphotoxinαβ Pathway on Lymphocyte Development

Mounting evidence indicates the LTαβ-LTβR pathway contributes to the ontogeny of unconventional T cells, including γδ T cells and invariant NK T cells, whereas conventional T cell subsets are normal in mice deficient in the TNF and LTβR pathways. The LTβR pathway seems to operate at distinct levels during thymic development.[97] Double positive thymocytes regulate the differentiation of early thymocyte progenitors and γδ T cells via the LTβR pathway,[98] yet the LTβR is not expressed in thymocytes, suggesting an indirect mechanism. In this regard, LTβR signaling is required for the proper formation and function of the thymic stroma, which influences T-cell development.[99] The thymic medulla appears to control the export of invariant NK T cells from the thymus.[100,101] In addition, LTβR signaling in thymic stroma affects central tolerance to peripherally restricted antigens, which may be either dependent or independent upon the autoimmune regulator *Aire*.[102] Thymic differentiation depends on the LTβR pathway to mediate the cellular communication between lymphoid and stromal compartments.

Autoimmunity

Dysregulated expression of several members of the TNFSF leads to autoimmune-like diseases in humans and animal models. For example, enforced expression of TNF or LIGHT, which overrides the normal transient expression, causes severe autoimmune and inflammatory processes in mice.[103–105] LTα or LTαβ transgenic expression in the pancreas leads to insulitis and formation of tertiary lymphoid structures.[106] These types of results have implicated members of the TNF superfamily as immune regulators and support the notion that LTαβ and LIGHT pathways contribute to inflammation and tissue destructive processes.

Infectious Diseases

TNF is a major inflammatory cytokine required for the acute-phase response to bacterial infection. For instance, lipopolysaccharide in gram-negative bacteria is a potent inducer of TNF secretion through the TLR4 innate recognition system. In mice, lipopolysaccharide induces a shock syndrome that is rapidly lethal owing to profound changes in blood circulation. However, mice survive lipopolysaccharide in the genetic absence of TNFR1 or if treated with an TNF-neutralizing antibody, indicating that host-derived TNF mediates pathogenesis.[107–109] On the other hand, TNFR1 is essential for resistance to infection with a live organism, such as *Listeria monocytogenes*, through multiple processes including enhancement of phagocytosis and bacteriocidal destruction by macrophages. By contrast, T-cell immunity is not overtly impaired in TNFR1−/− mice. Humans treated with TNF inhibitors show some increase in susceptibility to selective pathogens, particularly *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*, reinforcing the role of TNF as a critical host defense system.[110]

In contrast, LT-deficient mice showed significant variability in susceptibility to individual pathogens (Table 27.6). Increased susceptibility resulted from either developmentally controlled aspects of lymphoid organ structure (eg, lymphocytic choriomeningitis virus, *Leishmania*) or a requirement for LTαβ-LTβR pathway as an effector system in innate and adaptive immune systems (eg, murine cytomegalovirus). Viewed from an evolutionary perspective, this variation in the requirement for LT signaling may reflect specific contributions from the pathogen used to evade the broader TNF- and LT-dependent pathways.[35,111]

TUMOR NECROSIS FACTOR SUPERFAMILY AND T-CELL COSIGNALING

Antigen recognition together with cooperating signaling "cosignaling" systems determine the quality of the adaptive immune responses. Lymphocyte responses to antigen are dynamic processes that start with the activation of naïve cells and transition through effector and memory phases. Cosignaling systems assist these phases by promoting more efficient engagement of antigen-binding TCR molecules to enhance initial cell activation and cell division (clonal expansion), augment cell survival (clonal contraction or memory cell differentiation), or induce effector functions such as cytokine secretion or killer function. Negative signals (inhibitory cosignaling) may also be delivered to T cells depending upon the particular system, which may prevent initial cellular activation or eliminate excess activated cells to dampen inflammation. Cosignaling can be quantitative, modifying thresholds of common signaling intermediates, or qualitative, involving signals distinct from other cosignaling systems or the TCR. Cosignaling receptors and ligands can be up- or downregulated at the transcriptional and protein levels depending on the stage of the T-cell response and the inflammatory milieu. In the absence of cosignaling, T cells may become unresponsive (anergic) or die.

The TNFRSR is one of two major families of cosignaling regulators that modulate T cells. The other cosignaling systems belong to the Ig superfamily, such as CD28,[112] cytotoxic T-lymphocyte (CTL)A-4,[113] ICOS,[114] PD1,[115] and BTLA.[116,117] TNFRSF members involved in T-cell cosignaling include OX40, 41BB, DR3, CD27, CD30, and HVEM,[118–122] whereas CD40 and BAFFR are more involved in cosignaling in B lymphocytes.[123,124] However, considerable crossover of activities in both lymphocyte populations can be demonstrated. Death

TABLE 27.6 Lymphotoxins in Host Defense: Mouse Models

Pathogen[a]	Mouse Model[b]	Susceptibility	Mechanism	Reference
Herpesvirus				
MHV68	LTα–/–	Minimal	nd	349
HSV-1	LTα–/–	Increased	Decreased effector CD8+ T cells	350
MCMV	LTα–/–;B-LTβ	Increased	IFN response; adaptive immunity lost	351–353
MCMV	LTβR–Fc Tg	Increased	Poor innate defenses	354
LCMV	LTβ–/–; LTα–/–	Increased	Defective architecture	354–356
LCMV	LTβR-Fc	Decreased	Decreased CD8+/IFNγ	357
Theiler virus	LTα–/– LTβR–Fc	Increased	Defective architecture	358
Influenza	LTα–/–	Minimal	nd	359
Vesicular stomatitis virus	LTβ–/–	Increased	Defective architecture	356
Bacteria and Parasites				
Mycobacterium tuberculosis	LTβR–/–	Increased	NO_2 synthase decreased	360
Mycobacterium tuberculosis	LTα–/–	Increased	No T cells in granuloma	361
Mycobacterium bovis	LTβR–Fc	Increased	Poor granuloma formation	362
Listeria monocytogenes	LTβR–/–	Increased	nd	360
Leishmania major	LTβ–/–	Increased	Defective architecture	363
Leishmania donovani	LIGHT–/–	Increased	Defective T cell	364
Toxoplasma gondii	LTα–/–	Increased	NO_2 synthase decreased	365
Plasmodium berghei	LTα–/–	Decreased	Decreased LTα dependent inflammation	366

CD, cluster of differentiation; HSV, herpes simplex virus; IFN, interferon; LCMV, lymphocytic choriomeningitis virus; LT, lymphotoxin; MCMV, murine cytomegalovirus; MHV murine herpesvirus; nd, not done.
[a]Virus: MHV68, HSV1 (α-herpesvirus), MCMV, LCMV. Bacteria: *Mycobacterium, Listeria monocytogenes.* Parasite: *Leishmania major, Leishmania donovani, Toxoplasma gondii, Plasmodium berghei.*
[b]Studies conducted in gene deficient mice (–/–); LTβR-Fc Tg, mice expressing LTβR-Fc as a transgene; LTβR-Fc, mice injected protein.
Modified with permission from Ware.[70]

receptors such as Fas and TNFR1 are thought to be involved in clonal contraction through apoptosis of activated effector cells, although TNF via TNFR2 also shows costimulatory action in naïve T cells. In tissue culture models, several of the TNF-related signaling pathways show costimulatory activities for T cells, which probably reflects the common induction of NF-κB–dependent survival genes, a common trait of TNFRSF members. However, analyses of physiologic models using genetically deficient mice reveal distinct roles for these molecules in the life cycle of T cells. Cosignaling systems are emerging as important targets to enhance immune responses to tumors or attenuate autoimmune diseases.[114,125–129]

Expression and Function of Tumor Necrosis Factor Receptor Superfamily Cosignaling Molecules During Primary T-Cell Responses

The TNFRs encoded on Chr 1p36 share a common function as cosignaling systems for T cells.[120,122] This region (human 1p36.33-1p36.21; syntenic with mouse 4E2-D3) contains the genes encoding GITR, OX40, HVEM, DR3, 41BB, CD30, and TNFR2, and is paralogous to the region on Chr 12p13 where genes for TNFR1, LTβR, and CD27 reside. The TNF-related ligands for these receptors are linked in the MHC paralogs on Chr 1, 6, 9, and 19, reflecting a common functional link as costimulatory molecules modulating T-cell differentiation (see Fig. 27.2).

Expression of TNFRSF members by T cells follows several distinct patterns during T-cell activation: expression on naïve T cells in peripheral lymphoid tissues (eg, CD27 and HVEM) that are upregulated or downregulated, respectively, following activation. OX40, 4-1BB, TNFR2, and CD30 are only expressed by T cells after initial activation[120]; TNFR2 is rapidly downmodulated following cleavage by TACE-generating soluble receptors that modulate TNF availability. The differing time course of expression of these molecules determines the phase of when they act in T-cell differentiation.

Experimental activation of TNFRSF members can be achieved with agonist monoclonal antibodies. Antibodies specific to OX40, 4-1BB, CD30, or CD27 all augment T-cell clonal expansion and TCR-induced cytokine expression in tissue culture and mouse models. For example, CD27, which is expressed at very early stages of T-cell activation, mediates initial cytokine production, cell division, and/or survival,[130,131] whereas OX40 and 4-1BB, which are expressed after cellular activation, promote T-cell survival and proliferation during the later stages of the primary response.[132–134] CD30-CD30L interactions promote primary CD8+ T-cell expansion and with OX40 act to promote CD4+ T-cell memory,[135,136] suggesting functional parallels with other TNFRSF molecules. Cowpox virus encodes a specific CD30 mimic to block the action of CD30L as part of its immune evasion strategy (see Table 27.6).

Death receptor-3 (DR3) engages TL1A, promoting IFNγ expression by proinflammatory TH1 cells in mouse[137] and humans,[138] especially in intestinal tissues.[139] Polymorphisms in TL1A are associated with inflammatory bowel disease.[140,141] The LIGHT-HVEM-LTβR pathway is also associated with T-cell inflammatory processes in mucosal tissues.[104,142] Similar cosignaling activities are reported for GITR,[143] with the potential of these systems to affect different subsets of T cells, such as GITR expression on T-regulatory subsets. The role of TNFRSF in regulating different T-cell subsets is an active area of research.

HVEM appears to play a role as an inhibitor of naïve T-cell activation through engagement of the Ig superfamily members BTLA and CD160.[144,145] In this situation, HVEM acts as a ligand for BTLA, which limits signaling by antigen receptor–associated tyrosine kinases through a phosphatase recruitment domain (immunoreceptor tyrosine-based inhibitory motif) in its cytosolic tail.[146,147] Naïve T cells coexpress HVEM and BTLA, forming an intrinsic complex that limits HVEM activation by its ligands expressed in the surrounding microenvironment. The BTLA binding site on HVEM is distinct from the position occupied by LIGHT, yet membrane LIGHT can disrupt the HVEM-BTLA complex, suggesting that HVEM acts as a regulatory switch between inhibitory and stimulatory cosignaling. Interestingly, like LIGHT, BTLA and CD160 can activate HVEM in trans, promoting cell survival gene expression in cells expressing HVEM.[148] This pathway appears particularly effective in controlling CD4 T-cell activation,[144,149] but it is also important in regulating differentiating memory CD8 T cells.[150]

T-Cell Memory

Cosignaling through several TNFRSF members promotes the differentiation of memory T cells. Mice deficient in OX40-OX40L, CD27-CD70, CD30-CD30L, or HVEM pathways all display defective memory responses to antigen.[131,135,151–154] The OX40 system is illustrative of the costimulatory signals provided to T cells by these TNFR. Pharmacologic stimulation of OX40 with an agonist antibody or ligand during a primary antigen-specific response in mice enhances the generation of memory CD4 T cells.[155] The enhanced response of T cells includes increased accumulation of antigen-specific effector T cells producing effector cytokines such as IFNγ at the site of inflammation.[156] Moreover, blockade of OX40-OX40L interactions during recall responses with monoclonal antibody specific to Ox40L ameliorates inflammation in models of collagen-induced arthritis[157] and experimental allergic lung inflammation.[158] In OX40-deficient mice, CD8 T cells expand normally, but their accumulation and survival at later times in the primary response was significantly impaired. T cells from OX40-deficient mice also failed to fully differentiate as measured by loss of expression of effector cell surface markers and decreases in synthesis of cytokines and cytotoxic activity. By contrast, the formation of extrafollicular plasma cells, germinal centers, and antibody responses was independent of OX40. OX40 signaling induces transcription of survival genes such as BCL2 and survivin in T cells, which may serve as the key targets that allow memory cell differentiation.[159,160]

The discovery that HVEM can elicit inhibitory signaling in T cells through engagement with the Ig family member BTLA highlights the possibility that, in certain situations, TNFRSF molecules can counter regulate the stimulatory actions during T-cell responses. Indeed, 4-1BB–deficient CD4+ T cells in some models are hyperresponsive,[161] and stimulation of 4-1BB can suppress immune responses in several models of autoimmune disease.[162–165] Although activation of 4-1BB enhances the expansion of human antiviral memory CD8+ T cells in vitro,[166] several studies demonstrate that the absence of 41BB in mice leads to enhanced T-cell responses,[161,167] reminiscent of the phenotype associated with HVEM-deficient mice.[168,169] Moreover, CD30 signals can, in some circumstances, suppress cytotoxic T-lymphocyte activity.[170] The expression of TNFRSF molecules such as GITR or OX40 on T-regulatory cells suggests that costimulatory pathways may enhance the suppressive function of these cells during immune responses.

Mouse models of autoimmune diseases such as EAE and diabetes uncover critical roles for OX40-Ox40L.[171,172] Blockade of the CD27-CD70 pathway also ameliorates EAE through the suppression of TNF induction, but not T-cell priming.[173] Furthermore, blockade of OX40, 4-1BB, CD27, or CD30 costimulation can all reduce transplant rejection and/or graft-versus-host disease.[174–177]

Stimulation of these pathways may also be applicable for the treatment of diseases such as cancer and infectious diseases where antigen-specific T-cell responses are ineffective. Stimulation of OX40, 4-1BB, CD30, and CD27 with agonist antibodies augments T-cell–mediated killing of a variety of tumors. The critical roles of the cosignaling TNF-TNFRSF members are discerned in immune responses to infectious pathogens. Similar to the immediate TNF family, the role of a specific cosignaling pathway in mediating protective T-cell responses during infection depends on the pathogen (Table 27.7).

CD40L AND BAFF SYSTEMS

The CD40 and BAFF systems play a major role in coordinating a range of costimulatory signals important to B-cell function, such as affinity maturation, isotype switching, Ig production, and clonal expansion.[123,178–181] In common with other TNFSF members, the CD40 system (see Fig. 27.3) is a key communication mechanism in host defense, autoimmunity, and cancer. Often, these pathogenic processes are centered on the function of B cells. CD40 ligand maps to the X chromosome and is regulated at the transcriptional level by NFAT, resulting in inducible CD40 ligand expression by T helper cells that promotes humoral immunity. CD40 ligand is also expressed in a variety of other cells including activated B cells, endothelial cells, basophils, mast cells, and platelets. CD40 is expressed on many cells, prominently on B cells, and utilizes both TRAF3 and 6 to activate NF-κB and AP1 transcription factors, among other signaling pathways.[182,183] Epstein-Barr virus, a B-cell–transforming herpesvirus, mimics the CD40 pathway though its LMP1 protein, driving naïve B cells into a memory state.[184–186]

TABLE 27.7 Tumor Necrosis Factor Superfamily Cosignaling Pathways in Infectious Diseases

	Cosignaling Pathway			
Pathogen	**CD27-CD27L**	**Ox40-Ox40L**	**4-1BB-41BBL**	**CD30-CD30L**
Influenza	CD4+ and CD8+[131,367]	CD4+[153,156,368]	CD8+[151]	nd
LCMV	nd	CD4+[156]	Normal CD8+[151]	nd
MCMV		CD4+[369,370]	CD8+[371]	CD8+[372]
Leishmania major	No role	CD4+ Th2[373]	No role	No role
Helminths	nd	CD4+ Th2[374]	nd	nd
Cryptococcus neoformans	nd	Enhanced CD4 Th2[375]	nd	nd
Mycobacterium avium	No role[376]	No role[376]	No role[376]	CD4+ and CD8+[376]
Listeria monocytogenes	CD4+ and CD8+[377]	nd	CD8+[378]	CD8+[379]

CD, cluster of differentiation; LCMV, lymphocytic choriomeningitis virus; MCMV, murine cytomegalovirus; nd, not done.
Unless indicated, the function of the T cells was impaired.
Adapted from Croft.[120]

CD40 signaling is necessary for induction of activation-induced cytidine deaminase, a key enzyme in class switching and somatic mutation of Ig genes. This process occurs in B cells in contact with T helper cells, which express CD40 ligand. The importance of CD40 system in the activity of B cells was revealed in patients with hyper-IgM syndrome. Several mutated genes underlie this syndrome including CD40 ligand and CD40,[187,188] the RelA NF-κB activating kinase subunit, IKKγ (NEMO), and activation-induced cytidine deaminase, among others.[189] Patients with hyper-IgM syndrome with mutated CD40L have elevated levels of IgM, often with no serum IgG, IgE, or IgA, and display increased susceptibility to bacterial and opportunistic infections. Treatment of these patients with passive transfer of human immune IgG corrects infection by bacteria, but not opportunistic pathogens, such as *Pneumocystis carinii*. This latter result reflects the importance of CD40 system in T-cell–mediated macrophage activation, which controls these opportunistic pathogens. In some patients with hyper-IgM syndrome, significant amounts of IgA and IgE are present in serum, even in the complete absence of CD40L, a result indicating that another mechanism(s) can induce Ig class switching. Evidence has emerged that the BAFF/APRIL system can induce Ig class switch independent of CD40 system.[190]

Since the discovery of B-cell–activating factor of the TNFSF (BAFF, TNFSF13B; BLyS) and a proliferation-inducing ligand (APRIL, TNFSF13), much has been elucidated with regard to CD40L-independent isotype switching and B-cell development and survival in the periphery, as well as the implications of BAFF-APRIL dysregulation in autoimmune disease and lymphomas.[124,191] Although human *BAFF* maps to Chr 13q34 and APRIL to 17p13.1, the proteins are strikingly more conserved (~50% homology) than other TNF ligands. TWEAK (TNF-related ligand with weak apoptosis activity) maps adjacent to APRIL, part of a clade of genetically similar members that also includes ectodermal dysplasin (EDA1/EDA2). BAFF and APRIL form homo- and heterotrimers that interact with multiple receptors to form a complex signaling circuit (see Fig. 27.3). Membrane BAFF is shed via a furin protease at the cell surface, while APRIL is processed in the Golgi and secreted only in soluble form,[192] although the receptor binding domain of APRIL can be membrane-anchored via an unusual splice variant with the TWEAK cytosolic and transmembrane domain (TWE-PRIL).[193] The significance of membrane-restricted local BAFF expression to systemic availability of soluble BAFF and APRIL remains to be established, although BAFF-APRIL heterotrimers are detected in serum from patients with systemic rheumatic diseases.[7] BAFF and APRIL are inducibly expressed in monocytes, macrophages, DCs, and T cells in the spleen and lymph nodes in response to certain cytokines in different cell types, such as type I and II IFN, IL-10, and other TNF family members like CD40 and LTβR signaling. BAFF can be expressed in some B-cell–derived chronic lymphocytic leukemia cells, and some epithelial-derived cancer cell lines and primary tumor tissues express APRIL. Stromal cell expression of BAFF maintains the major mature B-cell pool, whereas inducible BAFF expression in myeloid cells aids in local B-cell survival at sites of inflammation.

Three cognate receptors mediate the biological actions of BAFF. BAFFR (TNFRSF13C), transmembrane activator and calcium signal modulating cyclophilin ligand interactor (TACI; TNFRSF13B), and B-cell maturation antigen (BCMA; TNFRSF17) are expressed on B cells and on other cell types. APRIL also engages matrix proteoglycans with weak binding, which may serve to enhance access to TACI and BCMA or function as a distinct receptor-ligand interaction.[194] Signaling through BAFFR and BCMA are required for B-cell survival and differentiation at different stages of B-cell–mediated humoral response. BAFFR−/− mice display an almost complete loss of mature and marginal zone B cells beginning from the late transitional phase of B-cell maturation, whereas BCMA deficiency impairs the survival of long-lived bone marrow plasma cells.[195,196]

By contrast, APRIL−/− mice develop normally but have altered class switching to IgA.[197,198] TACI signaling may antagonize BAFFR and BCMA, as TACI−/− mice have elevated numbers of mature B cells.[199] Both classical and alternative NF-κB pathways have been implicated BAFFR and BCMA survival signals, with BCL2 expression rescuing the B-cell defect in BAFFR−/− mice. BAFFR and TACI engagement

has also been shown to provide the necessary signals for CD40L-independent class switch recombination, to IgG and IgE for BAFFR, and IgG, IgE, and IgA for TACI, though IgA production seems specifically dependent upon APRIL-TACI interaction.[200] BAFFR is also connected to promoting the B-cell coreceptor complex CD19/CD21/CD81, which binds to C3b-opsonized antigens to enhance rapid T-independent antibody responses. Overall impairment of T-independent antibody responses appears to be greatest in TACI−/− mice, and is dependent upon APRIL-TACI interactions in B1 B cells. BAFFR, and not TACI, has also been proven to be important in T cell costimulation in in vitro and in vivo mouse models of allograft rejection response, where BAFFR−/− and BAFF−/−, but not TACI−/− nor BCMA−/−, mouse recipients prolong graft survival due to weakened alloproliferative response.[201]

Elevated levels of BAFF and APRIL have been detected in the serum, and especially the synovial fluid, of patients suffering from inflammatory autoimmune disorders such as systemic lupus erythematosus, RA, Sjörgen syndrome, and multiple sclerosis.[202] These levels tend to correlate with increasing amounts of autoreactive antibodies in serum, and in mouse models of lupus and collagen-induced arthritis, soluble TACI-Ig treatment can lessen the severity of disease symptoms and progression.[203] It is hypothesized that these excess quantities of BAFF and APRIL may contribute to the formation of autoreactive B-lymphocytes and loss of tolerance during development and perpetuating their survival as plasmablasts. Emerging evidence connects the BAFF and APRIL system to the pathology of B-cell–derived cancers like B-cell chronic lymphocytic leukemia, non-Hodgkin lymphoma, and multiple myeloma. Malignant myeloma cells express high levels of BAFF and APRIL and receive ligand-induced survival signals, with upregulation of antiapoptotic Bcl-2 and Mcl-1 molecules.[204] Therefore, BAFF and APRIL may bolster tumor survival via autocrine and paracrine signaling mechanisms.

TWEAK-FN14 SYSTEM

The TWEAK-Fn14 system is emerging as an important signaling system between the immune system and epithelial and stromal tissues.[205] TWEAK is limited to a monogamous interaction with Fn14, its cognate receptor, which is a fibroblast growth factor-2–inducible gene (see Fig. 27.3). Fn14 has one CRD and binds TWEAK homotrimers in a manner similar to BAFF, APRIL, and their receptors.[206,207] TWEAK, like BAFF and APRIL, is cleaved by furin protease to produce an active soluble form.[206] Human and mouse TWEAK share ≥ 90% sequence identity in the receptor binding domain and manifest high affinity cross-species interaction to respective Fn14 homologues.[192] The biologic functions of TWEAK-Fn14 system are broad and perhaps paradoxical, promoting both cell survival and death. TWEAK/Fn14 signaling induces apoptosis in some cancer lines (HT29, HSC3) and primary neurons.[208–210] TWEAK is produced primarily by leukocytes, whereas Fn14 expression is induced during inflammatory and tissue destructive processes. TWEAK-Fn14 system may provide important homeostatic functions to promote regenerative processes that conclude inflammatory responses. These homeostasis-promoting functions include induction of survival and growth in endothelial cells, migration and wound closure in endothelial cells, and angiogenesis.[206,207] Fn14 contributes to the activation of progenitor cell types including liver, skeletal muscle, and mesenchymal lineage progenitors such as osteoblast, chondrocyte and adipocyte, and neuronal progenitors.

TWEAK regulates the shift from innate to adaptive immune responsiveness by repressing innate inflammatory cytokines (IL-12, IFNγ) important in promoting TH1 immunity—a potential counterbalance to the proinflammatory actions of TNF.[208] TWEAK may also have a potentiating influence in chronic tissue inflammation when dysregulated, such as its role in excessive demyelination and ultimate progression to excessive autoimmune encephalomyelitis.[211] In a mouse collagen–induced arthritis model, elevated levels of TWEAK in serum correspond to severe disease progression and enhanced arthritogenic mediator molecules.[212] In obese patients with type 2 diabetes, TWEAK-Fn14 signaling augments proinflammatory cytokine release by adipocytes.[213] In rats, TWEAK may prevent excessive luteinization after gonadotrophin-induced ovulation by controlling progesterone production.[214] The seemingly contradictory functions of TWEAK/Fn14 are less puzzling when TWEAK/Fn14 is viewed as an important signaling system that aids in achieving homeostasis following inflammation, as cell death and survival are essential for homeostasis.

DEATH RECEPTORS AND LIGANDS

Fas Ligand and Fas System

The Fas (CD95, TNFRSF6)-Fas ligand (TNFSF6) system is an example of a direct signaling pathway to apoptotic cell death. The importance of the Fas-FasL system in immune regulation was revealed by the recognition that mice with the autoimmune-like disorders, *lymphoproliferative* (lpr) and *generalized lymphproliferative disorder* (gld) harbored mutations in Fas and Fas ligand and humans with the autoimmune lymphoproliferative syndrome have mutations in Fas.[215–217] Mice with *lpr* or *gld* mutations display autoimmune phenotypes with high accumulation of activated T cells in the periphery and CD4−CD8− T cells in the lymph nodes (lymphoadenopathy) and autoantibody production. The Fas-FasL system is involved in proinflammatory responses, tumor survival, and nonimmune tissue homeostasis in osteoclastogenesis and angiogenesis.[218] Activated lymphocytes are particularly sensitive to Fas-induced apoptosis, suggesting a role for Fas in the clonal contraction phase of the immune response. The epithelial cells in the eye express FasL, which may limit inflammation in organs sensitive to immune damage. FasL is thought to be one of several proapoptotic systems used as a killing mechanism by cytotoxic T cells and NK cells. In primates, Fas ligand binds Fas and decoy receptor-3, which also binds LIGHT and TL1A.[219]

FasL can undergo cleavage by matrix metalloproteases to produce soluble FasL, which may induce markedly different events when it engages Fas compared to the membrane-bound form, such as loss in cytotoxicity.[220]

Other findings suggest that soluble FasL may counteract the proinflammatory properties of membrane-associated FasL as an immunosuppressive, particularly in the eye and tumor environments.[221,222] Conversely, Fas has also been linked to lymphoproliferation and lymphocyte activation via NF-κB–signaling pathways.

Essential biologic roles FasL-Fas include regulating lymphocyte homeostasis (via contraction of clonally expanded effector T and NK cells), directing CTL-mediated apoptosis and lysis (immune surveillance), and establishing immune privileged organs and sites. Fas is expressed in a wide variety of tissues such as the thymus, spleen, heart, and liver, whereas FasL can be found on activated T cells, NK cells, tumor cells, immune privileged sites, lung, and other tissues.[218,223,224] In mature activated T and NK cells, Fas-FasL signaling plays a critical role in inducing apoptosis during the latter stages of inflammation, or activation-induced cell death, and shifts lymphocyte population numbers back to baseline.[225] In certain organs like the liver, lung, and small intestine, FasL on stromal cells can be upregulated to control the overabundance of activated T cells after an inflammatory response and ultimately reduce tissue damage. Alternately, dysregulation during hepatitis C infections can lead to death of hepatocytes and acute liver damage.[226] The Fas system has also been implicated in curtailing autoantibody production by damping T cell helper–induced B-cell activation and direct elimination of activated B cells, where CD40 stimulation also upregulates Fas expression.[218]

The Fas-FasL system, together with perforin and granzymes, is a mechanism vital to CTL-mediated destruction and clearance of tumor and virally infected cells. Viruses have evolved multiple mechanisms of suppressing Fas signaling,[111] including downmodulation of Fas[227] or blockade of caspase 8 activation.[228] Tumor genome instability may lead to mutations that aid in escaping or resisting death pathways, conducive to developing the metastatic phenotype.[229] Uterine and breast cancer patients may have elevated levels of soluble FasL and Fas, which may aid in neutralizing CTL- and NK cell–induced lysis or even killing Fas-expressing effector cells. Herpes simplex virus-1 infection in vitro of human neonatal neutrophils upregulates Fas and FasL surface expression, leading to apoptosis, exemplifying a theme of pathogenic modulation of apoptotic signaling events to evade or attenuate immune response.[230] FasL is constitutively expressed in the eye, central nervous system, testis, fetal trophoblast, and placenta, where any lymphocyte infiltration could lead to unrestricted, irreversible bystander damage to these tissues.[231] The implications of immune privilege have been applied to tissue transplantation rejection therapies; however, conflicting results as to whether FasL expression reduces likelihood of allograft rejection[232,233] or potentates effector responses[234,235] emphasize that induction of immune privilege by the Fas L system is complex. Fas-FasL interactions are at the core of graft-versus-host disease, where contaminating donor effector T cells in an allograft expand to damage the recipient's tissues. In a mouse model for acute graft-versus-host disease, p53-dependent upregulation of Fas on host stem cells leads to subsequent bone marrow depletion through FasL-mediated apoptosis.[236] With regard to tissue homeostasis, FasL has been reported to enhance RANKL-mediated osteoclastogenesis and differentiation in mouse bone marrow–derived macrophages.[237] Fas is also implicated in pulmonary inflammatory diseases resulting in fibrosis after acute lung injury.[223]

TRAIL RECEPTOR SYSTEM

TRAIL (TNFSF10) is closely related to FasL and TNF based on sequence homology. Interest in TRAIL was spurred by its ability to selectively induce apoptosis in tumor cells.[238] TRAIL binds five different receptors: TRAILR1 (DR4, TNFRSF10A), TRAILR2 (DR5, TNFRSF10B), TRAILR3 (DcR1, TNFRSF10C), TRAILR4 (DcR2, TNFRSF10D), and osteoprotegerin (OPG, OCIF, TNFRSF11B) (see Fig. 27.3). TRAILR1, 2, and 4 are type I transmembrane proteins and are membrane associated, whereas the more distantly related OPG is a dimeric, soluble decoy receptor. TRAILR3 is a type III transmembrane protein.[239] TRAILR1 and 2 contain highly homologous DD in their cytoplasmic tails that form the death-inducing signaling complex[240,241] responsible for apoptosis. TRAILR3 is anchored to the membrane via a glycophosphatidyl inositol tail, whereas TRAILR4 has a truncated, nonfunctional DD.[219,242,243] The lack of a functional DD indicates TRAILR3 and 4 antagonize TRAIL-induced apoptosis. Alternative splicing is a common feature amongst TRAIL and its receptors, and is believed to regulate programmed cell death.[244–246] The genetic organization of the TRAIL receptor loci in the mouse differs from that of the human. The mouse genome has TRAILR2, 3, and 4 homologues, but the TRAILR4 homologue does not bind TRAIL.

TRAIL-TRAILR signaling system induces apoptosis and to a lesser degree NF-κB activation. For example, the apoptotic function of TRAIL system is necessary for regulating the response of memory CD8+ T cells to rechallenge with antigen. In the absence of CD4 T-cell help, CD8 T cells undergo apoptosis mediated by TRAIL.[247,248] In much the same way as Fas, TRAILR death domains are thought to recruit FADD and initiator caspases 8 and/or 10 into the DISC to activate downstream effector caspases in apoptosis. Caspase 8 contribution to this process is well defined, but caspase 10 involvement was less so until recent studies in patients with autoimmune lymphoproliferative syndrome II and some carcinoma cell lines found that mutant caspase 10 ablates TRAIL-induced apoptosis.[242] In some cell types, the extrinsic mitochondrial pathway is important in amplifying DISC signals in TRAIL-induced apoptosis, which is analogous to mechanisms for Fas-FasL signaling.[249] TRAIL is being intensely pursued as an anticancer therapeutic and has proved particularly potent in combination with chemotherapy, because TRAILR2 expression can be increased in response to deoxyribonucleic acid damage.[250]

TRAIL seems most involved in regulating immune homeostasis and immune surveillance, or clearing virally infected and cancerous cells. IFNγ treatment of tumor cells increases sensitization to TRAIL-induced death. This has been observed in melanoma and ovarian carcinoma cells,[242] and is analogous to Fas-FasL apoptotic signaling in the human colorectal carcinoma line, HT-29. IFNα possesses

powerful antiviral and antitumor properties as well, and have been shown to upregulate TRAIL via JAK-STAT pathways in stimulated human multiple myeloma in vitro. TRAIL is also upregulated on NK cells in response to IFNγ, enhancing antitumor effector function.[251]

TL1A-DR3 SYSTEM

The TL1A-DR3 system provides essential signals that promote the expansion of effector T cells at the sites of inflammation.[139] However, the broad tissue expression profile of DR3 indicates its involvement is a range of cellular responses beyond T cells. TL1A (TNFSF15) is a paralog of FasL, LIGHT, and LTβ, and its receptor, DR3, is a homolog of TNFR1. TL1A also binds decoy receptor-3, potentially limiting any TL1A signaling mediated by DR3. Gene deletion experiments of TL1A or DR3 in mice revealed poor T-cell responses, but no overt developmental abnormalities.[137,252–254] Specific mutations in the ligand-binding domain of DR3 are linked to RA and interestingly appear to parallel other TNFRSF members and associated autoimmune pathologies.[255]

RANK LIGAND, RANK, AND OSTEOPROTEGERIN SYSTEM

OPG (TNFRSF11B) was initially identified as key mechanism regulating bone density[256] (see Fig. 27.3). As a soluble receptor, OPG is a regulator of the RANK (receptor activator of NF-κB, TNFRSF11A) and RANK ligand (also known as TRANCE) signaling pathway involved in the differentiation of bone-resorptive osteoclasts from hematopoietic progenitors (osteoclastogenesis).[257–259] However, this system is also crucial for development of mammary glands,[260] lymph nodes, and DC–T-cell interactions.[261,262] Bone remodeling needed to sustain skeletal integrity and calcium homeostasis is regulated by a dynamic equilibrium between osteoblasts (bone forming) and osteoclasts (bone resorbing), which is regulated by RANKL-RANK-OPG system. Dysregulation of the RANKL-RANK-OPG system has consequences in inflammatory, osteologic, and cancer pathophysiology, such as bone loss in inflammatory autoimmune diseases, preferential breast and prostate tumor metastasis to the bone, and gender bias in osteoporosis.

OPG functions as a decoy receptor that binds RANKL with high affinity, and also binds TRAIL, albeit at low affinity in comparison to RANKL.[263,264] Despite such a weak binding, in vitro studies show that OPG can block TRAIL-mediated apoptosis, which suggests the OPG-TRAIL system contributes to osteoclastogenesis. RANK interacts with TRAF2, 5, and 6. The membrane-proximal TRAF site is highly specific for TRAF6, and several studies have shown TRAF6 to be essential in RANKL-RANK signaling in osteoclastogenesis and lymph node genesis.[265,266] Several "osteotropic" factors have been reported to regulate RANKL and OPG expression in osteoblast and osteoclast lineages, such as transforming growth factor β, IL-1, TNF, estrogen, prostaglandin E2, glucocorticoids, and vitamin D3.[265,267] In a few cases, OPG and RANKL are differentially modulated by the same factor; for example, parathyroid-related protein increases RANKL while decreasing OPG mRNA expression in osteoclast-like odontoclasts.[268] The components in the RANK signaling triad are widely expressed. RANK is upregulated on CD40L-stimulated maturing DCs, while RANKL is upregulated during T-cell activation and is constitutively expressed in some tumors and mammary gland epithelial cells.

RANK−/− and TRAF6−/− mice lack NF-κB activation in osteoclasts and exhibit abnormally high bone density (osteopetrosis).[269,270] Osteoblasts and stromal cells stimulate differentiation via direct cell contact with osteoclast precursors. Macrophage colony stimulating factor cooperates with RANKL-expressing osteoblasts to transmit positive signals through c-Fms and RANK expressed on precursors promoting their differentiation,[259] whereas OPG negatively regulates by competitively binding RANKL, thus ablating all signals through RANK. RANK−/− and RANKL−/− mice phenocopy each other, displaying severe osteopetrosis due to the lack of osteoclasts.[271] Complementing the observations in RANKL and RANK deficiencies, OPG blocks osteoclast differentiation in a dose-dependent manner. OPG overexpression in transgenic mice causes acute osteopetrosis, while OPG-deficient mice suffer from osteoporosis due to excessive osteoclastogenesis. In humans, OPG and RANK mutations are linked to juvenile Paget disease, familial expansile osteolysis, and other osteolytic disorders.[258,265]

The RANKL-RANK system is proving to be an important enhancer of cell-mediated immune responses by promoting DC survival and naïve T-cell proliferation. RANKL stimulates DCs to produce proinflammatory cytokines like IL-12.[272,273] The RANK pathway may serve to bolster CD40-CD40L interaction between DC and T cells after T-cell receptor stimulation, or prolong survival of activated DCs to ensure the establishment of T-cell memory. For instance, in CD40L−/− mice, RANKL-RANK costimulation is protective against *Leishmania* infection by inducing IL-12 secretion and consequent T_H1 immune response.[274]

Bone loss in autoimmune and infectious models of inflammatory disease is mediated through slightly different mechanisms. In recent studies, activated, CD4+RANKL+ T cells have been shown to support osteoclastogenesis and mediate bone loss in humanized mouse models of *Actinobacillus*-specific periodontal disease, suggesting a role for T_H1 immunity in inflammatory bone destruction.[275,276] In patients with human immunodeficiency virus, the viron envelop gp120 induces disease-related osteoporosis via induction of RANKL on CD4+ T cells and augmentation of osteoclastogenesis.[277]

In mouse models of tumor metastasis, high OPG and RANK levels are risk factors for metastasis to the bone and subsequent osteolysis, especially in breast tumors.[278] OPG from human bone marrow stroma can protect prostate tumors from TRAIL-mediated apoptosis,[279] and treatment with anti-TRAIL neutralizing antibodies reduces osteoclastogenesis in mixed lymphocyte-bone marrow cultures from patients with multiple myeloma, presumably by interfering with OPG-TRAIL complexes formed by activated T cells expressing TRAIL, OPG, and RANKL.[280] The

TABLE 27.8 Human Genetic Diseases Associated with the Tumor Necrosis Factor Superfamily

System	Disease	Mutation
TNFR1	Familial periodic fever	Mutation in first cysteine-rich domain
CD40 Ligand	Hyper-IgM syndrome	Multiple mutations affecting receptor binding and processing
EDA	X-linked hypohidrotic ectodermal dysplasia	Multiple mutations affecting receptor binding, trimerization, and secretion
RANK	Familial expansile osteolysis	Mutation in the signal peptide
Fas	Autoimmune lymphoproliferative syndrome	Multiple mutations/ deletion in Fas

CD, cluster of differentiation; EDA, ectodermal dysplasin A; Ig, immunoglobulin; TNFR, tumor necrosis factor receptor.

RANKL-RANK-OPG system has also been implicated in diabetes-associated osteopenia, as serum levels of OPG are higher in patients with type I and II diabetes.[281] Interestingly, these patients are at greater risk for developing atherosclerotic plaques, which is perhaps reflected in the phenotype of OPG-deficient mice. These mice suffer from arterial calcification,[282] presumably from unrestricted bone resorption and calcium release. Although elevated endogenous OPG levels are considered a risk factor in certain disease manifestations, the complexity of the cytokine networks that regulate RANKL-RANK-OPG interactions and vice versa render the clinical data difficult to interpret.

TUMOR NECROSIS FACTOR SUPERFAMILY IN THE THERAPY OF HUMAN DISEASE

Tumor Necrosis Factor Inhibitors

The TNFSF is associated with a wide range of human diseases, evidenced by genetic deficiencies or mutations in individual components of the TNFSF and in the therapeutic efficacy of TNF inhibitors in autoimmune diseases (Table 27.8). Although cancer therapy was the original motivation in developing TNF, the success of TNF inhibitors in limiting symptoms in several autoimmune diseases provides significant motivation to explore therapeutics targeting other members of the TNFSF, currently an active area of research. Research into the function of TNFSF in human diseases is providing strong rationale for testing both inhibitors and agonists of these cytokines (Table 27.9).

TNF inhibitors are specific antibodies or soluble receptors and are classified as biologics (protein-based drugs). These biologic-based drugs provide specificity and desirable pharmacodynamic properties (Fig. 27.8). Both antibody- and receptor-based drugs function as competitive antagonists, sterically hindering the binding of ligand to receptor. The approved antibody-based drugs include a partially humanized mouse monoclonal antibody to human TNF (infliximab), two fully human antibodies (adalimumab and golimumab), and a monovalent Fab fragment of a TNF antibody (certolizumab pegol). Certolizumab is derivatized with polyethylene glycol to enhance half-life. To create a soluble "decoy" receptor, the extracellular domain of TNFR-2 was genetically linked to the Fc region of human IgG1, forming a bivalent molecule (etanercept) that has higher avidity for TNF than naturally occurring soluble receptors. Etanercept binds both TNF and LTα, whereas anti-TNF antibodies are specific for TNF and do not cross-react with LTα.

TABLE 27.9 Tumor Necrosis Factor Superfamily Therapeutics

TNFRSF Member	Drug	Therapeutic Designation	Indication	Status
TNF	Chimeric Ab	Remicade (infliximab)	RA, Ps, IBD	Approved
TNF LTα	TNFR-Fc	Enbrel (etanercept)	RA, Ps	Approved
TNF	Hu Fab-PEG	Cimzia (certolizumab)	RA, Ps, IBD	Approved
TNF	Hu mAb	Humira (adalimumab)	RA, Ps, IBD	Approved
TNF	Hu mAb	Simponi (golimumab)	RA, Ps, IBD	Approved
BAFF	Hu mAb	Benlysta (belimumab)	Lupus	Approved
CD40 L	chimeric mAb	ruplizumab	Lupus	Stopped
"	Hu Fab-PEG	CDP7657	Lupus	In trials
RANK L	Hu mAb	Prolia (denosumab)	Osteoporosis	Approved
"	Hu mAb	Xgeva (denosumab)	Bone metastasis	Approved
TRAIL	Recom cytokine		Cancer	In trials
TRAILR1	Hu mAb	mapatumumab	Cancer	In trials
TRAILR2	Hu mAb	conatumumab	Cancer	In trials
LTβR	LTβR-Fc	baminercept	Autoimmune diseases	In trials
LTα	Hu mAb	MLTA3698A	Autoimmune disease	In trials
OX40	chimeric mAb	9B12	Cancer	In trials
TWEAK	chimeric mAb	BIIB 023	Lupus nephritis	In trials

Fab-PEG, fragment of antibody polyethyleneglycoylated; IBD, inflammatory bowel diseases; LT, lymphotoxin; Ps, psoriasis; RA, rheumatoid arthritis; TNF, tumor necrosis factor; TNFR, tumor necrosis factor receptor; TNFRSF, tumor necrosis factor receptor superfamily.

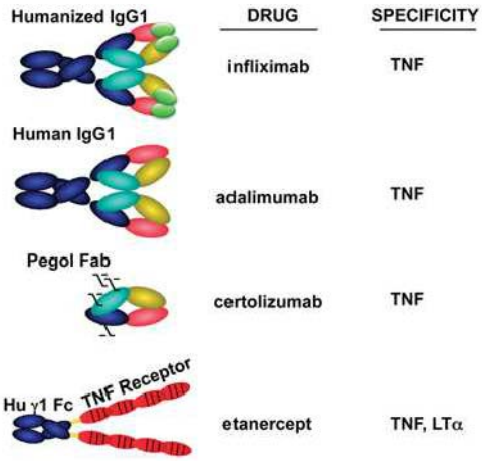


FIG. 27.8. Tumor Necrosis Factor (TNF) Inhibitors. The diagram depicts the structural features of the antibody- and receptor-based drugs targeted at TNF that are approved for use in patients with autoimmune diseases. Monoclonal antibody specific for human TNF derived from mice and partially humanized (infliximab), a fully human antibody (adalimumab) containing both heavy and light immunoglobulin chains, and an antibody-binding fragment (Fab) of a human anti-TNF antibody (certolizumab). Certolizumab is monovalent and derivatized with polyethyleneglycol to extend half-life in vivo. TNF decoy receptor (etanercept) created as a genetic fusion protein of the ectodomain of TNF receptor 2 with the Fc region of human immunoglobulin G1 forms a disulfide-linked dimer. Both immunoglobulin and receptor-based inhibitors are approved for use in treating autoimmune diseases: rheumatoid arthritis, psoriasis, and inflammatory bowel diseases.

Bivalent antibodies directed to TNFRs can function as agonists, mimicking the ligand but specific for a single receptor, a feature that may distinguish an antibody from ligand such as TRAIL, which has multiple receptors. Moreover, antibodies are inherently more stable than the native ligand, providing better pharmacodynamics (serum half-life and bioavailability). Agonist receptor antibodies (eg, anti-TRAILR, anti-Ox40) are in preclinical studies and clinical trials.

Impact of Tumor Necrosis Factor Blockade in Inflammatory Diseases

TNF inhibitors are approved for use in the treatment of RA, psoriatic arthritis, ankylosing spondylitis, juvenile rheumatoid arthritis, Crohn disease, and ulcerative colitis. RA is a chronic autoimmune joint disease that occurs in genetically predisposed individuals. Treatment of RA is usually initiated with disease-modifying antirheumatic drugs such as methotrexate or corticosteroids to improve symptoms and reduce joint damage. The American College of Rheumatology uses clinical and laboratory measures to assess improvement in response to therapy in RA. A patient with a 70% or greater improvement according to these parameters is designated as having an ACR-70 response. TNF inhibitors in combination with methotrexate (the most widely used disease-modifying antirheumatic drugs) produce ACR-70 responses in 33% to 40% of patients with early RA and in 10% to 27% in established RA. In comparison to patients receiving methotrexate alone, the ACR-70 responses occurred in 19% to 21% of early RA patients and fewer than 5% of patients with established disease.[283] In RA, joint damage begins early in the disease course as articular erosions when visualized by radiographic techniques in 40% of patients in the first year of disease and 90% by the second year.[284] TNF inhibitors slow radiographic progression in RA.[285] Interestingly, in a randomized controlled trial of 428 patients with active RA, the combination of infliximab and methotrexate reduced the radiographic progression.[286]

The inflammatory bowel diseases, ulcerative colitis (limited to colon and bowel), and Crohn disease (entire intestine) are chronic inflammatory conditions where TNF is disproportionately expressed when the disease is active. Monocytes from patients with inflammatory bowel disease produce significantly higher levels of TNF after stimulation by lipopolysaccharide.[287] The formation of fistulating inflammatory granulomas is a pathologic feature of Crohn disease. Clinical trials demonstrated an initial response in 59% to 69% of patients, and a dose-dependent clinical remission that ranged between 28% to 38% in nonfistulating Crohn disease and 64% to 97% of patients with complete fistula disease, when categorized by location.[288,289] In ulcerative colitis, controlled trials (800 patients with active ulcerative colitis) showed an initial response in 8 weeks with 65% response in patients treated with anti-TNF (infliximab) versus 35% in the placebo group, with remission achieved in 35% and 15% in patients treated with infliximab and placebo, respectively.[290] Anti-TNF (adalimumab) was efficacious in controlled trials in patients with moderate to severe Crohn disease.[288] By contrast, soluble TNFR2-Fc (etanercept) at doses known to be effective in RA failed to produce benefit in a controlled trial for Crohn disease.[291]

Erythrosquamous lesions containing infiltrating leukocytes and epidermal hypertrophy characterize psoriasis, a chronic inflammatory skin disease. Skin lesions of psoriatic patients contain elevated levels of TNF, and following treatment with TNF inhibitors, serum and skin levels of TNF decrease with remarkable clinical response.[292,293] A significant subset of patients with psoriasis develops inflammatory, erosive arthritis.[294] In clinical trials, both etanercept and infliximab significantly inhibited disease activity and improved the quality of life in patients with psoriatic arthritis.[295–299]

Serious Adverse Effects

TNF inhibitors are inherently safe because of their specificity. However, side effects occur with the use of TNF inhibitors and include lupus-like syndrome, aplastic anemia, hepatotoxicity, interstitial lung disease, optic neuritis, and exacerbations of quiescent multiple sclerosis. TNF inhibition is associated with diminished host defense, perhaps expected based on the role of TNF in innate and adaptive immune responses. The rate of serious skin and soft-tissue infections is higher in treated patients, and there is an increase risk of intracellular bacterial infections, primary tuberculosis and reactivation of latent

Mycobacterium tuberculosis among patients treated with TNF inhibitors.[300,301] Risk due to infection can be minimized and controlled (eg, a tuberculosis skin test prior to treatment in patients that have not been previously vaccinated for *Mycobacterium*). The contribution of anti-TNF therapy to the increase the risk of cancer is still unclear. A systematic review of randomized clinical trials using infliximab and adalimumab found a dose-related increase of malignancies in patients with RA patients.[302] Some of the increase risk of malignancy (ie, lymphoma) is difficult to dissect due to the increased association of lymphoma with RA.[301] TNF has been implicated in the pathogenesis of cardiac dysfunction, in part due to the negative ionotropic activities in vitro and in vivo; however, TNF blockade significantly increased the incidence of cardiac death. This observation led to the recommendation that TNF inhibitors be discontinued in patients with cardiac dysfunction.[303–305] Limiting adverse effects have been observed with biologics targeting other TNFSF members. Although interference with CD40L ameliorated autoimmune disease and allograft rejection in animal models,[306–310] anti-CD40L had an unacceptable impact on platelet function in transplantation and autoimmune diseases. The use of monovalent Fab of anti-CD40L may avoid these problems.[311–313] Another TNFRSF member, OPG, was dropped out of clinical investigation because the recombinant protein induced antibody responses that limited its therapeutic effects. Thus, dose- or mechanism-limiting toxicities can impact physiology in unanticipated ways, limiting successful clinical outcomes.

Anti-RANK Ligand

The central function of RANK-RANKL system in osteoclastogenesis has led to the development of anti-RANKL antibodies to treat bone-resorbing conditions. Human anti-RANKL monoclonal antibody (denosumab) to disrupt RANKL-RANK signaling has been approved for the treatment of osteoporosis in postmenopausal women and for treatment of skeletal changes from metastasis of solid tumors. Anti-RANKL therapy reduces osteoclastic bone resorption, thereby increasing bone mineral density at both the lumbar spine and the hip. Treatment with anti-RANKL for 36 months decreased the risk of vertebral, nonvertebral, and hip fractures.[314] There is no apparent increased risk of cancer or serious infection associated with anti-RANKL therapy in subjects with osteoporosis, although longer study periods are needed.

Treatment of patients with prostate cancer with androgen deprivation therapy and patients with breast cancer with aromatase inhibitors leads to increased bone loss and increased risk of fracture. Anti-RANKL is prescribed to increase bone mass both of these patient populations.[315,316] In a double-blind phase III clinical trial, women with nonmetastatic breast cancer who received anti-RANKL therapy had an increased lumbar spine bone mineral density of 7.6% after 24 months of treatment compared to placebo.[316] Similarly, patients with prostate cancer on androgen deprivation therapy that were treated with anti-RANKL in a phase III clinical trial had increased bone mineral density at all measured sites (hip, femoral neck, radius, and whole body) compared to placebo.[315] Anti-RANKL reduced the overall risk of bone fracture in the prostate cancer trial, while the phase III trial of patients with breast cancer treated with aromatase inhibitors was not designed to evaluate risk of fracture.[315,316]

In addition to patients with prostate and patients with breast cancer undergoing hormone deprivation therapy, anti-RANKL aids in prevention of skeletal-related events in patients with bone metastasis from solid tumors.[317–319] Three independent phase III clinical trials compared anti-RANKL with zoledronic acid, a drug prescribed to alleviate bone pain and reduce fracture risk in cancer patients with bone metastasis.[317–319] Anti-RANKL therapy delayed the time to the first skeletal changes in patients with metastatic breast cancer and metastatic, castration-resistant prostate cancer.[317,319] In a third phase III trial of patients with solid tumors (excluding breast and prostate) or multiple myeloma, anti-RANKL was equivalent to zoledronic acid in reducing fracture risk.[318]

Anti-BAFF

Systemic lupus erythematous is characterized by hyperreactive B cells, production of antideoxyribonucleic acid antibodies, and overproduction of BAFF.[320,321] The anti-BAFF antibody (belimumab) was approved in 2011 for the treatment of systemic lupus erythematosus, becoming the first new drug to gain approval for the condition in 56 years. In a phase III clinical trial, anti-BAFF decreased the rate of disease flares and increased the time between disease flares compared with placebo.[322] Anti-BAFF treatment increased systemic lupus erythematosus responder index (a reduction of SELENA-SLEDAI score of four or more points) compared to placebo.[322]

Tumor Necrosis Factor Superfamily in Cancer Therapy

Tumor angiogenesis, the formation of vessels to support cancer growth, is a process essential for tumor growth. The ability of TNF to induce apoptosis of tumor-associated endothelial cells can result in the impairment of the tumor vasculature leading to necrosis of the tumor. This mechanism involves perturbation of cell-cell adhesive junctions and inhibition of $\alpha v\beta 3$-integrin signaling in tumor-associated vessels.[323] However, clinical phase I and II studies in cancer patients receiving recombinant TNF reported "septic shock–like syndrome," a dose-limiting toxicity in quantities 10 times lower than the calculated antitumor dose extrapolated from animal studies.[324,325] Animal studies also revealed the strong hemodynamic effects of TNF in the mediation of septic shock.[326] Although there are anecdotic reports of tumor regression following TNF administration,[327] due to the induction of vasoplegia, TNF use as an antitumor agent has been limited to treatment of locally advanced tumors by isolated limb perfusion, which limits systemic toxicity of TNF.[328]

A number of studies are in progress to determine whether TRAIL and its death receptors can be used in treatment of

cancer.[329] In phase 1/2 studies, TRAIL and agonist mAb to TRAILR1 or R2 showed no dose-limiting toxicities.[330–333]

Early clinical trials are in progress for other members of the TNFSF. For example, antibodies to LTα and LTβR-Fc decoy are in clinical trials for suppressing inflammation in autoimmune diseases. Agonist antibodies to OX40 appear promising for induction of tumor immunity.[334] Redirecting T cells using a retroviral-based vector incorporating 41BB can eliminate leukemic cells.[335] It is not surprising that several other TNFSF systems are being targeted to modify inflammatory, infectious, and malignant diseases.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

The author gratefully recognizes the research assistance of Dr. John Sedy, Dr. Ryan Bjordahl, and Dr. Akhil Rajput. The National Institutes of Health (R37AI33068) provided support for this endeavor.

REFERENCES

1. Hymowitz SG, Compaan DM, Yan M, et al. The crystal structures of EDA-A1 and EDA-A2: splice variants with distinct receptor specificity. *Structure*. 2003;11:1513–1520. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14656435
2. Gordon NC, Pan B, Hymowitz SG, et al. BAFF/BLyS receptor 3 comprises a minimal TNF receptor-like module that encodes a highly focused ligand-binding site. *Biochemistry*. 2003;42:5977–5983. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12755599
3. Cha SS, Kim MS, Choi YH, et al. 2.8 A resolution crystal structure of human TRAIL, a cytokine with selective antitumor activity. *Immunity*. 1999;11:253–261. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10485660
4. Jones EY, Stuart DI, Walker NP. Crystal structure of TNF. *Immunol Ser*. 1992;56:93–127. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1550878
5. Eck MJ, Ultsch M, Rinderknecht E, de Vos AM, Sprang SR. The structure of human lymphotoxin (tumor necrosis factor-b) at 1.9-A resolution. *J Biol Chem*. 1992;267:2119–2122. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1733919
6. Browning JL, Ngam-ek A, Lawton P, et al. Lymphotoxin b, a novel member of the TNF family that forms a heteromeric complex with lymphotoxin on the cell surface. *Cell*. 1993;72:847–856. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7916655
7. Roschke V, Sosnovtseva S, Ward CD, et al. BLyS and APRIL form biologically active heterotrimers that are expressed in patients with systemic immune-based rheumatic diseases. *J Immunol*. 2002;169:4314–4321. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12370363
8. Kishore U, Gaboriaud C, Waters P, et al. C1q and tumor necrosis factor superfamily: modularity and versatility. *Trends Immunol*. 2004;25:551–561. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15364058
9. Pradet-Balade B, Medema JP, Lopez-Fraga M, et al. An endogenous hybrid mRNA encodes TWE-PRIL, a functional cell surface TWEAK-APRIL fusion protein. *EMBO J*. 2002;21:5711–5720. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12411489
10. Yan M, Wang LC, Hymowitz SG, et al. Two-amino acid molecular switch in an epithelial morphogen that regulates binding to two distinct receptors. *Science*. 2000;523–527. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11039935
11. Granger SW, Butrovich KD, Houshmand P, Edwards WR, Ware CF. Genomic characterization of LIGHT reveals linkage to an immune response locus on chromosome 19p13.3 and distinct isoforms generated by alternate splicing or proteolysis. *J Immunol*. 2001;167:5122–5128. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11673523
12. Muller U, Jongeneel CV, Nedospasov SA, Lindahl KF, Steinmetz M. Tumour necrosis factor and lymphotoxin genes map close to H-2D in the mouse major histocompatibility complex. *Nature*. 1987;325:265–267. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3027565
13. Flajnik MF, Kasahara M. Comparative genomics of the MHC: glimpses into the evolution of the adaptive immune system. *Immunity*. 2001;15:351–362. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11567626
14. Igaki T, Kanda H, Yamamoto-Goto Y, et al. Eiger, a TNF superfamily ligand that triggers the Drosophila JNK pathway. *EMBO J*. 2002;21:3009–3018. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12065414
15. Kauppila S, Maaty WS, Chen P, et al. Eiger and its receptor, Wengen, comprise a TNF-like system in Drosophila. *Oncogene*. 2003;22:4860–4867. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12894227
16. Moreno E, Yan M, Basler K. Evolution of TNF signaling mechanisms: JNK-dependent apoptosis triggered by Eiger, the Drosophila homolog of the TNF superfamily. *Curr Biol*. 2002;12:1263–1268. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12176339
17. Banner DW, D'Arcy A, Janes W, et al. Crystal structure of the soluble human 55 kd TNF receptor-human TNF beta complex: implications for TNF receptor activation. *Cell*. 1993;73:431–445. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8387891
18. CarfiA, Willis SH, Whitbeck JC, et al. Herpes simplex virus glycoprotein D bound to the human receptor HveA. *Molecular Cell*. 2001;8:169–179. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11511370
19. Hymowitz SG, Patel DR, Wallweber HJ, et al. Structures of APRIL-receptor complexes: like BCMA, TACI employs only a single cysteine-rich domain for high affinity ligand binding. *J Biol Chem*. 2005;280:7218–7227. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15542592
20. Bossen C, Ingold K, Tardivel A, et al. Interactions of tumor necrosis factor (TNF) and TNF receptor family members in the mouse and human. *J Biol Chem*. 2006;281:13964–13971. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16547002
21. Engelmann H, Holtmann H, Brakebusch C, et al. Antibodies to a soluble form of a tumor necrosis factor (TNF) receptor have TNF-like activity. *J Biol Chem*. 1990;265:14497–14504. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1696947
22. Li B, Russell SJ, Compaan DM, et al. Activation of the proapoptotic death receptor DR5 by oligomeric peptide and antibody agonists. *J Mol Biol*. 2006;361:522–536. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16859704
23. Holler N, Tardivel A, Kovacsovics-Bankowski M, et al. Two adjacent trimeric Fas ligands are required for Fas signaling and formation of a death-inducing signaling complex. *Mol Cell Biol*. 2003;23:1428–1440. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12556501
24. Liu Y, Hong X, Kappler J, et al. Ligand-receptor binding revealed by the TNF family member TALL-1. *Nature*. 2003;423:49–56. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12721620
25. Boldin MP, Mett IL, Varfolomeev EE, et al. Self-association of the "Death domains" of the p55 tumor necrosis factor (TNF) receptor and Fas/APO1 prompts signaling for TNF and Fas/APO1 effects. *J Biol Chem*. 1995;270:387–391. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7529234
26. Chan FK, Chun HJ, Zheng L, Siegel RM, Bui KL, Lenardo MJ. A domain in TNF receptors that mediates ligand-independent receptor assembly and signaling. *Science*. 2000;288:2351–2354. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10875917
27. Lobito AA, Kimberley FC, Muppidi JR, et al. Abnormal disulfide-linked oligomerization results in ER retention and altered signaling by TNFR1 mutants in TNFR1-associated periodic fever syndrome (TRAPS). *Blood*. 2006;108:1320–1327. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16684962
28. He XL, Garcia KC. Structure of nerve growth factor complexed with the shared neurotrophin receptor p75. *Science*. 2004;304:870–875. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15131306
29. Shao Z, Browning JL, Lee X, et al. TAJ/TROY, an orphan TNF receptor family member, binds Nogo-66 receptor 1 and regulates axonal regeneration. *Neuron*. 2005;45:353–359. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15694322
30. Park JB, Yiu G, Kaneko S, et al. A TNF receptor family member, TROY, is a coreceptor with Nogo receptor in mediating the inhibitory activity of myelin inhibitors. *Neuron*. 2005;45:345–351. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15694321
31. Sedy JR, Gavrieli M, Potter KG, et al. B and T lymphocyte attenuator regulates T cell activation through interaction with herpesvirus entry mediator. *Nat Immunol*. 2005;6:90–98. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15568026
32. Cai G, Anumanthan A, Brown JA, Greenfield EA, Zhu B, Freeman GJ. CD160 inhibits activation of human CD4+ T cells through interaction with herpesvirus entry mediator. *Nat Immunol*. 2008;9:176–185. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18193050
33. Montgomery RI, Warner MS, Lum B, Spear PG. Herpes simplex virus 1 entry into cells mediated by a novel member of the TNF/NGF receptor family. *Cell*. 1996;87:427–436. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8898196
34. Compaan DM, Gonzalez LC, Tom I, Loyet KM, Eaton D, Hymowitz SG. Attenuating lymphocyte activity: the crystal structure of the BTLA-HVEM complex. *J Biol Chem*. 2005;280:39553–39561. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16169851
35. Cheung TC, Humphreys IR, Potter KG, et al. Evolutionarily divergent herpesviruses modulate T cell activation by targeting the herpes-virus entry mediator cosignaling pathway. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2005;102:13218–13223. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16131544
36. Tang W, Lu Y, Tian QY, et al. The growth factor progranulin binds to TNF receptors and is therapeutic against inflammatory arthritis in mice. *Science*. 2011;332:478–484. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21393509

37. Lobito AA, Ramani SR, Tom I, et al. Murine insulin growth factor-like (IGFL) and human IGFL1 proteins are induced in inflammatory skin conditions and bind to a novel tumor necrosis factor receptor family member, IGFLR1. *J Biol Chem*. 2011;286:18969–18981. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21454693
38. Nikolaev A, McLaughlin T, O'Leary DD, Tessier-Lavigne M. APP binds DR6 to trigger axon pruning and neuron death via distinct caspases. *Nature*. 2009;457:981–989. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19225519
39. Ponomarev SY, Audie J. Computational prediction and analysis of the DR6-NAPP interaction. *Proteins*. 2011;79:1376–1395. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21337622
40. Mi S, Lee X, Hu Y, et al. Death receptor 6 negatively regulates oligodendrocyte survival, maturation and myelination. *Nat Med*. 2011;17:816–821. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21725297
41. Schmidt CS, Zhao J, Chain J, et al. Resistance to myelin oligodendrocyte glycoprotein-induced experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis by death receptor 6-deficient mice. *J Immunol*. 2005;175:2286–2292. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16081797
42. Benedict CA. Viruses and the TNF-related cytokines, an evolving battle. *Cytokine Growth Factor Rev*. 2003;14:349–357. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12787571
43. Smith CA, Davis T, Anderson D, et al. A receptor for tumor necrosis factor defines an unusual family of cellular and viral proteins. *Science*. 1990;248:1019–1023. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2160731
44. Upton C, Macen J, Schreiber M, McFadden G. Myxoma virus expresses a secreted protein with homology to the tumor necrosis factor receptor gene family that contributes to viral virulence. *Virology*. 1991;184:370–382. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1651597
45. Rahman MM, McFadden G. Modulation of tumor necrosis factor by microbial pathogens. *PLoS Pathog*. 2006;2:e4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16518473
46. Massung RF, Esposito JJ, Liu LI, et al. Potential virulence determinants in terminal regions of variola smallpox virus genome [see comments]. *Nature*. 1993;366:748–751. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8264798
47. Kontoyiannis D, Pasparakis M, Pizarro TT, Cominelli F, Kollias G. Impaired on/off regulation of TNF biosynthesis in mice lacking TNF AU-rich elements: implications for joint and gut-associated immunopathologies. *Immunity*. 1999;10:387–398. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10204494
48. Kontoyiannis D, Boulougouris G, Manoloukos M, et al. Genetic dissection of the cellular pathways and signaling mechanisms in modeled tumor necrosis factor-induced Crohn's-like inflammatory bowel disease. *J Exp Med*. 2002;196:1563–1574. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12486099
49. Boatright KM, Salvesen GS. Mechanisms of caspase activation. *Curr Opin Cell Biol*. 2003;15:725–731. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14644197
50. Green DR, Galluzzi L, Kroemer G. Mitochondria and the autophagy-inflammation-cell death axis in organismal aging. *Science*. 2011;333:1109–1112. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21868666
51. Scott FL, Stec B, Pop C, et al. The Fas-FADD death domain complex structure unravels signalling by receptor clustering. *Nature*. 2009;457:1019–1022. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19118384
52. Sun SC. Non-canonical NF-kappaB signaling pathway. *Cell Res*. 2011;21:71–85. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21173796
53. Hacker H, Tseng PH, Karin M. Expanding TRAF function: TRAF3 as a tri-faced immune regulator. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2011;11:457–468. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21660053
54. Zheng C, Kabaleeswaran V, Wang Y, Cheng G, Wu H. Crystal structures of the TRAF2: cIAP2 and the TRAF1: TRAF2: cIAP2 complexes: affinity, specificity, and regulation. *Mol Cell*. 2010;38:101–113. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20385093
55. Walczak H. TNF and ubiquitin at the crossroads of gene activation, cell death, inflammation, and cancer. *Immunol Rev*. 2011;244:9–28. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22017428
56. Silke J. The regulation of TNF signalling: what a tangled web we weave. *Curr Opin Immunol*. 2011;23:620–626. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21920725
57. Belgnaoui SM, Paz S, Hiscott J. Orchestrating the interferon antiviral response through the mitochondrial antiviral signaling (MAVS) adapter. *Curr Opin Immunol*. 2011;23:564–572. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21865020
58. Ely KR, Li C. Structurally adaptive hot spots at a protein interaction interface on TRAF3. *J Mol Recognit*. 2002;15:286–290. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12447905
59. Oganesyan G, Saha SK, Guo B, et al. Critical role of TRAF3 in the Toll-like receptor-dependent and -independent antiviral response. *Nature*. 2006;439:208–211. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16306936
60. Ghosh S, May M, Kopp E. NF-kB and REL proteins: evolutionarily conserved mediators of immune responses. *Ann Rev Immunol*. 1998;16:225–260. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9597130
61. Karin M, Ben-Neriah Y. Phosphorylation meets ubiquitination: the control of NF-[kappa]B activity. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 2000;18:621–663. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10837071
62. Schrofelbauer B, Hoffmann A. How do pleiotropic kinase hubs mediate specific signaling by TNFR superfamily members? *Immunol Rev*. 2011;244:29–43. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22017429
63. Ghosh S, Karin M. Missing pieces in the NF-kappaB puzzle. *Cell*. 2002;109(Supp l):S81–S96. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11983155
64. Sanjo H, Zajonc DM, Braden R, Norris PS, Ware CF. Allosteric regulation of the ubiquitin:NIK and ubiquitin:TRAF3 E3 ligases by the lymphotoxin-β receptor. *J Biol Chem*. 2010;285:17148–17155. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20348096
65. Pomerantz JL, Baltimore D. Two pathways to NF-kappaB. *Mol Cell*. 2002;10:693–695. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12419209
66. Dejardin E, Droin NM, Delhase M, et al. The lymphotoxin-beta receptor induces different patterns of gene expression via two NF-kappaB pathways. *Immunity*. 2002;17:525–535. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12387745
67. Ramakrishnan P, Wang W, Wallach D. Receptor-specific signaling for both the alternative and the canonical NF-kappaB activation pathways by NF-kappaB-inducing kinase. *Immunity*. 2004;21:477–489. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15485626
68. Staudt LM. Oncogenic activation of NF-kappaB. *Cold Spring Harb Perspect Biol*. 2010;2:a000109. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20516126
69. Kollias G. TNF pathophysiology in murine models of chronic inflammation and autoimmunity. *Semin Arthritis Rheum*. 2005;34:3–6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15852247
70. Ware CF. Network communications: lymphotoxins, LIGHT, and TNF. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 2005;23:787–819. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15771586
71. McCarthy DD, Summers-Deluca L, Vu F, Chiu S, Gao Y, Gommerman JL. The lymphotoxin pathway: beyond lymph node development. *Immunol Res*. 2006;35:41–54. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17003508
72. Sedy JR, Spear PG, Ware CF. Cross-regulation between herpesviruses and the TNF superfamily members. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2008;8:861–873. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18949019
73. Kulbe H, Thompson R, Wilson JL, et al. The inflammatory cytokine tumor necrosis factor-alpha generates an autocrine tumor-promoting network in epithelial ovarian cancer cells. *Cancer Res*. 2007;67:585–592. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17234767
74. Balkwill F. TNF-alpha in promotion and progression of cancer. *Cancer Metastasis Rev*. 2006;25:409–416. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16951987
75. Karin M. Nuclear factor-kappaB in cancer development and progression. *Nature*. 2006;441:431–436. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16724054
76. De Togni P, Goellner J, Ruddle NH, et al. Abnormal development of peripheral lymphoid organs in mice deficient in lymphotoxin. *Science*. 1994;264:703–706. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8171322
77. Cupedo T, Mebius RE. Cellular interactions in lymph node development. *J Immunol*. 2005;174:21–25. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15611222

78. Georgopoulos K, Bigby M, Wang J, et al. The Ikaros gene is required for the development of all lymphoid lineages. *Cell*. 1994;79:143–156. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7923373
79. Yokota Y, Mansouri A, Mori S, et al. Development of peripheral lymphoid organs and natural killer cells depends on the helix-loop-helix inhibitor Id2. *Nature*. 1999;397:702–706. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10067894
80. Sun Z, Unutmaz D, Zou YR, et al. Requirement for RORgamma in thymocyte survival and lymphoid organ development. *Science*. 2000; 288:2369–2373. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10875923
81. Kurebayashi S, Ueda E, Sakaue M, et al. Retinoid-related orphan receptor gamma (RORgamma) is essential for lymphoid organogenesis and controls apoptosis during thymopoiesis. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2000;97:10132–10137. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10963675
82. Eberl G, Marmon S, Sunshine MJ, Rennert PD, Choi Y, Littman DR. An essential function for the nuclear receptor RORgamma(t) in the generation of fetal lymphoid tissue inducer cells. *Nat Immunol*. 2004;5:64–73. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14691482
83. Rennert PD, Browning JL, Mebius R, Mackay F, Hochman PS. Surface lymphotoxin a/b complex is required for the development of peripheral lymphoid organs. *J Exp Med*. 1996;184:1999–2006. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8920886
84. Nishikawa S, Honda K, Vieira P, Yoshida H. Organogenesis of peripheral lymphoid organs. *Immunol Rev*. 2003;195:72–80. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12969311
85. Lane PJ, Gaspal FM, Kim MY. Two sides of a cellular coin: CD4(+) CD3– cells regulate memory responses and lymphnode organization. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2005;5:655–660. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16034364
86. Eberl G. Inducible lymphoid tissues in the adult gut: recapitulation of a fetal developmental pathway? *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2005;5:413–420. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15841100
87. Mebius RE, Kraal G. Structure and function of the spleen. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2005;5:606–616. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16056254
88. Cyster JG. Lymphoid organ development and cell migration. *Immunol Rev*. 2003;195:5–14. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12969306
89. Ngo VN, Korner H, Gunn MD, et al. Lymphotoxin alpha/beta and tumor necrosis factor are required for stromal cell expression of homing chemokines in B and T cell areas of the spleen. *J Exp Med*. 1999;189: 403–412. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9892622
90. Luther SA, Bidgol A, Hargreaves DC, et al. Differing activities of homeostatic chemokines CCL19, CCL21, and CXCL12 in lymphocyte and dendritic cell recruitment and lymphoid neogenesis. *J Immunol*. 2002;169:424–433. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12077273
91. Ansel KM, Ngo VN, Hyman PL, et al. A chemokine-driven positive feedback loop organizes lymphoid follicles. *Nature*. 2000;406:309–314. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10917533
92. Katakai T, Hara T, Sugai M, Gonda H, Shimizu A. Lymph node fibroblastic reticular cells construct the stromal reticulum via contact with lymphocytes. *J Exp Med*. 2004;200:783–795. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15381731
93. Benedict CA, De Trez C, Schneider K, Ha S, Patterson G, Ware CF. Specific remodeling of splenic architecture by cytomegalovirus. *PLoS Pathog*. 2006;2:164–174. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16518465
94. Drayton DL, Liao S, Mounzer RH, Ruddle NH. Lymphoid organ development: from ontogeny to neogenesis. *Nat Immunol*. 2006;7:344–353. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16550197
95. Kabashima K, Banks TA, Ansel KM, Lu TT, Ware CF, Cyster JG. Intrinsic lymphotoxin-beta receptor requirement for homeostasis of lymphoid tissue dendritic cells. *Immunity*. 2005;22:439–450. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15845449
96. Kindler V, Sappino AP, Grau GE, Piguet PF, Vassalli P. The inducing role of tumor necrosis factor in the development of bactericidal granulomas during BCG infection. *Cell*. 1989;56:731–740. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2647299
97. Elewaut D, Ware CF. The unconventional role of LTalphabeta in T cell differentiation. *Trends Immunol*. 2007;28(4):169–175. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17336158
98. Silva-Santos B, Pennington DJ, Hayday AC. Lymphotoxin-mediated regulation of gammadelta cell differentiation by alphabeta T cell progenitors. *Science*. 2005;307:925–928. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15591166
99. Boehm T, Scheu S, Pfeffer K, Bleul CC. Thymic medullary epithelial cell differentiation, thymocyte emigration, and the control of autoimmunity require lympho-epithelial cross talk via LTbetaR. *J Exp Med*. 2003; 198:757–769. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12953095
100. Elewaut D, Brossay L, Santee SM, et al. Membrane lymphotoxin is required early in ontogeny for development of different subpopulations of NK T cells. *J Immunol*. 2000;165:671–679. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10878339
101. Franki AS, Van Beneden K, Dewint P, et al. A unique lymphotoxin α beta-dependent pathway regulates thymic emigration of Vα14 invariant natural killer T cells. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2006;103:9160–9165. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16751279
102. Chin RK, Zhu M, Christiansen PA, et al. Lymphotoxin pathway-directed, autoimmune regulator-independent central tolerance to arthritogenic collagen. *J Immunol*. 2006;177:290–297. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16785524
103. Keffer J, Probert L, Cazlaris H, et al. Transgenic mice expressing human tumour necrosis factor: a predictive genetic model of arthritis. *EMBO J*. 1991;10:4025–4031. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1721867
104. Shaikh R, Santee S, Granger SW, et al. Constitutive expression of LIGHT on T cells leads to lymphocyte activation, inflammation and tissue destruction. *J Immunol*. 2001;167:6330–6337. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11714797
105. Wang J, Chun T, Lo JC, et al. The critical role of LIGHT, a TNF family member, in T cell development. *J Immunol*. 2001;167:5099–5105. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11673520
106. Drayton DL, Ying X, Lee J, Lesslauer W, Ruddle NH. Ectopic LT alpha beta directs lymphoid organ neogenesis with concomitant expression of peripheral node addressin and a HEV-restricted sulfotransferase. *J Exp Med*. 2003;197:1153–1163. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12732657
107. Beutler B, Cerami A. The biology of cachectin/TNF—a primary mediator of the host response. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 1989;7:625–655. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2540776
108. Pfeffer K, Matsuyama T, Kundig TM, et al. Mice deficient for the 55 kd tumor necrosis factor receptor are resistant to endotoxic shock, yet succumb to L. monocytogenes infection. *Cell*. 1993;73:457–467. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8387893
109. Rothe J, Lesslauer W, Lotscher H, et al. Mice lacking the tumour necrosis factor receptor 1 are resistant to TNF-mediated toxicity but highly susceptible to infection by Listeria monocytogenes. *Nature*. 1993;364:798–802. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8395024
110. Wallis RS, Broder MS, Wong JY, Hanson MA, Beenhouwer DO. Granulomatous infectious diseases associated with tumor necrosis factor antagonists. *Clin Infect Dis*. 2004;38:1261–1265. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15127338
111. Benedict CA, Banks TA, Ware CF. Death and survival: viral regulation of TNF signaling pathways. *Curr Opin Immunol*. 2003;15:59–65. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12495734
112. Sharpe AH, Freeman GJ. The B7-CD28 superfamily. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2002;2:116–126. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11910893
113. Egen JG, Kuhns MS, Allison JP. CTLA-4: new insights into its biological function and use in tumor immunotherapy. *Nat Immunol*. 2002;3: 611–618. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12087419
114. Riley JL, June CH. The CD28 family: a T-cell rheostat for therapeutic control of T-cell activation. *Blood*. 2005;105:13–21. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15353480
115. Greenwald RJ, Freeman GJ, Sharpe AH. The B7 Family Revisited. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 2005;23:515–548. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15771580
116. Watanabe N, Gavrieli M, Sedy JR, et al. BTLA is a lymphocyte inhibitory receptor with similarities to CTLA-4 and PD-1. *Nat Immunol*. 2003;4:670–679. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12796776

117. Han P, Goularte OD, Rufner K, Wilkinson B, Kaye J. An inhibitory Ig superfamily protein expressed by lymphocytes and APCs is also an early marker of thymocyte positive selection. *J Immunol*. 2004;172:5931–5939. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15128774
118. Granger SW, Ware CF. Commentary: turning on LIGHT. *J Clin Investigation*. 2001;108:1741–1742. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11748255
119. Locksley RM, Killeen N, Lenardo MJ. The TNF and TNF receptor superfamilies: integrating mammalian biology. *Cell*. 2001;104:487–501. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11239407
120. Croft M. Co-stimulatory members of the TNFR family: keys to effective T-cell immunity? *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2003;3:609–620. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12974476
121. Croft M. Costimulation of T cells by OX40, 4-1BB, and CD27. *Cytokine Growth Factor Rev*. 2003;14:265–273. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12787564
122. Watts TH. TNF/TNFR family members in costimulation of T cell responses. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 2005;23:23–68. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15771565
123. Toubi E, Shoenfeld Y. The role of CD40-CD154 interactions in autoimmunity and the benefit of disrupting this pathway. *Autoimmunity*. 2004;37:457–464. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15621572
124. Schneider P. The role of APRIL and BAFF in lymphocyte activation. *Curr Opin Immunol*. 2005;17:282–289. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15886118
125. Vonderheide RH, June CH. A translational bridge to cancer immunotherapy: exploiting costimulation and target antigens for active and passive T cell immunotherapy. *Immunol Res*. 2003;27:341–356. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12857980
126. Appleman LJ, Boussiotis VA. T cell anergy and costimulation. *Immunol Rev*. 2003;192:161–180. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12670403
127. Saito T, Yamasaki S. Negative feedback of T cell activation through inhibitory adapters and costimulatory receptors. *Immunol Rev*. 2003;192:143–160. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12670402
128. Subudhi SK, Alegre ML, Fu YX. The balance of immune responses: costimulation verse coinhibition. *J Mol Med*. 2005;83:193–202. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15630593
129. Yu P, Lee Y, Liu W, et al. Priming of naive T cells inside tumors leads to eradication of established tumors. *Nat Immunol*. 2004;5:141–149. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14704792
130. Hintzen RQ, Lens SM, Lammers K, Kuiper H, Beckmann MP, van Lier RA. Engagement of CD27 with its ligand CD70 provides a second signal for T cell activation. *J Immunol*. 1995;154:2612–2623. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7876536
131. Hendriks J, Gravestein LA, Tesselaar K, van Lier RA, Schumacher TN, Borst J. CD27 is required for generation and long-term maintenance of T cell immunity. *Nat Immunol*. 2000;1:433–440. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11062504
132. Bansal-Pakala P, Halteman BS, Cheng MH, Croft M. Costimulation of CD8 T cell responses by OX40. *J Immunol*. 2004;172:4821–4825. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15067059
133. Rogers PR, Song J, Gramaglia I, Killeen N, Croft M. OX40 promotes Bcl-xL and Bcl-2 expression and is essential for long-term survival ofCD4 T cells. *Immunity*. 2001;15:445–455. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11567634
134. Cooper D, Bansal-Pakala P, Croft M. 4-1BB (CD137) controls the clonal expansion and survival of CD8 T cells in vivo but does not contribute to the development of cytotoxicity. *Eur J Immunol*. 2002;32:521–529. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11828369
135. Podack ER, Strbo N, Sotosec V, Muta H. CD30-governor of memory T cells? *Ann N Y Acad Sci*. 2002;975:101–113. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12538158
136. Withers DR, Gaspal FM, Bekiaris V, et al. OX40 and CD30 signals in CD4(+) T-cell effector and memory function: a distinct role for lymphoid tissue inducer cells in maintaining CD4(+) T-cell memory but not effector function. *Immunol Rev*. 2011;244:134–148. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22017436
137. Bamias G, Mishina M, Nyce M, et al. Role of TL1A and its receptor DR3 in two models of chronic murine ileitis. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2006; 103:8441–8446. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16698931
138. Papadakis KA, Prehn JL, Landers C, et al. TL1A synergizes with IL-12 and IL-18 to enhance IFN-gamma production in human T cells and NK cells. *J Immunol*. 2004;172:7002–7007. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15153521
139. Meylan F, Richard AC, Siegel RM. TL1A and DR3, a TNF family ligand-receptor pair that promotes lymphocyte costimulation, mucosal hyperplasia, and autoimmune inflammation. *Immunol Rev*. 2011;244:188–196. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22017439
140. Dubois PC, Trynka G, Franke L, et al. Multiple common variants for celiac disease influencing immune gene expression. *Nat Genet*. 2010;42:295–302. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20190752
141. Barrett JC, Hansoul S, Nicolae DL, et al. Genome-wide association defines more than 30 distinct susceptibility loci for Crohn's disease. *Nat Genet*. 2008;40:955–962. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18587394
142. Wang J, Anders RA, Wang Y, et al. The critical role of LIGHT in promoting intestinal inflammation and Crohn's disease. *J Immunol*. 2003;174:8173–8182. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15944326
143. Shimizu J, Yamazaki S, Takahashi T, Ishida Y, Sakaguchi S. Stimulation of CD25+ CD4+ regulatory T cells through GITR breaks immunological self-tolerance. *Nat Immunol*. 2002;135–142. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11812990
144. Steinberg MW, Cheung TC, Ware CF. The signaling networks of the herpesvirus entry mediator (TNFRSF14) in immune regulation. *Immunol Rev*. 2011;244:169–187. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22017438
145. Murphy TL, Murphy KM. Slow down and survive: enigmatic immunoregulation by BTLA and HVEM. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 2010;28: 389–411. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20307212
146. Chemnitz JM, Lanfranco AR, Braunstein I, Riley JL. B and T lymphocyte attenuator-mediated signal transduction provides a potent inhibitory signal to primary human CD4 T cells that can be initiated by multiple phosphotyrosine motifs. *J Immunol*. 2006;176:6603–6614. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16709818
147. Vendel AC, Calemine-Fenaux J, Izrael-Tomasevic A, Chauhan V, Arnott D, Eaton DL. B and T lymphocyte attenuator regulates B cell receptor signaling by targeting Syk and BLNK. *J Immunol*. 2009;182: 1509–1517. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19155498
148. Ware CF, Sedy JR. TNF superfamily networks: bidirectional and interference pathways of the herpesvirus entry mediator (TNFSF14). *Curr Opin Immunol*. 2011;23(5):627–631. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21920726
149. Krieg C, Han P, Stone R, Goularte OD, Kaye J. Functional analysis of B and T lymphocyte attenuator engagement on CD4+ and CD8+ T cells. *J Immunol*. 2005;175:6420–6427. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16272294
150. Krieg C, Boyman O, Fu YX, Kaye J. B and T lymphocyte attenuator regulates CD8(+) T cell-intrinsic homeostasis and memory cell generation. *Nat Immunol*. 2007;8:162–171. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17206146
151. DeBenedette MA, Wen T, Bachmann MF, et al. Analysis of 4-1BB ligand (4-1BBL)-deficient mice and of mice lacking both 4-1BBL and CD28 reveals a role for 4-1BBL in skin allograft rejection and in the cytotoxic T cell response to influenza virus. *J Immunol*. 1999;163:4833–4841. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10528184
152. Tan JT, Whitmire JK, Murali-Krishna K, et al. 4-1BB costimulation is required for protective anti-viral immunity after peptide vaccination. *J Immunol*. 2000;164:2320–2325. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10679066
153. Dawicki W, Bertram EM, Sharpe AH, Watts TH. 4-1BB and OX40 act independently to facilitate robust CD8 and CD4 recall responses. *J Immunol*. 2004;173:5944–5951. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15528328
154. Soroosh P, Doherty TA, So T, et al. Herpesvirus entry mediator (TNFRSF14) regulates the persistence of T helper memory cell populations. *J Exp Med*. 2011;208:797–809. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21402741
155. Croft M. Control of immunity by the TNFR-related molecule OX40 (CD134). *Annu Rev Immunol*. 2010;28:57–78. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20307208

156. Kopf M, Ruedl C, Schmitz N, et al. OX40-deficient mice are defective in Th cell proliferation but are competent in generating B cell and CTL responses after virus infection. *Immunity*. 1999;11:699–708. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10626892
157. Yoshioka T, Nakajima A, Akiba H, et al. Contribution of OX40/OX40 ligand interaction to the pathogenesis of rheumatoid arthritis. *Eur J Immunol*. 2000;30:2815–2823. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11069062
158. Salek-Ardakani S, Song J, Halteman BS, et al. OX40 (CD134) controls memory T helper 2 cells that drive lung inflammation. *J Exp Med*. 2003;198:315–324. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12860930
159. Song A, Tang X, Harms KM, Croft M. OX40 and Bcl-xL promote the persistence of CD8 T cells to recall tumor-associated antigen. *J Immunol*. 2005;175:3534–3541. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16148096
160. Song J, So T, Cheng M, Tang X, Croft M. Sustained survivin expression from OX40 costimulatory signals drives T cell clonal expansion. *Immunity*. 2005;22:621–631. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15894279
161. Lee SW, Vella AT, Kwon BS, Croft M. Enhanced CD4 T cell responsiveness in the absence of 4-1BB. *J Immunol*. 2005;174:6803–6808. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15905521
162. Sun Y, Lin X, Chen HM, et al. Administration of agonistic anti-4-1BB monoclonal antibody leads to the amelioration of experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis. *J Immunol*. 2002;168:1457–1465. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11801689
163. Sun Y, Chen HM, Subudhi SK, et al. Costimulatory molecule-targeted antibody therapy of a spontaneous autoimmune disease. *Nat Med*. 2002;8:1405–1413. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12426559
164. Foell J, Strahotin S, O'Neil SP, et al. CD137 costimulatory T cell receptor engagement reverses acute disease in lupus-prone NZB x NZW F1 mice. *J Clin Invest*. 2003;111:1505–1518. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12750400
165. Seo SK, Choi JH, Kim YH, et al. 4-1BB-mediated immunotherapy of rheumatoid arthritis. *Nat Med*. 2004;10:1088–1094. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15448685
166. Serghides L, Bukczynski J, Wen T, et al. Evaluation of OX40 ligand as a costimulator of human antiviral memory CD8 T cell responses: comparison with B7.1 and 4-1BBL. *J Immunol*. 2005;175:6368–6377. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16272289
167. Lee SW, Park Y, Song A, Cheroutre H, Kwon BS, Croft M. Functional dichotomy between OX40 and 4-1BB in modulating effector CD8 T cell responses. *J Immunol*. 2006;177:4464–4472. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16982882
168. Wang Y, Subudhi SK, Anders RA, et al. The role of herpesvirus entry mediator as a negative regulator of T cell-mediated responses. *J Clin Invest*. 2005;115:711–717. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15696194
169. Truong W, Hancock WW, Anderson CC, Merani S, Shapiro AM. Coinhibitory T-cell signaling in islet allograft rejection and tolerance. *Cell Transplant*. 2006;15:105–119. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16719045
170. Kurts C, Carbone FR, Krummel MF, Koch KM, Miller JF, Heath WR. Signalling through CD30 protects against autoimmune diabetes mediated by CD8 T cells. *Nature*. 1999;398:341–344. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10192335
171. Weinberg AD, Wegmann KW, Funatake C, Whitham RH. Blocking OX-40/OX-40 ligand interaction in vitro and in vivo leads to decreased T cell function and amelioration of experimental allergic encephalomyelitis. *J Immunol*. 1999;162:1818–1826. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9973447
172. Pakala SV, Bansal-Pakala P, Halteman BS, Croft M. Prevention of diabetes in NOD mice at a late stage by targeting OX40/OX40 ligand interactions. *Eur J Immunol*. 2004;34:3039–3046. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15368274
173. Nakajima A, Oshima H, Nohara C, et al. Involvement of CD70-CD27 interactions in the induction of experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis. *J Neuroimmunol*. 2000;109:188–196. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10996221
174. Blazar BR, Kwon BS, Panoskaltsis-Mortari A, Kwak KB, Peschon JJ, Taylor PA. Ligation of 4-1BB (CDw137) regulates graft-versus-host disease, graft-versus-leukemia, and graft rejection in allogeneic bone marrow transplant recipients. *J Immunol*. 2001;166:3174–3183. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11207270
175. Tsukada N, Akiba H, Kobata T, Aizawa Y, Yagita H, Okumura K. Blockade of CD134 (OX40)-CD134L interaction ameliorates lethal acute graft-versus-host disease in a murine model of allogeneic bone marrow transplantation. *Blood*. 2000;95:2434–2439. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10733518
176. Blazar BR, Sharpe AH, Chen AI, et al. Ligation of OX40 (CD134) regulates graft-versus-host disease (GVHD) and graft rejection in allogeneic bone marrow transplant recipients. *Blood*. 2003;101:3741–3748. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12521997
177. Blazar BR, Levy RB, Mak TW, et al. CD30/CD30 ligand (CD153) interaction regulates CD4+ T cell-mediated graft-versus-host disease. *J Immunol*. 2004;173:2933–2941. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15322151
178. Banchereau J, Rousset F. Growing human B lymphocytes in the CD40 system. *Nature*. 1991;353:678–679. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1717852
179. Clark EA, Craxton A. A CD40 bridge between innate and adaptive immunity. *Immunity*. 2003;18:724–725. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12818154
180. Mackey MF, Barth RJ Jr, Noelle RJ. The role of CD40/CD154 interactions in the priming, differentiation, and effector function of helper and cytotoxic T cells. *J Leukoc Biol*. 1998;63:418–428. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9544571
181. Quezada SA, Jarvinen LZ, Lind EF, Noelle RJ. CD40/CD154 interactions at the interface of tolerance and immunity. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 2004;22:307–328. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15032580
182. Hildebrand JM, Yi Z, Buchta CM, Poovassery J, Stunz LL, Bishop GA. Roles of tumor necrosis factor receptor associated factor 3 (TRAF3) and TRAF5 in immune cell functions. *Immunol Rev*. 2011;244:55–74. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22017431
183. Craxton A, Otipoby KL, Jiang A, Clark EA. Signal transduction pathways that regulate the fate of B lymphocytes. *Adv Immunol*. 1999;73:79–152. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10399006
184. Uchida J, Yasui T, Takaoka-Shichijo Y, et al. Mimicry of CD40 signals by Epstein-Barr virus LMP1 in B lymphocyte responses. *Science*. 1999;286:300–303. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10514374
185. Thorley-Lawson DA. Epstein-Barr virus: exploiting the immune system. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2001;1:75–82. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11905817
186. Luftig M, Yasui T, Soni V, et al. Epstein-Barr virus latent infection membrane protein 1 TRAF-binding site induces NIK/IKKα-dependent noncanonical NF-κB activation. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*. 2004;101:141–146. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14691250
187. Aruffo A, Farrington M, Hollenbaugh D, et al. The CD40 ligand, gp39, is defective in activated T cells from patients with X-linked hyper-IgM syndrome. *Cell*. 1993;72:291–300. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7678782
188. Allen RC, Armitage RJ, Conley ME, et al. CD40 ligand gene defects responsible for X-linked hyper-IgM syndrome [see comments]. *Science*. 1993;259:990–993. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7679801
189. Durandy A, Revy P, Fischer A. Human models of inherited immunoglobulin class switch recombination and somatic hypermutation defects (hyper-IgM syndromes). *Adv Immunol*. 2004;82:295–330. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14975260
190. Litinskiy MB, Nardelli B, Hilbert DM, et al. DCs induce CD40-independent immunoglobulin class switching through BLyS and APRIL. *Nat Immunol*. 2002;3:822–829. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12154359
191. Mackay F, Leung H. The role of the BAFF/APRIL system on T cell function. *Semin Immunol*. 2006;18:284–289. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16931039
192. Bossen C, Schneider P. BAFF, APRIL and their receptors: Structure, function and signaling. *Semin Immunol*. 2006;18:263–275. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16914324
193. Kolfschoten GM, Pradet-Balade B, Hahne M, Medema JP. TWE-PRIL; a fusion protein of TWEAK and APRIL. *Biochem Pharmacol*. 2003;66:1427–1432. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14555217

194. Ingold K, Zumsteg A, Tardivel A, et al. Identification of proteoglycans as the APRIL-specific binding partners. *J Exp Med*. 2005;201:1375–1383. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15851487
195. O'Connor BP, Raman VS, Erickson LD, et al. BCMA is essential for the survival of long-lived bone marrow plasma cells. *J Exp Med*. 2004;199: 91–98. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14707116
196. Sasaki Y, Casola S, Kutok JL, Rajewsky K, Schmidt-Supprian M. TNF family member B cell-activating factor (BAFF) receptor-dependent and -independent roles for BAFF in B cell physiology. *J Immunol*. 2004;173: 2245–2252. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15294936
197. Varfolomeev E, Kischkel F, Martin F, et al. APRIL-deficient mice have normal immune system development. *Mol Cell Biol*. 2004;24:997–1006. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14729948
198. Castigli E, Scott S, Dedeoglu F, et al. Impaired IgA class switching in APRIL-deficient mice. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2004;101:3903–3908. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14988498
199. Yan M, Wang H, Chan B, et al. Activation and accumulation of B cells in TACI-deficient mice. *Nat Immuno*. 2001;2:638–643. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11429549
200. Castigli E, Wilson SA, Scott S, et al. TACI and BAFF-R mediate isotype switching in B cells. *J Exp Med*. 2005;201:35–39. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15630136
201. Ye Q, Wang L, Wells AD, et al. BAFF binding to T cell-expressed BAFF-R costimulates T cell proliferation and alloresponses. *Eur J Immunol*. 2004; 34:2750–2759. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15368291
202. Sutherland AP, Mackay F, Mackay CR. Targeting BAFF: immunomodulation for autoimmune diseases and lymphomas. *Pharmacol Ther*. 2006; 112:774–786. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16863659
203. Dillon SR, Gross JA, Ansell SM, Novak AJ. An APRIL to remember: novel TNF ligands as therapeutic targets. *Nat Rev Drug Discov*. 2006; 5:235–246. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16474316
204. Moreaux J, Legouffe E, Jourdan E, et al. BAFF and APRIL protect myeloma cells from apoptosis induced by interleukin 6 deprivation and dexamethasone. *Blood*. 2004;103:3148–3157. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15070697
205. Burkly LC, Michaelson JS, Zheng TS. TWEAK/Fn14 pathway: an immunological switch for shaping tissue responses. *Immunol Rev*. 2011; 244:99–114. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22017434
206. Wiley SR, Winkles JA. TWEAK, a member of the TNF superfamily, is a multifunctional cytokine that binds the TweakR/Fn14 receptor. *Cytokine Growth Factor Rev*. 2003;14:241–249. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12787562
207. Vince JE, Silke J. TWEAK shall inherit the earth. *Cell Death Differ*. 2006;13(11):1842–1844. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16932755
208. Maecker H, Varfolomeev E, Kischkel F, et al. TWEAK attenuates the transition from innate to adaptive immunity. *Cell*. 2005;123:931–944. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16325585
209. Potrovita I, Zhang W, Burkly L, et al. Tumor necrosis factor-like weak inducer of apoptosis-induced neurodegeneration. *J Neurosci*. 2004;24: 8237–8244. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15385607
210. Nakayama M, Ishidoh K, Kayagaki N, et al. Multiple pathways of TWEAK-induced cell death. *J Immunol*. 2002;168:734–743. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11777967
211. Aktas O, Prozorovski T, Zipp F. Death ligands and autoimmune demyelination. *Neuroscientist*. 2006;12:305–316. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16840707
212. Perper SJ, Browning B, Burkly LC, et al. TWEAK is a novel arthritogenic mediator. *J Immunol*. 2006;177:2610–2620. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16888023
213. Chacon MR, Richart C, Gomez JM, et al. Expression of TWEAK and its receptor Fn14 in human subcutaneous adipose tissue. Relationship with other inflammatory cytokines in obesity. *Cytokine*. 2006;33: 129–137. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16503147
214. De A, Park JI, Kawamura K, et al. Intraovarian TWEAK/Fn14 ligand-receptor system limits ovarian preovulatory follicles from excessive luteinization. *Mol Endocrinol*. 2006;20(10):2528–2538. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16762976
215. Watanabe-Fukunaga R, Brannan CI, Copeland NG, Jenkins NA, Nagata S. Lymphoproliferation disorder in mice explained by defects in Fas antigen that mediates apoptosis. *Nature*. 1992;356:314–317. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1372394
216. Takahashi T, Tanaka M, Brannan CI, et al. Generalized lymphoproliferative disease in mice, caused by a point mutation in the Fas ligand. *Cell*. 1994;76:969–976. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7511063
217. Fisher GH, Rosenberg FJ, Straus SE, et al. Dominant interfering Fas gene mutations impair apoptosis in a human autoimmune lymphoproliferative syndrome. *Cell*. 1995;935–946. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7540117
218. Lee HO, Ferguson TA. Biology of FasL. *Cytokine Growth Factor Rev*. 2003;14:325–335. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12787569
219. Bodmer JL, Schneider P, Tschopp J. The molecular architecture of the TNF superfamily. *Trends Biochem Sci*. 2002;27:19–26. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11796220
220. Schneider P, Holler N, Bodmer JL, et al. Conversion of membrane-bound Fas(CD95) ligand to its soluble form is associated with down-regulation of its proapoptotic activity and loss of liver toxicity. *J Exp Med*. 1998;187:1205–1213. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9547332
221. Gregory MS, Repp AC, Holhbaum AM, Saff RR, Marshak-Rothstein A, Ksander BR. Membrane Fas ligand activates innate immunity and terminates ocular immune privilege. *J Immunol*. 2002;169:2727–2735. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12193747
222. WajantH,Pfizenmaier K, Scheurich P. Non-apoptotic Fas signaling. *Cytokine Growth Factor Rev*. 2003;14:53–66. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12485619
223. Dosreis GA, Borges VM, Zin WA. The central role of Fas-ligand cell signaling in inflammatory lung diseases. *J Cell Mol Med*. 2004;8:285–293. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15491504
224. Houston A, O'Connell J. The Fas signalling pathway and its role in the pathogenesis of cancer. *Curr Opin Pharmacol*. 2004;4:321–326. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15251123
225. Green DR, Droin N, Pinkoski M. Activation-induced cell death in T cells. *Immunol Rev*. 2003;193:70–81. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12752672
226. Hayashi N, Mita E. Involvement of Fas system-mediated apoptosis in pathogenesis of viral hepatitis. *J Viral Hepat*. 1999;6:357–365. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10607251
227. Benedict CA, Norris PS, Prigozy TI, et al. Three adenovirus E3 proteins cooperate to evade apoptosis by tumor necrosis factor-related apoptosis-inducing ligand receptor-1 and -2. *J Biol Chem*. 2001;276:3270–3278. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11050095
228. Thome M, Schneider P, Hofmann K, et al. Viral FLICE-inhibitory proteins (FLIPs) prevent apoptosis induced by death receptors. *Nature*. 1997;386:517–521. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9087414
229. Kim R, Emi M, Tanabe K, Arihiro K. Tumor-driven evolution of immunosuppressive networks during malignant progression. *Cancer Res*. 2006;66:5527–5536. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16740684
230. Ennaciri J, Menezes J, Proulx F, Toledano BJ. Induction of apoptosis by herpes simplex virus-1 in neonatal, but not adult, neutrophils. *Pediatr Res*. 2006;59:7–12. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16327000
231. Niederkorn JY. See no evil, hear no evil, do no evil: the lessons of immune privilege. *Nat Immunol*. 2006;7:354–359. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16550198
232. Wang XY, Sun J, Wang C, France M, Sheil AG. Effect of liver transplantation on islet allografts: up-regulation of Fas ligand and apoptosis of T lymphocytes are associated with islet graft tolerance. *Transplantation*. 2001;71:102–111. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11211174
233. Stuart PM, Yin X, Plambeck S, Pan F, Ferguson TA. The role of Fas ligand as an effector molecule in corneal graft rejection. *Eur J Immunol*. 2005;35:2591–2597. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16114107

234. Turvey SE, Gonzalez-Nicolini V, Kingsley CI, et al. Fas ligand-transfected myoblasts and islet cell transplantation. *Transplantation*. 2000; 69:1972–1976.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10830245
235. Allison J, Georgiou HM, Strasser A, Vaux DL. Transgenic expression of CD95 ligand on islet beta cells induces a granulocytic infiltration but does not confer immune privilege upon islet allografts. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*. 1997;94:3943–3947.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9108084
236. Yada S, Takamura N, Inagaki-Ohara K, et al. The role of p53 and Fas in a model of acute murine graft-versus-host disease. *J Immunol*. 2005; 174:1291–1297.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15661885
237. Park H, Jung YK, Park OJ, et al. Interaction of Fas ligand and Fas expressed on osteoclast precursors increases osteoclastogenesis. *J Immunol*. 2005; 175:7193–7201.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16301623
238. Wiley SR, Schooley K, Smolak PJ, et al. Identification and characterization of a new member of the TNF family that induces apoptosis. *Immunity*. 1995;3:673–682.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8777713
239. Zauli G, Secchiero P. The role of the TRAIL/TRAIL receptors system in hematopoiesis and endothelial cell biology. *Cytokine Growth Factor Rev*. 2006;17:245–257.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16750931
240. Schneider P, Tschopp J. Apoptosis induced by death receptors. *Pharm Acta Helv*. 2000;74:281–286.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10812970
241. Kischkel FC, Lawrence DA, Chuntharapai A, Schow P, Kim KJ, Ashkenazi A. Apo2L/TRAIL-dependent recruitment of endogenous FADD and caspase-8 to death receptors 4 and 5. *Immunity*. 2000;12:611–620.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10894161
242. Almasan A, Ashkenazi A. Apo2L/TRAIL: apoptosis signaling, biology, and potential for cancer therapy. *Cytokine Growth Factor Rev*. 2003;14:337–348.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12787570
243. Yang X, Wang J, Liu C, et al. Cleavage of p53-vimentin complex enhances tumor necrosis factor-related apoptosis-inducing ligand-mediated apoptosis of rheumatoid arthritis synovial fibroblasts. *Am J Pathol*. 2005;167:705–719.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16127151
244. Krieg A, Krieg T, Wenzel M, et al. TRAIL-beta and TRAIL-gamma: two novel splice variants of the human TNF-related apoptosis-inducing ligand (TRAIL) without apoptotic potential. *Br J Cancer*. 2003;88:918–927.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12644830
245. Kimberley FC, Screaton GR. Following a TRAIL: update on a ligand and its five receptors. *Cell Res*. 2004;14:359–372.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15538968
246. Krieg A, Schulte Am Esch J 2nd, Ramp U, et al. TRAIL-R4-beta: a new splice variant of TRAIL-receptor 4 lacking the cysteine rich domain 1. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun*. 2006;349:115–121.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16934748
247. Hamilton SE, Wolkers MC, Schoenberger SP, Jameson SC. The generation of protective memory-like CD8+ T cells during homeostatic proliferation requires CD4+ T cells. *Nat Immunol*. 2006;7:475–481.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16604076
248. Janssen EM, Droin NM, Lemmens EE, et al. CD4+ T-cell help controls CD8+ T-cell memory via TRAIL-mediated activation-induced cell death. *Nature*. 2005;434:88–93.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15744305
249. Barnhart BC, Alappat EC, Peter ME. The CD95 type I/type II model. *Semin Immunol*. 2003;15:185–193.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14563117
250. Duiker EW, Mom CH, de Jong S, et al. The clinical trail of TRAIL. *Eur J Cancer*. 2006;42:2233–2240.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16884904
251. Sato K, Hida S, Takayanagi H, et al. Antiviral response by natural killer cells through TRAIL gene induction by IFN-alpha/beta. *Eur J Immunol*. 2001;31:3138–3146.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11745330
252. Papadakis KA, Zhu D, Prehn JL, et al. Dominant role for TL1A/DR3 pathway in IL-12 plus IL-18-induced IFN-gamma production by peripheral blood and mucosal CCR9+ T lymphocytes. *J Immunol*. 2005; 174:4985–4990.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15814728
253. Zhai Y, Ni J, Jiang GW, et al. VEGI, a novel cytokine of the tumor necrosis factor family, is an angiogenesis inhibitor that suppresses the growth of colon carcinomas in vivo. *FASEB J*. 1999;13:181–189.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9872942
254. Kim S, Zhang L. Identification of naturally secreted soluble form of TL1A, a TNF-like cytokine. *J Immunol Methods*. 2005;298:1–8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15847792
255. Borysenko CW, Furey WF, Blair HC. Comparative modeling of TNFRSF25 (DR3) predicts receptor destabilization by a mutation linked to rheumatoid arthritis. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun*. 2005; 328:794–799.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15694416
256. Simonet WS, Lacey DL, Dunstan CR, et al. Osteoprotegerin: a novel secreted protein involved in the regulation of bone density. *Cell*. 1997; 89:309–319.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9108485
257. Walsh MC, Kim N, Kadono Y, et al. Osteoimmunology: interplay between the immune system and bone metabolism. *Annu Rev Immunol*. 2006;24:33–63.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15694416
258. Tanaka S, Nakamura K, Takahasi N, Suda T. Role of RANKL in physiological and pathological bone resorption and therapeutics targeting the RANKL-RANK signaling system. *Immunol Rev*. 2005;208:30–49.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16313339
259. Xing L, Schwarz EM, Boyce BF. Osteoclast precursors, RANKL/RANK, and immunology. *Immunol Rev*. 2005;208:19–29.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16313338
260. Kong YY, Yoshida H, Sarosi I, et al. OPGL is a key regulator of osteoclastogenesis, lymphocyte development and lymph-node organogenesis. *Nature*. 1999;397:315–323.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9950424
261. Anderson DM, Maraskovsky E, Billingsley WL, et al. A homologue of the TNF receptor and its ligand enhance T-cell growth and dendritic-cell function. *Nature*. 1997;390:175–179.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9367155
262. Fata JE, Kong YY, Li J, et al. The osteoclast differentiation factor osteoprotegerin-ligand is essential for mammary gland development. *Cell*. 2000;103:41–50.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11051546
263. Emery JG, McDonnell P, Burke MB, et al. Osteoprotegerin is a receptor for the cytotoxic ligand TRAIL. *J Biol Chem*. 1998;273:14363–14367.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9603945
264. Miyashita T, Kawakami A, Nakashima T, et al. Osteoprotegerin (OPG) acts as an endogenous decoy receptor in tumour necrosis factor-related apoptosis-inducing ligand (TRAIL)-mediated apoptosis of fibroblast-like synovial cells. *Clin Exp Immunol*. 2004;137:430–436.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15270863
265. Wada T, Nakashima T, Hiroshi N, Penninger JM. RANKL-RANK signaling in osteoclastogenesis and bone disease. *Trends Mol Med*. 2006;12:17–25.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16356770
266. Bharti AC, Aggarwal BB. Ranking the role of RANK ligand in apoptosis. *Apoptosis*. 2004;9:677–690.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15505411
267. Walsh MC, Choi Y. Biology of the TRANCE axis. *Cytokine Growth Factor Rev*. 2003;14:251–263.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12787563
268. Fukushima H, Jimi E, Kajiya H, Motokawa W, Okabe K. Parathyroid-hormone-related protein induces expression of receptor activator of NF-κB ligand in human periodontal ligament cells via a cAMP/protein kinase A-independent pathway. *J Dent Res*. 2005;84:329–334.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15790738
269. Lomaga MA, Yeh WC, Sarosi I, et al. TRAF6 deficiency results in osteopetrosis and defective interleukin-1, CD40, and LPS signaling. *Genes Dev*. 1999;13:1015–1024.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10215628
270. Naito A, Azuma S, Tanaka S, et al. Severe osteopetrosis, defective interleukin-1 signalling and lymph node organogenesis in TRAF6-deficient mice. *Genes Cells*. 1999;4:353–362.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10421844
271. Dougall WC, Glaccum M, Charrier K, et al. RANK is essential for osteoclast and lymph node development. *Genes Dev*. 1999;13:2412–2424.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10500098

272. Josien R, Li HL, Ingulli E, et al. TRANCE, a tumor necrosis factor family member, enhances the longevity and adjuvant properties of dendritic cells in vivo. *J Exp Med*. 2000;191:495–502. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10662795
273. Josien R, Wong BR, Li HL, Steinman RM, Choi Y. TRANCE, a TNF family member, is differentially expressed on T cell subsets and induces cytokine production in dendritic cells. *J Immunol*. 1999;162:2562–2568. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10072496
274. Padigel UM, Kim N, Choi Y, Farrell JP. TRANCE-RANK costimulation is required for IL-12 production and the initiation of a Th1-type response to Leishmania major infection in CD40L-deficient mice. *J Immunol*. 2003;171:5437–5441. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14607948
275. Kotake S, Nanke Y, Mogi M, et al. IFN-gamma-producing human T cells directly induce osteoclastogenesis from human monocytes via the expression of RANKL. *Eur J Immunol*. 2005;35:3353–3363. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16220542
276. Teng YT, Mahamed D, Singh B. Gamma interferon positively modulates Actinobacillus actinomycetemcomitans-specific RANKL+ CD4+ Th-cell-mediated alveolar bone destruction in vivo. *Infect Immun*. 2005;73:3453–3461. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15908374
277. Fakruddin JM, Laurence J. HIV envelope gp120-mediated regulation of osteoclastogenesis via receptor activator of nuclear factor kappa B ligand (RANKL) secretion and its modulation by certain HIV protease inhibitors through interferon-gamma/RANKL cross-talk. *J Biol Chem*. 2003;278:48251–48258. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12975380
278. Fisher JL, Thomas-Mudge RJ, Elliott J, et al. Osteoprotegerin overexpression by breast cancer cells enhances orthotopic and osseous tumor growth and contrasts with that delivered therapeutically. *Cancer Res*. 2006;66:3620–3628. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16585187
279. Nyambo R, Cross N, Lippitt J, et al. Human bone marrow stromal cells protect prostate cancer cells from TRAIL-induced apoptosis. *J Bone Miner Res*. 2004;19:1712–1721. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15355567
280. Colucci S, Brunetti G, Rizzi R, et al. T cells support osteoclastogenesis in an in vitro model derived from human multiple myeloma bone disease: the role of the OPG/TRAIL interaction. *Blood*. 2004;104:3722–3730. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15308561
281. Galluzzi F, Stagi S, Salti R, et al. Osteoprotegerin serum levels in children with type 1 diabetes: a potential modulating role in bone status. *Eur J Endocrinol*. 2005;153:879–885. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16322394
282. Bucay N, Sarosi I, Dunstan CR, et al. Osteoprotegerin-deficient mice develop early onset osteoporosis and arterial calcification. *Genes Dev*. 1998;12:1260–1268. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9573043
283. Scott DL, Kingsley GH. Tumor necrosis factor inhibitors for rheumatoid arthritis. *N Engl J Med*. 2006;355:704–712. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16914706
284. van der Heijde DM, van Leeuwen MA, van Riel PL, et al. Biannual radiographic assessments of hands and feet in a three-year prospective followup of patients with early rheumatoid arthritis. *Arthritis Rheum*. 1992;35:26–34. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1731813
285. van der Heijde DM. Overview of radiologic efficacy of new treatments. *Rheum Dis Clin North Am*. 2004;30:285–293, vi. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15172041
286. Lipsky PE, van der Heijde DM, St Clair EW, et al. Infliximab and methotrexate in the treatment of rheumatoid arthritis. Anti-Tumor Necrosis Factor Trial in Rheumatoid Arthritis with Concomitant Therapy Study Group. *N Engl J Med*. 2000;343:1594–1602. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11096166
287. Reinecker HC, Steffen M, Witthoeft T, et al. Enhanced secretion of tumour necrosis factor-alpha, IL-6, and IL-1 beta by isolated lamina propria mononuclear cells from patients with ulcerative colitis and Crohn's disease. *Clin Exp Immunol*. 1993;94:174–181. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8403503
288. Hanauer SB, Sandborn WJ, Rutgeerts P, et al. Human anti-tumor necrosis factor monoclonal antibody (adalimumab) in Crohn's disease: the CLASSIC-I trial. *Gastroenterology*. 2006;130:323–333;quiz 591. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16472588
289. Sands BE, Anderson FH, Bernstein CN, et al. Infliximab maintenance therapy for fistulizing Crohn's disease. *N Engl J Med*. 2004;350:876–885. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14985485
290. Rutgeerts P, Sandborn WJ, Feagan BG, et al. Infliximab for induction and maintenance therapy for ulcerative colitis. *N Engl J Med*. 2005;353:2462–2476. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16339095
291. Sandborn WJ, Targan SR. Biologic therapy of inflammatory bowel disease. *Gastroenterology*. 2002;122:1592–1608. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12016425
292. Bonifati C, Ameglio F. Cytokines in psoriasis. *Int J Dermatol*. 1999;38:241–251. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10321938
293. Schon MP, Boehncke WH. Psoriasis. *N Engl J Med*. 2005;352:1899–1912. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15872205
294. Mease PJ. Psoriatic arthritis therapy advances. *Curr Opin Rheumatol*. 2005;17:426–432. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15956839
295. Antoni CE, Kavanaugh A, Kirkham B, et al. Sustained benefits of infliximab therapy for dermatologic and articular manifestations of psoriatic arthritis: results from the infliximab multinational psoriatic arthritis controlled trial (IMPACT). *Arthritis Rheum*. 2005;52:1227–1236. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15818699
296. Gordon KB, Langley RG, Leonardi C, et al. Clinical response to adalimumab treatment in patients with moderate to severe psoriasis: double-blind, randomized controlled trial and open-label extension study. *J Am Acad Dermatol*. 2006;55:598–606. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17010738
297. Leonardi CL, Powers JL, Matheson RT, et al. Etanercept as monotherapy in patients with psoriasis. *N Engl J Med*. 2003;349:2014–2022. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14627786
298. Papp KA, Tyring S, Lahfa M, et al. A global phase III randomized controlled trial of etanercept in psoriasis: safety, efficacy, and effect of dose reduction. *Br J Dermatol*. 2005;152:1304–1312. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15948997
299. Tobin AM, Kirby B. TNF alpha inhibitors in the treatment of psoriasis and psoriatic arthritis. *BioDrugs*. 2005;19:47–57. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15691217
300. Dixon WG, Watson K, Lunt M, Hyrich KL, Silman AJ, Symmons DP. Rates of serious infection, including site-specific and bacterial intracellular infection, in rheumatoid arthritis patients receiving antitumor necrosis factor therapy: results from the British Society for Rheumatology Biologics Register. *Arthritis Rheum*. 2006;54:2368–2376.
301. Hochberg MC, Lebwohl MG, Plevy SE, Hobbs KF, Yocum DE. The benefit/risk profile of TNF-blocking agents: findings of a consensus panel. *Semin Arthritis Rheum*. 2005;34:819–836. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15942917
302. Bongartz T, Sutton AJ, Sweeting MJ, Buchan I, Matteson EL, Montori V. Anti-TNF antibody therapy in rheumatoid arthritis and the risk of serious infections and malignancies: systematic review and metaanalysis of rare harmful effects in randomized controlled trials. *JAMA*. 2006;295:2275–2285. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16705109
303. von Haehling S, Jankowska EA, Anker SD. Tumour necrosis factoralpha and the failing heart—pathophysiology and therapeutic implications. *Basic Res Cardiol*. 2004;99:18–28. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14685702
304. Anker SD, Coats AJ. How to RECOVER from RENAISSANCE? The significance of the results of RECOVER, RENAISSANCE, RENEWAL and ATTACH. *Int J Cardiol*. 2002;86:123–130. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12419548
305. Chung ES, Packer M, Lo KH, Fasanmade AA, Willerson JT. Randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled, pilot trial of infliximab, a chimeric monoclonal antibody to tumor necrosis factor-alpha, in patients with moderate-to-severe heart failure: results of the anti-TNF Therapy Against Congestive Heart Failure (ATTACH) trial. *Circulation*. 2003;107:3133–3140. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12796126
306. Mohan C, Shi Y, Laman JD, Datta SK. Interaction between CD40 and its ligand gp39 in the development of murine lupus nephritis. *J Immunol*. 1995;154:1470–1480. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7529804

307. Kalled SL, Cutler AH, Datta SK, Thomas DW. Anti-CD40 ligand antibody treatment of SNF1 mice with established nephritis: preservation of kidney function. *J Immunol*. 1998;160:2158–2165. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9498753
308. Early GS, Zhao W, Burns CM. Anti-CD40 ligand antibody treatment prevents the development of lupus-like nephritis in a subset of New Zealand black x New Zealand white mice. Response correlates with the absence of an anti-antibody response. *J Immunol*. 1996;157:3159–3164. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8816428
309. Parker DC, Greiner DL, Phillips NE, et al. Survival of mouse pancreatic islet allografts in recipients treated with allogeneic small lymphocytes and antibody to CD40 ligand. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1995;92:9560–9564. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7568172
310. Larsen CP, Alexander DZ, Hollenbaugh D, et al. CD40-gp39 interactions play a critical role during allograft rejection. Suppression of allograft rejection by blockade of the CD40-gp39 pathway. *Transplantation*. 1996;61:4–9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8560571
311. Kalunian KC, Davis JC Jr, Merrill JT, Totoritis MC, Wofsy D. Treatment of systemic lupus erythematosus by inhibition of T cell costimulation with anti-CD154: a randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial. *Arthritis Rheum*. 2002;46:3251–3258. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12483729
312. Boumpas DT, Furie R, Manzi S, et al. A short course of BG9588 (anti-CD40 ligand antibody) improves serologic activity and decreases hematuria in patients with proliferative lupus glomerulonephritis. *Arthritis Rheum*. 2003;48:719–727. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12632425
313. Bussel JB. Overview of idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura: new approach to refractory patients. *Semin Oncol*. 2000;27:91–98. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11226007
314. Cummings SR, San Martin J, McClung MR, et al. Denosumab for prevention of fractures in postmenopausal women with osteoporosis. *New Eng J Med*. 2009;361:756–765. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19671655
315. Smith MR, Egerdie B, Hernandez Toriz N, et al. Denosumab in men receiving androgen-deprivation therapy for prostate cancer. *New Eng J Med*. 2009;361:745–755. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19671656
316. Ellis GK, Bone HG, Chlebowski R, et al. Randomized trial of denosumab in patients receiving adjuvant aromatase inhibitors for nonmetastatic breast cancer. *J Clin Oncol*. 2008;26:4875–4882. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18725648
317. Stopeck AT, Lipton A, Body JJ, et al. Denosumab compared with zoledronic acid for the treatment of bone metastases in patients with advanced breast cancer: a randomized, double-blind study. *J Clin Oncol*. 2010;28:5132–5139. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21060033
318. Henry DH, Costa L, Goldwasser F, et al. Randomized, double-blind study of denosumab versus zoledronic acid in the treatment of bone metastases in patients with advanced cancer (excluding breast and prostate cancer) or multiple myeloma. *J Clin Oncol*. 2011;29:1125–1132. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21343556
319. Fizazi K, Carducci M, Smith M, et al. Denosumab versus zoledronic acid for treatment of bone metastases in men with castration-resistant prostate cancer: a randomised, double-blind study. *Lancet*. 2011;377:813–822. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21353695
320. Cheema GS, Roschke V, Hilbert DM, Stohl W. Elevated serum B lymphocyte stimulator levels in patients with systemic immune-based rheumatic diseases. *Arthritis Rheum*. 2001;44:1313–1319. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11407690
321. Zhang J, Roschke V, Baker KP, et al. Cutting edge: a role for B lymphocyte stimulator in systemic lupus erythematosus. *J Immunol*. 2001;166:6–10. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11123269
322. Navarra SV, Guzman RM, Gallacher AE, et al. Efficacy and safety of belimumab in patients with active systemic lupus erythematosus: a randomised, placebo-controlled, phase 3 trial. *Lancet*. 2011;377:721–731. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21296403
323. Ruegg C, Yilmaz A, Bieler G, Bamat J, Chaubert P, Lejeune FJ. Evidence for the involvement of endothelial cell integrin alphaVbeta3 in the disruption of the tumor vasculature induced by TNF and IFN-gamma. *Nat Med*. 1998;4:408–414. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9546785
324. Taguchi T, Sohmura Y. Clinical studies with TNF. *Biotherapy*. 1991;3:177–186. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2054258
325. Skillings J, Wierzbicki R, Eisenhauer E, et al. A phase II study of recombinant tumor necrosis factor in renal cell carcinoma: a study of the National Cancer Institute of Canada Clinical Trials Group. *J Immunother*. 1992;11:67–70. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1734950
326. Tracey KJ, Lowry SF, Cerami A. The pathophysiologic role of cachectin/TNF in septic shock and cachexia. *Ann Inst Pasteur Immunol*. 1998;139:311–317. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3048315
327. Maruno M, Yoshimine T, Nakata H, Nishioka K, Kato A, Hayakawa T. Complete regression of anaplastic astrocytoma by intravenous tumor necrosis factor-alpha (TNF alpha) after recurrence: a case report. *Surg Neurol*. 1994;41:482–485. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8059327
328. Lejeune FJ, Lienard D, Matter M, Ruegg C. Efficiency of recombinant human TNF in human cancer therapy. *Cancer Immun*. 2006;6:6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16551058
329. Abdulghani J, El-Deiry WS. TRAIL receptor signaling and therapeutics. *Expert Opin Ther Targets*. 2010;14:1091–1108. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20819019
330. Younes A, Vose JM, Zelenetz AD, et al. A Phase 1b/2 trial of mapatumumab in patients with relapsed/refractory non-Hodgkin's lymphoma. *Br J Cancer*. 2010;103:1783–1787. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21081929
331. Herbst RS, Eckhardt SG, Kurzrock R, et al. Phase I dose-escalation study of recombinant human Apo2L/TRAIL, a dual proapoptotic receptor agonist, in patients with advanced cancer. *J Clin Oncol*. 2010;28:2839–2846. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20458040
332. Forero-Torres A, Shah J, Wood T, et al. Phase I trial of weekly tigatuzumab, an agonistic humanized monoclonal antibody targeting death receptor 5 (DR5). *Cancer Biother Radiopharm*. 2010;25:13–19. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20187792
333. Rosevear HM, Lightfoot AJ, Griffith TS. Conatumumab, a fully human mAb against death receptor 5 for the treatment of cancer. *Curr Opin Investig Drugs*. 2010;11:688–698. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20496264
334. Weinberg AD, Morris NP, Kovacsovics-Bankowski M, Urba WJ, Curti BD. Science gone translational: the OX40 agonist story. *Immunol Rev*. 2011;244:218–231. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22017441
335. Porter DL, Levine BL, Kalos M, Bagg A, June CH. Chimeric antigen receptor-modified T cells in chronic lymphoid leukemia. *N Engl J Med*. 2011;365(8):725–733. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21830940
336. Ware CF. The TNF superfamily. *Cytokine Growth Factor Rev*. 2003;14:181–184. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12787557
337. Seko Y, Cole S, Kasprzak W, Shapiro BA, Ragheb JA. The role of cytokine mRNA stability in the pathogenesis of autoimmune disease. *Autoimmun Rev*. 2006;5:299–305. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16782553
338. Zhang T, Kruys V, Huez G, Gueydan C. AU-rich element-mediated translational control: complexity and multiple activities of transactivating factors. *Biochem Soc Trans*. 2002;30:952–958. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12440953
339. Black RA, Doedens JR, Mahimkar R, et al. Substrate specificity and inducibility of TACE (tumour necrosis factor alpha-converting enzyme) revisited: the Ala-Val preference, and induced intrinsic activity. *Biochem Soc Symp*. 2003;39–52. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14587281
340. Aderka D, Engelmann H, Maor Y, Brakebusch C, Wallach D. Stabilization of the bioactivity of tumor necrosis factor by its soluble receptors. *J Exp Med*. 1992;175:323–329. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1310100
341. Li C, Norris PS, Ni CZ, et al. Structurally distinct recognition motifs in lymphotoxin-beta receptor and CD40 for tumor necrosis factor

receptor-associated factor (TRAF)-mediated signaling. *J Biol Chem*. 2003;278:50523–50529.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14517219
342. Koni PA, Sacca R, Lawton P, Browning JL, Ruddle NH, Flavell RA. Distinct roles in lymphoid organogenesis for lymphotoxins a and b revealed in lymphotoxin b-deficient mice. *Immunity*. 1997;6:491–500.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9133428
343. Wang J, Foster A, Chin R, et al. The complementation of lymphotoxin deficiency with LIGHT, a newly discovered TNF family member, for the restoration of secondary lymphoid structure and function. *Eur J Immunol*. 2002;32:1969–1979.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12115617
344. Rutschmann S, Hoebe K, Zalevsky J, et al. PanR1, a dominant negative missense allele of the gene encoding TNF-alpha (Tnf), does not impair lymphoid development. *J Immunol*. 2006;176:7525–7532.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16751399
345. Neumann B, Luz A, Pfeffer K, Holzmann B. Defective Peyer's patch organogenesis in mice lacking the 55-kD receptor for tumor necrosis factor. *J Exp Med*. 1996;184:259–264.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8691140
346. Iizuka K, Chaplin DD, Wang Y, et al. Requirement for membrane lymphotoxin in natural killer cell development. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1995;96:6336–6340.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10339588
347. Elewaut D, Shaikh RB, Hammond KJ, et al. NIK-dependent RelB activation defines a unique signaling pathway for the development of V alpha 14i NKT cells. *J Exp Med*. 2003;197:1623–1633.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12810685
348. Tumanov AV, Grivennikov SI, Shakhov AN, et al. Dissecting the role of lymphotoxin in lymphoid organs by conditional targeting. *Immunol Rev*. 2003;195:106–116.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12969314
349. Lee BJ, Santee S, Von Gesjen S, Ware CF, Sarawar SR. Lymphotoxin α–/– mice can clear a productive infection with murine gammaherpesvirus-68 (MHV-68) but fail to develop splenomegaly or lymphocytosis. *J Virol*. 2000;74:2786–2792.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10684295
350. Kumaraguru U, Davis IA, Deshpande S, Tevethia SS, Rouse BT. Lymphotoxin alpha(–/–) mice develop functionally impaired CD8(+) T cell responses and fail to contain virus infection of the central nervous system. *J Immunol*. 2001;166:1066–1074.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11145686
351. Benedict CA, Banks TA, Senderowicz L, et al. Lymphotoxins and cytomegalovirus cooperatively induce interferon-β, establishing host-virus détente. *Immunity*. 2001;15:617–626.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11672543
352. Banks TA, Rickert S, Benedict CA, et al. A lymphotoxin-IFN-beta axis essential for lymphocyte survival revealed during cytomegalovirus infection. *J Immunol*. 2005;174:7217–7225.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15905567
353. Schneider K, Loewendorf A, De Trez C, et al. Lymphotoxin-mediated crosstalk between B cells and splenic stroma promotes the initial type I interferon response to cytomegalovirus. *Cell Host Microbe*. 2008;3:67–76.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18312841
354. Berger DP, Naniche D, Crowley MT, Koni PA, Flavell RA, Oldstone MB. Lymphotoxin-b-deficient mice show defective antiviral immunity. *Virol*. 1999;260:136–147.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10405365
355. Suresh M, Lanier G, Large MK, et al. Role of lymphotoxin alpha in T-cell responses during an acute viral infection. *J Virol*. 2002;76:3943–3951.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11907234
356. Junt T, Tumanov AV, Harris N, et al. Expression of lymphotoxin beta governs immunity at two distinct levels. *Eur J Immunol*. 2006;36:2061–2075.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16841297
357. Puglielli MT, Browning JL, Brewer AW, et al. Reversal of virus-induced systemic shock and respiratory failure by blockade of the lymphotoxin pathway. *Nat Med*. 1999;5:1370–1374.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10581078
358. Lin X, Ma X, Rodriguez M, et al. Membrane lymphotoxin is required for resistance to Theiler's virus infection. *Int Immunol*. 2003;15:955–962.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12882833
359. Lund FE, Partida-Sanchez S, Lee BO, et al. Lymphotoxin-alpha-deficient mice make delayed, but effective, T and B cell responses to influenza. *J Immunol*. 2002;169:5236–5243.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12391242
360. Ehlers S, Holscher C, Scheu S, et al. The lymphotoxin beta receptor is critically involved in controlling infections with the intracellular pathogens Mycobacterium tuberculosis and Listeria monocytogenes. *J Immunol*. 2003;170:5210–5218.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12734369
361. Roach DR, Briscoe H, Saunders B, France MP, Riminton S, Britton WJ. Secreted lymphotoxin-alpha is essential for the control of an intracellular bacterial infection. *J Exp Med*. 2001;193:239–246.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11208864
362. Lucas R, Tacchini-Cottier F, Guler R, et al. A role for lymphotoxin beta receptor in host defense against Mycobacterium bovis BCG infection. *Eur J Immunol*. 1999;29:4002–4010.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10602010
363. Wilhelm P, Riminton DS, Ritter U, et al. Membrane lymphotoxin contributes to anti-leishmanial immunity by controlling structural integrity of lymphoid organs. *Eur J Immunol*. 2002;32:1993–2003.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12115620
364. Stanley AC, de Labastida Rivera F, Haque A, et al. Critical roles for LIGHT and its receptors in generating T cell-mediated immunity during Leishmania donovani infection. *PLoS Pathog*. 2011;7:e1002279.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21998581
365. Schluter D, Kwok LY, Lutjen S, et al. Both lymphotoxin-alpha and TNF are crucial for control of Toxoplasma gondii in the central nervous system. *J Immunol*. 2003;170:6172–6182.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12794148
366. Engwerda CR, Mynott TL, Sawhney S, De Souza JB, Bickle QD, Kaye PM. Locally up-regulated lymphotoxin alpha, not systemic tumor necrosis factor alpha, is the principle mediator of murine cerebral malaria. *J Exp Med*. 2002;195:1371–1377.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12021316
367. Hendriks J, Xiao Y, Rossen JW, et al. During viral infection of the respiratory tract, CD27, 4-1BB, and OX40 collectively determine formation of CD8+ memory T cells and their capacity for secondary expansion. *J Immunol*. 2005;175:1665–1676.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16034107
368. Humphreys IR, Walzl G, Edwards L, Rae A, Hill S, Hussell T. A critical role for OX40 in T cell-mediated immunopathology during lung viral infection. *J Exp Med*. 2003;198:1237–1242.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14568982
369. Humphreys IR, de Trez C, Kinkade A, Benedict CA, Croft M, Ware CF. Cytomegalovirus exploits IL-10-mediated immune regulation in the salivary glands. *J Exp Med*. 2007;204:1217–1225.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17485516
370. Humphreys IR, Loewendorf A, de Trez C, et al. OX40 costimulation promotes persistence of cytomegalovirus-specific CD8 T cells: a CD4–dependent mechanism. *J Immunol*. 2007;179:2195–2202.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17675479
371. Humphreys IR, Lee SW, Jones M, et al. Biphasic role of 4-1BB in the regulation of mouse cytomegalovirus-specific CD8(+) T cells. *Eur J Immunol*. 2010;40(10):2762–2768.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20722077
372. Bekiaris V, Gaspal F, Kim MY, et al. Synergistic OX40 and CD30 signals sustain CD8+ T cells during antigenic challenge. *Eur J Immunol*. 2009;39:2120–2125.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19609980
373. Akiba H, Miyahira Y, Atsuta M, et al. Critical contribution of OX40 ligand to T helper cell type 2 differentiation in experimental leishmaniasis. *J Exp Med*. 2000;191:375–380.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10637281
374. Ekkens MJ, Liu Z, Liu Q, et al. The role of OX40 ligand interactions in the development of the Th2 response to the gastrointestinal nematode parasite Heligmosomoides polygyrus. *J Immunol*. 2003;170:384–393.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12496423
375. Humphreys IR, Edwards L, Walzl G, et al. OX40 ligation on activated T cells enhances the control of Cryptococcus neoformans and reduces pulmonary eosinophilia. *J Immunol*. 2003;170:6125–6132.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12794142
376. Florido M, Borges M, Yagita H, Appelberg R. Contribution of CD30/CD153 but not of CD27/CD70, CD134/OX40L, or CD137/4-1BBL to

the optimal induction of protective immunity to Mycobacterium avium. *J Leukoc Biol*. 2004;76:1039–1046.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15316035

377. Laouar A, Haridas V, Vargas D, et al. CD70+ antigen-presenting cells control the proliferation and differentiation of T cells in the intestinal mucosa. *Nat Immunol*. 2005;6:698–706.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15937486
378. Shedlock DJ, Whitmire JK, Tan J, MacDonald AS, Ahmed R, Shen H. Role of CD4 T cell help and costimulation in CD8 T cell responses during Listeria monocytogenes infection. *J Immunol*. 2003;170:2053–2063.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12574376
379. Nishimura H, Yajima T, Muta H, Podack ER, Tani K, Yoshikai Y. A novel role of CD30/CD30 ligand signaling in the generation of long-lived memory CD8+ T cells. *J Immunol*. 2005;175:4627–4634.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16177108